MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

ELEVENTH EDITION



FOR BUILDINGS

WALTER T. GRONDZIK ALISON G. KWOK
BENJAMIN STEIN JOHN S. REYNOLDS

ELEVENTH EDITION

Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings

ELEVENTH EDITION



Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings

Walter T. Grondzik
Architectural Engineer
Ball State University

Alison G. Kwok
Professor of Architecture
University of Oregon

Benjamin Stein
Consulting Architectural Engineer

John S. Reynolds
Professor of Architecture
University of Oregon

WILEY

John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Part opener pages are from the drawing set for the Lillis Business Complex at University of Oregon, designed by SRG Partnership, Portland, OR.

DISCLAIMER
The information in this book has been derived and extracted from a multitude of sources including building codes, fire codes, industry codes and standards, manufacturer's literature, engineering reference works, and personal professional experience. It is presented in good faith. Although the authors and the publisher have made every reasonable effort to make the information presented accurate and authoritative, they do not warrant, and assume no liability for, its accuracy or completeness or fitness for any specific purpose. The information is intended primarily as a learning and teaching aid, and not as a final source of information for the design of building systems by design professionals. It is the responsibility of users to apply their professional knowledge in the application of the information presented in this book, and to consult original sources for current and detailed information as needed, for actual design situations.

This book is printed on acid-free paper. ∞

Copyright © 2010 by John Wiley & Sons. All rights reserved.

Published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey
Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, or otherwise, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600, or on the web at www.copyright.com. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008.

Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty: While the Publisher and the author have used their best efforts in preparing this book, they make no representations of warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this book and specifically disclaim any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales representatives or written sales materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for your situation. You should consult with a professional where appropriate. Neither the Publisher nor the author shall be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damages, including but not limited to special, incidental, consequential, or other damages.

For general information about our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the United States at (800) 762-2974, outside the United States at (317) 572-3993 or fax (317) 572-4002.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books. For more information about Wiley products, visit our web site at www.wiley.com.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data:

Mechanical and electrical equipment for buildings / Walter T. Grondzik . . . [et al.]. — 11th ed.
p. cm.
Includes index.
ISBN 978-0-470-19565-9 (cloth)
1. Buildings—Mechanical equipment. 2. Buildings—Electric equipment. 3. Buildings—Environmental engineering. I. Grondzik, Walter T.
TH6010.S74 2010
626—dc22 2008049902

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

Preface xvii

Acknowledgments xix

PART I DESIGN CONTEXT 1

CHAPTER 1
DESIGN PROCESS 3

1.1 Introduction 4
1.2 Design Intent 7
1.3 Design Criteria 8
1.4 Methods and Tools 8
1.5 Validation and Evaluation 9
1.6 Influences on the Design Process 10
1.7 A Philosophy of Design 16
1.8 Lessons from the Field 21
1.9 Case Study—Design Process 22

CHAPTER 2
ENVIRONMENTAL RESOURCES 27

2.1 Introduction 27
2.2 Energy 29
2.3 Water 32
2.4 Materials 34
2.5 Design Challenges 39
2.6 How Are We Doing? 42
2.7 Case Study—Design Process and Environmental Resources 44

CHAPTER 3
SITES AND RESOURCES 49

3.1 Climates 49
3.2 Climates within Climates 51
3.3 Buildings and Sites 54
3.4 Analyzing the Site 55
3.5 Site Design Strategies 55
3.6 Direct Sun and Daylight 57
3.7 Sound and Airflow 65
3.8 Rain and Groundwater 76
3.9 Plants 80
3.10 Case Study—Site and Resource Design 83

CHAPTER 4
COMFORT AND DESIGN STRATEGIES 89

4.1 The Body 89
4.2 Thermal Comfort 91
4.3 Design Strategies for Cooling 104
4.4 Design Strategies for Heating 108
4.5 Combining Strategies 111
4.6 Visual and Acoustical Comfort 111

CHAPTER 5
INDOOR AIR QUALITY 115

5.1 Indoor Air Quality and Building Design 116
5.2 Pollutant Sources and Impacts 117
5.3 Predicting Indoor Air Quality 120
5.4 Zoning for IAQ 122
5.5 Passive and Low-Energy Approaches for Control of IAQ 125
5.6 Active Approaches for Control of IAQ 133
5.7 IAQ, Materials, and Health 149

PART II THERMAL CONTROL 151

CHAPTER 6
SOLAR GEOMETRY AND SHADING DEVICES 153

6.1 The Sun and Its Position 153
6.2 Solar versus Clock Time 156
6.3 True South and Magnetic Deviation 157
6.4 Sunpath Projections 157
6.5 Shading 164
6.6 Shadow Angles and Shading Masks 167

CHAPTER 7
HEAT FLOW 175

7.1 The Building Envelope 175
7.2 Building Envelope Design Intentions 176

7.3 Sensible Heat Flow through Opaque Walls and Roofs 180
7.4 Latent Heat Flow through the Opaque Envelope 197
7.5 Heat Flow through Transparent/Translucent Elements 199
7.6 Trends in Envelope Thermal Performance 204
7.7 Heat Flow via Air Movement 206
7.8 Calculating Envelope Heat Flows 207
7.9 Envelope Thermal Design Standards 211

CHAPTER 8
DESIGNING FOR HEATING AND COOLING . . .215
8.1 Organizing the Problem 216
8.2 Zoning 218
8.3 Daylighting Considerations 219
8.4 Passive Solar Heating Guidelines 225
8.5 Summer Heat Gain Guidelines 238
8.6 Passive Cooling Guidelines 240
8.7 Reintegrating Daylighting, Passive Solar Heating, and Cooling 256
8.8 Calculating Worst Hourly Heat Loss 258
8.9 Calculations for Heating-Season Fuel Consumption (Conventional Buildings) 260
8.10 Passive Solar Heating Performance 263
8.11 Approximate Method for Calculating Heat Gain (Cooling Load) 281
8.12 Psychrometry 286
8.13 Detailed Hourly Heat Gain (Cooling Load) Calculations 289
8.14 Passive Cooling Calculation Procedures 291
8.15 Case Study—Designing for Heating and Cooling 319

CHAPTER 9
HVAC FOR SMALLER BUILDINGS 325
9.1 Review of the Need for Mechanical Equipment 325
9.2 Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning (HVAC): Typical Design Processes 326
9.3 Equipment Location and Service Distribution 327
9.4 Controls for Smaller Building Systems 329
9.5 Refrigeration Cycles 329
9.6 Cooling-Only Systems 331
9.7 Heating-Only Systems 338
9.8 Heating/Cooling Systems 363
9.9 Psychrometrics and Refrigeration 374

CHAPTER 10
LARGE-BUILDING HVAC SYSTEMS 377
10.1 HVAC and Building Organization 377
10.2 HVAC System Types 393
10.3 Central Equipment 401
10.4 Air Distribution within Spaces 429
10.5 All-Air HVAC Systems 436
10.6 Air and Water HVAC Systems 442
10.7 All-Water HVAC Systems 452
10.8 District Heating and Cooling 454
10.9 Cogeneration 456

PART III ILLUMINATION 465

CHAPTER 11
LIGHTING FUNDAMENTALS 467
11.1 Introductory Remarks 467

PHYSICS OF LIGHT 468
11.2 Light as Radiant Energy 468
11.3 Transmittance and Reflectance 469
11.4 Terminology and Definitions 469
11.5 Luminous Intensity 471
11.6 Luminous Flux 471
11.7 Illuminance 472
11.8 Luminance, Exitance, and Brightness 473
11.9 Illuminance Measurement 476
11.10 Luminance Measurement 477
11.11 Reflectance Measurements 478
11.12 Inverse Square Law 478
11.13 Luminous Intensity: Candela Measurements 480
11.14 Intensity Distribution Curves 480

LIGHT AND SIGHT 481
11.15 The Eye 481
11.16 Factors in Visual Acuity 482
11.17 Size of the Visual Object 484
11.18 Subjective Brightness 484
11.19 Contrast and Adaptation 485

11.20 Exposure Time 488
11.21 Secondary Task-Related Factors 488
11.22 Observer-Related Visibility Factors 489
11.23 The Aging Eye 490

Quantity of Light 491
11.24 Illuminance Levels 491
11.25 Illuminance Category 492
11.26 Illuminance Recommendations 493

Quality of Lighting 497
11.27 Considerations of Lighting Quality 497
11.28 Direct (Discomfort) Glare 497
11.29 Veiling Reflections and Reflected Glare 500
11.30 Equivalent Spherical Illumination and Relative Visual Performance 506
11.31 Control of Reflected Glare 508
11.32 Luminance Ratios 512
11.33 Patterns of Luminance: Subjective Reactions to Lighting 512

Fundamentals of Color 514
11.34 Color Temperature 514
11.35 Object Color 515
11.36 Reactions to Color 518
11.37 Chromaticity 518
11.38 Spectral Distribution of Light Sources 519
11.39 Color Rendering Index 522

CHAPTER 12
LIGHT SOURCES 525
12.1 Basic Characteristics of Light Sources 525
12.2 Selecting an Appropriate Light Source 526

Daylight Sources 526
12.3 Characteristics of Daylight 526
12.4 Standard Overcast Sky 527
12.5 Clear Sky 529
12.6 Partly Cloudy Sky 530

Electric Light Sources 531

Incandescent Lamps 531
12.7 The Incandescent Filament Lamp 531
12.8 Special Incandescent Lamps 535
12.9 Tungsten-Halogen (Quartz–Iodine) Lamps 536
12.10 Tungsten-Halogen Lamp Types 537

Gaseous Discharge Lamps 540
12.11 Ballasts 540

Fluorescent Lamps 543
12.12 Fluorescent Lamp Construction 543
12.13 Fluorescent Lamp Labels 546
12.14 Fluorescent Lamp Types 546
12.15 Characteristics of Fluorescent Lamp Operation 547
12.16 Federal Standards for Fluorescent Lamps 550
12.17 Special Fluorescent Lamps 550
12.18 Compact Fluorescent Lamps 551

High-Intensity Discharge Lamps 552
12.19 Mercury Vapor Lamps 552
12.20 Metal-Halide Lamps 555
12.21 Sodium-Vapor Lamps 557
12.22 Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps 559

Other Electric Lamps 559
12.23 Induction Lamps 559
12.24 Light-Emitting Diodes 560
12.25 Sulfur Lamps 561
12.26 Fiber Optics 561

CHAPTER 13
LIGHTING DESIGN PROCESS 563
13.1 General Information 563
13.2 Goals of Lighting Design 563
13.3 Lighting Design Procedure 564
13.4 Cost Factors 566
13.5 Power Budgets 566
13.6 Task Analysis 567
13.7 Energy Considerations 569
13.8 Preliminary Design 572
13.9 Illumination Methods 573
13.10 Types of Lighting Systems 573
13.11 Indirect Lighting 573
13.12 Semi-Indirect Lighting 575
13.13 Direct-Indirect and General Diffuse Lighting 576
13.14 Semi-Direct Lighting 576
13.15 Direct Lighting 576
13.16 Size and Pattern of Luminaires 580
13.17 Other Design Considerations 585

CHAPTER 14
DAYLIGHTING DESIGN 587

14.1 The Daylighting Opportunity 588
14.2 Human Factors in Daylighting Design 589
14.3 Site Strategies for Daylighting Buildings 589
14.4 Aperture Strategies: Sidelighting 590
14.5 Aperture Strategies: Toplighting 594
14.6 Specialized Daylighting Strategies 594
14.7 Daylight Factor 598
14.8 Components of Daylight 598
14.9 Guidelines for Preliminary Daylighting Design 601
14.10 Design Analysis Methods 602
14.11 Daylighting Simulation Programs 617
14.12 Physical Modeling 621
14.13 Recapping Daylighting 623
14.14 Case Study—Daylighting Design 624

CHAPTER 15
ELECTRICAL LIGHTING DESIGN 629

LUMINAIRES 629

15.1 Design Considerations 629
15.2 Lighting Fixture Distribution Characteristics 630
15.3 Luminaire Light Control 632
15.4 Luminaire Diffusers 635
15.5 Uniformity of Illumination 638
15.6 Luminaire Mounting Height 645
15.7 Lighting Fixtures 646
15.8 Lighting Fixture Construction 646
15.9 Lighting Fixture Structural Support 647
15.10 Lighting Fixture Appraisal 647
15.11 Luminaire-Room System Efficiency: Coefficient of Utilization 648
15.12 Luminaire Efficacy Rating 648

LIGHTING CONTROL 649

15.13 Requirement for Lighting Control 649
15.14 Lighting Control: Switching 650
15.15 Lighting Control: Dimming 651
15.16 Lighting Control: Control Initiation 651
15.17 Lighting Control Strategy 654

DETAILED DESIGN PROCEDURES 660

15.18 Calculation of Average Illuminance 660
15.19 Calculation of Horizontal Illuminance by the Lumen (Flux) Method 661
15.20 Calculation of Light Loss Factor 661
15.21 Determination of the Coefficient of Utilization by the Zonal Cavity Method 663
15.22 Zonal Cavity Calculations: Illustrative Examples 665
15.23 Zonal Cavity Calculation by Approximation 670
15.24 Effect of Cavity Reflectances on Illuminance 672
15.25 Modular Lighting Design 673
15.26 Calculating Illuminance at a Point 673
15.27 Design Aids 674
15.28 Calculating Illuminance from a Point Source 676
15.29 Calculating Illuminance from Linear and Area Sources 678
15.30 Computer-Aided Lighting Design 678
15.31 Computer-Aided Lighting Design: Illustrative Example 678
15.32 Average Luminance Calculations 681

EVALUATION 688

15.33 Lighting Design Evaluation 688

CHAPTER 16
ELECTRIC LIGHTING APPLICATIONS 689

16.1 Introduction 689

RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCIES 689

16.2 Residential Lighting: General Information 689
16.3 Residential Lighting: Energy Issues 689
16.4 Residential Lighting Sources 690
16.5 Residential Lighting: Design Suggestions 690
16.6 Residential Lighting: Luminaires and Architectural Lighting Elements 691
16.7 Residential Lighting: Control 692

EDUCATIONAL FACILITIES 695

16.8 Institutional and Educational Buildings 695
16.9 General Classrooms 696
16.10 Special-Purpose Classrooms 698
16.11 Assembly Rooms, Auditoriums, and Multipurpose Spaces 698
16.12 Gymnasium Lighting 700

16.13 Lecture Hall Lighting 700
16.14 Laboratory Lighting 700
16.15 Library Lighting 701
16.16 Special Areas 702
16.17 Other Considerations in School Lighting 703

COMMERCIAL INTERIORS 703

16.18 Office Lighting: General Information 703
16.19 Lighting for Areas with Visual Display Terminals 704
16.20 Office Lighting Guidelines 709
16.21 Task-Ambient Office Lighting Design Using Ceiling-Mounted Units 712
16.22 Task-Ambient Office Lighting Using Furniture-Integrated Luminaires 712
16.23 Integrated and Modular Ceilings 713
16.24 Lighting and Air Conditioning 713

INDUSTRIAL LIGHTING 714

16.25 General Information 714
16.26 Levels and Sources 714
16.27 Industrial Luminance Ratios 715
16.28 Industrial Lighting Glare 715
16.29 Industrial Lighting Equipment 715
16.30 Vertical-Surface Illumination 716

SPECIAL LIGHTING APPLICATION TOPICS 716

16.31 Emergency Lighting 716
16.32 Floodlighting 721
16.33 Street Lighting 721
16.34 Light Pollution 721
16.35 Remote Source Lighting 723
16.36 Fiber-Optic Lighting 724
16.37 Fiber-Optic Terminology 725
16.38 Fiber-Optic Lighting—Arrangements and Applications 726
16.39 Hollow Light Guides 728
16.40 Prismatic Light Guides 729
16.41 Prismatic Film Light Guide 730
16.42 Remote-Source Standards and Nomenclature 734

PART IV ACOUSTICS 737

CHAPTER 17
FUNDAMENTALS OF ARCHITECTURAL ACOUSTICS 739

17.1 Architectural Acoustics 739
17.2 Sound 740
17.3 Hearing 743
17.4 Sound Sources 748
17.5 Expressing Sound Magnitude 749
17.6 Noise 758
17.7 Vibration 765

CHAPTER 18
SOUND IN ENCLOSED SPACES 767

18.1 Sound in Enclosures 767

ABSORPTION 767

18.2 Sound Absorption 767
18.3 Mechanics of Absorption 768
18.4 Absorptive Materials 770
18.5 Installation of Absorptive Materials 772

ROOM ACOUSTICS 773

18.6 Reverberation 773
18.7 Sound Fields in an Enclosed Space 775
18.8 Sound Power Level and Sound Pressure Level 775
18.9 Noise Reduction by Absorption 777
18.10 Noise Reduction Coefficient 780

ROOM DESIGN 782

18.11 Reverberation Criteria for Speech Rooms 782
18.12 Criteria for Music Performance 784
18.13 Sound Paths 785
18.14 Ray Diagrams 788
18.15 Auditorium Design 789

SOUND REINFORCEMENT SYSTEMS 792

18.16 Objectives and Criteria 792
18.17 Components and Specifications 793
18.18 Loudspeaker Considerations 795

CHAPTER 19
BUILDING NOISE CONTROL 797

NOISE REDUCTION 797

ABSORPTION 797

19.1 The Role of Absorption 797
19.2 Panel and Cavity Resonators 798
19.3 Acoustically Transparent Surfaces 800
19.4 Absorption Recommendations 801
19.5 Characteristics of Absorptive Materials 801

SOUND ISOLATION 804

19.6 Airborne and Structure-Borne Sound 804

AIRBORNE SOUND 807

19.7 Transmission Loss and Noise Reduction 807
19.8 Barrier Mass 808
19.9 Stiffness and Resonance 808
19.10 Compound Barriers (Cavity Walls) 810
19.11 Sound Transmission Class 814
19.12 Composite Walls and Leaks 815
19.13 Doors and Windows 819
19.14 Diffraction: Barriers 822
19.15 Flanking 824

SPEECH PRIVACY 825

19.16 Principles of Speech Privacy between Enclosed Spaces 825
19.17 Sound Isolation Descriptors 827
19.18 Speech Privacy Design for Enclosed Spaces 829
19.19 Principles of Speech Privacy in Open-Area Offices 832
19.20 Open-Office Speech Privacy Levels and Descriptors 836
19.21 Design Recommendations for Speech Privacy in Open Offices 838

STRUCTURE-BORNE NOISE 841

19.22 Structure-Borne Impact Noise 841
19.23 Control of Impact Noise 842
19.24 Impact Insulation Class 843

MECHANICAL SYSTEM NOISE CONTROL 843

19.25 Mechanical Noise Sources 843
19.26 Quieting of Machines 844
19.27 Duct System Noise Reduction 845
19.28 Active Noise Cancellation 848
19.29 Piping System Noise Reduction 850
19.30 Electrical Equipment Noise 850
19.31 Noise Problems Due to Equipment Location 852
19.32 Sound Isolation Enclosures, Barriers, and Damping 852

STC AND IIC RECOMMENDATIONS AND CRITERIA 853

19.33 Multiple-Occupancy Residential STC/IIC Criteria 853
19.34 Specific Occupancies 854

OUTDOOR ACOUSTIC CONSIDERATIONS 857

19.35 Sound Power and Pressure Levels in Free Space (Outdoors) 857
19.36 Building Siting 857

REFERENCE MATERIAL 859

19.37 Glossary 859
19.38 Reference Standards 861
19.39 Units and Conversions 861
19.40 Symbols 862

PART V WATER AND WASTE 863

CHAPTER 20
Water and Basic Design. 865

20.1 Water in Architecture 865
20.2 The Hydrologic Cycle 868
20.3 Basic Planning 870
20.4 Rainwater 876
20.5 Collection and Storage 878
20.6 Rainwater and Site Planning 883
20.7 Components 893
20.8 Case Study—Water and Basic Design 902

CHAPTER 21
Water Supply 909

21.1 Water Quality 909
21.2 Filtration 913

21.3 Disinfection 915
21.4 Other Water Treatments 918
21.5 Water Sources 921
21.6 Hot Water Systems and Equipment 932
21.7 Fixtures and Water Conservation 959
21.8 Fixture Accessibility and Privacy 970
21.9 Water Distribution 974
21.10 Piping, Tubing, Fittings, and Controls 982
21.11 Sizing of Water Pipes 986
21.12 Irrigation 994

CHAPTER 22
LIQUID WASTE 999
22.1 Waterless Toilets and Urinals 999
22.2 Principles of Drainage 1005
22.3 Piping, Fittings, and Accessories 1008
22.4 Design of Residential Waste Piping 1015
22.5 Design of Larger-Building Waste Piping 1018
22.6 On-Site Individual Building Sewage Treatment 1029
22.7 On-Site Multiple-Building Sewage Treatment 1037
22.8 Larger-Scale Sewage Treatment Systems 1047
22.9 Recycling and Graywater 1055
22.10 Storm Water Treatment 1060

CHAPTER 23
SOLID WASTE 1065
23.1 Waste and Resources 1065
23.2 Resource Recovery: Central or Local? 1070
23.3 Solid Waste in Small Buildings 1072
23.4 Solid Waste in Large Buildings 1074
23.5 Equipment for the Handling of Solid Waste 1077
23.6 The Service Core 1080

PART VI FIRE PROTECTION 1083

CHAPTER 24
FIRE PROTECTION 1085

FIRE RESISTANCE, EGRESS, AND EXTINGUISHMENT 1085
24.1 Design for Fire Resistance 1085
24.2 Smoke Control 1097
24.3 Water for Fire Suppression 1102
24.4 Other Fire-Mitigating Methods 1123
24.5 Lightning Protection 1129

FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS 1133
24.6 General Considerations 1133
24.7 Fire Codes, Authorities, and Standards 1134
24.8 Fire Alarm Definitions and Terms 1136
24.9 Types of Fire Alarm Systems 1137
24.10 Circuit Supervision 1139
24.11 Conventional Systems 1139
24.12 System Coding 1140
24.13 Signal Processing 1142
24.14 Addressable Fire Alarm Systems 1142
24.15 Addressable Analog (Intelligent) Systems 1143
24.16 Automatic Fire Detection: Incipient Stage 1143
24.17 Automatic Fire Detection: Smoldering Stage 1145
24.18 Automatic Fire Detection: Flame Stage 1149
24.19 Automatic Fire Detection: Heat Stage 1150
24.20 Special Types of Fire Detectors 1153
24.21 False Alarm Mitigation 1153
24.22 Manual Stations 1155
24.23 Sprinkler Alarms 1156
24.24 Audible and Visual Alarm Devices 1156
24.25 General Recommendations 1157
24.26 Residential Fire Alarm Basics 1157
24.27 Multiple-Dwelling Alarm Systems 1158
24.28 Commercial and Institutional Building Alarm Systems 1158
24.29 High-Rise Office Building Fire Alarm Systems 1159
24.30 Industrial Facilities 1161

PART VII ELECTRICITY 1163

CHAPTER 25
PRINCIPLES OF ELECTRICITY 1165

25.1 Electric Energy 1165
25.2 Unit of Electric Current—the Ampere 1165
25.3 Unit of Electric Potential—the Volt 1166
25.4 Unit of Electric Resistance—the Ohm 1166
25.5 Ohm's Law 1167
25.6 Circuit Arrangements 1167
25.7 Direct Current and Alternating Current 1170
25.8 Electric Power Generation—DC 1170
25.9 Electric Power Generation—AC 1171
25.10 Power and Energy 1171
25.11 Power in Electric Circuits 1172
25.12 Energy in Electric Circuits 1174
25.13 Electric Demand Charges 1175
25.14 Electric Demand Control 1177
25.15 Electrical Measurements 1180

CHAPTER 26
ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS AND MATERIALS: SERVICE AND UTILIZATION 1185

26.1 Electric Service 1185
26.2 Overhead Service 1186
26.3 Underground Service 1186
26.4 Underground Wiring 1186
26.5 Service Equipment 1189
26.6 Transformers 1189
26.7 Transformers Outdoors 1192
26.8 Transformers Indoors: Heat Loss 1193
26.9 Transformers Indoors: Selection 1193
26.10 Transformer Vaults 1194
26.11 Service Equipment Arrangements and Metering 1195
26.12 Service Switches 1195
26.13 Switches 1197
26.14 Contactors 1199
26.15 Special Switches 1199
26.16 Solid-State Switches, Programmable Switches, Microprocessors, and Programmable Controllers 1201
26.17 Equipment Enclosures 1203
26.18 Circuit-Protective Devices 1204
26.19 Switchboards and Switchgear 1206
26.20 Unit Substations (Transformer Load Centers) 1207
26.21 Panelboards 1210
26.22 Principles of Electric Load Control 1211
26.23 Intelligent Panelboards 1212
26.24 Electric Motors 1215
26.25 Motor Control Standards 1216
26.26 Motor Control 1216
26.27 Motor Control Equipment 1218
26.28 Wiring Devices: General Description 1219
26.29 Wiring Devices: Receptacles 1221
26.30 Wiring Devices: Switches 1223
26.31 Wiring Devices: Specialties 1224
26.32 Low-Voltage Switching 1224
26.33 Wireless Switching and Control 1228
26.34 Power Line Carrier Systems 1228
26.35 Power Conditioning 1231
26.36 Power-Conditioning Equipment 1232
26.37 Surge Suppression 1233
26.38 Uninterruptible Power Supply 1239
26.39 Emergency/Standby Power Equipment 1242
26.40 System Inspection 1244

CHAPTER 27
ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS AND MATERIALS: WIRING AND RACEWAYS 1245

27.1 System Components 1245
27.2 National Electrical Code 1245
27.3 Economic and Environmental Considerations 1246
27.4 Electrical Equipment Ratings 1248
27.5 Interior Wiring Systems 1248
27.6 Conductors 1249
27.7 Conductor Ampacity 1249
27.8 Conductor Insulation and Jackets 1250
27.9 Copper and Aluminum Conductors 1250
27.10 Flexible Armored Cable 1252
27.11 Nonmetallic Sheathed Cable (Romex) 1252
27.12 Conductors for General Wiring 1253
27.13 Special Cable Types 1253
27.14 Busway/Busduct/Cablebus 1253
27.15 Light-Duty Busway, Flat-Cable Assemblies, and Lighting Track 1256

27.16 Cable Tray 1258
27.17 Design Considerations for Raceway Systems 1258
27.18 Steel Conduit 1259
27.19 Aluminum Conduit 1262
27.20 Flexible Metal Conduit 1262
27.21 Nonmetallic Conduit 1262
27.22 Surface Metal Raceways (Metallic and Nonmetallic) 1263
27.23 Outlet and Device Boxes 1263
27.24 Floor Raceways 1265
27.25 Underfloor Duct 1266
27.26 Cellular Metal Floor Raceway 1270
27.27 Precast Cellular Concrete Floor Raceways 1270
27.28 Full-Access Floor 1271
27.29 Under-Carpet Wiring System 1272
27.30 Ceiling Raceways and Manufactured Wiring Systems 1275

CHAPTER 28
ELECTRIC WIRING DESIGN 1281

28.1 General Considerations 1281
28.2 Load Estimating 1283
28.3 System Voltage 1286
28.4 Grounding and Ground-Fault Protection 1291
28.5 Energy Conservation Considerations 1294
28.6 Electrical Wiring Design Procedure 1295
28.7 Electrical Equipment Spaces 1296
28.8 Electrical Closets 1299
28.9 Equipment Layout 1300
28.10 Application of Overcurrent Equipment 1300
28.11 Branch Circuit Design 1304
28.12 Branch Circuit Design Guidelines: Residential 1307
28.13 Branch Circuit Design Guidelines: Nonresidential 1309
28.14 Load Tabulation 1315
28.15 Spare Capacity 1317
28.16 Feeder Capacity 1317
28.17 Panel Feeder Load Calculation 1320
28.18 Harmonic Currents 1322
28.19 Riser Diagrams 1323
28.20 Service Equipment and Switchboard Design 1324
28.21 Emergency Systems 1325

CHAPTER 29
PHOTOVOLTAIC SYSTEMS 1329

29.1 A Context for Photovoltaics 1329
29.2 Terminology and Definitions 1331
29.3 PV Cells 1331
29.4 PV Arrays 1333
29.5 PV System Types and Applications 1334
29.6 PV System Batteries 1338
29.7 Balance of System 1339
29.8 Design of a Stand-Alone PV System 1340
29.9 Design of a Grid-Connected PV System 1343
29.10 Codes and Standards 1346
29.11 PV Installations 1347
29.12 Case Study—PV 1349

PART VIII SIGNAL SYSTEMS 1353

CHAPTER 30
Signal Systems. 1355

30.1 Introduction 1355
30.2 Principles of Intrusion Detection 1355

Private Residential Systems 1358

30.3 General Information 1358
30.4 Residential Intrusion Alarm Systems 1361
30.5 Residential Intercom Systems 1361
30.6 Residential Telecommunication and Data Systems 1361
30.7 Premise Wiring 1362

Multiple-Dwelling Systems 1363

30.8 Multiple-Dwelling Entry and Security Systems 1363
30.9 Multiple-Dwelling Television Systems 1364
30.10 Multiple-Dwelling Telephone Systems 1364
30.11 Hotels and Motels 1365

School Systems 1366

30.12 General Information 1366
30.13 School Security Systems 1366

30.14 School Clock and Program Systems 1367
30.15 School Intercom Systems 1368
30.16 School Sound Systems 1369
30.17 School Electronic Teaching Equipment 1370

Office Building Systems 1371

30.18 General Information 1371
30.19 Office Building Security Systems 1371
30.20 Office Building Communications Systems 1372
30.21 Office Building Communications Planning 1373
30.22 Office Building Control and Automation Systems 1375

Industrial Building Systems 1375

30.23 General Information 1375
30.24 Industrial Building Personnel Access Control 1376
30.25 Industrial Building Sound and Paging Systems 1378

Automation 1380

30.26 General Information 1380
30.27 Stand-Alone Lighting Control Systems 1381
30.28 Building Automation Systems 1382
30.29 Glossary of Computer and Control Terminology 1383
30.30 BAS Arrangement 1384
30.31 Intelligent Buildings 1388
30.32 Intelligent Residences 1389

PART IX TRANSPORTATION 1391

CHAPTER 31
VERTICAL TRANSPORTATION: PASSENGER ELEVATORS 1393

General Information 1393

31.1 Introduction 1393
31.2 Passenger Elevators 1393
31.3 Codes and Standards 1394

Traction Elevator Equipment 1394

31.4 Principal Components 1394
31.5 Gearless Traction Machines 1396
31.6 Geared Traction Machines 1397
31.7 Arrangement of Elevator Machines, Sheaves, and Ropes 1397
31.8 Safety Devices 1398

Hydraulic Elevators 1398

31.9 Conventional Plunger-Type Hydraulic Elevators 1398
31.10 Hole-Less Hydraulic Elevators 1401
31.11 Roped Hydraulic Elevators 1401

Passenger Interaction Issues 1403

31.12 Elevator Doors 1403
31.13 Cars and Signals 1407
31.14 Requirements for the Disabled 1408

Elevator Car Control 1408

31.15 Drive Control 1408
31.16 Thyristor Control, AC and DC 1412
31.17 Variable-Voltage DC Motor Control 1414
31.18 Variable-Voltage, Variable-Frequency AC Motor Control 1414
31.19 Elevator Operating Control 1415
31.20 System Control Requirements 1415
31.21 Single Automatic Pushbutton Control 1415
31.22 Collective Control 1415
31.23 Selective Collective Operation 1416
31.24 Computerized System Control 1416
31.25 Rehabilitation Work: Performance Prediction 1417
31.26 Lobby Elevator Panel 1418
31.27 Car Operating Panel 1419

Elevator Selection 1420

31.28 General Considerations 1420
31.29 Definitions 1420
31.30 Interval or Lobby Dispatch Time and Average Lobby Waiting Time 1421

31.31 Handling Capacity 1421
31.32 Travel Time or Average Trip Time 1422
31.33 Round-Trip Time 1423
31.34 System Relationships 1431
31.35 Car Speed 1431
31.36 Single-Zone Systems 1432
31.37 Multizone Systems 1434
31.38 Elevator Selection for Specific Occupancies 1435

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES AND SPATIAL REQUIREMENTS OF ELEVATORS 1437

31.39 Shafts and Lobbies 1437
31.40 Dimensions and Weights 1437
31.41 Structural Stresses 1440

POWER AND ENERGY 1443

31.42 Power Requirements 1443
31.43 Energy Requirements 1444
31.44 Energy Conservation 1445
31.45 Emergency Power 1446

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS 1446

31.46 Fire Safety 1446
31.47 Elevator Security 1447
31.48 Elevator Noise 1447
31.49 Elevator Specifications 1448
31.50 Innovative Equipment 1451

CHAPTER 32
VERTICAL TRANSPORTATION: SPECIAL TOPICS 1453

SPECIAL SHAFT ARRANGEMENTS 1453

32.1 Sky Lobby Elevator System 1453
32.2 Double-Deck Elevators 1454

FREIGHT ELEVATORS 1454

32.3 General Information 1454
32.4 Freight Car Capacity 1455
32.5 Freight Elevator Description 1456
32.6 Freight Elevator Cars, Gates, and Doors 1456
32.7 Freight Elevator Cost Data 1456

SPECIAL ELEVATOR DESIGNS 1458

32.8 Observation Cars 1458
32.9 Inclined Elevators 1460
32.10 Rack and Pinion Elevators 1462
32.11 Residential Elevators and Chair Lifts 1463
32.12 Innovative Motor Drives 1467

MATERIAL HANDLING 1467

32.13 General Information 1467
32.14 Manual Load/Unload Dumbwaiters 1468
32.15 Automated Dumbwaiters 1468
32.16 Horizontal Conveyors 1468
32.17 Selective Vertical Conveyors 1468
32.18 Pneumatic Tubes 1468
32.19 Pneumatic Trash and Linen Systems 1473
32.20 Automated Container Delivery Systems 1473
32.21 Automated Self-Propelled Vehicles 1474
32.22 Materials Handling Summary 1474

CHAPTER 33
MOVING STAIRWAYS AND WALKS 1477

MOVING ELECTRIC STAIRWAYS 1477

33.1 General Information 1477
33.2 Parallel and Crisscross Arrangements 1477
33.3 Location 1480
33.4 Size, Speed, Capacity, and Rise 1483
33.5 Components 1484
33.6 Safety Features 1485
33.7 Fire Protection 1486
33.8 Lighting 1489
33.9 Escalator Applications 1489
33.10 Elevators and Escalators 1490
33.11 Electric Power Requirements 1490
33.12 Special-Design Escalators 1491
33.13 Preliminary Design Data and Installation Drawings 1491
33.14 Budget Estimating for Escalators 1492

MOVING WALKS AND RAMPS 1492

33.15 General Information 1492
33.16 Application of Moving Walks 1492
33.17 Application of Moving Ramps 1493
33.18 Size, Capacity, and Speed 1493
33.19 Components 1494

PART X APPENDICES 1497

APPENDIX A
Metrication, SI Units, and Conversions 1499

APPENDIX B
Climatic Conditions for the United States, Canada, and Mexico 1505

APPENDIX C
Solar and Daylighting Design Data 1531

APPENDIX D
Solar Geometry 1577

APPENDIX E
Thermal Properties of Materials and Assemblies 1591

APPENDIX F
Heating and Cooling Design Guidelines and Information 1645

APPENDIX G
Standards/Guidelines for Energy- and Resource-Efficient Building Design 1665

APPENDIX H
Annual Solar Performance 1669

APPENDIX I
Economic Analysis 1701

APPENDIX J
Lamp Data 1707

APPENDIX K
Sound Transmission Data for Walls 1711

APPENDIX L
Sound Transmission and Impact Insulation Data for Floor/Ceiling Constructions 1723

APPENDIX M
Design Analysis Software 1733

Index 1737

Preface

SEVEN DECADES AND A FEW GENERATIONS have passed since the first edition of *Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings* was published in 1935. At its birth, this book was 429 pages long. Now, in the 11th edition, the book is more than 1700 pages, an increase of 400%. Many new topics have been added, and a few have disappeared; computer simulations are now routinely used in system design; equipment and distribution systems have undergone major changes; mechanical cooling has become commonplace; fuel choices have shifted (coal has moved from an on-site to an off-site energy source). In recent editions, the book has increasingly added discussions of "why" to its historic focus upon "how-tos."

Most of the systems presented in this book involve energy consumption. As North American society has moved from its early reliance on renewable energy sources (wind, water, and horse power) to today's seemingly endless addiction to nonrenewable fossil fuels, it has also added vastly to its population and increased its per capita energy use. The resulting environmental degradation (primarily evident in air and water quality) has spurred efforts to reverse this decline. Governmental regulations are a part of such efforts, but this book emphasizes the investigation of alternative fuels and design approaches that go beyond those minimally acceptable to society. Designers are encouraged to take a leadership role in mitigating environmental degradations.

On this note, it is becoming increasingly clear that global warming is well under way. It may be less clear to what precise extent our hugely increased carbon-based energy consumption is responsible, with its associated heat release and gaseous additions to the atmosphere. But it is very clear that the world's supply of fossil fuel is diminishing, with future consequences for all buildings (and their occupants) that today rely so thoroughly on nonrenewable energy sources.

The buildings of today contribute to negative global consequences that will impact future generations, and our approach to mechanical and electrical systems must consider how best to minimize and mitigate—if not negate—such negative environmental impacts. Thus, on-site resources—daylighting, passive solar heating, passive cooling, solar water heating, rainwater, wastewater treatment, photovoltaic electricity—share the spotlight with traditional off-site resources (natural gas, oil, the electrical grid, water and sewer lines). On-site processes can be area-intensive and labor-intensive and can involve increased first costs that require years to recover through savings in energy, water, and/or material consumption. Off-site processes are usually subsidized by society, often with substantial environmental costs. On-site energy use requires us to look beyond the building, to pay as much attention to a building's context as to the mechanical and electrical spaces, equipment, and systems within.

Throughout the many editions of this book, another trend has emerged. Society has slowly moved from systems that centralize the provision of heating, cooling, water, and electricity toward those that encourage more localized production and control. Increased sophistication of digital control systems has encouraged this trend. Further encouragement comes from multipurpose buildings whose schedules of occupancy are fragmented and from corporations with varying work schedules that result in partial occupancy on weekends. Another factor in this move to decentralization is worker satisfaction; there is increasingly solid evidence that productivity increases with a sense of individual control of one's work environment. Residences are commonly being used as office work environments. Expanding communications networks have made this possible. As residential designs thus become more complex (with office-quality lighting, zones

for heating/cooling, sophisticated communications, noise control), our nonresidential work environments become more attractive and individual.

Air and water pollution problems stemming from buildings (and their systems and occupants) are widely recognized and generally condemned. A rapidly increasing interest in green design on the part of clients and designers may help to mitigate such problems, although green design is hopefully just an intermediate step in the journey to truly sustainable solutions.

Another pervasive pollutant affecting our quality of life is noise. Noise impacts building siting, space planning, exterior and interior material selections—even the choice of cooling systems (as with natural ventilation). Air and water pollution can result in physical illness, but so can noise pollution, along with its burden of mental stress.

This book is written primarily for the North American building design community and has always emphasized examples from this region. Yet other areas of the world, some with similar traditions and fuel sources, have worthy examples of new strategies for building design utilizing on-site energy and energy conservation. Thus, some buildings from Europe and Asia appear in this 11th edition, along with many North American examples. Listings of such buildings (and associated researchers and designers) have been included in the index of this edition.

Building system design is now widely undertaken using computers, often through proprietary software that includes hundreds of built-in assumptions. This book encourages the designer to take a rational approach to system design: to verify intuitive design moves and assumptions and to use computers as tools to facilitate such verification, but to use patterns and approximations to point early design efforts in the right direction. Hand calculations have the added benefit of exposing all pertinent variables and assumptions to the designer. This in itself is a valuable rationale for conducting some portion of an analysis manually. Rough hand-calculated results should point in the same direction as results obtained with a computer; the greater the disparity, the greater the need to check both approaches. This is not to disparage the use of simulations, which are valuable (if not indispensable) in optimizing complex and sometimes counterintuitive systems.

This book is written with the student, the architect- or engineer-in-training, and the practicing professional in mind. Basic theory, preliminary design guidelines, and detailed design procedures allow the book to serve both as an introductory text for the student and as a more advanced reference for both professional and student. This work is intended to be used as a textbook for a range of courses in architecture, architectural engineering, and building/construction management.

A "MEEB 11" World Wide Web (WWW) site will provide supporting materials to enhance learning about and understanding the concepts, equipment, and systems dealt with in this book. The opportunity to provide color images via this medium is truly exciting. As with previous editions, an Instructor's Manual has been developed to provide additional support for this 11th edition. The manual, prepared by Kristen DiStefano, Walter Grondzik and Alison Kwok, outlines the contents and terminology in each chapter; highlights concepts of special interest or difficulty; and provides sample discussion, quiz, and exam questions. The manual is available to instructors who have adopted this book for their courses.

Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings continues to serve as a reference for architectural registration examinees in the United States and Canada. We also hope to have provided a useful reference book for the offices of architects, engineers, construction managers, and other building professionals.

WALTER T. GRONDZIK
ALISON G. KWOK
BENJAMIN STEIN
JOHN S. REYNOLDS

Visit **www.wiley.com/go/meeb**
for the expanding set of learning resources that accompany this book.

Acknowledgments

Many people and organizations have contributed knowledge, materials, and insights to the several editions of this book. We begin this acknowledgment with those from whose work we have borrowed at length: J. Douglas Balcomb, Baruch Givoni, John Tillman Lyle, Murray Milne, William McGuinness, and Victor Olgyay; ASHRAE (the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers), the American Solar Energy Society (ASES), the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America (IESNA), the National Drinking Water Clearinghouse, the National Small Flows Clearinghouse, the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA); and the many equipment manufacturers whose product information and photographs are used to illustrate the book.

Several professionals provided valuable assistance in assembling materials, and clarifying ideas and details. These include Michael Utzinger and Joel Krueger (Aldo Leopold Legacy Center), Vikram Sami (Blue Ridge Parkway Destination Center), Craig Christiansen (NREL research reports), William Lowry (climate of cities), Daniel Panetta (AIWPS and recycling at California Polytechnic, San Luis Obispo), Dr. Jonathan Stein (computer applications), John A. Van Deusen (vertical transportation), and Martin Yoklic (cooltower performance analysis).

In addition to drawings by Michael Cockram (whose work first appeared in the 8th edition), we are very pleased to include in this 11th edition illustrations by Lisa Leal, Nathan Majeski, and Jonathan Meendering (who also helped illustrate the 10th edition). We continue to thank those who assisted with illustrations for the 10th edition: Dain Carlson, Amanda Jo Clegg, Eric Drew, and Erik Winter—students (now professionals) who embrace the principles and concepts of environmental technology in their design work and therefore clearly understood what they were drawing. We also acknowledge the many architects and engineers who provided illustrations of their buildings and design artifacts that appear throughout the book—citations to these firms and individuals are found throughout the book.

Testing in the classroom is a particularly valuable way to find needed improvements in any textbook. Students at the University of Oregon have, over many years, raised probing questions whose answers have resulted in changes to succeeding editions. Valuable suggestions have come from many graduate teaching fellows at the University of Oregon, particularly Rachel Auerbach, Christina Bollo, Alfredo Fernandez-Gonzalez, Sara Goenner, Jeff Guggenheim, Susie Harriman, Jake Keeler, Angela Matt, Jonathan Meendering, Tobin Newburgh, Roger Ota, Therese Peffer, Troy Peters, David Posada, Barbara Reed, Amanda Rhodes, Nick Rajkovich, Jonathan Thwaites, and Michael Walsh. Michael Ober provided unrestrained encouragement with a YouTube video special for "MEEB." Former Oregon students who helped with research include Troy Anderson, Daniel Irurah, Reza Javandel, Jeff Joslin, and Emily Wright.

A large portion of the work involved in producing a manuscript is accomplished by supporting personnel. Among these, we wish particularly to thank Jackie Kingen for coordinating illustrations for this edition. Britni Jessup, Jocelynn Gebhart, Amanda Rhodes, Lisa Leal, and Rachel Auerbach receive thanks for long hours of assistance with file coordination and project management. Adrienne Leverette—thanks for your surprise visit and assistance. Special, and very sincere, thanks go to Theodore J. Kwok, who gave extensive and prompt input on database development and troubleshooting.

Finally, we are indebted to the staff at John Wiley & Sons for their diligent and highly professional work, especially Amanda Miller, vice president and publisher; Paul Drougas, acquisitions editor; Lauren Olesky, associate developmental editor; Sadie Abuhoff, editorial assistant; Kerstin Nasdeo, production manager, Abby Saul, production assistant; and Devra Kunin at Foxxe Editorial Services, copyeditor.

PART I

DESIGN CONTEXT



Often mechanical and electrical equipment for buildings is not considered until many important design decisions have already been made. In too many cases, such equipment is considered to have a corrective function, permitting a building envelope and siting to "work" in a climate that was essentially ignored.

Part I is intended to encourage designers to use the design process to full advantage and to include both climate and the key design objectives of comfort and indoor air quality in their earliest design decisions. Chapter 1 discusses the design process and the roles played by factors such as codes, costs, and verification in shaping a final building design. The critical importance of clear design intents and criteria is emphasized. Principles to guide environmentally responsible design are given. Chapter 2 discusses the relationship of energy, water, and material resources to buildings, from design through demolition. The concept of environmental footprint is introduced as the ultimate arbiter of design decision making. Chapter 3 encourages viewing a building site as a collection of renewable resources, to be used as appropriate in the lighting, heating, and cooling of buildings. Chapter 4 discusses human comfort, the variety of conditions that seem comfortable, and implications of a more broadly defined comfort zone. It includes an introduction to design strategies for lighting, heating, and cooling. Chapter 5 introduces the issue of indoor air quality, which is currently a major concern of building occupants and the legal profession and an underpinning of green design efforts.

CHAPTER 1

Design Process

IN MARCH 1971 VISIONARY ARCHITECT Malcolm Wells published a watershed article in *Progressive Architecture*. It was rather intriguingly and challengingly titled "The Absolutely Constant Incontestably Stable Architectural Value Scale." In essence, Wells argued that buildings should be *benchmarked* (to use a current term) against the environmentally regenerative capabilities of wilderness (Fig. 1.1). This seemed a radical idea then—and remains so even now, over 30 years later. Such a set of values, however, may be just what is called for as the design professions inevitably move from *energy-efficient* to *green* to *sustainable* design in the coming decades. The main problem with Wells's "Incontestably Stable" benchmark is that most buildings fare poorly (if not dismally) against the environment-enhancing characteristics of wilderness. But perhaps this is more of a wakeup call than a problem.

As we enter the twenty-first century, *Progressive Architecture* is no longer in business, Malcolm Wells is in semiretirement, mechanical and electrical equipment has improved, simulation techniques have radically advanced, and information exchange has been revolutionized. In broad terms, however, the design process has changed little since the early 1970s. This should not be unexpected, as the design process is simply a structure within which to develop a solution

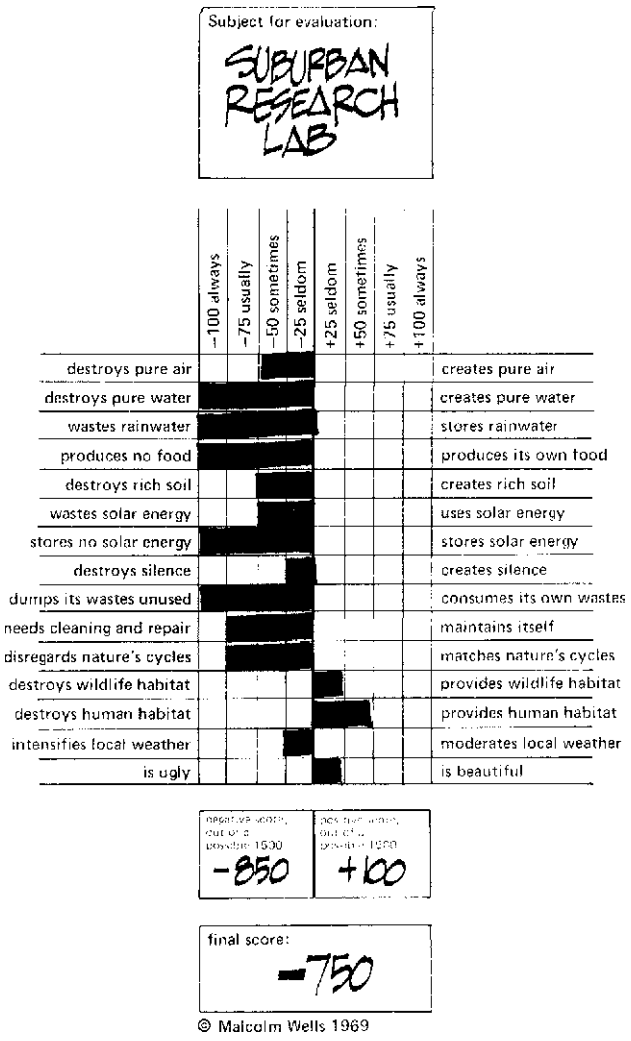


Fig. 1.1 *Evaluation of a typical project using Malcolm Wells's "absolutely constant incontestably stable architectural value scale." The value focus was wilderness; today it might well be sustainability. (© Malcolm Wells. Used with permission from Malcolm Wells. 1981.* Gentle Architecture. *McGraw-Hill. New York.)*

to a problem. The values and philosophy that underlie the design process absolutely must change in the coming decades. The beauty of Wells's value scale was its crystal-clear focus upon the values that accompanied his design solutions—and the explicit stating of those values. To meet the challenges of the coming decades, it is critical that designers consider and adopt values appropriate to the nature of the problems being confronted—both at the individual project scale and globally. Nothing less makes sense.

1.1 INTRODUCTION

The design process is an integral part of the larger and more complex building procurement process through which an owner defines facility needs, considers architectural possibilities, contracts for design and construction services, and uses the resulting facility. Numerous decisions (literally thousands) made during the design process will determine the need for specific mechanical and electrical systems and equipment, and very often will determine eventual owner and occupant satisfaction. Discussing selected aspects of the design process seems a good way to start this book.

A building project typically begins with predesign activities that establish the need for, feasibility of, and proposed scope for a facility. If a project is deemed feasible and can be funded, a multiphase design process follows. The design phases are typically described as conceptual design, schematic design, and design development. If a project remains feasible as it progresses, the design process is followed by the construction and occupancy phases of a project. In fast-track approaches (such as design-build), design efforts and construction activities may substantially overlap.

Predesign activities may be conducted by the design team (often under a separate contract), by the owner, or by a specialized consultant. The product of predesign activities should be a clearly defined scope of work for the design team to act upon. This product is variously called a *program*, a *project brief*, or the *owner's project requirements*. The design process converts this statement of the owner's requirements into drawings and specifications that permit a contractor to convert the owner's (and designer's) wishes into a physical reality.

The various design phases are the primary arena of concern to the design team. The design process may span weeks (for a simple building or system) or years (for a large, complex project). The design team may consist of a sole practitioner for a residential project or 100 or more people located in different offices, cities, or even countries for a large project. Decisions made during the design process, especially during the early stages, will affect the project owner and occupants for many years—influencing operating costs, maintenance needs, comfort, enjoyment, and productivity.

The scope of work accomplished during each of the various design phases varies from firm to firm and project to project. In many cases, explicit expectations for the phases are described in professional service contracts between the design team and the owner. A series of images illustrating the development of the Real Goods Solar Living Center (Figs. 1.2 and 1.3) is used to illustrate the various phases of a



Fig. 1.2 *The Real Goods Solar Living Center, Hopland, California; exterior view. (Photo © Bruce Haglund; used with permission.)*

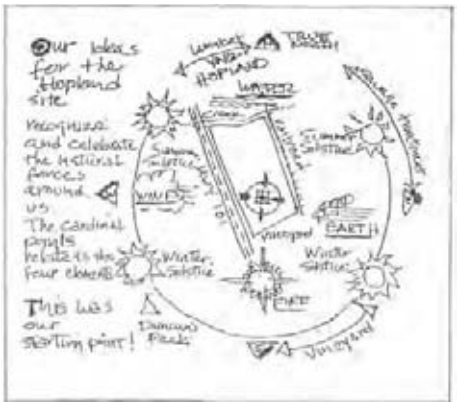


Fig. 1.3 *Initial concept sketch for the Real Goods Solar Living Center, a site analysis. (Drawing by Sim Van der Ryn; reprinted from* A Place in the Sun *with permission of Real Goods Trading Corporation.)*

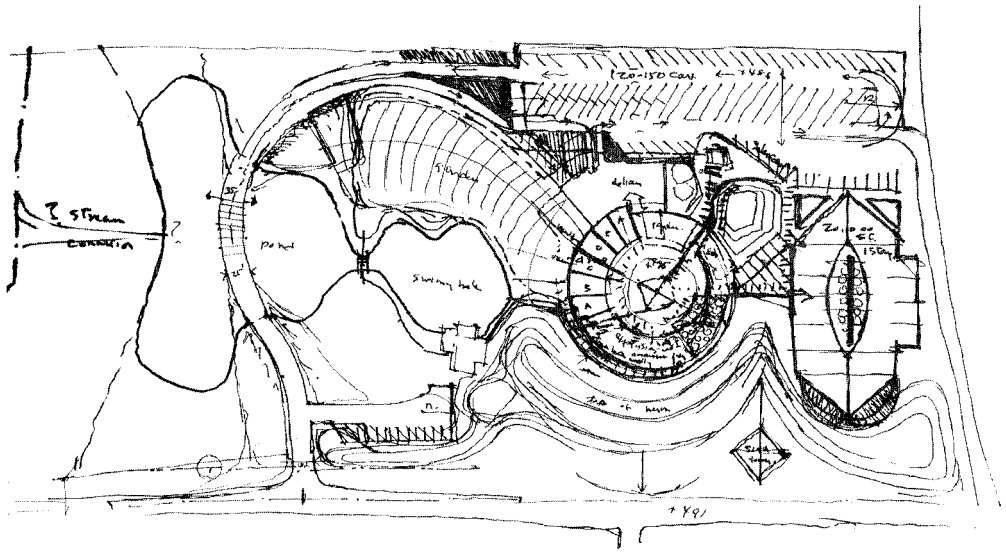


Fig. 1.4 *Conceptual design proposal for the Real Goods Solar Living Center. The general direction of design efforts is suggested in fairly strong terms (the "first, best moves"), yet details are left to be developed in later design phases. There is a clear focus on rich site development even at this stage—a focus that was carried throughout the project. (Drawing by Sim Van der Ryn; reprinted from* A Place in the Sun *with permission of Real Goods Trading Corporation.)*

building project. (The story of this remarkable project, and its design process, is chronicled in Schaeffer et al., 1997.) Generally, the purpose of conceptual design (Fig. 1.4) is to outline a general solution to the owner's program that meets the budget and captures the owner's imagination so that design can continue. All fundamental decisions about the proposed building should be made during conceptual design (not that things can't or won't change). During schematic design (Figs. 1.5 and 1.6), the

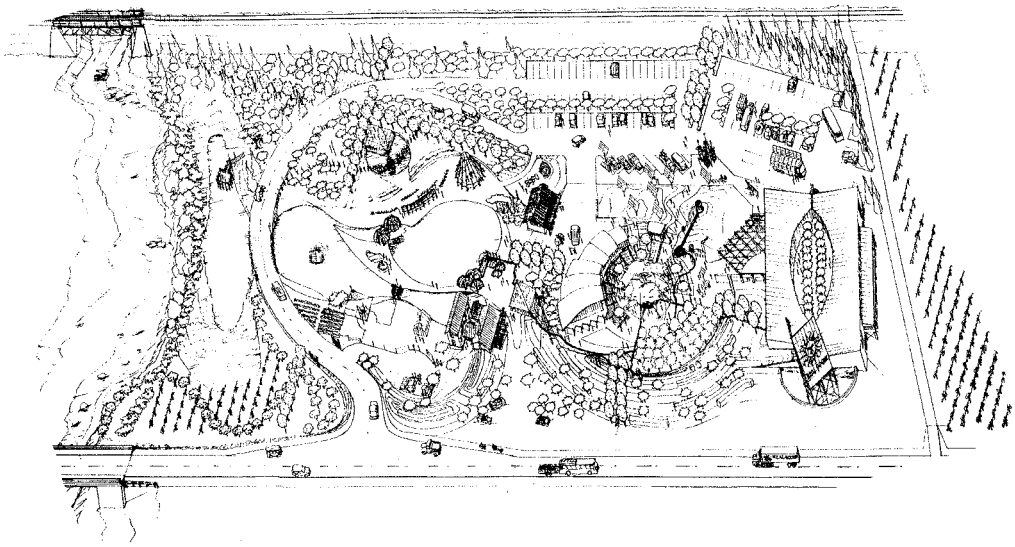


Fig. 1.5 *Schematic design proposal for the Real Goods Solar Living Center. As design thinking and analysis evolve, so does the specificity of a proposed design. Compare the level of detail provided at this phase with that shown in Fig. 1.4. Site development has progressed, and the building elements begin to take shape. The essence of the final solution is pretty well locked into place. (Drawing by David Arkin; reprinted from* A Place in the Sun *with permission of Real Goods Trading Corporation.)*



Fig. 1.6 *Scale model analysis of shading devices for the Real Goods Solar Living Center. This is the sort of detailed analysis that would likely occur during schematic design. (Photo, model, and analysis by Adam Jackaway; reprinted from* A Place in the Sun *with permission of Real Goods Trading Corporation.)*

conceptual solution is further developed and refined. During design development (Fig. 1.7), all decisions regarding a design solution are finalized, and construction drawings and specifications detailing those innumerable decisions are prepared.

The construction phase (Fig. 1.8) is primarily in the hands of the contractor, although design decisions determine what will be built and may dramatically affect constructability. The building owner and occupants are the key players during the occupancy phase (Fig. 1.9). Their experiences with the building will clearly be influenced by design decisions and construction quality, as well as by maintenance and operation practices. A feedback loop that allows construction and occupancy experiences (lessons—both good and bad) to be

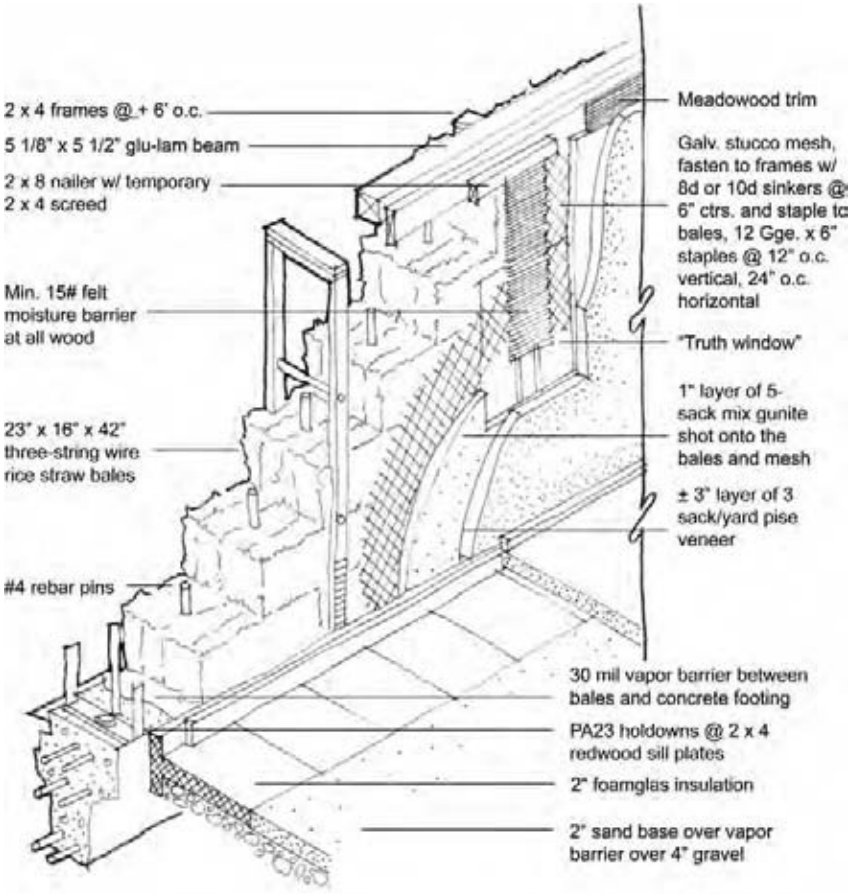


Fig. 1.7 *During design development the details that convert an idea into a building evolve. This drawing illustrates the development of working details for the straw bale wall system used in the Real Goods Solar Living Center. Material usage and dimensions are refined and necessary design analyses (thermal, structural, economic) completed. (Original drawing by David Arkin; reprinted from* A Place in the Sun *with permission of Real Goods Trading Corporation. Redrawn by Erik Winter.)*



Fig. 1.8 *Construction phase photo of Real Goods Solar Living Center straw bale walls. Design intent becomes reality during this phase. (Reprinted from* A Place in the Sun *with permission of Real Goods Trading Corporation.)*

used by the design team is essential to good design practice.

1.2 DESIGN INTENT

Design efforts should generally focus upon achieving a solution that will meet the expectations of a well-thought-out and explicitly defined design intent. Design intent is simply a statement that outlines the expected high-level outcomes of the design process. Making such a fundamental statement is critical to the success of a design, as it points to the general direction(s) that the design process must take to achieve success. Design intent should not try to capture the totality of a building's character; this will come only with the completion of the design. It should, however, adequately express the defining



Fig. 1.9 *The Real Goods Solar Living Center during its occupancy and operations phase. Formal and informal evaluation of the success of the design solution may (and should) occur. Lessons learned from these evaluations can inform future projects. This photo was taken during a Vital Signs case study training session held at the Solar Living Center. (© Cris Benton, kite aerial photographer and professor, University of California–Berkeley; used with permission.)*

characteristics of a proposed building solution. Example design intents (from among thousands of possibilities) might include the following:

- The building will provide outstanding comfort for its occupants.
- The design will consider the latest in information technology.
- The building will be green, with a focus on indoor environmental quality.
- The building will be carbon neutral.
- The building will provide a high degree of flexibility for its occupants.

Clear design intents are important because they set the tone for design efforts, allow all members of the design team to understand what is truly critical to success, provide a general direction for early design efforts, and put key or unusual design concerns on the table. Professor Larry Peterson, former director of the Florida Sustainable Communities Center, has described the earliest decisions in the design process as an attempt to make the "first, best moves." Strong design intent will inform such moves. Weak intent will result in a weak building. Great moves too late will be futile. The specificity of the design intent will evolve throughout the design process. *Outstanding comfort* during conceptual design may become *outstanding thermal, visual, and acoustic comfort* during schematic design.

1.3 DESIGN CRITERIA

Design criteria are the benchmarks against which success or failure in meeting design intent is measured. In addition to providing a basis against which to evaluate success, design criteria will ensure that all involved parties seriously address the technical and philosophical issues underlying the design intent. Setting design criteria demands the clarification and definition of many intentionally broad terms used in design intent statements. For example, what is really meant by *green*, by *flexibility*, by *comfort?* If such terms cannot be benchmarked, then there is no way for the success of a design to be evaluated—essentially anything goes, and all solutions are potentially equally valid. Fixing design criteria for qualitative issues (such as *exciting*, *relaxing*, or *spacious*) can be especially challenging, but equally important. Design criteria should be established as early in the design process as possible—certainly no later than the schematic design phase. As design criteria will define success or failure in a specific area of the building design process, they should be realistic and not subject to whimsical change. In many cases, design criteria will be used both to evaluate the success of a design approach or strategy and to evaluate the performance of a system or component in a completed building. Design criteria might include the following:

- Thermal conditions will meet the requirements of ASHRAE Standard 55-2004.
- The power density of the lighting system will be no greater than 0.7 W/ft^2.
- The building will achieve a Silver *LEED*® rating.
- Fifty percent of building water consumption will be provided by rainwater capture.
- Background sound levels in classrooms will not exceed RC 35.

1.4 METHODS AND TOOLS

Methods and tools are the means through which design intent is accomplished. They include design methods and tools, such as a heat loss calculation procedure or a sun angle calculator. They also include the components, equipment, and systems that collectively define a building. It is important that the right method or tool be used for a particular purpose. It is also critical that methods and tools (as means to an end) never be confused with either design intent (a desired end) or design criteria (benchmarks).

For any given design situation there are typically many valid and viable solutions available to the design team. It is important that none of these solutions be overlooked or ruled out due to design process short circuits. Although this may seem unlikely, methods (such as fire sprinklers, electric lighting, and sound absorption) are surprisingly often included as part of a design intent statement. Should this occur, all other possible (and perhaps desirable) solutions are ruled out by direct exclusion. This does not serve a client or occupants well, and is also a disservice to the design team.

This book is a veritable catalog of design guidelines, methods, equipment, and systems that serve

TABLE 1.1 Relationships between Design Intent, Design Criteria, and Design Tools/Methods

Issue	Design Intent	Possible Design Criterion	Potential Design Tools	Potential Implementation Method
Thermal comfort	Acceptable thermal comfort	Compliance with ASHRAE Standard 55	Standard 55 graphs/ tables or comfort software	Passive climate control and/or active climate control
Lighting level (illuminance)	Acceptable illuminance levels	Compliance with recommendations in the *IESNA Lighting Handbook*	Hand calculations or computer simulations	Daylighting and/or electric lighting
Energy efficiency	Minimal energy efficiency	Compliance with ASHRAE Standard 90.1	Handbooks, simulation software, manufacturer's data, experience	Envelope strategies and/or equipment strategies
Energy efficiency	Outstanding energy efficiency	Exceed the minimum requirements of ASHRAE Standard 90.1 by 25%	Handbooks, simulation software, manufacturer's data, experience	Envelope strategies and/or equipment strategies
Green design	Obtain green building certification	Meet the requirements for a LEED gold rating	LEED materials, handbooks, experience	Any combination of approved strategies to obtain sufficient rating points

as means and methods to desired design ends. Sorting through this extensive information will be easier with specific design intent and criteria in mind. Owner expectations and designer experiences will typically inform design intent. Sections of the book that address fundamental principles will provide assistance with establishment of appropriate design criteria. Table 1.1 provides examples of the relationships between design intent, design criteria, and tools/methods.

1.5 VALIDATION AND EVALUATION

To function as a knowledge-based profession, design (architecture and engineering) must reflect upon previous efforts and learn from existing buildings. Except in surprisingly rare situations, most building designs are generally unique—comprising a collection of elements not previously assembled in precisely the same way. Most buildings are essentially a design team hypothesis—"We believe that this solution will work for the given situation." Unfortunately, the vast majority of buildings exist as untested hypotheses. Little in the way of performance evaluation or structured feedback from the owner and occupants is typically sought. This is not to suggest that designers do not learn from their projects, but rather that little research-quality, publicly shared information is captured for use on other projects. This is clearly not an ideal model for professional practice.

(a) Conventional Validation/Evaluation Approaches

Design validation is very common, although perhaps more so when dealing with quantitative concerns than with qualitative issues. Many design validation approaches are employed, including hand calculations, computer simulations and modeling, physical models (of various scales and complexity), and opinion surveys. Numerous design validation methods are presented in this book. Simple design validation methods (such as broad approximations, lookup tables, or nomographs) requiring few decisions and little input data are typically used early in the design process. Later stages of design see the introduction of more complex methods (such as computer simulations or multistep hand calculations) requiring substantial and detailed input.

Building validation is much less common than design validation. Structured evaluations of occupied buildings are rarely carried out. Historically, the most commonly encountered means of validating

building performance is the post-occupancy evaluation (POE). Published POEs have typically focused upon some specific (and often nontechnical) aspect of building performance, such as way-finding or productivity. Building commissioning and case studies are finding more application as building validation approaches. Third-party validations, such as the Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) rating system, are also emerging.

(b) Commissioning

Building commissioning is an emerging approach to quality assurance. An independent commissioning authority (an individual or, more commonly, a team) verifies that equipment, systems, and design decisions can meet the owner's project requirements (design intent and criteria). Verification is accomplished through review of design documents and detailed testing of equipment and systems under conditions expected to be encountered with building use. Historically focused upon mechanical and electrical systems, commissioning is currently being applied to numerous building systems—including envelope, security, fire protection, and information systems. Active involvement of the design team is critical to the success of the commissioning process (ASHRAE, 2005; Grondzik, 2009).

(c) Case Studies

Case studies represent another emerging approach to design/construction validation and evaluation. The underlying philosophy of a case study is to capture information from a particular situation and convey the information in a way that makes it useful to a broader range of situations. A building case study attempts to present the lessons learned from one case in a manner that can benefit other cases (future designs). In North America, the Vital Signs and Agents of Change projects have focused upon disseminating a building performance case study methodology for design professionals and students—with an intentional focus upon occupied buildings (à la POEs). The American Institute of Architects has developed a series of case studies dealing with design process/practice. In the United Kingdom, numerous case studies have been conducted under the auspices of the PROBE (post-occupancy review of building engineering) project.

1.6 INFLUENCES ON THE DESIGN PROCESS

The design process often appears to revolve primarily around the needs of a client and the capabilities of the design team—as exemplified by the establishment of design intent and criteria. There are several other notable influences, however, that affect the conduct and outcome of the building design process. Some of these influences are historic and affect virtually every building project; others represent emerging trends and affect only selected projects. Several of these design-influencing factors are discussed below.

(a) Codes and Standards

The design of virtually every building in North America will be influenced by codes and standards. *Codes* are government-mandated and -enforced documents that stipulate minimum acceptable building practices. Designers usually interface with codes through an entity known as the *authority having jurisdiction*. There may be several such authorities for any given locale or project (fire protection requirements, for example, may be enforced separately from general building construction requirements or energy performance requirements). Codes essentially define the minimum that society deems acceptable. In no way is code compliance by itself likely to be adequate to meet the needs of a client. On the other hand, code compliance is indisputably necessary.

Codes may be written in prescriptive language or in performance terms. A *prescriptive* approach mandates that something be done in a certain way. Examples of prescriptive code requirements include minimum R-values for roof insulation, minimum pipe sizes for a roof drainage system, and a minimum number of hurricane clips per length of roof. The majority of codes in the United States are fundamentally prescriptive in nature. A prescriptive code defines means and methods. By contrast, a performance code defines intent. A *performance* approach states an objective that must be met. Examples of performance approaches to code requirements include a maximum permissible design heat flow through a building envelope, a minimum design rainfall that can be safely drained from a building roof, and a defined wind speed that will not damage

a roof construction. Some primarily prescriptive codes offer performance "options" for compliance. This is especially true of energy codes and smoke control requirements in fire protection codes.

Codes in the United States are in transition. Each jurisdiction (city, county, and/or state, depending upon legislation) is generally free to adopt whichever model code it deems most appropriate. Some jurisdictions (typically large cities) use homegrown codes instead of a model code. Historically, there were four model codes (the *Uniform Building Code*, the *Standard Building Code*, the *Basic Building Code*, and the *National Building Code*) that were used in various regions of the country. There is ongoing movement to development and use of a single model *International Building Code* to provide a more uniform and standardized set of code requirements. Canada recently adopted a major revision to its *National Building Code*. Knowledge of the current code requirements for a project is a critical element of the design process.

Standards are documents that present a set of minimum requirements for some aspect of building design that have been developed by a recognized authority (such as Underwriters Laboratories, the National Fire Protection Association, or the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers). Standards do not carry the weight of government enforcement that codes do, but they are often incorporated into codes via reference. Standards play an important role in building design and are often used by legal authorities to define the level of care expected of design professionals. Typically, standards have been developed under a consensus process with substantial opportunity for external review and input. *Guidelines* and *handbooks* are less formal than standards, usually with less review and/or consensus. *General practice*, the least formalized basis for design, captures the norm for a given locale or discipline. Table 1.2 provides examples of codes, standards, and related design guidance documents.

(b) Costs

Costs are a historic influence on the design process and are just as pervasive as codes. Typically, one of the earliest and strictest limits on design flexibility is the maximum construction budget imposed by the client. First cost (the cost for an owner to acquire the keys to a completed building) is the most commonly used cost factor. First cost is usually expressed as a maximum allowable construction cost or as a cost per unit area. Life-cycle cost (the cost for an owner to acquire and use a building for some defined period of time) is generally as important as, or more important than, first cost, but is often ignored by owners and usually not well understood by designers.

Over the life of a building, operating and maintenance costs can far exceed the cost to construct or acquire a building. Thus, whenever feasible, design decisions should be based upon life-cycle cost implications and not simply first cost. The math of life-cycle costing is not difficult. The primary difficulties in implementing life-cycle cost analysis are estimating future expenses and the uncertainty naturally associated with projecting future conditions. These are not as difficult as they might seem, however, and a number of well-developed life-cycle cost methodologies have been developed. Appendix I provides basic information on life-cycle cost factors and procedures. The design team may find life-cycle costing a persuasive ally in the quest to convince an owner to make important, but apparently expensive, decisions.

(c) Passive and Active Approaches

The distinction between passive and active systems may mean little to the average building owner, but it can be critical to the building designer and occupant. Development of passive systems must begin early in the design process, and requires early and continuous attention from the architectural designer. Passive system operation will often require the earnest cooperation and involvement of building occupants and users. Table 1.3 summarizes the identifying characteristics of passive and active systems approaches. These approaches are conceptually opposite in nature. Individual systems that embody both active and passive characteristics are often called hybrid systems. Hybrid systems are commonly employed as a means of tapping into the best aspects of both approaches.

The typical building will usually consist of both passive and active systems. Passive systems may be used for climate control, fire protection, lighting, acoustics, circulation, and/or sanitation. Active systems may also be used for the same purposes and for electrical distribution.

TABLE 1.2 Codes, Standards, and Other Design Guidance Documents

Document Type	Characteristics	Examples
Code 	Government-mandated and government-enforced (typically via the building and occupancy permit process); may be a legislatively adopted standard	Florida Building Code; California Title 24; Chicago Building Code; International Building Code (when adopted by a jurisdiction)
Standard 	Usually a consensus document developed by a professional organization under established procedures with opportunities for public review and input	ASHRAE Standard 90.1 (*Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*); ASTM E413-87 (*Classification for Rating Sound Insulation*); ASME A17.1 (*Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*)
Guideline 	Development is typically by a professional organization, but within a looser structure and with less public involvement than a standard	ASHRAE Guideline 0 (*The Commissioning Process*); IESNA Advanced Lighting Guidelines: NEMA LSD 12 (*Best Practices for Metal Halide Lighting Systems*)
Handbook, design guide 	Development can vary widely—involving formal committees and peer review or multiple authors without external review	*IESNA Lighting Handbook*; *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*; *NFPA Fire Protection Handbook*
Design guide 	Development by experienced practitioners and educators; offers schematic design process guidance implementation consideration, architectural implications, links to USGBC LEED checklist	Design guidelines, procedures; general sizing procedures, green design strategies, case studies
General practice 	The prevailing norm for design within a given community or discipline; least formal of all modes of guidance	System sizing approximations; generally accepted flashing details

Image Sources: code—used with permission of the International Code Council; standard—used with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; guideline and handbook—used with permission of the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; general practice—used with permission of John Wiley & Sons.

Acronyms: ASHRAE = American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; ASME = American Society of Mechanical Engineers; ASTM = ASTM International (previously American Society for Testing and Materials); IESNA = Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; NEMA = National Electrical Manufacturers Association; NFPA = National Fire Protection Association.

(d) Energy Efficiency

Some level of energy efficiency is a societally mandated element of the design process in most developed countries. Code requirements for energy-efficient building solutions were generally instituted as a result of the energy crises of the 1970s and have been updated on a periodic basis since then. As with all code requirements, mandated energy efficiency levels represent a minimum performance level that is considered acceptable—not an optimal performance level. Such acceptable minimum performance has evolved over time in response to changes in energy costs and availability, and also in

TABLE 1.3 Defining the Characteristics of Passive and Active Systems

Characteristic	Passive System	Active System
Energy source	Uses no purchased energy (electricity, natural gas, fuel oil, etc.)—example: daylighting system	Uses primarily purchased (and nonrenewable) energy—example: electric lighting system
System components	Components play multiple roles in system and in larger building—example: concrete floor slab that is structure, walking surface, and solar collector/storage	Components are commonly single-purpose elements—example: gas furnace
System integration	System is usually tightly integrated (often inseparably) with the overall building design—example: natural ventilation system using windows	System is usually not well integrated with the overall building design, often seeming an add-on—example: window air-conditioning unit
Passive and active systems represent opposing philosophical concepts. Design is seldom so straightforward as to permit the exclusive use of one philosophy. Thus, the hybrid system. Hybrid systems are a composite of active and passive approaches, typically leaning more toward the passive. For example, single-purpose, electricity-consuming (active) ceiling fans might be added to a natural ventilation (passive) cooling system to extend the performance of the system and thus reduce energy usage that would otherwise occur if a fully active air-conditioning system were turned on instead of the fans.		

response to changes in the costs and availability of building technology.

In the United States, ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 (published by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, cosponsored by the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America, and approved by the American National Standards Institute) is the most commonly encountered energy efficiency benchmark for commercial/institutional buildings. Some states (such as California and Florida) utilize state-specific energy codes. Residential energy efficiency requirements are addressed by several model codes and standards (including the *International Energy Code*, the *Model Energy Code*, and ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2). Appendix G provides a sample of energy efficiency requirements from Standard 90.1.

Energy efficiency requirements for residential buildings tend to focus upon minimum envelope (walls, floors, roofs, doors, windows) and mechanical equipment (heating, cooling, domestic hot water) performance. Energy efficiency requirements for commercial/institutional buildings address virtually every building system (including lighting and electrical distribution). Most energy codes present a set of prescriptive minimum requirements for individual building elements, with an option for an alternative means of compliance to permit innovation and/or a systems-based design approach.

Technically speaking, *efficiency* is simply the ratio of system output to system input. The greater the output for any given input, the higher the efficiency. This concept plays a large role in energy efficiency standards through the specification of minimum efficiencies for many items of mechanical and electrical equipment for buildings. *Energy conservation* implies saving energy by using less. This is conceptually different from efficiency but is an integral part of everyday usage of the term. Energy efficiency codes and standards include elements of conservation embodied in equipment control requirements or insulation levels. Because of negative connotations some associate with "conservation" (doing without), the term *energy efficiency* is generally used to describe both conservation and efficiency efforts.

Passive design solutions usually employ renewable energy resources. Several active design solutions, however, also utilize renewable energy forms. Energy conservation and efficiency concerns are typically focused upon minimizing depletion of nonrenewable energy resources. The use of renewable energy sources (such as solar radiation and wind) changes the perspective of the design team and the way compliance with energy efficiency codes/standards is evaluated. The majority of energy efficiency standards deal solely with on-site energy usage. Off-site energy consumption (for example, that required to transport fuel oil or natural gas, or the losses from electrical generation) is not addressed. This site-based focus can seriously

skew thinking about energy efficiency design strategies.

(e) Green Building Design Strategies

Green design considerations are increasingly becoming a part of the design process for many buildings. Green design goes well beyond energy-efficient design in order to address both the local and global impacts of building energy, water, and materials usage. Energy efficiency is a key, but not self-sufficient, element of green design. The concept broadly called "green design" arose from concerns about the wide-ranging environmental impacts of design decisions. Although there is no generally accepted concise definition of *green,* the term is typically understood to incorporate concern for the health and well-being of building occupants/users and respect for the larger global environment. A green building should maximize beneficial impacts on its direct beneficiaries while minimizing negative impacts on the site, local, regional, national, and global environments.

Several green design rating systems have found wide acceptance as benchmarks for design. These include the U.S. Green Building Council's LEED system, the Green Building Initiative's Green Globes Environmental Assessment system, and an international evaluation methodology entitled GBTool. Somewhat similar rating systems are in use in the United Kingdom and Canada. A code-language set of green building design requirements is being developed by a coalition of professional organizations under the auspices of ASHRAE Standard 189 (*Standard for the Design of High-Performance Green Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*). The LEED system presents a palette of design options from which the design team can select strategies appropriate for a particular building (Fig. 1.10) and its context. Amassing points for selected strategies provides a means of attaining green building status—at one of several levels of achievement, via a formal certification procedure. Prerequisite design strategies (including baseline energy efficiency and acceptable indoor air quality) provide an underpinning for the optional strategies.

The emergence of green building rating systems has greatly rationalized design intent and design criteria in this particular area of architecture. Prior to the advent of LEED (or GBTool), anyone could claim greenness for his/her designs. Although green design is entered into voluntarily (no codes currently require it, although a number of municipalities require new public buildings to be green), there are now generally accepted standards against which performance can be measured. Appendix G provides an excerpt from the LEED green building rating system.

(f) Carbon-Neutral Design

Climate change and global warming are growing concerns in the design community, as evidenced by the positive response of many professional organizations to the 2030 Challenge (and the related 2010 Imperative) issued by Architecture 2030



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 1.10 *(a) The Jean Vollum Natural Capital Center, Portland, Oregon. A warehouse from the industrial era was rehabilitated by Ecotrust to serve as a center for the conservation era. (b) LEED plaque on the front façade of the Vollum Center. The plaque announces the success of the design team (and owner) in achieving a key element of their design intent. (Photos © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

(Architecture 2030). Design to reduce carbon emissions is becoming an issue on many building projects. The term *carbon-neutral design* is generally used to express this concern and accurately represents a key design intent in a number of innovative projects. The Aldo Leopold Legacy Center in Baraboo, Wisconsin, is an exciting example of such a project (Leopold).

Carbon dioxide (CO_2) is a major greenhouse gas; methane is another. Greenhouse gases trap heat below the Earth's atmosphere in the same way that glass traps heat from solar radiation in a greenhouse (or passive solar heating system). This trapping of heat increases temperatures and leads to climate change (ASES). Buildings are important contributors to carbon dioxide emissions and are therefore logical targets for mitigation in an attempt to reduce global warming. See Fig. 1.11 for an estimate of the role buildings play in producing CO_2 emissions.

Buildings produce carbon dioxide in three major ways: as a result of vehicle use associated with building functions and siting; as a result of energy consumption for heating, cooling, and building support operations; and through the disposal of waste organic construction materials that decompose. Waste produced by a building in operation can also contribute to CO_2 production—but this may be harder to engage as a part of the design process. Of the three main carbon release mechanisms, energy consumption for building operation is the largest contributor and the most readily available target for reductions. Energy use itself is not the carbon culprit, but rather the use of fossil fuels to produce the energy (Kwok).

Options for reducing carbon emissions from the operation of building systems include: improving the efficiency of building envelopes and systems (the ultimate, and unrealistic, goal being a zero-energy project); using renewable energy to meet the energy needs that remain after aggressive efficiency moves (the goal being a net-zero-energy building); and purchasing or obtaining carbon offsets (or credits) to mitigate the effects of residual carbon emissions not stemmed by efficiency and renewables.

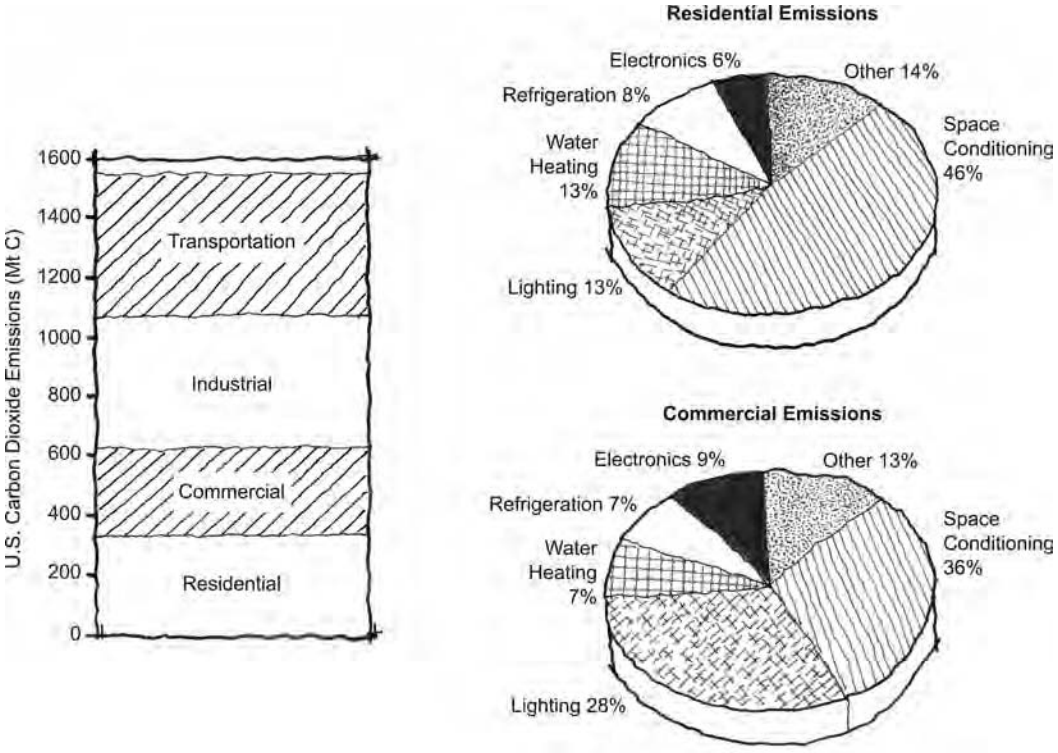


Fig. 1.11 *Contribution of the buildings sector (commercial and residential) to U.S. carbon dioxide emissions (MtC = million metric tons of carbon dioxide), and the relative impact of various use categories on commercial and residential carbon impacts. (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering. Source:* 2005 Buildings Energy Data Book, *U.S. Department of Energy, Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy.)*

Carbon credits are somewhat controversial, being akin to buying one's way out of trouble—but are an appropriate means of reducing carbon impacts beyond what can reasonably be achieved by design solutions.

At this time, there is no code, standard, or guideline that defines "carbon-neutral" and only limited formal design guidance to assist in reaching that goal (SBSE). This situation should change fairly quickly as interest in and demand for carbon-neutral projects grow.

(g) Design Strategies for Sustainability

Unlike green design, the meaning of "sustainability" in architecture has not yet been rationalized. The term *sustainable* is used freely—and often mistakenly—to describe a broad range of intents and performances. This is unfortunate, as it tends to make sustainability a meaningless term—and sustainability is far too important a concern to be meaningless. For the purposes of this book, sustainability will be defined as follows (paraphrasing the Brundtland Commission): *Sustainability involves meeting the needs of today's generation without detracting from the ability of future generations to meet their needs.*

Sustainability is essentially long-term survival. In architectural terms, sustainability involves the survival of an existing standard of living into future generations. From an energy, water, and materials standpoint, sustainability can be argued to require zero net use of nonrenewable resources. Any long-term removal of nonrenewable resources from the environment will surely impair the ability of future generations to meet their needs (with fewer resources available, as a result of our actions). Because sustainability is so important a concept and objective, the term should not be used lightly. It is highly unlikely that any single building built in today's economic environment can be sustainable (yielding no net resource depletion). Sustainability at the community scale is more probable; examples, however, are rare.

(h) Regenerative Design Strategies

Energy efficiency is an attempt to use less energy to accomplish a given design objective (such as thermal comfort or adequate lighting). Green design is an attempt to maximize the positive effects of design while minimizing the negative ones—with respect to energy, water, and material resources. Sustainable design is an attempt to solve today's problems while reserving adequate resources to permit future generations to solve their problems. Energy efficiency is a constituent of green design. Green design is a constituent of sustainable design. *Regenerative design* steps out beyond sustainability.

The goal of energy efficiency is to reduce net negative energy impacts. The goal of green design is to reduce net negative environmental impacts. The goal of sustainability is to produce no net negative environmental impacts. The goal of regenerative design is to produce a net positive environmental impact—to leave the world better off with respect to energy, water, and materials. Obviously, if design for sustainability is difficult, then regenerative design is even more difficult. Nevertheless, there are some interesting examples of regenerative design projects, including the Eden Project in the United Kingdom and the Center for Regenerative Studies (Fig. 1.12) in the United States. Both projects involve substantial site remediation and innovative design solutions.

1.7 A PHILOSOPHY OF DESIGN

From a design process perspective, the operating philosophy of this book is that development of appropriate design intent and criteria is critical to the successful design of buildings and their mechanical and electrical systems. Passive systems should generally be used before active systems (this in no way denigrates active systems, which will be necessary features of almost any building); life-cycle costs should be considered instead of simply first cost; and green design is a desirable intent that will ensure energy efficiency and provide a pathway toward sustainability. Design validation, commissioning, and post-occupancy evaluation should be aggressively pursued.

John Lyle presented an interesting approach to design (that elaborates upon this general philosophy) in his book *Regenerative Design for Sustainable Development*. The following discussion presents an overview of his approach. The strategies provide design teams with varied opportunities to integrate site and building design with components and processes. Those strategies most applicable to

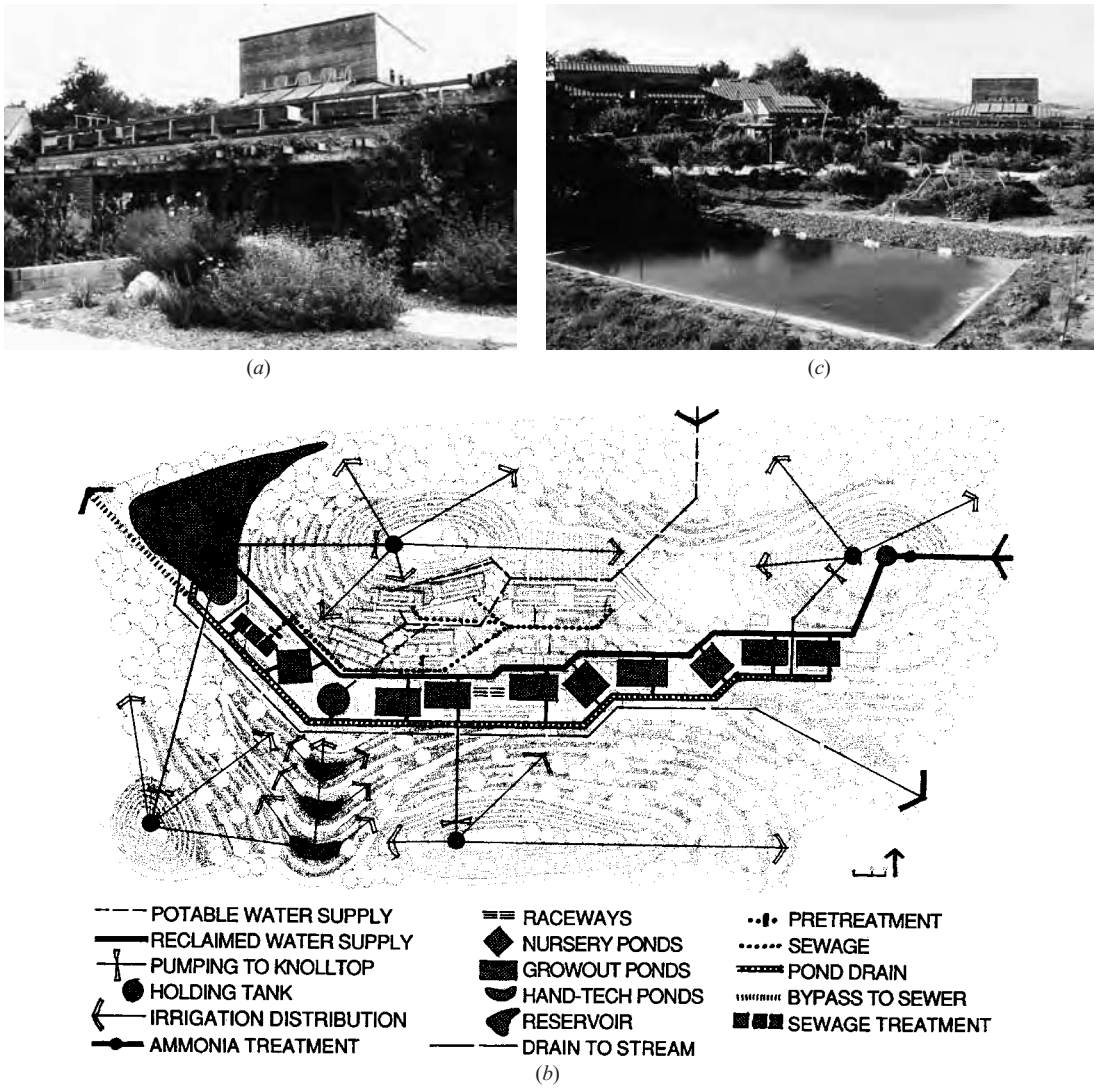


Fig. 1.12 *(a) The Center for Regenerative Studies (CRS), California Polytechnic State University–Pomona. (b) Site plan for the CRS. It's not easy being regenerative—the highlighted elements relate only to the water reclamation aspects of the project. (c) Plants provide water treatment and generate biomass in an aquacultural pond at the Center for Regenerative Studies, Cal Poly–Pomona. (Photos © 2004 Alison Kwok; drawing from John Tillman Lyle. 1994.* Regenerative Design for Sustainable Development*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York.)*

the design of mechanical and electrical systems are presented here. This approach guided the design of the Center for Regenerative Studies at the California Polytechnic State University at Pomona, California (Fig. 1.12).

(a) Let Nature Do the Work

This principle expresses a preference for natural/passive processes over mechanical/active processes. Designers can usually find ways to use natural processes on site (Fig. 1.13), where they occur, in place of dependence upon services from remote/nonrenewable sources. Smaller buildings on larger sites are particularly good candidates for this strategy.

(b) Consider Nature As Both Model and Context

A look at this book reveals a strong reliance upon physical laws as a basis for design. Heat flow,



Fig. 1.13 *Letting nature do the work—via daylighting. Mt. Angel Abbey Library, St. Benedict (Mt. Angel), Oregon, designed by Alvar Aalto. (Photo by Amanda Clegg.)*

water flow, electricity, light, and sound follow rules described by physics. This principle, however, suggests looking at nature (Fig. 1.12) for biological, in addition to the classical physical, models for design. The use of a Living Machine to process building wastes, as opposed to a conventional sewage treatment plant, is an example of where this strategy might lead.

(c) Aggregate Rather Than Isolate

This strategy recommends that designs focus upon systems, and not just upon the parts that make up a system—in essence, seeing the forest through the trees. The components of a system should be highly integrated to ensure workable linkages among the parts and the success of the whole. An example would be optimizing the solar heating performance of a direct-gain system involving glazing, floor slab, insulation, and shading components, while perhaps reducing the performance of one or more constituent parts (Fig. 1.14).

(d) Match Technology to the Need

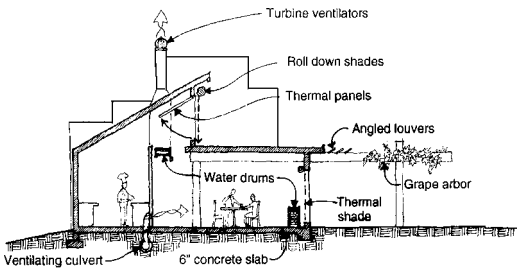
This strategy seeks to avoid using high-grade resources for low-grade tasks. For example, it is obviously wasteful to flush toilets with purified water, but perhaps less obviously wasteful (but equally a mismatch) to use electricity (a very-high-grade energy form) to heat water for bathing. The corollary to this strategy is to think small, think simple, and think locally (Fig. 1.15).

(e) Seek Common Solutions to Disparate Problems

This approach requires breaking out of the box of categories and classifications. An understanding of systems should lead to an increased awareness of systems capabilities—which will often prove to be multidisciplinary and multifunctional. Making a design feature (Fig. 1.16) serve multiple tasks



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 1.14 *Aggregating, not isolating. (a) The Cottage Restaurant, Cottage Grove, Oregon. (b) This section through the restaurant illustrates the substantial integration and coordination (aggregation) of elements typical of passive design solutions. (Photo by Lisa Leal; drawing by Michael Cockram;* *© 1998 by John S. Reynolds, A.I.A.; all rights reserved.**)*



Fig. 1.15 *Match technology to the need. Sometimes it's the simple things that count. (Photo © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

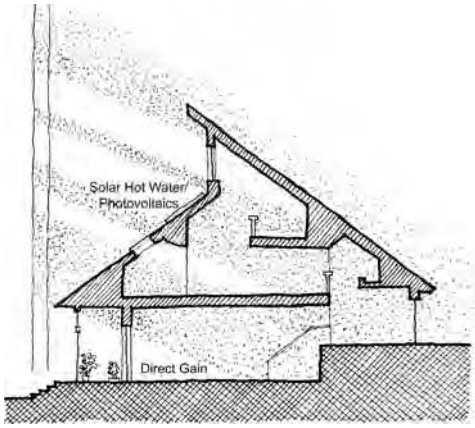


Fig. 1.17 *Shaping the form to the flow. Using a "band of sun" analysis as a solar form giver (see Chapter 3 for further details). (Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

(perhaps mechanical, electrical, and architectural in nature) is one way to counteract the potential problem of a higher first cost for green design features. Solutions can be as simple and low-tech as using heat from garden composting to help warm a greenhouse.



Fig. 1.16 *Seek common solutions. The "atrium" of the Hood River County Library, Hood River, Oregon, provides a central hub for the library, daylighting, views (spectacular), and stack ventilation. (Photo © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

(f) Shape the Form to Guide the Flow

The most obvious examples of this strategy are solar-heated buildings that are shaped (Fig. 1.17) to gather winter sun, or naturally ventilated buildings shaped to collect and channel prevailing winds. Daylighting is another obvious place to apply the "form follows flow" strategy, which can have a dramatic impact upon building design efforts and outcomes.

(g) Shape the Form to Manifest the Process

This is more than a variation on the adage "If you've got it, flaunt it." This strategy asks that a building inform its users and visitors about how it works both inside and out (Fig. 1.18). In passive solar-heated and passively cooled buildings, much of the thermal performance is evident in the form of the exterior envelope and the interior space, rather than hidden in a closet or mechanical penthouse. Professor David Orr of Oberlin College addresses this issue succinctly by asking, "What can a building teach?"

(h) Use Information to Replace Power

This strategy addresses both the design process and building operations. Knowledge is suggested as a substitute for brute force (and associated energy waste). Designs informed by an understanding of resources, needs, and systems capabilities will tend to be more effective (successfully meeting intent)

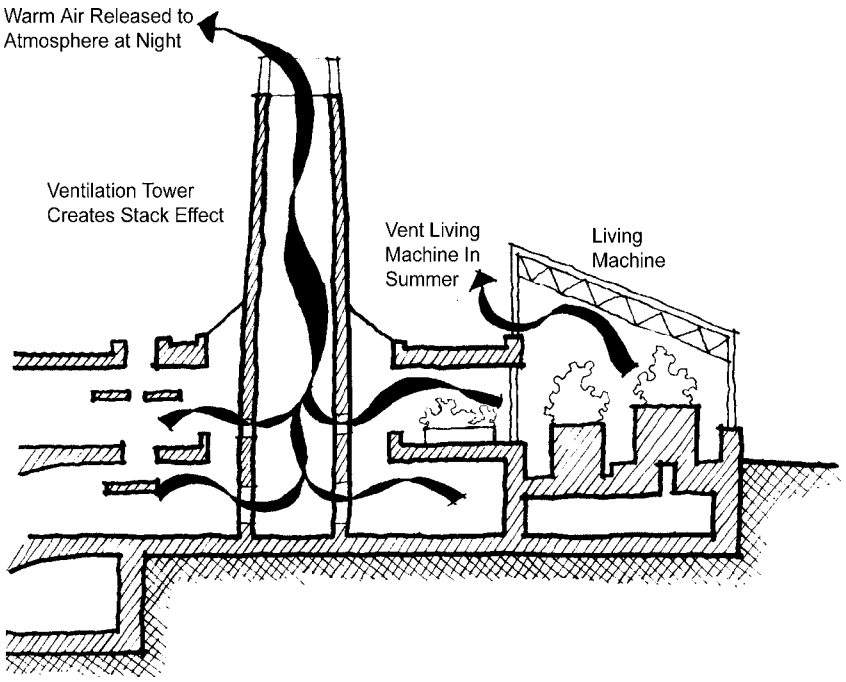


Fig. 1.18 *Shaping the form to the process. Stack effect ventilation is augmented by the building form in this proposal for the EPICenter project, Bozeman, Montana. (Courtesy of Place Architecture LLC, Bozeman, Montana, and Berkebile Nelson Immenschuh McDowell Architects, Kansas City, Missouri. Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

and efficient (meeting intent using less energy) than uninformed designs. Building operations informed by feedback and learning (Fig. 1.19) will tend to be more effective and efficient than static, unchangeable operating modes. Users of buildings can play a leading role in this approach by being allowed to make decisions about when to do what in order to maintain desired conditions. Reliance

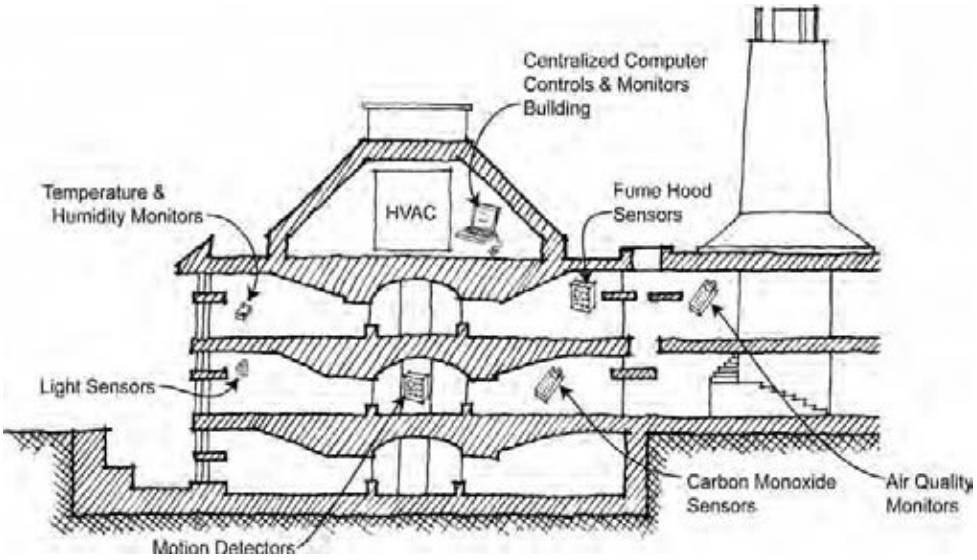


Fig. 1.19 *Use information to replace power. Section showing intelligent control system components for the proposed EPICenter project, Bozeman, Montana. (Courtesy of Place Architecture LLC, Bozeman, Montana, and Berkebile Nelson Immenschuh McDowell Architects, Kansas City, Missouri. Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

on a building's users is not so much a direct energy saver—most controls use very little power—as it is an education. A user who understands how a building receives and conserves heat in cold weather is likely to respond by lowering the indoor temperature and reducing heat leaks. Furthermore, some studies of worker comfort indicate that with more personal control (such as operable windows), workers express feelings of comfort across a wider range of temperatures than with centrally controlled air conditioning.

(i) Provide Multiple Pathways

This strategy celebrates functional redundancy as a virtue—for example, providing multiple and separate fire stairs for emergency egress. There are many other examples, from backup heating and cooling systems, to multiple water reservoirs and piping pathways for fire sprinklers, to emergency electrical and lighting systems. This strategy also applies to climate–site–building interactions in which one site-based resource may temporarily weaken and can be replaced by another (Fig. 1.20).

(j) Manage Storage

Storage is used to help balance needs and resources across time. Storage appears as an issue throughout this book. The greater the variations in the resource supply cycle, the more critical storage management becomes. Rainwater can be stored in cisterns, balancing normal daily demands for water against variable monthly supplies. The high variability of wind-generated electricity output can be managed with hydrogen storage, providing a combustible fuel that can be drawn on at a rate and time independent of wind speed.

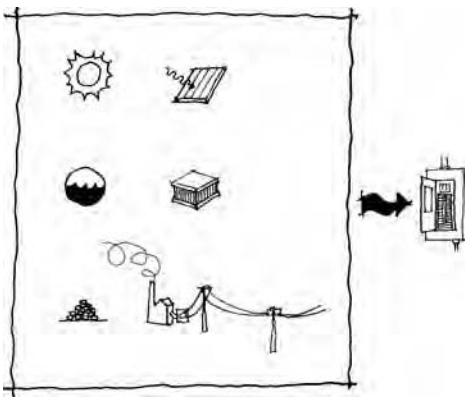


Fig. 1.20 *Providing multiple pathways. Three distinct sources of electricity are projected in this conceptual diagram for the proposed EPICenter project, Bozeman, Montana. (Courtesy of Place Architecture LLC, Bozeman, Montana, and Berkebile Nelson Immenschuh McDowell Architects, Kansas City, Missouri. Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*



Fig. 1.21 *Manage storage. A concrete floor and barrels located high along the north wall provide thermal storage (for both heating and cooling) in the Cottage Restaurant, Cottage Grove, Oregon. (Photo by G. Z. Brown.)*

On sunny winter days, a room's excess solar energy can be stored in its thermally massive surfaces (Fig. 1.21), to be released at night. On cool summer nights, *coolth* (the conceptual opposite of heat) can be stored in these same surfaces and used to condition the room by day. Most storage solutions will strongly impact building architecture.

1.8 LESSONS FROM THE FIELD

Bill Bordass, with the Usable Buildings Trust in the United Kingdom, has occasionally presented the Society of Building Science Educators (SBSE) listserve with summaries of lessons learned through extensive post-occupancy evaluation (POE) studies of buildings. This chapter is an appropriate place to digest some of the design recommendations that flow from these findings.

Bordass notes that building design features tend to have four attributes, sometimes possessing these attributes simultaneously:

- Physical: Fit and forget—if the designer and contractor have done a good job, the feature does its job and users can take it for granted.

- Administrative: Fit and manage—the feature needs looking after, and the question arises: Are the vigilance demands clear to the client and the operator? Often design features turn out to be more demanding on the operator than is realized at the time of design.
- Behavioral: Implement and internalize—the users have to understand the feature to make effective use of it. Often, however, the design intent is not clear, the feature has not been properly delivered, how it should be used has not been explained to the occupants, and use does not make sense or go with the flow of occupancy, even if explained.
- Perverse: Risk and freedom—often design features have both good and bad effects; it is easy for designers to get excited by the good ones and forget about the bad ones.

An intriguing recommendation, based upon the results of the Usable Buildings Trust POE studies is: "Keep it simple and do it well, and only after that begin to be clever." This guidance can be illustrated in the following sets of words to guide the wise designer:

- Process before product—then product and back to process
- Passive before active
- Simple before complicated
- Better before more
- 80 before 20 (use design time wisely)
- Robust before fragile
- Self-managing before managed
- Efficient before elaborate
- Trickle before boost
- Intelligible before intelligent
- Usable before alienating
- Forgiving before demanding
- Assets before nuisances
- Response before provision
- Off before on
- Cellular before open
- Experience before hope
- Thought before action
- Horses before carts

1.9 CASE STUDY—DESIGN PROCESS

Gilman Ordway Campus of the Woods Hole Research Center

PROJECT BASICS

- Location: Falmouth, Massachusetts, USA
- Latitude: 41.3 N; longitude: 70.4 W; elevation: near sea level
- Heating degree days: 5426 base 65ºF (3014 base 18.3ºC); cooling degree days: 2973 base 50ºF (1652 base 10ºC); annual precipitation: 45.5 in. (1156 mm) (degree day data are for New Bedford; rainfall is for Woods Hole)
- Building type: Remodeled and new construction; commercial offices and laboratory
- Building area: 19,200 ft^2 (1784 m^2); four occupied stories
- Completed February 2003
- Client: Woods Hole Research Center
- Design team: William McDonough + Partners (and consultants)

Background. The Gilman Ordway Campus of the Woods Hole Research Center includes both new construction and extensive remodeling of a venerable old house to provide office and laboratory facilities. This recently opened building has generated a lot of interest. The clients are quite pleased with the facility and are using it as a vehicle to promote awareness of the environment and green design. The Research Center won an American Institute of Architects/Committee on the Environment (AIA/COTE) Top Ten Green Project award and was the site of an Agents of Change POE training session. (The discussion that follows was extracted from information provided by William McDonough + Partners and the Woods Hole Research Center.)

Context. The work of the Woods Hole Research Center is focused upon the related issues of climate change and defending the world's great forests. When a new headquarters was considered, it was decided that the facility should

reflect the Research Center's core values, support its research and education mission, and provide a healthy environment for building occupants and the outside world. Fund-raising was a major issue for this project and substantially impacted the design process and scheduling. Perhaps the most valuable lesson to be learned from this project is the inestimable value of perseverance and the benefit that a clearly enunciated set of objectives (design intent and criteria) can provide in seeing a donor-supported project through to completion.

Design Intent. The Woods Hole Research Center project sought to demonstrate that a modern building can "harmonize with a habitable earth" while providing a healthy, comfortable, and enjoyable workplace. Enhanced productivity and job satisfaction for employees were key intents, as was far-beyond-code-minimum energy performance. In addition, the building was to serve as a teaching tool, providing an exemplar of a thoughtful approach to energy production and use, water quality and conservation, site design, and materials selection.

Design Criteria and Validation. The aggressive energy performance criteria set by the client and design team required the use of ENERGY 10 computer simulations and the ongoing services of an energy systems consultant. Interestingly, this same

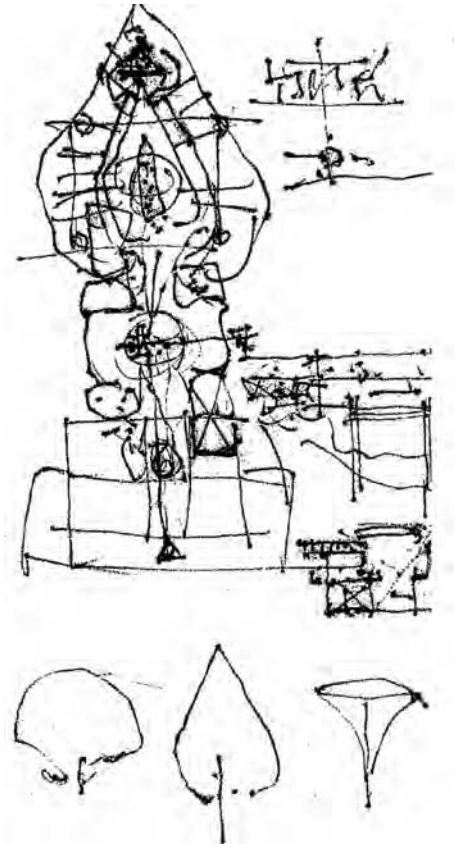


Fig. 1.22 *Initial concept sketch for the Woods Hole Research Center (WHRC)—the "leaf." This is an exceptional example of a conceptual design phase product. (© William McDonough + Partners; used with permission.)*

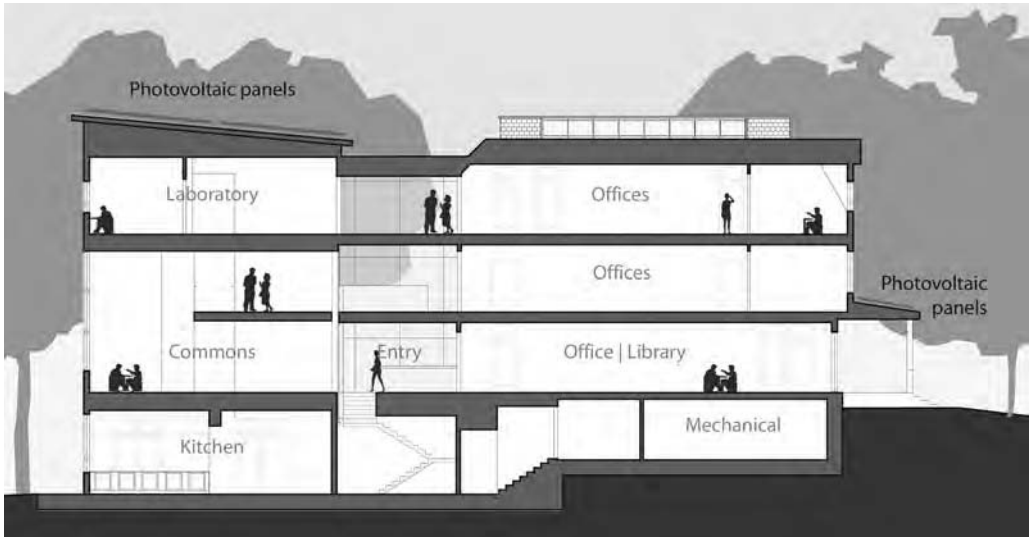


Fig. 1.23 *Schematic design phase section through WHRC showing spatial organization and photovoltaic array locations. (© William McDonough + Partners; used with permission.)*

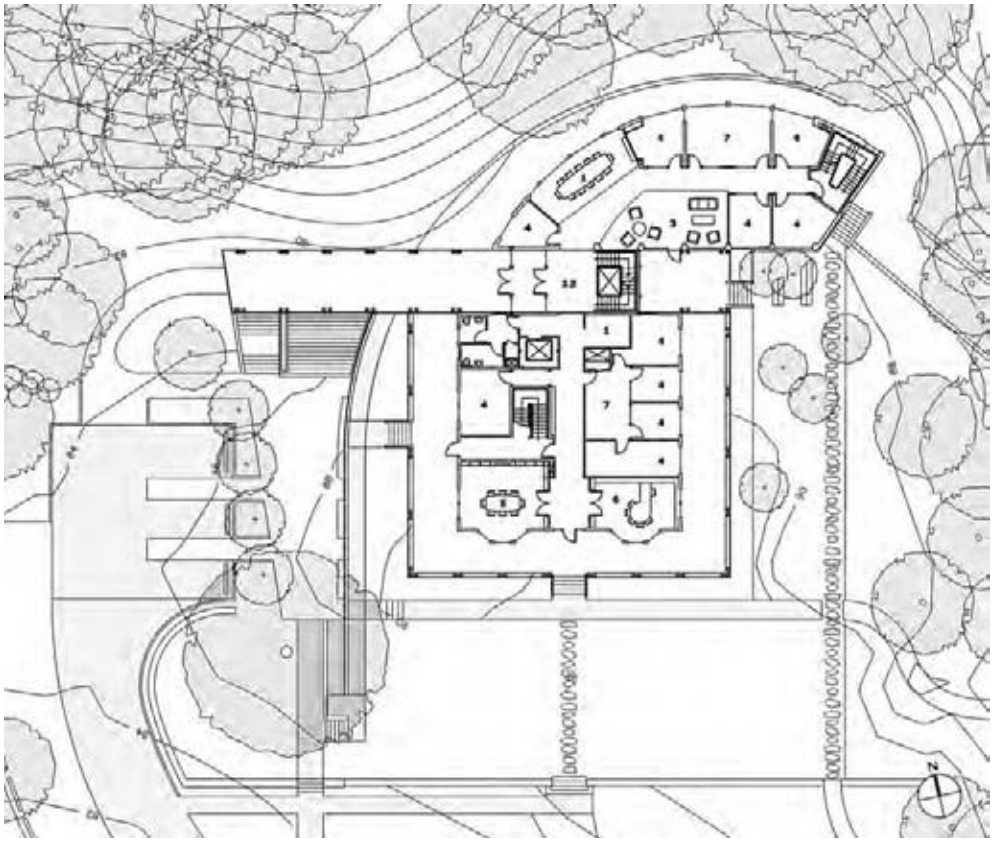


Fig. 1.24 *The site/floor plan of WHRC is representative of the evolution of a project as it moves into and through the design development phase. (© William McDonough + Partners; used with permission.)*

strong energy-related design intent allowed the retention of critical mechanical system elements during an extensive value engineering phase that cut approximately 15% from the construction budget. The owner retained an independent authority for building commissioning.

Key Design Features

- Extensive daylighting throughout the building
- Operable windows throughout the building
- An exceptionally tight and carefully detailed building envelope featuring triple-glazed windows and Icynene foam insulation (also an air barrier)



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 1.25 *Construction phase photos of WHRC: (a) showing the structure for the new addition and the existing house being remodeled, (b) showing the merger of new and remodeled parts of the building as the envelope enclosure is finalized. (© William McDonough + Partners; used with permission.)*



Fig. 1.26 *Exterior photo of the completed and occupied WHRC. (Photo © Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

- A Ruck wastewater system, 95% on-site retention of stormwater, and collection of rainwater for site irrigation
- A ground source heat pump system for heating and cooling (coupled with a valence delivery system in office spaces)
- A rooftop, net-metered, photovoltaic array

Post-Occupancy Validation Methods. The client has installed an extensive energy-monitoring and -reporting system. Data collected by this system are available to the public via the World Wide Web (see For Further Information, at the end of this section) and are also being used internally to optimize systems operations. Soils scientists from the Center are studying the effectiveness of the innovative septic system. In addition, the client has a very open and reflective attitude toward evaluation of the building and its systems. With a relatively small number of occupants, informal exchanges among Research Center users appear to be proving an effective means of POE.

Performance Data. As this is a case study of design process as much as of a building, much of the following performance information relates to process outcomes.

- The building design received an AIA/COTE Top Ten Green Projects Award (2004).
- Measured data from the first year of occupancy show an energy consumption of about 20,000 Btu/ft^2 (227,200 kJ/m^2) per year; this is



Fig. 1.27 *Bird's-eye view of the occupied WHRC building and site. Photovoltaic panels are a prominent feature on the roof. (© Cris Benton, kite aerial photographer and professor, University of California–Berkeley; used with permission.)*

roughly 25% of the consumption of a typical office building and a 75% reduction from the energy density of the Research Center's previous facility.

- A grant from the Massachusetts Renewable Energy Trust allowed installation of a photovoltaic array consisting of 88 panels (each at 25 ft^2 [2.3 m^2]) that is expected to provide 37,000 kWh annually (about 40% of the building's power needs).
- All of the interior finish woodwork is a Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) certified sustainably harvested product; exterior wood finishes are also FSC certified, including cedar shingles and siding and Brazilian *ipé* wood for the extensive porch, deck, and entrance stairway.
- Paints and coatings meet low volatile organic compound (VOC) criteria; no carpet is used in the building.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION

Summary and real-time energy performance data for the Woods Hole Research Center building can be accessed at: http://www.whrc.org/building/

A description of the building and design process can be found at: http://www.aiatopten.org/hpb/overview.cfm?ProjectID=257

References and Resources

Agents of Change. Department of Architecture, University of Oregon. http://aoc.uoregon.edu/

Aldo Leopold Legacy Center: http://www.aldoleopold.org/legacycenter/

ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA. 2007. Standard 90.1: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ANSI/ASHRAE. 2004. Standard 55: *Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Architecture 2030: http://www.architecture2030.org/

ASES. 2007. *Tackling Climate Change in the U.S.* C. Kutscher (ed.). American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

ASHRAE. 2005. *Guideline 0: The Commissioning Process.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Fuller, S. K. and S. R. Peterson. 1995. *Life-Cycle Costing Manual for the Federal Energy Management Program.* National Institute of Standards and Technology. Gaithersburg, MD. http://fire.nist.gov/bfrlpubs/

GBI. Green Globes Environmental Assessment. Green Building Initiative: http://www.greenglobes.com/

Grondzik, W. 2009. *Principles of Building Commissioning*. John Wiley & Sons. Hoboken, NJ.

ICC. 2006. *International Building Code.* International Code Council. Falls Church, VA.

ICC. 2006. *International Energy Conservation Code.* International Code Council. Falls Church, VA.

Kwok, A. (ed.). 2009. *Zero Net Energy Workshop and Design Charrette*. University of Oregon Center for Housing Innovation. http://www.lulu.com/content/paperback-book/zero-net-energy-workshop-and-design-charrette/7297327

Lyle, J. T. 1996. *Regenerative Design for Sustainable Development.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

McLennan, J. R. 2004. *The Philosophy of Sustainable Design.* ECOTone Publishing Company, LLC. Kansas City, MO.

NRC. 1995. *National Building Code of Canada.* National Research Council Canada, Institute for Research in Construction. Ottawa, ON.

Preiser, W. F. E. (ed.). 1989. *Building Evaluation.* Plenum Press. New York.

Real Goods Solar Living Center: http://www.solarliving.org/index.cfm

SBSE. 2009. Carbon-Neutral Design Resources. Society of Building Science Educators. http://www.sbse.org/resources/index.htm

Schaeffer, J. et al. 1997. *A Place in the Sun: The Evolution of the Real Goods Solar Living Center.* Chelsea Green Publishing Company. White River Junction, VT.

Usable Buildings: http://www.usablebuildings.co.uk/

U.S. Department of Energy. 2005. *2005 Buildings Energy Data Book*. Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy. Washington, DC. (Regularly updated.)

USGBC. LEED Rating System: http://www.usgbc.org/

Vital Signs. Center for Environmental Design Research, University of California–Berkeley: http://arch.ced.berkeley.edu/vitalsigns/

Wells, M. *Wilderness-Based Checklist for Design and Construction*: http://www.sbse.org/resources/docs/wells_checklist_explanation.pdf

World Commission on Environment and Development. 1987. *Our Common Future* (the Brundtland Report). Oxford University Press. Oxford, UK.

CHAPTER 2

Environmental Resources

THE DESIGNER OF TODAY'S BUILDINGS will add or reshape spaces on a planet that has, for eons, evolved by using renewable energy arriving from the sun at a generally fixed and limited rate. Suddenly (in geologic time) our planet is experiencing population growth, nonrenewable resource depletion, and apparently global warming. Today's designers have available a vast, yet declining, reservoir of material resources, fossil fuel energy, and water. The building design professions thrive on a rapidly increasing population, each person consuming more resources than did her/his grandparents. Eventually, our planet must live within a fixed budget of renewable energy, water, and material resources. The question is: How can our present building designs best move toward this necessary accommodation with sustainability? How can building designers be environmentally proactive instead of simply reactive?

Population growth is both the source of much of our work as buildings professionals and the underlying source of our greatest problems. Our planet did not support a human population of 1 billion until about 1830, at which time the United States depended almost entirely upon the renewable energy sources of fuel wood and work animals; interior lighting was provided by burning oil or gas. In less than 200 years, 4 billion more people were added to our planet, and the United States shifted to almost total dependence upon nonrenewable fuels: coal, oil, and natural gas (Fig. 2.1). Another 1 billion in population is expected around the year 2010. The building design process plays an active role in deciding where these people will live and work and how much of what kinds of resources they will use. The mechanical and electrical systems that support our new buildings can be part of a growing problem or an important start to a solution.

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Buildings depend upon energy and matter for their very existence and must pay heed to several fundamental rules of science. The First Law of Thermodynamics establishes the conservation of energy and matter (energy/matter can neither be created nor destroyed) and essentially states that you cannot get something for nothing. The Second Law of Thermodynamics expresses the tendency toward disorder that is part of the normal nature of things. Entropy is a measure of such disorder; as disorder increases, so does entropy. The Second Law is a declaration against perpetual motion, and essentially states that not only can't you get something for nothing, you can't even break even, due to unavoidable losses (disorder) that contribute to increased entropy.

The construction and operation of buildings are fundamentally ordering processes. Materials are mined or harvested, refined or shaped, placed in manufactured products, transported to a building site, and assembled. All of these processes consume energy and materials as the various building systems are established. The operation

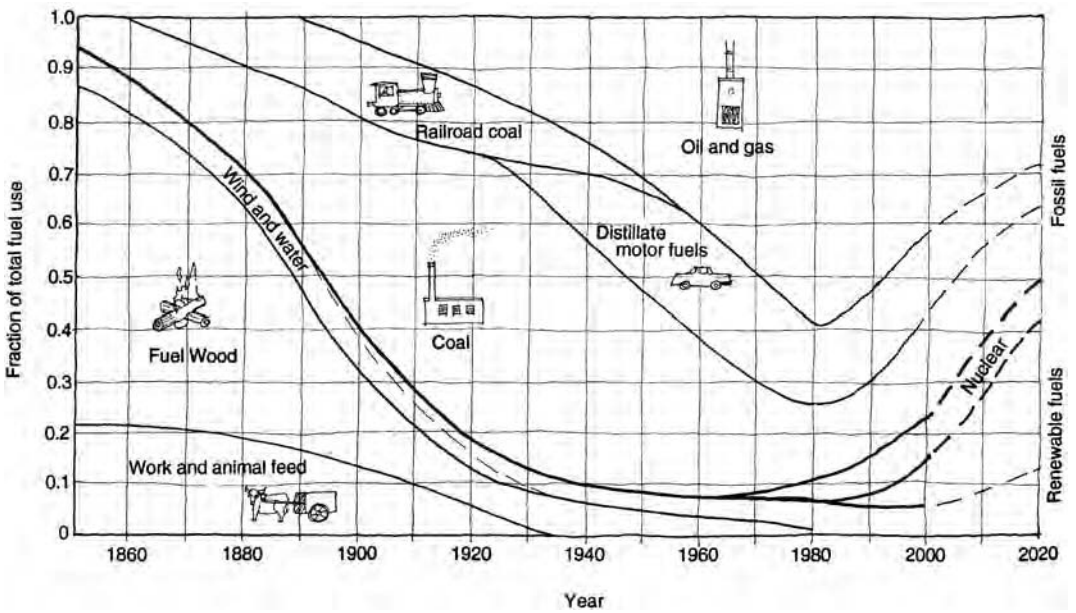


Fig. 2.1 *U.S. fuel sources since 1850, showing a progression from dependence on renewable fuels (wood and work animals) to fossil fuels (coal, then oil and gas). Wind and water power were shifted from mills to electricity generation between 1890 and the present. Although not shown here, much fossil fuel is now converted to electricity before use. (Data 1850–1970 are from Fisher, 1974; data 1970–1980 are from Meyers, 1983; future projections are from Brower, 1990. Drawing by Michael Cockram; © 1998 by John S. Reynolds, A.I.A.; all rights reserved.)*

and maintenance of a building consume further resources, as conditions (temperatures, light levels, flows of water) are established that would not otherwise occur under less-ordered natural conditions. Maintaining building materials and systems over time against the forces of nature requires additional inputs of energy and materials. Buildings are inherently antientropic. This is not necessarily bad (learning and evolving are also antientropic), but it should be considered during the design process. As will be seen later in this chapter, buildings have a substantial collective impact on our patterns of energy, water, and materials consumption.

The design process should consider various scales of concern relative to the impacts of buildings upon the environment. One such scale is geographic. Geographic scales of concern include the micro scale, the site scale, and the macro scale, with design focus historically being at the site scale. The terms *micro* (small) and *macro* (large) are not absolutely defined but are often referenced to a particular site. Thus, the area of influence of a microclimate is smaller than that of a macroclimate—but is usually also smaller than that of the site scale, often applying to one part of a site (perhaps with a steeper slope, lower elevation, or greater shading than other parts). The site scale is normally self-explanatory, running from property line to property line. Energy efficiency issues are typically and historically addressed at the site scale and often ignore (unfortunately) energy consumption off-site (such as electric power plant losses or natural gas transportation losses). Renewable/passive energy systems must consider microscale effects (such as orientation) in order to be successful. Nonrenewable/active systems often are oblivious to any scale of concern.

Time is another, and very interesting, scale of concern to building design. The scales typically addressed include *now* and *the future*—although *the past* is sometimes of concern with adaptive reuse and historic preservation projects. The concept of *the future* is usually left quite nebulous unless life-cycle costing is undertaken for a project, in which case the expected lifetimes of systems and equipment are explicitly estimated. It is clear that most buildings have a useful life of 25, 50, perhaps 100 years (or more). Stuart Brand provides an interesting look at buildings over time in *How Buildings Learn: What Happens After They're Built.* The problem with design for the future is that we don't know precisely what it holds. Nevertheless, design for sustainability requires the design team and the design

process to consider the needs of future generations. This makes sustainability a very challenging concept and highly objective—but no less important than design for today.

2.2 ENERGY

Energy resources are broadly classified as renewable or nonrenewable. *Renewable* resources are those that are available indefinitely but are generally diffuse and arrive at a rate controlled by nature. For example, the influx of solar energy varies from day to day, but on average it should be available forever and at a generally predictable rate. Likewise, a woodlot produces a limited amount of wood per year but can do so for centuries if properly managed. An analogy for using renewable fuel sources is living on a fixed annual salary—with no hope for spectacular annual raises or unexpected bonuses but with long-term stability if wisely managed.

Nonrenewable energy resources are those that, once exhausted, cannot be replaced in a time frame that is meaningful to the human race. Coal, oil, and natural gas are examples of nonrenewable energy resources. Using nonrenewable fuel sources is analogous to living off a one-time lottery win that can be spent in 1 year or over 50 years, depending upon needs and planning, but that is gone for good when all spent.

The United States, like other industrialized countries, has spent the time since the mid-1800s in an energy transition (Fig. 2.1). This transition began with renewable energy sources, obtained locally, that did relatively low-grade work: animals pulled or pushed, and wood was burned to provide heated air, water, or steam. Buildings and people were directly affected by energy sources; work animals were fed, tended, and housed; fuel wood was cut nearby and stacked in large sheds (Fig. 2.2); fireplaces were social centers of buildings; and smoke from chimneys indicated activity inside. The side effects of energy use were also directly sensed—animal wastes, deforestation, and polluted air. Fuel use depended upon human labor. Architects of the era responded to the visual and spatial organization potentials of fireplaces and chimneys (Fig. 2.3).

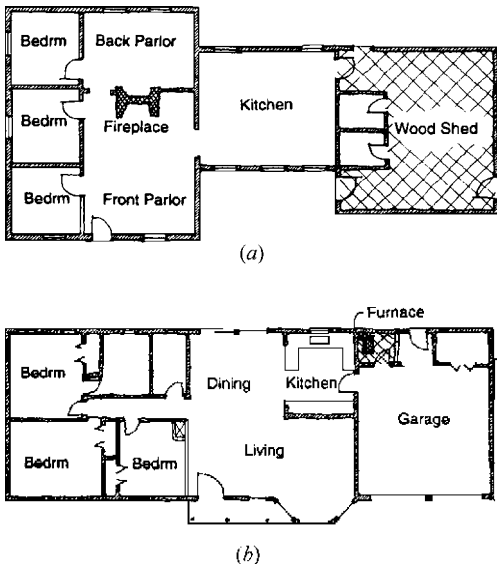


Fig. 2.2 *Residential heating: past and present. (a) The house dependent on fireplaces or wood stoves also depends on someone to tend the fire. The warmer area near the fire in this early Oregon farmhouse was used for social purposes; the colder extremities served as sleeping areas and for storage of food and fuel. (Based upon a plan drawn by Philip Dole.) (b) The contemporary suburban home has either a small furnace area or electric heat built into each room. Heating equipment is no longer a major influence on building form.*



Fig. 2.3 *The fireplace and the more efficient wood stove can inspire architectural form. This chimney symbolizes permanence as well as protection against the cold. The major social space of the house is marked both by the arched window and by the fireplace chimney. (Photo by William Johnston.)*

North America is now almost entirely dependent upon nonrenewable energy resources, an increasing proportion of which consists of imported oil and natural gas and electricity transported across substantial distances (Fig. 2.4). Buildings account for a good percentage of this energy demand. This trend is partly due to rapid growth in both population and per capita energy consumption. It is also due to the allure of highly concentrated energy available from fossil fuels, which encourages the use of high-quality energy sources such as electricity and natural gas for buildings and gasoline for transportation. People are now largely oblivious to their sources of energy: electricity is generated in far-off power plants; natural gas arrives through buried pipelines, and fuel oil via supertankers. The experiential impact of energy use on building design and operation tends to be diluted. Energy consumption is regulated by automatic controls, and heating and cooling equipment is hidden from sight. Building occupants/users—who often do not personally control a thermostat, see climate control equipment, or pay a utility bill—have no direct contact with or concern about energy resources. Clients hire architects to provide for function and comfort. Architects then pay engineers to design (and usually to successfully hide) mechanical and electrical equipment. Entropy, however, continues to increase.

For several reasons, buildings designed for today are likely to rely heavily upon electricity (Fig. 2.5), a situation that carries serious implications for resource depletion and environmental quality:

1. Consumption of electricity is expected to rise about twice as fast as overall energy demand, and we are more often using electricity in place of other energy forms. Part of the reason for this is that, for some primary energy sources (such as coal, heavy fuel oil, or a nuclear reaction), generation of electricity for subsequent (secondary) distribution to buildings is the only convenient usage option.
2. Other than daylighting (unfortunately still rare in today's buildings), electricity is the only source for building illumination. Heat produced by electric lighting may reduce a building's need for space heating, but it increases its need for space cooling—and mechanical cooling is almost universally provided by electric air-conditioning equipment.
3. Electricity is a convenient and versatile energy form; it not only serves such high-quality and highly concentrated (or *high-grade*) tasks as lighting and providing drive power via electric motors, it can also serve such low-quality,

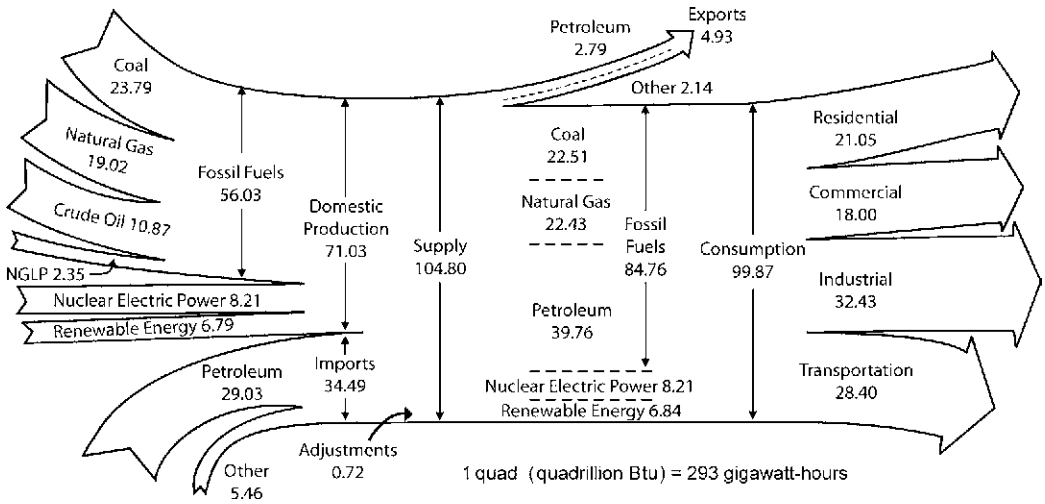


Fig. 2.4 *U.S. energy flow, 2005: sources and end uses. Fuel types and sources are shown to the left and end use sectors to the right. Note the importance of residential and commercial consumption to total U.S. consumption—and the currently minuscule contribution of renewable energy sources to the whole. (Drawing by Nathan Majeski using data from the Energy Information Administration, U.S. Department of Energy,* Annual Energy Review, *2005. This data resource is updated on a regular basis, but the general patterns shown in this figure change slowly.)*

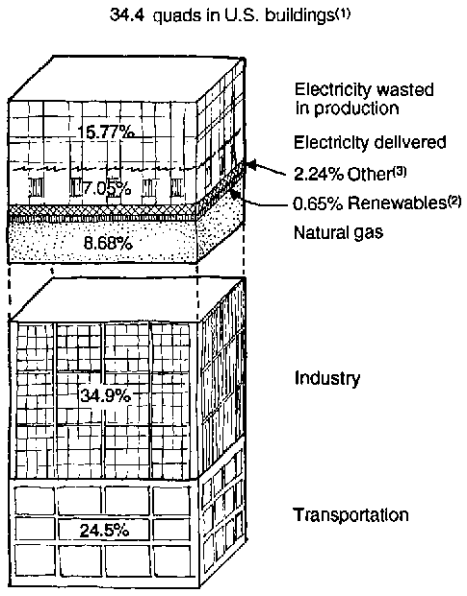


Fig. 2.5 *Energy resources as consumed by various end-use sectors in the United States, 1996. Total: 94.0 quads (1 quad = 1015 Btu). Not included are raw materials used in manufacturing. (1) Both residential and commercial buildings are included. (2) Renewables do not include passive solar energy use; hydroelectricity and PV are included in "electricity." (3) "Other" includes fuel oil, liquefied natural gas, coal, kerosene, and other petroleum products. (Data from U.S. Office of Building Technologies, Core Databook, 1998. Drawing by Michael Cockram; © 1998 by John S. Reynolds, A.I.A.; all rights reserved.)*

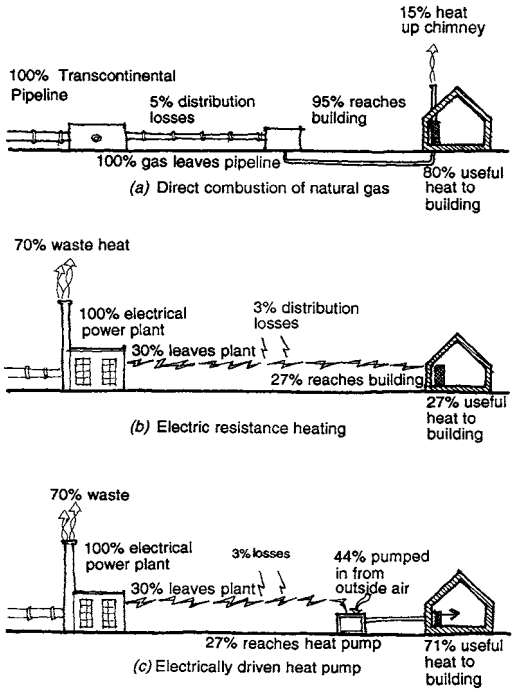


Fig. 2.6 *Variations on higher-grade energy and lower-grade tasks. (a) Natural gas (a fossil fuel) is often burned in furnaces to provide low-grade space heating. With today's high-efficiency furnaces, well over 80% of the energy in the gas is delivered to the building as space heat. (b) However, when that natural gas is used instead to generate (higher-grade) electricity, and electric resistance is used for space heating, the inefficiencies at the electric power plant cut deeply into the available energy: only about 27% is delivered to the space as heat. (c) However, when the electricity generated by natural gas is used to drive a heat pump and the outdoor air is above freezing, about 71% of the energy in the gas is delivered as space heat. (Drawing by Michael Cockram; © 1998 by John S. Reynolds, A.I.A.; all rights reserved.)*

low-temperature (or *low-grade*) tasks as cooking, water heating, and space heating (Table 2.1). All-electric buildings are commonplace, even though they are subject to paralysis in blackouts—as any building dependent upon a single energy source is vulnerable to disruptions. As shown in Table 2.1, of a total of 38 quads used for all building energy requirements, the primary energy used for electricity generation was 27 quads, equal to over two-thirds of the total.

4. Electricity generated by thermal processes (except for cogeneration) delivers to the end user less than one-third of the total energy that goes into its production; more than two-thirds is usually lost as waste heat at the generating plant (Fig. 2.6). (In Table 2.1, for every 1 quad of electricity delivered, 3.22 quads were assumed used in generation.)

As we consume our planet's resources, including fossil fuels, many look to a return to renewable and sustainable energy. This vision will be partially implemented by solar energy converted directly to electricity (through photovoltaics [PV]) on or near the building requiring the electricity. Solar collectors (some for heating water, others for producing electricity) will shape the roofs and silhouettes of buildings. Building design professionals can choose to ignore or embrace such opportunities.

Hydrogen may be stored and distributed as a high-grade fuel, produced from water using electricity generated from renewable resources such as solar energy and wind. The lifetimes of mechanical and electrical equipment specified today will probably overlap such a future. In this near future, lower-tech processes such as biomass conversion (combustion of wood and waste products) may develop faster than higher-tech processes such as PV. PV is growing very rapidly, though; its growth

TABLE 2.1 Energy End-Use in U.S. Buildings, by Fuel Type (Quads)[a]

	Natural	Fuel		Other	Renewable	On-Site	On-Site		Primary	Primary	
End Use	Gas	Oil[b]	LPG	Fuel[c]	Energy[d]	Electric	Total	%	Electric[e]	Total	%
Space heating[f]	4.96	1.02	0.30	0.19	0.40	0.69	7.55	38.6	2.21	9.08	23.7
Space cooling	0.01					1.43	1.45	7.4	4.62	4.63	12.1
Ventilation[g]						0.31	0.31	1.6	1.01	1.01	2.6
Water heating	1.74	0.19	0.05		0.05	0.55	2.58	13.2	1.77	3.79	9.9
Lighting						2.12	2.12	10.9	6.84	6.84	17.8
Refrigeration[h]						0.76	0.76	3.9	2.45	2.45	6.4
Cooking	0.47		0.03			0.25	0.75	3.8	0.81	1.31	3.4
Wet clean[i]	0.07					0.29	0.36	1.8	0.94	1.01	2.6
Computers						0.20	0.20	1.0	0.65	0.65	1.7
Electronics						0.62	0.62	3.2	2.00	2.00	5.2
Other[j]	0.38	0.02	0.24	0.05	0.10	0.48	1.28	6.5	1.56	2.35	6.1
Adjustments[k]	0.64	0.22				0.73	1.59	8.1	2.34	3.21	8.4
Total	8.27	1.46	0.62	0.24	0.54	8.45	19.58	100	27.20	38.33	100

Source: U.S. DOE (2004). Data are for the year 2002.

[a]Quad = 10^{15} Btu (1 Ej).

[b]Includes distillate fuel oil (1.38 quads) and residual fuel oil (0.08 quad).

[c]Kerosene (0.08 quad) and coal (0.11 quad) are assumed to be attributed to space heating; motor gasoline (0.05 quad) is assumed to be attributed to "other" end uses.

[d]Passive solar space heating is not included. It includes wood space heating (0.39 quad), geothermal space heating (<0.01 quad), solar water heating (0.05 quad), biomass (0.01 quad), and solar PV (<0.01 quad).

[e]Site-to-source electricity conversion = 3.22 due to generation and transmission losses.

[f]Includes electric furnace fans (0.25 quad).

[g]Commercial only (residential fan and pump energy use included proportionally in space heating and cooling).

[h]Includes refrigerators (1.37 quads) and freezers (0.43 quad) and commercial refrigeration.

[i]Includes clothes washers (0.10 quad), natural gas clothes dryers (0.07 quad), electric clothes dryers (0.76 quad), and dishwashers (0.08 quad).

[j]Includes commercial service station equipment, emergency electric generators, fuel oil cooking, natural gas-driven pumps, natural gas lighting, automated teller machines, telecommunications equipment, medical equipment, residential pool/hot tub heating, residential small electric devices, outdoor grilles, outdoor natural gas lighting, and the like.

[k]Energy Information Administration (EIA) adjustment to address discrepancies among data sources. Energy is attributable to the residential and commercial buildings sector, but not directly to specific end uses.

curve is as steep as that during the first 15 years of computer technology. One major oil company's energy scenario (in the late 1990s) anticipated 50% of world energy demand being met by alternatives to fossil fuels by the year 2050.

Today's fossil-fueled economy seems so entrenched as to defy a transition to renewable energy. A common question is often heard: Is solar energy adequate for our energy needs? Table 2.2 compares the Earth's receipt of solar energy at the surface in a single day with other energy phenomena. There appears to be adequate resource availability—given the will to move toward renewable and site-based resources. Energy efficiency efforts will play a critical role in making such a transition feasible.

To date, societal focus has been primarily upon using less energy—energy efficiency. The oil embargo of the 1970s spurred the development of energy efficiency standards, which have remained a fixture of building design ever since. In general, such standards seek to reduce building energy consumption—not to shift energy resources from nonrenewable to renewable. The green building design movement has provided momentum for a serious look at both reduced energy use and the use of energy from renewable resources (see Appendix G).

2.3 WATER

The building design profession's efforts toward a more resource-efficient product have, for the past 30-some years, focused primarily upon energy. This focus has been warranted by the limits upon nonrenewable energy sources imposed by the laws of thermodynamics. There is no option for the reuse or recycling of fossil fuel energy (as may be done with water and materials). Water concerns, however, are at crisis level in many parts of the United

TABLE 2.2 Daily Arrival of Solar Energy on Earth Compared to Other Energy Quantities

Solar energy received each day	1
Melting of an average winter's snow during the spring	$1/10$
A monsoon circulation between ocean and continent	$1/100$
Use of energy by all mankind in a year	$1/100$
A mid-latitude cyclone	$1/1{,}000$
A tropical cyclone	$1/10{,}000$
Kinetic energy of motion in earth's general circulation	$1/100{,}000$
The first H bomb	$1/100{,}000$
A squall line containing thunderstorms and perhaps tornados	$1/100{,}000$
A thunderstorm	$1/1{,}000{,}000$
The first A bomb	$1/100{,}000{,}000$
The daily output of Boulder Dam	$1/100{,}000{,}000$
A typical local rain shower	$1/10{,}000{,}000{,}000$
A tornado	$1/100{,}000{,}000{,}000$
Lighting New York City for one night	$1/100{,}000{,}000{,}000$

Source: Reprinted by permission from Lowry, W. 1988. *Atmospheric Ecology for Designers and Planners*. Peavine Publications, McMinnville, OR.

States, and water may well be the emerging limit to growth and development—especially locally and regionally—rather than energy.

Concerns about a viable supply of potable water have dominated politics and civil engineering in the arid western United States for a century. Surprisingly, Tampa, Florida, in the heavily rained-upon Southeast, has a desalination plant to provide water for an otherwise underresourced region. Although water is a recyclable resource, it is not a renewable resource (no new daily supplies are being delivered to Earth). A quote generally attributed to *National Geographic* (October 1993) made this point succinctly: "All the water that will ever be is, right now" (UNH, 2004). In addition, where the water is, is not necessarily where it is wanted. Periodic water rationing is an unpleasant fact in many areas. Table 2.3 compares regional water resources with sustainable water usage capacity; it is clear that some areas of the United States now have serious water shortages. Accelerated depletion of underground water stocks (from aquifers, which are analogous to fossil fuel reserves) and maxed-out imports (both hydrologically and politically) suggest more trouble on the way. On a global scale, the disparities become even greater. Mostafa Tolba, former executive director of the UN Environment Program, speaking of the international picture, notes: "We used to think that energy and water would be the critical issues for the next century. Now we think water will be the critical issue" (UNH, 2004).

As with energy, per capita use of water involves more than consumption within a building. In the case of energy, transportation and industrial uses influence per capita consumption; with water, energy production and agricultural uses play a role. About half of all U.S. fresh and saline water withdrawals in 2000 were used in conjunction with thermoelectric power generation. Most of this was surface water used for once-through cooling at power plants. Withdrawals for this use have been relatively stable since 1985. (In a quirky turnabout, the California State Water Resources Control Board estimates that 6.5% of California's total electricity use is related to pumping and treating water.)

Irrigation remains the largest use of freshwater. Since 1950, irrigation has accounted for about 65% of total water withdrawals, excluding those for power generation. Historically, more surface water than groundwater has been used for irrigation. The percentage of total irrigation withdrawals from groundwater has continued to increase, from 23% in 1950 to 42% in 2000. Irrigated acreage more than doubled between 1950 and 1980, then remained constant before increasing nearly 7% between 1995 and 2000 (USGS, 2004).

Public water supply withdrawals in 1950 were 14 Bgal/day (53 GL/day); in 2000, more than 43 Bgal/day (163 GL/day). During 2000, about 85% of the U.S. population obtained drinking water from public suppliers, compared to 62% during 1950. Surface water provided 63% of the total during 2000, compared to 74% during 1950. Potable water obtained from a surface source via a public supply system is becoming the norm; private well

TABLE 2.3 Comparison of Regional Water Use versus Resources for the Continental United States

Water Resources Region[a]	Consumptive Use	Renewable Water Supply[b]	Ratio (Use/Supply)
New England	0.6	78.4	0.8%
Mid-Atlantic	1.3	80.7	1.5%
South Atlantic/Gulf	6.1	233.5	2.6%
Great Lakes	1.9	74.3	2.6%
Ohio	2.3	139.6	1.7%
Tennessee	0.3	41.2	0.7%
Souris-Red-Rainy	0.5	6.5	7.7%
Upper Mississippi	2.3	77.2	3.0%
Lower Mississippi	40.3[c]	484.8	8.3%
Missouri	17.5	52.9	33.1%
Arkansas-White-Red	9.6	68.7	14.0%
Texas Gulf	9.1	33.1	27.5%
Rio Grande	3.5	5.4	64.8%
Upper Colorado	4.2	13.9	30.2%
Lower Colorado	10.6[c]	10.3	103.0%
Great Basin	3.5	10.0	35.0%
Pacific Northwest	11.2	276.2	4.1%
California	25.8	74.6	34.6%

Source: Adapted from *United States Geological Survey*, 1984, with 1995 updates for water usage: http://water.usgs.gov/watuse/misc/consuse-renewable.html

[a]These are water resource areas generally independent of state boundaries.

[b]Renewable water supply represents a long-term sustainable resource: precipitation plus imports less evaporation, exports, and water needed to maintain minimal stream flows.

[c]These values are for the entire river system.

systems are less common than in the past. As with energy, population increases are increasing overall consumption, while efficiency efforts provide some counterbalancing effect.

Water efficiency standards are not nearly as extensive or ubiquitous as energy efficiency standards, although most building users are aware of low-flow toilet requirements, flow restrictors for showers, and self-closing bathroom faucets in public facilities. Surprisingly, given the few design restrictions that exist, per capita water use in the United States has remained flat for the past several years—and is currently 25% lower than in the late 1970s. This is partly because overall per capita use involves important sectors other than buildings (agriculture and power generation, for example) and partly due to increasing awareness of the value of water.

As with renewable energy sources, green building design efforts have also increased awareness of and design for water supply savings and alternatives. Part V, "Water and Waste," discusses many design alternatives that would likely be used in a green building. The role of water in the U.S. Green Building Council's Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) rating system is outlined in Appendix G.

2.4 MATERIALS

A global or even countrywide perspective on materials resources is more difficult to obtain than is the case for energy and water. In the United States there appears to be a general upward trend in per capita consumption of materials. In the early 1900s, per capita consumption (in metric tons per person) was around 3.0, about 50% of which was construction materials; in 1950 about 6.0, with about 60% in construction materials; and from 1970 to 1990 about 10.0 (with ups and downs), with about 65% in construction materials.

Given the scarcity of quantitative data, a qualitative comparison with water must suffice. Many materials used in building construction and upkeep come from a generally fixed resource base. Like water, materials (at least many) may be recycled, but there is a fixed quantity of resources available on Earth. For many materials, what we have now is what we will have in the future, a marked exception being those organic materials (such as fiber products) that are renewable.

Finding adequate material resources for a building directly on the building site is rare: wood, straw, and earthen construction systems, for example, require large land areas to supply the materials

for even a small building. The most commonly used construction systems involve materials brought to a site from some distance. A designer can generally select between imported renewable or nonrenewable materials and between imported virgin or recycled materials. The common thread is *imported*—not necessarily from overseas, but from a distance. Reducing the transportation distance and finding local materials when available are emerging design strategies.

Wood is the only renewable construction material currently in wide use in North America. It is easily worked, supports a wide variety of finishes, has moderate structural strength, requires regular maintenance for long life, burns easily, and has only moderate value either as thermal mass or as insulation. This common building material illustrates the impact a rapidly increasing population can have on a fixed, even if renewable, resource base. As huge old trees are harvested to the point of disappearance, growing demand for wood outstrips the supply available from younger, smaller trees. New production methods are devised (such as laminates, particle board, and engineered lumber) to allow large wood members to be constructed from smaller timber. The value of salvaged older wood members increases.

Nonrenewable materials are by far the most commonly used materials in mechanical and electrical systems; metals and plastics predominate. Their advantages include strength, durability, fire resistance, and conductivity or resistivity as required. Most such materials are obtained, however, at a significant energy cost to mine/manufacture, transport, and shape them for our use.

With rapidly increasing demand for both renewable and nonrenewable materials, how can a designer on a planet with fixed resources respond? What are the key materials issues for the design team to consider?

(a) Embodied Energy

One issue is *embodied energy*, a complex and therefore elusive indicator of how much energy must be invested to mine/harvest/produce, fabricate, and transport a unit of building material. Table 2.4 summarizes information on embodied energy for common units of today's prevalent construction materials. Such apparently simple numbers are complicated by variations in availability of the raw resource (more work needed to extract materials requires more energy), variations in distance from raw resource to manufacturing locations, and variations in the fuels used (and their efficiency of use) in the refining or fabricating processes.

Consider two alternatives for exterior wall cladding: wood siding and aluminum siding. Wood has embodied energy from a renewable resource—the sun. It takes the energy of human beings and chain saws to cut the trees and fuel to haul them, perhaps 100 miles (160 km), to a mill. At the mill, more energy is invested as logs become lumber, and still more energy is used as lumber becomes finished siding—which is then transported to a construction site. Aluminum begins as bauxite, which requires energy to mine, then more energy to ship great distances to smelters, which use large quantities of electricity in the refining process. Cheap electricity (as in the Pacific Northwest, with its once-surplus hydropower) attracts bauxite mined thousands of miles away. Once aluminum ingots are formed at the smelter, they are shipped—again, sometimes thousands of miles—to factories that make products such as siding; the products are then transported to a construction site. For a given surface area of finished siding, the aluminum alternative represents about 100 times as much embodied energy as the wood. This, however, is not the end of the story—as a designer must consider the impacts of these two siding materials on building energy consumption and envelope maintenance and replacement needs and schedules.

(b) Recycled or Virgin Material

It seems paradoxical that, while the world's population is increasing and its raw materials are decreasing, labor costs are growing so much faster than the costs of raw materials. One consequence is that labor-intensive practices become less economically attractive. Recycling is one such labor-intensive practice (see examples in Chapter 23), whether at the scale of a household, an office building, or an entire industry.

Building construction, renovation, and demolition involve many opportunities for recycling, but at present these activities represent a major source of waste. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's 1998 report *Characterization of Building-Related Construction and Demolition Debris in the United States*

TABLE 2.4 Approximate Total Embodied Energy in Building Materials[a]

Per Volume		*Per Weight*			*Per Area*		*Per Unit*	
Btu/Unit	**MJ/Unit**	**Btu/lb**	**MJ/kg**	**Building Material**	**Btu/ft²**	**MJ/m²**	**Btu**	**MJ**
				MASONRY				
		4,000	9.3	Brick: clay fired[b]			14,000/brick	14.8/brick
				ceramic glazed[c]			33,400/brick	35.2/brick
		123	0.3	Adobe: semistabilized[b]			3,700/block	3.9/block
		730–960	1.7–2.24	Concrete block[b]			24,100–31,800/ block	25.5–33.6/block
				Quarry tile[c]	51,000	580		
				Ceramic tile[b]	25,160	285		
				Concrete				
				Ready-mix concrete[d]				
1,500,000/yd³	2,070/m³			3,000 psi				
1,700,000/yd³	2,346/m³			4,000 psi				
2,000,000/yd³	2,760/m³			5,000 psi				
				Ingredients				
		2,400–4,000	5.6–9.3	Portland cement[b]				
43,200/yd³	60/m³			Sand for concrete, unprocessed[d]				
67,500/yd³	93/m³			Sand, washed				
180,225/yd³	250/m³			Crushed stone, dry, for concrete[d]				
		2.2	0.005	Slaked lime[e]				
		12,680	29.5	Reinforcing steel: 25 mm[e]				
				Reinforcing bars[c]: #2			2,600/ft	0.84/m
				#8			41,800/ft	13.4/m
		3,900	9	Welded wire mesh[c]: 2 × 4, 14/14				
		25,400	59	2 × 12, 8/8				
				METAL FRAMING				
		19,200	44.7	Steel framing[b]				
				Steel shapes[c]:				
				W12 × 65, carbon			1,217,800/ft	390/m
				W12 × 65, alloy			1,749,200/ft	560/m
				WT6 × 27, carbon			543,350/ft	175/m
				WT6 × 27, alloy			780,400/ft	250/m
		14,060	32.7	Angles, 50 × 8 mm[e]				
		16,830	39.1	Joists, 203 × 152 × 52 mm (1 kg/m)[e]				
				Aluminum shapes[c]:			811,800/ft	260/m
				8 I 8.81			469,900/ft	150/m
				6 I 5.10				
				WOOD FRAMING				
91,620/ft³	3,400/m³			Wood framing[b]				
				2 × 4[b]			3,750/ft	1.2/m
				Lumber[c]			7,600–9,800/bd ft	8–10.3/bd ft
160,800/ft³	6,000/m³	5,720	13.3	Glue laminated timbers[b]			13,400/bd ft	14.2/bd ft
				METAL SHEETS				
				Steel[c]: 22 guage	29,400	333		
				16 guage	58,800	667		
				Galvanized[c]: 22 guage	49,800	565		
				16 guage	98,500	1,118		
		40,330	93.8	Corrugated galvanized iron (0.6 mm)[e]				
				Aluminum plate[c]: ¼ in.	420,700	4,775		
				1 in.	1,680,300	19,070		
		138,300	321.7	Stainless steel[c]: cold rolled				
		80,800	188	hot rolled				
		265,140	617	Copper[e]				
		105,620	245	Lead[e]				

TABLE 2.4 Approximate Total Embodied Energy in Building Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Per Volume		*Per Weight*			*Per Area*		*Per Unit*	
Btu/Unit	**MJ/Unit**	**Btu/lb**	**MJ/kg**	**Building Material**	**Btu/ft²**	**MJ/m²**	**Btu**	**MJ**
				WOOD PRODUCTS				
				Shingles[c]			7,300/bd ft	7.7/bd ft
				Plywood: ⅜ in.	5,000–	56.8–		
				softwood[c]	5,800	65.8		
				Flooring[c]			10,300–14,300/bd ft	10.9–15.1/bd ft
				Mouldings[c]			17,900 bd ft	18.9/bd ft
				Mineral surface insulating board[c]	67,500	766		
				ROOFING (SEE ALSO WOOD PRODUCTS)				
				Asphalt shingle[b]:				
				self-sealing	29,730	337		
				regular strip	25,330	288		
				Rolled roofing[c]	7,800–11,000	89–125		
		13,630	31.7	Saturated felt[b]				
				15 lb	1,840	21		
				30 lb	3,680	42		
				PLASTER AND LATH				
				Lath board[b]	2,600	29.5		
		12,000	27.9	Steel lath[b]				
				Gypsum board[b]				
				⅜ in.[c]	5,800	60.2		
				GLASS				
		6,750–7,500	15.7–17.4	Glass[b,g]				
				Flat glass:				
				double-strength	15,430	175		
				tempered	72,600	824		
				Plate and float glass[c]:				
				⅛–¼ in.	48,000	545		
				Laminated plate glass[c]:				
				¼ in.	212,500	2,412		
				THERMAL INSULATION				
		13,000	30.2	Fiberglass[b]				
		50,400	117	Polystyrene[b]				
		31,000	72.1	Polyurethane[b]				
				Mineral wool, 4 ½ in.[c]	8,300	94.2		
				ACOUSTICAL CEILING SYSTEMS				
		19,200	44.7	Steel suspension systems[b]				
		103,500	241	Aluminum suspension systems[b]				
				FLOORING (SEE ALSO WOOD PRODUCTS)				
		7,350	17.1	Linoleum[b]				
		22,560–27,730	52.2–64.5	Vinyl[b]				
		5,900	13.7	Vinyl composition tile[b]				
				Modified resin vinyl tile[e]	68,370	776		
				FINISHES				
		33,303	76.8	Water-based paint[b]				
503,670/gal	1,400/L			Stains and varnishes[b]				
437,000–508,500/gal	1,220–1,420/L			Paints[c]				

[a]These numbers are rounded in most cases. Due to the quirky nature of many material dimensions, conversions to-from I-P and SI sizes are not attempted.

[b]From American Institute of Architects (1996).

[c]From Hannon et al. (1977).

[d]From Construction Technology Laboratories, Martha Van Geem, P.E. (correspondence, 1997). Metric conversions by the author.

[e]From Irurah (1997).

[f]Plaster information not yet available.

[g]Glass products currently available with 30% less embodied energy; under development with 60% less embodied energy.

estimated that 136 million tons per year (123 Mg) of such material are produced in the United States and that 65% to 85% of that total ends up in landfills.

Consider building demolition. If more of a demolished building can be recycled, more of the energy embodied in its material can be recovered, and fewer virgin materials will be required for some other project. At present, the recovery of usable materials from demolition is limited because the cost of labor is high and the cost of energy and new products is relatively low. It is currently easier, quicker, and cheaper to reduce a building to rubble and haul it to a landfill than to recycle. As landfill capacity becomes scarce, design regulations concerning recycled material use can be expected.

An Atlantic City, New Jersey, project was able to recycle 90% of its demolition waste. Of a total of 1583 tons (1400 Mg) of demolition waste, only 152 tons (140 Mg) were nonrecyclable. Concrete and masonry became crushed aggregate for road building. Glass became "glasphalt" embedded in road surfaces as reflectors. Wood waste became mulch. At Fort Ord in California, four buildings totaling about 11,000 ft^2 (1022 m^2) were dismantled rather than demolished, saving roofing boards, framing lumber, and tongue-and-groove wood flooring. Unpainted drywall was reclaimed for composting.

Construction recycling opportunities include crushed wallboard as a replacement for lime in agriculture, carpet ground up for attic insulation, plate glass crushed for use in glass fiber insulation, and pulverized wood as a composting aid at sewage sludge treatment facilities. Used acoustic ceiling tiles can become part of the slurry from which new acoustic tiles are made. Building materials are now increasingly being made from recycled materials: reinforcing bars from ferrous scrap metal; cellulose insulation from newsprint; parking lot bumper strips, fence posts, and park benches from recycled plastics; and nonstructural concrete from incinerator ash. Even plastic yogurt containers, complete with scraps of aluminum foil, are made into a terrazzo-like floor tile.

Architect Pliny Fisk, codirector of the Austin, Texas-based Center for Maximum Potential Building Systems, has developed a wide array of such applications. His "Advanced Green Builder" home near Austin displays several applications of "ashcrete," made with coal fly ash and bottom ash, producing a 97% recycled-content concrete. This is used as ferro-cement for columns and beams and is foamed for hollow wall infill. Numerous other innovative recycled-material applications are showcased as well.

The most effective form of recycling involves reuse of a building or building shell. Audubon House in New York City is an excellent and well-publicized example of this level of reuse. The next most effective form of recycling involves the reuse of a building component as is. A residential demolition-by-hand salvage project in Portland, Oregon, recovered doors, windows, bathroom fixtures, framing lumber, plywood, siding, flooring, and bricks. The energy and economic summary for this project is shown in Table 2.5.

As with water and renewable energy sources, much of the current interest in lowering the embodied energy content of construction materials and increasing the recycling and reuse of products is attributable to green design efforts. The role of LEED in promoting a change in thinking about materials is outlined in Appendix G. The impact of building materials on

TABLE 2.5 Residential Salvage for Reuse

	Embodied Energy[a] Btu/ft^2 Floor Area (kJ/m^2 Floor Area)	Value U.S. \$/ft^2 Floor Area (U.S. \$/m^2 Floor Area)
Total for reusable salvage[b]	46,890 (532,497)	4.90 (52.74)
Demolition energy consumed[c]	–3,380 (–38,384)	
Value of energy embodied in salvage[d]		+0.50 (5.38)
Value of avoided dumping fees		+2.70 (29.06)
Total energy savings and value	43,510 (494,112)	8.10 (87.19)

Source: Joslin et al. (1993).

[a]Based on Stein et al. (1981).

[b]Framing lumber alone constituted 38% of this embodied energy.

[c]Gasoline for transportation and hauling, plus human labor at 254.6 Btu/h (268.6 kJ/h).

[d]Assumed at \$.04/kWh, very low rate typical of the Pacific Northwest.

occupant health and well-being is also an emerging area of concern and interest. There is a direct link between the selection and maintenance of building materials and indoor air quality (see Chapter 5). Although beyond the scope of this book, LEED also looks at this aspect of materials use, and several reference texts provide fundamental information on design for healthy buildings. Many building products with substantially reduced heath impacts have been developed and marketed during the past 10 years.

2.5 DESIGN CHALLENGES

The buildings we design today are very likely, over their lifetimes, to experience major changes in the way they are used and in their sources of energy supply. The societal value of water and embodied materials will also probably change. The resource perspective of the future is unlikely to be that which we hold today. This poses some overall challenges to the designer.

(a) Design for Building Recycling

Designing for the recycling of buildings is a two-part balancing act. First, the designer should provide enough flexibility to prolong the useful life of a building by enabling it to adapt easily to changed usage. Flexibility, however, can be expensive to implement physically and can result in a bland "sameness" throughout a building. The latter characteristic is easier for the designer to change than the former. Second, the design can allow for demounting of parts so that the structure can remain safely intact while reusable materials and components are removed. This can result, however, in heavier buildings in which floor systems are not structurally integrated with beams. This approach also discourages integration of mechanical and structural systems, as discussed in Chapter 10. Furthermore, a demountable building may be especially subject to energy leaks, such as from cracks widening around self-contained components of the façade.

Some initial guidelines for recyclable buildings are as follows:

1. Design the structure to be separable from everything else and to be easily disassembled. Extensive remodeling is then possible without major structural modifications, and at the end of a building's life, elements of its structure can be reused elsewhere.
2. Design for "breathing room" where possible: between a building and its neighbors or between major spaces within a building. Some expansion is thus possible without rebuilding. This could include designing the columns and footings to support an extra floor or two for vertical expansion.
3. Maximize the utilization of on-site (natural) forces such as sun and wind. The less sophisticated the mechanical and electrical equipment, the less obvious will be the obsolescence of such equipment with the passing of time.
4. Use materials and components distinctly: avoid combinations that make recycling of these elements difficult. A steel or plastic pipe embedded in a concrete slab is neither easily repaired nor easily recycled; some "sandwiches" (manufactured building panels) do not allow metals, plastics, and other products they contain to be separated for reuse at the end of the panel's life.

Although maximum savings of embodied energy can be realized when a building component is reused as is, even the crushing and reprocessing of some (separated) building materials will save energy compared to their original manufacture from virgin material (see Chapter 23).

(b) Design for Energy Transition

Two more challenges to designers arise:

1. To design buildings not only to save energy, but also so that they can eventually be weaned away from dependence on nonrenewable fuels. A transition away from electricity from the utility grid, to site-generated photovoltaic or fuel-cell electricity, seems easy enough given appropriate building orientation, collection surfaces, and equipment spaces.
2. To use energy wisely; to expect only a fair share of locally available renewable fuels, recognizing that such resources are limited even though they are continuously available. For example, in a high-density setting, it may be tempting to erect a large solar collector to intercept sunlight that would otherwise be utilized by a neighboring building. This temptation grows stronger as a building is designed to

rely more heavily upon the sun. The concept of a *solar envelope* to protect each building's fair share is discussed in Section 3.6.

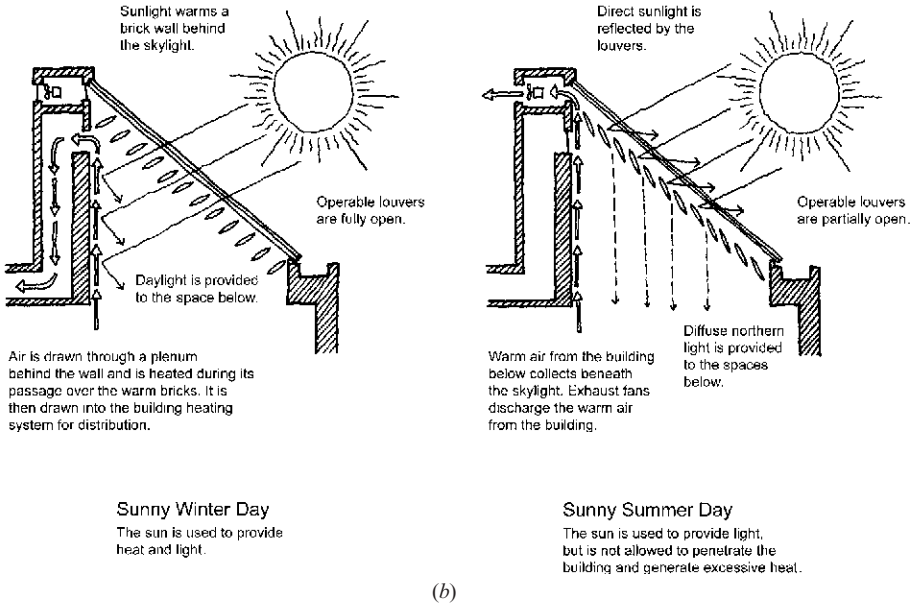
(c) Design for the Information Age

Controls for mechanical and electrical systems have become much more sophisticated, thanks to developments in information systems and electronics. With the advent of *smart houses*, *intelligent buildings*, and *smart appliances*, it is now possible to regulate an array of building systems collectively and across great distances to optimize performance and minimize resource consumption. For a building, with some zones requiring heating and other zones cooling, some zones with available daylight and others without, an automatic central control system can, without human intervention, integrate the flow of fresh air, sunlight through movable shading devices, and intensity of electric lighting to achieve maximum use of on-site renewable energy.

The Albany County Airport in New York State uses automated controls to regulate solar gain through a large central skylight (Fig. 2.7). A computer monitors indoor and outdoor temperatures, keeps track of solar altitude and azimuth, and then regulates the insulated shading louver position according to the building's heating or cooling needs. Solar gain is stored in a masonry wall that supports the skylight. A plenum behind the wall then heats air to be supplied to the vestibule areas of the airport,



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 2.7 *The Albany County (New York) Airport features a central skylight (a) that provides 40% of the light and 20% of the heat for the building. (b) The insulated louvers are controlled by computer to admit or block the sun and to store heat within the building on winter nights. (Courtesy of Einhorn Yaffee Prescott, Architects, Albany, NY. Redrawn by Amanda Clegg.)*

where winter heat losses are greatest. Photoelectric controls turn off electric lighting when daylight is adequate. The skylight provides 40% of the lighting and 20% of the heating needs of this 57,000 ft^2 (5295 m^2) building.

Information systems promise enormous energy conservation achievements while using very small amounts of energy themselves. They also require one of the least space-consuming distribution systems, or *distribution trees*, of all building service systems, especially compared to air ducts and plumbing pipes. In return for such agreeable characteristics, building designers must recognize that developments in information technology are so rapid that the nature of these systems is likely to undergo frequent and dramatic change. Information system distribution spaces may be quite small, but they must be highly accessible. Where information can be transmitted without wires or cables, the impact on building service space demands is even smaller. Adaptable information systems can make more feasible the renovation, rather than demolition, of older buildings for new tenants. These potentials notwithstanding, the need of occupants to play some role in the use and control of their environments should not be ignored.

(d) Design for Transportation

There are clearly links among design decisions at regional and neighborhood scales (urban planning and subdivision design), transportation, and resulting energy use for commuting, shopping, and recreation. This sphere of concern, however, is beyond the scope of this book. The link between transportation systems and building mechanical/electrical equipment may seem obscure, but consider the impact on buildings of the automobile and its internal combustion engine. Fresh air intakes at street level face significant pollution from engine exhausts. Parking lots below buildings compete for space with heavy mechanical and electrical equipment such as boilers, chillers, ice storage tanks, and switchgear and greatly complicate vertical transportation design. Sloped parking floors make future space use for other purposes quite difficult. Ventilating parking levels to remove fumes from automobiles requires large fans and energy to run them.

In a likely future of electrically powered vehicles, photovoltaic arrays over parking areas can provide electricity for a building and recharge the batteries of parked cars throughout the day (Fig. 2.8). In an alternative future of hydrogen fuel cell-powered



Fig. 2.8 *"Building" integrated photovoltaics (BIPV) provide shelter, shading, and power for a fueling station/convenience store in Eugene, Oregon. Note the green roof on the store and the biofuel pumps. (Photo by Nathan Majeski.)*

vehicles, engine discharge consists simply of water. No fumes are emitted from such cars, saving fan space and energy. To the extent that cars become smaller, or are replaced by public transit or bicycles, significant space may be reclaimed from parking for other uses. When entire buildings are now built as single-purpose parking garages, skillful design for reuse might allow such buildings to be renovated to serve new functions rather than demolished.

2.6 HOW ARE WE DOING?

From the preceding discussion and that in Chapter 1, it might seem that, environmentally, the building professions are doing pretty well. There are minimum standards for energy efficiency and plumbing fixture water consumption that affect virtually every North American building. Such standards are also common internationally. There is growing interest in green buildings, generally fueled by private sector and government owners seeking to set an example, which is moving design beyond the just-acceptable minimum requirements of codes and standards. Concern for energy consumption, renewable energy use, water resources and quality, and materials resources and consumption is an integral element of the green building movement. Per capita energy and water use in the United States appears to be stable and/or decreasing.

From the perspective of yesterday, today's building designs (even the worst) are arguably more resource-efficient and respectful of the environment (this does not necessarily mean they are better designs). The question is: From the perspective of tomorrow, is today's good design good enough? The answer in one context is, unfortunately, no. That context is the *environmental footprint*. Environmental footprints are a concept promoted by Rees and Wackernagel (1995) that plot the gross resource demands of a geographic area as a *footprint* on the planet. Figure 2.9 provides an illustration of the environmental footprint concept applied specifically to water resources. The area in question may be a city, state or province, or country. If the footprint is larger than the geographic boundaries of the area in question, then the area is stepping on someone else's environmental toes. Such a city, state/province, or

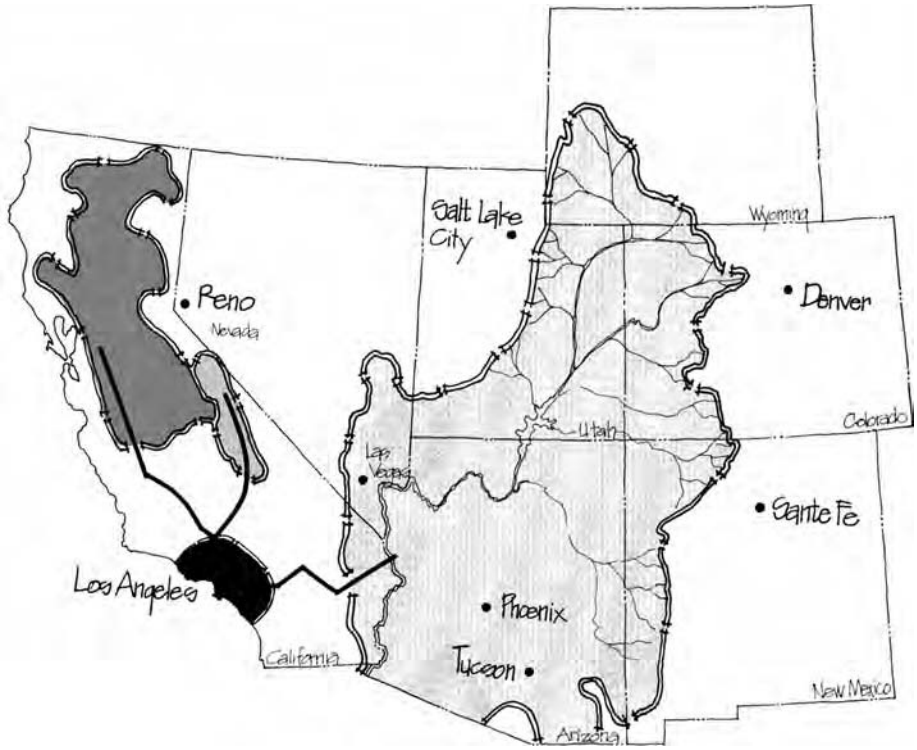


Fig. 2.9 *The effective watershed of the greater Los Angeles area. The area (even if partial) needed to provide water to this metropolitan area (its water footprint) is vastly greater than the politically defined city limits. (From* Design for Human Ecosystems *by John Tillman Lyle. Copyright © 1999 by Harriet Lyle. Reproduced by permission of Island Press, Washington, DC.)*

country needs more land to support itself than is available—thereby surviving through imports from other places. All is well as long as there are other places with surpluses; all is not well when surpluses diminish or disappear. Table 2.6 shows estimated ecological footprints for several countries. It is clear that some countries are substantially overstepping their boundaries, while others are able to accommodate that overstep because of their less consumptive lifestyle. Continuing worldwide population growth makes the footprint balance tenuous. Table 2.7 provides similar environmental benchmarking for the same countries with respect to energy and water use and carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions. CO_2 is becoming the key environmental metric in the United Kingdom and parts of Europe (Roaf, 2004).

The ecological footprint for the "world" shown in Table 2.6 should lead to serious reflection regarding the meaning of sustainability. One unfortunate offspring of the growing interest in green design is a seemingly endless stream of one-upmanship that glibly promotes "sustainable" this and "sustainable" that—including buildings (virtually impossible in today's economic climate), communities (possible, but rare today), and states (perhaps necessary in the future). The term *sustainable* has lost almost any meaning through incessant misuse. This is unfortunate if one believes the story of the ecological footprint—sustainability is essentially keeping the Earth's footprint on the planet. A good idea, as it is the only planet we have right now.

TABLE 2.6 Ecological Footprints[a] for Selected Countries

Country	1997 Population	Footprint (ha/cap)[b]	Available Capacity (ha/cap)	Surplus (if +) or Deficit (if –)
Australia	18,550,000	9.0	14.0	5.0
Austria	8,053,000	4.1	3.1	–1.0
Bangladesh	125,898,000	0.5	0.3	–0.2
Brazil	167,046,000	3.1	6.7	3.6
Canada	30,101,000	7.7	9.6	1.9
China	1,247,315,000	1.2	0.8	–0.4
Egypt	65,445,000	1.2	0.2	–1.0
Germany	81,845,000	5.3	1.9	–3.4
India	970,230,000	0.8	0.5	–0.3
United States	268,189,000	10.3	6.7	–3.6
WORLD	5,892,480,000	2.8	2.1	–0.7

Source: http://www.ecouncil.ac.cr/rio/focus/report/english/footprint/ranking.htm/

[a]Updated 1997.

[b]The ecological footprint, available ecological capacity, and surplus or deficit capacity are in hectares/capita (multiply hectares by 1.66 to obtain acres).

TABLE 2.7 Per Capita Energy[a] and Water[b] Use and CO_2 Emissions[c] for Selected Countries

Country	1997 Population	Energy Use[d]	Water Use[e]	CO_2 Emissions[f]
Australia	18,550,000	5,975	1,250	16.8
Austria	8,053,000	3,790	261	7.9
Bangladesh	125,898,000	145	576	0.2
Brazil	167,046,000	1,064	345	1.8
Canada	30,101,000	8,000	1,494	16.2
China	1,247,315,000	887	494	2.7
Egypt	65,445,000	695	1,013	1.7
Germany	81,845,000	4,264	572	10.2
India	970,230,000	514	635	1.0
United States	268,189,000	7,921	1,682	19.8
WORLD	5,892,480,000	1,631	633	6.1

[a]*Source:* World Resources Institute, Earth Trends: The Environmental Information Portal; http://earthtrends.wri.org/searchable_db/

[b]*Source:* World Resources Institute, Earth Trends: The Environmental Information Portal; http://earthtrends.wri.org/searchable_db/

[c]*Source:* Nationmaster.com; http://www.nationmaster.com/; from World Resources Institute. 2003. Carbon Emissions from Energy Use and Cement Manufacturing, 1850 to 2000. Available online through the Climate Analysis Indicators Tool (CAIT) at http://cait.wri.org. Washington, DC: World Resources Institute.

[d]Units are thousand metric tons of oil equivalent per person per year. Data are for 2001. World per capita consumption has been stable over the past 10 years; that of the United States has increased slightly (7538 in 1990; 7921 in 2001).

[e]Units are cubic meters of water withdrawals per person per year. Data are for 2000.

[f]Units are thousand metric tons of carbon dioxide per 1000 people per year. Data appear to be for 2000.

2.7 CASE STUDY—DESIGN PROCESS AND ENVIRONMENTAL RESOURCES

Philip Merrill Environmental Center, Chesapeake Bay Foundation

Project Basics

- Location: Annapolis, Maryland, USA
- Latitude: 38.9 N; longitude: 76.5 W; elevation: near sea level
- Heating degree days: 4707 base 65ºF (2615 base 18.3ºC); cooling degree days: 3709 base 50ºF (2061 base 10ºC) for Baltimore, MD; annual precipitation: 42 in. (1063 mm)
- Building type: New construction; commercial offices and interpretive center
- 32,000 ft^2 (3000 m^2); two occupied stories
- Completed December 2000
- Client: The Chesapeake Bay Foundation
- Design team: SmithGroup (and consultants)

Background. The Philip Merrill Environmental Center was one of a half-dozen buildings certified as LEED Platinum at the time this case study was prepared. Platinum is the highest possible LEED rating. Elements of the design process for the Environmental Center are presented in the following sections, in order to emphasize the critical importance of an appropriate design process to the development of high-performance buildings. Design team and client values were important to the success of this project—and led to the development of explicit and aggressive green design intent and criteria. Concern for energy efficiency and water conservation led to much of the distinctive form of the building—especially the signature water storage tanks on the entry façade. (The information that follows was provided by SmithGroup.)

Context. The Chesapeake Bay Foundation (CBF) is an environmental advocacy, restoration, and education organization headquartered in Annapolis, Maryland. Before the creation of the Philip Merrill Environmental Center, CBF's facilities included three properties in Annapolis and a small building outside of town. The functioning and unity of the organization suffered from the disparate locations and consequent separation of departments, justifying the creation of a new headquarters that could unify and house CBF in an optimum environment.

Design Intent. The new headquarters would not only house the Foundation, but would also be a reflection on CBF's mission. It would serve as a paragon for the Bay's watershed region of sustainable development—"walking the talk," "practicing what CBF preaches." The design was to emulate the regional vernacular and utilitarian functions of working on the Bay. The building was to respond to habitats, vegetation, soils, buffer zones, views, solar orientation, topography, prevailing wind direction, and functional requirements. The organization of the elements on the site would tell the story of CBF's mission to educate and involve the public in taking responsibility for the health of the Bay.

The leading principles behind the design were as follows:

- Set a precedent for sustainable development on the Chesapeake Bay.
- Provide for the functional needs of CBF.
- Create an effective work environment.
- Embody a sense of unity and connectiveness.
- Push the envelope of green building.
- Reflect the utilitarian nature of CBF.
- Mesh indoor and outdoor spaces.
- Create interactive spaces.
- Integrate CBF's departments while preserving distinction.
- Enhance public service.
- Facilitate an educational experience.

Design Criteria and Validation. The project was intended to achieve a LEED Platinum rating. At the time design commenced, LEED was a largely unknown rating system in its pilot phase of development. The LEED system was used both as a benchmark and as an assessment tool—a way of validating the design's sustainability. Energy modeling using Energy 10 software was performed during the preliminary design phases. The overall energy modeling during subsequent phases used Trace software.

Post-Occupancy Validation Methods. A full year of monitoring and POE was performed by the National Renewable Energy Laboratory (NREL). NREL provided the monitoring equipment to measure the resource consumption (water, electricity, propane)

of the building and to measure the energy generated by the building. The Department of Energy performed a productivity analysis of the workers inside the building in an effort to evaluate how green buildings can not only save energy, but can create a healthier and more productive work environment.

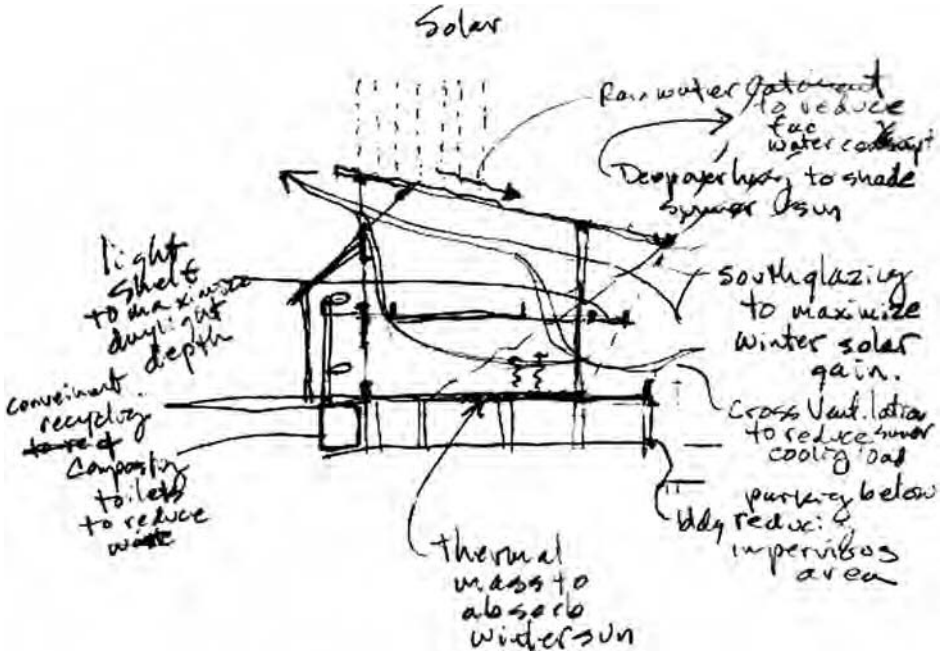


Fig. 2.10 *Conceptual design sketch showing the earliest concept of the Philip Merrill Environmental Center and illustrating how the form of the building was directly related to the environmental goals for the project. This sketch is used by the design team as an ongoing example of how early goal setting allows designers to shape a building to respond to goals, thus creating an integrated design. (© SmithGroup; used with permission.)*

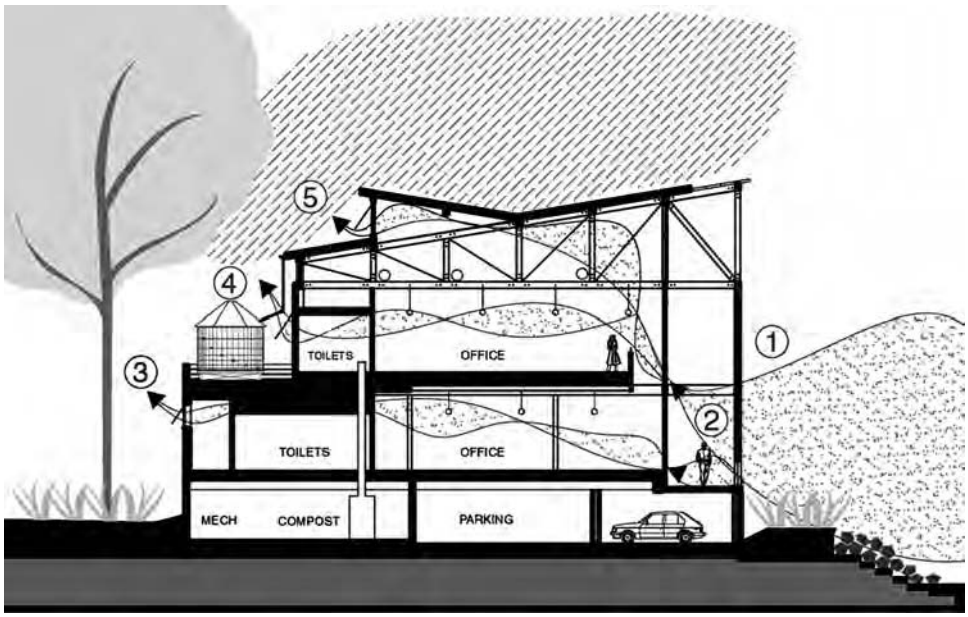


Fig. 2.11 *Schematic design diagram illustrating how the conceptual design idea was refined, and the role that natural ventilation, passive solar heating, rainwater collection, and daylighting and views played in shaping the building. Energy and water are clearly focal elements. (© SmithGroup; used with permission.)*

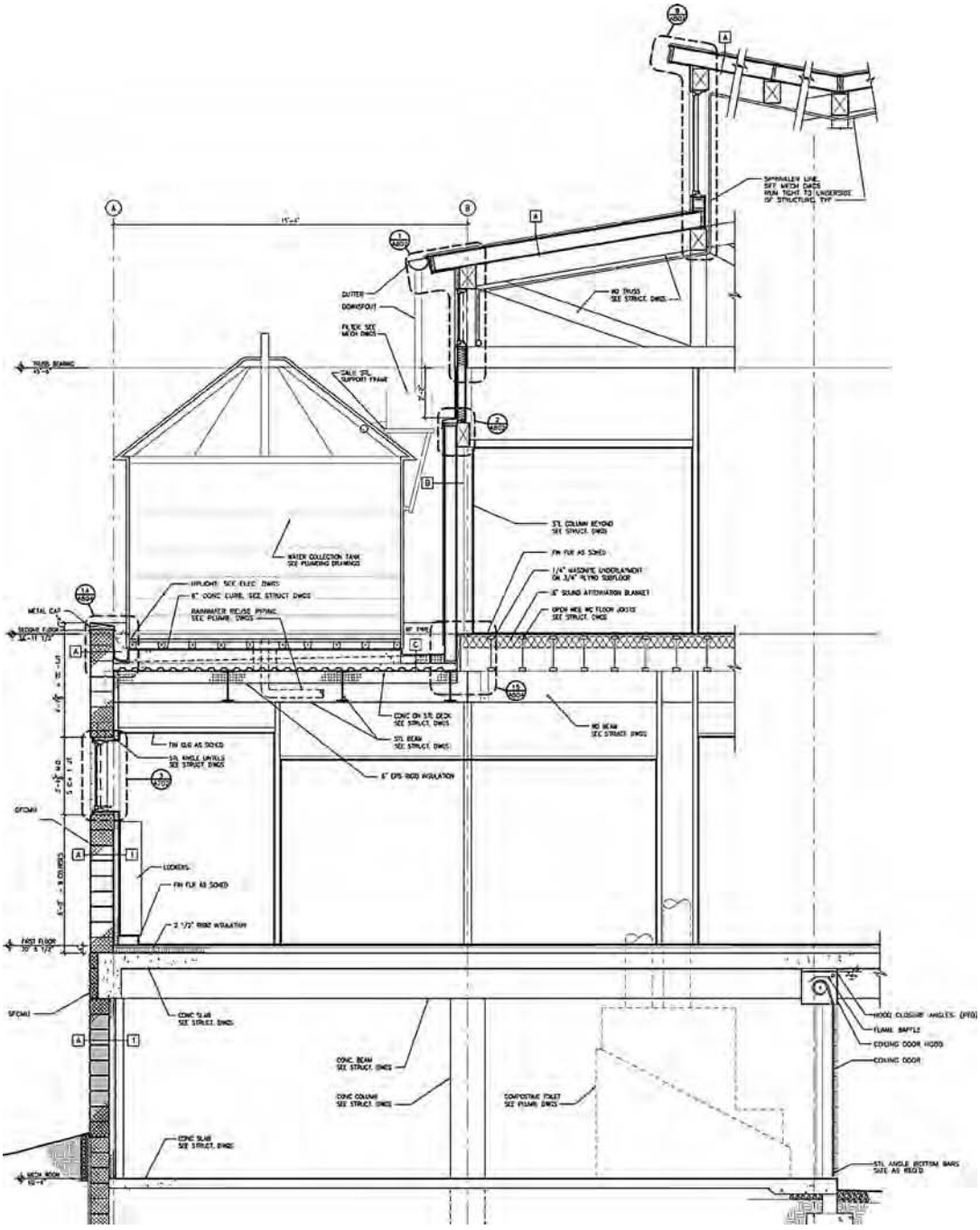


Fig. 2.12 *Section through the Philip Merrill Environmental Center developed during the construction documents phase. The water storage tanks, which are a signature element of the final design, have evolved from concept to buildable artifact. (© SmithGroup; used with permission.)*



Fig. 2.13 *North (inland) façade of the Philip Merrill Environmental Center showing the visual impact of rainwater collection intent and solution. Water conservation has informed this façade. (Photo © 2004 Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*



Fig. 2.14 *South (bay side) façade of the Philip Merrill Environmental Center showing PV panels, daylighting/solar apertures, and shading elements. Energy collection has informed this façade. (Photo © 2004 Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*

Performance Data. Information available to date suggests substantial design team success in "pushing the envelope of green building"—particularly in the areas of material, water, and energy conservation:

- The building achieved a LEED Platinum rating.
- All wood was obtained from renewable resources; more than 50% of building materials were obtained from within a 300-mile (480-km) radius of the site.
- There is a projected 90% reduction in water use compared to that of a comparable (conventional) office building.
- There is a projected annual energy use of 350,000 kWh (90% electricity) with an anticipated contribution of 43,000 kWh equivalent from solar thermal systems and PV; plug loads account for roughly a third of the energy use, lighting another third, and climate control the remaining third.
- The project received a Grand Award, Building Team Project of the Year, from *Building Design & Construction* magazine in 2001.

- The building was named one of the AIA/COTE Top Ten Green Projects in 2001 (American Institute of Architects/Committee on the Environment).

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION

High Performance Buildings Database, U.S. Department of Energy, Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy: http://eere.buildinggreen.com

References and Resources

American Institute of Architects. 1996. *Environmental Resource Guide.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Brand, S. 1994. *How Buildings Learn: What Happens After They're Built.* Viking. New York.

Brower, D. 1990. *Cool Energy.* Union of Concerned Scientists. Cambridge, MA.

California Integrated Waste Management Board (recycling in building construction): http://www.ciwmb.ca.gov/WPIE/Building/default.htm

Fisher, J. 1974. *The Energy Crisis in Perspective.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Hannon, B., R. Stein, B. Segal, and D. Serber. 1977. *Energy Use for Building Construction.* Center for Advanced Computation, University of Illinois. Champaign-Urbana, IL.

Irurah, D. 1997. "An Embodied Energy Algorithm for Energy Conservation in Building Construction as Applied to South Africa." Ph.D. thesis, University of Pretoria.

Joslin, J. et al. 1993. *The Waste Papers: Analysis and Discussion of the Potential for Salvage and Re-Use of Construction Materials from Residential Demolition.* Metro Solid Waste Department Publications. Portland, OR.

Lyle Center for Regenerative Studies: http://www.csupomona.edu/~crs/index.html

Lyle, J. T. 1999. *Design for Human Ecosystems: Landscape, Land Use, and Natural Resources.* Island Press. Washington, DC.

Meyers, R. 1983. *Handbook of Energy Technology and Economics.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Redefining Progress (Ecological Footprint Quiz; go ahead, take it): http://www.myfootprint.org/

Rees, W. and M. Wackernagel. 1995. *Our Ecological Footprint: Reducing Human Impact on the Earth.* New Society Publishers. Gabriola Island, BC.

Roaf, S. 2004. *Closing the Loop: Benchmarks for Sustainable Buildings.* RIBA Enterprises, Ltd. London.

Stein, R. et al. 1981. *Handbook of Energy Use for Building Construction.* U.S. Department of Energy. Washington, DC.

Sustainable Development Indicators. 2004: http://www.sdi.gov/indicators/lc_mater.htm (derived from the Materials Information Team, U.S. Geological Survey, U.S. Department of the Interior).

UNH. 2004. Watershed Protection, University of New Hampshire: information from website, no longer available.

USDOE. 2004. *2004 Buildings Energy Databook.* U.S. Department of Energy, Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy. Washington, DC.

The United States Energy Information Administration: http://www.eia.doe.gov/

USEPA. 1998. *Characterization of Building-Related Construction and Demolition Debris in the United States.* EPA530-R-98-010, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Washington, DC.

USGS. 2004. *Estimated Use of Water in the United States in 2000* (USGS Circular 1268), United States Geological Survey. Washington, DC.

U.S. Geological Survey (Water Resources of the United States): http://water.usgs.gov/

CHAPTER 3

Sites and Resources

SITE ANALYSIS TYPICALLY PRECEDES SITE planning. The purpose of a site analysis is to understand the character of a given site. Such an analysis usually includes the collection of information on utility availability, noise sources, zoning, views, solar access, traffic and pedestrian patterns, climate, and the like. In some cases, long-term statistical data are available as an information resource (such as for climate, solar position, utility services); for other variables (such as noise, views, pedestrian circulation in an urban area) there is usually no existing database, and all information must be collected directly by the designer. To be useful and successful, a site analysis must do more than simply catalog information; it must place value on the collected information in the context of a proposed project and its design intent. For a given building, is solar radiation a desirable resource or a problem to be solved? Is wind a usable design element or an environmental force to be avoided? Understanding what resources are available for inclusion in a design solution, and what natural forces are potential problems to be mitigated by design, is the essence of site analysis—and a necessary precursor to green design.

A designer's early site-planning decisions will, at a later date, influence available options for a building's climate control and lighting systems and affect a building's overall consumption of energy. When the site is seen as a collection of resources (sun, wind, water, plants) and also as part of the environment we all share, buildings can greatly reduce dependence upon nonrenewable fuels. They can also do this without limiting the availability of local energy resources for neighboring buildings. In addition to saving energy, the use of on-site resources can create outdoor spaces that become especially pleasant to be in. Such spaces can direct winter sun to a glass wall while blocking the wind, or funnel summer breezes through shade to an open window. Site planning is greatly influenced by economic considerations, zoning regulations, and adjacent developments, all of which can interfere with the design of a site to utilize the sun, the sky, and the wind. Integration of all these concerns at the site-planning stage is the first step in adapting a building to its climate. This chapter looks briefly at some aspects of site-climate interactions.

3.1 CLIMATES

Climate is a long-term statistically derived picture of weather. Weather is what happened today or yesterday, while climate is what happened over the past 10, 15, or 20 years. Our most familiar names for climates describe their most severe season, as shown in Fig. 3.1. This is a convenient means of description, but it can be misleading for designers. "Cold" climates can have very hot, sometimes humid summer days; hot-arid climates can have bitterly cold winter conditions. Before designing buildings that will modify exterior conditions to provide indoor comfort, we should know when

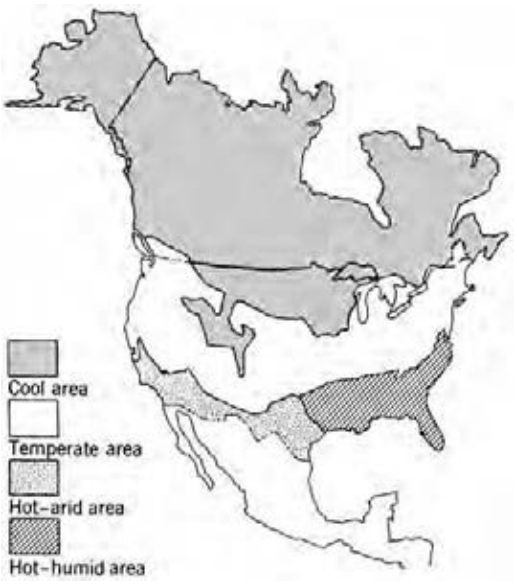


Fig. 3.1 *Regional climate zones of the North American continent. (From Victor Olgyay,* Design with Climate: Bioclimatic Approach to Architectural Regionalism; *© 1963 by Princeton University Press. Reprinted by permission.)*

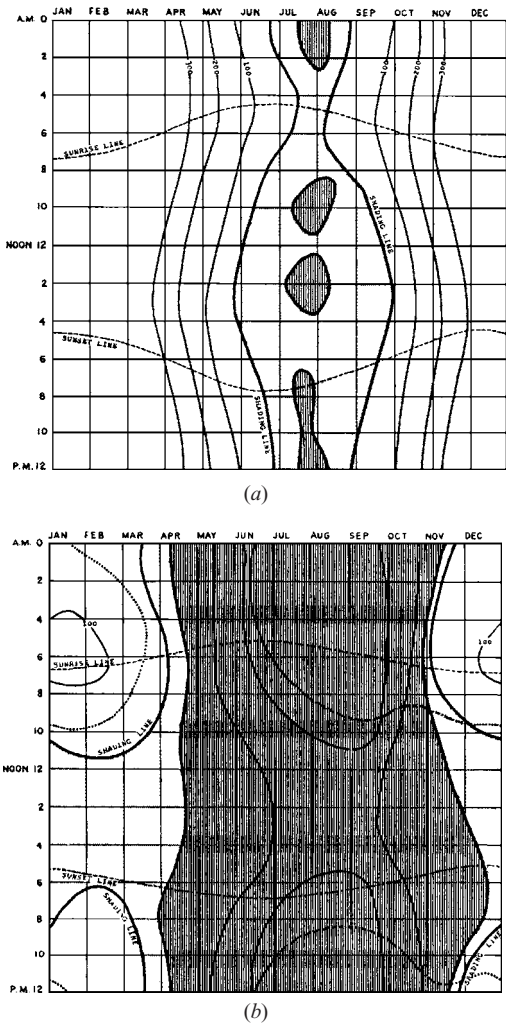
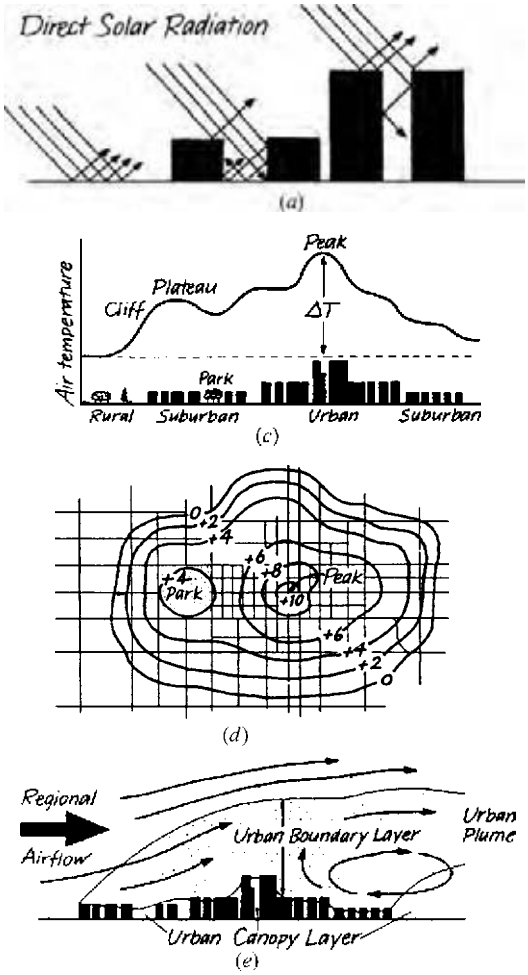


Fig. 3.2 *Timetables of climatic needs for (a) New York City and (b) Miami, cities representative of two of Olgyay's North American regional climate zones. Isolines within the shaded regions represent air speeds; the lines outside of the shaded areas represent solar radiation intensity. (From Victor Olgyay,* Design with Climate: Bioclimatic Approach to Architectural Regionalism; *© 1963 by Princeton University Press. Reprinted by permission.)*

and how much modifying is appropriate. This is not necessarily easy, as there are 8760 hours in a year and several climatic variables of interest for each hour (temperature, relative humidity, solar radiation, wind speed, etc.). A graphical means of portraying all these variables is helpful. A very useful set of graphic analysis tools for climates was developed by Olgyay (1963) under the name *bioclimatic design*. Bioclimatic design links comfort and climate. Chapter 4 provides details on thermal comfort, but a discussion here of Olgyay's approach will provide an introduction to a few key issues.

Figure 3.2 shows Olgyay timetables for cities representative of two of the four climate zones shown in Fig. 3.1. These graphical views of thermal environmental needs are plotted across an entire year (the horizontal axis) for all hours of the day (the vertical axis). Those portions of the year within the bounds of the bold shading line require shade for thermal comfort. The darker-shaded (overheated) zones are bounded by an isoline that corresponds to a temperature of about 78–82°F (26–28°C), depending upon relative humidity. At higher temperatures, there is a need for air motion as well as shade to remain comfortable outdoors. Areas farther within the overheated zone correspond to thermal comfort needs for 300 and 700 fpm (1.5 and 3.6 m/s) air velocities. An occupancy schedule for a proposed building can be overlaid on such a timetable, providing insights into climate/building interactions.

The timetable for New York City (Fig. 3.2*a*) shows that about one-fifth of the year requires shade for outdoor comfort, with most of the hours from mid-July to mid-August falling in the overheated period. Little relief can be expected at night in summer. Perhaps one-third of the year is "too cold," with temperatures too low for shirtsleeve comfort outdoors and requiring more than 300



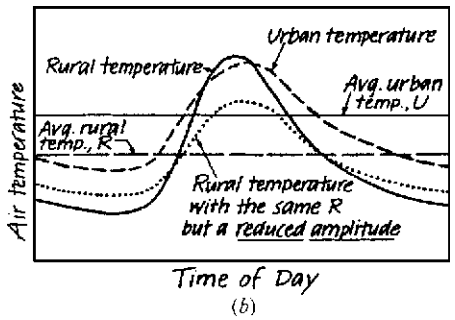


Fig. 3.3 *Urban heat island: a densely occupied area with a temperature distinctly higher than that of the surrounding rural area. (a) Direct solar radiation is likely to be reflected within the city, thereby increasing solar heat gain in urban areas. (b) Temperature records at a rural site (solid line) and in the center of a city (dashed line) during a typical night and day. The city's heat-conducting materials and thin cloud of polluted air acting alone would not change the average air temperature but would reduce the day–night difference (the dotted line). In addition, the heat from increased solar gain and city-specific heat sources (cars, buildings) warms the air at all hours, producing the observed urban record (dashed line). (c) Idealized profile of the air temperature difference between urban and rural areas at times of peak differences—calm, clear nights. (d) Based upon (c), typical isotherms (lines of equal temperature) provide a "contour map" of the urban heat island. (e) The urban heat island can affect the countryside "downstream." (Reprinted by permission from Lowry, 1988.)*

Btu/h ft^2 (960 W/m^2) of radiation, an unlikely solar bounty during New York winters.

The timetable for Miami, Florida (Fig. 3.2*b*), shows that about four-fifths of the year demand shade for outdoor comfort, and about three-fifths are in the overheated period. A large portion of the year needs over 700 fpm (3.6 m/s) wind, with these hours occurring both during the day and at night. There is also a need for wind to counteract high vapor pressure (humidity), independently of high temperature. Clearly, wind is important to comfort in Miami in any unconditioned building. There is no such zone as "too cold" there.

Olgyay's climatic timetables provide a graphical view of outdoor conditions relative to thermal comfort for four key climate regions (Fig. 3.1). Of these four, the New York timetable suggests an emphasis on space heating but a need for cooling as well. In Miami, the focus is upon shading and cooling. Several design strategies can utilize the ambient climate as a heat source or sink for heating and for cooling.

3.2 CLIMATES WITHIN CLIMATES

The climate at a particular site can be quite different from the climate data that are published as being representative of an entire region. This is particularly evident when visiting a site where a neighboring hill blocks wind or winter sun, or an adjacent lake cools summer breezes or adds a damp chill to the winter air. Such local variations constitute microclimates, with some characteristic distinctly different from those of the larger macroclimate. The characteristics of a *micro*climate are influenced by the interaction of the characteristics of both the site and the *macro*climate:

Site Characteristics	*Climate Characteristics*
Soil type	Sun
Ground surface	Air temperature
Topography	Humidity
Vegetation	Precipitation

Water bodies/flows	Air motion
Views	Air quality
Human effects (heat, noise, etc.)	

Most urban sites are under the influence of an urban subclimate that differs from the conditions of the surrounding countryside unaffected by urbanization. Probably the best-known urban climate feature is the *heat island.* Urban heat island effects are summarized in Table 3.1 and Fig. 3.3. Designers should note that city climatological stations are often located at nonurban sites, such as an outlying airport, masking the effects of a heat island.

The most obvious reason for a city's relative year-around warmth is its concentration of heat sources: the air conditioners, furnaces, and electric lighting in buildings and internal combustion engines in cars. This urban and industrial heat production is shown in Table 3.2 and Fig. 3.4. It appears that cities and industrial regions of the world release less internal heat per capita as people live and work closer together—although the heat density (temperature) is greater. Commercial and industrial cities release more heat for a given population density, and tropical cities release less, while still conforming to the pattern that greater compactness permits less energy use per capita.

TABLE 3.1 Average Changes in Climate Effects Caused by Urbanization[a]

Effect	Comparison with Rural Environment
Contaminants	
Condensation nuclei and particulates	10 times more
Gaseous admixtures	5 to 25 times more
Cloudiness	
Cover	5 to 10% more
Fog, winter	100% more
Fog, summer	30% more
Precipitation[b]	
Totals	5 to 10% more
Days with less than 2 in. (5 mm)	10% more
Snowfall	5% less
Relative humidity	
Winter	2% less
Summer	8% less
Radiation	
Global	15 to 20% less
Ultraviolet, winter	30% less
Ultraviolet, summer	5% less
Sunshine duration	5 to 15% less
Temperature	
Annual mean	0.9 to 1.8°F (0.5 to 1.0°C) higher
Winter minima (average)	1.8 to 2.6°F (1 to 2°C) higher
Heating degree days	10% less
Wind speed	
Annual mean	20 to 30% less
Extreme gusts	10 to 20% less
Calms	5 to 20% more

Source: Landsberg (1970).

[a]These effects vary from city to city and from day to day.

[b]Research since 1970 has shown that it is not at all certain that urbanization causes increases in precipitation amount within a city.

Rain that falls on a city can be an effective evaporative cooling mechanism, especially as water evaporates from wet surfaces. Yet streets and buildings are usually designed to shed water quickly and thoroughly, sending rainwater into storm sewers instead of letting it evaporate slowly in the wind and sun. As a result, evaporative cooling from these surfaces is minimized.

A city also changes the overall cooling action of the wind by channeling it into narrow streets. The geometry of high vertical walls and narrow streets also increases summer heat collection in cities as the high sun is reflected downward to be absorbed and then reradiated by the often rocklike streets and building surfaces. In winter, however, this geometry puts most urban surfaces at a solar disadvantage because the low sun strikes only the upper portion of south-facing walls. A reduction in radiant heat loss at night, caused by this lack of access to the sky, is a key element in the formation of the urban heat island, as summarized in Fig. 3.5. Sky access is discussed in more detail in Section 3.6.

A more subtle urban climate influence is contaminated air. Small particles in a city's air can keep some sunlight from reaching the city, yet can also help to keep the city's heat from radiating outward. These particles also form additional nuclei for fog droplets. Table 3.1 suggests that fog may occur in a city in winter up to twice as often as in the surrounding countryside. Trees and greenery, which can act as crude filters of airborne dust, are not as available in a city.

The city thus modifies its climate from that of its surroundings. In winter, the city's factories, vehicles, surface materials, and geometry combine to increase temperature and reduce the amount of energy needed for heating buildings. The typical means of providing needed winter heating (fossil fuel-burning heating equipment and power plants) contribute to airborne particles and urban fog.

TABLE 3.2 Heat Generated within Cities

City or Region[a]	Population (millions)	Area mile² (km²)	Population Density 10³/ mile² (10³/km²)	Energy Use per Capita[b] (kW/capita)	Energy Use per Unit Area[b] (W/m²)
CITIES AND INDUSTRIALIZED REGIONS					
3 Fairbanks[c]	0.045	30.8 (80)	1.6 (0.6)	10.91	6.55
11 Vancouver	0.6	42.8 (111)	14.0 (5.4)	3.55	19.2
12 Brussels	1.3	62.9 (163)	20.7 (8.0)	3.5	28.0
14 West Berlin	2.3	90.7 (235)	25.4 (9.8)	2.14	21.0
9 St. Louis	0.75	96.5 (250)	7.8 (3.0)	5.3	15.9
10 Munich	0.9	116 (300)	7.8 (3.0)	3.0	9.0
5 New Jersey suburbs of NYC	4.7	2355 (6100)	2.1 (0.8)	9.1	7.3
1 Los Angeles County	7.0	3860 (10,000)	0.2 (0.07)	10.5	0.74
4 Nordheim–Westfalen[d]	16.9	13,045 (33,800)	1.3 (0.5)	8.0	4.0
2 BosNyWash[e]	33.0	33,582 (87,000)	1.0 (0.38)	11.2	4.3
COMMERCIAL/INDUSTRIAL CITIES					
15 Sheffield	0.5	18.5 (48)	26.9 (10.4)	1.83	19.0
17 Manhattan	1.7	22.8 (59)	74.6 (28.8)	5.52	159.0
16 Montreal	1.1	30.1 (78)	36.5 (14.1)	7.02	99.0
13 Budapest	1.3	43.6 (113)	29.8 (11.5)	3.74	43.0
8 Cincinnati (summer)	0.6	85.7 (222)	7.0 (2.7)	9.3	25.1
7 Hamburg	1.83	295 (763)	6.2 (2.4)	5.3	12.7
6 Chicago	3.5	711 (1842)	4.9 (1.9)	27.2	51.7
TROPICAL					
18 Hong Kong	3.9	40.5 (105)	96.1 (37.1)	0.88	32.6
19 Singapore	2.1	54.0 (140)	38.9 (15.0)	0.81	12.2

Source: Lowry and Lowry (1995) by permission.

[a]Index numbers refer to Fig. 3.4.

[b]0.317 W/m² = 1 Btu/ft². These columns were not converted to I-P units. The units shown are as presented in the source, but technically energy should be expressed in kW-h while power is in W.

[c]Data for Fairbanks, Alaska, include a sparsely populated incorporated area surrounding the central business district.

[d]Nordheim–Westfalen is the heavily urbanized and industrialized region in the lower Rhine valley near Düsseldorf–Dortmund.

[e]BosNyWash is the term often used by urbanists to refer to the megalopolis that stretches from Boston through New York to Washington, DC.

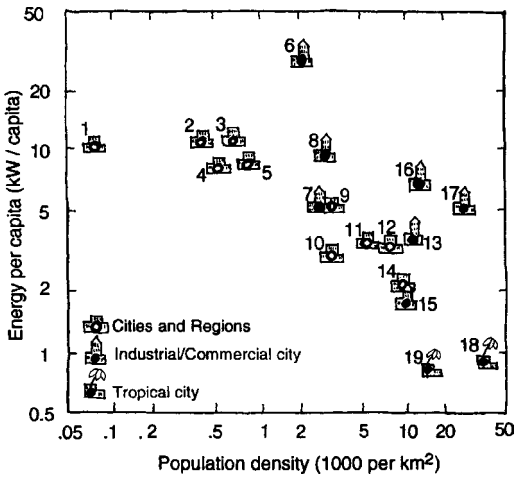


Fig. 3.4 *Population density and energy use per capita for 19 cities and regions. Numbers refer to locations in Table 3.2. The heat island effect is influenced by both density and energy use. (Data with permission from Lowry and Lowry, 1995.)*

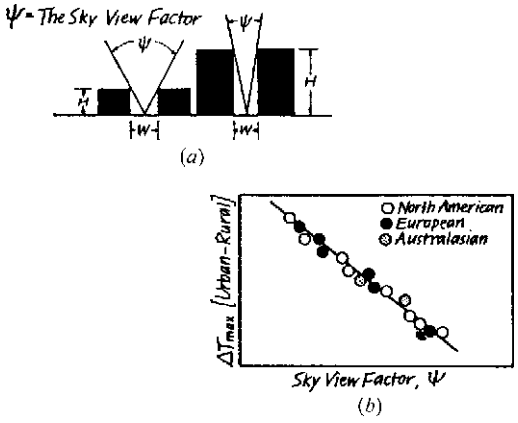


Fig. 3.5 *The urban heat island effect is particularly strong on calm, clear nights. (a) With a greatly reduced "sky view factor" (Ψ) to the cold night sky, the walls and floors of urban canyons (the right part of the sketch) cannot lose heat as readily as can the open countryside or less dense suburban areas (the left part of the sketch). (b) The more narrow the Ψ, the more pronounced is the effect (ΔT) of the urban heat island in cities throughout the world. (Reprinted by permission from Lowry, 1988.)*

Solar-assisted heating would diminish this pollution—and with less air pollution, more sun would reach a solar collector. However, the greater the population density, the more difficult is access to winter sun, especially at latitudes farther from the equator, where winter heating is most needed. High buildings readily block low sun altitudes.

In summer, the city's internal heat makes things worse. Air conditioners add their own process heat to the building heat that they pour into the air; their appetite for electricity taxes power plants, in turn adding vastly more waste heat. Again, solar energy can help, this time by generating photovoltaic (PV) electricity to run air conditioners. High summer sun angles make solar access much less problematic. The stronger the sun, the more electricity is produced for air conditioners and other loads. PV arrays are currently high in first cost, but are noiseless, emit no exhaust gases, and add no internally generated heat to the summer air.

Site- and urban-planning responses to these urban climate characteristics can sometimes lead in contradictory directions. For example, the provision of greenways within cities would bring softer ground surfaces cooled in summer by shading, breezes, and evaporation. However, the winter impact of greenways might be an increase in fog via evaporation of retained storm water; or perhaps fog would be discouraged locally by increased wind speeds in channels formed by the greenways. The summer impact of a greenway is also mixed; changes in comfort would depend upon the particular combination of increased humidity and cooler temperature a greenway produces. On balance, a greenway within a city seems to be a positive and aesthetic step in ameliorating the urban climate.

While considering how the sun, wind, and other climate elements can be utilized on a site for the benefit of a building, it is important to remember the need to protect the access of others to these same shared resources. In "The Tragedy of the Commons" (1968), Garrett Hardin writes about the commons as publicly owned meadows shared by many herders. Each herder realizes that his personal wealth will increase as animals are added to his herd, so all herders increase their livestock. The meadow capacity, however, does not increase; overgrazing occurs, and as a result the commons become unable to support any animals. The following discussions of sun, air, and water resources available to a site are influenced both by the "private" needs of a building and the "public" patterns of resource availability, which should remain accessible to all.

3.3 BUILDINGS AND SITES

Buildings are temporary occupants of their sites. The arrival of a building usually produces rapid and dramatic changes to the biological systems on a site, to the microclimate, and often to the surface geology. Buildings are guests, sites are hosts; a fundamental design question is, how can the two most productively coexist?

A site offers a building earth for support, as a potential heat source and heat sink, and for the growth of plants where building density permits. Sounds on a site depend upon the context, urban or rural. Water is somewhere below a site, flows across it, falls on it as rain, and perhaps collects on its surface. Wind moves erratically across a site. Solar energy arrives in diurnal and seasonal cycles. Long-term patterns of sun, wind, and water are steady and generally predictable, although great variations can occur over shorter (daily, monthly, annual) time spans. At some level, an ecosystem of life is already established.

During construction a building arrives, bringing with it people and vehicles, a flow of materials into and out of the site, sounds of activity, and imported utility services such as electricity, water, and natural gas. The building offers the site electric light by night, a continuous flow of heat (to or from), a radical change in water flows (both at and outside of the building envelope), and liquid and solid wastes (or nutrients, depending upon one's viewpoint). In our society, the waste outflows are most often whisked off for treatment "elsewhere."

When a site is larger than its building, both may be designed to improve building performance and user experiences. Large sites offer smaller buildings the opportunity to accept, filter, or block sun, wind, sound, and rainwater to make effective use of on-site resources. Vegetation, ground forms, and orientation, as well as roofs, walls, and floors, can play a role in this interaction.

When a building fills its site, opportunities for on-site resource use are more limited. Because buildings that completely fill sites are often located in densely built-up areas, less wind is available

around the building walls, and solar radiation may be blocked. The built-upon earth is less able to act as a heat sink or absorb water. The building roof often provides the major opportunity to receive sun and rain and discharge heat to the wind. It may offer the only opportunity to grow plants on the site. In dense urban areas, the future roofscape will be dominated by climate-building interactions: solar collection, rain collection, heat rejection, water treatment, and gardens. Compared to today's urban roofscape dominated by horizontal black or gray surfaces behind parapet walls, this represents a dramatic design opportunity for aesthetic, social, and technical change.

3.4 ANALYZING THE SITE

After recognizing the resources that exist on and around a site, a designer then decides how best to integrate these resources into the building design while making the building and site a successful addition to the larger patterns of the surroundings. Schematic site plans are typically used as a kind of inventory; overlaid bubble diagrams can test possible design arrangements that relate rooms or functions to their surroundings in the plan view. Sun and wind conditions (in both summer and winter), noise sources, and water runoff patterns are often included in a schematic plan. It is particularly important to identify microclimates on the site, the places that have special characteristics differing from the regional climate. Microclimates can present opportunities for an expanded comfort zone: more sun in cool periods, more wind in warm periods. Microclimates can sometimes provide building sites where less energy is consumed because the winter is warmer or the summer cooler. Microclimates can also present problem areas to be avoided for buildings or outdoor activity, or where special design measures need to be taken to correct their difficulties.

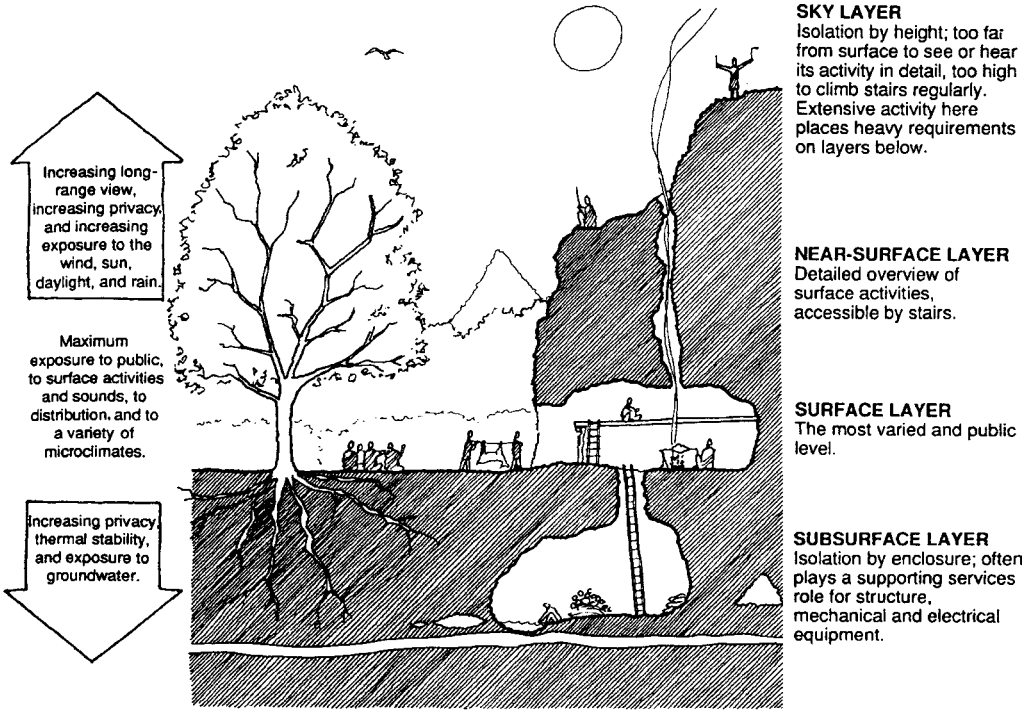
Microclimates on a site are not limited to those visible on the surface (in plain view). Conditions of privacy and accessibility, view, heat, light, air motion, sound, and water all change with vertical distance from the surface (Fig. 3.6*a*). To minimize energy consumption for constructing and using buildings and to integrate buildings with their surroundings, the conditions best suited to various functions should approach the characteristics of the layer of the site in which they are located. Consequently, both vertical and horizontal site analyses are needed. A lecture hall, requiring both an acoustically isolated and a closely controlled environment, is an obvious candidate for the subsurface layer. Electrical equipment, which benefits from a cool environment, is also suitable for the subsurface layer.

One building whose form responds to these layers is Boston's City Hall (Fig. 3.6*b*). Activities with the most frequent public interaction are located near the surface, such as the skylit, high-ceilinged lobby, whereas special ceremonial functions are elevated to distinctive forms in the near-surface layer above. The city offices with less frequent public contact occupy several floors in the sky layer, where daylight is plentiful. Storage and mechanical functions, as well as parking, are in the subsurface layer. An aesthetic equivalent of this horizontal layering is architect Louis Sullivan's concept of a façade as a "base, body and capital."

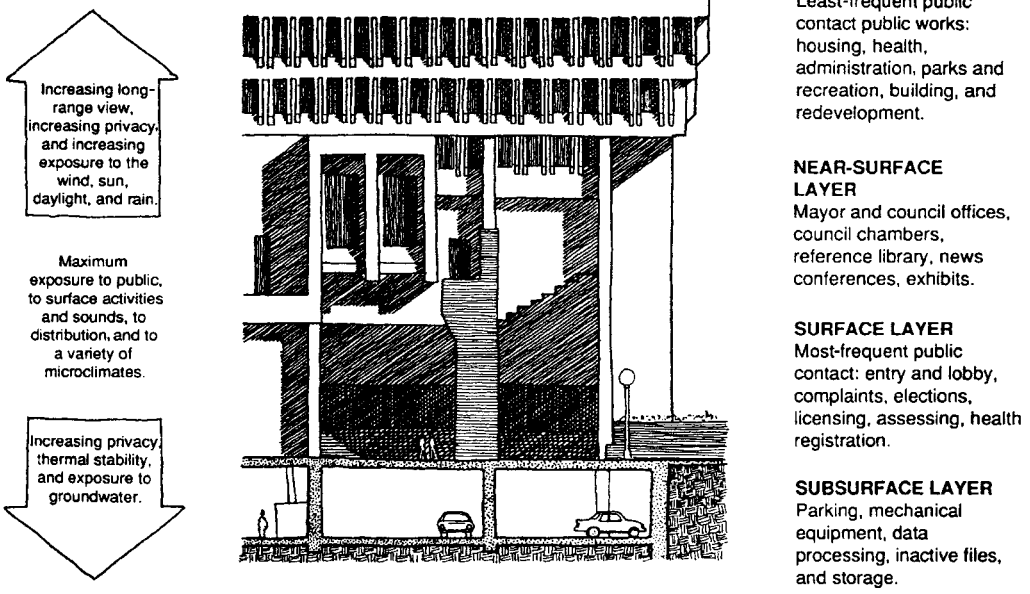
3.5 SITE DESIGN STRATEGIES

Sites can be organized to aid in heating, lighting, cooling, and controlling noise in buildings. A few of the most common site strategies are compared with their seasonal roles by Watson and Labs (1983) in Fig. 3.7. Later in this chapter, several of these strategies are discussed in more detail. The graphics in Fig. 3.8 suggest a focus upon housing but also apply to any function that can utilize an extended comfort zone.

One example of how the information in Figs. 3.6 and 3.7 can be applied (and manipulated) in the planning of a building and its site is a house designed by Frank Lloyd Wright in the 1940s (Fig. 3.8). The direct gain of solar heat through its south-facing windows in winter makes this an early example of *passive solar heating*. (By contrast, *active solar heating* includes collectors and a single-purpose storage volume for solar heat, such as a tank of water or a bed of heated rocks.) This house, known as the Solar Hemicycle, was built in 1948 near Madison, Wisconsin, which lies between the cool and temperate climate zones. Winter heating is the dominant thermal influence in this area. The house stands on a rise in the prairie, particularly vulnerable to winter winds. During construction, earth was scooped from in front of the south face



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 3.6 *(a) Characteristics of horizontal layers of a site. (b) Horizontal layers and form: Boston City Hall, 1969. (Kallman, McKinnell and Knowles, Architects.)*

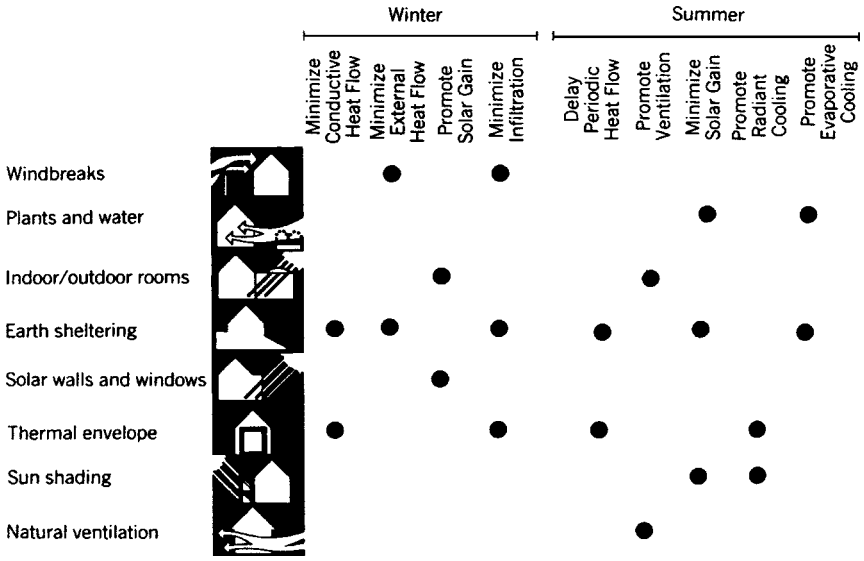


Fig. 3.7 *Generic bioclimatic site design concepts and building strategies. (Reprinted from* Passive Cooling *by permission of the publisher, American Solar Energy Society.)*

of the house and bermed against the entire curved north wall, almost to roof level. Only a narrow strip of second-floor windows separates the berm from the roof. This berm and curve combination gives winter wind protection from the northeast to northwest and provides further insulation for the north wall. The north wall is made of stone, which absorbs and stores winter solar radiation (heat) that comes in through the floor-to-ceiling, southeast-to-southwest-facing glass. The concrete slab-on-grade first floor also stores solar heat in winter. The impression that this house and site are sun collectors is heightened by an entrance tunnel in the northeast end of the house that leads from the parking area through the berm and onto the sunny, protected south terrace overlooking a sunken "sun-trap" circular lawn. Passage from the cold north side through an even colder tunnel to the sunny south side prepares a visitor for the solar-heated interior.

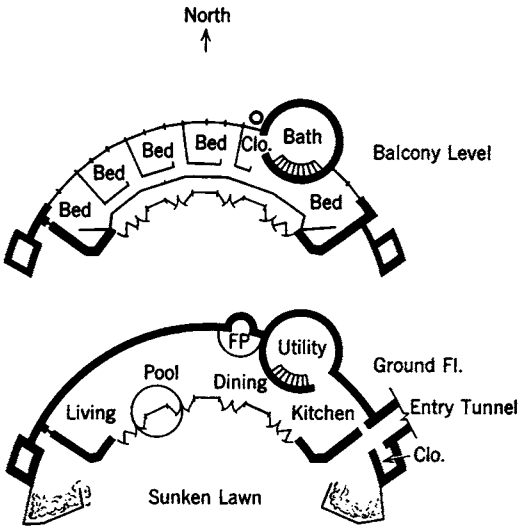
This house plan is shorter in the north-south and longer in the east-west direction (about a 1:3 ratio). This elongation is typical of passive solar designs, which are able to store and use winter solar heat gain, and thus profit from having long south-facing glass walls to act as passive collectors. Had these large windows been well insulated at night and the roof and walls insulated to current standards, this house would be a very up-to-date case study of passive solar heating.

In the Solar Hemicycle house, protection from summer overheating is provided by an overhang along the south glass walls, as well as by the shaded and cool thermal mass of the north stone/berm wall combination. The high windows in both the north and south walls allow warm air to rise and escape.

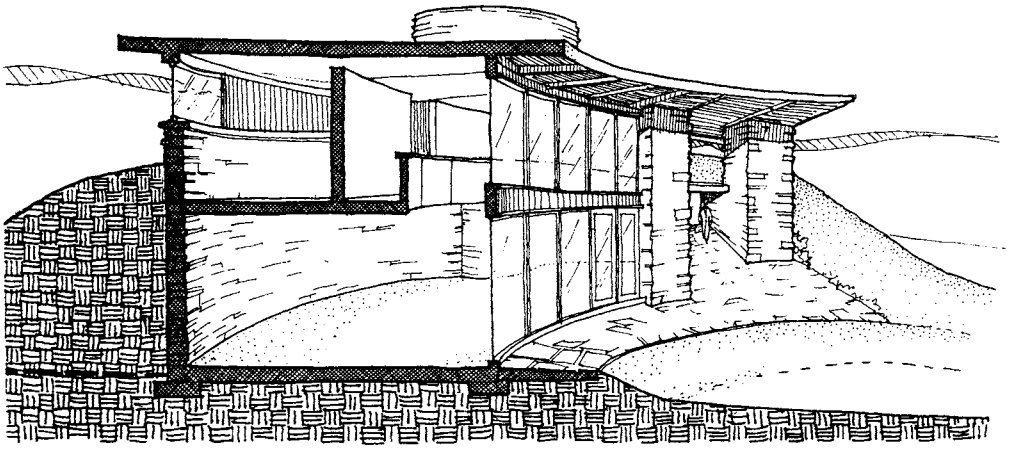
3.6 DIRECT SUN AND DAYLIGHT

The Earth actually receives only a very small percentage of the sun's daily energy output. This small portion, however, is critically important to life on Earth. Almost all of today's energy sources have the sun as an ancestor. Fossil fuels are solar energy that has been concentrated by time and geologic conversion. Biomass, hydropower, and wind power represent shorter-term concentrations of solar energy. Even without concentration, the renewable solar resource is often more than adequate for building heating and lighting.

The amount of solar energy available at any given site varies both seasonally and daily. Typically, the closer the sun is to a position directly overhead, the more solar energy that reaches a horizontal site. Fortunately, sunlight's embodied heat energy is not its only resource; direct sun is our most intense light source. Indirect sun, such as on an



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 3.8 *An early passive solar-heated home, Frank Lloyd Wright's Solar Hemicycle (Jacobs House II) near Madison, Wisconsin. The house was designed in the early 1940s and built in 1948. (a) Floor plans. (b) Section-perspective, looking east toward the entry tunnel in the berm wall.*

overcast day or from the clear north sky, is a wonderfully diffuse and readily utilized light source.

(a) Access to Light and Sun

The value of daylight (and fresh air) to buildings has long been recognized in zoning laws, which require that minimum distances (setbacks) be maintained between a building and the property line in lower-density areas. Height restrictions often accompany these setbacks, defining a maximum buildable volume that a building can fill (Fig. 3.9). As buildings become taller and density increases, daylight reflecting down between buildings is diminished; in response, the maximum buildable volume becomes narrower as it rises.

When direct sun in winter is desirable at the ground floor of all sites, the buildable volume is sharply reduced in height due to the low angle of the winter sun in northern latitudes. Protection of this most-restricted buildable envelope, called the *solar envelope*, is at present rarely mandated, but solar access ordinances have been enacted for residential zones in some cities. The most restrictive feature of

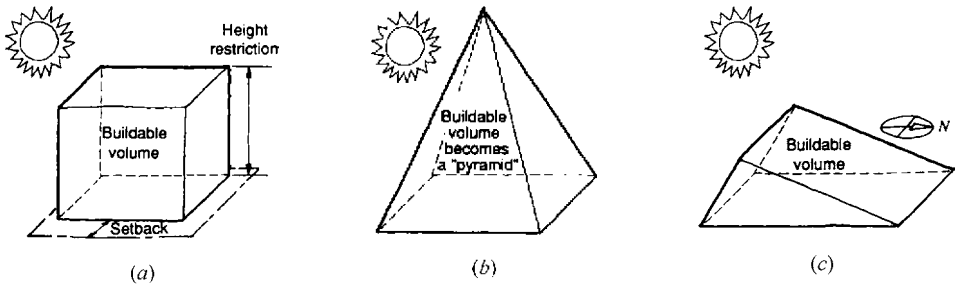


Fig. 3.9 *Protecting access to light and solar radiation. Three regulatory approaches that compromise between private optima (e.g., maximum rentable floor space) and public optima (e.g., daylight at street level). (a) Simple daylight access, residential and low-rise commercial areas. (b) Daylight access in high-density areas. (c) Access to direct sun for winter heating.*

the solar envelope is the low slope of its northern face, usually corresponding to the altitude of the sun above the horizontal for about 2 hours before and after noon on December 21. This feature allows 4 hours of access to direct sun for a neighbor on the site just to the north, on even the shortest day.

A brief history of daylight and solar access regulations and an overview of current design guidelines are given in DeKay (1992). Figure 3.10 shows the application of six variations of regulations on an urban block at 40° N latitude, elongated east-west. The east-west streets are wider than the north-south streets. Further development of the solar envelope is shown in Figs. 3.11 and 3.12, based upon the work of Knowles (1981). Clearly, winter solar access is closely related to maximum density of development.

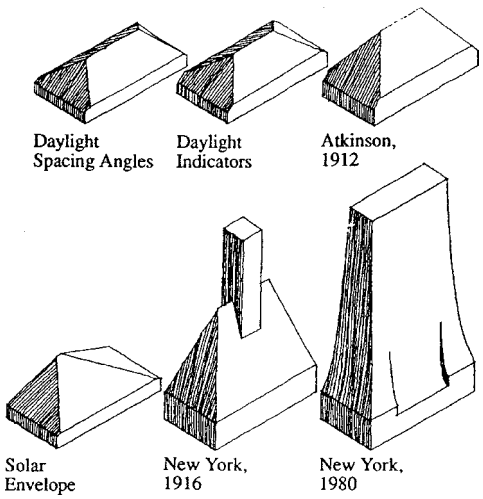


Fig. 3.10 *Various approaches to defining maximum allowable building envelopes for daylight access. These envelopes are applied to a 200-ft × 400-ft (61-m × 122-m) block at 40° N latitude. The east-west streets (along the longer side) are 65 ft (20 m) wide; the north-south streets are 45 ft (14 m) wide. In this case, "daylight spacing angles" and "daylight indicators" produce nearly identical envelopes. (From DeKay, 1992, with permission of the American Solar Energy Society.)*

For daylight access, building surfaces can be almost as important as building geometry. The importance of light reflected from vertical and horizontal surfaces is apparent in daylighting calculation methodologies. Lighter-colored surfaces produce more internal daylighting, especially in crowded urban conditions, where a view of the sky from windows is not common. An increase in daylight results for all surfaces on an urban street if the building and site surfaces have light colors. This can conflict with the use of planting for shading and evaporative cooling, although lighter-colored groundcover plants are available. Although daylight reflected in a diffused way from building and ground surfaces is a potential benefit, harsh specular reflections of direct sun from mirror surfaces are often unwelcome. See Section 3.6(f).

(b) Charting the Sun

For site planning, one of the earliest tasks is to determine when direct sun reaches a building or space—such as a playground, deck, or courtyard—on a site. Information on solar geometry is presented in Chapter 6. Numerical data on sun position and intensity are found in Appendices C and D. Details of how a building can utilize the sun are found in later chapters on solar space heating, solar water heating, and daylighting. Effective design for solar utilization, however, begins with an understanding of the basics.

The chart in Fig. 3.13 shows the sun's position for 40° N latitude and also shows, for the 6 hours of greatest insolation, what percentage of clear-day insolation is gained each hour by an unshaded

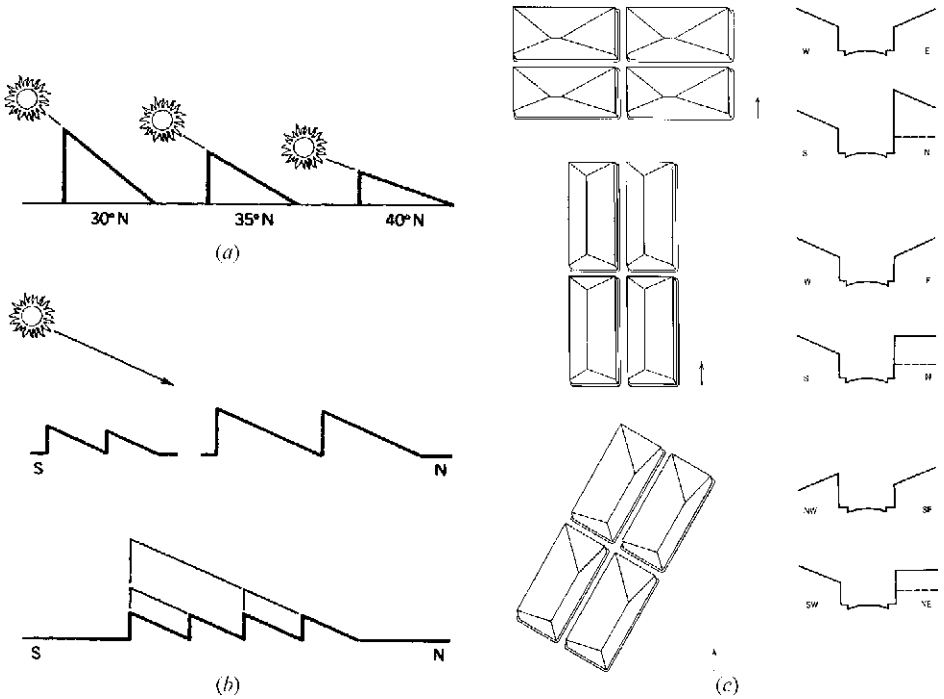


Fig. 3.11 *These solar envelopes are refinements of the solar access "pyramid" of Fig. 3.9. (a) The slope of the solar envelope changes with latitude. (b) The larger the site, the greater the buildable volume of the solar envelope. (c) Solar envelopes for various individual site orientations. (Reprinted, by permission of R. Knowles, from* Sun, Rhythm, Form; *© 1981, MIT Press.)*

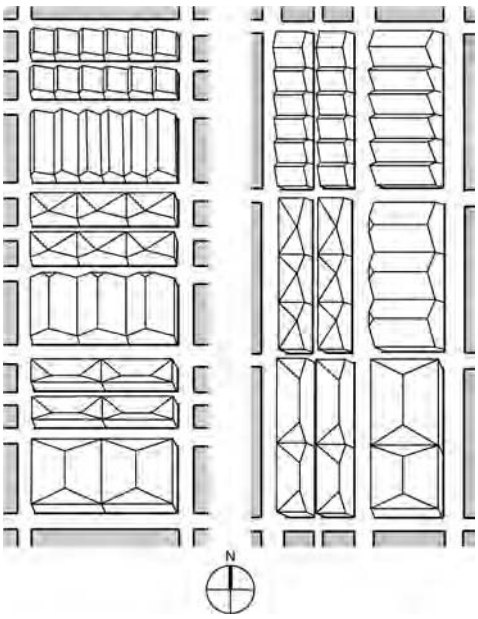


Fig. 3.12 *Solar envelopes for east–west elongated blocks (left) and for north-south elongated blocks (right). (Reprinted, by permission of R. Knowles, from* Sun, Rhythm, Form; *© 1981, MIT Press. Redrawn by Nathan Majeski.)*

south-facing vertical window. The emphasis on a southern orientation calls attention to its useful characteristic of receiving *more* sun in winter and *less* sun in summer than any other orientation. To convert these percentages to actual heat gains, see the numerous tables in Appendix C with data for *clear* days at a given latitude and the table for an *average* day by climate station (January and July only).

(c) The "Band of Sun"

A building section drawing can be a powerful site analysis tool. A north–south section is drawn through a proposed building and its site. At three times of year (each solstice and the equinox), the noon solar altitude angle is determined, as in Fig. 3.14. Then the *band of sun* that strikes the building and site is drawn, incoming at the noon altitude. The portion of this available direct radiation that is used by the building and site can then be analyzed. The more of the band that is unused in each season, the higher the potential for redesign in order to better utilize the solar resource. This analysis helps to show how wintertime solar utilization

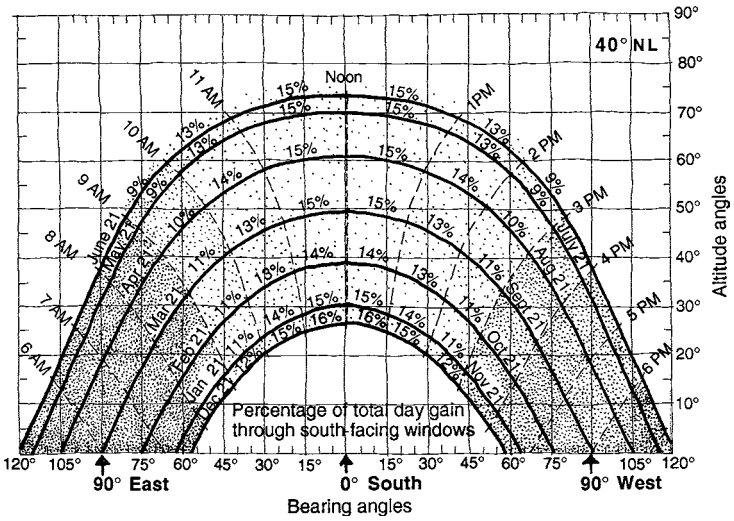


Fig. 3.13 *Sun chart for 40° N latitude showing the approximate percentage of clear-day insolation for south-facing windows for each of the 6 maximum hours of sun each month. (From Edward Mazria and David Winitsky. 1976.* Solar Guide and Calculator. *Center for Environmental Research, University of Oregon.)*

depends upon lower sun altitudes, and summertime uses depend upon higher altitude angles.

(d) Skylines and Winter Sun

The skyline as actually seen from a given location on a site can be charted to determine access to direct sun at any time of the year (Fig. 3.15). Such an obstruction analysis should precede the placing of any solar collector, whether it is a south-facing window or a manufactured collector. Seasonal obstructions within the six "best" collection hours (9:00 A.M. to 3:00 P.M.) are particularly serious and should be minimized when siting a collector.

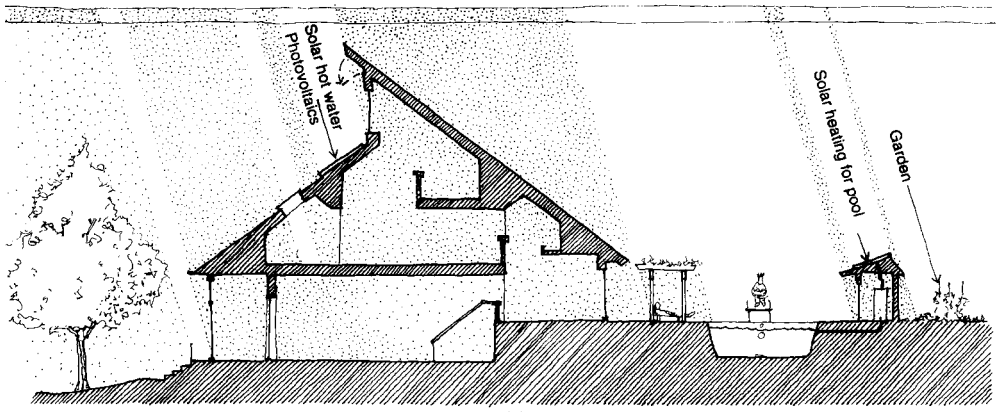
At the same time, consideration of neighbors' access to direct sun is appropriate. This can be checked by charting another skyline somewhere along the northern boundary of a site. The outline of the building being designed should be included on this skyline, and can then be modified, if necessary, to preserve solar access for the neighbor.

The location charted in Fig. 3.15 is quite a good one for a summer solar usage, such as a swimming pool heater, or for a PV array that serves summer loads such as air conditioners. It is also a possible location for a solar collector for domestic water heating, which will work well during the six months from March through September; obstructions are few within this period. However, it is quite poor for winter solar collection, allowing only about one-fifth of the potential solar gain in the November to January period.

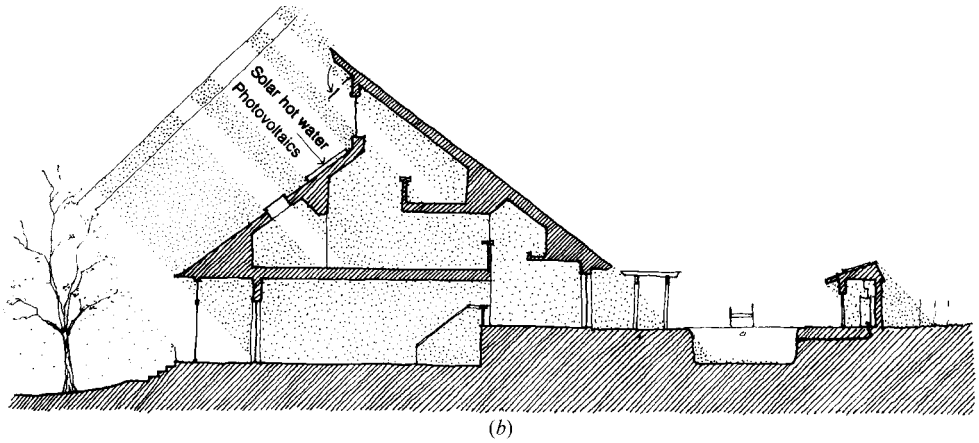
(e) Sun and Shadows: Model Techniques

The graphic site analysis techniques just described have a limitation: Each graph applies only to one particular location on a site. To study multiple locations, multiple graphs must be constructed. By contrast, a three-dimensional model used in conjunction with a sun shadow plot (Fig. 3.16) can yield three-dimensional sun penetration patterns as they change over time, for any position, indoors or out, in/on the model. Models are initially time-consuming to build but can save time when considering alternative locations on a site, alternative window and space combinations, alternative shading devices, and so on. Perhaps most important to a designer, models suggest three-dimensional solutions, because one is testing a volume rather than merely a plan or section. However, if obstructions to sun exist far from a site (such as nearby mountains), it might be better to rely on graphs rather than trying to include such large obstructions on a (quickly becoming huge) model.

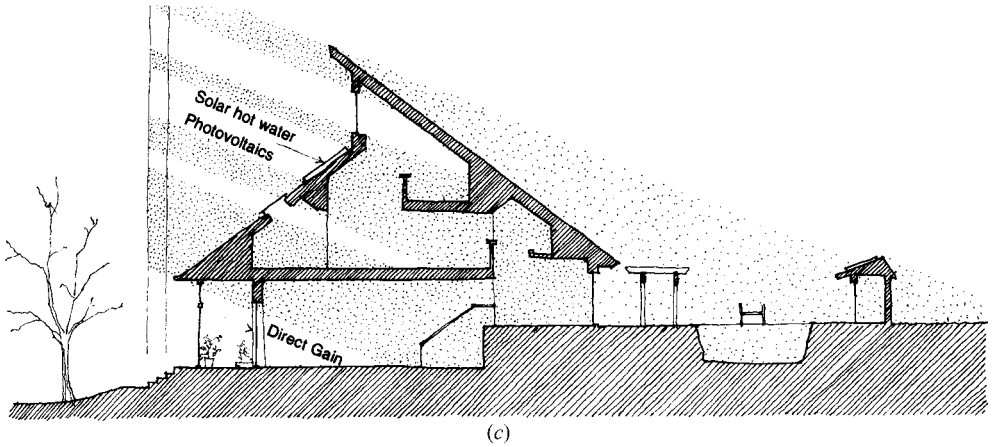
A *sunpeg* chart, correctly attached to a model of any scale, allows a designer to quickly determine



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 3.14 *The band of sun available to a proposed building is charted at solar noon on a north-south section. (a) The summer solstice, where most-optimum collecting surfaces are at near-horizontal tilt angles. (b) The equinox. (c) The winter solstice, where most-optimum collecting surfaces are at near-vertical south-facing tilt angles.*

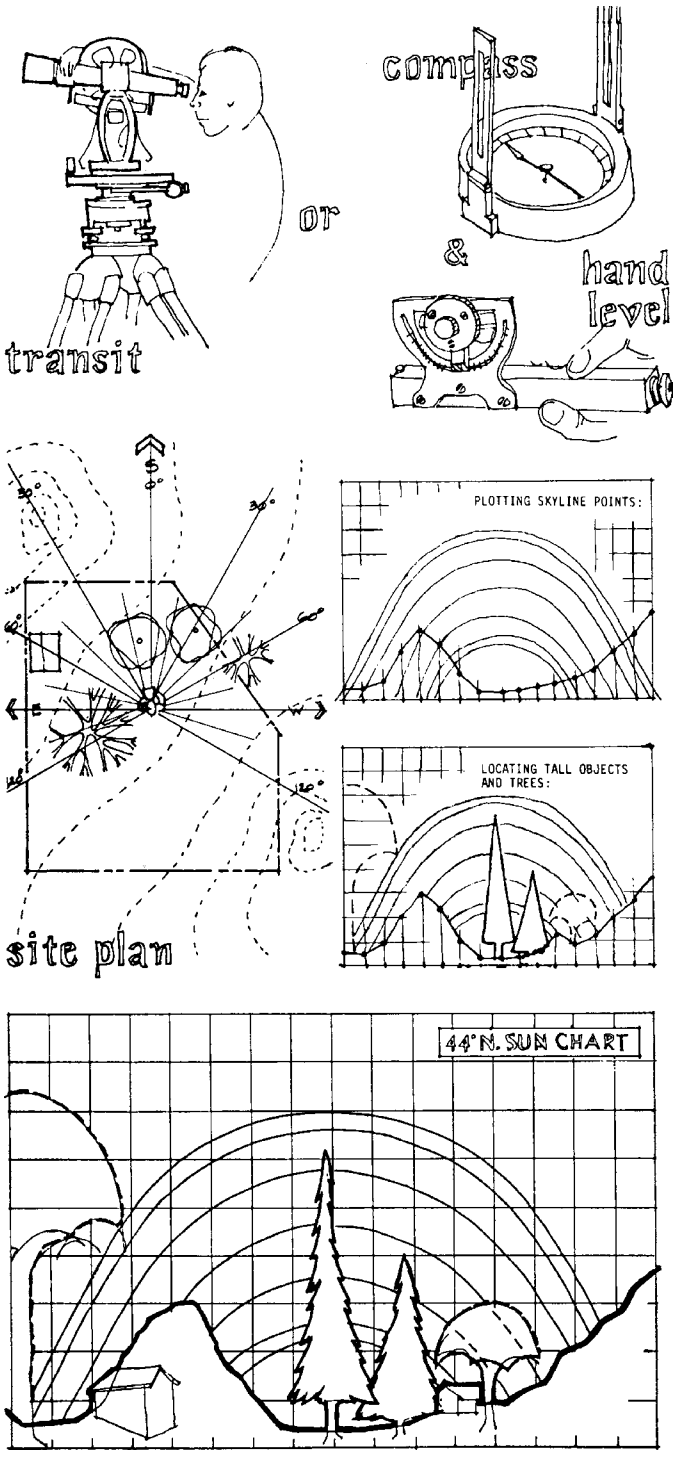


Fig. 3.15 *Charting the skyline from a specific site position. (From Edward Mazria and David Winitsky. 1976.* Solar Guide and Calculator. *Center for Environmental Research, University of Oregon.)*

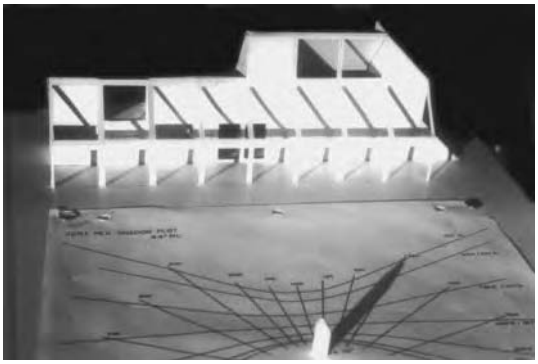


Fig. 3.16 *A model of a small building with a glazed open-frame circulation space on the south side is observed at the sun's position at 3:00 P.M. on December 21 through the use of a sunpeg chart.*

exact sun penetration and shadow patterns at many times for any date. These plots are one of the most important tools for a concerned designer, both early and late in the design process.

In Fig. 3.16, a model is observed at a sun position corresponding to 3:00 P.M. on December 21. At this end of the 6-hour period of best collection, it can be seen that sun still fills the south-side glazed open-frame circulation space and enters spaces beyond through south openings. It can also be seen that passing from these spaces into the circulation space might involve considerable glare because the sun is so low in the sky. In such a case, vertical fins inside the south glazing would help intercept and diffuse direct sun while still permitting solar heat gain.

(f) Controlling Solar Reflections

The use of highly reflective (or "mirror") glass to reduce envelope heat gain in office buildings has increased the frequency of annoying solar reflections from buildings (Fig. 3.17). Large areas



Fig. 3.17 *Mirror-glass windows in a newer office building (left) in San Francisco, California, cast strong reflections on the north- and west-facing walls of an older building next door. Although this reflected radiation/heat might be welcome in winter, the resulting glare can be intense. In summer, the older building is particularly disadvantaged by additional thermal loads. (© 2009 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

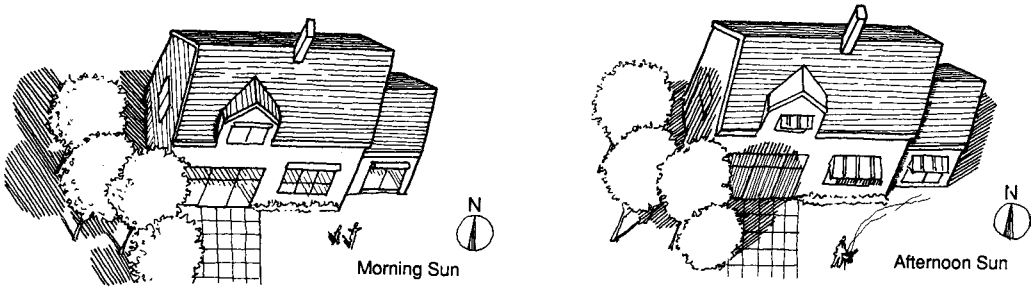


Fig. 3.18 *Selective protection from reflections. (a) The trees standing west of this south window wall do not interfere with solar access during the best hours for solar collection (around noon), nor do they prevent early morning sun from entering the windows. Any reflections of the early morning sun are intercepted by the trees before they can annoy those in nearby buildings. (b) The late afternoon sun is blocked by the trees before either solar gain or reflections can occur.*

of nonmirror glazing, such as found on passive solar-heated buildings, can also cause reflection problems. The farther the sun's rays are from being perpendicular (or normal) to any surface, the more radiation is reflected, rather than absorbed or transmitted, by that surface. Thus, the intensity of reflection is greatest (and the transmission of solar gain is least) when the sun's rays are nearly parallel to a surface.



Fig. 3.19 *The "eggcrate" shading devices shown on the southwest corner of this University of Oregon building reduce solar heat gains by blocking acute sun angles from either side of the window. Different shading devices are appropriate for different façade orientations.*

Because the most intense reflections occur when the sun's rays are nearly parallel to a wall, such reflections are fairly easily blocked or intercepted. For example, foliage (Fig. 3.18) can intercept reflected sunlight from a south-facing window without blocking solar collection during the best hours. Another common approach is to use external projections around windows, as in Fig. 3.19. The use of a model and a sunpeg chart is a good way to explore reflections. Using mirrored surfaces to represent reflective glass on a model will make resulting reflections evident along their three-dimensional path.

3.7 SOUND AND AIRFLOW

Sound and airflow are considered together here because they are so difficult to separate. Many buildings that could be opened to ventilation or cooling by breezes rely instead on forced ventilation because of noise that would accompany breezes through an open window. Pollution is another potential deterrent to natural ventilation. Almost any object or device that reduces noise will also reduce the velocity of a breeze, as is true of most filtering devices used to remove dust particles.

(a) Noise

Any sound that is unwanted becomes *noise*. The urban building in Fig. 3.20 is unusual both in providing an opportunity for wind-driven ventilation—air moves freely below it as well as around it—and in the extraordinary intensity of traffic noise that is borne on the air.

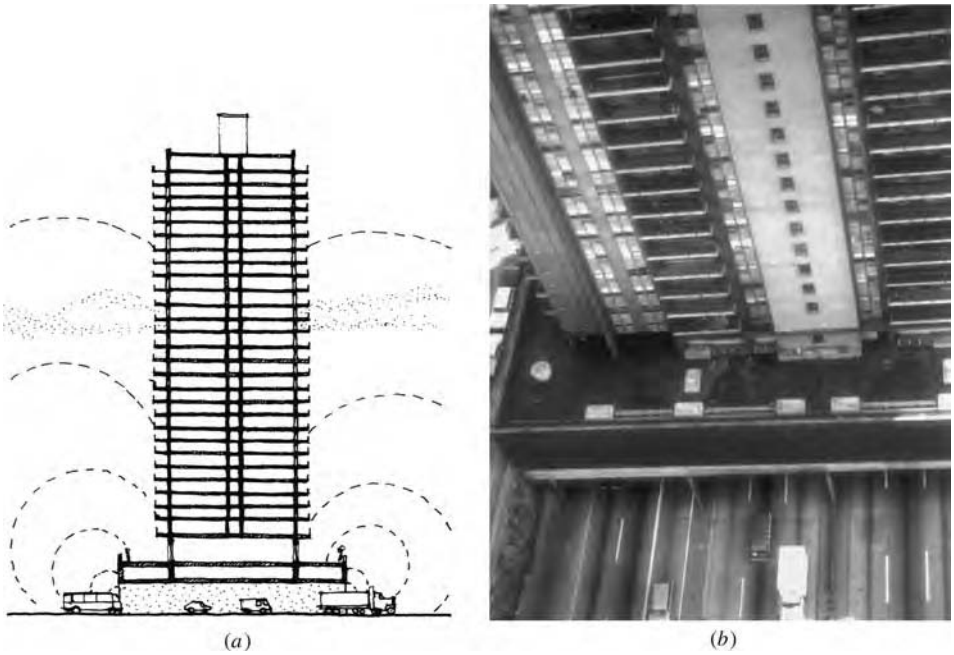


Fig. 3.20 *Apartment buildings in series straddle the approach ramps to New York City's George Washington Bridge. (a) Section along the freeway. (b) Looking down to the freeway. These buildings were the scene of a study linking noise levels with reading disabilities for occupants of the apartments. (From Cohen et al., 1973.)*

Two characteristics of cities contribute to increased noise at street level: hard surfaces that reflect rather than absorb sound and parallel walls that intensify sound by interreflection rather than dissipating it. Increasing horizontal and vertical distances from urban noise sources affect outdoor noise levels in various ways, as shown in the graphs of Fig. 3.21. Unfortunately, obtaining much distance between sound source and receiver in dense urban areas is quite difficult.

Although building surfaces are generally made of hard materials for durability in weathering, softer and multiplaned materials (such as plants) are desirable from a public noise-reduction viewpoint. Their impact on measured sound levels may be slight, but visually softer surfaces reinforce a perception of acoustically softer environments (much as the sound of running water reinforces our perception of cool environments). Fountains are especially useful sources of *masking sound*; they can be kept flowing as long as a noise persists, and they enhance the cooling function of natural ventilation via evaporative cooling, especially in drier climates. Not all spaces benefit from masking sound; where a single sound source is expected to predominate over all others, masking sound will interfere and become unwanted "masking noise."

Where site conditions allow, barriers to street noise can be installed that cast *sound shadows* on a site (Fig. 3.22). Such barriers may do little to reduce noise levels at upper windows, but surface activities can be given much lower noise levels, especially near the barrier. Many cities now require such barriers between new housing developments and highways or railroads.

Another urban noise source is the mechanical equipment of buildings themselves. Many noise complaints against buildings involve air-conditioning equipment (the compressive refrigeration cycle and its year-round utilization as a heat pump are described in Chapter 9). When densely packed buildings are forced to rely upon mechanical cooling, such closeness makes the noise of the systems even more annoying. Noise is generated both by the compressor and by the great quantities of outdoor air that must be rapidly pushed through outdoor condenser coils. The condenser's need for outdoor air is so critical that attempts to surround it with noise shields can hinder its efficient operation and shorten its life. Fortunately, more recent

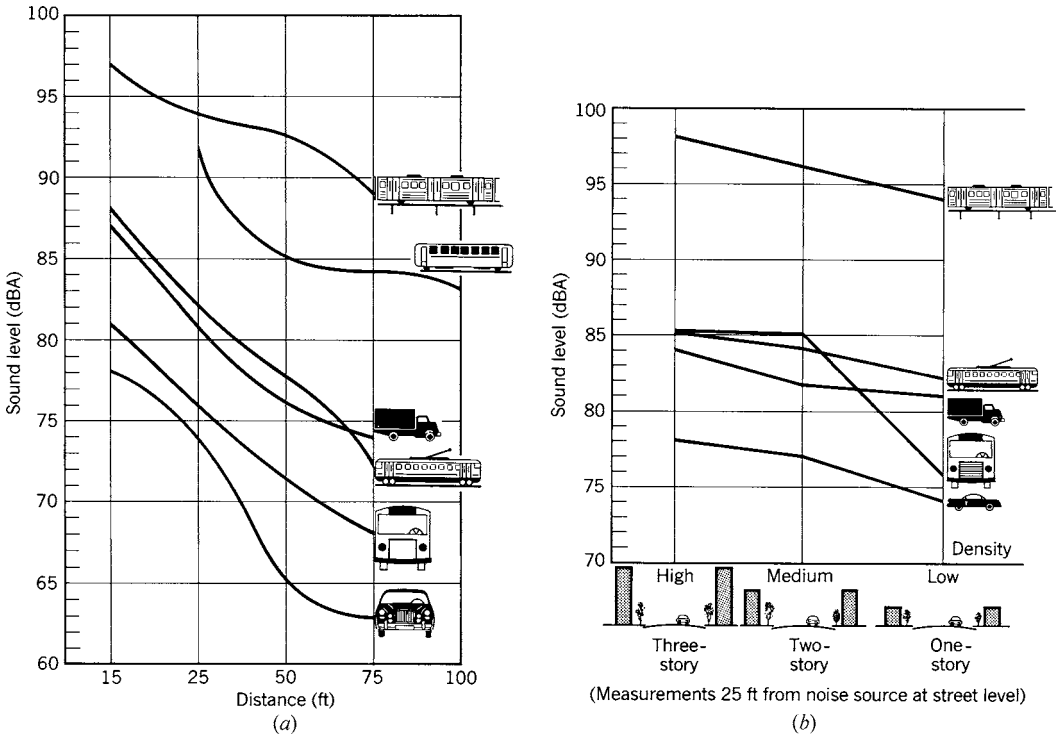


Fig. 3.21 *Predicting noise levels outdoors. (a) Distance as a factor influencing sound pressure level. (b) Building height as a factor in noise propagation. (From Clifford R. Bragdon. 1971.* Noise Pollution: The Unquiet Crisis*. University of Pennsylvania Press. Reprinted by permission.)*

energy-efficient equipment is quieter, although not silent.

In residential neighborhoods, the greater distance between buildings might be expected to lessen these difficulties. Yet the much lower ambient (or background) sound level of residential areas is one of their more appealing characteristics, and an intruding compressor on a hot summer night can irritate neighbors who formerly enjoyed cool—and quiet—night breezes.

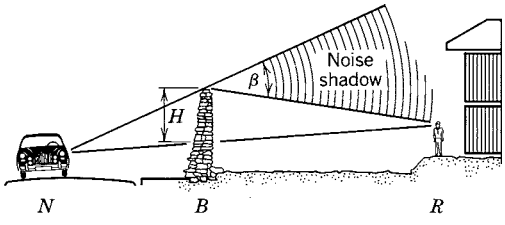
(b) Air Pollution

Problems of global importance are resulting from air pollution; these are summarized in Table 3.3. Building construction and operation are among the contributors to air pollution. The *greenhouse effect* (Fig. 3.23) threatens to produce global warming, a trend most scientists now firmly believe is under way. The greenhouse effect occurs because gases that block the outgoing flow of long-wave radiation (heat) from the Earth's surface are accumulating in the atmosphere. Energy production and use (especially of fossil fuels) are contributing heavily to these greenhouse gases, which include carbon dioxide, methane, nitrous oxide, ozone, and chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs). Another serious threat is stratospheric ozone depletion, with potentially devastating consequences to ecosystems due to increased ultraviolet radiation received at the Earth's surface.

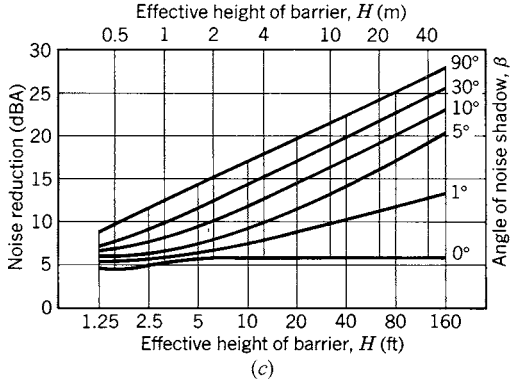
The designers of buildings can influence these trends in several ways. First, they can help to greatly reduce the air pollution caused by electric power plants and by burning fuel in buildings, by designing for greater energy conservation and by utilizing clean and renewable energy sources within buildings. Chapter 8 is concerned largely with this topic. Second, they can specify materials and equipment that, through their manufacture or operation, lessen air pollution. This suggests avoiding fuel combustion (coal, oil, trash, wood, and natural gas, roughly in descending order of air pollution threat). This philosophy also encourages selection of refrigeration equipment that uses environmentally friendly refrigerants, as well as insulation and



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 3.22 *Outdoor noise barriers. (a) A noise barrier abutting a highway in central Oregon. (Photo by Nathan Majeski.) (b) To determine the approximate noise reduction (in decibels) due to an outdoor barrier, construct a section locating the noise source* (N)*, the solid barrier* (B)*, and the receiver's location* (R)*. On this section, determine the effective height* (H) *of the barrier and the diffraction angle* (β) *with the resulting "noise shadow." Enter graph (c) with* H *and* β*; where the lines intersect determines the noise reduction in dBA (left axis). A reduction of 10 dBA is perceived as half as loud as the original source. Note the perceptible noise reduction from simply breaking the line of sight* (β = 1°)*. (From Doelle, 1972. Reprinted by permission.) For a more detailed procedure, see Fig. 19.33.*

TABLE 3.3 Air Pollution: Sources and Effects

Gas or Pollutant	Sources	Effects
Carbon monoxide (CO)	Gasoline-powered vehicles, industry using oil and gas, building heating using oil and gas, biomass burning	Enters human bloodstream rapidly, causing nervous system dysfunction and death at high concentrations; interferes with self-cleansing of atmosphere
Carbon dioxide (CO_2)	Fossil-fuel combustion, deforestation	Contributes to greenhouse effect
Methane (CH_4)	Rice fields, cattle, landfills, fossil-fuel production	Contributes to greenhouse effect
Sulfur oxides (sulfur dioxide [SO_2] and sulfur trioxide)	Industry using coal and oil; heating using coal and oil; power plants using coal, oil, and gas; ore smelting	Acid rain, damaging plants and attacking building skin materials; irritates human respiratory tract and complicates cardiovascular disease; decreases visibility in atmosphere
Nitrogen oxides (NO_X), e.g., nitric oxide (NO) and nitrogen dioxide (NO_2)	Gasoline-powered vehicles, building heating using oil and gas, industry and power plants, biomass burning	Acid rain, damaging plants and attacking building skin materials; irritates human eyes, nose, and upper respiratory tract; triggers development of smog; decreases visibility in atmosphere
Nitrous oxide (N_2O)	Nitrogenous fertilizers, deforestation, biomass burning	Contributes to greenhouse effect
Hydrocarbons (compounds of hydrogen and carbon)	Petroleum-powered vehicles, petroleum refineries, general burning	Promotes smog; toxic to human beings at high concentrations
Chlorofluorocarbons	Aerosol sprays, refrigerants, foams	Contributes to greenhouse effect and to stratospheric ozone depletion
Particulates (liquid or solid particles smaller than 500 micrometers)	Vehicle exhausts, industry, building heating, general burning, spore- and pollen-bearing vegetation	Promotes precipitation formation; some are toxic to human beings; some pollens and spores cause allergic reactions in human beings

Sources: Adapted from Marsh (1991) and Graedel and Crutzen (1989).

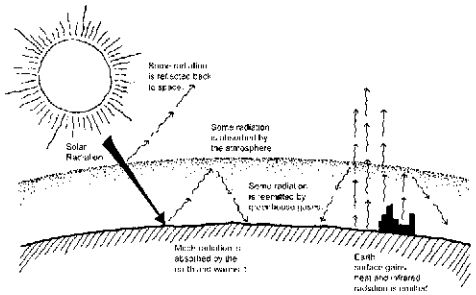


Fig. 3.23 *The greenhouse effect traps heat in the Earth's upper atmosphere. Clouds and particles in the atmosphere reflect about one-fourth of incoming solar radiation while blocking about two-thirds of the heat that the Earth would otherwise lose to outer space. Currently, the atmosphere keeps the Earth about 33ºC (60ºF) warmer than it would be without this heat-trapping process. Increases in greenhouse gases theoretically will reflect more incoming solar radiation but block even more outgoing radiation, resulting in global warming. (Drawing by Amanda Clegg.)*

upholstery products made with non-CFC blowing agents. Many of these practices are mandated, but the designer can go further and seek out the most environmentally benign products.

Buildings are substantial contributors to air pollution: the fuel combustion within, the power plants that supply electricity, the incinerators and landfills that receive waste from buildings. Buildings and power plants are major contributors to the greenhouse effect and the primary causes of acid rain (sulfur oxides) and smog (nitrogen oxides). The transportation that takes people to and from buildings is another major air pollution source. We design buildings to utilize "fresh" air, whether by natural or forced ventilation; we must then also design buildings to preserve our fresh air resource (see Fig. 1.1). The less energy buildings require, the cleaner the outdoor air will be.

On site, local sources of air pollution must be minimized and, as far as possible, isolated.



Fig. 3.24 *Reactive protection of an outdoor air intake. A loading dock near an intake was a source of indoor air pollution from truck motor fumes, prompting the installation of a warning sign.*

Combustion gases pose a threat, especially where vehicles approach buildings (Fig. 3.24). Idling truck motors at loading docks or automobile motors at drive-up service windows can threaten building occupants through openings such as doors and windows; mechanical system fresh air intakes are particularly vulnerable, because outdoor air is intentionally drawn into them. Again, consider the neighboring buildings: will the location of some activity on your site threaten a neighbor's fresh air?

(c) Wind Control

For most buildings, wind (like sun) changes from resource to detriment with the change of seasons. In many locations, wind also changes its prevailing direction with the seasons. Control of wind often means utilizing wind-sheltered areas in winter while encouraging increased wind speeds in summer. From spring through fall, outdoor spaces might benefit from this barrier-to-connector changeover on a daily basis: less wind during cool mornings, more during hot afternoons. Fortunately, winds are generally weakest in the early mornings and strongest in the afternoons because of the effect of the sun's heating on the surrounding environment.

The generalized patterns of wind flow around thin windbreaks and thicker buildings (Fig. 3.25) help us to understand where shelter and increased airflows occur. These patterns, however, are much more complicated than they first appear and are highly influenced by objects upstream, to the sides, and downstream of the wind-directing object being analyzed. Wind-tunnel tests using scale models are far more reliable than these generalized patterns; unfortunately, such tests are expensive and still fraught with opportunities for misprediction. Nevertheless, a site can and should be analyzed graphically for seasonal wind utilization.

Wind ultimately returns to its original flow pattern after encountering an obstacle such as a windbreak or a building. Before it reaches the obstacle, it slows, builds (positive) pressure, and turns upward or sideways. As it passes the obstacle, it increases its speed, and reduced (negative) pressure results at the sides of and behind the obstacle. These pressure differences, flow patterns, and the size and shape of the wind-protected areas behind an obstacle are all usable for control of air motion, both inside a building and outside.

Windbreaks are commonly used to protect outdoor areas; these can be fences or plants. Figure 3.26 shows the relative reduction in wind velocity at the level of a windbreak as wind approaches and then passes. The distances (horizontal axis) are in units of the height of the windbreak. Note that the densest windbreak produces the greatest reduction in wind speed behind it—but that the wind recovers its full velocity closer to such a barrier, compared to a less-dense windbreak. Thus, the more dense the windbreak, the greater the reduction in wind speed but the smaller the area so affected.

Gaps in windbreaks can produce increased wind speeds through the gaps. Figure 3.27 shows a small area of wind speeds above a windbreak even greater than the undiverted wind speed. Although a gap is a threat to winter wind protection, it is an opportunity for summer wind speed enhancement. Given constant prevailing summer wind directions, a windbreak gap could provide a small area with above-average air motion.

Wind flow around buildings is a complex matter; nevertheless, some general patterns for shelter areas are shown in Fig. 3.25, whereas Figs. 3.28 and 3.29 show wind behavior to be expected in typical building combinations. Some patterns from the situations shown in Fig. 3.29 include:

- With the bar effect (*a*), the downward-spinning wind behind a building can reach 1.4 times the speed of the average wind.
- With the Venturi effect (*b*) and few obstructions upwind or downwind from the narrow neck of

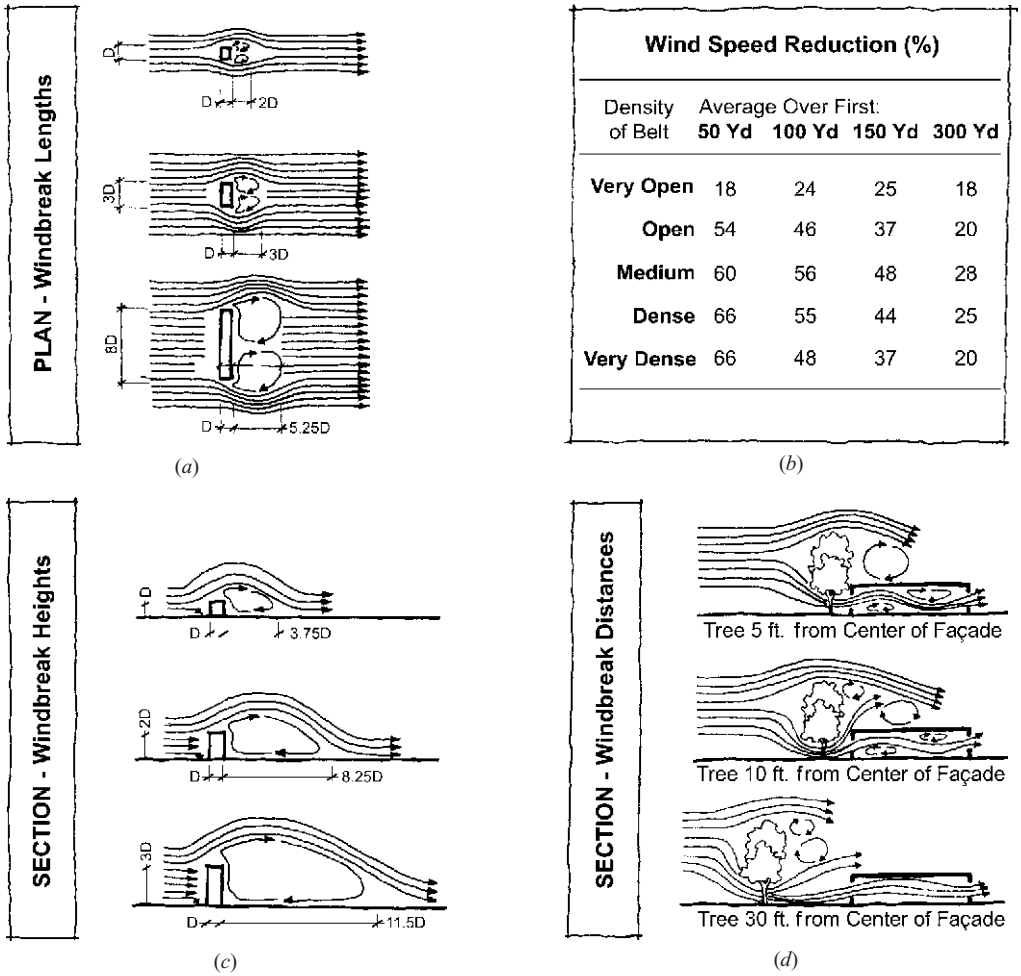


Fig. 3.25 *Approximate patterns of wind around objects. (a) Effects of different barrier lengths (widths). (b) Reduction in wind speed due to windbreak density. (c) Effects of different barrier heights. (d) Wind flow through trees and buildings. (Reproduced with the permission of the American Institute of Architects; © 1981, AIA. Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

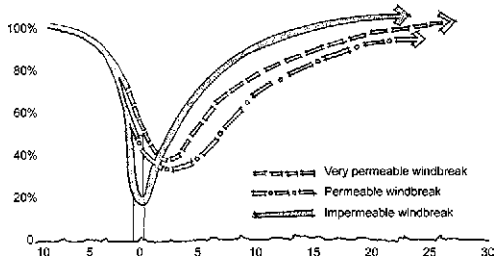


Fig. 3.26 *Wind speed reduction behind windbreaks of varying permeability. Solid (impermeable) barriers produce the lowest wind speeds, but these are effective for the shortest distance beyond the windbreak. Units of distance = heights of windbreak. (Brown and Gillespie, 1995. Redrawn by Erik Winter.)*

a building, wind speeds through the neck can reach 1.3 times the average, up to heights of 100 ft (30 m), and 1.6 times the average at about 165 ft (50 m) in height.

- The gap effect (*c*) begins to occur with perpendicular winds and buildings of more than 5 stories (50 ft [15 m]) in height; by 7 stories, wind speeds 1.2 times the average can occur through the gaps; by 60 stories, gap wind speeds can be 1.5 times the average.
- For higher buildings (*d*), increased wind speeds occur at the corners (localized within a radius from the corner equal to the width of the building "d"); where height is 50 ft (15 m), wind speed can reach 1.2 times the average; for heights above 115 ft (35 m), wind speed can be 1.5 times

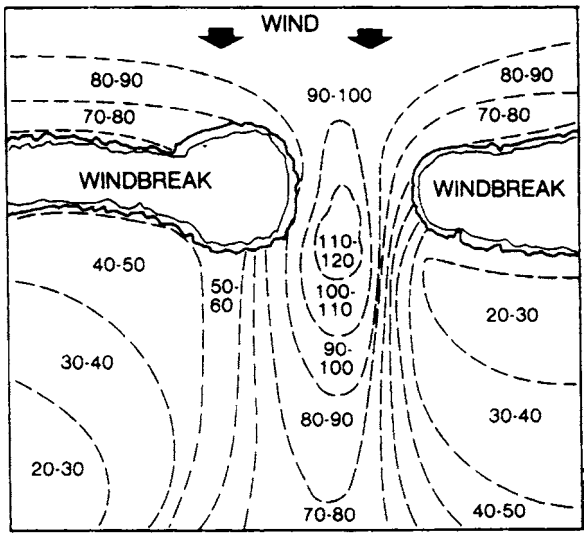


Fig. 3.27 *Wind speeds accelerate through a gap in a windbreak. Numbers indicate the percentage of the incoming (unaffected) wind speed. (From Caborn, J. M. 1957.* Shelterbelts and Microclimate*. Edinburgh: H.M. Stationery Office. Cited in McPherson, 1984.)*

the average. Where two towers approach each other, increased wind around corners and between the towers can go as high as 2.2 times the average for towers 330 ft (100 m) high.

- Increased wind speed and turbulence within the wake of buildings (*e*) can be especially serious for towers at heights from 16 to 30 stories, where wind speeds can reach 1.4 to 2.2 times the average.

Beranek (1980) discussed methods for charting the shelter areas in such building groups. Localized effects of wind turbulence between buildings can have a particularly powerful impact on entryways. People leaving the controlled air motion of a building lobby are often unprepared for the speed and turbulence of channeled wind just beyond the doorway.

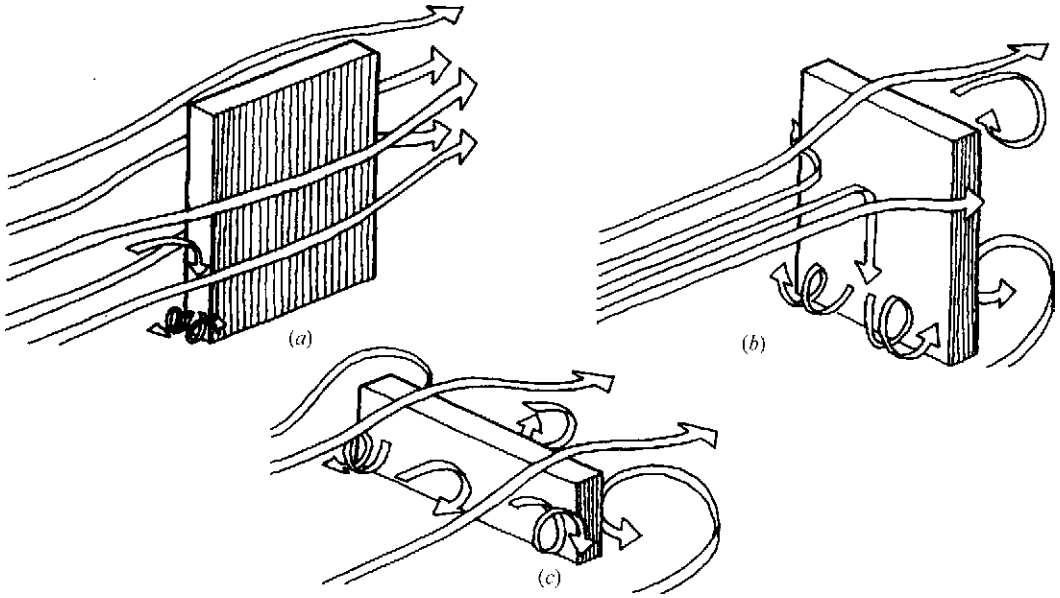


Fig. 3.28 *Wind patterns around single buildings. (a) Tall, slender buildings: height greater than 2.5 times the width. (b) Tall, rather wide buildings; height between 2.5 and 0.6 times the width. (c) Long buildings; height less than 0.6 times the width. (From Beranek, W. J.. "General Rules of the Determination of Wind Environment," in* Wind Engineering*, J. E. Cermak [ed.], Vol. 1; © 1980, Pergamon Press Ltd. Reprinted by permission.)*

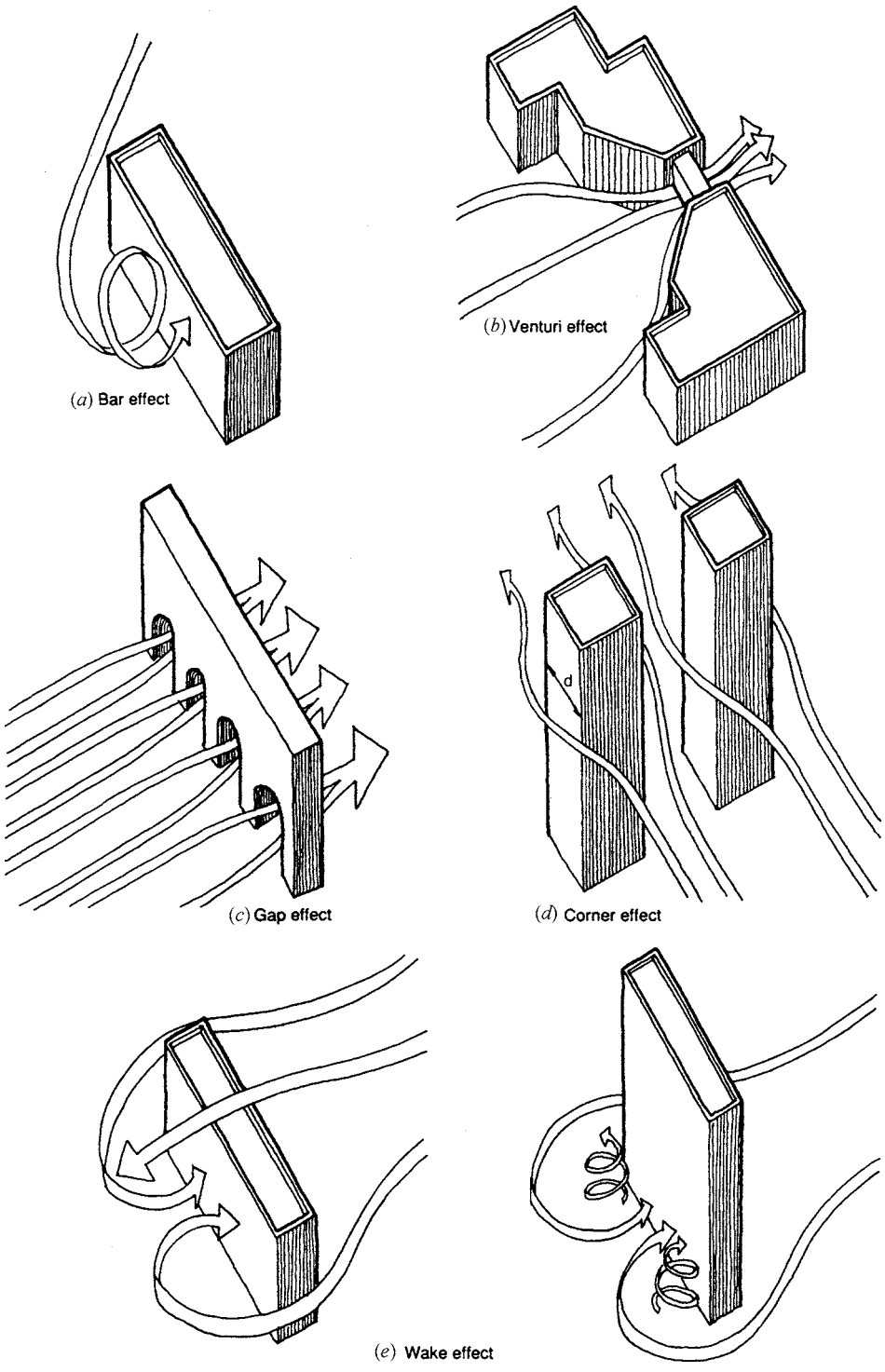


Fig. 3.29 *Wind patterns among building clusters (see text for quantification). (From Gandemer, J. "Wind Environments Around Buildings: Aerodynamic Concepts," in* Wind Effects on Buildings and Structures, *K. J. Eaton [ed.]; © 1977, Cambridge University Press. Reprinted by permission.)*

Wind flow for the cooling of buildings is discussed in detail in Chapter 8.

(d) Ventilation and Cooling

Outdoor air is introduced to buildings for two distinct reasons. *Ventilation* involves the provision of fresh air to interiors to replenish the oxygen used by people and to help carry away their by-products of carbon dioxide (CO_2) and body odors. Ventilation is desirable year-round; recommended minimum rates of fresh airflow are found in Appendix E. *Passive cooling* (with outdoor air) replaces heated indoor air with cooler outdoor air. Cooling by breezes is a seasonal opportunity, limited to times when the outdoor air temperature is lower than the indoor air temperature, and the outdoor humidity is at or below that desired indoors. When outdoor air temperatures are about the same as interior temperatures, breezes might still be useful to increase interior air motion, thus extending the comfort zone, as quantified by Olgyay (1963) and discussed in Chapter 4.

Although airflows for indoor air quality control and for cooling are both commonly referred to as "ventilation," they are not identical design situations. Building codes/standards typically rigidly define ventilation. Airflow for passive cooling can require far greater quantities of air than airflow for control of air quality, and the influence of such requirements on building siting and window size and placement is considerable. Figure 3.30 illustrates the differing approaches to these two uses for airflow and suggests that window position and human occupants be considered together in design.

Two examples of contemporary buildings that use the wind appear in Figs. 3.31 and 3.32. The first served as a summer exhibition space in Montreal, Canada, and relied upon prevailing winds (and on rising hot air) to remove air heated by display lighting and crowds of people. The second is a chapel in a cemetery in the hot, humid climate of Houston, Texas. The architects intended this shaded, open-air space as a respite from the sealed, air-conditioned buildings and cars prevalent in Houston. In this building, a funeral is a time and place for reunion with physical phenomena; breezes and shade trees provide cooling, rainwater collected in a pool reflects skylight, and a narrow shaft of direct

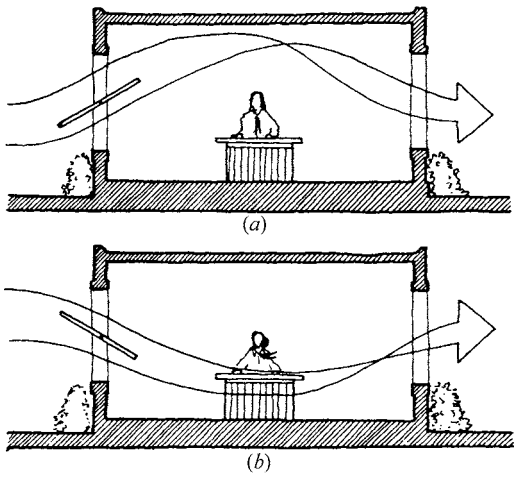


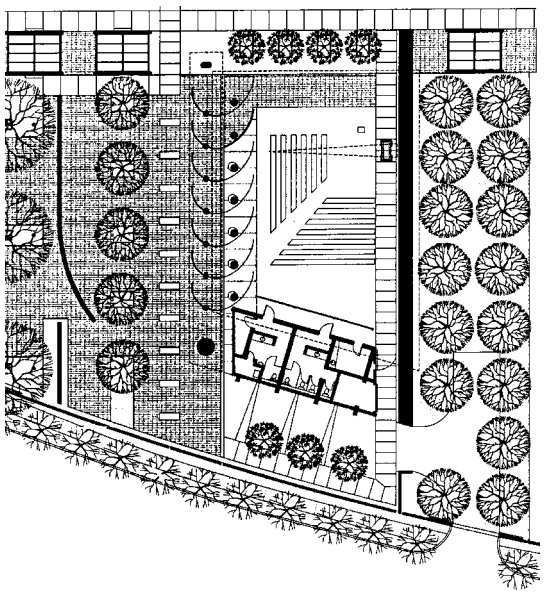
Fig. 3.30 *Ventilation with and without occupant cooling. The size and position of a window will influence the flow of air within a space. (a) Ventilation: the window directs breezes upward, removing hot air at the ceiling. Airflow has minimum contact with occupants. (b) Space ventilation and people cooling: the window directs breezes toward the floor and across occupants and provides a direct people-cooling effect from air motion and fresh air for the space.*



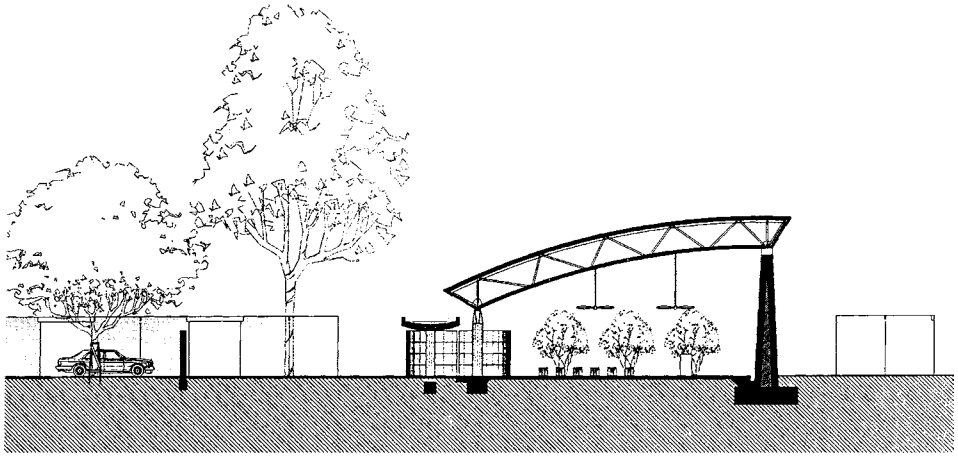
Fig. 3.31 *Cooling with the wind. The air inside this exhibition hall is heated by lights and crowds of people. It rises via the stack effect and is sucked out of the large clerestory opening by the prevailing winds. Note that winds do not blow into this high opening but create a negative pressure outside the opening, encouraging an outward flow of air from the exhibition space. (African Place at Expo '67, Montreal, Canada; John Andrews, architect.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 3.32 *The Beth Israel Chapel and Memorial Garden, Houston, Texas. (a) View from the west. The oversized gutter delivers rainwater to a pond that reflects daylight. Trees on islands in the pond provide evening shade. (b) Plan. Curved walls visually separate the open south courtyard from the roofed chapel but allow breezes to pass. A narrow triangular roof opening allows a shaft of direct sunlight to fall along the interior north wall, marking the passing of time. (c) Section, south to north. The curved roof sheds rainwater to an oversized gutter above the curved walls. Suspended ceiling fans can augment air motion. (Photo by Timothy Hursley. Courtesy of Solomon Inc., Architecture and Urban Design, San Francisco.)*

sun marks its daily path along the rough stone interior north wall.

A building that relies on prevailing wind for cooling must be sited with attention to wind direction. One building should not be erected to obstruct another building's access to breeze. As seen previously, obstacles upstream from intake openings or downstream near an outlet can substantially reduce the velocity—and thereby the cooling effect—of the wind. Wind can cool people in hot weather (primarily by increasing evaporation from the skin), yet it can become an irritant at higher speeds (Tables 3.4 and 4.4). Manual controls for openings are a necessary

TABLE 3.4 Beaufort Scale (Lower Speeds Only)

Beaufort Number	*Speed 6 m (19.7 ft) Above Ground*			*Description of Effects Outdoors*	
	m/s	fpm	mph	On Land	Over Water
0	0.3	<88	<1	Smoke rises; no perceptible movement	Smooth sea
1	0.6–1.7	88–264	1–3	Smoke drift shows wind direction; tree leaves barely move	Scale-like ripples
2	1.8–3.3	352–616	4–7	Wind felt on face; leaves rustle	Small wavelets
3	3.4–5.2	704–968	8–11	Leaves, twigs in constant motion; hair is disturbed; wind extends light flag	Large wavelets; occasional white foam crests
4	5.3–7.4	1056–1408	12–16	Small branches move; dust rises; hair disarranged	Small waves become longer

Source: Reprinted from *Passive Cooling* (1981) by permission of the publisher, American Solar Energy Society, Inc.

part of a natural ventilation design. Finally, the proper size and placement of openings, with an unobstructed airflow path through the building, must be provided.

(e) Wind, Daylight, and Sun

When daylight and wind-driven ventilation are desired, their design constraints combine to limit building width. Multistory hotels are an example; where such hotels fill entire blocks, they are often arranged around a central atrium, and the surrounding building is only two hotel rooms and one corridor deep. Multistory office buildings used to have a similar form, but increasing urban density and reliance on electric lighting and mechanical cooling have changed their form considerably (Fig. 3.33). There is now a trend back to arranging office workspaces closer to daylight openings and, in Europe, to including operable windows for fresh air as well.

When wind and sun are combined, they tend to be influential in opposite seasons. Fresh air, however, is desirable year-round, so in winter a supply of tempered fresh air is necessary. Figure 3.34 captures some issues surrounding a design decision regarding whether to face a clerestory to the north or south for a given set of seasonal prevailing winds.

3.8 RAIN AND GROUNDWATER

Most buildings interact with four forms of water: rainwater and groundwater involve lightly controlled exterior interactions, whereas potable water and wastewater involve tightly controlled interior services.

Rain, like solar energy, is a generally diffuse, intermittent, and often seasonal resource. It is most often collected on site and used as a source of water where other water resources are scarce or of poor quality. Rain, like sun, has an influence on building design: heavy rains and pitched roofs have long been found in the same locales. Overhangs may extend farther beyond walls exposed to storm winds; gutter and downspout details can become a design feature, as shown in the chapel in Fig. 3.32 and in several other examples in the book. A building that reflects the combined influences of daylight, wind, and rain is shown in Fig. 3.35.

Rainwater's impact on site design can be thought of as similar to that of wind. Once on the surface, it will flow downhill in a wide path (on a wide plane), and buildings that obstruct this path must make provisions to divert it. Slight, shallow ditches called *swales* are frequently used in such diversion. The orientation of a building to the slope can also affect surface water diversion, as shown in Fig. 3.36.

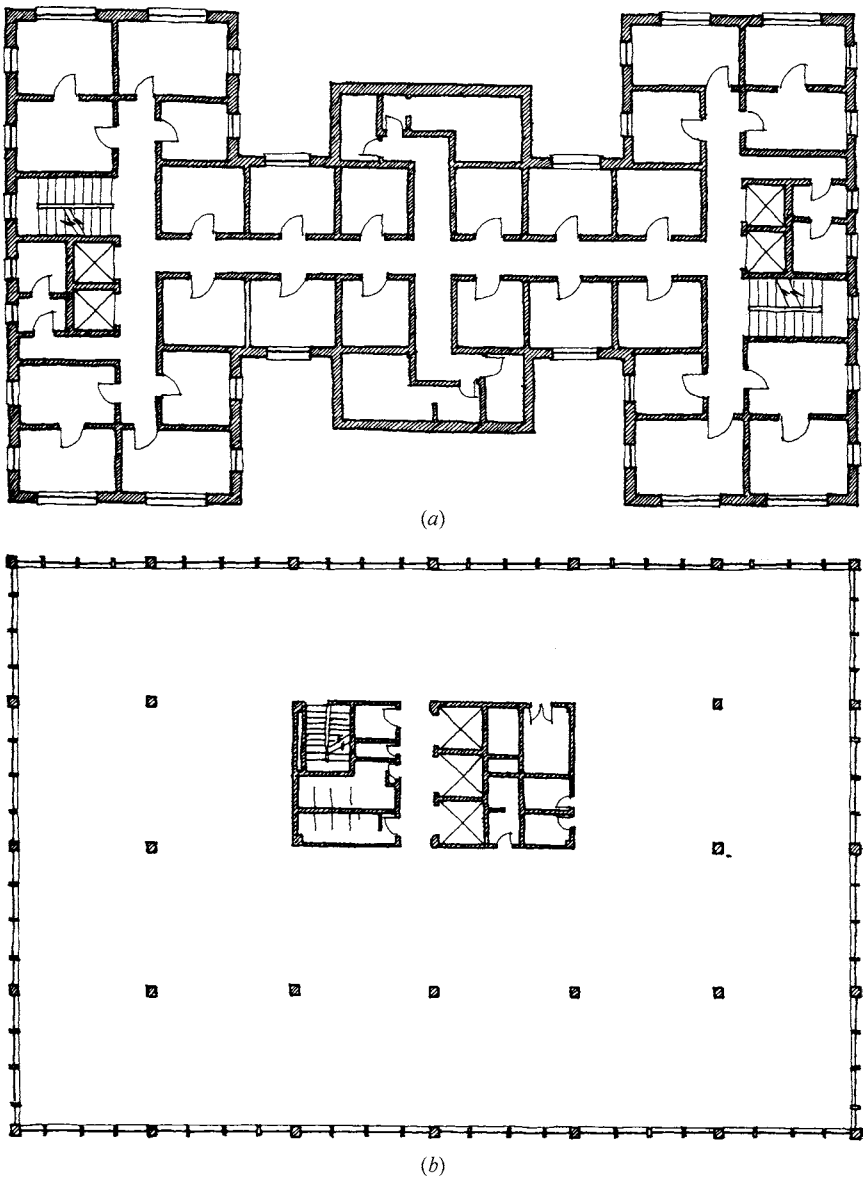


Fig. 3.33 *In contrast to office building plan (a), which uses daylight and natural ventilation in each office, office building plan (b) receives cooled, filtered air, is less subject to exterior noise, typically provides both constant light and temperature throughout, and provides for more rentable floor space on its site. It also allows less daylight to reach the street level, requires much more electricity (though probably less heating fuel), and thus contributes more heat (and possibly more noise from mechanical equipment) to its surroundings year-round.*

Surface water can be used to advantage in thermal, acoustic, and daylighting roles. Hot, dry breezes that pass over water surfaces (and especially through misty sprays above ponds) gain substantial moisture while undergoing a drop in dry-bulb temperature, as a result of the evaporative cooling process. Such conditioned air can provide improved comfort in hot, dry conditions. If a water feature also provides the sound of running water, it can serve to mask noises such as traffic or conversations in adjacent rooms.

Surface water plays a more complex role in daylighting due to the reflection characteristics of water. The surface of water is highly reflective to light striking at low angles of incidence; for example, the reflections of the setting sun

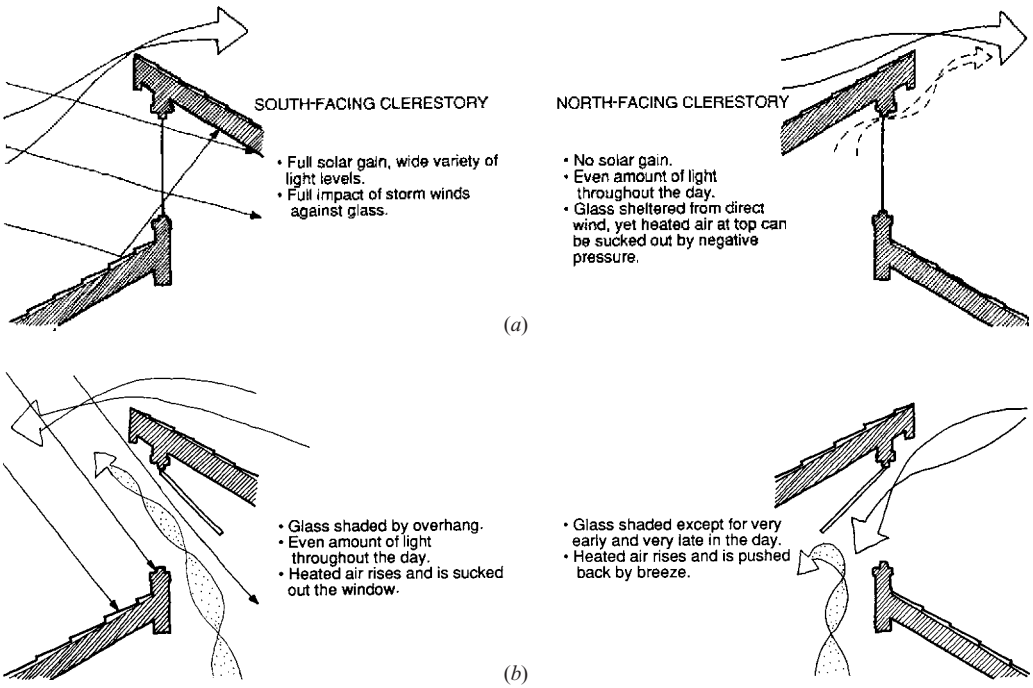


Fig. 3.34 *Some relative advantages of north versus south orientation for a clerestory window/shed roof combination. (a) Winter, with low sun and southerly storm winds. (b) Summer, with high sun and northerly breezes. (These wind directions are prevalent in the Pacific Northwest.)*

from the small pond will illuminate the ceiling and east wall of the chapel in Fig. 3.32. On the coast, reflected sunlight from an infinitely huge surface can throw a blinding sheet of light across buildings on the shore. Conversely, sunlight near noon in summer strikes a water body at high angles of incidence—nearly perpendicular at southern U.S. latitudes. Water is highly absorptive and transmissive to radiation at these angles, thereby reflecting relatively little light. Therefore, water bodies east, south, and west of buildings can provide increased reflected light on sunny winter days and somewhat decreased reflected light in summer, relative to alternative grass surfaces. On heavily overcast days, however, when the sky is uniformly gray (and the least amount, but most glare-free quality, of daylight is available), water surfaces will not be particularly helpful.

The reflection of sunlight off water tends to be in sparkling patches of always-changing patterns.



Fig. 3.35 *This roof over a covered outdoor tennis facility at the University of Oregon, Eugene, was designed to ward off rain-bearing south winds in winter. Direct glare from the sun is also unwelcome; instead, north skylight is admitted along with reflected light from roof surfaces. Gutters at the lower edge of each roof plane carry away rainwater; the courts stay dry for all but a few days each year. (Unthank Seder Poticha Architects. Photo by Amanda Clegg.)*

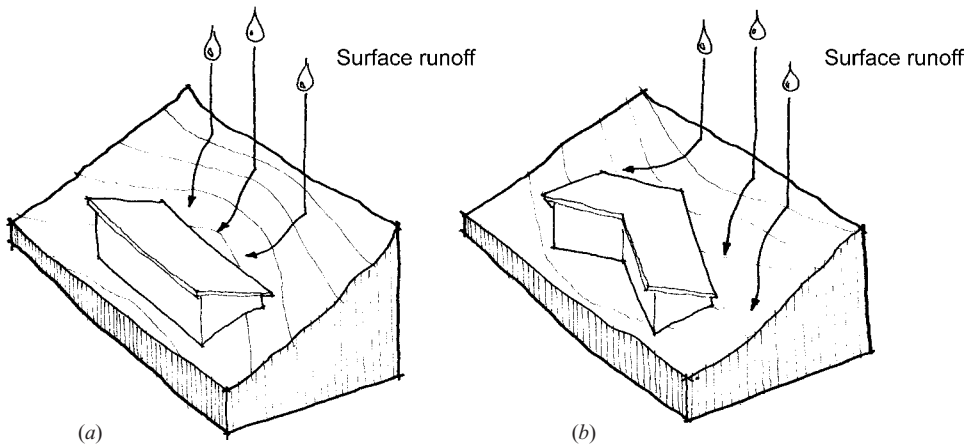


Fig. 3.36 *Rain as surface flow. (a) Where buildings intercept surface water, provisions for diversion are necessary. A building sited as in (b) needs less elaborate provisions, as the form itself is a diverter. (Drawing by Dain Carlson.)*

This can provide a fascinating design feature or it can be annoying (either as glare or as a distraction from a visual task). Reflected off a matte-finish ceiling, such dancing light might be welcome; reflected directly into eyes or onto a work surface, it easily becomes a problem. Sparkle for one viewer may be glare for another.

Groundwater is generally avoided by designers where possible, as it is a threat to foundations and below-ground spaces. This avoidance carries over into site planning; marshy places are usually unwelcome near buildings and represent an ecologically sensitive area as well. In urban areas, dry soil conditions are intensified as ponds are drained, streams are piped away, and hard surfaces impede water percolation into the soil.

Groundwater has interesting thermal potential as a heat sink, providing a place to discharge building heat in summer and providing heat from groundwater for winter building heating. The quantity of groundwater available to act as a heat sink varies with geographic location and subsurface conditions, and little information is readily available to indicate its potential on a given site. Geothermal systems using groundwater are becoming very common. As more buildings discharge heat to and tap heat from this resource, eventually groundwater temperatures will change, but by how many degrees and for how long remains unpredictable. Groundwater pollution is another risk, through increased handling of groundwater or from refrigerants in the mechanical cooling equipment. As a



Fig. 3.37 *Fixed overhang sun control. This south-facing exterior corridor in Oregon is open to the air year-round. Low winter sun fills the corridor, and some of its heat is stored by the tile floor. In cold weather, however, the offices connected by the corridor are disadvantaged by unbuffered exposure to cold air. In summer, little of the corridor is exposed to sun, improving comfort. Sun control is identical in the (cool) spring and (warm) fall with such fixed shading.*

result of such concerns, many localities now strictly regulate the use of groundwater as a heat sink/source.

The ready ability of water to conduct and store heat, which encourages its use as a heat sink, also makes it a thermal nemesis for heat storage tanks and bins in solar-heated buildings. There is little point in storing heat from solar energy in an underground tank for later use if surrounding groundwater is allowed to strip the tank of its heat. Groundwater, however, can help storage tanks for cooling systems. Such tanks are often used to provide cooling water to buildings during peak-load hours on hot days and can greatly lessen the demand for electricity to run conventional air conditioners.

Snow has special site design implications: it delays runoff, provides a blanket of thermal insulation, absorbs sound, and reflects more solar radiation than almost any other naturally occurring surface. Wind patterns can deposit snow much more thickly in some places, for better or worse. Snow hampers the movement of external control devices such as awnings or thermal shutters, can collect to excess on external light shelves, and can create disabling glare if it reflects low winter sun into windows at eye level.

3.9 PLANTS

Plants play several roles on a building site: They affect the absorptivity and emissivity of the Earth's surface; they are part of both the food and water cycles; by day they turn carbon dioxide into oxygen; they can provide organic matter suitable for building materials; and they help people mark time both by growth and by change with the seasons. Our associations with plants are mostly pleasant ones, and they contribute to the enjoyment of the places where they grow.

Plants are also of immediate practical value to building design because they enhance privacy, slow the winter wind, reduce glare from strong daylight, and/or prevent summer sun from entering and overheating buildings. In the last role, plants are particularly noteworthy, because they enhance a feeling of coolness when breezes rustle or sway their leaves. Most importantly, they respond more to cycles of outdoor temperature than to the cycles of sun position. Unlike fixed-position sunscreens on



(*a*)

(*b*)

Fig. 3.38 *A deciduous tree as a naturally "smart" shading device. In hot August, the tree is in full, dense leaf, providing shade. In cold January, bare branches admit winter sun. These photographs were taken on the equinox at 4:45 P.M. solar time: (a) On September 21, the local average temperature is 75°F (24°C) and the tree functions as a shading device. (b) On March 21, the local average temperature is 53°F (12°C) and the tree has fortuitously not yet developed its leaves. (From Reynolds, 1976.)*

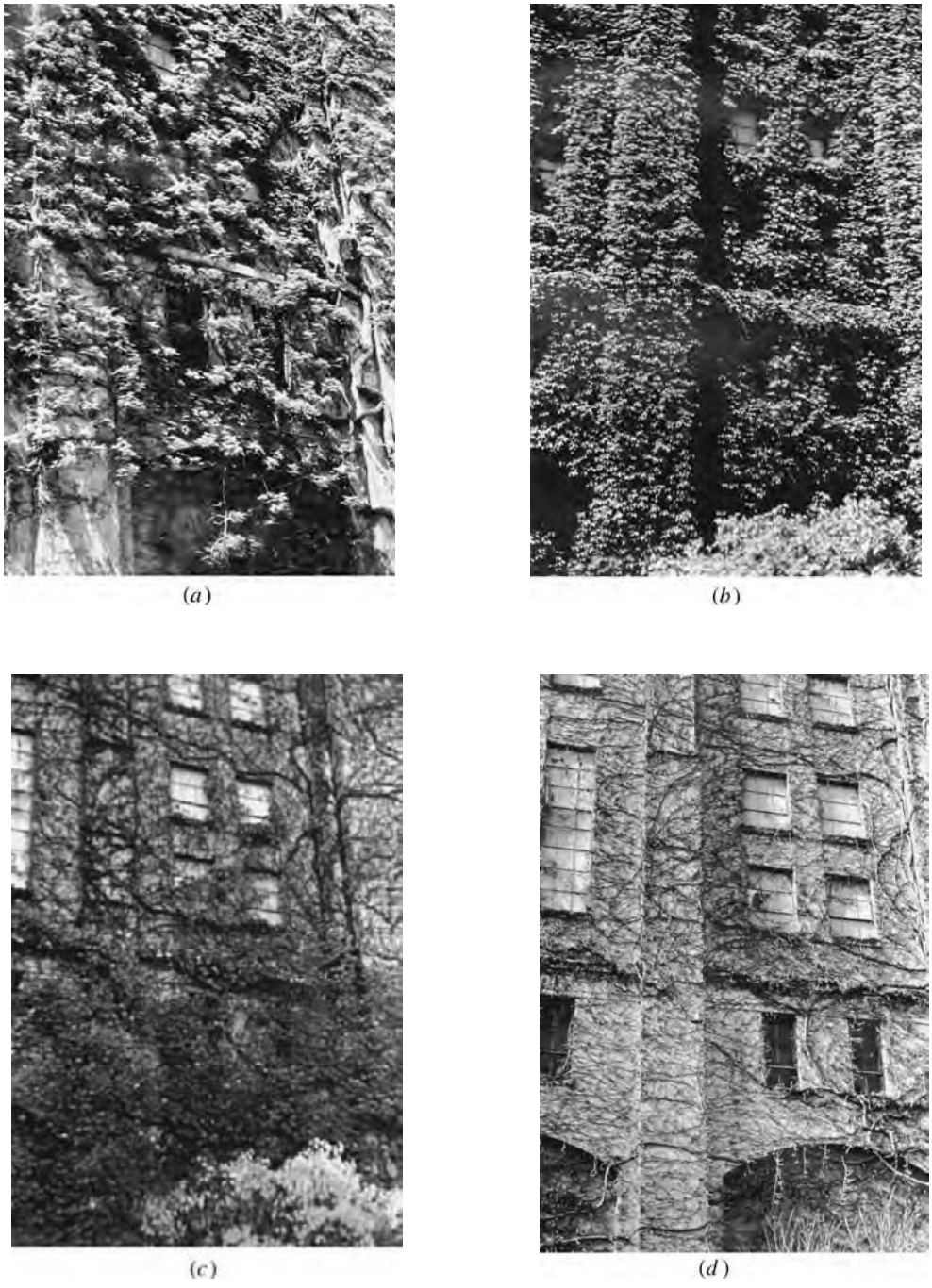


Fig. 3.39 *Deciduous vines, temperature, and sun position. The sun's path through the sky is identical in late May (a) and late July (b). Paired—but lower—sun paths occur in late November (c) and late January (d). This deciduous vine responds more to the temperature of its Oregon climate than to the sun's position, which makes it particularly useful as a sun control device. (For termite control and wall longevity, it is best to keep vines on a trellis rather than on the wall surface.) (From Reynolds, 1976.)*

TABLE 3.5 Deciduous Trees for Summer Shading and Winter Solar Collection

		Transmissivity[a] Range %				*Mature Height*	
Botanical Name	**Common Name**	**Summer**	**Winter**	**Foliation[b]**	**Defoliation[c]**	**m**	**ft**
Acer platanoides	Norway maple	5–14	60–75	E	M	15–25	50–82
Acer rubrum	Red maple	8–22	63–82	M	E	20–35	65–115
Acer saccharinum	Silver maple	10–28	60–87	M	M	20–35	65–115
Acer saccharum	Sugar maple	16–27	60–80	M	E	20–35	65–115
Aesculus hippocastanum	Horse chestnut	8–27	73	M	L	22–30	72–98
Amelanchier canadensis	Serviceberry	20–25	57	L	M		
Betula pendula	European birch	14–24	48–88	M	M–L	15–30	50–98
Cercis canadensis[d]	Red bud	62	74	L	M	12	40
Carya ovata	Shagbark hickory	15–28	66			24–30	78–98
Catalpa speciosa	Western catalpa	24–30	52–83	L		18–30	60–98
Cornus florida[d]	Dogwood	43	53	L	E	11	36
Fagus sylvatica	European birch	7–15	83	L	L	18–30	60–98
Fraxinus pennsylvanica	Green ash	10–29	70–71	M–L	M	18–25	60–82
Gleditsia tricanthos inermis	Honey locust	25–50	50–85	M	E	20–30	65–98
Juglans nigra	Black walnut	9	55–72	L	E–M	23–45	75–148
Liquidambar styraciflua[d]	Sweet gum	33	47	M	L	24	78
Liriodendron tulipifera	Tulip tree	10	69–78	M–L	M	27–45	88–148
Platanus acerifolia	London plane tree	11–17	46–64	M–L		30–35	98–115
Populus detoides	Cottonwood	10–20	68	E	M	23–30	75–98
Populus tremuloides	Trembling aspen	20–33		E		12–15	40–50
Quercus alba	White oak	13–38					
Quercus palustris[d]	Pin oak	45	47	L	L	23	75
Quercus rubra	Red oak	12–23	70–81		M	23–30	75–98
Robinia pseudoacacia[d]	Black locust	38	40	L	E	21	69
Tilia cordata	Littleleaf linden	7–22	46–70	L	E	18–21	60–69
Ulmus americana	American elm	13	63–89	M	M	18–24	60–78

Source: Brown and Gillespie (1995), except as noted.

[a]Transmissivity to solar radiation; varies with instruments used by various researchers.

[b]Foliation: E = early (before April 30); M = middle (May 1–15); L = late (after May 15).

[c]Defoliation: E = early (before November 1); M = middle (November 1–30); L = late (after November 30).

[d]From Montgomery (1987). Transmissivity % = (100% – blockage %).

buildings, plants thus provide their deepest shade in the hottest weather.

To illustrate this mechanical-horticultural contrast, a fixed sunscreen (an overhang for south-facing windows) is shown in Fig. 3.37. Such sunscreens block the sun for some defined portion of the year, centered on June 21; that is, maximum shade is provided at the summer solstice. A typical approach to such sunscreens in the U.S. temperate zone is to shade at least half of a south window in a residence (or all of a window in an office with internal heat loads) from March 21 to September 21 (vernal equinox to autumnal equinox). Yet, March is (on the average) a colder month than September; March 21 is the last day of winter, whereas September 21 is the last day of summer. Indeed, average monthly temperatures for June and September can be quite similar. Full solar radiation is more welcome in early spring than in early fall, yet sun position is identical at these times. In contrast to fixed sunscreens, deciduous plants do most of their shading from the middle of June to early October, giving windows access to solar radiation throughout much of the spring (Figs. 3.38 and 3.39).

Deciduous trees have a potential disadvantage for solar heating, in that certain species (such as sweet gum and some oaks) hold on to their leaves well into the heating season, a tendency increased by fertilizing or irrigating near a tree. Other trees have a dense branch structure, blocking a surprisingly high percentage of solar radiation even when bare (Table 3.5). Agricultural extension services in most areas can provide information on the hardiness and average dates of defoliation for various tree species. For solar collection, avoiding trees or

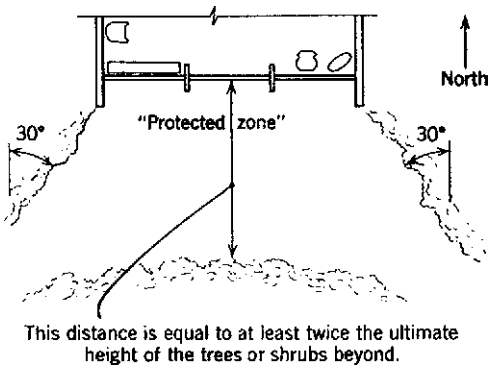


Fig. 3.40 *Protecting access to winter sun, given a lawn or terrace of limited size to the south of solar collecting surfaces. Coniferous and even deciduous plants within the "protected zone" should be avoided unless they are very low growing or are a reliably early defoliating species (see Table 3.5). Summer sun protection for such south-facing windows is best provided by flexible architectural controls such as awnings or hanging screens.*

large shrubs within the area shown in Fig. 3.40 is recommended. In this *protected zone*, a deciduous vine on a trellis above a south-facing window is a better planting strategy.

Many large buildings have a relatively short heating season because they have constant internal heat gains. For such internal-load (heat-dominated) buildings, a tree or vine that foliates early in spring, defoliates late in fall, and has low transmissivity in summer is advantageous. The choice of trees, shrubs, and vines to improve a site and/or building microclimate can best be made after a month-by-month analysis of building heating and cooling needs.

3.10 CASE STUDY—SITE AND RESOURCE DESIGN

Aldo Leopold Legacy Center, Baraboo, Wisconsin

Project Basics

- Location: Baraboo, Wisconsin
- Latitude: 43.52 N; longitude: 89.46 W; elevation: 974 ft (297 m)
- Heating degree days: 7673 base 65°F (4263 base 18.3°C); cooling degree days: 2389 base 50°F (1327 base 10°C) at Madison airport; annual precipitation 33.8 in. (858 mm)



Fig. 3.41 *The Aldo Leopold Legacy Center in Baraboo, Wisconsin (north of Madison), which attained LEED Platinum certification. (© The Kubala Washatko Architects, Inc.; used with permission.)*

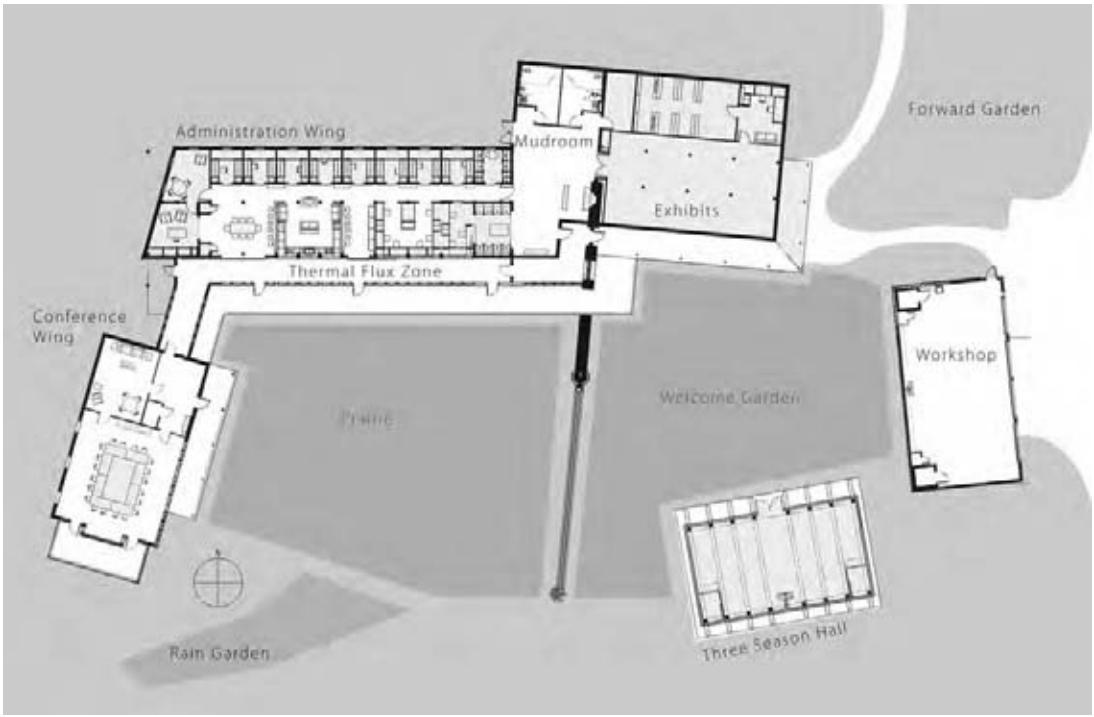


Fig. 3.42 *Site plan of the Aldo Leopold Legacy Center showing elongated buildings and southern orientation around a courtyard. (© The Kubala Washatko Architects, Inc.; used with permission.)*

- Building type: New construction; offices, meeting rooms, exhibit area
- 13,000 ft^2 (1208 m^2) [8644 ft^2 (803 m^2) conditioned space]
- Completed Spring 2007
- Client: Aldo Leopold Foundation
- Design team: The Kubala Washatko Architects, Inc. and consultants

Background. The Aldo Leopold Legacy Center is a Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) Platinum certified project, the first ever earning 61 of 69 possible points and the first to earn a point for being a net-zero carbon-neutral building. Site and resource design were integral components in achieving this aggressive goal, which will be discussed in the following sections to demonstrate the opportunities and resources that are on-site, free, and ready to be captured. The Aldo Leopold Foundation's (ALF) mission is to uphold the land ethic, and this unwavering goal helped to motivate the design team to exemplify the founding principles of the Foundation through innovation and sustainability. The Aldo Leopold Legacy Center utilizes a number of passive strategies and is constructed with local materials not traveling more than an average of 100 miles per pound (359 km per kg).

Context. The Aldo Leopold Legacy Center (ALLC) is an organization dedicated to promoting Aldo Leopold's land ethic. Leopold, author of the *Sand County Almanac*, developed a land ethic and belief that the term "community" should expand to include elements such as the "soils, waters, plants and animals, or collectively: the land." His writing set the stage for the modern conservation movement in terms of our current ecological thinking. The original building, called the "Leopold shack" served as a retreat as well as a center for ecological research. Formerly a chicken coop, the shack was built primarily of found materials, used passive strategies for daylighting and ventilation, and required no electricity. Design of the new center retained the same ethic of conservation present in the shack, even with increased occupancy, energy demands, and building functions.



Fig. 3.43 *Administrative center of the Aldo Leopold Legacy Center, with clerestories and daylight zoning throughout the building—strategies that helped to reduce the use of electric lighting. (© The Kubala Washatko Architects, Inc.; used with permission.)*

Design Intent. The ALLC is a direct reflection of Aldo Leopold's values. The leading principles (intent) behind the design included:

- Respect Aldo Leopold's land ethic in all aspects of design.
- All occupied zones are perimeter zones designed for daylight and natural ventilation.
- Minimize electric lighting use during occupancy.
- Minimize HVAC systems use during occupancy.
- Minimize motive power in all piping and ductwork systems.
- Achieve a building energy demand goal of 17,000 kBtu per square foot of floor area per year (0.46 kWh per m^2 per year).
- Generate energy on site from solar radiation and biomass.
- Achieve carbon-neutral building operation.
- Utilize on-site wood resources in the building.

The Center was built on land that was previously used for housing; hence no new land was built upon. Ninety-thousand board feet (27,400 board-meters) of wood harvested from nearby forests, including many red and white pines planted by Aldo Leopold himself in the 1930s, were used in the building. The smaller trees were kept "in the round," which allowed the sapwood, the strongest part of the wood, to remain intact. Each selectively harvested tree from the site was measured and its use accounted for within the building. Natural ventilation, daylighting, and passive solar strategies helped the center reach the carbon-neutral benchmark, although active systems are needed to meet the occupants' comfort needs during very cold and hot and humid conditions. Energy sources for the building include on-site photovoltaics, solar hot water panels, and wood-burning heat. Radiant floors meet heating and cooling loads in the offices and exhibit space. Required ventilation air is tempered by earth tubes. Additional energy, if needed, is purchased from wind power providers. On a net annual basis, the ALLC is designed to produce 110% of the energy that is required for its operation.

Design Criteria and Validation. The project achieved a LEED Platinum rating, with the highest number of LEED points earned to date in the certification

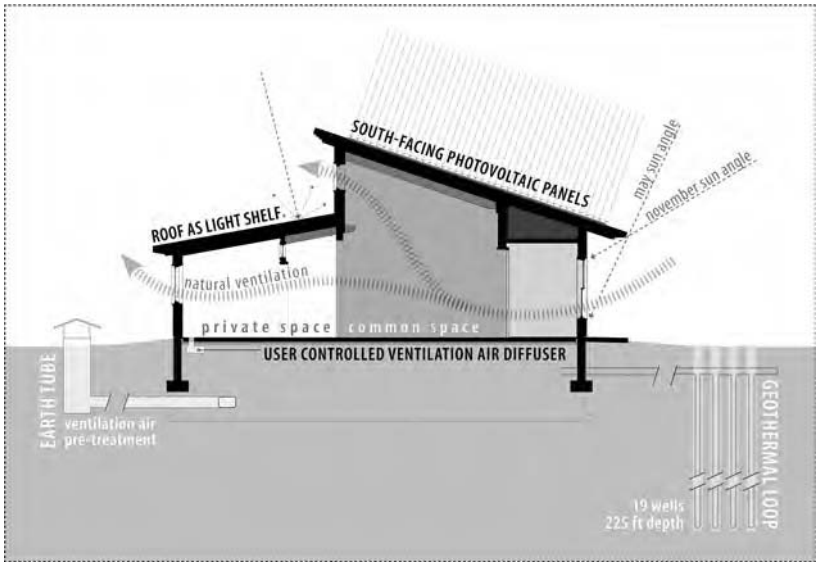


Fig. 3.44 *Building section showing strategies for lighting, heating, cooling, and ventilation. (© The Kubala Washatko Architects, Inc.; used with permission.)*

process. The project also earned a point in the Innovation and Design category for achieving carbon neutrality in building operation. To develop an appropriate energy use goal for the building, the design team researched energy consumption and production of other buildings of similar size and function, and also calculated the amount of solar radiation available to the site to find the potential for solar energy use. The team took a unique design approach by first establishing a solar budget by using the available roof area of 3000 ft^2 (278.7 m^2) for a photovoltaic array that would provide 50,000 kWh per year of energy. The design team then set a maximum building energy demand to fall within the solar budget: approximately 8600 ft^2 (799 m^2) of conditioned building area resulting in 5.7 kWh per square foot (0.46 kWh per square meter) per year.

Post-Occupancy Validation Methods. Energy modeling using the TRNSYS software integrated with the CONTAM program was performed during the preliminary design phases. Performance monitoring over a 12-month period is currently being performed by Michael Utzinger of the University of Wisconsin-Milwaukee.

The design model suggested that the building would generate approximately 3100 Btu per square foot per year (35,216 kJ/m^2) more energy from on-site renewable energy than the building would require for operation. In its first year of operation, the building has required approximately 4300 Btu per square foot per year (48,848 kJ/m^2) more than the renewable energy generation. A colder than normal winter, record annual snowfall (covering the PV array in January and February), and some system operation errors are assumed to cause the performance shortfall. The building operations are currently being modified for the second year of occupancy.

Performance Data. Information available to date suggests that the design team succeeded in upholding the Leopold legacy by utilizing on-site energy and resources:

- The building achieved a LEED Platinum rating.
- Total emissions: 45.3 metric tons of CO_2/yr.
- Offset from renewable energies: –20.8 metric tons of CO_2/yr.
- Forest sequestration: –29.1 metric tons of CO_2/yr.
- Net result: –4.6 metric tons of CO_2/yr.
- Half of all wood used in the building, 90,000 board feet (27,400 board-meters), was harvested on site and milled 70 miles (112 km) away.
- The building materials on average only traveled 100 miles per pound (359 km per kg) to the site.



Fig. 3.45 *The carbon emissions diagram showing carbon neutrality: a balance of emissions versus offsets. (© The Kubala Washatko Architects, Inc.; used with permission.)*

- More than 95% of construction waste was recycled.
- The project is designed to meet the goals of the 2030 Challenge.
- The building uses 70% less energy than a typical building its size.
- The building was named an AIA COTE Top Ten Building for 2008.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION

The Aldo Leopold Foundation:
http://www.aldoleopold.org/

Aldo Leopold Legacy Center:
http://www.aldoleopold.org/legacycenter/

Boehland, Jessica. "Building on Aldo Leopold's Legacy." *Green Source*, April 2008. pp. 80–85.

The Kubala Washatko Architects, Inc.:
http://www.tkwa.com/



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 3.46 *(a) Trees selectively harvested from the site. (b) Accounting for each tree and placement of each board within the building. (© The Kubala Washatko Architects, Inc.; used with permission.)*

Chapa, Jorge. 2007. "First LEED Platinum Carbon Neutral Building!" *Inhabitat:*
http://www.inhabitat.com/2007/11/08/first-leed-platinum-carbon-neutral-building/

Wisconsin Green Building Alliance:
http://www.wgba.org/artman/publish/article_583.shtml

References and Resources

ASES. 1981. *Passive Cooling.* American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

Beranek, W. J. 1980. "General Rules for the Determination of Wind Environment," in *Wind Engineering*, J. E. Cermak (ed.). Pergamon Press. Elmsford, NY.

Bragdon, C. 1971. *Noise Pollution: The Unquiet Crisis.* University of Pennsylvania Press. Philadelphia.

Brown, R. D. and T. J. Gillespie. 1995. *Microclimatic Landscape Design: Creating Thermal Comfort and Energy Efficiency.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Cohen, S., D. C. Glass, and J. E. Singer. 1973. "Apartment Noise, Auditory Discrimination, and

Reading Ability in Children," in *Journal of Experimental Social Psychology*, Vol. 9.

DeKay, M. 1992. "A Comparative Review of Daylight Planning Tools and a Rule-of-Thumb for Street Width to Building Height Ratio," in *Proceedings of the 17th National Passive Solar Conference*, Cocoa Beach, FL. American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

Doelle, L. 1972. *Environmental Acoustics.* McGraw-Hill. New York.

Gandemer, J. 1977. "Wind Environment Around Buildings: Aerodynamic Concepts," in *Wind Effects on Buildings and Structures*, K. J. Eaton (ed.). Cambridge University Press. New York.

Graedel, T. E. and P. J. Crutzen. 1989. "The Changing Atmosphere," in *Scientific American*, September.

Harden, G. 1968. "The Tragedy of the Commons," in *Science*, Vol. 162, Issue 3859, 13 December.

Knowles, R. 1981. *Sun, Rhythm, Form.* MIT Press. Cambridge, MA.

Landsberg, H. E. 1970. "Climates and Urban Planning," in *Urban Climates.* World Meteorological Organization Technical Note 108. Geneva.

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Heat Island Group: http://eande.lbl.gov/HeatIsland/

Lowry, W. P. 1988. *Atmospheric Ecology for Designers and Planners.* Van Nostrand Reinhold. New York.

Lowry, W. P. and P. P. Lowry. 1995. *Fundamentals of Biometeorology, Volume 2: The Biological Environment.* Peavine Publications. McMinnville, OR.

Marsh, W. M. 1991. *Landscape Planning, Environmental Applications*, 2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Mazria, E. and D. Winitsky. 1976. *Solar Guide and Calculator.* Center for Environmental Research, University of Oregon. Eugene.

McPherson, E.G. (ed.). 1984. *Energy-Conserving Site Design.* American Society of Landscape Architects. Washington, DC.

Montgomery, D. 1987. "Landscaping as a Passive Solar Strategy," in *Passive Solar Journal,* Vol. 4, No. 1. American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

Olgyay, V. 1963. *Design with Climate: Bioclimatic Approach to Architectural Regionalism.* Princeton University Press. Princeton, NJ.

Reynolds, J. S. 1976. *Solar Energy for Pacific Northwest Buildings.* Center for Environmental Research, University of Oregon. Eugene.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Global Warming Site: http://www.epa.gov/climatechange/index.html; Ozone Depletion Resources: http://www.epa.gov/docs/ozone/

Watson, D. and K. Labs. 1983. *Climatic Design.* McGraw-Hill. New York.

CHAPTER 4

Comfort and Design Strategies

ONE OF THE EARLIEST REASONS FOR building was to create shelter from the climate and to enhance thermal comfort. This chapter is about the interrelationship among bodies, buildings, and climate. It begins by discussing bodily heat flow, then thermal comfort, and then design strategies that are appropriate to various climates.

4.1 THE BODY

Because we are alive, we are always generating body heat. Because the body's core must stay within a narrow temperature range, we nearly always need to lose this internally generated heat to our environment. The rate at which we produce heat changes frequently, as does the environment's ability to accept heat. To regulate our body's heat loss, we have available three common layers between our body cores and the environment: a first skin, which is our own; a second skin, our clothing; and a third skin, a building.

(a) Metabolism

The rate at which we generate heat (our metabolic rate) depends mostly upon our level of muscular activity, partly upon what we eat and drink (and when), and partly on where we are in our normal daily cycle. Our heat production is measured in metabolic (MET) units (Table 4.1). One MET is defined as 50 kcal/h m^2 (equal to 18.4 Btu/h ft^2 or 58.2 W/m^2). One MET is the energy produced per unit of surface area by a seated person at rest. Under these conditions, the total heat produced by a normal adult is about 360 Btu/h (106 W). The more active we are, the more heat we produce, and our own (first) skin becomes the most important regulator of heat flow.

Of the many interactions between our skin and the rest of our body, consider these three: touch, blood, and water. The sensation of touch includes pressure and pain as well as heat and cold. The sensations of heat and cold are produced by contact with surfaces or moving air as well as by radiation. They are frequently our signals for shifts in body heat regulation, which is controlled by the thermostat in our brains, called the *hypothalamus*.

In response to signals from our skin surface and to changes in our core temperature, the hypothalamus calls for changes in our blood distribution system. If we are too cold, we need to decrease our rate of heat loss, so the flow of blood from our core toward the surface of our skin decreases. Blood carries heat (in heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning [HVAC] terms, we are an "all-water" system): the less exposure to cool air at the skin surface, the less heat is lost. This decreased blood flow toward the surface is called *vasoconstriction*, and is triggered in part by cold signals from our skin. In this condition, less water is forced to the skin surface by our sweat glands, which reduces evaporation and therefore heat loss.

TABLE 4.1 Metabolic Rates for Typical Tasks

Activity	Metabolic Rate[a] MET Units[b]	Btu/h ft²	W/m²
Resting			
Sleeping	0.7	13	40
Reclining	0.8	15	45
Seated, quiet	1.0	18	60
Standing, relaxed	1.2	22	70
Walking (on the level)			
2 mph (0.9 m/s)	2.0	37	115
3 mph (1.2 m/s)	2.6	48	150
4 mph (1.8 m/s)	3.8	70	220
Office activities			
Reading, seated	1.0	18	60
Writing	1.0	18	60
Typing	1.1	20	65
Filing, seated	1.2	22	70
Filing, standing	1.4	26	80
Walking about	1.7	31	100
Lifting, packing	2.1	39	120
Driving/flying			
Car	1.0–2.0	18–37	60–115
Aircraft, routine	1.2	22	70
Aircraft, instrument landing	1.8	33	105
Aircraft, combat	2.4	44	140
Heavy vehicle	3.2	59	185
Miscellaneous occupational activities			
Cooking	1.6–2.0	29–37	95–115
House cleaning	2.0–3.4	37–63	115–200
Seated, heavy limb movement	2.2	41	130
Handling 110-lb (50-kg) bags	4.0	74	235
Pick and shovel work	4.0–4.8	74–88	235–280
Machine work			
Sawing (table saw)	1.8	33	105
Light (electrical industry)	2.0–2.4	37–44	115–140
Heavy	4.0	74	235
Miscellaneous leisure activities			
Dancing, social	2.4–4.4	44–81	140–255
Calisthenics/exercise	3.0–4.0	55–74	175–235
Tennis, singles	3.6–4.0	66–74	210–270
Basketball	5.0–7.6	90–140	290–440
Wrestling, competitive	7.0–8.7	130–160	410–505

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. From 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals.*

[a]For average adult with a body surface area of 19.6 ft² (1.8 m²). For whole-body average heat production, see also Table F.8.

[b]One MET = 18.4 Btu/h ft² = 58.2 W/m².

Note the implications of this zoning within the body. We strive to maintain, at all costs, a nearly constant core temperature for our vital organs. This most protected zone takes thermal precedence over the less vital zone of our extremities, such as the arms and legs; next in priority are our fingers and toes. The farther from our central body mass (fingers and toes) and the greater the surface area (ears), the faster the temperature will drop in cold conditions. The most variable thermal zone of all is our skin surface.

When cold conditions worsen, we get goosebumps, symptoms of our skin's unsuccessful attempt to create insulation by fluffing up our body hair. Because we cannot add insulation this way, we soon increase our metabolic rate, or burn more fuel, by shivering, muscular tension, or increased muscular activity. At the point where shivering incapacitates us, we may reach 6 MET. Before this point, we seek help from our second and then our third skins of clothing and buildings.

The opposite occurs when we are too hot: first, blood flow toward the skin surface increases (*vasodilation*), triggered primarily by warm signals from our core. The sweat glands greatly increase their secretion of water and salt to the skin surfaces. This increases heat loss by evaporation (although salt accumulations impede evaporation by lowering the vapor pressure of water).

(b) Heat Flow

Once blood and water transport our surplus heat to the skin surface, we have four ways to pass it to the environment: *convection* (air molecules contact our body, absorbing heat), *conduction* (we touch cooler surfaces, and heat is transferred), *radiation* (when our skin surface is hotter than other surfaces "seen" but not touched, heat is radiated to these cooler surfaces, and vice versa when other surfaces are hotter than our skin surface), and *evaporation* (a liquid can evaporate only by removing large quantities of heat from the surface it is leaving). The amount of heat we lose by each of these four methods depends upon the interactions among our metabolism, our clothing, and our environment. Figure 4.1 illustrates the typical situation of a person at rest as environmental conditions change.

As air and surface temperatures approach our own body temperature, we lose the options of convection, conduction, and radiation. Evaporation becomes essential, so access to dry, moving air is greatly appreciated. As air and surface temperatures fall, evaporation decreases while convection, conduction, and particularly radiation increase. Under the normally comfortable temperature in Fig. 4.1 of about 70°F (18°C), the proportions of body heat loss per hour are as follows:

Heat generated, Btuh	400	400	400	400	400 (curve 1)
Heat lost by:					
Radiation and convection	350	300	200	100	0 (curve 2)
Evaporation	50	100	200	300	400 (curve 3)
Total, Btuh	400	400	400	400	400 Total (curve 1)

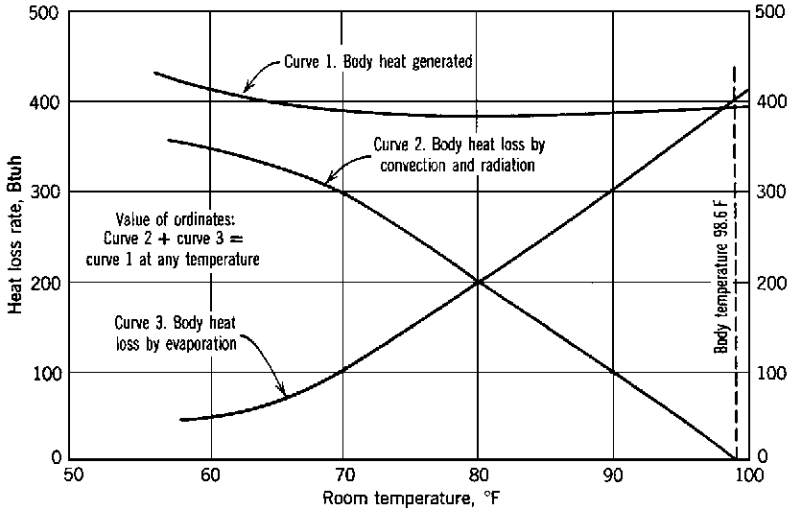


Fig. 4.1 *Heat generated and lost (approximate) by a person at rest (RH fixed at 45%).*

Radiation, convection, and conduction:	72%
Evaporation	
From skin surface:	15%
From lungs (exhaled air):	7%
Warming of air inhaled to lungs:	3%
Heat expelled in feces and urine:	3%

(c) Clothing

Usually clothing acts as an insulating layer and is particularly effective at retarding radiation, convection, and conduction. As air and surface temperatures in our environment fall well below our body's temperature, we adjust this second skin to provide increased insulation. However, in a hot, humid environment, our first skin needs exposure to moving air to encourage heat loss, yet needs protection from the sun's radiant heat. We need a simple second skin that acts as a sunshade. In a hot, arid environment, our second skin may keep us from losing too much valuable water while also performing the vital role of shading.

The insulating value of clothing is measured in CLO units, 1 CLO being equivalent to the typical American man's business suit in 1941, when the concept of CLO was developed (1 CLO is equal to 0.88 ft^2 h °F/Btu [0.155 m^2 K/W]). The total CLO of what you are now wearing can be estimated by assuming 0.15 CLO/lb (0.35 CLO/kg) of clothing weight. The total CLO of your attire may also be estimated by simply adding the CLO of each item from Table 4.2; this total will be a bit higher than the actual CLO value of the ensemble. Sometimes the position of clothing is as important as its CLO value; consider the role of socks as they separate our feet from contact with a cold floor.

Our second skin is just as likely as our third (building) skin to be more dominated by considerations of style than of thermal regulation; we cannot always count on our clothing—or buildings—to increase our thermal comfort.

4.2 THERMAL COMFORT

A positive definition of comfort is "a feeling of well-being." The more common experience of comfort is simply a lack of discomfort—thermally, of being unconscious of how you are losing heat to your

TABLE 4.2 Typical Insulation Values for Clothing Ensembles

Ensemble Description[a]	CLO[b]
Walking shorts, short-sleeve shirt	0.36
Trousers, short-sleeve shirt	0.57
Trousers, long-sleeve shirt	0.61
Same as above, plus suit jacket	0.96
Same as above, plus vest and T-shirt	1.14
Trousers, long-sleeve shirt, long-sleeve sweater, T-shirt	1.01
Same as above, plus suit jacket and long underwear bottoms	1.30
Sweatpants, sweatshirt	0.74
Long-sleeve pajama top, long pajama trousers, short 3/4-sleeve robe, slippers (no socks)	0.96
Knee-length skirt, short-sleeve shirt, pantyhose, sandals	0.54
Knee-length skirt, long-sleeve shirt, full slip, pantyhose	0.67
Knee-length skirt, long-sleeve shirt, half slip, pantyhose, long-sleeve sweater	1.10
Same as above; replace sweater with suit jacket	1.04
Ankle-length skirt, long-sleeve shirt, suit jacket, pantyhose	1.10
Long-sleeve coveralls, T-shirt	0.72
Overalls, long-sleeve shirt, T-shirt	0.89
Insulated coveralls, long-sleeve thermal underwear, long underwear bottoms	1.37

Source: Based on ASHRAE (1997).

[a]All ensembles include shoes and briefs or panties. All ensembles except those with pantyhose include socks, unless otherwise noted.

[b]One CLO = 0.88 ft^2 h °F/Btu = 0.155 m^2K/W.

environment. ASHRAE (2004) defines thermal comfort as "that condition of mind which expresses satisfaction with the thermal environment…." There are three categories of factors that affect comfort: personal, measurable environmental, and psychological. Most *personal* factors are under your control: your metabolism and your clothing, as well as various adaptations such as migration to a more comfortable place, or drinking or eating warm or cold foods. *Measurable environmental* factors are the familiar tools of the designer: air temperature, surface temperature, air motion, and humidity. *Psychological* factors are also familiar designers' tools, but they are difficult to quantify for comfort: color, texture, sound, light, movement, and aroma. These factors are often overlooked as we strive to meet the numerical (therefore calculable) physical criteria for thermal comfort. However, our primary design intent is to make people comfortable, and all aspects of buildings are our means to that end.



Fig. 4.2 *Indicators of coolness in a courtyard include running water and shade from vines that move with the breeze. The senses of sight, sound, touch, smell, and taste all may be involved in a perception of coolness.*

Consider the courtyard in a hot, dry climate (Fig. 4.2). Its fountain suggests coolness in the color and texture of its water; running water provides splashing sounds and sparkles of light and may generate some air motion. Vines provide shade, and their leaves sway in the slightest breeze, evidence of at least some air motion. Blossoms of flowering plants yield a cool fragrance that blends with the aroma of moistened surfaces in hot, dry surroundings. The measured coolness of such a courtyard may be but a slight improvement over the environment beyond, but it seems cool.

Then consider a fireplace in a cold climate (Fig. 4.3). The fire's color is intensely warm, and it dances and casts a flickering light; it crackles, and it yields a smoky aroma (not appreciated by all). Few textures seem hotter than that of glowing coals. Yet a fireplace might add but slightly to the overall warmth of a room, because it draws in cold air to replace the air that passes up the chimney. We seek a place near the fire for the real radiant warmth, but also for the psychological comfort the fire offers.

In our society, designers are encouraged to take numerical data quite literally. The measurable environmental factors have been tested extensively in laboratories—but exclude other factors. A holistic view of designing for comfort considers numbers as a nonabsolute guide; common sense and a designer's own thermal experience play important roles as well. Lisa Heschong's *Thermal Delight in Architecture* (1979) is an excellent expression of these points of view.

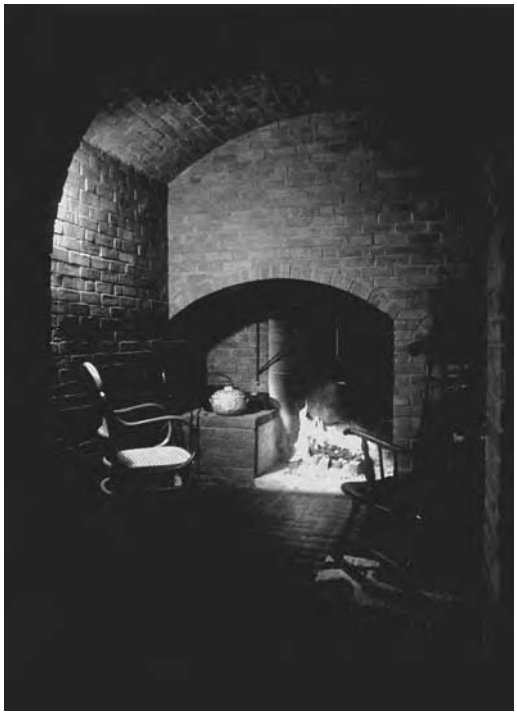


Fig. 4.3 *The open fire seems the very spirit of warmth, despite the heat lost by large quantities of exhaust air up the chimney. The senses of sight, sound, touch, and smell all may be involved in a perception of warmth, wrapped in this red brick environment. (Courtesy of the architect and photographer, Edward Allen.)*

Ultimately, our buildings will be expected to demonstrate success with regard to the measurable environmental factors of comfort, so it is necessary to understand how air and surface temperatures, air motion, and humidity are related to heat transfer.

Heat Transferred by:	*Primarily Dependent upon:*
Conduction	Surface temperature
Convection	Air temperature, air motion, humidity
Radiation	Surface temperature, orientation to the body
Evaporation	Humidity, air motion, air temperature

From this comparison, it is evident that humidity is relatively unimportant in cold conditions, where heat loss by convection, radiation, and conduction is dominant. However, humidity is of primary importance in hot conditions, dominated by evaporative heat loss. This is further evident in comfort studies, which show that skin temperature is an important factor in cold conditions, whereas skin wettedness (percentage covered by water) is most important in hot conditions.

(a) Comfort Standards

The ASHRAE *comfort zone* (Fig. 4.5) represents combinations of air temperature and relative humidity that most often produce comfort for a seated North American adult in shirtsleeves (total 0.6 CLO) in the shade and without noticeable air motion. The concept of a comfort zone is diagrammed in Fig. 4.4, where surface temperatures are assumed to be not markedly different from air temperatures. Moving to the left of this zone, at lower air temperatures, comfort is still attainable if added radiant heat is provided—such as by increasing surface temperatures or providing exposure to the sun. Higher activity and more clothing would also help achieve

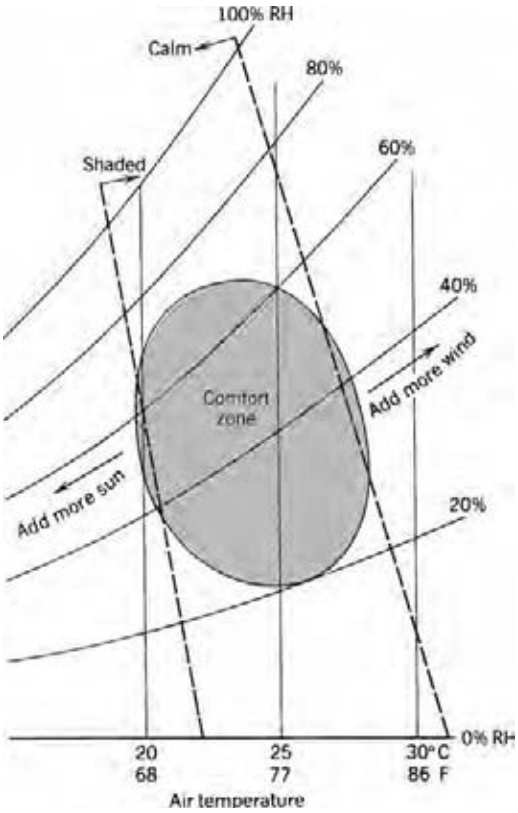
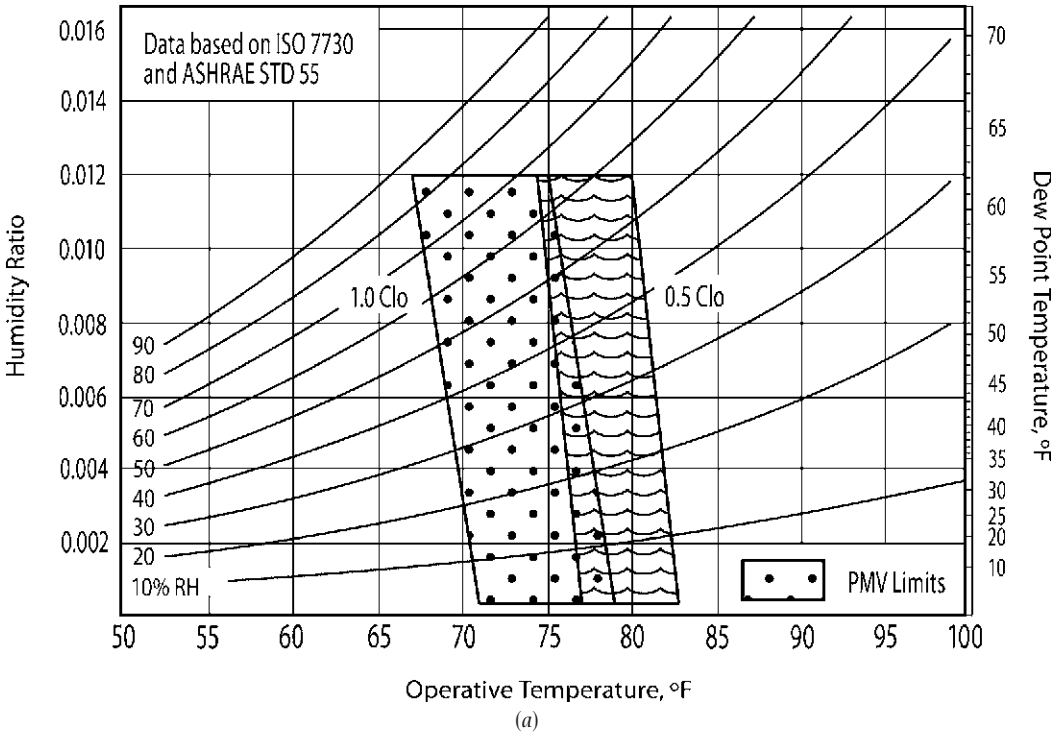
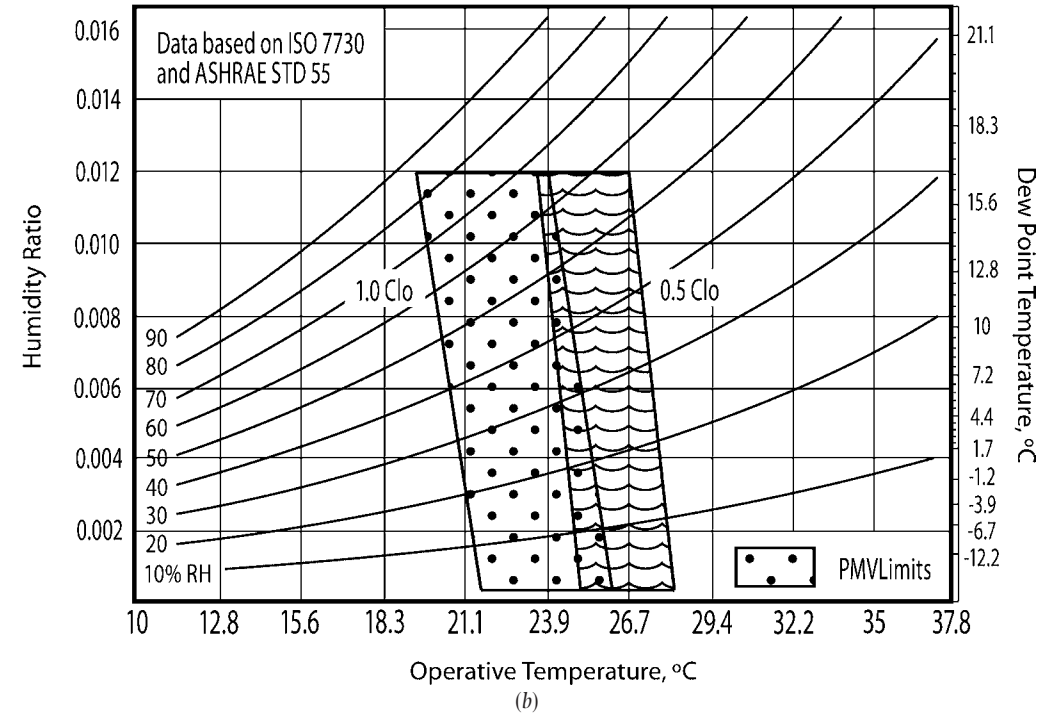


Fig. 4.4 *Comfort zone defined by relative humidity and air temperature.*

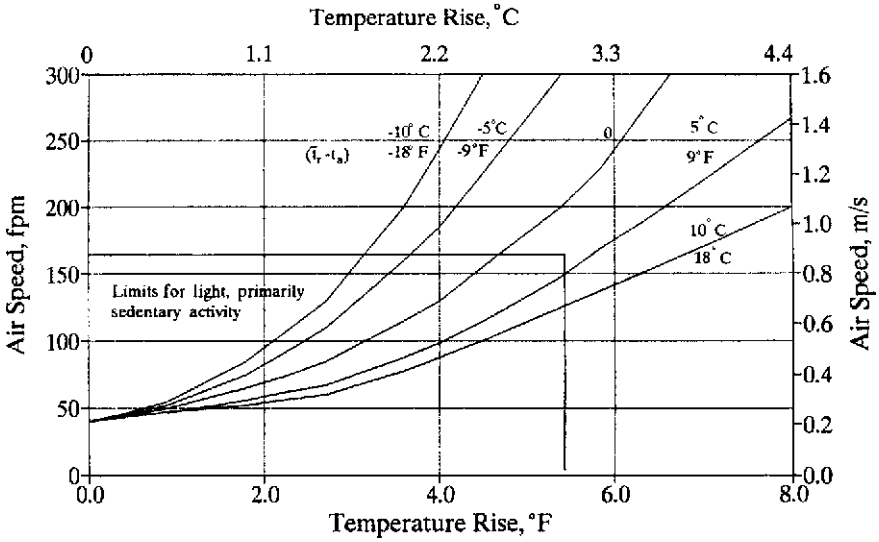


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 4.5 *(a, b) ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 55-2004 comfort zone. (Redrawn by Nathan Majeski; reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 55-2004,* Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy*.) (c) Relationships between increasing air speeds and temperature relative to thermal comfort. (Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 55-2004,* Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy*.)*



(*c*)

Fig. 4.5 *(Continued)*

comfort. Similarly, by moving to the right of the comfort zone (at higher air temperatures), comfort is still attainable by increasing air motion (such as exposure to wind), lowering the activity level, and removing clothing. In both directions limits are soon reached, but the important point is that the basic comfort zone can be expanded by changing environmental variables and/or human behavior.

The human thermal response, perceived as thermal comfort or discomfort, is shaped by four environmental parameters: dry-bulb air temperature, relative humidity, radiant temperature, and air speed. These variables can be measured directly or derived from other measurements (using a psychrometric chart where physical properties of moist air and related thermodynamic processes are graphically expressed). Two nonenvironmental parameters, clothing and metabolism, are key personal variables.

Figure 4.5 (parts *a* and *b*) shows the thermal comfort zone as defined by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), where acceptable ranges of operative temperatures (T_{op}) and relative humidity are given for sedentary (1.0–1.3 MET) persons wearing typical clothing (between 0.5 and 1.0 CLO of thermal insulation). Figure 4.5 specifies the comfort zone parameters where there should be 80% occupant acceptability for the range of operative temperature and relative humidity, and where air speeds are not greater than 40 ft/min (0.20 m/s). Two zones are shown—one for 0.5 CLO of clothing insulation (assumed worn when the outdoor environment is warm) and one for 1.0 CLO of insulation (for when the outdoor environment is cool). Figure 4.5*c* suggests the effect of increased air speeds on thermal comfort. The thermal comfort variables used here are defined as follows:

Dry-Bulb (DB) Temperature. DB temperature is the ambient air temperature as measured by a standard thermometer, thermocouple, or resistance temperature device. DB temperature can be used in combination with globe temperature and air velocity to calculate mean radiant temperature. Temperature affects comfort in a number of ways and, in combination with the other parameters described in this section, is a key factor in our energy balance, thermal sensation, comfort, discomfort, and perception of air quality.

Operative Temperature. This is the average of the dry-bulb temperature and the mean radiant temperature (MRT).

Wet-Bulb (WB) Temperature. WB temperature is measured by a thermometer with a wetted bulb rotated rapidly in the air to cause evaporation of its moisture—as with the sling psychrometer shown in Fig. 4.6. In dry air the moisture

readily evaporates and draws heat out of the thermometer to produce a lower temperature reading, called the *wet-bulb depression* (the difference between DB and WB temperatures). A large depression is indicative of low relative humidity (RH). Lower evaporation, as when the air is already moisture-laden, results in a small wet-bulb depression and indicates high RH. Note that at 100% RH, DB and WB temperatures are equal.

Relative Humidity may be measured directly or derived from DB and WB temperatures, and is the ratio of the actual density of water vapor in air to the maximum density of water vapor that such air could contain, at the same temperature, if it were 100% saturated.

Mean Radiant Temperature (MRT). The radiant temperatures of surrounding surfaces influence human comfort. With respect to the human body at a particular location, *mean radiant temperature* is defined as the uniform temperature of an imaginary surrounding enclosure in which radiant transfer from the human body would equal the radiant heat transfer in the actual nonuniform enclosure (ASHRAE 2001). MRT is a calculated variable and cannot be directly measured. One calculation approach involves using a globe thermometer, which can be easily constructed using a hollow sphere (e.g., a Ping Pong ball) with a thermocouple or thermometer bulb at its center. Equation 4.1, for determining MR temperature from globe temperature, is as follows (ASHRAE, 2001):

I-P units: $\bar{t}_r =$

$$\left[(t_g + 460)^4 + \frac{4.74 \times 10^7 V_a^{0.6}}{\varepsilon D^{0.4}}(t_g - t_a)\right]^{0.25} - 460 \qquad (4.1)$$

SI units: $\bar{t}_r =$

$$\left[(t_g + 273)^4 + \frac{1.10 \times 10^8 V_a^{0.6}}{\varepsilon D^{0.4}}(t_g - t_a)\right]^{0.25} - 273$$

where

$\bar{t}_r$ = mean radiant temperature, °F (°C)
t_g = globe temperature, °F (°C)
V_a = air velocity, fpm (m/s)
t_a = air temperature, °F (°C)
D = globe diameter, ft (m)
ε = globe emissivity (dimensionless)

Another calculation approach involves the geometry of the room relative to a specific point and uses Equation 4.2 (Egan, 1975):

$$\text{I-P or SI units } \bar{t}_r = \frac{\sum t\alpha}{360} = \frac{t_1\alpha_1 + t_2\alpha_2 + t_3\alpha_3 + \ldots t_n\alpha_n}{360} \qquad (4.2)$$

where

$\bar{t}_r$ = mean radiant temperature, °F (°C)

α = surface exposure angle (relative to the occupant) in degrees

DB air temperature by itself is usually not an adequate comfort indicator, especially in passively solar-heated or passively cooled spaces where radiant temperature or air motion may be more influential than air temperature.

The comfort zone in Fig. 4.5 purports to apply to both genders, any age, and any national origin; research by ASHRAE supports such a view. High humidity is avoided (to avoid mold and mildew as well as discomfort), and air motion is assumed to be unnoticeable. Occupants of naturally ventilated buildings, however, seem to find comfortable a combination of higher temperature and RH than do occupants of sealed, air-conditioned buildings.

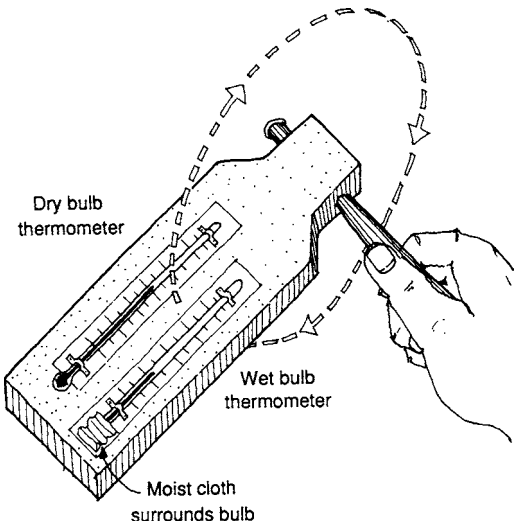


Fig. 4.6 *Sling psychrometer and its usage. Air motion encourages evaporation from the moist cloth, lowering the wet-bulb temperature below the surrounding air temperature, whereas the dry-bulb temperature stays constant at the surrounding air temperature. (At 100% RH, WB and DB temperatures will be equal.)*

Figure 4.7 shows a much higher incidence of these warmer, more humid environments in Hawaiian naturally ventilated classrooms than in similar air-conditioned classrooms. Yet, the majority of students and teachers in these Hawaiian schools voted these conditions as acceptable. These observations were made in both hot and cool seasons (see Kwok, 1998).

Does long-term *acclimatization* influence the sensation of thermal comfort? Researchers disagree. ASHRAE Standard 55 recognizes only two seasonal comfort zones, influenced by activity and clothing. Givoni (1998) advocates a higher-temperature, higher-humidity limit for "hot-developing" countries (Fig. 4.8), based upon a combination of traditional and economic factors. In Fig. 4.8, an interior air speed of 2 m/s (about 5 mph) is assumed.

An *adaptive model* of comfort recognizes acclimatization's influence as well as personal actions to influence one's own comfort. ASHRAE Standard 55 recognizes that people can be comfortable in a wide range of temperatures and provides an optional method for determining acceptable thermal conditions for naturally conditioned spaces. Humphreys and Nicol (1998) elaborate on this approach, with occupant behaviors summarized in Table 4.3. They present a formula to determine the *indoor comfort* temperature, T_n, relative to an exponentially weighted running average of outdoor temperature, and applicable to *free-running* buildings (without mechanically—narrowly—controlled indoor temperatures):

$$T_n = 0.534\ T_{rmo} + 12.9\ (°C) \qquad (4.3)$$

where T_{rmo} is in °C and represents the mean outdoor air temperature during a period of hot weather. Note that relative humidity is not included in this relationship. Using this equation, with Phoenix,

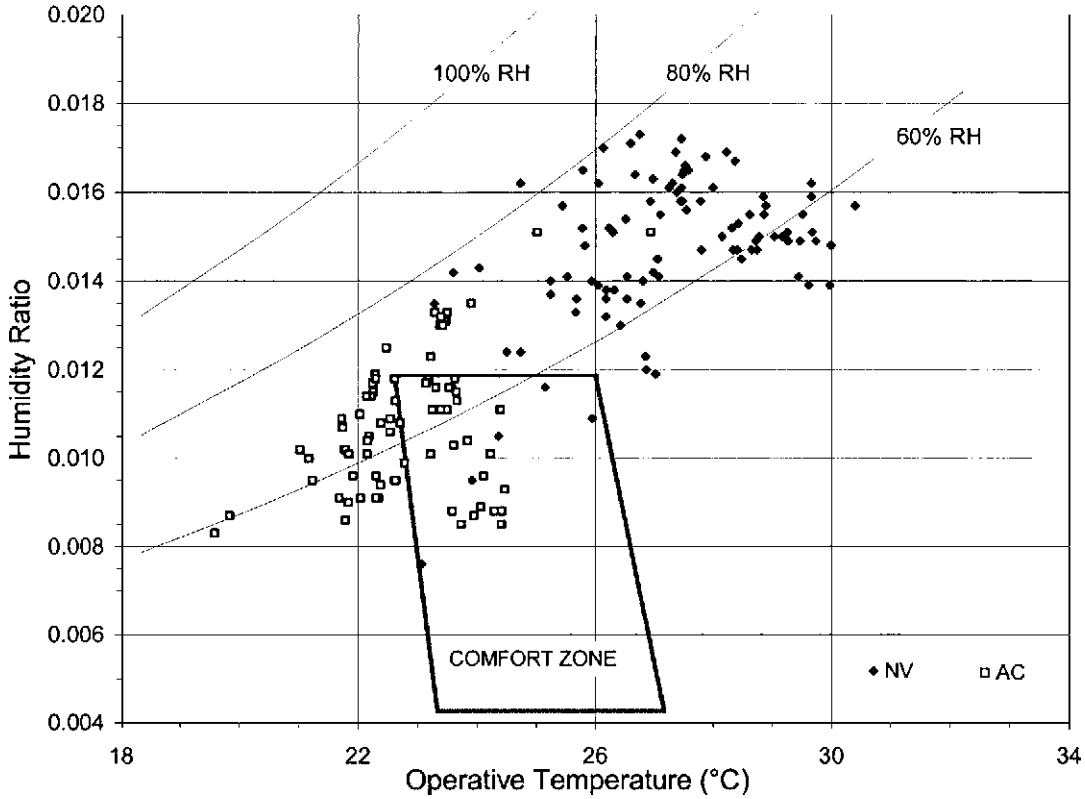


Fig. 4.7 *Natural ventilation and comfort. Measured conditions compared to the ASHRAE summer comfort zone for naturally ventilated (NV) and air-conditioned (AC) classrooms in Hawaii. The majority of the occupants voted these conditions acceptable. A higher temperature and humidity comfort zone for naturally ventilated buildings is supported by studies such as this (Kwok, 1998). (Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from* ASHRAE Transactions, *1998, Vol. 104, Number 1. Note that the comfort zone shown herein has been modified to conform to ASHRAE Standard 55-2004.)*

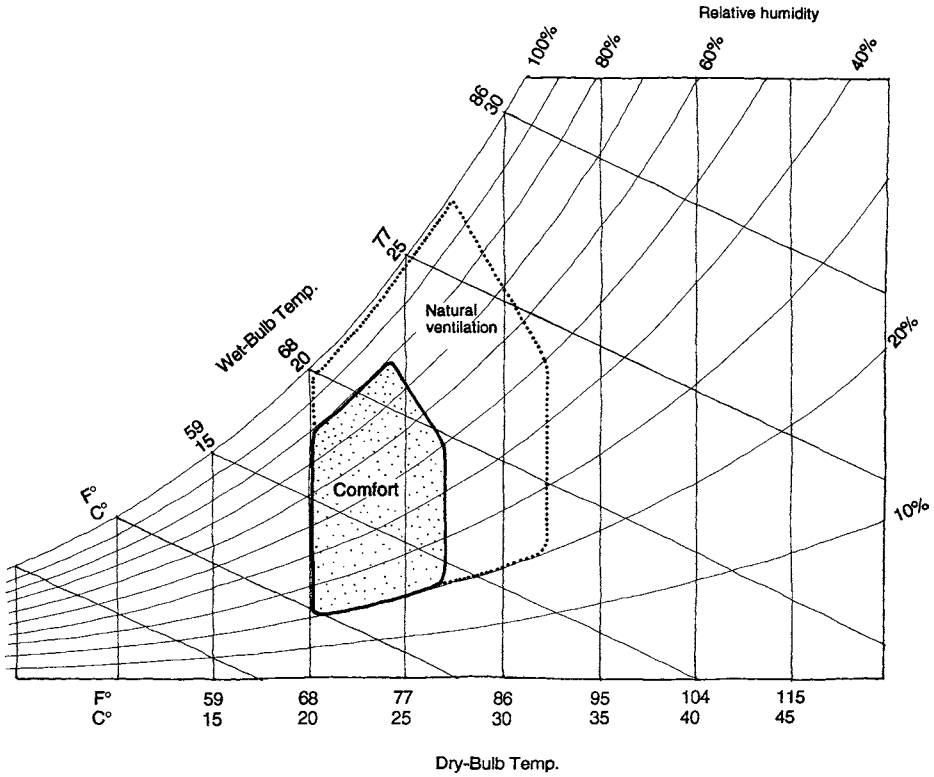


Fig. 4.8 *Suggested boundaries of outdoor air temperature and humidity within which indoor comfort can be provided by natural ventilation. Assumed air speed is 2 m/s (4.5 mph). The higher limits for "hot-developing countries" assume acclimatization by those cultures. (Based upon Givoni, 1998.)*

Arizona's, average July–August temperature of 32.3°C (90.2°F) (to approximate T_{rmo}, an exponentially weighted running average):

$$T_n = 0.534\ (32.3) + 12.9 = 17.25 + 12.9$$

$$= 30.1°C\ (86.2°F)$$

Figure 4.5 specifies comfort zone boundaries for environments that meet specific operative temperature criteria, where the air speeds are not greater than 40 fpm (0.20 m/s), based upon specified clothing insulation values. Air speeds greater than 40 fpm (0.20 m/s) may be used to increase the upper operative temperature limit of the comfort zone in certain circumstances. For example, the borders of the summer comfort zone may be raised 1°F for each 30 fpm (1°C for each 0.275 m/s) increase in air motion up to a limit of 82.45°F at 160 fpm (28°C at 0.8 m/s). At this air speed, loose paper, hair, and other objects might start to be blown about (however, see Table 4.4). Note: Optimum summer operative temperature is 76°F (24.4°C). For each 0.1 CLO decrease in clothing, an increase of 1°F (0.6°C) is allowed in the borders of the summer comfort zone.

The upper and lower borders for relative humidity are based upon less precise data, but in general, the lower limit seeks to avoid problems such as coughs, nosebleeds, static electricity, and dust mites from excessively dry air; the upper limit tries to keep skin wettedness within acceptable levels, as well as discourage the growth of mold and mildew.

(b) Passive Building Comfort Standards

A somewhat different approach to comfort standards has been proposed for buildings that take a passive approach to heating and cooling in areas where acceptable humidity can be maintained. In these buildings, direct sun might add significantly to body warming in winter; strong air currents might be expected as a part of summer body cooling. These tend to be the kind of free-running buildings mentioned earlier as candidates for the adaptive model of comfort prediction.

TABLE 4.3 Adaptive Behavior for Thermal Comfort

Response Category	Actions in Response to Cold	Actions in Response to Heat
Regulating the rate of internal heat generation	Increasing muscle tension and shivering	Reducing one's level of activity Drinking cold liquids (induces sweating) Drinking hot liquids (induces sweating) Eating less Adopting the siesta routine (matching activity to the thermal environment)
Regulating the rate of body heat loss	Vasoconstriction (reduces blood flow to the surface tissues) Curling or cuddling up (reduces exposed surface area) Adding some clothing	Vasodilation (increases blood flow to the surface tissues) Adopting an open posture (increases exposed surface area) Taking off some clothing
Regulating the thermal environment	Turning up the thermostat Lighting a fire Complaining to management (so that someone else will raise the temperature) Insulating a loft or wall cavities Improving windows or doors, weather-stripping	Turning on the air conditioner Switching on a fan Opening a window Shading a window from the sun
Selecting a different thermal environment	Finding a warmer spot (such as going to bed) Visiting a friend (with a warmer place) Visiting a heated public building Building a new home Emigrating: a long-term solution	Finding a cooler spot Visiting a friend (with a cooler place) Visiting a cooled public building (or going swimming) Building a new home Emigrating: a long-term solution
Modifying the body's physiological comfort conditions	Acclimatizing, letting the body and mind become more resistant to cold stress	Acclimatizing, letting the body and mind adjust so that heat is less stressful

Source: Based on Humphreys and Nicol (1998).

Arens et al. (1980) demonstrated a wider range of comfort conditions and considerably more tolerance for summer air motion than ASHRAE (1995). A summary of these results is shown graphically in Fig. 4.9. Such graphs are called *bioclimatic* charts because of their interrelation of climate and human comfort factors. Where the users of buildings are expected to adjust to the wider temperature swings associated with passive buildings, these guidelines may be used. Some differences in the basic assumptions of Arens et al. from those of ASHRAE (1995) should be noted:

TABLE 4.4 Indoor Air Velocity and Comfort

Air Velocity	Possible Lower-Temperature Comfort Sensation (Between 80°F and 90°F; Larger Numbers Correspond to High-Humidity Areas)	Probable Impact
Up to 50 fpm (0.25 m/s)	No change in comfort sensation	Unnoticed
50–100 fpm (0.25–0.51 m/s)	2–3F° lower (1.1–1.7C°)	Pleasant
100–200 fpm (0.51–1.02 m/s)	4–5F° lower (2.2–2.8C°)	Generally pleasant but causing a constant awareness of air movement
200–300 fpm (1.02–1.52 m/s)	5–7F° lower (2.8–3.9C°)	From slightly to annoyingly drafty
Above 300 fpm (1.52 m/s)	More than 5–7F° lower (2.8–3.9C°)	Requires corrective measures if work is to be efficient and health secured

Source: Adapted from Victor Olgyay, *Design with Climate: Bioclimatic Approach to Architectural Regionalism*, Copyright © 1963, Princeton University Press. Reprinted by permission.

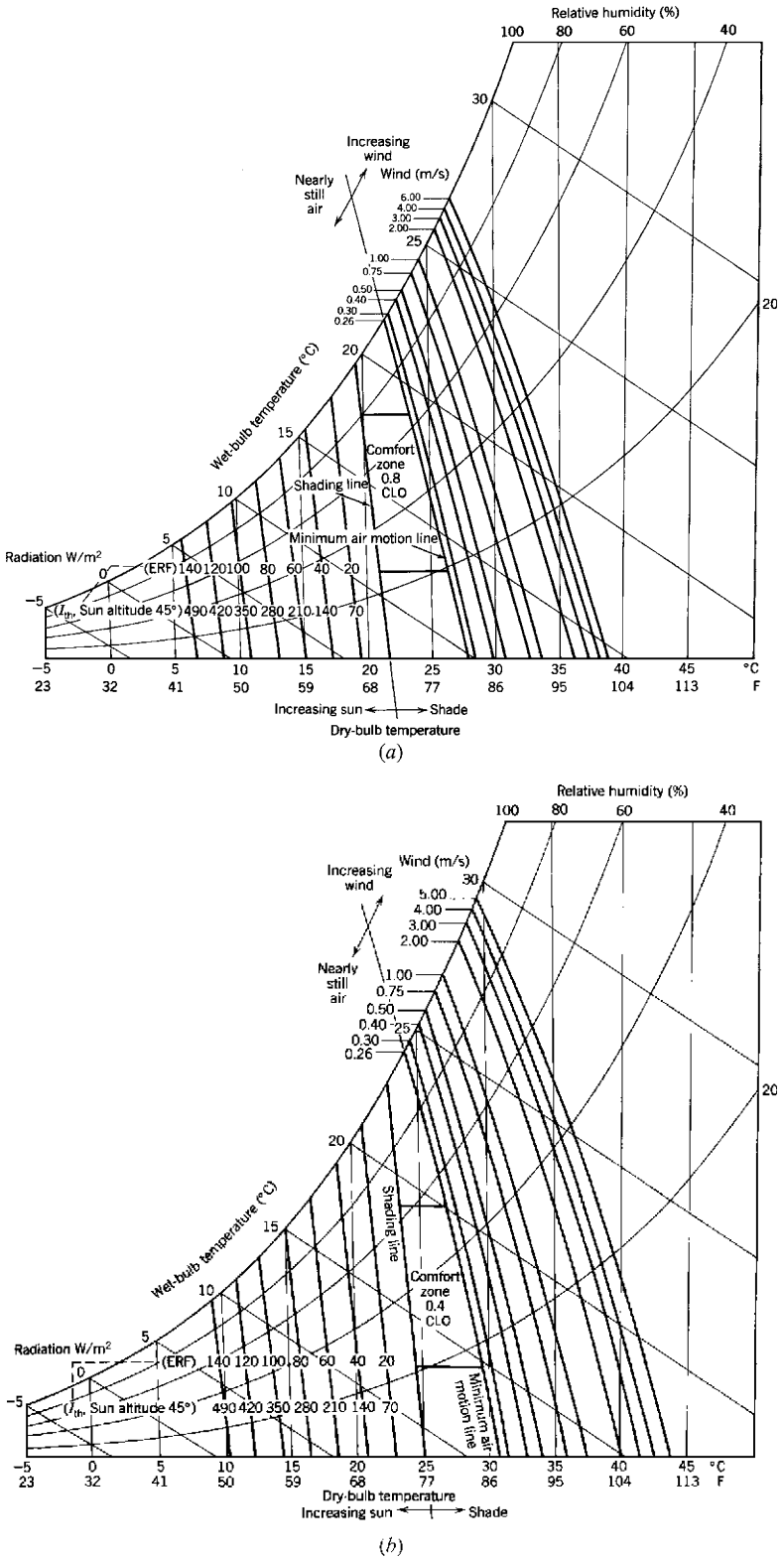


Fig. 4.9 *Comfort zones that encourage passively heated and cooled buildings. The "winter" (0.8 CLO) comfort zone (a) and the "summer" (0.4 CLO) comfort zone (b) are combined for the year-round zone shown in (c). (Based upon Arens et al., 1980.)*

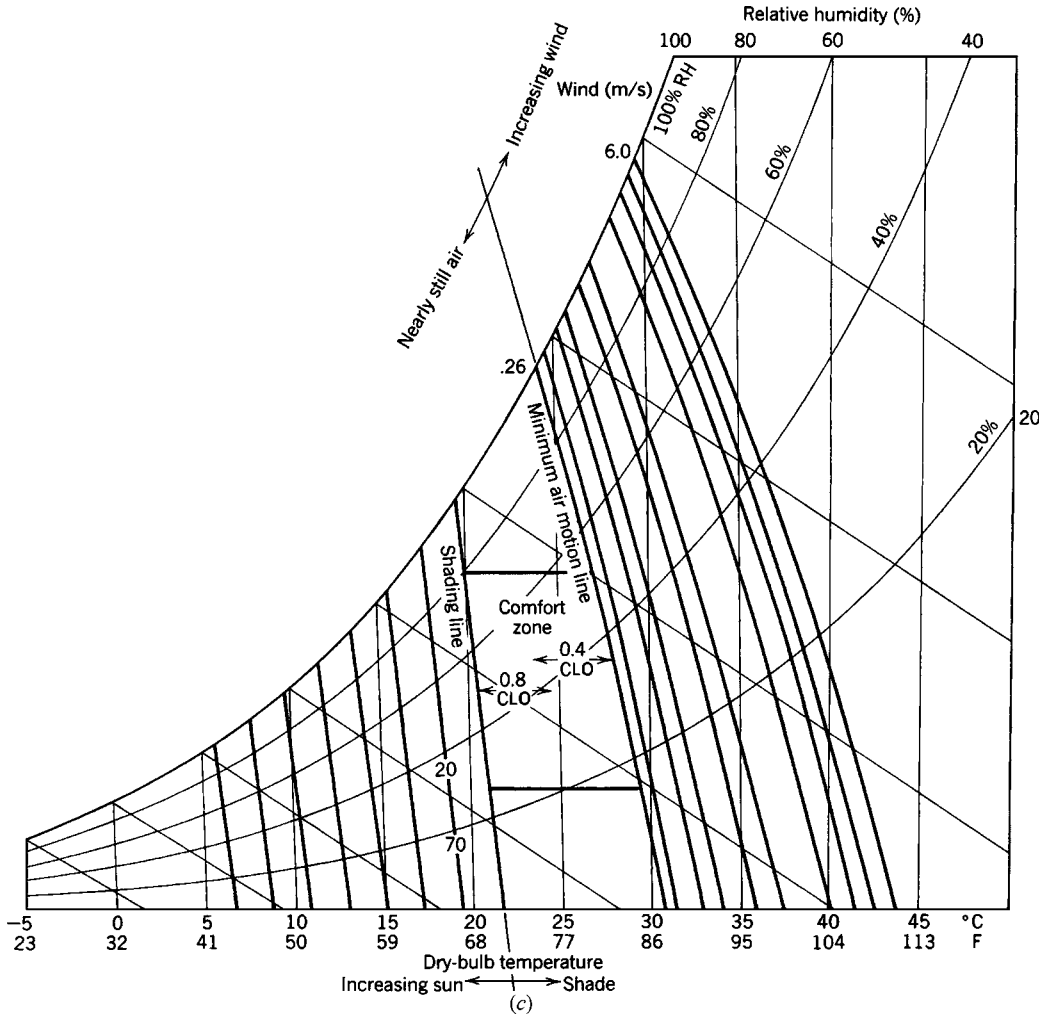


Fig. 4.9 *(Continued)*

Activity: 1.3 MET (ASHRAE, 1.2 MET)
Winter: 0.8 CLO (ASHRAE, 1.0 CLO)
Summer: 0.4 CLO (ASHRAE, 0.5 CLO)

Note particularly that rather than operative temperature, ordinary air temperature (DB temperature) is used in Fig. 4.9. Added radiant heat for conditions below the shading line can be utilized to extend the comfort zone to lower temperatures; added air motion above the nearly still air line can extend the comfort zone to higher temperatures. *Radiant heat* to be added to a lower-extended comfort zone is shown in Fig. 4.9 using two quantities: The effective radiant field (ERF) is a measure of the net radiant heat flux to the body from all surfaces at temperatures other than air temperature. A more convenient quantity for designers may be the total solar radiation (or *insolation*) on a horizontal surface, termed $I_{\text{th.}}$ Insolation values are more readily available, and the added-radiation lines of Fig. 4.9 represent I_{th} converted to its approximate radiant impact on a human body's surface area when the sun is at an altitude of 45°. Arens et al. (1980) give further details on the effects of solar radiation on comfort at other sun altitudes, activity levels, and clothing combinations.

Added air motion is shown in Fig. 4.9 for quite a wide range of velocities. Table 4.4 indicates that people easily tolerate air motion outdoors up to about 600 fpm (3 m/s), but indoor studies have

indicated that about 400 fpm (2 m/s) is the maximum tolerable air speed from overhead fans.

Caution is still advised when relative humidity is above 70% or below 20% for reasons cited earlier.

(c) Localized Comfort

How can comfort be ensured at each workstation in an office or wherever people spend a lot of time? The location of heating, cooling, and ventilating components is an important detail. The human body is most affected by the thermal environment in its thermally sensitive places. Although we sweat and are sensitive to heat or cold over nearly all of our skin surface, we are most thermally sensitive in these places:

Heat receptors: fingertips, nose, elbows
Cold receptors: upper lip, nose, chin, chest, fingers

So, on a hot, humid day, cool air moving across the face is a particularly strong promise of comfort, whereas on a cold day, a burst of heat (such as radiant heat from a window, a heater, or a cup of coffee) to the face and fingers is quickly effective.

Regarding our sense of touch: our fingertips are most sensitive to the *rate at which heat is being conducted* to colder objects or from hotter objects. The temperature of our skin at the fingertips under ordinary conditions is in the high 80s°F (high 20s°C), so our sense of touch works against many passively heated surfaces in winter, which feel cool even though they are warmer than room air temperature. These surfaces are made of materials that conduct heat rapidly so that they can soak up solar radiation without overheating the room. This high *conductivity* makes them eager to accept human warmth as well, and persuades us as we touch them that they are cooler than, in fact, they are. Anyone who has walked barefoot from a rug to an unheated tile floor will sense that the tile is colder, even when both have exactly the same surface temperature. This same characteristic works for passively cooled surfaces in summer.

Excessive air motion is called a *draft* and results in an undesirable local cooling of the body. It is a particularly serious threat in winter, yet summer drafts from very cool conditioned air are also bothersome. Figure 4.10 shows the percentage of people dissatisfied due to a perceptible draft on their head, neck, shoulders, and back. Again, this applies to sedentary people wearing normal indoor clothing. Note the influence of air temperature: the lower the temperature, the higher the dissatisfaction. Many air-conditioning systems deliver summer supply air at temperatures as low as 55°F (13°C), well below the lowest temperature shown here. The standard summer 50 fpm (0.25 m/s) air speed at such supply air temperatures seems to threaten more than 40% dissatisfaction from drafts. However, ceiling fans with the same air speed, for comfort at higher temperatures such as 80°F (27°C), should cause less than 15% dissatisfaction.

Another comfort factor is *radiant asymmetry*, the difference between the temperatures of two opposite surfaces as experienced by a body seated between

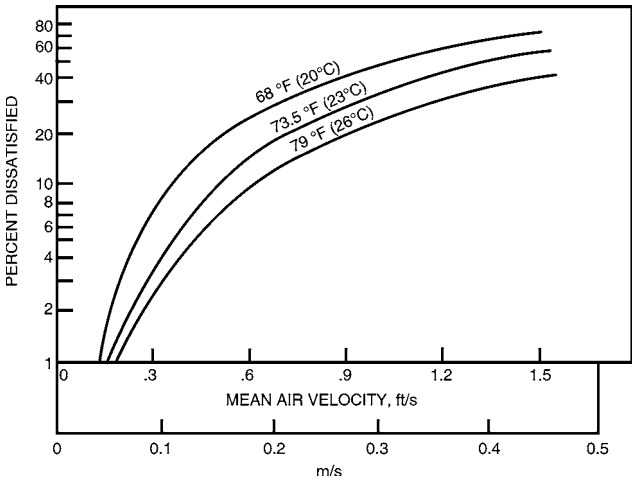


Fig. 4.10 *Percentage of people dissatisfied as a function of mean air velocity. The warmer the air, the greater the tolerance. (Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from the 1997* ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals.*)*

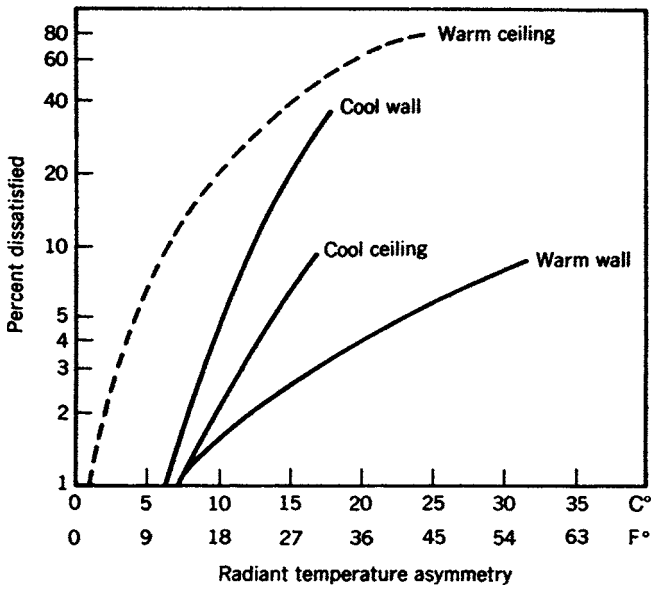


Fig. 4.11 *Percentage of people expressing discomfort due to asymmetric radiation. A warmer ceiling produces the highest discomfort; a warmer wall, the least discomfort. (Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from the 1997* ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.)*

them when one of these surfaces is markedly different in temperature from all other surfaces within a space. Figure 4.11 shows that the greatest dissatisfaction arises from "warm ceilings" (typical of radiantly heated ceilings in winter)—almost half of the experimental subjects experienced discomfort with ceilings 27°F (15°C) warmer than a space's average temperature. Less serious were "cool walls" (typical of a cold window in winter). Less than 10% dissatisfaction resulted from "cool ceilings" (such as radiant cooling panels in summer) and even less from "warm walls" (typical of a sunny window in summer or a passively heated mass wall in winter).

Because warm air is less dense than cold air, it rises; therefore, in most building spaces, air temperature is somewhat higher at the ceiling than at the floor, regardless of the season. Figure 4.12 shows experimental results of dissatisfaction with a vertical air temperature difference between the head at 43 in. (1.1 m) and the feet at 4 in. (0.1 m). (When the head level was cooler than the floor, much greater temperature differences were tolerated.)

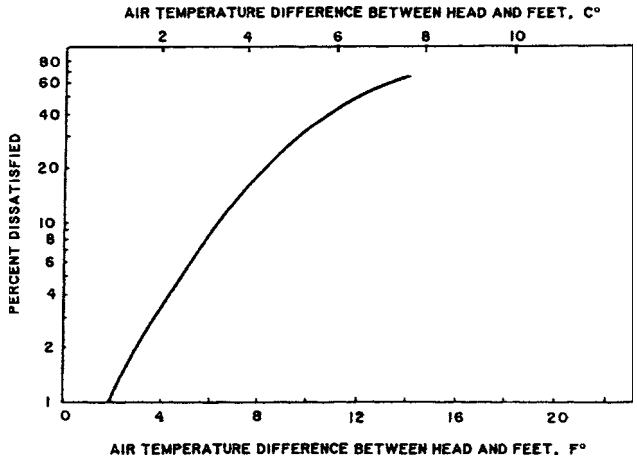


Fig. 4.12 *Percentage of people dissatisfied as a function of the vertical air temperature difference between the head (higher temperature) and ankles (lower temperature). A cold floor proved uncomfortable. (Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from the 1997* ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.)*

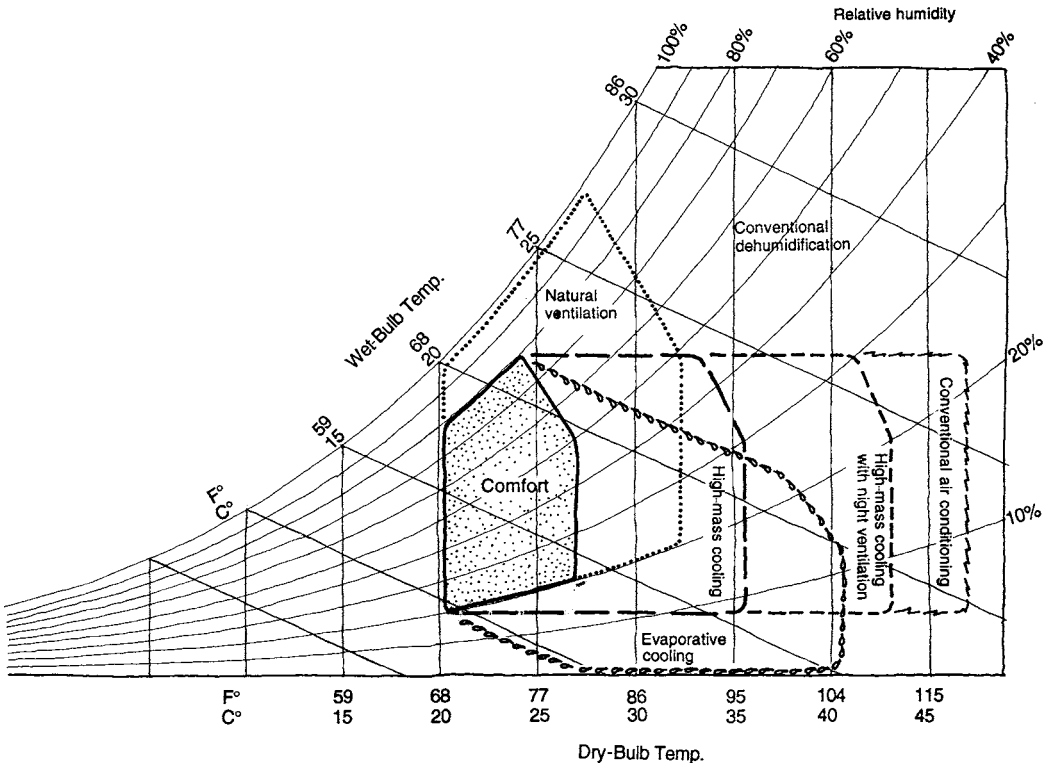


Fig. 4.13 *Passive cooling design strategies by climate. After plotting the outdoor climate data on this chart, consider how that information would affect a design strategy. (Based upon Milne and Givoni, 1979.)*

4.3 DESIGN STRATEGIES FOR COOLING

The chart in Fig. 4.13 is a guide to various approaches to passive cooling in temperate climates. It is based on the *building bioclimatic chart* developed by Milne and Givoni (1979). It helps to assess the suitability of four approaches to passive cooling under summer conditions. Average monthly climate data (as in Table 4.5) are now available from software and various websites (see Appendix M). Such climate data can be plotted on this chart. If they do not exceed the "boundaries" of a strategy zone, then a match is indicated between the climate and that strategy. Although

TABLE 4.5 Normal Data from Annual Summary of Local Climatological Data for Dodge City, Kansas[a]

	Daily Temperatures °F (°C)				*Relative Humidity (%) at Hour*				*Wind*	
	Normal		*Extreme[b]*							
Month	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**00**	**06**	**12**	**18**	**Mean Speed mph (km/h)**	**Prevailing Direction**
June	86.0 (30.0)	61.4 (16.3)	108 (42.2)	41 (5.0)	63	75	44	38	14.4 (23.2)	South
July	91.4 (33.0)	66.9 (19.4)	109 (42.8)	47 (8.3)	66	78	46	42	12.9 (20.8)	South
August	90.4 (32.4)	65.7 (18.7)	107 (41.7)	47 (8.3)	71	80	50	46	12.7 (20.5)	South

[a]Records as of 1979.

[b]Extremes do not occur on the same day or series of days.

the edges of each strategy zone are drawn as lines, these boundaries are more broad and vague than the lines suggest. When a climate surpasses the boundaries of all four strategy zones, conventional air conditioning is almost certainly desirable. The similarity between Figs. 4.9 and 4.13 is evident: the *comfort zones* include somewhat warmer conditions for naturally ventilated buildings.

To plot average monthly conditions for a climate on this strategy chart, assemble information such as that shown in Table 4.5. This is available for every climatological station maintained by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the U.S. Department of Commerce. These climate summaries, often called LCDs (Local Climate Data), are available from the National Climatic Data Center (Federal Building, Asheville, NC 28801). Many libraries also carry such summaries in publications such as *Climates of the States.*

In addition to a typical hot summer day, it is useful to check for the *design condition*, that statistically relevant condition for which engineers would design a building's mechanical cooling equipment. The design condition shows the climate near its worst, while avoiding the freakish conditions of extreme temperatures listed in the NOAA data. Summer (and winter) design data are available in Appendix B (along with discussion of the nature of the data).

EXAMPLE 4.1 Plot the typical day of the hottest month for Dodge City, Kansas.

SOLUTION

By inspection of Table 4.5, the hottest month is July, but August is close and sun angles are lower (more gain through windows). To chart the typical August day, find the approximate RH for the coldest and hottest hours. Because RH is listed only at four times, first select the highest RH, occurring here at 6:00 A.M.: this will coincide approximately with the coldest hour. Thus, one end of the linear climate plot for August in Dodge City will be at the combination of 80% RH and 65.7°F (18.7°C). The other end of the plot will be at the lowest RH and the hottest hour, in this case at 6:00 P.M., a combination of 46% RH and 90.4°F (32.4°C). The line between these points is shown in Fig. 4.14.

From Fig. 4.14 one passive cooling strategy—high mass with night ventilation—appears clearly adequate to meet the needs of the typical August day in Dodge City. (Using this strategy, the low-temperature end of the line is also important and should be below the comfort zone for best results.) Another strategy, high mass, appears just barely adequate. Two other strategies, natural ventilation and evaporative cooling, appear inadequate because the highest temperature/lowest RH combination falls outside their boundaries—slightly so for natural ventilation, but greatly so for evaporation.

Using design climate data corresponding to the values in Table 4.5, the summer DB and mean coincident WB temperature is 97/69°F (36.1°C/20.6°C); this combination is shown as a circle around the point in Fig. 4.14. The 97°F (36.1°C) DB temperature is plotted on the corresponding vertical line; the 69°F (20.6°C) WB temperature is found by first locating the 69°F (20.6°C) DB vertical line and following that line up to 100% RH, where 69°F (20.6°C) DB and WB are coincident. Then follow downward to the right along the constant WB line to its intersection with 97°F (36.1°C) DB.

The design condition point falls just outside the zone of high-mass cooling and just within the zone of evaporative cooling. Because the design condition falls well within the zone of high mass with night ventilation, this strategy is thus confirmed as clearly the best of the passive cooling strategies for Dodge City. ■

(a) Natural Ventilation Cooling

This is the most obvious strategy suggested by the comfort charts presented earlier, in which higher air temperatures were offset by increased air motion. It may be the only passive strategy available in humid, hot climates in which temperatures are only slightly lower by night than by day. Buildings should be very open to breezes while simultaneously closed to direct sun. They may be thermally lightweight as well, because night air is not cool enough to remove much stored daytime heat. Very high humidity may be avoided only by sealing and air-conditioning buildings.

Natural ventilation has two variations: cross-ventilation and stack ventilation. *Cross-ventilation* is driven by wind and is accomplished with windows. It relies upon rather narrow plans with large ventilation openings on either side. Thus, it is naturally compatible with daylighting. *Stack ventilation* depends upon very low openings to admit outside

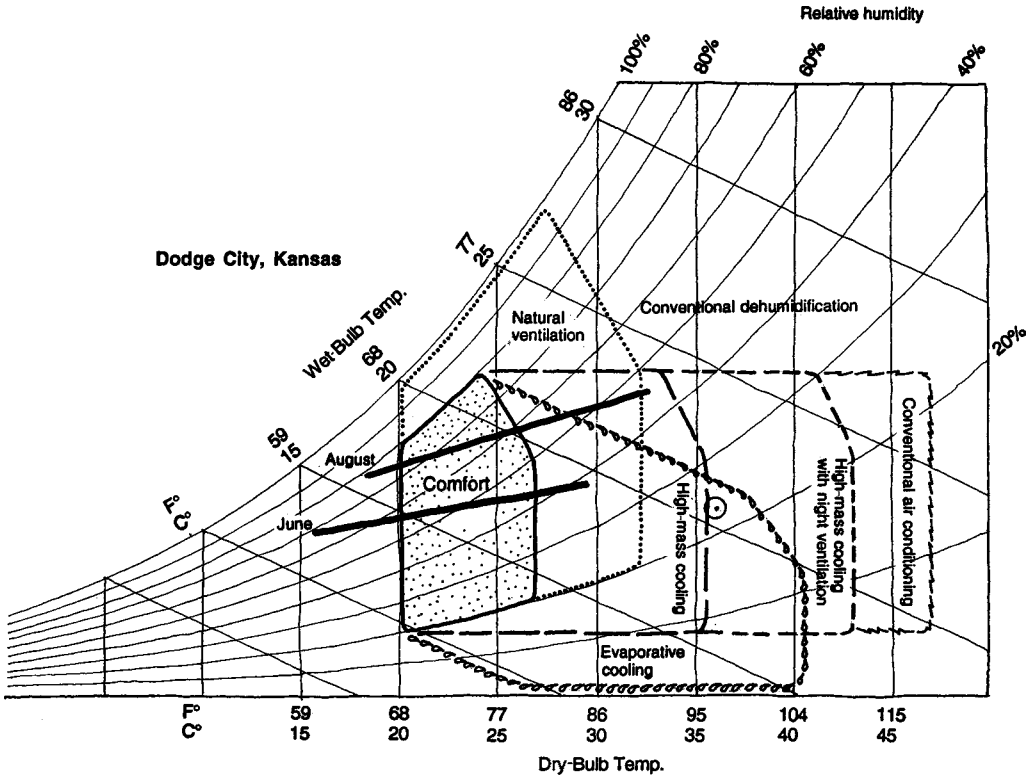


Fig. 4.14 *Hot-month daily ranges and the summer design condition for Dodge City, Kansas, superimposed on the design strategy chart of Fig. 4.13.*

air and very high openings to exhaust air; it is driven by the principle that hot air rises. Stack ventilation is generally weaker than cross-ventilation—except when there is no wind at all. Design guidelines for sizing apertures for ventilation are found in Chapter 8.

(b) High-Mass Cooling

This strategy is for warm, dry summers, when the extremes of hot days are tempered by the still-cool thermal mass of a building. Cool nights then slowly drain away the heat that such mass accumulates during the day. The thermal mass can be in floors, walls, or roofs but will need a *sink* to which it can reject its heat by night. The roof has the advantage of radiating to the cold night sky, but it should be protected from exposure to sun by day. The masonry courtyard-type buildings of the Mediterranean are indigenous examples of this passive cooling strategy; their courtyard floors and roofs can be protected with movable shading devices (*toldos*) by day, then opened to night-sky radiation.

Roof ponds are a form of high-mass cooling for one- and two-story buildings. Because they require only the roof to be massive, they allow for considerable design freedom in walls and fenestration. Where cooling is the only objective, this approach uses water that is stored between the metal ceiling and the roof insulation; by night, the water is pumped (and/or sprayed) over the exposed roof surface and allowed to trickle back through the insulation to the storage pond. At lower latitudes (with high winter sun altitudes), roof ponds can be used for passive solar heating as well. This strategy uses sliding panels of insulation over bags of water; the panels slide open on winter days to collect sun, and open on summer nights to radiate heat to the sky. A design guideline sizing procedure is found in Chapter 8.

Another variation on high-mass cooling depends upon earth contact. The earth acts as a heat sink, keeping walls and floors (even roofs when earth-covered) cool. However, if the earth is allowed to continue to act as a heat sink in winter, heating needs could be greatly increased. Thus, a

strategy for summer contact and winter isolation might be appropriate.

(c) High-Mass Cooling with Night Ventilation

This hot-dry summer design strategy must use outside air at subcomfortable nighttime temperatures to flush away heat stored during the daytime. The fewer the subcomfortable night hours, the greater the area of thermally massive surface that must be provided to store the day's heat. Also, because there are more hours of daylight and fewer of nighttime, the ventilation must occur quickly and thoroughly, probably using fans. (Nightly wind velocities are typically lower than daytime velocities, because summer wind is often driven by regional solar overheating of the ground.) The building switches from a thermally closed condition by day (to exclude sun and hot outdoor air) to an open condition at night (to allow ventilation to cool the mass). Note: Nighttime temperatures must be cooler than the comfort zone temperature if this strategy is to be effective. Figure 4.15 shows the need to inspect both ends of the typical day's plot for this strategy.

This cooling strategy is highly compatible with passive solar heating strategies that rely on large areas of thermal mass, such as *direct gain* (Section 4.4a). It is suitable for large, high buildings, particularly those that have concrete (thermally massive) structural systems. A design guideline sizing procedure is found in Chapter 8.

(d) Evaporative Cooling

This design strategy relies on the principle that when moisture is added to air, relative humidity increases while dry-bulb temperature decreases. (On the bioclimatic chart, this pattern exactly follows the constant wet-bulb line, upward and to the left.) In conditions that are more uncomfortably dry than uncomfortably hot, higher humidity is gladly exchanged for lower air temperature. However, large quantities of both water and outdoor air are

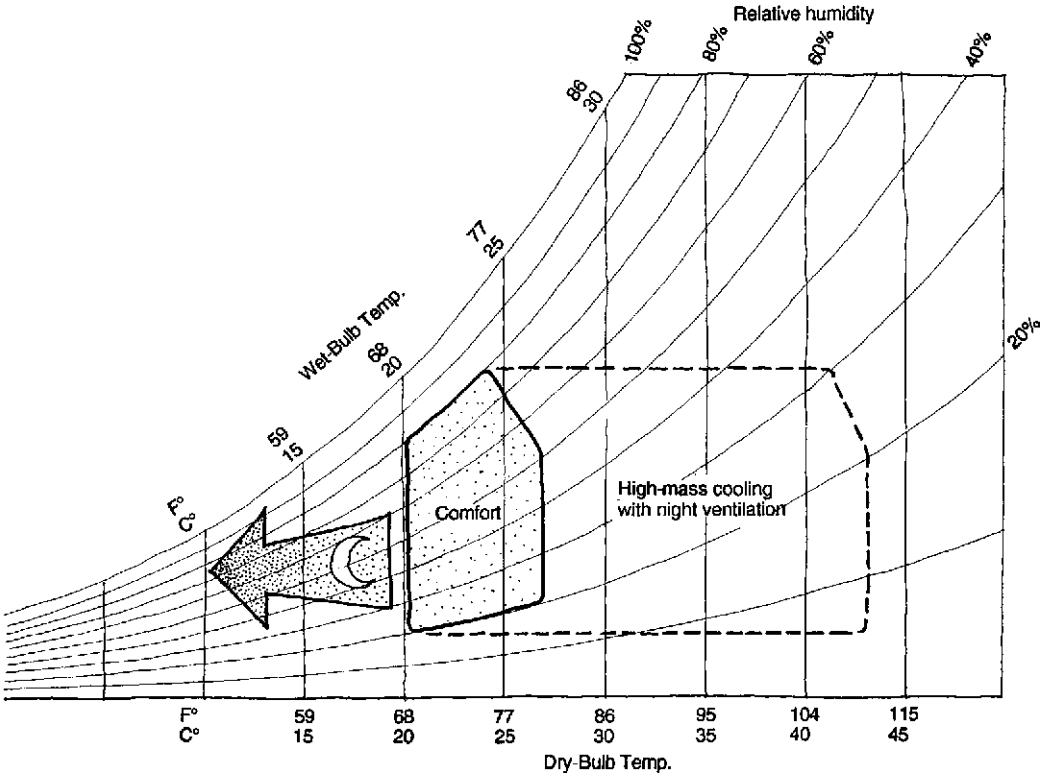


Fig. 4.15 *Strategy chart segment for night ventilation of thermal mass. This strategy is most successful when cool nighttime temperatures are available, preferably below comfort zone temperatures for several hours.*

needed; fan-driven evaporative coolers are the most common way to provide this kind of cooling.

Evaporative cooling imposes few constraints on designers because the equipment resembles conventional HVAC systems. Rather high indoor air velocities and their associated sounds are typical of these systems, and the aroma of the wetted material of the cooler is often noticeable. The coolest air will be in the vicinity of the air inlet to the space, the warmest air at the outlet from the space. Design guideline sizing procedures are found in Chapter 8 for fan-driven coolers and for passive *cooltowers.* Indirect evaporative cooling, involving mechanical equipment, is first discussed in Chapter 5.

4.4 DESIGN STRATEGIES FOR HEATING

Figure 4.16 indicates how greatly solar space heating may contribute to a building in the winter months. To use these charts, refer to Table C.15. For your location, find the average January ambient (DB) air temperature, called *TA*, and the average January daily solar radiation on a vertical south-facing surface, called *VS*. On each chart, find these two data points to determine the approximate percentage contribution that solar energy can make to your building's winter seasonal fuel needs. In Fig. 4.16*a,* these points of TA and VS are plotted for seven North American cities. Sunny and cold Denver, Colorado, contrasts sharply with cloudy and cool Portland, Oregon. Yet, the subsequent charts show that even in Portland, solar energy can contribute to space heating.

The remainder of Fig. 4.16 compares two building envelope types with three common solar heating strategies. The left column (Fig. 4.16*b, d, f*) assumes a building with insulation at code-required minimums and some south-facing glass (unshaded in winter). For this modestly solar building type, the seasonal fuel bill will be reduced, but rarely more than 40%, by using solar energy. The right column (Fig. 4.16*c, e, g*) assumes a building that exceeds minimum insulation requirements and is designed with much greater areas of south-facing glass unshaded in winter. For this seriously solar building type, the seasonal fuel bill will be reduced by about twice as much as its modest counterpart.

The three solar heating strategies are *direct gain* (let sunlight into the space, where it warms exposed thermally massive surfaces), *indirect gain* (sun strikes the thermal mass first and is then passed only as heat to the space behind), and *isolated gain* (a sunspace or greenhouse heated greatly by the sun that then passes some of its heat to the space behind). Direct-gain systems carry the symbol DG; indirect-gain systems, TW (for Trombe wall); and isolated-gain systems, SS (for sunspace). For more details, see Appendix H. All the systems in this figure assume double-glazed windows (and for the direct and indirect ones, low-ε, argon-filled windows), but none uses night insulation over windows. The direct gain is system type DGB2, the indirect gain is a vented TWD2, and the isolated gain is SSE1.

(a) Direct Gain

Almost any building with some south-facing glass could claim to be a direct-gain building. The sun is admitted to the space to be heated, striking furnishings and room surfaces. In a well-designed direct-gain space, there are ample thermally massive surfaces (such as concrete slab; concrete block; or brick, quarry, or ceramic tile) that directly receive much of this incoming sun. Such massive surfaces should have at least three times the area of south-facing glass in order to keep the space from overheating in sunny hours. The mass should be thick enough, typically at least 4 in. (100 mm), to absorb and later reradiate a winter day's dosage of direct sun. In Chapter 8 and Appendix H, variations on direct-gain approaches involve glazing types, relative mass areas and thickness, and whether night insulation is used over windows.

Direct gain is popular because of its simplicity and its ample daylight and view to the south. Relative to the other passive solar approaches, it has problems of glare, overheating on sunny days, large radiant heat losses to glass areas by night (and thus a large diurnal difference in interior temperature), and fading of furnishings in direct sunlight. This winter heating approach is well matched with the summer cooling strategy of night ventilation of mass; both systems depend on large areas of internal exposed thermal mass, so such an investment pays off in both winter and summer.

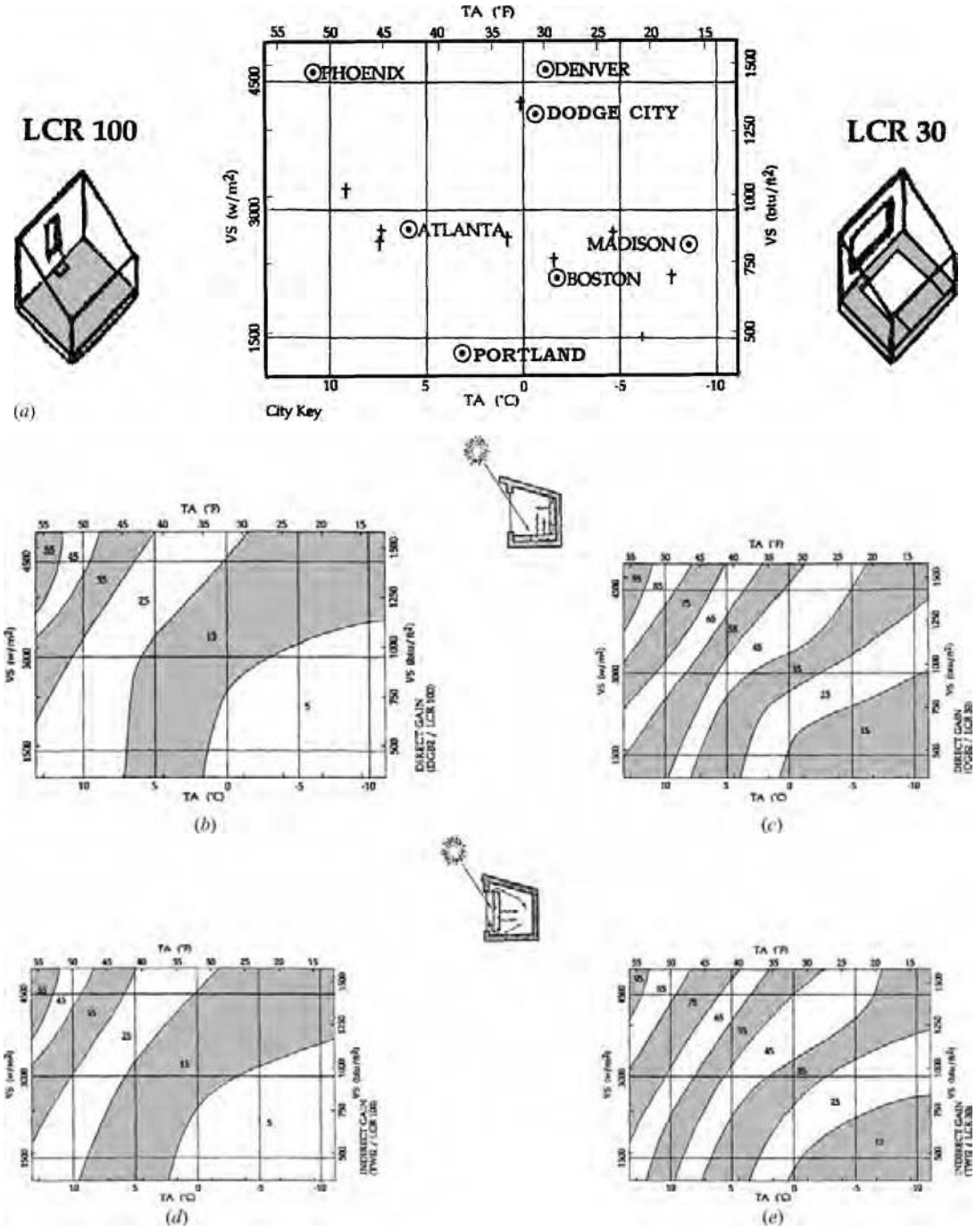


Fig. 4.16 *Early assessment of passive solar heating potential. (a) From Tables C.19 and C.20, the January TA (average air temperature) and January VS (daily solar radiation on a vertical surface) are plotted for Atlanta, Georgia; Boston, Massachusetts; Denver, Colorado; Dodge City, Kansas; Madison, Wisconsin; Phoenix, Arizona; and Portland, Oregon. The Solar Savings Fraction (SSF), the percentage reduction in heating fuel achieved by a passive solar design, is approximated for modestly solar "LCR 100" (smaller south windows, moderately well insulated) and seriously solar "LCR 30" (larger south windows, very well insulated) buildings. († Indicates where SSF is approximately 6% higher than that shown on the graph for these locations: in California: Fresno, Mt. Shasta, Sacramento, and San Francisco; in Idaho: Boise and Pocatello; in Montana: Helena and Missoula; and in Nevada: Reno.) (b) Direct-gain systems in modestly solar and (c) seriously solar buildings (LCR 30). (d) Indirect-gain systems in modestly solar and (e) seriously solar buildings. (f) Isolated-gain systems in modestly solar and (g) seriously solar buildings.*

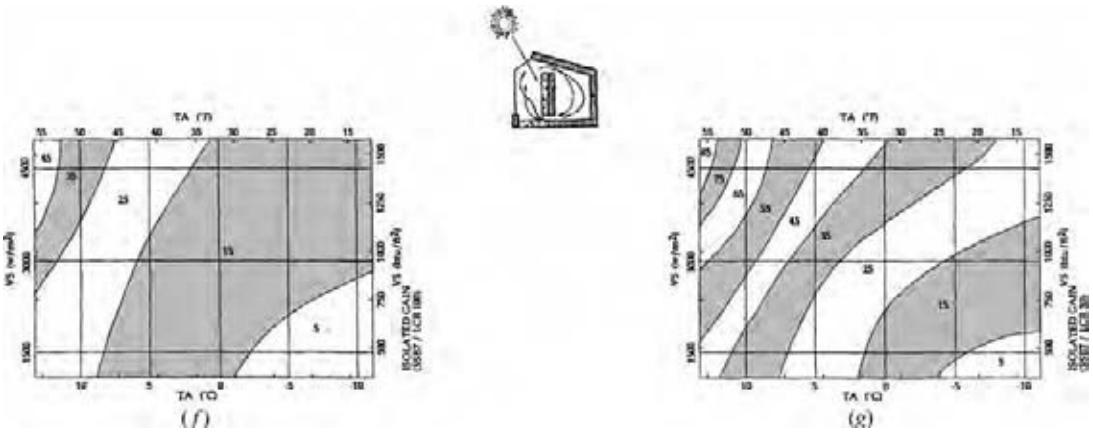


Fig. 4.16 *(Continued)*

(b) Indirect Gain

This is the passive solar approach encountered least often, perhaps because a sheet of glass covering an opaque wall seems such a denial of "window." The mass wall behind the glass is usually 8 to 12 in. (200 to 300 mm) thick, and should be of a dense and highly conductive material such as standard-weight concrete or dense brick. Water in containers is also an option. An air space between the glass and the mass allows for the option to "vent" the mass wall, where cool air from the heated space behind the wall enters at the bottom, rises with solar heating, and then exits into the space behind near the ceiling. Sometimes this air space is made wide enough to admit a person for cleaning the inside surface of the glass, but operable casement or awning-type glazings are other cleanable options. The back surface of the mass (facing the heated space) should be kept clear of hangings or large furniture, to facilitate radiant heat transfer to the space. In Chapter 8 and Appendix H, variations on indirect-gain approaches involve mass characteristics (water or masonry), thickness, and surface treatments; whether masonry walls are vented; glazing types; and whether night insulation is used behind the glazing.

Indirect gain is less popular than direct gain because it admits much less daylight and lacks a view to the south. Yet, relative to the other passive solar approaches, it has advantages of less glare, significantly less overheating on sunny days, and no fading of furnishings in direct sunlight. Another advantage is its large radiant heat contributions in the evening after sunny days. Many applications of indirect gain incorporate a smaller area of direct gain (window) within the larger indirect-gain wall surface.

(c) Isolated Gain

This is a popular passive solar approach because it provides a uniquely sunny habitable space, alternately called a *sunspace, greenhouse, sun room*, or *winter garden*. This space experiences great variations in temperature—hot in the afternoon, cold before dawn—in order that the space behind it can be kept reasonably comfortable with solar heating delivered as needed. The sunspace usually has both south-facing vertical glazing and inclined glazing, increasing insolation in both winter and summer. In Chapter 8 and Appendix H, variations on isolated-gain approaches involve configurations of the glazings; whether the sunspace is surrounded by the building or is added on; whether the common wall between sunspace and building is masonry or insulated frame; whether the sunspace's end walls (facing east and west) are glazed or insulated; glazing types; and whether night insulation is used behind the glazing.

Chapter 8 presents much more detail on building insulation standards, south-facing window areas, thermal mass, and options for movable window insulation. This introduction to passive solar heating design is intended to help the designer find combinations of daylighting, passive cooling, and passive solar heating design approaches that are feasible in a given climate.

4.5 COMBINING STRATEGIES

Renewable sources of on-site energy for lighting, heating, and cooling allow a building to function with less need for imported energy sources. As building designs are shaped by the use of on-site sources, they become more regional in appearance. This works against the one-design-fits-all approach common to chain retailing (such as video stores or fast-food outlets), but works for the subtle integration of a building into its regional climate and culture while reducing the economic and environmental costs of imported energy.

(a) Daylighting

This may be the most obvious and commonly used of all on-site energy sources. Two approaches are *sidelighting*, using windows in walls, and *toplighting*, using skylights in roofs. A hybrid approach is the clerestory window in very high walls; depending upon the clerestory window's relation to the floor plan, it could be considered either sidelighting or toplighting.

Sidelighting not only admits light but allows for a view of the exterior (and of the interior, especially at night). Sidelighting varies substantially by orientation and season, and direct sun can pour large quantities of heat through unshaded windows. With windows that face east and west, daylighting problems can occur due to the low sun altitudes in morning and evening that result in glare and unwanted summer heat gain.

Toplighting admits more light per unit area than does sidelighting, as skylights are directly exposed to the bright sky dome as well as direct sunlight. Toplighting less often results in glare problems because the light source is high in the space, unlike a sunny window that is in one's field of view. However, direct sun passing through a clear skylight may strike interior surfaces, with consequent glare and fading. Moreover, unshaded skylights (more than unshaded windows) are exposed to summer sun by day and to the cold winter sky. Although more efficient as admitters of light, they can represent a significant thermal penalty. Therefore, seasonal controls on skylights are even more important than on windows. Design guidelines for the sizing of windows and skylights are found in Chapter 14.

(b) Daylighting, Cooling, and Heating

Although the relationships among these three aspects of environmental control are quite complex, in general the decision to extensively daylight a building tends to decrease its need for electricity and cooling and increase its need for heating. This is due to the influence of the large glass areas associated with daylighting. In summer, properly shaded daylighting openings contribute less heat gain than the electric lights that the daylight is replacing. This reduces the need for both electricity and cooling. In winter, some solar gain through daylight openings assists with heating (especially with south-facing windows), but the daylight still replaces electric lights that would otherwise be additional sources of heat. Thus, compared to a conventional building of the same size and function, the daylit building is likely to use more heating energy (unless passive solar heating is emphasized), less electricity for lighting, and less cooling energy.

The matrix of design strategies in Fig. 4.17 illustrates some opportunities for a simple one-space building across a range of on-site energy sources. *Ventilative* cooling strategies depend upon the air as a heat sink; *evaporative/radiative* cooling strategies depend upon both sky and air as heat sinks; *earth coupling* cooling strategies depend upon the earth as a heat sink. For a more extensive treatment of combined strategies by region for daylighting, cooling, and heating, see Lechner (2008) for 17 U.S. climate zones with bioclimatic charts of monthly conditions, vernacular design approaches, and recommended climate design priorities.

4.6 VISUAL AND ACOUSTICAL COMFORT

The state of being comfortable includes several environmental qualities—thermal, visual, and acoustic conditions that contribute to our health and well-being. As discussed in this chapter, thermal comfort is represented by a fairly unified theory in which the interrelationships of environmental and personal variables are defined and quantified. Visual and acoustical comfort variables are not so well developed or researched. The visual and acoustical comfort pictures are complex: If one variable changes, the impact on other variables is unclear and there are no guarantees of comfort. For example, if

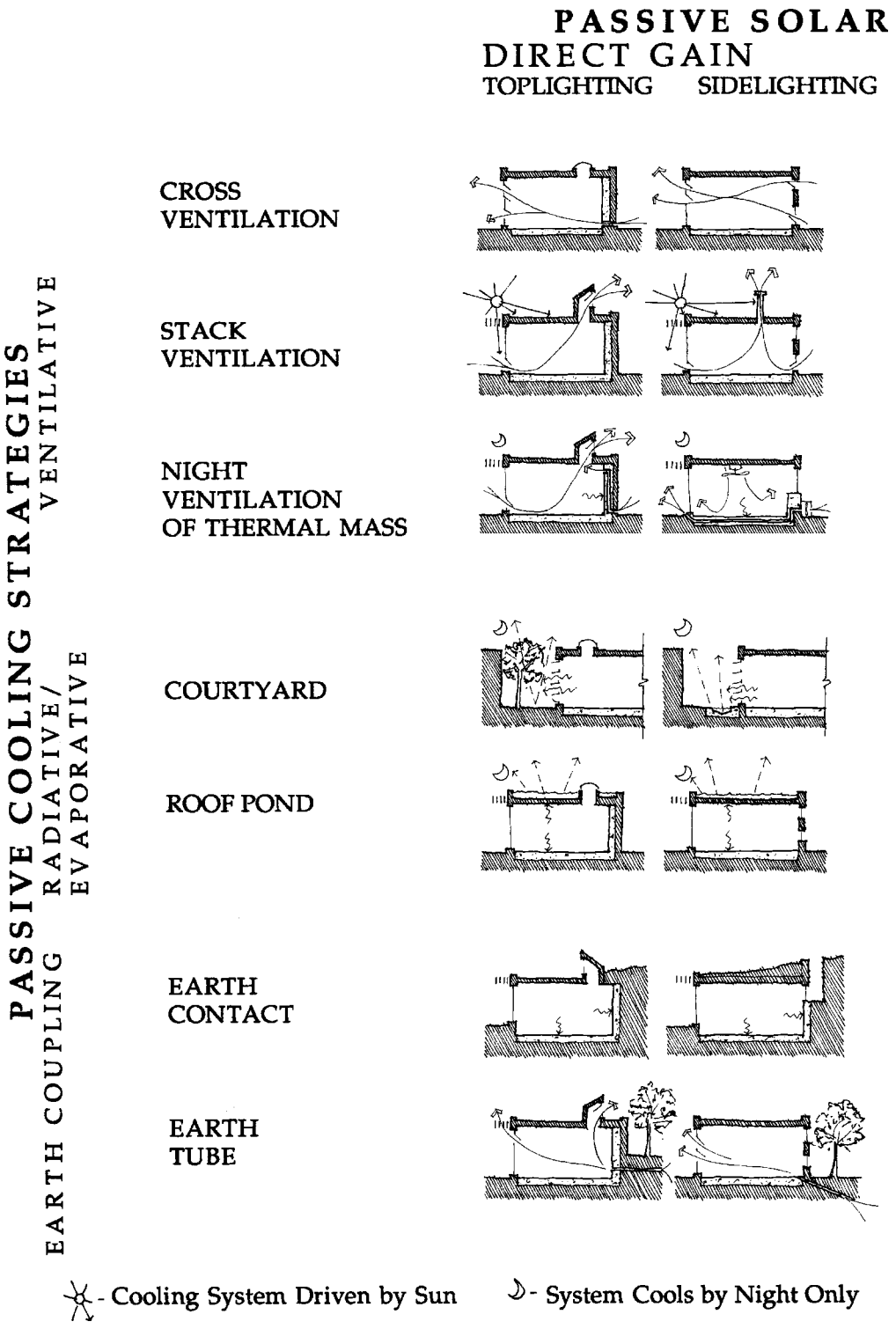


Fig. 4.17 *Combining daylight, passive cooling, and passive solar heating opportunities. These schematic sections of simple one-cell buildings remind designers of the potential for site-based, renewable resources and how they might interact. (Sharon Shoshani and Alan Rutherford, University of Oregon class project.)*

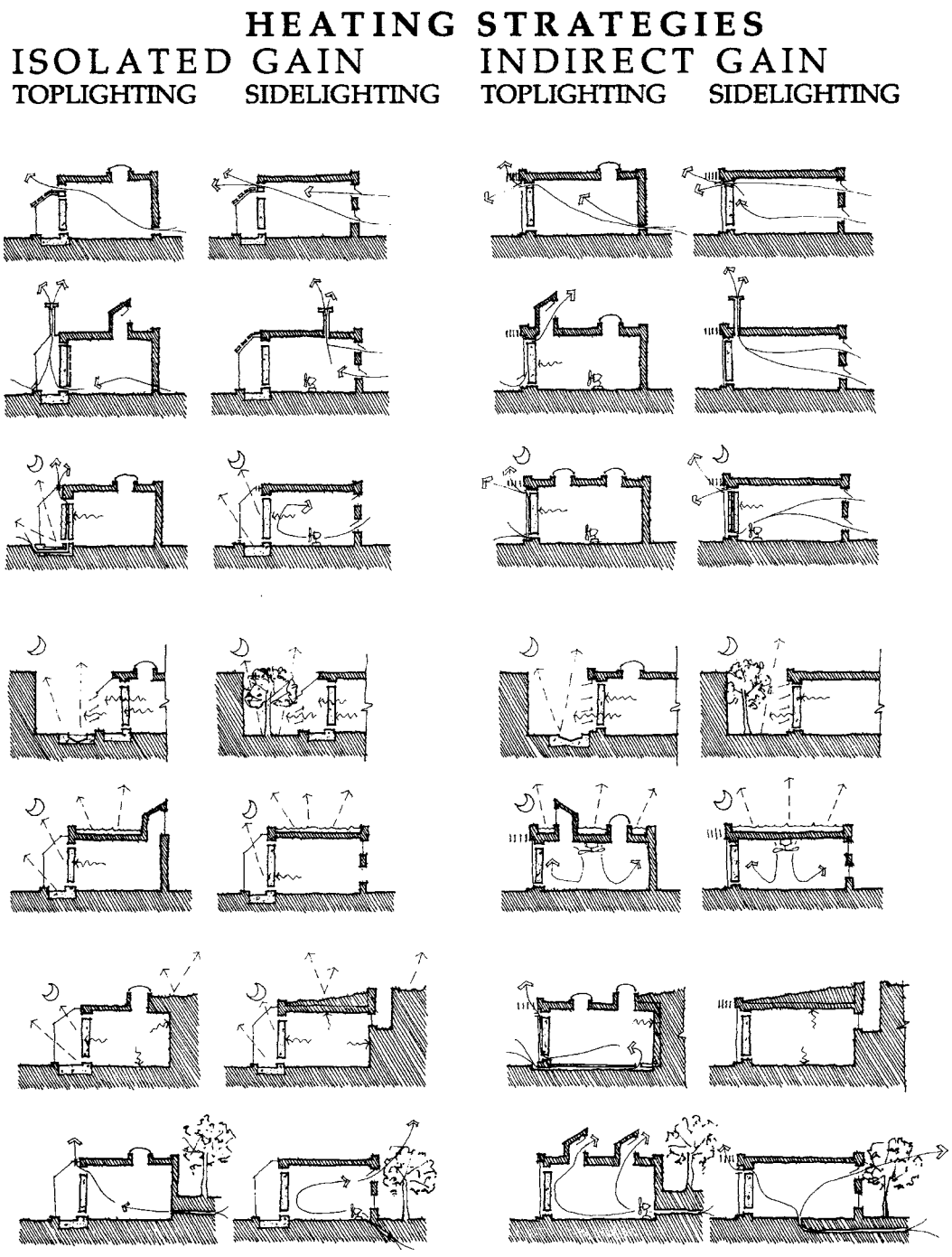


Fig. 4.17 *(Continued)*

daylight and electric light are integrated, is glare necessarily eliminated by adequate illuminance and color rendering? Visual comfort can also mean providing a connection to the outdoors and visual stimulation through the use of view windows. Acoustic comfort in a classroom may mean that teachers and students can hear one another, and external noises are prevented from reaching the classroom; or classrooms may simply have good reverberation time so that students can hear the teacher.

This chapter focused upon thermal comfort because of the highly developed state of thermal comfort information and standards. A focus on visual and acoustical comfort is no less important to building design, but the information available to the designer is not as well integrated or standardized. The designer can begin to understand the complexities of these issues by examining issues individually and then integrating concerns via the design process.

References and Resources

Arens, E., R. Gonzalez, L. Berglund, P. McNall, and L. Zeren. 1980. "A New Bioclimatic Chart for Passive Solar Design," in *Proceedings of the Fifth National Passive Solar Conference*, Vol. 5.2, pp. 1202–1206. American Section of the International Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

ASHRAE. 1995. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 55a-1995, addendum to ANSI/ASHRAE 55-1992, *Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 1997. *Handbook—Fundamentals.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2001. *Handbook—Fundamentals.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2004. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 55-2004, *Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers. Atlanta, GA.

Egan, M. D. 1975. *Concepts in Thermal Comfort.* Prentice-Hall. Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

Givoni, B. 1998. *Climate Considerations in Building and Urban Design.* Van Nostrand Reinhold. New York.

Heschong, L. 1979. *Thermal Delight in Architecture.* The MIT Press. Cambridge, MA.

Humphreys, M. and J. F. Nicol. 1998. "Understanding the Adaptive Approach to Thermal Comfort," in *ASHRAE Transactions*, Vol. 104, Number 1.

Kwok, A. 1998. "Thermal Comfort in Tropical Classrooms," in *ASHRAE Transactions*, Vol. 104, Number 1.

Lechner, N. 2008. *Heating, Cooling, Lighting: Design Methods for Architects* (2nd ed.). John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Milne, M. and B. Givoni, 1979. "Architectural Design Based on Climate," in *Energy Conservation Through Building Design*, D. Watson (ed.). McGraw-Hill, New York.

National Climatic Data Center, U.S. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration: http://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/

Olgyay, V. 1963. *Design with Climate: Bioclimatic Approach to Architectural Regionalism.* Princeton University Press. Princeton, NJ.

Thermal Comfort Index Calculator (Macquarie University): http://atmos.es.mq.edu.au/~rdedear/pmv/

World Climate: http://www.worldclimate.com/

CHAPTER 5

Indoor Air Quality

SINCE THE ADVENT OF MODERN HVAC systems, ventilation has generally been addressed via heating and cooling system design efforts. In centuries past, however, there were special systems to provide outside air to buildings, even at the residential scale. Banham (1969) describes both large and small buildings where outside air was deliberately introduced. In the home that Dr. John Hayward built for his family in 1867, the Octagon in Liverpool, England (Fig. 5.1), outdoor air was brought into the basement, slowed down to precipitate some particulates, then heated to help it rise throughout the four-story building. Ceiling vents just above gas lights drew "vitiated" air from each room, which was then vented to a "foul air chamber" in the attic. From there, a large shaft functioned using a combined siphon and stack effect. Powered at its low point by ever-present heat from the kitchen cooking range, it drew the foul air down, then up a very high chimney to discharge.

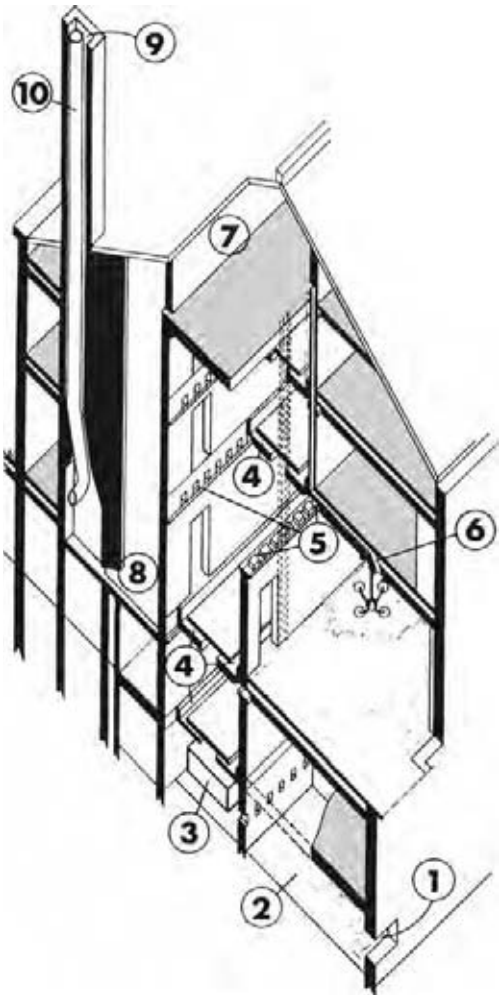


Fig. 5.1 *Fresh air intake, stale air exhaust at the Octagon, Grove Street, Liverpool, 1867. Dr. John Hayward built this exhaust system. Dirty air outside (coal-fired industries and buildings were common) and inside (gas lamps) probably produced an IAQ considerably worse than today's norms. 1. Fresh air intake; 2. Settling chamber in the basement; 3. Heating coils; 4. Air passages in lobby floors; 5. Air passages in the cornice; 6. Extract above a gas lamp; 7. Foul air chamber; 8. Foul air down a duct; 9. Foul air chimney; 10. Flue from a kitchen range. (Reprinted by permission from Banham, Reyner. 1969.* The Architecture of the Well-Tempered Environment*. The Architectural Press. London.)*

5.1 INDOOR AIR QUALITY AND BUILDING DESIGN

Several trends have combined to bring indoor air quality (IAQ) concerns back into prominence. First, an increasingly large percentage of people's time is now spent indoors, and in more tightly controlled environments, as a service-based economy overtakes a manufacturing-based one. Second, the oil embargo of 1973 raised the world's consciousness regarding finite energy sources, producing a sudden and powerful rush toward energy-conserving designs. This, in turn, encouraged designers to limit the introduction of outdoor air that required cooling in summer and heating in winter. Third, a proliferation of chemicals in our environment has produced a vast array of potential air pollutants—from synthetic products permanently installed within buildings, from equipment used indoors, and from cleaning fluids used in maintenance. With more time spent in less fresh air and surrounded by more pollution sources, increasing numbers of buildings have seen experiences with *sick building syndrome* (SBS). SBS (by one definition) is a situation wherein more than 20% of the occupants complain of symptoms associated with SBS—such as headaches, upper respiratory irritation, and irritations of the eyes, among others. If these symptoms disappear after occupants leave the workplace (weekends are especially good periods of contrast), SBS is strongly indicated.

The building designer has an elusive task when air quality is at issue, because so little can be accurately predicted. Heat flow rates, occupancy schedules, and typical weather patterns can be combined to estimate with some confidence how much energy will be consumed by a building; construction types can then be altered in the design stage to yield predictably different results. Designers have few tables that provide rates of outgassing for various materials at given temperatures and no well-established data on design conditions for the quality of local or regional outdoor (fresh) air, even though there is readily available and reliable information for air temperature and humidity.

Controlling the quality of indoor air may be as important to building occupants as controlling for thermal or acoustical comfort. Designers know that saving energy for heating and cooling lowers the cost of maintaining a building; employers know that lost productivity from either on-the-job illness or sick leave can result in much greater costs. One estimate for a large office building compared the cost of increasing ventilation and improving air filtration to the value of projected health and productivity benefits. Initial improvements yielded estimated benefit-to-cost ratios of 50 to 1 (increased ventilation) and 20 to 1 (improved filtration). Acceptable thermal conditions and acceptable IAQ are *not* synonymous. Buildings that are thermally comfortable can still cause SBS when pollutants are sufficiently numerous.

ASHRAE (Standard 62.1, 2007) has defined acceptable indoor air quality as: "air in which there are no known contaminants at harmful concentrations as determined by cognizant authorities and with which a substantial majority (80% or more) of the people exposed do not express dissatisfaction." There are two components to this definition—a comfort response and a health benchmark. Providing acceptable IAQ depends upon four major considerations, three of which depend largely on the designer:

1. Limiting pollution at the source (choosing materials and equipment carefully)
2. Isolating unavoidable sources of pollution
3. Providing for an adequate supply and filtering of fresh air (and recirculated air)
4. Maintaining a building and its equipment in a clean condition

Dealing with indoor pollution at its source, by choosing materials and equipment with care whenever possible, rather than increasing outdoor airflow rates (and related energy consumption) is the most rational IAQ strategy. The designer can further provide for improved IAQ by carefully locating a building on its site; zoning to isolate pollutant sources; and providing clean, adequate, and well-distributed outdoor air, air-cleaning devices, and building commissioning. Providing a *flush mode* following completion of construction might be considered. It is up to a building's managers to maintain IAQ by means of a regular equipment maintenance program, regular interior cleaning, and a careful selection of cleaning agents. Furthermore, a flush of the building after every unoccupied weekend or holiday period is helpful in removing pollutants accumulated from finishes and furnishings.

5.2 POLLUTANT SOURCES AND IMPACTS

Indoor air pollution can be described both in terms of the types of contaminants (gaseous, organic, or particulate) and the types of effects (odors, irritants, toxic substances) involved. People not only inhale contaminants, but also absorb and ingest some—the nose is not the only pollutant receptor/sensor. Table 5.1 summarizes some common indoor air pollutants, their effects, and simple strategies to ameliorate them. For some contaminants, the only method of avoidance is to design for their exclusion; equipment will not remove them, although increased ventilation can reduce their impact. Examples are asbestos, radon, and pesticides.

(a) Odors

One of the most immediate indicators of IAQ problems is odor. People are sensitive to odors over an extraordinary range, whereas equipment to detect and classify odors is woefully lacking. Odors are perceived most strongly on initial encounter; then "fatigue" occurs and perception fades. Thus, visitors are more likely to detect odors than are the long-term inhabitants of a space. Odors may be simply unpleasant, with psychological consequences, or may be indicators of a more serious IAQ problem with physiological consequences. When an unfamiliar odor is detected, our reactions are positive, neutral, or negative, depending upon whether we perceive a threat or enjoyment through the odor.

Sometimes odors are directly traceable to a source, but in office environments odors are usually more complex. A typical office environment odor blend may include body odors, grooming products (perfumes, colognes), copy machines, food products, cleaning fluids, and outgassing from materials. More rarely, in a decreasing number of locales, tobacco smoke may also be present. This complexity produces an interesting reaction; people tend to become less sensitive to each of the component odors, with a resulting overall masking. However, an architecturally imposed masking approach—the deliberate introduction of a "perfume" to cover offending odors—is rarely successful. (Sweet-and-sour may work nicely for the palate, but olfactorily it can be uniquely nauseating.) Conversely, as the indoor environment is freed of multiple odors, people become more sensitive to the one or two odors that remain.

Often a simple measurement of carbon dioxide (CO_2) concentration is used as a first indicator (a surrogate) of potential IAQ problems related to occupancy, because the CO_2 concentration indoors is generally proportional to the human concentration.

Filtering odors from indoor air is usually accomplished with electronic or activated charcoal filters, described in Section 5.6.

(b) Irritants

Unlike odors, which are immediately perceived and fade with prolonged exposure, irritants are often imperceptible at first but cause increasing distress over time. Symptoms of irritants include itching or burning eyes, sneezing, coughing, dry nose and throat, sore throat, and tightness of the chest. Most irritants are present in the form of particles and gas dispersoids (Table 5.2).

Sources of irritants typically include the building itself and the equipment and occupants within. New and newly renovated buildings are particularly prone to problems from outgassing of paints, adhesives, sealants, office furniture, carpeting, and vinyl wall coverings. *Volatile organic compounds* (VOCs) are chemicals containing carbon molecules that are volatile; that is, they off-gas or evaporate from material surfaces at room temperatures. The VOC list is long: methane, ethane, methylene chloride, trichloroethane, chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), formaldehyde, and hydrocarbons such as styrene, benzene, and alcohols. All are now found frequently in new buildings.

Long-term occupancy brings other irritants. Ozone, valuable in the upper atmosphere but a smog component below, is produced by copy machines, high-voltage electrical equipment, and—ironically—electrostatic air cleaners. Mineral fibrous particles can be produced by the breakdown of duct liner/insulation and fireproofing. Hydrocarbon compounds come from copy machines and copy papers. Tobacco smoke is a mixture of gases and fine particles especially irritating to many individuals. Low humidity can exacerbate problems with irritants, producing symptoms similar to those from chemicals. Carpet shampooing yields organic solvents and ammonia; nighttime cleaning coinciding with reduced or nonexistent ventilation is especially problematic.

TABLE 5.1 Common Air Pollutants

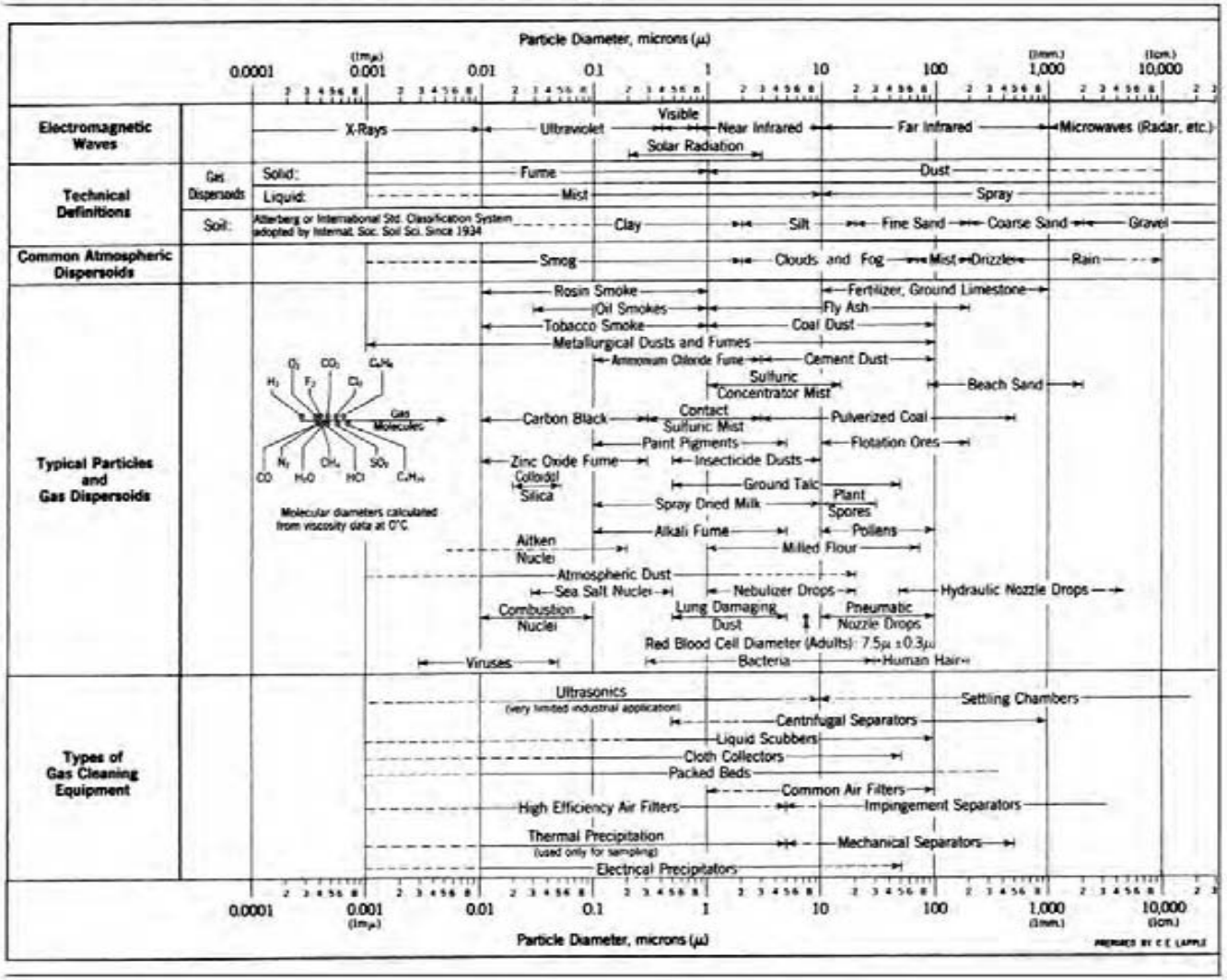
Pollutant	Sources	Effects	Control Strategies
Excess moisture[a]	Cooking (heating open liquids), washing, exhaling	Increases growth of fungi, bacteria, and dust mites	Exhaust ventilation at source; dehumidification
Carbon dioxide (CO_2)	Human respiration	Minor discomfort at high concentrations; "stuffiness"	CO_2 is a good indicator of the ventilation rate in tightly enclosed spaces or where occupancy is high
Carbon monoxide (CO)	Incomplete combustion: furnaces, stoves, fireplaces; motor vehicle exhaust	Headaches, dizziness, sleepiness, muscle weakness, potentially lethal	Sealed combustion burners, adequate combustion air, safe exhaust flues
Nitrogen oxides	High-temperature combustion	Irritation, possible immune suppression	Safe exhaust flues, sealed combustion burners
Sulfur oxides	Combustion fuels containing sulfur (oil, coal)	Potential irritant, burning eyes, reduces lung function	Alternative fuels, safe exhaust flues, sealed combustion burners
Polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons	Smoking, combustion of wood or coal, barbecuing, burnt food	Irritants and carcinogens	Prohibit smoking, lower temperature in cooking, use clean fuels, burn wood in enclosed firebox with adequate oxygen supply
Ozone	Laser printers, photocopiers, small motors, electronic air cleaners	Inflammation of bronchia, wheezing and shortness of breath, dizziness, asthma attacks	Remove sources or exhaust at source, maintain electronic air cleaners
Volatile organic compounds (VOCs) Formaldehyde	Particle board, interior laminated panels, glues, fabric treatments, paints	Burning eyes and nose, skin rash, shortness of breath, headaches, nausea, dizziness, fatigue	Use alternative materials, seal particle board if used, ventilate
Others	Paints, solvents, carpets, soft plastics, adhesives, caulkings, softwoods, paper products, cleaning and maintenance products	Intoxication, burning eyes and nose, shortness of breath, headaches, nausea, dizziness, loss of judgment, panic	Use alternative materials, age materials before installing, ventilate
Lead	Pre-1970s paint, pre-1985 pipes and solder, dust and soil near roads (residue from leaded gas)	Neurotoxic, especially if ingested by young children; learning disabilities, nausea, trembling, numbness of extremities	Identify and remove or seal old paint, replace pipes and solder, avoid foods grown by roadside
Pesticide residues[b]	Treated basements and foundations, treated ceiling and wall cavities, treated cabinets and closets, treated soil outside foundation	Neurotoxic or long-term risk of liver, kidney, and other diseases, including cancers	Identification and removal by expert if history known, sealing in pesticide if possible
Asbestos fiber	Pre-1975 steam pipe and duct insulation, furnace and furnace parts, pre-1980 reinforced vinyl floor tile, and fiber cement shingles and siding	Long-term cancer risk from inhaling fibers	Leave material undisturbed, get expert identification and removal if required, seal with special sealant and cover with sheet metal if not crumbling
Mineral and glass fiber	Thermal insulation, pipe insulation, fire-resistant acoustic tile and fabrics	Potential irritant, burning eyes, itching skin, long-term risk of lung damage and cancer	Handle only with respirator and gloves, seal and enclose, do not disturb in place
Fungus particles, dust mites	Grow in basements, damp carpet, bedding, fabrics, walls and ceilings, closets	Very allergenic, burning eyes and nose, sneezing, skin rash, congestion, and shortness of breath	Keep surfaces dry and clean, cover bedding and upholstery with barrier cloth, ventilate, use borax treatments to retard fungus
Hazardous bacteria (e.g., *Legionella*)	Standing warm water, untreated hot tubs, air-conditioning drain pans, humidifier reservoirs	Severe respiratory illness, potentially lethal	Prevent standing water, clean and treat tubs and reservoirs
Radon gas	Natural radioactivity in soils	Increased lifetime lung cancer risk	Seal foundation and floor drains, ventilate subsoil
Methane and other soil gases	Decomposing garbage in landfills, leaking sewage lines, toxic waste	Possibly explosive or toxic, nuisance odors	Know site history before building, remove soil if necessary, seal foundation and floor drains, ventilate subsoil

Source: Adapted from Rousseau and Wasley (1997).

[a]Too little moisture also adversely affects health.

[b]Pre-1980s treatments are more likely to leave residues and be toxic.

TABLE 5.2 Characteristics of Particles and Particle Dispersoids



Source: Reprinted with permission of SRI International (formerly the Stanford Research Institute), Menlo Park, CA.

In contrast, night maintenance with *increased* ventilation rates—as with cooling by night ventilation of thermal mass—can reduce this threat.

As with odors, the impacts of irritants can be reduced with an increased outdoor air supply. Filters for the removal of irritants usually consist of particulate filters; less common are gaseous-removal filters, air washers, and electronic air cleaners. These are discussed in Section 5.6.

(c) Toxic Particulate Substances

At the top of this list is asbestos, widely used in buildings until its toxicity was realized in the 1970s. Asbestos in tightly bound form is encountered as asbestos-cement and in vinyl-asbestos floor tiles, and in loosely bound form as sprayed-on asbestos insulation. The latter is particularly dangerous, readily releasing toxic asbestos fibers over the life of the material. With asbestos, neither increased ventilation nor filtering is acceptable; it must be either removed under stringent isolation controls or sealed and left in place.

Some of the respirable particles (see Table 5.2) that result from incomplete combustion are toxic. Incomplete combustion can occur from tobacco smoking, in woodstoves, fireplaces, and gas ranges, and from unvented gas or kerosene space heaters. Lacking control of combustion at its source, the remedies are to isolate the source insofar as possible, exhaust air from the immediate vicinity, increase the outdoor air supply to the area, and utilize particle filtering.

(d) Biological Contaminants

Because living things inhabit both buildings and outdoor air, there will be biological contaminants such as bacteria, fungi, viruses, algae, insect parts, and dust within buildings. Moisture encourages both the retention and growth of these contaminants; standing water (which may occur in HVAC system components) and moist interior surfaces are likely trouble sites. Allergic reactions and infectious and noninfectious diseases can result. Outbreaks of Legionnaire's disease have occurred when improperly maintained HVAC systems incubated and then distributed disease-causing microorganisms. Now residential humidifiers, dehumidifiers, and air-conditioner drain pans are suspect.

Remedies for biological contaminants begin with good design and end with vigilant maintenance. Although exposure to ultraviolet radiation is sometimes used as a control strategy, filters are rarely an effective solution for these contaminants.

(e) Radon and Soil Gases

Radon is a radioactive gas that decays rapidly, releasing radiation at each stage. It is colorless and odorless, and thus is undetectable by human sense. If we inhale radon, radiation release in the lungs can cause lung cancer. Other soil gases include methane (usually odiferous) and some pesticides that can volatize and enter buildings with soil gases. Effects on human beings are not likely to be beneficial.

In many buildings with high levels of radon, the problem has been traced to exposure to soil. Radon penetrates through floor and wall cracks and openings around plumbing pipes; thus, below-ground spaces are particularly at risk. Penetrations of below-grade walls and floors should be both minimized and well sealed; under-slab ventilation (Section 5.5*c*) may be appropriate, especially in areas of high radon risk.

5.3 PREDICTING INDOOR AIR QUALITY

Assuming that pollutant sources have been minimized, designers essentially need to know how much outdoor air and what extent of filtering will produce acceptable indoor air quality. These questions are difficult to answer.

(a) Ventilation Rate

The most common remedy for SBS (after controlling pollution sources) is to increase the rate of outdoor air ventilation. Recommended rates of ventilation are found in Tables E.25 (nonresidential) and E.26 (residential). Although very small amounts of outdoor air will provide sufficient oxygen, and although human body odor control is usually achievable at a rate of from 6 to 9 cfm (cubic feet per minute) (3 to 4.5 L/s) of outdoor air per occupant, outdoor air has more to do than provide oxygen and control odors. Defining minimum outdoor air supply rates has proven

to be a controversial task. The current ASHRAE ventilation standard (Standard 62.1-2007—for other than low-rise residential buildings) establishes minimum rates (Table E.25) on the basis of an occupancy component and a building component in recognition of these distinct contaminant sources. Some feel that the outdoor air requirements are too high, others that they are too low.

Two units have been proposed to integrate the various indoor air pollutants in the same way that they are perceived by human beings. The *olf* is a unit of pollution (1 olf = the bioeffluents produced by the average person); the *decipol* is a unit of perceived air quality. These are related in this proposed comfort formula:

$$Q = 10\,\frac{G}{C_i - C_o}$$

where

Q = ventilation rate, L/s

G = total pollution sources, olf

C_i = perceived indoor air quality, decipol

C_o = perceived outdoor air quality, decipol

At present, C_i is recommended to be set at 1.4 decipol, which represents an expectation of 80% of occupants satisfied with IAQ. C_o and G may be roughly estimated from Table 5.3. These proposals are discussed in more detail in Fanger (1989).

The concept of *replacance* affects the design of ventilation systems. Table 5.4 shows that at the rate of 1 air change per hour (ACH) of outdoor air, an indoor space would have only 63% "new" air after 1 hour; about 8 hours at this rate is required for all the "old" air to be exhausted. There is, then, a difference between the fresh air input rate (ACH) and the replacance—the fraction of air molecules at one specified time that was *not* in the indoor space at an earlier reference time. This relationship, along with details of air pollutants (and of heat exchanger design for energy conservation), is thoroughly discussed in Shurcliff (1981).

The campus for the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in Research Triangle Park, North

TABLE 5.3 Estimating Indoor Air Quality

PART A. **PERCEIVED OUTDOOR AIR QUALITY, C_0**	
During smog episodes	>1 decipol
In cities with moderate air pollution	0.05–0.3 decipol
On mountains or at sea	0.01 decipol
PART B. ESTIMATED OLF LOADS IN OFFICES PER m² of FLOOR AREA	
Pollution Source	**olf/m²**
Occupants (10 m² per person)	
Bioeffluents	0.1
Additional load from 20% smokers	0.1
40%	0.2
60%	0.3
Materials and ventilation system	
Average in existing buildings[a]	0.4
Low-olf buildings[b]	0.1
Total load in office buildings	
Average in existing buildings (40% smokers)	0.7
Low-olf buildings (nonsmoking)	0.2

Source: Fanger (1989). Reprinted by permission from the *ASHRAE Journal,* © 1989 by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.

[a]Based upon field studies of 15 randomly selected buildings in Copenhagen.

[b]Designed to contain low-outgassing materials and a frequently maintained ventilating system.

TABLE 5.4 Air Replacance Compared to Input Air Changes per Hour (ACH)

Note: Mixing is considered continuous and vigorous—as would be obtained in a forced-ventilation system.

Time from Start of Run (h)	Rate of Air Input (ACH):	*Replacance (%)*								
		0.06	**0.12**	**0.25**	**0.5**	**1**	**2**	**4**	**8**	**16**
1/16		0.4	0.8	1.6	3.1	6.1	11.7	22.1	39.3	63.2
1/8		0.8	1.6	3.1	6.1	11.7	22.1	39.3	63.2	86.5
1/4		1.6	3.1	6.1	11.7	22.1	39.3	63.2	86.5	98.2
1/2		3.1	6.1	11.7	22.1	39.3	63.2	86.5	98.2	99.9
1		6.1	11.7	22.1	39.3	63.2	86.5	98.2	99.9	100
2		11.7	22.1	39.3	63.2	86.5	98.2	99.9	100	100
4		22.1	39.3	63.2	86.5	90.2	99.9	100	100	100
8		39.3	63.2	86.5	98.2	99.9	100	100	100	100
16		63.2	86.5	98.2	99.9	100	100	100	100	100

Source: Shurcliff (1981). Reprinted by permission.

Carolina, was designed with special emphasis on IAQ (Fig. 5.2). The designers considered several alternatives for fresh air provision, deciding that a simple variable air volume (VAV) system, set at a minimum of 3 ACH (of combined fresh and recycled air) would be acceptable. If the system had been designed with a typical minimum, only 1 ACH would have resulted during periods when neither heating nor cooling was required (typical spring and fall conditions). A 6 ACH alternative, on the other hand, would have dramatically increased energy consumption.

(b) Testing

When a client is especially interested in IAQ, full-scale time tests can be used. At the new EPA campus (Fig. 5.2), the contractor was given a target for allowable contaminant concentrations (Table 5.5, Part B). Any material assembly deemed likely to contribute more than one-third of these allowable concentrations, and used in large quantities, was to be tested before acceptance. One desirable outcome of such testing and associated materials specifications is the possible avoidance (or shortening) of an anticipated flush-out of a completed building before occupancy.

5.4 ZONING FOR IAQ

After pollution control is implemented at the source (cleaner equipment, prohibiting smoking, careful material choices, etc.), remaining unavoidable pollutant sources should be identified. Then more sensitive building areas should be isolated from the key contaminators. This is sometimes difficult, as in "open offices" where walls are unwelcome but copying machines are essential. In such cases, the method is to erect as much of a barrier as possible around an offender, then *task ventilate* to remove the contaminated air immediately. Sometimes air pollution sources also produce unwanted sound, in which case the argument for a more complete barrier may become more compelling.

Many health-care and laboratory buildings have "clean" and "dirty" zones, and even separate circulation pathways. Differential air pressures are often maintained to discourage air flow from dirty to clean zones—with higher pressure in clean areas, lower pressure in dirty areas. Lower-pressure areas can be created simply by exhausting air from such spaces, as well as by limiting the volume of supply air. Higher-pressure areas can be created by installing makeup air equipment, as well as increasing the volume of supply air from the HVAC system.

On a site-planning scale, try to locate air intakes upwind from pollution sources. Because winds frequently change direction, this may be more a matter of adequate separation distance than direction. The most obvious example is a major air intake for a central HVAC system, which should be as far as possible from parking areas,



Fig. 5.2 *The campus of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency at Research Triangle Park, North Carolina, features concentrated parking separate from the buildings. High exhaust stacks disperse air from laboratories; intakes are kept well away from exhaust. (Courtesy of Hellmuth, Obata + Kassabaum, Washington, DC.)*

TABLE 5.5 Air Quality Standards

PART A. **NATIONAL AMBIENT-AIR QUALITY STANDARDS FOR OUTDOOR AIR**

	Long-Term Concentration Averaging			*Short-Term Concentration Averaging*		
Contaminant	**μg/m³**	**ppm**		**μg/m³**	**ppm**	
Sulfur dioxide	80	0.03	1 year	365	0.14	24 hours
Total particulate	75[a]	—	1 year	260	—	24 hours
Carbon monoxide				40,000	35	1 hour
Carbon monoxide				10,000	9	8 hours
Oxidants (Ozone)				235[b]	0.12[b]	1 hour
Nitrogen dioxide	100	0.055	1 year			
Lead	1.5	—	3 months[c]			

Source: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

PART B. **MAXIMUM INDOOR AIR CONCENTRATION STANDARDS AT EPA CAMPUS**

Indoor Contaminants	**Allowable Air Concentration Levels[d]**
Carbon monoxide (CO)	<9 ppm
Carbon dioxide (CO_2)	<800 ppm
Airborne mold and mildew	Simultaneous indoor and outdoor readings
Formaldehyde	<20 μg/m³ above outside air
Total VOC	<200 μg/m³ above outside air
4 Phenyl cyclohexene (4-PC)[e]	<3 μg/m³
Total particulates	<20 μg/m³
Regulated pollutants	<National Ambient-Air Quality Standards (see Part A)
Other pollutants	<5% of TLV-TWA[f]

Source: Hellmuth, Obata + Kassabaum (2001).

[a]Arithmetic mean.

[b]The standard is attained when the expected number of days per calendar year with maximum hourly average concentrations above 0.12 ppm (235 μg/m³) is equal to or less than 1.

[c]A 3-month period is a calendar quarter.

[d]These levels must be achieved prior to acceptance of building. They do not account for contributions from office furniture, occupants, and occupant activity.

[e]4-PC is an odorous contaminant constituent in carpets with styrene-butadiene-latex rubber (SBR).

[f]TLV-TWA is threshold limit value, time-weighted average.

delivery docks, and streets—and from the exhaust outlets from that same HVAC system or outlets from other building systems. Even exhaust outlets should be located carefully, because there is a possibility that at times outdoor air can be drawn into these exhaust openings. A mechanical equipment room is the typical location for both intake and exhaust; energy conservation devices such as heat exchangers benefit from close proximity of intake and exhaust. Most animals use the same "ducts" to breathe in and exhale, obviously inviting air reentrainment. For a building, however, separation of these openings is prudent design.

The campus for the EPA (Fig. 5.2) is an example of predesign planning for IAQ. This is a 1,000,000-ft² (92,900-m²) building complex serving a population of more than 2000 on 133 acres (54 hectares) of farm land that has reverted to second-growth hardwoods. Table 5.6 gives a summary of design decisions and their impact on IAQ. Some of the more visible design consequences are the separation of parking and building, the concentration of parking in a structure (less impact on the existing landscape, more control of vehicle fumes), and the height of the exhaust stacks from the laboratories. Many other design decisions are hidden within the building's materials and HVAC system, as detailed in Table 5.6.

The topic of zoning includes decisions about local versus central equipment. Should individual exhaust fans be installed (creating selective lower-pressure areas) or a central exhaust fan (that can discharge up a very tall stack)? Should air cleaners be installed locally, where they can be selected according to the degree of pollution, or centrally, where they can be more easily and regularly maintained? What about heat exchangers for tempering incoming air: many smaller

TABLE 5.6 Design Decisions and Impacts: EPA Campus, Research Triangle Park

Item	Decision	Impact on IAQ
Siting of building	Locate exhaust downwind from air intakes, separate by >100 ft (30 m) Maximize separation between parking areas and air intakes	Minimizes reentrainment of laboratory exhaust air at air intakes Reduces the potential for vehicular exhaust entering building
Location of parking garages	Locate parking structure away from the building	Reduces the potential for vehicular exhaust entering building
Laboratory exhaust stacks	Increase stack height to 30 ft (9 m) based on wind tunnel testing	Minimizes reentrainment of laboratory exhausts into air intakes
Radon	Site-specific testing confirmed low levels of radon	Confirmed that radon levels are safe
Delivery/loading zone	Maintain negative pressure in loading area, positive pressure in building	Eliminates entrainment of delivery vehicle exhaust
Landscaping	Low-maintenance and nonsporulating plants selected Plants used as a barrier to vehicle exhaust	Intake of spores, fertilizer, or chemicals entering building is reduced Minimizes entrainment of delivery vehicle exhaust
Laboratory fume hoods	Install flow gauges and alarms	Provides warning of air contaminants present in laboratory areas due to loss of flow
Acoustic insulation of ducts	Ductwork increased in size to reduce need for acoustical insulation; in select areas, mylar-coated duct silencers are used as ductwork transitions out of equipment rooms	Minimizes release of fibers into the airstream and possible contamination of the HVAC system (duct liners are difficult to monitor or to clean and can be sites of microbial growth)
Moisture accumulation	Install drain pans pitched toward drain pipe	Reduces moisture, which could result in introduction of bacterial contamination into HVAC system
Humidity control	No moisture carryover into system	Minimizes moisture in HVAC system and resultant bacterial contaminants due to moisture
Corrosion inhibitors	Inhibitors do not contain volatile amines	Eliminates exposure to certain air contaminants
System maintenance	Provide access panels at ductwork appurtenances and ample clearance around equipment	Maximizes ease of maintaining HVAC system
Outside ventilation rate	100% outdoor air in laboratories; 20 cfm (10 L/s) per person in offices Flexibility to increase ventilation rate 20% for unexpected sources	Maximizes occupant comfort and removal of air contaminants Minimizes possible occupant exposure to contaminants
Airflow efficiency	Minimum airflow rate set at 3 ACH for VAV system in office areas Flexible connections to room diffusers in open office areas	Increases air movement and ventilation effectiveness Facilitates modifications to enhance airflow as necessary
Air cleaning	ASHRAE 30% efficiency pre-filters with 85% final filters Flexibility to add scrubbers to laboratory exhaust Use bird-proofing mesh screen	Minimizes dust and other aerosols entering indoor air via the HVAC system Minimizes release of contaminants to ambient air Eliminates bird droppings and possible microorganism infection in the HVAC system
Thermal control	Building automated control system Fixed windows	Provides optimum control of temperature and pressure Prevents unconditioned air from entering building; maintains positive pressure in laboratories
Exhaust system	100% exhaust for photocopying rooms, laboratories, food preparation areas Photocopiers located within 10 ft (3 m) of exhaust vent	Eliminates potential to recirculate contaminants and odors through the building via the HVAC system Controls potential source of air contaminants; recirculated air is filtered prior to its return
Smoking	Designate building as nonsmoking	Eliminates exposure to secondhand smoke and recirculation of tobacco smoke via the HVAC system
Building materials, finishes, furnishings	Materials selected to minimize release of contaminants from products	Minimize occupant exposure to contaminants as a result of off-gassing from building materials, finishes, furnishings

Source: Hellmuth, Obata + Kassabaum, Architects, Washington, DC. This material was produced with U.S. government sponsorship through Order #70-2124-NTLX.

ones or one large one? The larger and more complex a building is, the more likely the development of a mix of local, specialized zones and a large, more general zone that is centrally served. Figure 5.3 explores the issue of the location of an office copier: at the edge, where task ventilation is easy, but plentiful daylight and a view may be "wasted" on this function, or away from the edge, where a central exhaust system is more likely to be utilized.

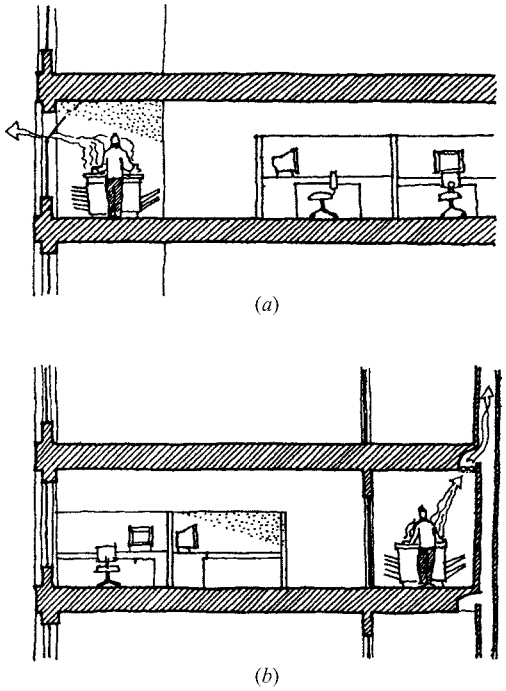


Fig. 5.3 *Zoning for IAQ: the office copier. This notorious source of VOCs can be located at the perimeter (a), where access to fresh air and direct exhaust is simple; however, perimeter space is prime real estate for daylight and views. If the copier is located in less-desirable interior space (b), exhaust air can create negative air pressure, drawing air from adjacent offices and containing the VOCs; longer runs of exhaust ducts are required.*

5.5 PASSIVE AND LOW-ENERGY APPROACHES FOR CONTROL OF IAQ

This section deals with passive ventilation for control of indoor air quality. Ventilation is an approach that assumes that "the solution to pollution is dilution." Another IAQ strategy, air cleaning, almost always involves forcing air through various filtering devices using active systems. Filters and other equipment associated with active approaches to both ventilation and air cleaning are discussed in a following section.

(a) Windows

Operable windows are one of the oldest and most common "switches" of all. Passive ventilation through windows and skylights is influenced by the position of the open window; if wind strikes the glass surface in its open position, it will be deflected. The direction of the wind approaching the window is generally unpredictable. Also, whereas for simple ventilation (without cooling) it is usually desirable to keep wind *away* from people, for cooling at temperatures above the standard comfort zone, wind *across* the body is helpful (see Fig. 3.30). For these reasons, a window that can be opened in a variety of positions can be useful; some examples are shown in Fig. 5.4.

Perhaps the best aspect of operable windows is that they give the building occupants some control over the source of outdoor air. Perhaps the worst aspect is that they rarely offer any means of filtering this incoming air. They also can confound attempts by a central HVAC system to regulate airflow and the resulting pressure. Sometimes they admit air (windward side); at other times, they exhaust it (leeward side). Note that the EPA Campus (Fig. 5.2) elected to install fixed, not operable, windows.

Some windows offer more free area of opening than others of the same size. Figure 5.5 compares some common window types. The pattern of incoming flow is also highly influenced by the way in which these windows open. The outward flow is somewhat affected as well. Insect screens will reduce the flow of air. Details of windows and screens are discussed in Chandra et al. (1986). Estimating wind-driven airflow through window openings is discussed in Chapter 8.

Windows work best in the presence of wind. In calm conditions, they may still admit—or exhaust—air due to the stack effect. The taller the building, the more pronounced this effect. Operable windows in very tall buildings have been shunned by designers until recently. The Commerzbank in Frankfurt, Germany, is a 56-story tower. Each office's exterior window (Fig. 5.6) is operable in temperate weather, and the occupant decides the degree of openness; a

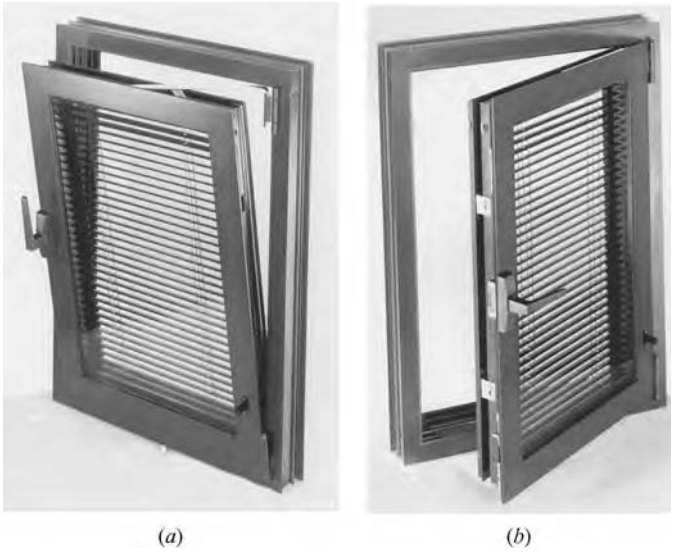


Fig. 5.4 *A window that can open in more than one position can enhance ventilation performance. (a) The window tilts from the top, directing the incoming air toward the ceiling; fresh air does not directly encounter workers within the space. (b) The window swings inward, allowing incoming air to move across people, enhancing warm-weather cooling. (Courtesy of Three Rivers Aluminum Company, Inc.)*

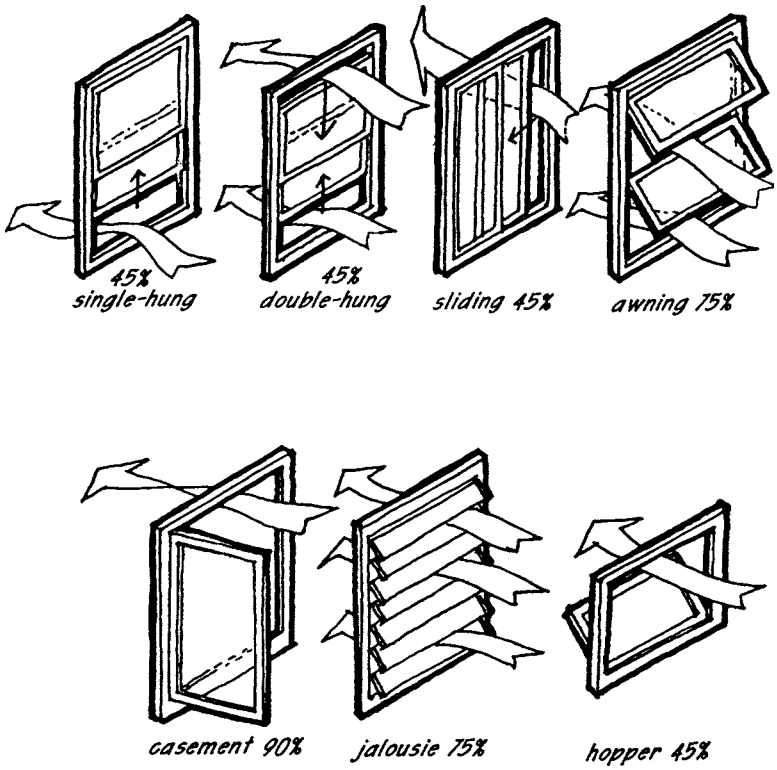


Fig. 5.5 *The percentage of actual openable area varies with the window type. (Reprinted by permission from Moore, Fuller. 1994.* Environmental Control Systems: Heating, Cooling, Lighting. *McGraw-Hill Company. New York.)*

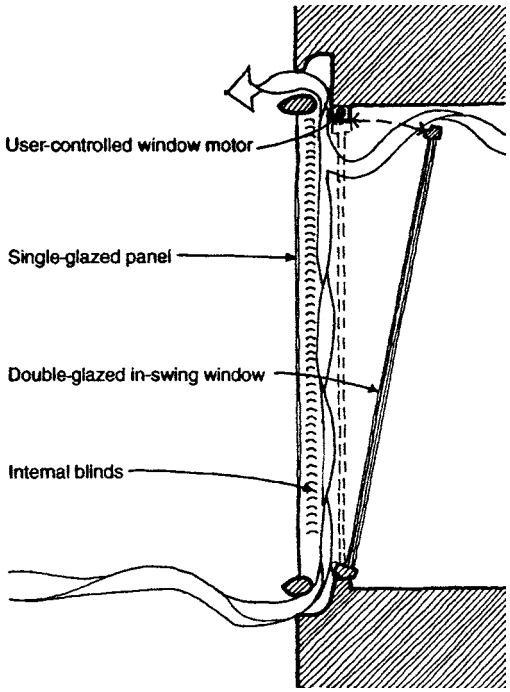


Fig. 5.6 *The Commerzbank is a recent addition to Frankfurt, Germany's, skyline. Operable windows in this 56-story tower are tilted in from the top by occupants, while a fixed outer pane with continuous venting slots at the top and bottom keeps air currents under control. Shown here in exhaust mode, the window can also supply fresh air to the office. Under adverse outdoor conditions, the building management system (BMS) locks the inner window in the closed position.*

lock-out is controlled by a building management system (BMS). The full-height office window's outer skin consists of fixed single-glazed safety glass, with 5-in. (125-mm) ventilation slots all across the top and bottom. These serve the 8-in. (200-mm) wide cavity between the outer and inner window skins. The inner window is double-glazed, hinged at floor level, and has a motor-operated tilt-in mechanism at the top. Motorized blinds for solar shading are located within the cavity between the window skins. A central atrium provides a stack effect so that an open window is usually a source of incoming rather than exhaust air, although the top and bottom slots allow for a slight stack effect at each window.

(b) Stack Effect

Several applications of the principle that hot air rises are applicable to IAQ. Estimating airflow due to the stack effect is discussed in Chapter 8, along with more detailed calculations. Devices can be used to enhance the stack effect by creating suction when wind blows across the top of a stack. Probably the most common (available in chain-store catalogs) are wind gravity or turbine ventilators (Fig. 5.7); typical performance characteristics are listed in Table 5.7. This is probably not the most effective topping device, however. Figure 5.8 compares volumetric airflow results for a turbine and several other ventilators with those



Fig. 5.7 *Two wind-gravity (turbine) ventilators accent the skyline of the addition to Barton Hall at the University of New Hampshire. These draw hot exhaust air from the auditorium; cool outdoor air is admitted through low windows and shutters in the auditorium's north wall. (Courtesy of Banwell White Arnold Hemberger & Partners, Inc., Hanover, NH.)*

TABLE 5.7 Turbine Ventilator Performance

Note: The combination of wind suction and stack effect produces the following exhaust capacities (in cfm) for various throat diameters and stack heights of turbine ventilators. Recommended spacing between ventilators is 20 ft.

IP UNITS																
Outdoor Wind Velocity: mph		**2**			**4**			**6**			**8**			**10**		
ΔT, indoors-outdoors °F		**10**	**20**	**30**	**10**	**20**	**30**	**10**	**20**	**30**	**10**	**20**	**30**	**10**	**20**	**30**
Turbine Throat Diameter	**Height Above Intake ft**	**Exhaust Capacity (cfm)**														
6″	10	114	125	130	210	221	226	314	325	330	426	437	442	534	545	550
	20	122	135	144	218	231	240	322	335	344	434	447	456	542	555	564
	30	129	144	156	225	240	252	329	344	356	441	456	468	549	564	576
	40	135	152	166	231	248	262	335	352	366	447	464	478	555	572	586
10″	10	209	222	274	370	383	435	545	558	610	728	741	793	915	928	980
	20	234	269	301	395	430	462	570	605	637	753	788	820	940	975	1007
	30	254	301	328	415	462	489	590	637	664	773	820	847	960	1007	1034
	40	269	318	355	430	479	516	605	654	691	788	837	874	975	1024	1061
14″	10	333	383	422	558	608	647	804	854	893	1062	1112	1151	1324	1374	1413
	20	376	444	496	601	669	721	847	915	967	1105	1173	1225	1367	1435	1487
	30	413	496	560	638	721	785	884	967	1031	1142	1225	1289	1404	1487	1551
	40	444	539	614	669	764	839	915	1010	1085	1173	1268	1343	1435	1530	1605
18″	10	476	564	623	755	843	902	1071	1159	1218	1399	1487	1546	1737	1825	1884
	20	549	662	747	828	941	1026	1144	1257	1342	1472	1585	1670	1810	1923	2008
	30	611	747	853	890	1026	1132	1206	1342	1448	1534	1670	1776	1872	2008	2114
	40	662	819	941	941	1098	1220	1257	1414	1536	1585	1742	1864	1923	2080	2202
24″	10	716	874	978	1101	1259	1363	1522	1680	1784	1963	2121	2225	2412	2570	2674
	20	844	1046	1196	1229	1431	1581	1650	1852	2002	2091	2293	2443	2540	2742	2892
	30	954	1196	1384	1339	1581	1769	1760	2002	2190	2201	2443	2631	2650	2892	3080
	40	1046	1324	1542	1431	1709	1927	1852	2130	2348	2293	2571	2789	2742	3020	3238
30″	10	1139	1385	1545	1719	1965	2125	2379	2625	2785	3068	3314	3474	3769	4015	4175
	20	1342	1655	1890	1922	2235	2470	2582	2895	3130	3271	3584	3819	3972	4285	4520
	30	1514	1890	2185	2094	2470	2765	2754	3130	3425	3443	3819	4114	4144	4520	4815
	40	1655	2090	2430	2235	2670	3010	2895	3330	3670	3584	4019	4359	4285	4720	5060
36″	10	1613	1967	2201	2475	2829	3063	3418	3772	4006	4414	4768	5002	5428	5782	6016
	20	1901	2354	2692	2763	3216	3554	3706	4159	4497	4702	5155	5493	5716	6169	6507
	30	2148	2692	3115	3010	3554	3977	3953	4497	4920	4949	5493	5916	5963	6507	6930
	40	2354	2981	3470	3216	3843	4332	4159	4786	5275	5155	5782	6271	6169	6796	7285
42″	10	2183	2663	2998	3350	3835	4170	4645	5125	5460	6000	6480	6815	7365	7845	8180
	20	2588	3203	3668	3760	4375	4840	5050	5665	6130	6405	7020	7485	7770	8385	8850
	30	2928	3668	4243	4100	4840	5415	5390	6130	6705	6745	7485	8060	8110	8850	9425
	40	3203	4058	4723	4375	5230	5895	5665	6520	7185	7020	7875	8540	8385	9240	9905
48″	10	2868	3500	3925	4412	5044	5469	6078	6710	7135	7843	8475	8900	9638	10270	10695
	20	3378	4185	4785	4922	5729	6329	6588	7395	7995	8353	9160	9760	10148	10955	11555
	30	3817	4785	5535	5361	6329	7079	7027	7995	8745	8792	9760	10510	10587	11555	12305
	40	4185	5300	6175	5729	6844	7719	7395	8510	9385	9160	10275	11150	10955	12070	12945

TABLE 5.7 Turbine Ventilator Performance (*Continued*)

Note: The combination of wind suction and stack effect produces the following exhaust capacities (L/s) for various throat diameters and stack heights of turbine ventilators. Recommended spacing between ventilators is 6 m.

SI UNITS																
Outdoor Wind Velocity: m/s		**0.9**			**1.8**			**2.7**			**3.6**			**4.5**		
ΔT, indoors-outdoors °C		**5.6**	**11.1**	**16.7**	**5.6**	**11.1**	**16.7**	**5.6**	**11.1**	**16.7**	**5.6**	**11.1**	**16.7**	**5.6**	**11.1**	**16.7**
Turbine Throat Diameter mm	**Height above Intake mm**	**Exhaust Capacity (L/s)**														
150	3	54	59	61	99	104	107	148	153	156	201	206	209	252	257	260
	6	58	64	68	103	109	113	152	158	162	205	211	215	256	262	266
	9	61	68	74	106	113	119	155	162	168	208	215	221	259	266	272
	12	64	72	78	109	117	124	158	166	173	211	219	226	262	270	277
250	3	99	105	129	175	181	205	257	263	288	344	350	374	432	438	463
	6	110	127	142	186	203	218	269	286	301	355	372	387	444	460	475
	9	120	142	155	196	218	231	278	301	313	365	387	400	453	475	488
	12	127	150	168	203	226	244	286	309	326	372	395	412	460	483	501
350	3	157	181	199	263	287	305	379	403	421	501	525	543	625	648	667
	6	177	210	234	284	316	340	400	432	456	522	554	578	645	677	702
	9	195	234	264	301	340	370	417	456	487	539	578	608	663	702	732
	12	210	254	290	316	361	396	432	477	512	554	598	634	677	722	757
450	3	225	266	294	356	398	426	505	547	575	660	702	730	820	861	889
	6	259	312	353	391	444	484	540	593	633	695	748	788	854	908	948
	9	288	353	403	420	484	534	569	633	683	724	788	838	883	948	998
	12	312	387	444	444	518	576	593	667	725	748	822	880	908	982	1039
610	3	338	412	462	520	594	643	718	793	842	926	1001	1050	1138	1213	1262
	6	398	494	564	580	675	746	779	874	945	987	1082	1153	1199	1294	1365
	9	450	564	653	632	746	835	831	945	1034	1039	1153	1242	1251	1365	1454
	12	494	625	728	675	807	909	874	1005	1108	1082	1213	1316	1294	1425	1528
760	3	538	654	729	811	927	1003	1123	1239	1314	1448	1564	1639	1779	1895	1970
	6	633	781	892	907	1055	1166	1219	1366	1477	1544	1691	1802	1874	2022	2133
	9	715	892	1031	988	1166	1305	1300	1477	1616	1625	1802	1941	1956	2133	2272
	12	781	986	1147	1055	1260	1420	1366	1571	1732	1691	1897	2057	2022	2227	2388
910	3	761	928	1038	1168	1335	1445	1613	1780	1890	2083	2250	2360	2562	2729	2839
	6	897	1111	1270	1304	1518	1677	1749	1963	2122	2219	2433	2592	2697	2911	3071
	9	1014	1270	1489	1420	1677	1877	1865	2122	2322	2335	2592	2792	2814	3071	3270
	12	1111	1407	1638	1518	1814	2044	1963	2259	2489	2433	2729	2959	2911	3207	3438
1070	3	1030	1257	1415	1581	1810	1968	2192	2419	2577	2831	3058	3216	3476	3702	3860
	6	1221	1512	1731	1774	2065	2284	2383	2673	2893	3023	3313	3532	3667	3957	4176
	9	1382	1731	2002	1935	2284	2555	2544	2893	3164	3183	3532	3804	3827	4176	4448
	12	1512	1915	2229	2065	2468	2782	2673	3077	3391	3313	3716	4030	3957	4360	4674
1220	3	1353	1652	1852	2082	2380	2581	2868	3167	3367	3701	3999	4200	4548	4846	5047
	6	1594	1975	2258	2323	2704	2987	3109	3490	3773	3942	4323	4606	4789	5170	5453
	9	1802	2258	2612	2530	2987	3341	3316	3773	4127	4149	4606	4960	4996	5453	5807
	12	1975	2501	2914	2704	3230	3643	3490	4016	4429	4323	4849	5262	5170	5696	6109

Source: Reprinted courtesy of Western Ventilating Equipment, Inc., Los Angeles. SI units appended by authors of this book (they are not part of original source).

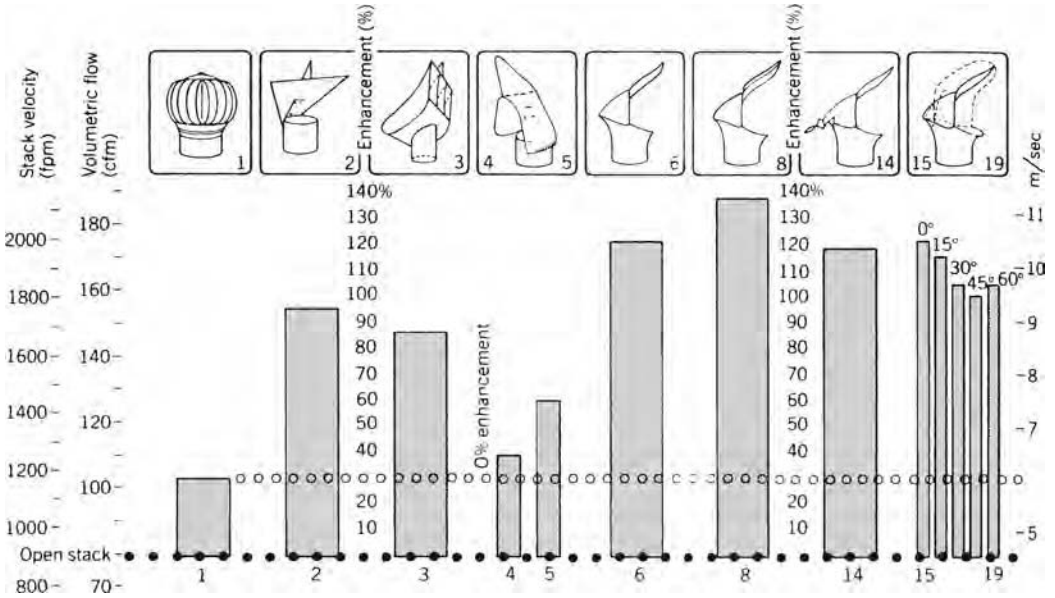


Fig. 5.8 *Performance of some passive ventilators compared to a simple open stack. The popular turbine ventilator is identified as #1 but is outperformed by many other devices. (From the work of R. P. Schubert and Philip Hahn; reprinted from* Progress in Passive Solar Energy Systems; *© 1983. By permission of the publisher, American Solar Energy Society, Boulder, CO.)*

for a simple open stack. The tests were done in a wind tunnel at the Virginia Polytechnic Institute.

Because the stack effect works more forcefully with increased height, intakes should be as low as possible. When these openings are near the ground, precooling of summer intake air is possible. The Cottage Restaurant in Oregon (see Fig. 1.14) took some advantage of this principle. The Olivier Theatre at the Bedales School in rural Hampshire, England (Fig. 5.9), uses a gently sloping site to similar advantage. The tightly packed audience of a theater generates considerable heat, as do the lights. For this theater, the maximum acceptable temperature around the audience is about 77°F (25°C); the heat produced by people and lights provides a temperature increase of about 12.6°F (7°C). Therefore, whenever the outdoor temperature is about 64.4°F (18°C), cooling of the incoming air is needed.

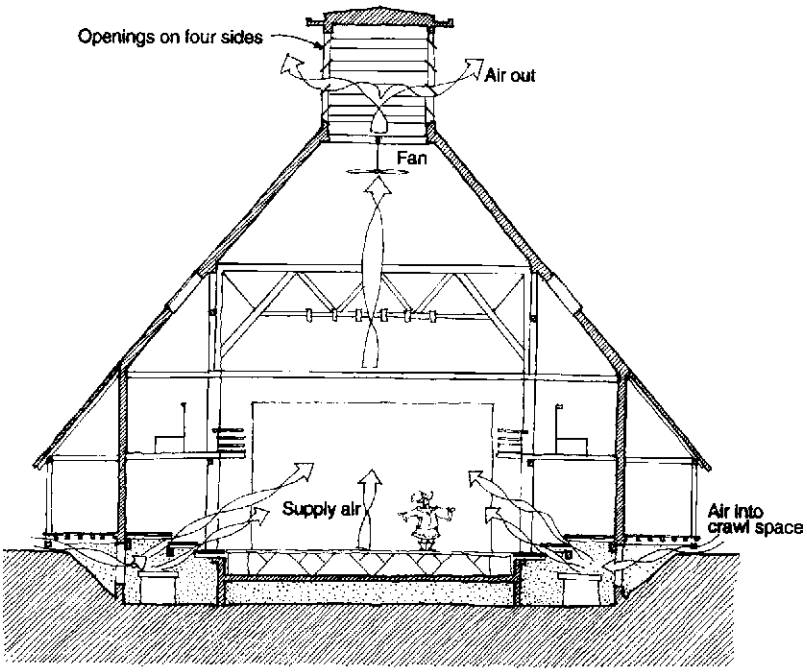
In this theater, air is introduced to an "undercroft" (crawl space) with a concrete floor, on which are built many concrete block walls, forming an indirect path for the incoming air. This undercroft is cooled by night ventilation, and thus is made ready for the next event's heat gains. The inlet openings are 5% of the theater floor area; the surface area of the undercroft is 32 ft^2 (3 m^2) per person. The audience of 270 people is ventilated and cooled by the air rising from this undercroft, through openings that total 3.5% of the floor area. Gaining heat, the air rises toward the central cupola, aided when necessary by a "punkah" fan (see Fig. 9.4), and exits through four louvered sides of the cupola, with a total outlet area of 6% of the floor area. The overall height of this stack is 51 ft (15.5 m); a maximum of 15 ACH is expected at around 5°F (3°C) difference (warmer inside than outside). This ventilation-cooling system is silent and utilizes no refrigerant. In the heating season at partial occupancy, the stack outlets are closed, and the fan can be run in reverse to send collected warm air downward to the floor.

(c) Under-slab Ventilation

Although the theater uses the ground's coolth to advantage, there are some places where the ground contains radon (or other soil gases). A map of the United States (Fig. 5.10) shows the relative risk from radon, a long-term harmful gas, on a county-by-county basis. Buildings on former industrial sites or landfills could be threatened by



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 5.9 *Stack ventilation caps the Olivier Theatre at the Bedales School in rural Hampshire, England. (a) View from the east. (Photo by VIEW/Dennis Gilbert.) (b) Section shows the openings that admit outdoor air to the concrete "undercroft," where it is cooled, then admitted below seats to the auditorium; gaining heat, it rises (assisted when necessary by a punkah fan) and exits out the four-sided dampered openings in the cupola. (Designed by Fielden Clegg Architects, Bath, Avon; engineering by Max Fordham and Partners, London.)*

other dangerous soil gases. Even ordinary sites can be threatened by methane gas from a leaking sewer line. A precaution against soil gas is to design for a *passive subslab depressurization system*. This involves at least one 4-in. (100-mm) pipe open at both ends. The lower end is set into a layer of clean, crushed rock at least 4 in. (100 mm) thick that lies immediately below the floor slab. The object is to allow air within this rock layer to enter the open end of the pipe. The slab is poured and carefully sealed around the pipe, and the pipe is extended (through interior walls) through the roof, where it can vent radon and other soil gases to a safer place. Heat from the building drives the stack effect within this pipe.

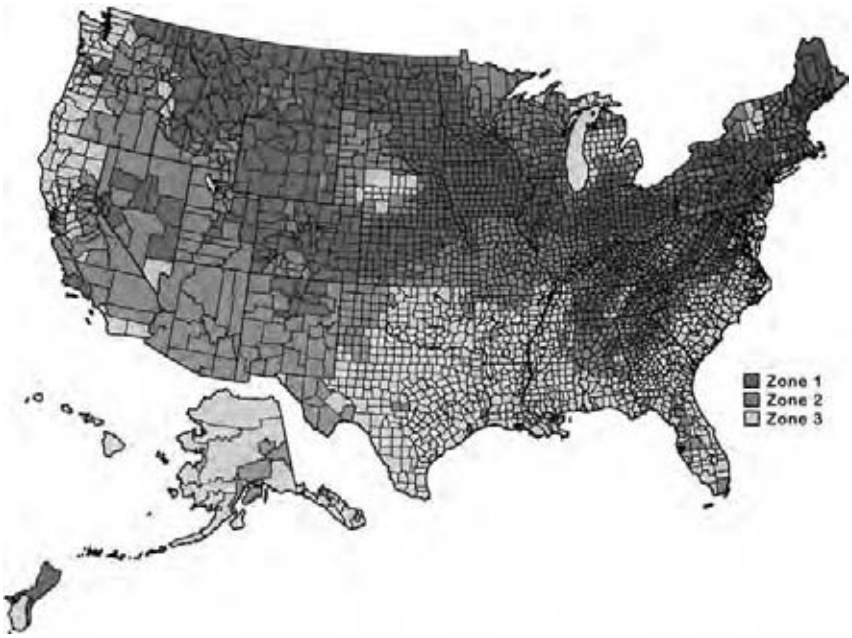


Fig. 5.10 *Relative risks of high radon levels in the soil by county in the United States. The darker the zone, the higher the risk (zone 1, for example, presents more risk than zone 2). (Courtesy U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. From* A Guide to Radon. *Environmental Health Center, National Safety Council. Washington, DC. 1996.)*

(d) Preheating Ventilation Air

Fresh air brought directly into a space during the winter will improve IAQ, but at the expense of thermal comfort. Several passive or low-energy strategies to mitigate this problem are available. The office building in Fig. 5.11 is surrounded by a 4-ft-wide (1.2-m) cavity between the inner and outer glass surfaces. Air within this cavity is heated, both by the sun and by indoor heat sources, and rises out of a damper-controlled opening. Although this building does not utilize such heated air for ventilation, it demonstrates the possibility of such an approach. See the Comstock Center (Fig. 10.63) as another example.

The use of a south-facing wall as a winter preheating device with an (unglazed) *transpired collector* (available as Solarwall) is illustrated in Fig. 5.12. Aluminum sheeting, specially finished for solar absorption and penetrated by thousands of tiny holes, is the exterior surface. Behind this is a cavity kept under negative pressure by a fan. Outdoor air is drawn through the holes, heated by the dark outer surface, and drawn up the cavity to the fan and then on to the space. Insulation and the interior surface complete the south wall. Thus, heat loss from the building through the south wall is recaptured by the inflowing outside air. In summer, a fan draws air directly from the outside, bypassing the solar cavity. The holes at the top of the wall serve as outlets for the stack effect produced by the solar gains through the outer surface. There are numerous installations around the world—one of the largest, at 108,000 ft^2 (10,034 m^2), is for an aircraft manufacturer in Quebec, Canada. For the design procedure, see NREL (1988).

Another approach to both residential winter ventilation and heat exchange is the *breathable wall* combined with an exhaust air heat pump. This system depends upon a house being under negative pressure, which is ensured by forced exhaust air. A heat pump then takes heat from the exhaust air and delivers that heat either for space heating or domestic water heating. The fresh air to replace that being expelled is drawn in through the outside walls by a unique combination of fiberglass lap siding board, fiberglass insulation batts, breathable sheathing, and *no* vapor barrier. This allows a slow, steady stream of cold air to enter, be warmed by the insulation, then enter the house. More information is available from the National Research Council Canada.

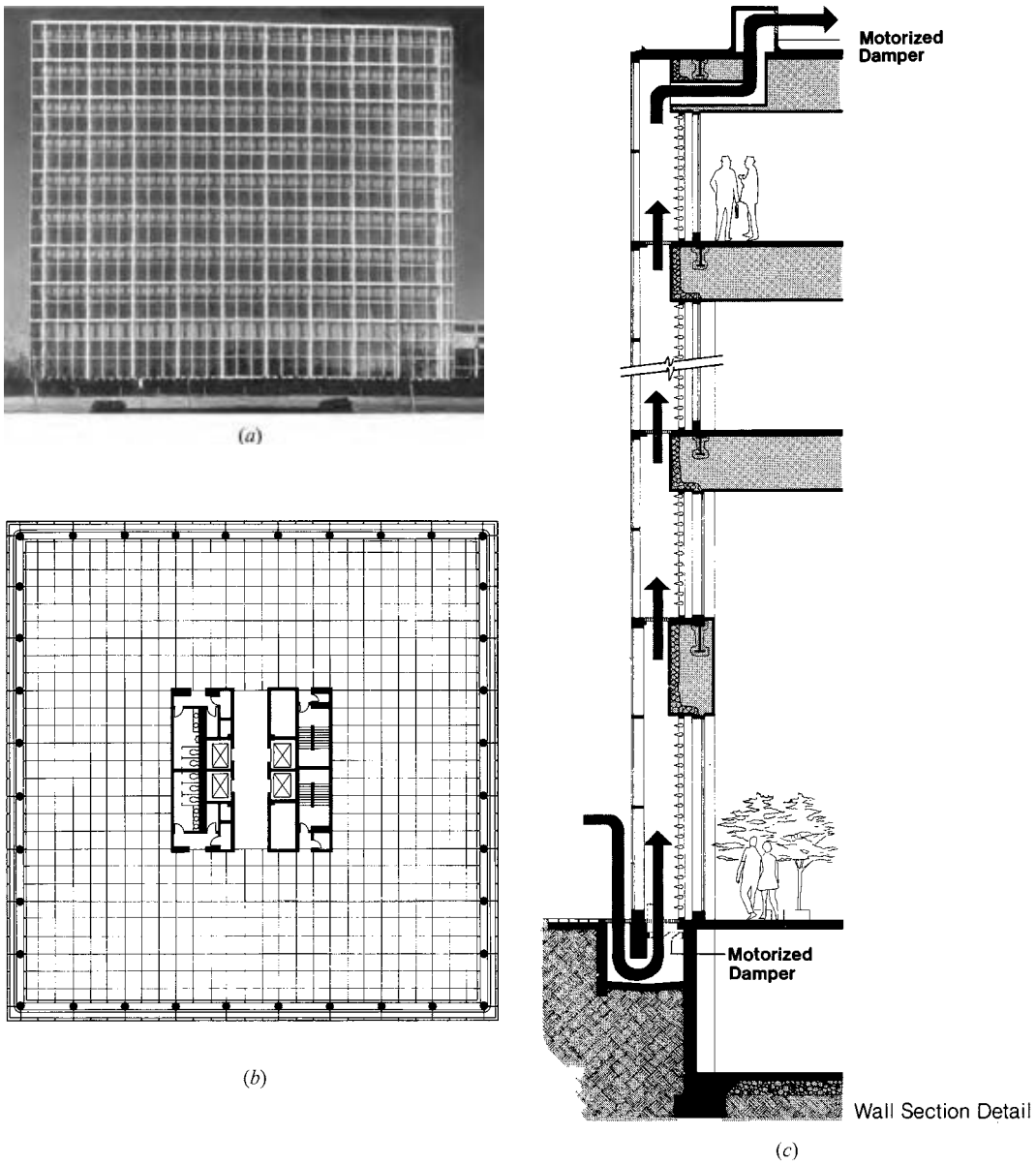
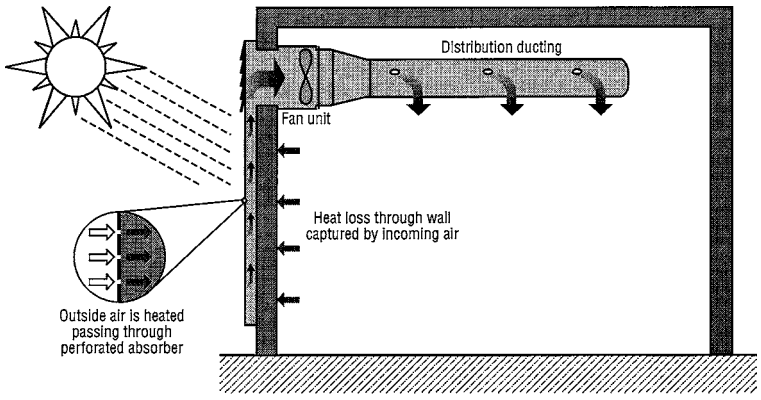


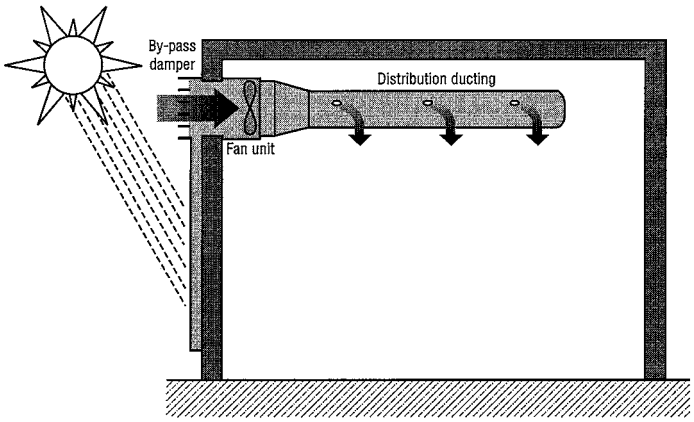
Fig. 5.11 *The Occidental Chemical Corporate Office Building, Niagara Falls, New York. (Architects: Cannon Design, Inc.) (a) Fully exposed to sun and wind despite its downtown site, the building appears as a conventional curtainwall box. (b) An ordinary-looking plan with a central core and suspended ceilings. (c) On all four sides, a 4-ft (1.2-m) cavity allows for maintenance of movable daylight louvers and window washing, as well as for ample natural ventilation by the stack effect. Although cavity airflow is released at the roof, it could be utilized during winter as tempered fresh air to the interior.*

5.6 ACTIVE APPROACHES FOR CONTROL OF IAQ

This section concerns equipment that moves, heats or cools, humidifies or dehumidifies, and cleans air. A large range of capacities is involved, from room-sized to central whole-building air handling. A general note about heating and cooling system choice: Acceptable IAQ will be easier to achieve if the heating and cooling systems utilize forced-air motion, because some filtering is built into the air-handling equipment. However, separate air-cleaning systems are becoming increasingly common, so radiant heating systems with



(*a*)



(*b*)

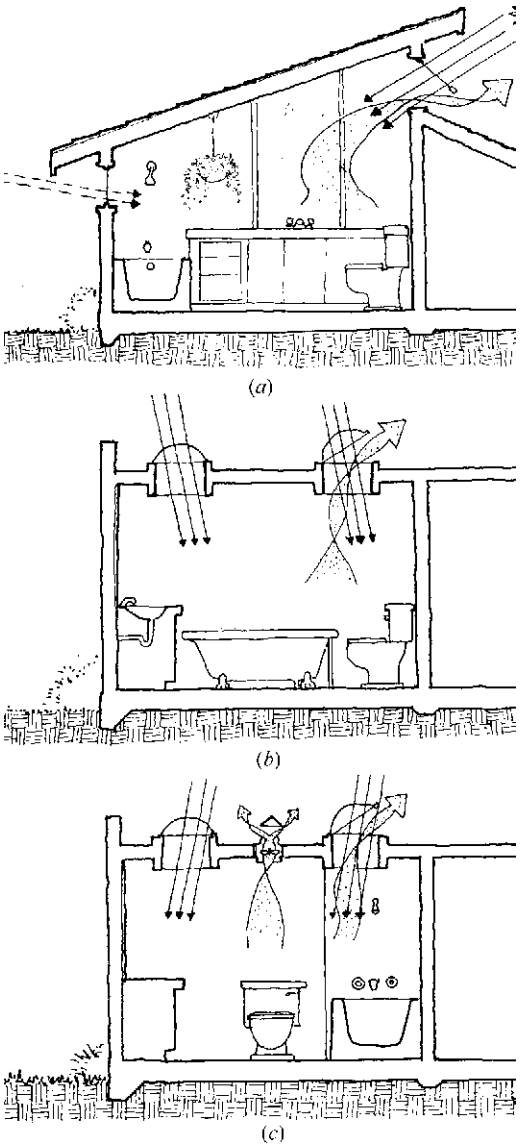
Fig. 5.12 *Winter preheating of fresh air on a south wall using an unglazed transpired collector (a). Tiny holes in the aluminum skin admit air to a cavity outside the wall's insulation, where it is preheated by sun on the dark aluminum, as well as by heat escaping through the insulation. A fan draws this air to a supply plenum, after which it is distributed to the space. In summer (b), the fan draws directly from the outside, and the collector is self-ventilated by the stack effect. (Courtesy of the National Renewable Energy Laboratory.)*

separate forced-air cleaning can yield high IAQ (given adequate outdoor air). For cooling, an economizer cycle (see Fig. 10.36) provides up to 100% outdoor air at times, and cooling by night ventilation of thermal mass provides many complete air changes during the nightly building maintenance activities that are so fume-producing. Evaporative cooling (see Chapter 8) provides a continuous flow of outdoor air.

(a) Exhaust Fans

Exhaust fans remove air that is odorous and/or excessively humid before it can spread beyond bathrooms, kitchens, or process areas, creating a negatively pressured area that further limits the spread of undesirable air. In buildings with heating systems without air motion (radiant heating), exhaust fans are often the only built-in devices for moving air. They are often very noisy, which is sometimes useful for covering noises associated with bathrooms, but also noisy enough to discourage their use over long periods of time. In its most simple application, the exhaust fan is a stand-alone device, with no thought about where the replacement air will be drawn from, and rarely much concern about where this unwanted air will be discharged to. (Discharge into attics, basements, or crawl spaces is prohibited by code.)

ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2-2007, *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Low-Rise Residential Buildings*, requires intermittent (user-controlled) exhaust fans of at least 50-cfm (25-L/s) capacity for bathrooms and 100 cfm (50 L/s) for kitchens. The intakes for these fans should be as close to the source of polluted air as possible so as not to drag such air across other locations before it leaves the space. In kitchens, this is directly above the range (grease, odors, and water vapor); in bathrooms, in the ceiling above the toilet (and shower) in order to remove the most moist air. Some options are shown in Fig. 5.13.



A more comprehensive approach in a residence includes the addition of a *principal exhaust fan*, which should be centrally located (drawing from the greatest space), quiet, and suitable for continuous use. Its exhaust capacity should be at least 50% of the entire system's capacity. In turn, this entire capacity is typically no less than 0.3 ACH. When this principal exhaust fan is operating, outdoor air must be brought in, tempered, and circulated throughout the residence. The tempering can be done by mixing with indoor air or by heating. Figure 5.14 shows two approaches to whole-house exhaust, one for forced-air systems and one without forced-air motion.

This additional continuous exhaust capacity may cause problems of inadequate air for, or spillage of fumes from, combustion equipment. Such equipment (furnaces, stove-top barbecues, etc.) with a net exhaust greater than 150 cfm (75 L/s) must be provided with a makeup air fan that turns on/off with the equipment.

(b) Heating/Cooling of Makeup Air

Where climates are mild and/or energy is inexpensive, special equipment (Fig. 5.15) other than heat exchangers can be used to heat and/or cool a particularly large quantity of makeup

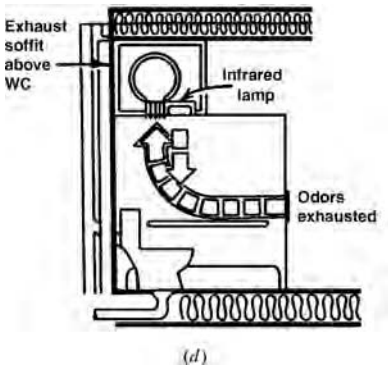


Fig. 5.13 *Options for exhaust air from toilet rooms: (a) Daylight enters from the sides; incoming air from the lower window picks up heat and moisture near the ceiling and exits through a high clerestory. (b) Two skylights admit daylight; one exhausts hot, moist air at the ceiling. Makeup air will be needed from the adjacent rooms. (c) Adding an exhaust fan will ensure negative pressure in the bathroom, isolating moisture and odors from the adjacent rooms. (d) In public toilet rooms, exhaust directly above toilets is desirable. In cold weather, small radiant heat lamps with timer switches could add task heat and light.*

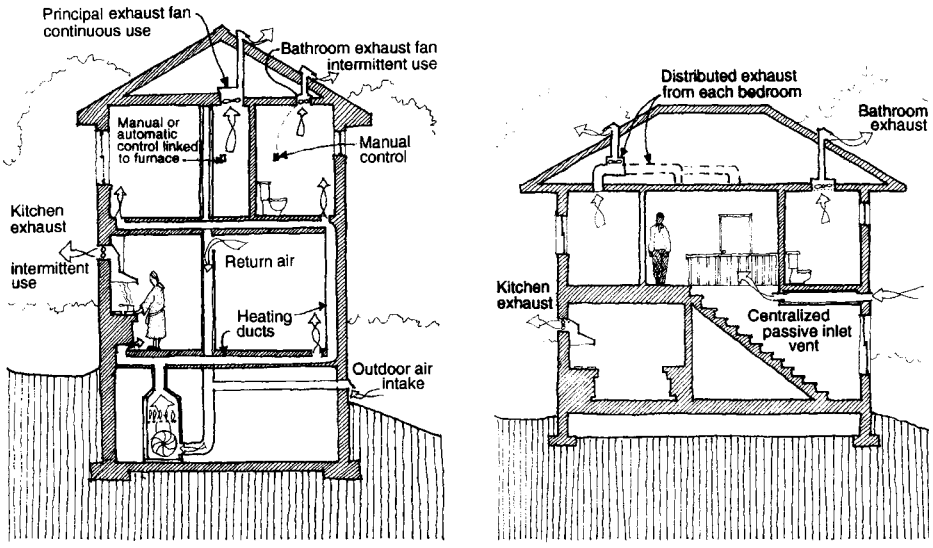


Fig. 5.14 *Ensured ventilation for residences. (a) Ventilation system with forced-air heat. (b) Partially distributed exhaust system with a vent. (Based upon Canadian Research Council studies.)*

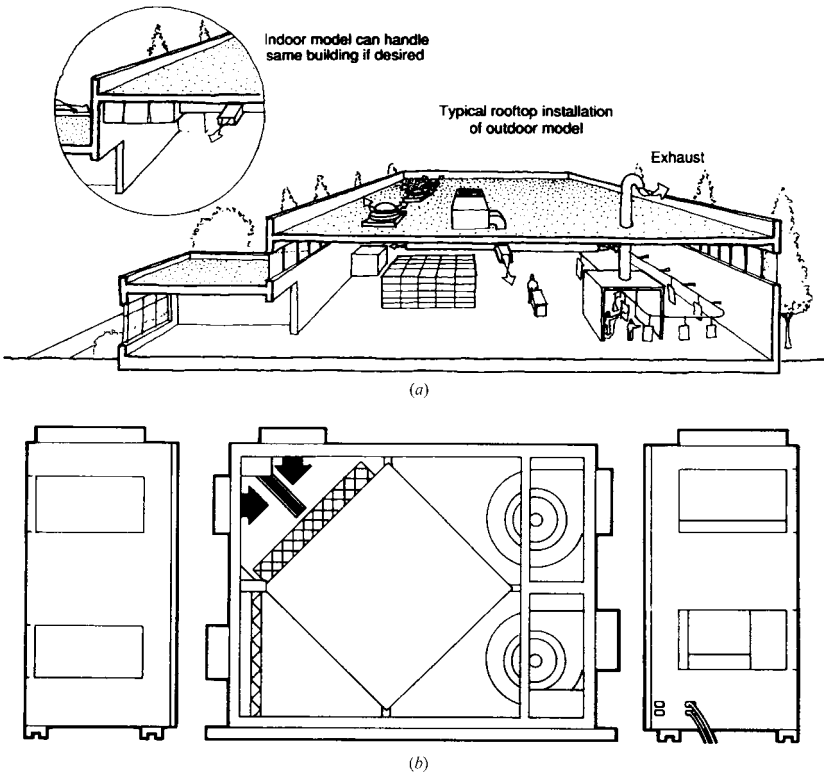


Fig. 5.15 *Makeup air heaters/coolers. (a) Distributed on a factory roof, these units prevent negative indoor air pressures by providing replacement (makeup) air for the air that is exhausted from processes indoors. Often, a separate heating/cooling system will be used for gains or losses through the building skin. (b) Heat recovery ventilator, utilizing a cross-flow core, serves from 200 to 900 cfm (100 to 450 L/s), with supply air entering at a temperature 0.6 to 0.8 that of exhaust air temperature. (© Conservation Energy Systems, Minneapolis, MN.)*

air. Especially common in factories or laboratory buildings with high exhaust air requirements, these simple devices often supplement the building's main heating/cooling system, which deals primarily with heat gains/losses through the building skin. In warm, dry climates, evaporative coolers are often used for makeup air because they are already designed to utilize 100% outdoor air. Even in hot and more humid climates, *indirect evaporative cooling* can help lower the temperature of makeup air. In Fig. 5.16, outdoor air is at 104°F (40°C) and 10% RH (point A). Two streams of outdoor air are involved. An evaporative cooler cools one air stream along a constant wet-bulb temperature line to point B, where it is now 70% RH but considerably cooler at 73°F (23°C): in the comfort zone, but warm and humid. At this point, it enters an air-to-air heat exchanger (see Section 5.6c). The other outdoor airstream enters the other side of this heat exchanger, again at point A conditions. As the two streams exchange heat, they move toward the same temperature: the evaporatively cooled stream moves from point B to point C, about 86°F (30°C) and 42% RH and is then exhausted. On the other side, outdoor air moves from point A to point D, about 91°F (33°C) and 16% RH. This second airstream is *indirectly evaporatively cooled*. Although it is still well above the comfort zone, it can then be either cooled by typical refrigerant systems or evaporatively cooled until it reaches the comfort zone.

(c) Heat Exchangers

As the tightness of construction increases and fewer air changes per hour (ACH) occur from infiltration (unintended air leaks), forced ventilation becomes more attractive as a means of reducing indoor air pollution. When a heat exchanger is used, it is possible to maintain an adequate supply of fresh air without severe energy consumption consequences. Figure 5.17 illustrates the basic principle of a simple air-to-air heat exchanger that is becoming increasingly common for tightly built small buildings. Note that the outgoing and incoming airstreams must be adjacent.

Some commercially available heat exchangers are capable of extracting 70% or more of the heat from exhaust air. The lower the volume of airflow, the higher the efficiency. Table 5.8, Part A, shows representative sizes, airflows, and efficiencies for these devices. For the best diffusion of incoming fresh air through a building, the heat exchanger should be incorporated at the central forced-air fan (Fig. 5.17*b*). When a central forced-air system is not available, heat exchangers can be placed at various points in a building; typically, each heat exchanger is then equipped with its own fan. These may serve as makeup air units that are more energy efficient than the devices discussed in Section 5.6(b).

Some cautions about air-to-air heat exchangers:

1. Avoid using them on exhaust airstreams that are contaminated with grease, lint, or excessive moisture (through cooking and clothes drying

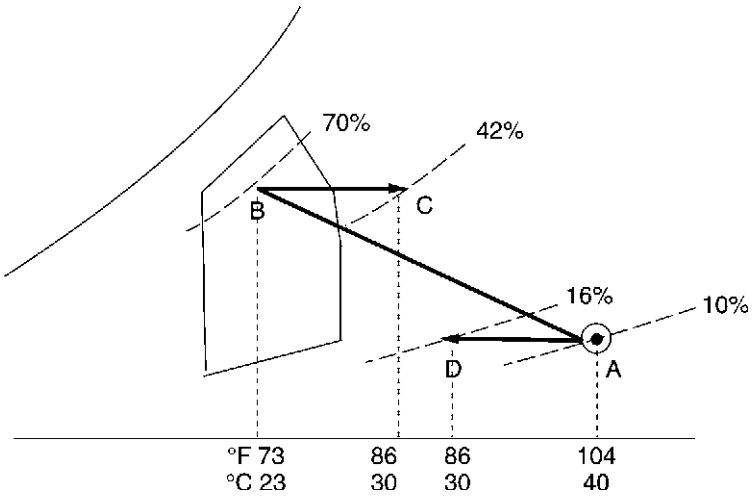
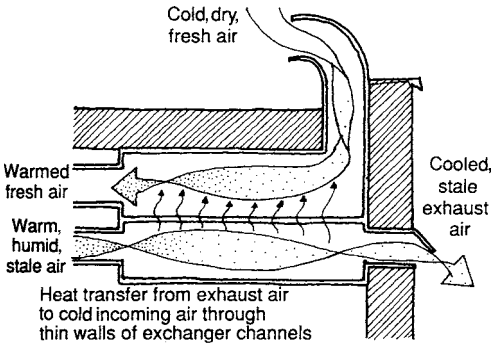
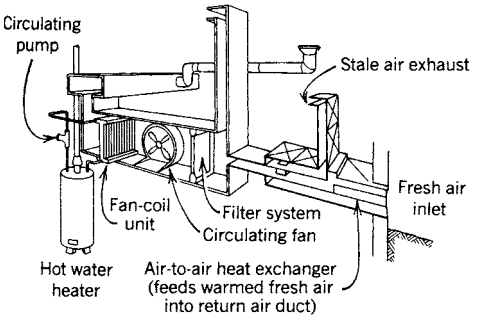


Fig. 5.16 *Indirect evaporative cooling can precool fresh air. The psychrometrics of the process.*



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 5.17 *Air-to-air heat exchangers are particularly helpful in cold weather. (a) The basic principle of operation. (b) A superinsulated home is heated by coils fed from the domestic water heater, plus a heat exchanger to preheat incoming cold air. (Reprinted by permission of Alberta Agriculture, Home and Community Design Branch, Low Energy Home Designs; © 1983 by Brick House Publishing Co.) (c) Fan-powered heat exchanger utilizing a heat/moisture exchange wheel (see also Fig. 5.20). This model is adjustable from 70 to 200 cfm (35 to 100 L/s), can be ceiling-, wall-, or floor-mounted, and operates at 75% to 80% thermal efficiency. (Courtesy of Air Xchange, Inc., Rockland, MA.)*

TABLE 5.8 Representative Heat Exchanger Data for Smaller Buildings

PART A. **AIR-TO-AIR SENSIBLE HEAT EXCHANGERS**				
Approximate Size[a] ***L × W × H***		***Airflow Range***		***Temperature Recovery at 32°F (0°C)***
in.	**mm**	**cfm**	**L/s**	
21 × 13 × 25	535 × 330 × 630	50–120	25–60	70%
34 × 17 × 21	865 × 435 × 530	75–225	35–110	80%
53 × 17 × 21	1335 × 435 × 530	75–225	35–110	93%
47 × 20 × 37	1195 × 505 × 940	350–700	165–330	65%

Source: Conservation Energy Systems, Inc., Saskatoon and Minneapolis.

PART B. **AIR-TO-AIR SENSIBLE + LATENT HEAT EXCHANGERS**				
Approximate Size[b] ***L × W × H***		***Airflow Range***		**Wheel Efficiency**
in.	**mm**	**cfm**	**L/s**	
46 × 32 × 24	1170 × 815 × 610	500–1000	235–470	84–82%
54 × 48 × 34	1375 × 1220 × 865	600–1600	285–760	87–80%
		1600–2300	760–1090	75–70%
67 × 67 × 43	1705 × 1705 × 1095	1750–3250	830–1535	85–80%
		3000–4500	1420–2125	76–71%
124 × 84 × 60[c]	3150 × 2135 × 1525	3500–6500	1660–3070	85–80%
		6000–9000	2835–4250	76–71%

Source: Greenheck Fan Corporation, Schofield, WI.

[a]Access to one face (L × W) is needed for servicing.

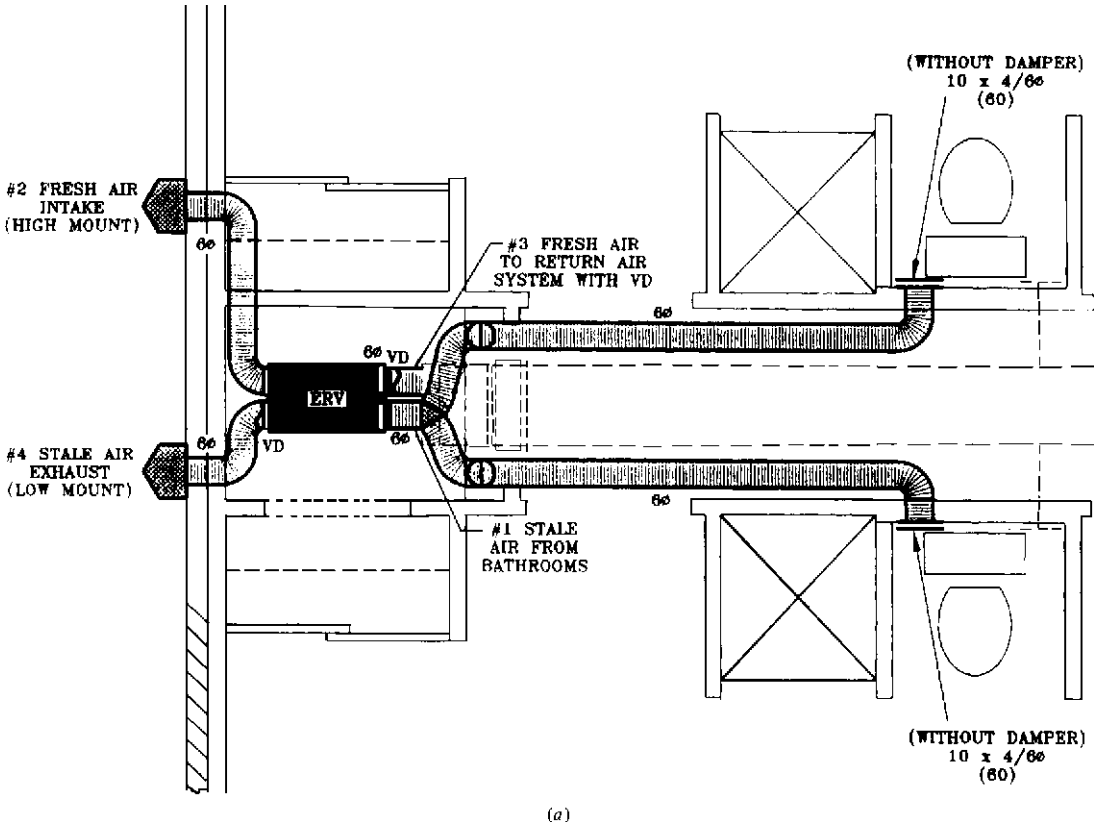
[b]Several arrangements (interior and rooftop) are available; dimensions do not include service clearance access, supply hoods, or exhaust hoods.

[c]This unit contains two wheels.

in particular) because clogging, frosting, and fire hazard problems can develop.
2. In colder winter conditions, a built-in defroster, which will consume energy, will be needed.
3. Carefully locate the outdoor fresh air intake. Keep this intake as far as possible from the exhaust air outlet to avoid drawing contaminated exhaust air back into the building. Keep the intake away from pollution sources such as vehicle exhaust, furnace flues, dryer and exhaust fan vents, and plumbing vents.

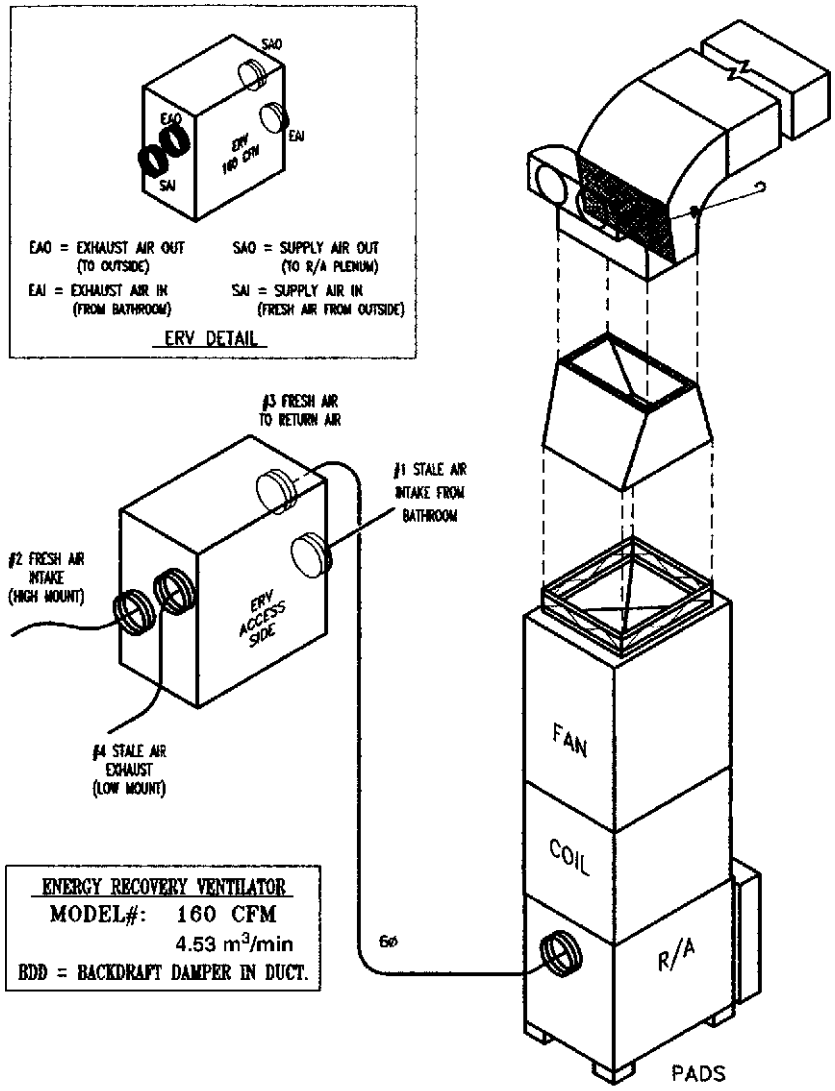
A student housing complex in Greensboro, North Carolina, utilizes heat exchangers on the exhaust air from bathrooms (Fig. 5.18). These exhaust devices are called *energy recovery ventilators* (ERVs). Each floor of the three-story complex has four apartments, each with 1078-ft^2 (100-m^2) floor area and 8-ft (2-m) ceilings. Each apartment has its own air-to-air ERV that accepts air from the two small bathrooms in the apartment. Control is by individual switches in the bathrooms. Prefiltered outdoor air is drawn into the ERV, exchanging heat with the outgoing exhaust air. This fresh air is then fed directly into the air handler for each apartment's heat pump, adjacent to the ERV. Thus, the bathrooms are under negative pressure relative to the rest of the apartment. Outside, the fresh air intake is located high on the wall, the exhaust outlet lower. Intake and outlet locations on the walls are separated by a minimum of 8 ft (2 m).

A *heat pipe* (Fig. 5.19) also transfers sensible heat between adjacent airstreams. Within the heat pipe, a charge of refrigerant spends its life alternately evaporating, condensing, and migrating by capillary action through a porous wick. Because the only thing that moves is the refrigerant and it



(*a*)

Fig. 5.18 *Energy recovery ventilator (ERV) serves two small bathrooms (a) in a student housing complex in Greensboro, North Carolina. The ERV is activated by switches in either bathroom. Air is drawn out beside the water closet and exchanges heat (at about 85% efficiency) with incoming fresh air. This tempered fresh air is then mixed with some return air and fed directly to the indoor unit of a heat pump (b) located above the ERV. The supply air is then fed to other rooms, ensuring a negative pressure in the bathroom while the ERV operates. Each of 16 apartments has its own ERV and heat pump. (Design by Harry John Boody, Jamestown, NC.)*



(*b*)

Fig. 5.18 *(Continued)*

is self-contained, no maintenance and long life are likely. Efficiency ranges from 50% to 70%; modular sizes are available to 54 in. × 138 in. × 8 rows deep (1.4 × 3.5 m).

Heat pipes can assist in the dehumidification and cooling of incoming air. The typical cooling process using cooling coils is shown in Chapter 8. This potentially energy-intensive process often overcools the air to "wring out" (condense) water, then reheats the air. The heat pipe precools the air (subtracting heat) before the cooling coil, then warms it (adding heat) after the cooling coil. No energy input is required. A configuration of the heat pipe for this task is shown in Fig. 5.19*b*.

Energy transfer wheels (Fig. 5.20) go further than the two preceding devices in that they transfer latent as well as sensible heat. In winter, they recover both sensible and latent heat from exhaust air; in summer, they both cool and dehumidify the incoming fresh air. Seals and laminar flow of air through the wheels prevent mixing of exhaust air and incoming air. A further precaution in the process purges each sector of the wheel briefly, using

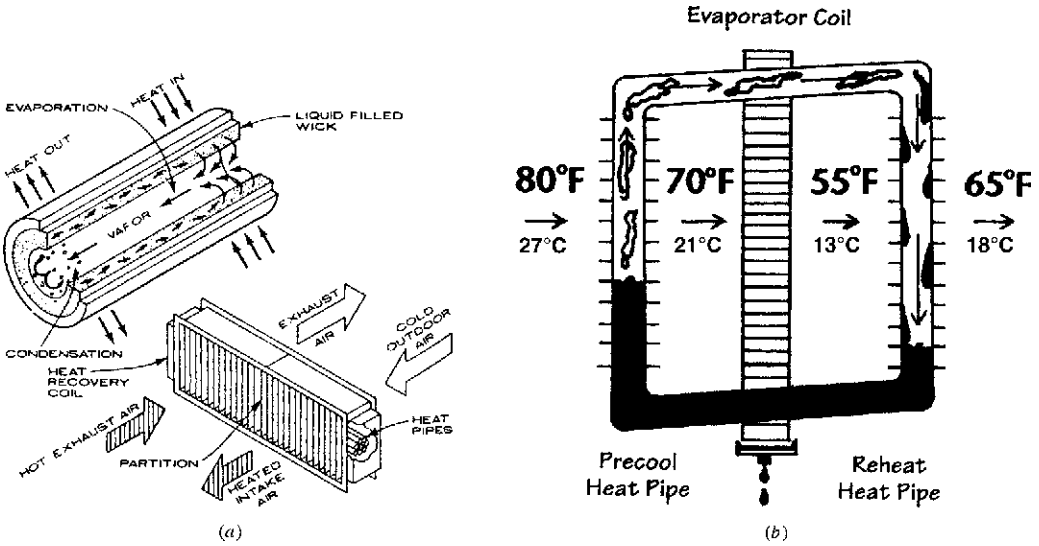


Fig. 5.19 *The heat pipe is a self-contained device with no moving parts. (a) It silently transfers sensible heat between adjacent fresh-air intake and stale-air exhaust airstreams. (From AIA: Ramsey and Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards, *9th ed.; © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.) (b) The heat pipe can increase moisture removal by first precooling incoming hot air before it reaches the cooling coils. Then the heat is returned to the cooled air, bringing it to a temperature-humidity combination acceptable for supply air to a space. (Courtesy of Heat Pipe Technologies, Inc., and* Environmental Building News.*)*

fresh air to blow away any unpleasant residual effects of the exhaust air on the wheel surfaces. Carryover of exhaust air qualities, except those of heat and moisture, is between 4% and 8% without purging and less than 1% with purging. Efficiency ranges from 70% to 80%, and available sizes range up to 144 in. (3.6 m) in diameter. Table 5.8, Part B, shows some representative sizes, airflows, and efficiencies. A smaller example of this device is shown in Fig. 5.17*c*.

(d) Desiccant Cooling

Another rotating-wheel process involves *desiccant cooling.* Desiccant cooling systems (Fig. 5.21) are attractive because they use no refrigerants (that may contain CFCs), and they lower humidity without having to overcool the air. The desiccants (such as silica gel, activated alumina, or synthetic polymers) in an *active* system must be heated to drive out the moisture they remove from the incoming air; at present, natural gas is typically used, but solar energy is a promising substitute due to its plentiful summer availability. Waste heat from other mechanical systems may also be used. In a *passive* desiccant system, heat from a building's exhaust air is enough to release and vent the moisture removed from incoming air.

Research on materials suitable for desiccant cooling and solar-driven regeneration should produce improvements in the types available as well as their performance. For an extended discussion of both solid- and liquid-based desiccant systems, see Grondzik (2007).

(e) Task Dehumidification and Humidification

Humidity affects comfort; for a sedentary person, a 30% RH change will produce about the same comfort sensation as a 2°F (1°C) change in temperature. Higher humidity adds to hot air discomfort, making evaporation more difficult, increasing skin wettedness, and increasing the friction between skin and clothing or furniture surfaces. As RH exceeds 60%, problems with IAQ increase due to mold and mildew growth. Lower humidity produces cooler and drier sensations, but too-low humidity can irritate the skin.

For spaces that need only dehumidification rather than mechanical cooling, *refrigerant dehumidifiers* are commercially available (Fig. 5.22). Their advantage over desiccant

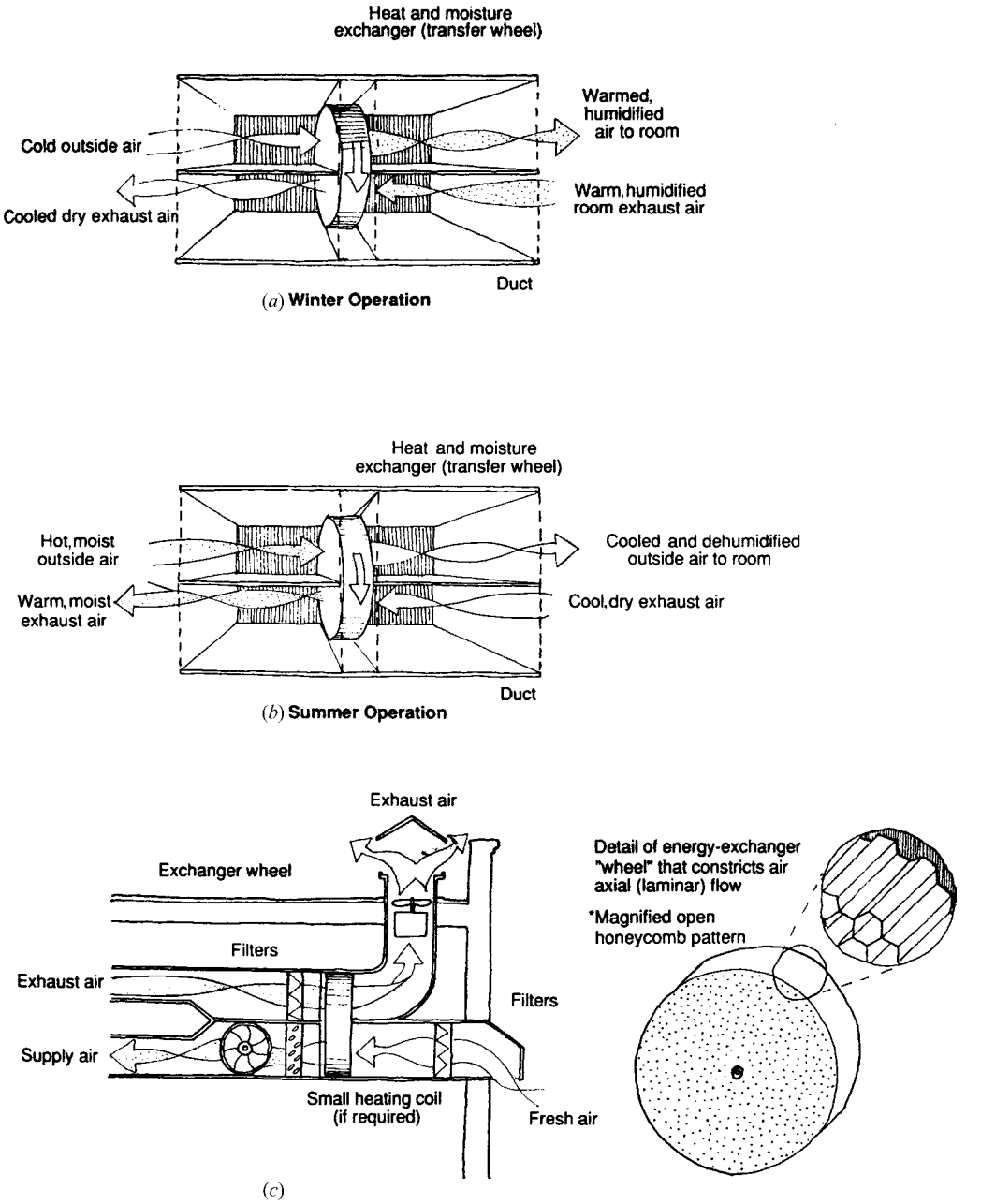
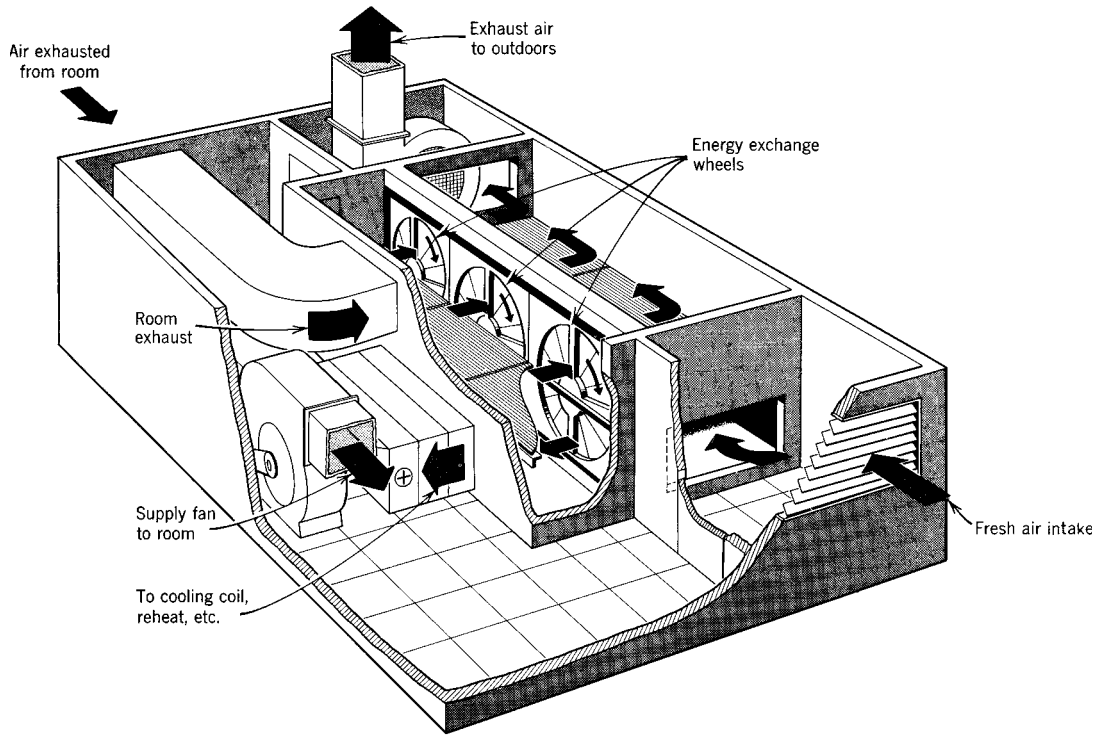
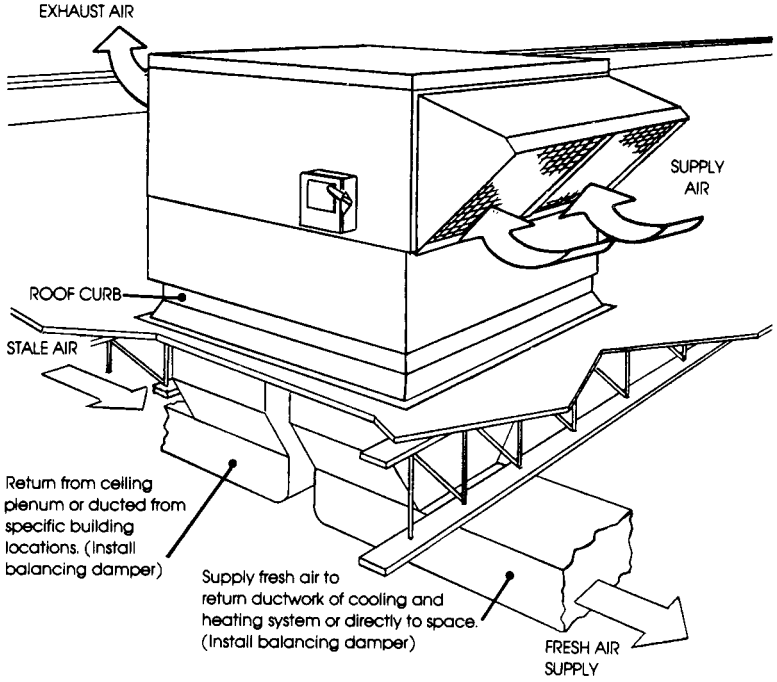


Fig. 5.20 *Energy transfer wheels. The wheel surface is impregnated with lithium chloride (or similar material), which absorbs moisture and transfers it to the other airstream. The wheel delivers moist air in winter (a) and dry air in summer (b). Cross section (c) through the wheel and the two airstreams it serves. Exhaust air may be filtered to help keep the wheel clean. (d) Multiple-unit installation. Room exhaust air passes through the upper chambers, and incoming fresh air passes through the lower chambers. Wheels rotate at 8 to 10 rpm. (e) Rooftop unit supplies up to 1000 cfm (500 L/s). (Courtesy of Air Xchange, Inc., Rockland, MA.)*



(*d*)



(*e*)

Fig. 5.20 *(Continued)*

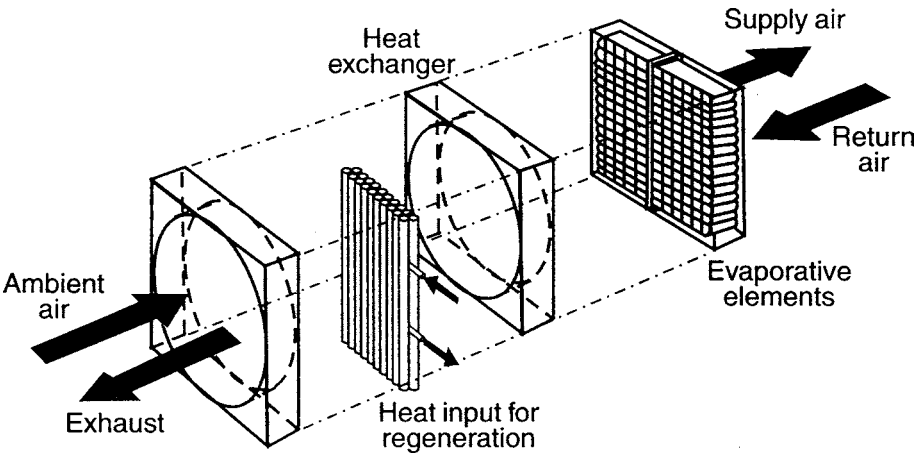
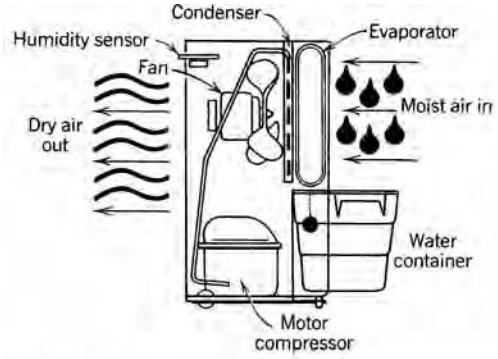


Fig. 5.21 *Desiccant cooling utilizes a rotating wheel impregnated with either silica gel or another desiccant material. The wheel removes moisture from incoming hot outdoor air and delivers some of it to outgoing exhaust air. The remaining moisture must be driven from the wheel by a heat source: natural gas or, ideally, solar energy. (National Renewable Energy Laboratory.)*

dehumidifiers is that the air temperature remains essentially unchanged during dehumidification (desiccant dehumidifiers raise the temperature of the dried air). These devices consume energy to run the refrigeration cycle, however, and this energy is added, as heat, to the space. Accumulated water must periodically be removed from these units and, if untended, could become a source of disease. Most refrigerant dehumidifiers encounter operating difficulties at air temperatures below 65°F (18°C), at which point frost forms on their cooling coils. This could cause problems in a tightly enclosed residence in winter.



Typical Performance Data

Watts	290	450	465	630
Pints per day[a]	14	20	25	30
Unit dimensions (in.)				
Height	20½	20½	21½	21½
Width, 11¾				
Depth, 16¾				
"Average" room size served	20′ × 32′	35′ × 40′	40′ × 48′	40′ × 60′

[a]For air at 80°F, 60% RH.

Fig. 5.22 *Refrigerant dehumidifiers typically are installed as free-standing units in smaller buildings.*

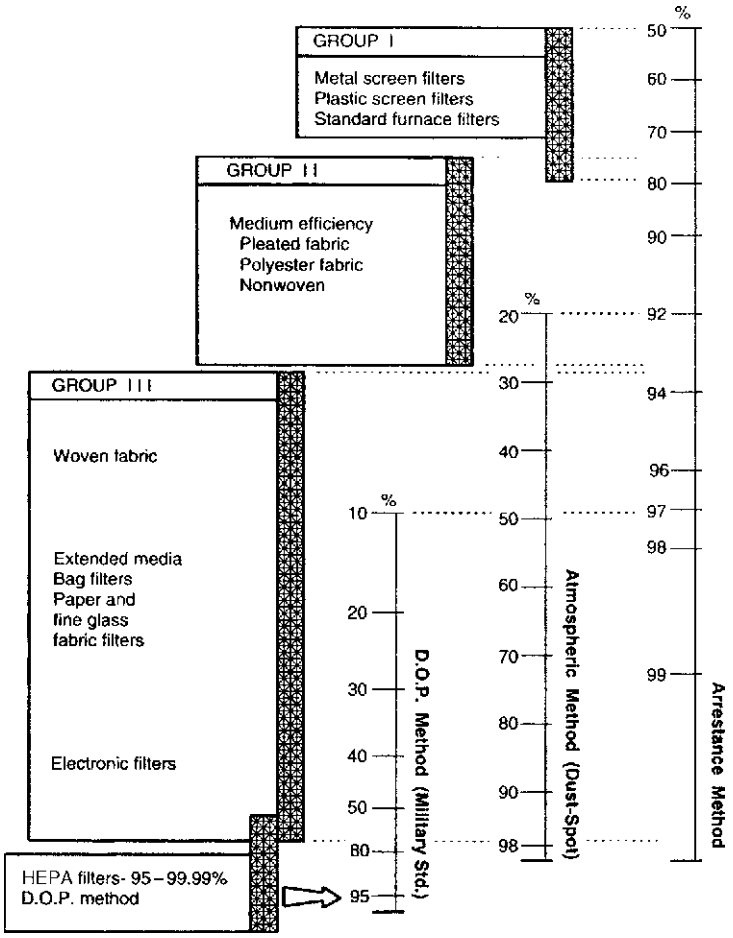


Fig. 5.23 *Air filter efficiencies. Methods of determining efficiency vary; the Arrestance Method can be used across all groups, while the Atmospheric (Dust-Spot) Method should be used for medium- and high-performance filters. The Detection Operational Program (DOP) Method is a military standard. (From D. Rousseau and J. Wasley. 1997.* Healthy by Design. *Hartley & Marks. Point Roberts, WA.)*

Task humidifiers are widely available and often used to relieve symptoms of respiratory illnesses. Again, the problem of bacterial and mold growth in water reservoirs arises; some products add an ultraviolet (UV) lamp to counteract this threat.

(f) Filters

There is a wide variety of particle air pollutants, as described in Table 5.2. The larger particulates are the easiest to remove, but much smaller respirable particles pose a greater threat to health. Not all pollutants can be removed by filters. Figure 5.23 compares filter groups and testing methods with associated filter efficiencies. Groups I, II, and III are widely used and are generally illustrated in Fig. 5.24. The highest-efficiency filter, the high-efficiency particulate arrestance (HEPA), is most often found in special air cleaners for unusually polluted or IAQ-demanding environments. Air filter characteristics are summarized in Table 5.9. See ASHRAE Standards 52.1-1992 and 52.2-2007 for further details on air filter ratings. Specialists recommend using dust collectors rather than filters when the dust loading equals or exceeds 10 mg/m^3. Again, it is wisest to remove pollutants at the source.

Particulate Filters. Particulate filters are very common and come in several guises. Panel filters are furnished with HVAC equipment and function mainly to protect the fans from large particles of lint or dust. Because they are relatively crude, they are not really considered to be air-cleaning equipment. Media filters are much finer, using highly efficient pleated filter paper within a frame. They function both by straining and impaction. The larger particles are strained out by the closely

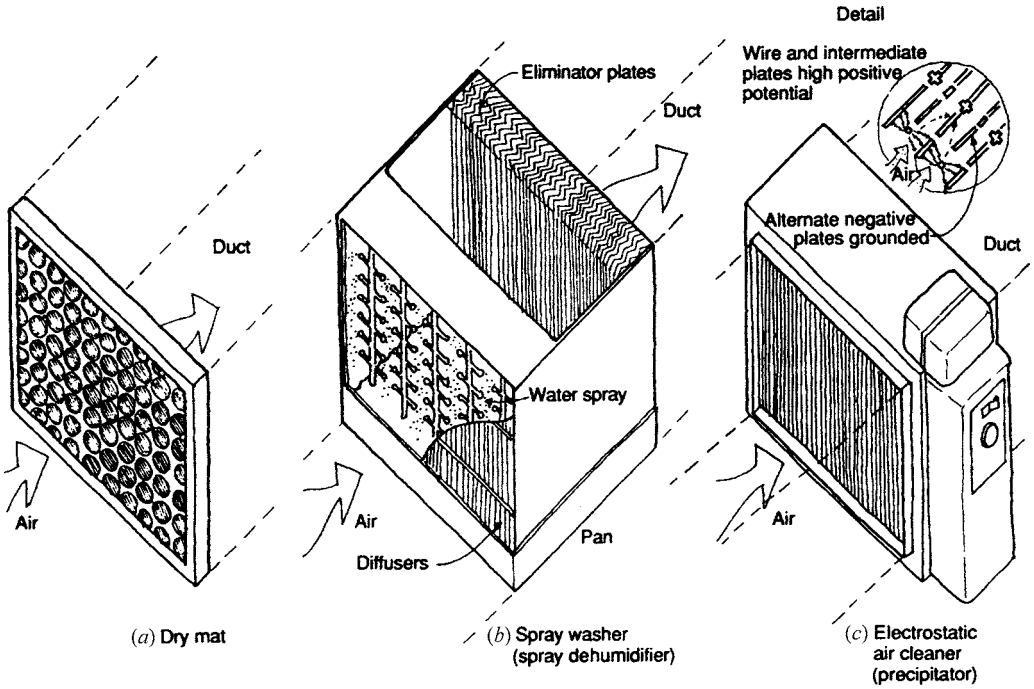


Fig. 5.24 *Several air filter types (a, b, c); not shown are pleated and roll types.*

spaced filter fibers, while some of the smaller particles that would otherwise pass through are pushed into the fibers due to air turbulence. Particulate filters need regular maintenance, especially media filters, which can become blocked and cause damage to HVAC equipment and increased energy consumption if not replaced frequently enough. Media filters of high quality are expected to perform at an efficiency of 90% (minimum) and are typically at least 6 in. (150 mm) deep; this is for a six-month minimum life cycle.

Adsorption Filters. Adsorption filters are for gaseous contaminant removal and vary according to the pollutant in question. Activated-charcoal filters are the most common of these types, absorbing materials with high molecular

TABLE 5.9 Air Filter Characteristics

	Percent Efficiency Range			
Media and Type	**Atmospheric Dust**	**Small Particles**	**Dust-Holding Capacity**	**Airflow Resistance in. water (Pa)[a]**
Dry panel, throwaway	15–30	NA	Excellent	0.1–0.5 (25–125)
Viscous panel, throwaway	20–35	NA	Good	0.1–0.5 (25–125)
Dry panel, cleanable	15–20	NA	Superior	0.08–0.5 (20–125)
Viscous panel, cleanable	15–25	NA	Superior	0.08–0.5 (20–125)
Mat panel, renewable	10–90	0–60	Good to superior	0.15–1.0 (37–250)
Roll mat, renewable	10–90	0–55	Good to superior	0.15–0.65 (37–162)
Roll oil bath	15–25	NA	Superior	0.3–0.5 (75–125)
Close pleat mat panel	NA	85–95	Varies	0.4–1.0 (100–250)
High-efficiency particulate	NA	95–99.9	Varies	1.0–3.0 (250–745)
Membrane	NA	to 100	NA	NA
Electrostatic with mat	80–98	NA	Varies	0.15–1.25 (37–310)

Source: Reprinted by permission from AIA: Ramsey and Sleeper, *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed., © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons.

[a]Higher airflow resistance values will require increased fan energy.

weights but allowing those of lower weights to pass. Other adsorption filters use porous pellets impregnated with active chemicals such as potassium permanganate; the chemicals react with contaminants, reducing their harmful effects. Adsorption filters must be regularly regenerated or replaced.

High-quality adsorption filters contain gas adsorbers and/or oxidizers with sufficient capacity to remain active over a full service cycle of 6 months at 24 hours per day, 7 days per week. Air velocity should be such as to allow the air to remain in the filter for about 0.06 second.

Air Washers. Air washers are sometimes used to control humidity and bacterial growth. The moisture involved can pose a threat if these devices are not well maintained.

Electronic Air Cleaners. Electronic air cleaners can pose a different threat due to ozone production, but have the advantage of demanding less maintenance. Static electricity is produced in the self-charging mechanical filter by air rushing through it; larger particles thus cling to the filter. The more humid and/or higher the air velocity, the lower the filtering efficiency. In a charged media filter, an electrostatic field is created by applying a high dc voltage to the dielectric material of the filter. Many particles are not polarized, however, due to an insufficiently strong field. A two-stage electronic air cleaner first passes dirty air between ionizing wires of a high-voltage power supply. Electrons are stripped from the particulate contaminants, leaving them positively charged. Then these ionized particles pass between collector plates that are closely spaced and oppositely charged. The particles are simultaneously repelled by the positive plates and attracted to the negative plates, where they are collected.

(g) Locating Air-Cleaning Equipment

Before the advent of IAQ concerns, buildings were often designed with rather crude panel filters located only at the HVAC equipment; they were primarily intended to intercept materials that might adversely affect combustion or heat exchange. In addition to these equipment-protecting devices, a building requiring high IAQ will now have a combination of high-efficiency particle filters and adsorption filters.

The panel filters provided with HVAC equipment are usually located *upstream* from the unit fan. High-efficiency particle and adsorption filtering systems should be located *downstream* from the HVAC cooling coils and drain pans to ensure that any microbiological contaminants from those wet surfaces are removed rather than being distributed throughout the building.

In buildings where a filtering system must be integrated with a central HVAC system (typical of small buildings), the HVAC system should be capable of continuously circulating air at the rate of 6 to 10 times per hour and of operating against the considerable static pressure that results from high-efficiency filters.

(h) Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation

Since early in the twentieth century, UV radiation in the C band (200–280 nm wavelength) has been used to kill harmful microorganisms, but under tightly controlled conditions. Now there are UV lamp units that work within HVAC systems, promising to control fungi, prevent the development and spread of bacteria, and reduce the spread of viruses. As an additional benefit, cooling coils and drain pans stay cleaner. The germicidal output of these lamps is somewhat higher at room temperatures (and above) than at lower temperatures. These devices take up very little space (they are placed within ductwork) and generate no ozone or other chemicals. They are even more effective when installed in a UV-reflective duct interior: aluminum seems to be the best UV reflector commonly available. UV lamp life is 5000 to 7500 hours.

UV radiation also looks promising as a treatment for VOCs. The National Renewable Energy Laboratory is helping to develop a process that bombards polluted air with UV radiation in the presence of special catalysts. Pollutants including cigarette smoke, formaldehyde, and toluene are quickly broken down into molecules of water and carbon dioxide.

(i) Individual Space Air Cleansing

Energy conservation considerations have reduced the air circulation rate in many central air-handling systems; moving less air reduces the



Fig. 5.25 *A stand-alone electrostatic air filter operates independently of the central HVAC system; no ductwork is required. Airflow rates vary; the slower the flow, the more efficient the filtering. Flush-mount (recessed in suspended ceiling), ceiling surface-mount, wall-mount, and portable models are available. (Courtesy of Tectronic Products Co. Inc., East Syracuse, NY.)*

energy used by fans. One result can be low distribution efficiency, which causes poorly mixed air within the occupied spaces. With local (individual space) air-filtering equipment, both a high circulation rate and proper air mixing are achievable. Each such unit has its own fan that can operate either with or without the central HVAC fan. An example of an independent electrostatic air filter is shown in Fig. 5.25.

Air circulation through these filters should occur at rates between 6 and 10 times per hour. The air is then ducted to diffusers, hence circulating in a sweeping pattern across a space to return air intakes on the opposite side.

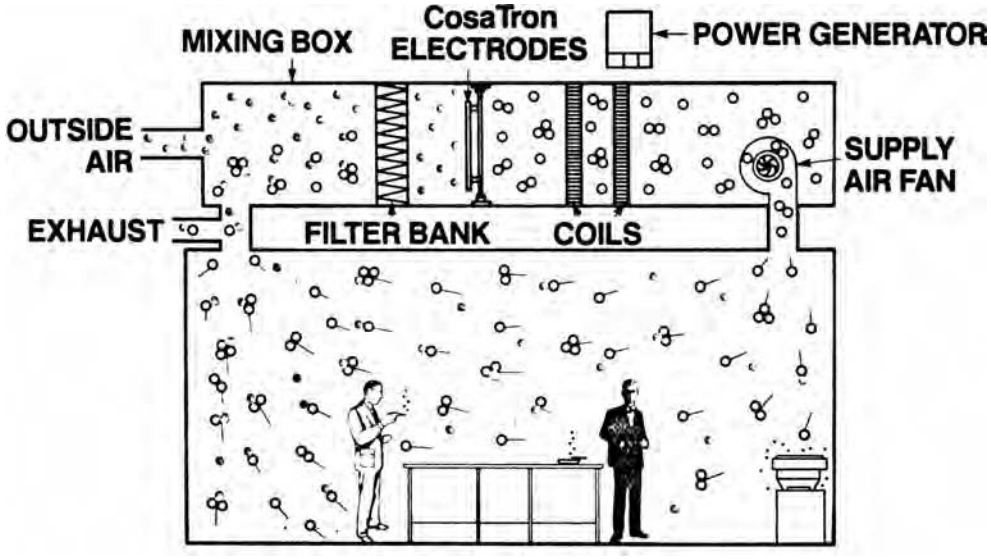


Fig. 5.26 *This air-cleaning system uses a combination of high-voltage dc and high-frequency ac. The supply air emerges with greatly reduced submicron particles, which have coagulated into larger particles more easily carried by air currents. As this air moves through the occupied space, it picks up submicron particles and is either exhausted or returned to the equipment, where it is filtered to remove the larger particles. (Courtesy of CRS Industries Inc., Tampa, FL.)*

A variation on electrostatic air cleaning is shown in Fig. 5.26. In this equipment, a mixture of outdoor and indoor air is passed through a complex electrical field produced by both high-voltage dc and high-frequency ac. This supply air emerges with greatly reduced submicron particles that have coagulated into larger particles more easily carried by air currents. As this air moves through the occupied space, it picks up submicron particles and is returned to the equipment (some is exhausted), where it is filtered to remove the larger particles.

Portable air cleaners abound. One more elaborate model combines UV germicidal radiation with carbon/oxidizing media and HEPA. It is a counter-height rolling device about 15 in. (380 mm) square that emits cleansed air from the top. It claims to purify air in a space of about 12,000 ft^3 (340 m^3).

(j) Controls for IAQ

A large number of air quality-monitoring devices are now available, some of which can control the operation of IAQ-related equipment. One of the oldest and simplest devices measures the concentration of CO_2 in parts per million (ppm). Wherever there are indoor concentrations of people, elevated levels of CO_2 can be expected. Thus, CO_2 becomes a kind of "canary in the coal mine," an early indicator of pollutant buildups due to occupancy. In the Bedales School theater (Fig. 5.9), the operation of the exhaust air dampers in the cupola is controlled by a building management system. Under ordinary conditions, damper opening is regulated by information from the CO_2 monitor. This can be overridden by indoor and outdoor temperatures (summer night ventilation is encouraged), air velocity monitors below the seats (too much draft could produce discomfort), the presence of wind and rain (openings limited), or a fire alarm (damper fully open to aid in smoke extraction).

Where contaminants are expected from sources in addition to human beings (typically the case), monitors may be installed to detect carbon monoxide, or combinations of VOCs, or fuels such as propane, butane, or natural gas—or even for depletion of oxygen. These monitors can be installed as stand-alone alarms or with additional relays that activate equipment. They are about the size of a programmable thermostat; the mounting height depends upon which gas is to be monitored.

Such devices can regulate ventilating heat exchangers, such as the ERV (shown in Fig. 5.18). This could be especially useful during unoccupied periods, holidays, and weekends. Many HVAC systems are shut off during such extended periods; VOCs from finishes and furnishings continue to accumulate, however. Periodic flushing from ERVs, controlled by VOC monitors, will help maintain acceptable air quality and could eliminate (or greatly reduce) the need for a Monday morning preflush.

5.7 IAQ, MATERIALS, AND HEALTH

The effect of IAQ on occupant health and productivity seems to be an emerging building design issue. This concern stems partly from increasing interest in green design (with its focus upon environmental quality and the resulting impact on materials choices) and partly from continuing stories about the adverse health impacts of poor IAQ (especially cases involving mold and mildew).

(a) Multiple Chemical Sensitivity

This is an unusual (and sometimes controversial) condition, also known as *environmental illness*. The controversy arises because the causes of this condition are poorly understood and likely involve numerous factors. When causes are mysterious, establishing targeted remedies becomes difficult. People with multiple chemical sensitivity are likely to see the provision of outstanding IAQ as a primary intent of the design process. People with this condition avoid environments with any known environmental risk factors.

Ecology House (in San Rafael, California) is an apartment complex for people with multiple chemical sensitivity. Its construction avoided plywood, using Douglas fir sheathing instead; the floors are tile instead of wall-to-wall carpet; cabinets are metal, not plywood or oriented strand board; the heating system is radiant hot water, not forced air. Barbecues and fireplaces are absent, painted

surfaces are minimized, and any window coverings are alternatives to curtains. There is even an "airing room" where, for example, newspapers can be hung before they are read in order to evaporate ink odors.

(b) Materials and IAQ

There is a rapidly growing availability of environmentally responsible building materials. Many such products address the issue of outgassing via low-VOC formulations. Others provide alternative materials to replace less-benign products in common use. Even so, quantitative data are hard to find. Manufacturers of building materials are required to provide Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS). These reports list all chemical constituents that make up at least 1% of a material (and are not deemed proprietary). Unfortunately, this information does not predict pollutant emission rates. A designer is left with the suspicion that the higher the percentage content of a chemical, the more likely its outgassing.

(c) Green Design and IAQ

The U.S. Green Building Council's LEED rating system has helped to improve the visibility of acceptable IAQ as a design objective. LEED for new construction and major renovations, for example, establishes compliance with ASHRAE Standard 62 and control of tobacco smoke as prerequisites for LEED certification. Beyond these minimums, designers may choose to address CO_2 monitoring, low-emitting materials, or pollutant source control strategies (among others) to achieve rating points. See Appendix G.2 for further information.

References and Resources

AIA. 1994. Ramsey, C. G. and H. R. Sleeper. *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed. American Institute of Architects/John Wiley & Sons. New York.

ASHRAE. 1992. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 52.1-1992: *Gravimetric and Dust-Spot Procedures for Testing Air-Cleaning Devices Used in General Ventilation for Removing Particulate Matter.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 52.2-2007: *Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2007: *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2-2007: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Banham, R. 1969. *The Architecture of the Well-Tempered Environment.* University of Chicago Press, Chicago, and the Architectural Press, London.

Chandra, S., P. W. Fairey, and M. Houston. 1986. *Cooling with Ventilation,* Solar Energy Research Institute. Golden, CO.

Fanger, P. O. 1989. "The New Comfort Equation for Indoor Air Quality," in *ASHRAE Journal*, October.

Grondzik, W. (ed.). 2007. *Air-Conditioning System Design Manual,* 2nd ed. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Hellmuth, Obata and Kassabaum. 2001. *The Greening Curve: Lessons Learned in the Design of the New EPA Campus.* U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA 220/K-02-001.

The New Buildings Institute (scroll to link for Commercial Building Indoor Air Quality): http://www.newbuildings.org/mechanical.htm

NREL. April 1988. *Federal Technology Alert: Transpired Collectors (Solar Preheaters for Outdoor Ventilation Air).* National Renewable Energy Laboratory, U.S. Department of Energy. Boulder, CO.

Rousseau, D. and J. Wasley. 1997. *Healthy by Design.* Hartley and Marks. Point Roberts, WA.

Shurcliff, W. A. 1981. *Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers for Houses.* Brick House. Andover, MA.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Research Triangle Park Campus: http://femp.buildinggreen.com/overview.cfm?ProjectID=30

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Indoor Environments Division (IAQ): http://www.epa.gov/iaq/

PART II

THERMAL CONTROL



The next five chapters deal with solar geometry, heat flow fundamentals, and climate control systems for a range of building types and sizes. The underlying design intent is the comfort of people, for whom we heat, ventilate, and cool buildings, and the provision of acceptable indoor air quality. Thermal comfort criteria are discussed in Chapter 4 and indoor air quality in Chapter 5.

Chapter 6 presents information on solar geometry, a concern with direct impact upon the design of climate control and daylighting systems. Chapter 7 discusses the basic theory of heat flow; whether calculating heat gain in summer or heat loss in winter, the analysis process is based upon the same principles of heat flow. Chapter 8 presents extensive criteria and procedures for design and analysis of building climate control and associated daylighting systems. Initially, numerous strategies are presented as design guidelines, followed later by more detailed design and verification procedures. Chapter 9 addresses heating and cooling equipment for smaller buildings, and Chapter 10 deals with larger buildings and groups of buildings.

CHAPTER 6

Solar Geometry and Shading Devices

AN UNDERSTANDING OF THE SUN'S position during the day is critical to site planning, daylighting design, passive solar design, and controlling unwanted heat gains. In early civilizations, most cultures revered the sun as a deity and understood its patterns and importance in the cycle of life. Today, such understanding is just as important when considering the relationships between the environment and technology in the design of buildings. We can no longer afford the resources to sustain the construction and operation of buildings with poorly designed glazed areas habitable only through the use of active climate control systems. We can rely on the patterns of the sun as a constant in the design process and create environments that work with these patterns, climate, and well-considered design intents.

6.1 THE SUN AND ITS POSITION

The sun is a giant star and the largest object in the solar system. The sun's energy is produced by nuclear fusion that occurs at temperatures in the range of 18–25 million °F (10–14 million °C). The energy from thermonuclear fusion at the sun's surface is released as electromagnetic radiation at approximately 10 million °F (5.6 million °C). The solar spectrum (Fig. 6.1) consists of approximately 5% ultraviolet (shortwave) radiation (less than 350 nm), 46% light—what we see—(350 to 750 nm), and 49% infrared (longwave) radiation (greater than 750 nm). Though 93 million miles from Earth, the amount of the sun's radiation (heat energy) reaching the Earth's outer atmosphere is relatively stable and is called the *solar constant*—433 Btu/ft^2 hr (1.37 kW/m^2). Some annual variation in the solar constant occurs because of the elliptical orbit of the Earth around the sun, but it is so small that it has little effect on building design. The length of radiation's path through the atmosphere is the most important factor in determining how much radiation reaches the surface of the Earth. This received radiation is termed *insolation.*

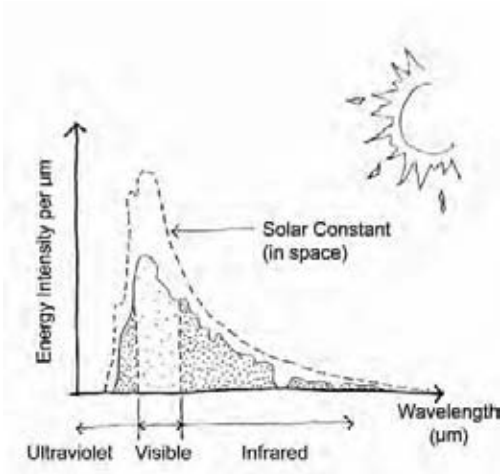


Fig. 6.1 *At the Earth's surface the solar radiation spectrum consists of ultraviolet radiation, visible radiation (light), and infrared radiation. (Drawing by Erik Winter; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

(a) Earth's Rotation and Tilt

The Earth's axis of rotation is tilted at 23.5° (precisely, 23.47°), also known as its *declination*. The Earth travels in the plane of the ecliptic (Fig. 6.2) in its orbit around the sun. The tilt of the Earth is toward the sun (June +23.5°) or away from the sun (December −23.5°). This tilt is responsible for the seasons. In the northern hemisphere in June, the sun's direct radiation is perpendicular to the Earth's surface; in December, there are fewer hours of sun, and the radiation passes through a longer, nonperpendicular, length of atmosphere to reach the Earth. The rotation of the Earth (once every 24 hours) and its tilt determine the length of atmosphere that solar radiation passes through and consequently how much energy the Earth's surface receives.

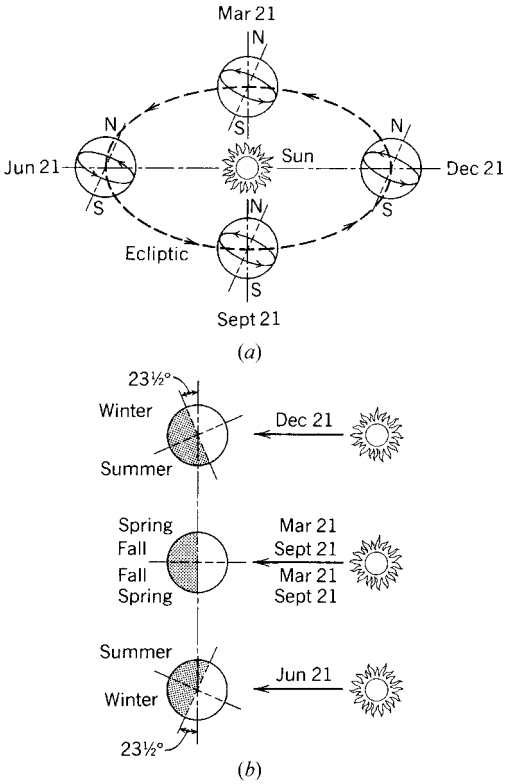


Fig. 6.2 *(a) The ecliptic is the annual path of the Earth around the sun. (b) The tilt of the Earth's axis in the plane of the ecliptic results in the seasonal variations. In the northern hemisphere the Earth tilts away from the sun in December (–23.5°), resulting in winter's low sun altitude and cold weather. In June the effect is reversed.*

(b) Altitude and Azimuth

The position of the sun at any instant with respect to an observer on the ground is defined by its *altitude angle* and its *azimuth angle*. The *altitude* of the sun is the angle between the horizon and the sun's position above the horizon. The altitude varies during the day, beginning and ending at 0° at sunrise and sunset and reaching a daily maximum at *solar* noon. The altitude angle at noon varies from day to day, reaching a yearly maximum on June 21 (the summer solstice), a minimum on December 21 (the winter solstice), and a point halfway between the two on the vernal and autumnal equinoxes (March 21 and September 21). The *azimuth* (also called the solar bearing angle) is the angle along the horizon between the projected position of the sun and true (solar) south. Note that the azimuth is referenced from south herein, whereas in other sources it is sometimes referenced from north; there is no clear consensus on this issue. Refer to Fig. 6.3 and Tables C.11 to C.18 for solar position and insolation information.

Referring to the graphic relationships in Fig. 6.2, the height of the sun in the sky (altitude angle) depends upon the observer's position on the Earth (the latitude) and the seasonal changes (the tilt of the Earth). This can be expressed in Equation 6.1, as follows:

$$\text{altitude angle at solar noon} = 90° - \text{latitude} \pm \text{declination} \quad (6.1)$$

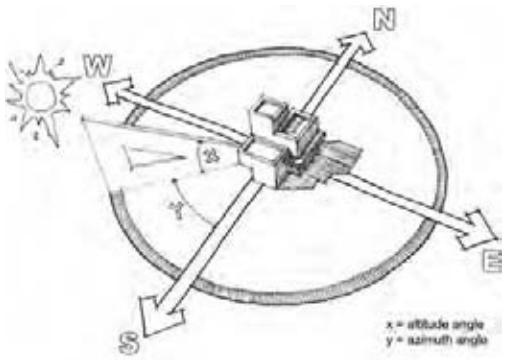


Fig. 6.3 *Altitude and azimuth angles. (Drawing by Erik Winter;* *© 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

For example, the solar altitude for Minneapolis (44.9°N) for various seasons at solar noon is:

Maximum (June 21): = 90° – ~45° + 23.5° = 68.5°

Equinox (Mar/Sept 21) = 90° – ~45° – 0° = 45°

Minimum (Dec 21) = 90° – ~45° – 23.5° = 21.5°

These relations are shown graphically in Fig. 6.4.

The azimuth angle during its path from sunrise to sunset changes with the season. On the equinoxes (March 21 and September 21) the sun rises due east and sets due west. In the northern hemisphere, the sun rises north of east and sets north of west between March 22 and September 20. This is shown graphically in Fig. 6.5 for one specific latitude (32°N). Sunrise on June 21 is 28.5° north of east, and sunset is correspondingly 28.5° north of west. On December 21 sunrise and sunset are 28.5° south of east and west.

A designer can use three basic solar pattern concepts when designing with the sun:

1. The altitude of the sun is highest in summer, lowest in winter, and in between in spring and

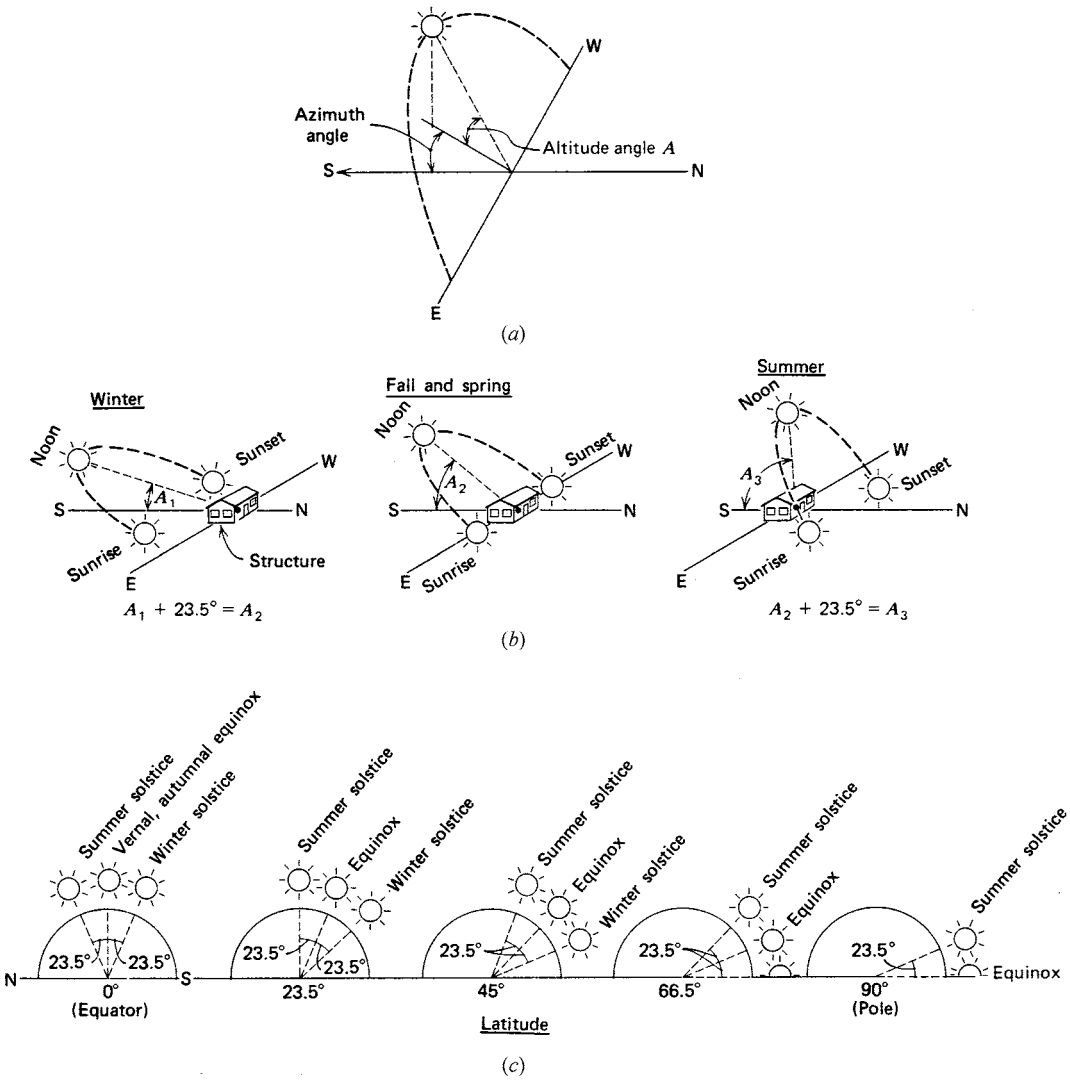


Fig. 6.4 *(a) The position of the sun is expressed in terms of vertical angle above the horizon (altitude) and horizontal angle (azimuth, measured from the south). (b) Approximate position of the sun in each of the seasons at a mid-northern latitude (approximately 45°). Note that the altitude angle is maximum in summer, minimum in winter, and in between in spring and fall. (c) Maximum sun altitude at various latitudes for both solstices and equinoxes.*

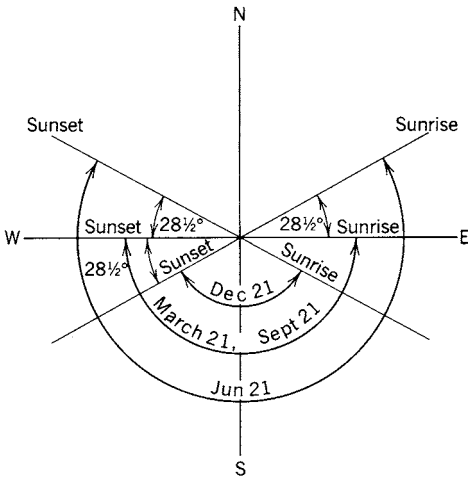


Fig. 6.5 *A diagram of the sun's azimuth path from sunrise to sunset projected on a horizontal plane for solstices and equinoxes at latitude 32° N (Jerusalem, Savannah, Tucson). The sun's azimuth angle, like its altitude, varies with the time of day and the date.*

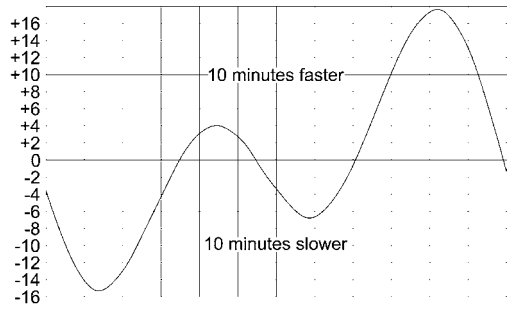
fall for all latitudes. The maximum difference in altitude angle between summer and winter solstices is about 47°.

2. The daily maximum altitude of the sun increases as a location approaches the equator (low latitudes, either north or south). The seasonal altitude *variation*, however, is the same for all latitudes (except at those extreme north and south latitudes where the sun is above or below the horizon for extended time periods). This factor not only has a pronounced effect on the design and efficacy of sun-shading devices, but also affects exterior daylight illuminance levels.
3. The azimuth angle of the sun is dictated by the time of day and by the season. The sun by definition traverses the sky between sunrise and sunset and in the northern hemisphere rises north of east during the summer, due east on the equinoxes, and south of east during the winter. The principal significance of the azimuth angle is its role as an important consideration when orienting a building on a site, establishing building exposures, and analyzing shading angles.

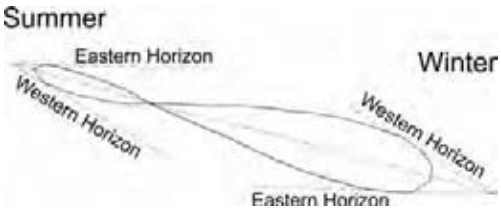
6.2 SOLAR VERSUS CLOCK TIME

The basis of all timekeeping is the length of the solar day, that is, one full rotation of the Earth on its axis. The Earth's motion on the ecliptic is not uniform—it moves more rapidly when farther from the sun. As a result, the actual length of a solar day varies. Since it is impractical to use timepieces that need daily adjustment, we use an average, or *mean solar day*, as the basis for timekeeping. There are three reasons for the difference between solar time and clock time:

1. *Location within a time zone.* The 360° circumference of the Earth is divided into 24 one-hour time zones, each with a width of approximately 15° of longitude, which corresponds to approximately 1000 miles (1610 km). An observer located at any point other than directly on a standard time zone reference longitude (normally in the center of a time zone) must make a time correction for his/her distance from the reference longitude. (In some countries, a reference longitude is more than 30 minutes from time zone extremes. In such places, the time correction for longitude plus the equation of time can total well over an hour. This situation does not exist in the continental United States.)
2. *Equation of time.* The speed of the Earth in its orbit around the sun is nonuniform; it moves more rapidly when farther from the sun. As a result, the actual length of the solar day varies as defined by the *equation of time* (Fig. 6.6*a*). The extent of this variation can be determined from a curve called the *analemma* (Fig. 6.6*b*) or from tabulations in various sources. The analemma is the shape that results if the sun's position in the sky is recorded at the same time of day throughout the year.
3. *Daylight saving time (DST).* During DST, clocks are moved forward one hour to effectively give (from the morning) one more hour of daylight in the evening during the summer months. (Note: The official term is daylight saving time, not daylight savings time.) The purpose of DST is to make better use of daylight. In most of the United States (except Arizona and Hawaii), DST begins at 2:00 A.M. on the second Sunday of March and reverts back to standard time on the first Sunday in November. In the European Union, Summer Time begins at 1:00 A.M. Universal Time (Greenwich Mean Time) on the last Sunday in March and ends the last Sunday in October.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 6.6 *(a) Equation of time. (b) The analemma is a miniature almanac where the vertical coordinates of the path represent the sun's declination on a particular day of the year, while the horizontal coordinates tell how much the sun is ahead of or behind clock time on that day. (Drawings by Erik Winter; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

Unless otherwise clearly noted, most solar position tables and charts (including sunpath diagrams) are based upon solar time, not clock time. This must be considered when solar-driven loads are being added to clock-driven loads (for example, the heat gain from the western sun is being added to the heat gain from office occupants to determine the total load). Such an addition must use coincident values, and solar and clock times are rarely coincident.

6.3 TRUE SOUTH AND MAGNETIC DEVIATION

Working from a "true south" or "solar south" orientation (opposite of "true north," location of the Earth's axis of rotation) is the starting point in the planning and design of a building, particularly for passive solar strategies. When a compass is used on a building site to find north, the compass yields a reading toward magnetic north, determined by the Earth's internal magnetic field. This is usually

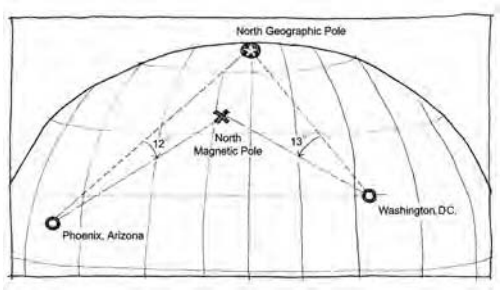


Fig. 6.7 *The concept of magnetic deviation (from true north), illustrated for Phoenix, Arizona (12° easterly) and Washington, DC (13° westerly). (Drawing by Erik Winter; © 2004 Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*

(depending upon the locale) not the same as true north. Figure 6.7 illustrates this phenomenon. To correct between magnetic north (compass) and true north (solar), a magnetic deviation is applied to the compass reading. Depending upon the location on the Earth's surface, the deviation may be as large as 50°—but in most locations this is not the case. It should be noted that the magnetic field is not uniform, stationary, or perfectly aligned with the Earth's poles; thus, magnetic deviations can change and have changed over time.

6.4 SUNPATH PROJECTIONS

Design tools such as sunpath projection charts can be used to assess site conditions, orient a building, or provide information critical for passive solar design. Sunpath charts represent the sun's position throughout the year. There are two fundamental types of sunpath projections: vertical and horizontal. Horizontal projections are more commonly encountered. The basic idea behind the horizontal projection is shown in Fig. 6.8. The sky vault is represented as a hemisphere that projects as a circle, the center of which is the zenith. The observer looks down onto the hemispherical sky vault and projects the sunpaths from the vault onto the two-dimensional projected circle. The basic difference between the various horizontal projections is in the spacing between circles of equal altitude. Vertical projection charts are also available.

Four of the more common sunpath projections are (1) gnomonic, (2) equidistant, (3) rectilinear, and (4) stereographic.

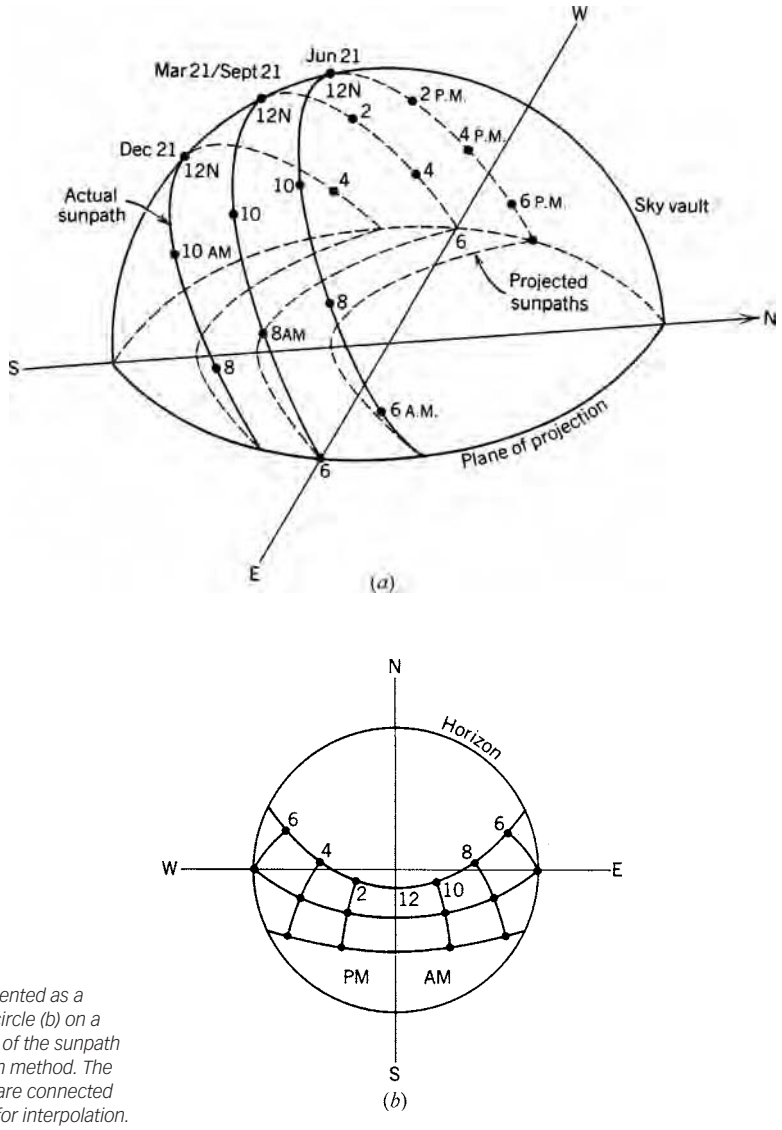


Fig. 6.8 *(a) The sky vault is represented as a hemisphere, which projects as a circle (b) on a projection plane. The exact shape of the sunpath chart depends upon the projection method. The hour points on the sunpath chart are connected to form hour lines that are useful for interpolation.*

1. The *gnomonic projection* (used with sundials and sunpeg charts) is derived from the sundial. The observer is at the center of the projection; therefore, low sun angles (sunrise, sunset) extend to infinity. For this reason, this method is rarely used for solar charts but is easily applied to building shadow studies. Sunpeg charts for specific latitudes (see Fig. 6.9 and Appendix D.2) will show the exact position of sun penetration and shadow on a model of any scale, on any date, at any time of day between shortly after sunrise and shortly before sunset. Use of the sunpeg chart is explained in the following outline (reprinted by permission from Brown, Reynolds, and Ubbelohde, *Inside Out: Design Procedures for Passive Environmental Technologies*, John Wiley & Sons, © 1982) and shown in Fig. 6.10.

   - *Find the sunpeg chart corresponding to the nearest latitude for a site.*
   - *Make a copy of this chart. If the copier changes the chart size, the peg height line will also change; there should be no problem.*
   - *Construct a "peg" (gnomon) whose finished height above the chart surface corresponds exactly to the "peg height" shown on the copy of the chart. This peg must stand and remain perfectly vertical relative to the model and not be bumped out of vertical alignment.*

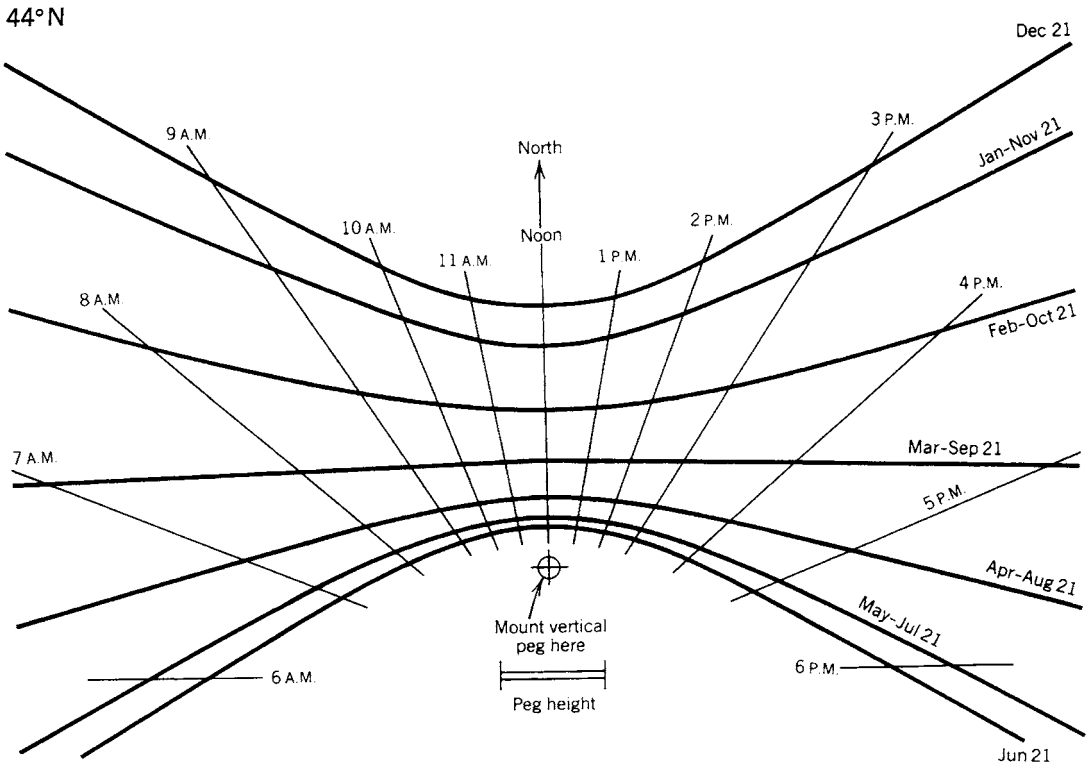


Fig. 6.9 *Sunpeg chart for 44° N latitude.*

- *Mount the copy of the chart on the model to be tested. The chart must be perfectly horizontal over its entire surface, and the north arrow on the chart must correspond to true (solar) north on the model.*
- *Choose a test time and date. Take the model out into direct sunlight. (With a small model, a camera tripod might serve as a mount.) Tilt the model until the shadow of the peg points toward the intersection of the chosen time line and the chosen date curve. When the end of the peg's shadow touches this intersection, the model will show the same sun-shadow patterns as would occur on the time and date chosen.*



Fig. 6.10 *A sunpeg chart attached to the base of a scale model to study solar access and shadow patterns in and about a building. (Photo by Jonathan Meendering; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

2. The *equidistant projection* (*horizontal, polar*) is used almost exclusively in the United States because of the ready availability and wide acceptance of the sunpath charts provided in the Pilkington (formerly Libbey Owens Ford) Sun Angle Calculator. The observer moves around the skydome, like the sun's view to the Earth. Figure 6.11 shows a sample equidistant projection sunpath diagram. A full set of equidistant projections is provided in Appendix D.3. This projection method is equally applicable to all latitudes, and a latitude-specific sunpath is needed for a location under study. The Pilkington Sun Angle Calculator sunpath diagrams are available in steps of 4° of latitude between 24° and 52° latitudes.
3. The *rectilinear projection* (vertical, cylindrical) is a two-dimensional graph of the sun's position

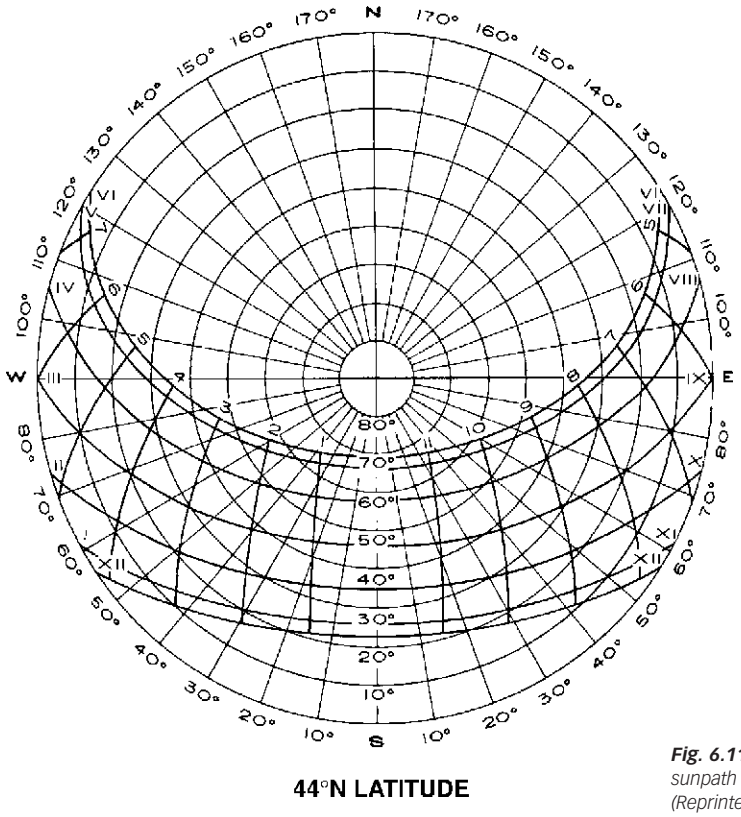


Fig. 6.11 *Equidistant (horizontal, polar) sunpath diagram for 44° N latitude. (Reprinted with permission from* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 8th ed.. 1988. John Wiley & Sons, Publishers.)*

in Cartesian coordinates. Azimuth is plotted along the horizontal axis and altitude on the vertical axis. The development of this type of chart is shown in Fig. 6.12. These charts are actually graphs superimposed on the eye of an observer. At the vertical center of each chart, the observer is looking due south. The horizon (a horizontal plane at the observer's eye level) is the line at the bottom of the chart. A set of rectilinear charts for several latitudes (from Mazria, 1979) is found in Appendix D.4.

These charts may also be used to easily determine the number of hours of greatest insolation, that is, what percentage of clear-day insolation is gained each hour by an unshaded *south-facing* vertical window (Fig. 6.13). This emphasis on south orientation calls attention to its useful characteristic of receiving *more* sun in winter and *less* sun in summer than any other orientation. To convert these percentages to actual heat gains, see Tables C.1 to C.10 (for *clear* days at a given latitude) or Tables C.19 and C.20 for *average* day data by climate station (January and July only).

4. The *stereographic projection* (circular, equal spacing) also represents the sun's changing position in the sky throughout the day and year. The format is like a fish-eye photograph of the sky pointed to the zenith directly above. The various paths of the sun throughout the year can be projected onto the sky, then "flattened." The principal advantage of this projection is that it is very simple to draw sunpaths at any scale and for any latitude without having to rely on published sunpaths. Thus, for any serious sunshading design, a designer can prepare a large-scale sunpath chart at the exact latitude of a project and do accurate graphical analysis. For a detailed description of the method of preparing these charts, see Szokolay (1980).

The design of sunshading devices necessitates projecting the three-dimensional solar path onto a

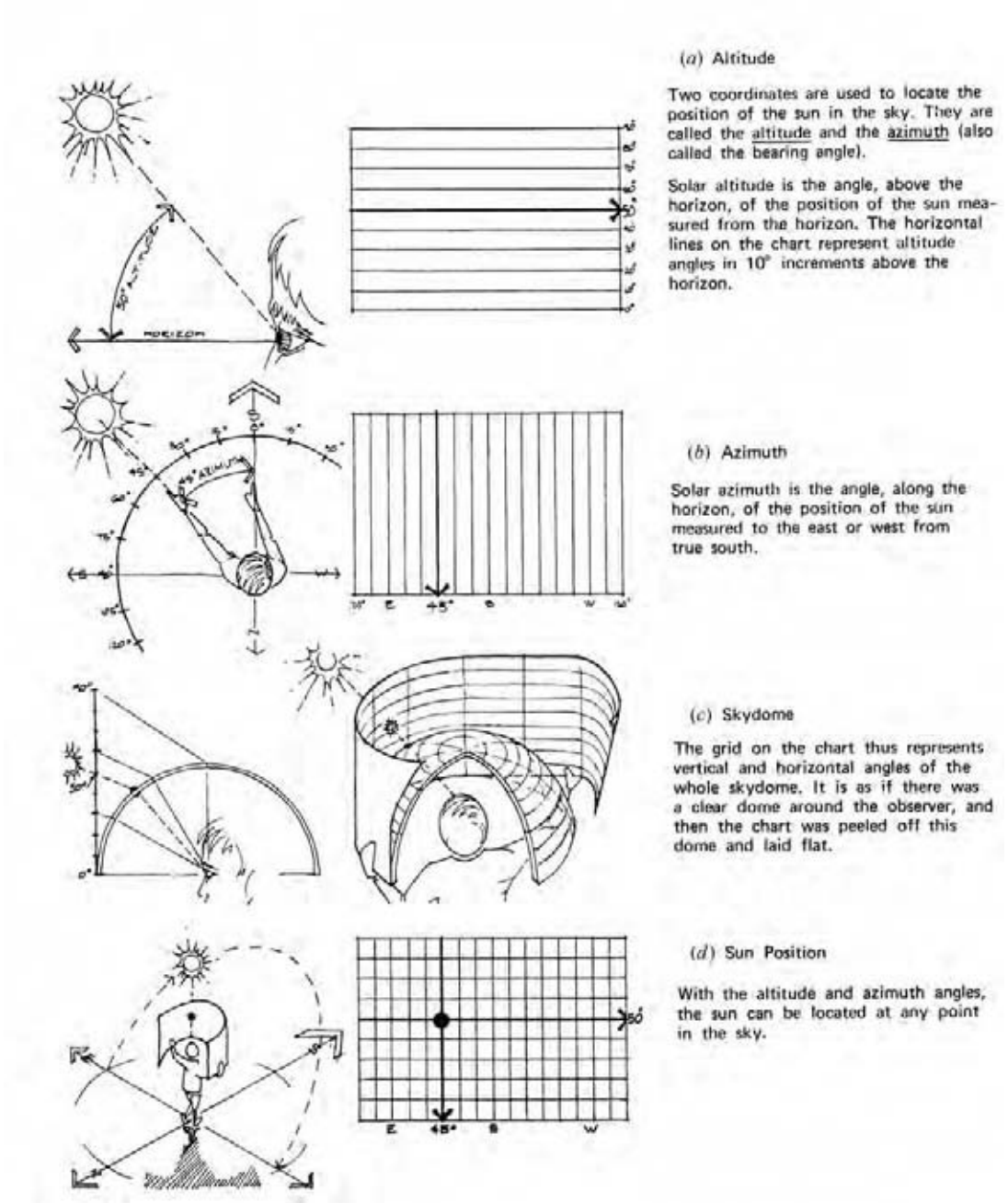
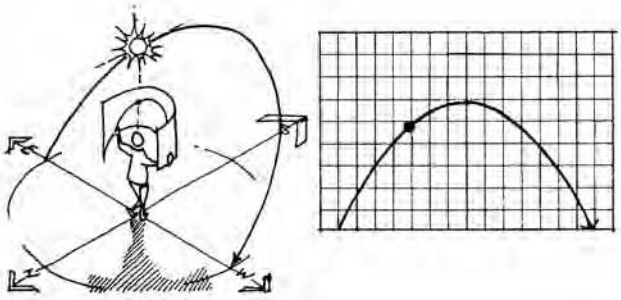
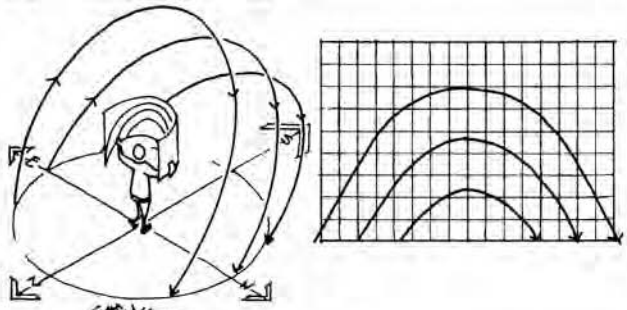


Fig. 6.12 *Illustrations (a) through (g) describe the development of the rectilinear sunpath chart. (From Edward Mazria and David Winitsky. 1976.* Solar Guide and Calculator. *Center for Environmental Research, University of Oregon.) (h) U.S. map showing cities along similar latitudes.*



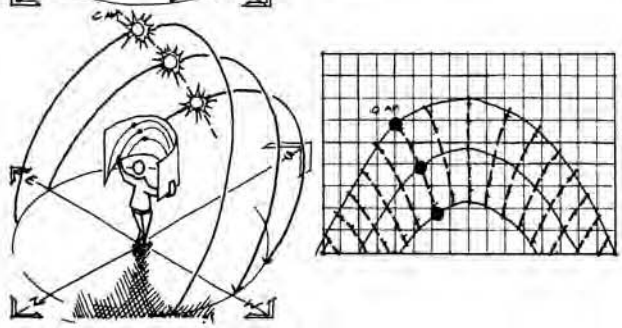
(*e*) Sun Path

By connecting the points of the location of the sun throughout various times of the day, the sun's path for that day can be drawn.



(*f*) Seasonal Paths

Thus, we can plot the sun's path for any day of the year. Those paths shown represent summer, fall/spring, and winter. The sun path is greatest during the summer when it reaches its highest altitude and rises and sets with the widest azimuth angle from true south. During winter, the sun is much lower in the sky and rises and sets with the narrowest azimuth angles from true south.



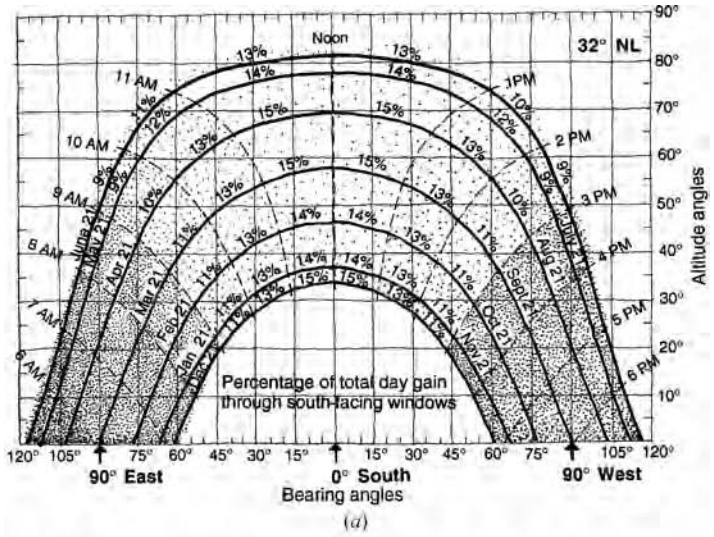
(*g*) Times of Day

Finally, if we connect the hour lines on each path, we get the heavy dotted line which represents the hours of the day. This completes the sun chart. NOTE: The times on the sun chart are for solar time. This may vary from standard time as much as an hour and fifteen minutes for different locations and different times of the year. This is adequate for most practical uses of the sun chart. It is important to remember to at least use standard time when using the charts.

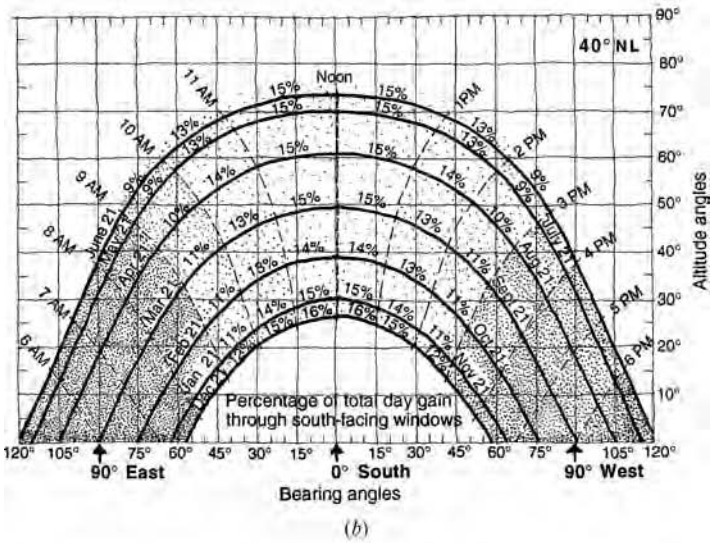


(*h*)

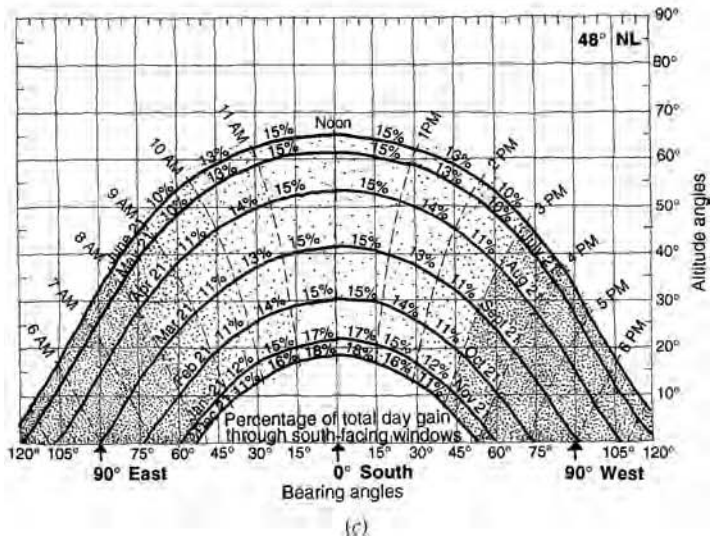
Fig. 6.12 *(Continued)*



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 6.13 *Sunpath charts for three latitudes (32°, 40°, 48°) show the approximate percentage of clear-day insolation for south-facing windows for each of the maximum hours of sun each month.*

two-dimensional surface. Stereographic and equidistant projections are the most popular for sun-shading analysis.

6.5 SHADING

Shading windows from solar heat gain is a key design strategy for passive cooling and to reduce cooling loads on active HVAC systems. Shading the opaque building envelope is also important, but since thermal resistance is usually greater through such elements than through glazing, the discussion in this section refers primarily to design strategies for shading windows oriented south, east, and west. Northern windows often also need shading devices, contrary to the myth that the north façade never receives direct beam radiation.

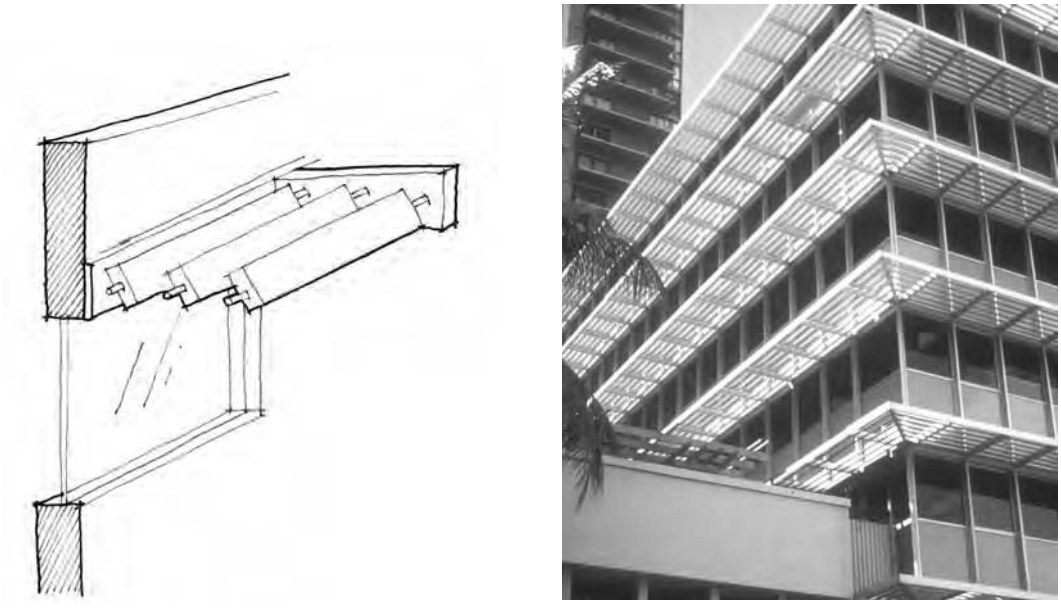
(a) Shading for Orientation

Because of the high altitude of the sun, the most effective shading device for south-facing windows during the summer is a horizontal overhang. On east- and west-facing windows, a horizontal overhang is somewhat effective when the sun is at high positions in the sky but is not effective at low-altitude angles. A variety of shading devices are illustrated by the diagrams and examples in Figs. 6.14–6.18.

Direct solar gain through east- and west-facing windows can be an extraordinary heat gain liability and produce thermal and visual discomfort. During the early design stages, it is best to orient spaces to face north or south to avoid the east/west sun's low angle. If this is not possible, vertical fins are an effective strategy for east and west orientations. Eggcrate shading devices (a combination of overhangs and fins) provide optimal shading particularly in hot climates (Fig. 6.19). North-facing windows receive direct solar radiation in the summer in the early morning and near sunset, when the altitude of the sun is very low. For shading on the north side at these times, vertical fins are most effective.

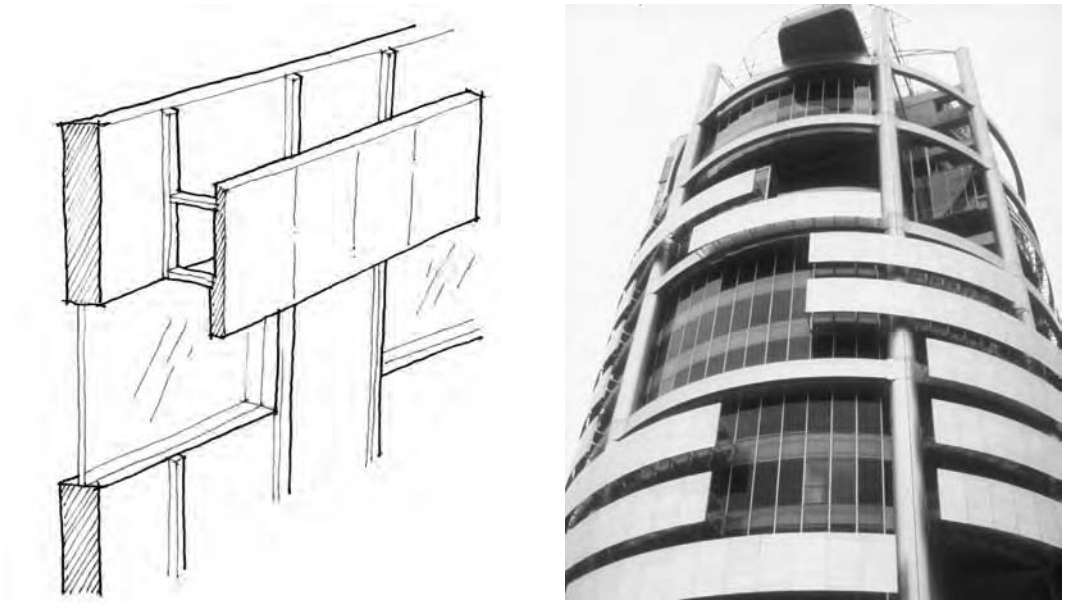
(b) Operable Shading Devices

Operable exterior shading devices are useful because they respond to daily and seasonal variations in solar and weather patterns in ways that fixed shading devices simply cannot do. The operation of a movable shading device can be as simple as twice-a-year adjustment—for example, manually extending roller shades, awnings, rotating fins, or louvers at the beginning of summer and



(*a*) (*b*)

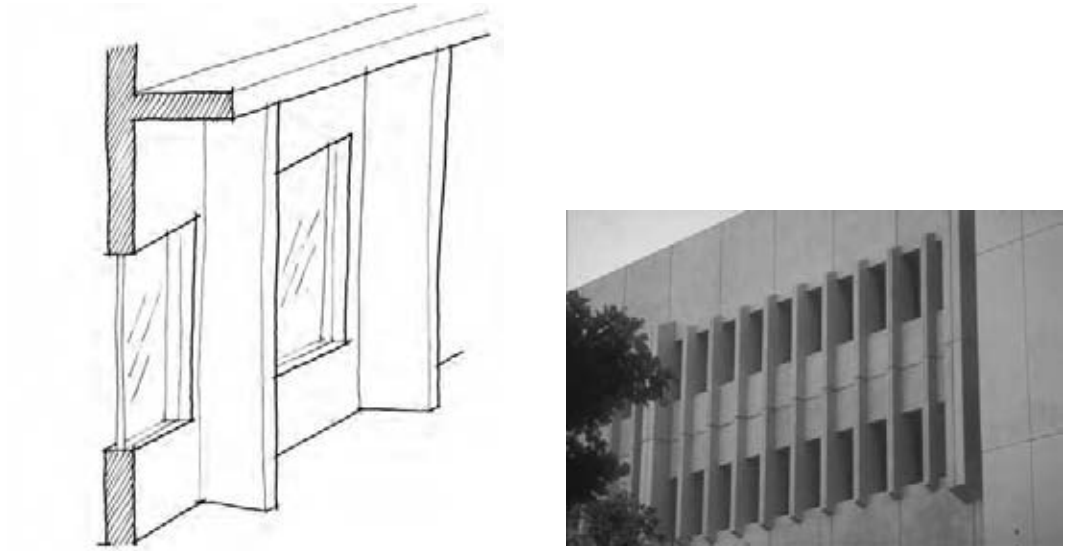
Fig. 6.14 *(a) Overhang with horizontal louvers. (b) Horizontal louvers allow free air movement—office building in Honolulu, Hawaii. (Drawing by Erik Winter, photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

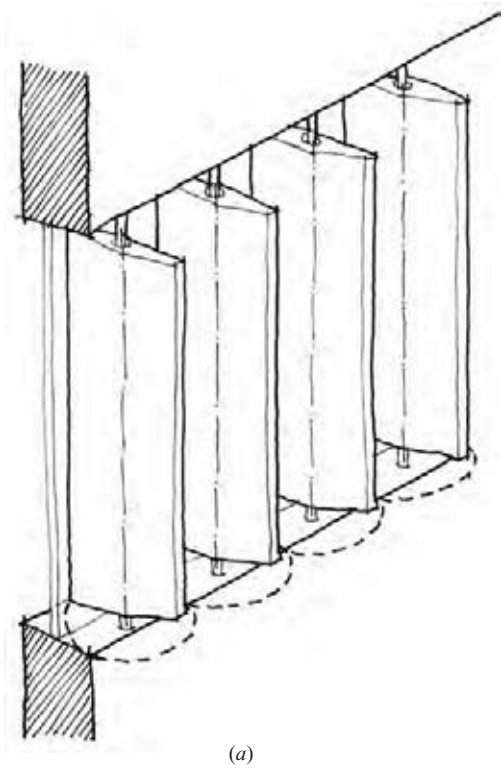
Fig. 6.15 *(a) Overhang using a series of vertical panels. (b) Application of horizontal overhangs at the IBM Tower in Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia. (Drawing by Erik Winter, photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

retracting the shade after the hot season has ended (in fall). These devices are very effective at blocking low sun angles from the east or west. More complex movable devices are typically on automated daily and seasonal programs. Although many facility managers are of the opinion that movable exterior shading devices require high maintenance and are prone to malfunctioning, the designer can apply appropriate technology to provide a low-maintenance solution.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.16 *(a) Vertical fins. (b) Fixed vertical fins on a government building in Honolulu, Hawaii. (Drawing by Erik Winter, photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

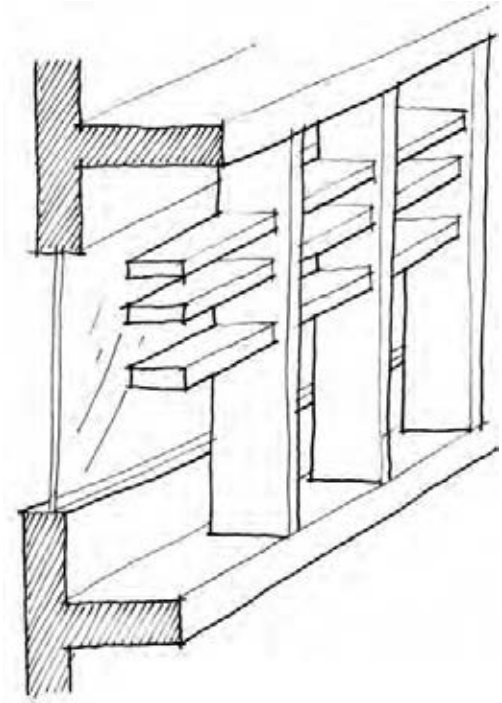


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 6.17 *(a) Movable fins. (b) Movable fins are positioned according to the sun's position at the Ala Moana office building in Honolulu, Hawaii. These effective shading devices were removed when the building was remodeled to make it look more contemporary. (Drawing by Erik Winter, photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 6.18 *(a) Eggcrate shading device. (b) Modified eggcrate to allow air movement and lighter structure at the Board of Water Supply in Honolulu, Hawaii. (Drawing by Erik Winter, photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.19 *Integration of eggcrate shading devices into the envelope at (a) the Hawaii Medical Services Association building in Honolulu, Hawaii, and (b) the University of Arizona library in Tucson. (Photos by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



Fig. 6.20 *Vines grow on an exterior structure at the Finnish Embassy in Washington, DC. (Photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

Designers can also situate deciduous trees and vines at key locations around a building, which will act as natural shading devices with a natural cycle for shade in the summer and loss of leaves in the winter (Fig. 6.20). Plants have the advantages of costing little, reducing glare, providing an attractive connection to nature, and reducing exterior surface (wall and ground) temperatures.

6.6 SHADOW ANGLES AND SHADING MASKS

Altitude and azimuth angles are very useful in understanding solar position and sunpath diagrams, but are much less useful in defining the shadow angles cast by a projection on a wall exposed to the sun. More angles come into play with shading device design.

(a) Shadow Angles

When designing shading devices, the geometry of the device itself and its relationship to the face of a building produce a number of angles relative to the desired shadow being cast. Since there is no universal nomenclature for these relationships, the angles involved in the design of shading devices will be very carefully defined. Refer to Fig. 6.21, which shows the shadow cast by a horizontal overhang on a wall exposed to sunlight. Note that the shadow is defined by two angles: the *vertical shadow angle* (VSA), which indicates the position of the leading edge of the shadow as defined from the leading edge of the overhang, and the *horizontal shadow angle* (HSA), which defines the leading edge of a shadow cast by a vertical element (indicated by a dashed line) as defined with respect to that element's leading edge. The terms *vertical shadow angle* and *horizontal shadow angle* are in use throughout the world, although in the United States the vertical shadow angle is also known widely as the *profile angle* because it is so designated on the Pilkington Sun Angle Calculator.

Figure 6.22 shows the same information in slightly different form; line *DA* is the shadow cast by line *DE*, which is the intersection between a horizontal projection and a vertical projection. This line is particularly important in determining the required extent of a shading element, as will be shown in the following sections.

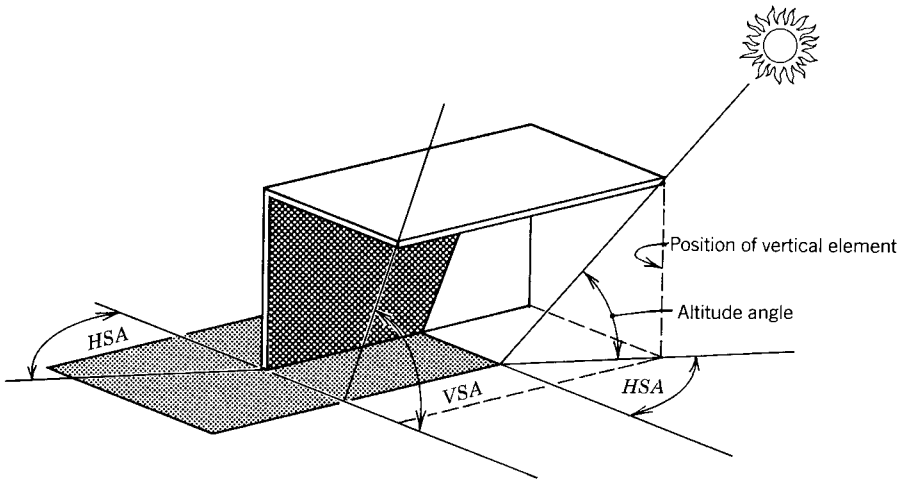


Fig. 6.21 *The shadow cast by a horizontal overhang is best defined by the vertical shadow angle (VSA) and the horizontal shadow angle (HSA). The VSA is also known as the profile angle in the United States.*

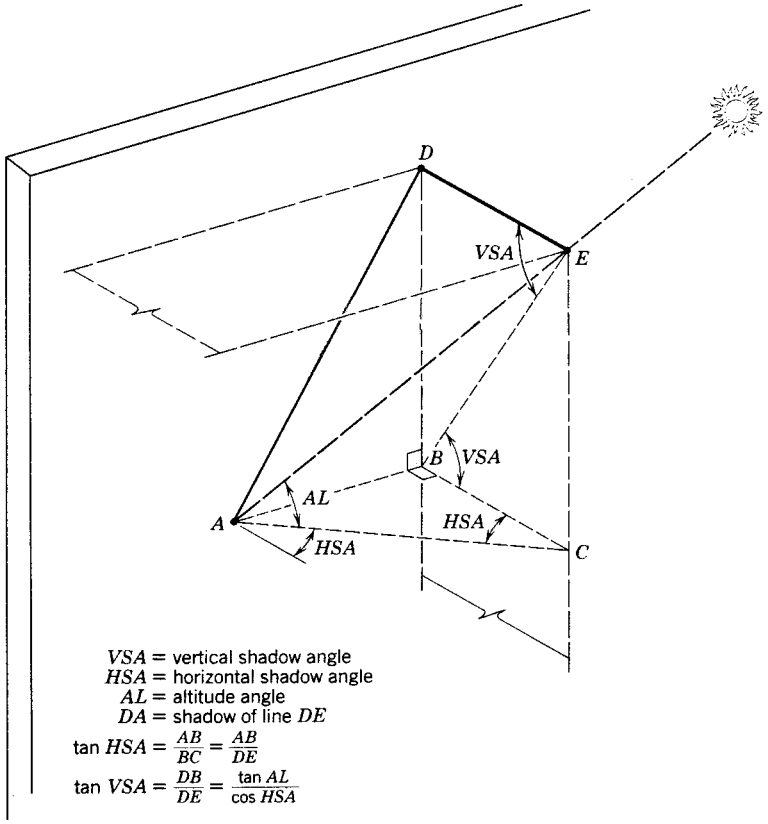


Fig. 6.22 *The shadow* DA *cast by the intersection line* DE *between a horizontal and a vertical shading element defines the edge of each of these shadows.* DE *can also be thought of as a pin, normal to and extending from the wall, casting a shadow, DA, on the wall. The location and size of line* DA *are best defined in terms of angles* VSA *and* HSA.

(b) Shading Masks

A shading mask is a sunpath chart (horizontal projection) that shows the shadow cast by a particular shading device, as shown in Fig. 6.23. For a horizontal shading device, the leading edge of the shadow cast by all horizontal elements with the same VSA (profile angle) projects as a segmental line, and when plotted on the sunpath chart, it is shown as a segmental mask. To draw this segment, a protractor is required. The Pilkington Sun Angle Calculator includes a profile angle protractor (an overlay to the sunpath chart) to draw the required segment. With no shading, there is no shadow, the VSA is 90°, and no segment exists. With a very deep overhang, the VSA approaches 0° and the *unshaded* area shrinks.

For vertical shading elements, such as fins (Fig. 6.23*b*), the leading edge of vertical shading elements forms a shadow, shown as radii projecting from the center, which forms an angle HSA, from a line normal to the wall. These radial lines can be drawn with the assistance of an ordinary protractor or by use of the protractor in Fig. 6.23*c*. The full segments and full radial lines of the shading masks are of *infinitely long elements*, which, of course, do not actually exist. Shading masks that appear in the literature (Olgyay and Olgyay, 1951; AIA, 1981) are frequently drawn as if for infinite elements, and the masks must be truncated for real-world shading design.

(c) Use of Shading Masks

A shading mask is drawn on some transparent medium (e.g., paper or plastic sheet) and laid on top of a sunpath diagram for the proper latitude *drawn to the same scale* (see Fig. 6.24, which illustrates the placement of a shading mask). Its center point is placed on the center point of the sunpath diagram, and it is rotated until its facing direction (the direction normal to the wall) is aligned with the appropriate azimuth line on the sunpath diagram. Assuming that the shading mask has been correctly drawn to provide shading for the window (typically 50% or 100% coverage), the shaded hours for the window and device in question can then be read directly from the underlying sunpath diagram as summarized in Table 6.1. (This is why the shading mask must be drawn on a transparent medium.)

It is extremely important to note that a horizontal overhang shading element the same width as a window can provide full shade for the window only when the sun is exactly opposite the window (when the solar-window azimuth is 0°). This situation occurs for only an instant (Fig. 6.25). At all other times, some part of the window will be exposed to the sun. To provide full shading for more than an instant with a horizontal element and no vertical (side) elements, *an overhang must extend beyond the sides of the window*. The amount of such an extension can be determined both graphically and analytically. Since graphic solutions are amply treated in the literature (Harkness and Mehta, 1978; Lim et al., 1979; Cowan, 1980), the focus here is the analytic solution. In reviewing this discussion, keep in mind the requirement that shading masks for 100% coverage must be prepared so that the extremities of the opening are shaded.

(d) Designing Finite Horizontal Shading Devices

Although any percentage of window shading coverage is possible, most shading devices are designed to give either 50% or 100% coverage. Deciding upon shading coverage is the first step in design. The second step is to establish the required *depth* of the shading device (the distance it projects from the wall). Figure 6.26 shows how the required depth and the corresponding segmental mask are determined. At times, because of window areas left unshaded by the original overhang, it is necessary to determine the required side extensions beyond the window's edges.

Due to the symmetry of solar motion about the ecliptic, the position of the sun is symmetrical on both sides of its maximum/minimum positions, that is, the solstices. Thus, the sun's position on May 21 is the same as on July 21, since both dates are 1 month from the summer solstice. As a result, any *fixed* shading device will give the same shade in the spring (before 21 June) as in the summer (after 21 June). Since in many locations spring is cool, desired late summer shading will produce spring shading that *may not* be desirable. Solutions to this apparent dilemma are either to use a movable or a variable-size fixed shading device or to compromise on the amount of shading, that is, to design for

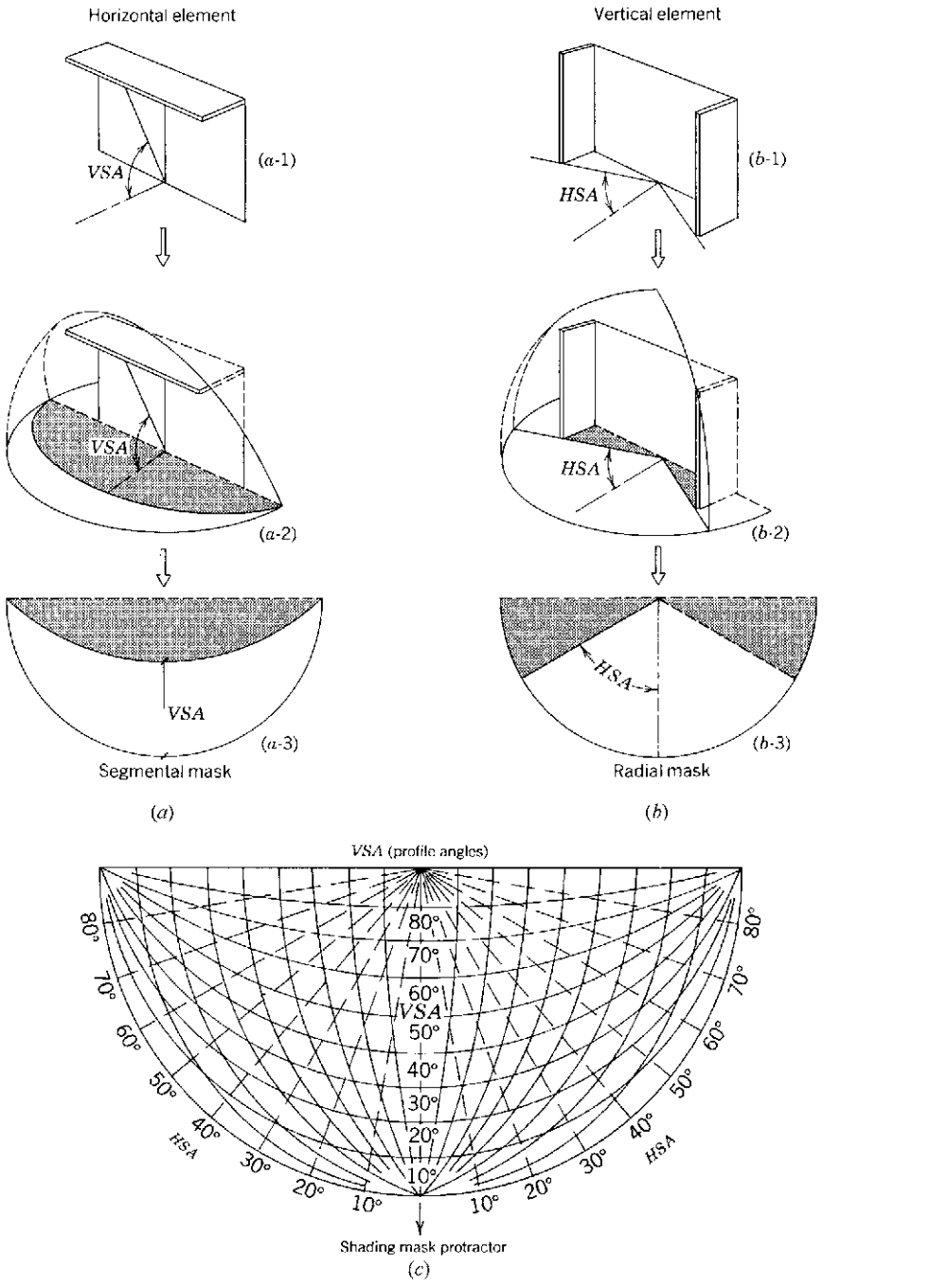


Fig. 6.23 *A shading mask is the horizontal projection of the shadow cast by the elements with the same VSA or HSA. Thus, any infinitely long horizontal element with the VSA shown in (a-1) will have a shading mask, as shown in (a-3). Similarly, any infinitely high vertical elements with the HSA shown in (b-1) will have the shading mask shown in (b-3). A protractor (c) is required to draw the segmental horizontal element mask properly.*

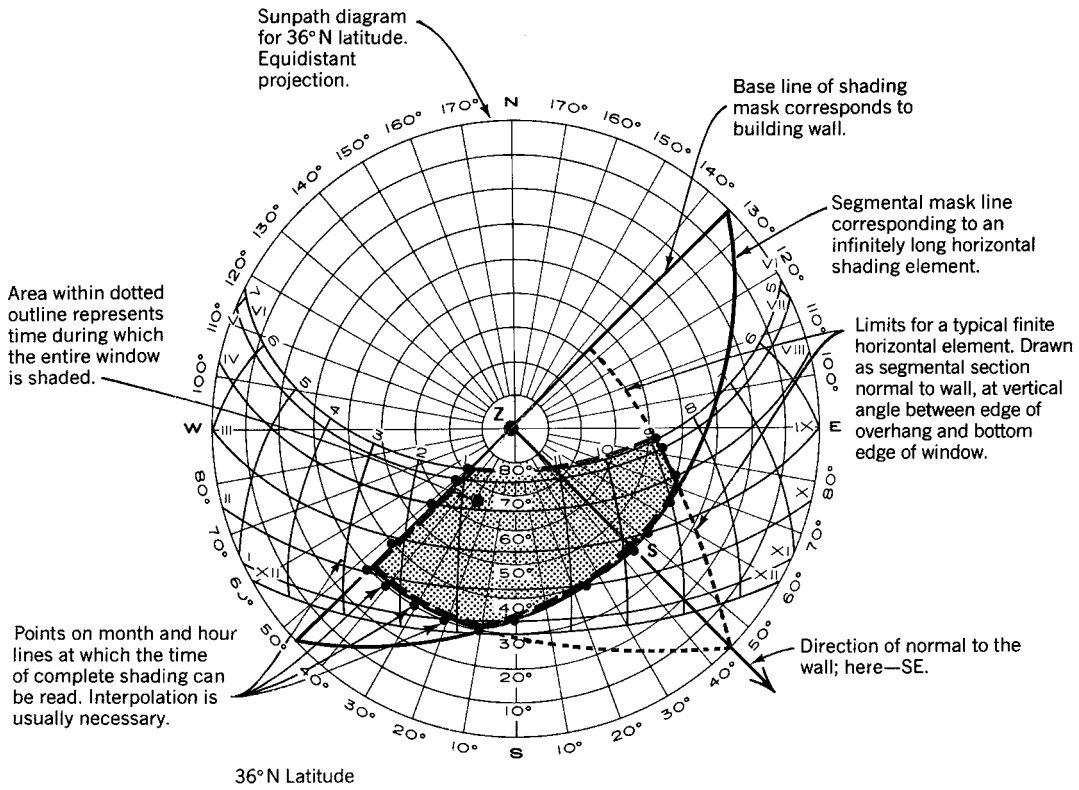


Fig. 6.24 *A shading mask for a typical horizontal overhang on a window is laid over a sunpath diagram to permit determination of the shaded hours. The mask is drawn to provide 100% shading for the entire window. The hours during which the entire window is shaded are determined by the intersection of the mask perimeter with the date/hour lines of the sunpath diagram, and are tabulated in Table 6.1. Only during the hours falling within the dotted area is a window fully shaded by an overhang element that is as wide as the window. The shading element shown here is not symmetrical about the center, indicating that an extension to the left was used to provide a larger shade period after noon. This is typical for east-facing windows and is reversed for western exposures.*

TABLE 6.1 Time of Day When Window Is Fully Shaded

With Required Overhang Extensions			With Element Same Width As Window
Date	**From**	**To**	**Time**
21 June	0900	1240	1115
21 July/May	0850	1250	1100
21 Aug./Apr.	0845	1330	1035
21 Sept./Mar.	0940	1400	0955
21 Oct./Feb.	1040	1410	—
21 Nov./Jan.	12N	1300	—
21 Dec.	1230		—

50% shading for late summer (and early spring) and 100% shading for early summer (and late spring).

(e) Design Approaches

In addition to the approach just described, design might start with conceptual sketches of an appropriate shading device. As the sketches are developed into scaled drawings, a sectional drawing will show the geometry of the building. The VSA for 100% shading would be an angle from the windowsill to the outer edge of the overhang. Once the VSA is established, a shading mask can be created and overlaid onto the appropriate sunpath chart to determine whether there is adequate shading during specific times of the day and year. A more detailed description of this design process is found in Olgyay and Olgyay (1951).

Shading devices can greatly enrich the aesthetics of a building as well as improve performance. Examples of shading device models for various orientations (Fig. 6.27) show a range of shading design solutions for a building in a temperate climate.

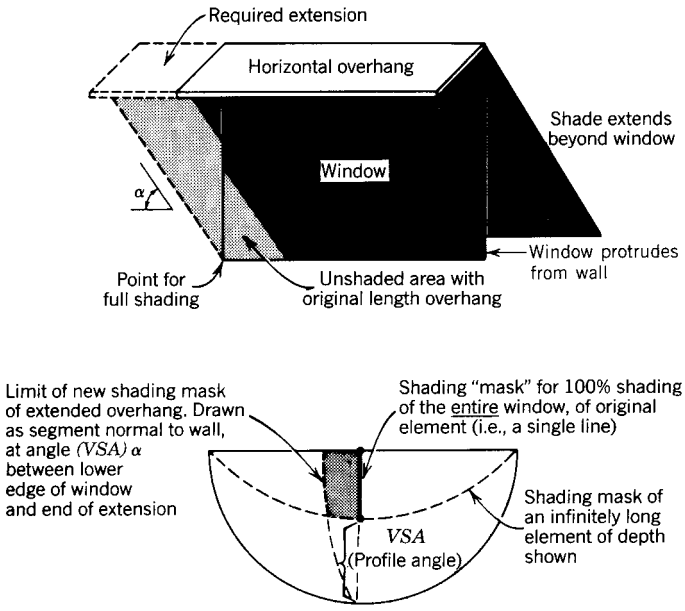


Fig. 6.25 *A horizontal overhang with sufficient depth to provide 100% shading can provide full shading only when the sun is exactly opposite a window. At any other time, part of the window will be exposed to the sun. Full shading from low early morning or late afternoon sun is not possible with horizontal elements.*

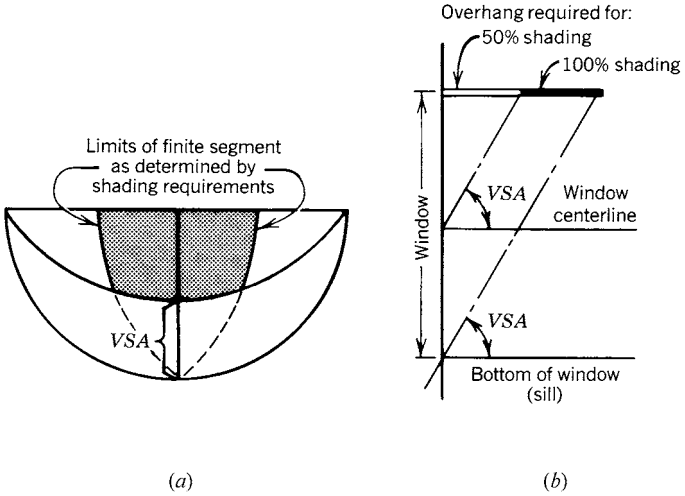
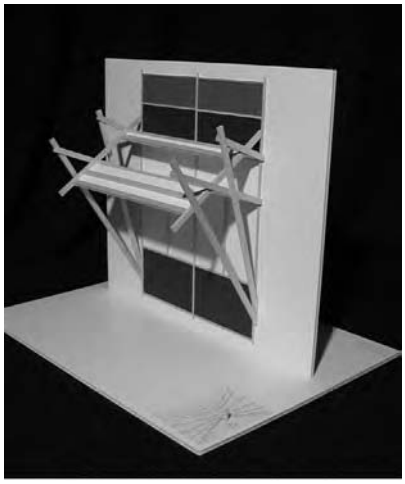
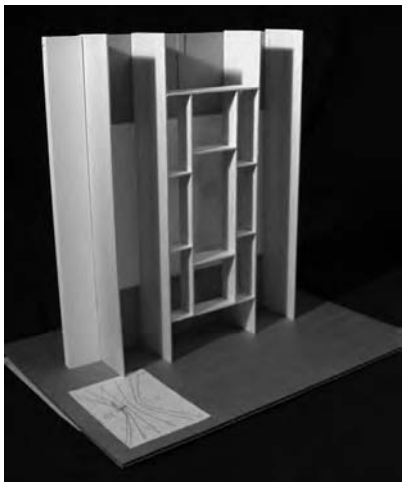


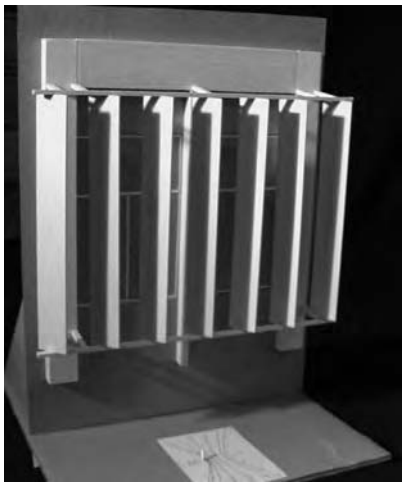
Fig. 6.26 *One way to find the required depth of a horizontal overhang is to establish the required segmental shading mask (a) and read the VSA (profile angle) off the protractor that corresponds to the segment. Draw a wall section (b) to scale with the VSA. The VSA can be drawn for 50% shading coverage, 100% coverage, or any other value. The depth of the overhang can be measured directly from the section. Alternatively, if the overhang depth is known, the segment can be drawn.*



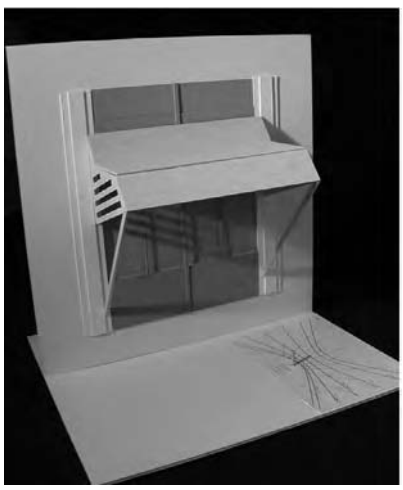
(*a*)



(*d*)



(*b*)



(*e*)



(*c*)



(*f*)

Fig. 6.27 *Examples of shading device models (a–f) illustrate a variety of design responses to orientation, shading requirements, and view for a university building located at 44° N latitude. (Photos by Fumiko Docker; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

References and Resources

AIA. 1981. Ramsey, C. G. and H. R. Sleeper. *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 8th ed. American Institute of Architects/John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Cowan, H. J. (ed.). 1980. *Solar Energy Applications in the Design of Buildings.* Applied Science Publishers. London.

Geomagnetic Maps (showing magnetic deviation): http://www.geo-orbit.org/sizepgs/magmapsp.html

Harkness, E. and M. Mehta. 1978. *Solar Radiation Control in Buildings.* Applied Science Publishers. London.

Lim, B. P., K. R. Rao, K. Tharmaratnam, and A. M. Mattar. 1979. *Environmental Factors in the Design of Building Fenestration.* Applied Science Publishers. London.

Mazria, E. 1979. *The Passive Solar Energy Book: A Complete Guide to Passive Solar Home, Greenhouse and Building Design.* Rodale Press. Emmaus, PA.

Olgyay, A. and V. Olgyay. 1951. *Solar Control and Shading Devices.* Princeton University Press. Princeton, NJ.

Online Sun Angle Calculator: http://www.susdesign.com/sunangle/

Pilkington Sun Angle Calculator. 1975. The Pilkington Sun Angle Calculator (formerly the Libbey Owens Ford Sun Angle Calculator) is available through the Society of Building Science Educators (SBSE). See http://www.sbse.org/resources/sac/index.htm/

Square One Research (solar position tutorial): http://www.squ1.com/archive/ (use menu for topics).

Sundials.org (information on clock vs. solar time): http://sundials.org/faq/tips.htm

Szokolay, S. V. 1980. *Environmental Science Handbook.* Halsted/John Wiley & Sons. New York.

University of Oregon (sunpath diagram software): http://solardat.uoregon.edu/SunChartProgram.html

U.S. Naval Observatory (complete sun and moon data for one day): http://aa.usno.navy.mil/data/docs/RS_OneDay.html

CHAPTER 7

Heat Flow

UNDERSTANDING HEAT FLOW IS fundamental to all aspects of climate control. Chapter 4 addresses heat flows to and from the body that affect thermal comfort. Chapters 8, 9, and 10 deal in part with heat flows to, from, and within various elements of active and passive climate control systems. This chapter deals with heat flows through building envelopes, both through the materials of the building skin and by way of outdoor air that replaces conditioned indoor air. Basic concepts and calculations of heat flow are presented in this chapter, whereas applications of these concepts (passive solar heating, passive cooling, active HVAC system/equipment sizing, seasonal energy usage) are found in subsequent chapters. Numerous data tables that accompany this chapter are presented in Appendix E.

7.1 THE BUILDING ENVELOPE

From a building science perspective, the exterior enclosure (or envelope) of a building consists of numerous materials and components that are assembled on site to meet the intents of the owner and the design team. A building envelope typically includes some prefabricated components (such as windows and doors) that are available off the shelf and have well-defined and tested thermal performance characteristics. The typical envelope also includes materials in a variety of forms (sheets, blocks, bulk products, membranes, etc.) that have been site-assembled to meet design requirements. These components and materials may be assembled into commonly used configurations with generally understood performance or into configurations unique to a given project and of uncertain performance. The job of envelope thermal analysis is to ensure that a proposed envelope will meet the design intent and criteria (including building codes).

From a functional perspective, the envelope of a building is not merely a two-dimensional exterior surface; it is a three-dimensional transition space—a theater where the interactions between outdoor forces and indoor conditions occur under the command of materials and geometries. Sun and daylight are admitted or rejected; breezes and sounds are channeled or deflected; and rain is repelled or collected. This transition space is where people indoors can experience something of what the outdoors is like at the moment, as well as where people outside can get a glimpse of the functions within. Figure 7.1 shows an example of an envelope that is a transitional space, not merely a surface. The more suited the outdoors is to comfort, the more easily indoor activity can move into this transition space. At building entries, a person will be especially aware of the difference between indoors and outdoors during the passage between the two conditions.

The envelope has a fourth dimension: it changes with time. Seasonal changes have a marked effect on the façade shown in Fig. 7.1 and



Fig. 7.1 *The envelope is more than a surface. This south-facing office façade in Oregon forms a microclimate zone that buffers the transition between indoor and outdoor conditions. Groundcover plants at eye level for seated occupants and deciduous vines overhead give a seasonally changing view to the outdoors through a façade that also admits winter sun, year-round daylight, and summer breeze. (Photo by Amanda Clegg.)*

a more subtle effect on the east-facing balconies of the apartments in Fig. 7.2. The year-round usable volume of these apartments is increased by making the balcony into a sun porch. This allows sun to enter while blocking the wind—a response to Oregon's long, mildly cold winter. The more that users are involved in decisions about how much of the outside to bring inside, the more changeable the building envelope will be. Not all buildings encourage such flexibility and individual expression; an unchanging envelope can be a symbol of stability and may be considered appropriate for some governmental and religious monuments.

7.2 BUILDING ENVELOPE DESIGN INTENTIONS

Called by their familiar names, the basic components of a building envelope include windows, doors, floors, walls, and roofs. On closer inspection, windows can include skylights, clerestories, screens, shutters, drapes, blinds, diffusing glass, and reflecting glass—an array of components that determines how the envelope does its job of making the transition between inside and outside. Norberg-Schulz (1965) suggests that a component can more fundamentally be thought of in terms of its design intent relative to the exchange of energies: as a *filter*, *connector*, *barrier*, or *switch*:

> In general, we define a *connector* as a means to establish a direct connection, a *filter* as a means to make the connection indirect (controlled), a switch as a regulating connector, and a *barrier* as a separating element. . . . An opaque wall thus serves as a filter to heat and cold, and as a barrier to light. Doors and windows have the character of switches, because they can stop or connect at will. (p. 113)

In addition to these historic envelope intents, a new option is emerging: the *transformer.* A transformer is intended to convert an environmental force (such as solar radiation) directly into a different and desirable energy form (such as electricity). A photovoltaic roof shingle is an example of a transformer.

The fundamental range of choices surrounding envelope intent and components can be illustrated by two opposite design concepts: the *open frame* and the *closed shell.* In harsh climates (or where unwanted external influences such as noise or visual clutter abound), the designer frequently conceives of the building envelope as a closed shell and proceeds to selectively punch holes in it to make limited and special contacts with the outdoors. Such an approach might be called *barrier-dominated.* When external conditions are very close to the desired internal ones, the envelope often begins as an open structural frame, with pieces of building skin selectively added to modify only a few outdoor forces. Such an approach might be called *connector-dominated.* (Note that a connector, filter, or barrier for one natural force may change its role for another force: glazing may be a connector to daylight but a barrier to wind.) The open-frame or the closed-shell approach to envelope design, when combined with material availability and the influence of local culture, can produce a distinct regional architecture, as shown in Fig. 7.3.

With a wide range of energy sources, building materials, and mechanical equipment available, it is possible to build connector-dominated buildings anywhere, regardless of the climate. The consequences of the resulting energy consumption can be severe. In contrast, if defending against outdoor conditions becomes an overriding consideration, barrier-dominated envelopes may be appropriate in any climate. The designer's use of connectors, filters, and barriers is basic to the design of building exteriors. With the addition of switches that allow



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 7.2 *Envelopes change with time. This east-facing Oregon building façade changes by season and over the years. (a) December morning sun floods unshaded balconies in the building's early years. (b) Months later, June morning sun is blocked by shading devices on some balconies. (c) Years later, many balconies have been enclosed for greater winter comfort. (Cascade Manor, Eugene, OR; John Graham & Associates, Architects.)*

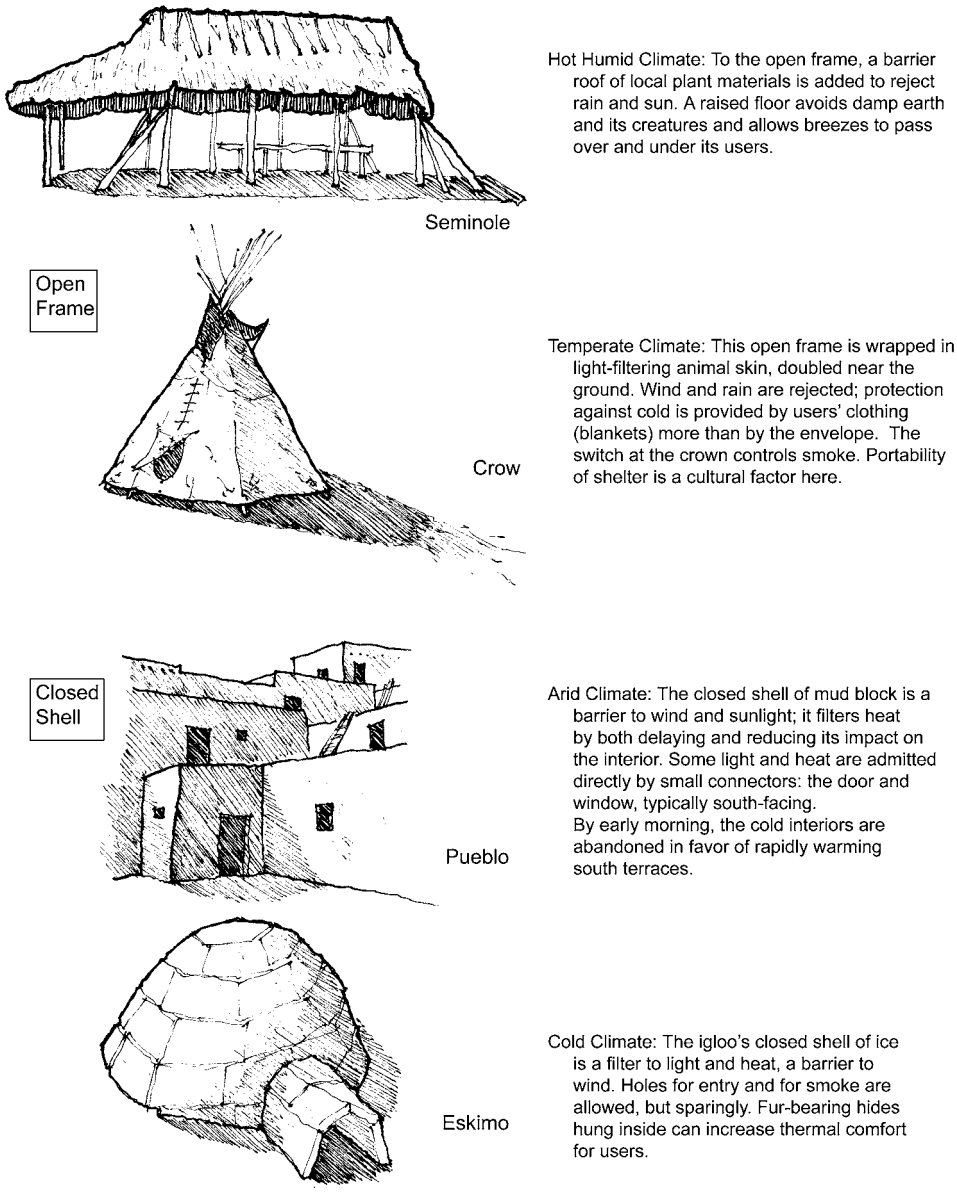


Fig. 7.3 *Open frame (Seminole and Crow) and closed shell (Pueblo and Eskimo) envelope approaches are influenced by climate, materials, and culture. The influence of climate is dramatic, but material availability and cultural expectations also influence the envelope design solutions in these examples. (Drawing by Dain Carlson.)*

the envelope to respond to changing conditions and transformers that respond to building needs and site resources, a liveliness can result that makes a building an attractive addition to its environs.

Switches are a designer's way of having an envelope respond in a variable manner and/or giving building occupants some control of their own environment. Seasons and functions change; people are unpredictable. If the designer has carefully considered the range of choices that a switch will provide, successful user control of that switch is possible. Building skins plentifully supplied with switches become demonstrations that architecture is a performing art, not simply static sculpture. Figure 7.4 shows a remarkably integrated switch-dominated envelope in vernacular architecture.

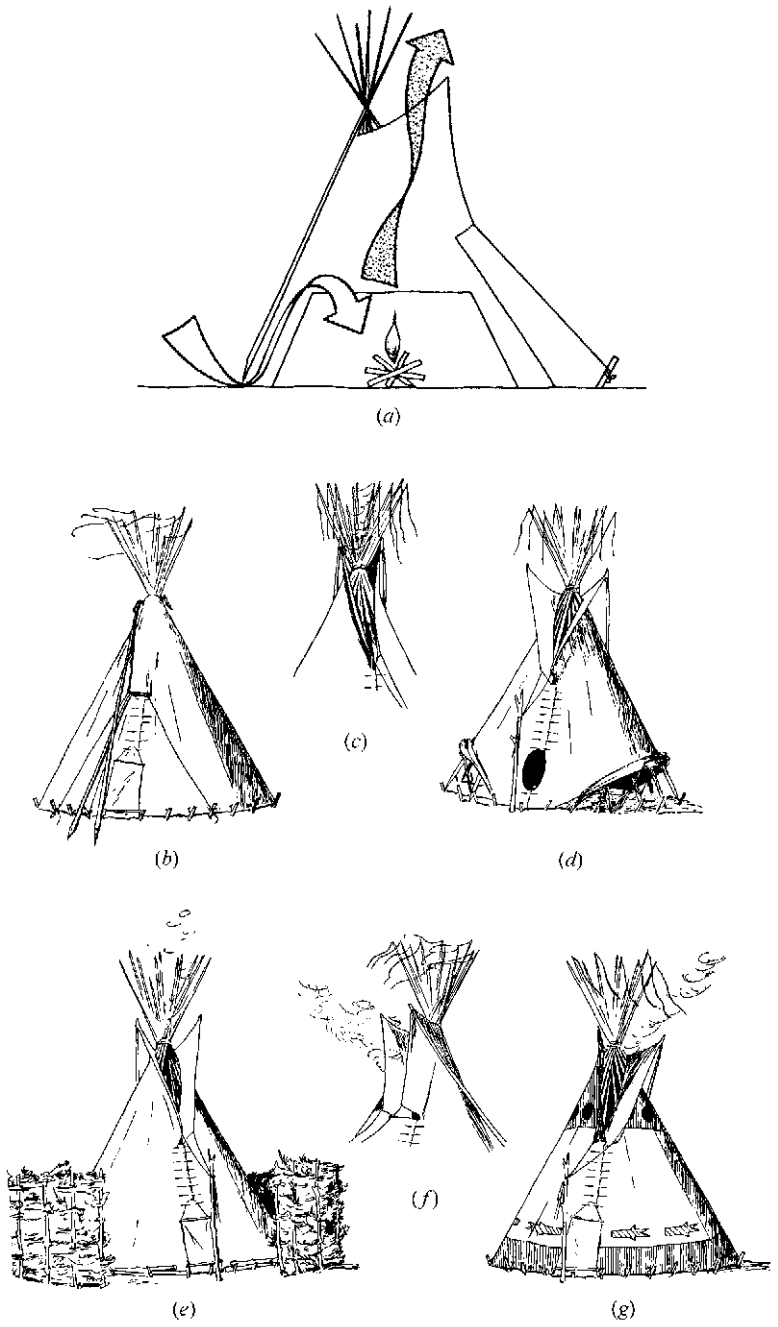


Fig. 7.4 *Thermal switches on the Great Plains. (a) With an interior fire, smoke flaps at the top are adjusted to vent the smoke, and an interior liner forces the cold combustion air entering at ground level to first rise along the sides of the tipi, gaining some warmth, before it moves across the occupants on its way to the fire. Six adjustments to the lightweight, translucent, and portable tipi are shown: the tipis in these diagrams are facing east, with their backs to the prevailing westerly winds. (b) In severe rainstorms, the smoke flaps at the top can be closed. (c) For ordinary conditions of west wind, the smoke flaps block the wind, thus creating suction to draw out the smoke. (d) In hot weather, breezes are admitted under the cover at the ground. (e) In extremely cold weather, a temporary windbreak can be added. (f) For the unusual wind or (g) southwest wind, the smoke flaps are manipulated to block wind, again encouraging smoke draw-out, as in (c). (Parts b–g from* The Indian Tipi: Its History, Construction, and Use *by Reginald and Gladys Laubin. Copyright 1957 by the University of Oklahoma Press.)*

Daylighting/solar control devices are perhaps the most common and visible switches. Awnings block direct sun at some times and admit it at others. Opaque drapes can expose all of a window to incoming daylight on dark days or block out daylight entirely when desired. Translucent curtains can change bright sun into a diffuse light for the interior, or be drawn back to allow strong direct sun and shadow to be cast inside a room. Passive solar heating systems rely on switches to control the incoming sun on warmer days, as seen in Fig. 7.2*b*. Operable windows are a commonly used thermal switch. Ventilating switches may be separate from windows.

Visually, switches are a particularly promising source of three- and four-dimensional interest on a building's exterior. For the office buildings in Fig. 7.5, on which façade would the daily and seasonal changes be most visually evident? If it is easier to imagine human beings working behind the windows of one building than of the other, might that suggest a more satisfactory work environment? Might more personal control of a window promote greater comfort?

Switches encourage interaction between users and their environments. This is usually satisfying to the users, who are able to select the desired exposure to the climate at a given moment. Yet without automation, supervision, or training in their use, switches can also be detrimental to system performance. Examples include a thermal shade left to cover a passive solar-collecting window on a cold, sunny morning; a vent left open during the hottest hours in a high-mass, night-ventilated building; or an awning rolled up to expose a window to summer sun. People in buildings often use switches as they feel appropriate, as demonstrated in Fig. 7.6. Conventionally air-conditioned buildings typically do away with user-operated ventilating switches (operable windows) so that the system will instead function with a closely and automatically controlled flow of filtered outdoor air. Thermally efficient as this practice may be, it can also be a source of widespread dissatisfaction with air-conditioned spaces. Sealed windows greatly curtail people's contact with sounds, smells, and breezes from the outdoors. This is frequently beneficial in urban areas, yet on beautiful days it can be very frustrating. A lack of switches can contribute to a feeling of helplessness about one's personal environment.

Passive heating and cooling systems are especially reliant upon switches, hence on the knowledge and cooperation of their users. These users often must base their actions in manipulating thermal switches at some point in time on what effect will be needed at a later time. This practice, called *thermal sailing,* is similar to the actions of outdoor workers in the far north, who learn to unbutton their coats in the cold early hours of the workday *before* they begin to sweat. Sweat would soak their insulating clothing, with harmful results later in the day as temperatures fall rapidly near dusk.

Misjudgments in passively solar-heated residences can result in extraordinarily high temperatures on a sunny day or uncomfortably cold nights without stored solar heat. For a building closely connected to its climate, the design of switches is also the design of an educational process for the users. The challenge is to involve, but not bind, the users in the management of their environment. Automated controls are a partial answer to this challenge; switches that are easy, fun, and obvious to use are another.

7.3 SENSIBLE HEAT FLOW THROUGH OPAQUE WALLS AND ROOFS

The flow of heat through a building envelope varies both by season (heat generally flows *from* a building in winter and *to* a building in summer) and by the path of the heat (through the materials of a building's skin or by way of outdoor air entering the interior through intentional and unintentional pathways). These complexities must be considered by a designer who intends to deliver comfort and energy efficiency. The following discussion of heat flow will focus first upon the building skin (opaque elements, then transparent elements), followed by heat flow via air exchange.

In the 1970s, designers began placing increasing emphasis on thermal performance of the building skin to conserve energy in the wake of energy scarcity. Tighter building envelopes resulted in decreased air leakage, leading to ongoing concerns about indoor air quality and "sick building syndrome." It is likely that today's building code requirements strike a fair balance between envelope energy efficiency and air quality requirements. Buildings have changed as a result of this balance. Today's



Fig. 7.5 *Sun control for Boston offices. (a) Shading switches both inside the glass (blinds) and outside the glass (awnings) are evident, and the windows themselves are operable. Awning use varies with window location and occupant needs and desires. (New England Merchants' Bank; Shepley Rutan & Coolidge, Architects; demolished 1966.) (b) Three-dimensional filters (overhangs) dominate the south façade (right) of this building at Boston University; the adjacent west windows (where overhangs are less effective) have only internal switches (blinds) deployed in a variety of positions. (Law and Education Building; Sert, Jackson and Gourley, Architects). (c) A two-dimensional filter of reflective glass equally sheathes all faces of this office tower, sending reflected sunlight to the neighborhood below. The "switches" in this case are thermostats; variability is removed from the envelope, and users are not involved in defining the outside–inside relationship. (John Hancock Headquarters; I.M. Pei and Partners, Architects; photo by Stephen Tang.)*



(a)



(b)

Fig. 7.6 *Which is spring, which is summer? The awnings for this south-facing office in Eugene, Oregon, are teamed with overhangs and side walls (or fins) to provide sun control for windows. (a) The altitude of the spring sun is low enough to threaten glare in the lower windows and cause awning deployment. (b) The summer sun, at a higher altitude, is readily blocked by the overhangs, and the awnings can be rolled up with less risk of glare. (Moreland-Unruh-Smith, Architects.)*

typical new North American building loses somewhat more winter heat via incoming fresh air than it loses through its skin. In summer it gains somewhat more heat through its skin than it does via incoming fresh air (although this is climate-dependent). This pattern is due in part to solar radiation being so important to envelope heat gains in summer, and in part to the design outdoor–indoor temperature difference being much greater in winter than in summer (in most North American locations).

Sensible heat is a form of energy that flows whenever there is a temperature difference and that manifests itself as an internal energy of atomic vibration within all materials. Temperature is an

indication of the extent of such vibration, essentially the "density" of heat within a material. Other forms of energy (such as solar radiation or sound) can be converted to heat and vice versa (within limits). Latent heat is sensible heat used to change the state of (evaporate or condense) water. *Power* refers to the instantaneous flow of energy (at a given time). In buildings, *energy* refers to power usage over time. Table 7.1 lists commonly encountered terms related to energy, power (the rate of energy use), and heat flow. Admittedly, some of the units used to quantify heat, power, and energy are quirky. Nevertheless, time spent understanding these units may be rewarded.

(a) Static versus Dynamic; Sensible versus Latent

Although the general principles remain the same, analysis of heat flow under dynamic (rapidly changing) conditions is more complex than under static or steady-state (fairly stable over time) conditions. The effects of heat storage within materials become a greater concern under dynamic conditions than under static conditions. A static analysis requires consideration of fewer variables than a dynamic analysis and is therefore simpler. The key determinant of steady-state heat flow is thermal *resistance*. An analysis of heat flow under dynamic conditions involves more variables—including thermal *capacitance*. The following discussion begins with steady-state assumptions and then looks at the dynamic situation.

Heat flows are of two forms—sensible heat and latent heat. Sensible heat flow results in a change in temperature. Latent heat flow results in a change in moisture content (often humidity of the air). Total heat flow is the sum of sensible and latent flows. Materials react differently to sensible and latent heat flows; as such, the discussion that follows begins with sensible heat flow and then deals with latent heat flows.

(b) Heat Flow Processes

Whenever an object is at a temperature different from its surroundings, heat flows from the hotter to the colder. Likewise, moisture flows from areas of greater concentration to areas of lesser concentration. Buildings, like bodies, experience sensible heat loss to, and gain from, the environment in three principal ways. In *convection*, heat is exchanged between a fluid (typically air) and a solid, with motion of the fluid due to heating or cooling playing a critical role in the extent of heat transfer. In *conduction*, heat is transferred directly from molecule to molecule, within or between materials, with proximity of molecules (material density) playing a critical role in the extent of heat transfer. In *radiation*, heat flows via electromagnetic waves from hotter surfaces to detached, colder ones—across empty space and potentially great distances. *Evaporation* can also be involved in envelope heat loss, carrying heat away from wet surfaces, but this is much less influential for most buildings than for our bodies. Moisture flow through envelope assemblies and via air leakage are the principal means of latent heat gain (or loss).

The combination of sensible heat flow by convection, conduction, and radiation through some typical combinations of materials is shown in Fig. 7.7. Heat flow through the various components of a building skin involves both heat flow through solids and heat flow through layers of air. Multiple air spaces and reflective surfaces are useful and inexpensive ways to slow the flow of heat via radiation from hot spaces where temperature differences are large. Some of the most effective insulating materials, therefore, combine dead-air spaces and layers of reflective films.

(c) Thermal Properties of Components

Each material used in an envelope assembly has fundamental physical properties that determine how that material will interact with sensible heat. These key properties are described in the following section.

Conductivity. Each material has a characteristic rate at which heat will flow through it. For homogeneous solids this is called *conductivity* (designated as k), and in the inch-pound (I-P) system it is the number of British thermal units per hour (Btu/h) that flow through 1 square foot (ft^2) of material that is 1 in. thick when the temperature difference across that material is 1 °F (under conditions of steady heat flow). Thus the I-P units of conductivity are Btu in./h ft^2 °F.

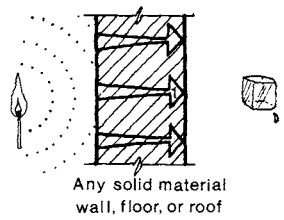
The System International (SI) equivalent is the number of watts that flow through 1 square meter

TABLE 7.1 Energy, Power, and Heat Terminology[a]

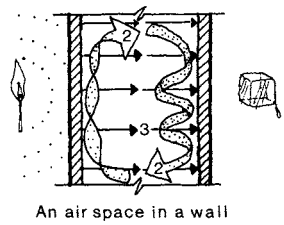
Concept	Terminology	Symbol	Discussion
ENERGY			The term *energy* implies a cumulative perspective, such as the potential in a barrel of oil or solar radiation collected during a heating season.
	British thermal unit	Btu	The British thermal unit is the fundamental I-P unit of energy. A Btu is the amount of energy (heat) required to raise the temperature of 1 lb of water by 1°F. A burning wooden match releases approximately 1 Btu.
	Joule	J	The joule is the fundamental SI unit of energy. A joule is a newton-meter (a force of 1 newton acting over a 1-m distance). A joule is a fairly small unit of energy, so the kilo-joule (kJ), equal to 1000 J, is commonly used in building design.
	Watt-hour	Wh[b]	The watt-hour is a commonly used SI unit of energy. 1 W = 1 J/s 1 Btu = 1.055 kJ 1 kJ = 0.9478 Btu
POWER			The term *power* is used to describe the rate of energy usage, production, or flow. Power is always associated with a time frame (often an hour in building design).
	British thermal unit per hour	Btu/h or Btuh[b]	A rate of energy flow. Btu/h is used to express heat gains and losses and the heating and cooling capacity of equipment.
	Watt	W	The watt is the SI unit of power and is used the same as Btu/h. 1 Btu/h = 0.0293 W 1 W = 3.412 Btu/h
	Horsepower	HP	An I-P expression of power, typically used to describe the capacity (size) of certain HVAC equipment (such as motors). 1 HP = 2545 Btu/h 1 HP = 746 W
HEAT FLOW			Heat flow is a form of power and in building design is typically expressed in Btu/h or W. There are a number of heat flow-related properties of materials with specific definitions and uses described in the following material. These properties are based upon a unit area of material and a unit temperature difference.
	Conductivity	k	The rate of heat flow through a unit thickness of a homogeneous material. I-P units: Btu in./h ft^2 °F SI units: W/m °C Btu in./h ft^2 °F × 0.1442 = W/m °C
	Conductance	C	The rate of heat flow through a specific nonhomogeneous object (such as a concrete masonry unit) or a defined thickness of a homogeneous material. I-P units: Btu/h ft^2 °F SI units: W/m^2 °C Btu/h ft^2 °F × 5.678 = W/m^2 °C
	Film or surface conductance	h	The conductance of an air film; same concept and units as conductance.
	Overall coefficient of heat flow	U (or U-factor)	The rate of heat flow through an assembly (window, wall, etc.) bounded by air on both sides. Includes the effects of all materials, air films, and air spaces. I-P units: Btu/h ft^2 °F SI units: W/m^2 °C Btu h ft^2 °F × 5.678 = W/m^2 °C
	Resistance	R	A measure of resistance to heat flow; the reciprocal of conductivity (or conductance). Essentially the force required to cause a unit flow of heat. I-P units: h ft^2 °F/Btu SI units: m^2 °C/W h ft^2 °F/Btu × 0.176 = m^2 °C/W (I-P) R per in. × 6.93 = (SI) R per m
	Permeance	M	Although permeance deals directly with water vapor flow, it is related to heat flow through the need to add or remove heat to humidify or dehumidify a building. I-P units: grains/ft^2 h in. Hg SI units: ng/m^2 s Pa grains/ft^2 h in. Hg × 56.7 = ng/m^2 s Pa

[a]A more complete listing of I-P (inch-pound) and SI (Système International) units and conversions is provided in Appendix A.

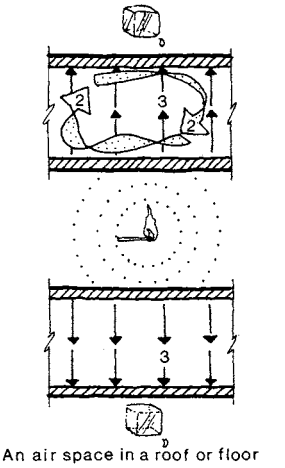
[b]Units oddity: The alternative symbol "Btuh" is shorthand for Btu/h and does not imply a product of energy and time; on the other hand, Wh is a product (1 watt of power over a 1-hr period); furthermore, Btu (without a time unit) is a measure of energy, as is Wh (with a time unit).



A single solid material illustrates the transfer of heat from the warmer to the cooler particles by conduction (1).

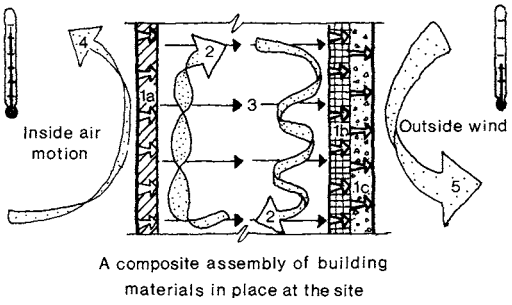


As air is warmed by the warmer side of the air space, it rises. As it falls down along the cooler side, it transfers heat to this surface (2). Radiant energy (3) is transferred from the warmer to the cooler surface. The rate depends upon the relative temperature of the surfaces and upon their emissive and absorptive qualities. Direction is always from the warmer to the cooler surface.



The convective action (2) in the air space of a roof is similar to that in a wall, although the height through which the air rises and falls is usually less. The radiant transfer is up in this case because its direction is always to the cooler surface.

When the higher temperature is at the top of a horizontal air space, the warm air is trapped at the top and, being less dense than the cooler air at the bottom, will not flow down to transfer its heat to the cooler surface. This results in little flow by convection. The radiant transfer in this case is down because that is the direction from the warmer surface to the cooler one.



This example of a wall in place illustrates the several methods by which heat is lost through a composite assembly of materials. Conduction at varying rates in different materials is accounted for in 1a, 1b, and 1c. Convection currents (2) and radiation (3) carry the heat across the air space.

Fig. 7.7 *Heat flow through materials, across air spaces, and through construction assemblies. Means of heat flow include conduction, convection, and radiation.*

(m^2) of material 1 m thick when the temperature difference across that material is 1 K (equal to 1°C) under conditions of steady heat flow. Thus, the SI units of conductivity are W/m K or W/m °C (these two terms are used interchangeably in the tables related to this chapter).

Conductivity is established by laboratory tests and is published as a basic property of homogeneous solids. Conductivity is an important factor in passive heating or cooling designs that depend heavily upon the rate at which heat is conducted into a material from its surface.

Conductance. Many solids such as common brick, wood siding, batt or board insulation, gypsum board, and so on are widely available in standard

thicknesses. For such common materials, it is useful to know the rate of heat flow for that standard thickness instead of the rate per inch. *Conductance*, designated as *C*, is the number of Btus per hour that flow through 1 ft^2 of a given thickness of material when the temperature difference is 1°F. The units are Btu/h ft^2 °F. SI units are W/m^2 K. Conductance is also used to describe the rate of heat flow through defined sizes of modular units of nonhomogeneous materials (such as a concrete masonry unit—composed of pockets of air surrounded by concrete).

Resistance. Conductivity and conductance are compared in Table 7.1 and Fig. 7.8, which also include another useful property, *resistance*. Designated as *R*, resistance indicates how effective any material is as an insulator. The reciprocal of conductivity (or conductance), *R* is measured in *hours* needed for 1 Btu to flow through 1 ft^2 of a given thickness of a material when the temperature difference is 1°F. In the I-P system, the units are h ft^2 °F/Btu. SI units are m^2 K/W. Resistances and other important thermal properties are listed for many conventional building materials in Table E.1 (Appendix E). Table E.2 provides similar information for alternative (less commonly used and/or emerging) construction approaches.

Resistance is especially useful when comparing insulating materials, because the greater the R-value, the more effective the insulator. For this purpose, *R* is sometimes listed as "per inch" of thickness, in which case the units are h ft^2 °F/Btu-in. SI units are m K/W (indicating "per meter" of thickness across 1 m^2, even though the canceling units are odd).

Emittance. Radiation heat transfer is highly influenced by surface characteristics; shiny materials are much less able to radiate than common rough building materials. This characteristic is

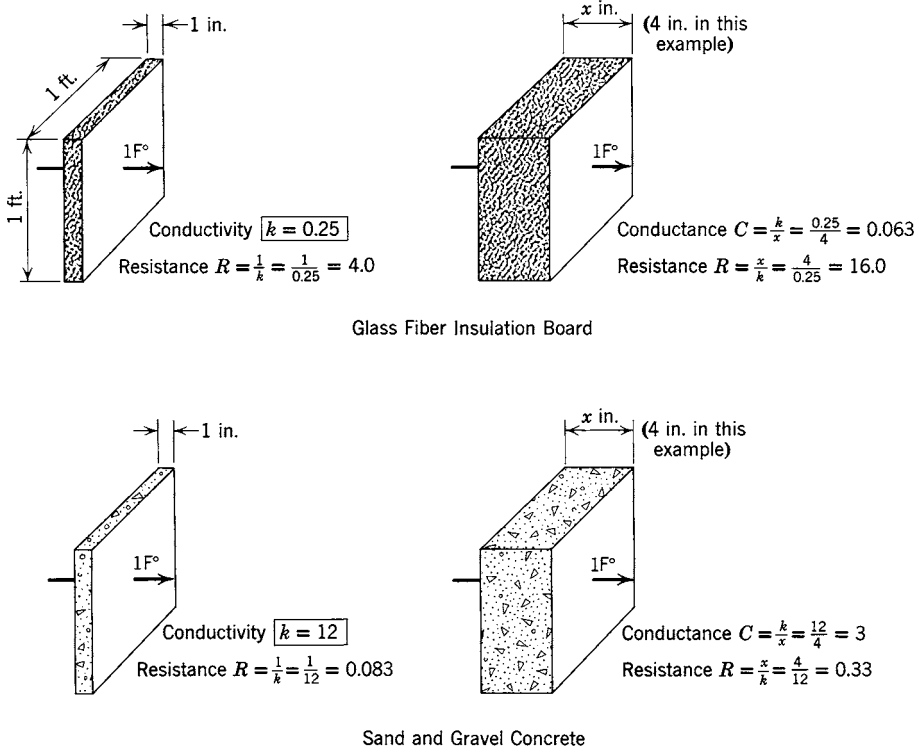


Fig. 7.8 *Relationship between conductivity, conductance, and resistance for two typical materials. Glass fiber is a material of low conductivity (high resistance); concrete is a material of high conductivity (low resistance). Note: Standard unit of area is 1 ft^2 (1 m^2); standard air temperature differential is 1°F (1°C).*

called *emittance*, the *ratio* of the radiation emitted by a given material to that emitted by a blackbody at the same temperature. The impact of emittance (shiny vs. matte surfaces) is seen in Tables E.3, E.4, and E.5, which present properties of air layers and air spaces within construction assemblies; the lower the emittance, the lower the radiative heat exchange. For most materials, emittance is related to absorptance: a highly absorptive (low-reflectance) material will usually have a high emittance as well. *Selective surfaces* (sometimes used in solar collectors) are highly absorptive yet have very low emittance.

(d) Thermal Classifications of Materials

Architectural materials generally interact with heat either as *insulators* that retard the flow of heat (useful for thermal barriers) or as *conductors* that encourage heat flow (useful for thermal storage materials). It is common to find both insulators and conductors in the same construction. For example, a wall can have an inner layer that is highly conductive and thermally massive (for thermal storage), with an outer layer that is also highly conductive and thermally massive (for durability and weathering) and a highly insulative, low-mass material in between.

Insulations. Materials used for insulation fall into three broad categories: (1) *inorganic* fibrous or cellular products (such as glass, rock wool, slag wool, perlite, or vermiculite), (2) *organic* fibrous or cellular products (such as cotton, synthetic fibers, cork, foamed rubber, or polystyrene), and (3) *metallic* or metalized organic *reflective* membranes (which must face an air space to be effective).

Insulating materials are available in a wide variety of forms. Form-fitting materials include *loose fill* (as above a ceiling on the floor of an attic); *insulating cement*, a loose material mixed with a binder and troweled onto a surface; and *formed-in-place* materials such as expanded pellets or liquid-fiber mixtures that are poured, frothed, sprayed, or blown in place. Less form-fitting but more common are batts and blankets of *flexible*, *semirigid* insulation, with varying degrees of compressibility and adaptability to substrates. *Rigid* insulation, with little on-site adaptability, is applied in blocks, boards, or sheets and can be preformed to fit nonplanar surfaces such as pipes.

Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) have become very popular (and controversial), both for retrofit and for new construction. Utilizing expanded polystyrene rigid boards applied to exterior gypsum, plywood, or cementitious substrates, then covered with fabric-reinforced acrylic, this construction method achieves slightly more than R-4 per inch of thickness (SI about R-28 per meter).

Reflective materials are available in sheets and rolls of either single or multiple layers, sometimes as preformed shapes with integral air spaces. When used without attachment to blanket or batt insulation, a reflective layer is called a *radiant barrier* and is especially applicable to roofs in warmer climates. Radiant barriers are also useful in east- and west-facing walls in such climates; details of applications in the southern United States are found in Melody (1987).

A combination of dead (still) air spaces and reflective surfaces produces some of the most effective insulating products, especially when made of lightweight materials of low conductivity. Glass fiber, cellular glass, expanded styrenes (foamed plastics), and mineral fibers all enclose vast numbers of dead-air spaces per unit volume. When they are bonded to reflective films and properly installed (the shiny film facing a dead air space), high resistance to heat flow is achieved.

For a summary of contemporary insulation materials, including environmental impacts and life-cycle considerations, see Wilkinson (1999). For a range of information on insulations, see Bynum (2001).

Conductors. Materials used as conductors are typically dense, durable, and able to diffuse heat readily. Table E.1 lists the density, conductivity or conductance, and specific heat for many common materials. For a given material, the higher the numerical values of these three characteristics, the more successful that material's performance as a conductor. Some specifics on thermal mass are presented in the following section and in Chapter 8.

Air Films and Air Spaces. Air films and spaces are interesting thermal components. Although

they are actually void of material, they have potentially useful thermal properties and contribute substantially to the insulating capabilities of some construction assemblies. All aboveground envelope assemblies include at least two air films (interior and exterior), and many common assemblies include a substantial air space.

Air Films. At the exposed surfaces of solids, heat transfer takes place both by convection and by radiation. (Evaporation also can occur, occasionally with thermally significant results—see Fig. 8.44, the United Kingdom Pavilion, Seville, for an example of an entire wall used as an evaporative heat transfer element.) Convection is highly dependent upon air motion, so wind speed must be considered when estimating exterior surface convection. Also, because warm air rises and cold air falls, vertical surfaces that encourage surface airflow will exchange heat faster than similar surfaces placed horizontally, unless the direction of the heat flow is *upward* through the horizontal layer, as illustrated in Fig. 7.7.

When air motion along a surface is minimal, an *insulating layer* of air "attaches" itself to the surface. The resistance of this layer of still air along a vertical surface is equivalent to that of a thickness of ½-in. (12.7-mm) plywood. When this air layer is disturbed, however, its resistance drops quickly; with a 15-mph (6.7-m/s) wind, resistance drops to about one-quarter of the still-air value (see Table E.3). Similar drops in air film resistance occur when forced-air registers are located immediately above or below windows.

The insulation value provided by layers of air is often listed as conductance, the reciprocal of resistance. Surface conductances are designated h_i for interior air layers and h_o for exterior or outside air layers (sometimes the symbols f_i and f_o are used instead). Like other conductances, they are expressed in Btu/h ft^2 °F (in SI units, W/m^2 K). The variations in surface resistances and conductances are shown in Table E.3.

Air Spaces. An air space is a planar volume of air contained on two sides by some elements (drywall, brick, insulation, etc.) of an envelope assembly. Like the air films just discussed, air spaces can contribute to the overall thermal resistance of a construction assembly. As indicated in Tables E.4 (I-P) and E.5 (SI), the resistance provided by an air space is a function of its width, position (vertical, horizontal, tilted), and surrounding emittances. To be effective in resisting heat flow, an air space must be relatively "dead"—without substantial air circulation.

(e) Composite Thermal Performance

The variety of terms used so far to express thermal properties is potentially bewildering. These properties are, however, only components of a larger picture. Fortunately, there is *one* overall property that expresses the steady-state rate at which heat flows through architectural envelope assemblies. This property is the U-factor. U is the overall coefficient of thermal transmittance, expressed in terms of Btu/h ft^2 °F (in SI units, W/m^2 K). U-factors are commonly used to specify envelope thermal design criteria, as presented in Appendix G and Chapter 8. Many codes and standards specify maximum U-factors (or, for insulation alone, minimum R- or maximum C-values) for various components of the envelope. An example of such requirements for a small office is found in Example 7.7. Because U-factors are so important and so often encountered, data for typical wall, floor, roof, door, and window constructions are presented in many design resources (see, for example, Tables E.6 through E.16).

U-factors are calculated for a particular element (roof, wall, etc.) by finding the resistance of each constituent part, including air films and air spaces, then adding these resistances to obtain a total resistance. The U-factor is the reciprocal of this sum ($\sum$) of resistances:

$$U = \frac{1}{\sum R}$$

This procedure is shown in Example 7.1. "Precalculated" U-factors for many common constructions are found in Tables E.6 through E.16, typically based upon an outside wind speed of 15 mph (6.7 m/s), except for summer conditions as noted. Unfortunately, many common constructions are not so simple, as discussed in the sections that follow.

EXAMPLE 7.1 What is the winter U-factor for the wall assembly shown in Fig. 7.9?

SOLUTION

Component	*R (I-P)*	*R (SI)*	*Data Source*
Inside air film	0.68	0.12	Table E.3
Gypsum board (0.375 in. [10 mm])	0.32	0.056	Table E.1
Plastic film vapor retarder	nil	nil	Table E.1
Glass fiber batt insulation (nominal 6 in. [150 m])	19.00	3.35	Table E.1
Plywood (0.5 in. [12 mm])	0.62	0.11	Table E.1
Wood siding (1 in. [25 mm])	0.79	0.14	Table E.1
Outside air film	0.17	0.03	Table E.3
Total resistance (R)	21.58	3.81	

$$U\,(\text{I-P}) = 1/\sum R = 1/21.58 = 0.046$$

$$U\,(\text{SI}) = 1/\sum R = 1/3.81 = 0.262 \quad \blacksquare$$

There are several important points to remember about the U-factor. The U-factor is a *sensible* heat property—addressing heat flow resulting from a temperature difference but not addressing *latent* (moisture-related) heat flow. The U-factor is an *overall* coefficient of heat transfer, and includes the effects of all elements in an assembly and all sensible modes of heat transfer (conduction, convection, and radiation). The term *U-factor* should be used only where heat flow is from air to air through an envelope assembly. Air-to-ground heat flow (as through a slab-on-grade floor) is a different matter and is considered in Section 7.3(f).

Walls. Compared to other elements of the building envelope, wall U-factors are quite straightforward. There are few complications such as ground contact, crawl spaces (as with floors), or intermediary attic spaces (as with roofs). There is, however, the issue of thermal bridging: Where framing interrupts insulation, there are actually two different wall constructions, and an averaged (an insulated portion with an uninsulated portion) U-factor must be found. Example 7.2 illustrates this procedure.

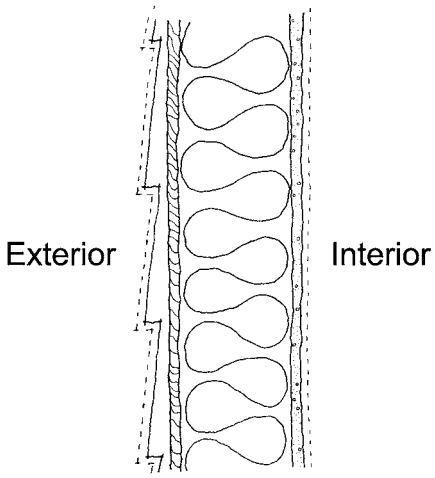


Fig. 7.9 *Wall section used in Example 7.1 to illustrate the process for determining a U-factor (overall thermal transmittance). (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering.)*

EXAMPLE 7.2 Considering thermal bridging, what is the winter U-factor for the wall assembly shown in Fig. 7.10?

SOLUTION

For those portions of the wall where insulation is encountered:

Component	*R (I-P)*	*R (SI)*
(6) Inside air film (still)	0.68	0.12
(5) Gypsum board (0.5 in. [12 mm])	0.45	0.079
Plastic film vapor retarder	nil	nil
(4) Glass fiber batt insulation (6 in. [150 mm])	19.0	3.32
(3) Vegetable fiber board (0.5 in. [12 mm])	1.32	0.23
(2) Lapped wood siding (0.5 in. [12 mm])	0.81	0.14
(1) Outside air film (15 mph [24 km/h])	0.17	0.03
Total resistance through insulation	22.43	3.92

For those portions of the wall where framing is encountered:

Component	*R (I-P)*	*R (SI)*
(6) Inside air film (still)	0.68	0.12
(5) Gypsum board (0.5 in. [12 mm])	0.45	0.079
Plastic film vapor retarder	nil	nil
(7) Wood studs (nominal 6 in. [150 mm])	6.82	1.20
(3) Vegetable fiber board (0.5 in. [12 mm])	1.32	0.23
(2) Lapped wood siding (0.5 in. [12 mm])	0.81	0.14
(1) Outside air film (15 mph [24 km/h])	0.17	0.03
Total resistance through framing	10.25	1.80

Assuming that 12% of the surface area of the wall consists of framing (studs, sills, and plates), the area-weighted resistance and U-factor of the wall are as follows:

R wtg = (0.88) (22.43) + (0.12) (10.25) = 20.97

U wtg = 1/20.97 = 0.048 (compared to 1/22.43 = 0.045 if framing is ignored)

SI: R wtg = (0.88) (3.92) + (0.12) (1.80) = 3.67

SI: U wtg = 1/3.67 = 0.272 (compared to 1/3.92 = 0.255 if framing is ignored) ■

The effects of framing with wood studs are nominal but noticeable. With metal studs, the detrimental effects of thermal bridging are more serious; Table E.8 provides information on correction factors and resulting R-values. The latest editions of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1, *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*, and ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2, *Energy-Efficient Design of Low-Rise Residential Buildings*, present examples of whole-wall U-factors that account for thermal bridging. See Appendix G for excerpts from Standard 90.1.

To illustrate the complexity of thermal bridging, consider the following range of U-factors, all for nominal 4-in. (100-mm) thick framed walls with R-13 [SI: R-2.3] insulation located within the stud cavity:

Metal building wall, nominal 4 in.	U = 0.14
(SI: 100 mm	U = 0.79)
Steel frame wall, 3.5 in. at 16-in. o.c.	U = 0.134
(SI: 90 mm at 400-mm o.c.	U = 0.76)
Steel frame wall, 3.5 in. at 24-in. o.c.	U = 0.115
(SI: 90 mm at 600-mm o.c.	U = 0.65)
Wood frame wall, 3.5 in. at 16-in. o.c.	U = 0.094
(SI: 90 mm at 400-mm o.c.	U = 0.53)
Wood frame wall, 3.5 in. at 24-in. o.c.	U = 0.091
(SI: 90 mm at 600-mm o.c.	U = 0.52)

For the same type of wall construction (wood frame), increasing stud spacing from 16-in. o.c.

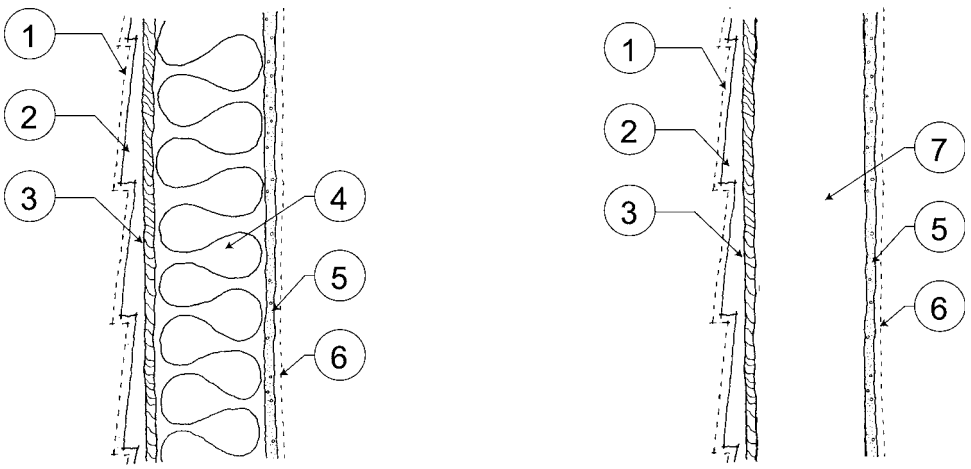


Fig. 7.10 *Wall sections used in Example 7.2 to illustrate the process for determining a weighted-average U-factor to account for thermal bridging in a frame wall. (Drawings by Jonathan Meendering.)*

to 24-in. o.c. (400 mm to 600 mm) decreases (improves) the U-factor from 0.094 to 0.091 (SI: 0.53 to 0.52)—a nominal difference. Changing from wood to steel studs (at 16-in. o.c.; 400 mm), however, increases (degrades) the U-factor from 0.094 to 0.134 (SI: 0.53 to 0.76)—equivalent to an R-3 (SI: R-0.5) decrease in insulation. If a detailed calculation of thermal bridging effects is required, consult the 2009 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, Chapter 25.

Several developments are promising to improve the thermal performance of wall systems. *Structural insulated panels* (SIPs) are now available in a wide variety of surfaces, insulation types, and thicknesses. Because a single factory-built panel replaces site-built framing, savings in labor can be substantial. Thermal performance is considerably improved because no framing members penetrate the insulated core. The typical SIP consists of two structural surfaces (often oriented-strand board, or OSB) that enclose a core of either expanded polystyrene (EPS) (R-4 per inch; SI: R-27.7 per meter) or polyisocyanurate foam (R-6.5 per inch; SI: R-45 per meter). The panels are joined with plywood splines that connect the structural surfaces of adjacent panels in a manner that reduces the thickness of, but does not interrupt, the insulated core. Another joining method, shiplap joints, maintains full-thickness core insulation. Air tightness is generally greater than with stud framing. U-factors of framed walls and SIPs are compared in Table E.9.

Insulated masonry systems can offer lower U-factors while preserving a masonry exterior (for weathering and appearance) and a masonry interior (for thermal mass). Past approaches (filling hollow cores of concrete block or clay tile with insulation) left considerable thermal bridging through the solid masonry, with rather high resulting U-factors. If one of the masonry surfaces is not to be exposed, then a continuous layer of insulation can be applied to that face, with much lower resulting whole-wall U-factors. Even in cavity walls, the layer of insulation between wythes of block is usually penetrated by ties—with resulting thermal bridging. The most elementary improvement in this regard uses ties with lower thermal conductivity, such as fiber composite materials in place of steel. Another approach is to use precast blocks that can be stacked integrally with preformed rigid insulation; to the extent that the insulation layer can both be thick and unbroken by ties, thermal bridging is greatly reduced. The following is a sample of manufacturers' whole-wall U-factors for medium-density (120 lb/ft^3 [1920 kg/m^3]) concrete block insulation alternatives:

8-in. two-core concrete block, uninsulated	U = 0.39
(SI: 200-mm two-core concrete block, uninsulated	U = 2.21)
8-in. two-core concrete block with insulated cores	U = 0.19
(SI: 200-mm two-core concrete block with insulated cores	U = 1.08)
8-in. proprietary two-wythe concrete block and core	U = 0.11
(SI: 200-mm proprietary two-wythe concrete block and core	U = 0.62)

Where poured-in-place concrete is not to be used as a surface material, insulating concrete forms (ICFs) can be used to improve thermal performance. This system employs preformed rigid insulation as a formwork for poured concrete; the form/insulation remains in place after the wall is poured. Rigid insulation thus protects both faces of the structural wall (although it isolates the thermal mass); exterior and interior finishes are then applied to the insulation.

Roofs. In the simple case of a roof/ceiling separating a conditioned space from the outdoors, the U-factor is calculated as for walls. Where insulation is broken by framing, the effects of thermal bridging must be considered. Table E.8 shows correction factors to be applied to insulation/metal truss assemblies. Similar adjustments, although of lesser magnitude, are required with wood framing. ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 presents several detailed tables of whole-roof U-factors that account for thermal bridging. If a detailed calculation of thermal bridging is required, consult the 2009 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, Chapter 25. Roof insulation, however, is often placed entirely above (or entirely below) the supporting structure, greatly reducing the effects of thermal bridging. There is a growing availability of above-the-roof-structure insulation materials, some penetrated by fastenings, others essentially unbroken. These options should be explored as a means of reducing roof heat loss and gain—with appropriate consideration of the environmental impacts of material selections.

Where an insulated ceiling separates a space from an uninsulated attic, the simplest approach is to assume that the attic is at outdoor temperature. This assumption likely overestimates the winter heat flow rate because the temperature in a vented attic may be higher than the outdoor air temperature—but it simplifies analysis. If an accurate estimate of attic temperature is required, a more complex procedure is used, as presented in the 2009 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, Chapter 27. An attic is a space having an average distance of 1 ft (0.3 m) or more between the ceiling and the underside of the roof. A vented attic is often used to carry away moisture that may have migrated through the insulated ceiling. See Lstiburek and Carmody (1994) for detailed information on attic design practices.

Floors. When a floor is exposed to outdoor air (as with a cantilever or crawl space), the U-factor is calculated as for walls and roofs. When insulation is placed within framing cavities, the effects of thermal bridging must be included. It is becoming increasingly common to provide a continuous layer of insulation below the framing cavity, thus greatly reducing the detrimental effects of thermal bridging. ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 presents several tables of whole-floor U-factors that account for thermal bridging.

Many codes require vented crawl spaces. In such situations, the simplest procedure is to insulate the floor above the crawl space and assume that the crawl space is at outdoor temperature. This assumption overestimates the heat flow rate, because a vented crawl space will rarely be as cold (warm) as outdoor air under winter (summer) design conditions. If a more accurate analysis of crawl space design temperatures is required, or if crawl space walls are insulated, a more complex procedure is used, as presented in the 2009 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, Chapter 27. It is rarely energy-conserving, however, especially in colder climates, to insulate the walls of a crawl space instead of insulating the floor above. See Lstiburek and Carmody (1994) for detailed information on crawl space design practices.

Doors. Table E.10 lists U-factors for solid (no glazing) doors in common use in North America. These precalculated values are convenient but should be used with care, as air film resistances are a relatively large factor in overall door thermal performance. Many doors are near forced-air supply registers or return grilles, reducing the resistance of the indoor air film. Conversely, the exterior air film may be more effective than anticipated because doors are typically protected somewhat by overhangs, porches, and so on. The wind conditions assumed in Table E.10 are typical of winter (not summer) conditions. Where significant door glazing is involved, U-factors for similar windows should be substituted or the specific manufacturer's product data used.

(f) Special Envelope Heat Flow Conditions

The overall coefficient of heat transfer (U-factor) is a convenient property for analysis of aboveground envelope assemblies. It is only applicable, however, to assemblies exposed to air on both the interior and exterior surfaces. In other situations, such as slab-on-grade floors and belowground walls and floors, U-factor is not a well-defined property (how much soil is part of the floor?), and other thermal analysis methods must be used. Typically, data derived from empirical studies are used in lieu of fundamental heat flow equations. Because the concept of U-factor is so simple to understand and apply, much of the empirical data are presented in terms of equivalent U-factors.

Slab-on-Grade Floors. Heat flow dynamics change when the lower surface of a floor is in direct contact with the ground. The ground is often at a temperature different from that of outdoor air, and earth is more conductive than air. Testing has shown that heat flow in this complex situation is strongly related to slab perimeter length. Table E.11 shows the heat flow rate through a concrete slab-on-grade, given as F_2 units (per foot or meter of perimeter length) rather than U-factors (per unit area). Four edge insulation conditions are shown, with corresponding values of F_2 for three climate zones. Interpolation can be used to estimate F_2 for other climates (correlated to heating degree days). This procedure relates all heat loss from the floor to the length of perimeter.

Slab-on-grade heat loss illustrates the principle of diminishing returns: An incrementally higher R-value does not produce an equally lower heat flow. An insulation truism is that the first few

inches (millimeters) of insulation make a much greater impact on the rate of heat flow than do the last few inches (millimeters). Table E.11 lists a maximum slab-edge R-value of 5.4 h ft^2 °F/Btu (SI: R-0.95). If more slab-edge insulation seems desirable, consult Table E.12. Note how much more effective is vertical insulation at the exposed perimeter compared to insulation beneath the slab. The highest F_2 value listed in Table E.12 is for insulation at R-10 (SI: R-1.8) not only around the perimeter, but also under the entire area of the floor slab. This lowest rate of heat flow is a reduction of just 25% from the performance provided by the same insulation employed only around the perimeter to a depth of 4 ft (1.2 m).

EXAMPLE 7.3 A warehouse will be built with a slab-on-grade floor. The warehouse is 80 ft (24.4 m) square in plan. What is the relationship between total slab insulation and rate of heat flow through the slab?

SOLUTION

From Table E.12, F_2 is related to total insulation as follows: building slab perimeter—four sides at 80 ft (24.4 m) each = 320 ft (97.5 m); building slab area: 80 ft (24.4 m) × 80 ft (24.4 m) = 6400 ft^2 (595 m^2).

I-P Units:

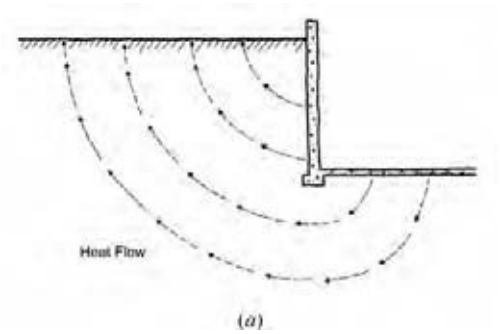
Insulation Approach	Total Volume of Slab Insulation Used (ft^3)	F_2 (Btu/h ft °F)	F_2 × Perimeter = Rate of Heat Flow (Btu/h °F)	Reduction in Heat Flow (Btu/h °F)	Reduction per Unit (ft^3) of Insulation
Uninsulated slab	None	0.73	233	None	—
R-5 vertical, 2 ft, 1 in.	(2 ft) (320 ft) (1/12 ft) = 53.3	0.58	186	47	0.88
R-10 vertical, 4 ft, 2 in.	(4 ft) (320 ft) (2/12 ft) = 213.3	0.48	154	32	0.20
R-10 fully insulated, 2 in.	(2 ft) (320 ft) (2/12 ft) + (6400 ft^2) (2/12 ft) = 1173.4	0.36	115	39	0.04

SI Units:

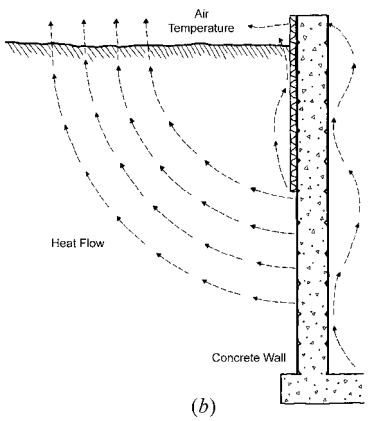
Insulation Approach	Total Volume of Slab Insulation Used (m^3)	F_2 (W/m K)	F_2 × Perimeter = Rate of Heat Flow (W/K)	Reduction in Heat Flow (W/K)	Reduction per Unit (m^3) of Insulation
Uninsulated slab	None	1.26	123	None	—
R-0.9 vertical, 0.6 m, 25 mm	(0.6 m) (97.8 m) (0.025 m) = 1.5	1.0	97.5	25.5	17.0
R-1.8 vertical, 1.2 m, 50 mm	(1.2 m) (97.8 m) (0.051 m) = 6.0	0.83	80.9	16.6	2.8
R-1.8 fully insulated, 50 mm	(0.6 m) (97.8 m) (0.051 m) + (595 m^2) (0.051 m) = 33.3	0.62	60.5	20.4	0.6

Thus, a minimal initial investment of 640 ft^2 (60 m^2) of 1-in. (25-mm)-thick insulation cuts the uninsulated slab heat flow by one-fifth. However, a vastly greater investment of 7040 ft^2 (654 m^2) of 2-in. (50 mm)-thick insulation (22 times as much!) cuts the less-insulated heat flow only by one-fourth. ■

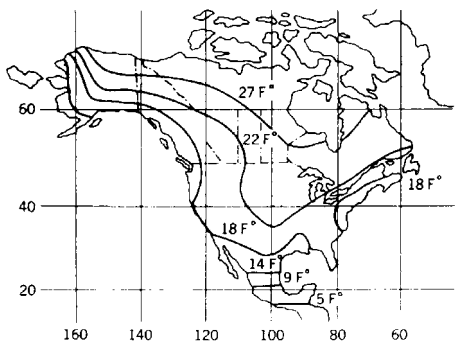
Basements. Heat flow through basement walls and floors is complicated by an increasing length of the heat flow path with increasing depth, as shown in Figs. 7.11*a* and 7.11*b*. A further complication is that the temperature of the earth is not equal to ambient air temperature and becomes more and more out of phase with air temperature at increasing depths. To obtain a "design temperature" for belowground heat loss, first estimate the mean winter temperature of the site location. For example: using Tables C.19 and C.20 in Appendix C, take the average of the ambient temperature (TA) for January and for the year. Then, from this mean winter temperature, subtract the value of the constant amplitude, Fig. 7.11*c*. This gives a design temperature. Table E.13 is then used to determine the heat flow rate.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 7.11 *Heat flow below grade. (a) Heat flow through basement walls and floors follows radial paths (that are generally perpendicular to soil isotherms). (b) Heat flow paths of differing lengths for a partially insulated basement wall. (c) Lines of constant amplitude of ground temperature; just below the surface, the ground temperature fluctuates around a mean annual temperature by this amplitude (5°F difference = 2.8°C difference; 9°F = 5°C; 14°F = 7.8°C; 18°F = 10°C; 22°F = 12.2°C; 27°F = 15°C). (Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 ASHRAE* Handbook—Fundamentals; *parts a and b redrawn by Amanda Clegg.)*

EXAMPLE 7.4 Calculate the design heat loss for a basement in Minneapolis, Minnesota, which is 28 ft (8.5 m) wide by 30 ft (9.1 m) long, sunk 6 ft (1.8 m) below grade. An insulation of R-8.34 (SI: R-1.5) is applied to this wall to a depth of 2 ft (0.6 m) below grade. An internal temperature of 70°F (21°C) is to be maintained.

SOLUTION

The soil-path design temperature is estimated from Tables C.19 and C.20; for Minneapolis, the TA in January is 12°F (–11°C); TA for the year is 44°F (6.7°C); the average of these is 28°F (–2°C). From Fig. 7.11c, the amplitude is about 24°F (13.3°C) at Minneapolis. The design temperature at the ground surface is therefore 28 – 24 = 4°F (–2 – –13.3 = –15.3°C).

The heat loss through the basement wall is estimated using Table E.13, Part A, by determining the loss per degree of temperature difference per 1-ft-(0.305-m)-high strip of wall and then summing for the full height of the wall:

1st ft below grade (insulated) 0.093 Btu/h ft °F
SI: 1st 0.3 m: (0.53) (0.305) = 0.162 W/m K
2nd ft below grade (insulated) 0.079
SI: 2nd 0.3 m: (0.45) (0.305) = 0.137
3rd ft below grade (uninsulated) 0.155*
SI: 3rd 0.3 m: (0.88) (0.305) = 0.268*
4th ft below grade (uninsulated) 0.119
SI: 4th 0.3 m: (0.67) (0.305) = 0.204
5th ft below grade (uninsulated) 0.096
SI: 5th 0.3 m: (0.54) (0.305) = 0.165
6th ft below grade (uninsulated) 0.079
SI: 6th 0.3 m: (0.45) (0.305) = 0.137
Total per 1-ft length of wall 0.621 Btu/h ft °F
Total per 1-m length of wall 1.073 W/m K
Basement perimeter = 2 (28 + 30 ft) = 116 ft
SI: 2 (8.5 + 9.1 m) = 35.2 m
Total wall heat loss = 0.621 Btu/h ft °F × 116 ft
= 72 Btu/h °F
SI: 1.073 W/m K × 35.2 m = 37.8 W/K

*Note that although this is an increase in loss relative to the segment of wall directly above, it represents a design decision exhibiting understanding of the law of diminishing returns.

The heat loss through the basement floor is calculated using Table E.13, Part B.

Average heat loss per ft^2 floor
= 0.025 Btu/h ft^2 °F (for 28-ft width, 6-ft depth);
SI: per m^2 floor = 0.14 W/m^2 K
(for 8.5-m width, 1.8-m depth)

Floor area = 28 ft × 30 ft = 840 ft^2
SI: area = 8.5 m × 9.1 m = 77.4 m^2

Total floor heat loss = 0.025 Btu/h ft^2 °F × 840 ft^2
= 21 Btu/h °F
SI: 0.14 W/m^2 K × 77.4 m^2 = 10.8 W/K

Total heat loss for the basement below grade: walls 72 + floor 21 = 93 Btu/h °F
SI: walls 37.8 + floor 10.8 = 48.6 W/K

Design temperature difference: (70°F inside) – (4°F at earth's surface) = 66°F
SI: (21.1°C inside) – (–15.6°C at earth's surface) = 36.7°C

Design heat loss below grade = 93 Btu/h °F × 66 °F = 6,138 Btu/h
SI: design below-grade heat loss = 48.6 W/K × 36.7 °C or K = 1784 W ■

(g) Predicting Surface Temperatures and Condensation

Surface temperatures, as well as the temperature at any point within a wall, roof, or floor assembly, can be predicted if the inside and outside air temperatures and the thermal properties of the construction are known. The variance in temperature through a cross section of a construction assembly is called a *thermal gradient.* For any construction, the thermal gradient can be predicted by proportioning the collective thermal resistance at any point in the assembly to the overall difference in temperature across the assembly. This procedure is illustrated in Example 7.5:

EXAMPLE 7.5 Determine the thermal gradient, under winter design conditions, through the wall assembly shown in Fig. 7.12. The interior air temperature is 68°F (20°C), and the exterior air temperature is 32°F (0°C).

SOLUTION

I-P Units: resistance values are from Example 7.1; "reference point" is a shorthand means of describing a series of locations throughout the wall assembly, each on the exterior side of a component; total temperature gradient spans (68 – 32) = 36°F:

Thermal Component	Component Resistance	Cumulative Resistance	Reference Point	Temperature Difference to Reference Point (°F)	Temperature at Reference Point
Room air	—	—	A	—	68.0
Inside air film	0.68	0.68	B	(0.68/21.58) (36) = 1.1	66.9
Gypsum board	0.32	1.00	C	(1.00/21.58) (36) = 1.7	66.3
Vapor retarder	nil	1.00	D	(1.00/21.58) (36) = 1.7	66.3
Batt insulation	19.00	20.00	E	(20.00/21.58) (36) = 33.4	34.4
Plywood sheathing	0.62	20.62	F	(20.62/21.58) (36) = 34.4	33.6
Wood siding	0.79	21.41	G	(21.41/21.58) (36) = 35.7	32.3
Outside air film	0.17	21.58	H	(21.58/21.58) (36) = 36	32.0
Outside air	—	—	I	—	32.0

SI Units: resistance values are from Example 7.1; "reference point" is a shorthand means of describing a series of locations throughout the wall assembly, each on the exterior side of a component; total temperature gradient spans (20 – 0) = 20°C:

Thermal Component	Component Resistance	Cumulative Resistance	Reference Point	Temperature Difference to Reference Point (°C)	Temperature at Reference Point (°C)
Room air	—	—	A	—	20.0
Inside air film	0.12	0.12	B	(0.12/3.81) (20) = 0.6	19.4
Gypsum board	0.056	0.18	C	(0.18/3.81) (20) = 0.9	19.1
Vapor retarder	nil	0.18	D	(0.18/3.81) (20) = 0.9	19.1
Batt insulation	3.35	3.53	E	(3.53/3.81) (20) = 18.5	1.5
Plywood sheathing	0.11	3.64	F	(3.64/3.81) (20) = 19.1	0.9
Wood siding	0.14	3.78	G	(3.78/3.81) (20) = 19.8	0.2
Outside air film	0.03	3.81	H	(3.81/3.81) (20) = 20	0.0
Outside air	—	—	I	—	0.0

■

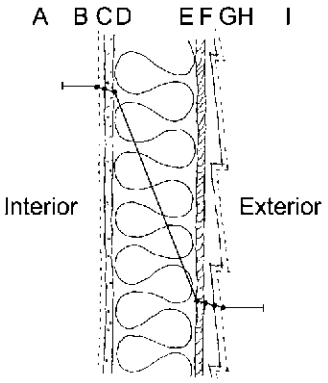


Fig. 7.12 *Wall section used in Example 7.5 to illustrate the procedure for calculating a thermal gradient through a construction assembly. (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering.)*

Understanding envelope surface temperatures is fundamental to predicting thermal comfort. How cold in winter, or hot in summer, will an interior surface be, and how will this affect mean radiant temperature? Understanding temperature patterns within materials is critical to establishing where water vapor might condense within or on a wall, roof, or floor assembly; this is discussed further in Section 7.9.

(h) Dynamic Thermal Effects

The preceding discussion of thermal properties of materials and assemblies focused upon static (steady-state) conditions. Such conditions are usually presumed for analysis of winter heat loss (assumed to occur under the darkness of night). A more complex situation exists when thermal conditions experience rapid changes—such as those brought about by solar radiation impinging upon various portions of the building envelope. Dynamic conditions are usually presumed for analysis of summer heat gain (assumed to occur during daylight hours). The dynamic situation requires consideration of more thermal properties.

Under static conditions, heat flow is primarily a function of temperature difference (the driving force) and thermal resistance (the resisting force). Under dynamic conditions, these two factors are still important, but heat storage in the envelope assembly itself becomes a compounding issue. Heat storage is a function of the *density* of a material and its *specific heat*; the product of these two properties is known as *thermal capacity*. Thermal capacity can (but will not always) reduce heat flow via storage. Heat entering a wall construction during the daytime, for example, can be stored within the wall for several hours until it flows back out to the cool night air—assuming appropriate weather conditions and adequate thermal capacity. As a minimum, the effect of heat entering a massive wall at, say, 10:00 A.M. will not be seen on the interior surface until a few hours later.

Density. Density is the weight of a material per unit volume. In the I-P system, density is given as lb/ft^3; in the SI system, it is given as kg/m^3. For a fixed volume of material, greater density will permit the storage of more heat. Table E.1 provides density data for common building materials.

Specific Heat. Specific heat is a measure of the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of a given mass of material by 1°. In the I-P system, this is expressed as Btu/lb °F; in the SI system, it is expressed as kJ/kg K. It takes less energy input to raise the temperature of a low-specific-heat material than that of a high-specific-heat material. Table E.1 provides values of specific heat for common building materials.

Thermal Capacity. Thermal capacity is an indicator of the ability of a fixed volume of material to store heat. The greater the thermal capacity of a material, the more heat it can store in a given volume per degree of temperature increase. Thermal capacity for a material is obtained by taking the product of density and specific heat; for example:

Thermal capacity for concrete:

$(140\ lb/ft^3)\ (0.24\ Btu/lb\ °F) = 33.6\ Btu/ft^3\ °F$
SI: $(2240\ kg/m^3)\ (1.0\ kJ/kg\ K) = 2240\ kJ/m^3\ K$

Thermal capacity for water:

$(62\ lb/ft^3)\ (1.00\ Btu/lb\ °F) = 62.0\ Btu/ft^3\ °F$
SI: $(992\ kg/m^3)\ (4.18\ kJ/kg\ K) = 4147\ kJ/m^3\ K$

Thermal capacity for air:

$(0.075\ lb/ft^3)\ (0.24\ Btu/lb\ °F) = 0.02\ Btu/ft^3\ °F$
SI: $(1.2\ kg/m^3)\ (1.0\ kJ/kg\ K) = 1.2\ kJ/m^3\ K$

Time Lag. Time lag is a measure of the delay in the flow of a pulse of heat through a material that results from thermal capacity. Units are hours. As an example, if the sun comes out from behind clouds and strikes the exterior surface of a mass

wall at 10:00 A.M., the exterior surface temperature will rise quickly. It may be several hours, however, before this temperature "spike" is seen at the inside surface of the wall. The reason is that some heat is being stored in the wall material, and that heat will not continue to flow through the wall. Time lags of several hours are possible with very heavy wall constructions.

The design effects of capacitive insulation are difficult to analyze without computer assistance. As a result, most hand calculation methods incorporate capacitive effects through the use of surrogate variables that attempt to simplify calculations for the end user.

7.4 LATENT HEAT FLOW THROUGH THE OPAQUE ENVELOPE

The information presented in Section 7.3 focused upon sensible heat flow through various elements of the building envelope. Water also moves through building envelope assemblies—in both liquid and vapor states. The focus here is upon water vapor movement (assuming that proper architectural design of the envelope components will control the movement of liquid water). Water vapor will often need to be handled by a climate control system through the use of energy (termed *latent heat*). In the summer, moisture will typically flow into an air-conditioned building, increasing humidity and requiring dehumidification, which is often accomplished through removal of the latent heat of condensation of the added moisture. In the winter, it is not unusual to add water vapor to the air in a building to keep RH from dropping too low. This is often accomplished by evaporating water by adding the latent heat of vaporization. In some building types and climates, dealing with latent heat may be as big a problem as dealing with sensible heat.

(a) Moisture Control Fundamentals

A difference in *vapor pressure* is the driving force behind moisture flow through components of an intact building envelope assembly, while gaps in the envelope can provide a route for airflow that carries water vapor. Vapor pressure difference is to latent heat flow as temperature difference is to sensible heat flow. The *permeance* of the materials of construction is the latent equivalent of sensible conductance. (As with conductance, *permeance* refers to the bulk properties of a material, and *permeability* refers to unit thickness properties.) The less permeable a material is, the greater the resistance to water vapor flow. Materials with low permeance are termed *vapor retarders*, and are incorporated in envelope constructions as a means of reducing the flow of water vapor and subsequently the risk of condensation of the vapor within the envelope assembly. I-P units of permeance are grains/h ft^2 in. Hg; SI units are ng/s m^2 Pa. (*Grains* refers to grains of water, with 7000 grains per pound; in. Hg is inches of mercury, a pressure measurement; ng is a nanogram or 10^{-9} of a gram.) The I-P units for vapor pressure are in. Hg; the SI units are Pa [pascals].

From an architectural design perspective, reducing water vapor flow is accomplished using very thin materials (membranes) that must be carefully located to ensure that they work as intended. Although placement within an envelope assembly is critical, vapor retarders take up virtually no space—in drastic contrast to the thickness requirements of sensible heat retarders (insulations). The specific location of a vapor retarder within a wall, roof, or floor cross section will vary with climate and construction types. The fundamental principle, however, is for the retarder to stop the flow of water vapor before the vapor can come in contact with its dew point temperature within the assembly.

(b) Cold Climate Moisture Control

Most common building materials, including gypsum board, concrete, brick, wood, and glass fiber insulation, are easily permeated by moisture. Most surface/finish materials are also permeable. In cold climates, the winter outside air contains relatively little moisture, even though the RH may be high. By contrast, inside air contains much more moisture per unit of volume, despite its probably lower RH. The resulting differential vapor pressure drives the flow of water vapor from high to low vapor pressure (typically from warm to cold).

The primary problem with water vapor flow in winter occurs when the temperature somewhere

within a wall, floor, or roof drops low enough for water vapor passing through the assembly to condense. The temperature at which this occurs is the dew point temperature of the air acting as the source for the water vapor. Such a temperature often occurs within the insulation layer. Insulation can then become wet and thereby less effective, because water conducts heat far better than the air pockets it has filled. If wet insulation compacts, the air pockets are then permanently lost. Worse yet, moisture damage can occur, such as dry rot in wood structural members.

The usual remedy for envelope condensation problems in cold climates is a *vapor retarder* installed within the building envelope assembly. Because very low permeability is desired, these retarders are commonly a plastic film installed with as few gaps and holes as possible. Because the moister air on the warm side of the envelope is the source of the problem, the vapor retarder needs to be installed *as close to the warm side as possible*—typically, just behind the interior surface (gypsum board, wood flooring, etc.) before the dew point can be encountered. However, with higher insulation R-values, it is becoming common to install the vapor retarder within the insulation at a point about one-third of the distance from the interior to the exterior. This allows the inner one-third of the wall to be used as a chase for wiring or plumbing without penetrating the retarder, yet with enough insulation beyond this point to prevent condensation by maintaining the temperature above the dew point.

Another approach is to use vinyl wallpaper or vapor retarder paints on interior surfaces of the envelope. These give less protection, however, than the around-the-corners wrap that can be achieved with properly installed plastic films. This performance disadvantage is shared by aluminum foil–faced insulation; it is very effective thermally but less effective as a vapor retarder. Also, the aluminum foil must face an air space if it is to be thermally effective as a radiant barrier.

A substantial benefit of plastic films is that they also reduce airflow through construction—acting as an air barrier. Outdoor air is always infiltrating a building, gradually replacing the indoor air. This unintended flow of cold air becomes a problem when temperatures outside are very different from those inside, especially when strong winds force outdoor air indoors fast enough to produce noticeably cold drafts. Therefore, the combined moisture- and infiltration-tight characteristics of plastic film vapor retarders are usually beneficial.

In cold climates, condensation on cold interior surfaces can also occur, especially at windows (with little resistance to reduce the slope of the thermal gradient). Occupant annoyance or material damage can result. Although the air indoors may not be particularly humid (perhaps 30% to 50% RH), it often contains enough moisture to support condensation on cold surfaces. Condensation can be readily predicted (see Fig. 7.12) and addressed during design.

(c) Hot, Humid Climate Moisture Control

In hot, humid conditions, cool inside surfaces are often encountered—for example, a radiant cooling panel containing chilled water, a water pipe, or a supply air diffuser. If hot, humid air contacts such a surface, condensation can occur, with the moisture vapor in the air condensing to form visible droplets of water on the cool surface. The result can be mildly annoying if droplets of condensation fall on occupants, or serious if water stains occur and, eventually, mold grows on damp surfaces.

In hot, humid climates, the object is to keep the moisture in the warmer outside air from penetrating to the cooler (and usually less humid) interior. One method is to use a *drainage plane*, installed just inside the exterior surface material, to block the flow of liquid water through the envelope. The drainage plane can consist of simple tar paper (building felt). If any moisture succeeds in penetrating this drainage plane, it should be allowed to wick to the interior; therefore, no vapor retarder such as plastic, vinyl wallpaper, or vapor retarder paints should be used on interior surfaces. Numerous severe problems with water vapor damage to building interiors—and related mold and mildew growth, with associated IAQ problems—have recently been publicized, typically related to condensation of moisture on the exterior-facing (hidden) side of vinyl wall coverings used as an interior finish. See Lstibuek and Carmody (1994) for details on hot and cold climate moisture control.

7.5 HEAT FLOW THROUGH TRANSPARENT/TRANSLUCENT ELEMENTS

Heat flow through windows and skylights requires special attention for several reasons. Despite dramatic improvements, these transparent/translucent envelope components still usually have the lowest R (highest U) of all components of an envelope. Also, they are major contributors to infiltration of outdoor air, which adds to winter heating or summer cooling loads. Perhaps thermally most important, they admit solar heat, for better (winter) or worse (summer). By design, this radiation (heat) passes through a window or skylight with minimal resistance, which complicates thermal analysis. Transparent/translucent devices also admit daylight to buildings and often provide desired ventilation. The huge variety of such components and the several important roles they play require special attention from designers.

A standardized approach to rating window performance characteristics has been developed. This approach is coordinated by the National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC). Each window or skylight manufactured in the United States bears an NFRC label certifying that the window has been independently rated. The label carries a brief description of the product, such as "Model #, Casement, Low-e = 0.2, 0.5" gap, Argon Filled" and lists the following mandatory information: U-factor, solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC), and visible light transmittance (VT). Figure 7.13 shows a sample NFRC label. Similar labels are available for site-assembled window units. Characteristics of some residential-sized windows are found in Table E.15.

The following sections provide information on fundamental thermal properties of transparent/translucent assemblies and approaches that can be taken to enhance the performance of such assemblies. A transparent material permits a generally undistorted view (as with clear glass); a translucent material permits at best a distorted view (as with glass blocks or milky plastic). Both types of material, however, permit some unimpeded transmission of radiation—as opposed to an opaque material/assembly that permits no direct solar radiation transfer.



Fig. 7.13 *Certifying window thermal performance; a sample NFRC window label. Air leakage and condensation resistance data are optional. (© National Fenestration Rating Council; used with permission.)*

(a) U-factor

As with opaque envelope components, heat flow due to temperature differences through windows and skylights is a function of the U-factor. The determination of U-factors for windows and skylights is complicated by significant differences in heat flow rates between the center-of-glass, edge-of-glass, and frame portions of a unit. The NFRC "U-factor" melds these into a single representative value for an entire window or skylight unit. The size of the air gap between glazings, the coatings on the glazings, the gas fill between glazings, and the frame construction all influence the U-factor. The lower the U-factor, the lower the heat flow for a given temperature difference. Tables E.14, E.15, and E.16 list U-factors for various windows and skylights. Appendix G presents sample requirements for window U-factors and SHGC (solar heat gain coefficient, see Section 7.5b) for nonresidential buildings excerpted from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007.

(b) Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC)

This thermal property is also generally based upon the performance of the entire glazing unit, not just that of the glass portion. SHGC represents the

percentage of solar radiation (across the spectrum) incident upon a given window or skylight assembly that ends up in a building as heat. It is a measure of the ability of a window to resist heat gain from solar radiation. SHGC can theoretically range from 0 to 1, with 1 representing no resistance and 0 representing total resistance. SHGC values for real products typically range from about 0.9 to 0.2. SHGC is dimensionless. A high SHGC (meaning poor resistance to radiant gain) is desirable for solar heating applications, whereas a lower SHGC (good resistance) is better for windows where cooling is the dominant thermal issue. The SHGC depends upon the type of glass and the number of panes, as well as tinting, reflective coatings, and shading by the window or skylight frame.

NFRC tests and lists SHGC values only for glazing units; laboratory testing does not include auxiliary elements such as draperies, overhangs, trees, and the like. Prior to the development of the SHGC approach, the term *shading coefficient* (SC) was universally used to quantify the same concept. Shading coefficients, however, were based only upon the glass portion of a glazing unit—specifically excluding the frame. Although theoretical SC values also range from 0 to 1, the basis of SC is different from that of SHGC. SC is the ratio of radiant heat gain through a given type of glass relative to ⅛-in. (3-mm)-thick single clear glass. SC is still a useful concept for comparing glass types and especially for expressing the effects of external or internal shading devices.

A wide variety of window and skylight U-factor, SHGC, and VT (see Section 7.5c) data can be found in Chapter 15 of the 2009 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*. Tables E.17 through E.24 list SHGC, SC, and/or VT values for various types of transparent/translucent products and shading approaches.

A small sample of U-factors for skylights is shown in Table E.16. Note in this table the great thermal penalty paid when using smaller units: the "manufactured skylights" are 2 ft × 4 ft (600 mm × 1200 mm), whereas the "site-assembled glazing" unit size is 4 ft (1200 mm) square. For otherwise identical construction, the whole-component U-factors are almost twice as high for the smaller units. With these smaller units, a frame with better thermal performance is a smart investment.

(c) Visible Transmittance (VT)

This thermal/optical property represents the percentage of incident light (only the visible spectrum) at a normal angle of incidence that passes through a particular glazing. VT is dimensionless. The higher the visible transmittance, the greater the daylight transmission. VT is influenced by the color of the glass (clear glass has the highest VT) as well as by coatings and the number of glazings. VT may be expressed relative to the glass portion only of a glazing unit or relative to the glass and frame. The appropriate expression will depend upon the nature of an analysis; in any case, noncomparable values should not be compared. All NFRC-certified VT values should be directly comparable.

It might seem intuitive that any glazing or coating that reduces SHGC (via lower radiation transmission) will also reduce VT (implying lower radiation transmission). This is not always the case, however, as SHGC deals with the full solar radiation spectrum (including light), whereas VT deals only with the visible (light) spectrum. Spectrally selective glazings and selective coatings are available that greatly reduce SHGC with little reduction in VT. The relationship between SHGC and VT is expressed as the *light-to-solar gain ratio* (LSG) obtained by dividing the VT by the SHGC. The greater the LSG, the more suitable a glazing is for daylighting in hot climates (or wherever cooling is the dominant thermal condition). Values of LSG are not listed on NFRC labels. LSG values for common glazing units (including the effects of the frame) are included in Table E.15.

(d) Air Leakage

This is the rate of outdoor air infiltration between a new window and its frame measured under defined conditions—usually under pressure equivalent to that of a 25-mph (40-km/h) wind, with the window locked. *High-performance* windows may be tested/rated at even higher pressures. As weather stripping deteriorates with age, higher rates of infiltration may be expected with older and well-used windows. Design air leakage values are not required to be listed on NFRC labels but may be obtained from manufacturers' catalog data.

(e) Low-Emittance (low-ε) Coatings

These coatings are typically applied to one glass surface facing into the air gap between multiple glazings. A low-ε coating blocks a great deal of the radiant transfer between the glazing panes, reducing the overall flow of heat through the window and thus improving the U-factor. Indeed, one such coating is almost as effective as adding another layer of glazing. In Table E.15, compare the U-factor for window 5 with the U-factors for windows 7 and 12. An important added benefit of these films is their reduction of UV transmission, thus reducing fading of objects and surface finishes in rooms.

Two approaches to providing low-ε films are *hard-coat* (durable, less expensive, but less thermally effective) and *soft-coat* (better thermal performance but more expensive and subject to degradation by oxidation in the manufacturing stage).

Three common types of low-ε coatings are:

1. High-transmission low-ε: For passive solar heating applications, where a low U-factor is combined with a high SHGC; window 7 in Table E.15 is an example. The coating is on the inner glazing, where it traps outgoing infrared radiation that otherwise would be lost. Summer overheating can be avoided with external shading devices.
2. Selective-transmission low-ε: Where winter heating and summer cooling are both important, requiring low U-factor and low SHGC, but with a relatively high VT for daylighting. Window 9 in Table E.15 is an example, with an LSG ratio of 1.65. The coating is on the outer glazing, where it blocks incoming infrared radiation, which as heat is then convected away by outdoor air.
3. Low-transmission low-ε: Where the sun is the enemy, low U-factor, low SHGC, and even low VT seem warranted. Window 10 in Table E.15 is an example, again with the coating on the outer glazing, where it rejects more of the solar gain. With a tinted exterior glazing, even lower SHGC and VT could result.

(f) Selective Transmission Films

Heat flow due to radiation can be greatly reduced by the introduction of selective transmitter (or *low-emittance*) film somewhere within the glazing cavity. As shown in Fig. 7.14, these films admit most of the incoming solar radiation in both the visible and near-infrared (short) wavelengths. Warm objects within a room emit far-infrared (long-wave) radiation. This long-wave radiation is reflected back into the room by the selective film. These selective films typically are available as separate sheets that can be inserted between sheets of glazing as a window is fabricated. As a separate sheet, a selective film could also be applied to existing windows—for instance, between storm windows and the ordinary windows they protect.

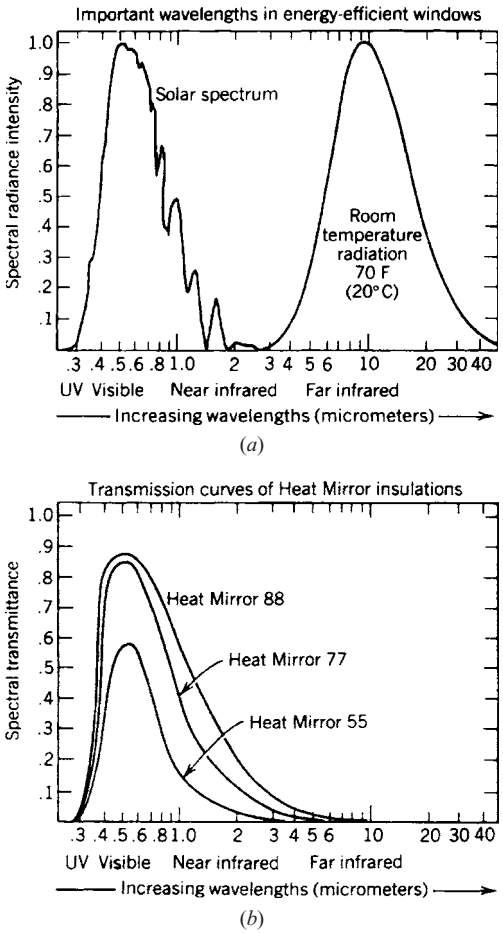


Fig. 7.14 *Performance of selective transmitters. (a) Spectral characteristics of solar (short-wavelength) radiation and room-temperature (long-wavelength) radiation. (b) Transmission and reflection performance for several Heat Mirror selective transmitter films. Incoming solar radiation (both visible and near-infrared) is mostly transmitted, whereas heat radiated from room-temperature objects is reflected and thereby kept within heated spaces. (Courtesy of Southwall Corporation.)*

With continuing advances in glazing performance, an increasing range of selective transmission options is available. For example, products from Southwall Technologies range from Heat Mirror 77 (low reflectance, recommended for vertical glass) to Heat Mirror 22 (low transmission, recommended for sloping glass), and provide various colors. A clear Heat Mirror 88 has the lowest reflectance of all. Some skylight and greenhouse manufacturers offer this low-emittance product as a standard option.

(g) Inert Gas in the Air Gap

Filling an enclosed air space with argon or krypton has thermal benefits. These less-conductive gases greatly reduce heat transfer by convective currents within the air gap between multiple glazings, producing lower U-factors. As a result, the inner surface of the glass is maintained at a temperature closer to that of the indoors, with greater comfort (because radiant heat flow to or from the window surface is reduced) and less chance of condensation on the inside surface. To preserve this gas fill over the life of the window, a very reliable edge seal is required.

For argon, the optimum air gap width is about ½ in. (12 mm). When a thinner window is needed, more expensive krypton can be used with an air gap of only ¼ in. (6 mm). Because the combination of inert gas and low-ε coatings is so effective at lowering the U-factor, most manufacturers offer them together (as with windows 7 through 11 in Table E.15) rather than separately.

(h) Superwindows

When all of the currently available high-performance glazing options are combined in one product, it is called a *superwindow*. The combination of multiple glazings and/or suspended films, coatings, inert gas fill, and sealed/thermally broken frame construction yields a lower heat flow rate and a higher price. Window 11 in Table E.15 is a superwindow. An early example of a superwindow, a double-glazed assembly with two selective films, yielding three gas-filled cavities, is shown in Fig. 7.15. With a combination of superior thermal resistance and useful solar gain potential, superwindows can conceivably provide *better* heating-season thermal performance than an insulated opaque wall. The potential design consequences are enormous. Figure 7.16 compares the heating- and cooling-season performance, in a residential application, of several windows in three locations in the United States with quite different climates.

(i) Shading

Perhaps the single most important energy-related component for passively cooled buildings is the sunshade. Because many solar-heated buildings will experience overheating in hot weather, sunshading is critical for passively heated buildings as well. If correctly implemented, sunshading rejects most solar heat gains yet aids in distributing daylight deep into buildings, where it reduces internal heat gains due to electric lights.

If a building is arranged to intercept the intense rays of the sun *before* they pass through its transparent envelope elements, instead of afterward, the cooling load can often be cut in half. In approximate terms, effective external shading rejects about 80% of the fierce attack of solar energy, whereas internal shading absorbs and reradiates 80% of it. Outside louvers have a chance to cool off in an occasional breeze, but inside draperies are part of a heat

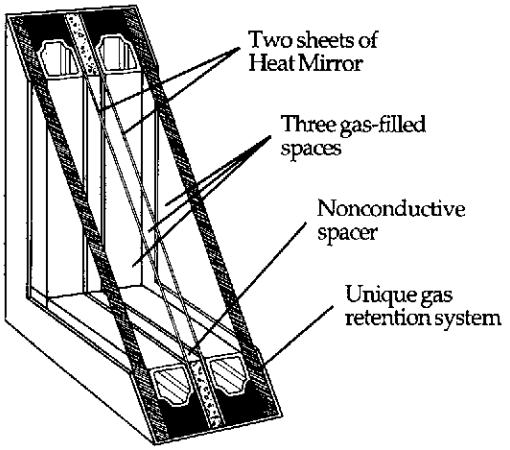


Fig. 7.15 *The Superglass window system (an early superwindow) utilized two Heat Mirror films between two outer panes of glass. Three air spaces are thus created and filled with a nonreactive gas mixture to retard convection. Nonmetallic spacers reduce heat flow at window edges. The resulting window provided a center-of-glass insulating value of R-8.1 (SI: R-1.43). (ASHRAE lists for a similar window, nonoperable, 4 ft (1220 mm) square, an overall window U = 0.19.) Very low transmission of UV radiation is another characteristic. (Courtesy of Hurd Millwork Company, Medford, WI.)*

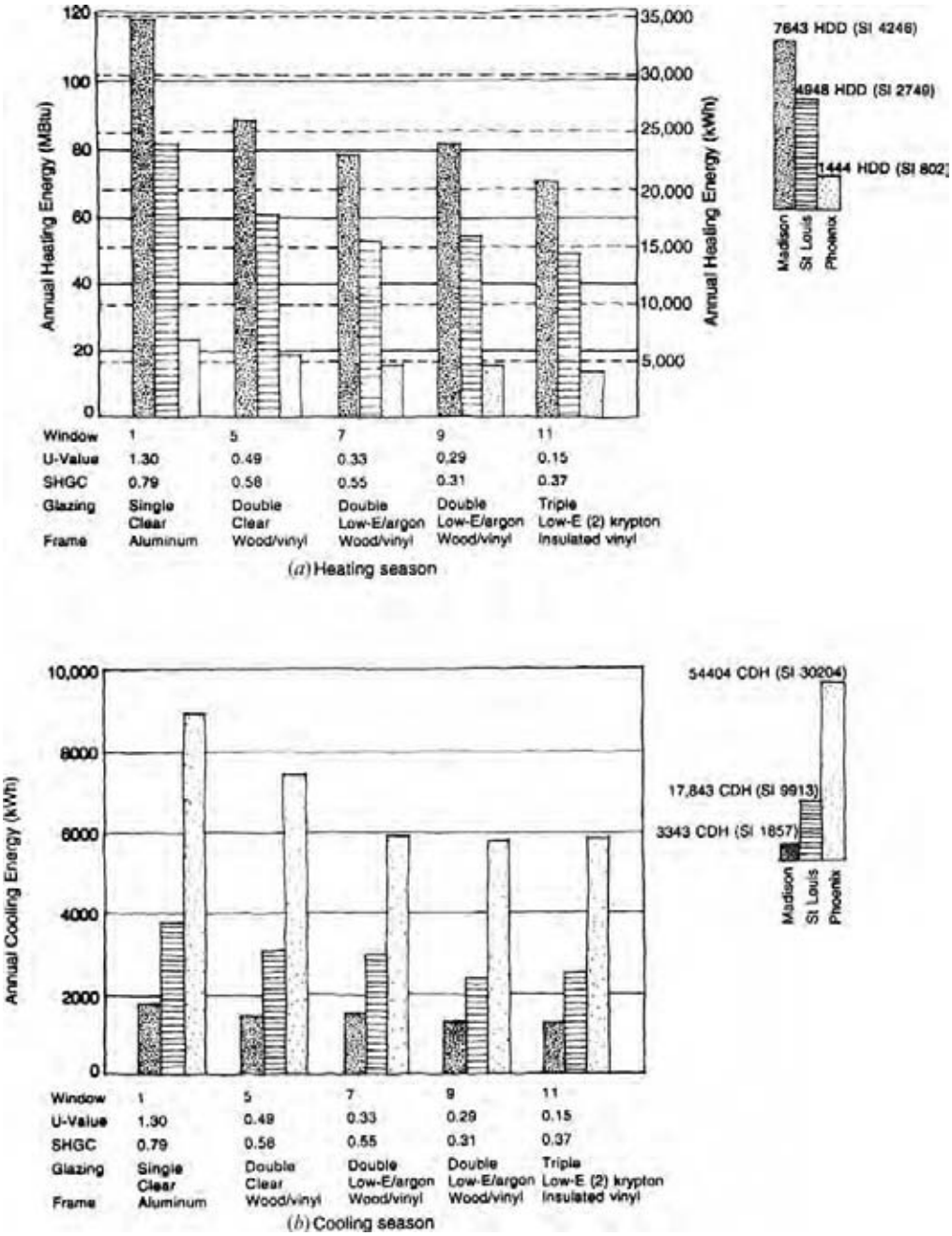


Fig. 7.16 *(a, b) Seasonal energy performance comparison of various windows—assuming a typical 1540-ft² (143-m²) residence with a glazing area of 15% of the floor area, equal glazing area on all four orientations, and no external or internal shading. Window numbers correspond to those in Table E.15. MBtu = millions of Btu; HDD = heating degree days, base 65°F (18.3°C); CDH = cooling degree hours, base 74°F (23.3°C). U-factors in figure are I-P values; multiply these by 5.678 for SI U-factors. (From* Residential Windows: A Guide to New Technologies and Energy Performance, *by John Carmody, Stephen Selkowitz, and Lisa Heschong. Copyright © 1996 by John Carmody, Stephen Selkowitz, and Lisa Heschong. Adapted by permission of W.W. Norton & Company, New York.)*

trap, and they constitute a system of hot-weather radiant heating that causes discomfort for those who work near perimeter surfaces.

To properly reject direct sun yet allow for a view and daylight, many sunshades project out from the windows they protect. These exterior projections become highly visible elements of façades, and they tempt some designers to impose formal aesthetic criteria that can be damaging to the solar control functions. A frequent example is the application of the same sunshade geometry to all façades of a building. When the sunshades are fixed in position, this tends to help one façade but not the others (see Fig. 3.19). Where they are movable, as with awnings, this same-sunshade effect is not so serious.

Fixed sunshading devices are very common, partly because they lack moving parts and controls that can be expensive and troublesome. They pose a dilemma in the spring and fall, however, because in order to block the sun on any elevation in September, they will also block it in March. For many buildings in temperate climates, March is a heating-need month, whereas September is a cooling-need month. A procedure for evaluating fixed shading device performance is presented in Chapter 6; some approximate shading effects, expressed as shading coefficients, are found in Tables E.20 and E.21.

Adjustable sunshading, once extremely common (it seemed as if every 1930s shop and office window had an awning) but later considered old-fashioned, has made a comeback with the increased interest in passive cooling. Some basic approaches to adjustable shading devices are shown in Table E.22. The first type shown, made of durable materials, has proved effective against both break-ins and hurricanes.

How are movable shading devices adjusted to the desired position? Most manufacturers offer three types of controls: manual, motorized, and automatic. Manual systems are cheap and relatively trouble-free, but they require thoughtful, timely action by the users of a building. So do motorized controls, but for adjusting large/heavy devices in remote places (clerestories, for example), motorized assistance is a practical necessity. Automatic systems have the advantages of freeing the users from adjustment tasks and of taking into account the thermal needs of the building as a whole when setting the sunshade's position. With computerized controls becoming commonplace for large buildings, the added costs of controls for automatic sunshading can easily be incorporated into the overall cost of controls.

Interior shading devices are less effective than exterior devices but are far more commonly used. There are several reasons for this seeming contradiction. They are not subject to weathering or dirt accumulation and generally are easier for users to adjust. The designer who prefers a clean, apparently unchanging façade appearance will rely on interior devices. Tables E.23 and E.24 list shading coefficients for several combinations of interior shading devices.

The overall performance of multiple shading devices/approaches can be estimated by taking the product of the shading coefficients for individual devices that are used in series. For example, the overall shading coefficient of a window with external shading with an SC of 0.75, integral shading from the glazing unit of 0.65, and internal shading providing an SC of 0.7 is (0.75) (0.65) (0.7) = 0.34. In general, shading coefficients lower than 0.2 should be used with caution. There is no direct conversion between SHGC values and SC. Nevertheless, it may be necessary to convert an SHGC value to SC in order to determine the overall shading performance of a glazing unit with external or internal shading devices. In this case, an approximate conversion of SC = SHGC/0.87 may be used.

7.6 TRENDS IN ENVELOPE THERMAL PERFORMANCE

As a result of the oil embargo of the early 1970s, there have been huge increases in installed component R (therefore, huge decreases in assembly U-factor) over the past 30-plus years. Sometimes this has occurred because of the use of increased thicknesses of insulation (as with many current wall and roof designs), sometimes because of substantially changed materials (as with windows). Improvements in code minimum values for envelope performance at times seem painfully slow to emerge, especially in light of growing concern for global warming mitigation and green design initiatives. Then again, publication of the *Advanced Energy Design Guide* series (ASHRAE) has been a welcome addition to the designer's tool kit. Although not mandatory, these guides suggest easy-to-adopt ways to reduce building energy consumption—including improvements in envelope performance.

What might the next quarter-century bring, and how might the designer of today's building envelopes anticipate—or participate in—these advances?

Structural systems may be changing due to the advent of SIP. They promise greatly improved insulation and airtightness compared to the site-assembled wood or steel framing systems they would replace. SIP can incorporate the latest developments in both insulated cores and thermal storage surfaces, and do so with less thickness and lighter weight than stick-built alternatives. Since the early 1970s, walls have progressed from using R-7 (SI: R-1.23) batts between typical 2-in. × 4-in. (50-mm × 100-mm) studs to R-26 (SI: R-4.58) batts between 2-in. × 6-in. (50-mm × 150-mm) studs plus insulating sheathing, thereby providing a threefold reduction in heat flow. With insulated cores for SIP now approaching R-25 and higher (SI: R-173), the next quarter-century could produce yet another threefold reduction in heat flow without an increase in wall thickness. Another potential development is an interior panel surface of phase-change wallboard, to store and release heat at room temperatures. This could increase thermal capacity considerably with very little increase in weight, with advantages for winter solar heating and summer night ventilation. Floors and roofs can similarly benefit from the use of SIP rather than framed construction.

Insulation developments include aerogel, gas-filled panels, powder-evacuated panels, and compact vacuum. Some of these products are suitable for retrofit applications in existing construction. Aerogel is both transparent and porous, one of the lightest solid materials. Silica aerogel can be foamed into cavities without ozone-depleting CFCs. In a 90% vacuum, silica aerogel has a resistance of R-20 per inch (SI: R-139 per meter). By adding carbon to absorb infrared radiation, R-32 per inch (SI: R-222 per meter) is possible.

Gas-filled panels are hermetically sealed plastic bags enclosing honeycomb baffles of thin polymer films and low-conductivity gas (argon, krypton, or xenon). Relative resistance values of these insulating cores are: argon, R-5.2 per inch; krypton, R-13.4 per inch; and xenon, R-19.3 per inch (SI: R-36, 93, and 134 per meter, respectively). Powder-evacuated panels contain a vacuum and compacted silica-based powder sealed within a multilayer gas barrier. Expensive to produce and threatened by punctures, this may be a development more suited for appliances than for buildings. The resistance is about R-20 to R-25 per inch (SI: R-139 to R-173 per meter).

Windows have undergone the most dramatic thermal improvement. Resistances for window units (glazing plus frame) have evolved from about R-1 (SI: R-0.18) to R-6.5 (SI: R-1.14) or more. Prototypes as high as R-20 (SI: R-3.52) exist. This improvement has been accomplished through a series of developments: a second layer of glass; a wider air space between glazing layers; tinted, reflective, photochromic, and low-emissivity coatings; low-conductivity gas between glazings; intermediate films between glazings; operable blinds between glazings; lower-conductivity glazing spacers and frames; and more airtight weather stripping (to reduce infiltration). Future developments are likely to include *smart windows* with on-demand variable light transmission. For example, in electrochromic glazing, an applied electric field switches the window from a clear state to one with a deep coloration; intermediate states of coloration are possible. The most likely application is in cooling-dominated climates where control of glare, solar gain, and visual privacy are paramount. Carmody et al. (1996) provide an excellent overview of residential window technologies, while Carmody et al. (2003) provide a similar overview of commercial window technologies.

Before the oil embargo of the early 1970s, windows represented the component with the greatest heat flow rate in a typical building envelope. Today, the highest rate of heat flow is more likely to be from outside air infiltration (or deliberate ventilation). Windows do so many things in addition to providing weather protection—admitting daylight, allowing views outdoors and in, admitting breezes, and admitting warming winter sun—that their relative thermal weakness compared to their desirability continues to challenge manufacturers. Over the next quarter-century, windows may well continue to display the most dramatically improved resistance to heat flow of all the components of the envelope.

Roofs are of particular interest relative to heat gains and losses because they are subjected to such extremes. On a clear night, radiant losses to the sky can lower a roof's surface temperature below that of the outdoor air—beneficial in summer, but a problem in winter. In summer, elevated

roof surface temperatures in sunlight are dramatic and problematic. Efforts are under way to disseminate information regarding the benefits of *cool roofs* and to incorporate credit for such roofs into national energy codes (CRRC, 2004). Both reflective roofs and green (or eco-roof) designs are being employed.

As discussed in Section 7.7, limiting heat flow via unwanted air movement is an important aspect of envelope design. The tightness of buildings has improved remarkably over the past 20 years, partly due to improved components (such as windows) and partly due to increased care in construction (involving caulking and air barriers/retarders). As a result of this improvement, building airtightness as a means of reducing energy usage is now in conflict with IAQ needs and concerns. It is likely that future improvements in this area will revolve around the use of heat recovery ventilators that permit reasonable ventilation rates without excess energy penalties.

Commissioning of the building envelope is an emerging trend. Commissioning goes beyond construction quality control to attempt to ensure (through design review, documentation, and testing) that envelope design, construction, and maintenance meet the owner's project requirements. The National Institute of Building Sciences developed a building envelope commissioning guideline that is available via the Whole Building Design Guide (NIBS).

7.7 HEAT FLOW VIA AIR MOVEMENT

Outdoor air can enter a building by means of infiltration and/or ventilation. *Infiltration* is an unintended influx of outdoor air due to air leakage through the building skin. *Ventilation* is a deliberate, designed introduction of outdoor air. In either case, air at a different temperature and humidity interacts with the air inside a building. This interaction brings sensible and latent heat loads. Of the two means of air entry, infiltration is the more difficult to predict, since it is by definition unintended. Ventilation air quantities are intended and thus easily quantified. Although it is possible for infiltration and ventilation to occur simultaneously, usually it is reasonable to assume one of the following scenarios: only infiltration (which is typical of many smaller buildings with no ventilation) or only ventilation (typically required by code for larger buildings, and which usually pressurizes a building and blocks infiltration). Both infiltration and ventilation airflow rates are expressed in cubic feet per minute (cfm); in SI, the units are liters per second (L/s).

(a) Infiltration

The main problem with infiltration is estimating how much air will leak into a building once it is built. There are two primary means of calculating the infiltration airflow rate during design: the air-change method and the crack method.

The *air-change method* is very simple and quick but tends to overestimate. Air-change is a correlational method wherein observed performance of a set of existing buildings is matched (correlated) to key characteristics of a proposed building. The characteristics used are construction type and climate. Virtually no detailed information about a building or its spatial arrangement is required. Table E.27 lists estimated numbers of air changes per hour (ACH) as a function of these two characteristics. ACH is indicative of the "turnover" of air within a building or space. The greater the ACH, the greater the rate of outdoor airflow. A tight building might permit 0.25 ACH or so, a leaky building 1.0 ACH. ACH can be converted to airflow rate as follows:

$$V = \frac{(\text{ACH})(\text{volume, ft}^3)}{60\,\text{min/h}}$$

where V is airflow rate in cfm.

In SI units:

$$V = \frac{(\text{ACH})\,(\text{volume, m}^3)}{3600\,\text{sec/h}}$$

where V is in m^3/s. Although both m^3/s and L/s are used as SI units of airflow rate, L/s is more commonly encountered in building design work. L/s = $m^3/s \times 1000$.

The *crack method* requires more effort and assumes that data on window and door construction and wind velocities are known. It also assumes that all infiltration under design conditions is due to cracks around doors and windows. To estimate the airflow rate, calculate the length of cracks on the windward exposure(s) only and multiply this by the respective assembly air leakage rate(s) as follows:

V = (total lin. ft of window/door edge)
× (air leakage rate(s), cfm per lin. ft)

where V is in cfm.

In SI units:

V = (total lin. m of window/door edge) × (air leakage rate(s), L/s per lin. m)

where V is in L/s.

See Table E.15 for generic air leakage data or get NFRC or manufacturer's ratings for a specific product. If air leakage rates are unknown, Table E.28 shows how much leakage per unit length of crack should be assumed, for the windward exposure(s) only, to arrive at the total infiltration airflow rate. Multiply the total length of crack by the infiltration rate from part B of Table E.28.

It is possible to measure the actual infiltration performance of a constructed building using a fairly simple device called a *blower door*. Some energy codes require that building tightness be verified by a blower door test. As a result, local utility companies may be able to provide reasonably accurate values for air-change rates for buildings constructed using prevailing practices. Such local current data may provide better estimates of infiltration than the crack method.

(b) Ventilation

It is important to provide some minimum amount of fresh air to indoor environments as a means of IAQ control. Odors and a sense of staleness can be uncomfortable, and dangerous buildups of pollutants such as formaldehyde and radon gas can occur within buildings. These pollutants are most effectively removed via fresh airflow. Tables E.25 and E.26 list recommended design outdoor airflow rates to produce acceptable IAQ. A more thorough discussion of IAQ is found in Chapter 5.

Many building codes require a minimum outdoor airflow rate based upon either building population or floor area. These requirements are generally based upon ASHRAE Standard 61.1 (nonresidential buildings) or ASHRAE Standard 62.2 (residential buildings). This minimum is often (but not always) provided by mechanically induced ventilation. Since ventilation is intended, estimating such airflow rates is simple. With some simplification, when a building's required outdoor air (Table E.25) is based upon population:

V = (cfm [or L/s] of outdoor air per person) × (number of people)

When the required outdoor airflow rate is based upon floor area:

V = (cfm [or L/s] of outdoor air per unit floor area) × (total floor area)

7.8 CALCULATING ENVELOPE HEAT FLOWS

When the fundamentals of heat flow through a building envelope are understood, calculations to determine the magnitude of such flows can be undertaken. Three types of heat flow are usually of primary interest: (1) a design heat loss based upon "worst-hour" conditions, which is used to size heating systems, (2) a design heat gain (or cooling load) also based upon worst-hour conditions, which is used to size cooling systems, and (3) an annualized heat flow, based upon year-long climate conditions, which is used to predict annual energy usage and costs and/or demonstrate compliance with energy standards. Hand calculations can provide reasonably accurate estimates of design heat loss and gain—even though the use of computer programs for these analyses is very common. Although a rough estimate of annual energy usage can be made using hand calculations, it is much more likely that a computer program will be used for this purpose. Many such programs are readily available, although they generally have a moderately steep learning curve and require detailed input information. Regardless of whether a manual or computerized calculation approach is taken, understanding the concepts and issues involved is critical to good design.

(a) Design Heat Loss

Calculation of design heat loss is an estimation of the worst likely hourly heat flow from a building to the surrounding environment. This value is used to size heating systems; the greater the design heat loss, the larger the required heating system capacity. The *design* heat loss is not the highest heat loss that can (or will) ever occur; rather, it is a statistically reasonable maximum heat loss based upon a chosen outside air temperature. By convention, design heat loss is assumed to occur at night (no sun), during the winter (coldest temperatures), with no occupants, lights, or equipment to offset heat lost through the envelope. These assumptions lead to an easy analysis based upon steady-state conditions.

To calculate the design (statistically worst-hour) heat loss through a building's envelope, the following information is necessary:

1. The *rate* at which heat flows through each of the elements that make up the building envelope—the assembly U-factors
2. The *area* of each of these assemblies
3. The design *temperature difference* between inside and outside

With only the first two factors, a comparison of the thermal integrity of one building envelope versus another, in any location, can be made. These two factors are an outcome of the design process. The third factor, temperature difference, is a function primarily of climate (but also of comfort criteria). Design temperatures for various geographic locations (climates) are listed in Appendix B.

The design sensible heat loss through *all* types of aboveground elements of the building envelope can be calculated as follows:

$$q = (U)\,(A)\,(\Delta t) \quad \text{for each element}$$

$$\text{I-P units: Btu/h} = (\text{Btu/h ft}^2\ ^\circ\text{F})\,(\text{ft}^2)\,(^\circ\text{F})$$

$$\text{SI units: W} = (\text{W/m}^2\ \text{K})\,(\text{m}^2)\,(\text{K})$$

where

q = hourly heat loss through a specific envelope component (by conduction, convection, and radiation) under design conditions

U = U-factor for a given envelope component

A = surface area of the envelope component

Δt = the design temperature difference between inside and outside air (see Appendix B)

(If a *representative* heat loss is desired, use average temperatures such as from the latter part of Appendix C or local climatological data.)

In addition to the aboveground components, heat loss through at- and below-grade elements and through airflow must be estimated. For slab-on-grade floors (see Example 7.3):

$$q = (F_2)\,(P)\,(\Delta t)$$

$$\text{I-P units: Btu/h} = (\text{Btu/h ft}\ ^\circ\text{F})\,(\text{ft})\,(^\circ\text{F})$$

$$\text{SI units: W} = (\text{W/m K})\,(\text{m})\,(\text{K})$$

where

q = hourly sensible heat loss through the slab-on-grade floor under design conditions

F_2 = heat loss coefficient for the floor slab/insulation configuration

P = perimeter of the floor slab

Δt = design temperature difference between inside and outside air

For below-grade basement walls and floors (see Example 7.4):

$q = (F)\,(A)\,(\Delta t)$ summed across various depths below grade of the wall/floor

$$\text{I-P units: Btu/h} = (\text{Btu/h ft}^2\ ^\circ\text{F})\,(\text{ft}^2)\,(^\circ\text{F})$$

$$\text{SI units: W} = (\text{W/m}^2\ \text{K})\,(\text{m}^2)\,(\text{K})$$

where

q = hourly sensible heat loss through the basement wall/floor under design conditions

F = heat loss coefficient for the wall-floor/insulation configuration at a given depth below grade

A = area of the floor or wall at a given nominal depth below grade

Δt = design temperature difference between inside air and surface of the ground

For airflow due to infiltration or ventilation, design sensible heat loss is calculated as follows:

$$q = (V)\,(1.1)\,(\Delta t)$$

where

q = sensible heat loss due to infiltration or ventilation (Btu/h)

V = outdoor airflow rate in cfm

Δt = temperature difference between outdoor and indoor air (°F)

1.1 = a constant derived from the density of air at 0.075 lb/ft^3 under average conditions, multiplied by the specific heat of air (heat required to raise 1 lb of air 1°F, which is 0.24 Btu/lb °F) and by 60 min/h. The units of this frequently encountered, but quirky, constant are Btu min/ft^3 h °F.

In SI units, this becomes

$$q = (V)\ (1.2)\ (\Delta t)$$

where q is in watts, V is in liters per second, 1.2 is a constant (the density of air [1.20 kg/m^3] multiplied by the specific heat of air [1.0 kJ/kg K]), and Δt is in degrees K.

The total design sensible heat loss for a building is the sum of the component losses (aboveground elements, on-ground and belowground elements, and airflow). All the aboveground envelope elements could be lumped together (using an area-weighted U-factor) under the same equation (as orientation, tilt, and transparency are of no consequence in the absence of sun). It is very useful, however, to identify the loss of each component (window, floor, roof, etc.) so that design improvements can focus upon those envelope components with the biggest contribution to overall heat loss. Design for energy efficiency in the building envelope essentially consists of trying to reduce the value of any variable that occurs on the right-hand side of these design heat loss equations. This is the design palette; no other design change will affect design heat loss:

- Reduce component U-factors (within the constraints of the budget and constructability).
- Reduce areas of components (within the constraints of the program and design intent).
- Reduce the design temperature difference (usually by lowering indoor air temperature, perhaps by microclimate improvement).
- Reduce airflow into the building.

In practice, design latent heat loss is often ignored. There are two reasons for this: (1) humidity (directly affected by latent loss) is often allowed to float during the winter, and (2) there is no single system or piece of equipment that will handle both sensible and latent heat loss. Even so, it is possible to estimate design latent heat loss for the various envelope elements. The calculation of latent heat loss through aboveground components involves an equation similar to that used for sensible heat loss:

$$q = (M)\ (A)\ (\Delta p)\ (C)$$

where

q = latent heat exchange due to vapor pressure difference, Btu/h (W)

M = permeance of the envelope element, lb/h ft^2 in. Hg (ng/s m^2 Pa)

A = surface area of the envelope component, ft^2 (m^2)

Δp = difference in vapor pressure between outdoor and indoor air, in Hg (Pa)

C = an approximate value of energy content under typical interior conditions, 1076 Btu/lb (2500 kJ/kg)

As it is common to install a reasonably effective (very-low-permeance) vapor retarder in cold climate constructions to minimize condensation problems, latent envelope heat loss is often assumed to be negligible. Because the on-grade and belowground portions of a building are commonly waterproofed with very-low-permeability materials, these components are typically assumed to be impermeable and to support no latent heat loss. Substantial latent loss can occur, however, as a result of airflow.

The design latent heat loss due to the flow of outdoor air into a space is calculated as follows:

$$q = (V)\ (4840)\ (\Delta W)$$

where

q = latent heat exchange due to ventilation (Btu/h)

V = outdoor airflow rate in cfm

ΔW = difference in humidity ratio between outdoor and indoor air (lb of moisture/lb of dry air)

4840 = a constant derived from the density of air (0.075 lb/ft^3) multiplied by the heat content of water vapor (1076 Btu/lb) and by 60 min/h (the density and heat content values noted are for conditions typical of interior environments)

In SI units, this becomes

$$q = (V)\ (3010)\ (\Delta W)$$

where q is in watts, V is in liters per second, W is in kJ/kg, and 3010 is the density of air (1.20 kg/m^3) multiplied by the heat content of water vapor (2500 kJ/kg for typical indoor conditions).

(b) Design Heat Gain

The calculation of design heat gain (more correctly called *cooling load*) is far more complex than

the calculation of design heat loss. The simplifying assumptions made for winter conditions (nighttime with no sun and ignoring occupancy-related heat sources) are untenable for a summer situation. There is sun during the "worst" summer hour, and the highest temperatures are usually in the afternoon, when a nonresidential building would be in full work mode with occupants, lights, and equipment generating heat. In a nutshell, design cooling load calculations must deal with many more variables—including the compounding effects of solar radiation, which create the need for dynamic heat flow analysis. Things get very complicated.

There are hand calculation methods for estimating design cooling load and computer programs to do the same. The details of these methods will not be presented here (see Chapter 8 for more information). It is important, however, to establish the conditions under which such calculations are conducted. In addition to the design variables that affect design heat loss (envelope assembly U-factor, surface area, temperature difference, and airflow rate), the following variables will affect design cooling load:

- The orientation of an assembly (north, south, etc.)
- The tilt of an assembly (vertical, horizontal, inclined)
- The surface reflectance of an assembly
- The thermal capacity of an assembly
- The solar heat gain coefficient of a transparent/translucent assembly
- Shading for any envelope component
- Heat gain from occupants
- Heat gain from lights
- Heat gain from equipment

Design decisions influence all of these variables and therefore the resulting design cooling load. This list of variables is again the palette from which energy efficiency decisions may be selected. It is critical that this palette be fully appreciated early in the design process and not be delegated to a mechanical engineering consultant who may enter the design process too late to provide effective advice.

How does design *heat gain* differ from design *cooling load*? In the past, calculations for summer loads simply totaled all the heat flows at a given hour that entered or originated inside of a building envelope. This total instantaneous heat flow is known as *heat gain*. It turns out, however, that some of this instantaneous gain does not immediately affect indoor air temperature—specifically, radiation heat flows that are absorbed and stored by the internal mass of a building. Those heat gains that affect air temperature at the hour of interest are collectively called the *cooling load*. It is only this distinct subset of heat gains that must be handled (at the time) by a cooling system. Conceptually, cooling load is equal to instantaneous heat gain minus any part of that heat gain that is stored within the building plus any previously stored gains that are now affecting air temperature. The distinction can be substantial, providing first cost savings in equipment capacity and life-cycle savings through improved operating efficiency.

Solar radiation plays an important role in building envelope heat gain, and not just via transparent/translucent components. The impact of solar radiation on opaque construction assemblies can be substantial. The concept of sol-air temperature helps to illustrate this impact. *Sol-air temperature* is the apparent outdoor air temperature that would produce the same heat flow experienced under the combined effects of temperature difference (based upon actual outdoor air temperature) and radiation. Essentially, sol-air temperature lumps the heat flow caused by radiation absorbed and retained by a surface with the heat flow caused by the air-to-air temperature difference. This is a convenient concept, as it produces a delta-*t* value that can be plugged into the conventional heat gain equation. The simplified sol-air temperature formula (in I-P units) is:

$$t_e = t_o + \frac{\alpha \times I}{h_o} - 7^\circ F$$

where

t_e = sol-air temperature

t_o = outdoor (ambient) dry-bulb temperature

α = absorptance of surface for solar radiation (for light-colored surfaces, usually assumed = 0.45; for dark-colored surfaces, usually assumed = 0.90; detailed values are listed in Table 9.1)

I = total solar radiation incident on the surface, Btu/h ft^2 (see Appendix C for solar heat gain factors, which are approximately equivalent to I for horizontal surfaces)

h_o = coefficient of heat transfer by long-wave radiation and convection at the surface (usually assumed to be 3.0 Btu/h ft^2 °F)

The simplified sol-air temperature formula in SI units is:

$$t_e = t_o + \frac{\alpha I}{h_o} - 3.9°C$$

where the differences from I-P units are as follows:

I = total solar radiation incident on the surface, W/m^2

h_o = usually assumed to be = 17.0 W/m^2 K

EXAMPLE 7.6 What is the sol-air temperature for a horizontal white roof, compared to a dark roof, on a clear July 21 at noon, at 40° N latitude? Assume outdoor air temperature of 90°F (32°C).

SOLUTION

From Table C.3 of Appendix C, on July 21 at noon at 40° N latitude, the solar heat gain factor on a horizontal surface = 262 Btu/h ft^2 (827 W/m^2).

$$\text{Sol-air temperature: } t_e = t_o + \frac{\alpha I}{h_o} - 7°F$$

For a white roof:

$$t_e = 90°F + \frac{0.45 \times 262\,\text{Btu/h ft}^2}{3.0\,\text{Btu/h ft}^2\,°F} - 7°F$$

$$= 90 + 39.3 - 7 = 122.3°F$$

For a dark roof:

$$t_e = 90°F + \frac{0.90 \times 262\,\text{Btu/h ft}^2}{3.0\,\text{Btu/h ft}^2\,°F} - 7°F$$

$$= 90 + 78.6 - 7 = 161.6°F$$

Solar radiation has a marked impact upon surface temperature (and resulting heat flow). Elevated temperatures in full sun will drive considerably more heat through both roofs compared to shaded conditions. The white roof has a Δt about 1.4 times greater in full sun than in shade. The dark roof has a Δt about 1.3 greater than the white roof under the stated conditions. ■

7.9 ENVELOPE THERMAL DESIGN STANDARDS

The building design team will find that there are code requirements that establish minimum thermal envelope performance requirements for virtually all jurisdictions in North America and for virtually all building types. In the United States, code adoption is a local matter, and the specific energy code to be followed depends upon the jurisdiction. Even so, the energy code most likely to be encountered for nonresidential buildings is ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1. In California, Title 24 is the statewide counterpart of Standard 90.1. Residential buildings are likely to fall under the requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code* (or its predecessor *Model Energy Code*—both of which are really standards until adopted as law). ASHRAE also publishes a residential energy standard, Standard 90.2. Although energy codes provide efficiency requirements for more than just the envelope (usually also dealing with HVAC equipment efficiency, hot water heating, and lighting), this discussion focuses upon envelope requirements.

It is typical for energy codes to provide two paths to compliance: (1) a prescriptive path, which provides precise statements of minimal acceptable component characteristics (for example, a minimum R for wall insulation or a maximum U for a window) and (2) a performance path, which sets a minimum level of overall energy performance that may be met using a wide range of solutions. Code compliance via the prescriptive path is usually straightforward and requires little analysis or creativity. Following the performance path may require detailed analysis (usually by way of a computer program) and opens the door to innovation and creativity.

Energy codes need to be placed in context. They establish a set of minimum requirements. Just barely meeting an energy code simply means that a building envelope is not illegal. In today's design environment, doing better—perhaps much better—than the minimum required by code is becoming a common design intent. The U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC) LEED rating system, for example, requires compliance with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 as a prerequisite for green building status. To actually gain any points toward a green building rating, a design must exceed these minimum requirements (by variable percentages, depending upon the points sought). As noted, ASHRAE has released several volumes in its *Advanced Energy Design Guide* series (distinct from the 90.1 energy standard) to assist in the design of buildings that will perform 30% better than a Standard 90.1 compliant building.

Appendix G provides excerpts from the USGBC LEED program and ASHRAE's nonresidential energy-efficiency standard. These excerpts include:

- A sample of the prescriptive envelope requirements from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 (nonresidential buildings)
- The criteria set used for LEED certification of new buildings

The ASHRAE standards and LEED criteria are continuously being updated. The intent of these excerpts is not to provide the most current information, but rather to show the general format by which such design requirements are conveyed.

EXAMPLE 7.7 A two-story medical office building is being designed for St. Louis, Missouri. What are the maximum permissible U-factors (and other envelope characteristics) for such a building in this location?

SOLUTION

Refer to Appendix B for climate data and to Appendix G (Table G.1) for sample provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007.

- Climate: St. Louis, Missouri: HDD65: 4758 (SI: HDD18 = 2643); CDD50: 4283 (SI: CDD10 = 2379). (HDD and CDD values would be obtained from Standard 90.1 or another data resource.)

  These benchmark climate indicators (heating and cooling degree days; HDD and CDD, respectively—see Chapter 8 for more information) are used to establish which set of the Standard 90.1 prescriptive requirements apply to a building in St. Louis. Within the applicable set (Table G.1), note that one of the labeled columns of design values applies to a nonresidential (for this example, an office) building, while the other columns apply to other situations.

- Roof: maximum U-factor: 0.034 (SI: 0.193), assuming a roof/attic as typical of this type of building.

  As noted in Table G.1, insulation of R-30 (SI: R-5.3) minimum is required. This compares to a total R of 1/0.034 = 29.4 (SI: 1/0.193 = 5.2) for all components of the roof, suggesting that the negative effects of thermal bridging and the positive effects of other materials such as sheathing/shingles will generally cancel each other.

- Frame walls: if wood framed, the maximum U-factor is 0.089 (SI: 0.51); if steel framed, the maximum U-factor is 0.124 (SI: 0.70).

  Note from these data that the U-factor requirements vary with the type of construction. This flexibility in requirements (depending upon the construction approach) reflects the fact that Standard 90.1 is a consensus document attempting to satisfy many constituencies, and that it is not based on scientific absolutes or idealized efficiencies. A further look at the wall requirements (Table G.1) shows that the minimum insulation resistance for both types of constructions is R-13 ("equivalent" to U = 0.077) (SI: R-2.3; U = 0.44). The oddly higher overall U-factor requirements for both construction types reflect the lower resistance of the framing and are especially reflective of the thermal short-circuiting that occurs with steel studs.

- Floor (assuming wood-framed, over a crawl space): maximum U-factor: 0.051 (SI: 0.29).

  Note from Table G.1 that in this situation (as opposed to the wall case just discussed), the U requirements for wood framing and steel joists are virtually identical (0.051 [SI: 0.29] for wood, versus 0.052 [SI: 0.30] for steel joists). The minimum insulation resistance for both constructions is R-19 (SI: R-3.3), equivalent to U = 0.053 (SI: 0.30); thus, an insulation detail that is not breached by framing must be assumed (compared with the wall requirements).

- Opaque doors: maximum U-factor: 0.7 (SI: 4.0) (assuming swinging doors).

  Doors are a substantial weak link in the thermal envelope resistance but are usually a small percentage of the overall wall area.

- Windows: If operable windows constitute 5% of the wall area, their maximum U-factor is 0.67 (SI: 3.8), and the maximum SHGC is 0.39 (except for north glazing at SHGC 0.49). If the windows constitute 25% or 35% of the wall area, then these maximums still apply; at 41% of wall area, however, the maximums reduce to U: 0.47 (SI: 2.7) and SHGC: 0.25 (north: SHGC 0.36).

The window prerequisites are the most situation-specific of the envelope requirements, varying with the type of window (fixed versus operable), the extent of window glazing versus wall area, and the orientation (for SHGC). ■

References and Resources

Several publications of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA:

Advanced Energy Design Guide for Small Office Buildings. 2004.

Advanced Energy Design Guide for Small Retail Buildings. 2006.

Advanced Energy Design Guide for K-12 School Buildings. 2004.

ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals. 2009.

ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2007: *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.*

ASHRAE Standard 62.2-2007: *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Low-Rise Residential Buildings.*

ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.*

ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2-2007: *Energy-Efficient Design of Low-Rise Residential Buildings.*

AEC InfoCenter (with links to insulation manufacturers' WWW sites): http://www.eacinfo.com/

Bynum, R. T., Jr. 2001. *Insulation Handbook.* McGraw-Hill. New York.

Carmody, J., S. Selkowitz, and L. Heschong. 1996. *Residential Windows: A Guide to New Technologies and Energy Performance.* W.W. Norton and Company. New York.

Carmody, J., S. Selkowitz, E. Lee, D. Arasteh, and T. Willmert. 2003. *Window Systems for High-Performance Buildings.* W.W. Norton and Company. New York.

CRRC. 2004. Cool Roof Rating Council: http://www.coolroofs.org/

Efficient Windows Collaborative: http://www.efficientwindows.org/

ICC. 2009. *International Energy Conservation Code.* International Code Council. Falls Church, VA.

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Building Technologies Department: http://eetd.lbl.gov/eetd-org-bt.html

Lstiburek, J. and J. Carmody. 1994. *Moisture Control Handbook: Principles and Practices for Residential and Small Commercial Buildings.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Melody, I. 1987. *Radiant Barriers: A Question and Answer Primer.* Florida Solar Energy Center (FSEC-EN-15). Cocoa, FL. http://www.fsec.ucf.edu/en/publications/pdf/FSEC-EN-15-87.pdf

National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC). *Certified Products Directory.* NFRC Incorporated. Silver Spring, MD. http://www.nfrc.org/

NIBS. 2006. NIBS Guideline 3-2006: *Exterior Enclosure Technical Requirements for the Commissioning Process.* National Institute of Building Sciences. Washington, DC. http://www.wbdg.org/ccb/NIBS/nibs_gl3.pdf

Norberg-Schulz, C. 1965. *Intentions in Architecture.* MIT Press. Cambridge, MA.

Oikos: Green Product information (including building envelope components): http://www.oikos.com/green_products/index.php

Sweet's System Online (links to insulation product manufacturers' WWW sites): http://sweets.construction.com/

Wilkinson, G. 1999. "Beyond *R*-Value—Insulating for the Environment," in *Environmental Design and Construction,* January–February 1999.

CHAPTER 8

Designing for Heating and Cooling

CHAPTERS 1 THROUGH 5 PROVIDE SOME preparation for design: a perspective on energy, water, and material resources; an understanding of human comfort and indoor air quality; an analysis of the climate resources available on site; a list of the general design strategies appropriate to various climates; a discussion of the basics of heat transfer calculations; and some attention to requirements for the components of the building envelope. Hence, we now know much about the variables outside of a building, the desired conditions inside, and the individual components of a building's skin. In this chapter, all these variables are integrated into the process of designing for heating and cooling with the important related factor of daylighting. The design of mechanical support systems is introduced in Chapter 9.

The information in this chapter is organized from the general to the particular. It also serves two distinct kinds of buildings—buildings using on-site energy resources and more conventional buildings using imported energy. The sections that pertain to one or the other building type—and to both—are outlined in Table 8.1.

TABLE 8.1 Proceeding through Chapter 8

Buildings Using On-Site Energy	Conventional Buildings Using Imported Energy
Prior Decisions: Chapter 3. Sites and Resources	
Chapter 4. Comfort and Design Strategies	
Chapter 7. Heat Flow	
← Section 8.2 Zoning →	
← Section 8.3 Daylighting Considerations →	
Section 8.4 Passive Solar Heating Guidelines	
Section 8.5 Summer Heat Gain Guidelines	
Section 8.6 Passive Cooling Guidelines	
Section 8.7 Reintegrating Daylighting, Passive Solar Heating, and Cooling	
← Section 8.8 Calculating Worst-Hourly Heat Loss →	
	Section 8.9 Calculations for Heating-Season Fuel Consumption (Conventional Buildings)
Section 8.10 Passive Solar Heating Performance	
← Section 8.11 Approximate Method for Calculating Heat Gain (Cooling Load) →	
← Section 8.12 Psychrometry →	
	Section 8.13 Detailed Hourly Heat Gain (Cooling Load) Calculations
Section 8.14 Passive Cooling Calculation Procedures	

8.1 ORGANIZING THE PROBLEM

How should the building envelope respond to the sometimes conflicting needs for heating, cooling, and daylighting? Heating and cooling design strategies were related to climate in Chapter 4, where it became evident that internal heat gains can shift the appropriate design strategies for a building toward cooling, perhaps eliminating heating needs entirely. Typically, much of this internal heat is provided by electric lighting. Daylighting can replace electric lighting for most of the typical working day in most building types—*if* the building is designed to allow daylight to reach most of the interior.

(a) Fenestration

Codes and standards typically prescribe a relationship between floor area and fenestration area (residential buildings) or total wall area and fenestration area (nonresidential buildings). These prescriptions assume that a building will be designed conventionally, that is, to rely on imported energy for lighting, heating, and cooling. Thus, prescribed areas of fenestration tend to be rather small. If a designer wishes to rely on daylighting to a greater extent, then some proof of benefit will be needed.

Daylighting is accompanied by large glass areas, which increase a building's heating needs in winter; yet in such buildings, less heat from electric lighting is available to fill those needs. Another complication is that adequate daylight requires much larger glass areas under dim winter skies than under bright summer skies. If the glass area is sized for winter daylighting, then excessive daylight—and, along with it, excessive heat—might be admitted in summer. With proper controls, daylighting can reduce summer cooling loads, relative to electric lighting, but it will usually increase winter heating loads. Where passive solar heating or surplus heat from another source is readily available, this trade-off is attractive.

One of the earliest and most difficult questions for the designer is how much fenestration is optimum for a building. Some of the major energy end uses in buildings are: 30% for space heating, 11% for space cooling and ventilation, and 14% for electric lighting. By building type and location, however, this proportion of energy use can change substantially. Daylighting and the related square footage of windows are considered first because they so largely determine whether space heating or space cooling will be the dominant need within the building.

(b) Building Form

At its simplest, form can be reduced to questions of tall or short, thick or thin. Figure 8.1 compares these form variations to their impacts on heating, cooling, and daylighting solutions. Thicker, taller buildings have more floor space away from climate influences; being electrically lit rather than daylit, they generate heat and need cooling all year. These buildings are called *internal load dominated* (ILD). In contrast, thinner buildings—in which nearly all spaces have an exterior wall—need heating in cold weather and cooling in hot weather; electric lighting by day is largely unnecessary. These buildings are called *skin load dominated* (SLD).

The ultimate choice of building form is determined by a combination of design issues; the energy use issue can help in the selection process. Once the building form has been chosen, the functions can be distributed according to typical architectural criteria, including thermal zoning considerations.

In the selection of a building form, some particularly important questions accompany each energy use. Because the question of daylighting versus electric lighting frequently is so influential in determining whether heating or cooling will be the dominant concern, we begin with daylighting.

Daylighting Issues

1. What will be the relative emphasis on sidelighting (characterized by uneven distribution and glare in the visual field but little glare on horizontal surfaces) and toplighting (the reverse characteristics)?
2. What role will direct sun play in daylighting? In winter, can solar heat without glare be admitted?
3. How can seasonal adjustments be made in the size of daylight openings?
4. To what extent will daily changes in daylighting control be necessary?
5. How can adequate daylight be admitted in an even way, such that unwelcome dark-appearing places are avoided?

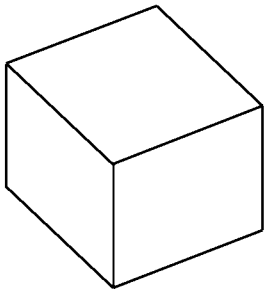
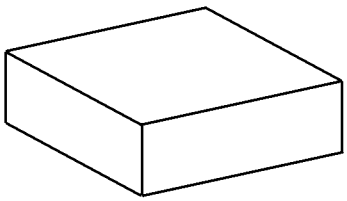
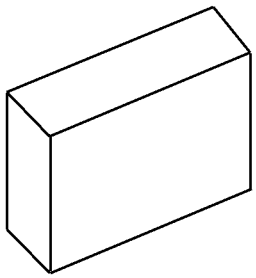
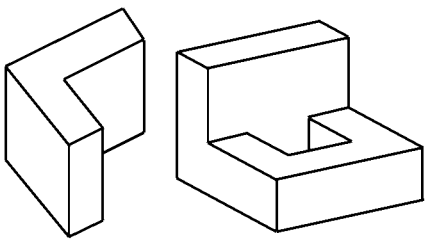
BUILDING TYPE	DAYLIGHT	HEATING	COOLING
 THICK TALL BUILDING	✓– Core is dark. Perimeter lighting is unidirectional	✓– Unbalanced solar gain makes perimeter zoning and control critical	✓– Large core requires mechanical cooling. Perimeter ventilates poorly
 THICK SHORT BUILDING	✓ Toplights and perimeter windows can provide adequate daylighting	✓ Passive heating systems may be implemented although somewhat limited and unbalanced	✓– Passive cooling possible but costly. No cross-ventilation
 THIN BUILDING, TALL OR SHORT	✓+ Complete sidelighting for all spaces can be achieved	✓+ Passive heating and solar heat gain mitigation possible	✓+ Natural ventilation is easily accomplished
 THIN COMBO BUILDING	✓ Complete daylighting for most spaces	✓+ Passive heating and solar heat gain mitigation possible	✓+ Natural ventilation is easily accomplished

Fig. 8.1 *The effect of building form on environmental control strategies. The illustration shows how building layout affects cooling, daylighting, and heating opportunities. (Drawing by Nathan Majeski; based upon concepts presented in Figures 8.1 and 8.2 of* Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings, *10th ed.)*

HEATING ISSUES

1. Can the sun be used to heat spaces? If so, how will south-wall design be affected?
2. How can openings in walls facing other directions be kept to a minimum without daylight being shut out? Where such openings are desirable, how low a fenestration U-factor can be justified?
3. What role will direct sun through south glass or skylights play in daylighting?
4. How can daylight be admitted but the chilling effects of large, cold glass surfaces be minimized?
5. How can incoming fresh air be warmed before it chills the people sitting near the fresh air opening?
6. Is there surplus heat elsewhere in the building that can be used to help warm perimeter spaces?

COOLING ISSUES

1. Will the strategy be to open the building to breeze or close the building for coolth retention, or to use a combination of these alternatives (open by night, closed by day)?
2. How can direct sun be kept out of the building? Can east and west windows be minimized and adequate daylight still be provided?
3. How can adequate daylight be admitted for winter conditions without overlighting (and thus overheating) for summer conditions?
4. When can cooling be provided by outdoor air rather than by a refrigeration cycle?
5. Can the operation of refrigeration machinery be concentrated during the coldest (nighttime) hours, when electric power is cheapest?
6. How can incoming fresh air be cooled before it warms the people sitting near the fresh air opening?
7. Can the structure of the building be used to absorb heat by day, then be flushed with night air in climates with cool nights?

(c) Building Envelope

The next design step involves relating the climate to the design of the building's skin. Each skin element provides an opportunity for thermal and luminous exchange between inside and outside; heating, cooling, ventilating, and daylighting devices can be mixed as needed. Figure 8.2 shows some of the most common of these devices for varying orientations. Sections in this chapter give numerical criteria for sizing these skin elements, with an emphasis on the use of on-site, renewable energy resources. These criteria may conflict with the size relationships that may be prescribed by codes and standards for conventional buildings.

An example of how lighting, heating, and cooling considerations can combine with other criteria (structural and acoustic, in this example) is shown in Fig. 8.3. These design diagrams explore opportunities in an office building in a cool-winter, dry-summer climate; the actual resulting building is shown in Fig. 8.6.

8.2 ZONING

Before calculating winter heat loss and summer heat gain, zoning should be considered. Dividing the calculations into zones facilitates later decisions about sizes of equipment as well as fenestration and areas of thermal mass. The thermal and luminous zoning of a building recognizes that different envelopes and support systems may be required around and within the building. The more carefully zoning is considered in these early design stages, the better will be the lighting and thermal performance and the lower will be the annual energy consumption. (Also, the less likely it will be that all sides of a building will have an identical appearance.)

Zoning is most often influenced by the following factors:

1. *Function.* Particularly important because of the variations in internal heat gains between functions, function may also influence the zonal organization of a building, as in Fig. 8.4. Comfort conditions may vary considerably between functions; air temperatures can be lower for a strenuous activity than for a sedentary activity, or heat tolerance may be greater for some activities (restaurant kitchens) than for others. Some functions thrive in daylight; others shun it. Some functions adversely affect the IAQ of other functions.
2. *Schedule.* Closely related to function, scheduling can influence both the envelope

and the support system. An activity scheduled only between 9:00 A.M. and 4:00 P.M. can often be entirely daylit at a time when the outside temperatures are the warmest of the daily cycle. By contrast, an activity that takes place only from 9:00 P.M. to 4:00 A.M. will be entirely dependent on electric lighting, whose heat can be used to overcome the chill of the outside temperatures during these hours in winter. (In the summer, such heat can be flushed away with the cool outside night air in many U.S. locations.) Support systems are often divided by scheduling considerations: If one activity has operating hours different from those of the remainder of the building, a separate mechanical system is often provided. This saves energy, because large equipment will not be underused to provide heating or cooling for only one zone.

3. *Orientation.* The degree of exposure to daylight, direct sun, and wind is obviously important to zoning. Consider the block-square office building floors (Fig. 8.4) on a cold, sunny, and windy day. Perimeter spaces with direct sun through the windows may gain more heat than is lost and thus need cooling. This might be done by the opening of windows, but too much cold air (especially on the windy side of a building) may make the workers near the windows uncomfortable. Perimeter spaces without direct sun may have a net heat loss due to heat loss through glass, infiltration, and reduced electric lighting (because daylight is adequate). These spaces will need heat from a mechanical support system. Interior (no-daylight) spaces are overheated by electric lighting because they cannot lose heat. These spaces will need cooling from the support system.

Zoning considerations are among the most important influences on building form and external design, along with the familiar aesthetic, social, legal, economic, and technical influences that combine in a tug of war familiar to the building designer.

8.3 DAYLIGHTING CONSIDERATIONS

Sizing of windows and analysis of daylighting performance will generally use the same guidelines for recommended daylight factor. Such guidelines are described in detail in Chapter 14, where they are discussed as a means of predicting daylighting performance. In previous chapters, windows and skylights have been seen as a liability because of winter heat loss and summer heat gain. It is time to consider their benefits numerically. This section will use daylighting guidelines in a preliminary example of window sizing for an office building.

When a building is designed to rely on daylighting, a prime design concern is the *daylight factor* (DF), which is expressed as a percentage of the outdoor illuminance *under overcast skies* that is available indoors.

$$DF = \frac{\text{indoor illuminace from daylight}}{\text{outdoor illuminance}} \times 100\%$$

Some simple target overcast-sky daylight factors and the simplest design guidelines that provide these target daylight factors are presented in Tables 14.2 and 14.3. These design guidelines consider two factors: *How high* is the window in the wall, and *how large* is the window or skylight area compared to the floor area for each daylit space?

The target daylight factors listed in Table 14.2 provide sufficient light during most of the daylight hours on overcast winter days. The relationship between office working hours, daylight, and outdoor temperature is explored in the *climatic timetables* of Fig. 8.5 for the building whose design diagrams appeared earlier (see Fig. 8.3). Much more light will be available on summer days—probably more light than is needed, bringing heat along with it. When sizing windows and skylights, remember that controlling direct sun is necessary and that less opening area is needed in summer than in winter.

EXAMPLE 8.1 Many of the design guidelines presented in this chapter will be illustrated by applying them to a typical bay of the building in Fig. 8.6. This 24,000-ft^2 (2230-m^2) office building for an electric utility is located in Eugene, in western Oregon's wet-winter, dry-summer climate typical of the U.S. Pacific Northwest. Energy conservation and daylighting considerations played a major role in this building's design and were integrated with solar heating,

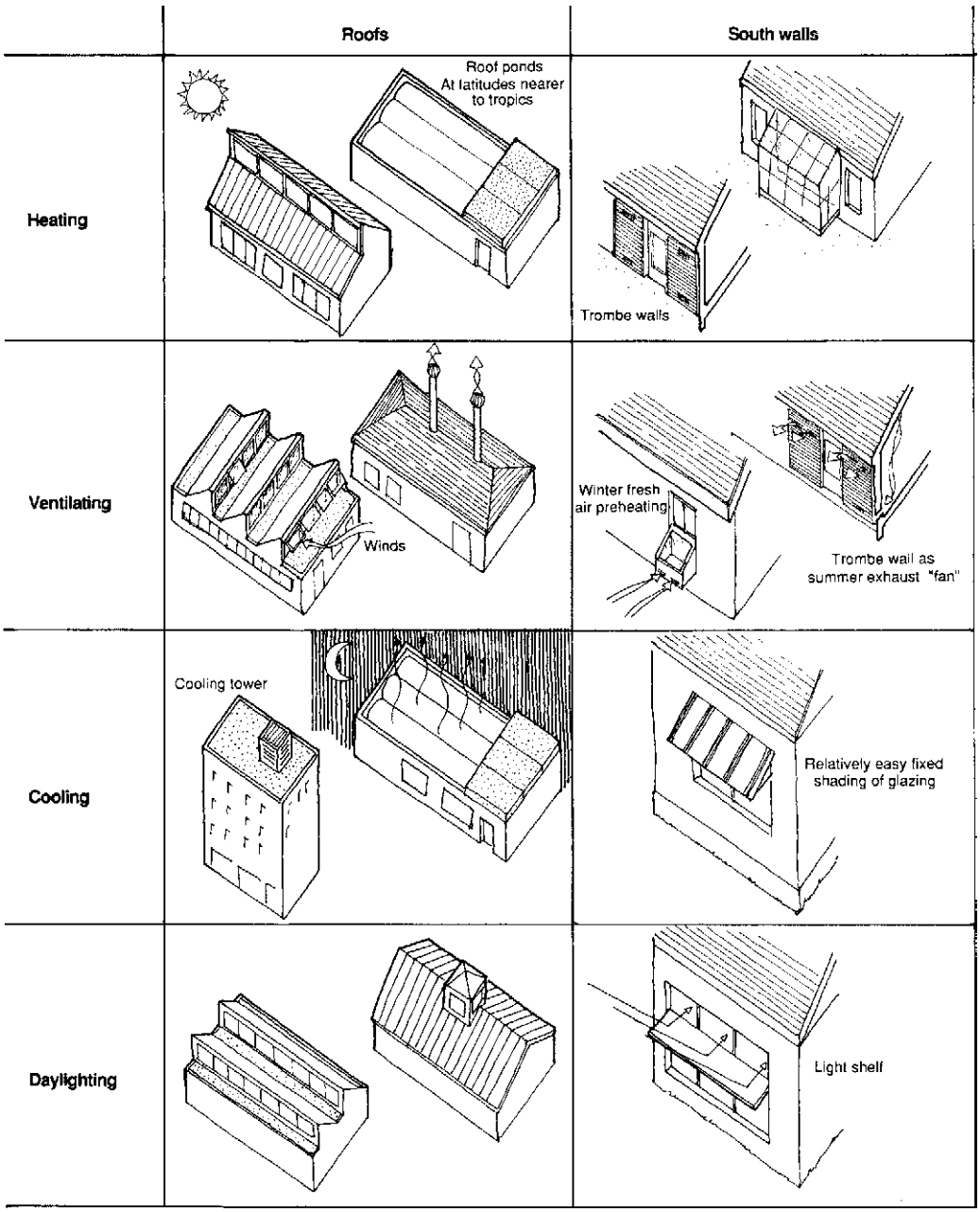


Fig. 8.2 *The components of a building's envelope can be used both to conserve energy and to admit on-site or natural energy sources.*

night ventilation of mass, structure, and acoustics (see Fig. 8.3).

Example 8.1 is an ongoing illustration. Applications of various design guidelines will continue to appear in the context of this example throughout this chapter. Table 8.2 presents the type of information about a building that will be required in order to apply these design guidelines.

Part A. Daylight design

Part B. Overall rate of heat loss (Btu/DD ft^2)

Part C. Approximate solar savings fraction (SSF)

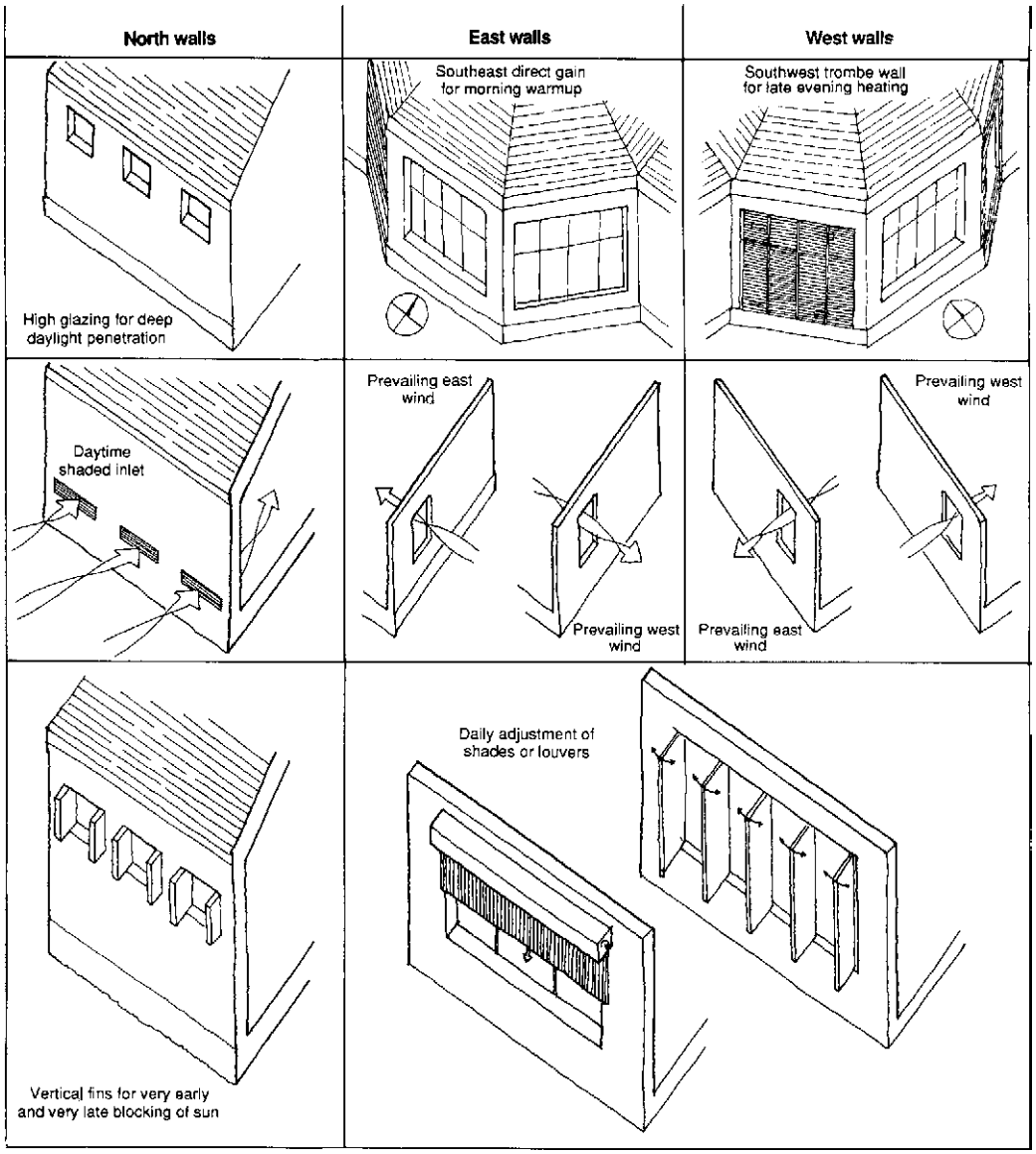


Fig. 8.2 *(Continued)*

Part D. Approximate heat gain

Part E. Cross-ventilation guidelines

Part F. Night ventilation of thermal mass guidelines

Part G. January balance point temperature

Part H. Annual SSF based upon the load to collector ratio (LCR)

Part I. Clear January day indoor temperature swing

Part J. Detailed night-cooling of mass calculation ■

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART A Daylighting design for this office building began with design diagrams (Fig. 8.3) and an assessment of daylighting potential (Fig. 8.5). After it was established that daylighting was available during almost all normal working hours, the building plan was organized so that almost all windows faced either south or north (Fig. 8.6) to avoid the problems of low-altitude sun (year-round glare and summer heat gain) that accompany east- and

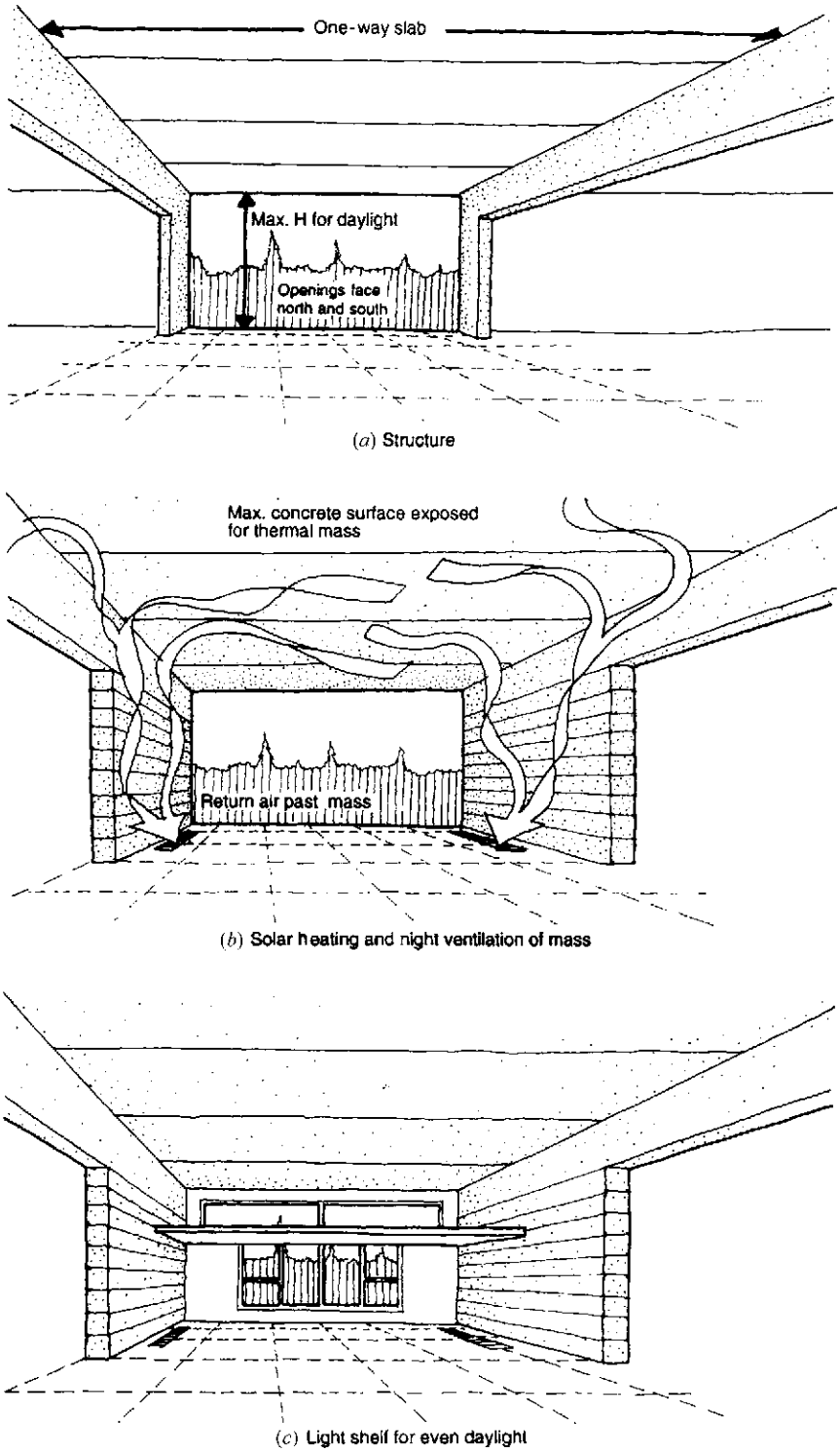
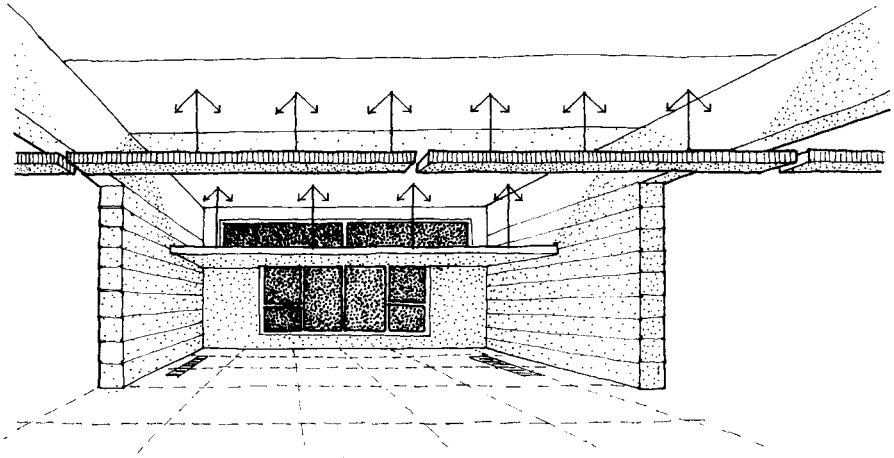
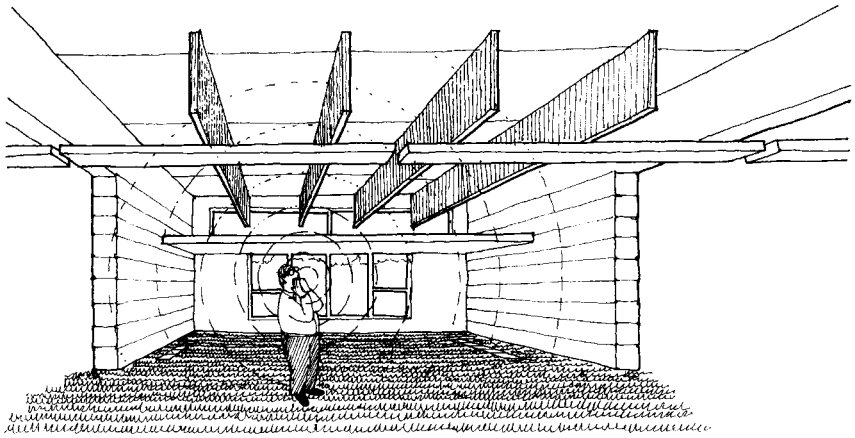


Fig. 8.3 *Design diagrams explore opportunities in an office building in western Oregon (see Fig. 8.6 for the resulting building). (a) Choosing a one-way structure allows windows to be placed as high as possible for deeper daylight penetration. (b) Maximizing exposed interior surfaces that are thermally massive facilitates both winter solar heat storage and summer night cooling. Carpet was installed at the insistence of the client. (c) Shaping the window with additional area above a light shelf helps reduce the visual contrast near the window. (d) Indirect electric lighting is facilitated when higher ceilings are available; less glare on computer screens results. (e) With so much exposed mass surface, sound absorption is a must. This solution continues to expose the concrete ceiling and does not cast shadows from incoming daylight. (Drawings by Michael Cockram; © 1998 by John S. Reynolds, A.I.A.; all rights reserved.)*



(*d*) Indirect electric lighting



(*e*) Sound absorption

Fig. 8.3 *(Continued)*

west-facing windows. Then the building section was designed so that the height of the windows (H) was related to the depth of the floor plan served by those windows (2.5H).

After a generous target DF_{av} = 4.0% was chosen from Table 14.2, the next step was to size the windows and clerestories (as skylights), using the DF guidelines from Table 14.5. Applicable formulas for both sidelighting and for vertical monitor skylights:

$$DF_{av} = 0.2\frac{\text{window (or skylight) area}}{\text{floor area}}$$

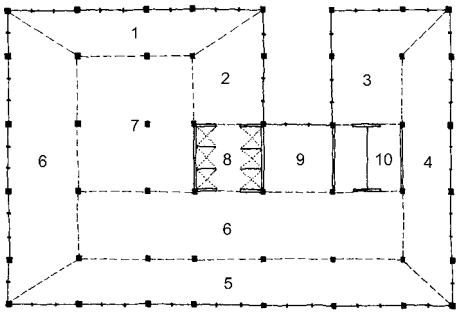


Fig. 8.4 *Zoning for a mixed-use building with perimeter and internal zones as well as varying types of use. Scheduling and/or internal load differences within any one of these zones could require division into additional zones. (Drawing by Amanda Clegg.)*

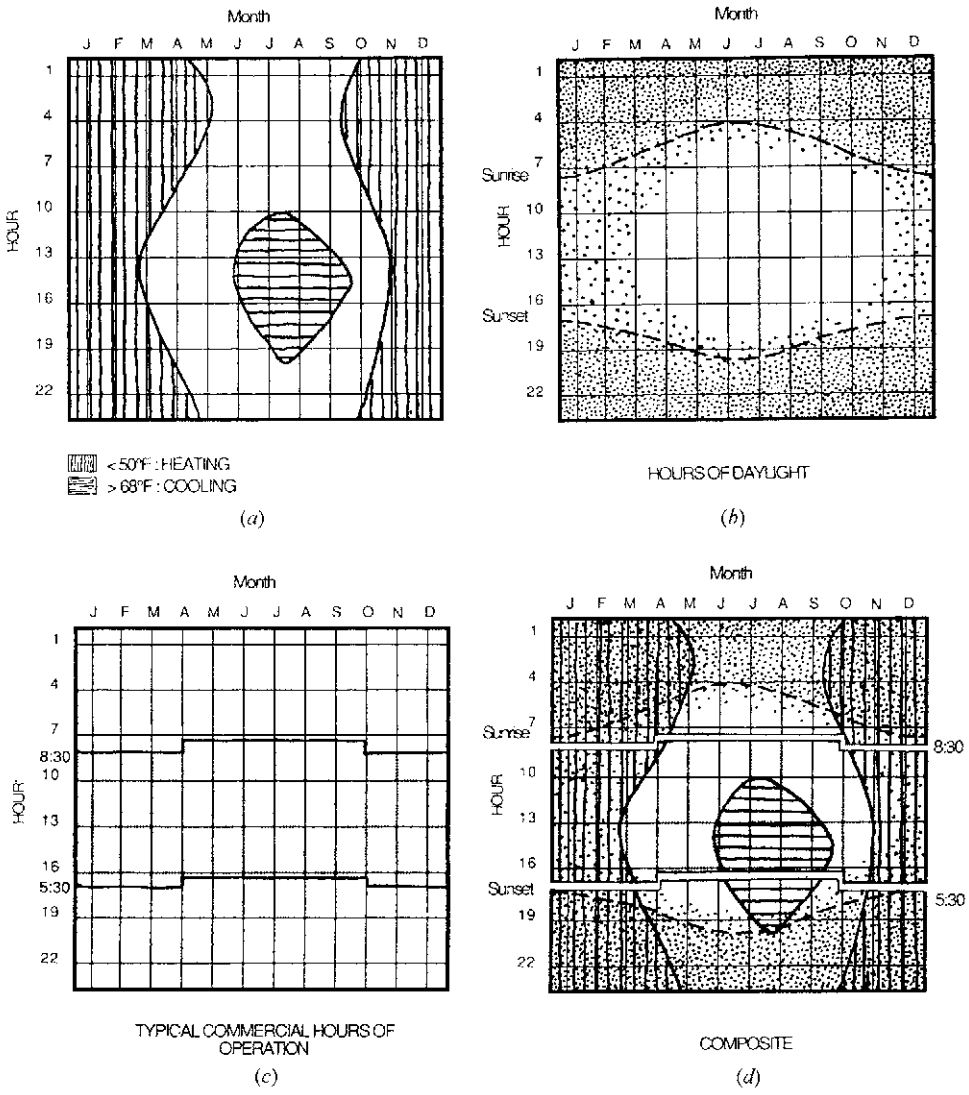
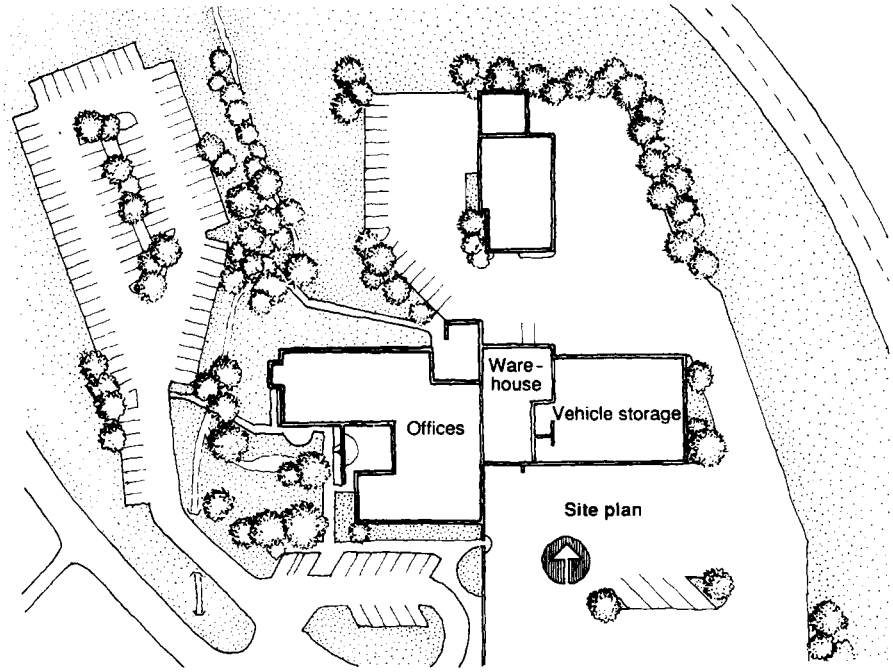


Fig. 8.5 *A series of climate timetables was prepared while designing the office building for the Emerald People's Utility District near Eugene, Oregon (Fig. 8.6). (a) Average outdoor temperatures show little daily variation in winter but a large daily range in summer. (b) Daylight peaks around noon near the summer solstice. (c) Work schedule shows the effect of summer's daylight saving time. (d) A composite timetable indicates that daylight is available during almost all working hours and that half of the hottest hours occur after the building closes on summer afternoons—thanks to daylight saving time. Cool nighttime temperatures make night ventilation of thermal mass an attractive cooling option. (Courtesy of Equinox Design, Inc., and WEGroup, PC, Architects, Eugene, OR.)*



(*a*)

Fig. 8.6 *The office building for the Emerald People's Utility District near Eugene, Oregon, is elongated east-west for maximum window areas facing north-south. (a) The site plan, (b) the ground-floor plan, (c) the second-floor plan, and (d) a section through a two-story wing. The cutaway axonometric (e) of a typical open-office two-story bay shows air flush through hollow cores of exposed precast concrete slabs, windows and shading, and suspended sound-absorbing baffles. The deciduous vines on trellises at the south façade change the building's appearance by season; (f) at the summer solstice, the shading stripes will soften as vines leaf out with age; at the fall equinox, the leaves will still shade, whereas at the spring equinox (g) the branches will be bare to allow sun to reach the windows; (h) at the winter solstice, most of the window is exposed to the sun. (Drawing c is courtesy of Virginia Cartwright. Courtesy of Equinox Design, Inc., and WEGroup, PC, Architects, Eugene, OR.)*

Applied to an entire typical bay,

$$DF_{av} = 0.2\ \frac{97\ \text{ft}^2\ \text{north} + 97\ \text{ft}^2\ \text{south} + 132\ \text{ft}^2\ \text{clerestory}}{1440\ \text{ft}^2}$$

$$= 0.45, \text{ or } 4.5\%$$

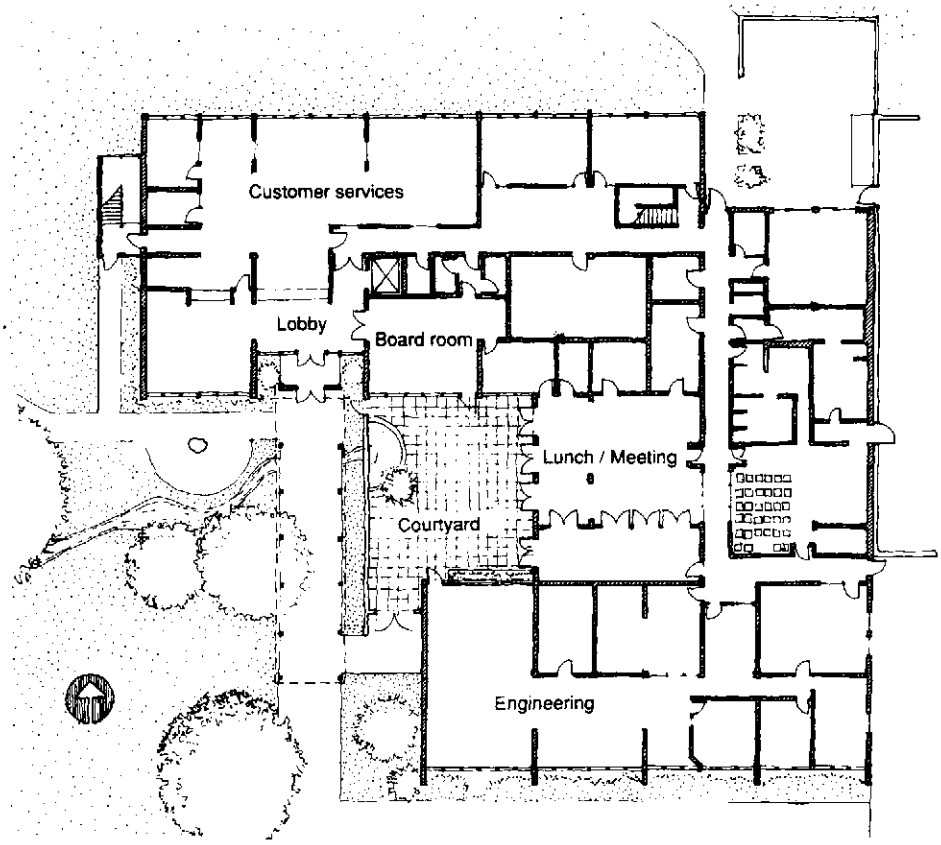
slightly above the target DF_{av} of 4.0%.

Note that in this example, DF_{min} from the sidelighting occurs near the center of the building, at about the point (on the second floor) where the most light is available from the skylight. Therefore, relatively even daylighting distribution is expected on the upper floor. This is helped by the use of light shelves and the T-shaped windows shown in Fig. 8.6*e*.

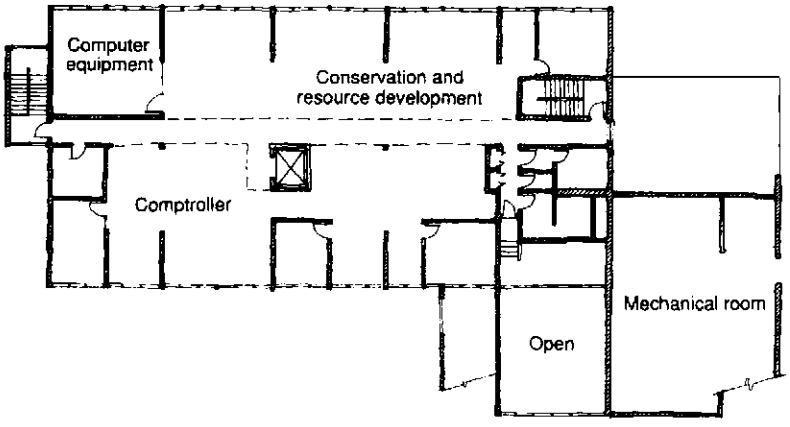
The seasonal window size question (more needed in winter, less in summer) was answered in this example by the use of deciduous vines outside the south windows. In winter and cool spring, the vines are bare of leaves. Warm weather brings leafy shade lasting well into the warm fall (Fig. 8.6*f*). ■

8.4 PASSIVE SOLAR HEATING GUIDELINES

When the building's function, climate, and site are favorable, winter solar gains can contribute greatly to a properly designed building. One of the first criteria to be considered is energy conservation; there is

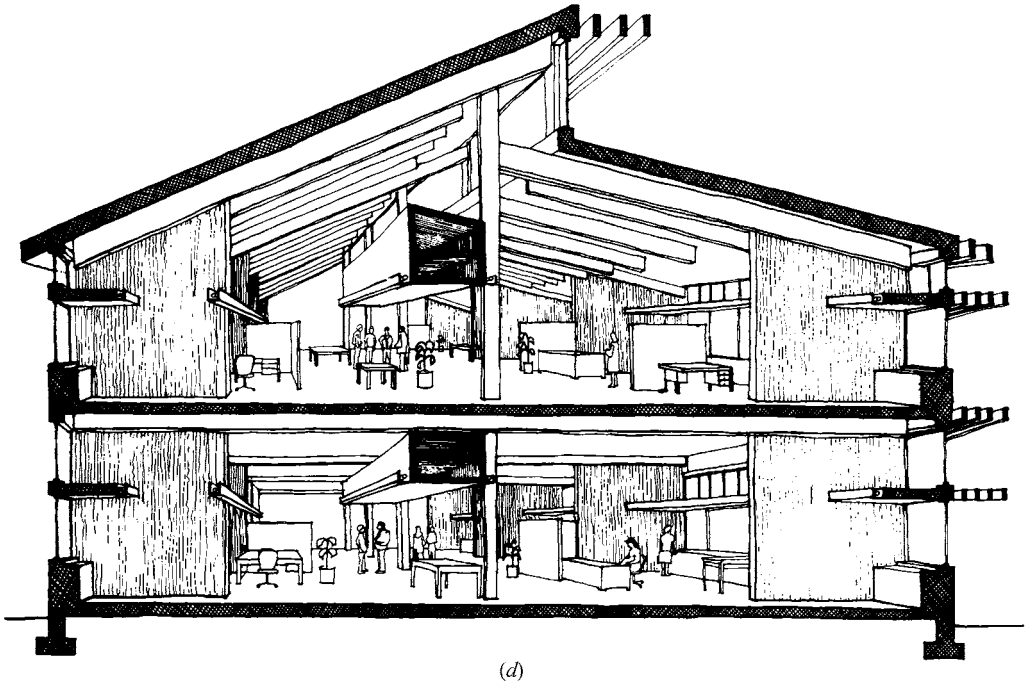


(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 8.6 *(Continued)*



(*d*)

Fig. 8.6 *(Continued)*

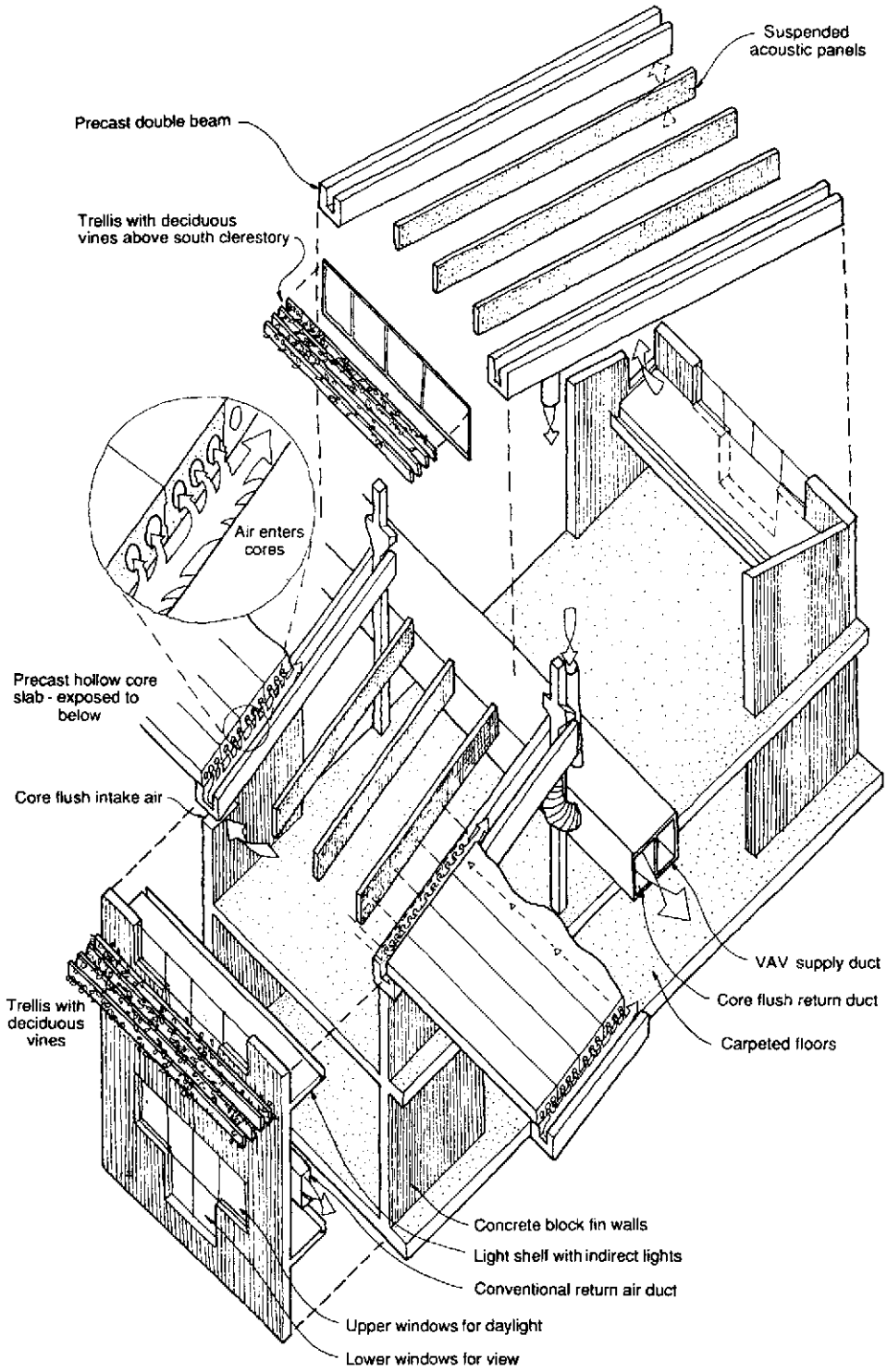
little benefit in pouring solar heat into a leaky building. For solar designers, the motto should be "Insulate before you insolate."

(a) Whole-Building Heat Loss Criteria

The recommended maximum rates of heat loss (in Btu per degree days [DD] per square foot) shown in Table 8.3 are the basis for development of the following passive solar heating guidelines. They are also useful as a quick check on overall envelope performance in residential or small commercial buildings. (Some states have adopted similar criteria as part of their building codes; be sure to check the applicable code before relying on these numbers for code compliance.) The heat loss rates are shown for two conditions:

1. *Conventional (nonpassively solar-heated) small buildings.* The overall rate of Btu/DD ft^2 is based on *total* heat loss, including all portions of the envelope *and* infiltration. To determine the whole-building heat loss rate, list for each envelope component (roof, walls, floor, windows, etc.) the U-factor (Chapter 7 and Appendix E) and the total exposed area *A*; then simply multiply U × A. (For slab floors on grade, see Chapter 7 for determining perimeter heat losses.) For the special cases of walls below grade, such as berm walls, an approximation is needed. During the coldest weather, the temperature outside such walls will nearly always be higher than the outdoor air temperature, so any procedure based on Btu/DD will *overpredict* the heat loss through these walls. As a result, designers often calculate the UA of below-grade walls by using their actual U-factor but using only *half* of their actual area; this lesser UA roughly compensates for the lesser Δt through these walls.

For infiltration, determine the number of air changes per hour (ACH) under winter design conditions and multiply this infiltration (or fresh air) rate



(e)

Fig. 8.6 (Continued)



(*f*)



(*g*)



(*h*)

Fig. 8.6 *(Continued)*

TABLE 8.2 Design Data for a Typical Second-Floor Bay of the Office Building (Fig. 8.6e)

Component of Envelope	U-Factor (Btu/h ft² °F)	Area (ft²)	U × A (Btu/h °F)
Floor Area (basis for guidelines)		1440	
Exposed to Outside			
Roof[a]	0.028	1512	42
Exterior opaque walls[b] (north and south)	0.084	296	25
North window[c]	0.74	97	72
Total for passive solar guidelines[d] UA_{ns}			
South window[c]	0.74	97	139
South clerestory[c]	0.74	132	
Total for passive solar guidelines A_p		229	
Interior Thermal Mass			
Roof underside		1512	
Bearing walls, beams and columns		720	
Total for passive heating and cooling		2232	
Ventilation			
Volume of enclosed space, 22,900 ft³			
Occupancy is eight persons			
Ventilation is provided at the rate of 20 cfm per person			
Openable window area: 16 ft² on north, 16 ft² on south			

[a]R-40 over precast slab. Assume corrected R-35; therefore, U = 0. 028.

[b]A 4-in. concrete block outside, 1-in. airspace, R-19 batt with metal studs at 24 in. and gypsum inside; approximate corrected R-11.9; therefore, U = 0.084.

[c]Clear double-glazed, 3/8-in. airspace, nonthermal break aluminum, U = 0.74.

[d]Passive solar heating calculations do not directly include losses from south-facing glass. Also, there is no floor heat loss or gain, because this is a second-floor space.

by a constant that accounts for density and specific heat:

$$\text{or} \quad \left.\begin{array}{l} \text{ACH (volume, m}^3) \times 0.33 = \\ \text{ACH (volume, ft}^3) \times 0.018 = \end{array}\right\} UA \text{ for infiltration}$$

Add the envelope UA values to those for infiltration, multiply by 24 h/day to account for DD, and divide by the building's total heated floor area:

$$\frac{(UA_{\text{envelope}} + UA_{\text{infiltration}}) \times 24\,\text{h}}{\text{total heated floor area (ft}^2)} = \text{Btu/DD ft}^2$$

2. *Passively solar-heated buildings.* Here the overall rate of Btu/DD ft² *excludes* the solar collecting portion(s) of the envelope; otherwise, it is based on total heat loss from all other portion(s) of the envelope, and it includes infiltration. The

TABLE 8.3 Overall Heat Loss Criteria for Solar Guidelines

Maximum Overall Heat Loss					
		Btu/DDF ft²		***W/DDK m²***	
Annual Heating Degree Days		**Conventional Buildings**	**Passively Solar-Heated Buildings, Excluding Solar Wall[a]**	**Conventional Buildings**	**Passively Solar-Heated Buildings, Excluding Solar Wall[a]**
(Base 65°F)	**(Base 18°C)**				
Less than 1000	Less than 556	9	7.6	51	43
1000–3000	556–1667	8	6.6	45	37
3000–5000	1667–2778	7	5.6	40	32
5000–7000	2778–3889	6	4.6	34	26
Over 7000	Over 3889	5	3.6	28	20

Source: Balcomb et al. (1980). SI conversions approximated by the authors of this book.

[a]The guidelines in Table F.1 assume a solar building that meets this criterion.

equation used to determine the overall solar building rate is as follows:

$$\frac{(UA_{\text{envelope, except south glass}} + UA_{\text{infiltration}}) \times 24\,\text{h}}{\text{total heated floor area (ft}^2\text{)}} = \text{Btu/DD ft}^2$$

One of the biggest unknowns in this procedure is the assumed rate of infiltration. A carefully designed and constructed small building can easily achieve a rate of 0.75 ACH; with increased attention to air barrier installation, caulking of all cracks, and so on, rates below 0.33 ACH have been demonstrated.

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART B Find the overall rate of heat loss, in Btu/DD ft^2, for the Oregon office building presented in Fig. 8.6.

SOLUTION

This office building is passively solar heated, so the overall rate of heat loss, in Btu/DD ft^2, is determined by using the total $U \times A$ of the non-south-glass envelope. From Table 8.2, this is 42 + 25 + 72 = 139 Btu/h °F.

To this must be added the effects of infiltration/ventilation. From the same table, outdoor air is shown to be supplied at the rate of

$$20\ \text{cfm/person} \times 8\ \text{persons} = 160\ \text{cfm}$$

which can also be expressed as 160 cfm × 60 min/h = 9600 cfh. Comparing this hourly rate to the volume of the typical bay, we have:

$$\frac{9600\ \text{ft}^3/\text{h}}{22{,}000\ \text{ft}^3} = 0.44\ \text{ACH}$$

The U × A for ventilation is therefore

$$0.44\ \text{ACH} \times 22{,}000\ \text{ft}^3 \times 0.018 = 174\ \text{Btu/h °F}$$

and the total rate of heat loss is

$$\frac{(139\ \text{Btu/h °F} + 174\ \text{Btu/h °F}) \times 24\ \text{h/day}}{1440\ \text{ft}^2} = 5.2\ \text{Btu/DD ft}^2$$

This building is located in Eugene, Oregon, which corresponds most closely to the location of Salem, Oregon, as listed in Table C.19, where we find DD65 in Salem = 4852 per year. From Table 8.3, the maximum recommended rate of heat loss for a passively solar-heated building in a 3000- to 5000-DD climate is 5.6 Btu/DD ft^2. This building's heat loss rate is under this maximum, thus enhancing energy conservation. ■

Passive solar heating and energy conservation have a complex relationship. Relative to conventional buildings, passively solar-heated buildings usually conserve purchased energy; yet, buildings that aim at very high percentages of solar heating can use more *total* heating energy than is used by buildings with smaller window areas. Designers interested primarily in saving purchased energy may aim at lower solar percentages and more insulation; designers interested in buildings that closely relate to climate and climatic changes may aim at higher solar percentages (and more daylighting), along with higher thermal masses and, probably, greater ranges of indoor temperature.

(b) Solar Savings Fraction (SSF)

The term *solar savings fraction* is used to express a building's solar heating performance. The SSF is the extent to which a solar design *reduces a building's auxiliary heat requirement* relative to a "reference" building—one that has, instead of a solar wall, an energy-neutral wall that experiences neither solar gain nor heat loss; otherwise, the solar building and the reference building are identical. The SSF compares the auxiliary energy needed by the solar building to the auxiliary energy needed by the reference building, as illustrated in Fig. 8.7. Remember that the SSF is *not* the percentage of the solar building's heat supplied by the sun; typically, the sun provides a much *higher* fraction of a building's total space heat than suggested by the SSF. Rather, the SSF is more a measure of the solar building's *conservation* advantage.

A starting point for passive solar preliminary design is Table F.1. For your location, both a range of SSF values and a range of ratios of areas of south glass/floor area can be determined. The table shows the SSF ranges for both "standard performance" (simple double-glazed windows) and "superior performance" (for either night-insulated or superwindow) solar openings. This same information is shown graphically for six geographically diverse locations in Fig. 8.8. (Add your own location's information from Table F.1 to a copy of this graph.)

The difference between standard and superior performance is explored in Fig. 8.9 for the

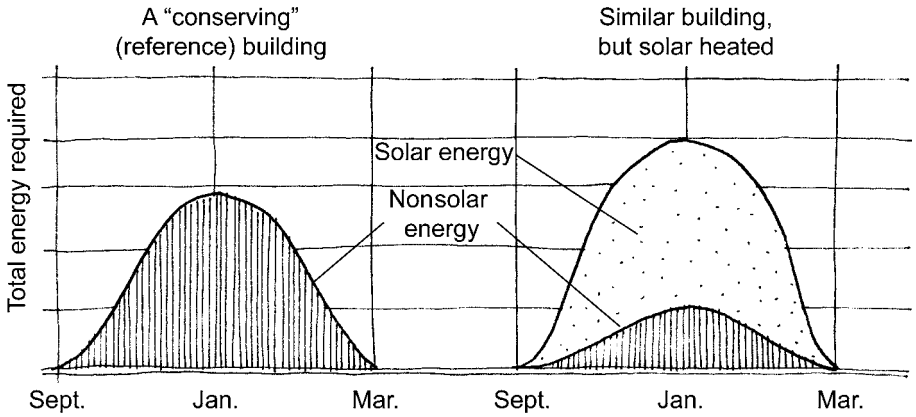


Fig. 8.7 *The solar savings fraction compares the auxiliary heat needed by solar-heated buildings to that needed by a nonsolar but energy-conserving building that is otherwise similar (called the "reference" building). For example, if the solar building needs 25 units of auxiliary (nonsolar) heat per year and the reference building needs 70 units, the difference is 70 – 25 = 45 units, or 64% of the reference 70 units. Therefore, SSF = 64%. (Note, however, that the solar building is 75% solar heated.) (From Brown, Reynolds, and Ubbelohde,* Inside Out: Design Procedures for Passive Environmental Technologies; *© 1982, John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Redrawn by Erik Winter.)*

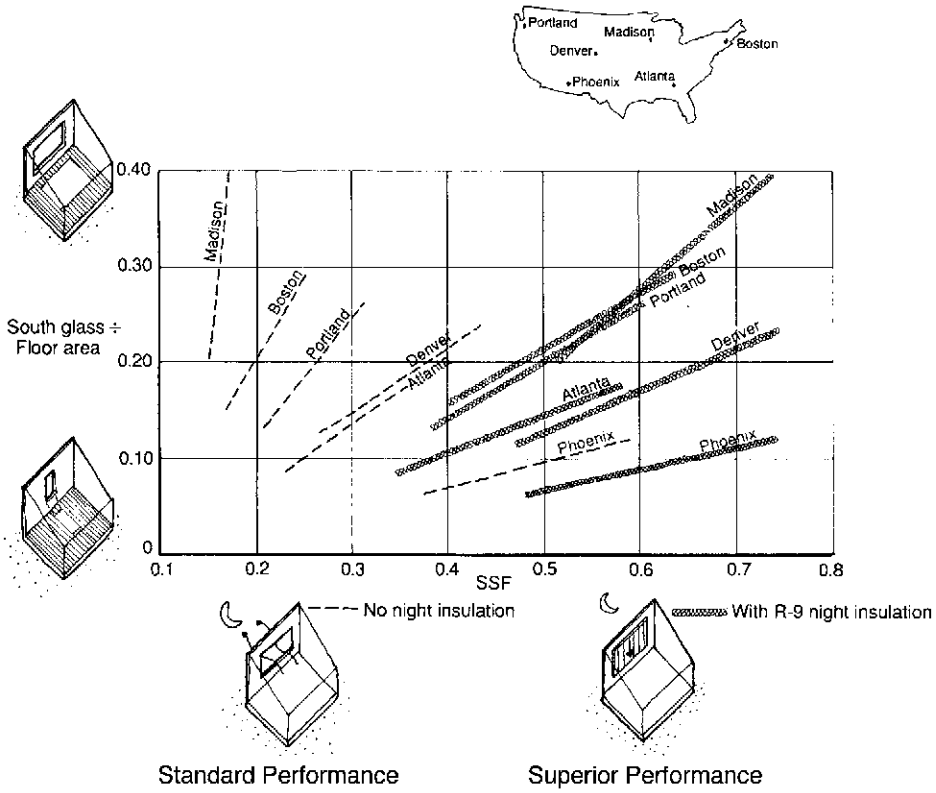


Fig. 8.8 *Design guidelines for passive solar heating: ratio of south glass to floor area. The information in Table F.1 is presented graphically for six U.S. cities. "No night insulation" = standard performance; "With R-9 night insulation" = superior performance.*

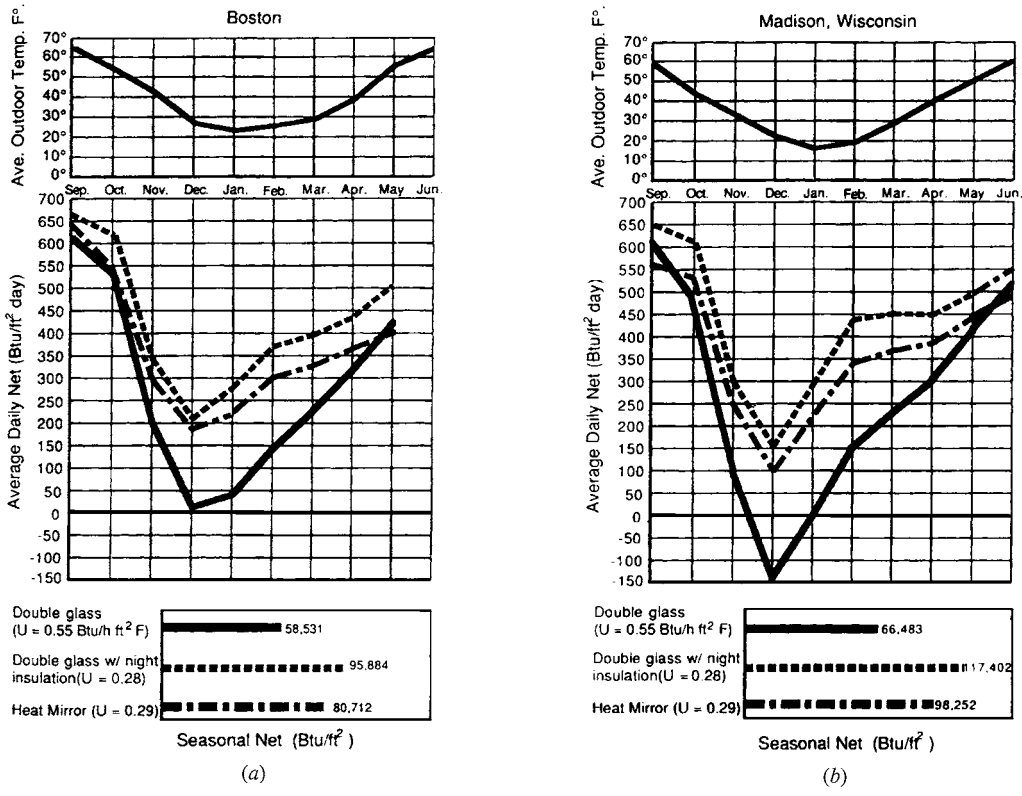


Fig. 8.9 *Average daily net heating, per square foot of south window, for three glazing assemblies in three climates. (a) In Boston, ordinary double glazing is a slight energy plus even in December. (b) In Madison, ordinary double glazing is a net loser for almost 2 months. (c) In Seattle, ordinary double glazing is a net loser for more than 2 months. (From Johnson, 1981.)*

September–June period in Boston, Madison, and Seattle. The solid line charts the lower performance of simple double glazing (listed as U = 0.55 Btu/h ft^2 °F). The other two higher-performance alternatives (movable insulation and superwindows) show why the newer superwindows have made movable insulation nearly obsolete: without the need for any actions by the user, superwindows have a higher net heat gain than movable insulation in all three locations.

(c) Thermal Mass

Another early design question involves the amount of thermal mass (area) necessary to store the solar heat admitted each day. This reveals the simplistic, early-design nature of Table F.1, because it does not distinguish between the various approaches to passive solar heating (*direct gain*, *indirect gain*, and

isolated gain, as discussed in Chapter 4). Table F.2 details the simple relationship between SSF and the area (also the weight) of water or masonry that should be provided in direct-gain designs.

The *distribution* of the thermal mass is also important, however. Indirect gain systems (Trombe wall and water wall systems) usually place the thermal mass in full sun for the entire day, often just inside the glazing. In direct-gain systems, this thermal mass should be within (or should enclose) the direct-gain heated space, and the exposed surface area of the mass should be *at least three times the glazing area*. Masonry surfaces are less thermally effective (on a daily basis) beyond a depth of about 4 to 6 in. (100 to 150 mm). Note that the thermal storage area is relatively unimportant at low SSF values, but as the SSF increases, so does the relative proportion of thermal mass area to solar glazing.

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART C Find the approximate SSF of a typical bay of the Oregon office building (Fig. 8.6).

SOLUTION

Standard performance windows (simple double-glazed) are used in this building, and the approximate SSF can be found from Table 8.2 (building data) and Table F.1 (SSF guidelines) as follows:

$$\frac{\text{south glass area } 97 \text{ ft}^2 + 132 \text{ ft}^2}{\text{floor area } 1440 \text{ ft}^2} = 0.16$$

For Salem, Oregon, with standard performance windows, a range of 0.12 to 0.24 for glass/floor ratio yields SSF 21 to 32%. So, with an actual ratio of 0.16, the approximate SSF is determined as follows:

Salem ratio range $0.24 - 0.12 = \Delta 0.12$
Salem SSF range $32\% - 21\% = \Delta 11\%$
(Actual ratio 0.16)
–(Salem minimum ratio 0.12) $= 0.04$,

$$\text{therefore} = \frac{0.04\,(\Delta 11\%)}{\Delta 0.12}$$

$= 3.7\%$, to be added to the minimum SSF;
Actual SSF = minimum 21% + 3.7% = 24.7%

This glass area/floor area ratio (0.16) is consistent with the previously calculated daylighting design considerations, although there is somewhat more south wall area that could be utilized for additional solar heat collection. (If more solar heat but not more daylight is desired, the additional collection area could be provided as a Trombe wall.)

Table F.2 shows that direct-gain thermal mass appropriate to SSF = 25% would be about 75 lb of masonry per square foot of south glass, or about 2 ft^2 of mass surface per square foot of south glass. From Table 8.2, the total exposed area of thermal mass in this typical bay is 2232 ft^2:

2232 ft^2 mass/229 ft^2 south glass
= almost 10 ft^2 mass/ft^2 glass

This is much more mass area than the minimum recommended. This excess of mass area will help prevent overheating on sunny winter days and contribute to thermal stability year-round. For a more detailed analysis of this building's SSF, see Example 8.1, Part H.

At this point, one must wonder why standard rather than superior performance windows were used. For Salem, the approximate SSF would have increased to about 44%, with more than adequate internal areas of thermal mass. The simple answer is that the client did not want movable insulation, and superwindows were not available at an attractive cost when the building was being designed. ■

Phase-change materials are an alternative to simple thermally massive masonry surfaces. Flat bags of eutectic salts are shown in Fig. 8.10. Thin, horizontal tiles packed with these phase-change materials can store great quantities of heat with the phase change from solid to liquid. This change can be formulated to occur in the low 70s °F (20s °C) to prevent overheating of the space. As flat tiles enclosing bags of salt, they can form the finished surface in any horizontal application—floors, ceilings, or counter- and tabletops, for example. Tubes and trays of salts can be arranged as desired. Because the function of these materials is to keep room temperatures steady, their performance in preventing overheating on a sunny winter day will also be appreciated on hot summer days, provided they are taken below the phase change or melting temperature at night. For U.S. locations with large daily temperature ranges in summer (see example mean daily range values in Appendix B), thermal storage surfaces for passive solar heating in winter are potentially useful for night ventilation cooling in summer.

As a preliminary guide, *the phase-change tile surface area = one to three times the area of solar opening.* Additional information on these materials can be found in Johnson (1981).

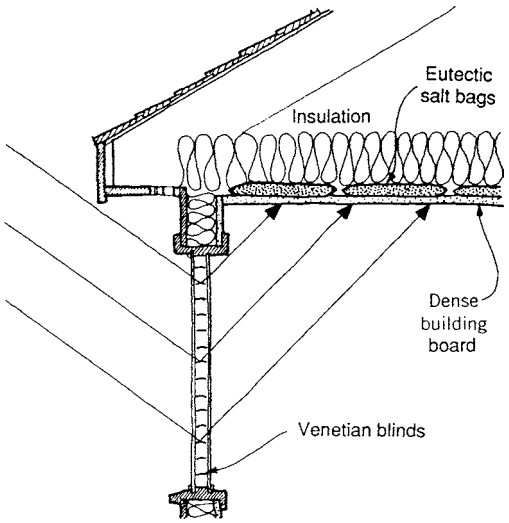


Fig. 8.10 *Using bags of phase-change material (eutectic salt) for thermal storage above a flat ceiling. Mirrored-surface venetian blinds reflect direct sun to the ceiling, where it strikes a heavy (at least 90 lb/ft^2 [440 kg/m^2]) board product with high conductivity. Metal ceilings or plaster are also suitable; ordinary gypsum board is not sufficiently conductive. Bags of salt weighing 5 lb/ft^2 (25 kg/m^2) are in contact with the ceiling material and must be installed in a horizontal position. They are usually formulated to melt between 70 and 75°F (21 and 24°C). (Adapted by permission from Johnson, 1981.)*

The Society for the Protection of New Hampshire Forests building utilizes phase-change storage above a metal ceiling (Fig. 8.11). It also uses water-filled tubes as an interior partition, masonry interior walls, and a concrete floor slab to help store the winter daily solar gain.

The New Canaan Nature Center (Fig. 8.12) is another innovative New England example using many passive/low-energy components. In addition to eutectic salts used in the south-facing railing on the upper level, the 4000-ft^2 (372-m^2) building utilizes extensive clear, double-glazed south glass, movable insulating shades, operable vents at the skylight for stack-effect ventilation, ceiling fans, a woodstove, solar collectors placed inside the skylight monitor (their water is used for warming planting beds), warm air heat recovery ducts, a well-insulated envelope, and even a rainwater collection system. The manually operated switches for ventilation, insulation, and shading represent an unusual degree of user–building interaction. There is also unusual attention to microclimates and the transition between inside and outside in this award-winning building.

Rock beds are sometimes used to store the excess heat that isolated-gain (sunspace) systems can generate. They are typically placed directly beneath a concrete floor slab. The disadvantage of this approach is that any below-grade location raises suspicions of condensation and/or groundwater that may facilitate mold growth, yet cleaning of the rock bed is difficult.

The general guidelines cited by Mazria (1979) are as follows:

Rock bed volume, ft^3, per ft^2 of solar opening

Cold climates: ¾ to 1½

Temperate climates: 1½ to 3

Rock bed surface area in contact with floor above

Cold climates: 75% to 100% of floor area above

Temperate climates: 50% to 75% of floor area above

(d) Orientation

How important is it that the passive solar opening face due south? The general recommendation is that this orientation be *within 30° of south*. In *The Passive Solar Design Handbook* (Balcomb et al., 1980), the average penalties for off-south orientation are listed as follows.

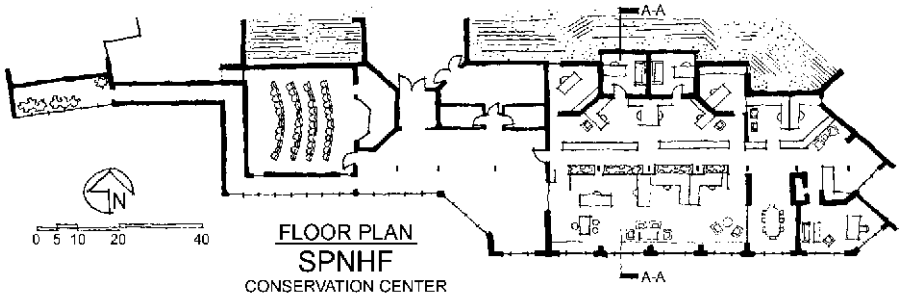
5% decrease in SSF at 18° east or 30° west of true south
10% decrease in SSF at 28° east or 40° west of true south
20% decrease in SSF at 42° east or 54° west of true south

See Section 8.10 for more detailed coverage of passive heating performance that distinguishes among direct, indirect, and isolated gain systems and includes the expected annual auxiliary energy needed by a passively solar-heated building.

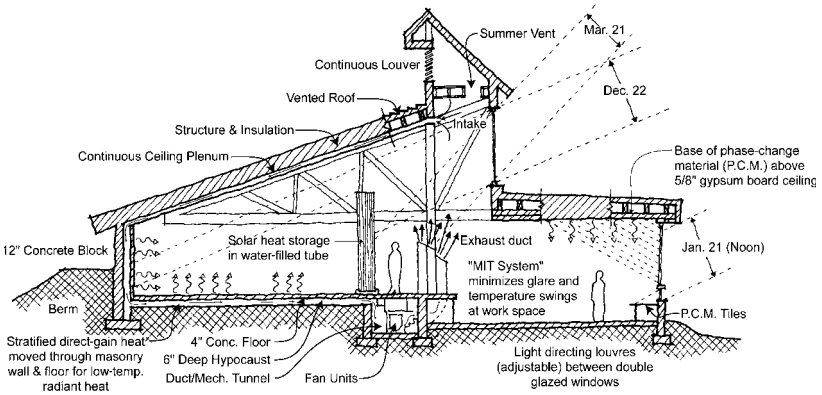
EXAMPLE 8.2 A small office building in Omaha, Nebraska, is to be passively solar heated. How much superwindow south glass area should be provided?

SOLUTION

Table F.1 shows that an Omaha building with a south glass area equal to 20% of its floor area can expect an SSF of 51 if its solar openings are superior performance.



(a)



(b)



(c)

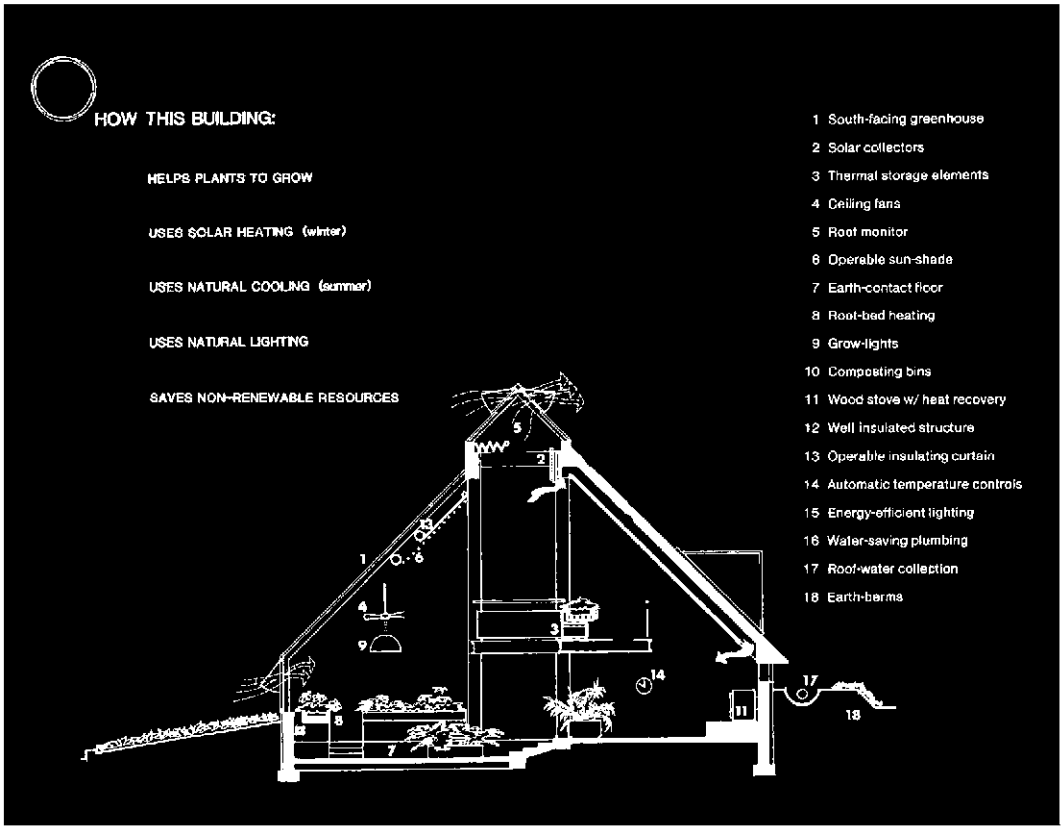
Fig. 8.11 *The Conservation Center for the Society for the Protection of New Hampshire Forests, Concord, Banwell White Arnold Hemberger & Partners, Architects. (a) The plan is elongated on the east–west axis to maximize southern exposure and facilitate daylighting. Direct gain serves the reception area, workroom, and offices, and a sunspace double envelope combination warms the lecture room. A wood-fired boiler provides backup heat. (b) Section with south glazing and thermal storage materials: translucent water tubes, masonry walls, and phase-change materials in ceiling and windowsill positions. The circulation of hot air that collects at the clerestory is also shown. In summer, the hot air is vented, and an awning shades the clerestory. Daylighting is diffused through translucent tubes to the spaces on the north side. (c) At the workroom, mirror-finish venetian blinds reflect direct sun to the phase-change materials in bags above the dark metal deck ceiling. (Drawings a and b by Jonathan Meendering after original works by Banwell White Arnold Hemberger & Partners, Architects; photo c by C. Stuart White, Jr.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 8.12 *The New Canaan (Connecticut) Nature Center (a, b) illustrates many passive and low-energy components. (c) Section illustrates the design features that utilize renewable energy and enhance energy conservation. The thermal storage elements are filled with eutectic salts that absorb excess solar heat via phase change (from solid to liquid) by day, then again change phase (from liquid to solid) at night to release their stored heat to the space. (Buchanan/Watson, Architects. Photo by Robert Perron. Courtesy of Donald Watson, FAIA, Troy, NY.)*

Select 20% of the floor area for south glass: SSF = 51. Thermal mass can be estimated from Table F.2; for SSF = 50, either 30 lb of water or 150 lb of masonry (per square foot of south glass) should be provided. Using brick as a thermally massive surface, 3.7 ft^2 of brick should be provided for each square foot of south glass. ■

(e) Roof Ponds

This is yet another approach to passive solar heating, one not covered by the preceding guidelines. In general, roof ponds are used in warmer, less humid areas of the southern United States, where snow will not impede the movement of roof insulating panels, and the winter sun is higher in the sky than at northern latitudes. They are frequently sized for their *summer cooling* performance. In the U.S. southern latitudes, a pond sized for cooling will usually be adequate to absorb the needed winter sun. As a check for the pond's heating capacity, Mazria (1979) recommends the following guidelines:

Roof pond area = 85% to 100% of floor area for winter average outdoor temperatures of 25°F to 35°F (–4°C to +2°C)

Roof pond area = 60% to 90% of floor area for winter average outdoor temperatures of 35°F to 45°F (2°C to 7°C)

These guidelines are for roof ponds that have two layers of enclosing material between the water and the sky (i.e., are "double-glazed") and movable night insulation.

(f) Active Solar Heating

In contrast to passive systems, which incorporate sun collection and storage as part of a building's walls, floors, or ceilings, active solar heating uses mechanical equipment to collect and store solar energy. The most common early design questions for such systems involve the area of the solar collectors, their tilt and azimuth, and the size of the thermal storage. (Domestic hot water [DHW] solar heating information is given in Chapter 21.)

For active solar space-heating systems, the rules of thumb are reasonably complex. Building heating needs vary by function and climate. The percentage of space heating that can economically be provided with active solar systems is another big variable. Nevertheless, a rough guide is desirable as a design starting point:

Collector/floor area ratio = the smaller of the two window/floor area ratios listed in Table F.1

This should provide a portion of the annual heating load somewhere in the range of high-performance SSF from Table F.1. Larger arrays of collectors can be designed, of course, but they rarely will be economically attractive.

For collector tilt and azimuth optima:

Optimum tilt = latitude plus 10° to 15°; optimum azimuth is from due south to 15° W of south

where the tilt angle is measured up from horizontal. The orientation somewhat west of south is attractive in climates with frequent morning fog. Also, because air temperatures are higher in the afternoon, collectors lose less heat then and therefore operate more efficiently.

The design guidelines for storage size are as follows:

2 gal of water storage per ft^2 (81 L per m^2) of collector

or

0.5 to 0.75 ft^3 of rock bed per ft^2 (0.15 to 0.23 m^3 per m^2) of collector

The large arrays of collectors necessary for space heating must be served by pipes or ducts. Whereas pipe size rarely influences design, air ducts for air-type collectors can consume fairly large amounts of space. The following flow rates are typical for active solar collectors:

water flow rate of 0.25 to 0.5 gpm per ft^2 (0.17 to 0.34 L/s per m^2) of collector

or

airflow rate of 2 cfm per ft^2 (10 L/s per m^2) of collector

Approximate pipe sizes can be determined from Chapter 21, and approximate duct sizing is shown in Chapter 10.

8.5 SUMMER HEAT GAIN GUIDELINES

Design guidelines for cooling are complicated by the fact that cooling loads frequently are more closely

related to individual building characteristics than to climate; sunshading and internal heat gains are particularly influential on cooling loads. Because passive cooling guidelines (Section 8.6) are expressed in heat to be removed per unit of floor area, it is first necessary to estimate the extent of the heat gain problem. Later (in Section 8.13), more detailed passive cooling procedures are shown. A comparison of the guidelines with these more detailed procedures is given in Table 8.4.

Detailed calculations for heat gain are presented in Sections 8.11 and 8.13. For now, Table F.3 gives a quick *approximation*. Many buildings (restaurants, factories, stores selling heating appliances, etc.) have special heat sources within. For these unusually heat-loaded situations, Table F.3 will be inadequate. As a starting point for preliminary passive-cooling sizing for typical buildings, however, it should be helpful. Climate information is available from a variety of sources, including the *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* (extensively updated climate data produced by a recently completed research project was included in electronic format in the 2005 edition) and ASHRAE *Standard*

TABLE 8.4 Comparing Passive Cooling Design Guidelines with Detailed Calculation Procedures

Design Guideline	Detailed Analysis Procedure
PART A. CROSS-VENTILATION	
Section 8.6(a) • Assume 3F° [1.67C°] Δt • Assume window orientation to wind	*Section 8.14(a)* • Use actual Δt • Use actual window orientation to wind
PART B. STACK VENTILATION	
Section 8.6(b) • Assume 3F° (1.67C°) Δt	*Section 8.14(b)* • Use actual Δt
PART C. NIGHT VENTILATION OF THERMAL MASS	
Section 8.6(c) • Assume ratio of mass area/floor area • Assume cooling during hour of max. Δt • Assume max. Δt for natural ventilation estimation • Find total cooling and required airflow rate	*Section 8.14(c)* • Use actual exposed mass area • Use actual mass heat capacity • Use actual hourly chart of air and mass temperatures
PART D. EVAPORATIVE COOLING (ACTIVE)	
Section 8.6(d) • Assume 2.67 cfm/ft^2 floor area • Assume 83°F exhaust air • Find allowable Δt as air passes through indoors • Then cfm = (Btu/h)/(1.1)(Δt)	*Section 8.14(d)* • Use actual outdoor temperature • Find actual indoor supply temperature
PART E. COOLTOWERS (PASSIVE, EVAPORATIVE)	
Section 8.6(e) • Find approximate exit air temperature • Find approximate flow rate • Then Btu/h = (cfm) (1.1)(Δt)	*Section 8.14(e)* • Use actual outdoor temperature and wet-bulb depression • Find actual exit air (supply) temperature • Find actual exit airflow rate • Then Btu/h = (cfm)(1.1)(Δt)
PART F. ROOF PONDS	
Section 8.6(f) • Assume pond max. temperature of 80°F • Estimate pond minimum temperature • Assume 30% gain through roof insulation • Assume pond depth from 3 in. to 6 in. • Find area of pond	*Section 8.14(f)* • Actual outdoor temperature, resulting pond temperature • Actual heat gain through roof insulation • Actual hours of internal heat gains • Choice of fan-forced or still-air layer at ceiling • Evaporation or not on upper pond surface • Find actual pond depth and area • Find size of backup cooling
PART G. EARTH TUBES	
Section 8.6(g) • Assume 65°F soil temperature • Assume soil conductivity • Does not specify depth • Assume 85°F outdoor air • Assume 500 fpm velocity • Choose diameter and length to match cooling load	*Section 8.14(g)* • Actual underground temperature; assume resulting tube temperature is within 4F° • Actual soil conductivity • Actual depth • Actual outdoor air temperature • Actual or assumed velocity • Calculate actual cooling

90.1-2007. The data in these two sources are derived from different approaches. Updated (2005) climate information for various U.S., Canadian, and Mexican locations is included in Appendices B.1–B.4. For some of the example problems that follow, climate data referenced to Appendix B.5 are indicated (these are legacy data for locations not available in the 2005 data set). Notations herein to Tables B.1–B.5 refer to Appendix B.

Note that "open" buildings, such as those that are naturally ventilated, do not have heat gains from infiltration, because they assumedly maintain internal temperatures that are slightly *above* exterior temperatures (and air leakage would cool). However, these buildings do experience heat gains through windows, walls, and roofs due to solar impacts on these surfaces. For "closed" buildings, heat gain from infiltration or ventilation must be added, because these structures maintain internal temperatures lower than outside temperatures.

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART D Find the approximate heat gain for the Oregon office building in Fig. 8.6.

SOLUTION

From Table F.3:

A. People and equipment (using the high end for European office buildings, based on assumptions about computer use) 5.8 Btu/h ft^2

B. Electric lighting (with a 4% DF from Example 8.1, Part A; this procedure assumes that most electric lighting is off when daylight is available) 0.5 Btu/h ft^2

C. Envelope (Eugene's design temperature, from Table B.5, is 89°F)

South glass, shaded by vines:

$$\frac{(97\ \text{ft}^2 + 132\ \text{ft}^2) \times 16}{1440\ \text{ft}^2} \quad 2.54\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2$$

North glass, unshaded (Table F.6 Part B; regular double glass, venetian blinds):

$$\frac{97\ \text{ft}^2 \times 14\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2}{1440\ \text{ft}^2} \quad 0.94\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2$$

Walls:

$$\frac{296\ \text{ft}^2 \times 0.084\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2\text{°F} \times 15}{1440\ \text{ft}^2} \quad 0.26\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2$$

Roof:

$$\frac{1512\ \text{ft}^2 \times 0.028\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2\ \text{°F} \times 35}{1440\ \text{ft}^2} \quad 1.03\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2$$

D. Total heat gains, internal and through building skin: 11.07 Btu/h ft^2

E. Heat gains from ventilation:

$$\frac{20\ \text{cfm/person} \times 8\ \text{persons} \times 16}{1440\ \text{ft}^2} \quad 1.8\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2$$

Total approximate heat gains: 12.87 Btu/h ft^2 ■

8.6 PASSIVE COOLING GUIDELINES

The design guidelines for passive cooling are much newer and less tested than those for passive heating. It is important that the designer *first* check the match between the climate and the cooling strategy, as was done in Chapter 4, before applying these guidelines to a building design.

(a) Cross-Ventilation

One of the oldest methods known, this strategy provides plentiful fresh air but maintains a building at temperatures slightly *above* those outdoors. The cross-ventilation inlet (window) areas, expressed as percentage of total floor area, are related to wind speed and resulting heat removal in Fig. 8.13. Remember that *an equal* (*or greater*) *area of outlet openings* must also be provided. Furthermore, any internal obstructions (such as partitions) must have a total area of openings at least equal to this required inlet area. The assumptions about wind direction and indoor–outdoor temperature differences that were used to produce these guidelines are explained in the figure. For more detailed wind speed and direction information, see Section 8.14.

The Δt of 3F° used in Fig. 8.13 is deliberately kept small to encourage open strategies in milder summer climates. Thus, an interior temperature of 83°F, which is comfortable with sufficient air motion, lower RH, and comfortable surface temperatures, would be obtainable with an outside temperature of 80°F. However, a greater Δt is often appropriate—for example, for spring or fall cooling of office buildings, or for summer cooling of factories or kitchens where internal temperatures may

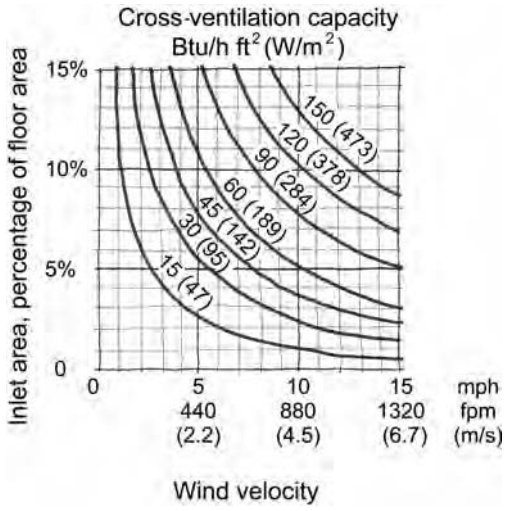


Fig. 8.13 *Cross-ventilation design guidelines for heat removed per unit floor area and relationship of inlet openings and wind speed. The total inlet opening area is expressed as a percentage of the total floor area served by cross-ventilation. Note: Outlet areas must also be at least equal to inlet areas. This graph is based on an internal temperature 3F° (1.7C°) above the exterior temperature and assumes that the wind is not quite perpendicular to the window openings, for a wind effectiveness factor of 0.4 (see Section 8.14). (Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

remain in the low 90s. In such cases, find the percentage of inlet area required; then multiply by the ratio

$$\frac{3F^\circ}{\text{actual } \Delta t}$$

to obtain required cross-ventilation areas for any specific temperature difference (see Example 8.1, Part E).

See Table 8.4 for a comparison of these design guidelines with the more detailed calculations of Section 8.14 for both cross- and stack ventilation.

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART E Find the required inlet areas for cross-ventilation of a typical bay of the office building in Fig. 8.6.

SOLUTION

This office building is located in Eugene, Oregon, whose monthly average wind velocities may be obtained from NOAA Local Climatological Data. For July, the hottest month, the average wind velocity is about 8 mph from a nearly due-north average direction. From Table 8.2 the inlet area (= outlet area also in this case) is 16 ft^2. The inlet area, as a percentage of floor area, is therefore

$$16 \text{ ft}^2/1440 \text{ ft}^2 = 1\%$$

Entering Fig. 8.13 with 8-mph wind velocity and 1% inlet area, we find that somewhat less than 15 Btu/h ft^2 heat gain can be removed by cross-ventilation. In Example 8.1, Part D, we approximated a heat gain (excluding ventilation) of about 11 Btu/h ft^2. Therefore, under average July conditions, the window area is probably adequate to remove heat gains and maintain an indoor temperature 3F° *above* the outdoor temperature.

Eugene's average July daily high is 83°F. This would produce an interior daily high of 86°F. Such a temperature would require somewhat more than minimum air motion in order for occupants to feel comfortable. At Eugene's summer *design* temperature of 89°F, the interior temperature would be 92°F. For these reasons this building was designed to be night ventilated, relying on thermal mass rather than on cross-ventilation for hot-day comfort.

In milder weather, these windows can achieve substantial cooling because the temperature difference, Δt, is more than the 3F° assumed in Fig. 8.13. For example, when the temperature indoors is 75°F, outdoors 65°F, the fully opened windows with the 8-mph wind would result in a cooling rate of

$$\frac{\text{about 15 Btu/h ft}^2 \times 10F^\circ}{3F^\circ} = \text{about 50 Btu/h ft}^2$$

which is considerably more than the actual gain of 11 Btu/h ft^2. Therefore, under such conditions, the windows are only partially opened. ■

(b) Stack Ventilation

This is another historically useful strategy, which, like cross-ventilation, provides plentiful fresh air but maintains a building at temperatures slightly *above* outdoor temperatures. The stack inlet areas, expressed as percentage of total floor area, are related to stack height and the resulting heat removal in Fig. 8.14. Remember that *an equal* (*or greater*) *area of stack outlet openings, as well as at least an equal cross-sectional area through the vertical stack*, is also required. Again, consider internal obstructions: partitions must have a total of openings at least equal to this required inlet area. The assumptions about indoor-outdoor temperature differences that were used to produce this guideline are explained in the figure.

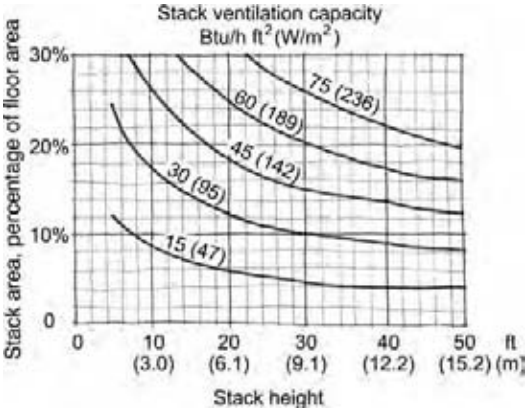


Fig. 8.14 *Stack ventilation design guidelines for heat removed per unit floor area and the relationship of stack height and inlet openings. The area of stack inlet/throat/outlet is expressed as a percentage of the total floor area served by stack ventilation. Note: Outlet areas and the stack throat area must also be at least equal to inlet areas. This graph is based on an internal temperature of 83°F and an exterior temperature 80°F, for a 3F° differential (28.3°C internal, 26.7°C external, for a 1.6C° differential). (Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

Adjustment of the Δt for this guideline is similar to the procedure for cross-ventilation. It requires multiplication of the required percentage of stack area by the ratio

$$\frac{3°F}{\text{actual } \Delta t}$$

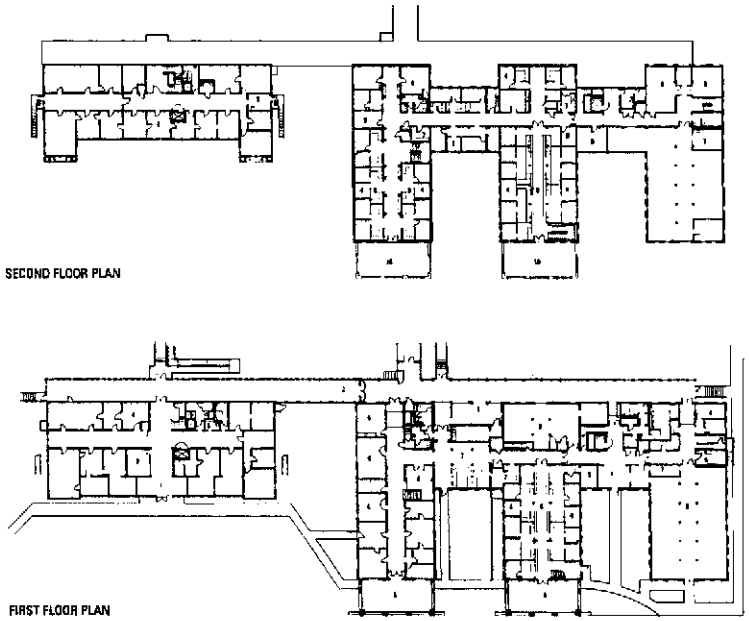
to obtain the required stack ventilation areas for any other specific temperature difference.

Until the advent of air conditioning, these methods of cross- and stack ventilation were used in virtually all commercial buildings. In some climates with mild summers, newer buildings are turning to these older methods (refer to Fig. 8.46). Figure 8.15 shows the Thoreau Center for Sustainability in San Francisco's Presidio National Park. An older military hospital was renovated for offices for nonprofit environmental organizations. To maximize daylighting and passive cooling, the original operable windows are utilized. Interior partitions are kept low enough to facilitate cross-ventilation, with integral indirect electric lighting using the high white ceiling. The section indicates that both cross-ventilation and stack effect are anticipated. However, the stack openings to the attic and, subsequently, through the roof are less than 1% of the total floor area. The most likely benefit of the stack effect here is to keep the attic at cooler summer temperatures (with air drawn in at the eave vents, not flowing outward as shown).



(*a*)

Fig. 8.15 *The Thoreau Center for Sustainability occupies renovated hospital buildings (a) in San Francisco's Presidio National Park. (b) Relatively narrow floor plans facilitate daylighting and natural ventilation. (c) Interior at the center corridor. (d) Section illustrates daylighting and cross-ventilation. Very small stack openings relative to the floor area served limit the stack effect to a minor role. (Drawings courtesy of Tanner Leddy Maytum Stacy Architects, San Francisco.)*



(*b*)

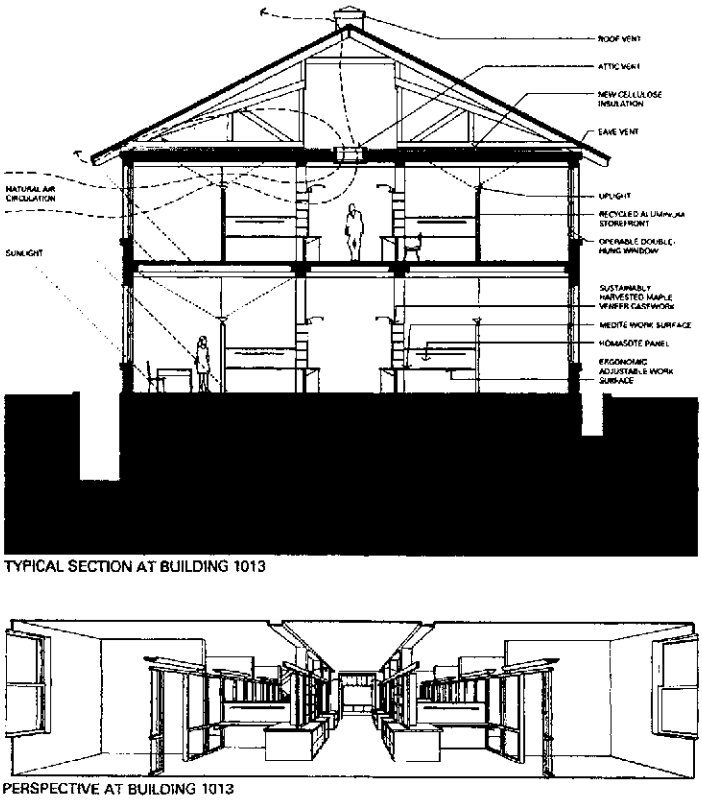


(*c*)

Fig. 8.15 *(Continued)*

(c) Night Ventilation of Thermal Mass

This strategy maintains a building at temperatures lower than those outside by day and flushes the building with plentiful fresh air by night. The sizing procedure is shown in Fig. 8.16, where climate data are related to two representative types of thermally massive building. For each type, the graphs show the *daily* Btu per square foot of floor area that can be stored. The "average" mass building is represented by a building with an exposed concrete floor 4 in. (100 mm) thick (or an exposed ceiling of equivalent construction). There is one unit area of exposed mass for each unit floor area. The "high" mass building is similar to the typical passively solar-heated, direct-gain building or to



(*d*)

Fig. 8.15 *(Continued)*

a multistory building with an exposed concrete structure, in which *both sides* of the floor slab are available for thermal storage, or an equivalent exposed mass area in walls, and so on. For this building, there are two units of exposed mass for each unit of floor area.

The climate data needed for Fig. 8.16 (maximum summer design DB temperature and mean daily range) are given in Appendices B.1 through B.5. These data also allow calculation of the *minimum* summer design DB temperature; that is, maximum design DB temperature minus mean daily range. This minimum temperature is of interest here because the thermal mass of the building will be lowered toward (but not quite to) it during night ventilation. For high daily range climates, the lowest temperature obtained by the thermal mass will be *about one-fourth of the mean daily range above the minimum air temperature* (for lower daily range climates—30F° or less—*one-fifth* of the mean daily range).

EXAMPLE 8.3 Compare the potential for night ventilation of mass in Sacramento, California, and Oklahoma City, Oklahoma.

SOLUTION

Sacramento, California:

Highest DB = 94.8°F (Table B.1)
Mean daily range = 31.9F° (Table B.1)
Lowest DB = 94.8 – 31.9 = 62.9°F

Approximate lowest mass temperature: 1/4 of 31.9 = 8F°; 63 + 8 = 71°F

Oklahoma City, Oklahoma:

Highest DB = 94.5°F
Mean daily range = 19.9F°
Lowest DB = 95 – 19.9 = 75.1°F

Approximate lowest mass temperature: 1/5 of 19.9 = 4F°; 75 + 4 = 79°F

From these data, it appears that Sacramento, with a comfortably low 71°F mass temperature, is a likely site

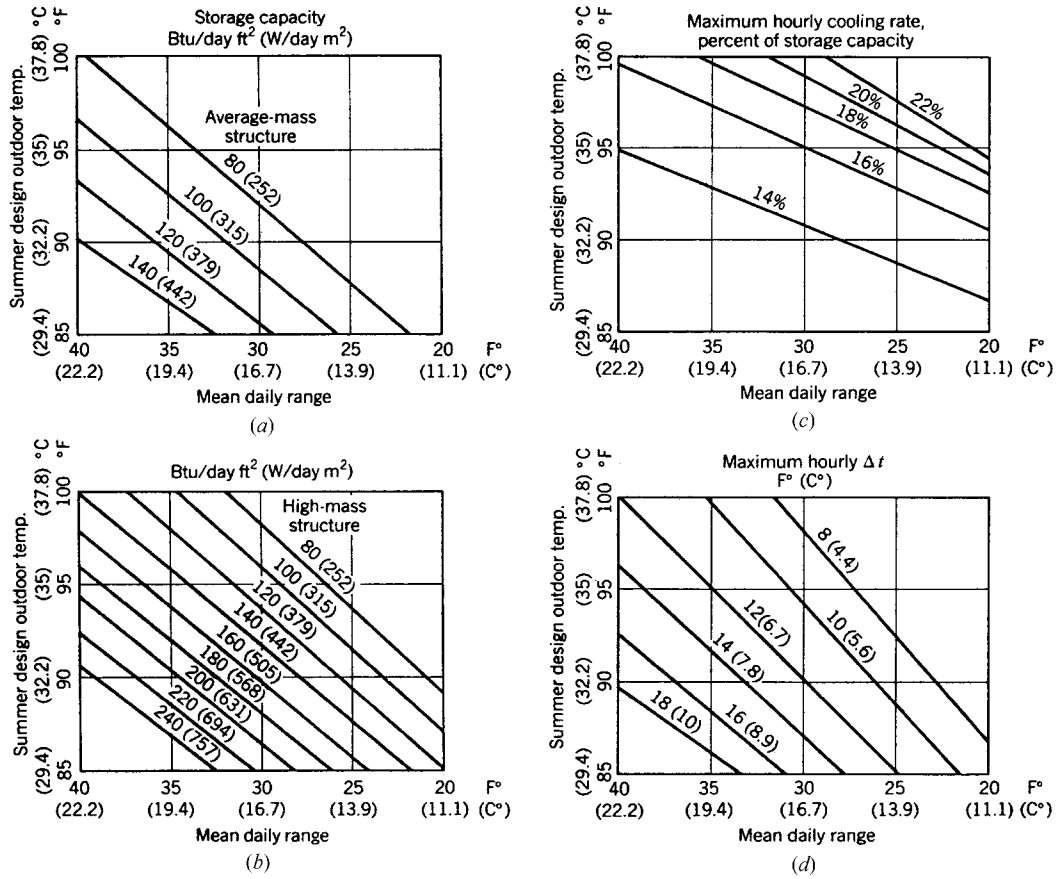


Fig. 8.16 *Night ventilation of thermal mass design guidelines. Parts (a) and (b) show Btu/day stored and removed per ft² of floor area (W/day per m² of floor area). Enter these graphs with your location's summer design outdoor DB temperature and the MDR (mean daily range). (a) "Average mass" structure has one unit area of mass surface exposed per unit area of floor area, where the mass is a 4-in. (100-mm) ordinary-density concrete slab. (b) "High-mass structure" has two units areas of mass surface exposed per unit area of floor area, where the mass is a 3-in. (75-mm) ordinary-density concrete slab (or both sides of a 6-in. [150-mm] concrete wall or slab exposed). Both average- and high-mass structures go into "open" mode when the outdoor temperature drops below 80°F (26.7°C); therefore, the highest mass temperature is assumed to be 80°F (26.7°C). Part (c) shows the approximate percentage of the daily total heat stored that is removed during the nighttime hour of maximum cooling. Part (d) shows the Δt between the outside air and inside mass that exists during that hour of maximum cooling. Required ventilation rates can then be determined from (c) and (d).*

for night ventilation to remove heat stored in the building's mass. However, Oklahoma City's 78.6°F lowest mass temperature is at the middle of the comfort zone, suggesting a climate in which this passive strategy will be harder to achieve. In either location, performance studies can best be carried out with the details of this mass cooling procedure, found in Section 8.14.

We can also compare the daily heat removed. For a high-mass building, from Fig. 8.16*b*:

Sacramento (DB = 94.8°F, MDR = 31.9F°) storage is somewhat more than 100 Btu/ft² day.

Oklahoma City (DB = 94.5°F, MDR = 19.9F°) storage is much less than 80 Btu/ft² day. ■

Before this information can be fully utilized, the number of hours for which the building must be "closed" must be determined. During these hours, heat will be stored in the structure, up to the maximum storage indicated in Fig. 8.16. Typically, these buildings will go into the thermally closed mode (allowing minimum ventilation only) at about 6:00 A.M. for a day with 100°F maximum or about 8:00 A.M. for a day with 85°F maximum, remaining in the closed mode until the outdoor temperature drops below 80°F. (To approximate this hour, assume that the midpoint outdoor temperature, between daily high and daily low, occurs at around

10:00 P.M.) Thus, the typical office building remains thermally closed during the 8 or 9 hours of summer occupancy. All the heat generated during the closed mode—8 to 9 daytime hours—must be stored in the structure:

Heat to be stored/ft^2 floor area
= hours occupied in closed mode
× heat gain, Btu/h ft^2 floor (from Table F.3)

Having found the amount of heat that can be stored each day, the designer must then solve the problem of removing the heat by night. Either natural or forced ventilation can be used, but in many locations wind speed is very low on summer nights. The ventilation rate is determined by the "best hour" of cooling during the night, that is, the hour during which the temperature difference, Δt, between inside mass and outside air is greatest, and hence the most heat is removed. This "best hour" information can be found in Fig. 8.16*c* and Fig. 8.16*d*. Then the cross- or stack ventilation rules of thumb can be used to size the openings.

See Table 8.4 for a comparison of these guidelines and more detailed calculation procedures for night ventilation of thermal mass.

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART F Find the potential for night ventilation of mass in the office building in Fig. 8.6.

SOLUTION

For Eugene, Oregon, from Table B.5, the summer design temperature is 89°F and the MDR is 31F°. From Table 8.2, the typical bay has a ratio of exposed thermal mass/floor area of

$$\frac{1512 \text{ ft}^2 + 720 \text{ ft}^2}{1440 \text{ ft}^2} = 1.55$$

which places this example halfway between average mass (ratio 1.0) and high mass (ratio 2.0). Entering Fig. 8.16*a*, with Eugene's climate data, we find that an average-mass building can store about 100 Btu/ft^2 day, whereas a high-mass building (Fig. 8.16*b*) can store about 170 Btu/ft^2 day. This building can therefore store about 135 Btu/ft^2 day.

Assuming a 9-hour typical working day (including the noon hour), at the average approximate heat gain rate of 13 Btu/h ft^2 (Example 8.1, Part D), the daily heat gain in this building is 9 h × 13 Btu/h ft^2 = 117 Btu/ft^2 day. This average heat gain is less than the storage capacity of 135 Btu/ft^2 day, so the building should perform satisfactorily with this method of cooling.

Although this building was designed for nighttime forced ventilation because of calm summer nights, we will check to see whether the operable windows are adequate for natural night cross-ventilation. In Fig. 8.16*c*, we find that during the hour of maximum night cooling, somewhat less than 14% of the total stored heat gains must be removed:

$$14\% \times 117 \text{ Btu/ft}^2 \text{ day} = 16 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

From Fig. 8.16*d*, the resulting maximum hourly Δt is about 13F°.

In Example 8.1, Part E, we determine that less than 15 Btu/h ft^2 would be removed by cross-ventilation under average July conditions at a 3F° Δt. Because during this hour of maximum cooling the indoor–outdoor Δt is 13F°, cross-ventilation could remove

$$\left(\frac{13\text{F°}}{3\text{F°}}\right) \times 15 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2 = 65 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

Cross-ventilation by night appears feasible for this building, because excess stored heat could be removed during this hour of maximum cooling. Unfortunately, Eugene's summer nighttime average wind velocity is nearly zero. Forced ventilation was therefore chosen. This also allows a thorough flushing of all interior mass surfaces with cool air.

The rate of forced ventilation during the hour of maximum cooling can be estimated from

$$V = \frac{q_v \times 60 \text{ min/h}}{(1.1 \text{ Btu min/ft}^3 \text{ F° h})(\Delta t)}$$

Expressed per square foot floor area in this building,

$$16 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2 = V \text{ cfh } [0.018 \text{ Btu min/ft}^3 \text{ °F h}] \, 13\text{F°}$$

$$V = \frac{16}{0.018 \times 13}$$

$$= 68.4 \text{ cfh outdoor air/ft}^2 \text{ floor area}$$

This rate of forced outdoor air ventilation produces the following air change with average ceiling height at 15.3 ft:

$$\frac{68.4 \text{ cfh/ft}^2 \text{ floor}}{15.3 \text{ ft}^3/\text{ft}^2, \text{ for 1 AC}} = 4.47 \text{ ACH}$$

a rate considerably greater than that required for minimum outdoor air per person by day. This promises an attractive indoor air quality by the next morning. ■

The administration building for the Fetzer Winery sits among grapevines in northern California's

Mendocino Valley (Fig. 8.17). The summer design condition is approximately 96/68, with MDR 30F° (35.6/20, MDR 16.7C°). As an average-mass structure, this building could store and remove about 60 Btu/ft^2 day (190 W/m^2 day); as a high-mass structure, it could store and remove about 100 Btu/ft^2 day (315 W/m^2 day).

(d) Evaporative Cooling

The most common evaporative cooler is not strictly passive cooling, as it depends on a fan to force large quantities of outdoor air through a wet filter, thereby lowering the air's temperature and raising its RH before delivering the air to the space to be cooled. In hot and arid climates, the energy used by the fan in evaporative systems is less than the energy needed to achieve conventional cooling based on the compressive refrigeration cycle. Although this process requires quantities of water, it does not use refrigerants that may pose a threat to the Earth's environment.

Before using these guidelines, be sure to check the cooling strategy chart in Chapter 4 to determine whether evaporative cooling is appropriate for your climate. It is unlikely that evaporative cooling will be helpful in the humid southeastern United States.

The rates of evaporative cooling presented in Fig. 8.18 are based upon a rather high airflow of 2.67 cfm per ft^2 of floor area. (In conventional cooling, an airflow rate closer to 1 cfm per ft^2 is more common.) With this amount of air motion, a highest indoor air temperature of 83°F is assumed; so the evaporatively cooled air, after absorbing heat from the space, exits at 83°F. (Note: this may still be well below the outdoor temperature: might it do some useful cooling?) To use Fig. 8.18, first find in Table B.1 the summer design DB and mean coincident WB temperatures for your location. Enter the graph at these two data points, and at their intersection find the approximate amount of heat in Btu/h ft^2 that evaporative cooling can remove. As WB temperatures surpass 68°F (represented by dotted lines in the graph), indoor conditions become increasingly humid, producing almost certain discomfort with an indoor WB temperature of 75°F.

A more thorough method for evaluating evaporative cooling potential is presented in Section 8.14, where various airflow rates and temperatures of supply air and exit air can be examined. See Table 8.4 for a comparison of this guideline and the more thorough method.

EXAMPLE 8.4 Evaluate the potential for evaporative cooling for a 3000-ft^2 retail store in Denver, Colorado. Due to large electric lighting and equipment display loads, the approximate heat gain is 30 Btu/h ft^2.

SOLUTION

From Table B.1, Denver has a summer design DB temperature of 88°F, with a coincident WB temperature of 59.6°F. Checking back with Fig. 4.13, these design conditions fall well within the climate served by evaporative cooling. Next, enter Fig. 8.18 at the points of 88° DB and 59.6° WB; the intersection of these data lines shows that under such conditions, heat gains can be removed by evaporative cooling at a rate of about 37 Btu/h ft^2 of floor area.

40 Btu/h ft^2 capacity
> 30 Btu/h ft^2 approximate heat gains

Therefore, evaporative coolers can meet the need. Because Fig. 8.18 assumes an airflow rate of 2.67 cfm per ft^2, the cooler's approximate size will be

$$3000 \text{ ft}^2 \times 2.67 \text{ cfm/ft}^2 = 8000 \text{ cfm}$$

This cooler size could be reduced by the ratio of cooling capacity to heat removal need:

$$8000 \text{ cfm} \times \frac{30 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2 \text{ need}}{40 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2 \text{ capacity}}$$

= about 6000 cfm

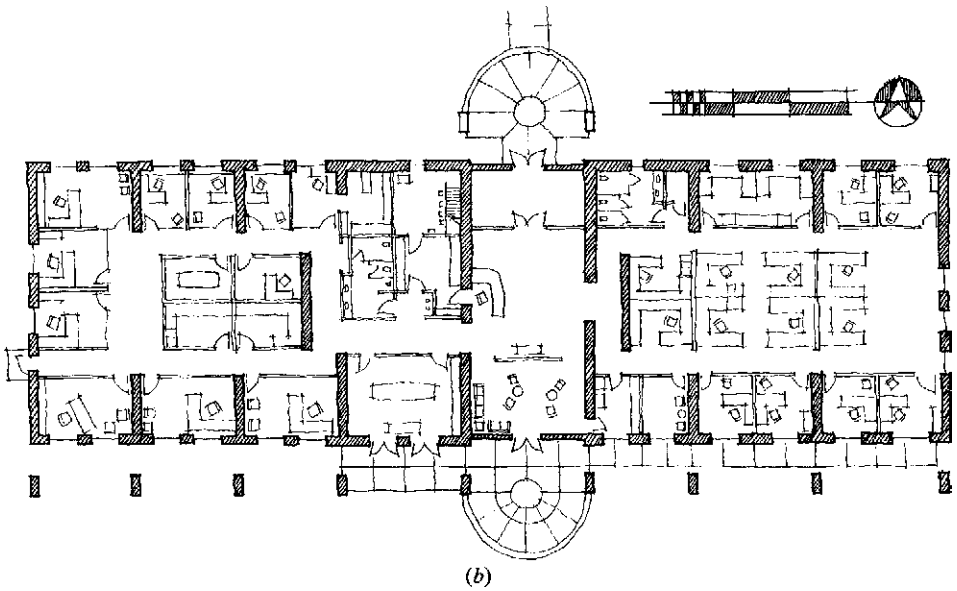
However, the larger capacity will allow a lower indoor air exit temperature than the 83°F assumed in Fig. 8.18, so the larger capacity is a safer approximation. ■

(e) Cooltowers

A more passive approach to evaporative cooling appears as a tower on the residence in Fig. 8.19. This University of Arizona experimental building near the Tucson Airport has a *cooltower* with wetted pads on all four faces at the top. Hot, dry air is cooled as it passes through the pads, dropping to the base of the tower and then into the house. Analysis by Givoni (1994) indicates that such a tower's delivery of wetter, cooler air is almost independent of wind speed and also is not dependent on the second tower at the opposite end of this building, a *solar chimney*



(a)

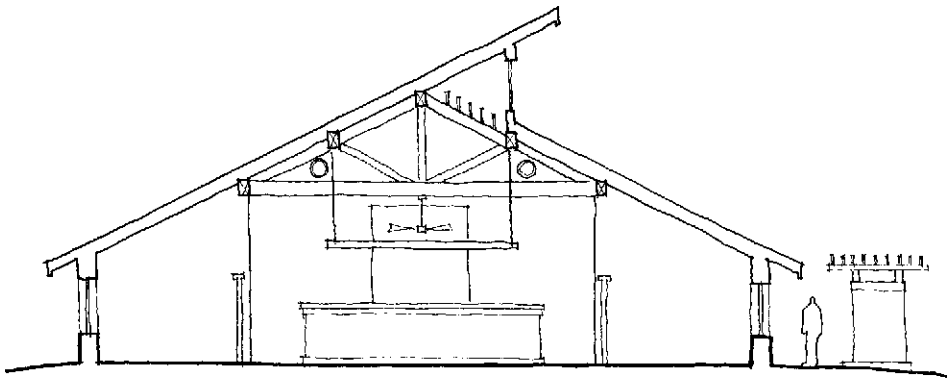


(b)

Fig. 8.17 *The Fetzer Winery administration building (a) in its rural Mendocino County, California, setting. The south-facing clerestory and a deciduous vine and trellis are the more visible parts of the daylighting, passive solar heating, and passive cooling strategies. (b) Plan shows the relation of a workstation to north and south daylight. (c) Section with ducts for the night air flush as well as for conventional heating and cooling. (d) North-side dormers are for night air intake and exhaust. (Parts b and c redrawn by Dain Carlson from original drawings provided courtesy of Valley Architects, St. Helena, CA.)*

through which air from the house is discharged. Temperature and flow rate of air delivered to a building by a passive cooling tower can be approximated from Fig. 8.20, but such data are based on very little experimental work. A well-regarded building using this principle, as well as Trombe wall passive solar heating, is the Zion National Park Visitor Center (Fig. 8.21).

EXAMPLE 8.5 A 3000-ft^2 (279-m^2) retail store in Las Vegas, Nevada, has a summer heat gain of 14 Btu/h ft^2



(c)



(d)

Fig. 8.17 *(Continued)*

(44.2 W/m^2). How large a passive cooling tower would be needed under summer design conditions?

SOLUTION

From Table B.1, Las Vegas has a summer DB = 103.7°F with a mean coincident WB = 65.5°F. This represents a *wet-bulb depression* (DB – WB) of 41F°. From Fig. 8.20*a*, at 103.7°F DB and 38F° (DB – WB), the air exiting a passive cooling tower will be about 70°F.

Next, determine the amount of supply air at 70°F needed to maintain this building at an indoor temperature of 82°F (probably a reasonable indoor temperature when it is 104°F outdoors, given the air motion provided by this passive cooling tower). From Chapter 7:

$$\text{cfm} = (\text{Btu/h})/(1.1)(\Delta t)$$
$$= (3000\ \text{ft}^2 \times 14\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2)/(1.1)(82 - 70)$$
$$= \text{about } 3200\ \text{cfm}$$

At the Las Vegas design condition of 103.7 DB, 38F° DB – WB, from Fig. 8.20*c*, it appears that a passive cooling tower of 40 ft (12 m) in height, with a total wetted pad area of 32 ft^2 (3 m^2), will provide about 3300 cfm (1558 L/s), somewhat more than the minimum just calculated. ■

(f) Roof Ponds

This promising strategy has rarely been implemented, possibly due to water phobia among architects and clients alike. Yet it demonstrates the most stable interior temperatures of any of these techniques, needing electricity only to open and close the sliding insulation panels on the roof. Roof ponds sized for cooling will likely be nearly equal in area to the floors of the buildings they cool. Average pond depth is between 3 and 6 in. (75 and 150 mm). A

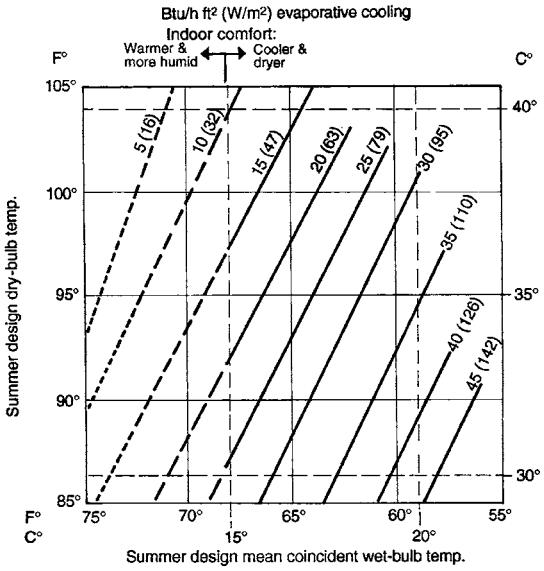


Fig. 8.18 *Fan-forced evaporative cooling design guideline for Btu/h removed per ft² of floor area (W per m²). A forced airflow rate of 2.67 cfm per ft² of floor area (13.56 L/s per m² of floor area) is assumed, as is an exiting (exhaust) air temperature of 83°F (28.3°C). The dashed lines toward the left side of the graph represent increasingly humid indoor air, which may cause discomfort.*

more detailed and precise procedure for determining pond area is presented in Section 8.14, but here is the quick approximation:

- Pond maximum* temperature: 80°F (*this temperature is based upon the assumption that any higher pond temperature would fail to produce cooling for the building interior)
- Pond minimum temperature = minimum nighttime DB (= max. daytime temp − mean daily range, from Table B.1)
- Pond Δt = pond maximum of 80°F − pond minimum temperature
- Pond's allowable daily heat stored (from building), Btu/day ft² = (0.7) (pond Δt) (pond depth, feet*) (62.5 lb/ft³ water)(1.0 Btu/lb °F) (*depth not to exceed 0.75 ft)
  (This equation assumes 70% of the pond's daily heat gain from the building below and 30% through the insulated panels above the pond)
- Required size of pond (ft² pond per ft² floor area)

$$= \frac{\text{building total heat gain per day (Btu/day ft}^2\text{ floor area)}}{\text{pond allowable heat stored per day (Btu/day ft}^2\text{ floor area)}}$$



Fig. 8.19 *An experimental residence in Tucson, Arizona, is passively and evaporatively cooled by a cooltower (at the right in the photograph). Hot, dry air passes through the wetted pads at the tower's top and undergoes a drop in DB temperature that causes it to fall, entering the residence at the bottom of the tower. The tower at the left is a solar chimney to help speed the flow of warmed exhaust air.*

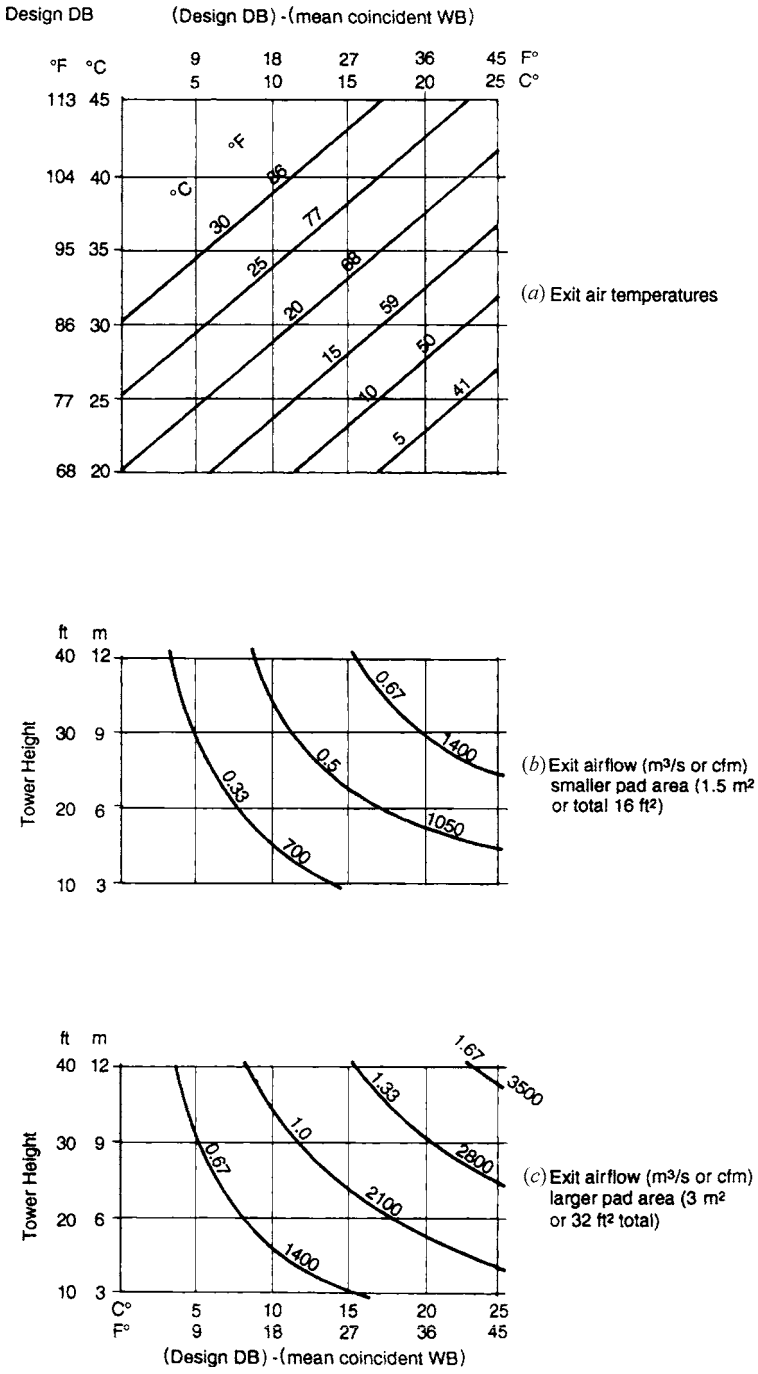
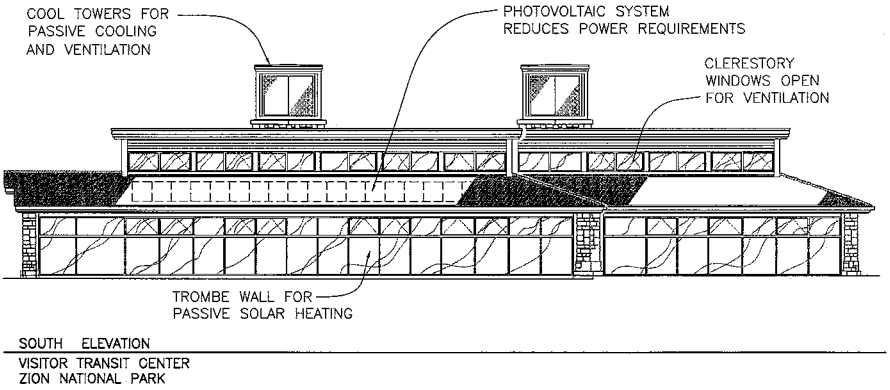
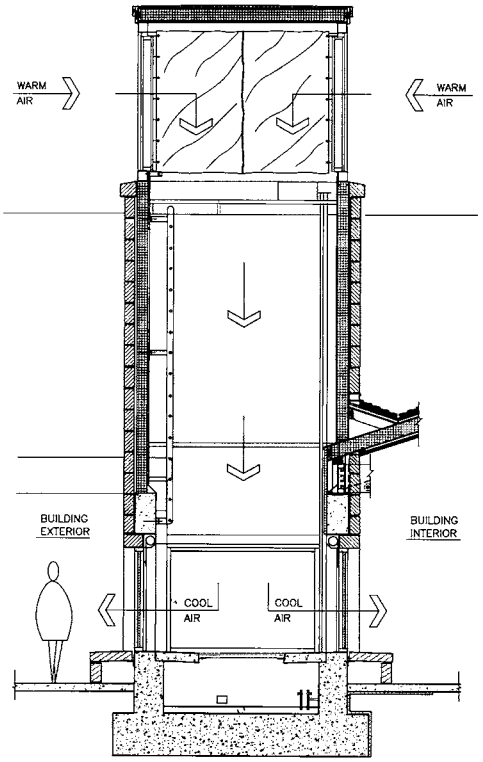


Fig. 8.20 *Design guidelines for cooltowers. (a) The temperature of the air as it leaves the cooltower (enters the building) depends on the outdoor DB temperature, as well as the difference between the DB and WB temperatures. The flow rate of the exiting air depends on the tower height, as well as the difference between the DB and WB temperatures. (b) Flow rate for a smaller area of wetted pads, 1.5 m^2 (16 ft^2). (c) Flow rate for a larger area of wetted pads, 3 m^2 (32 ft^2). (Based upon the work of Givoni, 1994.)*

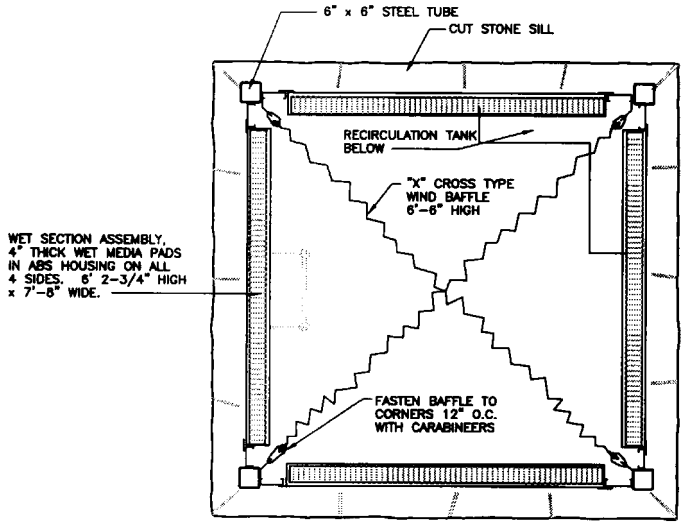


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 8.21 *The Visitor Center at Zion National Park (Utah) features both cooling by cooltowers and solar heating (a) by Trombe walls and a clerestory. Because many of the building's functions can be performed outside, each cooltower (b) has both an indoor and an outdoor outlet, either of which can be closed off when not needed. Air enters through wet media pads at the top of the tower (c). An X-baffle then diverts the air downward. The building also features photovoltaics (PV) and water harvesting. (Courtesy of The National Park Service, Denver Service Center.)*



(*c*)

Fig. 8.21 *(Continued)*

See Table 8.4 for a comparison of the design guideline and the more detailed calculations for roof ponds.

EXAMPLE 8.6, PART A An office building in Albuquerque, New Mexico, is to be cooled by a roof pond 4 in. deep. An hourly heat gain of 15 Btu/h ft^2 is assumed (excluding heat gain through the roof), somewhat more than the Oregon office building of Example 8.1.

SOLUTION

For Albuquerque:

Maximum temperature = 91°F (Table B.5)
Mean daily range = 25.3F° (Table B.5)
Minimum (night) temperature = 91 – 25.3 = 65.7°F

Therefore:

Pond Δt = 80 maximum – 65.7 minimum = 14.3F°

Pond storage capacity for building heat
= 0.7(14.3°)(0.33 ft)(62.5 lb/ft^3)(1 Btu/lb °F)
= 206 Btu/day ft^2

The required pond size, then, is

$$\frac{15 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2 \times 9 \text{ h/day}}{206 \text{ Btu/day ft}^2} = 0.66 \text{ ft}^2/\text{ft}^2 \text{ floor area (or } 0.66 \text{ m}^2/\text{m}^2)$$

Therefore, a 4-in. (102-mm) pond covering 72% of the one-story building's floor area will be approximately large enough to cool the building. (If the entire ceiling is desirable as a cooled surface, then a slightly shallower pond of greater area could be used. However, the sliding insulation panels must be stacked somewhere beyond the edge of the roof pond.)

We revisit this building as Example 8.6, Part B, in Section 8.14. ■

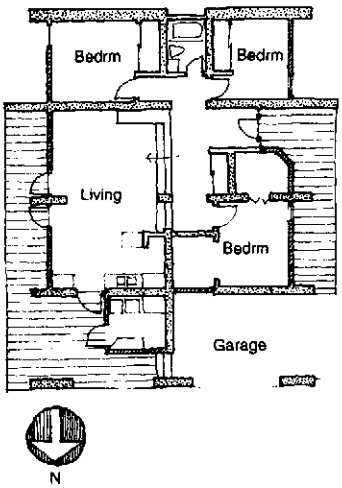
The residence in Fig. 8.22 is one of the first roof-pond structures. Located in Atascadero, California, at about 35° N latitude, it has a remarkable history of thermal stability, providing both passive solar heating in winter and passive cooling in summer. Roof-pond inventor Harold Hay donated the building to California State Polytechnic at San Luis Obispo in the late 1990s. To emphasize the pond as the solar heating device, this house has almost no south-facing glass (most windows face east toward a small lake). The sliding insulation panels are stacked when open (by day in winter, by night in summer) over the carport on the north end of the building.

(g) Earth Tubes

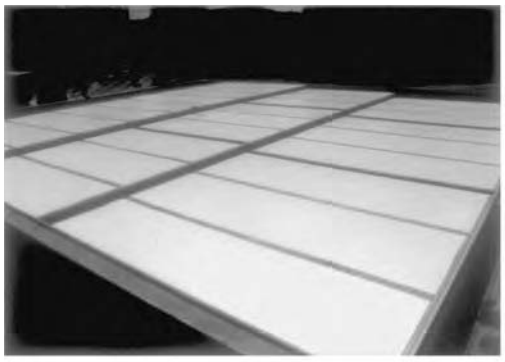
These provide a way to cool outdoor air before it enters a building. A fan is used to force sufficient quantities of air through these long tubes. Because earth tubes need to be well underground as well as rather long in order to cool outdoor air, it is



(a)



(b)



(c)

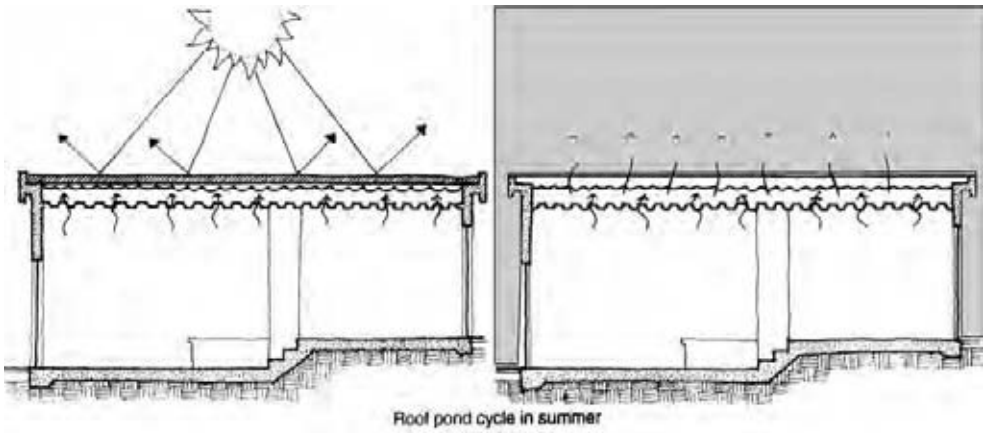


(d)

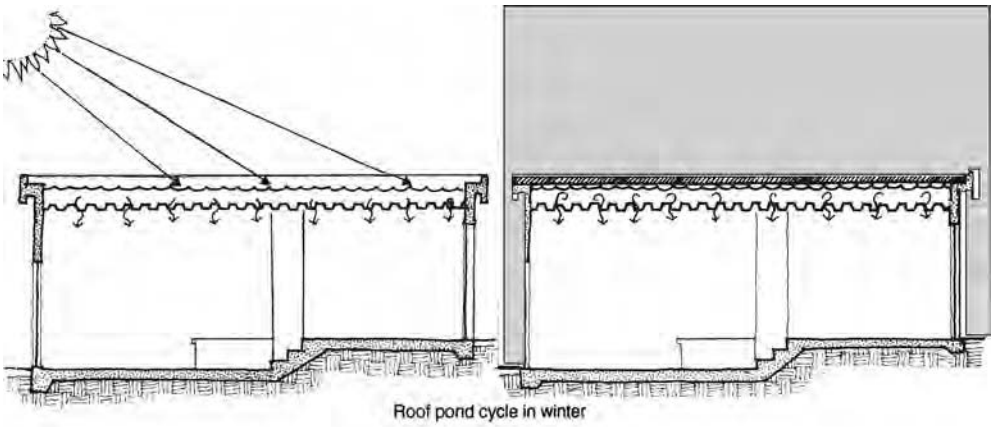
Fig. 8.22 *One of the first roof pond buildings, this Atascadero, California, residence is now a research building for California State Polytechnic University at San Luis Obispo. (a) The exterior from the west. (b) Plan. South exposure is minimal; the roof is the surface of interest for heating and cooling. (c) The roof insulating panels in the closed position (as on a summer day). (d) The roof insulating panels in the open position (as on a summer night). Water is contained within plastic bags laid directly on the metal deck ceiling. (e) Sections showing summer day roof pond insulation and night exposure. (f) Sections showing winter day roof pond exposure and night insulation. (g) Year-long record of the indoor temperature range compared to the outdoor range. (Drawings based in part on Sandia National Laboratory,* Passive Solar Buildings: A Compilation of Data and Results, *SAND 77-1204, 1977.)*

rarely economical to install enough earth tubes to completely meet a building's need for cooling. If long trenches are needed for another purpose (underground water lines, for example), an earth tube is more feasible. Where earth tubes are considered, the component of building heat gain that is represented by cooling fresh air (Table F.3, Part E) can sometimes be mitigated using this strategy.

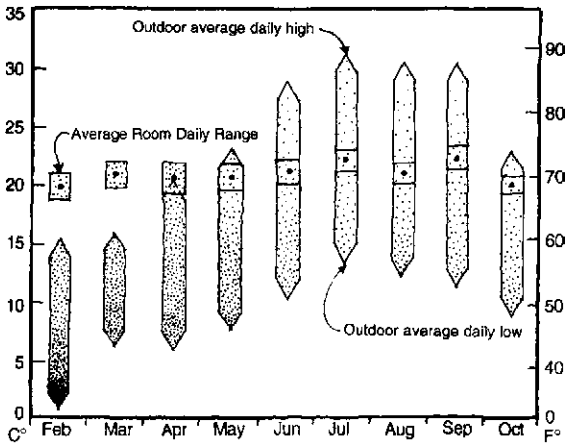
The estimate of cooling for the earth tubes described in Fig. 8.23 is based on Abrams (1986), who assumed a soil conductivity equal to that of heavy, damp earth. One of the most influential variables in earth tube performance is soil conductivity, so Fig. 8.24 (also from Abrams, 1986) compares the cooling performance of 6-in. (152-mm)-diameter earth tubes when soil conductivity changes. Note that this design guideline presents Btu/h cooling of *the outdoor air in the tube* rather than total building Btu/h ft^2 (for a typical ft^2 of building floor area). Therefore, two adjustments must be made: first, find the Btu/h cooling load of the outdoor air alone; second, adjust for the difference between hotter air outdoors and cooler air desired within the building.



(e)



(f)



(g)

Fig. 8.22 *(Continued)*

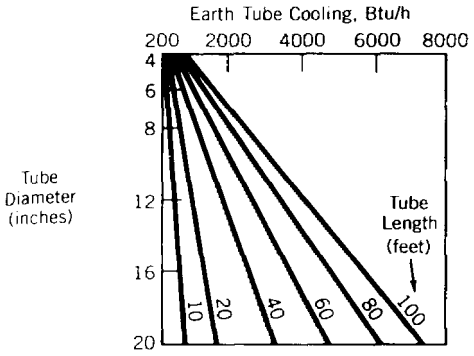


Fig. 8.23 *Cooling of intake air provided by an earth tube in Btu/h. This tube is set in heavy, damp soil (k = 0.75 Btu/h °F ft) whose temperature around the tube is 65°F. The outdoor air entering the tube is at 85°F and is moved at a flow velocity of 500 fpm. (Adapted by permission from Donald W. Abrams,* Low-Energy Cooling; *© 1986, Van Nostrand Reinhold Company.)*

See Section 8.14(g) for a more detailed calculation procedure for earth tubes in which tube depth, soil temperature, and soil conductivity are variable. See Table 8.4 for a comparison of the design guideline with the more detailed calculation procedure.

EXAMPLE 8.7, PART A A partially underground nature center of 4000 ft^2 (372 m^2) in northern Pennsylvania, design DB = 87°F, has an hourly heat gain of 9.3 Btu/h ft^2, of which 2.2 Btu/h ft^2 are due to required outdoor air ventilation. If earth tubes are used only for cooling the fresh air, how many tubes at what length will be needed?

SOLUTION

First, the cooling needed from the earth tubes is (4000 ft^2)(2.2 Btu/h ft^2) = 8800 Btu/h. Next, adjust this figure to account for actual project temperature conditions. If we accept 82°F indoors (the walls are earth-sheltered and therefore provide some radiant cooling), then the total earth tube cooling needed is (8800 Btu/h)(87°F/82°F), or about 9330 Btu/h.

From Fig. 8.23, assuming heavy, damp soil, a 60-ft (18-m)-long tube 20 in. (508 mm) in diameter will deliver about 4500 Btu/h; two such tubes will deliver about 9000 Btu/h.

We return to this example in Section 8.14(g), Example 8.7, Part B. ■

Table 8.4 compares the design guidelines for passive cooling with the more detailed calculation procedures that are given in Chapter 7 (basement walls and floor) and later in Section 8.14.

8.7 REINTEGRATING DAYLIGHTING, PASSIVE SOLAR HEATING, AND COOLING

At this point, preliminary investigations of envelope component U-factors and fenestration/floor area ratios have proceeded through various codes, standards, and design guidelines. It is quite likely that conflicting advice has resulted. Depending on the location, building type, and client's objectives,

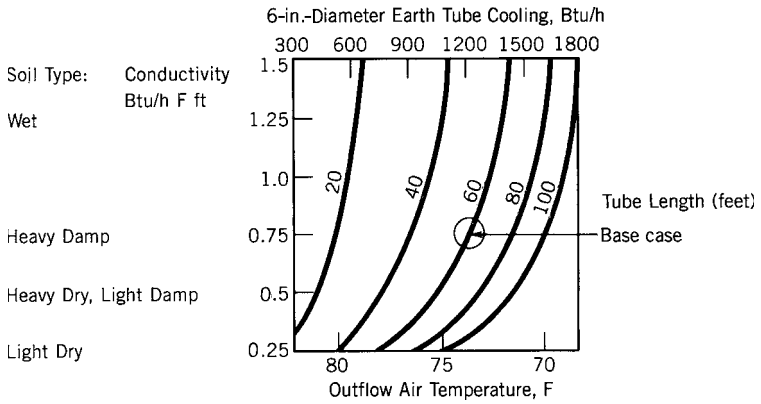


Fig. 8.24 *Six-inch-diameter earth tube cooling capacities as soil conductivity varies. The base case is a 6-in.-diameter earth tube 60 ft long, shown in Fig. 8.23 to deliver 1200 Btu/h of cooling at soil conductivity of 0.75, with other conditions as specified in Fig. 8.23. (Adapted by permission from Donald W. Abrams,* Low-Energy Cooling; *© 1986, Van Nostrand Reinhold Company.)*

a very different mix of glass, insulation, and thermal mass could result from prescriptive conservation approaches compared to a passive solar heating focus or any of several approaches to passive cooling.

When prescriptive standards (such as those presented in Table G.1) appear to preclude either passive solar heating or passive cooling strategies in a building, the designer should remember that there are procedures for either window area trade-offs (in which more insulation in walls or roofs might allow more glass area) or methods to compare whole-building annual energy consumption that can demonstrate the superiority of using well-designed passive strategies over a simple conventional prescribed approach.

EXAMPLE 8.8 Consider a one-story residence in Billings, Montana. How does the fenestration area prescribed for code compliance compare with desirable fenestration areas for daylight, solar heating, and ventilation cooling?

SOLUTION

A residential energy code states that windows that are ≥15% of the floor area must have a maximum U-factor of 0.36 and a maximum SC of 0.7. From Table E.15, windows #7 through #12 provide these values for U and SC (considered equivalent to SHGC for this purpose).

We now need to assume the floor area and dimensions in order to proceed. A plan 32 ft (9.8 m) wide by 64 ft (19.5 m) long (long walls to face north/south) yields a floor area of 2048 ft^2 (190 m^2). Most windows can be placed in the long walls for both daylight distribution and cross-ventilation. However, the south wall will need the most window area to facilitate solar heating. Tentatively, assign window areas as follows:

South window area	= 8% of floor area
North window area	= 5% of floor area
East and west window area	= 2% (1% each) of floor area
	15%

Daylight:

For sidelighting, DF_{av} = 0.2 (window area/floor area), where all of the floor area is within 2.5 *H* of the window wall. If we assume that *H* = 7.5 ft (ceiling at wall is 8 ft high), then the daylight area is 2.5 × 7.5 = 18.75 deep. Light from opposite exterior walls produces the maximum daylight width of 2 × 18.75 = 37 ft. With our assumed maximum 32-ft width, all floor area is within the daylight zone. For our total of 15% of floor area in fenestration, DF_{av} = 0.2 [0.15] = 0.03, or 3%. This seems to be sufficient according to the target DFs in Table 14.2.

Passive Solar Heating:

Windows #7 through #12 (Table E.15) are under consideration. From Table F.1, footnote c, windows #7 and #12 qualify as superior performance glazings. For Billings, Montana, a south glass/floor area "low" ratio of 0.16 would produce SSF = 53%. From Table F.2, such an SSF would require at least 3.8 ft^2 of interior masonry surface for each square foot of south glass. However, only 8% south window area/floor area is allocated. The designer can:

- Reallocate window area so that essentially all windows face south (with daylight and cross-ventilation penalties)
- Increase the total window area to more than 15%, with correspondingly better fenestration U-factors required (from the applicable energy code, up to 21% of floor area would require U = 0.29)
- Settle for a lower SSF with only 8% south window area/floor area

Cross-Ventilation:

First, we need a quick estimate of heat gains. From Table F.3:

A. Internal gains from people and equipment: assume 4 people at 230 Btu/h plus 1200 Btu/h from appliances:

$$(4 \times 230) + 1200 = 2120 \text{ Btu/h}$$

$$2120 \text{ Btu/h} / 2048 \text{ ft}^2 = 1.04 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

B. Lights: Assume with 3% DF a gain of about 2.0 Btu/h ft^2.

C. Gain through envelope: Billings' design temperature (Table B.1) is 87.2°F.

Externally shaded window gains = (0.15) × 16 = 2.4 Btu/h ft^2; gain through walls: total vertical area = [(2 × 32 ft) + (2 × 64 ft)] = 1536 ft^2. Of this, window area = (0.15 × 2048) = 307 ft^2; opaque wall area = 1536 – 307 = 1229.

To meet the energy code, frame walls must have a U-factor no greater than 0.073, whereas masonry walls may have a maximum U-factor of 0.08. Therefore,

gain through walls = (1229 ft^2 wall area/2048 ft^2 floor area) × 0.08 × 15 = 0.72 Btu/h ft^2

Gain through roof: Assume roof area equal to floor area, and to comply with the energy code, a maximum U-factor of 0.033. Therefore,

$$\text{gain through roof} = (1.0) \times 0.033 \times 35 = 1.16 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

D. For an open building (using cross-ventilation)

$$\text{total heat gain} = 1.04 + 2.0 + 2.4 + 0.72 + 1.16 = 7.32 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

We can assume a total operable area of perhaps 90% of the glazed area using fully openable casement windows. With 8% floor area in south windows and 5% in north windows, the maximum available ventilation area = 0.9 × 5% = 4.5% of the floor area. From Fig. 8.14*a*, it appears that the estimated rate of heat gain can be removed through this inlet area by a wind velocity of only about 2 mph.

Summary: Probably increase the south glass area (and the overall ratio of window/floor area) and use windows with lower U-factors, with summer external shading. The floor and many interior wall surfaces will be faced with thermally massive materials. ■

8.8 CALCULATING WORST HOURLY HEAT LOSS

Chapter 7 showed how heat is exchanged by transfer through a building envelope (q) and through ventilation of a building (q_v). By combining these rates of heat exchange, we can obtain a building's total hourly heat loss in winter. (To calculate the total hourly heat gain in summer, other gains must be added; this more complicated procedure is discussed in Sections 8.11 and 8.13.) The total hourly heat loss of a building can be calculated under several different assumptions reflecting different purposes.

(a) Maximum Hourly Loss: Sizing Conventional Heating Equipment

The most typical use of $q + q_v$ is to determine the maximum amount of heat per hour that heating equipment must provide. Two important assumptions are usually made:

1. No internal heat gains (lights, people, etc.) and no solar gains are present in the building.
2. The *design* lowest outdoor temperature (see Appendix B) is occurring.

These are conservative assumptions that lead to the installation of heating equipment that is rarely used to capacity. Such equipment does provide a safety margin for those times when even lower than design temperatures occur or when windows are inadvertently left open or other temporary and unexpected heat leaks occur in very cold weather.

Thus, to obtain design hourly heat loss, calculate

$$q_{\text{total}} = q + q_v$$

where

$$q = (\sum UA)\,\Delta t$$

with $\sum UA$ the sum, for all exposed components of the building's envelope, of $U \times A$; Δt = (interior temperature – exterior design temperature); and

$$q_v = 1.1V\,\Delta t \quad (1.2V\,\Delta t;\ \text{SI units})$$

where V is the volume in cfm (L/s) of outdoor air introduced.

(b) Maximum Hourly Heat Loss: Sizing Auxiliary Heating for Passive Solar Buildings

The one important difference between the maximum heat loss calculations for conventional and passive solar buildings is the following assumption:

No internal heat gains (lights, people, etc.) are present, but there is sufficient stored solar energy to at least cancel out the heat losses through the south solar collection area.

Otherwise, the procedure is the same as that for conventional buildings:

$$q_{\text{total}} = q + q_v$$

where

$q = \sum UA_{\text{ns}}\,\Delta t$

$q_v = 1.1V\,\Delta t$ (Δt again based on the design condition, Appendix B) $(1.2V\,\Delta t;$ SI units)

$\sum UA_{\text{ns}}$ excludes the solar collector area

This can lead to occasional chilly interiors, as when several days of heavily overcast skies coincide with design-condition outdoor temperatures. In some

locations, therefore, designers use the more conservative, conventional procedure for sizing the auxiliary heatering for passive solar buildings.

(c) Maximum Hourly Loss: Checking Design Criteria

The calculations that produce q and q_v are also useful in reviewing a building's design. By showing where most of the heat loss is occurring, they can quickly pinpoint opportunities for energy conservation and increased comfort. If much of the building's heat loss is occurring through large windows in one wall, for example, consider the following options:

1. Reduce the window size. (Architectural and daylighting considerations may override.)
2. Go to a lower window U-factor to reduce heat loss and increase the winter surface temperature of this large glass area. (Cost and detailing considerations may override.)
3. Add thermal shades or shutters to dramatically reduce heat loss and increase winter surface temperature. (Architectural, view, cost, and detailing considerations may override.)

If much of the building's heat loss occurs through outdoor air, consider these options:

1. Reduce infiltration by tighter construction (or reduce mechanical ventilation toward the code-required minimum).
2. Add a heat exchanger between outgoing and incoming air.

These calculations can also be used to check your building against published criteria for thermal performance (see Appendix G for example criteria). Redesign of building envelopes to meet such criteria is fairly common in the early stages of building design.

(d) Hourly Rates of Fuel Consumption

When outdoor temperatures in winter drop below the building balance point (see Section 8.9), heating systems usually begin to operate. The hourly rate of fuel consumption depends on the hourly heat loss from the building. If the boiler (or furnace) is selected to run continuously at the outdoor, critical winter design temperature, then it will cycle (run intermittently) at higher outdoor temperatures. The equipment, however, *is* selected on the basis of the maximum winter demand rate and therefore relates to the calculated heat loss at the design temperature. Sometimes your energy supplier will ask for the maximum hourly rate.

EXAMPLE 8.9 Calculate the rates of burning for several fuels (or the rate of using electricity) to make up the hourly heat loss, under design conditions, of a mercantile store. Its maximum hourly heat loss is 159,840 Btu/h. For fuel values, refer to the data in Table 8.5.

SOLUTION

If, for instance, oil were used, the situation would be gal/h × Btu/gal heat value × efficiency = Btu/h capacity (= heat loss). Transposing, we have

$$\text{gal/h} = \frac{\text{Btu/h heat loss}}{\text{Btu/gal} \times \text{efficiency}}$$

(Other consumption statements are similar.) Applying values to this and to relationships for the other fuels, we obtain the following rates:

Coal: 159,840/14,600 × 0.70 = 15.6 lb/h

Oil: 159,840/141,000 × 0.75 = 1.51 gal/h

Gas (older, less-efficient equipment): 159,840/1052 × 0.75 = 203 cfh

Electricity: 159,840/3413 × 1.00 = 46.6 kW (46,600 W)

TABLE 8.5 Approximate Heat Values of Fuels

	Heat Value		Typical Seasonal
Fuel	I-P Units	SI Units	Efficiency, %
Anthracite coal	14,600 Btu/lb	33,980 kJ/kg	65–75
No. 2 oil	141,000 Btu/gal	39,300 kJ/L	75–90[c]
Natural gas[a]	1,050 Btu/ft^3	39,100 kJ/m^3	75–95[c]
Propane	2,500 Btu/ft^3	93,150 kJ/m^3	75–95[c]
Electricity	3,413 Btu/kW	1 kW	95–100
Wood[b]	7,000 Btu/lb	16,290 kJ/kg	30–50

Note: This table includes the thermal value of electricity used on site (but not losses in fuel energy at the electrical generating plant). Approximate seasonal efficiencies of typical burner–boiler equipment are also shown.

[a]Natural gas is frequently sold in therms; 1 therm = 100,000 Btu/h (SI units, 29.3 kW).

[b]At 20% moisture content.

[c]Depending upon age of equipment; high-efficiency furnaces are readily available.

These results are based on the assumption that the boiler and its piping are enclosed within the useful volume of the store. If they were in a cold basement, or if the ducts or pipes ran through unheated space, more fuel would be used and overall system efficiency would decline. The rates established set the values by which the fuel-burning apparatus is selected. For instance, if oil is used, a nozzle that injects oil at the rate of about 1 gph should be tried. The above rates are for design conditions and are not typical of the lower average rate of operation throughout the winter. ■

8.9 CALCULATIONS FOR HEATING-SEASON FUEL CONSUMPTION (CONVENTIONAL BUILDINGS)

The following method of estimating the fuel used for space heating in a typical season best applies to residences and small commercial buildings that are skin–load dominated and not passively solar heated beyond SSF = 10%. To the extent that the combination of internal and solar gains can be predicted accurately, this method yields a reasonable estimate of annual fuel consumption for any building. (For passively solar-heated buildings, use instead the method given in Section 8.10.)

Internal and solar gains make almost any building warmer than the outdoors during the heating season. The furnace (or other space-heating device) is not needed until the outdoor temperature drops to the point at which these internal and solar gains are insufficient to heat the building by themselves, that is, when the heat lost through the building's skin and infiltration matches the heat gained through solar plus internal loads. This particular outdoor temperature is called the *balance point*; it represents the beginning of the need for space-heating equipment usage.

To estimate the annual energy needed for a building's space heating, it is necessary to know the following:

- The building's heat-loss rate (envelope and infiltration)
- The building's internal plus solar gain rate
- The building's balance point temperature
- The time period during which the outside temperature falls below the building's balance point temperature (DD)

(a) Balance Point Temperature

When a building needs neither heating nor cooling, the internal gains equal the external losses:

$$Q_i = \text{balance point } q_{\text{total}}$$

where

Q_i = internal gains plus solar gains (Btu/h or W)

balance point $q_{\text{total}} = UA_{\text{total}}\,(t_i - t_b)$

t_b = balance point temperature

t_i = average interior temperature over 24 hours, winter

UA_{total} = total heat loss rate—envelope plus infiltration (Btu/h °F or W/°C)

Rewriting this equation to solve for the balance point temperature:

$$t_b = t_i - \frac{Q_i}{UA_{\text{total}}}$$

To determine the total heat loss rate UA_{total}, combine the envelope (or skin) losses and the infiltration (or ventilation) losses.

The quantity Q_i cannot be determined so straightforwardly. The internal gains can be estimated as shown in Table F.3 (remember, these are summertime gains) or calculated more precisely from known building population, lighting, and equipment data. For residences, the following *daily total* internal gains are considered typical:

People: Two adults and two children (average times of occupancy): 23,000 to 24,500 Btu/day (6.7 to 7.2 kWh/day)

Lights and equipment: See Table 8.6 for individual heat sources, but if actual appliances are unknown, then:

53,000 Btu/day (15.5 kWh/day) for standard efficiency equipment

100,000 Btu/day (29.3 kWh/day) for old and inefficient equipment

For more details on internal gains in residences, see the 2009 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, Chapter 17.

The solar gains are elusive; each month has a different average gain. For simplicity in the heating season, use the average January daily insolation on

a vertical surface (found in Appendix C) with this approach.

During the heating season:

$$Q_i = \frac{\text{internal gains (Btu/day)}}{24\text{ h}} + \frac{\left[\begin{array}{l}\text{January insolation} \\ (\text{Btu/ft}^2\text{ day average}), \\ \text{vertical surface}\end{array}\right] \times \begin{array}{l}\text{area (ft}^2\text{),} \\ \text{south} \\ \text{glass}\end{array}}{24\text{ h}}$$

The balance point temperature, t_b, can be used to do several things besides predict fuel consumption. By noting the t_b on a graph of monthly outdoor temperatures, the designer can quickly see the relative importance of heating versus cooling for a specific building in a given climate. Also, it can be used to gain a better understanding of how zones in a building interrelate. Once the t_b is calculated for each zone, it can be determined when the entire building needs heating (outdoor temperature below any zone's t_b) or cooling (outdoor temperature above any zone's t_b), or when one zone's surplus heat can be another zone's space-heating source (outdoor temperature higher than one zone's t_b but lower than that of another). If thermal exchange between zones occurs for a major portion of the typical year, the choice of either a heating or a cooling strategy could be influenced.

TABLE 8.6 Typical Residential Daily Internal Heat Gains from Appliances and Lighting

PART A. ELECTRIC APPLIANCES		
Heat Source	**Btu/day**	**kWh/day**
Frost-free refrigerator	16,000	4.7
Freezer	10,900–15,700	3.2–4.6
Dryer[a]	8,900–11,600	2.6–3.4
Range[a]	6,500–11,300	1.9–3.3
Television[b]	3,400–4,400	1.0–1.3
Dishwasher	2,400	0.7
Lights and miscellaneous[c]	9,500–18,800	2.8–5.5
Water heater[d]	13,700–27,400	4.0–8.0
PART B. GAS APPLIANCES		
Heat Source	**Btu/day**	
Water heater	13,700–27,400	
Dryer[a]	12,000–19,000	
Range[a]	12,000–27,000	

Source: A New Prosperity: The SERI Solar Conservation Study. Brick House Publishing. Andover, MA, 1981. Adapted by permission from the 1989 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, published by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.. Atlanta, GA.

[a]These are for the appliance's consumption per day; heat gain to a house is less, depending on the amount of heated exhaust air.

[b]Total daily use of TV per household.

[c]These figures are for an average 1350-ft^2 house; the rate per square foot of floor area may be extrapolated.

[d]Standby heat loss from water heater to house.

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART G Calculate the January balance point temperature for a typical bay of the office building in Fig. 8.6. Assume that the average indoor January temperature over a 24-hour period is an energy-conserving 68°F.

SOLUTION

The (summer) internal gains from Example 8.1, Part D, may need some modifications. In darker winter, assume that the gain from electric lighting is closer to the 2 < DF < 4 value of 2.0 Btu/h ft^2. The internal gain is then 5.8 + 2.0 = 7.8 Btu/h ft^2 from people, equipment, and electric lighting. The average internal gains are as follows:

$$\frac{7.8\text{ Btu/h ft}^2 \times 9\text{ h}}{24\text{ h}} = 2.93\text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

The January solar gain, VS, from Table C.19, for Salem, Oregon, is 471 Btu/ft^2 day per ft^2 of south glass:

$$\frac{471\text{ Btu/h ft}^2 \times (97\text{ ft}^2 + 132\text{ ft}^2)\text{ south glass}}{24\text{ h} \times 1440\text{ ft}^2} = 3.1\text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

Therefore,

$$Q_i = 2.93 + 3.1 = 6.03\text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

UA for the typical bay (from Table 8.2 and Example 8.1, Part B) includes, for this calculation, all elements of the building envelope:

$$(42 + 25 + 72 + 72 + 98 + 174\text{ infiltration}) = 483\text{ Btu/h °F}$$

expressed per square foot of floor area:

$$483/1440 = 0.34\text{ Btu/h °F ft}^2$$

Therefore,

$$t_b = 68°\text{F} - \frac{6.03\text{ Btu/h ft}^2}{0.34\text{ Btu/h °F ft}^2} = 68 - 17.8$$

$$= 50.2°\text{F}$$

Consulting NOAA data for Salem, Oregon, 50.2°F, although based on January insolation, is closest to the daily average temperature for the months of April and October. ■

(b) Degree Days (DD)

These data (found in Appendices B, C, and F) are published for each climate station and are calculated to various *base* temperatures. Heating degree days (HDDs) to a specified base temperature, such as HDD65, refer to average daily temperatures *below* the base temperature of 65°F. Cooling degree days (CDDs) to a specified base temperature, such as CDD50, refer to average daily temperatures *above* the base temperature (of, say, 50°F). (Climate data previously showed cooling degree hours [CDH], such as CDH74, referenced to the average number of hours above a base temperature of 74°F. These data appear to have been generally displaced by CDD data.) For smaller buildings, such as residences, HDDs are in much wider usage than are CDDs (or CDHs), and many data sources simply list DD65; this notation is interchangeable with HDD65. Until recently, degree days were always based on 65°F, because older, indifferently insulated buildings, with low internal gains, had a typical balance point of about 65°F. The combination of much higher levels of insulation and much more electric equipment has shoved the average building's balance point temperature downward; hence DD50, DD55, and DD60 are included with the traditional DD65 in Appendix C.

To derive HDD for a particular climate and *X* base temperature (HDD*X*), each day's mean temperature (halfway between high and low) is subtracted from the base temperature; the result is the number of HDD*X* for that day. If the mean temperature equals or exceeds the base temperature, no HDD*X* are recorded. Then the HDD*X* are totaled for an average year.

For example, assume that a day in Troy, New York, had a high of 60°F and a low of 34°F. The mean temperature was $(60 - 34/2) + 34 = 47$°F.

$$65 - 47 = 18 \text{ DD65}$$

$$60 - 47 = 13 \text{ DD60}$$

$$55 - 47 = 8 \text{ DD55}$$

$$50 - 47 = 3 \text{ DD50}$$

Clearly, a building with a 65°F balance point will need more heat on a given day than will a building with a 50°F balance point temperature.

To convert DD I-P to DD SI, simply multiply DD I-P by 0.56:

$$\text{DD SI} = 0.56 \text{ DD I-P}$$

To obtain the *DD balance point* needed to estimate a particular building's heating needs, interpolate between the various base DDs as required. (If the balance point is below 50°F, get lower DD base figures from your local weather station. Do not extrapolate!)

(c) Yearly Space-Heating Energy

To estimate the heating energy needed over an average year for a building, *E*, calculate

$$E = \frac{(UA)(\text{DD balance point})(24 \text{ h})}{(AFUE)(V)}$$

where

E is in units of fuel consumed per year (therms of gas or kWh of electricity)

UA is the total heat loss rate, envelope + infiltration (Btu/h °F, or W/°C)

DD balance point is obtained as just described

AFUE is the annual fuel utilization efficiency, displayed on all furnaces manufactured within the United States (Table 8.7)

V is the heating value of the fuel from Table 8.5

TABLE 8.7 Some Typical Values of Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency (AFUE)

	AFUE (%)	
Type of Furnace	**Indoor**	**ICS[a]**
NATURAL GAS		
Natural draft with standing pilot[b]	64.5	63.9
Natural draft with intermittent ignition[b]	69.0	68.5
Natural draft with intermittent ignition and auto vent damper[b]	78.0	68.5
Fan-assisted combustion with standing pilot or intermittent ignition	80.0	78.0
Fan-assisted combustion with improved heat transfer, with standing pilot or intermittent ignition	82.0	80.0
Direct vent with standing pilot, preheat[b]	66.0	64.5
Direct vent, fan-assisted combustion, and intermittent ignition	80.0	78.0
Fan-assisted combustion (induced draft)	80.0	78.0
Condensing	93.0+	91.0+
OIL		
Standard[b]	71.0	69.0
Standard with improved heat transfer[b]	76.0	74.0
Standard, with improved heat transfer and auto vent damper[b]	83.0	74.0
Condensing	91.0	89.0

Source: 1996 ASHRAE Handbook—Systems and Equipment, copyright © by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.

[a]Isolated combustion system: combustion air is drawn from outdoors, not indoors.

[b]Since 1992, all new furnaces are required to have an AFUE (ICS) level of at least 78.0%.

EXAMPLE 8.10 A residence in Springfield, Illinois, has a total heat loss rate *UA* of 544 Btu/h °F and a balance point temperature of 55°F. It will have a natural gas condensing furnace, located indoors, for which AFUE = 0.93. For Springfield, DD55 = 3434. The approximate average annual energy used for space heating is

$$E_{\text{therms}} = \frac{(544\ \text{Btu/h °F})(3434\ \text{DD})(24\ \text{h/day})}{0.93 \times 100{,}000\ \text{Btu/therm}}$$

$$= 482\ \text{therms} \quad \blacksquare$$

8.10 PASSIVE SOLAR HEATING PERFORMANCE

Section 8.4 presents design guidelines for determining solar opening size, thermal mass, and the solar savings fraction (SSF). As a building design takes shape, more detailed information becomes useful: Which passive system matches the architectural program? Which performs better thermally? For a given solar opening, what exactly is the resulting SSF? How much auxiliary fuel consumption per year must accompany that SSF? If a building overheats on sunny winter days, how hot will it get?

To this point, passive solar heating has been treated as a single approach; the design guidelines for SSF distinguished only between standard and superior system performance. Important architectural differences, however, characterize the various passive solar heating approaches, as summarized in Table 8.8. On the basis of the wider architectural implications presented in Table 8.8 and the detailed sizing information found in Appendix H, the designer can select a passive solar heating approach with some confidence in its applicability and its yearly need for auxiliary space heating.

(a) Glazing Performance

In the reference systems of Table H.1, the glazing is assumed to face due south. The choices of glazing conditions include single, double, and triple glazing, and night insulation "no" or "yes." Single, double, and triple glazing with no night insulation are common approaches. Movable night insulation, once common (Fig. 8.25), has largely been supplanted by superwindows. Yet, which of the current superwindows might provide a performance approximately equivalent to double glazing with R-9 night insulation?

The 24-hour averaged U-factor of the double-glazed fixed window with R-9 night insulation is found as follows: a double-glazed window, with a wood/vinyl frame, corresponds to window #5 in Table E.15, with a U = 0.49. "Night insulation" assumes adding R-9 insulation, in place from 5:30 P.M. to 7:30 A.M. This extra-insulated window should at night then have an overall R of at least

$$(1/0.49) + 9 = \text{R-11};$$

then nighttime U = 1/11 = 0.09.

$$U_{24\text{av}} = \left[\frac{(14\ \text{h})(0.09)] + [(10\ \text{h})(.49)}{24\ \text{h}}\right] = 0.257$$

The equivalent superwindow would then have these characteristics, based on window #5's solar gain:

$$U = 0.26,\ \text{SHGC} = 0.58,\ \text{VT} = 0.57$$

Such a combination may be difficult to obtain. Here are some choices for superwindow substitutes for the "double/yes n.i." option within the Appendix H reference types:

- Where listed, choose the triple-glazing option instead of the double/yes n.i.
- Use window #7, Table E.15, with U = 0.33, SHGC = 0.55, VT = 0.52, with nearly identical solar gain characteristics, and interpolate between double/yes n.i. and double/no n.i. on the basis of U-factors:

  Double/no n.i., U = 0.49

  Double/yes n.i., U = 0.26

  Window #7, U = 0.33

  This places window #7 at about one-third of the difference, closer to double/yes n.i.
- Use the clear triple-glazed window (#12, Table E.15) in place of double/yes n.i., and given its U = 0.34, SHGC = 0.52, VT = 0.53, interpolate for U-factor as with window #7.

Another option is *transparent insulation materials* (TIM), discussed earlier in Chapter 7, such as aerogel (one example). These materials transmit diffuse light and solar radiation but are opaque to thermal radiation. The four generic types of TIM are shown in Fig. 8.25. The absorber-parallel structures (Fig. 8.25*a*) are similar to the sheets of spectrally selective materials in superwindows; the

TABLE 8.8 Passive Solar Heating Systems Compared

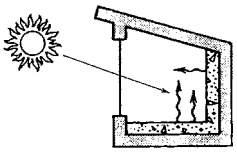
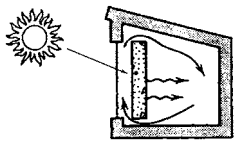
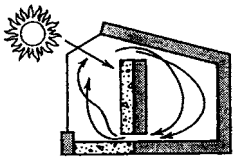
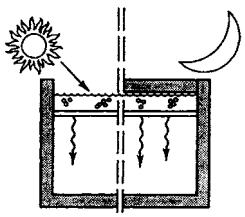
	Influence on Plan	Heating Characteristics
Direct gain (DG) 	Sun can enter through south windows or skylights; open plan can allow sun and stored heat to serve entire top floor of building. Large areas of thermal mass surface should be darker-colored and free of rugs, wall hangings, etc. Light-colored surfaces near glass reduce glare. Outdoor view and access to south are encouraged.	Quick to warm up in the morning; fast response to sun. Tendency to overheat at midday; large temperature swings. Much radiant loss to bare window by night; movable insulation encouraged (or triple glazing or selective film). Warmth spread throughout space along with thermal mass.
Thermal storage wall Trombe (masonry) wall (TW) Water wall (WW) 	Needs to be on south wall of building. Inner wall of TW or WW should be kept clear of hangings, furniture, etc., but rest of space is unrestricted. Not much solar impact beyond about 25 ft from TW or WW. Outdoor view and access to south are discouraged.	Unvented TW, WW are slow to warm up by day, slow to cool by night; small temperature swings. Most radiant heat arrives in evening; comfort is most likely near the TW or WW surface. (Behavior of vented TW is midway between those of unvented TW and DG systems.)
Sunspace (SS) 	Same influences as TW and WW above; or SS can be insulated from building, becoming a less-efficient heat source for a rock bed. Floor above rock bed should be kept free of rugs. SS becomes a special place with different characteristics from rest of building. Access to SS thereby encouraged. Access to south encouraged; view to south filtered.	SS thermally like DG, but with extreme temperature swings and accentuated radiant loss by night. Movable insulation often omitted and night use curtailed. Building beyond is thermally like TW or WW, depending on its connection with SS. Warm floor above rock bed in months with SS surplus heat.
Roof pond 	Flat or nearly flat roof is desirable. Skylight is discouraged. Plan is completely unrestricted; sidelighting and views, access to outdoors encouraged.	Low-temperature swings; steady temperatures in both summer and winter. Winter air stratification possible, since warmest surface is also highest surface in the space.

TABLE 8.8 Passive Solar Heating Systems Compared (*Continued*)

	Daylighting	Cooling
DG	Very high DF possible, with high glare potential at lower windows. Possible conflict between light-colored surfaces for glare reduction and dark-colored surfaces for solar absorption. Summer shading greatly reduces DF. Encourages both side- and toplighting.	Cross-ventilation: encouraged by large windows to south. Stack ventilation: helped when clerestories are used. Night ventilation/thermal mass: excellent potential, much mass surface and capacity. Other closed-building cooling: large south windows are big threat. Shading (and lower DF) necessary in overheating months.
TW,WW	No daylighting through TW unless interrupted by windows (high glare potential). Diffuse light possible through translucent WW. Discourages sidelighting.	Cross-ventilation: discouraged by solid TW, WW. Stack ventilation: TW or WW can itself produce a stack effect, but with risk of evening overheating. Night ventilation/thermal mass: limited interior mass surface exposure but a lot of mass capacity. Other closed-building cooling: with summer shading of TW or WW, good match with controlled cooling; thermal mass delays and reduces peak heat gains.
SS	Very high DF within SS; little or no daylight through common wall, except as encouraged by view and access to surface. Summer shading of SS reduces DF.	Cross-ventilation: only to extent that common wall is penetrated for view and access. Stack ventilation: SS can become a moderately effective stack. Night ventilation/thermal mass: both surfaces of common mass wall are available, but two spaces must be cooled. Other closed-building cooling: with summer shading of SS, good match with controlled cooling (except in SS itself).
Roof pond	Discourages toplighting, encourages sidelighting, with very light color on underside of roof.	Cross-ventilation: excellent potential. Stack ventilation: discouraged. Night ventilation/thermal mass: easily achieved with roof undersurface. Other closed-building cooling: roof pond night sky cooling is often sufficient by itself, making other cooling unnecessary.

Source: Illustrations from AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper, *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 7th ed., © 1981 John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York. Reprinted by permission.

more layers, however, the less the transmission of solar gain. Absorber-vertical structures (Fig. 8.25*b*) include honeycomb or capillary materials that reflect and transmit the incoming solar radiation with fewer transmission losses. Combining these structures (Fig. 8.25*c*) can result in either transparent rectangular cross sections or transparent foam with bubble sizes of a few millimeters. Quasi-homogeneous layers (Fig. 8.25*g*) include aerogel. These scatter the incoming sunlight differently than do the types of structures shown in Fig. 8.25*c*.

For passive space heating, TIM use may be limited by the lack of *visual* transparency: these materials diffuse sunlight. They are thus appealing primarily for Trombe wall and water wall applications (Fig. 8.25*e*), where the view through the glazing is unimportant. Some information on U-factors and diffuse transmittance is presented in Table 8.9. Again, if we seek a substitute for movable insulation over double glazing, we would like U = 0.26, SHGC = 0.58, VT = 0.57; from Table 8.9, any of the honeycomb or capillary materials in Part A will

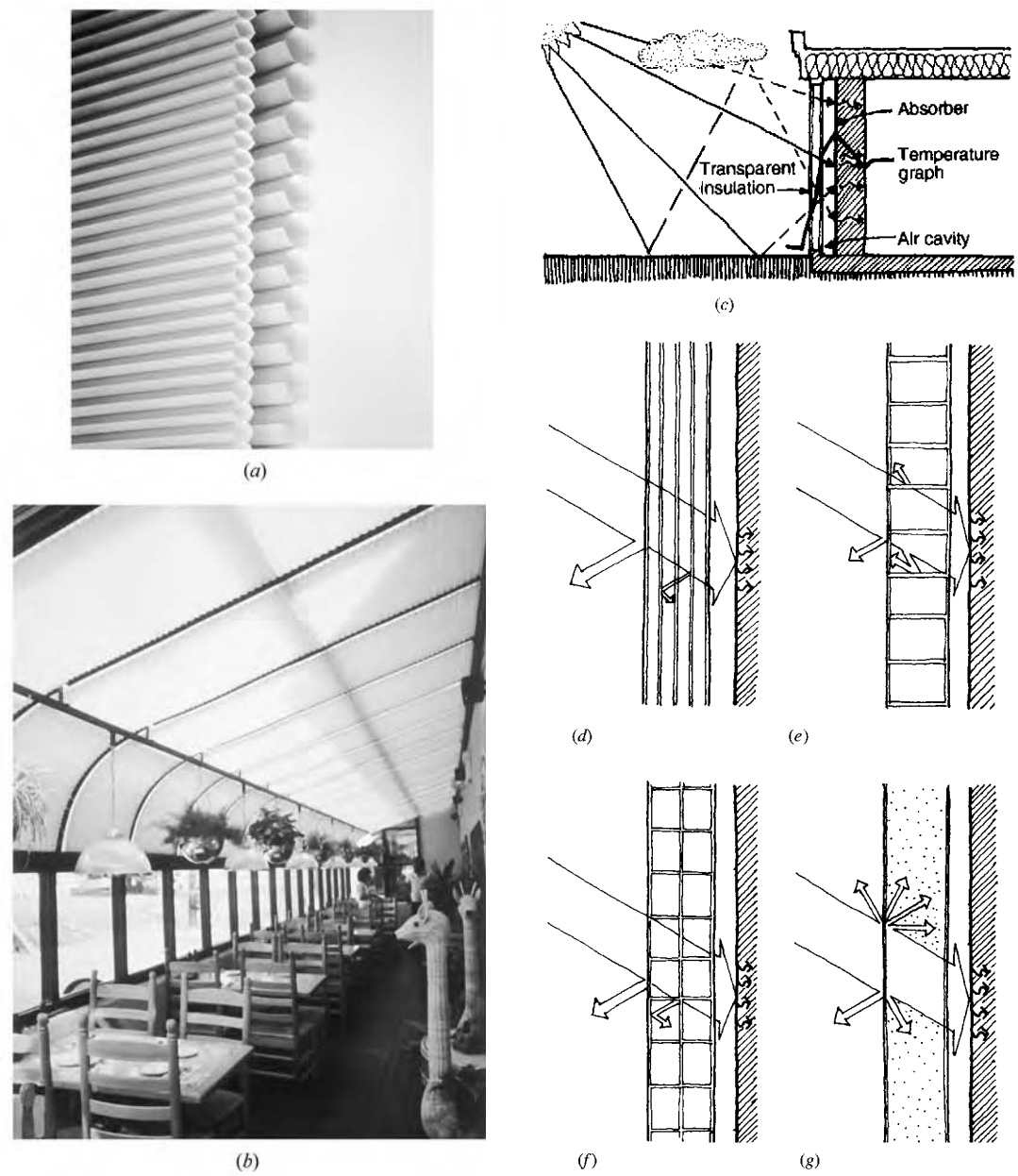


Fig. 8.25 *Variations on insulation for solar apertures. Transparent insulation materials (TIMs) in most applications are more translucent than transparent. (a) The Duette window shade, when installed over double glazing, has winter R-values as follows: at 3⁄8 in. (9.5 mm) thick: translucent, R 3.23; 3⁄4 in. (19 mm) thick: translucent R 3.57; opaque, R 4.2. (b) The shades can move either vertically or horizontally, cover both planar and curved surfaces, and be either motor or manually operated. (c) These translucent materials are particularly effective as insulation for Trombe walls, where the heated mass can be insulated from the cold winter air temperatures yet still receive strong sunlight. (Courtesy of the Fraunhofer Institute, Freiburg, Germany, and* Solar Today, *American Solar Energy Society.) (d) Absorber-parallel systems utilize multiple films, as in "superwindows." The more layers, the greater the optical losses. (e) Absorber-vertical structures include honeycomb or capillary materials. Some scattering and absorption of light occurs, but optical losses are lower than with type (d). (f) Cavity structures combine absorber-parallel and absorber-vertical structures. (g) Quasi-homogeneous layers are similar to cavity structures and include aerogel. (Courtesy of Hunter Douglas, Inc., Broomfield, CO.)*

TABLE 8.9 Transparent Insulation Materials (TIM)

PART A. HONEYCOMB AND CAPILLARY STRUCTURES			
		U-Factors[a,b]	
TIM	**τ Diffuse[b]**	**Btu/h ft² °F**	**W/m² K**
Honeycomb polycarbonate			
Thickness 1.97 in. (50 mm)	0.85	0.35	2.0
Thickness 3.94 in. (100 mm)	0.78	0.19	1.07
Capillaries, polycarbonate			
Thickness 3.94 in. (100 mm)	0.73	0.17	0.98
Capillaries, PMMA (acrylic glass)			
Thickness 3.94 in. (100 mm)	0.80	0.16	0.91
PART B. AEROGEL BETWEEN DOUBLE GLAZING			
		U-Factors[a]	
Aerogel Granule Diameter	**τ Diffuse[b]**	**Btu/h ft² °F**	**W/m² K**
<0.079 in. (<2 mm)	0.22	0.17	0.98
0.118–0.157 in. (3–4 mm)	0.40	0.18	1.03
0.157–0.236 in. (4–6 mm)	0.42	0.20	1.13
0.236–0.315 in. (6–8 mm)	0.43	0.20	1.15

Source: Wittwer et al. (1991).

[a]Mean temperature 50°F (10°C), Δt 18F° (10 K).

[b]Part A values are based on the TIM only, without the glass cover necessary in the actual application.

be close if we remember to reduce the τ diffuse and slightly increase the U-factor to account for a single cover sheet of glass.

(b) Direct-Gain (DG) Systems

These are the most commonly encountered systems because nearly all south-facing spaces have windows, and at least some have areas of internal thermal mass. In Table F.4, three of the four early solar examples utilize some DG collection. DG buildings include the Cottage Restaurant (Fig. 1.14) and the Oregon office in Fig. 8.6. The most common problems are overheating on sunny winter days and inadequate area of thermal mass.

For DG spaces, the thermal mass should be widely distributed around the room so that direct sun can strike the mass surface and/or be reflected to the mass surface as soon as possible on entering the window. Table F.2 gives design guidelines for mass; the DG reference systems (Appendix H) list either a 3:1 or a 6:1 mass-to-glass area ratio. However, even more mass area will give a more thermally stable performance, as will become clear in Section 8.10(i); a common recommendation for DG spaces above 50% SSF is for a thermal mass area five to seven times the area of glass (for no more than the optimum 4-in. masonry thickness). There are many common ways to provide such mass surfaces, including brick veneer and clay tile over a bed of grout. These surfaces can be applied to a frame construction. Floors (such as slab on grade) are easy ways to achieve large mass areas, but carpeting and rugs are very popular with occupants.

(c) Sunspaces (SS)

These are the next most common systems, especially the prefabricated "add-on" type shown in the Kelbaugh house (Table F.4). Perhaps the most common problem is the expectation that an SS will be a greenhouse where exotic plants will thrive. But the SS is a "thermal servant" to the "thermal master" space behind it; comfortable temperatures in the master space are achieved at the cost of *very wide temperature swings* in the servant space. Consequently, while there are many times in a day when the SS is at a comfortable temperature, there are other times when it is not. In the First Village example (Table F.4 and Fig. 8.26), the SS contains the stairs. Although not always thermally comfortable, the passage between floors is at least rapid and visually pleasant. The "master" spaces beyond, on both floors, can choose the degree of interaction with the SS by opening doors and windows into it.

When the SS's common wall is masonry, the conductive flow of heat from servant to master is built in. Yet many of the SS systems in Appendix H show an insulated, lightweight-frame common wall. It is important to remember that, with such insulated common walls, the SS is assumed to contain *a row of water containers* extending across the full east–west width of the SS. These theoretical containers are twice as high as they are wide and sit adjacent to (but not on) the floor and the common wall. They have a volume of 1 ft^3 for every 1 ft^2 of common wall. This takes quite a bit of SS floor area.

Both masonry and insulated common wall SS systems assume available thermocirculation vents in the common wall; the top vents are 8 ft (2.4 m) above the bottom vents, and the top vents constitute 3% of the area of the common wall, as

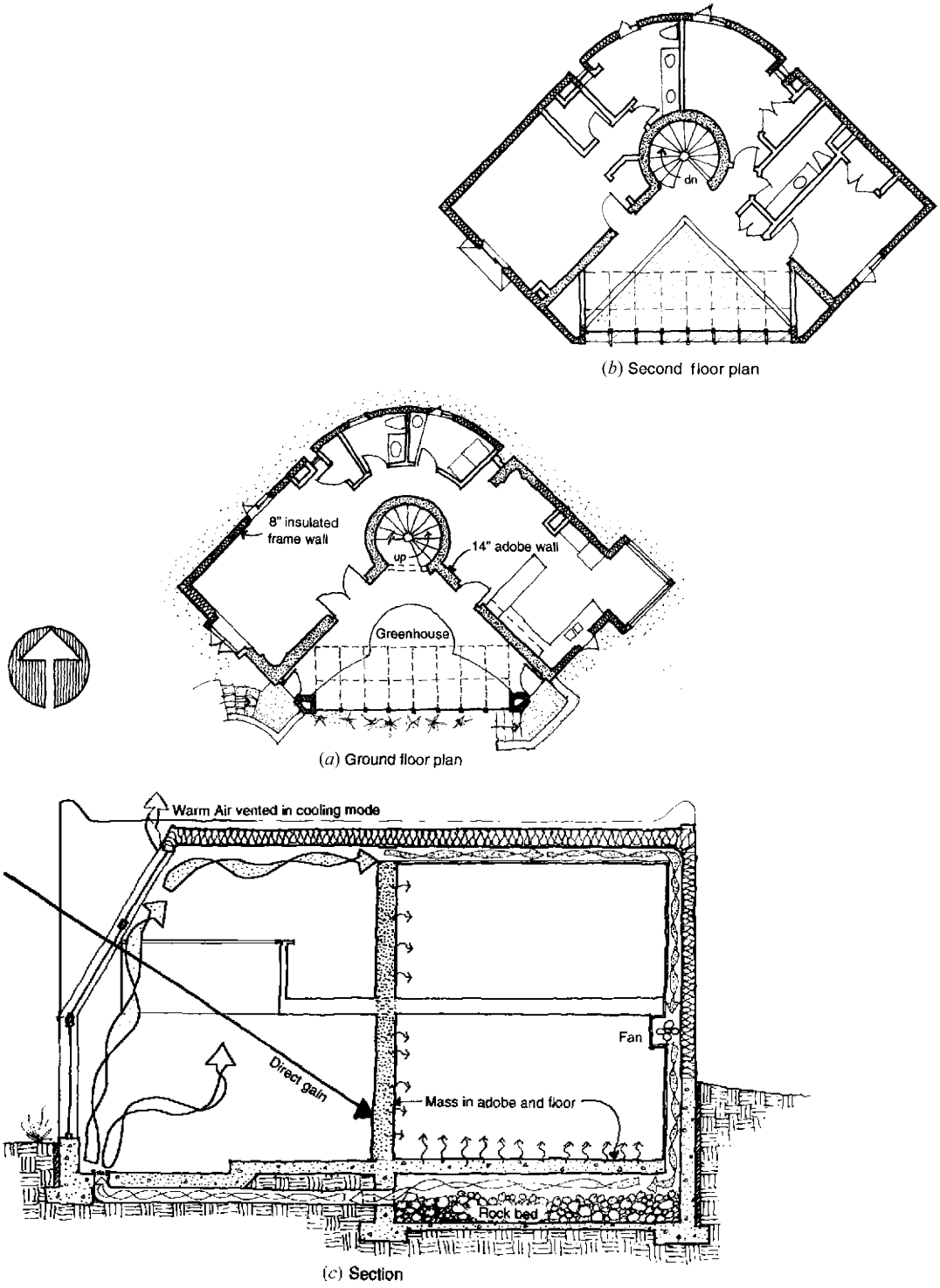


Fig. 8.26 *An early and well-known example of sunspace passive solar heating, Unit 1, First Village. Regularly-occupied spaces border the northeast and northwest sides of the enclosed sunspace. (a) Ground floor plan. (b) Upper floor plan. (c) Section showing how the hottest air from the sunspace (midday to late afternoon) can be forced into a rockbed below the main floor for nighttime radiant heat. (Drawings based in part on Sandia National Laboratory, 1977.* Passive Solar Buildings: A Compilation of Data and Results. *Sand 77-1204.)*

do the bottom vents. All SS systems are assumed to have a thermally massive, perimeter-insulated floor slab on grade.

The SS system descriptions are quite explicit as to dimensions (Fig. H.1), but variations from these dimensions are not a problem *if the proportions of length-width-height are maintained.* It is the shape, rather than the dimensions, of each SS type that influences its performance.

(d) Trombe Walls (TW)

These systems are considerably less common. When used, they often have rather large DG openings within the TW for daylight and view. This is the case with the Kelbaugh house (Table F.4), an unusual example that mixes three passive systems. The main advantage of TW systems is thermal stability; the diurnal temperature swings are less than with most other passive systems. They deliver a large portion of their heat by radiation to the space. The main disadvantages seem to be the loss of view and daylight, and keeping the air space clean between the Trombe mass wall and the glass. Objects that interfere with radiant heat transfer from the interior surface must also be minimized.

Two major choices are *vented* and *unvented.* The vented TW systems provide naturally moving air (via the stack effect between the mass and the glass) in addition to heat conducted through the mass wall. They deliver warmer air sooner than an identical-but-unvented mass wall, thanks to the flow of warmed air. They also introduce dust and dirt to the space between the mass and the glass.

The unvented TW systems deliver heat quite a bit later, with the result of quite low daily temperature variations and warmth arriving in the evening. They are somewhat less efficient than vented TW because the very high temperature at midday between the mass and glass results in more heat flow out through the glass.

The warehouse in Fig. 8.27 utilizes a very high vented TW in the New England winter. The detail shows a simple device to prevent reverse airflow at night. This Vermont warehouse utilizes ceiling fans to prevent stratification of warm air at the ceiling. Daylighting is provided by roof monitors; the TW is vented to the outside in summer.

(e) Water Walls (WW)

These are the least common systems of all. Perhaps, as with roof ponds, this is another case of water phobia. They can be specially made, or made of corrugated galvanized steel culverts, steel drums, or fiberglass-reinforced plastic tubes (for which manufacturers provide suggested installation details). Within WW containers, some air space should be provided, as water expands when it heats. Either a rust inhibitor or a sacrificial anode should be added to the water within steel containers. Remember that WW systems should be opaque, not transparent; the more transparent the tubes, the closer to DG will be their performance. This is discussed later in Section 8.10(g).

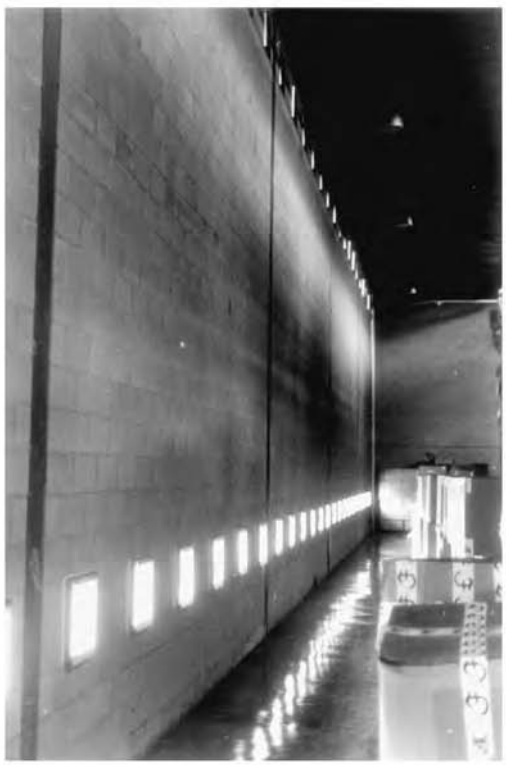
Specially made WW can fit neatly below windows or anywhere else within exterior wall framing. The San Luis Solar Group Complex includes a house and an architectural studio (Fig. 8.28) near Santa Margarita, California. Both buildings utilize daylight (including clerestories and skylights), DG, PV, and domestic water panel collectors; there is also a small hydropower system adjacent to the complex. Of special interest here are the WW steel panels, 9 in. (230 mm) thick and painted on the outer surface with a black selective paint behind double glazing. The selective surface paint is an excellent absorber of short-wave solar radiation but a poor emitter of long-wave radiation from the heated black surface. The inside steel surface is painted and exposed to the space to be heated. These WW are used in the conference room of the studio, the dining area, and the upstairs bedroom. They are unobtrusive and correspond approximately to WWC2 in Appendix H.

(f) Load Collector Ratio (LCR) Annual Performance

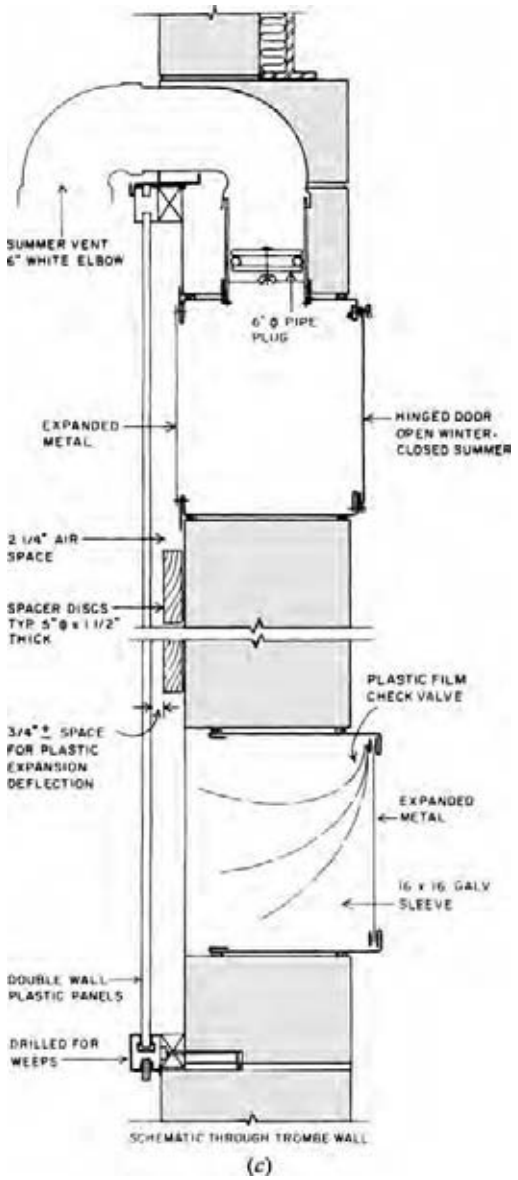
The following procedure is based on Balcomb et al., *Passive Solar Heating Analysis* (1984), published by ASHRAE and reprinted by permission. The reference offers a much wider variety of passive systems and a wider network of location listings than can be presented in this book. Along with more "sensitivity curves" to allow prediction for nonstandard passive systems, the reference also provides a much more time-consuming and detailed method for calculating the *monthly* SSF and auxiliary energy needs; the method presented here gives annual results only.



(a)



(b)

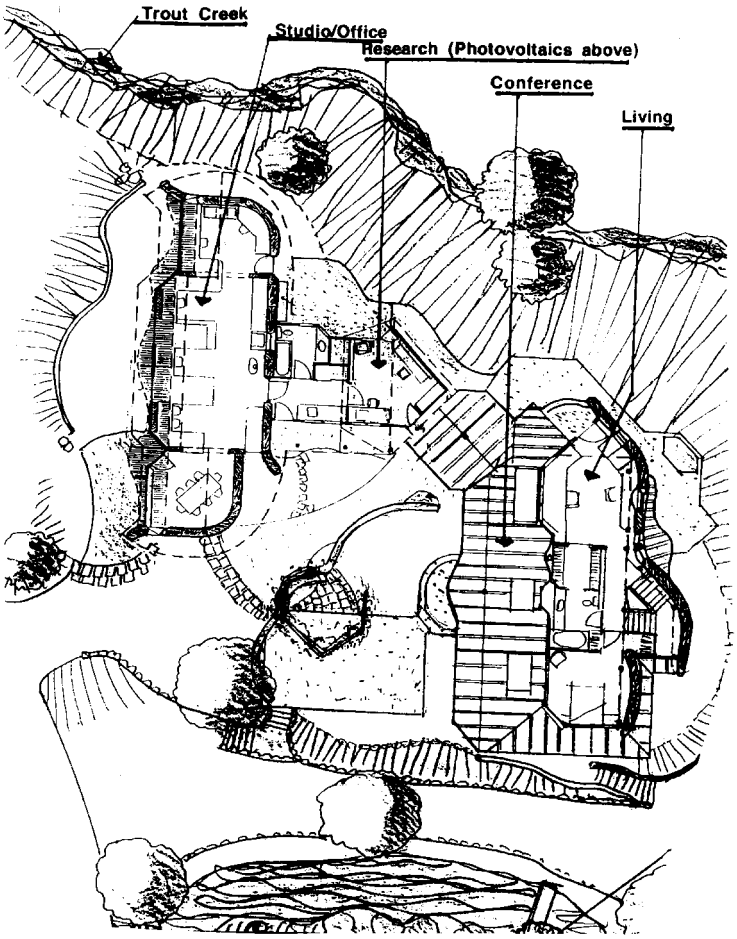


(c)

Fig. 8.27 *The warehouse for the Famolare shoe company in Brattleboro, Vermont (a) uses a huge vented Trombe wall, 20 ft by 184 ft (6.1 m by 56.1 m). The Trombe wall faces 10° east of south. The pond in the foreground is an absorption basin for rainwater from the roof and pavement. (Photo by Robert Perron.) (b) Interior shows lower and upper vents. (c) Simple switches at the bottom prevent reverse thermosiphoning on cold nights; seasonal switches at the top provide building ventilation, via the Trombe wall, in summer. Spacer disks prevent plastic double glazing from deflecting too far inward when its inner surface overheats. (Reprinted from* Architectural Record*, November 1979; © 1979 by McGraw-Hill, Inc.; all rights reserved. Reproduced with the permission of the publisher. Courtesy of Banwell White Arnold Hemberger & Partners, Architects, Hanover, NH.)*

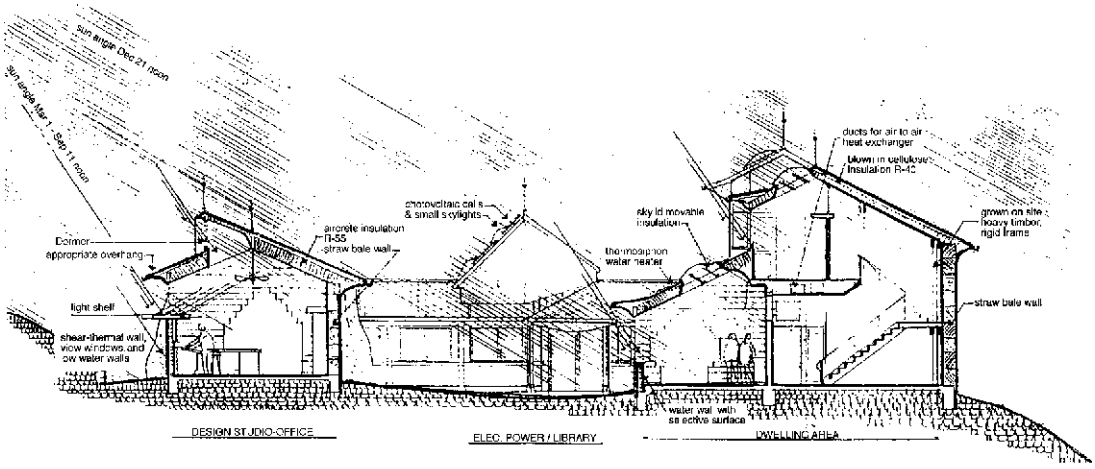


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 8.28 *The San Luis Solar Group Complex near Santa Margarita, California, includes a house and an architectural studio. PV and micro-hydroelectricity generation joins daylighting, passive solar heating, and passive cooling in this innovative installation. (a) South façade of the studio. (b) Site plan. (c) Section north–south. (d) Exterior of a specially built water wall below a window serving the dining room. (Drawings courtesy of San Luis Solar Group, Santa Margarita, CA.)*



(*c*)



(*d*)

Fig. 8.28 *(Continued)*

Thus, Balcomb et al. (1984) is an important and perhaps indispensable reference for the serious passive solar designer.

The method presented here, called the *load collector ratio* (LCR), yields the annual SSF and auxiliary energy needs for a building. This method has the following steps:

STEP 1. Choose the location and the reference passive system that most closely coincide with your building and its site. The locations listed in Appendices C and H are shown in Fig. C.1; the reference passive systems for which performance data are available (Appendix H) are summarized in Table H.1. If your system differs significantly from the closest reference system, see Section 8.10(g).

STEP 2. Tentatively select a size for the solar openings, balancing the design guidelines for SSF (Table F.1) with those for daylighting (Table 14.5) and, if applicable, for ventilation (Figs. 8.13 and 8.14).

STEP 3. Calculate the "non-south" envelope heat loss rate, UA_{ns}, for the building design—one that *excludes* the solar openings but *includes* all other envelope losses, as well as the infiltration loss. Then multiply UA_{ns} by 24 h to obtain Btu/DD; this is called the *building load coefficient* (BLC).

$$\text{BLC} = 24 \times UA_{ns}$$

STEP 4. Check your building's overall loss rate against the criteria from Table 8.3:

$$\text{Btu/DD ft}^2 = \frac{\text{BLC}}{\text{floor area (ft}^2)}$$

Does your building envelope conserve energy sufficiently, or do you need more insulation (or less non-south glass or less infiltration)?

STEP 5. Determine the *vertical projection* of the solar opening area A_P. (For a vertical solar opening, A_P is identical to the actual opening area; for a 45°-inclined solar opening, $A_P = 0.707$ actual area.)

STEP 6. Find the LCR, expressed in Btu/DD ft^2:

$$\text{LCR} = \frac{\text{BLC}}{A_P}$$

STEP 7. For the reference system that most closely approaches your design, consult Table H.3 for the appropriate location. By interpolation, find the annual SSF that corresponds to your passive system's listed LCR. Note also the annual DD65 listed in this table.

STEP 8. Finally, determine the approximate annual auxiliary heating Q required:

$$Q = (1 - \text{SSF}) \times \text{BLC} \times \text{DD}$$

Although this quick annual-results method is based on the DD65 listed in Table H.3, it is possible to adjust Q to *approximately* account for higher internal gains or better-insulated envelopes. In this adjustment, use DD based on the balance point instead of DD65 in the previous equation.

STEP 9. Now compare the design guideline–predicted relationship between collector size and SSF to the actual one you have just calculated. If the SSF is *smaller* than you had hoped, can you decrease BLC (improve conservation) or increase collector size, or switch to another passive system with a more favorable SSF for the same LCR? If the SSF is *larger*, will you be happy with the increased fuel savings, or will you reduce the collector size or consider another, less-efficient passive system that has some architectural advantage over the one for which you calculated SSF? Table F.4 shows approximate LCRs for four historic solar buildings.

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART H What is the annual SSF for the Oregon office building in Fig. 8.6?

SOLUTION

The reference passive system most closely corresponding to the DG in a typical bay is found in Table H.1, Part D: DGC1 has a high thermal storage capacity, based on an average thermal mass thickness of 4 in., and a ratio of mass to south glass area of 6:1. It has standard performance double-glazed windows with no night insulation. (From Table 8.2, the actual building's mass to south glass area ratio is 2232 ft^2/229 ft^2 = almost 10:1.) The BLC of the typical bay is

$$24 \text{ h/day} \times (42 + 25 + 72 + 174 \text{ infiltration}) \text{ Btu/h °F} = 7512 \text{ Btu/DD}$$

The LCR of the typical bay is therefore

$$\frac{7512 \text{ BLC}}{229 \text{ ft}^2 \text{ collector area}} = 32.8$$

From Table H.3, for Salem, Oregon, with LCR = 33, system DGC1, SSF = about 27%, compared to the design guideline (Example 8.1, Part C) of SSF = 25%.

Note that if superior performance windows had been used throughout the typical bay, the BLC would be reduced. The north window UA would become 97 $ft^2 \times 0.30$ Btu/h ft^2 °F = 29. Thus BLC =

24 h/day × (42 + 25 + 29 + 174 infiltration) Btu/h °F
= 6480 Btu/DD

The passive system now closest to the actual building is DGC2, with triple-glazed, thus lower U-factor openings. The new LCR is

$$\frac{6480 \text{ BLC}}{229 \text{ ft}^2 \text{ collector}} = 28.3$$

Therefore, with DGC2 in Salem, Oregon, with LCR of 28.3, find SSF as follows:

At LCR 25, SSF = 41; at LCR 30, SSF = 37 (from Table H.3)

Salem SSF range 41 – 37 = Δ4

Salem LCR range 30 – 25 = Δ5

(Actual LCR) – (Salem minimum LCR) = 28.3 – 25 = 3.3; therefore

= 3.3 (Δ4/Δ5) = 2.6, to be added to the minimum SSF

Actual SSF = 37 + 2.6% = 39.6%

This is a substantial improvement that increases the energy saved by about 50%. ■

EXAMPLE 8.11 We now take a more detailed look at the solar collecting area required for the passively solar-heated building in Omaha, Nebraska, discussed in Example 8.2.

SOLUTION

From the design guidelines used in Example 8.2, we expected that 20% of the floor area in south glass with superior performance would yield a 51% SSF. More detailed characteristics of this building are shown in Fig. 8.29. From a program requirement of 2900 ft^2 of floor area, the 20% south glass area equals $0.20 \times 2900 = 580$ ft^2. For daylighting by sidelight only, $DF_{av} = 0.2$ (window area/floor area); if all of the south glass area is available for daylighting (as with DG systems), $DF_{av} = 0.2 \times 20\%$, or 4%. This is adequate for office work. However, because you want to avoid dark areas near the rear walls of these spaces and investigate Trombe walls, and so on, some north light is desirable. Choose about 3% of the floor area in north glass (say, 90 ft^2 glass); added $DF_{av} = 0.2 \times 3\% = 0.6\%$ additional.

Wall and roof insulation and overall percentage wall area in fenestration should be checked against the requirements of local codes and the current version of ASHRAE Standard 90.1. The fenestration area:

south glass 580 ft^2 + north glass 90 ft^2 = 670 ft^2

Total wall area:

north 1100 ft^2 + south 1100 ft^2 + east 600 ft^2
+ west 600 ft^2 = 3400 ft^2

Fenestration/wall area ratio = 670 ft^2/3400 ft^2
= 20%

Coincidentally, this is also the percentage floor area in south glazing.

We will assume that the following maximum U-factors meet codes and standards and that ventilation at the rate of 20 cfm per person is provided. The building will house 2900 ft^2/180 ft^2 per person = 16 people. Outdoor airflow (in place of infiltration) = 20 cfm per person × 16 people = 320 cfm.

STEP 1. Given the emphasis on daylight and the original assumption of night ventilation with the windows, choose system DGC2. This has triple-glazed windows and will require six times as much thermally massive surface area (minimum 4-in. thick) as south glass area:

6×580 ft^2 south glass
= 3480 ft^2 exposed thermal mass, minimum

If all interior surfaces of exterior walls are exposed concrete block, we obtain

3400 ft^2 wall total – 670 ft^2 window
= 2730 ft^2 interior mass area

which is not sufficient. So, add at least 750 ft^2 exposed concrete slab floor area, such as a 10-ft-wide strip just inside the south windows, for the entire length of the building.

STEP 2. The solar opening was selected at 20% floor area, or 580 ft^2.

STEP 3. Calculate UA_{ns}.

North, east, and west opaque (mass) walls:
2210 $ft^2 \times 0.08 = 177$

South opaque (mass) wall: 520 $ft^2 \times 0.08 = 42$

Roof (insulation above deck): 1974 $ft^2 \times 0.048 = 95$

Slab perimeter: 200 lin ft × 0.54* Btu/h °F lin ft
= 108

North glass: (triple-glazed, U = 0.33): 90 $ft^2 \times 0.33$
= 30

Ventilation: 320 cfm × 1.1 Btu min/h ft^3 °F = 346

Total 798 Btu/h °F

*From Table E.11, assuming insulated construction type (a), with R = 5.4 insulation, and interpolating for 6601 DD65.

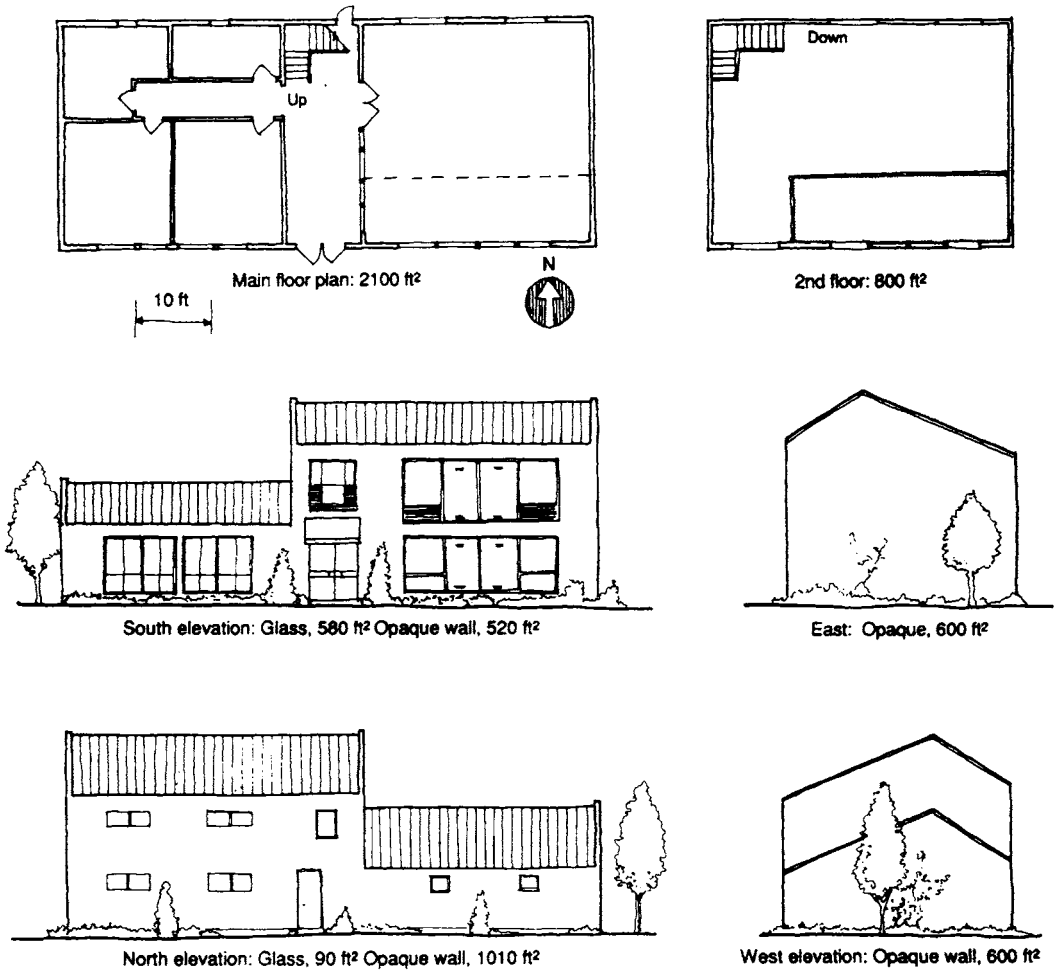


Fig. 8.29 *Plans and elevations of the Omaha, Nebraska, office building discussed in Example 8.11.*

Then

$$\text{BLC} = 798 \text{ Btu/h °F} \times 24 \text{ h/DD}$$
$$= 19{,}152 \text{ Btu/DD}$$

STEP 4. Calculate overall heat loss rate:

$$\frac{19{,}152 \text{ Btu/DD}}{2900 \text{ ft}^2 \text{ floor}} = 6.6 \text{ Btu/DD ft}^2$$

This is considerably in excess of the Table 8.3 criterion of 4.6 Btu/DD ft^2 for this 6300 DD65 climate. Unless further conservation steps are taken, the annual SSF is likely to be much lower than was predicted by the design guideline. Promising targets: more insulation for the wall, slab edge, and roof; a heat exchanger for that 320 cfm of outdoor air.

STEP 5. Determine the vertical projection of the solar opening. The south windows are vertical; therefore, A_P is identical to the actual area, 580 ft^2.

STEP 6. Find the LCR:

$$\frac{19{,}152 \text{ Btu/DD}}{580 \text{ ft}^2} = 33.0$$

STEP 7. Enter Table H.3 for Omaha, Nebraska, LCR = 33, and DGC2. Interpolate between LCR 30 and 40. The annual SSF is found to be about 29.2%.

STEP 8. The approximate annual auxiliary heating required is

$$Q = (1 - 0.292) \times 19{,}152 \times 6300 \text{ DD}$$
$$= \text{about } 85{,}425{,}500 \text{ Btu}$$

STEP 9. Compare the actual SSF with the predicted value: SSF = 29.2% is only about three-fifths of the 51% SSF predicted by the guideline due to inadequate conservation measures, as explained in Step 4. A lower LCR yields a higher SSF; thus a larger collector area would lower the LCR. However,

Step 4 indicated that lower BLC, not higher A_P, is the better way to achieve a lower LCR in this case.

Table H.3 can be used to compare the relative efficiencies of many passive heating systems. Using the column of LCR = 30, for instance, the best-performing systems are:

Omaha, Nebraska, LCR = 30	
WWB4	47% SSF
WWC2	45%
SSE2	44%
DGC3	42% (movable insulation)
TWD4	42%
TWE2	42%

If any one of these systems is more architecturally compatible with the building program and/or design intent, it could be used instead of DGC2. In this case, DGC2 gives substantial daylighting with little impact on the exterior appearance; the large area of thermal mass necessary was relatively easily obtained. DGC2 appears to be a reasonable choice for this building in this climate, if the client prefers not to use movable insulation over windows. ■

What if two or more passive systems are used in the same building? In that case, first do calculations for the entire building, assuming that *one* system has *all* the solar area, and find the SSF. Next, do the calculations assuming that the second system has all the solar area, and find its SSF. Then average the SSF values according to the relative solar areas of the two systems.

EXAMPLE 8.12 A veterinary clinic in Buffalo, New York, is using two systems: WW for examination rooms and DG for the waiting/reception area. The building's characteristics are

Balance point = 50°F

UA_{ns} = 356 Btu/h °F

A_P WW = 240 ft^2 (reference system WWB4)

A_P DG = 150 ft^2 (reference system DGA3)

Total floor area = 1900 ft^2

Predicted SSF from design guideline = about 36%, superior performance

Checking the overall heat loss criteria (Table 8.3),

$$\frac{356 \times 24}{1900 \text{ ft}^2} = 4.5 \text{ Btu/DD ft}^2$$

This is less than 4.6 (for 5000 to 7000 DD), so it is acceptable.

SOLUTION

First, calculate as though all A_P (390 ft^2) were system WWB4:

$$\text{BLC} = 24 \times 356 = 8544 \text{ Btu/DD}$$

$$\text{LCR} = \frac{8544}{390} = 22$$

For Buffalo, LCR 20 yields SSF = 0.37, and LCR 25 yields SSF = 0.31, so SSF = 0.35 by interpolation.

Next, calculate as though all A_P were system DGA3. For LCR 22, Buffalo SSF = 0.28 by interpolation.

Now calculate the average SSF, given that the WW comprises 240/390 = 62% of the total solar opening and DG comprises 150/390 = 38%:

$$\frac{0.35(62\%) + 0.28(38\%)}{100\%} = 0.217 + 0.106$$

$$= 0.323; \text{ SSF} = 0.32$$

Result: The SSF is about 90% of what was predicted (0.32 as opposed to 0.36); because the glass area is already large, program requirements probably prevent further increases. The building already seems to conserve energy well, because it meets the Table 8.3 heat loss criteria.

The approximate annual auxiliary heating energy required is

$$Q = (1 - 0.32) \times 8544 \text{ Btu/DD} \times 3322 \text{ DD50 (balance point)} = 19 \text{ million Btu}$$

(This is equivalent to about 5600 kWh, or about 220 therms of natural gas burned at 85% efficiency.) ■

(g) Variations on Reference Systems

A particularly wide set of choices faces the designer of DG and SS systems, in which mass distribution and glass orientation can assume thousands of different combinations. The *sensitivity curves* furnished in Balcomb et al. (1984) give some guidance on how a predicted SSF might vary as an actual passive system departs from a reference system.

Sensitivity curves can serve as early general design guidelines. Looking at the curves for your location, which design changes yield dramatic results, and which make little difference? The curves may also be used to adjust the SSF found for a reference design.

One passive solar example that departs radically from any reference case is the Class of 1959 Chapel at the Harvard Business School in Cambridge, Massachusetts (Fig. 8.30). The glazed "sunspace" resembles system type SSA in that it is attached to (rather than set into) the building behind it. However, this is manifestly *not* the simple rectangular SS plan, and the solar aperture is divided into southeast- and southwest-facing halves. The aperture A_P is doubly complicated: the vertical dimension is the vertical projection of the sloping wall, whereas the horizontal dimension is the due-south projection of the plan. From Table H.1, because of the glazed end walls and masonry common wall, it comes closest to either SSA3 (standard performance) or SSA4 (superior performance). This depends upon the glazing chosen—in this case, clear double glazing with low-ε, air space approximately ½-in. (13-mm) thick. In Cambridge (Boston), for a small LCR (a huge solar aperture relative to the building behind), the Balcomb reference shows:

If LCR =	*25*	*20*	*15*
If SSA3, then SSF =	37	41	47
If SSA4, then SSF =	55	61	69

Given the complex geometry of this SS, the safer assumption is standard performance.

Water walls are rather uncommon in buildings, despite their relatively high performance throughout Table H.3. These systems are based on opaque containers, but some designers are attracted by the idea of daylight filtering through translucent water containers. Algae growth in transparent plastic tubes, encouraged by the daylight that passes through them, is usually controlled by the addition of an algaecide to the water. Dyes may be added to change the color of daylight seen through tubes or water-filled glass block, as in Fig. 8.31. The "WW" of this Long Island library is actually a hybrid between DG (light passes through the glass to strike massive surfaces beyond) and WW (all

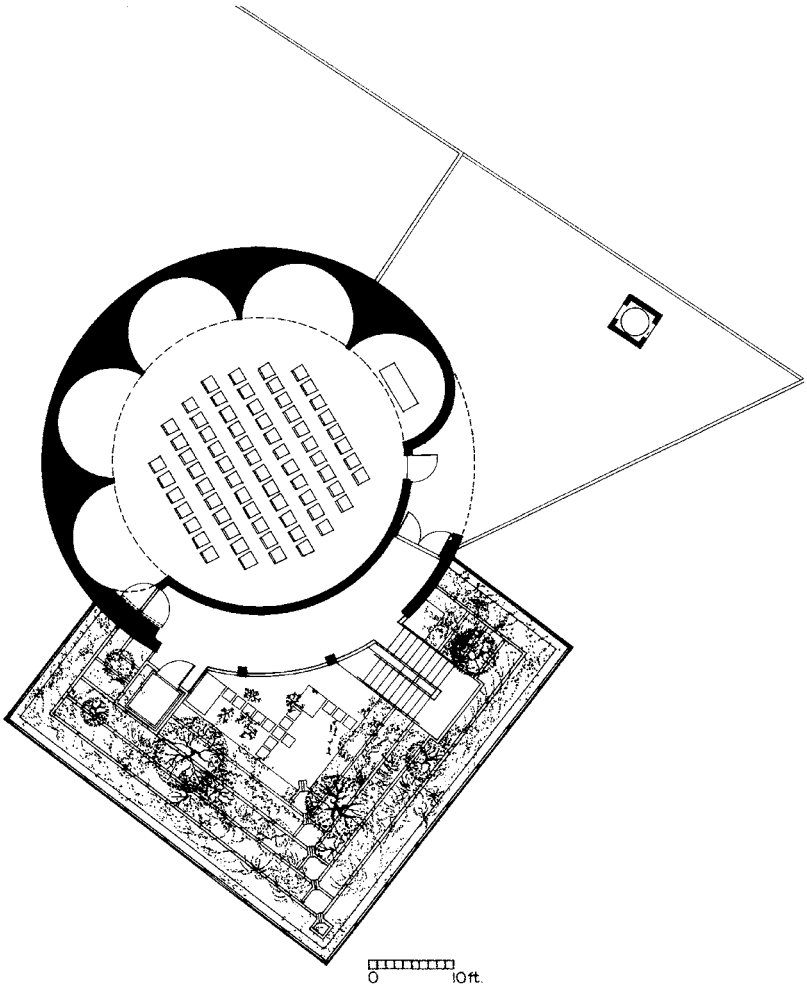


(*a*)

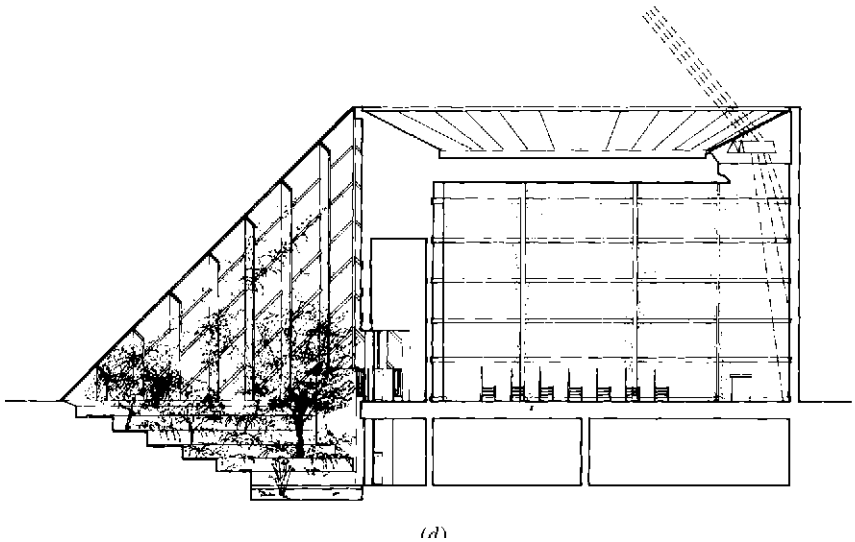


(*b*)

Fig. 8.30 *The Class of 1959 Chapel at the Harvard Business School is entered (a) through a sunspace with a sunken garden. (b) South-facing glazing of the sunspace. (c) Plan; south is about 30° east of the point of the sunspace. (d) Section. This is not a typical sunspace type from Appendix H. (Drawings courtesy of Moshe Safdi and Associates, Inc., Somerville, MA.)*



(*c*)

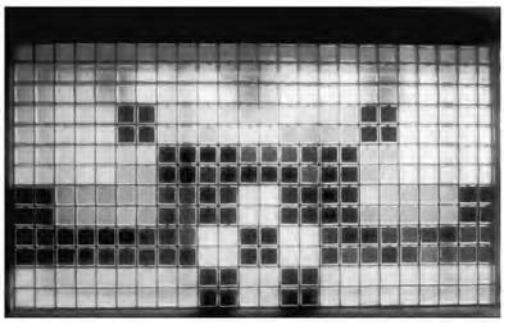


(*d*)

Fig. 8.30 *(Continued)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 8.31 *The Center Moriches Free Public Library (Long Island, New York) utilized water-filled glass block as a heat storage and daylight-diffusing south wall (a). Because the water storage is translucent, it functions somewhere between a DG and a WW system. Dyes add color to selected blocks, forming the pattern shown (b). Lightshelves and stack ventilators add to its energy-conserving performance. (Courtesy of Banwell White Arnold Hemberger & Partners, Architects, Hanover, NH.)*

light is converted to heat within the opaque water containers, then passed to the space beyond). To assess the performance of such a system, interpolate between the entire aperture considered as the relevant DG system and the same entire aperture considered as the relevant WW system. The higher the visible transmittance, the closer to DG performance will be the result.

(h) Thermal Lag through Mass Walls

The time necessary for solar heat to pass through various thermally massive materials is shown in Table 8.10. This time lag can be put to use when the time of maximum solar heat is different from the time of maximum internal heat need. A typical example is for a residence's living room in winter,

TABLE 8.10 Time Lag through Homogeneous[a] Walls

Material	Thickness (in.)	U-Factor[b] (Btu/h ft^2)	Time Lag (h)
Stone	8	0.67	5.5
	12	0.55	8.0
	16	0.47	10.5
	24	0.36	15.5
Solid concrete	2	0.98	1.1
	4	0.84	2.5
	6	0.74	3.8
	8	0.66	5.1
	12	0.54	7.8
	16	0.46	10.2
Common brick	4	0.60	2.3
	8	0.41	5.5
	12	0.31	8.5
	16	0.25	12.0
Face brick	4	0.77	2.4
Wood	½	0.68	0.17
	1	0.48	0.45
	2	0.30	1.3
Insulating board	½	0.42	0.08
	1	0.26	0.23
	2	0.14	0.77
	4	0.08	2.7
	6	0.05	5.0

Source: Victor Olgyay, *Design with Climate: Bioclimatic Approach to Architectural Regionalism*, Copyright © 1963 by Princeton University Press. Reprinted by permission.

[a]For composite constructions, add an estimated additional time lag to the sum of the individual materials' time lags as follows:

Two-layer, light construction:	½ hour more
Three or more layers:	1 hour more
Very heavy construction:	1 hour more

[b]The U-factor is based on outdoor surface conductance of 4.0 and an indoor surface conductance of 1.65 Btu/h ft^2 °F.

in which the late evening sedentary entertainment hours occur with cold temperatures outside, yet maximum warmth is desired inside. A Trombe wall, for instance, made of solid grouted concrete block and 12 in. thick, will delay the arrival of maximum solar gain to the interior by almost 8 hours. If maximum solar heat gain occurs at about 1:00 P.M. (maximum sun at noon but highest temperatures at about 2:00 P.M.), then such a TW would deliver the maximum heat to the inner surface at about 9:00 P.M.

(i) Internal Temperatures

Two quantities are of particular interest to passive solar designers. How much higher, compared to the outdoor temperature, will the average indoor temperature be from solar heating alone? Also, how widely will this internal temperature vary (swing) on a clear winter day?

The approximate temperature difference between inside and outside on a *clear* January day, called Δt *solar*, can be estimated from Fig. 8.32; it varies with latitude and with the LCR. Sunspaces are not shown in the figure. Although the temperature within an SS cannot be easily approximated, the Δt solar for the room beyond the SS can be approximated by using Fig. 8.32*a*, if these spaces have an insulated common wall, or Fig. 8.30*b* if they have a masonry common wall.

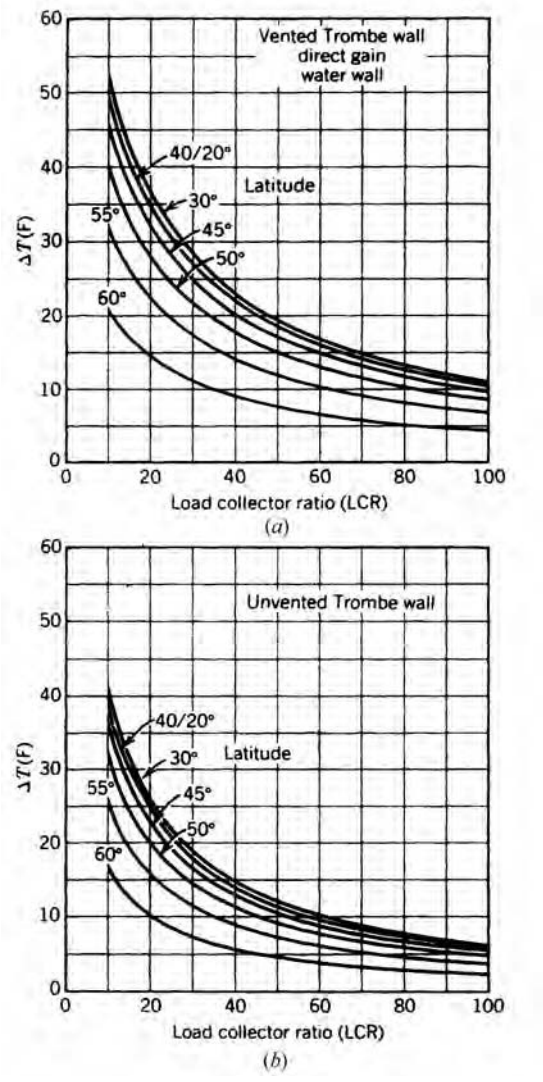


Fig. 8.32 *Graphs of Δt solar, the temperature difference to be expected between the average inside temperature and the average outside temperature on a clear January day. The curve marked "40°/20°" applies to both 40° latitude and 20° latitude. (a) Δt solar for direct gain, water wall, vented Trombe wall, or sunspace (insulated common wall) systems. (b) Δt solar for unvented Trombe wall or sunspace (masonry common wall) systems. (From Balcomb et al., 1980.)*

To determine the average winter indoor temperature:

1. Find the average January ambient (outdoor) temperature, *TA*, from Appendix C.
2. Find Δt solar for the building and its site (Fig. 8.32).
3. Find the Δt due to internal heat sources:

$$\Delta t \text{ internal} = \frac{\text{total internal gains (Btu/day)}}{\text{BLC} + (UA_s \times 24)}$$

   where UA_s is for the solar area only. Note: Δt internal averages 5 to 7F° for residences.
4. Add the quantities from the first three steps to find the average January clear-day indoor temperature.

When internal gains are high, there is less need for Δt solar; the building is mostly "heating itself" (becoming an ILD rather than an SLD building). If the average indoor temperature is too high, smaller solar openings should be considered, unless the climate is predominantly cloudy (clear days rare) in November through January.

The other important comfort question concerns the size of the *temperature swing* due to passive solar heating. Controlled by the sun and by the actions of users rather than by a thermostat, passive solar buildings typically experience larger daily variations (swings) in indoor temperature than do conventional buildings, especially on clear days. To estimate your building's clear-day January temperature swing, or Δt *swing*, see Table 8.11. The average indoor temperature determined previously will fall in the middle of this Δt swing.

TABLE 8.11 Indoor Temperature Swing, Δt Swing

Passive Solar System	Δt Swing[a]
DG: $\frac{\text{mass area}}{\text{glass area}} = 1.5$	$1.11 \times \Delta t$ solar
$= 3$	$0.74 \times \Delta t$ solar
$= 9$	$0.37 \times \Delta t$ solar
WW	$0.39 \times \Delta t$ solar
TW, vented for 3% of wall area	$0.65 \times \Delta t$ solar
TW, unvented	$0.13 \times \Delta t$ solar

Source: Balcomb et al. (1980).

[a]These swings are based on a thermal storage mass capacity of 45 Btu/ft^2 °F; Δt solar can be found in Fig. 8.32.

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART I Find the clear January day temperature swing in the typical bay of the office building in Fig. 8.6.

SOLUTION

1. (Appendix C) Salem's average January outdoor temperature = 39°F.
2. (Fig. 8.32*a*) At 44° N latitude, using a DG system, with LCR = 33, Δt solar = 24F°.
3. Δt internal = (from Example 8.1, Part G, winter, and Part H)

$$\frac{7.9 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2 \times 1440 \text{ ft}^2 \times 9 \text{ h/day}}{7512 \text{ Btu/DD} + (229 \text{ ft}^2 \times 0.74 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2 \text{ °F} \times 24 \text{ h/day})}$$

$$= \frac{102{,}384}{11{,}579} = 8.8\text{F°}$$

4. Average January clear-day temperature indoors is 39°F + 24F° + 8.8F° = 72.8°F (within the comfort zone).
5. (Table 8.11) Indoor temperature swing, for DG with a 9:1 ratio of mass to south glass area = 0.37 × Δt solar:

$$0.37 \times 24\text{F°} = 8.9\text{F°}\ \Delta t \text{ swing}$$

Therefore, the clear January day interior will vary by 8.9°F/2°F on either side of the average temperature:

$$72.8 + 8.9/2 = 77.3\text{°F high}$$
$$72.8 - 8.9/2 = 68.4\text{°F low}$$

This appears to be a quite comfortable range. Because the Pacific Northwest is largely overcast in winter, the daily range typically will be less wide, but the Δt solar will also be smaller. Thus, the average January day indoor temperature will be lower. ■

8.11 APPROXIMATE METHOD FOR CALCULATING HEAT GAIN (COOLING LOAD)

Unlike the calculations for winter worst-hour heat loss, which simply assume nighttime conditions and few if any internal gains, summer worst-hour heat gain calculations are very complex. The difference in air temperature between inside and outside, which was so influential in winter, is much less important in summer. Solar gains and internal gains from lights, people, and equipment *must* be included. Summer calculations are complicated further by the fact that the hourly change in summer load can be very great, both from changing sun position and from changing internal loads. Also, in summer the thermal mass of the building becomes influential, delaying the impact of the radiant component of heat gains from all sources. The design guideline approach represented in Table F.3 cannot respond to hourly changes or to thermally massive construction. Furthermore, Table F.3 deals only with sensible heat gains and ignores latent heat gains.

Sensible heat is the kind of heat that *increases the DB temperature of air*; the glowing coil of an electric range adds sensible heat to the air of the kitchen.

Latent heat is the kind of heat that is present within *increased moisture* in air; boiling water in a pan on top of an electric range is evaporating, and as it evaporates it increases the latent heat in the kitchen air. This latent heat will increase the WB temperature, but not the DB temperature, of the air. In conventionally cooled buildings, the mechanical cooling equipment must be sized so that latent as well as sensible heat will be removed.

A simplified heat gain procedure has been developed for residential buildings; with some risk and some judgment, it can also be used for a quick *approximation* of the conditions in commercial buildings. This simplified method was devised to be used with buildings that, like residences:

1. Are occupied and air-conditioned (internal temperatures closely controlled) for 24 hours per day. (Separate calculations can be done for weekdays and weekends.)
2. Derive much of their gains through the building envelope and ventilation rather than internally.
3. Can accept the effects of undersized cooling equipment, with the result that unusually hot weather means noticeably higher indoor temperatures (and that interior temperatures will vary during a typical summer day).

Because many commercial buildings do *not* have these characteristics, this method should not be applied if very accurate estimates are desired for such buildings. However, the method is rapid, if risky.

(a) Gains through Roof and Walls

The sensible heat gains through opaque parts of a building's envelope are calculated with the equation:

$$q = U \times A \times \text{DETD}$$

where

U-factors are for summer

A = area of the roof or wall

DETD (design equivalent temperature difference) values are listed for broad categories of construction in Table F.5

The DETD values are based on an average indoor temperature of 75°F (23.8°C), and the outdoor conditions listed. Note that for lightweight wall construction (and doors) the DETD varies by orientation. A means of correcting DETD for other temperatures is as follows.

Where the design temperature difference (outdoor design temperature minus assumed indoor temperature of 75°F [23.8°C]) is not an even increment of 5F° (2.8C°), the equivalent temperature difference should be corrected 1F° (0.5C°) for each 1F° (0.5C°) difference from the tabulated values.

For rapid approximation, however, select the DETD directly from the table for the conditions nearest to your building/climate combination. The design temperature for your climate is listed in Appendix B.

Note that Table F.5 lists considerably higher DETD values for roofs than for any other component. This is due to the *sol-air temperature*, the effective temperature of outdoor air just above a solar-heated surface. When the sun strikes the surface, it adds its heat to that from the outdoor air. The darker the surface, the greater the resulting effective (sol-air) temperature. This elevated outdoor temperature thus increases the Δt through the roof, resulting in greater heat gains. The sol-air formula was discussed in Chapter 7. Sol-air temperature is discussed in detail in the 2009 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, Chapter 18. Uninsulated or poorly insulated roofs of darker colors are particularly impacted by sol-air temperature.

(b) Gains through Glass

The quick way to approximate these gains is

$$q = A \times \text{DCLF}$$

DCLF (design cooling load factor) values are listed in Table F.6 and *include the U-factors* as well as the equivalent temperature differences. (These DCLF values do *not* correspond to the worst-hour gains; they were obtained by averaging the hours from 5:30 A.M. to 6:30 P.M. at both 30° N and 40° N latitudes.) Again, the DCLF values were based on an inside temperature of 75°F (23.8°C) and outside temperatures as listed in Table F.6. (For *rapid* approximation, ignore the corrections procedure shown in note *a*.) Glass protected by exterior shading devices that exclude all direct sun may be considered equal to the values listed in Table F.6 for "north glass protected by awnings."

(c) Gains from Outdoor Air

In residences, outdoor air often enters by infiltration. In many other buildings, codes require the deliberate introduction of outdoor air by mechanical ventilation. Whichever way outdoor air enters your building in summer, its sensible heat gain can be calculated by either

$$q_{\text{infiltration}} = (A_{\text{exposed}})\ (\text{infiltration factor})$$

where A_{exposed} is the total area of exposed wall surface, including windows and doors, and the infiltration factor is found from Table F.7, or

$$q_{\text{mechanical ventilation}} = (Q)\ (\text{ventilation factor})$$

where Q is the volume of outdoor air (cfm or L/s; see Chapter 7), and the ventilation factor is found from Table F.7. Latent loads will be addressed later.

(d) Gains from People

Only the sensible gains are tabulated, because a simple overall factor for latent gains is included later. The rate of heat gain from people in various activities is shown in Table F.8; values in the "Sensible Heat" column are generally used. (For residences, sensible heat gain per occupant is often assumed at 230 Btu/h [67.3 W]):

$$q_{\text{people}} = (\text{number of occupants}) \times (\text{sensible gain per occupant})$$

(e) Gains from Lights

The power supplied to electric lamps (those that normally are on while cooling equipment is functioning) can be added directly to the sensible heat gain. Be sure to include ballast heat gains along

with fluorescent lamps, usually done by taking *from 1.12 to 1.2 times the total bulb wattage* of such lamps (use the lower figure with energy-efficient ballasts).

(f) Gains from Equipment

In residences, a standard assumption is that 1200 to 1600 Btu/h (350 to 470 W) of sensible heat gain is produced by appliances. (Other residential heat loads are assumed to be vented.) For other buildings, see the gains of specific pieces of equipment given in Tables F.9 and F.10.

(g) Latent Heat Gains

These vary a great deal with the type of occupancy, but this simple method assumes that the latent gains are closely associated with outdoor air infiltration. Figure 8.33 is a method to estimate *additional latent heat* as a percentage of *total sensible gains*. The design DB and mean coincident WB temperatures from Appendix B, as well as the relative tightness of building construction, determine the latent percentage of total sensible gain. A minimum of 10% and a probable maximum of 30% additional latent are recommended limits.

EXAMPLE 8.13 (This example is adapted from the 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*. Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.)

A one-story office building (Fig. 8.34) is located "in the eastern United States near 40° N latitude." The adjoining buildings on the north and west are not conditioned, and their inside air temperatures are, for simplicity, assumed equal to the outdoor air temperature at any time of day. This is an unusual building both for its uninsulated walls and for very high lighting loads.

Roof construction: 4.5-in. (115-mm) flat roof deck of 2-in. (50-mm) gypsum slab on metal roof deck, 2-in. (50-mm) rigid above-deck roof insulation, surfaced with two layers of mopped felt vapor seal built-up roofing having dark-colored gravel surface, no false ceiling. Summer U = 0.09 Btu/h ft^2 °F (0.51 W/m^2 °C).

South wall construction: 4-in. (100-mm) face brick, 8-in. (200-mm) common brick, 0.625-in. (16-mm) plaster, 0.25-in. (6-mm) plywood panel glued on plaster. Summer U = 0.24 Btu/h ft^2 °F (1.36 W/m^2 °C).

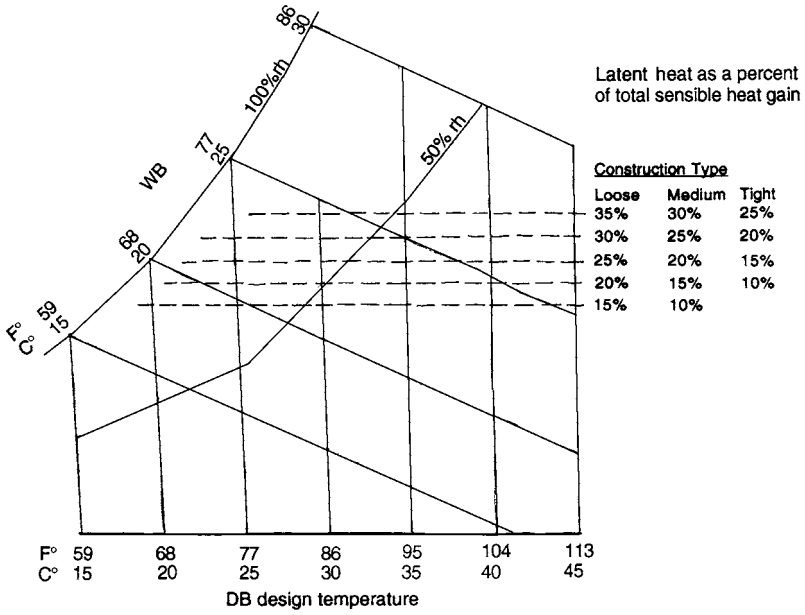


Fig. 8.33 *Estimating latent heat gain as a percentage of total sensible heat gain, assuming that these additional latent gains are closely associated with outdoor air infiltration. Relative tightness of building construction is included as a variable. Design DB and mean coincident WB temperatures may be found in Appendix B.*

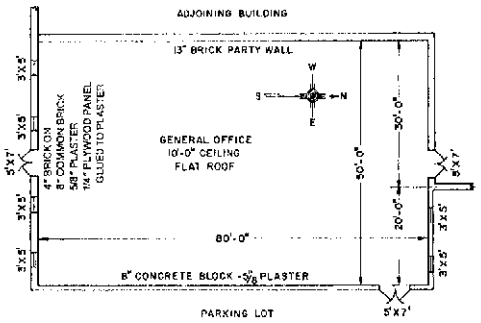


Fig. 8.34 *Plan of the office building for which heat gain calculations are shown in Example 8.13 (and in Table 8.12). (Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 1997* ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.)*

West wall and adjoining north party wall construction: 13-in. (325-mm) solid brick, no plaster. Interior partition U = 0.25 Btu/h ft^2 °F (1.40 W/m^2 °C).

North exposed wall and east wall construction: 8-in. (200-mm) concrete block and 0.625-in. (16-mm) plaster. Summer U = 0.48 Btu/h ft^2 °F (2.73 W/m^2 °C).

Floor construction: 4-in. (100-mm) concrete slab-on-grade.

Fenestration: 3-ft × 5-ft (1-m × 1.5-m) nonoperable windows of regular plate glass with light-colored venetian blinds. Summer U = 0.81 Btu/h ft^2 °F (4.6 W/m^2 °C).

Front doors: Two, 2.5 × 7 ft (1.5 m × 2 m).

Side doors: Two, 2.5 × 7 ft (1.5 m × 2 m).

Rear doors: Two, 2.5 × 7 ft (1.5 m × 2 m), interior.

Door construction: Light-colored 1.75-in. (45-mm) steel door with solid urethane core and thermal break. Summer U = 0.18 Btu/h ft^2 °F (1.08 W/m^2 °C).

(U-factors for all doors and outside walls were calculated assuming a wind speed of 7.5 mph [12 km/h]. For party and inside walls, still air was assumed.)

Outdoor design conditions: Dry-bulb temperature, 94°F (35°C); daily range, 20F° (11C°). Wet-bulb temperature, 77°F (25°C).

Indoor design conditions: Dry-bulb temperature, 75°F (24°C); wet-bulb temperature, 62.5°F (18°C).

Occupancy: 85 office workers from 8:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M.

Lights: 17,500 W fluorescent, from 8:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M.; and 4000 W tungsten, continuous.

Equipment: This example does not include any office equipment.

Ventilation: The ventilation rate is 15 cfm (7 L/s) per person, for a total of 1275 cfm (595 L/s).

The conditioning equipment is located in the adjoining building to the north.

Determine the sensible, latent, and total space cooling load at design conditions.

SOLUTION

Before beginning the calculations, *estimate* the heat gain using the design guideline procedure of Table F.3.

People (omit equipment in this example):

$$2.3 \times 2^a = 4.6 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

Lighting[b]:

$$21{,}500 \text{ W}/4000 \text{ ft}^2 = 5.4 \text{ W/ft}^2 \times 3.41 \text{ Btu/h W} = 18.4$$

Envelope gains:

Windows: 90 ft^2/4000 ft^2 × 18[c] = 0.4

Walls:

South: 405 ft^2/4000 ft^2 × 0.24 × 19[c] = 0.5

East, north exposed: 935 ft^2/4000 ft^2 × 0.48 × 19[c] = 2.1

Party: 1065 ft^2/4000 ft^2 × 0.25 × 19[c] = 1.3

Roof: 4000 ft^2/4000 ft^2 × 0.09 × 39[c] = 3.5

Ventilation: 1275 cfm/4000 ft^2 × 21[c] = 6.7

Total 37.5 Btu/h ft^2

---

[a]4000 ft^2/85 people = 47 ft^2 per person, more than double the heat gain at the lower density of 100 ft^2 per person that is assumed in the approximate procedure, so increase people gain by a factor of 2.

[b]This is considerably in excess of the lighting loads upon which the approximate procedure is based. Without a detailed knowledge of the actual installed lighting loads the design guideline would have suggested a lower load as follows.

$$\text{DF} = 0.2 \times \frac{90 \text{ ft}^2 \text{ windows}}{4000 \text{ ft}^2 \text{ floor}} = 0.5\% \text{ DF}$$

which is <1, therefore suggesting a load of only 5.1 Btu/h ft^2.

[c]Interpolate for 95°F, between 90°F and 100°F outdoor temperature.

Cooling load due to heat gain through building envelope: The heat gains through roof, exposed walls, and doors shown in Table 8.12 were calculated by

$$q = U \times A \times \text{DETD}$$

for which DETD values are taken from Table F.5. In line with the approximate (and therefore rapid)

TABLE 8.12 Cooling Load through Building Envelope (Example 8.13)

Net Area (m^2)	U-factor (W/m^2 K)	Δt (C°)	DETD (C°)	DCLF	Cooling Load (W)	Section	Reference	Net Area (ft^2)	DETD (°F)	U-factor (Btu/h ft^2 F°)	Δt (F°)	DCLF	Cooling Load (Btu/h)
371.6	0.51		24.4		**4620**	Roof	Table F.5	4000	0.09		44.0		**15,840**
37.6[a]	1.36		9.1		**470**	South wall	Table F.5	405[a]	0.24		16.3		**1,580**
71.1[a]	2.7		9.1		**1750**	East wall	Table F.5	765[a]	0.48		16.3		**5,990**
15.8[a]	2.7		9.1		**390**	North wall exposed	Table F.5	170[a]	0.48		16.3		**1,330**
98.9[a]	1.41	11.2[b]			**1560**	Party walls		1065[a]	0.25	20[b]			**5,330**
3.25	1.08		13.1		**50**	Doors: S	Table F.5	35	0.19		23.6		**160**
3.25	1.08	11.2[b]			**40**	N	Table F.5	35	0.19	20[b]			**130**
3.25	1.08		13.1		**50**	E	Table F.5	35	0.19		23.6		**160**
5.6	(4.6)[c]			97.9	**550**	Windows: S	Table F.6	60	(0.81)[c]			31	**1,860**
2.8	(4.6)[c]			72.6	**200**	N	Table F.6	30	(0.81)[c]			23	**690**
				Total:	**9680**							Total:	**33,070**

[a]Calculated from gross wall area less windows and door areas.

[b]Design temperature difference, inside to outside.

[c]DCLF for glass includes the U-factor.

nature of this calculation method, *no corrections* were made to DETD values to adjust for either outside or inside design temperatures differing from those listed, and actual gains were rounded to the nearest 10. The climate's daily temperature range is medium; the roof is dark (typical of commercial buildings in air-polluted areas). An outside design temperature of 95°F (35°C) was used. To keep things simple, the temperature difference through party walls was made equal to that on which the table was based; in this case, 95 – 75 = 20F° (35 – 23.8 = 11.2C°).

Cooling load due to heat gain through glass: These heat gains were calculated by

$$q = A \times \text{DCLF}$$

for which the DCLF values (which include the U-factor) were taken from Table F.6. Again, no corrections were made, and gains were rounded to the nearest 10.

Cooling load due to heat gain from lights, people, and equipment: The rate of heat gain from the lighting can be approximated simply by taking the energy input (including that required for fluorescent ballasts). For fluorescent lamps, 17,500 W × 1.2 ballast factor

= 21,000 W (71,650 Btu/h).

For incandescent lamps,

4000 W (13,650 Btu/h)

The sensible gains from people can be determined from Table F.8. For office work, assume 75 W (250 Btu/h):

85 people × 75 = 6380 W (21,250 Btu/h)

Heat gains from office equipment are ignored in this example. (See Tables F.3 and F.9 for typical ranges of such gains.) The sensible gains from lighting, people, and equipment thus total 106,550 Btu/h (31,380 W).

Cooling load due to ventilation or infiltration: Because this is a commercial building incorporating deliberate introduction of outdoor air, infiltration will be ignored. This example assumes ventilation at 15 cfm (7 L/s) per person. Total mechanical ventilation is 1275 cfm (595 L/s). Sensible heat gains (from Table F.7):

Mechanical ventilation:

22.0 × 1275 cfm = 28,050 Btu/h
(13.6 × 595 L/s = 8090 W)

Latent heat gains: The climate description suggests a typical northeastern U.S. climate at 40° N latitude. Newark, New Jersey (91 DB, 73 WB), and Philadelphia, Pennsylvania (90 DB, 74 WB), are examples. From Fig. 8.33, estimate latent gain as about 20% of the total sensible load.

	W	Btu/h
Sensible gains, envelope	9,680	33,070
Sensible gains, lights and people	31,380	106,550
Sensible gains, ventilation	8,090	28,050
Sensible gains, total	49,150	167,670
Latent gains (20%, this example)	9,830	33,530
Total latent and sensible heat gains	58,980	201,200

■

8.12 PSYCHROMETRY

Moisture, air, and heat interact with some consequences that are threats to, and other consequences that are opportunities for, building performance. In winter, condensation within insulation due to falling air temperatures can be disastrous. In summer, adding moisture to hot, dry air can lower its DB temperature while raising its humidity to more comfortable levels.

These moisture, air, and heat interactions are complex. As air temperature rises, its capacity to hold moisture rises also, and the warmer air becomes less dense. These combined interactions are described by *psychrometry*, the study of moist air. Fortunately, these interactions can be combined within a single chart—see Fig. F.1 (I-P units) and Fig. F.2 (SI units).

In Chapter 4, we encountered the terms *dry-bulb* (DB), *wet-bulb* (WB), and *relative humidity* (RH). These elements are combined in the schematic chart of Fig. 8.35, where the term *saturation line*, at 100% RH, is introduced. This is also called the *dew point* (DP) because dew forms (water vapor condenses) when saturated air touches any surface at or below the air's dew point temperature. This saturation is sometimes undesirable, as within walls or roofs, or on ceiling, air duct, or glass surfaces. However, it is often desirable, as on air-conditioner coils, where the resulting reduction of the moisture content in the air is deliberate.

The psychrometric chart may be used to graph a wide variety of processes, which are summarized in Fig. 8.36. To understand these processes, we must add to the basic chart of Fig. 8.35. The first addition is the *humidity ratio*, which indicates the amount of moisture by weight within a given weight of dry air. Air treatment processes that travel along these horizontal lines of constant humidity ratio (Fig. 8.37) are the familiar processes of simple heating (air passing through the heating coil of a furnace or through a solar collector) and simple (sensible) cooling (air passing through the cooling coil of an air conditioner before saturation). The humidity ratio is used in calculating latent heat gains from outdoor air.

The next addition shows how the *density* of air varies as its temperature and moisture content vary. These lines are those of *specific volume*, the reciprocal of density, a useful quantity in air-conditioning

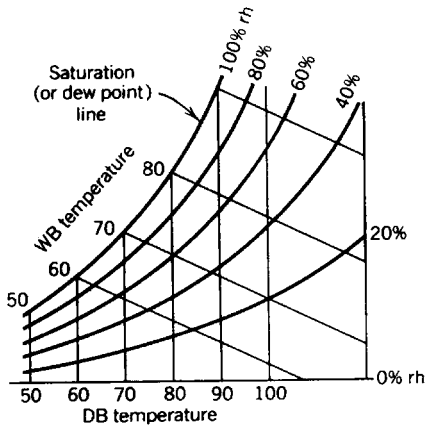


Fig. 8.35 *Some basic components of the psychrometric chart: DB and WB temperatures and RH.*

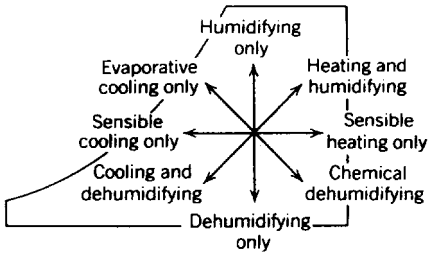


Fig. 8.36 *Climatic-conditioning processes expressed on the psychrometric chart. (Adapted from "Architectural Design Based on Climate," by M. Milne and B. Givoni, in Watson [ed.],* Energy Conservation in Building Design. *Reprinted with the permission of the publisher, McGraw-Hill, Inc.)*

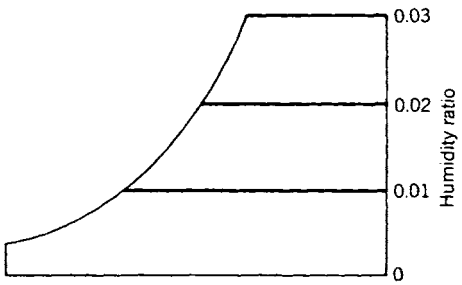


Fig. 8.37 *Humidity ratio on the psychrometric chart: I-P units are lb moisture/lb of dry air; SI units are kg moisture/kg dry air.*

calculations and helpful in understanding the stack effect (Section 8.14b). The specific volume is given in ft^3/lb (m^3/kg) of dry air. From these lines in Fig. 8.38 it can be seen that a pound of hot air is larger (has more volume) than a pound of cold air. This larger volume per unit of weight increases buoyancy; thus, hot air rises, whereas cold air sinks.

The next addition (Fig. 8.39) involves *enthalpy*, the sum of the sensible and latent heat content of an air–moisture mixture relative to the sum of the sensible and latent heat in air at 0°F (0°C in SI units) at standard atmospheric pressure. Enthalpy units are Btu/lb (kJ/kg) of dry air. Enthalpy lines are almost parallel to those of WB temperature. Perhaps the most familiar process to travel along the lines of constant enthalpy is evaporative cooling, where increased moisture and lower air DB temperature are obtained *without changing the enthalpy* (total heat content) of the air. There is indeed a drop in sensible heat as the temperature drops, but this is matched by an increase in latent heat as the moisture content increases. The opposite process is chemical (desiccant) dehumidifying, where decreased moisture content is obtained at the price of increased air DB temperature; again, no change in enthalpy (total heat) occurs.

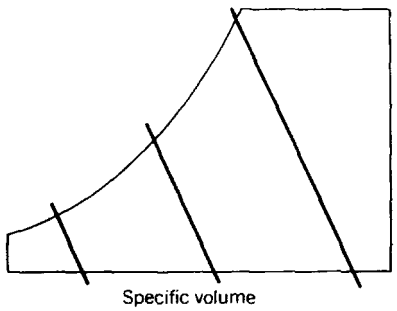


Fig. 8.38 *Specific volume on the psychrometric chart: I-P units are ft^3/lb dry air; SI units are m^3/kg dry air.*

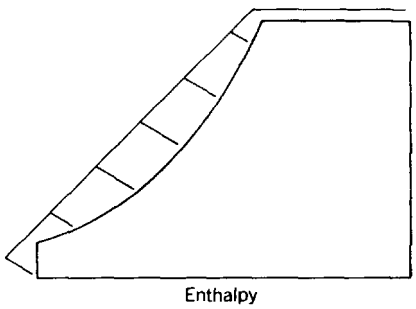


Fig. 8.39 *Enthalpy on the psychrometric chart: I-P units are Btu/lb; SI units are kJ/kg.*

(a) Cooling Process

The work to be done by mechanical air-conditioning equipment is measured by the total change in enthalpy that must occur within the air that is treated by such equipment. The psychrometric chart is used to size an air conditioner accurately.

First, consider the problem of determining the total change in enthalpy. Assume outdoor conditions of 90°F DB and 76°F WB, with desired indoor conditions at 75°F DB and 50% RH. From Fig. F.1, these indoor conditions are 75 DB/62.7 WB. In the simple (but relatively rare) case of cooling 100% outdoor air, the total heat to be removed is determined as shown in Fig. 8.40. (Once-through systems cooling 100% outdoor air require substantial energy. They may be found in hospital surgical rooms and laboratories with many fume hoods.) How much total heat will be removed in taking air from 90 DB/76 WB to 75 DB/62.7 WB?

For every pound of "dry" air (based on the weight of the air alone) that is cooled and dehumidified, 39.6 – 28.3 = 11.3 Btu must be extracted. Similarly, for every pound of air so treated, 0.0162 – 0.0093 = 0.0069 lb of condensed moisture must be disposed of.

The actual cooling process is more complex, as shown in Fig. 8.41. The conditioned air must be introduced to the space at both a lower DB temperature and lower RH than the desired indoor conditions so that such supply air can "soak up" heat and moisture, then leave through the return air grilles no worse than the desired indoor conditions (75 DB/50% RH). So another set of conditions, lower in DB and RH, will be established, depending on the rates at which air is introduced and the amounts of heat and moisture to be absorbed by the air passing through the space.

Within the cooling equipment, the outdoor air follows a complex path; the lines labeled 1, 2, and 3 in Fig. 8.41 trace the cooling and dehumidifying steps. Outdoor air is cooled without a loss of moisture (step 1) until it reaches saturation (its dew point). The cooling then continues; the air continues to lose sensible heat in step 2, and now loses moisture as well, extracting more heat. When

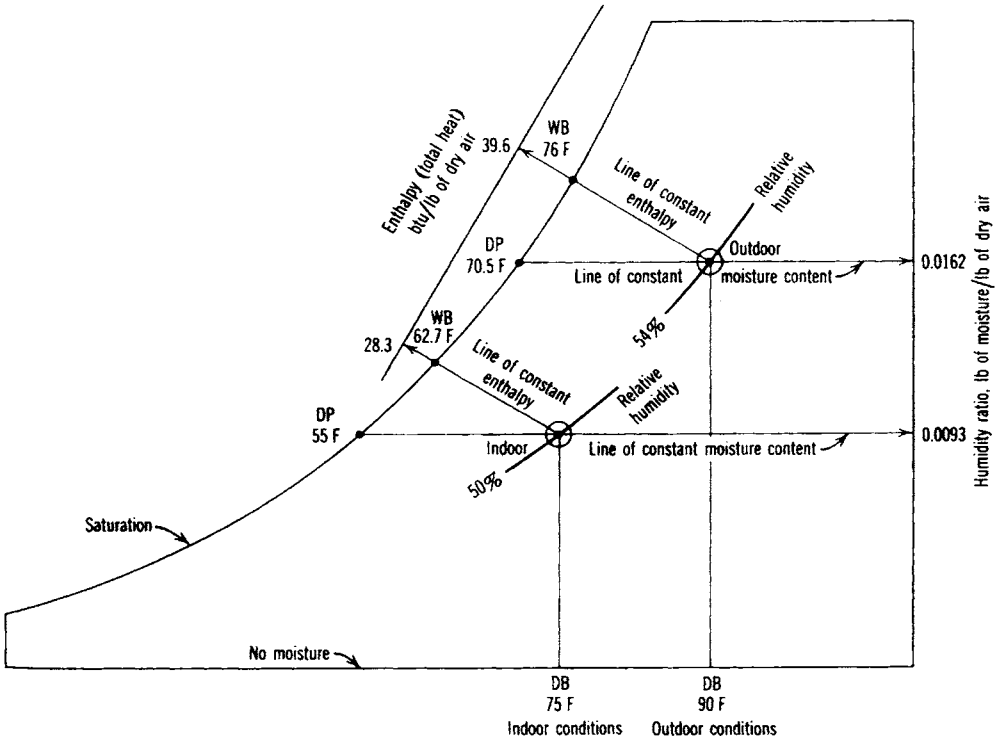


Fig. 8.40 *Use of the psychrometric chart to determine the change in enthalpy between given outdoor and indoor conditions.*

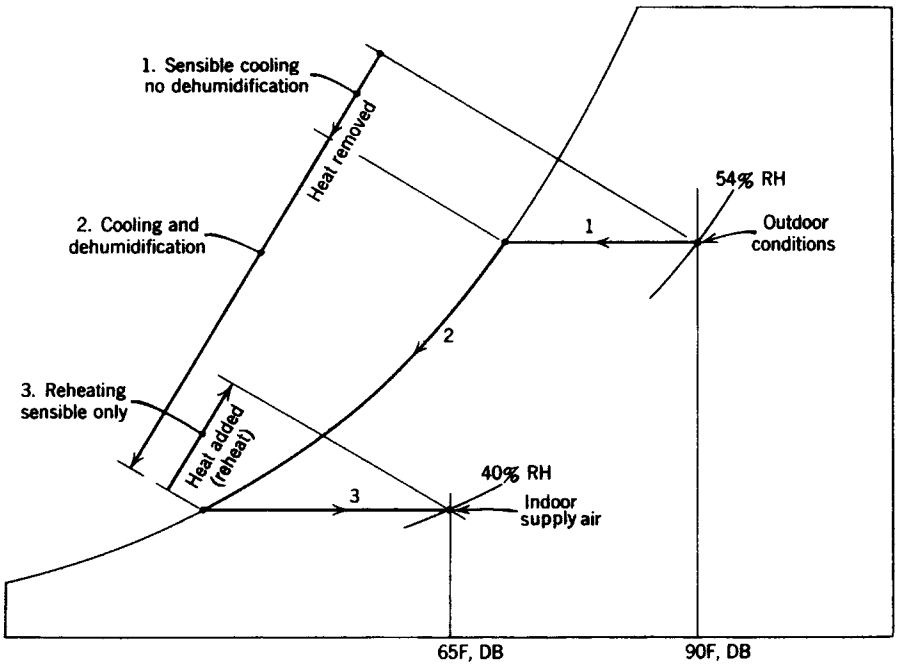


Fig. 8.41 *Process of cooling and dehumidifying outdoor air, summer conditions.*

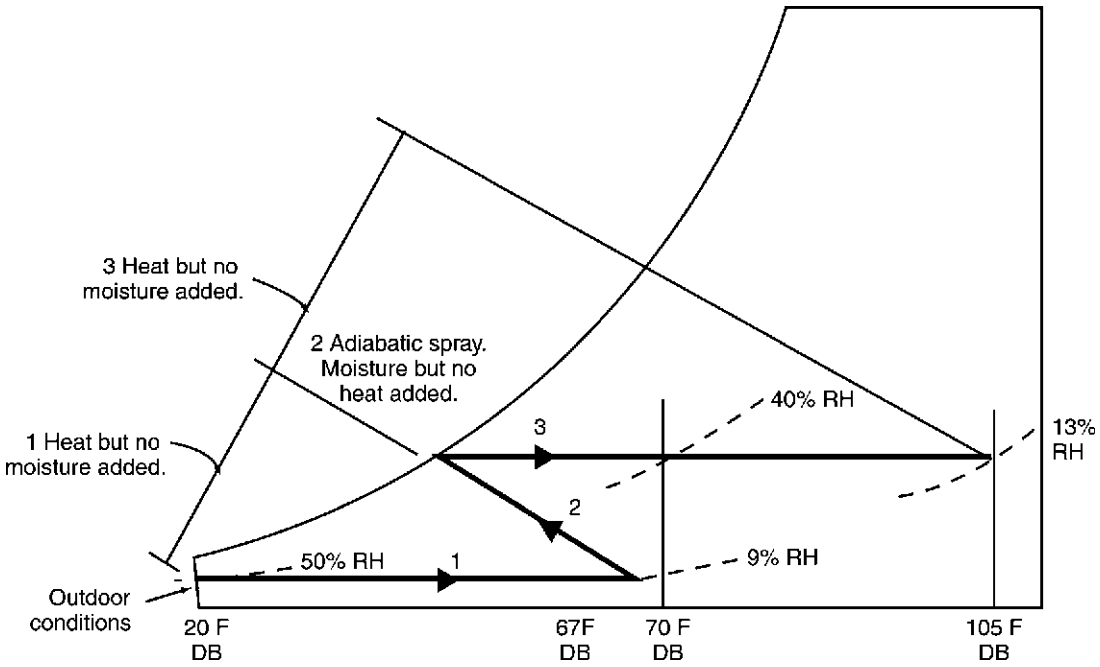


Fig. 8.42 *Process of heating and humidifying outdoor air, winter conditions.*

step 3 begins (known as the *reheating process*), the remaining smaller amount of moisture and the air are both heated to 65°F, 40% RH—slightly below the conditions to be maintained in the space. The changes in the heat and moisture content of the air at the various stages are measured along the enthalpy scale.

Deliberately adding heat to just-cooled air should sound wasteful. Many heat-recovery processes can be incorporated in cooling systems so that necessary reheat is provided by heat removed by another process. Heat-recovery equipment is discussed in Chapter 5.

(b) Heating Process

The process of heating outdoor air in winter is charted in Fig. 8.42. Air at low temperatures in winter often has a humidity ratio so low that the moisture content would be unacceptably low when the outdoor air is warmed (step 1). Therefore, moisture must be added. Often this is in the form of a warm water spray. However, in Fig. 8.42 an adiabatic spray is used—that is, involving no change in enthalpy—shown in step 2. Then, in step 3, the saturated air is warmed to a higher temperature (105°F in this case) than the desired indoor conditions of 70 DB and 40% RH. This supply air then loses its heat to the space. Note that in this process, we start at desired indoor conditions and work backward (along step 3) to saturation, then downward along the constant enthalpy line (along step 2) until we reach the line of constant humidity ratio of the warming outdoor air—in this case, 67°F DB. As with cooling, the changes in heat can be read on the enthalpy scale.

8.13 DETAILED HOURLY HEAT GAIN (COOLING LOAD) CALCULATIONS

Ordinarily, the approximate method of calculating the peak cooling load (Section 8.11) is sufficient for a designer's preliminary estimates of cooling equipment size for a small building. However, much more detailed procedures are used by engineers to actually size the equipment and to assess the peak-load impact of various design options such as shading devices.

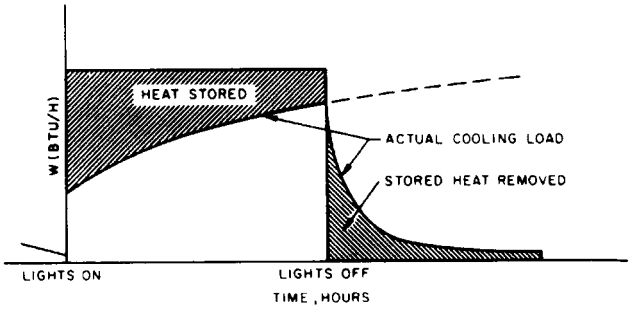


Fig. 8.43 *Thermal storage effect in the cooling load caused by electric lighting. (Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 1997* ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.)*

The 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* (Chapter 28) presents three detailed methods for calculating heat gains and equipment cooling loads. The transfer function method (TFM) and the total equivalent temperature differential, time-averaging method (TETD/TA) both yield hourly values over a 24-hour day. They account for thermal storage by building mass, which can significantly shift the impact of instantaneous heat gains on the actual cooling load seen by the HVAC equipment, as shown in Fig. 8.43. These detailed methods are tedious and/or complicated enough to require the use of a computer. Another more direct, one-step method, cooling load temperature difference/cooling load factor (CLTD/CLF), more quickly yields a 1-hour value that also accounts for the effects of thermal mass; however, considerable judgment is necessary to choose the correct hour for analysis. These methods are used by engineers, and rarely by architects, and are not presented here. However, a summary of the results of the calculations by each method for the office building of Example 8.13 is shown in Table 8.13.

The quick and uncomplicated heat gain methods shown in Table F.3 and Section 8.11 served the simple building in Example 8.13 rather well. Had the design guideline (Table F.3) been used to size a cooling system, it would have matched the TFM worst-hour sensible gains, but was only about 84% of the other methods' worst-hour sensible gains. Latent gain estimates would have been necessary as well. The approximate method underpredicted latent gains, but the total (latent and sensible) gains of this quick, by-hand method ranged from 83% to 95% of the computer-based methods' results.

As a quick approximation for estimating the overall equipment size or passive cooling approach, these by-hand methods are adequate for smaller

TABLE 8.13 Comparison of Methods of Heat Gain Calculation (Example 8.13)

	Maximum Hourly Gain (W)			*24-h Average Gain (W/m^2)*			*Maximum Hourly Gain (Btu/h)*			*24-h Average Gain ($Btu/h\ ft^2$)*		
Method	**Sensible**	**Latent**	**Total**	**Sensible**	**Latent**	**Total**	**Sensible**	**Latent**	**Total**	**Sensible**	**Latent**	**Total**
Design guideline (Table F.3)	($118/m^2$)						($37.5/ft^2$)					
Approximate[a] (Section 8.11)	49,150 ($131/m^2$)	9,830	58,980				167,670 ($41.9/ft^2$)	33,530	201,200			
Transfer function[b] (worst hour 4:00 p.m.)	41,415 ($110/m^2$)	15,040	56,455	68.3	32.0	100.3	149,623 ($37.4/ft^2$)	61,168	210,791	21.3	12.5	33.8
CLTD/CLF[b] (for 4:00 p.m. only)	53,499 ($143/m^2$)	15,040	68,489				179,140 ($44.8/ft^2$)	63,208	242,348			
TETD/TA[b] (worst hour 4:00 p.m.)	50,096 ($134/m^2$)	15,040	65,136	68.3	32.0	100.3	169,082 ($42.3/ft^2$)	61,168	230,250	21.3	12.5	33.8

[a]See Table 8.12 and Example 8.13 for calculations.

[b]From 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, Chapter 28.

and simpler buildings. When utilizing these quicker methods, keep in mind that design judgment may require subdividing the calculations or even changing some of the multipliers to reflect unusual conditions. A designer's checklist of considerations for heat gain should include:

1. Characteristics of the building envelope: materials, sizes, external surface colors, and shapes
2. Building location and orientation, as well as the extent of external shading of the building by trees or adjacent structures
3. Outdoor design conditions
4. Indoor design conditions: DB, WB, and ventilation rate
5. The schedule of lighting, occupancy, equipment, and any other processes that contribute to internal heat gain
6. Thermal zoning requirements

8.14 PASSIVE COOLING CALCULATION PROCEDURES

When outdoor air is 85°F (30°C) or below, it is marginally possible to cool buildings by simple ventilation, maintaining conditions indoors that are within the adaptive thermal comfort zone. Design guidelines for sizing windows and stacks for either cross-ventilation or stack ventilation were presented in Section 8.6.

In the many climates in which the outdoor temperature is above 85°F (30°C) for a large number of working-day hours, buildings that are closed to the hot exterior during those hours are practical. Between 80°F and 85°F (27°C to 30°C), outdoor air can keep people within the comfort zone if air moves across the body fast enough. In areas with reliable winds, open buildings are feasible up to 85°F (30°C). Between 55°F and 69°F (13°C and 21°C), outdoor air is cool enough to use in place of, or to greatly supplement, mechanically cooled air if the humidity is sufficiently low. Passive cooling is even easier under these conditions; see Table F.11 for cooling data for a number of cities. Appendix B shows CDD50 for a wide variety of locations.

From the advent of air conditioning to recent years, the standard response of designers was to turn to mechanical cooling, utilizing the refrigeration cycle and forced air. More recently, some passive cooling alternatives have proved to be effective in climates that have clear or cool summer nights. The following procedures go beyond the quicker design guidelines that appeared in Section 8.6 and allow the designer to better adjust a preliminary design to the program and the climate.

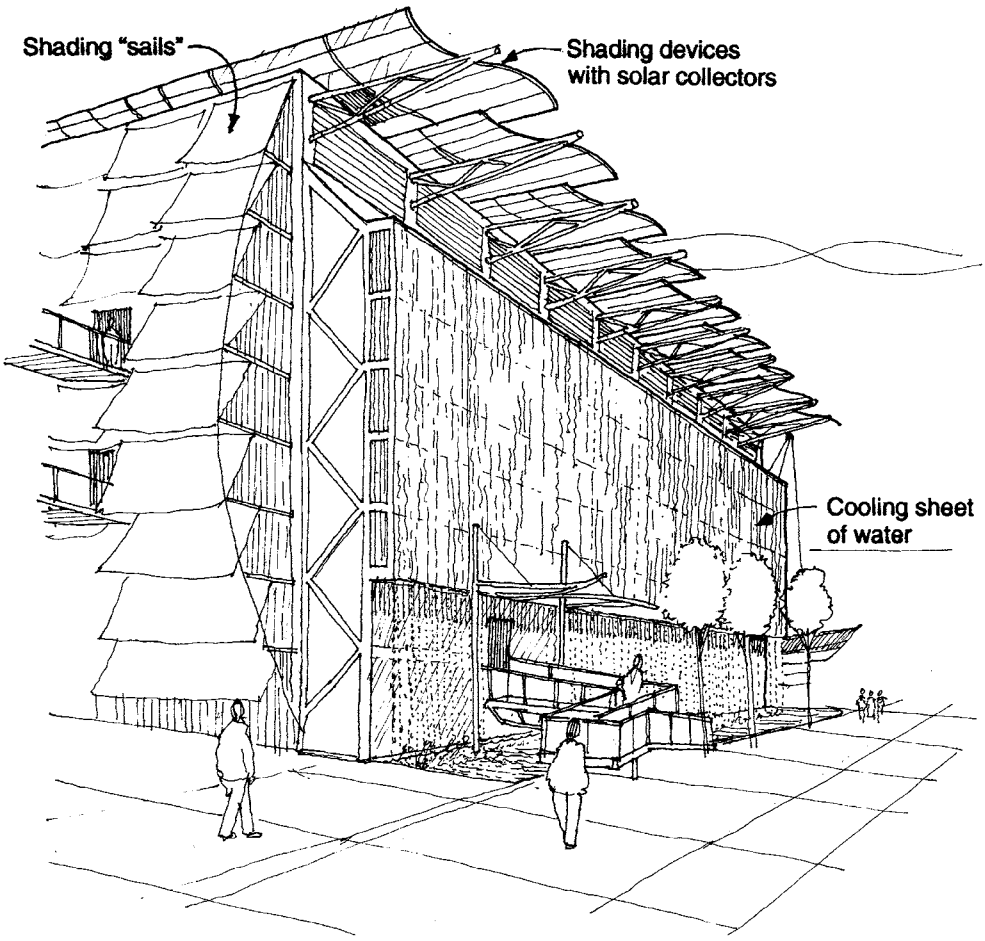
To introduce these more detailed methods, consider the United Kingdom Pavilion (now dismantled) at the 1992 Seville World Expo (Fig. 8.44). This was an unusually large passive building (213 ft × 105 ft × 82 ft high [65 m × 32 m × 25 m high]), with an unusually wide collection of passive cooling techniques, inspired by the traditional cooling methods of hot, dry southern Spain: shading, water, and mass. The Expo was an April to October event, with the greatest comfort challenge in July–August, when average daily temperatures range from about 64°F to 102°F (18°C to 39°C).

Shading began with the flat roof, where standing wave-form racks carried both translucent fabric shades and PV cells facing south. Outside the south façade, projecting sail-like "fly-sheets" kept off direct sun. The east and west façades used different strategies.

Water became a theme of the exhibit, beginning with the wavelike silhouette on the roof and featured as a continuous sheet of water streaming down the east façade, dripping into a pool. The water was pumped, with some power (about 50%) provided by the PV cells on the roof racks. Waiting visitors standing in line outside were treated to the sight and sound of this controlled waterfall, then crossed a bridge over the pond, flanked by spray fountains, to enter the Pavilion. The pond continued below the east wall, exposed to the interior. Water also played a much less evident role on the west facade.

Mass was a particular challenge, as the building was designed as a lightweight structure to be dismantled and largely reused elsewhere. The west wall consisted of white metal containers filled with water to reflect the greater part of the direct sun and store the remainder during the day, radiating by night to cooler outdoor air.

Thermal zoning was a vital part of this concept, recognizing that people were entering from very hot, unshaded conditions and that most visitors would then move through rather quickly. Passive cooling was given the task of keeping visitors cooler than the outside; mechanical refrigeration was responsible for maintaining even lower temperatures



(*a*)

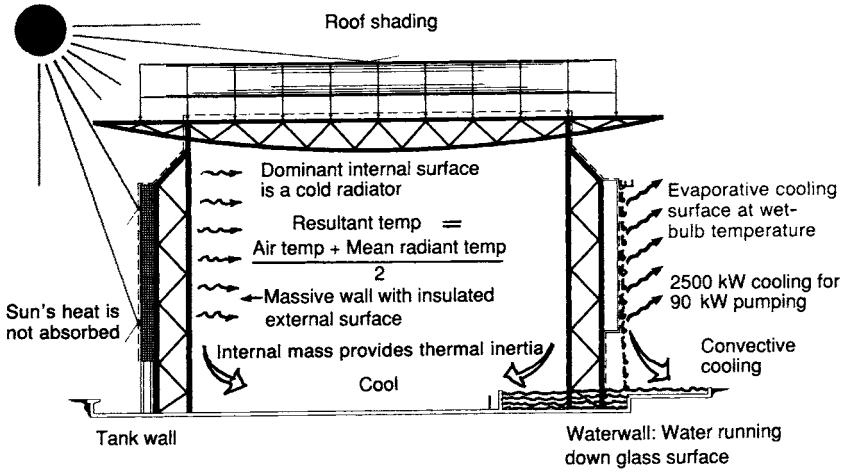
Fig. 8.44 *The United Kingdom Pavilion at the Seville (Spain) World Expo, 1992. (a) Waveform shading devices on the roof also carry PV cells, whose electricity helps pump water from the pool that flows continuously over the east glass wall. (b) Section (east-west) with a combination of cooling strategies. (c) Section (east-west) with estimated maximum temperatures. (Sections are courtesy of Ove Arup Partnership, London.)*

only where people gathered over extended periods of time, as in the "pods" that contained the restaurant and the cafeteria. Gardner and Hadden (1992) describe how the typical July visitor left a sunny outdoor environment at about 100°F (38°C) for the cooler interior at about 90°F (32°C) supplemented by radiant coolth from the huge east glass wall at a maximum of 75°F (24°C) thanks to evaporation from the running water. Exhaust air from the pods lowered temperatures in their vicinity to about 82°F (28°C). The pods themselves, maintained at about 73°F (23°C), were entered only after the visitor underwent a lengthy transition through the Pavilion from the hot outdoors.

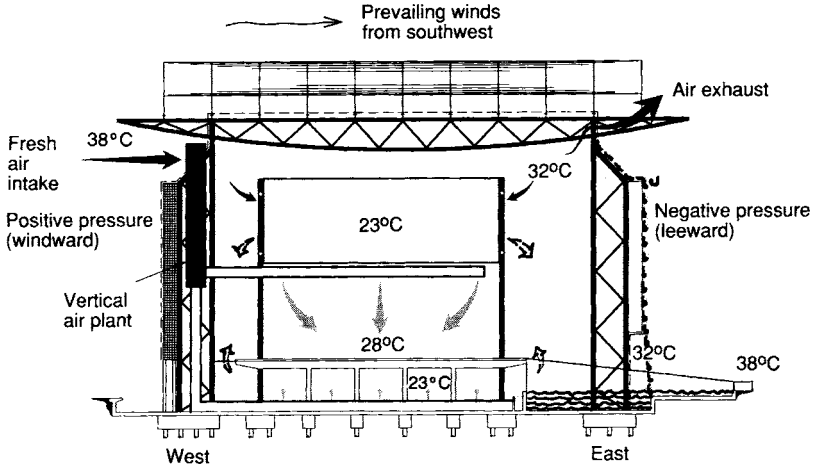
To some extent, both cross- and stack ventilation were also involved, despite the outdoor heat; the hottest air indoors rose to the ceiling and was replaced by outdoor air that was cooled slightly as it passed through the watery gap between the east glass wall and the pond. Very high vents at the top of both east and west walls admitted wind to sweep across the ceiling and remove the hottest air.

(a) Cross-Ventilation

Once again, remember that cross-ventilation cooling works only when the *outside is cooler than the inside*. Otherwise, why bring in air that is warmer to



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 8.44 *(Continued)*

try to cool a space? For ventilation using windows, the quantity of outdoor air admitted is termed V. The flow of air from inlet windows through the building to outlet windows should have a minimum of obstacles. In I-P units,

$$V = C_{\upsilon} A \upsilon$$

where

V = volume flow rate of air, cfm

A = area of operable windows on inlet side or sides, ft^2

C_{υ} = effectiveness factor (dimensionless) that adjusts for different wind orientations: 0.5 to 0.6 for winds perpendicular to the window openings; 0.25 to 0.35 for wind diagonal to the window openings

υ = velocity of wind, fpm (= mph × 88)

In SI units,

$$V = 1000 C_{\upsilon} A \upsilon$$

where

V is in L/s (= m^3/s multiplied by 1000)

A is in m^2

υ is in m/s

The sensible heat removed by this flow of outdoor air through indoor spaces was presented in Chapter 7:

$$q_v = (V)\ (1.1)\ (\Delta t)$$

where

q_v = sensible heat exchange due to ventilation (Btu/h)

V = volume flow rate, in cfm of outdoor air introduced

Δt = temperature difference between outdoors and indoors (F°)

1.1 = a constant (the density of air multiplied by the specific heat of air); units are Btu min/ft^3 h °F

In SI units, this becomes

$$q_v = (V)\ (1.2)\ (\Delta t)$$

where q_v is in watts, V is in L/sec, 1.2 is a constant (the density of air [1.20 kg/m^3] multiplied by the specific heat of air [1.0 kJ/kg K]), and Δt is in K.

A further modification to these cooling formulas is usually necessary because wind data are typically taken at airports at a height of about 30 ft (10 m) above open, unobstructed ground. Rarely will buildings that rely on cross-ventilation be so favorably situated. Figure 8.45 shows correction factors to be applied to such airport wind velocities for variations in terrain and height above the ground. The dimensionless correction factor should then be applied to the quantity V, usually resulting in a reduced volume flow rate.

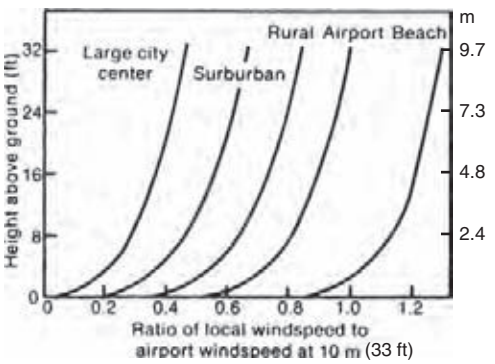


Fig. 8.45 *Wind speed variation with height for various terrains. (From* Cooling with Natural Ventilation*, Florida Solar Energy Center, published by the Solar Energy Research Institute.)*

A more detailed procedure for calculating cross-ventilation in residences given in Chandra et al. (1986) accounts for such factors as neighboring buildings and terrain, height of opening above grade, insect screens, and framing members within openings. To analyze natural ventilation in even more detail, wind tunnel tests or computation fluid dynamic (CFD) analyses are more likely to be useful than are detailed hand calculations.

(b) Stack Ventilation

This is another reminder that stack ventilation cooling works only when the *outside is cooler than the inside*. The stack effect needs several conditions: warmer air indoors that can enter the bottom of the stack, cooler air outdoors, and low inlets to admit that cooler outdoor air to the building. This cooler outdoor air picks up heat from the building and enters the bottom of the stack. Within the stack, this now-warm air rises, because it is less dense—therefore lighter—than the cooler outdoor air that surrounds the top of the stack.

The following equation applies when there is no significant resistance to airflow within the building. To calculate ventilation cooling by the stack effect:

$$V = 60\ KA\ \sqrt{2gh(t_i - t_o)/t_i}$$

where

V = airflow rate, cfm

K = discharge coefficient for opening; assumed to equal 0.65 for multiple inlet openings

A = in square feet, the smaller of either total free area of inlet or outlet openings or horizontal cross-sectional area (throat area) of the stack

g = gravitational constant, 32.2 ft/s^2

h = height of the stack from inlet to outlet, ft

t_i = temperature indoors ($>t_o$), °R

t_o = temperature outdoors ($< t_i$), °R

Note: °R = °F + 459.67.

In SI units,

$$V = KA\ \sqrt{2gh(t_i - t_o)/t_i}$$

where

V = airflow rate, m^3/s (× 1000 = L/s)

K = discharge coefficient for opening, assumed to equal 0.65 for multiple inlet openings

A = in m^2, the smaller of total free area of inlet or outlet openings or horizontal cross-sectional area (throat area) of the stack

g = gravitational constant, 9.81 m/s^2

h = height of stack from inlet to outlet, m

t_i = temperature indoors ($>t_o$), K

t_o = temperature outdoors ($< t_i$), K

Note: K = °C + 273.15.

The height of a stack and its cross-sectional area present an unusual opportunity for building form. The Inland Revenue Centre at Nottingham, England (Fig. 8.46), took advantage of this opportunity to provide cylindrical stair towers at corners (or at ends) of its buildings as stack ventilators. These are three- and four-story buildings, with a width of 44.6 ft (13.6 m) to encourage both daylight penetration and natural ventilation. The tower stacks serve all floors except the top. The fabric-covered top of each tower is 23 ft (7 m) above the highest floor served, and can be raised up to 3.3 ft (1 m) or lowered (closed) to vary the flow of exhaust air. The stacks are enclosed in glass block so that solar gain can assist the heating—and thus the flow—of air by day within the stack. Berry et al. (1995) report that the airflow increased from 4.8 to 6.2 ACH with the tower operating in solar mode.

Each lower floor has a 43 ft^2 (4 m^2) opening to each stack, with the openings (doors) held open magnetically unless fire alarms close them. This rather small opening to the stack (relative to the floor area served) is the limiting factor in the outward flow of heated air; to supplement the supply of outdoor air, small three-speed fans are installed in the floor below each window to draw in fresh air, then distribute it through a wide floor grille. The triple-glazed windows are also operable, both as sliding "doors" and as tilt-ins from the top.

This fan-assisted stack effect is used on summer nights to help precool the building for the following day; the lower floors feature very large areas of exposed structural mass in their precast concrete ceilings.

The top floor is a lighter-weight structure, with the stack effect culminating in a ridge vent. Monitoring reveals that this floor is usually a few degrees warmer than the massive night-ventilated lower floors.

(c) Night Ventilation of Thermal Mass

Before doing these detailed calculations, be sure that (1) you have checked your summer climate against the passive cooling design strategies (Fig. 4.13) and that night ventilation of thermal mass is appropriate, and (2) your building and climate have been checked for approximate performance based on the design guidelines (Fig. 8.16) for this cooling strategy. Also have in mind a positive night ventilation strategy; Fig. 8.47 shows an example of a forced-air system integral with a concrete joist-and-girder structural system. The following procedure is adapted from one developed by Karen Crowther for a workshop at the Fifth National Passive Solar Conference in Amherst, Massachusetts, as presented in Miller (1980).

STEP 1. In column II of Table 8.14, list the hourly outdoor temperatures for the design condition (these may be approximated from the summer DB temperature and mean daily range). This will give the worst-day performance. (To get average-day performance, list average hourly temperatures, which are available from local weather service records.) You need not list temperatures above 80°F (27°C) because outdoor air will not be used for cooling above that temperature.

STEP 2. Calculate the 24-hour heat gain for the building in Btu. Find the sum of all the hourly heat gains through the envelope, the minimum ventilation while "closed," and the internal gains while operating. List on line H of Table 8.14.

STEP 3. Find the total area of the thermal mass surface that is *exposed* (no rugs, etc.) both to the space to be cooled *and* to moving night air during the ventilation ("open") cycle; list on line A of Table 8.14. Note: The larger the mass area exposed, the better the performance. This is why direct-gain solar-heated buildings, with plentiful exposed mass, often make such good candidates for night ventilation cooling. Two additional comments on mass surface: place it where people "see" it so that it can readily receive their radiant heat, and keep direct sun off the mass (and out of the building) during the cooling season.

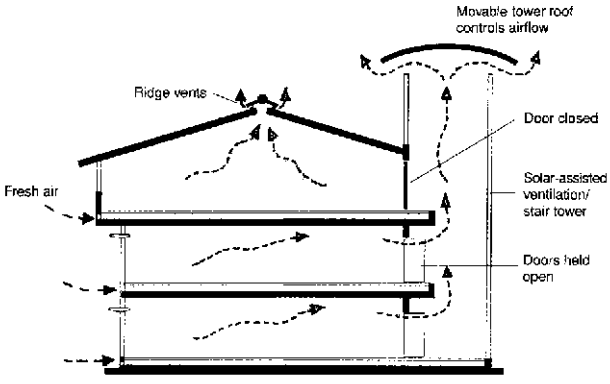
STEP 4. Find the mass heat capacity for the entire space to be cooled: mass volume × density × specific heat. Table E.1 lists both density and specific heat for most common building materials; Table 8.15 shows



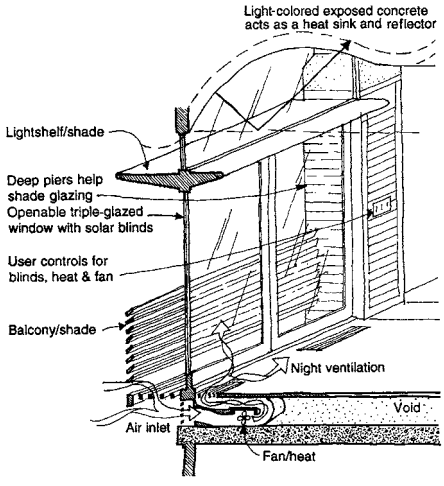
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

Fig. 8.46 *The Inland Revenue Centre at Nottingham, England. (a) Cylindrical stair towers at the corners and ends of three- and four-story office blocks act as stacks; solar gain through glass helps speed the flow of exhaust air. (b) Tops of the towers are fabric and can be raised to increase the stack aperture and therefore increase the flow. (Photos courtesy of Vaughan Reynolds.) (c) Section of a three-story wing with a stack ventilation stair tower. (Drawing courtesy of Ove Arup Partnership, London.) (d) Section perspective with fan-assisted intakes below each window and an exposed precast concrete ceiling that helps store heat for night ventilation cooling.*

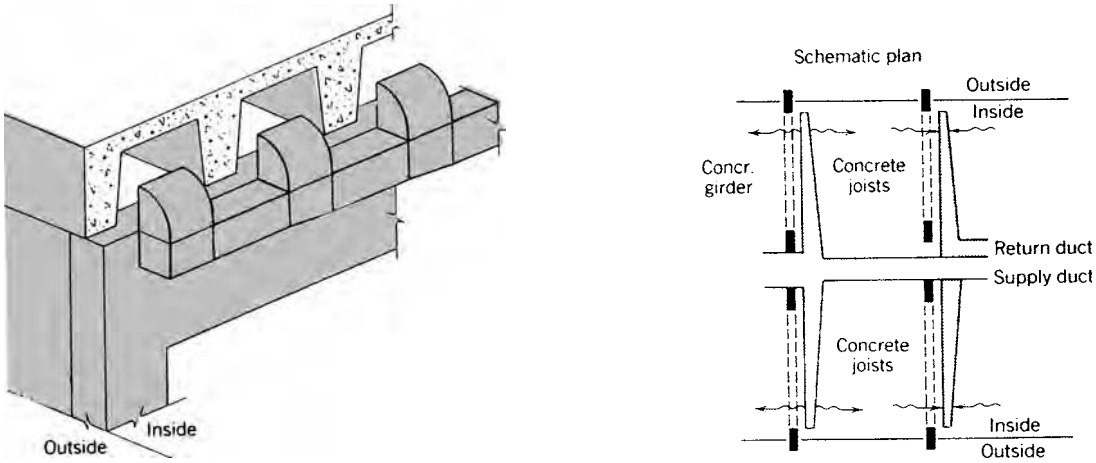


Fig. 8.47 *Example of ductwork for night ventilation using the thermal mass of a concrete structural system.*

a quick way to get mass heat capacities for the most common thermal mass materials. Enter this total mass heat capacity on line B of Table 8.14.

STEP 5. For "supplementary" cooling due to surfaces *other* than those of the principal thermal mass, list the space's *floor area*. This step should be taken only for spaces with a significant amount of roof, wall, or floor area *in addition* to the thermal mass areas counted in step 3. For example:

- If the space has exposed concrete ceilings, walls, and floors—all counted already as thermal mass—skip this step.
- If all thermal mass is in the form of free-standing water containers, enter the entire floor area.

TABLE 8.14 Night Ventilation of Thermal Mass

Calculation Procedure		
A. Mass surface area (from step 3)	_____ ft^2	
B. Mass heat capacity (from step 4)	_____ Btu/°F	
C. Floor area (supplementary cooling, step 5),	_____ ft^2	
and total building volume	_____ ft^3	

(I) Hour	(II) Outside Air Temperature (°F)	(III) Cooling (Btu)	(IV) Mass Temperature (°F)
8:00 P.M.			
9:00 P.M.			
10:00 P.M.			
11:00 P.M.			
Midnight			
1:00 A.M.			
2:00 A.M.			
3:00 A.M.			
4:00 A.M.			
5:00 A.M.			
6:00 A.M.			
7:00 A.M.			
8:00 A.M.			
9:00 A.M.			

D. Total mass cooling	_____ Btu	_____ °F
E. Final mass temperature	_____ °F	
F. Supplementary cooling (see steps 5 and 11)	_____ Btu	
G. Total cooling, D + F	_____ Btu	
H. 24-hr heat gain, from step 2	_____ Btu	
I. Flow rate required for night ventilation	_____ cfh	or _____ ACH

TABLE 8.15 Common Mass Heat Capacities

I-P Units		*SI Units*
$ft^3 \times (Btu/ft^3\ °F) = Btu/°F$		$m^3 \times (kJ/m^3K) = kJ/K$
Volume × (62.4)	Water	Volume × (4181)
Volume × (22.5)	Ordinary concrete	Volume × (1507)
Volume × (18.7)	Masonry, grout-filled	Volume × (1253)
Volume × (15.6)	Brick	Volume × (1045)

Source: Adapted from Crowther, "Night Ventilation Cooling of Mass," in Miller (1980).

- If the entire ceiling is thermal mass, but the walls or the floors are not, enter half of the floor area.
- If the entire ceiling is thermal mass, but the floor is not, and there are few or no walls (e.g., open office plan), enter one-third to one-fourth of the floor area.

STEP 6. Complete column III hour by hour after determining the mass temperature (column IV for the preceding hour):

$$\text{cooling Btu/h} = \left[\begin{array}{l}\text{Previous}\\ \text{hour}\\ \text{mass}\\ \text{temp., °F}\\ \text{(col. IV)}\end{array}\right] - \left[\begin{array}{l}\text{outside}\\ \text{temp., °F}\\ \text{(col. II)}\end{array}\right]$$

$$\times \begin{array}{c}\text{mass}\\ \text{surface}\\ \text{area, ft}^2\\ \text{(line A)}\end{array} \times \begin{array}{c}\text{surface}\\ \text{conductance,}\\ \text{Btu/h ft}_2\ °F\end{array}$$

For the first hour, assume that the mass temperature is 80°F. The surface conductance is usually assumed as 1.0 Btu/h ft^2 °F. (See Table E.3 for other surface conductances under various conditions, many of which are considerably more than 1.0.)

STEP 7. Complete column IV, hour by hour, after calculating the cooling Btu/h (column III):

$$\text{mass temp.} = \text{previous hour mass temp. (col. IV)} - \frac{\text{cooling Btu/h (col. III)}}{\text{mass heat capacity, Btu/°F (line B)}}$$

STEP 8. Continue this hourly process using columns III and IV *until* the falling temperature of the mass equals the rising temperature of the outdoor air. At that point, continuing with plentiful ventilation will only rob the mass of its coolth; the building therefore switches to (thermally) closed mode, with minimal ventilation.

STEP 9. Add all the hourly cooling Btu/h values (column III) to obtain the total mass cooling in Btu (line D).

STEP 10. Note the final mass temperature from column IV. This is probably at least 5F° *above* the *lowest* air temperature of the night (column II). If this lowest mass temperature is significantly higher, consider redesigning for more exposed mass surface area.

STEP 11. If supplementary cooling is appropriate (see step 5), calculate it as follows:

$$\text{supplementary cooling, Btu} = \left[\begin{array}{l}\text{final mass}\\ 80°F - \text{temperature}\\ \text{(line E)}\end{array}\right] \times 2.25 \times \left[\begin{array}{l}\text{floor area}\\ \text{(line C)}\end{array}\right]$$

The factor 2.25 assumes a modest role for the other, less thermally massive surfaces. Enter this supplementary cooling on line F.

STEP 12. Obtain total cooling by adding lines D and F; enter the total on line G.

STEP 13. In step 2, you entered the 24-hour heat gain for the building on line H.
Compare this required cooling to the total cooling provided (line G). If you have not provided enough cooling, and the final mass temperature is more than 7F° above the lowest nighttime outdoor temperature, consider redistributing the building mass over a wider surface (e.g., 3000 ft^2 of 4-in. slab rather than 2000 ft^2 of 6-in. slab) and trying again. If you do not have enough cooling, and the final mass temperature is 5F° to 7F° above the lowest nighttime outdoor temperature, consider providing *both* more mass and more surface area (e.g., 3000 ft^2 of 4 in. slab rather than 2000 ft^2 of 4-in. slab) and trying again.

STEP 14. Determine and enter on line I the approximate flow required for night-ventilating air. Use the following formula:

$$\text{cfh} = \frac{\text{Btu/h}}{0.018\,\Delta t}$$

where

cfh (ft^3/h) = the minimum required flow rate of night air

Btu/h = the cooling Btu for the hour of maximum cooling during the night (column III)

Δt = the temperature difference between the final mass temperature (column IV) and the outdoor air (column II) for that same hour of maximum cooling

It is often useful to express this night ventilation flow rate in terms of ACH:

$$\text{ACH} = \frac{\text{cfh required}}{\text{building volume } (ft^3)}$$

EXAMPLE 8.1, PART J How much heat will be removed, and what is the final thermal mass temperature, in a typical bay of the Oregon office building in Fig. 8.6? In this procedure, assume that only the exposed surfaces of the thermal mass participate in night flush cooling. (In the actual building, the interior surfaces of the continuous cores in the precast floor slabs are also flushed with night air, yielding added cooling capacity.)

SOLUTION

STEP 1. The design temperature for Eugene, Oregon, is 89°F (Table B.5), with a mean daily range of 31F°. This is distributed by hour (using the sine curve equation) as shown in Table 8.16, with the minimum daily temperature assumed at 4:00 A.M. and the maximum at 4:00 P.M.

STEP 2. The 24-hour heat gain is estimated from Example 8.1, Part D. During the 9-hour workday, the heat gains total 13 Btu/h ft^2. During the unoccupied hours, there are negligible gains from electric lighting, people and equipment, windows, or ventilation. However, the opaque envelope gains remain because this envelope stores heat and releases it gradually. These unoccupied gains (from Table 8.2) total 0.26 Btu/h ft^2 from the walls, plus 1.03 Btu/h ft^2 from the roof, totaling 1.29 Btu/h ft^2.

Occupied:

$$9\text{ h} \times 13\text{ Btu/h ft}^2 = 117\text{ Btu/ft}^2$$

Unoccupied:

$$15\text{ h} \times 1.29\text{ Btu/h ft}^2 = 19.35\text{ Btu/ft}^2$$

Daily gains = 117 + 19.35 = 136.35 Btu/day ft^2

For the entire typical bay (enter on line H),

$$136.35\text{ Btu/day ft}^2 \times 1440\text{ ft}^2 = 196{,}344\text{ Btu/day}$$

STEP 3. The area of exposed mass, from Table 8.2, totals 2232 ft^2. The concrete floor is covered by carpet and is therefore assumed to be disconnected from thermal storage for this space. The wallboard interior surfaces of the exterior walls are also ignored.

STEP 4. The mass heat capacity is estimated assuming that all elements are solid concrete at 150 lb/ft^3 and 4 in. deep. The bearing walls are 8 in. thick, exposed on both sides, with concrete fill in the cores of all concrete blocks. The beams are 8 in. thick, but their inner faces are unexposed (they form the air duct for the night flush system). The precast ceiling slabs are 10 in. thick, but much of this thickness consists of air-filled cores; therefore, only the lower 4 in. are assumed to participate as "exposed" mass. From Table 8.15:

$$\text{mass heat capacity} = 2232\text{ ft}^2 \times 0.33\text{ ft} \times 22.5\text{ Btu/ft}^3\,^\circ\text{F} = 16{,}573\text{ Btu/}^\circ\text{F}$$

STEP 5. Little supplementary cooling is assumed, although the carpeted floor provides some (albeit insulated) mass, as does the wallboard surface of the exterior walls. Assuming that only one-fourth of the floor area contributes to cooling performance,

$$0.25 \times 1440\text{ ft}^2 = 360\text{ ft}^2$$

STEPS 6–10. See Table 8.16.

STEP 11. Determine supplementary cooling: (80°F – 67.2°F) × 2.25 × 360 ft^2 = 10,368 Btu.

STEP 12. See Table 8.16.

STEP 13. The building has more than adequate cooling capacity to meet the 89°F design condition; on typical summer days, with a high of only 83°F, there will be even more excess mass capacity. (A more conservative and very detailed analysis, assuming more electric lighting left on, extremely high temperatures, and a less-favorable coefficient of heat

TABLE 8.16 Oregon Office Building (Fig. 8.7) Performance: Cooling by Night Ventilation of Thermal Mass for a Typical Second-Floor Bay

A. Mass surface area	2,232 ft^2
B. Mass heat capacity	16,573 Btu/°F
C. Floor area (supplementary cooling)	360 ft^2
Total building (bay) volume	22,900 ft^3

(I) Hour	(II) Outside Air Temperature (°F)	(III) Cooling[a] (Btu/h)		(IV) Mass Temperature (°F)
P.M.				
8	80	No heat removed		80
9	77	(80 – 77) 2232 (see line A)	= 6,696	$80 - \frac{6696}{16{,}573\ \text{(line B)}} = 79.6$
10	74	(79.6 – 74) 2232	= 12,499	$79.6 - \frac{12{,}499}{16{,}573} = 78.8$
11	71	(78.8 – 71) 2232	= 17,410	$78.8 - \frac{17{,}410}{16{,}573} = 77.7$
12	68	(77.7 – 68) 2232	= 21,650	$77.7 - \frac{21{,}650}{16{,}573} = 76.4$
A.M.				
1	65	(76.4 – 65) 2232	= 25,445	$76.4 - \frac{25{,}445}{16{,}573} = 74.9$
2	62	(74.9 – 62) 2232	= 28,793	$74.9 - \frac{28{,}793}{16{,}573} = 73.2$
3	60	(73.2 – 60) 2232	= 29,462	$73.2 - \frac{29{,}462}{16{,}573} = 71.4$
4	58	(71.4 – 58) 2232	= 29,909	$71.4 - \frac{29{,}909}{16{,}573} = 69.6$
5	60	(69.6 – 60) 2232	= 21,427[b]	$69.6 - \frac{21{,}427}{16{,}573} = 68.3$
6	62	(68.3 – 62) 2232	= 14,062	$68.3 - \frac{14{,}062}{16{,}573} = 67.5$
7	65	(67.5 – 65) 2232	= 5,580	$67.5 - \frac{5580}{16{,}573} = 67.2$
8	68	Stop flush: mass temperature is now below outdoor temperature		

D. Total mass cooling	212,933 Btu
E. Final mass temperature	67.2°F
F. Supplementary cooling	10,368 Btu
G. Total cooling (212,933 + 10,368)	223,301 Btu
H. Compare to 24-h heat gain	196,344 Btu
I. Flow rate required for night ventilation	About 5.5 ACH

[a]A surface conductance of 1.0 Btu/h ft^2 °F is assumed in this calculation.

[b]At this point, enough heat has been removed to meet the typical bay's design-day heat gain.

transfer between mass and air, led to the decision to also flush the precast cores at night.)

Because of this excess capacity, it appears advisable to begin the night flush a few hours later, when the Δt between indoors and outdoors is greater and therefore more cooling is achieved per hour of fan operation. (Repeat the procedure, beginning the flush at midnight with a Δt of 80 – 68 = 12F°, to see how similar results can be obtained with 3 fewer hours of fan operation.) The disadvantage is that the interior will remain hotter for a longer period in the evening, which could cause discomfort for a late worker. Alternatively, the flush could be stopped after 5:00 A.M., by which time the stored heat has been removed.

STEP 14. The airflow required will be checked at 4:00 A.M., the hour of maximum cooling:

$$\frac{29{,}909 \text{ Btu/h}}{0.018 \text{ Btu/ft}^3 \text{ °F h} \times (71.4 - 58)\text{F°}} = 124{,}000 \text{ cfh}$$

$$\text{ACH} = \frac{124{,}000 \text{ cfh}}{22{,}900 \text{ ft}^3} = 5.41$$

which is somewhat more than that predicted by the design guideline in Exercise 8.1, Part F, of 4.47 ACH. ■

What might be the advantages of this approach compared to conventional mechanical cooling? For this Oregon building, detailed records of electricity end use are available (see Ashley and Reynolds, 1994). Figure 8.48 compares several August monthly records for the (conventional) compressors and the night-flush fans. In the first two Augusts, the building operated as a night-ventilated structure. In the third August (1991), due to a buildingwide computer control changeover, the building operated only as a conventionally cooled structure. The sun's impact on the building should be relatively equal for these 3 months, but outdoor temperature varied as shown by the CDD18°C values. Not only was as much electricity necessary to cool the conventionally operated building, despite lower CDD than the previous August, but also all the fan energy use and almost all the compressor energy occurred during the daytime hours of high consumption. In many locations, utilities charge more for electricity used during the daytime. With night ventilation, the fans deliver huge quantities of fresh air off-peak by night, unlike the conventional daytime operation that recycles some air to save energy.

Another night ventilation example is the California Highway Patrol offices at Gilroy, California, shown in Fig. 8.49. This one-story building sits near a freeway interchange south of San José. In this building, the nighttime air is drawn in as far from the freeway as possible, taken underground a short distance (with just a bit of earth tube cooling), then distributed throughout the central corridor. At either end of a continuous skylight over the central corridor, large fans exhaust air by night. Corridor walls are concrete block, and the floor is a concrete slab on grade. The cool night air may carry a seasonal scent; Gilroy calls itself the garlic capital of the world.

(d) Fan-Assisted Evaporative Cooling

Before beginning the following calculations, be sure that:

1. You have checked your summer climate against the passive cooling design strategies

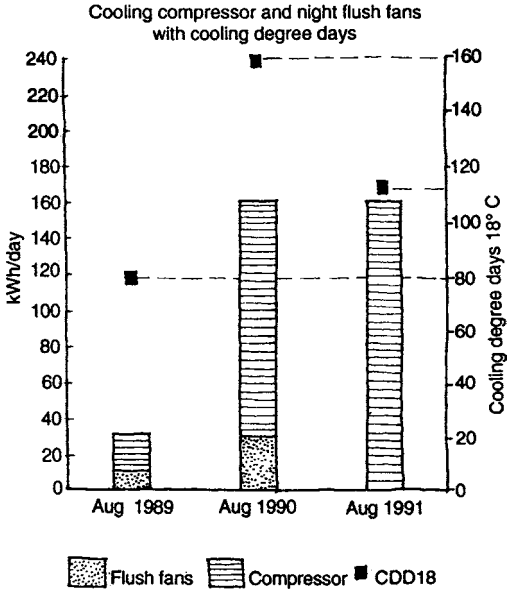
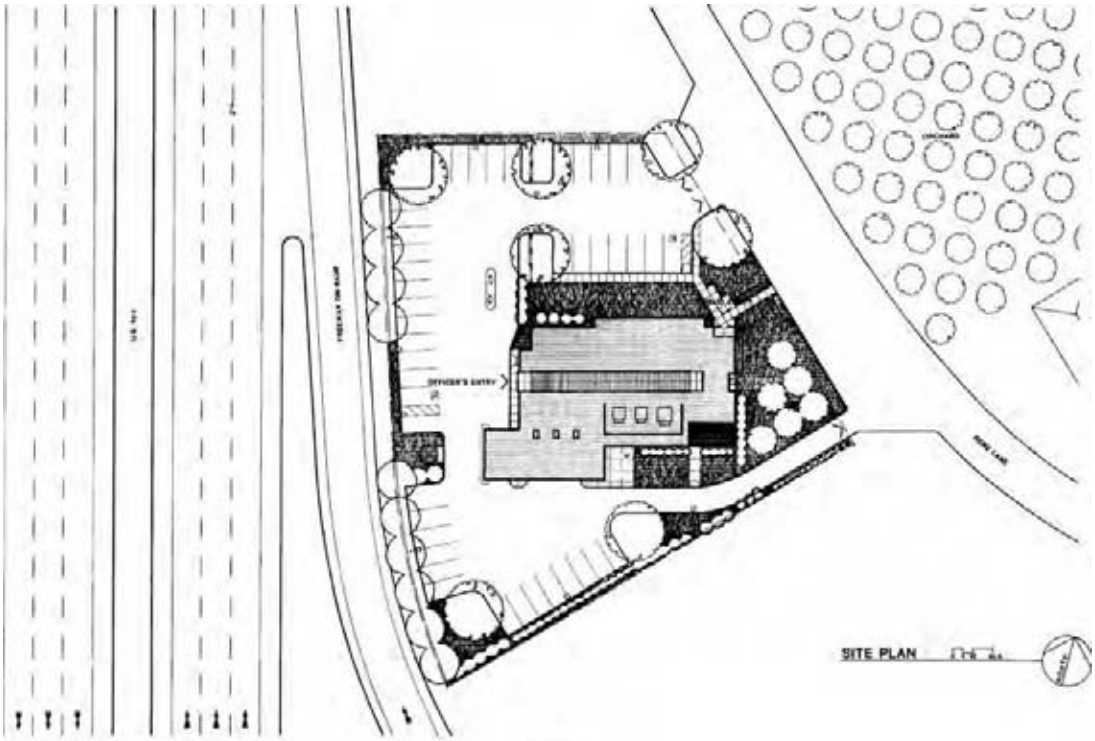


Fig. 8.48 *Comparing night ventilation of mass with conventional compressive cooling. The Emerald People's Utility District offices (Fig. 8.7 and Example 8.1, Part J) are monitored for end use of electricity. In August 1991 (117 CDD65 [65 CDD18]), with compressive cooling only, 160 kW/day of electricity was used, nearly all of it during periods of heavy use (day time). Compare this to the hotter August 1990 (150 CDD65 [83 CDD18]), when 126 kW/day was used for compressive cooling by day, plus 34 kW/day for night ventilation fan-forced cooling. (From Ashley and Reynolds, 1994.)*

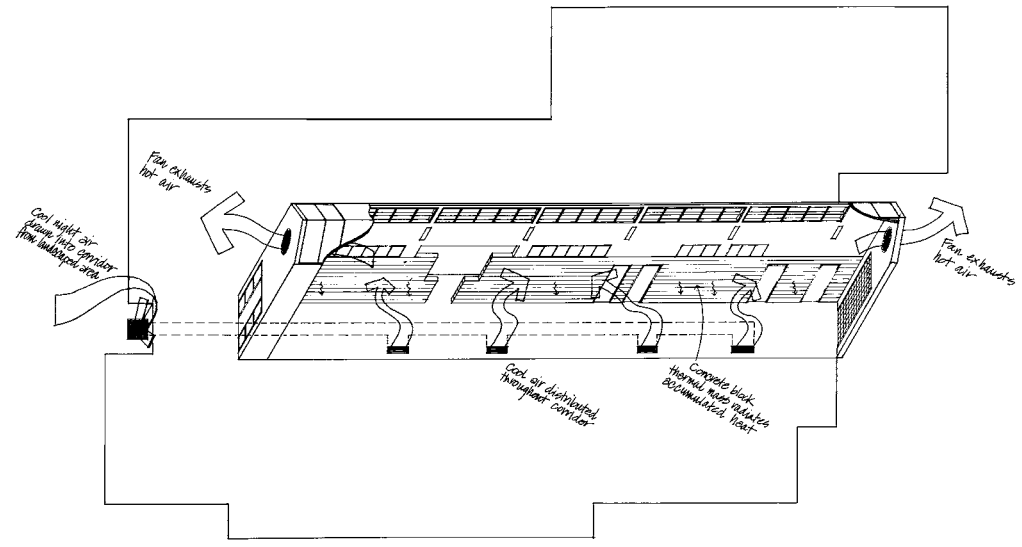


(*a*)

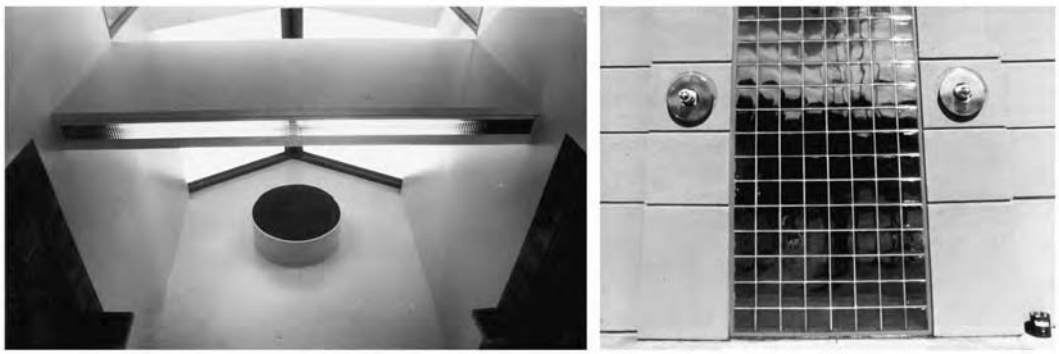


(*b*)

Fig. 8.49 *The California Highway Patrol building near Gilroy, California (a) is flushed with night air for cooling. (b) Site plan. (c) Axonometric shows intake air through a very short earth tube; night flush exhausts are at either end of the central skylit corridor with thermally massive walls and floor. (d) Looking up at one night flush exhaust duct. (e) Exterior with night flush exhaust grille. (Drawings courtesy of The Colyer/Freeman Group, San Francisco.)*



(c)



(d) (e)

Fig. 8.49 *(Continued)*

(Fig. 4.13), and the evaporative cooling strategy is appropriate.

2. Your building and climate have been checked for approximate performance based on the design guidelines for evaporative cooling (Section 8.6d).

First, find the total sensible heat gain in Btu/h that is to be removed from your building by evaporative cooling. Generally, this is calculated at your climate's summer design DB and mean coincident WB temperatures (Table B.1). The psychrometric chart is then used to plot the progress of evaporatively cooled air, as shown in Fig. 8.50. (The complete psychrometric chart is given in Fig. F.1 [I-P units].)

STEP 1. *Determine outdoor air conditions.* Enter the psychrometric chart at the summer design DB and mean coincident WB temperatures for your climate (point *A* in Fig. 8.50). As the air is blown through the evaporative cooler, it proceeds along the constant WB line toward saturation or 100% RH (from point *A* toward point *B* in Fig. 8.50).

STEP 2. *Determine supply air temperature.* The most efficient evaporative cooler will be able to cool and humidify the outdoor air to a point *about*

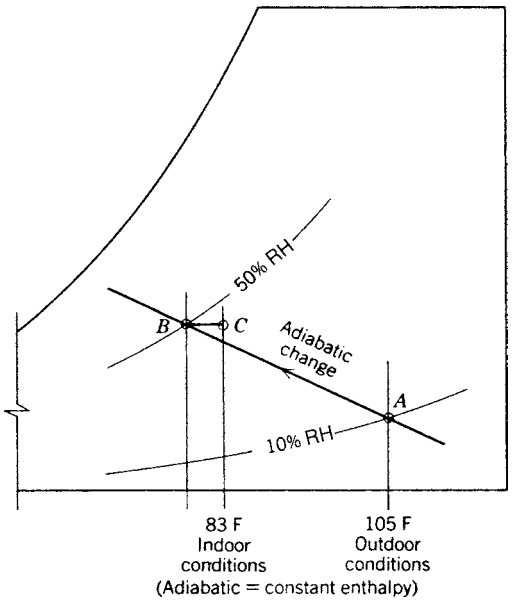


Fig. 8.50 *Once-through cycle of outdoor air through a fan-forced evaporative cooler. Values are transcribed from the psychrometric chart (Fig. F.1). Hot, dry air can be humidified adiabatically (no change in total heat content) from point A to point B, reaching indoor conditions that fall within, or close to, the optimum summer comfort zone shown in Figs. 4.7 and 4.8. This is accomplished without the use of the high-energy-consuming compressive refrigeration cycle. As the humidified air picks up sensible heat from the space, it moves from point B to point C.*

three-fourths of the total distance on the chart from entering air conditions to saturation (the three-fourths point is reached at point *B* in Fig. 8.50); a more reasonable operating assumption may be two-thirds of that total distance.

STEP 3. *Determine Δt indoors.* At conditions of point *B*, the air leaves the evaporative cooler and enters the building. It immediately begins to pick up sensible heat (moving from point *B* toward point *C* in Fig. 8.50). When the air has picked up enough heat to reach a marginally warm temperature, it is exhausted to the outdoors (point *C* in Fig. 8.50). Note, however, that this exhaust air is still well below outdoor temperatures, and therefore is capable of some cooling just outside the building.

STEP 4. *Calculate heat removed and airflow rate indoors.* The heat removed from the building by this air flow depends on two factors: (1) the DB temperature difference (Δt) between the supply air and the exhaust air (point *B* to point *C* in Fig. 8.50) and (2) the airflow rate usually expressed in cubic feet per minute:

$$\text{Btu/h removed} = (\text{cfm airflow}) \times (1.1 \text{ Btu min/ft}^3\ ^\circ\text{F h}) \times (\Delta t, \text{F}^\circ)$$

The designer can vary the cfm airflow rate by choosing larger or smaller evaporative coolers; any point less than three-fourths of the total distance from outdoor air to saturation may also be chosen.

EXAMPLE 8.14 A 4000-ft^2 (279-m^2) retail store near Tucson, Arizona, has been calculated to have a total sensible heat gain of 100,000 Btu/h at summer design conditions (105 DB, 66 WB for this location, from local climate data).

SOLUTION

STEP 1. Enter Fig. 8.50 at 105 DB, 66 WB (point *A*).

STEP 2. Measure along the constant 66-WB line to saturation, and determine that three-fourths of this distance corresponds to 76 DB, 66 WB (point *B*).

STEP 3. Δt indoors depends on the assumed exhaust air DB temperature; assume 83°F in this example (point *C*, corresponding to 83 DB, 68 WB). Then, $\Delta t = 83 - 76 = 7\text{F}^\circ$.

STEP 4. Calculate heat removed and airflow rate indoors.

$$100{,}000 \text{ Btu/h removed} = (\text{cfm airflow}) \times (1.1 \text{ Btu min/ft}^3\ ^\circ\text{F h}) \times (7\text{F}^\circ)$$

Rearranging the equation yields

$$\text{cfm} = \frac{100{,}000 \text{ Btu/h}}{1.1 \text{ Btu min/ft}^3\ ^\circ\text{F h} \times 7\text{F}^\circ} = 12{,}987 \text{ cfm}$$

Note that this is a rate of 12,987/4000 = 3.3 cfm/ft^2 of floor area.

This airflow rate can be provided by one larger or several smaller cooling units, depending on possible zoning of the building. For instance, two evaporative coolers at 7000 cfm each would meet the requirements for this retail store; one might serve a smaller-area zone in front with show windows and a lot of solar gain, while another might serve a larger-area interior zone with less solar gain. ■

Some typical evaporative coolers are shown in Section 8.6.

(e) Cooltowers

One of the first North American cooltowers was shown in Fig. 8.19, along with estimated cooling design guidelines in Fig. 8.20. To more closely estimate the performance of such a passive evaporative device with calculations, some very complex equations are involved (for example, see Thompson et al., 1994). For a shorter but less-exact approach, consider this formula proposed by Givoni (1994) in either °F or °C:

$$t_{exit} = DB - 0.87\ (DB - WB)$$

where

t_{exit} = air entering the space (exiting the cooltower)

DB = dry-bulb temperature, outside

WB = coincident wet-bulb temperature, outside

This simple equation ignores the potential influences of both wind (driving more air through the evaporative cooling pads) and the optional solar chimney exhaust tower (seen in Fig. 8.19).

Cooling achieved by the tower depends both on the temperature of this exit air and on its flow rate. Givoni (1994) proposes, in SI units:

$$V = 0.033\ A_{evap} \sqrt{H\ (DB - WB)}$$

where

V = flow, in m³/s (× 1000 = L/s)

A_{evap} = total area of wetted pads, m², in cooltower

H = overall height of tower, m

DB = dry-bulb temperature, outside, C

WB = coincident wet-bulb temperature, outside, C

0.033 = accounts for pressure drop through the tower and the building

Note that this equation ignores the area of both the cooltower and the outlet. Knowing both the temperature and the flow rate, the cooling achieved is

$$W = 1.2V[t_{int} - t_{exit}]$$

where

W = watts removed from space by cooltower

V = flow from cooltower, in m³/s (× 1000 = L/s)

t_{int} = DB temperature to be maintained indoors, C

t_{exit} = air entering space (exiting cooltower), C

In I-P units, this becomes

$$V = 2.7\ A_{evap} \sqrt{H\ (DB - WB)}$$

where

V = flow, in cfm

A_{evap} = total area of wetted pads, ft², in cooltower

H = overall height of tower, ft

DB = dry-bulb temperature, outside, F

WB = coincident wet-bulb temperature, outside, F

2.7 = accounts for pressure drop throughout the tower and the building

Note that this equation ignores the area of both the cooltower and the outlet. Knowing both the temperature and the flow rate, cooling achieved is

$$Btu/h = 1.1\ V\ [t_{int} - t_{exit}]$$

where

Btu/h = heat removed from space by cooltower

V = flow from cooltower, in cfm

t_{int} = DB temperature maintained indoors, F

t_{exit} = air entering space (exiting cooltower), F

In a remote desert west of Tucson, Arizona, the Agua Blanca ranch uses several cooltowers to serve a building around a T-shaped courtyard (Fig. 8.51). This off-grid building complex uses PV for lighting and water pumping, propane for a refrigerator, and one wall heater and stand-by generator, and collects rainwater in a cistern below the courtyard. Wood stoves and fireplaces supplement direct solar gain in winter. The courtyard connects to the surrounding ranch by three passages, one covered with a roof and small open skylights, one covered with a deciduous vine on a trellis, and one open to the sky. Large rolling barn doors are located at the outer end of each passage; these provide both security and the ability to trap cool air from the cooltowers (or via the indoor spaces), thus increasing hot-weather comfort outdoors.

Three cooltowers, 22 ft (6 m) high, each with a total evaporative pad area of 64 ft² (5.9 m²), serve three units around the courtyard. At the outlet of each cooltower, switches allow the flow to be shared, sent to either of two locations, or closed off. One of the cooltowers can deliver air directly to the covered passage off the courtyard.

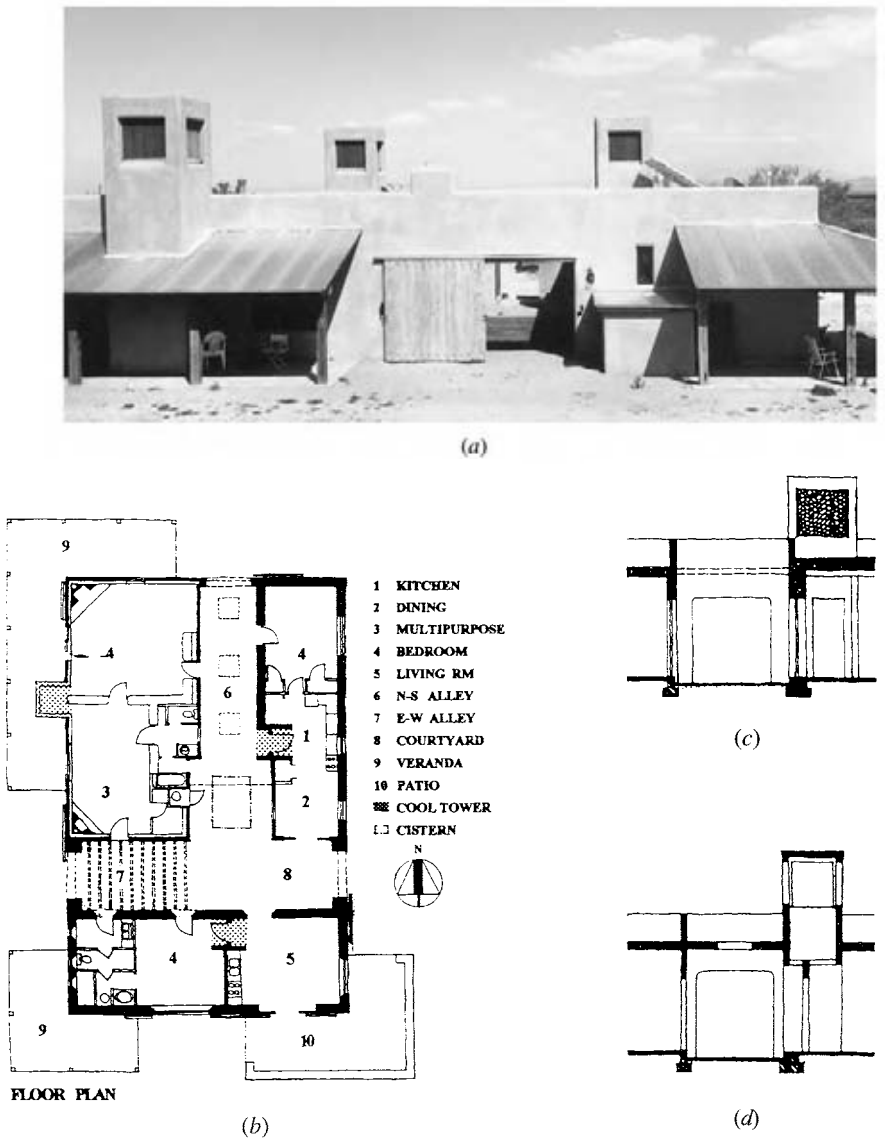


Fig. 8.51 *Cooltowers dominate the silhouette of the Agua Blanca ranch in a remote desert near Tucson, Arizona. (a) West side, with one of the large rolling barn doors that allow the courtyard/outdoor spaces to be connected with cooler breezes or to be protected from hot winds. Air from the cooltowers, after use within the units, can be discharged to the courtyard, while (under the hottest conditions) it is still cooler than outdoor air. This helps to form a "cool pool" of air in the protected courtyard. (b) Plan of three units, each with a cooltower, around a T-shaped courtyard/covered passage outdoor space. (c) East–west section through the courtyard. (d) North–south section through one of the three cooltowers. (Courtesy of Martin Yoklic, Environmental Research Laboratory, University of Arizona.)*

Design simulations (Yoklic and Layseca, 1998) for a typical June in Tucson predict a flow from each cooltower of about 5000 cfm (2.36 m^3/s), maintaining the indoor temperature at 74°F (23.3°C). In these quite small buildings, this translates into an ACH of about 60, considering the volume to include a height up to 6 ft (1.8 m), above which stratification of warm air negates circulation through the upper portion of the space.

These computer-generated design simulations are summarized in Table 8.17. These results differ somewhat from the results of Givoni's (1994) equations, suggesting that perhaps in this case:

TABLE 8.17 Cooltower Performance Hourly Simulations[a]

PART A. TOWER EFFECTIVE HEIGHTb = 10 ft (3 m)															
			Tower Outflow								*Tower Outflow*				
Ambient (°F)								Ambient (°C)							
DB	WB	RH (%)	DB	RH (%)	Velocity (fpm)	Flow Rate (cfm)	Water Consumed (gal/h)	DB	WB	RH (%)	DB	RH (%)	Velocity (m/s)	Flow Rate[c] (m^3/s)	Water Consumed (L/h)
82	56	18.2	61.6	72.0	170	4254	9.8	27.8	13.3	18.2	16.4	72.0	0.86	2.00	37.1
87	59	18.0	65.1	71.0	175	4384	10.8	30.6	15	18.0	18.4	71.0	0.89	2.07	40.9
93	62	16.7	68.9	69.1	183	4572	12.3	33.9	16.7	16.7	20.5	69.1	0.93	2.16	46.6
98	64	15.0	71.8	67.0	190	4752	13.9	36.7	17.8	15.0	22.1	67.0	0.97	2.24	52.6
102	64	11.4	72.9	63.2	199	4987	16.1	38.9	17.8	11.4	22.7	63.2	1.01	2.35	60.9
PART B. TOWER EFFECTIVE HEIGHT[b] = 15 ft (4.6 m)															
			Tower Outflow								*Tower Outflow*				
Ambient (°F)								*Ambient (°C)*							
DB	WB	RH (%)	DB	RH (%)	Velocity (fpm)	Flow Rate (cfm)	Water Consumed (gal/h)	DB	WB	RH (%)	DB	RH (%)	Velocity (m/s)	Flow Rate[c] (m^3/s)	Water Consumed (L/h)
82	56	18.2	62.2	69.6	205	5133	11.5	27.8	13.3	18.2	16.8	69.6	1.04	2.42	43.5
87	59	18.0	65.7	68.7	212	5289	12.7	30.6	15	18.0	18.7	68.7	1.08	2.50	48.1
93	62	16.7	69.6	66.7	221	5516	14.4	33.9	16.7	16.7	20.9	66.7	1.12	2.60	54.5
98	64	15.0	72.5	64.5	229	5734	16.3	36.7	17.8	15.0	22.5	64.5	1.16	2.71	61.7
102	64	11.4	73.7	60.5	241	6017	18.9	38.9	17.8	11.4	23.2	60.5	1.22	2.84	71.5
PART C. TOWER EFFECTIVE HEIGHT[b] = 20 ft (6.1 m)															
			Tower Outflow								*Tower Outflow*				
Ambient (°F)								*Ambient (°C)*							
DB	WB	RH (%)	DB	RH (%)	Velocity (fpm)	Flow Rate (cfm)	Water Consumed (gal/h)	DB	WB	RH (%)	DB	RH (%)	Velocity (m/s)	Flow Rate[c] (m^3/s)	Water Consumed (L/h)
82	56	18.2	62.6	68.0	235	5864	12.9	27.8	13.3	18.2	17.0	68.0	1.19	2.77	48.8
87	59	18.0	66.2	67.0	242	6043	14.2	30.6	15	18.0	19.0	67.0	1.23	2.85	53.7
93	62	16.7	70.1	65.0	252	6302	16.1	33.9	16.7	16.7	21.2	65.0	1.28	2.97	60.9
98	64	15.0	73.0	62.7	262	6550	18.2	36.7	17.8	15.0	22.8	62.7	1.33	3.09	68.9
102	64	11.4	74.3	58.7	275	6874	21.1	38.9	17.8	11.4	23.5	58.7	1.40	3.24	79.9

Source: Excerpted from Yoklic and Layseca (1980). Additional simulations courtesy of Martin Yoklic. SI conversions by the authors of this book.

[a]Tower has a total evaporative pad area of 64 ft^2 (5.95 m^2); pad thickness is 4 in. (100 mm); tower outlet area is 25 ft^2 (2.32 m^2); building outlet area is 50 ft^2 (4.65 m^2). Ambient data are selected from Tucson, Arizona, typical June.

[b]Effective height is measured from the bottom of the evaporative pads to the top of the outlet to the building.

[c]Flow rate (m^3/s) × 1000 = L/s.

$$t_{exit} = DB - 0.70\,[DB - WB]$$

and that the flow rate (in SI units) may be closer to

$$V = 0.04\,A_{evap}\,\sqrt{2z\,(DB - WB)}$$

where z = effective height of the tower, that is, from the bottom of the evaporative pads to the top of the outlet to the building.

(f) Roof Pond Cooling

Before doing the following detailed calculations, be sure to (1) check the summer climate against the passive cooling design strategies (Fig 4.13) to confirm that either the evaporative or the high thermal mass strategy is appropriate, and (2) check the building and climate for approximate performance based upon the design guidelines. Note, however, that the design guidelines are based *only* on summer night DB temperature. With evaporative cooling (such as a light spray onto the surface of the roof pond containers), better performance can be expected, as shown by the following calculation procedure, based on Fleischhacker et al. (1982). This procedure can be used to check the size and depth required for your building's roof pond. It assumes an *optimum pond depth of 4 in. (100 mm)* but allows for other depths as well.

STEP 1. First, assemble the following data on your climate:

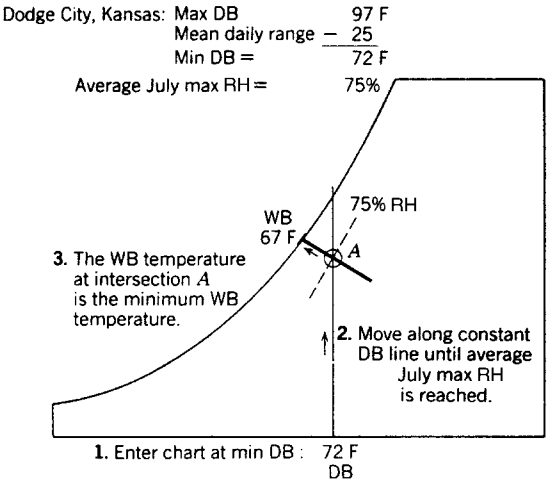


Fig. 8.52 *Finding the minimum (nightly) WB temperature, summer design conditions, for Dodge City, Kansas.*

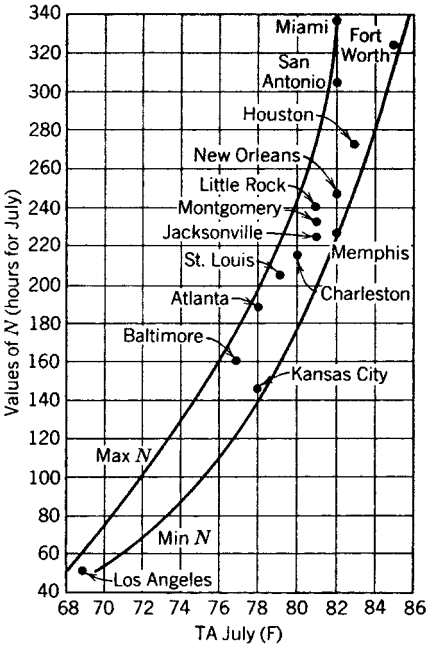


Fig. 8.53 *Range of N, average July operating hours, for residential air conditioners. (Based on Fleischhacker et al., 1982.)*

Maximum DB temperature (Appendix B)

Mean daily range (Appendix B)

Minimum DB temperature (= max DB − mean daily range)

Design WB (2%) (Appendix B)

Average maximum RH for July (from local climatological data)

July average temperature (TA July in Appendix C)

From these data, determine two further characteristics for your climate: (1) minimum WB temperature and (2) average July operating hours for residential air conditioning, or N.

Minimum WB temperature can be determined from the psychrometric chart (shown in Figs. F.1 and F.2). Enter the chart with minimum DB and move vertically along the constant DB line until you reach the average maximum RH for July. At that intersection, refer to the diagonal WB temperature lines, from which minimum WB temperature can be determined (Fig. 8.52).

Average July operating hours, N, can be estimated from Fig. 8.53. Enter at July TA for your climate. Your climate's N will fall somewhere between the maximum N and minimum N lines; as a guide to estimating N for your climate, compare your climate's mean daily range and design WB to those of the cities shown in Fig. 8.53. The higher the mean daily range and the lower the design WB, the lower the N.

STEP 2. Calculate the peak hourly heat gain *but exclude internal gains*. (The method given in Section 8.11 is appropriate for this roof–pond-sizing procedure.)

STEP 3. Approximate the daily total heat (excluding internal heat) to be stored in the roof pond, Q_E, in Btu:

$$Q_E = \frac{(\text{Btu/h, peak hourly gain}) \times (N, \text{ hours for July})}{31, \text{ days in July}}$$

STEP 4. Determine the rate of the internal gain, in Btu/h, while the building is occupied.

STEP 5. Approximate the daily total internal heat to be stored in the roof pond, Q_I, in Btu.

Q_I = hourly internal gains, in Btu/h
× daily hours of building occupation

STEP 6. Calculate the daily heat gain directly to the roof pond through its insulated covers, Q_P, in Btu. This formula assumes R-16 (R:SI − 2.8) insulating panels with white upper surfaces and foil faces on the under surface.

$$Q_P = 0.4(A_C)(4 \times \text{DB max} - \text{DB min} - 200)$$

where A_c is the horizontal surface area of pond in square feet and temperature are in °F.

STEP 7. Consider whether fans will be used to stir the room air below the roof pond (to help the heat exchange between the pond and the room, as well as to provide comfort) and determine the value to be used for h, the overall heat transfer coefficient. A corrugated steel deck ceiling is assumed.

Air Velocity	fpm (m/s)	0 (0)	44 (1.22)	73 (0.37)	115 (0.58)
Value of h		1.25	1.47	1.53	1.70

STEP 8. Determine the highest comfortable internal air temperature, t_{op}, from the comfort criteria provided in Fig. 4.9.

STEP 9. Calculate the maximum allowable internal air temperature, t_{imax}, which will be higher than t_{op} by a factor F that is related to your climate's characteristics (see Table 8.18, Part A for values of F).

$$t_{imax} = t_{op} + F$$

STEP 10. Determine the allowable temperature swing of the roof pond.

(a) Calculate the maximum pond t:

$$\text{max. pond } t = t_{imax} - \frac{\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{peak hourly heat gain}\\ \text{including internal heat gains, Btu/h}\end{array}\right)}{h\,(A_c)}$$

where t_{imax} is from step 9, h is from step 7, and A_c is the horizontal surface area of the pond in square feet.

(b) Calculate the minimum pond t, which depends on whether evaporative cooling will be used to help lower the pond's temperature and on several characteristics of the pond and the building.

1. For a dry pond surface:

$$\text{min. pond } t_{dry} = DB_{min} + 1.5F° \pm \text{corrections F° (if any, from Table 8.18 Part B)}$$

2. For a wet pond surface:

$$\text{min. pond } t_{wet} = DB_{min} - \frac{DB_{min} - WB_{min}}{2}$$

(c) Find the pond temperature swing Δt_p:

$$\Delta T_{pdry} = \text{max. pond } t - \text{min. pond } t_{dry}$$

$$\Delta T_{pwet} = \text{max. pond } t - \text{min. pond } t_{wet}$$

(Obviously, if neither minimum pond t dry nor minimum pond t wet is lower than maximum pond t, a roof pond cannot be used for cooling.)

STEP 11. Determine the required pond depth D (in inches).

$$D = \frac{(0.19)\,(Q_E + Q_I + Q_P)}{(\Delta t_p)\,(A_c)}$$

where Q_E, Q_I, and Q_P are the daily pond heat gains from steps 3, 5, and 6; Δt_p is from step 10; and A_c is the horizontal surface area of the pond in square feet.

Note: If D is less than 4 in., consider reducing the pond size and recalculating. If D is much more than 4 in., consider a larger pond area, more air motion indoors, the use of a wet pond surface to more closely approach the optimum 4-in. depth, or see optional step 12.

STEP 12. (optional) Auxiliary mechanical air conditioning may offer a more economical alternative than increased pond size. The size, in tons (12,000 Btu/h) of required cooling capacity, is determined as follows:

(a) desired D is 4 in. optimum.

(b) $$\Delta t_p = \left(\frac{0.19}{D}\right)\frac{(Q_E + Q_I + Q_P)}{A_c}$$

(c) max. pond t = min. pond $t + \Delta t_p$

(d) and tons of cooling at peak total hourly heat gain (Btu/h)

$$= \frac{(\text{Btu/h} - [h\,(A_c)]\,(t_{imax} - \text{max pond } t)}{12{,}000}$$

where the peak total hourly heat gain *includes* internal gains, h is from step 7, A_c is the horizontal surface area of the pond in square feet, t_{imax} is from step 9, and max. pond t is from step 10.

EXAMPLE 8.6, PART B Size the roof pond for the Albuquerque office building for which we predicted that a 4-in.-deep pond equal to three-fourths of the building's floor area would be sufficient. Assume that the one-story office is about 4000 ft² (372 m²) in area. Try a 4-in.-deep pond of 3000 ft² (279 m²).

SOLUTION

STEP 1. Albuquerque, design data:

DB_{max} is 91°F (Table B.5).

MDR is 25.3F° (Table B.5).

DB min. is 91 – 25.3 = 66°F.

July RH maximum (nighttime) is approximately 50% (local data).

July TA is 79°F (Appendix C).

WB_{min} is from Fig. F.1, at the intersection of the 66 DB and 50% RH, this is 55°F.

July operating hours *N* for this dry, high area should be close to the minimum for TA = 79°; from Fig. 8.53, this is about 160 hours.

STEP 2. Determine the peak hourly gain. Earlier in this exercise, a total gain of 15 Btu/h ft^2 was assumed as an average. Assume that 9 Btu/h ft^2 of this total represents the load from electric lighting, people, and equipment, and that 6 Btu/h ft^2 is due to envelope and ventilation gains. (No heat gains to the interior are assumed through the roof pond.) Then peak hourly gains (excluding internal)

$$= 6 \times 4000 \text{ ft}^2 = 24{,}000 \text{ Btu/h}$$

STEP 3.

$$Q_E = \frac{24{,}000 \text{ Btu/h} \times 160 \text{ h}}{31 \text{ days}} = 123{,}870 \text{ Btu}$$

STEP 4.

$$\text{internal gains} = 9 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2 \times 4000 \text{ ft}^2$$

$$= 36{,}000 \text{ Btu/h}$$

STEP 5.

$$Q_I = (36{,}000 \text{ Btu/h})(9 \text{ hours of operation})$$

$$= 324{,}000 \text{ Btu}$$

STEP 6.

$$Q_P = 0.4(3000 \text{ ft}^2)\,(4 \times 91°\text{F} - 66°\text{F} - 200)$$

$$= 1200 \times (364 - 66 - 200)$$

$$= 1200 \times 98 = 117{,}600 \text{ Btu}$$

STEP 7. Fans will be used, at 115 fpm, for added comfort as well as for heat transfer. Therefore, $h = 1.7$.

STEP 8. From Fig. 4.4, with 115 fpm (0.58 m/s) air speed, it appears that 83°F is within the comfort zone. So, $t_{op} = 83°\text{F}$.

STEP 9. $t_{imax} = t_{op} + F$. In Table 8.18, Part A, Albuquerque's conditions appear to be somewhere between those of San Antonio and those of Phoenix, so assume F to be 1.75.

$$t_{imax} = 83 + 1.75 = 84.75°\text{F}$$

STEP 10.

(a) $$\text{max. pond } t = t_{imax} - \frac{\text{total hourly gain}}{h(A_c)}$$

$$= 84.75 - \frac{24{,}000 + 36{,}000}{1.7 \times 3000}$$

$$= 84.75 - 11.75 = 73°\text{F}$$

(b) Assume a dry pond surface. Because this is a 4-in.-deep pond that is fully exposed to sky, with no night internal load, there is no correction factor from Table 8.18, Part B.

$$\text{min. pond } t_{dry} = DB_{min} + 1.5F°$$

$$= 66 + 1.5 = 67.5°\text{F}$$

For a wet pond,

$$\text{min. pond } t_{wet} = DB_{min} - \frac{DB_{min} - WB_{min}}{2}$$

$$= 66 - \frac{66 - 56}{2}$$

$$= 61.5°\text{F}$$

(c) The pond temperature swing is therefore

$$\Delta t_p \text{ dry} = 73 - 67.5 = 5.5F°$$

$$\Delta t_p \text{ wet} = 73 - 61.5 = 11.5F°$$

STEP 11.

$$D_{rqd} = \frac{0.19(123{,}870 + 324{,}000 + 117{,}600)}{5.5 \times 3000}$$

$$= \frac{107{,}439}{16{,}500} = 6.51 \text{ in. for a dry pond}$$

(For a wet pond, $D_{rqd} = 3.1$ in.) ■

It appears that a 4-in.- (102-mm)-deep pond with a wet surface of somewhat less than 3000 ft^2 (279 m^2) would be sufficient for this building in this climate.

Once the area and the depth of roof ponds have been determined, questions arise about the architectural integration of such large horizontal surfaces and their relative emphasis on heating or cooling. Figure 8.54 shows variations in the treatment of containers and the insulating panels

to match the most important thermal role of roof ponds; Fig. 8.55 shows three typical approaches to the placement of roof ponds on buildings. A valuable source of information about the container bags, sliding insulation, roof decks, and other components needed for roof ponds is the *California Passive Solar Handbook* by Phillip Niles and Ken Haggard, written for the California Energy Commission in 1980. Commercially available products include the Skytherm® system, developed and pioneered by Harold R. Hay.

A variation of the roof pond (applying primarily to the cooling mode) is to move the water rather than move the insulation. Water-impervious insulation (such as Styrofoam) is secured in place above the metal ceiling at a distance sufficient to be a reservoir for the cooling water. At night, this water is pumped onto the top of the insulation, where it cools by radiation and evaporation, then trickles slowly back into the reservoir. This variation was tested at the School of Engineering Technology, University of Nebraska at Omaha campus. In winter, the reservoir of water above the metal ceiling acted as thermal mass for a DG passive system. However, cold winter rain must be excluded from that reservoir.

(g) Earth Tubes

The use of the earth as a heat sink, in our culture at any rate, is still in an early development stage. The most direct application would be an underground building with uninsulated concrete walls set against the soil. The problem, of course, is that winter heat loss will likely exceed summer loss; if solar heat can be admitted (e.g., through skylights) to counterbalance the increased winter loss, uninsulated walls sized for the desired summer loss become more attractive. (However, except in dry climates, condensation on walls may pose a seasonal or even year-round problem.) A more thorough discussion of this option can be found in Watson and Labs (1983).

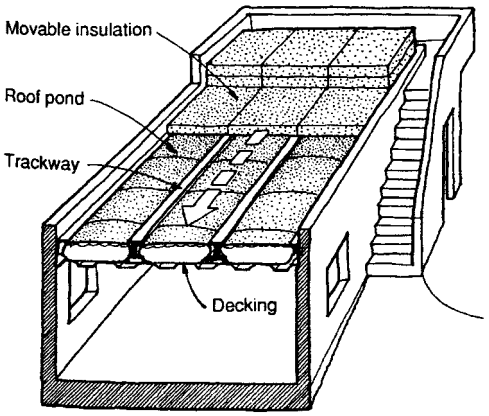
The long-term potential of the earth as a heat sink is lessened by the fact that soils are relatively slow heat conductors. For example, we ignore winter heat loss through concrete slabs to the earth below, calculating instead the heat losses through the slab's exposed perimeter.

Earth tubes (as discussed under design guidelines in Section 8.6g) are devices for cooling the incoming ventilating air through earth contact before it enters the building. A small amount of air (perhaps equal to the minimum fresh air requirements—see Tables E.25 and E.26) is usually brought in through several tubes. These tubes are usually 8 to 20 in. in diameter, are buried at a depth of 5 to 10 ft, and are up to 200 ft long. Table F.12 summarizes several tested summertime applications.

The lowest temperature to which air can be cooled in such tubes will *approach* ground temperature; the more slowly the air moves through the tube, the more time there will be for cooling. The air temperature might come within 4F° (about 2C°) of the soil temperature under good conditions.

To approximate soil temperature around the tube:

1. Determine $t_{GW,}$ the groundwater temperature (in °F) (assumed equal to deep-underground earth temperature) from the map in Fig. 8.56.
2. Determine t_{amp}, the average amplitude of surface temperature (in F°), using the map in Fig. 7.11.
3. Determine CF, the amplitude correction factor, depending upon whether the soil outside the earth tube is dry, average, or wet during the cooling period. The amplitudes, or seasonal variations in earth temperature, *diminish to near zero* at identifiable depths (referred to as CF):



(*a*)

Fig. 8.54 *(a) Key components of roof pond systems with movable insulation. (b–g) Variations on roof ponds for optimization of heating or cooling performance. (Reprinted from Niles and Haggard, 1980, by permission of the California Energy Commission.)*

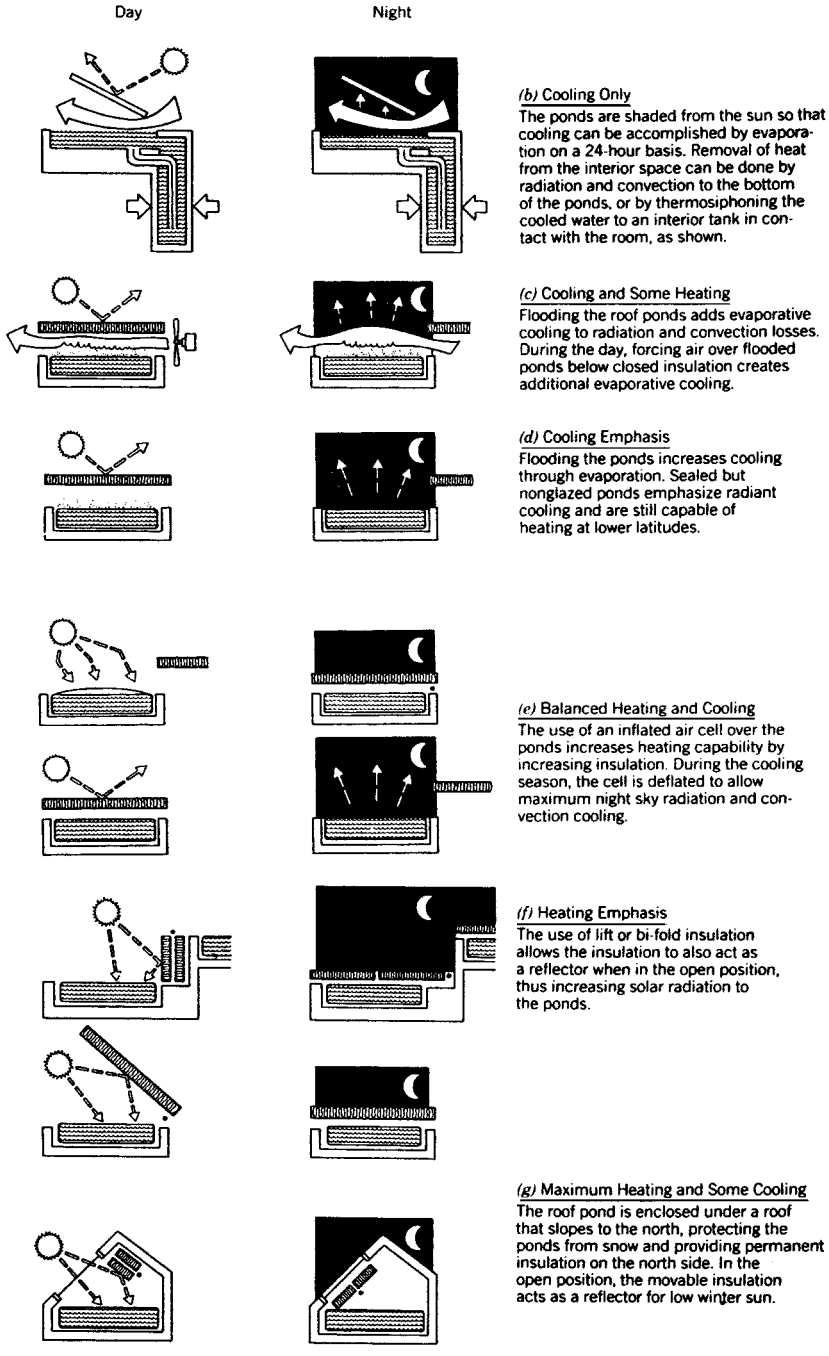


Fig. 8.54 *(Continued)*

TABLE 8.18 Roof Pond Design Data

PART A. VALUES OF FACTOR "F"			
			"F," Based on Interior Air Motion
Location	**Design DB/ Mean Coincident WB (°F)**	**MDR (F°)**	**None**	**Fans: 115 fpm (0.58 m/s)**
Miami, Florida	90/77	15	2.0	1.0
San Antonio, Texas	97/73	19	3.0	1.5
Phoenix, Arizona	107/71	27	4.0	2.0

PART B. CORRECTIONS TO MINIMUM (DB) POND TEMPERATURE, F°											
				Night Internal Load							
Pond Depth (in.)				**(Btu/h ft²)**				**Pond Portion Exposed to Sky**			
2	4	6	10	0	2	4	8	⅓	½	⅔	Fully
−1.5	+0	+0.7	+1.0	+0	+0	+0.8	+2.5	+3.3	+2.1	+1.2	+0

Source: Fleischhacker et al. (1982).

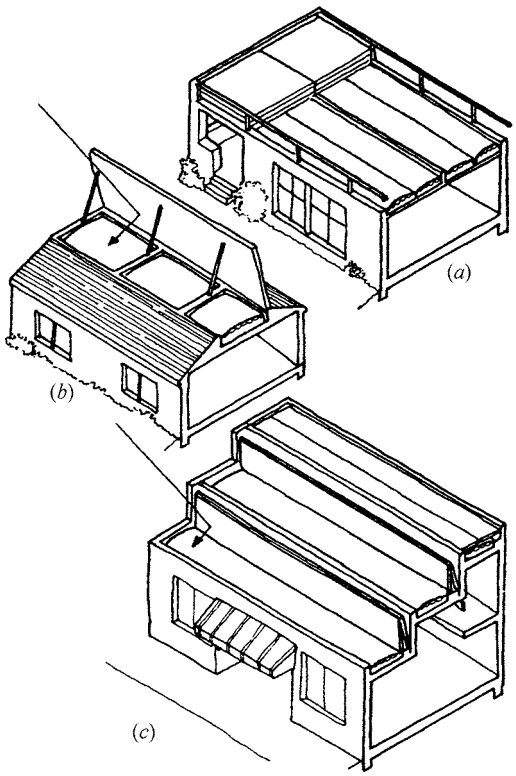


Fig. 8.55 *Three examples of roof pond integration with building form. (a) Insulating panels slide open to stack over exterior (or untempered) space. See Fig. 8.22 for this system in use. (b) Hinged insulating panels with reflective undersurfaces can act as reflectors to increase winter insolation. However, some interference with summer night sky radiation can result, because the pond surface cannot "see" the entire sky dome. (c) Bifold insulating panels also act as reflectors, interfering less with diffuse solar radiation and allowing somewhat more exposure to the night sky than (b). (Adapted from Niles and Haggard, 1980, by permission of the California Energy Commission.)*

	CF
Dry soil	14 ft (4.25 m)
Average soil	18 ft (5.5 m)
Wet soil	22 ft (6.7 m)

4. Determine D, the depth (ft) at which the earth tube will be installed.
5. Determine t_{SG}, the late summer ground temperature (°F) around the earth tube:

$$t_{SG} = (t_{GW}) + (t_{AMP})\,[1 - (D/CF)]$$

(Note that when the tube is very deep and D ≥ CF, $t_{SG} = t_{GW}$.)

6. Determine the temperature difference that makes cooling possible:

$$\Delta t = \text{desired indoor temperature} - t_{SG}$$

7. Determine the long-term cooling rate:

$$\text{Btu/h ft of tube length} = (\Delta t)\,(C)\,(\text{Area, tube surface, ft}^2\text{/ft of length})$$

where C is a factor that accounts for the long-term effects of heat flow from the tube to the soil:

C = 0.11 for dry soil
(soil conductivity k = 0.25 Btu/h ft °F)
C = 0.28 for average soil (k = 0.75)
C = 0.44 for wet soil (k = 1.5)

In SI units,

C = 0.62 for dry soil
C = 1.59 for average soil
C = 2.50 for wet soil

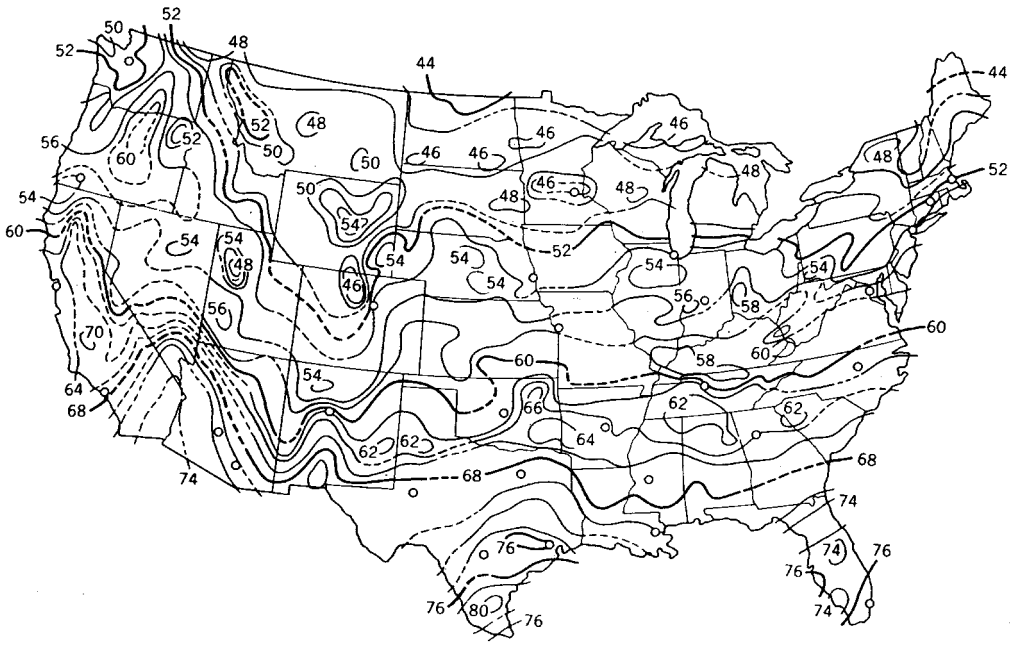


Fig. 8.56 *Distribution of well-water temperature (°F) in the United States, adapted from the National Water Well Association. These temperatures may be assumed to be the yearly average ground temperatures. For seasonal temperature change amplitude, see Fig. 7.11. (Reprinted from* Passive Cooling*. 1981. Published by the American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.)*

This represents an attempt to simplify a complex problem. The airflow rate is ignored, even though, with very slow flow, there is more time for heat exchange in the tube. The longer the tube is flooded with hot air, the higher will be the earth temperature. For more detailed information about other approaches to earth tubes, see Givoni (1994), C.E. Frances, "Earth Cooling Tubes, Case Studies. . ." in Bowen et al. (1981), Abrams (1986), and Brown et al. (1992).

EXAMPLE 8.7, PART B A partially underground nature center of 4000 ft^2 (372 m^2) in northern Pennsylvania has an hourly heat gain of 9.3 Btu/h ft^2, of which 2.2 Btu/h ft^2 are due to required outdoor air ventilation. A long trench at a depth of 6 ft (1.8 m) in heavy, damp soil must be dug for a utility connection. If one earth tube, used only for cooling the outdoor ventilation air, is installed at the bottom of the trench, what length and diameter will be needed?

SOLUTION

The total cooling needed from the earth tube is

$$(4000 \text{ ft}^2)(2.2 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2) = 8800 \text{ Btu/h}$$

(In Part A, using design guidelines, assuming heavy damp soil, a 60-ft-long tube (18 m), 20 in. (508 mm) in diameter promised to deliver about 4500 Btu/h; two such tubes, about 9000 Btu/h.)

1. Determine t_{GW}: From Fig. 8.56, northern Pennsylvania has an average underground temperature of 52°F (11.1°C).
2. Determine t_{AMP}: The seasonal amplitude (from Fig. 7.11) is about 18F°.
3. Determine CF: In wet soil, this amplitude extends to 22 ft (6.7 m).
4. Determine D: The given trench depth is 6 ft (1.8 m).
5. Determine t_{SG}: The late summer ground temperature (°F) around the earth tube:

$$t_{SG} = (t_{GW}) + (t_{AMP})\,[1 - (D/CF)]$$
$$= (52) + (18)\,[1 - (6/22)]$$
$$= (52) + (13) = \text{about } 65°\text{F } \textit{at most}.$$

6. Determine the temperature difference that makes cooling possible:

$$\Delta t = \text{desired indoor temperature} - t_{SG}$$

In this case, we accept a maximum 82°F air temperature (the walls will be cooler, thanks to their underground location), so 82 – 65 = 17F°.

7. Determine the long-term cooling rate: Btu/h ft of tube length

$$= (\Delta t)(C)(A)$$

where, A is area of tube surface, ft²/ft of length

Here, C = about 0.44 (Btu/h ft² F°) for wet soil. Try first the 20-in.- (508-mm)-diameter tube from the earlier design guidelines:

Btu/h ft of tube length

$$= (17\text{F°})(0.44)\left[\frac{20\text{ in.} \times \pi \times 1\text{ ft length}}{12\text{ in./ft}}\right]$$

$$= 39\text{ Btu/h ft}$$

To deliver the full 8800 Btu/h, the tube would need to be about 8800/39 = 225 ft (69 m) in length. The design guideline promised considerably more, in this case, than could be delivered.

In early summer, the earth temperature around the tube would be at its yearly average temperature of 52°F. With this larger Δt, 82 – 52 = 30F°, the performance improves:

Btu/h ft of tube length

$$= (30\text{F°})(0.44)\left[\frac{20\text{ in.} \times \pi \times 1\text{ ft length}}{12\text{ in./ft}}\right]$$

$$= 69\text{ Btu/h ft}$$

and the tube length under those conditions would be about 8000/69 = 127 ft (39 m). ■

(h) Passive Cooling Summary

As a summary example of a passively cooled and solar-heated building, consider the Visitor Center for the Antelope Valley California Poppy Reserve, about 85 miles northeast of Los Angeles (Fig. 8.57). Set in a high desert where winter temperatures sometimes fall below 20°F, the building is 100% passively solar heated by a combination of direct-gain and Trombe wall strategies, interior thermal shades, and thermally massive ceiling, walls, and floor. An earth-sheltered, thermally massive building was chosen for its suitability to the environmentally sensitive site, as well as for its year-round thermal advantage in a desert climate. On summer days when air temperatures frequently exceed 100°F, a combination of an earth tube and evaporative cooling provides a modest supply of fresh air without overheating. Continuous power ventilating of the building at night draws the cool outdoor air through the tube, then over the thermally massive surfaces to provide added cooling capacity for the following day. The 2100-ft² building also is served by an 8-kW wind generator and has its own well.

EXAMPLE 8.15 Use the psychrometric chart to investigate the cooling process at the Antelope Valley Visitor Center. The earth tube is 24 in. (610 mm) in diameter and 150 ft (45.7 m) long, at an average depth of 6 ft (1.8 m).

SOLUTION

First, determine the design conditions. Nearby Barstow, California (Table B.5), has a similar climate; the design condition (°F) is 104/68, with MDR 37 (and thus a nightly low of 104 – 37 = 67°F even at design conditions). Enter the psychrometric analysis (Fig. 8.58) at slightly more severe conditions, such as 105 DB, 70 WB (point A). Note that RH = about 17% in this desert location.

Next, examine the earth tube conditions:

1. Determine t_{GW}: From Fig. 8.56, the deep-earth temperature is about 64°F.
2. Determine t_{AMP}: The seasonal amplitude (from Fig. 7.11) is about 19F°.
3. Determine CF: In dry (desert) soil, this amplitude extends to 14 ft.
4. Determine D: The given trench depth is 6 ft.
5. Determine t_{SG}: The late summer ground temperature (°F) around the earth tube:

$$t_{SG} = (t_{GW}) + (t_{AMP})\,[1 - (D/CF)]$$
$$= (64) + (19)\,[1 - (6/14)]$$
$$= (64) + (10.9) = \text{about } 75\text{°F } \textit{at most}$$

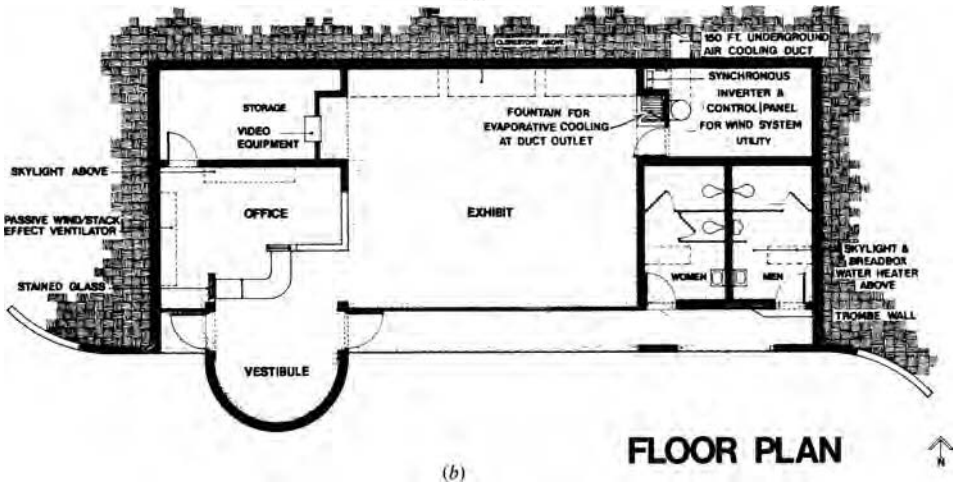
(Note that during the April poppy season, the earth temperature is likely to be at the yearly average of 64°F.)

The air in the earth tube will be about 4F° above this late-summer temperature, or 74.9 + 4 = approximately 79°F. (This may not sound very cool, but compare it to 104°F outside.) To follow what happens to the air in the tube, move horizontally on the chart in Fig. 8.58, from point A toward 79 DB (point B): at 79 DB, about 62 WB, the RH in the air has risen to about 34%.

At this point, the air enters the building through a small fountain consisting of water droplets. To chart this evaporative cooling, move from point B along the constant 62 WB line. If this fountain is a really good heat exchanger, we might achieve 80% of the distance from point B to saturation; call that point C (about 66 DB, 62 WB, RH now = 80%). This combination (of pessimistic air/earth



(a)



(b)

Fig. 8.57 *Visitor Center for the Antelope Valley California Poppy Reserve near Palmdale, California. (a) The Visitor Center is set into the field of poppies; an 8-kW wind generator and the earth tube intake can be seen on the hillside above. (b) Plan shows earth sheltering for an elongated east–west axis, served both by direct gain and Trombe wall solar heating and by earth tube/evaporative cooling. (c) Solar energy enters mostly through the south glass; the glass block skylights and north clerestory are mostly for even distribution of daylighting. At rest rooms, a vented Trombe wall is used. Thermal shades on the interior protect the south glass and north clerestory on winter nights; a roll-down exterior sunscreen greatly reduces direct solar gain through south glass in summer. Concrete block walls and concrete roof and floor provide thermal mass, as useful for summer cooling as for winter solar heating. (d) In summer, the desert air first passes through an earth tube (assisted by a fan), then is evaporatively cooled within the building, in sight of visitors. This cooled air picks up the building's heat and is then exhausted from the stack ventilator. (Courtesy of The Colyer/Freeman Group, San Francisco.)*

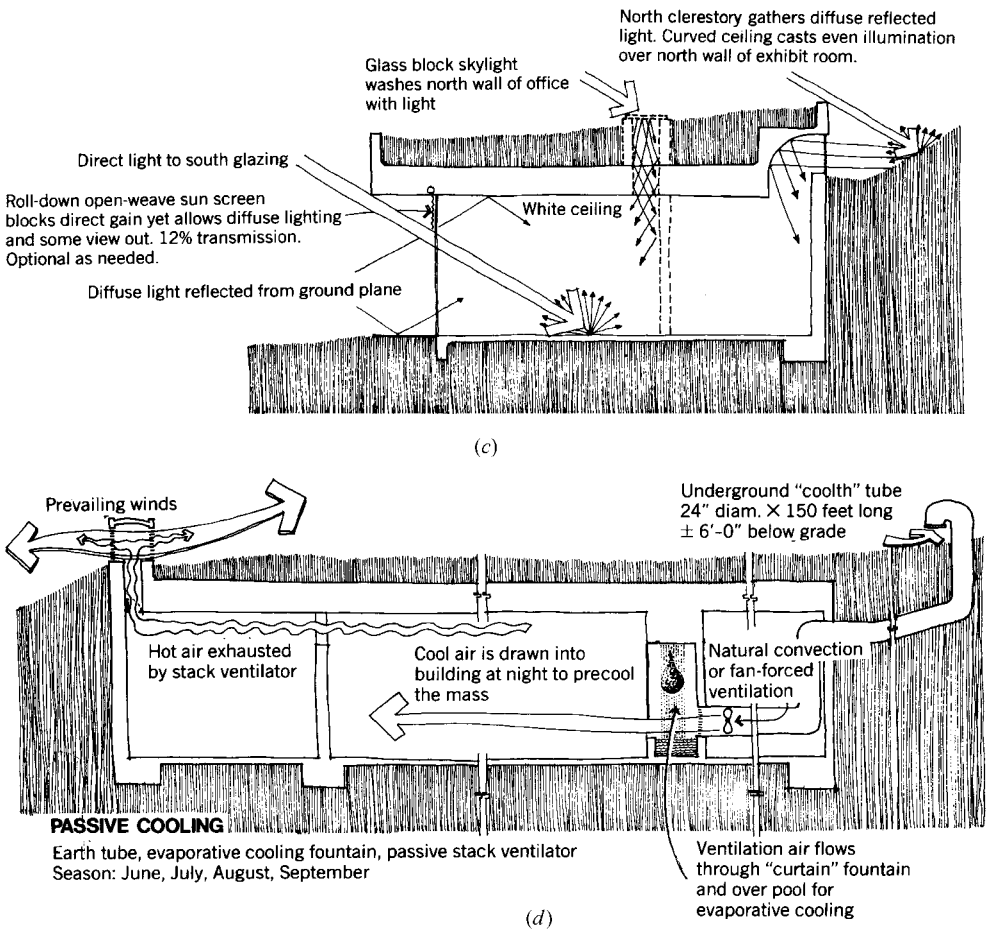


Fig. 8.57 *(Continued)*

temperatures and optimistic evaporative cooling expectations) is actually below the summer comfort zone!

The air now begins to pick up heat from the building's interior. With few sources of latent heat, we follow sensible heat gain horizontally to the right; if we are to maintain an interior temperature of, say, 82°F (with air motion and cool underground surfaces), the air can be heated to point D: 82 DB, 67 WB, RH = about 47%. In this condition, it is discharged through the stack ventilator at the west end of the building. (Note that it is much cooler than the outdoor air at point A, even at the point of discharge.)

But does this theoretical process actually occur? We must complete the calculation process:

6. Determine the temperature difference that makes cooling possible. For the psychometric equivalent process,

$$\Delta t = \text{outdoor temperature} - t_{SG}$$
$$= 105°F - 75°F = 30F°$$

7. Determine the long-term cooling rate:

$$\text{Btu/h ft of tube length} = (\Delta t)(C)\,(\text{Area, tube surface, ft}^2\text{/ft of length});$$

Here, $C = 0.11$ for dry soil.

$$\text{Btu/h ft of tube length} = (30F°)(0.11)\left[\frac{24 \text{ in.} \times \pi \times 1 \text{ ft length}}{12 \text{ in./ft}}\right]$$

$$= 20.7 \text{ Btu/h ft}$$

Note that this rate is similar to that of the tubes in Table F.12, most of which are smaller in diameter but are located in moist soil. This tube will therefore

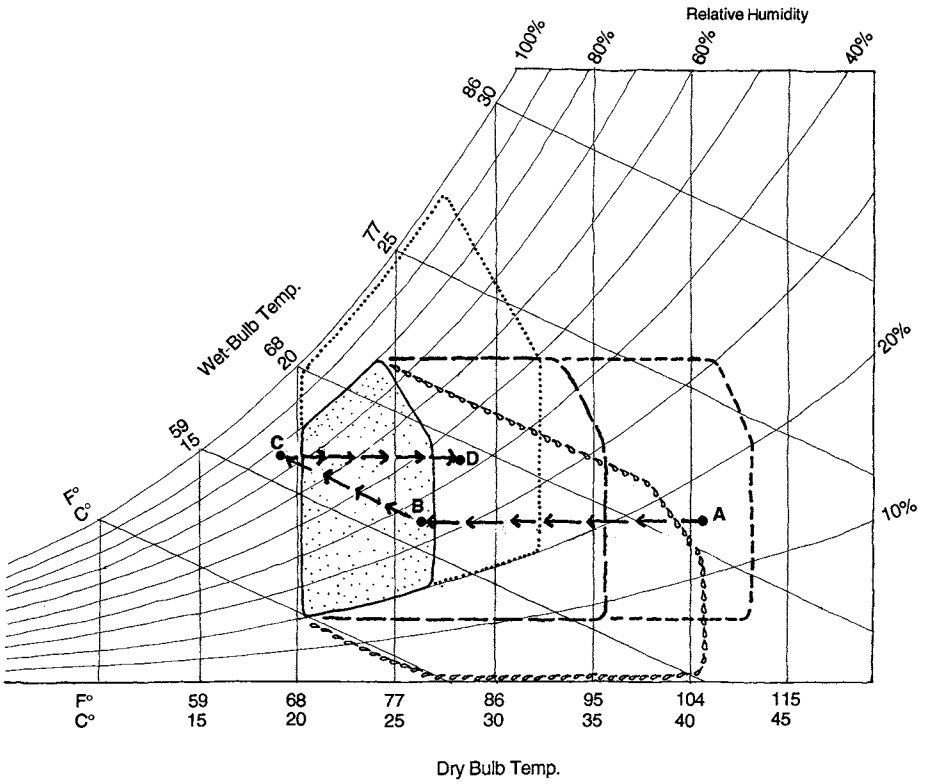


Fig. 8.58 *Following the path of passively cooled air at the Antelope Valley Visitor Center. Under summer design conditions, air enters the earth tube at point A. It is sensibly cooled within the tube, perhaps to the extent shown at point B. It then enters the building through a small fountain, perhaps being evaporatively cooled as far as point C. As the cooled air then picks up sensible heat from the building, the air heads toward point D, where it is exhausted through the stack ventilator.*

cool outdoor air at the rate of (20.7 Btu/h ft) × (150 ft) = 3105 Btu/h under summer design conditions.

If the air in the tube is to drop from 105ºF to the 79ºF assumed at point B in Fig. 8.58, at what rate must it move?

$$\text{Btu/h} = \text{flow rate, cfm} \times 1.1 \times \Delta t$$
$$3105 = \text{cfm} \times 1.1 \times [105 - 79]$$

The flow rate, 3105/28.1 = 110.6 cfm, is substantially less than the flow rates typical of Table F.12. Checking the velocity in this 2-ft.-diameter tube,

$$\text{ft/min} = \text{cfm/ft}^2 \text{ of cross section}$$
$$\text{velocity, ft/min} = 110.6/\pi(\text{1-ft radius})^2$$
$$= \text{about } 35 \text{ ft/min}$$

again substantially less than the velocities typical of Table F.12.

It is likely that much more outdoor air will be pulled through the tube, thus entering the building at a higher temperature. Then evaporative cooling through the fountain will be necessary to deliver the air within the comfort zone.

For example, assume that for the cooling rate of 20.7 Btu/ft of length (based upon 105ºF outside air, 75ºF t_{SG}) and resulting total cooling of 3105 Btu/h, the fan provides a modest flow rate of 500 cfm. Then

$$3105 \text{ Btu/h} = 500 \text{ cfm} \times 1.1 \times \Delta t$$
$$\Delta t = 5.65 \text{ F°}$$

The outdoor air then leaves the tube (new point B) at about 99 DB, 68 WB and, with successful exposure to evaporative cooling in the fountain, might reach (new point C) 75 DB, 68 WB, quite humid but within the comfort zone and likely welcome in this desert environment. It then could absorb some heat from the building before it is exhausted. ■

8.15 CASE STUDY—DESIGNING FOR HEATING AND COOLING

Blue Ridge Parkway Destination Center, Asheville, North Carolina

PROJECT BASICS

- Location: Asheville NC, USA
- Latitude: 35.57 N; longitude: 82.57 W; elevation: 2300 ft (652 m) Asheville Airport
- Heating degree days: 4308 base 65°F (2393 base 18.3°C); cooling degree days 3365 base 50°F (1869 base 10°C); annual precipitation: 31 in. (787 mm)
- Building type: New construction; information and orientation services, exhibition spaces, theater, retail shop
- 12,000 ft^2 (1115 m^2) floor area
- Completed: December 2007
- Client: National Park Service (Southeast Region)
- Design team: Lord, Aeck & Sargent, Inc. (and consultants)

Background. The Blue Ridge Parkway Destination Center, located near Asheville, North Carolina, is a new visitor center for the National Park Service located adjacent to the Blue Ridge Parkway headquarters. The Destination Center was developed as a partnership between the National Park Service and the Blue Ridge National Heritage Area to provide information about the Parkway's history and the nearby region between the Shenandoah and Great Smoky Mountains National Parks. Completed in 2007, the Destination Center is a demonstration of high-performance and ecological design. Park Superintendent Philip Francis notes that the Destination Center "embraces themes central to the protection, preservation, and thoughtful promotion of the cultural and natural heritages of western North Carolina as well as the entire Blue Ridge Parkway." The Destination Center features a variety of program areas including innovative, interactive exhibits, multimedia information about nearby places to visit, and a 70-seat surround-sound theater that shows a high-definition film about the Parkway, its history, and the region's cultural and natural sights and sounds. The design of this green building was a direct response to regional



Fig. 8.59 *Blue Ridge Parkway Destination Center near Asheville, North Carolina. (© Jonathan Hillyer Photography, Inc.; used with permission.)*

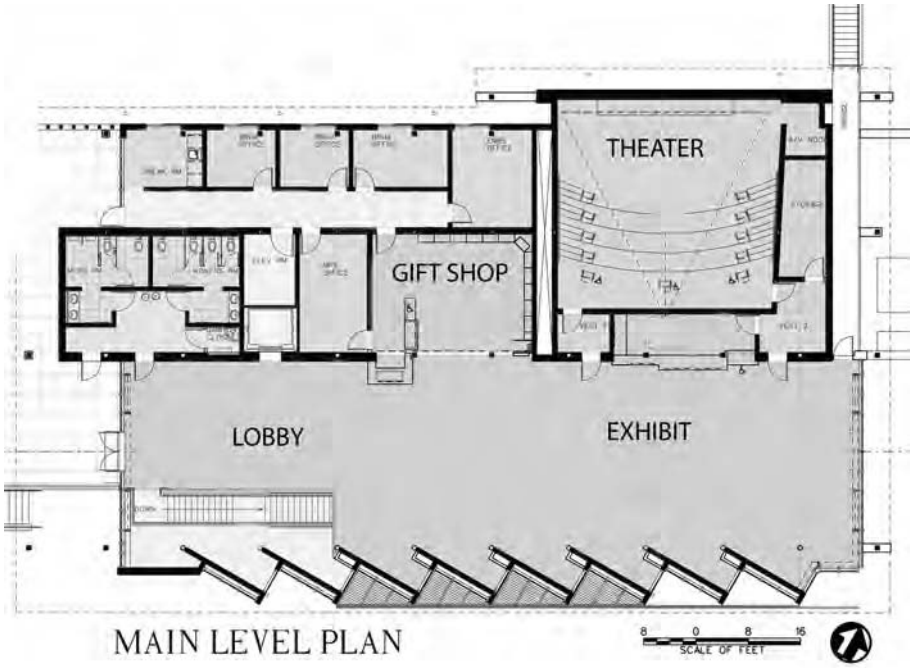


Fig. 8.60 *Main floor plan showing orientation and internal organization. (© Lord, Aeck & Sargent, Inc.; used with permission.)*



Fig. 8.61 *South-facing, sawtooth Trombe wall with shading to prevent overheating in the summer. (© Lord, Aeck & Sargent, Inc.; used with permission.)*



Fig. 8.62 *Exhibit space along the Trombe wall; note supply vents in the edges of the Trombe wall. (© Jonathan Hillyer Photography, Inc.; used with permission.)*

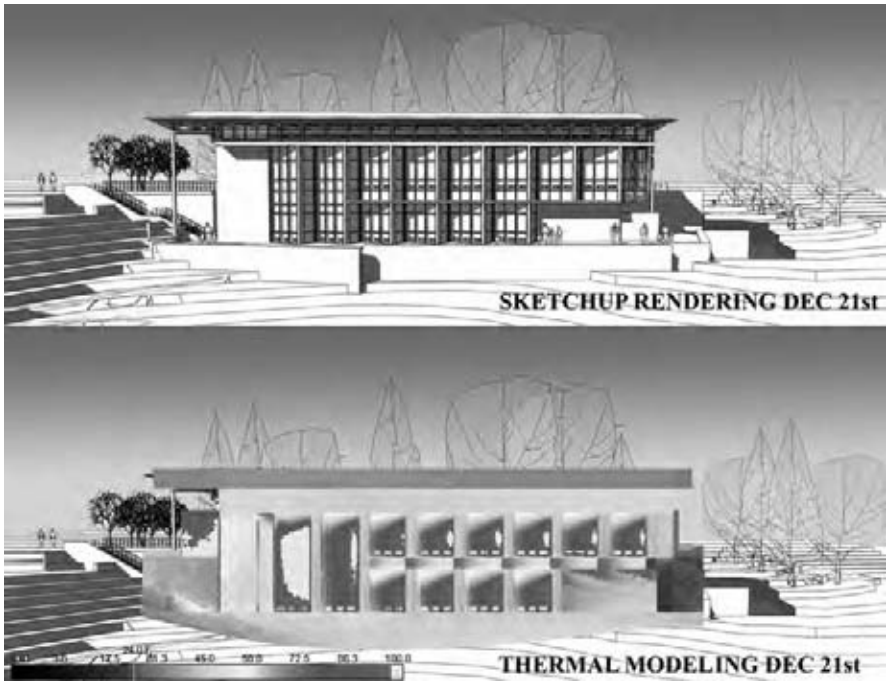


Fig. 8.63 *Images from the shading and thermal performance analyses of the Trombe wall. (© Lord, Aeck & Sargent, Inc.; used with permission.)*

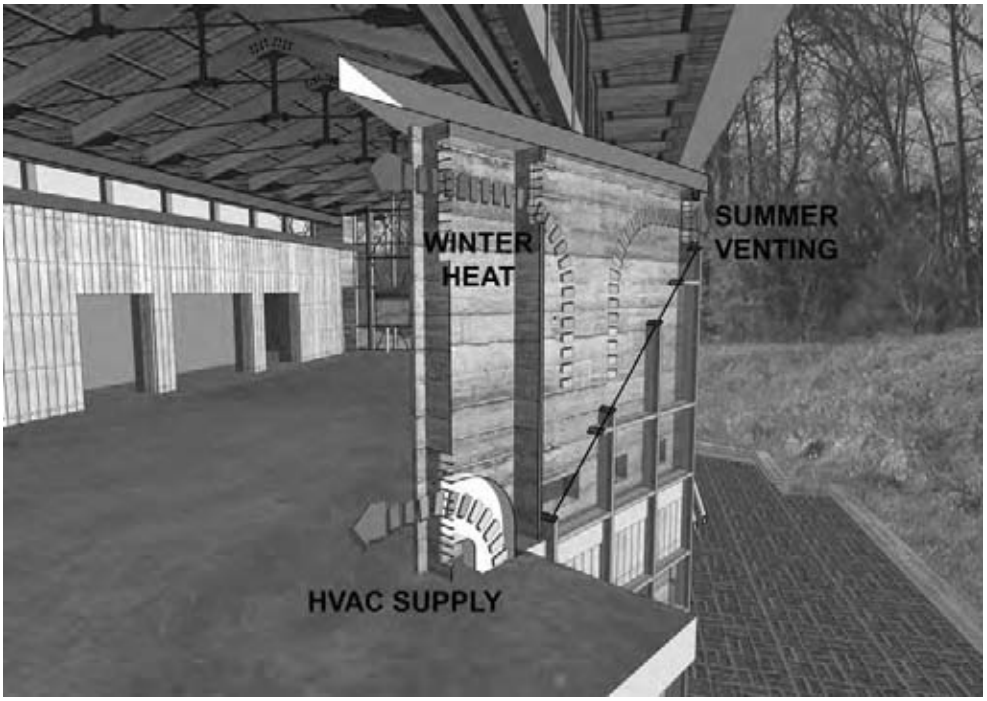


Fig. 8.64 *Diagram showing integrated uses of the Trombe wall as a structural element along the exhibit space with summer venting, winter heating supply, and supplemental HVAC supply. (© Lord, Aeck & Sargent, Inc.; used with permission.)*

climate conditions, featuring uniquely integrated Trombe walls, a green roof, radiant floors, energy recovery, occupancy sensors, and daylighting. The design team projects that the building will use 75% less energy than a minimally code-compliant building.

Context. Ideal passive solar orientation suggests a building along an east–west axis; however, existing site topography required that the building be oriented 30 degrees west of south to minimize regrading and protect existing vegetation. In the moderate, yet heating-dominated climate of Asheville, the use of passive solar heating offered a clear opportunity to conserve energy. The relatively benign cooling season and low evening temperatures allow for natural ventilation and nighttime ventilation of thermal mass. To optimize the exposure along the southern façade, the designers created a sawtooth-shaped façade, integrating multiple functions of structure, exhibit space, Trombe walls, and ventilation cavities. Climate analysis and preliminary energy modeling guided the schematic design process.

Design Intent. The Destination Center takes advantage of its geographic location by utilizing the climate for passive solar strategies as well as providing spectacular views of the natural beauty of the Parkway.

In addition to the National Park Service's philosophy of pedagogic environmental interpretive centers, the ecological and energy-efficient building design was guided by the design team's green design philosophy. Some of the key project goals were:

- Achieve Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) Gold certification.
- Reduce energy loads through passive strategies (daylighting, passive heating, increased envelope insulation, natural ventilation, green roof).
- Provide additional conditioning through appropriate, efficient HVAC system design (radiant heating, energy recovery).
- Provide a Destination Center that reflects the deep green design philosophy of the design team.
- Complement the natural beauty of the Parkway and provide a "tree-house" atmosphere.
- Reduce solar gain in the summer through appropriate orientation and shading.
- Increased adaptive comfort opportunities through passive design strategies.

Design Criteria and Validation. A USGBC LEED Gold certification was awarded to this project. The design team used DOE-2.2 (eQUEST v 3.6) in preliminary analysis to estimate overall energy use. Space heating accounted for 65% of the overall building energy use, and lighting, fans, and space cooling constitute 28% of the remaining loads. Additional energy models run without an HVAC system estimated that the Trombe wall would provide temperatures approximately 8°F (4.4°C) above a standard high-mass building with optimized orientation, and approximately 30°F (17°C) above exterior dry-bulb temperatures. Computational fluid dynamics (CFD) analysis conducted by Pennsylvania State University's Applied Research Laboratory assessed the building in passive mode and showed the benefits of the Trombe walls in the winter-projecting a system effect of a 30°F to 40°F (17°C to 22°C) increase above the outside temperature.

Post-Occupancy Validation Methods. A week-long post-occupancy monitoring was performed during the first winter of occupancy to compare the performance of the Trombe walls with the simulations. The architects, along with students from Georgia Tech University, conducted the monitoring.

Performance Data. Information available to date suggests substantial design team success in ecological design:

- On sunny days the Trombe walls were running 35°F to 40°F (19°C to 22°C) higher than outdoor temperatures; and 30°F to 35°F (17°C to 19°C) higher at night, correlating well with the preliminary CFD findings.
- Minimum temperatures never fell below the maximum outdoor temperature range, indicating the Trombe wall system is performing well.

At this writing, the building is too recently occupied to provide more in the way of verifiable performance data, although post-occupancy monitoring is ongoing.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION

Lord, Aeck & Sargeant:
http://www.lordaecksargent.com/

Moffit, Debra, "Appalachian Suncatcher," *ArchitectureWeek*, No. 381. May 21, 2008.

Parkway Destination Center:
http://www.blueridgeheritage.com/aboutus/parkwaydestinationcenter.html

References and Resources

Abrams, D. W. 1986. *Low Energy Cooling.* Van Nostrand Reinhold. New York.

Ashley, R. and J. Reynolds. 1994. "Overall and Zonal Energy End Use in an Energy Conscious Office Building," in *Solar Energy*, Vol. 52, No. 1, pp. 75–83.

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2009. *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 1997. *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Balcomb, J. D., D. Barley, R. McFarland, J. Perry, Jr., and W. Wray. 1980. *Passive Solar Design Handbook,* Vol. 2, *Passive Solar Design Analysis.* U.S. Department of Energy. Washington, DC.

Balcomb, J. D., R. Jones (ed.), R. McFarland, and W. Wray. 1984. *Passive Solar Heating Analysis.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Berry, B., J. Bown, J. Thornton, J. Turzynski, and M. Walton. 1995. "The New Inland Revenue Centre, Nottingham," in *The Arup Journal*, April. Ove Arup Partnership, London.

Bowen, A., E. Clark, and K. Labs. 1981. *Passive Cooling.* American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

Brown, G. Z. and M. DeKay. 2000. *Sun, Wind & Light*, 2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Brown, G. Z., B. Haglund, J. Loveland, J. Reynolds, and S. Ubbelohde. 1992. *InsideOut: Design Procedures for Passive Environmental Technologies*, 2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Chandra, S., P. W. Fairey, and M. Houston. 1986. *Cooling with Ventilation.* Solar Energy Research Institute. Golden, CO.

Fleischhacker, P., D. Bentley, and G. Clark. 1982. "A Simple Verified Methodology for Thermal Design of Roof Pond Cooled Buildings," in *Proceedings of*

the 7th National Passive Solar Conference. American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

Gardner, I. and D. Hadden. 1992. "UK Pavilion, Expo '92, Seville," in *The Arup Journal*, Autumn. Ove Arup Partnership. London.

Givoni, B. 1994. *Passive and Low Energy Cooling of Buildings.* Van Nostrand Reinhold. New York.

Johnson, T. 1981. *Solar Architecture: The Direct Gain Approach.* McGraw-Hill. New York.

Mazria, E. 1979. *The Passive Solar Energy Book.* Rodale Press. Emmaus, PA.

Miller, H. (ed.). 1980. *Proceedings of the Passive Cooling Workshop, 5th National Passive Solar Conference.* American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

Niles, P. and K. Haggard. 1980. *California Passive Solar Handbook.* California Energy Commission. Sacramento, CA.

Olgyay, V. 1963. *Design with Climate: Bioclimatic Approach to Architectural Regionalism.* Princeton University Press. Princeton, NJ.

SERI. 1981. *A New Prosperity: The SERI Solar Conservation Study.* Brick House Publishing. Andover, MA.

Stromberg, R.P. and S.O. Woodall. 1977. *Passive Solar Buildings: A Compilation of Data and Results*, SAND-77-1204, Sandia Labs, Albuquerque, New Mexico.

Thompson, T., N. Chalfoun, and M. Yoklic. 1994. "Estimating the Performance of Natural Draft Evaporative Coolers," in *Energy Conversion Management*, Vol. 35, No. 11. Elsevier Science Ltd. London.

U.S. Department of Energy. *Building Energy Software Tools Directory*: http://www.eere.energy.gov/buildings/tools_directory/

Utzinger, M. and J. H. Wasley. *Building Balance Point*. Vital Signs Curriculum Project Resource Module (scroll and click): http://arch.ced.berkeley.edu/vitalsigns/res/rps.html

Watson, D. and K. Labs. 1983. *Climatic Design: Energy-Efficient Building Principles and Practices.* McGraw-Hill. New York.

Wittwer, V., W. Platzer, and M. Rommell. 1991. "Transparent Insulation," *Solar Today*, January–February.

Yoklic, M. and M. Layseca. 1998. "Earth Construction, Courtyards, Verandahs, and Cooltowers: An Arizona Ranch House with Middle East Vernacular," in *Proceedings of the 23rd National Passive Solar Conference.* American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

CHAPTER 9

HVAC for Smaller Buildings

THE PRECEDING CHAPTERS DEALT WITH most of the early steps in the design process, such as the choice of thermal design strategy (Chapter 4), the choice of siting (Chapter 3), and the choice of the components and initial sizing of envelopes (Chapters 7 and 8). Chapter 5 dealt with strategies and equipment for indoor air quality. Chapters 9 and 10 carry the design process into the specifics of mechanical systems and equipment for heating and cooling.

There are various ways to organize this large collection of components and systems. The next two chapters are organized as follows:

Chapter 9:

1. A review of the relative thermal role of building envelopes versus their internal heating/cooling equipment
2. A look at the heating/cooling *system design process* begun by the architect and completed by the engineer
3. Equipment location and sizing for smaller buildings (one or a few thermal zones)
4. Controls for smaller buildings
5. Refrigeration cycles
6. Cooling-only systems
7. Heating-only systems
8. Heating and cooling systems
9. Psychrometry and refrigeration

Chapter 10:

10. The basics of the process by which mechanical systems are integrated into building design
11. The four generic HVAC system types for large buildings
12. Larger, centralized HVAC equipment
13. Air distribution considerations within spaces

14–17. Details of the four generic HVAC systems

18, 19. Large-scale system opportunities

Items 1, 2, and 10 are a more theoretical introduction to systems and equipment; hence, rather than reading the chapter in order, you could read those items first, then go on to the component-and-equipment sections.

9.1 REVIEW OF THE NEED FOR MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

One of the most basic functions of buildings is to provide shelter from weather. In a carefully designed building, the roofs, walls, windows, and interior surfaces alone can maintain comfortable interior temperatures for most of the year in most North American climates. With appropriate scheduling, the most uncomfortable hours within buildings can often be avoided; for example, the siesta avoids the hottest afternoon hours within stores and office buildings. Several aspects of comfort and climate, however, pose difficult challenges for ordinary building forms and materials.

A building surface influences comfort primarily through its *surface temperature*; secondarily, it slowly changes *air temperature* (as when cool air

moves across a warm surface). Important as these two determinants of comfort are, they sometimes are not sufficient by themselves. Especially in cooling situations, *air motion* and *RH* are significant comfort determinants; and for many indoor activities, *air quality* becomes an important issue in both heating and cooling.

Building form can work with climate to produce air motion for cooling, although the faster air speeds that extend the human comfort zone above 83°F (28°C) may be difficult to provide without mechanical assistance. Relative humidity is still controlled by mechanical (or chemical) means. Building form and materials may be able to keep spaces surprisingly cool, but without dehumidification, surfaces in many North American summer climates can become clammy and covered with mold.

It is difficult to filter air without a fan to force the air through the filtering medium. Electrostatic filtering, of course, is done within mechanical equipment.

Thus, whereas the desired air and surface temperatures can often be achieved by passive means (a combination of building form, surface material, and occasional user response), the comfort determinants of air motion, RH, and air quality often require mechanical devices. As the control of air properties—motion, moisture, particulate content—becomes more critical to comfort, the designer becomes more likely to respond with a sealed building, excluding outdoor air except through carefully controlled mechanical equipment intakes. In the recent past, this exclusion of outdoor air has often been accompanied by the exclusion of daylight, of view, of solar heat on cold days—in sum, by a general rejection of all aspects of the exterior environment. As designers come to terms with the role of mechanical equipment, they should also clarify the role of these devices in relation to the climate: Are they occasional modifiers, permanent interpreters, or permanent excluders of the outdoors?

9.2 HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC): TYPICAL DESIGN PROCESSES

HVAC systems usually involve a minimum of three design stages. In the *preliminary design* phase, the most general combinations of comfort needs and climate characteristics are considered:

Activity comfort needs are listed.
An activity schedule is developed.
Site energy resources are analyzed.
Climate design strategies are listed.
Building form alternatives are considered.
Combinations of passive and active systems are considered.
One or several alternatives are sized by general design guidelines.

This level of analysis covers the process discussed in Chapter 1 and Sections 8.1 to 8.6. For smaller buildings, this analysis is often done by the architect alone. For innovative or unusual systems in smaller buildings, and especially for larger, multiple-zone buildings, consultants such as engineers and landscape architects often are included. The team approach is particularly valuable in assessing the strengths of various design alternatives. The architect and the consultants have very different perspectives, and when mutual goals can be clearly agreed on early in the design process, these perspectives are not only mutually supporting but can produce striking innovations whose benefits extend far beyond services to the clients of a particular building. By setting an example, the team can make available better environments for less energy for hundreds of subsequent buildings. With inspired teamwork, the distribution of HVAC services can enhance building form, as many examples in this chapter show.

By the time the *design development* phase is reached, one of the design alternatives has probably been chosen as the most promising combination of aesthetic, social, and technical solutions for the program. The consulting engineer (or architect, on a smaller job) is furnished with the latest set of drawings and the program. Typically, the architectural or mechanical engineer then:

I. Establishes design conditions.
   A. By activity, lists the range of acceptable air and surface temperatures, air motions, relative humidities, lighting levels, and background noise levels.
   B. Establishes the schedule of operations.
II. Determines the HVAC zones, considering:
   A. Activities.
   B. Schedule.

C. Orientation.
D. Internal heat gains.

III. Estimates the thermal loads on each zone:
A. For worst winter conditions.
B. For worst summer conditions.
C. For the average condition or conditions that represent the great majority of the building's operating hours.
D. Frequently, an estimate of annual energy consumption is made.

IV. Selects the HVAC systems. Often, several systems will be used within one large building because orientation, activity, or scheduling differences may dictate different mechanical solutions. Especially common is one system for the all-interior zones of large buildings and another system for the perimeter zones.

V. Identifies the HVAC components and their locations.
A. Mechanical rooms.
B. Distribution trees—vertical chases, horizontal runs.
C. Typical in-space components, such as under-window fan-coil units, air grilles, and so on.

VI. Sizes the components.

VII. Lays out the system. At this stage, conflicts with other systems (structure, plumbing, fire safety, circulation, etc.) are most likely to become evident. Because insufficient vertical clearance is one of the most common building coordination problems with HVAC systems (especially all-air systems—see Sections 10.2 and 10.5), the layouts must include sections as well as plans. Opportunities for integration with other systems also become more apparent at this stage: air ducts can also help distribute daylighting, act as sunshading devices, or fulfill other functions.

After the architect and the other consultants hold conferences in which HVAC system layout drawings are compared to those for other primary systems (structure, plumbing, electrical, etc.), *design finalizing* occurs. At this final stage, the HVAC system designer verifies the match between the loads on each component and the component's capacity to meet the load. Final layout drawings then are completed.

9.3 EQUIPMENT LOCATION AND SERVICE DISTRIBUTION

This chapter considers smaller buildings with one or a few thermal zones. For larger buildings, turn now to Chapter 10.

Smaller buildings are typically skin load dominated: that is, for them, the climate dictates whether heating or cooling is the major concern. In some climates, only heating systems are needed; the building can "keep itself cool" during hot weather without mechanical assistance. In other climates, only cooling is needed. In still others, both heating and cooling are required.

(a) Central or Local?

A skin-load-dominated building may have such differing but simultaneous needs that a room-by-room solution ("local") for heating, ventilating, and cooling is desirable. Consider a building with both north- and south-facing spaces on a cold, sunny winter day; one side gets ample solar heat, while the other side needs additional heat. The advantage of local systems is their ability to respond quickly to individual rooms' needs.

The central system also has advantages: the equipment is contained within its own space rather than taking up space within each room, and maintenance can be carried out without disrupting activities within those rooms.

(b) Central Heating or Cooling Equipment

In the early design stages, determining an approximate size for the largest equipment is sometimes useful. Once the heating or cooling capacities are known, manufacturers' catalogs can be consulted for the dimensions of the heating and cooling equipment.

The critical decision in sizing the heating equipment is the *design temperature*: what is the lowest reasonable outdoor temperature for which a heating device should be sized, if the desired interior temperature is to be maintained? These winter design temperatures are listed in Appendix B. When this is known, the next step is

$$\text{design } \Delta t = \text{inside temperature} - \text{outside design temperature}$$

In Section 8.4, the criteria for Btu/DD ft^2 were listed in Table 8.3. To convert to the required capacity of a building's heating equipment, calculate

$$\frac{\text{Btu/DD ft}^2}{24\text{ h}} \times \Delta t \times \text{ft}^2 \text{ floor area} = \text{Btu/h heating capacity}$$

(*Note:* For passively solar-heated buildings, the backup heating unit is sometimes sized for the heat loss of the *entire* envelope and sometimes for the envelope *minus the solar wall*, just as the criteria were defined in Table 8.3. Similarly, buildings with *reliable* internal gains (lights, equipment, people, etc.) are sometimes designed with smaller heating units because internal gains supply a constant portion of the space-heating needs. For a more complete discussion, see Section 8.8.)

The sizing of cooling (mechanical refrigeration) units is not so straightforward, as was evident when detailed hourly heat gain procedures were presented (Sections 8.11 and 8.13). However, a *very approximate* early estimate can be obtained from the estimated hourly gains in Table F.3. (*Warning*: This estimate is likely to be *lower* than that obtained using the peak heat gain hour, for which cooling equipment is often sized.)

$$\text{sensible Btu/h cooling capacity} = [\text{approx. heat gain (Btu/h ft}^2)][\text{floor area (ft}^2)]$$

Another common unit used for sizing mechanical refrigeration is tons of cooling capacity, 1 ton being equivalent to the useful cooling effect of a ton of ice, or 12,000 Btu/h (3516 W). Therefore, the required capacity in tons is

$$\frac{\text{heat gain, Btu/h}}{12{,}000} = \text{tons of cooling}$$

With this information about needed Btu/h (or watts), equipment is then selected; physical size and service access areas are specified in catalogs. For a more general floor area estimate, see the sizing nomographs in Tables 10.3 and 10.4. Even more generally, equipment size may be estimated using these guidelines:

For ordinary equipment: 500 ft^2/ton (46.5 m^2/ton)
High-efficiency chillers: 1000 ft^2/ton (93 m^2/ton)

(c) Distribution Trees

Central heating/cooling systems produce heating and cooling in one place, then distribute these effects to other building spaces according to their respective needs. The distribution tree is the means for delivering heating and cooling: the "roots" are the machines that provide heat and cold, the "trunk" is the main duct or pipe from the mechanical equipment to the zone to be served, and the "branches" are the many smaller ducts or pipes that lead to individual spaces.

For now, the questions to be answered about distribution trees for buildings are: How many? What kind? Where? A building can have one giant distribution tree, several medium-sized trees, or an orchard of much smaller trees. At one extreme, a large mechanical room is the scene of all heating and cooling production; leading from this room is a very large trunk duct with perhaps hundreds of branches. At the other extreme, each zone has its own mechanical equipment (such as a rooftop heat pump), with short trunks and relatively few branches on each tree.

What kind of distribution tree? Most simply, air (ducts) or water (pipes). Air distribution trees are bulky and therefore likely to have major visual impacts unless they are concealed above ceilings, below floors, or within vertical chases. Water distribution trees consume much less space (a given volume of water carries vastly more heat than does the same volume of air at the same temperature) and can be easily integrated within structural members such as columns. Both air and water trees can be sources of noise.

Where does the distribution tree fit in? On the exterior, it can lend a three-dimensional organizational structure to a façade. Exterior trees can take up a smaller amount of rentable floor space but require expensive cladding and are subject to considerable heat losses and gains, which could increase energy usage. Interior trees are often combined with other continuous vertical spaces, such as elevator shafts and stairways. If the choice is an exterior distribution tree, its potential contribution to façade performance should be considered. For example, the distribution tree might act as a sunshade or as a light reflector.

To carry the tree analogy to its logical conclusion, consider the "leaves," the points of interchange between the piped or ducted heating or cooling and the spaces served. One example is a large, bulky device such as a fan-coil unit on the exterior wall below windows. In contrast, a perforated ceiling

system with thousands of small holes acting as a widely spread grille is essentially invisible.

9.4 CONTROLS FOR SMALLER BUILDING SYSTEMS

In the past, when buildings had mechanical equipment for heating only, thermostats were simple on-off devices; when they dropped below a setpoint, the heat was turned on. With the advent of mechanical cooling and then concerns about energy conservation, thermostats added a *deadband* separating heating need temperature from cooling need temperature, and automatic setback provisions that allow buildings to change internal temperature between occupied and unoccupied hours. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2, *Energy-Efficient Design of Low-Rise Residential Buildings*, calls for thermostats capable of being set from 55°F to 85°F (13°C to 29°C) as well as an adjustable deadband, the range of which includes a setting of 10F° (5.6C°).

Building management systems (BMS) are now capable of regulating far more than temperature. They are capable of remote control, allowing systems to be activated in advance of the occupants' arrival; this is particularly useful for weekend and vacation homes, where heating/cooling and domestic hot water systems, if left on, could waste much energy during unoccupied periods. Door and window locks, security cameras, lighting, and appliances are potential partners in a comprehensive control system.

Future developments include *neural networks*, where automation systems are capable of learning while being used. They thus predict usage patterns, adjusting in advance without needing specific commands from occupants. When the building use pattern is highly predictable, as with many retail and commercial occupancies, these self-programming systems should learn very quickly how to anticipate needs while conserving energy.

In residences, usage patterns are likely more varied and less predictable. Experiments at the University of Colorado have revealed that even here, patterns may be more predictable than was first thought; for details, see Mozer (1998). The Adaptive Control of Home Environments (ACHE) system has two objectives: to anticipate inhabitants' needs and to save energy. Lighting, air temperature, ventilating, and water heating are controlled so that just enough energy, just when needed, is provided. Lights will be set to the minimum required, hot water maintained at the minimum temperature to meet demands, only occupied rooms will be kept at an optimum comfortable temperature, and so on.

The control framework compares energy costs to "misery" costs. Minimum settings and their time patterns are developed as the building is occupied over time. Whenever a preset minimum is overruled by the occupant, the system learns and readjusts accordingly; however, it occasionally tests lower minimum settings to be sure that energy conservation is not being unduly sacrificed to past desires.

9.5 REFRIGERATION CYCLES

Unlike the slow, diffuse heat transfer processes that characterize passive heating and cooling approaches, mechanical equipment can rapidly concentrate heating or cooling on demand. The refrigeration cycle is a particularly useful mechanical process in heating as well as cooling applications. The two types of heat transfer process commonly used in mechanical equipment for buildings are the *compressive* and the *absorption* refrigeration cycles. (Equipment that utilizes these cycles is discussed in the remainder of this chapter and in Chapter 10.)

(a) Compressive Refrigeration

As shown in Fig. 9.1, the compressive refrigeration cycle is a scheme for transferring heat from one circulated water system (chilled water) to another (condenser water). This is done by the liquefaction and evaporation of a refrigerant, during which processes it gives off and takes on heat, respectively. The heat it gives off must be disposed of (except in the heat pump), but the heat it acquires is drawn out of the circulated water known as the *chilled water*, which is the medium for subsequent cooling processes.

Refrigerants are gases at normal temperatures and pressures, and must be compressed and liquefied to be of service later as heat absorbers. To be liquefied (see Fig. 9.1), the refrigerant must first be compressed to a high-pressure vapor; then,

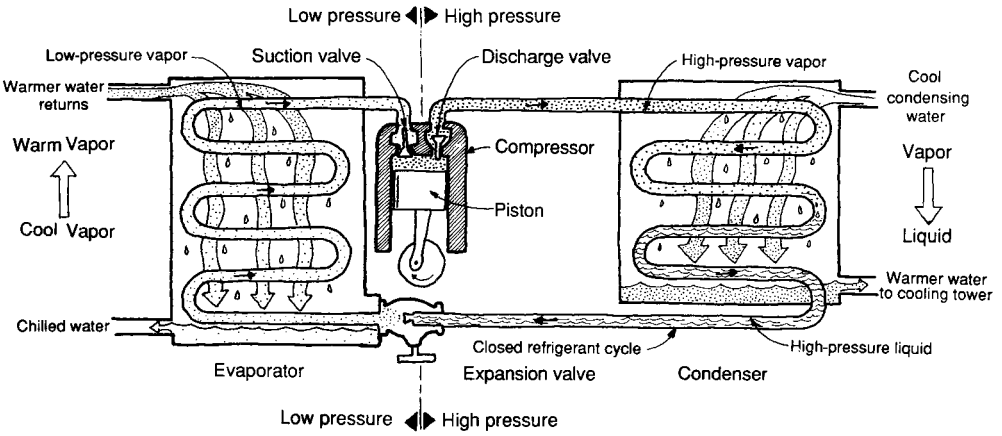


Fig. 9.1 *Schematic arrangement of the compressive refrigeration cycle, providing chilled water for a building cooling system.*

by means of cool water, latent heat is extracted from the refrigerant, which condenses it to a liquid. This high-pressure liquid is a potential heat absorber because, when it is released through an expansion valve, it springs back mechanically to its gaseous form. In this change of state, it must take on latent heat by drawing heat out of the circulated water of the chilled water system.

It may be said that the refrigeration cycle pumps the heat out of the chilled water system into the condenser water system. Indeed, by special (reverse cycle) arrangements of the water systems, a *heat pump* is the result. (The compressive refrigeration cycle can be used to transfer heat between almost any media; whereas Fig. 9.1 illustrates a water-water cycle, Fig. 9.38 shows the heat pump in both air-air and water-air applications.)

The piston-type compressor in Fig. 9.1 can instead be one of several other types: *rotary*, *scroll*, or *screw* compressors, each with characteristics suitable to particular applications. See Chapter 10 for further discussion.

(b) Alternative Refrigerants

Unfortunately, the most commonly used refrigerants of the early 1990s are a threat to our atmosphere, because they can escape from the equipment as chlorofluorocarbon (CFC) gases. The threats are stratospheric ozone depletion and global warming. A related global warming threat is the CO_2 released from the production of electricity that powers chillers and other refrigeration machines. There is a potential conflict if lower-threat refrigerants are less efficient and therefore produce higher energy consumption. This conflict assumes continued power generation by fossil fuels; if photovoltaics (PV) are used to power these cooling devices, this aspect of the threat to global warming disappears.

Production of CFC refrigerants was banned in the United States by the mid-1990s. (A black market quickly developed for widely used CFC refrigerants such as Freon.) Fears that replacement refrigerants would be less efficient have largely disappeared; combinations of better chillers and new refrigerants produce energy savings.

Considerable efforts are under way both to reduce the likelihood of escaping refrigerant and to develop more efficient non-CFC refrigerants. The first alternative was hydrochlorofluorocarbon (HCFC) refrigerants—still a threat to our atmosphere, but better than CFC. HCFC still contains chlorine, a major influence on ozone depletion. Thus, HCFCs themselves are due to be phased out in the first decades after 2000. A longer-term replacement is hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs); even this improvement still threatens our atmosphere. Yet another possibility is natural hydrocarbons (HC). In general, comparing these two alternatives, HFCs have higher global warming potential and long atmospheric lifetimes, but they have low toxicity and are nonflammable. HCs have negligible global warming potential and short atmospheric lifetimes, but are flammable and explosive.

One alternative is ammonia, used in the early years of compressive refrigeration but discontinued because of its acute toxicity and (relative to CFCs) its flammability. It is now returning in some absorption cooling cycles. Ammonia does have the advantage of having a strong and unmistakable odor; it warns of its leakage, unlike the other refrigerants. Use of ammonia will require regular maintenance, good ventilation, and good access/escape routes. It will encourage systems that keep the refrigerant loop within controlled spaces such as mechanical rooms.

The search for the ideal refrigerant continues and may never end. This is another area in which rapid developments may be expected in the near future. For a comprehensive review of refrigerants, see Calm (1994).

(c) Absorption Refrigeration Cycle

This process is illustrated in Fig. 9.2. No CFCs or HCFCs are used here; the process uses distilled water as the refrigerant and lithium bromide (*salt solution*) as the absorber. In order to remove heat from chilled water, this cycle uses still more heat in regenerating the salt solution. Typically, it is less efficient than the simple compressive cycle and needs about twice the capacity for rejecting heat. However, the heat for salt solution regeneration may be provided by solar energy or by relatively high-temperature waste heat from another source, such as steam or hot water, as from a fuel cell or industrial process. Because the high-grade energy (electricity) needed to run a compressor is replaced by the lower-grade heat needed to run the generator, the absorption cycle can enjoy an energy advantage over the compressive cycle, even though it is less efficient.

There are several variations on the absorption cycle. When a fuel such as natural gas is used as the heat for the generator, it is called *direct fired*. When another heat source (such as waste heat) is used, it is called *indirect fired*. The relatively simple (!) cycle shown in Fig. 9.2 is a *single-effect* absorption cycle using one heat exchanger between the strong and weak salt solutions. A *double-effect* absorption cycle (powered by steam in Fig. 9.3) adds a second generator and condenser that operate at a higher temperature. It approximately doubles the efficiency of the single-effect cycle. A *triple-effect* cycle, in turn, provides a 50% efficiency improvement over the double-effect cycle.

9.6 COOLING-ONLY SYSTEMS

(a) Fans

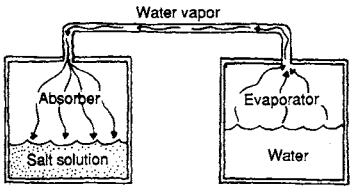
Before the advent of mechanical air conditioning, cooling was commonly achieved with simple air motion provided by fans. The summer comfort chart shown in Fig. 4.8 encourages increased air motion as a way to extend comfort into air temperatures in the mid-80s °F. As a general rule, people will perceive a 1F° decrease in air temperature for every 15 fpm increase in air speed past the body (about a 1C° decrease for every 1 m/s increase). Ceiling fans are often installed and run at slow speed to destratify warm air at the ceiling in winter; they can be run at higher speed in summer to provide added comfort through increased air motion. The air motion produced by ceiling fans will vary with the fan height above the floor, the number of fans in a space, and the fan's power, speed, and blade size. Figure 9.4 shows expected air speeds with one 48-in. (1220-mm) ceiling fan in a typical residential living room.

In the hot summer climate of Davis, California, an experimental house (sponsored by Pacific Gas & Electric, designed by the Rocky Mountain Institute) has eliminated a conventional cooling system through a series of alternative approaches. Fans play a major role: in addition to ceiling fans, a whole-house fan removes the hottest air from the central hallway, exhausting to the ventilated attic. More thermal mass (tile floors, double drywall), an attic radiant barrier, and low-ε, gas-filled windows are also used.

(b) Unit Air Conditioners

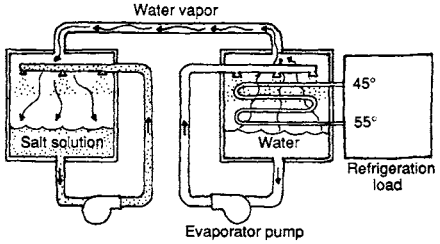
The device shown in Fig. 9.5 is perhaps the most commonly seen piece of mechanical equipment in the United States. Perched in windows in full view of passersby, these window-box air conditioners noisily remind us that many of our buildings still are *not* centrally mechanically cooled. Mechanical cooling was considered a luxury until long after World War II.

Built-in, through-wall air conditioners offer a low-first-cost way to provide separate zones for



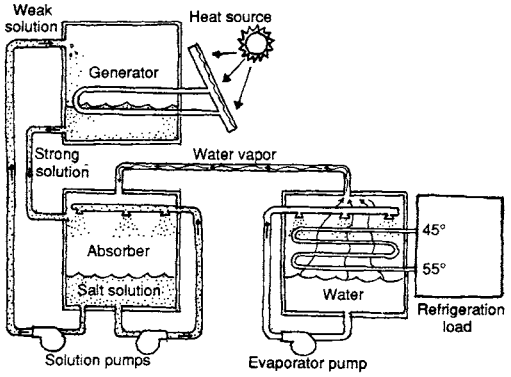
1 Evaporator and absorber

Consider two connected, closed tanks with a salt solution (lithium bromide) in one and water in the other. Just as common table salt absorbs water on a damp day, the salt solution in the absorber soaks up some of the water in the evaporator. The water remaining is thereby cooled by evaporation.



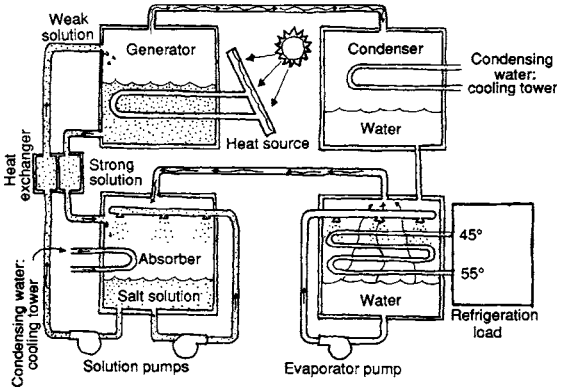
2 Evaporator coil and pump added

This refrigeration effect is utilized by putting a coil in the evaporator tank. Water from this tank is pumped to a spray header which wets the coil. The spray's evaporation chills water in the coil as it circulates to the refrigeration load. Solution pumped to spray in absorber raises efficiency.



3 Solution pumps and generator added

In an actual operating cycle, the salt solution is continuously absorbing water vapor. To keep the salt solution at the proper concentration, part of it is pumped directly to a generator where excess water vapor is boiled off. The reconcentrated salt solution is returned to the absorber tank, where it mixes with the solution sprayed to absorber in step 2.



4 Condenser and heat exchanger added

Water vapor boiled off from the weak solution is condensed and returned to the evaporator. A heat exchanger uses the hot, concentrated salt solution leaving the generator to preheat the cooler, weak solution coming from the absorber. Finally, condensing water circulating through the absorber and condenser coils removes the waste heat.

Fig. 9.2 *The steps taken to build a* single-effect *absorption refrigeration cycle. The refrigeration load from this cycle (step 4) is a building chilled water supply system. The heat source for the generator can be* indirect fired *(steam, hot water, waste heat, or solar energy) or* direct fired *(natural gas). (Adapted courtesy of the Carrier Corporation.)*

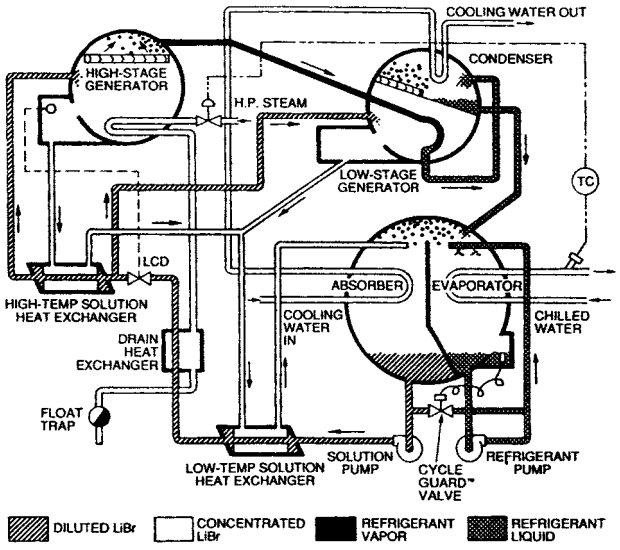
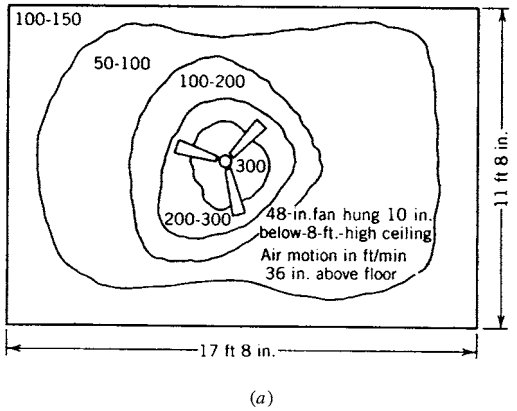


Fig. 9.3 *Indirect-fired double-effect absorption cycle. Lithium bromide and water are used in this cycle. (Courtesy of the Carrier Corporation.)*

individual apartments, motel rooms, and so on (see Section 9.8). In noisy cities, the drone of these units masks street noise for the interior, thus potentially helping to promote relaxation. Unfortunately, such scattered units rarely afford the chance to conserve energy through the exchange of waste heat or the higher efficiencies that can accompany larger equipment. However, if turned on only when cooling is needed (i.e., when people are present), they can provide substantial savings over the larger always-on systems.

(c) Evaporative Cooling: Misting

As explained in Section 8.12, the net effect of evaporative cooling is *no total change* in the heat content (enthalpy) of the treated air; its DB temperature is *lowered*, but there is an *increase* in RH. *People* feel cooler, although no change in total heat has occurred. One of the most direct approaches is a misting or fogging system whereby a fine spray of water droplets is blown into the air. A common application is for small outdoor areas—the team



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 9.4 *Ceiling fans are useful in heating and cooling. In winter, at slow speeds, they destratify warm air at the ceiling. In summer (a) they extend the comfort zone by providing increased air motion. Room size is typical of residential living rooms. (Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from 1997* ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals.*) (b) A ceiling fan is a visual feature in this Oregon residence. (Photo by Nathan Majeski.)*

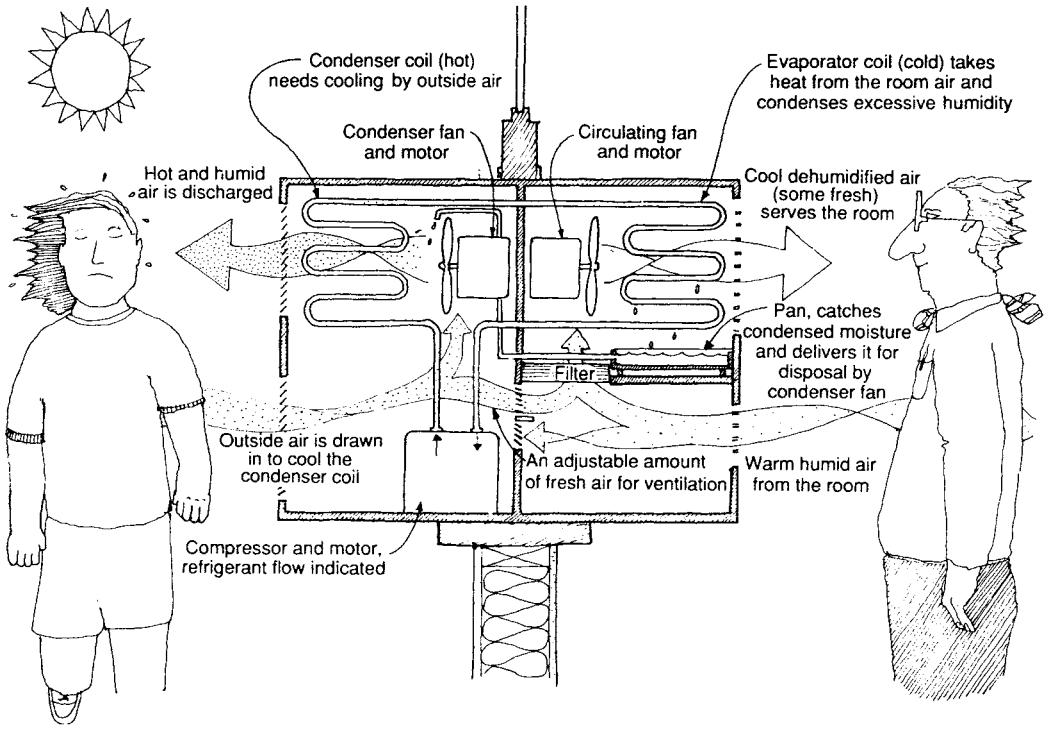


Fig. 9.5 *Diagram of a typical through-the-wall air-conditioning (cooling) unit. Direct heat exchange occurs between air and the process of evaporation (on one side) and condensation (on the other) of the refrigerant. The unit is self-contained, requiring access to outside air and electricity to power the compressor and the two fans. Typical capacities are 1 to 2 tons (12,000 to 24,000 Btu/h [3.5 to 7 kW]).*

benches of football stadiums or refreshment pavilions. However, very large spaces in hot, dry climates can also benefit; Fig. 9.6 shows mist descending from a skylight diffuser in the Atocha railroad station in Madrid, Spain. A large space using fogging (in a Michigan conservatory) is shown later in Fig. 10.52.

(d) Evaporative Cooling: Roof Spray

In the past, when roofs were poorly insulated, roof sprays were rather common ways to reduce heat gains. New variations promise new energy savings.

Roof color is the first consideration; white or near-white roofs are the first step toward energy savings through control of sol-air temperature. However, emissivity is also involved; the higher the emissivity, the faster a roof surface reradiates its heat to the sky. Table 9.1 compares the solar absorptance, albedo (overall solar reflectance), and emittance of some common roofing materials. The combination of high albedo and high emittance resists solar heat gain most effectively. (It also promises to reduce the heat island effect in urban areas; see Chapter 3.) A solar reflectance index (SRI) was developed to allow quick comparisons between roofing products. The SRI scale ranges from 0 (approximately the combination of 5% albedo and 90% emittance; roughly equal to black asphalt shingles) to 100 at 80% albedo and 90% emittance (roughly equal to T-EPDM).

The *night roof spray thermal storage system* (NRSTS) cools water on a roof by night, using both night sky radiation and evaporation. The water is then stored for use the next day in building cooling. The water can be stored either on the roof (below floating insulation, above a structural ceiling) or in a tank below the roof. When stored on the roof, it becomes a variant of the roof pond cooling system. When stored in a tank, the water can be circulated through a cooling coil to precool air before it enters the chiller-fed cooling coils. It is thus used to assist mechanical cooling. Three variations are shown in Fig. 9.7.



Fig. 9.6 *Mist is sprayed from a diffusing system located high in the Atocha railroad station in Madrid, Spain. It provides psychological reinforcement of evaporative cooling in a hot, dry summer.*

At a Nogales, Arizona, border patrol station, a 6500-ft^2 (604-m^2) flat white roof was retrofitted with an NRSTS, utilizing a 10,000-gal (37,850-L) above-ground tank. Over the summer of 1997, it averaged 250 Btu/ft^2 day of cooling. Water use at various sites has averaged 4 to 5 gal/h (15 to 19 L/h) per 1000 ft^2 (per 93 m^2) of roof area. Details are presented in Bourne and Hoeschele (1998).

(e) Evaporative Coolers

These are also affectionately termed *swamp coolers* and *desert coolers* and are familiar devices in hot, arid climates (Fig. 9.8). (They are used in other climates for special high-heat applications such as restaurant kitchens.) They require a small amount of electricity to run a fan and some water to increase the RH of the air they supply to the building. This process of cooling is explained in Section 8.14.

The typical evaporative cooler (shown in Fig. 9.8) needs full access to outdoor air and is thus often set on the roof; through-the-wall units are also available. Great quantities of dry, hot outdoor air are blown through pads kept moist by recirculated and makeup water. The "cooled" air is then delivered to the indoor space. The effect of the gently moving cool air is to cool the body and to produce further cooling by evaporation of body moisture.

TABLE 9.1 Solar Performance of Roofing Materials

Material	Absorptance (%)	Albedo (%)	Emittance (%)
White asphalt shingles	79	21	91
Black asphalt shingles	95	5	91
White granular-surface bitumen	74	26	92
Red clay tile	67	33	90
Red concrete tile	82	18	91
Unpainted concrete tile	75	25	90
White concrete tile	27	73	90
Galvanized steel (unpainted)	39	61	4
Aluminum	39	61	25
Siliconized white polyester over metal	41	59	85
Kynar white over metal	33	67	85
Gray EPDM	77	23	87
White EPDM	31	69	87
T-EPDM	19	81	92
Hypalon	24	76	91

Source: Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory.

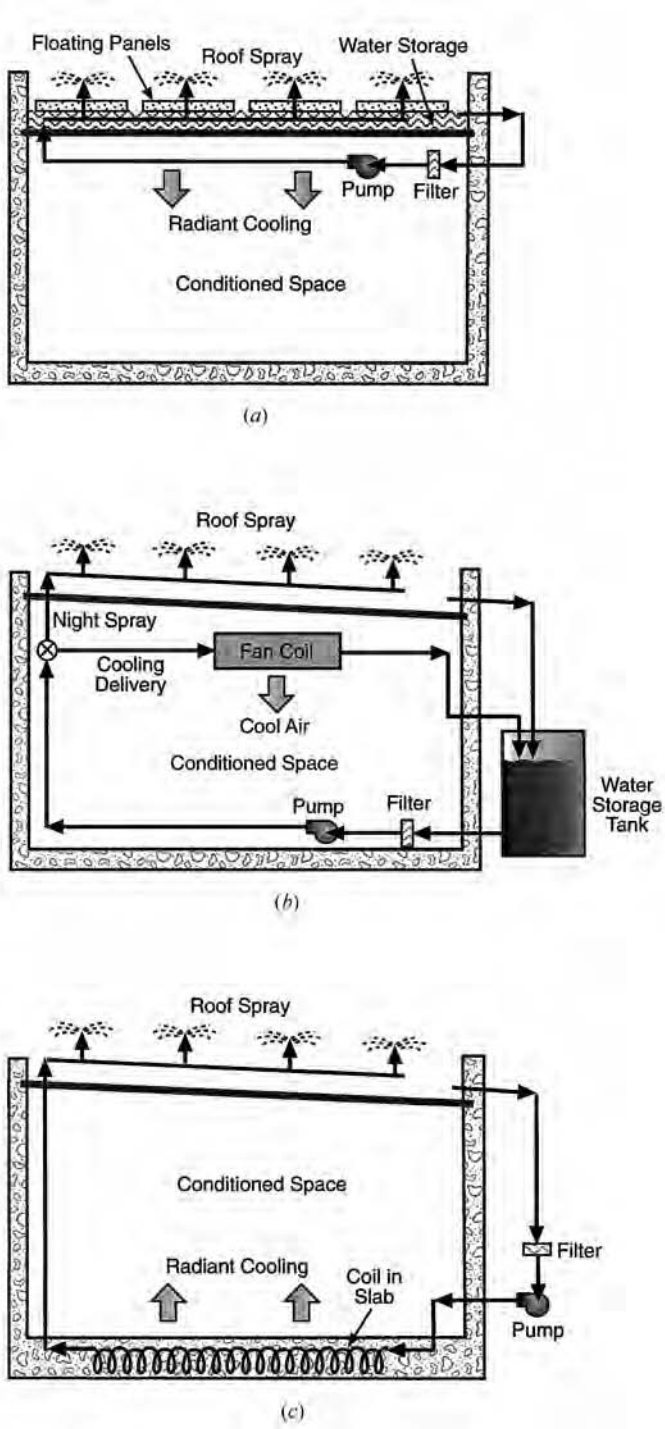


Fig. 9.7 *Night roof spray thermal storage systems (NRSTS). (a) This version approximates the performance of a roof pond. (b) Remote water storage allows use of the cooled water at any time. (c) The floor slab is used as thermal storage in this version. (From* Technical Installation Review*, December 1997: WhiteCap Roof Spray Cooling System. Federal Energy Management Program, U.S. Department of Energy.)*

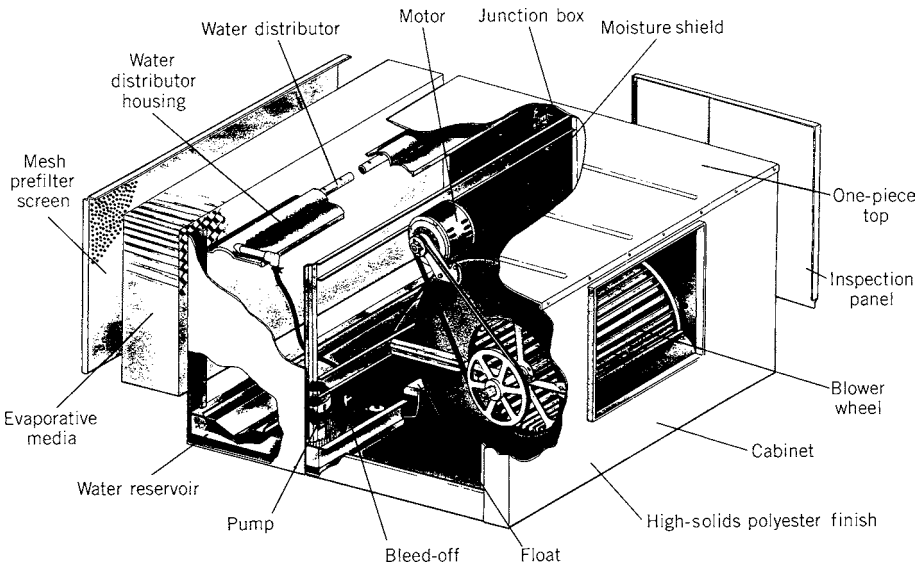


Fig. 9.8 *The UltraCool evaporative cooler has a low profile and uses internal components of plastic or stainless steel to reduce corrosion. Typical dimensions for a 4000-cfm (1890-L/s) unit are 35 in. H × 42 in. W × 48 in. D (890 × 1070 × 1220 mm). (Courtesy of Champion Cooler Corporation, El Paso, TX.)*

Air introduced into the indoor space must then be exhausted for the system to operate properly. By selecting the room through which the air is exhausted, one can route cool air as desired in any chosen path from unit to relief opening. The closer to the relief opening, the warmer the indoor air.

(f) Indirect Evaporative Cooling

The preceding discussion concerns the simplest application of evaporative cooling, known as the *direct* process (once-treated outdoor air directly introduced to the space). Unfortunately, some areas have such hot summer daytime conditions that these simple evaporative approaches cannot produce comfort indoors. *Direct and indirect* processes have been combined to achieve more "real" cooling and better indoor comfort conditions; a psychrometric process diagram is shown in Fig. 5.16.

One of several such approaches is shown in Figs. 9.9 and 9.10. Warm, rather dry night outside air is evaporatively cooled and fed into a rock bed. The air's temperature is low enough to cool the rock bed, and its RH is moderate. (At the same time, the house is directly evaporatively cooled by a second cooling unit.) Figure 9.10 traces the process by day. Extremely hot, dry outdoor air (A) is drawn into the rock bed, where it is cooled by contact (D). It can then be passed through an evaporative cooler to achieve a better combination of RH and DB temperature (E). After picking up both sensible and latent heat, the air is exhausted (at approximately temperature F). Note that at condition F, it is still much cooler than outdoor air.

By comparison, simple direct evaporative cooling by day would have produced indoor supply air too hot and humid for comfort (B). Again, upon exhaust (C), it is still cooler than outdoor air.

Indirect evaporative cooling is combined with a direct refrigerant system in an innovative tent structure over a San Francisco department store (Fig. 9.11). Two layers of fiberglass, Teflon-coated fabric, separated by an average of 12 in. (300 mm), are supported by a network of cables hung from eight masts. The tent roof covers about 70,000 ft^2 (6500 m^2) of sales floor; its 7% translucency to sunlight provides 450 to 550 footcandles of daylight. This greatly reduces the need for electric lighting, although some electric lamps,

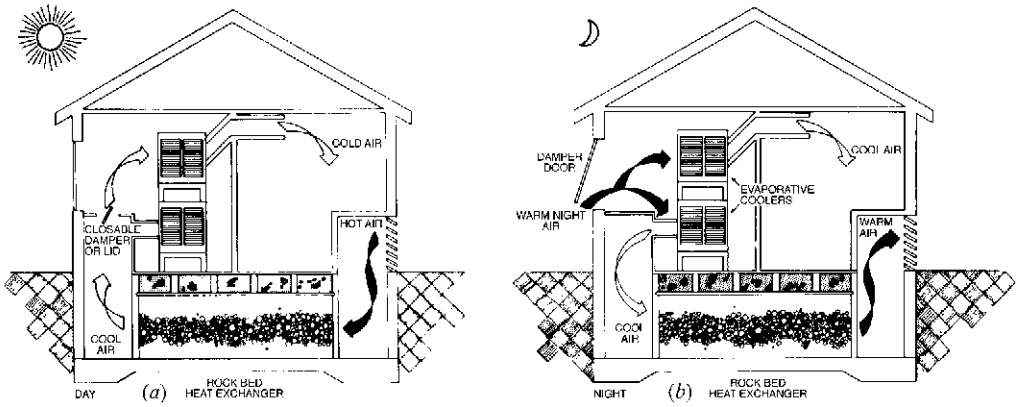


Fig. 9.9 *Direct-indirect evaporative cooling utilizing a rock bed for storage and heat exchange. (a) Day operation; (b) night operation. (Reprinted by permission of the Environmental Research Laboratory, University of Arizona.)*

clipped onto exposed fire sprinkler pipes, are still used as accent lighting. About 3.5 W/ft^2 of solar gain, mostly in the form of this diffused daylight, penetrates the tent cover. When this solar gain is combined with heat gains from people and electric accent lights, a cooling load is always generated in San Francisco's mild climate, which rarely falls below 45°F (7°C). The roof's relatively high U-factor is thus advantageous in helping to lose heat. Because San Francisco overheats even more rarely, such low resistance to heat flow is not seriously disadvantageous in summer.

To remove this heat, four sets of direct refrigerant equipment are provided at the tent perimeter on grade. These feed into a perimeter plenum, from which the entire store is supplied with cooled air. The exhaust air is collected at the center and returned to help with the task of cooling. Indirect evaporative cooling (also called *sensible evaporative refrigeration*) units are used to cool air (see Fig. 9.11*b*). In this application, two units work in tandem. Air to be cooled (supply air) enters the heat exchanger of the first unit, which is cooled by evaporative cooling of outside air. During peak temperature periods, the supply air is only somewhat cooled by this process; sufficiently low temperatures for use on the interior are obtained by passing it through the second unit's heat exchanger. This second unit is cooled by evaporative cooling of the *exhaust* air from the store, which is cooler than outside air under summer conditions. Thus, the exhaust air does some work beyond the direct cooling of the tent's interior. This two-stage, indirect evaporative cooling process allows the supply air to be cooled without the RH being raised, as would be the case if direct evaporative cooling were used.

9.7 HEATING-ONLY SYSTEMS

There are substantial areas of North America in which the summers are so mild, but winters so cold, that heating systems are installed but not cooling systems. This is most common for residences and small commercial buildings.

Where should heating devices be placed within a space? The relative comfort in heated rooms from entire ceilings or floors as a heat source is discussed in Chapter 4. Figure 4.10 shows dissatisfaction with increased air velocity (the warmer the air, the

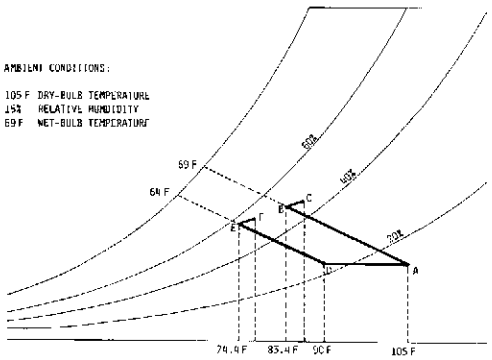
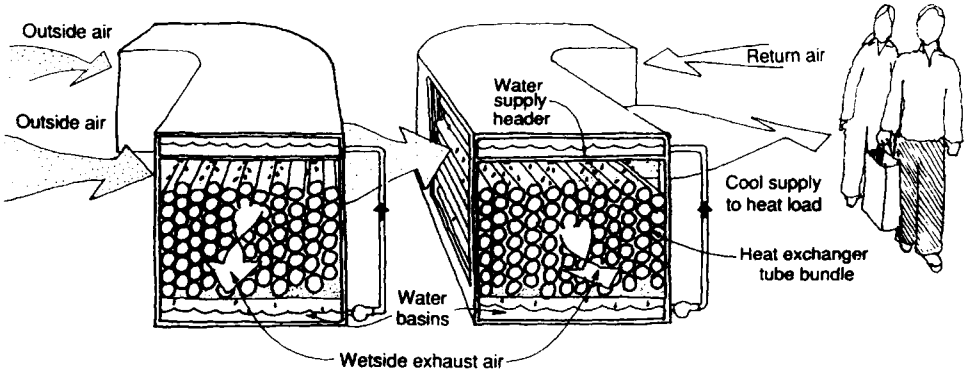


Fig. 9.10 *Comparing direct* (A *to* B *to* C) *and indirect evaporative cooling* (A *to* D *to* E *to* F) *on the psychrometric chart.*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 9.11 *Bullock's Department Store, San Mateo, California. (a) The eight-masted white fabric roof, highly reflective to ward off solar heat, transmits about 7% of daylight to provide ample diffuse daylight for sales areas. (Photo by Steve Proehl. Environmental Planning and Research, Inc., architects; Giampolo and Associates, Inc., mechanical and electrical engineers.) (b) Cooling is provided by a two-stage, indirect evaporative cooling system, which uses much less energy than does conventional compressive refrigeration.*

higher the velocity tolerated), Fig. 4.11 shows dissatisfaction with asymmetric radiation (warmer ceilings were less tolerated), and Fig. 4.12 shows dissatisfaction with vertical air temperature differences (cold floors were less tolerated). Figure 9.12 shows why designers usually locate heat sources below windows, despite the fact that warmer temperatures just inside an exterior wall will drive more heat through the wall in cold weather (heat loss = $U \times A \times \Delta t$). As windows and walls become better insulated, their interior surface temperatures rise, and the need for heat at the edge grows less. Indeed,

with superinsulated components, the need for space heat disappears because internal gains from the sun, lights, appliances, and occupants can heat the space.

(a) Wood Heating Devices

After the sun, the most ancient method of heating is the radiant effect of fire. With each step from campfire to fireplace to wood stove, more of the fuel's heat was captured for the room rather than wasted to the outdoors (Fig. 9.13). Although many people enjoy the sight, sound, and smell of the open fireplace, the tightly enclosed wood stove with a catalytic combustor is a substantially more efficient and less polluting approach to heating. Indoor as well as outdoor air pollution is a serious issue with fireplaces and stoves. Combustion generates carbon monoxide, breathable particulates, and, at times, nitrogen dioxide. Wood smoke can cause nose and throat irritation; it can remain in the lungs, and it can trigger asthmatic attacks. Keeping a clean chimney, burning small, hot fires rather than large, smoky ones, using seasoned wood, and ensuring adequate ventilation to the wood-burning device are strategies to minimize pollution and risk.

Open fireplaces may be lovely to look at, but the amount of air exhausted up the chimney can quickly cause more heat losses than heat gained from the fire. The colder the outside air, the greater the net heat loss. Masonry mass around fireplaces can store and release some heat; for energy conservation, the mass should be surrounded by the building rather than located on an exterior wall. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2 requires fireplaces to have a tight-fitting damper, firebox doors, and a source of outside combustion air within the firebox.

Wood stoves are available in a wide variety of styles and are made of several materials. The heating capacities of such stoves are often difficult to determine. Manufacturers rarely specify the Btu/h output, which depends on the density, moisture content, and burn time of the wood fuel. Wood that has been split, loosely stacked, and covered from rain for at least 6 months should achieve a moisture content of about 20% by weight. The following sizing procedure assumes no more than this 20% moisture content. For more details, see Issue 35 of *Alternative Sources of Energy Magazine* (1978).

The formula for the hourly heat output to a room from a wood stove is

$$\text{Btu/h} = \frac{(V)(E)(D)(7000)}{T}$$

where

V = useful (loadable) volume of the stove (ft^3)

E = percent efficiency, expressed as a decimal (<1.0); see Fig. 9.13

D = density of the wood fuel (Table 9.2)

T = burn time (hours) for a complete load of firewood; usually assumed at an 8-hour minimum

7000 = Btu/lb of firewood, 20% moisture content

"Bone-dry" wood can be assumed to have 8600 Btu/lb (20,000 kJ/kg). Note that a *drop* in burn time *increases* the heat output; it is evident that when the air supply is increased to the stove, the fire burns hotter, consuming the wood more quickly. To meet the design heat loss (worst

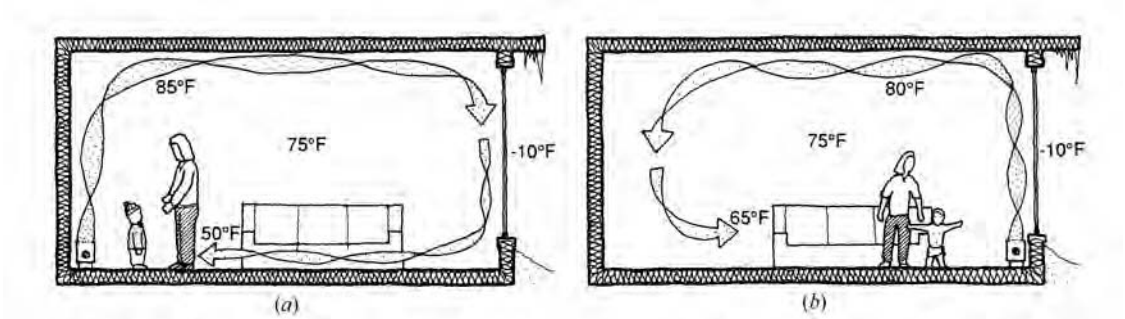


Fig. 9.12 *Locating a heat source near an interior wall (a) encourages a cold draft along the floor in winter. Below a window (b) it evens the temperature throughout the room but also causes more heat loss through the window.*

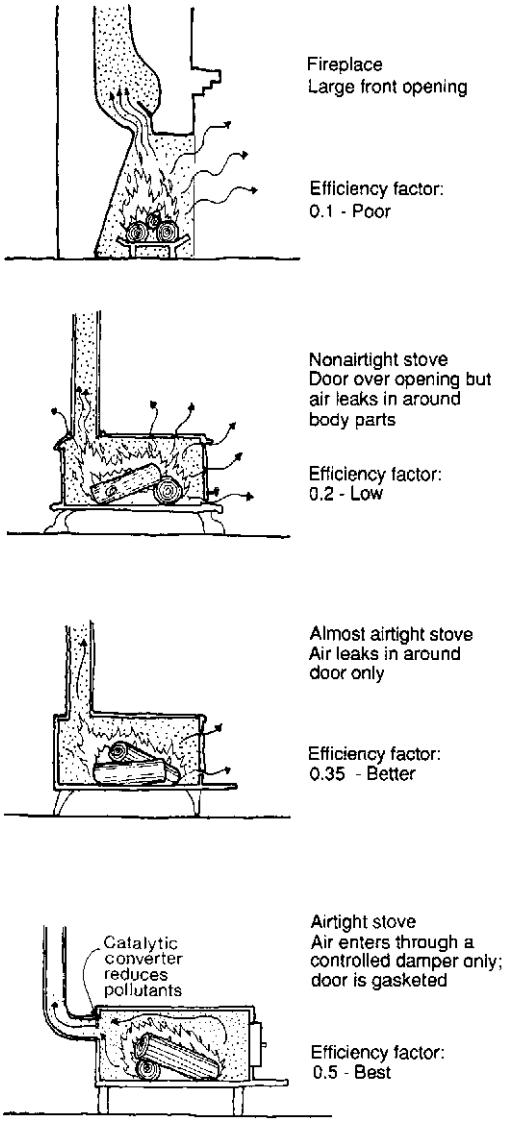


Fig. 9.13 *Wood-burning devices have substantially increased in efficiency since the time of the open fireplace. (Copyright © 1978 by* Alternative Sources of Energy, *Issue 35.)*

condition) for a room, burn times of 8 to 10 hours should be assumed. Stoves rarely need relighting with a 10-hour burn time.

Pellet stoves were introduced in 1984 and have several desirable characteristics. The pellets are made from densified quality sawdust, a manufacturing by-product. The form and content of this fuel produce a highly efficient burn with less pollution emitted. The fuel is cleaner and takes less storage space than cordwood; an electric auger automatically feeds fuel into the burnplace to maintain a fire.

TABLE 9.2 Approximate Average Wood Density

Type	Density lb/ft^3 (kg/m^3)[a]
Shagbark hickory	40.5 (648)
White oak	37.4 (598)
Red oak	36.2 (579)
Beech	36.2 (579)
Sugar maple	34.9 (558)
Yellow birch	34.3 (548)
White ash	33.7 (539)
Black walnut	31.2 (499)
American elm	28.7 (459)
Spruce	25.6 (410)
Hemlock	23.7 (379)
Aspen	23.1 (370)
Red cedar	18.7 (299)
White pine	17.5 (280)

Source: Alternative Sources of Energy Magazine, Issue 35, © 1978. Reprinted by permission.

[a]These values are approximate; they vary a great deal. SI units added by the authors of this book.

From 10,000 to 50,000 Btu/h (2930 to 14,650 W) are produced, depending on the model and operating settings.

Wood stoves are frequently used as the sole mechanical heat source for an entire building, such as a residence or a small commercial building that is passively solar heated. Because radiant heat is the dominant form of heat output, the areas that "see" the stove get most of the benefit. However, *circulating* stoves convert a larger portion of their heat to convected heat, which produces a layer of hot air at ceiling level. By providing a path between rooms at the ceiling, this hot air will slowly spread throughout a building; it also easily finds its way upstairs, because warm air rises. The more thermally massive the ceiling construction, the longer it will store and reradiate the heat from this warm air mass.

The flue leading from a wood stove carries very hot gases that are a potential source of heat (and pollution). The flue can be exposed to a space, making its radiant heat available, or simple heat exchangers can be constructed (such as the preheating of domestic hot water). More elaborate heat recovery devices—for boiler flue heat recovery—are discussed in Section 10.3.

Catalytic combustors, a recent development, reduce the air pollution from wood burning. These devices are honeycomb-shaped, chemically treated disks as much as 6 in. in diameter and 3 in. thick (150 mm in diameter, 75 mm thick). They are either inserted in the flue or built into the stove

itself. When wood smoke passes through the combustor, it reacts with the chemical and ignites at a much lower temperature; this causes gases to burn that otherwise would have gone up the flue. The result is more heat produced, less creosote buildup in the flue, and fewer pollutants in the atmosphere. Like the catalytic converters in autos, these devices impose limits on the fuel: plastic, colored newsprint, metallic substances, and sulfur are ruinous to combustors, which means that the stove must be used as a wood burner, not a trash incinerator.

Wood stoves have a larger impact on building design than do most other heating devices. Either noncombustible materials must be placed below and around them or minimum clearance to ordinary combustible building materials must be provided. Furniture arrangements and circulation paths must be designed with the very hot stove surfaces in mind. Hot spots occur near the stove; cold spots occur whenever visual access to the stove is blocked. Thermally massive materials near the stove are advantageous in leveling the large temperature swings that can accompany the on–off cycle of the stove; this affinity for thermal mass has made the wood stove a popular choice for backup heat in passively solar-heated buildings. Finally, the amount of space required for wood storage should not be overlooked; recall the impact of the wood storage space on the house shown in Fig. 2.2. A covered, well-ventilated, easily accessible, and quite large space is optimum.

Masonry heaters overcome many of the metal wood stoves' disadvantages. Their footprint is rather small compared to their height; typically, they are used to heat the entire building (such as a residence). An inner vertical firebox supports a hot, clean burn, resulting in efficient combustion; combustion gases then flow downward in outer chambers, transferring heat to exterior masonry surfaces. In Finnish masonry heaters, this is termed *contraflow* (Fig. 9.14). Cool air at the floor of the room flows upward as it is heated by contact with this masonry; the temperature difference between masonry and air remains fairly constant, with the highest temperatures at the top. Heat is gentle and even; dangerously hot surfaces are avoided. Fires may be built at 6:00 P.M., and combustion is completed by a family's bedtime; the heat continues to radiate all night, but no fire is burning while people sleep. Research at Finland's Tampere University of Technology has resulted in optimum masonry heater designs, described in Barden and Hyytiainen (1993).

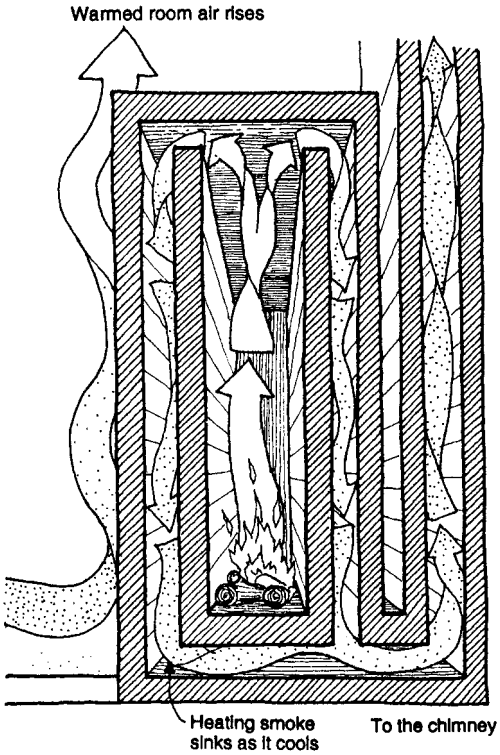


Fig. 9.14 *The Finnish contraflow masonry heater.*

(b) Electric Resistance Heaters

These common devices carry the disadvantage of using high-grade energy to do a low-grade task, as shown in Fig. 2.6. Their advantages, however, are impressive: low first cost and individual thermostatic control that can easily be used to make each room a separate heating zone. Thus, the energy wasted at the electricity-generating plant (usually 60% to 70%) can be partially "recovered" at the building, where unused rooms can remain unheated. A few of the many types of electric resistance heaters are shown in Fig. 9.15. As in the case of metal wood stoves, surfaces can sometimes reach high temperatures, requiring care in the location of heaters relative to furniture placement, draperies, and traffic flow. Electric heaters are sized by their capacity in kilowatts (1 kW = 3413 Btu/h). The maximum watt density allowed is 250 W per linear foot of heater (820 W per linear meter).

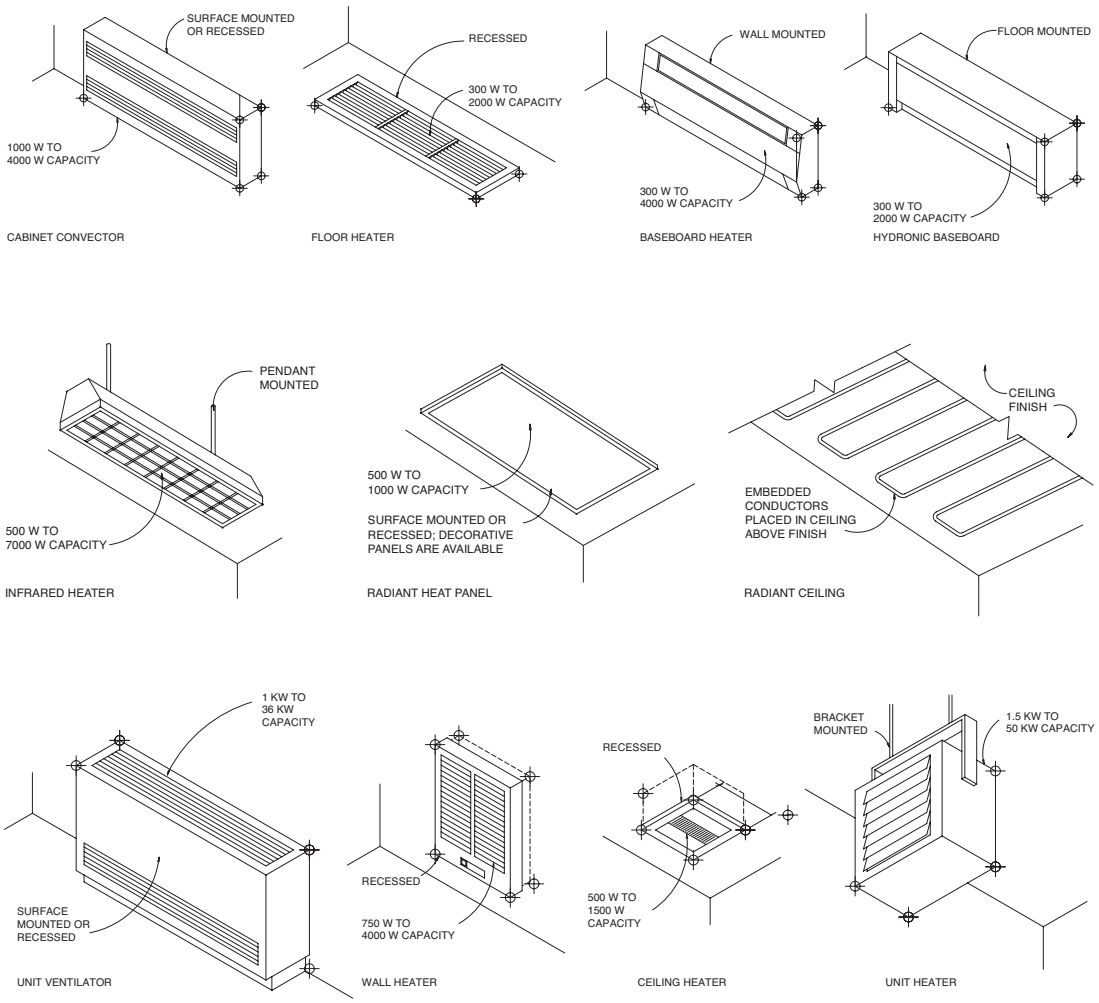


Fig. 9.15 *Varieties of electric resistance heating units. (Reprinted by permission from AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards, *10th ed.; © 2000 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

(c) Gas-Fired Heaters

Radiant heaters fired with either natural gas or propane are often found in semioutdoor locations such as loading docks and repair shops. When vented, they can be used in more traditional environments such as the retail store in a remodeled warehouse shown in Fig. 9.16. Their advantage is that they heat surfaces first rather than air, so that comfort is obtained without the need for high air temperatures. When high rates of air exchange are expected, high-intensity radiant heaters are often used.

Radiant heaters should be sized by the surface temperature change they produce. Many manufacturers specify this surface Δt for specified mounting heights and angles relative to the surface to be heated.

Gas-fired baseboard heaters are also available, using either natural gas or propane. They heat by both convection and radiation, as do their electric counterparts. At a steady-state efficiency of 80%, they use a lower-grade resource (than electricity) to do this lower-grade task. They are direct vented (using a built-in fan) to the outside, and therefore

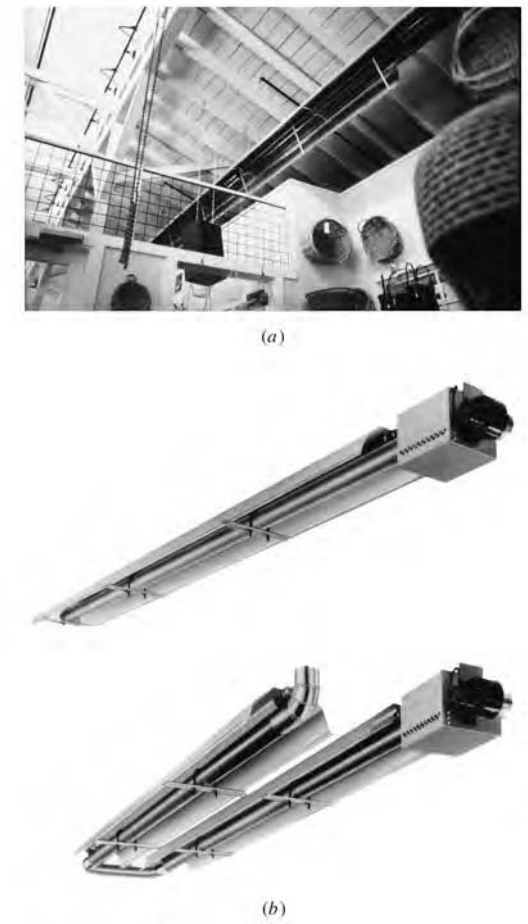


Fig. 9.16 *A high-intensity infrared heater adds to the historic atmosphere of this retail store in an old warehouse (a). Exposed mechanical equipment includes the chains that operate the clerestory windows. The vented gas heater has an adjustable reflector that enables its radiant heat to be directed. (Clark-Ditton Architects, Eugene, OR.) (b) Vented gas high-intensity infrared heaters are available in both straight-line and U-shaped units. (Courtesy of Solaronics, Inc., Rochester, MI.)*

must be installed on or near an exterior wall; vents are 1½ in. in diameter, with a maximum length of 19 in. (38 mm in diameter, 483 mm in length). With a cross section of 9 in. high by 5 in. deep (230 mm × 130 mm), a 48-in. (1220-mm) length will deliver 5800 Btu/h (1700 W); a 72-in. (1830-mm) length will deliver 9400 Btu/h (2755 W).

(d) Ceiling Electric Resistance Heat

Ceilings can be constructed to include wiring for electric resistance heating (Fig. 9.17). Because the ceiling is not touched by occupants, it can be safely heated to a rather high temperature. The primary disadvantage of ceiling heat is that hot air stratifies just below the ceiling, so that air motion is discouraged; remember also that Figs. 4.11 and 4.12 predict more discomfort with a warmer ceiling. Finally, the wires are hidden within the ceiling surface, and unwary occupants can puncture wires while installing hooks or additional light fixtures.

(e) Hot Water Boilers

The remaining choices for whole-building heating systems are discussed in the following order: (1) hot water and (2) forced air. Such systems include a fuel, a heat source, a "mover" (such as a pump or fan), a distribution system, a heat exchanger or terminal within the space, and a control system.

Hot water boilers are rated according to heating capacity by several different categories. *Heating capacity* is the rate of useful heat output with the boiler operating under steady-state conditions, often expressed in MBh (1000 Btu/h). This "useful heat" assumes that the boiler is within the heated envelope of the building; thus, the heat that escapes from the boiler walls is available to help heat the building. AFUE, the annual fuel utilization efficiency, is defined as 100% minus the losses up the stack during both the on and off cycles, and the losses due to infiltration of outdoor air to replace the air used for combustion and for draft control. Finally, the *net I = B = R rating* (a designation of the Institute of Boiler and Radiator Manufacturers) is published by the Hydronics Institute Division of the Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association (GAMA). The net I = B = R rating load is lower than the heating capacity rating, because it consists only of the heating to be delivered to the spaces and excludes the heat loss of the boiler itself.

Select a boiler whose rating matches the calculated critical heat loss of the house or building; too small a boiler results in lower indoor temperatures at design conditions; too large a boiler costs more and is a waste of space. When using AFUE to select an efficient boiler, take care to see that the assumptions about "inches of water draft" and percentage CO_2 are similar for the boilers being compared. Minimum AFUEs are specified both in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2, *Energy-Efficient Design of Low-Rise Residential Buildings*, and in

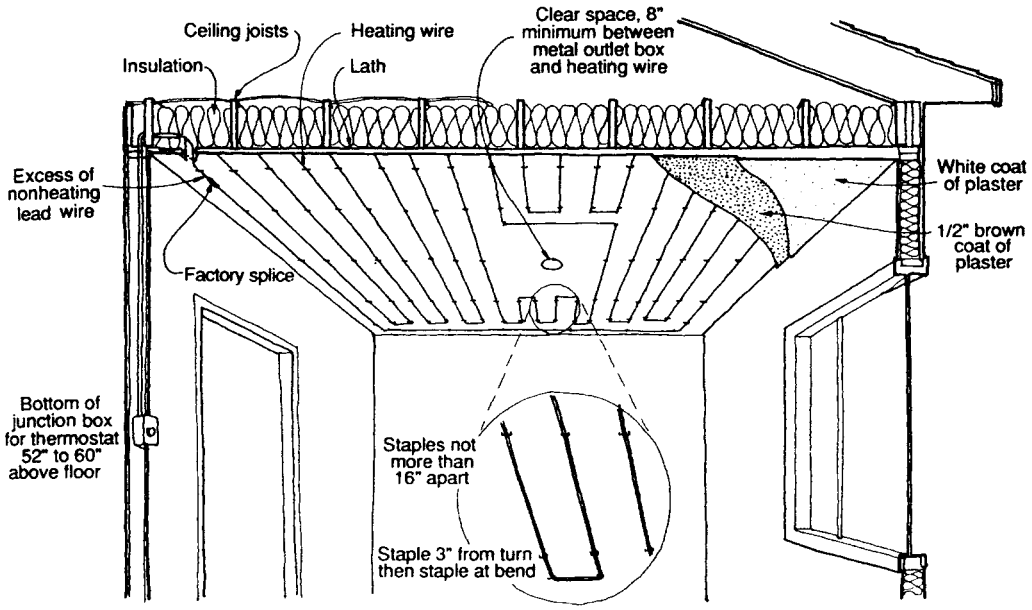


Fig. 9.17 *Radiant heating electrical cable is installed prior to completion of a plaster ceiling.*

ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*.

Boilers and their accessories comprise a wide inventory. A few selected types are discussed:

1. *Oil-fired steel boiler.* A refractory chamber receives the hot flame of the oil fire. Combustion continues within the chamber and the fire tubes. Smoke leaves through the breeching at the rear. Water, *outside* the chamber, receives the heat generated in the combustion chamber. If a domestic hot water coil is connected for use, a larger-capacity boiler is selected. An aquastat (water thermostat) turns on the burner whenever the boiler water cools off, thereby maintaining a reservoir of hot water ready for heating the building.
2. *Gas-fired cast-iron hot water boiler* (Fig. 9.18). Cast-iron sections contain water that is heated by hot gases rising through these sections. Output is related to the number of sections. Additional heat is gained from a heat extractor in the flue. With induced draft combustion, condensing unit in the flue, and intermittent electronic ignition instead of a pilot light, up to 90% AFUE is attainable. The American Gas Association (AGA) sets standards for gas-fired equipment.
3. *Oil-fired, cast-iron hot water boiler.* Primary and secondary air for combustion may be regulated at the burner unit. Flame enters the refractory chamber and continues around the outside of the water-filled cast-iron sections.

(f) Hot Water Baseboard and Radiator Systems

Hot water heating circuits that serve baseboards or radiators come in four principal arrangements. Figure 9.19*a* shows the series loop system, usually run at the building's perimeter. The water flows to and *through* each baseboard or fintube in turn. Obviously, the water at the end of the circuit is a little cooler, but because in all hot water systems the water temperature drop seldom exceeds 20F° (11C°) in residences, the *average* temperature can usually be used to select the baseboard or other elements. Valves at each heating element are not possible, because any valve would shut off the entire loop. Adjustment is by a damper at each baseboard, which reduces the natural convection of air over the fins. This is a *one-zone* system—all elements on, or off, together. There is no general rule about the maximum allowable length of a water circuit, but for long runs, the pipe size can be increased or

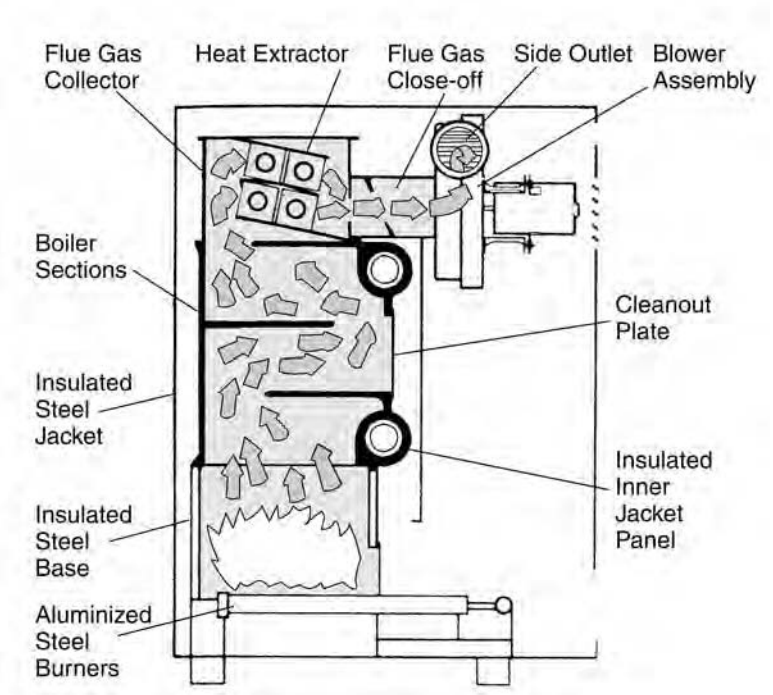


Fig. 9.18 *Gas-fired cast-iron sectional boiler for hot water heating. Very high operating efficiency is possible; no chimney is required, as lower-temperature exhaust gases can be vented through the wall to the exterior.*

several loops used in parallel to create more than one thermal zone.

The one-pipe system shown in Figs. 9.19*b* and 9.20 is a very popular choice. Special fittings act to divert part of the flow into each baseboard. A valve may be used at each one to allow for reduced heat or for a complete shutoff to conserve energy—an advantage that the loop system does not provide. The one-pipe system uses a little more piping and thus is not as economical to install as the loop system, in which piping is minimal. Again, the supply water temperature will be lower at the end of the run than at the beginning.

The two-pipe reverse–return shown in Fig. 9.19*c* provides the same supply water temperature to each baseboard or radiator, because it is not cooled either by passing through a previous baseboard or accepting the cooler return water. Equal friction, resulting in equal flow, is achieved through all baseboards (numbers 1 to 5) by *reversing* the return instead of running it directly back to the boiler. This equality is effected by equal lengths of water flow through any baseboard together with its lengths of supply-and-return main. More pipe is required for this system than for the systems shown in Fig. 9.19*a* or 9.19*b*.

Figure 9.19*d* shows an arrangement that is not usually favored because the path of water through baseboard number 1 is much shorter than that through the others, especially number 5. Baseboard number 5 could easily be undesirably cool, because it is short-circuited by the others.

Pipe expansion requires expansion joints in long runs of pipe and clearance around all pipes passing through walls and floors. Each time a hydronic system changes from room temperature to a heated condition, the piping will undergo the following expansion, assuming a 70°F (21°C) initial temperature:

Pipe Expansion, in. per 100 ft (mm/100 m)		
Water Temperature °F (°C)	**Iron Pipe**	**Copper Tubing**
160 (71)	0.7 (58)	1.0 (83)
180 (82)	0.9 (75)	1.3 (108)
200 (93)	1.0 (83)	1.5 (125)
220 (104)	1.2 (100)	1.7 (142)

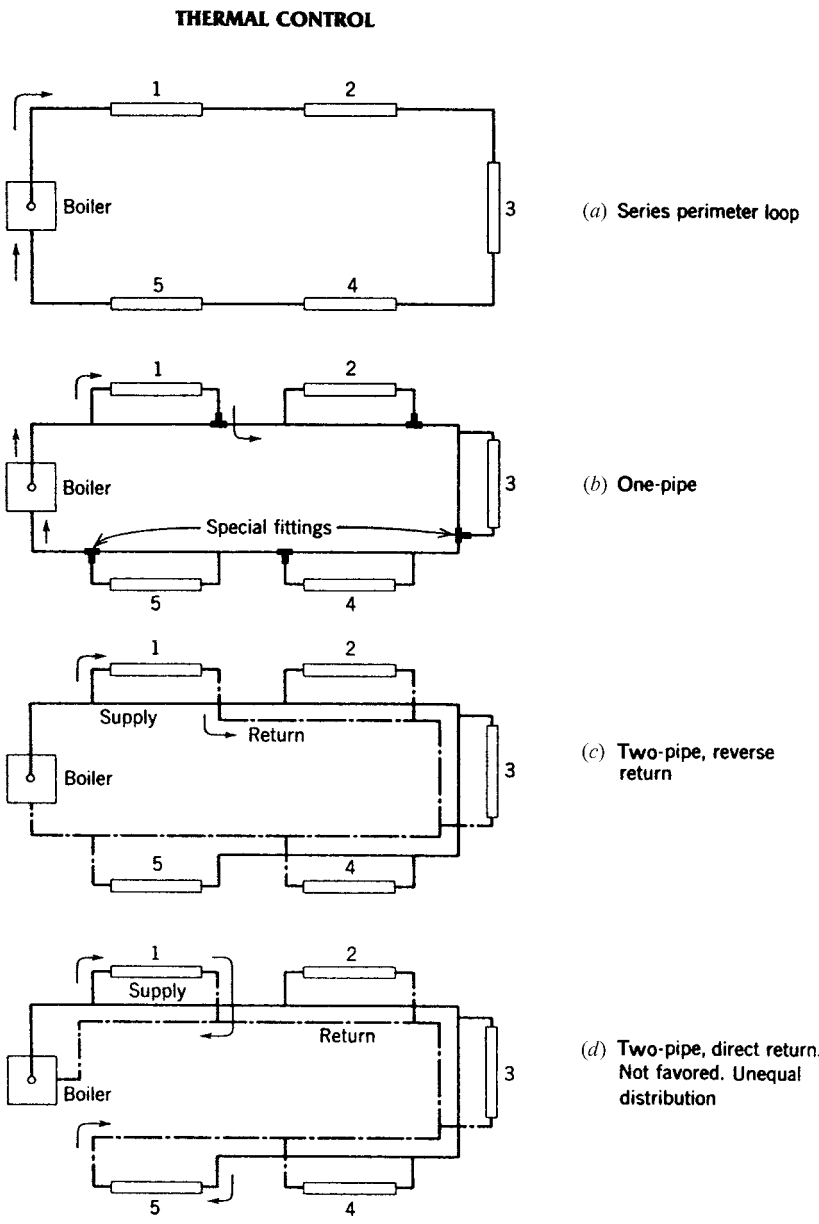


Fig. 9.19 *Diagrams of hydronic distribution options (a, b, c, d), shown in plan view. Baseboard convectors are shown here. Controls are not shown.*

An *air cushion tank*, compression tank, or expansion tank is a closed tank containing air, usually located above the boiler. When the water in the system is heated, it expands, compressing the air trapped in the tank. This tank allows for the usual range of temperatures within the system, including temperatures above the usual boiling point of water, without the frequent opening of the pressure relief valve. One type of air cushion tank, called a *diaphragm tank*, separates the air and water with an inert, flexible material; this prevents reabsorption of the air by the water.

For a conventional (unpressurized) air cushion tank, allow 1 gallon of tank capacity for every 5000 Btu/h (1 L for every 385 W) of total system heat loss. For a pressurized tank of at least

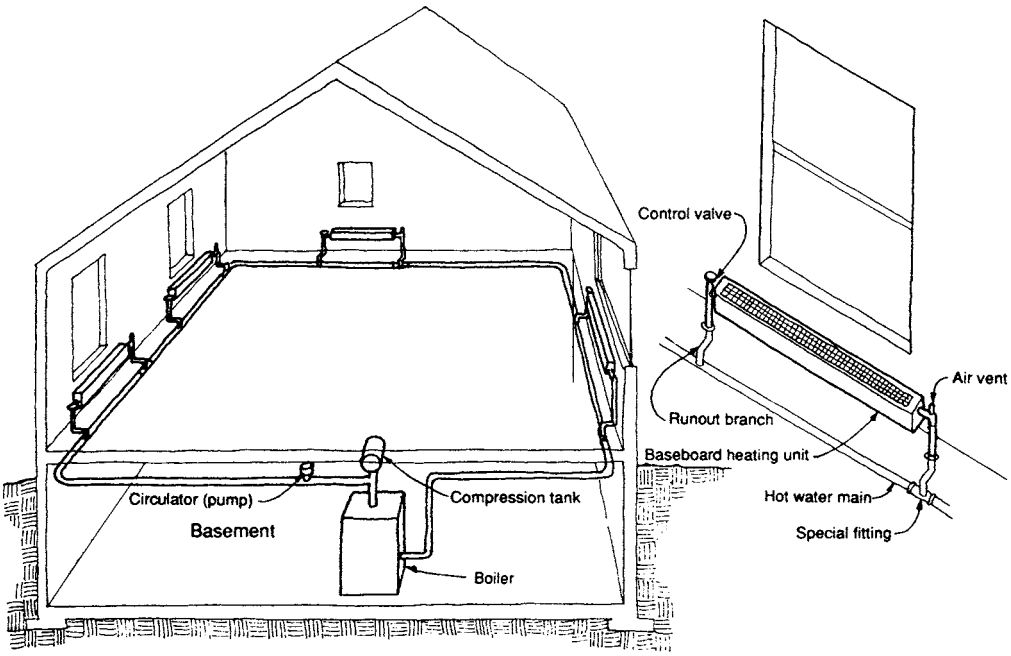


Fig. 9.20 *One-pipe hydronic system.*

8 lb/in^2 (55 kPa), allow 1 gallon of tank capacity for each 7000 Btu/h (1 L for each 540 W), or see the manufacturer's recommendations.

Air vents and water drains are part of the distribution system. Except for the necessary air cushion in the upper part of the compression tank above the boiler, air must not be allowed to accumulate at high points in the piping or at the convector branches. Air vents at all high points relieve these possible air pockets that would otherwise make the system air-bound and inoperative.

If a system is drained and left idle in a cold house, water trapped in low points can freeze and burst the tubing or fittings. Operable drain valves must be provided at such locations and, of course, at the bottom of the boiler, as shown in Fig. 9.21.

Hydronic and electrical controls allow automatic operation, described in Fig. 9.21. There are two options for system control:

1. As in Fig. 9.21, the thermostat controls the circulating pump and the boiler. In colder weather, the system operates almost continuously, and the average temperature in the system gradually rises.
2. The thermostat controls only the boiler, and the circulating pump operates continuously. This uses more energy for the pump but minimizes system temperature variation and thus the possibility of expansion noises.

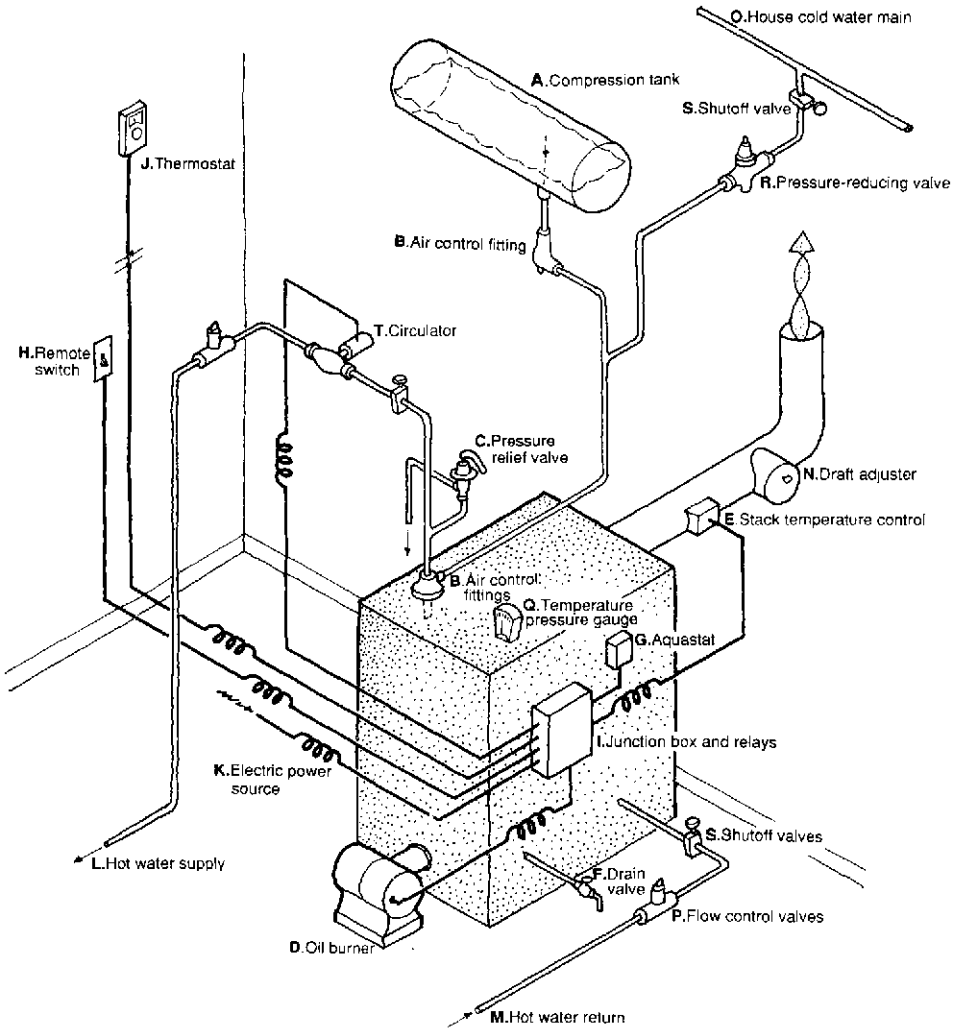
Makeup water is added as required, the air level in the tank is regulated by the air control fittings, and the circulator and burner operate as controlled by the aquastat and thermostat. If air vents in the *piping* are not automatic, they will require periodic manual "bleeding" of unwanted air.

Circulating pumps are used to overcome the friction of flow in the piping and fittings and to deliver water at a rate sufficient to offset the hourly heat loss of the house or building.

Pipe insulation is required whenever the pipes are outside the heated envelope of the building; ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2 specifies insulation appropriate to the temperature of the heated water.

(g) Radiant Panels

Radiant floors have several comfort advantages over radiant ceilings (see again the introduction to Section 9.7). The components are largely the same as in the baseboard/radiator systems, except that now



(A) *Compression tank*. Accommodates the expansion of the water in the system.
(B) *Air control fittings*. Vent out unwanted air in the boiler and maintain the level in the compression tank.
(C) *Pressure relief valve*. Usually set for 30 psi. Initial cold pressure about 12 psi. Relieves excessive system pressure.
(D) *Oil burner*. Responds to aquastat or thermostat.
(E) *Stack temperature control*. Senses stack temperature and stops oil injection if ignition has not occurred.
(F) *Drain valve*. At low point in the water system.
(G) *Aquastat*. Maintains temperature of boiler water by starting the oil burner when temperature of water drops below the aquastat's setting. Sometimes set at about 180 F.
(H) *Remote switch*. At a safe distance from the boiler so that the plant can be turned off in case of trouble during which the boiler cannot be approached.
(I) *Junction box and relays*. General control center.
(J) *Thermostat*. When the room temperature drops below its setting, it turns on both the oil fire and the circulating pump.
(K) *Electrical power source*. Operates from a separate individual circuit at the power panel.
(L) *Hot water supply*. Copper tubing to convectors or baseboards.
(M) *Hot water return*. Copper tubing from convectors or baseboards.
(N) *Draft adjuster*. Regulates the draft (combustion air) over the fire.
(O) *House cold water main*. From which water is fed automatically into boiler.
(P) *Flow control valves*. Prevent casual flow of water by gravity when the circulator is not running.
(Q) *Temperature pressure gauge*. Indicates water temperature and pressure. Sometimes supplemented by immersion thermometers in supply and return mains.
(R) *Pressure-reducing valve*. Admits water into the system when the pressure there drops below about 12 psi. Has a built-in check valve to prevent backflow of boiler water into the water main.
(S) *Shutoff valves*. Normally open. Can be closed to isolate the system and permit servicing of components.
(T) *Circulator*. Centrifugal circulating pump that moves the water through the tubing and heating elements.

Fig. 9.21 *An oil-fired boiler and its hydronic and electrical controls.*

whole coils of pipes replace the individual radiators and baseboards. A balancing valve should be installed on each coil. Where uninsulated spaces underlie floors (or are above ceilings), special attention should be paid to adequate insulation, because the radiant panel will generate especially high temperatures, and thus a very high Δt through the floor (or ceiling).

Thanks to better insulation, today's buildings often require panels smaller in area than the floor (or ceiling) area available. In a conventional radiant panel system, the panel is placed nearest the exterior walls, where the heat loss is greatest. In a solar-heated building, this is not so clear. If the panel heats the floor surface just inside south-facing glass, how much warming will be left to the sun? A preheated slab will absorb much less solar radiation. However, in cloudy cold weather, the area closest to the south glass could become uncomfortably cool.

In the past, copper tubing was widely used for the heating coils. This typically involved a number of connections within a coil; each represented a potential point of failure over the life of the panel. Today, coils are typically one-piece and are made of synthetic materials such as cross-linked polyethylene tubing. When the floor is concrete or other cast-in-place material, the coil is either directly embedded in the slab (tied down to resist floating during the pour) or stapled to an underfloor, over which the slab is poured. Radiant floors with coils underneath wood floors are increasingly popular.

Rugs or carpets over radiant floors are a mixed blessing; they are soft on the feet but interfere with the exchange of heat. Special undercarpet pads can facilitate heat transfer; higher water temperatures can be used in the coils, because skin contact with the floor is prevented by the carpet.

(h) Hydronic Heating Sizing

The calculations for the sizing of a water distribution system are based upon the required flow and the friction in the piping. (For a domestic water supply, another factor is the vertical distance the water must be raised. In closed loop space heating systems, however, the weight of the cooler water falling back to the boiler essentially counterbalances the weight of the hot water being raised. Furthermore, gravity helps the hot—lighter—water rise and the cooler water fall.)

The key to pipe sizing is the overall required flow rate. Ordinarily, the temperature drop that occurs as the hot supply water gives up heat to the space (through the convector) is about 20F° [11C°] in residences; in commercial applications, 30, 40, or 50F° (17, 22, or 28C°) temperature drops are also common, as recommended by the manufacturers of unit heaters and convectors. Because the entire building's design heat loss is overcome by this system, in I-P units, total flow rate, gpm

$$= \frac{\text{design heat loss, Btu/h}}{20\text{F}^\circ \times 60\,\text{min/h} \times 8\,\text{lb/gal} \times 1\,\text{Btu/lb F}^\circ}$$

$$= \frac{\text{design heat loss}}{9600}$$

In SI units, total flow rate, L/s

$$= \frac{\text{design heat loss, W}}{11\text{C}^\circ \times 1\,\text{kg/L} \times 4180\,\text{W sec/kg C}^\circ}$$

$$= \frac{\text{design heat loss}}{45,980}$$

Then, using Section 21.11, we can account for friction through piping and fittings and can size the main supply and return pipes. The same procedure can be applied to branches, proportioned to the heat they must deliver. The total friction to be overcome in the most distant run is then converted from total psi to *feet of head*, with each foot of head = 0.433 psi (the pressure exerted by a foot-high column of water). In SI, 1 ft of water = 2.99 kPa.

With both the friction of the system expressed in feet of water, or head, and the flow rate established, a pump can be selected. Figure 9.22 shows typical performance curves for four pumps. The designer enters the curve with a desired flow rate, then selects the pump with a head capacity greater than or equal to the head required. Pump performance curves are provided by the manufacturer.

The critical choice, however, is not pipe size. It is relatively easy to distribute such small-diameter pipes within wall and floor/ceiling construction. Rather, the critical choice is the *hot-water supply temperature*: the higher this temperature, the smaller the convector units that discharge the heat to each space. However, higher temperatures endanger occupants, who may suffer skin burns if they touch exposed parts of the convectors or the distribution tree. Higher

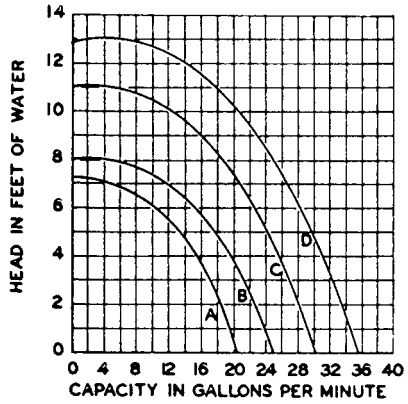


Fig. 9.22 *Typical pump capacity (or performance) curves for four pumps used in hydronic heating systems. One foot of water = 2.99 kPa; 1 gpm = 0.0631 L/s. (Courtesy of the Hydronics Institute Division of GAMA, Berkeley Heights, NJ.)*

temperatures also can lead to steam within the boiler/distribution tree, although the system is under pressure and therefore the boiling point is greater than 212°F (100°C). These systems are not designed to accommodate steam, and serious injury can sometimes result. A safer choice of average water distribution temperature is 180°F, even though this temperature results in larger convectors. A slightly lower annual average energy consumption should accompany the lower distribution temperature.

Baseboard convector selection is then made from the manufacturer's data tables, such as the one shown in Table 9.3. The two common baseboard types are *RC*, usually cast iron with a water-backed front surface and an extended rear heating surface, and *finned tube*, a metal tube with an extended surface in the form of fins, usually placed behind a metal enclosure.

EXAMPLE 9.1 What length of baseboard convector (Table 9.3) is necessary along a 20-ft [6-m]-long living room wall? From heat loss calculations, the living room requires 9000 Btu/h (2635 W). The average water temperature is 180°F, and water flow is about 1 gpm (0.6 L/s).

SOLUTION

With 180°F supply water and 1 gpm flow rate, Table 9.3 shows that 580 Btu/h will be delivered for each lineal foot of baseboard convector; 9000 Btu/h ÷ 580 Btu/h ft = 15.5 ft. Choose a baseboard

TABLE 9.3 Hydronic Baseboard Convectors

Water Supply					
Temperature		*Flow Rate*[a]		*Heat Delivered per Unit Length*[b]	
°C	°F	L/s	gpm	Watts/m	Btu/h ft
60	140	0.06	1	307	320
		0.25	4	326	340
66	150	0.06	1	365	380
		0.25	4	384	400
71	160	0.06	1	432	450
		0.25	4	461	480
77	170	0.06	1	490	510
		0.25	4	518	540
82	180	0.06	1	557	580
		0.25	4	586	610
88	190	0.06	1	614	640
		0.25	4	653	680
93	200	0.06	1	682	710
		0.25	4	720	750
99	210	0.06	1	739	770
		0.25	4	778	810

Source: Slant/Fin Ltd. Mississauga, Ontario.

[a]Use flow rate of 0.06 L/s (1 gpm) unless flow rate is known to be ≥0.25 L/s (4 gpm).

Pressure drop is as follows: flow 0.06 L/s (1 gpm) = 3.76 mm/m (0.045 in./ft).

flow 0.25 L/s (4 gpm) = 42 mm/m (0.5 in./ft).

[b]Baseboard finished length will be 76 mm (3 in.) longer than the length required to meet the heating need.

combination of 16-ft overall length, consisting of two 8-ft (finished length) pieces. The total active finned length will be about 15.5 ft. ■

Panel (*radiant ceiling or floor*) heating design usually depends on a water temperature of 120°F (49°C) for heated floors and 140°F (60°C) for heated ceilings. An uncarpeted concrete floor slab using ¾-in.-diameter pipe or tube on 12-in. centers (20-mm diameter on 300-mm centers), with an average water temperature of 120°F, will deliver *50 Btu/h ft*^{2} (*158 W/m*^{2}) *of floor panel.*

A ceiling panel with nominal ⅜-in. tube on 6-in. centers (10-mm diameter on 150-mm centers), with an average water temperature of 140°F, will deliver *60 Btu/h ft*^{2} (*189 W/m*^{2}) *of ceiling panel.*

To determine the area of heated panel, divide the room's design heat loss by the rate of panel heat delivery. Although radiant ceilings deliver more heat per unit area, they also discourage air motion because the warmest air rises to lie against the warmest surface. In contrast, at a radiant floor the coolest air drops to contact the warmest surface, is then warmed, and rises to be cooled at the ceiling, drops to the floor, and repeats this cycle continually.

Each panel contains one or more coils. In floor panels, each coil delivers 10,000 Btu/h (2930 W) and should be no longer than about 200 linear feet (60 m). In ceiling panels (with smaller-diameter tubes), each coil delivers 3000 Btu/h (880 W) and should be no longer than about 100 linear feet (30 m).

Sizing of the main pipes and pump is based on the longest circuit, measured along the length of the supply pipe from the boiler to the coil and back along the return line to the boiler. Two guidelines apply:

1. Do not include the length of the coil itself in this circuit length.
2. No section of a floor panel main should be less than ¾ in. (20 mm) in diameter.

EXAMPLE 9.2 Determine the panel area and coils required for a radiant floor in a living room 15 ft × 25 ft (= 375 ft^2) with a design heat loss of 12,000 Btu/h (4.6 m × 7.6 m = 34.8 m^2, heat loss 3514 W).

SOLUTION

The panel area required is

$$\frac{12{,}000\ \text{Btu/h}}{50\ \text{Btu/h ft}^2} = 240\ \text{ft}^2\ \text{of floor panel}$$

The room has 375 ft^2 of floor available, so the heated panel is usually placed along the exterior walls, where the room heat loss is greatest (unless solar heat through south windows is involved). The number of coils in the panel is

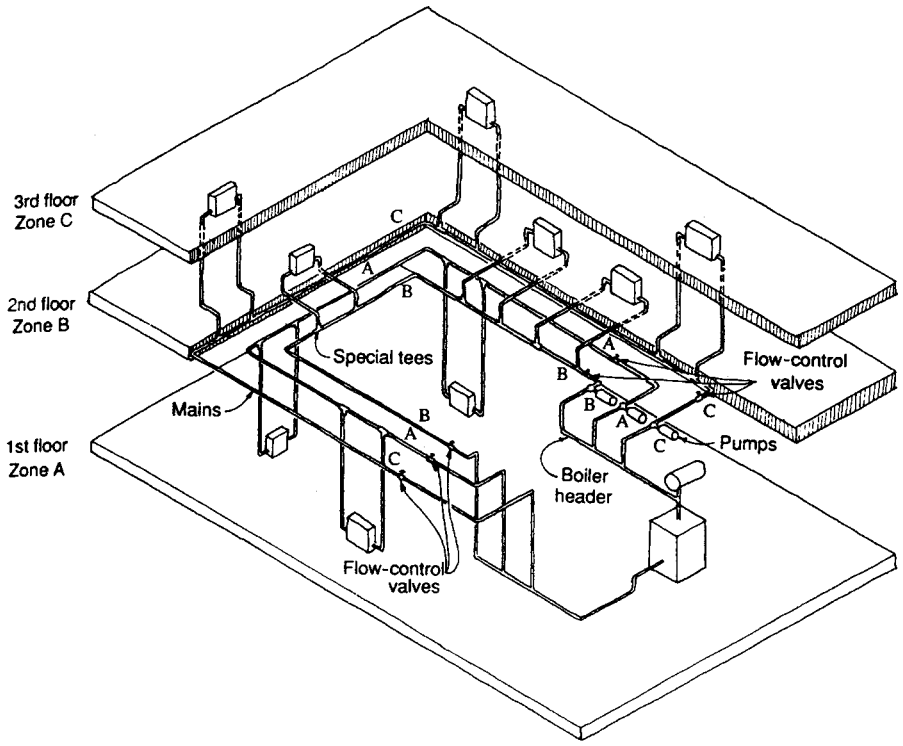
$$\frac{12{,}000\ \text{Btu/h}}{10{,}000\ \text{Btu/h per coil}} = 1.2\ \text{coils}$$

Use one coil in this panel. ■

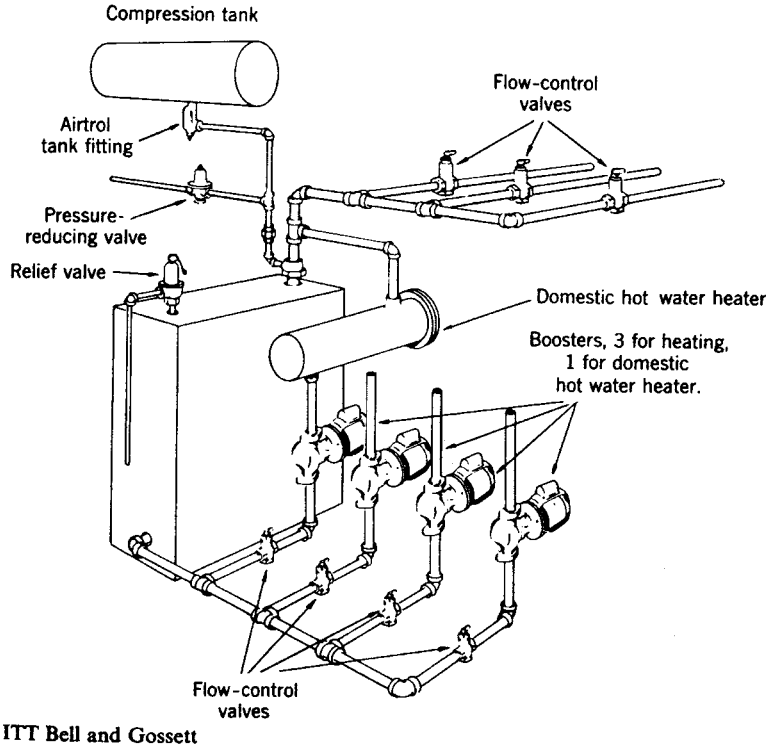
(i) Hydronic Zoning

Figure 9.23 shows that zoning is relatively easy to accomplish with hydronic systems. The installation shown in the figure is made up of three separately heated areas—the first, second, and third floors. Each can be heated to different temperatures as called for by thermostats in each separate apartment. For example, if only the thermostat serving the second floor (zone B) calls for heat, it turns on pump B. Flow-control valves B open, admitting hot water from the boiler header to main B. Flow-control valves A and C remain closed, preventing flow in mains A and C. Any or all of the zones may operate at one time. The boiler keeps a supply of hot water continually ready to supply any zone on demand. This is achieved by an aquastat immersed in the boiler water. When the boiler water drops below the prescribed temperature, it turns on the firing device, such as an oil burner or a gas burner, which brings the water up to the temperature setpoint. If an overhead main supplies downfeed, as in the first floor of this installation, special downfeed supply and return fittings are necessary. For the second- and third-floor zones, one special return tee is sufficient. If the designer also elects to use a special upfeed *supply* tee of the venturi type, higher outputs of the convectors will result.

Two of the more famous residences in the Midwest utilize hydronic systems. Frank Lloyd Wright's Robie House (Chicago) has wall radiators integrated below the north windows in the living room. Underfloor radiators with grilles in the floor were



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 9.23 *Three-zone, multicircuit, one-pipe system. (a) Each convector has connections to the one pipe. (b) Boiler, piping, and water controls suitable for this three-zone, one-pipe system. Each one-pipe circuit should be provided with two flow-control valves and a circulator (also called a booster or pump) on the supply (or return) pipe. (Courtesy of ITT Bell and Gossett.)*

provided for below the full-height south windows but were apparently never installed. The boiler sits in a basement room. Mies van der Rohe's Farnsworth House (Fox River, Illinois) preserves its four walls of ceiling-to-floor glass by concealing radiant heating pipes in the floor slab. The boiler sits within the central utility "closet."

Today's radiators are designed to reflect the sleek and simple lines of contemporary architecture. The radiator is getting new exposure with some colorful and pleasing products (Fig. 9.24). The Mayer Art Center at Phillips Exeter Academy in New Hampshire (Fig. 9.25) features new exposed radiators in some older buildings. These radiators are based on simple components (typically, 2¾ in. [70 mm] wide) that can be combined in many heights and widths, inviting the designer to feature them rather than to hide them in metal cabinets.

(j) Heating Equipment Efficiency, Combustion, and Fuel Storage

As fuels burn to produce heat, they require oxygen to support the combustion. Because oxygen constitutes only about one-fifth of the volume of air, reasonably large rates of airflow are required. The air should be drawn in from outdoors at a position close to the fuel burner or (preferably) led to this location by a duct. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2 calls for 0.5 cfm/1000 Btu/h (1 L/s per 1242 W). This supply duct should be arranged to remain open at all times. Although permitted by Standard 90.2, this combustion air should *not* be drawn from the general building space. It is a waste of energy, and contemporary "tight" construction inhibits such airflow. A dangerous condition is created whenever flue stack flow is restricted.

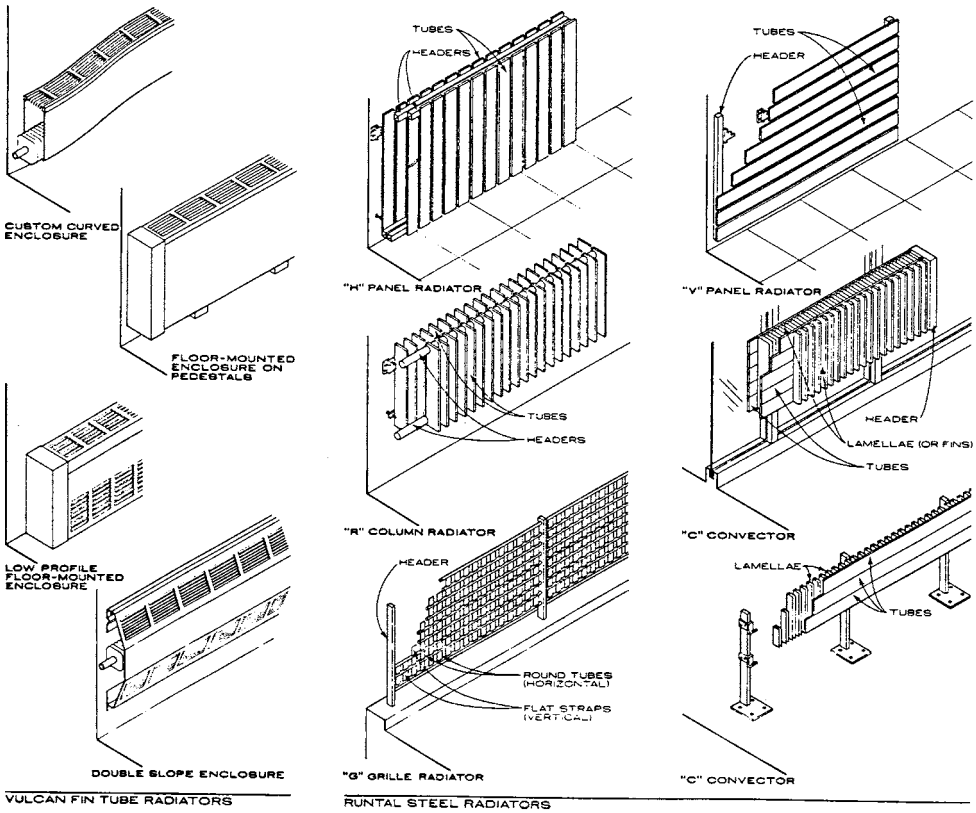


Fig. 9.24 *Hot water radiators are available in bright colors and are based on simple components. (Reprinted by permission from AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 10th ed.; © 2000 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*



(a) (b)

Fig. 9.25 *Hot water radiators fit below a window (a) at the Mayer Art Center, Phillips Exeter Academy, Exeter, New Hampshire. Amsler Hagenah MacLean, Architects. (Photo by Alex Beatty.) (b) Radiator formed by flat tubes. (Courtesy of Runtal/North American Energy Systems.)*

High-efficiency boilers and furnaces manage to remove so much heat from the exhaust gases that smaller flues at much lower temperatures result. These relatively small pipes can be vented through a wall to the exterior. Eliminating a chimney has lessened the impact on the building design of such boilers and furnaces.

For older or less-efficient fuel-burning equipment, it is important that when chimneys carry high-temperature flue gases, they be safely isolated from combustible construction to prevent the possibility of fire. The size of the flue will depend upon the boiler or furnace selected. Flue height (Fig. 9.26*a*) had traditionally been 35 to 40 ft (11 to 12 m). The function of providing a draft, for which chimney height was an important consideration, is now provided by fans. For example, oil is injected under pressure, accompanied by air, and forced in by a fan. Often a draft adjuster in the breeching (smoke pipe) that carries the flue gases to the chimney is arranged to open slightly to *reduce* the normal stack draft. If increased draft is ever required, an induced draft fan that puts suction on the flue side of the fire is usually chosen instead of greater stack height. Draft hoods above gas burners prevent downdraft from blowing out the flames.

Prefabricated chimneys (Fig. 9.26*b*) are replacing with increasing frequency the bulkier and heavier field-built masonry. They offer a number of advantages and can be easily supported on a normal structure.

The storage space to be allowed for fuel oil depends on the proximity of the supplier and the space available at the building. For oil, when more than 275 gal (1040 L) was stored, it was common practice to use an outside tank buried in the ground. This practice eventually led to leaking tanks and contaminated soil and groundwater. Thus, several factors converged to discourage the use of oil: a cleaner and more efficient alternative (natural gas), few basements in new construction where oil tanks might be stored, and unsightly outdoor aboveground oil tanks.

Both ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2 and ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 specify minimum efficiency ratings for heating and cooling equipment. Depending upon the size and the type, one of these terms will apply:

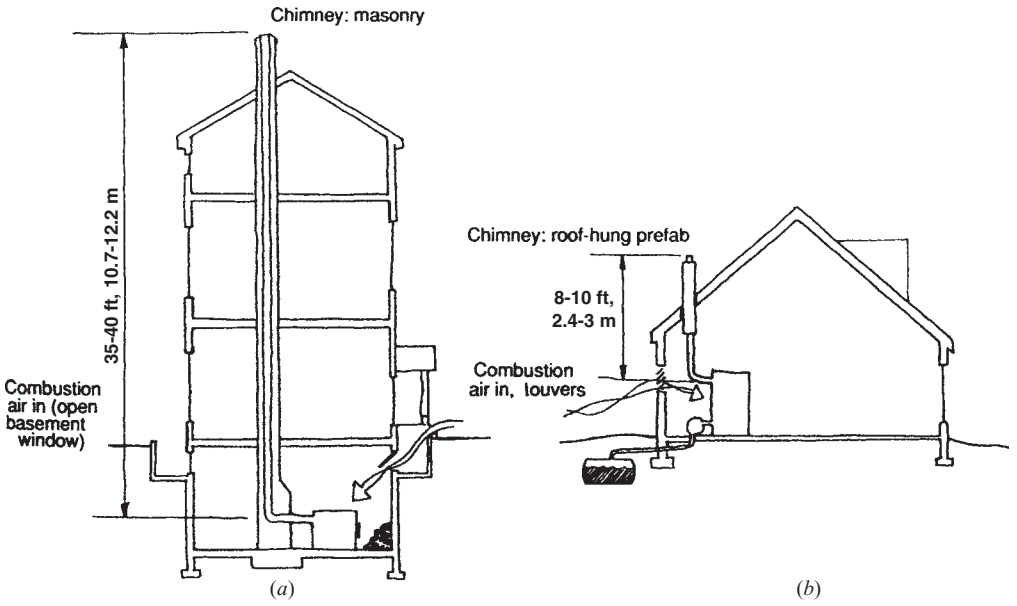


Fig. 9.26 *The need for 40-ft (12-m) chimneys (a) has been eliminated by controlled draft in burners (b) and by the use of high-efficiency heating equipment that can be directly vented to the exterior. Note the buried fuel oil tank, a potential environmental threat.*

Annual fuel utilization efficiency (AFUE) is the ratio of annual fuel output energy to annual input energy, which includes any nonseason pilot input loss.

Coefficient of performance (COP) is defined slightly differently, depending upon the task. For *cooling*, it is the ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input in consistent units, for a complete cooling system (or factory-assembled equipment), as tested under a nationally recognized standard or designated operating conditions. For *heating* (heat pump), it is the ratio of the rate of heat delivered to the rate of energy input in consistent units, for a complete heat pump system as tested under designated operating conditions. Supplemental heat is not included in this definition.

Energy efficiency ratio (EER) is the ratio of net equipment cooling capacity in Btu/h to the total rate of electric input in watts under designated operating conditions. (When consistent units are used, this ratio is the same as COP.)

Integrated part load value (IPLV) is a single-number figure of merit based on part-load EER or COP expressing part-load efficiency for air-conditioning and heat pump equipment on the basis of weighted operation at various load capacities for the equipment.

Seasonal energy efficiency ratio (SEER) is the total cooling output of an air conditioner during its normal annual usage period for cooling, in Btu/h, divided by the total electric energy input during the same period, in watt-hours.

(k) Warm Air Heating Systems

These systems began to supersede the open fireplace in about 1900. Originally, an iron furnace that stood in the middle of the basement was hand-fired by coal. Surrounding it was a sheet metal enclosure. An opening in its side near the bottom admitted cool combustion air that gravitated to the basement. A short duct from the top of the enclosure delivered the warm air by gravity to a large grille in the middle of the floor of the parlor. Other rooms, including those in upper stories, shared a little of this warmth when doors were left open.

Very gradual changes had culminated by the middle of the twentieth century in systems essentially like the ones described in Fig. 9.27. The improvements included:

Automatic firing of oil or gas
Operational and safety controls
Ducted air to and from each room

Blowers to replace gravity
Filters
Adjustable registers

By the 1960s, the basement was beginning to disappear as subslab perimeter systems became popular for basementless houses (Fig. 9.28). The heat source was located centrally and fully *within* the insulated volume of the house; heat escaping from the unit itself merely helped heat the building. In general, air was delivered from below, upward across windows, to be taken back at a central high-return grille.

When electricity was used instead of oil and gas for space heating, provisions for combustion, chimneys, and fuel storage were unnecessary. Horizontal electric furnaces began to appear in shallow attics or above furred ceilings. Air was delivered down from ceilings across windows and taken back through door grilles and open plenum space. Electric resistance furnaces use more electricity than heat pumps to do the same heating task (see again Fig. 2.6), so heat pumps have largely supplanted such furnaces.

As energy-saving design gained strength, insulated windows and well-insulated roofs, walls, and

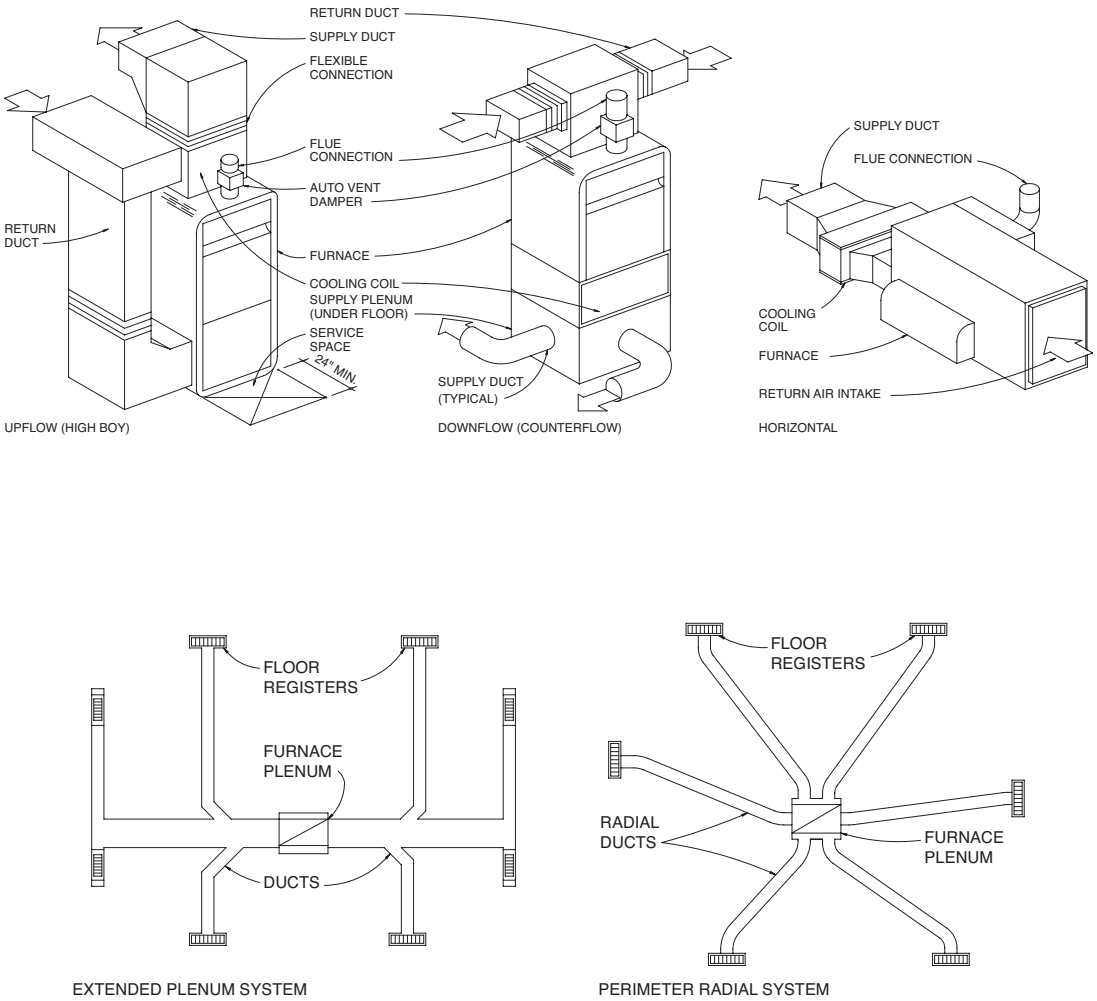


Fig. 9.27 *Typical furnace types and duct distribution arrangements. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 10th ed.; © 2000 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

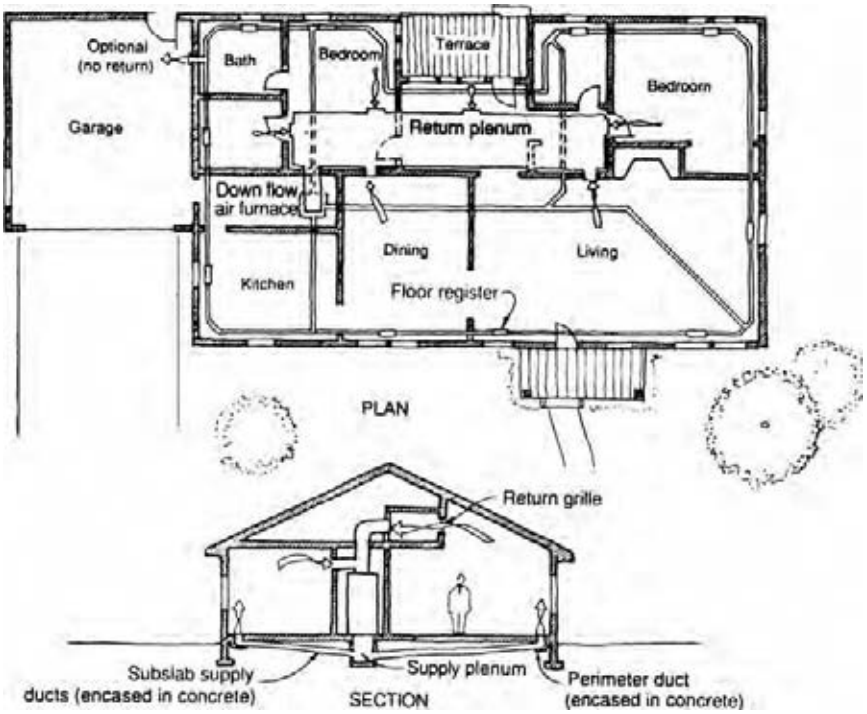


Fig. 9.28 *Forced-warm-air, perimeter loop system, adaptable for a cooling coil at the furnace. No returns are taken from the kitchen, baths, or garage.*

floors lessened the need for space heating. From a central furnace or heat pump, short ducts could deliver warm air to the inner side of each room, because warming at the insulated windows was less essential. Air returned to the unit through open grilles in doors and at the furnace or heat pump enclosure.

Comfort is one of warm air heating's advantages. The motion of air in the space helps to ensure uniform conditions and reasonably equal temperatures in all parts of a building. The building can quickly be warmed with a forced-air system. It is possible to clean both the recirculated air and the outdoor air by means of filters and other special air-cleaning equipment. Air may be circulated in nonheating seasons. Fresh air may be introduced to reduce odors and to make up the air exhausted by fans in kitchens, laundries, and bathrooms. Central cooling can be incorporated or introduced if ducts are designed originally to do so; cooling often calls for greater rates of air circulation. Humidification can be achieved by a humidifier in the air stream, and if cooling is included in the design, dehumidification can be accomplished in summer. For both heating and cooling, a common arrangement is to place the supply registers in the floor, below areas of glass. This is important for winter operation. With adequate attention to supply register placement, return grilles can be located so as to minimize return air ductwork. High return grilles pick up the warmer air for reheating at the equipment. In many systems, air circulates at all times and is warmed or cooled as required.

Planning for warm air systems begins with the attempt to locate the furnace reasonably close to the center of the building. After the system is designed, a furnace must be selected. It should be capable of burning fuel at a rate suitable to make up the building's hourly heat loss. The rate of air delivery depends on the air temperature *rise* that is planned. Finally, the motor and blower must be powerful enough to overcome the friction of air against metal in both the supply and return duct systems, as well as the friction of air flowing through the furnace, filters, registers, and grilles (see later Fig. 9.31). Minor adjustments can be made at the furnace to adapt to the demands of the system and the building.

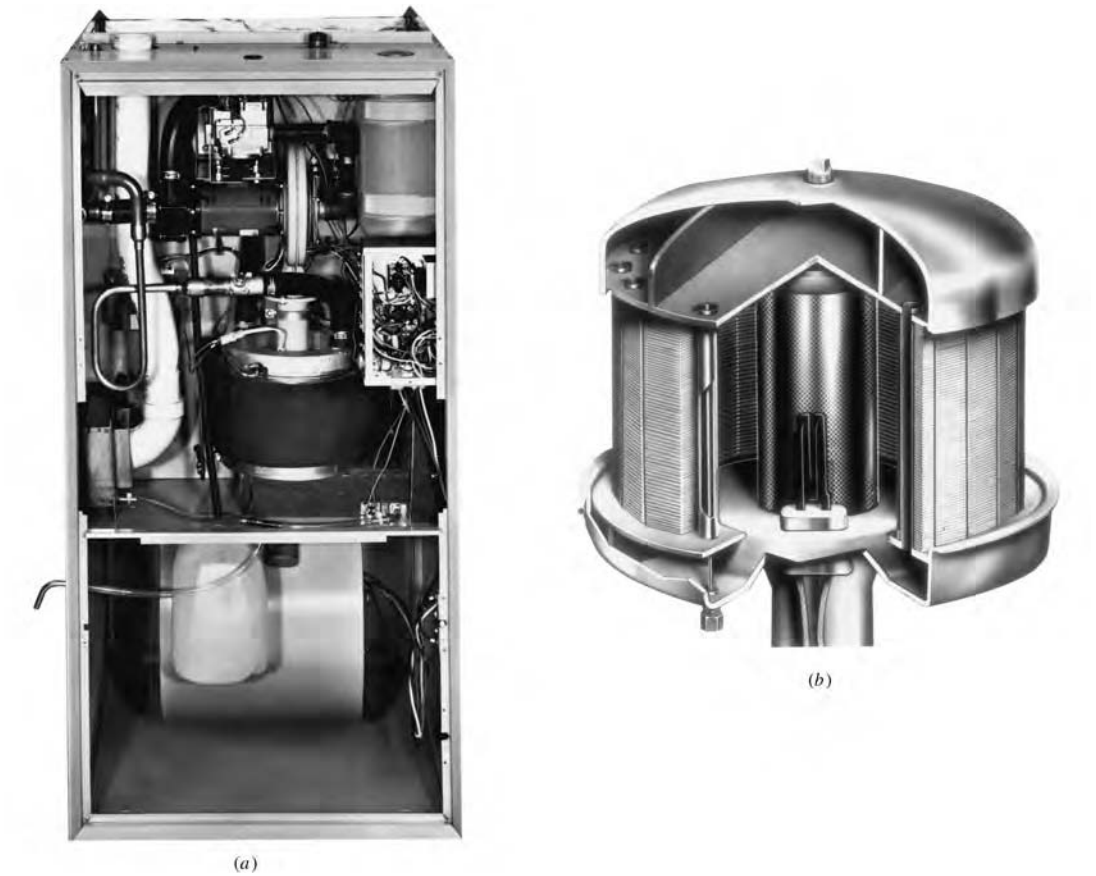


Fig. 9.29 Furnaces with greatly increased operating efficiencies are now available. (a) An Amana gas furnace. (b) The small, high-efficiency heat exchanger utilized by this furnace, which recovers heat from exhaust gases. (Courtesy of Amana Refrigeration, Inc.)

Some of the system components are discussed in the material that follows.

Furnaces have become much more efficient in recent years, thanks to forced-draft chimneys and heat exchangers, as shown in Fig. 9.29. Seasonal efficiencies of up to 95% are possible, in contrast to about 62% for older furnaces. The AFUE ratings for furnaces are based on an *isolated combustion system* that requires that all combustion and dilution air be drawn from outside.

Figure 9.30 shows the relationship between a furnace, the duct distribution tree, and some elements of the spaces they serve.

Ducts are constructed of sheet metal or glass fiber and are either round or rectangular. Ductwork will conduct noise unless these suggestions are followed:

Do not place the blower too close to a return grille.

Select quiet motors and cushioned mountings.

Do not permit connection or contact of conduits or water piping with the blower housing.

Use a flexible connection between furnace bonnet and ductwork.

Ducts also can be lined with sound-absorbing material to further discourage noise transfer, but beware of materials that encourage mold and mildew growth.

Duct sizes may be selected on the basis of permissible air velocity in the duct (Table 9.4). (See Section 10.4 for more detailed duct-sizing procedures.)

EXAMPLE 9.3 The main duct in the low-velocity, warm air system of a residence delivers 1600 cfm (755 L/s). It is located above a drywall ceiling and has a rectangular cross section. Select a size for this duct.

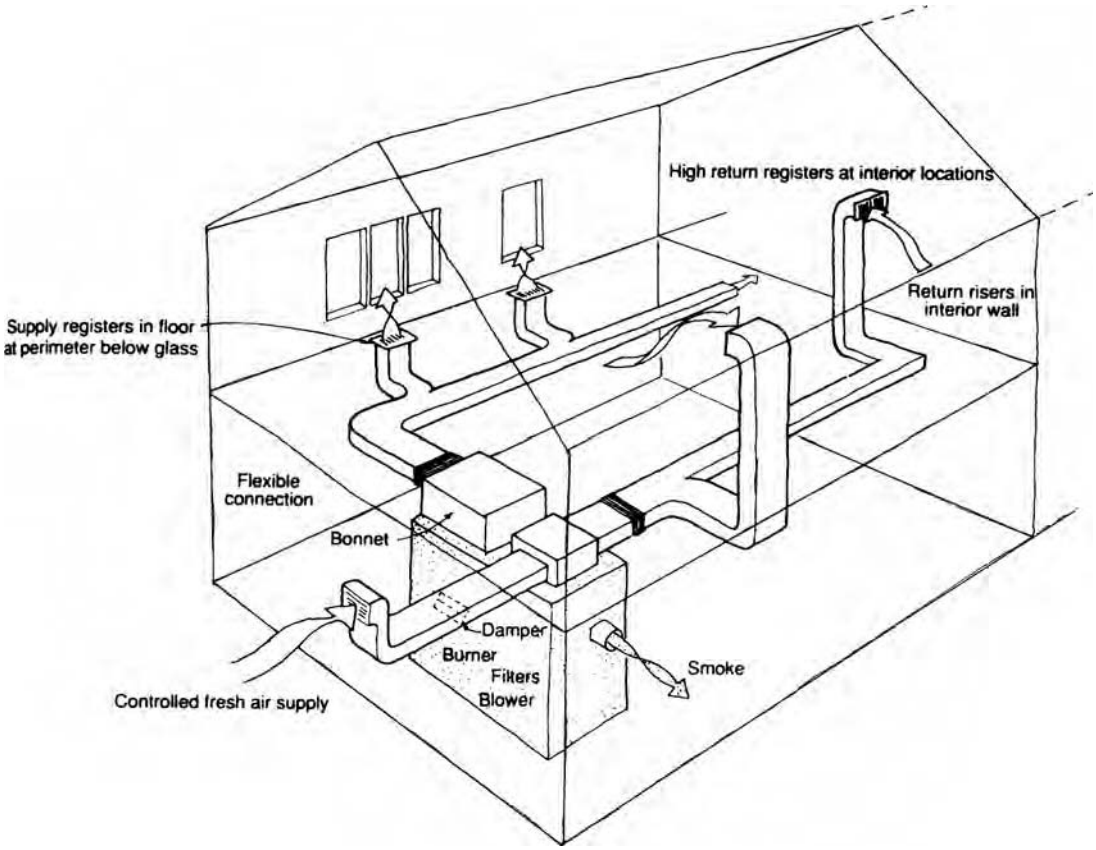


Fig. 9.30 *Conventional warm-air furnace and ducts. Low supply registers under windows and high return grilles at interior walls help ensure distribution within the spaces.*

SOLUTION

Table 9.4 indicates that for a residence, RC(N) should be between 25 and 35. Choose the quieter RC(N) = 25; then 1700 fpm would be a maximum acceptable velocity. The area of the duct in square inches would be

$$\frac{1600\ \text{cfm} \times 144\ (\text{in.}^2/\text{ft}^2)}{1700\ \text{fpm}} = 135\ \text{in.}^2$$

A 10 × 14 in. (140-in.^{2}) duct is acceptable; a larger duct would produce less noise and require less fan power to overcome friction. ■

Figure 9.31 illustrates a device that simplifies duct sizing. At a glance, it shows many duct cross-sectional configurations that will satisfy the combined requirements of friction, airflow, and air velocity.

Dampers are necessary to balance the system and adjust it to the desires of the occupants (Fig. 9.32). Splitter dampers are used where branch ducts leave the larger trunk ducts. The flow of each riser can be controlled by an adjustable damper in the basement at the foot of the riser. Labels should indicate the rooms served. Some codes require dampers of fire-resistant material actuated by fusible links to prevent the possible spread of fire through a duct system (see Fig. 24.6). Figure 9.32*d* shows how turning vanes can be used to assist airflow at sharp turns in ductwork. Such assistance reduces friction within the ductwork, thus reducing the total static head (Fig. 9.33) against which the supply fan must work.

Supply registers (Fig. 9.34) should be equipped with dampers, and their vanes should be arranged to disperse the air and to reduce its velocity as soon as possible after it enters the room. This is commonly done by providing vanes that divert the air, half to the right and half to the left. When a supply register is in the corner of a room, it is best if the vanes deflect all the air away from the corner. Return grilles are of the slotted type in walls and of the grid

TABLE 9.4 Air Velocities for Ducts and Supply/Return Openings

PART A. MAIN DUCTS[a]

		Maximum Airflow Velocity			
		fpm		*m/s*	
Duct Location	**Design RC (or NC)**	**Rectangular**	**Circular**	**Rectangular**	**Circular**
In shaft or above drywall ceiling	45	3500	5000	17.8	25.4
	35	2500	3500	12.7	17.8
	25	1700	2500	8.6	12.7
Above suspended acoustic ceiling	45	2500	4500	12.7	22.9
	35	1750	3000	8.9	15.2
	25	1200	2000	6.1	10.2
Duct within occupied space	45	2000	3900	10.2	19.8
	35	1450	2600	7.4	13.2
	25	950	1700	4.8	8.6

PART B. FACE VELOCITIES AT SUPPLY AND RETURN OPENINGS[b]

		Maximum Airflow Velocity	
Type of Opening	**Design RC (or NC)**	**fpm**	**m/s**
Supply air outlet	45	630	3.2
	40	550	2.8
	35	490	2.5
	30	430	2.2
	25	350	1.8
Return air opening	45	750	3.8
	40	670	3.4
	35	590	3.0
	30	490	2.5
	25	430	2.2

PART C. RANGES OF RC (NC)[c]

Function	**HVAC System Noise in Unoccupied Spaces, RC (or NC)**
Residential, private	25–35
Hotels, individual rooms, meeting rooms	25–35
Lobbies, corridors, service areas	35–45
Office buildings, private offices, conference rooms	25–35
Teleconference rooms	25 (max.)
Open-plan offices	30–40
Lobbies, circulation	40–45
Hospitals and clinics, private rooms, operating rooms	25–35
Wards, corridors, public spaces	30–40
Performing arts, drama theaters, music teaching rooms	25 (max.)
Music practice rooms	35 (max.)
Churches, mosques, synagogues	25–35
Schools, lecture halls	35 (max.)
Classrooms over 750 ft^2 (70 m^2)	35 (max.)
Classrooms up to 750 ft^2 (70 m^2)	40 (max.)
Libraries	30–40
Laboratories (with fume hoods), group teaching	35–45
Research, telephone use, speech communication	40–50
Testing/research, minimal speech communication	45–55
Courtrooms, unamplified speech	25–35
Amplified speech	30–40
Sports indoors, school gymnasiums and pools	40–50
Large capacity, with amplified speech	45–55

Source: 1995 *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications,* copyright © by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.

[a]Branch duct velocities should be about 80% of those listed, whereas velocities in final runouts to outlets should be 50% or less. Elbows and other fittings can increase noise substantially, so airflows should be reduced accordingly.

[b]These are "free" opening velocities. Diffusers and grilles can increase sound levels, in which case these velocities should be reduced accordingly.

[c]See also Table 19.8 for recommended NC levels.

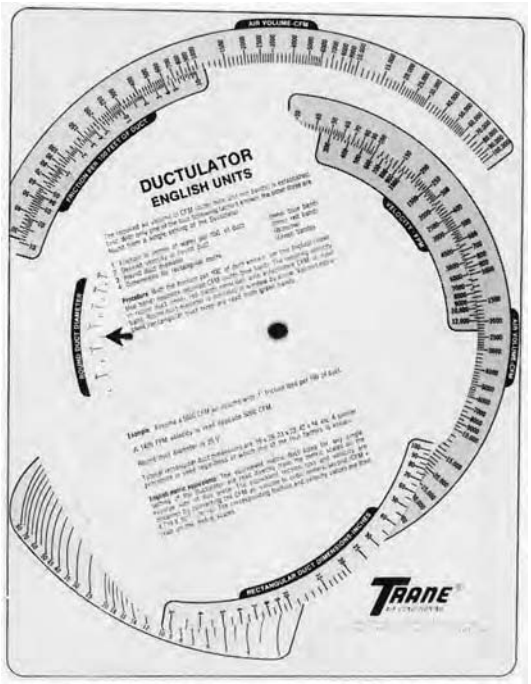


Fig. 9.31 *The Ductulator is a duct-sizing device available from the Trane Company. The designer selects any two factors (e.g., friction and airflow volume), and the device yields all the other factors (e.g., air velocity, diameter of the round duct required, or combinations of rectangular-duct cross sections required).*

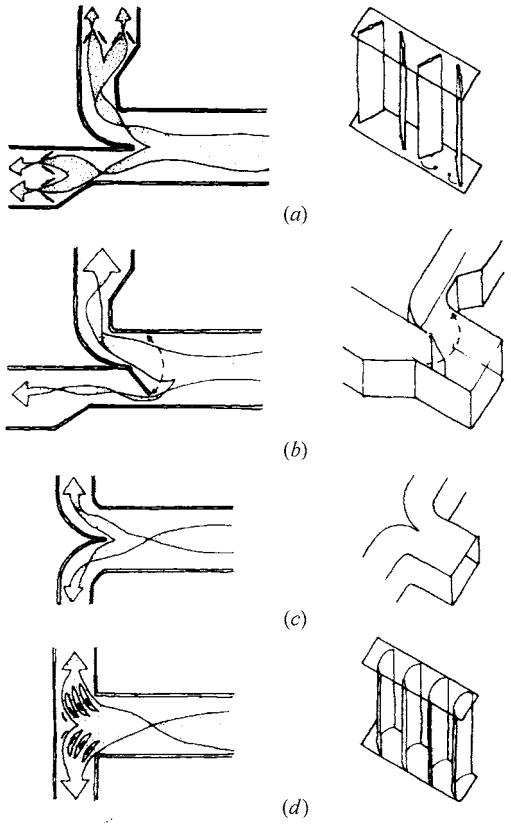


Fig. 9.32 *Air controls in ducts. (a) Air adjustment by opposed-blade dampers. (b) Air adjustment by a splitter damper. (c) Conventional turns in ducts. (d) Right-angle turns with turning vanes—a more compact method.*

type in floors. All registers and grills should be made tight at the duct connection. See Tables 9.4 and 9.5 for selection of registers based on output and recommended face velocity.

Controls: The burner is started and stopped by a thermostat, which is usually placed in or near the living room at a thermally stable location that is protected from cold drafts, direct sunlight, and the warming effects of nearby warm air registers. A cut-in temperature of between 80° and 95°F (27° and 35°C) is selected for the fan switch in the furnace bonnet. After the burner starts, the fan switch turns on the blower when the furnace air reaches the selected cut-in temperature. Burner and blower then continue to run while heat is needed. When the burner turns off, the blower continues to run until the temperature in the furnace drops to a level a little below the cut-in temperature of the fan switch. If, during operation, the temperature unexpectedly exceeds 200°F (93°C), a high-limit switch turns off the burner in the interest of comfort and safety. As in all automatically fired heating units, a stack temperature control in the breeching cuts off the fuel if ignition fails.

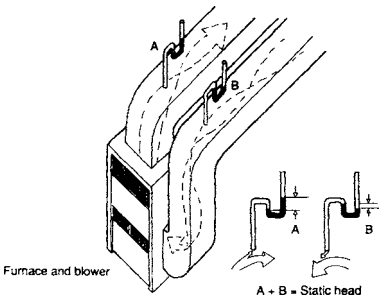


Fig. 9.33 *The static head is the pressure, measured in inches of water (or pascals), available to overcome friction in the entire system.*

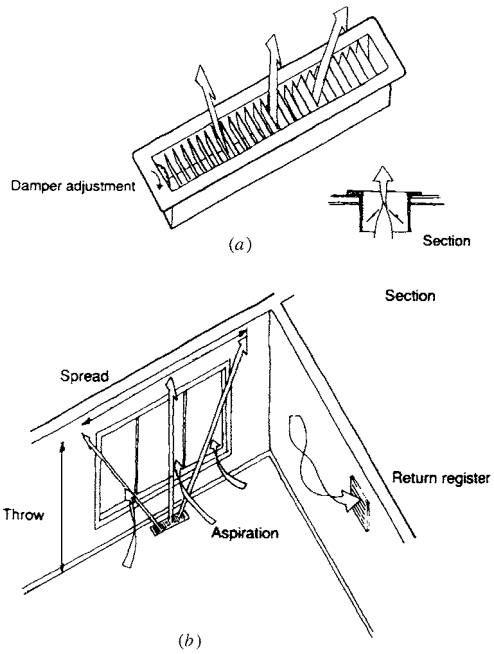


Fig. 9.34 *The typical floor register (diffuser) in its 2¼-in. × 12-in. (60-mm × 300-mm) size (a). It has diverting vanes for spread and an adjustable damper. See Table 9.5 for characteristics. (b) Spread and throw; cooler room air is induced by aspiration to join the stream of warm air, resulting in a bland, pleasant air stream that crosses the room.*

9.8 HEATING/COOLING SYSTEMS

Mechanical cooling is a much more recent development than heating; in its early days, it was widely adopted as a retrofit to existing heating systems. The first two approaches to mechanical cooling that follow reflect this early attitude.

(a) Cooling Coils Added to Warm Air Furnaces

This common system utilizes a rather simple arrangement of the refrigeration cycle. Figure 9.1 illustrated the circuit of a refrigerant in compression, condensing, and evaporation, in which the condenser heat is carried away by water and the evaporation process draws heat out of water in another circuit to produce *chilled* water. Thus, the heat is *moved* to a heat-rejection location outdoors. Figure 9.35 is a schematic diagram of an air-to-air (in contrast to a water-to-water) refrigeration device. Air instead of water can be used to cool the condenser, and indoor air can be cooled directly by being passed over the evaporator coil in which the refrigerant is expanding from a liquid to a gas. Thus, heat is moved from the indoor air to the outdoor air by the step-up action or heat-pumping nature of the refrigeration cycle. When indoor air is cooled directly in this manner, by the expanding

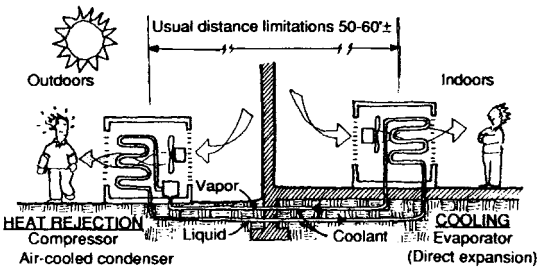
TABLE 9.5 Typical Residential Forced-Air Register, 2¼ × 12 in. (60 × 300 mm)

PART A. I-P UNITS								
Heating (Btu/h)	3,045	4,565	6,090	7610	9,515	11,415	13,320	15,220
Cooling (Btu/h)	855	1,280	1,710	2,135	2,670	3,200	3,735	4,270
cfm	40	60	80	100	125	150	175	200
Vertical throw (ft)	3	4	5	6	8	10	12	14
Vertical spread (ft)	6	8	10	11	14	17	22	25
Face velocity (fpm)	280	420	565	705	880	1,050	1,230	1,400
PART B. SI UNITS								
Heating (W)	890	1,340	1,780	2,230	2,790	3,340	3,900	4,460
Cooling (W)	250	375	500	625	780	940	1,090	1,250
L/s	19	28	38	48	59	71	83	95
Vertical throw (m)	0.9	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.4	3.0	3.7	4.3
Vertical spread (m)	1.8	2.4	3.0	3.4	4.3	5.2	6.7	7.6
Face velocity (m/s)	1.4	2.1	2.9	3.6	4.5	5.3	6.2	7.1

Source: Lima Register Company.
SI conversions by the authors.

refrigerant, the process is usually known as *direct expansion*. The cooling coils therefore are often referred to as *DX coils*. Figure 9.36 shows another popular arrangement in which the airflow through the furnace and coils is horizontal.

Meanwhile, the compressor–condenser unit is placed outdoors on a concrete slab or on the roof. The unit creates a noisy, hot microclimate in summer—an influence on both site and building planning.



(*a*)

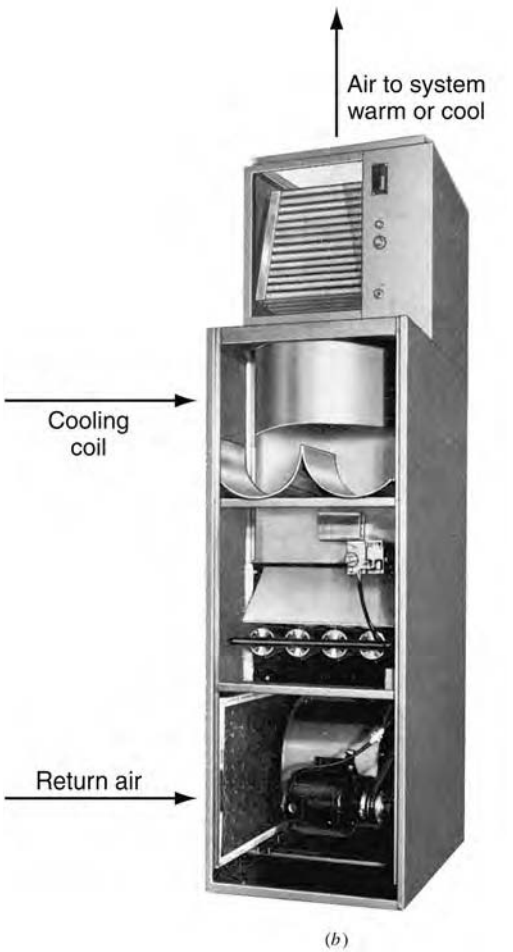
(b) Hydronic and Coils

This system combines a perimeter hot water heating system with an overhead air-handling system. A boiler with a tankless coil supplies domestic hot water. The boiler's heat output supplies both the perimeter loop and a coil in the air-handling unit of the duct system. The total heating load is met by the combination of radiant heat generated by the perimeter loop and heated air from the overhead air-handling system.

As installed in the Levittown standardized houses, the perimeter loop consists only of ½- or ¾-in. (13- or 19-mm) tubing embedded 4 in. (100 mm) below the top of the floor slab to overcome the cold slab effect. It has the capacity to maintain a 35F° (19C°) differential between the inside and outside temperatures at the perimeter.

The air-handling unit and overhead duct system, incorporating supply outlets in each room and central return, is used throughout the year. Its cooling coil is connected to an adjacent outdoor condensing unit (Fig. 9.37).

Because the heating load is shared by the slab loop and by warm air, the winter indoor temperature remains fairly constant. The air can be distributed at no more than about 120°F (49°C), or 20F° (11C°) less than with a conventionally ducted system.



(*b*)

Fig. 9.35 *The compressive refrigeration cycle (a) used in an exterior air-cooled heat-rejection unit and an interior cooling coil suitable for placement in a central airstream. (b) Cooling/heating air-handling unit. Cutaway view shows an upflow air pattern. At the lower left is the return air intake and a filter; adjacent are the fan and motor. Above these components are the gas-burning elements. At the top is the direct-expansion cooling coil. (Courtesy of American Furnace Division, Singer Company.)*

(c) Air-Air Heat Pumps

These use the refrigeration cycle to both heat *and* cool, thus eliminating the distinction between furnace (or boiler) and DX cooling coils. As shown in Fig. 9.38, heat is "pumped" from indoors to outdoors in summer (Fig. 9.38*a*) and from outdoors to indoors in winter (Fig. 9.38*b*). Heat pumps can transfer heat air-air, air-water, and water-water. The most common application for smaller buildings is the air-air heat pump, shown in Figs. 9.38 and 9.39.

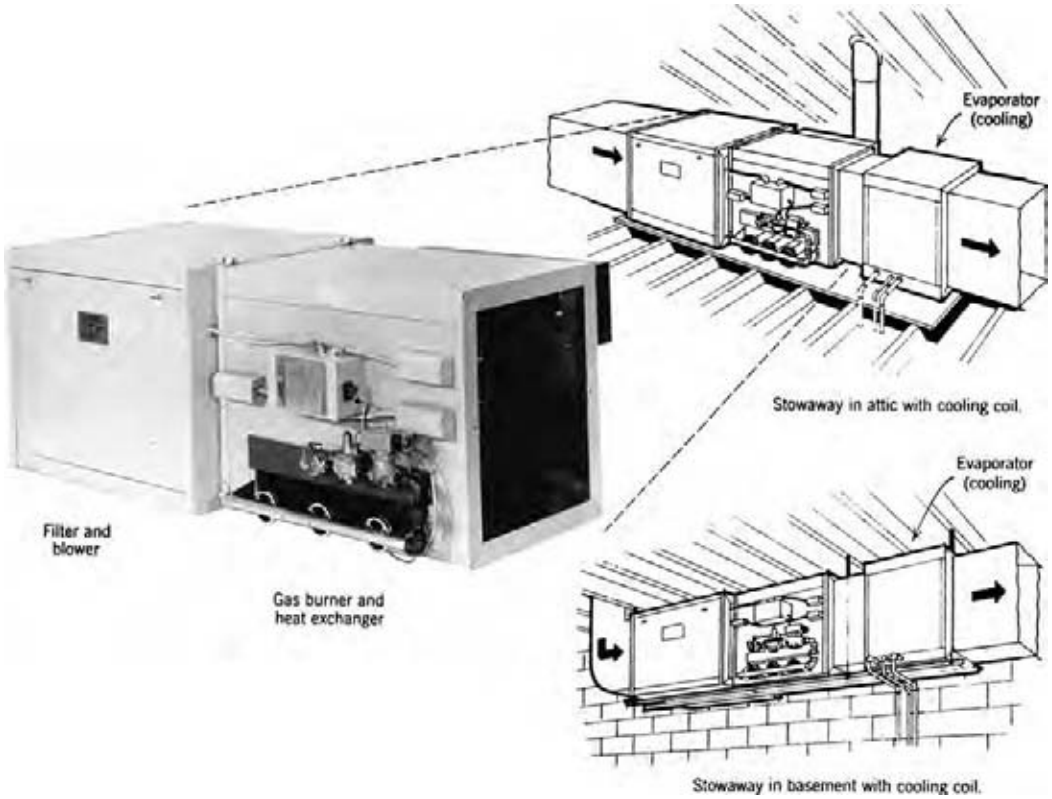


Fig. 9.36 *Compact horizontal flow combinations for forced-air heating and cooling. The small pipe between the two refrigerant pipes of the cooling unit is a water drain that carries away the condensed moisture from the recirculated and outdoor air. The heating unit requires gas and flue or exhaust gas connections. Refrigerant pipes connect to the outdoor compressor-condenser unit.*

In a *single-package* (also called *unitary*) system (Fig. 9.39*a*), only one piece of equipment is involved. A single-package air-air heat pump moves heat between an outdoor air stream and an indoor air stream; although kept separate, both streams pass through a *single* outdoor unit. A system with both outside and inside components is called a *split* system (Fig. 9.39*b*). A split-system air-air heat pump moves heat via a refrigerant loop between the outdoor unit (which also contains the compressor), through which outdoor air passes, and the indoor unit (which usually contains backup heating coils) for the treatment and circulation of indoor air.

Single-package heat pumps are commonly located on roofs, where they have unlimited access to outdoor air, and where their noise is less likely to annoy—provided they are sufficiently isolated from the building's structure. This approach is shown in the daylighted, passively solar-heated Mount Airy, North Carolina, library (Fig. 9.40). This 14,000-ft^2 (1300-m^2) building also has a solar preheating system for its hot water. The five air-air heat pumps utilize economizer cycles (up to 100% outside air when temperatures are favorable). The average annual building energy consumption has been monitored at about 17,000 Btu/ft^2 (53,635 W/m^2)—approximately one-third of nearby similar-function buildings.

Individual air-air heat pump units are especially common in building types with all-perimeter spaces with varying orientations and numerous thermal zones. Motels are a prime example. In Fig. 9.41, separate air-air heat pumps serve each motel room; at best, their constant noise helps mask the intermittent sounds from the adjacent parking lot/circulation space. Opportunities

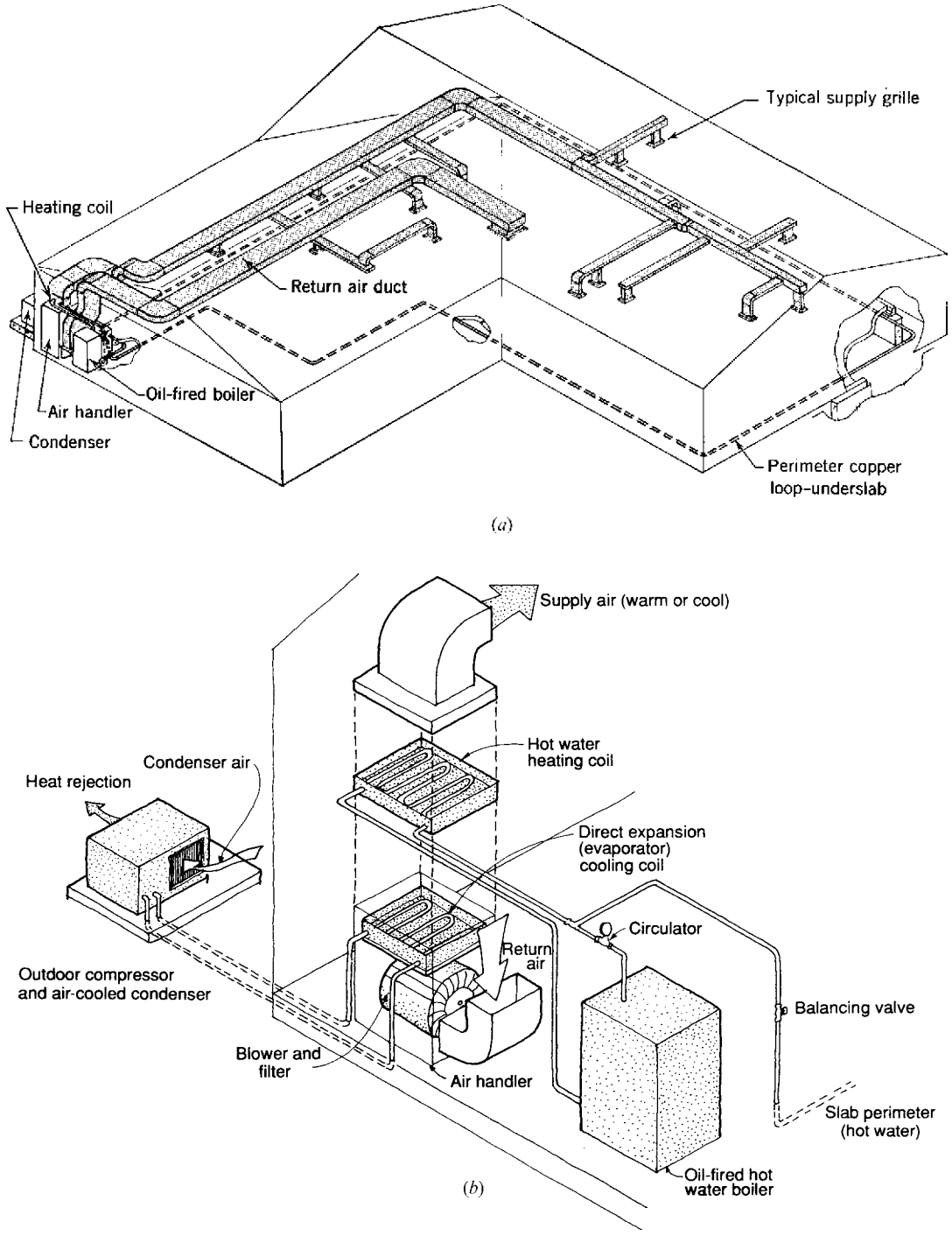


Fig. 9.37 *Combination hydronic and forced-air system (a) using a perimeter hot water loop in the floor slab and an overhead air supply. (Courtesy of Levitt and Sons. Design by mechanical engineer John Liebl.) (b) Close-up of the heating and cooling components. The boiler heats both the slab perimeter and the coils in the airstream.*

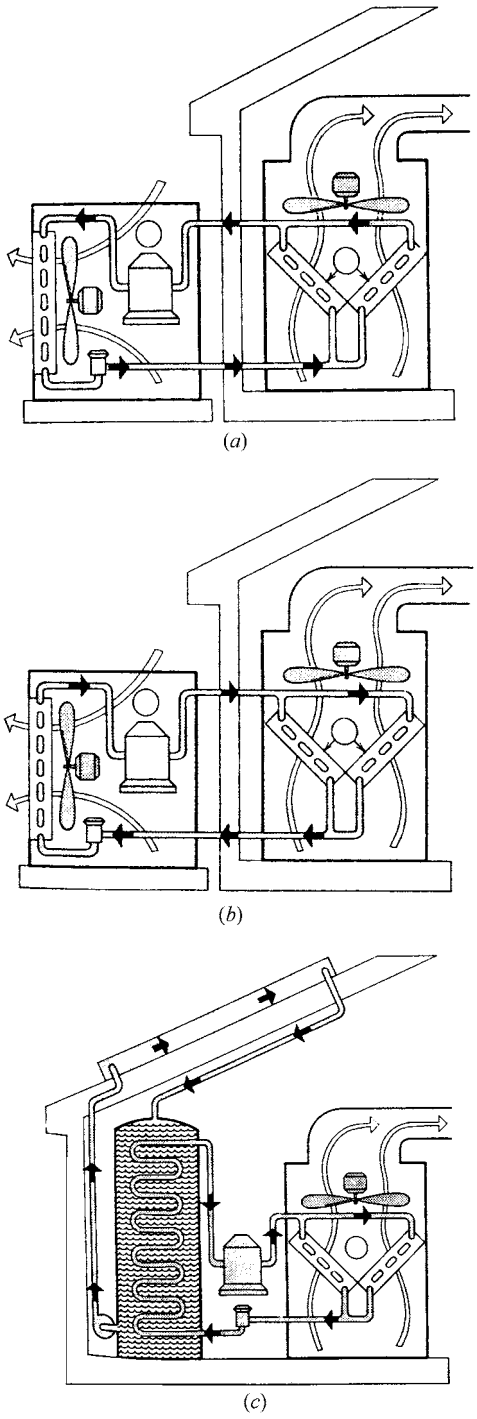


Fig. 9.38 *Heat pump applications of the compressive refrigeration cycle. The simple air-air heat pump provides cooled air (a) or heated air (b). Teamed with a solar collector and water storage tank (c), the heat pump can yield usefully warm temperatures in the airstream while increasing the collector efficiency by lowering the storage tank temperature. (Reprinted with permission from* Popular Science*; © 1978 by Times Mirror Magazines, Inc.)*

for heat exchange between these heat pumps are scarce; if a central water loop (see Section 9.8e) were substituted for outdoor air as the heat source/sink, energy costs would go down, although the first cost would rise.

Split systems are popular because the noise of the compressor and the outdoor air fan are removed from the interior, and the size of the indoor unit can be quite small. This indoor element is often mounted either high on the wall or on the ceiling. Such an indoor unit is available with automatically changing louvers; when it is in the cooling mode, it delivers cool air along the ceiling, from where it sinks to the level of occupancy; cold air blowing directly on people is avoided. In the heating mode, the louvers shift to direct hot air steeply downward. The greater the distance between the indoor and outdoor units, the greater the strain on the refrigerant loop.

Heat pumps have a high initial cost, and they have in the past shown a relatively high frequency of compressor failure. Noise from the compressor and the outdoor air fan may affect site planning, especially for residences.

One of the primary attractions of the heat pump is that in its heating mode it can deliver more energy than it consumes (electrically). Although energy (usually electricity) is required to run the cycle, the pump draws "free" heat from a source such as outdoor air. The total heat delivered to the building is more than the heat (electricity) required to run the cycle. The measure of this heat advantage is called the *coefficient of performance* (COP), defined as

$$\text{COP} = \frac{\text{heat delivered to space}}{\text{necessary work input}}$$

(See the earlier discussion in Section 9.7j.)

In typical space-heating applications, a seasonal COP of 2 or more is common in mild-winter areas. Because the COP changes with outdoor conditions and indoor load, a *seasonal energy efficiency ratio* (SEER) rating system has been established. SEER measures the number of Btu/h removed for each watt of energy input, averaged over the cooling season. The higher the SEER, the more efficient the heat pump's seasonal performance. SEER ranges are roughly as low as 5 and as high as 15. The heating cycle of the heat pump has a similar rating system, called the *heating seasonal performance factor* (HSPF).

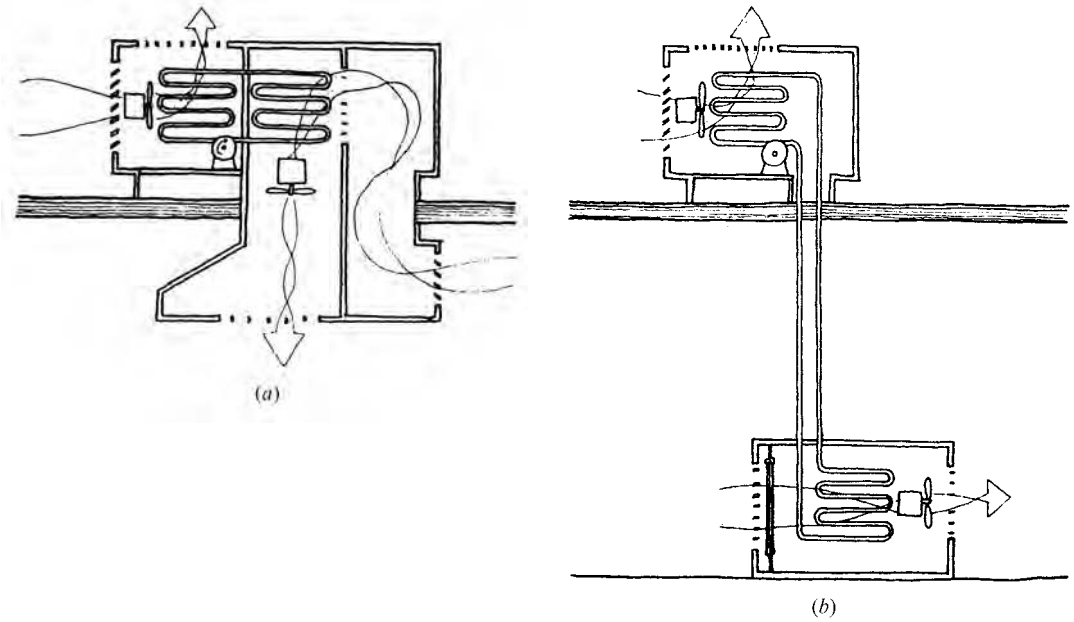


Fig. 9.39 *The package unit (a) and the split system (b) are popular applications of the air-air heat pump. The package unit and the outdoor unit of the split system are also typically placed outside walls, as well as on roofs, as shown here.*

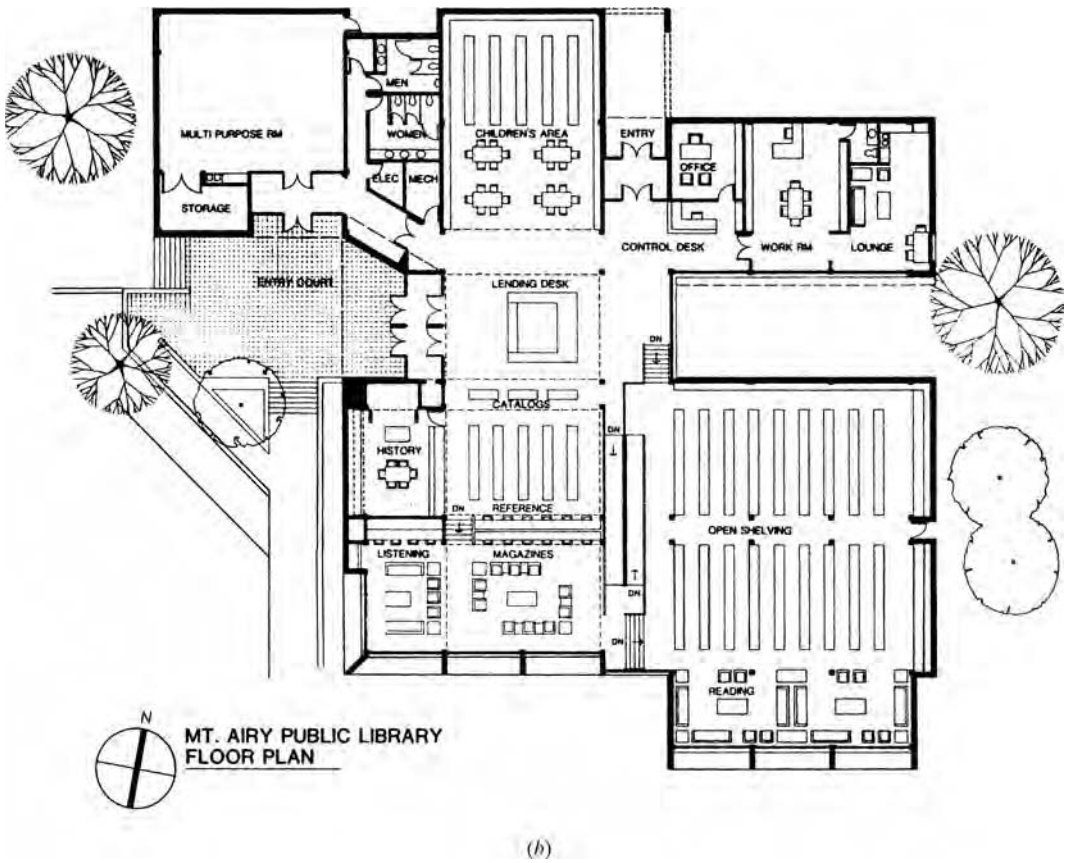
As might be expected from a device that draws heat from winter outdoor air, there are limitations to its heating performance. As outdoor temperatures approach 32°F (0°C), the COP drops and the outdoor coil tends to ice over. Built-in electric resistance coils must then be used; this, of course, ends the efficiency advantage that made the heat pump attractive. See Fig. 9.42 for a demonstration of falling performance with falling temperatures. Because of this characteristic, air-air heat pumps are less frequently used in cold-winter climates. They also generally make questionable backup choices for passively solar-heated buildings in colder climates, because backup sources are typically needed only in the coldest weather.

Heat pumps that pump heat from *water* sources, such as wells or solar-heated storage tanks, or from the *ground*, are much more dependable cold weather performers. Water-air heat pumps (shown in Fig. 9.38*c*) and solar collectors make an effective team. As these rather high-COP heat pumps remove heat from the solar storage tank (to deliver it to the indoor air), the resulting lower temperature of the solar-heated water *increases* the solar collector's performance. (See Fig. 21.36 for solar collector efficiencies.) Assume that on a cold, partly sunny day, the collector being fed water from the tank at 90°F is able to raise its temperature by 4°F to 94°F (from 32°C to 35°C). This improvement is slight because of the rather high heat loss that a 94°F collector experiences when surrounded by cold air. If, however, the collector were to be fed 59°F (15°C) water, its heat loss would be greatly reduced. The heat that the collector *does not* lose to the cold air can be invested in the 59°F water, which will thus leave at a considerably higher temperature than 59°F + 4 = 63°F. Thus, more solar energy is collected, and more is available for transfer to the building via the heat pump. The heat pump, in turn, can heat the 59°F tank water to much higher temperatures to serve the coils in the air-handling unit.

Although most of today's heat pumps utilize electricity to drive the compressive refrigeration cycle, there are also absorption cycle heat pumps that utilize natural gas. The *GAX heat pump* (Fig. 9.43) not only uses this lower-grade resource for heating and cooling, it avoids CFCs and HCFCs and functions at outdoor temperatures much lower than those of the electric air-air heat pump. Eventually, solar energy can be used to drive the absorption cycle. Solar-driven refrigeration is a particularly



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 9.40 *Mount Airy Library, Mount Airy, North Carolina. Mazria/Schiff & Associates, Architects. (a) View from the southwest. (Photo by Gordon H. Schenck, Jr.) (b) Plan. (c, d) North-south sections relate sunlight and natural heat flow. Individual package heat pumps are set on the flat-roof sections.*

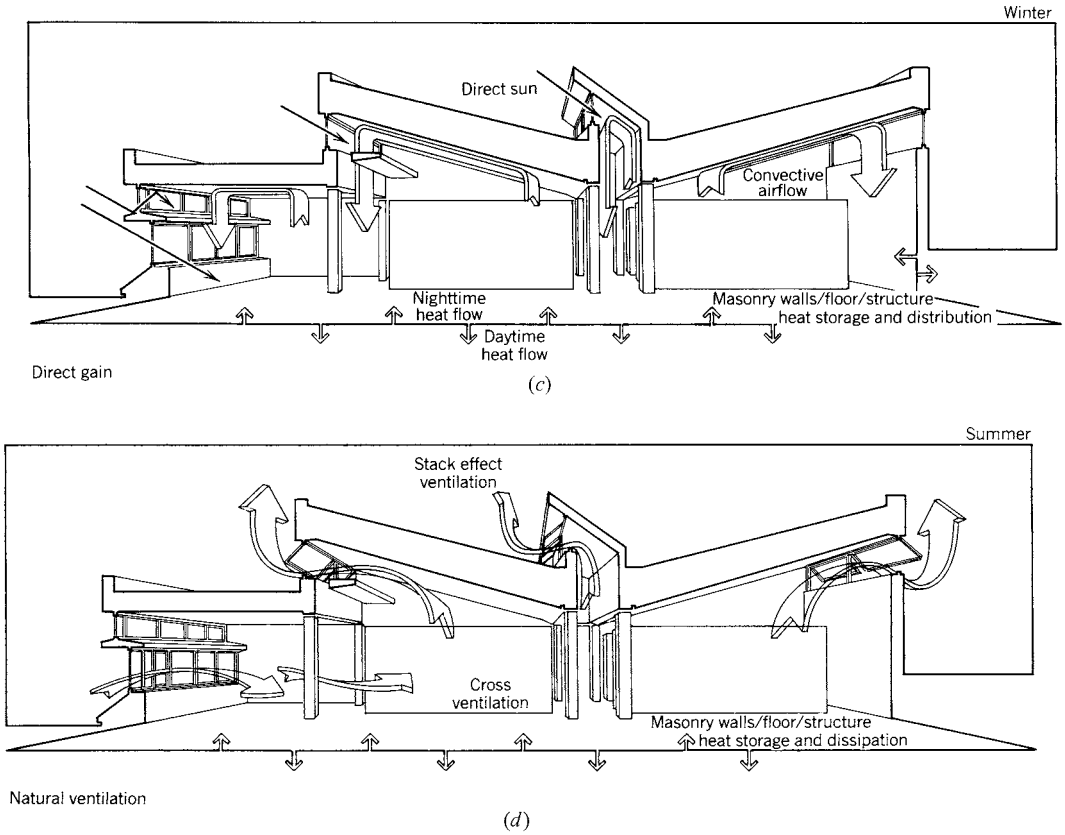


Fig. 9.40 *(continued)*

elegant blend of energy source and task—the hotter the sun, the higher the cooling capacity.

(d) Ground Source Heat Pumps

Ground-air heat pumps, also called *geothermal heat pumps* or *geoexchange systems*, are found in several configurations throughout North America. They often provide domestic hot water in addition to heating and cooling. An environmentally safe refrigerant is circulated through a loop installed underground (or in a pond or lake), taking heat from the soil in winter and discharging heat to the soil in summer. The loop is often high-density polyethylene (HDPE). Below the surface, soil temperatures are more stable year-round than outdoor air temperatures, thus raising the COP relative to that of air-air heat pumps. Annual well-water (deep soil) temperatures were shown in Fig. 8.56. This system is almost completely out of sight, with no maintenance or weathering of exterior equipment. Noise is confined to the compressor in a small indoor mechanical room.

Some common configurations are shown in Fig. 9.44. In the closed systems (*a*–*c*) the flow rate is typically 2 to 3 gpm/ton of refrigeration (0.3 to 0.5 mL/J), with lower flows in the open loop systems.

The horizontal ground source closed loop heat pump (Fig. 9.44*a*) requires trenches 3 to 6 ft (1 to 2 m) deep; typically, 400 to 650 ft (120 to 200 m) of pipe are installed per ton (12,000 Btu/h or 3.5 kW) of heating and cooling capacity. To squeeze more pipe length into a trench, a "slinky" coiled pipe is sometimes used. The trenches can be placed below parking lots or lawns and gardens.

The vertical ground source closed loop heat pump (Fig. 9.44*b*) is particularly applicable where the site area is limited. Vertical holes are bored from

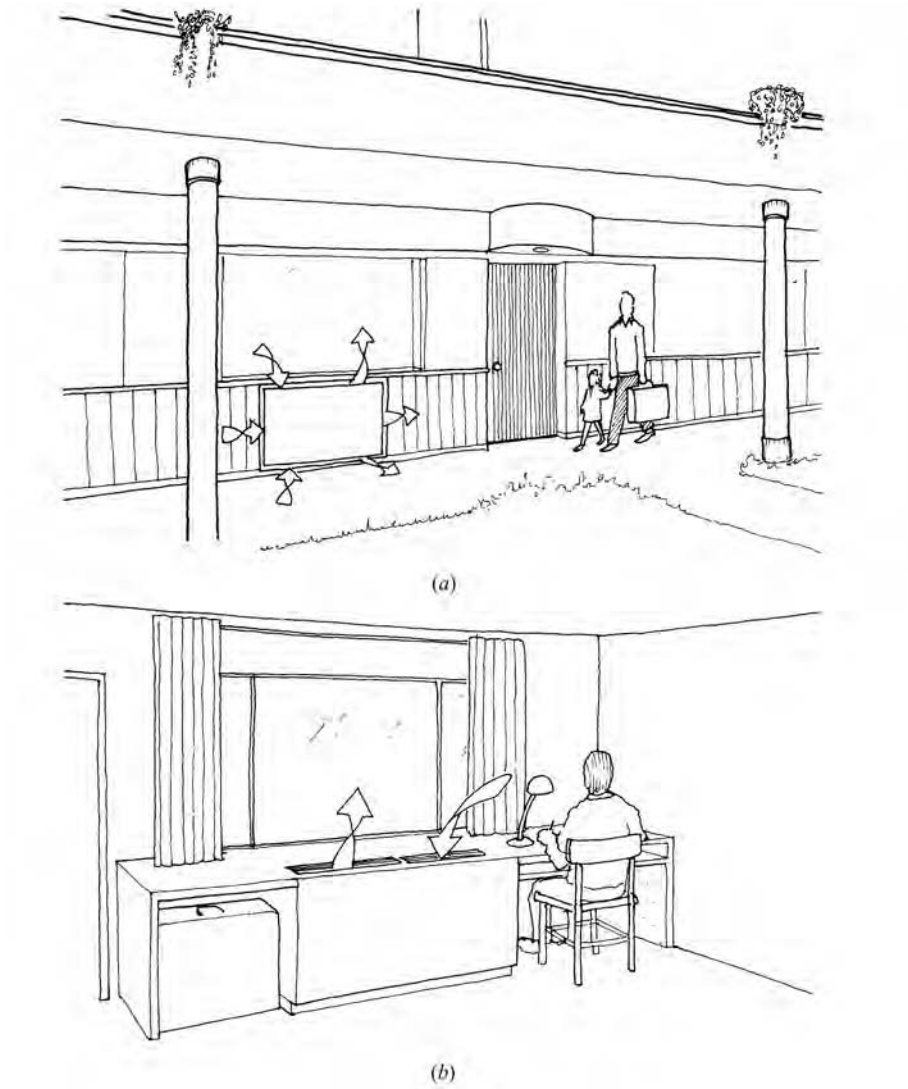


Fig. 9.41 *Air-air heat pumps serve a motel. (a) A panel set just forward of the exterior wall allows the heat pump to inhale and exhale outdoor air around the panel edges. In summer it discharges warm air; in winter, cool air. (b) Interior cabinet contains the heat pump. Room air is taken in as shown, then discharged (after cooling or heating) upward across the glass surface—the likely point of maximum heat loss or gain.*

150 to 450 ft (46 to 137 m) deep. Each hole contains a single full-depth loop and is backfilled (or grouted) after the loop is installed. Because the summer temperature is much lower at greater depths, less pipe length is required than for horizontal loops. The distance between boreholes varies from a minimum of 15 ft (4.6 m) with high water table and low building cooling loads to as much as 25 ft (7.6 m) for buildings with high cooling loads. A minimum distance of 20 ft (6 m) is usually recommended.

The pond or lake closed loop heat pump (Fig. 9.44*c*) is sometimes used when a building is close to an adequately large body of water. The loop is submerged, and the surrounding water conducts heat far more rapidly than does soil. The resulting shorter length required, and the low cost of placing the coils in water, can make this attractive. However, the water level in the pond should never drop below a minimum of 8 ft (2.5 m) and must have sufficient surface area for heat exchange.

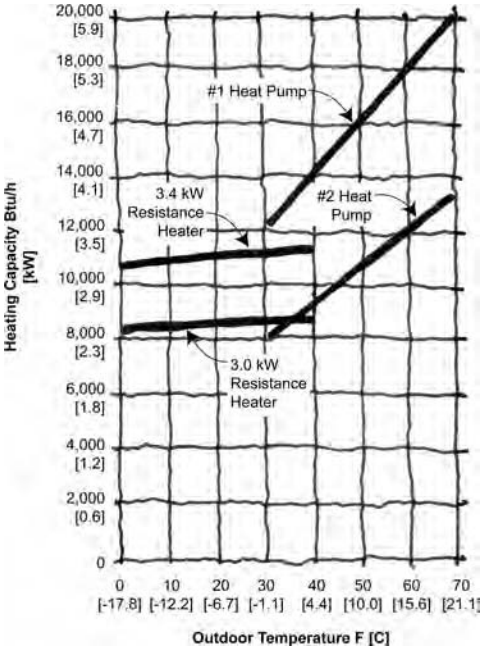


Fig. 9.42 *Typical air-air heat pump operating characteristics; heat delivery falls with falling outdoor temperature. (Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

The groundwater-source open loop heat pump ("pump and dump") is suitable only where groundwater is plentiful, and may be prohibited by local codes and environmental regulators. One variant of this system (Fig. 9.44*d*) takes water from one well, through a heat exchanger within the building, then discharges it to a second well. Another variant (Fig. 9.44*e*) takes water from the bottom and discharges back into the top of the same (standing) well, typically 6 in. (150 mm) in diameter and as deep as 1500 ft (460 m).

The Wildlife Center of Virginia at Waynesboro is a wildlife teaching-research hospital. Its 5700-ft^2 (530-m^2) floor area is served by four geothermal heat pumps (two at 4 tons, two at 5 tons) connected to 11,350 ft (3460 m) of underground horizontal pipe, laid in a "slinky" configuration and thus fitting within about 2500 ft (760 m) of trench. The trench was dug around existing trees and placed under future roadways in its forest setting. Energy simulations estimate that annual heating, cooling, and hot water will use about 35,000 kWh. Had air-air heat pumps and an electric water heater been used instead, the estimate is 66,000 kWh, a 47% yearly savings advantage for the geothermal system.

Ground source heat pumps are often used in retrofits, especially in schools where site areas are plentiful, or historic structures where small-size interior mechanical equipment is highly desirable.

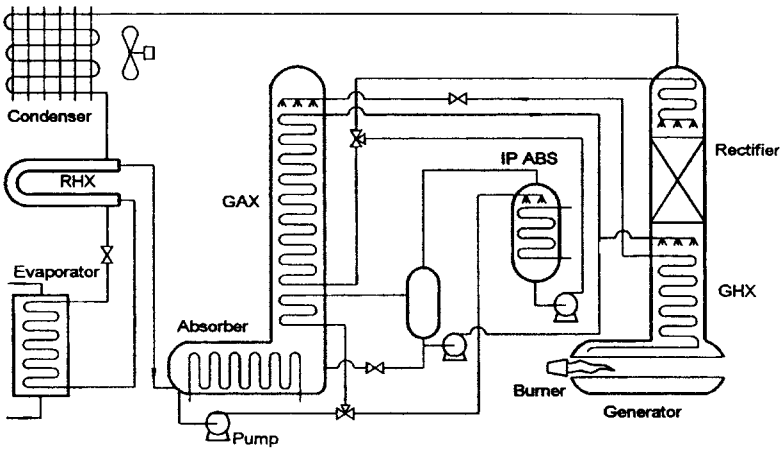


Fig. 9.43 *An air-cooled advanced GAX (generator-absorber heat exchange) heat pump uses aqua ammonia as the absorbent and is operational down to –10°F (–23°C). The target cooling COP is 0.95; heating COP is 1.55. Designed for light commercial applications, it ranges from 5 to 25 tons capacity. (RHX = refrigerant heat exchanger; IP ABS = intermediate pressure absorber.) (Courtesy of Energy Concepts Company, Annapolis, MD.)*

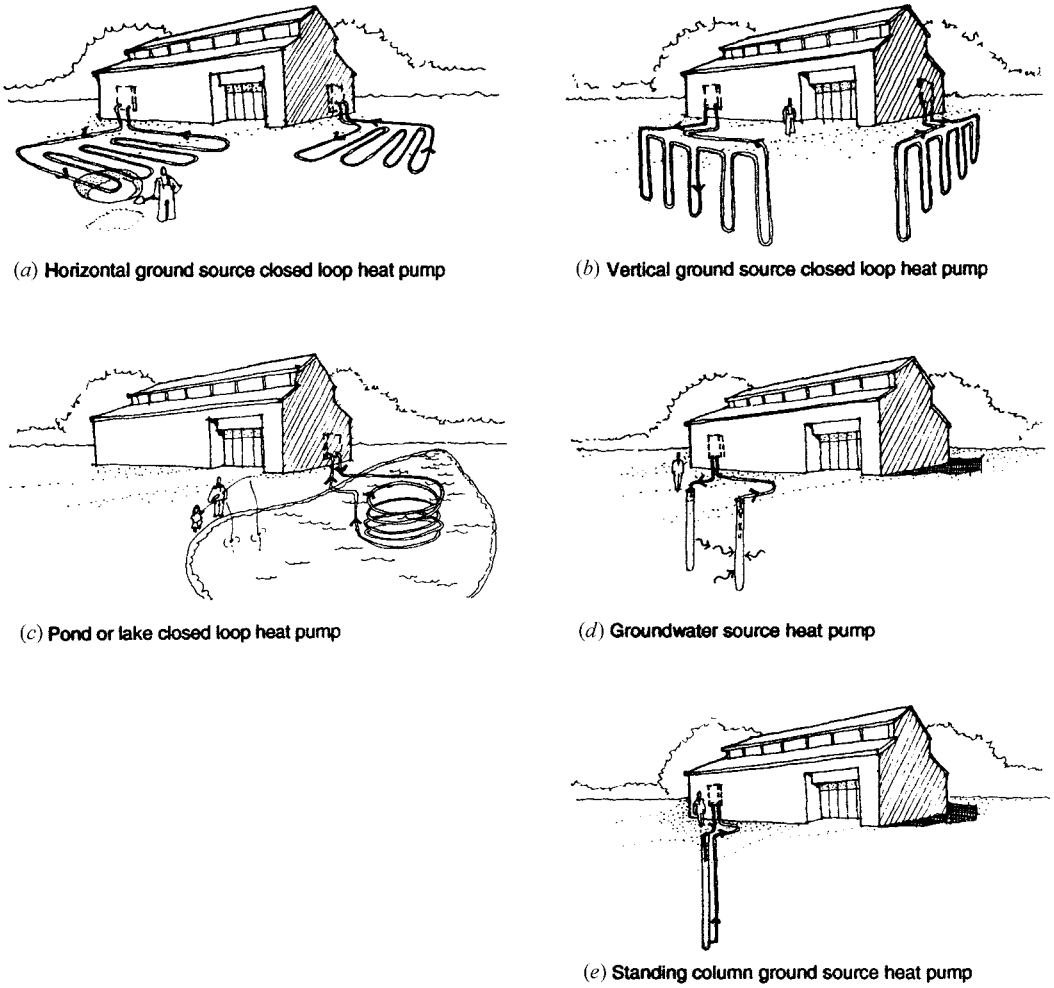


Fig. 9.44 *Configurations of ground source heat pumps. (a) Horizontal ground source closed loop heat pump laid in trenches. (b) Vertical ground source closed loop heat pump placed in boreholes. (c) Pond or lake closed loop heat pump. (d) Groundwater source heat pump taking water from one well and discharging it to another. (e) Standing column groundwater source heat pump taking water from, then discharging to, the same well.*

The Daniel Boone High School near Johnson City, Tennessee, was built in 1971 with a two-pipe chilled water system and electric resistance heat. A 1998 ASHRAE Technology Award was won when this 160,000-ft^2 (14,864-m^2) school was retrofitted with a ground source vertical closed loop heat exchanger that is fed by 320 boreholes, each 150 ft (46 m) deep. Each borehole loop is 300 ft (91 m) of ¾-in. (19-mm) polyethylene pipe. The boreholes are arranged in sections of 20 holes each. The holes are 15 ft (5 m) on center. The 20-hole sections are separated by 20 ft (6 m). The loops all connect to an 8-in. (203-mm) supply and same size return line to the new heat exchanger within the existing mechanical room. Within the building, a new water loop heat pump system is installed, one heat pump in each zone.

(e) Water Source Heat Pumps

The school described previously uses an interior closed water loop that connects all the heat pumps of all thermal zones. This system facilitates heating in one zone while another zone is being cooled, because simultaneous heat "deposits" and heat "withdrawals" actually help the system to function

most efficiently. Figure 9.45 diagrams the typical water loop system, where a supplementary heat source (such as a boiler) for cold weather, and a supplementary heat rejector (such as a cooling tower) for hot weather, are installed to maintain usable water temperatures within the loop. A large office building in Pittsburgh that uses such a system is shown in Fig. 10.63.

Motels are good candidates for water loop heat pumps, because some rooms face sunny conditions, others are shaded; some are occupied, some unoccupied; and substantial domestic hot water needs all combine to make a heat-sharing water loop attractive.

9.9 PSYCHROMETRICS AND REFRIGERATION

The procedure for sizing cooling equipment is more complicated than for heating because latent as well as sensible heat must be considered. The example following refers to the psychrometric chart; a review of Figs. 8.35 to 8.42 may be helpful.

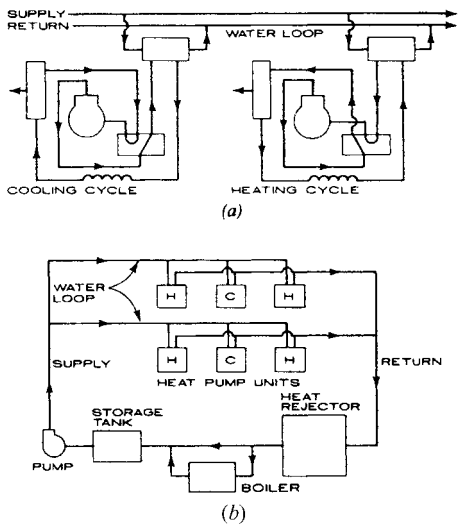


Fig. 9.45 *Water source heat pumps. (a) Each water-air heat pump either deposits heat into the loop (while cooling) or withdraws heat (while heating). This system is particularly well suited to buildings where simultaneous heating and cooling needs occur. (b) Supplementary heat sources (boilers) and heat rejectors (cooling towers) are usually provided. (Reprinted by permission from AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards, *9th ed.; © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

EXAMPLE 9.4 Find the total heat to be removed, and thus the refrigeration capacity required, for a dance hall. The design conditions are:

Room conditions (summer)	75°F DB (24°C), 50% RH
Number of occupants	80 people
Activity	Dancing
Ventilation provided	35 cfm (18 L/s) per person
Conditions, outdoor air	90°F DB, 75°F WB (32.2°C, 23.9°C)

Heat Gains in the Room 80 people dancing (see Table F.8)	**Sensible Heat, SH (Btu/h)**	**Latent Heat, LH (Btu/h)**
80 × 305 Btu/h	24,400	
80 × 545 Btu/h		43,600
Total transmission and solar gain, lights, equipment, etc.	67,600	None
	Room sensible heat (RSH) = 92,000	Room latent heat (RLH) = 43,600
Total heat gains in room: 135,600 Btu/h (RSH + RLH)		

SOLUTION

First, determine the portion of the heat gain that is due to sensible heat gain, called the *sensible heat factor* (SHF):

$$\text{SHF} = \frac{\text{RSH}}{\text{RSH} + \text{RLH}} = \frac{92{,}000}{135{,}600} = 0.68$$

On the psychrometric chart (simplified in Fig. 9.46*a*), draw a line between the fixed "bull's-eye" (80°F DB, 50% RH) and the value of 0.68 on the SHF scale at the upper-right edge of the chart. This is called the *SHF line*.

Point *A* is the room condition (of the "used" air) within the dance hall as it is returned for reprocessing: 75°F DB, 50% RH (62.5°F WB). Next, decide how much cooler the supply air should be than the return air. To avoid uncomfortable drafts, this supply temperature is usually 20F° (or less) below the space's air temperature. In this case, with such well-stirred air, choose 20F°. Then the quantity of air required to cool the room will be

$$\text{cfm} = \frac{\text{RSH}}{1.1\Delta t} = \frac{92{,}000\,\text{Btu/h}}{(20\text{F}^\circ)} = 4260\,\text{cfm}$$

(The factor 1.1 is the constant in the ventilation formulas explained in Section 7.8.)

The portion of this supply air that is *outdoor* air is as follows:

80 people × 35 cfm/person = 2800 cfm

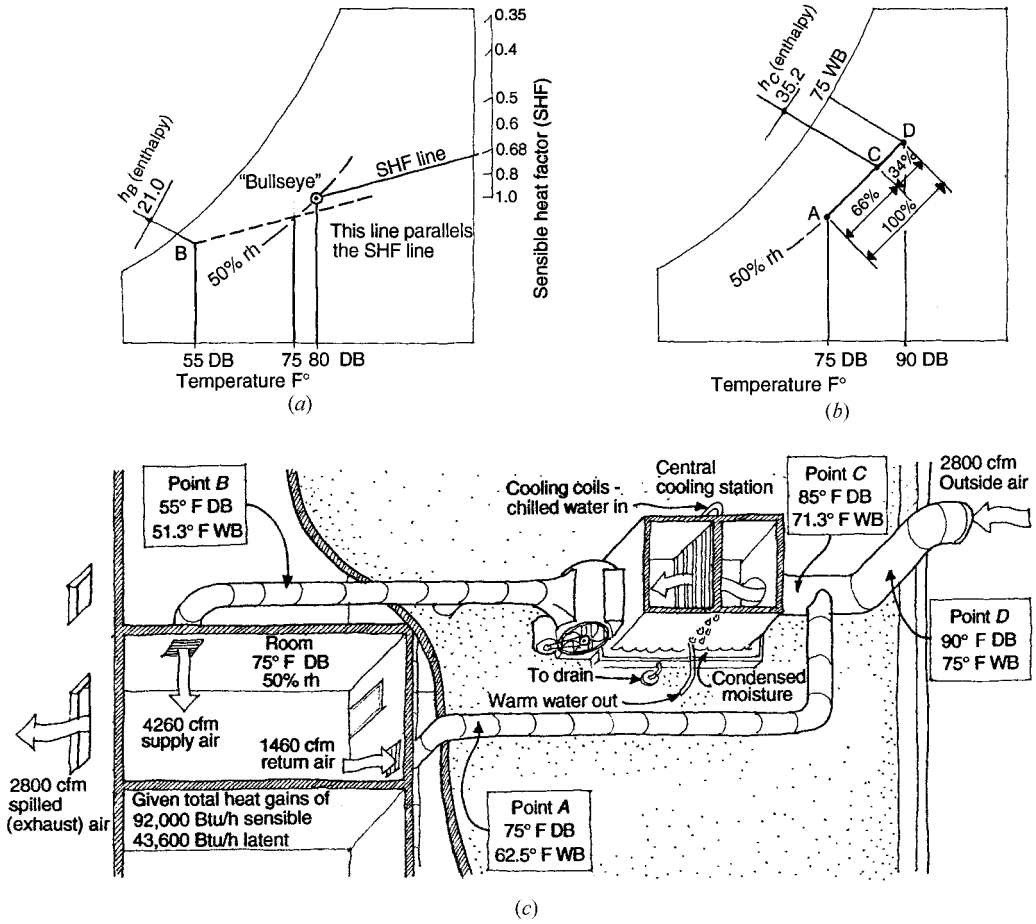


Fig. 9.46 *Sizing cooling equipment using the psychrometric chart (see detailed charts in Appendix F). (a) Finding the conditions for the supply air. SI values are: 12.8, 23.9, and 26.7°C DB. (b) Finding the conditions for the return air-outdoor air mixture. SI values are: 23.9 and 32.2°C DB; 23.9°C WB. (c) Points A, B, C, and D, shown within the building and its cooling equipment. SI values are: Point A (23.9/16.9°C); point B (12.8/10.7°C); point C (29.4/21.8°C); point D (32.2/23.9°C); outdoor air (1321 L/s); exhaust air (1321 L/s); supply air (2010 L/s); return air (689 L/s); room (23.9°C).*

So the percentage of outdoor air is

$$\frac{2800}{4260} = 66\%$$

Now, several important points can be located on the chart. Point *B* is the condition of the air entering the rooms; it has been decided that it will be 20F° cooler than 75°F, which places point *B* somewhere on the 55° DB line. To determine exactly where, draw a dashed line through point *A, parallel* to the SHF line, and extend it until it crosses the vertical 55° DB line. This is point *B*, and occurs at 55° DB, 51.3° WB; enthalpy (h_B) = 21.0 Btu/lb. Point *D* is the condition of the outdoor air, given (under design conditions) at 90°F DB, 75°F WB.

Point *C* (Fig. 9.46*b*) represents the mixture of 66% outdoor air and 34% return air that is brought to the cooling equipment for treatment and distribution back to the dance hall. First, connect points *A* (the return air) and *D* (outdoor air); then plot *C* at 66% of the distance from *A* to *D*. This occurs at 85°F DB, 71.3°F WB; enthalpy (h_C) = 35.2 Btu/lb.

The cooling equipment must remove the grand total heat (GTH) according to the formula

$$\text{GTH} = 4.5 \times \text{cfm} \times (h_C - h_B)$$

(where 4.5 is a constant = 60 min/h × 0.075 lb/ft^3 average air density). So, in this example

$$\text{GTH} = 4.5 \times 4260 \text{ cfm} \times (35.2 - 21.0)$$
$$= 272{,}214 \text{ Btu/h}$$

The size of the required refrigeration unit is specified in tons, where 1 ton = 12,000 Btu/h. The refrigeration required:

$$= \frac{272{,}214\ \text{Btu/h}}{12{,}000\ \text{Btu/h ton}} = 22.7\ \text{tons}$$

Note: If *minimum* outdoor air requirements of, say, 25 cfm per person were provided,

$$80\ \text{people} \times 25\ \text{cfm/person} = 2000\ \text{cfm}$$

The percentage of outdoor air becomes 2000/4260 = 47%.

Point *C* then moves to about 82°F DB, 68.8°F WB, at which point h_C = about 33 Btu/lb.

The refrigeration required then becomes

$$4.5 \times 4260 \times (33 - 21) = \frac{230{,}040\ \text{Btu/h}}{12{,}000\ \text{Btu/h ton}}$$

$$= \text{about 19 tons}$$

This represents a first-cost saving in equipment size and, of course, energy savings over the life of the dance hall. (Dancers would smell more sweat, however. It is that trade-off again—energy conservation versus IAQ.) ■

References and Resources

AIA, Ramsey, C. G., and H. R. Sleeper. 1994. *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed. Wiley. New York.

ASHRAE. 2009. *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2-2007: *Energy-Efficient Design of Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Barden, A. A., and H. Hyytiainen. 1993. *Finnish Fireplaces: Heart of the Home*, 2nd ed. Finnish Building Centre, Ltd. Helsinki.

Bourne, R. and M. Hoeschele. 1998. "Performance Results for a Night Roof Spray Storage Cooling System," in *Proceedings of the 23rd National Passive Solar Conference*. American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

Calm, J. E. 1994. "Refrigerant Safety," in *ASHRAE Journal*, July.

Hydronics Institute Division of GAMA. 1996. *Installation Guide for Residential Hydronic Heating Systems*, No. 200. Berkeley Heights, NJ.

Mozer, M. 1998. "The Neural Network House: An Environment That Adapts to Its Inhabitants," in *Proceedings of the American Association for Artificial Intelligence, Spring Symposium on Intelligent Environments*. March 1998. Stanford University. Palo Alto, CA.

Natural Gas Cooling Equipment Guide, 4th ed. 1996. American Gas Cooling Center. Arlington, VA.

The New Buildings Institute. "Small Commercial HVAC System Design Guide": http://www.newbuildings.org/mechanical.htm

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. "Energy Star-Labeled Heating and Cooling Equipment": http://www.energystar.gov/

CHAPTER 10

Large-Building HVAC Systems

THIS CHAPTER CONTINUES THE DISCUSSION that began in Chapter 9, with a focus now on more complex systems for larger buildings with many thermal zones. Those using this book for reference rather than as a text may have gone directly to this chapter without reading the preceding material. If so, pay attention to the following comments.

Before Selecting an HVAC System for a Large Building:

The choice of an HVAC system should consider preliminary design issues that are discussed in Chapter 5 and sections of Chapter 9:

Chapter 5, "Indoor Air Quality," discusses the relationship between comfort, zoning, and equipment that helps maintain acceptable air quality in buildings.

9.1 "Review of the Need for Mechanical Equipment," reviews the relative thermal role of building envelopes compared to their internal heating, cooling, and ventilating systems.

9.2 "Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning (HVAC): Typical Design Processes," outlines the decisions made by the architect and the engineer.

9.5 "Refrigeration Cycles," reviews both the compressive and the absorptive refrigeration processes.

At the onset of the twenty-first century, large-building HVAC is showing several trends. One is the increasing willingness to let mechanical equipment share its tasks with natural ventilation and daylighting. Building automation has made this easier to manage. Another trend is toward an underfloor plenum air supply (related to, but not identical to, *displacement ventilation* approaches commonly used in critical-environment facilities) rather than using ducts connected to diffusers and return grilles, both on the ceiling. Concern about air quality indoors and the environment outdoors is producing a variety of approaches to increased ventilation effectiveness. Refrigerants containing CFCs and HCFCs are being avoided. Fuel cells and photovoltaics are promising increased energy autonomy to larger buildings.

10.1 HVAC AND BUILDING ORGANIZATION

By this time, many decisions about a building's design have been made: design strategies appropriate to the climate and the building's activities have been identified, and the basic siting and overall form of the building have been determined from daylighting and thermal considerations, among others. This section begins by considering the internal yet broad issues of zoning and system choice and ends with a discussion of the more detailed consequences of system choice. A general guide to estimation of a building's thermal zone requirements was presented in Section 8.2, which discussed the importance of differences in function, schedule, and orientation.

(a) Zoning

The minimum number of thermal zones for a conventionally designed multipurpose building is shown in Fig. 10.1. A need for more than these 16 zones could result from differences in scheduling within a zone, such as between offices and stores. As is true of the other occupied floors, apartments have a minimum of five zones (based on orientation); however, the emphasis on individual controls—and the variation in usage patterns—often produces as many zones as there are apartments. When the details of zoning are added to the other preliminary design decisions, the details of HVAC systems can be considered.

(b) System Anatomy

Table 10.1 describes the basic organization of any HVAC system. Three kinds of common tasks (heating, cooling, and ventilating) are done by production components; usually, they require distribution and delivery components. Intake supplies and exhaust by-products accompany each task. Although the eventual choice of HVAC system should follow an analysis of the zone's needs, some early concepts underlie system choices.

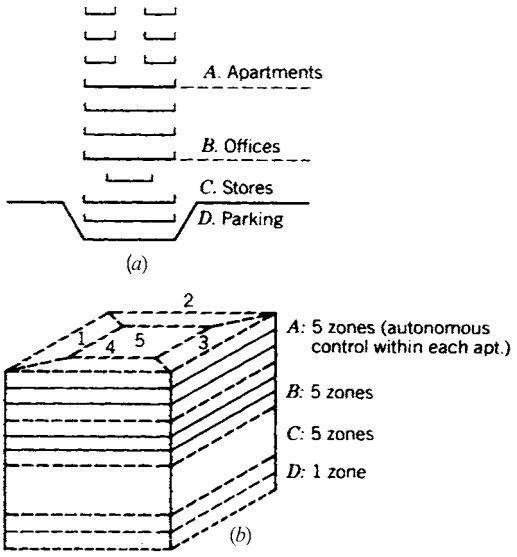


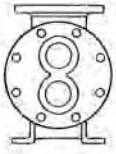
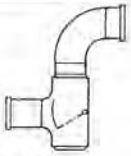
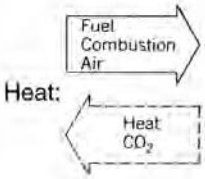
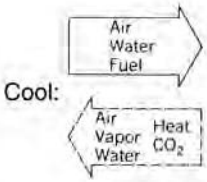
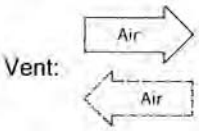
Fig. 10.1 *The minimum number of thermal zones for a rather large, conventionally designed, multipurpose building.*

(c) Central versus Local Systems

Central systems require one or several large mechanical spaces (often in basements and/or on roofs), sizable distribution trees, and complex control systems. The noise, heat, and other characteristics of such mechanical rooms can be controlled fairly easily, because the machinery is concentrated at a few locations. Similarly, maintenance is easy to perform without interrupting normal activities, although breakdowns in central equipment can paralyze the entire building. Air quality can be controlled by locating the air intakes high above the pollution at street level and by regular maintenance of the centralized air-filtering equipment. Longer equipment life can be expected with regular maintenance. Energy conservation can be served by the recovery of one machine's heat by-product for a nearby machine's heat input. Although there are many ways to provide for the differing thermal needs of the many zones served by central systems, one important drawback of central systems is the size and length of the distribution trees necessary to carry centralized services to many local receivers. Another drawback is a difference in zone scheduling: when the entire system must be activated to serve one zone (such as computer operations in an office building on a weekend), energy is wasted.

Local systems therefore become increasingly attractive as scheduling differences multiply. Also, pronounced differences in other factors—function (with resulting comfort expectations) or placement within the building, for example—can lead to the choice of local systems. Large and centralized equipment spaces are not required with local systems; rather, production equipment is distributed throughout the building (or over the roofs of low-rise structures). Dispersal of equipment minimizes the size of distribution trees and greatly simplifies control systems. Moreover, system breakdowns affect only small portions of the building. However, noise and other by-products of multiple machines pose numerous potential threats to occupied spaces, and maintenance is demanding, because access to so many separate locations is often disruptive or constricted. Then, too, air quality depends on the regular cleaning of many filters scattered over the building, often within occupied spaces. The potential for energy

TABLE 10.1 Basic HVAC Systems: Tasks and Components

				
		Production/Motion Movers, converters, processors	Distribution Supply and return trees, delivery and control components	Results
	Heat:	Boilers Furnaces Pumps Fans Filters Heat pumps	Pipes Ducts Electricity conduits Diffusers Grilles Radiators Thermostats Valves, dampers	Warm air or surfaces Air motion often controlled Humidity control sometimes needed
	Cool:	Evaporative coolers Heat pumps Chillers and cooling towers Coils Pumps Fans Filters	Pipes Ducts Diffusers Grilles Radiators Thermostats Valves Dampers	Cool air or surfaces Air motion usually controlled Humidity control usually provided
	Vent:	Fans Filters	Ducts Diffusers Grilles Switches Dampers	Fresh air Air motion usually controlled Air quality control often needed

Source: Class notes developed by G.Z. Brown, University of Oregon.

conservation seems promising, because heating or cooling is produced only as locally needed, but there is little chance to use one zone's waste heat as another's needed source.

Central heat/cool, local air distribution has become a popular way to take advantage of the favorable characteristics of both central and local approaches. This is shown in Fig. 10.2*b*, with a central boiler/chiller space remotely located and fan rooms on each floor. This minimizes the bulky distribution tree for air; although the distribution tree for heated and chilled water is extensive, it is also of much smaller diameter and therefore is relatively easily accommodated. The central equipment room makes energy recovery systems from boilers and chillers more feasible.

(d) Uniformity versus Diversity

How similar should the interior environments of buildings be? This question encompasses not only thermal experiences, but visual and acoustical ones as well.

The advantages of uniformity are most evident in a rapidity of design and construction that, through mass production and speed, often brings lower first costs. Uniformity of ceiling heights, light fixture placement, grille locations, and so on

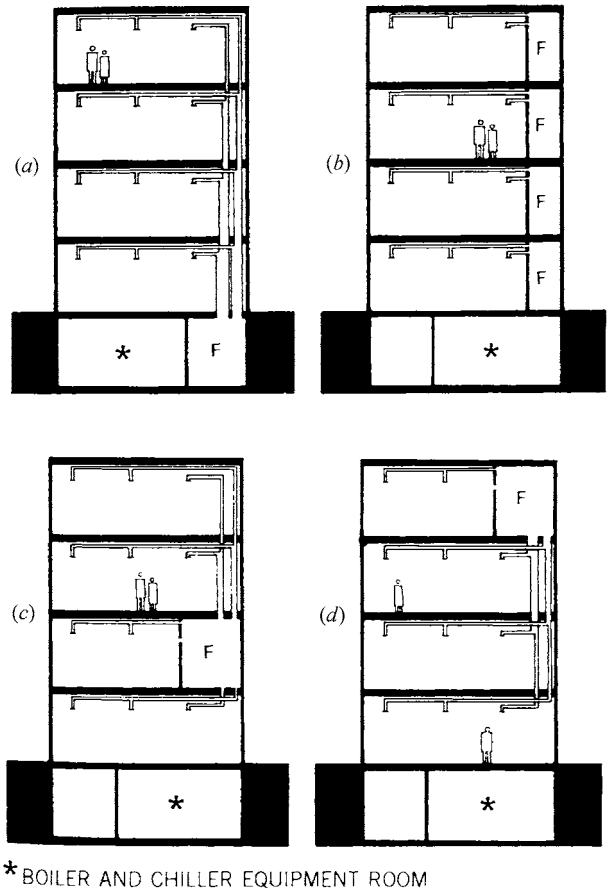


Fig. 10.2 *Fan rooms (F) can either be combined with or separated from boiler/chiller "equipment" rooms (*). (a) Common location for a central combined equipment room. (b) Increasingly common arrangement of a small fan room on each floor, with an equipment room in the basement. (c) An intermediate floor may be able to provide space for a central fan room, while the heavier and noisier equipment remains in the basement. (d) With a top-floor central fan room, the equipment may be located either on the roof or in a mechanical penthouse, or may remain in the basement. (Adapted by permission from E. Allen and J. Iano,* The Architect's Studio Companion*, 4th edition; © 2007, John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

promotes flexibility in office arrangements that can extend a building's usable life span. However, there are at least four types of offices, which may need to be interchangeable within such "flexible" space. The typical *enclosed office* has the privacy of four walls and a door. The *bullpen office* has repeated, identical workstations, with low dividers at about the height of the desk surface. The *uniform open plan office* resembles the bullpen, but with higher divider partitions for added privacy. The *free-form open plan office* has some individually designed workstations with divider partitions of varying heights (sometimes reflecting the varying status of workers). In the bullpen and uniform open plan office, the resulting uniformity is not always attractive to users, and diversity is often encouraged at a more personal level—with office furnishings, for example. A more thorough approach to diversity can provide stimulus to the user who spends many hours away from the variability of the exterior climate.

If offices must be uniform in ceiling lighting, air handling, and size, the corridors that connect them and the lounges or other supporting service spaces can deliberately be made different. Diversity requires a complete and detailed design of places; it gives the builder a more complex and interesting task; and it can provide orientation and interest to the users. The attractiveness of diversity is evident in most collections of retail shops, in which light and sound—and sometimes heat and aroma—are used to distinguish one shop from the next.

Diversity in the thermal conditions to be maintained, such as warmer offices and cooler circulation spaces in the winter, can be used to enhance the comfort of the office users. Designers have long recognized that a space can be made to seem brighter and higher if it is preceded by a dark,

low transition space. Thermal comfort impressions can be manipulated similarly. Less than comfortable conditions in circulation spaces or other less-critical zones not only make the critical spaces seem more comfortable by contrast, but also save significant amounts of energy over the life of a building. Furthermore, such conditions can make passive strategies more attractive.

A large-scale demonstration of diversity in thermal zones is shown in Fig. 10.3. Passive solar heating can make a significant contribution, even through a shallow-sloped, single-glazed cover in cloudy Glasgow, Scotland, largely because the mall area and leisure areas are allowed a much wider thermal range than would be permitted in stores and offices. The overcast skies are quite suitable for daylight, and the addition of summer sunshading makes natural ventilation (through the stack effect, assisted by fans) possible during the cool summers. U.S. Pacific Northwest climate conditions are similar.

(e) Comparing Systems and Zones

In the process of selecting systems from among the wide variety available, it is helpful to consider the match between the zones' characteristics and those of various systems. Among the considerations are zone placement (close to or away from the building skin), the zone's thermal loads, the comfort determinants based on the zone's activities, the space available for system components within

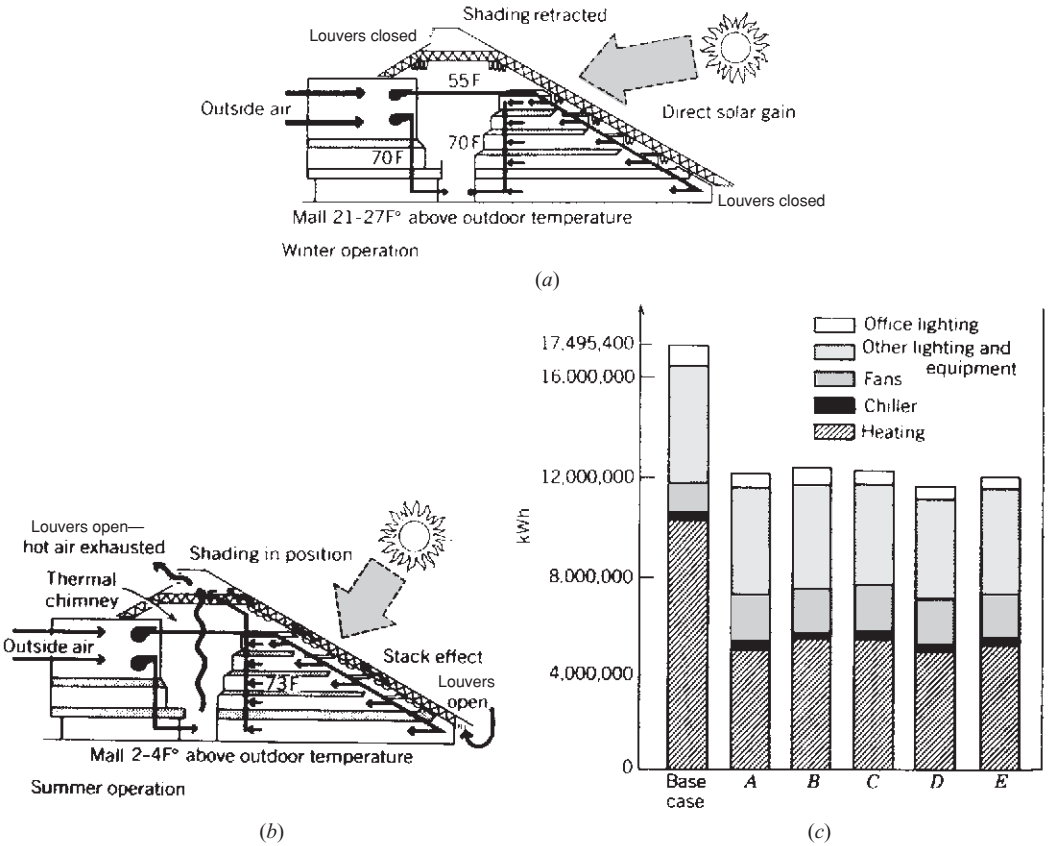


Fig. 10.3 *St. Enoch's Square, Glasgow, Scotland: a proposal to use passive solar heating, daylighting, and natural ventilation. Reiach & Hall and GMW Partnership, architects (joint venture); Cosentini Associates, energy consultants; Princeton Energy Group, daylighting consultants. (a) Schematic section showing winter operation; the mall temperature varies around 63ºF (17ºC) during operating hours, while offices are kept near 70ºF (21ºC). (b) Schematic section showing summer operation; the mall temperature varies from about 68 to 74ºF (20 to 23ºC) during operating hours. (c) Estimates of annual energy consumption for a conventional-design base case and several alternative configurations. Note the significantly lower heating energy requirements, resulting in part from the lower winter temperatures allowed for the less-critical zones such as the mall and the leisure areas in configurations* A *to* E.

the zone, and the life-cycle costs of various system alternatives.

Zone placement will sometimes preclude local systems, which depend on easy access to outdoor air both for fresh air and for a heat source or sink. Local systems for interior (away-from-skin) zones are awkward. Relationships between zone placement and building forms are shown in Fig. 10.4.

The thermal loads on each zone determine the extent to which heating or cooling is the dominant problem—which, in turn, can influence the choice of system. A zone with little cooling load and low moisture production may be well served by a simple system of fresh air plus heating, with no humidity control. Zones that require cooling will usually also require more complete control of air motion and relative humidity. Although it is risky to generalize about which comfort determinants are most important (given the differences between activities and between individuals), it can

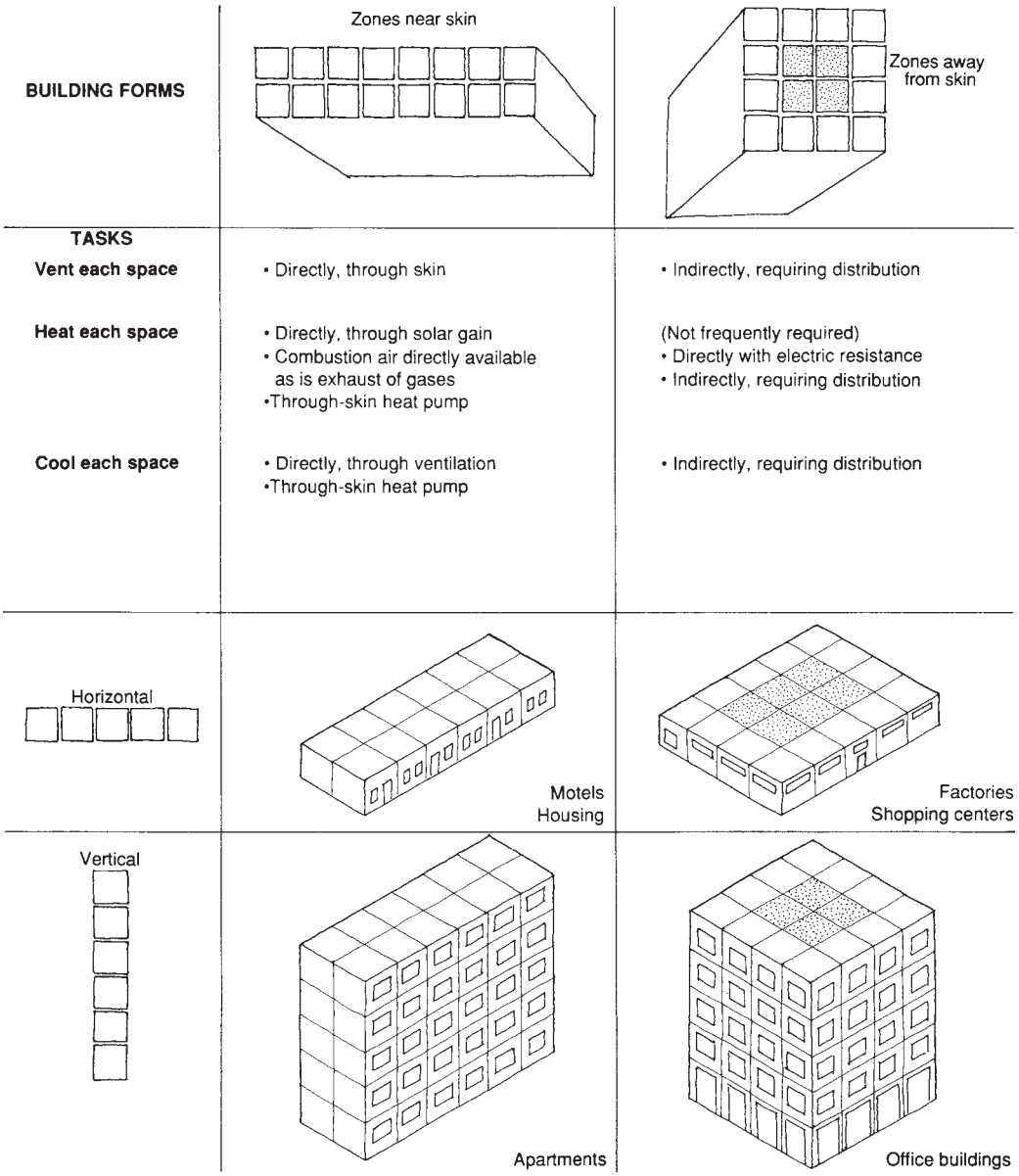


Fig. 10.4 *Zone placement and building form are related to heating, cooling, and ventilating tasks; some applications take on typical building forms. (From class notes developed by G. Z. Brown, University of Oregon.)*

generally be assumed that comfort and thermal tasks are related.

	For Heating of Spaces	For Cooling of Spaces
More important	Surface, air temperatures	Air motion
↓	Air motion	Relative humidity
Less important	Relative humidity	Air, surface temperatures

Thus, the choice of systems can be based partly on whether the system provides good control of the more important comfort determinants.

(f) Distribution Trees

How many, what kind (air or water), and where should HVAC distribution trees be placed within buildings? HVAC system choice is influenced by the amount of space the system requires. In some cases, it is easy to provide small equipment rooms at regular intervals throughout a building, such that little or nothing in the way of a distribution tree will be required. In other cases, a network of distribution trees and central, large equipment spaces are easier to accommodate. These central systems typically fall into one of three classifications:

All-air (the largest distribution trees)

Air and water

All-water (the smallest distribution trees, with local control of fresh air)

The details of these systems can be found in Sections 10.5 to 10.7, along with typical applications and space requirements. Figure 10.5 shows the matrix of central-local, air-water influences on distribution trees.

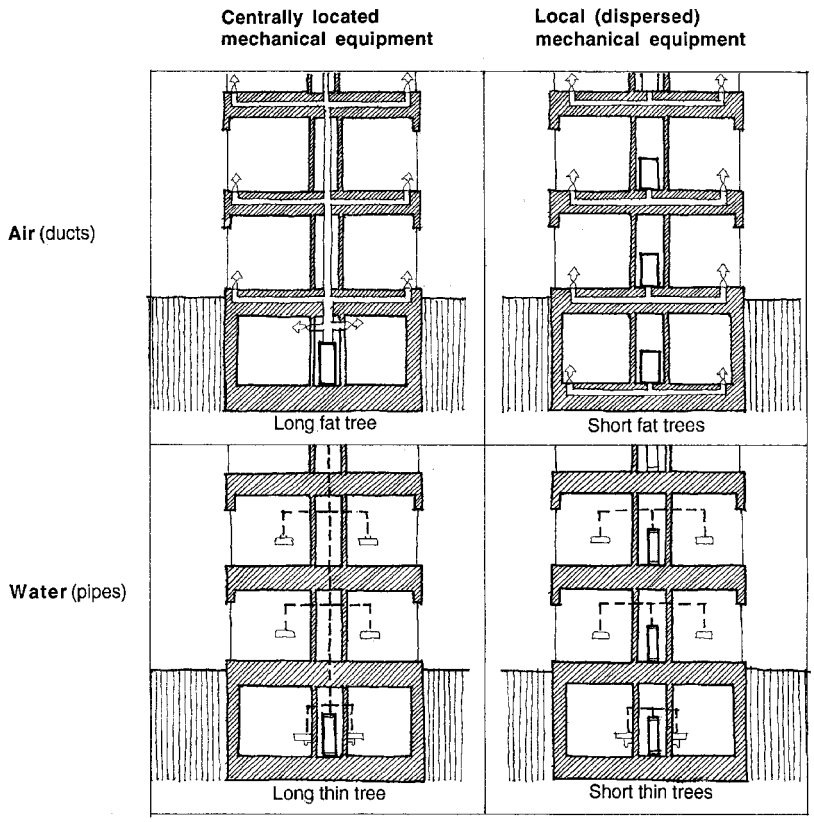


Fig. 10.5 *Matrix of distribution trees. (© 1998 John S. Reynolds; drawing by Michael Cockram.)*

TABLE 10.2 Procedure for Matching Zones and Systems

CAPSULE DESCRIPTION

A multipurpose building (similar to that shown in Fig. 10.1) is situated in a cold winter–mild summer climate.
Apartments are on upper floors surrounding an open-air central court; they have adequate daylight and cross-ventilation. Floor heights are quite low.
Offices are rented to various tenants. Exterior offices have high ceilings to facilitate daylighting, and therefore have low internal gains but restricted clearance for horizontal ducts. Interior offices have lower ceilings; vertical chase space is limited because it reduces rentable area.
Shops are located around the perimeter on the high-ceilinged ground floor; some smaller shops are located on the mezzanine and ground floors in the interior zone. Space for vertical chases is severely limited on these highest rental floors.
The parking area is below grade, surrounded by air and light wells. Floor heights are very limited to reduce ramp length.

Activities (Program)	**Apartments**	**Computer Center**	***Offices***		***Shops***		**Restaurant**	**Parking**
Schedule	24 hours	24 hours	9 hours		9 hours		12 hours	
Placement	Exterior	Exterior for access	Exterior	Interior	Interior	Exterior	Exterior for access	Entire floor
Internal gains	Vary	High	Low	Medium	High	Medium	High plus moisture	Low with exhaust gas
Dominant HVAC task(s)	Heat-ventilate	Cool	Heat/cool	Cool	Cool	Cool	Cool	Ventilate
HVAC space available								
Vert. (in plan)	Medium	Medium	Medium	Tight	Tight	Tight	Tight	Medium
Horiz. (in section)	Tight	Medium	Tight	Medium	Tight	Ample	Ample	Tight
System choices								
Local		A					B	C
Central								
All-air			(D)	D	D	(D)		
Air and water			E			E		
All-water	F							

SUMMARY

A. The computer center's unique schedule and rate of internal gain usually requires a separate system equipped with humidity and air quality controls to protect the equipment. Some heat recovery for use in E and F seems advisable.
B. The restaurant's special problems of heat, moisture, and aroma, as well as its schedule, require a separate system.
C. The parking area needs only plenty of fresh air; it requires no tie with the other zones at all.
D. The always-cooling loads of interior zones are best served by all-air systems offering control of humidity and air quality. However, vertical chase size is tight, and high-velocity distribution may be required. (The exterior zones could also be served by all-air systems. But the need for heating, plus the likelihood of fresh air infiltration and the tight clearance for horizontal ductwork, suggest that the system for exterior zones should be separated from the system for interior zones.)
E. Quick changes from heating to cooling are best handled by water; some central air quality control is offered by air and water systems.
F. A central all-water system offers energy conservation advantages, recovering waste heat from system D (and potentially from A). Fresh air is easily and cheaply handled on a local basis, which also provides cooling.

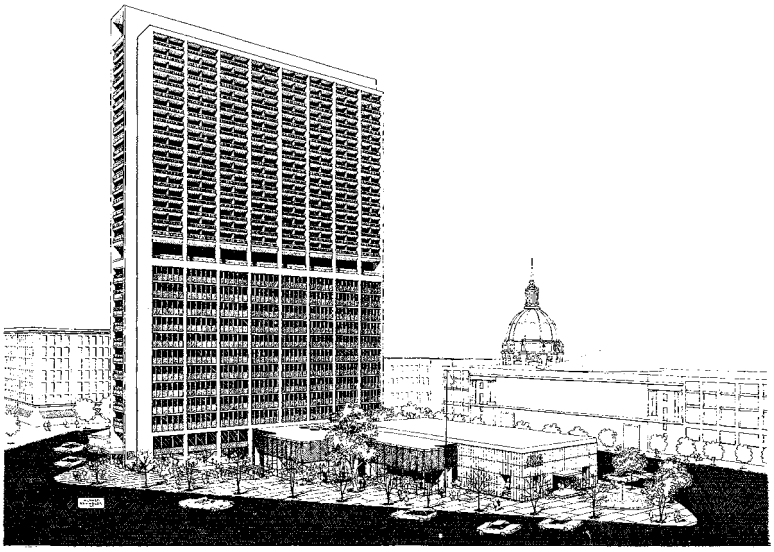
MECHANICAL SPACE

Probably best located on the top office floor or on a floor of its own between offices and apartments. Distribution tree sizes will thereby be minimized on the high-rent ground floor.

A simplified procedure for matching zones and systems is shown in Table 10.2, in which preliminary system choices are made for a building such as the multipurpose structure shown in Fig. 10.1. In this process, the original 16 zones are translated into three local systems and three central systems: one all-air, one air and water, and one all-water.

The Fox Plaza Building in San Francisco, which illustrates many of the matches between systems and zones, is shown in Fig. 10.6. This project includes four major building types in one structure:

1. Underground garage for the storage of cars
2. Commercial center at ground level, including a bank, a women's specialty store, and other commercial establishments
3. Ten floors of offices
4. Sixteen floors of apartments



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 10.6 *The Fox Plaza Building, San Francisco. Victor Gruen Associates, Inc., architects and engineers. (a) Elongated façade facing northeast shows the 16 floors of apartments above, the 10 floors of offices below, and the 13th-floor mechanical space. In that space are chillers, and pumps for cooling tower water and chilled water, as well as boilers and converters (steam to hot water) for the fan-coil units in the residential stories above and hot water coils in the office stories below. Air handling for the offices is also located here, downfed by high-velocity ducts. Residences are heated; offices are heated and cooled. (The roof has the cooling tower and the domestic hot water generator-storage units for the residential stories.) (Courtesy of Progressive Architecture.) (b) Construction photo with air-handling units visible on the 13th floor, and downfeed ducts that supply high-velocity hot and cold air to the office floors. (Photo by Morley Baer.)*

The mechanical level is located between the office portion of the building and the apartments above. The distribution trees—heating, air conditioning, electrical, and so on—are thus directed both upward and downward, resulting in two shorter trees rather than one longer tree. The spatial requirements of offices and those of apartments are quite different; thus, the floor-to-floor heights, window treatment, and heating, cooling, electrical, elevators, and other services are different. The placement of the mechanical level between the offices and the apartments also provides for a definite visual separation between the two functions.

Quite unusual is the placement of the steam boilers on the 13th floor instead of in the conventional basement location. Only a small amount of auxiliary equipment is located on the roof and in a small portion of the garage. Residential areas have hot-water heating (residential cooling being rarely needed in San Francisco), offices have dual-duct, high-velocity heating/cooling, and commercial (ground-floor) tenants are supplied with hot and chilled water for individual climate control requirements.

(g) Central Equipment Location

The Fox Plaza Building has an intermediate location for the heating and cooling production equipment—one that separates floors of apartments from floors of offices. Other typical locations for central equipment are in the basement (where machine noise is most easily isolated, utilities are easily accessed, and machine weight is little problem) and on the roof, where access to air as a sink for reject heat is easiest of all, and headroom is unlimited. Very tall buildings may require several intermediate mechanical floors. Examples of these approaches are found throughout the rest of this chapter.

The equipment's considerable heat, moisture, air motion, noise, and vibration potentially annoy occupants on nearby floors (or even neighboring buildings). As shown in the Fox Plaza example, the equipment placement can be expressive of building services and can play a useful demarcation role between vertical layers of high-rise buildings. Moving the equipment off the roof also frees this prestigious view location for high-rent occupancy and allows a roof form much more expressive of great height than a flat roof with a cooling tower.

(h) Concealment and Exposure

The pipes, ducts, and conduits that take the necessary resources to and from the interior are often carried within a network of spaces unseen by anyone except builders and repair people. The advantages of concealment include less noise from moving water and air, fewer surfaces requiring cleaning, less care necessary in construction (leaks, not looks, are important), and more control over the appearance of the interior ceiling and wall surfaces. Although maintenance access to such hidden supply lines is more difficult, various types of readily removable covers are available, particularly in suspended ceilings.

However, the exposure of these supply networks provides an honest and direct source of visual (and occasionally acoustical) interest. Exposure in corridors and service areas and concealment in offices constitute an approach used in many office buildings. Flexibility is usually encouraged by exposure; changes can be easily made when there is no need for neatly cut holes in concealing surfaces. However, flexibility from full-height movable partitions requires constant ceiling heights—a feature of the suspended-ceiling approach.

One of the more spectacular examples of exposed mechanical (and structural) systems is shown in Fig. 10.7—the result of a design competition for a museum of modern art, reference library, center for industrial design, center for music and acoustic research, and supporting services in downtown Paris.

When users are invited to play an active role in adjusting conditions inside, exposure of the switches they manipulate is helpful. Visible mechanisms not only remind users of their opportunities but also encourage user interaction. In this way, adjustments are sometimes discovered that the designer had not anticipated.

(i) Mechanical–Structural Integration or Separation

The similarity of these two technical support systems—structures and environmental controls—has intrigued designers ever since mechanical systems began to require substantial volume for distribution, as in air-duct systems. As the complexity and size of the mechanical distribution systems was *increasing* with technological development



Fig. 10.7 *Centre Georges Pompidou, Paris. A view of the mechanical support systems. Piano + Rogers, architects. (Photo by John Tingley.)*

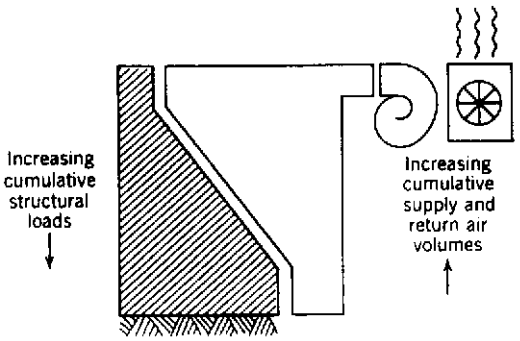


Fig. 10.8 *Distribution trees: with rooftop centralized air handling, the supply and return air duct sizes decrease as they approach the ground. Conversely, the structural load increases toward the ground.*

(typically, more air is required to cool a space than to heat it because of a lower Δt), the increased strength of materials was *reducing* the size of the structural system. The uncluttered floor areas between the more widely spaced columns became desirable for flexibility in spatial layout. With the mechanical systems at or within these columns, floor areas remained clear, thus giving mechanical–structural integration further impetus. With the new expectations for cooling, the refrigeration cycle's cooling tower often moved to the roof, often taking the air-handling machinery with it. This further encouraged the merging of systems, for one system was growing wider as the other diminished (Fig. 10.8). Thus, a fixed-column cross section, consisting mostly of the structural column at the base and the air duct at the top, became possible.

Yet the functions of these systems differ widely: compared to the dynamic on-off air, water, and electrical distribution systems, the structural system is static—gravity never ceases. The moving parts in mechanical systems need maintenance far more frequently than the connections of structural components. Changes in occupancy can mean enormous changes in mechanical systems, requiring entirely different equipment; structural changes of such magnitude usually occur only at demolition. Mechanical systems can invite user adjustment; structural systems rarely do.

Thus, although it is possible to wrap the mechanical systems in a structural envelope, it is of questionable long-term value, given the differing life spans and characteristics of these systems. The probability of future change suggests that the *mechanical* system be the exposed one, despite the appeal to many designers of the structural system's cleaner lines.

(j) Distribution Tree Placement Options

These options are summarized in Fig. 10.9. Vertical placement options are important because they affect floor space, influencing the flexibility of spatial layout and the availability of usable (or rentable) floor space. Horizontal placement options affect ceiling height—a particular issue in daylighting design and sometimes a critical factor when overall height limits are imposed yet maximum usable floor space is desired. (In Washington, DC, for instance, no building can rise higher than the Capitol.) Both vertical and horizontal distribution at the edges can have a dramatic impact on building appearance.

The history of distribution trees and high-rise buildings is one of trends and countertrends. Initially, multistory buildings relied upon daylight and cross-ventilation, so a thin, relatively high-ceiling plan with much perimeter was favored (refer to Fig. 3.33). The heat gain and loss was all at the

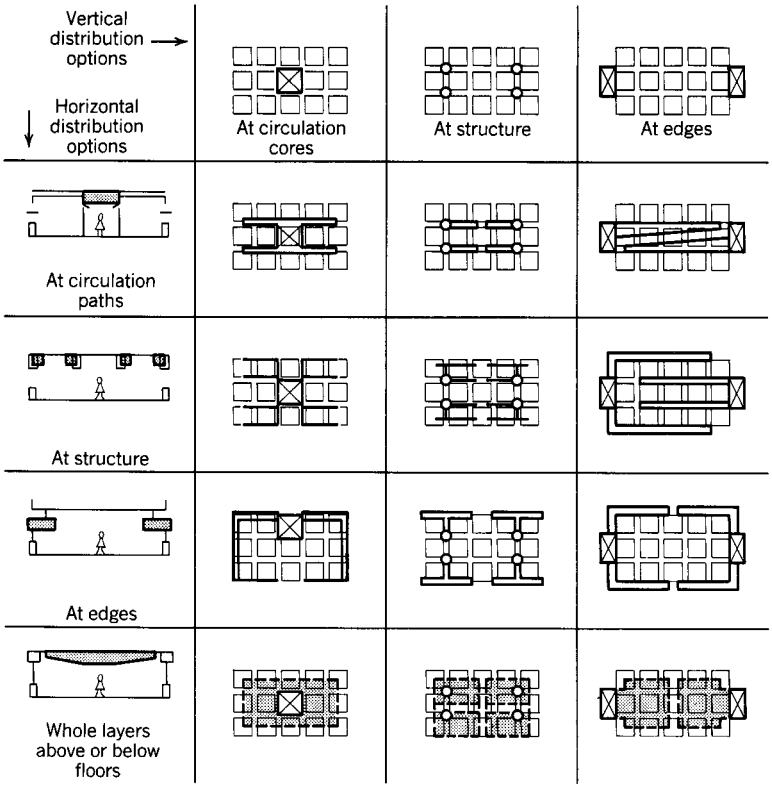


Fig. 10.9 *Distribution tree placement options, both vertical (with impact on the plan) and horizontal (with impact on the section). (From class notes developed by G. Z. Brown, University of Oregon.)*

perimeter, so perimeter distribution trees (carrying only steam or heated water, and of quite small diameter) were generally used. As electric lighting and thus the need for air conditioning increased, so did the thickness of floor plans; large central internal areas needed a lot of forced, cooled air. Central boilers, chillers, and fan rooms were the norm. Thus, bulky air distribution trees appeared. At about the same time, the glass curtain wall and its slick, two-dimensional look of modernity became fashionable. The air distribution trees were so visually intrusive on the façades that they were pushed to the core, where cooling needs were relatively steady. However, the thin glass perimeter experienced extreme needs for both heating and cooling; getting from vertical trees at the core to the perimeter required larger cavities above suspended ceilings. This pushed the ceiling in the offices down to keep floor-to-floor distances economical. Vast office areas resulted that were visually dull, low-ceilinged, and without daylight.

Now, countertrends include decentralized air handling, with small fan rooms on each floor. Vertical air distribution trees are shrinking, horizontal ones becoming more common. At the same time, daylighting is pushing office ceilings higher; so is a preference for indirect lighting and its compatibility with computer screen visual comfort. Night cooling utilizing thermal mass is encouraging the exposure of concrete structure and favoring raised-floor air supply/ventilation systems. A renewed interest in sun control is encouraging three-dimensional façades, replacing two-dimensional reflective glass façades (which merely redirect the sun toward someone else). With increased three-dimensionality at the façade, perimeter distribution trees are once again conceivable.

It is logical to place at the perimeter the parts of the system that deal with the effects of sun, shade, and temperature change in the several perimeter zones, leaving at the core a separate network to handle the more stable interior areas. The disadvantages of perimeter distribution include (usually) higher construction costs and an environment that is more thermally hostile due to the extremes of outdoor temperature.

Vertical distribution within internal circulation cores is very common, as it leaves a maximum of plan flexibility for the rest of each floor and does not disturb the prized floor areas nearest windows. However, one centralized vertical distribution trunk will require large horizontal branches near the core, so with this choice early thought must be given to the horizontal placement options.

An unusual example of vertical air distribution at the core is shown in Fig. 10.10. The Fox Plaza, Los Angeles, office building's unique features include both fan rooms on each floor and a large central vertical air shaft. This air shaft begins at the bottom as a fresh air intake to each floor and tapers to become, at the top, an exhaust (heated) air outlet from each floor. Thus, the stack effect is utilized to help supply fresh and exhaust stale air from a large building, with help from small supply fans at each floor.

Vertical distribution integrated with structure creates some intriguing possibilities where the structure-HVAC integration concept is suitable. Multiple HVAC trees are implied (because there are multiple columns with which they are integrated), so the horizontal branches tend to be small. However, these branches often join the vertical trunk at the same place where critical column-to-girder structural connections need to be made; interference is common and can be costly to correct. Vertical distribution at the *edges* is potentially dramatic in form but costly to enclose (if outside) or wasteful of prime floor space (if inside).

Horizontal distribution above corridors is very common, since reduced headroom here is more acceptable than in the main activity areas. Furthermore, corridors tend to be away from windows, so their lower ceilings do not interfere with daylight penetration. Because corridors connect nearly all spaces, horizontal service distribution to such spaces is also provided. Furthermore, exposure of these services above corridors can heighten the contrast between such serving spaces and the uncluttered, higher-ceilinged offices that are served. Horizontal distribution at the *structure* is sometimes chosen, particularly where U-shaped beams or box beams provide ready channels for HVAC distribution. However, the penetration of horizontal structure members by these continuous service runs must be coordinated. Horizontal distribution at the *edges* can be integrated usefully with sunshading devices and light shelves; it can also act as a spandrel element that contrasts with the window strips. Horizontal distribution within *whole layers* below floors (or above ceilings) is often utilized, now increasingly common with displacement ventilation systems.

An example of supply at the edge for both vertical and horizontal distribution is found in the International Building in San Francisco (Fig. 10.11). Here the vertical shafts are prominently exposed at the corners; these shafts carry supply and return ducts serving the four perimeter air-conditioning zones. Air-handling equipment and a 750-ton refrigeration plant are located on the floors just below the terrace level (those least desirable for renting). Each corner duct branches to serve two zones, which are separately controlled. Pressure reduction and blending are done by equipment in the hung ceiling, and from these points air flows to strip diffusers directly above the glass on the four sides of the building. Local controls offer comfort to personnel in each area.

Interior zones on each floor are supplied by a riser duct in the building core, which branches at each floor to a loop just outside the line of elevators. The loop serves ceiling diffusers.

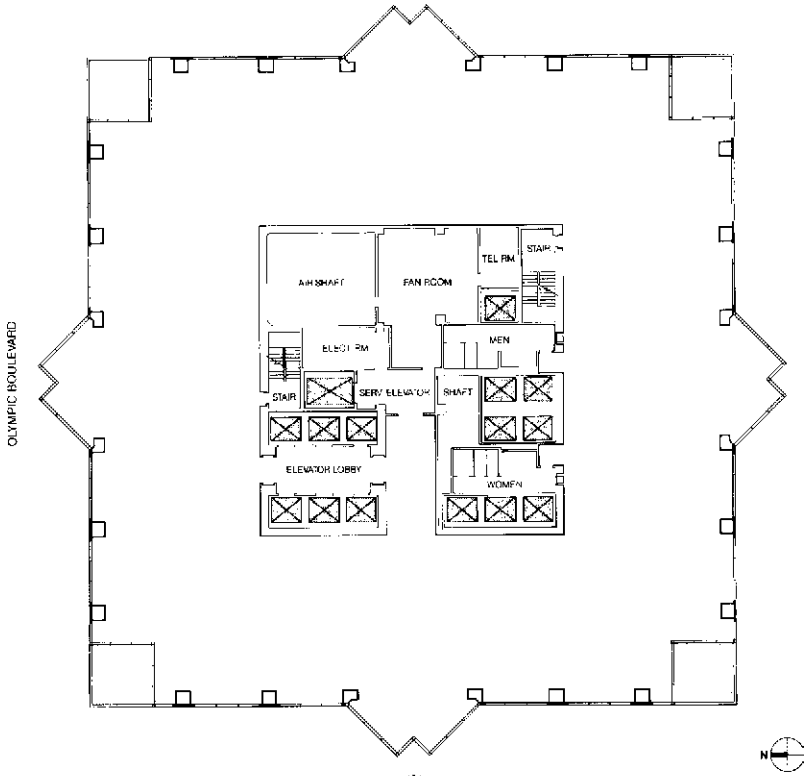
Between the perimeter loop and the interior loop, a return loop collects air for return to the central station (second and third floors). These return loops on the 11th to 21st floors are picked up by external return risers on alternate exterior corners. From the 10th floor down, the loops are picked up (as shown in Fig. 10.11) by an interior return riser that extends down through the core in front of the blank faces of the high-rise elevators. To provide a clear space between the elevator banks on the main floor (fourth or terrace), the two core ducts' risers are offset at the ceiling of that story.

In summary, perimeter air for all stories is supplied through corner ducts. Central air for all stories is supplied through a core duct. All return air above the 10th floor is carried down through the return ducts at the *other* two corners. Return air from the 10th floor and below is carried down by a return duct in the core.

Further examples of the relationships among HVAC systems, their distribution trees, and buildings are given in examples that accompany the more detailed descriptions of large-building HVAC systems in Sections 10.4 to 10.7.

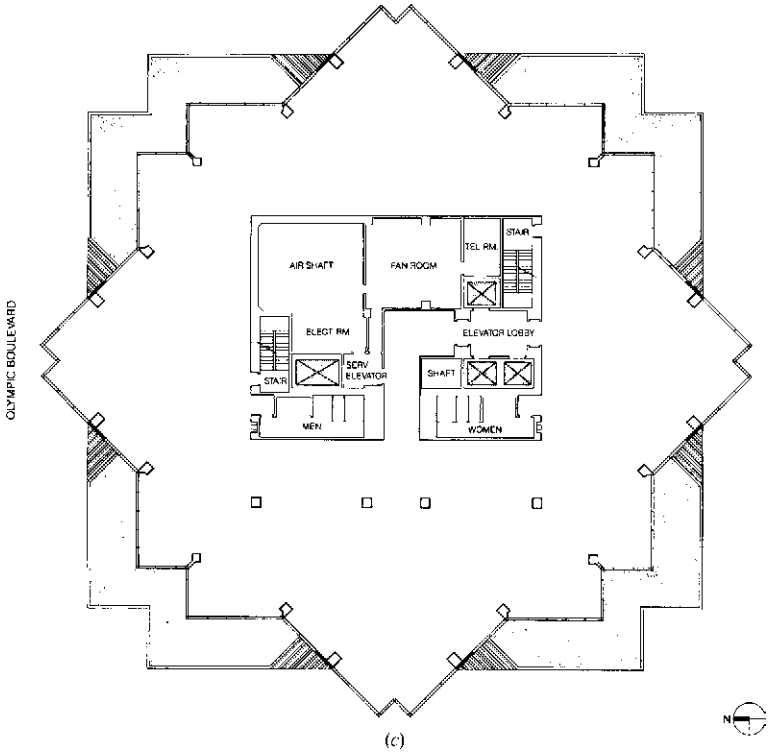


(*a*)

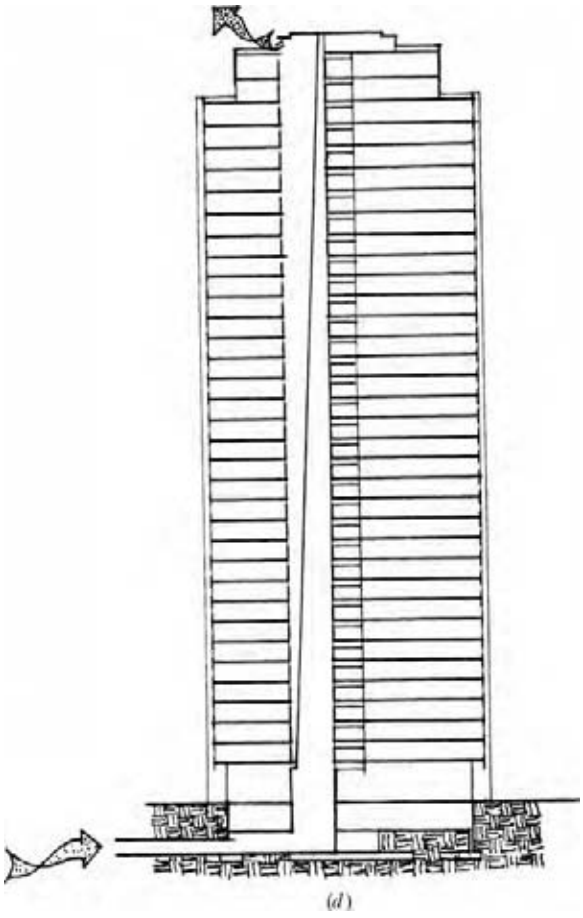


(*b*)

Fig. 10.10 *The Fox Plaza, Los Angeles, office building is a 34-story, 800,000-ft² (74,320-m²) granite and glass tower (a) with an unusual vertical distribution tree. (b) Typical lower-floor plan (floors 6 to 16) shows both a fan room and a large vertical air shaft. At this lower level, most of the shaft area is supplying outdoor air (from an intake in the bluff face below the building); the remainder is exhausting stale air toward the roof. Note the lack of columns between the core and perimeter, contributing to office layout flexibility. (c) Typical upper-floor plan (floors 31 to 33) shows fewer elevators; by this level, most of the shaft area is exhausting stale air toward the roof. (d) Section shows the tapered interior of the constant-cross-section central air shaft, which relies upon the stack effect to bring in (usually cooler) outdoor air at the base and expels hotter exhaust air at the top. (Courtesy of Johnson Fain Pereira Associates, Architects, Los Angeles, and Kim, Casey and Harase, Inc., Engineers, Los Angeles. Photo by Wolfgang Simon.)*



(c)

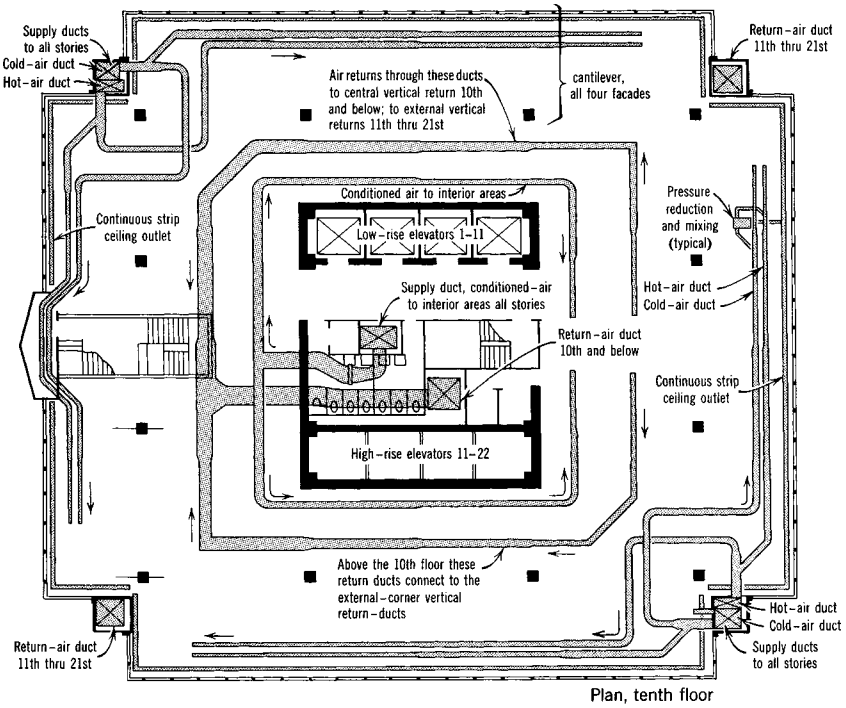


(d)

Fig. 10.10 *(Continued)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 10.11 *The International Building, San Francisco. Anshen and Allen, architects; Eagelson, Engineers (Charles Krieger, E.E.), mechanical designers. (Courtesy of* Progressive Architecture.*) (a) Photo of one of the four corner main duct enclosures. (b) Tenth-floor plan. Column bay spacing is 24 ft, 6 in. (7.5 m), with a 16-ft (4.9-m) cantilever on all four façades. The major supply ducts (both hot and cold) to all 21 floors are located in two opposite corners. Each of these supply distribution trees serves two adjacent sides of perimeter offices. The conditioned air is supplied from a third-floor mechanical space. In the opposite two corners, return air from the upper 11 floors is collected and taken down to the mechanical space. The remainder of the return air is taken down through the core.*

10.2 HVAC SYSTEM TYPES

Large buildings have so many thermal zones, and there are so many ways to move heat from one place to another, that hundreds of HVAC system variations have been devised. A few of the most typical are introduced in this section; the following section treats in detail the major components of HVAC production and delivery. Finally, some common variations on each of the four main system classifications are presented.

One way to classify HVAC systems is by the media used to transfer heat. Although thousands of liquids and gases can be used as carriers of heat, the three most common in building applications are air, water, and refrigerant. Traditionally, there are four main system classifications:

Direct refrigerant systems

All-air systems

Air and water systems

All-water systems

In the last three cases, the heating/cooling production equipment typically is located centrally in a large building, often rather far from the thermal zones it serves. The air-handling components may be either centrally served or served floor by floor. Distribution tree size and placement thus become important issues when those systems are selected. In direct refrigerant systems, the heating/cooling machine usually is located adjacent to the zone(s) it serves; thus, the machine's environment—the microclimate it creates and its needs relative to the zone's environment—becomes an important consideration.

(a) Direct Refrigerant Systems

These systems (see Chapter 9) nearly eliminate the distribution trees of air or water, relying instead on a heating/cooling device adjacent to or within the space to be served. Thus, they are prevalent in skin-load-dominated buildings with extensive perimeter zones; these tend to be smaller buildings.

(b) All-Air Systems

The more common variations on all-air systems are shown in Fig. 10.12. Because air is the only heat transfer medium used between the mechanical room (central station) and the zones it serves, and because air holds much less heat per unit volume than water, the distribution trees for this class are quite thick. Sometimes, to reduce duct sizes, higher velocities are used for supply air. This generates more noise and higher friction, resulting in more energy used by fans; higher velocity should be used only sparingly, where space limitations are extreme.

For comfort, however, these systems are, over all, the best. The quantities of air moved through the central station(s) are heated or cooled, humidity-controlled, filtered, and freshened with outdoor air—all under controlled conditions. Within the zones, supply diffusers/registers and return grilles allow a well-planned stream of conditioned air to thoroughly permeate all work areas. More details on air distribution are found in Section 10.4 and on this HVAC type in Section 10.5.

Single-Zone Systems. This (Fig. 10.12a) is the common small-building forced air-system controlled by a single thermostat.

Single-Duct, Variable-Air-Volume (VAV) Systems. This (Fig. 10.12*c*) is the most popular large-building system of recent years. Its single duct requires less building volume for distribution than do multiduct systems, and the variation of air *volume* flow rate (rather than of air temperature) saves energy relative to the single duct with reheat (Fig. 10.12*e*). Depending on outdoor conditions and prevailing indoor needs, the central station supplies at normal velocity either a heated or a cooled stream of air. Automatic volume controls (linked to each zone's thermostat) adjust the volume admitted to that zone within an air terminal diffuser (often located above a suspended ceiling). When the central station is supplying cold air, a zone that needs more cooling will get more air; an unoccupied room with no internal gains, or a space with heat loss through an exterior wall, will get less air. Clearly, such a system is well suited to serve the interior, always-hot zones of internal-load-dominated buildings. Less clear is its suitability for the perimeter zones of buildings in cold, cloudy conditions.

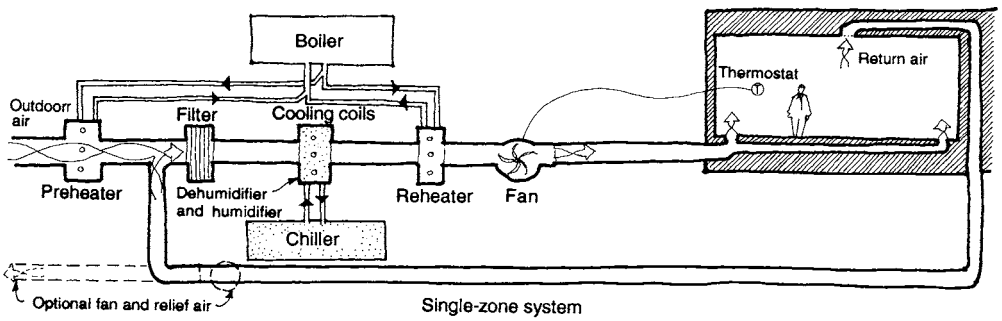
Fan-Powered VAV Systems. This variation (Fig. 10.12*f*) allows individual units to heat when the main supply system is cooling; it might therefore

serve perimeter zones. In this case, the cool air is reduced to the minimum required for acceptable indoor air quality (IAQ), and the unit's fan draws additional air from a ceiling (or floor) plenum, heating it as required.

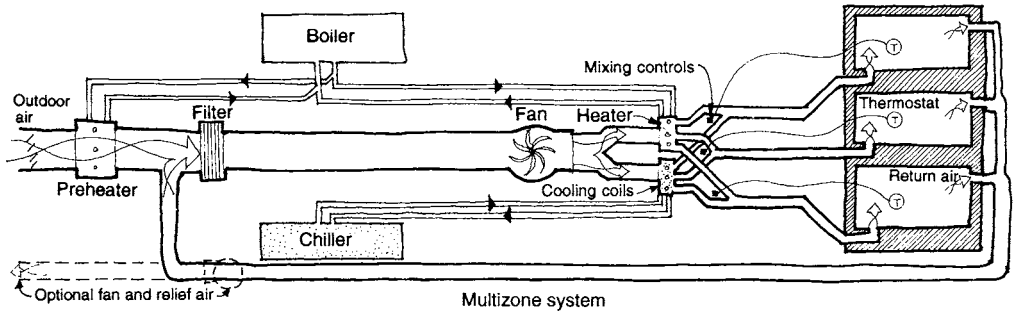
Multizone Systems. Because each zone has an individual centrally conditioned airstream, the total distribution tree volume grows to astonishing size with only a few zones. The central station produces both warm and cool airstreams, which are mixed at the central location to suit each zone. These systems (Fig. 10.12*b*) are more likely to be found on medium-sized buildings or on larger buildings in which smaller central stations are located on each floor. The single-return airstream collects air from all zones (as is the case for the other systems in this class). Energy savings result when a "bypass" deck is added, allowing each zone to choose some unthermally treated return air as part of the supply air.

Single-Duct with Reheat. This (Fig. 10.12*e*) system (along with VAV) has the smallest distribution tree of this class, because at each zone the only object added to the duct is a small reheat coil (heat provided by steam, hot water, or electric resistance). (Technically, this could also be called an *air and water system*.) The central station provides a single stream of cold air that must be cold enough to meet the maximum cooling demand of any one zone. All other zones *reheat* this air as needed. In cold weather, outdoor air at temperatures as low as 38°F (3°C) can be used; the colder this single central airstream, the less air need be circulated (and the smaller the ducts). For buildings with large interior zones in most U.S. climates, however, the central airstream must be *cooled* most of the time; then more energy must be spent to reheat the airstream at most zones. These systems thus are notorious for energy wastage, although careful engineering can make them attractive for some climates.

Dual-Duct, Constant-Volume Systems. The dual- (or double-) duct system requires two complete distribution trees (Fig. 10.12*d*); at the height of summer the cooling airstream does all the work,

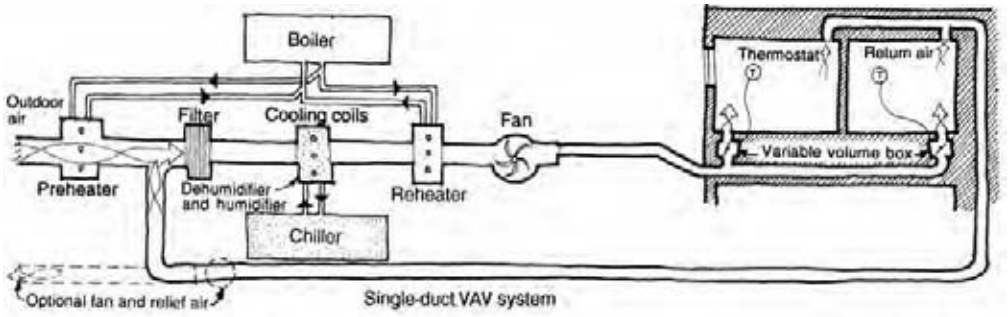


(*a*)

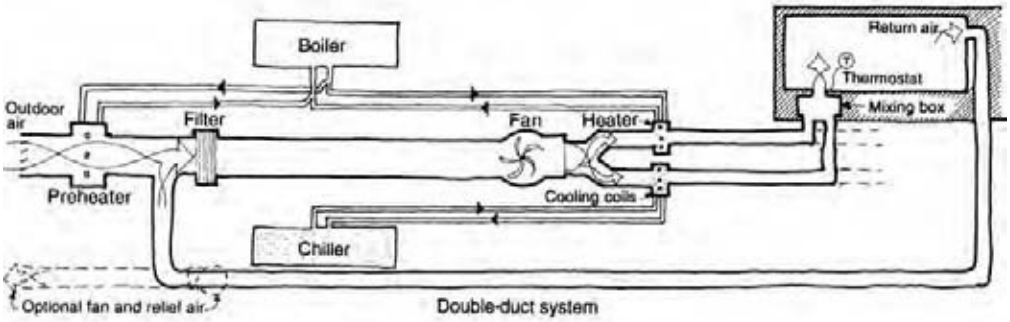


(*b*)

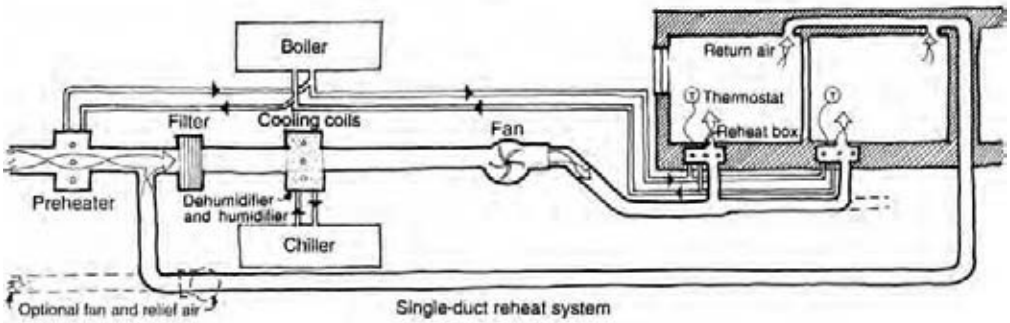
Fig. 10.12 *(a–f) Schematic diagrams of all-air HVAC systems. An underfloor air supply is shown here to simplify the diagram, but a ceiling supply is much more common.*



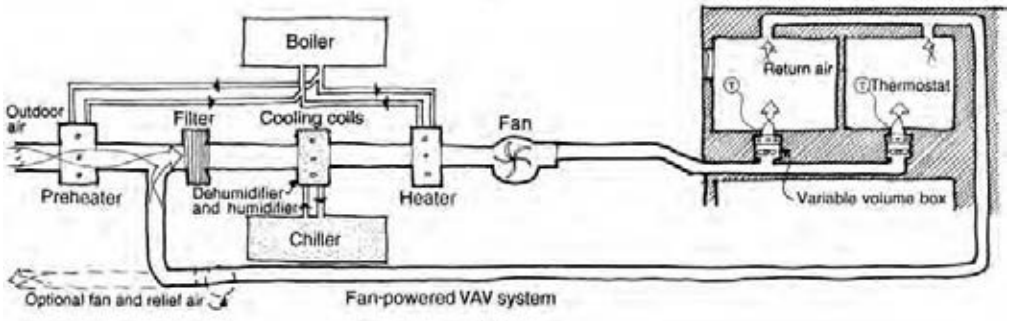
(c)



(d)



(e)



(f)

Fig. 10.12 *(Continued)*

whereas in the coldest winter conditions the heating airstream carries the load. Most of the time, air from these two streams is mixed to order at each zone's air terminals. Because both temperature and volume can be controlled, this system offers better comfort under reduced load conditions (for example, an only partially occupied room) than does the single-duct VAV system. However, it is much more expensive to install, consumes much building volume for the two distribution trees, and usually consumes more energy than the single-duct VAV system that has largely replaced it.

(c) Air and Water Systems

Several variations on air and water systems are shown in Fig. 10.13. Most of the heating and cooling of each zone is accomplished via the water

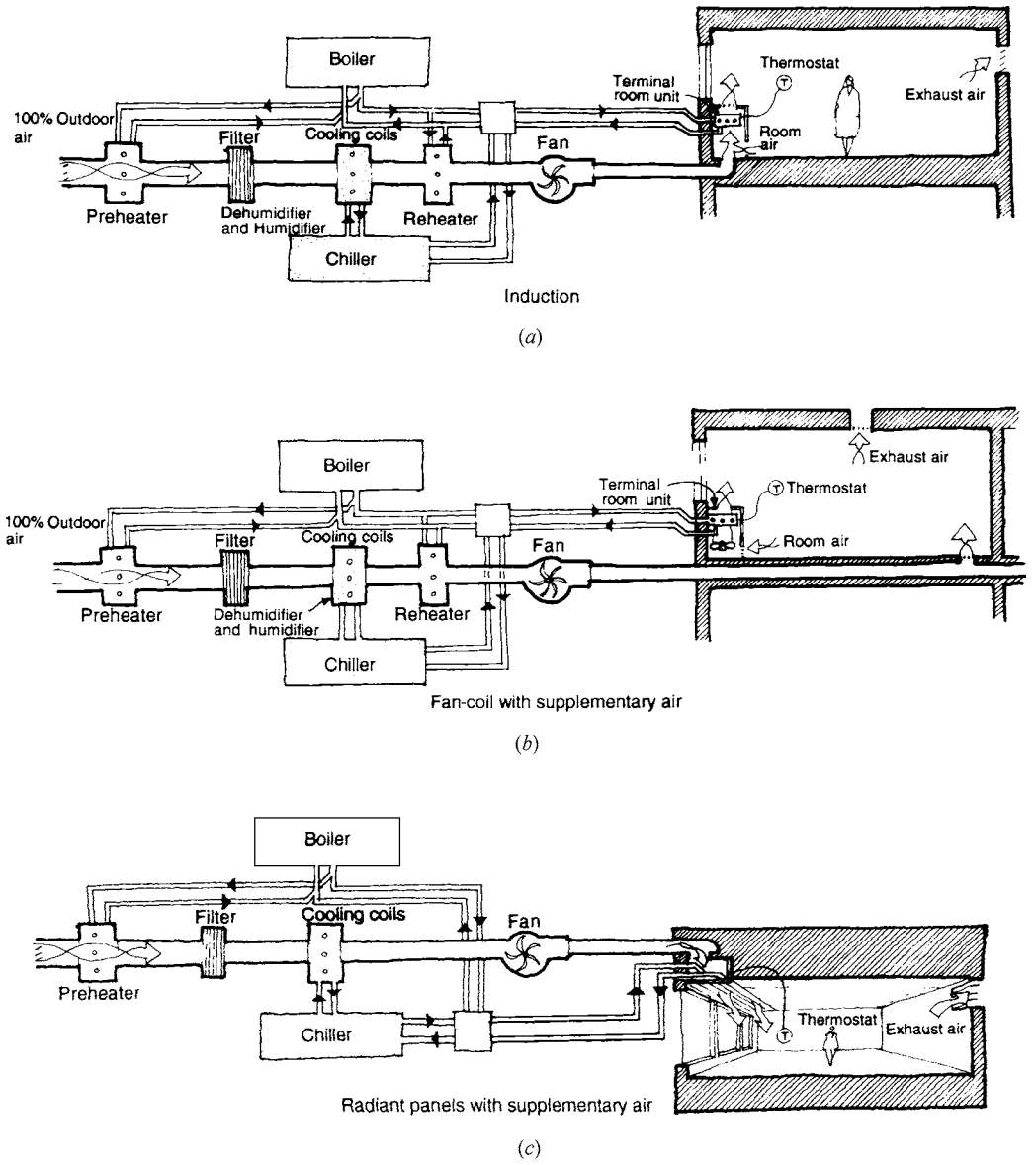


Fig. 10.13 *(a–c) Schematic diagrams of air and water HVAC systems. An underfloor air supply is shown here to simplify the diagram, but a ceiling supply is more common. In (b) the supplementary air is often delivered directly to the fan-coil unit.*

distribution tree, which is much thinner than the tree needed by air. For air quality—filtering, humidity, freshness—a small, centrally conditioned airstream, equal to the total fresh air required, is provided. Thus, several distribution trees are involved, yet the total space they require is almost always less than that required by all-air systems.

Exhaust air may be gathered in a return air duct system, making heat recovery possible. Or (as a cheaper alternative) air can be exhausted locally to avoid the construction of yet another distribution tree. If the water distribution provides either heating *or* cooling only, it is called a *two-pipe system* (shown throughout Fig. 10.13). If it provides simultaneous heating *and* cooling, it is a *four-pipe system*. (Three-pipe systems are a lower-first-cost alternative allowing simultaneous heating and cooling [from two supply pipes with a single return pipe], but they waste energy by mixing hot return and cold return water flows in one return pipe. They are no longer permitted in most locales.)

This class of system frequently serves the perimeter zones of large buildings, whereas all-air systems (commonly, single-duct VAV) are used for the interior zones. More details on this HVAC class can be found in Section 10.6.

Induction Systems. This (Fig. 10.13*a*) previously common system's terminal units may be found below windows throughout the United States. A high-velocity (and high-pressure), constant-volume fresh air supply is brought to each terminal, where it is forced through an opening in such a way that air already within the room (*bypass*, or secondary, air) is *induced* to join the incoming jet of air. A fairly thorough circulation of room air is thus accomplished with only a little centrally treated air. Air then passes over finned tubes for heating or cooling. Thermostats control the unit's output by controlling either the flow of the water or the flow of secondary air.

Fan-Coil with Supplementary Air. Another (Fig. 10.13*b*) familiar piece of below-window equipment is the fan-coil, which moves room air as it provides either heating or cooling. Centrally conditioned, tempered fresh air is brought to the space in a constant-volume stream; the fan moves both fresh and room air across a coil that either heats or cools the air, as required.

Radiant Panels with Supplementary Air. As suggested in Fig. 10.13*c*, either ceiling or wall panels contain the heated or cooled water to provide a large surface for radiant heat exchange. Centrally conditioned, tempered fresh air is brought to the space in a constant-volume stream. The "piece of equipment" within the space is replaced by a large surface, which must be kept clear of obstructions to radiant heat exchange.

Water Loop Heat Pumps. Because individual heat pumps are used, this system is closely related to direct refrigerant systems. It is often considered an all-water system, but may be configured with a central outdoor air supply (as in an air-water system). Heat pumps (water-to-air) either draw heat from the water circulation loop (in heating mode) or discharge heat to it (in cooling mode). For a large building in cold weather, excess heat from the interior zones is used to warm the perimeter zones. The loop's temperature ranges between 65°F and 90°F (18°C and 32°C); in hot weather, a central cooling tower disposes of the loop's excess heat, whereas in cold weather a central boiler adds needed heat to the water loop. The loop is sized to carry 2 to 3 gpm (0.13 to 0.19 L/s) per ton, where the total tonnage equals the sum of the capacity of all the individual units (often greater than the actual load).

(d) All-Water Systems

The more simple-appearing all-water systems are shown in Fig. 10.14. These systems only heat and cool; the distribution trees are indeed slim. Air quality is dealt with elsewhere—either locally, by means of infiltration or windows; or by a separate fresh air supply system; or simply by fresh air from an adjacent system, such as a ventilated interior zone. This ambiguity about fresh air leads to similar ambiguities about whether a system is air-and-water or all-water. A fan-coil terminal is often employed so that air motion occurs along with heating or cooling. (Sometimes the fan-coil unit is located against the exterior wall so that fresh air may be brought in and mixed with the room air through the fan.) Both baseboard and valence (above-window) units are also commonly available.

Because air is handled so locally, there is very little mixing of air from one zone to another, making this attractive where potential air contamination

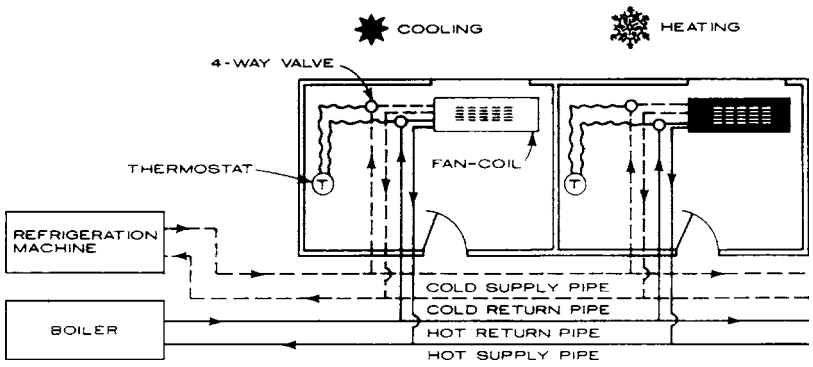


Fig. 10.14 *Schematic diagram of all-water HVAC systems. Four-pipe distribution trees require smaller volumes than do those for air systems; however, less thorough provision of outdoor air is a potential concern.*

(or smoke from a fire) is a special concern. It is also an easy system to retrofit. However, maintenance is high; filters in each fan-coil must be cleaned, and drain pans are potentially problematic.

More details on this HVAC system class can be found in Section 10.7.

Two-pipe water distribution systems were shown throughout Fig. 10.13. They provide either heating or cooling. One pipe is for supply, the other for return. In a typical large-building application, they are used for heating in winter, cooling in summer. This raises the question of what changeover period will be required, a problem made much easier with the following alternative system.

Four-pipe systems are shown in Fig. 10.14. They allow quick changeover between heating and cooling, utilizing two supply and two return pipes. A four-pipe system also allows for simultaneous cooling and heating in different zones within a single distribution system.

(e) Equipment Space Allocations

An important early design decision is whether to integrate or separate the *heating/cooling* equipment and the *air-handling* equipment (see Fig. 10.2). If they are integrated, one or a few central mechanical room(s) can serve many floors, and each mechanical room will need area and height sufficient for both heating/cooling and air-handling equipment. If separated, one (or several, in tall buildings) large space for heating/cooling equipment is typically located in the basement or the penthouse, with a smaller fan room on each floor.

Each mechanical room should have both a central location relative to the area it serves and direct access to the outside—contradictory requirements in many cases. Central locations within the area served minimize the distribution tree size; access to the outdoors facilitates the use of outdoor air as a heat source (winter) or sink (summer) and allows equipment to be installed or removed in later remodeling. Mechanical rooms serving both heating/cooling and air-handling equipment need relatively high ceilings; 12-ft (3.7-m) clear is a typical minimum, 20-ft (6-m) clear a typical maximum.

Tables 10.3 and 10.4 present the approximate space requirements for conventional mechanical systems. (For a more detailed look at equipment room space requirements, see Figs. 10.18, 10.29, and 10.42.)

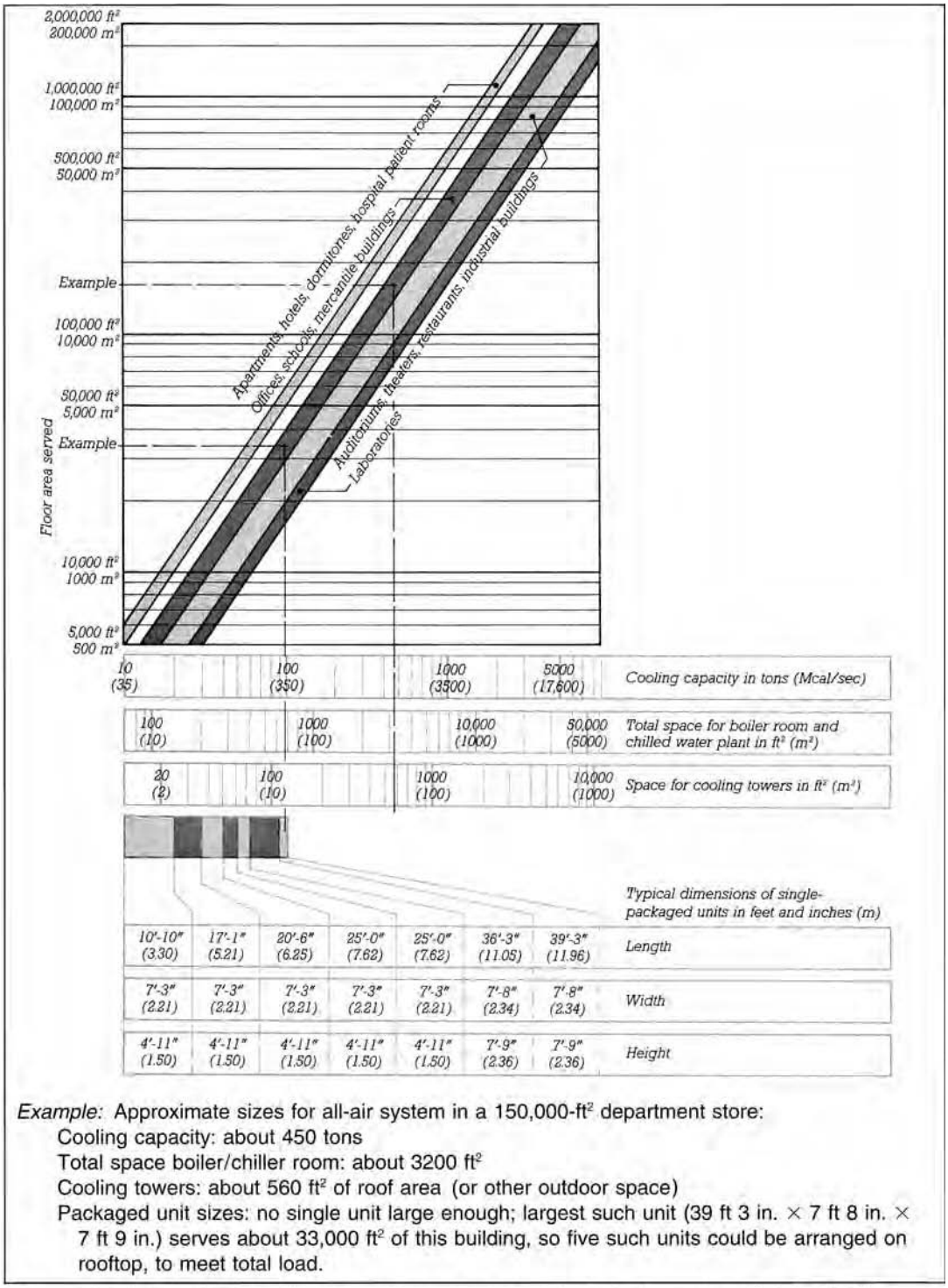
The sizing graphs shown in Tables 10.3 and 10.4 are generous if buildings are designed with energy conservation in mind. For buildings with large heat gains or losses, these graphs may slightly undersize the areas needed. These graphs are intended to give a very fast approximation of areas; more detailed procedures for sizing are presented in Section 10.3 (for boilers, chillers, fan rooms) and Section 10.4 (for air ducts).

EXAMPLE 10.1 Estimate the central equipment room floor space needed to serve the Oregon office building (Fig. 8.6) that was analyzed for passive performance throughout Chapter 8. The total floor area of this office building is 24,000 ft^2 (2230 m^2).

SOLUTION

Enter Table 10.3, spaces for heating and cooling, for an office building at 24,000 ft^2. The space for the

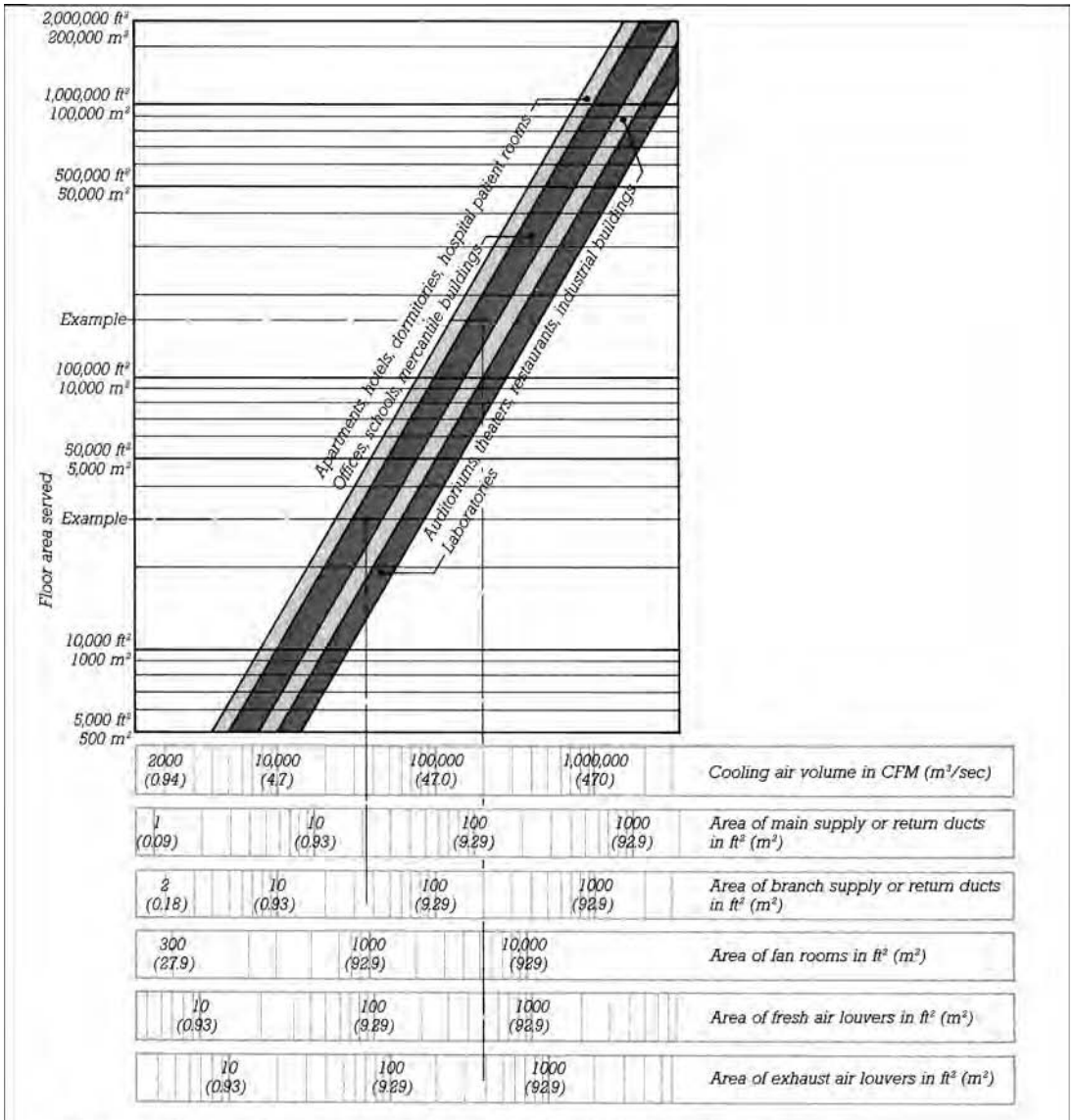
TABLE 10.3 Approximate Space Sizes for Major Heating and Cooling Equipment



Example: Approximate sizes for all-air system in a 150,000-ft² department store:
Cooling capacity: about 450 tons
Total space boiler/chiller room: about 3200 ft²
Cooling towers: about 560 ft² of roof area (or other outdoor space)
Packaged unit sizes: no single unit large enough; largest such unit (39 ft 3 in. × 7 ft 8 in. × 7 ft 9 in.) serves about 33,000 ft² of this building, so five such units could be arranged on rooftop, to meet total load.

Source: Reprinted by permission from Edward Allen and Joseph Iano, *The Architect's Studio Companion*, 4th ed. ©2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

TABLE 10.4 Approximate Space Sizes for Air-Handling Equipment



Example: Approximate sizes for all-air system in a 150,000-ft² department store:
Central fan: moves a volume of about 220,000 cfm
Main supply/return ducts: each, 120 ft² total cross-sectional area
Branch supply/return ducts: each, 300 ft² total cross-sectional area
Fan rooms: 5200 ft² total area
Fresh air louvers: 500 ft² total area
Exhaust air louvers: 400 ft² total area
If rooftop packaged units are used, each unit needs both supply and return main duct area of about 21 ft²; and both supply and return branch duct area of about 35 ft².

Source: Reprinted by permission from Edward Allen and Joseph Iano, *The Architect's Studio Companion*, 4th ed. ©2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

boiler and chiller is estimated at about 500 ft^2. Enter Table 10.4, spaces for air handling, for an office building at 24,000 ft^2. The space for the fan room is estimated at about 800 ft^2. Thus, a central mechanical room (boiler, chiller, and main fans) is estimated at 500 + 800 = 1300 ft^2 (121 m^2). (The actual size of the mechanical room in this building is 1200 ft^2, very close to the prediction.)

Now, approximate the largest duct sizes required. On the building's upper floor are five bays, each 1440 ft^2, for a total of 7200 ft^2 (669 m^2). The building's mechanical room is beyond the east end of this upper floor, so all the HVAC system supply air must enter through one end of the central duct. Enter Table 10.4, spaces for air handling, for an office building at 7200 ft^2. The following ranges of sizes are indicated:

Volume of air: 7000–11,000 cfm

Area, main supply or return ducts: 4 to 6.5 ft^2

(The actual central supply duct maximum size in this building's upper floor is 2.6 ft^2. The table thus overestimated the duct size by about 150% for this well-insulated, shaded, and daylit building.) ■

Cooling equipment capacity is often rated in tons of refrigeration. The relationship between tons and floor area served is explored in Table 10.5.

For the thermally well-designed detached *residence* of today, a design guideline is 1000 ft^2 of floor area/ton (26 m^2/kW).

10.3 CENTRAL EQUIPMENT

The many HVAC systems that are included in the categories of all-air, air and water, and all-water have in common a dependence on *central equipment* for the generation of heating and cooling, and/or air quality control. Figure 10.15 shows the basic relationships between some of the major pieces of central equipment and the spaces they serve. This section offers a general guide to some central equipment options and sizes. The consulting engineer chooses such equipment based upon a much more detailed analysis.

(a) Boilers

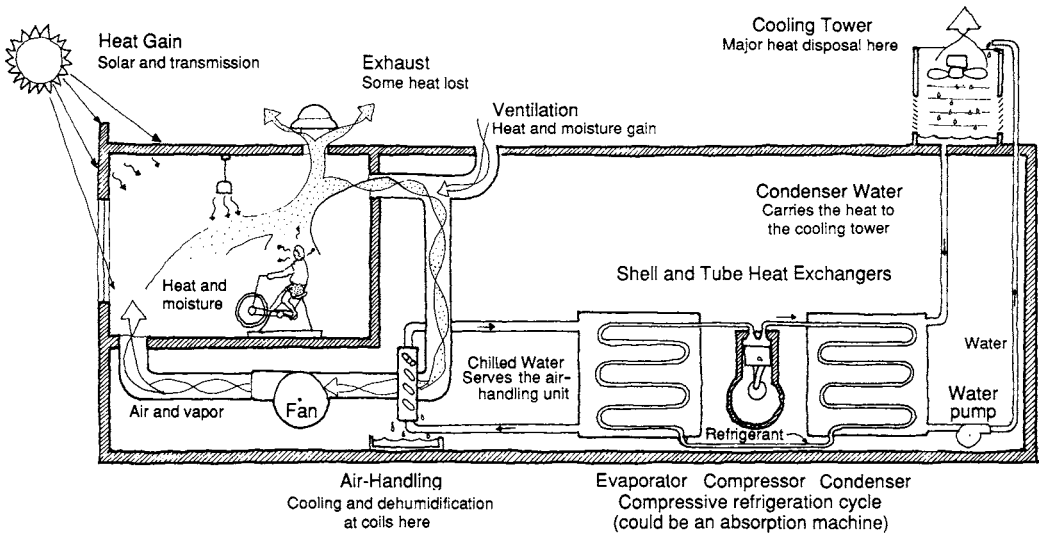
These devices heat the recirculating hot water system used for building heating. The type of boiler selected depends on the size of the heating load, the heating fuels available, the desired efficiency of operation, and whether single or modular boilers are to be installed. Boiler sizes are commonly stated

TABLE 10.5 Tons of Refrigeration: Design Guidelines

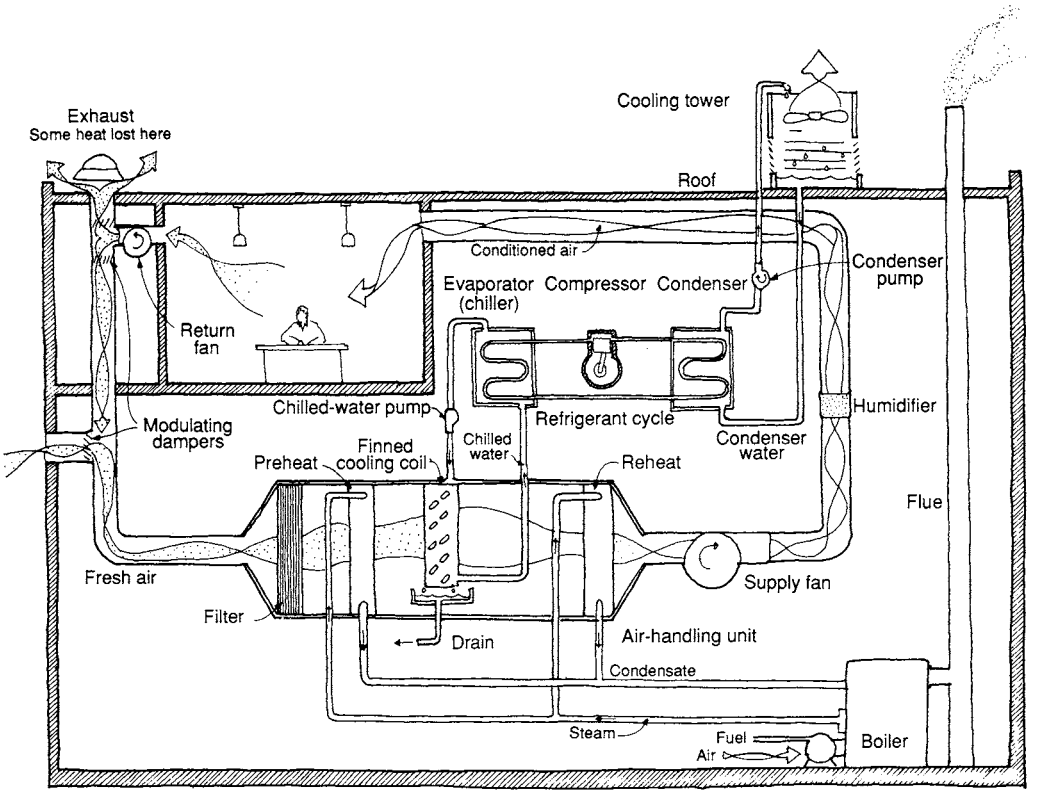
	Floor Area Served		
Type of Occupancy	**ft^2/ton**	**m^2/ton**	**Assumptions**
General occupancy: Perimeter spaces Interior spaces	350–550	32.5–51	400 cfm/ton (189 L/s per ton) 1.5 cfm/ft^2 (0.7 L/s per m^2) 0.6 cfm/ft^2 (0.3 L/s per m^2)
Offices	500	46.5	200 ft^2/person (18.6 m^2/person) 3.5 W/ft^2 (38 W/m^2) for lights, equipment
High-rise apartments North-facing Other orientations	 1000 500	 93 46.5	
Hospitals	333	31	1000 ft^2/bed (93 m^2/bed)
Shopping centers Department stores Specialty stores	400	37	 2 W/ft^2 (21.5 W/m^2) 5 W/ft^2 (53.8 W/m^2)
Hotels	350	32.5	
Restaurants	150	14	
Central plants Urban districts College campuses Commercial centers Residential centers	 380 320 475 500	 35.5 29.5 44 46.5	

Source: Grondzik (2007). Reprinted with permission of American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.

Note: 1 ton = 12,000 Btu/h (= 3.514 kW).



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 10.15 *Some basic components of HVAC central equipment. (a) A simplified diagram of a cooling cycle, in which chilled water is circulated to air-handling coils and heat is disposed of through a cooling tower. (b) Schematic diagram of major components of central equipment for both heating and cooling.*

either in Btu/h of net output or in (gross) boiler horsepower, where, in I-P units,

$$\text{boiler horsepower} = \frac{\text{heating load (Btu/h)}}{\%\,\text{boiler efficiency}} \times 33{,}470\ \text{Btu/h per horsepower}$$

In SI units,

$$\text{boiler horsepower} = \frac{\text{heating load (kW)}}{\%\,\text{boiler efficiency}} \times 9.81\ \text{kW per horsepower}$$

Efficiency depends partly on the number of passes that the hot gases make through the water—the more passes, the higher the efficiency. It also depends on burner efficiency and on regular maintenance. Finally, efficiency is best when the equipment is operating near its capacity. Figure 10.16 compares typical boiler types, including two- and three-pass boilers.

Fire Tube Boilers. The hot gases of the fire are taken through tubes that are surrounded by the water to be heated. Firebox boilers place the boiler shell on top of the combustion chamber. Scotch marine boilers feature multiple passes of the combustion gas through tubes. Fire tube boilers can be either dryback or wetback. Dryback designs have chambers outside the vessel to take combustion gases from the furnace to the tank. Wetback designs have water-cooled chambers that conduct the combustion gases.

Water Tube Boilers. The water to be heated is taken through tubes that are surrounded by the boiler's fire. They hold less water than the fire tube models, and so respond faster and can generate steam (where desired) at higher pressures.

Cast-Iron Boilers. Often used in residential and light-commercial applications, these are lower-pressure and lower-efficiency boilers. They do have the advantage of being modular.

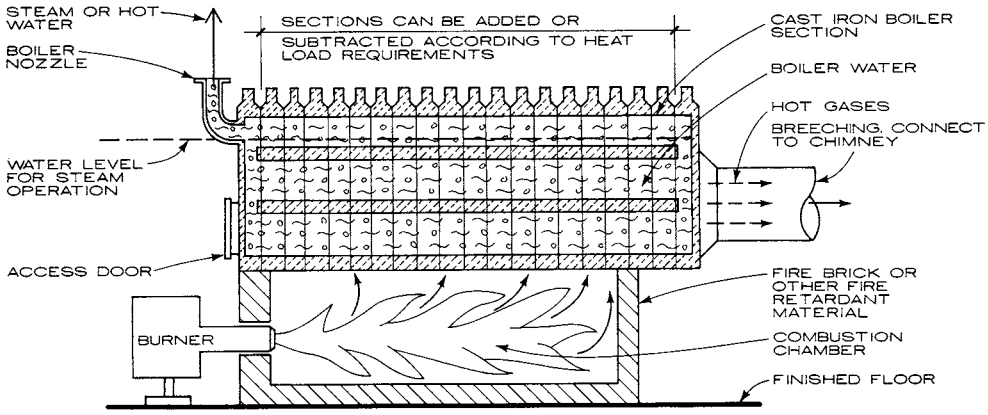
In addition to the boilers themselves, there are choices of burner types (depending on the fuel[s] used), burner controls, and boiler feedwater systems. Consult the latest *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment* for details.

Fossil fuel–burning boilers need flues for exhaust gases, fresh air for combustion, and required air pollution control equipment. The exhaust gas is usually first taken *horizontally* from the boiler; this horizontal enclosure, or flue, is called the *breeching*. The *vertical* flue section is called the *stack*. Guidelines for sizes and arrangements of breeching and stacks are shown in Fig. 10.17. Local codes determine the quantity of air required for combustion; local air pollution authorities set pollution control requirements. As a general rule, combustion air can be supplied in a duct to the boiler at an average velocity of 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s). The duct should be large enough to carry at least 2 cfm (1 L/s) per boiler horsepower. Furthermore, ventilation air to the boiler room should be provided; preferably, the inlet and outlet should be on opposite sides of the room. Minimum sizes: enough for 2 cfm (1 L/s) per boiler horsepower at a velocity of about 500 fpm (2.5 m/s).

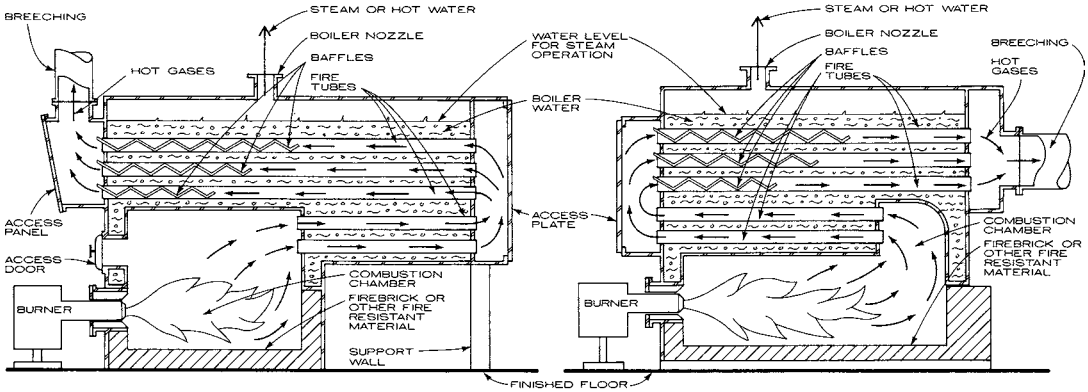
Space requirements for boilers are summarized in Fig. 10.18, which shows multiple boilers. Note that clear space within the room must be provided so that the tubes of the boiler can be pulled when they must be replaced. Access for eventually replacing entire boilers must be considered.

Several types of single boilers are discussed here. The final boiler type discussed, the modular boiler, is preferred for energy conservation.

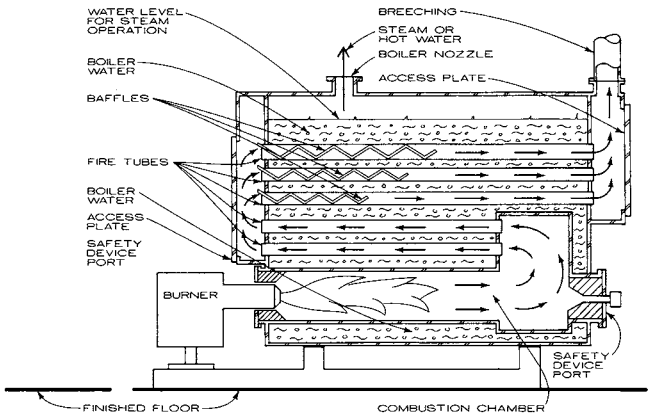
1. *High-output, package-type steel boiler.* For large buildings that use steam as a primary heating medium, one or several such boilers may be used. Direct use of steam can be seen in Fig. 10.15*b*, supplying preheat and reheat coils and also a humidifying unit. The relative lightness of this boiler type, compared to the older styles with ponderous masonry bases (boiler settings), makes it suitable for use on upper floors of tall buildings. Figure 10.6 shows two such boilers on the 13th floor of the Fox Plaza Building.
2. *Converter, steam to hot water.* When, in a building that uses primary steam boilers, secondary circuits that use hot water for heating are required, a converter (Fig. 10.19) is used. It is considered a heat exchanger. In Fig. 10.6, there is downfeed steam supply for the two boilers on the 13th floor to two such converters, one for hot water heating in the apartments and one below the garage ceiling for hot water heating in the commercial area. A converter may also be used to transfer heat from steam to *domestic* (service) water.



(*a*)

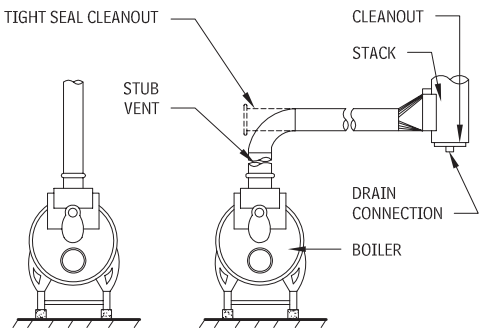


(*b*) (*c*)



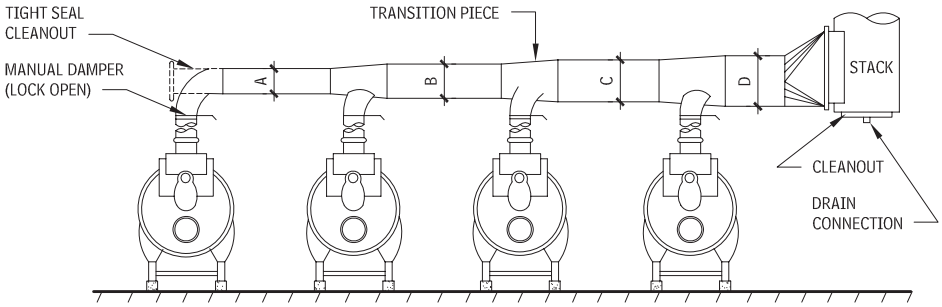
(*d*)

Fig. 10.16 *Comparisons of boiler types. (a) Cast-iron sectional type. (b) Two-pass fire tube. (c) Three-pass fire tube. (d) Three-pass wetback Scotch marine. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed.; © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*



STACK DIAMETER—MULTIPLE BOILERS, COMMON BREECHING AND STACK

MINIMUM STACK DIAMETER (IN)						
NUMBER OF BOILERS	2		3		4	
LENGTH OF STACK	100'	200'	100'	200'	100'	200'
BOILER HORSEPOWER						
25–40	11	12	13	14	14	16
50–60	13	14	15	16	17	18
70–100	16	17	19	20	21	23
125–200	21	22	24	26	28	30
250–350	26	28	32	34	34	40
400–600	32	34	38	40	42	46



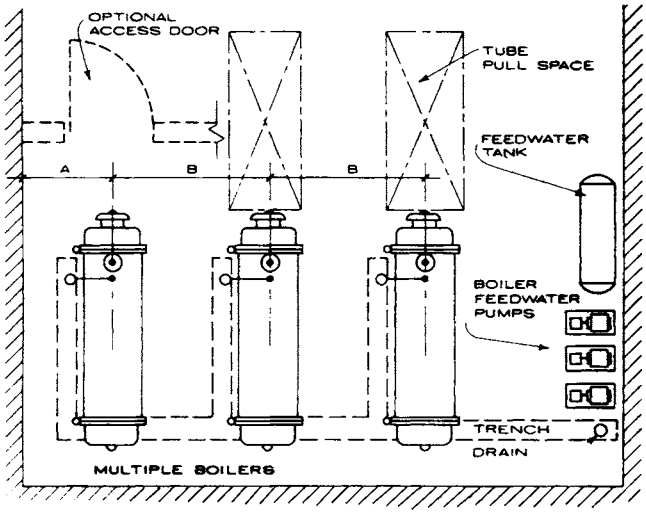
MULTIPLE BOILERS WITH COMMON BREECHING

MINIMUM BREECHING DIAMETER (IN)				
NUMBER OF BOILERS	1	2	3	3
BOILER HORSE-POWER	A	B	C	D
15–20	6	8	9	9
25–40	8	10	11	12
50–60	10	12	14	15
70–100	12	15	17	18
125–200	16	20	22	24
250–350	20	25	28	30
400–600	24	30	33	36
700–800	24	34	38	42

Fig. 10.17 *Breeching and stack size guidelines for fossil-fuel-fired boilers. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed.; © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

Converters are frequently used where central steam supply systems are available, as in large-city downtown areas. The easier, quieter distribution of heat by hot water has largely replaced steam heating distribution trees within buildings.

3. *Electric boilers.* Where electricity costs are competitive with those of fossil fuels, electric boilers are sometimes used. Both hot water and steam electric boilers are available. The advantage of electric boilers is the elimination of combustion air, the flue, and air pollution at the building. The disadvantages are the use of a high-grade energy source for a relatively low-grade task and the pollution impact at the electric generating plant. In order to protect against high



BOILER ROOM SPACE REQUIREMENTS

BOILER HP	15–40	50–100	125–200	250–350	400–800
Dimension A	5′-9″	6′-6″	6′-10″	7′-9″	8′-6″
Dimension B	7′-5″	8′-9″	9′-7″	11′-9″	14′-3″

Fig. 10.18 *Boiler room space requirements. Dimension A includes an aisle of 3 ft 6 in. (1 m) between the boiler and the wall. Dimension B between the boilers includes an aisle of at least 3 ft 6 in. (1 m), and up to 5 ft (1.5 m) for the largest boilers. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 10th ed.; © 2000 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

electric demand charges, a large number of control steps are desirable.

4. *Compact boilers.* Smaller-dimension boilers (Fig. 10.20) with high thermal efficiencies are available. In addition to their space-saving footprint, they feature a variety of venting options that make them easily adaptable to smaller equipment rooms.
5. *Modular boilers.* The primary advantage of modular boilers (Fig. 10.21) is efficiency. Boilers achieve maximum efficiency when they are operated continuously at their full-rated fuel input. The single boilers discussed previously operate this way only under outside design conditions, which by definition occur, at most, during 5% of a normal winter. In a modular boiler design, each section is run independently. Therefore, only one section need be fired for the mildest heating needs; as the weather gets colder, more sections are gradually added. Because each section operates continuously at full-rated fuel input, efficiency is greatly increased (Fig. 10.22). Each module, being rather small, requires little time to reach a useful temperature and (unlike the larger single boilers) does not waste a lot of heat as it cools down. Thus, modular boilers usually produce a 15% to 20% fuel savings for the heating season relative to single boilers. Their other advantages include ease of maintenance (one module can be cleaned while others carry the heating load) and small size (allowing easy installation and replacement in existing buildings).

Modular boilers also eliminate the initial cost of *oversizing* heating equipment. In cold climates, conventional boiler systems often use two or three large boilers to ensure that heat is available even if one large boiler fails. When two such boilers are used, it is common practice to size each boiler at two-thirds of the total heating load; an oversize of one-third results. When three such boilers are used, it is common practice to size each boiler at 40% of the total heating load; an oversize of 20% results. However, when a minimum of five modular boilers are used, oversizing can be eliminated because the failure of a single module will not have a crippling impact on the overall heat output.

Gas-fired pulse boilers are an even smaller and more energy-efficient choice for modular boilers.

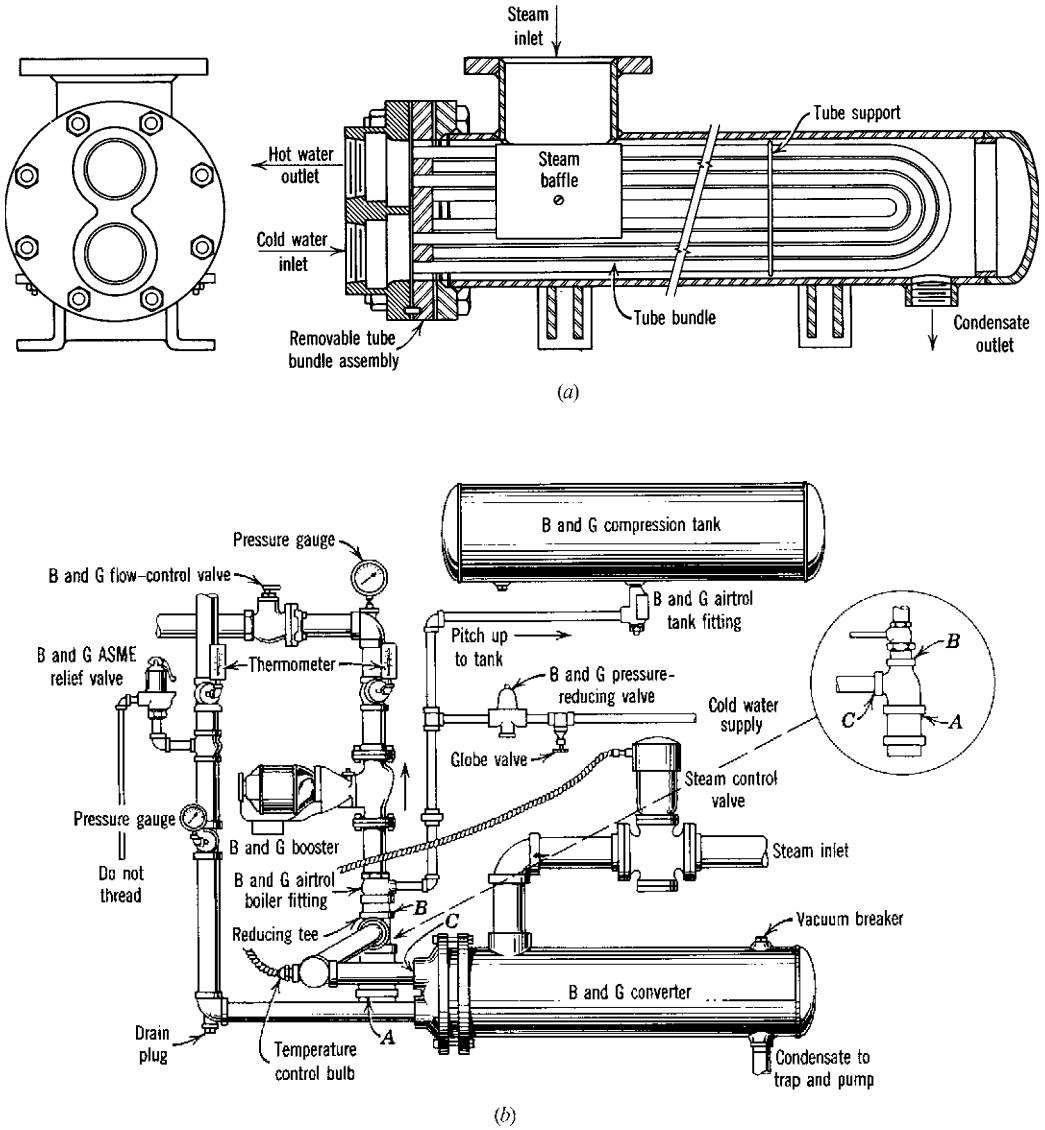


Fig. 10.19 *Conversion unit that transfers heat from steam to hot water. (a) Section illustrating the principle of heat transfer from steam to water. (b) A converter connected to the steam supply and equipped with all devices necessary for a complete hot water heating system. (Courtesy of ITT Bell and Gossett.)*

Pulse boilers utilize a series of 60 to 70 small explosions per second, making the hot flue gases pulse as they pass through the firetube. This makes for very efficient heat transfer. Pulse boilers are available up to about 300,000 Btu/h (88 kW).

Pulse boilers operate with lower water temperatures so that water vapor in the flue gas can condense and drain. This change of state liberates additional heat, allowing these pulse boilers to achieve efficiencies up to 90%. They exhaust moist air, not hot smoke, so flues can be small-diameter plastic pipe rather than large-diameter, heat-resistant materials.

(b) Chillers

These devices remove the heat gathered by the recirculating chilled water system as it cools the building. The selection of chillers depends largely on the fuel source and the total cooling load. Chillers

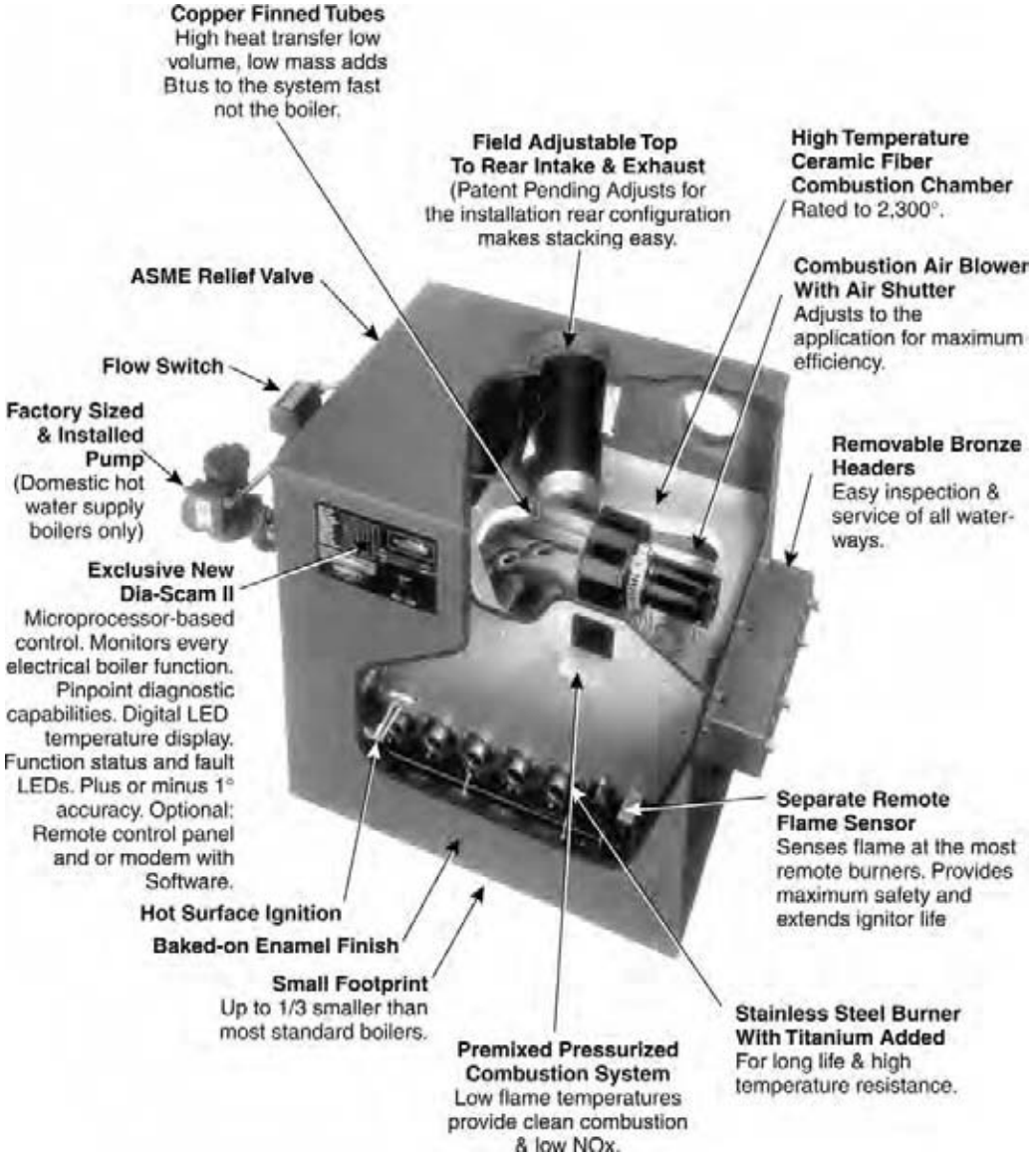


Fig. 10.20 *Burkay Genesis hot water boiler, fueled by either natural gas or propane, is available in ratings from 200,000 to 750,000 Btu/h (58,620 to 219,825 W). All units are 30 in. high × 24 in. deep (762 mm × 610 mm); the smallest boiler is 23 in. (584 mm) wide, and the largest is 57 in. (1454 mm) wide. The copper heat exchanger has an 83.7% thermal efficiency rating, and a variety of venting options are available. (Courtesy of A.O. Smith Water Products Company, Irving, TX.)*

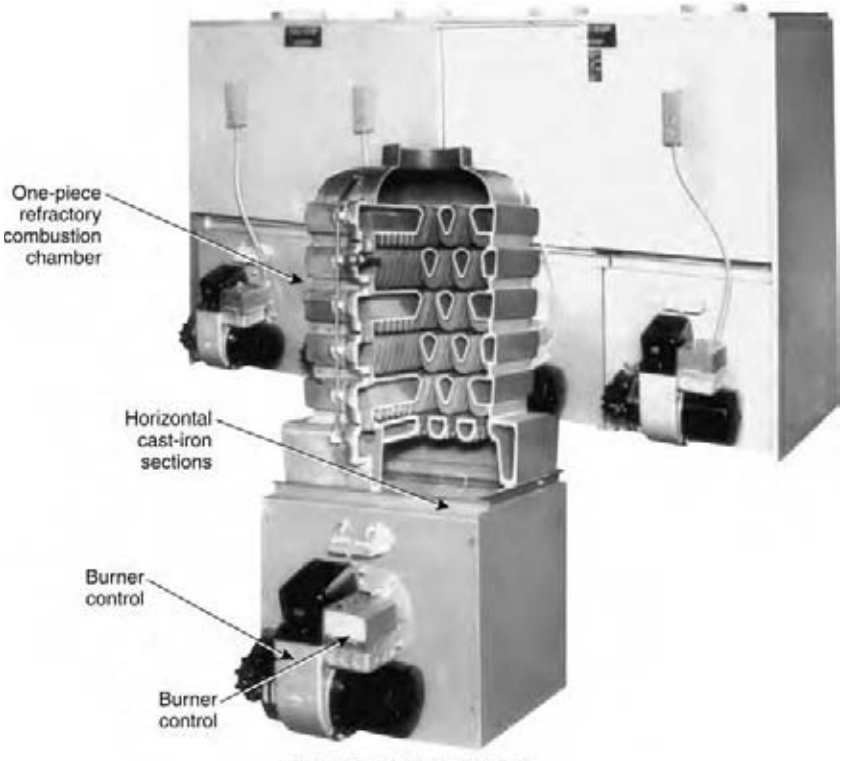
include both absorption and compressive refrigeration processes in a wide range of sizes.

New developments in chillers continue to result from a combination of concerns about the role of CFCs and HCFCs in global climate change and from changes in utility regulations that are producing unstable energy prices in many areas. Chillers capable of changing quickly between electricity and natural gas are becoming available as a result.

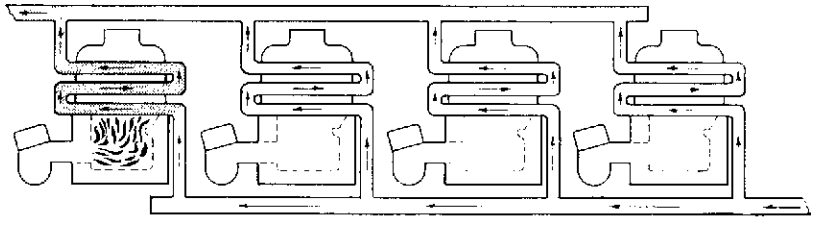
The single-effect, indirect-fired *absorption chiller* (Fig. 10.23) is attractive where central steam or high-temperature water (from solar collectors, as waste heat from an industrial process, a fuel cell, etc.) is available. This device uses the absorptive refrigeration cycle (explained in Fig. 9.2). Direct-fired



(*a*)



(*b*)



SCHEMATIC FLOW DIAGRAM

(*c*)

Fig. 10.21 *Modular boilers. (a) A bank of four modules—with a total input 1.5 million Btu/h (439 kW). (b) Details of one module (20 x 32 x 48 in. H [510 x 812 x 1220 mm]) with a 385,000 Btu/h (113 kW) input. (c) Schematic of flow conditions in mild weather, with only one module in operation.*

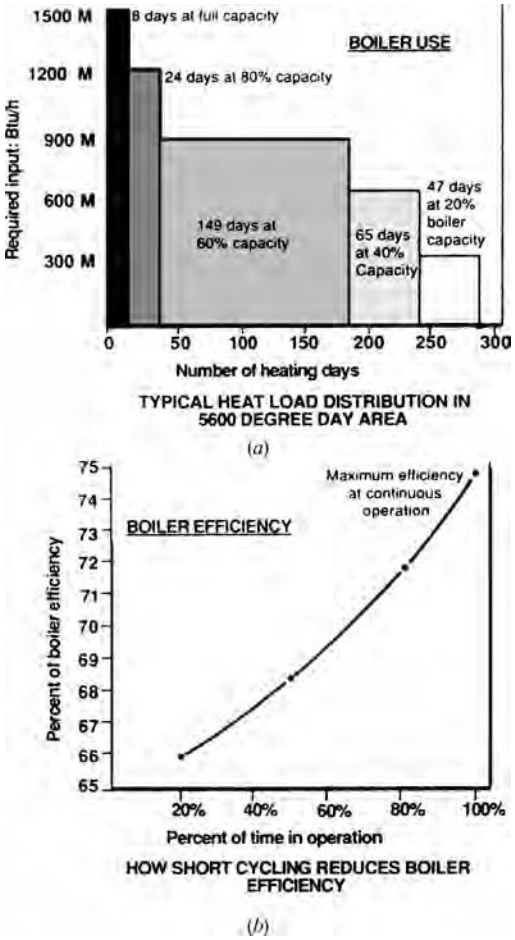
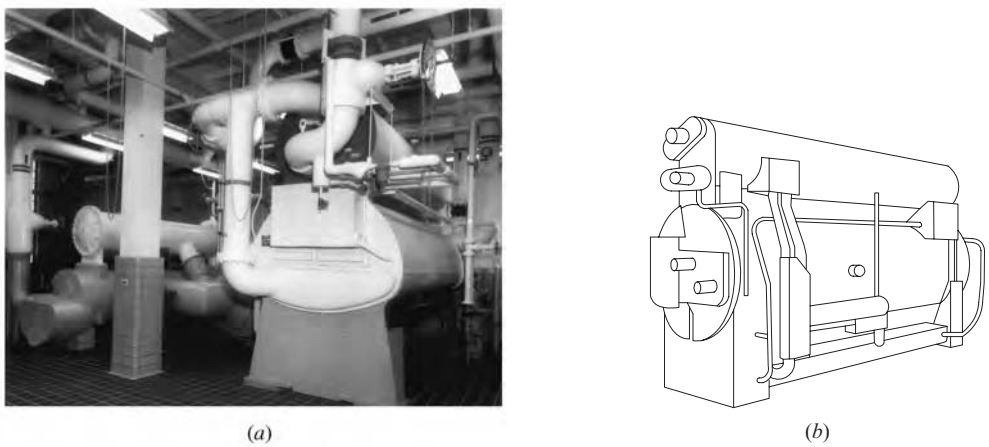


Fig. 10.22 *One large boiler versus many smaller ones. (a) Boilers rarely operate at full capacity; instead, they respond to part loads the majority of the time. (b) Under part load conditions, a boiler will often short-cycle, which on a single large boiler could drop the annual efficiency into the 66% to 75% range.*

absorption chillers use natural gas to power the cycle. In general, absorption equipment is less efficient than compressive refrigeration cycle equipment, although a cheap or even free heat source to power the cycle can rapidly overcome efficiency disadvantages. Absorption machines have fewer moving parts (and therefore require less maintenance) and are generally quieter than compressive cycle equipment. They are environmentally attractive, despite their much higher waste heat output (about 31,000 Btu/ton, compared to at most 15,000 Btu/ton for compressive cycle equipment), because they do not use CFCs or HCFCs and because they require far less electricity to operate. Newer developments include the double-effect absorption chiller (see Fig. 9.3) and the triple-effect chiller, each accompanied by an increase in efficiency.

The compressive refrigeration cycle (explained in Fig. 9.1) is used in the other types of chillers. Larger units are *centrifugal chillers* (Fig. 10.24), whose compressors either can be driven by an electric motor or can utilize a turbine driven by steam or gas. (When a steam-driven turbine is used, the exhaust steam is often used to run an auxiliary absorption cycle machine. These two devices make an efficient combination, and the steam plant that supplies them in summer can supply heating in winter.) Centrifugal chillers usually require about 1 hp/ton (0.57 kW, or 10 ft^3 gas, or about 15 lb of steam per ton). These large chillers usually require a cooling tower. *Dual-condenser chillers* (Fig. 10.25) can choose whether to reject their heat to a cooling tower (via the heat rejection condenser) or to building heating (via the heat recovery condenser).



(a) (b)

Fig. 10.23 *(a) An absorption chiller driven by heat to produce chilled water. (The Carrier Corporation; courtesy of Ingersoll-Rand.) (b) Two-stage absorption chiller utilizing steam, producing 200 to 800 tons (700–2800 kW) of cooling. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed.; © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

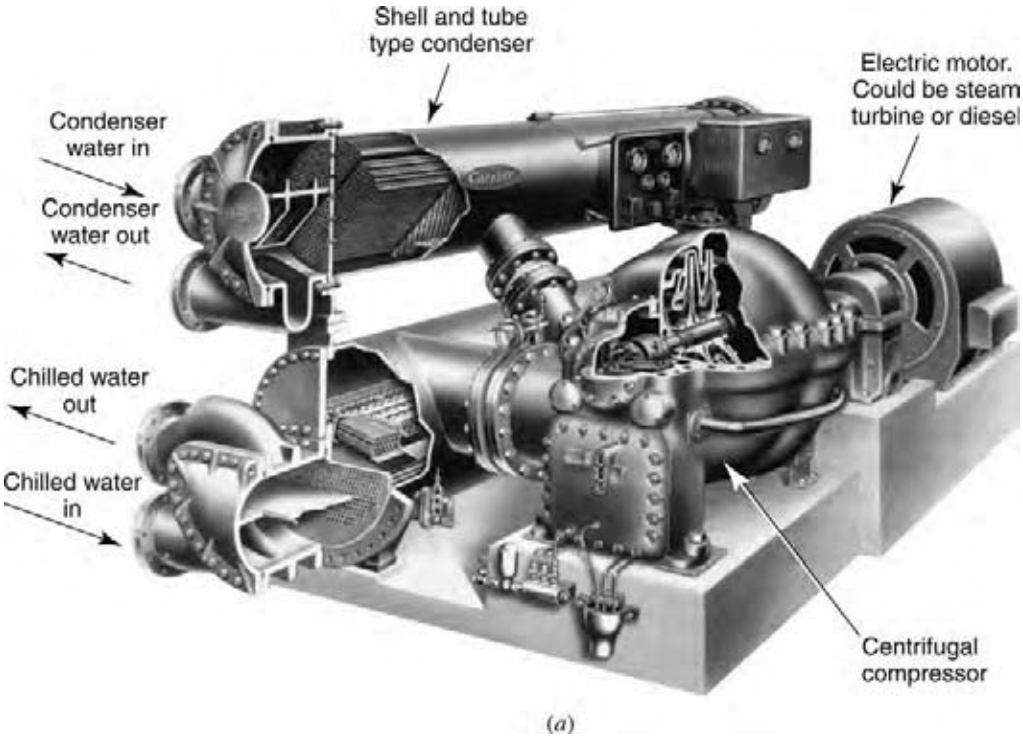


Fig. 10.24 *(a) A centrifugal chiller—a machine of large capacity using the compressive refrigeration cycle. (Courtesy of the Carrier Corporation.) (b) Centrifugal chiller with a flooded cooler and condenser within a single outer shell. This low-pressure unit typically produces 100 to 400 tons (350–1400 kW) of cooling. Typical dimensions are: 14 ft L x 5 ft W x 8 ft H (4.3 x 1.5 x 2.4 mm), at 16,000 lb (7260 kg). (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 7th ed.; © 1981 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

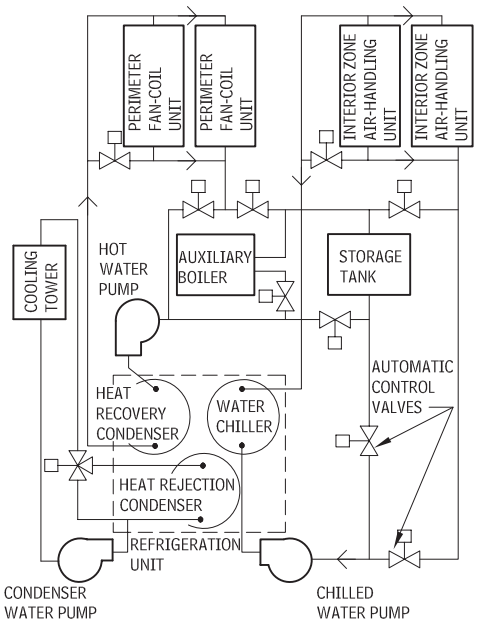


Fig. 10.25 *Dual-condenser chiller. Heat drawn from the chilled water system is either rejected to the cooling tower or recovered for use in building heating. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed.; © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

Somewhat smaller chillers use either twin screws or a scroll in place of a piston in the compressor. The screw compressor (Fig. 10.26) has a pair of helical screws; as they rotate, they mesh and thus compress the volume of the gas refrigerant. They are small and quiet, with little vibration. The scroll compressor (Fig. 10.27) uses two inter-fitting spiral-shaped scrolls. Again, the refrigerant gas is compressed as one scroll rotates against the other fixed one. Gas is brought in at one end while the compressed gas is released at the other. Quiet and low-maintenance, they are also more efficient than reciprocating compressors.

Even-smaller compressive-cycle machines are called *reciprocating chillers* (Fig. 10.28). Usually electrically driven, they are often combined with an air-cooled heat rejection process rather than a cooling tower. This makes them a closer relative of the smaller direct refrigerant machines discussed in Section 9.8.

Chilled water is usually supplied at between 40°F and 48°F (4°C and 9°C). When the chilled water is supplied cold and returns much warmer, the large rise in temperature reduces the initial size (cost) of equipment and increases its efficiency (thereby reducing the operating cost as well). Water treatment may be needed for chilled water to control corrosion or scaling.

Typical cooling capacities and space requirements of chillers are shown in Fig. 10.29—with dimensions as tabulated. Each refrigeration machine in this illustration requires two pumps—one for the chilled water (to cool the building) and one for condenser water (to deal with reject heat). Typically, space is provided for future chiller additions, which may be required by building expansion and/or by higher internal gains from as-yet-uninstalled equipment, such as computer terminals within offices. Improved-efficiency chillers may replace older ones when energy costs and environmental regulations become compelling. Adequate clearance access to the equipment room is a major design issue.

(c) Condensing Water Equipment

With chillers, there must be a way to reject the heat that is removed from the recirculating chilled water system. Reject heat is handled by the condensing water system, which serves the condensing process within refrigeration cycles. For larger buildings, the

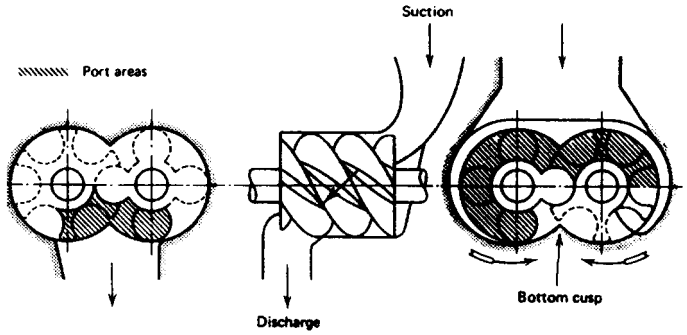


Fig. 10.26 *A screw, or helical, compressor is a quieter, smaller machine with little vibration. (From Bobenhausen,* Simplified Design of HVAC Systems*; © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

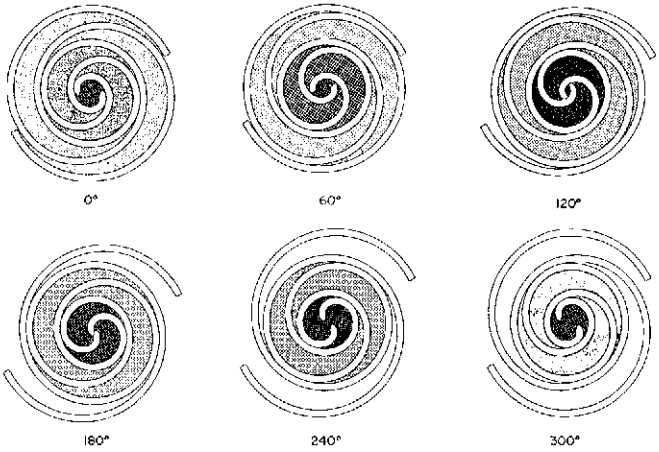


Fig. 10.27 *Scroll compressor rotates one scroll form against another, with a quiet and efficient compression of the refrigerant. (From Bobenhausen,* Simplified Design of HVAC Systems*; © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

condensing water requirement is most likely to be met by a *cooling tower*.

The cooling tower's place within the overall equipment layout was shown in Fig. 10.15*b*; a more detailed guide to sizes and types is given in Figs. 10.30 and 10.31. The object is to maximize the surface area contact between outdoor air and the heat condensing water. In crossflow towers, fans move air horizontally through water droplets and wet layers of fill (or packing), whereas in counterflow towers (prevalent in larger buildings), fans move the air up as the water moves down.

Cooling towers create a special—and usually unpleasant—microclimate. They demand huge quantities of outdoor air (approximately 300 cfm [142 L/s] per ton), which they make considerably more humid. In cold weather, they can produce fog. They are typically very noisy—a natural consequence of forced-air motion. The condensing water flows are about 2.8 gpm (0.18 L/s) per ton of compressive refrigeration and about 3.5 gpm (0.22 L/s) per ton of absorption refrigeration.

The water that escapes as vapor from the tower is between 1.6 and 2 gph (1.7 and 2.1 mL/s). This water must be replaced, which is done automatically. The steady evaporation and exposure to the outdoors under hot and humid conditions spells trouble for the condensing water: Controls for scaling, corrosion, and bacterial and algae growth are especially important. Ozone treatment systems have the advantage of reliable biological control and leave no chemical residue. Since the discovery of the link between Legionnaire's disease and cooling towers, biological control has assumed greater importance.

The vapor that escapes the cooling tower should be kept from the vicinity of fresh air intakes, and from neighboring buildings or parked cars, where feasible. The floor space requirements can be approximated from Table 10.3, or use the average of 1/500 of the building gross floor area (for towers up to 8 ft [2.4 m] high) or 1/400 of the building gross floor area (for higher towers).

Although it is tempting to try to block the noise of cooling towers with solid barriers, it is critical that noise control not interfere with air circulation. The manufacturer's recommended clearances to solid objects near cooling towers must be consulted

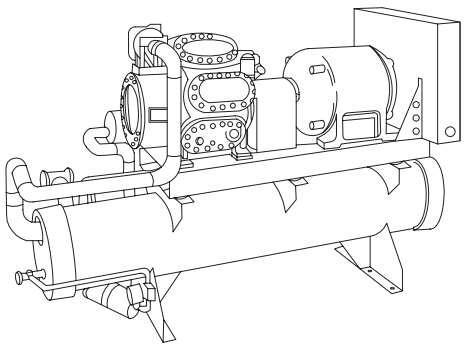
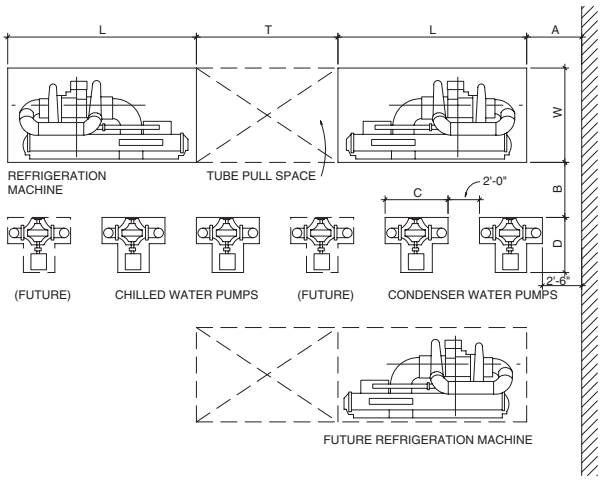


Fig. 10.28 *A reciprocating chiller—a small-capacity machine that uses the compressive refrigeration cycle. Typically, this type of chiller produces less than 200 tons (700 kW) of cooling. Such a machine might be around 8 ft L x 3 ft W x 5 ft H (2.4 x 0.9 x 1.5 m) and weigh 3500 lb (1590 kg). (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed.; © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*



General

The capacity of each refrigeration machine is equal to 50% of the peak cooling load. Each water pump provides the flow requirement of one refrigeration machine. Therefore, one pair of condenser and chilled water pumps is needed for each machine.

The cooling tower may be located on the roof of the refrigeration equipment room or on the ground adjacent to the equipment room. When located on ground, the condenser water outlet(s) on the cooling tower must be not less than 5 ft above the equipment room floor elevation for proper functioning of condenser-water pumps.

See ASHRAE Standard 15-2007 "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration," for required ventilation of chiller plant and monitoring of toxic refrigerants.

Expansion of Equipment

For operational flexibility of a refrigeration plant, the size of the future refrigeration machine is generally planned to be the same as of the present machines. It may be economically advantageous to oversize some portions of the chilled and condenser waterpipes to handle the future flow rates.

Provision must also be made for expansion of the cooling tower capacity when the future refrigeration machine is installed.

REFRIGERATION ROOM LAYOUT

REFRIGERATION EQUIPMENT ROOM SPACE REQUIREMENTS

	DIMENSIONS FT (M)								
EQUIPMENT: TONS (KW)	L	W	HEIGHT	T	A	B	C	D	MINIMUM ROOM HEIGHT
RECIPROCATING MACHINES									
Up to 50 (176)	10'-0" (3.1)	3'-0" (0.9)	6'-0" (1.8)	8'-6" (2.6)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	4'-0" (1.2)	3'-0" (0.9)	11'-0" (3.4)
50–100 (176–352)	12'-0" (3.7)	3'-0" (0.9)	6'-0" (1.8)	9'-0" (2.7)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	4'-0" (1.2)	3'-6" (1.1)	11'-0" (3.4)
CENTRIFUGAL MACHINES									
120–225 (422–791)	17'-0" (5.2)	6'-0" (1.8)	7'-0" (2.1)	16'-6" (5.0)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	4'-6" (1.4)	4'-0" (1.2)	11'-6" (3.5)
225–350 (791–1250)	17'-0" (5.2)	6'-6" (2.0)	7'-6" (5.3)	17'-6" (5.3)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	5'-0" (1.5)	5'-0" (1.5)	11'-6" (3.5)
350–550 (1250–1934)	17'-0" (5.2)	8'-0" (2.4)	8'-0" (2.4)	16'-6" (5.0)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	6'-0" (1.8)	5'-6" (1.7)	12'-0" (3.7)
550–750 (1934–2638)	17'-6" (5.3)	9'-0" (2.7)	10'-6" (3.2)	17'-0" (5.2)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	6'-0" (1.8)	5'-6" (1.7)	14'-0" (4.3)
750–1500 (2638–5276)	21'-0" (6.4)	15'-0" (4.6)	11'-0" (3.4)	20'-0" (6.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	7'-6" (2.3)	6'-0" (1.8)	15'-0" (4.6)
STEAM ABSORPTION MACHINES									
Up to 200 (703)	18'-6" (5.6)	9'-6" (2.9)	12'-0" (3.7)	18'-0" (5.5)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	4'-6" (1.4)	4'-0" (1.2)	15'-0" (4.6)
200–450 (703–1583)	21'-6" (6.6)	9'-6" (2.9)	12'-0" (3.7)	21'-0" (6.4)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	5'-0" (1.5)	5'-0" (1.5)	15'-0" (4.6)
450–550 (1583–1934)	23'-6" (7.2)	9'-6" (2.9)	12'-0" (3.7)	23'-0" (7.0)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	6'-0" (1.8)	5'-6" (1.7)	15'-0" (4.6)
550–750 (1934–2638)	26'-0" (7.9)	10'-6" (3.2)	13'-0" (4.0)	25'-6" (7.8)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	6'-0" (1.8)	5'-6" (1.7)	16'-0" (4.9)
750–1000 (2638–3517)	30'-0" (9.1)	11'-0" (3.4)	14'-0" (4.3)	29'-6" (9.0)	3'-6" (1.1)	3'-6" (1.1)	7'-0" (2.1)	6'-0" (1.8)	17'-6" (5.3)

Note: Direct-fired absorption machines are roughly the same size as steam absorption machines.

Fig. 10.29 *Chiller room space requirements. Each refrigeration machine is served by two pumps (chilled water and condenser water). (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 10th ed.; © 2000 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

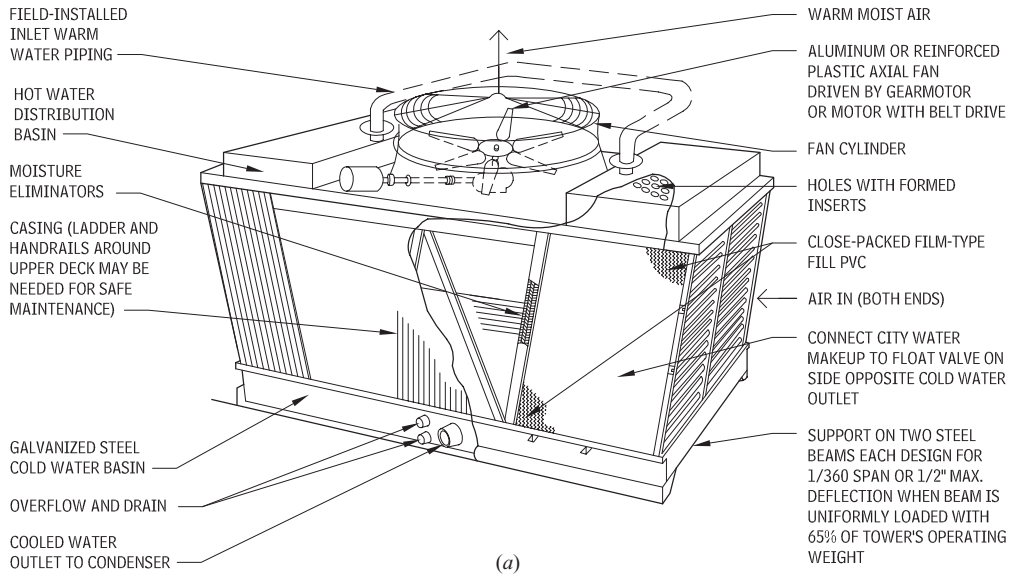
before a tower is enclosed in any way. The roof is thus a favorite location for cooling towers, where wind can disperse the vapor, and the noise and odor are remote from the street. However, the cooling tower can sometimes be featured; near downtown Denver, the cooling tower for the large performing arts complex sits in a forlorn stretch of grass bordered by arterial streets and away from pedestrians (Fig. 10.32). Its plume adds visual interest as it twists ghostlike above the equipment.

When fouling of the condensing water system cannot be tolerated, an alternative approach, called the *closed-circuit evaporative cooler*, is taken. Its schematic operation is described in Fig. 10.33. Usually used to cool the refrigerant directly, it can also be used for the condenser water, as well as on water loop heat pump systems (see Fig. 9.45). Either refrigerant or condenser water is protected within an always-closed loop, while a separate body of water is recirculated through the cooler, with steady evaporation and attendant problems. It requires much less makeup water than the cooling towers.

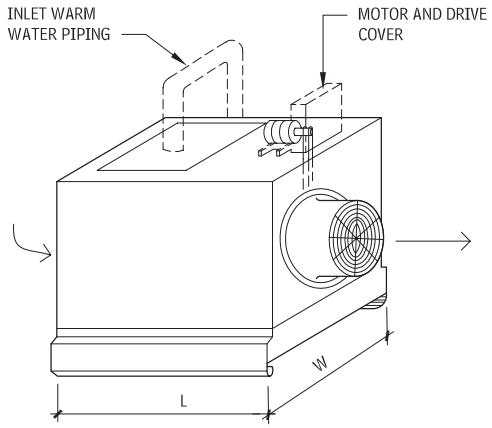
(d) Energy Conservation Equipment

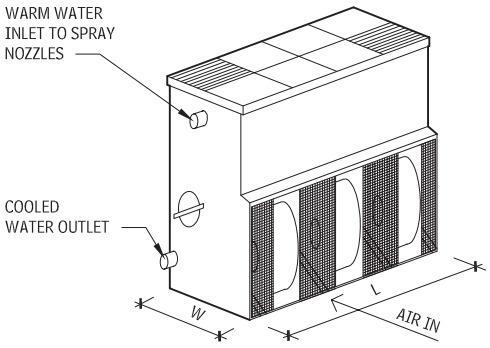
One big advantage of central equipment rooms is the opportunity they present for energy conservation. Regular maintenance is simplified when all the equipment lives in a generous space kept at optimum conditions; with regular maintenance comes increased efficiency of operation. Another conservation opportunity is that of heat transfer between various machines, or between distribution trees, where one's waste meets another's need.

Boiler flue economizers achieve heat transfer by passing the hot gases in a boiler's stack through a



(*a*)





COOLING TONS	OVERALL DIMENSIONS (IN.) L	W	HT.	OPERATING WEIGHT (LB)	MOTOR (HP)
5	69	33	60	940	1/4
25	75	46	80	1600	1
50	84	64	92	2500	3
100	93	100	92	4200	5
150	100	144	112	8000	7-1/2

(*b*)

COOLING TONS	OVERALL DIMENSIONS (IN.) L	W	HT.	OPERATING WEIGHT (LB)	MOTOR (HP)
20	36	36	78	950	2
50	72	36	96	1700	7-1/2
150	144	56	122	4800	20
400	140	118	192	14,000	50

(*c*)

Fig. 10.30 *Cooling towers that serve the condensing water system for large buildings. (a) Cutaway view of a large-capacity (200 to 700 tons [700–2460 kW]) crossflow induced-draft package cooling tower. (b) Size ranges for crossflow induced-draft package cooling towers. (c) Size ranges for counterflow induced-draft package cooling towers. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed.; © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

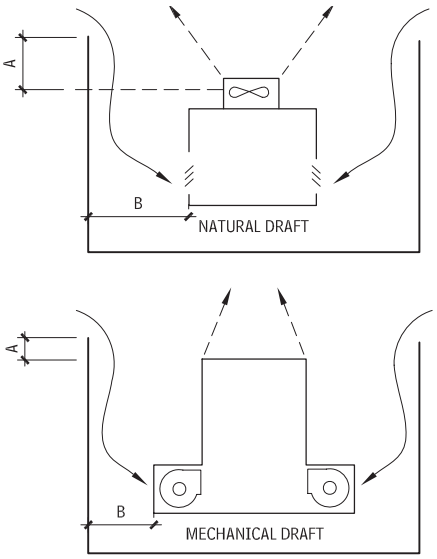


Fig. 10.31 *For cooling towers, the more wall clearance, the better the operation. A = maximum height of enclosure above the tower outlet; minimize this dimension. B = as large as possible, especially if walls have no air openings. (Consult the manufacturer for minimum dimensions.) (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed.; © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

heat exchanger, thus preheating the incoming boiler water (Fig. 10.34).

Runaround coils (Fig. 10.35) can be used for heat transfer between intake and exhaust air ducts when these two airstreams are rather far apart. This circulating heat-transfer fluid usually contains antifreeze; it provides simple sensible heat transfer, with no restrictions on exhaust and intake location. No contamination of intake air by exhaust air is caused by this arrangement. The efficiency of such coils runs between 50% and 70%, and they are available in modular sizes up to 20,000 cfm (9440 L/s).

Heat exchange between incoming and exhaust airstreams, which was discussed in Sections 5.6*(c)* and 5.6*(d)*, allows heat pipes and thermal transfer wheels to play major roles in energy conservation. The thermal transfer wheels can add to the central equipment space requirements. Other desiccant systems were discussed in Section 5.6*(d)*.

Economizer cycles (Fig. 10.36) use cool outdoor air, as available, to ease the burden on a refrigeration cycle as it cools the recirculated indoor air. The economizer cycle can thus be thought of as a central mechanical substitute for the open window; when it is cool enough (below the supply air temperature), 100% outside air can be provided and no chilled water is needed. When the outdoor air temperature is higher than the supply air temperature but lower than the return air temperature, 100% outdoor air is still brought in, but chilled water is used to lower its temperature. Above the return air temperature, outdoor air is reduced to that volume required for IAQ.

Relative to open windows, this cycle has several advantages: energy-optimizing automatic thermal control, filtering of the fresh air, tempering of the cool outdoor air to avoid unpleasant drafts, and an orderly diffusion of fresh air throughout the building. Its disadvantages are the loss of personal control that windows offer and thus loss of awareness of exterior–interior interaction. In hot, humid climates, the moisture brought by 100% outdoor air may be unwelcome.

Economizer cycles are available as options on most direct refrigerant machines (such as single-package rooftop units) and are typically installed for large-building central air supply systems. Buildings with high internal gains (internal load dominated) are particularly good targets for economizer cycles because they need cooling even when the outside temperature is chilly. Economizer cycles lend themselves readily to a cooling strategy of night ventilation of thermally massive structures because they have a built-in option for 100% outdoor air.

(e) Geoexchange Systems

Using the earth as a heat source and sink for small buildings was explored in Section 9.8*(d)*. Four typical applications were shown in Fig. 9.44. Larger buildings can also utilize such systems. A late 1990s building just east of Central Park, in New York City, utilizes two wells 1500 ft (457 m) deep; all but the top 50 ft (15 m) are lined by bedrock. Heat is taken from (or discharged to) water, which is pumped from one well and discharged to the other—a "groundwater source" system. The average year-round temperature in these deep wells (in an intensely urban area) is estimated at 56°F (13°C), about the temperature at which chilled air is delivered to a space in summer. Going to such depths is perhaps the only geothermal option in densely built-up areas.

The Cambridge (Massachusetts) Cohousing Project (Fig. 10.37) is also located in a densely settled



Fig. 10.32 *A plume of mist hovers ghostlike above a cooling tower in full public view near the Denver performing arts complex.*

urban neighborhood. The 41 living units feature passive solar heating, underground parking (this reserves some 20,000 ft^2 [1860 m^2] of the surface for open green space), and centralized heating/cooling utilizing ground source heat pumps with locally controlled thermal zones. In this urban setting, the relative quiet of the indoor heat pump's compressors and the lack of noisy hot air (summer) or cold air (winter) discharges are welcome amenities.

In England, the Hyndburn Borough Council decided that their new headquarters building should set an example as a "zero energy" building: that is, over a typical year, it should generate as much energy as it imports. The 38,750-ft^2 (3600-m^2) building (Fig. 10.38) is elongated east-west and boasts an ambitious section that combines daylighting, photovoltaics (PV), a well-insulated skin, and even rainwater collection to

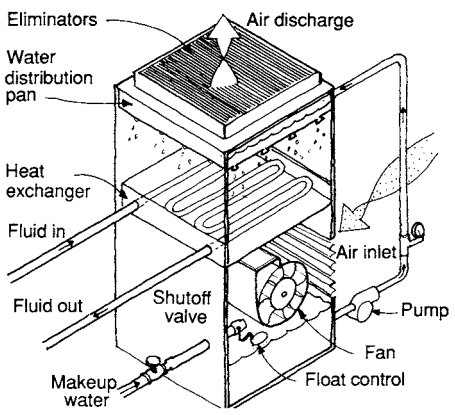


Fig. 10.33 *Closed-circuit evaporative coolers, which cool the condensing water system while protecting it from contact with outside air. A self-contained water system is circulated through the evaporative cooler; steady evaporation losses are replaced by makeup water. (Based upon AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 8th ed.; © 1988 by John Wiley & Sons.)*

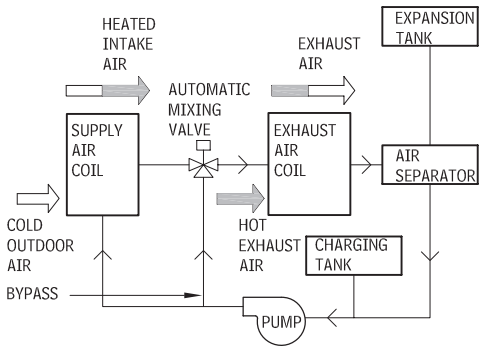


Fig. 10.35 *Runaround coils for heat transfer between fresh intake air and stale exhaust air, used where the air streams are in separate locations. Efficiencies can range from 50% to 70% and coil capacities up to 20,000 cfm (9400 L/s). (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed.; © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

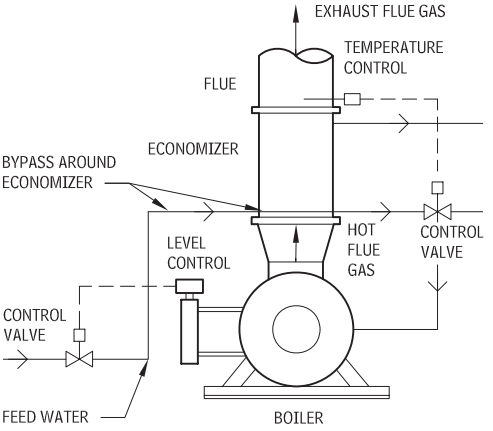


Fig. 10.34 *Heat recovery for boilers. Flue gas entering at 500°F (260°C) leaves the "economizer" at 325°F (163°C), a temperature still high enough to prevent condensation in the stack. The heat recovered here is added to incoming boiler water, raising its temperature from 200 to 248°F (93 to 120°C). (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed.; © 2007 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

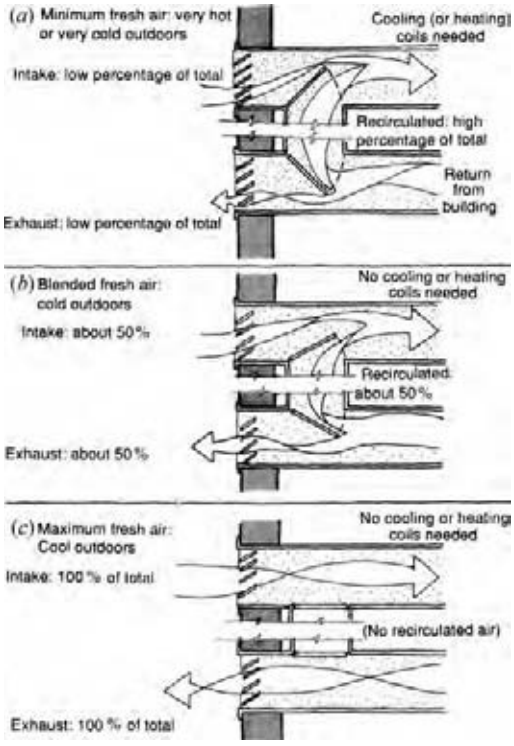
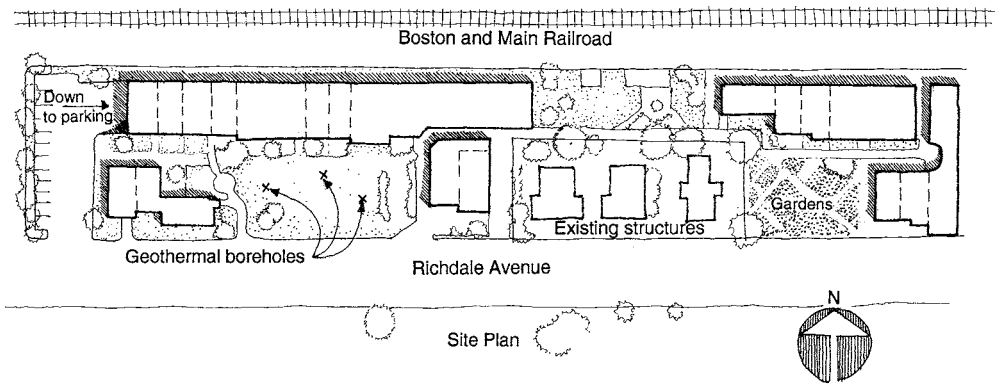
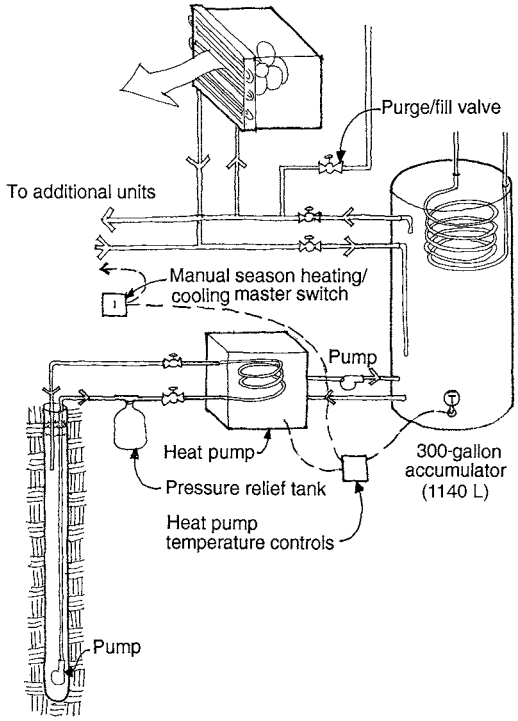


Fig. 10.36 *The economizer cycle controls the relationships among fresh, exhaust, and recirculated air. (a) When outside air is hot (or very cold), the economizer cycle is inactive, and minimum fresh air is introduced. (b) As very cold outside air gets warmer, it can be blended with recirculated air, and neither heating nor cooling coils are needed. (c) When outside air is cool, it can completely replace circulated air, making mechanical cooling inactive.*



(*a*)

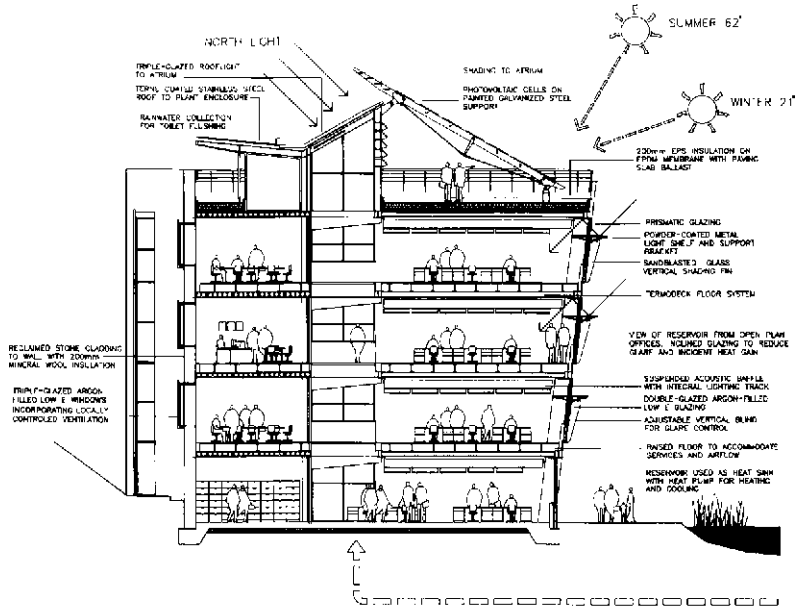


(*b*)

Fig. 10.37 *Cambridge (Massachusetts) Cohousing development takes advantage of three boreholes on its urban site (a) to provide central heating and cooling, serving individual residential fan-coil units. It also preheats water (b) for the DHW (domestic hot water) system. The residences are sited to provide winter solar access, and a positive fresh air intake is located on the side sheltered from adjacent railroad tracks. Underground parking preserves open space for gardens and recreation. (Courtesy of Building Science Engineering, Harvard, MA.)*



(a)



(b) DIAGRAMMATIC SECTION

Fig. 10.38 *The Hyndburn Borough Council (England) headquarters faces south toward a reservoir (a) that provides an evaporatively cooled microclimate and also acts as a heat source/sink for a water-water heat pump. (b) As suggested in the diagrammatic section, daylighting, passive solar heating, PVs, and a well-insulated shell are featured. Termodeck is a precast hollow-core slab that stores coolth on summer nights and precools ventilation air. The supply air then rises from the plenum created by the raised floor. (Courtesy of Jestico + Whiles + Associates, architects, London.)*

use for flushing toilets. Windpower adds to electricity generation. Summer cooling is by ventilation (assisted by night ventilation of mass) through a raised "Termodeck" system. This is a prefabricated hollow-core slab through which cool night air circulates, storing coolth to assist the next day's hottest hours. (This is a concept explored by the Oregon office building in Fig. 8.6.) The raised floor then provides a distribution plenum, with a design rate of 4 air changes per hour (ACH).

For more extreme future summer cooling, but now mostly for winter heating (beyond that provided by passive solar heating), an adjacent reservoir acts as a thermal sink. A "lake closed source heat pump" will serve the mechanical ventilation system. The lake is south of the building, providing some local evaporative cooling in summer and inviting a very climate-oriented south façade, behind which are open-office areas. The north façade faces the city and is more traditionally institutional in character, as are the individual offices behind it.

(f) Energy Storage

We commonly experience daily changes from warmer to colder conditions, both in winter and in a hot, dry summer. Central storage equipment for large buildings can take advantage of this cycle to increase operating efficiency, save energy, and significantly reduce electricity demand charges. Some electric utilities offer incentives to install thermal storage in order to reduce the peak strain on their generating facilities.

Water storage tanks are one common approach to storage, such as those shown in Fig. 10.39. On typical winter days, the total internal heat generated by a large building can be somewhat greater than its total need for heating at the perimeter zones. Instead of being thrown away as exhaust air, this surplus heat is captured and stored in large water tanks, from which it can be withdrawn and used on cold winter nights and weekends. In the summer, chillers can work at night, when efficiency is high because cool outdoor air helps the refrigeration cycle reject its heat. By storing the coolth produced, less work need be done by chillers during the next day's peak, when electric rates are highest and operating efficiency is lowest.

Design guidelines for water storage are 0.5 to 1 gal/ft^2 (20 to 40 L/m^2) of conditioned space. Such large, heavy tanks are frequently located in basements and underground parking facilities. Water tanks require additional floor space for equipment, although they may allow somewhat smaller chillers to be installed. They may also contribute to lower fire insurance premiums because considerable water is stored and ready to use.

Ice storage tanks are another storage approach, as shown in Fig. 10.40. Because they take advantage of the latent heat of fusion (143.5 Btu/lb of water at 32°F [334 kJ/kg at 0°C)]), such units can store far more energy in a given-size tank than can water. Design guidelines for ice storage are 0.13 to 0.25 gal/ft^2 (5 to 10 L/m^2) of conditioned space. A comparison of the relative sizes of storage tanks needed for an 18-story office building is shown in Table 10.6. Also, with ice storage there is less undesired mixing of hot and cold water within the tank.

Ice can be made in several ways. A common method is to form ice as a layer around a pipe that carries refrigerant in a closed circuit through the tank. Control of the thickness of this layer is important, because if too little ice is made at night, too little cooling will be available the following day. In another method, ice is formed and thawed by circulating a brine through coils in cylindrical water tanks. Other methods form ice on plates, then harvest it in an insulated bin.

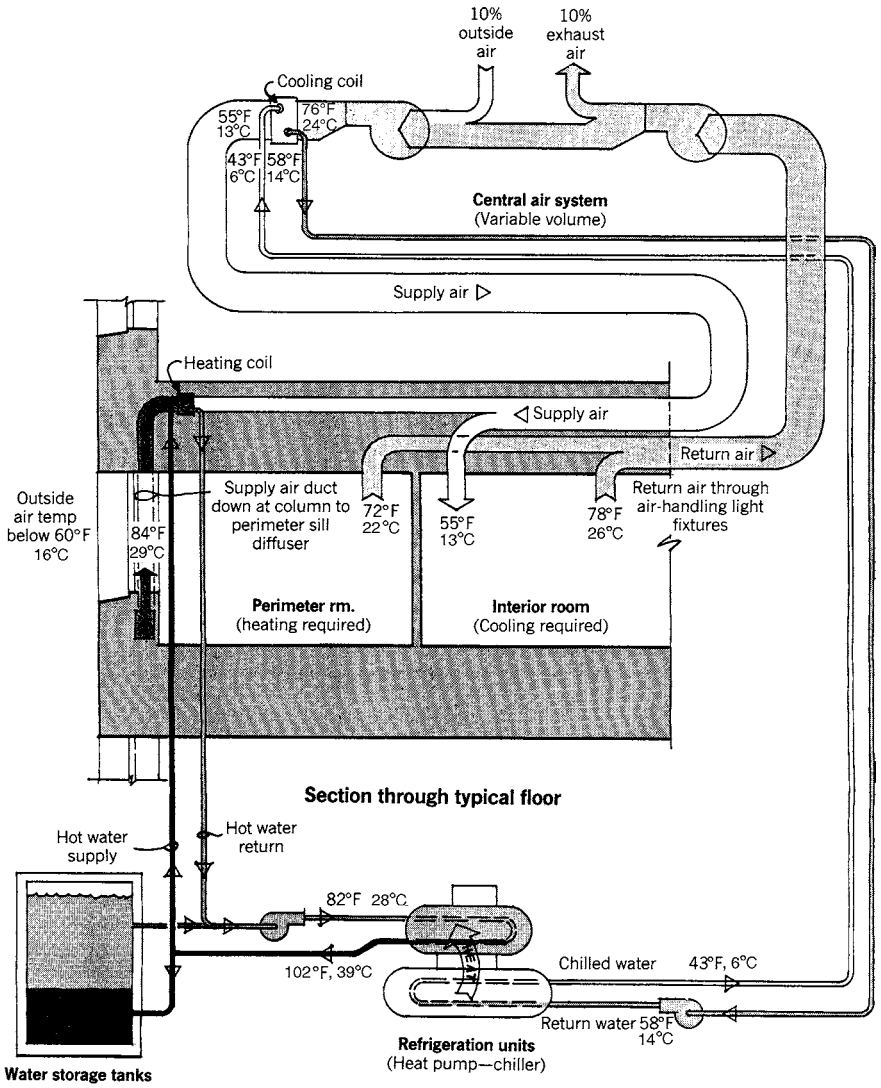
The Iowa Public Service Building (Fig. 10.41) uses ice storage in six tanks that occupy about half of the floor space in the ground floor mechanical room. This installation serves a five-story, 167,000-ft^2 (15,515-m^2) utility office building that utilizes solar collectors supplemented by small backup boilers. The six ice-making machines serve a 75,000-gal (283,900-L) ice storage pit with 90 million Btu (26,355 kWh) capacity. Winter heat exchange opportunities include reject heat from the ice-making machines, heat from the central toilet exhaust air, and heat from return air taken through luminaires. Solar collectors on the roof preheat the ventilation air, which is fed into the ceiling plenum at each floor. Fan-coil units then draw from this fresh air supply.

Water and ice storage tanks are sometimes located at the top of a building, especially when other related mechanical equipment is there also. Despite the weight of such tanks, they can become a structural advantage. The *tuned mass damper* method of reducing lateral vibration (or sway) in

high-rise buildings utilizes a heavy, moving mass at the top; when the building begins to sway, the mass is moved in the opposite direction. In the Crystal Tower in Osaka, Japan, this mass is provided by ice storage tanks. This 515-ft (157-m), 37-story building has an ice thermal storage total of 25,400 ft^3 (720 m^3) divided into nine tanks. Six of the ice storage tanks provide the movable structural mass, suspended from roof girders, weighing 540 tons (489,880 kg), including steel framing. The chiller and condenser are also in the equipment penthouse.

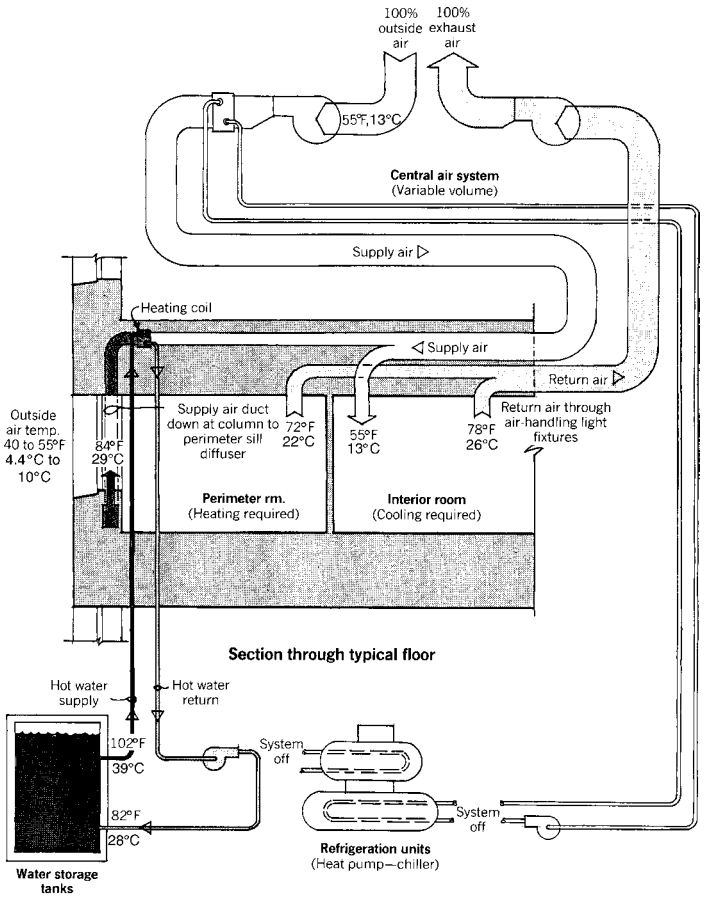
(g) Air-Handling Equipment

A given HVAC system type may have many variations. In some variations, all the air is passed

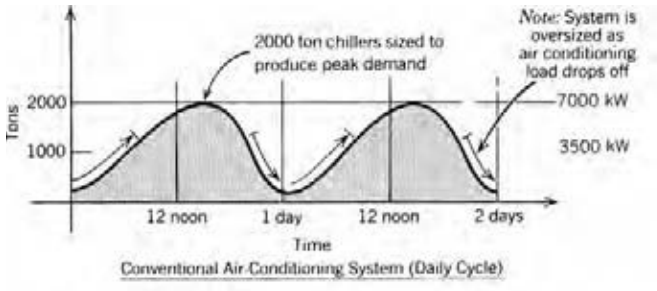


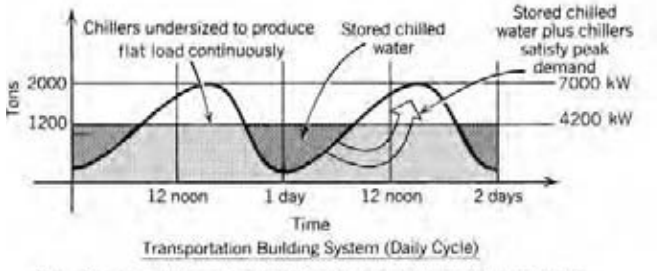
(*a*)

Fig. 10.39 *Water tank heat storage. The 870,000-ft^2 (80,825-m^2) transportation office building (Park Plaza, Boston), population 2000, uses a three-compartment insulated concrete tank storing 750,000 gal (2,838,990 L) of water. (a) At an outside air temperature of 40° to 50°F (4.4 to 10°C), the surplus internal heat is stored in the tanks rather than rejected as exhaust air. (b) By the time the outside air is about 50°F (10°C), the tanks are fully charged; up to an outside temperature of 60°F (15.5°C), the economizer cycle provides energy-conserving cooling. (c) At about 60°F (15.5°C) chillers must operate, but working all night when the outside air is cooler enables them to work less by day. Their nightly production is stored as cold water, available to help with the following day's peak. Smaller machines and more efficient operation are the result. (Courtesy of Shooshanian Engineering Associates, Inc.)*



(*b*)





Note: Charging of storage tanks with cold water during off hours provides added cooling media for peak air-conditioning needs.

(*c*)

Fig. 10.39 *(Continued)*

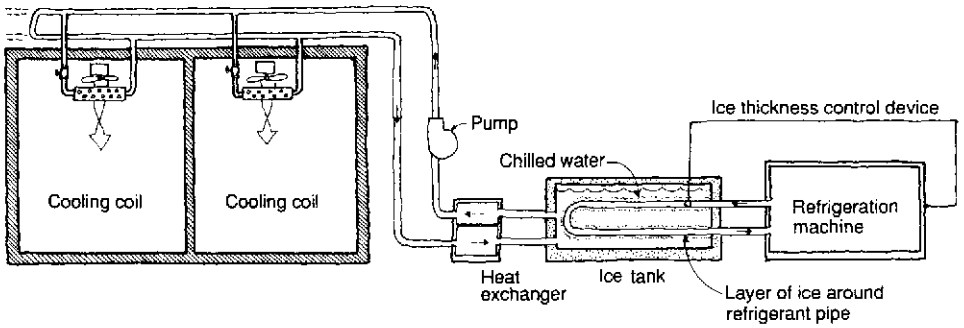


Fig. 10.40 *Ice tank heat storage. Chilled water in an ice tank forms a layer of ice around the refrigerant pipe (supplied by the refrigeration machine). As chilled water at about 35ºF (1.7ºC) is removed from the tank, it enters a heat exchanger, so that its temperature is closer to 45ºF (7.2ºC) for distribution to cooling coils throughout the building.*

through one central equipment room. In others, air handling may be done in many separate and smaller rooms, whereas central heating and cooling require only one equipment room. Some detailed design guidelines for air-handling equipment for either case are shown in Fig. 10.42. Air-handling equipment room dimensions are shown in Table 10.7. Total air quantities (cfm) may be estimated from Table 10.4 or obtained more precisely from cooling load calculations.

TABLE 10.6 Cooling Storage Comparison

Eighteen-story office building: 375,000 gross ft² (34,840 m²), 800 tons (2800 kW) peak load, 6250 ton-h/day (21,908 kW-h/day) at design, 75 million Btu (21,900 kWh) storage needed.		
	Water Storage	**Ice Storage**
Btu/lb[a] (kJ/kg)	15 (34.9)	164 (381.5)
Pounds storage	5,000,000	457,000
(kilograms)	(2,267,960)	(207,290)
Gallons	599,500	54,800
(liters)	(2,269,300)	(207,435)
Storage efficiency	0.90	1.0
Percent ice		66%
Net gallons	666,000	83,030
(liters)	(252,100)	(314,295)
Cubic feet	89,046	11,101
(cubic meters)	(2,522)	(314)
Floor area of tank, approx. 8 ft deep (2.5 m deep)	80 by 150 ft (24 by 46 m)	30 by 50 ft (9 by 15 m)
Storage ratio, water to ice	8 : 1	

Source: Reprinted by permission from *Specifying Engineer*, January 1983. Metric conversions by the authors of this book.

[a]Btu/lb based on $\Delta t = 15F^{\circ}$ for water storage and on $\Delta t = 20.5F^{\circ}$ in the melted ice water (added to 143.5 Btu/lb at fusion).

Some common fan types include:

Panel: The most simple type on this list; for high-efficiency air delivery, the motor is generally mounted in the center of the propellers. It is likely the noisiest type. It is not designed for much static pressure from ductwork, filters, and so on.

Fixed pitch vane axial: Capable of working against somewhat more static pressure than the panel fan; more common in industrial applications.

Centrifugal: With an airfoil bladed wheel, it has high efficiency over a wide operating range and is quieter than the previous two. Major changes in pressure result in only minor changes in the volume of air delivered.

Vane axial adjustable pitch: Takes less space than centrifugal fans and can work against more static pressure. The pitch is adjustable occasionally, not continuously, for system balancing or seasonal changes in air volume.

Vane axial controllable pitch: The automatically controlled pitch responds to changes in temperature, humidity, airflow, and so on, depending on the sensors used. It is commonly used in VAV systems.

Filters and other methods of IAQ control were discussed in Chapter 5. There are numerous combinations of air handlers, filters, and coils for air heating/cooling, selected by the consulting engineer. For the architect, the primary issues include adequate space, adequate access (for current maintenance and future equipment replacement), and noise isolation.

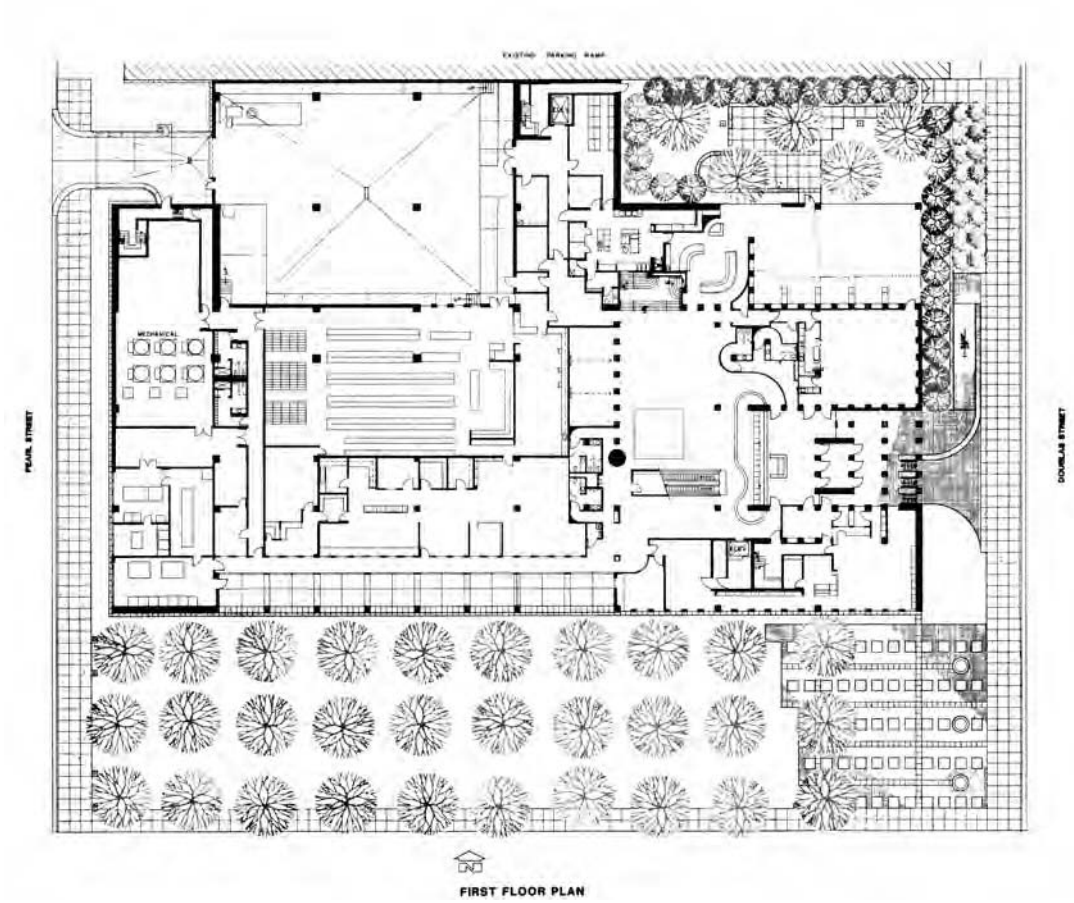


Fig. 10.41 *The ground floor of the Iowa Public Service offices (Sioux City) contains six ice machines within the mechanical space adjacent to the loading dock. (Courtesy of Rossetti Associates and Foss, Engelstad, Heil Associates, joint venture architects.)*

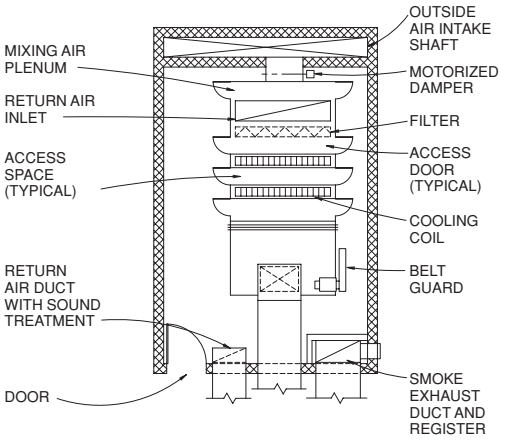
(h) Controls

Although the most obvious HVAC control function is to maintain desired comfort conditions, controls also increase fuel economy by promoting optimum operation and act as safety devices, limiting or overriding mechanical equipment. They also eliminate human error: controls fall asleep only during a power failure.

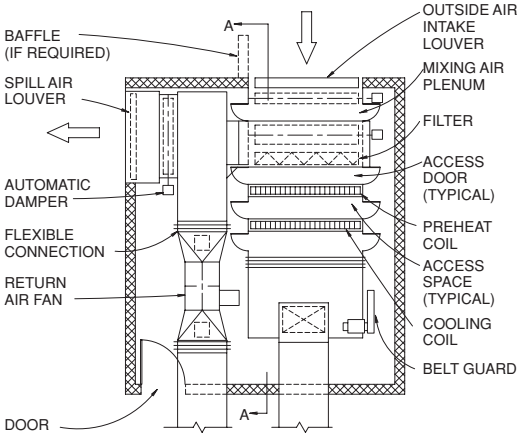
Although precise control of temperature and humidity everywhere in a building may be a tempting thought, controls can usually maintain only a *range* of conditions, not a precise setpoint. This range (within which neither heating nor cooling is called for) is called the *deadband*. Temperature variations occur vertically within a space—the higher the space, the greater the variation. Variations between horizontal positions within a zone are highly likely, especially where one or more walls are exterior and where different rooms share a zone controlled by a single thermostat. Variations in time also occur: a building will always be warmer at the moment the heating system turns off than at the moment the system turns on.

Individual controls can be classified as follows: *controllers*, which measure, analyze, and initiate action; *actuators*, which are the controller's servants and in turn become the masters of pieces of equipment; *limit and safety controls*, which may function only infrequently, preventing damage to equipment or buildings; and *accessories*, a miscellaneous collection.

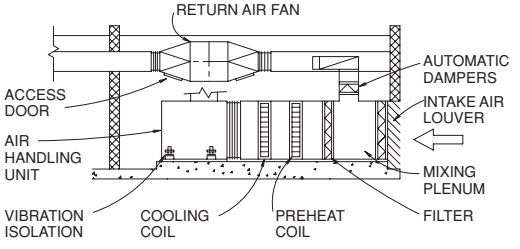
Systems of controls can be classified by power source: electric (both analog and direct digital control); pneumatic (in which compressed air is the motivating force); and self-contained, including "passive" controls such as those motivated by thermal expansion of liquids or metals. Another way to



EQUIPMENT ROOM PLAN (*a*)



EQUIPMENT ROOM PLAN (*b*)



EQUIPMENT ROOM SECTION A-A (*c*)

Fig. 10.42 *Some variations on a huge variety of HVAC equipment rooms. (a) Plan with floor-mounted air-conditioning unit. Outdoor air is drawn from an adjacent shaft; return air ducts are above the equipment, and a remote exhaust fan expels what is not recirculated. (b) Plan on an exterior wall. Outdoor air is taken through the wall, and a return air fan is overhead. (c) Section through plan b. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 10th ed.; © 2000 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

classify control systems is by the motion of the controller equipment: *two-position* systems are of the simple on-off type; *multiposition* systems have several varieties of the on position, commonly used for separate operation of more than one machine; *floating* controls can assume any position in the range between minimum and maximum; *central logic control* systems can be programmed to integrate the many aspects of building control into one decision-making unit, and are now the prevalent approach to building management.

Control diagrams for two common HVAC applications are shown in Fig. 10.43. Single-duct VAV systems (Fig. 10.43*a*) are further described in Section 10.5; with the constantly varying flow rate, the fan must be regulated so as to maintain the minimum pressure (and therefore, flow) needed at the most demanding outlet. This outlet may be either the one most remote from the fan or the one needing the greatest flow (because it serves the highest load) at the moment. Economizer cycles (Fig. 10.43*b*) compare outside to inside positions, and vary the proportion of fresh (outdoor) air to return air, to provide "free" cooling (see again Fig. 10.36).

Most of today's large buildings are regulated by central logic control systems, usually called *building management systems* (BMS). The goal is a productive, cost-effective environment achieved by optimizing the interrelationships among the building's structure, systems, services, and management. The HVAC system is centrally regulated and interconnected with lighting, electric power (such as load shedding), elevators, service hot water, access control and security, telecommunications, and information management. Such systems not only maintain comfort with energy conservation, they also sound the alarm about malfunctions, can learn from past practice, and keep records of performance.

This integration and automation of the many building control systems is made possible through *direct digital control* (DDC), which can be applied to a wide variety of elements. They provide "dynamic control" in the case of HVAC, anticipating time-based changes in heat flow patterns or in occupancy schedules. These actions depend on direct digital microcontrollers located on each piece of regulated equipment throughout the building. Three building types show applications of this comprehensive automated control opportunity.

TABLE 10.7 Air-Handling Equipment Rooms

PART A. I-P UNITS									
	Approximate Overall Dimension of Supply Air Equipment					*Recommended Room Dimensions*			
cfm Range	**Width**	×	**Height**	×	**Length**	**Width**	×	**Height**	×	**Length**
1000–1,800	4′–9″		2′–9″		14′–9″	12′–6″		9′–0″		18′–9″
1,801–3,000	5′–0″		3′–6″		16′–0″	13′–9″		9′–0″		20′–0″
3,001–4,000	6′–9″		4′–6″		16′–0″	17′–6″		9′–0″		20′–0″
4,001–6,000	7′–6″		4′–6″		16′–9″	18′–0″		9′–0″		20′–9″
6,001–7,000	7′–6″		4′–9″		18′–3″	18′–6″		9′–6″		22′–3″
7,001–9,000	8′–0″		5′–0″		18′–9″	19′–0″		10′–0″		22′–9″
9,001–12,000	10′–0″		5′–6″		21′–0″	23′–0″		11′–0″		25′–0″
12,001–16,000	10′–3″		6′–0″		22′–0″	13′–6″		12′–6″		26′–0″
16,001–19,000	10′–6″		6′–6″		23′–9″	24′–0″		13′–0″		27′–9″
19,001–22,000	11′–9″		7′–3″		25′–0″	26′–9″		15′–0″		29′–0″
22,001–27,000	11′–9″		8′–6″		26″–0″	27′–0″		16′–0″		30′–0″
27,001–32,000	13′–0″		9′–9″		27′–9″	29′–0″		18′–0″		31′–9″
PART B. SI UNITS									
	Approximate Overall Dimension of Supply Air Equipment (m)					*Recommended Room Dimensions (m)*			
L/s Range	**Width**	×	**Height**	×	**Length**	**Width**	×	**Height**	×	**Length**
470–849	1.4		0.8		4.5	3.8		2.7		5.7
850–1,415	1.5		1.1		4.9	4.2		2.7		6.1
1,416–1,887	2.1		1.3		4.9	5.3		2.7		6.1
1,888–2,831	2.3		1.3		5.1	5.5		2.7		6.3
2,832–3,303	2.4		1.4		5.6	5.6		2.9		6.8
3,304–4,247	2.4		1.5		5.7	5.8		3.0		6.9
4,248–5,662	3.0		1.7		6.4	7.0		3.4		7.6
5,663–7,550	3.1		1.8		6.7	7.2		3.8		7.9
7,551–8,966	3.2		2.0		7.2	7.3		4.0		8.5
8,967–10,381	3.6		2.2		7.6	8.1		4.6		8.8
10,381–12,741	3.6		2.6		7.9	8.2		4.9		9.1
12,742–15,100	4.0		3.0		8.5	8.8		5.5		9.7

Source: AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper, *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed., © 1994 by John Wiley and Sons. SI conversions by the author.

Laboratories have proven to be especially difficult HVAC control problems due to their fume hoods. Conditioned air is provided from the central HVAC system, often by a VAV supply. Whenever a fume hood is exhausting air (frequently in huge quantities), the VAV supply and return systems are affected. Complicating this relationship is the nature of the laboratory work; where the experiment could be damaged by outside contaminants, the lab should be positively pressurized to minimize infiltration (and the VAV must therefore supply and return slightly *more* air than the fume hood exhausts). However, where the experiments involve diseased, toxic, or other hazardous substances, the lab must be negatively pressurized (and the VAV must supply and return slightly *less* air than the fume hood exhausts). DDCs tied to a central system can balance energy conservation, lab worker safety, and safety for the nonlab environment.

Hotel rooms can present serious energy loss problems from heating/cooling either an unoccupied room or a room with open windows. With DDCs inter-tied with the registration desk, an "unoccupied" mode of operating can be remotely controlled, with bare-minimum heating or cooling. When the room is occupied, the supply of either hot water heating or cooled air can be throttled back whenever the window is open. Also, a "purge" mode can enable a new arrival (or the front desk, in anticipation) to select a greatly increased flow of outdoor air for a limited time period to dilute cigarette smoke or other odors. Chapter 30 presents more detailed information on *intelligent buildings*.

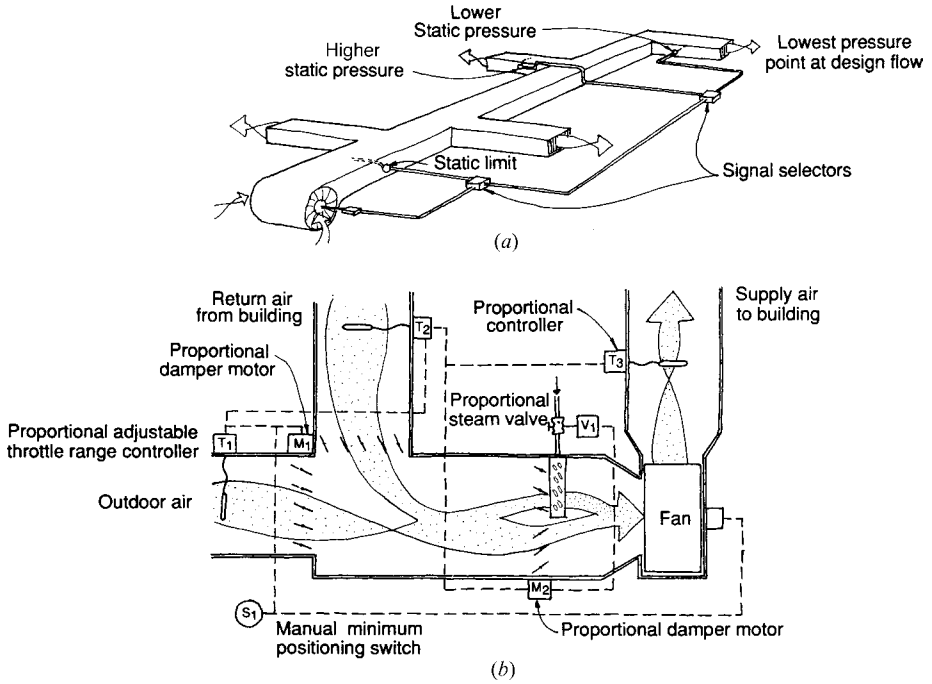


Fig. 10.43 *Controls for some common HVAC applications. (a) Single-air VAV. (b) Economizer cycle.*

Offices might be provided not only with DDC for the VAV supply units, but also with inter-tied DDCs for an interconnected ventilating window (preventing simultaneous open windows and treated forced-air delivery), daylight reflectors (mini-light shelves), venetian blinds, a radiant heater valve, an electric light switch, and an insulating shade. A control panel or "dashboard" gives the worker an opportunity to interact with the central control in operating these devices.

Office buildings that use more passive strategies also benefit from BMS. The British Research Establishment building for fire research, "Building 16" (Fig. 10.44), depends upon cross- and stack ventilation for its cooling, and upon movable louvers on the south windows for sunshading and daylight penetration. A common network links this building's control systems; each worker has a TV-like controller that regulates lights and can override the programmed settings of the nearest high-level windows (for ventilation) and south-window louvers (for sun control and daylighting). This innovative office building uses a ground-source heat pump (borehole type) to supplement solar and internal winter heat gains or to provide supplementary cooling to the night ventilation system. Note the provisions for cross-ventilation for individually enclosed offices on the ground floor, utilizing a cavity above the ceiling to carry the ventilation air on to exhaust on the other side of the building.

Rapid changes in centralized control systems are continuing. Initially, DDC systems were developed by individual companies, with little or no opportunity for communication between systems. Such proprietary systems left designers frustrated by an inability to specify a wide variety of products, all controlled by a single BMS. In the late 1990s, two competing systems had emerged that promised integration of products and systems from different manufacturers. BACnet was developed by ASHRAE committee members as a nonproprietary communication standard. LonMark was developed by the LonMark Interoperability Association, a user-funded organization of building owners, specifiers, system integrators, and product suppliers. *Open control system architecture* is an opportunity for a BMS in which components from several vendors interoperate over a BACnet-adapted Ethernet LAN (local area network). It makes possible a system combining BACnet, LonMark, and proprietary subsystems (Fig. 10.45).

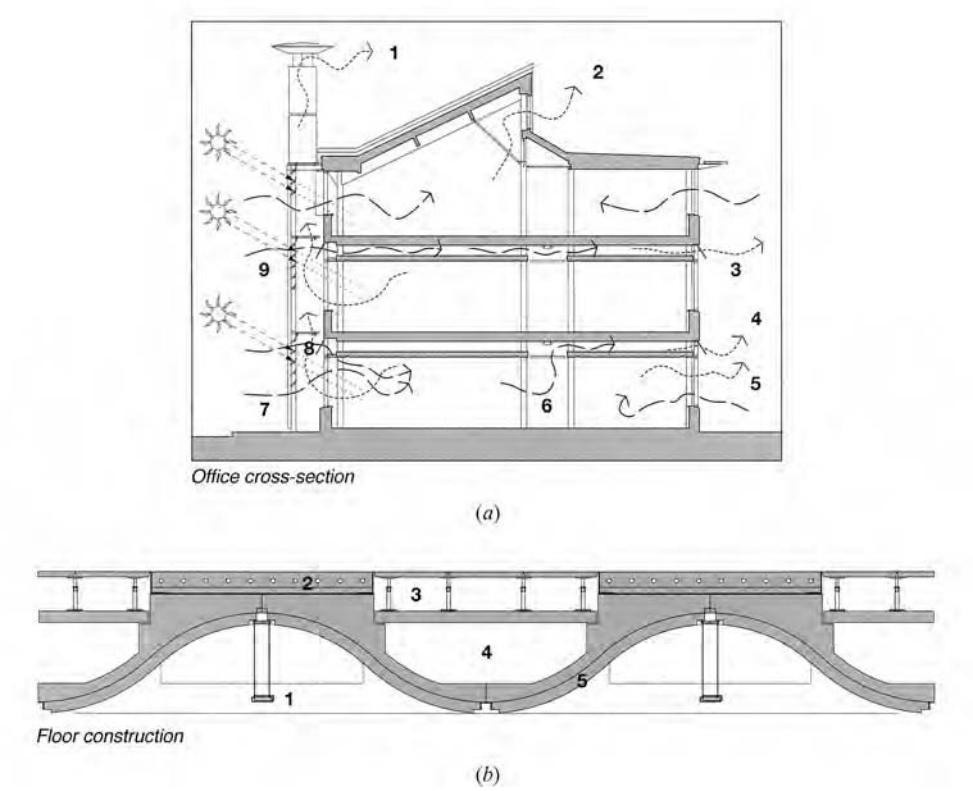


Fig. 10.44 *Natural ventilation and daylight strategies dominate the north–south section (a) of the British Research Establishment Building 16 at Garston. (1) Stack ventilation (hot, calm); (2) clerestory BMS-controlled ventilation; (3) night ventilation through slab, BMS-controlled; (4) cross-ventilation bypass over enclosed offices; (5) enclosed office single-sided ventilation; (6) corridor cross-over zone; (7) manually operated lower-level windows; (8) high-level BMS-controlled windows; (9) motorized external shading louvers, also BMS-controlled. (b) East–west section detail of precast floor structure. (1) Luminaire with integral photosensors; (2) heated/cooled screed using a geothermal source; (3) raised access floor for wiring; (4) cross-ventilation duct (night ventilation and/or cross-over ventilation for enclosed offices); (5) waveform precast concrete ceiling with poured-in-place topping slab. (Courtesy of Feilden Clegg Architects, Bath, England.)*

10.4 AIR DISTRIBUTION WITHIN SPACES

When large office buildings had far greater interior (core) areas than perimeter areas and were filled with less-efficient lighting at high luminance levels, they were considered to always need cooling. Because cool air supplied at the ceiling would naturally fall toward the level of occupants, and because suspended ceilings were ubiquitous, supply air from the ceiling was almost universal. The suspended ceiling was also tempting for the return air provisions, whether as a plenum or for another ducted system. With both supply and return air at the ceiling, the danger of short-circuiting arose: supply air heading quickly for the return opening, with resulting shortages of both cooling and IAQ. In this section, we first look at approximate duct sizing and then consider three air distribution systems for multistory office buildings.

(a) Air Ducts

Duct sizes (in cross section) are frequently of interest early in the design process. Duct depths can help determine floor heights; duct cross sections influence the sizes and shapes of the vertical cores that serve multistory buildings. An approximation of duct size can be obtained as follows:

1. Determine the quantity of air to be distributed through the largest duct, using Table 10.5, or the ACH developed (for example) from a calculation of night ventilation of thermal mass (usually expressed in cubic feet per hour, cfh).

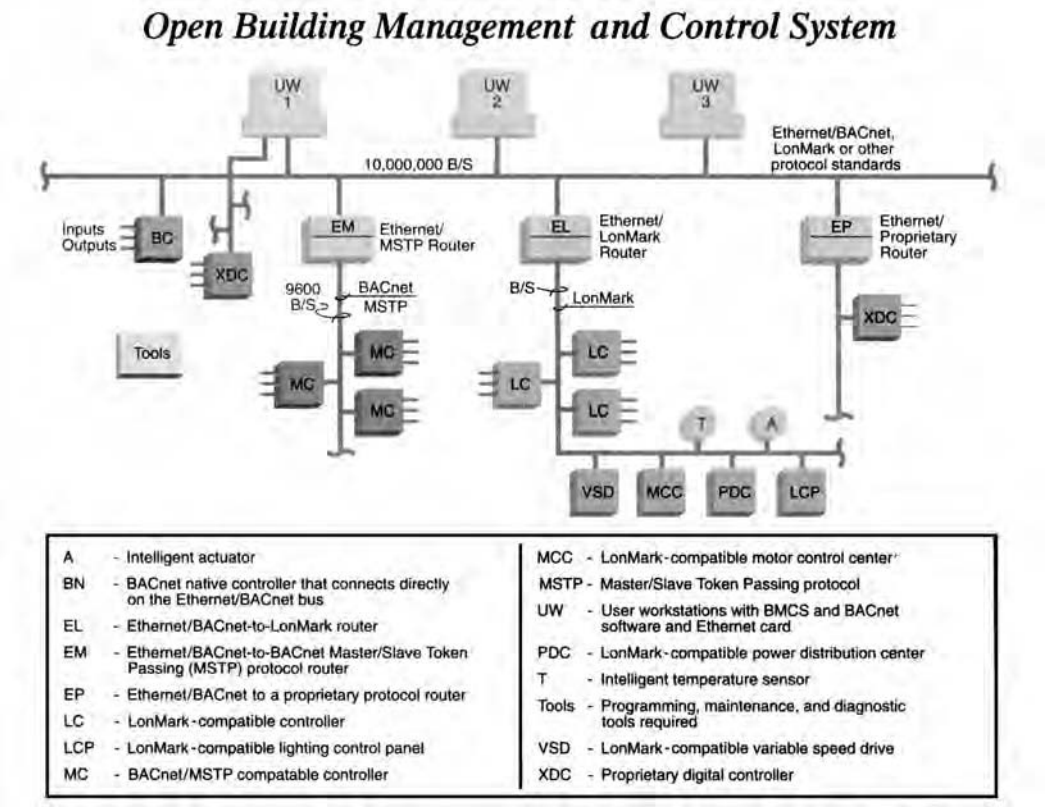


Fig. 10.45 *Building Management System (BMS) that is open to various protocol standards. (Courtesy of Honeywell, Inc.)*

2. If necessary, convert cfh to cfm:

$$\frac{\text{cfh} \times 1\ \text{h}}{60\ \text{min}} = \text{cfm}$$

3. Find the maximum velocity of this air within the duct from Table 9.4, expressed in feet per minute (fpm).
4. The approximate *minimum* required cross-sectional area of duct A is then

$$A_{\text{in.}^2} = \frac{\text{volume of air (cfm)}}{\text{velocity (fpm)}} \times 144\ \text{in.}^2/\text{ft}^2 \times \text{friction allowance}$$

where the friction allowances are

- round ducts = 1.0 (may be neglected)
- nearly square ducts (ratio of width to depth, 1:1)
  small (<1000 cfm) = 1.10
  large (>1000 cfm) = 1.05
- thin rectangular ducts (ratio of width to depth, 1:5) = 1.25

Then check this against the *recommended* duct cross-sectional area from Table 10.4. Remember that the *minimum* duct area will carry a penalty of increased noise and friction. Techniques for noise suppression in ductwork are discussed in Chapter 19.

(b) Ceiling Air Supply

This approach is so widespread that many lighting fixtures are made to either serve as diffusers for supply air or as intakes for return-air. As return-air fixtures, they are especially effective because they remove much of the heat from electric lighting before it can contribute to overheating the office space below. This makes less work for the space cooling equipment.

When individual offices are enclosed, a supply diffuser and return grille ensure air circulation. However, as open office space proliferated, concerns grew about whether the workspace cubicles

were being adequately served with conditioned air. Air diffusers and grilles (Fig. 10.46) on the ceilings are uncluttered by furniture and independent of rearrangements of workstation cubicles. Canadian research in the early 1990s indicated that the most important variable was the quantity of the airflow, not the location of the diffusers relative to workstations or whether the cubicle partitions have a small gap where they meet the floor.

Are higher ceilings better for air distribution? There seems to be a trade-off between more vertical clear space (between ceiling and cubicle partitions) that would allow a wider range of air distribution and the increased distance from the actual occupant who should be receiving the conditioned air. The increased distance would allow colder air to be distributed, resulting in smaller ducts, and could also allow higher velocity of supply air, further reducing duct size. Higher ceilings allow deeper daylight penetration and represent a larger "pool" of air that is slower to become polluted by occupants or office equipment. Higher ceilings also encourage underfloor distribution, as seen in the next subsection.

When the noise from forced-air diffusers is critical, as in telecasting and recording studios, pinhole-perforated diffusers (Fig. 10.47) can provide large quantities of low-velocity air. These occupancies represent an especially challenging combination of high heat gains (from lights) and low background noise requirements. Again, ceiling distribution leaves the floor unencumbered.

(c) Underfloor Air Supply

As open office spaces have grown larger in area and their ceilings higher (for daylight penetration and indirect lighting), and as concerns about IAQ have deepened, the floor has gained in popularity as the air source location. Underfloor air supply introduces supply air, through floor outlets, cooled to just below the design room temperature, at a low velocity. (Displacement ventilation supplies air at very low velocity, such that there is little to no turbulence in the space.) Furthermore, fresh air supply rates are typically near 45 cfm (22 L/s), compared to about 30 cfm (15 L/s) often used in ceiling supply

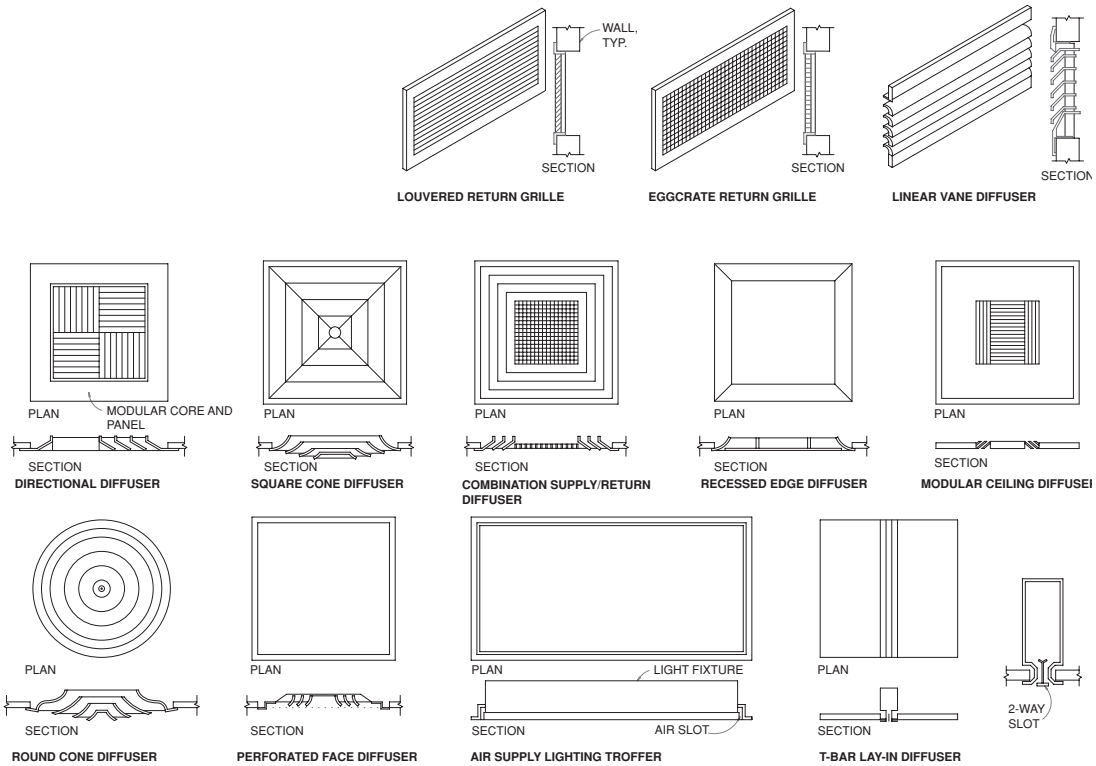


Fig. 10.46 *Common air distribution outlets. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 10th ed.; © 2000 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*



Fig. 10.47 *Pinhole-perforated diffusers (above a lighting grid) provide large quantities of low-velocity air to the television studio at the Community Media Center of Santa Rosa, California. The background noise from more typical HVAC systems would be amplified by sound recording equipment and hence would be unacceptable. (© TLCD Architecture, Santa Rosa, CA.)*

systems. This high-volume, low-Δt, low-velocity combination requires greatly increased duct sizes, essentially provided by using the plenum formed by a raised floor system as a duct. The supply air rises quickly to the occupant level, drawn upward by the stack effect of heat gain from lights, people, and office equipment (and by supply air pressure). It continues to the ceiling, where it stratifies and where various approaches to return-air collection can be located. Freshest and coolest at the floor, hottest and most stale at the ceiling, this system promises better IAQ and thermal comfort than would be available from ceiling supply–return systems. Furthermore, the outlets at the floor are adjustable and easily reached by the office workers.

The raised floor is typically supported on a 2×2-ft (600×600-mm) module. The module that contains the diffusing outlet often also contains an outlet for power and cable. This diffuser is placed off-center within the modular unit, further expanding the variability of the floor opening relative to furniture placement, because each plan rotation of the square module places the outlet slightly differently. Some codes restrict the height of the raised floor plenum; many codes require specially coated wiring within the plenum because moving air will wash over the wires for the life of the building.

The overall floor-to-floor height needs to be great enough to accommodate both the raised floor and the higher office ceiling (at least 9 ft [2.7 m] to accommodate warm air stratification). However, elimination of the suspended ceiling and the supply air ductwork also eliminates the suspended ceiling cavity. This tends to expose the lighting, fire sprinkler, and public address systems below the structural ceiling, although the latter can be distributed in the raised floor cavity above and puncture the structural ceiling as required.

The structural slab below the raised floor can be of concrete, and this thermal mass can be night-ventilated to store coolth to assist the ventilation air for the next day. The Inland Revenue Building

(discussed in Chapter 8) incorporates a night-ventilated raised-floor section within its precast waveform floor sections.

Library Square in Vancouver, British Columbia (Fig. 10.48), utilizes a raised floor to serve its interior zones of book stacks. The library has seven floors, totals 390,000 ft^2 (36,320 m^2), and exposes its concrete structure as a finished ceiling. The floor-to-floor height is 16.4 ft (5 m). The underfloor supply is fed by VAV boxes and floor fan units (FFU) that blend low-temperature supply air (about one-third) with local filtered return air (about two-thirds) to provide 63°F (17°C) air to the pressurized plenum. Flush to the floor, high-induction swirl floor diffusers (8 in. [200 mm] in diameter) produce an upward air motion, taking the fresh return-air blend directly into the occupancy zone (the first 6.5 ft [2 m] of height on each floor). The stack effect of heat from people, computers, and lights takes hot air on to the stratification zone above. Thus, people-generated pollutants tend to rise to this hot, stale air zone, then into return-air slots in the precast concrete ceiling. Return air is taken away in insulated ducts within the supply air plenum of the floor above. The plenum height is an unusually generous 2 ft (600 mm) high; it also contains the sprinkler distribution and all wiring systems. The warm, dry summer climate supports a night ventilation system, flushing the plenum and storing coolth in the exposed concrete structure. This has reduced the use of an ice-storage system.

(d) Workstation Delivery Systems

The air delivery system shown in Fig. 10.49 allows a variety of individual controls at each workstation. As developed by Johnson Controls, Inc., these systems are called Personal Environments® systems. A mixture of outdoor and recirculated indoor air, called *primary air*, is brought from the main duct (or floor plenum) to each Personal Environments system's mixing box in a duct carrying at most 120 cfm (56 L/s) but typically less. Each worker can adjust the supply air temperature, the mixture of primary and locally recirculated air, air velocity (and therefore volume) and direction, and radiant

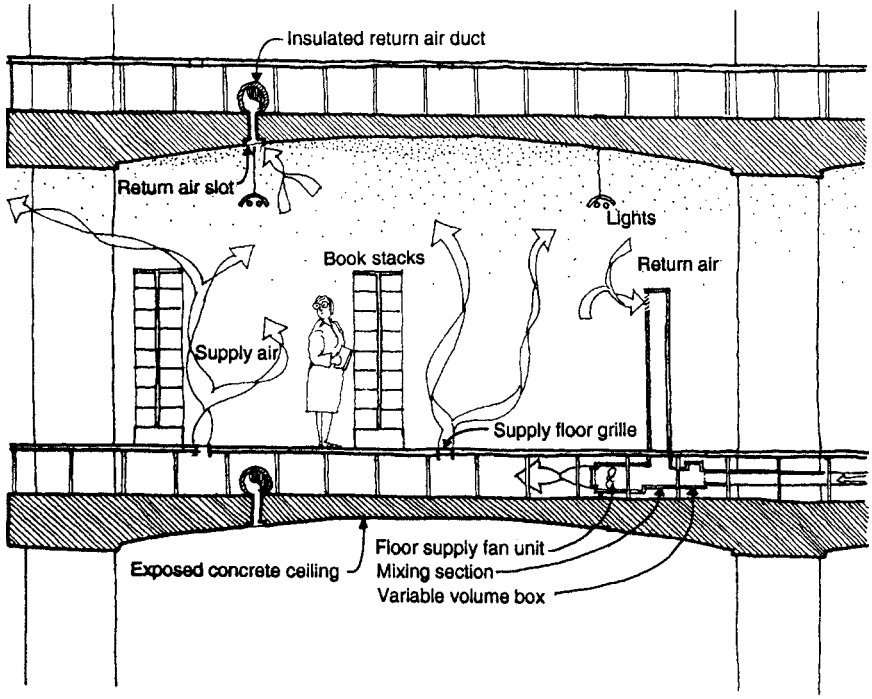


Fig. 10.48 *Library Square, Vancouver, British Columbia, supplies conditioned air to the central book stacks via an underfloor plenum. This displacement ventilation results in return air taken through openings in the exposed structural ceiling. (Section adapted from information supplied by Blair McCarry, Keen Engineering, North Vancouver, BC.)*



Fig. 10.49 *The Personal Environments® system provides each workstation with a fan, air filters, an air-mixing box, and a background sound (white noise) generator. The control panel allows adjustment of task lighting, background sound, fan speed, primary/recirculated air mixture, and radiant heating. Two diffusers distribute both air and background sound. Diffusers are adjustable about both horizontal and vertical axes. The below-desk radiant heating panel warms the lower body. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls, Inc., Milwaukee, WI.)*

supplementary heat (below desk level). Task lights can be dimmed, and the background (masking) sound level is adjustable. The worker has almost as much environmental control at each office workstation as a driver has in an automobile's front seat. When the workstation is unoccupied, an occupancy sensor shuts the system down, maintaining a minimum airflow of 12 cfm (5.7 L/s).

(e) Alternative Supply/Return Systems

So far, the supply/return systems discussed have been either both from the ceiling or supply from the floor and return at the ceiling. Supply from the ceiling, return through the floor is another possibility. The fresh air gets to the occupancy level later, and individual control is much more difficult, but debris from the floor falls into a return, not a supply, plenum. There seems less danger of debris falling into a floor supply diffuser while the system operates; it is during fan-off periods, which may include custodial maintenance, that this possibility increases.

An alternative approach with return at the perimeter is shown in Fig. 10.50. It is variously called an *air-extract window*, an *air curtain window*, or a *climate window*. Developed in Scandinavia in the 1950s, this is a triple-glazed window that passes room air between a typical outer double-glazed window and an inner single pane. The inner pane thus is kept at very nearly the same temperature as the room air, which greatly increases comfort near windows on very cold (or very hot) days. Venetian blinds are often inserted in this cavity, where they can intercept direct sun and redirect its light toward the ceiling. The solar heat intercepted by the blind is carried off by the room air to a plenum above the ceiling, where such air can be either exhausted or recirculated and its heat content either reclaimed or rejected. The U-factor of these windows is dependent upon the rate of airflow within the glazing panes (Fig. 10.50*c*); typical flow rates are 4 to 6 cfm per foot (6 to 9 L/s per meter) of window width.

The Ocosta Junior/Senior High School at Westport, Washington (Fig. 10.51), uses these windows

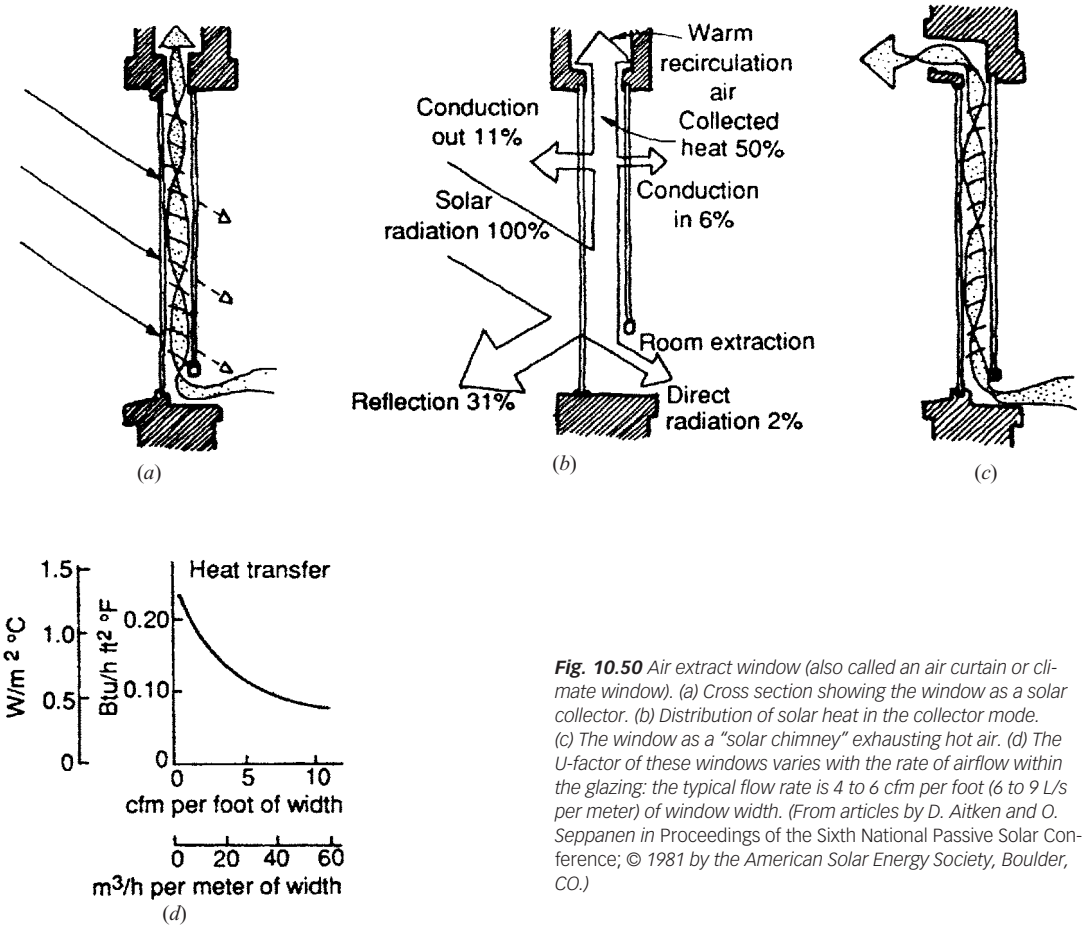
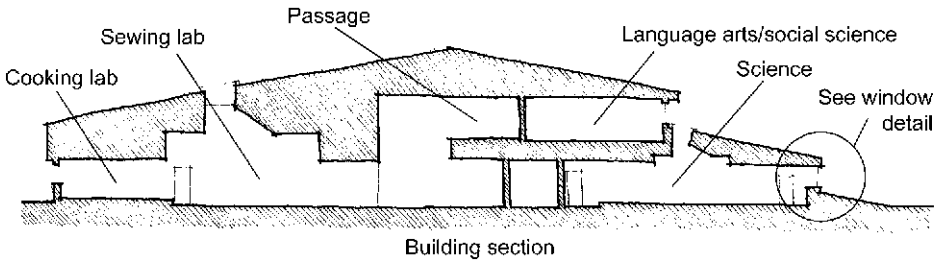


Fig. 10.50 *Air extract window (also called an air curtain or climate window). (a) Cross section showing the window as a solar collector. (b) Distribution of solar heat in the collector mode. (c) The window as a "solar chimney" exhausting hot air. (d) The U-factor of these windows varies with the rate of airflow within the glazing: the typical flow rate is 4 to 6 cfm per foot (6 to 9 L/s per meter) of window width. (From articles by D. Aitken and O. Seppanen in* Proceedings of the Sixth National Passive Solar Conference; *© 1981 by the American Solar Energy Society, Boulder, CO.)*

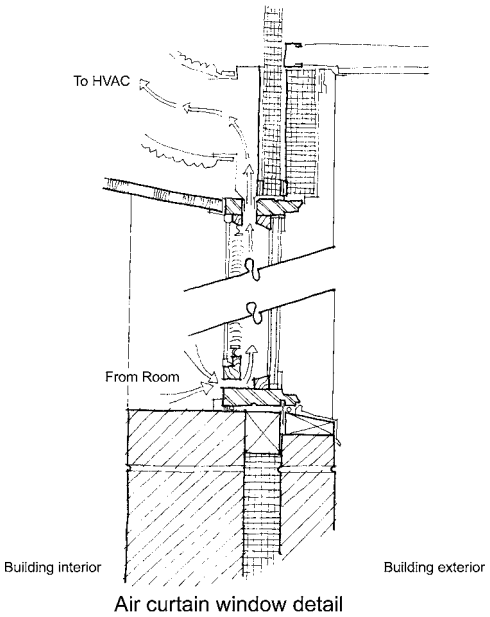
on the south façade. (For an example of such windows in a larger U.S. building, see Fig. 10.63, which shows the Comstock Center in Pittsburgh.) The classrooms have photocells that switch off some lights nearest the windows when daylight is adequate, and water loop heat pumps help to transfer passive solar heat from the south side to the sunless north side rooms. Excess heat in the Ocosta school is stored in an underground water tank. The compact plan, highly insulated envelope, and mass capacity within the school reduce the need for a boiler to supplement the winter temperature of the water loop. During consistently warm weather, the BMS exhausts the air from the window to the outdoors.

Supply openings in vertical risers are relatively rare but at times function effectively. The Frederick Meijer Gardens (Fig. 10.52) near Grand Rapids, Michigan, is a huge indoor tropical rain forest. This glass structure is more than 65 ft (20 m) high; it has more glass area than floor area—great for a high daylight factor, but imagine the heating loads! High humidity must be maintained, yet water condensation on leaves is undesirable. A strong horizontal airflow could be helpful to the plants, acting as wind would to develop a stronger root structure.

The solutions here begin with a perimeter tunnel serving as an air supply duct, delivering air evenly around the glass walls, heated by finned tubes at planting level that are largely hidden by foliage. The tunnel insulates the planting beds from the extremes of the exterior, maintaining constant ground temperatures year-round. A separate "wind" system continuously feeds air to vertical ducts with several diffusers (Fig. 10.52*b*), making leaves and branches sway. Humidity is provided by a high-pressure water system that creates fog (very small water particles). This is located high in the space (but also near waterfalls and a stream for



(*a*)



(*b*)

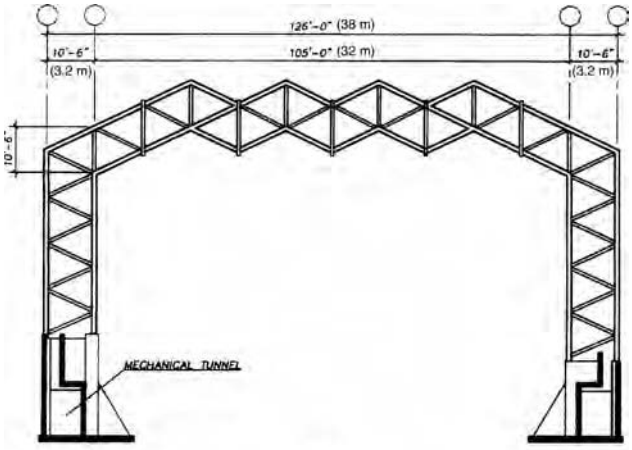
Fig. 10.51 *The Ocosta Junior/Senior High School at Westport, Washington, uses air extract (air curtain) windows to help distribute solar energy from the south side (to the right in section a) to the north classrooms. (b) Detail through the south-facing windows. Photocells control the electric lighting during daylight hours; venetian blinds direct sunlight toward the ceiling and deeper into the classroom. (Courtesy of Burr Lawrence Rising + Bates Architects, Tacoma, WA. Redrawn by Erik Winter.)*

special effects). This is also an evaporative cooling system to counteract summer overheating. Peak airflow is needed only for cooling; return air is taken through a large opening hidden behind a waterfall. About one-third of the peak supply air is returned; the remainder is exhausted at the top of the structure through operable vents high in the glass roof. A BMS controls the roof vents, the fogging system, the finned-tube heating system, rolling shading screens, and the heating/cooling equipment in a basement, all in response to changing conditions outside this enormous glass house.

10.5 ALL-AIR HVAC SYSTEMS

This large, complex family of systems was introduced in Section 10.2. All-air HVAC systems require thick distribution trees—therefore more building volume—but can promise comfortable results because they can effectively regulate IAQ, temperature, and humidity. This approach concentrates the mechanical equipment and its maintenance within a central mechanical room, freeing the rest of the building from repair interruptions and worries about water leaks from heating/cooling pipes. However, this family does less well with perimeter zones in cold climates.

With all-air systems, air quality can be manipulated through pressure control: *negative pressures* in odorous or excessively humid locations (kitchens, toilet rooms, pet shops in shopping centers, etc.), *positive pressures* in shopping malls, corridors of apartment houses, stair towers, and so on. The difference in pressure sets up an overall direction of airflow that helps prevent the spread of odorous or



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 10.52 *With more glass area than floor area, the Frederick Meijer Conservatory near Grand Rapids maintains a tropical environment in Michigan's winter. (a) A perimeter tunnel delivers air evenly around the walls, heated by finned tubes just above the planting level. (b) A separate "wind" system provides a continuous breeze from diffusers in the vertical ducts to strengthen plants' root systems. (c) A fogging system maintains tropical humidity while adding evaporative cooling under summer conditions. (Photos by Roger Van Vleck; courtesy of Fishbeck, Thompson, Carr & Huber, Ada, MI.)*

otherwise contaminated air and can help manage smoke in a fire (see Chapter 24). Positive pressures in connecting spaces help each adjacent space keep its air to itself.

(a) Single-Zone Systems

Smaller buildings are often served by this (Fig. 10.12*a*) least-complicated all-air example. Where an entire building is essentially one thermal zone, uncomplicated enough to be served by only one thermostat, this system offers a very low first cost. A closely related system is the multizone (see later in this chapter), which is a combination of single zones.

(b) Single-Duct VAV Systems

As described in Section 10.2, this system (Fig. 10.12*c*) is an energy-saving option ideally suited to the internal zones of large buildings, where cooling is always needed. However, it can also be adapted to serve the entire building, with important savings over the constant-volume (CV) systems described later (Section 10.5e). The air-handling units (fans, etc.) for each thermal zone are sized to meet the peak demand on that zone. In most CV systems, the fans always run at this peak-condition speed, even though peaks are often of rather short duration. In VAV systems, fans run at peak speed only during peak hours. This saves considerable energy otherwise used to run fans at constant speed. When the building uses only one or a few central fans, a VAV system will require smaller fans because the fans need to meet only one peak condition at a time and do not have to be sized for all zones' peak flows. The variation in demands on the fan can be met either by selecting variable-pitch blades or (less expensively) by varying the speed of the fan.

Where a VAV system is used, provision must be made for at least code-minimum fresh air levels, sometimes resulting in overcooling or wasteful reheating. Although VAV systems are typically less noisy than CV systems (because less air is moving), the air motion noise *varies* with the volume, and variable noise sources are inherently more noticeable than steady ones.

Within (or near) the spaces it serves, the VAV system typically needs a mixing box or terminal; this is often placed above a suspended ceiling or below a raised floor. Of the several terminal types available, the standard and most simple one is shown in Fig. 10.53. This terminal serves not only to vary the quantity of air, but also to both attenuate the noise and reduce the velocity of air from the main trunk of the distribution tree. High velocity is commonly used in main ducts because it reduces the size (thickness) of these critical large portions of the tree.

The Utah Department of Natural Resources in Salt Lake City (Fig. 10.54) utilizes VAV throughout its three-story, 105,000-ft^2 (9755-m^2) office building. Air is supplied from linear ceiling diffusers located between the rows of indirect luminaires parallel to the windows. Return air is taken into the suspended ceiling plenum. Highly insulated walls, windows, and roof lessen the need for perimeter heating, although a supplementary warm water heating system is built in below the windows to offset perimeter heat losses. The lower 1 ft (300 mm) is a slot where room air is drawn in by convection, and a perforated metal grille at the top forms the windowsill.

The building is elongated east–west for best daylight control and winter solar gain; lightshelves even the daylight penetration. With almost no east- or west-facing glass, the building relies on 4200 ft^2 (390 m^2) of south glass and 3800 ft^2 (353 m^2) of north glass to serve its width of 125 ft (38 m). Supplementary indirect lighting is controlled by photocells and dimming ballasts.

Utah's hot, dry summers permit a four-stage approach to cooling. First is the economizer cycle

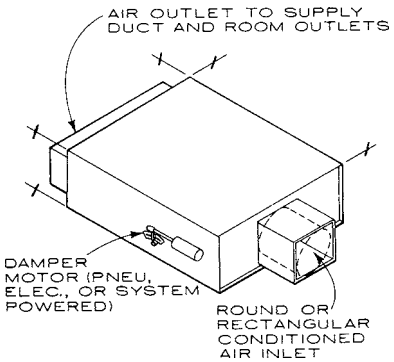


Fig. 10.53 *The most simple type of VAV terminal, which pinches back the volume of incoming air as cooling loads decrease. Boxes can range in size: 8–18 in. H by 24–67 in. L by 14–54 in W (200–460 x 610–1700 x 360–1370 mm). (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards, *9th ed.; © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

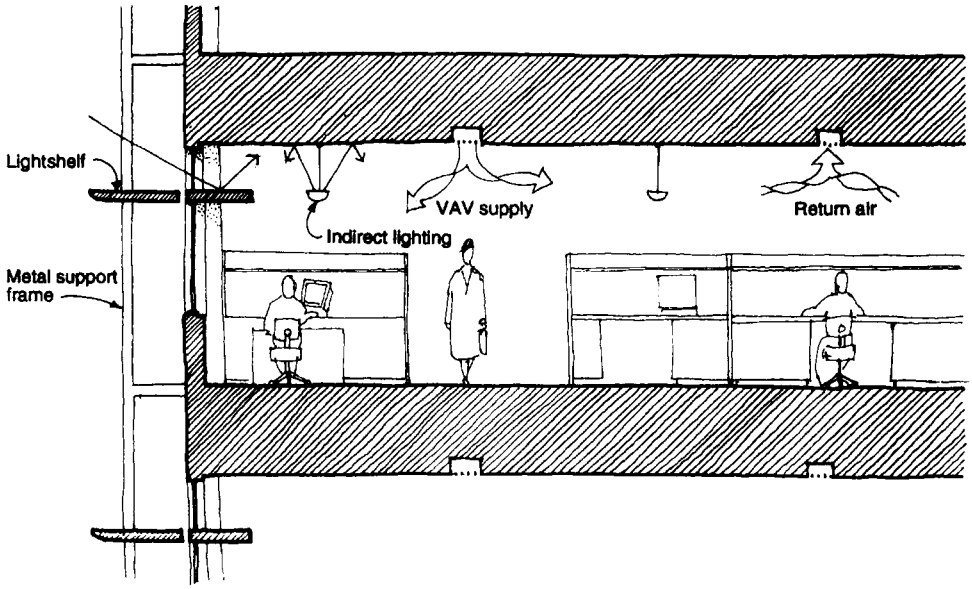


Fig. 10.54 *The Utah Department of Natural Resources building features lightshelves, direct and indirect evaporative cooling, and an economizer cycle. Supply air is distributed by a VAV system with ceiling diffusers located between luminaires. (Based upon the design by Gillies Stransky Brems Smith Architects, Salt Lake City, UT.)*

(see Fig. 10.36); at higher temperatures, direct evaporative cooling is used; then indirect evaporative cooling (see Figs. 9.10 and 9.11) utilizing an oversized cooling tower; and finally (estimated at about 10 days per year), a conventional chiller.

There are several variations on the basic VAV system, some of which respond to the problem of minimum airflows for rooms with little thermal load or to the desire to serve both interior and perimeter areas with the same HVAC system.

(c) Fan-Powered VAV Systems

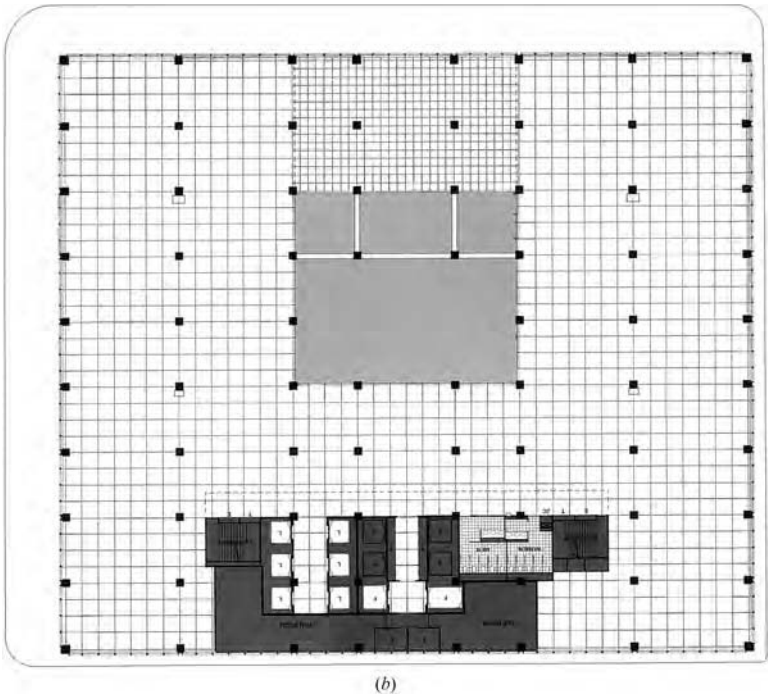
To maintain minimum fresh air, VAV terminals are usually set so that they cannot be entirely closed off, ensuring some outdoor air at all times. If this fresh air minimum, entering at low velocity, does not provide the desired air motion and mixing within the room, VAV terminals can be equipped with fans (Fig. 10.12*f*), which are activated as needed with decreasing incoming air volume. These self-contained fans mix room air with incoming air to provide an airstream of the right temperature and velocity to maintain comfort.

This approach to VAV is sometimes taken when simultaneous heating and cooling are needed, such as at perimeter zones, which can generate sizable heating needs while the rest of the building needs cooling. Another approach is to utilize an induction-type VAV terminal, with which air heated by electric lights is induced to join the incoming cool airstream. Greater heating needs often require the use of reheat terminals supplied by a circulating hot water system or by electric resistance heating. This reheat application is more energy efficient than the standard CV reheat system described in Section 10.5*(e)*, because a much smaller volume of air is first cooled, then reheated. The water or electric coils can be incorporated either in the VAV terminal or in the ductwork between the terminal and the space it serves.

An example of a floor-by-floor VAV system (Fig. 10.55) is a 1-million-ft^2 (92,900-m^2) 28-floor Chicago office building designed by Skidmore Owings & Merrill. This mid-rise approach to office towers utilizes three "stacked" atriums to relieve the monotony of the wide interior floors. Another result is lower structural and energy costs per square foot relative to conventional high-rise structures. The cubelike shape of the building exposes less skin area (38% of which is in insulating glass) to Chicago's cold winters; electric lighting at about 1.8 W/ft^2 (19.4 W/m^2) holds down internal gains. To accommodate the differing schedules and

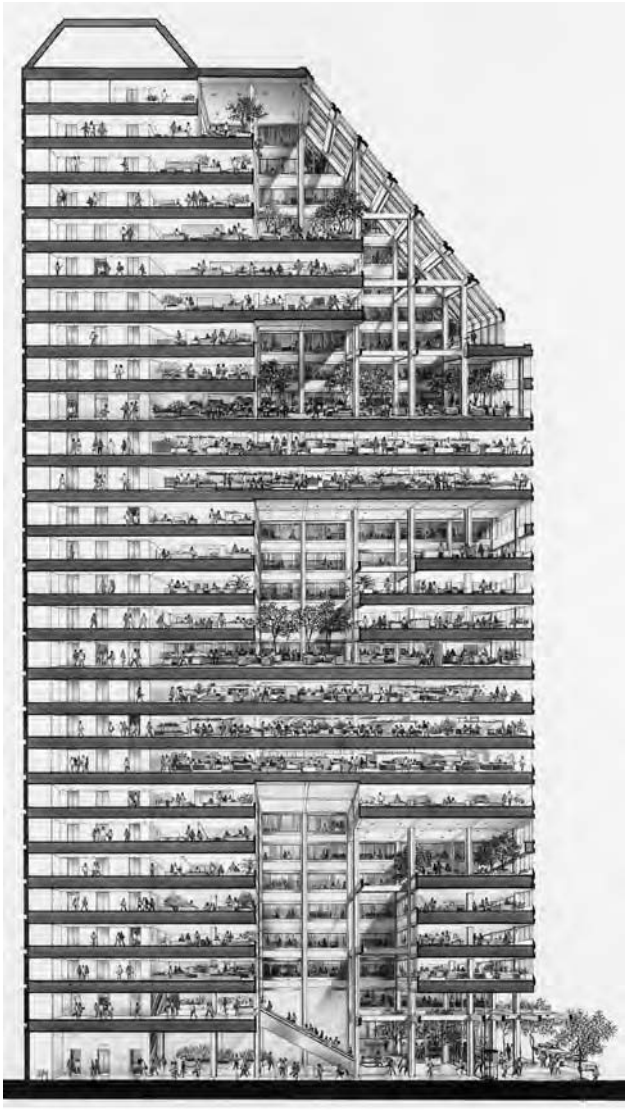


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 10.55 *Floor-by-floor fan rooms supply VAV for this Chicago office building. (a) Exterior view of 33 West Monroe. (Photo by Merrick, Hedrick-Blessing.) (b) Plan of a typical lower floor; two fan rooms occupy the space along the exterior wall. (c) Section perspective showing stacked atriums. (Courtesy of Skidmore, Owings & Merrill, Architects-Engineers, Chicago.)*



(*c*)

Fig. 10.55 *(Continued)*

comfort needs of a variety of tenants, each floor is provided with two VAV supply fans that can be operated at night and on weekends, independently of the rest of the building. Each floor's mechanical core has one exterior wall (on an alley) to facilitate fresh air intake/stale air exhaust. The perimeter heating system is electric resistance fin radiation; an economizer cycle provides cooling with outdoor air below 55°F (13°C).

(d) Multizone Systems

A multizone system (Fig. 10.12*b*) is a collection of single-zone systems served by a single supply fan; such systems rarely exceed eight zones per air-handling unit. Simultaneous heating of some zones and cooling of others is possible, but leakage between zones at the decks of hot and cold coils is common. Return air from all zones

is mixed within one return duct; a bypass at the heating and cooling decks requires more space but allows such air to be mixed with supply without undergoing unnecessary heating or cooling. One multizone system per floor of medium- to high-rise buildings is an increasingly common application.

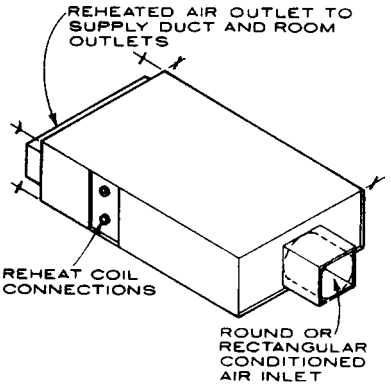
(e) Single Duct with Reheat

Once a widely used system and usually supplied at constant volume (CV), single-duct reheat systems (Fig. 10.12*e*) now are severely restricted by many building codes and energy standards. For high-pressure and high-velocity main ducts, CV reheat boxes (Fig. 10.56*a*) are used to control the temperature, pressure, and velocity of the supply air, and to mitigate noise. For more simple all-low-velocity systems, simple duct insert heaters (Fig. 10.56*b*) can be used. These are sized to fit the duct, which needs to be enlarged only slightly to accommodate them.

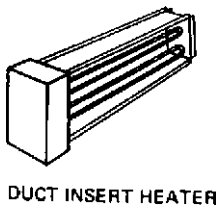
(f) Dual-Duct Systems

This (Fig. 10.12*d*) is still considered the "Cadillac" of HVAC systems, not only because of its superior comfort control and flexibility for simultaneous heating/cooling zones, but also because of its high first cost, large size, and high energy usage. The dual-duct system is rarely installed now, except in hospitals. Building volumes needed for a dual-duct system's three (two supply, one return) full-sized air distribution trees are harder to justify, given that VAV systems can provide acceptable comfort for most common spaces. An example of a dual-duct system in an office building was seen in Fig. 10.11, San Francisco's International Building.

The mixing boxes (terminals) of dual-duct systems are similar to those of other all-air systems (Fig. 10.57) but are generally larger for the same airflow capacity. This adds still more to their impact on building volume. They are expensive and may require maintenance. Although most dual-duct systems are constant volume, they can be VAV when the reduction in airflow is no more than 50% below the maximum. For details on other double-duct variations, see Grondzik (2007).



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 10.56 *Single-duct system with reheat coils (a) requires a simple terminal where velocity and pressure are reduced. Box capacity ranges from 200 cfm (95 L/s) at 12 in. by 50 in. by 22 in. (305 x 1270 x 560 mm) to 5000 cfm (2360 L/s) at 20 in. by 60 in. by 80 in. (510 x 1520 x 2030 mm). (b) Electric coil within a duct. Size varies to suit duct dimensions (and capacity, which can range from 0.3 to 2000 kW). (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed.; © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

10.6 AIR AND WATER HVAC SYSTEMS

These systems, introduced in Fig. 10.13 and Section 10.2, have the design complexity—and first cost—of supply-and-return distribution trees for both water and air. This disadvantage is offset by the space-saving advantages of thinner water trees, the possibility of only one air tree (supply), and the superior comfort characteristics offered by air. When only fresh air is centrally treated and distributed, only an equal quantity of air need be exhausted, which rarely needs an extensive distribution tree. Because this exhaust air is not recirculated, these systems are attractive for hospitals and other buildings in which the mixing of air between zones is undesirable. When return air is used rather

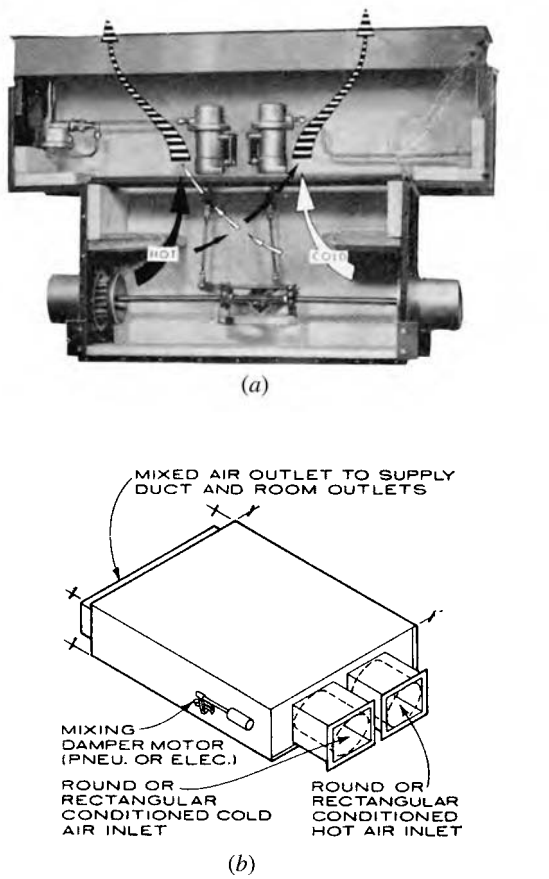


Fig. 10.57 *High-velocity, dual-duct terminal providing mixing and attenuation (pressure and sound reduction). (a) Controlled from a thermostat, this unit blends the supply airstreams and delivers air to the zone at the selected temperature. (Courtesy of Anemostat.) (b) Typical mixing box dimensions are: 10 by 50 by 30 in. (250 x 1270 x 760 mm) for a 400 cfm (190 L/s) unit to 18 by 60 by 66 in. (460 x 1520 x 1680 mm) for a 5000 cfm (2360 L/s) unit. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards, *9th ed.; © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission from John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

than exhausted, it forms a small percentage of the supply air.

These systems are most often used in perimeter zones, where extensive extra heating (winter) and cooling (summer) is readily provided by water. If only one water supply tree is used (two-pipe system), there is a problem of deciding when to change over between heating and cooling. In-space maintenance is required (filters in particular), and humidity is less tightly controlled than in all-air systems. In most air and water systems, the air is circulated in a cooled and dehumidified condition and heated by the water for most of the year.

Air and water systems can often be found in the perimeter zones of office buildings, hospitals, schools, apartments, and laboratories.

(a) Induction

Centrally conditioned fresh air is supplied (at either high or medium pressures and velocities) to each induction terminal (Fig. 10.13*a*). Each terminal then mixes 20% to 40% incoming fresh air with the 80% to 60% room air that is induced to flow along with the fresh air, all passing over finned tubes for heating or cooling and circulating this mixture of air to the space.

In two-pipe systems, either hot or cold water—not both—is available to temper this air mixture ordered by the thermostat linked to each terminal. Because cool air is distributed for most of the year, the two-pipe system is largely in heating mode (in colder climates).

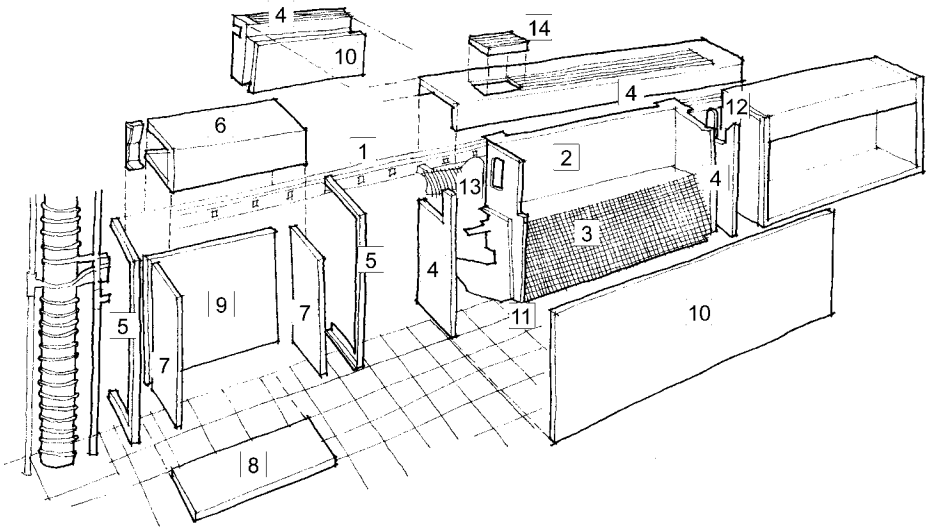
In four-pipe systems, the availability of both hot and chilled water makes it possible to switch instantly from heating to cooling for excellent thermal control.

The induction terminals typically are located either below perimeter windows (Fig. 10.58) or above a suspended ceiling. Condensation from the cooling coil in summer and the need to clean the filters of the induced room air make under-window locations much easier to maintain, even if they intrude on the floor area available.

The CBS Tower in New York City (Fig. 10.59) uses a high-velocity induction system for its perimeter zones. The triangular black granite-faced exterior columns give the façade a three-dimensionality quite unlike the slick glass boxes of its contemporaries (it was designed by Eero Saarinen and built in 1962). These thick columns enclose the perimeter distribution trees; every other column contains the high-velocity air supply; in between, every fourth column contains the supply water and every alternate fourth column the return water trees. These constant column sizes belie the thicker air, thinner water distribution trees. The interior zone of this tower is served by a VAV system; return air from both perimeter and interior zones is collected at the core.

(b) Fan-Coil with Supplementary Air

This system (Fig. 10.13*b*) is closely related to the preceding induction system; however, this system

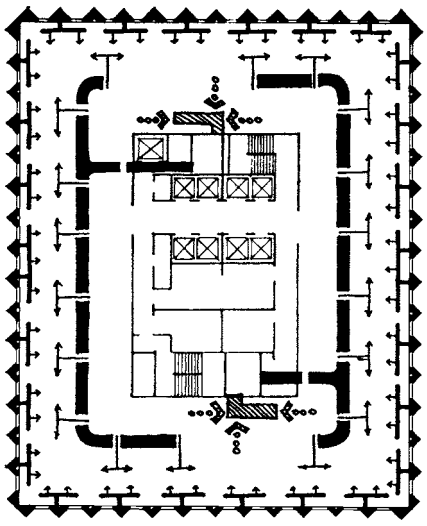


1 Wall mounting strip	6 Run-out enclosures	11 Lint screen
2 Base unit, air plenum	7 Shelf end panels	12 Base unit air plug
3 Base unit, coil section	8 Shelving	13 Air transition fitting
4 Base unit enclosure	9 Enclosure panel	14 Discharge grille section
5 Enclosure end frames	10 Base unit removable panel	

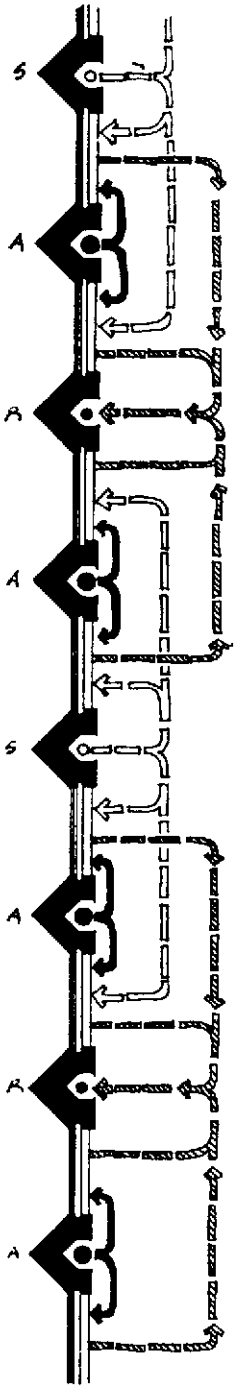
Fig. 10.58 *Installation of a high-velocity induction unit. Conditioned 100% outdoor air is brought in through a high-velocity duct to provide ventilation and to induce the circulation of room air. It is attenuated and silenced in the chamber (2), and then, through jets in the front of the plenum, it induces the flow of room air, which is heated or cooled at the fin coil (3). The lint screen (11) requires periodic maintenance for proper airflow. (Courtesy of Carrier Corporation. Redrawn by Erik Winter.)*



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 10.59 *The identical triangular exterior columns of the CBS Tower in New York City (a) enclose a variety of distribution trees. (b) Plan of a typical floor; perimeter zones are served by a high-induction air and water system, interior zones by VAV. All return air is collected at the core. (c) At the perimeter, column type A contains an air supply tree feeding the high-velocity induction unit on either side of the column. Column type S contains the supply water tree, hot in winter and cold in summer. Column type R contains the return water tree. (From David Guise,* Design and Technology in Architecture; *© 1985, John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

uses a fan at each unit, rather than high-velocity primary air, to move the mixture of supply and room air through the unit. A typical arrangement is a supply air plenum over a corridor, feeding horizontal fan-coils above the suspended ceilings of spaces on either side. These fan-coils draw some supply air and mix it with room return air to maintain desired temperatures. If condensation and resulting pans of standing water are to be avoided, the supply air must be sufficiently dehumidified.

Fan-coils are very widely used, both in conjunction with conditioned supply air (air and water) or as stand-alone units that take in their own fresh air at the perimeter (all-water), or even as room-air-only units. A building that uses both fan-coil units (at entries) and radiant panels (in offices) is shown in Fig. 10.60.

(c) Radiant Panels with Supplementary Air

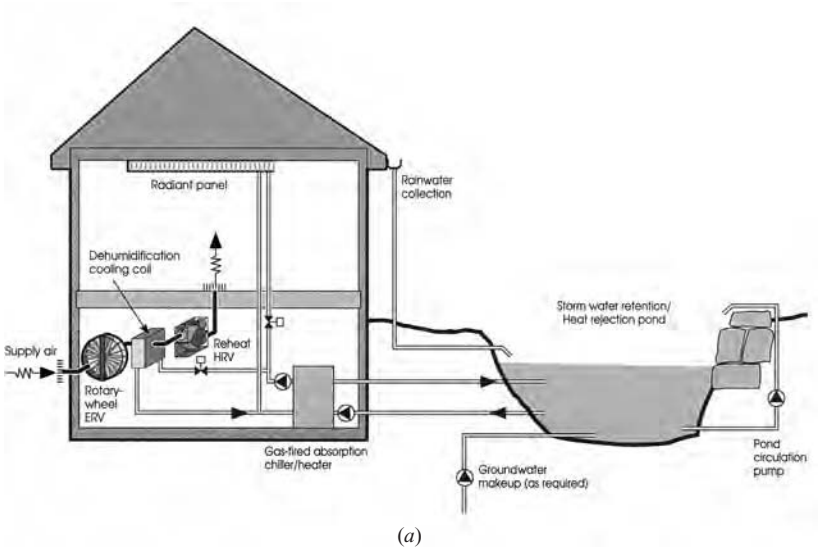
Radiant heating systems (Fig. 10.13*c*) have a large following of comfortable users; radiant cooling systems are fairly commonly used in Europe and are getting a closer look in the United States. Large areas of radiant surface can be used to offset large losses of bodily radiant heat, as in the case of large areas of cold glass on a winter day, or when users are both scantily clothed and sedentary. In summer, such panels can help offset radiant gain from electric lights or large glass areas. The ceiling is often favored for the panel location, because it is uncluttered by the furniture, tackboards, and other items that cover floors and walls. At the 56-story Commerzbank in Frankfurt, Germany, chilled ceilings serve all office floors in conjunction with the ventilation system.

Green on the Grand (Fig. 10.60) is a 23,465-ft^2 (2180-m^2) two-story office complex in Kitchener, Ontario. Its design combines a very highly insulated envelope, daylighting, water conservation, a gas absorption (non-CFC, non-HCFC) chiller/heater with a heat rejection pond, a separate IAQ system, and heat recovery of exhaust air. It also features a dedicated air system for ventilation and a hydronic system for heating and cooling. The hydronic system uses fan-coils for the entryways and radiant panels on ceilings of office spaces. (The conditioned air in this example is provided by the ventilating system.) Fan-coils are better able to handle the extremes of entryway heat losses and gains. The radiant panels in the offices are used for both heating and cooling, but are sized to meet cooling loads and cover 30% of the ceiling area. Tenants were given their choice of two designs: steel panels suspended below a drywall ceiling (painted to match the ceiling color) or extruded aluminum panels fit into a suspended ceiling system. To prevent condensation on these radiant panels during cooling, the ventilation air is dehumidified.

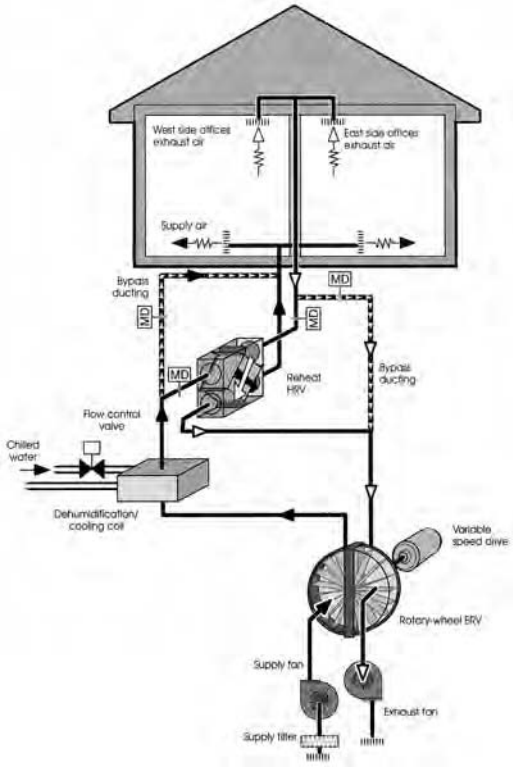
The ventilation system supplies low on the walls and exhausts high on the walls, a form of displacement ventilation. There are two rates of fresh air: 20 cfm (10 L/s) per person, and (when economizer cycles operate or when more fresh air or more cooling is required) 40 cfm (20 L/s) per person. The exhaust air then flows through two heat exchangers: the first reheats fresh air that has been greatly cooled for dehumidification; the second preconditions the incoming fresh air at the point of entry. The latter heat exchanger is a rotary-wheel ERV capable of transferring both heat and moisture.

Several approaches to the radiant cooling (and heating) panel, independent of a dehumidified air supply, are shown in Fig. 10.61. These approaches assume a minimal floor/ceiling thickness, which could contribute either to reducing the floor-to-floor height or to greater ceiling height (for daylight penetration or displacement ventilation). If a raised floor is used above these concrete slabs, even higher percentage heat gains come from the ceiling.

Radiant cooled floors are sometimes used, as in the Bleshman Regional Day School (Fig. 10.62). The designers of this school for the handicapped recognized that the majority of its users would spend much of their time quite close to the floor and that the colder air near the floor could be uncomfortable, especially in the New Jersey winter. The entire floor is warmed by the supply (ventilation) air in winter, which enters just below windows to counteract the downdraft off cold glass. In summer, the cool supply air first cools the floor and then cools the air in front of the warm glass. The concrete cellular "air floor" provides a thermal mass that helps maintain steady temperatures. Heated or cooled air is provided by rooftop air-air heat pumps, one of which is provided for each cluster of three to six classrooms. This HVAC example is therefore related to the direct refrigerant systems family.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 10.60 *An innovative Canadian office building, Green on the Grand at Kitchener, Ontario. The cooling system combines a radiant panel system (a) with a dehumidified summer ventilation system (b). The building also features daylighting, a gas absorption chiller/heater, rainwater pond heat rejection, and two-stage heat recovery. (Courtesy of Enermodal Engineering, Ltd., Kitchener, ON.)*

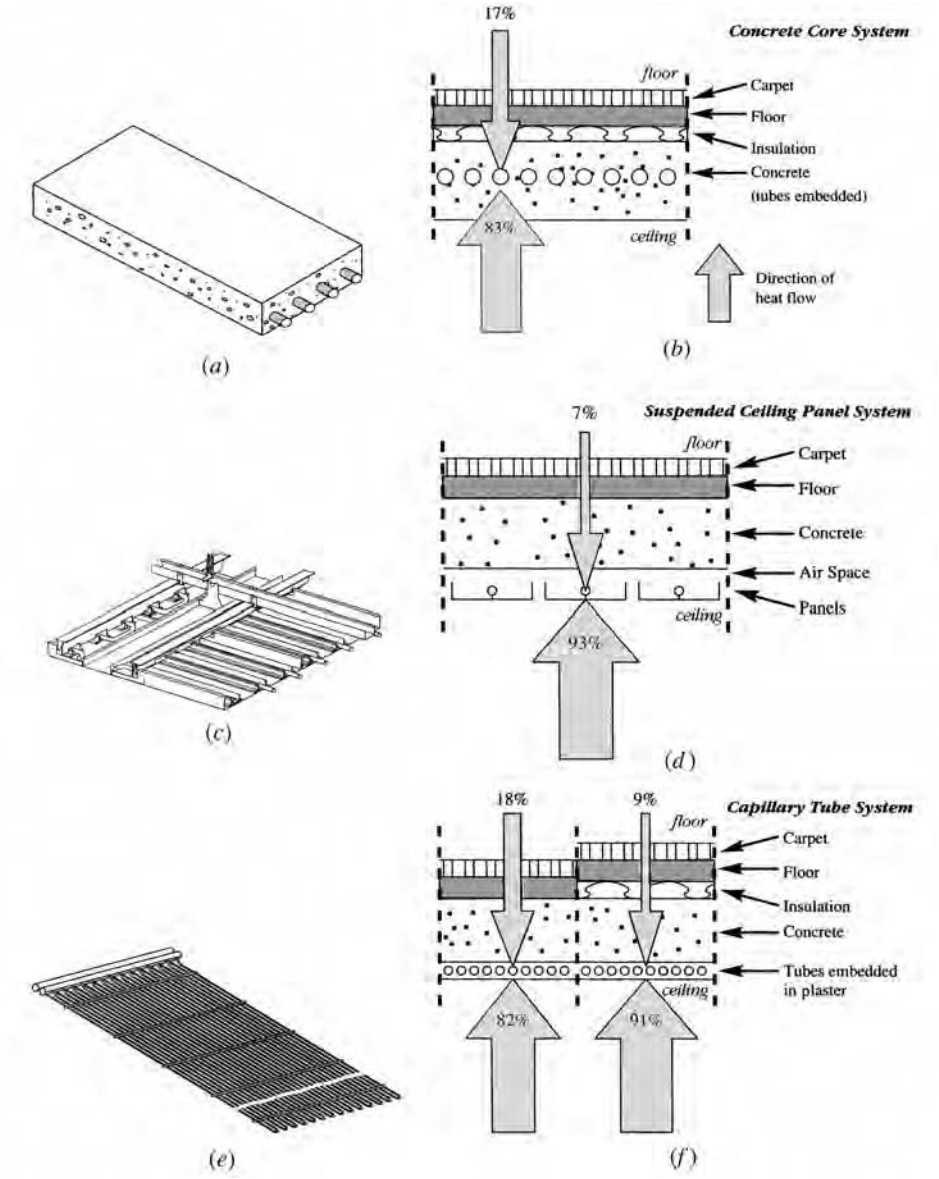


Fig. 10.61 *Approaches to radiant cooling systems. (a) Concrete core system: water is circulated through plastic tubes embedded in the concrete floor/ceiling slab. (b) With carpet, pad, and insulation on the floor, most of the heat radiates to the ceiling. (c) Panel system, usually using aluminum facing, connected to metal tubes. (d) Panel system has the highest heat flow to the ceiling. (e) Cooling grid made of capillary tubes embedded in ceiling plaster (or in gypsum board or mounted on ceiling panels). This provides the most even surface temperature distribution. (f) Again, a high percentage of the heat is radiated to the cooled ceiling, depending on the use of insulation below the carpet and pad. (From* Center for Building Science News*, Fall 1994. Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, CA.)*

(d) Water Loop Heat Pump

This approach was diagrammed in Fig. 9.45 and is used in the school shown in Fig. 10.51. In the 175,000-ft^2 (16,260-m^2) Comstock Center in Pittsburgh (Fig. 10.63), there are six to eight small heat pumps on each of 10 floors, located above the suspended ceiling. Their connecting loop doubles as the building's wet-pipe sprinkler system supply; this is possible because the heat pumps keep the loop between 65°F and 85°F (18°C and 29°C). Because neither hot nor chilled water supply and water return distribution trees are needed in addition to the sprinklers, there is a substantial first-cost

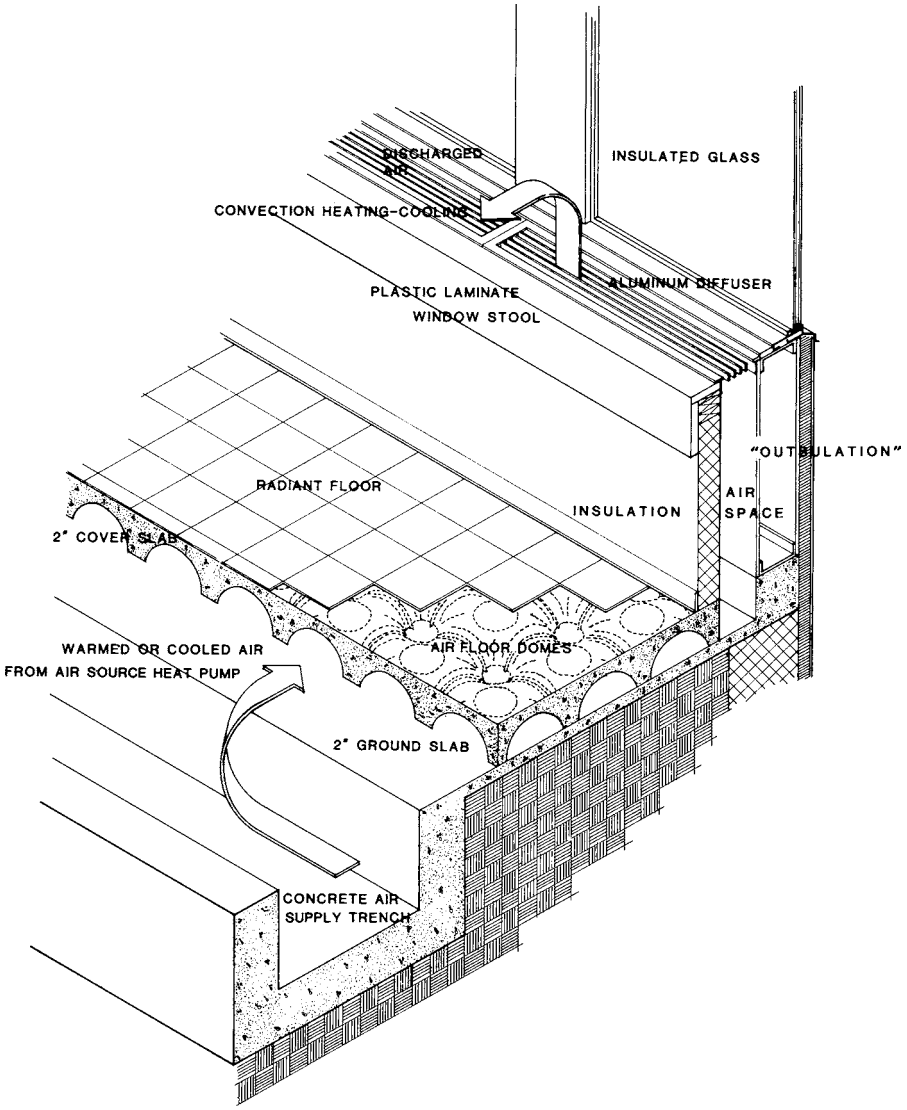


Fig. 10.62 *Underfloor air distribution achieved with a cellular concrete air floor serves the Bleshman Regional Day School in Paramus, New Jersey. (Courtesy of Rothe-Johnson, architects.)*

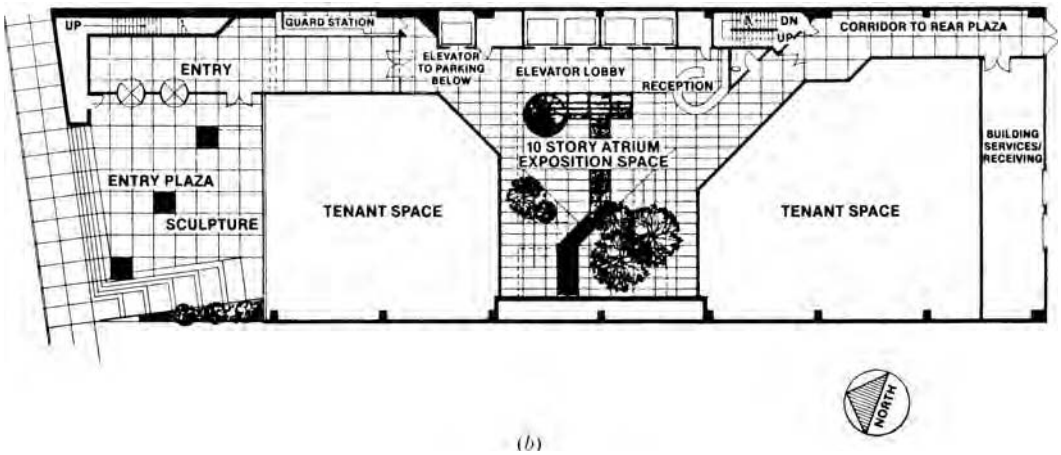
saving, and relatively little building volume is consumed. A 23,000-gal (87,060-L) water storage tank allows daytime heat, rejected to the loop by the heat pumps, to be stored and recalled for nighttime heating. When necessary, penthouse equipment is used: two small boilers to maintain the 65°F minimum temperature in the water loop or an evaporative condenser to hold temperatures at 85°F.

Another feature of the Comstock Center is its use of air extract windows (see Fig. 10.50) to control infiltration and to moderate the perimeter zone's temperatures. After the return air passes up inside this window and arrives in the ceiling plenum, it is mixed with fresh air, then tempered and recirculated by the heat pumps.

The Comstock Center also utilizes a large daylighting atrium, whose temperature control is provided largely by exhaust air from the offices; the stack effect is utilized to provide natural ventilation on its west face in summer conditions.

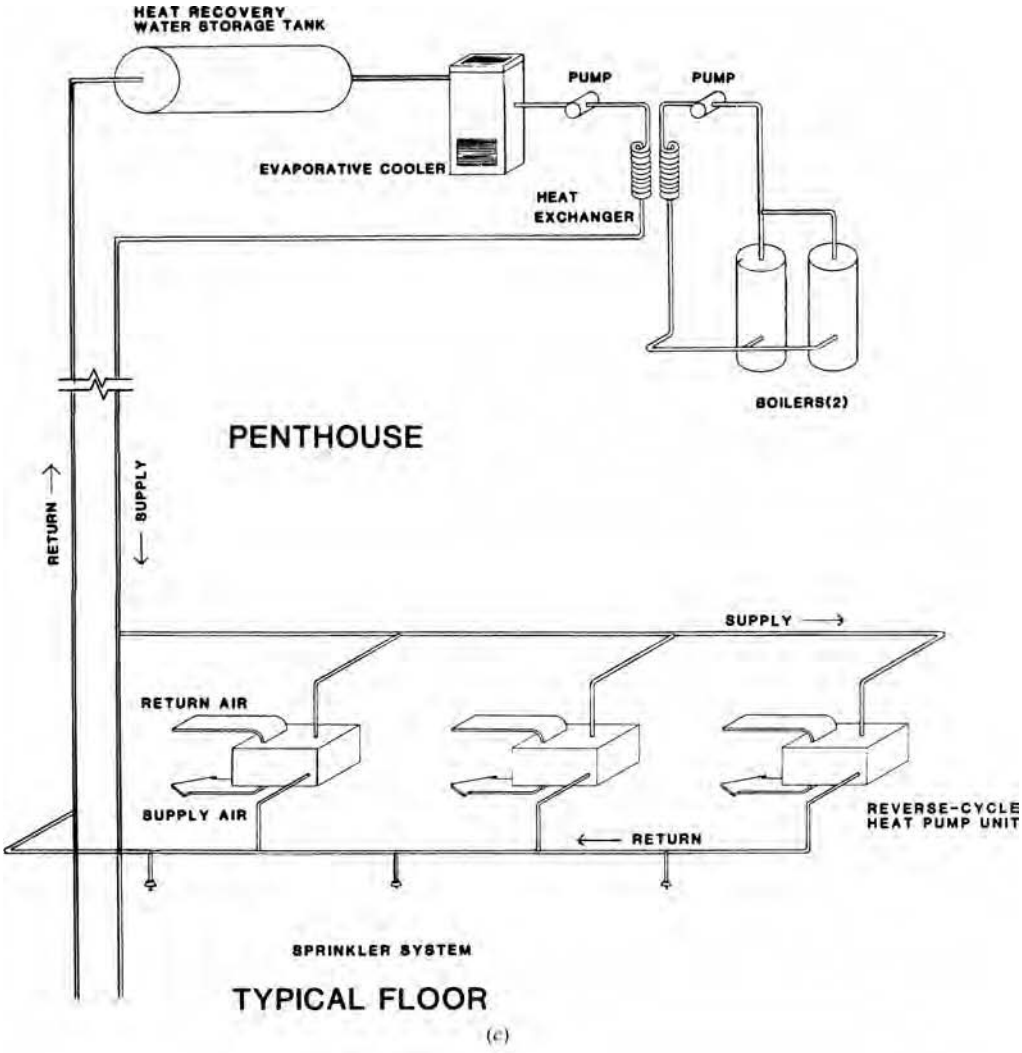


(a)

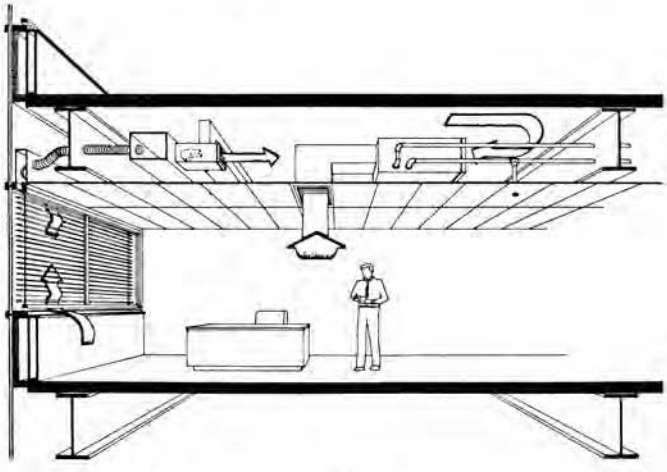


(b)

Fig. 10.63 *The Comstock Center, Pittsburgh, Burt Hill Kosar Rittelmann Associates, architects. (a) The north and west faces. (b) Ground-floor plan. (c) Water loop heat pumps are linked via the sprinkler system on each floor. This is also called a tri-water system. (d) Extract-air windows (see again Fig. 10.50) control infiltration and moderate the perimeter zone temperatures. Fresh air is ducted to the plenum, where it mixes with return air before being treated and recirculated through the heat pumps. (e) The central daylighting atrium is tempered by exhaust air from the offices; exhaust air then leaves via the stack effect. (f) The stack effect also controls summer overheating.*

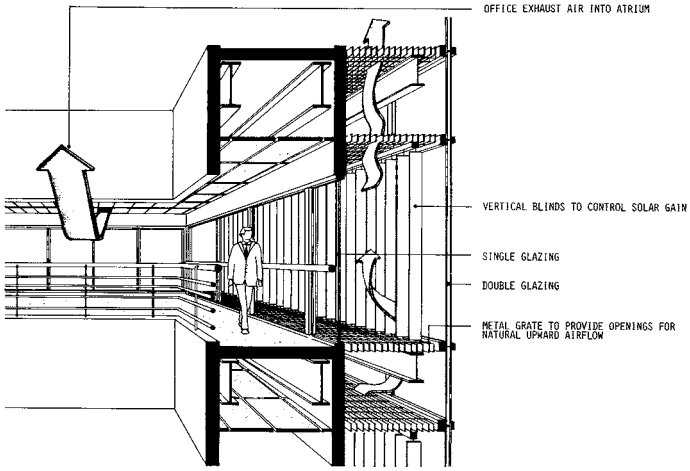


(c)

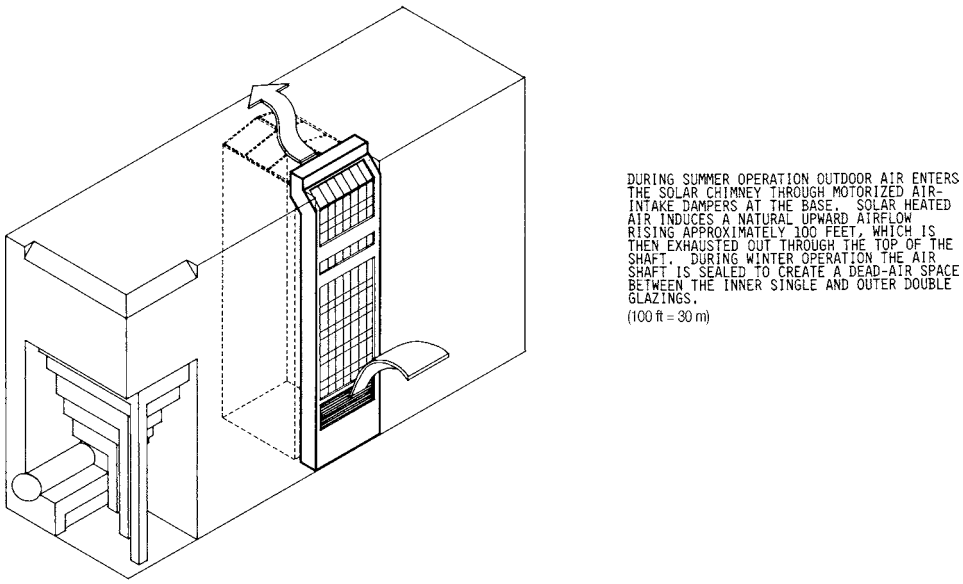


(d)

Fig. 10.63 *(Continued)*



(*e*)

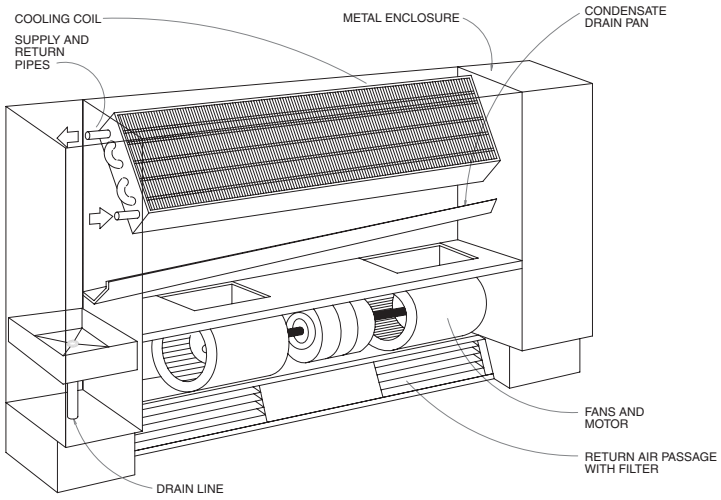


(*f*)

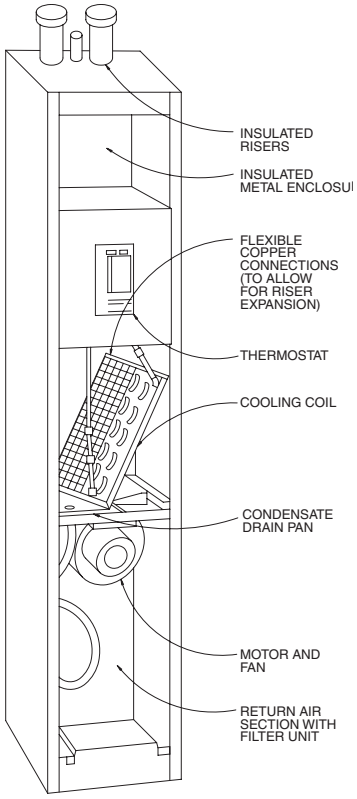
Fig. 10.63 *(Continued)*

10.7 ALL-WATER HVAC SYSTEMS

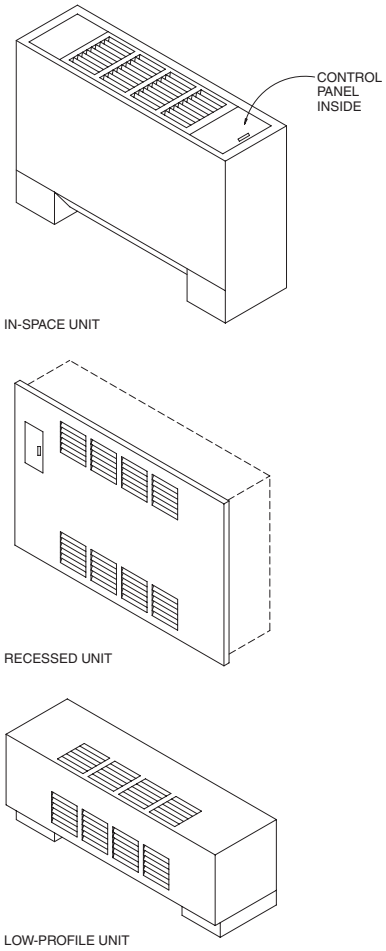
These systems (see Fig. 10.14 and Section 10.2d) typically deal only with temperature control; air quality is left to separate systems. An especially familiar all-water application is the simple *fan-coil unit* (Fig. 10.64). (Because units with the same name are used in air and water systems, this further blurs the distinction between these two HVAC families.) These units, which may be found above ceilings, below windows, or in corners, simply control the temperature (and, to a limited extent, the relative humidity) of the air already in the room, which is blown through the coils. Because water is often condensed from the room air when cooling is in progress, a drain line is required; water standing in drain pans is unhealthy. Exterior air intake grilles can easily be added when fan-coil units are located



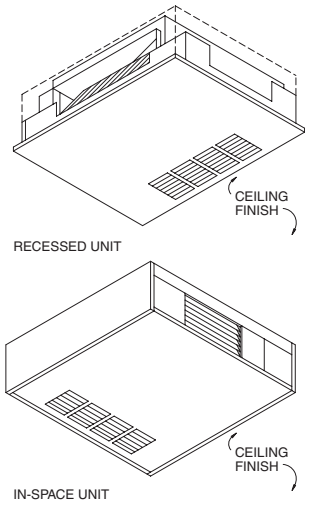
(*a*) COMPONENTS OF A FAN-COIL UNIT



(*b*) HIGH-RISE FAN-COIL



(*c*) VERTICAL FAN-COIL CONFIGURATIONS



(*d*) HORIZONTAL FAN-COIL

Fig. 10.64 *(a) The innards of a simple fan-coil unit without outdoor air connection; showing a standard below-window unit. Widths can range from 2.5 to 7 ft (0.8 to 2.1 m), height is around 26 in. (660 mm), and depth between 9 and 12 in. (230–305 mm). (b) High-rise unit for corners or cabinet locations. These can be stacked to reduce connecting piping runs and simplify condensate collection. (c) Vertical units for below large windows. Low-profile unit height is around 14 in. (360 mm). (d) Horizontal units for above-ceiling locations. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 10th ed.; © 2000 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)*

below windows to allow the local provision and tempering of ventilation air; this is especially common in motels, hotels, and apartments.

Fan-coil units are inherently noisy due to the fan, so careful attention to sound ratings is required when background sound levels must be low. In offices, a relatively high background sound level can help to maintain acoustic privacy at the workstation; the sound of the fan-coil provides reassurance that some kind of air treatment system is at work.

All-water perimeter systems with local fresh air can also take the simple form of *operable windows with hot water finned-tube radiation*. An expressive variation on this approach appears in the reading rooms and staff workrooms for the Seeley G. Mudd Library at Yale University (Fig. 10.65). Limestone spandrels are curved in to allow fresh air to enter these smaller-perimeter rooms just below the windows, where hot water finned-tube radiators are available when needed. The incoming fresh air replaces exhaust air, which flows out of the upper operable windows. The remainder of the building has conventional forced-air heating and cooling.

10.8 DISTRICT HEATING AND COOLING

Often, large projects made up of many large buildings are well served by *one* central station heating/cooling plant. The familiar economies of scale apply here; very large, efficient, and well-maintained boilers and chillers encourage energy recovery through heat exchange, reduce air pollution, and remove the noise and other nuisances associated with heating and cooling from the other buildings. This approach is called *district heating and cooling*.

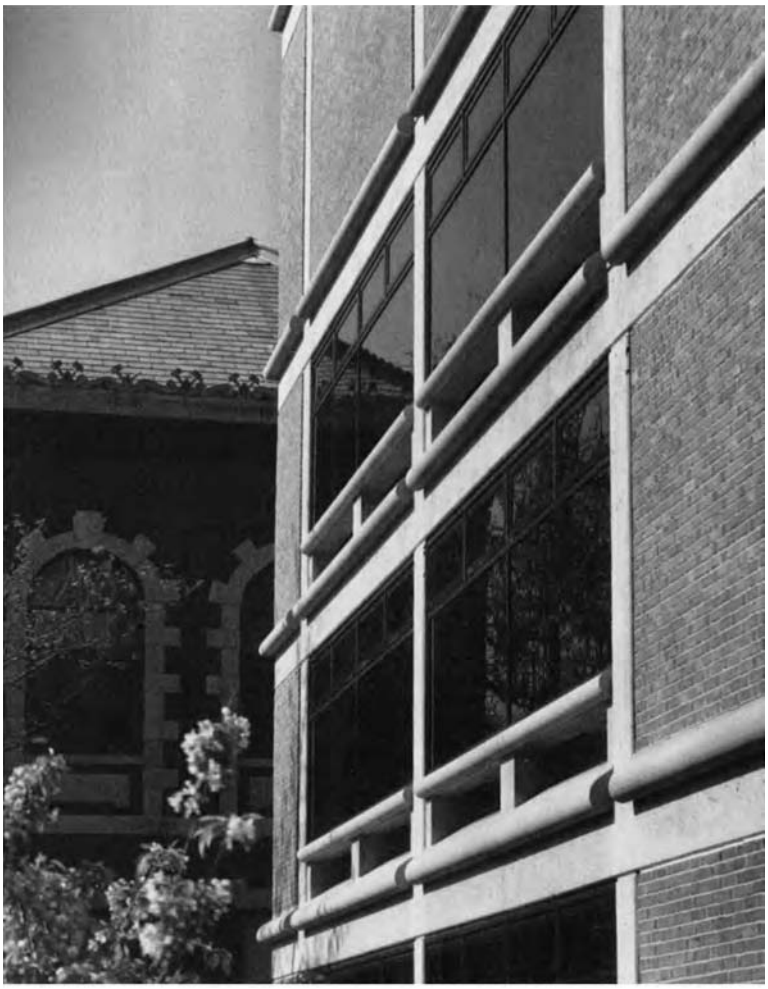
District heating for residences and small commercial buildings is common in northern Europe; district steam systems serve the central areas of many U.S. cities. Most often, electrical generating plants are the heat (or steam) source; *cogeneration* (discussed in Section 10.9) allows the waste heat from the generating plant to be put to use either as space heating or steam (indirect-fired) absorption cooling. Ironically, the trend toward better-insulated buildings has reduced the market for distributed heat, making the installation less cost-effective. This discourages suppliers both from investing in a district system and from encouraging technical innovations in energy conservation by their customers. Smaller, densely built-up central heating districts tend to be more successful than large, sprawling ones; lengthy lines cost more to install and maintain and lose more energy.

(a) High-Temperature Water and Chilled Water

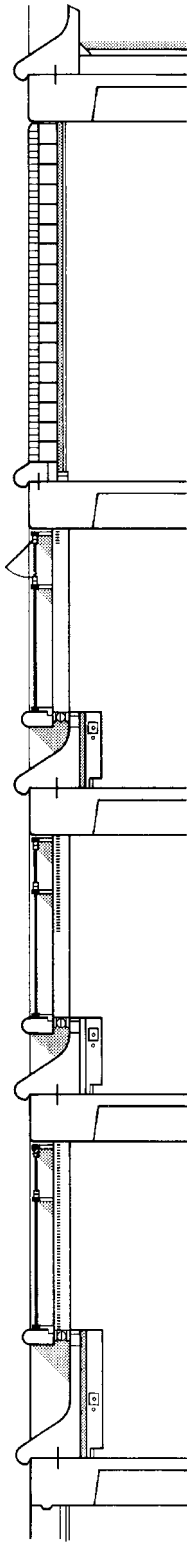
Long-distance steam distribution has been used for more than a century; the development of *high-temperature water* (HTW) and chilled water distribution among buildings is a more recent development. Offering many advantages (although steam is still frequently chosen for city distribution), circulated high-temperature, high-pressure hot water and chilled water in closed systems are widely used in U.S. Air Force bases and airports, and for groups of buildings such as hospital complexes and college campuses. Increased efforts are being made to install new district heating/cooling networks served by existing fossil-fueled electricity generating plants. Such plants waste more than half of their fossil fuel input, and district heating/cooling could intercept much of that waste; see also the next section on cogeneration.

Water will not flash into steam if kept at sufficiently high pressure. It may then be circulated by pumps through supply and return mains and through branches to heat exchangers, which operate conventional low-pressure hot water systems, generate steam, and perform numerous other thermal tasks. Pressures are on the order of 400 psig (pounds per square inch, gauge; 2758 kPa) and temperatures are about 300°F (149°C). During its circuit, the water will sometimes lose up to 150F° (83C°) and 60 psig (414 kPa) in pressure. The section shown in Fig. 10.66 illustrates a common arrangement.

High-temperature water has a number of advantages over steam for certain installations. It is a two-pipe system, and the temperature drop in the *supply* main is often as little as 10F° (5.5C°). With reasonably high water velocities, mains can be reduced to almost half the size of those required for steam distribution, with no need for steam traps and pressure-reducing valves. The pipes need not pitch to low points, as in the case of steam (to accommodate condensation), but can follow the contours of the ground. Although installation costs are greater, operational costs are less than those for steam.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 10.65 *Local fresh air and finned-tube radiation at the perimeter. The Seeley G. Mudd Library at Yale University; Roth and Moore, architects. (a) Exterior, showing curved limestone spandrels, along which flows incoming fresh air. (Photo © Steve Rosenthal.) (b) Section showing the fresh air intake, finned-tube radiation, and upper operable sash for exhaust air. This system is used for the smaller reading room and staff workrooms at the perimeter.*

Feed water treatment is negligible and corrosion is minimal. Underground problems of expansion and insulation are the same as in other subterranean systems. Large sweep-type loops accommodate expansion between fixed points, and underground piping is embedded in special thermally efficient insulative fill.

District chilled water systems also offer advantages. The remote central chillers are likely candidates to use waste heat in a non-CFC absorption cooling cycle. Natural sources are possible; the

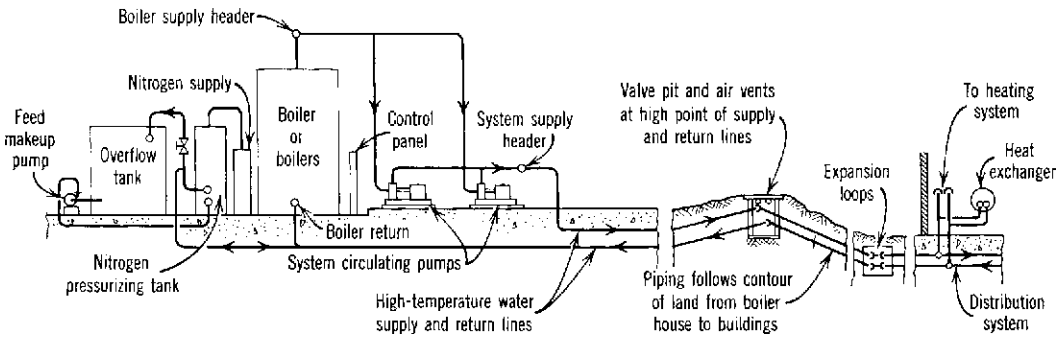


Fig. 10.66 *Typical arrangement of a high-temperature water system. (Reprinted from* High-Temperature Water Systems. *Industrial Press. By courtesy of author Owen S. Lieberg, consulting engineer.)*

Toronto (Canada) District Heating Corporation uses Lake Ontario water, drawn from a 1.6-mile (2.6-km) intake at a depth of 200 ft (61 m) with a year-round temperature of 40°F (4.5°C). Passed through a heat exchanger (with the district chilled water) and then treated, the lake water then joins the city water supply.

With district heating/cooling, all facilities except air handling and ducts are located together in a remote central plant. This frees the buildings from the space requirements and visible impacts of stacks, boilers, fuel storage, water chillers, and cooling towers; the associated heat, humidity, fouled air, and noise are as remote as the central plant. When such a system serves individual customers, the heated or chilled water is metered. When it is owned by the group of buildings served (such as college campuses), it is usually not metered; this can become a problem when efforts to identify building energy waste and subsequent savings are being investigated.

10.9 COGENERATION

In the preceding chapters, electricity has repeatedly been called a *high-grade* source in reference to the high temperatures needed to produce electricity by conventional (fossil-fuel) means and to the large amount of waste heat (often twice the fraction of electricity) produced in the process. *Cogeneration* (also called *total energy*) is an attempt to recover some of the otherwise wasted lower-grade heat that accompanies the generation of electricity by steam turbines. Industrial cogeneration facilities are especially cost-effective in the pulp and paper, petroleum, and chemical industries. Building-scale cogeneration is a less obvious energy bargain.

(a) Electrical Power Generation at the Site

Where conditions are favorable, electricity for power and light can be generated economically by a system that also supplies the building with heating in winter and cooling in summer. Such a system utilizes a fuel such as gas or oil and is often supplemental to the local electric utility company. Although installation costs are greater than those for the more conventional systems that use separate services of electricity and fuel, the savings in annual operating costs can sometimes pay for the excess installation cost in a reasonable time. Operational savings continue thereafter. This approach was developed largely in the 1960s and is used in hundreds of commercial and industrial buildings and in many schools. Cogeneration is particularly attractive for district heating/cooling plants.

(b) Early On-Site Power Generation

Before 1900 and for several years thereafter, nearly all large buildings and groups of buildings were supplied with direct current generated on or near the premises. The motive power was usually in the form of steam-driven reciprocating engines with belt connections to direct-current generators. Direct current cannot be transformed to different voltages and must be generated and distributed at the voltage used in the building. At these relatively low voltages, power loss in the distribution system

is great, and distance adds greatly to the loss. This tended to keep electricity within a building.

With the development and use of alternating-current machines, utility companies were able to establish central power stations from which electricity could be transmitted great distances to the user at high voltage. There it was transformed down to lower voltages for use. Because, at high voltage, power losses are very low, this system became universal. During the 1920s and 1930s, owners removed their private power generators and accepted utility service, with its savings in operating expense.

(c) How Cogeneration Developed

Older buildings used steam produced from coal-burning boilers from which little or no energy salvage was possible. Today's fuels, used directly in reciprocating engines or turbines (including those that generate electricity), have residual heat value that can be recovered for purposes of heating or cooling. For cogeneration to be successful, there should be a reasonably steady demand in the building for the power generated and also for the heat recovered. Lighting and the demand for power by computers, electrical business machines, and other devices can create nearly constant demand for power throughout the year. Similarly, the exhaust heat recovery from the engines or turbines that power the generators is in demand for either heating or indirect-fired absorption cooling at most times of the year.

(d) Turbines and Reciprocating Engines

Figure 10.67 shows two principal systems for total energy. In both systems—one using a turbine and the other a reciprocating engine to operate the generator that supplies electric power—heat is reclaimed to produce steam or hot water. The steam or hot water is then used for heating or, by use of an absorption chiller, for cooling. When a turbine is used, the fuels are natural gas or fuel oil. The heat is recovered by passing the hot turbine exhaust through a waste heat boiler to produce steam. Fuel for a reciprocating engine is natural gas or diesel fuel. Both the jacket cooling water and the hot engine exhaust are passed through heat exchangers that utilize the heat to produce steam or hot water for heating or cooling. In both systems, an auxiliary boiler, fired directly by gas or oil, stands ready to help maintain a balance in the system.

Cogeneration offers a degree of electrical independence and a way to use otherwise wasted heat. The latter is essentially free energy because it would otherwise have to be purchased and paid for separately in the form of electricity or other fuels.

(e) Cogeneration for Housing

The Harbortown apartment and townhouse complex in Detroit, Michigan, utilizes a year-round natural gas-fired primary energy and cogeneration/waste recovery system (Fig. 10.68). Each apartment has one or two stackable, upright fan-coil units using either chilled or heated water. This water is provided by two direct-fired chiller–heaters: each incorporates a natural gas boiler and a two-stage absorption chiller in the same unit, taking less space in the mechanical room. The natural gas-driven cogeneration electric plant serves rather constant loads such as corridor and outdoor lighting. The generator's waste heat is passed to a storage tank, where it preheats domestic hot water for the tenants. This meets about 87% of the hot water energy usage.

(f) Fuel Cells

We first encountered fuel cells in connection with the explorations of outer space. Spaceships use stored oxygen and hydrogen to feed the fuel cell, yielding—seemingly miraculously—electricity, heat, and pure water. In effect, this reverses the process of electrolysis: using electricity to split water into its two components, hydrogen and oxygen. This theory dates back to Sir William Grove in 1839, long before the needs of space travel.

A fuel cell generates direct-current power by converting the *chemical energy* of hydrogen and oxygen into electricity and heat. Because no combustion is involved, nitrogen oxides and carbon monoxide are nearly eliminated. For a building-based fuel cell power plant, several components are added: first, a fuel processor (or fuel reformer) to prepare a hydrogen-rich stream of fuel, then the fuel cell stack, then a power conditioner (or inverter) to convert the fuel cell's direct current to alternating current.

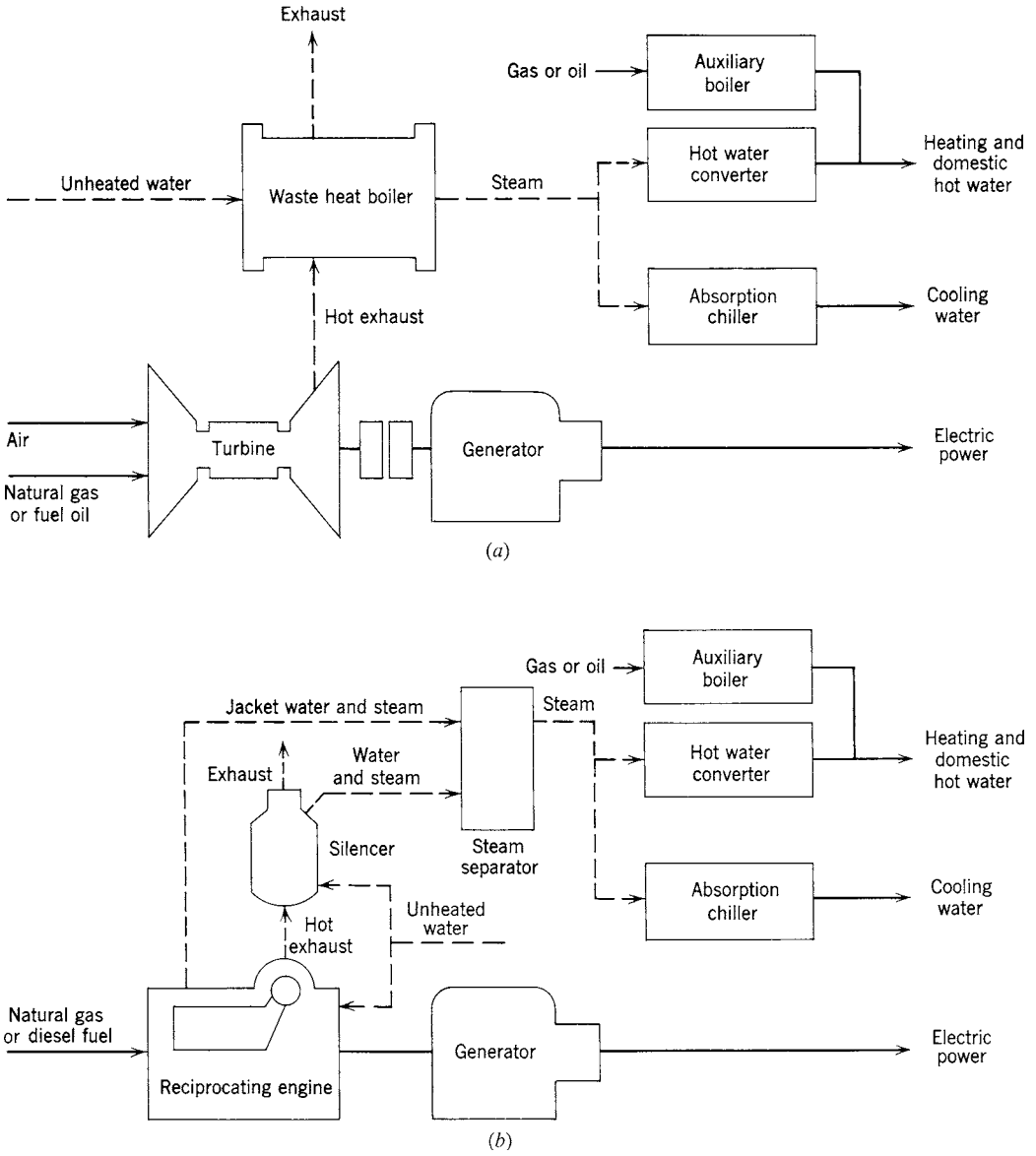


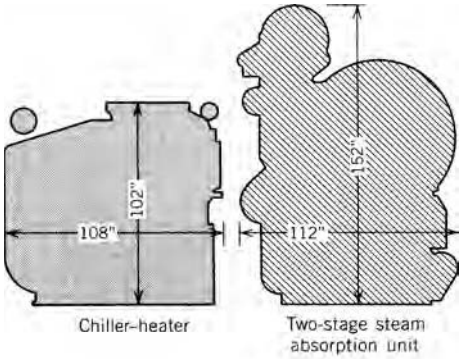
Fig. 10.67 *Cogeneration (total energy) systems. (a) Using a turbine. (b) Using a reciprocating engine. (Reprinted by permission from* Total Energy, *Educational Facilities Laboratories.)*

Fuel cells are not, by themselves, that much more efficient than combustion processes; they are about 40% efficient for power production. When combined with a way to use that 60% waste heat, they climb toward a total of 90% efficiency, with very few harmful emissions.

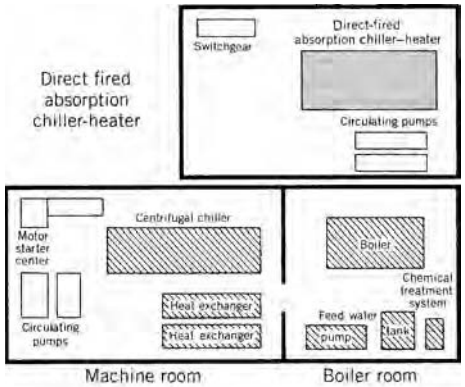
Hydrogen is the ultimate fuel; already hydrogen-rich, it needs no processor and produces the least environmental impacts from the fuel cell. Although hydrogen supply networks are not yet commonplace, scenarios exist for a "hydrogen economy" in which surplus electricity from windpower is used to split water into hydrogen and oxygen atoms and the hydrogen is stored for later distribution. Windpower's extreme variability often presents power grid distribution challenges; storage solves this problem. Solar energy or biomass are other renewable sources for electrical generation. However, other hydrocarbon fuels also can feed fuel cells: natural gas (most common for building fuel



(*a*)

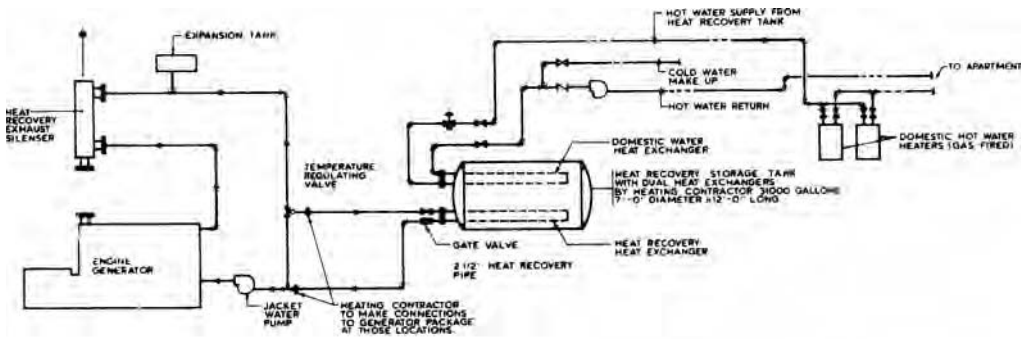


(*b*)



Centrifugal chiller and boiler

(*c*)



FLOW DIAGRAM OF HEAT RECOVERY SYSTEM

(*d*)

Fig. 10.68 *Harbortown is a 120,000-ft² (11,150-m²) apartment and townhouse complex (a) in Detroit that uses natural gas as a primary fuel year-round. (Photo © 1989, William Kildow.) Chiller-heaters (Hitachi) combine a boiler and a two-stage absorption chiller in one compact unit. (b) Comparison of headspace and (c) floor space required by chiller-heaters versus conventional absorption chiller of similar capacity. (d) Cogeneration plant sends its waste heat to preheat domestic hot water. (Courtesy of Skidmore, Owings and Merrill, Architects-Engineers, Chicago.)*

cell power plants), propane, methanol, and, with additional pretreatment, methane from landfills and anaerobic digester gas from sewage treatment plants. Even with these less hydrogen-rich fuels, the emissions from fuel cells are well below those of combustion processes; the fuel processor emits carbon dioxide and a trace of carbon monoxide.

Proton-exchange membrane (PEM) fuel cells (Fig. 10.69) are promising for transportation when zero-emission vehicles are the objective and hydrogen is available as the fuel. This process has building applications as well. It works at a temperature below the boiling point of water. Relative to other fuel cell types, it has a smaller size, lighter weight, and lower noise levels. The PEM fuel cell stack involves several subsystems, typically including water purifiers and pumps, air compressors, and heat rejection components (coolant pumps and a radiator). This complicates performance at subfreezing temperatures and adds maintenance requirements. But the smaller size promises smaller building applications in the future.

The phosphoric acid fuel cell power plant (Fig. 10.70) is at work in (or outside) a number of buildings and municipalities around the world. The ONSI Corporation's 200-kW fuel cell power plant measures 10 ft × 18 ft, is 10 ft high (3 m × 5.5 m, 3 m high), weighs 40,000 lb (18,144 kg), and needs a clearance of 8 ft (2.5 m) around the module for maintenance. It also needs a cooling module (or a building's cooling tower) for discharge of heat in excess of that recovered for building use. The acid electrolyte in the fuel cell stack works at about 390°F (200°C). At its rated power, it also produces 700,000 Btu/h (205 kW) to heat a water stream to 140°F (60°C). The rated sound level is 62 dBA at 30 ft (9 m) from the module.

The Durst Organization's high-rise office building at 4 Times Square in New York City (Fig. 10.71) is a demonstration of several future-oriented strategies: PV cells integral to the façade, direct-fired (natural gas) absorption chillers, increased fresh air for IAQ, a dedicated exhaust air shaft (for smoking and other polluting activities), and waste chutes to facilitate recycling, among others. It also utilizes two 200-kW fuel cell power packages fed by natural gas. The electricity is about 80% destined for external lighting by night; huge electrical signs will be a prominent part of the building's Times Square façades. By day, about 80% of the power goes to the building's base load. The hot water will be used in winter for perimeter heating. In summer, the water is wasted. Although there was hope that one of the absorption chillers could be fed by this water, a variety of considerations precluded this: the fuel cells are located on the fourth floor (accessible to

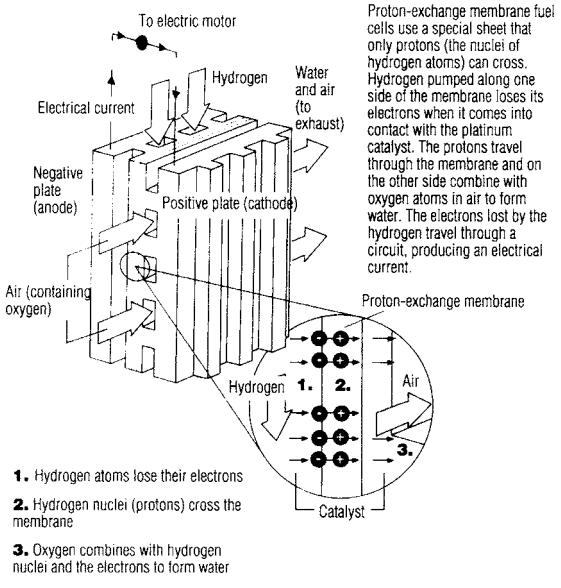


Fig. 10.69 *Schematic diagram of a proton-exchange membrane (PEM) fuel cell with a description of its operation. (Courtesy of* Nucleus, *Fall 1994; © Union of Concerned Scientists, Cambridge, MA.)*

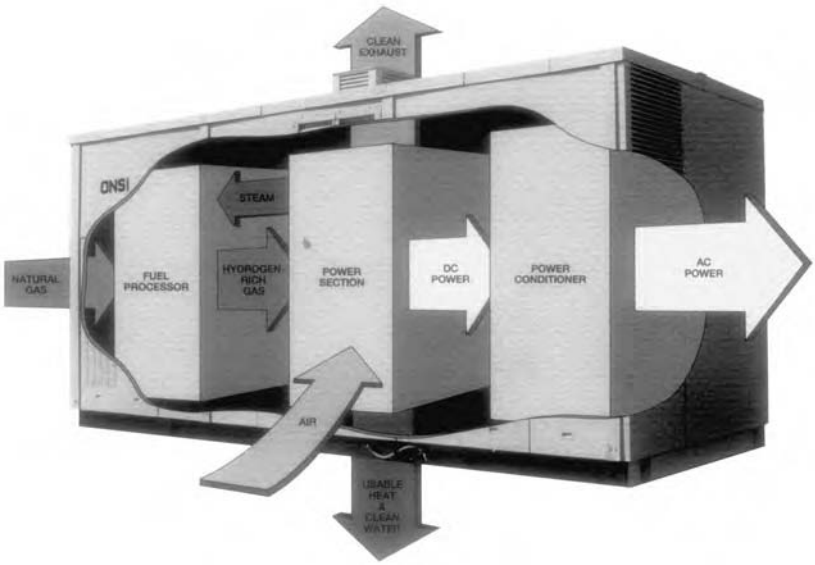
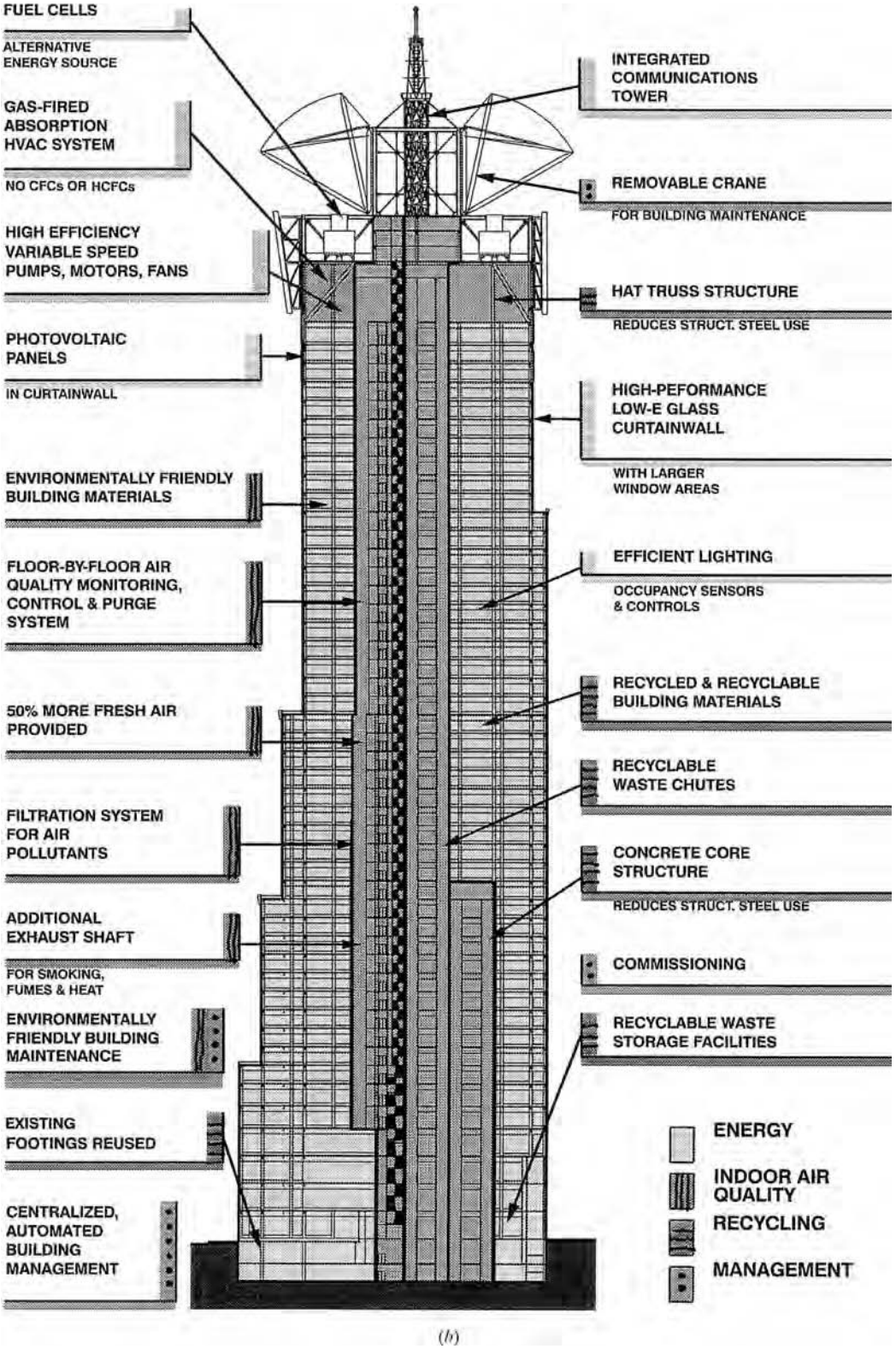


Fig. 10.70 *A fuel cell power plant using natural gas (or other hydrocarbon fuel). The fuel processor (reformer) converts the natural gas to a hydrogen-rich stream that enters the fuel cell power section (or stack). The output is electricity (dc), water, carbon dioxide, and considerable heat. Some heat is used by the fuel processor and some is rejected, but most is usable in a building or industry. A power conditioner (inverter) converts dc to ac power. (Courtesy of ONSI Corporation.)*



(*a*)

Fig. 10.71 *The 48-story office building at 4 Times Square, New York City (a), shown under construction in 1998. (b) Many environmentally friendly features are included, such as façade-integrated PV and two fuel cell power plants like those shown in Fig. 10.70. Fed by natural gas, the fuel cells are expected to work without maintenance interruptions for up to 5 years and provide considerable hot water as well as electricity. (The fuel cells are actually installed at the fourth-floor level rather than at the penthouse as shown.) (Courtesy of Fox and Fowle, Architects, P.C., New York; Consentini Associates, Mechanical Engineers; the Durst Organization, Developer.)*



(*b*)

Fig. 10.71 *(Continued)*

maintenance and close to the huge signs), whereas the chillers are located in the penthouse.

The 200-kW fuel cell in Fig. 10.70 is usually fed by natural gas, but other examples include hydrogen fuel (Hamburg, Germany: electricity to the grid, hot water to heat an apartment building), anaerobic digester gas (Yonkers, New York: wastewater treatment plant; electricity and hot water used within the facility), and landfill gas (Groton, Connecticut: closed landfill; electricity to the grid, plans for a hydroponic tomato–growing greenhouse to utilize the hot water). Plentiful hot water is a by-product of the fuel cell; it seems that finding a year-round use for this water is often a problem of excess supply.

Other fuel cell types include alkaline (operates at 480°F [250°C]), molten carbonate (works faster at 1110 to 1300°F [600 to 700°C]), and solid oxide (1200 to 1830°F [650 to 1000°C]) with a higher efficiency, and waste heat sufficient to run gas turbines. These higher-temperature processes are more applicable to central station power plants.

Clearly, cogeneration and fuel cells have a promising future.

References and Resources

AIA. 1994. Ramsey, C. G. and H. R. Sleeper. *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed. American Institute of Architects/John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Allen, E. 1989. *The Architect's Studio Companion.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

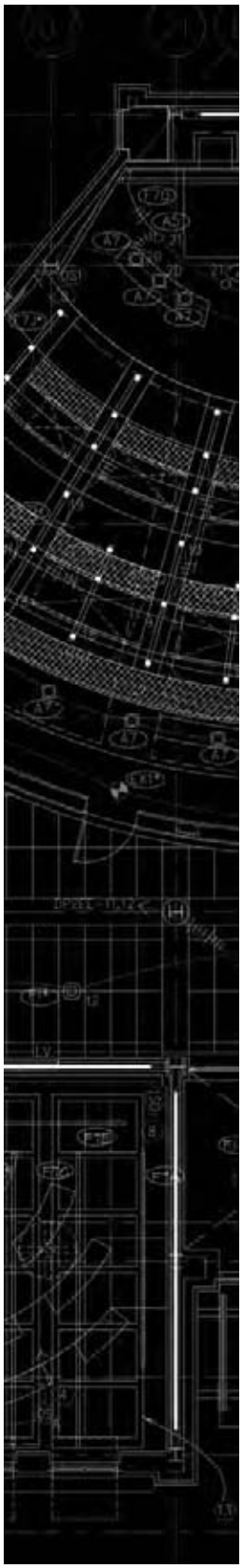
Allen, E. and J. Iano. 2007. *The Architect's Studio Companion*, 4th ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

ASHRAE. 2008. *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Grondzik, W. (ed.). 2007. *Air-Conditioning System Design Manual,* 2nd ed. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Energy Star-Labeled Heating and Cooling Equipment: http://www.energystar.gov/index.cfm?c=heat_cool.pr_hvac

PART III



ILLUMINATION

It has been estimated that 90% of the information we obtain from our senses is received via sight. Vision, in turn, is made possible by light, the proper provision of which in buildings is discussed in this part of the book. Because architecture is a uniquely visually oriented profession, its practitioners must thoroughly understand the art and science of illumination in order to be able to integrate enclosure and light into a working whole that

will appear, and function, according to the design intent. A building designer must have a sufficient background, both technically and aesthetically, to be able to understand and apply the principles of light and lighting.

Chapter 11, "Lighting Fundamentals," introduces the subject with terminology, definitions, basic characteristics, and measurements. A clear distinction is made between the study of light as a physical phenomenon and its study for visual photometric effect. The former considers light as a form of energy, whereas the latter views it as a visual phenomenon (i.e., the physiological response to a form of energy). Pursuing the subject of human response to light, the chapter continues with a discussion of factors in visual acuity. The chapter concludes with an overview of quantitative and qualitative indicators of lighting system performance and acceptability.

Chapter 12, "Light Sources," covers the two principal light sources: daylight and electric light. The characteristics of daylight as a source are presented. The chapter continues with extensive information on electric light sources, covering in detail incandescent, fluorescent, mercury-vapor, metal-halide, and sodium-vapor lamps, plus a few recently developed electric light sources of potential interest to designers. The material includes a detailed description of lamp construction and operating characteristics, including accessories such as ballasts and lamp holders. Emphasis is placed on luminous efficacy and overall life-cycle costs.

Chapter 13, "Lighting Design Process," leads the reader step-by-step through a recommended design process. Cost issues, power budgets, energy considerations, and approaches to providing appropriate illumination are discussed.

Chapter 14, "Daylighting Design," provides a discussion of daylighting as a passive design solution. Means of providing daylighting to a building are presented, along with commonly used methods for daylighting design and analysis.

Chapter 15, "Electric Lighting Design," discusses lighting fixture characteristics, illumination calculation techniques, and lighting control strategies and techniques. The chapter concludes with a discussion of lighting design evaluation. Illustrative examples are used to demonstrate and compare calculation techniques.

Chapter 16, "Electric Lighting Applications," applies the knowledge and techniques from the preceding chapters to specific building occupancies (residential, educational, commercial, and industrial), each of which has its special needs. Special topics are discussed in detail, including emergency lighting, exterior lighting, and lighting for computer-intensive work areas.

CHAPTER 11

Lighting Fundamentals

> Architecture is the masterly, correct and magnificent play of masses brought together in light. Our eyes are made to see forms in light; light and shade reveal these forms; cubes, cones, spheres, cylinders, or pyramids are the great primary forms which light reveals to advantage.
>
> — LE CORBUSIER

11.1 INTRODUCTORY REMARKS

FOR MANY YEARS, AN UNWARRANTED division existed in the field of lighting design, dividing it into two disciplines: architectural lighting and utilitarian lighting. The former found expression in design that took little cognizance of visual task needs and displayed an inordinate penchant for incandescent wall washers, architectural lighting elements, and form-giving shadows. The latter saw all spaces in terms of illuminance levels and cavity ratios, and performed its design function with footcandles (lux) and dollars as the ruling considerations. That both of these trends have generally been eliminated is due largely to the efforts of thoughtful architects, engineers, and lighting designers, assisted in part by the energy consciousness that followed the 1973 oil embargo. The last event spurred research into satisfying vision needs within a framework of minimal energy use. That research, and its resulting energy codes and continuing development of higher efficiency sources, are today motivated by environmental considerations.

Another positive factor in the rationalization of lighting design has been the work of the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America (IESNA). Its activities in research, standardization, and publication have done much to place lighting design on a stable scientific basis while taking full cognizance of its essential artistic aspects. It is precisely this combination of science and art that makes lighting design an architectural-type discipline. For each project, a responsible lighting designer will consider *quantitatively*:

1. Daylight—its introduction and integration with electric light
2. The interrelationship between the energy aspects of electric and daylighting, heating, and cooling
3. The effect of lighting on interior space arrangement, and vice versa
4. The characteristics, means of generation, and utilization techniques of electric lighting
5. Visual needs of specific occupants and of specific tasks
6. The effects of brightness patterns on visual acuity

and *qualitatively*:

7. The location, interrelationship, and psychological effects of light and shadow—that is, brightness patterns

8. The use of color, both of light and of surfaces, and the effect of the illuminant source on object color and sometimes the reverse
9. The artistic effects possible with patterns of light and shadow, including the changes inherent in daylighting, and so on
10. Physiological and psychological effects of the lighting design, particularly in spaces occupied for extended periods

The list is almost endless, because so much of the information we receive from our senses comes via our eyes, and what we see is a direct consequence of scene lighting.

As a result of the need to consider these and other interrelated factors, many of which are mutually incompatible, the lighting designer is faced with many difficult decisions. The purpose of Chapters 11 to 16 is then twofold: to provide the background that will help lighting designers make these decisions correctly and to make them proficient in the use of lighting as a design tool.

PHYSICS OF LIGHT

11.2 LIGHT AS RADIANT ENERGY

The IESNA defines light as visually evaluated radiant energy or, more simply, as a form of energy that permits us to see. If light is considered as a wave, similar to a radio wave or an alternating-current wave, it has a frequency and a wavelength. Figure 11.1 shows the position of light in the wave spectrum and its relation to other wave phenomena of various frequencies.

From Fig. 11.1 we see that even the longest-wavelength light (red) has a much higher frequency than radio waves and radar, and that light constitutes only a very small part of the wave energy spectrum. Color is determined by wavelength: starting with the longest wavelengths (red), on through the spectrum of orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet to the shortest visible wavelengths (highest frequency). Bordering the visible spectrum are infrared at the low-frequency (long-wavelength) end and ultraviolet at the high-frequency end. Both are invisible to human beings but not to some animals.

When a light source produces energy over the entire visible spectrum in *approximately* equal quantities, the combination appears white, whereas a source producing energy over only a small section of the spectrum produces its characteristic colored light. Examples are the blue-green clear mercury lamp and the yellow sodium lamp.

For our purposes, all light will be considered white unless specifically noted otherwise. This position is scientifically tenable because light sources with large differences in chromatic content all appear white after a short accommodation period, and all standard commercial sources permit colors

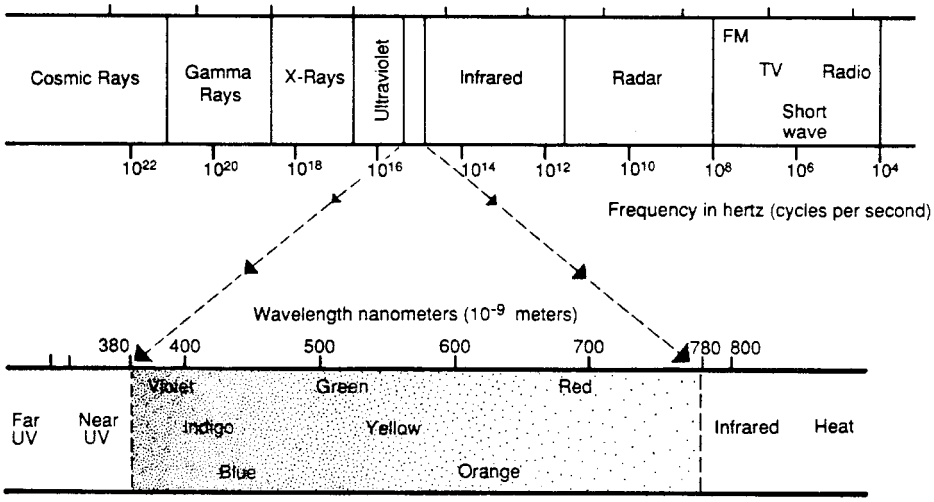


Fig. 11.1 *Electromagnetic spectrum.*

to be easily and correctly identified. It is only when sources differing widely in chromaticity are viewed side by side that the variation in whiteness can be noticed by the effect on colored objects and on neutral surfaces.

11.3 TRANSMITTANCE AND REFLECTANCE

Lighting design is possible because light is predictable; that is, it obeys certain laws and exhibits certain fixed characteristics. Although some of these are so well known as to appear self-evident, a review is in order.

The *luminous transmittance* of a material such as a luminaire lens or diffuser is a measure of its capability to transmit incident light. By definition, this quantity, known variously as *transmittance*, *transmission factor*, and *coefficient of transmission*, is the ratio of the total transmitted light to the total incident light. In the case of incident light containing several spectral components passing through a material that displays *selective* absorption, this factor becomes an average of the individual transmittances for the various components and must be used cautiously. A piece of frosted glass and a piece of red glass may both have a 70% transmission factor, but obviously they affect the incident light differently. In general, then, transmission factors should be used only when referring to materials displaying nonselective absorption—that is, those that transmit the various component colors equally. Clear glass, for instance, displays a transmittance between 80% and 90%, frosted glass between 70% and 85%, and solid opal glass between 15% and 40%. The remainder is absorbed and reflected. See Table 14.7 for typical transmission factors.

Similarly, the ratio of reflected to incident light is variously called *reflectance*, *reflectance factor*, and *reflectance coefficient*. Thus, if half the amount of light incident on a surface is bounced back, the reflectance is 50% (or 0.50). The remainder is absorbed, transmitted, or both. The amount of absorption and reflection depends on the type of material and the angle of light incidence, because light impinging on a surface at grazing angles tends to be reflected rather than absorbed or transmitted (Fig. 11.2). An example of almost perfect reflection from an opaque surface would be that from a well-silvered mirror,

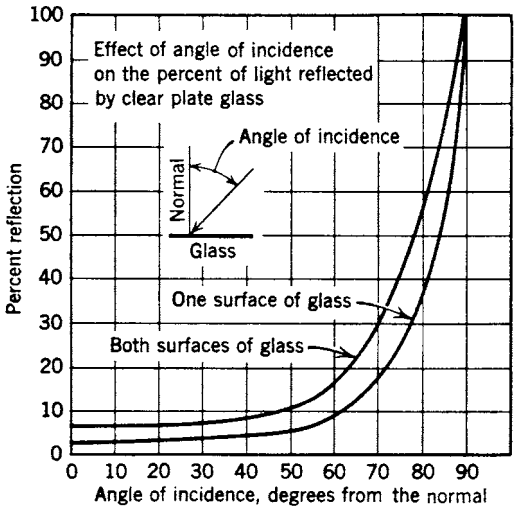


Fig. 11.2 *Relation between angle of incidence and percentage of reflectance. This effect is important when considering the penetration of sunlight into interior spaces and, conversely, the exterior glare produced by reflection of the sun from building windows.*

whereas almost complete absorption takes place on an object covered with lamp black or matte-finish black paint. The effect of the material's surface finish on reflection is shown in Fig. 11.3. See Table 14.9 for typical reflectance values. Reflectance measurement is discussed in Section 11.11.

The reflection that occurs on a smooth surface such as polished glass or stone is called *specular reflection*, as in Fig. 11.3*a*. If the surface is rough, multiple reflections take place on the many small surface projections, and the light is diffused, as in Fig. 11.3*b*. Reflectance is a measure of total light reflected; it may be specular or diffuse, or a combination of both, as shown in Fig. 11.3*c*.

Diffuse transmission takes place through any translucent material such as frosted glass, white glass, milky Plexiglas, tissue paper, and so on. This diffusing principle is widely employed in lighting fixtures (luminaries) to spread the light generated by the source within the fixture. Diffuse and nondiffuse transmission are illustrated in Fig. 11.4*a* and Fig. 11.4*b*.

11.4 TERMINOLOGY AND DEFINITIONS

Before beginning any discussion of lighting studies, techniques, and effects, it is important to have a basic understanding of the physical concepts and

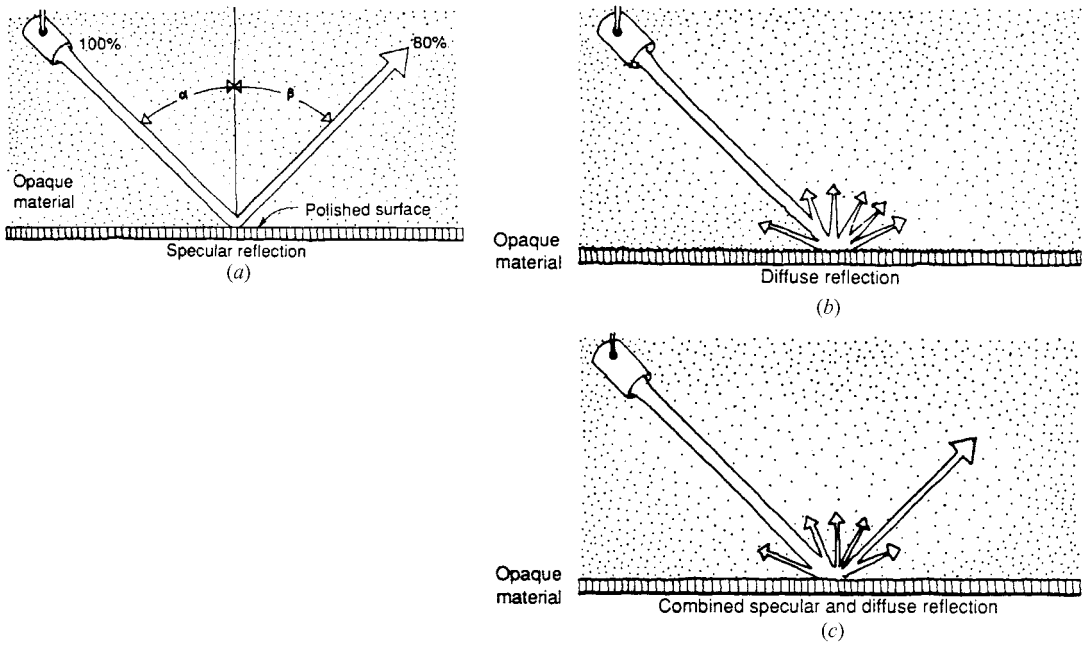


Fig. 11.3 *Reflection characteristics. (a) In specular reflection, angle of incidence equals angle of reflection (α = β). Because 80% of light is reflected, reflectance is 80%; 20% of light is absorbed. (b) In diffuse reflection, incident light is spread in all directions by multiple reflections on the unpolished surface. Such surfaces appear equally bright from all viewing angles. (c) Most materials exhibit a combination of specular and diffuse reflection. Such a surface mirrors the source while producing a bright background.*

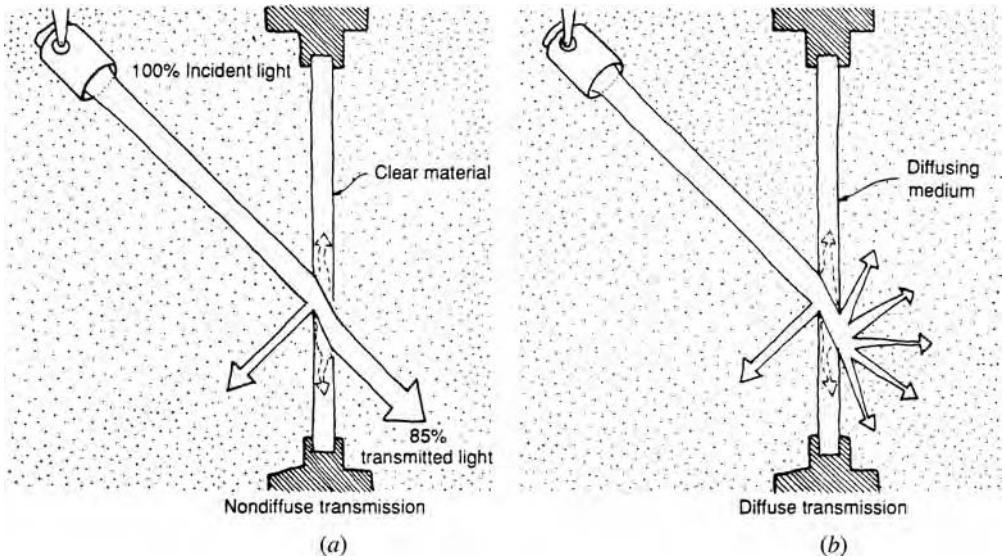


Fig. 11.4 *Transmission characteristics. (a) In nondiffuse transmission, the light is refracted (bent) but emerges in the same beam as it enters. Clear materials such as glass, water, and certain plastics exhibit this type of transmission. In the instance illustrated, the transmittance is 85% (the remaining 15% is reflected and absorbed). The source of light is clearly visible through the transmitting medium. (b) With diffuse transmission, the source of light is not visible and, in the case of multiple sources, the diffusing surface exhibits generally uniform brightness if the spacing between the light sources does not exceed approximately 1½ times their distance from the material.*

terminology involved and their interrelations. The System International (SI) system of units is used as the basic system by the IESNA and in this book, whereas the lighting industry uses both the SI and Inch-Pound (I-P) systems. As in other chapters, we frequently use dual units, with the second unit enclosed in parentheses.

11.5 LUMINOUS INTENSITY

The SI unit of *luminous intensity* is the candela (candlepower), abbreviated cd (cp), and normally represented by the letter *I*. It is analogous to pressure in a hydraulic system and voltage in an electric system, and represents the force that generates the light that we see. An ordinary wax candle has a luminous intensity horizontally of approximately 1 candela, hence the name. The candela and candlepower have the same magnitude. Luminous intensity is a characteristic of the source only; it is independent of the visual sense.

11.6 LUMINOUS FLUX

The unit of luminous flux, in both SI and I-P units, is the lumen (lm). If we take a 1-cd (candlepower) source that radiates light equally in all directions and surround it with a transparent sphere of 1 m (ft) radius (Fig. 11.5), then *by definition* the amount of luminous energy (flux) emanating from 1 m^2 (ft^2) of surface on the sphere is 1 lm. Because there is 4π m^2 (ft^2) surface area in such a sphere, it follows that a source of 1 candela (candlepower) intensity produces 4π, or 12.57, lm. The lumen, as luminous flux, or quantity of light, is analogous to flow in hydraulic systems and current in electric systems and is normally represented by the Greek letter ϕ.

In physical terms, the lumen is a unit of power, like the watt. However, unlike the watt, which is a radiometric unit directly convertible to other power units such as Btu/h, the lumen is a measure of *photometric* power. This means light power as perceived by the human eye and therefore as a function of human physiology. Put another way, lumens, or luminous flux, is the time rate of flow of *perceived* luminous energy. Because the visual response of the eye is frequency-dependent, the apprehended light power is therefore also frequency-dependent, varying with the spectral content of the impinging light and the spectral sensitivity of the eye. Figure 11.6*a* shows the spectral content of the visible energy produced by a 500-W incandescent lamp. Measured radiometrically, it amounts to 45 W.

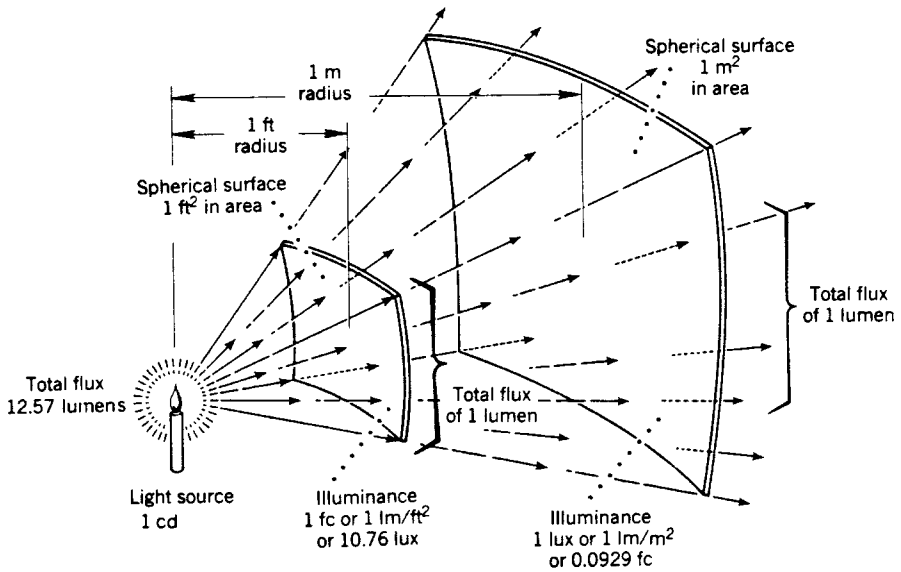


Fig. 11.5 *A source of 1-cd intensity produces 4π (12.57) lumens of light flux. Thus, each square foot (square meter) of spherical surface surrounding such a source receives 1 lumen of light flux. This quantity of light flux produces an illuminance of 1 fc (lux) on the spherical surface.*

However, when passed through a selective filter (Fig. 11.6*b*), which is effectively what happens when the light enters the eye, the resultant "understood" light power appears as in Fig. 11.6*c*, and therefore can no longer be measured in watts. Instead, we use a unit of eye-perceived, or photometric, power called the *lumen*. If the spectral content curve in Fig. 11.6*a* were differently shaped, *even if the total radiometrically measured power were the same*, the resultant perceived power in Fig. 11.6*c* would be different.

Refer to Fig. 11.6*b*. A correlation can be made between photometric and radiometric power at the point of maximum response of the eye, which occurs at 555 nanometers (nm) wavelength—1 nm is 10^{-9} m. One watt of monochromatic light at that wavelength produces 683 lm. However, because common light sources such as incandescent, fluorescent, mercury, and so on, are not monochromatic but produce light in many parts of the spectrum (see Figs. 11.47 and 11.48 and Table 11.12), no single conversion factor between watts and lumens exists. Each source has its own luminous "efficiency" (technically efficacy, in lumens/watt), determined by its spectrum. For the 500-W lamp used as an illustration in Fig. 11.6, its luminous efficacy is 10,000 lm/500 W, or 20 lumens per watt (lm/W or lpw).

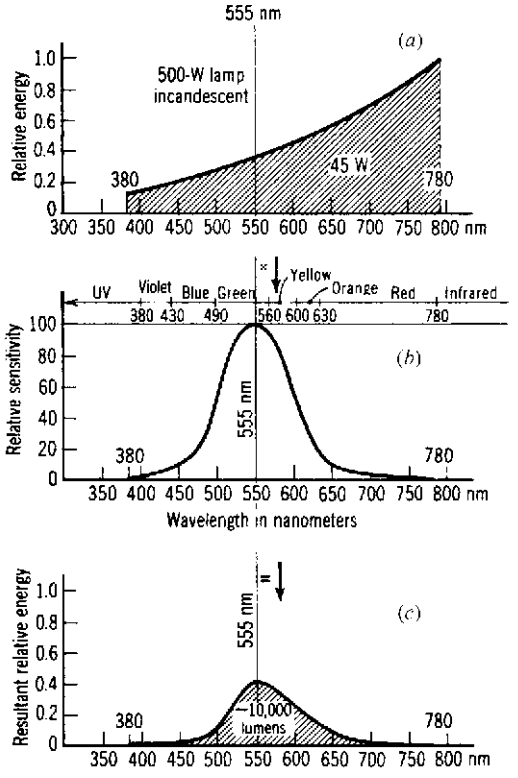


Fig. 11.6 *Graphical demonstration of the method by which the unit of light flux is defined. (a) The spectrum of the light produced by a 500-W incandescent lamp. It amounts to approximately 45 W measured radiometrically. When filtered by the human eye, whose spectral sensitivity curve is given in (b), this light power is perceived as shown in (c). The new light power curve is expressed in lumens and indicates the quantity of light as perceived by the eye.*

11.7 ILLUMINANCE

One lumen of luminous flux, uniformly incident on 1 m^2 (ft^2) of area, produces an *illuminance* of 1 lux (lx) (*footcandle* [fc]). Illuminance is normally represented by the letter *E*. Restated, illuminance is the density of luminous power, expressed in terms of lumens per unit area. If we consider a lightbulb as analogous to a sprinkler head, then the rate of water flow would be the lumens, and the amount of water per unit time per m^2 (ft^2) of floor area would be the lux (footcandles). Thus, the SI unit, lux, is smaller than the corresponding I-P unit, footcandles, by the ratio of square meters to square feet. That is,

$$10.764 \text{ lux} = 1 \text{ fc}$$

or multiply footcandles by 10.764 to obtain lux. These relationships are shown in Fig. 11.5. Restating mathematically yields

$$\text{lux} = \frac{\text{lumens}}{\text{square meter area}} \tag{11.1}$$

$$\text{lux} = \frac{\text{lm}}{\text{m}^2}$$

and

$$\text{footcandles} = \frac{\text{lumens}}{\text{square foot area}} \tag{11.2}$$

$$\text{fc} = \frac{\text{lm}}{\text{ft}^2}$$

As an *approximation* (with 8% error)

$$10 \text{ lx} \approx 1 \text{ fc} \tag{11.3}$$

EXAMPLE 11.1 A 34-W, 425-mA (milliampere), 48-in. (122-cm) fluorescent tube produces 3200 lm.

What is the illuminance on the floor of a 3-m^2 room, assuming 60% overall efficiency and uniform illumination?

SOLUTION

Useful lumens = $0.6 \times 3200 = 1920$

$$lx = \frac{1920}{3 \times 3} = 213.3\ lx$$

$$fc = 213.3/10.76 = 19.8\ fc$$

Calculating footcandles directly, we obtain (with 3 m = 9.84 ft)

$$fc = \frac{1920}{9.84 \times 9.84} = 19.8\ fc$$

By approximation:

$$fc \cong lx/10 = 21.3$$

Note that this calculation gives *average* illuminance in the space. Illuminance at a *point* can be computed from intensity, as explained in Section 11.12. ■

11.8 LUMINANCE, EXITANCE, AND BRIGHTNESS

An object is perceived because light coming from it enters the eye. The impression received is one of object *brightness*. This brightness sensation, however, is subjective and depends not only upon the object *luminance* (*L*), but also upon the state of adaptation of the eye (see Sections 11.18 and 11.19). For this reason, the physiological sensation is generally referred to in the literature as *subjective* or *apparent brightness*, or simply *brightness*, whereas the measurable, reproducible state of object luminosity is its *luminance* (formerly *photometric brightness*). Luminance is normally defined in terms of intensity; it is the luminous intensity per unit of *apparent* (projected) area of a primary (emitting) or secondary (reflecting) light source. Thus, its units are candela per area. Specifically, the SI unit of luminance is candela per square meter (cd/m^2), sometimes referred to as the *nit*. Another unit, formerly in common use in the I-P system, is the footlambert. Conversion factors for SI and I-P units (plus other, obsolete units for the convenience of readers using older sources) are given in Table 11.1. Other luminance terms such as *stilb*, *apostilb*, *blondel*, *millilambert*, and *candela per square in.* are best avoided. In this book, the term *luminance* is used except where it is specifically intended to refer to the physiological sensation involved, in which case the terms *brightness*, *subjective brightness*, or *apparent brightness* will be used. Luminance has no readily conceivable mechanical or electrical analogy.

TABLE 11.1 Lighting Units—Conversion Factors

Unit	Multiply	By	To Obtain
Illuminance (*E*)	Lux	0.0929	Footcandle
	Footcandle	10.764	Lux
Luminance (*L*)	cd/m^2	0.2919	Footlambert
	cd/cm^2	10,000	cd/m^2
	$cd/in.^2$	1,550	cd/m^2
	cd/ft^2	10.76	cd/m^2
	Millilambert	3.183	cd/m^2
	Footlambert	3.4263	cd/m^2
Intensity (*I*)	Candela	1.0	Candlepower

A word of caution is appropriate at this point. Although definitions and terminology are established for the specific purpose of accurate information exchange, the lighting literature is replete with articles, comments, and rebuttals that exist only because of the looseness of definitions and terminology. Some authors insist on applying *brightness* only to self-luminous surfaces, using *lightness* as the equivalent term for objects deriving their luminance from reflection. Thus, the sun has brightness; the moon, lightness. In this book, we use the term *brightness* for the subjective reaction to either source type. Other sources point out that the luminance–brightness relation breaks down when light other than white light is used. Although this is demonstrable, it is of real interest only in theatrical lighting, where colored light is frequently used. For our purposes we assume white light, and as pointed out previously, the color accommodation characteristic of our eyes recognizes as white (colorless) light of a large chromatic range. Within that range, and for a very large range of intensities, object color is readily recognizable, and the fixed luminance-brightness ratio is maintained. Contrasting word usages such as *dim* and *dark*, *light* and *bright*, *clear* and *muddy*, *shallow* and *deep*, and so on, as applied to lighting, are best left to experienced lighting designers because the terms are almost entirely subjective and therefore unhelpful to novice designers.

Another concept that the lighting designer will encounter is known as *luminous exitance*, or simply as *exitance*, which, as the name implies, describes the total luminous flux density leaving (exiting) a surface, irrespective of directivity or viewer position.

For instance, if a 1 m^2 surface emits 1 lumen, its luminous exitance is 1 lumen per square meter (1 lm/m^2) or 0.093 lm/ft^2. A surface that is a perfect diffuser, whether by emitting light diffusely or reflecting light diffusely, is known as a *Lambertian surface*. It is fairly simple to demonstrate mathematically that the luminance of such a surface equals $1/\pi$ times its exitance. The importance of this relationship is its usefulness as an approximation. Although very few surfaces are truly Lambertian, many are approximately so, and this relationship can be used as an engineering-accuracy approximation in many such cases.

The concept of exitance is important in detailed photometric calculations such as those involved in determining coefficients of utilization, surface luminance coefficients, and in detailed point illuminance calculations. All of these are beyond the scope of this book because they are not usually performed by the lighting designer. Use of these derived coefficients is demonstrated in the applicable sections.

Detailed point calculations are today almost universally performed by computer, and the necessary mathematics is built into the computer program. Readers interested in further background on luminous exitance are referred to Murdoch (1985).

Because object luminance is that which is visually perceived and is a prime factor in visibility (and glare), it is important that the reader be able to perform basic luminance calculations. Although the eye does not differentiate between primary sources that generate and emit light and secondary sources that derive their luminance from reflection or transmission, the differentiation is important in calculation procedures. See Fig. 11.7 for a graphic representation of the basic relationships.

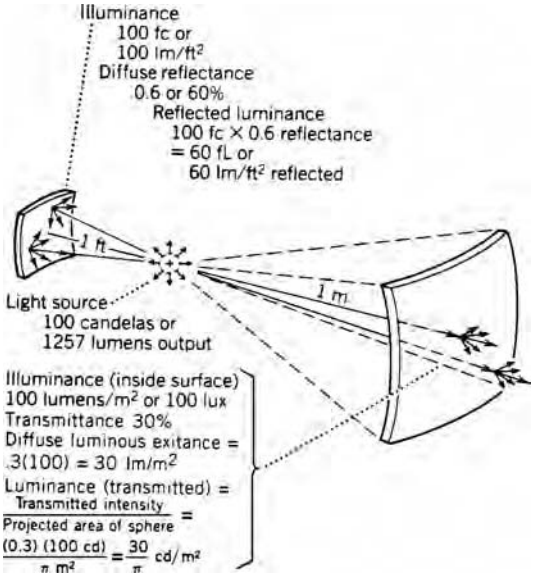


Fig. 11.7 *Luminance may be either reflected or transmitted. In the former case, it is calculated as the product of the incident lumens and the reflectance; in the latter case, as the transmitted intensity divided by the projected area.*

EXAMPLE 11.2 Luminance of a light-emitting surface.

1. Calculate the luminance of an A-19 standard inside-frosted, 100-W incandescent lightbulb with a maintained output of 1700 lm. Assume (for simplicity's sake) that the bulb is spherical.
2. Assume that an opal glass globe of 8 in. (200 mm) diameter and a transmittance of 35% surrounds the bulb described in step 1. Calculate the luminance of the globe. Use SI units throughout.

SOLUTION

1. Assume that the filament is a point source (an essentially valid assumption) and that the inside frosting of the glass does not reduce the output (it actually does so by about 1%). The inside frosting acts to convert the point source filament to a uniformly emitting globe. The definition of a point source tells us that 1 candela produces 4π lumens distributed spherically.

Therefore:

$$\frac{1\,\text{cd}}{4\pi\,\text{lm}} = \frac{I\,\text{cd}}{1700\,\text{lm}}$$

The intensity, I, of the filament, and therefore also of the bulb (because the frosting is assumed not to reduce output), is

$$I = 1700\ \text{lumens} \times \frac{1\,\text{cd}}{4\pi\,\text{lm}} = 135\,\text{cd}$$

An A-19 bulb has a diameter of 19/8 in. (60 mm). The definition of luminance is

$$L = \frac{I}{A}\ \frac{(\text{intensity})}{(\text{projected area})}$$

The projected area becomes approximately a circle with a diameter of 60 mm (assuming a spherical bulb), whose area equals $\pi\, r^2$ or $\pi\,(0.03\ \text{m})^2$. So

$$L = \frac{135\,\text{cd}}{\pi(0.03\,\text{m})^2} = 47{,}750\,\frac{\text{cd}}{\text{m}^2}$$

This luminance is a potentially severe glare source if it is in the field of vision (depending on its distance from the eye; see Section 11.28).

2. We have already calculated the intensity of the source, but it is reduced to 35% by the globe. The projected area of the globe is larger than that of the bulb; that is,

$$\text{A proj.} = \pi r^2 = \pi \frac{(0.2\,\text{m})^2}{(2)}$$

So the expression for luminance becomes

$$L = \frac{135\,\text{cd}\,(0.35)}{\pi\,(0.10\,\text{m})^2} = 1500\ \frac{\text{cd}}{\text{m}^2}$$

This is no longer a potential source of direct glare. ■

Note two important principles demonstrated by this example:

1. Intensity is not area- or distance-dependent; it varies only with transmission factors.
2. Luminance varies with both intensity and area.

For example, if a white lamp whose inside coating reduces lamp output by about 10% is used in lieu of an inside frost, both intensity and luminance would be reduced by 10%. However, if a clear glass lamp is used, intensity would remain the same, but luminance would increase inversely with the ratio of filament area to bulb area. Therefore, a clear 100-W lamp, whose filament has an area of perhaps of 0.3 cm^2, would have a luminance of

$$\frac{135\,\text{cd}}{0.3(0.0001)\,\text{cm}^2} = 4{,}500{,}000\,\text{cd/m}^2$$

which is so severe a glare source as to be disabling when in the near field of vision.

EXAMPLE 11.3 Calculate the luminance of a 34-W, T12, 4-ft white fluorescent lamp. Assume a viewing angle normal to the long axis of the lamp and that the lamp is a diffuse (Lambertian) emitter. Use SI units.

SOLUTION

This problem can be solved in two ways: by using the relationship between exitance and luminance or by calculating intensity.

By exitance/luminance: use 2770 lm at 40% life as an average condition of lamp output. The luminous length is 4 ft (1200 mm) and the diameter is 12/8 in. (38 mm). The luminous surface area of the tube is then

$$\begin{aligned} A &= L \times d \times \pi = (1200\ \text{mm}) \times (38\ \text{mm}) \times \pi \\ &= (1.2\ \text{m})\,(0.038\ \text{m}) \\ &= 0.0456\,\pi\ \text{m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{exitance} = \frac{\text{luminous flux}}{\text{area}} = \frac{2770\,\text{lm}}{0.0456\,\pi\,\text{m}^2}$$

$$\text{luminance} = \frac{I}{\pi}\ (\text{exitance})$$

$$= \frac{2770}{0.0456\,\pi^2}\,\text{cd/m}^2 = 6155\,\text{cd/m}^2$$

By intensity: the equivalent spherical intensity of the lamp can be calculated by using the relationship that 1 cd produces 4π lumens. Therefore,

$$\text{equivalent intensity } I = \frac{2770\,\text{lm}}{4\pi}\,\text{cd}$$

The radius of a sphere of equivalent surface area to the fluorescent tube would be

$$4\,\pi\,r^2 = 0.0456\,\pi\ \text{m}^2$$

$$r^2 = \frac{0.0456}{4}\ \text{m}^2 = 0.0114\ \text{m}^2$$

$$r = 0.1067\ \text{m}$$

The equivalent projected area of such a sphere is πr^2, or

$$A = 0.0114\,\pi$$

and its luminance is

$$L = \frac{\text{intensity}}{\text{area}}\frac{\text{cd}}{\text{m}^2} = \frac{2770/4\,\pi}{0.0114\,\pi}\frac{\text{cd}}{\text{m}^2}$$

$$= \frac{2770}{0.0456\,\pi^2}\ \frac{\text{cd}}{\text{m}^2}$$

$$= 6155\ \text{cd/m}^2$$

This luminance can constitute a glare problem, depending on its position in the field of view. If we had used a 40-W lamp with 3200 lm output, its luminance would be higher in direct proportion to the ratio of output; that is,

$$L_{3200} = L_{2770} \times \frac{3200}{2770} = 6155\ \frac{\text{cd}}{\text{m}^2}\ \frac{(3200)}{(2770)}$$

$$= 7110\ \text{cd/m}^2$$

This is the origin of the frequently used average figure of 7000 cd/m^2 as the luminance of a standard 48-in. (1200 mm) fluorescent tube. It is a borderline glare source.

Because of its energy-saving characteristic, the 32-W, 48-in. T8 lamp with 3000 lm output has come into wide use. That it should not be used unshielded can be readily demonstrated by a similar luminance calculation:

$$\text{Tube area} = L \times \pi d$$

$$= (120 \text{ cm})(\pi)8/8 \text{ in.} \left(2.54 \frac{\text{cm}}{\text{in.}}\right)$$

$$= 958 \text{ cm}^2 = 0.0958 \text{ m}^2$$

$$\text{exitance} = \frac{\text{lumens}}{\text{area}} = \frac{3000 \text{ lm}}{0.0958 \text{ m}^2} = 31{,}330 \text{ lm/m}^2$$

$$\text{luminance} = \frac{I}{\pi}(\text{exitance}) = \frac{31{,}330}{\pi} = 9972$$

or approximately 10,000 cd/m^2. Because this level of luminance is potentially a mild glare problem, these lamps should not be used in bare-bulb fixtures. ■

EXAMPLE 11.4 To demonstrate the usefulness of the luminance/exitance approximation, calculate the luminance, in SI units, of the page that you are now reading. Assume a uniform illuminance of 500 lx, a diffuse reflectance of 0.77, and a viewing angle normal to the page.

SOLUTION

From the definition of illuminance, 1 lx is produced by 1 lm falling on 1 square meter. Therefore, the exitance, or density of reflected lumens from the page, is

$$\text{exitance} = 500 \frac{\text{lm}}{\text{m}^2} \times 0.77 = 385 \frac{\text{lm}}{\text{m}^2}$$

and

$$L = \frac{1}{\pi} \times 385 \frac{\text{lm}}{\text{m}^2} = 122.5 \text{ cd/m}^2$$

(Typical luminances are given in Table 11.2; see Section 11.19.) ■

11.9 ILLUMINANCE MEASUREMENT

Field measurements of illuminance levels are most commonly made with a portable illuminance meter, two examples of which are illustrated in Figs. 11.8 and 11.9. These devices contain a photoelectric material connected to a microammeter via electronic control circuitry and are calibrated in lux, footcandles, or both.



Fig. 11.8 *Electronic, digital, color-corrected and cosine-corrected light (illuminance) meter from Minolta. (Photo by Jonathan Meendering.)*

As explained in Section 11.6 and as shown in Fig. 11.6, the human eye is not equally sensitive to the various wavelengths (colors). Maximum sensitivity at high illuminance levels is in the yellow-green area (wavelength of 555 nm), whereas sensitivity at the red and blue ends of the spectrum is quite low. This effect is so pronounced that 10 units of blue energy are required to produce the same visual effect as 1 unit of yellow-green. Therefore, if a meter is to be useful, its inherent response, which is quite different from that of the human eye, must be corrected to correspond to the eye. For this reason, meters are "color corrected."

The cells (meters) must also be corrected for light incident at oblique angles that does not reach the cell due to reflection from the surface glass and shielding of the light-sensitive cell by the meter housing. This correction is known as *cosine correction*. A good meter must therefore be color and cosine corrected (and will plainly so indicate).

Modern photometers may have considerable electronic circuitry, which provides such functions



Fig. 11.9 *Digital meter (from Li-Cor) has a variety of sensors that measure illuminance, solar irradiance, or photosynthetic radiation. Due to its small size, the illuminance sensor can be easily used for architectural model measurements. (Photo by Jonathan Meendering.)*

as automatic ranging, integration for flickering or time-varying sources, and connection facilities for data storage and transmission. For determining average room illuminance when using a conventional nonintegrating meter, a number of readings should be taken and an average computed. Where no definite height is specified, readings are taken at 30 in. (750 mm) above the floor, a level known as the *working plane* because it is approximately normal desk height. The meter must always be held with the cell parallel to the plane of the test. Thus, to measure wall illuminance, the meter must be held with the cell parallel to the wall. If electric lighting readings are desired and the test is being conducted during daylight hours, readings should be taken with and without the electrical illumination, and the results subtracted. Detailed instructions for conducting field surveys are contained in the IESNA publication *How to Make a Lighting Survey*. Briefly, a survey of an existing indoor lighting installation should establish:

1. Type, rating, and age of sources.
2. Type, design, and model of luminaires.
3. Maintenance schedule.

It should also measure:

1. Mounting height of luminaires.
2. Spacing and pattern of luminaires.
3. Reflectances of walls, floor, ceiling, and major items of furniture and equipment.
4. Illuminance levels throughout the area plus levels at all working plane elevations. In addition, vertical plane illuminance at walls and other major vertical surfaces should be measured. The significance of vertical surface luminance is discussed in detail in subsequent chapters.

11.10 LUMINANCE MEASUREMENT

In terms of appreciation of the visual scene, including particularly considerations of glare, the measurement of luminance is more important and meaningful than that of illuminance (lux [fc]). This is so because it is luminance—or, more accurately, subjective brightness and brightness contrasts caused by photometric luminance—that we see, not illuminance. Light, as such, is invisible. That lux measurements are still more widely taken than luminance measurements and utilized as a gauge of the adequacy of a lighting installation is due to two factors:

1. Lux meters are cheaper and simpler to use than luminance meters.
2. Design recommendations for lighting levels are given in terms of illuminance. Lux measurements can therefore be used as a rapid, simple method of determining whether a particular lighting installation meets these design requirements (assuming that material reflectances and reflectance ratios are correctly chosen).

Luminance meters are available in a number of configurations, one of which is shown in Fig. 11.10. An approximation of the luminance of a reflecting or luminous source can be obtained using an illuminance (footcandle) meter of the type shown in Fig. 11.8. For diffuse *reflecting* surfaces, the cell



Fig. 11.10 *Direct-reading, narrow-angle, spot-type luminance meter has an acceptance angle of 1°, a range of 0.001 to 299,000 cd/m^2 (0.001 to 87000 fL), a variable response speed to permit measurement of flickering sources, and a comparison mode that permits direct luminance comparison of two sources. Results are displayed digitally. (Courtesy of Minolta Corp.)*



Fig. 11.11 *When the cell of a direct-reading illuminance meter is held in contact with a luminous source, the surface luminance can be read directly or simply calculated.*

of the meter is placed against the surface and then slowly retracted 2 to 4 in. (50 to 100 mm) until a constant reading is obtained. The luminance, in footlamberts, is then approximately 1.25 times the reading in footcandles, the 1.25 factor compensating for wide-angle losses.

For a diffuse luminous source, the cell of an illuminance meter is placed directly against the surface (Fig. 11.11); the source luminance in footlamberts is equal to the reading on the meter in footcandles because footlamberts = lumens per area = footcandles. When using a meter calibrated in lux, the readings must be divided by π to obtain the diffuse source luminance in cd/m^2.

11.11 REFLECTANCE MEASUREMENTS

It is often desirable to know the reflectance of a given surface because luminance can then be readily computed (see Fig. 11.7). Two methods of measuring diffuse (nonspecular) reflectance are shown in Fig. 11.12: the known-sample method and the light-ratio method. If a sample of known reflectance is available, this method should be used because it yields more accurate results than the ratio method. The sample should be no smaller than 8 in. × 8 in. (200 mm × 200 mm).

It is a good idea for an inexperienced lighting designer to determine the reflectances, illuminance, and luminance levels of spaces and surfaces familiar to him or her, such as an office desk, adjoining wall, and the like—even to the extent of marking these figures on the respective surfaces in order to develop an appreciation of and a memory for these parameters. This enables the designer to visualize the result of a lighting design and should be of considerable assistance. See Table 14.9 for typical reflectance values.

11.12 INVERSE SQUARE LAW

We have already seen that, by definition, a point source of 1-cd intensity produces an illumination of 1 lux on the inside surface of a surrounding sphere of 1-m radius (r). Because the surface area of this sphere is 4π m^2, a 1-cd source produces 4π lm of luminous flux. Now, assume a sphere of 2-m radius surrounding this same source (Fig. 11.13). Because the same amount of flux is spread over a larger area, the illumination on the larger sphere is inversely proportional to the ratio of the sphere areas; that is,

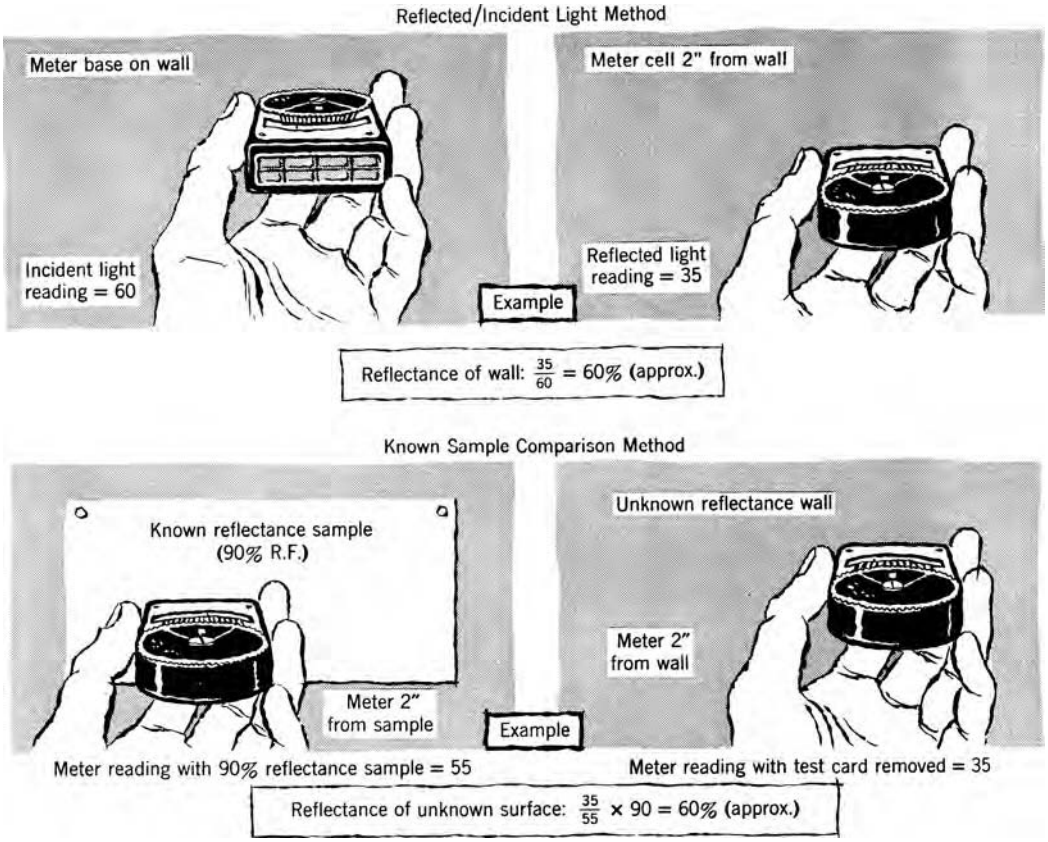


Fig. 11.12 *Two simple methods of measuring the diffuse reflectance of a surface.*

$$\frac{\text{lux}_2}{\text{lux}_1} = \frac{\text{area}_1}{\text{area}_2} \tag{11.4}$$

or

$$\text{lux}_2 = \text{lux}_1 \times \frac{\text{area}_1}{\text{area}_2}$$

therefore,

$$\text{lux}_2 = \text{lux}_1 \times \frac{4\pi r_1^2}{4\pi r_2^2} \tag{11.5}$$

$$= \text{lux}_1 \times \frac{r_1^2}{r_2^2}$$

In other words, the illumination is inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the source. In general terms,

$$\text{lux} = \frac{\text{cd intensity}}{\text{distance}^2} \tag{11.6}$$

where distance is expressed in meters (feet). (This holds true for surfaces normal to a source. For other situations, see Chapter 15.)

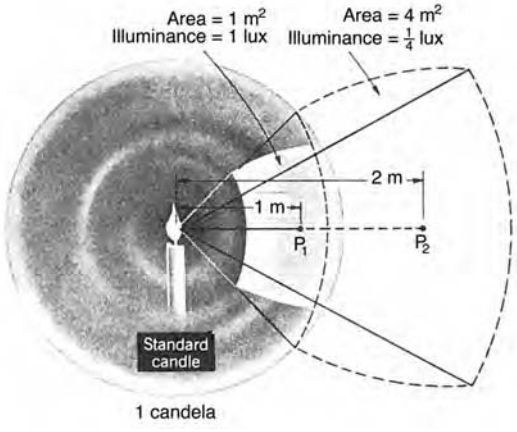


Fig. 11.13 *Relationship among candelas, lumens, and lux defined with reference to a standard light source of 1 mean spherical cp (1 cd) located at the center of a sphere with a 1-m radius.*

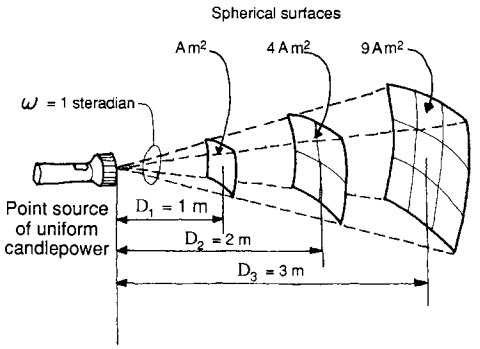


Fig. 11.14 *Demonstration of inverse square law properties using a solid angle of unit size. Note that the surfaces are necessarily spherical because points on a planar surface are not equidistant from the source.*

This relationship can also readily be derived by using any solid angle and the area it intercepts, as in Fig. 11.14. A glance at this figure shows clearly that the area intercepted is proportional to the square of the distance from the source; therefore, the illumination is inversely proportional, as stated previously.

11.13 LUMINOUS INTENSITY: CANDELA MEASUREMENTS

Luminous intensity (candela [candlepower]) cannot be measured directly but must be computed from its illumination effects. The simplest way of doing this is to use the inverse square relationship developed in the preceding section. Measure the illuminance produced on a plane at right angles to the source at a known distance and apply Equation 11.6. For accurate measurement, the distance should be at least 5 and preferably 10 times the maximum dimension of the source because, for anything other than a point source, the equation is an approximation. The candela (candlepower) thus calculated is the luminous intensity in the direction being viewed. Because luminous intensity is not uniform in all directions for anything except an ideal point source, and because a single intensity figure for a source is desirable for calculation purposes, the average of a number of intensity figures taken from several directions is used. This average figure is called the *mean spherical candlepower* (mscp) and represents an equivalent point source that produces 4π lm for every candela. Thus, a 10-cd lamp exhibits an average intensity of 610 cd in all directions and produces 40π lm.

11.14 INTENSITY DISTRIBUTION CURVES

If the luminous intensity figures calculated in the preceding section are plotted on polar coordinate axes, the resultant figure is called a *candlepower distribution curve* (CDC) for the particular source involved. The procedure for making this curve is straightforward. A photo cell is rotated around the source in a single plane, illuminance measured, and intensity (cd) calculated. Alternatively, the photo cell can be fixed and the source rotated. If the source's distribution is symmetrical, as shown in Fig. 11.15, then only a single set of values is required, and the resultant plot is valid in all vertical planes through the source. Thus, for incandescent lamps, downlights, open circular reflectors, and the like, only a single CDC is required. For a nonsymmetric source such as a fluorescent luminaire, CDC curves in several planes are required to define the fixture's distribution characteristic. Normally, manufacturers will provide longitudinal and crosswise curves, plus a diagonal (45° plane) curve on request. This is illustrated in Fig. 11.16,

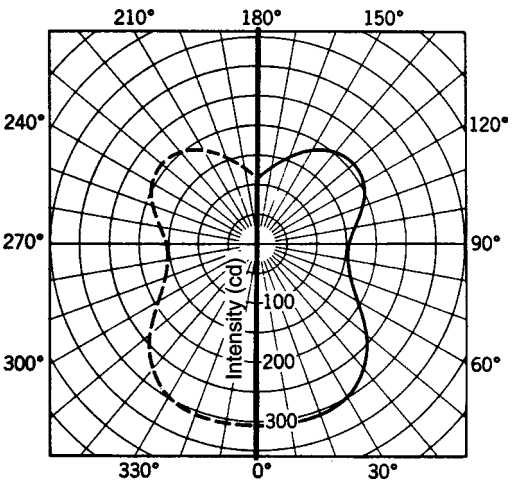


Fig. 11.15 *Typical luminous intensity (cd) distribution curve for a general diffuse-type luminaire. Because the unit is symmetrical about its vertical axis, only one curve need be shown. Furthermore, only the right side of this curve need be shown, due to symmetry.*

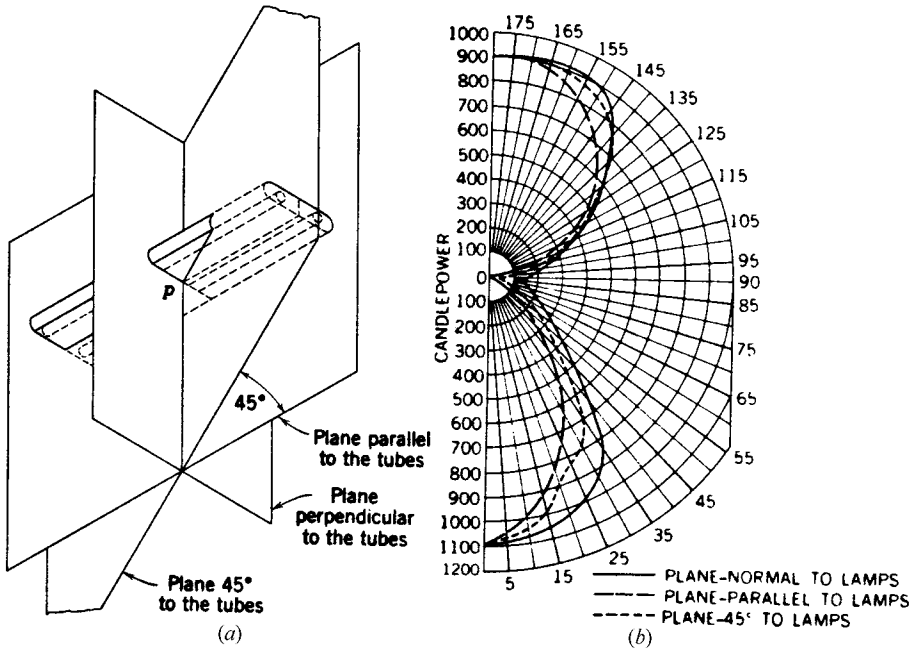


Fig. 11.16 *(a) Due to the asymmetry of a fluorescent luminaire, intensity distribution curves in (at least) three planes are required. (b) Photometric distribution for this fixture is symmetrical in each individual plane; therefore, only one side of a curve is required. By convention, the right side is used.*

where the three planes and typical resultant curves are shown.

Most CDC plots are made on polar coordinates because such a plot clearly shows directions and magnitudes. Nevertheless, polar plots tend to crowd near the nadir, and accurate magnitude readings at the cutoff angle are difficult to make. For this reason, it is occasionally desirable to obtain a plot on rectangular coordinates. One such plot is shown in Fig. 11.17. The usefulness of intensity distribution curves will become clear in our subsequent discussions on lighting fixture diffusers, point-by-point calculations, and direct and reflected glare. It should be noted that the area of the CDC curve is *not* a measure of the lumen output.

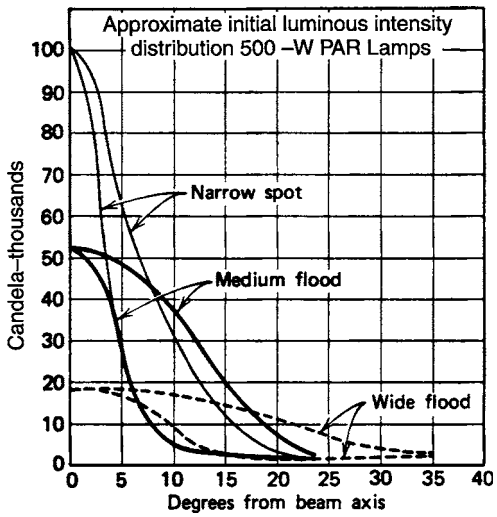


Fig. 11.17 *Luminous intensity distribution curves plotted in rectangular coordinates. Note that candela values near the cutoff angles are easily read, which is not the case in polar plots.*

LIGHT AND SIGHT

11.15 THE EYE

Because any discussion of light and lighting techniques is irrelevant to our purposes unless ultimately related to vision, we turn to a cursory examination of the human eye before proceeding further with discussions of lighting.

Light impinging on the eye enters through the pupil, the size of which is controlled by the iris, thereby controlling the amount of light entering the

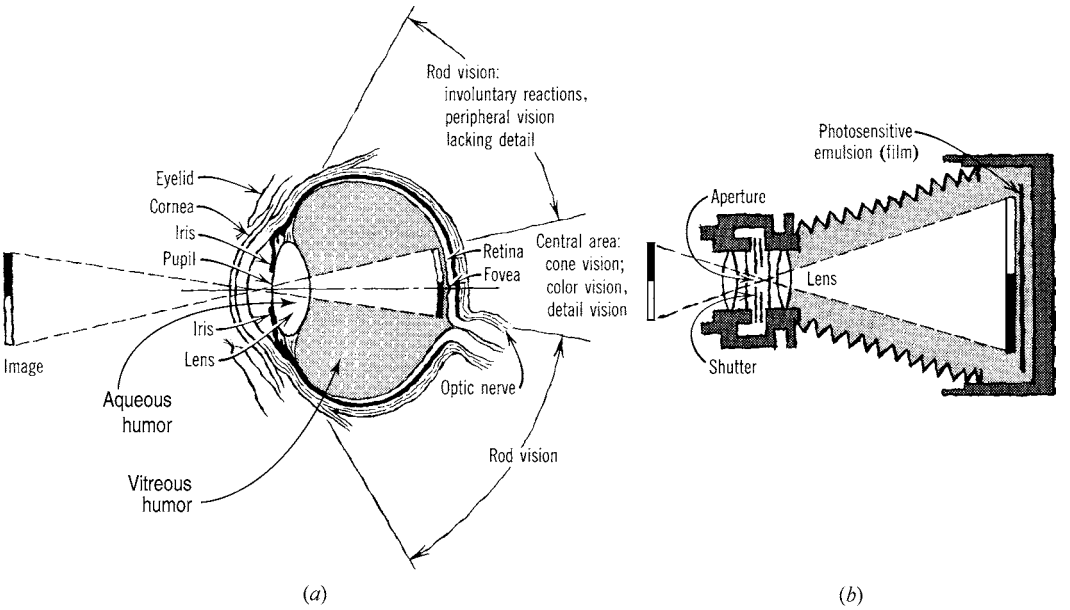


Fig. 11.18 *The human eye (a) and the camera (b) operate on similar optic principles. The cornea acts as an outer refracting lens that introduces light into the iris. The iris and pupil control the f-stop, or opening of the eye, and correspond roughly to a range of f2.1 to f11. The lens, which acts as a perfectly smooth automatic zoom lens, can focus from about 2 in. (50 mm) to infinity.*

eye. The lens focuses the image on the retina, from which the optic nerve conveys the visual message by electric impulse to the brain. Figure 11.18 shows the structure of the eye and the parallel structure of a camera.

Light is focused on the retina, which contains in all some 150 million light-sensitive cells of two types: rod and cone cells. The central portion of the eye, near the fovea, is an area of pinhead size containing about 100,000 *cone* cells, which accounts for the extreme precision of foveal (center-focus) vision. The cones are responsible for the ability to discriminate detail and also give us our sensation of color and detect *luminances in the range 3 to 1,000,000 cd/m*^{2}. Proceeding outward from the fovea, a second type of cell is encountered called a *rod* cell. Rods can detect luminances from 1/1000 cd/m^2 to approximately 120 cd/m^2 and are extremely light-sensitive, giving a response to light 1/10,000 as bright as that required by cone cells. However, rod cells lack color sensitivity, thus accounting for the fact that in dim light (rod vision), we have no color perception and all colors appear as varying shades of gray. Rod cells also lack detail discrimination, making "night vision" quite coarse. Finally, rod cells are slower-acting than cone cells and therefore have a low degree of flicker fusion; stated conversely, they are highly motion-sensitive. Because these cells occur at the outer portions of the retina, their motion sensitivity results in our being best able to detect movement when looking out of the "corner of the eye." Looking at a 60 Hz fluorescent tube directly and then obliquely demonstrates this effect.

Figure 11.19 is a sketch illustrating the angles involved in the field of vision. Of particular interest is the extreme narrowness of the cone of central (foveal) vision, in which acute perception of detail takes place. This area is so small that the eye must refocus on each dot in a colon (:) if you wish to examine each individually. Surrounding this central area is a cone of binocular vision of 30° half-angle, called the *near field* or *surround*, in which area most of the coarser sight information is gathered. Beyond this cone we have far-field and peripheral, primarily horizontal, monocular vision. It is the far-field and peripheral areas that largely give us our subjective, ambience-type reactions.

11.16 FACTORS IN VISUAL ACUITY

The three components of any seeing task are the object or task itself, the lighting conditions, and the observer. The following list gives the variables

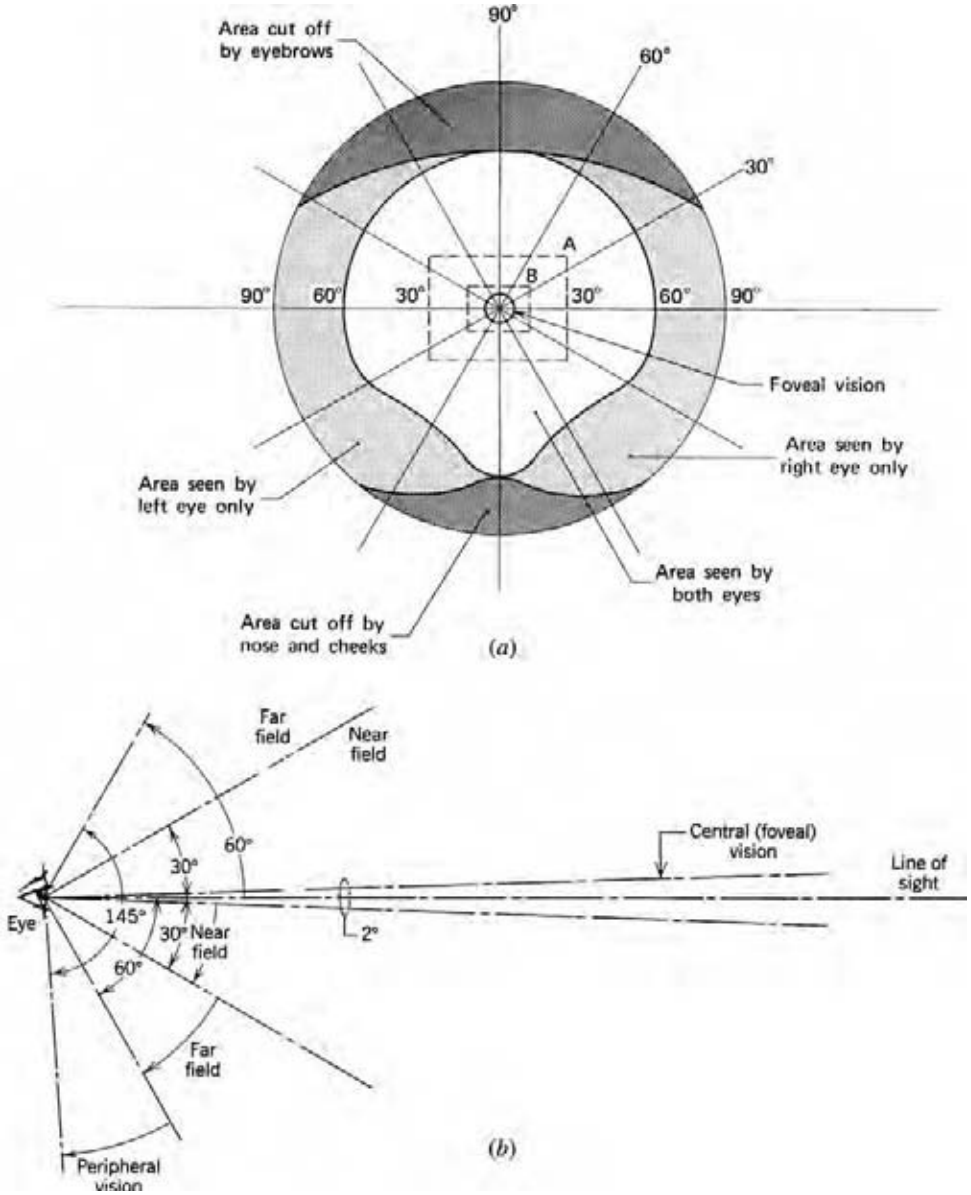


Fig. 11.19 *The fields of vision of a normal pair of human eyes (a) and the subtended angles (b). The rectangles A and B superimposed on the field of vision in (a) represent a large magazine and a small book, respectively.*

affecting each of these three components. Based upon the results of many investigations, they can be categorized as of primary or secondary importance.

I. The Task

Primary Factors

a. Size

b. Luminance (brightness)

c. Contrast, including color contrast

d. Exposure time—needed or given

Secondary Factors

e. Type of object—required mental activity; familiarity with the object (in reading, familiarity is so important as to become the primary factor)

f. Degree of accuracy required

g. Task—moving or stationary
h. Peripheral patterns

II. The Lighting Condition
Primary Factors
a. Illumination level (illuminance)
b. Disability glare
c. Discomfort glare
Secondary Factors
d. Luminance ratios
e. Brightness patterns
f. Chromaticity

III. The Observer
Primary Factors
a. Condition of the eyes (both health and age)
b. Adaptation level
c. Fatigue level
Secondary Factors
d. Subjective impressions; psychological reactions

Although in the following discussions these factors are considered individually, many are interrelated. Thus luminance (I*b*) and adaptation (III*b*) result from the presence of illumination (II*a*); subjective impressions (III*d*) are dependent on brightness patterns (II*e*) and chromaticity (II*f*); fatigue (III*c*) results from a combination of many of the factors, and so on.

In the literature, it is common to find reference to the *quantity* and *quality* of the lighting environment. In terms of these factors, the quantity of light has reference to item II*a* and the quality to items II*b* through II*f*.

The basic visual tasks are the perception of low contrast, fine detail, and brightness gradient. Assuming a good lighting environment—that is, low glare, acceptable luminance ratios, and white light plus a normal pair of unfatigued eyes—visual acuity is primarily dependent on items I*a* to I*d*, the interrelated effects of which have been determined by a large number of field tests. Remember that the seeing task under discussion involves foveal vision (i.e., focusing and concentrating on small-area detail). This is a vastly different task than normal reading, where the eye rapidly scans familiar images without focusing on details, and the brain immediately understands even when much of the information is missing, as in poor reading copy. The task discussed next is quite different and could be compared to studying mathematical equations or reading an unfamiliar language or even proofreading spelling. All of these tasks require detailed examination of each symbol individually.

11.17 SIZE OF THE VISUAL OBJECT

Visual acuity is generally proportional to the physical size of the object being viewed, given fixed brightness, contrast, and exposure time. Because the actual parameter is not physical size but subtended visual angle, visual ability can be increased by bringing the object nearer the eye (Fig. 11.20). It is assumed that we are dealing with a pair of *young eyes*, because at ages above 40, the accommodation ability of the eye becomes limited and bringing the object closer blurs the focus.

11.18 SUBJECTIVE BRIGHTNESS

The sensation of vision, as explained previously, is caused by light entering the eye. This light may be thought of as a group of convergent rays, each ray coming from a different point in space and therefore carrying different visual information. The composite of these rays comprises the entire visual picture that the eye sees and the brain comprehends. The individual rays differ from each other in intensity and chromaticity, depending on the part of the viewed object from which they were reflected. The intensity

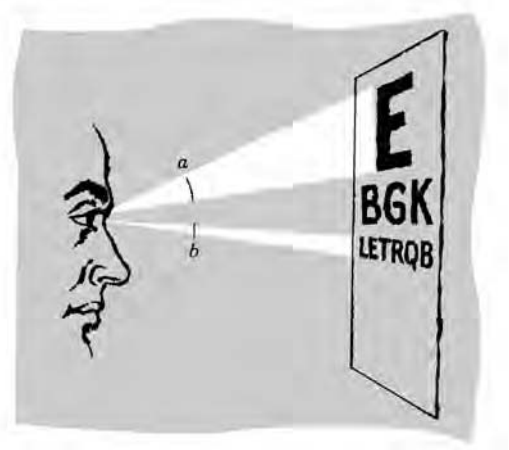


Fig. 11.20 *Relationship between object size and visibility is demonstrated by comparison of subtended angles* a *and* b.

of these cones of light determines and describes the perceived brightness of the object being viewed.

The human eye detects luminance over an astonishing range of more than 100 million to 1, the lower levels being accomplished after an adjustment period called *adaptation time*. This period varies from 2 minutes for cone vision to up to 40 minutes for rod vision for dark adaptation but is much faster for both types for light adaptation (going from dark to light). The effects of adaptation on apparent (photometric) brightness are discussed in the following section. Tables 11.2 and 11.3 list some measured luminances of everyday visual tasks.

An interesting characteristic of light-level adaptation is a shift in the sensitivity curve of the eye (Fig. 11.6*b*). Whereas for the light-adapted eye (photopic vision) maximum sensitivity occurs at 555 nm in the yellow-green region, the dark-adapted eye (scotopic vision) peaks at 520 nm in the blue-green region. This means that as the light dims, the warm colors—yellow, orange, red—become grayed, and the blues and violets stand out. This phenomenon can be important in the lighting design of restaurants, where light levels generally vary inversely with restaurant quality. Very few foods are blue or violet.

Returning then to the primary consideration of visual acuity as affected by luminance, we can state that, in general, visual performance increases with object luminance. However, a great deal depends on the background against which an object is viewed and the consequent contrast in brightness between the object being viewed and its surroundings.

TABLE 11.2 Typical Luminance Values[a]

	Luminance	
Object	**cd/m²**	**Footlamberts**
Black glove on a cloudy night	0.0003	0.0001
Wall brightness in a well-lighted office	100	30
This sheet of paper in an office	120	35
Green electroluminescent lamp	150	45
Asphalt paving—overcast day	1,300	380
North sky	3,500	1,000
Moon, candle flame	4,000–5,000	1,300
Fluorescent tube	6,000–8,000	2,200
Kerosene flame	8,500	2,500
Hazy sky or fog	15,000	4,400
Snow in sunlight	25,000	7,300
100-W inside frost incandescent lamp	50,000	14,600
Sun	2.3 E9	0.67 E9

[a]Values are rounded off.

TABLE 11.3 Preferred and Permissible Luminances

Item	Luminance in cd/m²
Recommended road luminance	1–2
Minimum discernible, chromatic	2–3
Clearly discernible human features	15–20
Preferred wall luminance	25–150
Preferred ceiling luminance	50–250
Preferred task luminance	100–500
Permissible luminaire luminance (depending on position in field of vision)	1000–7000

11.19 CONTRAST AND ADAPTATION

The discussion that follows assumes full-spectrum white light and ignores the effects of chromaticity, which is considered separately. Many researchers in the area of visibility have concluded that contrast is the single most important factor in visual acuity. This is self-evident when we realize that in fact, the eye sees only contrast. This can readily be demonstrated by viewing a large, evenly lighted, monochromatic, diffuse-finish surface (preferably white) that encompasses the entire visual field. The eye is unable to focus on such a surface because it sees no contrast, but only a single luminance. Therefore, the eye itself attempts to provide the missing contrast by seeing an internally reflected view of the retina in yellow.

To properly evaluate the effect of contrast (luminance ratio) on visibility, we must first determine the nature of the visual task or, more simply, exactly what it is that we are trying to see. As stated before, the basic visual tasks are detail discrimination and detection of low contrast. Examples of the former are drafting, industrial product inspection, or something as simple as discriminating between the numbers 3, 6, and 8, which are similarly shaped. Detection of low contrast includes reading faint copy, sewing a black fabric with black thread, and the like.

Contrast is a dimensionless ratio, defined as

$$C = \frac{L_T - L_B}{L_B} \text{ or } \frac{L_B - L_T}{L_B} \text{ or } \left|\frac{L_B - L_T}{L_B}\right| \qquad (11.7)$$

where L_T and L_B are the luminance of the task and background, respectively, in any units. Thus, C varies from 0 for no contrast to 1.0 for maximum contrast. In most situations, the illumination on the task and background is the same. Therefore, because luminance is the product of illuminance (lux) and reflectance, contrast can also be expressed as

$$C = \left|\frac{R_B - R_T}{R_B}\right| \qquad (11.8)$$

where R_T and R_B are the reflectances of the task and the background, respectively. From this equation, we can conclude that *contrast is generally independent of illumination* (ignoring specularity). Thus, for the black-on-white lettering that you are now reading,

$$C = \frac{0.77 - 0.045}{0.77} = 0.94$$

which accounts for the excellent legibility. (We are assuming no specularity.) Reflectance figures are taken from Table 11.9.

It is obvious that high contrast is the critical factor in visual appreciation of outline, silhouette, and size, which are the factors involved in the task of reading. Thus, black-on-white print can be read with ease even in moonlight, which is at best 0.1 lux illuminance, because the contrast is so high (94%). An important conclusion can then be drawn about a *reading task*: with high contrast (clear, legible print), visibility is essentially *independent* of illumination above a certain minimum. Indeed, high illuminance values can be detrimental because they generally go hand-in-hand with high luminance sources, and these in turn can cause veiling reflections (see Section 11.29).

Now refer to Fig. 11.21. Note that as the contrast between the letters in the word "performance" and the background diminishes, the individual letters become harder to read. The end letters of the word require an illuminance of up to 1000 lux, and that suffices only because we expect the letter *e* at the end. Were it an unknown sign, illuminance of a magnitude of 10,000 lux or more would be needed. These latter letters are an example of the second type of visual task mentioned previously—low-contrast poor copy requiring surface detail study.

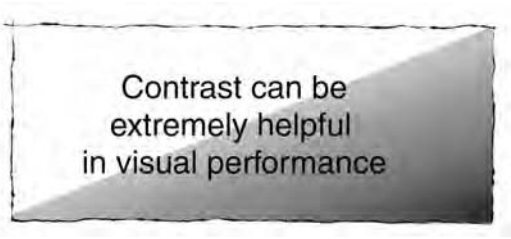


Fig. 11.21 *High contrast is helpful when the seeing task involves detection of silhouette detail.*

The *e* at the end of "performance" in Fig. 11.21 is printed with the same density as the *C* in "Contrast." It exists, and with enough lighting, the negative effect of lack of contrast can be overcome. This is not so with copy from a used-up printer cartridge or a washed-out photocopy. There, the data simply do not exist, and increased lighting only makes this fact more evident.

High background luminance makes an object look darker, and therefore assists in outline detail discrimination, which is precisely the visual task involved in reading. For this reason, black-on-white is desirable for reading. (This is a special case of lateral adaptation, which is discussed in Section 11.36.) Conversely, high background luminance makes surface examination more difficult. A simple experiment demonstrates this effect. Stand near a window and hold your hand in front of you with the floor as background. The skin surface detail is perfectly clear—in rough proportion to its luminance. Now hold your hand up against the window with the daytime sky as background. The hand outline is clear, but the skin surface appears dark—the brighter the sky, the darker the skin surface. The reason for this is that the eye automatically adapts to the average brightness of the entire scene.

It is well known that when using an automatic exposure control camera to photograph a dark object on a light background (such as a person in a snow scene) it is necessary to manually increase the camera aperture in order to obtain additional light to photograph the detail of the darker object. (In doing this, we overexpose the rest of the scene.) Because we cannot easily control the aperture of our eyes, we must compensate for the detrimental effect of high background luminance in another way—for example, by increasing the surface luminance of the visual

task. Indeed, this method is frequently employed (see Section 11.31b). Limited visual compensation can be made by squinting; this reduces the field of vision and the overall scene brightness. For maximum visual acuity, *the luminance of a surface-type task should be the same as, or slightly higher than, that of the background*, but ratios of 3:1 are acceptable in most circumstances.

Another way of understanding this is to consider the adaptation characteristic of the human eye (Fig. 11.22). As stated, the eye adapts to the brightness level of the *overall* scene and sees each object in the scene in the framework of that adaptation level. Thus, at an adaptation level of 1 fL (3.4 cd/m^2), a measured luminance ratio of 1:10 (horizontal scale on Fig. 11.22) appears to be only approximately 1:4 (vertical scale); that is, the apparent ratio is *smaller* than the actual one. Put another way, the low level of eye adaptation causes the eye to diminish the difference between high brightnesses. This effect becomes smaller as the adaptation level rises, until at an adaptation level of 1000 fL (3400 cd/m^2) (daylight conditions), the apparent and actual ratios correspond; that is, smaller ratios are recognizable. Because visual acuity is, by definition, the ability to distinguish between different levels of luminance, we have in effect demonstrated that *visual acuity increases with increased adaptation level*.

The second important conclusion that can be drawn is that at high adaptation levels, apparent brightness is lower than actual brightness, and vice versa. Thus, a shadowed object near a window looks *darker* than it actually is; contrary to first expectation, it must be better lighted than a similar object further inside the room for equal visibility. That this effect (high-level adaptation) is primarily important in daylight situations is also apparent from the curves. At a 100-fL (340-cd/m^2) adaptation level, which is approximately that of a brightly lighted interior space, apparent and actual luminance levels coincide. The reverse effect, resulting from low adaptation levels, can be very important in design situations where low lighting levels are found, such as theaters, lecture halls, restaurants, and storage spaces. Sources of light that would be entirely acceptable at a higher adaptation level can easily become an annoying glare at a low level. Good examples are a theater usher's flashlight or the blinding glare of an oncoming car's headlights. Reduction of contrast due to veiling reflections and the measurement of contrast and contrast reduction are discussed in Section 11.29.

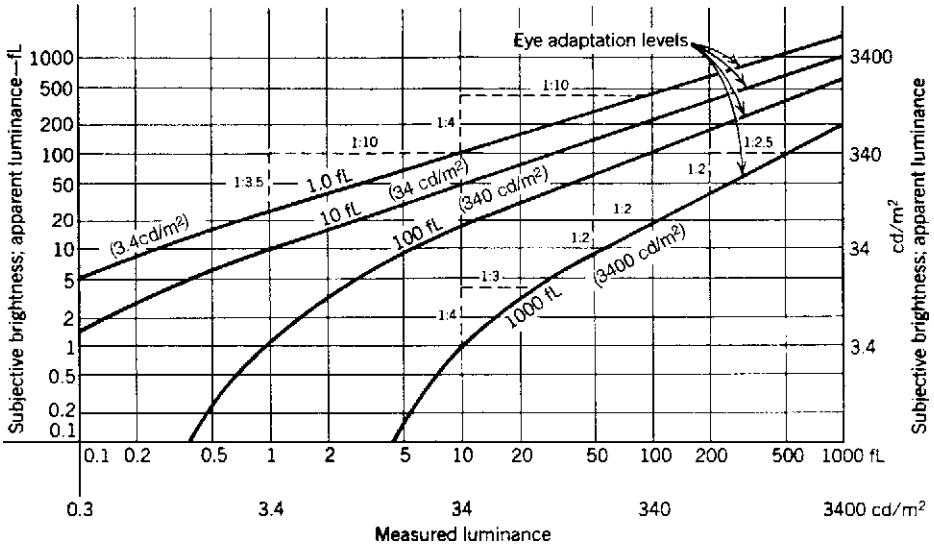


Fig. 11.22 *The effect of an eye's adaptation level on perceived (subjective) brightness is clearly shown. (Adapted from H. Cotton. 1960.* Principles of Illumination. *John Wiley & Sons. New York.)*

The foregoing discussion of contrast deliberately avoided any discussion of *object* colors and the effect of color contrast on visual acuity for several reasons:

- Office-type tasks (paperwork) are most often black-on-white tasks.
- Most work tasks involving colored objects deal with unsaturated colors, where the pronounced effects of color contrast are minimal.
- The effect of object color on visual acuity is very complex because it involves the color characteristic not only of the object, but also of the background and the surround plus the chromaticity of the illuminant.

That being said, we must, however, at least mention a number of important object color phenomena that bear on visual acuity.

- The subjective brightness of a colored (heterochromatic) object is greater than that of an achromatic object for the same photometric luminance. This effect varies with hue and saturation. It is more pronounced with saturated colors than with those of low chroma and more in the blue-purple-red area than the yellow–green area.
- Colored objects on a dark-to-black background appear light and desaturated. Conversely, colors on a light-to-white background appear darker and more saturated.
- Adjacent complementary colors produce a pale-to-white border between them. The effect also appears when the task and background colors are complementary, and is most pronounced with saturated (high-chroma) colors.

These remarks deal with *object* color only. As stated at the beginning of this section, we are assuming white, full-spectrum light, so that neither object color nor visual acuity is affected. Effects on visual acuity resulting from unbalanced illuminants, such as those from high-pressure sodium lamps and, to a lesser extent, from halide and fluorescent sources, are the subject of intensive and ongoing research. Some of the results are adduced in the discussion of illuminant chromaticity at the end of this chapter. These effects are most pronounced, and therefore most important, in relation to elderly persons and persons with visual defects. We must again, therefore, emphasize that unless otherwise specifically stated, our discussions of vision, light, and lighting assume full-spectrum white light and young, healthy eyes.

11.20 EXPOSURE TIME

Registering a meaningful visual image is not an instantaneous process, but one that requires finite amounts of time. Just as a photograph can be taken in dim light by using a longer exposure, so can the human eye better distinguish and discriminate fine detail in poor light given time (and neglecting eyestrain). Of course, the time needed depends on the type of task, but the principle of shorter time at higher illumination, within limits, remains the same. This is particularly true when the object being viewed is not static but is in motion.

The phenomenon, however, is not linear. For one specific task tested, increasing the luminance by a factor of 6 halved the seeing time, whereas a further sixfold increase in luminance reduced the time only another 20%. Thus, as in the case of improved contrast with increasing background brightness, we have a case of diminishing returns.

With the parameter of time, as with other parameters of visual acuity, the same qualification applies. When dealing with material that does not require detail discrimination, improved performance does not necessarily result from improved illumination. It has been amply demonstrated that speed of reading and comprehension are substantially independent of illumination levels above a minimum, but are very much dependent on the contrast quality of the material.

11.21 SECONDARY TASK-RELATED FACTORS

Refer again to the list of factors in visual acuity in Section 11.16. We have discussed at some length the primary task-oriented factors I*a–d*, and at this point wish to consider secondary factors *e–h* of that list. These items refer essentially to the level of concentration required. Thus, spray painting a large metal object or packing fruit are very different from inspecting the painted object for defects or the fruit for bruises. The former tasks are largely mechanical and repetitious, whereas the latter tasks require

continuous judgmental decisions based on visual information. Because both of the latter tasks are frequently moving (assembly-line type of work) and both involve penalties for inaccuracy (rejection at a later inspection state or negative feedback from the purchaser), the lighting required for these tasks is several orders of magnitude better than that for related but largely mechanical tasks. Indeed, extrapolation from laboratory condition tests yields only a range of lighting recommendations. Thereafter, considerable field testing and adjustment are required.

An observer performing a lab test has a different level of concentration and performance than that of a person at an 8-hour-a-day task. The latter compensates for an unsatisfactory seeing condition by:

1. Moving the work to a better viewing angle.
2. Moving the head and eyes to a more comfortable position.
3. Reducing the distance between the eyes and the task to the extent that the eyes can accommodate.
4. Complaining about a poor-contrast task so that something is done about it (such as fixing the photocopying machine).
5. Taking more time to perform the seeing task involved. (This item, if it affects production, frequently spurs management to make appropriate alterations in the work environment.)

The last item in the task list—peripheral patterns—deals with the visual surround rather than the immediate area of the work. Other than glare sources, which are discussed separately, there are many items that, although outside the central field of vision, can disturb the viewer's concentration and therefore the task performance of a worker. These include movement (vehicles, machines, persons), to which peripheral vision is particularly sensitive; large variations in the brightness pattern of the background caused by such activities as periodic opening of an outside door or welding; and even nonvarying patterns that are disturbing because of their very nature, such as checkerboard light-dark patterns, or devices on which it is difficult to focus the eyes, such as crossed patterns of wires and bars. None of these items is strictly lighting-oriented, but they are noted here to demonstrate that an adequate lighting design necessarily includes adjustments for particular field conditions.

11.22 OBSERVER-RELATED VISIBILITY FACTORS

It is a well-documented fact that the visual performance of *healthy* eyes decreases with age. This reduction is demonstrated principally in two areas: an increase in minimum focusing distance caused by increasing lens rigidity and a decrease in sensitivity caused by clouding of the cornea, lens, and vitreous humor. Both of these effects can be compensated for, the former with external lensing (eyeglasses) and the latter by increased task size, luminance, contrast, and exposure time, as explained previously. The point is, of course, that the age of the worker is an important parameter in the vision equation.

Furthermore, maximum performance may not be synonymous with maximum comfort or minimum fatigue. Indeed, the reverse may sometimes be true. Most experts agree that what is normally referred to as *eyestrain* is a condition of the eye muscles resulting from extensive and intensive eye use. Thus, excellent performance under excellent lighting conditions can still produce fatigue because of the demanding nature of the task. In addition, as discussed later, discomfort glare or even excessive lighting can cause fatigue without affecting performance.

The lighting designer must be concerned not only with providing adequate uniform lighting levels, but also with all of the factors involved. Many, indeed, are beyond his or her control. Some, such as task contrast, previously thought to be outside the lighting designer's province, should be examined by the designer in an overall "lighting plus task plus observer" problem context and recommendations made. Acceptance of these recommendations is a management decision.

Recent work in field testing of visibility situations in real-work conditions considers all of these parameters in arriving at a visibility judgment and, in addition, goes far toward identifying any difficulty as lying with the task, the lighting condition, or the observer. The entire field of visibility and visual performance is undergoing very active continuing research, and definitive answers to the elusive question of how to design for optimal viewing have not yet been found—nor indeed is there any assurance that they will be. What has emerged over the years are various parameters and

criteria for judging aspects of visibility, such as *Equivalent Spherical Illumination* (ESI), which is a contrast-related visibility criterion; *Relative Visual Performance* (RVP), which rates a vision situation in terms of speed and accuracy of performance; *Visual Comfort Probability* (VCP), which judges the visual comfort of an overall scene; and a somewhat ephemeral and entirely subjective impression called *visual clarity*. Other research has concentrated on the relationship between eye pupil size and visual acuity and, based on results from this research, the relationship between pupil size and various aspects of light and lighting. What has been confirmed to date is the complexity of human work-oriented vision plus our inability thus far to adequately quantify the interrelationships among the many factors involved—quantification being the basis of reliable, duplicatable design.

11.23 THE AGING EYE

The past few decades have seen a remarkable increase in life expectancy in modern Western countries with a resultant sharp increase in the aged population. In the United States at this writing, about 15% of the population is above 65 years of age, a proportion that is expected to reach 20% by the year 2020. As a result, lighting design must take cognizance not only of special requirements in buildings specifically intended for use by the aged but also, increasingly, in general-use public buildings. To this end, a brief review of these special requirements is presented here.

Refer to Fig. 11.18. Light enters the eye through the cornea, passes through the aqueous humor, and enters the lens through the pupil. After being focused by the lens, it continues through the vitreous humor and finally projects the viewed image, reversed, on the retina. As the eye ages, a whole spectrum of physiological changes may occur; some are usual and are therefore classified as normal; others, such as cataracts, are less common but are still considered by ophthalmologists to be an expected development. The unusual developments are classified as *pathologies*, only indirectly or partially related to aging and therefore outside the purview of normal lighting design. The normal developments and their influence on lighting design are briefly described in the following subsections.

(a) Cornea

This perfectly clear outer lens tends to become cloudy, with corresponding reduction of visual clarity and acuity. This results in a requirement for more light to overcome the reduction in light intensity on the retina. The overall effect is very similar to that of a neutral density filter on a camera lens, the difference being that such a filter is most often used to reduce excessive ambient light without excessively reducing the shutter opening (increasing the *f*-stop). The need for additional light for aging eyes is recognized in most modern systems of illumination specification. See Table 11.8 for the factors used in the IESNA system.

(b) Lens

The lens, which begins life as a very lightly yellow-tinted flexible crystalline body, gradually thickens and yellows. As a result of the thickening, flexibility is reduced, resulting in the well-known inability to close-focus. The yellowing both reduces the overall light intensity in the eye and selectively filters the blue portion of the spectrum. Research seems to indicate improved visual acuity through pupil size control when the incident light is rich in the blue area of the spectrum. Because lens yellowing *reduces* the blue frequencies, the overall effect is again to require additional light.

A second and more important degenerative phenomenon of the lens is its gradual clouding. When the opacity is confined to the perimeter, its effect is negligible because vision is unaffected. When small, opaque areas appear within the visual axis through the lens, vision is affected in two ways:

1. The viewed image is dimmed and blurred due to opacities in the field of view.
2. Light entering the lens is scattered by interreflections from the opaque particles, resulting in a subjective impression of glare. This effect is particularly severe outdoors, where light enters the lens from all angles, and both indoors and outdoors as a result of concentrated high-luminance (glare) sources.

The net result of these reactions is a requirement for more light but an even more pressing requirement that sources of glare and peripheral light be eliminated. (People with this condition frequently

wear eyeglasses and sunglasses with large, opaque earpieces to block peripheral light and thus reduce glare.) Also, because short-wavelength (blue) light interreflects and scatters more readily than does long-wavelength (yellow-red) light, these people are more comfortable with incandescent sources and low-color temperature fluorescent lamps (2700–3100 K) than with sources rich in the blue-green spectrum. (Ophthalmologists frequently prescribe yellow-tinted eyeglass for people with this lens condition to filter out blue light.)

Finally, a less common but still prevalent condition of the aging lens is the development of fluorescent particles, called *fluorigens*, in the vision path. In the presence of UV radiation, such as exists in daylight, fluorescent, and high-intensity discharge (HID) sources, these particles fluoresce, causing scatter, blur, and glare. The solution to this problem is a combination of yellow-tinted eyeglass lenses and a reduction of light sources containing appreciable quantities of UV.

(c) Pupil

The pupil controls the amount of light entering the eye and is therefore intimately involved in the constantly changing accommodation level of the eye. The pupil muscles react more slowly as they age, thus lengthening accommodation time. Dark-to-light accommodation is very rapid in the young eye, and is barely noticed except for extreme changes such as exiting a cinema into sunlight. With an aging eye, the slower pupil results in severe glare sensations with even much smaller brightness changes.

The net result of all of the normal conditions of the aging eye is a heightened sensitivity to glare, an intolerance to the blue–UV end of the spectrum, and an overall requirement for higher illuminance levels. For the lighting designer, these needs translate into requirements for very careful selection and placement of luminaires, increased use of indirect lighting, and particular attention to the spectrum of the light sources used. Because some of these requirements are not only mutually incompatible but also contrary to energy-efficient design practice, it may be particularly difficult to satisfy all the requirements in spaces occupied by persons with a wide range of ages. In work areas of this type, it may be wise to provide for the possibility of readily changing lighting conditions in a limited area to accommodate older occupants rather than attempt an overall design, keeping in mind constantly the glare and color factors discussed previously.

QUANTITY OF LIGHT

11.24 ILLUMINANCE LEVELS

Returning to the list of factors in Section 11.16, and having discussed the task-oriented and observer-oriented items (except for item III*d*, psychological reactions, which is covered in Section 11.36), we turn now to item II, the *lighting condition*. This is frequently, if somewhat inaccurately, divided into two groups—quantity and quality of lighting—with item II*a* representing quantity and items II*b* to II*f* representing quality. That such a division is not accurate becomes clear in our discussion of glare in Sections 11.28 to 11.31.

An understanding of the factors involved in visual acuity, as discussed previously, does not answer the most basic lighting design question, which is "How much light must I provide for the specific visual task at hand?" That this question is extremely difficult to answer is evidenced by the fact that, even today, recommendations for similar tasks vary by ratios as high as 10:1 among countries with highly developed technologies. Because this is obviously an unsatisfactory situation in an era of global markets, international construction, the European Union, and international cooperative lighting research, the trend since the late 1980s has been to attempt a degree of standardization.

The North American (IESNA) recommendations were originally developed analytically by extrapolation from extensive laboratory tests. The function of these tests was to determine the conditions under which small differences in contrast could be detected for specific degrees of accuracy, with variable parameters of task luminance, size, and exposure time. The idea behind the tests was that visual acuity could be defined as the ability to distinguish differences in contrast.

The British (and, to a large extent, the European) approach was to study specific tasks in actual and simulated field conditions. To these results,

modifying factors of size, contrast, accuracy requirement, speed, and duration were added. The disadvantage of this approach was the necessity to study a large number of visual tasks individually. In the absence of a very specific visual task description, a detailed listing of visual categories was developed, as is discussed in the next section. Recently, IESNA recommendations have been modified by a graded system—more in line with British and CIE (Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage) recommendations—that establishes a median or average requirement for a task, within a range, and then modifies the median up or down to specific conditions of speed, accuracy, error importance, task duration, background reflectances, and viewer visual capability.

In addition, because of the moral and legal pressure (ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 is mandated by many codes) for energy conservation, the IESNA has taken additional salutary steps toward rationalization of its very influential illumination standards. They include recognition of fatigue and task familiarity (e.g., reading) as factors in determining illuminance levels, establishment of lighting power budgets, and energy standards (see Section 13.5) that encourage use of daylight as a normal component of a space's illumination and use of task/ambient lighting design as the preferred technique where high levels of task lighting are required.

11.25 ILLUMINANCE CATEGORY

Before discussing illuminance (lux) recommendations, it is necessary to understand the basis of their derivation, applicability, and shortcomings. As noted in the preceding section, most of the IESNA task illuminance recommendations are derived by extrapolation from threshold contrast visibility tests that yield a required task luminance. Assuming uniform, diffuse task reflectance and uniform illuminance, it is then a simple step to calculate required illuminance, since luminance is simply the product of illuminance and reflectance. In SI units,

$$L = \frac{E \times RF}{\pi}$$

and in I-P units,

$$fL = fc \times RF$$

where

L = luminance in cd/m^2

E = illuminance in lux

RF = reflection factor

fL = luminance in foot-lamberts

fc = illuminance in footcandles (see Example 11.4 and Fig. 11.7)

This simple relationship is used to derive much of the current IESNA tables, with modifying factors as explained previously (see Table 11.6 for CIBSE modifiers).

A number of reservations about this method have been voiced by respected authorities. One is based on research that indicates that suprathreshold visibility requirements are more readily related to eye brightness adaptation levels than to threshold contrast luminance levels (see Fig. 11.22 and the associated text discussion). Another objection is that deriving suprathreshold luminances from threshold values depends on applied criteria and can therefore vary considerably. Still another objection is based on the readily demonstrable fact that the sensation of vision is not mathematically related to photometric luminance. Thus, a black surface of 10% reflectance illuminated with 900 lux and a white surface of 90% reflectance illuminated with 100 lux both have exactly the same luminance, yet the eye always sees the white surface as lighter than the black one by a large margin. All of these reservations add up to a recommendation to the lighting designer to use the IESNA illuminance recommendations as one aspect of the overall design and not dogmatically.

Returning to recommendations, visual task studies indicate that assuming good contrast, the required luminances, categorized by type of task, are roughly as follows:

Category of Visual Task	*Required Luminance (cd/m^2)*
Causal	10–20
Ordinary	20–100
Moderate	100–200
Difficult	200–400
Severe	Above 400

Dependence of required illumination upon task reflectance (RF) can be seen by a glance at the

following tabulation, which shows quantitatively the illuminance requirements in the previous categories for tasks of radically different reflectance.

Category of Visual Task	*Required* E *(lux)*[a]	
	RF = 50%	*RF = 10%*
Casual	62–125	300–625
Ordinary	125–625	625–3,125
Moderate	625–1,250	3,125–6,250
Difficult	1,250–2,500	6,250–12,500
Severe	>2,500	>12,500

[a]Lux figures rounded.

This illustrates that a single illumination scheme is often inadequate for an area containing widely differing visual tasks. Note that a 10% RF makes all tasks difficult and that casual seeing comprises only outline recognition.

11.26 ILLUMINANCE RECOMMENDATIONS

Because American architects and engineers are involved in many construction projects outside of the United States, this section presents the essentials of British illuminance recommendations, which are similar to those of the CIE and many European countries, in addition to the American IESNA recommendations. In any specific design, the standards of that country should be consulted. Most developed nations, including Australia, Brazil, China, France, Germany, Japan, and others, have their own published lighting standards.

(a) British Lighting Standards

These standards are published by the Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers (CIBSE: http://www.cibse.org/). The particular publication in which illuminance recommendations appear is the *Code for Lighting*, 2006. The method of use is to determine the recommended average illuminance level, called the *standard maintained illuminance*, from either the very detailed, extensive listing of specific tasks in the previously mentioned publication (a small sample of which is reproduced in Table 11.4) or, if only the representative type of task is known, from the task category chart in Table 11.5. Having established this recommendation, the designer then modifies

TABLE 11.4 Typical Illuminance Recommendations, CIBSE (UK)

Offices and Shops		
	Standard Maintained Illuminance (lux)	**Notes**
OFFICES		
General offices	500	Local lighting may be appropriate
Computer workstations	300–500	See ref. 25
Conference rooms, executive offices	300–500	Dimming or switching to permit use
Computer and data preparation rooms	500	See ref. 25
Filing rooms	300	Vertical surfaces may be especially important
DRAWING OFFICES		
General	500	
Drawing boards	750	Local lighting may be appropriate
Computer-aided design and drafting	300–500	Special lighting is required; see ref. 25
Print rooms	300	

Source: Reproduced with permission from the CIBSE *Code for Interior Lighting* (1994).
Reference 25: *CIBSE Lighting Guide LG3: Areas for Visual Display Terminals*

Notes:

The information in the table will be influenced by reference to the "core recommendations" in Sections 4.3 to 4.5 of the Code.

Check that installations designed to meet the needs of visual display screen tasks also have the task-to-wall and task-to-ceiling ratios recommended in Section 4.4 of the Code.

Where air conditioning or mechanical ventilation is required, air-handling luminaires may be appropriate.

TABLE 11.5 Examples of Activities/Interiors Appropriate for Each Maintained Illuminance

Standard Maintained Illuminance (lux)	Characteristics of Activity/Interior	Representative Activities/Interiors
50	Interiors used rarely with visual tasks confined to movement and casual seeing without perception of detail	Cable tunnels, indoor storage tanks, walkways
100	Interiors used occasionally with visual tasks confined to movement and casual seeing calling for only limited perception of detail	Corridors, changing rooms, bulk stores, auditoria
150	Interiors used occasionally or with visual tasks not requiring perception of detail but involving some risk to people, plant, or product	Loading bays, medical stores, plant rooms
200	Interiors occupied for long periods or for visual tasks requiring some perception of detail	Foyers and entrances, monitoring automatic processes, casting concrete, turbine halls, dining rooms
300[a]	Interiors occupied for long periods, or when visual tasks are moderately easy (i.e., large details [>10-min arc]) and/or high contrast	Libraries, sports and assembly halls, teaching spaces, lecture theaters, packing
500[a]	Visual tasks moderately difficult (i.e., details to be seen are of moderate size [5–10 min arc] and may be of low contrast); also, color judgment may be required	General offices, engine assembly, painting and spraying, kitchens, laboratories, retail shops
750[a]	Visual tasks difficult (i.e., details to be seen are small [3–5 min arc] and of low contrast); also, good color judgments or the creation of a well-lit, inviting interior may be required	Drawing offices, ceramic decoration, meat inspection, chain stores
1000[a]	Visual tasks very difficult (i.e., details to be seen are very small [2–3 min arc] and can be of very low contrast); also, accurate color judgments or the creation of a well-lit, inviting interior may be required	General inspection, electronic assembly, gauge and tool rooms, retouching paintwork, cabinet making, supermarkets
1500[a]	Visual tasks extremely difficult (i.e., details to be seen are extremely small [1–2 min arc] and of low contrast); optical aids and local lighting may be of advantage	Fine work and inspection, hand tailoring, precision assembly
2000[a]	Visual tasks exceptionally difficult (i.e., details to be seen are exceptionally small [<1 min arc] with very low contrast); optical aids and local lighting will be of advantage	Assembly of minute mechanisms, finished fabric inspection

Source: Reproduced with permission from the CIBSE *Code for Interior Lighting* (1994). These values are generally in agreement with the *Code for Lighting* 2006.

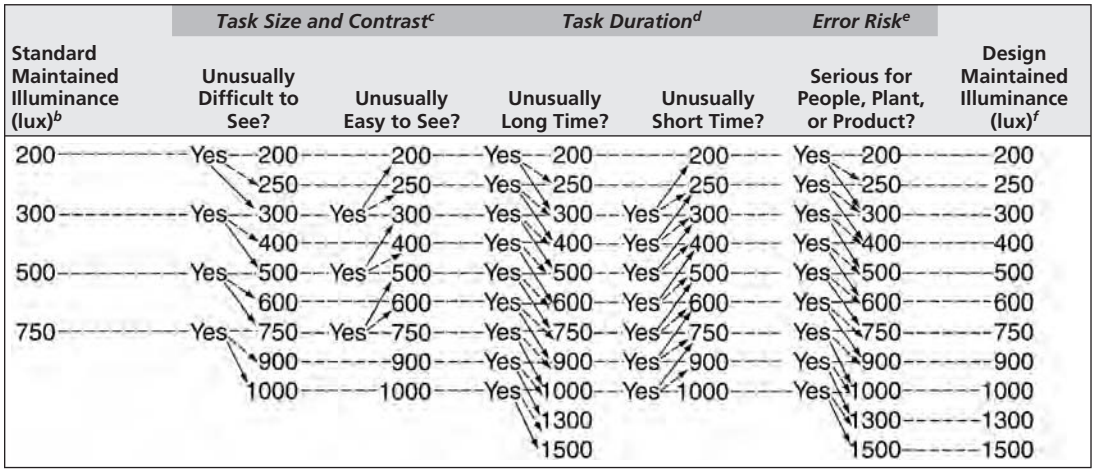
[a]One minute of arc (min arc) is one-sixtieth of a degree. This is the angle of which the tangent is given by the dimension of the task detailed to be seen divided by the viewing distance.

it (if necessary) by using the flowchart shown in Table 11.6, which either increases or decreases the recommended illuminance to suit the task size, contrast, duration, and error risk. Explanatory usage notes accompany Table 11.6.

(b) North American Illuminance Recommendations (IESNA)

The North American approach to illuminance recommendations is similar in context to the CIBSE

TABLE 11.6 Design Maintained Illuminance Flowchart[a]



Source: Reproduced with permission from the CIBSE *Code for Interior Lighting* (1994).

[a]To use the chart, follow the horizontal path from the "standard" maintained illuminance in the schedule until the answer to a question is "yes." If the "yes" is strong, follow the solid arrow; if moderate, follow the dashed arrow.

[b]The flowchart should be used for all standard maintained illuminance recommendations from 200 to 750 lux for general activities and interiors in the lighting schedule. For recommendations of 150 lux or less, the modifying factors are not relevant (see Table 11.5). Where a standard maintained illuminance of more than 750 lux is recommended, this always applies to a stated task for specific industries or activities where the modifying factors have usually been taken into account.

[c]The standard maintained illuminance given in the schedule assumes that the task is representative of its type. If the task is much more visually difficult than usual (e.g., smaller size, lower contrast), then an increase in the maintained illuminance is appropriate. Reduced contrast may arise from the use of safety lenses or safety screens because they reduce the transmission of light. Increase illuminance to take account of the age or eyesight of the operator. Conversely, if the task detail is such that the task is easier to see than usual (e.g., larger size, higher contrast), a reduction in maintained illuminance can be made.

[d]The standard maintained illuminance given in the schedule assumes that the task is to be undertaken over a conventional working period. If the work is to be undertaken continually for a much longer period than usual, the maintained illuminance should be increased in order to diminish the risk of visual fatigue. Conversely, if the work is to be carried out over a much shorter period than usual, the maintained illuminance may be reduced.

[e]The schedule assumes that the consequences of any errors are typical of the activity. However, if errors have unusually serious consequences for people, plant, or product, an increase in illuminance may be appropriate.

[f]If the design maintained illuminance is more than two full steps (e.g., 300–750 lux) on the illuminance scale above the standard maintained illuminance, consideration should be given to whether changes in the task details or organization of the work are more appropriate than substantial increases in the maintained illuminance.

approach described in Section 11.26(a). The Illuminating Engineering Society of North American (IESNA) provides illuminance selection categories (see Table 11.7) organized around three sets of visual tasks (orientation and simple tasks, common tasks, and special tasks). Specific illuminance recommendations are provided with reference to a defined application in a matrix called the *IESNA Lighting Design Guide*. The *Guide* suggests recommended illuminance values (horizontal, vertical, or both) that represent best practice for a typical application. In addition to the lighting quantity recommendations inherent in the illuminance categories, the *Lighting Design Guide* provides recommendations regarding lighting quality issues. Additional factors related to the lighting condition can be factored into the choice of illuminance. These include scene geometry, shadowing and modeling, luminance ratios, presence of daylight, glare considerations, and other considerations. The *Lighting Design Guide* is a substantial document and cannot be reproduced herein. Anyone concerned with lighting design should use the current IESNA *Lighting Handbook* and the illuminance recommendations presented therein.

Earlier IESNA illuminance recommendations provided fairly explicit advice on adjustments to published illuminance values to accommodate differential conditions (such as the aging eye). Although no longer presented as explicitly by IESNA, such information promotes an understanding of the practical applications for illuminance

TABLE 11.7 Determination of Illuminance Categories*

Orientation and simple visual tasks. Visual performance is largely unimportant. These tasks are found in public spaces where reading and visual inspection are only occasionally performed. Higher levels are recommended for tasks where visual performance is occasionally important.		
A	Public spaces	30 lx (3 fc)
B	Simple orientation for short visits	50 lx (5 fc)
C	Working spaces where simple visual tasks are performed	100 lx (10 fc)
Common visual tasks. Visual performance is important. These tasks are found in commercial, industrial, and residential applications. Recommended illuminance levels differ because of characteristics of the visual task being illuminated. Higher levels are recommended for visual tasks with critical elements of low contrast or small size.		
D	Performance of visual tasks of high contrast and large size	300 lx (30 fc)
E	Performance of visual tasks of high contrast and small size, or visual tasks of low contrast and large size	500 lx (50 fc)
F	Performance of visual tasks of low contrast and small size	1000 lx (100 fc)
Special visual tasks. Visual performance is of critical importance. These tasks are very specialized, including those with very small or very low contrast critical elements. Recommended illuminance levels should be achieved with supplementary task lighting. Higher recommended levels are often achieved with supplementary task lighting. Higher recommended levels are often achieved by moving the light source closer to the task.		
G	Performance of visual tasks near threshold	3000 to 10,000 lx (300 to 1000 fc)

*Expected accuracy in illuminance calculations should be checked with formulas in the *IESNA Lighting Handbook*. To account for both uncertainty in photometric measurements and uncertainty in space reflections, measured illuminances should be within 10% of the recommended value. It should be noted, however, that the final illuminance may deviate from the recommended values due to the other lighting design criteria.

Source: Reproduced with permission from the *IESNA Lighting Handbook,* 9th ed. (2000).

recommendations. The following are excerpts addressing this adjustment procedure:

1. An illuminance category is initially selected, based either on a general description of the activity involved (Table 11.7) or, if known, on a specific activity in a specific setting. (The extensive tables for task-specific selection are published in the *IESNA Lighting Handbook*, 9th ed. and are not reproduced here.)
2. Following the initial illuminance selection, three adjustment factors are introduced. Age under 40 reduces the lighting requirement, unusual demand for speed or accuracy increases it, and particularly low or high background reflectance (below 30% or above 70%) increases or reduces it, respectively. Adjustment of recommendations should not be automatic. At the higher illuminance recommendations (categories D through G), the designer must become thoroughly familiar with the importance, duration, and visual difficulty of the specific task involved, because the design aim is *task* lighting and not simply general room illumination (see Table 11.5). Having determined appropriate adjustment factors from Tables 11.8 and 11.9, the designer can then establish recommended (target) illuminance values that better reflect project-specific conditions.

A recommended illuminance resulting from this procedure is a "raw" or conventional illuminance, that is, average maintained lux (divide by 10 for approximate fc values). This illuminance is understood to be *on the task* for categories D through G, and *in the room* for categories A through C. Therefore, the lumen method is an appropriate calculation procedure for categories A through C, and a point-by-point method is appropriate for the *task* illuminance related to categories D through G.

For a space with several tasks of varying visual difficulty, the designer is expected to so design the lighting and controls that task requirements are met without overlighting. A uniform layout keyed to the most severe task is visually tedious and energy-wasteful, and is strongly to be discouraged.

The IESNA-recommended illuminance values are *not* applicable to installations where a visual task is not the deciding factor. Such installations include merchandising spaces, displays of all sorts, theatrical and artistic lighting, lighting for mood, lighting for safety, light used as part of an industrial process, and so on. Recommended illuminances for exterior spaces are found in the same group of tables in the IESNA handbook referred to previously.

TABLE 11.8 Suggested Adjustments[a] to General Lighting Illuminance Values, for Illuminance Categories A, B, and C[b]

		Illuminance (lux)		
		Categories		
Average Age of Occupants	**Average Room Surface Reflectance (%)[c]**	**A**	**B**	**C**
Under 40	Over 70	30	50	100
	30–70	40	75	150
	Under 30	40	75	150
40–50	Over 70	40	75	150
	30–70	40	75	150
	Under 30	40	75	150
Over 55	Over 70	40	75	150
	30–70	40	75	150
	Under 30	50	100	200

[a]The values in the first row represent the base recommendations from Table 11.7; values in other rows are suggested illuminance values for various combinations of occupant age and surface reflectance.

[b]Based on IESNA recommendations—but adapted to illuminance recommendations in the *IESNA Lighting Handbook,* 9th ed.

[c]Average weighted surface reflectances, including wall, floor, and ceiling reflectances, if they encompass a large portion of the task area or visual surround. For instance, in an elevator lobby, where the ceiling height is 25 ft (7.6 m), neither the task nor the visual surround encompasses the ceiling, so only the floor and wall reflectances would be considered.

QUALITY OF LIGHTING

11.27 CONSIDERATIONS OF LIGHTING QUALITY

Quality of lighting is a term used to describe all of the factors in a lighting installation not directly connected with quantity of illumination. Certainly it is obvious that if two identical rooms are lighted to the same *average* illuminance, one with a single bare bulb and the other with a luminous ceiling, there is a vast difference in the two lighting systems. This difference is in the *quality* of the lighting, a term that describes the overall scene—that is, the luminances, diffusion, uniformity, and chromaticity of the lighting.

Excessive luminances and/or excessive luminance ratios in the field of vision are commonly referred to as *glare*. The quality of the lighting system must also include the visual comfort of the system, that is, the absence of glare. When the glare is caused by light sources in the field of vision, it is known as *direct glare*. When the glare is caused by reflection of a light source in a viewed surface, it is known as *reflected glare* or *veiling reflection* (see Fig. 11.23). Factors affecting the severity of glare are adaptation level of the eyes, the apprehended size of the glare source, luminance ratios, room size and surface finishes, and size and position of lighting fixtures and windows. Light sources in the far-field and peripheral-vision areas beyond the central 90° cone are less troublesome as glare sources.

11.28 DIRECT (DISCOMFORT) GLARE

The factors involved in producing discomfort glare are the luminance, size, and position of each light source in the vision field plus the adaptation level of the eye. The discomfort of direct glare stems from two facts: first, the eye adapts (rapidly) to the average brightness of the overall visual scene; and second, the eye is attracted to the highest luminance in that scene. (The latter fact is used effectively in merchandising displays.) Thus, if an area of high brightness, such as a window or a lighting fixture, exists in the visual scene and we are looking at an area of lower brightness, such as a work task, three visually disturbing things occur:

1. The eye adapts to a higher luminance level, thus effectively reducing the subjective brightness of the task—or, put more simply, making it harder to see what we are looking at (see Fig. 11.22). This is readily demonstrated by alternately blocking and unblocking a direct glare source with one's hand while trying to perform a moderately difficult visual task and

TABLE 11.9 Suggested Adjustments[a] to Task Lighting Illuminance Values for Illuminance Categories D through F[b]

ILLUMINANCE ON TASK (LUX)					
			Illuminance Categories		
Average of Workers' Ages	**Demand for Speed and/or Accuracy[1, c]**	**Task Background[2] Reflectance (%)**	**D**	**E**	**F**
Under 40	NI	Over 70	300	500	1000
		30–70	300	500	1000
		Under 30	400	750	1500
	I	Over 70	300	500	1000
		30–70	400	750	1500
		Under 30	400	750	1500
	C	Over 70	400	750	1500
		30–70	400	750	1500
		Under 30	400	750	1500
40–55	NI	Over 70	300	500	1000
		30–70	400	750	1500
		Under 30	400	750	1500
	I	Over 70	400	750	1500
		30–70	400	750	1500
		Under 30	400	750	1500
	C	Over 70	400	750	1500
		30–70	400	750	1500
		Under 30	600	1000	2000
Over 55	NI	Over 70	400	750	1500
		30–70	400	750	1500
		Under 30	400	750	1500
	I	Over 70	400	750	1500
		30–70	400	750	1500
		Under 30	600	1000	2000
	C	Over 70	400	750	1500
		30–70	600	1000	2000
		Under 30	600	1000	2000

Notes

1. In determining whether speed and/or accuracy is not important, important, or critical, the following questions need to be answered: What are the time limitations? How important is it to perform the task rapidly? Will errors produce an unsafe condition or product? Will errors reduce productivity and be costly? For example, in reading for leisure there are no time limitations, and it is not important to read rapidly. Errors will not be costly and will not be related to safety; thus, speed and/or accuracy is not important. If, however, prescription notes are to be read by a pharmacist, accuracy is critical because errors could produce an unsafe condition, and time is important for customer relations.

2. The task background is that portion of the task upon which the meaningful visual display is exhibited. For example, on this page the meaningful visual display includes each letter, which combines with other letters to form words and phrases. The display medium, or task background, is the paper, which has a reflectance of approximately 85%.

[a]The values in the first row represent the base recommendations from Table 11.7; values in other rows are suggested illuminance values for various combinations of occupant age, task accuracy/speed, and task background reflectance.

[b]Based on data from the *IESNA Handbook,* 8th ed. (1993)—but adapted to illuminance recommendations in the *IESNA Lighting Handbook,* 9th ed. Category G illuminance values are too broad to permit generalizations.

[c]NI = not important; I = important; C = critical.

noting the immediate improvement in visibility when the glare source is obscured.

2. The eye is drawn simultaneously in two directions: involuntarily to the source of high luminance and volitionally to the object we are looking at. The resultant tension causes considerable visual discomfort.
3. The adaptation level is continuously varying as the eye is drawn to the glare source and away again.

Glare is proportional to a source's luminance and its apprehended solid angle. Therefore, a small, bright source is usually not a problem, whereas a

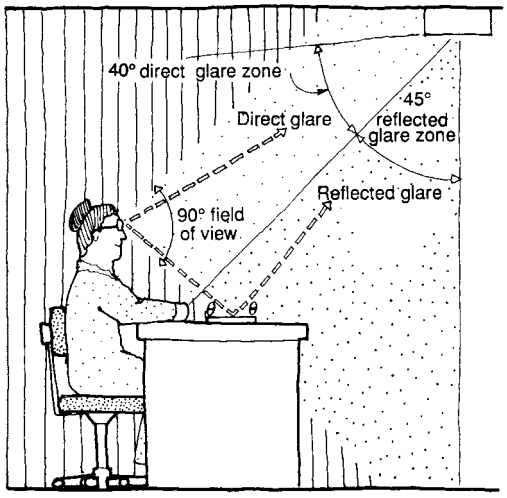


Fig. 11.23 *Glare zones. Direct glare presupposes a head-up position, whereas reflected glare assumes eyes down at a reading angle.*

large, low-brightness source (such as a luminous ceiling) may be. Indeed, a small, bright source adds sparkle to the field of vision, and many observers find it a pleasant addition in a monotonous lighting environment. Although discomfort glare from a scene is cumulative, source luminance is more important than the number of sources. For instance, if the luminance of a number of sources is halved, the reduction in glare is greater than is achieved by reducing the number of such sources by half. Indeed, the latter procedure has little effect on discomfort glare.

The remaining two factors are less self-evident. Glare decreases rapidly as the brightness source is moved away from the direct line of vision; thus, the glare produced depends on the source's position in the field of view. The amount of *discomfort glare* produced by a source is inversely proportional to the background luminance (eye adaptation level). Thus, a ceiling fixture with a luminance of 4000 cd/m^2 at 65° might easily constitute a source of discomfort glare in a space with an eye adaptation level of 150 cd/m^2. The same fixture would not be objectionable in a daylight condition, where the eye adaptation level might be 1500 cd/m^2. A more striking example is that of an automobile's headlights, which at night are so severe a source of glare as to constitute *disabling glare*, whereas in daylight, with its concomitant high eye adaptation level, these lights are very noticeable but not usually disturbing.

Keeping in mind the dependence of direct glare on eye adaptation level, a useful rule of thumb is that the luminance of large sources should not exceed 2500 cd/m^2 and that of small sources should not exceed 7500 cd/m^2. The former is roughly the luminance of blue sky; the latter approximates that of a fluorescent lamp. The terms "large" and "small" depend not only on the actual physical dimensions of the source but also on the distance from the observer. That is, the actual criterion is apprehended size, or subtended visual angle, as shown in Fig. 11.20.

The glare effect of a number of individual glare source contributions in an interior space can be quantified by the criterion called *visual comfort probability* (VCP), which is defined as the percentage of normal-vision observers who will be comfortable in that specific visual environment. The IESNA has established a set of standard conditions for which VCP of sources can be calculated. These include a 1000-lux illuminance, representative room dimensions, fixture height and observer position, and a head-up field of view limited to 53° above and directly forward from the observer (Fig. 11.24).

With these conditions, direct glare will not be a problem if all three of the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The VCP is 70 or more.
2. The ratio of maximum-to-average luminaire luminance does not exceed 5:1 (preferably 3:1) at 45°, 55°, 65°, 75°, and 85° from the nadir, crosswise and lengthwise.
3. Maximum luminaire luminances crosswise and lengthwise do not exceed the following:

Angle Above Nadir (degrees)	Maximum Luminance (cd/m^2)
45	7710
55	5500
65	3860
75	2570
85	1695

A typical set of manufacturer's luminance and VCP data is shown in Fig. 11.25 for a ceiling-mounted fluorescent fixture with 4-40WT12 lamps. Note that all VCP values are considerably above the 70 minimum criterion. If full VCP

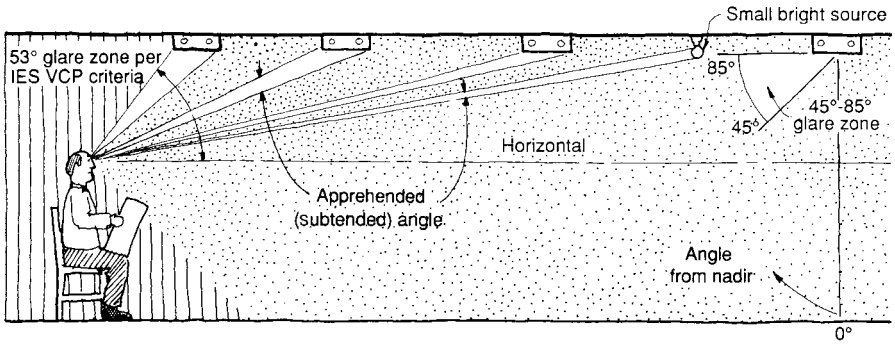


Fig. 11.24 *Determination of direct glare. The glare contribution of each source depends on its size (subtended or apprehended solid angle), luminance, and location in the field of view. Note that the apprehended solid angle of a small source is such that even with high luminance, it is not objectionable. Such sources are normally called sparkle. Glare is much more objectionable with a dark background than with a light one; therefore, light-colored paints on ceilings and upper walls are recommended.*

data of this type are not available, they can be calculated with almost any lighting calculation program, given the luminaire luminance data. Despite the usefulness of the VCP criterion, it is inherently limited by its own standard conditions, which are not easily applied to other situations:

1. In small spaces, VCP has little significance.
2. Tabulated VCP figures are given for the *worst* viewing position in the room. Because VCP varies dramatically with observer position, the VCP values given are always lower than the space's *average* VCP.

In view of these (and other) reservations, most of which tend to make the actual direct glare situation better than the VCP calculation would indicate, it is recommended that layouts giving a VCP somewhat below 70 not be discarded out of hand. Instead, they should be examined carefully and, if possible, several observer positions calculated using one of the many readily available PC-based computer programs. With these as a guide, the designer can usually rearrange and substitute equipment to obtain the desired condition.

See Section 15.4 for a comparison of the direct glare characteristics of lighting fixture diffusers.

11.29 VEILING REFLECTIONS AND REFLECTED GLARE

Although there is no generally accepted convention with respect to nomenclature, many people refer to *reflected glare* when dealing with specular (polished or mirror) surfaces and to *veiling reflections* when considering source reflections in dull or semimatte finish surfaces, which always exhibit some degree of specularity. This discussion uses the terms interchangeably.

(a) Nature of the Problem

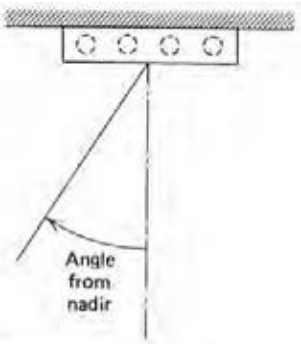
The problem of veiling reflections is much more complex than that of direct glare because it involves both the source *and* the task and is inherent in the act of seeing (Fig. 11.26). Vision is produced by light being reflected from the object seen. Thus, if the object being viewed were replaced by a mirror, we would see the source(s) of light clearly (Fig. 11.26*a*). In commercial spaces there are usually one or more lighting fixtures near the observer that furnish most of the light by which to see. These *principal* sources are the main contributors to reflected glare. Other, more remote fixtures in the room are lesser sources of veiling reflections (Fig. 11.26*b*).

To the extent that the sources can be seen in the vision task, glare exists. It is imperative to an understanding of this problem to appreciate the importance of the reflection characteristic of the object being viewed. If the object were perfectly absorbent—that is, if it had a reflection coefficient of 0%—it would appear completely black, as no light would be reflected into the eye (Fig. 11.26*c*). Conversely, if the object were perfectly specular, like a clean mirror, and no light source were within the geometry of reflection, it too would

4–40-W Lamps
Prismatic Lens Diffuser

Average Luminance Data cd/m²

Vertical Angles	Across Axes	Along Axes
60°	2000	1750
65°	1060	1075
70°	500	560
75°	410	380
80°	480	343
85°	560	420



IES Visual Comfort Probability Data

Room Size W (ft)	Room Size L (ft)	Luminaires Lengthwise, Ceiling Height (in ft) 8.5	10.0	13.0	Luminaires Crosswise, Ceiling Height (in ft) 8.5	10.0	13.0
20 ×	20	80	77	76	79	75	72
	30	80	78	76	79	76	73
	40	82	79	77	79	77	74
	60	80	80	78	79	77	75
30 ×	20	84	80	77	82	78	74
	30	83	80	77	81	79	74
	40	82	80	78	81	79	75
	60	82	80	78	80	79	75
	80	82	80	78	80	78	76

Reflectances:
Wall 50%
Ceiling cavity 80%
Floor cavity 20%
Work plane illumination: 1000 lux

Fig. 11.25 *A typical set of manufacturer's published VCP and luminance data.*

appear black (Fig. 11.26*d*). Thus, if we took a clean mirror out on a moonless night and shined a light on it from over our shoulder, it would be practically invisible because no light would be reflected back into our eyes.

The reader might try this experiment: in an inside space with a single overhead luminaire, try to examine the surface of a very clean, dust-free mirror. You will find that the best angle to hold it is *almost* at the angle at which the light source is seen. This is because the mirror is *almost* completely specular, and it is the slight diffuse reflection near the viewing angle that permits us to see the surface. This means that reflected glare is due to task surface specularity, whereas object definition, that is, the ability to see the task itself, is due to task surface diffuseness. A corollary of this conclusion is that veiling reflections, which are caused by mirroring of a source in the task, are proportional to source luminance and substantially independent of illuminance level. The brighter the source, the more troublesome its reflection.

Glare sources within the geometry of reflected vision are shown in Fig. 11.27, and the effects are shown in Fig. 11.28. Figure 11.27 clearly shows that although large sources are difficult to avoid, small sources can usually be easily avoided by a small change in the source-task-eye geometry, such as by moving the head or tilting the task. Table 11.10 lists a few sample reflectance figures to demonstrate that most materials exhibit both specular and diffuse reflectance. In studying Fig. 11.27, it is important to note that a majority of visual work is done in the zone of 20° to 40° from the vertical, below the eye, with a maximum at the 25° reading angle (Fig. 11.29).

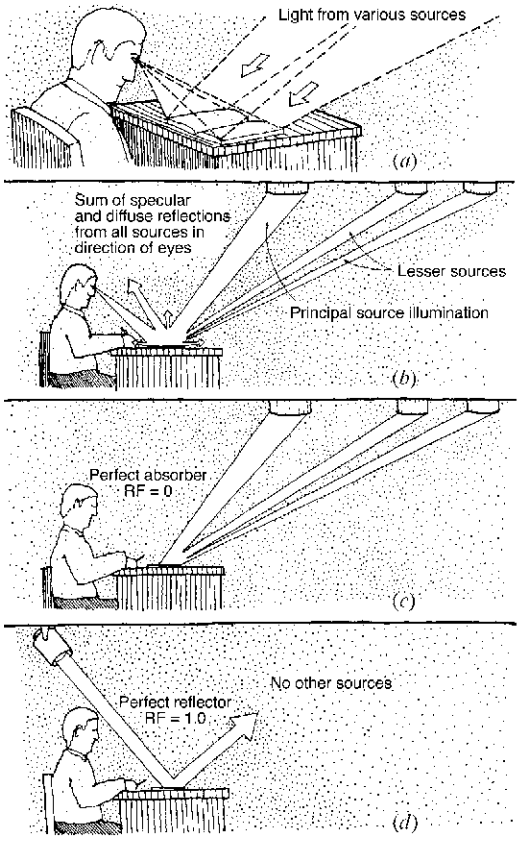


Fig. 11.26 *(a) The nature of the seeing process requires that light from the source(s) be reflected by the task into the eye. (b) The light entering the eye is the sum of all of the reflected light, specular and diffuse, from all sources in the direction of the eye. If the task is specular, all of the sources will be seen reflected in the task. (c) A perfectly absorptive object is jet black because it reflects nothing. (d) A perfectly reflective object positioned as shown is also black because geometrically it cannot reflect light into the eyes.*

(b) Contrast Reduction

The principal effect of the reflection of a light source in a visual object is to reduce contrast between the object and its background, thus reducing visibility. It is as if a bright veil were spread over the object being viewed, which accounts for the term *veiling reflection*. As the angle of the incident light approaches the viewing angle, the specularly reflected component of this light becomes more and more pronounced, and task contrast drops. This is clearly visible in Figs. 11.28 and 11.29. The worst situation occurs when the incident angle equals the viewing angle. When the specular reflectance of the task and background is high, as with the glass screen of a visual display terminal, for instance, an image of the source is superimposed on the object, making viewing impossible (Fig. 11.29). However, even with the highly specular finish of "slick" magazine paper, vision is still possible because of the very high contrast between black ink and white paper, although with much reduced clarity and considerable annoyance.

When considering specular *and* diffuse reflectance, the equation for contrast given in Section 11.19 must be rewritten as

$$C = \frac{(L_{BD} + L_{BS}) - (L_{TD} + L_{TS})}{L_{BD} + L_{BS}} \qquad (11.9)$$

where L_B and L_T are background and task luminances caused by diffuse (D) and specular (S) reflectance; that is, L_{BS} is the background luminance due to its specular reflectance, and so forth. If we were to rework the calculation of contrast of Section 11.19, including specularity, the result would be much different.

EXAMPLE 11.5 Assume an interior space lighted to an average illuminance of 75 fc (750 lux) using bare bulb fluorescent fixtures (luminance = 7000 cd/m^2 [2000 fL]). The task is drafting with India ink on vellum. Reflectances are:

	Specular	Diffuse
Ink	0.021	0.038
Paper	0.018	0.71

Calculate the task contrast without and with reflection of the 2000 fL source on the work.

SOLUTION

1. Without specularity, using Equation 11.6 for diffuse reflection only:

$$C = \frac{R_B - R_T}{R_B} = \frac{0.71 - 0.038}{0.71} = 0.947$$

2. With specularity, using Equation 11.9,

$$C = \frac{(L_{BD} + L_{BS}) - (L_{TD} + L_{TS})}{L_{BD} + L_{BS}}$$

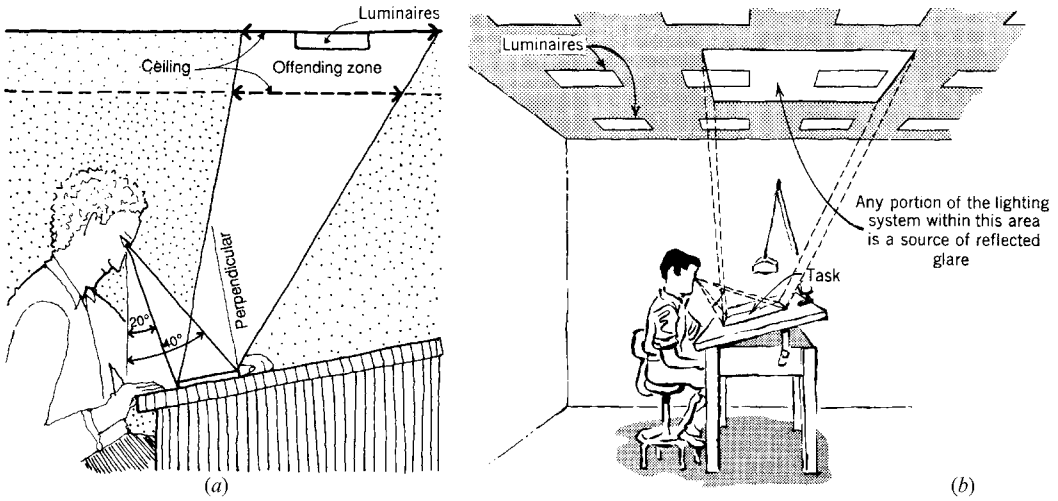


Fig. 11.27 *Geometry of reflected glare. (a) Because normal desktop, head-down viewing angles vary from 20° to 40° from the vertical, the offending zone is the area on the ceiling corresponding to specular reflection between these two angles. Note that the higher the ceiling, the larger this area becomes. (b) In an office situation, the draftsman would see ceiling fixtures in the offending zone reflected in his instruments, parallel straightedge, and work. Note the important fact that the offending zone moves back and becomes smaller as the table tilts up.*

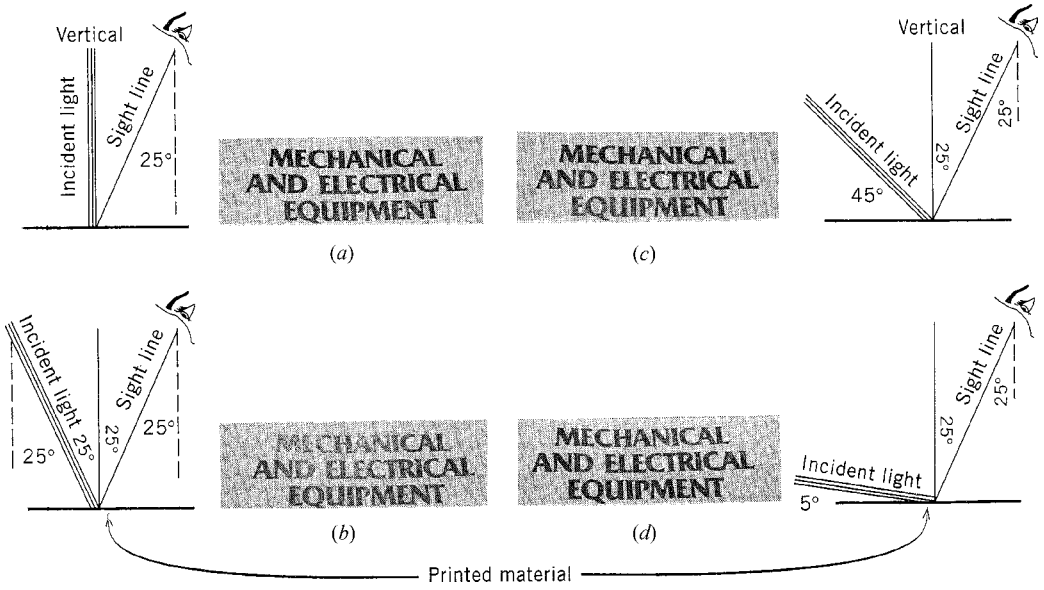


Fig. 11.28 *Note the effect of light in the area of the ceiling that causes reflected glare; contrast is reduced, and the print washes out. The usual viewing angle to a horizontal surface is between 20° and 40° from the vertical; we show 25° because it is the most common viewing angle. With vertical incident light on a diffuse surface (a), such as the pages of a textbook, the print is dark and clear. When the angle of light incidence is equal to the viewing angle (b), we have a mirror reflection situation. Even with diffuse paper, the print is light at best and almost invisible at worst. As the angle of incidence becomes larger (c), reflected glare decreases. When the incident light is at a very low angle (d), there is little reflected glare, but all the print appears lighter. (Photos by B. Stein.)*

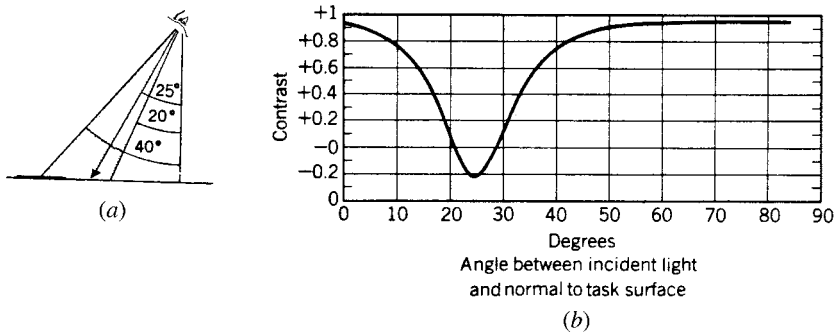


Fig. 11.29 *(a) Normal viewing angle of a task on a horizontal surface ranges from 20° to 40° from the vertical. Most common viewing angle is 25°. (b) Graph showing contrast reduction of a task with a specular background (such as a sheet of glossy paper) as a function of the angle between incident light and the normal to the task surface. Viewing angle is assumed to be 25° from normal. Note that between 22° and 27° the contrast is negative. This indicates that background luminance exceeds that of the task, making the task essentially invisible. What is visible, clearly, is a reflected (mirrored) image of the source.*

where

$$L_{BD} = 75 \text{ fc} \times 0.71 = 53.25$$
$$L_{BS} = 2000 \text{ fL} \times 0.018 = 36.0$$
$$L_{TD} = 75 \text{ fc} \times 0.038 = 2.85$$
$$L_{TS} = 2000 \text{ fL} \times 0.021 = 42.0$$

and

$$C = \frac{(53.25 + 36) - (2.85 + 42)}{53.25 + 36} = 0.497$$

which is just over half of the previous contrast! If the contrast is normalized to the maximum contrast (as is usually done), the contrast reduction R can be expressed as

$$R = 1 - \frac{C}{C_{MAX}} \qquad (11.10)$$

Thus, in this case, contrast reduction would be

$$R = 1 - \frac{0.497}{0.947} = 0.47$$

That is, the contrast reduction would be 47%. ■

TABLE 11.10 Typical Reflectances

	Reflectance	
Material	**Specular**	**Diffuse**
Matte black paper	0.0005	0.04
Matte white paper	0.0030	0.77
Newspaper	0.0065	0.68
Very glossy white photo paper	0.048	0.83
Metallic paper—copper	0.11	0.28
Dull black ink	0.006	0.045
Super gloss black ink	0.039	0.016

Source: Courtesy of the IESNA.

A similar calculation for clear, black typewritten material on good white bond paper yields a contrast reduction from 94% to 77%, or $R = 17\%$. This 77% figure simply serves to emphasize the fact that with high task to background contrast, effective seeing is possible almost regardless of the lighting condition. However, this most emphatically does not relieve the lighting designer of the responsibility to provide a comfortable and efficient lighting environment in which pronounced veiling reflections do not exist. In general, any contrast reduction of more than 15% is undesirable.

Because both specular and diffuse reflectances frequently vary with the angle of view, and exact figures are rarely available, accurate calculation is difficult. If a lighting system exists or a mock-up can be made, measurements of contrast reduction can be made accurately with a contrast/luminance meter of the type shown in Fig. 11.30. A standard contrast device that is designed to correspond to a normal office task (black typeface and white paper background) is positioned on the work surface and exposed to the ambient illumination. The task contrast is then measured at the same angle at which it would normally be viewed. Contrast reduction is automatically calculated and displayed.

A contrast reduction map of the work surface can thus easily be made (Fig. 11.30*c*). Thereafter, changes can be made in the position of the work, viewer, or illumination sources to minimize contrast reduction. Note the pronounced effect of simply shifting the source out of the ceiling glare

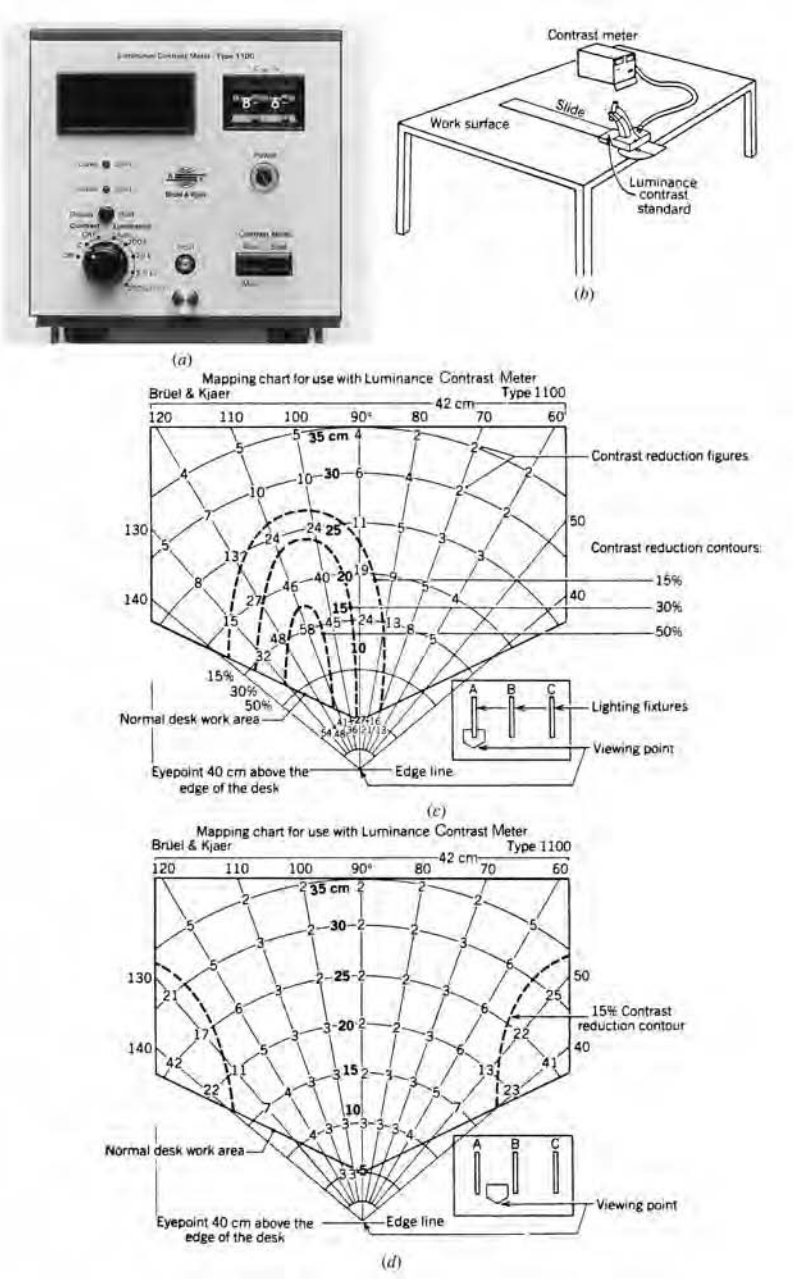


Fig. 11.30 *(a) This unit is a high-precision electronic digital instrument that measures luminance, luminance ratio, contrast, and contrast reduction. Use of the unit is shown in (b), (c), and (d). Luminance measurement range is 0 to 200,000 cd/m^2 (56,400 fL) at high accuracy. (b) The meter measures contrast reduction at a specific viewing angle. (c) Note that with a lighting fixture directly in the offending zone—that is, above and in front of the viewer—a severe loss of contrast occurs over much of the work surface. (d) By shifting the relative position of the viewer and the source so that no source exists in the offending zone, contrast reduction is held to 3% to 4% over most of the work surface. Contrast reduction in the normal work area should not exceed 15%. (Courtesy of Brüel & Kjær.)*

source zone (offending zone) (Figs. 11.30*d* and 11.27). Contrast reduction in the primary work area should not exceed 15% for good task visibility with specular work items such as glossy papers.

11.30 EQUIVALENT SPHERICAL ILLUMINATION AND RELATIVE VISUAL PERFORMANCE

(a) Equivalent Spherical Illumination

Another way of approaching the problem of contrast reduction is to define a reference lighting system that is effectively free of veiling reflections and then relate actual lighting systems to it with a figure of merit. Conversely, one can measure the effectiveness of a given lighting system in terms of the equivalent glare-free system. Both of these ideas, which are essentially the same, are the basis of the concept of *equivalent spherical illumination* (ESI).

In order to achieve a lighting system almost free of reflected glare, it is necessary to construct an enclosed volume whose surfaces are uniformly diffusely reflective and whose primary source is obscured to the maximum extent possible. As illustrated (Fig. 11.31), the integrating sphere is such a device. Light is introduced from the outside, split by a deflector, and evenly distributed throughout the sphere by the multiple reflections from the white-painted walls. The result is an evenly illuminated volume. When a task is introduced, the illumination falling on it is *entirely* uniform; that is, there are no high-luminance sources reflected in it. It is therefore termed *spherically* illuminated. (Note the parallel to diffuse sky illumination.) The extent to which any other illumination system can duplicate this glare-free environment is that system's *equivalent* spherical illumination (ESI), representing the portion of its total illumination that is spherical—that is, diffuse and glare-free. ESI is determined by comparing contrast rendition in the spherical and test systems.

A study of school lighting (Fig. 11.32) gave the illustrated results for four viewing positions in a classroom lighted with ceiling-mounted continuous rows of 2-ft × 4-ft, 4-lamp, 40-W fluorescent fixtures with lens-type wraparound diffusers on 10-ft centers. Carefully note that:

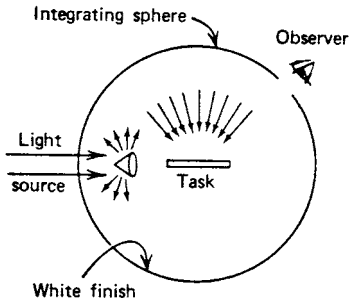
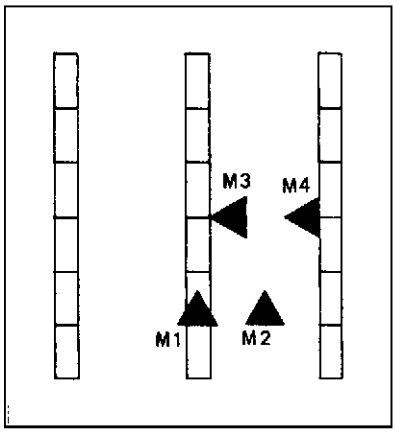


Fig. 11.31 *Spherical illumination is produced by illuminating an object by diffuse reflection from the inside walls of an integrating sphere. The light source and observer are normally external.*

1. ESI depends entirely on the viewing position and viewing angle, other factors in the space being equal.
2. In an ostensibly very well lighted (215 fc) position (M1), the glare-free illuminance is only 28 fc! This does not mean that visual work in this position is impossible. It does mean, emphatically, that in position M1, a pronounced veiling reflection exists on all specular objects. (Because of the size, orientation, and location of the glare source, this reflected glare is difficult to avoid.) It further means that a large amount of energy is being utilized (effectively wasted) to produce essentially negative results.

The results could have been anticipated, at least qualitatively, by examination of the observer positions vis-à-vis the layout. Positions M1 and M3 have bright sources in the offending zone—M1 more so than M3—as is borne out by the results. M2 is an excellent position in that it receives light contributions from the two sides, its illuminance value being lower than the others due to wide row spacing. M4 is ideally placed; no glare sources are in the offending zone and a row of fixtures is positioned *behind* it, which makes it geometrically impossible to act as a glare source. The ESI analysis gives quantitative expression to our qualitative judgment and, as such, is a valuable design tool. Note particularly that the ESI results shown in Fig. 11.32 clearly correspond to the results of a similar test made with the contrast meter, as shown in the charts of Fig. 11.30.



		Observer Position			
		M1	*M2*	*M3*	*M4*
TI	2L	108	92	125	118
	4L	215	185	250	235
CRF	2L	.75	1.00	.82	1.01
	4L	.76	1.00	.83	1.03
ESI	2L	17.8	91.9	31.5	127.8
	4L	28.4	185.3	58.1	308.3

TI–Task illumination
2L–2 lamps (inside pair)
4L–4 lamps
CRF–Contrast Rendition Factors

Fig. 11.32 *A test classroom illuminated by three widely spaced rows of four-lamp fixtures with lens-type wraparound diffusers. Observer positions are shown by arrows. The row of fixtures in front of position M4 is too far forward to be in the offending zone. (From Sampson, 1970.)*

As with VCP criteria for direct glare, so with ESI; there are ameliorating factors that generally make a given lighting system better than these criteria figures would indicate. Some of these factors have already been mentioned but bear repetition.

1. ESI is critically dependent on observer position and viewing angle. Although position is generally fixed by chair location, observers can and do change their viewing angle and head aspect to correct for glare situations.
2. The nature of the task (i.e., its specularity) is assumed to be fixed and unique. In some situations the task nature varies, and thus also the contrast. When tasks are constant, severe veiling reflections frequently lead to measures being taken that improve the task, the lighting, or both.
3. The lighting distribution characteristic of the fixture involved is a critical factor in glare production. The characteristic of a wraparound lens diffuser is such (see Section 11.31c[4]), and Section 15.2) that considerable light falls in the glare zone. Other diffuser characteristics yield different results.

The concept and use of ESI have come under considerable criticism in the professional lighting literature because ESI addresses contrast, which is not identical with visibility; it requires recalculation for even the small geometry changes that can change contrast dramatically; it tracks raw footcandles; and it is based on extrapolation from threshold conditions, the efficacy of which has been called into doubt. These published reservations and criticisms of ESI have disturbed the lighting profession sufficiently to result in wide abandonment of its use and its disappearance from most modern computer lighting programs.

The ESI procedure, however, does exactly what it is designed to do: to point out locations of poor lighting geometry immediately and quantitatively, and to flag luminaires with unsuitable distribution characteristics for the proposed use. That is, as stated in the 1981 *IES Lighting Handbook*, it is "used as a tool in determining the effectiveness of controlling veiling reflections and as part of the evaluation of lighting systems."

(b) Relative Visual Performance

In more recent years, a metric called *relative visual performance* (RVP) has appeared in the literature and has gained considerable acceptance. It tests (also via computer calculation) the effectiveness (i.e., the relative [to perfection] visual performance of a given visual environment) of task accomplishment in regard to speed and accuracy. Like ESI, it is based on luminance and contrast, but unlike

ESI, it judges the relative performance of a task rather than simply contrast reduction. It seems to ignore the discomfort of veiling reflections if the task can be performed efficiently. The author has computed RVP for a number of common lighting layouts with various types of lighting fixtures. The results give uniformly high values for RVP varying between 0.95 and 0.99, which to our mind makes effective judgment of glare situations very difficult. The reader is encouraged to use the available lighting programs to calculate ESI and RVP for proposed lighting layouts and, where possible, to compare the results with completed construction.

11.31 CONTROL OF REFLECTED GLARE

Because the causes of veiling reflections are well understood, it would seem that a solution to the problem should long since have been developed. Unfortunately, this is not the case. Although there is no known lighting method or material that completely eliminates veiling reflections, there are a number of techniques that minimize contrast loss due to veiling reflections while maintaining adequate illumination. These are:

- Physical arrangement of sources, task, and observer so that reflected glare is minimal (see Section 11.31a).
- Adjusting brightness (eye adaptation level) so that objectionable brightness is minimized (see Section 11.31b).
- Design of the light source so that it causes minimal reflected glare (see Section 11.31c).
- Changing the task quality (see Section 11.31d).

(a) Physical Arrangement of System Elements

Arrange the lighting geometry to avoid sources of high luminance at reflection angles when dealing with specular tasks. This is often difficult to accomplish in modern offices, which frequently have both horizontal and vertical work surfaces, the latter being the specular screen surface of a visual display terminal (VDT). The latter problem is so widespread that today it effectively governs the design of office lighting. As should be clear from Figs. 11.30 and 11.32 and the related discussion, in a space using multiple sources, particularly in continuous rows, placing the work between rows with the line of sight parallel to the long axis of the

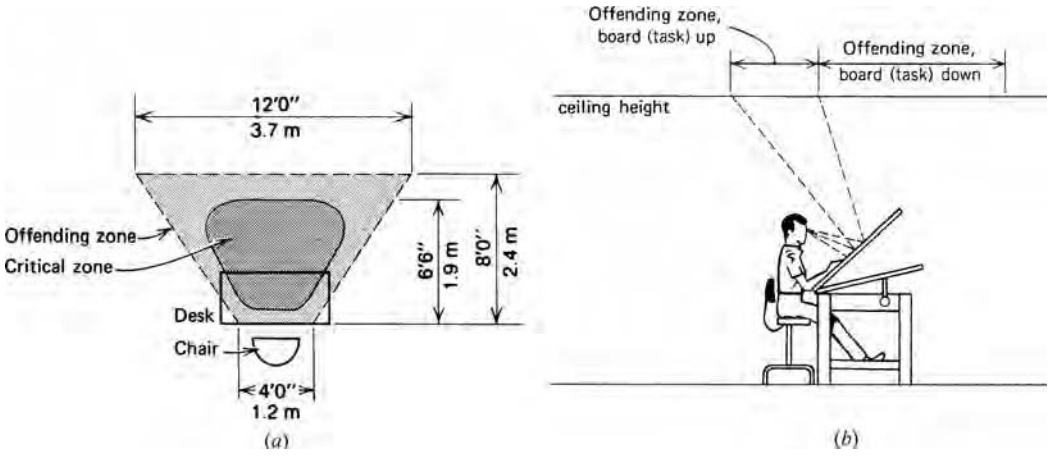


Fig. 11.33 *(a) If luminaires are kept out of the trapezoidal offending zone, contrast will be excellent. If the bulk of one or more luminaires projects into this zone, and in particular into the critical zone, contrast will drop sharply. The dimensions shown are for a flat desk 3 ft × 5 ft (0.91 m × 1.5 m) and a 9-ft (2.7-m) ceiling height. (b) The dependence of the glare zone on table tilt is illustrated. The offending zone becomes smaller as the table is raised, so that with a table near the vertical position, glare is all but eliminated. (a from Ross and Baruzzini, Inc., 1975.)*

units is an effective technique (see Fig. 11.32, position M2). Position M4 is dangerous in that the center row can be a source of reflections. In this case it is not, due to the 10-ft row spacing. Note that the offending zone for horizontal tasks depends on the tilt of the desk. Thus, for a horizontal desk, the offending zone is forward of the desk, as in Fig. 11.33*a*; with an elevated table, the ceiling glare source zone may well be behind the source, as in Fig. 11.33*b*.

All of the geometric solutions mentioned presuppose a detailed, fixed furniture layout, a situation that obtains in many but certainly not all cases. In the absence of such data, two alternatives are possible: a uniform layout with furniture adjusted to it, or vice versa. In practice, a combination of both is the most practical approach. Because low watts per square foot budgets have made ducted lighting fixture heat removal systems (air troffers) much less prevalent, fixtures are easily shifted. This mobility is further enhanced by the extreme flexibility of lighting fixtures fed from ceiling plug-in raceways. Figure 11.34 shows such a rearrangement, which results in saving five fixtures, a load reduction of 800 W, and an *improvement* in visibility.

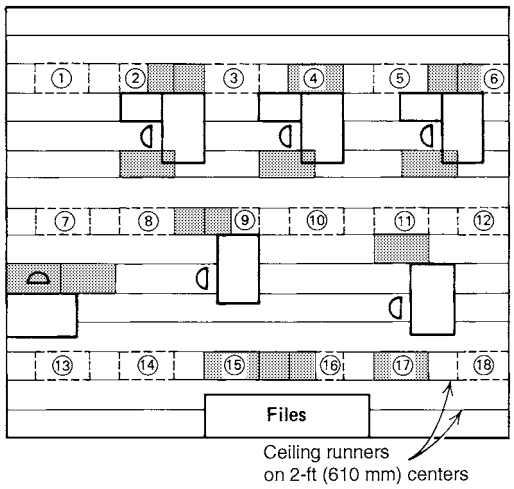


Fig. 11.34 *The original uniform fixture layout utilized three rows of six 2 × 4 ft (0.6 × 1.2 m), four-lamp fixtures, giving a total load of 2880 W, a load density of 2.6 W/ft² (28 W/m²), and a uniform illumination level of approximately 90 (raw) fc (900 lux). The original layout is shown dotted and numbered. The rearranged layout uses 13 fixtures (shown shaded) for a total 2080 W, a load density of 1.9 W/ft² (20.5 W/m²), and more than 100 ESI fc (1000 lux) on each work surface. In addition, five fixtures are saved. Note: This level of illuminance is justified only for difficult visual tasks.*

(b) Control of Area Brightness and Eye Adaptation Level

As discussed in Section 11.19, loss of contrast can be compensated for (and glare reduced) by increased overall nonglare illumination. In so doing, we are simply making the task brighter to override the detrimental veiling reflection. The problem with this technique, however, is that a large increase in illuminance is required to overcome the glare. This increase can, in many instances, be most practically accomplished not by increasing overall room illumination, with the associated extremely high energy consumption, but by adding a supplementary task-lighting source so arranged as to be free of reflected glare. By making this supplementary source's position adjustable (as in Fig. 11.27*b*), we accomplish three things:

1. Veiling reflection is overcome.
2. The high level of illumination needed for exacting tasks is provided with minimum energy expenditure.
3. The observer is granted complete control, with resultant optimum lamp placement plus psychological satisfaction that generally prevents worker complaint. (The optimum position is generally to the left and slightly forward of the task.)

We can demonstrate the effectiveness of a supplemental desk lamp by returning to Example 11.5.

EXAMPLE 11.6 Recalculate the contrast reduction of the ink-on-vellum visual task of Example 11.5, assuming that a desk lamp raises the illuminance to 200 fc (2000 lux) and is positioned so as to be glare-free. (Note: An adjustable lamp with 2 at 15-W fluorescent tubes produces approximately that luminance on the desk.)

SOLUTION

Contrast from Equation 11.9:

$$C = \frac{(L_{BD} + L_{BS}) - (L_{TD} + L_{TS})}{L_{BD} + L_{BS}}$$

where

$$L_{BD} = 200 \text{ fc} \times 0.71 = 142$$
$$L_{BS} = 2000 \text{ fL} \times 0.018 = 36$$

$$L_{TD} = 200 \text{ fc} \times 0.038 = 7.6$$
$$L_{TS} = 2000 \text{ fL} \times 0.021 = 42$$

and

$$C = \frac{(142+36)-(7.6+42)}{142+36} = 0.72$$

With this contrast (0.72), the contrast reduction from the original no-glare situation has been improved from the original 47% reduction (0.947 to 0.497) to 24% reduction (0.947 to 0.72). However, because even a contrast reduction of 24% is undesirable, a change in task-source geometry or a change in source luminance would be required, assuming that the task itself must remain unchanged. ■

(c) Control of Source Characteristics

The reflected luminance that causes loss of contrast is proportional to the luminaire's luminance at a given viewing angle, and therefore may be reduced by reducing luminaire luminance at that angle. This can be accomplished in four ways:

Dimming or switching lamps (see number 1 following)

Using luminaires with lower overall luminance (see number 2 following)

Using the luminaire as a primary source to illuminate a large, low-brightness secondary source (see number 3 following)

Reduce the luminaire luminance *only at the offending angles* (see number 4 following)

1. Reducing the total output of a fixture also reduces its output in the critical portion of the ceiling glare zone and can actually *increase* the ESI illuminance (i.e., improve task contrast).
2. In lieu of using a few small high-output sources, utilize larger-area, low-output sources (Fig. 11.35). This has the effect of reducing the source luminance in the ceiling glare zone while increasing the illumination contribution from outside the glare zone, resulting in better contrast for the same or lower illuminance level (lux). The disadvantage of this technique is an increased lighting fixture cost.
3. To overcome the economic disadvantage of multiple low-output, low-luminance sources, the ceiling can be used as a secondary source illuminated from high-output indirect or semi-indirect fixtures. These sources, which can be fluorescent or HID (e.g., metal–halide), have the advantage of high efficiency. The space's ceiling height must be sufficient to permit suspending the unit while avoiding "hot spots" on the ceiling. The minimum suspension length depends on the luminaire characteristics and is normally provided by the manufacturer. To ensure high efficiency, the ceiling should be painted with a high-reflectivity matte white paint and kept clean. Results obtained from a semi-indirect installation using 1500-mA, very-high-output lamps are shown in Fig. 11.36.
4. Because most horizontal task vision takes place between 20° and 40° from the vertical

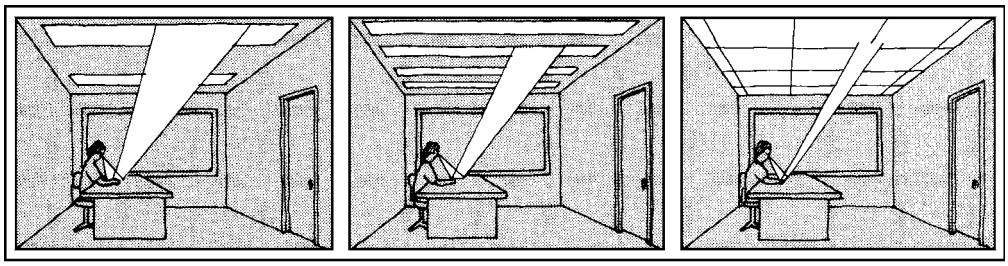


Fig. 11.35 *A concentration of light in the glare zone (a) produces the largest amount of reflected glare. As the number of light sources is increased (b) in the glare zone and luminance is decreased, reflected glare is decreased. The least glare is from an all-luminous ceiling, which also has the lowest luminance (c).*

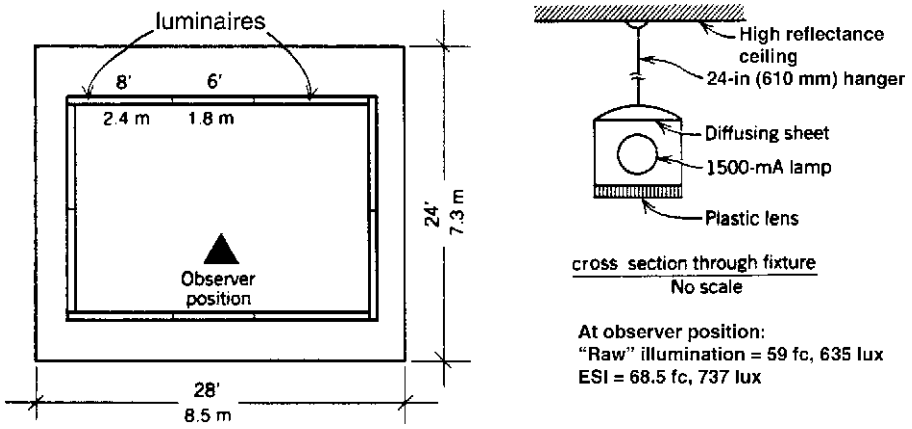


Fig. 11.36 *With a high-reflectance diffuse finish ceiling, this semi-direct perimeter lighting installation yields a higher ESI illuminance than raw illuminance at the viewing location illustrated, indicating excellent contrast rendering. The plastic lens at the bottom of the fixture serves to provide perceived light source luminance and to avoid an impression of gloominess, despite the satisfactory overall luminance level. (From Sampson, 1970.)*

(see Figs. 11.27 and 11.30), any fixture that emits little or no light below 40° from the horizontal *cannot* produce veiling reflection, regardless of its position in the field of view (Fig. 11.37). As a result, diffuser manufacturers produce prismatic diffusers the output of which is diminished below 30° and above 60° in order to minimize both reflected and direct glare. Due to the characteristic shape of the distribution curve, they are known industry-wide as *batwing* diffusers. For observers positioned so that their sight lines are parallel to the longitudinal axis of the ceiling fixtures, lenses with linear (side-to-side) batwing characteristics perform well. If the observing position varies in aspect with respect to the fixture, a radial batwing curve (in all directions) is required. Note carefully that these diffusers have only limited usefulness in reducing reflected glare in specular vertical surfaces (VDT screens). All types of diffusers and their characteristics are discussed in Section 15.4.

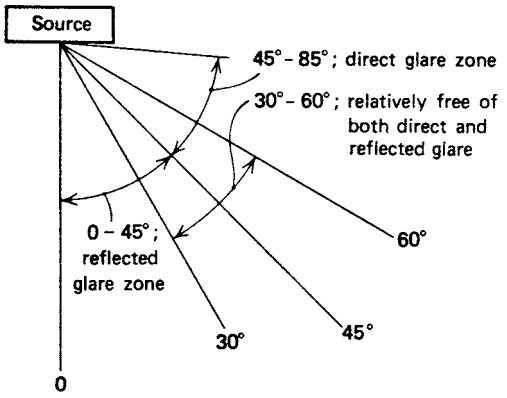


Fig. 11.37 *Glare zones are 0° to 45° and 45° to 85° for reflected and direct glare, respectively. Therefore, a diffuser that emphasizes the 30° to 60° zone will be least objectionable on both counts.*

(d) Changing the Task Quality

At this point, it should be clear that reducing the task specularity is at least as effective a means of reducing veiling reflections as changing the lighting system characteristics, if not more so. It is therefore recommended that task contrast and specularity be actively considered and recommendations made in a framework of energy- and cost-effectiveness. Thus, to produce adequate visibility it is often cheaper and always more energy economical to upgrade the task (in the visibility sense) than to change the lighting system.

11.32 LUMINANCE RATIOS

As explained previously, other factors being equal, visual performance increases with contrast—that is, with the difference in luminance between the object being viewed and its immediate surroundings. Conversely, however, the difference between the average luminance of the visual field (task) and the remainder of the field of vision should be low to avoid the discomfort of large, rapid changes in eye adaptation level. Restated, *contrast is desirable in the object of view but undesirable in the wider surrounding field of view*.

Providing reflectances of 50%, 30%, and 80% for walls, floor, and ceiling, respectively, and 35% for furniture, establishes a fairly high eye adaptation level so that direct glare (which results from excessive luminances in the field of view) is minimized. Recommendations for maximum luminance ratios to achieve a *comfortable* environment are presented in Table 11.11. Effective visual performance is entirely possible in environments with much higher ratios. They are simply not as visually comfortable and may be fatiguing.

To achieve the recommended luminance ratios, it is obviously necessary to carefully control the reflectances of the major surfaces in a room. The reflectance figures given are averages for work-type commercial and educational spaces. The marked difference between a background with proper reflectance and one with excessive brightness ratios caused by the low surrounding reflectances is shown in Fig. 11.38.

TABLE 11.11 Recommended Maximum Luminance Ratios[a]

Note: To achieve a comfortable brightness balance, it is desirable to limit luminance ratios between areas of appreciable size as seen from normal viewing positions as follows:	
1 to one-third	Between task and adjacent surroundings
1 to one-tenth	Between task and more remote darker surfaces
1 to 10	Between task and more remote lighter surfaces
20 to 1	Between luminaires (or fenestration) and surfaces adjacent to them
40 to 1	Anywhere within the normal field of view

[a]These ratios are recommended as maximums; reductions are generally beneficial.

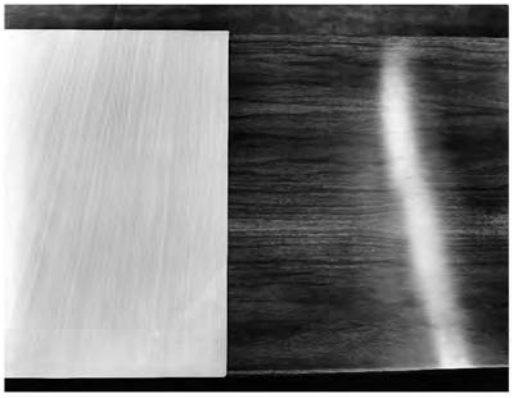


Fig. 11.38 *The reflected glare from luminaires disappears when a piece of light, diffuse linoleum is placed over the dark, polished desktop. Light-colored desktops with 35% to 50% reflectance result in task-to-background ratios within the 3:1 recommended range. Before the linoleum was placed, a reflection similar to the one seen on the right also existed on the left of the desk due to another luminaire. (Courtesy of IESNA.)*

11.33 PATTERNS OF LUMINANCE: SUBJECTIVE REACTIONS TO LIGHTING

In the list of characteristics in Section 11.16, we included among the secondary factors in illumination *patterns of luminance*—that is, the patterns of light and shadow in a space resulting from the illumination. Thus, a single source may produce sharp shadows, whereas a luminous ceiling or a completely indirect illumination system produces almost completely diffuse light. *Diffusion* is the degree to which light is shadowless and is therefore a function of the number of directions from which light impinges on a particular point and their relative intensities.

Perfect diffusion, rarely obtainable (or desirable), would have equal intensities of light impinging from all directions, therefore yielding no shadows. The only naturally occurring example of perfectly diffuse lighting is a daytime fog, which we know to be extremely disturbing to the eye, demonstrating that some directivity is desirable. Diffusion can be judged by the depth and sharpness of shadows. A room with well-diffused illumination



Fig. 11.39 *Totally diffuse lighting (a) destroys texture, whereas a combination of diffuse and directional lighting (b) produces the required modeling shadows. (Courtesy of Holophane.)*

resulting from multiple sources and high room surface reflectances yields soft multiple shadows that do not obscure the visual task. Because purely diffuse lighting is monotonous and not entirely conducive to extended periods of work effectiveness, some directional lighting is often introduced as an adjunct to diffuse general lighting, to lend interest by producing shadows and brightness variations. Where texture must be examined or surface imperfections detected by grazing angle reflections, highly directional lighting is required. Indeed, as seen in Fig. 11.39, directional light is what creates shape and is precisely the characteristic best used to influence architectural space and form.

Sections 13.10 through 13.15, which deal with systems of lighting, illustrate a few of the light/dark patterns produced by different lighting arrangements. The combinations of uplighting and downlighting are legion; each produces its own shadows and modeling, and each has a quality of its own. It is very much in the interest of the lighting designer to be familiar with these effects so that he or she can mentally visualize them as the design progresses. Indeed, it would be well for a designer to prepare a reference sketchbook of such shadow diagrams. It is these patterns of light and darkness that give the ambience and the subjective reactions of sociability/isolation, clarity/fuzziness, spaciousness/crampedness, simplicity/clutter, formality/informality, boredom/excitement, definition/shapelessness, and so on. Indeed, many lighting designers *begin* a lighting design by sketching pictorially the area to be lighted, showing the patterns of brightness and shadow desired to achieve their objective. This technique is obviously most useful in nonoffice areas such as lobbies, waiting areas, all types of recreational spaces, restaurants, merchandising spaces, and so on. In office areas the technique can also be applied to provide the points of visual interest referred to in our discussion.

Color has a great deal to do with subjective reactions and is discussed separately. The subject of psychological reactions to the lighting environment is extensive and complex, and can be touched on here only to the extent of mentioning a few of the salient lighting techniques and their usual subjective responses.

In addition to modeling and texture accent, small, high-brightness sources, usually called *sparkle*, create points of interest and visual excitement. Lighting installations generally yield a sense of vividness or activity proportional to the level of illumination. This is not the case with very diffuse lighted areas, which, even at high illuminance levels, are tedious. This is particularly noticeable in large, luminous ceiling installations that are especially oppressive when the ceiling is low. Small,

exposed incandescent lamps, a brightly lighted, rough-textured wall, and pendant fixtures with pierced reflectors are some of the techniques used to create visual interest.

Visual attention can be drawn by high brightness. This well-known fact is used constantly in displaying merchandise. Note the following usual reactions:

- A 3:1 luminance ratio between object and surround will be noticed, but usually will not affect behavior or draw attention.
- A 10:1 luminance ratio will attract attention and, if interesting, hold it.
- A 50:1 luminance ratio or higher will highlight the object thus illuminated, practically to the exclusion of all else in the field of view.

Because areas of high luminance draw the eye's attention, all of the individual brightness sources in the field of view produce an overall impression. If there is some form or order or pattern to them (as a pattern of lighting fixtures), then the overall impression is not disturbing—it can be thought of as visually harmonious. If, however, they are in disarray, they produce a discordancy in the eye precisely as noise produces discordancy in the ear. This visual "noise" is frequently referred to as *visual clutter* and can be very disturbing. The designer is well advised to keep this important fact in mind when arranging light sources that are the primary sources of luminance in an enclosed space. Aspects of fixture patterning are shown in Section 13.16.

Other subjective reactions to lighting on which there is wide consensus are:

1. Bright walls (about 25% of the horizontal light level) increase the impression of spaciousness. Conversely, dark walls diminish a space. As a corollary, high fixture luminance attracts the eye away from the walls and diminishes spaciousness.
2. Worker-adjustable task lights increase the feeling of control and therefore comfort.
3. Downlights (and color highlights) increase feelings of relaxation and comfort.
4. Hidden-source indirect lighting and very-low-brightness lighting fixtures cause discomfort because of the inability to locate the source of light.

FUNDAMENTALS OF COLOR

The subject of color is vast. Here we consider only a few aspects of color that it is imperative that the lighting designer understand. Furthermore, because it is difficult to discuss color without actually using it, the coverage is brief.

11.34 COLOR TEMPERATURE

A light source is often designated with a *color temperature*, such as 3400 K for halogen lamps, 4200 K for certain fluorescent tubes, and so on. This nomenclature derives from the fact that when a light-absorbing body (called a *blackbody*) is heated, it first glows deep red, then cherry red, then orange, until it finally becomes blue-white hot. The color of the light radiated is thus related to its temperature. Therefore, by developing a blackbody color temperature scale, we can compare the color of a light source to this scale and assign to it a *color temperature*—that is, the temperature to which a blackbody must be heated to radiate a light similar in color to the color of the source in question. Temperature is measured in Kelvin, which is a scale that has its zero point at −460°F. Figure 11.40 shows the assigned color temperature of some common light sources.

Strictly speaking, a color temperature can be assigned only to a light source that produces light by heating, such as the incandescent lamp. Other sources, such as fluorescent lamps, produce light by processes that are detailed in Chapter 12. Such sources are assigned a *correlated color temperature* (CCT), which is the temperature of a blackbody whose chromaticity most nearly matches that of the light source. For such sources there is *no relation whatever* between their operating temperature and the color of the light produced.

Any nonspectral color illuminant is composed of two or more component color illuminants. When such a composite light—for example, white—falls on a surface other than black or white, selective absorption occurs. The component colors are absorbed in different proportions so that the light reflected or transmitted is composed of a new combination of the same colors that impinged on the

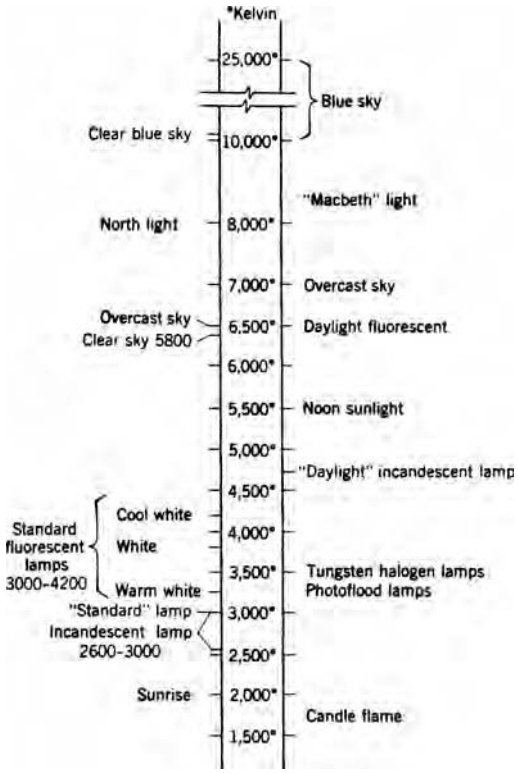


Fig. 11.40 *Approximate color temperatures of common illuminants.*

surface. Thus, a white light reflected from a red wall acquires a red tint because the component colors of the white light other than red were absorbed in greater proportion than the red. When reflected, the red light takes prominence, thus giving the reflected light a red tint. This is illustrated in Fig. 11.41*a*. Similarly, a white light passed through a piece of red glass emerges as a reddish light because the other components are absorbed in much greater proportions than the red. This well-known phenomenon is illustrated in Fig. 11.41*b*.

It is this phenomenon that allows us to see color at all; the individual object pigmentation absorbs other colors of light and reflects or transmits to the eye only its own hue in greater concentration than in the incident light.

11.35 OBJECT COLOR

The color of the illuminant (light) and, correspondingly, the coloration of the objects within a space constitute an important facet of the lighting quality. The two factors, however, must not be considered separately because by definition the color of an object is its ability to modify the color of light incident on it by selective absorption. The color reflected or transmitted is apprehended by the eye as the color of the object. An object is technically said to be "colorless" (not transparent) when it does not exhibit selective absorption, reflecting and absorbing the various components of the incident light nonselectively. Thus, white, black, and all shades of gray are colorless, neutral, achromatic, or, more precisely, lacking in hue.

Hue is defined as that attribute by which we recognize and therefore describe colors as red, yellow, green, blue, and so on. Just as it is possible to form a series from white to black with the intermediate grays, it is possible to do the same with a hue.

The difference between the resultant colors of the same hue so arranged is called *brilliance* or *value*. White is the most brilliant of the neutral colors and black the least; pink is a more brilliant red hue than ruby; and golden yellow is a more brilliant (lighter) yellow hue than raw umber.

Colors of the same hue and brilliance may still differ from each other in *saturation*, which is an indication of the vividness of hue or the difference of the color from gray. Thus, pure gray (black plus white) has no hue; as we add color, we change the saturation without changing the brilliance. The three characteristics, then, that define a particular coloration are *hue*, *brilliance*, and *saturation*. Using these terms, we may define "bay" as a color red–yellow in hue, of low brilliance and low saturation, whereas carmine is a color red in hue, of low brilliance and very high saturation.

Various systems of color classification have been devised, including the ISCC-NBS (Inter-Society Color Council—National Bureau of Standards) color system, the Munsell Color System, the Ostwald Color System, and the CIE Chromaticity Diagram. In the well-known and widely used Munsell Color System (Fig. 11.42), brilliance is referred to as *value* and saturation as *chroma*; thus, a color is defined by hue, value, and chroma. The brilliance (value) of a pigment or coloration is related to its reflectance to white light. The higher the brilliance or value, the higher the reflectance, as might be expected when one considers that white

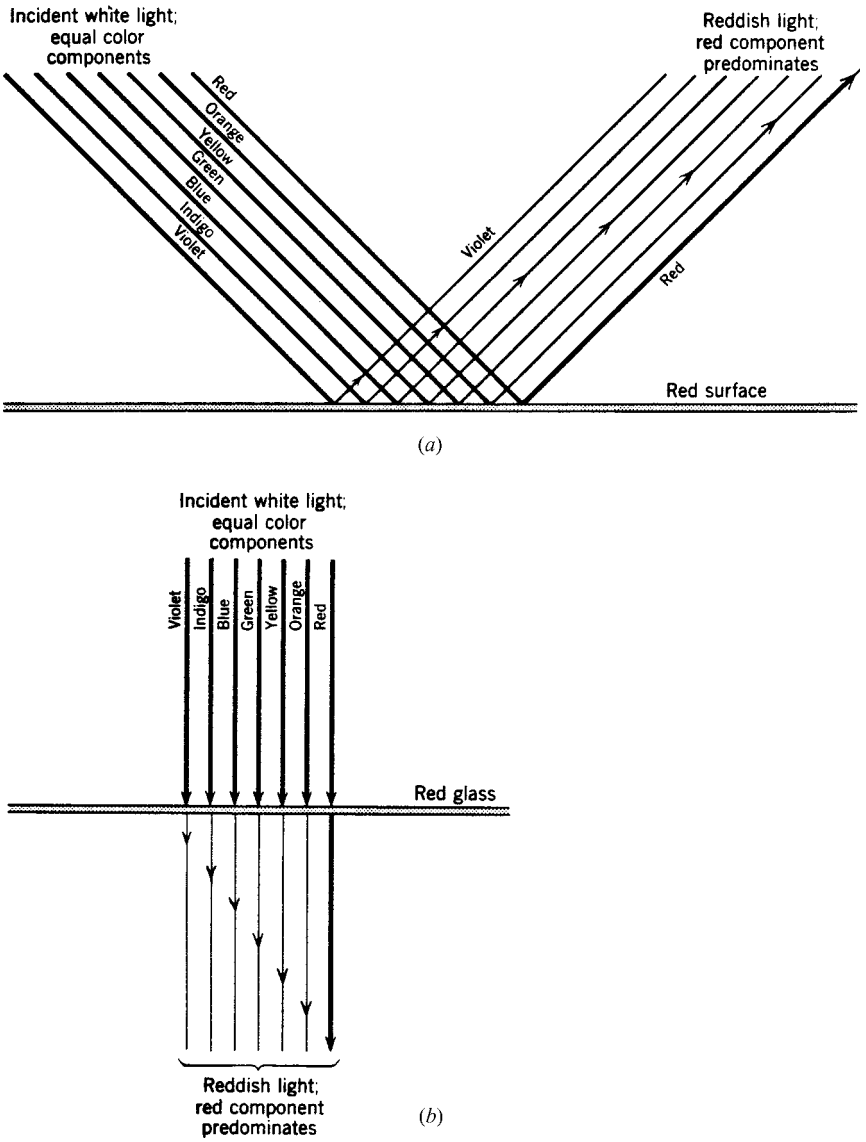


Fig. 11.41 *Selective absorption of materials relative to (a) reflected light and (b) transmitted light.*

and black are the poles of brilliance. Chroma or saturation may be thought of as either the difference from gray or the purity of the color. Spectral colors have 100% purity and therefore maximum chroma.

When white is added to a pigment, it produces a *tint*; adding black produces a *shade*. When pigments are mixed to produce a particular color, the color is created by a subtractive process. That is, each pigment absorbs certain proportions of full-spectrum white light; when mixed, the absorptions combine to subtract (absorb) various colors of the white spectra and leave only those colors that finally constitute the hue, value, and chroma of the pigment. This subtractive effect is also utilized when producing colors by filtering white light. Each filter selectively absorbs component colors, transmitting only the component desired. Thus, a blue filter transmits only blue, and so on (see Fig. 11.41*b*). Conversely, when lights of the three primary colors—red, green, and blue—are combined, they form white by an additive process (Fig. 11.43).

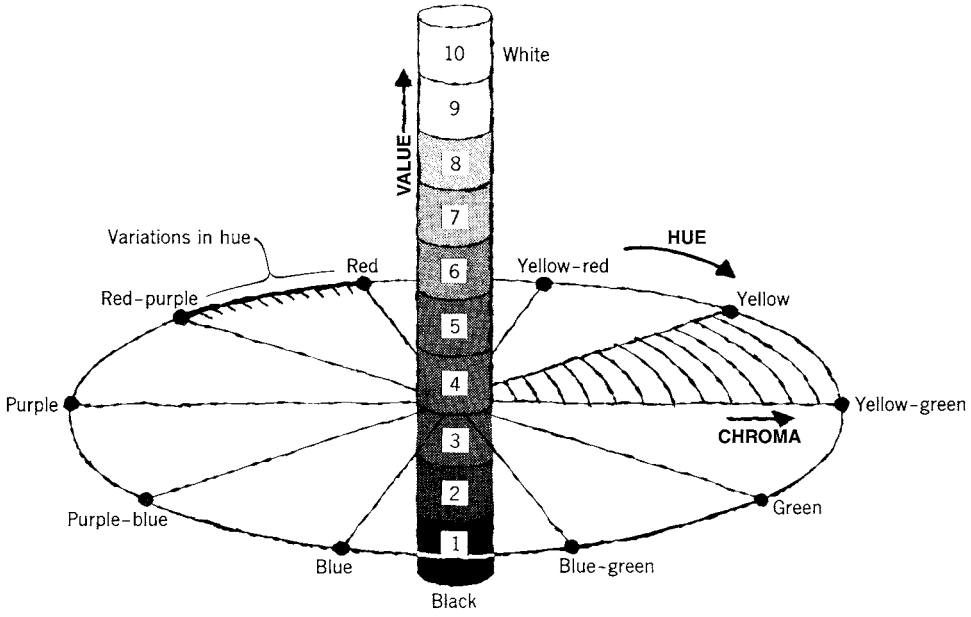


Fig. 11.42 *The Munsell Color System defines a color by three characteristics: hue (color), chroma (saturation), and value (grayness).*

The additive and subtractive primary colors are complementary; they combine to give a white or neutral gray, respectively. Thus, red and blue-green, blue and yellow, and green and magenta are complementary. Therefore, if a red object is illuminated with blue-green light, the object's color appears gray because the red pigment absorbs the blue-green and reflects nothing; hence the gray. This accounts for the once common "lost red car" in parking lots illuminated with clear mercury lamps with their characteristic blue-green color. This phenomenon is today rare, as clear mercury lamps have fallen into disuse in favor of metal-halide and sodium lamps.

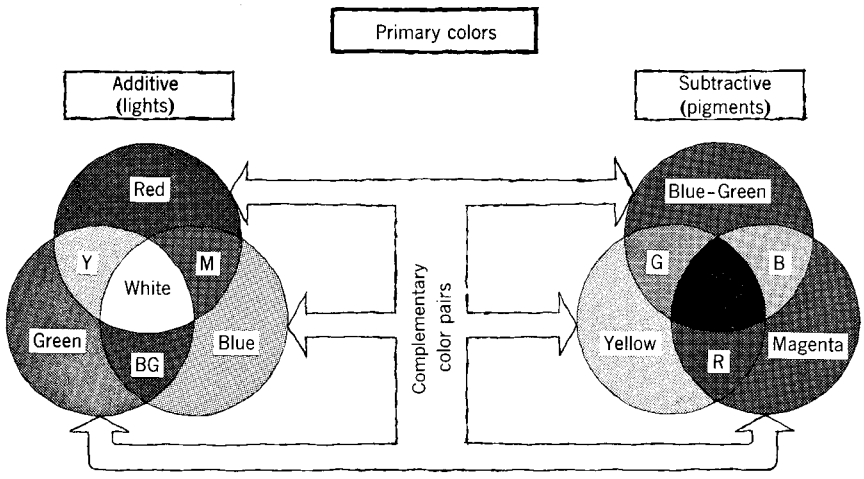


Fig. 11.43 *Primary and complementary colors. Complementary color pairs are shown by arrows. Pigments form color by an absorptive (subtractive) process; colored lights form colors by an additive process.*

11.36 REACTIONS TO COLOR

Light of a particular hue (other than white) is rarely used for general illumination except to create a special atmosphere. When a space is lighted with colored light, the eye adapts by a phenomenon known as *color constancy* so that it can, to a considerable degree (depending on the chromaticity of the light), recognize colors of objects despite the spectral quality of the illuminant. Thus, even when wearing heavily tinted sunglasses, we can still distinguish the color of objects quite easily. Indeed, after only a very short while, we no longer notice the green, yellow, blue, amber, or other color cast caused by the tinted lenses. However, the eyes become more sensitive to the missing colors that would make up white light. This phenomenon can be used to make meat look redder on a butcher's counter by using blue-rich, red-poor, cool white lighting in the remainder of the store.

A similar phenomenon occurs when the eye is exposed to a monochromatic scene, where the chromaticity is due to coloration of the objects rather than the illumination. The eye in such a situation becomes sensitized to the complementary color; thus, if after looking at a green surface one shifts the gaze to a white surface, one sees the complementary red color. Returning to our meat market, the use of green paint on the walls also enhances the redness of the meat. This effect in reverse also partly accounts for the extensive use of green for paints, linens, gowns, and so on in operating rooms. The eyes of the surgeons and nurses when diverted from the redness of the surgical area are more comfortable seeing green on a green background than on a white one.

By a process known as *lateral adaptation*, the apparent color of an object changes when the background color is changed. Thus, a green object looks somewhat blue-green on a yellow background because the eye is supplying the complementary color to yellow—that is, blue. Similarly, the same green object looks slightly yellow–green when on a blue background, the eye supplying the yellow.

Apparent brightness of a color is a function of its hue, in that light colors appear lighter than dark colors even when measured luminance is the same. Thus, spaces may be defined by color within an area of equal illumination. Also, all colors tend to appear less saturated; that is, they appear "washed out" when illumination is high. Thus, pigments of high saturation (chroma) must be used in well-lit spaces if they are to be effective, although extensive use of saturated colors is generally best avoided.

Other well-known psychological effects of colors are the coolness of blues and greens and the warmth of reds and yellows. Thus, cool colors might well be used in a fur salon and warm colors in a display of summer wear. Red and yellow are "advancing" colors because objects lit with them tend to advance toward the observer, giving the appearance of becoming larger. The opposite effect is noted with blue and green, accounting for their being known as "receding" colors.

A practical, energy-saving application of these color phenomena would be to use warm colors to compensate somewhat for lowered thermostats in the winter and cool colors for the opposite effect in summer. How to accomplish this without the expense of repainting twice a year is left to the ingenuity of the architect and interior designer. In an atmosphere designed to be calm and restful, greens should generally predominate either in illuminant color, object color, or both, except in eating areas, which should be lighted with reds and yellows because cool colors are generally unappetizing. Yellows and browns emphasize motion sickness, whereas blues and greens tend toward the reverse. Warm and saturated colors produce activity; conversely, cool, unsaturated colors are conducive to meditation. Cool colors also seem to shorten time passage and are well applied in areas of dull, repetitive work.

A further discussion of color control, illuminant colors, color measurement, and color matching is found in the next sections, dealing with spectral energy distribution of sources and the color rendering index.

11.37 CHROMATICITY

The CIE color system is the internationally accepted standard for designating illuminant color. In this system, the relative proportions of each of the three primary colors (red, green, and blue) required to produce a given illuminant color are calculated. These values are called the *tristimulus values* for that color and are designated by capital letters: X

(red), Y (green), and Z (blue). See Fig. 11.47 for an example of a chromaticity diagram.

11.38 SPECTRAL DISTRIBUTION OF LIGHT SOURCES

In addition to providing sufficient light of adequate quality, the lighting designer must be concerned with the spectral content of the selected illuminant, because perceived object color depends heavily on the illuminant. As discussed earlier, perceived object color is the result of selective absorption and reflection of components of the illuminating light by the pigments of the object being viewed. It is therefore necessary that the *illuminant* contain the color of the *object* in order for us to see the object's color. It is not so obvious that the relative energy of an illuminant at a particular wavelength determines the saturation and brilliance with which we see a color. To understand this, refer to Fig. 11.44. In graphic form, the relative spectral energy distributions of a few common light sources have been plotted (as a function of wavelength—that is, color). If we compare the graphs in Figs. 11.44*a* and 11.44*c*, which show the spectral content of two of the most common light sources, cool white and warm white fluorescent lamps, respectively, we note that the principal difference lies in the amount of blue in their spectrum. As a result, a blue

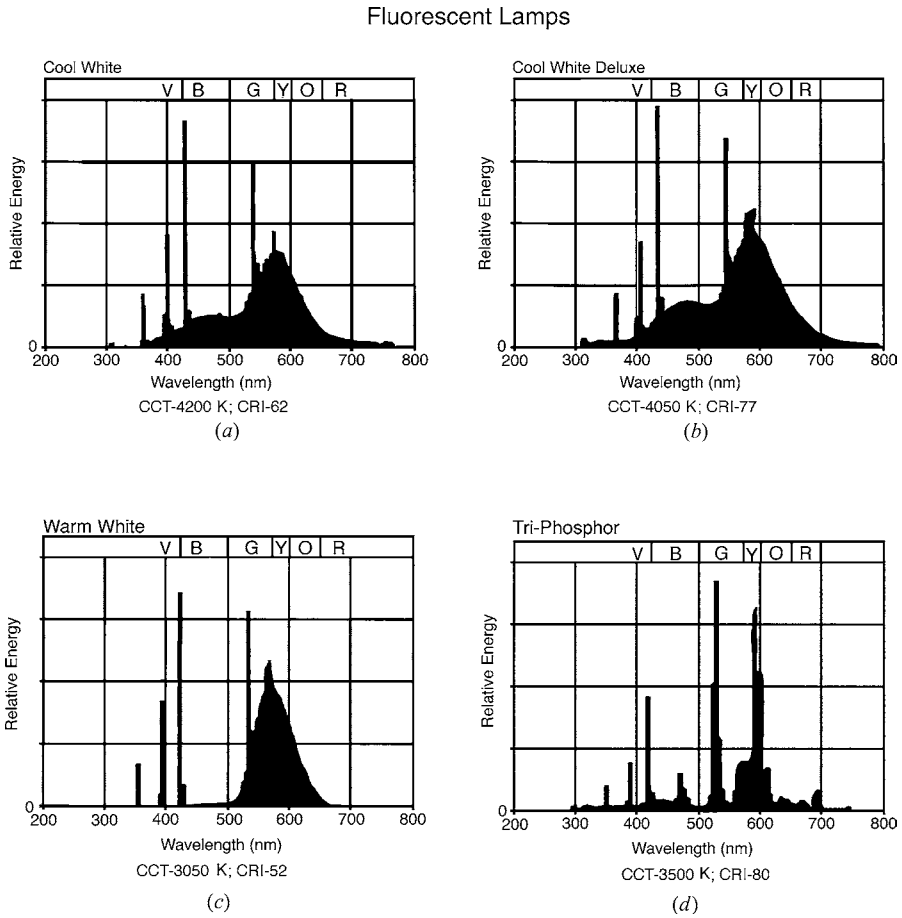


Fig. 11.44 *Spectral energy distribution of several fluorescent lamp types with their correlated color temperatures (CCT) and color rendering indices (CRI). The curves are not truly continuous, but consist of individual color lines; they are shown connected for simplicity. Because only a radiating black body has a true color temperature, a source with mixed color illuminants is assigned a CCT, which is the temperature of a blackbody radiator whose chromaticity most nearly matches that of the light source. (These graphs are generic and show patterns of wavelength distribution; consult manufacturers' data for output spectra for a specific lamp.)*

object will be bright under cool white light and dull (grayed) under warm white light. The situation is more pronounced with the standard high-pressure sodium lamp (Fig. 11.45*c*), compared to the clear metal-halide lamp (Fig. 11.45*b*). A blue object will be gray under the sodium lamp and unrecognizable as blue, whereas under the metal-halide lamp its blue color will show clearly, and so on.

This concern for perceived object color, which relates not only to furnishings but also to paints and prefinished construction materials such as carpets or floor tiles, is quite properly the province of the architect and lighting designer, who in turn must possess the necessary knowledge and information to make the appropriate choices of both illuminant *and* object color. Spectral composition graphs of the types shown in Figs. 11.44 through 11.46 are available from manufacturers for all light sources, and they should be examined when considering the characteristics of a particular light source.

One of the best ways to compare illuminants is first to expose a dull white surface to the illuminants, side by side but separated by an opaque divider, to get an impression of the illuminant color, and then expose a series of colored chips—again, side by side—to see which colors are brightened and which are grayed. The intensity of illumination also influences the appearance of colors, and it must be considered in choosing object colors. As intensity is increased, reflection increases, particularly with pale tints (high value) that contain much white pigment and thus tend to wash out color. Therefore, with high-intensity lighting, saturation of colors should be high for true, brilliant color rendition.

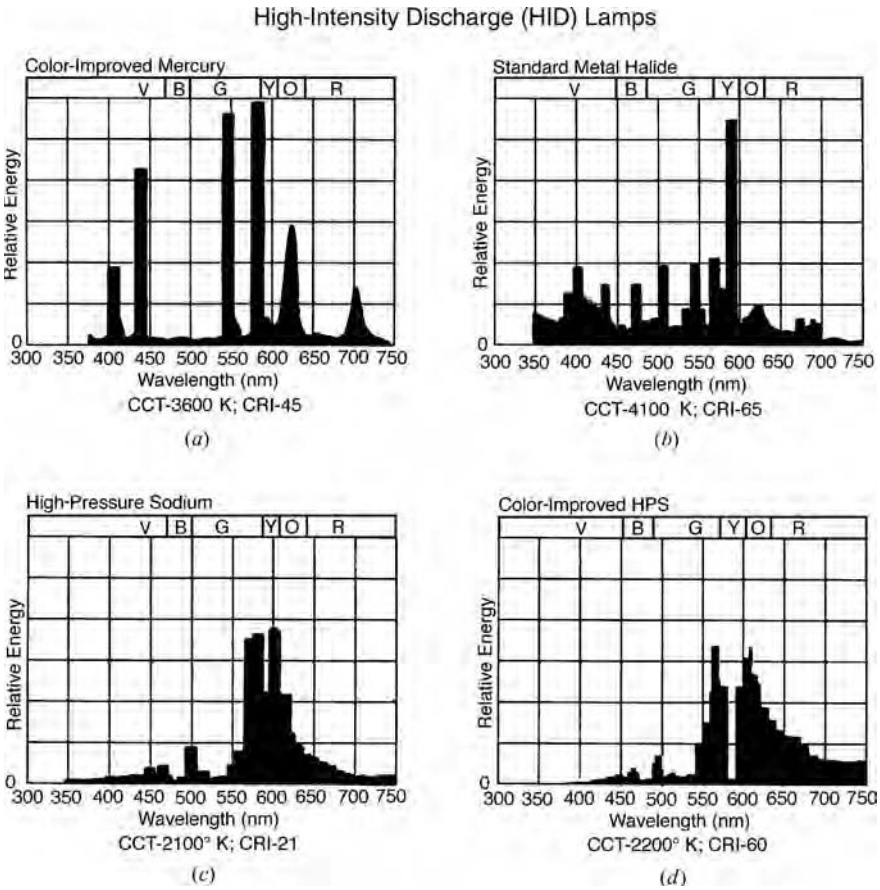


Fig. 11.45 *Spectral energy distribution of typical high-intensity discharge (HID) lamps with their CCT and CRI. (These graphs are generic and show patterns of wavelength distribution; consult manufacturers' data for output spectra for a specific lamp.)*

Refer now to Fig. 11.46. Note from diagrams *b*, *c*, and *d* that the spectrum of a light source that produces light as a result of heating is continuous. Sunlight is equal in spectrum to a blackbody radiator at 5500 K; north light is equal to one at about 8000 to 10,000 K; a 500-W incandescent lamp is approximately equal to one at 2850 K—and so on. If the spectrum of a blackbody radiator is plotted on a chromaticity diagram, its locus is a continuous curved line, as seen in Fig. 11.47. The chromaticity of all true blackbody radiators falls exactly on this line, with the location depending on temperature. Daylight, for most purposes, falls on this locus, although because of selective atmospheric absorption and other phenomena, it is actually slightly off. Incandescent lamp chromaticity is very close to this locus because it is also a heat-light radiator.

A source that produces light by means of individual phosphors can also have chromaticity on this locus if the phosphors are selected to produce a continuous spectrum similar to that of a blackbody radiator. Thus, we see in Fig. 11.47 that triphosphor fluorescent lamps (Fig. 11.44*d*) and metal-halide lamps (Fig. 11.45*d*) have spectral components over the entire spectrum, yielding chromaticities fairly close to the blackbody locus. For other sources, the

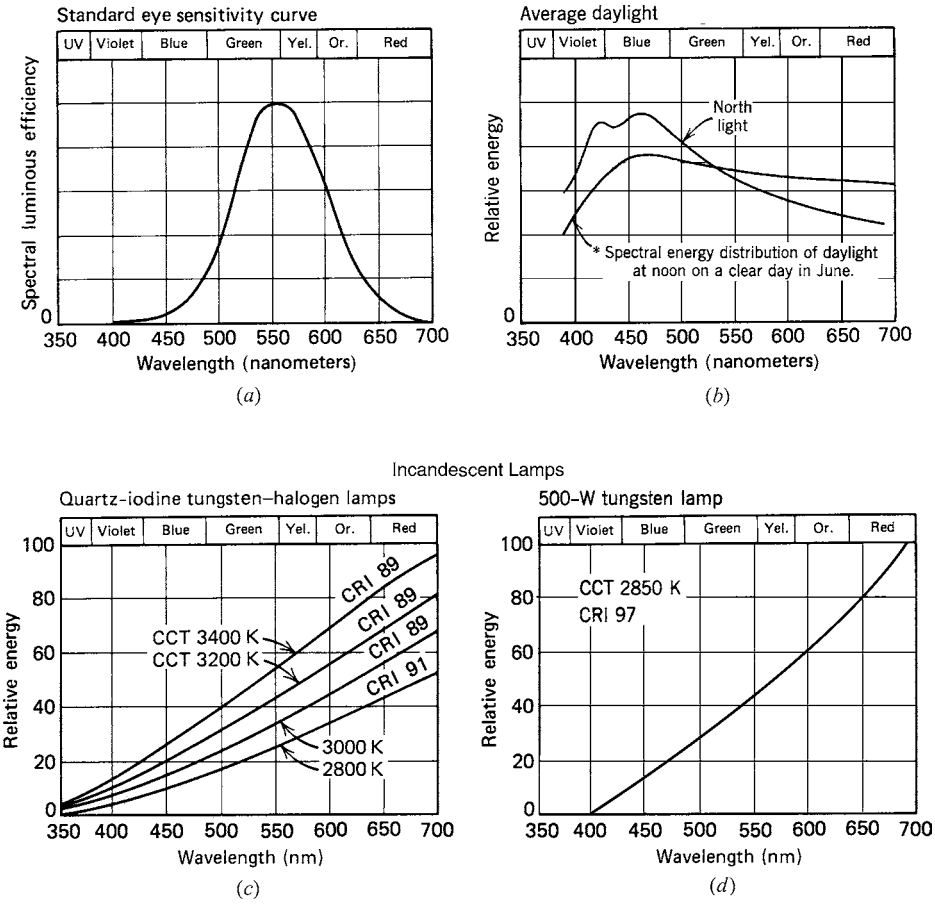


Fig. 11.46 *(a) Standard photopic (cones) eye sensitivity curve. Note that maximum sensitivity occurs in the daylight range of 500–750 nm. (b) Spectral energy distribution of two specific types of daylight. North light, with a color temperature of 8000–10,000 K, peaks in the blue range, whereas noon daylight contains all spectral colors in roughly equal proportions. (c) Tungsten-halogen lamps are incandescent light sources and therefore contain all spectral colors. As wattages increase, the color changes from orange-red to white, and the CRI drops slightly. (d) A simple filament-type incandescent lamp is very close to being a blackbody radiator (i.e., its actual temperature and CCT are almost the same). This is indicated by its high CRI (97).*

CCT is established by their chromaticity locus in relation to the diagonal lines crossing the blackbody locus, as seen in Fig. 11.47. Each of these lines is isothermal—that is, all chromaticities on it have the *same CCT*. Thus, the reader can see that two sources with widely differing spectral content and therefore object color rendering can have the same CCT.

11.39 COLOR RENDERING INDEX

Color rendering is defined as the degree to which perceived colors of objects illuminated by a test source conform to the colors of the same objects as illuminated by a reference source. The *color rendering index* (CRI) of a source is a two-part concept, comprising a color temperature that establishes the reference standard and a number that indicates how closely the illuminant approaches the standard. *The standard is always daylight at that color temperature.* Therefore, the CRI of a lamp is really a measure of how closely it approximates daylight of the same color temperature. Two sources cannot be compared unless their color temperatures are equal or quite close. A CRI of 100 indicates an illuminant whose spectral content is equal to daylight of that temperature. CRIs for typical common lamps are given in Figs. 11.44 through 11.46.

Table 11.12 lists the color characteristics of a few of the major sources. An illuminant's own

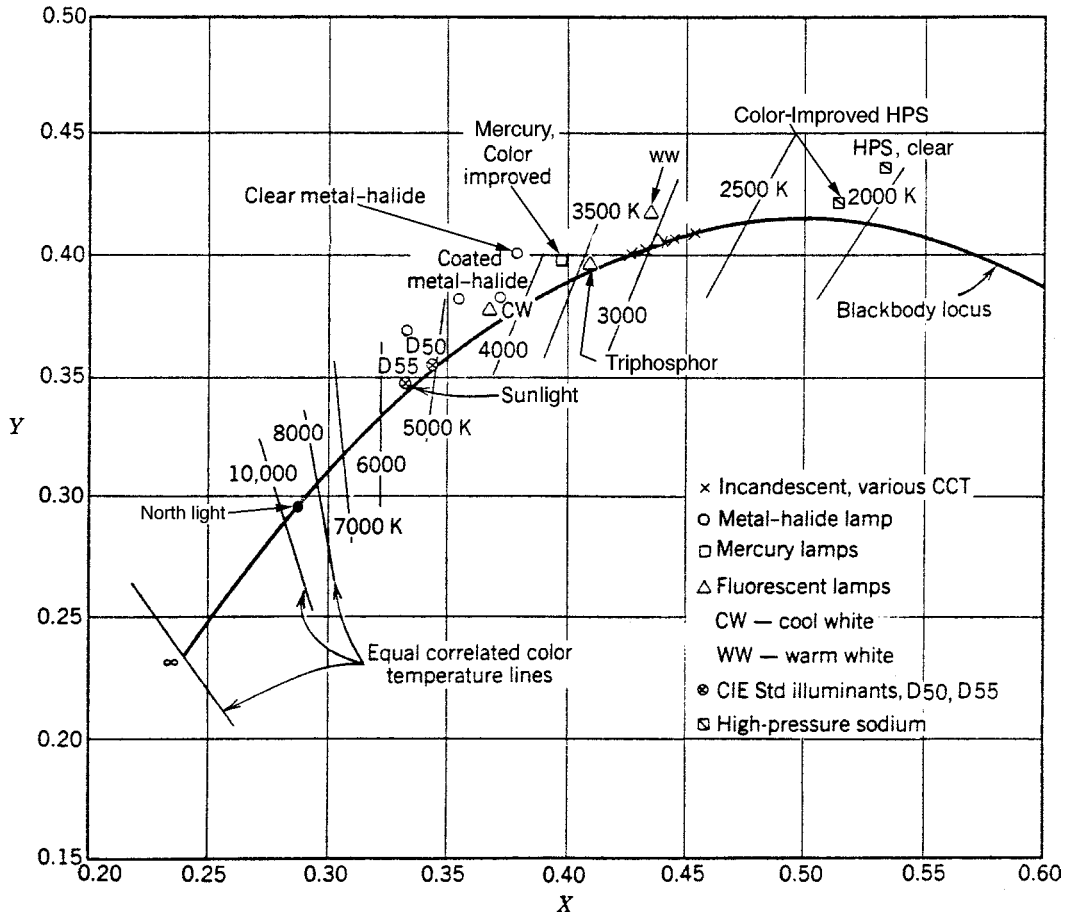


Fig. 11.47 *Portion of a chromaticity diagram showing the relation of common illuminant chromaticities to that of the blackbody locus. Illuminants whose coordinates fall on the same line crossing the blackbody locus have the same CCT but may have entirely different component colors.*

color appearance on a neutral surface depends on its own spectral content, but if the observer is placed in a space illuminated with this source, after a short exposure time the eye becomes adapted to the source color and detects only a degree of whiteness rather than an actual tint.

Where it is necessary to detect small color differences between two objects, a light poor in object color or complementary to the object color should be used at a relatively high illumination level, followed by a light high in object color at the same illumination level. If this is not possible, two widely different but broad-spectrum illuminants should be used, preferably at the same illumination level. Another technique is the use of a special, fixed-color source. For a full discussion, see the current *IESNA Lighting Handbook*.

It should be remembered in all considerations of color, comparison, matching, and rendering that object color depends on the spectral energy distribution of the light source (illuminant), and therefore any change in the spectral content changes the object's appearance. Two sources of the same color temperature and, therefore, apparent whiteness can have quite different spectral content and therefore render object colors

TABLE 11.12 Effect of Illuminant on Object Colors

Lamp	CRI (approximate)	CCT (K)	Whiteness	*Colors* Enhanced	*Colors* Grayed	Notes
			FLUORESCENT			
Warm white	52	3050	Yellowish	Orange, yellow	Red, blue, green	
Cool white	62	4200	White	Yellow Orange Blue	Red	
Cool white deluxe	77	4050	White	Green Orange Yellow	Red	
Triphosphor	75	2800	Yellowish	Red Orange	Deep red, blue	
	80	3000	Pale yellowish	Red Orange Green	Deep red	
			MERCURY			
Clear	20	7000	Blue–Green	Blue Green	Red Orange	Poor overall color rendering
Deluxe	45	3700	Pale purplish	Deep blue, red	Blue-green	Shift over life to greenish
			METAL–HALIDE			
Clear	65	4000	White	Blue Green Yellow	Red	May shift to pinkish over life
Phosphor-coated	80	4200	White	Blue, green, yellow	None	Shifts to pinkish over life
			HIGH-PRESSURE SODIUM			
Standard	21	2100	Yellowish	Yellow Green	Red, blue	
Color-corrected	60	2200	Yellowish-white	Red, green, yellow	Blue	CRI decreases slightly over life
Incandescent	99+	2900	Yellowish	Red, orange, yellow	Blue, green	



Fig. 11.48 *A hand-held lightweight (≈8 oz [225 g]) chromaticity meter for determining the chromaticity and color temperature of a light source. The unit reads* X *and* Y *coordinates, color temperature in degrees Kelvin, and illuminance in lux. (Courtesy of Minolta Corp.)*

differently. A case in point would be a 3000-K warm white fluorescent tube and an incandescent lamp (500-W photoflood) of approximately the same color temperature. Color temperature is an expression of dominant color, not spectral distribution.

A convenient hand-held chromaticity meter is illustrated in Fig. 11.48. This unit measures the *X* and *Y* coordinates of an illuminant, which can then be plotted on a standard CIE color diagram to determine absolute chromaticity. This is very useful in comparing illuminants to predict the color response and avoid color metamerisms. The meter also reads color temperature in kelvin and illuminance in lux.

References and Resources

CIBSE. 1994. *CIBSE Code for Interior Lighting*. Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers. London.

CIBSE. 1996. *The Visual Environment for Display Screen Use* (CIBSE Lighting Guide LG03). Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers. London.

CIBSE. 2006. *CIBSE Code for Lighting*. Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers. London.

Cotton, H. 1960. *Principles of Illumination*. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

IESNA. 1963. "How to Make a Lighting Survey." *Illuminating Engineering*, Vol. 57, No. 2, 87–100.

IESNA. 1993. *IESNA Lighting Handbook*, 8th ed. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 2000. *IESNA Lighting Handbook*, 9th ed. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

Light and Color. The Franklin Institute: http://www.fi.edu/color/

International Technologies, *The Light Measurement Handbook*: http://www.intl-lighttech.com/services/light-measurement-handbook

Lighting Design Lab (Seattle): http://lightingdesignlab.com/

Lighting Research Center: http://www.lrc.rpi.edu/

Murdoch, J. B. 1985. *Illumination Engineering*. Macmillan. New York.

Pacific Energy Center, Online Resource Center (see Lighting Fact Sheets and Lighting Application Notes): http://www.pge.com/myhome/edusafety/workshopstraining/pec/inforesource/onlinerc.shtml

Ross and Baruzzini, Inc. 1975. "Energy Conservation Applied to Office Lighting" (Conservation Paper No. 18). Federal Energy Administration. Washington, DC.

Sampson, F. K. 1970. *Contrast Rendition in School Lighting*. Educational Facilities Laboratory. New York.

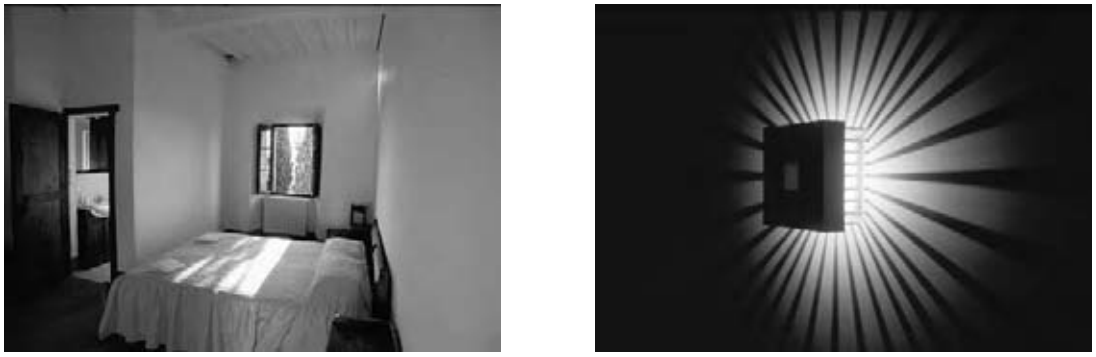
CHAPTER 12

Light Sources

DESIGNING THE LUMINOUS ENVIRONMENT today involves a complex balance of considerations, such as illuminance, luminance, view, visual comfort, shading, and glazing types—and associated concerns such as thermal comfort and energy efficiency. Historically, human activities and tasks were relegated to daylight hours and often within proximity of tall windows. Candles and oil lamps were expensive and a fire hazard, in addition to providing poor illumination for certain tasks. Electrical lighting began around 1870 with the development of commercially usable arc lamps and was given greater impetus nine years later by Edison's first practical incandescent lamp. Development of the fluorescent lamp (and other electric discharge lamps) has revolutionized the workplace. Buildings such as offices, shopping centers, and factories can operate during evening hours. The many new technological developments in the lighting industry offer the designer a variety of energy-efficient and environmentally responsible sources and controls to fully integrate daylight and electric light into the design process (Fig. 12.1).

12.1 BASIC CHARACTERISTICS OF LIGHT SOURCES

Daylight and electric light sources are discussed in this chapter. Daylight sources may be categorized as direct (direct sunlight or diffuse skylight) or indirect (light reflected or modified from its primary



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.1 *(a) A daylit space; sunlight streams through a window at the Santa Anna Monastery in Santa Anna, Italy. (Photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004; all rights reserved.) (b) An electrically lit space—a wall sconce at the Westin Peachtree Plaza hotel in Atlanta, GA. (Photo by Walter Grondzik; © 2004; all rights reserved.)*

source). Electric light sources today fall generally into two generic classifications: incandescent lamps (including tungsten-halogen types); and gaseous discharge lamps (including fluorescent, mercury vapor, metal-halide, high-pressure and low-pressure sodium lamps, and the induction lamp).

Efficacy is a basic characteristic common to both daylight and electric light sources—measured in lumens per watt (lm/W). Efficacy is the ratio of lumens provided to watts of heat produced by a light source. Table 12.1 lists efficacies of common light sources. Due to its high efficacy, daylight introduces less heat per lumen than electric sources, making use of daylight an attractive strategy for reducing cooling loads in buildings caused by lighting (assuming effective, balanced distribution and utilization of illumination).

The efficiency of a standard incandescent lamp in converting electrical energy to light is approximately 7%; the other 93% is released as heat. Fluorescent lamps are approximately 22% efficient, and although they are a great improvement over incandescents, the generally low efficacy of lighting in buildings accounts for a large proportion of building energy use.

TABLE 12.1 Efficacy of Various Light Sources

Source	Efficacy (lm/W)
Candle	0.1
Oil lamp	0.3
Original Edison lamp	1.4
1910 Edison lamp	4.5
Incandescent lamp (15–500 W)	8–22
Tungsten-halogen lamp (50–1500 W)	18–22
Fluorescent lamp (15–215 W)[a]	35–80
Compact fluorescent lamp[b]	55–75
Mercury-vapor lamp (40–1000 W)[a]	32–63
Metal-halide lamp (70–1500 W)[a]	80–125
High-pressure sodium lamp (35–100 W)[a]	55–115
Induction lamp[c]	48–70
Sulfur lamp[c]	90–100
Direct sun (low altitude = 7.5°)	90
Direct sun (high altitude > 25°)	117
Direct sun (mean altitude)	100
Sky (clear)	150
Sky (average)	125
Global (average)	115
Maximum source efficacy predicted by the year 2010	150
Maximum theoretical limit of source efficacy	250 (approximate)

[a]Includes ballast losses (with electronic ballasts, lumens per watt become much higher). Losses vary between ballasts and manufacturers.

[b]With electronic ballasts.

[c]With a power supply.

12.2 SELECTING AN APPROPRIATE LIGHT SOURCE

Choosing light sources for buildings—whether daylight or electric light (or, more likely, a combination of both)—involves simultaneous lighting and thermal considerations. Because electric lighting in American nonresidential buildings consumes 25% to 60% of the electric energy utilized, any attempt to reduce this quantity must necessarily include integration of the cheapest (insofar as energy is concerned), most abundant, and, in many ways, most desirable form of lighting available—daylight. In selecting appropriate light sources for buildings, understanding the characteristics of the light sources will allow a designer to use them appropriately for energy efficiency and to provide visual and thermal comfort. For resource efficiency, a designer should first optimize daylight sources through building geometries and material finishes, and then design the electric lighting system to supplement and enhance illumination and effect. This chapter describes the characteristics of daylight and electric light sources to assist a designer in understanding the limits and capabilities of each source.

DAYLIGHT SOURCES

12.3 CHARACTERISTICS OF DAYLIGHT

The most prominent characteristic of daylight is its variability. The source of all daylight is the sun. Exterior illumination, at a particular place and time, depends upon (1) solar position, which can be determined if the latitude, date, and time of day are given, (2) weather conditions (e.g., cloud cover, smog), and (3) effects of local terrain (natural and built obstructions and reflections). The position of the sun in the sky is expressed in terms of its altitude above the horizon and its azimuth angle. For all latitudes in the northern hemisphere, the sun's altitude is highest in summer, lowest in winter, and in between in spring and fall. Azimuth angle is defined

as the sun's horizontal position angle, measured from the *south*. Solar position is absolutely predictable for any given time and location.

Cloud cover, unlike solar position, is only statistically predictable, on the basis of extensive U.S. Weather Service observations at numerous weather stations throughout the United States. At locations other than those for which recorded data are available, an educated guess is necessary. Outside the United States, a designer must rely on locally available data, which are often difficult to obtain.

The third factor—local terrain and construction conditions that either reduce illumination by shadowing or increase it by reflection—can be considered only on a case-by-case and site-specific basis.

For manual calculation procedures, it is sufficient to establish four basic sky conditions. These are:

1. Solid overcast sky
2. Clear sky without sun (in the field of view)
3. Clear sky with sun
4. Partly cloudy sky

12.4 STANDARD OVERCAST SKY

This condition, which occurs for much of the year in northerly climates such as England, Scandinavia, and the Pacific Northwest, is called the *CIE sky*, because it was adopted by the Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (CIE) as the standard design sky for daylighting calculations (CIE, 1970). This sky, as defined by the CIE, has a nonuniform brightness distribution, increasing from horizon to zenith in approximately a 1:3 ratio. Sky luminance at any altitude angle above the horizon is defined in Equation 12.1 as

$$L_A = L_Z \frac{1+2\sin A}{3} \qquad (12.1)$$

where

L_A = luminance at $A°$ above the horizon (in any direction)

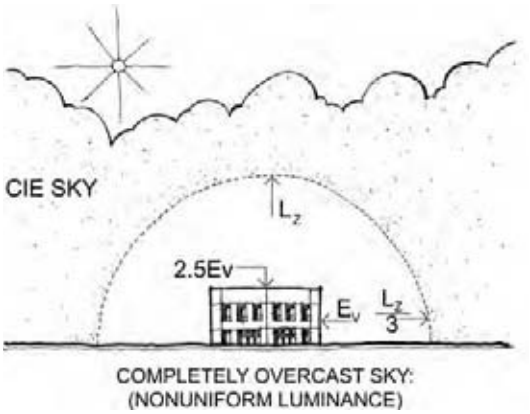
L_Z = luminance at the zenith

Thus at the horizon, where $A = 0°$,

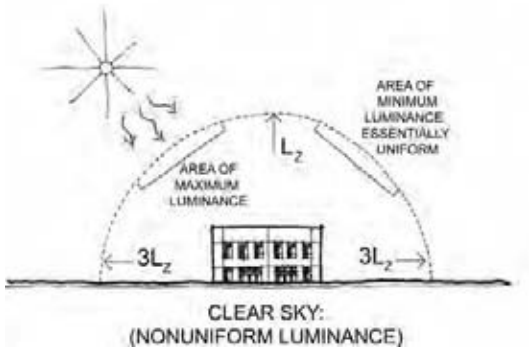
$$L_A = \frac{L_Z}{3}$$

The illuminance (density of light in lux) on unobstructed exterior horizontal and vertical surfaces produced by this luminance distribution has an approximate ratio of 2.5:1 (Fig. 12.2). This results from an integration of Equation 12.1 over the whole sky.

There is agreement among all sources that with an overcast sky, exterior horizontal illuminance varies directly with the sun's altitude, *irrespective of azimuth*. Various formulations for this relationship have been put forward. One



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 12.2 *(a) The completely overcast sky has a zenith luminance L_Z, which is three times the horizon luminance. With such a sky, illuminance on unobstructed exterior horizontal surfaces (E_H) is about 2½ times that on similar vertical surfaces (E_V). (b) The clear sky has the area of brightest luminance around the sun. The area opposite the sun is darkest and can be considered as essentially uniform at approximately 3500 cd/m² (1000 fL). (Redrawn by Erik Winter.)*

formulation that gives good agreement with observations is by Krochman (1963), shown in Equation 12.2:

$$E_H = 300 + 21{,}000 \sin A \qquad (12.2)$$

where E_H is exterior horizontal illuminance (lux) and A is the solar altitude, in degrees. Solar altitude (and azimuth) for various times of day can be obtained from Table D.1. Figure 12.3 is a plot of year-round averages for both vertical and horizontal illuminance from an overcast sky as a function of solar altitude, based on U.S. Weather Service observations.

It is interesting to compare the exterior horizontal illuminance obtained from the two sources given: Krochman's formula (Equation 12.2) and the observation-based data of Fig. 12.3 for a few typical conditions. Solar altitude is obtained from Table D.1.

Latitude: 38°
Solar Time: 10:00 A.M.
Dates: Dec. 21, March/Sept. 21, June 21

	Eq. 12.2	Fig. 12.3
Dec 21	8,500 lux (790 fc)	8,608 lux (800 fc)
Mar/Sept 21	14,623 lux (1,359 fc)	15,923 lux (1,480 fc)
June 21	18,669 lux (1,735 fc)	23,134 lux (2,150 fc)

The degree of agreement is generally satisfactory, and either source will yield suitable results.

One of the most convenient ways of expressing the quantity of daylight illuminance during the schematic design of buildings is the concept of *daylight factor* (primarily intended for overcast skies). Daylight factor is the ratio of indoor illuminance to available outdoor illuminance. Daylight factor is discussed in Chapter 14 as a means of setting criteria for, and determining the effectiveness of, a daylighting design.

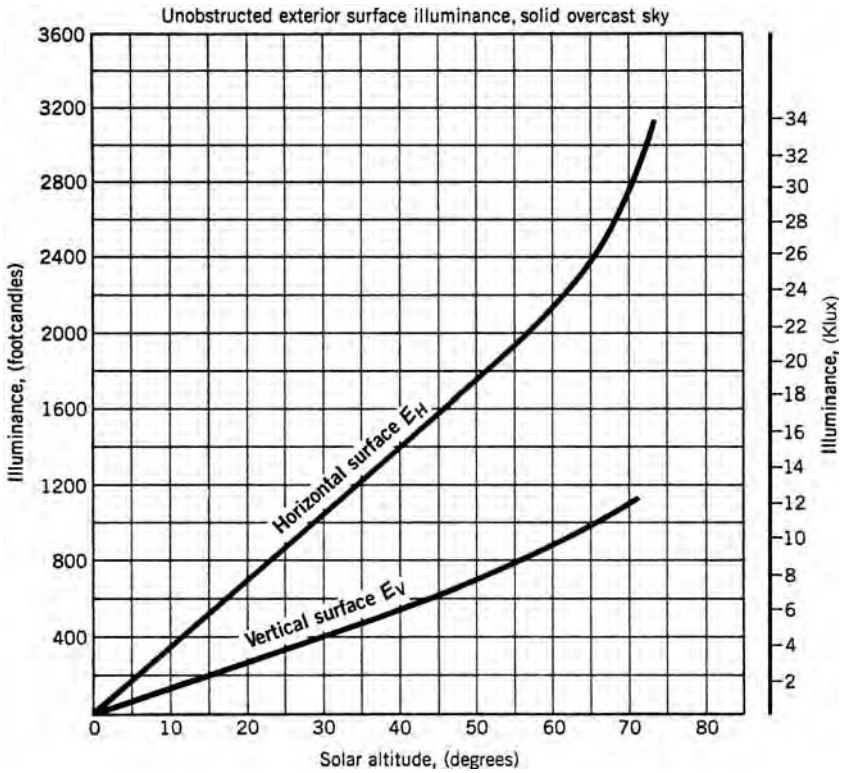


Fig. 12.3 *Curves giving unobstructed exterior surface illuminance directly from an overcast sky. (Data based on U.S. Weather Service observations; courtesy of Libbey-Owens-Ford.)*

12.5 CLEAR SKY

(a) Horizontal Illuminance

Exterior horizontal illuminance on a cloudless day consists of two source components: diffuse illumination from the entire sky plus the much larger component of direct sunlight. As with overcast sky, various empirical formulas for both components have been proposed, and here too, all sources agree that the total illumination, diffuse plus direct, varies directly with solar altitude.

Figure 12.4 gives values for both components of exterior horizontal illuminance based upon observations. The *sky only* values are used to determine shaded skylight illuminance or daylong ground illuminance outside a shaded window—that is, a north-facing window, or an east/west window when the sun is on the opposite side of the building. In determining ground illuminance, the values given in Fig. 12.4 must be reduced somewhat, as they represent unobstructed horizontal illuminance, whereas the area outside a building window is partially obstructed from sky light by the building itself. If a building is so large that the ground outside the shaded window effectively receives diffuse radiation only from the half of the sky away from the sun, an average figure for E_H of 1000 fc (~10,000 lux) can be used. This is because the luminance of the half of the sky away from the sun varies from a minimum of approximately 300 fL (1031 cd/m^2) for the deep-blue patch directly opposite the sun to about 2000 fL (6874 cd/m^2) at the sides, giving an average half-sky luminance of about 1000 fL (~3400 cd/m^2). This, in turn, gives a horizontal illuminance E_H, diffuse, of about 1000 fc (~10,000 lux) (see Fig. 12.2).

Figure 12.4 also gives horizontal illuminance from the sun only, as a function of solar altitude. This value, when combined with the proper portion of diffuse illuminance, as discussed previously, is useful in determining ground illuminance outside a sunny building exposure or illuminance on an unshaded skylight. The light incident on an

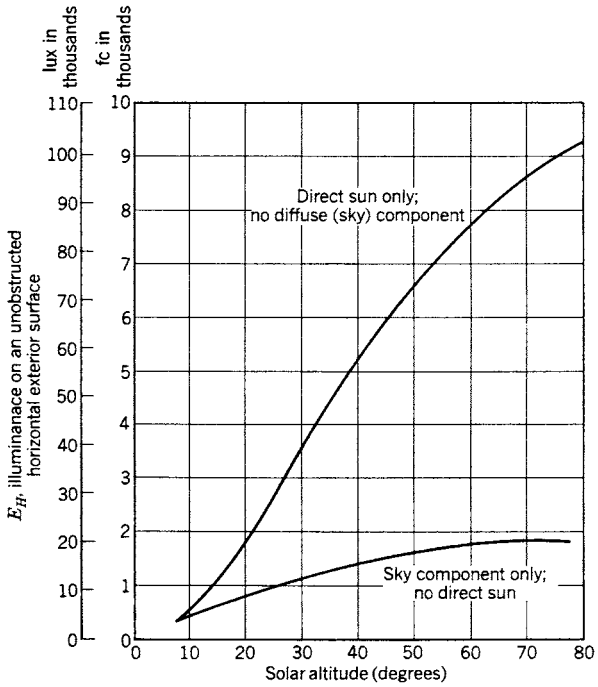


Fig. 12.4 *Components of the exterior horizontal illuminance on an unobstructed surface, from a clear sky, as a function of solar altitude. Total illuminance* E_H *is the sum of the two components. (From data in Rennhackkamp, 1967.)*

external reflector or lightshelf at a window can also be determined from these figures.

(b) Vertical Surface Illuminance

Inasmuch as most daylighting is accomplished via vertical fenestration, vertical surface illumination is the major component of interior daylight. It is also important for determining the daylight contribution of vertical elements in skylights. There is no simple relationship between horizontal and vertical illuminance from a clear sky, as there is for an overcast sky, because the illumination on a vertical surface depends upon solar azimuth as well as altitude. More specifically, it depends upon the *bearing angle* (Fig. 12.5), which is defined as the horizontal angle between a vertical plane containing the sun and a plane perpendicular to the vertical surface in question. A bearing angle of 0° indicates that the sun plane is perpendicular to the vertical surface. Like E_H, E_V (vertical illuminance) is divided into two components: sky only and direct sun only, which are plotted in Fig. 12.6 as a function of solar altitude and bearing angle. The *sky only* component is effectively for the half-sky because a vertical surface can be exposed to a maximum of only half of the full sky. Solar radiation data may be translated into illuminance by using average "efficiency" figures for solar energy in units of lumens per watt of received radiation (Fig. 12.6).

12.6 PARTLY CLOUDY SKY

The luminance of a partly cloudy sky cannot be expressed mathematically because of its infinite variability of conditions. However, statistical data on cloud cover are available from observations at many weather stations, and these data should be used in computer-calculated, hour-by-hour energy analysis programs. For the purpose of lighting design, it is important to note that the illumination from a partly cloudy sky is *higher* than that from a clear sky by 10% to 15% because of additional reflected sunlight from cloud edges. Several attempts have been made to account for this type of sky in terms of the effect on the daylight factor within a room, but none has received general acceptance.

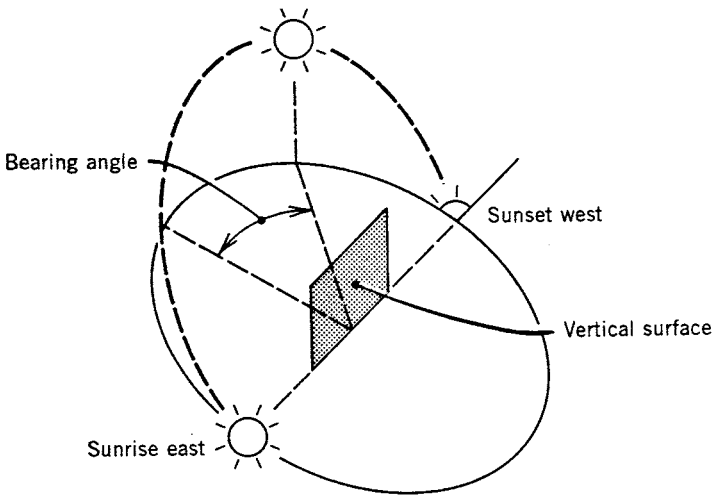


Fig. 12.5 *The bearing angle of a vertical surface—the angle between a hypothetical vertical plane perpendicular to the surface (say, a window) and a hypothetical vertical plane containing the sun. (Other sources refer to this angle as the window-to-sun azimuth angle or surface azimuth.)*

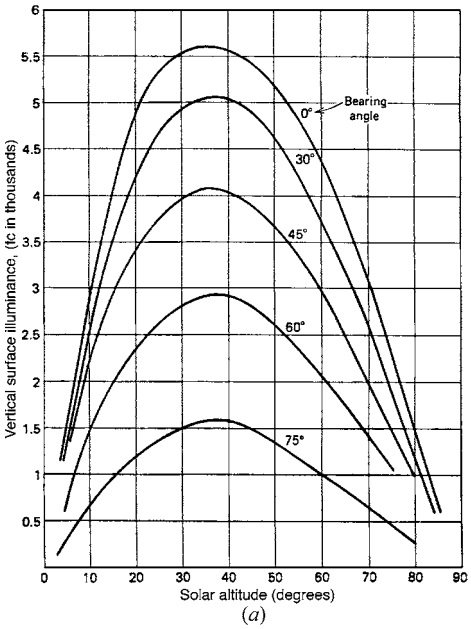
ELECTRIC LIGHT SOURCES

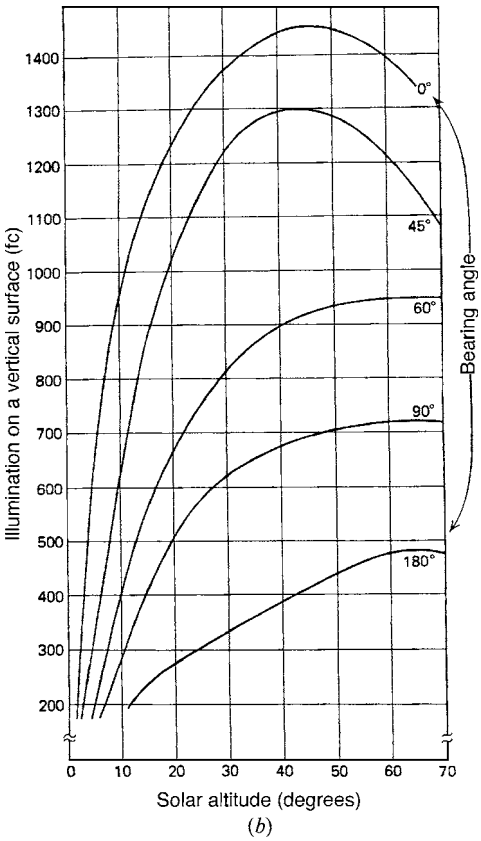
Incandescent Lamps

12.7 THE INCANDESCENT FILAMENT LAMP

(a) Construction

The standard incandescent lamp consists simply of a tungsten filament inside a gas-filled, sealed glass envelope (Fig. 12.7). Current passing through the high-resistance filament heats it to incandescence, producing light. Gradual evaporation of the filament causes the familiar blackening of the bulb and





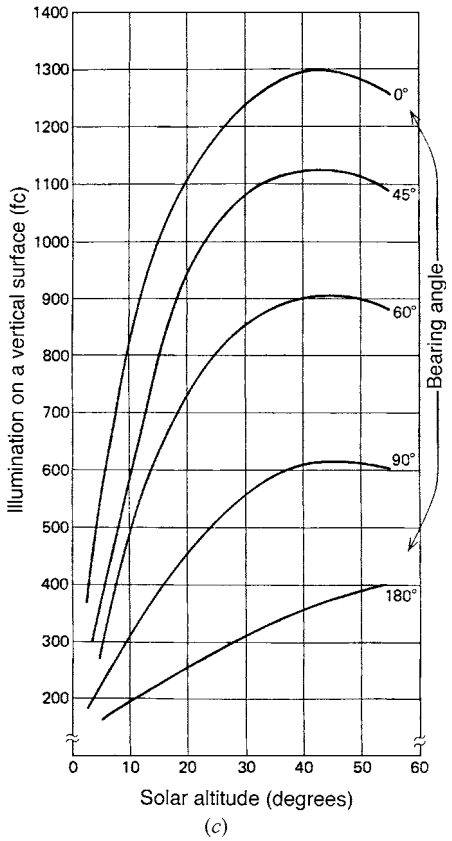


Fig. 12.6 *(a) Vertical surface illuminance, year-long average, sun only, no sky contribution. (b) Vertical surface illuminance, clear summer sky, no sky contribution. (c) Vertical surface illuminance, clear sky during various seasons, no sky contribution. (Courtesy of Libby-Owens-Ford.)*

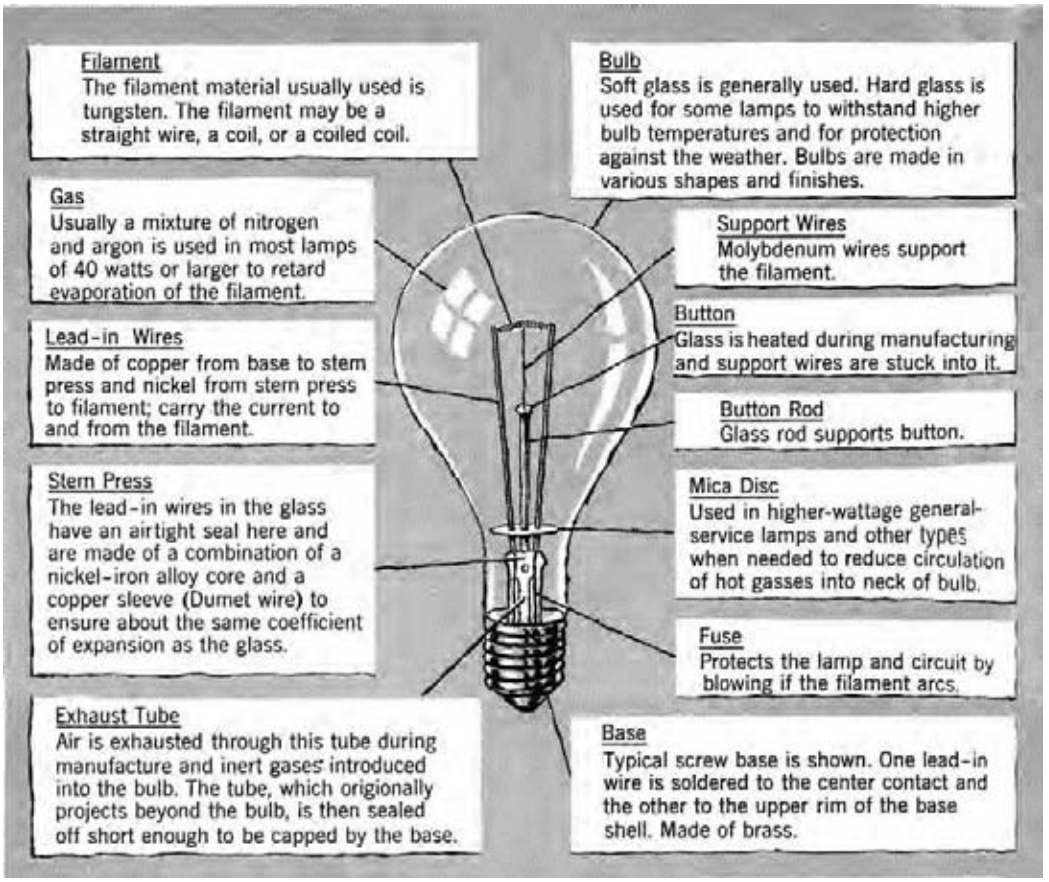


Fig. 12.7 *Construction of a standard incandescent lamp.*

eventual filament rupture and lamp failure. Incandescent lamps are available in many bulb and base types, with special designs for particular applications (Fig. 12.8 and Fig. J.1 in Appendix J). In order to diffuse the light output, most bulbs are coated inside with white silica, providing almost complete light diffusion at a cost of approximately 2% to 3% of the light output. Colored light is also available from either coated bulbs or bulbs of colored glass.

The incandescent lamp base is the means by which a connection is made to the socket and thereby to the source of electric current. Most lamps are made with screw bases of various sizes, the most common being the medium screw base. General service lamps of 300 W and larger use the mogul screw base. When lamps are placed in precise reflectors or in lens systems where exact positioning of the filament is important, one of the special bases illustrated in Fig. 12.8 is used.

(b) Operating Characteristics

Critically dependent upon the supplied voltage, the life, output, and efficiency of a lamp can be markedly altered by even a small change in operating voltage, as illustrated in Fig. J.2. For example, operating a 120-V lamp at 125 V or 115 V (Table 12.2) affects lumen output and, in particular, lamp life. In installations where lamp replacement is difficult and/or expensive, and use of an incandescent lamp is indicated, lamps may be operated slightly undervoltage to prolong life, thereby decreasing the frequency of replacement. Because luminous efficacy (the number of lumens emitted for each watt of electricity used) is decreased by this procedure, and recognizing that energy cost is normally a major consideration over the life of any lighting installation, a detailed life-cycle cost analysis (Appendix I) should be made by the design professional involved.

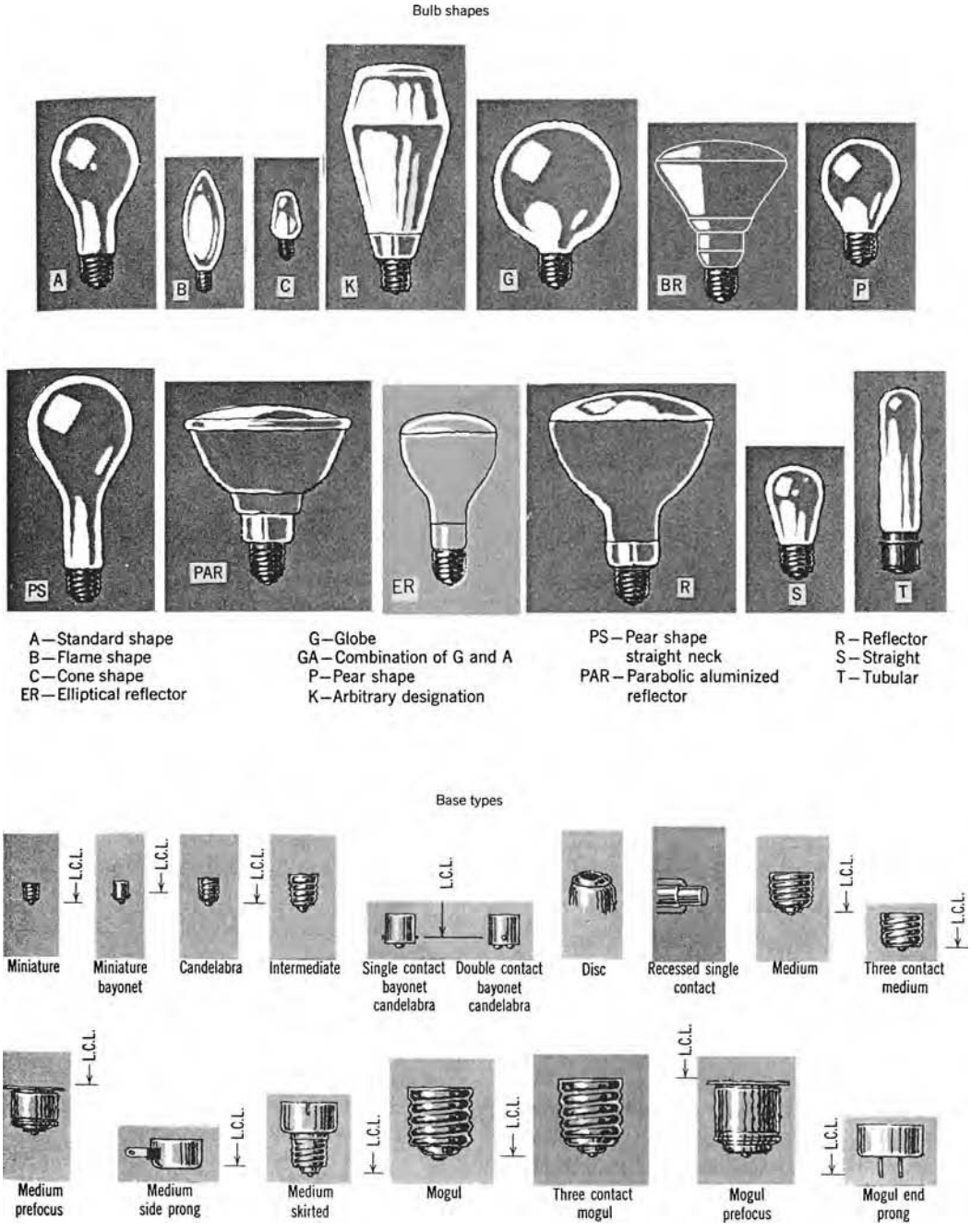


Fig. 12.8 *Common incandescent lamp bulb and base types with nomenclature. The complete bulb nomenclature indicates type and size. The letter is an abbreviation of the shape, and the number is the diameter in eighths of an inch. A PS-52 is a pear-shaped bulb 52/8 (6½) in. (165 mm) in diameter. A PAR-38 is a parabolic reflector lamp 38/8 (4¾) in. (121 mm) in diameter.*

TABLE 12.2 Comparison of Operating Characteristics

Operation of Lamps	120-V lamp at 125 V (104.2%)	120-V lamp at 115 V (95.8%)
Amount of light (lumens)	16% more	15% less
Power consumption (watts)	7% more	7% less
Efficacy (lumens per watt)	8% higher	8% lower
Life (hours)	42% less	72% more

Conversely, where lamps are replaced before burnout using a group replacement system, and initial installation cost per lux and/or energy costs are high, lamps may be operated overvoltage, thereby increasing their output and efficacy but shortening their life. This procedure is normal in sports-lighting installations because of the high installation cost of tower-mounted floodlights, making it mandatory to extract the maximum light from each unit. In stadium installations with yearly lamp operation schedules averaging less than 200 hours, 10% overvoltage operation doubles the light output but still allows a once-a-year, off-season relamping and is therefore a highly economical procedure. Generally, however, it is advisable to operate incandescent lamps at the rated voltage, accepting balanced efficacy, output, and life.

(c) Other Characteristics

1. *Lumen maintenance.* Light output decreases slowly with lamp life as an incandescent bulb blackens. Lamp position (vertical or horizontal) during operation and the resulting bulb temperatures affect this characteristic.
2. *Color.* Incandescent light has a large yellow-red component and is therefore highly flattering to the skin. The spectral content of the light produced by a heated source depends upon its temperature: high-wattage lamps are bluer, low-wattage lamps are yellower. Dimmed lamps give yellow-red light.
3. *Surroundings.* Generally, incandescent lamps are impervious to surrounding heat, cold, or humidity. Starting is completely unaffected by ambient conditions. Bulbs, however, must be appropriately selected if exposure to water is expected.
4. *Luminous efficacy.* Incandescent lamps produce light as a by-product of heat; as a result, they are inherently inefficient. Luminous efficacy increases with wattage. Thus, a 60-W general-service lamp produces 890 initial lumens, or 14.8 lm/W, whereas an A-21 100-W lamp produces only slightly less output than two 60-W lamps, but the higher wattage results in an 18% energy savings.

(d) Summary

The principal advantages of incandescent lamps are low cost; instant start and restart; simple, inexpensive dimming; simple, compact installation requiring no accessories; cheap fixtures; focusability as a point source; high power factor; lamp life independent of the number of starts; and skin-flattering, full-spectrum color. From a human factor perspective, the full-spectrum quality of light, with higher amounts of light in the red wavelengths, is best for rendering skin tones.

The principal disadvantages are low efficacy (see Table 12.1), short lamp life, and critical voltage sensitivity. Low efficacy means more fixtures and larger heat gain than more efficient alternatives. Short lamp life results in high lamp replacement labor costs. Voltage sensitivity may require careful and expensive circuit design. Also, light concentration at the filament (point source) requires careful fixture design in order to avoid glare and, if undesirable, sharp shadows. Because of its poor energy characteristics, incandescent lamp use should be limited to the following applications:

- Where use is infrequent
- Where there is frequent short-duration use
- Where low-cost dimming is required
- Where the point source characteristic of the lamp is important, as in focusing fixtures
- Where minimum initial cost is essential
- Where its characteristically good color rendering is desired

A brief list of conventional incandescent lamps and their general physical and operating characteristics is provided in Table J.1. Specific lamp data for use during design development should be taken from current manufacturers' literature.

12.8 SPECIAL INCANDESCENT LAMPS

Beyond the tungsten-halogen lamp, which is discussed separately, numerous special types of incandescent lamps are available. Some of the more important types are covered briefly in the following pages.

Rough service and *vibration* lamps are built to withstand rough handling and continuous vibration, respectively. Both conditions are extremely hard on general-service lamp filaments. Neither of these types is intended for general use, and both have lower luminous efficacy than a general-service lamp (see Table J.1).

Extended-service lamps are designed for 2500-hour life. They are useful in locations where maintenance is irregular and/or relamping is difficult. Such lamps are really designed for slightly higher voltage than that which is applied, and therefore efficacy is reduced (see Table J.1 and Fig. J.2). So-called long-life lamps, which are guaranteed to burn for 2, 3, or 5 years, are actually just lamps designed for higher voltages than those listed. As they normally sell at a high cost and are very inefficient, their use is seldom advisable. Before using such lamps, a life-cycle cost comparison, including the cost of lamps, energy, and relamping, should be made (see Appendix I).

(a) Reflector Lamps

These are made in "R," "BR," "ER," and "PAR" shapes (see Fig. 12.8). They contain a reflective coating on the inside of the glass envelope that gives the entire lamp accurate light-beam control. Many reflector lamp types are available in narrow or wide beam design, commonly called *spot* and *flood*, respectively. R lamps are generally made in soft glass envelopes for indoor use, whereas PAR lamps are hard glass, suitable for exterior application. When using R and PAR lamps, the fixture acts principally as a lampholder since beam control is built into the lamp. These lamps have an improved reflector design that increases their efficiency.

The Energy Policy Act (EPACT) of 1992 made a number of incandescent reflector lamps obsolete because of the act's minimum efficacy requirements. These requirements state that R and PAR lamps rated 115 V to 130 V with a medium screw base, a bulb diameter greater than 2.75 in., and nominal wattages between 40 and 205 shall have minimum efficacies, as shown in Table 12.3. All major manufacturers produce incandescent reflector lamps that meet EPACT requirements. Among these are elliptical reflector (ER) and bulge reflector (BR) lamps that use a more efficient reflector design. These lamps are normally catalog listed as "energy-saving" lamps. (The Energy Policy Act of 2005 appears to have no provisions that substantially change the 1992 requirements.)

(b) Energy-Saving Lamps

Major national energy legislation including the National Appliance Energy Conservation Act of 1987, the Energy Policy Act of 1992 (and its 2005 update), and the comprehensive energy legislation passed by the U.S. House of Representatives and U.S. Senate in 2003 have created requirements to conserve lighting energy. The American Council for an Energy-Efficient Economy (ACEEE), the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE), and the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) have developed and support lighting energy efficiency programs, new research, and initiatives. For example, the Energy Star® program (http://www.energystar.gov/), established by the EPA in 1992 to improve and provide energy-efficient products (appliances, lighting, and heating and cooling equipment) and practices, is aimed at reducing emissions from power plants, avoiding the need for new power plants, and reducing energy bills. Energy Star encourages every U.S. household to change the five fixtures used most often at home (or the lamps in them) to Energy Star–qualified lighting to save more than $60 every year in energy costs. If every household did this, it would keep more than 1 trillion pounds of greenhouse gases out of our air—a $6 billion energy savings equivalent to the annual output of more than 21 power plants.

TABLE 12.3 Minimum Required Efficacy of R and PAR Lamps

Nominal Lamp Wattage (W)	Minimum Efficacy (lm/W)
40–50	10.5
51–66	11.0
67–85	12.5
86–115	14.0
116–155	14.5
156–205	15.0

Every major manufacturer is producing a line of energy-saving lamps. Energy-efficient lamps are frequently known by trademarked names. They are rated at a wattage lower than that of the standard lamps they are intended to replace and are generally more efficient. Any additional first cost should be analyzed by a life-cycle cost analysis and the payback period calculated. The designer will find that a proper control system is often more economically attractive than low-wattage lamps and that energy-saving incandescent lamps are primarily useful in retrofit work.

12.9 TUNGSTEN-HALOGEN (QUARTZ-IODINE) LAMPS

This lamp type, illustrated in Fig. 12.9, is similar to the standard incandescent lamp in that it produces light by heating a filament. It differs in that a small amount of halogen gas (iodine or bromine) is added to the inert gas mixture that fills a small capsule constructed of quartz glass that surrounds the filament within the bulb of the lamp. This addition results in retardation of filament evaporation, which is the usual cause of incandescent lamp failure, and thereby extends lamp life (Fig. 12.10).

Although the tungsten-halogen lamp has only slightly higher efficacy than an equivalent standard incandescent lamp, it has the advantages of longer life, lower lumen depreciation (98% output at 90% life), and a smaller envelope for a given wattage (see Fig. 12.9). The last characteristic is due to the high temperature required by the halogen cycle, which in turn requires a compact, high-temperature filament. As a result, the lamp is effectively a point source, making it ideal for use in precision reflectors. Indeed, it is in this area, as discussed later, that most of the recent developments in tungsten-halogen lamp technology have occurred.

Due to the lamp's high filament temperature, the bulb envelope is generally made of quartz or a special high-temperature glass, which can withstand high temperatures better than glass; this, in turn, gave rise to the alternative name—*quartz-iodine*—that is sometimes applied to this lamp type. Another result of high filament temperature is that the gas pressure inside the quartz envelope is elevated, and the lamps have been known to rupture

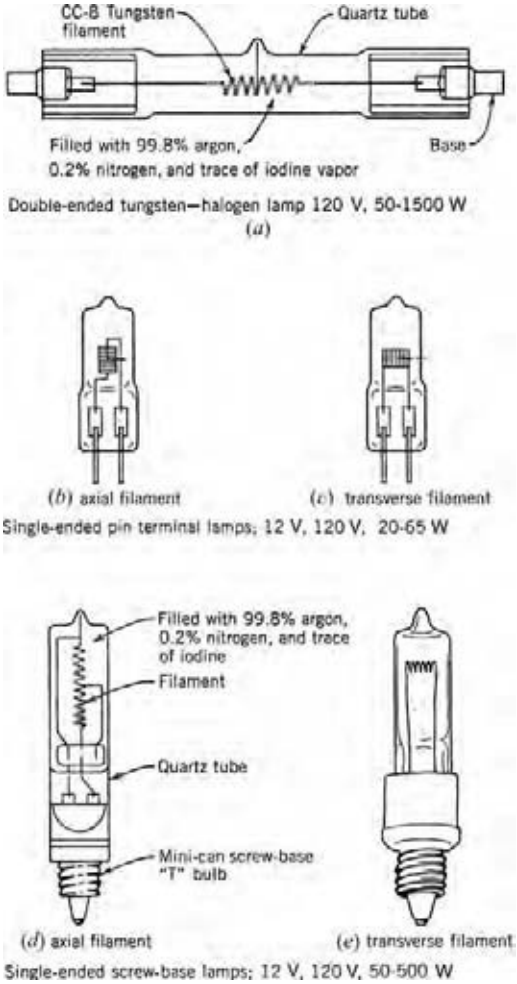


Fig. 12.9 *Common tungsten-halogen lamps are available in a variety of designs.*

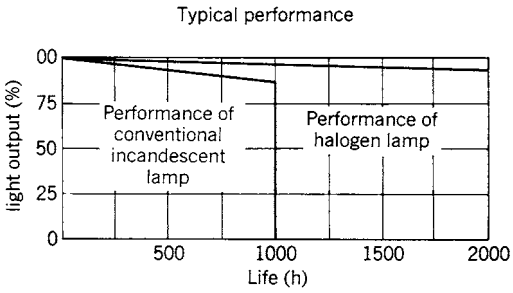


Fig. 12.10 *The self-regenerative halogen cycle slows the evaporation of the tungsten filament, and consequently lowers light depreciation and lengthens the lamp life compared to a standard incandescent lamp.*

violently, spraying hot quartz fragments over a wide area. As a consequence, all manufacturers now provide a cautionary notice with their lamps. The wording varies but essentially states that due to the possibility of rupture, lamps should be handled carefully, guarded against abrasion and overvoltage operation, and, most importantly, adequately shielded or screened. The shield can be a reflector cover, a fixture lens, a screen, or other devices that will contain hot flying fragments in the event that a lamp shatters or high temperatures cause a fire hazard.

A number of standards organizations and professional societies have adopted and published cautionary notices, including the *IESNA Lighting Handbook*, ANSI Standard C78.1451-2002, the Canadian Standards Association, and the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC). Exceptions to these precautions exist when a lamp is protected by encapsulation inside a sealed envelope. Such encapsulated construction is now common in R, PAR, MR, and modified A-lamp shapes. These encapsulated lamps are intended for direct replacement of standard incandescent lamps of the same bulb shape.

Other halogen lamp characteristics are similar in all respects to those of the standard incandescent lamp. Color temperature ranges between 2000 K and 3400 K; spectral energy distribution is typical of blackbody radiation, and dimming characteristics are similar to those of standard incandescent lamps.

12.10 TUNGSTEN-HALOGEN LAMP TYPES

The basic lamp is a small gas-filled quartz tube, as shown in Fig. 12.9. Because the lamp must be used with some sort of reflector, it is manufactured with different terminations to suit the fixture

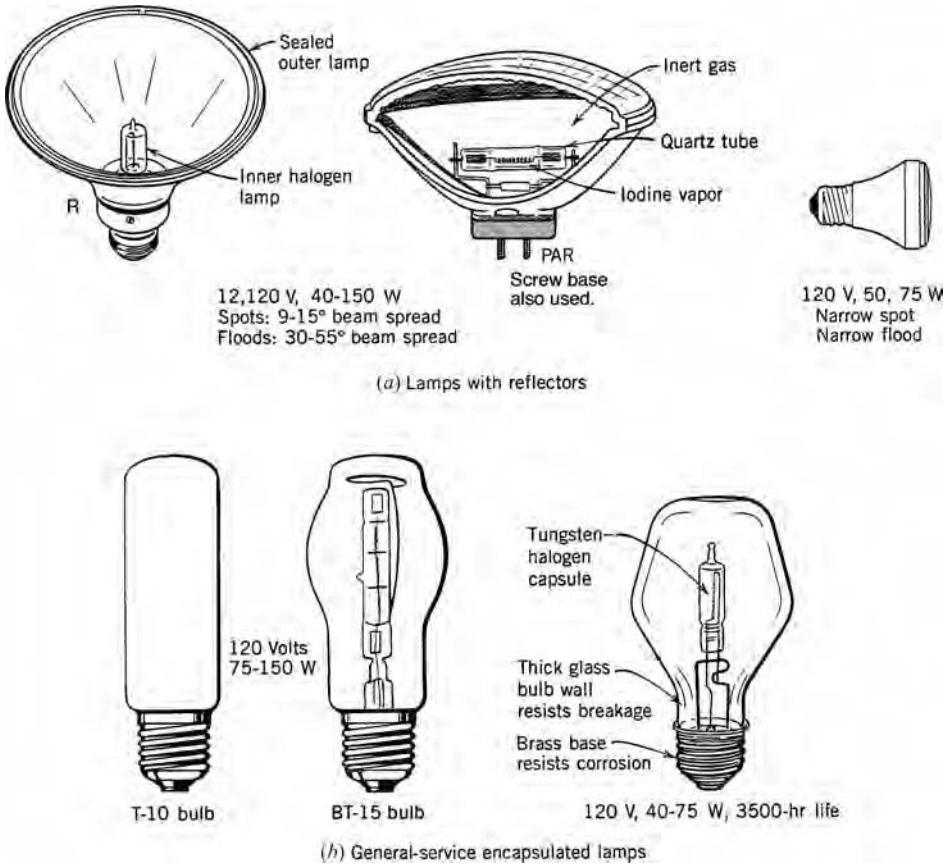


Fig. 12.11 *Tungsten-halogen lamps can be mounted in a variety of ways inside an enclosing glass envelope. (a) Lamp is used either horizontally or vertically to the reflector or (b) used without a reflector in a protective glass envelope and an Edison medium screw base.*

reflector or secondary lamp envelope in which it is placed. All the lamp types shown in Fig. 12.9 can be used where lamp-only replacement is intended, such as in floodlights or reflector fixtures, by using appropriate bases—slide contacts for double-ended lamps, screw bases for screw-base lamps, and special ceramic pinhole bases for pin-type lamps.

(a) Encapsulated Lamps

These lamps (Figs. 12.11 and 12.12) are sealed units intended for direct replacement of either a corresponding distribution-type incandescent lamp in the case of reflector units or general-service incandescent lamps for reflectorless units. As a sealed unit, the halogen lamp is not replaceable, and the entire unit is discarded on burnout. Reflector units are available in a wide variety of beam patterns detailed in manufacturers' catalogs. Typical data are given in Fig. 12.13.

Reflector lamps are also available with a variety of filters: so-called cool lamps that direct much of the heat out through the back of the lamp; high-efficiency units that reflect and concentrate the heat back on the lamp filament; lamps with



Fig. 12.12 *PAR halogen lamp with standard medium screw bases in sizes PAR 16, 20, 30, and 38 with a short or elongated lamp neck. Lamp wattages range from 45 to 90 W. (Courtesy of Philips Lighting Co.)*

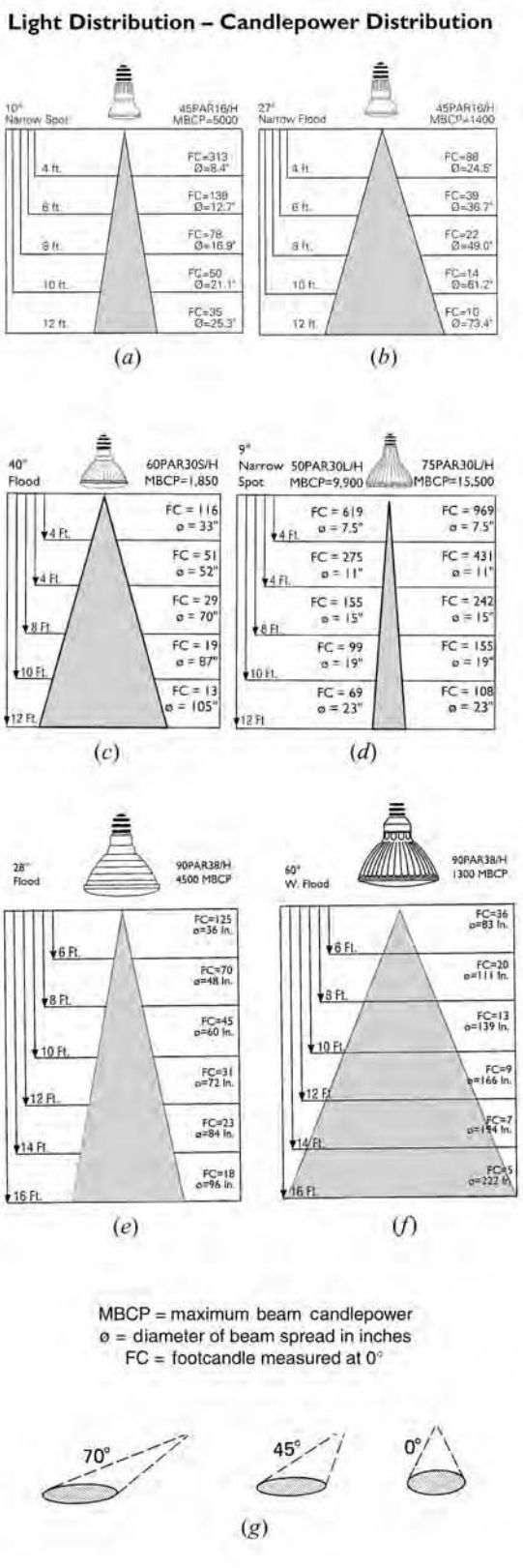


Fig. 12.13 *Typical PAR halogen lamp data. The beam of the PAR lamp is conical in shape. Each type of PAR lamp has a distinct illumination pattern (a–f) that varies in size and light intensity, depending on the angle at which the lamp is aimed and its distance from the area illuminated. (g) The round lighting pattern changes to oval or elliptical when the lamp is aimed at an angle, making illuminance calculations much more complex. (Data in a–f courtesy of Philips Lighting Co.)*

ultraviolet (UV) filters for use in displays of UV-sensitive objects; and others. For complete design information, access to current manufacturers' catalogs is a necessity.

(b) MR-16 Precision Reflector Units

Miniature single-ended 12-V lamps of 2-in. diameter (and smaller), with multifaceted dichroic (heat-ejecting) reflectors and a bipin base, have found very wide acceptance in all types of display and accent lighting applications. These reflector units, illustrated in Fig. 12.14, essentially comprise an entire lighting fixture, like R and PAR lamps, requiring only a base for electrification. The lamps are known by the generic name *MR-16*, after an early 2-in.-diameter model, although each major manufacturer utilizes its own trade



(*a*)

FOOT CANDLE CONES

TRU-AIM TITAN™

10° NSP

Distance from Source (in ft.)	Diameter (in ft.)	Center FC 20W	35W	50W	65W
0'					
3'	0.5	556	922	1278	1556
6'	1.0	139	231	319	389
9'	1.6	62	102	142	173
12'	2.1	35	58	80	97
15'	2.6	22	37	51	62

25° NFL

Distance from Source (in ft.)	Diameter (in ft.)	Center FC 50W	65W
0'			
3'	1.3	356	444
6'	2.7	89	111
9'	4.0	40	49
12'	5.3	22	28
15'	6.7	14	18

40° FL

Distance from Source (in ft.)	Diameter (in ft.)	Center FC 20W	35W	50W	65W
0'					
3'	2.2	78	139	222	233
6'	4.4	19	35	56	58
9'	6.6	9	15	25	26
12'	8.7	5	9	14	15
15'	10.9	3	6	9	9

60° VWFL

Distance from Source (in ft.)	Diameter (in ft.)	Center FC 20W	35W	50W	65W
0'					
3'	3.5	39	72	111	117
6'	6.9	10	18	28	29
9'	10.4	4	8	12	13
12'	13.9	2	5	7	7
15'	17.3	2	3	4	5

(*b*)

Fig. 12.14 *(a) Photo of a particular design of an MR-16-type lamp. (b) Typical illumination cones for the lamp shown in (a). Abbreviations: NSP, narrow spot; NFL, narrow flood; FL, flood; VWFL, very wide flood. (Courtesy of Osram-Sylvania Products, Inc.)*

name. A multi-mirror-faceted dichroic reflector produces a "cool" precision light beam by ejecting approximately two-thirds of the lamp heat (long-wave radiation) through the back of the reflector. Luminaires must provide adequate means to dissipate this heat to avoid early lamp failure or creation of a fire hazard. The lamps are rated from 20 to 75 W. Beam characteristics of a few MR-16 lamps are given in Fig. 12.14.

Gaseous Discharge Lamps

Lamps in this category include fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lamps (mercury-vapor, metal-halide, high-pressure sodium), which function by producing an ionized gas in a glass tube or container rather than heating a filament. Discharge lamps are known for their long life and high efficacy. This section describes the function of ballasts and the various types of gaseous discharge lamps.

12.11 BALLASTS

All gaseous discharge lamps require a ballast to trigger the lamp with a high ignition voltage and to control the amount of electric current for proper operation. Ballasts discussed in this section primarily apply to fluorescent systems. Refer to manufacturers' information for details regarding HID ballasts. Matching of ballast to lamp is critical to successful lamp operation.

The function of a ballast is threefold:

- To supply controlled voltage to heat the lamp filaments in preheat and rapid-start circuits
- To supply sufficient voltage to start the lamp by striking an arc through the tube
- To limit the lamp current once the lamp is started

Organizations involved with ballast standards and testing include:

ANSI—American National Standards Institute: originates standards on a national level

CBM—Certified Ballast Manufacturers: a group of fluorescent ballast manufacturers who produce ballasts that conform to certain ANSI specifications

ETL—Electrical Testing Laboratories, Inc.: a private, independent organization and recognized authority in measurement and testing of lamps and lighting equipment

UL—Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.: an independent, nonprofit organization that certifies electrical products to ensure public safety from fire

In the United States, ballasts should be UL labeled and CBM/ETL certified (for a limited number of fluorescent ballasts). The UL label ensures intrinsic safety. CBM establishes high-quality design criteria, and ETL tests ballasts to determine that design standards have been met.

(a) Ballast Characteristics

Because of the considerable energy that is lost in inefficient ballasts, manufacturers and standards organizations have established criteria by which ballast energy efficiency can be judged. These characteristics allow comparisons of lighting system operation and performance parameters.

Ballast Factor. Ballast factor is the measured ability of a ballast to produce light from a connected lamp. It is the ratio of the light output of a lamp when operated on a tested ballast to the light output of the same lamp operated by a standard laboratory reference ballast (using ANSI test procedures). Ballasts with extremely high or low ballast factors can reduce lamp life because of inconsistencies in lamp current. ANSI Standard C82.11 prescribes a minimum ballast factor for CBM certification for a certain number of ballast types. A ballast may have different ballast factors for different lamps—for example, one ballast factor for operating standard lamps and another for operating energy-saving lamps. A lamp with a low ballast factor uses less energy, but light output is also less. A lamp with a high ballast factor uses more energy and provides more light output. Energy savings with high ballast factors may be achieved by using lower-wattage lamps and fewer fixtures. Ballast factor is not a measure of energy efficiency. Although a lower ballast factor reduces lamp lumen output, it also consumes proportionately less input power. Therefore, careful selection of a lamp-ballast system with a specific ballast factor

will allow a designer to better minimize energy use by "tuning" the lighting levels in a space. For example, in new construction, high ballast factors are generally best, since fewer luminaires will be required to meet the light-level requirements. In retrofit applications or in areas with less critical visual tasks, such as aisles and hallways, lower ballast factors may be more appropriate (Eley Associates, 1993).

Ballast Efficacy Factor. Ballast efficacy factor is the ratio of ballast factor (as a percentage) to power (in watts). The ballast efficacy factor is an expression of lumens per watt for a given lamp-ballast combination. Comparisons using the ballast efficacy factor are valid only when comparing ballasts for equivalent systems in terms of lamp type and number of lamps.

Because ballast factor is an indication of the amount of light produced by a ballast-lamp combination and input watts is an indication of power consumed, the ballast efficacy factor is an expression of lumens per watt for a given lighting system. This measurement is generally used to compare the efficiency of various lighting systems. For example, a ballast with a ballast factor of 0.88 using 60 watts of input power has a ballast efficacy factor of 1.466 (where, $0.88 \times 100 \div 60 = 1.466$). Another ballast utilizing the same input power with a ballast factor of 0.82 has a ballast efficacy factor of 1.366. The first ballast therefore offers greater efficacy because it has a higher ballast efficacy factor (1.466 vs. 1.366).

Power Factor. Ballast power factor is a measure of how effectively a ballast converts the voltage and current supplied by a power source into watts of usable power delivered to the lamp. In general, the power factor is determined from the ballast design and is considered high (if above 0.90), low (below 0.79), or "corrected" (0.80 to 0.90). Power factor addresses the effective use of power supplied to a ballast, it does not relate to the luminous output of a ballast-lamp combination. High power factor ballasts are more expensive, but the additional cost is readily repaid by lower line losses, smaller circuit conductors in long runs, and a larger number of fixtures per circuit. Energy conservation and economic considerations dictate the use of power factor-corrected and high power factor ballasts.

(b) Ballast Types

There are three basic types of ballasts: magnetic, hybrid, and electronic. Ballast technology has greatly changed in the past 10 years because of energy policy changes developed by the U.S. DOE, state energy offices, the ACEEE, the Alliance to Save Energy, the Natural Resources Defense Council, and lighting manufacturers.

Magnetic. Magnetic ballasts (core-and-coil) contain a magnetic core of several laminated steel plates wrapped with copper windings, and they operate at line frequency (60 Hz). These ballasts (Fig. 12.15) have become essentially obsolete, although they are found in existing buildings.

Hybrid. Also called cathode-disconnect ballasts, hybrid ballasts use a magnetic core-and-coil transformer and an electronic switch for the electrode-heating unit. Like magnetic ballasts, they operate at 60 Hz. The ballast disconnects the electrode-heating unit after starting the lamp.

Electronic. Solid-state electronic ballasts operate lamps at 20 to 60 kHz and have less power loss than magnetic ballasts. Lamp efficacy increases by approximately 10% to 15% compared to operation at 60 Hz. Electronic ballasts are lighter, more energy-efficient, generate less heat, and are virtually silent. They are also available as dimming ballasts, which allow light output to be controlled between 1% and 100%.

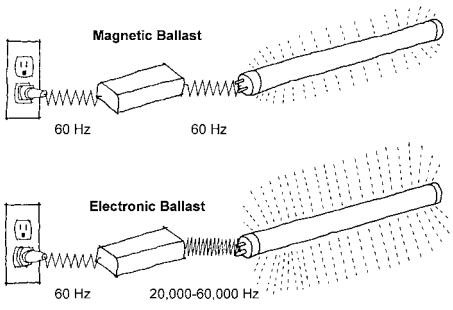


Fig. 12.15 *Ballasts for fluorescent lamps have traditionally been of the electromagnetic type, operating at a frequency of 60 Hz. Electronic ballasts operate at frequencies of 20,000–60,000 Hz and cause lighting systems to convert electric power to light more efficiently than systems run by electromagnetic ballasts. (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

Special. Lamps operating at other than 430 mA, including low-current and high-current units, require matching ballasts to supply the required current, waveform, and circuitry. Use of one manufacturer's low-current lamp with another's low-current ballast is not suggested without prior testing or a specific manufacturer's recommendation. The principal varieties of nonstandard ballasts are as follows:

1. *Low-current ballasts* are intended to match specific low-current lamps, including T8 triphosphor units, slimline lamps, and others.
2. *High-current ballasts* are intended to be used with high-output lamps. The purpose of this combination is either to increase output in an existing installation or to reduce the number of fixtures in a new installation.
3. *Energy-saving ballasts* are designed to reduce the total wattage of the lamp-ballast combination. Part of this power reduction is produced by more efficient design of the ballast itself. Another part is due to a lower current rating for the lower wattage of the lamp itself. A third portion is frequently a switching arrangement in the ballast that disconnects the lamp filaments after an arc is struck (after the lamp ignites). This technique can save 4 to 8 W per lamp-ballast pair.
4. *Multilevel ballasts* are useful when it is desired to change lighting levels evenly. The usual unit is two-level—that is, full output and 50%—but three-level units are available for full, two-thirds, and one-third output.

In addition to these ballast types, there are special units for low or high ambient temperature, weatherproof units, and low leakage-to-ground units for hospital applications.

(c) Ballast Performance

Heat. Ballast heat is usually transferred to the luminaire body by direct metal-to-metal contact (which must be unimpeded) and is then dissipated by radiation and convection from the fixture. The location and method of fixture installation affect the heat transfer from the fixture and, consequently, the ballast temperature. Operating temperature directly affects ballast life. At normal operating temperature, a ballast life of 12 to 15 years can be expected. Generally, ballast life is halved for every 50°F above the 194°F (27.8°C above 90°C) operating temperature and, conversely, is doubled for every 50°F (27.8°C) reduction in operating temperature below 194°F (90°C). Electronic ballasts will usually start a lamp at 50°F (24°C) minimum. A special ballast is required for starting at temperatures down to 0°F (−18°C). The cooler operation of electronic ballasts reduces air-conditioning costs. Not only do the ballasts operate cooler, but lamps operated by electronic ballasts produce the same light output with lower losses. Therefore, overall energy costs for an electronic ballast installation are reduced because the fixtures use less energy and produce less heat for the same light output.

Noise. All electromagnetic and many electronic ballasts make a humming sound that originates from the inherent magnetic action causing vibrations in the steel laminations of the core-and-coil assembly. Because electronic ballasts have a small (or no) core-and-coil assembly, they have the lowest noise output. Most electronic ballasts make almost no sound. Ballast noise, if any, may become amplified because (1) of the method of mounting the ballast in the fixture, (2) of loose parts in the fixture, or (3) ceilings, walls, floors, and hard furniture reflect the noise. Ballasts are sound-rated by a letter, A through F, which indicates not actual sound developed, but performance in a space. A rating of A designates the quietest ballast. Selection should be made on the basis of the ballast sound rating and the requirements of the installation.

Flicker. Flicker is caused by extinguishment and reignition of the arc within a fluorescent tube and is visible only when a lamp is operated at a relatively low frequency (such as the 60 Hz typical of North American electrical systems) and where long-persistence phosphors are thin or entirely absent (i.e., at the extreme ends of a lamp). A magnetic ballast does not alter the incoming line frequency. Thus, the lamp voltage crosses zero 120 times each second, resulting in 120 light output oscillations per second. This flicker is typically not noticeable to most viewers—but there is evidence that flicker of this magnitude can cause adverse effects, such as eyestrain and headache. Most electronic ballasts operate at higher-than-line frequency, which reduces lamp flicker to an

essentially imperceptible level. Manufacturers can specify the flicker percentage of a particular ballast working in conjunction with a given lamp type and phosphor composition. For a standard phosphor lamp operated at 60 Hz (magnetic ballast), the flicker percentage is about 30%; with an electronic ballast (high frequency) the flicker percentage is nil.

Dimming Control. Dimming of electronically ballasted lamps is accomplished within the ballast itself. The dimming process uses energy that should be accounted for in lighting system energy-use calculations. Electronic ballasts alter the output power to the lamps by a low-voltage signal into the output circuit. High-power switching devices to condition the input power are not required. This arrangement allows control of one or more ballasts independent of the electrical distribution system.

Radio Noise. Occasionally, a defective ballast will cause radio noise (commonly referred to as radio frequency interference [RFI]). In general, however, RFI is not produced by a ballast, but by the arc discharge in a fluorescent tube. To minimize RFI, ballasts are available with integral RF noise suppressors. In extreme cases, additional suppression can be obtained by installation of RF noise attenuators in a lighting fixture.

Fluorescent Lamps

The second major category of electric light sources is gaseous discharge lamps, of which the fluorescent lamp is the best-known and most widely used type. Since their introduction in 1937, fluorescent lamps have almost completely supplanted incandescent lamps in all fields except specialty lighting and residential use. The typical linear fluorescent lamp comprises a cylindrical glass tube sealed at both ends and containing a mixture of an inert gas, generally argon, and *low-pressure* mercury vapor. Built into each end of the tube is a cathode that supplies the electrons to start and maintain an electric arc, or gaseous discharge. Short-wave UV radiation, which is produced by the mercury arc, is absorbed by phosphors coating the inside of the tube, causing a reaction that emits visible radiation (light). The particular mixture of phosphors used governs the quantity and spectral quality of the light output. Light from fluorescent sources radiates from a larger lamp surface area than is the case with incandescent sources. The light is diffuse, which is suitable for illuminating or washing large areas such as ceiling planes.

12.12 FLUORESCENT LAMP CONSTRUCTION

Rapid-start and instant-start fluorescent lamps are commonly used today. Preheat lamps are a legacy type. Lamp families include linear and compact. Linear lamps are tubular in shape, with the most popular versions being T8 and T5 (26-mm and 16-mm) in standard and high output (HO) and the legacy T12 (38-mm) lamp. Compact fluorescents include dedicated socket versions of single-tube, double-tube, and triple-tube lamps. The descriptions that follow cover *standard* lamps and circuits. Special lamps, accessories, and circuits, including low-wattage lamps, triphosphor lamps, and special-shape lamps, are discussed separately.

(a) Preheat Lamps

Older fluorescent fixtures use a preheat technology that heats the gas in order to start the lamp and use a mechanism called a *starter*. Preheat fixtures either have an automatic starter or require a manual starting action. The original T12 (38-mm) fluorescent lamp was a preheat design. Construction of a typical hot cathode lamp (used with both preheat and rapid-start types) is shown in Fig. 12.16. All preheat lamps have bi-pin bases (see Fig. 12.16).

This lamp circuit utilizes a separate starter, a small cylindrical device that plugs into a preheat fixture. When the lamp circuit is closed, the starter energizes the cathodes; after a 2- to 5-second delay, it initiates a high-voltage arc across the lamp, causing it to start. Most starters are automatic, although in desk lamps preheating is accomplished by depressing the start button for a few seconds and then releasing it. This closes the circuit and allows the heating current to flow; releasing the button causes the arc to strike. Preheat lamps are no longer the industry standard but are included here as a point of comparison.

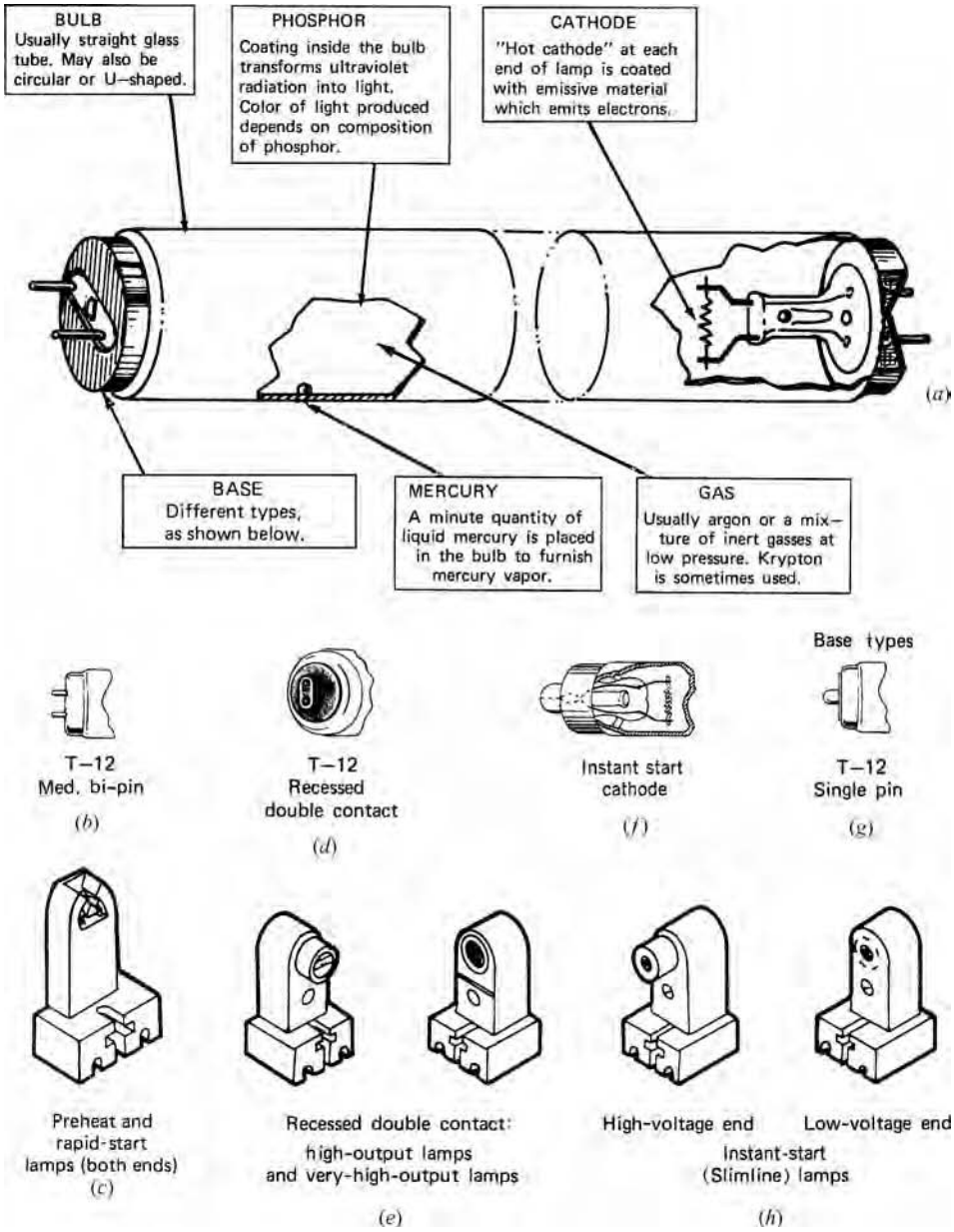


Fig. 12.16 *Details of typical fluorescent lamps and associated lampholders. (a) Construction of preheat–rapid-start bi-pin base lamp. (Courtesy of GTE/Sylvania, Inc.) This type of lamp has type (b) base and is held in type (c) lampholder. High-output HO and VHO rapid-start lamps use a recessed double contact base (d) and lampholders (e). Instant-start lamps are similar in construction to (a) except with cathode construction (f), have a single-pin base (g), and use single-pin lampholders (h), which are different at each end.*

(b) Rapid-Start Lamps

Today, the most popular fluorescent lamp design is the rapid-start lamp, shown in Fig. 12.17. This design functions similarly to the traditional preheat lamp, but without a starter switch. Instead, the lamp's ballast constantly channels current through both electrodes, eliminating the delay inherent in a preheat circuit. This current flow is configured so that there is a charge difference between the two electrodes, establishing a voltage across the tube. Most fluorescent fixtures with two or more lamps are known as *rapid start*. When the lamp circuit is energized, the arc is struck

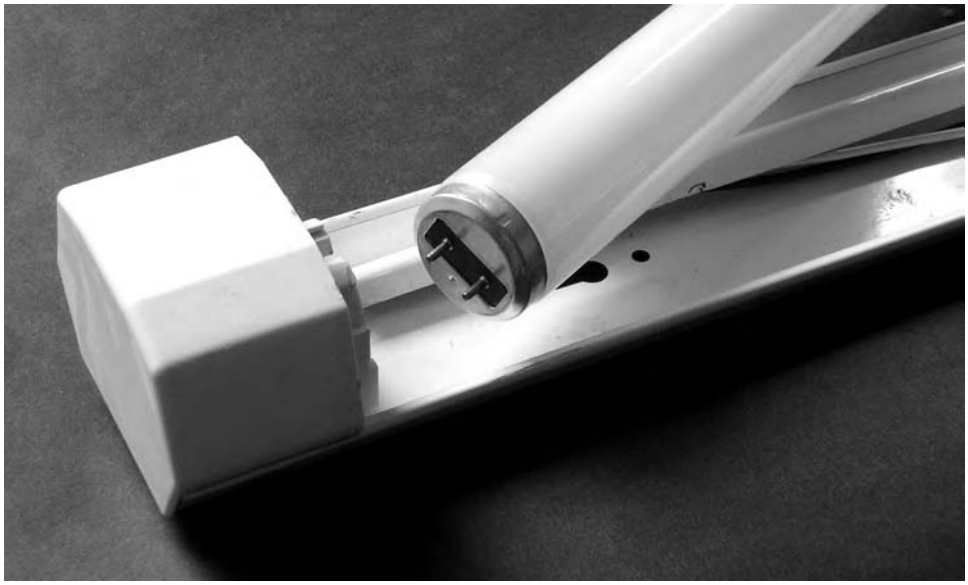


Fig. 12.17 *Rapid-start fluorescent lamps have two pins that slide against two contact points in an electrical circuit. The ballast constantly channels current through both electrodes, creating a charge difference between the two electrodes and establishing a voltage across the tube. (Photo by Jonathan Meendering; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

immediately. No external starter is required. Because of the similarity of operation, rapid-start lamps will operate satisfactorily in a preheat circuit. The reverse is not true, because the preheat lamp requires more current to heat the cathode than the rapid-start ballast provides.

Most rapid-start T12 lamps operate at 430 mA. If the current is increased, the output of the lamp also increases. Two generic types of higher-output rapid-start lamps are available. One operates at 800 mA and is called simply *high output* (HO). The second, which operates at 1500 mA (1.5 A), is called (by different manufacturers) *very high output* (VHO), *superhigh output*, or simply the *1500-mA, rapid-start lamp*. There is also a 1500-mA lamp that uses what looks like a dented or grooved glass tube. This lamp has a somewhat higher output than a standard VHO tube. All HO lamps use double-contact bases and special ballasts (see Fig. 12.16). HO lamps are used in applications such as outdoor sign lighting, street lighting, and merchandise displays where high output is required from a limited-size source. Because of the serious heat problems involved, VHO lamps are frequently operated without enclosing fixtures. Conversely, HO and VHO lamps are frequently used in cold environments that prevent proper operation of standard output 430-mA lamps. Most HO and VHO lamps have slightly lower luminous efficacy than a standard 430-mA, rapid-start lamp and have a considerably shorter life. It should be noted that only rapid-start lamps are to be used with motion sensors or in conjunction with sequential repetitive dimming of lamps. Use of instant-start lamps in this application will overload the cathodes, and lamp life will be reduced.

(c) Instant-Start Fluorescent Lamps

Instant-start fluorescent lamps use a high-voltage transformer to apply a very high initial voltage to the cathodes. An excess of electrons on the cathode surface forces some electrons into the fill gas, which ionizes the gas. This creates an instant voltage difference between the cathodes, establishing an electric arc. These lamps have only a single pin at each end that also acts as a switch to break the ballast circuit when the lamp is removed, thus lessening the shock hazard (see Figs. 12.13 and 12.16). The lamps are generally operated in two-lamp circuits at various currents; normal currents are 200 and 430 mA. The high-voltage starting characteristic of instant-start circuits lowers the lamp life to about half that of

a corresponding rapid-start lamp. Instant-starts have the advantage of being able to start at much lower ambient temperatures (below 50°F [10°C]) than rapid-start circuits. This starting characteristic makes the instant-start lamp and circuit particularly applicable to outdoor use.

12.13 FLUORESCENT LAMP LABELS

Standard fluorescent lamp labels are printed on the end of a lamp and are identified by several letters and numbers, as shown in Table 12.4. The typical labeling is in the form FSWWCCC-TDD (each manufacturer has variations on this format). Depending upon the type of fluorescent lamp, designations for color rendering index and color temperatures are also included on the label.

TABLE 12.4 Fluorescent Lamp Label Designations

Label	Explanation
F	Fluorescent lamp. "G" means germicidal shortwave UV lamp.
S	Style—no letter indicates a normal straight tube; "C" means Circline.
W	Nominal power in watts: 4, 5, 8, 12, 15, 20, 30, 40, etc.
CCC	Color. W = white, CW = cool white, WW = warm white, BL/BLB = black light, etc.
T	Tubular bulb
DD	Diameter of tube in eighths of an inch. T8 is 1 in. (nominal 25 mm), T5 is ⅝ in. (nominal 15 mm), etc.

12.14 FLUORESCENT LAMP TYPES

T8 Fluorescent Lamps. Over the past 20 years, T8 lamps have afforded designers (and their clients) cost-effective and energy-efficient lighting systems that are visually comfortable and have a high degree of flexibility in their application. T8 lamps are 1 in. (25 mm) in diameter; they are available in wattages of 17, 25, 32, and 40 W at 2-ft, 3-ft, 4-ft, and 5-ft (600-mm, 900-mm, 1200-mm, and 1500-mm) lengths, respectively. There are two color rendering categories of T8 lamps: 700 (75 CRI) and 800 (85 CRI) series, which relate to the color rendering properties of the triphosphor coatings used. Lamp manufacturers have developed a standard designation to indicate the color temperature of a lamp. For example, "30" indicates a 3000 K lamp. T8 lamps are available in 3000 K, 3500 K, and 4100 K color temperatures, designated "30," "35," and "41," respectively. Table 12.5 shows a comparison of lamp technologies as fluorescent lamp manufacturers have increased efficacy and color rendering while decreasing diameter and wattage.

T5 Fluorescent Lamps. A new line of T5 lamp technology was developed in Europe and introduced in North America in 1996. Although it was still expensive, the introduction of a T5 HO line in 1998 offered about twice the lumen output in the same length as its T8 counterpart, with an efficacy that is attractive in meeting project energy goals. The T5 is the first "metric" lamp introduced in the United States, yet it is commonly called T5 because of industry nomenclature. Standard and

TABLE 12.5 Comparative Characteristics of Tubular Fluorescent Lamps[a]

	T12	T8	T5	T5HO
Initial rated light output	3350 lumens	2950 lumens	2900 lumens	5000 lumens
Nominal lamp watts	40W	32 W	28W	54W
Initial lamp efficacy[1]	84 lm/W	92 lm/W	104 lm/W	93 lm/W
Initial system efficacy[2]	88 lm/W	90 lm/W	89 lm/W	85 lm/W
Lumen maintenance[1]	78%	93%	97%	95%
Maintained system efficacy	69 lm/W	84 lm/W	86 lm/W	81 lm/W
Rated life[3]	20,000 hr	20,000 hr	16,000 hr	16,000 hr
CRI	80	85	85	85
Optimum operating temperature	77°F [25°C]	77°F [25°C]	95°F [35°C]	95°F [35°C]

[a]Figures are representative; for exact figures, consult current catalogs.

[1]Based on 4-ft nominal length, CRI 85 lamps.

[2]Based on 4-ft nominal length, CRI 85, two-lamp rapid-start, electronic ballast.

[3]Varies with manufacturer and phosphor coating technology.

HO T5 lamps are available in 22-in., 34-in., 46-in., and 58-in. (560-mm, 864-mm, 1163-mm, and 1473-mm) lengths. The standard T5 and the T5 HO lamps are the same diameter and width. The 46-in. T5 (nominal 4 ft) is rated at 2900 lumens, similar to the lumen per watt output of a T8 lamp (2950 lumens). By contrast, the 46-in. T5 HO lamp is rated as high as 5000 lumens, offering twice the maintained light output of a T8 lamp. Because of its smaller ⅝-in. (15-mm) diameter construction, significantly less glass, mercury, and high-quality phosphors are needed for its construction. T5 lamps also allow a designer to use fewer lamps (and fixtures), thus providing certain savings on installation and long-term maintenance. The narrow lamp diameter has provided an opportunity for the design of new fixtures and for use in low-profile, indirect luminaires. The color rendering quality of light from T5 lamps (CRI 85) is excellent, although the potential for glare problems exists, which can be addressed by sophisticated shielding techniques. Utilizing T5 (and particularly T5 HO) lamps in direct delivery lighting installations requires special attention to glare control.

12.15 CHARACTERISTICS OF FLUORESCENT LAMP OPERATION

Five characteristics define the operation of fluorescent lamps:

- *Efficacy*—light output per unit of power input
- *Lumen maintenance*—the decreasing output of light as a lamp ages
- *Lamp life*—average (statistically defined) lamp life expectancy
- *Temperature and humidity*—how a lamp responds to extreme environmental operating conditions.
- *Dimming*—output reduction of a fluorescent lamp

(a) Efficacy

$$\text{luminous efficacy} = \frac{\text{lumens (light output)}}{\text{watts (power consumed including ballast losses)}}$$

$$= \text{lumens per watt (lm/W)}$$

The design efficacy (lumens per watt) of a fluorescent lamp depends upon the operating current and the phosphors utilized. Fluorescent lamp efficacy is further dependent upon the lamp length, ambient temperature, frequency of the electricity supply, and ballast operation. *Wattage*, in itself, is a meaningless quantity unless it is associated with a lumen output figure. Thus, energy-saving low-wattage or high-output lamps with their special ballasts are seldom the indicated choice in new design because their efficacy does not usually justify the cost premium. These special lamps are useful in retrofit work, in which case field measurements of illuminance and lamp temperature are required before selecting a replacement lamp–ballast combination.

(b) Lumen Maintenance

The lumen output of a fluorescent tube decreases rapidly during the first 100 hours of burning, and thereafter much more slowly. Phosphors deteriorate, typically blackening at the ends of a lamp, thereby blocking some light. Most product catalogs list "initial lumens," which is the lamp output under *laboratory conditions* after 100 hours of burning, and "mean" or "design" lumens, which is lamp output at 40% of life. Lighting levels gradually drop as a system ages until, somewhere in the middle of the effective life of the lamps (Fig. 12.18),

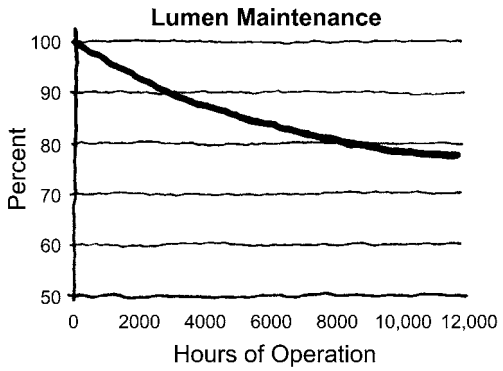


Fig. 12.18 *Lumen maintenance curve for fluorescent lamps. Lumen maintenance is the ability of a lamp to retain its lumen output over time. Greater lumen maintenance means that a lamp will remain brighter longer. The opposite of lumen maintenance is lumen depreciation, which represents the reduction of lumen output over time. In the United States, mean lumens is a measure taken at 40% of the rated lamp life. In the United Kingdom, lighting levels are based upon maintained illumination, and it is necessary to determine the minimum lighting level in the installation when replacement of lamps is due, taking into account all possible reasons for deterioration. (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering.)*

the intended "maintained" illuminance of a system is (temporarily) achieved.

(c) Lamp Life

The life of a standard fluorescent lamp is defined as the period of time an average lamp is expected to last, depending upon the burning hours per start. It is expressed as "rated average life" in hours of operation. The values listed in lamp catalogs for life are based upon a burning cycle of 3 hours per start (and 20 minutes of "off" status) and represent the average life of a group of lamps; that is, half of the lamps in any group will have burned out at that time. Typical lamp mortality curves are shown in Fig. 12.19, and the effect of burning hours per start is shown in Fig. 12.20. Average rated lamp life is not the same as the time at which lamps are typically replaced, which is usually well before 50% failures occur in a batch. Several factors affect fluorescent lamp life. Longer burning hours per start will extend lamp life. Lamp life is shortened by improper lamp current, improper voltage to the ballast, or improper cathode heating.

From an energy utilization viewpoint, if a lighted space is not utilized for 10 minutes or more, fluorescent lamps should be shut off. This takes into account both direct energy consumption and the resource energy required to replace a lamp as a result of shortening its life. From a cost viewpoint, the break-even point depends upon these factors: (1) lamp life reduction as a function of burning hours per cycle, (2) cost of energy, (3) cost of lamp and lamp replacement, (4) amount of time the lamp remains off when shut off, (5) cost of switching equipment (if any), and (6) life of the building.

With this number of variables, it is not possible to give general solutions, and an individual analysis is required. However, several analyses for ordinary office conditions, using lamp life data as given in Fig. 12.20 (a 20-year fixture life, \$0.085/kWh energy cost escalating 3% annually, \$1.25 lamp cost, 15-minute relamping time, and \$8 per lamp to provide the necessary switch [one switch per two 2-lamp fixtures]), have shown that lamps should be switched off any time they are not in use for 5 to 8 minutes or more. (The spread is caused primarily by variation in local labor rates.) It is thus clearly an economic fallacy to leave lamps burning to achieve longer lamp life.

(d) Effect of Temperature and Humidity

Fluorescent lamps are affected by extremes in ambient temperature and by high humidity. Outside of the optimal operating temperature range, 41 to 77°F (5 to 25°C), there is a rapid drop in light output and difficulty in starting. High humidity causes electrical leakage along the lamp surface, lowering the starting voltage provided by the ballast. Lamps are precoated with silicone to break up moisture films and prevent such leakage.

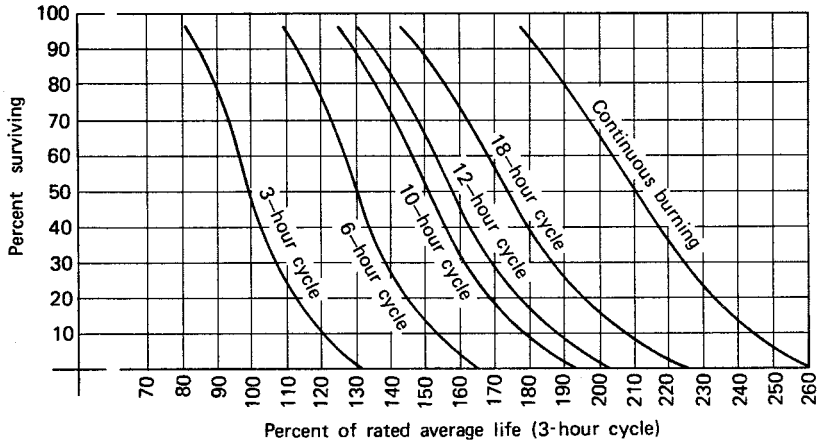


Fig. 12.19 *Typical mortality curves of standard fluorescent lamps.*

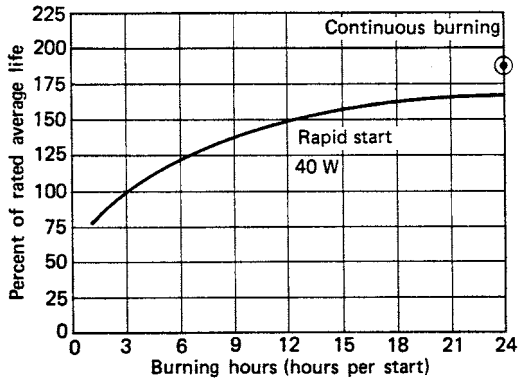


Fig. 12.20 *Effect of burning hours on fluorescent lamp life. Note that at 3 burning hours per start, the average lamp life is 100% of the nominal catalog figure.*

The temperature of the coolest point on the lamp bulb wall determines a lamp's mercury-vapor pressure, which in turn determines the lamp lumen output, wattage, and color. Maximum output for standard lamps occurs at a *bulb* temperature of 104°F (40°C). The bulb wall temperature itself is affected by room ambient temperature, airflow over the lamp (as with air-return fixtures), and the temperature of adjacent surfaces such as a ballast enclosure. Thus, catalog data on lamp output and wattage, based upon laboratory tests of bare tubes at 77°F (25°C) ambient temperature in still air, may be very far from actual field performance.

(e) Dimming

Dimming of a fluorescent lamp system reduces energy consumption, can correct overlighting, can balance illumination through integration with daylighting, and allows flexibility when full lighting output is required. Unlike incandescents, which can be dimmed with just a wallbox device, fluorescent lamps require dimming ballasts. The dimming range differs greatly among ballasts. With most electronic dimming ballasts, output can vary between full and a minimum of about 10% of full output. However, electronic, full-range dimming ballasts are also available for some lamp types that operate lamps down to 1% of full lumen output.

A ballast can be configured so that it (1) receives a signal from a control device and subsequently (2) changes the current flowing through a lamp, thereby achieving a gradual, controlled reduction in lamp output. The characteristics of the ballast circuitry affect the duration and extent of the change in current and subsequent lamp output.

Electronic dimming ballasts for fluorescent lamps are designed to respond to either an analog or digital signal to achieve the dimming effect. Because a dimming ballast must be able to communicate with connected controllers, the method becomes the basis for a protocol (common operating parameters adopted by all manufacturers of dimming ballasts and controllers that use that method). This ensures interchangeability between a ballast made by a particular manufacturer and various controllers made by controls manufacturers. Typical applications for dimming include both new construction and retrofit installations: auditoriums and training areas, conference rooms and boardrooms, department and specialty stores, education and healthcare institutions, hotels, houses of worship, private and executive offices, and restaurants.

The primary dimming methods are:

- *Analog:* An analog electronic dimming ballast includes components that perform these functions: electromagnetic interference filtering, rectification, power factor correction, and ballast output to power a lamp. There are several analog methods, including 0-10VDC, two-wire phase-control, three-wire phase-control, and wireless infrared, with 0-10VDC being most often used.
- *Digital:* The digital electronic dimming ballast includes components that perform these functions: electromagnetic interference filtering, rectification, power factor correction, ballast output to power a lamp, and control (as a micro-controller). The micro-controller functions as a storage, receiver, and sender of digital information. The micro-controller can store the ballast address, receive control signals, and send status information.
- *Wireless infrared:* This method uses an infrared transmitter to control the signal and does not require additional wires. The dimmer is either contained in the ballast or provided as an additional component in the light fixture. Wireless infrared control is a good retrofit solution and allows for occupant fixture control. Wireless infrared control is ideally suited for spaces where individual control is desired without additional

wiring, such as conference rooms, boardrooms, and open and private offices.

12.16 FEDERAL STANDARDS FOR FLUORESCENT LAMPS

Enacted in October 1992, the National Energy Policy Act (EPACT) was designed to reduce the U.S. energy bill by approximately $250 billion over a 15-year period. EPACT 1992 and its successor EPACT 2005 mandate minimum standards for lamps in terms of efficacy (lumens per watt) and color rendering index (CRI; the ability of a light source to render colors accurately). EPACT standards eliminated the manufacture and distribution of several major fluorescent lamp types and incandescent lamps that provided the least amount of light for the highest use of energy. The major lamps eliminated are 40 W F40T12 (CW and WW); 75 W F96T12 (CW and WW), and 110 W F96T12/HO (CW and WW). Lamps with very good CRI and special-service fluorescent lamps are excluded from the act.

12.17 SPECIAL FLUORESCENT LAMPS

(a) Low-Energy Lamps

The need for energy conservation, the discontinuance of certain lamp types due to EPACT regulations, and a desire to reduce lighting levels in existing overlighted spaces have resulted in the development of a complete line of low-energy lamps. Wattage ratings for these lamps are lower than those of standard lamps because they are intended primarily as lower-energy direct replacements for existing lamps. All such lamps are clearly marked by the manufacturer. They require special matching ballasts for maximum effectiveness and have an efficacy equal to, or somewhat higher than, that of standard lamps and ballasts. They have the disadvantages of higher cost, the need for special ballasts where maximum energy reduction is desired, generally shorter life, inability to be used in most dimming circuits, and problems with inventory and proper lamp replacement. Their use is indicated only where other light-output and wattage-reduction schemes, such as circuit dimming or reduced-wattage ballasts, are inapplicable.

(b) U-Shaped Lamps

U-shaped lamps were developed to answer a need for a high-efficacy fluorescent source that could be utilized in a square fixture. The U lamp is basically a standard fluorescent tube bent into a U shape and available with 3⅝- or 6-in. (92- or 152 mm-) leg spacing; the former can be accommodated three to a 2-ft × 2-ft (610 mm square) fixture. (The narrower T8 envelope of triphosphor lamps permits a tighter bend; these U lamps have a 1⅝-in. [41 mm] leg-to-leg spacing.) U lamps operate on standard ballasts and have slightly lower output than a corresponding straight tube. In all other respects, a U lamp has the same characteristics as a straight lamp of similar type.

(c) Ecologically Friendly Lamps

ALTO® lamps were developed in 1995 by the Philips Lighting Company to support the reduction of mercury at the source and provide users with environmentally responsible methods for disposal. The ALTO family of lamps includes a broad selection of TCLP-compliant lamps: linear and compact fluorescents, high-pressure sodium lamps, metal–halide, U-bent fluorescent, and the lead-free MasterLine™ ALTO lamps, all of which can be recycled (always the preferred method) or disposed of conventionally. TCLP is the *Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure*—a test developed by the EPA in 1990 to measure hazardous substances that might dissolve into the ecosystem and that is used by the federal government and by most states to determine whether old fluorescent lamps should be characterized as hazardous waste. All fluorescent lamps contain mercury; however, ALTO lamps have the lowest mercury doses available (on average, 70% less mercury than the 2001 industry average) on the market. This product development encouraged other manufacturers to reduce the mercury content in their products—as in the Osram Sylvania (Ecological®) and General Electric (Ecolux®) lines.

(d) UV Lamps

UV lamps emit radiation in the UV spectrum, which includes all electromagnetic radiation with wavelengths in the range of 10 to 400 nanometers (nm).

- The UVA range includes wavelengths from 315 to 400 nm. Wavelengths from about 345 to

400 nm are used for "blacklight" effects (causing many fluorescent objects to glow) and are usually slightly visible if isolated from the more visible wavelengths. Shorter UVA wavelengths from 315 to 345 nm are used for sunning.

- UVB refers to wavelengths from 280 to 315 nm. These wavelengths are more hazardous than UVA wavelengths and are largely responsible for sunburn.
- UVC refers to shorter UV wavelengths, usually from 200 to 280 nm. Wavelengths in this range, especially from the low 200s to about 275 nm, are especially damaging to exposed biological cells. Such short-wave UV radiation is often used for germ killing purposes.

Although UV lamps are not commonly used in architectural lighting, they are included in this section as specialty lamps because they address a wide range of applications in industrial, technological, laboratory, and medical settings. UV lamps include fluorescent black lights, fluorescent tanning and medical UV lamps, "RS" reflector ("floodlamp") sunlamps, and germicidal and EPROM (erasable programmable read-only memory) erasing lamps.

12.18 COMPACT FLUORESCENT LAMPS

Compact fluorescent lamps (CFLs) offer a comparable (in brightness and color rendition), energy-efficient alternative to incandescent lamps. Unlike standard fluorescent lamps, they can directly replace standard incandescent bulbs.

CFLs are simply folded fluorescent tubes with both ends terminating in a common base. Some compact fluorescent lamps have the tubes and ballast permanently connected with a screw-in medium base. Others have separate tubes and ballasts, allowing the tubes to be replaced without changing the ballast. As a result, an exhausted lamp is simply replaced while retaining the existing ballast, resulting in considerable economy. A CFL produces a diffuse light, unlike single-point incandescent lamps. This is an important factor to consider when replacing incandescents with CFLs in high ceiling applications.

CFLs are manufactured in a variety of styles or shapes: two, four, or six tubes; circular or spiral tubes (Fig. 12.21). They are efficient at lower wattages and can produce light output equivalent to that of higher-wattage incandescents (e.g., a typical 60-W incandescent lamp with a 900-lumen output

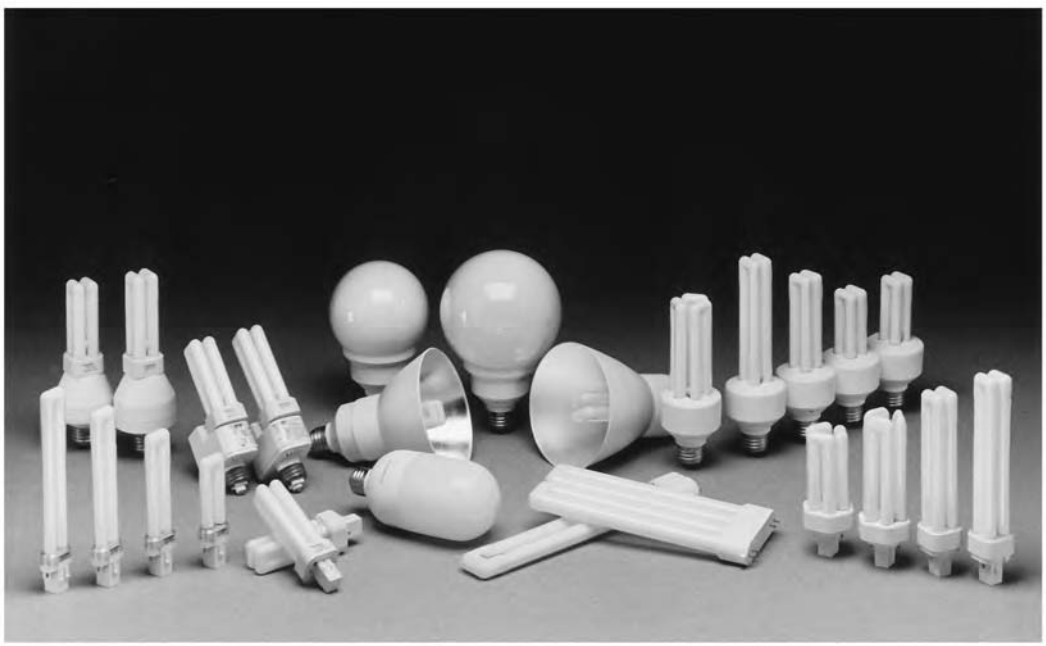


Fig. 12.21 *Family portrait of compact fluorescent lamp designs. Pin-base lamps designed for use with a separable ballast are shown in the foreground, the same lamps mounted in their screw-base ballasts are in the left background, and the one-piece combined lamp-ballast design stands in the right background. Globe and reflector-type replacements for incandescent lamps are in the center of the photo. (Courtesy of Osram-Sylvania.)*

TABLE 12.6 Equivalent Wattage of Common Incandescent Lamps and Compact Fluorescents

Incandescent Watts	Compact Fluorescent Watts
50	9
60	15
75	20
100	25
120	28
150	39

Source: U.S. Department of Energy, Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy—http://apps1.eere.energy.gov/consumer/your_home/lighting_daylighting/index.cfm/mytopic=12060

could be replaced by a 15- to 19-W CFL). The total surface area of the tube(s) determines how much light is produced. The efficacy of lamp-ballast combinations ranges from 55 to 75 lm/W, assuming an electronic ballast. Lamps with magnetic ballasts are available but are not favored because of excessive heat, weight, flicker, and reduced efficiency. Lamp colors are similar to straight lamps (i.e., 3000 K, 3500 K, 4200 K, and 5000 K). All CFLs have a CRI of 80 or higher. Their life is 10,000 to 12,000 hours based on 3 hours per start. Table 12.6 compares the wattage of commonly available incandescent lamps to that of a CFL that provides similar light output.

A major advantage of using CFLs is saving money, as shown in Table 12.7. This table assumes that a lamp is on for 6 hours per day and that the electric rate is 8 cents per kilowatt-hour.

TABLE 12.7 Cost Comparison for Operation of an Incandescent Lamp and a Compact Fluorescent Lamp

	Incandescent 100 W 1750 lumens	Compact Fluorescent 27 W 1750 lumens
Lamp cost ($)	$0.50	$20.00
Rated life (hours)	750	10,000
Efficacy (lumens per watt)	17	64
Energy cost (@8¢/kWh for 10,000 hrs)	$80	$22
Total cost (lamps + energy)	$85	$42

Sources: U.S. Department of Energy, Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy—http://apps1.eere.energy.gov/consumer/your_home/lighting_daylighting/index.cfm/mytopic=12060 and Southface Energy Institute—http://www.southface.org/web/resources&services/publications/factsheets/13e_lite.pdf

HIGH-INTENSITY DISCHARGE LAMPS

High-intensity discharge (HID) lamps (Fig. 12.22) produce light by discharging electricity through a high-pressure vapor. Lamps in this category include mercury-vapor (CRI range 15 to 55), metal-halide (CRI range 65–80), and high-pressure sodium (CRI range 22 to 75). These lamps are characterized by high efficacy, rapid warm-up time, rapid restrike time, and historically poor color rendering capabilities. Mercury-vapor lamps were the first commercially available HID lamps and originally produced a bluish-green light. Today they are available with a color-corrected whiter light, but because of inefficiency and potential hazards they are being replaced by the newer, more efficient metal-halide and high-pressure sodium lamps. Standard high-pressure sodium lamps have the highest efficacy of all HID lamps, but they produce a yellowish light. High-pressure sodium lamps that produce a whiter light are now available, but their efficiency is somewhat lower.

HID lamps are typically used when high illuminance is required over large areas and when energy efficiency and/or long life are desired. Typical applications include gymnasiums, large public areas, warehouses, outdoor activity areas, roadways, parking lots, and pathways.

12.19 MERCURY-VAPOR LAMPS

The mercury-vapor lamp was the first HID lamp to be developed, and for many years it was the only HID lamp commercially available. It has been largely supplanted by the metal-halide lamp because of the latter's better color and efficacy. Though many installations of mercury vapor exist, this technology is no longer specified for new buildings. For the same energy efficiency, metal-halide lamps have better color rendering properties and are now often preferred for indoor applications. Mercury-vapor lamps, most often used to light streets, gymnasiums, and sports arenas, must be maintained properly to be safe.

The mercury-vapor lamp operates by passing an arc through *high-pressure* mercury vapor contained in a quartz arc tube (Fig. 12.23). This produces radiation in both the UV region (as in

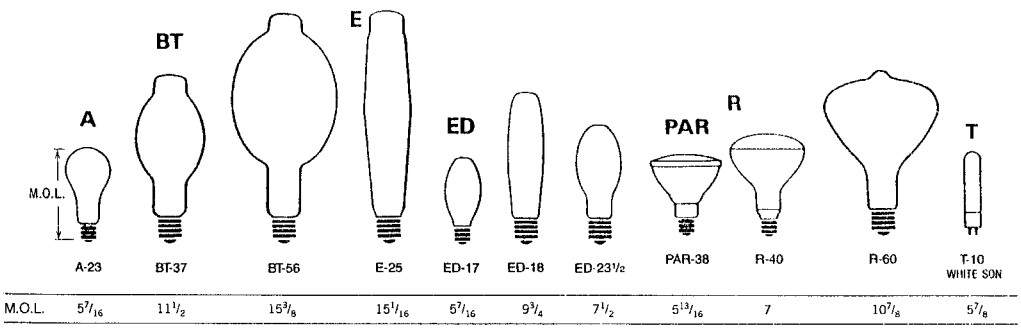


Fig. 12.22 *Bulb shapes for most HID lamps, with their maximum overall length (M.O.L.).*

the low-pressure fluorescent lamp tube) and the visible region, principally in the blue-green band. This color is characteristic of a clear mercury lamp.

(a) UV Radiation

A considerable portion of a mercury lamp's energy spectrum is in the UV range. This does not normally constitute a hazard to persons exposed to even a clear lamp because the outer glass bulb absorbs most of the UV radiation while transmitting light. However, if the outer bulb is broken, the quartz arc tube will continue to burn, and the UV radiation emitted constitutes a safety hazard, particularly to the skin and eyes of persons exposed to it. As a result, manufacturers include a warning to this effect with all mercury lamps sold. Users are also generally informed that a safety-type mercury lamp is readily available that will self-extinguish if the outer glass envelope is broken. An alternative is to use mercury-vapor lamps in an enclosing fixture designed to both prevent lamp breakage from external sources, such as vandalism, and protect users of the lamp in the (unlikely) event of a spontaneous lamp fracture. In the interest of safety, it is suggested that mercury lamps be shut off at least once a week for at least 30 minutes to allow them to cool completely.

In connection with protection from the injurious effects of UV radiation, it is well to note two facts:

1. The shorter the UV wavelength, the more potentially irritating it is to the skin and eyes. Germicidal UV radiation is in the short-wave range (200 to 300 nm).
2. White plaster and polished metal are good reflectors of UV radiation. As a result, UV radiation reflected from such surfaces is almost as dangerous as that from line-of-sight exposure to a UV source.

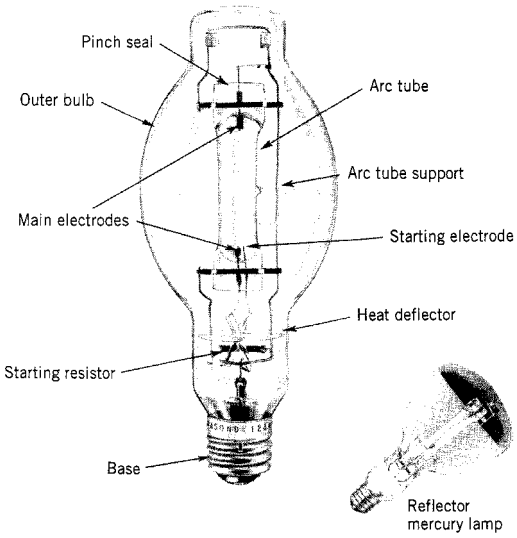


Fig. 12.23 *Typical construction of a clear mercury-vapor lamp.*

(b) Lamp Life

Lamp life is extremely long, averaging 24,000 hours or more based upon 10 burning hours per start. Mercury-vapor lamps are not suitable for applications that are subject to constant switching. Their life is affected by ambient temperature, line voltage, and ballast design.

(c) Lumen Maintenance

This depends upon the specific type of lamp and its burning position. Manufacturers publish data for *each* of their lamp types. In general, clear lamps have the best lumen maintenance, followed by color-improved and phosphor-coated units.

(d) Color Correction and Efficacy

Color correction is normally required because the blue-green light from a clear lamp distorts almost all object colors. (Mercury-vapor lamps are frequently used to illuminate outdoor gardens because the blue-green light enhances the green of trees and vegetation.) Color correction is achieved by adding phosphor to the inside of the outer bulb. The phosphors convert UV radiation to light exactly as in fluorescent lamps, and the stain on the glass acts as a filter to some of the blue–green radiation. The phosphors reradiate generally in the red band, which is entirely absent in the basic lamp color. Depending upon the arc tube design and the phosphors used, the color of the emitted light can be corrected to make it acceptable for general indoor use. Lamps are available in clear, white, color-corrected, and deluxe white in ascending order of color improvement. Efficacy, including ballast loss, ranges from 25 lm/W for a 50-W lamp to a maximum of 55 lm/W for a 1000-W color-corrected lamp. Note that, in general, efficacy is lower than for fluorescent lamps. CRI ranges from a low of 20 for a clear lamp to a high of only 50 for a deluxe white lamp. A short list of representative lamp data is given in Table 12.8.

(e) Ballasts and Lamp Starting

Ballasts are required, as with all arc discharge lamps, to start a mercury-vapor lamp and thereafter to control the arc. From 3 to 6 minutes are required for the lamp to reach full output because heat must be generated by electron flow to vaporize the mercury in the arc tube before the arc will strike. Once extinguished, the lamp must cool before restrike is possible. This restart delay amounts to 3 to 8 minutes, depending upon the ballast type, and is an important consideration in design, as a momentary power outage will extinguish all lamps, leaving an interior area in the dark.

TABLE 12.8 Typical Data for Mercury-Vapor Lamps

Watts	Type[a]	Bulb[b]	Initial Lumens	Efficacy[c] (lm/W)
100	DX	A-23	4,300	39
100	DX	ED-23½	4,400	40
100	DX	R-40	2,800	25
250	DX	ED-28	13,000	47
250	DX/SB	E-28	6,000	24
400	DX	R-57	23,000	54
450	W/SB	BT-37	9,700	28
700	DX	BT-46	43,000	55
750	W/SB	R-57	14,000	19

Note: All lamps using an external ballast have a life of 24,000+ hours, based upon 10 hours burning per start. Life of self-ballasted lamps: 250 W—12,000 hours; 400 W and 700 W—16,000 hours.

All deluxe lamps with external ballast have a CRI of 45 and a CCT of 3700 K. All self-ballasted lamps have a CRI of 50 and a CCT of 3300 K.

[a]Type abbreviations: DX = deluxe; W = white; SB = self-ballasted.

[b]For bulb shape and dimensions, see Fig. 12.22.

[c]Efficacy includes the estimated loss from a magnetic ballast. For self-ballasted lamps, efficacy is as shown.

Mercury-vapor luminaires are available that utilize small halogen lamps to supply light during such outages. Alternately, some incandescent lighting can be utilized to maintain minimum illumination.

The principal mercury-vapor ballast types are reactor, regulating, and electronic. Magnetic mercury ballasts are large, heavy, and quite noisy. Where this may be a problem, remote ballast mounting should be considered or lighter, quieter, and more expensive electronic ballasts used. Because lamp-operating characteristics depend heavily upon the type of ballast and because the choice of an appropriate ballast involves highly technical electrical considerations, selection should be left to an electrical or lighting consultant.

(f) Self-Ballasted Lamps

These have been available for some years and consist of a screw-base color-corrected lamp with an internal resistive/reactive ballast. They have a CRI of 50, an efficacy of 20 to 25 lm/W, and a correlated color temperature (CCT) of 3500 K to 4000 K. Their great advantage is their long life, which can be used to advantage in applications involving burning periods of 8 to 10 hours minimum, relative inaccessibility, limited space that

precludes ballast installation, and indifferent color requirements.

(g) Application

Mercury-vapor lamps are applicable to indoor and outdoor use with proper attention to color and fixture luminance. The most common exterior application is for parking lots. Indoor application is generally limited to mounting heights of 10 ft (3.1 m) AFF (above finish floor) or higher to avoid direct glare and permit adequate area coverage. Their use in industrial spaces and stores was once common, but today retrofitting with metal-halide lamps is typical. Warehouses and non-color-sensitive industrial areas continue to use mercury-vapor lamps.

12.20 METAL-HALIDE LAMPS

This lamp began its life in the early 1960s as a modified mercury-vapor lamp. Major advances in miniaturization, color rendering, color temperature, and consistency—by the addition of halides such as thallium, indium, and sodium to the arc tube—resulted in changes in the output, efficacy, color, and life of the lamp. Metal-halide lamps have excellent color characteristics and therefore almost unlimited applicability. The number of types and sizes is so large, and changes so rapidly, that any abbreviated tabulation would be inadequate at best and misleading at worst. As with all lamps, but more so with lamps undergoing intensive development, a current manufacturer's catalog should be consulted for accurate lamp data. Pulse-start metal-halide lamps utilize a glass arc tube to contain the arc. Pulse-start technology includes a new family of lamps (it has been used with high-pressure sodium lamps), and improves the start system, efficacy, and lumen maintenance and yields faster warmup and restrike.

Ceramic metal-halide lamps were introduced to the market a number of years ago and have become an industry standard, offering a high CRI of 80 to 90, a color temperature of 3000 K or 4100 K, improved lumen maintenance, and stable color consistency. Typical metal-halide lamp characteristics and types are discussed in the following subsections.

(a) Lamp Configurations

Construction details for a basic metal-halide lamp are shown in Fig. 12.24 and are similar to those of its "parent" mercury-vapor lamp, illustrated in Fig. 12.23. In addition to this design (in a BT-shaped bulb envelope), metal-halide lamps are manufactured in elliptical bulbs, PAR reflector lamps, and single- and double-ended tubular shapes (Figs. 12.22 and 12.24 to 12.26).

(b) Safety

Being essentially a modified-vapor-mercury lamp, the metal-halide lamp carries the same safety warning as mercury lamps. An additional warning, however, refers to the fact that metal-halide lamp arc tubes have a tendency to explode; therefore, the lamp must be used in an approved enclosing luminaire. All major manufacturers also make lamps with internal shields that will contain the flying pieces of a ruptured arc tube without damaging the outer bulb. Such lamps may be used in open lighting fixtures. One such lamp is illustrated in Fig. 12.26.

As with mercury-vapor lamps, manufacturers also produce a line of safety metal-halide lamps that self-extinguish within 15 minutes of an outer bulb fracture, thus limiting exposure to harmful UV radiation. Both of these safety designs are clearly

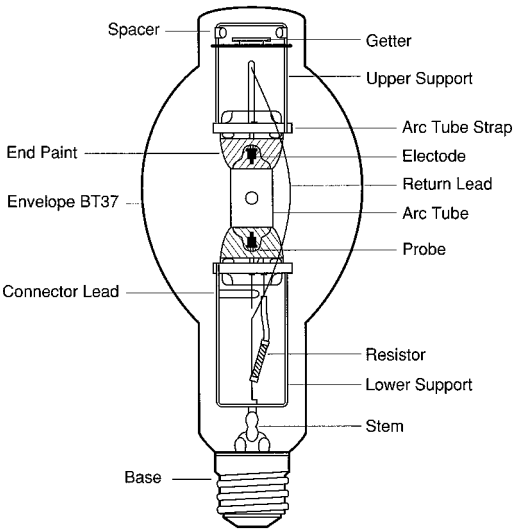


Fig. 12.24 *Construction details of a 400-W standard metal-halide lamp, which can be mounted either horizontally or vertically. (Courtesy of Osram-Sylvania.)*

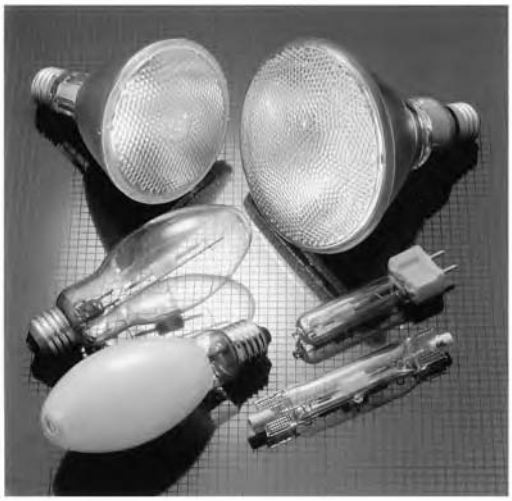


Fig. 12.25 *Various configurations of metal-halide lamps. Clockwise from the bottom left: phosphor-coated and clear elliptical bulbs; PAR 30 and 38 reflector lamps; single-ended and double-ended tubular lamps—all have ceramic arc tubes and a CRI greater than 80. (Courtesy of GE Lighting.)*

noted on the lamps by trade name and sometimes by description.

(c) Designs, Shapes, and Ratings

The metal-halide lamp designs available as of this writing are:

- Standard lamps, available in ED, BT, and PAR shapes, in wattages from 50 to 1500 W, efficacies of 75 to 105 lumens per watt with magnetic ballasts, and slightly higher with electronic ballasts (efficacy also increases with wattage). Lamps are clear or phosphor-coated, with a CCT ranging from 3000 K to 4200 K and a CRI ranging from 65 to 85. Their life, at 10 burning hours per start, varies from 10,000 to 20,000 hours depending upon lamp type, size, and burning position.
- Safety-shielded lamps with integral shields to contain a ruptured arc tube.
- Self-extinguishing lamps designed to shut down automatically upon a break in the outer glass envelope.
- High-output lamps designed for a specific burning position (that is specified on each lamp). Output is 5% to 8% higher than that of standard lamps, but the color is somewhat poorer, with a CRI range of 65 to 70.
- Single-ended and double-ended tubular lamps. These lamps are characterized by a very high CRI (80 to 93); a somewhat shorter life than standard lamps, particularly for the single-ended units (6000 to 10,000 hours); and slightly lower efficacy (70 to 85 lm/W). They are intended for applications requiring very high color rendering.

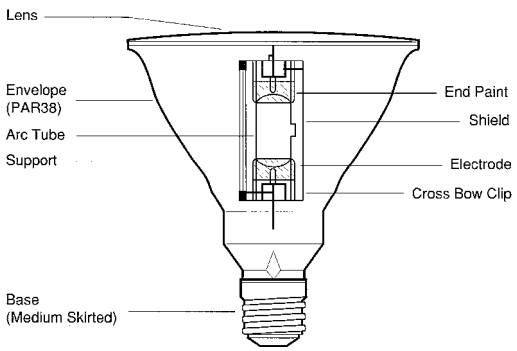


Fig. 12.26 *Construction details of a PAR enclosure for a metal-halide lamp. The lamp itself is tubular and constructed with a surrounding protective shield designed to contain arc tube fragments in the event of a violent rupture. (Courtesy of Osram-Sylvania.)*

(d) Operating Characteristics

Like mercury-vapor lamps, metal-halide lamps are not instant-starting, requiring approximately 2 to 3 minutes on initial startup and 8 to 10 minutes for restrike. (Tubular lamps require only about half of these times.) As a result, when they are used for indoor installations, a secondary instant-start source must be available. A number of manufacturers produce special hot-restrike ballasts that provide immediate restrike of lamps on restoration of power after an outage. Lamp output on restrike is inversely proportional to the duration of a power outage.

It is important to note that the spectrum of light produced by a metal-halide lamp *changes* as a lamp ages. The change is gradual, definite, but usually unnoticed and depends upon the particular design of lamp. Where color rendering is important, or where the lamp is used with other light sources, a designer should choose metal-halide lamps that are specially made for color stability. These lamps are designed not to vary in CCT more than 200 K over the lamp life. Finally, dimming

or reduced output operation of metal-halide lamps is not normally recommended because of the very noticeable color shift that occurs when a lamp is dimmed.

(e) Lamp Ballasts

Metal-halide lamps operate satisfactorily on a simple reactor ballast, although a separate ignitor is usually required to start the lamp. These ballasts have a low power factor, of about 50%, which is undesirable from the perspective of energy conservation, wiring economy, electrical losses, and component heating. High-power-factor magnetic ballasts (pf > 90%) are also available. Magnetic ballasts are large, heavy, and often noisy. The last characteristic can be improved by the use of a potted (epoxy-filled) ballast. Electronic ballasts are also readily available, along with dimming and multilevel ballasts. However, as noted previously, dimming ballasts are not frequently used because of the large shift in lamp color that they cause.

TABLE 12.9 Typical Data for Clear[a] High-Pressure Sodium-Vapor Lamps

Watts	Bulb[b]	Life (h)	Initial Lumens[c]	Lamp Efficacy (lm/W)[d]
"WHITE" LAMPS: CRI: 85, CCT: 2700 K				
35	T10	10,000	1,250	36
50	ED-17	10,000	2,000	40
100	ED-17	10,000	4,200	42
COLOR-CORRECTED LAMPS: CRI: 60, CCT: 2200–2300 K				
100	ED-17	15,000	7,300	73
250	ED-18	15,000	22,000	88
400	ED-18	15,000	37,000	93
STANDARD HPS LAMPS: CRI: 22, CCT: 1900–2100 K				
50	ED-17	24,000+	4,000	80
100	ED-17	24,000+	9,500	95
250	ET-18	24,000+	28,000	112
400	ET-18	24,000+	48,000	120
750	BT-37	24,000+	110,000	147
1,000	E-25	24,000+	133,000	133

Note: Data extracted from current manufacturers' catalogs.

[a]Data are identical for coated lamps except for bulb shapes and lumen output.

[b]Other bulb shapes are available in some sizes. See Fig. 12.22 for bulb data.

[c]Initial lumens for coated lamps are 6% to 9% lower.

[d]Based on initial lumens. Efficacy with ballast is approximately 10% lower.

12.21 SODIUM-VAPOR LAMPS

The highest-efficacy general-purpose HID source available is the high-pressure sodium lamp (HPS). The basic construction of this type of lamp (also designated SON) is illustrated in Fig. 12.27, which shows schematic drawings of the design. Typical performance data for various types of HPS lamps are given in Table 12.9. Construction is quite different from that of mercury-vapor and metal-halide lamps. The characteristic color of HPS lamps stems from the spectral absorption phenomenon of the sodium contained in the arc tube—with a resultant pronounced yellow-tinted light.

(a) Primary Characteristics of HPS Lamps

Standard HPS Lamps. The extremely low CRI (20 to 22) is not acceptable where any degree of color rendition is required, thus limiting the standard HPS lamp to exterior areas and road lighting.

Color-Corrected HPS Lamps. Color can be improved considerably by increasing the pressure inside the arc tube. This causes some of the sodium in the arc to be reabsorbed, and the radiated light widens its spectrum into the red range (at the expense of efficacy and lamp life).

"White" HPS Lamps. A still greater increase in lamp pressure improves lamp color and yields a "whiter" lamp color in a limited wattage range. These low-wattage, reduced-efficacy, shortened-life lamps are normally operated with small, lightweight electronic ballasts.

Because of its high output and narrow linear arc tube, any HPS lamp is a potential glare source, and wattages of 150 W and higher must be either completely shielded or mounted at sufficient height (if in an open reflector) to be above the near field of vision. These glare-prevention strategies also apply to metal-halide lamps.

If a diffusing coating is added to a sodium-vapor lamp, the entire glass envelope becomes the light-emitting source. This reduces lamp luminance, and therefore glare potential, drastically but also reduces output (and efficacy) by 6% to 8%. Light distribution from a coated lamp in an open reflector is vastly improved, as can be seen in Fig. 12.28.

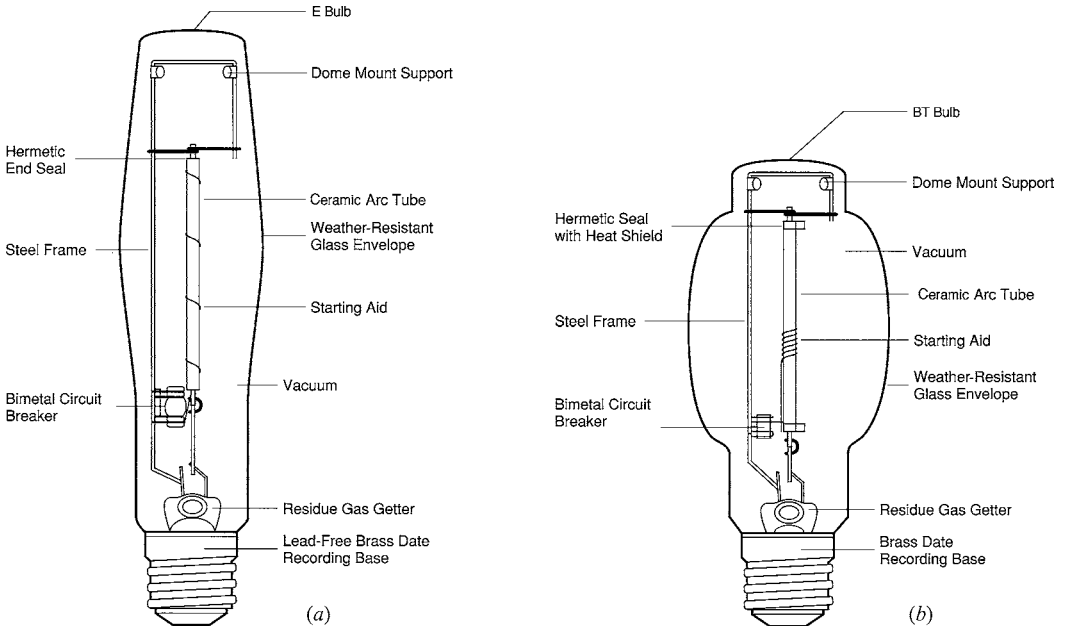


Fig. 12.27 *Simplified drawings of the internal construction of two high-pressure sodium (SON) lamp designs. (a) Noncycling lamp (in an E-shaped glass bulb) designed to indicate by a special color when the lamp has reached the replacement stage. Unlike standard HPS lamps, this lamp will not cycle on and off at the end of its useful life. (b) Retrofit HPS (SON) lamp in a BT bulb, intended for direct replacement of an existing mercury lamp. This lamp operates efficiently on a mercury lamp ballast. (Drawings courtesy of Osram-Sylvania.)*

(b) Other Operating Characteristics

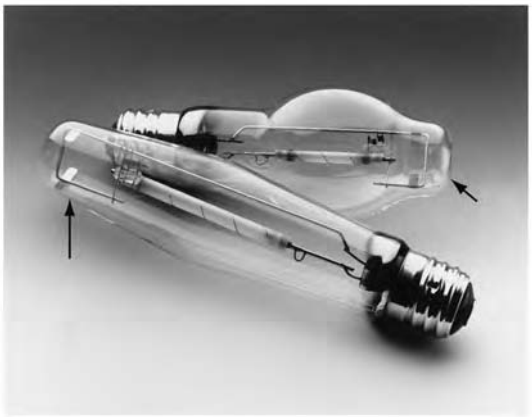
In contrast to both mercury-vapor and metal-halide lamps, HPS lamps do not emit any appreciable UV radiation, do not tend to rupture violently, and can be installed in any position without affecting operating characteristics.

Like all discharge lamps, HPS lamps require a ballast for ignition and arc control. Due to the extremely high voltage required for lamp ignition, both magnetic and electronic ballasts contain an electronic ignition circuit. Because of this, an HPS lamp *must* be used with a compatible ballast that carries the same ANSI designation as found on the outer glass bulb. If it is used with an incompatible ballast (and fixture), the lamp may rupture and constitute a serious safety hazard. As with metal-halide lamps, ballasts are available for HPS lamps that provide instantaneous restrike after a power interruption. Light output on restrike is inversely proportional to the length of the outage; for example, after a 10-second outage, restrike light output will be 85% of full capacity, whereas after a 2-minute outage, lamp output will be only 10%. It then takes approximately another minute to regain full output.

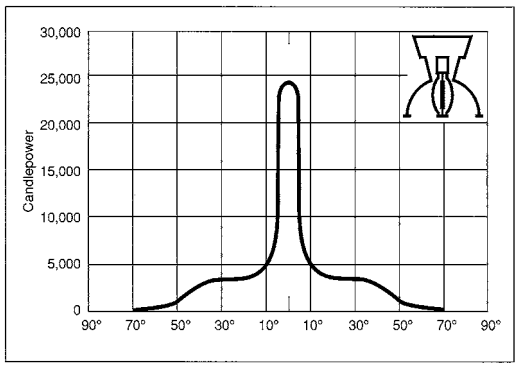
(c) Lamp Design Types

In addition to standard HPS lamps, including the color-corrected types, three additional special lamps have been developed to solve specific problems. They are:

1. *Noncycling lamp.* As an HPS lamp ages, its arc voltage rises. Eventually, the ballast is unable to sustain the arc and the lamp extinguishes. After cooling, the lamp lights to full brightness and soon thereafter extinguishes again. This on-off cycling is characteristic of an HPS lamp at the end of its life. To eliminate this condition, a special noncycling lamp was developed that uses very little sodium amalgam in the arc tube and is more environmentally friendly because of this reduced content. To enhance this environmental aspect, these lamps are made with a lead-free base and lead-free solder. Photometric characteristics are similar to those of standard lamps. The E-shaped lamp in Figs. 12.27 and 12.28 is of this design.
2. *Standby lamps.* As noted previously, HPS lamps require a minute or more to restrike after being extinguished. A crowded public area plunged

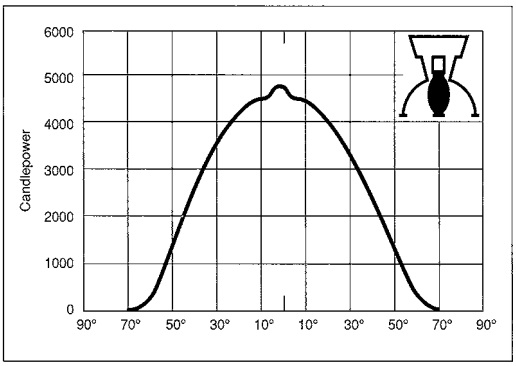


(*a*)



Clear HPS lamp operating at 12,000 lumens in open-bottomed fixture.

(*b*)



Coated HPS lamp operating at 12,000 lumens in open-bottomed fixture.

(*c*)

Fig. 12.28 *(a) HPS retrofit and noncycling lamps. (b) A narrow linear arc tube of an HPS lamp is not suitable for use in an open reflector designed for a larger source such as a phosphor-coated mercury lamp. (c) A coated HPS lamp creates a large, diffuse source with a highly improved light distribution. (Drawings courtesy of Osram-Sylvania.)*

into complete darkness is a recipe for disaster; therefore, such areas must always be furnished with instant-on emergency lighting. Standby lamps have two arc tubes. When the lighted one is extinguished due to a momentary power loss, the second (cool) arc tube immediately begins to glow—assuming that voltage has returned. This arrangement *may* be acceptable to some code authorities as a substitute for instant-on replacement lighting following a momentary power outage. It is *not* acceptable as emergency lighting as required by NFPA 101: Life Safety Code.

3. *Retrofit lamps.* These are HPS lamps designed as a direct replacement for mercury-vapor lamps of the same wattage. They are enclosed in BT-shaped envelopes of the same size as the lamp being replaced, and they operate properly on mercury-vapor lamp ballasts. A retrofit lamp is illustrated in Fig. 12.28.

12.22 LOW-PRESSURE SODIUM LAMPS

The low-pressure sodium (SOX) lamp produces light characteristic of sodium's monochromatic saturated yellow color, making it inapplicable for general lighting. Because of its very high efficacy of more than 150 lm/W, *including* ballast loss (but with a CRI of 0), it can be applied wherever color rendition is not an important criterion but energy efficiency is. Thus, SOX lamps are used for street, road, parking lot, and pathway lighting. SOX lamps are used around astronomical observatories because the yellow light can be filtered out of a telescope. Another desirable aspect of SOX lamps is their 100% lumen maintenance. This, coupled with a discharge lamp's typically long life (18,000+ hours), makes SOX lamps fairly economical in terms of life-cycle cost.

OTHER ELECTRIC LAMPS

12.23 INDUCTION LAMPS

The induction lamp is filled with low-pressure mercury vapor. When ionized by a high-frequency

induction coil inside the lamp, the mercury vapor produces UV radiation, which then strikes a phosphor coating on the inside of the lamp, producing light. Similar to the light-producing process used by standard fluorescent lamps, the difference is that the gas is ionized by an induction coil (rather than an electron stream)—thus the name *induction lamp*. Two such designs are shown in Figs. 12.29 and 12.30.

Characteristics of the design shown in Fig. 12.29 are as follows:

Wattage	85 W total, including external devices
Initial lumens	60,006
System efficacy	70 lm/W
CCT	3000 K or 4000 K
CRI	80+
Ignition time	Under ½ second
Time to 75% output	Up to 1 minute
Hot-restrike time after outage	Less than ½ second
Life (50% survival)	100,000 hours
Lumen maintenance	70% at 60,000 hours
Burning position	Any

The extraordinarily long life, excellent lumen maintenance, and instantaneous restrike time make the induction lamp suitable for illuminating public areas. As with all light sources, a comparison with other sources can only be made for a given proposed usage based on project-specific considerations.

A self-contained induction lamp of lower wattage is illustrated in Fig. 12.30. This lamp is built into a modified R-shaped envelope with a standard Edison base, and is therefore readily applied as a direct replacement for a 100-W incandescent reflector lamp. The lamp's published performance figures are:

Total wattage	23 W
Initial lumens	1100
Efficacy	48 lm/W
CCT	3000 K
CRI	82
Life	10,000 hours
Lumen maintenance at 70% life	75%

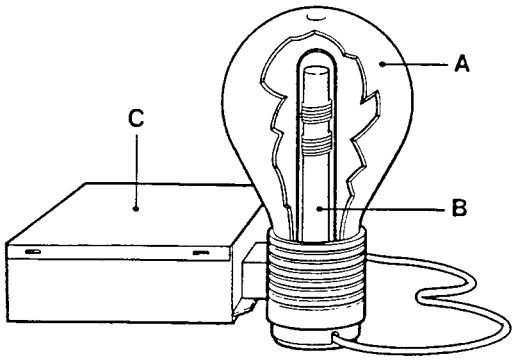


Fig. 12.29 *Schematic diagram of an induction lamp (rated 85 W, including all losses) shows its operating principles. The lamp is 4.3 in. (109 mm) in diameter and 7.5 in. (191 mm) high overall. The high-frequency generator (C) produces a high-frequency current, which circulates in the coil on the power coupler (B). This ionizes the mercury vapor inside the lamp (A), producing UV radiation. The UV radiation strikes the fluorescent coating inside the lamp, producing light. (Illustration courtesy of Philips Lighting Company.)*

12.24 LIGHT-EMITTING DIODES

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs) (or light-emitting semiconductors) have been used since the 1960s, in a wide range of applications, such as in lamps (medical instruments, bar coders, fiber-optic communication), mobile technologies (phones, digital cameras, laptops), consumer appliances, automotive (instrument panels, signal lights, courtesy lighting), and signals (traffic, rail, aviation). Common LED uses in architectural illumination include signage, retail displays, emergency lighting (exit and emergency signs), and accent lights for pathways. Recently, LEDs are seeing increased use in residential projects and for specialty applications in commercial projects. They are easy to install, should last longer than incandescent or fluorescent lamps, are very efficient (lumens per watt), and do not produce nearly as much heat as an incandescent lamp.

LEDs are available in a full range of colors, are small (⅛ in. [3mm] across), have a very low light output, use very little power, and have a fast response. They emit light in proportion to the forward current through the diode. The color of the light emitted by a LED depends upon the band gap material of the semiconductor, such as gallium arsenide phosphide (GaAsP) or gallium phosphide (GaP). GaAsP emits from red to amber, depending

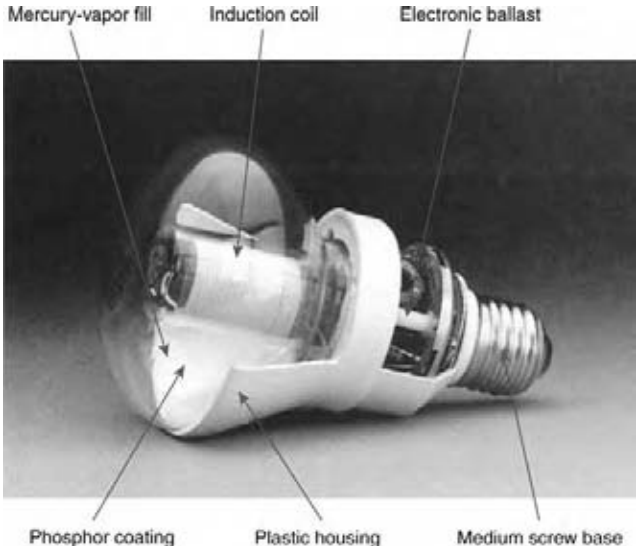


Fig. 12.30 *Cutaway of the GE induction lamp showing the essential elements: induction coil, phosphor-coated bulb with mercury-vapor fill, and electronic ballast. This 23-W lamp in a modified R (reflector)-shaped bulb has a height just under 5 in. (127 mm) overall and a 3-in. (76-mm) maximum bulb diameter. (Photo courtesy of GE Lighting.)*

upon the concentration of phosphorus. GaP emits green light and can emit red light.

12.25 SULFUR LAMPS

The principle of microwave energy excitation has been applied successfully to another recently developed lamp that consists of a golf ball-sized globe filled with an inert gas and a few milligrams of sulfur. In contrast to the induction lamp described previously, no mercury vapor is used in this lamp, and the radiation is full-spectrum light with very little UV or infrared radiation. The originally developed lamp was a 6-kW unit that emitted more than 400,000 lumens. The most recent (1998) version of the lamp has the following characteristics:

Total power input	1320 W
Initial lumens	130,000
Efficacy	101 lm/W
Diameter of globe	29 mm (1.1 in.)
CCT	5600 K
CRI	80
Life of lamp (estimated)	60,000 hours
Life of exciting magnetron	15,000 hours
Lumen maintenance	Very high
Color constancy with aging	Excellent

The current sulfur lamp technology provides approximately the same output as a 1000-W HPS lamp but with much better color characteristics. It also compares to about 1200 W of metal-halide lamp(s) with similar efficacy, but again, because of its full-spectrum radiation, it has superior color characteristics. Initial trials of the lamp as a driver for a "light pipe" have been highly successful. Because the lamp is still in development at this time, its eventual commercial usage is difficult to predict.

12.26 FIBER OPTICS

Although optical fibers have been available since the 1920s, practical applications, in the medical field, were not developed until the late 1950s and early 1960s. Bundled fibers used as a diagnostic tool can deliver light to remote regions of the body and carry coherent (understandable) images back to a doctor. In recent years, fiber optics have made their most significant advances in the communications field: long-distance telephone cables or thousands of paired wires have been replaced by a single-fiber cable. Architectural applications of fiber optics in recent years have included alternatives to directly replace recessed ceiling downlights, track and display case lighting in museums, and lighting

for pools/spas, supermarkets, and other commercial buildings.

Illuminators for fiber-optic systems utilize a variety of lamp types. The primary advantages of using a fiber-optic system are that no heat is produced where the light exits the fiber, and no UV radiation is transmitted through the fiber.

References and Resources

ANSI. 2004. ANSI C82.11: *Lamp Ballasts—High Frequency Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts—Supplements.* American National Standards Institute. New York.

ANSI. 2002. ANSI C78.1451: *Electric Lamps—Use of Protective Shields with Tungsten-Halogen Lamps—Cautionary Notice.* American National Standards Institute. New York.

CIE. 1970. *Daylight, International Recommendations for the Calculation of Natural Daylight* (Publication No. 16 E-3.2). Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage. Paris.

Eley Associates. 1993. *Advanced Lighting Guidelines: 1993* (EPRI TR-101022s Rev. 1). Electric Power Research Institute. Palo Alto, CA.

Federal Energy Management Program (energy-efficient fluorescent ballasts): http://www1.eere.energy.gov/femp/procurement/eep_fluor_ballast.html

IESNA. 2000. *IESNA Lighting Handbook,* 9th ed. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

Krochman, J. 1963. "Über die horizontal Beleuchtungsstärke der Tagesbeleuchtung." *Lichtechnik,* Vol. 15, No. 11.

NFPA. 2009. NFPA 101: *Life Safety Code.* National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

Rennhackkamp, W. M. H. 1967. "Sky Luminance Distribution in Warm Arid Climates." *Proceedings 16th International Conference on Illumination,* Washington, DC.

U.S. Department of Energy High Performance Buildings Program: http://www.eere.energy.gov/buildings/highperformance/

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Energy Star–labeled lamps and luminaires: http://www.energystar.gov/index.cfm?c=lighting.pr_lighting

CHAPTER 13

Lighting Design Process

13.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

LIGHTING DESIGN IS A COMBINATION OF applied art and applied science. There can be many solutions to the same lighting problem, all of which will satisfy the minimum requirements, yet some will be dull and pedestrian, whereas others will display ingenuity and resourcefulness. The competent lighting designer approaches each problem afresh, bringing to it knowledge of current technology and years of background and experience, yet rarely being satisfied with a carbon copy of a previous design. It is these years of background with their successful and not so successful designs, coupled with a constant striving for improvement, that are the characteristics differentiating the competent lighting consultant, designer, or engineer from the person who attempts to force each new job into the unwilling mold of a previous design.

Because of the large number of interrelated factors in lighting, no single design is the correct one; for this very reason, it is not entirely desirable to solve a lighting problem with a step-by-step technique. However, since experience has shown this technique to be a good approach for the uninitiated who lack the experience necessary to view an entire solution, we have adopted it.

13.2 GOALS OF LIGHTING DESIGN

Simply stated, the goal of lighting is to create an efficient and pleasing interior. These two requirements—that is, utilitarian and aesthetic—are not antithetical, as is demonstrated by every good lighting design. Light can and should be used as a primary architectural material.

1. Lighting levels should be adequate for efficiently seeing the particular task involved. Variations within acceptable luminance ratios in a given field of view are desirable to avoid monotony and to create perspective effects.
2. Lighting equipment should be unobtrusive but not necessarily invisible. Fixtures (luminaires) can be chosen and arranged in various ways to complement the architecture or to create dominant or minor architectural features or patterns. Fixtures may also be decorative and thus enhance the interior design.
3. Lighting must have the proper quality, as discussed previously. Accent lighting, directional lighting, and other highlighting techniques increase the utilitarian as well as the architectural quality of a space.
4. The entire lighting design must be accomplished efficiently in terms of capital and energy resources, the former determined principally by life-cycle costs and the latter by operating-energy costs and resource-energy usage. Both the capital and energy limitations are, to a large extent, outside the control of the designer, who works within constraints in these areas. These constraints are generally maxima.

With these goals before us, we can write a lighting design procedure, keeping in mind that the

order of steps shown is not necessarily the same in each lighting problem and that, since all factors are closely interrelated, it is often necessary to address several of the stages simultaneously before arriving at a decision.

It is appropriate to note at this point that the lighting design approach and procedure that we explain in this chapter is primarily an analytic one; that is, the design procedure establishes requirements primarily in numerical form and then manipulates the variables of sources, fixtures, placement of units, and so on, to arrive at a design solution. There exists an alternative approach, frequently referred to as *brightness design*, in which the designer labels surfaces on a perspective plan of a space with desired luminances as established by a mental picture (or by other means) and designs the lighting accordingly. This approach, which can be very effective, is highly intuitive (i.e., requires considerable prior experience on the part of the designer). For this reason, and because that approach requires a good deal of hands-on, field trial-and-error work, we feel that it is not appropriate to a textbook, and therefore is not used here. The only exception to this statement occurs in our discussion of daylight models in Chapter 14. There, the entire purpose of the model is to give the designer a visual/mental picture of the space's brightness patterns on the basis of which windows, window treatments, and possible exposures can be varied to achieve the desired light and shadow patterns (luminances and luminance ratios).

13.3 LIGHTING DESIGN PROCEDURE

(a) Project Constraints

The flowchart in Fig. 13.1, which represents the design procedure and its interactions, should be referred to throughout the necessarily lengthy discussion that follows in order to maintain perspective. It is important that the reader be aware of job constraints and of the interactions between the lighting designer and the remainder of the design team. We deliberately emphasize this to demonstrate the interdisciplinary nature of lighting design in general and its connection with HVAC and daylight (fenestration) in particular. This approach, which is most often referred to as the *systems design approach*, is followed throughout the discussion.

Item 4 of the list in Section 13.2 referred to constraints. These can be related to the owner-designer-user team and/or the jurisdictional authorities. In some detail, these are:

1. *Owner-designer-user group.* The owner establishes the cost framework, both initial and operating. A part of both of these may be a rent structure, which in turn determines and is determined by the space usage. If the owner is also the occupant, the cost factors change somewhat but remain in force. The architect determines the amount and quality of daylighting and the architectural nature of the space to be lighted. Many of these data are detailed in the building program. Obviously, the architect and lighting designer (who may be the same person) should interact in this aspect of building design.
2. The jurisdictional authorities *may* include:

   DOE—U.S. Department of Energy

   GSA—General Services Administration

   NFPA—National Fire Protection Association (via its codes)

   ASHRAE—American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers

   IESNA—Illuminating Engineering Society of North America

   NIST—National Institute of Science and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards)

Most of these are jurisdictional by reference; that is, the actual authorities may specify that the lighting system meet the requirements of ASHRAE, IESNA, and so on. If federal funds are involved, DOE/GSA standards will probably be involved. The principal areas of involvement are energy budgets and lighting levels, both of which affect every aspect of lighting design, including source type, fixture selection, lighting system, fixture placement, and even maintenance schedules. For this reason, the first step in the lighting design procedure is to establish the *project lighting cost framework and the project energy budget*.

(b) Task Analysis

As shown in Fig. 13.1, this step essentially determines the needs of the task. Factors to be considered in addition to the nature of the task are its

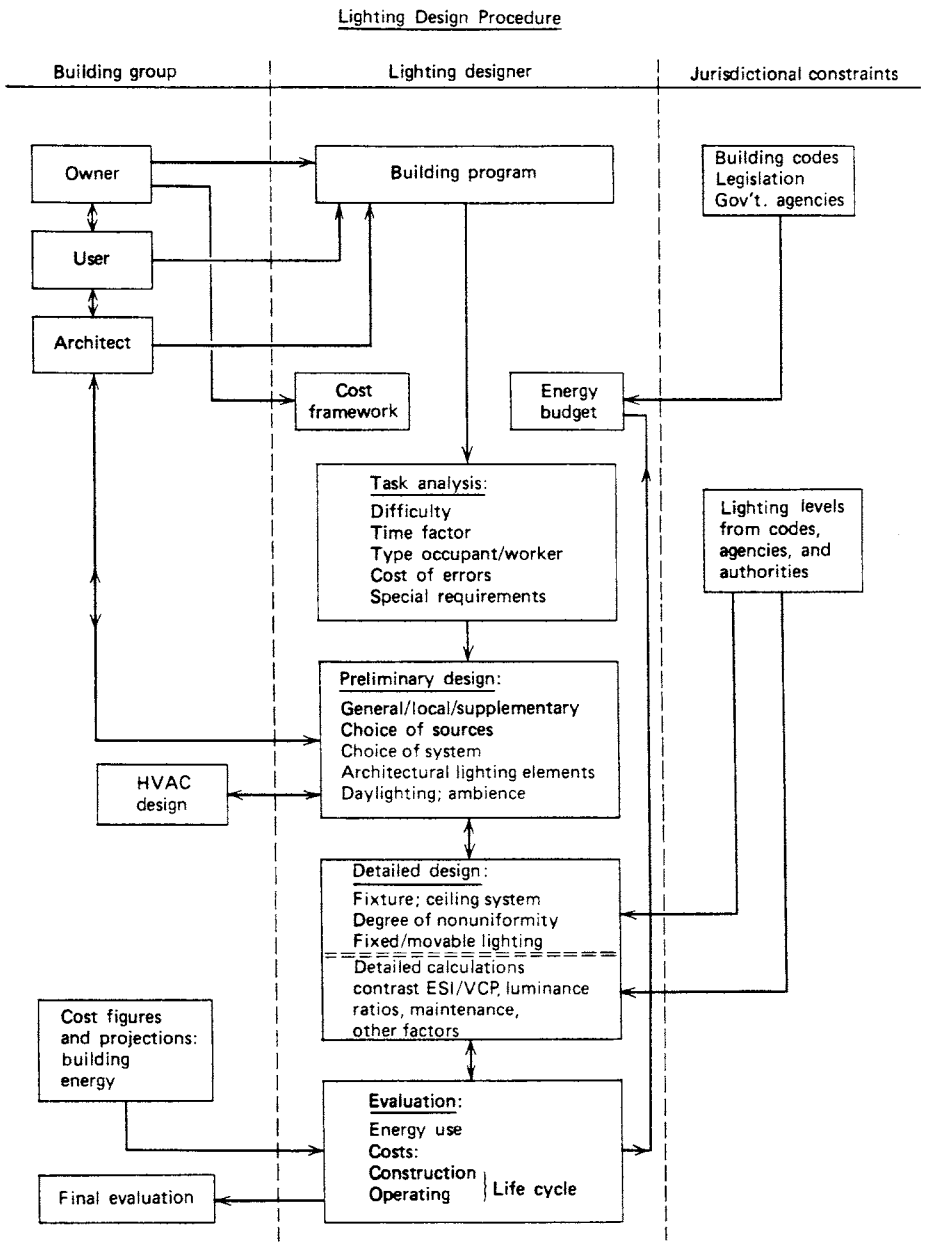


Fig. 13.1 *Lighting design procedure chart.*

repetitiveness, variability, who is performing the task (i.e., physical condition of the occupant), task duration, cost of errors, and special requirements. Several of these factors have been discussed in the preceding sections dealing with quality of light. These are cross-referenced in the appropriate sections in the following analysis.

(c) Design Stage

This is the stage during which detailed suggestions are raised, considered, modified, accepted, or rejected. This is also the most interactive stage, as is clearly seen in Fig. 13.1. At its completion, a detailed, workable design is in hand. The critical

interactions here are with the architect in daylighting and with the HVAC group in power loads. The former may result in relocating a space within the building, the latter in making a change in a lighting system or HVAC system. In brief, this stage consists of the following steps:

1. Select the lighting system. Select the type of light source and the distribution characteristic of fixture(s) or the area source and consider the effects of daylighting, economics, and electric loads.
2. Calculate the lighting requirements. Use the applicable calculation method and establish the fixture pattern, considering the architectural effects.
3. Design the supplemental decorative and architectural (built-in) lighting.
4. Review the resultant design. Check the design for quality, quantity, aesthetic effect, and originality.

(d) Evaluation Stage

With the design on paper, it can now be analyzed for conformance to the principal constraints of cost and energy. If the design stage has been carefully completed, with due attention to these factors, the results of the final evaluation should be gratifying. The results of this stage are fed to the architectural group for use in the final overall project evaluation. In the following sections, we consider in detail each of the steps in the design procedure.

13.4 COST FACTORS

This is a particularly difficult item for a novice lighting designer because it requires experience in the field and an acquaintance with commercially available equipment. Also, the inevitable trade-offs between first cost and operating cost cannot be made intelligently unless the cost structure is clearly understood. The following guidelines should be of considerable assistance both in avoiding unpleasant surprises when a job is estimated and in preparing cost analyses:

1. Decide at the outset what cost criteria will be applied—that is, the relative importance of first cost, operating costs, annual owning costs, and life-cycle costs.
2. Trade-off decisions are required between first cost and operating costs. For example, incandescent lamps and fixtures are low in first cost and high in operating cost, and so on. Dimming and control equipment falls into this area of decision making.
3. Manufacturers' catalog items are *always* cheaper than specials and can be priced more readily.
4. Compare the annual owning costs of two systems or methods. Conversion of these data to life-cycle cost comparisons is straightforward (see Appendix I).
5. The impact of lighting energy on the operating cost of the entire building must be studied and the apportionment of costs determined. The only practical means of accomplishing this is by using a computer program. Programs can be readily adjusted to reflect the effect of the lighting system on building costs, and in particular on HVAC first cost and operating costs. It is incorrect to artificially separate the lighting system from the HVAC system, with which it intimately interacts.

The lower the lighting system's energy usage, the lower the building's overall operating cost. The argument that heat from a lighting system is fully utilized to heat the building and is therefore not wasted is a specious one that has been refuted on many counts:

HVAC system first cost is higher.

HVAC year-round cost is higher.

Lighting energy cost is higher.

Life-cycle costs are higher.

Energy resource use is higher.

13.5 POWER BUDGETS

The requirement to establish a project lighting power budget in accordance with a specified procedure has now been incorporated into the building codes of many states.

The purpose of this budget determination procedure is not to dictate the design procedure. Indeed, all standards explicitly so state. Instead, the purpose is to develop an overall maximum power budget

within which the designer is free to do as he or she wishes. Obviously, extravagance in one area is necessarily at the expense of another area, as maximum power is inflexible, and the entire power budget is based on reasonable design techniques. Still, there is enough leeway in the budget and enough exceptions so that the designer is not overly restricted.

The nationally accepted standard that defines the establishment of a lighting power budget is ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1: *Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*, published by ASHRAE and regularly updated.

ASHRAE 90.1 sets forth design requirements for the efficient use of energy in new buildings intended for human occupancy. Specifically excepted in the current edition are single-family and multifamily residences of three or fewer stories above grade and buildings whose primary function is directed to a specific purpose, for which human occupancy may be required but is secondary. These include industrial buildings, buildings with very low energy use, and very small buildings (<100 ft^2 [10 m^2] area). The standard encompasses energy use requirements for all of a building's environmental systems (i.e., HVAC, lighting, electrical, power, water, envelope, and energy management).

The standard recognizes the advances that have taken place in the field of lighting controls, as a result of which it is able to focus on *energy use* limitation (which is its specific purpose) without necessarily limiting *power use*. For details on how this is accomplished, the reader is referred to the current issue of Standard 90.1.

13.6 TASK ANALYSIS

Refer to Fig. 13.1. This is the stage at which the quantity and quality of lighting required for the tasks are decided. The factors affecting this choice, as shown in Fig. 13.1, are difficulty, time factor, occupant, cost of errors, and special requirements.

(a) Difficulty

The components of visual difficulty were discussed at length in Sections 11.16 to 11.22, and the results in terms of lighting levels appear in Tables 11.4 to 11.9. Essentially, the designer examines the type of task involved, and after determining the applicable authority, he or she selects the required illuminance.

In the absence of specific instructions or reasons to the contrary, the North American designer uses IESNA recommendations. If there are several tasks to be performed at the same point and the most difficult one occurs infrequently, it may be reasonable to provide supplementary portable lighting or even to suggest moving to another brighter location. If it is the major task, lighting should be based on it and provision made for intensity reduction for less demanding work.

Variation in task difficulty is particularly common in spaces in public buildings. Thus, a school gym can be used for athletics, band concerts (despite the acoustics), and town meetings—activities with totally disparate lighting requirements. In these and similar instances, it is common practice to treat the space as essentially three different spaces and design lighting for each, with a careful eye to maximum common equipment usage. Similar problems are encountered in basements, multipurpose rooms, and conference/meeting/lecture/exhibition rooms. Fortunately, most such spaces do not have severe seeing tasks.

The task variation referred to here is the variation that occurs in one very specific location and is not to be confused with task variation in an area, however restricted. Thus, a small private office of, say, 8×8 ft (2.4×2.4 m) has a desk, file cabinet, and circulation space, involving three tasks of differing but constant difficulty in one small space. The corresponding lighting for these is also fixed and varies with the task severity. The values listed in Tables 11.4 to 11.9 represent the required illumination on the surface in question, whether horizontal, vertical, or in between. Inasmuch as the flux method of calculating illuminance normally yields the 30-in. (760-mm), horizontal-plane illuminance value, it is helpful in the early design stages to know the ratio of horizontal to vertical illuminance for various lighting systems. This ratio is approximately

Narrow distribution (direct and semi-direct)	3:1
Wide distribution (direct and semi-direct)	2.5:1
General diffuse (indirect)	1.5:1

Once the design is advanced, computer calculation will yield exact illuminance data on any desired surface, including important vertical surfaces.

As the illuminance values listed assume adherence to both recommended luminance ratios and reflectances (see Section 11.32), it is necessary to select, in conjunction with the interior designer, finishes and reflectances for surfaces within the area. If, for instance, in a private office a dark wall finish of 10% reflectance is chosen, it will be necessary for the lighting designer to compensate for this by additional wall lighting to maintain the recommended maximum 10:1 brightness ratio (see Table 11.11 and the discussion of point I, item G, in Section 13.7). The atmosphere created by vertical surface luminances is discussed later. Table 13.1 lists the reflectances of some common interior paint finishes.

(b) Time Factor

As discussed in Section 11.20, the length of time in which the task must be accomplished is important in exacting work. Beginning with moderately difficult tasks—that is, luminance of about 170 cd/m^2 (50 fL)—prolonged intensive application or rapidly changing tasks would require illumination to be raised one (or more) levels. Alternatively, the quality could be improved by increasing daylight utilization or task contrasts.

(c) Occupant

Inasmuch as the age and other specific characteristics of the worker are usually not known, a standard population distribution is assumed, and the illuminance recommendations as tabulated take account of this. However, if there is a high percentage of older workers, as is the case in certain industries, lighting should be raised one level. This compensates for the inability of aging eyes to accommodate and for their tendency to tire easily (see Section 11.23).

TABLE 13.1 Approximate Reflection Values

Medium-Value Colors	Reflection Factor
White	80–85
Light gray	45–70
Dark gray	20–25
Ivory white	70–80
Ivory	60–70
Pearl gray	70–75
Buff	40–70
Tan	30–50
Brown	20–40
Green	25–50
Olive	20–30
Azure blue	50–60
Sky blue	35–40
Pink	50–70
Cardinal red	20–25
Red	20–40

(d) Cost of Errors

This involves an economic trade-off between savings resulting from improving visual accuracy and the cost of the improved lighting. Performance can be brought close to perfection, but the cost of so doing increases much more rapidly than the proportional increase in performance. Lighting is usually designed to provide approximately 90% work accuracy. Thus, this step is basically an economic calculation, the criteria for which must come from the owner or user. Tasks in which this problem is encountered include inspection, proofreading, textile matching, very fine machining, and jewelry manufacture.

(e) Special Requirements

These include any nonstandard task lighting requirements. Some of these are specific illuminant color, directionality for shadowing, reflections as required for inspection, polarization, and controlled variations, as required in a space with varied tasks or a varying daylight factor. In addition to these, the physical dimensions of the task often create special requirements of their own. We tend to assume a small object in the horizontal plane because that is the normal office task. However, there are exceptions, such as a drafting board, a large machine and an inspection bench, or a cutting table. Consequently, these special requirements arise:

1. *Large tasks.* With large tasks, the angle of seeing varies from 20° to 70° from the vertical, resulting in radically changing glare angles and reflections from the task.
2. *Three-dimensional tasks.* These tasks shadow themselves, particularly when containing undercuts and reveals. An architect's model shop presents such tasks. When it is necessary to see into an opening, an intense narrow beam is required.
3. *Tools.* Tools cast shadows below and in front when lighted from above and behind. A fabric cutter must see ahead of and below the cutting machine.
4. *Nonhorizontal tasks.* These must be calculated for the plane in which they stand. As noted in

Section 13.6(a), the ratio between horizontal and vertical illumination varies between 1.5:1 and 3:1, depending upon the system. Task lighting requirements are stated in the plane of the task. This can have a pronounced effect on the lighting system selected and its arrangement.

5. *Task observed from various positions.* There are instances in which a fixed task is observed from several angles, such as a drawing in a conference room or a wall display. Illumination must be adequate for all viewing angles.

13.7 ENERGY CONSIDERATIONS

Energy considerations must pervade every aspect of the design process. Some background material is in order here to place the lighting energy subject in proper perspective. Best current estimates indicate that lighting consumes approximately 25% of the electric power generated in the United States. In terms of *resources*, this amounts to approximately 4 million barrels (636,000 kL) of oil per day. The same sources indicate usage by occupancy as approximately:

Residential	20%
Industrial	20%
Stores	20%
Schools and offices	15%
Outdoor and other	25%

In commercial buildings, lighting consumes about 20% to 30% of the building's electric energy, more in residences and less in industrial facilities. By judicious design, a reduction of 40% to 50% in lighting energy is attainable. Translated into resources, this reduction can readily amount to more than 1 million barrels (159,000 kL) of oil per day. Few will disagree that such a goal is well worth the effort. Every 1.0 W/ft^2 (10.7 W/m^2) reduction in lighting energy results in at least 1.25 W/ft^2 (13.5 W/m^2) savings in air-conditioned buildings. It has been demonstrated by actual designs that offices and schools can be *well* lighted with less than 1.5 W/ft^2 (16.1 W/m^2). The question to be answered then is: What design guidelines can be followed to effect this energy-conscious design?

The following are general recommendations regarding the design of energy-efficient lighting systems. For specific design requirements and details, refer to Standard 90.1 (ASHRAE, 2007), the Advanced Energy Design Guides (ASHRAE, 2004 et al.), and LEED (USGBC).

I. Conceptual-level approaches to energy-conscious lighting design include:

   A. *Design lighting for expected activity.* This is the task lighting approach. It is wasteful of energy to light any surface to a higher level than it requires. Nonuniform lighting is recommended where high illuminance levels are required for selected tasks in multitask spaces. One way to accomplish this for areas where an exact furniture layout is not available is to use readily movable fixtures. Providing overall high-level illumination with provision for switching to reduce lighting levels is not advisable because of the increased first cost and the psychological impetus to operate at maximum levels. Another solution is to use fixed luminaires for general low-level lighting and supplementary task lighting. Other factors and techniques to be borne in mind are:

      1. Group tasks with similar lighting requirements.
      2. Place the most severe seeing tasks at the best daylight locations.
      3. Improve the quality of difficult visual tasks. This is more energy-economical than providing additional light.
      4. The advantages of nonuniform lighting increase as the space between workstations increases.
      5. When using the task-ambient design approach, keep in mind that a nonuniform ceiling layout may give a chaotic appearance to a space. Therefore, the preferred approach is uniform ambient lighting and local task lighting.

   B. *Design with effective, high-quality, efficient, low-maintenance, thermally controlled luminaires.* "Effective" means providing useful light and minimum direct glare. In cases where much of the viewer's time is spent in a head-up position, as in schools, or where the viewer

can compensate for veiling reflections, the decision should lean toward high visual comfort probability (VCP; see Section 11.28). Where work and viewing position are fixed and most of the viewer's time is spent head down, the decision should lean toward low reflected glare (see Sections 11.29 to 11.31).

1. *A high-quality* luminaire is made with permanent finishes such as Alzac or multicoat baked enamel or any of the high-quality permanent aluminum finishes. This ensures that its performance after 8 to 10 years of service will be comparable to the original.
2. An *energy-efficient* luminaire is one with a high luminaire efficacy rating (LER). This metric is explained in detail in Section 15.12. It combines photometric efficiency (a high coefficient of utilization [CU]; see Section 15.10) with energy efficiency of the luminaire's components to obtain a high overall *efficacy* for the luminaire, expressed in lumens per watt.
3. A *low-maintenance* luminaire remains clean for extended periods and is designed so that all reflecting surfaces can be easily and rapidly cleaned without demounting. Enclosed fixtures should be gasketed. Nongasketed units collect and retain dust and cause rapid output depreciation. Relamping should be simple and rapid to encourage group relamping programs that are energy-efficient and cost-effective. A 20% increase in maintained light is possible if lamps are replaced at the end of their *useful* life—that is, when output is down to 70% of initial maintained lumens—and if fixtures are cleaned and maintained on a fixed schedule. No cost trade-off is generally involved because periodic maintenance and relamping are normally cheaper than one-at-a-time maintenance and burnout replacement, *and* yield 20% higher average lumens. Fixtures in relatively inaccessible locations such as high ceilings must be designed for low maintenance, and maintenance should be on a fixed schedule.
4. A *thermally controlled* luminaire is one that controls the heat generated by the light source. This item depends to a large extent on the type of HVAC system, the lighting heat load, and the types of fixtures employed. Detailed analysis of this point involves HVAC considerations and the overall impact of lighting energy on the building. In the late 1980s, the thermal problem was principally directed at removing fixture heat. Today, the use of electronic ballasts and low-wattage lamps has reduced the seriousness of this problem (Fig. 13.2).

C. *Use efficient light sources and accessories.* This point is self-explanatory. The ready availability of high-efficacy, high color rendering index (CRI), compact sources has made this item far less problematic than previously. The only cost trade-off involved is between relatively expensive, high-CRI sources and cheaper, low-CRI units. The cost differential is not large, and the choice is frequently made on other than an economic basis. Sources with high lumen *maintenance* should be given preference.

   Spill light and borrowed light are often neglected sources. Glass in upper wall sections can provide sufficient corridor lighting from borrowed office lighting.

D. *Select the appropriate lighting system.* As detailed in Sections 13.10 to 13.15, there are five general approaches to light delivery, each with its particular distribution characteristics and, therefore, applicability. In addition, all luminaires must be carefully located to provide uniformity of ambient lighting and task lighting, where applicable. When using indirect luminaires, correct spacing and hanging-stem length will avoid ceiling "hot spots," which can cause direct and reflected glare. Properly designed indirect lighting allows fully effective use of a space in that users are not restricted to facing in any particular direction to avoid direct or reflected glare from fixtures. The mounting height of suspended fixtures must be coordinated with cavity sizes and finishes to decrease light loss and maximize coefficient of utilization.

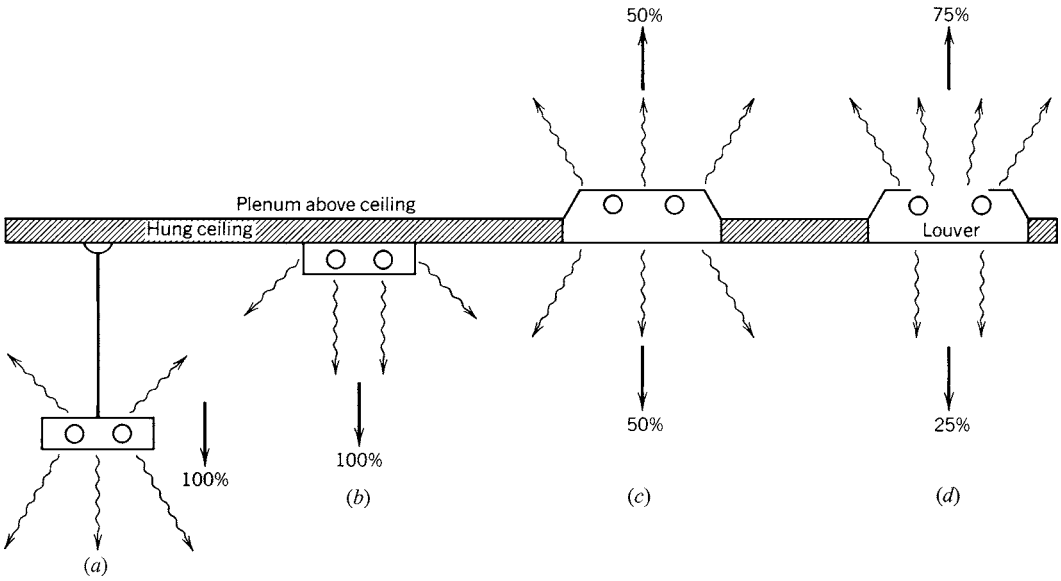


Fig. 13.2 *Method of fixture installation controls the transfer of a luminaire's heat. (a) Suspended units contribute all their heat to the space while remaining fairly cool. (b) Surface-mounted fixtures also place all their heat in the space but, because of blocked transfer upward, run hot. (c) Completely enclosed recessed units transfer about 50% of their heat to the plenum. (d) Open-louvered, baffled units transfer about 75% of their heat to the plenum. When they are ducted, heat transfer up can be as high as 85%.*

E. *Use daylight, properly.* Daylight must be considered as a normal light source subject to weather variations and time of building use. Obviously, a three-shift industrial plant cannot use daylight on all shifts, but it can for at least one shift, and design should address this fact. Part of proper daylight design is control of window luminance, which can cause severe and even disabling glare. A corollary of excessive luminance is excessive heat gain. Both are manageable with common control devices, both manual and automatic. Window control devices must also be designed to reflect light back into the space at night to avoid light loss via windows.

F. *Use energy-efficient lighting control strategies.* The subject of lighting control, including manual and automatic switching, dimming, sensing, and intensity control, is covered in Sections 15.13 to 15.17 for both new installations and retrofit work. Proper design of controls can reduce energy consumption over a noncontrolled installation by as much as 60% without reducing lighting effectiveness. Appropriate controls are mandated in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1.

G. *Use light finishes on ceilings, walls, floors, and furnishings.* This point is self-explanatory and is examined in a number of sections. A brief summary of recommended ranges is:

Ceilings	80–92%
Walls	49–60%
Furniture, office machines, and equipment	25–45%
Floors	20–40%

In addition to producing higher illumination levels in the room, high reflectances minimize uncomfortable luminance ratios, as between luminaire and upper wall or between task and background (see Table 11.11). For maximum luminance ratios:

1. Between task and near surround—aim for 3:1.
2. Between task and immediate area—aim for 10:1.
3. Between luminaires and their background—aim for 20:1.
4. Anywhere in the normal field of view—aim for 40:1.

Note that these targets themselves are *maximums* and that values above maximum should be accepted only with excellent justification.

II. Detailed requirements, generally from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1, include:

A. *Mandatory requirements (summarized)*

1. All interior and exterior lighting must conform to the stated energy limitations. Trade-offs between the two are not permitted.
2. All interior and exterior lighting systems in buildings larger than 5000 ft^2 (465 m^2), except emergency and exit lighting, must be equipped with some form of automatic shutoff control.
3. Where applicable, occupancy sensors and automatic daylight compensation control should be used.
4. Separate tasks or spaces must have separate controls.
5. Areas with lighting power densities above 1.1 W/ft^2 (11.8 W/m^2) should have facilities for at least two lighting levels.

B. *Recommendations*

1. Where task/ambient lighting is used, the ambient level should not be lower than a third of the task level to avoid uncomfortable luminance ratios.
2. Accent lighting should not exceed five times the ambient level. Therefore, in merchandising areas where the contrast between ambient and task levels is critical, reduce ambient levels as much as is practical.
3. When specifying superreflective aluminum in fluorescent (or other) luminaires, determine that the material's high reflectance will be maintained in the specific application and that the required luminaire maintenance procedures will be available.
4. Utilize self-luminous exit lights or those utilizing LED displays where permitted by local codes.

The energy-efficiency benchmarks in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 are updated on a regular basis. The current version of this standard should always be used for design. The accompanying User's Manual (ASHRAE, 2008) is recommended as a valuable supporting document to assist with interpreting and implementing Standard 90.1.

13.8 PRELIMINARY DESIGN

Again referring to Fig. 13.1, the preliminary design phase is the time during which ideas crystallize, but in terms of areas and patterns as well as light and shadow, and not yet in terms of hardware. At this stage the quality of the system is decided on; that is, the luminances, diffuseness, chromaticity, and proportion of vertical to horizontal lighting are determined. The last factor establishes in large measure a room's "mood" or lighting ambience. In preceding sections, these items were discussed in some detail. In the sections that follow on lighting systems (direct, indirect, etc.), the quality of each is considered and applications are suggested. In the overall view, however, the ultimate quality of the lighting system, its visual pleasantness, centers of visual attention, highlights and shadows, as well as texture and forms, are a deft and perhaps artistic combination of the previously mentioned considerations and establish, as the term implies, the quality of the lighting design. A few observations, not covered elsewhere, are mentioned in the following paragraphs.

Planes other than the working plane must always be considered. The ratio of vertical to horizontal illumination of the chosen lighting system determines wall luminance, which in turn greatly influences the overall impression of the space's brightness (see Fig. 13.12). The floor finish has a pronounced effect on the ceiling illumination for direct lighting systems because in direct systems, ceiling illumination derives only from room interreflectances, with floor reflectance being particularly important in large spaces (see Fig. 15.36).

The chromaticity of a room's lighting depends primarily on the source but secondarily on the luminaire and surface finishes. A "white" source can be tinted slightly by the use of a colored reflector in the luminaire. Of course, the effect on luminaire output of such a change must be considered. In the case of semi-indirect and indirect lighting, this same effect can be accomplished by the use of colored ceiling and upper wall surfaces, which serve as secondary

reflectors and become the actual luminous source for the room. Recommendations in Table 11.12 cover the choice of source as affected by its chromaticity.

13.9 ILLUMINATION METHODS

The discussion that follows is primarily addressed to electric lighting systems. The descriptions apply directly to lighting fixtures and fixture arrangements. Similar considerations, however, can be seen to apply to daylighting design—and the implications of these considerations on daylighting design should not be overlooked during the design process.

There are three broad methods of illumination: general, local/supplementary, and combined general and local.

(a) General Lighting

This is a system designed to give uniform and generally, although not necessarily, diffuse lighting throughout the area under consideration. The method of accomplishing this result varies from the use of luminous ceiling to properly spaced and chosen downlights, but the resultant lighting on the *horizontal working plane* must be the same, that is, reasonably uniform. It may be, but is not necessarily, task lighting.

(b) Local/Supplementary Lighting

These are two terms that are used interchangeably. By definition, both *local lighting and supplementary lighting* provide a restricted area of relatively high intensity. A desk lamp, a high-intensity downlight on a merchandising display, and track lighting illuminating wall displays in practice are all referred to as *local, supplementary*, or *local-supplementary* lighting. Typical of this genre are the units illustrated in Fig. 13.3.

(c) Combined General and Local Lighting

This illumination method is used in spaces where the general visual task requires low illuminance, but supplementary lighting is required in a limited area for a particular task.

These three *methods* of illumination can be accomplished in many ways by the use of luminaires and luminous sources of different types, because the illumination method is a function of *both* luminaire arrangement and the luminaire's inherent lighting distribution. The term *lighting system* is used to describe the combination of a particular fixture type applied in a particular way. Thus, a reflector-type fixture, when aimed down, gives *direct* light. The same fixture beamed up at the ceiling gives *indirect* light. The following section describes the systems that constitute the vast majority of lighting installations.

13.10 TYPES OF LIGHTING SYSTEMS

No single lighting system can be said to be the only choice in a given instance; on the contrary, the designer normally has a choice of at least two systems that, if utilized properly, yield illumination of adequate quantity and good quality. However, other factors, such as harmonization with the architecture and economics, usually tip the balance in favor of one or the other.

The five generic types of lighting systems are indirect, semi-indirect, diffuse or direct-indirect, semi-direct, and direct.

13.11 INDIRECT LIGHTING

See Fig. 13.4*a*. Between 90% and 100% of the light output of the luminaires is directed to the ceiling and upper walls of the room. The system is called *indirect* because practically all the light reaches the horizontal working plane indirectly, that is, via reflection from the ceiling and upper walls. *Therefore, the ceiling and upper walls in effect become the light source*, and if these surfaces have a high-reflectance finish, the room illumination is highly diffuse (shadowless). Because the source must be suspended at least 12 in. (300 mm) and preferably 18 in. (450 mm) or more from the ceiling (depending on the unit's output) to avoid ceiling "hot spots," this system requires a minimum ceiling height of 9 ft 6 in. (~3 m). If luminaires are correctly spaced, the resultant illuminance is uniform, and direct and reflected glare potentials are both low.

To avoid an excessive luminance ratio between the luminaire and its surrounding field, the luminaire can be made translucent on the bottom, the sides, or both. Approximately 750 lux (75 fc) is the

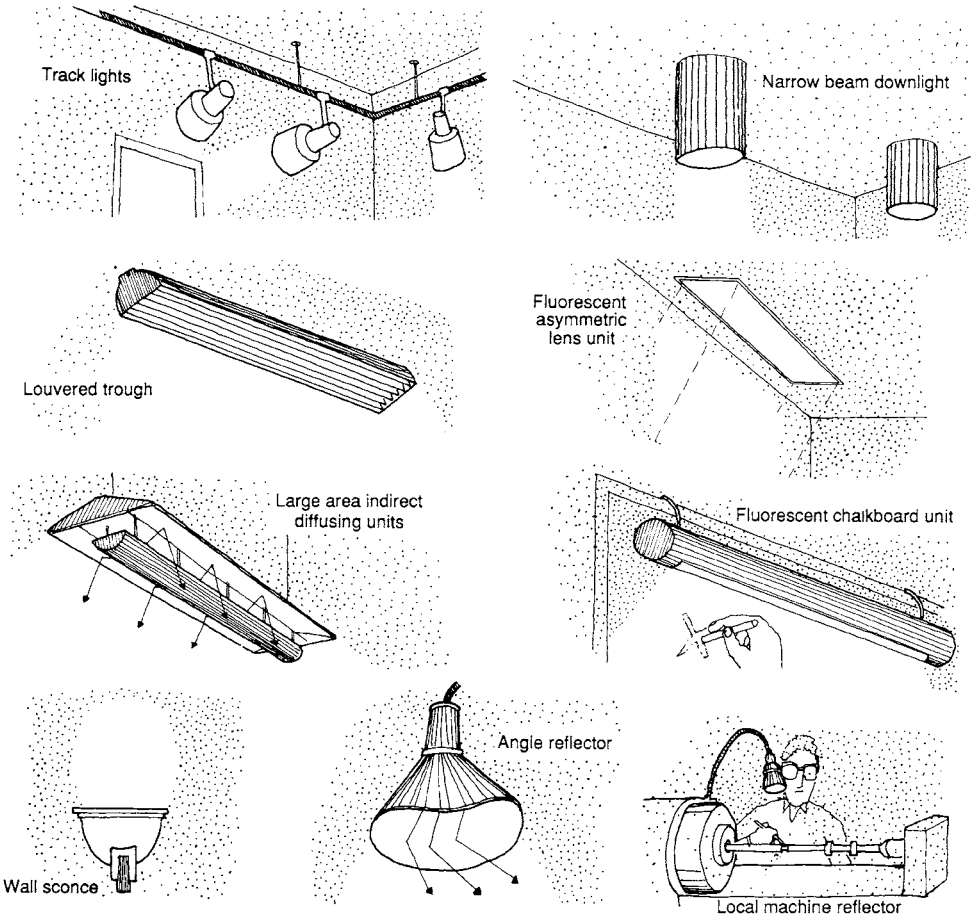


Fig. 13.3 *Typical supplementary lighting units for incandescent, CFL, and linear fluorescent sources.*

maximum horizontal-plane illuminance attainable without exceeding an *overall* ceiling luminance of about 2500 cd/m^2 (730 fL) (see Section 11.28). With practically no veiling reflections, this illuminance level is sufficient for all but the most difficult tasks. The lack of shadow, low source brightness, and highly diffuse quality created by indirect lighting give a very quiet, cool ambience to the space, suitable for private offices, lounges, and plush waiting areas. Areas having specular visual tasks such as an office with visual display terminals (VDTs) use this system to advantage. In such spaces, indirect fixtures *without* luminous bottoms or sides should be specified.

When properly designed, particularly when the source of light is architectural coves (see Fig. 13.4*c*), the ceiling has a floating sky quality, which is pleasant and can be used to give an impression of height in a low-ceilinged room. (This system is not to be confused with a transilluminated ceiling, which is really a direct lighting system of entirely different quality and effect.) A further characteristic of the indirect lighting system is loss of texture on vertical surfaces, as is common to all fully diffuse lighting.

Indirect lighting is inherently inefficient, as much of the useful light reaches the working plane only after double reflection—within the luminaire and off the ceiling. Although to a considerable extent this inefficiency is offset by the glare-free lighting, applications to difficult seeing tasks frequently require an additional light source. Thus, an indirectly lighted architect's drafting room having tables equipped with supplementary lamps would take advantage of both systems—the local high-intensity lighting at a maximum of 200 fc (~2000 lux) for the restricted area being worked on and overall table lighting of 40 to 50 fc (~400

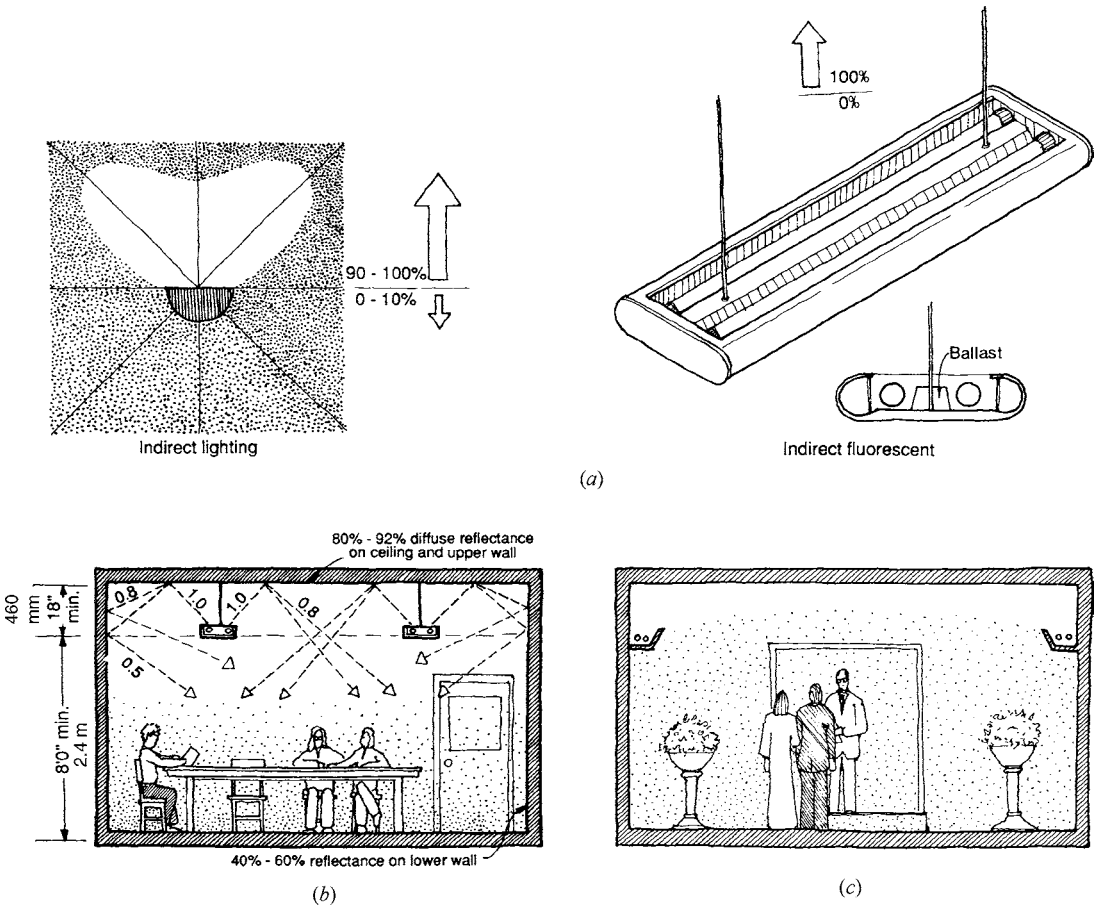


Fig. 13.4 *Indirect lighting. (a) The luminaires deliver 90–100% of their output above their own horizontal plane. (b) The ceiling and upper wall surfaces of the space are directly illuminated, and by reflection become large secondary sources that illuminate the space below. When properly designed, this type of installation yields a substantially uniformly bright ceiling. (c) Use of architectural coves gives an acceptable luminance gradient on the ceiling and, if properly designed, nearly uniform, glareless illumination in the room. This system of illumination is particularly useful in spaces with VDTs.*

to 500 lux) of high-quality lighting free of veiling reflections. The latter would also solve any reflected glare problems arising from the many viewing angles required by large tasks such as drawings.

13.12 SEMI-INDIRECT LIGHTING

Between 60% and 90% of the light is directed upward to the ceiling and upper walls. This distribution is similar to that of indirect lighting, except that it is somewhat more efficient and allows higher levels of illumination without undesirable brightness contrast between the luminaire and its background, along with lower ceiling brightness. A typical fixture, illustrated in Fig. 13.5, employs a translucent diffusing element through which the downward light component passes. The ceiling remains the principal radiating source, and the diffuse character of room lighting remains. Direct and reflected glare are both very low, as they are with indirect lighting (see Fig. 11.36). In both indirect and semi-indirect systems, it is often desirable to add accent lighting or downlighting to break the monotony inherent in these systems and establish visual points of interest or to create required modeling shadows.

In both indirect and semi-indirect lighting systems, the light undergoes a number of ceiling and wall reflections before reaching the horizontal working plane. The use of colored paints, particularly on the ceiling, can serve to tint the room illumination slightly by selective absorption.

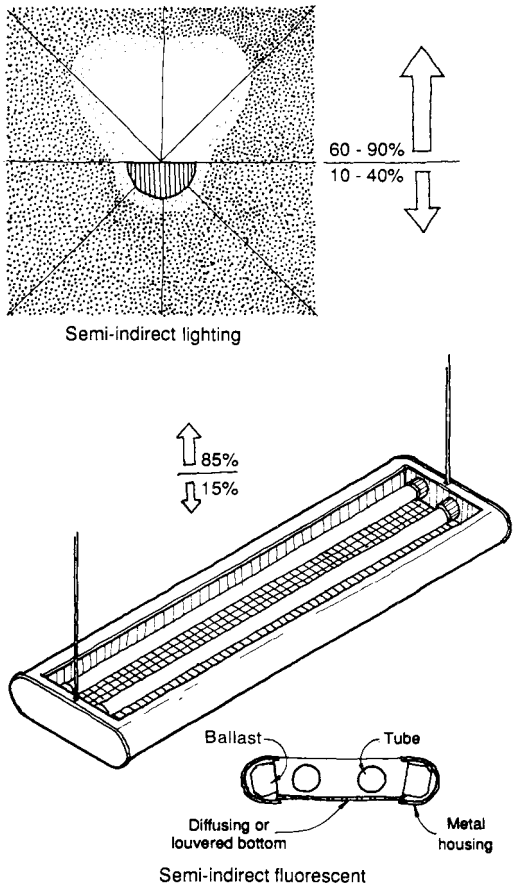


Fig. 13.5 *Semi-indirect lighting.*

13.13 DIRECT-INDIRECT AND GENERAL DIFFUSE LIGHTING

Direct–indirect lighting provides an approximately equal distribution of light upward and downward, resulting in a bright ceiling and upper wall (Fig. 13.6). For this reason, luminance ratios in the upper-vision zone are usually not a problem. As the ceiling is an important although secondary source of room illumination, diffuseness is good, with resultant satisfactory vertical-plane illumination.

General diffuse fixtures (Fig. 13.7) give light in all directions, whereas direct-indirect fixtures have little horizontal component. Stems for both types should be of sufficient length to avoid excessive ceiling brightness, generally not less than 12 in. (305 mm).

Because the impression of illumination depends to a large extent on *wall luminance* (as this is the surface we see most often), a space with general diffuse illumination *appears* lighter than one with direct-indirect illumination due to the darker walls in the latter (see Figs. 13.7*b* and 13.11).

By avoiding excessively bright luminaires and giving attention to the positioning of sources and viewing angles, direct and reflected glare can both be minimized. Furthermore, because the luminaire (like any other luminous source in the field of view whose luminance is higher than that of the average scene) draws the eyes' attention, particular care must be taken to limit its luminance and to avoid disturbing fixture patterns (see Fig. 13.14).

The efficiency of these two systems is good. Both are well applied in spaces requiring overall uniform lighting at moderate levels such as classrooms, standard office work spaces, and merchandising areas.

13.14 SEMI-DIRECT LIGHTING

With this type of lighting system, 60% to 90% of the luminaire output is directed downward, and the remaining upward component serves to illuminate the ceiling (Fig. 13.8). If the ceiling has a high reflectance, this upward component is normally sufficient to minimize direct glare from the luminaires, depending on eye adaptation level. The degree of diffuseness depends largely on the reflectances of room furnishings and of the floor. Shadowing should not be a problem when upward components are at least 25% and ceiling reflectance not less than 70%. With smaller upward components, the system is essentially direct lighting (see Section 13.15). The system is inherently efficient. Reflected glare can be controlled by the methods discussed in Section 11.29. With adequate wall illumination, the quality of the lighting gives a pleasant working atmosphere. It is applicable to offices, classrooms, shops, and other working areas.

13.15 DIRECT LIGHTING

In this system essentially all the light is directed downward. As a result, ceiling illumination is entirely due to light reflected from floor and room

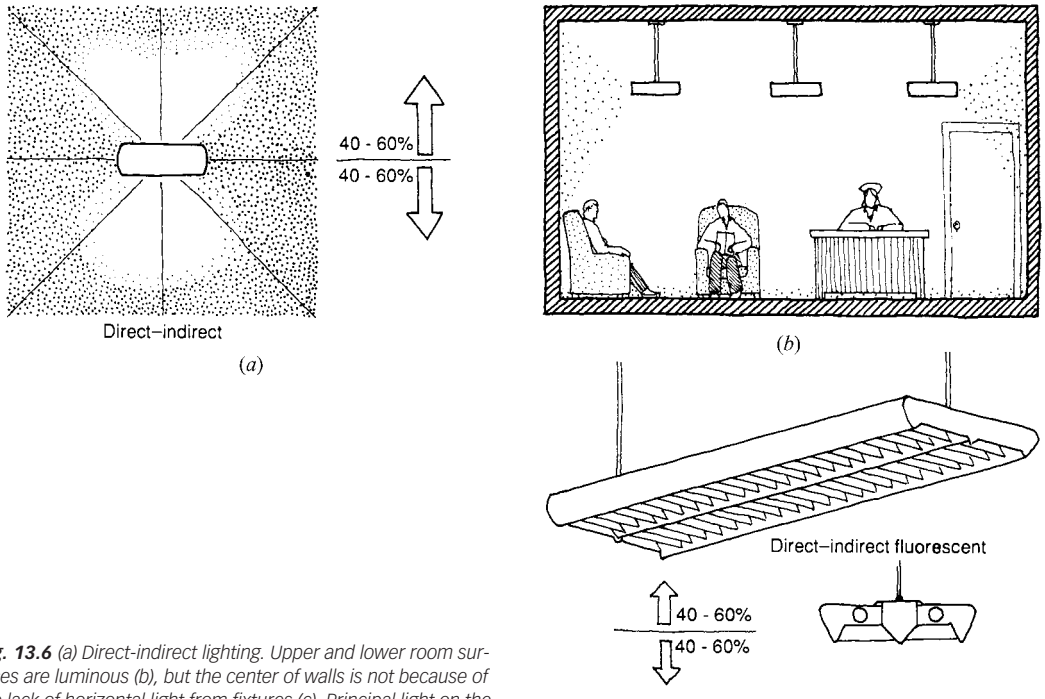


Fig. 13.6 *(a) Direct-indirect lighting. Upper and lower room surfaces are luminous (b), but the center of walls is not because of the lack of horizontal light from fixtures (c). Principal light on the working plane comes directly from the luminaire.*

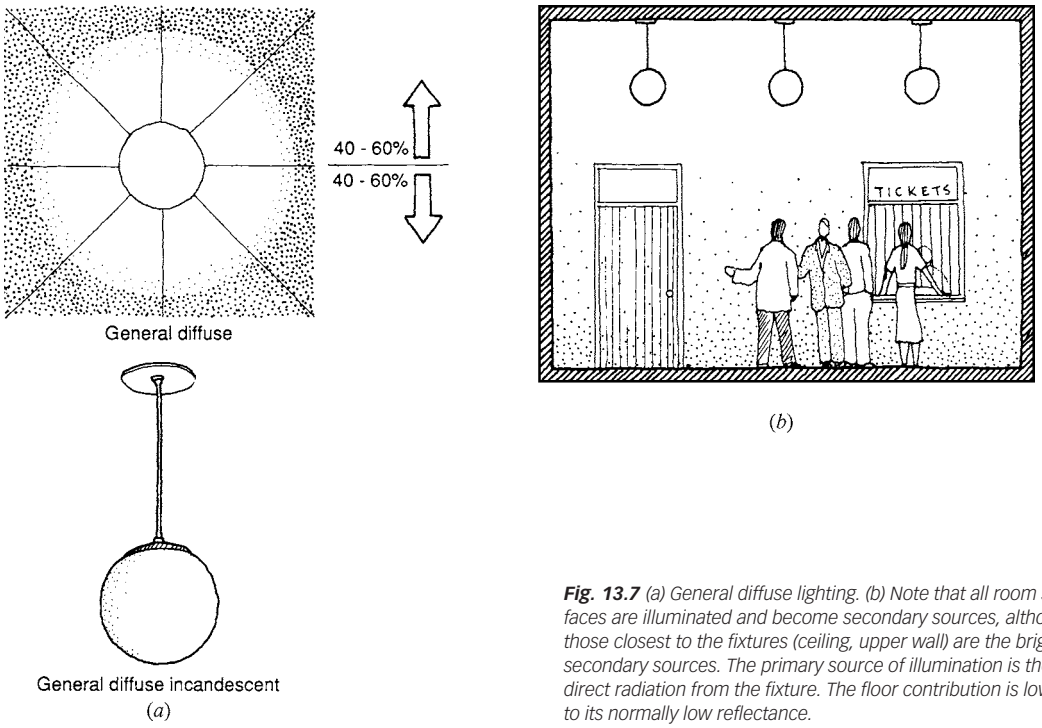


Fig. 13.7 *(a) General diffuse lighting. (b) Note that all room surfaces are illuminated and become secondary sources, although those closest to the fixtures (ceiling, upper wall) are the brightest secondary sources. The primary source of illumination is the direct radiation from the fixture. The floor contribution is low due to its normally low reflectance.*

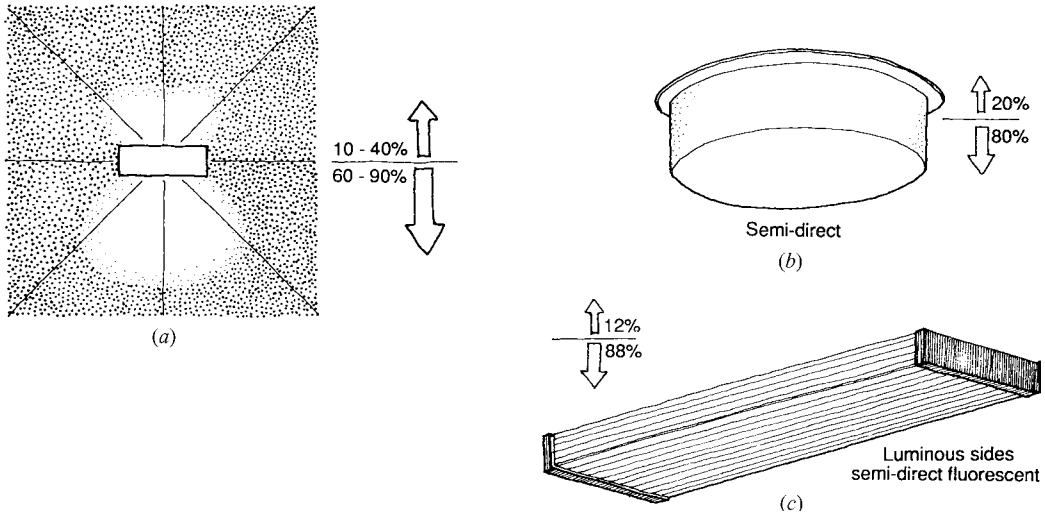


Fig. 13.8 *Semi-direct lighting provides its own ceiling brightness (a), with surface-mounted fixtures (b) or pendant/surface units (c). Other characteristics are similar to those of direct lighting.*

furnishings. This system, then, more than any other, requires a light, high-reflectance, diffuse floor unless a dark ceiling is desired from an architectural or decorative viewpoint. Occasionally, the ceilings are deliberately painted a dark color and pendant direct fixtures used to lower the apparent ceiling of a poorly proportioned room or hide unsightly piping, ductwork, and so on.

The effect of direct lighting depends greatly on whether the luminaire light distribution patterns are spread or concentrating (Figs. 13.9 and 13.10). In the former cases, considerable diffusion of light results from reflections on the floor, furniture, and walls. The result is a working atmosphere with slightly darkened walls and ceiling. This type of lighting, which is most widely represented by the recessed fluorescent troffer in a suspended ceiling, is common for general office lighting. The luminaires themselves form a ceiling surface of light and dark areas, and the quality of the entire system is not unpleasant. Difficulties associated with direct glare and veiling reflections can be controlled by proper use of reflectances, use of low-brightness units, and judicious arrangement of viewing positions. When direct lighting units are used in a uniform pattern, this latter option disappears, and the need for particularly low-brightness units and high ceiling reflectivity, or specialty diffusers such as those with a batwing distribution, is increased.

Direct lighting gives little vertical surface illumination, requiring the addition of perimeter lighting in business atmospheres (Fig. 13.11).

Concentrating downlights create sharp shadows and a theatrical atmosphere that are not appropriate to a working commercial space. They can be used in restaurants and other areas where the privacy type of atmosphere generated by limited-area horizontal illumination and minimal vertical-surface illumination is desired. When a lighting fixture is designed with a black cone or baffle or another device that is nonreflecting at the viewing angle, it appears dark even when lighted. It is our opinion that installations providing high-horizontal surface illumination, with no apparent source of brightness, such as those using black-cone downlights, are disturbing to our normal bright-sun-and-sky orientation, and should be used cautiously and only in limited areas. This same comment, but to a lesser extent, is applicable to very-low-brightness diffusers such as the parabolic wedge type (see Fig. 15.10). (There, however, the unit has the redeeming characteristic of low reflected glare, which is not the case with downlights.) Stated otherwise, the psychological impression of a space without a visible source of light is gloomy and cavelike. When very-low-brightness sources are used, as in VDT areas, this negative impression can be alleviated by the addition of luminous surfaces in nonreflecting areas or points of light sparkle.

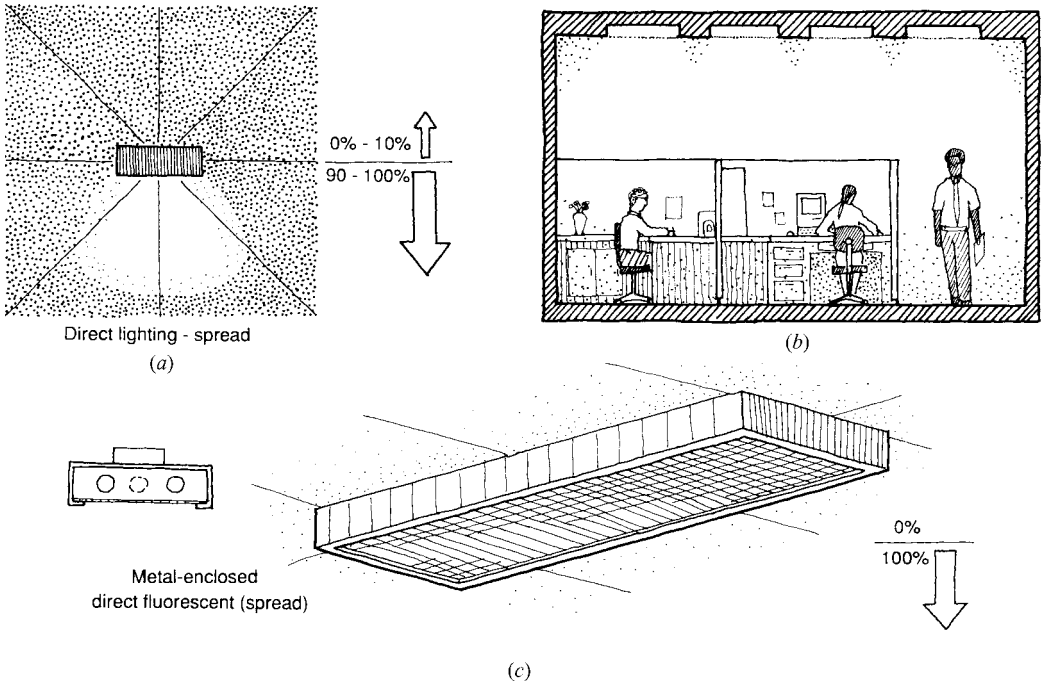


Fig. 13.9 *Spread-type direct lighting (a) illuminates all room surfaces except the ceiling (b), which is only illuminated by reflection from the floor. Some diffuseness is evident. The most common type of unit in this category is the direct fluorescent unit, either surface-mounted (c) or troffer type, recessed in the ceiling.*

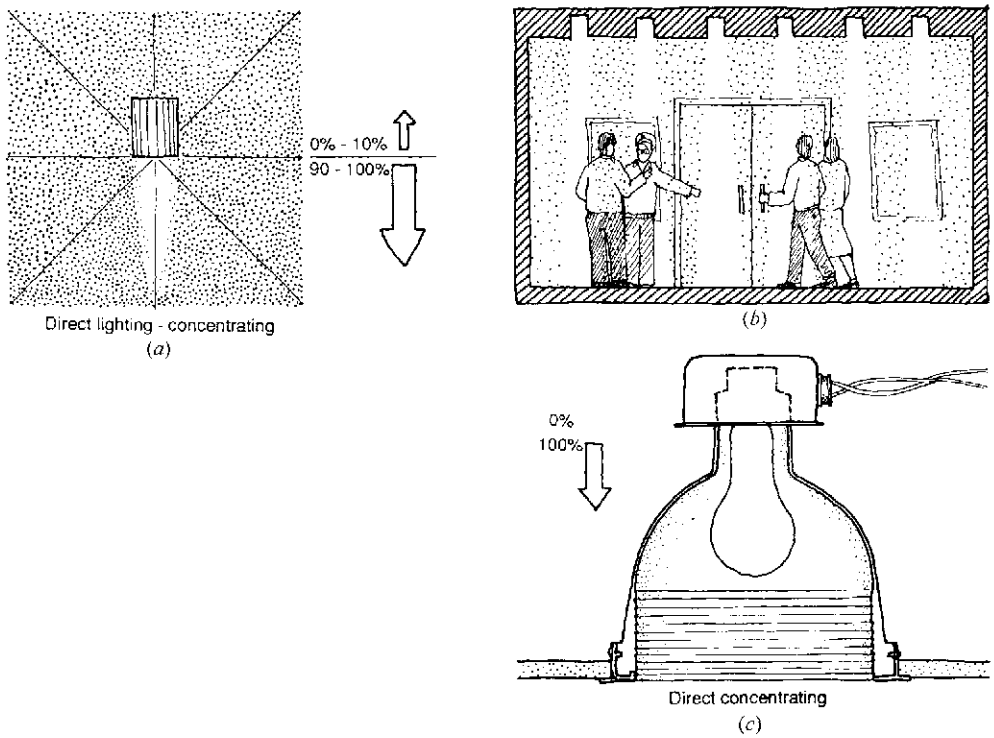


Fig. 13.10 *With concentrated direct distribution (a), the floor is the only luminous surface (b) other than the ceiling fixture. Diffuseness is absent. Walls are dark. Incandescent downlights (c) and, to a lesser extent, CFL downlights are of this type unless equipped with spread-type lenses.*



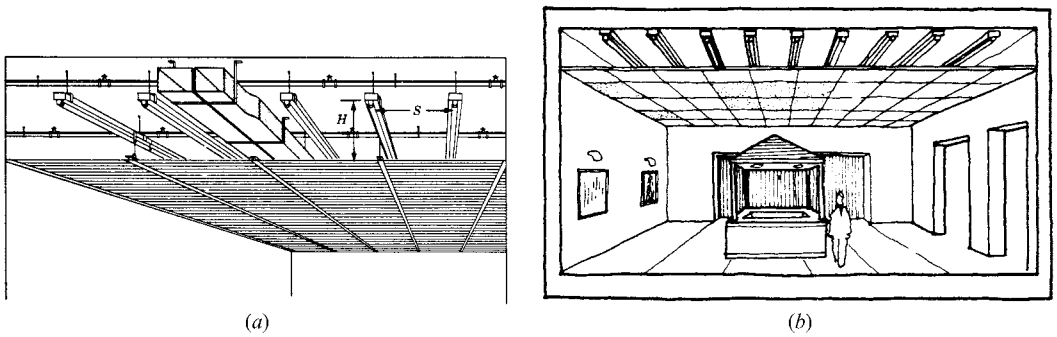
(a) (b)

Fig. 13.11 *Large-dimension lighting fixtures may be used in a low-ceilinged room if the apparent size of the unit is reduced. Here at a mounting height of 7 ft 6 in. (2.3 m), 4 × 4-ft (1.2 × 1.2-m) units are acceptable because the lattice on the face of each unit gives the impression of reduced fixture size. Note also that the apparent illumination in (b) is greater than in (a)—although both are exactly equal on the table surface—due to the wall wash in the background. The eye perceives vertical surface illumination more readily than horizontal illumination and retains the impression for the entire space.*

In summary, then, spread-type direct lighting is suitable for general lighting, whereas concentrated direct lighting, which reduces vertical illumination, is appropriate for highlights, local and supplementary lighting, and specialized privacy-atmosphere installations.

13.16 SIZE AND PATTERN OF LUMINAIRES

Because of its luminance, each luminaire or other luminous source is a point of visual attention. To the extent that luminaires are numerous, large,



(a) (b)

Fig. 13.12 *(a) Luminous ceiling. When properly designed, piping and ductwork above the suspended diffusing material are not seen and do not affect the installation's light distribution. As a rule of thumb, the strip fluorescent fixture spacing, S, should not exceed 1.5 times the fixture height above the diffusing element for uniform illumination. (b) A luminous ceiling provides low brightness and highly diffuse, uniform illuminance, generally at levels exceeding 500 lux (45 fc). It is particularly useful for specular tasks where supplemental lighting is impractical. To relieve the monotony of large, unbroken expanses of diffusers, as in (a), designers frequently use clearly defined diffuser panels, as shown.*

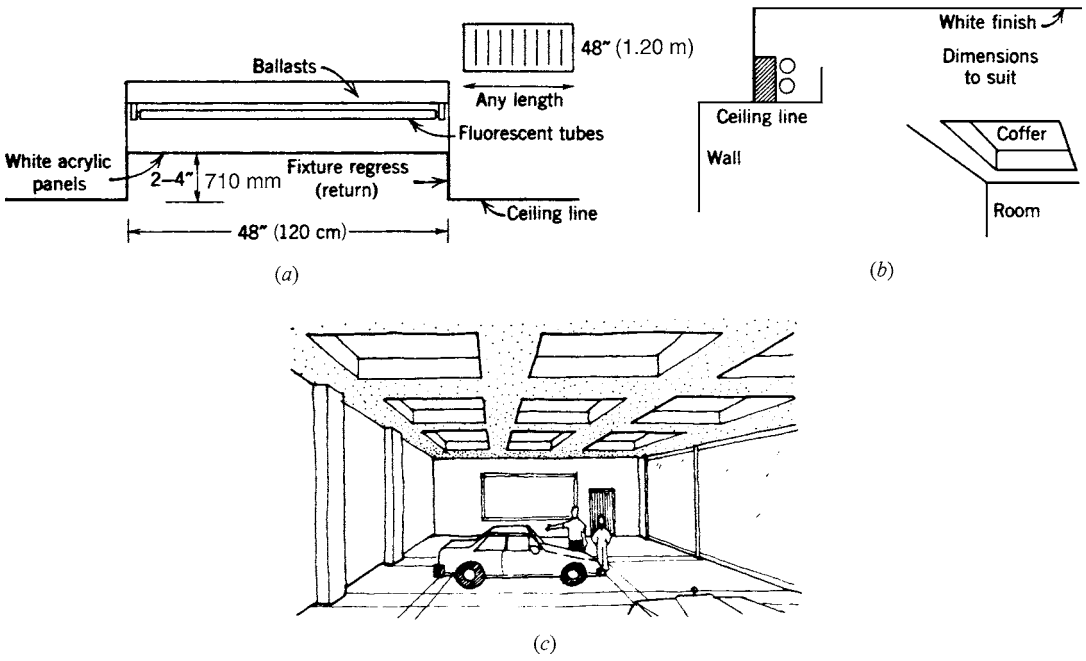


Fig. 13.13 *Coffer-type light sources can be manufactured (a) or architectural (b). Manufactured coffers (a) are large direct lighting fixtures generally available in a 4-ft (1.2-m) width with standard-length 4-ft (1.2-m) fluorescent lamps installed across the width, as shown. Length is variable, as required. Architectural coffers (b) can be constructed in any shape or size using hidden linear fluorescent lamps or CFL units to illuminate a white (plaster) flat or domed surface, which in turn illuminates the space beneath. Both types of coffer can give an illusion of great depth and of a floating illuminated surface. (c) Multiple coffers create a dominant architectural effect and, when designed in conjunction with skylights, can furnish soft, glare-free illumination throughout the day and night.*

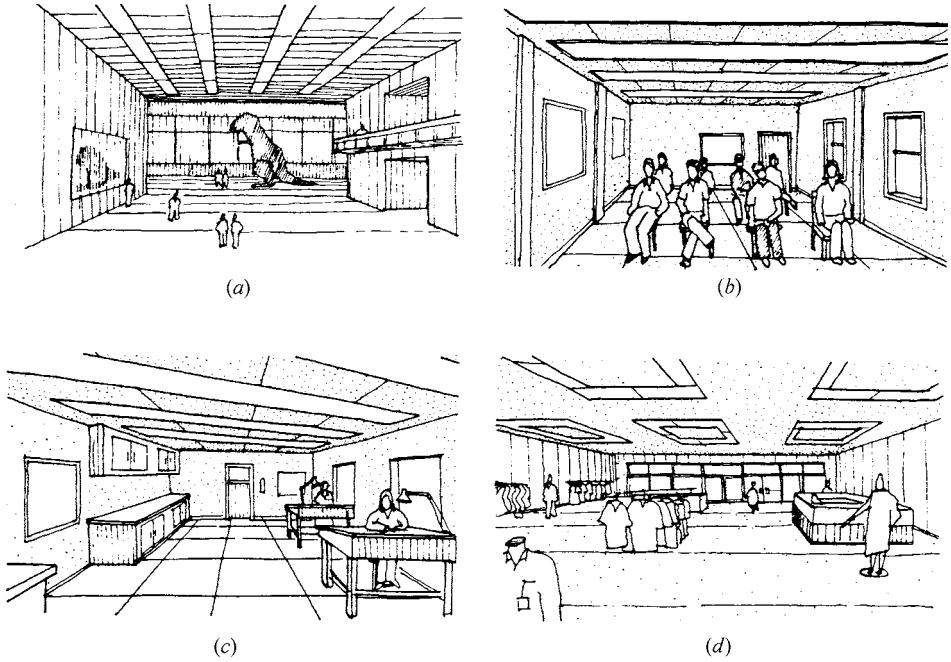


Fig. 13.14 *(a) Longitudinal lines in the direction of the sight line increase apparent length, direct traffic flow, and decrease direct glare. (b) Lines perpendicular to the line of sight shorten and widen a space but also increase direct glare. (c) Diagonal lines minimize shadows and break rectangular patterns. (d) Rectangular pattern is architecturally dominant.*



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 13.15 *Lighting designs for various spaces with high ceilings. The fixtures in (a) and (b) follow structural beams. (Photo (a) by M. B. Warren.) (b) Floor reflection and daylight provide ceiling and wall illumination. (Photo by L. Reens.) (c) Lighting in this space was handled by recessing fixtures into the lattice ceiling pattern. Metal-halide HID units and tungsten-halogen units were used. (Courtesy of GTE/Sylvania, Inc.)*

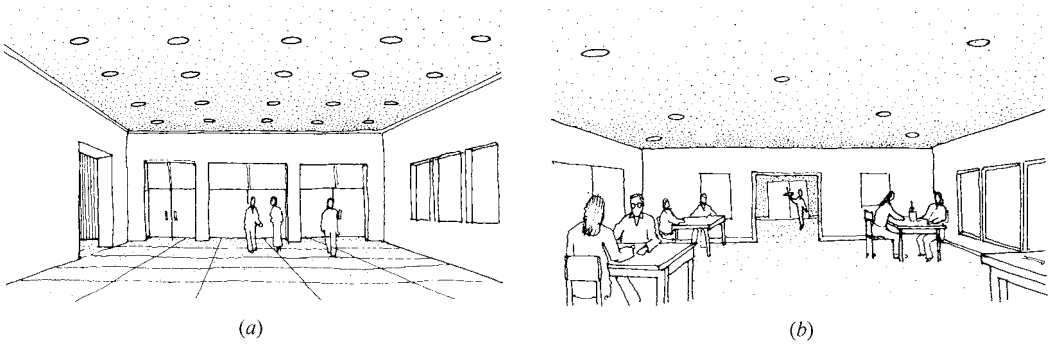


Fig. 13.16 *Downlights are unobtrusive light sources. They can be spaced evenly throughout a room (a) or unevenly (b).*

very bright, or arranged in striking patterns, attention is drawn to them and away from other surfaces. Furthermore, color elements or accent lighting can be added deliberately to draw attention. Rigid rules cannot be established to cover these criteria, but examples can demonstrate the principles involved.

Luminaire size should correlate with room size and ceiling height. Fluorescent fixtures larger than 2×4 ft (600×1200 mm) should not be used in ceilings lower than 10 ft (3.1 m) unless their size is minimized by some sort of surface pattern (see Fig. 13.11). Transilluminated (luminous) ceilings (Fig. 13.12) are *totally* lighting fixtures and require a minimum of 12 ft (3.7 m) mounting height. When they are installed below this level, particularly in large rooms, the effect is oppressive, as if the sky were lowered on us. To offset this effect, the use of colored, shaped, or dark panels is of some help. In place of a luminous ceiling, large-area, coffer-type fixtures can be utilized that give the impression of depth (Fig. 13.13).

To achieve the uniformity of illumination desirable for general lighting, regular spacing is required. However, various effects may be obtained within the regularity to accomplish an architectural purpose, as shown in Fig. 13.14*a–d*. The pattern of lights must never be at cross-purposes with any dominant architectural pattern; rather, it should either reinforce an architectural form or be neutral. If a strong architectural element is absent, a dominant lighting pattern may be desirable. Conversely, a strong architectural element can either be reinforced (Fig. 13.15*a*) or utilized to carry a neutral lighting pattern (Fig. 13.15*b*,*c*).

Continuous row installations eliminate the dominant checkerboard effect of (closely spaced) individual luminaires and are cheaper. Coves and cornices give the ceiling a floating or lightness effect. Geometric patterns can be used to add interest or break the monotony of large areas, such as those found in department stores. Generally, downlights are not dominant, and regularity of placement is not essential (Fig. 13.16). However, when downlights are surface-mounted (a generally inadvisable procedure), the result can be very far from visually neutral (Fig. 13.17). Nonuniform layouts with large sources create a distinct pattern problem inasmuch as they are too large to be neutral, and the nonuniformity can create visual confusion (Fig. 13.18). The only cure for this problem is to minimize the source brightness by using low-brightness luminaires (see Fig. 16.16 and Section 15.11).

In spaces where circulation is the primary "seeing task," but where isolated areas requiring



Fig. 13.17 *The large, can-shaped, surface-mounted downlights dominate the area's appearance despite the high ceiling.*

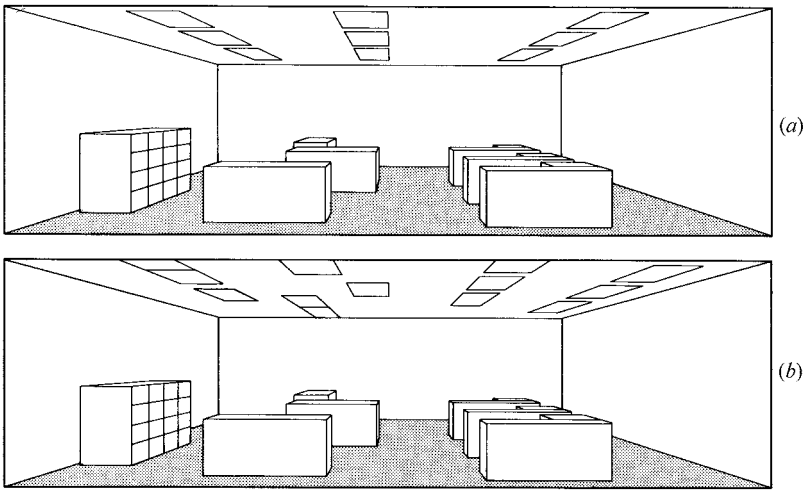


Fig. 13.18 *(a) The layout of the lighting fixtures is economical and may provide uniform illuminance. (b) The nonuniform layout lacks integration with the functions below and may not provide the illuminance needed for the task locations.*

greater illumination exist (such as waiting areas in transportation terminals), a perimeter lighting system with supplemental lighting as required is a viable solution (Fig. 13.19). In addition to their illumination function, lighting patterns are often used as directional markers. This is particularly useful in transportation terminals, where signs only partially serve this purpose. Figure 13.20 illustrates this principle, as well as the use of a lighting pattern to emphasize an architectural aspect of the space.

A frequently neglected consideration is the appearance of a luminaire when deenergized. With proper daylight and energy-conserving design, many sources can be unlighted during the normal-use hours of a space. (Low-brightness sources will change least in appearance.) Cognizance of the visibility and appearance of luminaires in daylight, regardless of whether they are illuminated, from inside or outside a building can be used to advantage, as shown in Figs. 13.21 and 13.22.

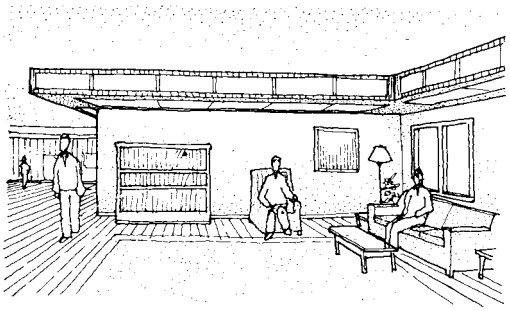


Fig. 13.19 *Cornices, valances, and coves are luminous ceiling borders. In large rooms, suspended coves achieve a uniform ceiling brightness gradient and, when designed with a downward component or combined with supplemental lighting, as illustrated, create a pleasant, intimate atmosphere.*



Fig. 13.20 *The lines of light fixtures in the center converge optically to produce a directional flow of traffic toward the escalator. (Penn Station, New York; photo by B. Stein.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 13.21 *(a) Lighting can be utilized as a medium to connect the inside and outside of a building. The simple maneuver of continuing the lighting pattern beyond the window visually connects the inside and outside spaces. Care must be exercised to avoid fixture placement that reflects in the glass. (b) As fixtures are readily visible even when unlit during daylight hours, their outline can be accentuated and the resultant pattern utilized as an architectural motif. (Courtesy of Welton Becket & Assoc.)*



Fig. 13.22 *Electric lighting fixtures can be seen through the glazing even during the daytime. (Photo by B. Stein.)*

13.17 OTHER DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

Because the phenomenon of vision as affected by lighting is the core of our discussion, it is appropriate to present here some miscellaneous yet important observations that are not readily subsumed under any of the major headings in our discussion.

1. As shown in Figs. 13.14*a* and 13.14*b*, the impression of room length and width can be emphasized by the direction of lines of lighting. An even wall wash of light can also be used to shorten and widen a hallway or corridor.
2. As can be seen in Fig. 13.11, a light wall in the line of sight increases the room's apparent size. Therefore, both light and low-chroma, high-value paint hues can be used to expand a space (lighted walls, light colors) or contract it (unlighted walls, dark color).
3. Vertical surface illuminance should be approximately 25% to 35% of horizontal illuminance for a space to appear dimensionally undistorted. Because high luminance attracts the eye, fixtures with sparkle draw the eye away from the walls and thereby shrink the space's horizontal dimensions.
4. As shown in Figs. 13.13*c*, 13.14*c* and *d*, 13.16, and 13.17, luminaire patterns can be dominant (i.e., can become a focus of attention) by virtue of their size or arrangement. The same is true of wall-lighting patterns to an even greater extent, as walls are always in the direct line of sight. Therefore, wall lighting that creates meaningless scallops, spots, irregular gradients, and points of sparkle becomes a dominant visual element. In most cases, this is neither intended nor desired. Unscalloped, even-gradient wall illumination is readily accomplished with linear sources, with elliptical reflector lamps or luminaire reflectors, utilizing proper luminaire spacing.

5. Concentrated pools of light in an overall low-ambient-light space effectively isolate the illuminated areas from each other (i.e., define a limited specific geographic space). This can be used to advantage in restaurants and work or school areas where it is desired to define individual "territories" in a single large space.

References and Resources

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2008. *Standard 90.1-2007 User's Manual.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2004. *Advanced Energy Design Guide for Small Office Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Lightsearch.com—fixtures: http://www.lightsearch.com/search/fixtures.html

USGBC. *Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED).* U.S. Green Building Council: http://www.usgbc.org/

CHAPTER 14

Daylighting Design

DESIGNING WITH DAYLIGHT IS BOTH AN art and a science. The designer, in concert with the appropriate combination of building geometries, materials, and light produced by site conditions, can produce health and well-being, visual delight (Fig. 14.1), and intended ambience—and reduce dependency on electrical energy use. Studies have demonstrated that daylighting improves indoor environmental quality for occupants. Daylighting design is often mistakenly understood to mean that an abundance of light should fill a space; successful design, however, involves a careful balance and control of



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.1 *Visually appealing daylighting elements at (a) Chiswick Park Office Complex, London, UK (Richard Rogers Partnership, 2002). (b) Hong Kong International Airport, Hong Kong, China (Norman Foster, 1998). (Photos by Alison Kwok; © 2009; all rights reserved.)*

heat gain and loss. A variety of strategies are available to control and enhance daylight through shading devices, lightshelves, glazing, atria, courtyards, and material finishes (both interior and exterior). Daylighting is an easily achievable LEED strategy if a building can provide a minimum daylight factor of roughly 2% in 75% of all occupied spaces.

14.1 THE DAYLIGHTING OPPORTUNITY

(a) Importance of Daylighting Design

Historically, the architectural form of buildings, placement of windows, and location of rooms were guided by the availability of daylight as the primary source of illumination. Daylight was the only source of abundant light for buildings, provided through deep windows and thick walls and perhaps replaced (although inadequately) in the evening by the flicker of a candle flame or an oil lamp. Building form changed dramatically with the development of fluorescent lighting technologies, allowing interiors to be uniformly lit by electric lighting systems and to function at cooler temperatures (as opposed to the higher temperatures produced by heat-intensive incandescent lamps). Designing with daylight can improve energy efficiency by minimizing the use of electricity for lighting as well as reducing associated heating and cooling loads. Daylighting is a critical design factor to those concerned about global warming, carbon emissions, and sustainable design—in addition to visual comfort.

Research has found daylight to be an important factor influencing human behavior, health, and productivity. Windows admitting daylight provide occupants with a view and a temporal connection with the outdoors. Daylight renders the environment in a vivid range of experiences and delight. It is important for basic visual requirements to view tasks and to perceive space. How daylight is delivered is in the hands of the designer at the beginning stages of design. The option of ignoring daylight in our high-energy-cost and rapidly-diminishing-natural-resources world is no longer available. This chapter describes daylight strategies to increase occupant satisfaction, control glare, provide appropriate vertical and horizontal illumination, and address the potential for energy savings to enable the designer to create a proper visual environment.

(b) Planning for Daylight throughout Design

Designing buildings for daylighting is a complex systems integration process. Daylighting design begins with situating a building on its site and continues through each phase of design; making the best use of daylight continues throughout a building's occupancy. While overall design goals remain generally fixed throughout each design phase, there are key concerns associated with each of the phases. For example, in the conceptual design phase, building form, orientation, layout, and major apertures might be primary elements. Further into design development, there would be specification of materials and interior finishes, and zoning for integration with electric lighting and other services; control systems would be coordinated with occupancy schedules, and commissioning test procedures set in place. During occupancy, fine-tuning and maintenance of the system would occur, and a post-occupancy evaluation performed to determine satisfaction, visual comfort, and lighting system performance.

(c) Energy Savings with Daylighting

To obtain lighting energy savings in a building, six "essential" ingredients for daylighting design are recommended by the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America (IESNA) in RP-5-99, *Recommended Practice of Daylighting*:

1. Plan interior space for access to daylight.
2. Minimize sunlight in the vicinity of critical visual tasks.
3. Design spaces to minimize glare.
4. Zone electric lighting for daylight-responsive control.
5. Provide for daylight-responsive control of electric lighting.
6. Provide for commissioning and maintenance of any automatic controls.

Energy savings from reduced electric lighting will be compromised if any of these factors are overlooked. If any one of the first three is missing, daylight will make little contribution to the illumination of the space. Each of these factors is discussed in this chapter.

(d) Goals of Daylighting

Improved aesthetics, provision of human biological needs (circadian rhythms and visual relief), and reduction of electric lighting energy usage are the most important advantages of daylighting a building. Key goals in daylighting design are to provide sufficient illuminance, minimize the perception of glare, and provide for overall visual comfort.

14.2 HUMAN FACTORS IN DAYLIGHTING DESIGN

The following human-related factors (as opposed to the physical aspects of light) are described briefly to illustrate the importance of considering daylighting, and especially these factors, in the design of spaces.

(a) Windows and View

There is a common belief that if a window is placed in a wall, there will be sufficient view and daylight. The view function of a window, however, is very different from the daylighting function. The most preferred views from a window include the sky, the horizon, and the ground. In offices, people enjoy having windows in their work space because of the views. The functional advantage is that people can look into the distance to reduce eye fatigue after doing close desk tasks. Depending upon the type of facility, the designer should be aware of special circumstances—for example, ensuring that bedridden occupants of care facilities can have a view from their vantage point, providing lower sills in facilities for children (depending upon safety), or accommodating people in wheelchairs by providing low-sill windows in bedrooms and other areas.

(b) Productivity and Satisfaction

Productivity is a complex issue that is difficult to isolate or attribute to a single parameter such as daylighting. The connection to the temporal qualities of daylight improves our psychological well-being and productivity. In studies of classrooms, windows, daylight, and performance, researchers found that students with more daylighting in their classrooms progressed faster on math and reading tests than students with less daylighting. Also, sources of glare negatively impact student learning, and the issues of control of windows, blinds, sun penetration, and acoustic conditions are important for teachers. In another study, retail stores were found to have a "daylight effect on increased monthly sales" (Heschong Mahone Group, 1999–2003).

(c) Controlling Daylight in Interior Spaces

Daylight, whether diffuse light or direct sunlight, provides significant benefits associated with psychological well-being. On the other hand, there are potential problems—such as glare or substantial cooling loads—caused by uncontrolled quantities and qualities of light. Direct sunlight is not, however, always a liability. In nontask areas, a momentary sunny patch, a streak of sunlight against a wall, or a series of multiple shapes provides visual interest and dynamism to a space. Sunlight in task areas can be controlled in a number of ways:

- Provide exterior fixed shades that exclude sunlight for all sun positions.
- Use systems that diffuse the incident sunlight sufficiently to eliminate glare potential.
- Provide occupant-controlled adjustable shades.

(d) Minimize Glare

Glare is a difficult problem to overcome when balancing daylight and view. Any window (including north exposures) can produce problematic glare if the window is within the field of view. High contrast ratios between a window and adjacent surfaces can occur unless the window is designed to reduce luminance ratios through the use of sunshading devices, lightshelves, high-reflectance interior surfaces, light-colored window surrounds and mullions, and low-transmittance glazing (though such glazing will reduce light flux through the window). Furniture should be oriented to work with sidelighting (as opposed to having an occupant face a window).

14.3 SITE STRATEGIES FOR DAYLIGHTING BUILDINGS

Optimal daylighting opportunities depend upon a building's position on a site relative to available daylight, horizon obstructions, orientation, and

building form. The quality of daylight, its effects on illumination, and solar position for passive heating and control of cooling loads are of particular importance to the designer. Site obstructions such as neighboring buildings, trees, and landforms will determine the maximum available daylight on a site and the maximum project envelope that will preserve daylight access to adjacent properties (Fig. 14.2).

Orientation. In many locations, an ideal orientation for buildings is an elongated, narrow plan allowing the north and south façades of the building maximum exposure to more easily controllable daylight. From a daylighting standpoint, this is desirable because direct solar radiation received by the south façade is easier to control to prevent excess solar gain, is relatively uniform, and is necessary for passive solar heating strategies. The nearly constant diffuse skylight availability on the north façade is advantageous for uniform and soft daylighting. Figure 14.3 shows how orientation affects cooling, lighting, and heating energy for a building.

Form. Establishing an appropriate building form in the early stages of design is critical to daylighting performance. The width of the long, narrow plan previously described will determine how much of the floor area will have access to usable daylight. Generally, a 15-ft (4.5-m) perimeter zone can be completely daylit, a 15- to 30-ft (4.5- to 9.0-m) area can be partially daylit, and an electrically lit area beyond 30 ft (9 m) can be used to determine the width of a building.

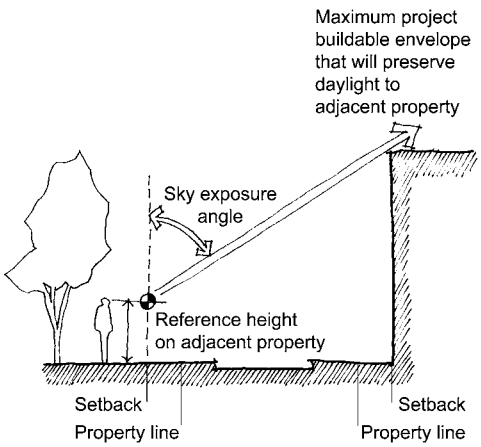


Fig. 14.2 *Protecting a site from obstructions to daylight. (Drawing by Erik Winter.)*

14.4 APERTURE STRATEGIES: SIDELIGHTING

Sidelighting systems admit light from apertures in window walls, and light sweeps across the space from one or more sides. The distance to which usable daylight penetrates a space and falls onto a work plane is the variable that designers work with to provide for sufficient illuminance. Generally, sidelighting is best for desk tasks because there are no veiling reflections, provided there is proper orientation of the worker. A number of generalized sidelighting strategies provide greater illuminance farther into a space and improve visual comfort. The variety of approaches and components available to the designer is extensive. A complete discussion is provided in *Daylight in Buildings, A Source Book on Daylighting Systems and Components* (International Energy Agency, 2000). Schematic examples of a few typical design strategies are described below and in Figs. 14.4 to 14.11.

- *Design for bilateral lighting.* Daylight within a space is generally most evenly distributed when a space is lit from two walls (bilateral lighting), as shown in Fig. 14.4. Bilateral lighting from "opposite" walls produces the most evenly distributed lighting condition. Unilateral lighting (windows on one wall) can increase the potential for glare.
- *Place windows high on a wall.* In general, for a given window area, daylight will penetrate farther into a space and have more uniform distribution when windows are placed high on a window wall (Fig. 14.5). If possible, raise the ceiling height to accommodate a higher window position. Use the ceiling as a reflecting surface by placing window heads as close as possible to the ceiling.
- *Use adjacent walls as reflectors.* Interior walls become reflectors when windows are placed adjacent to them, thus reducing the contrasting edge around the window (Fig. 14.6). This arrangement can also bring visual delight if the reflecting wall is a light color, which will reveal patterns and colors from sunlight and reflect diffuse light farther into the space.
- *Splay the walls of an aperture.* This strategy is similar to the reflector strategy described previously, where light washes across a longer or rounded surface area around the window. When the edges of window openings are splayed (Fig. 14.7) or rounded, these illuminated surfaces surrounding

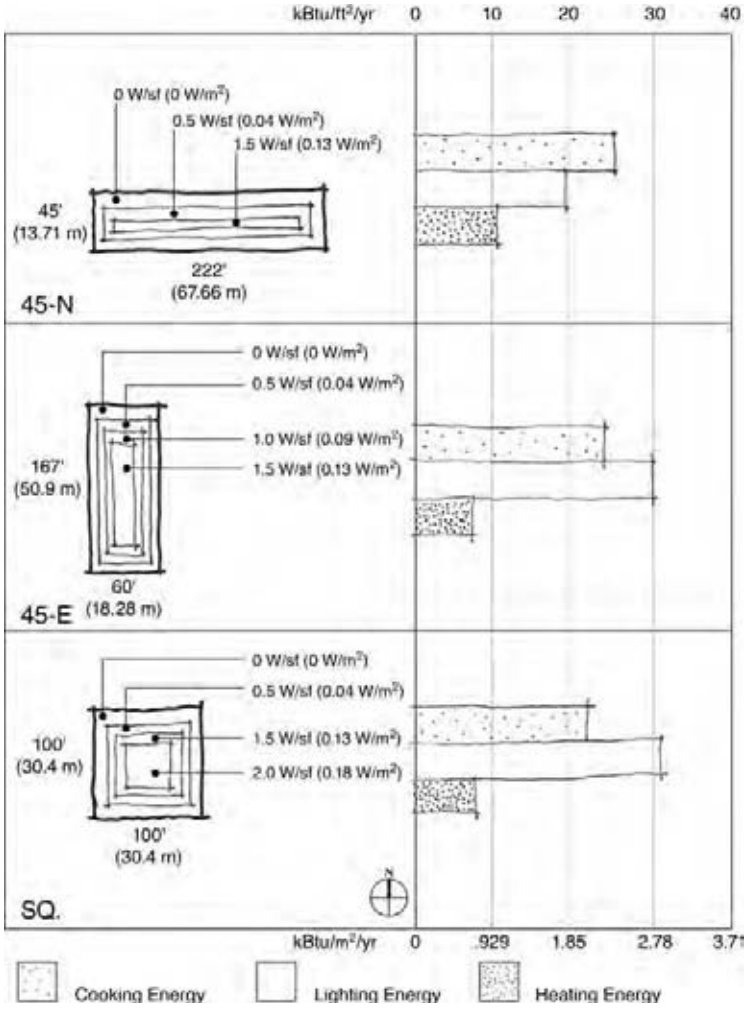


Fig. 14.3 *Effect of building orientation on energy consumption. (Drawing by Erik Winter after Moore,* Environmental Control Systems*, 1993.)*

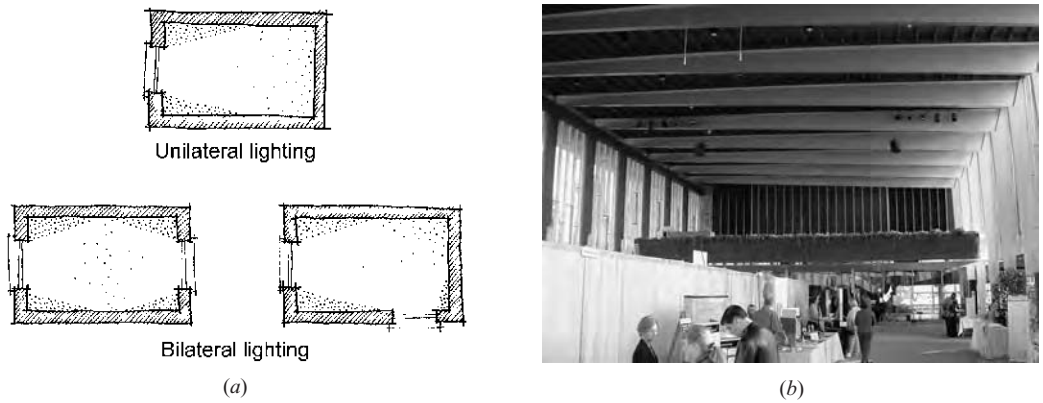
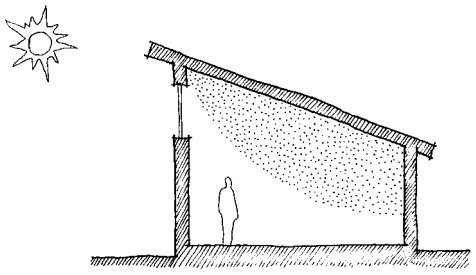


Fig. 14.4 *(a) Plan diagrams of unilateral and bilateral daylighting. (b) Windows on two sides (a bilateral approach) at the Crystal Cathedral campus, Anaheim, California. (Drawing by Erik Winter; photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*)



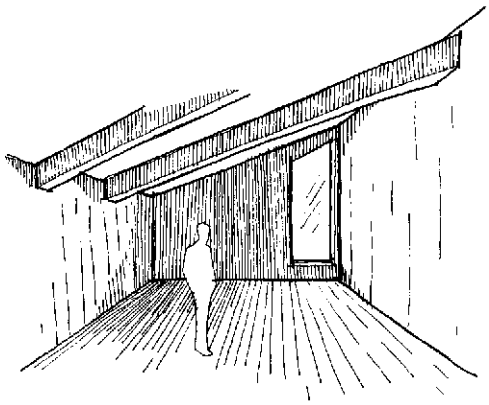
(*b*)

Fig. 14.5 *(a) With higher windows, daylight extends farther into a space. (b) High windows in a classroom at the University of Oregon. (Drawing by Erik Winter; photo by Nathan Majeski.)*

the window reduce contrast and are more visually comfortable, and therefore reduce the potential for glare.

- *Provide daylight filters.* Daylight may be modified (either blocked or diffused) by a number of elements, which include trees, vines, and trellises (Fig. 14.8) on the exterior of a building; filters for the interior of a building may include blinds, drapes, or translucent glazing.
- *Provide summer shading.* Depending upon passive solar heating and cooling design strategies, in many instances direct sunlight should be blocked before it enters a space at certain times of the year.

Figures 14.9 to 14.11 show examples of exterior louvers (horizontal or vertical), overhangs, trellises, trees, and lightshelves that can block direct sunlight, reflect diffused sunlight into a space, and provide solar control. Light-colored materials or finishes on these components will reduce contrast between the element and the view or sky beyond. Lightshelves that also serve as a shading device can be designed as a horizontal (integrated or attached) component positioned inside and/or outside a window. Typically above eye level, they divide a window into a lower view portion and an upper area exclusively for daylight.

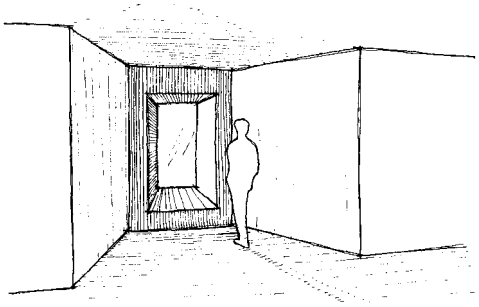


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 14.6 *(a) Windows adjacent to a wall provide an additional reflecting surface. (b) Reading carrel adjacent to a window at the Graduate Theological Union Library, Berkeley, California. (Drawing by Erik Winter; photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 14.7 *(a) Splayed window provides additional reflecting surfaces. (b) Deeply set window within a thick wall of a room in a medieval village in Il Borro, Italy. (Drawing by Erik Winter; photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

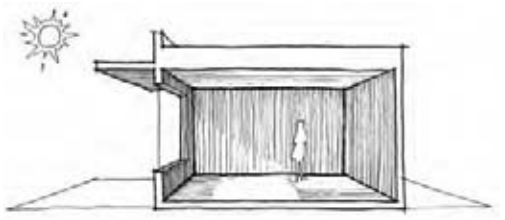


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 14.8 *Filters. (a) Trellis at Westcave Environmental Center, Round Mountain, Texas. (b) Several layers (trees, shading, curtains) of a window can filter light and shade a window. (Photo by Walter Grondzik; © 2004; all rights reserved; Photo by Nathan Majeski.)*

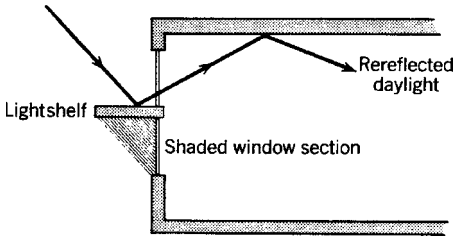


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 14.9 *(a) Horizontal overhangs block light but also act as a reflector for light from the ground plane. (b) Horizontal shading devices at Ash Creek Intermediate School, Monmouth, Oregon. (Drawing by Erik Winter; photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 14.10 *(a) Lightshelf reduces the daylight factor near a window and increases it at greater depths. Shelf material (opaque, translucent) and angle of installation (horizontal, sloped up) markedly affect performance. (b) Opaque white surface at the top of a lightshelf in the Emerald People's Utility District office building, Eugene, Oregon. (Photo © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

14.5 APERTURE STRATEGIES: TOPLIGHTING

Skylights, roof monitors, and clerestories are suitable aperture strategies for the top floor of a building, particularly for interior locations of large floors that are far from perimeter windows. To prevent veiling reflections or direct glare situations, toplighting components should be placed away from the *offending zone* (areas with a direct view from an occupant), or a baffle or interior reflector should be used to diffuse and control daylight. Most of the strategies for sidelighting also apply to toplighting, several of which are discussed here.

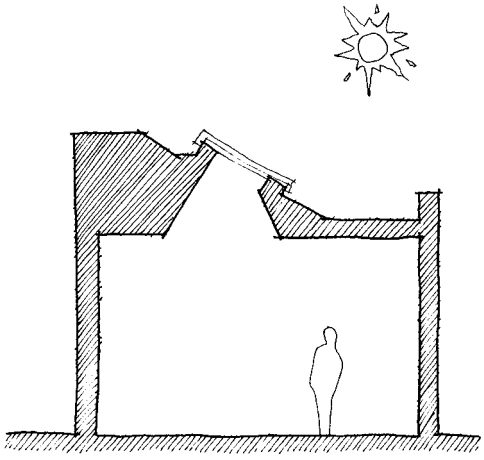
- *Splay the "walls" of an aperture.* Splaying the sides of a skylight makes the skylight appear larger because light washes along a larger surface area and reflects diffuse light into the space (Fig. 14.12). This strategy reduces the potential for glare similarly to the way splayed windows function.
- *Place toplights high in the space.* Higher ceilings with skylights allow more surface area for light to diffuse upon, virtually becoming a larger source (Fig. 14.13). This strategy works well in spaces where the skylight is well above the field of view.
- *Use interior devices to block, baffle, or diffuse light.* Direct sunlight can be redirected by a reflector below a skylight, clerestory, or roof monitor that, depending upon the surface material, diffuses the light onto another surface within the space (Figs. 14.14 and 14.15).



Fig. 14.11 *Fixed horizontal louvers on the south façade at the Phoenix Public Library, Phoenix, Arizona. (Photo © 2004 by Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*

14.6 SPECIALIZED DAYLIGHTING STRATEGIES

A number of innovative daylighting systems can be categorized as experimental, yet they have tremendous potential. Some of these strategies include laser-cut or prismatic panels, fiber optics, solar

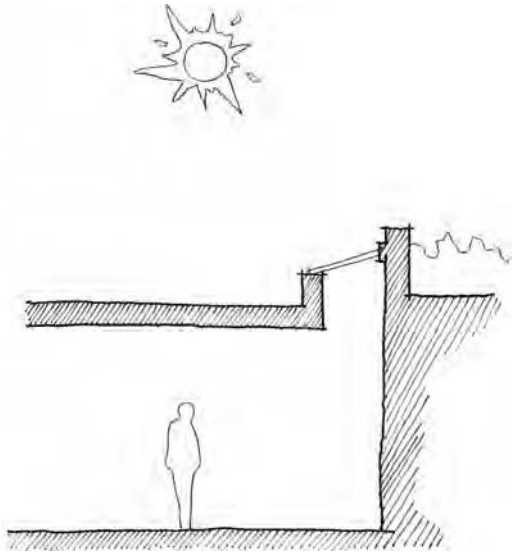


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 14.12 *(a) Splayed surfaces of a skylight provide areas for diffusely reflected light. (b) Gallery skylight at the J. Paul Getty Museum, Los Angeles, California (Richard Meier, 1997). (Drawing by Erik Winter; photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

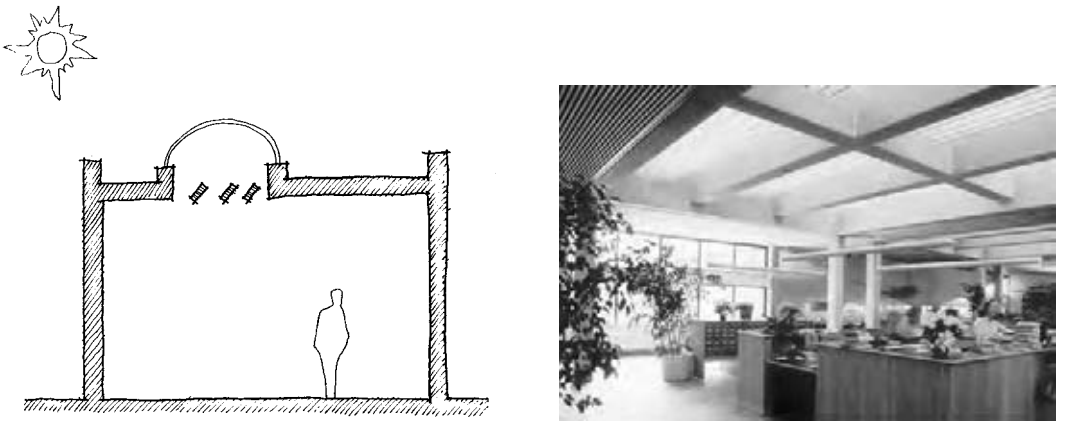


(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 14.13 *(a) A skylight near a north wall provides reflecting surfaces for uniform light distribution and reduces the potential for glare. (b) One of the "bottles" of light (skylight) at St. Ignatius Chapel at Seattle University in Seattle, Washington (Steven Holl, 1995). (Drawing by Erik Winter; photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.14 *(a) Skylight with baffles that block direct solar radiation. (b) Baffled skylight daylighting design at Mt. Airy Public Library, Mt. Airy, North Carolina (Edward Mazria, 1984). (Drawing by Erik Winter; photo by Fuller Moore; © 2004 The Society of Building Science Educators; used with permission.)*



Fig. 14.15 *Clerestory skylights with louvers at the U.S. Holocaust Memorial Museum in Washington, DC (Pei, Cobb, Freed & Partners, 1993). (Photo © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

tubes, and heliostats. More advanced systems use reflectors and lenses to introduce concentrated luminous energy into some type of light-conducting device. These may be fiber-optic bundles, prismatic light pipes, or some type of mirrored channel. The problem of heat rejection becomes more severe as the degree of solar energy concentration increases. Thus, light pipes are much less critical in this regard than are optical-fiber systems. The efficiency and economic feasibility of these systems are interdependent because of the materials used; the farther the light is transmitted, the lower the system's overall efficiency and the higher the cost to make the system technically feasible.

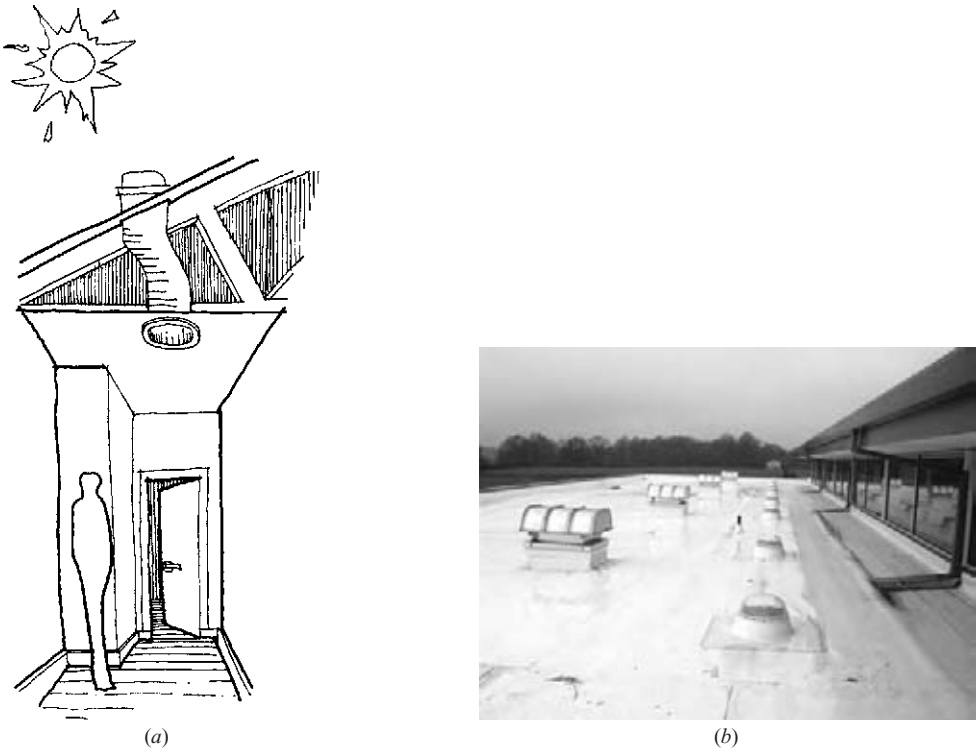
Light pipes. This term refers to several strategies: daylight pipes, electric light pipes, and fiber-optic pipes (Fig. 14.16). The light pipe operates by collecting light through a heliostat; channeling daylight (or electric light) through a reflective tube made of prismatic glass, plastic film, and mirrors; and diffusing light at the end of the pipe. It is an exciting strategy because of the length it can transport light—65 ft (20 m)—from a single-point light source.

Tubular skylights. These light shafts have highly reflective surfaces and are capped by a clear skylight (Fig. 14.17). The amount of light transmitted and delivered varies with the diameter of the shaft. They are convenient and economical for supplemental illumination in hallways, closets, and areas without a need for a lot of control. The light quality is comparable to that of a ceiling-mounted fluorescent fixture (often indistinguishable).



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.16 *(a) Heliostat on the rooftop of a building tracks the sun and directs light into an 8-ft. (2.4-m)-wide atrium and down 14 floors. (b) Solar Light Pipe is a 120-ft. (37-m)-long, 6-ft. (1.8-m)-diameter, 12-sided steel-and-aluminum frame—enclosing laminated glass panels and surrounded by fabric—within the atrium at the Morgan Lewis building in Washington, DC. (Photos © 2004 Carpenter Norris Consulting; used with permission.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.17 *(a) Tubular skylight installation through a roof structure. (b) Top of Solatube® skylights on the roof at Ash Creek Intermediate School in Monmouth, Oregon. (Drawing by Erik Winter; photo by Alison Kwok; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

14.7 DAYLIGHT FACTOR

Daylight factor (DF) is defined as the ratio of interior illuminance (E_i) to available outdoor illuminance

$$\text{DF} = \frac{E_i \text{ indoor illuminance, at a given point}}{E_H \text{ outdoor illuminance}} \times 100\% \qquad (14.1)$$

where E_H is the unobstructed horizontal exterior illuminance. The daylight factor concept is applicable only where the sky luminance distribution is known or can reasonably be estimated. The Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (CIE) defines an overcast sky and a clear sky whose luminance distributions are fixed for the purpose of calculations. Daylight factor cannot be used with skies with constantly changing luminance (partly cloudy and direct sun) because under such conditions the daylight factor at a given point also varies continuously, making the concept useless as a calculation tool *for absolute daylight values*.

Daylight factor as a means of expressing interior daylight illuminance is both absolute and relative. With a given sky luminance distribution, variations in daylight illuminance *inside* correspond exactly to variations *outside* (i.e., the daylight factor remains the same). This assumes a minimal effect from obstructions and ground reflections. Thus, the daylight factor allows determination of interior daylight distribution for varying fenestration, spatial arrangement, and building orientation.

Daylight factor is constant for a given space and window configuration. Interior illuminance can easily be calculated by knowing the daylight factors for locations in a given space and the exterior illuminance derived from sky luminance data. Daylight design analysis can use a combination of minimum exterior illuminance and corresponding minimum daylight factor requirements to predict daylight sufficiency under almost all exterior conditions.

14.8 COMPONENTS OF DAYLIGHT

The general characteristics of daylight as a source of light (versus electric lamps) were discussed in Chapter 11. Understanding the components of daylight is important to the design of apertures and the selection of materials. Daylight in a building consists of three components (see Fig. 14.18):

1. Sky component (SC)
2. Externally reflected component (ERC)
3. Internally reflected components ($\text{IRC}_1 + \text{IRC}_2$)

DF is the sum of these three components, each calculated individually for each location being considered. DF is a ratio, but the value of a given DF is based upon contributions from these components: DF = SC + ERC + IRC.

The *sky component* (SC) is that portion of total daylight illuminance at a point received directly from the area of the sky *visible through* an aperture. As the SC represents *received* light, it takes into account reductions due to window obstructions (mullions, etc.) and losses in transmission; that is,

$$\text{SC} = \text{incident skylight} - \text{window losses}$$

The *externally reflected component* (ERC) represents light reflected from exterior obstructions onto the point under consideration. This *does not include ground-reflected light*. ERC is of significance only in built-up areas (where there are structures opposite an aperture) and can be estimated as the portion of the SC for that area of obstructed sky, reduced by the percentage of the sky obstructed (RD) and the *reflectance factor* (RF) of the obstruction; that is,

$$\text{ERC} = \text{SC} \times \text{RD} \times \text{RF}$$

Thus, if 25% of the sky is obstructed by a building with a 20% RF, we have

$$\text{ERC} = \text{SC} \times 0.25 \times 0.20$$

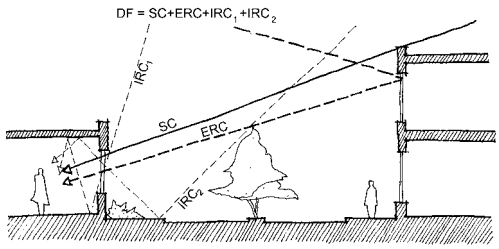


Fig. 14.18 *Total daylight factor (DF) is composed of the SC, ERC, and IRC. The IRC, in turn, is subdivided into reflected sky light and reflected ground light components. Note that surfaces deep in the room are illuminated with rereflected light. (Drawing by Erik Winter.)*

For this particular example, then

$$\text{ERC} = 5\% \text{ of SC}$$

to be added to the remaining 75% of SC (25% of the sky was obstructed).

The *internally reflected component* (IRC) represents the light received at the point under consideration that has been reflected from interior surfaces. IRC is subdivided into reflected skylight (IRC_1) and reflected ground light (IRC_2). IRC_2 is generally small, and IRC $\cong IRC_1$. IRC is, therefore, primarily dependent upon interior surface reflectances and upon the amount of window glazing, and becomes a large portion of DF deep within an interior space (see Table 14.1 for wall reflectance factors and Fig. 14.19 illustrating IRC as a function of the amount of glazing). IRC is normally calculated using published interreflectance tables, as direct calculation is extremely complex.

Typical curves for both horizontal and vertical daylight factors for a room with single (unilateral) sidelighting (windows on one side) are shown in Fig. 14.20. These curves are produced by a longhand daylight-protractor-aided technique (Building Research Station, London). Any change in parameters, such as window dimensions or height above the working plane, ceiling height, surface reflectance, ground reflection, and obstructions, alters these curves and requires recalculation and replotting. Exact calculation of even a few variants for a space is a tedious and time-consuming procedure.

The following manual methods describe alternative approaches available to save time and increase accuracy:

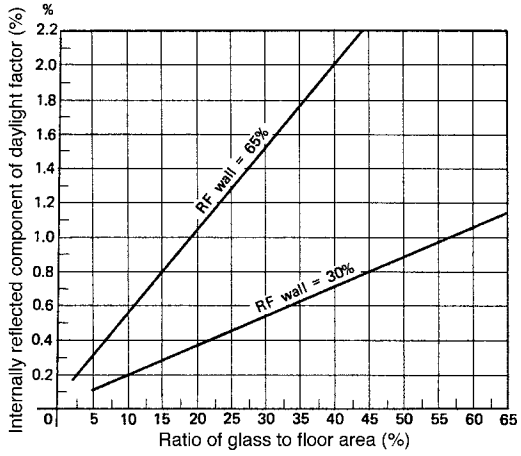


Fig. 14.19 *Plot of the IRC of the daylight factor as a function of amount of glazing, expressed as per DF (i.e., as a percentage of exterior illuminance). As expected, the effect of a lighter wall finish becomes more pronounced as the fenestration area increases.*

1. Use of simplifications, such as standard curves, tabular data, or the CIE method.
2. Use of a library of graphic light distribution plots with varying parameters.
3. Use of a less-laborious manual calculation procedure. One such technique is known commonly as the *lumen method* or the *IES method*.
4. Use of computer simulation software.

Designers may use daylight factor criteria as a starting point for daylight design, translating the DF values (such as those given in Table 14.2) into

TABLE 14.1 Effect of Wall Reflectance Factor on the Proportion of IRC in the DF

	30% Wall Reflectance		*60% Wall Reflectance*	
Distance from Window in ft (m)	**Total DF**	$\frac{\text{IRC}}{\text{DF}}$ **(%)**	**Total DF**	$\frac{\text{IRC}}{\text{DF}}$ **(%)**
0	30	1	31	3.5
5 (1.5)	16	1.9	17	6.5
10 (3.0)	5.5	5.5	6.3	16.9
15 (4.5)	2.1	14.3	2.9	37.9
20 (6.0)	1.3	23	2.1	52.4

Room data:
Room 24 × 28 ft (7.3 × 8.5 m) 70% ceiling reflectance
Window on 28-ft wall—one side only; 20% floor reflectance
Window area = 20% of floor area

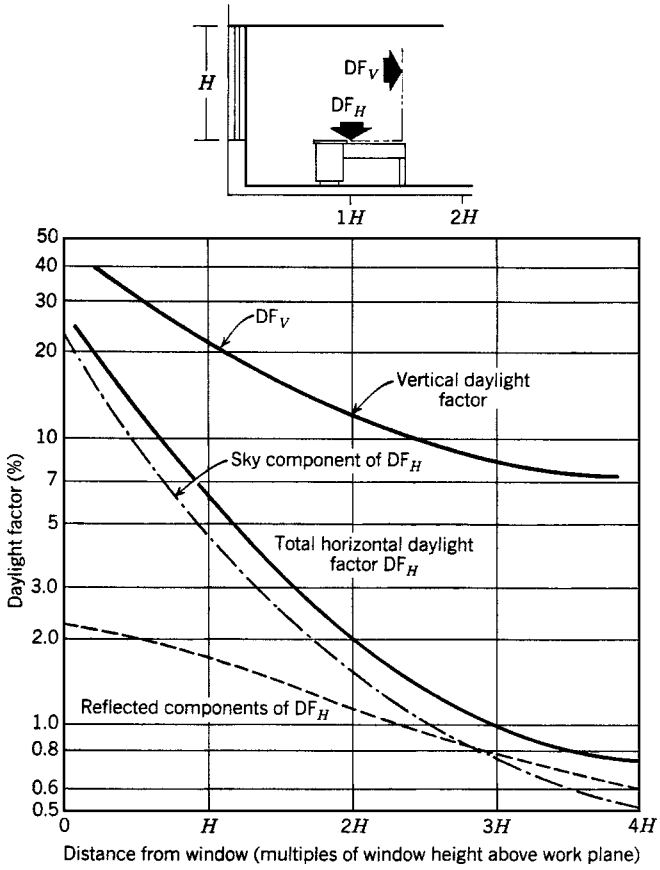


Fig. 14.20 *Typical daylight factor curves for horizontal (DFH) and vertical (DFV) illuminance for a room with large windows on one side only. Note that the SC represents almost the entire DF near the window, but its proportion reduces at greater depths. There, interreflected light constitutes 50% of the available daylight.*

actual illuminances in footcandles (lux) and comparing the results to recommended illuminance values. As an example, consider two cities in the United States that have overcast skies for appreciable portions of the year—Columbus, Ohio (40° N latitude), and Seattle, Washington (48° N latitude). Table 14.3 compares illuminance values calculated by the DF method with those recommended by IESNA and the Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers (CIBSE). For most of the year (with the exception of winter), daylight provides all the light necessary for the tasks in Table 14.2. In this case, where the available exterior daylight is as low as 5000 to 7000 lux (465 to 650 fc), supplemental electric lighting would be required for all interior areas beyond H feet (that is, one window height from the window—see Fig. 14.20).

In addition to the recommendations in Table 14.2, the ratio between the minimum and average daylight factor in a space, which relates to contrast ratios, should be no less than 30%:

$$\frac{\mathrm{Df}_{\mathrm{min}}}{\mathrm{DF}_{\mathrm{avg}}} \geq 0.3$$

The minimum daylight factor in any portion of a space should not drop below 0.5%, which is sufficient for circulation.

TABLE 14.2 Recommended Daylight Factors

Task	DF[a]
Ordinary seeing tasks, such as reading, filing, and easy office work	1.5–2.5%
Moderately difficult tasks, such as prolonged reading, stenographic work, normal machine tool work	2.5–4.0%
Difficult, prolonged tasks, such as drafting, proofreading poor copy, fine machine work, and fine inspection	4.0–8.0%

Source: Millet and Bedrick (1980).

[a]Use the smaller DF values for southern latitudes with plentiful winter daylight.

14.9 GUIDELINES FOR PRELIMINARY DAYLIGHTING DESIGN

Guidelines provide the designer with a variety of broadly based rules useful during the conceptual and schematic stages of design. Based upon design experience and lighting research, these guidelines assume overcast sky conditions. During design development, they may be used as a starting point for performance analyses that include other parameters such as sky conditions, orientation, and wall color, using computer simulation software, physical models, and calculations.

(a) The 2.5H Guideline

This longstanding guideline in the lighting design field (Fig. 14.21) assumes that there will be sufficient work plane illuminance from a window up to a distance of 2.5 times the head height of the window above the work plane—assuming clear glazing, overcast skies, no major obstructions, and a total window width that is approximately half that of the exterior perimeter wall.

(b) The 15/30 Guideline

This preliminary design guideline assumes that a 15-ft-wide (4.6-m) zone from a window wall (Fig. 14.22) can be daylit sufficiently for office tasks. The next 15-ft (4.6-m) zone can be partially daylit and supplemented with electric lighting. Zones farther than 30 ft (9.1 m) from the window

TABLE 14.3 Horizontal Illuminances (E_H) from Overcast Sky, at Selected Times, in Columbus, Ohio, and Seattle, Washington, Corresponding to the Recommended DF

Location	10 AM Solar Altitude[a]	Available Daylight, E_H fc (lux)[b]	DF Recommendation (%)[c]	Illuminance fc (lux) Calculation from DF	Illuminance fc (lux)[d] Recommendation
Columbus	June 21	2100 (22,500)	1.5–2.5	31–52 (338–563)	28–47 (300–500)
40° N latitude	60°		2.5–4	52–84 (563–900)	47–70 (500–750)
			4–8	84–167 (900–1800)	70–93 (750–1000)
	Mar./Sept. 21	1400 (15,500)	1.5–2.5	21–35 (225–375)	28–47 (300–500)
	41°		2.5–4	35–56 (375–600)	47–70 (500–750)
			4–8	56–112 (600–1200)	70–93 (750–1000)
	Dec. 21	700 (7500)	1.5–2.5	11–18 (113–188)	28–47 (300–500)
	21°		2.5–4	18–28 (188–300)	47–70 (500–750)
			4–8	28–56 (300–600)	70–93 (750–1000)
Seattle	June 21	1950 (21,000)	1.5–2.5	29–49 (315–525)	28–47 (300–500)
48° N latitude	56°		2.5–4	49–78 (525–840)	47–70 (500–750)
			4–8	78–156 (840–1680)	70–93 (750–1000)
	Mar./Sept. 21	1220 (13,000)	1.5–2.5	18–30 (195–325)	28–47 (300–500)
	36°		2.5–4	30–48 (325–520)	47–70 (500–750)
			4–8	48–97 (520–1040)	70–93 (750–1000)
	Dec. 21	500 (5400)	1.5–2.5	8–13 (81–135)	28–47 (300–500)
	14°		2.5–4	13–20 (135–216)	47–70 (500–750)
			4–8	20–49 (216–532)	70–93 (750–1000)

[a]From Appendix D.1.

[b]From Fig. 12.3.

[c]From Table 14.2.

[d]From CIBSE and IESNA recommendations (Tables 11.4, 11.5, 11.7, and 11.8).

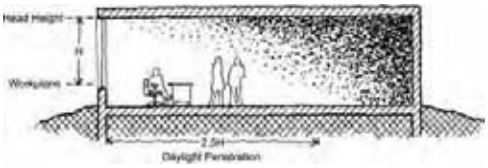


Fig. 14.21 *Section shows the 2.5H guideline, which assumes that sufficient daylight for the desk plane will be delivered at a depth 2.5 times the height of the window above the desk plane. (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering; © 2004 Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*

would receive very little daylight. In schematic design, these areas might ideally be allocated to circulation.

(c) The Sidelighting and Toplighting Daylight Factor Guideline

The size of windows, clerestories, or skylights may be estimated by using the simple formulas in Table 14.4, Parts A and B, which provide target daylight factor values. These design guidelines consider two factors: the height of the window in the wall and the window or skylight area compared to the floor area for each daylit space.

For an example of such a calculation, see the example previously discussed in Chapter 8: the two-story office building in Oregon (shown in Fig. 14.23*c*) of the Emerald People's Utility District. Briefly, after selecting a target value of $DF_{av} = 4.0\%$ from Table 14.2, the windows and clerestories (as skylights) were sized, using the DF guidelines for sidelighting and for the vertical monitor skylight from Table 14.4:

$$DF_{av} = 0.2 \frac{\text{window (or skylight) area}}{\text{floor area}}$$

Applied to the entire typical bay,

$$DF_{av} = (0.2)\frac{(97\ \text{ft}^2\ \text{north} + 97\ \text{ft}^2\ \text{south} + 132\ \text{ft}^2\ \text{clerestory})}{1440\ \text{ft}^2}$$

$$= 0.45, \text{ or } 4.5\%$$

slightly above the target DF_{av} of 4.0%.

Note that in this example, DF_{min} from the sidelighting occurs near the center of the building, at about the point (on the second floor) where the most light is available from the skylight. Therefore, a relatively even daylighting distribution is expected on the upper floor. This is helped by the use of lightshelves and the T-shaped windows shown in Fig. 14.23. The seasonal window size question (more needed in winter, less in summer) was answered in this example by the use of deciduous vines outside the south windows. In winter and cool spring, the vines are bare of leaves. Warm weather brings leafy shade lasting well into the warm fall.

Table 14.4, Part C, shows design guidelines for buildings with an atrium that provides daylighting to surrounding offices. Because the lowest daylight factor will occur in offices on the lowest floor (deepest within the atrium), the designer might find the required atrium *aspect ratio* first for the lowest floor and then size the atrium on that basis. This design approach would provide a higher daylight factor in all the offices higher in the atrium. The atrium aspect ratio = [(length × width)/height^2]. For a detailed discussion of the relationship of atrium size, rentable office floor area, and latitude, see DeKay (1992).

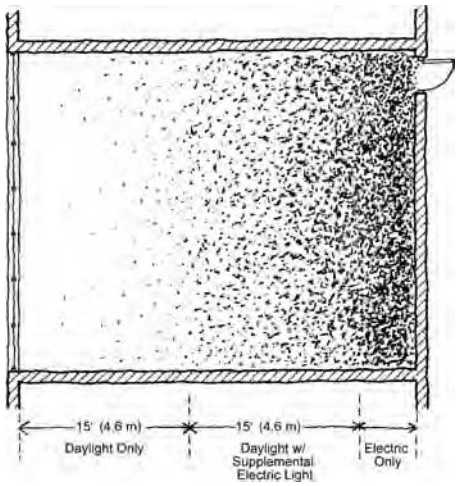


Fig. 14.22 *Plan shows the 15/30 guideline, which assumes that sufficient daylight will be delivered to the desk plane at a 15-ft (4.6-m) distance from the window wall. The 15- to 30-ft (4.6- to 9.1-m) daylight zone will need supplementary electric lighting, and the zone beyond 30 ft (9.1 m) will receive virtually no daylight. (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering; © 2005 Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*

14.10 DESIGN ANALYSIS METHODS

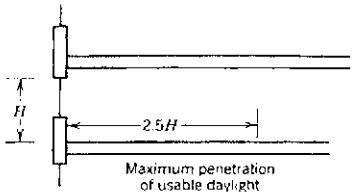
Because of the variability of daylight, the designer may provide a balance of illumination to save electric energy and reduce utility costs while addressing

TABLE 14.4 Daylight Factor Design Estimates for Overcast Sky Conditions

PART A. **SIDELIGHTING**[a, b]

$$DF_{av} = 0.2\left(\frac{\text{window area}}{\text{floor area}}\right)$$

$$DF_{min} = 0.1\left(\frac{\text{window area}}{\text{floor area}}\right)$$



PART B. **TOPLIGHTING**[c]

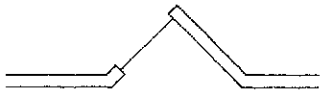
Vertical monitors:

$$DF_{av} = 0.2\left(\frac{\text{skylight glazing area}}{\text{floor area}}\right)$$



North-facing sawtooth:

$$DF_{av} = 0.33\left(\frac{\text{skylight glazing area}}{\text{floor area}}\right)$$

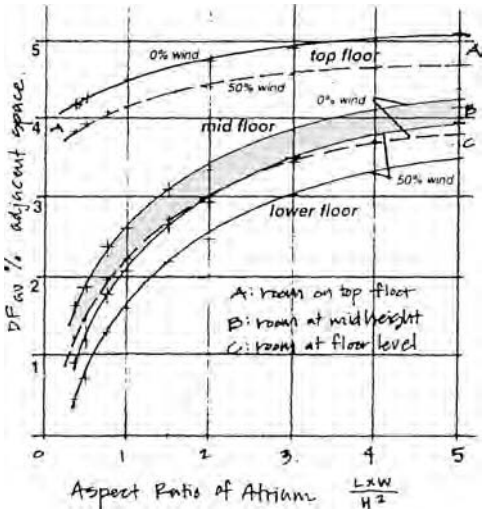


Horizontal skylights:

$$DF_{av} = 0.35\left(\frac{\text{skylight glazing area}}{\text{floor area}}\right)$$



PART C. **BUILDINGS WITH ATRIUM**[d]



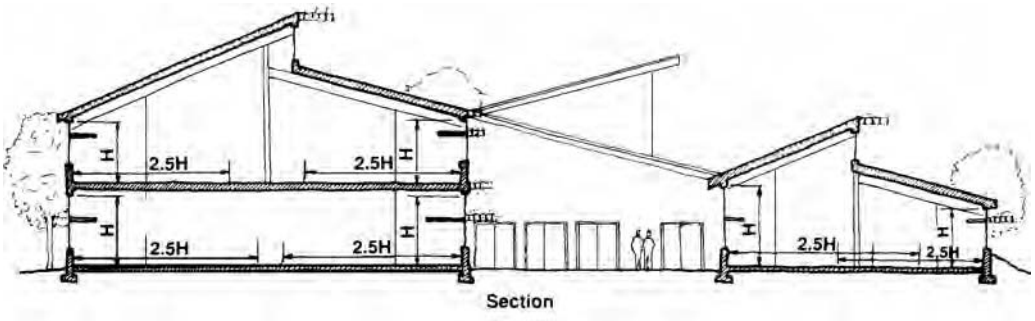
Source: Parts A and B: Millet and Bedrick (1980). Part C: Brown and DeKay (2000).

[a]Assumes windows in one wall of a room with relatively light-colored surfaces.

[b]Window height/room depth relationships based on the works of R. G. Hopkinson (1966) and others at the British Research Station.

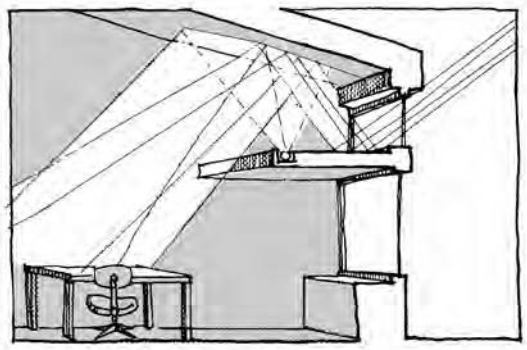
[c]Assumes an even distribution of such skylights in the roof so that an even distribution of light results in the room below: thus, only average DF, no minimum, is listed.

[d]Based on model tests of a square atrium with white walls open to the sky. "No windows" average atrium wall reflectance = 70%. "50% windows" average atrium wall reflectance = 40%. DF values are for an office of 9 × 9 × 3 m (30 × 30 × 10 ft). The window opening to the atrium is 1.5 m high × 9 m long (5 ft high × 30 ft long), and the sill height is 0.85 m (2.8 ft).



Daylighting cross section (south to right)

(*a*)



Lightshelves

(*b*)



North Façade

(*c*)

Fig. 14.23 *(a) Diagrammatic daylighting section of the office building for the Emerald People's Utility District near Eugene, Oregon. Lightshelves (b) reduce the contrast between a lot of daylight near windows and too little daylight farther in. The resulting windows (on north façade) are T-shaped (c), with more glass area above the lightshelves and less glass below.*

issues of glare, direct sunlight, and heat gain. The art and science of daylighting is largely about understanding how to control the admission of daylight into buildings.

In the following sections, several interior daylighting analysis methods are described. The manual methods range from hand calculations that address only minimum, maximum, and average conditions to physical scale models where surfaces and apertures are easily changed. The manual and graphic calculation methods are inexpensive but limited to simple spatial geometries. Computer simulation programs can produce detailed and realistic presentations in three-dimensional graphical form. Software is widely available, but its use is dependent upon cost and training, and the user must understand daylighting concepts and principles in order to interpret the results and to overcome the limitations of simulation. Physical models still offer the designer an economical, realistic, and accurate alternative. Additionally, the intuitive understanding provided by scale models may increase the client's understanding of lighting phenomena.

(a) CIE Method

This method resulted from a search for a simple, rapid, straightforward, and reasonably accurate daylighting calculation method that would yield reliable results without the time-consuming constructions and calculations necessitated by other manual methods. After a study of considerable length and intensity, the CIE adopted and adapted a system developed in Australia by Dresler (*Daylight Design Diagrams*, 1963). The current CIE method was published in *Daylight*, 1970.

This system is based upon the daylight factor described previously as applied to the *standard overcast CIE sky*. Dresler developed a set of more than 100 curves covering rooms of varying proportions and fenestration. A typical curve is shown in Fig. 14.24. The curves relate minimum daylight factor (at a point 2 ft [0.6 m] from the wall opposite a window) to the maximum permissible room depth, for given reflectances and a standard window design, thus establishing the room's proportions. Depth, or width, is the dimension at right angles to the window wall.

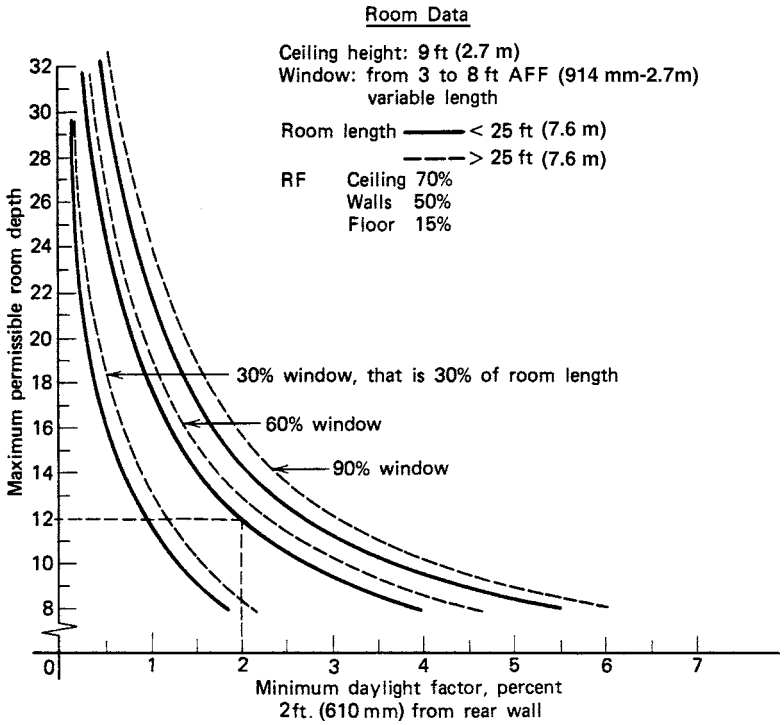


Fig. 14.24 *Maximum room depth that will maintain a minimum desired daylight factor is proportional to window size. Thus, for a room less than 25 ft (7.6 m) long with a 5-ft (1.5-m)-high window for 60% of the room's length, the depth cannot exceed 12 ft (3.7 m) if 2% DF is to be maintained at a point 2 ft (61 cm) from the rear wall. (From* Daylight Design Diagrams, *1963.)*

The curves imply that the number of design variables is so large and daylight itself is so variable that a simple routine method can be based only on minimal conditions for a given (selected) daylight duration. Therefore, the diagrams give the *lowest* level of daylight that can reliably be expected for a given percentage (percentile) of normal working hours in sidelighted rooms and the *average* level in toplighted spaces.

Advantages of the system are:

1. Consideration of obstructions, exterior reflections, and interior reflections.
2. Applicability to a very wide range of side and top fenestration designs.
3. Establishment of required room proportions is architecturally more useful than solving for specific dimensions.

Limitations of the system are:

1. Inapplicable to clear sky and direct sun conditions.
2. Inapplicable to other than rectangular rooms.
3. Unusable with sunshading devices or high-reflectance ground.
4. Results give points of minimum, twice minimum, and four times minimum daylight only. Other points must be interpolated or extrapolated.
5. Window proportions and position in a wall are fixed.

Overall, the system accomplishes what it intended. The limitations listed are inherent in any quick, simplified daylight calculation technique.

The CIE system is usable in two modes:

1. Given complete architectural dimensional data, find interior illuminance.
2. Given incomplete architectural dimensional data and required interior illuminance, find maximum room depth and/or other room proportions that satisfy the illuminance requirement.

Mode 1 is simpler because it leads directly to an answer. For this reason, the designer should set the room length (window wall dimension) and percentage of fenestration of the window wall, leaving the room depth (perpendicular to window wall) as a variable. Alternatively, room length and depth may be set, with percentage of fenestration as the variable. Ceiling height is usually fixed. See Fig. 14.25 for sketches showing room parameters.

EXAMPLE 14.1 An example of the CIE method in Mode 1 uses a classroom in a single-story Seattle elementary school, 25 ft (7.6 m) long, 18 ft (5.5 m) deep, and with a 9-ft, 6-in. (3-m) ceiling. It receives daylight unilaterally from windows totaling 18 ft (5.5 m) in length (see the room sketch in Fig. 14.26). Window glazing is wired glass having a transmittance of 80%. The school is situated in a dense residential area. Determine the portion of the year during which tasks requiring a minimum illuminance of 14 fc (150 lux) can be carried out by daylight throughout the room. Also, determine what illuminance levels can be maintained for 85% of daylight hours and at what distances from the window. (Note that 14 fc [150 lux] corresponds to a DF of 2% applied to an E_H of 70 fc [7500 lux].)

Calculation. The latitude of Seattle is 47.6° N. The design condition for Seattle is solid overcast sky for 85% of the hours between 0900 and 1700. From Fig. 14.27, the minimum unobstructed horizontal illuminance E_H during these hours is 67 fc (7200 lux).

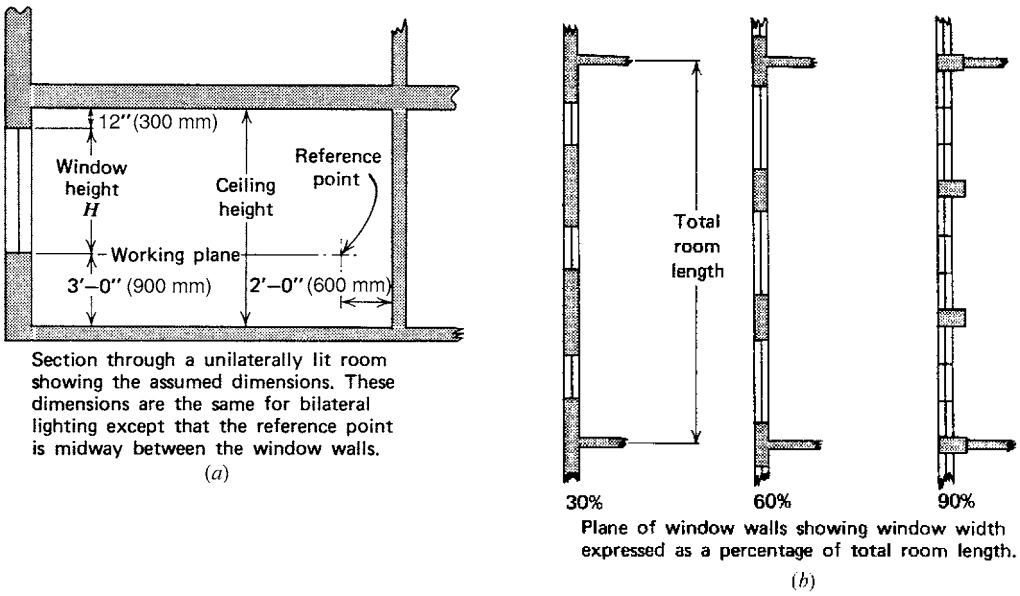
STEP 1. Determine the room depth in terms of window height. Window height H is 5 ft (1.5 m) (see Fig. 14.26). In plan, the room depth is expressed as multiples of window height above sill level:

$$\frac{\text{18-ft depth}}{\text{5-ft window height}} = 3.6H$$

STEP 2. Determine window coverage. This variable is expressed as a percentage of the total room length based upon the width of the glazing used in the room. It is assumed that the window head is 12 in. (305 mm) below the ceiling. This distance was selected as the representation of best practice "without being unduly optimistic."

$$\frac{3 \times 6 \text{ ft}}{25 \text{ ft}} = 72\%$$

STEP 3. *Determine the design daylight factor and the service daylight factor*. The design daylight factor is calculated at a point 2 ft (0.6 m) from the wall opposite the window—on the window centerline. This represents the minimum daylight factor that will occur in a room of a given depth (lower values



Section through a unilaterally lit room showing the assumed dimensions. These dimensions are the same for bilateral lighting except that the reference point is midway between the window walls.
(*a*)

Plane of window walls showing window width expressed as a percentage of total room length.
(*b*)

Fig. 14.25 *Sketches indicating the parameters of the CIE calculation system. (a) A vertical section through a room with dimensional data relevant to this system. Note that the sill height has been selected to coincide with a working plane at 900 mm (3 ft). The height of the working plane usually varies between 760 and 910 mm (30 and 36 in.), the former being more common in North America, the latter in Europe. A lower sill contributes only ground-reflected light at the working plane. Where the window sill is significantly above the working plane (i.e., short windows high on a wall), this analysis system is inapplicable. (b) Calculation size (length) of windows with respect to overall room length. (From* Daylight, International Recommendations for the Calculation of Natural Daylight, *1970, Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage; reproduced with permission.)*

that will occur closer to the wall and/or off the centerline being discounted). From Fig. 14.28, for a room length of 25 ft (7.6 m), ceiling height 9 ft, 6 in. (2.9 m), window coverage 72%:

design daylight factor at 3.6 H = 1.3

The service daylight factor takes into account correction factors such as glazing transmission and dirt accumulation. The service daylight factor is a product of the design daylight factor and correction factors.

$$DF_{service} = DF_{design} \times \text{correction factors}$$

Correction factors from Table 14.5 and Fig. 14.29 are:

Glass transmission 0.95
Glass cleanliness 0.8

Therefore

$$DF_{service} = 1.3 \times 0.95 \times 0.8 \cong 1.00$$

Note that the terms "design" and "service" as used in this method have meanings that are not necessarily consistent with normal design practice. Design daylight factor typically would include the effects of building components such as glazing—and would often be described as "initial" daylight factor. Service daylight factor would often be called "maintained" daylight factor and include those effects that would reduce daylight illuminance over time (such as dirt on glazings or reductions in surface reflectances). Maintained daylight factor must equal or exceed the designer's daylight factor criterion for the system to be successful in the long run.

STEP 4. *Determine the required exterior illuminance*. Use the service daylight factor in Equation 14.2 to obtain required exterior illuminance.

E_H, required exterior illuminance

$$= \frac{\text{required interior illuminance}}{DF_{service}} \qquad (14.2)$$

$$E_H = \frac{150\,\text{lux min}}{1.00} \times 100 = 15{,}000\ \text{lux}$$

STEP 5. *Obtain the percentage of hours between 0900 and 1700 during which the required illuminance is maintained*. From Fig. 14.27 with the given conditions (roughly 48° N latitude, exterior illuminance 15,000 lux [1500 fc]), an illuminance of 150 lux (15 fc) will be maintained for less than

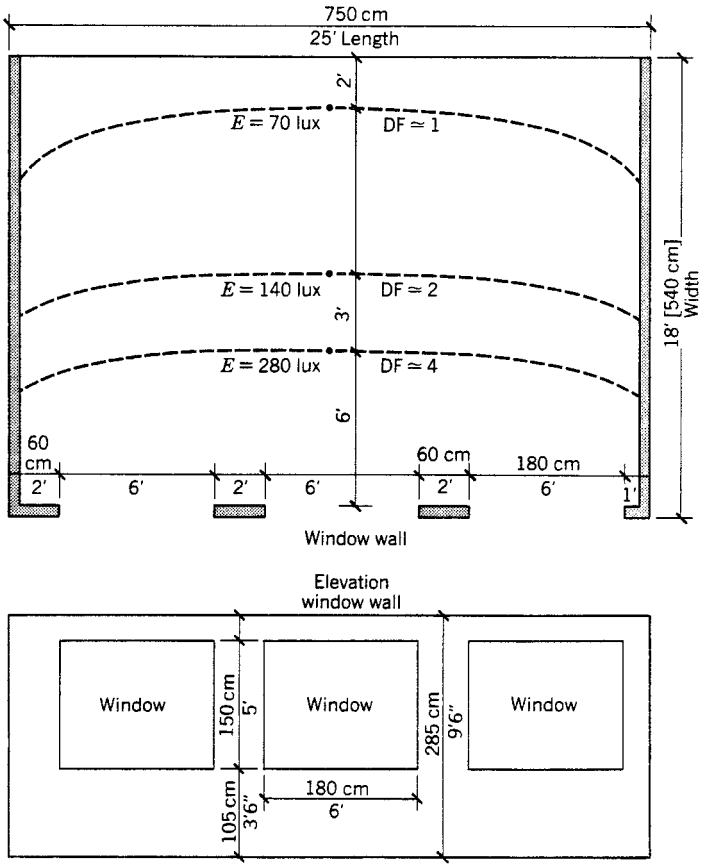


Fig. 14.26 *Plan and window wall elevation of the Seattle classroom calculation example using the CIE method. The three daylight contours are estimated based upon the calculated center point. They represent the levels maintained for 85% of daylight hours. Levels twice as high are maintained for 60% of the daylight hours.*

60% of the hours between 0900 and 1700 (for time periods other than this, see Table 14.5C). The level that is maintained for 85% of the hours is

$$E_{min} = 7200 \text{ lux} \times 0.01 \text{ (a DF of 1.0)} = 72 \text{ lux}$$

STEP 6. *Determine the locations in the room that will receive adequate illuminance*. Figure 14.30 shows the distance from the window at which the daylight factor is twice or four times the minimum. Using Fig. 14.30*a*, the room depth from Step 1 is 3.6*H*. This point intersects with the $\alpha = 0°$ angle of obstruction line at a 1.8*H* distance (1.8 × 5 ft = 9 ft [2.7 m]) from the window at which the daylight factor doubles.

$$7200 \text{ lux} \times 0.02 \text{ (a DF of 2.0)} = 144 \text{ lux}$$

Using Fig. 14.30*b*, the room depth from Step 1 is 3.6*H*. This point intersects with the $\alpha = 0°$ angle of obstruction line at a 1.2*H* distance (1.2 × 5 ft = 6 ft [1.8 m]) from the window at which the daylight factor quadruples.

$$7200 \text{ lux} \times 0.04 \text{ (a DF of 4.0)} = 288 \text{ lux}$$

These calculated illuminance levels are accurate only at the centerline of the window wall. By visual estimate and extrapolation, rough contours can be drawn and are shown in Fig. 14.28 and Fig. 14.31 (for comparison with the graphic method discussed in the next section). For bilateral sidelighting, toplighting (skylights, sawtooth roofs, and monitor roofs), and calculations for other α angles of obstruction, additional information is found in the CIE document (*Daylight*, 1970). ■

In summary, the CIE method is relatively simple but provides only limited data on predicted performance. In this example, its exterior illuminance data (7250 lux from Fig. 14.27) seem to agree well with a measured average value of 7200

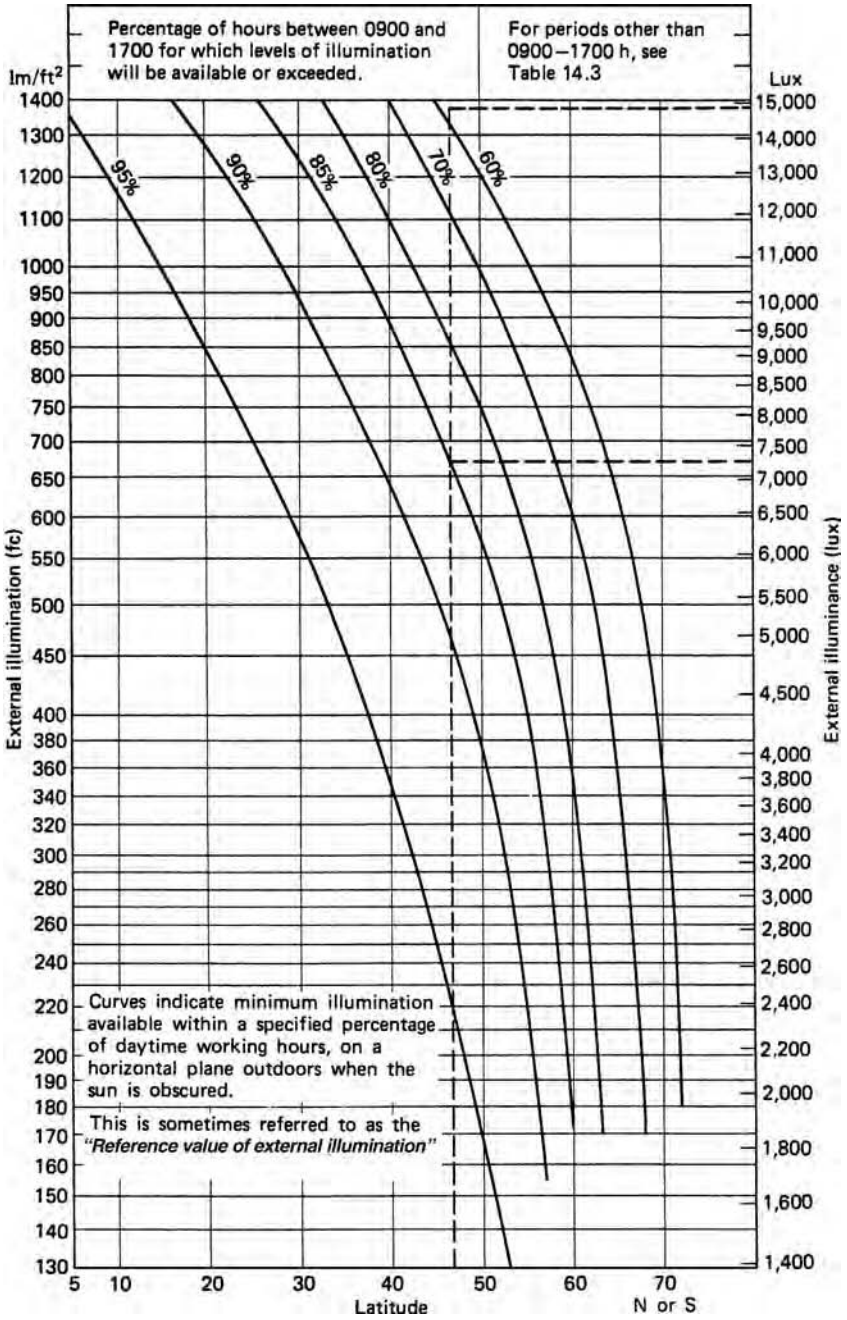


Fig. 14.27 *Minimum maintained external illuminance as a function of latitude for a given percentage of the normal working day. (From* Daylight, International Recommendations for the Calculation of Natural Daylight*, 1970, Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage; reproduced with permission.)*

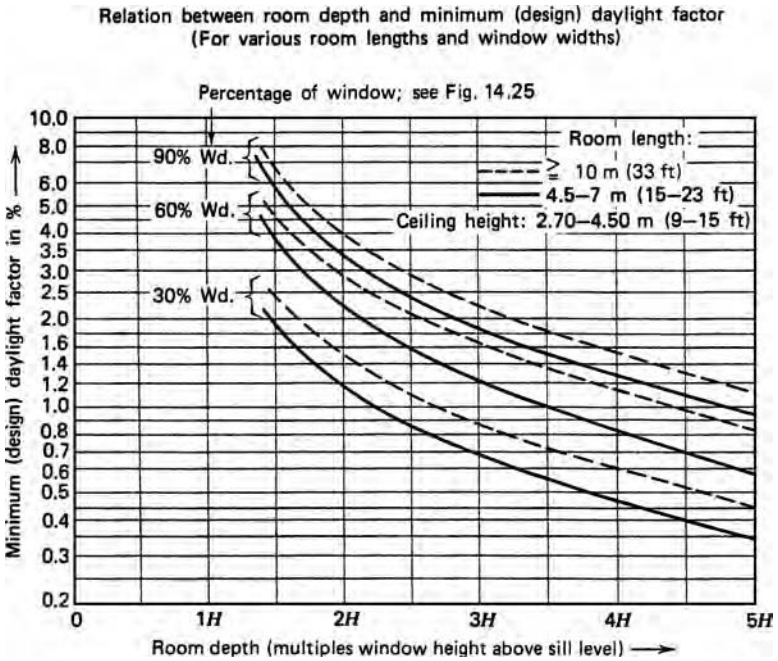


Fig. 14.28 *Basic design diagram that relates minimum daylight factor to room depth. Inasmuch as room depth is expressed in terms of window height, the curves effectively relate minimum daylight factor (2 ft [610 mm] from the back wall) to room proportion. (From* Daylight, International Recommendations for the Calculation of Natural Daylight*, 1970, Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage; reproduced with permission.)*

TABLE 14.5 Correction Factors to Be Used in CIE Daylight Calculations

A. CORRECTION FACTOR TO ACCOUNT FOR GLASS TRANSMITTANCE	
Diffuse Transmittance of Glass (%)	**Correction Factor**
80	0.95
70	0.80
60	0.70
50	0.60
40	0.45
30	0.35

B. CORRECTION FACTORS TO ACCOUNT FOR DIRT ACCUMULATION ON GLASS				
		Angle of Slope (Measured to the Horizontal)		
Locality	**Class of Industry**	**90–75°**	**60–45°**	**30–0°**
Country or outer-suburban area	Clean	0.9	0.85	0.8
	Dirty	0.7	0.6	0.55
Built-up residential area	Clean	0.8	0.75	0.7
	Dirty	0.6	0.5	0.4
Built-up industrial area	Clean	0.7	0.6	0.55
	Dirty	0.5	0.35	0.25

C. PERCENTAGES TO USE WHEN FIGURE 14.27 CURVES ARE APPLIED TO PERIODS OTHER THAN 09.00–17.00 HOURS						
Curve in Figure 14.27	**95%**	**90%**	**85%**	**80%**	**70%**	**60%**
Alternative period	Percentage of alternative period					
07.00–15.00	95	90	85	80	70	60
08.00–16.00	100	100	95	85	70	60
07.00–17.00	95	85	75	65	55	45
06.00–18.00	75	70	65	60	50	40

Source: Daylight, International Recommendations for the Calculation of Natural Daylight (1970).

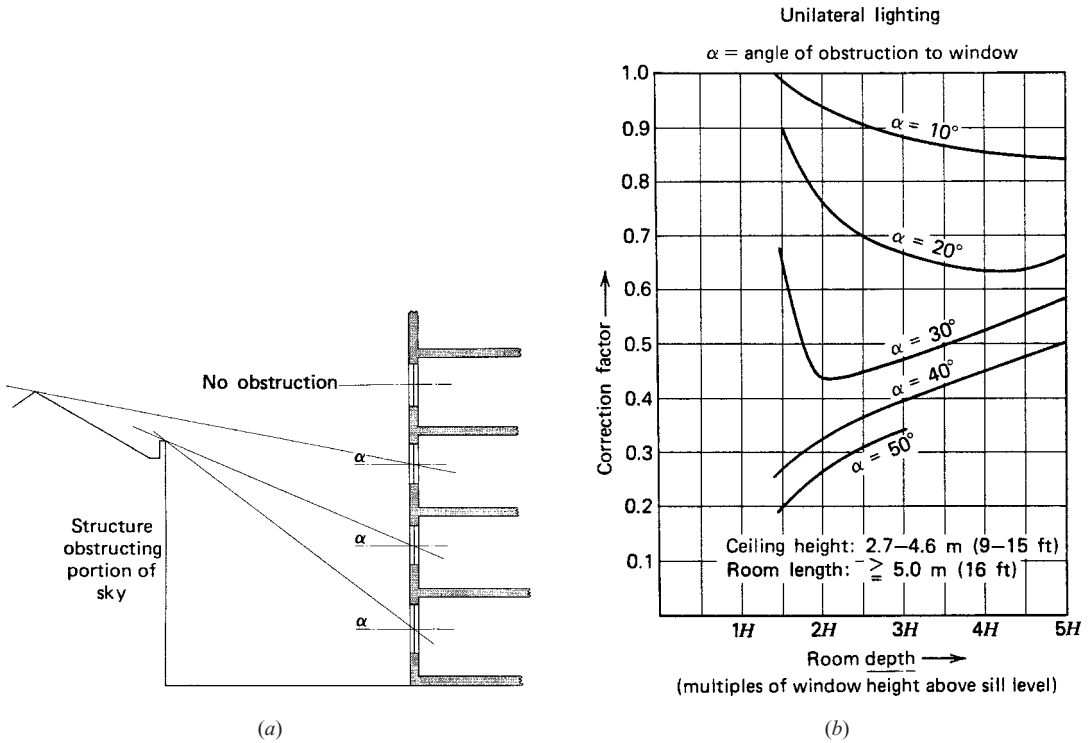


Fig. 14.29 (a) Angle of obstruction α of an external object. (b) Correlation factors to account for the influence of external obstructions on the minimum daylight factor. (From Daylight, International Recommendations for the Calculation of Natural Daylight*, 1970, Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage; reproduced with permission.)*

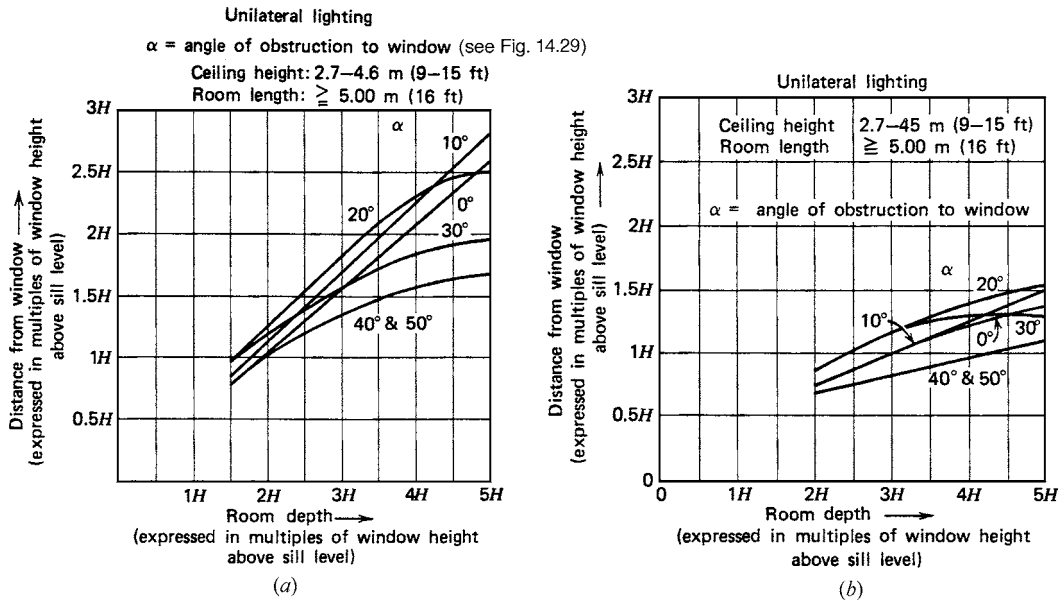


Fig. 14.30 (a) Distance from the window at which the daylight factor is twice the minimum daylight factor. (b) Distance from the window at which the daylight factor is four times the minimum daylight factor. (From Daylight, International Recommendations for the Calculation of Natural Daylight*, 1970, Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage; reproduced with permission.)*

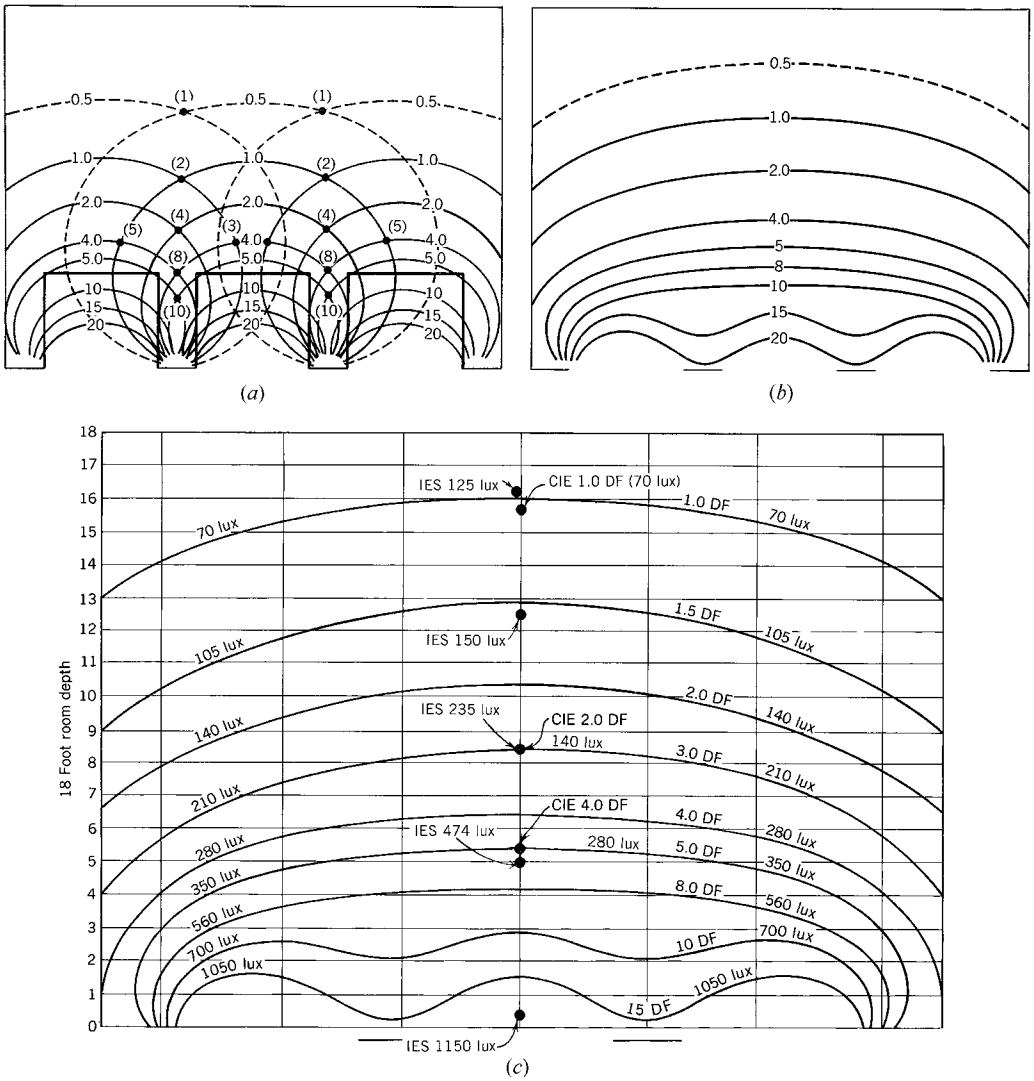


Fig. 14.31 *(a) Daylight contours for each window of Fig. 14.26 are plotted on the floor plan of the room being studied. Numbers in parentheses are combined SC values. (b) The isolux contours of (a) are combined to form new isolux contours that represent the total SC of daylight within the room. (c) The final isolux contours are calculated, including correction factors. The numbers represent daylight factors. Note the variance between these contours and the points calculated by the CIE method. The five design points calculated by the IESNA method are also shown. A comparison of the results of the three methods described indicates that on the room centerline (a location where comparison of all methods is possible), agreement is within engineering accuracy (see text discussion).*

lux for Seattle. From the rough contours shown in Fig. 14.26, an integrated daylight and electric lighting strategy should be designed for areas farther from the window wall.

(Note: The term *design illuminance* as used with the CIE method differs from common lighting system design usage, where *design illuminance* is used to identify the criteria (benchmark) illuminance established for a space or position; *initial illuminance* identifies the illuminance actually provided at system startup, and *maintained illuminance* is the illuminance provided after some defined time period.)

(b) Graphic Daylighting Design Method (GDDM)

This method, which applies to overcast sky conditions and shows results as daylight factor (isolux) contours within a room (rather than individual

daylight factors at specific points), was developed by Millet and Bedrick (1980). Its primary advantage over the CIE method is that its results are a family of daylight factor contours that are more useful to a lighting designer than is numerical output. The disadvantages of this method are that it is not readily applicable to clear-sky conditions, and it requires that a designer acquire a "library" of 200 or so patterns that cover most design situations. An outline of the method is presented here.

A computer simulation program (UWLIGHT) developed the daylight distribution patterns resulting from either sidelights or skylights. To generalize the system, windows are identified by height to width proportion (H/W), and the position of the isolux contours on the plan is determined by the ratio of the height of the sill above the work plane to the window height. The GDDM method can account for high windows, clerestories, and other designs intended to introduce daylight deep into a space—something that the CIE method cannot do because it is restricted to a sill height *at* the work plane.

EXAMPLE 14.2 Figure 14.32 shows a typical isolux pattern for a window whose H/W ratio is 0.8 and whose sill is at the work plane. This particular window pattern was selected because it corresponds to the window in the previous example, Fig. 14.26, enabling graphical comparison.

Calculation. Employing the GDDM method with the dimensions of the Seattle classroom used in the last section:

STEP 1. *Determine the window proportion*.
Referring to Fig. 14.26, the window proportion is

$$\frac{H}{W} = \frac{5}{6} = 0.83$$

STEP 2. *Select the appropriate window pattern*. In this case, Fig. 14.32 (selected from a library of isolux patterns developed by Millet and Bedrick) is the closest pattern to match the example. $S/H = 0$ indicates that the pattern begins at the window wall, as shown.

STEP 3. *Develop an isolux pattern for each window of the space*. On a plan of the room, trace the isolux pattern for each window (Fig. 14.31*a*). The patterns overlap because the windows are close together. Where contours meet, the daylight factors of the contours are added together, producing values for the new combined contours. The combined contours and their daylight factors are shown in Fig. 14.31*b*.

STEP 4. Make corrections to the isolux pattern. The value of the combined contours is corrected to account for internally reflected components of daylight plus light reduction due to glazing. The final

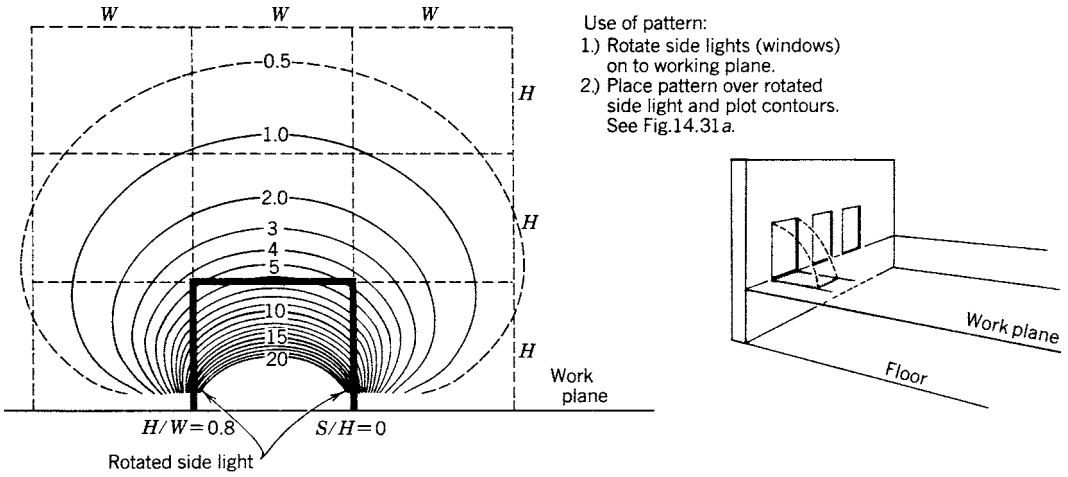


Fig. 14.32 *Typical isolux contour map for a window with a height-to-width ratio of 0.8 and a sill at the working plane elevation. Numbers represent the SC of daylight factors for an overcast sky condition. The bold rectangle on the left hand drawing represents the window outline projected onto the working plane. See insert. (From Millet and Bedrick, 1980, p. 191.)*

contours are shown in Fig. 14.31c. Note that this diagram gives the designer a much more complete picture of the daylight contours than do the results of the CIE method. For the purpose of comparison, the three calculated daylight factors from the CIE method are shown in Fig. 14.31c. ■

(c) IESNA Lumen Method

IESNA developed the lumen method for calculating daylight availability (published as RP-23-89, *Recommended Practice for the Lumen Method of Daylight Calculations*). Although inexpensive, like many manual methods it is limited in application—in this case, to rectilinear spaces with flat ceilings. A trade-off between usability, learning curve, and cost, however, is often made when selecting a design method.

The calculation procedure for sidelighting is discussed in this section, as this is a more frequently encountered strategy than toplighting. The method, as fully described in RP-23-89, consists of four detailed steps. In the discussion that follows, the same notation and terms found in RP-23-89 are used *except* for *bearing angle*, which is referred to in the IESNA procedure as *solar window azimuth*. The term *bearing angle* is commonly used in international sources.

Characteristics of the Method. The IESNA method is probably the most flexible manual technique available. It has the following major characteristics for sidelighting:

1. It takes into account reflected light from the ground and adjacent structures, as well as the reduction in sky light due to such structures.
2. It cannot accommodate direct sunlight, but conversely, it readily accommodates the shading devices normally used to block direct insolation.
3. Provision is made for various types of glazing, as well as common window controls such as horizontal and vertical blinds.
4. The principles of the zonal cavity calculation approach for interior lighting (see Chapter 15) are applied. The window height determines the cavities (i.e., the floor cavity extends to the windowsill height, and the ceiling cavity from the top of the window to the ceiling). The room cavity is therefore the window height.
5. The work plane is always at the sill height of the window. Where this is decidedly not the case (a difference of up to 1 ft is usually negligible), such as when a clerestory or a floor-to-ceiling window is used, work plane illuminance can be calculated by superposition. For instance, with a clerestory, subtract a work-plane-to-clerestory sill height window from a work-plane-to-top-of-clerestory window to obtain the desired result. A degree of inaccuracy is unavoidable in the calculation when the work plane is *above* the sill.
6. Cavity reflectances are fixed (Fig. 14.33) at 70%–50%–30% for ceiling, room, and floor cavities, respectively.
7. The system calculates only five points in a room on the window centerline. As noted with reference to the three points calculated by the CIE method, this is not normally sufficient to give a picture of the interior daylight distribution.
8. The method is usable in only one mode; that is, given location and full dimensional data, daylighting can be calculated. It cannot readily be used to determine desirable room proportions, given the other data, as can the CIE method.

EXAMPLE 14.3 To again use the Seattle classroom as an example, here are the conditions of the problem:

Location: Seattle, Washington.

Latitude: 47.6° N.

Room: 25 ft (7.6 m) long, 18 ft (5.5 m) deep, with a 9-ft, 6-in. (3-m) ceiling.

Window: height 5 ft (1.5 m) above a 30-in. (760-mm) working plane; total length, 18 ft (5.5 m).

Transmittance: 85%; net glass area 92%.

Ground Reflectance: not previously specified. Assume an extensive area of mixed grass and concrete walkways, with an average overall reflectance of 20% (see Table 14.3). For a more accurate calculation of reflectance, see the method described in the IES *Recommended Practice for the Calculation of Daylight Availability* (1994).

Calculation. Illuminance E_i will be found at the five points shown in Fig. 14.33 for a spring day and a winter day at 10:00 A.M. and 2:00 P.M. Assume that the sky is overcast so that a direct comparison with other methods can be made. Reflectances are

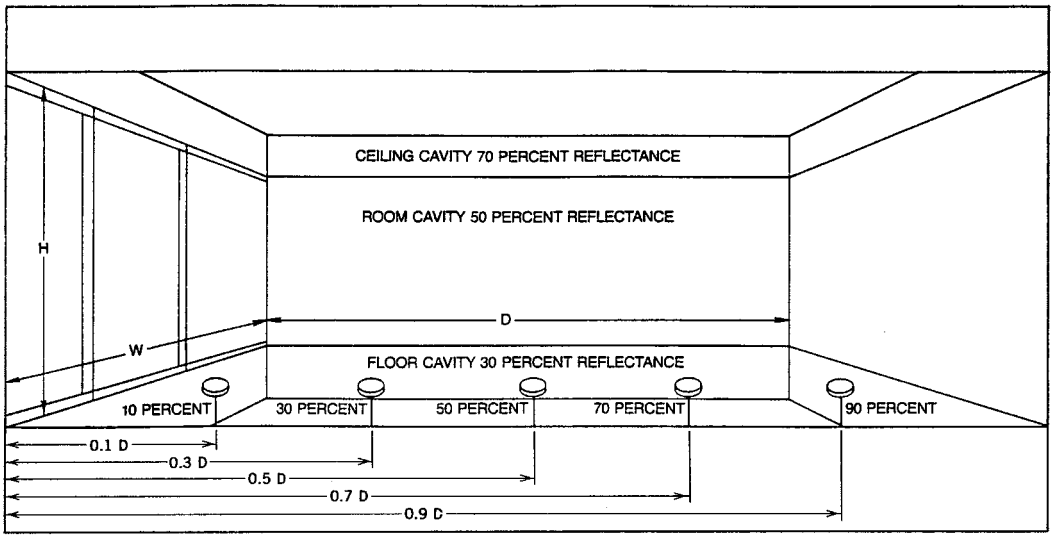


Fig. 14.33 *Standard conditions in a room for daylighting calculations: sidelighting. (IESNA,* Recommended Practice for the Lumen Method of Daylight Calculations*, RP-23-89.)*

assumed to be 70% for the ceiling, 50% for the wall, and 30% for the floor to correspond to the IESNA method standard conditions.

STEP 1. *Determine the vertical and horizontal illuminance on the exterior of the window.*

Using the solar altitude for the spring and winter day (Table D.1, solar data), the vertical and horizontal illuminances can be found from Fig. 12.3. Calculate E_{xhk}, the half-sky illuminance (a vertical window sees only half of the sky). The results are compiled in Table 14.6.

Vertical illuminance from the ground is

$$E_{xvg} = RF_g \times \frac{E_{xHk}}{2} \tag{14.3}$$

$$\text{Dec. 21: } E_{xvg} = RF_g \times \frac{E_{xHk}}{2} = 0.2\,(5380) = 1076 \text{ lux}$$

$$\text{Mar. 21: } E_{xvg} = 0.2\,(13{,}340) = 2670 \text{ lux}$$

STEP 2. *Determine net transmittance of the window.* A number of factors affect the transmittance of light through glazing. The net transmittance is the product of the glazing transmittance (Table 14.7) and a light loss factor (Table 14.8), which represents the cleanliness of the window. The net transmittance should also account for the net glazing area (i.e., gross window area less mullions, glazing bars, and so on) and any other factor (such as insect screens) that would reduce actual transmittance.

Glass transmittance is 85% (Table 14.7), light loss factor is 0.9 (Table 14.8), and the net glass area is given as 92%. The net transmittance (τ) of the window is a product of these factors:

$$\tau = (0.85)(0.9)(0.92) = 0.70$$

STEP 3. *Select coefficients of utilization for* the five calculation locations (10%, 30%, 50%, 70%, and 90%) (from Tables C.16–C.21) on the basis of room

TABLE 14.6 Vertical and Horizontal Illuminance Values for Spring and Winter, Seattle, Washington

Solar Altitude (Appendix D.1)	Vertical Window Illuminance, E_{xvk} (Fig. 12.3)	Horizontal Illuminance from Full Sky, E_{xHk} (Fig. 12.3)	Horizontal Illuminance from Half Sky, E_{xhk}
Dec. 21: 14°	200 fc (2,150 lux)	500 fc (5,380 lux)	250 fc (2,690 lux)
Mar. 21: 36°	500 fc (5,380 lux)	1,240 fc (13,340 lux)	620 fc (6,670 lux)

TABLE 14.7 Transmittance Data of Glass and Plastic Materials

Material	Approximate Transmittance (%)
Polished plate/float glass	80–90
Sheet glass	85–91
Heat-absorbing plate glass	70–80
Heat-absorbing sheet glass	70–85
Tinted polished plate	40–50
Figure glass	70–90
Corrugated glass	80–85
Glass block	60–80
Clear plastic sheet	80–92
Tinted plastic sheet	9–42
Colorless patterned plastic	80–90
White translucent plastic	10–80
Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic	5–80
Double glazed—two lights clear glass	77
Tinted plus clear	37–45
Reflective glass[a]	5–60

Source: IES Recommended Practice for the Lumen Method of Daylight Calculations, RP-23-1989; reprinted with permission.

[a]Includes single glass, double-glazed units, and laminated assemblies. Consult manufacturer's material for specific values.

TABLE 14.8 Typical Light Loss Factors for Daylighting Design

	Light Loss Factor Glazing Position		
Location	Vertical	Sloped	Horizontal
Clean areas	0.9	0.8	0.7
Industrial areas	0.8	0.7	0.6
Very dirty areas	0.7	0.6	0.5

Source: IES Recommended Practice for the Lumen Method of Daylight Calculations, RP-23-1989; reprinted with permission.

dimensions and the portion of the sky seen by the window. The SC seen by the window is determined by the ratio of vertical to horizontal illuminance at the window.

SC E_{xvk}/E_{xhk}:

Dec. 21: 2150/2690 = 0.8;
Mar. 21: 5380/6670 = 0.8 (Table C.16)

The $E_{xvk}/E_{xhk} = 0.8$ value corresponds most closely to the $E_{xvk}/E_{xhk} = 0.75$ value of Table C.16. Use the following values to find the coefficients of utilization, CU_k:

$$\frac{\text{room depth}}{\text{window height}} = 18/5 = 3.6;$$

use 4.0 (first column variable)

$$\frac{\text{window length}}{\text{window height}} = 18/5 = 3.6;$$

use 4.0 (first row variable)

The ground component vertical illuminance (E_{xvg}) is the product of the ground reflectance (Table 14.9) and half of the horizontal illuminance (Equation 14.3). The sky and ground component values are compiled in Table 14.10 for each of the five reference locations.

STEP 4. *Calculate the illuminances for each of the five reference locations*. (Table 14.11 tabulates the illuminance values from this calculation.) The basic equation for each location is

$$E_i = \tau\,(E_{xvk} \times \mathrm{CU}_k + E_{xvg} \times \mathrm{CU}_g) \qquad (14.4)$$

TABLE 14.9 Reflectances of Building Materials and Outside Surfaces

Material	Reflectance (%)
Aluminum	85
Asphalt (free from dirt)	7
Bluestone, sandstone	18
Brick	
Light buff	48
Dark buff	40
Dark red glazed	30
Red	15
Yellow ochre	25
White	75
Cement	27
Chromium	65
Concrete	55
Copper	40
Earth (moist cultivated)	7
Granolite pavement	17
Glass	
Clear	7
Reflective	20–30
Tinted	7
Grass (dark green)	6
Gravel	13
Granite	40
Marble (white)	45
Macadam	18
Marble	45
Paint (white)	
New	75
Old	55
Plaster	
Smooth	80
Rough	40
Stippled	40
Slate (dark clay)	8
Snow	
New	74
Old	64
Vegetation (mean)	25

Source: Values compiled from Lam (1986), Stein and Reynolds (1992), and the Lighting Design Lab (© 2005; used with permission).

where

E_i = interior illuminance at a specific reference point

τ = net transmittance of the window

E_{xvk} = exterior vertical illuminance at the window from half of the sky (an unobstructed vertical window sees only half of the sky)

E_{xvg} = exterior vertical illuminance at the window from the ground

CU_k = coefficient of utilization for sky light

CU_g = coefficient of utilization for ground light

To compare the lumen method results with the CIE and GDDM methods, the values calculated for December 21 are plotted on the room plan of Fig. 14.31. The December values are minimum values and correspond most closely to the 85th percentile figures of the CIE and GDDM methods. The agreement is excellent for the half of the room nearest the window. For the deeper half, where there is significant ground contribution, the IESNA method yields higher illuminances because it considers the rereflected ground light contribution. Over all, the agreement among the three methods is excellent. The figures for March 21 correspond most closely to the 50th to 60th percentile of Fig. 14.27, that is, somewhat more than double the minimum figures—and here again the agreement is good.

To demonstrate the use of the IESNA method for *clear-sky* conditions, we can work through a brief example where five IESNA point illuminances are calculated for the same Seattle classroom, on June 21 at 10:00 A.M. for clear-sky conditions. Assume that the window faces southwest (azimuth angle = 45° west of south).

Solar azimuth at 10:00 A.M. on June 21 at 48° N latitude is 56° (Table D.1). The bearing angle is therefore 45° + 56° or 101° (i.e., no direct sunlight enters the window, which is a necessary condition of the IESNA clear-sky method). Solar altitude is 55°.

TABLE 14.10 Coefficients of Utilization for Sky and Ground Components for Five Interior Locations

Location	CU_k (Sky)	CU_g (Ground)
10	0.673	0.183
30	0.235	0.159
50	0.104	0.103
70	0.065	0.071
90	0.053	0.060

TABLE 14.11 Illuminance Values for Winter and Spring in Seattle, Washington, at Five Reference Locations

Location	E_i Dec. 21, lux (fc)	E_i Mar. 21, lux (fc)
10	1151 (107)	2877 (267)
30	474 (44)	1182 (110)
50	234 (22)	585 (54)
70	151 (14)	378 (35)
90	125 (12)	312 (29)

Calculation

STEP 1. *Determine the horizontal illuminance* (refer to Fig. 12.4):

Sun only: 80,000 lux (7432 fc)
Sky only: 18,000 lux (1672 fc) full sky
9,000 lux (836 fc) half sky (E_{xhk})

Determine the vertical illuminance (refer to Fig. 12.6*b*):

At a solar altitude of 55° and a bearing angle of 101°, the E_{xvk} = 700 fc (7500 lux).

From Equation 14.3, vertical illuminance on the exterior of the window resulting from ground light is

$$E_{xvg} = 0.2 \times \frac{80{,}000 + 9000}{2} = 8900 \text{ lux (827 fc)}$$

STEP 2. *Determine net transmittance of the window*:

$\tau = 0.70$, as previously

STEP 3. *Select the coefficients of utilization* (refer to Tables C.16–C.21):

$$\frac{E_{xvk}}{E_{xhk}} = \frac{7500}{9000} = 0.83$$

STEP 4. *Calculate the illuminance*:

$$E_i = \tau\,(E_{xvk} \times CU_k + E_{xvg} \times CU_g)$$
$$= 0.7\,(7500 \times CU_k + 8900 \times CU_g)$$

Table 14.12 tabulates the illuminances at the five reference locations. ■

14.11 DAYLIGHTING SIMULATION PROGRAMS

Until recently, daylighting simulation tools were too expensive and complex to use for day-to-day

TABLE 14.12 Illuminance Values for Clear Sky Conditions on June 21 at Five Reference Locations

Location	E_i June 21, lux (fc)
10	4674 (434)
30	2225 (207)
50	1188 (110)
70	784 (73)
90	652 (61)

designs, and they were primarily used by lighting consultants or researchers. Computer rendering tools have been developed so that many simulation programs now provide realistic visual daylighting output with varying degrees of accuracy. Computational approaches can simulate the distribution of light from both daylight and electric sources, for any selected season, time of day, and building location (orientation and latitude). Many of these programs use *radiosity* techniques. Radiosity-based renderings are produced by dividing all the surfaces in a scene into a mesh of small polygons. Each polygon takes on a different value of light absorption/reflection, depending upon its relationship to a light source and its surface parameters. These values simulate the light distribution throughout the scene. The following are some commonly used programs; selected characteristics and features are compared in Table 14.13.

- *Desktop Radiance (http://radsite.lbl.gov/deskrad/):* This program is a Windows version of Radiance that integrates a realistic rendering package (Fig. 14.34) with a computer-aided design (CAD) input environment. Libraries of materials, glazings, luminaires, and furnishings facilitate data entry. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Pacific Gas and Electric, and the California Institute for Energy and Environment developed this program.
- *Autodesk Ecotect (http://usa.autodesk.com/adsk/servlet/index?siteID=123112&id=11778740):* is a building analysis software program offering a range of modeling and analysis features such as visualization, shading, shadows, solar analysis, lighting, thermal performance, ventilation, and acoustics. It can export to Radiance for higher-level ray-tracing techniques. Daylighting capabilities can model shadows and reflections on the surfaces of other buildings at a single point in time, show an entire year's shadow patterns for a single surface, model surface solar radiation relative to the effects on thermal mass, and calculate daylight factor (Fig. 14.35).
- *form•Z RenderZone PLUS (http://www.formz.com/products/renderzone/renderzone.html):* form•Z RenderZone PLUS is a modeling and drafting program with photorealistic rendering. It offers the following 3 rendering levels: simple,

TABLE 14.13 Comparison of Processing Features for Daylighting Simulation Programs

	Simulating/Rendering					Output						User Interface	Online Help
Key: 3 = excellent 2 = good 1 = satisfactory — = not applicable	RADIOSITY	RAYTRACING	ITERATIVE PROCEDURE	VIEW POINTS	MEMORY REQUIREMENTS	ISOLUMEN CONTOURS	NUMERIC OUTPUT	REALISTIC RENDERING	ANIMATION	GLARE ANALYSIS	DAYLIGHT FACTORS	EASE OF USE	EXTENSIVE HELP
Desktop Radiance	3	3	—	3	1	—	3	3	—	3	3	3	3
FormZ	3	3	—	3	3	—	—	3	3	—	—	2	2
Lightscape	3	3	3	3	2	3	3	3	3	—	—	2	3
Lumen Micro	3	—	—	3		3	3	1	—	—	—	3	1

Source: From Bryan, H. and S. M. Autif. 2002. "Lighting/Daylighting Analysis: A Comparison," in *Proceedings of the National Solar Energy Conference*; used with permission of the American Solar Energy Society.

Note: More recently developed software—in addition to those programs listed above—include ECOTECT, Autodesk VIZ Render, Lighting Designer, and AGI32; these programs include capabilities such as daylight factor analysis and glare analysis but have not been rigorously evaluated on the parameters established for this comparison table.

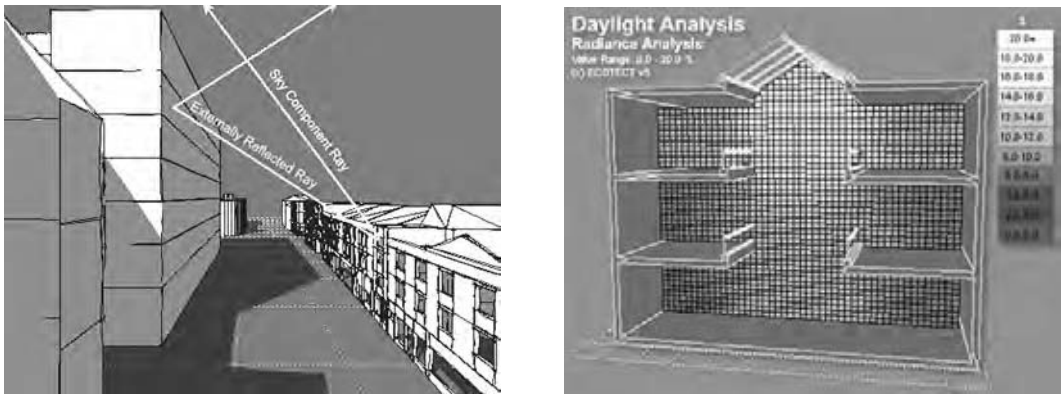


(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.34 *(a) Rendering of shading provided by the blinds at the* New York Times *building. (b) Rendering study of veiling reflections on a computer monitor. (© 2004; example [a] by Greg Ward & Judy Lai; example [b] by Chas Erlich, Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, rendered by Radiance; used with permission.)*

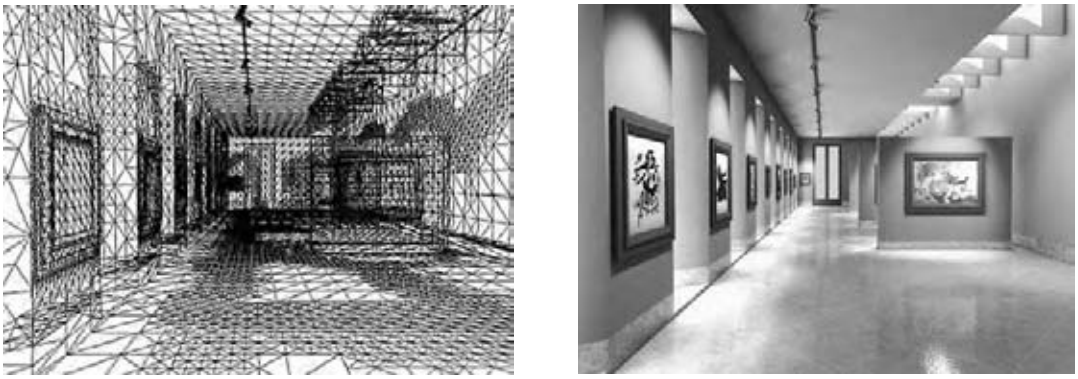
z-buffer, and raytrace. Designs can begin with a 3-D model and gradually add features to render with more complexity. form•Z RenderZone PLUS includes "global illumination" techniques, and produces accurate distribution of light in the environment. form•Z RadioZity is the version of form•Z RenderZone that includes radiosity-based rendering. With form•Z RadioZity, lighting conditions can be accurately simulated and incorporated into the rendering. Although familiar to many as an architectural rendering program, it has the ability to accurately show shadows and radiosity rendering (Fig. 14.36).

- *Autodesk 3ds Max Design (http://usa.autodesk.com/adsk/servlet/index?siteID=123112&id=5659302):* Autodesk 3ds Max Design includes 3-D modeling, rendering, and animation. Autodesk VIZ (Fig. 14.37) has migrated to Autodesk 3ds Max Design, which continues to offer a specialized visualization and rendering program that includes lighting effects from indirect illumination and shadows under varying conditions of daylight and electric light, as well as expanded imagery and cinematographic effects.
- *Lumen Micro 2000 and Lumen Designer (http://www.lighting-technologies.com/):* Lumen Micro 2000 (Fig. 14.38) operates in a Windows environment and can provide detailed daylighting analysis. There is an extensive product library with luminaire data from over 70 manufacturers.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.35 *(a) Schematic output showing exploratory rays passing through a window and hitting an external obstruction. (b) Daylight factor distribution analysis applies a ray-tracing technique using the Building Research Establishment (BRE) Daylight Factor method. (© 2004 Dr. Andrew J. Marsh, of Square One Research; created with ECOTECT v5 [ecotect.com]; used with permission.)*



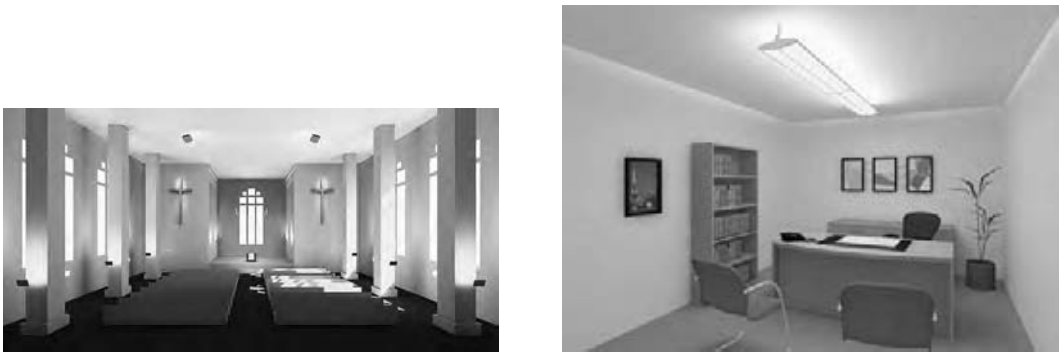
(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.36 *(a) Radiosity rendering of polygons for a gallery space. (b) Rendering of the same gallery space. (© 2004, modeled and rendered with form•Z RadioZity by Markus Bonn, auto.des.sys, Inc.; used with permission.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.37 *(a, b) Rendering of daylight in a residence. (Certain images reproduced from Autodesk® VIZ Render 2004 software with permission of Autodesk, Inc.; © 2002; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.38 *(a) Lumen Micro rendering of daylighting in a church. (b) Lumen Designer rendering of electric lighting in an office. (© 2005 Lighting Technologies, Inc., Lumen Micro Software; used with permission. © 2005 Lighting Technologies, Inc., Lumen Designer Software; used with permission.)*

Lumen Designer is the most recent generation of software (although Lumen Micro 2000 is still available). It can create any geometry, produce realistic renderings, interface with product databases from industry, and calculate daylighting. After 2008, Lumen Micro and Lumen Designer licensing will be supported by LTI Optics, and users will be encouraged to migrate to LAI's AGi32 lighting software.

- *AGI32 (http://www.agi32.com/):* Lighting Analysts, Inc. offers this software program for lighting calculations and renderings of electric lighting and daylighting systems. It is widely used in the lighting industry and includes a Web-based interface that allows users to access manufacturers' photometric data and provides for easier updating.

14.12 PHYSICAL MODELING

Physical models are a useful and indispensable tool for the investigation of complex daylighting phenomena. Simple physical models can give both the designer and the client a visual understanding of a daylighted space. Physical models can duplicate the lighting phenomena that would occur in a full-scale space and, when placed under identical sky conditions, will yield accurate results relative to brightness, shadows, and daylight factor. By changing window design or orientation, adding lightshelves, reflectors, or shading devices, and/or modifying surface materials, a designer can quickly produce a three-dimensional visual image that displays qualitative and quantitative performance results for a proposed daylighting design.

The advantages of physical models include:

- The opportunity for accurate daylight measurements and for qualitative evaluation
- Easy construction (for most designers)
- Crude models that can yield critical information
- Easy comparisons of various schemes (e.g., interchangeable wall or ceiling elements)
- Realistic visualization for clients

The principal disadvantage of using physical models is the need to expose them to the desired sky conditions. For example, waiting for suitable sky conditions in order to view a particular space under both overcast and clear sky conditions, or at different seasons of the year, or during different times of day, is not always practical.

Constructing scale models is relatively simple, using corrugated cardboard, mat board, and colored paper—mounted on a base for ease of manipulation (Fig. 14.39). The model should be made modularly so that alternative design proposals can be interchanged. For example, to compare various skylight configurations, several replaceable roof configurations can be constructed. Model size depends upon the size of photometers used to measure interior illuminance, the size of the space, and the need to accommodate a camera viewport. Considering ease of construction and visualization opportunities, bigger is usually better—although larger models are often preceded by smaller/cruder study models.

Cardboard is an ideal material for daylighting models because it is opaque, unlike foam core board, which is translucent and transmits some light. Unintentional light leaks must be prevented, typically by sealing the joints of a model with black electrician's (or duct) tape or by using strips of black cardboard to close gaps. "Portholes" in one or both of the long sides of a model (approximately 2 in. [50 mm] in diameter) will accommodate visual inspection and insertion of a camera lens to photograph the distribution of light. Model surface reflectances (both interior surfaces and exterior surfaces that contribute to daylight distribution) should be the same as those proposed for the actual building (see Table C.27 for reflectances and mat board colors). Special care should be taken to accurately replicate details around daylight openings—the size and depth of mullions, the depth and reflectivity of the sill, louvers, shading devices, and surfaces just outside daylight openings. Any major furnishings that might have a significant impact upon light distribution should also be included.

Daylight model testing may be conducted under a real or an artificial sky and may also involve heliodon studies.

1. Use of a real sky with daylighting models is logical but often difficult to coordinate (as described above).
2. *Artificial sky or mirror box*. Carefully designed and controlled artificial sky domes or a mirror box can duplicate overcast sky conditions with a high degree of accuracy and are ideal for testing physical models. A number of such



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 14.39 *These photographs illustrate the effectiveness of even a crude model in daylighting studies. (a) A real faculty office at the University of California–Berkeley served as an exercise for a daylighting study. (b) The scale model for this office was constructed of cardboard. Significant reflecting surfaces such as desk surfaces and windowsills were carefully modeled. (c) A quick modification to the model introduced light washing along the wall from a skylight above (upper left of photo) so that the rear of the office would receive more light. All photos were taken on site at midday on an overcast day. (Photos © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

units exist in major universities and lighting laboratories around the world. Sky domes are usually illuminated by interior perimeter lamps with the model located in the center. A mirror box is essentially a room with a luminous ceiling (using fluorescent lamps) and mirrored walls to create a sky with an "infinite" horizon. For construction details, see Moore (1985).

3. *Heliodon.* The heliodon, as shown in Fig. 14.40, is a sophisticated device that allows the study of shading and solar access for a specific latitude, time of day, and time of year using architectural scale models. It operates by rotating and tilting a building model with respect to the real sky or an "artificial sun" (a narrow-beam electric light source) until the desired solar altitude and azimuth are reached. Over the years, heliodons (*sun machines, sun tables, helioluxes, sun emulators*) have been built using a variety of configurations to simulate the sun's position relative to an architectural



Fig. 14.40 *ShadowTracker heliodon at the Baker Lighting Lab at the University of Oregon. Automated adjustments for latitude, elevation, and tilt permit exposure of the model to desired clear sky conditions. (Photo by Sara Goenner; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

scale model. In all cases, the device establishes a geometric relationship for three variables: site location (latitude), solar declination (time of year), and the Earth's rotation (time of day). By adjusting any one of these variables, a heliodon can simulate sunlight penetration and shading for any combination of site location and time. Other types of heliodons keep the position of the model fixed and use a band of lamps that move along three axes to simulate the sun's position for different times and seasons.

14.13 RECAPPING DAYLIGHTING

This chapter began by describing the control of daylight in buildings as both an art and a science. Daylighting is a cornerstone of green design and a major contributor to good building energy performance, as well as occupant comfort, productivity, and health. Addressing daylighting early in schematic design is a critical step for successfully zoning activities and massing the building to optimize the use of daylight and minimize the use of electric lighting. Skillfully employing strategies such as toplighting, sidelighting, lightshelves, and shading devices involves numerous qualitative judgments and quantitative calculations to achieve design intents and criteria. While it is important to conduct necessary calculations, it is also important to recognize the beauty in the simplicity of the straightforward design of the past—as shown at the historic Horseshoe Lodge, built in 1939 (Fig. 14.41).



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 14.41 *(a) Shaded walkway at the Horseshoe Lodge, Beulah, Colorado. (b) Sidelighting in dormitory room of this summer camp. (Photos © Dan Bihn; used with permission.)*

14.14 CASE STUDY—DAYLIGHTING DESIGN

Audubon House

Project Basics

- Location: New York City, New York, USA
- Latitude: 40.5° N; longitude: 74° W; elevation 87 ft (26.5 m)
- Heating degree days: 4805 base 65°F (2672 base 18.3°C); cooling degree days: 3634 base 50°F (2019 base 10°C); annual precipitation: 47 in. (1200 mm)
- Building type: Adaptive reuse
- 98,000 ft^2 (9104 m^2); eight occupied stories
- Completed December 1992
- Client: National Audubon Society
- Design team: Croxton Collaborative, Architects (and consultants)

Background and Context. Audubon House is a restored and remodeled century-old Romanesque building in New York City. The National Audubon Society wanted a headquarters to reflect their environmental mission to restore ecosystems and ensure a healthy environment for people, wildlife, and natural resources. The design team and the client worked together to create a place that served as a model for energy efficiency and environmental responsibility, and to enforce the model. The Croxton Collaborative brought in many design lessons about energy efficiency and environmental performance learned from the redesign and renovation of the Natural Resources Defense Council (NRDC, another New York–based environmental group) building in 1988, just prior to the beginning of the Audubon project. Placing environmental criteria as a priority for the design in terms of resources, energy efficiency, air quality, and occupant well-being set the stage for the development of many new green office buildings. A case study of Audubon House won first place in the 1998 Vital Signs Case Study Competition. The following information is extracted from *Audubon House* (National Audubon Society, 1994) and information sheets.

Design Intent. The design of Audubon House took the approach of developing a "living model" in four environmental dimensions: energy conservation and efficiency, creating a healthy indoor environment, resource conservation and recycling, and reducing negative environmental impacts—an antidote to the plague of standard-issue, grossly inefficient office buildings that dot urban and suburban landscapes. The motto was "Green design is affordable." Compared to code-compliant buildings in New York City at that time, Audubon House was designed to use 62% less energy overall and deliver 30% more outdoor air to its occupants.

Design Criteria and Validation. Benchmarks were set for building systems, materials, and strategies based upon previous experience. The criteria included a target of 0.97 W of electric lighting per square foot (conventional buildings at that time used as much as 2.4 W/ft^2); an in-house recycling system that would capture 80% of the office refuse (mostly paper); 26 cfm (12.3 L/s) of outdoor air per person, which would exceed the existing standards and guidelines (then 10–20 cfm); pendant ceiling fixtures reflecting 88% of the light from the fixture up to the ceiling; and occupancy sensors that would turn off lights in unoccupied zones.

Post-Occupancy Validation Methods. Even with recent developments in environmental technology, Audubon House continues to serve as a model. Several New York City projects have applied the principles used in this project. Five years after the renovation was completed, an occupant survey found a high degree of satisfaction with daylight quality and availability in the work spaces. The farther a workstation was located from a window, the more often occupants used their task lights. Several nonfunctioning occupancy and daylight sensors reduced the potential of the daylight integrated lighting system; the lighting power density, however, was calculated to be 0.82 W/ft^2, which exceeded the design goal of 0.97 W/ft^2 and the ASHRAE Standard 90.1 recommendations. In 1996 a separate detailed study on indoor air quality was conducted as part of a larger study of air quality in green buildings.

Key Design Strategies

- A gas-fired absorption chiller-heater uses no CFCs, emits no sulfur dioxide, and emits



(*a*)

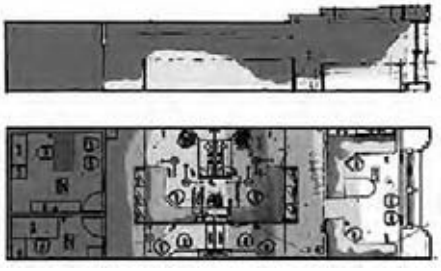


(*b*)

Fig. 14.42 *(a) Audubon House, headquarters for the National Audubon Society, located in New York City, is a reused and renovated building (Croxton Collaborative, 1992). (b) Lobby space uses daylight from high windows and skylight. (Photos © 2004 by Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*

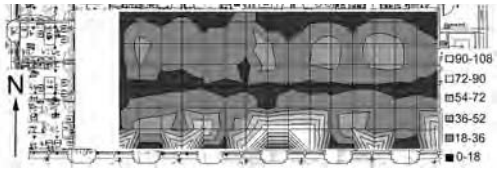


(*a*)

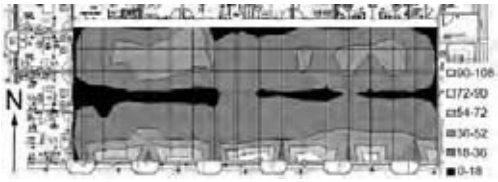


(*b*)

Fig. 14.43 *(a) Office space along the south-facing façade of Audubon House. (b) Daylighting section showing illuminance measurements. (Photo © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 14.44 *(a) Illuminance contours in Audubon House during an overcast day. (b) Illuminance contours during a clear day. (©2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



Fig. 14.45 *Recycling bins in the Audubon House basement receive materials sorted by categories of waste (paper, glass, and newspaper). (Photo © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

60% less nitrogen oxides than conventional units. Additionally, no CFCs are used in the insulation.
- To promote a healthy environment, natural and recycled materials were used for the furnishings and renovation materials, such as Air-Krete™ wall insulation, wool rugs without adhesive backing, wood and fabric furniture, and recycled-content countertops and tiles.
- A daylight integrated lighting system producing lowered electricity use during daylight hours through the use of light-colored furnishings and interior surfaces, a layout of interior work areas to ensure that daylight is not blocked by walls and corridors, pendant uplight ceiling fixtures with fluorescent lamps, daylight dimming sensors, and occupancy sensors in all work spaces (producing what is affectionately known as the "Audubon flap").
- There were low VOC emissions from building materials and furnishings, high-efficiency filters to remove particles, and air intakes on the roof rather than at street level.
- Recycling the entire building by adaptive reuse reduced embodied energy costs, as did the use of recycled materials (Homasote™ subfloor from 50% recycled newsprint, tiles from lightbulbs, bathroom countertops from plastic containers, etc.) and the provision of an in-house recycling system.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION

National Audubon Society. 1994. *The Audubon House: Building the Environmentally Responsible, Energy-Efficient Office*. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Vital Signs Case Study: http://arch.ced.berkeley.edu/vitalsigns/bld/case_studies.html.

Update: The National Audubon society purchased and renovated the case study building at 700 Broadway in New York City in the late 1980s. It was considered one of the first green buildings in New York City. They have recently relocated to a new, 27,500 square foot (2555 m^2) office headquarters at 225 Varick Street in New York City. The new headquarters achieved a LEED® Platinum Certification for Commercial Interiors in 2009.

References and Resources

Brown, G. Z. and M. DeKay. 2000. *Sun, Wind & Light: Architectural Design Strategies*, 2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Bryan, H. and S. M. Autif. 2002. "Lighting/Daylighting Analysis: A Comparison," in *Proceedings of the National Solar Energy Conference*. American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

CIE. 1970. *Daylight, International Recommendations for the Calculation of Natural Daylight* (Publication No. 16 E-3.2). Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage. Paris.

DeKay, M. 1992. "Volumetric Implications and a Rule-of-Thumb for Thickness of Atria Buildings," in *Proceedings of the 17th National Passive Solar Conference*. American Solar Energy Society. Boulder, CO.

Dresler, A. 1963. *Daylight Design Diagram*. Service Division, Commonwealth of Labor and National Service. Melbourne, Australia.

Heschong Mahone Group. 1999–2003. Executive summaries and reports available from: http://www.h-m-g.com/projects/daylighting/projects-PIER.htm

Hopkinson, R. G., R. Pethebridge, and J. Longmore. 1966. *Daylighting*. Heinemann. London.

IESNA. 1994. *Recommended Practice for the Calculation of Daylight Availability* (RP-21-84; reaffirmed 1994). Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 1999. *Daylighting* (RP-5-99). Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 1989. *Recommended Practice for the Lumen Method of Daylight Calculations* (RP-23-89). Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

International Energy Agency. 2000. *Daylight in Buildings: A Source Book on Daylighting Systems and Components*. International Energy Agency, Solar Heating and Cooling Programme, Energy Conservation in Buildings and Community Systems.

Lam, W. 1986. *Sunlighting as Formgiver for Architecture*. Van Nostrand Reinhold. New York.

Millet, M. S., and J. R. Bedrick. 1980. *Graphic Daylighting Design Method*. Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory/U.S. Department of Energy. Washington, DC.

Moore, F. 1985. *Concepts and Practice of Architectural Daylighting*. Van Nostrand Reinhold. New York.

National Audubon Society and the Croxton Collaborative. 1994. *Audubon House: Building the Environmentally Responsible, Energy-Efficient Office*. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Stein, B. and J. Reynolds. 1992. *Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings*, 8th ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Windows and Daylighting (Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory): http://windows.lbl.gov/

Whole Building Design Guide (daylighting): http://www.wbdg.org/resources/daylighting.php

CHAPTER 15

Electrical Lighting Design

LUMINAIRES

15.1 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

(a) General

REFER TO FIG. 13.1 TO SEE THE CONTEXT for this chapter. At this point in the lighting design process, where design development of the electrical lighting system occurs, lighting hardware is chosen based upon considerations brought forth from earlier design stages, and appropriate validation calculations are performed. Some spaces require overall uniform illumination. These spaces are calculated by the lumen method, which yields average illuminance. Other spaces utilize local lighting alone, or local lighting in addition to general lighting, requiring point-by-point illuminance calculations or some other method for restricted-area calculation. Additional considerations at this design stage are the control strategy (see Sections 15.13 to 15.17); type of ceiling system (e.g., modular, movable fixture, and integrated service); and ancillary considerations of ballast noise, luminaire heat distribution, and maintenance. Also decided here is whether to utilize workstation-mounted or built-in lighting, both of which are principally applicable to open-plan spaces.

(b) Luminaire Characteristics

The purpose of a *luminaire* or *lighting fixture* (the terms are synonymous) is twofold: physically, to hold, protect, and electrify the light source; and photometrically to control the lamp output (i.e., to redirect the light produced) because most common light sources emit light in substantially all directions. The means by which this beam-shaping is accomplished are well known. The characteristics of reflectors, baffles, lenses, and louvers that perform these functions are discussed in some detail in the following sections. However, the problem in luminaire selection is that the requirements are, in many respects, incompatible, and therefore a trade-off between various luminaire characteristics must be made. Thus, for instance, high efficiency installations can entail high fixture luminance with resultant glare. Desirable wall lighting means high-angle luminaire output with resultant direct glare (see Figs. 11.23 and 11.24). Low-angle light means minimum direct glare but possible veiling reflections. A high shielding angle (>35°) means good visual comfort but reduced efficiency, and so on. It is therefore obvious that

- No single luminaire design is ideal for even a majority of applications.
- To make an intelligent selection among the hundreds of lighting fixtures commercially available, it is absolutely necessary that the designer understand both the specific requirements of the

application and the light control characteristics of the luminaire being considered.

15.2 LIGHTING FIXTURE DISTRIBUTION CHARACTERISTICS

At this point, review of intensity distribution curves (Section 11.14) by the reader would be useful. The two distribution curves shown in Fig. 15.1*a* are actual test results of two 2-lamp, 1-ft-wide by 4-ft-long (0.3 by 1.2 m) semi-direct fluorescent fixtures with prismatic enclosure. The flat bottom of the curve in Fig. 15.1*a* indicates even illumination over a wide area, therefore permitting a high spacing to mounting-height ratio (S/MH) (1:4) for uniform illumination. The rounded bottom of the curve in Fig. 15.1*b* indicates uneven illumination and closer required spacing for horizontal uniformity as defined in Section 15.5.

The straight sides of the curve in Fig. 15.1*a* show a fairly sharp cutoff, and the small amount of light above 45° means high efficiency, probably insufficient wall lighting, barely adequate diffuseness, and very little direct glare potential but a distinct possibility of veiling reflections. Conversely, the curve in Fig. 15.1*b* shows a large amount of horizontal illumination (above 45°) with resultant direct glare potential, diffuseness, and relative inefficiency, because horizontal light output is attenuated by multiple reflections before reaching the horizontal working plane. Here, however, low output below 45° minimizes reflected glare potential. The uplight component of luminaire (*a*) is directed outward to cover the ceiling and will not cause hot spots; the corresponding light from fixture (*b*) is concentrated above the fixture and gives uneven illumination of the ceiling.

These conclusions were reached based on the following observations:

1. *Uniformity of illumination* requires that the intensity at angles above the nadir (0° from the vertical) be greater than the intensity at 0° so that location-points distant from the fixture centerline obtain the same illumination as those below the fixture (because illuminance varies inversely with the square of distance). This is exactly the case with the flat-bottom characteristics of Fig. 15.1*a*. Therefore, such fixtures can be spaced more widely than the units of Fig. 15.1*b*.
2. *High efficiency* is achieved by directing the luminaire output to the work plane (i.e., from 0° to 45° from the vertical). Light above 45° is directed to the walls and reaches the working plane only after multiple attenuating interreflections.
3. *Diffuseness* exists when light reaches the work plane from multiple directions. This requires that light be reflected from walls and ceilings to the work plane, which in turn requires luminaire light output above 45° from the vertical.
4. *Direct glare* is caused by light output at high angles (i.e., above 45° from the vertical). Direct

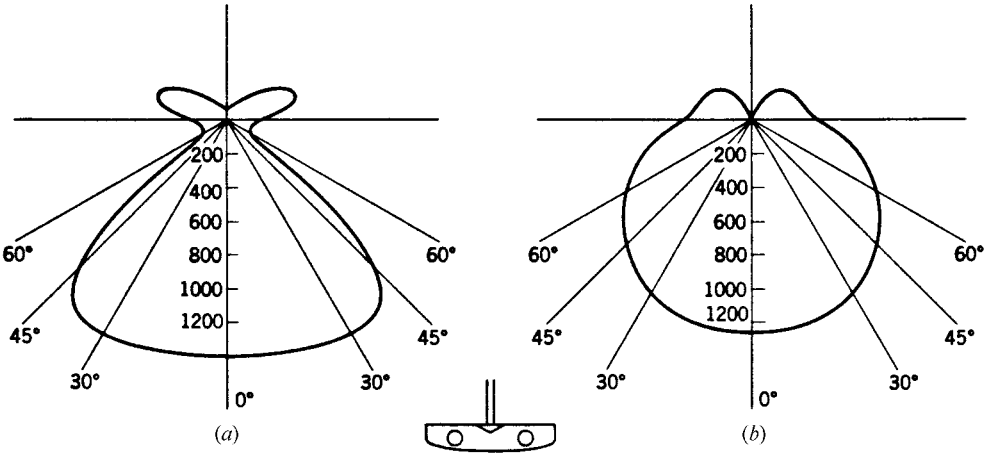


Fig. 15.1 *Semi-direct fluorescent fixture crosswise distribution (two lamps, 32 W each, prismatic enclosure). Note the sharp cutoff and wide, horizontally even distribution of (a) in contrast to the diffuse, broad, and horizontally uneven distribution of (b).*

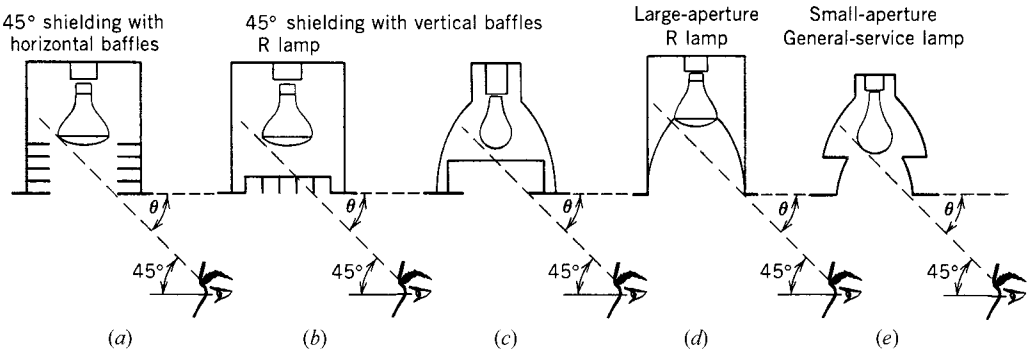


Fig. 15.2 *Methods for shielding downlights using circular shields for vertically symmetrical sources such as incandescent and HID lamps. Halogen lamps mounted vertically in R lamp envelopes are symmetrical; horizontally mounted units in PAR or other reflectors are not. Baffled downlights (a–c) control unwanted high-angle light by cutoff as illustrated. Black baffles aid by absorbing light and appearing dark. Other colors give a ring of light at the baffled edge. Cones (d, e) control brightness by cutoff and by redirection of light due to their shape. They are either parabolic or elliptical. A light specular finish such as aluminum appears dull; a black specular finish appears unlighted. Black finishes require high-quality maintenance because dust shows as a bright reflection. CFL lamps in reflectors are not normally a serious direct glare concern and are considered to be vertically symmetrical. A shielding angle of 45° minimum is recommended for high-luminance lamps.*

glare from linear fluorescent fixtures can be minimized by placing the long axis parallel to the line of sight, because such fixtures normally have low *endwise* high-angle output.

5. *Reflected glare* is caused by reflection of low-angle output from the task. Therefore, fixtures with control means that limit output between 0° and 45° minimize the potential for veiling reflections (see Section 15.4b).
6. *Shielding* is a function of the shape of the fixture housing plus any additional lamp concealment means, such as louvers or baffles. The *shielding angle* is defined as the angle between a horizontal plane through the louvers or baffles and the inclined plane at which the lamp first becomes visible as one approaches the fixture (Figs. 15.2 and 15.3). *Cutoff angle* is usually defined as being synonymous with the shielding angle. However, because some sources define it as the complement of the shielding angle, it is best to avoid the term and use only *shielding angle*.
7. *Ceiling illumination* is produced by light above the horizontal. As with light below the horizontal, a spread characteristic (Fig. 15.1*a*) means good ceiling coverage, no hot spots, and, ultimately, good diffuseness. Concentrated uplight

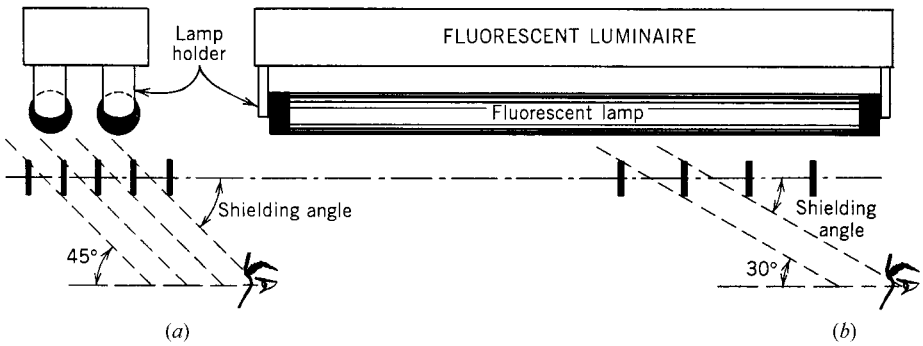


Fig. 15.3 *Shielding of fluorescent lamps is less critical due to lower lamp luminance. For T12 lamps, 45° × 35° crosswise/lengthwise shielding as shown is excellent, and 35° × 30° is satisfactory. For T8 lamps, 45° × 35° should be used. Because fixture luminance is higher in the transverse direction (a) than lengthwise (b), a better cutoff angle is required. The shielding elements may be louvers or baffles. Opaque shielding elements have a higher visual comfort rating than translucent plastic units.*

means a potential hot spot if the fixture suspension hanger is too short, and in any event it yields uneven ceiling illumination.

Thus, we see that a rapid inspection of a fixture curve performed by an informed person can yield a large amount of information on the fixture's performance. The reader is encouraged at this juncture to review the comments on the two distribution curves of Fig. 15.1 and then analyze similarly other distribution curves in manufacturers' catalogs.

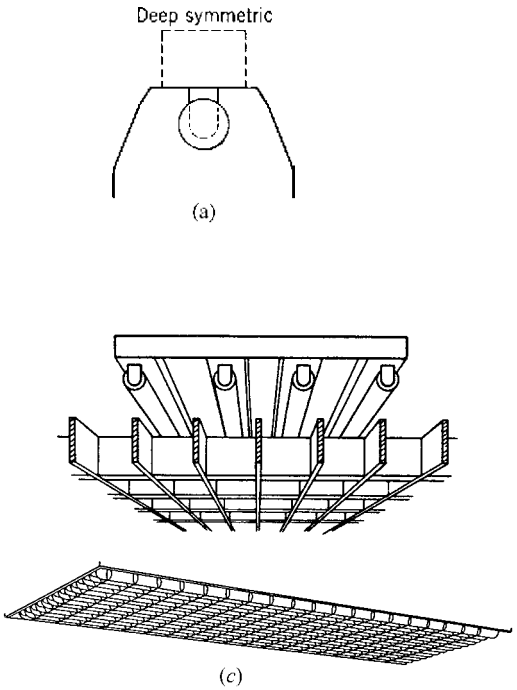
15.3 LUMINAIRE LIGHT CONTROL

(a) Lamp Shielding

Except where it is desired to use a bare lamp as a source of sparkle, such as in chandeliers and other decorative fixtures, all lamps in interior fixtures should be shielded from normal sight lines (i.e., sight lines in a head-up, eyes-straight-ahead position; see Fig. 11.19). The reason is obvious; bare lamps are so bright (see Table 11.2) that they usually constitute a source of direct or even disabling glare, depending on the apprehended angle (closeness to the eye and size of the lamp) and eye adaptation level. The range of permissible luminaire luminances (listed in Table 11.3) of 1000 to 7000 cd/m^2 depends upon these two variables (apprehended angle and adaptation level).

As a general rule, exposed incandescent lamps, 6 W and larger, are sources of direct glare and should be avoided. Note that the upper direct-glare limit corresponds to the luminance of a bare 34-W T12 fluorescent tube, which accounts for the fact that bare-lamp fluorescent fixtures are well tolerated. However, when such a fixture is relamped (and reballasted) with a more efficient, better CRI, T8 lamp whose luminance exceeds 10,000 cd/m^2, it becomes a source of annoying direct glare that actively impairs visual ability.

Shielding of lamps is accomplished with the fixture housing/reflector or with baffles and louvers, as mentioned previously (see Figs. 15.2, 15.3, and 15.4). Fluorescent fixtures require shielding most when placed crosswise to the line of sight, thus exposing the entire length of the lamp to the field of view. Such fixtures require longitudinal baffles, deep housings, or louvers to provide the necessary shielding. Alternatively, when at all possible, place fixtures with their long axis in the direction of sight lines.



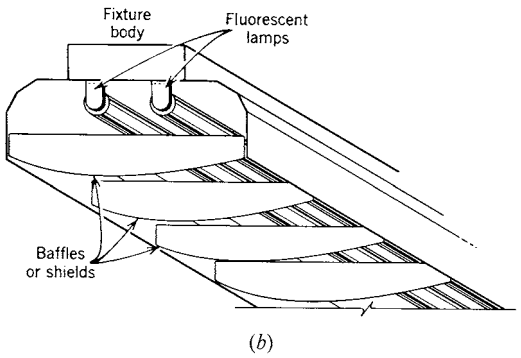


Fig. 15.4 *Shielding elements. (a) The most basic shielding element is the lamp reflector, which may double as the fixture body. (b) Shields perpendicular to the long axis of a linear fluorescent lamp are normally called baffles. They are less important than lengthwise shields (louvers) because endwise lamp luminance is lower than crosswise luminance. (c) Two-way shielding is most effective but significantly lessens luminaire efficiency. (From B. Stein. 1997.* Building Technology, Mechanical and Electrical Systems*, 2nd ed.; reproduced by permission of John Wiley & Sons.)*

(b) Reflectors

It is important to understand the action of luminaire reflectors. The basic shapes and beam patterns are illustrated in Figs. 15.5 through 15.7. Note from Fig. 15.6 that the so-called pinhole downlight requires an elliptic reflector to focus the light through this hole at point *f2* in order to maintain even minimal fixture efficiency. Elliptic reflectors are large, and frequently the space above the ceiling is too restricted for their use. Lamps with integral elliptic reflectors can be utilized with a standard baffled reflector to achieve roughly the same effect.

(c) Reflector Materials

Until fairly recently, reflector materials were of two types: white gloss paint for portions of fixture body interiors that acted as reflectors, and formed anodized aluminum sheet for the shaped reflectors of the types shown in Figs. 15.5 through 15.7. The reflectances (reflection factors) of both of these materials are approximately the same, varying between 0.84 and 0.88 *when new and clean*. Neither, however, is truly specular; the paint finish is actually primarily diffuse, whereas the aluminum is principally specular. Where shaped reflectors are not used, as in the case of a fluorescent troffer, the lack of specularity is essentially immaterial because, at worst, the diffuseness will reduce luminaire output slightly by increasing the number of interreflections within the fixture body (Fig. 15.8*a*). The idealized specular reflections for shaped reflectors shown in Figs. 15.5 through 15.7 are just that; in reality, the reflectances are considerably more diffuse and become increasingly so with reflector aging and dirt accumulation.

Painted fixture body interiors lose their high reflectance by rapid aging due to elevated temperatures and accumulation of dust and dirt. This causes a decrease in overall reflectance, which is compensated for by initial overdesign, as explained

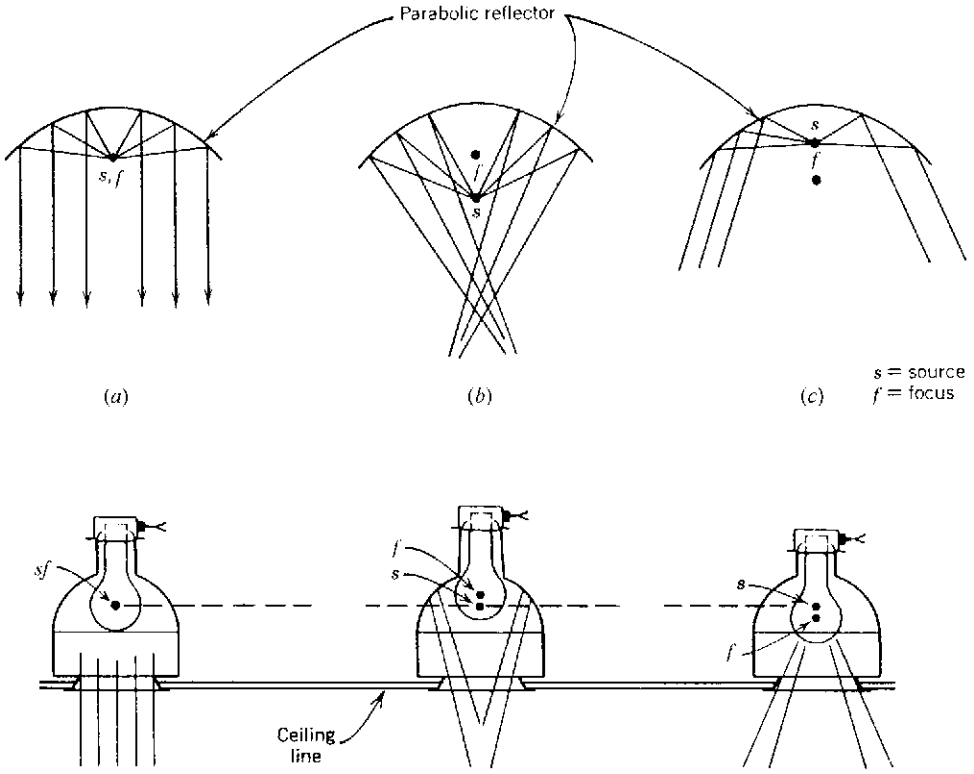


Fig. 15.5 *Parabolic reflector action shown with the fixture below: (a) with the source at the focal point, rays are parallel; (b) with the source below the focal point, they converge; (c) with the source above the focal point, they diverge. This focusing action is illustrated by fixtures correspondingly designated. Note that type (c) requires a large ceiling opening to achieve even minimal efficiency.*

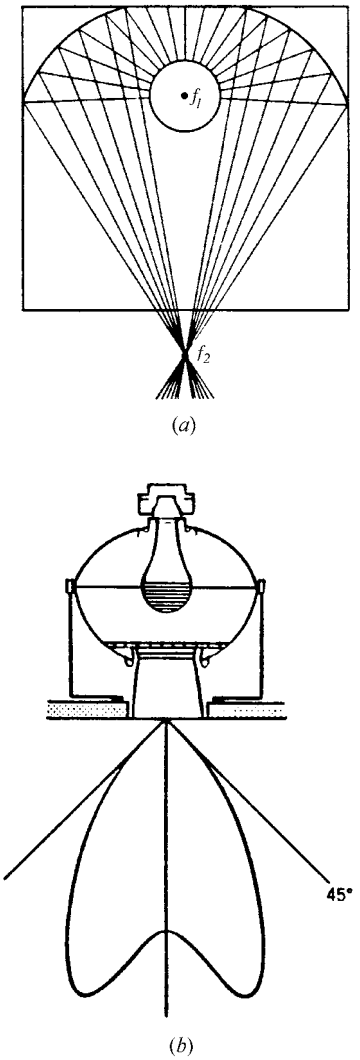


Fig. 15.6 *(a) Action of an elliptical reflector section. With the light source at focal point f_1 the light converges at the other focal point, f_2. This effect is useful in fixture design, as in (b). By projecting light up only (through the use of a silvered bowl lamp) the output light can be redirected through a constricted aperture at the other focal point, with little loss. This design is the basis of high-efficiency "pinhole" downlights.*

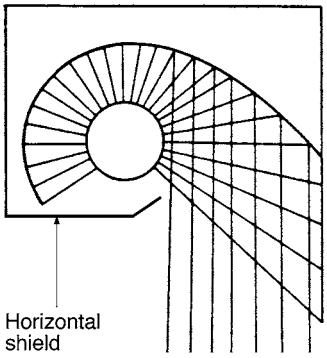


Fig. 15.7 *The extended section reflector allows the source to be concealed (shielded) while projecting its light directly down, but horizontally displaced, from the source.*

in Section 15.20. However, because a rectangular fixture body is not an accurately shaped reflector, the result of overall reflectance reduction is simply an overall reduction in output while maintaining the same photometric *distribution* characteristics.

Energy conservation programs and utility rebates (now generally terminated) led to the introduction in retrofit of very-high-reflectance auxiliary reflectors that were added to existing fluorescent troffers approximately as shown in Fig. 15.8*b*. Unfortunately, many of the claims of highly increased efficiency were based on retrofitting aged, dirty luminaires, and their results can be very misleading. A reasonable estimate of the possible improvement in luminaire efficiency can be made by considering these facts:

- Approximately 40% of a lamp's output in an open luminaire is directed downward and is therefore completely independent of any reflector action.
- The difference in reflectance between a new, clean, painted surface and an old, dirty surface is, *at most*, 50%. That means that the *maximum* light loss of an open fixture due to poor maintenance is 50% of 60% (the maximum reflected light component), or 30% of the overall light output. Reference is always to an open-bottom fixture.
- The maximum reflectance of the best (and most expensive) silver reflectors is about 95%, comprising 93% specular and 2% diffuse. This is only 10% higher than the original *minimum* 85% paint reflectance. Therefore, at most, retrofit of a very dirty, old fixture with a high-quality (expensive) silver reflector improves performance by the 30% lost to dirt plus 10% of the 60% reflected light for a total of 36% *maximum*. Relamping, of course, also improves output, but that is not connected with fixture body reflectance.

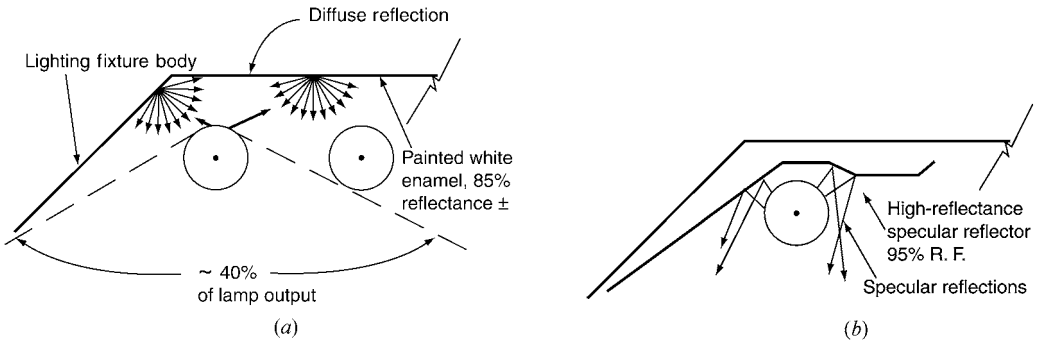


Fig. 15.8 *(a) Approximately 40% of lamp output in an open linear fluorescent fixture is unrestricted. The remainder leaves the fixture after one or more reflections. (b) A mirrored reflector narrows the distribution pattern of the luminaire by specular reflection and increases output somewhat.*

- Simple cleaning of a very dirty fixture body restores 20% to 25% of the light loss. The remaining loss is due to aging of the paint. A cost analysis is required to determine whether the 10% to 15% differential in light output between simple cleaning and silvered reflector addition is economically feasible.

An important consideration in retrofit and new construction is the photometric characteristic of high-reflectance linear fluorescent luminaires. In general, they are shaped like the curve of Fig. 15.1*b*. This means, as explained in Section 13.16, that light is concentrated downward, resulting in a requirement for closer luminaire spacing to obtain uniform illumination. In new construction, this can be considered in design, although it can be a serious economic penalty. In retrofit work, it can result in unacceptable lack of illuminance uniformity, requiring additional luminaires and expensive relocation of existing units.

Another factor to be considered is the degree of maintenance required to keep "super" reflectors in pristine condition in order to achieve the 15% ± maximum output differential. To determine this, designers should request an aging test and inspect a previously retrofitted installation with ambient conditions and cleaning schedules similar to those of the area under consideration.

15.4 LUMINAIRE DIFFUSERS

Diffusers are the devices placed between the lamp(s) and the illuminated space, that function to diffuse the light, control fixture brightness, redirect the light, and obscure (hide) and shield the lamps. As most of these devices perform multiple functions, they are discussed individually.

(a) Translucent Diffusers

Because these do not redirect the light but merely diffuse it, the distribution characteristic is circular, as seen in Fig. 15.9*a*. Typical examples of this type are white opal glass, frosted glass, and white plastics such as Plexiglas, polystyrene, vinyl, and polycarbonates. The distribution is basically the same as it would be for bare lamps. Lamp-hiding power is good. Depending on the material, direct glare can be a problem (visual comfort probability [VCP] is poor). Veiling reflections are high. The S/MH does not exceed 1.5. The fixture is generally inefficient. Wall illumination is good because of a large component of high-angle light (which reduces VCP). The net result of using this type of diffuser is to lower lamp luminance by distributing the lamp output over a larger diffusing area. Applications include corridors, stairwells, high-ceilinged spaces, and other areas without demanding visual tasks.

A special type of flat plastic panel that polarizes the transmitted light was introduced some years ago. These panels held great promise because they produce a marked decrease of veiling reflection at an angle of 60°, but much less at other angles. Because most viewing is in the range 20° to 40°, using these panels does not result in any appreciable reduction in reflected glare in normal

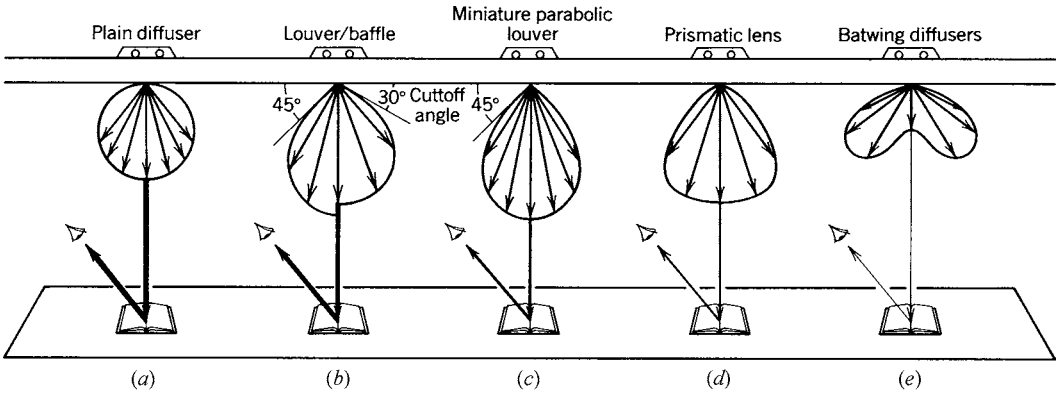


Fig. 15.9 *Comparison of typical candlepower distribution curves for common linear or PL lamp fluorescent luminaire diffuser elements (for a full description of types* [a]–[e]*, see text). Note that for a given geometry of viewer and luminaire, the severity of veiling reflections depends entirely on the fixture's photometric characteristic. In the individual figures, the potential to produce reflected glare is indicated by the weight of the line representing fixture output and reflectance from the work task. The batwing distribution (e) concentrates its output in the 30° to 60° range, which minimizes both direct and reflected glare.*

office work situations. From experience in a drafting room equipped with luminaires utilizing high-efficiency multilayer polarizers, it can be stated that visual discomfort from reflected glare, as personally experienced and as reported by a large staff, is not noticeably reduced.

(b) Louvers and Baffles

These are generally rectangular section, metal or plastic, and serve primarily to shield the source (see Figs. 15.2, and 15.3) and to diffuse the output, particularly when plastic translucent louvers are used. Candlepower distribution curves are shown in Fig. 15.9*b*. The exact curve shape depends on the shielding angle, design of the louver, and its finish. Louvers finished in specular aluminum or dark colors exhibit low direct glare. The large downward light component can cause serious veiling reflections. Overall fixture efficiency is average.

The S/MH, a luminaire metric that indicates the maximum spacing permissible for a given luminaire mounting height that yields uniform illumination and is given as a dimensionless ratio, is fully explained in the next section. For this diffuser type, it does not exceed 1.5 and varies inversely with the shielding angle. This is because the basic circular distribution is changed to an egg shape by cutoff and redirection, reducing the high-angle light. Thus, a 45° shielding angle results in lower direct glare potential but requires closer spacing.

A special design in this category is the miniature eggcrate parabolic wedge louver shown in Fig. 15.10. These units redirect a large portion of the light directly downward, and because of this redirection and their specular finish, they appear completely dark—darker, indeed, than the unlighted portion of the ceiling when viewed obliquely. Fixtures using these louvers have low efficiency due to trapped light, with a maximum coefficient of utilization of about 0.5 (see Section 15.20). VCP is very high, but veiling reflections can be troublesome; S/MH varies between 1.0 and 1.5. The shielding angle is usually 45°. A typical candlepower distribution curve is shown in Fig. 15.9*c*. When these units are used, additional wall lighting is almost always required. The luminance of fixtures and surfaces can be easily checked in the field using a portable luminance meter as in Fig. 15.11

Because of the low efficiency of the parabolic louver design shown in Fig. 15.10*a* caused by the wide light-trapping tops of the louvers, an improved version was developed with the tops shaped to reflect incident light efficiently. This improved design, which is shown in Fig. 15.10*b*, increases luminaire efficiency by about 20%.

(c) Prismatic Lens

Many designs are available with varying distribution characteristics. Figures 15.1*a* and 15.9*d* can be taken as typical of this genre. They produce an

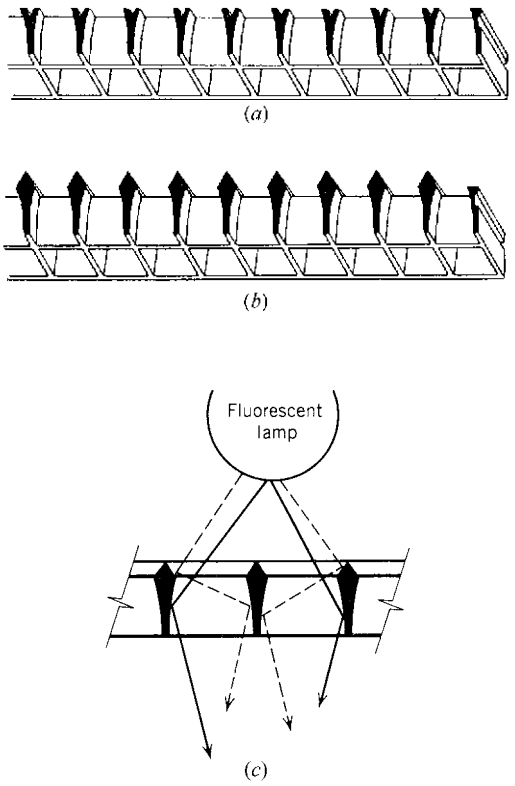


Fig. 15.10 *(a) Section through a conventional, miniature parabolic wedge, eggcrate type of louver. These units give exceptionally low brightness when seen at a normal viewing angle. Most such units are made of aluminized plastic. Fixtures equipped with these units exhibit low overall efficiency due to the large amount of light trapped by the broad top of each parabolic wedge. (b) A modified wedge design uses a curved top on each wedge to redirect and utilize light striking the top. (c) Solid lines represent light rays redirected by the bottom curve, whereas dotted lines show light redirected by the top curve, which was lost in the design of (a). Typical louver cell dimensions are a ½-in. (12-mm) cube for design (a), with a consequent 45° shielding angle, and ⅝ to ¾-in. (21 to 19 mm) square by ½ in. (12 mm) high for design (b), giving a 35° to 45° shielding angle.*

efficient fixture (high coefficient of utilization), good diffusion, wide permissible spacing—an S/MH as high as 2.0—and low direct glare (high VCP). Veiling reflections can be troublesome, depending upon viewing angles and position (see Fig. 11.32).

(d) Fresnel Lens

The action of this lens is similar to that of a reflector. Lamp-hiding power is poor, but efficiency is high and visual comfort is good. S/MH is seldom more than 1.5 (Fig. 15.12).



Fig. 15.11 *Checking the luminance of a fluorescent fixture with a luminance meter. (Photo © 2009 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

(e) Batwing Diffusers

The theory behind this type of diffuser is covered in Section 11.31*(c)*. A typical characteristic is shown in Fig. 15.9*e*. There are two fluorescent luminaire designs that produce the batwing shape distribution characteristic—a prismatic lens and parabolic reflectors and baffles.

1. *Prismatic batwing diffusers.* These are either linear or radial; that is, they produce the batwing distribution either in one direction or in all

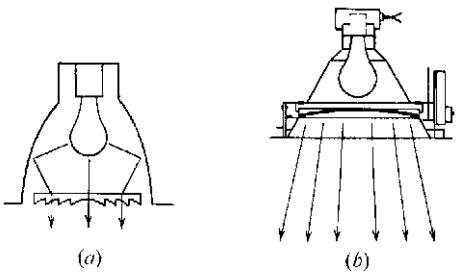
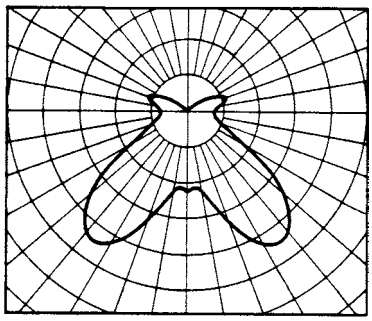


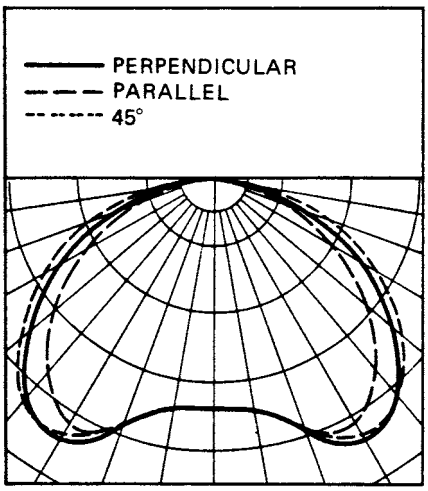
Fig. 15.12 *Action of a Fresnel lens. With a Fresnel lens fixture, a smaller housing without a reflector can be used while still maintaining beam control. The lens performs the same function as a reflector, controlling the beam as a function of source placement. By utilizing a lens fixture, the curved reflector (a) can be largely eliminated, yielding a smaller fixture while maintaining accurate beam control. A common design (b) uses a regressed lens to provide shielding, although lens brightness is not normally objectionable.*

directions. Typical characteristics of both types are shown in Fig. 15.13. Note that the characteristic shape is more pronounced in the linear diffuser, which indicates better control of veiling reflections in that direction (usually crosswise). Fixtures equipped with these diffusers have good efficiency, low direct and reflected glare, and good diffusion. As with all enclosed ungasketed fixtures, the lens acts as a dust trap, necessitating frequent cleaning to maintain high output.

2. *Deep parabolic reflectors.* These luminaires (Fig. 15.14) produce modified versions of the characteristic batwing distribution in the normal (crosswise) direction. Distribution in the parallel or lengthwise direction is circular (diffuse), indicating minimum beam control in that direction. These fixtures, like the batwing lens-type diffuser units, have high efficiency, high S/MH, low reflected glare, and low to very low surface brightness, making them usable in visual display terminal (VDT) areas. They are normally applied with the long axis in the direction of sight lines.



(*a*)



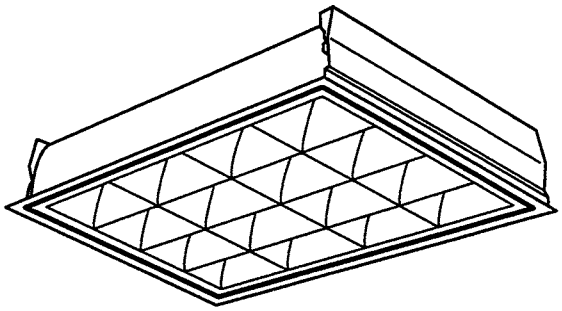
(*b*)

Fig. 15.13 *(a) Linear batwing distribution with extremely sharp cutoff in the upper and lower ranges. The curve is taken across the lamp axis for a single-lamp unit. (b) Distribution curves for a radial batwing distribution lens. Note that the perpendicular, parallel, and diagonal curves are almost identical. Zonal flux is maximum in the 30° to 60° range and drops off at both extremes, as desired.*

15.5 UNIFORMITY OF ILLUMINATION

In any space intended to be lighted uniformly with multiple, discrete, ceiling-mounted direct-lighting system light sources, it is necessary to establish a fixture spacing that gives acceptable uniformity of illumination. A ratio of maximum to minimum illuminance on the working plane of 1:1.3 is readily acceptable because lesser ratios are not easily noticed. For general background or circulation lighting, a ratio of up to 1.5 is acceptable. The recommended S/MH (above the working plane) given by manufacturers (see the figures immediately above the distribution curves for each fixture in Table 15.1) are generally based upon a 1.0 illuminance ratio (Fig. 15.15). Therefore, the S/MH recommendation may be exceeded somewhat without significantly affecting uniformity.

When the luminaire's distribution characteristic is symmetrical in all directions, as is generally the case with small-source lamps such as incandescent, compact fluorescent (CFL), and high-intensity discharge (HID), only a single S/MH figure is required. However, with the asymmetrical distribution of most fluorescent fixtures, an S/MH ratio is required both crosswise and lengthwise. Due to the characteristic of the lamp itself, the transverse (crosswise, perpendicular) ratio is almost always considerably higher than the longitudinal (parallel, endwise, lengthwise) ratio. See, for instance, fixtures 26, 28, and 42 in Table 15.1. The S/MH (also called *spacing criteria* [SC]) for a specific luminaire is determined by measuring the distance between two test luminaires that



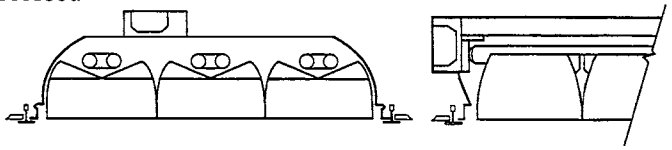
TOTAL LUMINAIRE EFFICIENCY = 66.0 %
TOTAL REFLECTANCE OF PAINT = 88.3 %
CIE TYPE – DIRECT

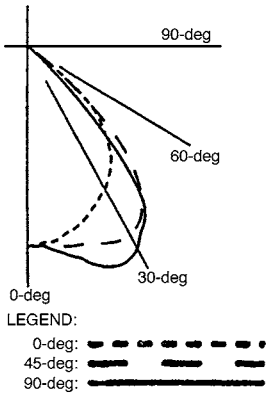
PLANE	: 0-DEG	90-DEG
SPACING CRITERIA	: 1.2	1.6
SHIELDING ANGLES	: 36	43
PLANE	: 0-DEG	90-DEG
LUMINOUS LENGTH	: 21.250	21.250

LUMINANCE DATA IN FOOTLAMBERTS

ANGLE IN DEG	AVERAGE 0-DEG	AVERAGE 45-DEG	AVERAGE 90-DEG
45	2451.	3101.	1927.
55	494.	639.	55.
65	0.	0.	0.
75	0.	0.	0.
85	0.	0.	0.

Recessed





Visual Comfort Probability

Reflectance - 80, 50, 20
Work Plane Illumination - 100 FC@ 2.5 ft.

VCP

Room W	Room L	Ht.	Luminaires Lengthwise 8.5	10.0	13.0	Ht.	Luminaires Crosswise 8.5	10.0	13.0
20	20		68	81	77		90	90	87
20	40		69	81	77		91	90	84
30	30		69	81	77		91	90	84
30	60		69	82	78		91	90	84
40	40		69	82	78		91	90	84
40	60		70	82	78		91	90	84
60	30		69	82	78		91	90	84
60	40		70	82	78		91	90	84
60	60		70	82	78		91	91	84

Coefficients of Utilization

Zonal Cavity Method — Floor Reflectance - .20

RC / RW	80 70	80 50	80 30	80 10	50 50	50 30	50 10
1	75	73	71	69	69	67	66
2	71	67	65	62	64	62	60
3	67	62	59	56	59	57	54
4	63	57	54	50	55	52	50
5	59	53	49	46	51	48	45
6	55	49	44	41	47	43	41
7	51	44	40	37	43	39	36
8	48	41	36	33	39	35	33
9	44	37	32	29	36	32	29
10	41	34	29	26	33	29	26

Energy Data

LER: FP-42 **Energy Cost: $5.71***
Input Watts: 134 **BF: .90**

The above energy calculations were conducted using a specific lamp/ballast combination. Actual results may vary depending upon the lamp and ballast used. Lamp and ballast specifications are subject to change without notice.

*Comparative annual lighting energy cost per 1000 lumens based on 3000 hours and $0.08 per KWH.

Fig. 15.14 *A 2-ft (610-mm) square, deep parabolic reflector luminaire designed for three F40, 22.5-in. (572-mm) twin-tube CFL lamps, with a rated output of 3150 lm each. Total power input is 134 W and ballast factor (BF) is 0.9, giving a luminaire efficacy rating (LER) of 42. The typical modified batwing crosswise distribution and circular lengthwise distribution are clearly shown. Photometric data of interest to lighting designers are also shown. (Courtesy of Columbia Lighting.)*

TABLE 15.1 Coefficients of Utilization for Typical Luminaires with Suggested Maximum Spacing Ratios

To obtain a coefficient of utilization (CU):

1. Determine the cavity ratios for the room, ceiling, and floor.
2. Determine the effective ceiling and floor cavity reflectances from Table 15.2. Use initial ceiling, floor, and wall reflectances.
3. Obtain the CU for a 20% effective floor cavity reflectance from the appropriate column below for the luminaire type to be used. Interpolate, when necessary, to obtain the CU for the exact room cavity ratio for the nearest effective ceiling cavity reflectances above and below the reflectance obtained in step 2; interpolate between these CUs to obtain the CU for the step 2 ceiling cavity reflectance.
4. If the effective floor cavity reflectance differs significantly from 20%, obtain multiplier from Table 15.3 and apply this to the CU obtained in step 3.
5. To obtain CU for a ceiling cavity reflectance (ρ_{cc}) of 30 or 10%, multiply the figure for ρ_{cc} = 50% by 0.85 or 0.70, respectively. This is an approximation. For exact figures see the IESNA *Lighting Handbook* (2000).
6. Use the figure in the last column (ρ_{cc} = 0; ρ_w = 0) for outdoor lighting, i.e., there are no walls or ceiling.
7. Legend:

ρ_{cc} = percent effective ceiling cavity reflectance

ρ_w = percent wall reflectance

RCR = room cavity ratio

Maximum S/MH guide = ratio of maximum luminaire spacing to mounting above work plane

Note: In some cases, luminaire data in this table are based on an actual typical luminaire; in other cases, the data represent a composite of generic luminaire types. Therefore, whenever possible, specific luminaire data should be used in preference to this table.

The polar intensity sketch (candlepower distribution curve) and the corresponding spacing-to-mounting height guide are representative of many luminaires of each type shown.

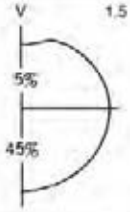
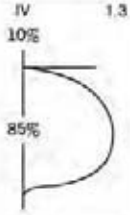
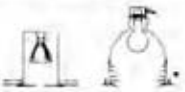
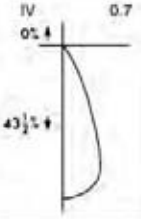
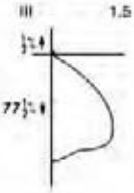
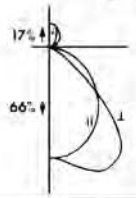
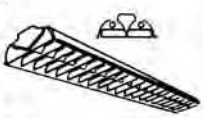
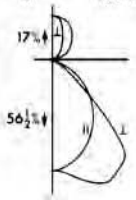
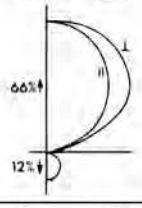
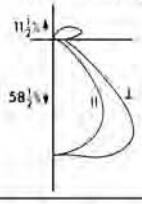
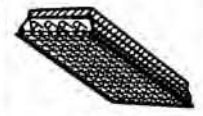
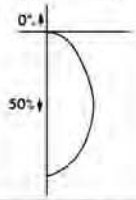
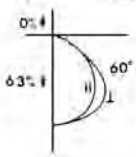
Typical Luminaire	Typical Distribution and Percent Lamp Lumens	Maintenance Category	Maximum S/MH	RCR	ρ_{cc}: 80			70			50			0
					ρ_w: 50	30	10	50	30	10	50	30	10	0
					Coefficients of Utilization for 20% Effective Floor Cavity Reflectance (ρ_{fc} = 20)									
1 Pendant diffusing sphere with incandescent lamp	 	V	1.5	0	.87	.87	.87	.81	.81	.81	.69	.69	.69	.44
				1	.71	.67	.63	.66	.62	.59	.56	.53	.50	.31
				2	.61	.54	.49	.56	.50	.46	.47	.43	.39	.23
				3	.52	.45	.39	.48	.42	.37	.41	.36	.31	.18
				4	.46	.38	.33	.42	.36	.30	.36	.30	.26	.15
				5	.40	.33	.27	.37	.30	.25	.32	.26	.22	.12
				6	.36	.28	.23	.33	.26	.21	.28	.23	.19	.10
				7	.32	.25	.20	.29	.23	.18	.25	.20	.16	.09
				8	.29	.22	.17	.27	.20	.16	.23	.17	.14	.07
				9	.26	.19	.15	.24	.18	.14	.20	.15	.12	.06
3 Porcelain-enameled ventilated standard dome with incandescent lamp	 	IV	1.3	0	.99	.99	.99	.97	.97	.97	.92	.93	.93	.83
				1	.88	.85	.82	.86	.83	.81	.83	.80	.78	.72
				2	.78	.73	.68	.76	.72	.67	.73	.69	.66	.61
				3	.69	.62	.57	.67	.61	.57	.65	.60	.56	.52
				4	.61	.54	.49	.60	.53	.48	.58	.52	.48	.45
				5	.54	.47	.41	.53	.46	.41	.51	.45	.41	.38
				6	.48	.41	.35	.47	.40	.35	.46	.39	.35	.32
				7	.43	.35	.30	.42	.35	.30	.41	.34	.30	.28
				8	.38	.31	.26	.38	.31	.26	.37	.30	.26	.24
				9	.35	.28	.23	.34	.27	.23	.33	.27	.23	.21
7 EAR-38 lamp above 51-mm (2 in.)-diameter aperture (increase efficiency to 54½% for 76-mm (3 in.)-diameter aperture)	 	IV	0.7	0	.52	.52	.52	.51	.51	.51	.48	.48	.48	.44
				1	.49	.48	.48	.48	.48	.47	.47	.46	.46	.42
				2	.47	.46	.45	.46	.45	.44	.45	.44	.43	.41
				3	.45	.44	.43	.45	.43	.42	.44	.42	.42	.40
				4	.43	.42	.41	.43	.41	.40	.42	.41	.40	.38
				5	.42	.40	.39	.41	.40	.38	.41	.39	.38	.37
				6	.40	.39	.37	.40	.38	.37	.39	.38	.37	.36
				7	.39	.37	.36	.39	.37	.36	.38	.37	.35	.35
				8	.37	.36	.34	.37	.35	.34	.37	.35	.34	.33
				9	.36	.34	.33	.36	.34	.33	.35	.34	.33	.32
18 "High-bay" wide distribution ventilated reflector with clear HID lamp	 	III	1.5	0	.93	.93	.93	.91	.91	.91	.87	.87	.87	.78
				1	.85	.82	.80	.83	.81	.79	.79	.78	.76	.70
				2	.77	.73	.70	.76	.72	.69	.73	.70	.67	.63
				3	.70	.65	.61	.68	.64	.60	.66	.62	.59	.56
				4	.63	.58	.53	.62	.57	.53	.60	.56	.52	.49
				5	.57	.51	.47	.56	.51	.47	.55	.50	.46	.44
				6	.51	.45	.41	.51	.45	.41	.49	.44	.40	.38
				7	.46	.40	.35	.45	.39	.35	.44	.39	.35	.33
				8	.41	.35	.31	.41	.35	.31	.40	.34	.31	.29
				9	.37	.31	.27	.37	.31	.27	.36	.30	.27	.25

TABLE 15.1 Coefficients of Utilization for Typical Luminaires with Suggested Maximum Spacing Ratios (*Continued*)

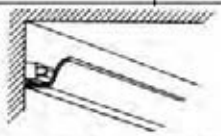
Typical Luminaire	Typical Distribution and Percent Lamp Lumens	Maintenance Category	Maximum S/MH	RCR	ρ_{cc}: → 80			70			50			0
					ρ_w: → 50	30	10	50	30	10	50	30	10	0
					Coefficients of Utilization for 20% Effective Floor Cavity Reflectance (ρ_{fc} = 20)									
26		II	1.5/1.3	0	.95	.95	.95	.91	.91	.91	.83	.83	.83	.66
				1	.85	.82	.80	.82	.79	.77	.75	.73	.72	.59
				2	.76	.72	.68	.74	.70	.66	.68	.65	.62	.52
				3	.69	.63	.59	.66	.61	.57	.62	.58	.54	.46
				4	.62	.56	.51	.60	.54	.50	.56	.51	.47	.41
				5	.55	.49	.44	.53	.48	.43	.50	.45	.41	.36
				6	.50	.43	.39	.48	.42	.38	.45	.40	.36	.31
Diffuse aluminum reflector with 35° crosswise shielding				7	.45	.38	.34	.43	.37	.33	.41	.36	.32	.27
				8	.40	.34	.29	.39	.33	.29	.37	.31	.28	.24
				9	.36	.30	.25	.35	.29	.25	.33	.28	.24	.20
28		II	1.5/1.1	0	.83	.83	.83	.79	.79	.79	.72	.72	.72	.56
				1	.75	.72	.70	.72	.69	.67	.65	.64	.62	.50
				2	.67	.63	.60	.65	.61	.58	.59	.57	.54	.45
				3	.61	.56	.52	.58	.54	.51	.54	.50	.48	.40
				4	.55	.49	.45	.53	.48	.44	.49	.45	.42	.36
				5	.49	.44	.40	.47	.42	.39	.44	.40	.37	.31
				6	.45	.39	.35	.43	.38	.34	.40	.36	.33	.28
Diffuse aluminum reflector with 35° crosswise, 35° lengthwise shielding				7	.40	.35	.31	.39	.34	.30	.36	.32	.29	.25
				8	.36	.31	.27	.35	.30	.26	.33	.28	.25	.21
				9	.33	.27	.23	.32	.26	.23	.29	.25	.22	.19
33		VI	N.A.	0	.77	.77	.77	.68	.68	.68	.50	.50	.50	.12
				1	.67	.64	.62	.59	.57	.54	.44	.42	.41	.10
				2	.59	.54	.50	.52	.48	.45	.38	.36	.34	.09
				3	.51	.46	.42	.45	.41	.37	.34	.31	.28	.07
				4	.45	.40	.35	.40	.35	.31	.30	.27	.24	.06
				5	.40	.34	.30	.35	.30	.27	.26	.23	.20	.05
				6	.36	.30	.26	.32	.27	.23	.24	.20	.18	.05
Luminous bottom-suspended unit with very-high-output lamp				7	.32	.26	.22	.28	.23	.20	.21	.18	.15	.04
				8	.29	.23	.19	.25	.21	.17	.19	.16	.13	.03
				9	.26	.20	.17	.23	.18	.15	.17	.14	.12	.03
35		V	1.5/1.2	0	.81	.81	.81	.78	.78	.78	.72	.72	.72	.59
				1	.71	.69	.66	.69	.66	.64	.64	.62	.60	.50
				2	.64	.59	.56	.61	.58	.54	.57	.54	.51	.44
				3	.57	.52	.48	.55	.50	.47	.51	.48	.45	.38
				4	.51	.46	.41	.49	.44	.41	.46	.42	.39	.34
				5	.46	.40	.36	.44	.39	.35	.41	.37	.34	.29
				6	.41	.35	.31	.40	.35	.31	.38	.33	.30	.26
Two-lamp prismatic wraparound; multiply by 0.95 for four lamps				7	.37	.31	.27	.36	.31	.27	.34	.29	.26	.23
				8	.33	.28	.24	.32	.27	.23	.30	.26	.22	.19
				9	.30	.24	.20	.29	.24	.20	.27	.23	.19	.17
38		IV	1.0	0	.60	.60	.60	.58	.58	.58	.56	.56	.56	.50
				1	.54	.52	.50	.52	.51	.49	.50	.49	.48	.44
				2	.48	.45	.43	.47	.44	.42	.45	.43	.41	.39
				3	.43	.40	.37	.42	.39	.37	.41	.38	.36	.34
				4	.39	.35	.32	.38	.35	.32	.37	.34	.32	.30
				5	.35	.31	.28	.35	.31	.28	.34	.30	.28	.26
				6	.32	.28	.25	.32	.28	.25	.31	.27	.25	.23
Four-lamp, 610-mm (2-ft)-wide troffer with 45° plastic louver				7	.29	.25	.22	.29	.25	.22	.28	.25	.22	.21
				8	.26	.22	.20	.26	.22	.20	.25	.22	.20	.18
				9	.24	.20	.17	.24	.20	.17	.23	.20	.17	.16
42		V	1.4/1.2	0	.75	.75	.75	.73	.73	.73	.70	.70	.70	.63
				1	.67	.65	.63	.66	.64	.62	.63	.62	.60	.55
				2	.60	.57	.54	.59	.56	.53	.57	.54	.52	.49
				3	.54	.50	.47	.53	.49	.46	.52	.48	.45	.43
				4	.49	.44	.40	.48	.44	.40	.47	.43	.40	.37
				5	.44	.39	.35	.43	.38	.35	.42	.38	.34	.33
				6	.40	.34	.31	.39	.34	.31	.38	.34	.30	.29
Fluorescent unit with flat prismatic lens, four-lamp, 610 mm (2 ft) wide				7	.36	.30	.27	.35	.30	.27	.34	.30	.27	.25
				8	.32	.27	.23	.32	.27	.23	.31	.26	.23	.22
				9	.29	.24	.20	.28	.23	.20	.28	.23	.20	.19

(*continued*)

TABLE 15.1 Coefficients of Utilization for Typical Luminaires with Suggested Maximum Spacing Ratios (*Continued*)

Typical Luminaire	Typical Distribution and Percent Lamp Lumens	Maintenance Category	Maximum S/MH	RCR	ρ_{CC} →	80			70			50			0
					ρ_w →	50	30	10	50	30	10	50	30	10	0
					Coefficients of Utilization for 20% Effective Floor Cavity Reflectance (ρ_{FC} = 20)										
44 Radial batwing distribution—louvered fluorescent unit	0 / 60 / 45	IV	N.A.	0	.71	.71	.71	.70	.70	.70	.66	.66	.66	.60
				1	.65	.63	.61	.63	.62	.60	.61	.59	.58	.54
				2	.59	.55	.53	.58	.55	.52	.55	.53	.51	.48
				3	.53	.49	.46	.52	.48	.45	.50	.47	.45	.42
				4	.47	.43	.40	.47	.43	.40	.45	.42	.39	.37
				5	.42	.38	.34	.42	.37	.34	.41	.37	.34	.32
				6	.38	.33	.30	.38	.33	.30	.37	.33	.30	.28
				7	.34	.29	.26	.33	.29	.26	.33	.28	.25	.24
				8	.30	.25	.22	.30	.25	.22	.29	.25	.22	.20
				9	.27	.22	.18	.26	.22	.18	.26	.21	.18	.17
45 Radial batwing distribution—four-lamp, 610-mm (2 ft)-wide fluorescent unit with flat prismatic lens and overlay	0 / 48 / 45	V	N.A.	0	.57	.57	.57	.56	.56	.56	.53	.53	.53	.48
				1	.50	.48	.47	.49	.47	.46	.47	.46	.44	.41
				2	.44	.41	.38	.43	.40	.38	.41	.39	.37	.34
				3	.39	.35	.32	.38	.34	.31	.37	.33	.31	.29
				4	.34	.30	.27	.33	.29	.26	.32	.29	.26	.24
				5	.30	.25	.22	.29	.25	.22	.28	.24	.22	.20
				6	.26	.22	.19	.26	.22	.18	.25	.21	.18	.17
				7	.23	.19	.16	.23	.19	.16	.22	.18	.16	.14
				8	.21	.16	.13	.20	.16	.13	.19	.16	.13	.12
				9	.18	.14	.11	.18	.14	.11	.17	.14	.11	.10
46 Bilateral batwing distribution—one lamp, surface-mounted fluorescent with prismatic wraparound lens	12 / 63½ / 45	V	N.A.	0	.87	.87	.87	.84	.84	.84	.77	.77	.77	.64
				1	.76	.73	.70	.73	.70	.67	.67	.65	.63	.53
				2	.66	.61	.57	.64	.59	.56	.59	.56	.52	.44
				3	.59	.53	.48	.56	.51	.47	.53	.48	.44	.38
				4	.52	.45	.40	.50	.44	.40	.47	.42	.38	.32
				5	.46	.39	.34	.44	.38	.33	.41	.36	.32	.27
				6	.41	.34	.29	.39	.33	.29	.37	.31	.27	.23
				7	.36	.30	.25	.35	.29	.24	.33	.27	.23	.20
				8	.32	.26	.21	.31	.25	.21	.29	.24	.20	.17
				9	.29	.22	.18	.28	.22	.18	.26	.21	.17	.14
47 Radial batwing distribution—four-lamp, 610-mm (2-ft)-wide fluorescent unit with flat prismatic lens—see note 2	0 / 59½	V	1.7	0	.71	.71	.71	.69	.69	.69	.66	.66	.66	.60
				1	.62	.60	.58	.61	.59	.57	.59	.57	.55	.51
				2	.55	.51	.47	.53	.50	.47	.51	.48	.46	.42
				3	.48	.43	.39	.47	.43	.39	.45	.41	.38	.36
				4	.42	.37	.33	.41	.37	.33	.40	.36	.32	.30
				5	.37	.32	.27	.36	.31	.27	.35	.30	.27	.25
				6	.33	.27	.23	.32	.27	.23	.31	.26	.23	.21
				7	.29	.24	.20	.29	.24	.20	.28	.23	.20	.18
				8	.26	.21	.17	.25	.20	.17	.25	.20	.17	.15
				9	.23	.18	.14	.23	.18	.14	.22	.17	.14	.13
48 Two-lamp fluorescent strip unit	20 / 68	I	1.6/1.2	0	1.01	1.01	1.01	.96	.96	.96	.87	.87	.87	.68
				1	.85	.81	.77	.81	.77	.73	.73	.70	.67	.53
				2	.73	.66	.61	.69	.63	.58	.63	.58	.54	.42
				3	.63	.56	.50	.60	.53	.48	.55	.49	.44	.35
				4	.56	.47	.41	.53	.46	.40	.48	.42	.37	.29
				5	.49	.40	.34	.46	.39	.33	.42	.36	.31	.24
				6	.43	.35	.29	.41	.34	.28	.38	.31	.26	.20
				7	.39	.31	.25	.37	.29	.24	.34	.27	.23	.17
				8	.34	.27	.21	.33	.26	.21	.30	.24	.19	.15
				9	.31	.23	.18	.30	.23	.18	.27	.21	.17	.12
49 Two-lamp fluorescent strip unit with 235° reflector fluorescent lamps	12 / 85	I	1.4/1.2	0	1.13	1.13	1.13	1.09	1.09	1.09	1.01	1.01	1.01	.85
				1	.96	.92	.88	.93	.89	.85	.87	.83	.80	.68
				2	.83	.76	.70	.80	.74	.68	.75	.69	.65	.55
				3	.73	.65	.58	.70	.63	.57	.68	.59	.54	.48
				4	.64	.55	.49	.62	.54	.48	.58	.51	.46	.39
				5	.56	.47	.41	.55	.46	.40	.51	.44	.38	.33
				6	.50	.41	.35	.49	.40	.34	.46	.38	.33	.28
				7	.45	.36	.30	.44	.35	.30	.41	.34	.28	.24
				8	.40	.32	.26	.39	.31	.25	.37	.30	.25	.21
				9	.36	.28	.22	.35	.27	.22	.33	.26	.21	.18

TABLE 15.1 Coefficients of Utilization for Typical Luminaires with Suggested Maximum Spacing Ratios (*Continued*)

Typical Luminaire	Typical Distribution and Percent Lamp Lumens	Maintenance Category	Maximum S/MH	RCR	ρ_{cc} →	80			70			50			0	
					ρ_w →	50	30	10	50	30	10	50	30	10	0	
					Coefficients of Utilization for 20% Effective Floor Cavity Reflectance (ρ_{fc} = 20)											
50  Single-row fluorescent lamp cove without reflector (multiply by 0.93 for two rows and by 0.85 for three rows)				1	.42	.40	.39	.36	.35	.33	.25	.24	.23	Coves are not recommended for lighting areas having low reflectances	
				2	.37	.34	.32	.32	.29	.27	.22	.20	.19		
				3	.32	.29	.26	.28	.25	.23	.19	.17	.16		
				4	.29	.25	.22	.25	.22	.19	.17	.15	.13		
				5	.25	.21	.18	.22	.19	.16	.15	.13	.11		
				6	.23	.19	.16	.20	.16	.14	.14	.12	.10		
				7	.20	.17	.14	.17	.14	.12	.12	.10	.09		
				8	.18	.15	.12	.16	.13	.10	.11	.09	.08		
				9	.17	.13	.10	.15	.11	.09	.10	.08	.07		
														ρ_{cc} = 10%	
														ρ_w = 50	30 10
53 ρ_{cc} from below ~45%  Louvered ceiling. Ceiling efficiency ~50; 45° shielding opaque louvers of 80% reflectance. Cavity with minimum obstructions and painted with 80% reflectance paint—use ρ_{cc} = 50.				1							.51	.49	.48	.47	.46 .45
				2							.46	.44	.42	.43	.42 .40
				3							.42	.39	.37	.39	.38 .36
				4							.38	.35	.33	.36	.34 .32
				5							.35	.32	.29	.33	.31 .29
				6							.32	.29	.26	.30	.28 .26
				7							.29	.26	.23	.28	.25 .23
				8							.27	.23	.21	.26	.23 .21
				9							.24	.21	.19	.24	.21 .19
				10							.22	.19	.17	.22	.19 .17

Source: Data extracted from *IES Lighting Handbook Reference Volume*, (1981); with permission.

Notes:
1. Refer to the manufacturer's catalog data for more precise values when a specific luminaire type is proposed for use.
2. Multiply coefficients by 1.05 for three lamps and by 1.1 for two lamps.

yields the same illuminance on the working plane midway between them as directly under each one. This ignores (deliberately) any contributions from other fixtures in a multifixture installation and from interreflections, accounting only for the direct component of illuminance from the two test fixtures. Therefore, in an actual installation with several rows of fixtures, the illuminance at point P_1 in Fig. 15.16 is *higher* than the average by 20% to 30% because of the other fixtures and interreflections, and the illuminance at point P_2 is approximately equal to the room average. The illuminance levels along the walls, assuming a distance between the last row and the wall equal to one-half of the side-to-side spacing, range from 60% of average at point P_3 down to 50% at point P_4, assuming light-colored walls.

When walls are dark due to paint or aging, bookshelves, dark wood paneling, and the like, the illuminance levels drop to less than 50% of average, which is obviously insufficient as task lighting. To counteract this effect, particularly when placement of furniture is such that visual tasks *will* occur near walls, the designer has three choices:

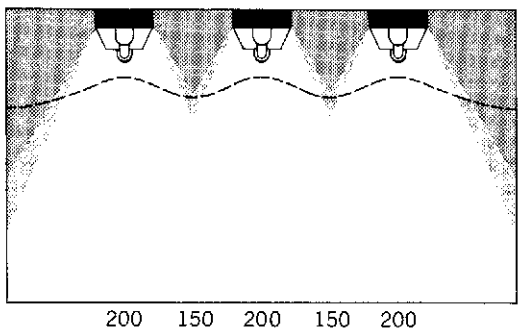


Fig. 15.15 *The ratio of maximum to minimum illuminance should not exceed 1:1.3 in areas requiring uniform illumination.*

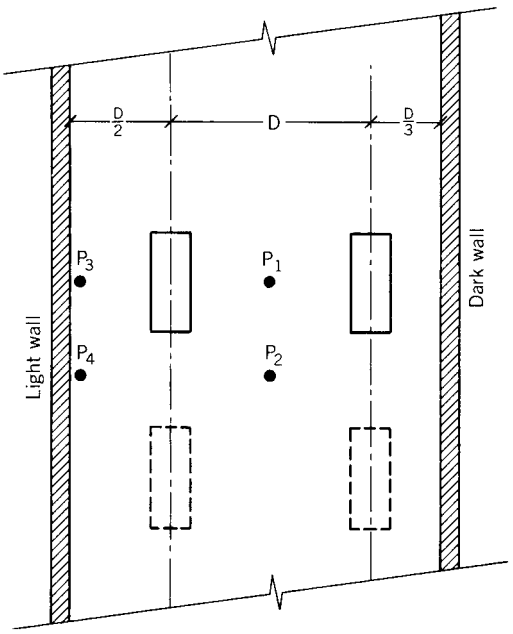


Fig. 15.16 *The diagram shows lighting fixtures installed according to the manufacturer's recommended spacing criteria (spacing to mounting height above the work plane ratio), with a row-to-row spacing, D, and a row-to-wall spacing, D/2, as shown at the left wall. Assuming a high-reflectance finish on the wall (light color), illuminances P_3 and P_4 are at least one-half of the illuminance directly below a fixture. At a dark wall, as on the right, illuminance would fall below this value. As a consequence, the designer would move the right row of luminaires closer to the wall, as shown.*

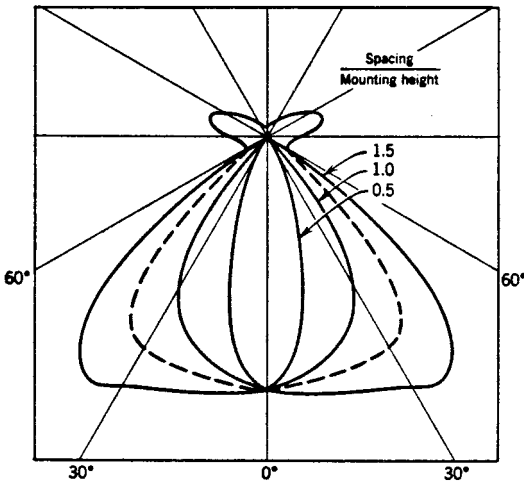


Fig. 15.17 *Typical distribution curves for approximating the ratio of fixture spacing to mounting height (S/MH) above the working plane for direct distribution luminaires. Although these curves were developed for point sources such as incandescent (and HID), they can also be used with asymmetric distribution luminaires such as for fluorescent lamps. The permissible S/MH is somewhat higher than the curves indicate because this is a semi-direct distribution and the ceiling light component permits wider spacing between units. (After Odle and Smith, from* IESNA Journal, *January 1963.)*

1. Reduce the distance between the last row of fixtures and the wall to a third or less of the row-to-row spacing. This also provides required wall lighting.
2. Provide some type of continuous perimeter lighting or wallwash units, both of which increase illuminance levels at the walls.
3. A combination of choices 1 and 2.

Because endwise illumination from linear fluorescent fixtures is considerably lower than crosswise illumination, end walls have lower illuminance than side walls and greater illuminance variation. It is, therefore, particularly important to provide some additional illumination, as discussed previously, and terminate fixture rows no more than 1 ft from an end wall. This is all the more important where visual tasks without supplementary task lighting occur at these walls.

We mentioned previously that the fixture in Fig. 15.1*a* had a high S/MH because of its flat-bottomed curve. This ratio, when not given by the manufacturer, may be approximated from Fig. 15.17. An accurate method of calculating maximum to minimum illumination ratios is available (see the *IESNA Lighting Handbook*, 1993).

The foregoing discussion of illumination uniformity was concerned with uniformity on a horizontal work plane. Occasionally, it is necessary to know the degree of uniformity vertically—that is, on horizontal planes at different elevations *directly below the fixtures*. Four different lighting situations are normally encountered. They are point sources, such as point source downlights; line sources, such as continuous-row fluorescent fixtures; infinite sources, such as luminous ceilings—whether transilluminated or indirect; and parabolic reflector beams, such as from parabolic aluminized reflector (PAR) lamps. The vertical uniformity of each type is shown graphically in Fig. 15.18.

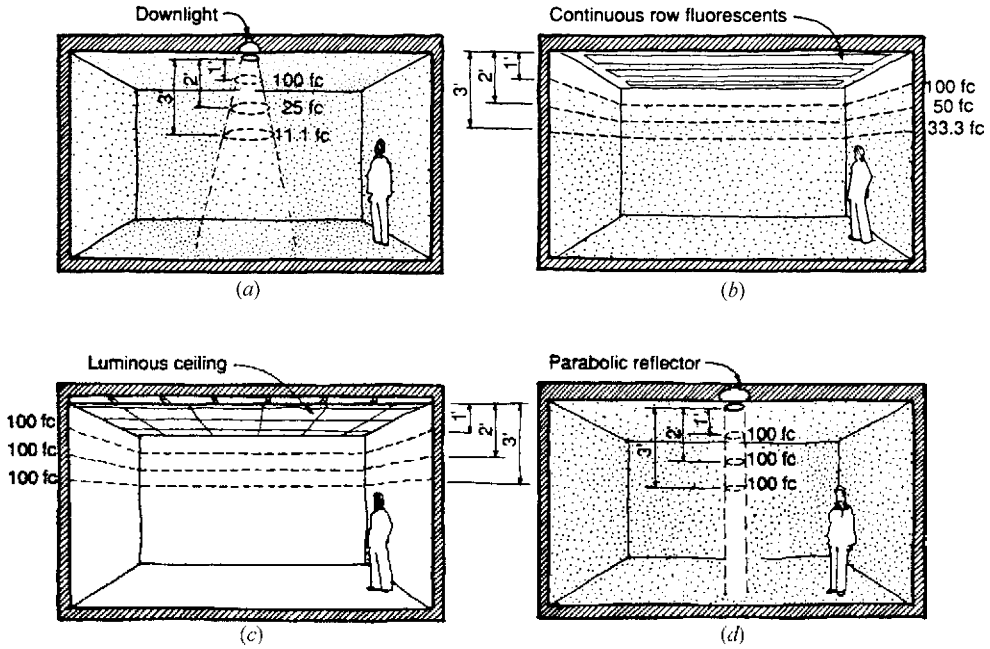


Fig. 15.18 *Variation of illuminance vertically, directly below the fixtures, for different source types. (a, b) Illuminance directly below the fixture varies inversely with the square of the distance for a point source and inversely with the distance for a line source. (c, d) Illuminance remains constant at all distances from either an infinite (or nearly) source or a parabolic reflector.*

15.6 LUMINAIRE MOUNTING HEIGHT

The mounting height of luminaires is normally established before their spacing. In arriving at a mounting height for fixtures with an upward component, a balance must be struck between low mounting, which controls ceiling brightness and gives good utilization of light, and a reluctance to dominate an area, particularly a large room, by using such a low mounting height that the apparent ceiling height is affected (Fig. 15.19). General rules for mounting height are:

1. Indirect and semi-indirect luminaires should normally be suspended no less than 18 in. (460 mm) from the ceiling and preferably 24 to 36 in. (610 to 915 mm). Single-lamp luminaires with a very wide distribution (inverted batwing) may be suspended as little as 12 in. (305 mm) from the ceiling. Manufacturers' recommendations should be sought on this point.
2. Direct-indirect and semi-direct fluorescent fixtures should be suspended not less than 12 in. (305 mm) for two-lamp units and 18 in. (460 mm) for three- and four-lamp units.

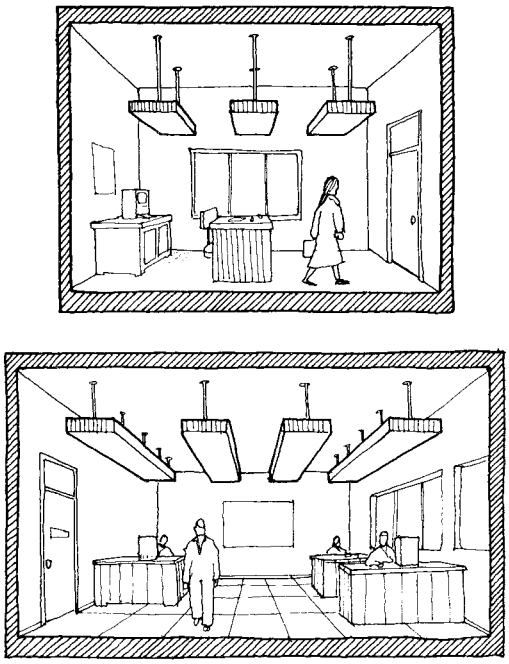


Fig. 15.19 *Mounting height of fixtures may be lower in a small room than in a large room because of the illusion of lowness created in a large room.*

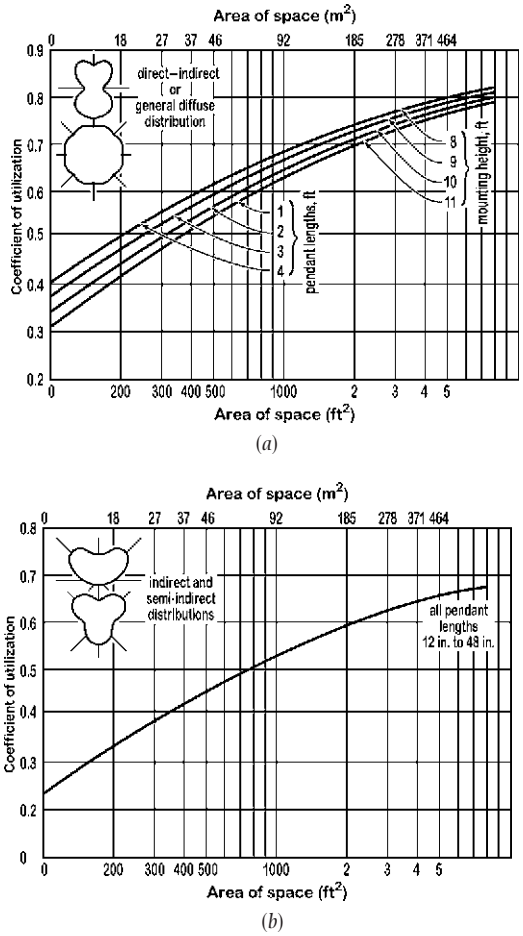


Fig. 15.20 *Coefficient of utilization (CU; lighting system efficiency) as a function of pendant length for various distributions. With a substantial downward component, as in direct-indirect or general diffuse lighting (a), system efficiency rises slowly as the fixture descends (pendant length increases). Maximum differentials occur in small rooms and can reach 20%. Where the ceiling is the light source, as in indirect and semi-indirect systems (b), the pendant length does not change the room illumination. This curve can be used to estimate CU for indirect and semi-indirect luminaries in the absence of manufacturer's data. (Redrawn with SI units by Lisa Leal.)*

The effect of pendant length on the coefficient of utilization (efficiency; see Section 15.11) is given in Fig. 15.20.

15.7 LIGHTING FIXTURES

Before proceeding further with design, we will discuss the principal item of lighting hardware: the luminaire itself. This section and the sections that follow cover luminaire construction, installation, and appraisal. The architect should consider that electric lighting fixtures constitute 25% to 30% of the electrical budget or 4% to 5% of the overall building budget. Because the difference between a quality unit and an inferior one is often not readily visible to the casual observer, particular care must be taken in the specification of lighting fixtures and in the examination of shop drawings and *samples*. All fixtures, if applied properly, give a sufficient quantity of light, but only a good unit combines quantity with good quality, ease of installation, ease of maintenance, and indefinite life. In addition, installation must be proper to ensure mechanical rigidity and safety, electrical safety, freedom from excessive temperatures, and requisite accessibility of component parts and of the fixture outlet box. The following material is a combination of *National Electrical Code* (*NEC*) minimum requirements and factors beyond these minima that the authors have found important.

15.8 LIGHTING FIXTURE CONSTRUCTION

1. All fixtures should be wired and constructed to comply with local codes, *NEC* (Article 410), and the Underwriters Laboratories (UL) Standard for Luminaires, and should bear the UL label where label service is available. Reflector Luminaire Manufacturers (RLM) standards should be adhered to for all porcelain-enameled fixtures.
2. Fixtures should generally be constructed of 20-gauge (0.0359-in. [0.9 mm])-thick steel minimum. Cast portions of fixtures should be no less than $\frac{1}{16}$ in. thick.
3. All metals should be coated. The final coat should be a baked-enamel white paint of at least 85% reflectance, except for anodized, aluminum, or silvered surfaces.
4. No point on the outside surface of any fixture should exceed 90°C after installation and on continuous operation. For an exception, see *NEC* Article 410 M.
5. Each fixture should be identified by a label carrying the manufacturer's name and address and the fixture catalog number.
6. Glass diffuser panels in fluorescent fixtures should be mounted in a metal frame. Plastic

diffusers should be suitably hinged. "Lay-in" plastic diffusers should not be used.

7. Plastic diffusers should be of the slow-burning or self-extinguishing type with a low smoke-density rating and low heat-distortion temperatures. The latter should be low enough so that the plastic diffuser distorts sufficiently to drop out of the fixture before reaching ignition temperature.
8. It is *imperative* that plastics used in air-handling fixtures be of the noncombustible, low-smoke-density type. These requirements also apply to other nonmetallic components of such fixtures.
9. All plastic diffusers should be clearly marked with their composition material, trade name, and manufacturer's name and identification number. Results of ASTM combustion tests should be submitted with fixture shop drawings. The characteristics of many plastic diffusers change radically with age and exposure to UV radiation.

   A brief survey of the most common standard transparent and translucent lighting fixture diffusers follows.

   Glass. Transparent to translucent, scratch resistant, easily cleaned, nonflammable, available in all grades of impact resistance, nonyellowing, usable with all sources, unaffected by and effective in blocking UV, readily formed into desired patterns. Heavy and expensive.

   Acrylic (Plexiglas). Clear to translucent, easily scratched, slow burning, low impact resistance, resistant to yellowing, and available in a special low-yellowing composition (UV grade). Usable indoors and outdoors. Not usable at the elevated temperatures (>90°C [194°F]) found in some HID applications. Does not readily embrittle, warp, or craze. Molds well.

   Polycarbonate. Initially very clear and highly impact resistant, but with a tendency to opacity and strength loss with age. Good scratch resistance and excellent thermal resistance. Usable indoors and outdoors with all sources. Readily molded to prismatic forms. Self-extinguishing (burning rate). Expensive.

   Polystyrene. Usable only indoors because of rapid yellowing when exposed to exterior UV radiation. Slow burning, but smoke generation properties problematic with some fire codes. Not usable in the long term because of discoloration, particularly with UV-producing sources. Good thermal resistance. Readily molded. Cheap. Not scratch resistant.

As can readily be seen, no ideal diffuser material exists. A designer must select the material that best suits the use and budget, considering both initial and replacement costs as well as long-term optical properties.

10. Ballasts should be mounted in fixtures with captive screws on the fixture body to allow ballast replacement without fixture removal.
11. All fixtures mounted outdoors, whether under canopies or directly exposed to the weather, should be constructed of appropriate weather-resistant materials and finishes, including gasketing to prevent entrance of water into wiring, and should be marked by the manufacturer "Suitable for Outdoor Use."

15.9 LIGHTING FIXTURE STRUCTURAL SUPPORT

Although some codes allow fluorescent fixtures weighing less than 40 lb (18 kg) to be mounted directly on the horizontal metal members of hung-ceiling systems, experience has shown that vibration, member deflection, routine maintenance operation on equipment in hung ceilings, and poor workmanship can cause such fixtures to fall, endangering life. It is therefore strongly recommended that all fixtures—surface, pendant, or recessed—whether mounted individually or in rows, be supported from the ceiling system support (purlins) or directly from the building structure, but in no case by the ceiling system itself. This is particularly important in the case of an exposed "Z" spline ceiling system.

15.10 LIGHTING FIXTURE APPRAISAL

The intense competition in the lighting products field necessitates close scrutiny of the characteristics of luminaires and all accessories. To compare

the relative merits of similar lighting fixtures manufactured by different companies, complete test data plus a sample in a regular shipping carton from a normal manufacturing run are needed.

The following list should be used as a basic guide, with additional items added according to job requirements:

1. *Photometric and design data.* Manufacturers should furnish complete test data, including candlepower distribution curve(s), coefficients of utilization, wall and ceiling luminance coefficients, luminance data from 45° to 85°, a table of VCP, energy data including LER (see Section 15.12), and recommended S/MH (SC). These data should come from a reliable independent testing laboratory, not from the manufacturer's test facilities. In addition, many manufacturers either regularly publish or make available on request various design aids such as isolux (isocandle) curves and point-by-point computer printouts for different layouts.
2. *Construction and installation.* The designer should check the sample for workmanship; rigidity; quality of materials and finish; and ease of installation, wiring, and leveling. Installation instruction sheets should be sufficiently detailed. Results of actual operating temperature tests in various installation modes should be included. Air-handling fixtures should be furnished with heat-removal data, pressure-drop curves, air-diffusion data, and noise criteria (NC) data for different airflow rates.
3. *Maintenance.* Luminaires should be simply and quickly relampable, resistant to dirt collection, and simple to clean. Replacement parts must be readily available.

15.11 LUMINAIRE–ROOM SYSTEM EFFICIENCY: COEFFICIENT OF UTILIZATION

Because of internal reflections inside a luminaire, some of the generated lumen output of the lamp is lost. The ratio of output lumens to lamp (input) lumens, expressed as a percentage, represents the luminous efficiency of the fixture. This characteristic has little meaning by itself, however, as the efficiency of a luminaire in doing a particular lighting job depends on the space in which it is used.

To illustrate, let us consider the case of a large room with a high, dark ceiling. If we were to use a high-efficiency (say, 80%) indirect lighting unit in such a room, most of the light directed upward would be lost (absorbed), and the actual illuminance on the working plane would be very low. If, however, the same room were illuminated with 50% efficiency direct lighting units utilizing the same wattage, the illuminance on the working plane would be considerably higher than in the first case.

Similarly, if we consider a small room with dark walls and ceiling, lighted alternatively by diffuse lighting and direct lighting units of the same wattage and unit efficiency, the horizontal-plane illumination is higher for the direct units because of the large loss of the horizontal and upward components of the diffuse lighting on the walls and ceiling. Fixture efficiency *alone* is not sufficient; *the overall luminous efficiency of a particular unit in a particular space* is the required figure of merit. This number, inasmuch as it describes the utilization of the fixture output in a specific space, is known as the *coefficient of utilization* (CU). It is defined as the ratio between the lumens reaching the horizontal work plane and the generated lumens. As each luminaire has a different coefficient for every different space in which it is used, a system of standardization has evolved utilizing room cavities (explained later) of certain proportions and various surface reflectances. The fixture coefficients are then computed and tabulated as shown in Table 15.1. It should be emphasized that the figures given in this table are for generic fixture types only; in an actual job, luminaire data as found in manufacturers' catalogs should be used. To summarize, CU is a factor that combines fixture efficiency and distribution with room proportions, mounting height, and surface reflectances.

15.12 LUMINAIRE EFFICACY RATING

As a result of a U.S. Energy Policy Act (EPACT) mandate calling for an industry-wide testing and information program designed to improve lighting fixture energy efficiency, a collaborative effort produced NEMA Standard LE5, *Procedure for Determining Efficacy of Luminaires*. Unlike the CU discussed in the

previous section, which defines the illumination efficiency of a particular luminaire in a particular space, Standard LE5 determines the energy efficiency of the luminaire *alone*. Because this efficiency is expressed in lumens per watt (lumens output per watt input), it uses the same descriptive term used for light sources (i.e., *efficacy*). This metric takes into account all power used by a luminaire, including ballast, and includes the ballast factor, which is itself a ballast energy efficiency metric. The expression used to calculate the luminaire efficacy rating (LER) is

$$\text{LER} = \frac{\text{photometric efficiency} \times \text{ballast factor}}{\text{luminaire input watts}}$$

An LER metric applies to a specific type of fluorescent luminaire and is identified by an abbreviation as

FL = fluorescent lensed
FP = fluorescent parabolic
FW = fluorescent wraparound
FI = fluorescent industrial
FS = fluorescent strip light

Thus, the energy figures shown in Fig. 15.14 are specifically labeled "FP" to denote a fluorescent parabolic luminaire. This enables a designer to compare LER figures for different fixtures on a common basis. This commonality also extends to ballast type (i.e., magnetic or electronic). In addition, Standard LE5 lists benchmark LER figures that are considered to represent an acceptable luminaire. An additional item of data useful in economic comparisons that is included in the NEMA standard is the yearly cost per 1000/lm, based on 3000 burning hours and $0.08 per kilowatt-hour (see Fig. 15.14). The actual cost is easily calculated from this figure.

The LER approach has been expanded beyond fluorescent fixtures to include "Commercial, Nonresidential Downlight Luminaires" (NEMA LE5A) and "High-Intensity Discharge Industrial Luminaires" (NEMA LE5B).

LIGHTING CONTROL

15.13 REQUIREMENT FOR LIGHTING CONTROL

The term *lighting control* means all the techniques by which a lighting system can be operated, and covers both manual and automatic controls. The control strategy must be decided on simultaneously with the lighting design because the control scheme must be appropriate to the light source. In turn, the system's accessories and arrangement depend on the control scheme. For instance, if dimming is decided on, using a fluorescent light source, then the range of dimming determines the type of ballast, the ballast switching points, and the degree of dimming flexibility.

The primary purposes of lighting control are flexibility and economy: flexibility to provide the modifications of luminances and patterns desired by the designer, and economy of both energy resources and monetary resources (see Appendix I for treatment of economic analyses). A properly designed lighting control system can reduce energy usage up to 60% over a simple on-off system installation. In addition, financial operating economies result from

- Reduced energy use
- Reduced air-conditioning costs as a result of lower lighting waste heat
- Longer lamp and ballast life due to lower operating temperatures and lower output
- Lower labor costs due to control automation

As noted previously (Chapter 13), lighting in most new nonresidential construction is designed within the energy constraints of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1. This standard has a system of lighting power credits for lighting control systems designed with automatic energy-conserving controls. These credits permit the effective connected load to be reduced by factors that increase with energy conservation effectiveness. Thus, for example, circuits with a simple on-off mode initiated by a daylight sensor have a smaller power credit than daylight sensing with continuous dimming, because the latter is more energy economical (but much more expensive initially). To avoid confusion, particularly in view of overlapping and sometimes inaccurate terminology, it is necessary to differentiate between control functions, control devices, and control systems.

For lighting, the only control *functions* are switching and dimming. The control *devices* are the means by which the switching and dimming functions are accomplished. They are numerous, ranging from a simple wall switch to time switches and dimmers of all sorts. Generally also included

in this category are control *initiation* devices, such as occupancy sensors and photocells. The control *system* is the entire assembly of control and signal-initiating equipment together with their interconnections. Included here also are microprocessors and programmable controllers. The system can be a stand-alone arrangement or, alternatively, as is the case in large facilities, it can be part of an energy management system (EMS), a building automation system (BAS), or both. The difference in operation in these instances lies in the control algorithm, which is primarily energy-oriented for an EMS, and overall building function-oriented for a BAS. In the discussion that follows, the control criteria are energy conservation, cost reduction, and operating flexibility.

15.14 LIGHTING CONTROL: SWITCHING

There are two basic control functions—switching and dimming. Switching is an on-off function. By selecting the number of lighting elements to be switched in each switching action, the designer can establish the number of control levels. The more levels, the finer the control. Thus, in a space requiring several levels of uniform illumination for different functions, the designer has many control alternatives. He or she can switch entire fixtures, but this adversely affects uniformity. Taking three-lamp fluorescent fixtures as an example, the designer can obtain better uniformity and four levels of illumination by switching the ballasts (assuming one two-lamp and half of a two-lamp ballast per fixture):

All ballasts on	100% illumination
Two-lamp ballast on	66% illumination
Half of two-lamp ballast on	33% illumination
All ballasts off	0% illumination

(Magnetic ballasts have been preferred in this arrangement because a single electronic ballast is often used for up to four lamps as one means of obtaining its benefits while reducing its cost per lamp.)

This type of switching has the advantage of light reduction in relatively small steps at low cost. A typical arrangement is shown in Fig. 15.21. Use of split-wired two-lamp units is advantageous from the cost and energy viewpoints. Even more uniform light reduction and finer control are possible with two-level ballasts (at increased cost). There, each lamp remains lighted but at either full or half output. Thus, the designer could have 0%, 50%, and 100% levels or, by combining alternate ballast switching, with two-level ballasts could have 0%, 17%, 33%, 50%, 67%, 83%, and 100% levels. However, if that degree of control is desirable, dimming is probably preferable. The choice depends on the type of space and on the situation economics, as discussed later. An alternative method of achieving lower lighting levels in discrete steps, by switching, is to introduce impedance into the lighting circuit.

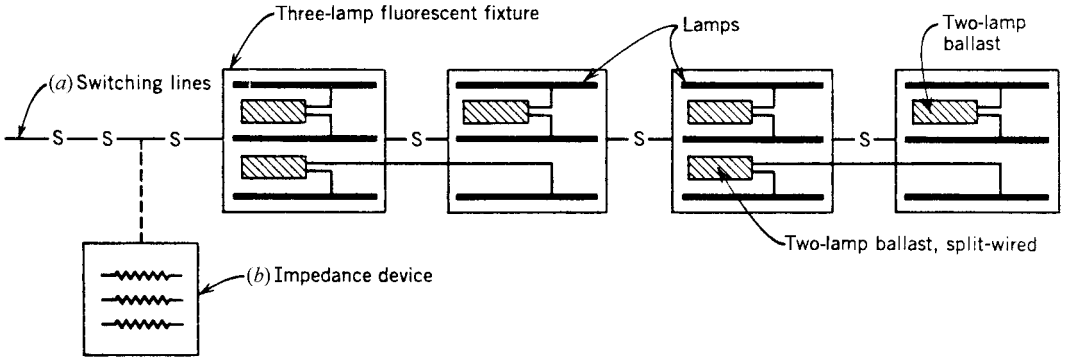


Fig. 15.21 *Schematic diagram of switching arrangements to achieve multiple discreet lighting levels with three-lamp fluorescent lighting fixtures. Two-lamp ballasts are used in the interest of energy conservation and financial economy. In scheme (a) ballasts are switched, thus removing either one or two lamps from service. Finer control is achieved by using two-level ballasts or by introducing impedance (b) into the circuit, either in a block for an entire circuit or distributed in each fixture.*

This acts to reduce circuit current and light output. Such devices are readily available for control of fluorescent lamps (see Fig. 15.26).

Recognition of the fact that an increased number of control (switch) points makes possible finer control, and therefore energy conservation, led to requirements in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 relating to the number of control points in a space and their types. Many field studies have demonstrated conclusively that reliance on manual switching is not an effective long-term energy conservation strategy, regardless of the good intentions of the space occupants. Indeed, studies have shown that space "ownership" affects even the low level of conservation possible with manual switching (i.e., lighting in private offices, conference rooms, and small storage spaces may be switched off, whereas lighting in multioccupancy and common-use spaces such as libraries, large office spaces, break areas, and the like, may not). As a result, Standard 90.1 first specifies the minimum number of control points required in a space and then awards automatic switching or dimming a higher number of equivalent control points.

The basic requirement is for one control point for every 450 ft^2 (42 m^2) or fraction thereof of enclosed lighted space plus one control point for each task (or group of tasks) located in the space. Thus, the classroom in Example 15.1 would require two control points for its 517 ft^2 (48 m^2) of area plus one control point for all similar tasks grouped in the room, for a total of three control points. This requirement could be met with three wall switches, or one wall switch and an occupancy sensor, or an automatic dimming system probably initiated by daylight sensors. The point is, of course, to encourage use of automatic controls, which, as has been pointed out repeatedly, is the only proven method of attaining significant energy conservation.

15.15 LIGHTING CONTROL: DIMMING

The techniques and equipment required for dimming each of the different light sources, as well as the effect on the color of the light produced and on the lamp, are discussed in Chapter 12. Figure 15.22 shows typical lumen output versus power input curves for common light sources. Note that for fluorescent lamps, *even with conventional magnetic ballasts*, dimming down to approximately 40% of output is possible without reducing efficacy. This desirable characteristic can be exploited in control schemes where it is desired to change light output gradually without sacrificing efficiency. Due to efficacy reduction below 40% output, an economical and efficient control scheme combines dimming and switching of multilamp fluorescent fixtures to yield an almost stepless output range of 13% to 100% output. Continuous dimming over a 10% to 100% range is practical with special individual magnetic dimming ballasts or with electronic ballasts. As discussed in Chapter 12, electronic ballasts are much more energy-efficient than conventional ones and must be considered for all *new* installations, dimmed or not. For retrofit work, silicon-controlled rectifier (SCR) or triac dimmers give excellent results with existing conventional core-and-coil ballasts down to 40% output.

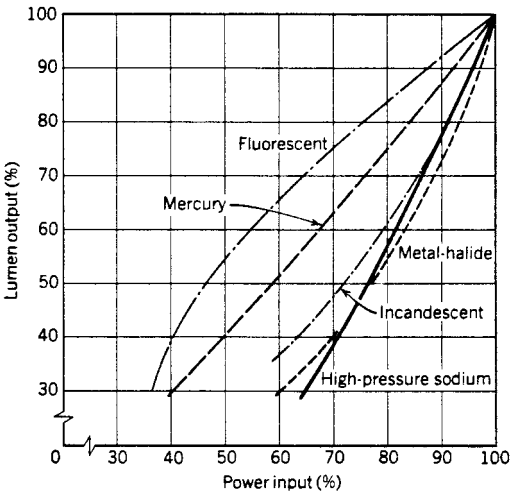


Fig. 15.22 *Typical dimming curves for generic light source types. Note that fluorescent lighting is efficient and approximately linear down to 40% output. All other sources have reduced efficacy when dimmed.*

15.16 LIGHTING CONTROL: CONTROL INITIATION

Control initiation is either manual, automatic, or a combined manual-automatic function. The last is usually in the form of an override function: manual override of an automated procedure to ensure

adequate control for special or unusual situations and automatic reset of the manual function to reestablish normal or steady-state operation.

(a) Manual Control Initiation

Numerous studies dating back at least 50 years have indicated increased employee satisfaction when at least a degree of control of the working environment is in his or her hands. This satisfaction is frequently accompanied by increased work output, at least in the short term. Unfortunately, manual control of lighting levels has been demonstrated to be wasteful of energy due to the tendency to leave lights on at maximum level even when daylight is supplying more than enough light or when leaving a room for an extended period. A modicum of energy conservation in the latter instance is possible with the installation of *time-out* switches in spaces normally used for short periods, such as supply closets (see Fig. 26.48). However, for normal working spaces, even installation of manual dimmers in private offices is not effective because of the need to go to the dimmer control location on the wall to readjust. Manual dimming in multiple-occupancy spaces is effective only in creating personnel dissatisfaction and friction.

Modern electronics has made practical a remote-control dimming system that can control single or multiple luminaires, making it applicable to all occupancies. Figure 15.23 illustrates the use of the system in an open multiple-occupancy space. This enables individual workers to adjust the output of luminaire(s) closest to their workstation without disturbing other employees. This adjustment, which is simply accomplished (see Fig. 15.23*a*) by remote control, can alleviate direct and/or reflected glare or can be a temporary expedient suitable to the task at hand, as, for instance, work with a VDT. Figure 15.23*b–d* shows the system components. Wiring of the system can be arranged so that a single receiver-dimmer can control up to 20 ballasts or, conversely, multiple dimmers are connected on a single circuit. The latter arrangement would be used in wiring a group of small single- or double-occupancy rooms. Such rooms are frequently wired with a wall-mounted dimmer, which can then be activated by the remote control, as shown in Fig. 15.24.

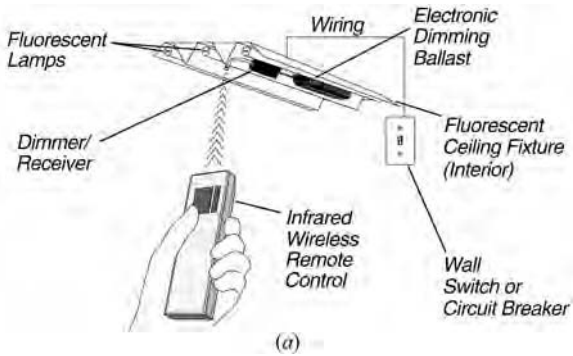
(b) Automatic Control Initiation

Automatic controls are of two types: an open-circuit type and a closed-loop feedback type, also known as *static* and *dynamic control*, respectively. The former initiates a control function that is independent of the actual lighting situation, whereas the latter reacts to the condition of the lighting situation it controls via a feedback loop.

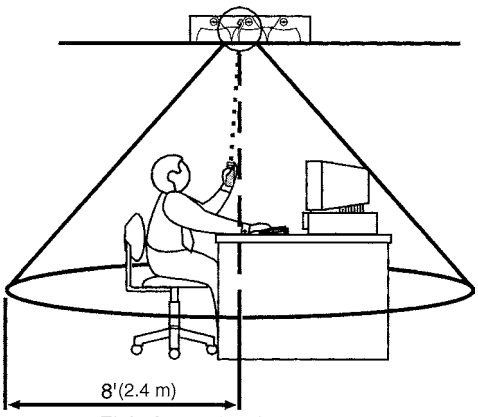
1. *Static control.* The most common type of open-circuit lighting control is the programmable time-base controller. These vary from small, relatively simple units that replace wall switches and fit into a common device box to the more sophisticated units shown in Figs. 26.13 through 26.15. These devices are available in myriad designs and capacities, but all perform the same basic function—(remote) control of loads and circuits on a preprogrammed time basis. The programming, in turn, is determined after analysis of operating schedules, task requirements, and field conditions. With "tight" programming, energy savings of up to 50% over an uncontrolled installation are possible.

Because these devices act only on a time base and are insensitive to actual field conditions, an override feature must be incorporated to permit accommodation of special conditions. Thus, if a timer is set to shut off a row of fixtures adjacent to windows between 10:00 A.M. and 3:00 P.M., local override must be provided to accommodate dark rainy days and the like. Similarly, if lighting is shut off during nonworking hours, provision must be made for persons working overtime. The override arrangement can be entirely local, in which case it may lead to energy waste because it depends on local cancellation; it can be local with time-out, which can be a nuisance to a person working for an extended period; or it can incorporate an override feedback link to the controller, usually operated by telephone lines. In general, programmable time controls are best applied to facilities with regular, repetitive schedules and few exceptional situations.

2. *Dynamic control.* The second type of automatic control initiation responds to sensor-indicated field conditions via an information feedback loop. It is frequently referred to as *dynamic control* because the initiation of a control function depends not on a fixed programmed parameter such as time, but on real-time field parameters (i.e., as measured at that instant). In the case of lighting



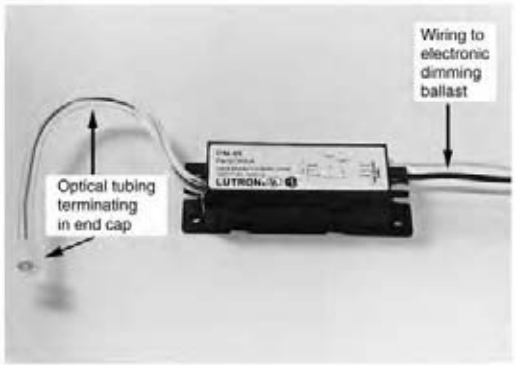
(*a*)



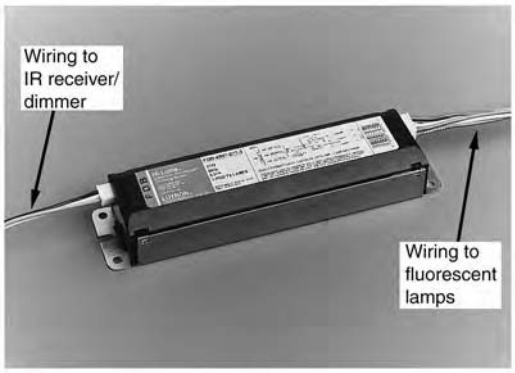
(*b*)



(*c*)



(*d*)



(*e*)

Fig. 15.23 *(a, b) Ceiling-mounted fluorescent fixtures within an 8-ft (2.4-m) radius of the optical sensor can be dimmed by remote control and restored almost instantaneously. (c) The handheld IR remote control device (shown with a permanently mounted holster and a keeper-cord) arranged for continuous dimming and for dimming override for maximum or minimum light. (d) High-frequency electronic dimming ballast for one to four lamps can provide full-range dimming down to 1–5% of output or down to 10% of output, depending on the type. (e) The IR-activated dimmer/receiver, which fits into a 4-in. (100-mm) square standard outlet box, can be mounted inside the luminaire as in (a) or adjacent to it. The optical tube that carries the IR signal must be exposed on the ceiling. It may be mounted on the underside of an open luminaire or close by. (Courtesy of Lutron Electronics Co.)*

control, these parameters may be ambient illuminance, time, system kW demand, kWh usage in a time period, or space occupancy, singly or in combination, depending on the programming algorithm (i.e., how the controller's microprocessor has been programmed). The control device in its entirety is called a *programmable controller* (see Section 26.16), which, in combination with the field sensors and the interconnecting wiring, constitute the control system. Some systems are wireless, using high-frequency signals impressed on the power wiring system to transmit control signals. This arrangement is known as a *power line carrier* (PLC) system and is discussed in Section 26.34. Other systems are completely wireless, using radio frequencies and a system of wireless transmitters and receivers.

In addition to its CPU (microprocessor), a programmable controller contains input/output (I/O) interfaces, memory, and means for programming (and reprogramming). An operational block diagram is shown in Fig. 26.16. The controller accepts

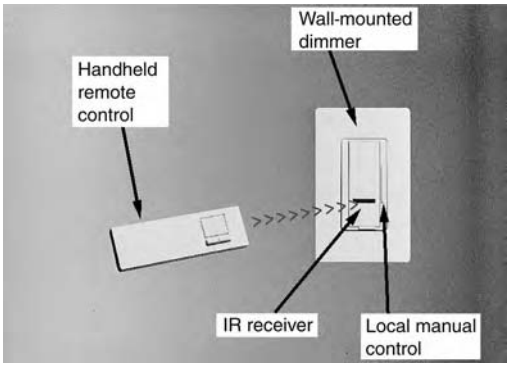


Fig. 15.24 *Remote controller may be used to operate a wall-mounted dimmer. (Courtesy of Lutron Electronics Co.)*

not only the usual time-based signal function, but also information (feedback) from field devices via its I/O device. It then "processes" the signal in its CPU, which consists of logic and storage memory, and sends out a resultant processed control signal.

Large lighting control systems use a computer in lieu of a programmable controller and usually have additional control facilities, such as telephone interfaces and local control/relay/switching centers, which process local sensor input and control local lighting blocks (see Figs. 15.25 and 26.56). Identical systems are used for building automation (Chapter 30), HVAC control, energy management, and the like, the difference being the types of sensing devices and the control algorithm.

15.17 LIGHTING CONTROL STRATEGY

It is apparent that a good lighting control system varies the lighting supplied to match the lighting required, *as the requirement varies*; thus, overlighting and underlighting are avoided. In addition, the control system must be capable of permitting initial adjustments and of accommodating external, non-lighting-connected constraints such as commands from a peak-demand controller. The common lighting system situations addressed by the control system follow.

(a) System "Tuning"

In every lighting installation there is a difference between the design intent and the field result. This is due to assumptions and imprecision in calculation, differences between specified and installed equipment, equipment location changes, and so on. The responsible lighting designer "tunes" the lighting system in the field to attain the intended design. This usually means *reducing lighting levels* in nontask areas because spill light is frequently sufficient for circulation, rough material handling, and the like. This tuning can result in an energy reduction of 20% to 30%, depending on the control technique.

The smaller the group of light sources controlled, the more accurate the tuning and the larger the energy saving proportionally. Lighting

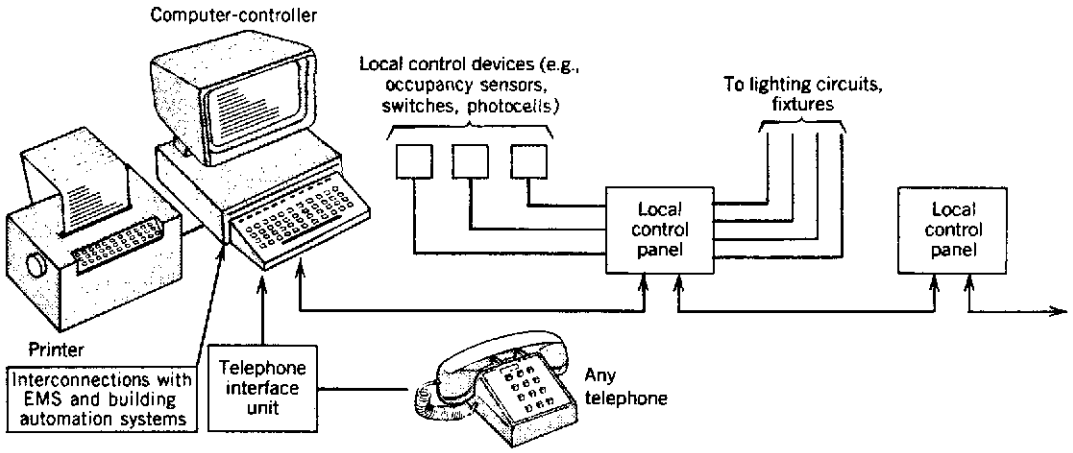


Fig. 15.25 *Schematic arrangement of a large lighting control system. The controller can schedule and supervise thousands of control points via the local control panels. The local control panel accepts coded commands from the controller and operates individual devices and circuits. It also accepts local control signals from manual (switches) and automatic devices. Override is provided via a telephone command to the controller, and all functions, including overrides, appear as hard copy on the printer.*

system retuning is also required when the function of an entire space is changed, or when a single area is altered by a furniture move or by a task change. An ancillary benefit of field tuning is glare reduction, which frequently improves task visibility dramatically. Tuning is a one-step function in the sense that, once accomplished, it does not require change unless the space function changes. Therefore, it should also be reversible to accommodate such changes. Tuning should not be confused with *lumen maintenance*, described in Section 15.17*d*, which is a control strategy designed to compensate for normal system output decline and its corollary—initial system overdesign.

As stated, the tuning action most often required is a reduction in illuminance. This can be accomplished by:

1. Making appropriate field modifications to adjustable fixtures (aiming, lamp position, etc.).
2. Replacing lamps with others of lower wattages and replacing fluorescent tubes with low-wattage tubes. These changes reduce light output reversibly.
3. Replacing fluorescent ballasts with low-current ballasts, thereby lowering output.
4. Adding current-limiting impedances to luminaires or lighting circuits, as mentioned in Section 15.14(a) (Fig. 15.26).
5. Ballast switching or use of multilevel ballasts (see Section 15.14a).
6. Dimming by adjustment of a potentiometer at individual fixtures so equipped.



Fig. 15.26 *This type of compact solid-state electronic circuit reduces ballast power input by approximately 30% and lamp output by about 28%, resulting in a net gain in efficacy. The power factor remains above 90%. Similar units are available for larger power decrease. They can be mounted on the lamp end or in the fixture channel, as shown. An ancillary benefit is cooler ballast operation, resulting in extended life. (Photo courtesy of Remtec Systems.)*

7. Replacing standard wall switches with time-out units (see Fig. 26.48), programmable units, or dimmer units.

(b) Variable Time Schedule

No normal task area has a constant 24-hour, 365-day lighting requirement. In commercial and industrial spaces, work areas have regularly scheduled periods during which task lighting is not required. These include coffee and lunch breaks, cleaning periods, shift changes, and unoccupied periods. Programmed time controls can readily save 10% to 25% of the energy use compared to relying on occupants to manually operate controls. The action of such a controller in an actual installation is shown in Fig. 15.27. "Tight" scheduling took account of lunch hour and provided lighting only in restricted areas being cleaned rather than whole floors. The payback period for the investment in control equipment varies between 1½ and 5 years. Note that static control that is insensitive to actual field conditions has only limited ability to conserve energy.

(c) Occupancy Sensing

Within a normal 9:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M. working schedule, offices in commercial spaces are unoccupied for 30% to 60% of the time. The reasons are manifold—coffee breaks, conferences, work assignments, illness, vacations, and reassignment to a different work location are a few. Occupancy sensors can operate relays to turn off lights after a preset minimum period of about 10 minutes or can dim the light level to a minimum in areas such as corridors, which always require some light. (They can also turn off other energy consumers such as fan-coil units, air conditioners, and fans.) Reestablishment of the original lighting level can be instantaneous, delayed, or manual on the action of the occupant. Another useful function of an occupancy sensor is to provide an automatic override in schedule systems, thus both relieving the occupant of the necessity of using a manual override and limiting the energy use to actual occupancy time. It can also light the occupant's way into a space and shut off the system after he or she has left.

Occupancy sensors that react to a human presence are of three types—passive infrared (IR), ultrasonic, and a hybrid of both technologies. The

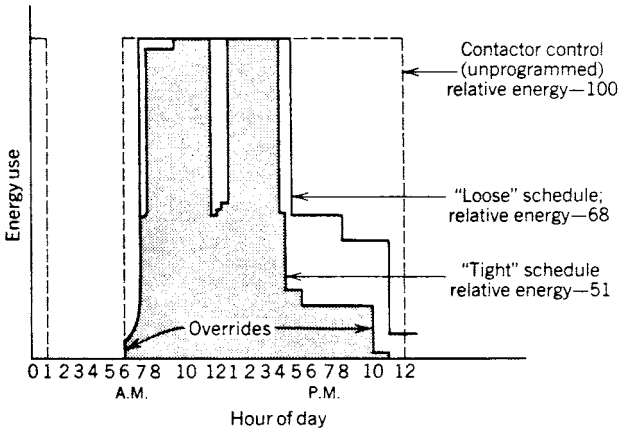


Fig. 15.27 *Actual plot of energy usage on a typical floor of a high-rise building in New York City, with three degrees of lighting control. Note the importance of override by occupants when tight scheduling is used. Override was provided on a 1000-ft²- (93-m²) zone basis. (Data extracted from Peterson and Rubenstein, 1982.)*

IR sensor (Fig. 15.28) reacts to the motion of a heat source within its range. It operates by creating a pattern of beams, and alarms when a heat source (such as a person) moves from one beam to another. It will *not* alarm to a stationary heat source. Although the IR sensor is quite sensitive, it has several disadvantages:

- Small movements may not be detected, as they may not cross from one beam (zone) to another. As a result, a person sitting quietly may not be detected and the sensor may shut down/off the lights.
- Very slow movements may not be detected even when they cross zones.
- The IR detector must "see" the heat source. Therefore, a heat source blocked by furniture will not be detected.
- The beams have a discrete width and depth. Therefore, there may be "dead" spots under the beams if the units are not carefully selected to have adequate multilevel beams or properly located to give the desired coverage.

Ultrasonic sensors emit energy in the 25- to 40-kHz range, which is well above the range of human hearing. The waves immediately fill a space by reflecting and rereflecting off all hard surfaces, establishing a pattern that is detected by the sensor. Any movement within the space disturbs this pattern and is immediately detected by the sensor. Ultrasonic sensors have distinct advantages over IR sensors in that they do not require a direct line-of-sight exposure to the movement, and they detect small movements. The latter characteristic, however, is also a disadvantage inasmuch as movement of curtains and even air movement can trigger a sensor. It is frequently necessary to adjust (reduce) a sensor's sensitivity to avoid false sensing. Unfortunately, this also decreases its coverage.

Hybrid (dual-technology) sensors combine the characteristics of both sensors by usually requiring both sensors to react to turn lights on, but once on, a reaction in either sensor keeps the lights on. In addition, sophisticated electronic circuitry "learns" a space's occupancy patterns and is programmed to react accordingly.

Placement of sensors is very important and should be tested before final installation. Studies have shown that reducing the minimum on period below 10 minutes is counterproductive and frequently causes space occupants to shut off the sensors. Depending on their type and mounting position, sensors cover a maximum area of 250 to 1000 ft^2 (23 to 93 m^2) per unit. The payback period for this equipment runs between 6 months and 3 years, depending on the type of space and the degree of control already existing. Occupancy sensors are best applied in areas that are divided into individual rooms and work spaces. Sensors can be wall or ceiling mounted or mounted on a wall-outlet box in a combined sensor/wall-switch configuration. A few designs are shown in Fig. 15.29. (See Section 30.2, which discusses the security application of motion detectors and illustrates their operation.)

ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 recognizes the great effectiveness of these devices by giving both connected power credit and a high control point equivalency.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 15.28 *Passive infrared (PIR) occupancy sensors. All sensors can be equipped with an adjustable override to prevent turning on lights when ambient light is sufficient. All units have adjustable delayed-off timing and a flashing LED that indicates sensor operation. (a) Flush-mounted ceiling unit. Note the 360° circular pattern of the lens, which indicates omnidirectional coverage. The unit is approximately 4 in. (100 mm) in diameter. (b) Flush-mounted combination wall switch and PIR occupancy sensor. Operation of the switch overrides the sensor function. (c) Surface-mounted wall PIR occupancy sensor. Note the semicircular shape of the lens, which indicates wide horizontal coverage. (Photos courtesy of Leviton Manufacturing Co.)*

(d) Lumen Maintenance

Referring to Section 15.20, we see that in order to maintain a minimum lighting level to the end of a maintenance period, we must deliberately overdesign initially. The extent of the overdesign is the reciprocal of the light loss factor (LLF). With an average LLF of 0.60, this initial overdesign amounts to 1/0.60, or 66%. Assuming a linear light falloff over a 2-year maintenance period, this overdesign results in an average of 33% annual energy waste. (In the next 2-year maintenance cycle, the actual overdesign is slightly less due to a small amount of unrecoverable loss.) Because the light depreciation is a continuous and very gradual process over the maintenance period, the most appropriate control strategy is one that reduces the initial overlighting by the required amount (as measured in the field) and gradually restores it as the system ages. This control strategy, known as *lumen maintenance*, is accomplished by a dimming system operating in conjunction with local light sensors (photocells). The photocells measure ambient light, and in response to their signals the controller(s) operates the dimming units to raise

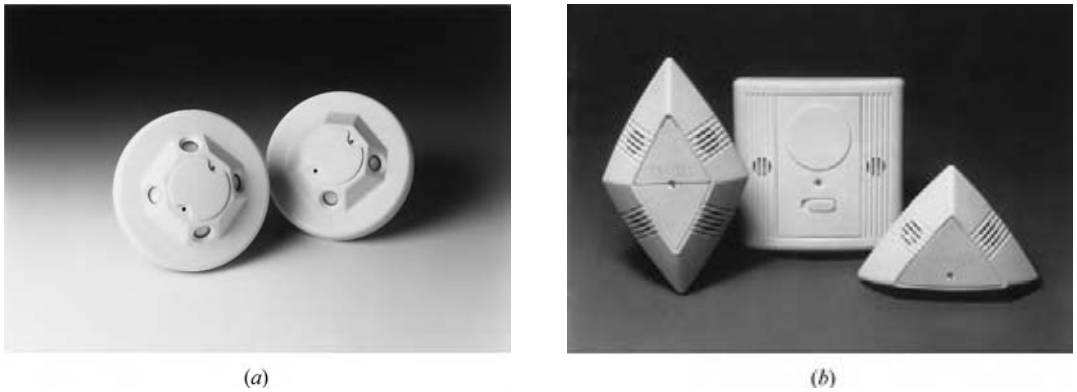


Fig. 15.29 *Ultrasonic occupancy detectors. (a) Ceiling-mounted sensors, bidirectional on the left and unidirectional on the right. (Courtesy of Leviton Manufacturing Co.) (b) Sensors in various designs, intended for differing applications. Left to right: Ceiling-mounted two-way sensor intended for large rooms of up to 2800 ft² (260 m²). Dual-function sensor and wall switch designed for rooms of up to 300 ft² (28 m²); wall mounted on a single- or double-gang wall box. One-way ceiling-mounted sensor designed for use in rooms of up to approximately 1250 ft² (116 m²). (Courtesy of Novitas Inc.)*

(or lower) the light output. Depending on the size of the installation, the dimmers can either be dispersed or centralized. The modulating action of such a system over the maintenance period is shown in Fig. 15.30. This strategy, in a purely manual mode (periodic maintenance, initial light reduction in accordance with the length of the maintenance period), gives only about a 10% energy reduction, whereas in an automated system almost all of the 33% annual energy waste can be eliminated.

In a new installation, the choice of whether to use electronic ballasts and full-range dimming, conventional ballasts and partial dimming, or a system of multilevel switching is an economic one and depends on many factors, one of the most important of which is the cost of energy. Often a combined system is advisable. In interior zones, initial lighting reduction does not exceed 30% to 40%, and full-range dimming is not required. In perimeter zones, daylight often provides all of the required light, and either full-range dimming, dimming plus switching, or a multilevel switching system is required (see Section 15.14a and the following discussion of daylight compensation). The payback period for a lumen maintenance installation of this type varies from 1 to 5 years. Shorter payback periods can be obtained by using multilevel switching rather than dimming because of its lower first cost.

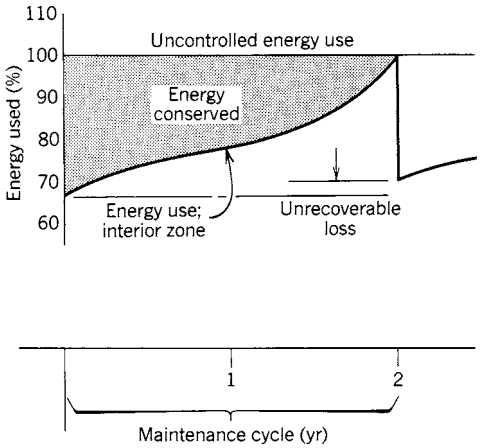


Fig. 15.30 *Graph of energy use by a system that reduces the initial lighting level to compensate for initial overdesign and gradually increases the level as system output depreciates. In subsequent cycles the energy savings are reduced slightly because of unrecoverable output loss.*

An additional favorable effect of initial light reduction is the lengthening of effective lamp life and a reduction in the rate of its lumen depreciation. When a lamp is operated at the rated voltage, its lumen output drops during its life (according to the type of lamp). However, if lamps are operated at reduced output, as is the case if lamps are dimmed to compensate for initial overlighting, the lamp life cycle is greatly extended, lumen depreciation is reduced, and lamp energy consumption is linearly reduced.

Typical life extension (to economic replacement) figures are:

Fluorescent	80%
Metal-halide	40%
High-pressure sodium	20%

These figures are for interior zones; for perimeter zones with ambient daylight compensation, they are higher.

(e) Daylight Compensation

It should be apparent that a control system arranged for continuous ambient light compensation, as described in the preceding subsection, is automatically also arranged to compensate for ambient daylight. The difference is that ambient compensation for lumen maintenance due to light loss factors is a very gradual process of *increasing* output, whereas daylight compensation can be a minute-by-minute variation and generally in the direction of *decreased* electric lighting. Because of these possible rapid variations, switching systems are undesirable, as the constant on-off or level switching of lamps can be very annoying to occupants and deleterious to lamps.

Automatic dimming is the system of choice. Recognizing that in perimeter areas daylight often supplies all the required light, the system for fluorescent installations must be either full-range dimming with electronic ballasts or partial dimming with magnetic or electronic ballasts. Figure 15.31 shows the action of both types of dimming systems in a fluorescent installation with daylight compensation. The crucial design element in a daylight-compensating system is the establishment of zone areas. Depending on the latitude and climate, the southern and possibly the eastern and western exposures can have an interior (second) perimeter zone that receives sufficient daylight for a large enough portion of the year to economically warrant dimming. The northern exposure has only a narrow perimeter zone (Fig. 15.32). As a starting point, the size of the zones is established by determining the maximum room depth that receives at least half of its illuminance from daylight for several hours a day. A computer daylight and dimming cost study with perimeter zone depth as a variable is an effective approach. Several such programs are available.

Placement of the control photocells depends on the control system. Where daylight compensation is desired in conjunction with lumen maintenance (see the preceding subsection), area photocells are desirable, as they give a feedback control signal for the specific area involved. Alternatively, a

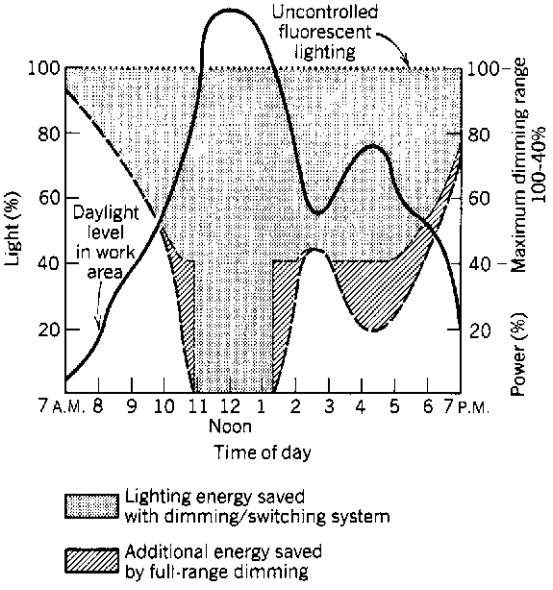


Fig. 15.31 *Typical graph of energy savings with daylight-compensating lighting control. A full-range dimming system is more effective than one that dims down to only 40%, because daylight often supplies most of the required lighting. An economic analysis is required to determine whether the additional cost of such a system is justified.*

daylight-factor map of a space can be made, preferably after the installation is complete and the furniture in place, and photocells located at one point, based on this map (Fig. 15.33). We know from our study of daylight in Chapter 14 that the daylight factor at any inside point is constant. Therefore, by measuring actual daylight level at a point either immediately inside or outside the window, shielded from direct sun and from inside electric lighting, we can relate it to any area in the room by the ratio of

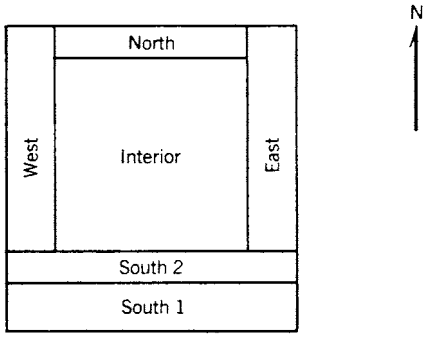


Fig. 15.32 *Typical building plan showing approximate daylight perimeter zones. Exact delineation of zones depends upon latitude, climate, window design, and cost of electric energy.*

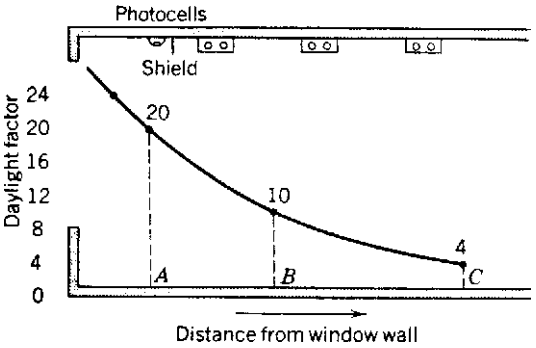


Fig. 15.33 *Typical daylight factor curve plotted on a room section with one side window. The photocell control technique for daylight compensation described in the text assumes a constant daylight factor (DF) distribution indoors—that is, fixed luminance sky and no direct sun.*

daylight factors and establish a switching level at which the lighting for that inside area is switched, partially or fully.

An example should make this clear. In Fig. 15.33, the photocells are mounted at point *A*. The ratio of daylight between points *A* and *B* is the ratio of their daylight factors—that is, 20/10, or 2.0. Therefore, if 500 lux of daylight is required at point *B* before switching lights in that area, twice that amount (2.0×500 lux) or 1000 lux is required at point *A*. Similarly, a 500-lux requirement at point *C* corresponds to (20/4)(500) or 2500 lux at point *A*. Therefore, switching can be initiated by two single-level photocells or a multilevel unit at point *A*, with settings at 1000 and 2500 lux. Other switching arrangements can be made on the same principle. Dimming initiation can also be arranged in this fashion.

Daylight compensation can reduce energy use in perimeter areas by up to 60%, depending on latitude, climate, depth of perimeter zone, hours of building use, initial power density, and so on. The amount saved for the entire building obviously depends on the building's configuration—that is, the ratio of perimeter to total area. Payback time is usually in the range of 3 months to 3 years.

In summary, a well-designed lighting control system can provide energy conservation of up to 60%, extremely long lamp life, reduced cooling costs, extended ballast life, and reduced maintenance costs. When all these factors are considered, the investment payback period (see Appendix I) is always short and therefore financially attractive. An aspect of a centralized lighting control system not discussed previously, because it is not directly concerned with lighting, is its use in connection with peak demand reduction (see Chapter 25). When interconnected with a demand controller, this approach acts to reduce the electric lighting load in accordance with a predetermined preferential-load schedule and can achieve significant savings.

DETAILED DESIGN PROCEDURES

15.18 CALCULATION OF AVERAGE ILLUMINANCE

Once a luminaire has been selected on the basis of the foregoing criteria, it remains only to calculate the number of such fixtures required in each space, for uniform *general* illuminance, and to arrange them properly. Although a number of calculation methods are available, the lumen (flux) method is simplest and most applicable to our need for area-lighting calculations. Illuminance calculation from point, line, or area sources is covered in Sections 15.27 to 15.30. Luminance (photometric brightness) calculations are covered in Section 15.32.

Before beginning a detailed description of the zonal cavity calculation method, a general comment on precision is in order. The precision of any calculation should not exceed either the accuracy required or the precision of available data. Thus, there is no point in working to three decimal places if a ±10% rounding of the result is common and acceptable, or if the data available are accurate to only one decimal place. As the reader will see, the lumen (lighting flux) method of *average* illuminance calculation is replete with assumptions and estimates. Among these are:

1. It is assumed that the space is empty. This is not normally the case.
2. It is assumed that all surfaces are perfect diffusers. This is not the case.
3. All surface reflectances are estimates, ±10%.
4. Maintenance conditions are estimates, at best ±10%.
5. No allowance is made for deviation of the performance of an individual product from its specification.

Any attempt to account accurately for these approximations would enormously complicate the

calculation and would serve no useful purpose for this type of *average* illuminance calculation. For this reason, the procedure presented here introduces some approximations (which we feel are well justified) in the interest of simplification. These approximations are noted wherever used.

15.19 CALCULATION OF HORIZONTAL ILLUMINANCE BY THE LUMEN (FLUX) METHOD

The lumen method of calculation is a procedure for determining the *average* maintained illuminance (in footcandles or lux) on the working plane in a room. The method presupposes that luminaires will be spaced so that uniformity of illumination is provided in order that an *average* calculation will have validity. The method is based on the definition of 1 lux of illuminance as 1 lumen incident on 1 square meter of area (1 footcandle incident on 1 square foot), that is,

$$\text{lux or (fc)} = \frac{\text{lumens}}{\text{area m}^2 \text{ or (ft}^2)}$$

As explained previously, the ratio between the lumens reaching the working plane in a specific space and the lumens generated is the coefficient of utilization, CU. Or

$$\text{lumens on the working plane} = \text{lamp lumens} \times \text{CU}$$

Therefore,

$$\text{illluminance } E = \frac{\text{lamp lumens} \times \text{CU}}{\text{area}}$$

The coefficient CU is selected from tables provided by the manufacturer of a selected luminaire by a technique known as the *zonal cavity method* (explained in Section 15.21). In the absence of specific CU data, an approximation can be made by using the generic fixture types in Table 15.1.

The illuminance figure so calculated is the *initial average* illuminance. This initial level is reduced by the effect of temperature and voltage variations, dirt accumulation on luminaires and room surfaces, lamp output depreciation, and maintenance conditions. All of these effects are cumulatively referred to as the *light loss factor* (LLF):

$$\text{maintained } E = \text{initial } E \times \text{LLF}$$

(This factor was previously termed the *maintenance factor*, MF.) The procedure required to arrive at this factor is explained in the following section.

Our final expression for maintained illuminance E as calculated by the lumen method is, therefore,

$$E = \frac{\text{lamp lumens} \times \text{CU} \times \text{LLF}}{\text{area}} \qquad (15.1)$$

where E is lux if area is expressed in square meters, or footcandles if the area is in square feet.

Lamp lumens is the total within the space and is equal to

$$\text{number of fixtures} \times \text{lamps per fixture} \times \text{initial lumens per lamp}$$

The formula then becomes

$$E = \frac{\text{number of luminaires} \times \text{lamps/luminaire} \times \text{lumens/lamp} \times \text{CU} \times \text{LLF}}{\text{area}} \qquad (15.2)$$

or, conversely, solving for the number of luminaires required to achieve a target maintained illuminance E:

$$\text{number of luminaires} = \frac{E \times \text{area}}{\text{lamps per luminaire} \times \text{lumens per lamp} \times \text{CU} \times \text{LLF}} \qquad (15.3)$$

For large areas, a much more useful figure is the area illuminated per luminaire:

$$\text{area per luminaire} = \frac{\text{lamps per luminaire} \times \text{lumens per lamp} \times \text{CU} \times \text{LLF}}{E} \qquad (15.4)$$

For instance, it is much more convenient to know that to maintain, say, 60 fc within a space with a given luminaire, 70 ft^2 (6.5 m^2) per unit is appropriate than it is to know that for an 18,000-ft^2 (1672-m^2) floor, 257 fixtures are necessary. The former figure allows us to establish a pattern, say 7×10; the latter figure is too large to be immediately useful. Therefore, for rooms requiring more than a small number of luminaires, the latter calculation should always be used.

15.20 CALCULATION OF LIGHT LOSS FACTOR

The light loss factor (LLF) is composed of elements that can be categorized as *recoverable* and *nonrecoverable*. The former can be improved by maintenance;

the latter cannot. The total LLF is the product of all the individual factors. The overview that follows includes approximations. For more precise data, see the IESNA *Lighting Handbook* (2000).

Among the nonrecoverable loss factors are the following:

(a) Luminaire Ambient Temperature

Light output changes when a *fluorescent* fixture operates at other than its design temperature. With normal indoor installation use 1.0—that is, no depreciation. For other conditions, refer to technical data on the luminaire involved.

(b) Voltage

When a lamp operates at the rated voltage, use 1.0. Details of source sensitivity to voltage are given in Chapter 12.

(c) Luminaire Surface Depreciation

This factor is proportional to age and depends upon the type of surface involved. The designer must estimate this factor based on knowledge of the luminaire materials.

(d) Components

Losses due to components include ballast factor, ballast-lamp photometric factor, equipment operating factor, and lamp position (tilt) factor. Air troffers also introduce a thermal factor. In the absence of specific data for component factors, use a total of 0.92.

In the absence of reliable data for any of the foregoing nonrecoverable factors, use an overall factor representing the product $a \times b \times c \times d$ of 0.88.

The factors that follow are *recoverable*—that is, they can be returned to their initial state by maintenance.

(e) Room Surface Dirt

This factor is self-explanatory. Obviously, lighting approaches that depend heavily on surface reflections, such as indirect systems, are more seriously affected than systems that deliver most of their useful light directly. Assuming a 24-month cleaning cycle and normal conditions of cleanliness, use the appropriate factor in the following list. Alter it for other conditions such as infrequent maintenance and unusual cleanliness or dirtiness.

Direct lighting: $0.92 \pm 5\%$

Semi-direct lighting: $0.87 \pm 8\%$

Direct-indirect lighting: $0.82 \pm 10\%$

Semi-indirect lighting: $0.77 \pm 12\%$

Indirect lighting: $0.72 \pm 17\%$

(f) Lamp Lumen Depreciation

This factor depends upon the type of lamp and the replacement schedule. Use the following when exact data are unavailable:

	Group Replacement	Replacement on Burnout
Incandescent	0.94	0.88
Tungsten-halogen	0.98	0.94
Fluorescent	0.90	0.85
Mercury-vapor	0.82	0.74
Metal-halide	0.87	0.80
High-pressure sodium	0.94	0.88

(g) Burnouts

This factor accounts for lamps that produce no output but have not been replaced. It depends upon maintenance schedules and method of replacement. Use the following as a general rule:

Group replacement procedures: 1.0

Individual replacement on burnout: 0.95

(h) Luminaire Dirt Depreciation

The luminaire dirt depreciation (LDD) factor depends upon luminaire design, atmosphere conditions in the space, and maintenance schedule. The luminaire maintenance category is obtained from the manufacturer's data or from Table 15.1. The type of atmosphere is determined by considering the space involved. Assuming a 12-month cleaning schedule and normal room cleanliness, use the base number in Fig. 15.34 and change it to match the conditions of dirt and maintenance. The categories correspond to those used by the IESNA.

Total LLF is the product of all the depreciation factors:

$$\text{LLF} = a \times b \times c \times d \times e \times f \times g \times h$$

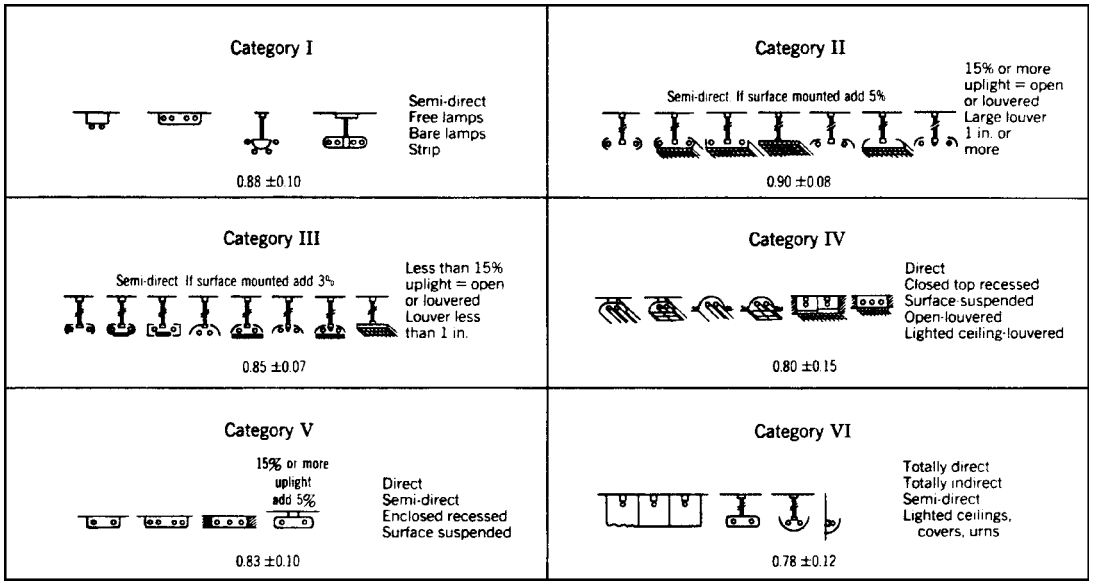


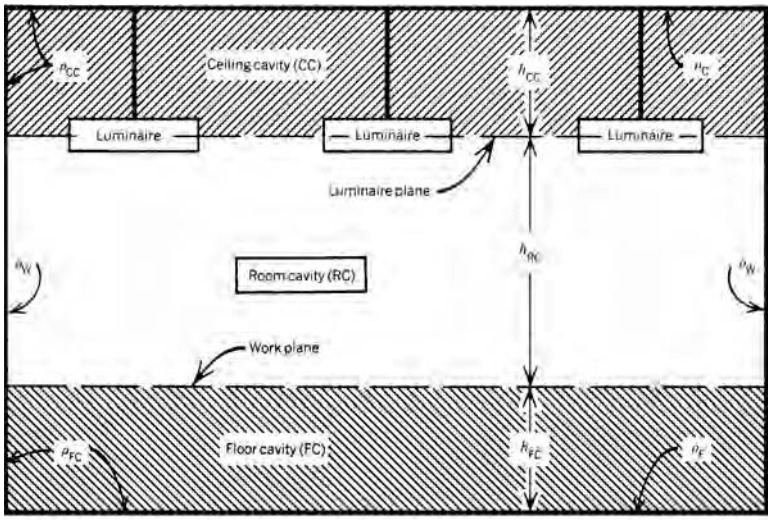
Fig. 15.34 *The LDD factor is determined from the category of luminaire (which is an indication of its proneness to dirt accumulation) plus knowledge of room ambient conditions.*

For example, a fluorescent air troffer in a regularly maintained group lamp-replacement, air-conditioned office might typically have an LLF of 0.8. The same fixture in the same office, but with walls and fixture cleaned only when burned-out lamps are replaced, would typically have an LLF of 0.55. Thus, if in the first case the maintained illumination is E fc, in the second case it is 0.55/0.80 or 0.69 E fc, that is, a reduction of 31% as a result of poor maintenance. When a detailed determination of LLF is not possible, use the factors given in Section 15.22 (they are somewhat conservative).

15.21 DETERMINATION OF THE COEFFICIENT OF UTILIZATION BY THE ZONAL CAVITY METHOD

The coefficient of utilization (CU) connects a particular fixture to a particular space by relating the luminaire's light distribution characteristic to the room's size and its surface reflectances. To account for the luminaire's mounting height and its relationship to the working plane, the space is divided into three cavities: a ceiling cavity above the fixture, a floor cavity below the working plane, and a room cavity between the two (Fig. 15.35). Given the surface reflectances, the effective reflectances of the floor and ceiling cavities can be obtained. With these, the CU can be selected from tables (either Table 15.1 or from manufacturer's data) and the lumen formula (Equation 15.3) applied to arrive at average illuminance. A step-by-step explanation of the method plus illustrative examples demonstrate the procedure. The reader should follow the steps with the flowchart in Fig. 15.36 and the calculation form in Fig. 15.37 in hand.

STEP 1. First, dimensional data are established. In offices, schools, and many other occupancies, the work plane is 30 in. (760 mm) above the finished floor (AFF). In drafting rooms it is 36 to 38 in. (915 to 965 mm); in shops, 42 to 48 in. (1066 to 1220 mm); in carpet stores and sail-cutting rooms at floor level. The three h terms are the heights of the various cavities. Also identify the initial reflectance of the room surfaces and fill in the sketch in Fig. 15.37. Utilize the reflectance closest to those given in Table 15.2.



Legend:
ρ_C = ceiling reflectance
ρ_{CC} = ceiling cavity reflectance
ρ_W = wall reflectance
ρ_F = floor reflectance
ρ_{FC} = floor cavity reflectance
h = height in feet or meters
h_{RC} = height of room cavity

Fig. 15.35 *Room cavities as used in the zonal cavity method.*

STEP 2. See Fig. 15.37. This step involves determining the cavity ratios of the room by calculation. The basic expression for a cavity ratio (CR) is

$$\text{CR} = 2.5 \times \frac{\text{area of cavity wall}}{\text{area of work plane}} \qquad (15.5)$$

In a rectangular space, the area of the cavity wall is $h \times (2l \times 2w)$ or $2h(l + w)$; therefore,

$$\text{CR} = \frac{2.5 \times 2h \times (l \times w)}{\text{area of work plane}}$$

or

$$\text{CR} = 5h \times \frac{l + w}{l + w} \qquad (15.6)$$

For other than rectangular rooms, the area can be calculated as required by geometry. For instance, in a circular room, the cavity wall area $= h \times 2\pi r$ and the work plane area is πr^2. Thus,

$$\text{CR} = \frac{2.5 \times h \times 2\pi r}{\pi r^2} = \frac{5h}{r} \qquad (15.7)$$

For each of the cavities in a rectangular room we have:

Room cavity ratio

$$\text{RCR} = 5h_{RC}\ \frac{l + w}{l \times w} \qquad (15.8)$$

Ceiling cavity ratio

$$\text{CCR} = 5h_{CC}\ \frac{l + w}{l \times w} \qquad (15.9)$$

Floor cavity ratio

$$\text{FCR} = 5h_{FC}\ \frac{l + w}{l \times w} \qquad (15.10)$$

For reference, because CR values for a space are related, once one has been determined, the others can be obtained by ratios

$$\text{CCR} = \text{RCR}\ \frac{h_{CC}}{h_{RC}} \qquad (15.11)$$

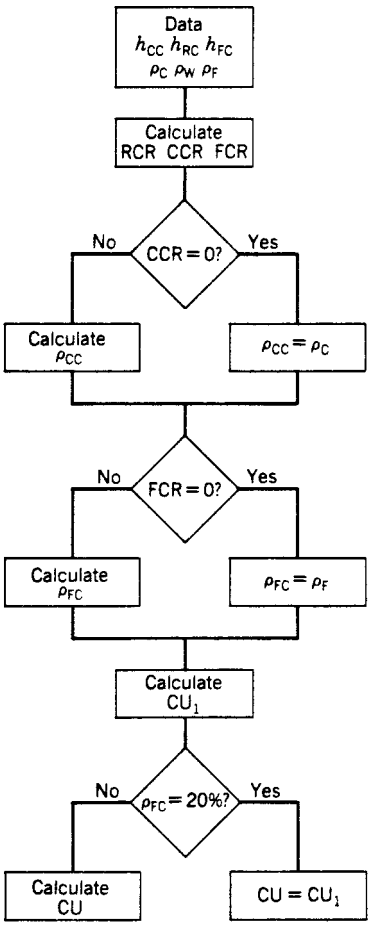


Fig. 15.36 *Zonal cavity method flowchart.*

$$FCR = RCR \frac{h_{FC}}{h_{RC}} \tag{15.12}$$

and

$$CCR = FCR \frac{h_{CC}}{h_{FC}} \tag{15.13}$$

STEP 3. See Table 15.2 and Figs. 15.36 and 15.37. This step involves obtaining the effective ceiling cavity reflectance (ρ_{FC}) from Table 15.2. Note that the wall reflectance remains as selected in step 1. If the fixtures are surface-mounted or recessed, then CCR = 0 and ρ_{CC} = selected ceiling surface reflectance.

STEP 4. See Table 15.2 and Figs. 15.36 and 15.37. This step involves obtaining the effective floor cavity reflectance ρ_{FC}, as in step 3 for ρ_{CC}. If the floor is the working plane, FCR = 0 and ρ_{FC} = selected floor surface reflectance.

STEP 5. Select the CU from the manufacturer's data. Note that interpolation may be necessary for CCR (ρ_{CC}) if it is between the figures in the CU table. See Example 15.1 in the next section. CU correction factors for ρ_{FC} other than 20% (the standard value in CU tables) are given in Table 15.3.

STEP 6. Calculate the illuminance and the number of fixtures or area per luminaire as in Section 15.19.

Illustrative examples and shortcut methods are demonstrated in the following section. CU coefficients are listed in Table 15.1 for generic luminaire types.

15.22 ZONAL CAVITY CALCULATIONS: ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

EXAMPLE 15.1 It is suggested that the reader photocopy Fig. 15.37 and fill it in as the solution to this example is developed.

Given. Classroom: 6 m × 8 m × 3.7-m height (19.7 × 26.3 × 12.1 ft), elementary school. Initial reflectances: ceiling 80%, entire wall 50%, floor 20%. (Note that the sketch in Fig. 15.37 can accommodate different reflectances for the upper, center, and lower wall sections.) Provide adequate illuminance using fluorescent fixtures. Assume yearly maintenance, lamp replacement at burnout, proper voltage and ballasts, and a medium clean atmosphere.

SOLUTION

(a) Illuminance Criterion. Refer to Table 11.7. Depending on the class grade, the illuminance category could be either D or E. We use E, which gives a recommended illuminance of 500 lux. In Table 11.9 under category E we find: age—under 40, speed/accuracy are important, and background is more than 70% (white paper). This yields a recommendation of 500 lux. The daylight contribution in much of the space is usually considerable because of the hours of use. It frequently exceeds this 500-lux target, but to demonstrate the calculation procedure, we assume an absence of daylight. Lines 1, 2, and 8 (room sketch) of Fig. 15.37 can be filled in.

GENERAL INFORMATION

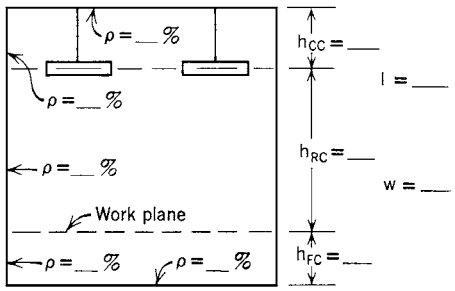
1. Project identification: _____
(Give name of area and/or building and room number)

2. Average maintained illumination for design: _____ lux [footcandles]

Luminaire data:
3. Manufacturer: _____
4. Catalog number: _____

Lamp data:
5. Type and color: _____
6. Number per luminaire: _____
7. Total lumens per luminaire: _____

SELECTION OF COEFFICIENT OF UTILIZATION



8. Step 1: Fill in sketch at right.

9. Step 2: Determine Cavity Ratios by formulas.

9a. Room cavity ratio, RCR = _____
9b. Ceiling cavity ratio, CCR = _____
9c. Floor cavity ratio, FCR = _____

10. Step 3: Obtain effective ceiling cavity reflectance (ρ_{CC}) from Table 15.2. ρ_{CC} = _____

11. Step 4: Obtain effective floor cavity reflectance (ρ_{FC}) from Table 15.2. ρ_{FC} = _____

12. Step 5: Obtain coefficient of utilization (CU) from manufacturer's data. CU = _____

SELECTION OF LIGHT LOSS FACTORS

Unrecoverable		Recoverable	
13. Luminaire ambient temperature	_____	17. Room surface dirt depreciation	_____
14. Voltage to luminaire	_____	18. Lamp lumen depreciation	_____
15. Luminaire surface depreciation	_____	19. Lamp burnouts factor	_____
16. Other factors **(components)**	_____	20. Luminaire dirt depreciation LDD	_____

21. Total light loss factor, LLF (product of individual factors above): _____

CALCULATIONS

(Average maintained illumination level)

$$\text{Number of luminaires} = \frac{(\text{Illuminance}) \times (\text{Area})}{(\text{Lumens per luminaire}) \times (\text{CU}) \times (\text{LLF})}$$

22. = _____ =

$$\text{Lux [footcandles]} = \frac{(\text{number of luminaires}) \times (\text{lumens per luminaire}) \times (\text{CU}) \times (\text{LLF})}{(\text{area})}$$

23. = _____ =

24. Calculated by: _____ Date: _____

Fig. 15.37 *Zonal cavity method calculation form. (Courtesy of IESNA.)*

TABLE 15.2 Percent Effective Ceiling or Floor Cavity Reflectance (ρ_{cc}, ρ_{FC}) for Various Reflectance Combinations

Percent Ceiling ρ_c or Floor Reflectance ρ_F:		90				80				70			50			30				10		
Percent Wall Reflectance ρ_W:		90	70	50	30	80	70	50	30	70	50	30	70	50	30	65	50	30	10	50	30	10
Ceiling or Floor Cavity Ratios—CCR or FCR	0	90	90	90	90	80	80	80	80	70	70	70	50	50	50	30	30	30	30	10	10	10
	0.2	89	88	86	85	79	78	77	76	68	67	66	49	48	47	30	29	29	28	10	10	9
	0.4	88	86	83	81	78	76	74	72	67	65	63	48	46	45	30	29	27	26	11	10	9
	0.6	88	84	80	76	77	75	71	68	65	62	59	47	45	43	29	28	26	25	11	10	9
	0.8	87	82	77	73	75	73	69	65	64	60	56	47	43	41	29	27	25	23	11	10	8
	1.0	86	80	74	69	74	71	66	61	63	58	53	46	42	39	29	27	24	22	11	9	8
	1.2	86	78	72	65	73	70	64	58	61	56	50	45	41	37	29	26	23	20	12	9	7
	1.4	85	77	69	62	72	68	62	55	60	54	48	45	40	35	28	26	22	19	12	9	7
	1.6	85	75	66	59	71	67	60	53	59	52	45	44	39	33	28	25	21	18	12	9	7
	1.8	84	73	64	56	70	65	58	50	57	50	43	43	37	32	28	25	21	17	12	9	6
	2.0	83	72	62	53	69	64	56	48	56	48	41	43	37	30	28	24	20	16	12	9	6
	2.2	83	70	60	51	68	63	54	45	55	46	39	42	36	29	28	24	19	15	13	9	6
	2.4	82	68	58	48	67	61	52	43	54	45	37	42	35	27	28	24	19	14	13	9	6
	2.6	82	67	56	46	66	60	50	41	53	43	35	41	34	26	27	23	18	13	13	9	5
	2.8	81	66	54	44	66	59	48	39	52	42	33	41	33	25	27	23	18	13	13	9	5
	3.0	81	64	52	42	65	58	47	38	51	40	32	40	32	24	27	22	17	12	13	8	5
	3.5	79	61	48	37	63	55	43	33	48	38	29	39	30	22	26	22	16	11	13	8	5
	4.0	78	58	44	33	61	52	40	30	46	35	26	38	29	20	26	21	15	9	13	8	4
	4.5	77	55	41	30	59	50	37	27	45	33	24	37	27	19	25	20	14	8	14	8	4
	5.0	76	53	38	27	57	48	35	25	43	32	22	36	26	17	25	19	13	7	14	8	4

Source: Extracted from the *IESNA Lighting Handbook* (1993); reprinted with permission. For more complete data, see the current *IESNA Lighting Handbook*.

TABLE 15.3 CU Factors for Effective Floor Cavity Reflectances Other Than 20% (Any Wall Reflectance)[a]

For 30% effective floor cavity reflectance, *multiply* standard CU value by the appropriate factor from the following table. For 10% effective floor cavity reflectance, *divide* standard CU value by the appropriate factor from the following table.

Room Cavity Ratio	Percent Effective Ceiling Cavity Reflectance, ρ_{cc} 80	70	50	10
1	1.08	1.06	1.04	1.01
2	1.06	1.05	1.03	1.01
3	1.04	1.04	1.03	1.01
4	1.03	1.03	1.02	1.01
5	1.03	1.02	1.02	1.01
6	1.02	1.02	1.02	1.01
7	1.02	1.02	1.01	1.01
8	1.02	1.02	1.01	1.01
9	1.01	1.01	1.01	1.01
10	1.01	1.01	1.01	1.01

Source: Extracted from the *IESNA Lighting Handbook* (1993); reprinted with permission.

[a]For more precise data, for varying ρ_W, see the current *IESNA Lighting Handbook*.

(b) Luminaire Selection. The criteria we have previously developed for a classroom situation require an installation that yields

1. Low direct glare (high VCP) because schoolchildren spend a large proportion of their time in a heads-up position.
2. Low veiling reflections because much of the seeing task involves high-reflectance materials, occasionally specular.
3. High efficiency and low energy use to meet ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 and most governmental requirements.
4. Minimum required maintenance in view of the poor cleaning and maintenance situation that exists in many schools.

Although the ceiling height is sufficient to permit use of indirect lighting (e.g., luminaire 33 in Table 15.1) with all of its distinct advantages, it is not chosen because:

5. The luminaire maintenance category is inappropriate, and given the type of maintenance expected, light reduction would be serious.

6. Indirect lighting depends on a highly reflective ceiling, requiring yearly cleaning and repainting at intervals not exceeding 5 years. This is not generally the case in public schools.

As a result, we select a two-lamp version of luminaire No. 44 from Table 15.1. This unit is a parabolic aluminum reflector with louvers and exhibits a 45° cutoff and a crosswise batwing distribution. (Fig. 15.14 shows a unit of this design.) This fixture meets requirements 1 through 4.

Although its distribution curve (see Table 15.1) shows no upward component, most commercial units of this basic design do have slots in the top of the reflector and show 5% to 10% uplight. In practice, we would select such a unit. This avoids an excessively dark ceiling and undesirable luminance ratios between fixture and background. Furthermore, fixtures with top slots stay cleaner because of the upward air movement through the fixture caused by the warm lamps and ballast. The mounting height should be about 2.7 m (9 ft) to permit easy maintenance and good row spacing. For this luminaire the recommended maximum SC can be estimated at between 1.5 and 2.0. The work plane height is 750 mm (30 in.).

(c) Calculations.

STEP 1. The required data that should appear in the sketch in Fig. 15.37 are

$h_{CC} = 1.0$ m	$h_{RC} = 1.95$ m
$h_{FC} = 0.75$ m	$l = 8$ m
$\rho_C = 80\%$	$\rho_w = 50\%$
$\rho_F = 20\%$	$w = 6$ m

STEP 2. From Equations 15.8, 15.9, and 15.10

$$\frac{l + w}{l \times w} = 0.29$$

$$\text{RCR} = 5h_{RC}\frac{l + w}{l \times w}$$

$$\text{RCR} = 5\,(1.95)(0.29) = 2.84$$
$$\text{CCR} = 5\,(1)(0.29) = 1.46$$
$$\text{FCR} = 5\,(0.75)(0.29) = 1.09$$

STEP 3. From Table 15.2 obtain effective reflectances: For ρ_{CC} use $\rho_C = 0.8$, $\rho_W = 0.5$, and CCR = 1.46. Therefore,

$$\rho_{CC} = 0.61$$

STEP 4. For ρ_{FC} use $\rho_F = 0.2$, $\rho_W = 0.5$, and FCR = 1.09. Therefore,

$$\rho_{FC} = 0.18 \text{ by interpolation}$$

STEP 5. Interpolation between RCR of 2.8 and 3.0 is necessary. The CU for the selected luminaire—No. 44 of Table 15.1—can now be obtained by double interpolation.

$\rho w = 0.50$	CU		
$\rho CC \rightarrow$	*0.70*	*0.61*	*0.50*
RCR			
2.	0.58		0.55
2.84		?	
3.	0.52		0.50

Design CU = 0.52. No correction from Table 15.3 is required, as ρ_{FC} is close to 20%. At this stage, lines 9 through 12 of Fig. 15.37 can be filled in.

STEP 6. The LLF (see Section 15.20) results from establishing items 13 to 20 of Fig. 15.37. These are:

Items 13–16	0.88
Item 17	0.95
Item 18	0.85
Item 19	0.95
Item 20	0.80

Item 21: LLF = (0.88)(0.95)(0.85)(0.95)(0.80) = 0.54

STEP 7. Lumen calculation. A typical classroom is normally divided into a large student seating area and a teacher's area. The illuminance requirement is approximately the same for both, so the room can be treated as a single unit for visual task purposes. A good lighting design includes chalkboard lighting, the spill light from which is usually sufficient to illuminate the front of the room. Treating the entire space as one visual task area, and assuming two nominal 40-W, 4100 K fluorescent lamps per fixture, the number N of luminaires required is, from Equation 15.3,

$$N = \frac{(500 \text{ lux})(6 \times 8 \text{ m})}{2(3200 \text{ lm})(0.52)(0.54)} = 13.35$$

The remaining lines of Fig. 15.37 can now be completed.

Refer now to Fig. 15.38 for the layout. Two lengthwise rows of fixtures, spaced 300 cm apart, give excellent coverage, as shown. The resultant spacing-to-mounting-height ratio

$$\frac{300 \text{ cm spacing}}{270 \text{ cm mounting height}} = 1.1$$

is well below the maximum of 1.5 to 2.0 estimated by inspection of the candlepower distribution curve. The sixth fixture in the outside (window)

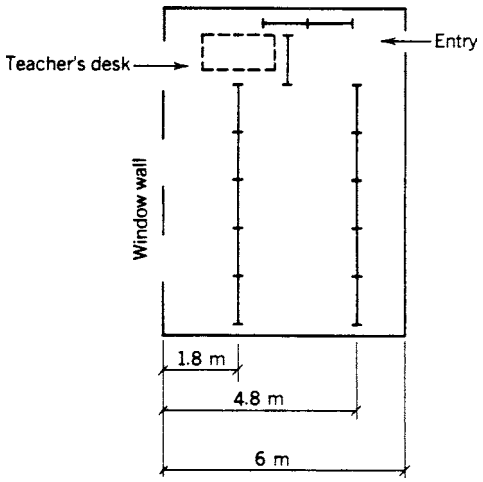


Fig. 15.38 *Layout of pendant parabolic aluminum reflector luminaires in a typical classroom. The units have a modified batwing distribution in the crosswise direction, which mandates their being hung with their long axis parallel to the line of sight, as shown. Furthermore, the fixtures have lower brightness in that direction, that is, VCP for students in the head-up position is excellent. Note that the distance between the outside fixture row and the window wall is more than one-half of the side-to-side spacing because of daylight contribution during school hours, whereas the inside fixture row to inside wall spacing is less than one-half of the side-to-side spacing in order to maintain sufficient illuminance near that wall. The single fixture to the right of the teacher's desk (to the teacher's left) was so placed to avoid the veiling reflections that would result from a fixture directly above the desk and to take advantage of the fixture's transverse batwing distribution characteristic.*

row provides illumination for the teacher's desk. Two *single-lamp* batwing distribution or asymmetric distribution luminaires provide chalkboard and front-of-room lighting. The window wall row is separately switched and is farther from the wall than the inside row due to the usual presence of daylight. Point-by-point illuminance can be computed by one of the available computer programs. The daylight contribution can also be included. Actual *average* illuminance in the room would be simply the ratio of the number of fixtures used to the number required (calculated) times the target illuminance:

$$E = \frac{11 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}}{13.35}\,(500\ \text{lux}) = 450\ \text{lux}$$

assuming similar characteristics for the one- and two-lamp fixtures. The designer must decide if this illuminance is appropriately close to the 500 lux target illuminance. ■

EXAMPLE 15.2 Large modern business office, 60 × 100 × 8-ft hung ceiling height (18 × 30 × 2.4 m). Initial reflectances are 0.80, 0.50, and 0.30. Provide general lighting using fluorescent lamps with high-efficiency ballasts in recessed troffer luminaires. The space is fully air-conditioned. Lamps are replaced on a burnout basis, and the fixture is then cleaned.

SOLUTION

From Table 11.7 we obtain a recommended illuminance for routine office tasks of 500 lux. As almost every desk in a modern business office is equipped with a visual display terminal (VDT), we must select a fixture that is designed to minimize the extremely disturbing reflection of luminaires in VDT screens. (See Section 16.19 for a full discussion of this ubiquitous problem.) Luminaires with parabolic diffusers, reflectors, and/or baffles, which exhibit very low high-angle luminance, meet this requirement, as explained in Section 15.4.

A second consideration is that in an office of this size, which may well be "landscaped" using half-height partitions, viewing directions vary greatly, negating any benefits inherent in a luminaire's directionality. As a result, we selected a specular parabolic baffled 2-ft (610-mm) unit, which is directionally and architecturally neutral and displays the required low levels of luminance at high angles. The unit's characteristics are given in Fig. 15.39 when equipped with two 32-W, T8, U-shaped lamps with 2800 initial lumens. Note that the luminaire exhibits a modified batwing intensity distribution in the transverse direction.

Calculations. The reader should fill in a copy of Fig. 15.37 as we proceed. The working plane is taken as the desktop height (i.e., 30 in. or 2.5 ft).

STEP 1. $h_{CC} = 0$; $h_{RC} = 5.5$; $h_{FC} = 2.5$.

STEP 2 CCR = 0; RCR = 0.73; FCR = 0.33.

STEP 3. ρ_W = 50%; ρ_{CC} = 80% (for a recessed fixture we use the ceiling reflectance).

STEP 4. From Table 15.2, ρ_{FC} = 29%.

STEP 5. We find CU for ρ_{FC} = 20% by extrapolation:

RCR	CU	
0.73	?	
1.0	0.64	CU = 0.66
2.0	0.57	

STEP 6. From Table 15.3, the multiplier for ρ_{FC} = 30% (close to 29%) is 1.085.

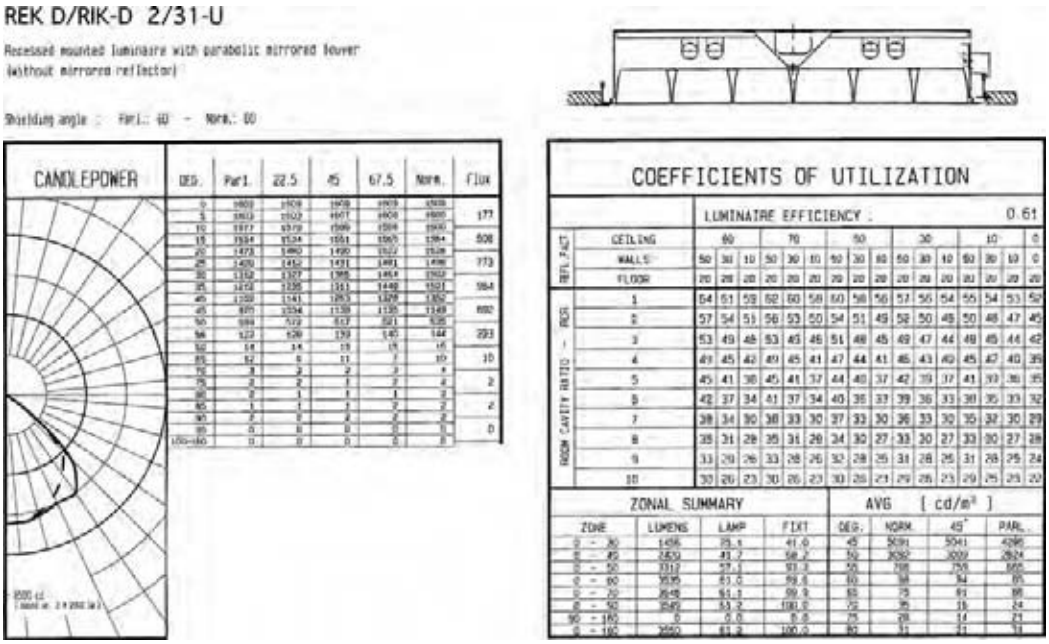


Fig. 15.39 *Complete photometric data on a 2-ft (610-mm) square fixture with a 36-cell mirrored parabolic louver. The unit uses two T8 U-shaped 32-W fluorescent lamps. Note that the transverse distribution characteristic has a modified batwing shape typical of this type of louver. The louver's specular finish yields very low brightness at high angles, as can be seen from both the distribution curve and the luminance (cd/m²) data. (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF.)*

STEP 7. Final CU = 1.085 (0.66) = 0.72.

STEP 8. LLF per Fig. 15.37:

1.0	0.92	
1.0	0.85	
0.9	0.95	LLF = 0.54
0.92	0.88	

STEP 9.

$$\text{area/luminaire} = \frac{\text{lamps} \times \text{lumens/lamp} \times \text{CU} \times \text{LLF}}{\text{illuminance}}$$

$$= \frac{2(2800)(0.66)(0.54)}{500/10.76\,\text{lux per fc}} = 43\ \text{ft}^2$$

With mounting height 5.5 ft (1.7 m) above the working plane, estimated spacing criteria of 1.8 transverse and 1.2 parallel yield maxima of 9.9 ft (3 m) transverse and 6.6 ft (2 m) parallel for fixture centerlines. We would test grids of 9 × 5 ft (2.7 × 1.5 m) and 8 × 6 ft (2.4 × 1.8 m) using computer software to see which yielded better results for uniformity of illumination and lower reflected glare in *all* directions because, as noted previously, viewing directions will probably vary. In the absence of appropriate software, we would select a 9 × 6 ft (2.7 × 1.8 m) grid to take advantage of the batwing characteristic. Note the important fact that a maintained level of 500 lux (50 fc) of high-quality illuminance for VDT areas is achieved with a power density of less than 1.6 W/ft² (17.54 W/m²). ■

15.23 ZONAL CAVITY CALCULATION BY APPROXIMATION

Although the foregoing zonal cavity calculations are straightforward and essentially simple, they can become tedious if more than a few areas are involved. Two alternatives exist: to utilize one of the many computer programs available or simply to shorten the calculations with reasonable approximations. Computer assistance is discussed in Sections 15.30

Step 1: **GENERAL INFORMATION**

(a) Project identification: _____
(Give name of area and/or building and room number)

(b) Average maintained illumination for design: _____ lux [footcandles]

Luminaire data:
(c) Manufacturer: _____
(d) Catalog number: _____

Lamp data:
(e) Type and color: _____
(f) Number per luminaire: _____
(g) Total lumens per luminaire: _____

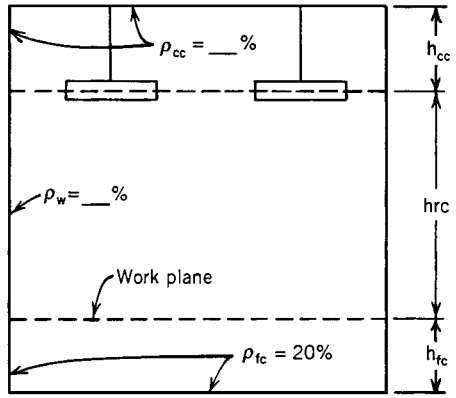
SELECTION OF COEFFICIENT OF UTILIZATION

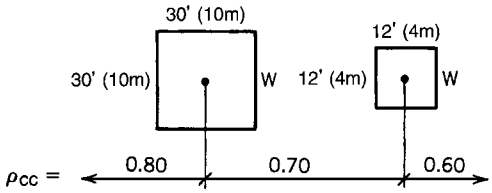
Step 2: Determine the equivalent square-room RCR (room cavity ratio):

$$W_{sq} = W + \frac{L-W}{3}$$

$$RCR = \frac{10\ hrc}{W_{sq}}$$

Step 3: Determine ceiling cavity equivalent reflectance by equivalent square room size.





Step 4: Fill in sketch of room above.
Step 5: Assume floor cavity reflectance ρ_{fc} = 20%.
Step 6: Obtain coefficient of utilization CU from manufacturer's data: CU = _____

Step 7: Light loss factor LLF
Good conditions: 0.65
Average conditions: 0.55
Poor conditions: 0.45

Step 8: **CALCULATIONS**

$$\text{Number of luminaires} = \frac{\text{Recommended illuminance x area}}{\text{(Lumens per luminaire) x (CU) x (LLF)}}$$

$$\text{OR} \quad \text{Lux [footcandles]} = \frac{\text{(Number of luminaires) x (lumens per luminaire) x (CU) x (LLF)}}{\text{area m}^2\ (\text{ft}^2)}$$

Fig. 15.40 *Sheet for illuminance calculation using an approximate zonal cavity method based on a method developed by B. F. Jones.*

and 15.31 and Appendix M. An effective computational method using approximations is demonstrated in this section, which is based upon a method developed by B. F. Jones.

Fill in the calculation sheet for illuminance calculation by approximation, as shown in Fig. 15.40. Assume that all rooms are square. To do this for a rectangle, take one-third of the difference in dimensions and add to the smaller dimension to obtain the equivalent width w. Then, for square rooms

$$RCR = \frac{10\ h_{RC}}{w}$$

Then, using the calculated side dimension of the square equivalent room, assume:

1. $\rho_{CC} = 0.80$ for a large room, that is, equal to or larger than 30×30 ft (10×10 m).
   $\rho_{CC} = 0.70$ for a medium room, that is, between 30×30 ft (10×10 m) and 12×12 ft (4×4 m).
   $\rho_{CC} = 0.60$ for a small room, that is, equal to or smaller than 12×12 ft (4×4 m).
2. Assume that $\rho_{FC} = 0.20$.
3. Assume that LLF = 0.65 for good conditions, 0.55 for average conditions, and 0.45 for poor conditions.

EXAMPLE 15.3. Classroom as in Example 15.1 by approximation.

1. "Square" the room.

$$W_{SQ} = 6 + \frac{8-6}{3} = 6\,\tfrac{2}{3}$$

2. Assume

$$\rho_{CC} = 70;\ \rho_W = 50;\ \rho_{FC} = 20$$

3. Calculate RCR

$$\text{RCR} = \frac{10 \times 1.95}{6\,\frac{2}{3}} = \frac{19.5}{6.66} = 2.93$$

4. Obtain CU from Table 15.1, fixture No. 44. CU = 0.52 by visual inspection.
5. Calculate fixtures

$$N = \frac{500(6 \times 8\text{ m})}{2(3200)(0.52)(0.55)}$$

$$= 13.11 \text{ fixtures}$$

Thus, the result is substantially the same as the accurate calculation. Let us also check Example 15.2. ■

EXAMPLE 15.4. Office as in Example 15.2 by approximation.

1. $w_{SQ} = 60 + \dfrac{100-60}{3} = 73$ ft
2. $\rho_{CC} = 80;\ \rho w = 50;\ \rho_{FC} = 20$
3. $\text{RCR} = \dfrac{10 \times 5.5}{73} = \dfrac{55}{73} = 0.75$
4. CU = 0.66 by inspection (mental interpolation)
5. LLF = 0.55
6. $\text{area/luminaire} = \dfrac{2 \times 2800 \times 0.66 \times 0.55}{50 \text{ fc}}$

$$= 40.6 \text{ sq ft } (3.8 \text{ m}^2)$$

This result is within 5.5% of the accurate calculation. Thus, we see that these simple approximations give answers sufficiently accurate for most uses and are therefore recommended. ■

In conclusion, then, with respect to zonal cavity calculations, we can make the following statements:

1. For preliminary and routine calculations of rectangular rooms, with assumed reflectances, use the assumptions listed previously. A modified calculation form is provided in Fig. 15.40 to assist with this method.
2. For rooms where a high degree of accuracy is desired and actual reflectances are known, use the long method with visual interpolation.
3. For rooms of unusual shape or rooms with special conditions, such as coffered ceilings, mixed-material walls, and partial height partitions, use computer assistance.
4. For spaces in which a number of different solutions are to be tried, use a computer.

15.24 EFFECT OF CAVITY REFLECTANCES ON ILLUMINANCE

The reflectances of the various room cavities have a marked effect on the CU because of light reflections within the room. To demonstrate this graphically, we have plotted in Figs. 15.41, 15.42, and 15.43 the effect of varying cavity reflectances on the three principal types of fixture distribution: semi-indirect, direct-indirect, and direct-spread. Note that as expected, ceiling cavity reflectance has the most pronounced effect with indirect fixtures and floor reflectance with direct units. Because lighting costs amount to 3% to 5% of the total construction cost for many types of buildings such as offices, a 20% differential in lighting fixtures can amount to as much as 1% of the total cost of a facility. This amount would not only pay for the increased cost of higher-reflectance finishes and materials but would also reduce both initial and operating costs. These data clearly indicate

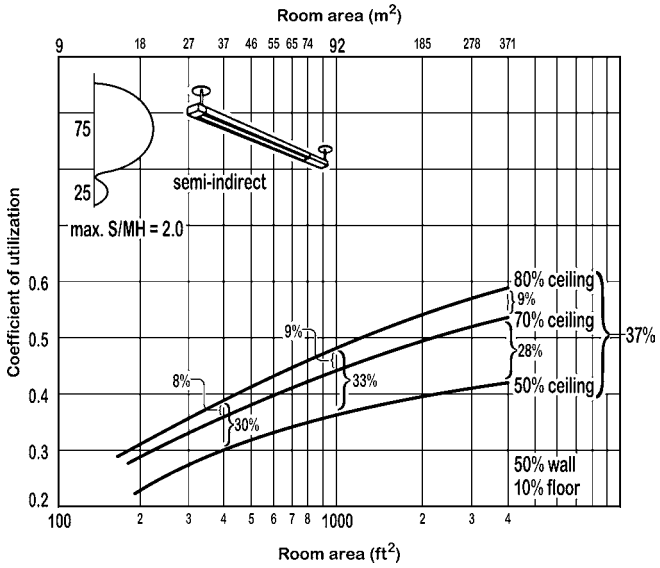


Fig. 15.41 *Effect of surface reflectances on the CU of a luminaire with semi-indirect distribution. As expected, because the ceiling becomes the light source, its reflectance has the most pronounced effect. With this particular unit having a 25% downward component, the floor finish also has an appreciable effect, increasing the CU by an average of 10% for a 30% reflectance floor. The effect of wall reflectance naturally increases as rooms become smaller and the proportion of wall surface becomes larger. The change in CU between a 30% and a 50% reflectance wall varies from 15% for a 400-ft² (37-m²) room to 5% for a 4000-ft² (372-m²) room. (Redrawn with SI units by Lisa Leal.)*

the necessity for the lighting designer to have considerable influence on the selection of room materials and finishes, a situation that, unfortunately, does not usually occur.

15.25 MODULAR LIGHTING DESIGN

An increasingly large number of buildings are being designed around a modular system, resulting in a need for flexible lighting to fit the module utilized. In such buildings, once the general lighting scheme and luminaire are established, it is convenient to draw a family of curves for the fixture chosen, thereby facilitating the utilization of the modular unit in various spaces. "Area" may readily be replaced with multiples of modular areas, as shown in Fig. 15.44.

15.26 CALCULATING ILLUMINANCE AT A POINT

The lumen (flux) method of horizontal illuminance calculation explained previously is appropriate for spaces in which illuminance is essentially uniform throughout. However, even in such a space, illuminance varies at least ±10% and, near columns, walls, windows, bookcases, and the like, considerably more. Therefore, to answer the often asked question "How much light will I have on my desk?" the designer must turn to other methods. Three are available:

1. Calculation of illuminance at selected points by computer, as explained in Section 15.31
2. Utilization of one of the design aids explained in Section 15.27
3. Longhand calculation by one of the methods presented in Sections 15.28 through 15.30

These methods also yield results where the lumen method is simply inapplicable. Among such situations are layouts that are intentionally nonuniform; calculation of illuminance on planes other than horizontal (e.g., wallwashers); calculation of illuminance resulting from architectural lighting elements such as coves, valances, and the like; and illuminance calculations for nonstandard light sources for which CU data of the type given in Table 15.1 are not available.

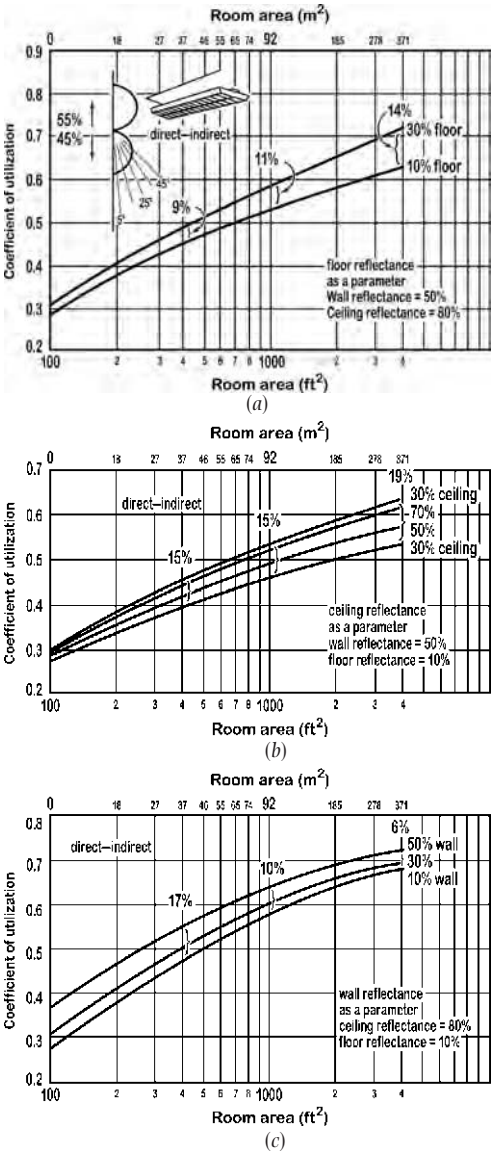


Fig. 15.42 *Effect of surface reflectances (a: floor, b: ceiling, c: wall) on the CU of a luminaire with direct-indirect distribution. With this distribution, the effects of the ceiling and floor are most pronounced, with an appreciable wall effect only in small rooms. (Redrawn with SI units by Lisa Leal.)*

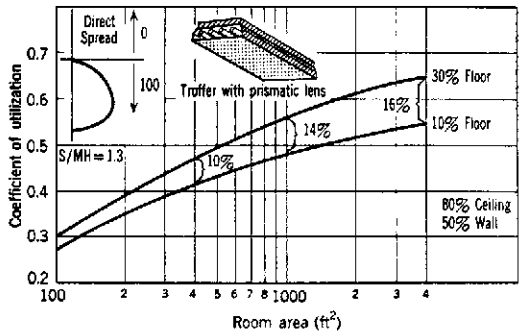


Fig. 15.43 *Effect of surface reflectances on the CU of a luminaire with direct (spread) distribution. Floor finish is most important, with wall reflectance important only in small rooms. As these fixtures have no upward component, all ceiling illumination is derived from reflection. Thus, in a room with floor reflectance of less than 20%, ceiling finish has no effect on room illumination.*

15.27 DESIGN AIDS

By *design aids* we mean any of the various curves, charts, plots, or tables either prepared by the designer or made available by luminaire manufacturers, the purpose of which is to simplify and speed lighting design when using a particular lighting fixture. The reliability of data so obtained depends entirely on the manufacturer involved, and their use should be governed accordingly. More recently, it has become customary for major manufacturers to provide computer output charts and tables based on the designers' proposed layout(s). When using these, it behooves the designer to carefully study the data input to the computer program, as the fixture supplier is certainly not a disinterested party, and the program may be "weighted" accordingly. A brief description of common design aids follows.

(a) Isolux Charts

These charts, also called *isofootcandle charts*, are based on the type traditionally supplied by manufacturers of outdoor lighting equipment, such as street lights and floodlights, but are equally applicable to interior lighting. Their use is illustrated in Fig. 15.45. The basic tool is an isolux diagram for a single luminaire. This is either calculated (see Sections 15.28 and 15.29), measured from a full-scale mockup (the most accurate if not the most practical method), or obtained from the manufacturer. Inasmuch as the relative positions of the

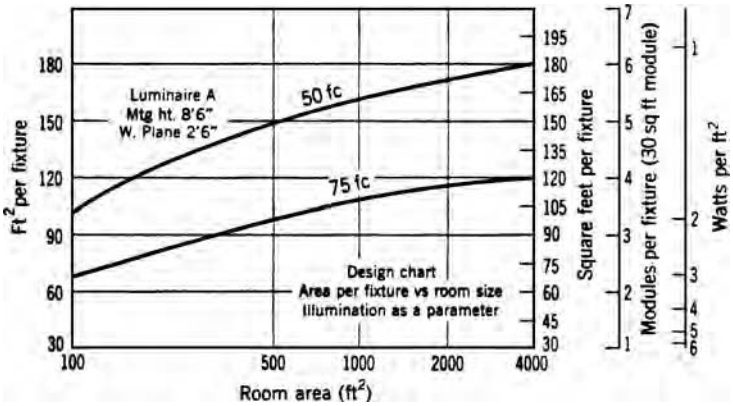
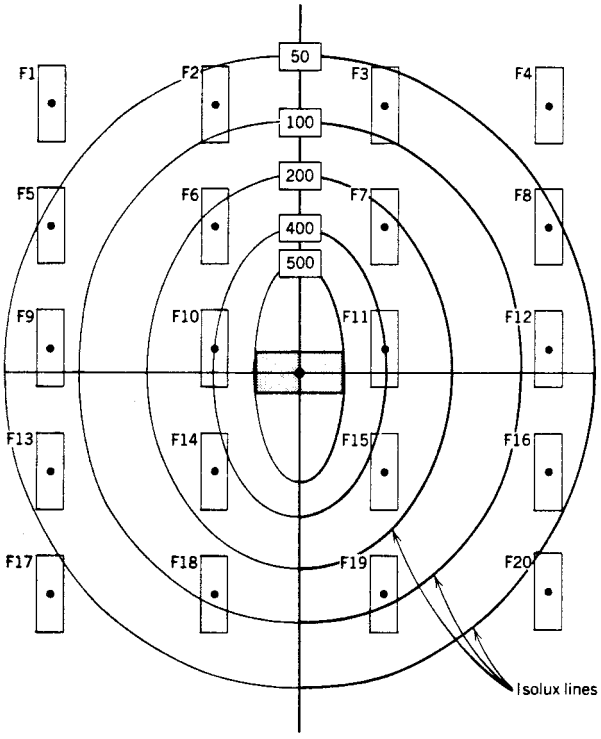


Fig. 15.44 *Luminaire design chart. For frequently used fixtures, this type of chart gives an easy design figure for various size rooms. As seen from the ordinates, the figures can be translated into number of modules and watts per square foot.*

source and illuminated point are reversible—that is, if a source at A causes illuminance E at point B, then the source at B will cause the same illuminance E at point A—placing the center of the isolux chart at the point in question permits direct reading of the illuminance contribution of every other luminaire. It then remains simply to sum the individual contributions to obtain the (scalar) illuminance at the desired point. An example is shown in Fig. 15.45.



Luminaire	*Contribution (Lux)*
F2, F3	75 × 2
F5, F8	50 × 2
F6, F7	225 × 2
F9, F12	75 × 2
F10, F11	400 × 2
F13, F16	60 × 2
F14, F15	300 × 2
F18, F19	100 × 2
	2570 lux total

Fig. 15.45 *The ellipses represent isolux lines for a single luminaire at a given height above the work plane. They are centered on the point (the work area of a desk) for which the illuminance must be determined. The total illuminance at that point is the sum of the individual luminaire contributions. The center of the luminaire is the point of reference. Therefore, when two or more isolux lines pass through a fixture, its contribution is determined by the interpolated isolux line passing through its center. Note the symmetry around the vertical axis, necessitating a plot of only half of the ellipses.*

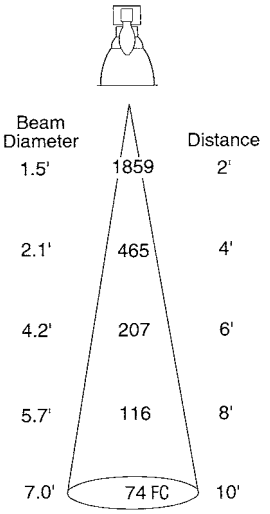


Fig. 15.46 *For downlights with symmetrical circular distribution, a "cone of light," as shown, can be drawn. The illuminance at varying distances on the beam centerline directly below the luminaire is given in the center column. A circle at the circumference of which the illuminance is half of this maximum is drawn at each distance from the downlight (2 ft, 4 ft, etc.). The numbers in the left column show the diameter of this (beam) circle. (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF.)*

(b) Illuminance "Cone" Charts

See Fig. 15.46. When the light distribution of a direct downlight is symmetrical, as is generally the case, a cone can be drawn showing the illuminance directly under the fixture at various distances. The projected circles are defined by maximum illuminance at the center and half of this illuminance at the edge. This projected circle can be used in the same fashion as the isolux chart in the preceding section, except that only two values are given—that at the center and that on the circumference.

(c) Illuminance Tables and Charts

These take various forms but all give specific illuminance data, in numerical form, for specific points. The values are obtained from a computer printout or an actual test. Figure 15.47 shows the illuminance pattern on a wall produced by the wallwasher version of the downlight shown in Fig. 15.46. The difference between the two fixtures is the addition of an interior reflector in the wallwasher version.

15.28 CALCULATING ILLUMINANCE FROM A POINT SOURCE

It is well to note at the outset that all of the following methods calculate illuminance at a *point*. The answer to the query "How much light will I have on my desk from a luminaire at this location?" is arrived at by taking several points on the desk and calculating illuminance at each one. Shortcuts can be made for symmetry and so on. Most of these calculations are lengthy and are generally performed by a consulting engineer or lighting specialist rather than the architect. They are presented here as background material to describe the technical nature of lighting design.

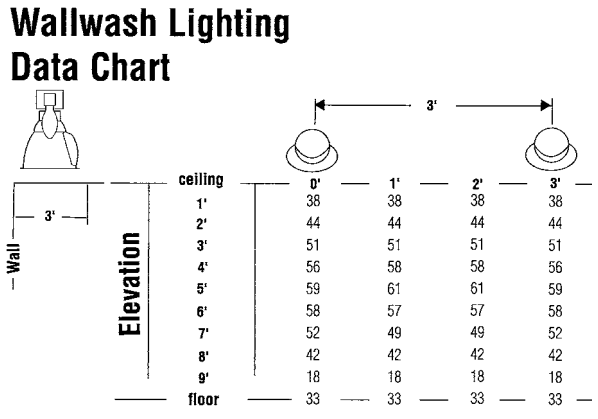


Fig. 15.47 *Addition of an interior reflector to the downlight of Fig. 15.46 converts it to a dual-purpose downlight and wallwash unit. The wall illuminances produced by multiple units spaced 3 ft (0.9 m) apart and ceiling-mounted 3 ft (0.9 m) from the wall are given in the chart. Similar charts are available for other luminaire spacings. (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF.)*

The basis of point source calculations is the inverse square law developed in Section 11.12:

$$fc = \frac{cp}{D^2}$$

where *fc*, *cp*, and *D* are footcandle illuminance, candlepower intensity, and distance, respectively. Refer to Fig. 15.48. The horizontal illuminance at a point *P* as shown in Fig. 15.48 is

$$\text{horizontal } E = \frac{cp}{D^2}\cos\theta \qquad (15.14)$$

and the vertical illuminance at that same point is

$$\text{vertical } E = \frac{cp}{D^2}\sin\theta \qquad (15.15)$$

However, because

$$\cos\theta = \frac{H}{D} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\theta = \frac{R}{D}$$

we have then at point *P*

$$\text{horizontal illuminance} = \frac{cp}{H^2}\cos^3\theta \qquad (15.16)$$

$$\text{vertical illuminance} = \frac{cp}{R^2}\sin^3\theta \qquad (15.17)$$

Inasmuch as the candlepower intensity in the direction of point *P* is taken from a candlepower distribution curve, and θ is known, these expressions are readily usable. Very few commercial light sources are actually point sources. However, *when the maximum dimension of the source is less than five times the distance to point P*, the equations give satisfactory results. Note that these equations can be used to calculate and plot isolux diagrams for point sources of the type shown in Figs. 15.45 and 15.46.

EXAMPLE 15.5 Referring to Fig. 15.48 and the candlepower distribution curve of Fig. 15.49, find the horizontal and vertical illuminance at point *P*, which is 10 ft (3 m) below and 12 ft (3.7 m) horizontally distant from the source.

SOLUTION

$$H = 10 \text{ ft} \quad R = 12 \text{ ft}$$

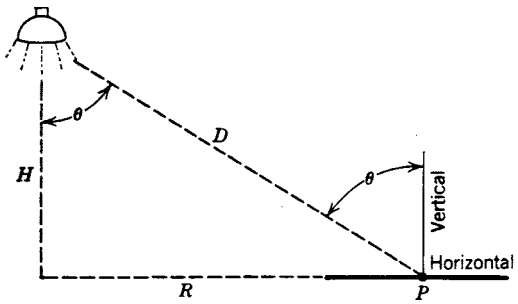
$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{12}{10} = 50°$$

$$\sin\theta = 0.766 \quad \cos\theta = 0.643$$

cp at 50° = 6600 (from Fig. 15.49)

$$\text{Horizontal illuminance} = \frac{6600}{10^2} = (0.643)^3 = 17.5 \text{ fc}$$

$$\text{vertical illuminance} = \frac{6600}{12^2} = (0.766)^3 = 20.8 \text{ fc} \blacksquare$$



Horizontal footcandles at point *P*

$$E_H = \frac{CP \times \cos\theta}{D^2} = \frac{CP}{H^2}\cos^3\theta$$

Vertical footcandles at point *P*

$$E_V = \frac{CP \times \sin\theta}{D^2} = \frac{CP}{R^2}\sin^3\theta$$

Fig. 15.48 *Relationship between intensity in candlepower (cp) and illuminance when the source can be considered a point source—that is, when the inverse square law applies. Source major dimension must not exceed 0.2D to be considered a point source. Measurement in feet yields fc; distances in meters yield lux.*

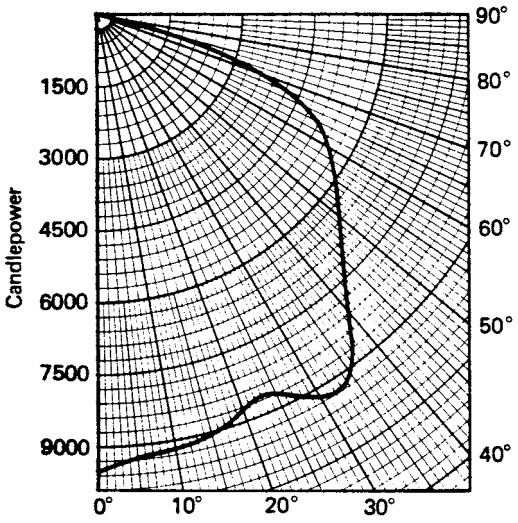


Fig. 15.49 *Typical candlepower distribution plot for use in inverse square law calculation.*

15.29 CALCULATING ILLUMINANCE FROM LINEAR AND AREA SOURCES

When the source is too large to be considered a point source (the definition is relative and depends on the distance to the illuminated surface), it is referred to as either a *linear source* or an *area source*. The *direct component* of the illuminance at a point, resulting from such sources, can be calculated by manual graphical or analytical means, both of which are based on an assumed distribution, generally Lambertian (diffuse). Inasmuch as most lighting fixtures being applied today do *not* have Lambertian characteristics (e.g., parabolic reflectors, prismatic diffusers), the results of such calculations are necessarily approximate. (Skylights and luminous ceilings *do* have a Lambertian distribution, and for these sources these calculation methods do give reliable results.) In addition to the direct component of illuminance, a *reflected component* must be added that depends on the point's location in the room and the room characteristics. The calculations involve charts, diagrams, and tables. The interested reader will find a full description of these manual methods in the IESNA *Lighting Handbook* (2000).

Because these manual methods are laborious and frequently less than reliable, they are not presented here. The ready availability of desktop computers and computer programs that can handle detailed input for a specific light source, without broad approximations, has made these manual procedures obsolete. We recommend that when point-by-point illuminance calculation is desired, such a program be used. Alternatively, one of the design aids described previously, based on a specific light source, can be used.

15.30 COMPUTER-AIDED LIGHTING DESIGN

As pointed out in previous sections, the use of computers in lighting design is a practical necessity because of the complexity of calculations. Once the desired luminance patterns and illuminance levels have been established, and luminaires selected and located by using either average illuminance (zonal cavity) calculations or one of the design aids previously demonstrated and/or the manufacturer's assistance, the responsible designer will confirm the preliminary design solution with accurate calculations. Furthermore, only a computer analysis will give useful point-by-point illuminance figures plus valuable data on VCP and reflected glare for selected work locations and viewing directions.

In addition, computer analysis gives the designer a degree of flexibility not otherwise possible in that:

1. The calculations are performed accurately and rapidly.
2. The designer is freed for other, less routine work.
3. The designer has the ability to change parameters repeatedly without making the analysis excessively burdensome, as would be the case with hand calculations.

It is this last characteristic that gives the designer greatest flexibility. The ability to run a series of calculations for a pendant fixture with varying pendant lengths, or to change paint colors and reflectances for various surfaces and note the effect, or to test different layout patterns, as mentioned in Example 15.2, gives the designer a very powerful and extremely useful design tool. In addition, computer analysis can consider related items, such as first costs, energy use, operating costs, and impact on HVAC systems—items whose complexity because of interrelations puts them well beyond the pencil-and-hand-calculator's ability. A few lighting analysis programs currently available are listed in Appendix M.

15.31 COMPUTER-AIDED LIGHTING DESIGN: ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

In order to demonstrate the huge amount of accurately calculated data available at a designer's fingertips when using any of the comprehensive lighting design programs, we have chosen to run Example 15.2 with a typical program: Lumen-Micro 7 (© Lighting Technologies, Boulder, CO). The first step, of course, is to input the data and the target illuminance. For convenience they are repeated here:

- Room: 60 ft × 100 ft × 8 ft (18.3 × 30.5 × 2.4 m)
- Reflectances: 0.80 ceiling, 0.50 wall, 0.30 floor
- Required uniform illuminance: 50 fc (500 lux)
- Luminaire: recessed parabolic troffer

Most lighting analysis programs (like this one) have a large library of luminaires that is constantly

updated, plus an efficient search program. This obviates the tiresome task of physically searching through several dozen catalogs and the even more tiresome task of keeping the catalogs current. We decided to use a 2-ft (0.6-m) square luminaire in order to reduce the possibility of both direct and reflected glare to persons viewing the fixture crosswise, and further chose to use U-shaped lamps. A very rapid search of the software's extensive library of lighting fixtures resulted in the selection of the luminaire shown in Fig. 15.50 (as printed from the program's library). On the basis of a preliminary calculation, an area of approximately 75 ft^2 (7 m^2) per fixture seemed appropriate (because in the original longhand calculation an area of about 50 ft^2 (4.6 m^2) was used for a two-lamp fixture). A row spacing of 7.5 ft (2.3 m) and a column spacing of 10 ft (3.0 m) was input to the analysis software, and a complete point-by-point calculation was run for horizontal and vertical illuminance, VCP and relative visual performance (RVP). The numerical results are shown in Figs. 15.51 to 15.53. As the room is very large and symmetrical and is being calculated with no daylight contribution, a calculation for one-quarter of the space is sufficient. Figure 15.51 gives a summary of the results. If daylighting calculations had been done, their results would be shown as well. The *average* illuminance in the space is 48 fc, compared to the 50-fc target illuminance, and is therefore well within the desired range. Unit power density (UPD) is only 1.29 W/ft^2 (13.9 W/$m^{2)}$ which is within the requirements of the major energy codes. The Luminaire Summary shows the fixture chosen; had several units been used, all would be listed. Similarly, a list of luminaires in their positions in the space appears at the bottom of the figure. Inasmuch as only one type was used in this space, the long, repetitive list was truncated. Figure 15.52 is a printout of the point-by-point horizontal illuminance on the working plane (30 in. [760 mm] AFF), and it immediately demonstrates the value of a point-by-point calculation. Although the *average* illuminance is 48 fc and therefore satisfies the target requirement, the illuminance drops to as low as 38.5 fc and increases to 65 fc in the body of the space, away from the walls. (The calculation grid is 2.5 ft by 2.5 ft [0.76 by 0.76 m].) In practice, this situation might cause the designer to select a closer fixture spacing or perhaps change the luminaire, because 38.5 fc is 23% below the target illuminance.

On another printout of horizontal illuminance (Fig. 15.53) we have plotted luminaire locations, desk locations, and one drafting table. (The plan is not scalable because the printout row and column spacings are different.) Note that on desks against the wall, the *average* illuminance is near 50 fc, whereas on the drafting table it is about 45 fc because of its location. A staggered arrangement might improve uniformity, and therein lies one of the great advantages of computer calculation. With an additional half hour of work, an experienced designer who is accustomed to working with a given program could try three luminaires, each in three different arrays, and compare the results to arrive at an optimum lighting/economic solution.

Figure 15.54 shows partial printouts of three other metrics of the lighting design. Vertical illuminance (Fig. 15.54*a*) is useful for visual tasks on other than horizontal surfaces. In conventional offices where the majority of work is done on the horizontal plane, vertical illuminance is not critical. As pointed out repeatedly in previous sections, diffuse lighting is required to achieve good vertical surface illumination from overhead sources. In this space, with direct lighting only and (effectively) no walls to reflect light and increase diffusion, vertical illumination comes primarily as a component of direct lighting, with a small contribution from light rereflected from the floor (see Fig. 16.29).

Figure 15.54*b* indicates uniformly high VCP when looking north (directly ahead). This is to be expected from a parabolic reflector luminaire, which is noted for low luminance and therefore low direct glare. Relative visual performance (RVP) is the metric that replaced equivalent spherical illumination (ESI) as an indication of suprathreshold visual response, considering task size, contrast, and background luminance. The task we selected for these calculations is a difficult one: HB pencil on vellum, on a white table. Nevertheless, the calculations indicate perfect RVP. In the discussion of reflected glare, ESI and RVP in Sections 11.29 and 11.30, we expressed serious reservations about the usefulness of RVP as a visual performance metric when considering veiling reflections; the results shown in Fig. 15.54*c* seem to reinforce these reservations.

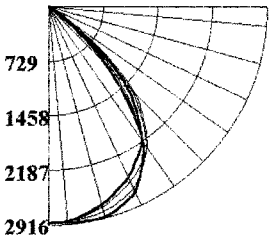
Graphical output is often easier to grasp than a raft of numbers. Using the same calculation grid as previously, we printed out horizontal illuminance

Photometric Report - Lithonia - Optimax - 2PMO 3U31 12LS

LM

Photometric Summary:

Luminous size: 2.0 x 2.0 x 0.0 ft
No. of Lamps: 3
Lamp Lumens: 2800
Input Wattage: 97
Efficiency: 60.0%
Max Candela: 2916



No. of Lamps:	3	Lamp Lumens:	2800	
Multiplier:	1	Input Wattage:	97	
Ballast Factor:	1	Ball/Lamp Factor:	1	
Horz. Angles:	5			
Vert. Angles:	11			

	0°	22.5°	45°	67.5°	90°
0°	2888	2888	2888	2888	2888
5°	2881	2880	2882	2889	2893
15°	2738	2771	2837	2898	2916
25°	2515	2580	2685	2750	2745
35°	2188	2300	2297	2186	2241
45°	1494	1653	1578	1272	1089
55°	247	351	296	48	17
65°	3	8	1	10	1
75°	0	10	0	0	1
85°	0	0	0	0	1
90°	0	0	0	0	0

COEFFICIENTS OF UTILIZATION - Zonal Cavity Method:

Floor Refl(%) = 20

Ceiling Refl(%)	80				70				50			30			10			0
Wall Refl(%)	70	50	30	10	70	50	30	10	50	30	10	50	30	10	50	30	10	0
RCR																		
0	71	71	71	71	70	70	70	70	67	67	67	64	64	64	61	61	61	60
1	68	66	64	62	66	64	63	61	62	61	59	60	59	58	58	57	56	55
2	63	60	57	55	62	59	56	54	57	55	53	55	53	52	53	52	51	50
3	59	55	51	48	58	54	51	48	52	50	47	51	48	47	49	47	46	45
4	56	50	46	43	54	49	46	43	48	45	42	47	44	42	46	43	41	40
5	52	46	42	39	51	45	41	39	44	41	38	43	40	38	42	40	37	36
6	49	42	38	35	48	42	38	35	41	37	34	40	37	34	39	36	34	33
7	45	39	35	32	45	38	34	31	38	34	31	37	34	31	36	33	31	30
8	43	36	32	29	42	36	31	29	35	31	29	34	31	28	33	30	28	27
9	40	33	29	26	39	33	29	26	32	29	26	32	28	26	31	28	26	25
10	38	31	27	24	37	31	27	24	30	26	24	30	26	24	29	26	24	23

$$RCR = \frac{5 * H * (\text{Room Length} + \text{Room Width})}{(\text{Room Length} * \text{Room Width})}$$

H = distance between workplane and luminaire plane

Fig. 15.50 *Photometric report obtained from the computer library of Lumen-Micro 7© as a result of a search for a suitable 2-ft (610-mm) square, recessed parabolic luminaire for the example in Section 15.31. (Courtesy of Lighting Technologies, Boulder, CO.)*

Output Generated by Lumen Micro 7 for Windows. Copyright 1996 Lighting Technologies, Inc., Boulder, Colorado

Room / Site Summary

Room 10 (Floor 1)

Calculation Summary

	Attained
Zonal Cavity Illum.*:	48 fc
Unit Power Density:	1.29 W/sq. ft.

*Zonal cavity illuminance does not take into account objects within the space or daylighting.

Room Summary

Overall Size:	100 ft. x 60 ft. x 8 ft.
Reflectances:	Ceiling: .8
	Walls: .5
	Floor: .3

Daylighting Information

Latitude:	0
Longitude:	0
Ground Refl.:	0
Bldg. Rotation:	0

Luminaire Summary

Type	Catalog Number
2PMO 3U	Lithonia "Optimax" 2PMO 3U31 12LS

Luminaire Positions

Type	X	Y	Z	Rotate
2PMO 3U	5.00	3.75	8.00	0.00
2PMO 3U	15.00	3.75	8.00	0.00

Fig. 15.51 *Summary of the results of a single layout plan. (Courtesy of Lighting Technologies, Boulder, CO.)*

contours overlaid with the point-by-point calculations in Fig. 15.55. (They can just as easily be printed separately.) The rectangular boxes in the figure are closed 40-fc contour lines.

15.32 AVERAGE LUMINANCE CALCULATIONS

The basic equations relating luminance to candela intensity and to illuminance are covered in Section 11.8, which also deals with the calculation of source luminance and reflected luminance when the illuminance is known. Thus, once horizontal illuminance has been calculated by any of the methods described previously and the reflectance of an object is known, its horizontal luminance can readily be calculated (see Section 11.8). However, as explained in detail in Sections 11.32 and 11.33 (which discuss lighting quality) and in Sections 13.10 through 13.16 (which deal with lighting systems and patterns) the luminance

Calculation Grid: Horizontal Grid #1 (1 of 1)

Room 10 (Floor 1)

Grid Summary

Grid Properties

Grid Type:	Horizontal Illuminance
Grid Height:	2.50 ft
Units:	English

Calculation Grid

	1.3	3.8	6.3	8.8	11.3	13.8	16.3	18.8	21.3	Dis 23
28.8	35.9	59.2	59.2	38.6	38.7	59.4	59.5	38.7	38.9	59
26.3	38.2	65.0	64.9	41.5	41.6	65.1	65.2	41.6	41.8	65
23.8	36.0	59.3	59.2	38.6	38.8	59.5	59.5	38.7	38.9	59
21.3	36.1	59.4	59.4	38.8	38.9	59.6	59.7	38.9	39.0	59
18.8	38.1	64.9	64.8	41.4	41.6	65.1	65.1	41.5	41.7	64
16.3	36.1	59.4	59.3	38.8	38.9	59.6	59.6	38.9	39.0	59
13.8	35.8	59.1	59.1	38.5	38.6	59.3	59.4	38.6	38.7	59
11.3	38.2	65.1	64.9	41.5	41.7	65.2	65.2	41.6	41.7	65
8.8	35.8	59.1	59.1	38.5	38.7	59.4	59.4	38.6	38.7	59
6.3	36.5	59.5	59.5	38.9	39.1	59.8	59.8	39.0	39.2	59
3.8	37.1	63.5	63.3	40.6	40.9	63.8	63.8	40.7	40.9	63
1.3	30.0	47.0	46.8	32.1	32.9	47.4	47.6	32.1	32.5	47

Distance from Grid Origin Point

Fig. 15.52 *Point-by-point horizontal illuminance results. (Courtesy of Lighting Technology, Boulder, CO.)*

impression of a visual environment is affected more by vertical than by horizontal surface luminance. For this reason, it is important to be able to calculate *average* vertical surface (wall) luminance in the same simple, straightforward fashion used to calculate *average* horizontal illuminance. In addition, it is useful to know the average luminance of the ceiling cavity in a space in order to judge the contrast between all luminous objects, including luminaires, which have the ceiling cavity as background.

Straightforward calculation of both wall and ceiling cavity luminance (L_W and L_{CC}) is possible through the use of luminance coefficients that are similar in concept and application to coefficients of utilization. These coefficients are listed in Table 15.4 for some of the generic fixture types listed in Table 15.1. Others are listed in the *IESNA Lighting Handbook* (2000). For actual design calculations, it is preferable to obtain coefficients from luminaire manufacturers. The average luminance calculations are parallel to those for illuminance.

Average initial wall luminance (cd/m^2):

$$L_{CC} = \frac{\text{lamp lumens} \times \text{wall luminance coefficient}}{\pi \times \text{floor area in m}^2} \tag{15.18}$$

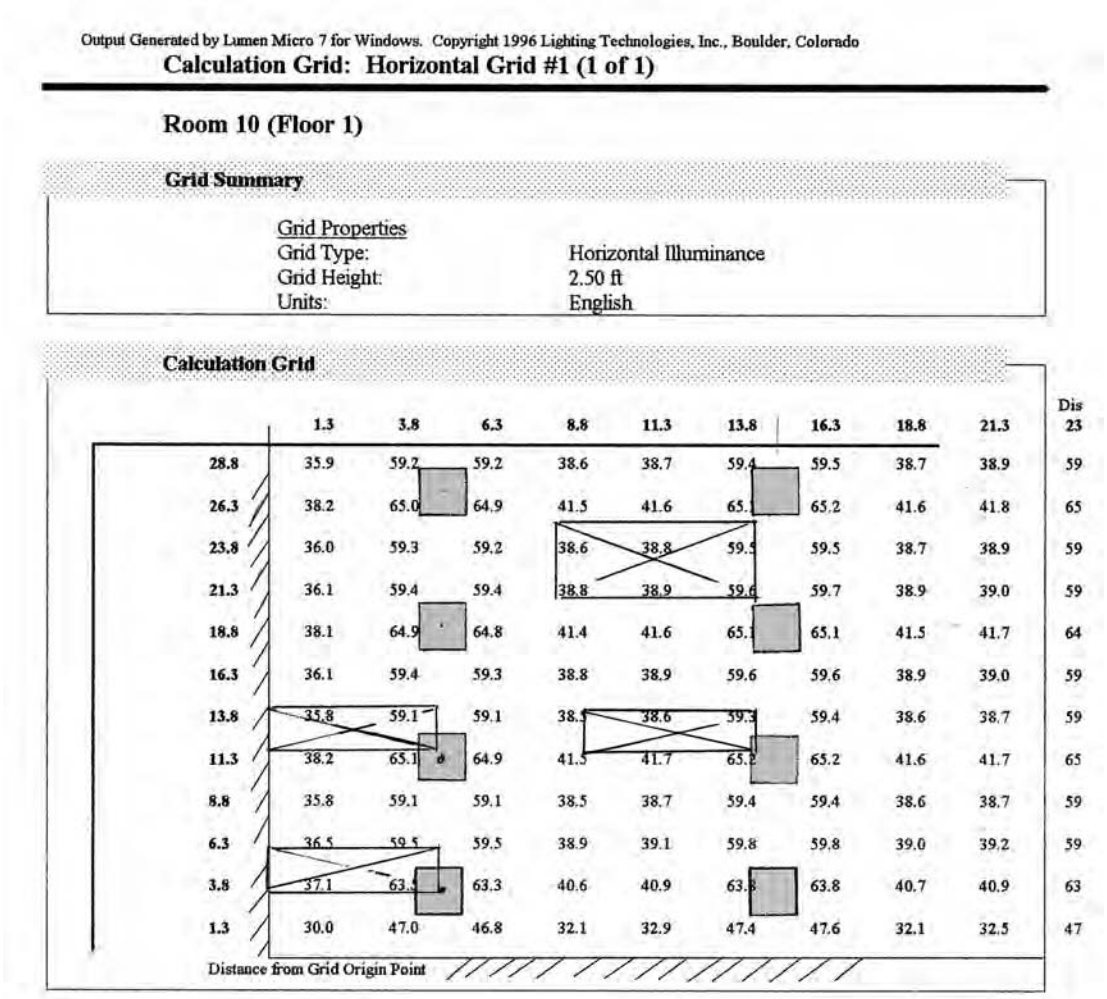


Fig. 15.53 *Illuminance chart with luminaires and proposed furniture layout plotted on the chart. (Chart courtesy of Lighting Technologies, Boulder, CO.)*

and average initial ceiling cavity luminance in cd/m^2:

$$L_w = \frac{\text{lamp lumens} \times \text{ceiling cavity coefficient}}{\pi \times \text{floor area in m}^2} \tag{15.19}$$

If area is expressed in square feet and π is omitted from these equations, L will be expressed in footlamberts.

To obtain *maintained* values, an LLF similar to that explained in Section 15.20 is introduced. It is calculated similarly, except that item 17 (see Fig. 15.37), room surface dirt, is calculated using the following figures:

Lighting System	Wall Luminance	Ceiling Luminance
Direct	0.82 ± 10%	0.75 ± 10%
Semi-direct	0.87 ± 7%	0.82 ± 10%
Direct-indirect	0.92 ± 5%	0.85 ± 8%
Semi-indirect	0.87 ± 7%	0.88 ± 7%
Indirect	0.82 ± 10%	0.90 ± 5%

For ceiling-mounted or recessed luminaires, L_{cc} is the average luminance of the ceiling between

Grid Summary

Grid Properties	
Grid Type:	Vertical Illuminance North
Grid Height:	2.50 ft
Units:	English

Calculation Grid

(a)

	1.3	3.8	6.3	8.8	11.3	13.8	16.3	18.8	21.3	Dis 23
28.8	15.8	22.1	22.4	16.9	17.3	23.0	23.1	17.2	17.3	22
26.3	11.2	13.4	13.7	13.0	13.3	14.3	14.4	13.3	13.4	14
23.8	15.5	23.8	24.1	16.7	17.1	24.8	24.9	17.0	17.1	24
21.3	15.8	22.5	22.9	17.5	17.8	23.6	23.7	17.7	17.8	23
18.8	12.6	13.9	14.2	13.5	13.9	14.9	15.0	13.8	13.9	14
16.3	15.8	24.2	24.5	17.1	17.4	25.1	25.3	17.3	17.4	25
13.8	11.4	19.4	20.0	14.6	14.8	20.6	20.7	14.9	15.0	20
11.3	13.1	14.4	14.7	14.0	14.4	15.4	15.6	14.3	14.5	15

Calculation Grid **VCP – NORTH**

(b)

	1.3	3.8	6.3	8.8	11.3	13.8	16.3	18.8	21.3	Dis 23
28.8	91.1	86.0	82.4	92.2	93.3	89.3	89.3	93.3	93.3	89
26.3	97.8	94.5	96.7	97.4	97.5	97.2	97.2	97.5	97.5	97
23.8	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100
21.3	91.1	86.0	82.4	92.2	93.3	89.3	89.3	93.4	93.4	89
18.8	97.8	94.5	96.7	97.4	97.5	97.2	97.2	97.5	97.5	97
16.3	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100
13.8	91.1	86.0	82.4	92.2	93.3	89.3	89.3	93.4	93.4	89
11.3	97.8	94.5	96.7	97.5	97.5	97.2	97.2	97.5	97.5	97

Calculation Grid **RVP – NORTH**

(c)

	1.3	3.8	6.3	8.8	11.3	13.8	16.3	18.8	21.3	Dis 23
28.8	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
26.3	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
23.8	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
21.3	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
18.8	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
16.3	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
13.8	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
11.3	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00

Fig. 15.54 *Partial printout report for the computer analysis of Example 15.2. (a) Point-by-point calculation of vertical illuminance at the working plane level. Note that it averages less than half of the horizontal illuminance. (b) VCP chart of the room. (c) RVP chart indicating perfect seeing conditions in the entire area looking north. (Courtesy of Lighting Technologies, Boulder, CO.)*

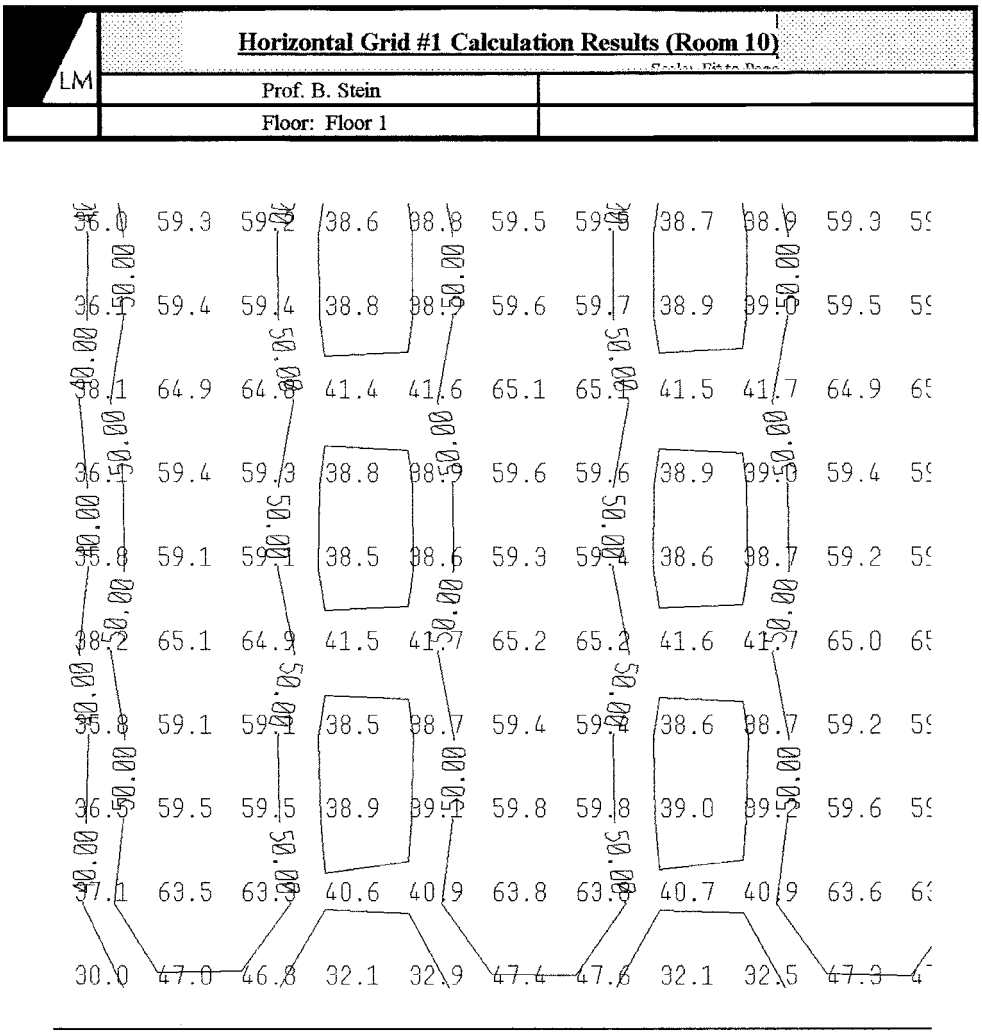


Fig. 15.55 *A combined graphic (contours) and point-by-point printout of horizontal illuminance for lighting design. The almost rectangular figures represent closed contours at 40 fc. (Courtesy of Lighting Technologies, Boulder, CO.)*

luminaires. For pendant luminaires, the calculated L_{cc} is that of an imaginary plane at the height of the luminaires. L_{cc} is useful in determining the brightness ratios when compared to luminaire luminance at the seeing angle involved. The ceiling cavity, like the wall, is assumed to have a Lambertian characteristic—that is, perfect diffuseness—making luminance independent of viewing angle.

It would be instructive to calculate the wall luminance of the office in Example 15.2. The photometric data in Fig. 15.39 do not include the wall luminance coefficient because luminance coefficients are not normally published by luminaire manufacturers. However, based on other available data, a figure of 0.22 for wall luminance is a good estimate given RCR, ρ_{cc}, and ρ_w of 0.66, 80%, and 30%, respectively. Initial wall luminance is then

$$L_w = \frac{3200 \times 0.22}{32\ \text{ft}^2} = 22\ \text{fL} = 75.5\ \text{cd/m}^2$$

This is within the preferred range of 25 to 150 cd/m^2 (see Table 11.3). In actuality, the average wall luminance would probably be higher because of the practice of placing the last row of luminaires quite close to the wall.

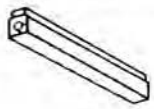
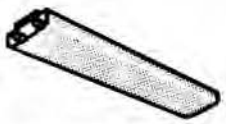
TABLE 15.4 Wall Luminance Coefficients and Ceiling Cavity Luminance Coefficients for Typical Luminaires

To obtain a luminance coefficient, follow the procedure detailed at the head of Table 15.1 to find a coefficient of utilization. Data should be obtained from manufacturers of actual luminaires used.

	ρ_{CC}:	80			50			80		50	
	ρ_w:	50	30	10	50	30	10	50	30	50	30
Typical Luminaire	*RCR*	*Wall Luminance Coefficients for ρ_{FC} = 20*						*Ceiling Cavity Luminance Coefficient ρ_{FC} = 20*			
1	0							.42	.42	.25	.25
	1	.32	.18	.06	.27	.15	.05	.42	.40	.25	.23
	2	.27	.15	.05	.23	.13	.04	.42	.38	.24	.23
	3	.24	.13	.04	.20	.11	.03	.41	.37	.24	.22
	4	.21	.11	.03	.17	.09	.03	.41	.36	.24	.22
	5	.19	.10	.03	.16	.08	.02	.40	.35	.24	.21
	6	.18	.09	.03	.14	.07	.02	.39	.34	.23	.21
	7	.16	.08	.02	.13	.07	.02	.39	.34	.23	.21
	8	.15	.07	.02	.12	.06	.02	.38	.34	.23	.20
Pendant diffusing sphere	9	.14	.07	.02	.12	.06	.02	.38	.33	.23	.20
with incandescent lamp	10	.13	.06	.02	.11	.05	.01	.37	.33	.22	.20
3	0							.15	.15	.09	.09
	1	.23	.13	.04	.21	.12	.04	.15	.13	.09	.08
	2	.22	.12	.04	.21	.11	.04	.14	.11	.08	.07
	3	.21	.11	.03	.20	.11	.03	.13	.10	.08	.06
	4	.20	.10	.03	.19	.10	.03	.13	.08	.08	.05
	5	.19	.09	.03	.18	.09	.03	.12	.08	.07	.05
	6	.18	.09	.03	.17	.09	.02	.12	.07	.07	.04
	7	.17	.08	.02	.16	.08	.02	.11	.06	.07	.04
Porcelain-enamaled	8	.16	.08	.02	.15	.07	.02	.11	.06	.06	.04
ventilated standard dome	9	.15	.07	.02	.14	.07	.02	.10	.05	.06	.03
with incandescent lamp	10	.14	.07	.02	.13	.07	.02	.10	.05	.06	.03
7	0							.08	.08	.04	.04
	1	.06	.03	.01	.05	.03	.01	.08	.07	.04	.04
	2	.05	.03	.01	.05	.03	.01	.07	.06	.04	.04
	3	.05	.03	.01	.04	.02	.01	.06	.05	.04	.03
	4	.05	.02	.01	.04	.02	.01	.05	.04	.03	.03
	5	.05	.02	.01	.04	.02	.01	.05	.04	.03	.02
	6	.04	.02	.01	.04	.02	.01	.05	.03	.03	.02
Reflector downlight with	7	.04	.02	.01	.04	.02	.01	.04	.03	.03	.02
battles and inside-frosted	8	.04	.02	.01	.04	.02	.01	.04	.03	.02	.02
lamp (see note on this unit	9	.04	.02	.01	.04	.02	.01	.04	.02	.02	.02
in Table 15.1)	10	.04	.02	.00	.04	.02	.01	.04	.02	.02	.01
28	0							.27	.27	.16	.16
	1	.17	.10	.03	.14	.08	.03	.26	.24	.15	.14
	2	.16	.09	.03	.14	.08	.02	.25	.23	.15	.14
	3	.15	.08	.02	.13	.07	.02	.24	.21	.14	.13
	4	.15	.08	.02	.13	.07	.02	.24	.21	.14	.12
	5	.14	.07	.02	.12	.06	.02	.23	.20	.14	.12
	6	.13	.07	.02	.11	.06	.02	.23	.19	.14	.12
	7	.13	.06	.02	.11	.06	.02	.23	.19	.13	.11
Diffuse aluminum reflector	8	.12	.06	.02	.11	.05	.02	.22	.18	.13	.11
with 35° crosswise and 35°	9	.12	.06	.02	.10	.05	.01	.22	.18	.13	.11
lengthwise shielding	10	.11	.05	.01	.10	.05	.01	.22	.18	.13	.11
33	0							.65	.65	.38	.38
	1	.20	.12	.04	.13	.08	.02	.65	.63	.38	.37
	2	.19	.10	.03	.12	.07	.02	.64	.61	.38	.37
	3	.17	.09	.03	.11	.06	.02	.64	.60	.37	.36
	4	.16	.08	.02	.11	.06	.02	.63	.59	.37	.36
	5	.15	.08	.02	.10	.05	.02	.63	.59	.37	.36
	6	.14	.07	.02	.09	.05	.01	.60	.58	.37	.35
	7	.13	.07	.02	.09	.04	.01	.62	.58	.37	.35
Luminous bottom-	8	.12	.06	.02	.08	.04	.01	.61	.57	.37	.35
suspended unit with extra-	9	.12	.06	.02	.08	.04	.01	.61	.57	.36	.35
high-output lamp	10	.11	.05	.01	.07	.04	.01	.61	.57	.36	.35

(*continued*)

TABLE 15.4 Wall Luminance Coefficients and Ceiling Cavity Luminance Coefficients for Typical Luminaires (*Continued*)

Typical Luminaire	ρ_{CC}:	80			50			80		50	
	ρ_W:	50	30	10	50	30	10	50	30	50	30
	RCR	Wall Luminance Coefficients for ρ_{FC} = 20						Ceiling Cavity Luminance Coefficient ρ_{FC} = 20			
44  Radial batwing distribution—louvered fluorescent, unit	0							.114	.114	.066	.066
	1	.137	.078	.025	.125	.072	.023	.105	.094	.061	.055
	2	.131	.072	.022	.121	.067	.021	.097	.079	.057	.047
	3	.127	.068	.020	.118	.064	.019	.092	.068	.054	.041
	4	.123	.064	.019	.115	.061	.018	.087	.060	.052	.036
	5	.119	.060	.018	.112	.058	.017	.084	.053	.050	.032
	6	.114	.057	.016	.108	.055	.016	.080	.048	.048	.029
	7	.110	.054	.015	.104	.053	.015	.078	.044	.046	.027
	8	.106	.052	.015	.101	.050	.014	.075	.041	.045	.025
	9	.102	.049	.014	.097	.048	.014	.073	.038	.043	.023
	10	.097	.047	.013	.093	.046	.013	.070	.036	.042	.022
46  Bilateral batwing distribution—one lamp, surface-mounted fluorescent, with prismatic wraparound lens	0							.236	.236	.138	.138
	1	.234	.133	.042	.208	.119	.038	.229	.210	.134	.124
	2	.213	.117	.036	.190	.106	.033	.222	.193	.130	.115
	3	.195	.104	.031	.175	.095	.029	.216	.180	.127	.108
	4	.181	.094	.028	.162	.086	.026	.211	.170	.124	.102
	5	.170	.087	.025	.153	.080	.023	.206	.163	.122	.098
	6	.159	.080	.023	.143	.073	.021	.201	.157	.119	.095
	7	.149	.074	.021	.135	.068	.020	.197	.152	.117	.092
	8	.141	.069	.019	.128	.064	.018	.193	.148	.115	.090
	9	.134	.065	.018	.121	.060	.017	.189	.144	.113	.088
	10	.126	.061	.017	.115	.056	.016	.185	.141	.111	.086
35  Two-lamp prismatic wraparound—multiply by 0.95 for four lamps	0							.22	.22	.13	.13
	1	.19	.11	.03	.17	.10	.03	.21	.20	.12	.12
	2	.18	.10	.03	.15	.09	.03	.21	.18	.12	.11
	3	.16	.09	.03	.14	.08	.02	.20	.17	.12	.10
	4	.15	.08	.02	.14	.07	.02	.19	.16	.11	.10
	5	.14	.07	.02	.13	.07	.02	.19	.15	.11	.09
	6	.14	.07	.02	.12	.06	.02	.18	.15	.11	.09
	7	.13	.06	.02	.12	.06	.02	.18	.14	.11	.09
	8	.12	.06	.02	.11	.05	.02	.18	.14	.11	.08
	9	.12	.06	.02	.11	.05	.01	.17	.13	.10	.08
	10	.11	.05	.01	.10	.05	.01	.17	.13	.10	.08
42  Fluorescent unit with flat prismatic lens; four-lamp, 610-mm (2-ft)-wide—multiply by 1.05 for three lamps and 1.10 for two lamps	0							.12	.12	.07	.07
	1	.16	.09	.03	.15	.09	.03	.11	.10	.06	.06
	2	.15	.08	.03	.14	.08	.02	.10	.08	.06	.05
	3	.15	.08	.02	.14	.07	.02	.10	.07	.06	.04
	4	.14	.07	.02	.13	.07	.02	.09	.06	.05	.04
	5	.13	.07	.02	.12	.06	.02	.09	.06	.05	.03
	6	.12	.06	.02	.12	.06	.02	.09	.05	.05	.03
	7	.12	.06	.02	.11	.06	.02	.08	.05	.05	.03
	8	.11	.05	.02	.11	.05	.02	.08	.04	.05	.03
	9	.11	.05	.01	.10	.05	.01	.08	.04	.05	.02
	10	.10	.05	.01	.10	.05	.01	.07	.04	.04	.02
47  Radial batwing distribution—four-lamp, 610 mm (2-ft)-wide fluorescent unit with flat prismatic lens—see note 2	0							.114	.114	.066	.066
	1	.175	.100	.032	.163	.094	.030	.107	.093	.063	.055
	2	.168	.092	.028	.157	.087	.027	.102	.079	.060	.047
	3	.157	.083	.025	.147	.080	.024	.097	.068	.057	.041
	4	.147	.076	.022	.138	.073	.022	.093	.060	.055	.036
	5	.139	.071	.021	.131	.068	.020	.090	.054	.053	.033
	6	.130	.065	.019	.123	.063	.018	.086	.049	.051	.030
	7	.122	.060	.017	.116	.059	.017	.082	.045	.049	.027
	8	.115	.056	.016	.110	.055	.016	.079	.042	.047	.025
	9	.109	.053	.015	.104	.052	.015	.076	.039	.045	.024
	10	.103	.049	.014	.099	.048	.014	.072	.037	.043	.022

Source : Data extracted, with permission, from the IESNA Lighting Handbook, Reference Volume, (1983): Coefficient for fixtures 1, 3, 7, 28, 33, 35, and 42 have been rounded to two decimal places.

Notes:

1. Refer to the manufacturer's catalog data for more precise values when a specific luminaire type is proposed for use.
2. Multiply coefficients by 1.05 for three lamps and by 1.1 for two lamps.

EVALUATION

15.33 LIGHTING DESIGN EVALUATION

The final step in lighting design is evaluation of the design relative to three key aspects—lighting, costs, and energy. The lighting aspects include quantity, quality, luminance ratios, mood, ambience, texture, color, variation, psychological impressions, orientation, and daylight use—in short, a review of all the lighting factors previously discussed in detail. A good deal of experience is required to visualize actual lighting results from design drawings. The novice designer would do well to have someone with such experience assist in doing the review. The other two aspects of evaluation, cost and energy, can be evaluated readily with the aid of the contractor's estimating figures for cost and a straightforward calculation for energy. The estimates are compared to the cost and energy budget figures developed at the preliminary design stage.

As we have repeatedly stressed, the important cost figures are life-cycle cost, annual operating cost, and first cost for economic comparisons, operating budgets, and construction budgets, respectively. In Chapter 16 we present lighting recommendations for specific occupancies accompanied by actual cost studies and energy analyses. Detailed cost studies including the impact of lighting on air conditioning, the proportional cost of the wiring system, and the proper apportionment of costs involve the entire building and can be accurately performed only by computer. Studies of this type are generally made by consulting engineers rather than architects, and then only after initial, operating, and total costs have been set in proper perspective for a particular job by the architect and client. This is necessary because often, as in the case with speculative construction, the client's overriding consideration is first cost, thereby rendering a complete cost analysis unnecessary. Any attempt to completely separate costs for lighting, HVAC, structure, and so on is arbitrary because of the intimate interactions among these elements. Lighting designers are well advised to keep themselves and the construction team aware of this if they are to fulfill their responsibility.

References and Resources

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

IESNA. 1981. *IES Lighting Handbook*, 7th ed. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 1993. *IESNA Lighting Handbook*, 8th ed. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 2000. *IESNA Lighting Handbook*, 9th ed. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

NEMA. 1998. NEMA LE 5B-1998: *Procedure for Determining Luminaire Efficacy Ratings for High-Intensity Discharge Industrial Luminaires.* National Electrical Manufacturers Association. Rosslyn, VA.

NEMA. 1999. NEMA LE 5A-1999: *Procedure for Determining Luminaire Efficacy Ratings for Commercial, Non-Residential Downlight Luminaires.* National Electrical Manufacturers Association. Rosslyn, VA.

NEMA. 2001. NEMA LE 5-2001: *Procedure for Determining Luminaire Efficacy Ratings for Fluorescent Luminaires.* National Electrical Manufacturers Association. Rosslyn, VA.

NFPA. 2008. NFPA 70-2008: *National Electrical Code.* National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

UL. 2004. UL 1598: *Standard for Luminaires.* Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. Northbrook, IL.

CHAPTER 16

Electric Lighting Applications

16.1 INTRODUCTION

CHAPTERS 11 THROUGH 15 EXAMINED lighting fundamentals, sources, and design procedures. This final chapter on lighting considers the application of lighting principles to specific situations—with a primary focus upon electric lighting systems. The facilities covered in some detail include residential, educational, commercial, institutional, and industrial occupancies. Each is examined from the viewpoint of its special requirements, and design approaches are suggested. The latter include lighting materials and sources as well as comparative economics and energy considerations. The chapter concludes with a consideration of special types of indoor lighting, plus a short section on exterior lighting.

RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCIES

16.2 RESIDENTIAL LIGHTING: GENERAL INFORMATION

The buzzwords in modern residential construction are *automation* (convenience), *environmental considerations* (energy conservation, "green" design), and the *home as a working area* (home office, special communications considerations). These underlying considerations color decisions on sources, control, energy use, and budget, as discussed later.

Residential lighting offers to the lighting designer a great opportunity for originality and ingenuity because a residence combines more diverse functions and needs than almost any other building. Furthermore, it often requires that all work be done at minimal cost and that the result please persons with a range of tastes. The designer approaches the problems with a list of requirements, a perception of the space, and two basic tools: the lighting fixture and the architectural lighting element. The former was discussed at length in Chapter 15.

There are numerous books and countless periodical articles devoted to residential lighting design. We would recommend using IESNA publication RP-11 (1995), *Design Criteria for Lighting Interior Living Spaces*, as a reference and guide.

16.3 RESIDENTIAL LIGHTING: ENERGY ISSUES

Although residences are generally excluded from the requirements of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1, and lighting is not seriously addressed by ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2, there may be local code requirements that deal with lighting energy efficiency. In any case, there are energy

implications associated with residential lighting design decisions. General energy efficiency recommendations include:

1. Provide means for multiple light levels in all areas. A kitchen during food preparation does not have the same lighting requirements as a kitchen being entered for a "refrigerator raid." Low-level lighting provisions should be made in *all* rooms, including bathrooms. To accomplish this, use high-low switches, simple dimmers, multilevel ballasts, and multilevel switching. An ancillary benefit is that ambience can be changed thereby in multiuse rooms such as dining rooms, family and recreation rooms, and finished basements.
2. Provide local task lighting for areas where relatively difficult visual tasks are performed, such as the kitchen location where menus are planned and accounts are handled.
3. Provide dimming and switching for accent lighting.
4. Use programmable timers with photocell override for exterior lights.
5. In large residences, consider low-voltage or wireless control for ease of remote control and energy savings (see Section 16.7).
6. Use daylight in areas normally occupied during daylight hours, such as kitchens and living rooms. Consider skylights with built-in electric lighting for these areas.

Although automatic daylight compensation is generally not justified economically, area switching is and should be considered in all spaces, including work areas of children's rooms and home offices.

16.4 RESIDENTIAL LIGHTING SOURCES

Incandescent sources have traditionally found very wide use in residences despite their inefficiency because of their desirable characteristics, which include flattering skin color, low first cost, small size, focusability, and simple, economical dimmability. Other sources with at least some of these characteristics and much higher efficiency should be considered:

- Fluorescent sources with color temperatures between 3000 and 3500 K can be used in kitchens and other work areas. Where linear fluorescent lamps are not desirable, compact fluorescent lamps (CFL) can readily be used. Keep in mind, however, that the lamp life of *all* fluorescent sources is shortened by switching.
- Architectural elements such as coves and cornices can readily use CFL lamps.
- Tungsten–halogen lamps should be restricted to highlighting and specialty requirements. They are incandescent lamps and, in addition to having low efficacy, must be carefully applied because of their concentrated heat.
- Consider use of low-wattage (9 to 12 W) compact fluorescent lamps in frequently used corridors and stairwells rather than incandescents. These small lamps can be left on for extended periods to provide the required low-level lighting without the constant switching and lamp replacement required for incandescents. This practice is even more practical in difficult access areas such as stairwells.
- For closets, pantries, and other small areas with frequently switched lighting, incandescent lamps remain the source of choice.
- For home offices and dual-purpose areas that serve for both work and recreation, design the lighting for each use individually, with maximum common use. Fluorescent sources are recommended for work purposes.
- Bathrooms can use 3000 to 3500 K fluorescent sources for general lighting, a separate incandescent source for short-time use, and low-brightness globe-shaped incandescents for mirror lighting.
- Although many manufacturers produce downlights and wallwashers for CFL sources, none that we have seen delivers the "punch" of incandescents. Where such brightness is not required, CFL downlights are a good choice when burned for at least 3 hours per use.
- High-intensity discharge (HID) sources are appropriate for all exterior lighting.

16.5 RESIDENTIAL LIGHTING: DESIGN SUGGESTIONS

The following are a few general design suggestions:

- Use a general/task lighting approach, with the levels recommended in Tables 16.1 and 16.2.

TABLE 16.1 Illuminance Recommendations for General Lighting

Activity or Area	Average Lux
Conversation and relaxation	50–100[a]
Passage areas	50–100[a]
Areas other than kitchen	200–500
Kitchen	500–1000

[a]General lighting in these areas need not be uniform.

- Provide luminance ratios as in Fig. 16.1.
- Provide general lighting sufficient for movement and casual seeing in all spaces. Hallways require little lighting; stairs require more. Light stairs from directly above or ahead to create a shadow directly below the tread front. Lighting from the front eliminates shadows and can create a safety hazard.
- Do *not* avoid ceiling light sources, as is so frequently done. Wide-profile ceiling fixtures provide general lighting; switch-controlled table lamps do not.
- Lighting in areas specifically intended for use by older occupants, such as "grandma apartments" that are part of larger residences and residential buildings intended for older occupants, should take cognizance of the special requirements listed in Section 11.23.

16.6 RESIDENTIAL LIGHTING: LUMINAIRES AND ARCHITECTURAL LIGHTING ELEMENTS

Guidelines that can assist the designer in selecting luminaires from the huge variety available commercially are as follows:

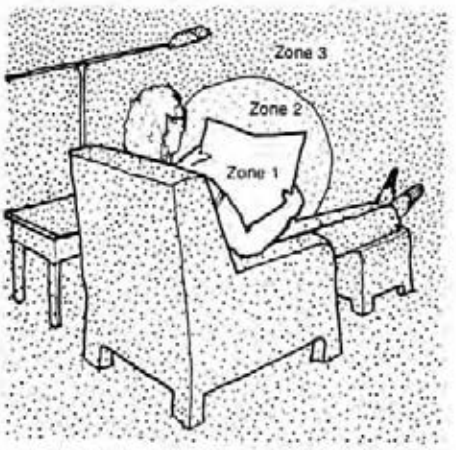
1. Utilize diffuse distribution for general lighting; narrow-distribution downlights for area and furniture accents; and narrow-distribution, ceiling-recessed incandescent wallwashers for accenting textured surfaces such as brick.
2. Use built-in lighting to the extent possible, including architectural lighting elements. We

TABLE 16.2 Illuminance Recommendations for Specific Residential Visual Tasks[a]

Seeing Task	Typical North American Recommendation: Average Lux[b]	Other Authorities: Average Lux[b]
Dining	100–200	100–150
Grooming, makeup	200–500	500
HANDCRAFT		
Ordinary seeing tasks	200–500	200–500
Difficult seeing tasks	500–1000	500–750
Critical seeing tasks	1000–2000	>1250
KITCHEN DUTIES		
Food preparation and cleaning involving difficult seeing tasks	500–1000	750–1000
Serving and other noncritical tasks	200–500	200–300
Laundry tasks	200–500	100–300
Reading and writing		
Handwriting, reproductions, and poor copies	500–1000	750
Books, magazines, and newspapers	200–500	300
SEWING, HAND OR MACHINE		
Dark fabrics	1000–2000	>1250
Medium fabrics	500–1000	700–1000
Light fabrics	200–500	300–500
Table games	200–300	300

[a]Selection of illuminance within the given range is based on the criteria given in Section 11.24.

[b]Divide by 10 to get footcandles. Due to the range of values, use of the exact 10.76 conversion value is unnecessary.



Zone 2 The immediate surroundings (area adjacent to the visual task)	
Desirable ratio	1/3 to equal to task*
Minimum acceptable ratio	1/5 to equal to task*
Zone 3 The general surroundings (not immediataly adjacent to task)	
Desirable ratio	1/5 to 5 times task*
Minimum acceptable ratio	1/10 to 10 times task*

*Typical task luminance range is 40 to 120 cd/m^2 [12-35 fL] and seldom exceeds 200 cd/m^2 [60 fL].

Fig. 16.1 *Seeing zones and recommended luminance ratios for residential visual tasks.*

believe that this demonstrates integrity of concept. For this reason, we recommend that the flexibility of track lighting be utilized for accent and task lighting but not for general lighting (Fig. 16.2).

3. Private residences are the exception to the rule of selecting off-the-shelf items in preference to specials. The lighting should complement the architecture and furnishings, and frequently this can best be accomplished by original designs.

Architectural lighting elements include coves, cornices, valances, coffers, skylights, and other luminous constructions not normally comprising a lighting fixture. Although such units are normally less efficient than lighting fixtures, their use is often indicated by architectural considerations. Empirical design data are given in Figs. 16.3 and 16.4.

When using fluorescent lamps in architectural lighting elements, dark spots between lamps can be avoided by placing lamps at a slight angle rather than end to end, thus enabling ends to overlap. Similar overlapping is readily accomplished with PL lamps as well. Reflectors increase efficiency of an installation. When used in coves, reflectors should be aimed 15° to 25° above the horizontal and field-adjusted for the best ceiling coverage. When two-lamp strips are used, they should be arranged vertically, as shown in Fig. 16.4. Light output for a double-lamp installation rarely exceeds 1.75 times the single-lamp output.

16.7 RESIDENTIAL LIGHTING: CONTROL

In large residences, remote control of lighting becomes more of a necessity than a convenience from the viewpoints of control, safety, and status awareness. We will discuss two wiring and control systems that perform the necessary functions satisfactorily: low-voltage switching in Section 26.32 and power line carrier systems in Section 26.34. Completely wireless, radio wave–controlled lighting is particularly applicable to retrofit work because it requires only that control modules be substituted for existing switches. A conventional system might use a wall-mounted master at each

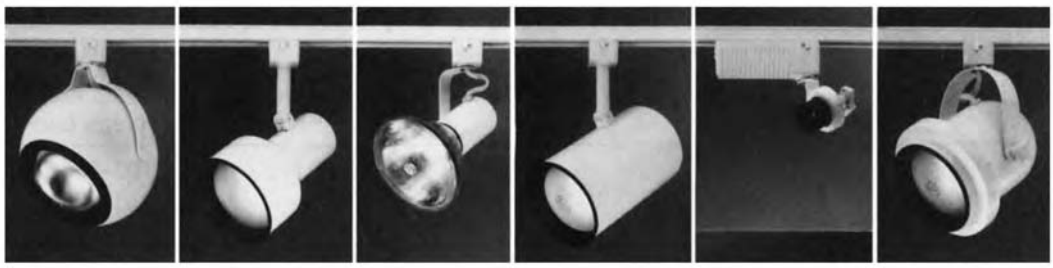
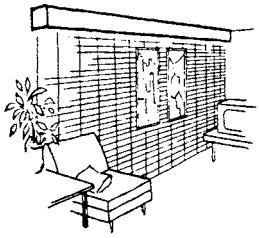
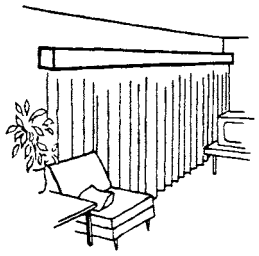


Fig. 16.2 *Track lighting is available with a wide variety of luminaire bodies. Those illustrated include (left to right) spheres, step cylinders, swivel reflector-lamp holders, flat-back cylinders, external transformer low-voltage spots, and gimbal-ring cylinders. Not illustrated are wallwashers, adjustable and filtered spots, framing projectors, barndoor shutter units, and so on. In addition, a variety of single-circuit and multicircuit track designs are available. (Photos courtesy of Ruud Lighting.)*



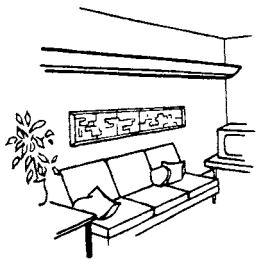
(*a*) Lighted Cornices

Cornices direct all their light downward to give dramatic interest to wall coverings, draperies, murals, etc. May also be used over windows where space above window does not permit valance lighting. Good for low-ceilinged rooms.



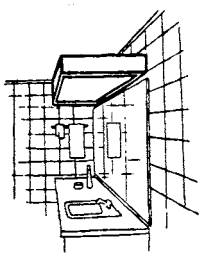
(*b*) Lighted Valances

Valances are always used at windows, usually with draperies. They provide up-light which reflects off ceiling for general room lighting and down-light for drapery accent. When closer to ceiling than 10 inches use closed top to eliminate annoying ceiling brightness.



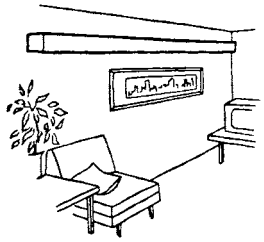
(*c*) Lighted Coves

Coves direct all light to the ceiling. Should be used only with white or near-white ceilings. Cove lighting is soft and uniform but lacks punch or emphasis. Best used to supplement other lighting. Suitable for high-ceilinged rooms and for places where ceiling heights abruptly change.



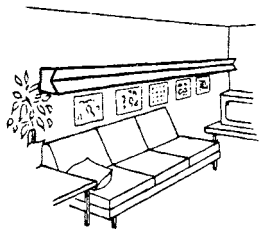
(*d*) Lighted Canopies

The canopy overhang is most applicable to bath or dressing room. It provides excellent general room illumination as well as light to the user's face.



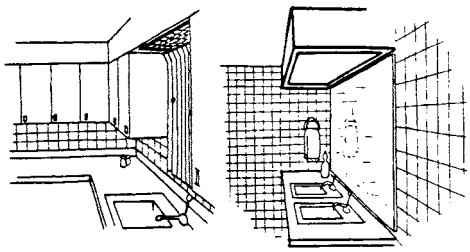
(*e*) Lighted High Wall Brackets

High wall brackets provide both up and down light for general room lighting. Used on interior walls to balance window valance both architecturally and in lighting distribution. Mounting height determined by window or door height.



(*f*) Lighted Low Wall Brackets

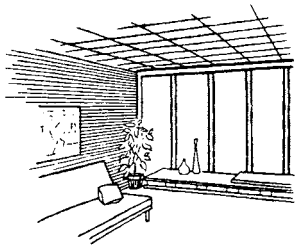
Low brackets are used for special wall emphasis or for lighting specific tasks such as sink, range, reading in bed, etc. Mounting height is determined by eye height of users, from both seated and standing positions. Length should relate to nearby furniture groupings and room scale.



(*g*) Lighted Soffits

Soffits over work areas are designed to provide higher level of light directly below. Usually they are easily installed in furred-down area over sink in kitchen. Also are excellent for niches over sofas, pianos, built-in desks, etc.

Bath or dressing room soffits are designed to light user's face. They are almost always used with large mirrors and counter-top lavatories. Length usually tied to size of mirror. Add luxury touch with attractively decorated bottom diffuser.



(*h*) Luminous Wall Panels

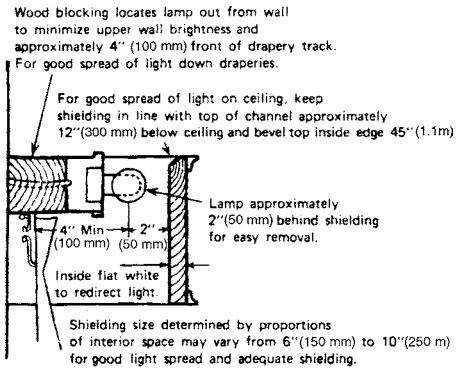
Luminous wall panels create pleasant vistas; are comfortable background for seeing tasks; add luxury touch in dining areas, family rooms and as room dividers. Wide variety of decorative materials available for diffusing covers.

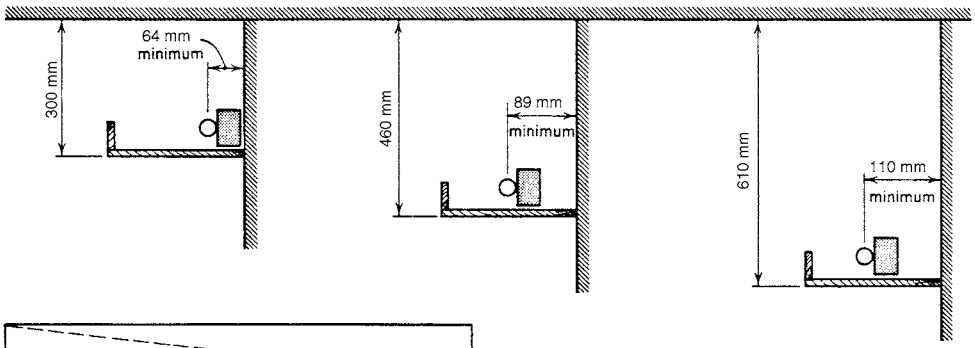
Fig. 16.3 *Residential lighting elements. (Courtesy of IESNA.)*

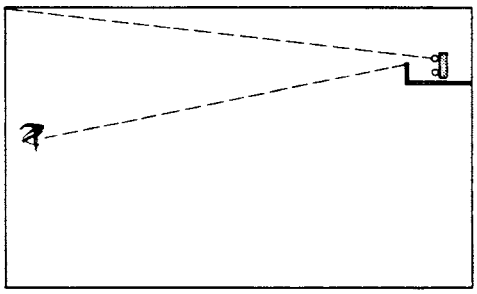
(*a*) Typical Valance

This typical dimensional drawing applies only to commonly encountered window valance situations. Obviously, other window treatments could necessitate modifications in these critical dimensions; i.e., vertical blinds, double-track situations, curved bay windows, etc.

The same "job-tailored" variations can occur in the design of any type of structural lighting device. Therefore, no other dimensional drawings have been included here.

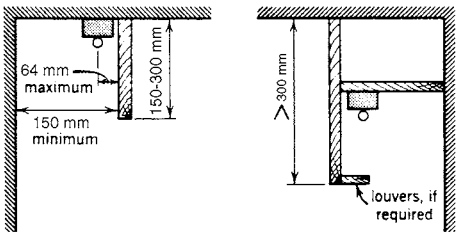






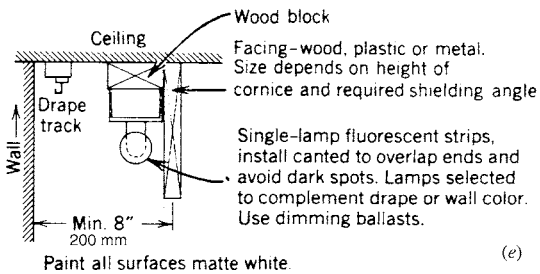
(*b*) and (*c*) Cove Installations

Proper cove proportions: Height of front lip of cove should shield cove from the eye yet expose entire ceiling to the lamp. Orientation of fluorescent strip as shown is preferable. Cove interiors should be painted with high reflectance matte-finish paint. *Westinghouse Lighting Handbook. (Out of print)*



(*d*) Typical Cornices

Wallwashing equipment mounted in valances and cornices provides improved brightness ratios and may be used for lighting desks against walls or vertical illumination of walls and objects mounted thereon. *Westinghouse Lighting Handbook. (Out of print)*



(*e*)

Fig. 16.4 *Selected lighting elements: construction details.*



Fig. 16.5 *Typical wall-mounted master station has five control buttons in addition to "All On" and "All Off" on every master. The control buttons can be arranged to control a single outlet or a group to establish lighting of a scene. Thus, the entry unit might have homecoming, extended absence, pathlighting, nightlighting, and garage-lighting scenes, whereas the kitchen master may have lighting scenes for breakfast, dinner, formal and informal entertaining, and night. Each scene can be arranged to turn on, brighten or dim, and shut off selected lighting. (Courtesy of Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.)*



Fig. 16.6 *Typical components of a wireless control system.* Left to right:

- *Bedside master station has five scene buttons and 10 individual outlet controls in addition to "All On" and "All Off" buttons.*
- *Repeater, which is used in large buildings to strengthen signals.*
- *Typical radio-controlled wall dimmer with local manual control. (Courtesy of Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.)*

entrance in the kitchen and in the home office (Fig. 16.5), a bedside tabletop master in the master bedroom (Fig. 16.6), and radio-operated wall switches and dimmers in all rooms.

EDUCATIONAL FACILITIES

16.8 INSTITUTIONAL AND EDUCATIONAL BUILDINGS

The lighting requirements for some spaces in educational facilities coincide with the requirements for commercial (office) and institutional buildings. To that extent, the remarks herein are applicable there as well. Generally, educational buildings (excluding private colleges and universities) are maintained by operating funds obtained from taxes, and the budget is *always* tight. Therefore, all equipment in these public buildings must be extremely hardy, vandalproof, as maintenance-free as possible, and low in energy consumption. Maintenance in such buildings is generally poor and is performed on a repair rather than preventive basis. With these factors in mind, the following remarks apply to lighting equipment:

1. Use sources with the highest possible efficacy. Remember that daylight has the highest efficacy, followed by HPS, fluorescent, and metal-halide sources.
2. Where specific color lamps are called for, such as 3500 K T8 and the like, this requirement should be permanently stenciled in large letters on the lighting fixture to ensure proper relamping.
3. Long-life sources should always be given preference because of their lower maintenance. Thus, corridor and stair lighting should use fluorescent or HID lamps. This is also important in locations where relamping is difficult, as in high-ceiling rooms such as gyms and assembly rooms.
4. In calculating illuminance, low light loss factor (LLF) values should be used to allow for aging of paints and dirt accumulation. Cleaning of lighting fixtures in schools is virtually unknown. An LLF value of 0.5 is reasonable. This being so, provision should be made to reduce initial overlighting or to provide for lumen maintenance.

5. Many schools are not air-conditioned. With the masking of air noise absent, careful control must be exercised over noise and vibration from ballasts, diffusers, and so on. Electronic ballasts are preferred if the construction budget tolerates the additional cost. Ballast noise increases with current rating. Therefore, 800-mA, high-output and 1500-mA, very-high-output lamps must be used with caution, particularly in locations that amplify sounds, or where low noise criteria (NC) obtain.
6. Lighting equipment must be designed for absolutely minimum maintenance, and those fixtures within easy reach should be vandal-proof. This means using captive screws, rust-preventive plated parts, captive-hinged diffusers whose cleaning requires only one person, ballast replacement without demounting fixtures (plug-in ballasts are available), nonyellowing plastics, and high-quality finish and assembly.

For recommended illuminances for the various visual tasks in an educational facility, see Sections 11.24 to 11.26 and IESNA RP-3 2000 (reaffirmed 2006), *Guide for Educational Facilities Lighting*. In the following sections, we discuss the lighting requirements of specific school building areas.

16.9 GENERAL CLASSROOMS

The classroom is the basic space in a school. Unlike the classic schoolroom with fixed seats, a single viewing direction, and a fixed teacher location, many modern classrooms, at all grade levels, utilize multiple-student groups, teacher mobility, multiple tasks in the same overall space, and movable seating arrangements. Such spaces require:

1. Controls that permit subdivision of lighting, and level control within the subdivision (see Sections 15.13 to 15.15).
2. A lighting system with an appreciable indirect component and good diffusion to minimize the problem of veiling reflections due to viewing direction (see Sections 11.27 to 11.32).
3. Low-brightness luminaires with high visual comfort probability (VCP) in all viewing directions, inasmuch as a considerable portion of the students' time is spent in a head-up position (see Section 11.28).

In addition to these special recommendations, some lighting recommendations applicable to all classrooms are:

4. Classrooms with visual display terminals (VDT) require special lighting (see Section 16.19).
5. Generally, fluorescent luminaires should use T8 triphosphor lamps with a correlated color temperature (CCT) of 3500 to 4100 K and high color rendering indices (CRI). Electronic ballasts are preferred. Incandescent sources should not be used. Daylight, to the maximum extent, is desirable. Some form of daylight compensation is mandatory.
6. In comparing the costs of alternative appropriate lighting systems, use life-cycle costing techniques only, because these facilities are nonprofit and long-term. See Appendix I for an explanation of the principles of economic analysis. Use a computer program to perform the economic analysis where possible. Do *not* compare costs on the basis of footcandles (lux) per dollar (i.e., by dividing maintained illuminance by cost), because this leads to a preference for higher illumination levels and, consequently, higher energy usage.
7. Illuminance category (see Section 11.26, Table 11.7) and other lighting recommendations for the various types of classrooms and their activities are:
   a. *Reading.* C, D, E, depending upon the visibility characteristics of the reading material.
   b. *Mechanical Drawing and Drafting.* E, F. Drafting tables should be equipped with an adjustable fluorescent lamp. Incandescents are not recommended because of their heat, low efficacy, and both direct and reflected glare. Proper positioning of the drawing lamp provides glareless illumination even when working with pencil on vellum.
   c. *Typing.* See the special considerations of lighting for VDT units in Section 16.19.
   d. *Sight Saving.* These are general classrooms for visually impaired students. Illuminance category F is recommended, which indicates the need for supplemental lighting. These units should be individually adjustable by the user for both psychological and physiological reasons.

Figure 16.7 shows a perimeter classroom lighting layout using a two-lamp T8 louvered luminaire, and calculated initial horizontal and



Fig. 16.7 *Computer-generated image of a 24-ft-W × 28-ft-L (7.3-m by 8.5-m) classroom using a perimeter layout of 16.4-ft (1.2-m) luminaires in a 14-ft × 22-ft (4.3-m by 6.7-m) rectangle suspended 18 in. (457 mm) from the ceiling and 9 ft (2.7 m) above the finished floor (AFF). The luminaires use T8 triphosphor lamps and high-frequency electronic ballasts. Average horizontal luminance on the desks is 74 fc (800 lux), and average vertical luminance on the chalkboards is 39 fc (420 lux). Room power density is 1.8 W/ft^2 (19 W/m^2). (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF Lighting Co.)*

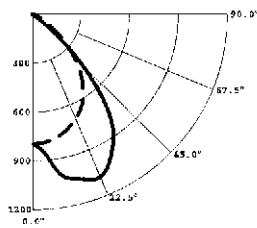


(*a*)

ZX-ST 1/32W T8
BIVERGENT STEPPED VANE LOUVER

Total Luminaire Efficiency 65%
0% Uplight 100% Downlight
Spacing Criteria
Lateral Plane 0 90
1.2 1.5
TOTAL LAMP LUMENS = 2900
INPUT WATTS = 32

Candela Distribution



Vertical Angle	Horizontal Angle 0	45	90	Zonal Lumens
0	797	797	797	
5	790	846	861	82.2
15	748	929	1043	256.4
25	670	917	1059	412.3
35	547	851	861	486.6
45	363	590	425	400.2
55	170	245	29	184.6
65	53	42	4	45.9
75	20	13	2	15.5
85	6	3	1	3.6
90	1	0	0	

Luminance Data in Candela / Sq. Meter

Angle in Vertical	Average 0	Average 45	Average 90
45	2763	4491	3235
55	1595	2299	272
65	675	935	51
75	416	270	42
85	371	0	62

Coefficients of Utilization

Effective Floor Cavity Reflectance = 20%

pcc	0.8				0.7				0.5			0.3		
pw	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.1	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.1	0.5	0.3	0.1	0.5	0.3	0.1
0	78	78	78	78	76	76	76	76	73	73	73	69	69	69
1	73	71	69	67	71	69	67	66	67	65	64	64	63	62
2	68	64	61	58	67	63	60	57	61	58	56	59	56	55
3	63	58	54	50	62	57	53	50	55	52	49	53	51	48
4	59	52	48	44	57	52	47	44	50	46	43	48	45	43
5	55	48	43	39	53	47	42	39	46	42	39	45	41	38
6	51	44	39	35	50	43	38	35	42	38	35	41	37	34
7	48	40	35	31	46	39	35	31	38	34	31	38	34	31
8	44	37	32	28	43	36	31	28	35	31	28	35	31	28
9	42	34	29	26	41	33	29	26	33	28	26	32	28	25

(*b*)

Fig. 16.8 *(a) This luminaire uses a very-high-reflectance silvered reflector and an unusual stepped mirrored baffle that provide low brightness for direct glare control, a batwing crosswise distribution for reflected glare control, and a sparkle on each baffle step for interest. (b) Photometrics of the luminaire shown in (a). (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF Lighting Co.)*

vertical illuminance values. A single-lamp version of the luminaire and its photometry are shown in Fig. 16.8. Note the crosswise batwing distribution that assists in limiting reflected glare.

16.10 SPECIAL-PURPOSE CLASSROOMS

(a) Shops

Illuminance categories for all types of bench and machine work are:

Rough	D
Medium	E
Fine	F, G
Extra fine	G

As for other tasks requiring levels above 500 lux, a task-ambient design involving an adjustable supplemental task fixture is recommended. As with drafting, adjustability of the task lighting is particularly important because of the frequently specular quality of the visual task—such as in a metal machining process. Another aspect of lighting design in shops that does not exist to the same extent in other school environments is that of safety lighting (Table 16.3).

(b) Music Rooms

The illuminance category here is D for clear printed music and E or F for older copy or handwritten scores. These requirements are for vertical surface illuminance, as music scores are normally held in that position. Direct–indirect luminaires provide a high degree of diffusion that is helpful in this regard. For all spaces with vertical tasks, a computer analysis of the design is recommended to determine compliance with recommendations.

(c) Art Rooms

The primary requirement here is for constant-color daylight. Thus, north windows and skylights are highly desirable. For electric lighting, because color is so important, high-CRI fluorescent lamps are required. General illumination should be augmented by user-adjustable supplementary lighting. If use of models is anticipated, adjustable accent lights are advisable. For display of artwork, adjustable wall illumination is required. Ceiling track-mounted units are an excellent choice (see Figs. 16.2 and 16.9).

16.11 ASSEMBLY ROOMS, AUDITORIUMS, AND MULTIPURPOSE SPACES

The varied activities in these rooms make flexible lighting imperative. For performances, low-level dimmed incandescent lighting is required. Here, incandescent lamps are the recommended source because of the lower cost of dimming and the short burning periods. For assembly rooms, this can be augmented by architectural elements along walls and draperies and in the ceiling. For study, additional ceiling fluorescents or HID units can be switched on. The combinations are legion; the different usages are the critical considerations

TABLE 16.3 Illuminance Levels for Safety[a]

Hazard Requiring Visual Detection:	*Slight*	*Slight*	*High*	*High*
Normal Activity Level:	**Low**	**High**	**Low**	**High**
Areas	Normal classrooms Lounges Small offices Dorm rooms Washrooms	Shops Business classrooms Large offices Corridors Drafting rooms Lecture rooms Large classrooms Parking area Exterior walkways	Stairs Libraries Reading rooms Cafeteria Swimming pools Locker rooms Interior sports Bleachers	Boiler rooms Auditoriums Exits Exitways Laboratories Kitchens
Lux (footcandles)	5.4 (0.5)	11 (1.0)	22 (2.0)	5.4 (0.5)

Source: IESNA RP-3-1988; reproduced with permission.

[a]Minimum illuminance for safety or personnel, absolute minimum at any time and at any location where safety is related to seeing conditions.



Fig. 16.9 *Art exhibition room illustrating good and bad lighting techniques. The upper wall fenestration is excellent for deep daylight penetration. Track lighting is ideal for display of art. The mixture of incandescent downlights for general lighting is excessive and an eyesore. Also, the positioning of the track lights can create both direct and reflected glare problems and annoying shadows unless the sources are selected properly and ceiling height is at least 10 ft (3.1 m).*



Fig. 16.10 *Schools frequently utilize spaces for multiple functions. This space, normally used as a dining area, doubles as an assembly room. High-intensity, indirect tungsten–halogen units, tucked into concrete beam junctures, provide sufficient light for both uses.*



Fig. 16.11 *Institutional cafeteria illuminated by cove lighting in a deep pyramidal coffer. Lighting is even, glare-free, soft in quality, and pleasant, yet of sufficient intensity to permit using the cafeteria as a working-meeting space. (Photo by B. Stein.)*

(Figs. 16.10 and 16.11). Acoustic considerations are acute because of the low NC criteria. Thus, electronic ballasts for HID sources as well as fluorescents should be used.

An additional consideration is step lighting. These units should be mounted to the side, or in risers, to illuminate the tread, and particularly its leading edge. Stage lighting is too highly specialized to be discussed here. Obviously, however, some form of stage lighting is required, and the building designer is advised to consult a theater lighting designer.

16.12 GYMNASIUM LIGHTING

Gyms present a situation similar to auditoriums in that they have widely varying usages. All fixtures should be sturdy and guarded. Phosphor-coated mercury, high-pressure sodium (HPS), and high-CRI metal-halide are excellent choices for color, life, control, and efficacy. Multiple lighting levels should be available by switching or dimming. For dance and social events requiring low-level general lighting, other fixtures can be provided with long-life incandescent or tungsten-halogen lamps, which provide good color for low-intensity lighting as well as illumination during HID startup or restart after an outage. All fixtures should be designed for relamping from the floor. Locker rooms should use guarded-strip fluorescents.

16.13 LECTURE HALL LIGHTING

Lecture hall lighting is similar, with respect to sources and other considerations, to illumination for classrooms. Adjustable level fluorescent lighting is necessary for demonstrations, videos, and the like. Auxiliary lighting for demonstration tables and chalkboards completes the design. High-ceiling installations can utilize metal-halide for general lighting. Controls for lighting should be located at the demonstration table (Fig. 16.12).

16.14 LABORATORY LIGHTING

Laboratories differ from classrooms in that tables are fixed, bench surfaces are frequently very dark, many of the items used exhibit specular reflection, vertical surface illumination is important, and visual tasks are not normally prolonged or severe. With low ceilings, use direct fixtures with an uplight component run crosswise to the tables.



Fig. 16.12 *Typical lecture room lighting utilizes 45° cutoff baffled parabolic reflector troffers for minimum direct and reflected glare, adjustable track lights for demonstration table illumination, and an asymmetric reflector for chalkboard lighting. The large display area on the front wall of the room will not experience veiling reflections with the illustrated lighting arrangement.*

Luminaires with a batwing distribution minimize reflected glare from specular equipment. If the ceiling height is sufficient, indirect lighting is highly desirable for the same reason. Indirect lighting also provides a high degree of diffuseness necessary for vertical surface illumination. See Fig. 16.13 for suggested layouts.

16.15 LIBRARY LIGHTING

Libraries comprise several different seeing tasks, each of which requires its own lighting solution.

(a) General Reading Room

Here two solutions are possible, and both are commonly used. In the first, general lighting is supplied over the entire area, which is sufficient for reading tasks. For this purpose, fluorescent or metal-halide sources are normally applicable, the latter with ceiling heights of at least 10 feet (3 m). The long life and high efficacy of these sources are suited to the long burning hours found in libraries. The second and more energy-efficient solution involves low-level general lighting supplemented by local reading lighting on the tables or in carrels. This solution is consonant with task-lighting orientation and is preferred. Reading lights should be fluorescent, user-adjustable if possible, and arranged to avoid veiling reflections when not user-adjustable.

Wherever HID sources are used, an instant restart source must be available to supply minimal lighting after an outage. Many commercial HID luminaires contain a small tungsten-halogen source for this purpose. Ballast noise can be a

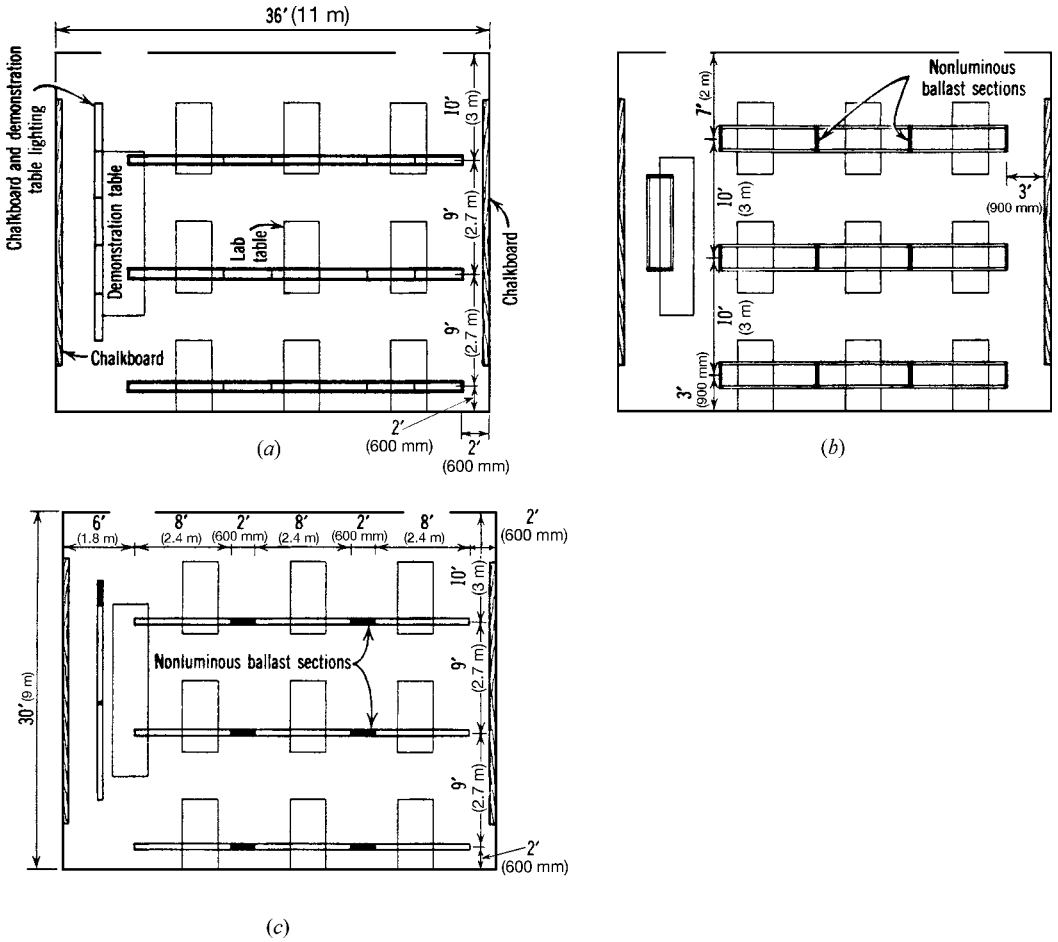


Fig. 16.13 *Laboratory lighting schemes. Running fixtures across tables or in aisles is preferable to fixtures in the transverse direction in terms of reflected glare. (a) Pendant direct-indirect units. (b, c) Variations of the single semi-direct high-output (HO) design.*

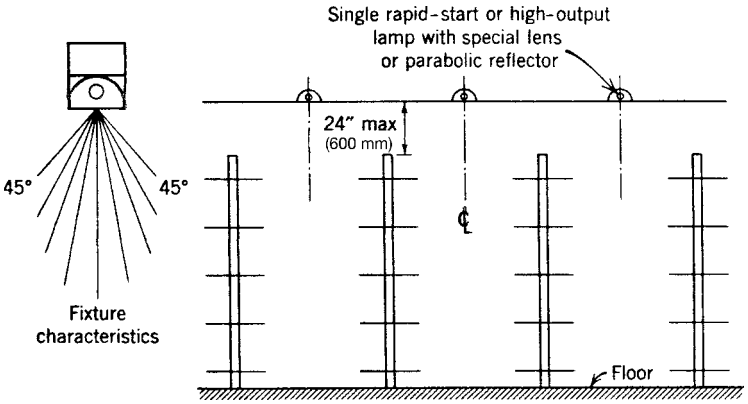


Fig. 16.14 *Stack lighting is best accomplished by fixtures with lenses specifically designed for the purpose. Fixtures with baffles and plastic diffusers generally do not give adequate vertical surface illumination.*

problem in low-NC spaces such as libraries. Electronic ballasts for fluorescent and HID sources are available and should be employed.

(b) Stack Areas

Here the required vertical surface illumination is best supplied by a special fluorescent unit designed for this purpose. These are mounted between stacks, and no higher than 24 in. (0.6 m) above them, for best results (Fig. 16.14).

16.16 SPECIAL AREAS

Most schools contain areas devoted to functions not covered previously. Some lighting recommendations for a few of these areas are as follows:

1. *Spaces where color rendering and color matching are important*, such as sewing rooms and textile and art work spaces, must be lighted with particular attention to illuminant color. Consistent color rendering without disturbing

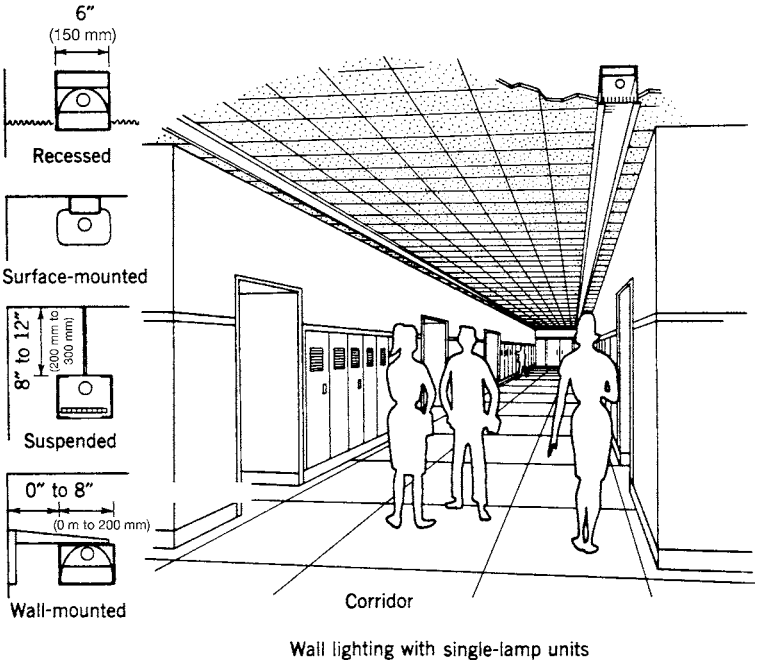


Fig. 16.15 *Lighting of school corridors. High-reflectance walls, floor, and ceiling improve utilization of light and increase the feeling of cheerfulness. The lighting technique illustrated is appropriate for school corridors. The rows of luminaires at each sidewall illuminate bulletin boards, special displays, and the faces and interiors of lockers more effectively than do units centered in the ceiling.*

metamerisms requires a continuous-spectrum source such as incandescent (including tungsten-halogen) and, of course, daylight.

2. *Food service areas* must be well lighted to emphasize cleanliness and food attractiveness. Color rendering of food is particularly important to enhance its appetizing appearance. Use 3100 K fluorescent or metal-halide lamps in preparation and serving areas, and eating areas, but in the latter at lower illuminance levels.
3. *Medical attention spaces* require high-level, good color rendering light for diagnosis and conventional office lighting for records and desk tasks.
4. *Offices, storage spaces, industrial spaces, and outdoor facilities* have the same requirements as similar spaces in other buildings and are covered in the discussion that follows.
5. *Corridors and stairways in all types of buildings* require special lighting. Corridors intended only for circulation need be lighted to only ±10 fc unless a specific seeing task requires higher levels—for example, bulletin boards and lockers (Fig. 16.15). Lighting can also be used to give direction by longitudinal arrangement. Wall-mounted or recessed wall lighting is particularly effective in corridors, providing walking illumination plus lighting for posters, bulletins, and so on. Fluorescent luminaires mounted across corridors, particularly when corridors are long, are effective in reducing the "tunnel" impression. Incandescent sources are not recommended because of their low efficacy, high maintenance, and frequency of relamping. Fluorescent and HID sources are also suggested for stairwells. Care must be exercised here, however, to avoid direct glare, which causes attention to shift from the stairs to the light source and may thereby create a hazard.

16.17 OTHER CONSIDERATIONS IN SCHOOL LIGHTING

(a) Controls

See Sections 15.13 to 15.17. Because schools operate for the most part on fixed time schedules and during daylight hours, lighting controls of the preprogrammed time-base and daylight compensation types are readily applicable. Other energy-conserving control strategies can be utilized as applicable.

(b) Safety Lighting

See Table 16.3 for recommended illuminance levels. As pointed out, designers must be aware of the requirements of all jurisdictional codes.

(c) Emergency Lighting

See Sections 26.39, 28.21, and 16.31. The local, state, and National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) codes establish minimum requirements. Exits must be clearly identified with lighted signs and a lighted path to these exits provided. As with safety lighting, it is not sufficient that average illuminance meet requirements. Illuminance in any given area must be free of large level differences, which can cause disabling glare, particularly in view of the relatively high adaptation levels of occupants' eyes immediately before a lighting outage.

COMMERCIAL INTERIORS

16.18 OFFICE LIGHTING: GENERAL INFORMATION

The following information applies primarily to offices in commercial buildings and secondarily to similar spaces in other occupancies, such as educational and industrial buildings. In the latter cases, the general remarks applicable to facilities of those types take precedence. The special problems associated with VDTs (computer monitors) are discussed in Section 16.19. Task-ambient (nonuniform) lighting is covered in Sections 16.20, 16.21, and 16.22. The reader is referred to IESNA RP-1 (2004), *American National Standard Practice for Office Lighting*, for a full discussion of office lighting.

(a) Light Sources

In the interest of energy economy and good color, T8 3500 to 4000 K triphosphor linear lamps or equivalent CFL units are recommended, along with high-frequency electronic ballasts. HID can be used

in indirect installations with sufficient ceiling height (minimum 9 ft, 6 in. [2.9 m] clear). Color-corrected HPS and metal-halide units of high CRI are both suitable.

Source color must be coordinated with the color scheme of room surfaces and furnishings. In areas with a large daylight contribution, the source correlated color temperature should be at least 4000 K. Incandescents may be used for storage areas, closets, and other short-burning-period uses. Incandescent and tungsten-halogen track lighting is used to advantage to illuminate displays of all sorts.

(b) Illuminance Levels

These are discussed in Section 11.26 for the particular type of activity involved. See also Standard RP-1. Recommended reflectances for room surfaces are:

Ceiling	80% minimum
Walls	50–70%
Partitions	50–70%
Floor	20–40%
Desktops, furniture	25–45%
Window blinds	40–60%

In landscaped offices, the typical half-height partitions block 30% to 80% of the light from ceiling luminaires, depending on the furniture arrangement. It is therefore all the more important that partition finishes (including fabrics) be light-colored. It is also desirable to have upper-wall sections painted to match the ceiling—that is, with a lighter finish than the remainder of the wall. This serves the dual function of increasing ceiling cavity brightness, particularly with suspended fixtures, and increasing vertical illumination due to reflection from this surface.

(c) Vertical Surface Illumination

This is required for many visual tasks in offices, such as those involving files, desk drawers, card files, and copy stands. Large area luminaires and a high degree of diffuseness are desirable. This is especially true in large offices where wall reflections are absent. Light-finished furniture surfaces, luminaires that yield an illuminated ceiling, and high-reflectance floors are also helpful.

16.19 LIGHTING FOR AREAS WITH VISUAL DISPLAY TERMINALS

The computer era has resulted in an explosive proliferation of VDTs in business offices. These devices (also called monitors, video displays, or simply computers) have become standard desktop items. Because of its specular face, the VDT creates a special problem for office lighting that becomes the deciding consideration in selecting the lighting system. Simply stated, the primary problem is to avoid reflection on the screen of any luminous source in the area, including luminaires, windows, illuminated walls, and even light-colored clothing. Any such reflection makes reading data on the screen difficult and sometimes impossible.

The problem of reflections on the VDT screen is not only one of work difficulty. With a *sharply defined* reflection on the screen, such as that of a lighting fixture, the problem becomes physiological. The eye is naturally drawn to any bright areas in the field of vision. On a VDT screen with a clear reflected luminaire image there are two bright items in the vision field: the luminaire reflection and the VDT text or graphics. These two images are separated in depth by the thickness of the glass on the face of the VDT. The eyes are drawn to and attempt to focus on both images, but because of the difference in depth, the eye focus changes continuously, causing eyestrain and severe fatigue. This effect is pronounced only with a clear reflected image; a fuzzy or blurred image appears only as a bright veiling reflection. As a result of this and associated problems, a number of governmental agencies have already issued guidelines for employees using VDTs that limit work periods and monitor physical effects. The health department of the state of New Jersey, for instance, has issued guidelines for all state employees that call for 15-minute breaks every 2 hours and periodic eye examinations. In addition, these guidelines call for all VDTs to have tiltable swivel mounts that are user-adjustable and *separate* adjustable-angle keyboards. Fixed-position keyboards are not permitted. The reasoning here is obviously that each employee's situation is unique because of differences in work position, posture, and the body's physical dimensions. Therefore, the VDT user must be given the wherewithal to adjust and thereby maximize visual (and physical) comfort at his or her working position.

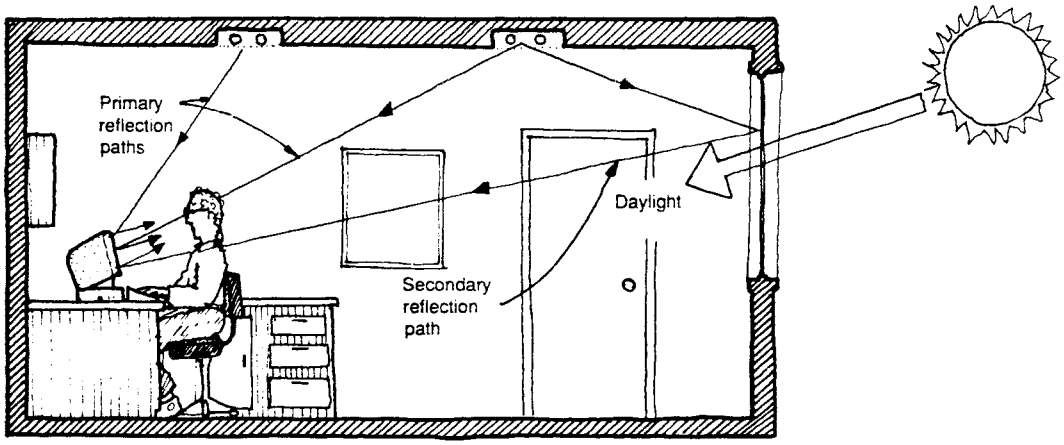


Fig. 16.16 *Primary sources of reflection in the VDT screen and keyboard are luminous areas such as lighting fixtures and windows. Specular surfaces such as window glass can become secondary reflection sources via rereflection of light from luminaires (or other light sources), as shown.*

A secondary problem is avoidance of reflections on the usually specular keyboard and other specular objects in the vicinity. Matte-finish keyboards are available, as is semispecular glass. The problem with the latter is that it tends to dull and blur the information on the monitor, which, especially when working with complex graphics, is highly undesirable. This is even more true of retrofit glare filters placed over the VDT screen.

The VDT problem (Fig. 16.16) is one of geometry, complicated by the fact that the screen is often up to 20° from the vertical and the keyboard is up to 30° from the horizontal. A further difficulty lies in the contradictory nature of adjacent visual tasks. Viewing of the screen calls for a low (vertical) ambient light level (75 to 125 lux), whereas the reading and writing work done in conjunction with viewing data on the screen requires a much higher (horizontal) level (300 to 700 lux). A full solution to the problem therefore involves careful attention to the selection and location of the VDT equipment and control of room surface reflectances in addition to proper lighting design. The following recommendations refer to all these considerations, with the knowledge that some may not be in the purview of the architect/lighting designer.

(a) Equipment

1. The screen should be recessed as deeply as possible into the VDT. This reduces the ambient light level at the screen and makes reading easier. It also reduces glare by restricting the room surface area that is reflected in the screen. (If the VDT is not constructed in that fashion, a simple handmade shade does almost as well.)
2. Convex screens reflect a larger ceiling area than flat screens and therefore should be avoided.
3. All parts of a VDT or computer, including keys, should have a matte finish.
4. The VDT should be mounted on an adjustable tilting swivel that permits changing the geometry of reflection.
5. The keyboard should be separate from the monitor, with an adjustable tilt angle.

(b) Location

1. Avoid locations where the VDT *viewer* faces a window or another large, bright area.
2. Equip windows within the geometry of reflection with low-reflectance vertical blinds. Blackout curtains are not required. Remember that windows can become a secondary source of reflection—that is, luminaire to window to VDT screen (see Fig. 16.16).

(c) Luminance Ratios

Throughout the course of the chapters on lighting, we repeatedly emphasize the need to limit the luminance ratios in the visual field, with the stringency diminishing as we recede from the center of the

vision field. Thus, in Section 11.32, Table 11.11, we recommend a maximum luminance ratio of 3:1 between task and immediate surround and 1:10 between task and remote lighter surfaces. These ratios become essentially impossible to maintain when the "task" involved is a VDT because of its low luminance.

The luminance of a color monitor varies from 20 to 85 cd/m^2 and averages about 50 cd/m^2 (~20 fL). A 3:1 task-to-surround luminance ratio would be impossible to achieve without almost completely darkening the room. A sheet of white paper with 85% reflectance would have to be illuminated with approximately 60 lux to achieve this ratio, and that level of illuminance, in almost any conceivable office environment, is unacceptably low. As a result, with respect to VDT area lighting design, IESNA RP-1 recommends these maximum luminance ratios between a VDT screen and its surroundings:

VDT to lighter immediate surround 1:3
VDT to darker immediate surround 3:1
VDT to lighter remote surround *
VDT to darker remote surround 10:1

*The permissible ratio of screen luminance to higher remote luminance depends on the size and location of the luminance, as explained in Section 11.28. The recommendation is that no point on the ceiling of the room containing a VDT exceed 850 cd/m^2 (17 times the average screen luminance) on any 60-cm (24-in.) square, and that lighting fixture luminance preferably be limited to:

850 cd/m^2 at 55° from the vertical
350 cd/m^2 at 65° from the vertical
175 cd/m^2 at 75° or more from the vertical

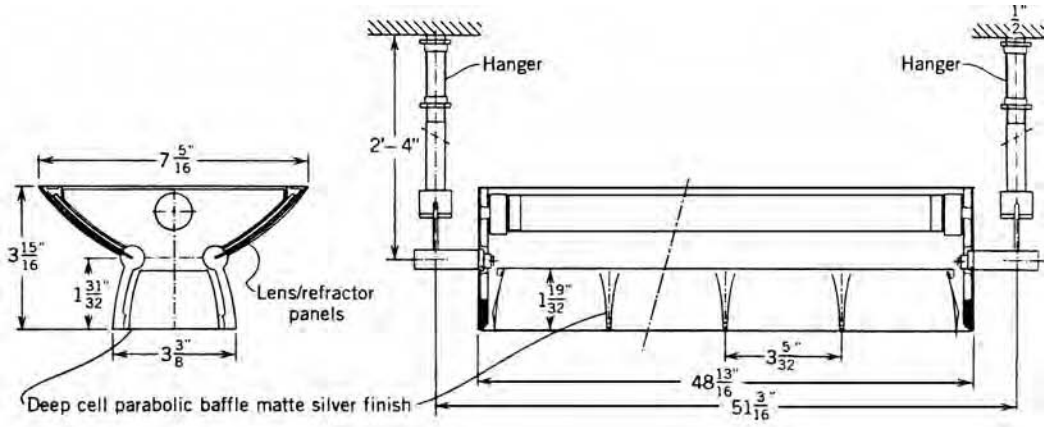
The limitation becomes more severe as the angle increases because high-angle luminance is reflected in the VDT screen from luminaires behind the VDT.

(d) Light Delivery

1. *Indirect lighting.* With a ceiling height of 10 ft (3 m) or more, an indirect lighting system with the 850-cd/m^2 luminance constraint can provide a uniform ambient illuminance level of about 30 fc (300 lux) horizontal and approximately half of that vertically. If these illuminance levels are not sufficient, portable desktop task fixtures can be utilized. It is advisable to design for somewhat higher levels and incorporate switching or dimming controls for field tuning of the installation. A ceiling height of less than 10 ft (3 m) would yield unacceptably high ceiling luminance in a totally indirect installation.

2. *Semi-indirect and direct-indirect lighting.* Spaces with a ceiling height of 9 to 11 ft (2.7 to 3.4 m) can utilize these systems to advantage, using semi-indirect lighting in the taller rooms and direct–indirect lighting in lower-ceiling areas. Uplight can vary between 40% and 80%, depending on the pendant stem length and the degree of spread of the upward component. Ceiling and fixture luminance should meet the criteria given previously. The ratio between fixture luminance and background ceiling luminance and between areas of ceiling of varying luminance should not exceed 5:1 at any viewing angle within the reflection geometry of the VDT. Inasmuch as manufacturers provide only fixture luminance data, the only way to determine ceiling luminances with different pendant lengths is with a full-scale mock-up. A few manufacturers provide *near-field* candela intensity data with which ceiling luminances can be calculated using a sophisticated computer program. However, because the majority of manufacturers use only far-field intensity measurement techniques, luminances of surfaces close to the luminaire, such as the ceiling, cannot be calculated accurately and only a full-scale mock-up gives reliable data. When designed properly, a direct-indirect system with approximately half of the luminaire output in each direction can provide a very effective VDT environment. Figures 16.17 and 16.18 show a well-designed semi-indirect unit with its characteristics and a typical installation. Figure 16.19 shows the application of a direct-indirect luminaire in an open-plan office with a relatively low ceiling. The batwing uplight characteristic prevents excessive ceiling brightness.

3. *Direct lighting.* In spaces with a ceiling height under 9 ft (2.7 m), and where otherwise required, a low-brightness direct-lighting luminaire can be used. The Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (CIE) standard for direct luminaires in areas with heavy VDT use calls for a maximum luminance of 200 cd/m^2 (58 fL) at 50° from the vertical and above, and the same luminance at 60° and above in areas with moderate VDT use. Such low luminance prevents both annoying reflections on monitor



(a)

Photometrics

ID-VM 1/32W T8

4' DIRECT/INDIRECT

Total Luminaire Efficiency 79%

76% Uplight 24% Downlight

Spacing Criteria

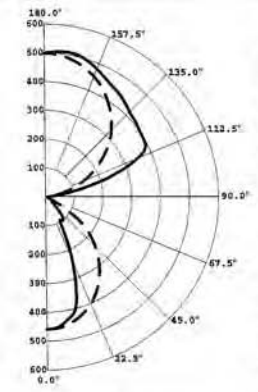
Lateral Plane 0 90

1.2 0.7

TOTAL LAMP LUMENS = 2900

INPUT WATTS = 31

Candela Distribution



Vertical Angle	Horizontal Angle 0	45	90	Zonal Lumens
0	459	459	459	
5	457	454	454	42.6
15	433	410	395	112.9
25	389	281	186	129.7
35	324	116	100	109.0
45	243	73	58	82.2
55	141	29	26	44.1
65	19	15	17	17.3
75	4	9	16	10.6
85	3	6	11	7.4
95	8	30	19	39.1
105	80	221	187	179.1
115	166	287	382	272.9
125	251	325	402	291.9
135	327	373	417	288.8
145	390	421	444	263.4
155	442	471	471	213.5
165	477	499	503	139.2
175	497	500	506	47.7
180	499	499	499	

Luminance Data in Candela / Sq. Meter

Angle in Vertical	Average 0	Average 45	Average 90
45	1516	455	362
55	1084	223	200
65	198	157	177
75	68	153	273
85	152	304	557

(b)



(c)

Fig. 16.17 *(a) Semi-indirect, low-brightness, deep-cell parabolic baffle fluorescent fixture. The parabolic baffle provides the required low luminance in the parallel direction (see text), as does the fixture body in the normal plane, so the fixtures should not cause glare. (See luminance figures in the photometric table.) (b) Photometry. Maximum ceiling luminance and ceiling luminance ratios depend on hanger length, ceiling reflectance, and fixture spacing. (c) Photograph of a semi-indirect luminaire showing construction and suspension hardware. (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF Lighting Co.)*



Fig. 16.18 *Semi-indirect lighting installation in a New York stock brokerage office utilizing the fixture shown in Fig. 16.17. Every desk is equipped with a VDT. The translucent sides of the fixture are within the acceptable 5:1 luminance ratio to the ceiling recess luminance and therefore should not create a reflected glare problem. (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF Lighting Co.)*

screens and direct glare, which can be problematic in VDT areas because the working posture is in a head-up rather than the traditional head-down position used for horizontal tasks. Very few North American manufacturers meet such stringent criteria, adhering instead to the preferred maxima given in IESNA RP-1: 850 cd/m^2 (~250 fL) at 55°, 350 cd/m^2 (~100 fL) at 65°, and 175 cd/m^2 (~50 fL) at 75°, all measured from the vertical.

Furthermore, these luminances, which can be met by many one- and two-lamp low-brightness fixtures, avoid the dingy, cave-like atmosphere created by very-low-brightness luminaires. The reader should note, however, that these luminances refer to the direction causing the reflection. Therefore, if the viewing direction is not fixed, it is necessary to obtain and check parallel, normal, and 45° figures from the manufacturer.



Fig. 16.19 *A direct-indirect luminaire (see insert) with batwing uplight distribution can be used in a space with ceilings as low as 9 ft (2.7 m) and even less, without excessive ceiling brightness, as shown in this open-plan landscaped office. (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF Lighting Co.)*

To attain the required low luminance, fluorescent troffers can be equipped with miniature parabolic wedge louvers (Fig. 15.10*a*) or the more efficient large-cell specular parabolic louvers (Fig. 16.20). One problem with the latter is that although a good shielding angle (minimum 35°, preferably 45°) avoids lamp image reflection on the VDT and yields high VCP (minimum of 80 recommended), the lamps are reflected in the specular louvers, causing bright spots, which in turn can reflect from a VDT screen. To avoid this, some designers place a diffusing material (translucent overlay) *above* the louvers, which makes the louver luminance uniform but reduces efficiency. Another alternative is to use semispecular louvers, which increase overall louver luminance but without the highlights of specular louvers. A third alternative is to use specially made high-grade (and expensive) louvers whose curvature is carefully controlled to eliminate the ripple reflections seen in Fig. 16.20. Finally, specular louvers must be very well maintained, as every speck of dust shows up as a bright spot on a dark background.



Fig. 16.20 *The illustrated installation shows a newspaper office with a VDT on every desk and a variety of viewing directions. The lighting fixtures utilized are deep-cell specular parabolic louver units, which typically have low surface brightness and crosswise batwing distribution. Note particularly that the VDT screens are deeply recessed into the monitor case to minimize glare and that each VDT is mounted with tilt and swivel capability. (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF Lighting Co.)*

(e) Finishes

Walls, floors, and furniture should be finished in low-chroma, low-value colors, with a maximum reflectance of 50%. Very dark and very light desktops are to be avoided because of excessive luminance ratios and the latter also because of reflections. Similarly, users should be advised to avoid light-colored clothing and specular clothing accessories. In general, the standard recommended maximum luminance ratios of 1:3 in the near field and 1:10 in the far field should be the design goal here as well.

16.20 OFFICE LIGHTING GUIDELINES

(a) Private Offices

In these spaces, a task-ambient approach is frequently appropriate because there is usually only one primary visual task location, with the remainder of the space devoted to circulation and storage. Often, sufficient illumination for the latter is supplied by spill light from the task area, particularly when the task fixture is a pendant unit with an uplight component, as seen in Fig. 16.21. In large rooms, provide downlighting in sitting areas and some type of wall illumination using wallwashers, sconces, or a recessed perimeter unit to brighten the often dark wood-paneled walls. Accent lights are required for pictures and other displays.

(b) General Offices

The two basic approaches to general office lighting are a uniform layout that provides task-level lighting in the entire area or a task-ambient design. The former, discussed in this section, is most appropriate to speculative-type construction, where the furniture layout is unknown but a complete job is required. (Frequently, however, the construction contractor provides only sufficient electric power for lighting and miscellaneous power; the lighting for the space is designed *after* the space has been rented as "tenant" work. In such cases, a task-ambient design is possible because tenant work is tailored to the user's needs.)

A task-illuminance overall layout is wasteful of energy and increases building energy budgets. Therefore, a uniform layout, when used, should be designed so that levels can be lowered easily

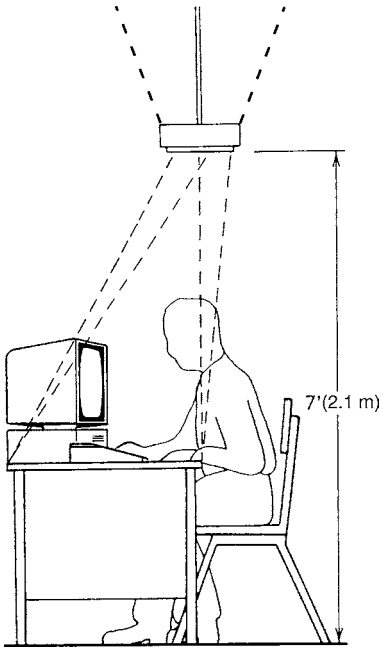


Fig. 16.21 *Geometry of a pendant task-ambient fixture. This unit is intended not only to supply task illumination, but also a measure of ambient lighting via its 20% uplight component. In a small room, this component is sufficient for general circulation. When installed as shown, veiling reflections are minimized and glare on the VDT screen is essentially eliminated.*

in areas not requiring task lighting (see Sections 15.13 to 15.17). Furthermore, because no control of the geometry of direct and reflected glare is possible in such layouts, the luminaire selected must give minimum average glare in *all* viewing directions. The system that best meets these requirements is one that uses a large number of low-brightness luminaires in a dense layout. This is a very expensive solution, however, unless the ceiling is either modular or coffered.

Modular ceilings, with a single-lamp luminaire in each module, are frequently a feasible and economical approach. A structurally coffered ceiling with a luminaire in alternate coffers (Fig. 16.22) is another possible alternative, depending on coffer size. The higher cost of the luminaires may be offset by the absence of a hung ceiling. For a flat ceiling, a low-brightness troffer would be selected. An unusual luminaire that creates a direct-indirect low-brightness unit in a troffer enclosure is shown in Fig. 16.23. A batwing distribution is generally not sought because of high direct glare (low VCP) and strong veiling reflections at work locations whose line of vision is crosswise to a lighting fixture. Where the viewing direction is established but the exact furniture layout is unknown, a uniform layout with low-brightness parabolic reflectors with a batwing characteristic can be used to advantage. Luminaire selection criteria for VDT areas were given in the preceding section. Where VDTs are not the overriding consideration, the following criteria are helpful:

1. In terms of appearance, a 2×4 ft (0.6×1.2 m) fixture is appropriate in a 2×2 ft (0.6×0.6 m) tile ceiling; a 1×4 ft (0.3×1.2 m) fixture is suitable in a 1×1 ft (0.3×0.3 m) ceiling; and a square 2×2 ft (0.6×0.6 m) fixture is suitable in all tile patterns.
2. Two-inch-deep parabolic louvers permit a shallow fixture, but lamp shielding is poor. A 3-in.-minimum (76-mm) louver depth is

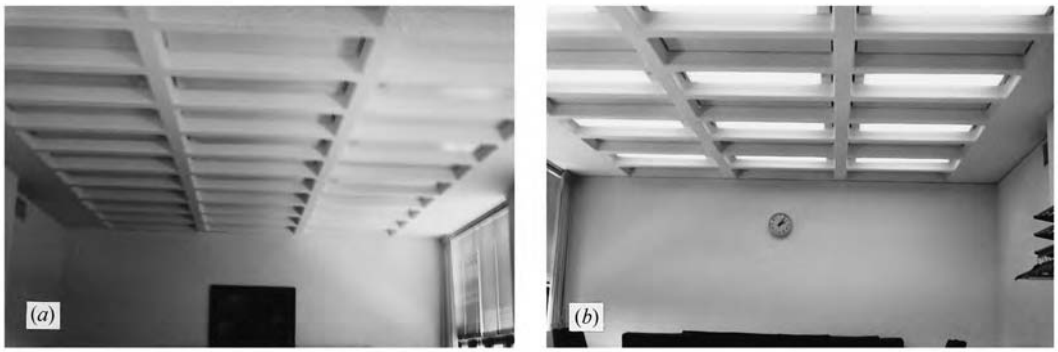


Fig. 16.22 *A coffer-ceilinged room (a) is illuminated with 1×4 ft (0.3×1.2 m) two-lamp units in alternate coffers. The appearance both unlighted (a) and lighted (b) is symmetrical. (Photos by B. Stein.)*



Fig. 16.23 *Luminaire construction giving a direct-indirect appearance (a) using a direct troffer construction (b). The medium-brightness luminaire interior reflects light, giving a deep, airy appearance. The translucent lamp enclosure maintains an acceptable luminance against the background (interior) reflector. The photometric characteristic is essentially circular in both longitudinal and transverse planes. (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF Lighting Co.)*

suggested for all large-cell parabolic louver luminaires.

3. Three-lamp parabolic louver units, which are usually too bright for VDT areas, can be used to advantage. Two-lamp units give better uniformity and VCP at a premium price.
4. Two-foot-square deep cell parabolics with 31-W T8 U lamps or biaxial compact lamps are an excellent choice in terms of VCP, uniformity of illumination, and appearance.
5. Premium-quality specular parabolic louvers that eliminate hot (bright) spots are available.
6. In relatively small offices with 1×1 ft (0.3×0.3 m) ceiling tiles, 1-ft^2 (nominal 0.09 m^2) troffers with deep miniature parabolic wedge louvers and 16-W U lamps or compact fluorescents are an excellent all-purpose lighting solution (Fig. 16.24).
7. Direct-indirect shallow luminaires with a wide, inverted batwing uplight distribution can be pendant mounted as low as 7 ft, 6-in. (2.3 m) AFF (Fig. 16.19).

(c) Office Lighting Equipment

Office lighting equipment is generally not treated roughly. Fixtures with touch latches, light hinges, and adjustable devices may be selected without fear of breakage or vandalism.



Fig. 16.24 *One-foot-square (305-mm-square), 9-cell luminaire with deep parabolic louvers. This unit is applicable to small offices and/or areas with 1 ft × 1 ft (305 × 305 mm) ceiling-tile arrangements. (Courtesy of Zumtobel-STAFF Lighting Co.)*

(d) Maintenance

In most offices, maintenance is provided on a trouble-call basis. Lamps are replaced on burnout, and the fixture is then cleaned. Because of the long life of fluorescents and HID sources, this generally means a 3- to 5-year cleaning cycle. An LLF of 0.65 is reasonable in air-conditioned spaces; a lower LLF is appropriate in open-window offices.

(e) Fenestration

When fenestration is absent, a lighted valance around the room is recommended. This removes the wall-ceiling line and partially compensates for the lack of windows. It also brightens the walls and increases illumination on desks placed adjacent to the walls.

(f) Control

The control strategy (see Sections 15.13 to 15.17) should *minimally* provide (after tuning):

1. Daylight compensation.
2. Possibility of operating individual small groups of lights while the remainder are off, to permit off-hours work.
3. Path lighting through large spaces to permit traversing without turning on all lights.
4. Careful scheduling with supervised local override. With these general guidelines in mind, the following sections discuss specific topics in office lighting.

16.21 TASK-AMBIENT OFFICE LIGHTING DESIGN USING CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS

Efficient modern office lighting, like other work-area lighting, is often predicated on a task-ambient design. This approach has the advantages of minimum contrast reduction at the task and minimum power use, the latter resulting in low operating cost. The method involves designing a uniform ceiling layout that provides low-level lighting for circulation and miscellaneous easy visual tasks, plus workstation-mounted task lighting. The latter can either be integral with the furniture (see the following section) or a separate, generally adjustable unit on or adjacent to the desk. The former is particularly useful for very severe seeing tasks when adjustability of angle and distance between light and work is vital. Integral furniture units are usually not adjustable, and are therefore limited to a maximum of about 750 lux on the task. Higher levels would generate excessive heat and, almost certainly, glare.

16.22 TASK-AMBIENT OFFICE LIGHTING USING FURNITURE-INTEGRATED LUMINAIRES

In lieu of ceiling-mounted luminaires to provide ambient lighting, indirect HID fixtures can be mounted on the top of furniture or can be free-standing. Task lighting would be integral with the office furniture. Advantages of this arrangement include the following:

1. The problem of furniture layout and layout changes is eliminated.
2. Initial construction cost is reduced.
3. Energy requirements are lowered because of short distances between light source and task.
4. Each occupant has on-off control of his or her task lighting, including, in some designs, positioning control.
5. Maintenance is greatly simplified because fixtures are readily accessible from the floor.
6. Floor-to-floor height can frequently be reduced.
7. Tax advantages normally accrue due to higher depreciation rates on furniture than on a building.

Disadvantages include the following:

1. Difficulty in dissipating heat and minimizing magnetic ballast noise due to proximity of sources to the user. For this reason, electronic ballasts should be used.
2. Veiling reflections are *always* present and can be severe.
3. Luminance ratios in the near and far surround may exceed recommended levels.
4. Difficulty in lighting a free-standing open desk, because most of the fixture types are under-counter or sidewall mounted.

5. Difficulty in evenly lighting large tables or L-shaped desk areas because of the concentrating nature of the lighting units.
6. Not readily applicable to automatic switching and dimming schemes.
7. For satisfactory operation with fixed task lighting, the desk must be usable by both left- and right-handed people. This requires a considerable degree of duplication, as shown by lamps on both sides of the drawing in Fig. 16.25.

Figure 16.25 graphically shows the problem of local desk lighting. Experience suggests that only systems that permit user positioning adjustment of the light source have a high degree of user acceptability.

16.23 INTEGRATED AND MODULAR CEILINGS

The cost, appearance, and design-flexibility advantages of an integrated ceiling design over field-assembled and coordinated systems have long been known. As a result, ceiling systems with integrated lighting, acoustic control, and air-handling capabilities are commercially available in modular sizes (including 60-in. [1.5 m] square, 48-in. [1.2 m] square, and 30 × 60 in. [762 × 1524 mm]). Modules are made in flat and pyramidal shapes, the latter having several distinct advantages:

1. More interesting and aesthetically pleasing.
2. More acoustic absorbency due to ceiling angles and a larger surface area.
3. The recessed center provides visual baffling, permitting the use of higher-brightness sources while maintaining high VCP.

Possible luminaire arrangements for both flat and pyramidal shapes are given in Fig. 16.26. In addition to the design flexibility available, an electrified track can be integrated into the system runners to supply both the lighting fixtures and power poles.

16.24 LIGHTING AND AIR CONDITIONING

The reduction of lighting power densities to below 2 W/ft^2 (21 W/m^2) in all but special areas considerably reduces the impact of lighting-generated heat on a building's HVAC system. In non-air-conditioned buildings, the lighting heat contribution is partially applicable to building heating. Fixture efficiency is directly affected by its temperature. Fluorescent units operate at an optimum temperature of 77°F (25°F). Temperatures above and below this decrease output and fixture efficiency. Thus, heat removal from units is desirable even at low lighting-energy levels. The most effective method of fixture heat removal is duct connection to the unit itself. This method, however, is relatively expensive and immobilizes the fixture. Alternatively, the plenum can be exhausted with air passing over the fixtures, picking up excess heat. These details are essentially part of HVAC system design and are covered in Part II.

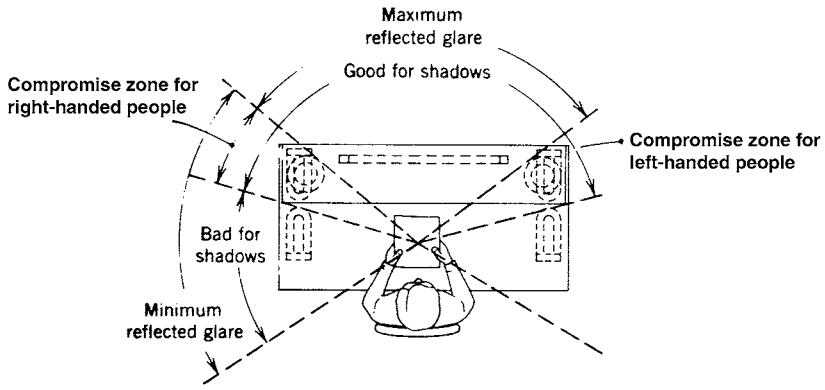


Fig. 16.25 *Furniture-mounted task lighting can create severe reflected glare or hand shadows if the luminaire location is not selected carefully. Further constraints are location in elevation—for shielding (needs to be low) and for good distribution (needs to be high), appearance considerations, and compatibility with a worker's physical movements. Light source position adjustability removes most user objections to this type of task lighting.*

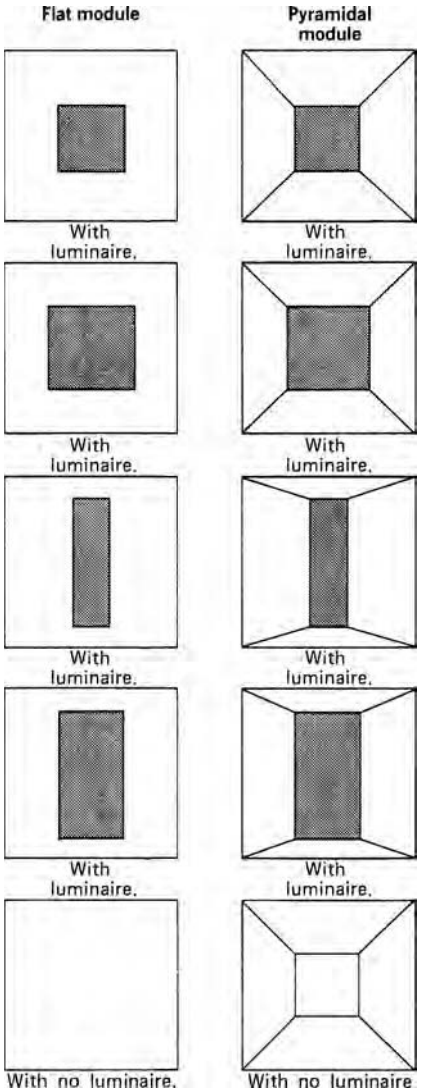


Fig. 16.26 *Various configurations of reflected ceiling fan modules.*

INDUSTRIAL LIGHTING

16.25 GENERAL INFORMATION

In industrial lighting, a primary design consideration is economic. Given acceptable standards of comfort and safety for the working staff, additional costs for lighting must be self-justifying economically. In one case, a good lighting installation was improved at considerable cost. Production jumped 15%, of which 3% was sufficient to amortize the cost of the lighting alteration. In another case, an outlay for new inspection lighting reduced product failures and proved economically sound. In a third, improved lighting reduced accidents, improved employee morale, and consequently improved production. The cases studied are far too numerous to mention; general principles are adduced instead.

16.26 LEVELS AND SOURCES

Illuminance requirements are detailed in IESNA RP-7-2001, *Lighting Industrial Facilities*. The standard describes in detail a method for prescribing illuminance for specific industrial occupancies and tasks. Where levels higher than 50 to 75 fc (540 to 800 lux) are required, general illumination must be supplemented by local illumination. Industrial facilities lend themselves readily to daylighting because many are one-story structures. Thus, roof monitors, skylights, and clerestories are readily applicable and extremely desirable. However, inasmuch as industrial facilities are frequently sited in industrial areas with attendant heavy atmospheric soot and dirt, a frequent cleaning and maintenance program is necessary if the LLF is to be kept at reasonable levels. This observation is also applicable to indoor lighting systems.

Light sources for industrial applications should exhibit high efficacy, good lumen maintenance, and long life. Of the sources available today, fluorescent and HID lamps meet these criteria. Induction and sulfur lamps may join this group after additional development and field testing. Where color is not critical, HPS is the recommended source. Adaptation to its warm yellow color is rapid, and if it is mixed with metal-halide or mercury sources, no problem should be encountered. HID lamps are easier to maintain, store, clean, and relamp than fluorescent lamps and have equal or better efficacy, but have the disadvantages of delay and lower output on restrike. Because of their relatively small size, HID sources are used in focusing reflectors that produce intensity (cp) distribution characteristics designed for specific illumination objectives. Thus, HID sources are generally used for high-bay (>25 ft [7.6 m]) and medium-bay (15 to 25 ft [4.6 to 7.6 m]) installations. For low-bay lighting, industrial reflector fluorescent luminaires and low-bay HID reflectors are both applicable.

One of the most common industrial lighting tasks is warehouse aisle lighting that must provide adequate vertical surface illumination on racks on both sides of an aisle. The required cp distribution to perform this task efficiently is a modified batwing curve. This is more easily accomplished in low-bay lighting with a continuous row fluorescent installation than with discrete HID units.

16.27 INDUSTRIAL LUMINANCE RATIOS

For reasons explained at length in preceding sections, luminance ratios must be controlled. Recommendations are given in Table 11.11. In many situations it is difficult to control the surrounding brightness. Ceilings, which frequently are covered with piping, ducts, and other equipment, should be light. Therefore, this mechanical equipment must be painted with matte, light unsaturated colors; maintenance and cleaning must be good; and fixtures should have an upward component of light to avoid more than a 20:1 ratio of task-to-ceiling luminance.

Use of bright saturated colors for general surface painting should be avoided because they draw attention and frequently have special significance. In addition to color-coded piping (banding is preferable), red frequently means fire equipment; green, first aid; orange, danger; and so on. White is also to be avoided, being excessively bright and susceptible to dirt. Recommended minimum reflectances are:

Ceiling	75–85%
Walls	40–60%
Equipment	25–45%
Floors	20%

16.28 INDUSTRIAL LIGHTING GLARE

The problem of direct glare can be acute in low-bay installations, and that of reflected glare in high-bay designs, when either uses a point source. One method of reducing direct glare is the use of low-brightness prismatic lens units with a black reflector behind the lens. Methods of minimizing veiling reflection from all sources were discussed previously.

16.29 INDUSTRIAL LIGHTING EQUIPMENT

The cost of maintenance increases with labor rates. For this reason, high-quality lighting equipment yields the lowest owning and life-cycle costs. For instance, the cost of replacing a ballast for HID lighting units frequently exceeds the cost of the ballast. It is thus obvious that it is more economical to utilize long-life, high-quality ballasts, particularly where luminaires are not readily accessible.

Other suggestions for lowering costs, both initial and operating, include using ventilated luminaires that tend to be self-cleaning by convection (Fig. 16.27) in addition to giving the needed upward light component, using bus-mounted fixtures for rapid installation and repair (see Fig. 27.12), using lowering mechanisms on high-bay units to avoid catwalk or platform relamping with a concomitant *extremely* high cost, using fixtures arranged for "stick" relamping from the floor in medium- and low-bay work, and generally incorporating modern equipment into the plant.

Proper maintenance is of paramount importance in industrial facilities because of the prevalence of dirt, vibration, and rough service. Maintenance includes cleaning, relamping, inspection, and preventive maintenance. Relamping on a burnout basis is extremely uneconomical because of disruption of production and lowered production due to lumen depreciation before burnout. Relamping should be done on a planned group basis. Similarly, if the specific facility has a high dirt accumulation rate, cleaning must also be done on

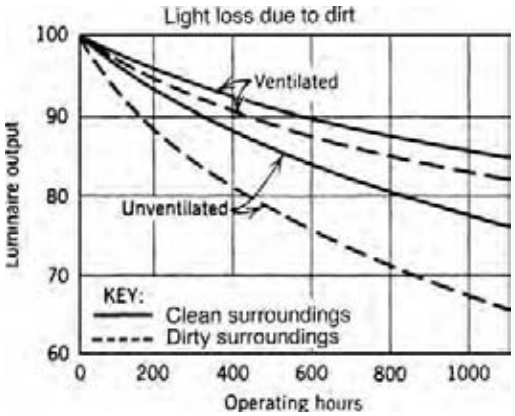


Fig. 16.27 *Graph demonstrating the advantage of ventilated fixtures.*

a planned group basis rather than only at relamping time.

Ballast noise, including the high levels of HID ballasts, is not usually a factor in industrial facilities because of high ambient noise. In relatively quiet installations and/or where fluorescent fixtures are mounted a short distance above a work bench, as in inspection and fine assembly, this is not true and electronic ballasts are needed.

16.30 VERTICAL-SURFACE ILLUMINATION

In industrial facilities more than any other occupancy, the illumination of vertical surfaces is crucial. This is a result of the nature of the work: machines, storage, gauges, and so on all require high vertical-surface illuminance (Fig. 16.28). The illuminance on a vertical surface is the result of the horizontal component of the lighting. This is

$$\text{fc} = \frac{\text{cp}}{D^2} \sin\theta = \frac{\text{cp} \times R}{D^3} = \frac{\text{cp} \times \cos^2\theta \times \sin\theta}{H^2}$$

To maximize the horizontal component, we set to zero the derivative of fc with respect to θ. Thus

$$\frac{d\,\text{fc}}{d\theta} = \frac{\text{cp}}{H^2}(-2\cos\theta \times \sin^2\theta + \cos^3\theta) = 0$$

or

$$2\sin^2\theta = \cos^2\theta$$
$$\tan^2\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}$$
$$\tan\theta = 0.707 = \frac{R}{H}$$
$$\theta \approx 35^\circ$$

Therefore, maximum vertical illuminance (illumination resulting from the horizontal-lighting component) is obtained when the angle between the fixture's vertical axis and the work is approximately 35°. Hence, we should select a fixture whose candlepower distribution curve demonstrates a high value at that angle. Of course, the derivation is for a single location and fixture. For good vertical and angular illumination over a large area, arrange fixtures with considerable overlap.

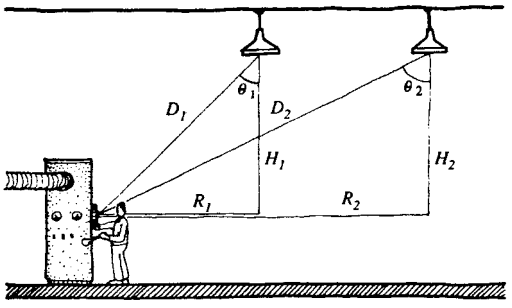


Fig. 16.28 *Vertical-surfaceilluminance is maximum where θ is approximately 35° (see derivation in text).*

SPECIAL LIGHTING APPLICATION TOPICS

16.31 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

Emergency lighting is required when the normal lighting is extinguished, which can occur for any of three reasons:

1. General power failure
2. Failure of the building's electrical system
3. Interruption of current flow to a lighting unit, even as a result of inadvertent or accidental operation of a switch or circuit disconnect

As a result of the third reason, sensors must be installed at the most localized level—that is, at the lighting fixture (voltage sensor) or in the lighted space (photocell sensor).

(a) Codes and Standards

Because emergency lighting is a safety-related item, it is covered by various codes, several of which may have jurisdiction. In addition, there are widely accepted technical society and industry standards whose recommendations normally exceed the minima required by codes.

1. *Life Safety Code* (*NFPA 101*, 2009). This code defines the locations within specific types of structures requiring emergency lighting and specifies the level and duration of the lighting.
2. *National Electrical Code* (*NFPA 70*, 2008). This code deals with system arrangements for emergency light (and power) circuits, including egress and exit lighting. It discusses power sources and system design.

3. *Standard for Health Care Facilities* (*NFPA 99*, 2005). This code deals with special emergency light and power arrangements for these facilities.
4. *OSHA regulations.* These are primarily safety-oriented and, in the area of emergency lighting, discuss primarily exit and egress lighting requirements.
5. *Industry standards.* These include the publications of the IESNA and the IEEE, in particular *Recommended Practice for Emergency and Standby Power Systems for Industrial and Commercial Applications* (IEEE Standard 446-1995).

Because codes and standards are constantly being revised and updated, the designer for an actual project must determine which codes have jurisdiction, obtain current editions, and design to fulfill their requirements. The following material provides general information and focuses on good practice but is not intended to take the place of applicable construction and safety codes.

(b) Minimum Illumination Levels and Duration of Emergency Lighting

Most codes and authorities require a *minimum average illuminance at floor level*, throughout the means of egress, of 1.0 fc (10 lux). This is considered sufficient, after eyes accommodate, to permit orderly egress. No point along the path of egress should have an illuminance of less than 0.1 fc (1 lux), and the maximum-to-minimum ratio of illuminances along the egress path should not exceed 40:1. The language of the codes is precise, and its consequences must be completely understood in order to properly design an emergency lighting system.

The *Life Safety Code* relates to life safety—that is, safe egress during an emergency that often involves fire. In such instances, smoke normally obstructs vision at eye level, and it is therefore extremely important that the required illumination be available at floor level. Ceiling-mounted emergency lighting may not illuminate the floor in smoky areas and may even worsen a situation by creating a bright, fog-like condition. It is therefore widely recommended that adequate egress lighting be provided at *baseboard level*. Some codes already mandate baseboard egress lighting. The requirement that the *average minimum* illuminance be 1.0 fc (10 lux) along with the mandated minimum of 0.1 fc (1 lux) at any point and a maximum 40:1 ratio of maximum to minimum illuminance, should effectively eliminate faulty design that utilizes several widely separated bright sources.

Other authorities recommend that escape routes be lighted to not less than 1% of their normal illuminance, but in no case less than 0.5 fc (5 lux). Where the 1% of normal requirement recommendation falls below 1 fc (10 lux) (normal illuminance less than 100 fc), we would abide by the 1-fc (10-lux) minimum required by the *Life Safety Code*.

Duration of the 1-fc (10-lux) level of emergency lighting is normally specified to be a minimum of 90 minutes (for egress) and 0.6 fc (6 lux) thereafter. Facilities that cannot be evacuated quickly require higher levels for indefinite periods.

(c) Central Battery Emergency Lighting Systems

Sections 26.39 and 28.21 cover emergency power systems, including generators and central battery systems. Generators are normally arranged to replace the utility during outages, using the building's normal electrical distribution system, with the difference that only essential loads remain connected. This obviously does not meet the requirement that emergency lighting be supplied on power failure, *even if the fault is local* (i.e., within the building).

Central battery systems are of three types:

1. Those supplying low-voltage dc (6 to 48 V) to dedicated emergency lighting units (Fig. 16.29*a*). This type of central battery installation consists of a battery, charger, and switching equipment. The emergency lighting units are generally not part of the normal lighting system, consisting instead of dedicated incandescent fixtures. The system has the same limitation as a generator, and therefore is not applicable to most emergency lighting situations except when equipped with multiple downstream sensors. As such sensing would be highly uneconomical, this system is limited to a single (large) space with common outage sensing. This arrangement has the further disadvantage that the emergency lighting units may obtrude on the building's decor and architecture, inasmuch as

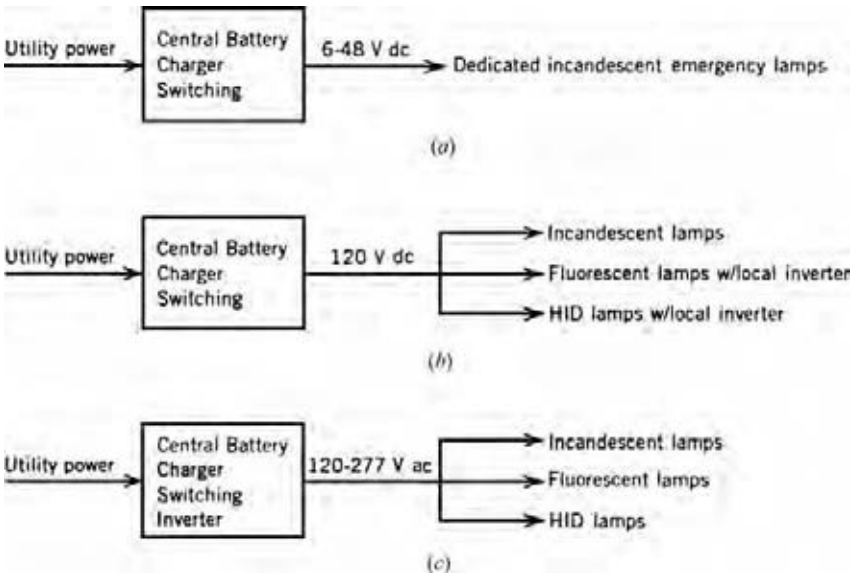


Fig. 16.29 *Schematic diagrams of an emergency power system using central batteries. In (a) the emergency system is completely separate from the normal lighting system and utilizes dedicated lighting units. (b) This arrangement furnishes dc to the luminaire, where it is inverted to ac (except for incandescent lamps). The fixtures are utilized during both normal and emergency operation. As switching is instantaneous, HID lamps are not extinguished. (c) An arrangement that is similar to (b) except that a central inverter supplies ac continuously. Here, too, the lamps are used in both normal and emergency modes.*

they are not part of the normal lighting system. Also, because the lighting units are isolated devices, it is difficult to obtain a satisfactory degree of emergency illumination uniformity, as explained previously (see also Section 16.31e).

2. Systems supplying 120-V dc (Fig. 16.29*b*). This arrangement supplies line voltage dc to emergency lighting fixtures, which are also used as part of the normal system. HID and fluorescent luminaires are furnished with integral inverters to change the incoming dc to ac. This arrangement has the advantage of a central, well-maintained battery supply but the disadvantage of requiring a full dc distribution system.
3. Systems supplying line voltage ac (Fig. 16.29*c*). Here the central unit contains a battery, charger, central dc/ac inverter, and switching equipment. Such a system can supply power to incandescent, fluorescent, and HID systems in spaces where a single voltage-loss sensing point is sufficient. The emergency lighting units are part of the normal lighting system. This arrangement is most frequently used where a distributed system with local batteries (discussed later) would not be readily applicable due to the size of the load, as would be the case with high-wattage HID luminaires. A typical 10-kVA on-line UPS cabinet designed to supply emergency ac power to HID lamps measures approximately 40 in. W × 50 in. H × 20 in. D (1.0 × 1.3 × 0.5 m) and weighs about 1000 lb (450 kg).

(d) Distributed (Local) Emergency Lighting Arrangements

As a result of the inability of a central system to respond to a localized outage, a frequently used emergency lighting arrangement is one where the source of power, as well as all the voltage-sensing and switching equipment, is installed at the emergency lighting fixture, which is usually part of the normal lighting system. The emergency pack consists of a rechargeable battery and charger, voltage-sensing and switching equipment, and, in the case of fluorescent lamps, an

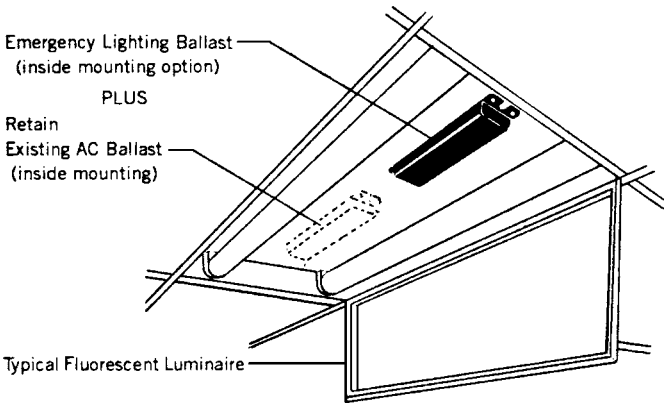


Fig. 16.30 *The emergency lighting ballast package contains a 90-minute-capacity high-temperature battery, inverter, sensing and switching equipment, and electronic ballast circuitry to operate the lamp(s) at full or reduced output. The emergency ballast is energized on loss of normal power. The entire package measures 9½ × 2, × 1½ in. (241 × 60 × 38 mm). (Courtesy of Big Beam Emergency System, Inc.)*

electronic package (ballast) that operates the lamp at high frequency and generally at reduced output (Fig. 16.30). These packages, which are designed to supply the code-required 90 minutes of emergency lighting, are maintenance-free for periods of up to 5 years. A second type of distributed emergency lighting unit is the familiar packaged unit with integral incandescent lamps. Several designs are shown in Figs. 16.31 and 16.32.

(e) Emergency Lighting Design Considerations

The levels and duration discussed in Section 16.31b refer only to egress lighting. However, general emergency lighting is required to avoid distress and even panic that unfortunately may rapidly ensue. The required emergency illuminance in specific areas should be related to the area's normal illuminance



Fig. 16.31 *Commercial emergency lighting units. (a) This decorative unit contains a sealed, maintenance-free lead–acid battery, an automatic charger, and an automatic low-battery-voltage disconnect. The battery is designed to supply a minimum of 90 minutes of operation of fully adjustable 5-W sealed beam lamps. The unit measures 14 in. W × 5 in. H × 5 in. D (356 × 127 × 127 mm). (b) Conventional design emergency unit contains a lead–acid or lead–calcium battery, which is housed with its required electronic control and safety equipment in a polycarbonate housing. The lamps are rated 7.2 W each. The entire unit measures approximately 11 in. L × 12 in. H × 10 in. D (279 × 305 × 254 mm); exact dimensions vary with battery type, voltage, and capacity. (Photos courtesy of Dual-Lite, a unit of General Signal.)*



(a) (b)

Fig. 16.32 *Industrial-type emergency lighting units. (a) This traditional-design unit is available in a variety of battery voltages and uses a pure lead or a lead-calcium maintenance-free battery. The cabinet conforms to a NEMA 1 enclosure. The unit can be arranged to supply additional remote 7.2-W sealed-beam heads. The unit measures 14 in. W × 8 in. D × 19 in. H over the lamps (356 × 203 × 483 mm), and is provided with an external charge indicator light and a test switch. (b) This compact polyester enclosure unit is sealed and gasketed for rugged industrial application. It measures approximately 10 in. W × 11 in. D × 14 in. H (254 × 280 × 365 mm) and contains the usual electronics for control and charging of its lead battery. A charge indicator and a test switch (to simulate power failure) are mounted on the side. (Photos courtesy of Dual-Lite, a unit of General Signal.)*

and the degree of hazard in the area. Therefore, we would suggest:

Exit area	5 fc (50 lux)
Stair	3.5–5 fc (35–50 lux)
Hazard areas, such as machinery room	2–5 fc (20–50 lux)
Other spaces	1.0 fc (10 lux)

These levels should be essentially uniform. When the illuminance in an interior space drops instantaneously from 30–100 fc (300–1000 lux) to 1–5 fc (10–50 lux), the eyes require up to 5 minutes to fully accommodate. During this long period, occupants are partially sightless—a condition that lends itself readily to panic. For this reason, bright, spotlight-type heads must be *very carefully arranged*. Otherwise they can create disabling glare and distorting shadows and impede eye accommodation.

Although it is customary to furnish the required emergency illumination from ceiling- or wall-mounted fixtures, consideration must be given to the code requirement, as noted in Section 16.31(b), that specified emergency lighting levels be maintained at floor level. Because heavy smoke can readily obscure light from overhead fixtures, it is advisable to install some (preferably directional) emergency lighting fixtures near floor level.

(f) Exit Lighting

Most codes require 5 fc (50 lux) on nonilluminated exit signs, internally illuminated signs with the same visibility as an externally illuminated sign, or self-luminous signs with a specified luminance (usually at least 0.21 cd/m^2). Some exit signs are equipped with a battery and controls that provide 1½ hours of illumination on loss of utility power. Others are arranged to illuminate the exit area beneath the sign (Fig. 16.33), and still others are equipped with a flasher and/or an audible beeper that assists people in finding the exit in a light-obscuring, smoke-filled room. Finally, some exit signs are nonelectrical self-illuminating, requiring continuous illumination, and are part of the emergency lighting system.



Fig. 16.33 *Typical application of an exit light with a built-in battery, charger, and controls. Note that the bottom of the unit is designed to illuminate the area immediately in front of the exit. (Photo by B. Stein.)*

16.32 FLOODLIGHTING

Floodlighting, both interior and exterior, is used extensively for the diverse locations listed in Table 16.4, in addition to the more common sports facility lighting, which is not listed. At the designer's disposal are a variety of sources with respect to output, color, life, efficacy, and wattage (see Chapter 12).

Although a detailed floodlighting design involves complex calculations beyond the scope of this book, it is often sufficient for the designer to utilize a watts per square foot table such as Table 16.4 to determine the approximate floodlighting requirements. The designer should also consult the unit power allowances for exterior lighting listed in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1.

Thus, if one is concerned with lighting a self-service parking lot at a neighborhood shopping center, and metal–halide is selected, Table 16.4 tells us that approximately 0.055 W/ft^2 (0.6 W/m^2) will suffice. This is well within the limits of Standard 90.1. If the lot is 200 × 500 ft (100,000 ft^2), then 0.055 × 100,000 = 5500 W is required. This figure is a good first estimate. The actual power level depends upon the specific equipment and design. This may vary from the initial estimate by ±20%.

The arrangement and choice of equipment must be determined before the problem can be considered solved. Considerable assistance on this score can be obtained from either the lighting engineer involved or from representatives of equipment manufacturers.

Although most floodlight installations use a single type, the installation shown in Fig. 16.34*b* used a combination of metal-halide and mercury to obtain the desired effect.

16.33 STREET LIGHTING

Although detailed street-lighting calculations and design considerations are beyond the scope of this book (see appropriate IESNA standards), a few remarks are in order. New installations now use HID sources almost exclusively. The low efficacy and short life of incandescent sources and the bulkiness of linear fluorescents make them obsolete. Furthermore, high street-lighting levels reduce vandalism and crime, improve night merchandising, and add to an area's attractiveness. A typical walkway luminaire is shown in Fig. 16.35.

16.34 LIGHT POLLUTION

A frequently neglected corollary to the principle of placing light where it is required is not to place light where it is not required. *Light pollution* is frequently defined as unwanted light in public places, whereas *light trespass* is the intrusion of unwanted light on private property. The latter includes light intrusion in windows and on private property, whereas the former covers excessive brightnesses everywhere, plus stray light that finds its way into the night sky to the distress not only of astronomers, but also of anyone who simply wishes to enjoy the beauty of a star-filled sky. At this writing, no standards exist that define the light levels that constitute an

TABLE 16.4 Lighting Application Guide

Application	Minimum Footcandles (lux) Maintained[a]	Watts per Square Foot (W/m^2)[b] Generally Required			
		Tungsten–Halogen	Mercury	Metal–Halide	High-Pressure Sodium
Automobile Parking					
Attendant parking	2 (20)	0.38 (3.8)	0.17 (1.7)	0.11 (1.1)	0.075 (0.75)
Industrial lots	1 (10)	0.13–0.15 (1.3–1.5)	0.06–0.07 (0.6–0.7)	0.037–0.044 (0.4–0.5)	0.026–0.03 (0.26–0.3)
Self-parking lots	1 (10)	0.13–0.15 (1.3–1.5)	0.06–0.07 (0.6–0.7)	0.037–0.044 (0.4–0.5)	0.026–0.03 (0.26–0.3)
Shopping Centers					
Neighborhood	1 (10)	0.13–0.19 (1.3–1.9)	0.06–0.09 (0.6–0.9)	0.037–0.055 (0.4–0.6)	0.026–0.038 (0.3–0.4)
Average commercial	2 (20)	0.26–0.3 (2.6–3.0)	0.12–0.135 (1.2–1.4)	0.075–0.087 (0.7–0.9)	0.052–0.06 (0.5–0.6)
Heavy traffic	5 (50)	0.65 (6.5)	0.29 (2.9)	0.19 (1.9)	0.13 (1.3)
Automobile Sales Lots					
Front row (front 20 ft [6 m])	50 (500)	10 (100)	4.5 (45)	2.9 (29)	2.0 (20)
Remainder	10 (100)	1.5–1.8 (15–18)	0.68–0.81 (6.8–8.1)	0.44–0.52 (4.4–5.2)	0.3–0.36 (3.0–3.6)
Building					
Construction	10 (100)	1.5–1.8 (15–18)	0.68–0.81 (6.8–8.1)	0.44–0.52 (4.4–5.2)	0.3–0.36 (3–3.6)
Excavation	2 (20)	0.26–0.3 (2.6–3.0)	0.12–0.14 (1.2–1.4)	0.075–0.09 (0.7–0.9)	0.052–0.06 (0.5–0.6)
	Adj. Area				
Buildings up to 50 ft (15 m) High	**Light** **Dark**				
Light surfaces	15 (150) 5 (50)	3.3 (33) 1.2 (12)	1.5 (15) 0.54 (5.4)	0.96 (9.6) 0.35 (3.5)	0.66 (6.6) 0.24 (2.4)
Medium light surf.	20 (200) 10 (100)	4.3 (43) 2.2 (22)	1.94 (19) 1.0 (10)	1.25 (1.25) 0.64 (6.4)	0.86 (8.6) 0.44 (4.4)
Dark surfaces	50 (500) 20 (200)	10.0 (100) 4.3 (43)	4.5 (45) 1.94 (19.4)	2.9 (29) 1.2 (12)	2.0 (20) 0.86 (8.6)
	Adj. Area				
Billboards and Signs	**Light** **Dark**				
Good contrast	50 (500) 20 (200)	10 (100) 4.3 (43)	4.5 (45) 1.94 (19.4)	2.9 (2.9) 1.25 (12.5)	2.0 (20) 0.86 (8.6)
Poor contrast	100 (1000) 50 (500)	20 (200) 10 (100)	9.0 (90) 4.5 (45)	5.8 (58) 2.9 (29)	4.0 (40) 2.0 (20)
Protective Lighting					
Gates and vital area	5 (50)	1.2 (12)	0.54 (5.4)	0.35 (3.5)	0.24 (2.4)
Building surrounds	1 (10)	0.15–0.19 (1.5–1.9)	0.07–0.09 (0.7–0.9)	0.044–0.055 (0.44–0.55)	0.03–0.04 (0.3–0.4)
Roadways					
Along buildings	1 (10)	0.24 (2.4)	0.11 (1.1)	0.07 (0.7)	0.05 (0.5)
Open areas	0.5 (5)	0.08–0.1 (0.8–1.0)	0.036–0.045 (0.36–0.45)	0.023–0.029 (0.23–0.29)	0.02 (0.2)
Storage yards	20 (200)	3.6–4.3 (36–43)	1.6–1.94 (16–19)	1.04–1.25 (10.4–12.5)	0.72–0.86 (7.2–8.6)
Storage yards (inactive)	1 (10)	0.15–0.19 (1.5–1.9)	0.07–0.09 (0.7–0.9)	0.044–0.055 (0.44–0.55)	0.03–0.04 (0.3–0.4)
Shopping Centers					
Parking areas (attraction)	5 (50)	0.65 (6.5)	0.29 (2.9)	0.19 (1.9)	0.13 (1.3)
Buildings (attraction)			(See Buildings)		
Used Car Lots			(See Automobile Parking)		

[a]All footcandle levels for ground area applications are *horizontal* values.

[b]SI conversions are approximate, using a factor of 10 (versus 10.76).



Fig. 16.34 *(a) Floodlighted section of a wall surrounding the Old City of Jerusalem, Israel, adjacent to the Jaffa Gate. Light sources are 400-W HPS units giving an average illuminance level of 50 lux. A sodium source was chosen to enhance the yellow-red color of the stone. (b) Church of All Nations, Mount of Olives, Jerusalem, Israel. Floodlight sources are 250- and 400-W mercury and metal–halide units, giving an average illuminance of 70 lux. Sources were selected to complement the colors in the mosaic at the top of the façade. (Photos courtesy of City of Jerusalem and J. Stroumsa, Chief Engineer.)*

intrusion or a nuisance glare. However, a few simple guidelines can assist the designer in avoiding the creation of a nuisance:

1. Light all exterior vertical surfaces from above, not below, wherever possible. This reduces skylight pollution.
2. Use luminaires with sharp cutoff beyond the illuminated area. Shields can be added to standard luminaires to accomplish this.
3. After an installation is complete, inspect it at night to determine whether any nuisance has been created.

Further information on this subject can be found in IESNA technical memoranda TM-10-00 and TN-11-00, dealing with light trespass.



Fig. 16.35 *A "lollypop" fixture, even if aesthetically pleasing to some, gives poor downward illumination (note the large collar). This type of luminaire causes light pollution. (Photo by Nathan Majeski.)*

16.35 REMOTE SOURCE LIGHTING

Every experienced lighting designer has at some time felt the need for a remote source luminaire to fill a specific lighting need. Among the most common situations are:

- Display lighting for light- and heat-sensitive objects such as old books, fabrics, drawings and paintings, and, in general, objects containing organic materials, dyes, and coloring. Of particular importance in this category is the acute sensitivity of such objects to UV radiation, which exists in daylight and light from most electrical sources.
- Installations where relamping is a major logistic and financial problem. These include high-ceiling auditoriums and public assembly spaces of all sorts, high-bay lighting areas and other difficult-access locations, clean rooms, spaces with security entry limitations, and rooms that cannot tolerate disturbances or interruptions, such as air-traffic control rooms, continuous process manufacturing control areas, and the like.

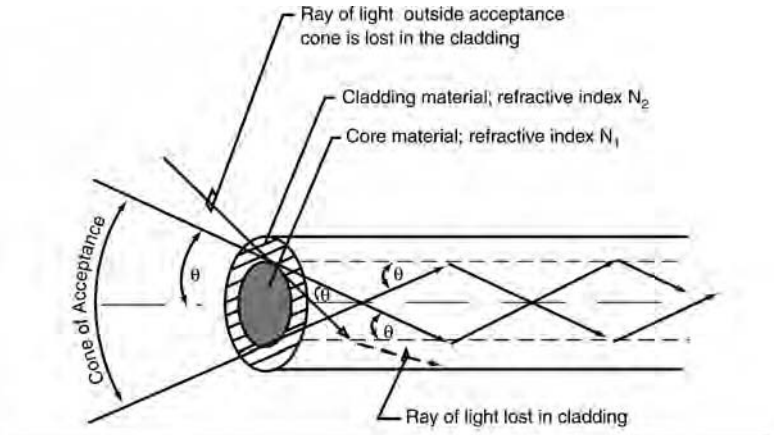
- Installations where lamp heat is highly undesirable and its removal is difficult, expensive, or both. Among these are store show windows, refrigerated showcases, and conditions where lamp heat is felt by the space occupant(s), such as halogen and other incandescent lighting at workstations and low-ceiling spaces.
- Installations where the presence of electrical wiring is undesirable, such as patient-controlled hospital bed lighting or light sources in devices used by children.
- Spaces classified by the *National Electrical Code* (*NEC*) as electrically hazardous. These areas typically use large, heavy, expensive, and inefficient explosionproof lighting.
- Installations where the electric and magnetic fields produced by fluorescent and HID lighting fixtures are unacceptable.
- Applications where the light source must be very small and effectively invisible.

Two basic designs have been developed over the years to fill these lighting requirements: arrangements using optical fibers and those using light guides of various types. Applications of these two techniques do not generally overlap, and they are therefore discussed separately in the following sections.

16.36 FIBER-OPTIC LIGHTING

Fiber optics have been in use for years, principally in instruments designed to permit illumination and observation of essentially inaccessible locations. In medical instruments designed for intrusive applications, fiber-optic (FO) cable has the additional advantages of absence of heat and elimination of electrical wiring, both of which could be at the very least uncomfortable and frequently dangerous when inserted into the body.

The physical principle by which an optical fiber conducts light is that of total internal reflection, illustrated in Fig. 16.36. The fiber is constructed of an inner core of transparent material (silica, glass, optical plastics) and an outer coating (cladding) of another material of *lower* refractive index. Because of this difference in refractive indices, light rays within the acceptance cone angle (2θ) are reflected



Core Index N_1	Cladding Index N_2	NA*	Cone Half Angle θ	Acceptance Cone (2θ)
1.4	1.3	0.52	31°	62°
1.4	1.0	0.98	78.5°	157°

*NA (Numerical Aperture) = $\sqrt{N_1^2 - N_2^2} = \sin\theta$

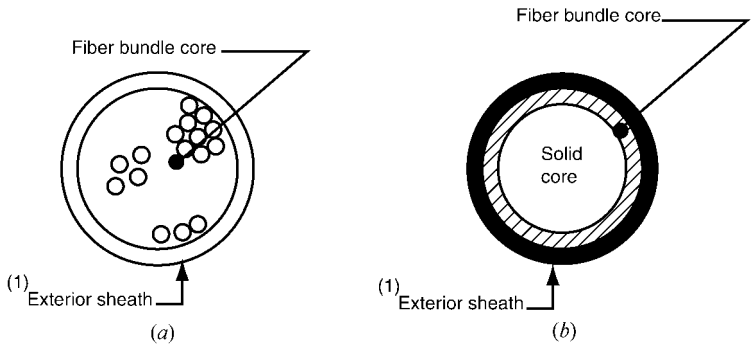
Fig. 16.36 *Schematic representation of the phenomenon of total internal reflection (TIR) in optical fibers (OF). Light rays entering the end of an OF at an angle to the fiber centerline no greater than θ are totally reflected at the interface between core and cladding. Angle θ is determined by the difference between the refractive indices of the core and cladding materials and increases as that difference increases. Light rays entering within the acceptance core (solid angle 2θ) travel along the fiber; all other light rays are lost.*

TABLE 16.5 Typical Characteristics of Plastic Optical-Fiber Cables

Type	Construction	*Diameter*		NA[a]	Cone Angle (degrees)	Attenuation Percent per Meter
		Fiber/Core (mm)	OD (mm)			
End-light Fiber bundle	See Illustration (*a*)	0.15–2.0	6–18	0.5	60	4.7
Side-light Fiber bundle		0.15–2.0	6–14	0.5	60	4.7
End-light Solid core	See Illustration (*b*)	3–13	5–16	0.62	76	8.2
Side-light Solid core		7–13	9–16	0.57	70	23.7

[a]NA (Numerical Aperture) = $\sqrt{N_1^2 - N_2^2} = \sin \Theta$; see Fig. 16.36.

Note: Sheathing is opaque for end-light cables and transparent for side-light cables.



at the interface of the two materials and thus proceed almost unimpeded down the core by a series of 100% reflections. Although there is (theoretically) no loss at the reflection, the core material itself exhibits an optical impedance that varies with the type of material. Ultraclear glass fibers, used in communications, have losses as low as 1 dB per kilometer, whereas the best plastic optical fiber used today has losses in the area of ⅓ dB per *meter*—that is, several hundred times as high. However, because of the short distances involved, these plastic fibers are satisfactory for lighting work (1-dB loss is the equivalent of 8.6% loss per meter, or 2.6% loss per foot).

Air, with a refractive index of 1.0, can also be used as a "cladding" material (unclad core), resulting in a fiber that emits light over its entire length. This light is shown in Fig. 16.36 as light "lost" in the cladding. In practice, a bare core is not used because it would be damaged at supports, and dirt accumulation on the surface would result in high losses. Sidelight fibers (lateral mode) are constructed commercially of a core, cladding, and sheathing, all of which are transparent plastic materials with decreasing refractive index from core to sheath. Note also in the figure that the angle θ, and therefore the size of the acceptance cone, increases with the difference in the refractive indices between cone and cladding. It is desirable to have an acceptance cone as large as possible (high numerical aperture) so that maximum light from the source (illuminator) can be introduced (coupled) into the fiber. Glass fibers are generally not used in lighting applications because of their high cost, small light-carrying capacity, and large bending radius. Table 16.5 shows the construction and major characteristics of typical lighting-use optical-fiber cables.

16.37 FIBER-OPTIC TERMINOLOGY

Because FO cable is becoming common in lighting work, a lighting designer should be familiar with FO terminology. A brief glossary of the most important terms follows.

Acceptance angle (also acceptance cone). The maximum solid interior angle of a cone that defines the spread of light rays that will enter a single fiber. As this angle is determined only by the fiber and the cladding materials, it is also the cone of light ray acceptance of a fiber bundle.

Attenuation. The degree of light reduction as it travels along the fiber. Because attenuation varies with frequency, the light color exiting an optical fiber is different from that entering, and the change becomes more pronounced with increasing fiber length.

Axial mode (also end-light). The mode of conduction from one end of the fiber (cable) to the other, with no deliberate loss by emission over the cable length.

Core. The center of an optical fiber that carries the light.

Fiber-optic port. A factory- or field-applied terminating connector that enables coupling of an FO cable to a light source or other item in the system. Glass FO is factory terminated; plastic fibers can be either.

Glass optical fiber. The type always used in communication work and seldom in lighting application. It is expensive, requires a large bending radius, and exhibits very low attenuation.

Illuminator. The light source in an FO lighting installation. It usually consists of a metal box containing the light source (usually metal-halide or halogen) and its accessories, plus required optical devices that collect and concentrate the light from the source and couple it optically to an optical port to which an optical cable is connected. The illuminator may also contain color filters, local and remote-control connections, and, almost always, a fan or blower for forced-air cooling of the source lamp.

Lateral mode (also sidelight[ing]). A light conduction and distribution system whereby light is emitted over the entire length of the fiber, simulating neon tubing. This is accomplished by using transparent cladding and sheathing, with refractive indices selected to increase light rays entering (and leaving) the cladding.

Numerical aperture. A numerical metric based on the refractive indices of the core and cladding materials, indicating the angle of the acceptance cone (i.e., that portion of the light that is conducted by the fiber core).

Plastic optic fiber. The fiber material normally used in lighting work, usually a clear acrylic-type compound as the core, with various plastic compounds as cladding or sheathing, depending on the design and mode of operation. The fibers are classified by size as small core (up to 2 mm [0.08 in.] in diameter) and large core (up to 20 mm [0.78 in.] in diameter). Small-core fibers are manufactured in continuous and essentially unlimited lengths. Large-core fibers and sheathed fiber-bundle cables do not usually exceed 150 ft (45 m) in length.

Refractive index. The ability of a light-conducting (nonopaque) material to bend a light ray entering from another medium, expressed numerically.

Tail. A single optical fiber or a bundle of fibers extending from an illuminator to an output point. A single fiber separated from a bundle for a specific small, isolated illumination purpose (often decorative) is also referred to as a tail.

16.38 FIBER-OPTIC LIGHTING—ARRANGEMENTS AND APPLICATIONS

The development of large, efficient plastic optical fibers coupled with a concomitant price reduction has produced a lighting tool whose applications are limited only by the imagination of designers and manufacturers. In one form or another, optical fibers are applicable where:

- A single remote source can supply a large number of relatively small point-source lights.
- Burial of the light carrier (fiber bundle) in almost any substrate is desired or required.
- The heat, UV content, and electrical fields associated with most sources are absent.
- The presence of electrical wiring and its associated hazards are undesirable or unacceptable.

A few of the many current configurations are described in the following subsections.

(a) Axial-Mode Linear Devices

In this arrangement, a bundle of fibers is placed in a longitudinal enclosure and individual fibers or small groups of fibers are separated from the bundle(s) and brought out of the enclosure as a light-emitting point (Fig. 16.37*a*). Most of these *light bars* are custom-made for a specific application, enabling the designer to specify all of the parameters, including spacing of points, intensity of each point, dimensions of the bar, individual fiber size and bundle size, color characteristics, and so on. Light bars are used in retail display lighting, accent lighting, directional devices, decorative applications, and other applications requiring a low-intensity, linear, "sparkling" and/or lighting device.

The essential design of a light bar can be adapted to the use of large-core fibers or multiple fiber bundles to produce a linear string of focusable, medium-intensity spotlights (Fig. 16.37*b*). In lieu of the closely spaced tiny light points of Fig. 16.37*a*, large fibers or bundles can be extracted. They can be used as light sources or can be coupled to optical plastic-fiber rods or other devices. These can then be "aimed" as desired to illuminate individual areas in a cabinet, store window, and the like. Here, too, the units are commonly custom-designed to perform a specific lighting task.

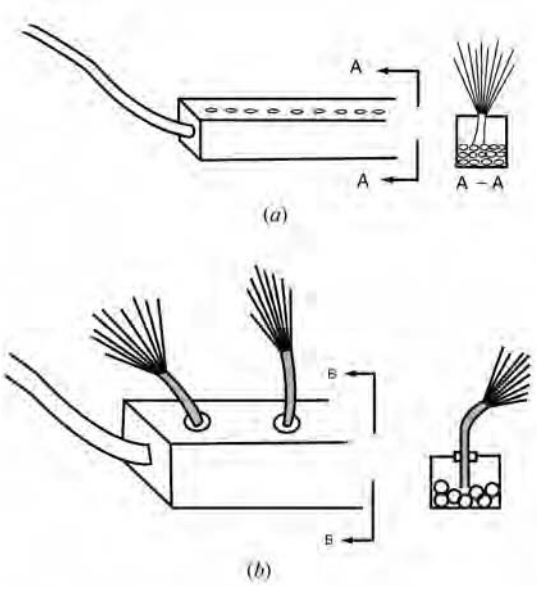


Fig. 16.37 *Linear constructions using end-light fibers. (a) A light bar is simply a box containing multiple tails that are brought out of the box-type container at intervals, usually equal. By selecting fiber size, exit spacing, and illuminator size, a low-intensity linear lighting fixture is created. (b) By using large fibers and/or bundles brought out in adjustable groups, a linear bar with adjustable multihead spotlights can be readily constructed.*

(b) Axial-Mode Discrete Sources

By using large groups of end-light FO bundles combined to produce a point light source, semiconventional lighting fixtures can be constructed with a variety of common diffusing elements (Fig. 16.38). The advantages of these discrete sources compared to common electrically powered lighting fixtures are the same as those listed previously: absence of heat and electricity, and low maintenance and higher efficacy of high-output lamps in the illuminators. One disadvantage common to all plastic-fiber FO lighting is the necessity of keeping runs short due to the attenuation of the fibers. Lengths in excess of 20 ft (6.1 m) are inefficient and therefore uncommon.

(c) Lateral-Mode Fiber-Optic Lighting

As explained previously, lateral-mode fibers emit light throughout their length. This makes them particularly suitable for linear lighting tasks such as illuminating stair nosings, path lighting, and all sorts of decorative trim lighting. Figure 16.39 shows a possible arrangement for under-shelf lighting, illumination under stair nosings, and the like. The practicability of burying parts of the cable in concrete is useful in giving the remaining lighted cable a disconnected, floating appearance. Color filters in the illuminator, when applied to multiple cable runs as in Fig. 16.39, can produce dramatic outlining effects.

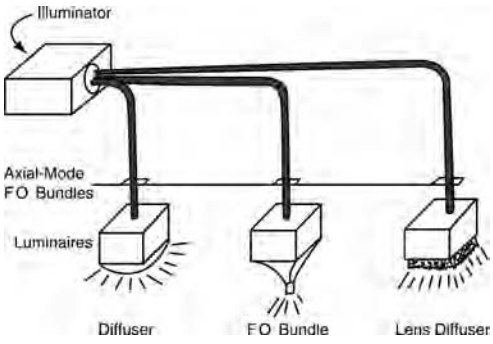


Fig. 16.38 *Relatively large end-light FO bundles can be utilized as point sources in conventional types of lighting fixtures.*

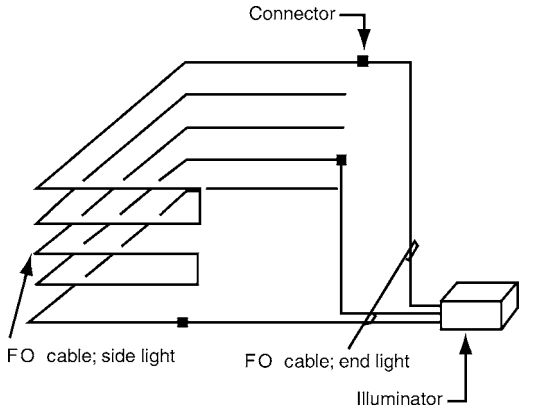


Fig. 16.39 *Side-light-emitting FO cables are ideal for linear lighting tasks such as stair-edge illumination, under-shelf lighting, and outline lighting of all sorts. The illustrated 3-tail arrangement is representative of this type of FO lighting.*

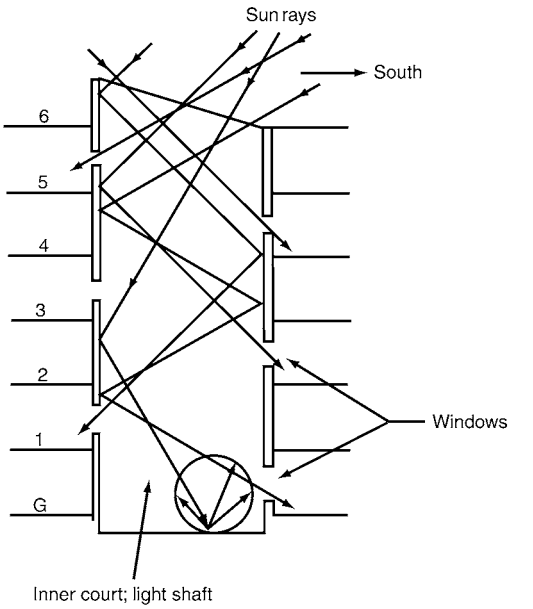


Fig. 16.40 *An interior court or light well (shaft) with a reflective wall surface acts as a light guide to introduce daylight at lower floors. Buildings in the Northern Hemisphere are oriented as shown. Due to attenuation of rereflected sunlight beams traveling down the shaft, lower floor windows are larger than those at upper floors to capture more (of the attenuated) light. (Reprinted from NASA Tech Brief LAR-12333.)*

16.39 HOLLOW LIGHT GUIDES

The idea of conducting light from one place to another apparently arose several millennia ago from an architectural desire to provide daylight deep in interior spaces. The interior court is one example of an architectural light guide that is only recognizable as such in multistory buildings. Figure 16.40 illustrates the use of an interior light shaft in a six-story building. Notice the rapid attenuation as daylight descends by multiple reflections, accounting for the increasing size of the windows at lower levels. Indeed, attenuation is the principal problem with light pipes and guides that depend upon multiple internal reflections to conduct light any appreciable distance. The best metallic mirrors available today specularly reflect only about 95% of the impinging light. It is therefore relatively easy to calculate the number of 5% loss reflections that reduce the output light from a light pipe with random nondirectional input to an uneconomical level (where the "free" light received is more expensive due to construction and maintenance costs than alternative electric light). Furthermore, open-ended light pipes of this sort (Fig. 16.41) are notoriously difficult to keep clean of dust and surface-reflectance degeneration, so that the 95% initial specular reflectance rapidly decreases to 85% semidiffuse reflection, thereby increasing ray rereflection and consequently overall light attenuation. (Sealing the upper end of the pipe with a transparent medium is not advisable due to the rapid accumulation of dust and condensation.) In order to capture an appreciable amount of sunlight (sky light is insufficient), an open-ended pipe at roof level must be very large. This, in turn, increases construction and maintenance costs and decreases (in the case of a commercial building) the usable/

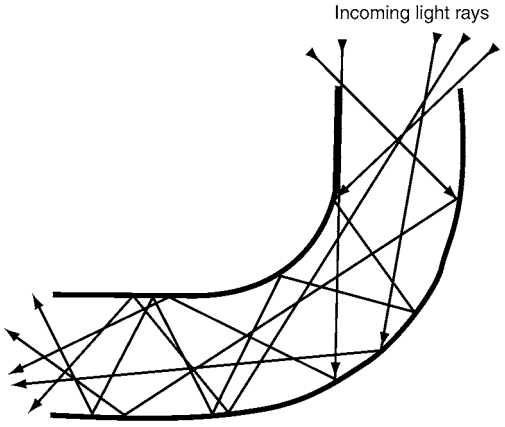


Fig. 16.41 *Curvature in a light guide increases the number of reflections that a light ray makes over the guide length, thereby increasing attenuation. (Reprinted from NASA Tech Brief LAR-12333.)*

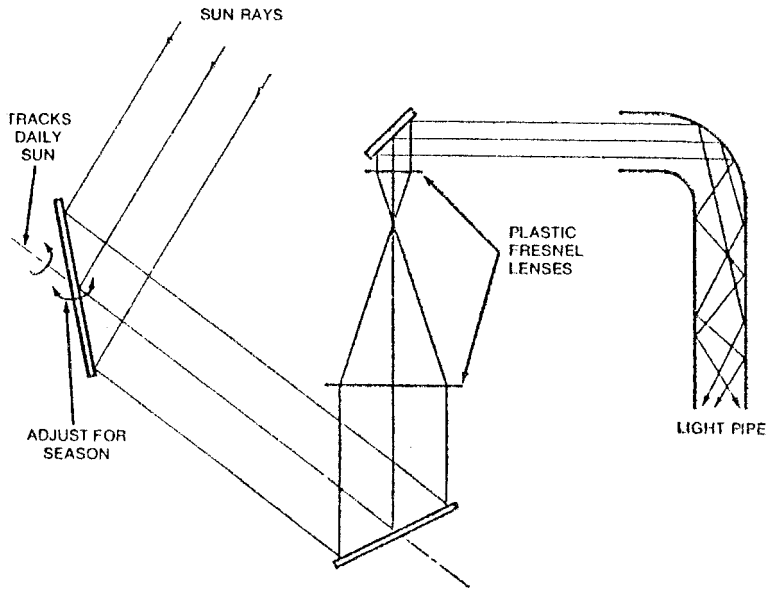


Fig. 16.42 *Concentration and collimation of sunlight can be accomplished with a sun-tracking mirror and an optical train of mirrors and lenses. Full tracking of the sun requires altitude and azimuth drives on the collection mirror. To reduce costs without severely reducing collection efficiency, a full azimuth drive tracks the sun from east to west daily, while the mirror tilt around a horizontal axis (altitude tracking) is adjusted only seasonally to the mid-season position. (The sun's maximum altitude varies 23.5° from equinox to solstice.) (Reprinted from NASA Tech Brief LAR-12333.)*

rental area, making the light-guide idea generally impractical except for very short guides. Such commercially available units are essentially small skylights with an elongated, reflective collar.

One solution to the problem of rapid attenuation in a light guide caused by multiple interior wall reflections is to collimate the incoming light. This has the additional advantage of permitting reduction of the light guide's cross-sectional area. Such a system, however, requires a sun-tracking arrangement plus mirrors and lenses in a collimating optical train. A typical arrangement is shown schematically in Fig. 16.42. The increased efficiency of arrangements of this sort is offset by losses in the optical train and increased equipment cost (although the light pipe itself is smaller and therefore cheaper). Systems of this type are in use today, with generally satisfactory results, although system economics is marginal except in arid, sunny climates.

16.40 PRISMATIC LIGHT GUIDES

The first major improvement in hollow light guide design occurred in 1981, with the development and patenting of a prismatic rectangular hollow acrylic light guide (Whitehead, 1981, 1982). The patentable novelty of this device is that the facets of the prismatic exterior transparent acrylic walls of the pipe act as total internal reflection "mirrors," thus preventing light from escaping from the transparent box guide. As a result, light is guided along the length of the device with very low losses, because reflection at the prismatic walls is theoretically perfect, and losses in the air space within the guide are very small. In practice, it was found that at each reflection about 2% of the light was lost by absorption and, because of microscopic imperfections in the prisms, about 6% escaped through the wall. This 6% "loss" converted the light guide into a long, rectangular lighting fixture emitting light *uniformly* over its entire length. Placing a mirror at the end of the guide causes all the light reaching the end to be reflected back into the guide, thereby increasing the light output over its length. Overall efficiency of this extended "lighting fixture" is high; this fact, combined with very low maintenance, produced a highly desirable lighting product. Its first application was in an electrically hazardous area

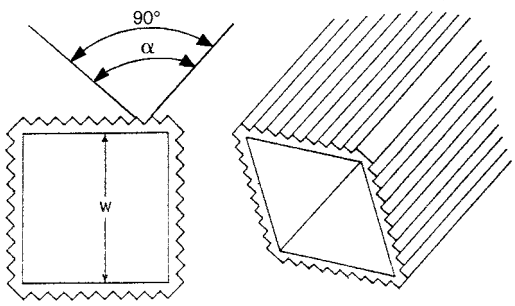


Fig. 16.43 *Views of the hollow, clear acrylic, prismatic light guide developed by L. A. Whitehead. The cross section measures 13-cm (≈5 in.) square, and the prism angle α is 90°. (Reprinted from L. A. Whitehead et al. 1981.* A New Efficient Light Guide for Interior Illumination.*)*

previously illuminated by explosionproof lighting fixtures (Fig. 16.43).

16.41 PRISMATIC FILM LIGHT GUIDE

In 1988, the 3M Company developed a thin plastic prismatic film that utilizes the principle of total internal reflection at the prism face. Tests have shown that this material loses only about 1% of the light at each reflection. As a result, tubular hollow light guides using this material can extend for several hundred feet if the input light is collimated (Figs. 16.44 and 16.45). When used as an extended lighting fixture, this light guide exhibits good photometric characteristics.

Prismatic light pipes have all the advantages of FO lighting but fewer limitations, although in practice the two systems do not compete because they address entirely different needs. In addition to having all the advantages of remote-source FO lighting, including absence of heat, minimum UV radiation, absence of electrical wiring and the associated electromagnetic fields and electrical wiring hazards, and usability at any temperature, interior or exterior, prismatic light guides (and lighting fixtures) are constructed to handle very large quantities of light and do not produce color distortion (as do optical fibers). As a result, a luminous light pipe (light fixture) can be coupled to a very-high-output source such as an arc lamp, Xenon lamp, or the relatively new sulfur lamp, and the pipe can be used to illuminate large areas, either interior and exterior. The economies in

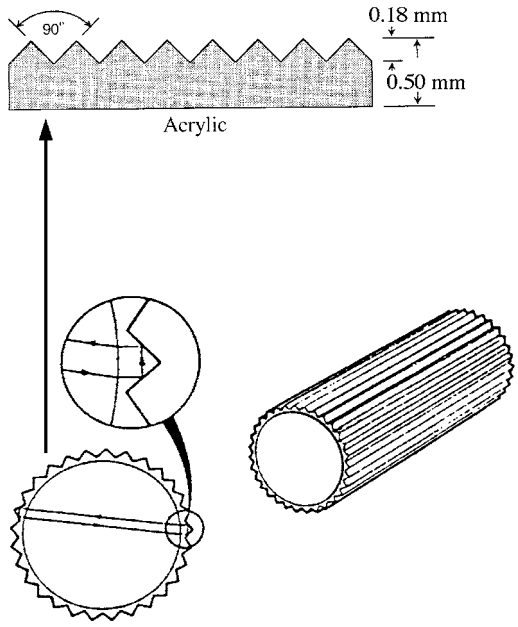
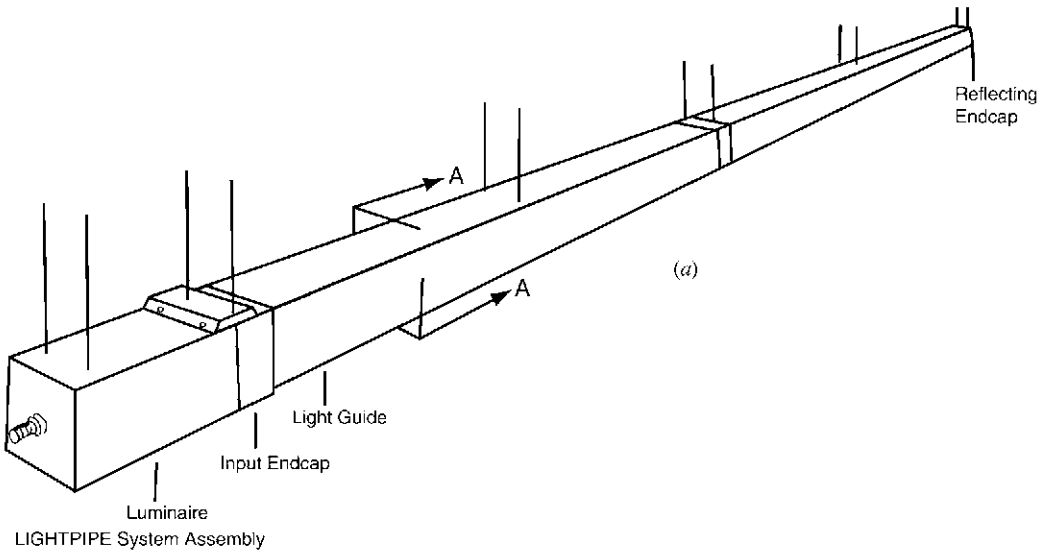
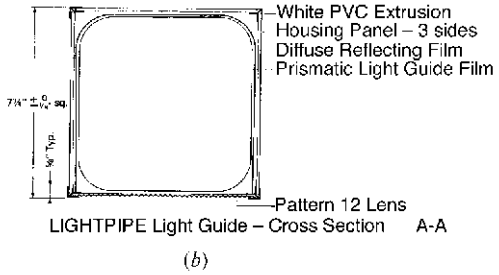


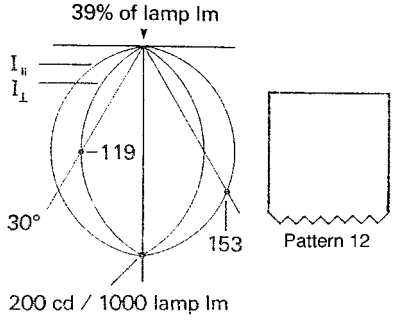
Fig. 16.44 *Circular hollow light guide. If the prismatic plastic film is formed into a cylindrical shape as shown, it will act as a light guide with very low losses. (0.18 mm = 0.007 in.; 0.5 mm = 0.02 in.) (Reprinted from a paper presented at Globalcon '96 by K. G. Kniepp of the 3M Company.)*

wiring, luminaires, installation, and maintenance help to offset the cost of the prismatic material.

Because of the very high light conduction efficiency of optical lighting film (OLF), using it as a lighting fixture requires special techniques and materials to extract light from the pipe. One method is to apply another prismatic material to the inside of the light pipe with a different prism angle that causes incident light to change direction and exit the pipe. When this material is placed judiciously, selected areas of the pipe circumference emit light, in effect producing a longitudinal lighting fixture with the desired directionality. Typical lighting applications of prismatic film light-pipe fixtures are high-bay industrial and commercial installations, large exterior signs, tunnel illumination, highway signs, continuous rail-type guidance illumination, and exterior architectural building lighting. Figure 16.46 shows a circular prismatic light guide designed for exterior use, with several configurations and the associated photometric data. Figure 16.47 shows an application of the prismatic light-guide fixture.





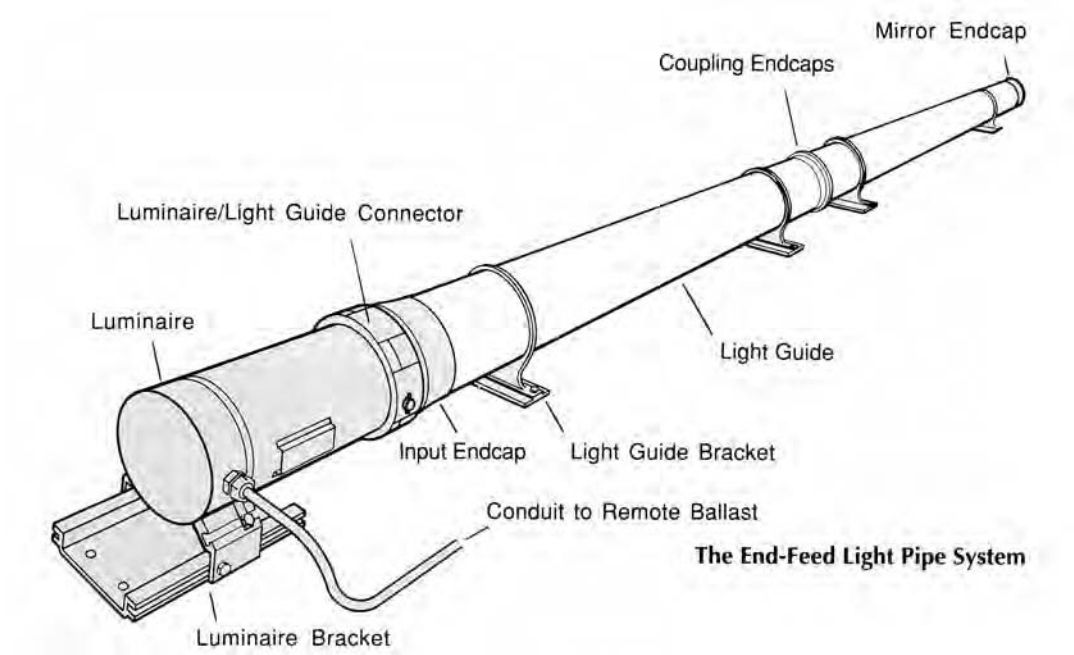


ρ_{cc}	80		50		30	
ρ_w	50	30	50	30	50	30
RCR						
0	.46	.46	.43	.43	.41	.41
1	.41	.40	.39	.38	.37	.37
2	.37	.35	.35	.33	.34	.32
3	.33	.31	.32	.30	.31	.29
4	.30	.27	.29	.26	.28	.26
5	.27	.24	.26	.23	.25	.23
6	.25	.22	.24	.21	.23	.21
7	.22	.19	.21	.19	.21	.19
8	.20	.17	.19	.17	.19	.17
9	.18	.15	.18	.15	.17	.15
10	.17	.14	.16	.14	.16	.13

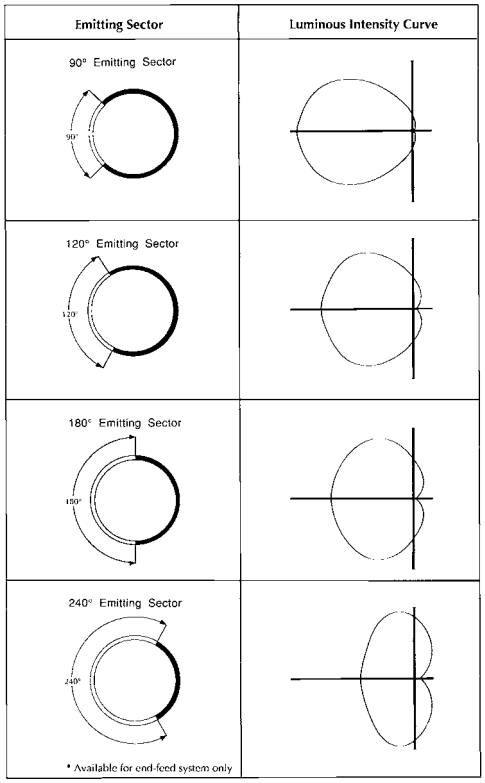
CU Table — One Side Emitting

(c)

Fig. 16.45 *Details of a rectangular light-guide fixture. (a) The entire lighting unit comprises a "luminaire" at one end containing the light source (250- or 400-W metal-halide lamp) and its accessories connected to the hollow prismatic light guide. The end of the guide is sealed with a mirror that reflects the light back into the light guide. (b) The light guide itself is enclosed on three sides and equipped with a prismatic lens diffuser on the open (bottom) surface through which light is emitted. This specific design is usable to a length of 40 ft (12 m). Longer units are equipped with light sources at both ends. (c) Photometric characteristics of the luminaire-light guide assembly. (Courtesy of TIR Systems, LTD.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 16.46 *Details of a 7-in.-D (178-mm) hollow prismatic end-feed light-guide fixture. (a) The entire unit consists of an opaque "luminaire" section containing a 250-W metal–halide lamp connected to a 7-in.-D (178-mm) acrylic tube up to 44 ft (13 m) in length containing prismatic optical film and terminating in a reflective (mirrored) endcap. (b) The portion of the tube circumference that emits light (uniformly) is controlled by placement of a diffuse reflecting film between the inner prismatic film and the outer transparent acrylic envelope (see Fig. 16.45b). The reflective film is shown as the black portion of the tube circumference. (c) Photometric data for an end-fed system with a single 250-W metal–halide source. (Courtesy of TIR Systems, Ltd.)*

CU Tables — End-Feed System

ρ_{cc} / ρ_w	70		50	
	50	30	50	30
RCR				
0	.34	.34	.32	.32
1	.30	.29	.29	.28
2	.26	.25	.25	.24
3	.24	.21	.23	.21
4	.21	.19	.20	.18
5	.19	.16	.18	.16
6	.17	.14	.16	.14
7	.15	.13	.15	.12

CU Table - 90° Emitting

ρ_{cc} / ρ_w	70		50	
	50	30	50	30
RCR				
0	.36	.36	.34	.34
1	.30	.29	.28	.27
2	.26	.24	.24	.23
3	.23	.20	.21	.19
4	.20	.17	.19	.16
5	.17	.15	.17	.14
6	.15	.13	.15	.12
7	.14	.11	.13	.11

CU Table - 120° Emitting

ρ_{cc} / ρ_w	70		50	
	50	30	50	30
RCR				
0	.39	.39	.36	.36
1	.33	.31	.30	.29
2	.28	.25	.26	.24
3	.24	.22	.23	.20
4	.21	.18	.20	.17
5	.19	.16	.18	.15
6	.17	.14	.16	.13
7	.15	.12	.14	.11

CU Table - 180° Emitting

ρ_{cc} / ρ_w	70			50	
	50	30	10	50	30
RCR					
0	.39	.39	.39	.35	.35
1	.32	.30	.28	.29	.27
2	.27	.24	.22	.24	.22
3	.23	.20	.18	.21	.18
4	.20	.17	.15	.18	.16
5	.18	.14	.12	.16	.13
6	.16	.13	.10	.14	.11
7	.14	.11	.09	.13	.10

CU Table - 240° Emitting

Length of Run (feet)		10 ft.	20 ft.	30 ft.	40 ft.
Lumens/foot		500 lm/ft.	270 lm/ft.	165 lm/ft.	110 lm/ft.
Peak Luminous Intensity (cd)\ (Mean Exitance (lm/ft^2))	90° emitting	1569\(1070)	1708\(583)	1569\(357)	1435\(245)
	120° emit.	1143\(850)	1243\(462)	1143\(283)	1043\(194)
	180° emit.	1091\(631)	1187\(343)	1091\(210)	998\(144)
	240° emit.	696\(497)	757\(270)	696\(166)	N/A

Note: All values listed are based on the maintained output of a single T250 luminaire.

Photometric Data - End-Feed System

(*c*)

Fig. 16.46 *(Continued)*

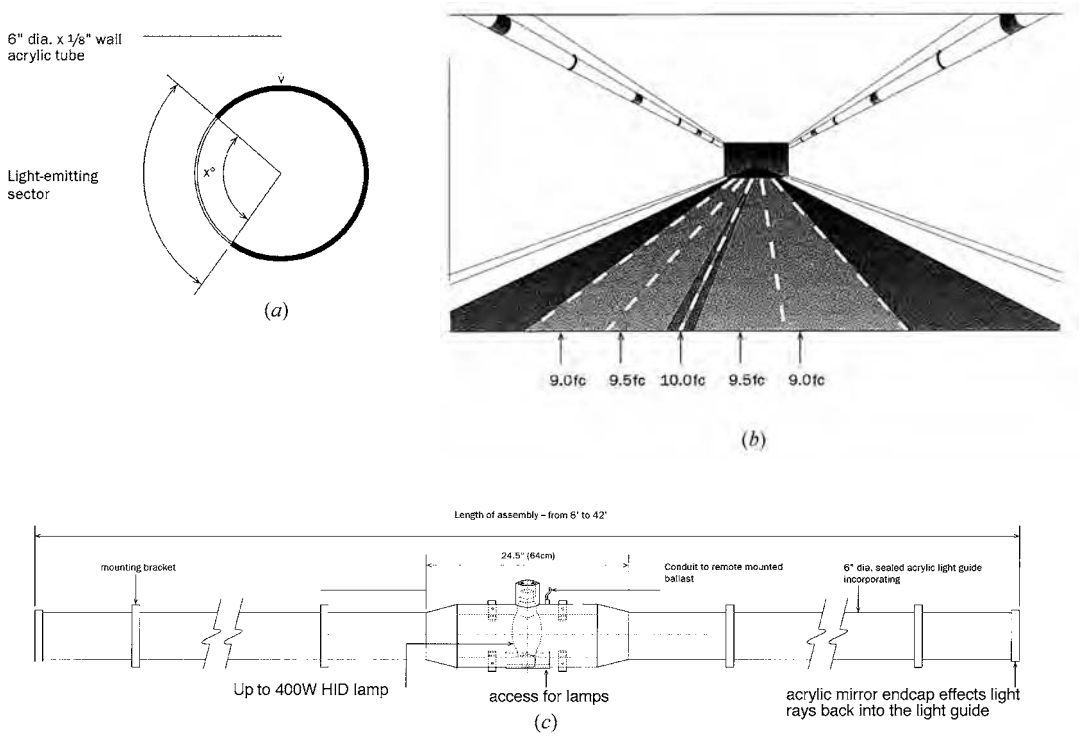


Fig. 16.47 *Application of a prismatic tubular light guide to tunnel lighting. (a) Section demonstrating how light is emitted from the light guide. (b) Perspective drawing showing tubular lights on both sides of the tunnel and the resultant uniform tunnel illuminance levels. (c) Drawing of one section of the center-feed light guide. (Courtesy of TIR Systems, Ltd.)*

16.42 REMOTE-SOURCE STANDARDS AND NOMENCLATURE

Due to the relative newness of long, remote-source tubular lighting, industry-wide standards do not exist, and even nomenclature varies. Clear differentiation between devices intended primarily to carry light from one location to another and devices intended to illuminate along their length does not exist. Nor is terminology differentiated between light guides operating on the principle of internal reflection from specular surfaces and prismatic light guides. All these devices are variously and interchangeably referred to as

- Hollow light guide
- Light pipe
- Hollow light pipe
- Prismatic light guide
- Prismatic light pipe
- Hollow prismatic light guide
- Remote-source hollow light guide

and various other names. See NEMA LSD 4-1999: *Glossary of Terms Pertaining to Remote Illumination Systems* for further information.

References and Resources

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2007. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2-2007: *Energy-Efficient Design of Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

IEEE. 1995. Standard 446: *IEEE Recommended Practice for Emergency and Standby Power Systems for Industrial and Commercial Applications.* Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. New York.

IESNA. 1995. RP-11-95. *Design Criteria for Lighting Interior Living Spaces.* Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 2000. TM-10-00: *Addressing Obtrusive Light (Urban Sky Glow and Light Trespass) in Conjunction with Roadway Lighting.* Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 2000. TM-11-00: *Technical Memorandum on Light Trespass: Research, Results, and Recommendations.* Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 2001. RP-7-01. *Lighting Industrial Facilities.* Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 2006. RP-3-2000. *Guide for Educational Facilities Lighting.* Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

IESNA. 2004. RP-1-04. *American National Standard Practice for Office Lighting*. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

International Dark-Sky Association (light pollution): http://www.darksky.org/mc/page.do

NASA. NASA Tech Brief. PB80-974440 (LAR-12333): *Optics for Natural Lighting.* National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Langley Research Center. Hampton, VA.

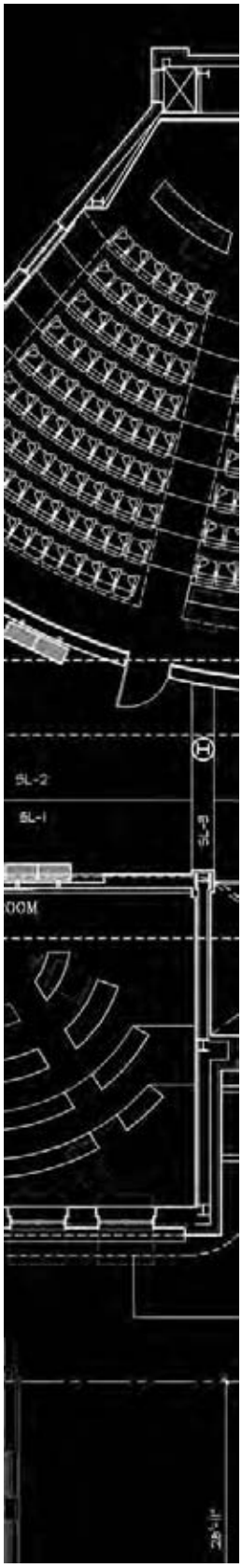
NEMA. 1999. LSD-4-1999: *Glossary of Terms Pertaining To Remote Illumination Systems.* National Electrical Manufacturers Association. Rosslyn, VA.

NFPA: 2009. NFPA-101: *Life Safety Code.* National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

NFPA: 2008. NFPA-70: *National Electrical Code.* National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

NFPA: 2005. NFPA-99: *Standard for Health Care Facilities.* National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

PART IV



ACOUSTICS

The distinction between the terms *sound* and *noise* is a subjective one—sound is desirable, noise is not. This differentiation does not consider the specific content of an acoustical signal. For example, speech, which is a desirable sound in most instances, can become noise when coming from a neighbor's apartment at 2:00 A.M. or from an adjoining office. An air-handling unit, which is often considered a noise producer,

can in some situations provide a desirable sound that can mask intruding speech (noise). The function of architectural acoustics is simply to follow this logic: to enhance desired sounds and to attenuate noises.

It is important to note that there is no unified theory of acoustical comfort, such as is available to guide design efforts dealing with thermal comfort. Design for good acoustics involves addressing a number of acoustical issues correctly—but individually. What is missing is a holistic view of what effect changing one acoustic parameter (say, reverberation time) will have on design criteria for another variable (such as sound pressure level). It becomes the designer's job to qualitatively balance the interactions between acoustic properties of spaces when establishing design intent and criteria.

Chapter 17 introduces the subject of architectural acoustics with a discussion of physical sound theory and physiological hearing phenomena. The latter include the negative effects of noise, which are primarily psychological impressions (involving annoyance) at low levels but become physical effects and can result in hearing damage at high levels. The chapter provides a description of the types of sounds typically encountered in architectural spaces and criteria for acceptable background noise levels in indoor spaces. These are expressed as noise criteria (NC) and room criteria (RC) curves.

Chapter 18 moves to the heart of architectural acoustics—the topic of room acoustics—with an explanation of absorption and reverberation, and develops acoustic design criteria for various indoor activities. The chapter concludes with a description of sound reinforcement systems.

Chapter 19 is devoted to noise control. It begins with a discussion of the use of absorptive materials for room noise reduction. It treats the problem of interspace noise conduction, dividing the problem into two parts (airborne noise and structure-borne noise) because the solutions are different. Relevant criteria, including sound transmission class (STC) and impact isolation class (IIC), are introduced and explained, and solutions to noise transfer problems of different types are suggested. The problem of speech privacy for both enclosed spaces and open (often office) areas is treated in detail. The chapter offers information on mechanical system noise control and acoustic recommendations and criteria, ending with a discussion of exterior acoustics. Acoustical reference information is also provided.

CHAPTER 17

Fundamentals of Architectural Acoustics

THE ACOUSTIC ENVIRONMENT PLAYS AN important role in supporting (or disturbing) an overall sense of comfort in many of the spaces we occupy on a daily basis—including both residential and commercial/institutional spaces. For several reasons, many design solutions seem to shortchange the acoustical environment. This is partly due to the perceived complexity of architectural acoustics, partly due to lack of coverage of the topic in many architecture programs. Good acoustics is not required by most building codes and is not a key element in the majority of green building rating systems. Nevertheless, providing acceptable acoustical conditions is a fundamental part of good design practice.

17.1 ARCHITECTURAL ACOUSTICS

Architectural acoustics may be defined as the design of spaces, structures, and mechanical/electrical systems to meet hearing needs. With proper design efforts, wanted sounds can be heard properly and unwanted sounds (noise) can be attenuated or masked to the point where they do not cause annoyance. Achieving good acoustics, however, has become increasingly difficult for a variety of reasons. To lower construction costs, the weight of various materials used in many of today's buildings has been reduced from those prevalent 50–100 years ago. Since light structures generally transmit sound more readily than heavy ones, lightweight buildings have the potential for major acoustical problems. Population density in office spaces has steadily increased, thus raising the amount of noise generated and decreasing the distance between occupants. Worse yet—from the acoustics point of view—many offices today are designed as open areas with, at best, only thin partial-height dividers (cubicles) separating workers. Forty percent or more of a building budget may be allocated for mechanical systems—most of which generate noise. Outside noise sources, such as cars, trucks, trains, and airplanes, can also present problems and require isolation of interior spaces from exterior sounds. This is particularly problematic where natural ventilation is used.

Building owners and tenants are aware that quality acoustic environments are required for high productivity and comfort in buildings and hence competitive rental or purchase values. The architect is expected to provide such acoustic quality. A clear understanding of the principles explained in this and the following chapters will assist the architect in preparing straightforward designs alone and, in more complex instances, by knowledgeable collaboration with an acoustic consultant. Proper acoustic design responses early in the design process are critically important, as after-the-fact acoustic "repair" is often difficult (and, therefore, costly) and sometimes impossible without substantial structural alterations (which are very costly).

All acoustical situations have three common elements—a sound source, a sound transmission path or paths, and a receiver of the sound. Through

design, a source can be made louder or quieter and a path can be made to transmit more or less sound. Working with sources and paths throughout the various design phases (and into construction and often occupancy) is the bread and butter of architectural acoustics. The listener's perception of sound also may be influenced, although this is not normally an "architectural" solution. This chapter presents the fundamental bases of architectural acoustics to assist a designer in defining appropriate acoustic intents and criteria. Moreover, it describes basic methods for reaching such intents through the design process.

17.2 SOUND

Sound can be defined in a number of different ways, depending upon the aspect of most interest or concern. Thus, sound can be described as a physical wave, or as a mechanical vibration, or simply as a series of pressure variations in an elastic medium. For airborne sounds, the medium is air. For structure-borne sounds, the medium may be concrete, steel, wood, glass, or combinations of these materials. A much more limited definition of sound, more appropriate to architectural acoustics, is that it is simply an audible pressure variation. This establishes that architectural acoustics is concerned with the building occupant. It also suggests that there may be inaudible pressure variations that cannot be heard. This is the case with *vibration*, which is a pressure variation that can be felt but not heard.

(a) Speed of Sound

Sound travels at different speeds, depending upon the medium. In air, at sea level, sound velocity is 1130 fps (344 m/s). This is 770 miles per hour (1239 kilometers per hour)—slow indeed when compared to light, which has a speed of 186,000 miles per *second* (299,338 km per second). Since sound travels not only in air but also through parts of a structure, it is of interest to know the speed of sound in other media (Table 17.1). For architectural design purposes, speed variations due to changes in temperature and altitude (atmospheric pressure) may be ignored and, for most calculations, 1130 fps (344 m/s) may be used as the speed of sound in air (usually within 3% error). From a practical standpoint, the speed of sound in air is slow enough that the travel time of a sound signal can be a key design issue.

TABLE 17.1 Speed of Sound Propagation in Various Media

	Speed	
Medium	**Meters per Second**	**Feet per Second**
Air	344	1130
Water	1410	4625
Wood	3300	10,825
Brick	3600	11,800
Concrete	3700	12,100
Steel	4900	16,000
Glass	5000	16,400
Aluminum	5800	19,000

Note: These figures are approximate, since the listed materials vary in density. An average frequency is assumed.

(b) Wavelength

The *wavelength* of a sound is defined as the distance between similar points (peaks or troughs) on successive waves, which is the distance a sound travels in one cycle. The relationship among wavelength, frequency, and speed of sound is expressed as

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} \tag{17.1}$$

where

λ = wavelength, ft (m)

c = velocity of sound, fps (m/s)

f = frequency of sound, Hz

Low-frequency sounds are characterized by long wavelengths, and high-frequency sounds by short wavelengths. Sounds with wavelengths ranging from 0.5 in. to 50 ft (12 mm to 15 m) can be heard by human beings. A simple nomograph (see Fig. 18.18) permits rapid determination of wavelength, given sound frequency, and vice versa.

(c) Frequency

The number of times that a cycle of compression and rarefaction of air occurs in a given unit of time is described as the *frequency* of a sound. For example, if there are 1000 such cycles in 1 second, the frequency of the sound is 1000 cps—1000 hertz (Hz) in standard nomenclature. Thus, in Fig. 17.1, higher frequencies would be shown

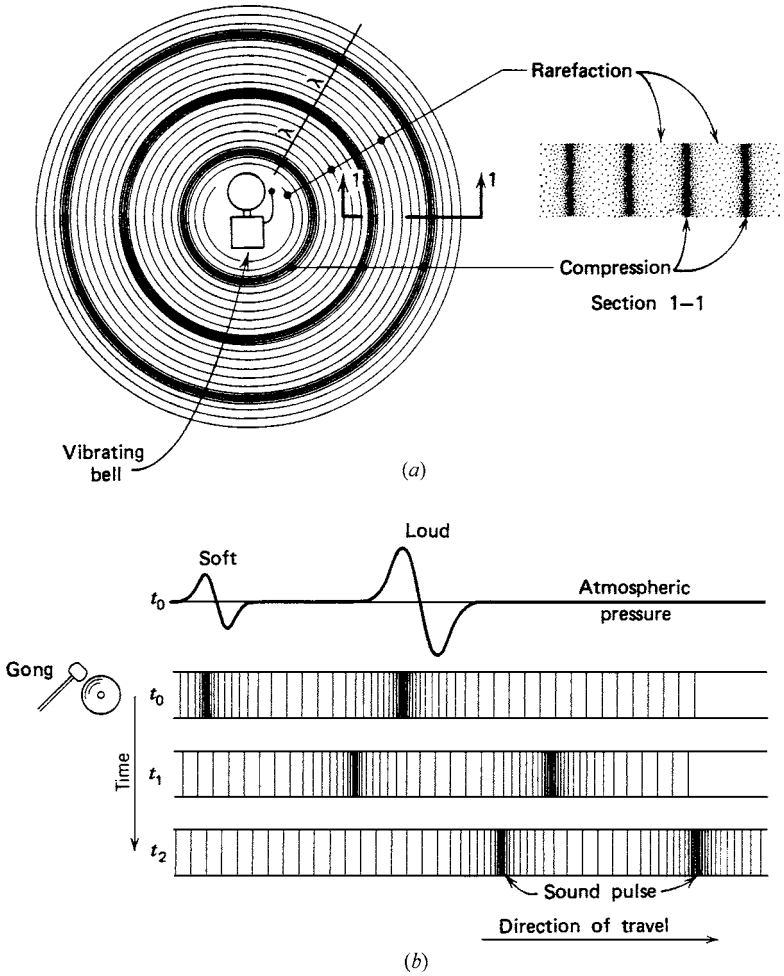


Fig. 17.1 *Sound pressure waves. (a) The continuous vibration from the bell causes a series of compressions and rarefactions of the air to travel outward longitudinally from the source. Amplitude information is carried by pressure; that is, greater amplitude means greater compression and greater rarefaction. Compression and rarefaction are shown diagrammatically as line density, although they are actually molecular phenomena, as shown in the upper drawing. (b) Two single impulses of different magnitude (amplitude) traveling away from the source. Note how amplitude information is carried by the difference in pressure.*

by compressions and rarefactions that are closer together, and lower frequencies by those that are farther apart. In architectural acoustics, frequency is sometimes referred to using a term borrowed from music—*pitch*. The higher a sound's frequency, the higher its pitch, and vice versa.

Sound frequency is integrally linked to speech and hearing. The approximate frequency range of a healthy young person's hearing is 20 to 20,000 Hz. The human speaking voice has a range of approximately 100 to 600 Hz in *fundamental frequencies*, but *harmonics* (overtones) reach to approximately 7500 Hz. Most speech information is carried in the upper frequencies, whereas most of the *acoustic energy* exists in the lower frequencies. The critical frequency range for speech communication is 300 to 4000 Hz. Overtones outside these core frequencies, however, give the voice its characteristic sound and specific identity. Telephone and radio communication are accomplished using a considerably narrower frequency band by sacrificing some voice quality and intelligibility (see Fig. 17.2).

A sound composed of only one frequency is called a *pure tone*. Except for the sound generated by a tuning fork, few sounds are truly pure. Musical sounds (tones) are composed of a fundamental

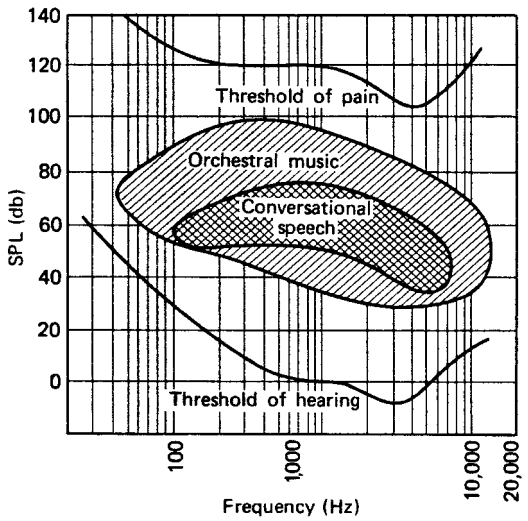


Fig. 17.2 *The positions of speech and wide-range music in the aural field of the human ear are illustrated. Speech is in the nominally linear response area of the ear, as is most music. Beyond these frequencies, the ear effectively attenuates the incoming signal.*

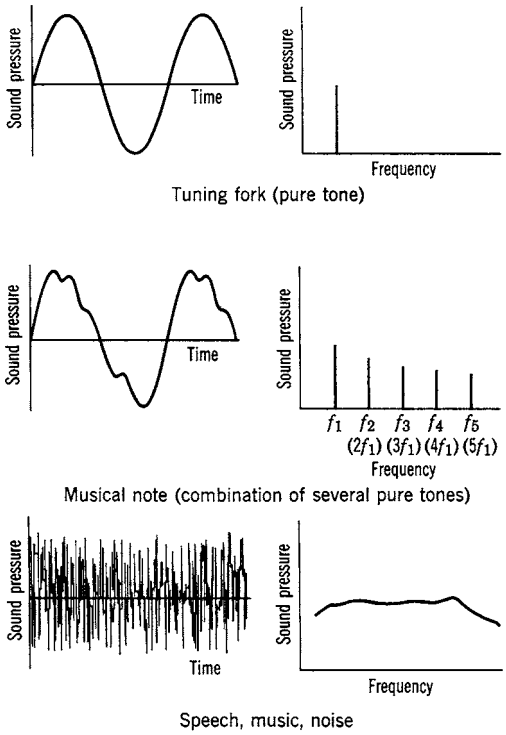


Fig. 17.3 *Schematic representations of a pure tone, a musical note, and a more complex sound (such as speech, music, or noise), showing the variation of sound pressure with time and frequency.*

frequency and integral multiples of the fundamental frequency (harmonics). Most common sounds are complex combinations of frequencies. Figure 17.3 shows examples of pure tones, musical notes, and common sounds, while Fig. 17.4 shows the frequency ranges of some common devices and phenomena.

(d) Octave Bands

The frequencies in the scale of Fig. 17.4 all stand in the ratio of 2:1 to each other—that is, 16:32:63:125:250, and so on. Borrowing again from musical terminology, they are one *octave* apart. These particular frequencies are also accepted internationally as the center (reference) frequencies of octave bands used for the purpose of sound specification. For technical reasons, a geometric mean is used. Thus, 250 is the center frequency of an octave band ranging from $250/\sqrt{2}$ to $250\sqrt{2}$, with that particular octave being known as the *250-Hz octave*. If a finer division is required for analysis purposes (unusual in architectural acoustics), ½-octave and ⅓-octave bands are used. Because frequency is so important to architectural acoustics, and because there are 19,980 discrete whole frequencies in the normal range of hearing, octave bands are used repeatedly during design as a way of capturing frequency-specific information about sounds without becoming buried in detail.

(e) The Concept of Sound Magnitude

The magnitude of a sound signal is a relatively complex concept because there are a number of different metrics (and associated terminology) in common use and because of the great range of values involved in day-to-day acoustic situations. Sound magnitude is often equated with loudness, which is a subjective, receiver-oriented response not linearly related to the power of a sound (in watts). The physical magnitude of sound is variously described as *sound power*, *sound power level* (PWL), *sound pressure*, *sound pressure level* (SPL), *sound intensity*, and *sound intensity level* (IL). Each of these metrics has a place, and each differs from the others and from subjective loudness. To clearly understand these important concepts a comprehension of how we hear and how sound is propagated in free space is necessary.

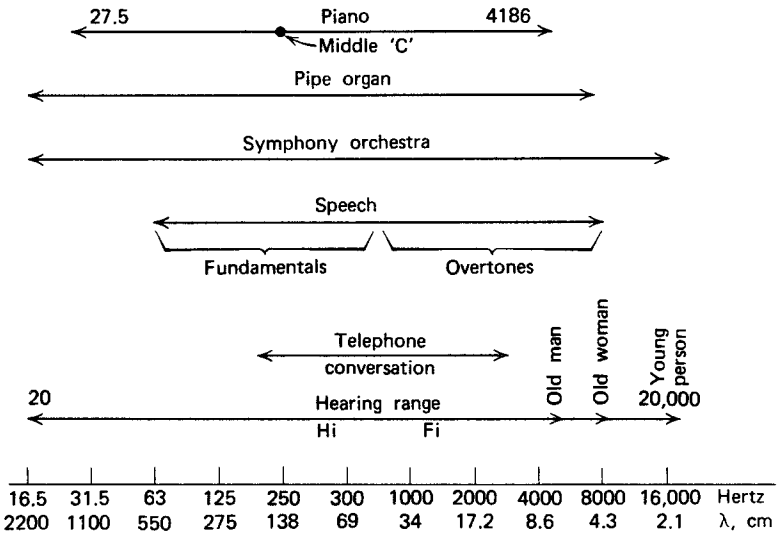


Fig. 17.4 *Frequency ranges of common instruments. Wavelength (λ) is calculated on an assumed propagation velocity of 344 m/s (1130 fps).*

(f) Sound Propagation

For simplicity, it is probably best to view sound as a series of pressure variations. In air, these pressure variations take the form of periodic compressions and rarefactions. The bell in Fig. 17.1 radiates a tone in all directions equally—that is, it creates a circular wavefront. As the material of the bell vibrates, it sets up vibrations of the same frequency in the air, which can best be visualized in a sectional view. Notice that the pressure changes containing the sound information travel in the same direction as the wavefront—longitudinally. Sound is therefore a *longitudinal* wave motion. This is unlike (for example) an AM radio signal, in which the wave travels longitudinally but the information—that is, the modulation—is transverse. Sound is a mechanical wave, whereas light and electricity are electromagnetic waves.

17.3 HEARING

As noted in Section 17.2(c), the approximate frequency response of a healthy young person's hearing is 20 to 20,000 Hz. The upper limit decreases with age as a result of a process called *presbycusis* (Fig. 17.5). The loss is more pronounced in men than women. Recognition of this phenomenon can be of importance in schools, since very high-pitched sounds that are inaudible to most adults can be a source of extreme annoyance to young students. For example, dentists report that high-speed drills and tooth-cleaning devices cause extreme auditory discomfort in many young patients. These devices produce sounds in the 15- to 20-kilohertz (kHz) range.

(a) The Ear

Referring to Fig. 17.6, the outer ear is funnel-shaped and serves as a sound-gathering input device for the auditory system. Sound energy travels through the auditory canal (outer ear) and sets in motion the components of the middle ear, comprising the eardrum, hammer, anvil, and stirrup. The stirrup acts as a piston to transmit vibrations into the fluid of the inner ear. The motion of this fluid causes movement of hair cells in the cochlea, which, in turn, stimulates nerves at the bases of the hairs. The nerves, in turn, transmit electrical impulses along the eighth cranial nerve to the brain. These impulses we understand as sound.

It is often assumed that the ear ignores phase differences and combines frequencies. This may not always be the case, however, particularly when the frequencies are very far apart. For this reason, a single-number representation of a complex sound (the type of information found in Table 17.4) can be misleading and must be used with caution.

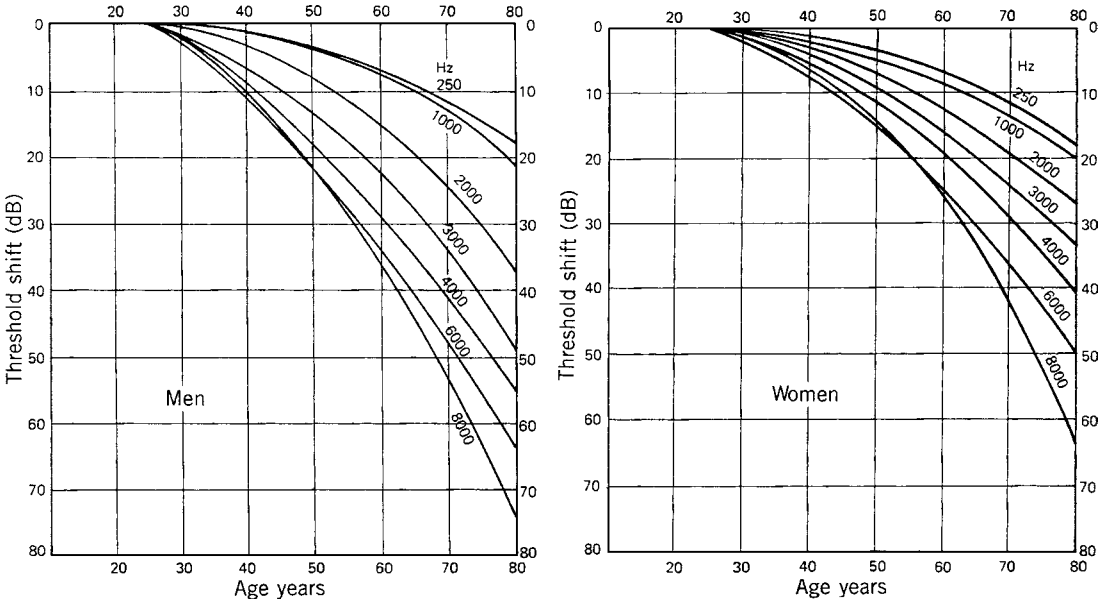


Fig. 17.5 *These curves illustrate the average hearing threshold shift for men and women with increasing age, relative to a 25-year-old reference group. Note that at age 60 the male threshold shift at upper speech frequencies (4000 Hz) is 30 dB, compared to 20 dB for women, a difference of 10 dB or one-half of the subjective loudness (see Table 17.2). For men older than 50 and women older than 60, frequencies above 10 kHz are effectively inaudible, and even at normal speech frequencies of 1000 to 2000 Hz, subjective loudness is reduced to one-half of that of a 25-year-old listener. (Reproduced with permission from F. A. White. 1975.* Our Acoustic Environment. *Wiley, New York.)*

At the threshold of hearing (approximately 0 dB), the displacement of air molecules impinging on the eardrum, and the eardrum excursion, are approximately one angstrom unit (1 Å = 10^{-8} cm), which is approximately the diameter of an atom. Were the ear an order of magnitude more sensitive, it would hear thermal noise. The human ear is thus operating close to the practical limit of sensitivity. At the other end of the magnitude spectrum, the threshold of pain corresponds to a sound pressure level of 130 dB and to an eardrum motion of approximately 0.25 mm (0.01 in.)—an astonishing range indeed.

A number of "measures" of sound magnitude are encountered in architectural acoustics. Movement of the eardrum (and thus hearing) is caused directly by air pressure variations. Therefore, the physical magnitude generally of most interest to architectural acoustics is sound pressure (*force density*), and its derivative—sound pressure level—which is the ratio of a given sound pressure to a base level, expressed in decibels.

TABLE 17.2 Intensity Level Changes and Corresponding Subjective Loudness Changes

Change in Intensity Level (dB)	Subjective Change in Loudness
3	Barely perceptible
6[a]	Perceptible
7	Clearly perceptible
10	Twice (or half) as loud
20	Four times (or one-quarter) as loud

[a]Six decibels corresponds to the change encountered when the distance to the source in a free field is doubled (or halved).

(b) Equal Loudness Contours

The human ear is not uniformly sensitive over its entire frequency range of 20 Hz to 20 kHz. The 120- to 130-dB upper limit (pain threshold) occurs at all frequencies. At the lower limit, however, the 0-dB threshold occurs only at 1000 Hz. The ear is in fact most sensitive at 3000 to 4000 Hz, at which frequencies the threshold is about −5 dB (relatively speaking). This type of nonlinear response exists throughout the ear's hearing range. To determine the nature of this nonlinearity, a large number of

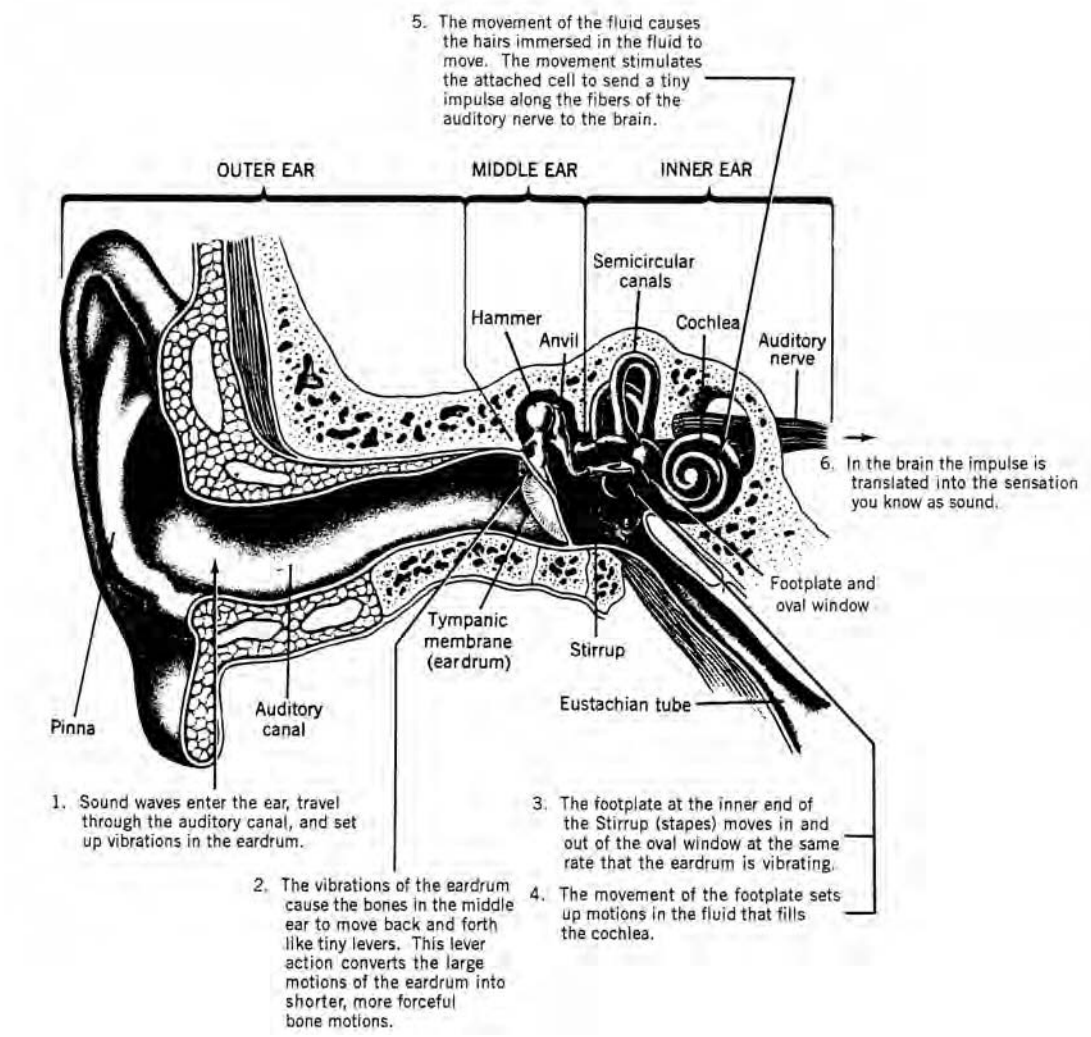


Fig. 17.6 *Drawing of the human ear showing the principal parts and its function as a sound receptor. (Drawing reproduced with permission from F. A. White. 1975.* Our Acoustic Environment*. Wiley, New York. Notes are reproduced from* Quieting: A Practical Guide to Noise Control*. 1976.)*

tests were conducted with pure tones of different frequencies, in which listeners were asked to equate the subjective loudness of signals. These test results produced a family of curves called *equal loudness level contours* (sometimes called *Fletcher–Munson equal loudness contours* after two of the principal researchers). These curves (Fig. 17.7) are internationally recognized and standardized, and are used as the reference for normal hearing response. They are also used to "weight" measuring devices, as explained later in this chapter. Note that *by definition*:

1. All points on a single contour have the same *subjective* sensation of loudness.
2. The loudness level in *phons* (the number shown in the center of each curve in Fig. 17.7) of the *entire* contour is defined by the decibel level of that contour at 1000 Hz.

The phon scale was constructed as a way of defining perceived sound (subjective loudness impressions) in terms of the ear's nonlinear response. Assigning a single number—in a unit called the *phon*—to an equal loudness contour

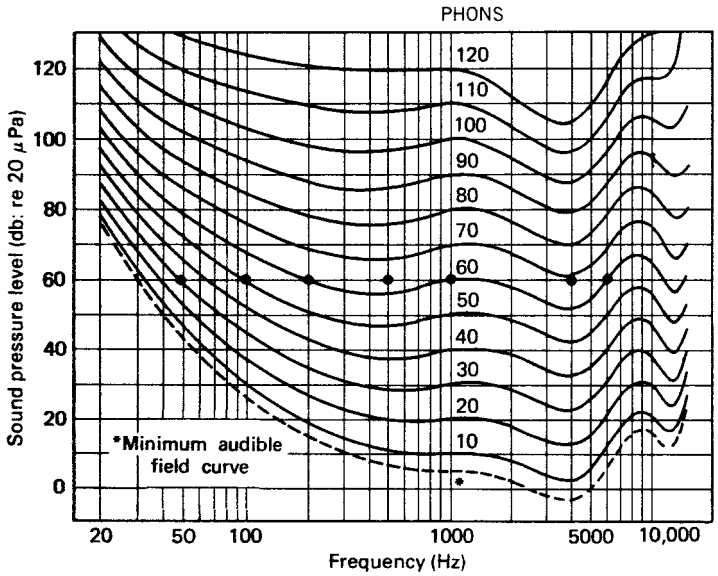


Fig. 17.7 *Standard equal-loudness contours. These curves are accurate for a listener with normal binaural hearing situated in the near field of a source producing pure tones directly ahead of the listener. The subjective (perceived) loudness of each contour is quantified in a unit called the phon. The phon value of each curve is shown in the center of the figure. Note that a sound pressure level of 60 dB corresponds to 30 phons at 50 Hz, 50 phons at 100 Hz, 63 phons at 500 Hz, 60 phons at 1 kHz, 68 phons at 4 kHz, and 60 phons at 6 kHz. This indicates the relative flatness of the ear's response in the central frequency range and the sharp drop at low frequencies.*

makes it possible to compare subjective loudness impressions of two sounds, regardless of frequency or actual sound pressure level. Thus, in Fig. 17.8, the subjective loudness of a whisper in the ear (20 phons) is the same as that of distant pounding surf, despite the fact that the sound pressure level (SPL) of the former is 20 dB and that of the latter is 80 dB. The 60-dB differential is due to the ear's sharp drop in sensitivity at low frequencies. However, because the phon scale is nonlinear in terms of perceived loudness (a given phon differential does not correspond to the same perceived loudness change throughout the phon scale) and because phons cannot be combined arithmetically to give a resultant subjective loudness (60 phons plus 50 phons is *not* 110 phons), the scale has found few uses (one of which is to rate the noisiness of bathroom fans).

The Fletcher–Munson contours demonstrate some interesting phenomena:

1. Sensitivity drops off sharply at low frequencies, particularly at low dB levels. (For this reason, most stereo amplifiers provide automatic bass boost at low volume levels.)
2. Maximum sensitivity occurs between 3 and 4 kHz—precisely the frequencies that convey the most information in human speech (see Fig. 17.2).
3. In a normal listening range of 45 to 85 dB, and in the most often used frequency range of 150 Hz to 6 kHz, the contour is substantially flat; that is, the ear's response is effectively linear in this zone. It is only at extremes of sound level and frequency that nonlinearity occurs.

The ear "averages" sounds over some minimum time increment, and sound impulses of shorter duration will be perceived as quieter than they would if received as a steady-state sound. This minimum sound pulse length (i.e., the time required for the sound to achieve full loudness) varies within the range of 50 and 200 milliseconds (ms) (1/20 to 1/5 s) and depends to an extent upon the frequency content of the sound. The figure of 70 ms (1/14 s) is frequently found in the literature. This threshold time becomes important when considering the effect of echoes (see Sections 18.11 to 18.14).

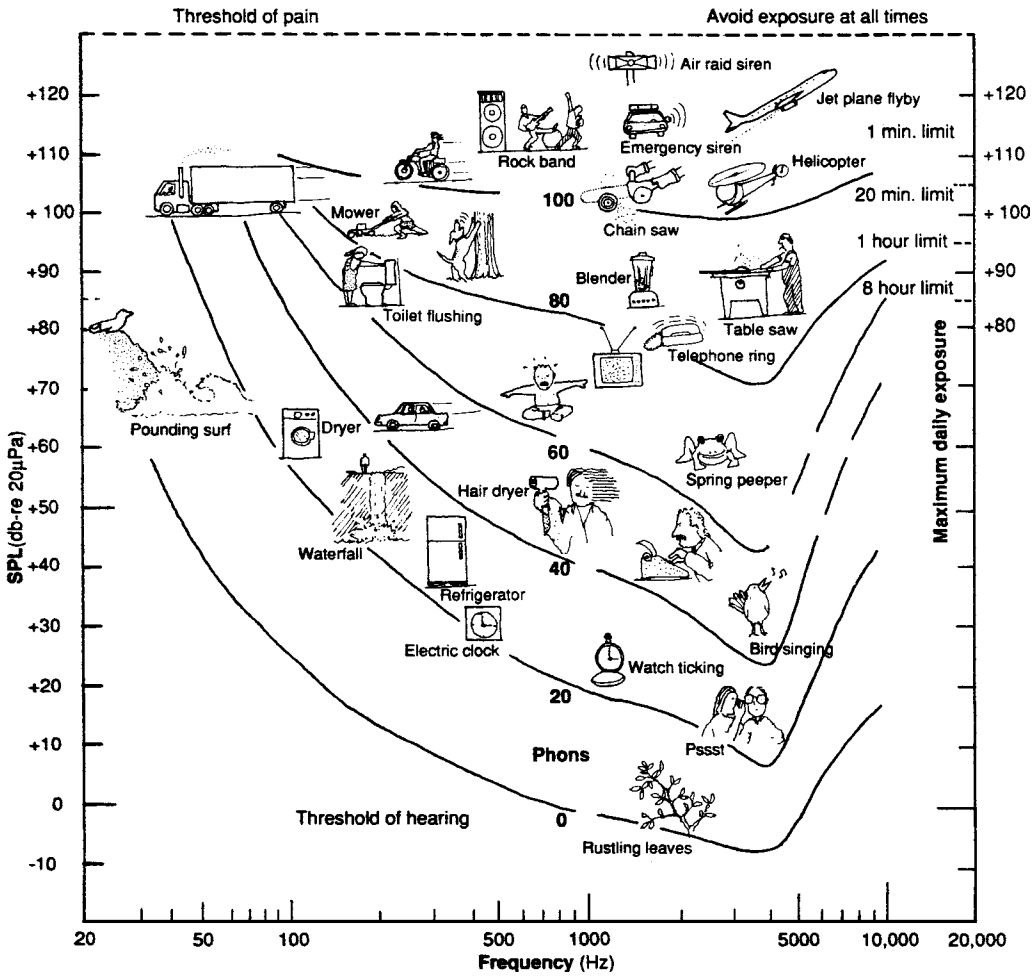


Fig. 17.8 *Common sound sources plotted at their dominant frequencies and levels as typically heard by the observer. The equal-loudness contours (see Fig. 17.7) show why certain sounds seem louder than others, despite the pressure levels that would indicate the contrary (Reprinted with modification from* Quieting: A Practical Guide to Noise Control*, 1976.)*

(c) Masking

When two separate sound sources are perceived simultaneously, the perception of each is made more difficult by the presence of the other. This effect is known as *masking*, which is defined technically as the number of decibels by which the threshold of audibility of one sound is raised by the presence of another sound. The masking effect is greatest when two sounds are close in frequency or frequency content, since the ear has greater difficulty separating like frequencies. Also, a low frequency will mask a high frequency more effectively than the reverse for the same decibel levels. With broad-frequency sounds, the masking effect is difficult to predict, since it depends in part upon how "hard" a listener is listening. Masking is an extremely important and useful technique for noise control, wherein background sound levels are deliberately manipulated to mask other unwanted sounds (see Chapter 19 for details). The background sounds used for this purpose are of a broadband continuous nature, such as "pink" noise (see the Glossary in Chapter 19, Section 19.37), and are non-information-bearing. They serve to depress the intelligibility of lower-magnitude, information-bearing sounds that would otherwise cause annoyance, and are particularly useful in open (landscaped) office plans where few noise control alternatives exist. Frequently, mechanical equipment sound (such as

that from air diffusers and fans) can be utilized to good advantage as masking sound.

(d) Directivity

The exact mechanism by which the binaural aspect of hearing detects direction is not entirely understood. It is clear, however, that the brain can sense the direction of a sound source in many environments. This is a useful trait in both social and dangerous situations. In enclosed spaces, echoes from surface reflections (reverberation) will blur most directivity, and any "stereo" information will be almost completely dependent upon high frequencies in the near field (the sound field that is close to the source and therefore minimally affected by reverberation). Since high frequencies (with short wavelengths) travel in a relatively straight line, they will reach a listener before their reflections and in so doing will cue the hearer as to their origin. Low frequencies (and thus long wavelengths) are difficult to localize, however, because the wavelengths are large compared to the dimension between our ears. Low frequencies, even in the near field, are readily mixed with their reflections, thus confusing the location of their origin.

(e) Discrimination

Frequency recognition is accomplished in the cochlea by the hair cells embedded in the basilar membrane. The human auditory field spans the frequencies between 20 Hz and 20 kHz, although the threshold of sensitivity is different at each frequency. The ear can hear and recognize distinct frequencies, yet the hearing mechanism has the ability, apparently as directed by the brain, either to hear individual frequencies or to combine them into a single more complex sound. Thus, when we hear a string quartet we can, generally *at will*, hear either the entire quartet or each instrument individually. With concentration (vision helps in this regard), a trained ear can pick out a single instrument in an orchestra of 120 pieces, even if there is more than one such instrument in the same section. Conductors do this regularly. Similarly, the ear can perform the discrimination feat known as the cocktail party effect, that is, pick out one voice among background sounds that may be substantially louder than the wanted signal. In effect, the ear in this case attenuates the unwanted sound signals. Normally, however, the ear does precisely the opposite. It combines sounds that are clearly distinct from each other in frequency and phase. The three tones in a chord struck on a piano are different in frequency and, if played as a very rapid triplet, out of phase. Yet the ear combines them and hears a single sound, despite the fact that the maxima of the three tones do not occur simultaneously.

17.4 SOUND SOURCES

Building occupants encounter a wide range of sounds in the course of a day. Some of these sounds are produced by human beings, others by mechanical equipment or natural phenomena. Some of the sounds are information-bearing, while others convey nothing intelligible. Speech and music are sounds of particular interest to building designers, as are those sounds deemed to be noise.

(a) Speech

As can be seen from Fig. 17.2, the ear's sensitivity is highest in the speech frequency and the normal energy range. Individual speech sounds vary in duration between 30 and 300 ms, and the ear normally perceives these individually and clearly. Speech is composed of *phonemes*, which are individual and distinctive sounds that, to an extent, vary from language to language. Certain phonemes exist in one language and not in another. Since some phonemes carry more information than others, it is these that good architectural acoustics must be particularly careful to preserve and support in order to maintain intelligibility. In English, consonants carry much more information than vowels, as can readily be demonstrated by writing a sentence (1), then rewriting it without consonants (2), and then without vowels (3):

1. Most speech energy is concentrated in the 100 to 600-hertz range.
2. o ee eey i oeae i e 100 o 600 e ae.
3. Mst spch nrg s cncntrtd n th 100 t 600 Hrtz rng.

The male voice centers its energy at around 500 Hz, the female voice at around 900 Hz. It is, however, in the high frequencies that consonants have

most of their energy. Phonemes such as *s* and *sh*, for example, have most of their energy above 2 kHz, and both are particularly important in conveying intelligible content.

Normal speech averages between 55 and 65 dBA sound pressure level at 3 to 4 ft (0.9 to 1.2 m) from the source, with a dynamic range from about 30 dBA for soft speech to somewhat above 65 dBA for loud speech (at the same distance). Extremes of speech are 10 dBA for a soft whisper and 80 dBA for a shout, but in both of these instances intelligibility is sharply reduced because of lack of consonant power. Indeed, in shouting, emphasis is actually on vowels, so that it is generally accepted that a 70-dBA sound pressure level is about the upper limit of fully intelligible human speech. Singers who frequently exceed 90 dBA do so at great loss of intelligibility.

Another result of the high-frequency content of consonants, and therefore intelligibility, is its directiveness. The higher the frequency, the greater a sound's directivity and the less its diffraction (ability to be heard beyond a partial barrier). Therefore, intelligibility of speech is greatest directly in front of a speaker and least behind him/her. High-frequency tones are most easily absorbed and least diffracted.

(b) Other Sounds

Instrumental music is much broader in dynamic range and more complex in frequency than speech. It has no direct parallel to intelligibility. A person's "reception" of music is a combination of physiological and psychological phenomena. As such, it is an experience beyond the scope of this book to cover in depth, but it is briefly examined in the subsequent discussion of room acoustics, auditoriums, and music halls. Noises are dealt with in Section 17.6.

17.5 EXPRESSING SOUND MAGNITUDE

Six different quantitative measures of sound magnitude are commonly encountered in architectural acoustics. Three of these—sound power, sound pressure, and sound intensity—are absolute measures; the other three—sound power level, sound pressure level, and sound intensity level—are ratio values that compare an absolute measure to a baseline reference value. Use of the qualitative metric of loudness is also common.

(a) Sound Power

Sound power is an independent property of a sound source that quantifies the source's acoustical output. Sound power is constant for any given source operating under defined conditions (a certain level of speech effort or a rotating speed on a motor) and is not influenced by the nature of the surroundings into which a source is placed. Thus, the sound power (output) of a chiller or orchestra is not changed by the distance to a receiver or the characteristics of a mechanical room or auditorium.

Sound power is expressed in watts (of acoustical power) and varies widely from source to source. Some selected sound power values are: a jet engine, 100,000 W; a symphony orchestra, 10 W; a loud radio, 0.1 W; normal speech, 0.000010 W. Note the wide range of values just in this sample: from 10^5 to 10^{-6} W. Sound power values for natural phenomena need to be obtained from an appropriate information source. Sound power data for manufactured equipment and devices can be obtained from the manufacturer. Manufacturers can often provide information on the sound power of a product under specified conditions. Manufacturers cannot provide accurate information on sound pressure levels, as these are influenced by environmental variables beyond the manufacturer's control or knowledge.

(b) Sound Pressure

Sound pressure is the deviation from ambient air pressure that is caused by sound waves. Sound pressure is instigated by the acoustic power output of a sound source, but is modified by the environment between the source and the receiver. Sound power is a characteristic of a source; sound pressure is the effect of a source as experienced at some specific location. Sound pressure must be referenced to a particular point in a space, as pressure will usually vary from location to location in a room.

Sound pressure is expressed in pascals (Pa) (or microbars in the I-P system). It is common practice to use SI units for all architectural acoustics metrics—even in the United States. Sound pressures for some common situations include: near a jet plane,

TABLE 17.3 Comparison of Decimal, Exponential, and Logarithmic Statements of Various Acoustic Intensities

Intensity (W/cm^2)		Intensity Level,	
Decimal Notation	**Exponential Notation**	**Logarithmic Notation (dB)**	**Examples**
0.001	10^{-3}	130	Painful
0.0001	10^{-4}	120	
0.00001	10^{-5}	110	75-piece orchestra
0.000001	10^{-6}	100	
0.0000001	10^{-7}	90	Shouting at 5 ft (1.5 m)
0.000000001	10^{-9}	70	Speech at 3 ft (0.9 m)
0.00000000001	10^{-11}	50	Average office
0.0000000000001	10^{-13}	30	Quiet, unoccupied office
0.00000000000001	10^{-14}	20	Rural ambient
0.000000000000001	10^{-15}	10	
0.0000000000000001	10^{-16}	0	Threshold of hearing

200 Pa; the threshold of pain, 20 Pa; a loud nightclub, 2 Pa; next to a highway, 0.2 Pa; and normal speech, 0.02 Pa. As with sound power, note the substantial range of values in these sample situations.

(c) Sound Intensity

The threshold of hearing—that is, the minimum sound intensity (I) that a normal ear can detect—is 10^{-16} W/cm^2. (The ear actually responds directly to pressure variations, but such pressures involve various energy densities.) The maximum sound intensity that the ear can accept without damage is approximately 10^{-3} W/cm^2. This gives an intensity range of 10^{13}, or 10 trillion to 1 (10,000,000,000,000:1). Table 17.3 gives an idea of the physical significance of these numbers. Note that the maximum (painful) acoustic intensity in Table 17.3 is 0.001 W/cm^2 or 10 W/m^2.

Sound intensity diminishes over distance. A point sound source of constant power radiating in free space—that is, at a location far from the effects of any reflecting surface—is represented in the drawing of Fig. 17.9. The *sound intensity* at any (defined) distance from the source is expressed as

$$I = \frac{P}{A} \tag{17.2}$$

where

I = sound (power) intensity, W/cm^2

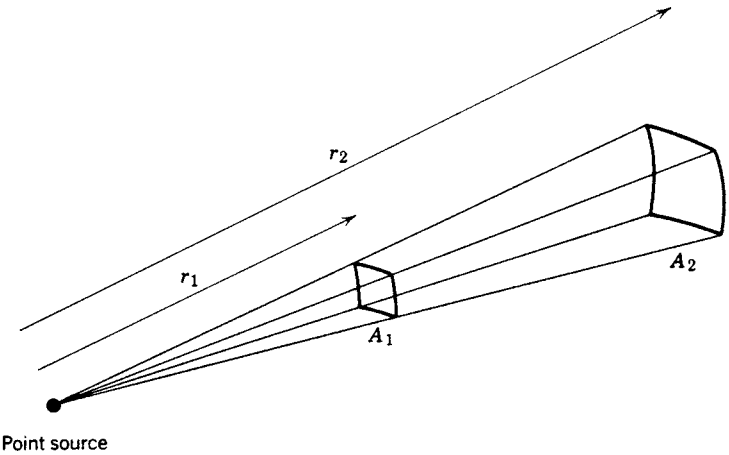


Fig. 17.9 *The same total energy passes through areas A_1 and A_2. Since A is proportional to the square of r, the energy density or intensity is inversely proportional to r^2.*

P = acoustic power, W
A = area, cm^2*

Since the sound radiates freely in all directions.

$$I = \frac{P}{4\pi r^2} \text{ W/cm}^2 \qquad (17.3)$$

where r is the radius of an imaginary sphere enclosing the sound source. This is an implementation of the classic *inverse square law*, stating that *intensity is inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the source.* (In I-P units, this is

$$I = \frac{P}{930 \times 4\pi r^2} \text{ W/ft}^2 \qquad (17.4)$$

since 1 ft^2 = 930 cm^2.) Using Equation 17.3 to determine the intensities I_1 and I_2 at distances r_1 and r_2 from point source P, we find that the intensities at distance r_1 and r_2 from the source stand in the ratio

$$\frac{I_1}{I_2} = \frac{r_2^2}{r_1^2} \qquad (17.5)$$

Figure 17.10 shows graphically how a sound pulse is attenuated in *strength* (but not in waveform) as it travels outward from a source by the action of distance.

The preceding derivation is based upon a *point* source—that is, a source that is small relative to the wavelength of the sound produced. This type of source produces spherical waves. Line sources, such as strings, produce cylindrical waves. Large vibrating surfaces, such as walls, produce plane waves. The importance of these distinctions will become clear in the discussion of sound barriers and diffraction in Chapter 19.

*It is traditional in architectural acoustics to express area in square centimeters, although the SI system requires area to be stated in square meters. Conversion data for units are given in Table 19.16. See also Table 19.17 for a listing of symbols and abbreviations.

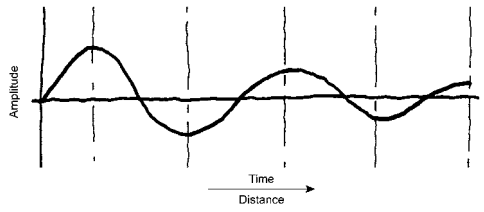


Fig. 17.10 *Attenuation of a sound signal in air as it travels away from the source. The shape (information) remains constant when traveling in a nondispersive medium such as air. This is not the case with travel in solids, where different frequencies travel at different velocities, causing a wave-shape change with time and distance. Since velocity of propagation is constant, time and distance are linearly related and can therefore be plotted on the same axis. (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering; ©2004 by Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*

(d) The Decibel

Two problems arise immediately when dealing with quantities of the type encountered with sound power, pressure, and intensity. The numbers themselves are very small or very large. Furthermore, the human ear responds logarithmically, not arithmetically, to sound pressure (or intensity); that is, doubling the intensity of a sound does not double its loudness—such a change is barely perceptible. To address these problems, it would be much more convenient if there were a scale that:

1. Started at zero for the minimum sound (intensity or pressure) that can be heard.
2. Used whole numbers rather than powers of 10.
3. Had some fixed relationships between an arithmetic difference and a loudness change, say, 10 units equals a doubling (or halving) of loudness. Thus, on such a scale, the difference between 20 and 30, between 60 and 70, would always be a doubling of loudness.

Such a scale exists. It is the decibel scale.

The word *level* when appended to power, pressure, or intensity indicates a quantity expressed relative to a base quantity—in decibels. *Intensity level* is thus the ratio between a given intensity and a base intensity. If intensity level is expressed as

$$IL = 10 \log \frac{I}{I_0} \qquad (17.6)$$

where

IL = intensity level, dB
I = intensity, W/cm^2
I_0 = base intensity (i.e., 10^{-16} W/cm^2, the threshold of hearing)
log = logarithm to base 10

then a scale is established that satisfies the three conditions established above. The quantity IL is dimensionless, since it indicates simply a ratio between two numbers. It is expressed in decibels,

however, to clarify its status as a ratio quantity. This proves a convenient way to express the large range of sound magnitudes encountered. Table 17.3 shows the great convenience of using the logarithmic decibel scale compared to either decimal notation or exponential notation. Table 17.2 gives a short listing of subjective loudness changes expressed in decibels. Note that *10 dB indicates a doubling of loudness*, and 20 dB is loudness doubled twice—that is, a situation four times as loud. The *difference* (Δ) between any two intensity levels can be expressed as

$$\Delta IL = IL_2 - IL_1 = 10 \log \frac{I_2}{I_0} - 10 \log \frac{I_1}{I_0}$$

Therefore,

$$\Delta IL = 10 \log \frac{I_2}{I_1} \text{dB} \qquad (17.7)$$

A few examples using decibel notation and logarithmic calculations should help establish this useful system. By the way, the *bel* in decibel is in honor of Alexander Graham Bell (thus the capital *B* in dB).

EXAMPLE 17.1 Two sound sources (I_1 and I_2) produce intensity levels of 60 and 50 dB, respectively, at a point. When these sources are operating simultaneously, what is the total sound intensity level? (Assume identical frequency content and random phasing—that is, the phase relationship between the two sources changes in a random manner.)

SOLUTION

Note that this example deals with intensity level, not intensity, since intensity itself has little significance for architectural acoustics. The technique involved in adding two sound intensity levels has three steps:

1. Convert both to actual intensity.

$$IL = 10 \log \frac{I}{I_0}$$

so

$$60 = 10 \log \frac{I_1}{10^{-16}}$$

or

$$6.0 = \log \frac{I_1}{10^{-16}}$$

Then, using the definition of a base 10 logarithm:

$$10^6 = \frac{I_1}{10^{-16}}$$

$$I_1 = (10^{-16})\,(10^6) = 10^{-10} \text{ W/cm}^2$$

By similar calculation,

$$I_2 = 10^{-11} \text{ W/cm}^2$$

2. Add the intensities arithmetically.

$$I_1 + I_2 = 10^{-10} + 10^{-11}$$

$$= (10 \times 10^{-11}) + 10^{-11}$$

$$I_{\text{tot}} = 11 \times 10^{-11} \text{ W/cm}^2$$

3. Reconvert to decibels. To find the intensity level (IL) corresponding to the combined or total intensity $I_1 + I_2$, simply apply Equation 17.6:

$$IL_{\text{tot}} = 10 \log \frac{I_{\text{tot}}}{V_0}$$

$$= 10 \log \frac{11 \times 10^{-11}}{10^{-16}}$$

$$= 10 (\log 11 + \log 10^5)$$

$$= 10 (1.04 + 5)$$

$$= 60.4 \text{ dB}$$

which is only a fraction larger than the original 60 dB of the stronger of the two sounds. As demonstrated in this example, decibels cannot be added arithmetically. ■

EXAMPLE 17.2 Assume two sounds of 60 dB each. What is the combined sound intensity level in decibels?

SOLUTION

One method would be to calculate levels as in Example 17.1. A shorter method is to find the difference between the sum and either of the (equal) signals and add it to either individual signal. Using Equation 17.7:

$$\Delta IL = IL_{\text{comb}} - IL_1 = 10 \log \frac{I_{\text{comb}}}{I_1}$$

$$= 10 \log \frac{2I_1}{I_1}$$

$$= 10 \log 2$$

$$= 10 (0.30)$$

$$= 3 \text{ dB}$$

This answer (which is independent of any particular sound level) yields the extremely important and useful fact that *doubling a signal's intensity raises the intensity level by 3 dB*. (In this case, the combined intensity level would be 60 dB + 3 dB, or 63

dB.) Similarly, quadrupling a signal's intensity raises the resulting level by 6 dB. This is because

$$\Delta IL = 10 \log \frac{4I}{I}$$
$$= 10 \log 4$$
$$= 10\ (0.60)$$
$$= 6 \text{ dB}$$

Therefore, quadrupling 60 dB gives 66 dB (or, alternatively, 60 dB + 60 dB = 63 dB and 63 dB + 63 dB = 66 dB). This technique is very useful when combining a large number of identical sound levels, as in the following example. ■

EXAMPLE 17.3 A factory will contain 20 identical machines, each of which generates a sound intensity level of 80 dB. What will be the combined sound intensity level? (Ignore issues of frequency content, phase, and sound fields.)

SOLUTION

$$\Delta IL = IL_{\text{tot}} - IL_{\text{single}}$$
$$= 10 \log \frac{I_{\text{tot}}}{I_{\text{single}}}$$
$$= 10 \log \frac{20\, I_{\text{single}}}{I_{\text{single}}}$$
$$= 10 \log 20$$
$$= 10\ (1.3) = 13 \text{ dB}$$

Therefore, the total sound intensity level will be $IL_{\text{tot}} = 80 \text{ dB} + 13 \text{ dB} = 93 \text{ dB}$ ■

A chart for combining the decibel levels of two sources is given in Fig. 17.11 that eliminates the somewhat lengthy procedure detailed in Example 17.1. Referring to Table 17.2, note that the human ear is not responsive to fractional decibel changes; indeed, even a 3-dB change is barely perceptible. This being so, it is recommended that the detailed calculations, and even the chart, be reserved for situations where a high degree of accuracy is required.

For everyday calculations, the following approximations may be used to combine the decibel levels of two sources:

- When the difference between two sources is 1 dB or less, add 3 dB to the higher decibel level to obtain the total.
- When the difference is 2 to 3 dB, add 2 dB.
- When the difference is 4 to 8 dB, add 1 dB.
- When the difference is 9 dB or more, ignore the lower-level source (add 0 to the higher).

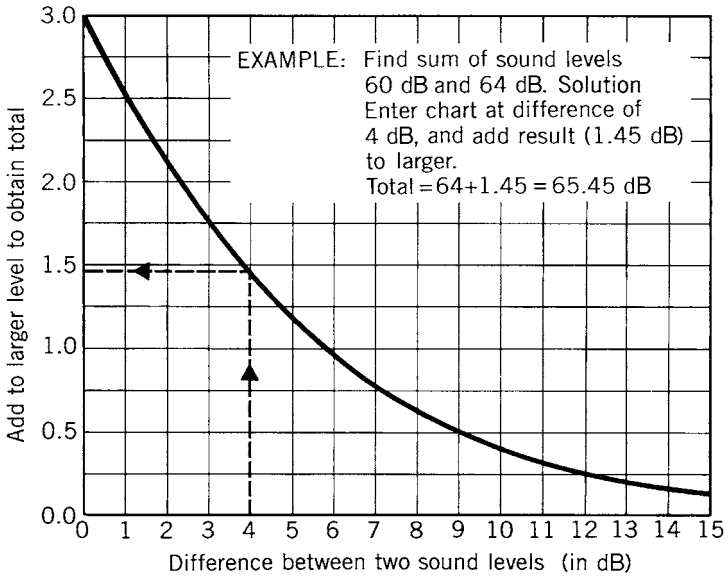


Fig. 17.11 *Chart for adding two uncorrelated sound pressure levels when both are expressed in decibels. (Reprinted by permission from E. B. Magrab. 1975.* Environmental Noise Control. *Wiley, New York.)*

TABLE 17.4 Addition of Uncorrelated Sound Pressure Levels

dB Levels		*Sum*	
Lower	**Higher**	**Approximate[a]**	**Accurate[b]**
60	60	63	63.0
60	62	64	64.4
60	64	65	65.5
60	66	67	67.0
60	68	69	68.7
60	70	70	70.5

[a]See text for approximation rules.

[b]In architectural acoustics, decimal values of decibels are not warranted, and these values would be rounded off to a whole number.

A comparison in Table 17.4 of addition using these rules and a more accurate method shows that at usual levels, the error resulting from simplification is always less than 1%.

Returning to the inverse square law expressed in Equation 17.5, it is now possible to determine the effect on sound intensity level of moving away from a sound source.

EXAMPLE 17.4 Given a sound source that produces an intensity level *IL* at a distance d_1 from a source (substitute any numbers desired or follow the problem with symbols), what is the intensity level at twice the distance? At four times the distance?

Note: A sound intensity distribution that obeys the inverse square law on which these calculations are based results from a source in an open (unenclosed), obstruction-free space (e.g., outdoors). Also, intensity measurement I_1 must be taken at a sufficient distance d_1 from the source that a free field has developed. See the discussion in Section 18.7 for an explanation of sound fields.

SOLUTION

From Equation 17.7 it is known that

$$\Delta IL = \frac{I_2}{I_1}$$

and from Equation 17.5 that

$$\frac{I_1}{I_2} = \frac{d_2^2}{d_1^2}$$

Therefore, since $d_2 = 2d_1$

$$\frac{I_2}{I_1} = \frac{(d_1)^2}{(2d_1)^2} = \frac{1}{4}$$

Substituting in Equation 17.7, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta IL &= 10 \log \frac{I_2}{I_1} \\ &= 10 \log \tfrac{1}{4} \\ &= 10\,(-0.6) \\ &= -6 \text{ dB} \end{aligned}$$

which tells us that sound intensity level (not pressure) is reduced by 6 dB. Similarly, if the distance is quadrupled, it is reduced by 12 dB. ■

To summarize, *the intensity level changes by 3 dB with every doubling or halving of power and changes by 6 dB with every doubling or halving of the distance from a point source.* Figures 17.12 and 17.13 illustrate the latter relationship.

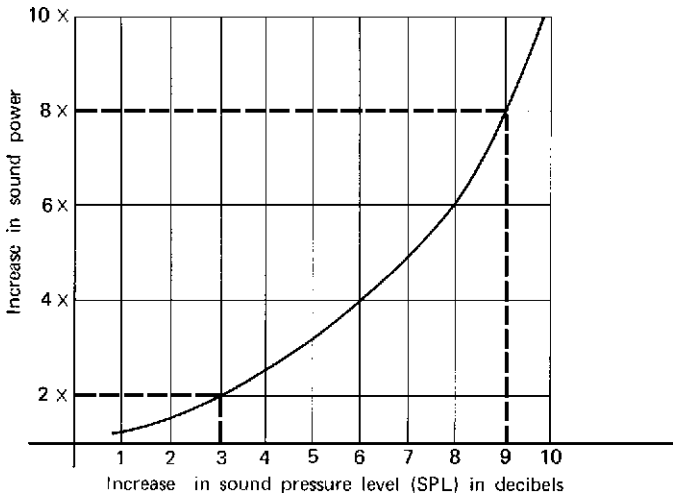


Fig. 17.12 *Decibel level increase as a function of power (intensity) increase.*

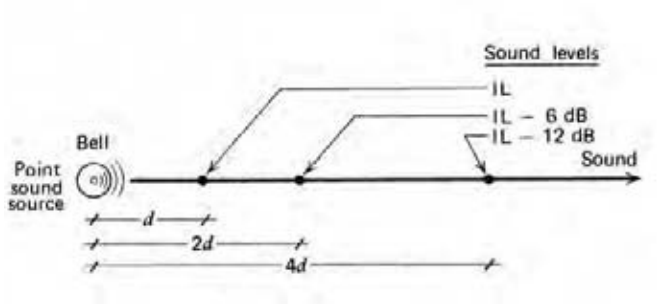


Fig. 17.13 *Sound energy levels at varying distances from a source. Each doubling of distance reduces the intensity level by 6 dB. These relationships hold true only in a free field.*

(e) Sound Power Level

Sound power levels may be derived from sound power values using the ratio process described in Section 17.5(d). The reference sound power is 10^{-12} W. Sound power level is expressed in decibels.

(f) Sound Pressure Level

Sound pressure levels are derived from sound pressures using the ratio approach described in Section 17.5(d). The usual reference sound pressure corresponds to the threshold of hearing and is taken to be 20 μPa or 2×10^{-5} Pa (2×10^{-4} microbars [μbar]). See Table 17.5 for representative values of sound pressure levels and corresponding subjective responses. As with intensity, this sound pressure reference is established as 0 dB for the purpose of calculating sound pressure *level*. Since the ear responds logarithmically to intensity and since pressure varies as the square root of intensity, we can write the expression

$$SPL = 10 \log \frac{p^2}{p_0^2}$$

or

$$SPL = 20 \log \frac{p}{p_0} \qquad (17.8)$$

where

SPL = sound pressure level, dB
p = pressure, Pa or μbar
p_0 = reference base pressure, 20 μPa or 2×10^{-4} μbar

Since the 0-dB base corresponds to the hearing threshold for both sound intensity level and sound pressure level, the decibel scales for sound pressure level and sound intensity level have been equalized *and the decibel values of the two can be used interchangeably*. The actual intensity and the actual pressure corresponding to a particular decibel level, however, are different—completely different—in magnitude and units. For instance, 70 dB may equal 10^{-9} W/cm^2 intensity or 0.063 Pa pressure. The important fact, though, is that 70 dB corresponds approximately to a particular sound magnitude. It is necessary to say "approximately" because assigning a single-number decibel level to a sound presents two difficulties:

1. Sound pressure level varies with time, except for a pure steady tone.
2. The different components of most common (complex) sounds vary in pressure level.

Two techniques are used to overcome this problem. If a sound has a dominant frequency, that frequency's level can be used (Fig. 17.8). This would be the case for a relatively constant sound such as that of a motor, fan, or pump. Other sounds that vary widely in constituent level and frequency can be plotted on an octave-band chart using maximum level for minimum percentage of time (Fig. 17.14). Where the position of the listener is not specified in the table, it is assumed to be at normal *close* distances: that is, 10 to 20 ft (3 to 6 m) from a train, 3 to 5 ft (0.9 to 1.5 m) from a radio, and the like.

As suggested previously, the combined effect of two sounds depends upon their frequency content. In the foregoing examples, we assumed signals either of identical frequency and random phase or of a very-wide-frequency spectrum—so wide that phase phenomena are not significant. In architectural acoustics work, such an assumption is generally valid.

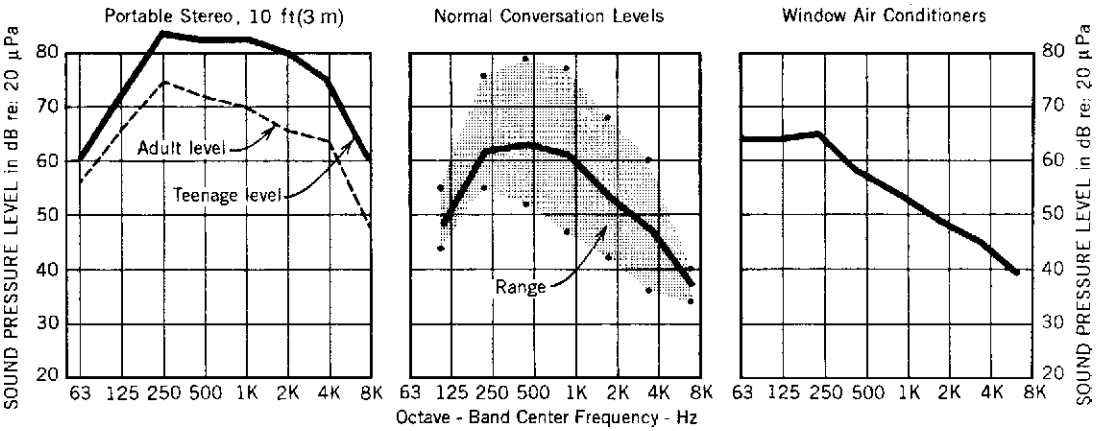


Fig. 17.14 *Sound pressure level curves of common noise sources plotted according to octave band frequency content. Values shown are averages of multiple measurements. (Reprinted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure Borne Noise–Control in Multifamily Dwellings, *1968.)*

(g) Measuring Sound

The need for a means of measuring sound levels in built projects to confirm that design criteria have been met should be obvious. One very useful instrument is the integrating sound-level meter illustrated in Fig. 17.15. To correlate meter readings with subjective loudness impressions, most such instruments that provide a single-number output are furnished with weighting networks, the characteristics of which are given in Fig. 17.16. The A network corresponds to an inverted 40-phon contour and discriminates against low frequencies (see Fig. 17.7), as does the human ear. The B and C

TABLE 17.5 Common Sound Pressure Levels

Sound Pressure Level (dBA)	Typical Sound	Subjective Impression
150		(Short exposure can cause hearing loss)
140	Jet plane takeoff	
130	Artillery fire, riveting, machine gun	(Threshold of pain)
120	Siren at 100 ft (30 m), jet plane (passenger ramp), thunder, sonic boom	Deafening
110	Woodworking shop, hard-rock band, accelerating motorcycle	Sound can be felt (threshold of discomfort)
100	Subway (steel wheels), loud street noise, power lawnmower, outboard motor	
90	Noisy factory, unmuffled truck, train whistle, machine shop, kitchen blender, pneumatic jackhammer	Very loud, conversation difficult; ear protection required for sustained occupancy
80	Printing press, subway (rubber wheels), noisy office, supermarket, average factory	(Intolerable for phone use)
70	Average street noise, quiet typewriter, freight train at 100 ft (30 m), average radio, department store	Loud, noisy; voice must be raised to be understood
60	Noisy home, hotel lobby, average office, restaurant, normal conversation	
50	General office, hospital, quiet radio, average home, bank, quiet street	Usual background; normal conversation easily understood
40	Private office, quiet home	
30	Quiet conversation, broadcast studio	Noticeably quiet
20	Empty auditorium, whisper	
10	Rustling leaves, soundproof room, human breathing	Very quiet
0		Intolerably quiet Threshold of audibility



Fig. 17.15 *Modern general-purpose (type 2) integrating, data-logging sound level meter. This unit will measure and record isolated, nonrepetitive noise events in addition to continuous, fluctuating, and impulsive sounds, and will give both instantaneous and equivalent (Leq) sound levels. The latter are used when an equivalent noise level of varying sound conditions over a selected measurement time is required. The meter will measure dBA, dBC, and linear with fast, slow, peak, or impulse response. When equipped with a filter set, the meter can be used for octave or ⅓-octave analysis. (Photo courtesy of Quest Technologies, Inc.)*

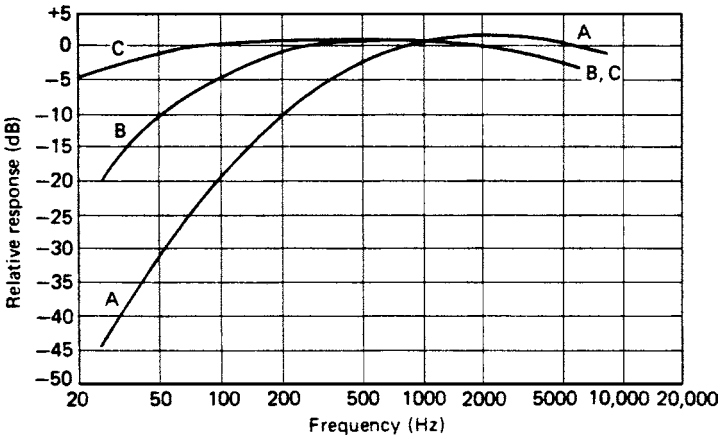


Fig. 17.16 *Internationally standardized A, B, and C weighting curves.*

networks correspond to the 70-phon and 100-phon contours, respectively. In addition, a completely linear response is usually available. The reasoning behind the use of these weighting networks is evident when they are compared to the equal loudness curves of Fig. 17.7. The original intention was to use the A network at levels of up to 55 phons, the B network to 85 phons, and the C network at higher levels. In practice, however, it was found that only the A network corresponded fairly well to subjective loudness reports. As a result, the B network has fallen into disuse, and the A network is used today for all measurements, regardless of loudness. The discrepancy at high loudness levels is apparent when the 40 phon–A weighting network curve is compared to the equal loudness curves above 80 phon. All measurements should be identified with the weighting network used, such as 50 dBA or 100 dBC.

More accurate measurements of complex sounds than are possible with a standard sound level meter are made with sophisticated instruments that measure intensity in octave bands and also often plot the results, as per the graphs in Fig. 17.14. Such measurements are necessary for accurate application of sound absorption and attenuation materials whose characteristics are nonlinear over the frequency spectrum.

Single-number dBA readings are known as *overall* levels and are useful as preliminary data and for broad-spectrum design. Table 17.5 lists common sound levels as measured by the dBA scale. Such single-value numbers are useful to establish a mental-aural comparison base and for use in maximum noise exposure calculations, as discussed in the following section.

17.6 NOISE

Noise is variously defined as unwanted sound, sound with no intelligible content, and/or broadband sound, depending upon the listener and the situation. Each definition is appropriate for various times and situations. It should generally be assumed that any sound can at some point be referred to as noise by someone.

Although noise effects and their control are the specific subject of Chapter 19, noise criteria and their development are discussed here as part of an overall view of hearing and sound sources. There are two basic approaches to the negative effects of noise; a psychological-practical one and a purely physiological one. The latter is concerned with the physical impact of noise on the body, including hearing loss and other deleterious conditions. The former is concerned with noise levels that cause annoyance and disturbance to daily activities, including work, relaxation, and rest.

(a) Annoyance

Research has developed accurate data on perceptions of loudness. The concept of annoyance, however, being primarily subjective and psychological, is much more elusive. Tests have shown that *in general*, annoyance as a result of noise is:

1. Proportional to the loudness of the noise
2. Greater for high-frequency than low-frequency noise
3. Greater for intermittent than continuous noise
4. Greater for pure-tone than for broadband noise
5. Greater for moving or unlocatable (reverberant) noise than for fixed-location noise
6. Much greater for information-bearing noise than for nonsense noise

(b) Noise Criteria

To establish criteria for *acceptable background noise* (i.e., noise whose extent of annoyance is considered acceptable), certain of these effects must be neglected at this point for the sake of simplicity. (They can be and are considered in design and in establishing levels of masking noise [see Chapter 19].) Thus, ignore for the time being:

Factor 3, assuming, instead, continuous sounds

Factor 4, as broadband noise is assumed

Factor 5, as the noise source is assumed to be fixed in location

Factor 6, assuming that we can only consider general noise level, not actual content

Thus, the particular and special characteristics of noises such as a barking dog (3), a whistle (4), a single passing vehicle (5), and intelligible sounds (6) are not considered when establishing conventional noise criteria.

In order to quantify the concept of acceptable background noise, it was necessary to remove it from the purely psychological arena and relate it to a physical phenomenon. This was done by studying the effect of the two remaining annoyance factors (1 and 2) on speech communication. This study resulted in two design concepts: the Articulation Index (AI) and the Speech Interference Level (SIL). These are both determined by reading a carefully selected set of phonetically balanced nonsense syllables to a test audience in the presence of different levels and compositions of background noise. The ratio of correctly identified syllables to total syllables read is the Articulation Index. An AI in excess of 0.5 was considered indicative (Beranek, 1988a) of a condition in which acceptable intelligibility could be expected for *male* voices. The Speech Interference Level, a simplified version of the AI, was devised by Beranek. It consists simply of the arithmetic average in decibels of the background sound pressure levels in the four octave bands centered on 500, 1000, 2000, and 4000 Hz, for which acceptable intelligibility could be expected, for a given voice effort, at a given distance between the speaker and listener.

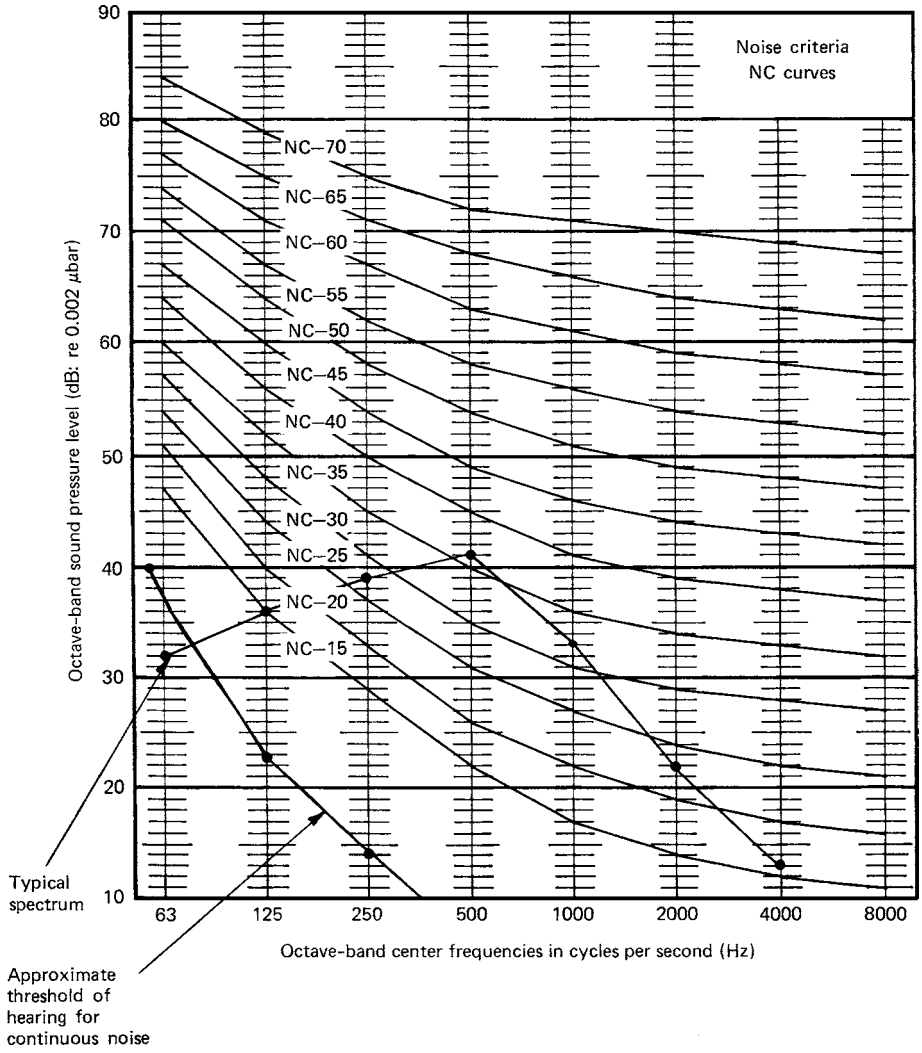


Fig. 17.17 *Application of NC curves. The typical spectrum plotted would be rated NC-36, as it exceeds NC-35 at 500 Hz by 1 dB. (See Table 19.7 for specific NC recommendations for interior spaces.)*

(c) Noise Criteria Curves

Beranek also developed the well-known and widely accepted and used noise criteria (NC) curves shown in Fig. 17.17. The NC curves are based on the consideration that most people prefer to speak at a level no greater than 22 dB above the background noise level. The NC curves are derived by combining the SILs in decibels with this behavioral phenomenon; they represent a loudness level 22 dB higher than the SIL. The contours then represent the maximum *continuous* background noise likely to be considered acceptable in a specified environment, and generally correspond to background sound pressure (noise) levels found reasonably acceptable in selected commercial/institutional building environments. A similar set of curves called *noise rating* (NR) curves find considerable application outside the United States. They are less stringent than NC curves in low frequencies but more stringent in high frequencies.

To apply the NC curves, the spectrum (from 63 to 8000 Hz) of a specific noise being studied is overlaid on a graph of the NC curves. The lowest NC curve that is not exceeded by any portion of the plot becomes the NC rating of the particular noise. Thus, specifying a maximum noise level of NC-30 for a space means that no portion of the sound pressure level curve of any continuous background noise in the space may cross the NC-30 contour. A piece of equipment rated NC-35 has an octave-band spectrum completely below NC-35. A fan rated NC-53 indicates that at some point in its frequency spectrum the fan exceeded NC-50 by 3 dB.

The NC rating of a noise usually falls between 5 and 10 dB below the measured dBA for the noise, depending upon the shape of the noise spectrum. The virtue of the NC curves is that they provide a single-number specification for sound across a wide frequency range—without losing all sense of the frequency distribution. Their disadvantage is that they were derived for, and are most accurate with, speech conversation conducted against a backdrop of continuous, broadband noise. This is not the situation that is typically most troublesome in an office; indeed, continuous equipment noise may be *helpful* in masking unwanted speech. Nevertheless, NC curves remain the most commonly used criteria for establishing acceptable continuous background noise levels.

(d) Room Criteria Curves

Due to the recognized shortcomings of the criteria inherent in the NC curves, specifically that they are undefined in the very low frequencies (16 and 31.5 octave bands) and are not sufficiently stringent at frequencies above 2 kHz, a similar approach to setting criteria was developed—called *room criteria* (RC) curves. These curves, shown in Fig. 17.18, were adopted by ASHRAE (the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers) as the suggested noise limitation benchmark in preference to NC curves. The curves were used to evaluate the acceptability of background mechanical system noise for typical space types. RC curves differ from NC curves in a number of aspects:

- They are straight lines.
- Their slope is constant at −5 dB per octave (determined from extensive tests, mostly in the range of 40 to 50 dB).
- Regions labeled A and B as in Fig. 17.18 address the problem of very low frequencies and high sound pressure levels, an issue that is ignored in the NC criteria. This addition then deals with rumble and vibration that can cause extreme annoyance for many occupants.

Referring to Fig. 17.18, the procedure for determining the RC value of a specific item of equipment whose noise spectrum is known is as follows:

1. Calculate the arithmetic average of the sound pressure levels (SPL) in the 500-, 1000-, and 2000-Hz octave bands. This number is the RC value of that noise spectrum.
2. Draw a straight line at a −5 dB slope through this value of RC at 1000 Hz.
3. Plot the SPL values for the octave band center frequencies on the RC curve sheet and compare the plot to the RC line drawn in Step 2.
4. Classify the equipment sound quality from this comparison as follows:
   a. *Neutral.* If the octave band data plotted in Step 3 do not exceed the RC line drawn in Step 2 by more than 5 dB at or below 500 Hz and more than 3 dB at or above 1000 Hz, then the sound is considered neutral (bland, uncharacteristic), and the designator letter *N* is placed after the RC level. A piece of mechanical equipment with an *N* designation is then

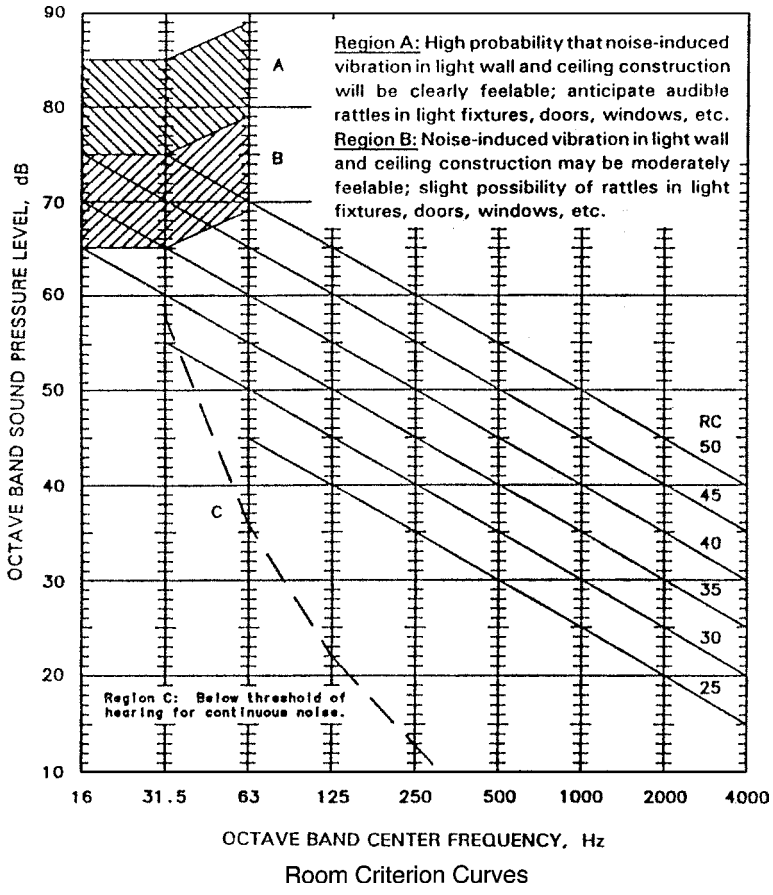


Fig. 17.18 *RC curves. These curves were adopted by ASHRAE in lieu of NC curve criteria. See text for an explanation of their use. (Reprinted with permission from* ASHRAE Handbook—Applications*, 1995.)*

understood to have a neutral tone quality that most people would classify as unobtrusive and lacking specific character. ASHRAE design guidelines for HVAC system noise levels are listed as RC (*N*).

b. *Rumble.* If the octave band plot *does* exceed the RC line by more than 5 dB at 500 Hz or below, the spectrum is classified as "rumbly," and the descriptor letter *R* is appended to its RC level number.
c. *Hiss.* If the octave band plot *does* exceed the RC line by more than 3 dB at or above 1000 Hz it is classified as "hissy," and the descriptor letter *H* is appended to its RC level.
d. *Vibration.* The shaded areas in Fig. 17.18 labeled A and B represent high sound pressure levels in the 31.5- and 63-Hz octave bands. In the A area, vibration will likely be felt in light construction and furniture, and rattling may occur in loosely constructed devices, cabinets, glassware, and the like. In the lower-energy B area, rattling will be less likely but vibration may still be felt.

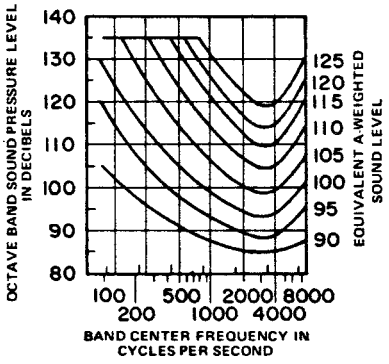
The result of this classification is to give the designer not only an average SPL for an item of equipment, but also a sense of subjective sound quality that should be of considerable assistance in determining the noise abatement measures to be taken.

ASHRAE has updated the RC curve concept to what is now called the *RC Mark II* method. This updated method is a bit more complex than the original RC approach. For further information, see the ASHRAE *Handbook—HVAC Applications* (2007).

The original NC curves have also been modified (by Beranek) and issued as balanced noise criteria (NCB) curves. They amended a failing of the NC approach by adding very-low-frequency coverage and the NCB curves were straightened, so that they resemble RC curves above 125 Hz, except that the slope angle is −3.33 dB compared to −5 dB for the RC curves. The slope at the higher frequencies has also eliminated the hiss that characterizes equipment noise conforming to the NC criteria. These adjustments have yielded a "balanced" neutral sound, which reflects the chart's name. Application of these curves to mechanical equipment noise is similar to that for RC curves, except that letter descriptors are not used. For a full discussion of the construction and application of BNC curves, see Beranek (1988b). Given these competing options for criteria, selection of NC, RC, RC Mark II, or NCB

§ 1910.95 Occupational noise exposure.

(a) Protection against the effects of noise exposure shall be provided when the sound levels exceed those shown in Table G-16 when measured on the A scale of a standard sound level meter at slow response. When noise levels are determined by octave band analysis, the equivalent A-weighted sound level may be determined as follows:



Equivalent sound level contours. Octave band sound pressure levels may be converted to the equivalent A-weighted sound level by plotting them on this graph and noting the A-weighted sound level corresponding to the point of highest penetration into the sound level contours. This equivalent A-weighted sound level, which may differ from the actual A-weighted sound level of the noise, is used to determine exposure limits from Table G-16.

[1910.95 amended at 39 FR 19468, June 3, 1974]

(b)(1) When employees are subjected to sound exceeding those listed in Table G-16, feasible administrative or engineering controls shall be utilized. If such controls fail to reduce sound levels within the levels of Table G-16, personal protective equipment shall be provided and used to reduce sound levels within the levels of the table.

(2) If the variations in noise level involve maxima at intervals of 1 second or less, it is to be considered continuous.

(3) In all cases where the sound levels exceed the values shown herein, a continuing, effective hearing conservation program shall be administered.

TABLE G-16—PERMISSIBLE NOISE EXPOSURES[1]

Duration per day, hours	Sound level dBA slow response
8	90
6	92
4	95
3	97
2	100
1½	102
1	105
½	110
¼ or less	115

[1] When the daily noise exposure is composed of two or more periods of noise exposure of different levels, their combined effect should be considered, rather than the individual effect of each. If the sum of the following fractions: $C_1/T_1+C_2/T_2+\cdots C_n/T_n$ exceeds unity, then, the mixed exposure should be considered to exceed the limit value. Cn indicates the total time of exposure at a specified noise level, and Tn indicates the total time of exposure permitted at that level.

[1910.95 Table G-16 amended at 39 FR 19468, June 3, 1974]

Exposure to impulsive or impact noise should not exceed 140 dB peak sound pressure level.

Fig. 17.19 *The standard for exposure to noise in the workplace. (From OSHA, July 1988; current as of late 2009.)*

criteria for background noise is a function of design intent. The approach that best meets the needs (and budget) of the owner should be chosen.

(e) High Noise Levels and Hearing Protection

It has long been recognized that continuous exposure to high noise levels causes a degree of temporary deafness in most people and that long periods of such exposure, even on an intermittent 8-hour workday basis, can produce permanent hearing impairment. Most experts place the safe 8-hour upper limit at 85 dBA. In addition, studies have indicated that continual exposure to noise levels as low as 75 to 85 dBA can produce or contribute to numerous physical and psychological ailments, including headache, digestive problems, tachycardia, high blood pressure, anxiety, and nervousness—an extensive catalog of human illnesses. Since continuous noise exposure is most severe in industry, regulatory legislation in the United States has been directed at this area.

In 1969 the Walsh–Healy Public Contracts Act was passed, and thereafter its provision for maximum permissible exposure to noise levels was incorporated into the Occupational Safety and Health Act. Both the act and the associated regulatory agency, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, are known as OSHA. The relevant provisions of this act are reproduced in Fig. 17.19. To avoid overly complex regulations, limitations on exposure are given as single-number dBA values. Since workers rarely remain in a single acoustic environment for 8 hours, their total daily exposure, or *time-weighted average* (TWA) exposure, can be calculated from timed dBA measurements using formulas and tables given by OSHA and then compared to permissible levels. Alternatively, a dosimeter (Fig. 17.20) can be used, which automatically integrates the noise to which a person is exposed over a given time period and reads out the permissible TWA exposure directly.

Typical industrial noise levels are given in Table 17.6. When permissible levels are exceeded, management must take steps to reduce the exposure, either by reducing the noise or by providing hearing protectors. Typical characteristics of a few types of ear protectors are given in Fig. 17.21.



Fig. 17.20 *A noise dosimeter. The unit is carried by a person whose noise exposure is being tested, with the clip-mounted microphone at shoulder (ear) level. The meter will display, store, and calculate maximum, minimum, and peak levels of SPL, Leq, TWA, exposure levels, and dosage. Noise level histories are stored and can be printed out as desired. The unit shown measures 5.5 × 2.8 × 1.4 in. (140 × 70 × 40 mm) and weighs 15.5 oz (440 g). (Photo courtesy of Quest Technologies.)*

TABLE 17.6 Typical Industrial Noise Levels[a]

Equipment	dBA
Printing press plant (medium-sized automatic)	86
Heavy diesel-propelled vehicle (about 25 ft [7 m] away)	92
Heavy-duty grinder	93
Air compressor	94
Plastic chipper	96
Cutoff saw	97
Multiple spot welder	98
Turbine condenser	98
15-cu-ft (425-L) air compressor	100
Drive gear	103
Banging of steel plate	104
Magnetic drill press	106
Air chisel	106
Positive displacement blower	107
Air hammer	107
Vacuum pump	108
Jolt squeeze hammer	122

[a]These are approximate values for some typical generic equipment types and should not be used as design values.

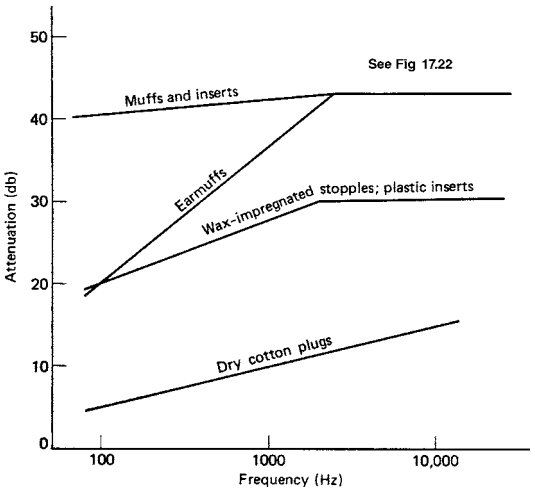


Fig. 17.21 *Sound attenuation characteristics typical of various types of ear protectors. For design purposes, specific attenuation characteristics must be used and the attenuation figures modified to reflect field usage. (From* Quieting: A Practical Guide to Noise Control*, 1976.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 17.22 *Three common types of ear protection devices: (a) PVC foam ear plugs are rolled and squeezed to reduce their diameter before being placed in the ear canal, where they reexpand to their previous size. The devices have an EPA noise reduction rating (NRR) of 20 when tested to ANSI 53.19-1974. They are generally discarded after a single use. (b) Ear protector for intermittent use consists of (replaceable) foam pads mounted on a flexible neck band. The foam does not require rolling. The unit is rated NRR 20. (c) Spring-type headband and foam-filled ear cushions provide an NRR rating of 20 for this earmuff design. (Photos courtesy of E-A-R Specialty Composites, a Div. of AEARO Company.)*

TABLE 17.7 Mean Attenuation Data (dBA) for Ear Protectors at Various Octave Bands[a]

125	250	500	1000	2000	3150	4000	6300	8000	NRR[c]
FOAM EARPLUGS (FIG. 17.22*a*)									
37.4	40.9	44.8	43.8	36.3	41.9	42.6	46.1	47.3	29
SEMIAURAL HEARING PROTECTOR (FIG. 17.22*b*)									
28.7	28.3	28.0	28.6	32.2	42.1	44.3	47.2	44.6	20
EARMUFFS (FIG. 17.22*c*)									
11.7	16.2	26.5	31.6	32.5	35.0	38.1	41.8	41.8	20

[a]Data extracted with permission from published Aearo catalog material.

[b]Test frequency (Hz).

[c]NRR, noise reduction rating.

Photographs of three of the most common ear protectors in industrial use are shown in Fig. 17.22, and their laboratory-measured mean attenuation spectra are given in Table 17.7.

OSHA does not deal extensively with impulse noises, except to state that they shall not exceed a 140-dB peak sound pressure level. Impulse noise is quite different from continuous noise, since effective noise levels depend on duration, and specification is difficult. Much work has been done in this area by the military for obvious reasons. The interested reader is referred to the literature, since this subject is substantially outside the realm of architectural acoustics.

17.7 VIBRATION

Sound is heard; vibration is felt. If sound is defined as a pressure variation that is audibly received, then vibration is a tactilely received pressure variation. Vibrations of concern to building design have frequencies that begin just below the range of human hearing at around 20 Hz. For someone with a hearing threshold above 20 Hz, vibration frequency might be higher. The means of reception of the energy is more important than specific frequency cutoffs. In general, vibration in a building is always an unwanted experience. Most mechanical and electrical equipment produces energy output that will be sensed as noise and output that will be sensed as vibration. Various means of vibration control are presented in Chapter 19. As vibration is not received through the sense of hearing, vibration mitigation approaches are quite different from noise mitigation approaches.

References and Resources

ASHRAE. 1995. *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers. Atlanta, GA.

ASHRAE. 2007. *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers. Atlanta, GA.

Beranek, L. L. 1988a. *Acoustical Measurements*, revised ed. Acoustical Society of America. Melville, NY.

Beranek, L. L. 1988b. *Noise and Vibration Control*, revised ed. Institute of Noise Control Engineering. Washington, DC.

Classroom acoustics WWW site: http://www.quietclassrooms.org/

HUD. 1968. *A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure Borne Noise–Control in Multifamily Dwellings.* U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development. Washington, DC.

Magrab, E. B. 1975. *Environmental Noise Control.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

NBS. 1976. *Quieting: A Practical Guide to Noise Control* (Handbook 119). National Bureau of Standards (now NIST). Washington, DC.

Noise Pollution Clearinghouse: http://www.nonoise.org/

U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety & Health Administration (OSHA). Noise and Hearing Conservation: http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/noisehearingconservation/index.html

White, F. A. 1975. *Our Acoustic Environment*, John Wiley & Sons. New York.

CHAPTER 18

Sound in Enclosed Spaces

CHAPTER 17 PRESENTED THE FUNDAmentals of sound theory, characteristics of human hearing and speech, and information on the negative effects of unwanted and excessive sounds. This chapter will discuss in some detail the interreaction between an enclosed space and a sound generated within it, which is essentially the definition of room acoustics.

18.1 SOUND IN ENCLOSURES

When a continuous sound is generated in an enclosure, fields are set up as described in Section 18.7. When the sound is not a continuous tone or noise but a series of discrete sounds, following one another and containing information as in speech or music, the room must be designed to maintain and enhance the information's intelligibility. That is what is meant by *design of room acoustics*.

Generated sound radiates out from a source until it strikes a room boundary or another large surface. Before reaching this surface, the sound intensity is attenuated by distance (the inverse square law—Section 17.5) and by absorption in the air. The latter is appreciable only in large rooms and at frequencies above 2000 Hz. When the sound reaches a wall, it is partially reflected and partially absorbed, and a small portion is transmitted into adjoining spaces. The energy transmitted has little effect on the space within which the sound originates, although, as discussed in Chapter 19, it may be very important in the surrounding spaces.

The ratio between the energy absorbed and the energy reflected by a surface will significantly affect what one hears within a space. Specifically, if little energy is absorbed and much is reflected, two effects will be noticeable. Intermittent sounds will be mixed together (which may make speech *less* intelligible or music more pleasant), and steady sounds will accumulate into a reverberant field, making the space noisy. Conversely, if much energy is absorbed and little reflected, the room will sound quiet for speech and "dead" for music. Quantification of these two primary characteristics of an enclosed space—absorption and reverberation (echo)—is the subject of the next six sections.

ABSORPTION

18.2 SOUND ABSORPTION

When sound energy impinges on a material, part is reflected and the remainder is absorbed (in the sense that it is not reflected). Some of the "absorbed" energy is transmitted, although that part is so small that for our discussion here it will be ignored. Materials are neither perfect reflectors nor perfect absorbers. The term used to define a material's sound absorption characteristic is its *coefficient of absorption*, which is usually represented by the lowercase

Greek letter alpha (α). This sound absorption coefficient is defined as

$$\alpha = \frac{I_a}{I_i} \tag{18.1}$$

where

I_a = sound power density (intensity) absorbed by the material, W/cm^2

I_i = intensity impinging on the material, W/cm^2

α = absorption coefficient, with no units since it represents a ratio

This absorption coefficient α can also be thought of as a measure of absorption effectiveness; the larger the absorption coefficient, the more effective a sound absorber the material is. Thus, an absorption coefficient of 1.0 indicates 100% absorption and zero reflection of the impinging sound energy. We have already said that no material is a perfect absorber, but an absence of material, that is, an open space, transmits (absorbs) all the impinging energy and therefore can be considered a perfect absorbing "material."

Since open space has this characteristic, α has also been defined as the ratio between the absorption of a given material and that of an *open window* of the same area. By definition, then, for an opening (open window, open door, etc.)

$$\alpha = 1.0$$

The total absorption A of a given quantity of material is proportional to its area and its absorption coefficient, that is,

$$A = S\alpha \tag{18.2}$$

where

A = total absorption, sabins

S = surface area, square feet or square meters

α = coefficient of absorption

Since α is a ratio and thus unitless, and S is a unit of area, $S\alpha$ should be in units of area as well. Instead, sound absorption units are called *sabins* in honor of W. C. Sabine, a pioneer in architectural acoustics. One sabin (m^2) is the sound absorption equivalent of an open window 1 m^2 in area. Similarly, 1 sabin (ft^2) is equivalent to 1 ft^2 of open window. As expected, 1 sabin (m^2) equals 10.76 sabins (ft^2). In this text, when not otherwise specified, a sabin (ft^2) is intended.

All rooms are constructed of several materials, each having a different absorption coefficient. In addition, most rooms contain furnishings, which have their own individual coefficients of absorption. Thus, to determine the total absorption of a room, it is necessary to sum the component absorptions, that is,

$$\sum S\alpha = S_1\alpha_1 + S_2\alpha_2 + \cdots + S_n\alpha_n$$

or

$$\sum A = A_1 + A_2 + \ldots + An \tag{18.3}$$

where

$\Sigma S\alpha$ = total absorption in the room, sabins

S_1, S_2, etc. = surface area of each material

α_1, α_2, etc. = absorption coefficient of each material

A_1, A_2, etc. = total absorption of each material

If S is expressed in square feet, then A is in sabins (ft^2); if S is expressed in square meters, then A is sabins (m^2).

Absorption coefficients for some common materials, sound-absorbing materials, and auditorium furnishings are tabulated in Table 18.1. It is important to note that for most common materials, absorption (and therefore α) varies with frequency. Thus, accurate absorption calculations must be made individually for the frequencies being studied.

18.3 MECHANICS OF ABSORPTION

At this point, it is appropriate to examine absorption as an acoustic phenomenon so that we may understand the use of absorptive materials. In an untreated room of normal construction (Fig. 18.1*a*), when the sound waves strike the walls or ceiling, a small portion of the sound is transmitted, a small portion is absorbed, and most of it is reflected. The exact proportions depend upon the nature of the construction. When acoustical treatment is applied to the room surfaces as in Fig. 18.1*b*, some of the energy in the sound waves is dissipated before the sound reaches the wall. The transmitted portion is slightly reduced, but the reflection is greatly reduced.

TABLE 18.1 Octave Band Average Sound Absorption Coefficients[a]

		Absorption Coefficients (α)						
General Building Materials and Furnishings[b]		**125 Hz**	**250 Hz**	**500 Hz**	**1000 Hz**	**2000 Hz**	**4000 Hz**	**NRC[c]**
Brick, unglazed		0.03	0.03	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.07	0.005
Brick, unglazed, painted		0.01	0.01	0.02	0.02	0.02	0.03	0.00
Carpet, heavy, on concrete		0.02	0.06	0.14	0.37	0.60	0.65	0.29
Carpet, heavy, on 40-oz (1.1 kg) hairfelt or foam rubber		0.08	0.24	0.57	0.69	0.71	0.73	0.55
Concrete block, coarse		0.36	0.44	0.31	0.29	0.39	0.25	0.35
Concrete block, painted		0.10	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.09	0.08	0.05
Fabrics								
Light velour, 10 oz/yd^2, hung straight, in contact with wall		0.03	0.04	0.11	0.17	0.24	0.35	0.15
Medium velour, 14 oz/yd^2, draped to half area		0.07	0.31	0.49	0.75	0.70	0.60	0.55
Heavy velour, 18 oz/yd^2, draped to half area		0.14	0.35	0.55	0.72	0.70	0.65	0.60
Floors								
Concrete or terrazzo		0.01	0.01	0.015	0.02	0.02	0.02	0.00
Linoleum, asphalt, rubber, or cork tile on concrete		0.02	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.02	0.05
Wood		0.15	0.11	0.10	0.07	0.06	0.07	0.10
Glass								
Large panes of heavy plate glass		0.18	0.06	0.04	0.03	0.02	0.02	0.05
Ordinary window glass		0.35	0.25	0.18	0.12	0.07	0.04	0.15
Gypsum board, ½ in. nailed to 2 × 4's 16 in. o.c.		0.10	0.08	0.05	0.03	0.03	0.03	0.05
Marble or glazed tile		0.01	0.01	0.01	0.01	0.02	0.02	0.00
Openings								
Stage, depending on furnishings					0.25–0.75			
Deep balcony, upholstered seats					0.50–1.00			
Grilles, ventilating					0.15–0.50			
Plaster, gypsum or lime, smooth finish on tile or brick		0.013	0.015	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.05
Plaster, gypsum or lime, on lath		0.14	0.10	0.06	0.05	0.04	0.03	0.05
Plywood paneling, ⅜ in. (9 mm) thick		0.28	0.22	0.17	0.09	0.10	0.11	0.15
Rough wood, as tongue-and-groove cedar		0.24	0.19	0.14	0.08	0.13	0.10	0.14
Slightly vibrating surface (e.g., hollow core door)		0.02	0.02	0.03	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.03
Readily vibrating surface (e.g., thin wood paneling on 16-in. [406 mm] studs)		0.10	0.07	0.05	0.04	0.04	0.05	0.05
Water surface, as in a swimming pool		0.008	0.008	0.013	0.015	0.020	0.025	0.00
Absorption of Seats and Audience[d]		**125 Hz**	**250 Hz**	**500 Hz**	**1000 Hz**	**2000 Hz**	**4000 Hz**	**NRC[c]**
Audience, in upholstered seats, per ft^2 of floor area		0.60	0.74	0.88	0.96	0.93	0.85	—
Unoccupied cloth-upholstered seats, per ft^2 of floor area		0.49	0.66	0.80	0.88	0.82	0.70	—
Wooden pews, occupied, per ft^2 of floor area		0.57	0.61	0.75	0.86	0.91	0.86	—
Students in tablet-arm chairs, per ft^2 of floor area		0.30	0.42	0.50	0.85	0.85	0.84	
Acoustic Absorptive Materials	**Mtg[e]**	**125 Hz**	**250 Hz**	**500 Hz**	**1000 Hz**	**2000 Hz**	**4000 Hz**	**NRC[c]**
High-performance vinyl-faced fiberglass ceiling panels								
1 in. thick	E405	0.73	0.88	0.71	0.98	0.96	0.77	0.90
1.5 in. thick	E405	0.79	0.98	0.83	1.03	0.98	0.80	0.95
Painted nubby glass cloth panels								
¾ in. thick	E405	0.81	0.94	0.65	0.87	1.00	0.96	0.85
1 in. thick	E405	0.78	0.92	0.79	1.00	1.03	1.10	0.95
Random fissured ¾-in.-thick panels	E405	0.52	0.58	0.60	0.80	0.92	0.80	0.70
Perforated metal panel with infill 1 in. thick	E405	0.70	0.86	0.74	0.88	0.95	0.86	0.85
Typical averages, mineral fiber tiles and panels								
¾ in. fissured	E405	0.47	0.50	0.52	0.76	0.86	0.81	0.65
¾ in. textured	E405	0.49	0.55	0.53	0.80	0.94	0.83	0.70
⅝ in. fissured	E405	0.28	0.33	0.66	0.73	0.74	0.75	0.60
⅝ in. textured	E405	0.29	0.35	0.66	0.63	0.44	0.34	0.50
⅝ in. perforated	E405	0.27	0.29	0.55	0.78	0.69	0.53	0.60
3 in. thick × 16 in. square on 24-in. centers	A	0.40	0.61	1.92	2.54	2.62	2.60	

[a]This table is useful in making preliminary calculations. Complete tables of coefficients of the various materials that normally constitute the interior finish of rooms may be found in books on architectural acoustics.

[b]Selected data courtesy of Owens-Corning Fiberglass.

[c]Noise reduction coefficient: the arithmetic average of the α values at 250, 500, 1000, and 2000 Hz.

[d]When the audience is randomly spaced, use an average of 5.0 sabins (ft^2) per person.

[e]See Fig. 18.4 for mounting methods.

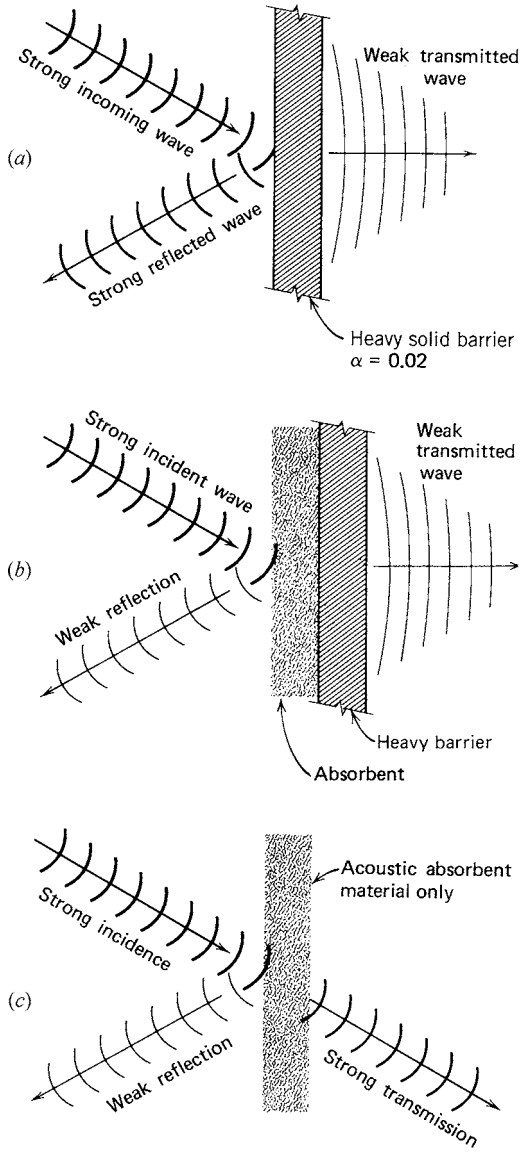


Fig. 18.1 *(a) Action of an incoming sound wave striking a heavy barrier. Much of the energy is reflected, some is absorbed, and a little is transmitted. (b) When absorbent material is applied to a heavy wall, it "traps" sound, preventing reflection, while the wall mass acts to reduce transmission. (c) Action of acoustic absorbent material alone. Very little energy is reflected, some is absorbed, and most is transmitted.*

It is important to understand, however, that the principal effect of absorptive material is on the reflected sound. The transmitted sound energy is essentially determined by the mass of the solid airtight barrier between the two spaces. This is graphically represented in Fig. 18.1*c*. The effect of added acoustic absorption in a space is shown in Fig. 18.2 and is calculated in Section 18.9.

18.4 ABSORPTIVE MATERIALS

We will now examine acoustic materials and the effect of varying type, quantity, thickness, and installation methods. There are three families of devices for sound absorption—fibrous materials, panel resonators, and volume resonators. All three types absorb sound by changing sound energy into heat energy. Only fibrous materials and panel resonators are used commonly in buildings. Volume resonators, also known as *Helmholtz resonators*, after their originator, are used principally as devices for absorbing a narrow band of frequencies. The discussion in this section refers to fibrous absorbers; the other two types are discussed in Section 19.2.

Fibrous materials absorb acoustic energy by the frictional drag of air moving in the tiny spaces between the fibers. The absorption provided by a specific material depends upon its thickness, density, porosity, and resistance to airflow. Since the action depends upon absorbing energy by "pumping" air through the material, the air paths *must extend from one side to the other*. A fibrous material with sealed pores is almost useless as an acoustic absorbent. (Therefore, painting will generally ruin a porous absorber.) A simple test is to blow smoke through the material. If the smoke passes through freely and the material is porous, fibrous, and thick, it should be a good sound absorbent. Absorbency increases with increasing material porosity up to approximately 70% porosity; above that figure absorbency remains fairly constant.

Table 18.1 gives absorption coefficients for fibrous absorbent materials and for some other building materials and furnishings. Several important conclusions can be drawn from examination of this table and Fig. 18.3:

1. For absorbent materials, absorption is normally higher at high frequencies than at low ones.
2. Absorption is not always proportional to thickness, but depends upon the type of material used and the method of installation (see Fig. 18.3). It is clear from this figure that beyond a nominal thickness, little is to be gained by additional thickness except at very low frequencies, or

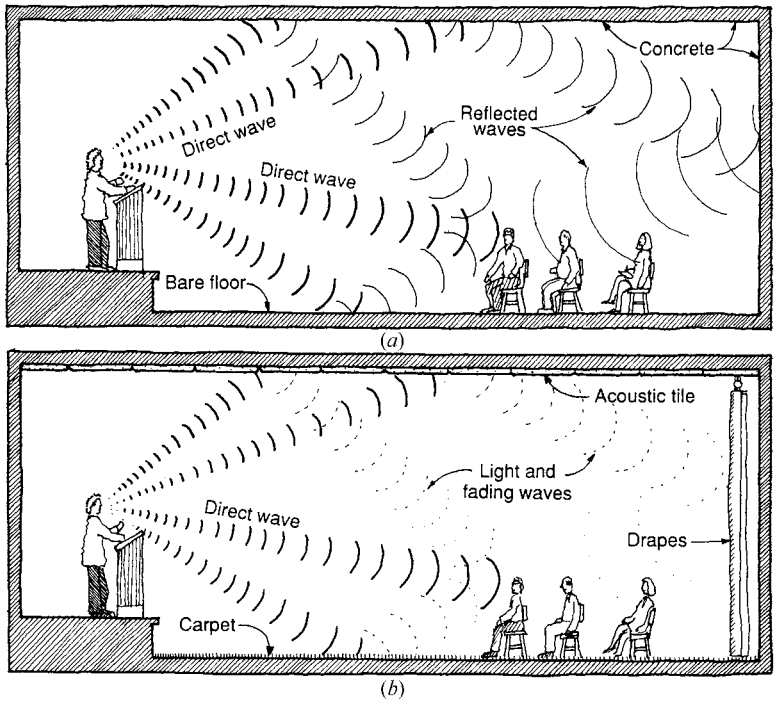


Fig. 18.2 *In an untreated space (a) reverberant (reflected) sound constitutes a large portion of received sound in much of the room. These reflections are largely eliminated in (b) by wall and ceiling absorption. Note that direct wave sound is completely unaffected.*

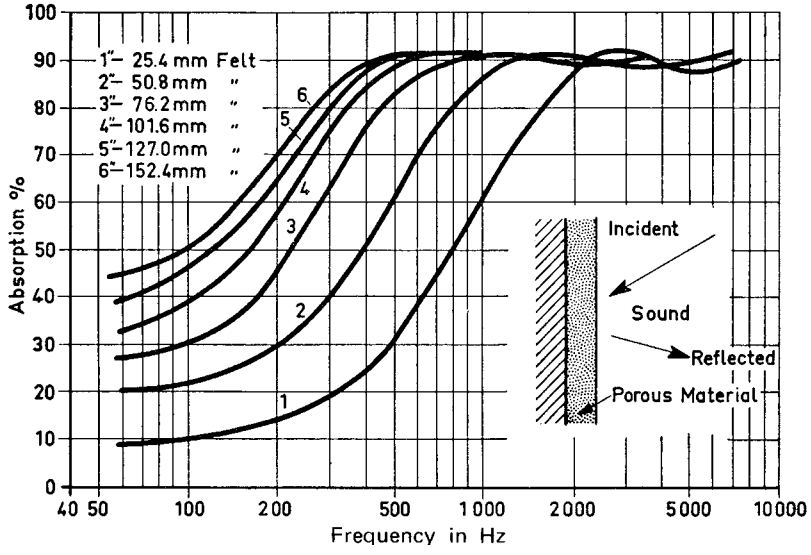


Fig. 18.3 *Variation of the absorption coefficient with the thickness of felt absorbent. Note particularly that beyond 1 kHz, all thicknesses give the same α, whereas at low frequencies absorption is proportional to thickness. Note also that a very heavy layer is required to give appreciable absorption at low frequency. (Courtesy of Brüel and Kjær.)*

when installed discontinuously, as described in the next item.

3. It is possible to obtain an α greater than 1.0 by using very thick blocks. As they are installed at a distance from each other, and their edge absorption is very large (particularly at high frequencies), they exhibit an α greater than 1.0.
4. Installation methods have a pronounced effect, as discussed in the following section.
5. All other factors remaining constant, the thicker an absorbent material, the better its low-frequency absorption characteristic.

18.5 INSTALLATION OF ABSORPTIVE MATERIALS

Coefficient ratings for absorptive materials are always given with mountings corresponding to American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) (2000) requirements. The most common standardized mounting methods are shown in Fig. 18.4. Installation of absorbent material directly on a wall or ceiling is the least effective means, since exposure to sound energy is minimal. When an air gap is left between the porous layer and the rigid surface, the combination acts almost as well in midfrequencies as an absorbent layer equivalent in thickness to the air plus porous material (Fig. 18.5). One problem with this technique, however, is that at the $\lambda/2$ node of a standing wave there is a severe drop in absorption, as can be seen in Fig. 18.5*c*. At 1000 Hz, one-half wavelength is approximately 7 in. (178 mm). At that distance, α drops severely but is a maximum at $\lambda/4$ or 3.5 in. (89 mm).

For ceiling tile hung at 16 in. (406 mm) below the slab (Fig. 18.4, type E 405 mounting method), the drop in absorption occurs at

$$\lambda/2 = 16 \text{ in. } (406 \text{ mm})$$

$$\lambda = 32 \text{ in.} = 2.67 \text{ ft } [812 \text{ mm}]$$

$$f = \frac{1128}{2.67} = 422 \text{ Hz}$$

which is midfrequency. This factor should be considered in applying absorptive material. Avoid a spacing corresponding to a drop in absorption at a sensitive frequency. To obtain good low-frequency absorption, it is essential that a deep air space be provided behind the absorbent material and that walls be treated in addition to the ceiling.

In increasing order of effectiveness, absorbent material can be applied:

1. Directly to the room surface
2. Hung below the ceiling and supported away from the walls
3. Hung from the ceiling as louvers or baffles
4. Made up into shapes such as cubes or tetrahedrons and suspended from the ceiling

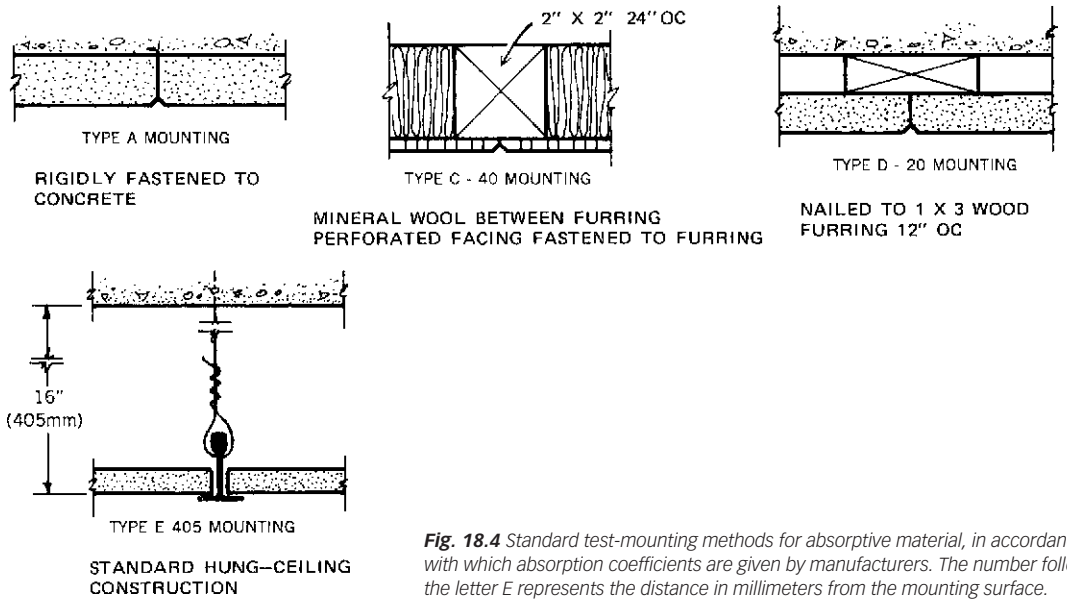


Fig. 18.4 *Standard test-mounting methods for absorptive material, in accordance with which absorption coefficients are given by manufacturers. The number following the letter E represents the distance in millimeters from the mounting surface.*

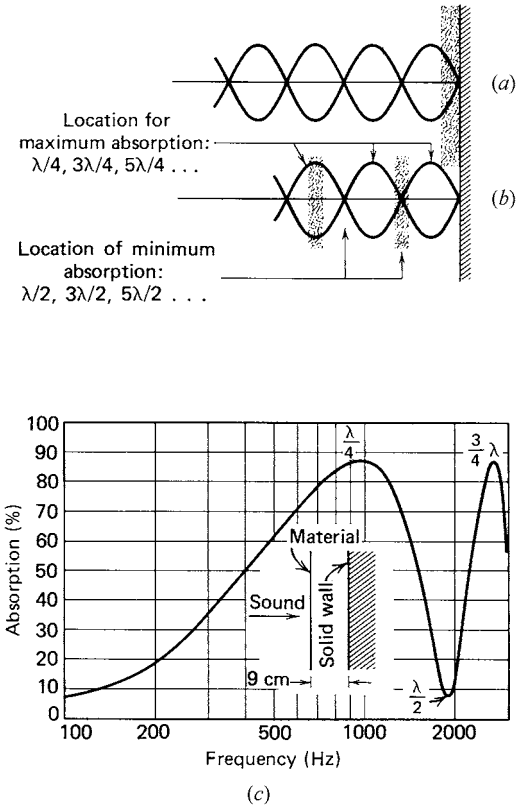


Fig. 18.5 *Sound waves striking a surface of a large mass will create standing waves at certain frequencies (a), depending upon the room dimensions. Only insulation placed at the peaks (b) of these waves (λ/4, 3λ/4...) is effective, as seen in (c). (Part c reproduced with permission of Brüel and Kjær.)*

The last two techniques are extremely effective because they expose a very large surface of porous material—much larger than could be obtained with wall or ceiling covering. Of course, these suspended objects become architectural elements and must be handled accordingly. In contrast, surface coverings are relatively architecturally neutral. In general, treatment should not be limited to one room surface such as the ceiling. All three principal surfaces in the direction of sound propagation—that is, the ceiling, floor, and back wall—should be treated *approximately equally* for best results. The common practice of treating the ceiling only is generally inadvisable, since high frequencies are highly directive and may not reach the ceiling until the third reflection.

In order to fully understand the effects of absorbent materials in an enclosed space, it is necessary to introduce two new concepts: *reverberation* and *sound fields*. This will be done in the next two sections, after which we will return to our discussion of the use and effects of acoustic absorptive material in enclosed spaces.

ROOM ACOUSTICS

18.6 REVERBERATION

Reverberation is the persistence of sound after the sound source has ceased. Such persistence is a result of repeated reflections in an enclosed space. Reverberation time (T_R) is defined as the time required for the sound level to decrease 60 dB after the sound source has stopped producing sound. For rooms of usual size and shape, the reverberation time at a specific frequency may be found by the formula

$$T_R = K \times \frac{V}{\sum A} \text{ seconds} \qquad (18.4)$$

where

K = a constant, equal to 0.05 when measurements are in feet and 0.16 when in meters

V = room volume, ft^3 or m^3

$\sum A$ = total room absorption, sabins (ft^2 or m^2) at the frequency in question

(For spaces of unusual shapes, see Beranek, 1988.) Reverberation is one of the most pronounced hearing reactions in an enclosed space. It is the ear's reaction to echoes, giving a subjective impression of "liveness" or "deadness" to a space.

A space with highly reflective surfaces, and therefore a low average absorption coefficient ($\bar{\alpha} < 0.2$), sounds live. Conversely, a highly absorptive nonreflective environment ($\bar{\alpha} > 0.4$) sounds dead. ($\bar{\alpha}$ is the average absorption coefficient of the entire space, as explained in detail in Section 18.8.) Since room absorption is related to total surface area, which in turn is related by room proportions to room volume, it is possible to relate all three factors in a single diagram. Figure 18.6 is drawn using room proportions of 2:1.5:1, for L:W:H, based on Fig. 18.22 for preferred room proportions. These proportions (2:1.5:1) represent the average of the extremes of Fig. 18.22. The maximum differential

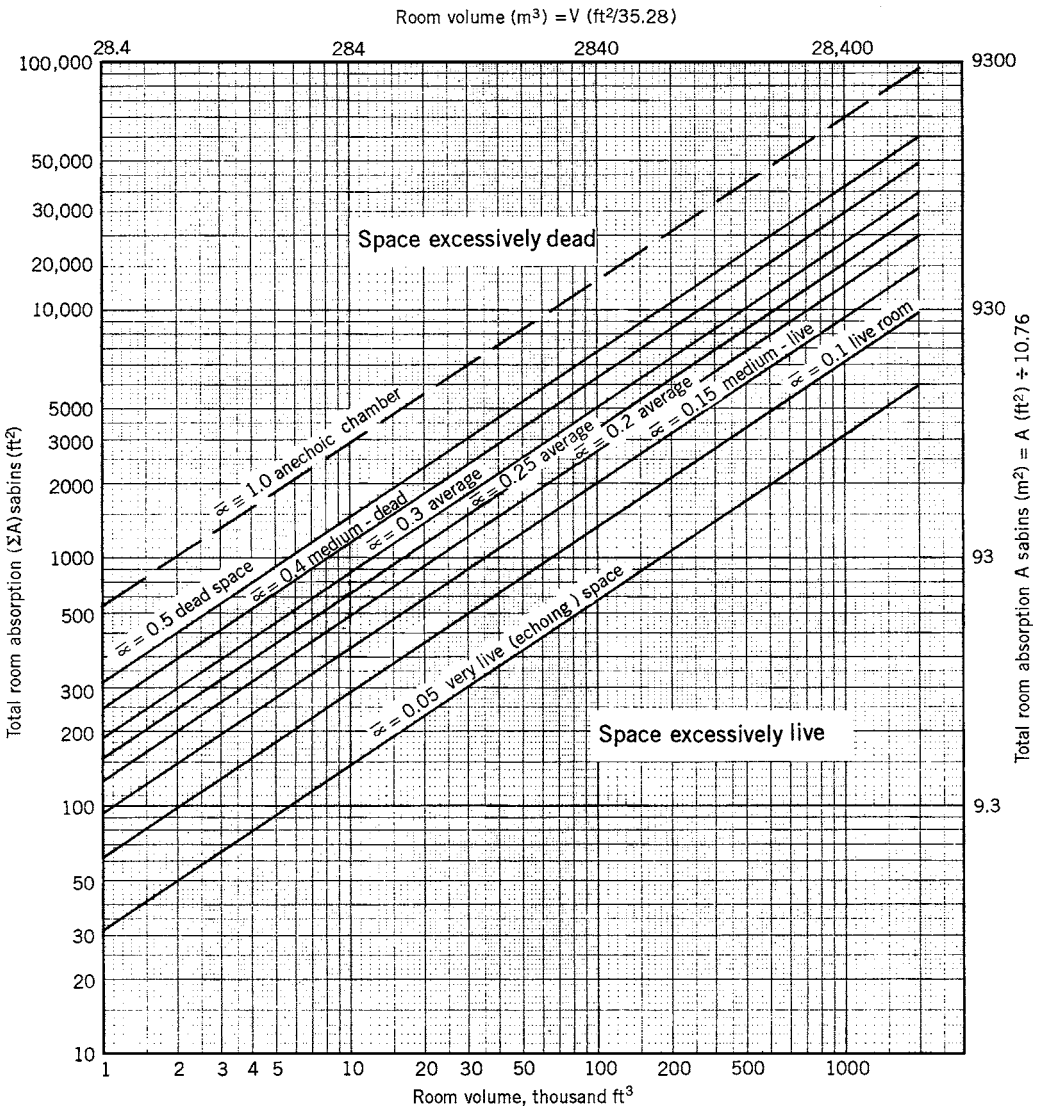


Fig. 18.6 *Chart indicating a room's "liveness" as a function of its volume and total sabin absorption. The L-W-H room proportions chosen—L = 2.5H; W = 1.5H; H = H—represent the average of the three extreme points of the recommended room proportion triangle in Fig. 18.22. For these proportions,* $S = 6.25\ V^{2/3}$ *and therefore* $A = S\,\bar{\alpha} = 6.25\ V^{2/3}\,\bar{\alpha}$.

introduced by using average proportions is 2½%—well within engineering accuracy.

The ultimate dead space is one where there is no reflection at all—as is the case outdoors in a flat open area. Indoors, we receive an auditory cue in the form of reflected sound (feedback) that helps us regulate our sound power output (voice level). Outdoors, the absence of this cue, to which we are so accustomed by our largely indoor existence, automatically causes us to raise our output. For this reason, most people tend to speak excessively loudly outdoors. Conversely, a highly reflective indoor condition gives a large feedback signal, which usually results in lowered vocal output.

In common room acoustics studies, reverberation times are calculated at 125, 500, 1000, and 2000 Hz. The midfrequency (500 to 1000 Hz) range is generally the reference used in specifying the reverberation time of a room when studying the speech characteristic of the space.

Reverberation can be considered as a mixture of previous and more recent sounds. The converse of *reverberation* or *reverberance* is *articulation*. An articulate environment keeps each sound event separate rather than running them together. Spaces for speech activities should be less reverberant—more articulate—than those designed for performance of music. See Sections 18.11 and 18.12 for reverberation criteria for speech and music rooms, respectively.

18.7 SOUND FIELDS IN AN ENCLOSED SPACE

The inverse square law described in Section 17.5 holds true for the acoustic *far field*, which is a sound field sufficiently far from a source that intensity is proportional to power and inversely proportional to distance. This type of acoustic field is developed in open, obstruction-free space. Propagation in an enclosed space is quite different. There, when a sound reaches a wall or another large (with respect to wavelength) obstruction, part of the sound energy is reflected and part absorbed. As a result, the sound at any point in the room is a combination of direct sound from the source plus reflected sound from walls and other obstructions. If the reflections are so large that the sound level becomes uniform throughout the room, the acoustic field within the room is termed a *diffuse* one (no shadows), and intensity measurements with respect to a specific source are meaningless. Of course, if it is our intention to measure sound pressure level at a specific point, such as a seat in an auditorium, the type of acoustic field in the room is irrelevant.

Most indoor spaces do not have such a high level of reflection that a diffuse field is created. Instead, there is a *near field* near the source, a *free field* beyond the near field, and a *reverberant field* near the walls (Fig. 18.7). These can be recognized as follows:

1. The *near field* is generally within one wavelength of the lowest frequency of sound produced by the source. Within this distance, sound pressure level measurements vary widely and are not meaningful. (The maximum wavelength for the human male voice is about 11 ft [3.4 m].)
2. Close to large obstructions such as walls, the *reverberant field* is dominant and approaches a diffuse condition. In well-designed music auditoriums, the reverberant (diffuse) field predominates and the sound pressure level remains relatively constant beyond the free field area.
3. The *free* (far) *field* exists between the near and reverberant fields, and there intensity varies directly with pressure and inversely with distance squared. In this field, sound pressure level drops 6 dB with each doubling of distance from the source, and it is in this field that meaningful sound pressure level measurements can be made with respect to a specific small source.

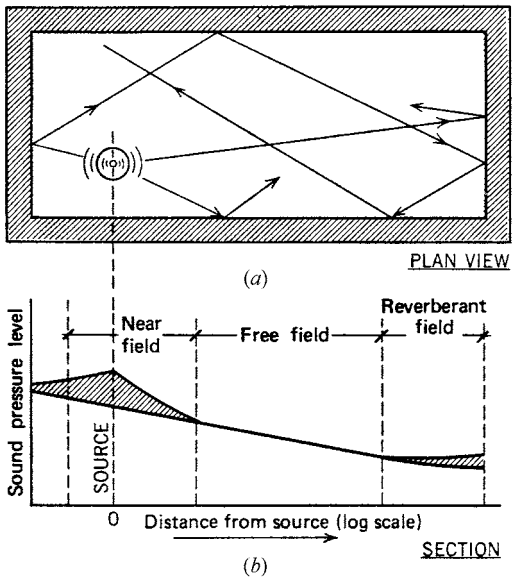


Fig. 18.7 *The type of sound field in an enclosed space depends largely on reflections (reverberation) and absorption. In a typical room there is a near field adjacent to the sound, a free field beyond that, and a reverberant field adjacent to the walls. In a large hall or auditorium, the reverberant field dominates, and the sound pressure level remains approximately constant.*

18.8 SOUND POWER LEVEL AND SOUND PRESSURE LEVEL

Sound *power level* (PWL) is a measure of the amount of sound generated by a source, independent of its environment. Sound *pressure level* (SPL) can be thought of as the noise or sound in an enclosed space resulting from a source in that space, as affected by the characteristics of the space and the position of the listener. It is thus an end effect.

Since it is desirable to be able to predict the SPL in a space during the design stage, *before* construction, and also because of the difficulty of SPL measurement *after* construction in rooms with various types of sound fields (as explained in Section 18.7), it is useful to have equations and/or a graphic means of relating PWL to SPL. PWL data are supplied by manufacturers of equipment referenced to either octave or one-third octave bands. In free space, SPL and PWL are simply related by the inverse square law, whereas in enclosed spaces the room characteristics come into play. Roughly speaking, an analogy to lighting can be drawn: SPL corresponds to illuminance (that is, footcandles or lux), and PWL corresponds to the lumen output of the source causing the illuminance.

The basic relationship between SPL and PWL for a single small source in a room large enough to have both free and reverberant fields is:

I-P units:

$$SPL = PWL + 10 \log \left(\frac{Q}{4\pi r^2} + \frac{4}{R} \right) + 10.5 \qquad (18.5)$$

SI units:

$$SPL = PWL + 10 \log \left(\frac{Q}{4\pi r^2} + \frac{4}{R} \right) + 0.2 \qquad (18.6)$$

where

Q = a directivity constant

SPL = sound pressure level, dB

PWL = sound power level, dB

r = distance from source, ft (m)

R = room factor, ft^2 (m^2)

The factor R can be calculated from

$$R = \frac{\Sigma S\, \bar{\alpha}}{1 - \bar{\alpha}}$$

where

ΣS = total room surface area, ft^2 (m$_2$)

$\bar{\alpha}$ = average absorption coefficient of all materials in the room

that is,

$$\bar{\alpha} = \frac{\Sigma A(\text{total room absorption})}{\Sigma S(\text{total room surface area})} \qquad (18.7)$$

or

$$\bar{\alpha} = \frac{S_1\alpha_1 + S_2\alpha_2 + \cdots + S_n\alpha_n}{S_1 + S_2 + \cdots + S_n} \qquad (18.8)$$

The directivity constant Q is either inherent in the sound source, and as such will be part of the given data, or can be obtained from Fig. 18.8 for a nondirectional source made directional by adjacent reflecting surfaces.

Thus, for a source suspended or supported at least ½ wavelength (at its lowest frequency) from a ceiling or floor, $Q = 1$; a source near a floor and distant from the walls uses $Q = 2$; and so on. In a space containing more than one sound source, the SPLs can be combined as explained in Section 17.5. In the two extreme cases (i.e., rooms with only far [direct] fields and rooms with only reverberant [diffuse] fields, corresponding to dead and live rooms, respectively) for a nondirectional source located on the floor and away from walls ($Q = 2$), Equations 18.5 and 18.6 reduce to:

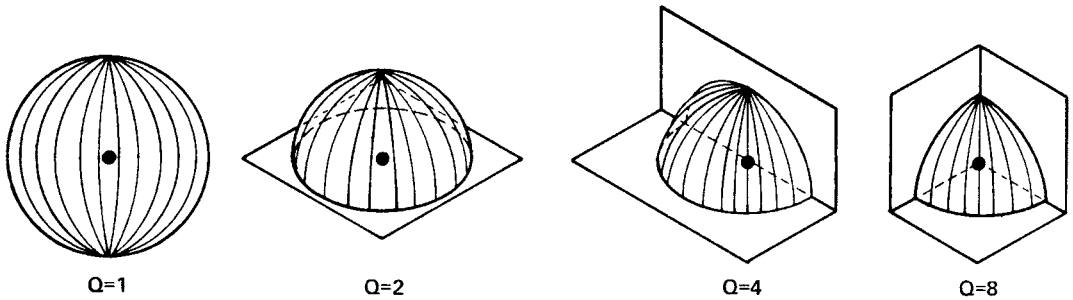


Fig. 18.8 *Diagrams illustrating directivity factors for either inherently directive sources or nondirective sources placed adjacent to large reflecting surfaces. (Courtesy of Barry Blower Co.)*

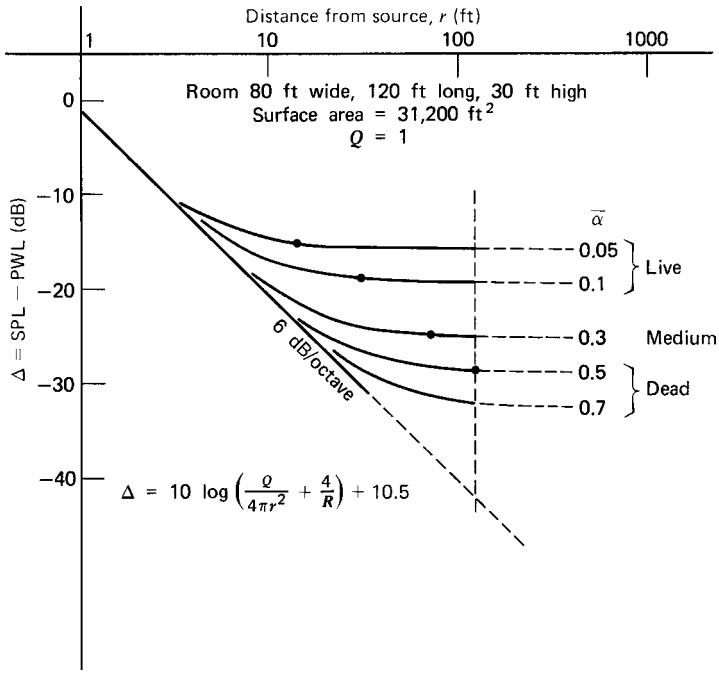


Fig. 18.9 *Calculated curves show that the development of a reverberant field (constant SPL, or flat curve) is dependent upon a room's absorption characteristics. On each curve, the point at which a reverberant field begins is indicated by a dot on the curve. In a live room ($\alpha = 0.1$), the reverberant field begins 20 ft (6.1 m) from the source. In a dead room ($\alpha = 0.5$), it begins 120 ft (36 m) from the source, that is, at the back wall. Effectively, then, there is no reverberant field in such a room (or in any room with $\alpha = 0.5$). The slope of the asymptote is 6 dB per octave, that is, inverse square attenuation.*

Dead room, direct field:

I-P units:

$$SPL = PWL - 20 \log r + (Q - 0.6)$$
$$= PWL - 20 \log r + 1.4 \qquad (18.9)$$

SI units:

$$SPL = PWL - 20 \log r + (Q - 10.9)$$
$$= PWL - 20 \log r - 8.9 \qquad (18.10)$$

Live room, diffuse-reverberant field:

I-P units:

$$SPL = PWL - 10 \log \sum A + 16.3 \qquad (18.11)$$

SI units:

$$SPL = PWL - 10 \log \sum A + 6.0 \qquad (18.12)$$

To understand the effect of room absorption on the development of the reverberant field in a large space, refer to Fig. 18.9. The field is plotted from Equation 18.5, for a room 80 ft × 120 ft × 30 ft high (24.4 × 36.6 × 9.1 m), using average absorptions ($\bar{\alpha}$) ranging from 0.05 to 0.7, that is, from very live to very dead. Note particularly that the addition of sufficient absorbent material can, by drastically reducing sound reflections from room surfaces, entirely prevent the development of a reverberant (diffuse) field. This is particularly important in noisy industrial interiors where the building materials commonly employed are generally nonabsorbent, and the noise sources are both numerous and loud. An example of the use of absorptive material to effect a considerable degree of in-room noise reduction is demonstrated in the next section. We emphasize that the effect is almost exclusively in the room where the absorptive material is used, since the acoustic energy transmitted to adjacent spaces is only minimally affected. Sound transmission from one enclosed space to an adjoining space through a common barrier depends almost entirely upon the type of barrier. This is discussed in detail in Chapter 19.

18.9 NOISE REDUCTION BY ABSORPTION

Equation 18.6 relates SPL and PWL as a function of distance from the source and room absorption. The following example shows the application of this equation and the result of adding absorption to the space.

EXAMPLE 18.1 An open blower is installed on the floor, away from the walls, in a large enclosed space that is 6 m (20 ft) long, 12 m (39 ft) wide, and 4 m

(13 ft) high. The floor is concrete ($\alpha = 0.01$); the walls and ceiling are painted block ($\alpha = 0.07$). The PWLs supplied by the manufacturer are 90 dB at 500 Hz and 87 dB at 2000 Hz. Calculate the SPL at distances of 5 m and 10 m (16.4 and 32.8 ft) from the blower outlet: (a) in the original room; (b) with double the absorption; and (c) with quadruple the absorption.

SOLUTION

1. From Equation 18.6, we have the expression

$$SPL = PWL + 10 \log_{10}\left(\frac{Q}{4\pi r^2} + \frac{4}{R}\right) + 0.2$$

In our example, $Q = 2$ (see Fig. 18.8).

2. The first step is to calculate the room factor R for the three situations (a, b, and c) of absorption.

$$R = \frac{S\bar{\alpha}}{1 - \bar{\alpha}}$$

$S = 2(48) + 2(24) + 2(72) = 288\ m^2\ [3100\ ft^2]$

From Equation 18.8:

$$\bar{\alpha}\ \text{original} = \frac{3(48)\,(0.07) + 1(72)\,(0.07) + (72)\,(0.01)}{288}$$

$$= 0.055$$

$\bar{\alpha}_a = 0.055$ $\quad R_a = 16.76$
$\bar{\alpha}_b = 2(0.055) = 0.11$ $\quad R_b = 35.6$
$\bar{\alpha}_c = 4(0.055) = 0.22$ $\quad R_c = 81.23$

3. Calculating SPL values and tabulating, we obtain

	500 Hz		2000 Hz	
SPL for:	***5 m***	***10 m***	***5 m***	***10 m***
(a) Original room	84.1	84.0	81.1	81.0
(b) Double $\bar{\alpha}$	81.0	80.8	78.0	77.8
(c) Quadruple $\bar{\alpha}$	77.7	77.3	74.7	74.3

The results indicate the very important fact that *doubling the absorption decreases the noise level by only 3 dB*. Therefore, it requires a quadrupling of absorption to make the decrease noticeable (see Table 17.3). This is obviously an expensive procedure with diminishing returns.

If the entire space is considered to be a reverberant field, then from Equation 18.11 the sound intensity level (IL) can be expressed as follows:

$$IL = PWL - 10 \log \Sigma A + 16.3\ \text{dB} \qquad (18.13)$$

where

ΣA = total absorption in room, sabins (ft^2)
IL = intensity level, dB
PWL = sound power level, dB

Although increasing absorption decreases the sound/noise level, the level cannot be reduced below the free field level for that distance from the source because the free field situation corresponds to outdoors, where $\bar{\alpha} = 1.0$.

The amount of noise reduction provided by additional absorption may be determined by noise reduction (NR):

$$NR = IL_1 - IL_2$$
$$= 10 \log \Sigma A_2 - 10 \log \Sigma A_1$$

Therefore,

$$NR = 10 \log \frac{\Sigma A_2}{\Sigma A_1} \qquad (18.14)$$

where

NR = noise reduction, dB
ΣA_2 = total absorption, final condition
ΣA_1 = total absorption, initial condition

From Equation 18.14 it is seen that doubling the absorption results in a noise reduction of 3 dB, since $10 \log_{10} 2 = 3$ (dB). ■

It is of interest to work out a practical example using Equations 18.13 and 18.14 and compare the results with the more precise relation given in Equation 18.5.

EXAMPLE 18.2 Referring to Fig. 18.10, calculate the original sound level and the subsequent noise reduction by three steps of sound absorption treatment, assuming a completely reverberant field in the space, that is, SPL independent of location. Data:

Original condition: Painted concrete block chamber,

$10 \times 10 \times 10$ ft (approximately $3 \times 3 \times 3$ m)

Fan sound power level:

At 500 Hz = 88 dB
At 2000 Hz = 78 dB

SOLUTION

Frequency (Hz)	Area (ft^2)	α	Total Absorption ($\Sigma S\alpha$)
500	600	0.06	36 sabins (ft^2)
2000	600	0.09	54 sabins (ft^2)

a. *Sound Intensity Level before Treatment*

At 500 Hz:

$$IL = \text{sound power level} - 10 \log \sum A + 16.3 \text{ dB}$$
$$= 88 \text{ dB} - 10 \log 36 + 16.3 \text{ dB}$$
$$= 88 \text{ dB} - 15.6 \text{ dB} + 16.3 \text{ dB}$$
$$= 88.7 \text{ dB}$$

At 2000 Hz:

$$IL = 78 \text{ dB} - 10 \log 54 + 16.3 \text{ dB}$$
$$= 78 \text{ dB} - 17.3 \text{ dB} + 16.3 \text{ dB}$$
$$= 77 \text{ dB}$$

b. *Ceiling Treatment Only*

At 500 Hz:

$$\alpha = 0.82$$
$$\text{additional absorption} = 100 (0.82 - 0.06)$$
$$= 76 \text{ sabins}$$
$$NR = 10 \log \frac{76+36}{36}$$
$$= 4.9 \text{ dB}$$

At 2000 Hz:

$$\alpha = 0.94$$
$$\Delta A = 100 (0.94 - 0.09) = 85$$
$$NR = 10 \log \frac{85+54}{54}$$
$$= 4.1 \text{ dB}$$

c. *Ceiling and Half-Wall Treatment*

At 500 Hz:

$$\text{added absorption} = 300 (0.82 - 0.06)$$
$$= 228 \text{ sabins}$$
$$NR = 10 \log \frac{228+36}{36}$$
$$= 8.7 \text{ dB}$$

At 2000 Hz:

$$\text{added absorption} = 300 (0.94 - 0.09)$$
$$= 255 \text{ sabins}$$
$$NR = 10 \log \frac{255+54}{54}$$
$$= 7.5 \text{ dB}$$

d. *Ceiling and Full-Wall Treatment*

At 500 Hz:

$$\Delta A = 500 (0.82 - 0.06)$$
$$= 380 \text{ sabins}$$
$$NR = 10 \log \frac{380+36}{36}$$
$$= 10.6 \text{ dB}$$

At 2000 Hz:

$$\Delta A = 500 (0.94 - 0.09)$$
$$= 425 \text{ sabins}$$
$$NR = 10 \log \frac{425+54}{54}$$
$$= 9.5 \text{ dB}$$

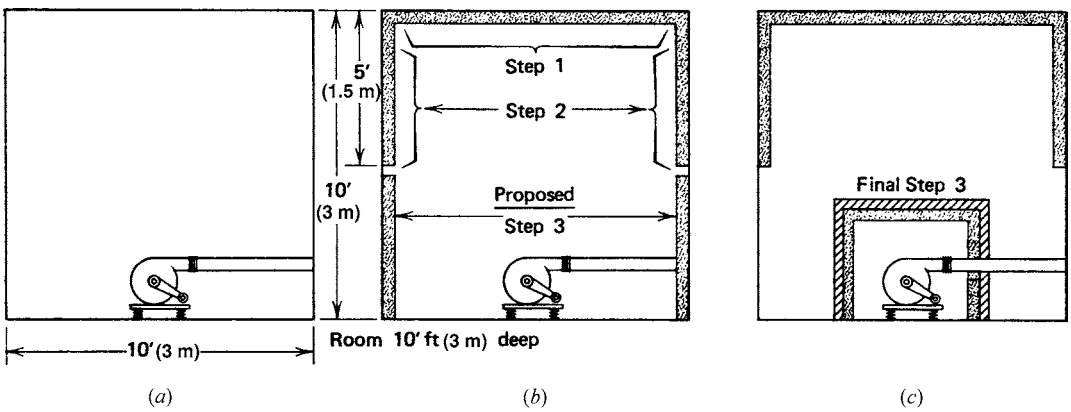


Fig. 18.10 *Quieting a room (a) by addition of absorptive material is cost-effective only through Step 2 (b). Further quieting would be accomplished locally (c), which might obviate the necessity for wall treatment (Step 2). Ceiling treatment should remain.*

Summary

	IL (SPL)[a]	
	500 Hz	2000 Hz
Bare room	88.7	77
Ceiling treatment	−4.9 dB	−4.1 dB
	(−4.9)[a]	(−4.2)[a]
Half-wall treatment	−8.7 dB	−7.5 dB
	(−8.7)[a]	(−7.7)[a]
Full-wall treatment	−10.6 dB	−9.5 dB
	(−10.7)[a]	(−9.6)[a]

[a] The numbers in parentheses are the SPL differences as calculated from Equation 18.5 using $Q = 2$ and $r = 5$ ft (1.5 m).

Two important conclusions can be drawn from these results:

1. The third step of adding absorptive material is not worthwhile since negligible additional room quieting is accomplished. This clearly demonstrates the law of diminishing returns as applied to room quieting with absorptive materials. Starting with a live room, the initial application is effective. Beyond that, additional quieting by absorption is not economical, and the same outlay would be better used in quieting the machine itself, probably with a machine enclosure, as indicated in Fig. 18.10.

2. If we compare the figures in parentheses that resulted from a full calculation (Equation 18.5) to those arrived at using the much simpler equations applicable only to a fully diffuse field (Equation 18.11), we see that the differences are negligible. This means that the shortcut method can always be used in preliminary calculations and frequently for final results as well. The diffuse (reverberant) field calculation also lends itself nicely to a graphical solution.

Using the diffuse field Equation 18.11:

$$SPL = PWL - 10 \log \sum A + 16.3$$

and remembering that reverberation time is expressed in terms of total absorption and room volume, that is,

$$T_R = \frac{KV}{\sum A} \qquad (18.15)$$

where K is 0.05 when room volume is in cubic feet and 0.16 when it is in cubic meters. Using these equations, we can then rewrite Equations 18.11 and 18.12 in terms of reverberation time and room volume:

For room volume in ft^3:

$$SPL - PWL = -10 \log \frac{0.05V}{T_R} + 16.3 \qquad (18.16)$$

For room volume in m^3:

$$SPL - PWL = -10 \log \frac{0.16V}{T_R} + 6.0 \qquad (18.17)$$

These two equations are plotted graphically in Figs. 18.11 and 18.12. The charts are accurate for live room, diffuse (reverberant) fields and provide a close approximation for other situations. An illustrative example will demonstrate use of the charts. ■

EXAMPLE 18.3 A generator in a 14,000-ft^3 (396-m^3) room has a PWL of 95 dB (re: 10^{-12} W) at 400 Hz.

a. Using the chart in Fig. 18.11, find the SPL at that frequency. Assume that the sound field in the room is reverberant. The room's reverberation time is 1.0 s at 400 Hz.

b. Check the result using the chart in Fig. 18.12.

SOLUTION

a. I-P units: Enter the chart in Fig. 18.11 at 14,000 ft^3 and draw a vertical line until it intersects the 1.0-s sloping line. Extend a line from that intersection point to the X-axis and read −12 dB.

Then, since

$$SPL - PWL = -12 \text{ dB}$$

and PWL is given as 95 dB,

$$SPL = 95 - 12 = 83 \text{ dB}$$

b. SI units: The 14,000-ft^3 room volume is equal to 400 m^3, within engineering accuracy (it is actually 396 m^3). Enter the chart in Fig. 18.12 at 400 m^3, and extend a line upward to T_R of 1 s and left to the X-scale. Read −12 dB. The two answers check, as they should. ■

18.10 NOISE REDUCTION COEFFICIENT

The last column in Table 18.1 is labeled NRC—noise reduction coefficient. This figure is the arithmetic average of the absorption coefficients at 250, 500, 1000, and 2000 Hz. The name is ill chosen inasmuch as it cannot be used directly for noise control efforts, as the words seem to imply. It is simply useful as a single-number indicator of the midband effectiveness of a porous absorber. For critical acoustical

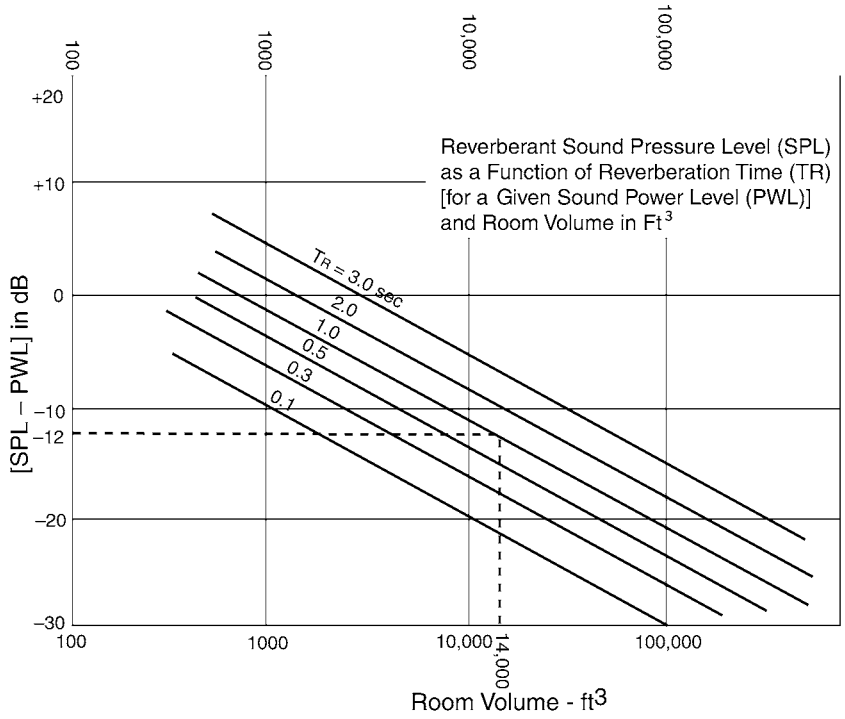


Fig. 18.11 *I-P chart for determining the reverberant sound pressure level (SPL) when the sound power level (PWL) of an item of equipment is known. Room volume in cubic feet and reverberation time in seconds are the variables.*

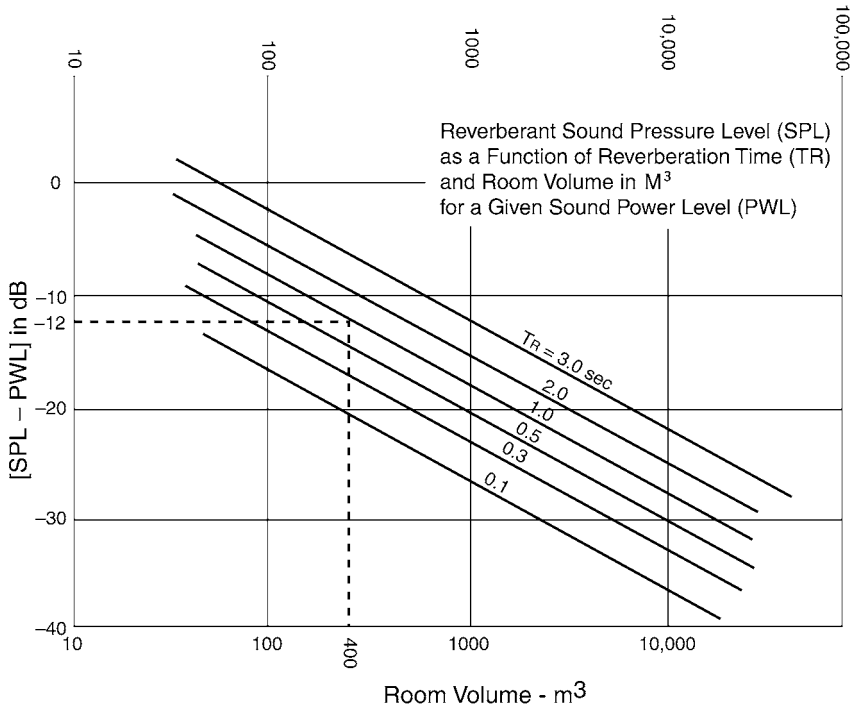


Fig. 18.12 *SI chart for determining the reverberant sound pressure level (SPL) when the sound power level (PWL) of an item of equipment is known. Room volume in cubic meters and reverberation time in seconds are the variables.*

situations, or if high- and low-end frequencies are of interest, NRC is nearly useless, and detailed analysis of absorption over the entire frequency range must be made. Two materials with the same NRC can perform quite differently, since NRC is an average, and few materials have a flat absorption characteristic. Losing sight of such a difference by reliance upon NRC is not a good move. Even more importantly, sound absorption is not the same as noise reduction. An acoustical ceiling tile, which exhibits high sound absorption, is a poor noise control barrier.

ROOM DESIGN

18.11 REVERBERATION CRITERIA FOR SPEECH ROOMS

The overriding criterion for speech is intelligibility. Since speech consists of short, disconnected sounds 30 to 300 ms in length (see Section 17.4), among which are high-frequency, low-energy phonemes, the ideal room must ensure the ear's undistorted reception of these phonemes. This requires keeping reverberation to a minimum. We can obtain a good approximation of the subjective feeling of liveness of a room, for purposes of speech, from the relation

$$T_R\,(\text{speech}) = 0.3 \log \frac{V}{10} \qquad (18.18)$$

where

T_R (speech) = optimum reverberation time in seconds, for speech

V = room volume, m^3

For instance, a typical classroom might have a volume of 150 m^3 (5300 ft^3). Optimum reverberation time is

$$T_R = 0.3 \log 15 = 0.35 \text{ s}$$

Reverberation times longer than this would sound live, shorter ones dead and flat. Indeed, an increase of 20% in reverberation time would make the room excessively live and boomy and would negatively affect speech intelligibility. Figure 18.13 gives *optimum* midfrequency reverberation times as a

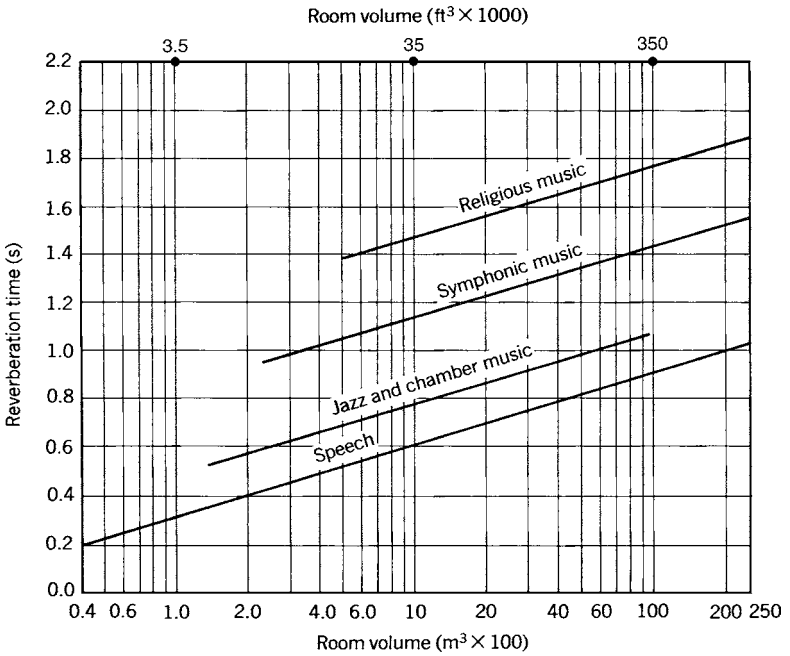


Fig. 18.13 *Optimum reverberation times for the frequency range 500 to 1000 Hz as a function of room volume. (The cubic foot volume figures are based upon the approximate conversion factor of 35 ft^3/m^3). (Reprinted by permission from E. B. Magrab. 1975.* Environmental Noise Control. *Wiley, New York. p. 206.)*

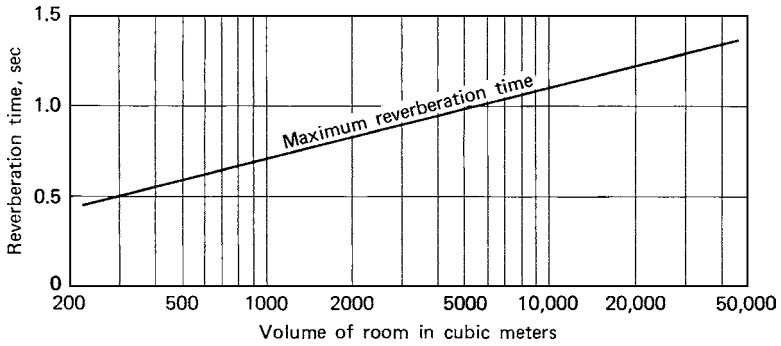


Fig. 18.14 *Maximum recommended reverberation time for speech in auditoriums and lecture halls. (From P. V. Brüel. 1951.* Sound Insulation and Room Acoustics. *Chapman & Hall, London.)*

function of room size and use. Figure 18.14 gives maximum reverberation times for speech in large rooms. For good speech intelligibility, reverberation time should remain essentially flat down to 100 Hz.

The reflected sounds associated with reverberation can have either a salutary or a deleterious effect. The ear cannot distinguish between sounds that arrive within a maximum of 50 ms (1/20 s) of each other (some authorities use 40 ms, i.e., 1/25 s). Sounds arriving within this time *reinforce* the direct-path signal and appear to come from the source. Sounds arriving after this time are apprehended as a fuzzy echo or elongation of the sound, reducing intelligibility and directivity.

Since the range of 40 to 50 ms corresponds at 1128 fps (344 m/s) to 45 to 56 ft (13.7 to 17.2 m), a speech room should be so arranged that the difference between the first reflection path and the direct path is no greater than 56 ft (around 17 m), and preferably 46 ft (14 m) or less at midfrequency (Fig. 18.15). For more details concerning this and related factors on reflected paths, refer to Section 18.13.

Too *low* a reverberation time (very high absorption, minimum reflection) is also undesirable because:

1. It limits the size of the room to that which can be covered by direct sound only.
2. It is disturbing to the speaker, since absence of reflection prevents him or her from gauging the proper voice level and tends to cause excessive effort (shouting, as when outdoors).

Thus, proper design of a room for speech is a compromise between the need for some reflection and the desire to minimize reflection to preserve intelligibility.

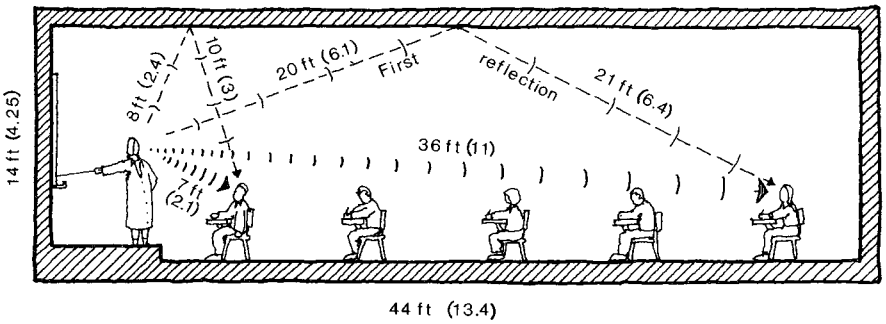


Fig. 18.15 *Sound paths in a typical medium-sized lecture room. Note that for both extremes of listener position, the maximum path-length difference between direct and first reflection is 11 ft (3.4 m). Thus signal is reinforced, and intelligibility should be excellent if room absorption is provided to limit reverberation time to about ½ second maximum (see Fig. 18.14). Numbers in parentheses are dimensions in meters.*

18.12 CRITERIA FOR MUSIC PERFORMANCE

Adequate design for a music space requires recognition of the following:

1. Large-volume spaces require direct-path sound reinforcement by reflection.

2. Relatively long reverberation time is needed to enhance the music—the exact amount depending upon the type of music (Figs. 18.13 and 18.16). Designers should keep in mind that reverberation time recommendations vary as much as 100% among respected sources.

3. It is generally agreed that reverberation time should vary inversely with frequency (i.e., T_R should be longer at lower frequencies [than the midfrequency recommendation] and shorter at higher frequencies). The longer T_R at low frequencies adds fullness to music and "body" to speech. Thus, T_R at 100 Hz should be, according to most researchers, 35% to 75% longer than T_R at the center frequencies.

4. Short T_R at upper frequencies adds directivity to the music. With large ensembles, directivity gives the sense of depth and instrument location necessary for proper appreciation. This is often referred to as *clarity* or *definition* in music. With a solo instrument, this problem is diminished.

5. Brilliance of tone is primarily a function of high-frequency content. Since these frequencies are most readily absorbed, a good direct path must exist between sound source and listener. Since our eyes and ears are close together, a good sound path exists when a good vision path exists. At the other end of the spectrum, lack of sufficient bass expresses itself as a loss of "fullness," which is often caused by resonant absorption.

The actual design of a music performance space is a very complex procedure involving extensive calculations of absorption, reverberation

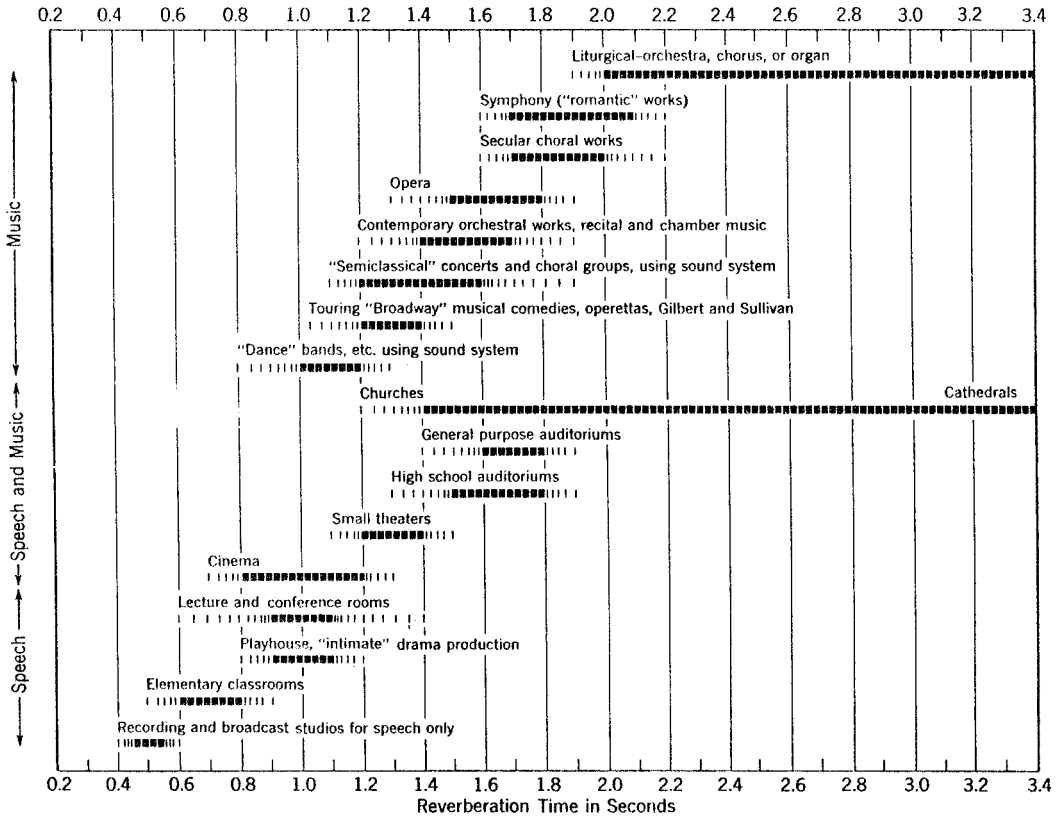


Fig. 18.16 *Optimum reverberation times at midfrequencies (500–1000 Hz) for various types of facilities. The wide range shown reflects the effects of room proportions, shape, and volume on the optimum T_R, as well as differences of opinion among designers.*

time, and ray diagramming, as well as juggling of materials, dimensions, and wall angles. Simulation techniques and acoustic models are also often employed.

Recent research and simulation studies of concert and recital halls have demonstrated that the sensation of fullness of music, or what is today referred to as *sound envelopment*, is enhanced by lateral reflections that reinforce the direct signal. It has also been found that the subjective judgment of reverberance is more strongly affected by *early decay time* (the time required for a 10-dB decrease in signal strength) than by the conventional 60-dB decay time. Finally, crispness or clarity of the music (particularly important in recital halls and for chamber music) depends upon reflections arriving within 40 to 70 ms. All of these factors are considered both in the original design and in the often lengthy "tuning" process of a space intended for music performance. Most modern design solutions also use movable reflector panels and other active variables. After construction is completed, extensive tests are conducted and field adjustments are made.

18.13 SOUND PATHS

Ideally, every listener in a lecture hall, theater, or concert hall should hear the speaker or performer with the same degree of loudness and clarity. Since this is obviously impossible by direct-path sound, the essential design task is to devise methods for reinforcing desirable reflections and minimizing and controlling undesirable ones. Normally only the first reflection is considered in ray diagramming (discussed in the next section) since it is strongest. Second and subsequent reflections are usually

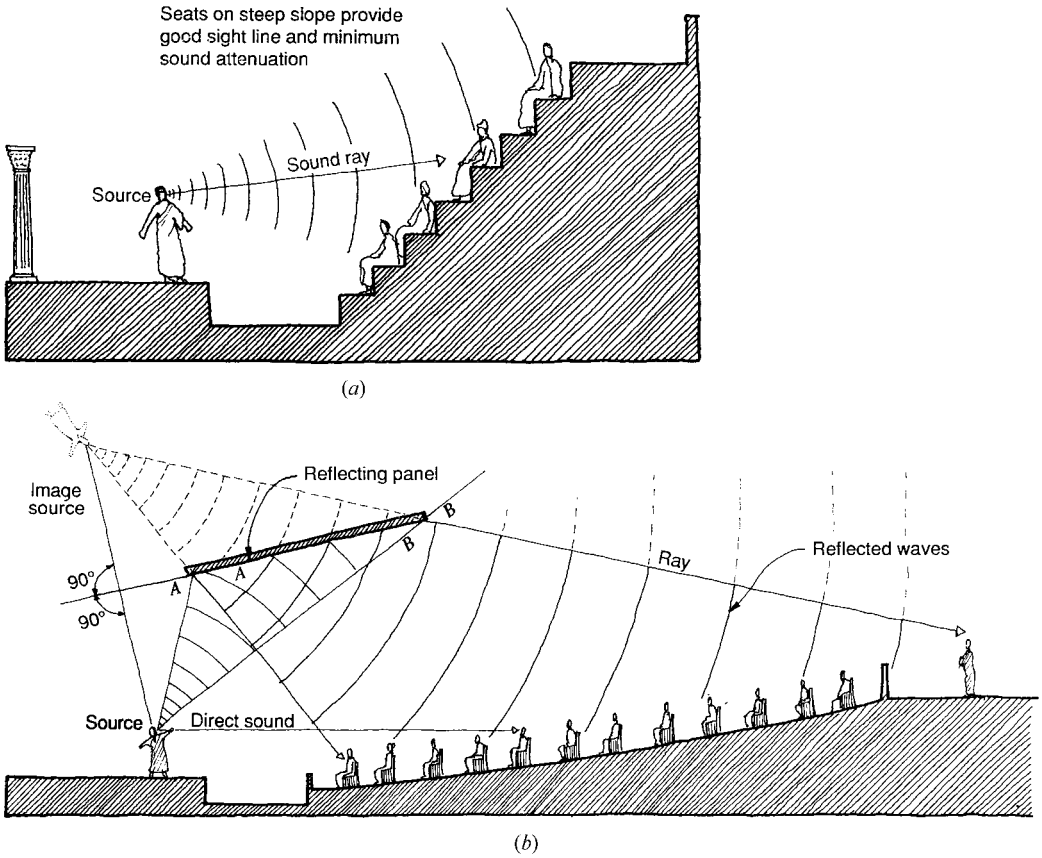


Fig. 18.17 *Use of an angled reflector panel (b) creates an image source that stands in approximately the same relation to the audience as does the performer in the classic Greek theater (a).*

attenuated to the point that they need not be considered except for the special situations of flutter, echoes, and standing waves, discussed in the following sections.

(a) Specular Reflection

Specular reflection occurs when sound reflects off a hard, polished surface. This characteristic can be used to good advantage to create an effective image source. In ancient Greek and Roman theaters, seats were arranged on a steep conical surface around the performers. The virtue of this arrangement (Fig. 18.17*a*) is that the sound energy travels to each location with minimal attenuation. The same effect can be accomplished by placing the sound source above the seats. This is not practical physically, but it can be accomplished effectively by the use of a reflecting panel (Fig. 18.17*b*). The panel dimension must be at least one wavelength at the lowest frequency under consideration. Figure 18.18 is a chart for converting from frequency to wavelength in feet and meters.

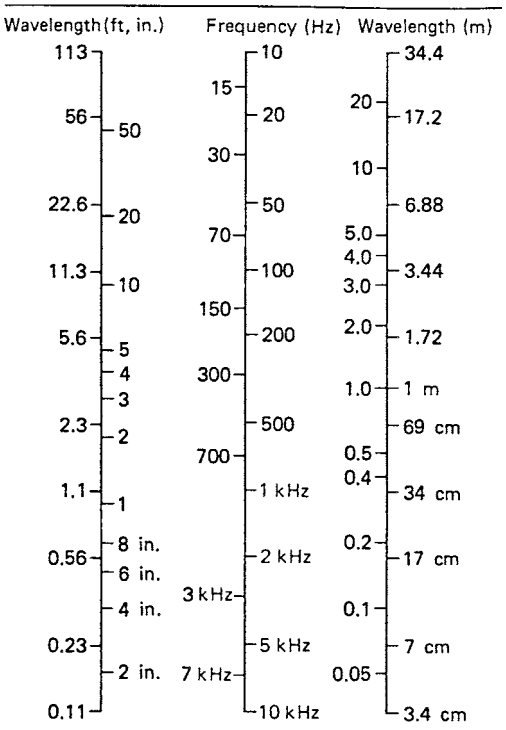


Fig. 18.18 *Nomograph for determining wavelength in feet or meters, given frequency in hertz, or vice versa. Speed of sound is taken as 1128 ft/s (344 m/s). To use it, hold a straightedge horizontally across the nomograph and read the figures directly.*

(b) Echoes

As explained in Section 18.11, a clear echo is caused when reflected sound *at sufficient intensity* reaches a listener more than 50 ms after he or she has heard the direct sound. (Some authorities place this figure as high as 80 ms.) Echoes, even if not distinctly discernible, are undesirable. They make speech less intelligible and make music sound "mushy." The relative undesirability depends upon the time delay and loudness relative to the direct sound, which, in turn, are dependent upon the size, position, shape, and absorption of the reflecting surface.

Typical echo-producing surfaces in an auditorium are the back wall and the ceiling above the proscenium. Figure 18.19 shows these problems and suggests remedies. Note that the energy that produced the echoes can be redirected to places where it becomes useful reinforcement. If echo control by absorption alone were used on the ceiling and back wall, that energy would be wasted. The rear wall, since its area cannot be reduced too far, may have to be made more sound-absorptive to reduce the loudness of the reflected sound.

(c) Flutter

A flutter, perceived as a buzzing or clicking sound, comprises repeated echoes traversing back and forth between two nonabsorbing parallel (flat or concave) surfaces. Flutters often occur between shallow domes and hard, flat floors. The remedy for a flutter is either to change the shape of the reflectors or their parallel relationship or to add absorption. The solution chosen will depend upon reverberation requirements, cost, and aesthetics.

(d) Diffusion

This is the converse of focusing and occurs primarily when sound is reflected from convex surfaces. A degree of diffusion is also provided by flat horizontal and inclined reflectors (Fig. 18.20). In a diffuse sound field, the sound level remains relatively constant throughout the space, an extremely desirable property for musical performances.

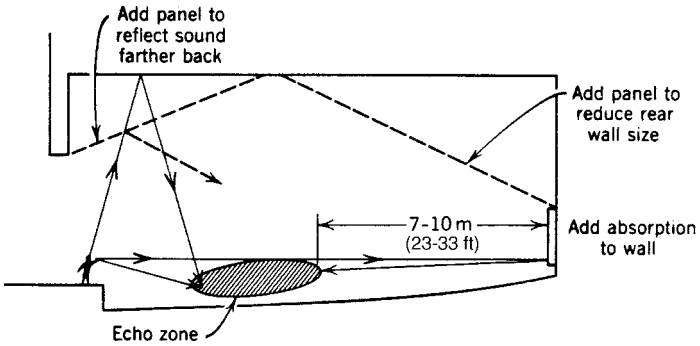


Fig. 18.19 *Auditorium section showing the causes and remedies for two typical echoes.*

(e) Focusing

Concave domes, vaults, or walls will focus reflected sound into certain areas of rooms. This has several disadvantages. For example, it will deprive some listeners of useful sound reflections and cause hot spots at other audience positions (Fig. 18.21*a*).

(f) Creep

This describes the reflection of sound along a curved surface from a source near the surface. Although the sound can be heard at points along the surface, it is inaudible away from the surface. Creep is illustrated in Fig. 18.21*b*.

(g) Standing Waves

Standing waves and flutter are very similar in principle and cause but are heard quite differently. When an impulse (such as a hand clap) is the energy source, a flutter will occur between two highly reflective parallel walls. It is perceived as a slowly decaying buzz. When a steady, pure tone is the source, a standing wave will occur, but only when the parallel walls are spaced apart at some integral multiple of a half-wavelength.

When parallel walls are exactly one-half wavelength apart, the tone will sound very loud near the walls and very quiet halfway between them. This is because at the center, the reflected waves traveling in one direction are exactly one-half wavelength away from those traveling in the other direction, and are thus equal *but opposite* in pressure, which results in total cancellation. In other rooms, standing waves are noted as points of quiet and loudness in the room. Standing waves are important only in rooms that are small with respect to the wavelengths generated (smallest room dimension <30 ft [< 9 m] for music or <15 ft [<4.5 m] for speech).

Another effect of standing waves, called *resonance*, is the accentuation of a particular frequency that will cause a standing wave. Thus, if one speaks (or plays a musical instrument) while standing near a wall of a room about 8 ft × 8 ft (2.4 m × 2.4 m) in size, one will notice an abnormal and sometimes unpleasant loudness in the sound at about 280 Hz.

Similarly, when a musician plays a scale, one note may seem far louder than the adjacent ones, and listeners in one section of the room will hear a

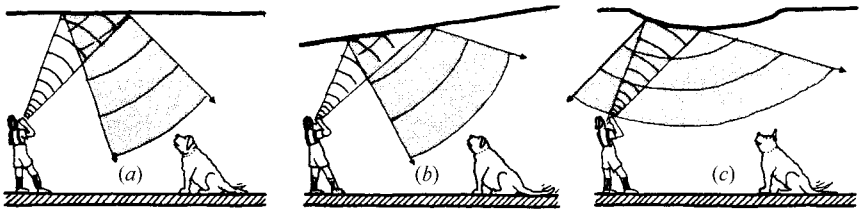


Fig. 18.20 *Sound diffusion can be created with reflectors of different shapes, including horizontal flat (a), inclined flat (b), and convex (c) reflectors. Diffusion improves from (a) to (c).*

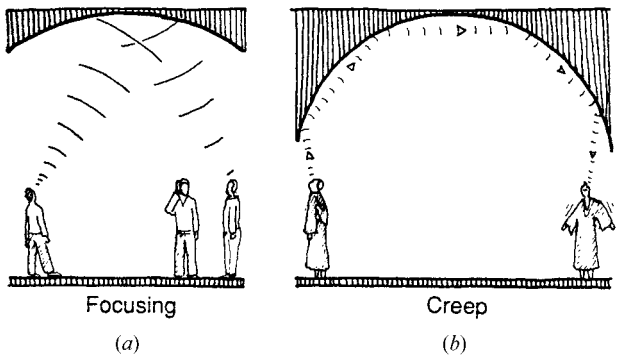


Fig. 18.21 *Two undesirable phenomena in room acoustics.*

quality of sound different from that heard by those in other sections. This effect *must* be avoided for music performance but is merely an annoyance in rooms designed for speech use. This is one of the reasons that one finds music rehearsal rooms, broadcast studios, and the like with nonparallel walls and undulating ceilings. These irregularities prevent most of the undesirable effects described above from occurring. However, since rooms with nonparallel walls and undulating ceilings are for most applications unacceptable, and since standing waves and other resonant phenomena are related to room geometry, it is possible to calculate room proportions with conventional geometries that will minimize these effects. Figure 18.22 shows such room proportions, which are applicable to bass frequencies (i.e., below 100 Hz). These are the problematic frequencies, since at higher frequencies (and in large rooms) many standing waves occur, and the total effect is much less disturbing and frequently hardly noticeable.

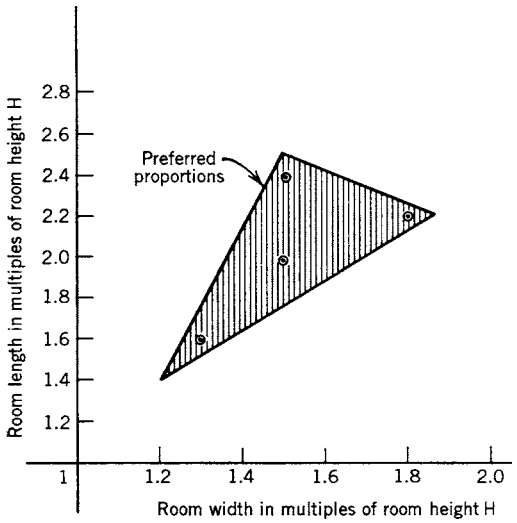


Fig. 18.22 *The triangular figure contains the room proportions recommended for avoidance of disturbing low-frequency acoustic phenomena such as flutter, standing waves, and resonances, particularly at frequencies below 100 Hz. The points shown at the three apexes were averaged to obtain the center point with a proportion of L = 2H; W = 1.5H; H = H.*

18.14 RAY DIAGRAMS

Ray diagramming is a design procedure for analyzing the reflected sound distribution throughout a hall using the first reflection only. Figure 18.23 shows a ray diagram. The rays are drawn normal (perpendicular) to the spherically propagating sound waves. Specular reflection is assumed—that is, at reflecting panels the angles of the incident and reflected rays are always equal. Thus, in addition to direct sound, each listener is receiving reflected sound energy. It is as though there were additional sound sources, the real one and numerous image sources. Figure 18.23 shows the application of a ray diagram to the design of a lecture hall. In Fig. 18.23*a*, the stage height and seating slope are arranged to provide good sight lines, and the ceiling height is established by reverberation requirements, aesthetics, cost, and so on. It can be seen that less than half of the ceiling is providing useful reflection. Dividing the ceiling into two panels (Fig. 18.23*b*) allows people in the rear of the room to perceive the direct source plus two image sources, and the useful reflecting area is increased by 50%. In Fig. 18.23*c*, the shape has been further refined to include a lighting slot and a loudspeaker grille.

As mentioned previously, the sensation of musical envelopment that is so satisfying to a listener, particularly when dealing with large groups playing symphonic music, is due in large measure

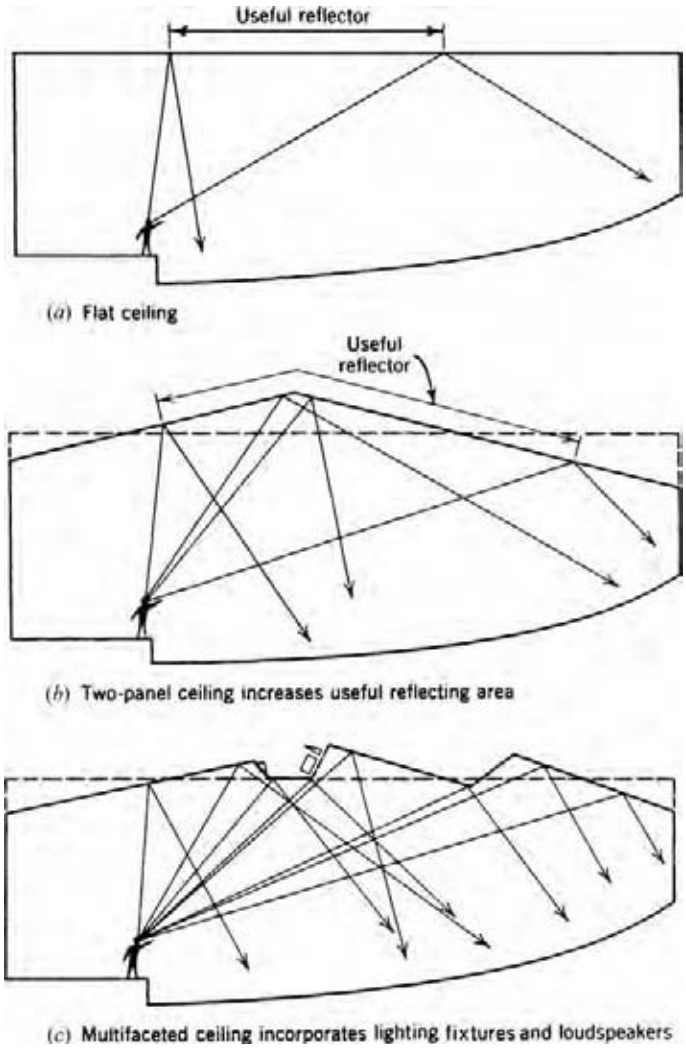


Fig. 18.23 *Section through a typical lecture room showing the use of ray diagrams.*

to reflections received from the side (lateral reflections). This being so, ray diagramming, which was originally performed on room *sections* to determine ceiling shapes and the proper placement of ceiling-hung reflector panels, is now done in *plan* as well. This is particularly important in fan-shaped auditoriums, where a canted wall does not provide useful lateral reflections. The solution to this problem is to build a sawtooth wall or to use reflector panels along the wall that will provide the desired lateral reflection. Nonhorizontal ceiling reflector panels can also provide a measure of lateral reflection, particularly in balconies.

Although they are a useful design tool, ray diagrams have certain restrictions. Design solutions always will require compromise between ray diagram results for various speaking positions on a stage. Thus, a paraboloid may be a perfect shape for one source position but a very poor shape for other positions.

18.15 AUDITORIUM DESIGN

Auditorium is a general term used to describe a space where people sit and listen to speech

or music. Acoustical design of an auditorium includes room acoustics, noise control, and sound system design. Noise control is covered in Chapter 19, and sound systems are discussed in Sections 18.16 through 18.18. If the program for the auditorium includes activities that require different acoustical environments (as is frequently the case), then it must be decided early whether the acoustics will be a compromise between the program extremes or adjustable for various activities. Acoustical environments can be altered by changing the space volume, moving reflecting surfaces, and adding or subtracting sound-absorbing treatment. Figure 18.24 illustrates several examples of acoustical adjustability.

Factors that influence acoustical design include audience size, range of performance activities, and sophistication of the potential audience. A small school auditorium and a professional theater will have widely divergent demands from both audiences and performers. The audience size determines the basic floor area of an auditorium, assuming no balconies. Once this area has been fixed, the volume of the room is developed according to reverberation requirements of the space.

Figure 18.25 shows a typical auditorium in plan and section. The shape of the wall and ceiling surfaces is developed to provide proper distribution of sound and eliminate focusing or echoes. Essential characteristics of the design include:

1. Ceiling and side walls at the front of the auditorium distribute sound to the audience. These surfaces must be close enough to the performers to minimize time delays between direct sound and reflected sound.
2. Ceiling and side walls provide diffusion.

Acoustics must be considered in the selection of materials used in an auditorium. All auditoriums use both sound-reflecting and sound-absorbing materials. Since the largest area of sound-absorbing material in any auditorium is the audience, the difference in acoustical characteristics that occurs without an audience may be minimized by using fully upholstered seating.

Chairs with fully upholstered seats and backs, covered in an open-weave material, will have absorption characteristics approximating those of an audience. Using the auditorium in Fig. 18.25 as an example, the reverberation characteristics of an auditorium with various materials may be examined—as shown in the following analysis. In one configuration, the room use is assumed to be for music performances. The only sound absorption is that provided by the audience and seating. In the second configuration, absorptive curtains are installed along the rear wall and a portion of the side wall. This configuration might be used for lectures in a room that is adjustable between speech and music configurations. A third configuration

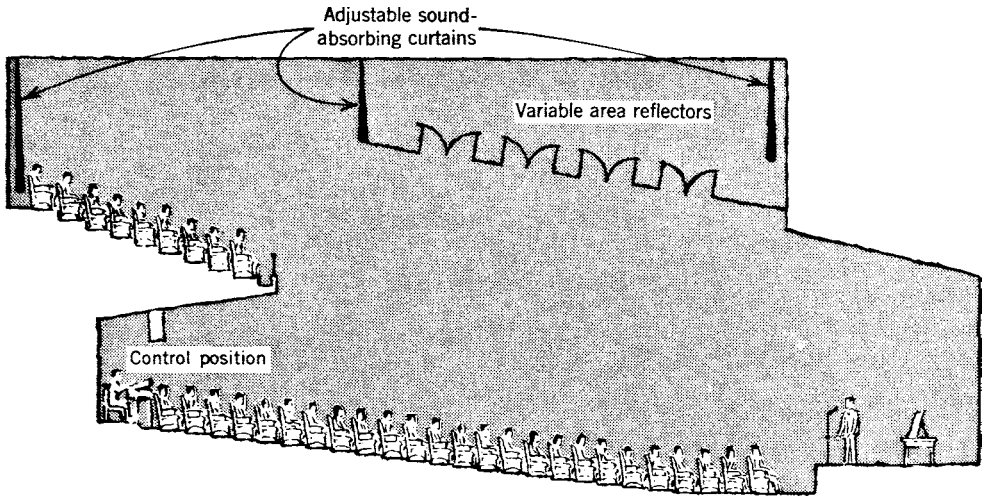


Fig. 18.24 *Adjustable acoustic elements in an auditorium.*

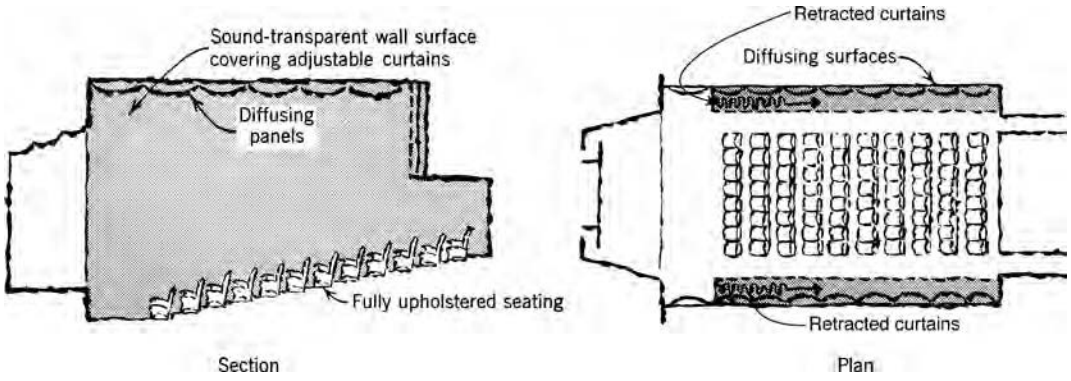


Fig. 18.25 *Auditorium analysis illustrating the use of surface treatments for control of reflections and reverberation.*

Simplified Calculations of Midfrequency (500 and 1000 Hz) Average Reverberation Time

$$\text{Reverberation time } (T_R) \text{ in seconds} = \frac{0.05 \times \text{volume in ft}^3}{\text{total absorption in sabins}}$$

$$\left[\text{Reverberation time } (T_R) \text{ in seconds} = \frac{0.16 \times \text{volume in m}^3}{\text{total absorption in sabins}}\right]$$

room volume = 155,500 ft^3 [4404 m^3]
area in ft^2 [m^2] absorption in ft^2 [m^2 sabins]

more reverberant condition (curtains retracted)				*less reverberant condition (curtains exposed)*			
	Area	***Alpha***	***Absorption***		***Area***	***Alpha***	***Absorption***
Seating and stage (with audience and performers)	3323 (309)	0.92	3060 (284)	Seating and stage (with audience and performers)	3323 (309)	0.92	3060 (284)
Wall area (concrete block)	8000 (743)	0.2	1600 (149)	Wall area (concrete block, balance covered by curtains)	3600 (334)	0.2	720 (67)
				Curtains	4400 (409)	0.45	1970 (184)
Lower rear wall (permanent sound-absorbing treatment)	450 (42)	0.88	396 (37)	Lower rear wall (permanent sound-absorbing treatment)	450 (42)	0.88	396 (37)
Total absorption			5056 (470)	Total absorption			6146 (572)
More reverberant condition			$\frac{0.05 \times 155{,}500}{5056}$ = 1.5 sec $\frac{[0.16 \times 4404]}{470}$ = 1.5 sec	Less reverberant condition			$\frac{0.05 \times 155{,}500}{6146}$ = 1.2 sec $\frac{[0.16 \times 4404]}{572}$ = 1.2 sec

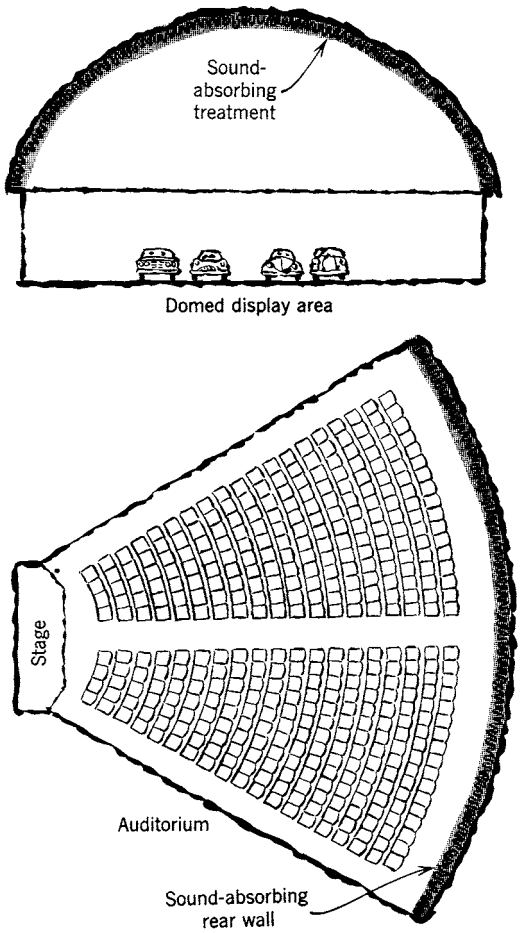


Fig. 18.26 *Sound-absorbing treatment used to eliminate focusing from the dome and the curved auditorium wall.*

might use permanent sound-absorbing treatment installed on the ceiling and rear and side walls. Because of its low reverberation time, this configuration would be appropriate only for movies and lectures, not for music activities.

These simple examples indicate the effect of changes in the amount of absorption on the characteristics of a room. Adjustable treatments permit the characteristics of the room to be modified to any point between the extremes to meet the acoustic program requirements of a multipurpose hall.

Existing spaces may require remedial treatment to eliminate unwanted phenomena such as focusing and echoes, as shown in Fig. 18.26. In the first example, the surface of the dome was covered with sound-absorbing material to eliminate focusing; in the second, sound-absorbing treatment was applied to a curved rear wall to eliminate an echo. Such treatment also will affect the reverberation characteristics.

SOUND REINFORCEMENT SYSTEMS

18.16 OBJECTIVES AND CRITERIA

The purpose of a sound reinforcement system is just what the name indicates—to reinforce the sound, which would otherwise be inadequate. Thus, an ideal sound system will give the listener the same loudness, quality, directivity, and intelligibility as if the source of sound were immediately adjacent—a distance of 2 to 3 ft (0.6 to 0.9 m) for speech and farther for music, depending upon the type and number of instruments. This situation must obtain for every position in the space within 63 dB. The other factors should remain constant. Of these factors, loudness and intelligibility have previously been discussed. By *quality* we mean that the frequency response should be linear so that reproduced sound bears the same relation between its frequency components as the original sound. (Quality is then field-adjusted by voicing or equalization, as discussed in Section 18.17.)

Directivity is the characteristic whereby the sound appears to be coming from the originating source, that is, the loudspeakers should be directionally "invisible," and the listener must have the impression of actually hearing the source. It should be emphasized that sound systems cannot correct a poor acoustic design completely, although they can improve a bad situation.

Generally, sound systems will be required in spaces larger than 50,000 ft^3 (≈1400 m^3). In terms of occupancy, this volume translates into 550 persons in lecture rooms (15-ft [4.6-m] average ceiling height and 6 ft^2 [0.6 m^2] per person) and 325 persons in theaters (20-ft [6.1-m] average ceiling height and 7.5 ft^2 [0.7 m^2] per person). In such a room (50,000 ft^3 [1400 m^3]) a normal speaking voice can maintain a volume level of only 55 to 60 dB, depending upon room design and voice strength. With background noise at NC 30 (see Table 19.8), a speaker will be heard; at higher noise levels, intelligibility will suffer.

18.17 COMPONENTS AND SPECIFICATIONS

All sound systems consist of three basic elements: input devices, amplifier(s), and loudspeaker systems.

(a) Input

Input usually means a microphone, a source of commercial broadcast material of various types, and means for reproducing recorded material in all common commercial formats. Connections to local computers and computer networks are available in sophisticated systems.

(b) Amplifier and Controls

Amplifiers must be rated to deliver sufficient power to produce intensity levels of 80 dB for speech, 95 dB for light music, and 105 dB for symphonic music. This assumes a *maximum* background noise level of 60 dBA. Thus, 80-dB speech intensity will be 20 dB higher—or four times as loud as the noise level. If the noise level is *known* to be below 60 dB maximum, amplifier and loudspeaker power ratings can be reduced accordingly. The amplifier should carry technical specifications for signal-to-noise ratio, linearity, and distortion. Exact values depend upon the application and are left to the acoustics specialist or sound engineer to supply.

In addition to the usual volume, tone mixing, and input-output selector controls, the amplifier *must* contain special equalization controls for signal shaping. These are highly critical filter networks that, by selective amplification and attenuation of portions of the overall audio frequency spectrum, *voice* or *equalize* a system after installation. Equalization is the sine qua non of a good sound system; without it, the system will howl, sound rough, give insufficient and poorly distributed gain and sound level, and generally produce bad sound. Essentially, voicing tailors the system to the acoustic properties of the space. A system not equipped for equalization is not a professional system, and results will verify it. Furthermore, the specification must provide for the services of a competent sound engineer to perform the equalization after construction and system installation are complete.

Another control frequently required in theater systems is a delay mechanism or circuit that can introduce a time delay into a signal being fed to a loudspeaker. Figure 18.27 shows a sound system that covers a majority of an auditorium from a central loudspeaker cluster. The under-balcony seating areas are hidden from the central cluster and receive reinforced sound from distributed loudspeakers in the under-balcony soffit. To provide directional realism, the signal to the under-balcony loudspeakers must be delayed to allow the weaker signal from the central speakers to arrive first. Delay is necessary because electrical signals travel at the speed of light, whereas sound is much slower (one-millionth of light speed, approximately). With this

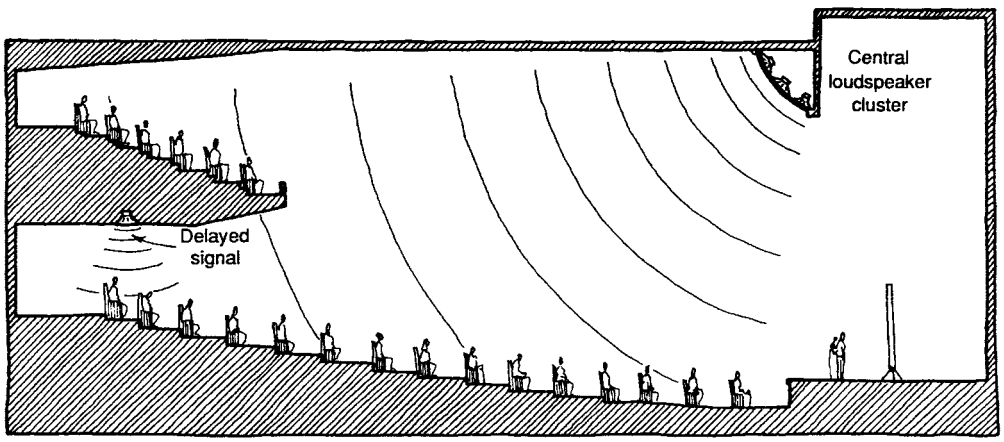


Fig. 18.27 *Loudspeaker system using a delayed signal to the under-balcony area.*

arrangement, sound will seem to come from the source, and the directivity so necessary to realism is maintained.

(c) Loudspeakers

These are the heart of any sound system and obviously must be of the same high quality as the remainder of the system. Indeed, system economies will show up much more quickly in loudspeaker performance than in any other component. Selection of speakers is a complex technical task beyond the scope of our discussion. Nevertheless, a few general remarks are in order. The best systems with traditional components use central-speaker arrays consisting of high-quality, sectional (multicell), directional, high-frequency horns and large-cone woofers. These assemblies are frequently very large, and the architect should be aware of the dimensions that must be accommodated. Smaller units with folded horns can be used, at a sacrifice in low-frequency response. If only speech is to be reproduced, these units will perform adequately. Distributed systems use small (4- to 12-in.-diameter [100- to 305-mm]) low-level speakers, ceiling-mounted and firing directly down.

Recent developments in loudspeaker design have produced units much smaller than those previously required for high-power, high-quality, low-frequency sound reproduction. Here again, the considerations are highly technical and speakers should be supplied under a performance specification that guarantees user satisfaction subject to specified test procedures.

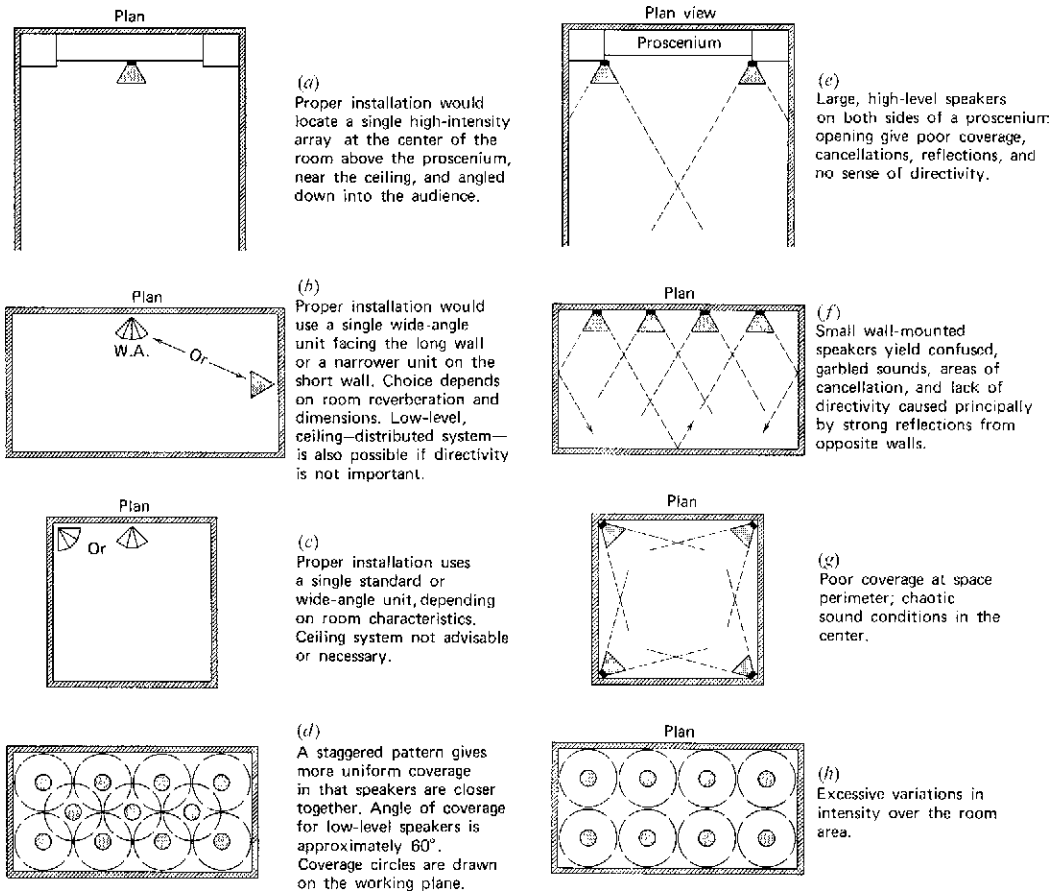


Fig. 18.28 *Good speaker layouts (a–d) and poor layouts (e–h). Wide-angle speakers are available to fit most needs. Ceiling speakers give effective coverage on a 60° cone. The working plane is taken to be 4 ft (1.2 m) above the finished floor (AFF) for seated audience and 6 ft (1.8 m) AFF for standing listeners.*

18.18 LOUDSPEAKER CONSIDERATIONS

Loudspeaker system design and placement must be coordinated with the architectural design. The two principal types of loudspeaker systems are central and distributed. The loudspeakers in a conventional central system are a carefully designed array of directional high-frequency units combined with less directional low-frequency units placed above and slightly in front of the primary speaking position. In most theaters, this location is just above the proscenium on the centerline of the room. Located in this position, the system provides directional realism and is simple in its design.

A distributed loudspeaker system consists of a series of low-level loudspeakers located overhead throughout the space. Each loudspeaker covers a small area, in a manner similar to downlights. This type of system is used in low-ceiling areas where a central loudspeaker cluster cannot provide proper coverage. It also can be used for public address functions if directional realism is not essential, in spaces such as exhibition areas, airline terminals, and offices. In public areas such as transportation terminals, where the absence of absorptive material makes such spaces highly reverberant, particular care must be taken in speaker positioning and volume levels. Failure to do so will result in the unfortunately very common condition of extremely loud yet unintelligible speech.

Distributed loudspeaker systems provide flexibility for use in spaces where source and listener locations vary according to the use of the space, since loudspeakers can easily be switched to provide proper coverage. In general, a listening position should receive sound from only one loudspeaker. Systems that cover seating areas with signals from several scattered loudspeakers will increase the loudness of the sound but tend to produce garbled speech. This rule is the principal reason that the arrangements shown in Fig. 18.28*e–h* will guarantee a bad job. The common practice of placing one loudspeaker on either side of a proscenium opening (Fig. 18.28*e*) or rows of speakers on one or both sides of a room (Fig. 18.28*f*) is particularly to be deplored.

Location and design of the sound system control position can create problems for the architect. The sound system operator must be within the coverage pattern of the loudspeakers. For proper operation, he or she should be able to hear the sound as it is heard by the audience. Some current auditorium designs locate sound system controls within the audience seating pattern (see Fig. 18.24). Other designs place a control room with a completely open wall or a large window at the rear of the auditorium. Monitor loudspeakers and earphones are inadequate substitutes for actual listening within the auditorium. In churches the control equipment can usually be located at the rear of the congregation area.

References and Resources

ASTM. 2000. Standard E795-00: *Standard Practices for Mounting Test Specimens During Sound Absorption Tests.* ASTM International. West Conshohocken, PA.

Bruel, P. V. 1951. *Sound Insulation and Room Acoustics.* Chapman and Hall. London.

Magrab, E. B. 1975. *Environmental Noise Control.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

CHAPTER 19

Building Noise Control

NOISE REDUCTION

NOISE CONTROL IN BUILDINGS INVOLVES three key concepts:

1. Reduction of noise generation at the source by proper selection and installation of equipment
2. Reduction of noise transmission from point to point (along the transmission path) by proper selection of construction materials and appropriate construction techniques
3. Reduction of noise at the receiver through acoustical treatment of the relevant spaces to meet the noise criteria developed in Chapter 17

Speech privacy is achieved by manipulation of all of the foregoing plus the use of masking noise where necessary.

Noise reduction is essentially the science of converting acoustical energy into another, less disturbing form of energy—heat. Since the amounts of energy involved are minute—130 dB corresponds to 1/1000 of a watt, or 0.003 Btu/h—the heat produced is completely negligible. This energy conversion is accomplished by absorption of sound energy by the room contents and wall coverings and also by the structure itself. The former controls noise levels *within* a space and the latter noise transmission between spaces. The reasons for this will become clear as our discussion proceeds.

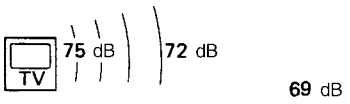
ABSORPTION

19.1 THE ROLE OF ABSORPTION

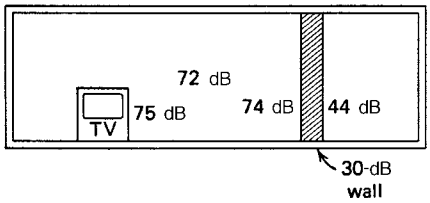
Absorptive noise control treatment of a room will affect the reverberant noise level *within* that room but will have a minimal effect on the noise level in adjoining spaces. Refer to Fig. 19.1 for a graphic presentation of this fundamental fact. The best that can be accomplished with acoustic room treatment is elimination of the reverberant field, that is, making the intensity at the room boundaries what it would have been in free space, as in Fig. 19.1*d*. (Even this is extremely difficult; the actual field at the wall would be above 72 dB, except in a completely anechoic chamber.) Adding further wall (or other) acoustic absorbent (as in Fig. 19.1*e*) does nothing in the room itself and has a minimal effect on the overall transmission loss, since the transmission loss in the acoustic material itself is very low, as can be seen in Fig. 18.1.

The subject of acoustic energy absorption and absorptive materials, and their effect on room acoustics (including noise reduction) is treated extensively in Sections 18.1 through 18.10 for porous absorptive materials. Two other types of absorptive material are in use, although much less commonly: panel resonators and cavity resonators.

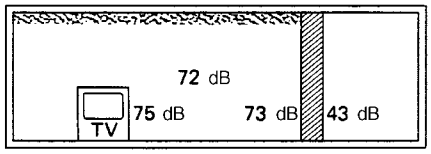
(*a*) TV set in free space produces 75-dB sound level, which drops 6 dB for each doubling of distance. Attenuation by inverse square law (see Eq.17-5).



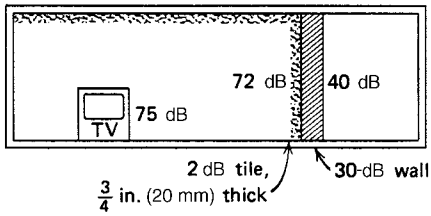
(*b*) TV still produces 75 dB. In the free field, sound drops to 72 dB but builds up to 74 dB at the wall due to reverberant field reinforcement (see Fig. 18.7). Wall attenuation is 30 dB. Sound on other side of the wall is 74 − 30 = 44 dB.



(*c*) Acoustic tile ceiling acts to reduce room reverberant field. Free field is extended. Level at wall is 73 dB. Level in second space is 73 − 30 = 43 dB.



(*d*) Entire room is acoustically treated, effectively eliminating reverberant field. Room is "dead." Level on second side of wall is 72 dB less acoustic tile loss, less wall loss (that is, 72 − 2 − 30 = 40 dB).



(*e*) Add another 2¼ in. of acoustic wall treatment. Room is "dead." Level at wall 72 dB. Level in second space = 72 − 4 − 30 = 38 dB.

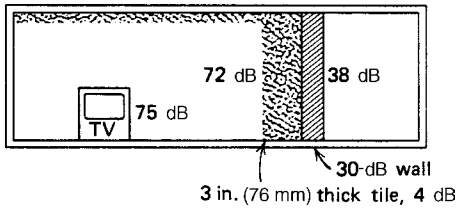


Fig. 19.1 *Graphic description of the effect of porous absorptive material on sound fields and sound pressure level (SPL) in adjoining spaces.*

19.2 PANEL AND CAVITY RESONATORS

Panel resonators are built with a membrane such as thin plywood or linoleum in front of a sealed air space generally containing absorbent material. The panel is set in motion by the alternating pressure of the impinging sound wave. The sound energy is converted into heat through internal viscous damping. Panel resonators are used where efficient low-frequency absorption is required and middle- and high-frequency absorption is unwanted or provided by another treatment (Fig. 19.2). Panel resonators are often used in recording studios.

A *volume* or *cavity resonator* (Helmholtz resonator) is an air cavity within a massive enclosure connected to the surroundings by a narrow neck opening. The impinging sound causes the air in the neck to vibrate, and the air mass behind causes the entire construction to resonate at a particular frequency. At that frequency absorption approaches unity, but drops fairly sharply above and below this frequency (see Fig. 19.2). Adjusting the neck opening and cavity dimensions allows a unit to be tuned to resonate at different frequencies. This makes it extremely useful when a major single frequency is present, as with 120-Hz transformer

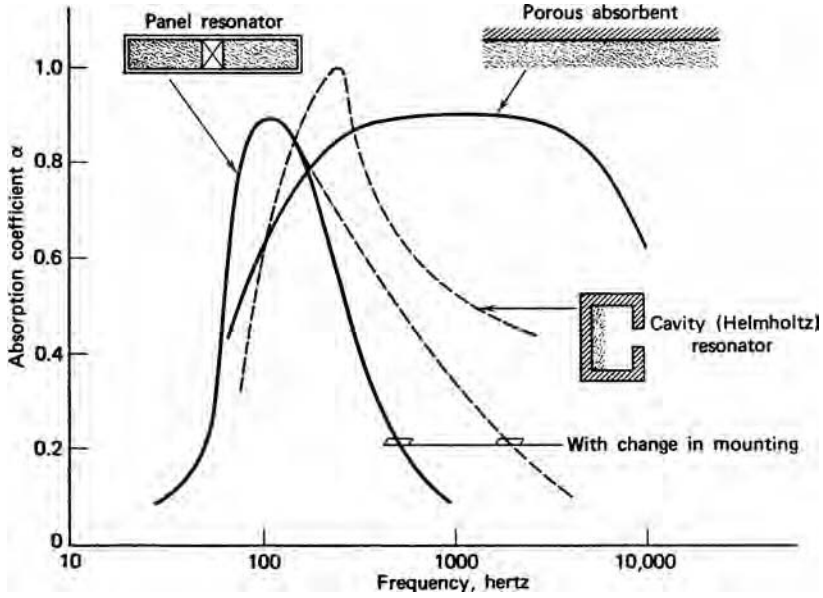
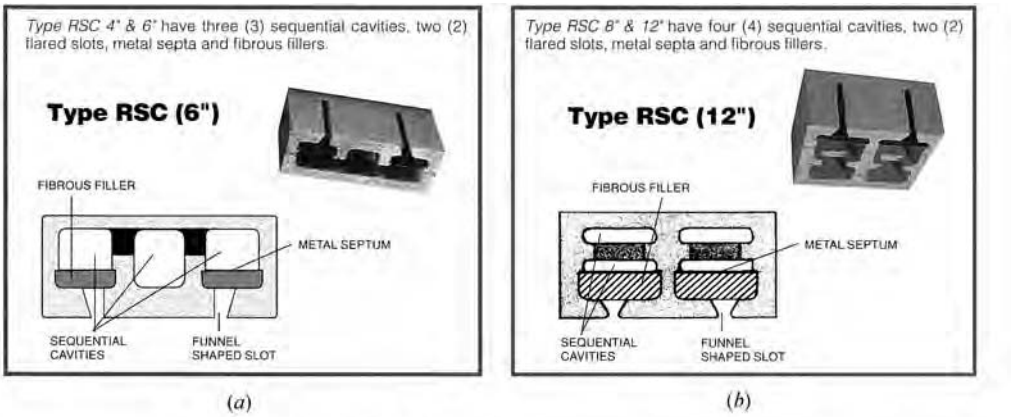


Fig. 19.2 *Typical absorption curves for the three major types of sound absorbers. The absorption characteristic of each type can be changed by varying the design, as discussed in the text.*



Sound Absorption Coefficients — Type RSC

Size	Type	Surface	Exposed Slots/ Cavities	FREQUENCY – Hertz																	NRC
				125	160	200	250	315	400	500	630	800	1000	1250	1600	2000	2500	3150	4000	5000	
6"	RSC	PAINTED	2/3	.48	.70	.93	1.14	1.05	.97	.91	.84	.75	.76	.77	.70	.67	.68	.56	.51	.59	**.85**
8"	RSC	PAINTED	2/4	.48	.85	1.17	.99	.90	.88	.98	.79	.62	.58	.60	.61	.70	.69	.70	.64	.51	**.80**
12"	RSC	PAINTED	2/4	.57	*	*	.76	*	*	1.09	*	*	.94	*	*	.54	*	*	.59	*	**.85**

(c)

Fig. 19.3 *Details of a Helmholtz resonator design using concrete blocks, with tuned block cavities as the resonating chambers. (a) A 6-in. (150-mm) block with three sequential cavities tuned with a metal divider (septum). (b) A 12-in. (305-mm) block with four cavities and added absorptive filler. (c) Sound absorption coefficients. (Courtesy of The Proudfoot Co., Inc.)*

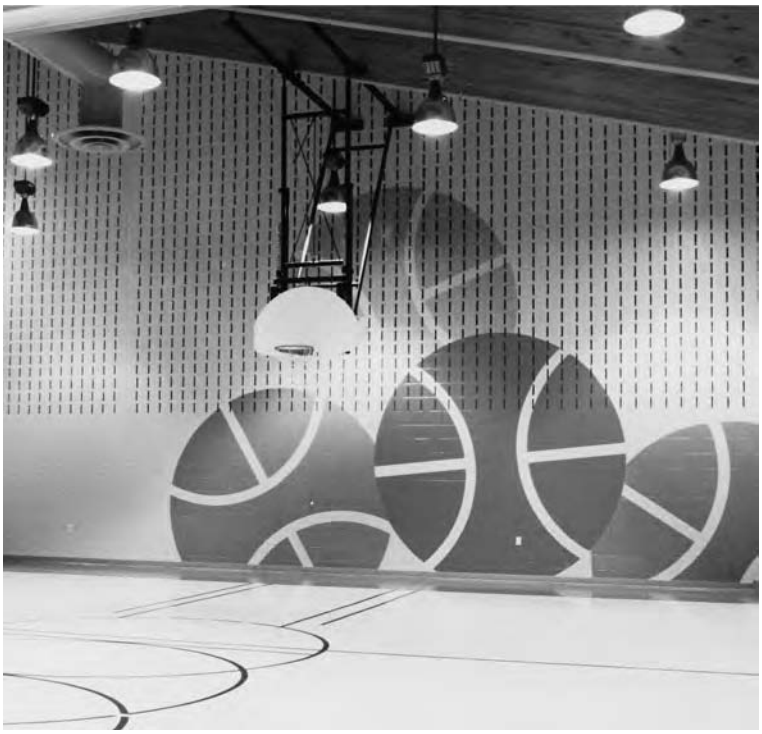


Fig. 19.4 *Application of concrete block resonators in a school gymnasium. (Courtesy of The Proudfoot Co., Inc.)*

hum. Concrete blocks can be used as resonators by tuning their cavities. Their absorption characteristic over the entire frequency band is improved by adding absorptive material in the cavities. Fibrous filler can be used in the block to increase high-frequency absorption. The blocks also serve as standard concrete construction blocks. See Fig. 19.3 for typical block details and Fig. 19.4 for a common application.

19.3 ACOUSTICALLY TRANSPARENT SURFACES

The soft, porous material of which acoustic absorbents are constructed may be covered with perforated metal or other materials to provide physical protection and act as stiffeners. These coverings are generally acoustically transparent except at higher frequencies. The frequency at which a noticeable reduction in absorption occurs for a perforated metal cover with circular holes can be estimated as

$$f = \frac{40p}{d} \tag{19.1}$$

where

f = frequency, Hz

p = percentage of open area

d = diameter of holes, in.

Thus, for ¼-in. holes and 60% open area, which is a typical commercial material,

$$f = \frac{40(60)}{0.25} = 9600 \text{ Hz}$$

which is very high and generally not of major concern. It is always preferable, given a fixed percentage of open area, to use covers with small holes rather than large ones since, as seen from the formula, this raises the frequency at which absorption drops. It is

also desirable to stagger the holes, as this improves absorption. An open-weave fabric is almost completely transparent to sound and is often used as a decorative cover on absorbent wall coverings.

19.4 ABSORPTION RECOMMENDATIONS

To summarize, absorption techniques are useful and effective:

1. To change room reverberation characteristics.
2. In spaces with distributed noise sources such as offices, schools, restaurants, and machine shops.
3. In spaces with hard surfaces and little absorptive content.
4. Where listeners are in the reverberant field. (No amount of absorptive material can reduce intensity levels in the free field.)

Concentrated noise sources are better handled by individual equipment enclosures than by room treatment, since enclosures reduce the amount of sound emitted into a room, which room surface treatment cannot do. In addition to ceiling tiles and wall panels, acoustic absorbent material can be applied in the form of a sprayed-on finish (acoustic plaster), suspended unit absorbers, carpets, draperies, and the like.

19.5 CHARACTERISTICS OF ABSORPTIVE MATERIALS

1. *Acoustic tile* is available in size multiples of 12 in. (nominal 305 mm), from 12 in. × 12 in. (305 × 305 mm) up to 48 in. × 96 in. (1.2 × 2.4 m), in a huge variety of patterns and finishes, including units with fire ratings. Installation methods include lay-in, nailing to furring strips, and gluing. Tile materials are generally mineral fiber or faced fiberglass, with noise reduction coefficient (NRC) ratings in the range of 0.45 to 0.75 for mineral fiber tiles and up to 0.95 for fiberglass. The latter, which are frequently used in open-office applications, have Articulation Class (AC) ratings of 170 to 210 (see Section 19.20d). Tiles for use in high-humidity areas should be certified by the manufacturer for that application (see Fig. 19.5).

2. *Perforated metal-faced units* are usually installed in a lay-in suspension ceiling, although

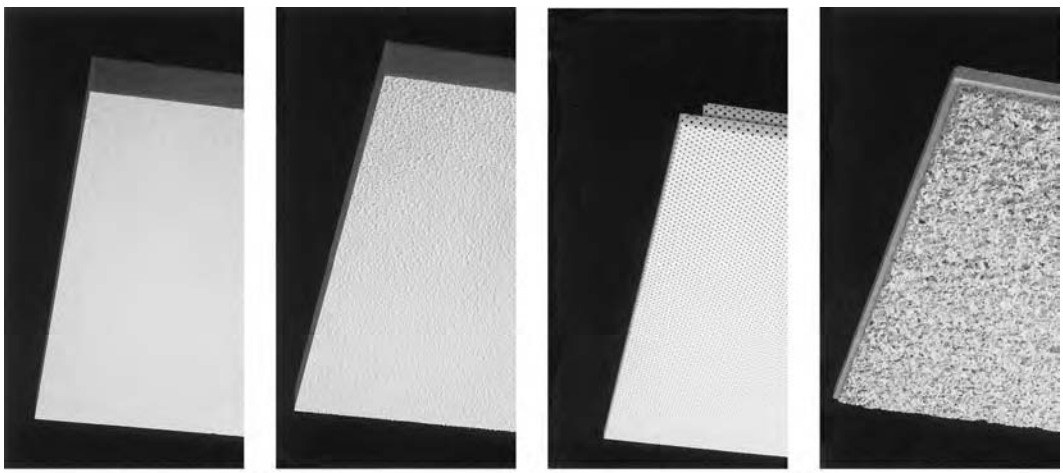


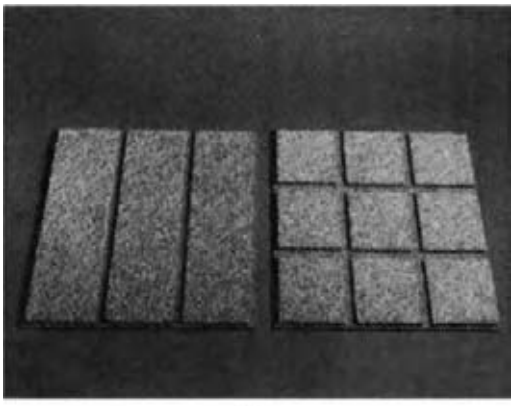
Fig. 19.5 *Four of the many types of acoustic ceiling tiles available are illustrated. (a) and (b) are 2 ft × 4 ft × 1½ in. (600 × 1200 × 36 mm) fiberglass ceiling tiles with an acoustically transparent plastic humidity shield facing and a foil back for good sound dispersion in the plenum of open-plan offices. (a) Tile has 1.0 NRC, 200 AC, 0.89 light reflectance, and a thermal R value of 4.0. (b) Tile has similar acoustic and thermal characteristics, but due to its coarser surface, its light reflectance is 0.85. Both tiles are applicable to open-plan offices and are usable with indirect lighting systems. (c) Perforated metal cassette panels are used in lobbies, corridors, entries, outdoor canopies and soffits, and areas with high humidity. They are usable in HVAC systems for air returns and, when supplied with an acoustic infill (mineral fiber or fiberglass), have good acoustic properties. (d) General-purpose, coarse-textured mineral fiber ceiling tile is rated 0.70 NRC, 25 CAC (Ceiling Attenuation Class), and 0.73 light reflectance. It can be used acoustically in offices, libraries, restaurants, and public spaces. (Photos courtesy of Armstrong World Industries.)*

nailing to furring strips is possible. Units range in size from 12 in. × 24 in. (305 × 610 mm) to 24 in. × 96 in. (0.6 × 2.4 m)—and larger on special order. The fill material is either wrapped mineral wool or fiberglass, with NRC ratings somewhat lower than those of acoustic tile of the same material. The metal finish is generally baked enamel in a range of colors. The units are applicable to all spaces and have the advantages of easy cleaning, high luminous reflectivity, and incombustibility. With the acoustic backing removed, a perforated unit can be used for air return (Fig. 19.5).

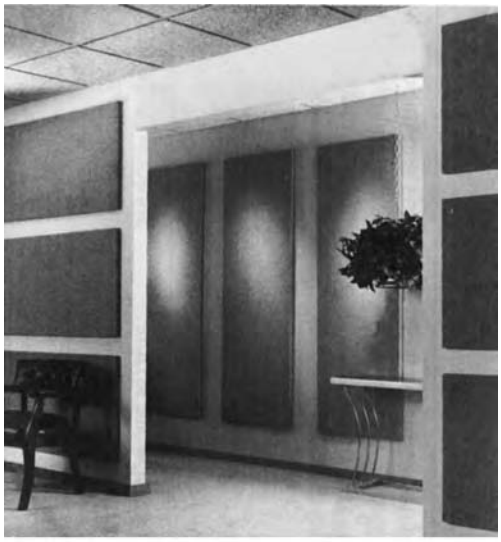
3. *Acoustic panels* (boards) are made of treated wood fibers, bonded with an inorganic cement binder, in sizes ranging from 12 in. × 24 in. (305 × 610 mm) to 24 in. × 120 in. (0.6 × 3.0 m), with thicknesses from 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) and a smooth or "shredded" finish. Panels are used in ceiling suspension systems, or nailed or glued when applied to walls and structural ceilings. Their principal advantage is their high structural strength, which makes them applicable to installations requiring acoustic treatment combined with strength and abuse-resistance. A second advantage is their excellent flame-spread rating. Typical applications include full-span corridor ceilings, long-span direct-attached ceiling finish, wall panels in school gyms and corridors, and the like. NRC ratings range from 0.40 to 0.70. Acoustic panels are usually resistant to humidity, but usage in high-humidity spaces should be confirmed with the product manufacturer. This is particularly true for panels with "reveal" edges (Fig. 19.6).

4. *Acoustic plaster*, a material comprising a plaster-type base into which is introduced fibrous or light aggregate, is useful for application to curved and other nonlinear surfaces, in thicknesses of up to 1.5 in. (38 mm). Its advantages are ease of application and a high fire rating; its disadvantages are its inability to resist even mild abuse and its inapplicability to humid atmospheres. The noise absorption characteristics of acoustic plaster vary widely with composition, thickness, and application technique, and are generally below those of acoustic tile and panels.

5. *Sound blocks*, *baffles*, and *hanging panels* are simply masses of absorptive acoustic material that achieve absorption coefficients in excess of 1.0 by exposing more than a single absorptive surface to the impinging sound. In all cases, because of their prominent appearance, necessitated by their shape, they obtrude into the space and frequently become a major architectural element. This is especially true of hanging baffles (Fig. 19.7).



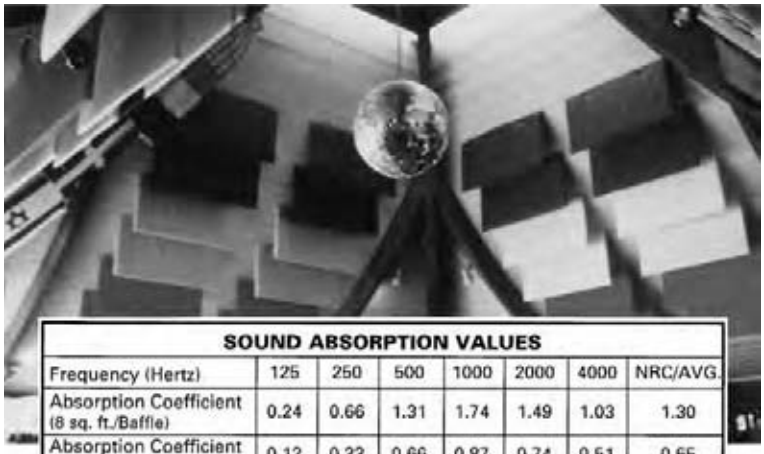
(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 19.6 *Acoustic panel material made of pressed organic fiber with an inorganic binder can be used as ceiling tile (a) or wall panels (b). The latter has cloth covering as an outer finish. (Photos courtesy of Tectum.)*

6. *Wall panels* consist of a wood or metal backing on which is mounted a mineral fiber or fiberglass substrate and a fabric covering. NRC coefficients vary from 0.5 for direct-mounted 1-in. mineral fiber substrate to as high as 0.85 for strip-mounted 1½-in. (38 mm) fiberglass substrate panels. Wall panels are available in widths ranging from 18 to 48 in. (457 to 1220 mm) and lengths



SOUND ABSORPTION VALUES							
Frequency (Hertz)	125	250	500	1000	2000	4000	NRC/AVG.
Absorption Coefficient (8 sq. ft./Baffle)	0.24	0.66	1.31	1.74	1.49	1.03	1.30
Absorption Coefficient (16 sq. ft./Baffle)	0.12	0.33	0.66	0.87	0.74	0.51	0.65
Sabins/Baffle	1.9	5.3	10.5	13.9	11.9	8.2	10.5

Fig. 19.7 *Application of hanging acoustic baffles to reduce reverberation in the high pyramid-shaped ceiling of a restaurant. The baffles are 1½-in.-thick (38-mm) fiberglass with a tough fire-rated cover. Sound absorption values are given in the accompanying table. (Courtesy of The Proudfoot Co., Inc.)*

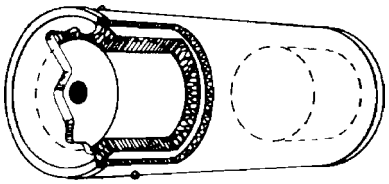


Fig. 19.8 *Acoustic wall panel consists of a rigid backing covered with either mineral fiber or fiberglass and finished with any of a wide selection of fabrics. NRC averages 0.6 for mineral fiber substrate and 0.8 for fiberglass for contact mounting (A mounting) and 0.7/0.9 when the panels are mounted on 2-cm (nominal ¾-in.) furring strips (D-20 mounting). The latter mounting is particularly effective in increasing absorption below 500 Hz. (Photo courtesy of Armstrong World Industries.)*

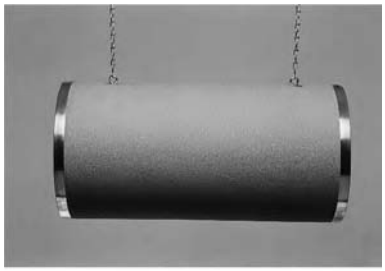
of up to 120 in. (3 m). Fabric coverings generally carry a fire-spread rating. These panels are frequently used in offices, conference rooms, auditoriums, theaters, teleconferencing centers, and educational facilities (see Fig. 19.8).

7. *Resonator sound absorbers* are available in a wide variety of sizes and shapes. Although some designs are available off the shelf, most are tailored to the specific acoustic needs of a project, using one of several standard designs. One fairly common type is shown in Fig. 19.9. In general, resonators are large and must therefore be integrated into the architectural design of a space. Exterior shapes can be altered, and the units can be installed less obtrusively to fulfill this architectural requirement.

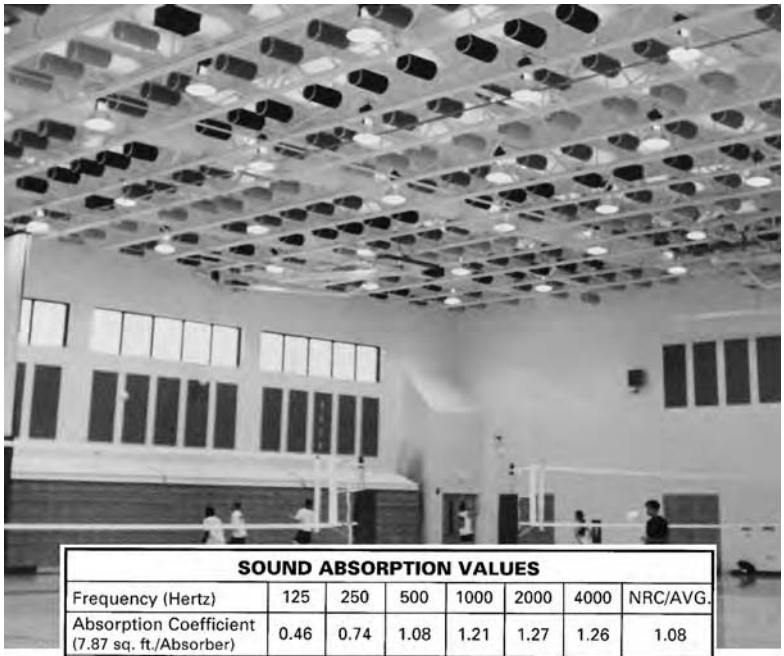
8. *Carpeting and drapery* are used to cover large acoustically reflective surfaces in a space. Carpeting can be selected in almost any degree of density, looping, and depth, plus an additional depth of padding, to produce a high degree of absorption in middle and high frequencies (see Table 18.1). In general, absorption is proportional to pile height and density and increases when the carpet is installed on a thick, fibrous pad. Where drapery is not feasible and wall panels are impractical, carpeting can be installed on walls. In such instances, installation on furring strips with an enclosed air space behind will increase absorption over the entire acoustic spectrum and especially at low frequencies (where direct-contact installation exhibits poor absorption).



(a)



(b)



SOUND ABSORPTION VALUES							
Frequency (Hertz)	125	250	500	1000	2000	4000	NRC/AVG.
Absorption Coefficient (7.87 sq. ft./Absorber)	0.46	0.74	1.08	1.21	1.27	1.26	1.08
Sabins/Absorber	3.65	5.84	8.48	9.51	9.98	9.90	8.45

(c)

Fig. 19.9 *(a) Resonator/absorber unit consists of a molded fiberglass cylinder, of 12-in. (305-mm) diameter and 24-in. (610-mm) length, containing a metal resonator at each end for low-frequency absorption and a fill of acoustic fiberglass for full-spectrum absorption. (b) The unit, which weighs about 6 lb (2.7 kg), is suspended on thin wires or chains that are essentially invisible when the unit is mounted 10 ft (3 m) above the finished floor (AFF) or higher. (c) A typical application in a school gymnasium. Because of their large size, the units constitute a major architectural element. By color selection and hanging patterns, they can be effectively used as such. The absorption characteristics of these units are listed in the table as a function of frequency. (Courtesy of The Proudfoot Co., Inc.)*

Draperies are essentially acoustically transparent and provide appreciable absorption only in the middle and upper frequencies with heavy, dense, fuzzy fabrics, particularly when draped with a high degree of fold. As with carpeting, absorption increases over the entire spectrum when a heavy folded drapery forms an air space between itself and the wall. Approximate absorption figures are given in Table 18.1.

SOUND INSULATION

19.6 AIRBORNE AND STRUCTURE-BORNE SOUND

In contrast to the preceding material, which was concerned with in-room sound reduction by absorption, the following sections will discuss

the characteristics of sound *transmission* between enclosed spaces. A distinction is often made between airborne and structure-borne sound, although in reality they differ only in the origin of the sounds. Airborne sound originates in a space with any sound-producing source, and although it changes to structure-borne sound when the sound wave strikes the room boundaries, it is still referred to as airborne because it originated in the air. *Structure-borne sound* is generally understood as energy delivered by a vibrating or impacting source directly contacting the structure. Hence, a child crying in an adjoining apartment is contributing airborne sound; the same child bouncing a ball on the floor is creating structure-borne sound, in this case by impact. Pumps that were installed without proper damping mounts create structure-borne sound by vibration.

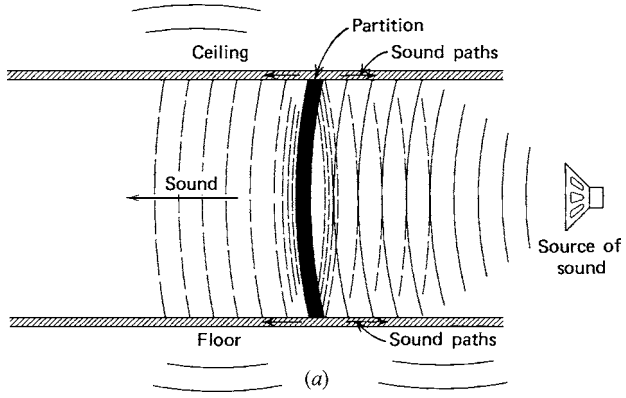
In reality, all sound transmission is both airborne and structure-borne since, once having entered the structure, the sound travels along the structure and causes the structure to vibrate, in turn generating airborne sound. Figure 19.10 should assist in understanding this action. In Fig. 19.10*a*, the sound is airborne, originating in the air on one side of the partition. The incidence of sound energy causes the partition to vibrate, generating sound on the other side. Sound does not "pass through" unless an air path exists. If the partition is airtight, then the sound energy causes the structure to become a secondary source. The partition vibrates primarily in the direction of the sound, that is, in the vertical plane. It also vibrates in other modes, causing some sound energy to pass into the floor and ceiling, depending upon the details of attachment. This energy becomes structure-borne sound.

In Fig. 19.10*b*, the process is similar but reversed. Energy is introduced into the structure directly (and efficiently) by mechanical contact, that is, by vibration and impact. Sound travels along the structure, as shown, and, by causing the structure to vibrate, creates *airborne sound*. In a structure with rigid wall-to-floor connections, these sounds are clearly heard throughout the building. It is a common misconception that in a (relatively) massive concrete structure with masonry walls, such as a multistory residential building, light impacts such as footfalls will not be transmitted. On the contrary, the rigidity of the structure, and in particular the rigid, airtight connections between partitions, floors, and ceilings, provide an excellent path for structure-borne sound. Only impact absorption by heavy carpeting will attenuate the sound of footsteps, and resilient floor-wall connections will attenuate structure-borne sound.

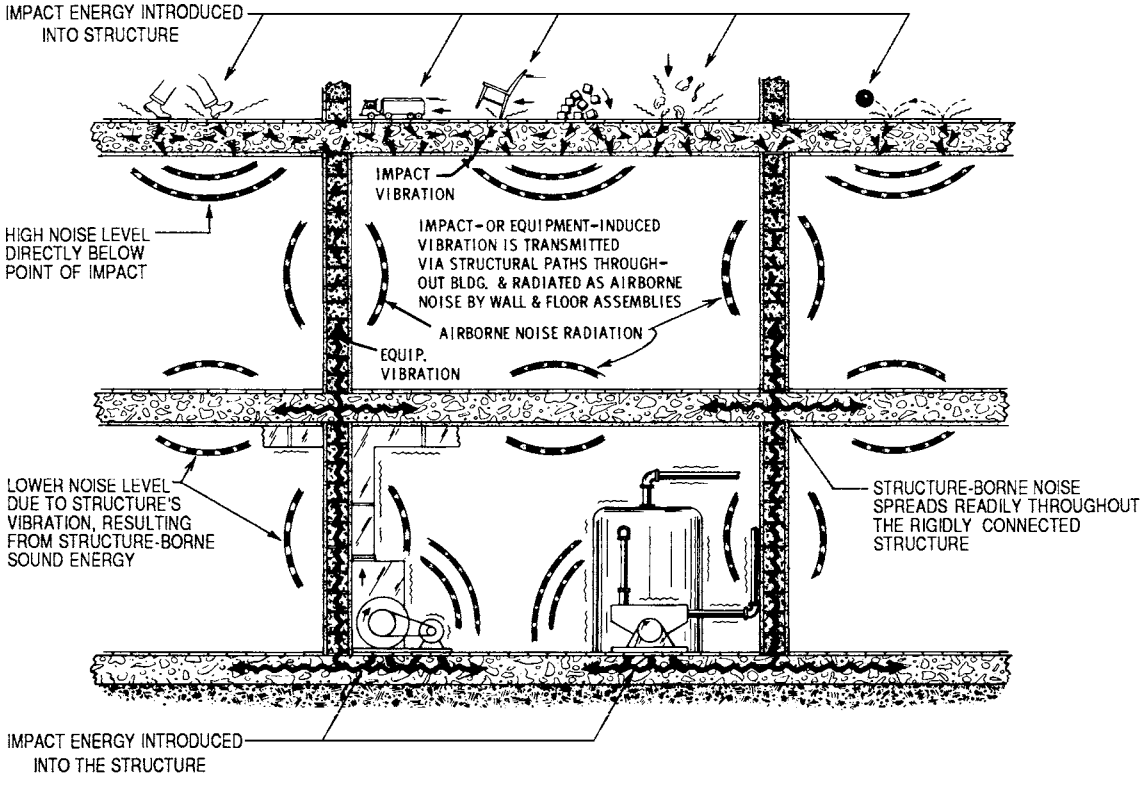
Airborne sound (originating in the air) is generally much less disturbing than structure-borne sound, since its initial energy is very small and it attenuates rapidly at boundaries. Structure-borne sound generally has a much higher initial energy level and attenuates slowly as it travels through a structure, thereby causing disturbance over large sections of a building. This disturbance is magnified by the "sounding board effect."

We are all familiar with the fact that a tuning fork must be held up to the ear to be heard directly, but if its handle is placed on a table the sound is amplified. This action is not really amplification but an increase in the efficiency of energy transfer. In general, the efficiency of a radiator is proportional to the ratio of its surface dimensions to the sound wavelength. A tuning fork vibrating at concert A (440 Hz) with a wavelength of 2½ ft (0.75 m) cannot efficiently couple its energy into the air. It is simply too small. By placing the instrument on a table whose dimensions are approximately one wavelength, we permit it to transfer its energy efficiently, hence the amplification. The same effect can be extremely troublesome in structure-borne sound. A vibrating pump itself makes little sound. However, it transfers a large amount of energy into the structure, which will appear as audible sound at each partition, floor, and wall that is rigidly coupled to the structure. Soft (damping) connections prevent energy transfer, thereby greatly attenuating the transmission of sound energy into connecting efficient radiating surfaces—hence the desirability of such flexible connections.

Airborne sound changes direction easily (diffracts), with low frequencies being most flexible in this regard. Structure-borne sound travels much more rapidly than airborne sound (see Table 17.1) and with attenuation as low as 1 dB per kilometer (about 0.5 dB per mile). A sound traveling along a massive structure will radiate outward from the structure only minimally (although enough to be very annoying) because the large mass minimizes vibration in that direction. Thus, in Fig. 19.10*b*, noise from impact on the floor above will be louder (for equal impact energy) than noise from



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 19.10 *(a) Airborne sound is so called because it originates in air; its energy level is low. Here the loudspeaker is the source of acoustic energy, which is converted to a vibration of the partition (shown greatly exaggerated), which in turn becomes a secondary source of airborne sound for the adjoining space. A small amount of energy is reradiated by the ceiling and floor of both spaces directly, and indirectly via the rigid partition-to-floor and partition-to-ceiling connections. (b) Structure-borne sound originates from mechanical contact between the structure and vibrating or impacting sources. As such, its energy level is usually much higher than that of airborne sound. This energy is transmitted with little attenuation throughout the structure via the rigid partition-to-floor and partition-to-ceiling connections. The entire structure is then set into vibration as shown, converting the (large) structure-borne sound energy to noise throughout the building.*

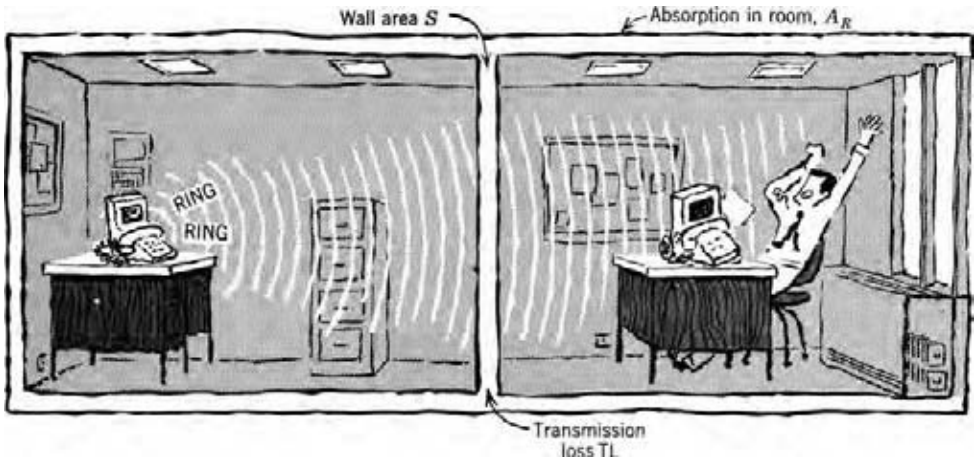


Fig. 19.11 *A simple case of airborne sound transmission between adjacent rooms through a common barrier. With a sound source in one room, the transmitted sound level is dependent not only on the transmission loss of the barrier but also on the area of the barrier and the receiving-room absorption. The background noise level in the receiving room determines whether the transmitted sound will be noticed.*

machines below, because the former generates sound directly downward, while the latter introduces energy into the entire network of parallel paths.

The sections immediately following deal with airborne sound and the means for controlling it (Fig. 19.11). Impact noise (a form of structure-borne sound) is covered in Sections 19.22 to 19.34.

AIRBORNE SOUND

19.7 TRANSMISSION LOSS AND NOISE REDUCTION

The transmission loss (*TL*) of a barrier is the ratio, expressed in decibels, of the acoustic energy reradiated by the barrier to the acoustic energy incident on it. This number is a figure of merit for the sound-isolating quality of the wall itself and is obtained from controlled laboratory tests. (In Europe, transmission loss is referred to as *sound reduction index*, *R*.) However, the number that is of greater importance to the building designer is the actual noise reduction (*NR*) between two spaces separated by a barrier, that is, the action of the barrier in context. This noise reduction is defined as the difference between the sound intensity levels in the two rooms, that is,

$$NR = IL_{\text{room 1}} - IL_{\text{room 2}} \tag{19.2}$$

and is related to the TL of the barrier by the expression

$$NR = TL - 10 \log \frac{S}{A_R} \tag{19.3}$$

where

NR = noise reduction, dB

TL = barrier transmission loss, dB

S = area of the barrier, ft^2 (m^2)

A_R = total absorption of the *receiving* room, sabins, ft^2 (m^2)

We see, therefore, that noise reduction and transmission loss are not equal but are related by the size of the dividing barrier, *S*, and the absorption characteristic of the receiving room, A_R. A moment's thought will confirm the logic of this relation. When sound energy impinges on the barrier, the barrier in turn becomes the sound source, radiating into the receiving room. Therefore, the amount of sound energy transferred is proportional to the (log of) area *S* of the common barrier between the two spaces.

The sound level in the receiving room is related to its own reverberance (absorption characteristic,

A_R), as we have seen repeatedly. Thus, if the receiving room is a reverberant, live space, A_R is low and *NR* is less than *TL*. Conversely, if the receiving room is dead, A_R is large and *NR* can be greater than *TL*, depending upon the ratio of the barrier wall size to the room area (see Fig. 19.11). In lieu of precise calculations, the following generalizations can be used:

1. For a live receiving room,

$$NR = TL - 1 \text{ dB}$$

2. For a medium receiving room,

$$NR = TL + 4 \text{ dB}$$

3. For a dead receiving room,

$$NR = TL + 7 \text{ dB}$$

The extreme case of "deadness" of a receiving room is one with no walls, that is, sound transmission from inside to the exterior. In such cases, *NR* exceeds *TL* by 10 to 15 dB, depending upon the size of the exterior opening and the point outside where *IL* is measured. To acquire facility with sound-insulation techniques, the designer must become familiar with the relationship of transmission loss to the barrier's physical characteristics, its mass, rigidity, material of construction, and method of construction and attachment. These considerations are the subject of the following sections.

Note: The reader is cautioned to be careful when encountering the term *noise reduction* (NR), since a similar and completely unrelated term—*noise reduction coefficient* (NRC)—also exists. The latter is very poorly named.

19.8 BARRIER MASS

Sound transmission between spaces requires that a barrier be set into vibration by the incident sound energy. Although this was stated in the preceding sections, we repeat it here to emphasize the fundamental importance of this simple statement. (We are assuming a barrier that is impervious to air—i.e., a solid barrier. Otherwise, the moving air molecules bearing the sound will simply pass through with minimal transmission loss.) The impinging sound energy acts as a force on the wall. Since $F = MA$, the larger the mass, the less it will vibrate. When other factors (particularly angle of incidence) are taken into account, the resultant acoustical relationship is known as the *mass law*. It states that for a nonporous, homogeneous structure of low stiffness, the sound transmission loss is proportional to the logarithm of the surface mass (the weight of the wall per unit of surface area) and to the frequency of vibration. Thus, doubling the mass (or frequency) will, theoretically, cause an increase of 6 dB in the transmission loss; stated otherwise, the slope of *TL* versus the frequency times mass (*fM*) curve is 6 dB. Figure 19.12 is a graphic representation of mass law operation. With sound incident at 9°, maximum energy is imparted to the barrier and the entire mass resists, resulting in maximum transmission loss. In practice, however, sound is incident from 0° to 80° (called *field* or *random incidence*), reducing the mass effect but keeping the slope at 6 dB per octave. Due to nonhomogeneity, porousness, and stiffness, actual field results indicate transmission losses closer to 4 dB per octave, as shown by the lower curve in Fig. 19.12.

19.9 STIFFNESS AND RESONANCE

The *stiffness* of a barrier is a function of its material composition and the rigidity of its mounting. The former depends upon its internal cohesiveness—that is, its modulus of elasticity—and the latter depends upon its boundary restraints—whether the barrier is tightly or loosely held. A homogeneous material of high Young's modulus (such as steel) has great cohesiveness between its molecules. As soon as one molecule is set in motion by incident sound energy, the motion is passed to the next molecule, and so on, making the material an excellent sound conductor. Homogeneous materials with a low modulus of elasticity have high internal damping (the motion of molecules is not transmitted well), and they are good sound insulators. Composite materials such as concrete and organic materials such as wood do not conform to these general rules.

Rigidity of mounting can be likened to a drumhead—the tighter it is stretched, the better it resounds. Rigidity (stiffness) in a panel barrier resists damping and assists vibration, making it a good transmitter and, conversely, a poor noise transmission insulator. As a result, a material such as lead, which has a high mass and a low modulus of elasticity and resists rigid mounting, is an excellent sound attenuator.

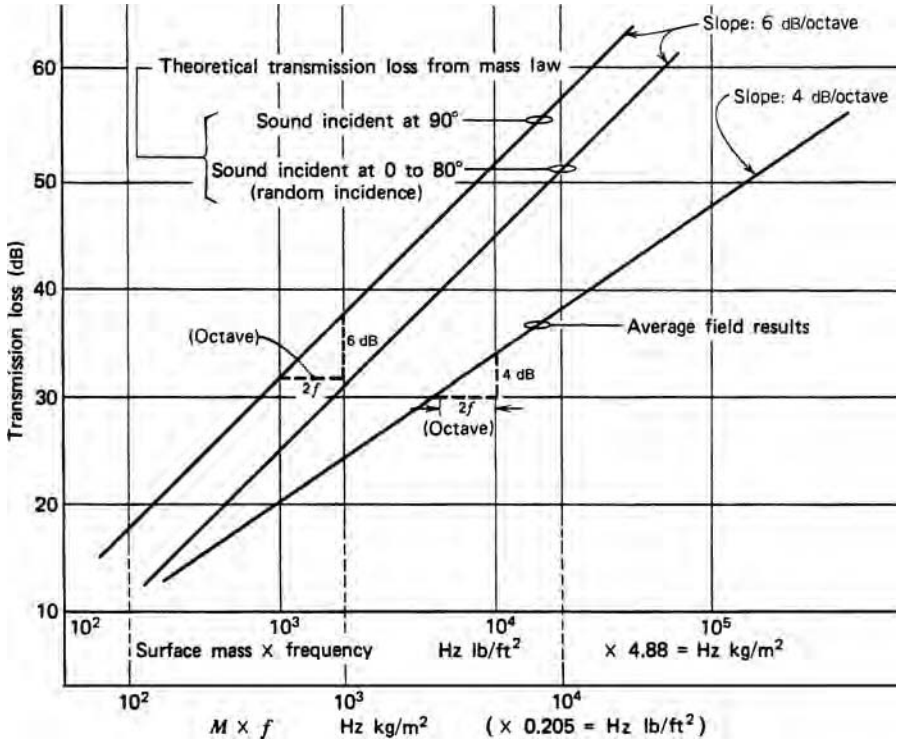


Fig. 19.12 *Graphic representation of mass law action in attenuation of transmitted sound. Perpendicular (90°) sound incidence results in maximum transmission loss. Field or random incidence (0° to 80°) is approximately 6 dB lower but maintains the 6-dB-per-octave slope. Field results are lower due to flanking and stiffness effects, and the slope of the curve averages only 4 dB per octave (frequency doubling).*

The effects of stiffness and mass both vary with frequency, unfortunately in opposite directions. Stiffness acts to reduce transmission loss as frequency increases, while, as we have seen, mass acts to increase it; the combined effect is shown in Fig. 19.13. Therefore, stiffness is most effective at low frequencies and mass at high frequencies. At very low frequencies the mass and stiffness effects negate each other, giving the resonance dips shown. Beyond approximately 200 Hz, most common wall construction enters the mass law range and continues with it until the critical frequency. Deviations from a smooth 4 to 6 dB per octave slope are due to the nonhomogeneous nature of most wall constructions. At the *critical frequency* the phase of incident sound waves corresponds to or coincides with the phase of vibration (shear wave) of the barrier in such a way as to pass a large portion of the incident energy. See the insert in Fig. 19.13, which shows this effect as the coincidence dip. This effect is most pronounced in thin, homogeneous partitions and light, stiff ones.

Critical frequency, f_c, as a function of panel thickness for common materials, is plotted in Fig. 19.14. To avoid a coincidence dip in the audible range, partitions can be either very heavy and/or very stiff (which greatly decreases the critical frequency) or heavy and limp (resilient—which greatly increases the critical frequency). In practical terms, cost effectiveness is heavily in favor of the latter alternative. Thus, for instance, the transmission loss of a wood partition can be improved by grooving it to increase its flexibility, thereby increasing the critical frequency. The dramatic improvement in transmission loss, resonances, and coincidence dip achieved by the use of resilient mounting of a simple masonry partition is shown in Fig. 19.15. Both walls have the same weight—approximately 21 lb/ft^2 (102 kg/m^2). The solid wall *A* has better attenuation below 200 Hz in the stiffness-controlled range. Above that frequency the resilient-mounted partition is 10 dB better, which means that the transmitted noise is only one-half as loud. The sound transmission class (STC) (which

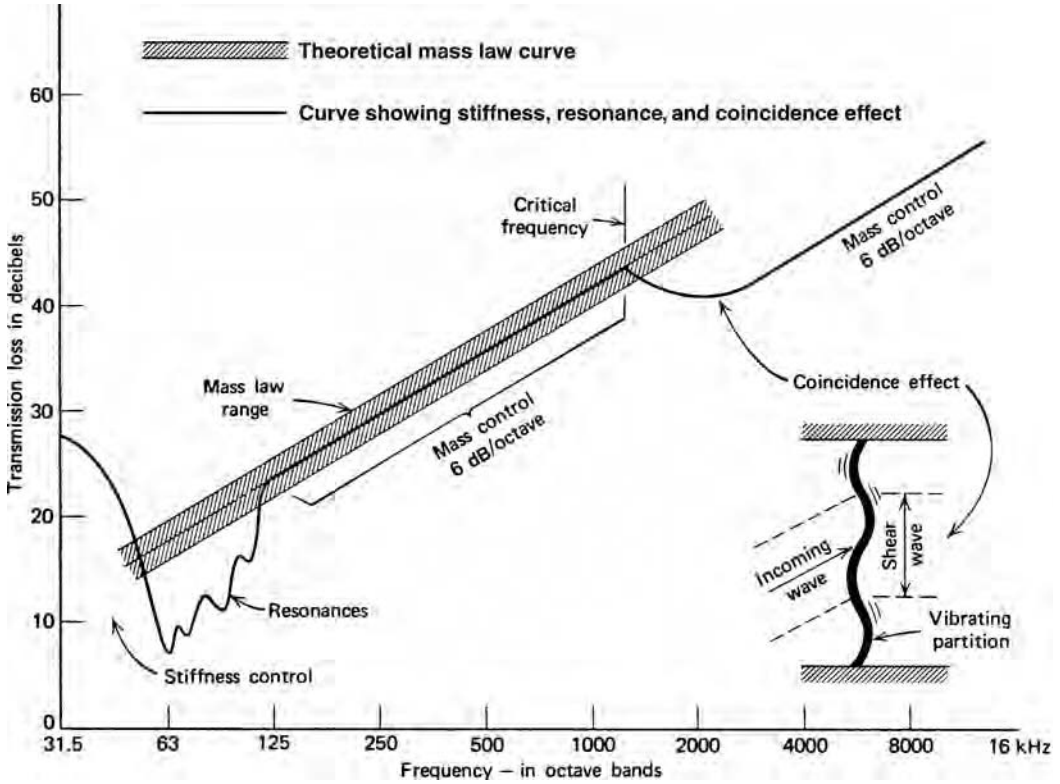


Fig. 19.13 *Partition transmission loss as a function of frequency showing the effects of stiffness, resonance, and coincidence. At frequencies below resonance, control is almost purely a stiffness function; at frequencies above critical, control is almost purely a surface mass function.*

is a figure of merit for partition sound transmission, as explained in Section 19.11) of wall *A* is 40; that of wall *B* is 51. Both show a coincidence dip at approximately 250 Hz (see Fig. 19.14), but that of *B* is shallow, whereas that of *A* is deep and wide. Furthermore, wall *B* is consistently better than mass law attenuation would predict, wall *A* consistently worse (due to stiffness).

19.10 COMPOUND BARRIERS (CAVITY WALLS)

Since the maximum theoretical increase in transmission loss with an increase of mass is 6 dB per doubling of mass, it is apparent that this method of transmission loss improvement rapidly reaches the limits of practicality. Indeed, as we have seen, the transmission loss of actual single homogeneous walls fall below the mass law curve. This is because mass increase brings with it stiffness increase, which acts to *reduce* transmission loss. If, however, a barrier is constructed of two separate layers without rigid interconnection, its performance exceeds the calculated transmission loss based on mass alone. Note that even the nonrigid wire ties of wall *B* in Fig. 19.16 lower the STC by five points. At low frequencies, where stiffness controls the transmission loss (see Fig. 19.13), the cavity in wall *C* (Fig. 19.16) acts as a rigid connection between the layers, adding stiffness and increasing transmission loss. At higher frequencies, in the mass law range, the air in the cavity acts as a damping coupling to reduce stiffness. The net result is an improvement in performance throughout the frequency range.

Transmission loss for the entire cavity wall increases with the width of the air space at the rate of approximately 5 dB per doubling. Performance can be improved still further by filling the void with porous, sound-absorbent material. This acts to further decrease the stiffness of the compound structure *and* to absorb sound energy that reflects back and forth between the two inside surfaces. The performance of

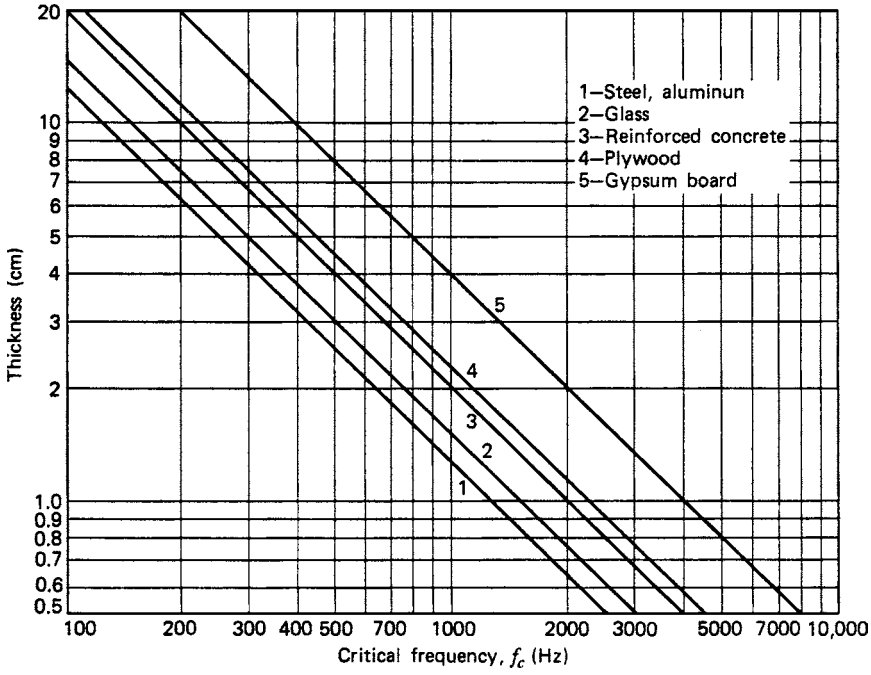


Fig. 19.14 Critical frequency as a function of thickness for several common materials. (Reprinted with permission from E. B. Magrab. 1975. Environmental Noise Control. *Wiley. New York.)*

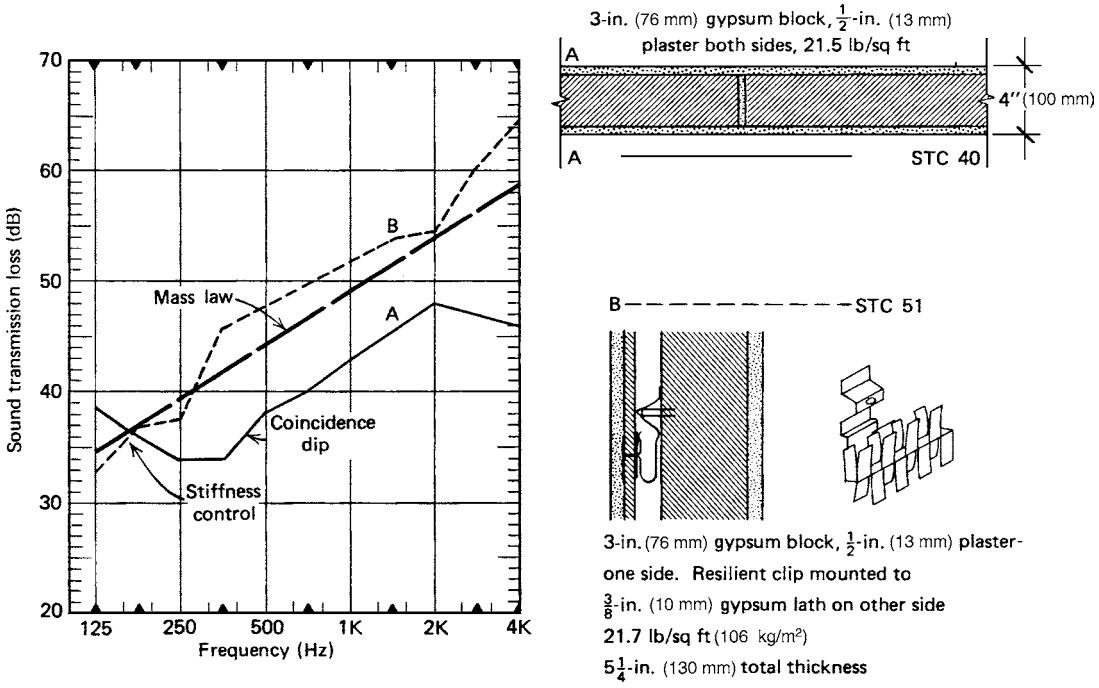
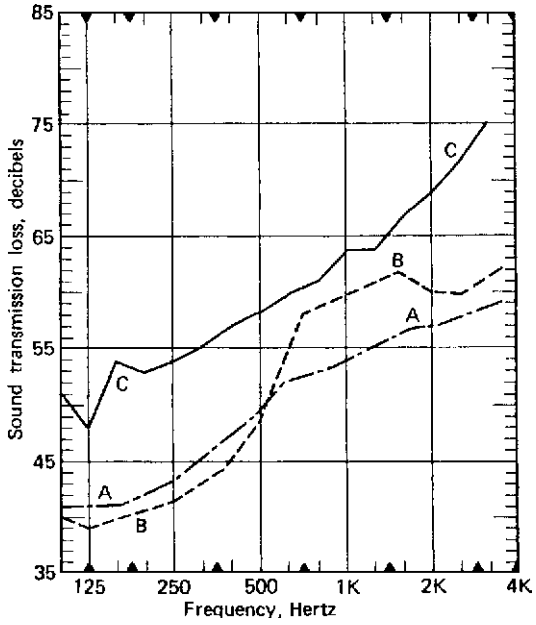
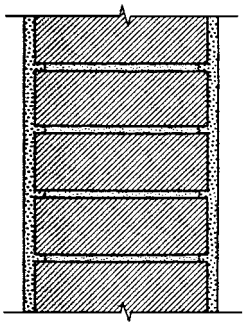


Fig. 19.15 Transmission loss characteristics of two equal-weight partitions with similar boundary constraints. The solid partition A *performs worse than the mass law, due to stiffness. The resilient-mounted wall* B *performs better than the mass law and much better than wall* A*, except at the lowest frequencies. (Data extracted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, 1968.)*

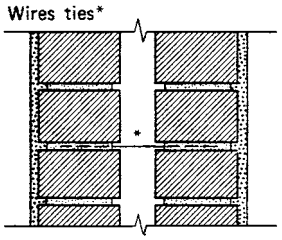


A: 100 lb/sq ft, STC 52



A: Single 9-in. brick wall

B: 100 lb/sq ft, STC 49

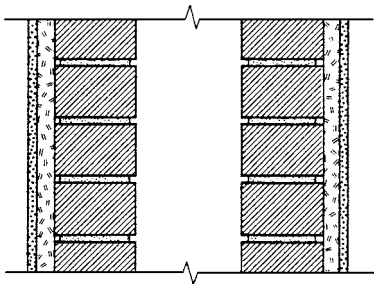


Double brick wall
2-in. air cavity

B: 12-in. total thickness

*Without wire ties, STC rises to 54

C: 120 lb/sq ft, STC 62



Double brick wall,
6-in. cavity

C: 18-in. total thickness

Fig. 19.16 *Transmission loss curves showing the effect of air space on heavy wall construction. All three walls are approximately the same mass. The 2-in. (50-mm) air space of wall B is not significant until the higher frequencies, whereas the large 6-in. (200-mm) air space of wall C is effective throughout the frequency spectrum. (Data extracted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, 1968.)*

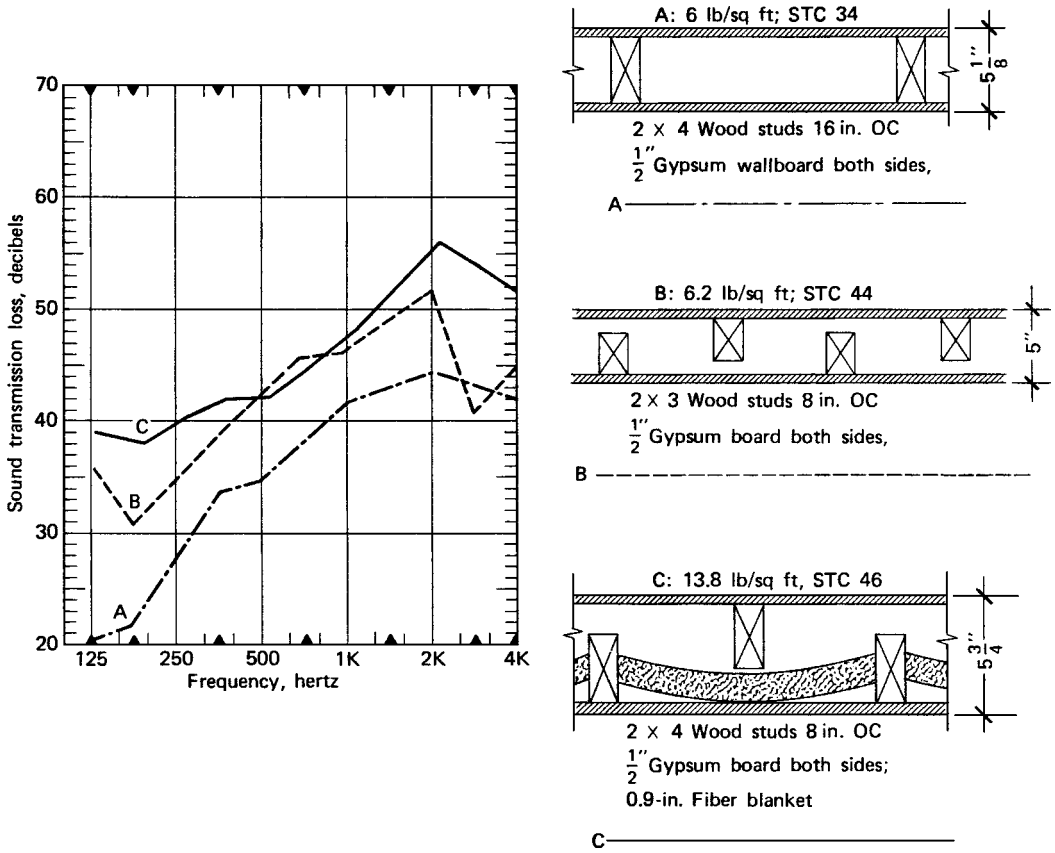


Fig. 19.17 *Transmission loss curves illustrating the effect on lightweight walls of stiffness reduction and addition of absorptive material in the cavity. Curve A is a standard stud wall typically found in frame construction. Curve B shows the advantage of staggered studs over the entire frequency range. The dip at 3 kHz is a coincidence dip for a single leaf. Addition of absorptive material (Curve C) improves the attenuation characteristic at both ends of the spectrum and is particularly useful for its low-frequency improvement. (Data extracted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, 1968.)*

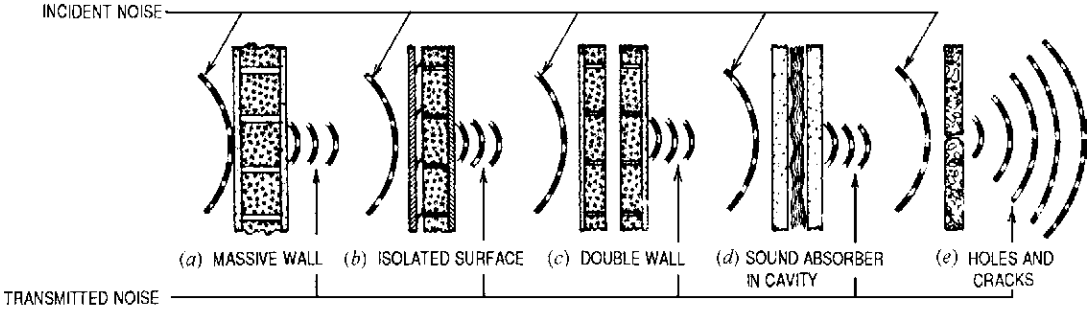
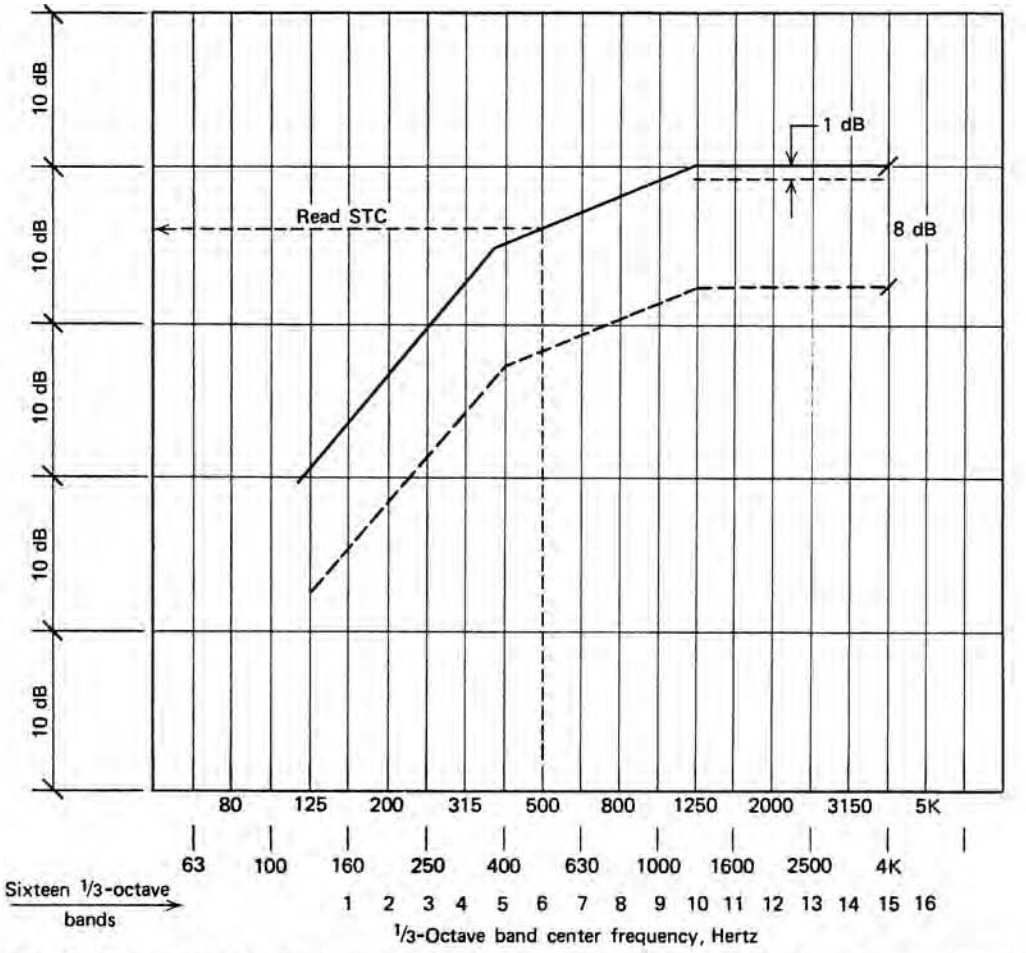


Fig. 19.18 *The various techniques used to increase the transmission loss of a partition are shown in (a–d). In contrast, even a very small air path through the partition (e) can effectively destroy its effectiveness as a sound barrier. (Data extracted from A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings, 1968.)*

cavity walls is reduced by any rigid interconnections between leaves. Thus, a common stud wall with frequent rigid interconnections acts little better than a single homogeneous wall. However, a stud wall with staggered studs exhibits greatly improved performance over a single-material wall or a common stud wall. These effects are illustrated in Figs. 19.16 and 19.17 (see also Appendix K). The effects of mass (Section 19.8), stiffness (Section 19.9), and compound barriers with and without filler are shown qualitatively and graphically in Fig. 19.18.

19.11 SOUND TRANSMISSION CLASS

Various attempts at using a single-number average transmission loss to describe a barrier's characteristics have been made, with only limited success.



The STC is determined by comparison with a transparent overlay of this graph on which the STC contour is drawn. The STC contour is shifted vertically, relative to the test curve, until some of the measured *TL* values for the test specimen fall below those of the STC contour (the solid line) and the following conditions are fulfilled:

1. The sum of the deficiencies (i.e., the deviations below the contour) shall not be greater than 32 dB.
2. The maximum deficiency at a single test point shall not exceed 8 dB [the broken (dashed) line beneath the STC contour].

When the contour is adjusted to the highest value (in integral dB) that meets the above requirements, the sound transmission class for the specimen is the *TL* value corresponding to the intersection of the contour and the 500-Hz ordinate.

Fig. 19.19 *Overlay from which sound transmission class (STC) is determined graphically.*

Indeed, such averages can be misleading, since they ignore both deficiencies and proficiencies at particular frequencies. Their use, therefore, in all but rough work is to be discouraged.

To avoid the shortcomings of averages and yet to benefit from the indisputable convenience of single-number ratings, a system of standard contours was developed in the United States called *sound transmission class* (STC) contours. (A similar system, conforming to ISO 717-1, 1996, is used in Europe, involving a weighted sound reduction index R_W. In practice, the STC number for a particular barrier construction is derived by comparing actual test results measured in a series of sixteen ⅓-octave bands to the standard STC contours according to a fixed procedure. The technique is illustrated in Fig. 19.19. Figure 19.20 shows two transmission loss curves and STC ratings of each. Because STC fails to give credit for performance *above* the established requirements, octave-band transmission loss data, rather than STC ratings, should be used in all critical areas such as music rooms or mechanical rooms where certain particular frequencies may be dominant.

Figure 19.21 gives three standard STC contours that are of interest because they are used by the Federal Housing Administration (FHA) to specify grades of construction. The criteria for their application are found in Section 19.33. An appreciation of the degree of speech sound insulation provided by walls with different STC ratings is given in Section 19.17 (see Table 19.5). Since the subjective reaction on the quiet side depends upon the background sound level, the table gives this reaction for two NC curve levels. To assist the designer, extensive sound transmission testing has been performed on most types of standard wall and partition construction and the results published. Tables 19.1 and 19.2 and Appendix K give descriptions of constructions with typical details, transmission loss data, STC ratings, and other pertinent data.

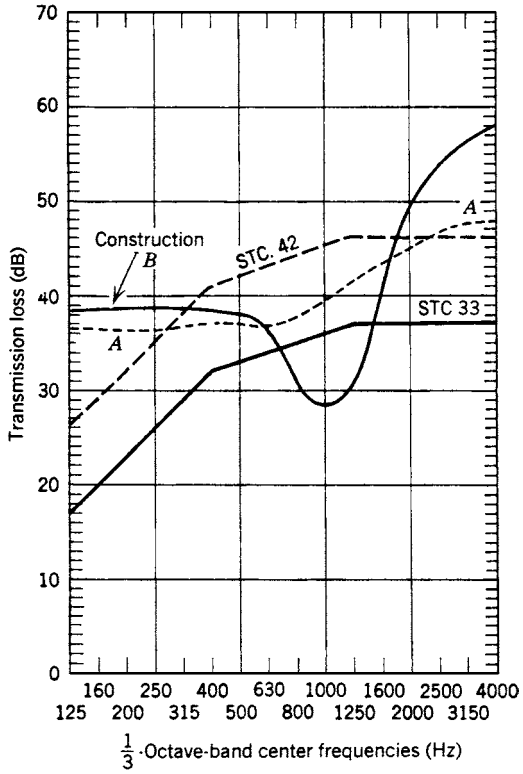


Fig. 19.20 *Curves A and B are two different construction types with the same average transmission loss. However, application of the STC curve criteria (given in Fig. 19.19) yields an STC of only 33 for construction B because of its deep center dip compared to STC of 42 for construction A. (From E. B. Magrab 1975.* Environmental Noise Control. *Wiley. New York.)*

19.12 COMPOSITE WALLS AND LEAKS

It is frequently necessary to determine the transmission loss of a composite wall—that is, a wall with a window, door, louver opening, and the like. It should be appreciated that the two elements are "in parallel," to borrow an electrical concept, and the behavior is similar to that situation. That is, the overall performance will be strongly affected by the poorer of the two, with some tempering of the degradation when the poorer barrier is much smaller in area than the other barrier element. Figure 19.22 enables us to analyze situations of this type.

Since an opening in a wall is effectively a second material of $TL = 0$, the curves in Fig. 19.22 can be replotted for this situation as in Fig. 19.23. Note that the curves very rapidly flatten out; thus, any wall with a 1% open area will have a *maximum* transmission loss of 20 dB, which is all but useless as a sound barrier. For this reason, it is imperative that all openings be completely sealed, particularly those around doors and windows. A hairline crack degrades a wall 6 dB, a keyhole degrades a door 3 dB, and so on. Special considerations for doors and windows are discussed in the next section. Care must also be taken with such common acoustic leaks as back-to-back electric outlets, pipes passing through walls, and medicine cabinets—in fact any break in the integrity of a partition. All such openings must be caulked to

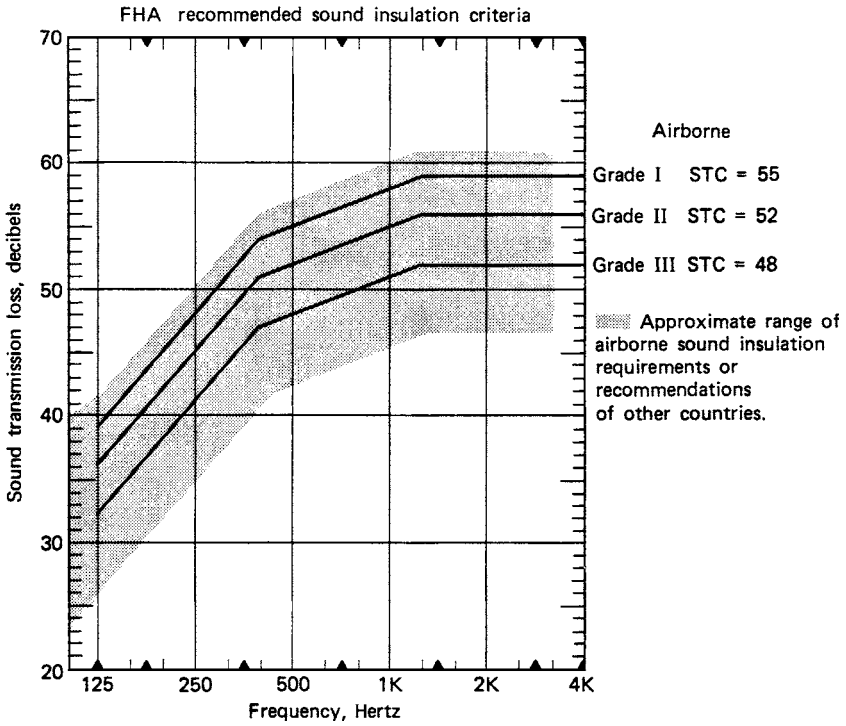


Fig. 19.21 *Sound insulation criteria recommended by the FHA. (From* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, 1968.)*

TABLE 19.1 Improvements in STC Rating of Stud[a] Partitions[b]

Description	STC[c]
Basic partition: single wood studs,16 in. (406 mm) on centers, ½-in. (13-mm) gypsum board on both sides, air cavity	35
Add to basic partition	
Double gypsum board, one side	+2
Double gypsum board, both sides	+4
Single-thickness absorbent material in air cavity	+3
Double-thickness insulation	+6
Resilient channel supports for gypsum board	+5
Staggered studs	+9
Double studs	+13

[a]For application to metal stud partitions, use adders as in note *b*, but begin with STC = 40 for a 3⅝-in. (92-mm) basic partition.

[b]When using two improvements, add an additional +2; for three improvements, add +3.

Example: Improvements to 35 STC basic partition:

Staggered wood studs	+9
Double gypsum board, one side	+2
Single-thickness insulation	+3
Adder (3 improvements)	+3
Total	+17
Total STC	35 + 17 = 52

[c]The STC figures are conservative. Other sources list the same constructions with 1 to 5 points higher STC.

TABLE 19.2 STC Ratings of Masonry Walls

Description	STC[a]
4-in. (102-mm) lightweight[b] hollow block	36
4 in. (102-mm) dense hollow block	38
6-in. (152-mm) lightweight hollow block	41
6-in. (152-mm) dense hollow block	43
8-in. (203-mm) lightweight hollow block	46
8-in. (203-mm) dense hollow block	48
12-in. (305-mm) lightweight hollow block	51
12-in. (305-mm) dense hollow block	53
4-in. (102-mm) brick	41
6-in. (152-mm) brick	45
8-in. (203-mm) brick	49
12-in. (305-mm) brick	54
6-in. (152-mm) solid concrete	47
8-in. (203-mm) solid concrete	50
10-in. (254-mm) solid concrete	53
12-in. (305-mm) solid concrete	56

[a]See note c, Table 19.1.

[b]All ratings of lightweight block assume sealing with paint. Note that this reduces absorption.

Modifications

Add sand to cores of hollow blocks	+3
Add plaster to one side	+2
Add plaster to both sides	+4
Add furring strips, lath and plaster:	
One side	+6
Two sides	+10
Add plaster via resilient mounting:	
One side	+10
Two sides	+15

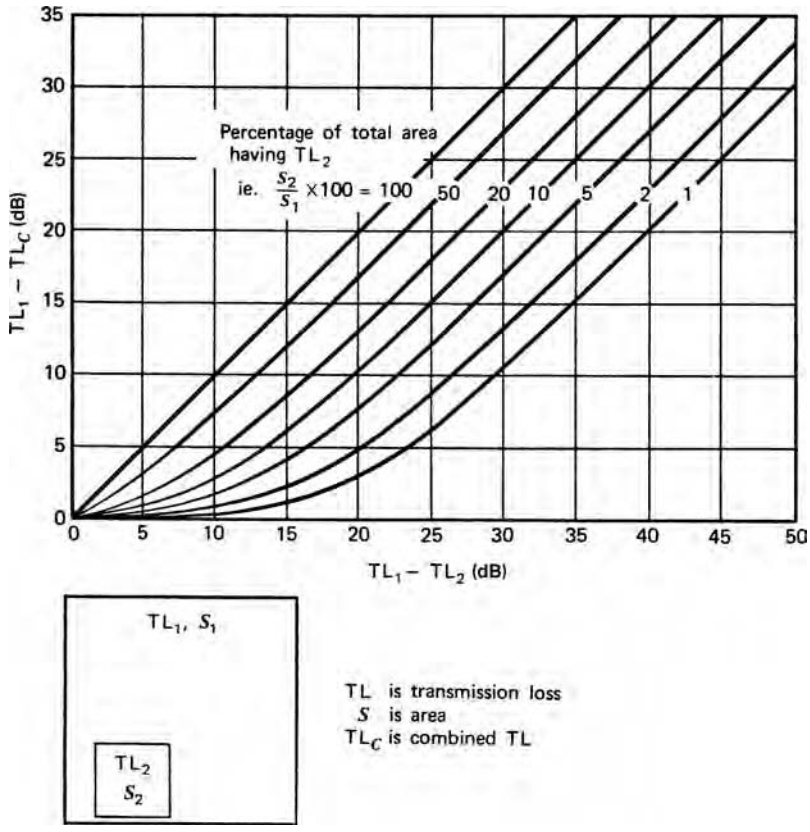


Fig. 19.22 *Transmission loss of a two-element composite barrier as a function of the relative transmission loss of the components. (From E. B. Magrab. 1975.* Environmental Noise Control. *Wiley. New York.)*

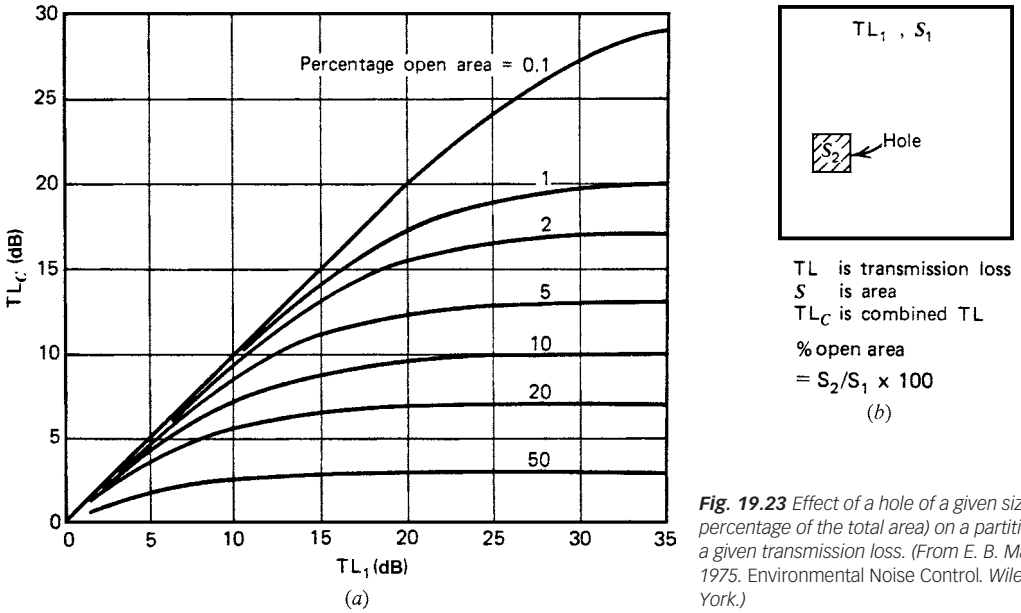


Fig. 19.23 *Effect of a hole of a given size (as a percentage of the total area) on a partition with a given transmission loss. (From E. B. Magrab. 1975.* Environmental Noise Control. *Wiley. New York.)*

make an airtight joint if any appreciable degree of sound insulation is to be maintained.

Examples 19.1 and 19.2 show how barriers of high transmission loss are degraded by standard openings. To maintain the integrity of a barrier, special care must be taken in the design of windows and doors, as explained in Section 19.13.

EXAMPLE 19.1 Given a 9-ft × 18-ft (2.7 × 5.5-m) wall with a transmission loss of 52 dB at 1000 Hz, containing a 3-ft × 7-ft (0.9 × 2.1-m), 6-in. (150-mm) hollow core door of 22 dB transmission loss at that frequency, find the overall transmission loss of the composite wall.

SOLUTION

Refer to Fig. 19.22.

$$TL_1 - TL_2 = 30 \text{ dB}$$

$$\frac{S_2}{S_1} = \frac{3 \times 7.5}{9 \times 18} \times 100 = 13.9\%$$

From the curves in Fig. 19.22:

$$TL_1 - TL_c = 21.5$$

$$TL_c = 52 - 21.5 = 30.5 \text{ dB}$$

That is, a door with an area of only 14% of the entire wall reduces the transmission loss of the structure from 52 to 30.5 dB—that is, from excellent to very poor. ■

EXAMPLE 19.2 An exterior brick/frame wall having a transmission loss of 54 dB at 1000 Hz, measuring 8 ft × 16 ft (2.4 × 4.9 m), is pierced by two wood-frame windows, each of area 3 ft × 4 ft (0.9 × 1.2 m), with single ⅛-in. (3-mm) glass, with a transmission loss of 34 dB at 1000 Hz. Find the combined transmission loss.

SOLUTION

$$TL_1 - TL_2 = 54 - 34 = 20 \text{ dB}$$

$$\frac{S_2}{S_1} = \frac{2 \times 3 \times 4}{8 \times 16} \times 100 = 18.8\%$$

From Fig. 19.22:

$$TL_1 - TL_c = 12.5 \text{ dB}$$

$$TL_c = 54 - 12.5 = 41.5$$

Again, the result is a reduction from an excellent wall to a poor one. ■

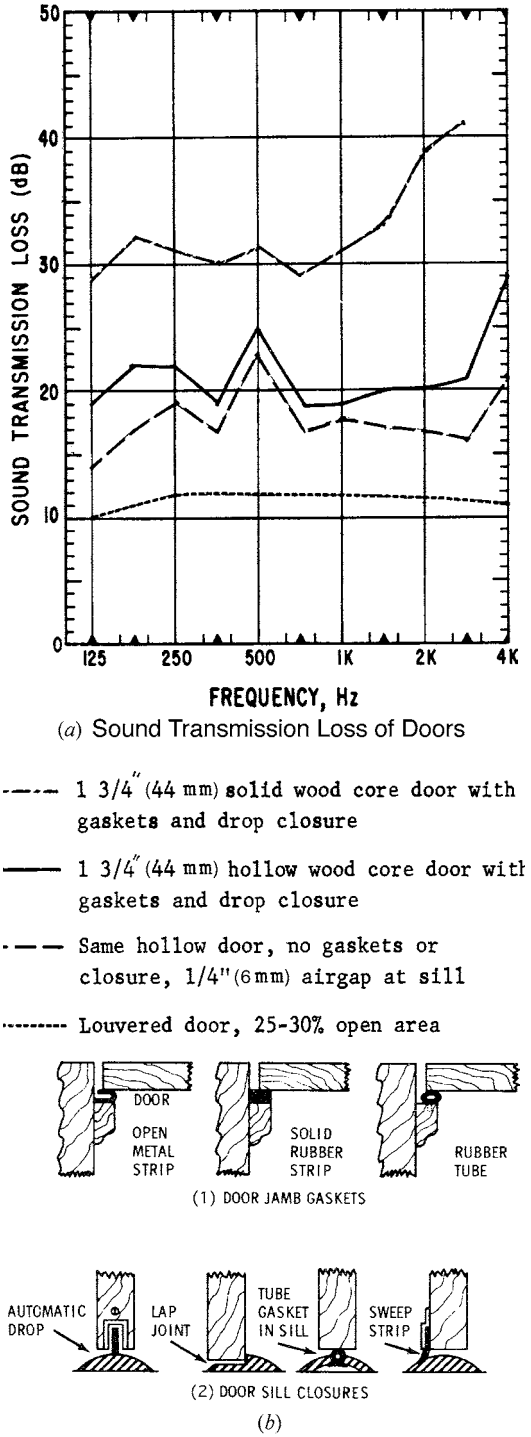


Fig. 19.24 *(a) Chart of typical transmission loss values for representative door constructions as a function of frequency. (b) Method for gasketing a door edge enclosure (1) and sealing the gap between the bottom of the door and the door saddle (2). (Chart and drawings extracted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings, *1968.)*

19.13 DOORS AND WINDOWS

As can be appreciated from the preceding section, doors and windows can in large measure determine the overall transmission loss of a wall. Since in almost every instance doors and windows have a lower acoustic transmission loss than the wall in which they are mounted, particular care must be taken not to degrade performance further with air leaks.

(a) Doors

Figure 19.24 gives nominal transmission loss data for the most common types of doors as a function of frequency. Average transmission loss values for doors, that is, the arithmetic average of the octave band transmission losses in the range of 150 Hz to 3000 Hz, are not useful for two reasons:

- The very important low-frequency attenuation data are absent.
- Sharp peaks and valleys in the curves (see, for instance, the 6-dB peaks at 500 Hz in Fig. 19.24*a*) are unrecognized. As a result, a particularly troublesome frequency may not be sufficiently attenuated. In the absence of a complete frequency analysis, the STC rating of a door is a better indication than an average transmission loss figure. Typical STC values are given in Table 19.3.

Conclusions that can be drawn from inspection of Fig. 19.24*a* are:

1. Louvered doors (and doors undercut to permit air movement) are useless as sound barriers.
2. The most important step in soundproofing doors is complete sealing around the opening. A door in the closed position should exert pressure on gaskets, making the joints airtight (see Fig. 19.24*b*).

TABLE 19.3 Typical STC Values for Doors

Door Construction	STC
Louvered door	15
Any door, 2-in. (51-mm) undercut	17
1½-in. (38-mm) hollow core door, no gasketing	22
1½-in. (38-mm) hollow core door, gaskets and drop closure	25
1¾-in. (45-mm) solid wood door, no gasketing	30
1¾-in. (45-mm) solid wood door, gaskets and drop closure	35
Two hollow core doors, gasketed all around, with sound lock	45
Two solid core doors, gasketed all around, with sound lock	55
Special commercial construction, with lead lining and full sealing	45–65

When a single door does not provide sufficient attenuation and specially constructed high-attenuation commercial acoustic doors are not practical, a simple and very effective technique is the construction of a sound lock consisting of two doors, preferably with sufficient space between them to permit full door swing (see Fig. 19.25). All surfaces in the sound lock should be covered completely by absorbent material and the floor carpeted. Such an arrangement will increase attenuation across the board by at least 10 dB and by as much as 20 dB at some frequencies, depending upon the shape of the sound lock and the type, amount, and mounting of absorptive material in the sound lock. The two doors of the sound lock must be gasketed, as explained in the preceding discussion.

Another important consideration with respect to sound intrusion via doors is the location of a door relative to sources of unwanted sound. This is particularly important in multiple-resident buildings of all types, including private homes, apartment

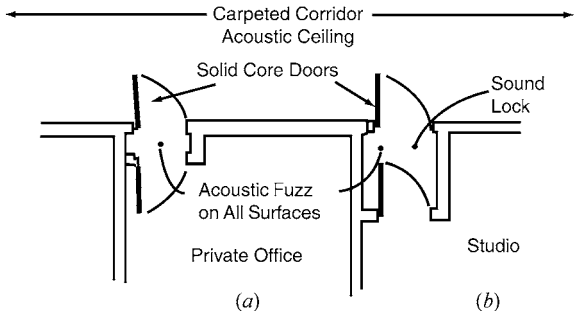


Fig. 19.25 *A two-door sound lock should increase the transmission loss of a door assembly by a minimum of 10 dB for the small lock (a) and 15 dB for the larger one (b), depending upon the type, thickness, and mounting technique of the absorptive material in the lock. The solid core doors must be sealed by one of the techniques shown in Fig. 19.24b.*

houses, dormitories, hotels, and rooming houses. The same principle applies to commercial spaces where numerous private spaces such as offices open onto a common lobby or foyer. Figure 19.26 shows the effect of improvements in door placement.

(b) Windows

Windows are critically important to block exterior noise, and all the more so, since exterior wall construction is generally of high STC, making the window the deciding factor in the composite exterior wall transmission loss. Sound leaks through cracks in closures of operable windows will normally establish a window's rating, regardless of the type of glazing. Fortunately, the attention now given to the sealing of windows for thermal purposes has had a salutary effect on their acoustic properties. As with doors, the importance of proper gasketing and sealing cannot be overemphasized. Double glazing is effective only when the two panes are separated by a wide air gap (Fig. 19.27). A narrow air gap acts as a stiff spring between the panes and transmits sound energy almost unattenuated. The result is approximately that of a single pane of double weight. Note that here too, as with absorptive material, the requirements of acoustic and thermal insulation are opposed. A small sealed air space between panes is desirable for thermal insulation, because a large space allows convection currents to transfer heat. For acoustical purposes, a small sealed space is not very useful, as explained previously, whereas a large space traps acoustic energy and is an effective noise barrier, as is clearly seen in Fig. 19.28.

In addition to a window's sound transmission characteristic when closed, it is important to consider the transmission loss when open because of ventilation and passive cooling requirements. The sound attenuation between the center of a room with a clear-through open window and a point some distance outside is 5 to 15 dB. This drops to about 5 dB as the receiver-observer approaches the open window. By making the path from inside to outside indirect, the open window attenuation can be increased to as much as 25 dB, but with considerable reduction of airflow and hence ventilation capacity. Several possible arrangements with approximate mid-frequency transmission loss figures are given in Fig. 19.29. This principle can be applied advantageously when exterior noise reduction is important but

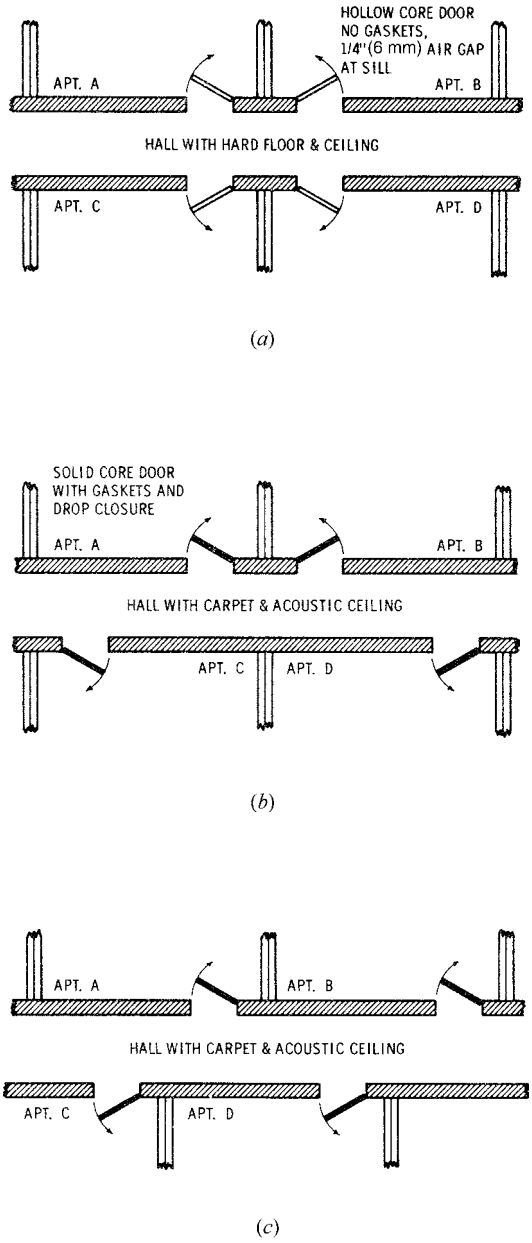


Fig. 19.26 *Proper arrangement of doors to rooms on a common corridor can diminish noise transfer in the area. (a) Poor arrangement because any noise emanating from one of the rooms or from the corridor has a very short and unattenuated path into the remaining rooms. (b) Better arrangement than plan (a) because noise from any source must travel a minimum of a room width along an absorbent corridor to reach any other room. Noise to the remaining rooms is further attenuated. The weak point of this plan is a noise short circuit via adjacent doors for Apt. A and Apt. B. Plan (c) is best because there are no short circuits for sound travel. Although the A–C and B–D paths are slightly shorter than in plan (b), the difference would not be noticeable. (Extracted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings, *1968.)*

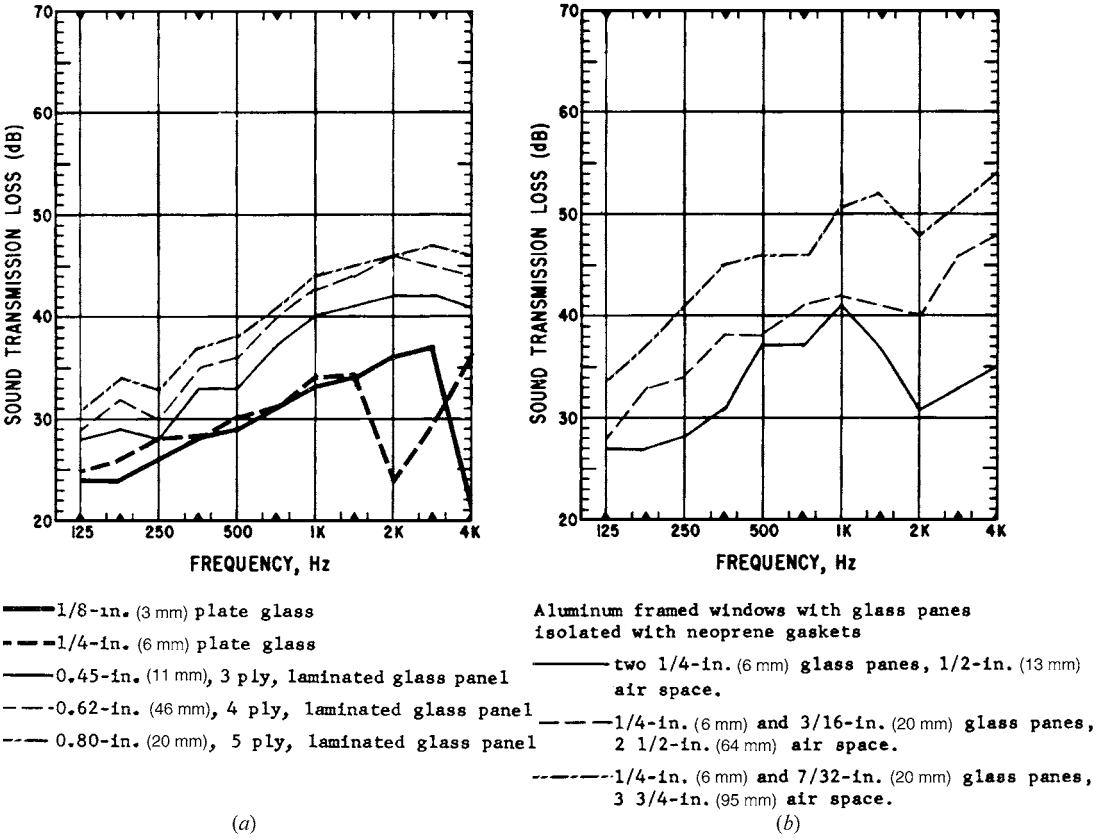


Fig. 19.27 *(a) Sound transmission loss frequency spectrum shows the effect of thickening glass. The ¼-in. (6-mm) plate shows a very sharp (10-dB) coincidence dip at 2 kHz, making it less effective than ⅛-in. (3-mm) plate between 1500 Hz and 2500 Hz. Further thickening with laminated glass eliminates the coincidence drop but reaches a practical limit at about ½-in. (13-mm) thickness. (b) Note that two ¼-in. (6-mm) panes with a ½-in. (13-mm) air space act as a stiff, thick pane and exhibit the sharp coincidence drop at 2 kHz. Larger sealed inter-pane air spaces markedly improve the acoustic insulation performance.*

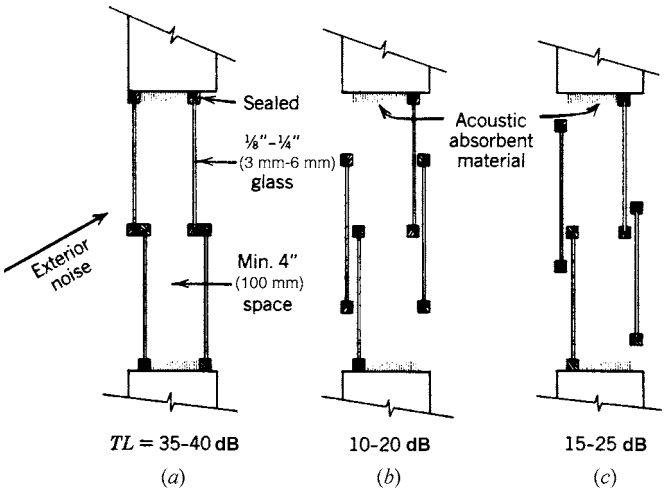


Fig. 19.28 *The degree of attenuation of external noise can be regulated with acoustic sealant and absorbent materials when using pairs of double-hung (or horizontally sliding) windows. Ventilation airflow varies inversely with transmission loss.*

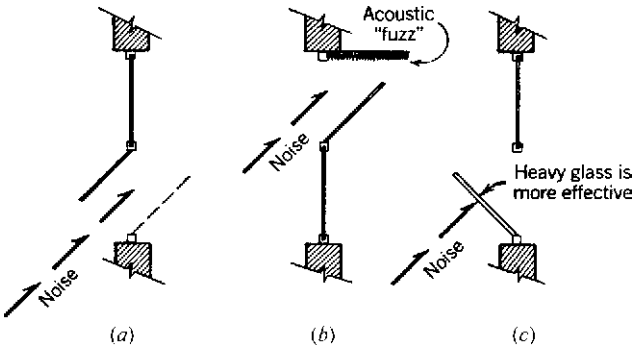


Fig. 19.29 *Alternative arrangements of the same basic "hopper" window design can yield results differing by as much as 10 dB. Design (a) is entirely open, and the noise path is unobstructed deep into the room. Design (b) is about 5 dB better than (a) at frequencies above 1 kHz because of higher absorption and less diffraction. Lower frequencies diffract readily around the window leaf and are less affected by absorptive material. Design (c) can be 10 dB better than (a), particularly at high frequencies, because it interposes a rigid barrier into the noise path. In this arrangement, the glass thickness is important.*

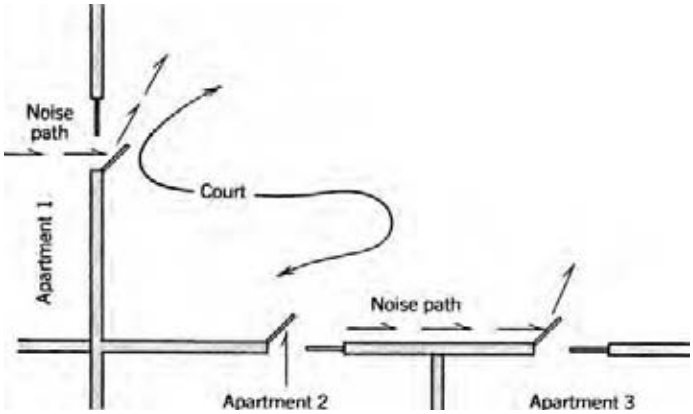


Fig. 19.30 *Noise transfer between contiguous corner spaces, as in Apartments 1 and 2, can be particularly severe if windows are improperly designed. Swinging windows, as shown, are preferable to double-hung or hopper windows because they reflect sound away from the adjacent space. Similarly, adjacent spaces on the same wall, such as Apartments 2 and 3, can benefit from this type of swinging arrangement, which is preferable to sliding or double-hung designs.*

sealed windows are undesirable. Window-opening style and placement can also have an effect on the amount of exterior noise admitted, as shown in Figs. 19.29 and 19.30. Typical STC ratings of common window constructions are given in Table 19.4.

TABLE 19.4 Typical STC Values for Windows

Window Construction	STC
Operable wood sash, ⅛-in. (3.2-mm) glass, unsealed	23
Operable wood sash, ¼-in. (6.4-mm) glass, unsealed	25
Operable wood sash, ¼-in. (6.4-mm) glass, gasketed	30
Operable wood sash, laminated glass, unsealed	28
Operable wood sash, double-glazed, ⅛-in. (3.2-mm) panes, ⅜-in. (9.5-mm) air space, gasketed	29
Fixed sash, double ⅛-in. (3.2-mm) panes, 3-in. (76-mm) air space, gasketed	44
Fixed sash, double ⅛-in. (3.2-mm) panes, 4-in. (102-mm) air space, gasketed	48

19.14 DIFFRACTION: BARRIERS

The physical process by which sound passes around obstructions and through very small openings is called *diffraction*. Simply stated, diffraction is a process whereby any point on a sound wave establishes a new wave when passing an obstacle. Thus, although much of a sound wave is blocked by a small opening, the portion that does get through establishes a new wave front (see Fig. 19.18*e*). The *amplitude* of the diffracted wave is determined by the relationship between the size of the opening and the wavelengths of the signal components. For a small hole, short wavelengths (high frequencies) are attenuated less than long wavelengths (low frequencies). See Fig. 19.31.

When sound encounters a finite-length barrier, it diffracts around and over it, approximately as shown in Fig. 19.32. The attenuation of the

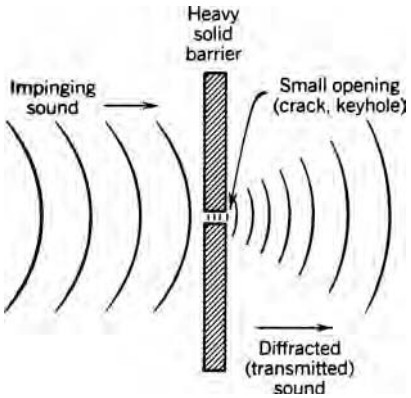


Fig. 19.31 *Sound passes through small openings by diffraction. The intensity of the transmitted sound is proportional both to its frequency and to the size of the opening. It is always less than the intensity of the impinging sound.*

diffracted sound depends upon the frequency, type of source, and dimensions of the barrier. For a *point source*, with only a single *practical* path around the obstruction (barrier), the noise reduction in decibels can be calculated from Maekawa's empirical equation (in I-P units):

$$NR = 20 \log \left[\frac{\sqrt{2\pi N}}{\tanh \sqrt{2\pi N}} \right] + 5 \text{ dB} \qquad (19.4)$$

where

$N = (f/565)(A + B - d)$

NR = noise reduction, dB

f = frequency, Hz

$A + B$ = shortest path length around the barrier, ft (over or around)

d = straight-line distance, source-to-receiver, ft

tanh = hyperbolic tangent

Note that this equation:

1. Is applicable only to exterior barriers where sound passing over the barrier is partially diffracted and partially attenuated by distance. In an interior situation, sound passing over a partial height barrier (see Fig. 19.40) strikes the ceiling and is reflected down, increasing the received

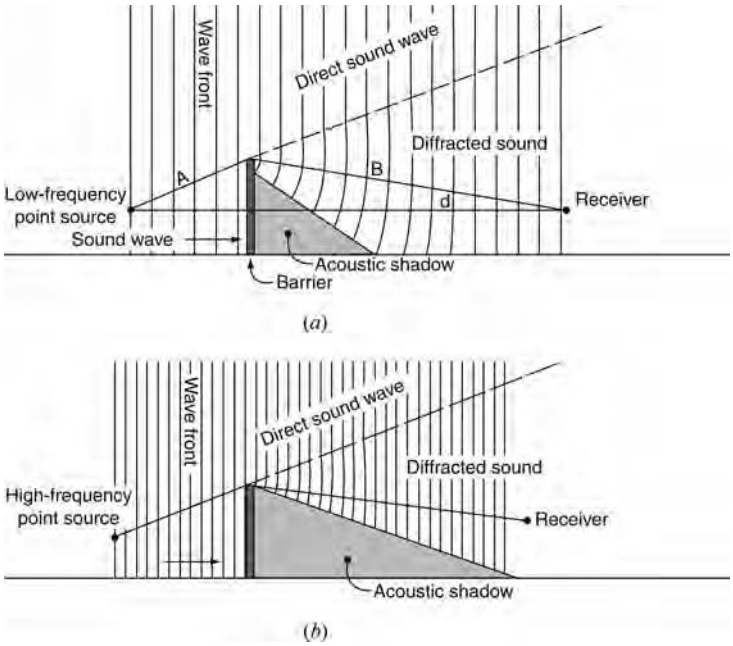


Fig. 19.32 *Comparison of the effect of a barrier on sources of different frequencies. The low-frequency sound (a) diffracts more readily over the barrier than the high-frequency sound (b) because of its longer wavelength. Thus, the lower the frequency, the smaller the acoustic shadow and the lower the barrier attenuation. The shadow is not as sharply defined as shown; it represents increasing attenuation closer to the barrier*

sound and effectively reducing barrier attenuation. Maximum exterior barrier attenuation is 24 dB as compared to about 15 dB for a partial-height interior partition.

2. Assumes that the barrier is very long (or very high), so that only one sound path exists. In practice, a barrier whose length (height) is at least four times the distance between the source and the wall is sufficient if *the barrier is close to the source*. If the barrier is close to the receiver, it must be longer (higher) still.

3. Assumes a point source. Line sources (such as traffic) show 20 to 25% less attenuation for the same barrier.

The equation will, however, give reliable, usable results when the dimensions of the source are small with respect to the barrier, as is the case for speech; individual motors, fans, engines, and other mechanical devices; and individual motor vehicles. The chart in Fig. 3.22 relates barrier dimensions and position to traffic noise reduction. Note that frequency is not a variable on the chart, since it has been plotted for an average attenuation at 220 Hz, which is the center frequency for random car and truck traffic.

It should be apparent that the best location for a barrier is either very close to the source or very close to the receiver. The worst position for attenuation is halfway between them. All effective barriers are assumed to be opaque and to have a minimum surface density of 5 lb/ft^2 (~25 kg/m^2). The inherent transmission loss of the barrier need not be very high; a massively thick barrier has only marginally higher attenuation than one with the aforementioned minimum surface weight. Absorptive material placed on the source side of a barrier will reduce the noise reflected back toward the source but will not effectively increase the barrier's attenuation with respect to the receiver. Although the maximum theoretical noise reduction of an *exterior* barrier is about 24 dB, in practice it rarely exceeds 20 dB. Figure 19.33 is a nomograph based upon Equation 19.4.

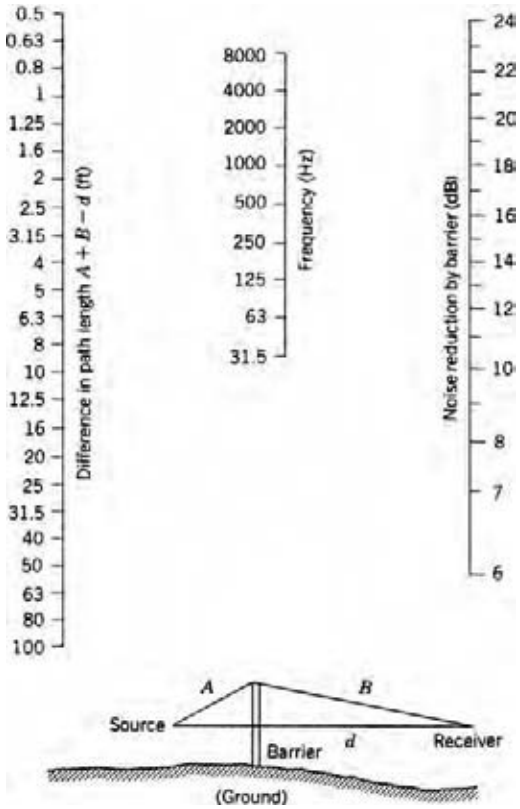


Fig. 19.33 *This nomograph for estimating the noise reduction afforded by a barrier is based on Equation 19.4 and assumes a point (small) source and only a single path around the barrier. The dimensions* A, B, *and* d *are taken from the insert sketch. Dimensions* A *plus* B *represent the shortest path around the barrier—which may be over or around it. (Reprinted with permission from B. Fader. 1981.* Industrial Noise Control. *Wiley. New York.)*

19.15 FLANKING

Just as sound will pass through the acoustically weakest part of a composite wall, it will also find parallel or flanking paths, that is, an acoustic short circuit. Proper design of window locations to avoid flanking paths has already been shown in Fig. 19.30. The same situation obtains with respect to doors, as shown in Fig. 19.26, and any other openings between spaces. Thus, in Fig. 19.34, a high-STC wall between the two spaces is in large measure defeated by flanking paths F5, F6, and F7. In other spaces the most common flanking path is via the plenum, as in Fig. 19.34 (path F1) and in Figs. 19.35*b* and 19.35*d*. Ductwork (with registers or grilles in various rooms) acts as an excellent intercom system unless it is completely lined with sound-absorptive material (see Section 19.27). Even then, low-frequency sound is only minimally attenuated, and special measures must be employed if good transmission loss is required. This subject is discussed further in Sections 19.25 to 19.27.

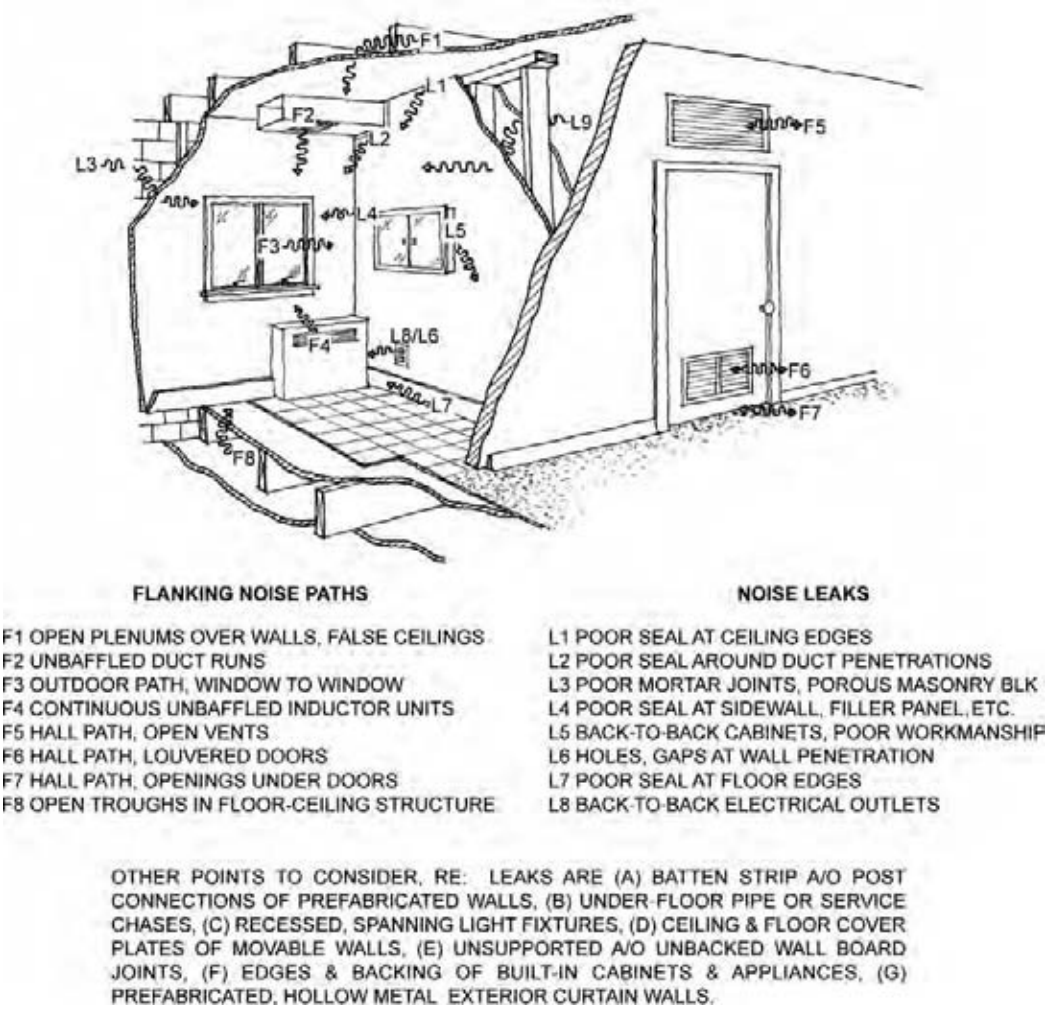


Fig. 19.34 *Flanking transmission of airborne noise. (Reprinted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, 1968. Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

SPEECH PRIVACY

19.16 PRINCIPLES OF SPEECH PRIVACY BETWEEN ENCLOSED SPACES

The subject of speech privacy has always been of paramount importance in office design. Numerous studies have demonstrated that productivity and noise are related inversely when the noise carries information. When noise does not carry information, it can be annoying and therefore counterproductive or it can be useful as a masking sound, depending upon its frequency content, intensity level, and constancy. Referring to Section 19.7, which discusses the noise reduction of an *airtight* barrier between two spaces, we saw that the sound intensity levels in the source room (1) and the receiving room (2) are related by the expression

$$IL_2 = IL_1 - NR$$

where NR is noise reduction, and IL_2 and IL_1 are sound intensity levels in the receiving and source rooms, respectively. If the receiving room is completely quiet and has no sound source other than the

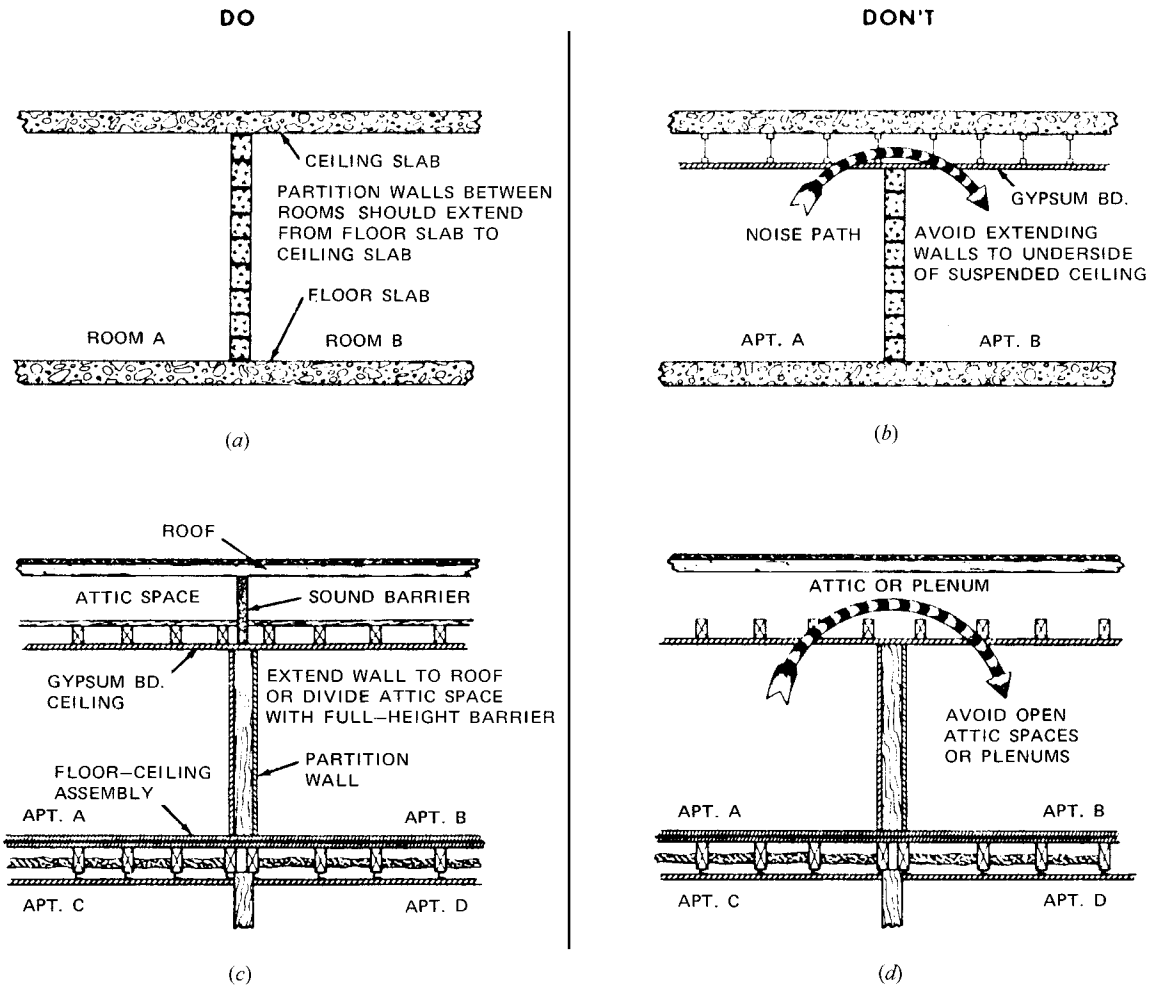


Fig. 19.35 *Construction technique recommendations to avoid flanking paths. (Reprinted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, 1968.)*

transmitted sound (essentially IL_2), then that sound will always be a potential source of annoyance to the occupant of the receiving room as long as its intensity level is above the hearing threshold. If, however, there is a *constant* ambient sound level in the receiving room, then, depending upon its characteristics, it may mask the transmitted sound IL_2, even to the extent of making it completely inaudible. In most instances, however, it simply reduces or eliminates annoyance without completely masking the source. What we hear (and therefore what can potentially be a source of disturbance) depends upon our level of attention both to what we are doing and to the intrusive sound. (A remarkable exception is the ability of some, generally young, students to study in the presence of very loud, familiar—and therefore information-bearing—music. Indeed, some claim that they can *only* study that way.)

Tests have shown that a majority of adults will not consider an intruding noise level IL_2 to be annoying if the intensity of a properly designed background sound is either greater than or no more than 2 dB less than IL_2. Thus, a transmitted IL_2 of 40 dBA will not be considered annoying by most people if the level of the background sound is at least 38 dBA. The upper level of usable background masking sound is usually taken to be about 50 dBA. Any higher intensity level will itself become a source of annoyance. Figure 19.36 gives a graphic representation of the relation between transmitted and

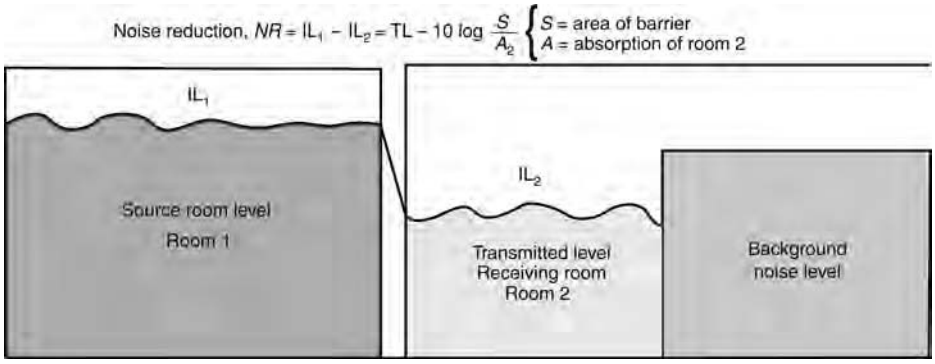


Fig. 19.36 *The background noise level determines whether a transmitted sound will actually be heard. In this case, because the background noise level is considerably higher than the transmitted level from the adjacent room, the transmitted noise will not be noticeable (i.e., it will be masked).*

background sound levels in a receiving room. By way of summarizing the preceding discussion, we can simply state that the degree of *speech privacy* in a space is a function of two factors:

- The degree of sound insulation provided by the barriers between rooms
- The ambient sound level in the receiving room.

19.17 SOUND ISOLATION DESCRIPTORS

Since the degree of intrusiveness of extraneous noise in a space varies, depending as it does upon both transmitted and ambient sound, having a descriptive scale of some sort is appropriate. If we restrict our discussion to speech sounds, since ultimately we are interested in office design, where speech is the primary sound source, then a descriptive scale, as shown in Table 19.5, can be established. With these absolute descriptions in mind, and remembering that the hearing condition in a receiving room can be altered by changing either the barrier characteristics or the background sound level, *or both*, we can express the effectiveness of a construction as a speech sound barrier in terms of its STC for a given ambient sound level. Since the ambient sound (noise) level is frequency dependent, it can be approximated by an NC value. This is particularly useful when the ambient sound level is generated by machinery or by the sound of an air-conditioning system rather than by a shaped signal from an electronic masking sound system.

Table 19.6 shows the hearing conditions in a receiving room with an NC-25 background noise as a function of the barrier STC rating. If the background noise level were raised to NC-30, then each descriptor would roughly increase one level in quality (i.e., poor would become fair, fair would become good, and so forth). Stated otherwise, the *apparent* isolation provided by a barrier may be increased by

TABLE 19.5 Relative Quality of Sound Isolation

Ranking	Descriptor	Hearing Condition[a]
6	Total privacy	Shouting barely audible.
5	Excellent	Normal voice levels not audible. Raised voices barely audible but not intelligible.
4	Very good	Normal voice levels barely audible. Raised voices audible but largely unintelligible.
3	Good	Normal voice levels audible but generally unintelligible. Raised voices partially intelligible.
2	Fair	Normal voice levels audible and intelligible some of the time. Raised voices generally intelligible.
1	Poor	Normal voice audible and intelligible most of the time.
0	None	Normal voice levels always intelligible.

[a]Hearing condition in the presence of ambient noise, if any.

TABLE 19.6 Relation between Barrier STC and Hearing Condition on the Receiving Side, Background Noise Level at NC-25

Barrier STC	Hearing Condition	Descriptor and Ranking[a]	Application
25	Normal speech can be understood quite easily and distinctly through the wall.	Poor/1	Space divider
30	Loud speech can be understood fairly well. Normal speech can be heard but not easily understood.	Fair/2	Room divider where concentration is not essential
35	Loud speech can be heard but is not easily intelligible. Normal speech can be heard only faintly, if at all.	Very Good/4	Suitable for offices next to quiet spaces
42–45	Loud speech can be faintly heard but not understood. Normal speech is inaudible.	Excellent/5	For dividing noisy and quiet areas; party wall between apartments
46–50	Very loud sounds (such as loud singing, brass musical instruments, or a radio at full volume) can be heard only faintly or not at all.	Total Privacy/6	Music room, practice room, sound studio, bedrooms adjacent to noisy areas

[a]See Table 19.5.

raising the background (masking) sound level in the receiving room. Figure 19.37 shows two conditions of adjacent spaces. Although the source room level is uniform and partitions on both sides of the source room are identical, the background sound in the two receiving rooms is different. In *A*, the background is NC-35; in *B*, it is NC-25. The occupant of room *A* is not disturbed by the little heard from the source room. The occupant of room *B* hears clearly. Occupant *A* will probably praise the partition, whereas occupant *B* will complain. Although the levels of reradiated sound are identical in the two receiving rooms, the intruding signal is masked by the background sound in *A*, but it is clearly audible in *B*. Thus, the apparent noise reduction is substantially higher in *A* than in *B*. This clearly demonstrates the effectiveness of masking sound in providing *apparent* sound isolation and speech privacy.

Sound isolation can also be improved by careful planning. Storage and circulation areas can serve as buffers for noise-sensitive areas. Physical separation of noisy areas from quiet ones often eliminates the need for complicated and expensive compound barriers.

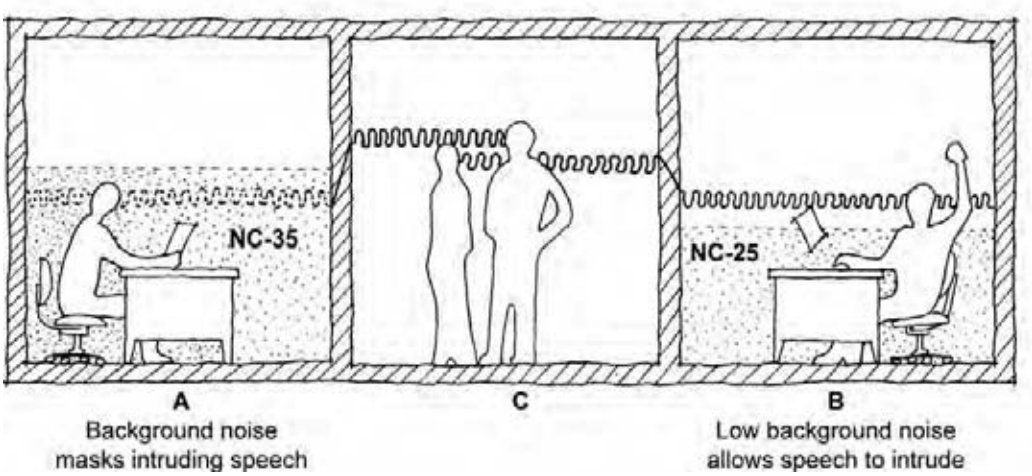


Fig. 19.37 *The occupant in room* A *with background noise NC-35 (≈ 45 dBA) is unaware of the noise (loud speech from room* C*) that is so disturbing to occupant* B*, whose NC-25 (≈ 36 dBA) is insufficient to mask the transmitted noise. (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering.)*

19.18 SPEECH PRIVACY DESIGN FOR ENCLOSED SPACES

The study of speech privacy received considerable emphasis with the advent of open-plan offices (office landscaping), although the same problem prevails with both open and enclosed office designs. Essentially, the problem was to determine the factors affecting speech privacy and to quantify them with a degree of accuracy sufficient for design purposes. It rapidly became evident that although the physical principles are the same, the solutions to speech privacy design problems are radically different for closed spaces and for open-plan offices.

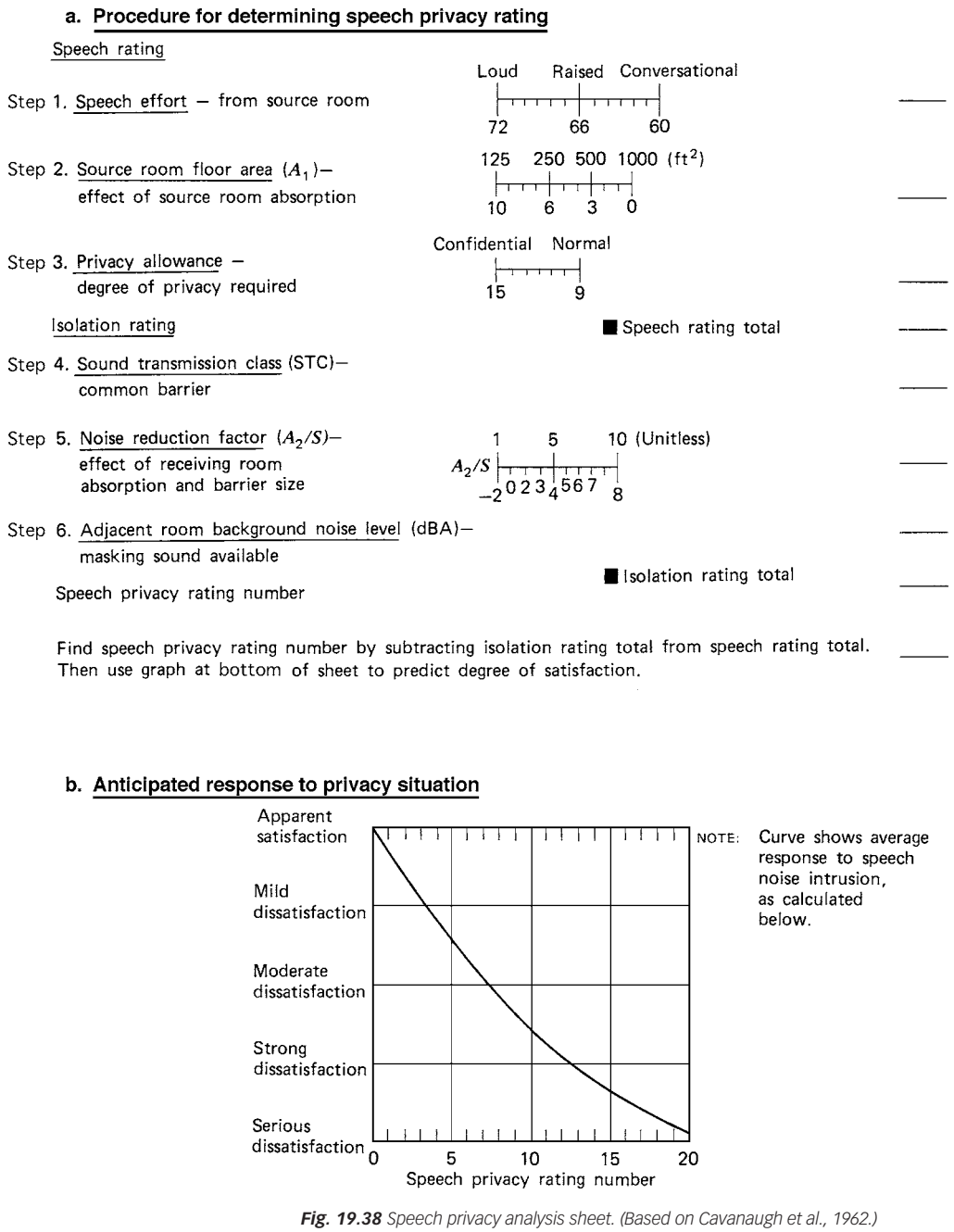


Fig. 19.38 *Speech privacy analysis sheet. (Based on Cavanaugh et al., 1962.)*

In the former, the acoustic character of an airtight barrier between two spaces is the crucial element in the design, because all of the interspace sound transmission is through this barrier. In contrast, sound transmission between adjacent "cubicles" in an open office is primarily the result of *reflected* and *refracted* sound, with the direct component passing through the barrier being of secondary importance. As a result, the acoustic transmission characteristics of the barrier also become secondary in importance.

Studies indicate that six factors are involved in enclosed-space speech privacy, which can be subsumed under two headings (Fig. 19.38):

1. Speech rating of the source room (Room No. 1)
   a. Speech effort—a measure of the loudness of speech.
   b. Source room factor—gives the approximate effect of room absorption on the speech level in the source room. The scale in Fig. 19.38 is drawn for average absorption. For live rooms, raise the factor by 2 points; for dead rooms, lower it by 2 points. Factors $a + b$ give the approximate source-room voice level.
   c. Privacy allowance—what is the measure of privacy required?

The privacy criteria definitions used in this step (Fig. 19.38, Step 3) are:

Normal privacy—such that the receiving-room occupant can understand a small portion of normal voice conversation in the source room by listening intently. This corresponds to "Good" and a ranking of 3 in Table 19.5. It was found that most occupants can work normally with this level of speech intrusion.

Confidential privacy—assumes that only a few words will occasionally be intelligible. This privacy level corresponds to "Excellent" and a ranking of 5 in Table 19.5. The six speech-rating points between Normal Privacy (9 points) and Confidential (15 points) in Fig. 19.38 correspond roughly to a 5-dB difference. If we remember that a sound intensity differential of 3 dB is barely perceptible, 6 dB is clearly noticeable, and 10 dB is a doubling of perceived sound (Table 17.3), we can appreciate that the difference between *normal* and *confidential* privacy is small and calls for accurate design, plus a measure of field adjustment of masking sound.

2. Isolation rating of the receiving room (Room No. 2)
   d. The STC rating of the barrier. Table 19.7 gives some typical STC ratings for office partitions.
   e. The noise reduction factor A_2/S is an indication of receiving-room absorption, that is, the difference between *NR* and *TL*, where A_2 is the area of the receiving room and *S* is the area of the barrier between the rooms. Absorption is assumed to be average. For live rooms, lower this factor 2 points; for dead rooms, raise it 2 points.
   f. For the recommended background noise level in the receiving room, use Table 19.8.

TABLE 19.7 Typical STC Ratings of Interior Partitions

Type of Partition	STC
Demountable partition	STC 20–30
Drywall partition up to acoustical ceiling	STC 30
Drywall partition extending 12 in. (305 mm) above acoustical ceiling tile system into ceiling plenum	STC 35
Drywall partition with cavity insulation, full height to the underside of slab above	STC 40–45
Two-layer drywall partition with insulation, erected full height to underside of slab above	STC 50

An analysis sheet for enclosed spaces is provided in Fig. 19.38 (see also Cavanaugh et al., 1962, and Young, 1965.) The two examples of this analysis that follow should clarify its use. The reader should follow the analysis with Fig. 19.38 in hand. The numbered steps in the examples correspond to the numbers in the figure.

EXAMPLE 19.3. Evaluate the effectiveness of a partition.

Source room:

General clerical office, 40 × 60 × 9 ft (12.2 × 18.3 × 2.7 m), average $\bar{\alpha}$, 16-ft- (4.9-m) long full-height partition, STC 40

Receiving room:

Conference room, 16 × 24 ft (4.9 × 7.3 m), medium-dead room

Background noise level, 40 dBA (NC-30) (from Table 19.8)

TABLE 19.8 Suggested Noise Criteria Ranges for Steady Background Noise

Type of Space (and Acoustical Requirements)	NC Curve	Equivalent[a] dBA
Concert halls, opera houses, and recital halls (for listening to faint musical sounds).	10–20	20–30
Broadcast and recording studios (distant microphone pickup used).	15–20	25–30
Large auditoriums, large drama theatres, and houses of worship (for excellent listening conditions).	20–25	30–35
Broadcast, television, and recording studios (close microphone pickup only).	20–25	30–35
Small auditoriums, small theatres, small churches, music rehearsal rooms, large meeting and conference rooms (for good listening), or executive offices and conference rooms for 50 people (no amplification).	25–30	35–40
Bedrooms, sleeping quarters, hospitals, residences, apartments, hotels, motels, and so forth (for sleeping, resting, relaxing).	25–35	35–45
Private or semiprivate offices, small conference rooms, classrooms, libraries, and so forth (for good listening conditions).	30–35	40–45
Living rooms and similar spaces in dwellings (for conversing or listening to radio and TV).	35–45	45–55
Large offices, reception areas, retail shops and stores, cafeterias, restaurants, and so forth (for moderately good listening conditions).	35–50	45–60
Lobbies, laboratory work spaces, drafting and engineering rooms, general secretarial areas (for fair listening conditions).	40–45	50–55
Light maintenance shops, office and computer equipment rooms, kitchens, and laundries (for moderately fair listening conditions).	45–60	55–70
Shops, garages, power-plant control rooms, and so forth (for just acceptable speech and telephone communication). Levels above PNC-60 are not recommended for any office or communication situation.	—	—
For work spaces where speech or telephone communication is not required, but where there must be no risk of hearing damage.	—	—

Source: Extracted with permission from E. B. Magrab, *Environmental Noise Control*, Wiley, New York, 1975.

[a]For information only. These data are not part of the NC information and do not appear in the source.

Privacy analysis (using I-P units as per Fig. 19.38):

(a) 1. Speech effort: raised 66
2. Area $A_1 > 1000$ ft^2 0
3. Privacy—normal 9
Speech rating $a = 75$
(b) 4. STC (given) 40
5. A_2/S 3
$(16 \times 24)/(16 \times 9) = 2.6$, corresponding to 2 on the scale; add 1 for higher than average $\bar{\alpha}$
6. Background noise level 40
Isolation rating $b = 83$
Speech privacy rating $a - b = -8$

The partition performance is acceptable. In fact, the STC rating of the partition can be reduced to 32 without affecting speech privacy. ■

EXAMPLE 19.4. Evaluate speech privacy.

Source room:
Drafting room 20 × 30 ft (6.1 × 9.1 m), medium-live
Common wall 12 × 8 ft (3.7 × 2.4 m) high
STC: 26 (half glass, with door)

Receiving room:
Supervisor's office, 12 × 14 × 8 ft (3.7 × 4.3 × 2.4 m), average absorption
Background noise level, 35 dBA

Privacy analysis (using I-P units as per Fig. 19.38) :

1. Speech effort—conversation 60
2. Source room factor:
For area +2
For liveness +1 Total +3
3. Privacy—(almost) confidential 13
Speech rating $a = 76$
4. STC (given) 26
5. A_2/S
$(12 \times 14)/(12 \times 8) = 1.8$, corresponding to a reduction factor of 1.6; gives 2.0 on the scale since the method uses whole numbers only. No adder required for average absorption.
Therefore, 2 + 0 = 2
6. Background noise level 35
Isolation rating: $b = 63$
Speech privacy rating $a - b = 13$
which indicates strong dissatisfaction

The suggested corrections are to increase the wall STC to 36 by gasketing the door and to increase

ACOUSTICS

the background noise level in the receiving room to 40 dBA (NC-30). This would give a speech privacy rating of –2, as follows:

STC of barrier	36
A_2/S	2
Background noise	40
Isolation rating	78

Speech privacy rating = $a - b = 76 - 78 = -2$

This result should be satisfactory according to the chart in Fig. 19.38. ■

19.19 PRINCIPLES OF SPEECH PRIVACY IN OPEN-AREA OFFICES

The huge increase in the service sectors of the world economy has brought with it a corresponding increase in desk jobs, each of which is often equipped with a computer console. This trend has also necessitated increased space density for office workers, made possible by the general elimination of paper storage (files) and the corresponding elimination of the necessity for employees to continually move about. The increased density problem has been largely solved by open-office plans with ever-smaller "cubicles," usually with single occupancy, but recently also with dual occupancy. This situation has obviously aggravated the serious problem of annoyance due to the intrusion of speech sounds from neighboring workers, that is, a lack of *speech privacy*.

Since production is adversely affected by the inability of a worker to concentrate because of annoyance with speech intrusion—an annoyance that usually *increases* over time—the proper design of open office plans can have major economic benefits.

(a) Sound Paths in Open Offices

In contrast to the single, or at most dual, sound paths that exist with full-height enclosures (Fig. 19.39), the sound paths in an open-plan arrangement (including first reflections) are direct, diffracted, ceiling reflected, and laterally reflected (Figs. 19.40 and 19.41). Careful study of these illustrations shows a number of important facts affecting speech privacy in open offices.

1. The angles of reflection of sound waves from the ceiling depend upon the location and height of the source and the ceiling height (Fig. 19.40*a*). Measurements have shown that these angles vary from a minimum of 30° for a standing speaker in the center of a cubicle to a maximum of 60° for a speaker close to, and facing, a partition for ceiling heights of up to 9 ft (2.7 m). Since much of the sound energy reaching an adjacent occupant does so after reflecting off the ceiling at these angles

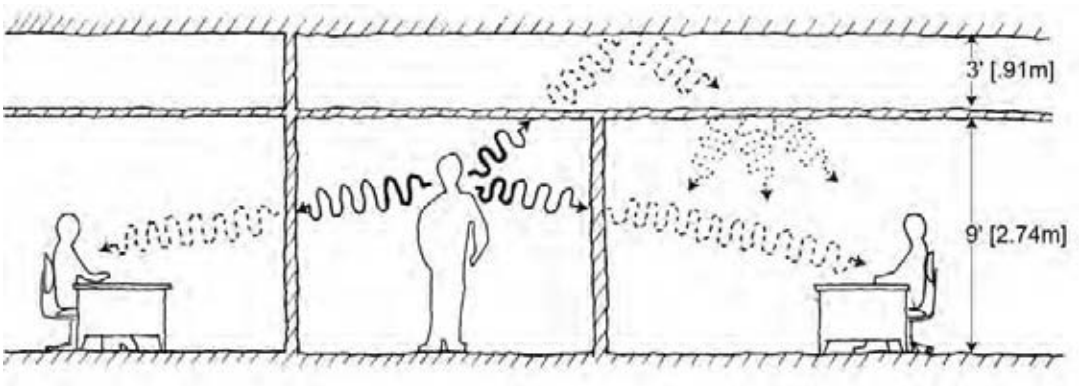
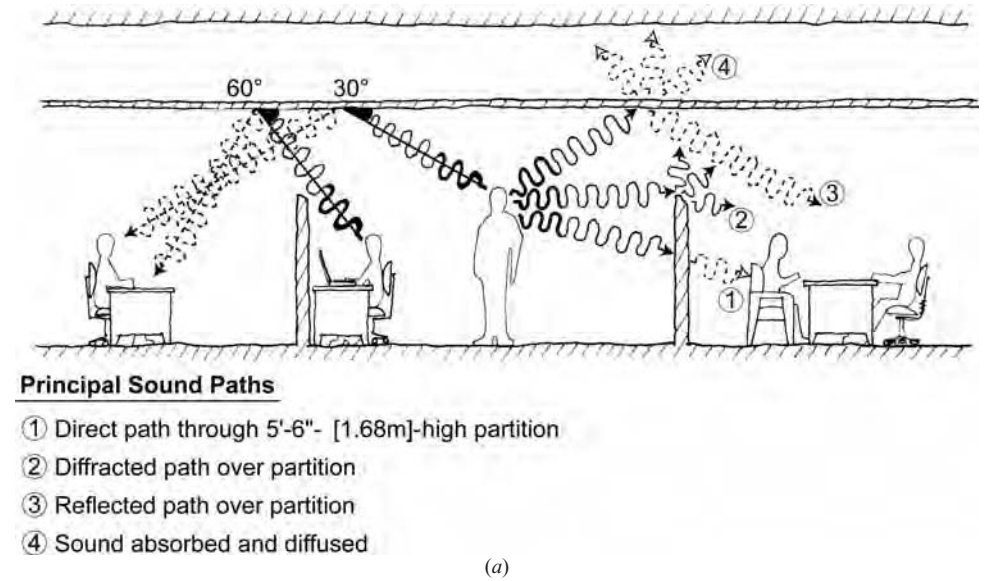
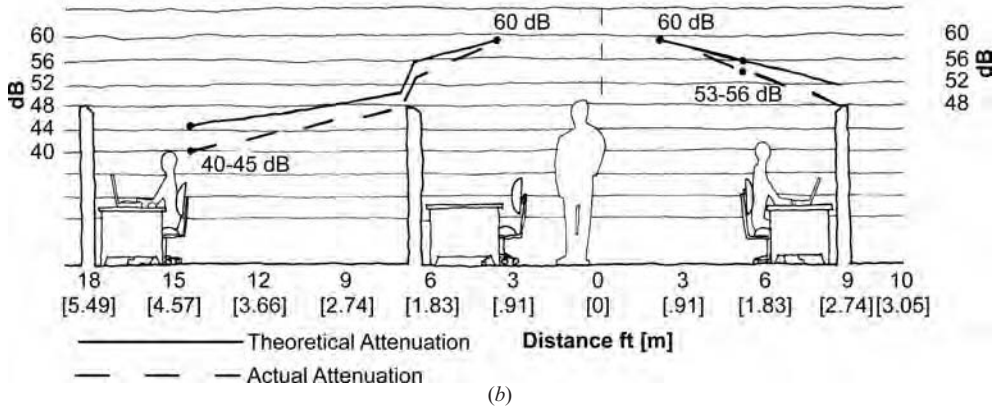


Fig. 19.39 *Sound paths between enclosed spaces are determined by the type of barrier separating them. In the case of a full-height barrier reaching to the underside of the ceiling slab, the only sound path is through the barrier, and its STC determines the sound pressure (noise) level in the receiving room. In the case of a ceiling-height partition with an overhead plenum, most of the sound energy will travel the upper, less attenuating path. Factors affecting the level of received sound are the ceiling's CAC rating (Ceiling Attenuation Class, indicative of its transmission characteristic) and the acoustic characteristics of the plenum, including all of its contents. In all cases, sound within a reasonably absorptive space attenuates with increasing distance. (Drawing by Jonathan Meendering.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 19.40 *(a) The principal sound paths between occupancies in an open office plan are (1) direct, (2) diffracted, (3) ceiling reflected, and (4) reflected from the slab above the plenum. Only paths (2) and (3) are problematic from the speech privacy viewpoint, requiring masking sound. Note that the angle of incidence of the sound wave at the ceiling varies from 30° for a standing speaker to 60° for a seated speaker, requiring a ceiling material of high absorption between these angles. Large VDT screens (17–19 in. [432–482 mm]), in common use, create another path of strongly reflected sound. (b) Sound is attenuated by distance, dropping 4–6 dB for each doubling of the distance from the source (6 dB in the open; 4 dB in enclosed spaces due to interreflections). Average SPL of conversational speech is 60 dBA at 3 ft (0.9 m) from a speaker. Attenuation of a diffracted signal at a partial-height partition is 4–8 dB. Note that the diffracted sound (without a contribution from ceiling-reflected sound) drops to 40–45 dB in the adjacent cubicle. In a two-person open office, the received signal from a standing speaker is at least 53–56 dBA (i.e., perfectly intelligible, even in the presence of maximum [50 dB] masking noise). (Drawings by Jonathan Meendering.)*

(30°–60°), a ceiling material with high absorption at these angles of incidence is required for speech privacy. This effectively negates the use of the noise reduction coefficient (NRC) as a useful factor to describe a ceiling material's absorption characteristic in an open-office design, since the NRC averages absorption at all angles. All major ceiling material manufacturers have tested, and will supply, accurate angular absorption data for their products. A single-number descriptor that relates to this characteristic, called the *Articulation Class*, is discussed in detail in Section 19.20.

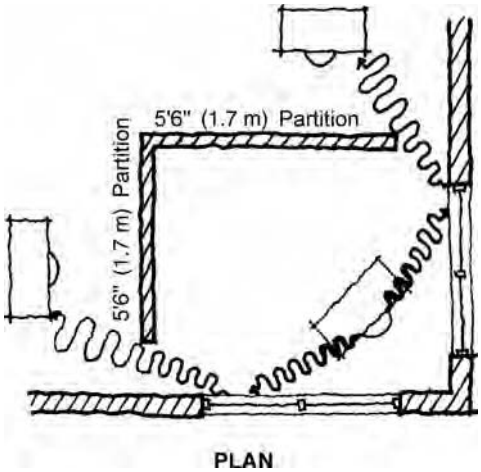


Fig. 19.41 *Confidentiality in offices on exterior building walls is difficult to maintain because of the lack of attenuation of sound reflected from windows. The problem is compounded by the custom of placing management personnel in such offices.*

2. Since absorption at the ceiling increases with the angle of incidence of a sound wave, it is always desirable for speech privacy to have maximum ceiling height. Most authorities recommend a *minimum* ceiling height of 9 ft (2.7 m).

3. Absorption efficiency of ceiling tiles varies inversely with the STC, which is to be expected, since sound transmission depends upon mass and absorption at air pockets. Light fiberglass ceiling tiles will typically have an absorption coefficient α of 0.95 at voice frequencies, with a *Ceiling Attenuation Class* (CAC) of 22 to 24 compared to more massive mineral fiber tiles with a maximum α of 0.8 to 0.85 but an STC of 34 to 36. Since we are interested in maximum absorption at the ceiling, the tile of choice is always that with the highest α at voice frequencies. The fact that more energy will pass through a tile of lower CAC (STC) does not affect the acoustic result, since most of the sound energy enters the plenum above the ceiling through openings in the far-from-airtight suspension system, and is then largely absorbed and dissipated by the spray fireproofing, sound-absorbing material, ductwork, and structural members typically found in a plenum.

4. Since sound will always find the path of least resistance to travel, very little sound energy will pass through partitions between cubicles; the paths over the partition by diffraction and reflection are much less resistant. That being so, the STC of these partitions need not be high. Where the source is close to the partition, as is the case with a seated speaker facing a partition and delivering sound energy directly at the partition at a height of approximately 44 to 48 in. (1.1 to 1.2 m) from a distance of about 3 ft (0.9 m), the STC of the partition should be 25 to 26. For speakers at greater distances and heights, an STC of 20 to 22 is usually sufficient.

An exception to this general rule *may* occur when a large (17 to 19 in. [430 to 480 mm]) computer console is interposed between a seated speaker and an absorbent partition. Large visual display terminals (VDTs) are becoming increasingly common. Their smooth, highly reflective glass surface creates a strong sound path to the rear of the speaker and decreases the sound energy absorbed by the partition behind the VDT. The variables, however, are so numerous that conservative design will use the higher STC rating. (Contrast these values with those required of a full-height, fixed-partition construction typical of enclosed spaces, as listed in Table 19.7.)

The absorption coefficient α of a partial-height partition at voice frequencies should be a minimum of 0.8 and preferably 0.85 to 0.95. Some manufacturers have assigned an Articulation Class rating to their partition products, although that descriptor is usually reserved for ceiling tiles, as explained in point 3. The recommended ratings for partitions range from 180 to 220.

5. Partitions must be tall enough to block direct line-of-sight voice transmission, since such a path is unattenuated except by distance. The median mouth height of a standing American male is 63 in. (1.6 m). This is the basis of the widely accepted recommendation that partitions between adjoining cubicles should not be lower than 65 in. (1.7 m) and preferably 66 to 72 in. (1.7 to 1.8 m). Since a 72-in.-high (1.8 m) partition blocks vision for all but the tallest people, giving a subjective closed-in sensation to the occupant of a (small) cubicle, this height is normally used only between departments, with intradepartment partitions being 63 to 66 in. (1.6 to 1.7 m). Increasing the height of a partition from 65 to 72 in. (from 1.7 to 1.8 m) will increase path attenuation to an adjacent cubicle by 1–3 dB, depending upon ceiling height and speaker height and location.

6. Refer to Fig. 19.40*b*. This figure indicates signal attenuation due to distance for two different paths. Speech intensity at a conversational level is approximately 60 dBA at 3 ft (0.9 m) from

the speaker. Using the fact that sound in a free field attenuates 6 dB for every doubling of distance, and making the assumption that the sound field in a cubicle approaches that of a free field because of the large amount of highly absorptive material in the area, we obtain a sound intensity level of 54 dBA at 6 ft (1.8 m) from the speaker and 48 dBA at 12 ft (3.7 m). In practice, the received sound level is several decibels higher because, despite the high α of the space, there exist intraspace reflections that increase the sound level.

Referring again to Fig. 19.40*b*, we see that the minimum sound level at a receiver *within* the cubicle would be 55 to 56 dB, a level that no practical amount of background sound can mask. Thus, two occupants of a single large cubicle will always hear each other quite clearly. The attenuation of a partition in the diffracted paths (over and around a partition) depends upon the location and height of the speaker and varies from 4 to 8 dB. The attenuation of the signal in the transmitted path (through the partition) will be at least 10 dB. Based on these figures, it is recommended that the *minimum* horizontal distance between occupants of adjoining cubicles when seated at their workstations be 10 ft (3 m) for minimum speech privacy. (Degrees of speech privacy are discussed in the next section.) Speech levels in teamwork areas readily reach 66 dB. This necessitates either locating such areas away from normal working spaces or the use of full-height fixed or demountable partitions to completely enclose such areas. The spaces that require careful siting or complete enclosure because of raised voice levels (64 to 66 dB) include videoconferencing rooms, telecommunications spaces, and areas where workers use speakerphones or voice-activated computers. The latter two devices are usually forbidden in densely populated work areas where a reasonable degree of speech privacy is required for the conduct of regular business tasks.

7. Refer to Fig. 19.41. As pointed out previously, sound will be received via paths of least resistance. These are often flanking paths that do not become evident except in plan view. In Figure 19.41, the flanking paths are particularly important because the first reflection occurs at a window. Glass has negligible absorption and, because of its smoothness, exhibits specular reflection. As a result, the corner office occupant's voice will be heard clearly via the flanking paths shown, thus destroying the confidentiality of conversation in that office. Since offices on the building perimeter are usually reserved for middle and upper management, and since the large windows in such offices act to minimize the speech privacy so important to managerial personnel, the space designer has several options to ameliorate this condition:

a. Use full-height fixed partitions, with fixed glass vision panels if required, and doors rather than openings.
b. Use heavy drapes over the "offending" glass windows, although this option defeats the visual and daylighting purpose of the windows.
c. Locate spaces requiring confidentiality in groups, sound-buffered from open-office spaces by unoccupied areas such as storage rooms.

It is also important to note that although the arrow signifying a sound path in Fig. 19.41 shows reflection from the windows, the sound energy will also strike the exterior walls, which are usually plastered and therefore highly reflective. Here, the placement of absorbent acoustic material on all walls, to ceiling height, is not impractical, as it is with windows, but it does entail considerable expense.

8. Refer to Fig. 19.42. The furniture arrangement establishes the source location of speech energy and consequently all of the sound paths that contribute to speech privacy—or, more accurately, the lack of speech privacy. In layout (*a*), sound power, unattenuated except by distance, reflects off the *back* of the opposing aisle partition and travels to the occupant of the neighboring cubicle. Since the back of an acoustic partition is usually metallic and nonabsorbent, this arrangement would entail the additional expense of an absorbent rear surface on the corridor panels to maintain a degree of speech privacy between cubicles.

Changing the desk location in the same-shaped cubicle to that shown in Fig. 19.42*b* improves speech privacy considerably by reducing the SPL of both the reflected and flanking paths, since the speakers face a highly absorptive surface. It may be unnecessary to use absorbent material on the rear of the corridor panels. A disadvantage of this arrangement lies in the short distance between speakers and neighbors if the same pattern of cubicles is continued longitudinally. A second possible disadvantage may be employee dissatisfaction with a working position facing a blank wall.

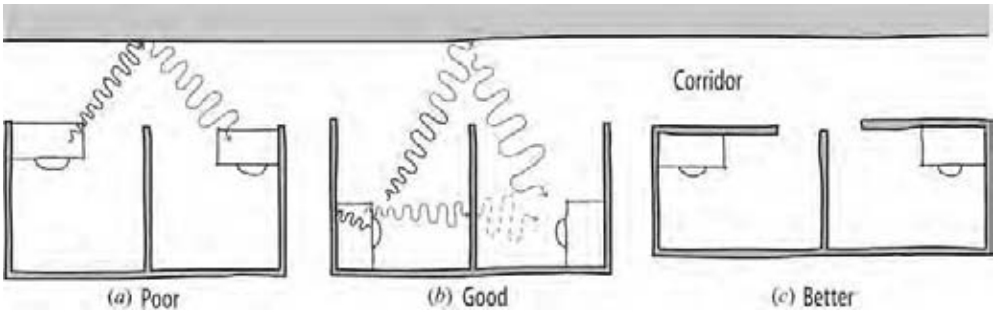


Fig. 19.42 *Open-office shapes and furniture arrangements have a marked effect on speech privacy. (a) A strong, unattenuated signal reflects from the opposite corridor wall directly into the adjoining office. The side-to-side 15-ft (4.6-m) total spacing with an intervening partition is barely satisfactory. (b) The sound reflected from the corridor wall is much weaker than in (a) because of increased distance and decreased voice intensity from the side. Lateral sound is also weak due to the attenuation at the first reflection off the absorbent partition. (c) Reflection from the corridor is eliminated by the use of a front closure partition with glass at the upper 18 in. (457 mm) for visual purposes. Side-to-side sound is weak due to wide spacing and the intervening partition. (Drawing by Nathan Majeski.)*

The arrangement in Fig. 19.42*c* uses the same area per cubicle. By changing its shape and adding a 6-ft-high (1.8 m) acoustic partition whose top 18 in. (457-mm) is glass, the designer has reduced the sound energy levels in all paths while overcoming any employee resentment related to working in a blank, unexposed corner. Furthermore, the problematic flanking path in Fig. 19.42*a* has been eliminated, as has probably any requirement for exterior acoustic absorption on the corridor partitions.

19.20 OPEN-OFFICE SPEECH PRIVACY LEVELS AND DESCRIPTORS

(a) Factors

The factors involved in determining the level of acoustic privacy that can be expected at a specific open-office location, as a result of neighboring speech sources, should be understood at this point. It may be helpful, however, to restate them. They are:

1. Loudness of the source(s).
2. Acoustic characteristics of the source(s). These include location, height above the floor, directivity, frequency spectrum, and information content. The last factor refers to the ability of a listener to make sense of what is being said or heard. Therefore, most types of non-information-bearing sound would not be considered intrusive sources of noise. A completely foreign language should also fall into this category, although in practice that is so only when the words and syllables are muffled. Clearly heard words in a foreign language do constitute a source of speech annoyance, although to a far lesser extent than those in a comprehended language. Speech privacy calculation procedures ignore foreign languages and assume that all speech is a possible source of annoyance.
3. Signal attenuation along each path between the source and the receiver. This factor is different for every normal position of even a single source, as, for instance, for a seated or standing source person.
4. Level and frequency content of background sound (deliberate masking, HVAC noise, continuous machinery noise, and the like).
5. Degree of privacy required. This is discussed in detail in the next subsection. It is important to keep in mind, however, that the three classifications—confidential, normal, and transitional (minimal, marginal)—are assumed to remain constant as long as the physical factors involved do not change. This ignores the oft-demonstrated fact that intrusive noise causes psychological and physiological reactions in some people that tend toward aggravation and increased severity with passage of time. A speech privacy situation originally classified as confidential may deteriorate to normal as the hearer's increasing sensitivity to noise causes him or her to strain to hear, and thereby to actually hear noise that ordinarily is masked. This is, in effect, another

aspect of the cocktail party effect discussed in Chapter 17.

(b) Levels (Degrees) of Speech Privacy

Speech privacy is often achieved by masking intruding speech with background sound. By consensus among acousticians, the definitions of the three levels of speech privacy in an open office are:

1. *Confidential privacy.* Normal voice levels are audible but generally unintelligible. Raised voices are partially intelligible. Noise level is minimal. To achieve this level of privacy, the background sound level must be no more than 2 dB less than the intruding sound, and no more than about 3 dB more than the intruding sound, to satisfy the minimal noise level requirement. In this acoustic situation, approximately 95% of people will not sense any sound-intrusive disturbance and will be able to concentrate on most types of work.

2. *Normal privacy.* At this level, normal voice levels from adjacent spaces are heard but are not intelligible without concentration (i.e., by straining to hear and catch every syllable). Raised voices are generally intelligible. The overall noise level is low. This level of speech privacy is achieved when the background sound level is within 6 dB of (less than) the intruding speech level. This corresponds roughly to an intruding speech level of 50 to 54 dB, and a background sound level of 44 to 45 dB, that together give a range of 51 to 55 dB, levels that can be considered to meet the low-noise requirement.

3. *Transitional (minimal, marginal) privacy.* At this speech privacy level, speech at normal voice levels in adjacent open offices is readily understood most of the time, and the overall noise level is average. This noise level occurs when the intruding speech level is 10 dB or more than the background sound level. Since background sound is limited to about 50 dB, this privacy level would mean an intruding speech intensity of 60 dB or more. Since 60 dB is approximately normal speech at 3 ft (0.9 m), this "privacy" level would occur with two occupants in a single office or a single occupant receiving intruding noise from at least three neighboring offices. This speech intrusion level would be considered intolerable by about 40% of people and would negatively affect the work efficiency of a higher percentage.

In summary, it is interesting to compare these three open-office speech privacy levels with the "absolute" grading given in Table 19.5:

Open-Office Class	Table 19.5 Rating
Confidential	Good
Normal	Fair
Marginal	Poor

It should therefore be apparent that, by its very nature, an open office cannot achieve the top three grades of privacy listed in Table 19.5. If those levels of privacy are desired or required, fully enclosed spaces are necessary.

(c) Articulation Index (AI)

In order to quantify speech privacy for an open-office design, a single-number metric called the *Articulation Index* (AI) was developed in the 1970s by the acoustics consulting firm of Bolt, Beranek and Newman. This work was based in part upon studies of speech intelligibility by Bell Labs in the 1940s. Essentially, the AI relates speech intelligibility, speech intensity, and background sound level at the center of the five octave-band frequencies that encompass the spectrum of the human voice: 250, 500, 1000, 2000, and 4000 Hz. AI is determined by measuring the percentage of individual words that can be understood under specific speech and background sound levels. An AI of 0% indicates zero intelligibility and therefore ideal speech privacy. This, of course, does not mean silence; it means that with a specific combination of speech intensity level and background sound level, intelligibility is nil, and therefore speech privacy, defined as a lack of intelligible intruding speech, is ideal. At the other end of the scale, a high percentage of intelligible words yields a high AI and a correspondingly low speech privacy rating. In practice, the resultant AI figures are related to listener satisfaction and speech privacy descriptors, as shown in Table 19.9.

The calculation procedure for AI involves the use of weighting factors that are applied to intensity-level differences between speech and background

TABLE 19.9 Articulation Index (AI) and Speech Privacy

AI	Persons Satisfied with Speech Privacy (%)	Open-Office Speech Privacy Descriptor
0–0.05	95–92%	Confidential
0.06–0.2	90–80%	Normal
0.21–0.3	79–65%	Minimal
>0.3	<65%	Unacceptable

sound levels at different frequencies in order to reflect the connection between intelligibility and frequency. As pointed out in Chapter 17, most of the information in English words is carried by consonants, whose frequencies are generally above 2 kHz. Thus, the problem frequently encountered in telephone conversations, of distinguishing between *f* and *s*, *b* and *v*, *t* and *d*, and so on, is due to excessive attenuation of the high frequencies that distinguish these letters from each other. The AI calculation emphasizes the importance of high frequencies to intelligibility by using the following weighting factors:

Octave Band Center Frequency (Hz)	Relative Weighting Factor
250	1.0
500	2.5
1000	3.5
2000	5.0
4000	4.0

The calculation of AI values for an actual open-office design is complex and laborious, since it considers all sound paths between each source and each receiver, including the acoustic characteristics of all reflective and absorptive surfaces in the path. The results are a specific AI factor for every receiver location. Because of the very large number of calculations involved, the analysis is done by computer. Changes in materials, plan arrangements, and dimensions can be made if the calculated AI does not satisfy the space's speech privacy requirement.

These changes can be predicted fairly accurately, since it has been demonstrated that a 3-dB change in the relative level of an intruding speech signal with respect to the background sound level will result in a 0.1-level change in AI. Thus, an increase of 3 dB in the background sound level or a decrease of 3 dB in the intruding signal (by increased absorption or path length) will have the effect of increasing the AI between the involved workstations by 0.10, which is the difference between normal and poor speech privacy. Since 3 dB is a barely perceptible change in intensity (see Table 17.3), we can appreciate how sensitive speech privacy is to small changes in intensities.

(d) Articulation Class

Numerous measurements in actual open-office installations have indicated that the absorption characteristics of the ceiling are the most important factors in speech privacy design. As noted in the previous section, the angles of incidence of speech sound on the ceiling range between 30° and 60°, with the majority of sound energy falling at the top of this range. A figure of merit for absorption, called the *Articulation Class* (AC), was established that indicates absorption effectiveness at angles of incidence between 45° and 55°. The usual range of AC is between 180 and 220 (no units), with higher numbers representing better absorption.

19.21 DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SPEECH PRIVACY IN OPEN OFFICES

(a) General Factors

The architectural arrangement of spaces in an open-office design has a marked influence on speech privacy. Areas should be grouped according to their speech privacy requirements. Spaces rated as "confidential" should be placed on the perimeter of the open area to limit their exposure to speech intrusion, with the caveats relating to exterior windows and walls, discussed previously, being considered. The design emphasis for these areas should be not only an AI between 0.0 and 0.05, but also on a low overall sound level, *including* background noise. Similarly, high-noise-producing areas should be grouped and placed on the perimeter at a maximum distance from confidential speech privacy areas. Use of demountable full-height partitions for such spaces should be considered.

Because of reflection from perimeter walls, open-area spaces should be as large as practical, with absorbent perimeter walls. Ceiling height should be no less than 9 ft (2.7 m) clear, with a 3-ft (0.9 m) plenum above. Extreme care must be taken

with air-conditioning ductwork, which, if untreated, will act as conduit for speech and noise via multiple ceiling outlets. Furthermore, these outlets, which were once relied upon to produce an even level of background sound, generally no longer do so. Most HVAC systems today are variable-air-volume (VAV) designs, whose noise levels vary ± 10 dB, making them useless as a reliable source of masking sound.

(b) Individual Office (Cubicle) Design

Offices should be designed for maximum closure and maximum partition length. Separation between occupants of adjacent offices should never be less than 12-ft (3.7-m) as a design target for normal privacy and 16 ft (4.9 m) for confidential privacy. Minimum office area should be 80 ft^2 (7.4 m^2), with a design target of 100 to 120 ft^2 (9.3 to 11.1 m^2) for normal privacy and 200 ft^2 (18.6 m^2) for confidential privacy. Desk arrangements should be checked for optimum speech paths (for privacy), recognizing that office furniture arrangements need not be uniform in all offices (see Section 19.19).

(c) Ceilings

As the ceiling is the most important design element in speech privacy, care must be taken to avoid unintentional strongly reflective speech paths, as from metal pan air diffusers, flat lighting fixture diffusers, and the like. If the use of such or similar items is unavoidable, highly absorptive vertical baffle strips may be placed on their perimeter to block sound paths. In general, ceiling tiles should have an Articulation Class rating of 220 minimum, and minimum absorption coefficients (α) at incidence angles of 30° to 60° as follows:

Frequency (Hz)	α
250	0.65
500	0.65–0.75
1000	0.85
2000	0.90
4000	0.90

(d) Partitions

As explained in Subsection 19.19(a), the minimum height of partitions should be 65 in. (1.7 m), with 72-in.- (1.8-m) high units separating offices from aisles and dividing departmental groups. The AC rating, if available, should range from 200 to 220. STC ratings, as explained in Section 19.11, depend to an extent upon speaker locations and vary from 20 to 26. Joints between partitions should be carefully sealed, as even small openings can seriously compromise a partition's already limited efficiency. All partitions should reach the floor, although the lower portion is not always absorptive in low-speech-privacy areas.

(e) Floors

Although carpeted floors do not seriously affect overall sound absorption, they do drastically reduce chair-movement and footfall sounds. For this reason, all floors in open-office areas should be carpeted. The difference in effectiveness of shallow-pile carpet compared to deep-pile carpet is minimal, and the same differential can be achieved by using a polyurethane cushion backing in lieu of the more common jute pad. The principal purpose of carpeting is to cushion the footfall impact so that its energy is not introduced into the structure. This subject is covered in detail in the discussion of structure-borne sound that follows.

(f) Lighting Fixtures

Flat-bottom lighting fixtures must never be used. Fixtures should not be placed directly over partitions, in order to avoid an interoffice speech reflection path. Experience has shown that the best lighting fixture (from the speech privacy point of view) is one with deep parabolic reflector cells and overall dimensions of 1 ft × 4 ft (0.3 × 1.2 m) or 2 ft × 4 ft (0.6 × 1.2 m).

(g) Masking Sound

It is imperative that the level of masking sound be uniform throughout an open-office area, and at as low a level as will yield the desired speech privacy. Nonuniformity will immediately be noticed as people move about, and the masking sound itself will become a source of auditory annoyance. For a similar reason, loudspeakers should not be visible. Visible units become themselves a source of interest initially and then a source of annoyance. Speakers should be placed *in* the plenum, preferably facing up to increase dispersion and improve uniformity. Speakers mounted in the ceiling and facing down should be avoided. Most ceiling tiles in open-office

spaces have a low CAC so that sound will easily penetrate into the office area below the ceiling.

A masking sound system should comprise a signal (noise) generator, a sophisticated equalizer for shaping the signal, an amplifier with appropriate controls, and a distribution system to feed the speakers. Speakers are normally 12 in. (305 mm) in diameter, and are installed in a grid on 12- to 16-in. (305-to 406-mm) centers. The amplifier should be arranged so that volume levels can be remotely controlled. This permits time control so that the background sound volume can be reduced automatically after working hours. This is necessary so that the few people working late are not annoyed by relatively loud background sound in the absence of intruding speech.

The noise produced by a masking sound system is variously described as white noise, noise of air rushing through an opening (whoosh sound), noise of water in piping, and the like. The actual sound can be tailored to the user's preference by adjusting the filters in the system's equalizer. Generally, masking sound emphasizes low frequencies, because higher frequencies are immediately noticed as an annoying hiss. As noted in Section 19.16, the background sound level should not exceed 48 to 50 dBA. In some installations, the masking sound system doubles as a public address system, although this practice is not recommended because the sound/noise stops during an announcement, and when it returns it is noticed. Background sound must be designed so as to blend into the ambience of the background, and anything that disturbs the hidden quality of masking sound is to be avoided.

(h) Design Procedure

Unfortunately, due to the large number of variables involved in open-office speech privacy design, a straightforward manual design method that will yield reliable results does not exist. However, a number of computer programs are available that will calculate the AI for any location as a result of a specified speech source intrusion. On the basis of these calculations, changes can be made to the design and the program rerun to achieve improvements where the calculated AI is excessive. The most effective way to perform a complete design is then, on the basis of the preceding calculations, to construct a full-scale mock-up that can then be field-tested and "tuned." Although this is expensive and time-consuming, it is frequently far cheaper than making the requisite changes after construction of an unacceptable solution.

One of the distinct advantages of this two-step design procedure is that it enables a designer to equalize the acoustic absorption "strength" of various paths so that the attenuations of major paths are equal. There is no economic or engineering sense in a system that is much more effective for one path than for another, since sound will always choose the path of least acoustic resistance. To accomplish this balancing, the designer has many variables to juggle. They include barrier height and material, ceiling material, baffle sizes and positions (if used), distances between the source and receiver, position and directions of sources, and level of background sound.

(i) Standards

The acoustic design and testing of open offices is covered by a group of American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM, see Section 19.37) standards that should be in the hands of anyone engaged in open-office design. The standards are available from ASTM, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959.

ASTM E1573-02—*Standard Test Method for Evaluating Masking Sound in Open Offices Using A-Weighted and One-Third Octave Band Sound Pressure Levels.* This test method specifies the procedures that can be used to evaluate the spatial and temporal uniformity of masking sound in open offices using A-weighted sound levels. It also specifies the procedure for evaluating the masking sound spectrum and level using ⅓-octave band sound pressure levels.

ASTM E1110-01—*Standard Classification for Determination of Articulation Class.* This classification provides a single figure rating that can be used for comparing building systems and subsystems for speech privacy purposes. Excluded from this classification are applications involving female speakers and children, languages other than English, and sound spectra other than speech.

ASTM E1111-02—*Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Ceiling Systems.* This test method is intended to provide measurements of the sound-reflective characteristics of ceiling systems when used in conjunction with partial-height space dividers.

ASTM E1130-02e1—*Standard Test Method for Objective Measurement of Speech Privacy in Open Offices Using Articulation Index.* This method describes a field test for measuring speech privacy objectively between locations in open offices. It relies upon acoustical measurement, published information on speech levels, and standard methods for assessing speech communication. This test method does not measure the performance of individual open-office components that affect speech privacy; it measures the privacy that results from a particular configuration of components. This method relies upon the AI, which predicts the intelligibility of speech for a group of talkers and listeners.

ASTM E1179-87(2003)—*Standard Specification for Sound Sources Used for Testing Open Office Components and Systems.* This specification states the requirements for sound sources used for measuring the speech privacy between open offices or for measuring the laboratory performance of acoustical components. The sound source is a loudspeaker located in an enclosure and driven with an appropriate test signal.

ASTM E1264-98—*Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products.* This classification covers ceiling products that provide acoustical performance and interior finish in buildings. It classifies acoustical ceilings by type, pattern, and certain ratings for acoustical performance, light reflectance, and fire safety.

ASTM E1374-02—*Standard Guide for Open Office Acoustics and Applicable ASTM Standards.* This guide discusses the acoustical principles and interactions that affect the acoustical environment and acoustical privacy in an open office. In this context, it describes the application and use of the series of ASTM standards that apply to open offices.

ASTM E1375-90(2002)—*Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Furniture Panels Used as Acoustical Barriers.* This test method covers the measurement of the interzone attenuation of furniture panels used as acoustical barriers in open-plan spaces to provide speech privacy or sound isolation between working positions.

ASTM E1376-90(2002)—*Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Sound Reflected by Wall Finishes and Furniture Panels.* This laboratory test method measures the degree to which reflected sound is attenuated by the most commonly found vertical surfaces in open-plan spaces. The vertical surfaces covered by this test method include wall finishes such as sound-absorbent panels and furniture panels or screens. It does not cover such items as window finishes or furniture other than panels.

STRUCTURE-BORNE NOISE

19.22 STRUCTURE-BORNE IMPACT NOISE

The term noise will be used in lieu of sound in the following discussion of structure-borne, impact, and equipment noise control. Although use of the term noise assumes that a decision has been made that a particular sound is unwanted, this is a very reasonable assumption for the situations to be discussed. Use of the term noise gets to the point.

Structure-borne noise is at least as serious a problem as airborne noise for the following reasons:

1. There is no air cushion between the source and the structure; thus, high-intensity energy is introduced into the structure, through which it travels with minimum attenuation and at great speed.
2. Sound, once introduced into the structure, is attenuated well only by discontinuities in the structure. Since the structure must have structural integrity to carry the loads, discontinuities of the type that will stop noise are complex and expensive.
3. The entire structure constitutes a network of parallel paths for sound. Therefore, partial solutions are useless, since sound will find flanking paths. The entire structure must be soundproofed to yield good results.
4. Unlike the case of airborne noise, additional mass does not usually block structure-borne noise, particularly in long spans where a floor can act as a diaphragm, thereby improving the structure-to-air noise transfer efficiency (like a drum).
5. The increasing use of exposed structural ceilings eliminates the attenuation that can be introduced by a plenum above a hung ceiling. This is particularly bad, since most structure-borne

noise is carried by floor structures (rather than walls), which radiate sound up and down. The discussion that follows will be limited to impact noise. Refer to Section 19.26 for a brief treatment of vibration, which is felt rather than heard and is, in effect, a very low-frequency noise. Many of the practices and techniques that will minimize impact noise will also reduce vibration.

19.23 CONTROL OF IMPACT NOISE

Impact noise problems can be controlled in two ways—by preventing or minimizing the impact and by attenuating it once it has occurred. Prevention is discussed first; attenuation is covered in Section 19.25. Impact on floors is more serious than wall impact because the latter is partially attenuated at the wall/floor joint, whereas the former is introduced directly into the building framework. The following discussion addresses each of the solutions shown in Fig. 19.43.

(a) Cushion the Impact

See Fig. 19.43*a*. This obvious solution will frequently eliminate all but severe problems. Resilient cushioning materials in common use are floor tile of rubber and cork, or carpeting on pads, in ascending order of impact insulation. See Section 19.24 and Appendix L for quantitative data on impact insulation.

(b) Float the Floor

See Fig. 19.43*b*. Since the key to elimination of structure-borne sound is *isolation*, separating the impacted floor from the structural floor by a resilient element is extremely effective. This element can be rubber or mineral wool pads, or blankets, or special spring metal sleepers. The effectiveness depends upon the mass of the floating floor, compliance of the resilient support, and degree of isolation of the floating floor. The last element is extremely important, since flanking paths via end contacts with walls can short-circuit the floating element's sound impedance and defeat the system. With floating floors it is important that:

1. The mass of the floating floor be large enough to spread the loads properly. Otherwise, the pad will compress and deform sufficiently to transmit the impact.
2. Total construction be airtight. Airtight is soundtight.
3. Particular care be exercised where partitions rest on the floating floor (see Fig. 19.44*a*).
4. Short circuits at walls or by penetrations be avoided; see Fig. 19.10*b*. Details of proper construction techniques are given in *A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings* (1968).
5. Construction throughout be consistent. Mixed construction types invite flanking noise paths (see Fig. 19.44*b*).

(c) Suspend the Ceiling—and Use an Absorber in the Cavity

See Fig. 19.43*c*, *d*. As stated, the most disturbing noise is that radiated down from the ceiling. A flexibly suspended ceiling with an acoustic absorbent layer suspended in it can be very effective if not

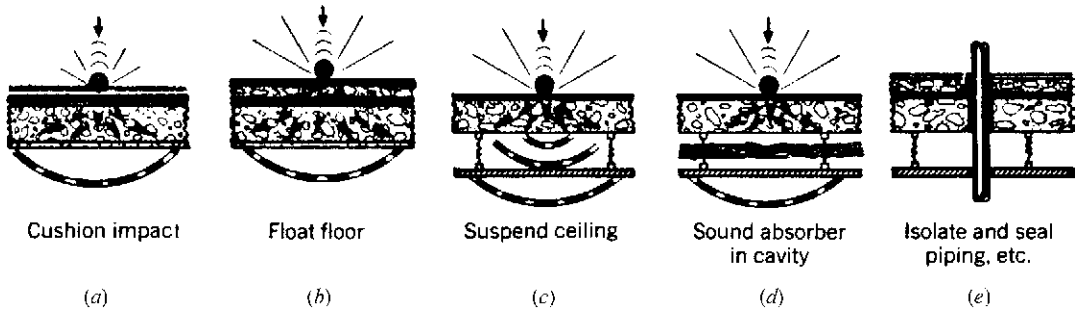


Fig. 19.43 *Methods of controlling impact sound transmission through floors. (Reprinted from* Quieting: A Practical Guide to Noise Control*, 1986.)*

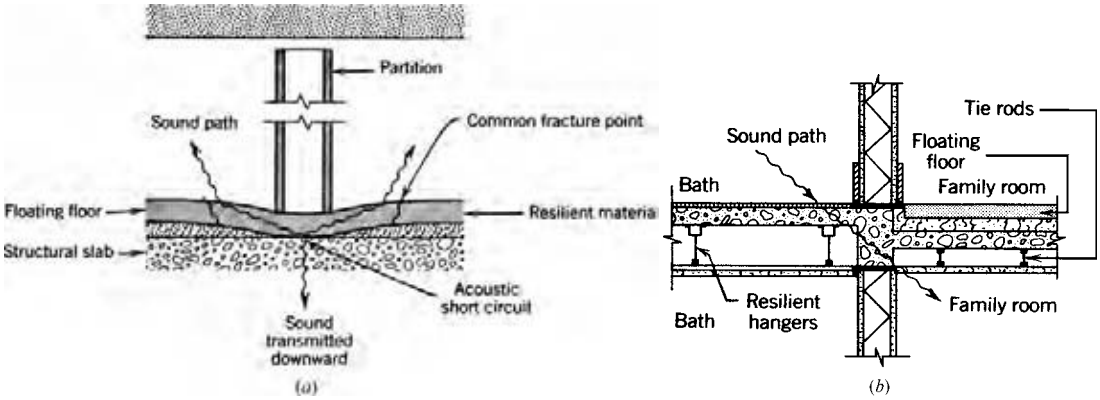


Fig. 19.44 *(a) Caution must be exercised when supporting partitions on floating floors to prevent structural failures or short-circuiting of the floating element, as illustrated. (b) Flanking paths in mixed-construction type floors. The FHA does not recommend mixing construction types unless provisions have been made to prevent flanking (e.g., expansion joints or breaks in all structural paths between each space). (Reprinted from A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings, 1968.)*

flanked by paths leading into the walls and from there reradiating into the space below. It is imperative that the entire floor slab above be decoupled from the walls below by resilient separators.

(d) Isolate All Piping

See Fig. 19.43*e*. All rigid structures such as piping must be isolated so as not to form a flanking path, and penetrations must be caulked with resilient sealant so as not to constitute an air-sound leakage path.

19.24 IMPACT INSULATION CLASS

The impact insulation class (IIC) is a single-number, impact isolation rating for floor construction, similar in intent and derivation to STC wall ratings. Tests are made with a standard tapping machine and noise levels measured in ⅓-octave bands. These are plotted and compared to a standard contour, approximately as with the sound transmission class. Details of typical floor constructions along with IIC ratings are given in Appendix L. Resilient floor finishes on any of the floor constructions not specifically provided with them will add to the IIC ratings approximately as follows:

1/16-in. (1.6-mm) vinyl tile	0
⅛-in. (3-mm) linoleum or rubber tile	4 ± 1
¼-in. (6-mm) cork tile	10 ± 2
Low-pile carpet on fiber pad	12 ± 2
Low-pile carpet on foam rubber pad	18 ± 3
High-pile carpet on foam rubber pad	24 ± 3

MECHANICAL SYSTEM NOISE CONTROL

19.25 MECHANICAL NOISE SOURCES

Mechanical devices make noise. And generally, the more power they consume, the more noise they make. In many of today's buildings, 40% of the total construction budget is spent on mechanical systems located throughout a building.

In most buildings, the primary sources of mechanical noise are the components of the air-conditioning and air-handling systems such as fans, compressors, cooling towers, condensers, ductwork, dampers, mixing boxes, induction units, and diffusers. The curve of Fig. 19.45 depicts typical air-handling system noise and indicates the portions of the spectrum produced by each group of components. Pumps are another source of mechanical noise, which (along with the noise of flowing liquid) is transmitted along pipes to locations throughout the building.

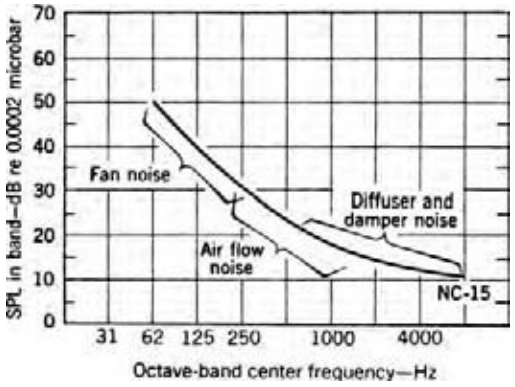


Fig. 19.45 *Sound pressure level frequency spectrum of noise from HVAC system components.*

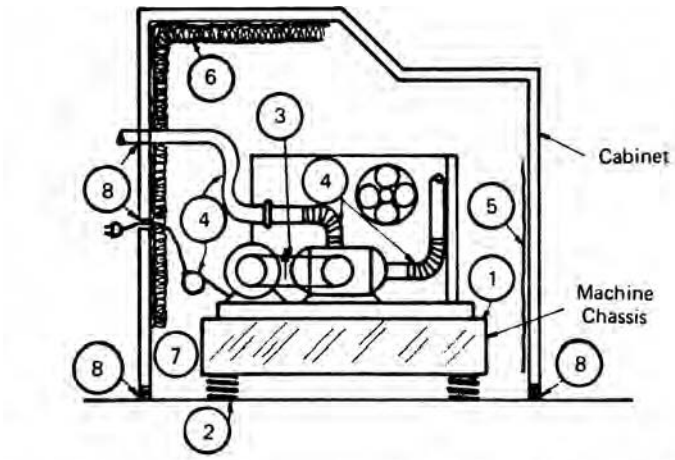
Elevators, escalators, and freight elevators also introduce mechanical noise into buildings. Escalators and freight elevators pose few problems, since they are localized in a specific area and have low operation speeds. Passenger elevator car operation, however, is rapid, and it affects large areas. In addition, the motors and controls are located on or above the prime upper floors of a building. Motor, shaftway, and other equipment noise must be properly controlled to prevent annoyance to building tenants located near the shaftways or elevator penthouses and mechanical equipment rooms. Vibration isolation of these major components is a specialized problem beyond the scope of this book.

19.26 QUIETING OF MACHINES

Machines cause noise by vibration. This noise is imparted directly to the surrounding air and by vibrational contact to the surrounding structure. Therefore, there are three ways to reduce this noise:

1. Reduce the vibration itself.
2. Reduce the airborne noise by decoupling the vibration from efficient radiating sources.
3. Decouple the vibrating source from the structure.

Refer to Fig. 19.46. Items 1, 3, and 4 reduce vibration; items 4, 5, 6, and 7 reduce and decouple the vibration from the radiating cabinet; and items 2 and 8 decouple the vibrating source from the structure. Once a noise becomes airborne or



1. Install motors, pumps, fans, etc. on most massive part of the machine.
2. Install such components on resilient mounts or vibration isolators.
3. Use belt drive or roller drive systems in place of gear trains.
4. Use flexible hoses and wiring instead of rigid piping and stiff wiring.
5. Apply vibration damping materials to surfaces undergoing most vibration.
6. Install acoustical lining to reduce noise buildup inside machine.
7. Minimize mechanical contact between the cabinet and the machine chassis.
8. Seal openings at the base and other parts of the cabinet to prevent noise leakage.

Fig. 19.46 *Techniques used to reduce the transmission of airborne and structure-borne noise from machines and appliances. (Reprinted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings, *1968.)*

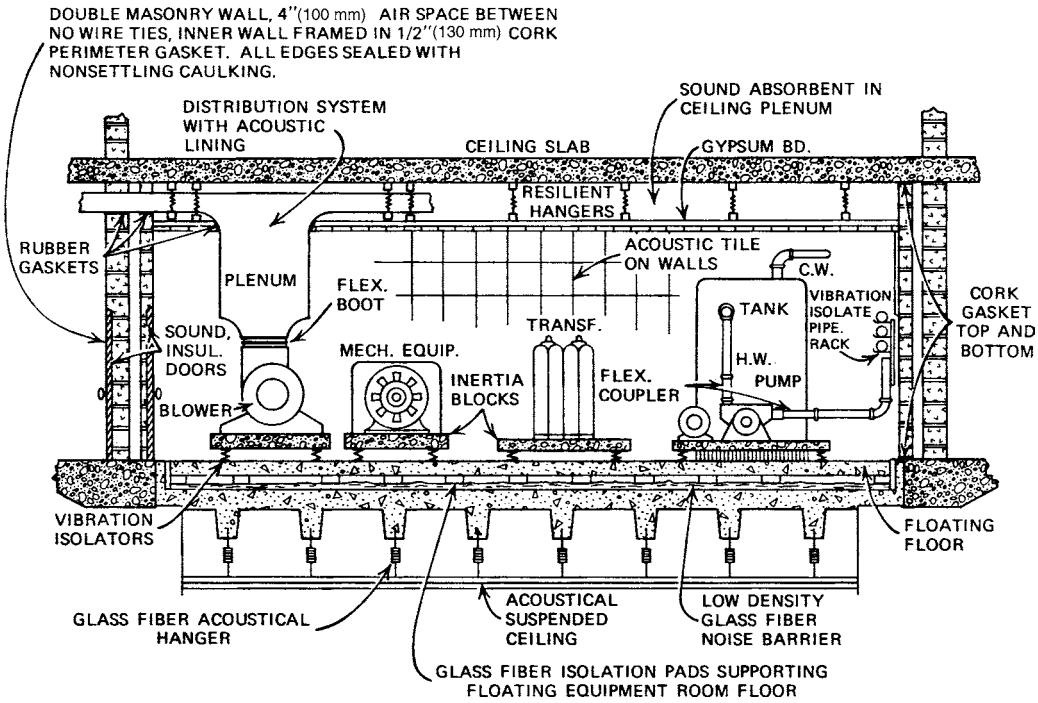


Fig. 19.47 *Soundproofing a mechanical equipment room. Additional noise reduction to the space below can be achieved by inserting a layer of highly absorbent material in the space above the suspended acoustical ceiling. (Reprinted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, 1968.)*

structure-borne, the aforementioned isolation techniques are employed.

Vibration reduction takes two forms, damping and isolation. One form of damping is accomplished by rigidly coupling the vibrating source to a large mass, frequently called an *inertia block*. Much of the energy is absorbed and dissipated as friction; the remainder results in lower-amplitude vibration (Fig. 19.47). Isolation is accomplished by supporting the vibrating mass on resilient supports. These take many forms and can be used in combinations. Thus, machines are supported on fibrous, rubber, or spring steel vibration isolators, and the entire mass can be supported on a floating floor, which in turn rests on resilient vibration isolators, as in Fig. 19.47. Large machines are supported on special commercial "sandwiches" of asbestos, lead, cork, and other strong, resilient materials. Piping is supported on cork pads and hung on resilient hangers.

Use of a diesel-driven electric generator for load peaking or cogeneration can cause very serious noise and vibration problems. The ideal solution to this situation is to completely isolate the unit in a separate outbuilding that is designed specifically to contain the very high noise level produced. If that is not practical and an inside location is necessary, a complete enclosure may be required to ameliorate the noise problem.

Vibration damping can be an even more serious problem, which can be solved satisfactorily with sufficient mass and proper vibration isolation. In the case of vibrating sheet metal, soft foam-type damping material glued directly to the metal is effective in damping. Flexible joints in all pipes and ducts connected to vibrating machines are mandatory. This includes flexible conduit connectors to all motors, transformers, and lighting fixtures using magnetic ballasts.

19.27 DUCT SYSTEM NOISE REDUCTION

Design of a quiet duct system entails more than specifying an absorptive duct lining. Air turbulence generates noise. Turbulence increases as the velocity of airflow increases and anywhere in the duct

system where smooth laminar flow is disturbed, such as at sharp bends. The permissible "sharpness" of a bend depends in turn upon air velocity; the higher the air velocity, the more aerodynamic the duct system must be to prevent turbulence and, therefore, noise. Table 19.10 demonstrates this principle. The farther one proceeds upstream from a point of turbulence, the higher the air velocity may be from a noise perspective, since truly laminar flow is essentially noiseless. In principle, velocities should be as low as practical, since air turbulence noise increases exponentially with velocity.

Sound travels as easily against as with the airflow in ductwork. Therefore, both supply and return systems must be lined to control transmission of fan noise. Maximum fan noise reduction occurs at bends in the ductwork. For maximum fan noise reduction in short runs, a pair of 90° bends is sometimes deliberately inserted. However, because 90° bends also introduce turbulence that generates noise, introducing bends as fan noise attenuators can be counterproductive at air velocities above 600 fpm (3 m/s). Another disadvantage of bends is added system friction and the additional energy and cost required to move air. This point will be discussed further in the next section.

Other design approaches that create a quiet system include smooth transitions at changes of duct size and large-radius bends with turning vanes, the purpose of which is to reduce turbulence. Attenuation drops rapidly as duct size increases; therefore, ducts should not be deliberately oversized. Cross-talk between rooms and between ducts can be minimized by using lined ducts, separating adjacent ducts as much as possible, and gluing damping material on the outside and lining on the inside. Damping material is particularly effective in preventing the thin metal walls of ducts from resonating. Mufflers and silencers are effective in reducing the high-frequency components of fan noise, but much less so with low frequencies. The pressure drop these devices introduce, which can be considerable, must be compensated for in the fan selection.

The *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications* should be consulted for recommendations on noise control in air-handling units, plenums, housings, and ducts. Figure 19.48 shows some of the ways in which cross-talk and flanking noises can be reduced. Figure 19.49 shows some techniques employed for quieting duct noise. Active noise cancellation (see Section 19.28) is particularly useful in duct systems since it does not reduce airflow, as do liners, baffles, and other mechanical silencing devices, and it is effective at low frequencies, whereas these devices are not.

The increased use of variable-air-volume (VAV) systems has introduced some noise problems that should not be neglected. VAV system noise can be minimized by following a few basic design rules. Maintain minimum system static pressure since fan noise increases exponentially with static pressure. Select the air volume modulating device at the fan with care, as it can be a noise source. Since outlet air volume control involves duct area restriction with attendant velocity increase and resultant noise, such a design must include some sort of downstream silencing equipment. Ceiling diffuser acoustic characteristics must be coordinated with design air velocity and with any requirement for masking sound. Finally, avoid the use of throttling dampers on ceiling diffusers since a partially closed damper can generate very high noise levels.

TABLE 19.10 Maximum Air Speeds in Ducts to Yield NC-15 or NC-25 Background Levels[a]

	Supply		*Return*	
Location	**NC-15**	**NC-25**	**NC-15**	**NC-25**
Slot speed at min. ½-in. (13-mm) opening	250 fpm	350 fpm	300 fpm	420 fpm
10 ft (3 m) of duct before opening	300	420	350	490
Next 20 ft (6 m)	400	560	450	630
Next 20 ft (6 m)	500	700	570	800
Next 20 ft (6 m)	640	900	700	980
Next 20 ft (6 m)	800	1120	900	1260
Next 20 ft (6 m)	1000	1400	1100	1540
Next 20 ft (6 m)	1300	1820	1450	2030
Next 20 ft (6 m)	1600	2240	1800	2520

[a]Ducts with 1- to 2-in. (25- to 50-mm) inside duct lining, all duct sizes.

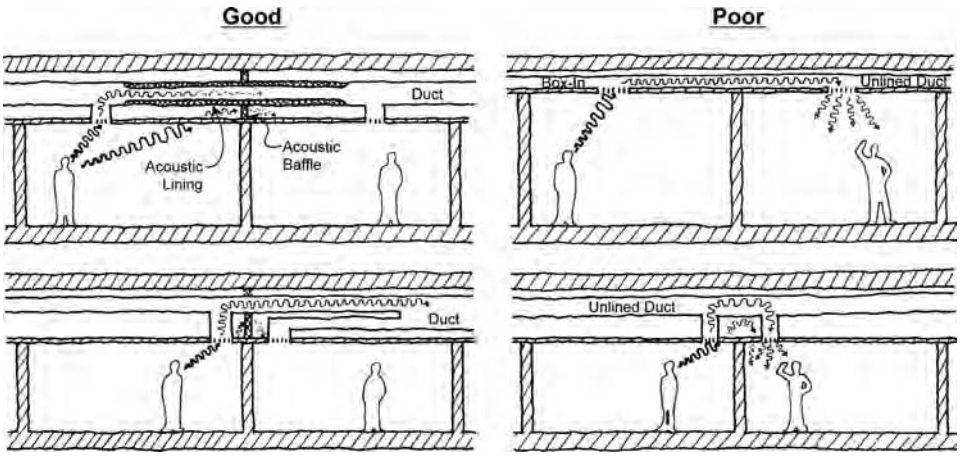


Fig. 19.48 *Since ducts are efficient sound transmission paths, precautions must be taken to avoid cross-talk, ventilation air noise, and equipment noise. Avoid running ducts as a common supply or return between rooms unless they are properly baffled and lined with sound-absorbing material. The common practice, in wood-frame structures, of using troughs between joists as a common return duct between rooms and between separate dwelling units results in serious noise transmission problems. Caulk or seal around ducts at all points of penetration through partitions. Use double-wall ducts, acoustical lining, flexible boots, and resilient hangers where required. Dwelling units should be serviced by separate supply and return ducts that branch off a main duct system. (Reprinted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, 1968. Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

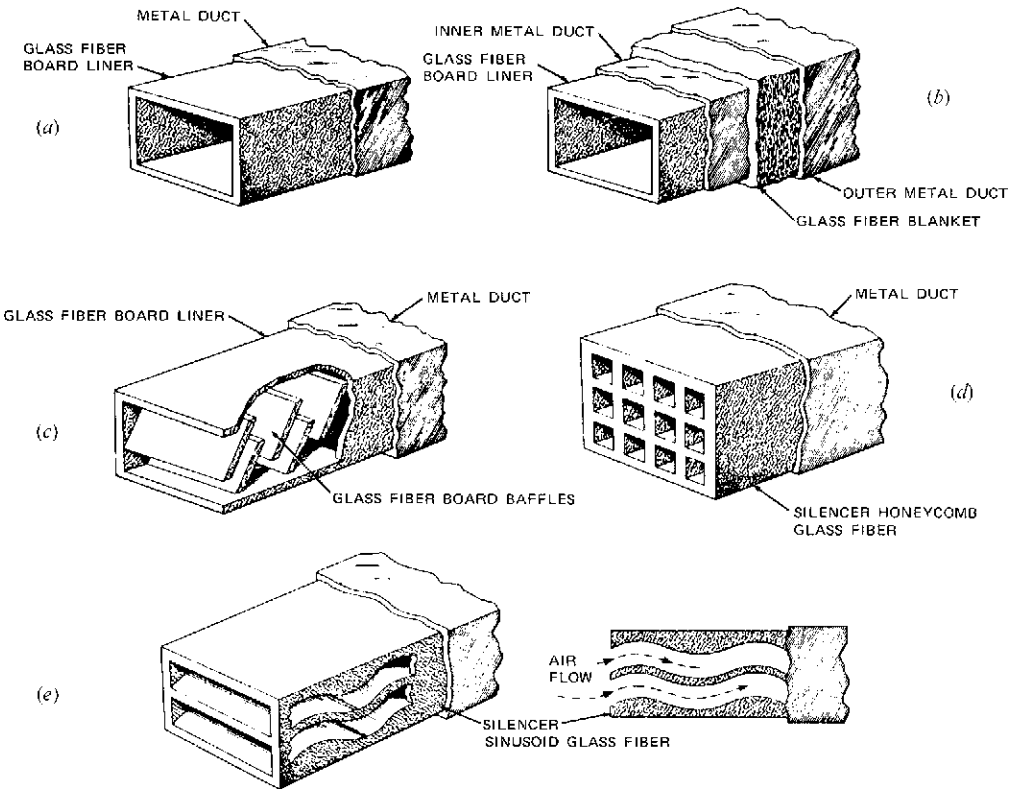


Fig. 19.49 *Unlined duct has negligible sound attenuation. Inside lining (a) gives 2–3 dB attenuation per foot in the range 1–2 kHz, dropping rapidly above and below those frequencies and giving negligible low-frequency attenuation. Double lining (b) gives higher attenuation and reduces cross-talk between ducts. Duct silencers and baffles (c–e) give high broadband attenuation: a maximum of 10–12 dB/ft (3.0-3.7 dB/m) in the range 1–2 kHz and lower above and below. They are useful to reduce fan noise in short runs but cause considerable pressure drop. (Reprinted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, 1968.)*

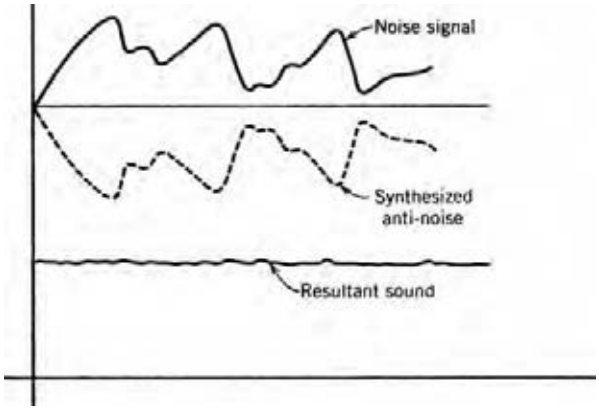


Fig. 19.50 *Silencing of noise by introduction of a synthesized noise signal exactly out of phase with the original signal. The resultant sound is effectively zero—that is, silence.*

19.28 ACTIVE NOISE CANCELLATION

Since noise is a phenomenon consisting of acoustic wave energy transmitted at certain frequencies, it is theoretically possible to *eliminate* (not mask) noise by simultaneous transmission of identical wave energy exactly out of phase with the noise. The sum of the two energy waves is zero—hence silence (Fig. 19.50). The phase matching, however, must be exact; if the injected out-of-phase noise is not precisely a negative image of the original noise, then not only will the signals not cancel but they may even increase the noise level. The technique for accomplishing noise cancellation is straightforward in theory but much less so in practice. A microphone samples a noise source and feeds that signal into an analysis/synthesis device. This, as the name implies, analyzes the frequency and amplitude content of the noise and synthesizes the anti-noise, which is then fed to a loudspeaker in the original noise path. The resultant residual noise is detected by a downstream microphone and fed back into the controller as a feedback correction signal. This entire procedure is shown in block diagram form in Fig. 19.51. The technical problems that must be overcome are formidable. Without delving deeply into the physics involved, we can describe them qualitatively.

1. It takes a finite amount of time to analyze the frequency content of a noise and to synthesize the anti-noise. If the noise is random it will have changed by the time the anti-noise signal is injected and will therefore not be canceled. As a result, *the only type of noise that can effectively be attenuated by anti-noise is one that is continuous and/or predictable*. Random noise, such as that of a barking dog, cannot be actively attenuated with the present technology. Candidates for noise cancellation are sounds like those produced by operating machinery, that is, continuous and repetitive sounds. This includes very-low-frequency noise.

2. The analysis and synthesis process is achieved by a device called an *adaptive digital filter*. For technical reasons, the higher the frequencies (pitch) involved, the more complex and expensive are the required digital electronics, microphones,

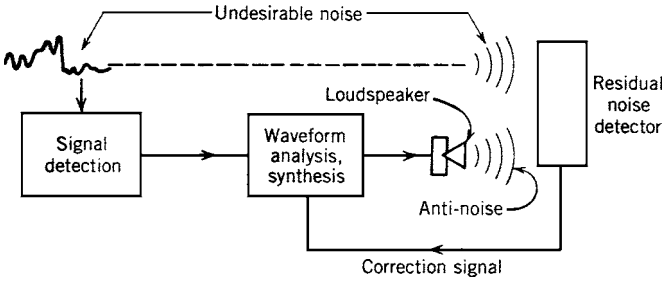
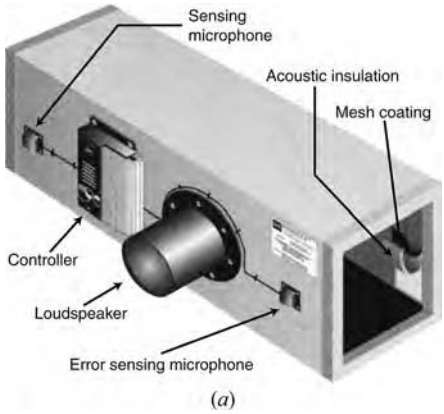


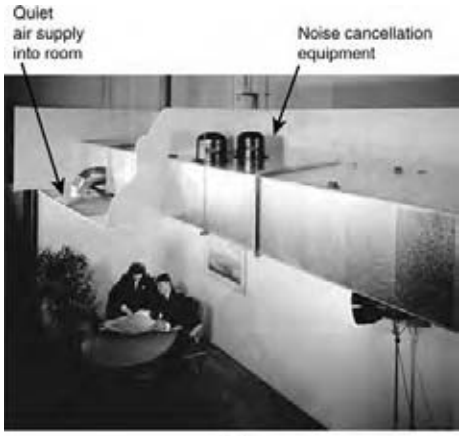
Fig. 19.51 *Block diagram of an active noise-cancellation system. The noise signal is detected, its periodicity determined, its waveform analyzed, and an out-of-phase noise is synthesized and injected into the acoustic environment. A residual noise detector provides a feedback signal that acts to improve noise cancellation.*

and loudspeakers. This further narrows the range of practical noise-cancellation candidates to those producing low frequencies, such as blowers, fans, rotors, internal combustion engines and their exhausts, transformers (hum), air movement in ducts, fluid movement in pipes, and the like.

3. The waveform of the noise, its modes, and its dispersion in space impact heavily on the type and amount of equipment required to effect attenuation economically (i.e., commercially). The simplest type of noise to treat is one that is confined by some sort of waveguide, at low frequency, and exhibits constant sound pressure and phase. Such a wave is known as a *plane wave*, and it can be "treated" with a single sampling microphone, a single loudspeaker, and a single processor.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 19.52 *Active duct-noise-cancellation equipment. (a) The system components, consisting of the sensing and error-signal microphones, controller, and a loudspeaker, are built into a duct section of the required size, which is inserted into the duct system. (b) A mock-up of an office installation showing the relative size and positions of a dual-channel system. (c) Photograph of a multichannel duct-noise-cancellation system in a new office building (designed with large, unlined HVAC ducts). (Courtesy of Digisonix.)*

Considering the three stated criteria, an ideal candidate for economic noise cancellation treatment is duct noise, which is low frequency, continuous, and a plane wave. Figure 19.52 shows the construction of a typical commercial duct-noise-suppression unit, plus application photographs. Practical duct-noise-cancellation equipment in use today can reduce levels from NC-50 to NC-35 and is particularly effective at the "rumble" frequencies below 200 Hz.

Important auxiliary advantages of active duct-noise cancellation are energy conservation and economic benefits. Passive duct-noise reduction, particularly at low frequency, requires massive noise absorbers, requiring 7 to 10 ft (2.1 to 3.0 m) of duct for installation. See Fig. 19.49*c–e*. In addition to the high first cost of these devices and their installation, they introduce a static pressure loss of ½ in. to 1½ in. w.g. (125 to 375 Pa), depending upon airflow and speed. This, in turn, requires a higher horsepower (and noisier) fan. Economic analysis of such designs generally shows an advantage for active noise-cancellation equipment. Such an analysis should be performed for every design where duct silencers are desired or required.

Another important application of active noise cancellation, already in wide use, is in the area of hearing conservation for people exposed to high noise levels at work. Here the out-of-phase noise is introduced into miniature loudspeakers (earphones) in an acoustically transparent headset. This allows the wearer to hear random sounds (such as speech) clearly, while repetitive cyclic noise from engines and the like is attenuated (Fig. 19.53).

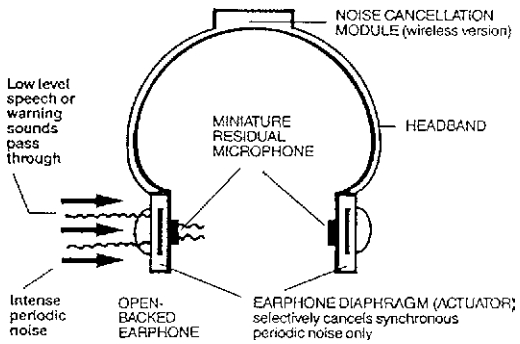


Fig. 19.53 *Schematic diagram of a headset with active noise cancellation. Because of the physical proximity of all the elements, only a single microphone is used. (Courtesy of Noise Cancellation Technologies.)*

Other areas where active noise cancellation is already in use include engine exhausts, heavy machine vibration, interiors of luxury automobiles, military and space vehicles, and selected shipboard spaces. Applications will undoubtedly increase with advances in digital signal processing technology, equipment miniaturization, and reduction in equipment costs.

19.29 PIPING SYSTEM NOISE REDUCTION

As with airflow, noise increases exponentially with liquid flow velocity. Piping is not a major noise source normally, since the radiating diameter is small, except for flow velocities much in excess of 8 fps (2.4 m/s) where a pipe is in contact with the structure. This is, of course, most serious where a pipe passes through NC-15 to NC-25 areas (see Table 19.8). Domestic water system mains should be limited to 50 psi (345 kPa) in other than tall buildings and pressure in branches to 35 psi (240 kPa). In high-rise structures, pressure-reducing valves will be required in high-pressure mains to meet these recommendations. Piping must be designed to prevent water hammer, and noise sources must be located away from quiet areas.

Pumps, like all rotating equipment, are sources of vibration and noise and should be treated as described in Section 19.26. Figure 19.54 shows a typical pump installation with appropriate noise reduction measures. For at least a distance of 100 pipe diameters beyond the pump, resilient pipe hangers should be used. With centrifugal pumps, as with fans and blowers, machine sound concentrates in narrow bands and, if extremely disturbing, can be attenuated with resonant filters. Reciprocating pumps are more difficult to control, as the pulsations are more vibration than noise. Flexible connections and U-joints in the piping will absorb much of this vibration.

19.30 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT NOISE

Electrical equipment is generally overlooked as a noise source, and this is unwise. Most electrical noise is a 120-Hz hum. This can be very disturbing because the frequency is so low and, as we have noted repeatedly, low-frequency noise is difficult to attenuate passively. Transformer noise levels

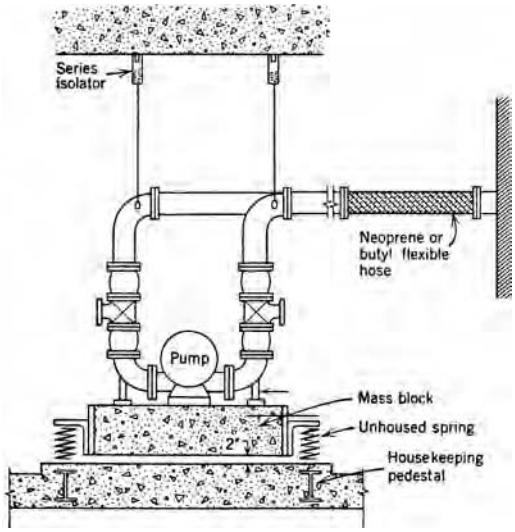


Fig. 19.54 *Typical pump installation with appropriate vibration isolation and damping measures.*

are dictated by National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) and American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standards. For a premium price, lower-noise units are obtainable. Table 19.11 lists maximum noise levels for dry-type units. Most manufacturers warranty noise below these levels. Oil- and silicone-filled units are normally quieter than dry-type transformers, as are units designed for lower temperature rise. Transformer noise can be minimized by these steps:

1. Mount the unit on vibration isolators.
2. If the transformer is wall-hung, use resilient hangers. If it is floor-mounted, place it on a massive slab if possible.
3. Locate the unit so that reflections do not amplify the sound. Sound-absorbent material on the walls behind the units is not useful at 120 Hz. Only cavity resonators will absorb appreciable amounts of sound at that frequency.
4. Use only flexible conduit connections.
5. Avoid locating transformers adjacent to, or immediately outside, quiet areas. A common error in this regard is placing a transformer pad immediately below the window of an NC 15–25 area.

TABLE 19.11 Maximum Sound Levels: Dry-Type Transformers

kVA	Decibels (NEMA Standard)
0–9	40
10–50	45
51–150	50
151–300	55
301–500	60

The second major source of 120-Hz hum is conventional core-and-coil discharge lamp ballasts. These include magnetic ballasts for fluorescent and all high-intensity discharge (HID) sources. Fortunately, electronic ballasts, which are practically noiseless, are rapidly replacing core-and-coil ballasts in fluorescent fixtures, and to a lesser extent in HID units. Table 19.12 lists recommended applications of nonelectronic fluorescent ballasts. Conventional coil-type HID ballasts can be very noisy, and care must be exercised in their placement. With all ballasts, the method of mounting has a marked effect on the radiated noise. As pointed out earlier, when a small vibrating source is coupled rigidly to a larger body, noise is amplified because of increased source-to-air coupling. Since core-and-coil fluorescent ballasts for linear fluorescent lamps are necessarily closely coupled to large metal fixtures for heat dissipation purposes, the sound radiation is greatly amplified. A large number of such fluorescent fixtures mounted in a plenum can create a serious noise problem. Solution of the problem lies either in ballast replacement or in the use of absorptive material in plenums, flexible conduit connection to fixtures,

TABLE 19.12 Acoustic Criteria for Selection of Conventional Core-and-Coil Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts

For an Installation in:	Use of Ballasts with This Rating Will Usually Be Satisfactory
TV or radio station, church, synagogue	A
Office, residence, library, reception or reading room, school study hall	B
Noisy office, doctor's or dentist's office, classroom	C
Industrial applications	D

and resilient fixture hanging. In severe cases, ballasts can be remote-mounted. Coil-type HID ballasts are inherently noisier than fluorescent ones but, like ballasts for compact fluorescent lamps, are generally less troublesome, being coupled to small radiating bodies.

19.31 NOISE PROBLEMS DUE TO EQUIPMENT LOCATION

Roof-mounted HVAC units have proven to be very economical yet very noisy. Vibration, short duct runs, and sound reflections are serious problems that can be solved with vibration isolators, sound mufflers, and careful location of equipment. Roof-mounted cooling towers are a particular problem when they are located adjacent to a taller building. This problem has led to a spate of lawsuits and noise control legislation in many cities. For this reason, particular attention should be paid to all exterior equipment during the design process.

In high-rise buildings, problems are caused by conflicts between the stringent noise requirements of the prime upper floor space and the near presence of elevator machine rooms, mechanical equipment rooms, and cooling towers. These problems are almost impossible to solve after construction and require the services of an acoustics expert during design.

19.32 SOUND ISOLATION ENCLOSURES, BARRIERS, AND DAMPING

In buildings with concentrated high-level noise sources, such as certain types of machinery, it is always more desirable to reduce the noise at its source than to attempt to treat the larger enclosing space. This is most effectively accomplished by enclosing the noise source with materials that provide a combination of reverberant noise reduction by absorption (as explained in Section 18.9 and Fig. 18.10) and blocking of airborne sound with high transmission loss (as detailed in Sections 19.7 to 19.12). These materials are available in the form of curtains, panels, and prefabricated partial and full enclosures tailored to the specific characteristics of the noise source (Fig. 19.55). Such enclosures

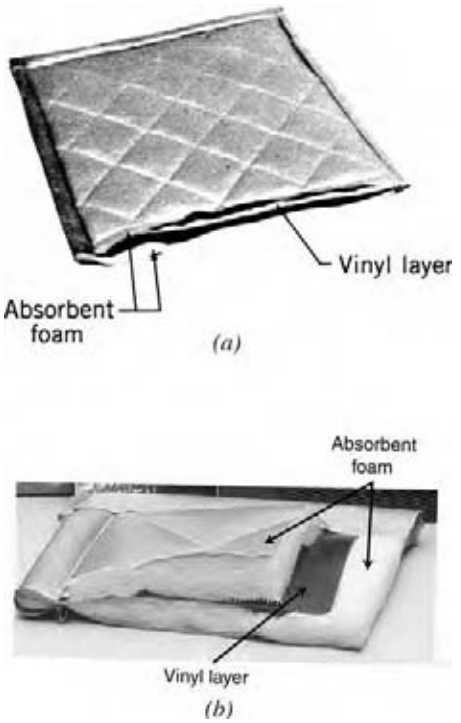
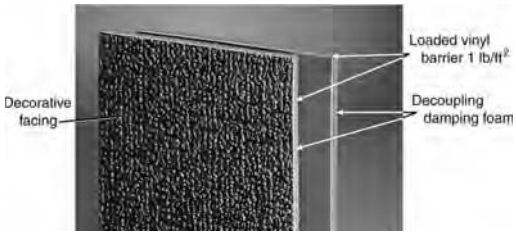
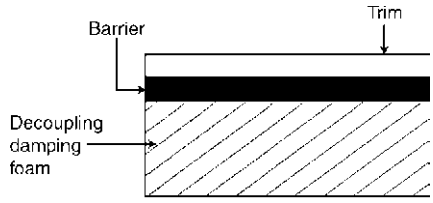


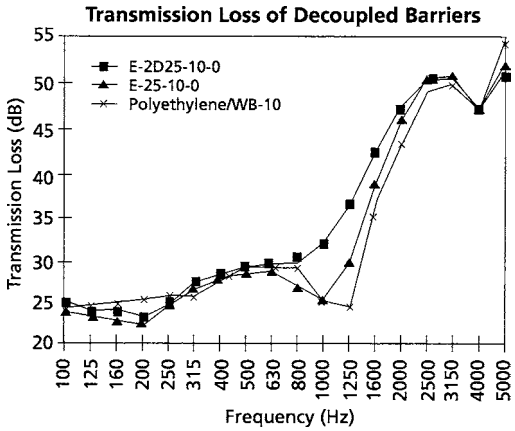
Fig. 19.55 *(a) Typical flexible nonmetallic composite acoustical barrier material that can be used as a free-hanging curtain or applied to a rigid surface. It consists of a layer of flexible vinyl sandwiched between two layers of fiberglass or other acoustic foam. The construction is seen clearly in the cutaway (b). The material is most effective when applied with an air space between it and any rigid support barrier. (Courtesy of E-A-R Specialty Composites, division of AEARO Co.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 19.56 *Composite damped, decoupled barrier material comprising a layer of damping foam plus an integral layer of loaded vinyl barrier material. The exterior may be covered (a) with a decorative cover layer. The foam layer acts to damp the vibrating surface to which it adheres (b) and to decouple the barrier layer. Preliminary attenuation test data (c) for a composite consisting of ¼ in. (6.4 mm) foam and 1 lb/ft² (4.9 kg/m²) loaded vinyl. (Courtesy of E-A-R Specialty Composites, division of AEARO Co.)*

are not normally the responsibility of the building designer. It is, however, important to know that they will be used, as well as their characteristics, so that appropriate isolation can be designed into the building for the residual sound that is radiated from the enclosures.

Where a noise is at least partially the result of vibrating (sheet) metal enclosures, as for instance on laundry machines, mixers, bins, chutes, polishing drums, and the like, a very effective noise control technique is to damp the vibration. This can be done by permanent attachment of a layer of foam to the vibrating metal, which, by minute flexing of the foam mass, converts the vibration energy to heat. The noise reduction can be further enhanced by adding a heavy, limp barrier material to the outside of the foam. Such combinations are called *composite damping barrier materials*, several of which are illustrated in Fig. 19.56. The foam layer also acts to decouple the barrier and thereby increase the noise attenuation.

STC AND IIC RECOMMENDATIONS AND CRITERIA

Recommendations for background noise levels (NC criteria) are given in Table 19.8. Criteria for partition insulation (STC) and impact insulation (IIC) are given in the following sections and in Table 19.13.

19.33 MULTIPLE-OCCUPANCY RESIDENTIAL STC/IIC CRITERIA

The most important acoustical design criteria for residential work in the United States are issued by the Department of Housing and Urban Development in conjunction with the Federal Housing Administration (HUD/FHA). The reader is referred to the latest issue of *A Guide to Airborne, Impact and Structure-Borne Noise Control* and to subsequent HUD/FHA publications. Tables 19.14 and 19.15 give the essential data presented in the current edition of the *Guide*.

The recommendations are divided into grades I, II, and III. Grade II is the most important category and is applicable primarily in residential urban and suburban areas considered to have an average noise environment. The nighttime exterior noise levels may be about 40 to 45 dBA, and the permissible interior noise environment characteristics should not exceed NC 25–30. Grade I is suburban, with a quiet noise environment characterized by a nighttime exterior noise level of about 35 to 40 dBA. *Grade I STC/IIC criteria are 3 points higher than those of grade II.*

TABLE 19.13 Recommended STC for Partitions; Specific Occupancies

	Wall, Partition, or Panel Between		*Sound Insulation Requirement: Background Level in Room Being Considered*	
Type of Occupancy	**Room Being Considered**	**Adjacent Area**	**Quiet**	**Normal**
Normal school buildings without extraordinary or unusual activities or requirements	Classrooms	Adjacent classrooms	STC 42	STC 40
		Corridor or public areas	STC 40	STC 38
		Kitchen and dining areas	STC 50	STC 47
		Shops	STC 50	STC 47
		Recreation areas	STC 45	STC 42
		Music rooms	STC 55	STC 50
		Mechanical equipment rooms	STC 50	STC 45
		Toilet areas	STC 45	STC 42
	Music practice rooms	Adjacent practice rooms	STC 55	STC 50
		Corridor and public areas	STC 45	STC 42
Executive areas, doctors' suites; confidential privacy requirements	Office	Adjacent offices	STC 50	STC 45
		General office areas	STC 48	STC 45
		Corridor or lobby	STC 45	STC 42
		Washrooms and toilet areas	STC 50	STC 47
Normal office; normal privacy requirements; any occupancy using rooms for group meetings	Office	Adjacent offices	STC 40	STC 38
		Corridor, lobby, exterior	STC 40	STC 38
		Washrooms, kitchen, dining	STC 42	STC 40
	Conference rooms	Other conference rooms	STC 45	STC 42
		Adjacent offices	STC 45	STC 42
		Corridor or lobby	STC 42	STC 40
		Exterior of building	STC 40	STC 38
		Kitchen and dining areas	STC 45	STC 42
Large offices, drafting areas, banking floors, etc.	Large general office areas	Corridors, lobby, exterior	STC 38	STC 35
		Data-processing area	STC 40	STC 38
		Kitchen and dining areas	STC 40	STC 38
Motels and urban hotels Hospitals and dormitories	Bedrooms	Adjacent bedrooms[a]	STC 52	STC 50
		Bathroom[a]	STC 50	STC 45
		Living rooms[a]	STC 45	STC 42
		Dining areas	STC 45	STC 42
		Corridor, lobby, or public spaces	STC 45	STC 42

Source: Courtesy of U.S. Gypsum.

[a]Separate occupancy.

The fundamental criteria for airborne sound insulation between dwelling units are, for grade II:

Wall partitions STC > 52
Floor-ceiling assemblies IIC > 52

These apply where similar function spaces are contiguous, such as bedroom to bedroom and living room to living room. Where this is not the case, the insulation must be increased to meet the higher sensitivity requirement.

Grade III recommendations are minimal and can be characterized as noisy, with an average nighttime exterior noise level of about 55 dBA or higher. *Grade III STC/IIC recommendations are 4 points lower than those of grade II.*

19.34 SPECIFIC OCCUPANCIES

(a) Schools

School buildings house spaces of many kinds—classrooms, auditoriums, gymnasiums, cafeterias, shop areas, swimming pools, and music suites—that pose acoustics problems.

TABLE 19.14 Criteria for Airborne Sound Insulation of Partitions between Dwelling Units

Partition Function between Dwellings			
Apt. A		**Apt. B**	**Grade II STC**
Bedroom	to	Bedroom	52
Living room	to	Bedroom[a]	54
Kitchen[b]	to	Bedroom[a]	55
Bathroom	to	Bedroom[a]	56
Corridor	to	Bedroom[a,c]	52
Living room	to	Living room	52
Kitchen[b]	to	Living room[a]	52
Bathroom	to	Living room	54
Corridor	to	Living room[a,c,d]	52
Kitchen	to	Kitchen[e]	50
Bathroom	to	Kitchen	52
Corridor	to	Kitchen[a,c,d]	52
Bathroom	to	Bathroom	50
Corridor	to	Bathroom[a,c]	48

Source: Reprinted from *A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings* (1968). For Grade I, add 3 points; for Grade III, subtract 4 points.

[a]Whenever a partition wall may serve to separate several functional spaces, the highest criterion must prevail.

[b]Or dining or family or recreation room.

[c]It is assumed that there is no entrance door leading from the corridor to the living unit.

[d]Criterion applies to the partition. Doors in corridor partitions must have the rating of the partition, not vice versa.

[e]Double wall construction is recommended to minimize kitchen impact noises.

TABLE 19.15 Criteria for Airborne and Impact Sound Insulation of Floor-Ceiling Assemblies between Dwelling Units

Assembly Function between Dwellings			*Grade II*	
Apt. A		**Apt. B**	**STC**	**IIC**
Bedroom	Above	Bedroom	52	52
Living room	Above	Bedroom[a]	54	57
Kitchen[b]	Above	Bedroom[a,c]	55	62
Family room	Above	Bedroom[a,d]	56	62
Corridor	Above	Bedroom[a]	52	62
Bedroom	Above	Living room[e]	54	52
Living room	Above	Living room	52	52
Kitchen	Above	Living room[a,c]	52	57
Family room	Above	Living room[a,d]	54	60
Corridor	Above	Living room[a]	52	57
Bedroom	Above	Kitchen[c,e]	55	50
Living room	Above	Kitchen[c,e]	52	52
Kitchen	Above	Kitchen[c]	50	52
Bathroom	Above	Kitchen[a,c]	52	52
Family room	Above	Kitchen[a,c,d]	52	58
Corridor	Above	Kitchen[a,c]	48	52
Bedroom	Above	Family room[e]	56	48
Living room	Above	Family room[e]	54	50
Kitchen	Above	Family room[e]	52	52
Bathroom	Above	Bathroom[c]	50	50
Corridor	Above	Corridor	48	48

Source: Reprinted from *A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings* (1968). For Grade I, add 3 points; for Grade III, subtract 4 points.

[a]This arrangement requires greater impact sound insulation than the converse, where a sensitive area is above a less sensitive area.

[b]Or dining or family or recreation room.

[c]It is assumed that plumbing fixtures, appliances, and piping are installed with proper vibration isolation.

[d]The airborne STC criteria in this table apply as well to vertical partitions between these two spaces.

[e]This arrangement requires equivalent airborne sound insulation and perhaps less impact sound insulation than the converse.

1. *Auditoriums.* All auditoriums require a sound system for some of the activities accommodated (see Figs. 18.24 and 18.27). The most difficult aspect, architecturally, is integration of a loudspeaker system into the design. To provide proper sound reinforcement, loudspeakers must be located properly without large obstructions. To accomplish this, the loudspeaker system should be incorporated in the earliest design stages.

In general, a school auditorium is a multipurpose facility. It should be designed to meet speech requirements and also should be suitable for the school's music activities. Often a modified gymnasium (gymnatorium) or cafeteria (cafetorium) functions as an auditorium. Obviously, acoustic compromises occur in such facilities. Large areas of sound-absorbing treatment in either kind of space make them unsuitable as auditoriums and for most events that require speech amplification.

2. *Classrooms.* Typical classrooms are approximately 30 ft square (2.8 m^2) with 10-ft (3-m) ceilings. Adequate speech communication is easily achieved in a room of this size. Classroom acoustic design usually involves:

a. Locating sound-absorbing treatment to reduce classroom noise levels
b. Ensuring adequate privacy between adjacent spaces
c. Control of air-handling system noise

Acoustic tile ceilings provide adequate sound absorption for most classrooms. An NRC of 0.7 is recommended (see Section 18.10).

Partition systems must provide sufficient insulation to prevent disturbance from activities in other classrooms and corridors. Such partitions

should run full-height from floor to ceiling slab or roof construction. If return-air transfer ducts are needed, their noise reduction characteristics must be as good as those of the walls or doors that they penetrate (for NC data, see Table 19.8). Unit ventilators commonly used for classrooms produce approximately the required level of background sound.

3. *Music Suites.* School music programs usually range from individual instruction to band and choral concerts. The teaching spaces required for such a program include practice rooms, ensemble rooms, and large rehearsal spaces. Both room acoustics design and sound isolation are important in music suites. Privacy between adjacent spaces is critical, since simultaneous use is necessary.

4. *Dining Areas.* The activity in cafeterias or lunchrooms usually generates a great deal of noise. The kitchen and serving areas should be separated from the eating spaces. Ceilings and wall areas in the cafeteria should be treated with sound-absorbing material. Unless the ceiling is completely treated with a highly efficient sound-absorbing material, the environment will be unsatisfactory due to its high noise level. The minimum NRC of this material should be 0.8.

5. *Gymnasiums.* Activities in gymnasiums create so much noise that even extensive treatment will not quiet these spaces. A quiet gymnasium probably would be unsatisfactory in any case, since spectators are conditioned to consider the noise as an enjoyable aspect of athletic events. However, to provide a proper environment for normal sports activities, the ceiling area should absorb sound. In addition, if a sound amplification system is to be used, sound-absorbing wall treatment may be required to eliminate echoes that would reduce the intelligibility of announcements. An NRC of 0.7 is suggested with sound-absorbent material to be ceiling-mounted.

If a gymnasium will also serve as an auditorium, loudspeaker system placement requires special consideration. For example, the loudspeakers should be located above the source location for speeches and plays.

6. *Swimming Pools.* The acoustic environment of swimming pools is often chaotic. Most sound-absorbing materials disintegrate in the high-humidity conditions prevalent in pool areas. Use special sound-absorbing units that have moisture-resistant properties.

7. *Shops.* Metal, woodworking, and scenery shops in schools contain many noise sources—saws, planers, drill presses, and manual tools. Each generates high airborne and structure-borne noise levels. Consolidating noisy areas and maximizing the distance between them and quiet spaces are essential. Ceiling and wall absorptive treatment with an NRC of at least 0.75 is recommended.

(b) Houses of Worship

The basic activities of these buildings usually combine speech and music. Thus, the worship environment must be acoustically hospitable to both. The architectural plan also must respond to religious requirements, including the relative positioning of pulpits, lecterns, the altar (if any), and the choir.

Successful acoustics can be achieved by designing the overall environment for music and providing special assistance for speech. Large congregational spaces frequently include a sound-reflecting canopy over the pulpit to direct the speaker's voice to the congregation. In some large buildings, a loudspeaker located above the canopy further reinforces speech from the pulpit. The choir and organ communicate with the entire volume of the building and, therefore, benefit from a reverberant environment.

(c) Offices

Although office buildings may contain public spaces, auditoriums, and restaurants, prime occupancy is in office areas. Most acoustics problems in office buildings relate to privacy—either between spaces within a single firm or between adjacent firms. Speech privacy has been discussed at length in Sections 19.16 through 19.21, including consideration of open-plan offices. Mechanical and electrical equipment noise problems are discussed in Sections 19.25 through 19.32.

(d) Apartment Buildings

Large apartment buildings house hundreds and even thousands of residents. Privacy and freedom

from annoyance are high on the list of tenant requirements. See the HUD/FHA criteria in Section 19.33.

The performance of partitions is compromised in many designs by careless planning of convenience outlets, medicine cabinets, and mechanical services. Direct-exhaust duct connections between apartments and back-to-back placement of medicine cabinets result in loss of privacy. Back-to-back convenience outlets must be avoided.

Installation of rugs or carpeting provides the best protection against footfall noise. Many leases now require that a tenant provide such impact-reducing floor covering over most of the floor area in an apartment. Good design also dictates that similar spaces in adjacent apartments be grouped—bedrooms next to bedrooms, for example. Absorptive material in bedrooms should be ceiling mounted. A minimum NRC of 0.6 is recommended.

Apartment house site selection seldom includes consideration of acoustics. Nevertheless, truck routes, superhighways, and airports can be annoying "neighbors." Cooling towers serving adjacent buildings must be considered during the planning stages.

OUTDOOR ACOUSTIC CONSIDERATIONS

19.35 SOUND POWER AND PRESSURE LEVELS IN FREE SPACE (OUTDOORS)

The equations in Section 18.8 are not applicable to outdoor sound propagation, in which the large reflective component of the indoor condition is absent. Although the propagation of sound outdoors may not appear to be of immediate importance in architectural acoustics, outdoor noise sources such as traffic, cooling towers, and aircraft are frequently loud enough to disturb activities within or immediately adjacent to a building. Conversely, the noise made by building equipment such as cooling towers, heat pumps, and even window air conditioners may be loud enough to disturb neighbors in a nearby building. For this reason, it is desirable to have some basic understanding of outdoor sound propagation.

For preliminary evaluation of an outdoor noise problem, assuming a small nondirectional source on the ground, the sound pressure level can be determined from Equations 18.5 and 18.6. For large sources such as cooling towers and traffic, which do not exhibit inverse square properties, sound level estimates are best made on the basis of experience and empirical data beyond the scope of this book (see Magrab, 1975; Schaudinischky, 1976). For small outdoor sources, the equipment power level can be estimated by measuring the sound pressure level at 5 ft (1.5 m) and adding 15 dB. Other factors (such as moisture in the air, the presence of trees, wind, and temperature gradients) will affect outdoor sound propagation to some extent, but they can be ignored except when great distances (i.e., over 1000 ft [305 m]) are involved. Barriers, which are the most effective outdoor attenuators, were discussed in Section 19.14.

19.36 BUILDING SITING

Building siting, vis-à-vis exterior noise sources, is as important as interior structural design. Since this subject is somewhat beyond our scope of concern, the discussion is brief. Buildings should be sited, with respect to noise sources:

1. To use natural terrain noise barriers (Fig. 19.57*a*).
2. Regarding trees as noise barriers, to rely only on very thickly wooded areas (Fig. 19.57*b*).
3. To avoid naturally poor sites (Fig. 19.57*c*).
4. To avoid sound reflection from other buildings (Fig. 19.57*d*).

Point 4 is also important in a multiwing building, in avoiding U-shapes or other configurations where a central court becomes an echo chamber.

Where avoidance of an exterior noise source is impossible, quiet zones can be buffered from noises by placing higher-noise areas on the noisy side of a building. Thus, in a school, classrooms and offices can be buffered by a cafeteria and gym; in a residence, bedrooms by living rooms and corridors; in an office building, private offices by noisier clerical offices; and so on.

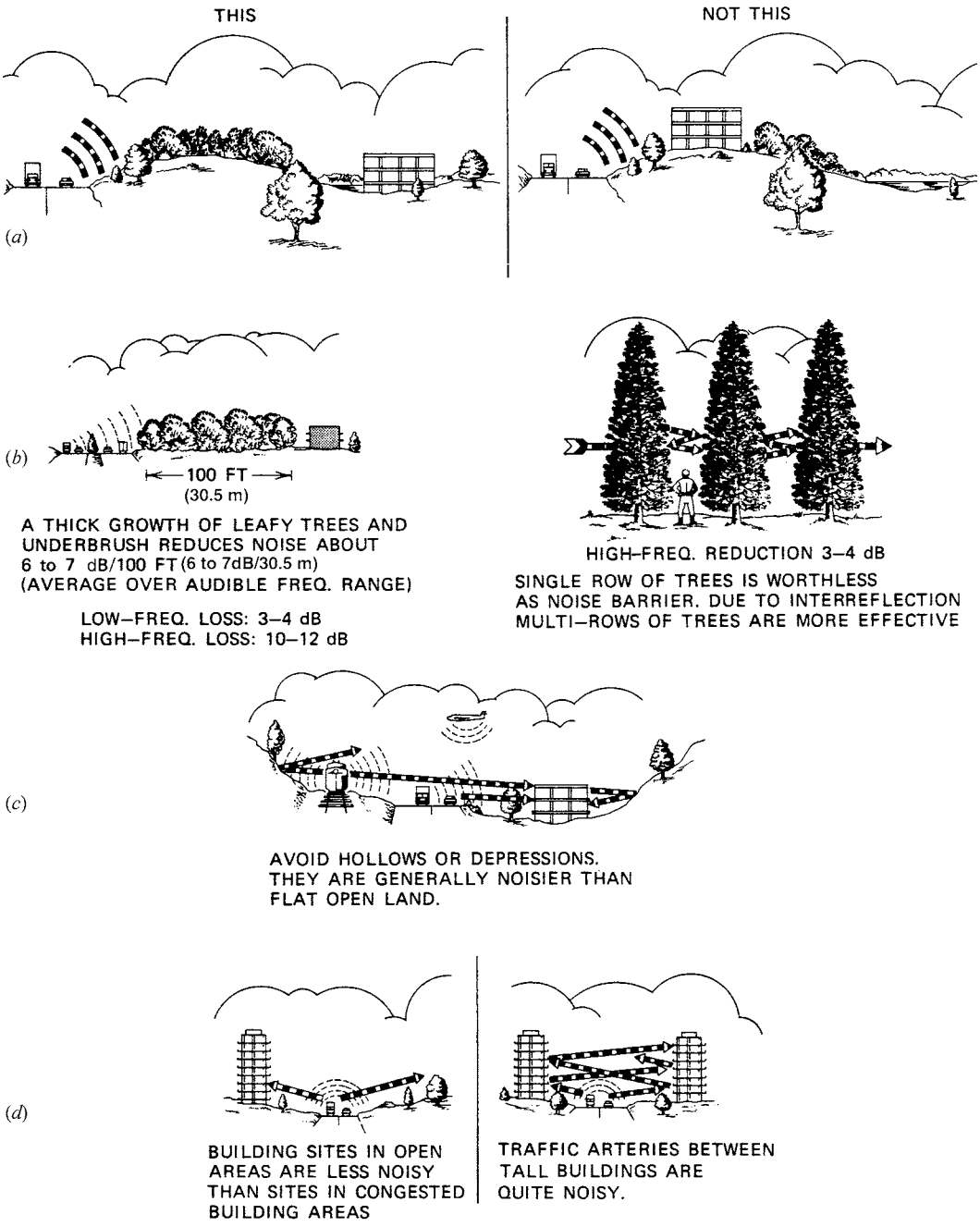


Fig. 19.57 *(a) Use of natural noise barriers. (b) Effectiveness of wooded areas as noise barriers, showing noise reduction of trees. (c) An example of a poor building site. (d) Building site issues near traffic arteries and other buildings. (Reprinted from* A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings, *1968.)*

REFERENCE MATERIAL

19.37 GLOSSARY

A-Scale. A filtering system with characteristics that roughly match the response characteristics of the human ear. Referred to as dBA.

Absorption Coefficient α. The ratio of the sound absorbed to the sound incident on a material or device.

Anechoic Room. A room that provides a free field acoustic testing environment like the outdoors. All the sound emanating from a source is essentially absorbed at the surfaces of the room.

ANSI. American National Standards Institute, a nonprofit national technical association that publishes standards covering definitions, test methods, recommended practices, and specifications of materials.

Articulation Class (AC). A figure of merit for acoustic absorption indicating the absorption efficiency of a material for angles of incidence of the sound wave between 45° and 55°. The range is 150 to 250 (no units), with higher numbers indicating better absorption.

Articulation Index (AI). A numerical index in the range of 0.0 to 1.0 indicating the degree of speech intelligibility in an open-office design, measured with background noise, including masking sound, if any. Also a measure of speech privacy. An index of 0.0 indicates no speech intelligibility, hence ideal speech privacy; an index of 1.0 indicates perfect speech intelligibility and therefore no speech privacy.

ASTM. Formerly the American Society for Testing and Materials, now simply ASTM, a nonprofit national technical society that publishes definitions, standards, test methods, recommended installation practices, and specifications for materials. ASTM is a consensus group of the entire building materials industry. It sets standards for products and establishes methods for testing.

Baffle or Barrier, Sound. A shielding structure or partition used to increase the effective length of a sound transmission path between two locations.

Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC). A single number or range of numbers for evaluating the effectiveness of an acoustical ceiling construction in isolating audible airborne sound transmission, tested at 16 one-third-octave frequencies. Higher numbers indicate more effectiveness in preventing noise between rooms. Tested in accordance with ASTM E1414. Previously described as the Ceiling Sound Transmission Class (CSTC) or Sound Transmission Class (STC).

Critical Frequency. The lowest frequency at which the wavelength of a bending wave, traveling in a structure, is the same as the wavelength in air at that frequency.

Damping. Dissipation of structure-borne noise. This is usually accomplished by using a material with a high internal energy-absorbing capacity (i.e., high internal damping).

Decibel (dB). A measurement approach adopted for convenience in representing vastly different sound quantities.

Diffraction. The tendency of sound waves to flow readily around obstacles that are small in comparison to the wavelength of the sound.

Diffuse Sound Field. A region where sound at any given point is made up of sound waves with all angles of incidence.

Direct Sound Field. A region in which all or most of the sound arrives directly from the source without reflection.

FIIC. Field Impact Insulation Class, which is determined by an actual field test. Also see *FSTC*, Field Sound Transmission Class, also determined by an actual field test.

Flanking Sound Path. The transmission of sound or noise from one room to another by indirect paths rather than directly through an intervening partition.

Flutter. A multiple echo set up between parallel reflecting surfaces.

Free Sound Field (Free Field). A region in a homogeneous medium free from boundaries.

In a free field, the sound pressure level decreases 6 dB for a doubling of the distance from a point source.

FSTC. Field Sound Transmission Class, which is determined by an actual field test performed per ASTM E336. Also see *FIIC*, Field Impact Insulation Class, also determined by an actual field test.

Impact Insulation Class (IIC). A single-figure rating that provides an estimate of the impact sound-isolating performance of a floor-ceiling assembly.

Intensity. The amount of sound energy per second that is carried across a unit area.

Intensity Level (IL). A measure of the acoustic power passing through a unit area expressed in the decibel scale and referenced to some standard base (usually 10^{-12} W/cm^2).

Interference. The destructive or reinforcing action of two or more waves arriving at the same position simultaneously.

Loudness. A subjective human definition of the intensity of a sound.

Masking. The presence of a background sound increases the level to which a sound signal must be raised in order to be heard or distinguished. If the level of the background sound is significantly higher than that of the sound signal, the signal cannot be heard. This effect is known as masking.

Mass Law. States that the transmission loss of walls (in part of the frequency range) is controlled entirely by the mass per unit area of the panel. It also states that the transmission loss increases 6 dB for each doubling of frequency or each doubling of the panel mass per unit area.

Noise. Any undesired sounds, usually of different frequencies, resulting in an objectionable or irritating sensation.

Noise Reduction (NR). (1) The reduction in sound pressure level caused by making an alteration to a sound source. (2) The difference in sound pressure level measured between two adjacent rooms caused by the transmission loss of an intervening barrier.

Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC). The average sound absorption coefficient (to the nearest 0.05) measured at the four one-third octave bands centered on frequencies of 250, 500, 1000, and 2000 Hz.

Octave Band. A range of frequency where the highest frequency of the band is double the lowest frequency. The band is usually specified by its center frequency.

Phon. Loudness level, at a particular frequency, equal to the 1000-Hz decibel level of that equal-loudness contour.

Pink Noise. Wide-spectrum noise whose amplitude drops 3 dB per octave with increasing frequency (equal energy per octave). Useful for masking.

Random Noise. A noise whose magnitude and/or frequency cannot be predicted precisely at any given time. A rough approximation of random noise is the static heard on a radio between stations (see *Noise*, *Pink Noise*, *White Noise*).

Reverberation. A persistence or echoing of previously generated sound caused by reflection of acoustic waves from the surfaces of enclosed spaces.

Reverberation Time. The time required for a sound to decay to a value one-millionth of its original intensity or to reduce 60 dB after the sound source has stopped.

Sabin. The unit of acoustic absorption. One sabin (ft^2) (m^2) is the absorption of 1 ft^2 (m^2) of perfect sound-absorbing material or open space with no reflecting surfaces.

Sound Absorption Coefficient. The fraction of the incident energy absorbed (not reflected) by a material when a sound wave strikes it is the sound absorption coefficient of that material. Usually represented by the Greek letter alpha (α).

Sound Barrier. A material installed to prevent the passage of sound from one area to another. Sound-deadening board and lead sheet or special insulation make good sound barriers.

Sound Level Meter. An instrument for the direct measurement of sound pressure level. Sound level meters may also incorporate octave-band filters for measuring sound directly in octave bands.

Sound Power Level (PWL). A measure of the total airborne acoustic power generated by a noise source, expressed in the decibel scale

and referenced to some standard base (usually 10^{-12} W).

Sound Pressure Level (SPL). A measure of the air pressure change caused by a sound wave. Expressed in the decibel scale and referenced to some standard base (usually 0.0002 μbar).

Sound Transmission Class (STC). A single-number rating of a building element's efficacy in blocking the transmission of sound compared to a standard transmission attenuation/frequency curve. See also *Ceiling Attenuation Class*.

Transmission Loss (TL). The reduction of airborne sound power caused by placing a wall or barrier between the reverberant sound field of a source and its receiver. Transmission loss is a property of the wall or barrier.

White Noise. Noise of a wide frequency range in which the amplitude of the noise is essentially the same in all frequency bands (equal energy per frequency band).

19.38 REFERENCE STANDARDS

See Section 19.11(h) for a description of the contents of these standards.

ASTM C423-02a. *Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method*

ASTM E90-04. *Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements*

ASTM E336-97e1. *Standard Test Method for Measurement of Airborne Sound Insulation in Buildings*

ASTM E413-04. *Classification for Rating Sound Insulation*

ASTM E795-00. *Standard Practices for Mounting Test Specimens During Sound Absorption Tests*

ASTM E1110-01. *Standard Classification for Determination of Articulation Class*

ASTM E1111-02. *Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Ceiling Systems*

ASTM E1130-02e1. *Standard Test Method for Objective Measurement of Speech Privacy in Open Offices Using Articulation Index*

ASTM E1179-87(2003). *Standard Specification for Sound Sources Used for Testing Open Office Components and Systems*

ASTM E1264-98. *Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products*

ASTM E1374-02. *Standard Guide for Open Office Acoustics and Applicable ASTM Standards*

ASTM E1375-90(2002). *Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Furniture Panels Used as Acoustical Barriers*

ASTM E1376-90(2002). *Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Sound Reflected by Wall Finishes and Furniture Panels*

ASTM E1414-00a. *Standard Test Method for Airborne Sound Attenuation Between Rooms Sharing a Common Ceiling Plenum*

ASTM E1573-02. *Standard Test Method for Evaluating Masking Sound in Open Offices Using A-Weighted and One-third Octave Band Sound Pressure Levels*

ISO 717-1, 1996. (International Organization for Standardization). *Acoustics—Rating of Sound Insulation in Buildings and of Building Elements—Part 1: Airborne Sound Insulation*

ISO 717-2, 1996. *Acoustics—Rating of Sound Insulation in Buildings and of Building Elements—Part 2: Impact Sound Insulation.*

19.39 UNITS AND CONVERSIONS

See Table 19.16.

TABLE 19.16 Acoustic Units and Conversions

Variable	MKS Units		CGS Units
Force	kilogram-meter/s^2 = newton		gram-cm/s^2 = dyne
Intensity	watts/meter^2		watts/cm^2
Pressure	newton meter^2 = pascals		dynes/cm^2 = microbars
	In Conversion:		
Quantity	**Multiply**	**By**	**To Obtain**
Force	newtons	10^5	dynes
	dynes	10^{-5}	newtons
Intensity	watts/cm^2	10^4	watts/m^2
	watts/m^2	10^{-4}	watts/cm^2
Pressure	pascals	10	microbars
	microbar	10^{-1}	pascals

Note: One atmosphere = 1 bar = 10^6 μbar.

19.40 SYMBOLS

See Table 19.17.

TABLE 19.17 Symbols and Abbreviations Used Commonly in Acoustics

A	Total absorption, sabins; area in unit being used
A_R	Absorption in receiving room, sabins
$A_{1,2}$...	Total absorption of each material in a space, sabins
AC	Articulation Class
c	Velocity of sound, feet per second
CAC	Ceiling Attenuation Class
d	Distance from source, meters or feet
dB	Decibel
f	Frequency of sound, hertz (Hz)
I	Intensity, W/cm^2
I_a	Absorbed energy, W/cm^2
I_i	Incident energy, W/cm^2
I_0	Reference intensity, 10^{-16} W/cm^2
IIC	Impact Insulation Class, no units
IL	Intensity level, decibels
NC	Noise criterion, no units
NRC	Noise reduction coefficient, no units
NR	Noise reduction, decibels
p	Pressure, pascals or microbars
p_0	Reference base pressure, 2×10^{-5} Pa
P	Acoustic power, watts
*P*a	Pascal, unit of pressure (SI)
PWL	Sound power level, decibels
R	Room constant, square feet (meters)
r	Distance from source, meters or feet
S	Surface area, in unit being used
SPL	Sound pressure level, decibels
STC	Sound Transmission Class, no units
T_R	Reverberation time, seconds
TL	Transmission loss, decibels
V	Volume (geometric)
W,*P*	Sound power, watts
W_0	Reference base sound power, 10^{-12} W
a, α	Absorption coefficient (no units)
$\bar{a}$, $\bar{\alpha}$	Average absorption coefficient (no units)
λ	Wavelength, feet or meters
Σ	Sum of, or total (no units)
$\Sigma\ S\alpha = \Sigma\ A$	Total absorption, sabins
Δ	Change in a quantity or difference between two quantities

Note: Where definitions are expressed in I-P units, SI units are also understood, with proper conversion factors, and vice versa.

References and Resources

ASHRAE. 2003. *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers. Atlanta, GA.

Cavanaugh, W. J., W. R. Farrell, P. W. Hirtle, and B. G. Watters. 1962. "Speech Privacy in Buildings," in *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, Vol. 34, No. 4.

Fader, B. 1981. *Industrial Noise Control.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

HUD. 1968. *A Guide to Airborne, Impact, and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings.* U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development. Washington, DC.

Magrab, E. B. 1975. *Environmental Noise Control.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

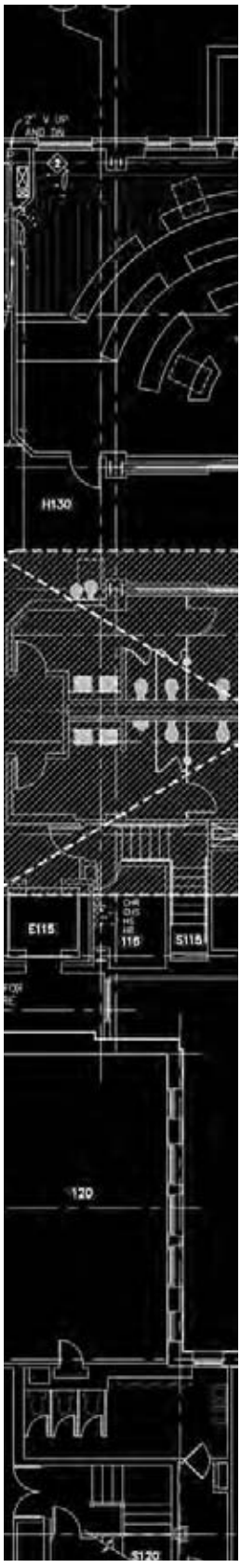
National Research Council of Canada, Noise Control in Buildings: http://irc.nrc-cnrc.gc.ca/pubs/cbd/cbd010_e.html

Schaudinischky, L. H. 1976. *Sound, Man and Building.* Applied Science Publishers. London.

Young, R. W. 1965. "Revision of the Speech Privacy Calculation," in *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, Vol. 38, No. 4.

PART V

WATER AND WASTE



Water and its appropriate use are becoming an increasingly important part of design, especially the design of green buildings. Almost every North American building designed today is supplied with potable (drinkable) water. In the vast majority of these buildings, *most* of this clean water is used to carry away organic waste. The result is a wide range of design impacts covering everything from the detailed arrangement of bathroom fixtures and interior surfaces to the overall plans of very large, complex water and sewage treatment facilities.

This part of the book presents information on the following topics: basic planning information and rainwater (Chapter 20); water supply (Chapter 21); organic waste disposal, both waterborne and waterless (Chapter 22); and solid waste design issues (Chapter 23).

Fire protection, which often requires the most extensive water supply piping network within a building, is covered in Part VI.

CHAPTER 20

Water and Basic Design

"THE NEXT GREAT WORLD CRISIS WILL BE water supply." This prediction is becoming increasingly frequent as countries downstream threaten war over water rights with countries upstream, and water withdrawals in coastal areas allow saltwater intrusions into aquifers. State against state, county against county, water rights continue to cause problems. With a finite planetary water supply pitted against an increasing population and, worse yet, an increasing *per capita* consumption of water, we see again (as with fossil fuels) the problem of limited resources versus growing demand. At least in this case the amount of water is fixed, not diminishing. However, the problem of fair allocation remains (Fig. 20.1). Countries have fought wars over oil; must they also wage war over water?

Agricultural and industrial use of water may dwarf that of buildings, but designers still have a role in this dilemma. We can use water beautifully where it is appropriate and avoid its use when possible.

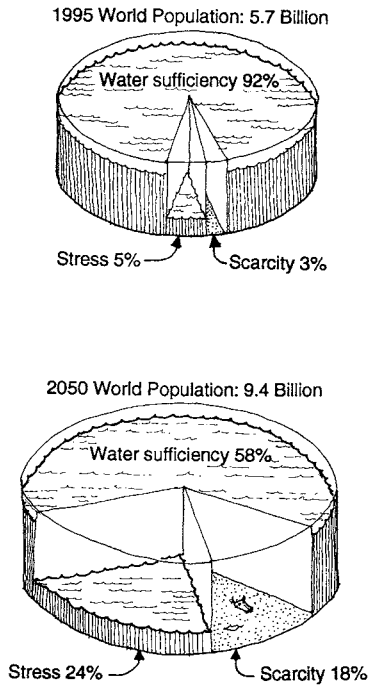


Fig. 20.1 *Earth's present and projected future annual per capita fresh water supply for all purposes. The relative size of the graphs reflects population growth. A "sufficient" supply is 1700 m^3 (449,000 gal) per person; the "stress" supply is between 1000 and 1700 m^3 (264,180 and 449,000 gal) per person; the "scarcity" supply is less than 1000 m^3 (264,180 gal) per person. Currently, worldwide water use is 70% irrigation, 20% commercial-industrial, and 10% residential. (Worldwatch,* State of the World *1999; courtesy of Population Action International.)*

20.1 WATER IN ARCHITECTURE

Throughout history, in nearly all climates and cultures, the designer's major concern about water was how to keep it *out* of a building. Only since the end of the nineteenth century has a water supply *within* a building become commonplace in industrialized countries. In the rest of the world today, running water is still not available within most buildings. Water's potential contributions to lifestyle and

architecture are as numerous and varied as appropriate design responses to the supply, use, and return of this versatile commodity.

(a) Nourishment

Much of the human body is water, the most abundant chemical in our bodies as well as in our diet. The amount of pure (potable) water that we need for drinking and cooking is very small—only about 3 g/cd (gallons per capita per day) (11.4 L/cd) in the United States. The most common supply system throughout history has been the central municipal fountain or well (Fig. 20.2), whose technical importance to the community has often been emphasized by the aesthetics of both the fountain's overall sculptural composition and the elegance of detail in water spouts, basins, and other elements. The social importance of the fountain is evident from its location in the central plaza, from where small amounts of water are carried daily by townspeople to homes or workplaces. Opportunities abound for conversations around the fountain.

As potable water became available on demand within buildings, water-related social opportunities diminished. However, employees still converse around the drinking fountain—for example, when it is located in a place that invites lingering or relaxing.



Fig. 20.2 *The fountain in the central piazza at Tarquinia, Italy, still serves as a gathering place and as a symbol of the town's provision of a basic need.*

(b) Cleansing and Hygiene

Water is a nearly ideal medium for the dissolution and transport of organic waste, and because of its high heat-storage capacity, it easily retains comfortable temperatures for bathing. Much larger quantities of water are used for cleaning than for nourishment: in the average U.S. home, about 14 g/cd (53 L/cd) are used for clothes washing and dishwashing, and another 21 g/cd (79.5 L/cd) are used for bathing and personal hygiene.

In the past, water for cleaning was carried to the home infrequently; the Saturday night (only) bath was typical well into the twentieth century in the United States. Bathing vessels were usually portable and sometimes were combined with other pieces of furniture (a couch that sat over a tub, a metal tub that folded up inside a tall wooden cabinet, etc.). Thus, a *bathplace* rather than a bathroom was the common design response.

Although the physical constraints of water carrying were important design influences on bathing, cultural attitudes were at least as strong an influence throughout history. Perhaps the most startling contrast is between the medieval concept of bathing as an almost sinful indulgence and the earlier Roman attitude toward public baths as the social centers of cities.

Today bathing facilities are commonly designed to be used on a personal scale, in privacy. There also are welcome opportunities to design more social bathing (recreational rather than cleansing) places, such as swimming pools, bath houses, and hot tubs. The characteristics of the water supply (spouts, jets, cascades) can be matched with those of the water body (mirror-smooth, gently flowing, rippled, rolling, foaming) to obtain the desired atmosphere.

(c) Ceremonial Uses

Largely through its associations with cleaning, water acquired a ceremonial significance that remains particularly evident in religious services. Examples of the ceremonial use of water include vessels containing holy water at entrances to Catholic churches, pools in the forecourts of mosques, and full-immersion baptismal fonts at the altars of some Protestant churches. The opportunities for aesthetic expression are particularly rich in these ceremonial applications.

(d) Transportation Uses

In stark contrast to its uses in nourishing, cleansing, and celebrating, water is used in our buildings principally to transport organic waste. There is perhaps no more flagrant example of a mismatch in architecture than the high-grade resource of pure water being used for the low-grade task of carrying away a cigarette butt. The typical U.S. home uses 32 g/cd (121 L/cd) just to flush toilets.

In the past, table scraps were commonly fed to animals or composted, and human waste was thrown out of windows (accompanied by warning cries) or deposited in holes below outhouses. Organic waste disposal was thus dependent on either portable vessels or special structures set apart from the typical building.

As water supplies were developed, water's advantages over the foul smell and inconvenience of these methods became irresistible. A typical sequence of events unfolded on Manhattan Island. In the 1700s, Manhattan was farm country that, like all other areas that later developed into large cities, had minimal water needs. Potable water was available in shallow wells and from some springs and streams. These sources were largely unaffected by the minor ground pollution from widely separated dry-pit privies (outhouses) that received human wastes. Paved city streets appeared in the 1800s, at which time the natural streams were enclosed in pipes called *storm sewers*. These pipes led the rainfall to the many waterways surrounding the island. Then in the later 1800s, flush toilets appeared. It seemed natural to connect the toilets to the already established storm sewers and to rename the pipeways *combined sewers*, which now carried both storm water and so-called sanitary drainage to the rivers (sanitary for the building but not for the rivers). Fast-flowing rivers are natural sewage treatment plants, and, surprisingly, for many decades they did a fair job of keeping pollution reasonably in check. With the prospect of future sewage treatment plants, separate *sanitary sewers* were built. Also, there were some remaining (and some newly built) storm sewers that did not carry the wastes from toilets.

In cities where this confused pattern of sewer systems still exists (including most larger and older cities), it is now extremely difficult and expensive to sort out and reroute sewers so that *only* sanitary drainage goes to treatment plants and *all* storm drainage goes to waterways or into the ground. It seems particularly ironic that in most U.S. locations the rainwater that falls on a home's roof is adequate in both quality and quantity to supply a family's cleansing needs (21 + 14 = 35 g/cd) (132 L/cd). In this chapter and in Chapter 21, these possibilities for rainwater are developed further.

As the human waste disposal place became a room within a building, the design issues grew more complex. Physically, there was a need for running water and for large-diameter pipes that sloped downward continuously from the toilet to a sewer or septic tank. As sewer gas became a recognized problem, an elaborate system of traps and vents became necessary. Again, cultural attitudes were also influential: How private an activity was this elimination from the body? To what extent could/should one plumbing fixture accommodate both body cleansing and waste elimination? If males insisted on standing rather than sitting while urinating, how to devise a toilet that would also properly accommodate defecation, which requires a low seat? Some designers' responses to these questions can be found in Chapter 21.

(e) Cooling

Water has a remarkable cooling potential: it stores heat readily, removes large quantities of heat when it evaporates, and vaporizes readily at temperatures commonly found at the human skin surface. In hot-dry climates, designers can place water surfaces (or sprays) upwind from the place to be cooled or resort to the evaporative coolers discussed in Section 4.3. Cooling towers (Section 10.3) are familiar components of large-building cooling systems.

Because all of us have experienced the physical cooling of the skin by water, we all carry psychological associations between water and cooling that can enhance our comfort on hot days. The sight of sunlight reflected on a water surface, with its characteristic "dancing" quality, connotes coolness, as does the sound of running or splashing water. Thus, even when water does not physically cool people, it can make an important psychological contribution to human comfort (Fig. 20.3).

(f) Ornamental Uses

In almost any landscaping application, indoors or out, water becomes a center of interest. Our association of water with nourishing, cleansing, and cooling makes water a very powerful design element—a fact recognized by landscape designers throughout history. In arid regions, water is often used sparingly, in small, tightly controlled channels and at lower flow rates. The gardens of Islamic architecture are especially effective demonstrations of such design restraint. Where water is more plentiful, it has been used lavishly, as at the Villa d'Este in Tivoli, outside Rome, where much of a river's flow is diverted through the gardens.

Especially useful design characteristics of water include its *reflectivity*, which sets it apart from most plant and ground materials in a garden; its *liquidity*, which attracts attention to its motion and creates unique sounds wherever it is moved; and its *life-sustaining* potential, which allows the addition of both water plants and animals to a garden.



Fig. 20.3 *Water as an aesthetic feature of a courtyard during the hot-arid season in Colima, Mexico. The sound and sight of running water add to a psychological impression of coolness.*

(g) Protective Uses

Every designer dreads water's ability to penetrate a roof and damage a building and its contents. However, we all depend on water as the best fire protection medium available in most buildings. The vast quantities of water potentially required for firefighting must be delivered quickly; the result is pipes of large diameter regulated by very large valves. Because this system's distribution tree must be immediately obvious to firefighters, some degree of exposure is prudent. Despite its size and guarantee of at least partial exposure in public places, a fire protection water supply system is rarely treated as a visually integral design element. This mismatch of potential and actuality is discussed further in Chapter 24.

Another protective use of water has been as a means to control circulation; moats around castles may seem quaint today, but designers still sometimes use water as a means of directing traffic over a bridge to an entry.

20.2 THE HYDROLOGIC CYCLE

There is a finite quantity of water in the Earth and its atmosphere. (This statement is challenged by a controversial theory of a steady rain of small water-bearing comets from outer space; see Gleick, 1998.) The process whereby this water constantly circulates, powered by about one-fourth of the Earth's solar energy, is called the *hydrologic cycle* (Fig. 20.4). More than 99% of this water is "inaccessible"—either because it is saltwater or because it is frozen in glaciers

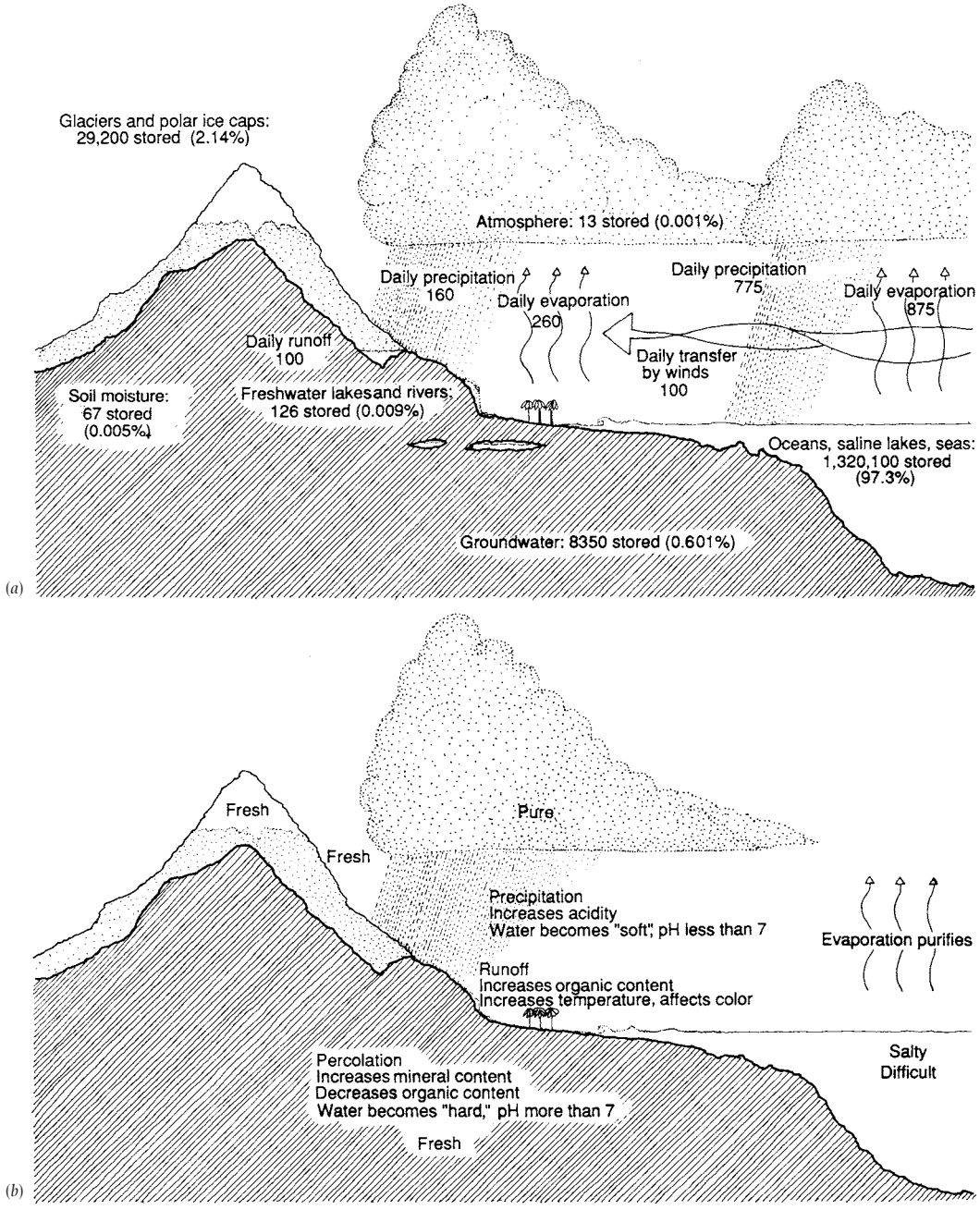


Fig. 20.4 *(a) Hydrologic cycle. The figures given are in cubic kilometers. "Evaporation" includes transpiration from plants as well as evaporation from surfaces. "Precipitation" can be rain, hail, sleet, or snow. The vast majority of stored water is in the ocean. (b) Quality of water at various stages within this cycle.*

or polar ice caps. The most accessible sources of water are precipitation and runoff.

Precipitation has the advantage of relative purity, although acid rain is a growing threat in many parts of the world, including much of the United States and Canada. Like solar energy, precipitation is a very large but very thinly spread resource; its capture is therefore likely to take place on an individual basis. Until we experience a water crisis similar to the energy crisis that began in the 1970s, rainwater capture will remain a mostly untapped resource in the United States.

Runoff enjoys the advantage of a concentrated flow of water, which permits easy capture of large quantities. Its most serious disadvantage is the possibility of pollution—organic, chemical, and radioactive—depending on what is upstream from the point of capture. In some regions of North America, river water is reused 50 times on its way to the ocean. Further discussion of water sources and treatments occurs in Chapters 21 and 22.

That part of daily precipitation that neither evaporates nor joins the runoff becomes part of *soil moisture*. Much soil moisture is used by growing plants and is soon transpired (evaporated) by the plant to the atmosphere. As water works downward below the root zone of plants, it eventually reaches a zone of saturation, where all voids in the ground are filled with water. This zone of saturation is called *groundwater*; the upper surface of groundwater is called the *water table*. Wells are commonly sunk to a point well below the water table so that the latter's seasonal fluctuations will not interrupt the well's access to groundwater.

20.3 BASIC PLANNING

After considering the relationship between a building and the roles that water plays within it, the designer must do basic sizing—of the quantities of water needed, of the areas in which water will be used, and of the areas and equipment associated with water's return to the hydrologic cycle.

However, before discussing basic planning for the amounts of water used daily within buildings and for the treatment of that water, we should note that water is also an important component of building construction. The production of 1 ton (907 kg) of bricks requires 580 gal (2200 L) of water; 1 ton of steel requires 43,600 gal (165,000 L); 1 ton of plastic requires 348,750 gal (1.32 million L). Water is one of the main ingredients of concrete; a typical 94-lb (42.6-kg) bag of cement requires about 6 gal (23 L) of water.

Another way in which buildings contribute to water consumption is through electricity consumption. Most power plants require very large quantities of water, which they quickly return to the hydrologic cycle warmer in temperature (and perhaps as vapor). A large nuclear power plant that utilizes a cooling tower can evaporate daily the approximate equivalent transpiration from about 9 mi^2 (23 km^2) of forest.

(a) Water Supply

The task of estimating water needs is complicated by the conflict between *current practice* and *conservation*. Current practice tends toward the use of large amounts of water for very-low-grade tasks. Conservation reserves high-quality water for high-grade tasks and emphasizes recycling as well as diminished overall usage of water.

Water supply often is first estimated in terms of gallons per capita per day (liters per capita per day). Table 20.1 shows some common terms used in measuring the water supply. Typical quantities are matched with nourishing, cleansing, and other usages in the United States in Table 20.2. To gain an appreciation of how the rate of urban water usage has changed over time, consider the following figures (from Milne, 1976):

Imperial Rome	38 g/cd (144 L/cd)
London, 1912	40 g/cd (151 L/cd)
American cities just before World War II	115 g/cd (435 L/cd)
Los Angeles, mid-1970s	182 g/cd (689 L/cd)

Compare these usage rates to the "Basic Water Requirement" for four domestic needs—drinking, sanitation, bathing, and cooking—of about 13 g/cd (50 L/cd) proposed by Gleick (1998).

Although the historical trend has clearly been toward higher per capita use of water, the recent emphasis on conservation has resulted in significant changes in this pattern. In Section 22.1, the influences of various water-conserving practices will be considered in more detail. Table 20.2 can be used to estimate the daily indoor usage of water in various

TABLE 20.1 Water Measurement Terms and Conversions

QUANTITY	
1 gal	= 8.33 lb
	= 231 $in.^3$
	= 0.134 ft^3
	= 3.785 L
1 liter	= .0263 gal
1 cubic foot	= 7.48 gal
	= 62.4 lb
	= 0.028 m^3
1 cubic meter	= 1000 L
	= 35.32 ft^3
1 ton	= 240 gal
1 acre	= 0.4 hectare
	= 40 km^2
1 acre-foot (a-f)	= 325,851 gal
	= 43,560 ft^3
	= 12 acre-inches (ac-in.)
1 million gallons	= 3.07 a-f
FLOW	
1 cfs	= 1.98 a-f/day
	= 0.028 m^3/s
1 a-f/year	= annual water supply for five people at 180 gal/cd
1000 gpm	= 2.23 cfs
	= 4.42 a-f/day
1 million gpd	= 694.4 gpm
	= 1.55 cfs
	= 1120 a-f/yr
LEAKS	
Slow drip	= 170 gpd
	= 62,050 gal/yr
⅛-in. (3.2-mm) diameter stream	= 3600 gpd
	= 4 a-f/yr
COST	
10¢ per 1000 gal	= 7.48¢ per 100 ft^3
	= $32.59 per a-f
10¢ per 100 ft^3	= $43.56 per a-f
	= $13.40 per 1000 gal
10¢ per ton	= $136 per a-f

Sources: Milne (1976) and Ferguson (1998).

facilities if *current practices* are anticipated. For a very rough approximation of *conservation* effects:

- Reduce Table 20.2 values by 25%, assuming simple conservation measures such as flow controls.
- Reduce Table 20.2 values by 50%, assuming partial recycling.

The more water used for flushing toilets within the building types listed in Table 20.2, the greater the potential for savings through conservation.

In urban areas, public water mains usually provide the necessary quantities of water at the pressures and rates of flow required to operate typical plumbing fixtures. For isolated buildings or those independent of public networks, the water supply can come from individual sources: wells, springs, cisterns, lakes, and so forth. For the minimum pressures and flow rates necessary from these sources (and/or the storage vessels associated with them), see Table 21.14.

(b) Cisterns

Where rainwater is to be utilized, a rough approximation of catchment area and cistern storage volume is initially needed. This procedure is detailed later in this chapter. For now:

1. From Table 20.2, find the quantity of rainwater to be used daily:

   g/cd × population = gpd
   (L/cd × population = L/d)

2. Convert this quantity to the yearly need for water:

   gpd × 365 days = gal/yr
   (L/d × 365 days = L/yr)

3. Assume, conservatively, that a dry year will have two-thirds of the precipitation of an average year; this measurement is the *design precipitation*. (Average annual precipitation is available from National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration [NOAA] annual summaries.)

   Average annual precipitation × ⅔
   = design precipitation

4. From Fig. 20.5, determine the catchment area required.
5. Roughly size the cistern (storage) capacity by finding the longest dry period (in days of negligible rainfall, from NOAA local climatological data):

   cistern capacity = gpd × days of dry period

6. Convert capacity to volume by the formula

   1 ft^3 stores 7.48 gal of water
   (1 m^3 stores 1000 L water)

EXAMPLE 20.1, PART A A 20,000-ft^2 (1860-m^2) one-story factory near Salem, Oregon, will use roof-collected rainwater to flush its toilets. Water-conserving 3 gal/flush (11.4 L/flush) toilets will serve 20 workers. Table 20.2 shows that factory workers use between

TABLE 20.2 Planning Guide for Water Supply[a]

Building Usage	*Per Capita (as Listed) Daily Usage* Gallons	Liters
Airports (per passenger)	3–5	11–19
Apartments, multiple-family (per resident)	60	227
Bath houses (per bather)	10	38
Camps		
Construction, semipermanent (per worker)	50	189
Day with no meals served (per camper)	15	57
Luxury (per camper)	100–150	378–568
Resorts, day and night, with limited plumbing (per camper)	50	189
Tourist, with central bath and toilet facilities (per person)	35	132
Cottages with seasonal occupancy (per resident)	50	189
Courts, tourist, with individual bath units (per person)	50	189
Clubs		
Country (per resident member)	100	378
Country (per nonresident member present)	25	95
Dwellings		
Boardinghouses (per boarder)	50	189
Additional kitchen requirements for nonresident boarders	10	38
Luxury (per person)	100–150	378–568
Multiple-family apartments (per resident)	40	151
Rooming houses (per resident)	60	227
Single family (per resident)	50–75	189–284
Estates (per resident)	100–150	378–568
Factories (per person per shift)	15–35	57–132
Highway rest area (per person)	5	19
Hotels with private baths (two persons per room)	60	227
Hotels without private baths (per person)	50	189
Institutions other than hospitals (per person)	75–125	284–473
Hospitals (per bed)	250–400	946–1514
Laundries, self-service (per washing)	50	189
Livestock (per animal)		
Cattle (drinking)	12	45
Dairy (drinking and servicing)	35	132
Goat (drinking)	2	8
Hog (drinking)	4	15
Horse (drinking)	12	45
Mule (drinking)	12	45
Sheep (drinking)	2	8
Steer (drinking)	12	45
Motels with bath, toilet, and kitchen facilities (per bed space)	50	189
With bed and toilet (per bed space)	40	151
Parks		
Overnight, with flush toilets (per camper)	25	95
Trailer, with individual bath units, no sewer connection (per trailer)	25	95
Trailer, with individual baths, connected to sewer (per person)	50	189
Picnic		
With bath houses, showers, and flush toilets (per picnicker)	20	76
With toilet facilities only (per picnicker)	10	38
Poultry		
Chickens (per 100)	5–10	19–38
Turkeys (per 100)	10–18	38–68
Restaurants with toilet facilities (per patron)	7–10	26–38
Without toilet facilities (per patron)	2½–3	9–11
With bar/cocktail lounge (additional quantity per patron)	2	8
Schools		
Boarding (per pupil)	75–100	284–378
Day, with cafeteria, gymnasium, and showers (per pupil)	25	95
Day, with cafeteria but no gymnasiums or showers (per pupil)	20	76
Day, without cafeteria, gymnasiums, or showers (per pupil)	15	57
Service stations (per vehicle)	10	38
Stores (per toilet room)	400	1514
Swimming pools (per swimmer)	10	38
Theaters		
Drive-in (per car space)	5	19
Movie (per auditorium seat)	5	19
Workers		
Construction (per person per shift)	50	189
Day (school or office, per person per shift)	15	57

Source: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (1975).

[a]These values may be reduced as follows: with flow controls, up to 25% reduction; with water recycling, up to 50% reduction.

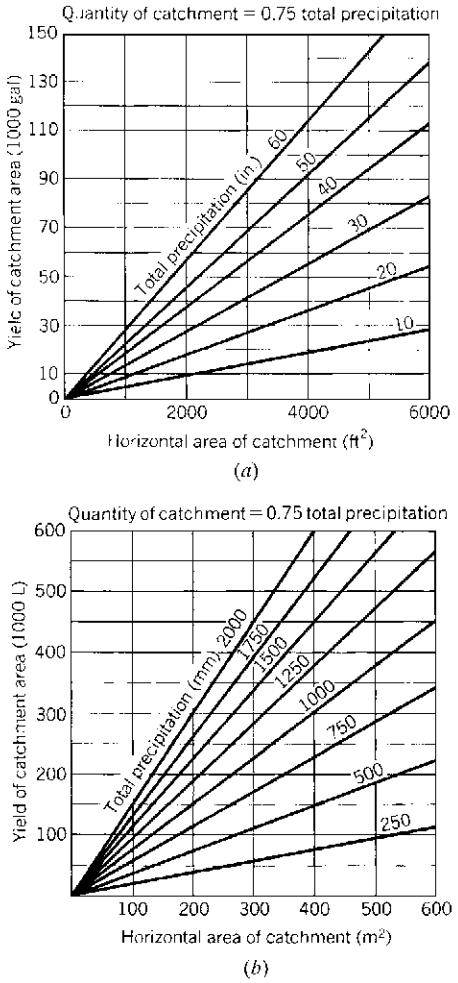


Fig. 20.5 *Yields of rainfall catchment areas (roofs) in terms of total precipitation. In these graphs, 75% of the total precipitation is assumed to be catchable; the remainder is lost to evaporation or spillage. (a) I-P units from the U.S. EPA's* Manual of Individual Water Supply Systems, *1975. (b) SI units (1 m³ = 1000 L).*

15 and 35 g/cd (57 and 132 L/cd). Because usage at this factory will be low—no showers, for example—assume 15 gal/cd (57 L/cd):

15 g/cd × 20 workers = 300 gpd for *all* usages
(57 L/cd × 20 = 1140 L)

Because low-flush toilets are to be used, reduce this figure by 25%:

0.75 × 300 = 225 gpd (0.75 × 1140 = 855 Lpd)

Toilets will probably account for most of this 225 gpd (855 Lpd): for example, at three flushes per day per worker,

3 flushes/day × 3 gal/flush × 20 workers = 180 gpd
(3 × 11.4 L/flush × 20 = 684 Lpd)

Assume, being a bit conservative, that up to 200 gpd (760 L/d) of rainwater will be utilized.

Catchment Area: Salem's average annual rainfall is 41 in. (1042 mm). Design rainfall is ⅔ × 41 = 27.3 in. (⅔ × 1042 = 695 mm) in a dry year; the yearly need is 200 gpd × 365 days = 73,000 gal (760 L/d × 365 = 277,400 L). (The combination of 73,000 gal [277,400 L] and 27.3 in. [695 mm] is off the chart in Fig. 20.5*a*, so divide 73,000 gal [277,400 L] by 2 to obtain 36,500 gal [138,700 L] and then double the resulting catchment area.) At 27.3 in. (695 mm) of precipitation, 36,500 gal (138,700 L) will be caught by 2800 ft² (260 m²). The catchment area for 73,000 gal (277,400 L) is, therefore, 2 × 2800 = 5600 ft². (2 × 260 = 520 m²). (So about 28% of the 20,000-ft² [1860-m²] factory's roof area will suffice for a catchment area.)

Cistern Capacity: Salem normally has very dry summers; average monthly rainfall is as follows:

May	2.1 in. (53 mm)
June	1.4 in. (36 mm)
July	0.4 in. (10 mm)
August	0.6 in. (15 mm)
September	1.5 in. (38 mm)
October	4.0 in. (102 mm)

The dry period, then, runs from mid-June to mid-September—about 90 days. Thus, capacity = 200 gpd × 90 days = 18,000 gal (760 L/d × 90 = 68,400 L):

$$\text{volume} = \frac{18{,}000 \text{ gal}}{7.48 \text{ gal/ft}^3} = 2406 \text{ ft}^3$$

$$\left(\frac{68{,}400 \text{ L}}{1000 \text{ L/m}^3} = 68 \text{ m}^3 \right)$$

(For example, 5 ft deep × 22 ft square = 2420 ft³ [1.5 m × 6.7 m square = 67 m³].) A more detailed sizing procedure for this building's cistern is presented later in this chapter. ■

(c) Required Facilities

Another important early design question is, how many plumbing fixtures should be provided? Table 20.3 lists the minimum plumbing facilities required for various types and sizes of building occupancies. (Note that local requirements may differ somewhat from this particular guide, which is taken from the 1997 *International Plumbing Code*. There are many plumbing codes in use in North America, and they sometimes disagree.) Because these are considered minimal requirements, more generous provisions

TABLE 20.3 Minimum Number of Plumbing Facilities[a]

Occupancy	Water Closets Urinals[b] Male	Female	Lavatories	Bathtubs/ Showers	Drinking Fountains[c]	Others
Assembly						
Theaters	1 per 125	1 per 65	1 per 200	—	1 per 1000	1 service sink
Nightclubs	1 per 40	1 per 40	1 per 75	—	1 per 500	1 service sink
Restaurants	1 per 75	1 per 75	1 per 200	—	1 per 500	1 service sink
Halls, museums, etc.	1 per 125	1 per 65	1 per 200	—	1 per 1000	1 service sink
Coliseums, arenas	1 per 75	1 per 40	1 per 150	—	1 per 1000	1 service sink
Churches[d]	1 per 150	1 per 75	1 per 200	—	1 per 1000	1 service sink
Stadiums, pools, etc.	1 per 100	1 per 50	1 per 150	—	1 per 1000	1 service sink
Business[e,f,g]	1 per 25		1 per 40	—	1 per 100	1 service sink
Educational	1 per 50		1 per 50	—	1 per 100	1 service sink
Factory and industrial	1 per 100		1 per 100	[h]	1 per 400	1 service sink
High hazard[e,f]	1 per 100		1 per 100	[h]	1 per 1000	1 service sink
Institutional						
Residential care	1 per 10		1 per 10	1 per 8	1 per 100	1 service sink
Hospitals, ambulatory nursing home patients[i]	1 per 50		1 per room[j]	1 per 15	1 per 100	1 service sink per floor
Day nurseries, sanitariums, nonambulatory nursing home patients, etc.[i]	1 per 15		1 per 15	1 per 15[k]	1 per 100	1 service sink
Employees, other than residential care[i]	1 per 25		1 per 35	—	1 per 100	—
Visitors, other than residential care	1 per 75		1 per 100	—	1 per 500	—
Prisons[i]	1 per cell		1 per cell	1 per 15	1 per 100	1 service sink
Asylums, reformatories, etc.[i]	1 per 15		1 per 15	1 per 15	1 per 100	1 service sink
Mercantile[e,f,g]	1 per 500		1 per 750	—	1 per 1000	1 service sink
Residential						
Hotels, motels	1 per guestroom		1 per guestroom	1 per guestroom	—	1 service sink
Lodges	1 per 10		1 per 10	1 per 8	1 per 100	1 service sink
Multiple-family unit	1 per dwelling unit		1 per dwelling unit	1 per dwelling unit	—	1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per 20 dwelling units
Dormitories	1 per 10		1 per 10	1 per 8	—	1 service sink
One- and two-family dwellings	1 per dwelling unit		1 per dwelling unit	1 per dwelling unit	—	1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per dwelling unit[l]
Storage[e,f]	1 per 100		1 per 100	[h]	1 per 1000	1 service sink

Source: Copyright © 1997, International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia. *International Plumbing Code,* Reprinted with permission of the author. All rights reserved.

[a]Based on one fixture being the minimum required for the number of persons indicated or any fraction of the number of persons indicated. The number of occupants shall be determined by the building code. Unless otherwise shown, the required water closets, lavatories, and showers or bathtubs shall be distributed evenly between the sexes based on the percentage of each sex anticipated in the occupant load. The occupant load shall be composed of 50% of each sex, unless statistical data approved by the code official indicate a different distribution.

[b]In each bathroom or toilet room, urinals shall not be substituted for more than 50% of the required water closets.

[c]Drinking fountains shall not be installed in public restrooms. Where water is served in restaurants or where bottled water coolers are provided in other occupancies, drinking fountains shall not be required.

[d]Fixtures located in adjacent buildings under the ownership or control of the church shall be made available during the periods the church is occupied.

[e]Separate employee facilities shall not be required in occupancies in which 15 or fewer people are employed. Separate facilities for each sex shall not be required in structures or tenant spaces with a total occupant load, including both employees and customers, of 15 or fewer in which food or beverage is served for consumption within the structure or tenant space.

TABLE 20.3 Minimum Number of Plumbing Facilities (*Continued*)

[f]Access to toilet facilities in occupancies other than assembly or mercantile shall be from within the employees' regular working area. The required toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the employees' regular work area, and the path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 500 ft (152 m).

[g]In mercantile and assembly occupancies, employee toilet facilities shall be either separate facilities or public customer facilities. Separate employee facilities shall not be required in tenant spaces of 900 ft^2 (84 m^2) or less where the travel distance from the main entrance to a central toilet area does not exceed 500 ft (152 m) and where such central facilities are located not more than one story above or below the tenant space.

[h]Emergency showers and eyewash stations shall be provided with a supply of cold water as required by the manufacturer. Waste connection shall not be required for emergency showers and eyewash stations.

[i]Toilet facilities for employees shall be separate from facilities for inmates or patients.

[j]A single-occupant room with one water closet and one lavatory serving not more than two adjacent patient rooms shall be permitted where such room is provided with direct access from each patient room and with provisions for privacy.

[k]For day nurseries, a maximum of one bathtub shall be required.

[l]For attached one- and two-family dwellings, one automatic clothes washer connection shall be required per 20 dwelling units.

are sometimes appropriate. Chapter 21 discusses the design of the spaces in which these services are used.

(d) Sewage

Where public sewers are available (as in most urban areas), the designer usually is not concerned with estimating the flow of sewage. However, where private or on-site sewage treatment is required or where public sewage treatment facilities are overtaxed, total sewage flow is an early design concern. Table 20.4 lists these sewage flows by type of occupancy, again in g/cd (L/cd). Note that sewage flow may differ from supply flow, especially where supply water is used for irrigation, for car washing, or in evaporative processes.

Once the daily flow of sewage is established, some early guidelines are needed for determining the suitability of and the area required by some treatment processes. One of the most common reasons for the rejection of a potential rural building site is a lack of suitability for sewage disposal. A geologic analysis of structural and sewage disposal potential is one of the first documents needed by the designer. Chapter 22 describes the sizing of some common treatment methods. At this earlier stage, the following design guidelines can be useful:

Septic Tank Drainfields. In I-P units (minimum 750-ft^2 area for any system):

- For shallow trenches in poorly draining soil: drainfield area = total sewage flow in gpd × 3.6 ft^2/gal
- For deep trenches in well-draining soil: drainage area = total sewage flow in gpd × 0.4 ft^2/gal

In SI units (minimum 70-m^2 area for any system):

- For shallow trenches in poor soil: L/day × 0.087 m^2/L
- For deep trenches in good soil: L/day × 0.01 m^2/L

(These guidelines allow for an expansion area equal to the original size of the drainage field in case of field failure.)

Mounds. These are built-up leaching fields on top of the existing grade (see Fig. 22.39). For a single-family dwelling, allow for a 4-ft-high (1.2-m-high) mound whose bottom area is a square 44 ft (13.4 m) on each side and whose sides slope at a 1:3 vertical-to-horizontal ratio.

Package Sewage Plant Drainfields. In these, sewage is treated to a much greater extent than in septic tanks, and effluent is filtered:

- In poorly draining soil: total sewage flow in gpd × 0.49 ft^2/gal (L/day × 0.012 m^2/L).
- In well-draining soil: total sewage flow in gpd × 0.23 ft^2/gal (L/day × 0.006 m^2/L).

Sewage Lagoons. These consist of at least two open treatment ponds (primary and secondary) and are sized on the basis of pounds of biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) rather than gallons of sewage flow. A typical assumption for estimating BOD is:

- 0.2 lb (91 g) BOD/person for ordinary domestic sewage
- 0.3 lb (136 g) BOD/person where garbage grinders or other devices contribute added organic material to domestic sewage

The *total* land area required for the two ponds can be estimated as:

- 20 lb BOD/acre (22 kg BOD/hectare) for the (colder) northern United States
- 35 lb BOD/acre (39 kg BOD/hectare) for the (drier, warmer) southern United States

(The primary pond is usually sized for 50 lb BOD/acre [56 kg BOD/hectare].)

TABLE 20.4 Estimated Sewage Flow Rates

Type of Occupancy	"Unit" Gallons (Liters) per Day
Airports	15 (56.8) per employee
	5 (18.9) per passenger
Auto washers	Check with equipment manufacturer
Bowling alleys (snack bar only)	75 (283.9) per lane
Camps, campgrounds with central comfort station	35 (132.5) per person
Campgrounds with flush toilets, no showers	25 (94.6) per person
Day camps (no meals served)	15 (56.8) per person
Summer and seasonal	50 (189.3) per person
Churches (sanctuary)	5 (18.9) per seat
With kitchen waste	7 (26.5) per seat
Dance halls	5 (18.9) per person
Factories, no showers	25 (94.6) per employee
With showers	35 (132.5) per employee
Cafeteria, add	5 (18.9) per employee
Hospitals	250 (946.3) per bed
Kitchen waste only	25 (94.6) per bed
Laundry waste only	40 (151.4) per bed
Hotels (no kitchen waste)	60 (227.1) per bed (2 person)
Institutions (resident)	75 (283.9) per person
Nursing home	125 (473.1) per person
Rest home	125 (473.1) per person
Laundries, self-service	50 (189.3) per wash cycle
Commercial	Per manufacturer's specifications
Motel	50 (189.3) per bed space
With kitchen	60 (227.1) per bed space
Offices	20 (75.7) per employee
Parks, mobile homes	250 (946.3) per space
Picnic parks (toilets only)	20 (75.7) per parking space
Recreational vehicles, without water hook-up	75 (283.9) per space
With water and sewer hook-up	100 (378.5) per space
Restaurants/cafeterias	20 (75.7) per employee
Toilet	7 (26.5) per customer
Kitchen waste	6 (22.7) per meal
Add for garbage disposal	1 (3.8) per meal
Add for cocktail lounge	2 (7.6) per customer
Kitchen waste-disposal service	2 (7.6) per meal
Schools—staff and office	20 (75.7) per person
Elementary students	15 (56.8) per person
Intermediate and high	20 (75.7) per student
With gym and showers, add	5 (75.7) per student
With cafeteria, add	3 (11.4) per student
Boarding, total waste	100 (378.5) per person
Service station, toilets	1000 (3785) for 1st bay
	500 (1892.5) for each additional bay
Stores	20 (75.7) per employee
Public restrooms, add (per unit of floor space)	1 per 10 ft^2 (4.1 per m^2)
Swimming pools, public	10 (37.9) per person
Theaters, auditoriums	5 (18.9) per seat
Drive-in	10 (37.9) per space

Source: Uniform Plumbing Code, copyright © 1997. Printed by permission of the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials.

20.4 RAINWATER

There is a striking similarity between rainwater and solar energy. Both are essential for agriculture, and both have been well understood and utilized by farmers since agrarian societies first emerged. Both can be very beneficial to architecture and were utilized as needed by anonymous builders for centuries. Both fell out of use as plentiful supplies of pure, centrally treated water and concentrated, centrally controlled fuels became commonplace. Both are thinly yet relatively evenly spread over the world's population, so they are at least seasonally available to help meet nearly every building's needs for water and heat. Yet both are difficult to utilize in

industrialized societies, because they require *individual preoccupancy* expenditures.

Consider the typical public water and electric utility in a U.S. city. It can raise the funds to build large water treatment plants, electricity-generating plants, and the network of pipes and wires that bring these commodities to every building. The utility's costs, including interest on its construction debts, will be passed on to its consumers on a monthly basis, along with a margin of profit that is usually controlled by state governments. Thus, our society has a well-established method for encouraging central suppliers of water and power.

Now consider the individual building owner. To build a cistern and a solar-heated building, she must borrow money at an interest rate higher than that which the utility pays; and both options cost more initially than simple connections to the utility's pipes and lines. Even though she is willing to flush her toilets with rainwater rather than with chlorinated and filtered potable water from the utility, and even though she is willing to heat with lower-grade solar energy than with higher-grade electricity, she must pay a substantial first-cost penalty—with interest—to do so.

The overall public good could be well served by a mixture of public networks of pure water and electricity and individual cisterns and solar applications. The environmental benefits would be substantial—less water withdrawn from rivers, lakes, and underground aquifers; less energy and chemicals used to treat and deliver such water; less storm water discharged to pollute rivers; less fuel used to generate electricity; and less environmental damage from power plants. Yet we continue to economically discourage the individual who uses the rain and the sun.

Architects Fernau and Hartman's design for an invited competition for a "low-entropy kindergarten" in Frankfurt, Germany (Fig. 20.6), celebrates sun and rainwater as teaching elements. In their words, "The building reveals natural phenomena



Fig. 20.6 *This low-entropy kindergarten competition entry for Frankfurt, Germany, features sun, adjustable shade, and a roof that collects rainwater and leads it to an interior stone-filled catchment. The rainwater downspout can be seen in the center of the drawing; the stone-filled catchment is below the stair landing. The overflow then goes outside, through a layer of stones and into a below-ground cistern. (Courtesy of Fernau & Hartman, Architects, Berkeley, CA.)*

such as the play of light and shadow over a wall during the course of a year, the warmth of a winter-garden in January, the cooling shade from deciduous vines on a trellis overhead, water pouring off the roof into an interior stone catchment during a downpour."

20.5 COLLECTION AND STORAGE

In terms of both quality and quantity, rainwater is an attractive alternative. Figure 20.4*b* shows that rainwater is close to the purest state in the hydrologic cycle. More recently, it is true, air pollution has begun to threaten the quality of rainwater in some areas as acid rain has become widespread in the northeastern section of the North American continent and in Europe. In some particularly air-polluted locations, lead poses a threat to rainwater quality. Also, on any catchment surface, dust and bird droppings are common pollutants that must be considered. Other factors that bear on rainwater quality are roofing materials and the form of the roof. The appropriate health authority should be consulted for a list of roofing materials that will have no toxic effects on rainwater. Steeper roofs are scoured by winds, and thus collect less dust and give cleaner runoffs. Devices to discourage roosting birds are strongly recommended, as are periodic checks of cistern water for bacteria. Fungicides (for moss control) should be scrupulously avoided, as should roofing paints containing lead. For these reasons, urban rainwater commonly is not used for drinking and cooking. (Bottled water or on-site water distilling can supply potable water.) For the typical residence, however, that still leaves about 95% of indoor water usage that could be provided by rainwater. Also, in those cities that have very "hard" public water supplies, rainwater's "soft" characteristics make it particularly attractive.

The quantity of rainwater available in most U.S. locations could meet a high percentage of typical home or business needs. Milne (1976) pointed out that the 42 in. (1067 mm) of rain that falls annually on the streets and roofs of Manhattan Island could, if collected and stored, provide 148% of the residential needs of its 1.7 million inhabitants. For the typical U.S. suburban house (with a roof area of 1500 ft^2 [139 m^2]), the annual catchment can be estimated by combining the rainfall quantities (Fig. 20.7) with the resulting catchment yield (Fig. 20.5). Even at a "dry" rate of only

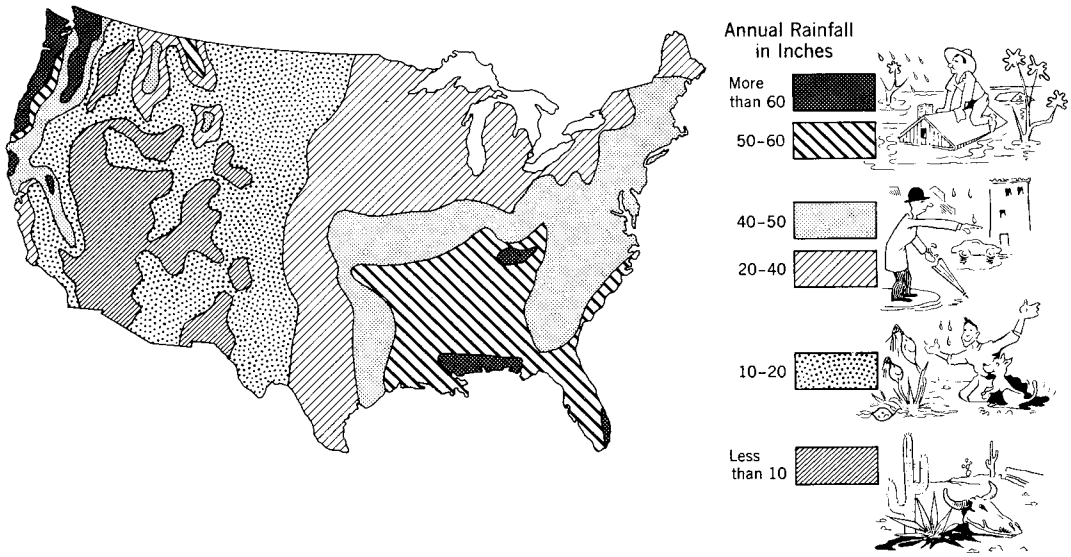


Fig. 20.7 *Annual rainfall in the United States. Cistern volume conversion factors:*

1 ft^3 = 7.48 gal = 0.02832 m^3
1 m^3 = 1000 L = 264.2 gal

20 in. annually, a 1500-ft^2 roof would yield about 12,000 gal, or 33 gpd—nearly enough to meet the clothes-cleaning and dishwashing needs of the family. (In SI units, a 140-m^2 roof in an area with annual precipitation of 500 mm will yield about 50,000 L, or 137 L/d.)

Unfiltered rainwater seems particularly well suited to the irrigation of small lawns or gardens, both because it lacks additives unneeded by plants, such as chlorine and sodium fluoride, and because it can reduce the user's demand on the public water supply on the hottest summer days. Cisterns located above an irrigated area have the advantage of replacing a pump with simple gravity flow. A rain barrel at the bottom of a downspout is an example of this approach—although one of limited capacity.

In many of the world's drier areas, small cisterns within a home are common. Such cisterns, which can be fed both by rainwater and by the public supply, are frequently used for all domestic purposes, including drinking. The presence of such a large water volume also can be advantageous in the event of fire. Sometimes these storage cisterns are required because the public supply is diminished or cut off at peak usage hours due to insufficient water main capacity. Figure 20.8 shows a cistern in a typical outdoor location, along with various options by which pollution from dirty roofs can be minimized.

When cisterns are taken seriously as water storage devices, their function and size can become strong design-form determinants. The country home of architect John Andrews in the dry ranchland of New South Wales, Australia, offers a particularly striking example of cisterns and form (Fig. 20.9). These demonstrate the design image of "pregnant downspouts" storing water above the area where it will be used rather than belowground. The corner rainwater collectors also help deflect cooling summer breezes into the house along the diagonal walls at each corner. The central skylight then vents the breezes, along with the house's heat. From the corner cisterns, rainwater is pumped up to the central tower's storage tank. It then can be heated by solar collectors (to be installed on the sloping top of the tower), or used to supply the house's plumbing fixtures, or even used to sprinkle the metal roof surface, whose surface temperature could quickly be lowered by evaporation. Unevaporated roof water simply runs back into the cisterns. As a final design-with-water gesture, the shower (off bedroom 1) has been made into a true celebration place for cleansing and refreshing, with a sweeping view of the ranch.

In this passively solar-heated home, the living areas are placed on the elongated north side—the warmer side in the cold season for this southern hemisphere house. Passive cooling is aided by pergolas on the west and south, which are covered with vines for hot season shading of windows.

Sizing. The procedures described in Section 20.3 are for rough sizing of both the catchment area and the storage capacity for cisterns. When rainwater is to be a primary, as opposed to merely a supplementary, source, a closer look must be taken at rainfall deposits and user withdrawals from a cistern.

This procedure depends on the monthly average rainfall (from NOAA Local Climatological Data), the monthly water usage, and the catchment area yield (from Fig. 20.5).

EXAMPLE 20.1, PART B Take a closer look at the cistern that was approximately sized in Part A. Daily usage for this cistern, to be used for toilet flushing in a factory near Salem, Oregon, was estimated at 200 gal (760 L) and the catchment area at 5600 ft^2 (520 m^2). The cistern capacity was estimated at 18,000 gal (68,400 L). Begin the process in the midst of the wettest months.

From Table 20.5, the following conclusions can be drawn:

1. For an 18,000-gal (68,400-L) cistern, when the end-of-December cumulative capacity is added to January's surplus, the cistern will be at capacity from November through April.
2. With no allowances for abnormally dry months, we could reduce the cistern size by about 3000 gal (11,355 L)—the size of the smallest cumulative capacity in September.
3. A larger cistern—one that could utilize everything from the catchment area—could be built. Its approximate size would be the year-end surplus of 38,510 gal (145,760 L) plus the maximum spring monthly cumulative capacity of 25,410 gal (96,177 L) in April.
4. Alternatively, the surplus could be devoted to additional usage of rainwater, beyond mere toilet flushing, from November through April. ■

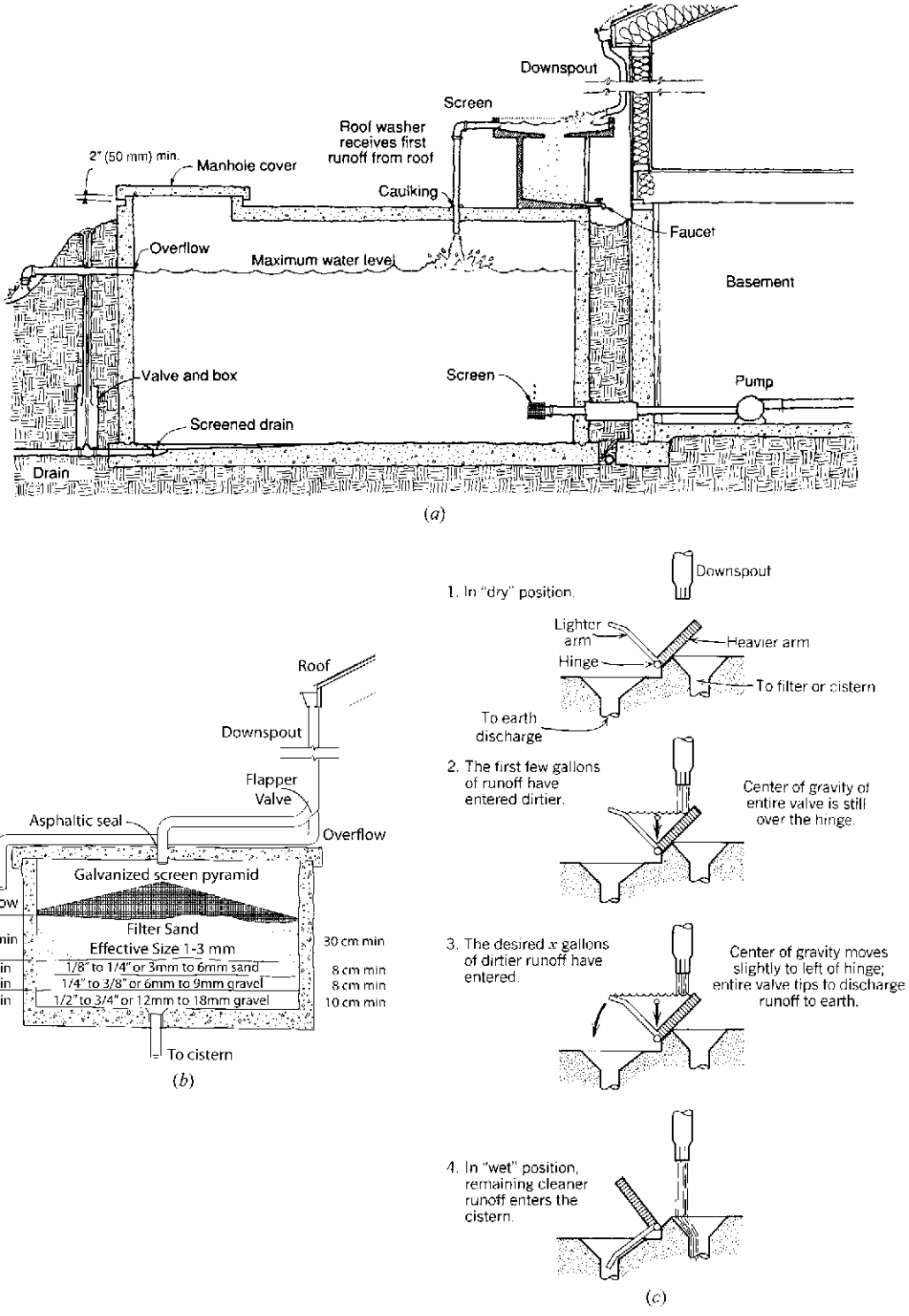
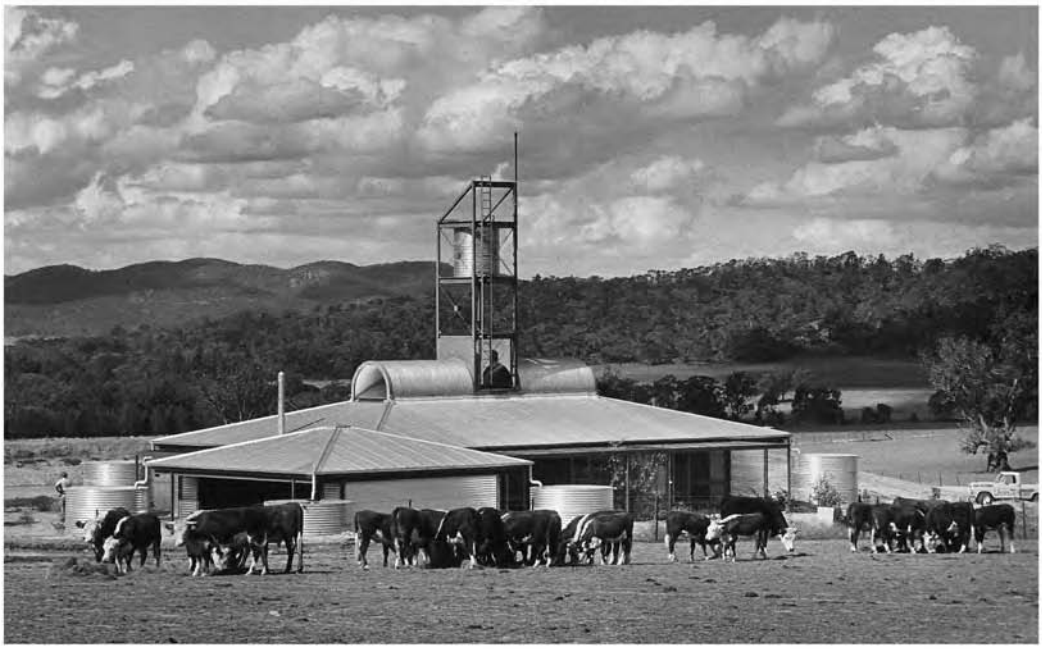


Fig. 20.8 *Section through a typical outdoor cistern. (a) A "roof washer" gets the dirtiest first runoff from the roof. It can later be emptied either by opening the faucet wide or by leaving the faucet slightly open so that it will slowly drain. (b) In place of the roof washer, a sand filter may be used. The "flapper valve" is used rarely, to divert the first rainfall after a prolonged dry spell. After this, the valve is left in a position to divert all rainwater to the sand filter. (Redrawn with SI units by Nathan Majeski; based upon the U.S. EPA's* Manual of Individual Water Supply Systems, *1975.) (c) Another roof-washing option is a "tipping valve," which dumps the first few gallons of each rainfall. After each rainfall, the valve must be manually (or spring) reset to the "dry" position if it is to again intercept dirty water. In an extended wet period, it would probably be left in the "wet" position.*

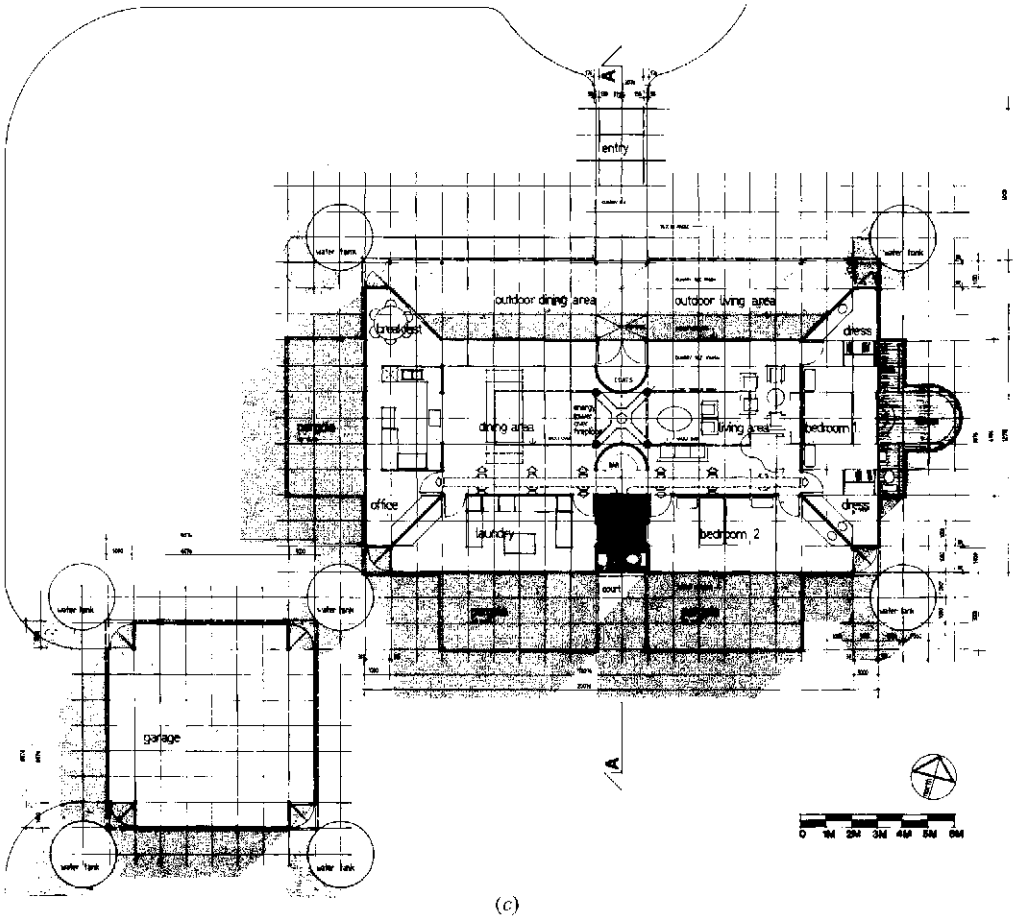


(*a*)

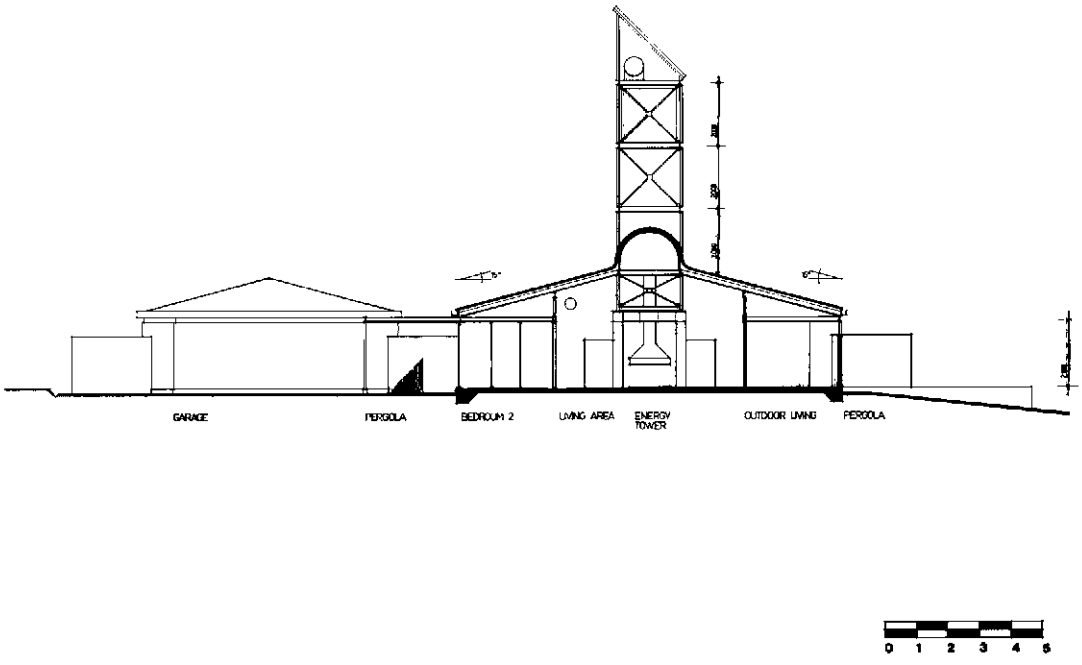


(*b*)

Fig. 20.9 *Country home of architect John Andrews, Eugowra, New South Wales, Australia. (a) View from the southwest showing corner cisterns, the central daylight/ventilation barrel vault, and the "energy tower" with a water storage tank. (b) View from the south showing the shading pergola to be covered by vines. (c) Floor plan showing the fireplace at the center and cisterns at all corners. (d) Section through the living area. (Courtesy of John Andrews International Pty, Ltd.)*



(c)



(d)

Fig. 20.9 *(Continued)*

TABLE 20.5 Rainfall Cistern Sizing Procedure

I Month and Rainfall[a] in. (mm)		II Catchment Yield[b] gal (L)	III Usage[c] gal (L)	IV Net[d] gal (L)	V Cumulative Capacity[e] gal (L)	VI Cumulative Capacity Adjusted for Actual Size[f] gal (L)
January	6.9 (175)	18,630 (70,515)	6,200 (23,476)	12,430 (47,048)	12,430 (47,048)	12,430 (47,048)
February	4.8 (122)	12,960 (49,054)	5,600 (21,196)	7,300 (27,631)	19,790 (74,905)[g]	18,000 (68,130)
March	4.3 (109)	11,610 (43,944)	6,200 (23,476)	5,410 (20,477)	25,200 (95,382)[g]	18,000 (68,130)
April	2.3 (58)	6,210 (23,505)	6,000 (22,710)	210 (795)	25,410 (96,177)[g]	18,000 (68,130)
May	2.1 (53)	5,610 (21,234)	6,200 (23,476)	–530 (–2006)	24,880 (94,171)[g]	17,470 (66,124)
June	1.4 (36)	3,780 (14,307)	6,000 (22,710)	–2,220 (–8403)	22,660[g] (85,768)	15,250 (57,721)
July	0.4 (10)	1,080 (4,088)	6,200 (23,476)	–5,120 (–19,379)	17,540 (66,389)	10,130 (38,342)
August	0.6 (15)	1,620 (6,132)	6,200 (23,476)	–4,580 (–17,335)	12,960 (49,054)	5,550 (21,007)
September	1.5 (38)	4,050 15,329)	6,000 (22,710)	–1,950 (–7381)	11,010 (41,673)	3,600 (13,626)
October	4.0 (102)	10,800 (40,878)	6,200 (23,476)	4,600 (17,411)	15,610 (59,084)	8,200 (31,037)
November	6.1 (155)	16,470 (62,339)	6,000 (22,710)	10,470 (39,629)	26,080 (98,713)[g]	18,000 (68,130)
December	6.9 (175)	18,630 (70,515)	6,200 (23,476)	12,430 (47,048)	38,510 (145,760)[g]	18,000 (68,130)

Source: Based upon procedure from Brown, Reynolds, Ubbelohde, *InsideOut: Design Procedures for Passive Environmental Technologies*, © 1982 by John Wiley & Sons.

[a]NOAA data for Salem, Oregon.

[b]From Fig. 20.5, according to which 10 in. (254 mm) of precipitation yields about 27,000 gallons (102,200 L) for this 5600-ft^2 (520-m^2) catchment area.

[c]The factory uses 200 gpd (760 Lpd) times days in each month.

[d]Col. II minus col. III.

[e]Values in col. IV, added month by month.

[f]Set at 18,000 gal (68,130 L) for the factory in Example 20.1.

[g]The cumulative capacity exceeds the actual storage capacity of 18,000 gal (68,130 L).

20.6 RAINWATER AND SITE PLANNING

Prior to the spread to rural areas of buildings, streets, roads, and paved parking lots, water from rainfall and melting snow found its own way to natural destinations. Surface flow to creeks, streams, and rivers accounted for part of this drainage. Underground flow aided the general runoff. Outcropping of flowing groundwater created springs and artesian wells. Low, dished areas formed lakes that in turn overflowed to outlet streams. Flat areas sometimes developed into swamps or marshes.

At a time when there was a choice of locations for towns and villages, sites next to rivers were usually chosen. The waterways provided transportation, and water was supplied from the river or from adjacent wells. As streets and roads were built, slopes could be arranged whereby the rain falling on these areas and flowing onto them from roofs of buildings could run to the river. At interior parts of the country, high ground was favored for building sites and growing communities. Swampy or marshy ground would not be chosen, but did provide terminal locations for the storm water that ran off the high ground. In the course of this natural flow, much of the water was drawn by evaporation to the clouds. The rest, conforming to topographic river basins, continued to seek its way to the sea.

As building increased, desirable locations grew scarce. The possibility of selecting high, dry ground diminished. Great areas, formerly low and marshy, were filled in and buildings constructed, often on piles. From such locations storm water could not be disposed of by drainage to some adjacent lower area or even recharged to the earth through dry wells. Moreover, extensive grids of paved streets and sidewalks in these level developments caught and held the water, resulting in considerable "ponding." Storm sewers had to be built and the water transported great distances, often having to be lifted at intermediate pumping stations before reaching its destination, which might be a remote river.

This emphasis on the removal of storm water has led to an expensive and elaborate system based on quick disposal of rainfall. By decreasing the time between precipitation and runoff, quick disposal increases the peak flows within such systems, thereby increasing flooding of rivers during storms

TABLE 20.6 Some Constituents of Stream Water

Constituent	Source in Nature	Role in Natural Ecosystem	Source of Urban Excess	Role of Excess
Sediment	Banks of meandering channels	Maintain stream profile and energy gradient; store nutrients	Construction sites; eroding stream banks	Abrade fish gills; carry excess nutrients and chemicals in adsorption; block sunlight; cover gravel bottom habitats
Organic compounds	Decomposing organic matter	Store nutrients	Herbicides; pesticides; fertilizers	Deprive water of oxygen by decomposition
Nutrients	Decomposing organic matter	Support ecosystems	Organic compounds; organic litter; fertilizers; sewage; food waste	Unbalance ecosystem; produce algae blooms; by decomposition deprive water of oxygen
Trace metals	Mineral weathering	Support ecosystem	Cars; construction materials; all kinds of foreign chemicals	Reduce resistance to disease; reduce reproductive capacity; alter behavior
Chloride	Mineral weathering	Support ecosystems	Pavement deicing salts	Sterilize soil and reduce biotic growth
Bacteria	Native animals	Participate in ecosystems	Pet animals; dumpsters; trash handling areas	Cause risk of disease
Oil	Decomposing organic matter	Store nutrients	Cars	Deoxygenate water

Source: Ferguson, B. (1998). *Introduction to Stormwater.* © John Wiley & Sons, New York.

but reducing the rivers' flow between storms. It also contributes pollutants to waterways that otherwise would have been filtered by the soil, as detailed in Table 20.6.

The overloading of storm sewers not only causes minor flooding, but also can influence building design. The designers of the New Orleans Convention and Exhibition Center, a building with 610,000 ft^2 (56,670 m^2) of roof area, spared the city's storm sewers from the impact of a 14-acre (5.7-hectare) runoff by carrying the rainwater over the roofs of adjoining wharfs and discharging it directly into the Mississippi River.

As urban storm sewers reach capacity and suburban groundwater levels drop, designers have begun to emphasize storm water infiltration (or recharge of groundwater) rather than quick runoff. Three design strategies for encouraging such recharge have emerged: roofs that will retain water and slowly release it, porous pavement, and onsite infiltration of runoff.

(a) Roof Retention

If storm water is to be sent to storm sewers or to soak into the ground, a *slow flow* from roofs will help by diminishing peak flows in sewers and giving soaked soil more time to absorb still more runoff. A nearly flat roof with specially designed drains (see Fig. 20.23) forms a temporary pond that permits slower discharge, yet eventually drains completely dry (to discourage mosquito breeding, etc.). (For cisterns, however, sloped roofs should be used, as they stay cleaner than flat roofs.) Another possibility is a sod roof that retains water for longer periods than ponded flat roofs (Fig. 20.10). Another option is to store the cistern water on the roof itself (Fig. 20.11).

However achieved, this temporary pond on top of a building will clearly add to structural requirements. Another problem could be posed by high winds blowing sheets of water onto people below. In summer, however, a flooded roof can provide a significant thermal advantage by greatly lowering daytime roof surface temperatures. Rainfall-retaining roofs are now required in some urban areas with overtaxed storm sewers. Sewer districts frequently charge for storm water runoff; by ponding storm water on site, such charges can be reduced or avoided.

(b) Porous Pavement

To retain rainfall on site, many builders use either porous asphalt (Fig. 20.12), porous concrete,



Fig. 20.10 *Bioswale at the Ecotrust building in Portland, Oregon, captures storm water runoff from the green roof of the building and other surfaces. (Photo by Nathan Majeski.)*

"incremental" paving, or open-celled pavers (alternation of paving materials with grass or groundcover plants) for parking lots and roadways.

Porous concrete has been used for many years in building construction as a low-strength, high-porosity material that has some insulating properties (R-5 for 10-in. thickness [RSI-0.88 for 254 mm]). Patented porous concrete pavement now in use in Florida has a strength of more than 3800 psi (26,200 kPa) and a permeability of 2.3 gallons of water per minute per square foot (94 L per minute per square meter). (A 2500-psi [17,240 kPa] mix has a permeability of 18.5 gallons per minute per square foot [750 L/m per m^2].) In cold-weather areas, the freeze-thaw cycle could be destructive to porous concrete.

Incremental paving features many small, adjacent paving units; the resulting many joints allow water to pass through more readily than do solid, unbroken surfaces.

Open-celled pavers alternate small concrete or plastic paving units with grass or ground cover, as shown in Fig. 20.13. These are particularly applicable to short-term parking, as for a sports stadium, or for more remote areas of retail mall parking lots. They are also possible for roadway shoulders and emergency vehicle-only access areas.

If storm water is not retained, its runoff can be polluted to the extent that treatment is required. Using strips of planting for such treatment (phytoremediation) is discussed at the end of Chapter 22.

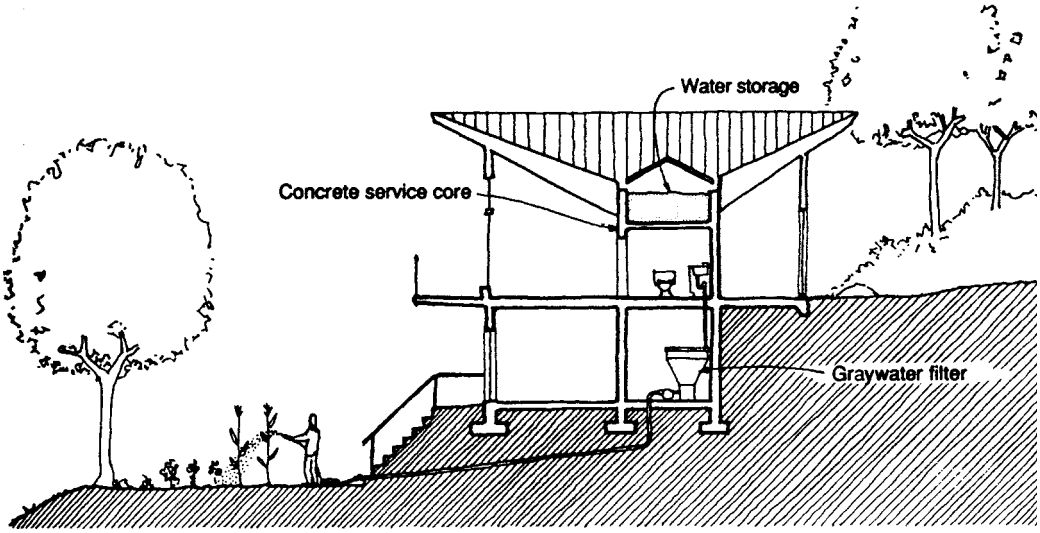


Fig. 20.11 *Retaining rainwater so that gravity flow can encourage its usage.*

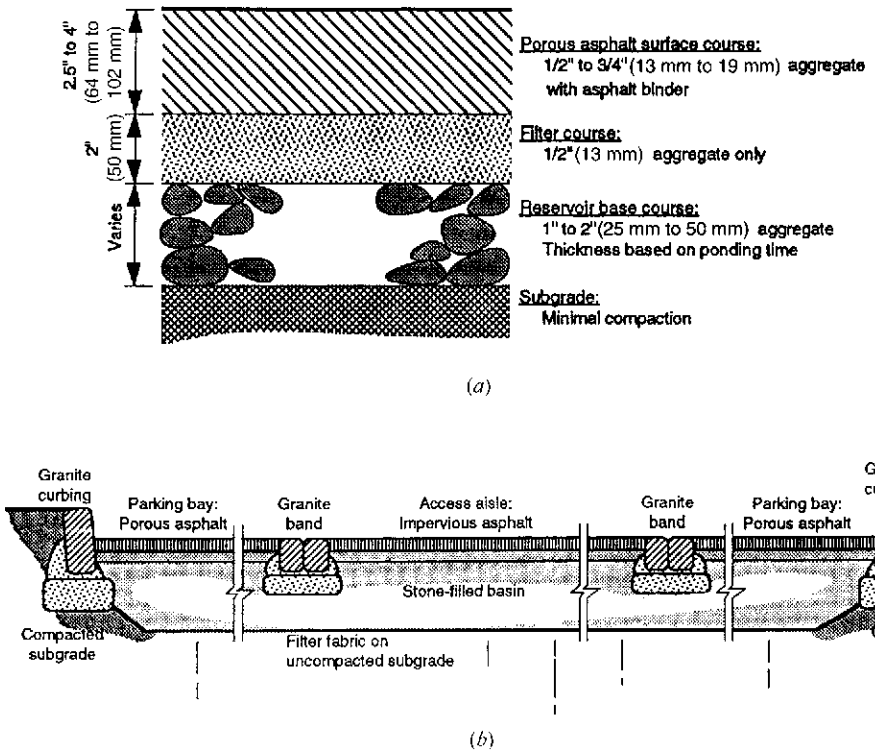


Fig. 20.12 *Porous paving encourages groundwater recharge rather than storm runoff. (a) Standard porous asphalt pavement as used in Rockville, Maryland. (b) Subsurface basin allows required retention ponds to serve as parking lots; this example is at the Morris Arboretum in Philadelphia. (Reprinted by permission from B. Ferguson. 1998.* Introduction to Stormwater. *© John Wiley and Sons. New York.)*

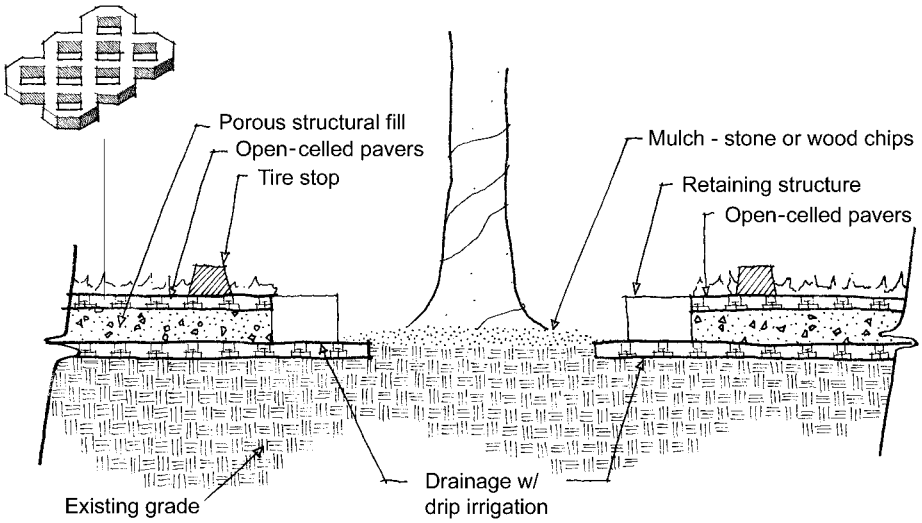


Fig. 20.13 *Open-celled pavers on a porous fill allow grass or hardy ground cover to grow within the units. (Drawing by Erik Winter of GrassPave from Invisible Structures, Inc. Information used with permission.)*

(c) Site Design for Recharging

This tactic is especially advisable for suburban-density developments in drier climates with absorptive soil (sand, gravel, etc.). The first option is at each house; design of entire subdivisions can also be influenced.

The simplest design approach is the gutterless sloped roof illustrated in Fig. 20.14, which is applicable to one-story, basementless homes with wide, overhanging roofs. A gravel-filled trench skirting the perimeter directly below the edge of the eaves catches the water flowing off the roof.

Some designers do not like the appearance of conventional gutters and leaders; other designers celebrate them (Fig. 20.15). There are many ingenious ways to avoid or modify their use and yet provide proper drainage. In many cases, however, gutters and leaders will be required, either to collect rainwater for cisterns or to control conditions around the perimeter of a house. Several options for storm water recharge can be used with the gutter-leader combination.

A splash pan at the foot of each leader (Fig. 20.16*a*) offers the simplest method. It will lead the water a few feet from the house but will accommodate only a relatively low rate of flow. A gravel-filled pipe is somewhat more effective (Fig. 20.16*b*). When the soil is not very permeable (as, for instance, with clay), it is best to use a dry well with an extended area and many perforations through which the water can be discharged to the ground (Fig. 20.16*c*).

Footing drains are often used to collect and lead away groundwater that accumulates around foundations. This reduces the likelihood of basement wall leakage. These drains are most necessary when higher ground near a building increases the flow of groundwater against underground walls. Figure 20.17 illustrates this and also shows how storm water from drains and roofs may be led to a surface absorption area of rock and gravel beyond a head wall where the general storm drain outcrops. This method can be chosen where there is sufficient property area and slope. It has the advantages of easy maintenance and service. Also, one can observe whether it is functioning correctly.

In new suburban developments, for which there are no storm sewers, recharge basins

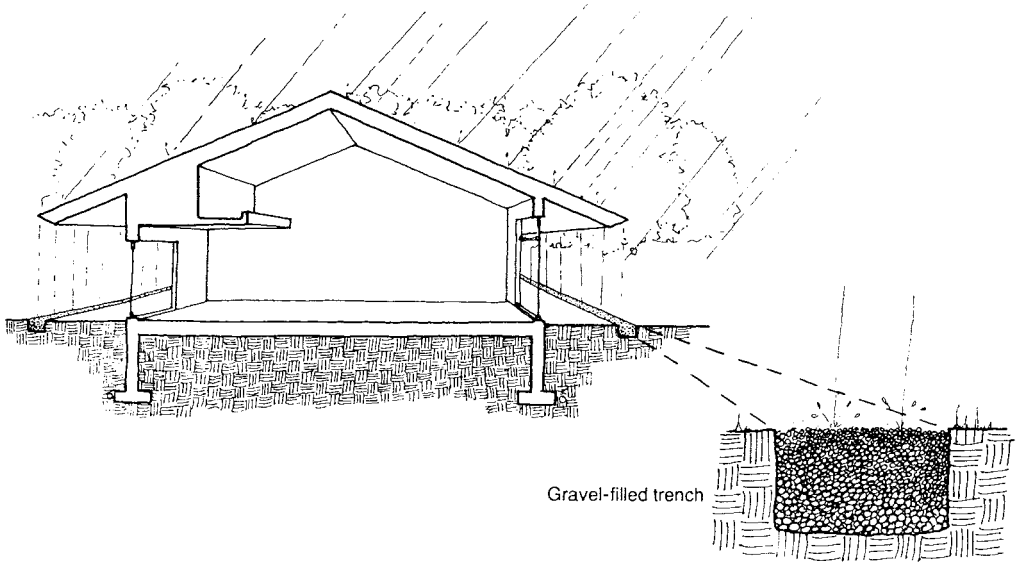


Fig. 20.14 *Gutters and leaders are not always essential, provided that doorways, walls, foundations, and landscaped lawns are not subjected to rain concentrations.*

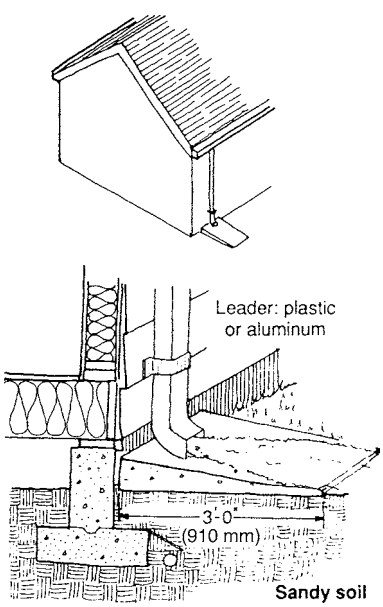


(*a*)

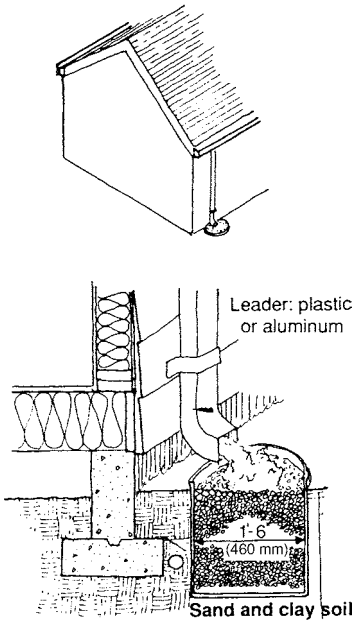


(*b*)

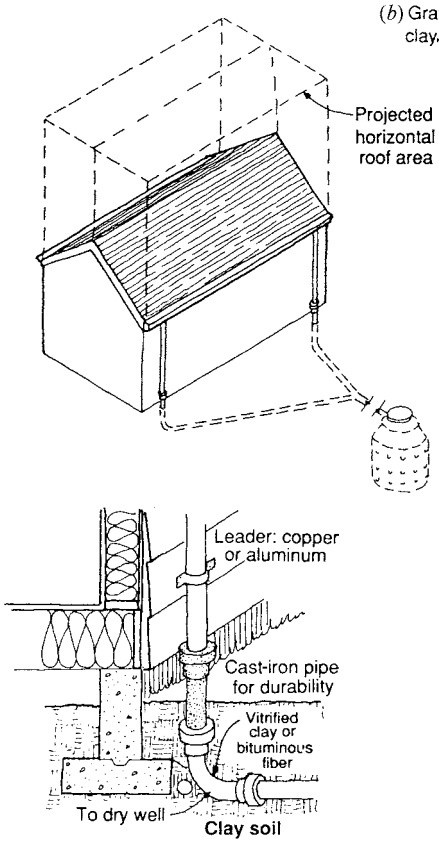
Fig. 20.15 *Falling rain is featured at this Oregon residence, where the gutter is held below the metal flashing at the roof's edge. Run-off is seen from indoors as it falls into the suspended gutter. (Unthank Poticha Waterbury, Architects, Eugene, OR.)*



(*a*) Concrete splash pan



(*b*) Gravel-filled pipe, vitrified clay, or reinforced concrete



(*c*) Dry well

Fig. 20.16 *Roof drainage for houses. Method (a) is suitable for low rates of flow introduced into very pervious soil. When denser soil is encountered, method (b) is used to get the water into the ground and thus avoid surface erosion. For heavy flow or to lead the water farther from the structure, method (c) may be used with one or several dry wells.*

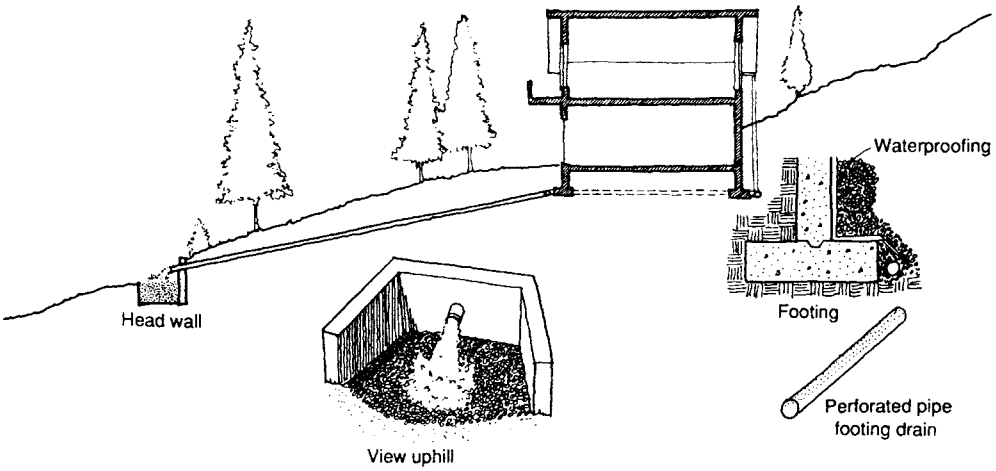


Fig. 20.17 *Disposal of storm water on the site but remote from the house or building. When a wall is against a hill, it is usually subjected to the pressure of groundwater during storms. Open-joint clay, plastic, or fiber tile accepts this water and carries it away. Footing drains are tight-joint clay tile or bituminous fiber pipe. Flow through stone and gravel returns the water to the earth. A head wall is appropriate in lieu of a dry well if the site permits.*

(Fig. 20.18) are sometimes required to deliver storm water to the ground. Water from numerous roofs, paved areas, and curb catch basins is collected and piped to an open, unpaved pit, where it sinks into the earth. This method is not recommended in areas of dense, impervious clay soil. A particularly effective example of this approach is offered by the community of passively solar-heated residences known as Village Homes, outside Davis, California. This area receives only about 20 in. (about 500 mm) of rain annually, so the recharge of groundwater was to this garden-oriented community a far more attractive (and less expensive) option than loss of the rainwater to a storm sewer. Storm water flows from leaders to dry, rockbed channels, along which are gardens and bicycle paths (Fig. 20.19). Occasionally, small dams across these channels create temporary holding ponds in case the runoff has not yet soaked through the channel bottom. In the event of extraordinarily heavy rainfall, an inlet to the public storm sewer is available beyond the final holding pond; this inlet is needed approximately once every 5 years.

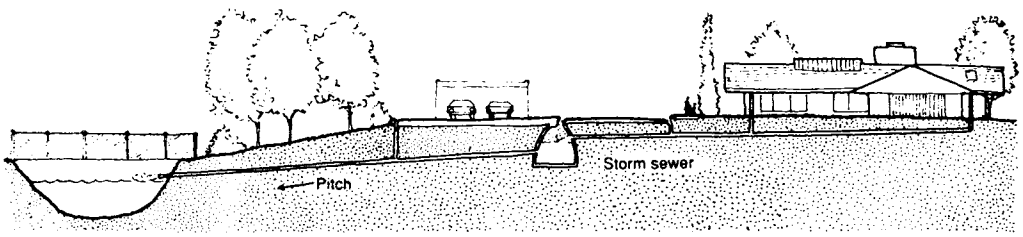
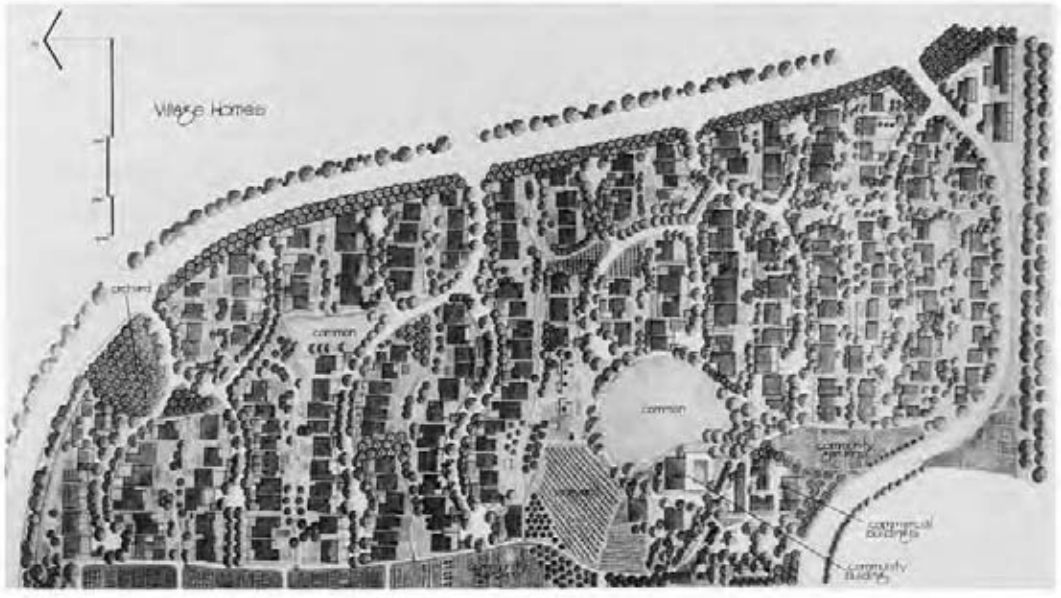


Fig. 20.18 *Recharge basins in suburban communities. When topography, groundwater level, and porosity of the soil permit, developers are sometimes required to install systems that collect storm water and carry it from catch basins at street curbs, the roofs of all houses, and paved areas to a recharge basin that receives the water and returns it to the ground. For the safety of children, a fence is sometimes required to prevent unauthorized access to the basin.*



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 20.19 *Village Homes, a northern California subdivision of solar homes and storm water recharge areas. (a) Photo illustrates the open drainage ways and pedestrian paths. (Photo by Alan Butler.) (b) Plan shows the emphasis on bicycle paths, narrow streets, and widespread community-maintained garden space through which the recharge streambeds are led. (c) Site section explains the gradual drainage from leaders at houses to recharge stream. (Reprinted by permission from M. Corbett,* A Better Place to Live; *© 1981 by the Rodale Press.)*

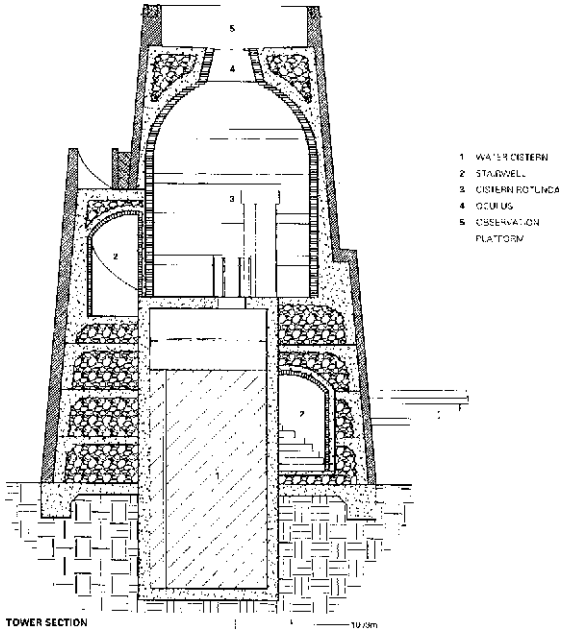


Fig. 20.20 *Section through the observation tower/cistern at the Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Research Center. (Courtesy of Overland Partners, architects, San Antonio, TX.)*

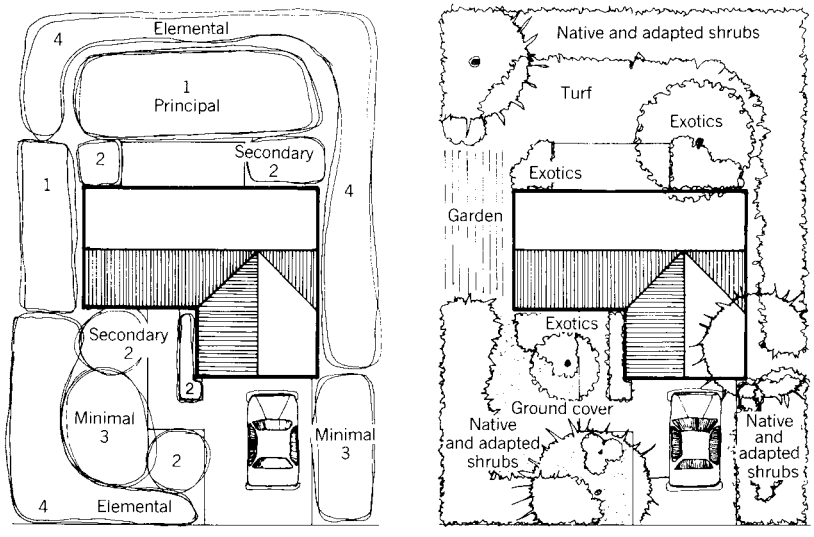


Fig. 20.21 *The hydrozone concept of landscape planning restricts exotic planting to special, easily watered areas. Native and adapted plantings are used elsewhere. Hydrozonics are here shown on a typical suburban lot. (Reprinted by permission from* Energy-Conserving Site Design*; E. G. McPherson, ed.; © 1984 by the American Society of Landscape Architects.)*

The National Wildflower Research Center (Fig. 20.20) is built over an endangered aquifer southwest of Austin, Texas. This complex of small buildings and larger gardens includes two cisterns, one of which forms the base of a central observation tower. Water gardens and irrigation are both served by the cisterns. The buildings' roofs are designed for rainwater collection, and a small channel (aqueduct) carries water over a wall to the outer cistern.

The planning of the landscape around buildings may closely follow such considerations as irrigation. The *hydrozone* concept of landscape planning is shown in Fig. 20.21. To minimize water consumption, exotic plant species are kept to a minimum and located near the house, where storm runoff and irrigating water are readily available. Native and adapted plantings, which can survive on normal rainfall, are utilized elsewhere. Landscape that requires no additional water is often called a *xeriscape*; see Fig. 21.68, and see Section 21.12 for a discussion of irrigation systems and an example in California's Napa Valley.

20.7 COMPONENTS

The first storm water system design decision to be made involves the establishment of "watersheds" on a building's roof. To what edges, or at what points, will runoff be directed? To what depths will it accumulate before it leaves the roof? Because the answers to these questions depend on the intensity of storms as well as on the roof's geometry, it is necessary to find the maximum hourly rainfall for each location. This figure is available from local building code officials, or from Fig. 20.22.

Gutters and *leaders* (downspouts) can be sized through the use of Tables 20.7 and 20.8. The sizing of gutters and leaders depends both on the horizontal projected area of the roof, as shown in Fig. 20.16, and on the maximum hourly rainfall.

EXAMPLE 20.2 Select a gutter and two leaders for the front half of a house, as shown in Fig. 20.16. The rainfall rate is 4 in./h (100 mm/h). The projected roof area is 700 ft^2 (65 m^2) and the slope of the gutter is $\frac{1}{16}$ in. per 1 ft of length ([5.2 mm/m]; 0.5%).

SOLUTION

From Table 20.7, choose a semicircular gutter with a 6-in. (150-mm) diameter. (Note that if a steeper gutter slope were designed, at ½-in. slope per foot (4%), then only a 4-in. (100-mm) diameter gutter would be required.)

Because two leaders will be used, each will drain 350 ft^2 (33 m^2). Table 20.8 shows that a 2-in. (50-mm) leader can be used. For this gutter-leader combination, specify the detail of Fig. 20.23*a*.

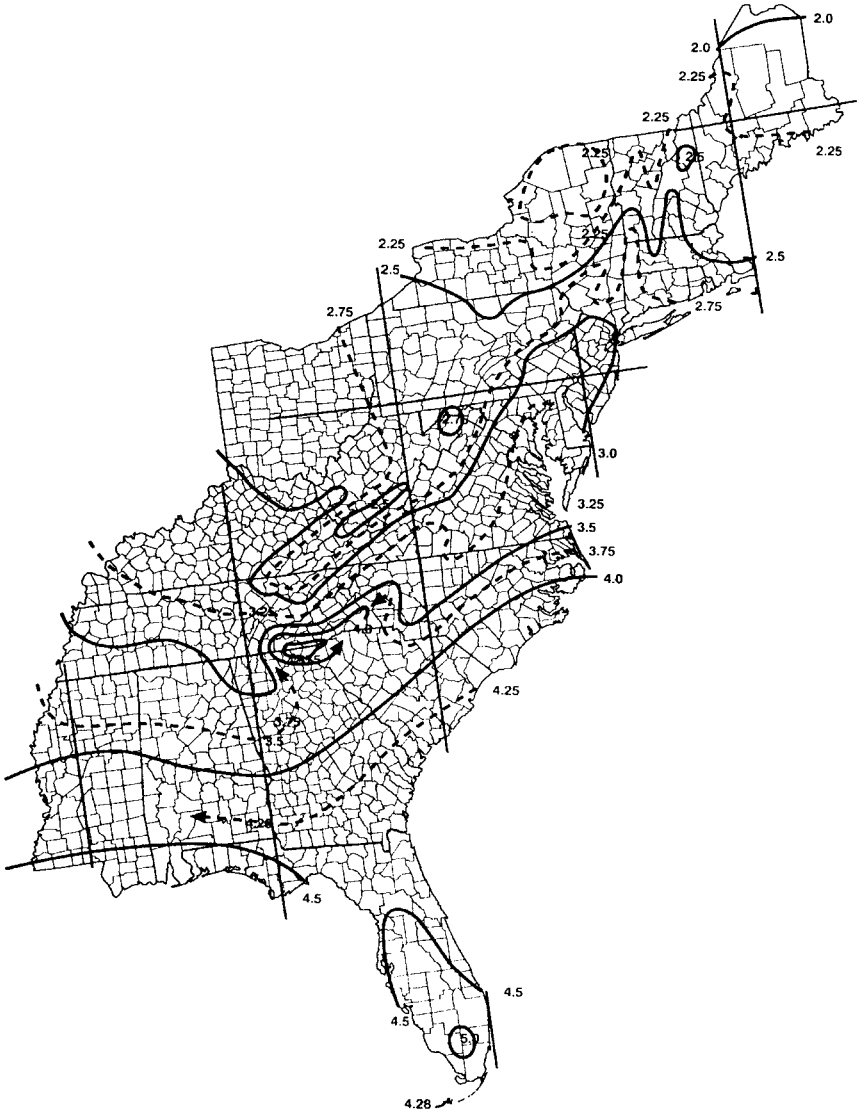
Storm gutters and leaders can have an important impact on a building's appearance (Fig. 20.24). Alternatively, leaders can be set within buildings, and gutters can be built into a roof's surface to minimize the visual impact.

Where routing of storm water inside a building is preferable, drains and leaders can be sized from Table 20.8, and horizontal piping can be sized from Table 20.9. Care should be taken to insulate such lines; cold rainwater inside pipes can cause condensation to form on the outside pipe surface, sometimes resulting in staining and other water damage. ■

EXAMPLE 20.3 Select the sizes for vertical conductors and horizontal storm drains for the building shown in Fig. 20.25. The roof, balcony, and courtyard areas are as shown, the rainfall rate is 4 in./h (100 mm/h), and the pitch of horizontal drains is ¼-in. slope per 1 ft of run (2%; approximately 20 mm/m).

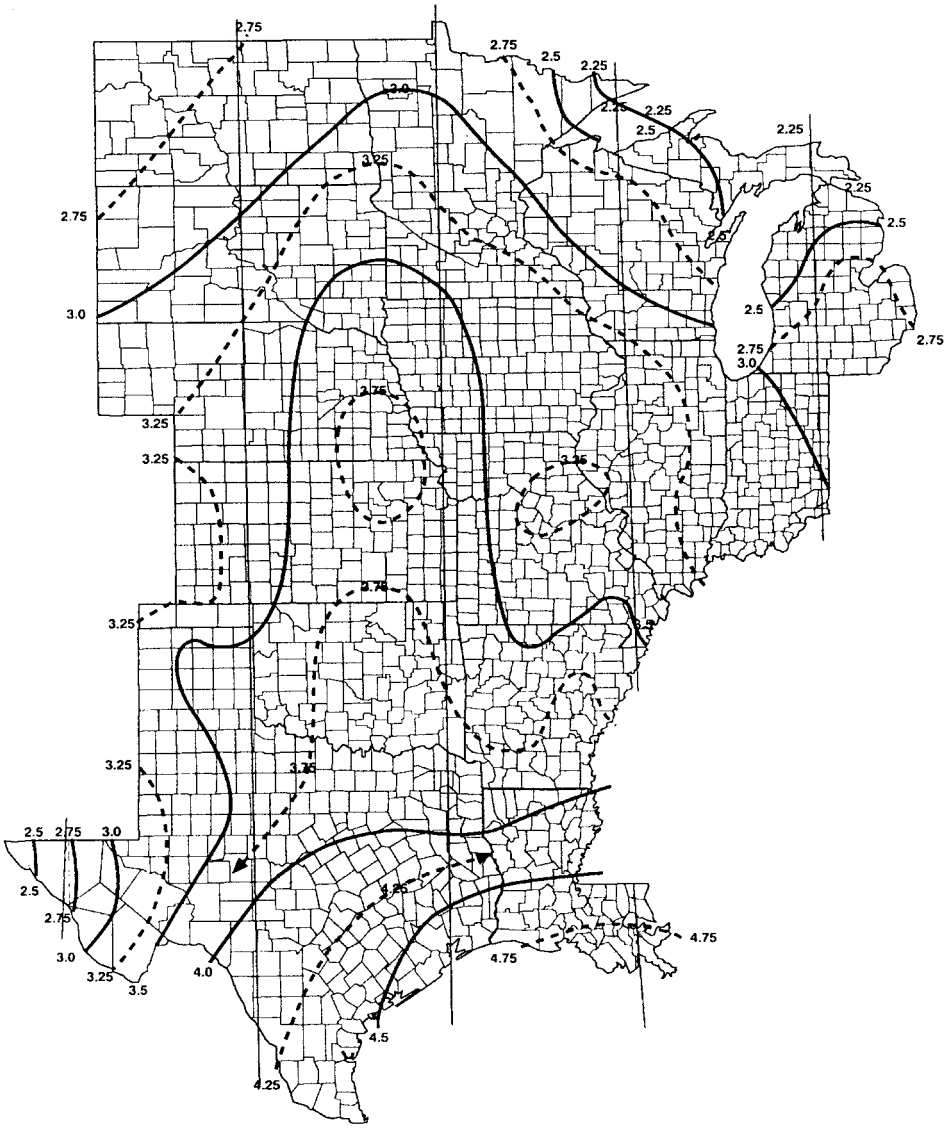
SOLUTION

The sizes selected and shown in Fig. 20.25 may be verified in Tables 20.8 and 20.20. ■



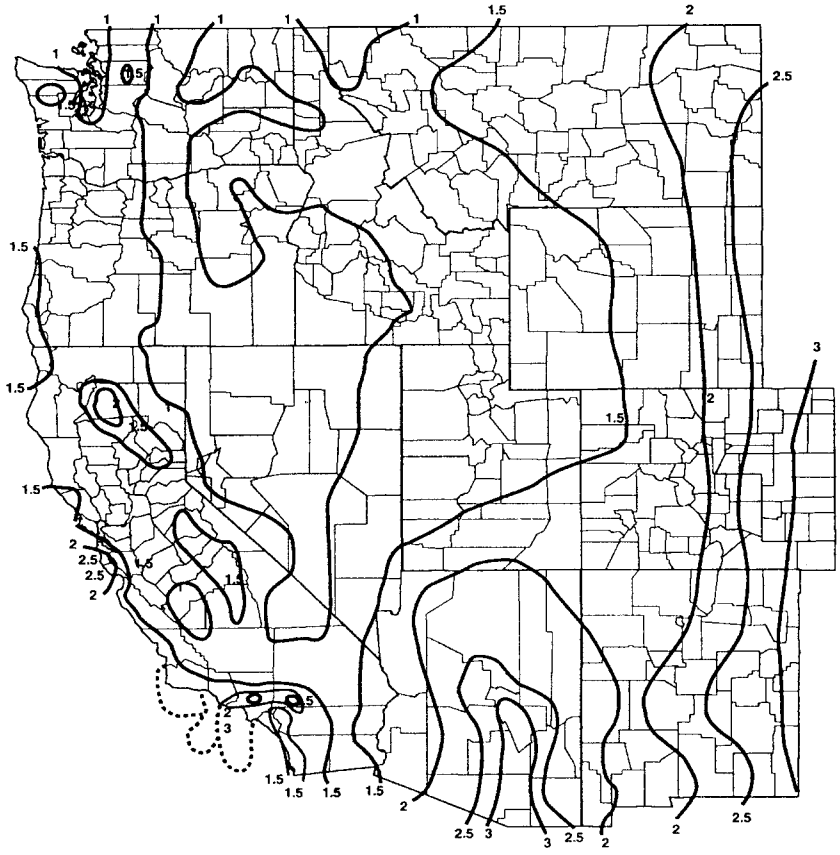
(*a*)

Fig. 20.22 *Maximum 100-year, 1-hour rainfall (in inches). (a) eastern United States; (b) central United States; (c) western United States. (Note: Alaska, range 0.4 to 1.4 in. [10 to 36 mm]; Hawaii, range 1.5 to 8 in. [38 to 203 mm])* (International Plumbing Code. *Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved. © 1997, International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, VA.)*



(*b*)

Fig. 20.22 *(Continued)*



(*c*)

Fig. 20.22 *(Continued)*

¼

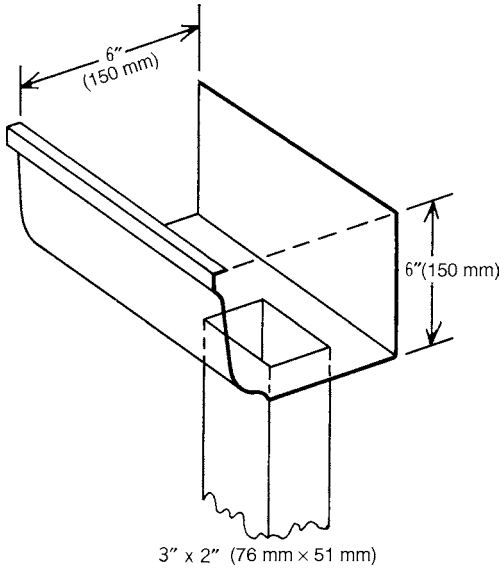
TABLE 20.7 Size of Gutters

PART A. I-P UNITS					
	Maximum Rainfall (in. per h)				
Diameter of Gutter (in.) 1/16 in./ft Slope	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**
3	340	226	170	136	113
4	720	480	360	288	240
5	1250	834	625	500	416
6	1920	1280	960	768	640
7	2760	1840	1380	1100	918
8	3980	2655	1990	1590	1325
10	7200	4800	3600	2880	2400
	Maximum Rainfall (in. per h)				
Diameter of Gutter (in.) 1/8 in./ft Slope	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**
3	480	320	240	192	160
4	1020	681	510	408	340
5	1760	1172	880	704	587
6	2720	1815	1360	1085	905
7	3900	2600	1950	1560	1300
8	5600	3740	2800	2240	1870
10	10,200	6800	5100	4080	3400

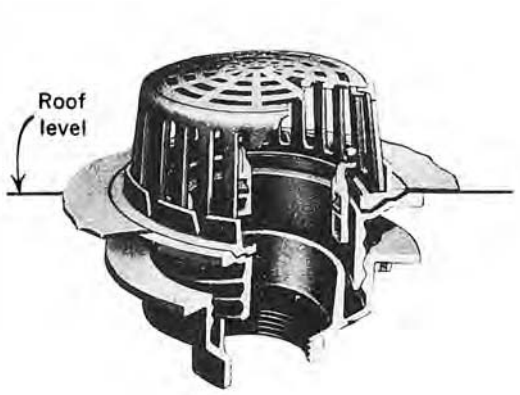
TABLE 20.7 Size of Gutters (*Continued*)

	Maximum Rainfall (in. per h)				
Diameter of Gutter (in.) ¼ in./ft Slope	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**
3	680	454	340	272	226
4	1440	960	720	576	480
5	2500	1668	1250	1000	834
6	3840	2560	1920	1536	1280
7	5520	3680	2760	2205	1840
8	7960	5310	3980	3180	2655
10	14,400	9600	7200	5750	4800
	Maximum Rainfall (in. per h)				
Diameter of Gutter (in.) ½ in./ft Slope	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**
3	960	640	480	384	320
4	2040	1360	1020	816	680
5	3540	2360	1770	1415	1180
6	5540	3695	2770	2220	1850
7	7800	5200	3900	3120	2600
8	11,200	7460	5600	4480	3730
10	20,000	13,330	10,000	8000	6660
	PART B. SI UNITS				
	Maximum Rainfall (mm per h)				
Diameter of Gutter (mm) 5.2 mm/m Slope	**50.8**	**76.2**	**101.6**	**127.0**	**152.4**
76.2	31.6	21.0	15.8	12.6	10.5
101.6	66.9	44.6	33.4	26.8	22.3
127.0	116.1	77.5	58.1	46.5	38.7
152.4	178.4	119.1	89.2	71.4	59.5
177.8	256.4	170.9	128.2	102.2	85.3
203.2	369.7	246.7	184.9	147.7	123.1
254.0	668.9	445.9	334.4	267.6	223.0
	Maximum Rainfall (mm per h)				
Diameter of Gutter (mm) 10.4 mm/m Slope	**50.8**	**76.2**	**101.6**	**127.0**	**152.4**
76.2	44.6	29.7	22.3	17.8	14.9
101.6	94.8	63.3	47.4	37.9	31.6
127.0	163.5	108.9	81.8	65.4	54.5
152.4	252.7	168.6	126.3	100.8	84.1
177.8	362.3	241.5	181.2	144.9	120.8
203.2	520.2	347.5	260.1	208.1	173.7
254.0	947.6	631.7	473.8	379.0	315.9
	Maximum Rainfall (mm per h)				
Diameter of Gutter (mm) 20.9 mm/m Slope	**50.8**	**76.2**	**101.6**	**127.0**	**152.4**
76.2	63.2	42.2	31.6	25.3	21.0
101.6	133.8	89.2	66.9	53.5	44.6
127.0	232.3	155.0	116.1	92.9	77.5
152.4	356.7	237.8	178.4	142.7	118.9
177.8	512.8	341.9	256.4	204.9	170.9
203.2	739.5	493.3	369.4	295.4	246.7
254.0	133.8	891.8	668.9	534.2	445.9
	Maximum Rainfall (mm per h)				
Diameter of Gutter (mm) 41.7 mm/m Slope	**50.8**	**76.2**	**101.6**	**127.0**	**152.4**
76.2	89.2	59.5	44.6	35.7	29.7
101.6	189.5	126.3	94.8	75.8	63.2
127.0	328.9	219.2	164.4	131.5	109.6
152.4	514.7	343.2	257.3	206.2	171.9
177.8	724.6	483.1	362.3	289.9	241.4
203.2	1040.5	693.0	520.2	416.2	346.5
254.0	1858.0	1234.4	929.0	743.2	618.7

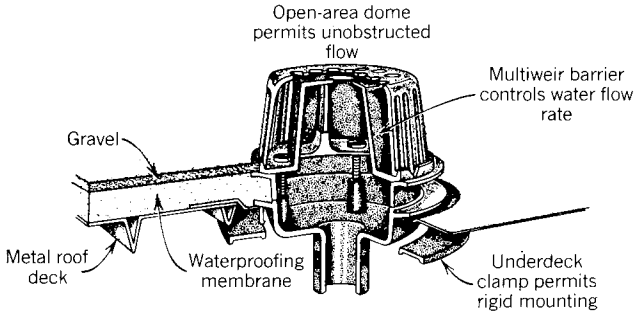
Source: Reprinted by permission from the 1997 *Uniform Plumbing Code.* © by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 20.23 *Storm drainage components. (a) Conventional gutter and leader for houses; sizes vary by manufacturer. (b) Ordinary roof drain (Josam Manufacturing Co.). (c) Roof drain for controlled flow. (From* Specifying Engineer, *November 1982.)*

TABLE 20.8 Sizing Roof Drains, Leaders, and Vertical Rainwater Piping

NOTES: The sizing data for vertical conductors, leaders, and drains are based on the pipes flowing ½₄ full. For rainfall rates other than those listed, determine the allowable roof area by dividing the area given in the 1 inch/hour (25 mm/hour) column by the desired rainfall rate. Vertical piping may be round, square, or rectangular. Square pipe shall be sized to enclose its equivalent round pipe. Rectangular pipe shall have at least the same cross-sectional area as its equivalent round pipe, except that the ratio of its side dimensions shall not exceed 3 to 1.

PART A. I-P UNITS

Size of Drain, Leader, or Pipe in.	Flow (gpm)	*Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Feet at Various Rainfall Rates*					
		1 in./h	2 in./h	3 in./h	4 in./h	5 in./h	6 in./h
2	23	2176	1088	725	544	435	363
3	67	6440	3220	2147	1610	1288	1073
4	144	13,840	6920	4613	3460	2768	2307
5	261	25,120	12,560	8373	6280	5024	4187
6	424	40,800	20,400	13,600	10,200	8160	6800
8	913	88,000	44,000	29,333	22,000	17,600	14,667

PART B. SI UNITS

Size of Drain, Leader, or Pipe mm	Flow (L/s)	*Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Meters at Various Rainfall Rates*					
		25 mm/h	50 mm/h	75 mm/h	100 mm/h	125 mm/h	150 mm/h
50	1.5	202	101	67	51	40	34
75	4.2	600	300	200	150	120	100
100	9.1	1286	643	429	321	257	214
125	16.5	2334	1117	778	583	467	389
150	26.8	3790	1895	1263	948	758	632
200	57.6	8175	4088	2725	2044	1635	1363

Source: Reprinted by permission from the 1997 *Uniform Plumbing Code.* © by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.



Fig. 20.24 *A downspout terminates the roof with flair at the Pleasanton BART (Bay Area Rapid Transit) station near San Francisco. (Photo by Jane Lidz.)*

TABLE 20.9 Sizing of Horizontal Rainwater Piping

NOTES: The sizing data for horizontal piping are based on the pipes flowing full. For rainfall rates other than those listed, determine the allowable roof area by dividing the area given in the 1 inch/hour (25 mm/hour) column by the desired rainfall rate.

PART A. I-P UNITS

Size of Pipe in.	Flow at ⅛ in./ft Slope gpm	*Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Feet at Various Rainfall Rates*					
		1 in./h	2 in./h	3 in./h	4 in./h	5 in./h	6 in./h
3	34	3288	1644	1096	822	657	548
4	78	7520	3760	2506	1880	1504	1253
5	139	13,360	6680	4453	3340	2672	2227
6	222	21,400	10,700	7133	5350	4280	3566
8	478	46,000	23,000	15,330	11,500	9200	7670
10	860	82,800	41,400	27,600	20,700	16,580	13,800
12	1384	133,200	66,600	44,400	33,300	26,650	22,200
15	2473	238,000	119,000	79,333	59,500	47,600	39,650

Size of Pipe in.	Flow at ¼ in./ft Slope gpm	*Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Feet at Various Rainfall Rates*					
		1 in./h	2 in./h	3 in./h	4 in./h	5 in./h	6 in./h
3	48	4640	2320	1546	1160	928	773
4	110	10,600	5300	3533	2650	2120	1766
5	196	18,880	9440	6293	4720	3776	3146
6	314	30,200	15,100	10,066	7550	6040	5033
8	677	65,200	32,600	21,733	16,300	13,040	10,866
10	1214	116,800	58,400	38,950	29,200	23,350	19,450
12	1953	188,000	94,000	62,600	47,000	37,600	31,350
15	3491	336,000	168,000	112,000	84,000	67,250	56,000

Size of Pipe in.	Flow at ½ in./ft Slope gpm	*Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Feet at Various Rainfall Rates*					
		1 in./h	2 in./h	3 in./h	4 in./h	5 in./h	6 in./h
3	68	6576	3288	2192	1644	1310	1096
4	156	15,040	7520	5010	3760	3010	2500
5	278	26,720	13,360	8900	6680	5320	4450
6	445	42,800	21,400	14,267	10,700	8580	7140
8	956	92,000	46,000	30,650	23,000	18,400	15,320
10	1721	165,600	82,800	55,200	41,400	33,150	27,600
12	2768	266,400	133,200	88,800	66,600	53,200	44,400
15	4946	476,000	238,000	158,700	119,000	95,200	79,300

PART B. SI UNITS

Size of Pipe mm	Flow at 10 mm/m Slope L/s	*Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Meters at Various Rainfall Rates*					
		25 mm/h	50 mm/h	75 mm/h	100 mm/h	125 mm/h	150 mm/h
75	2.1	305	153	102	76	61	51
100	4.9	700	350	233	175	140	116
125	8.8	1241	621	414	310	248	207
150	14.0	1988	994	663	497	398	331
200	30.2	4273	2137	1424	1068	855	713
250	54.3	7692	3846	2564	1923	1540	1282
300	87.3	12,375	6187	4125	3094	2476	2062
375	156.0	22,110	11,055	7370	5528	4422	3683

TABLE 20.9 Sizing of Horizontal Rainwater Piping (*Continued*)

Size of Pipe mm	Flow at 20 mm/m Slope L/s	*Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Meters at Various Rainfall Rates*					
		25 mm/h	50 mm/h	75 mm/h	100 mm/h	125 mm/h	150 mm/h
75	3.0	431	216	144	108	86	72
100	6.9	985	492	328	246	197	164
125	12.4	1754	877	585	438	351	292
150	19.8	2806	1403	935	701	561	468
200	42.7	6057	3029	2019	1514	1211	1009
250	76.6	10,851	5425	3618	2713	2169	1807
300	123.2	17,465	8733	5816	4366	3493	2912
375	220.2	31,214	15,607	10,405	7804	6248	5202
Size of Pipe mm	**Flow at 40 mm/m Slope L/s**	*Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Meters at Various Rainfall Rates*					
		25 mm/h	50 mm/h	75 mm/h	100 mm/h	125 mm/h	150 mm/h
75	4.3	611	305	204	153	122	102
100	9.8	1400	700	465	350	280	232
125	17.5	2482	1241	827	621	494	413
150	28.1	3976	1988	1325	994	797	663
200	60.3	8547	4273	2847	2137	1709	1423
250	108.6	15,390	7695	5128	3846	3080	2564
300	174.6	24,749	12,374	8250	6187	4942	4125
375	312.0	44,220	22,110	14,753	11,055	8853	7367

Source: Reprinted by permission from the 1997 *Uniform Plumbing Code*. Copyright © by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.

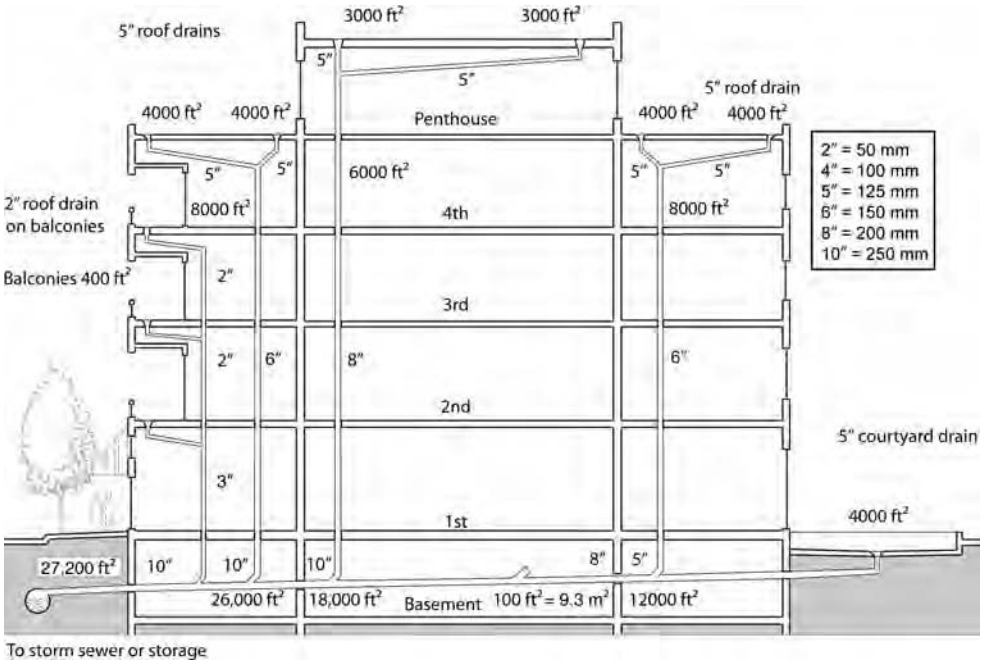


Fig. 20.25 *Separate storm drainage. Areas drained and corresponding sizes of vertical leaders and horizontal drains are from Tables 20.8 and 20.9. Storm drain piping within a building needs insulative covering with a vapor retarder on the outside. This prevents condensation (sweating) on the pipes when, in winter, warm, moisture-laden air in the building could otherwise reach the pipe surface (which would be cold from carrying icy water), condense there, and lead to wet, dripping conditions on the pipes. Each roof has two drains in case one is temporarily blocked. (Drawing by Nathan Majeski.)*

20.8 CASE STUDY—WATER AND BASIC DESIGN

Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Center, Austin, Texas

PROJECT BASICS

- Location: Austin, Texas, USA
- Latitude: 30.18 N; longitude: 97.89 W; elevation: 621 ft (189 m) Austin city.
- Heating degree days: 1688 base 65°F (938 base 18.3°C); cooling degree days: 7171 base 50°F (3984 base 10°C); annual precipitation: 30 in. (762) per year
- Building type: New construction; offices, visitor's center, classrooms
- 54,000 ft^2 (5017 m^2)
- Completed 1995
- Client: LBJ Wildflower Center
- Design team: Overland Partners and consultants

Background. The Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Center is an award-winning project that exemplifies resource conservation through a careful union between landscape and buildings. Elements of the design process for water conservation and other strategies at the Wildflower Center are presented in the discussion that follows, in order to emphasize the importance of an integrated design process to redevelop a native landscape and to showcase the intrinsic beauty of local materials. The client's values were important to the success of this project—to realize a 13-year campaign to bring research and resources together on behalf of native plants. It has become a place to learn about native plants and how to reduce water consumption while maintaining a beautiful outdoor habitat. Initially named the National Wildflower Research Center, founded by Lady Bird Johnson and actress Helen Hayes in 1982, the Center has expanded beyond its original intentions to incorporate education, progressive environmental movements, and the publication of data on landscaping with native plants in the United States. To accommodate its success and growth, the Wildflower Research Center moved to a new site in 1995. In 2006, the Wildflower Center became an Organized Research Unit of The University of Texas at Austin's College of Natural Sciences and School of Architecture.



Fig. 20.26 *Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Center in Austin, Texas; view to the Visitor's Center. (Photo by Jake Moore; © 2009 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

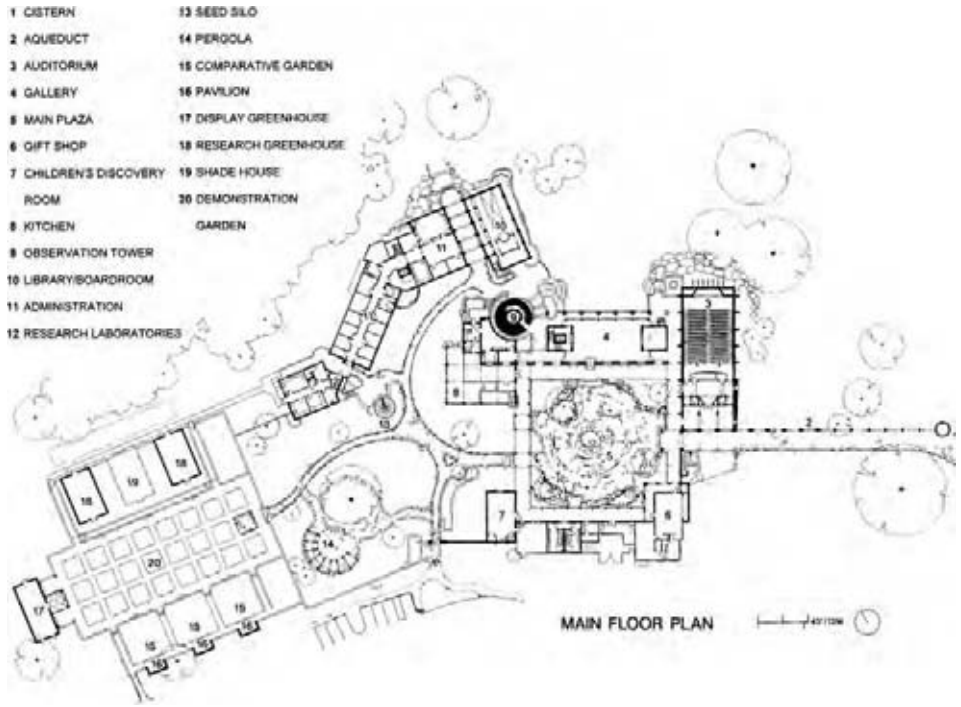


Fig. 20.27 *Site plan shows two cisterns, one at the far right (1), the other in the central observation tower (9). 1. Cistern; 2. Aqueduct; 3. Auditorium; 4. Gallery; 5. Main plaza; 6. Gift shop; 7. Children's discovery room; 8. Kitchen; 9. Observation tower/cistern; 10. Library/board room; 11. Administration; 12. Research laboratories; 13. Seed silo; 14. Pergola; 15. Comparative garden; 16. Pavilion; 17. Display greenhouse; 18. Research greenhouse; 19. Shade house; 20. Demonstration garden. (© Overland Partners Architects; used with permission.)*

Concern for water conservation led to many of the distinctive forms seen in the cisterns and waterways on the land. (The information that follows was provided by Overland Partners.)

Context. The Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Center is a research center designed to share information with the public by increasing awareness and understanding of local native plants and landscapes. In 1997, the Center was renamed the Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Center and its mission expanded to include educational opportunities for visitors. Within the last decade the Center has played an active role in land restoration, plant conservation, the Millennium Seed Bank Project, and the creation of the Sustainable Sites Initiative in conjunction with the American Society of Landscape Architects.

Design Intent. The mission of the Wildflower Center is to: "increase the sustainable use and conservation of native wildflowers, plants and landscapes." Aligned with this, the design of the Center teaches by example with particular attention being given to the visitor's experience. Rather than creating one monolithic building, the project comprises several smaller buildings wrapped by landscaping, demonstration gardens, and a main plaza. Orientations of these buildings frame views of the terrain and extend the notion that the Center is more about the landscape than the buildings. A key element of the design was to eliminate the need to pump water from the endangered Edwards Aquifer. Many of the native plants help conserve water, since they require little water. Rainfall from building rooftops drains into various cisterns and storage tanks to be used later for irrigation. Some rooftops are connected with aqueducts that allow the water to flow to a shared storage tank/cistern.

The leading principles behind the design were as follows:

- The building and programs support "total resource conservation."
- Respect existing native wildflowers, landscaping and plants.
- Harmonize built form with landscaping.
- Minimize the impact of the built environment.
- Enable visitor education through example.



Fig. 20.28 *Oculus of the water tower cistern. The tower serves as a focal point for views of the site. (Photo by Jake Moore; © 2009 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



Fig. 20.29 *Entry cistern fed by aqueducts from the site's rainwater harvesting system. (Photo © 2009 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

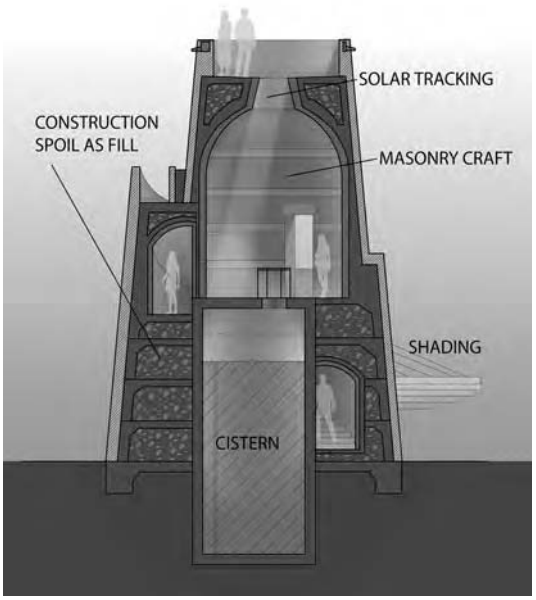


Fig. 20.30 *Section of the tower cistern. (© Overland Partners Architects; used with permission.)*



Fig. 20.31 *Rainwater harvesting system on locally-sourced stone arches along the entry path surrounded by oak trees. (Photo © 2009 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

- Eliminate the need to pump water from the endangered Edwards Aquifer.
- Respect and utilize the local vernacular, materiality, and craftsmanship.
- "Demonstrate an ecologically sensitive approach to the development of a site with fragile environmental conditions."
- Utilize and design sustainable technologies to aid in conservation efforts.

Design Criteria and Validation. The project was built in 1995, long before the Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) certification process. In retrospect, the project complies with many of the principles that guide the LEED rating system. Sustainable design was desirable to maintain the Center's founding philosophies and the ethics of the design team, which were the driving forces behind the environmental design decisions. The intentions of the project were to demonstrate an ecologically sensitive approach to the development of a site with fragile environmental conditions and integrate the buildings and programs to support "total resourse conservation" while showing the beauty of the native landscape and supporting over 400 native plant species.

Post-Occupancy Validation Methods. The success of the Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Center resulted in more than 20 international, national, state, and local awards for its facilities, programs, and leadership in environmental design. It was calculated that the investment made in creating these facilities brought returns of more than $11 million in free media in the first two years. Based on the collected data, energy simulations were run using ENER-WIN—a software package used to analyze total building energy performance, developed in the Department of Architecture at Texas A&M University as part of the Vital Signs Curriculum Project. The overall energy performance of the building simulated by this software was calibrated to the actual building energy use based on utility bills for one year. The components of the energy usage were broken down

and compared, to see the percent contribution to the HVAC load of the various design features such as use of daylighting strategies and a matching of HVAC and occupancy schedules.

Performance Data.

- With an average rainfall of 30 in. (762 mm) per year, the whole rooftop system can collect approximately 300,000 gallons (1,135,500 L) of rainwater per year.
- In total, the Center collects water from 17,000 square feet (1579 m^2) of roof space and can store more than 60,000 gallons (227,100 L) in on-site cisterns and storage tanks, providing approximately 10 to 15% of the Center's yearly water needs for irrigation and landscaping
- Approximately 10,600 gallons of water per inch of rain (1580 L/mm) are collected for the whole center.
- Five cisterns are used in total, with an approximate capacity of 65,000 gallons (246,025 L): two cisterns at 20,000 gallons (75,700 L) each, one at 5000 gallons (18,925 L), the entry cistern at 12,000 gallons (45,420 L), and the children's "little house" cistern holding 3000 gallons (11,355 L).
- The entry collection cistern system is fed by 1167 ft^2 (108 m^2) of metal roof to a 12,000-gallon (45,420-L) cistern. This cistern can collect 7000 gallons per inch (1043 L/mm) of rain, or approximately 21,000 gallons (79,485 L) per year.
- The children's area cistern collects water from 672 ft^2 (62 m^2) of roof, and has a 3000-gallon 11,355-L) capacity. With approximately 420 gallons per inch of rain (63 L/mm), it can collect 12,600 gallons (47,691 L) of water per year.
- All cisterns are located above ground except for the transfer station, which is underground.
- Recycled materials included wood flooring and on-site non-biodegradable construction spoil used to fill the tower structure. Local stone, wood flooring, and site boulders were obtained from within a 150-mile (241-km) radius from site.



Fig. 20.32 *Wood was reused from the site to create overhangs and trellises. (Photo by Jake Moore; © 2009 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

The project received the following awards and citations:

1995:

Texas Society of Architects—Honor Award
Austin Commercial Real Estate Society—Good Egg Award
Associated Builders and Contractors Awards—First Place for Excellence in Construction

1996:

Recycling and Education Awareness Citations by Keep Austin Beautiful
Good Steward Award by the National Arbor Foundation
American Society of Landscape Architects—San Antonio Design Honor Award
American Society of Landscape Architects—State of Texas Design Honor Award
American Society of Landscape Architects—National Design Honor Award
Associated General Contractors—San Antonio Design Honor Award
Associated General Contractors—Regional Honor Award
Associated General Contractors—Dallas Chapter Summit Award
Associated General Contractors—National Design Honor Award
American Institute of Architects—San Antonio chapter Design Honor Award

1998:

Business Week/Architectural Record—Award Semi-finalist

2000:

American Institute of Architects Committee on the Environment—Earth Day 2000 Top Ten

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION

Overland Partners Architects: http://www.overlandpartners.com

Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Center: http://www.wildflower.org/

Rocky Mountain Institute, *Green Developments CD*, version 2.0, 2001.

References and Resources

Brown, G. Z., J. Reynolds, and S. Ubbelohde. 1982. *InsideOut: Design Procedures for Passive Environmental Technologies.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Corbett, M. 1981. *A Better Place to Live.* Rodale Press. Emmaus, PA.

Ferguson, B. 1998. *Introduction to Stormwater.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Gleick, P. 1998. *The World's Water.* Island Press. Washington, DC.

International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials. 1997. *Uniform Plumbing Code.* Walnut, CA.

International Code Council. 1997. *International Plumbing Code.* Falls Church, VA.

McPherson, E. G. (ed.). 1984. *Energy-Conserving Site Design.* American Society of Landscape Architects. Washington, DC.

Milne, M. 1976. *Residential Water Conservation.* U.S. Office of Water Research and Technology, Department of Commerce, NTIS. Springfield, VA.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1975. *Manual of Individual Water Supply Systems.* Washington, DC.

U.S. Geological Survey, Water Resources of the United States: http://water.usgs.gov/

CHAPTER 21

Water Supply

WITH WATER, ONE OF THE DESIGNER'S first concerns is to match the quality of the water to the task it performs. As this becomes a more serious design issue, designers will provide for the recycling of water within and around buildings, as well as specify plumbing fixtures that use less water. Table 21.1 shows typical relationships between water quality and usage. Water recycling and conservation are discussed in detail in Chapter 22. In this chapter we deal primarily with *potable* (drinkable) water: first with issues of water quality and then with the matter of ensuring an adequate supply of water throughout a building.

21.1 WATER QUALITY

A summary of water quality at the various stages of the hydrologic cycle was shown in Fig. 20.4. As precipitation, water contains few impurities: almost no bacterial content is present, and only small amounts of minerals and gases can be expected. Surfaces are needed to collect this nearly pure water—and from these surfaces, foreign substances can readily contaminate the water. These pollutants can affect water's physical (mostly organic), chemical (mostly inorganic), biological, or radiological characteristics. Both surface water and groundwater are subject to pollution.

The U.S. National Drinking Water Clearinghouse is a source of information on water supply and wastewater treatment systems. Its brief history of waterborne diseases worldwide begins with a major cholera epidemic that began in Calcutta, India, in 1817, killing thousands and spreading by 1832 to New York City, emptying the streets in panic over the disease. In 1854, a London physician demonstrated that local cases of cholera could be traced to one pump contaminated with sewage from a nearby house, but how the disease was transmitted remained a mystery. In summer 1859, London's Thames River, carrying combined storm and sanitary wastes, stank so badly that Parliament was suspended. In 1892, the bacterium causing cholera was identified during an epidemic in Hamburg, Germany, proving the relationship between contaminated water and the disease. In 1939, an outbreak of typhoid fever killed 60 people at an Illinois mental hospital; typhoid and gastroenteritis resulted from an accidental pumping of polluted river water into supply mains in Rochester, New York, in 1940. Another worldwide cholera epidemic began in Indonesia in 1961, eventually reaching Latin America by 1991. In 1993, an outbreak of cryptosporidiosis in the public water supply of Milwaukee, Wisconsin, shook the public's faith in water systems across the United States; that outbreak killed 104 and infected more than 400,000 people.

In response to this history, we disinfect huge quantities of water, expending energy and adding chemicals so that every drop of water entering North American buildings is potable. Again, the high-grade resource/low-grade use question arises;

TABLE 21.1 Water Use and Quality in Buildings

Use	Desired Quality
A. CONSUMED	
1. Drinking and cooking	Potable
2. Bathing	Potable
3. Laundering	Soft
4. Irrigation and watering of livestock	Unpolluted
5. Industrial processes	As required
6. Vapor to increase the relative humidity of air	
B. CIRCULATED	
1. Hot water for heating	*Note:* Makeup water should be soft or neutral and, for swimming, potable
2. Chilled water for cooling	
3. Condenser cooling water	
4. Swimming pool water	
5. Steam for heating, later condensed	
C. GENERALLY STATIC	
1. Water stored for fire protection	
2. Water in fire standpipes	
3. Water in sprinkler piping	
D. CONTROLLED	
1. Vapor condensed to reduce relative humidity of air	

Note: For water uses in Section A, flow is often continuous. Section B comprises uses for which flow other than circulation is intermittent or at a relatively low rate, the water added to the systems being known as *makeup water.* Items C2 and C3 call for piping to provide adequate, though infrequent, flow in emergencies. Item D1 relates only to moisture condensed out of the air and involves no design for supply.

recycled water for lower-grade use is discussed in Chapter 22.

(a) Physical Characteristics

Some of the most noticeable aspects of water quality fall within this category. Water from surface sources (roof runoff, streams, rivers, lakes, ponds) is particularly subject to physical pollutants.

Turbidity is easy to see and thus is a likely source of dissatisfaction for the would-be consumer. It is caused by the presence of suspended material such as clay, silt, other inorganic material, plankton, or finely divided organic material. Even those materials that do not adversely affect health are usually aesthetically objectionable.

Color, another visible alteration, is often caused by dissolved organic matter, as from decaying vegetation. Some inorganic materials also color water, as do microorganisms. Like turbidity, such color changes usually do not threaten health, but they are often psychologically undesirable.

Taste and *odor* can be caused by organic compounds, inorganic salts, or dissolved gases. This condition can be treated only after a chemical analysis has identified which source is responsible.

Temperature is another characteristic of psychological importance—we expect drinking water to be cool. In general, water supplied between 50° and 60°F (10° and 16°C) is preferred.

Foamability is usually caused by concentrations of detergents. The foam itself does not pose a serious health threat, but it may indicate that other, more dangerous pollutants associated with domestic waste are also present. Because of increased foaming in water in the 1960s, today's detergents must use linear alkylate sulfonate (LAS), which biodegrades rapidly—except in the absence of oxygen. Because this lack of oxygen is characteristic of some septic tank drainage fields, foam in drinking water should be investigated promptly.

(b) Chemical Characteristics

Groundwater is particularly subject to chemical alteration because as it moves downward from the surface it slowly dissolves some minerals contained in rocks and soils. A chemical analysis (such as that given in Table 21.2) is usually required for individual water supply sources. Such analysis will indicate (1) the possible presence of harmful or objectionable substances, (2) the potential for corrosion within the water supply system, and (3) the tendency for the water to stain fixtures and clothing. Concentrations are expressed in milligrams per liter (mg/L), which is essentially equivalent to parts per million (ppm).

Some general terms commonly used to describe chemical characteristics of water are as follows:

Alkalinity. Caused by bicarbonate, carbonate, or hydroxide components. Testing for these components of water's alkalinity is a key to determining which treatments to use.

Hardness. A relative term (see Fig. 21.1). Hard water inhibits the cleaning action of soaps and detergents, and it deposits scale on the inside of hot water pipes and cooking utensils, thus wasting heating fuel and making utensils unusable. Hardness, which is caused

TABLE 21.2 Example of Chemical Analysis of Water

Quality	Indicated by	Parts per Million (ppm)[a]
Total hardness	$CaCO_3$	30
Calcium hardness	$CaCO_3$	20
Alkalinity (methyl orange)	$CaCO_3$	27
Alkalinity (phenolphthalein)	$CaCO_3$	0
Free carbon dioxide	CO_2	13.5
Chlorides	Cl	6
Sulfates	SO_4	4
Silica	SiO_2	19
Phosphates—normal	PO_4	0
Phosphates—total	PO_4	0.5
Iron—total	Fe	1.6
Total dissolved solids		66
Turbidity or sediment		Present

Source: A report by Olin Water Service for a private well in Virginia.

[a]Note that ppm and mg/L are essentially equivalent terms for concentration in water.

by calcium and magnesium salts, can be classified as temporary (carbonate) or permanent (noncarbonate). Temporary hardness is largely removed when the water is heated—it forms the scale just described. Permanent hardness cannot be removed by simple heating (see Section 21.4c).

pH. A measure of the water's hydrogen ion concentration, as well as its relative acidity or alkalinity (Fig. 21.1). A pH of 7 is neutral. Measurements below 7 indicate increasing acidity (and corrosiveness); water in its natural state can have a pH as low as 5.5, with 0 being the ultimate acidity. Measurements higher than 7 indicate increasing alkalinity. A pH as high as 9 can be found in water in its natural state, with 14 representing the ultimate alkalinity. The pH value is the starting point for determining treatments for corrosion control, chemical dosages, and disinfection.

Unintentional chemical additions to water supplies most commonly include the following elements:

Toxic substances are occasionally present in water supplies. Local health authorities can provide information about acceptable concentrations of such substances as arsenic (As), barium (Ba), cadmium (Cd), chromium (Cr^{6+}), cyanide (CN), fluoride (F), lead (Pb), selenium (Se), and silver (Ag). Although limited amounts of *fluoride* are frequently added to water supplies to help prevent tooth decay, fluorides in excess of such optimum concentrations can produce mottling of teeth. *Lead* poses a dangerous threat, even in relatively small amounts, because it is a cumulative poison. Lead in water usually comes from lead piping (in older buildings or cities) or from corrosive water on lead-painted roofs. The maximum recommended concentration is 0.05 mg/L.

Unfortunately, the list of toxic chemicals is expanding, and as chemical waste dumps have been abandoned or mismanaged, groundwater has become contaminated. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has estimated that 75%

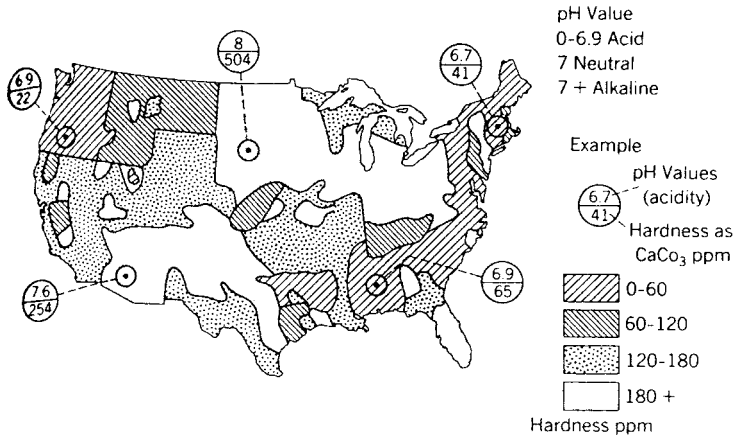


Fig. 21.1 *Approximate groundwater chemical characteristics across the United States. Treatment may be needed when the pH is less than 7.0 (acidity results in corrosion) or when hardness as $CaCO_3$ exceeds 65 ppm (ppm and mg/L are essentially identical measures). (Courtesy of* Progressive Architecture.*)*

of both active and abandoned chemical waste dumps—some 51,000 in all—are leaking. In addition to the following list of inorganic chemicals, we are becoming aware of many new organic chemicals as well, some of which are suspected of causing 5% to 20% of U.S. cancers. The threat to our groundwater supplies is illustrated in Fig. 21.2. Once polluted, aquifers are extremely difficult to clean. This is one reason why ground source heat pumps are tightly regulated.

Chlorides can enter water as it passes through geologic deposits formed by marine sediment, or because of pollution from seawater, brine, or industrial or domestic wastes. A noticeable taste results from chloride in excess of 250 mg/L.

Copper can enter water from natural copper deposits or from copper piping that contains corrosive water. Concentrations of copper in excess of 1.0 mg/L can produce an undesirable taste.

Iron is frequently present in groundwater. Corrosive water in iron pipes will also add iron to water. At concentrations above 0.3 mg/L, iron can lend a brownish color to washed clothes and can affect the taste of the water.

Manganese can both pose a physiological threat (it is a natural laxative) and produce color and taste effects similar to those produced by iron. The recommended limit is 0.05 mg/L.

Nitrates in high concentrations pose a threat to infants, in whom they can cause "blue baby" disease. In shallow wells, nitrate concentrations can indicate seepage from deposits of livestock manure.

Pesticides, a growing threat to water supplies, are particularly common in wells near homes that have been treated for termite control. Avoid using pesticides near wells.

Sodium is primarily dangerous for people with heart, kidney, or circulatory ailments. For a low-sodium diet, the sodium in drinking water should not exceed 20 mg/L. Salts spread on roadways for ice control can leach into the soil and enter groundwater. Note that some water softeners (discussed in Section 21.4c) can raise sodium concentrations in water.

Sulfates, which have laxative effects, can enter groundwater from natural deposits of Epsom salts (magnesium sulfate) or Glauber's salt (sodium sulfate). Concentrations should not exceed 250 mg/L.

Zinc sometimes enters groundwater in areas where it is found in abundance. Although not a health threat, it can cause an undesirable taste at concentrations above 5 mg/L.

(c) Biological Characteristics

Potable water should be kept as free as possible of disease-producing organisms—bacteria, protozoa, and viruses. These organisms are not easily identified; a thorough biological water test is complex and time-consuming. For this reason, the standard test is for *one* kind of bacteria—the coliform group

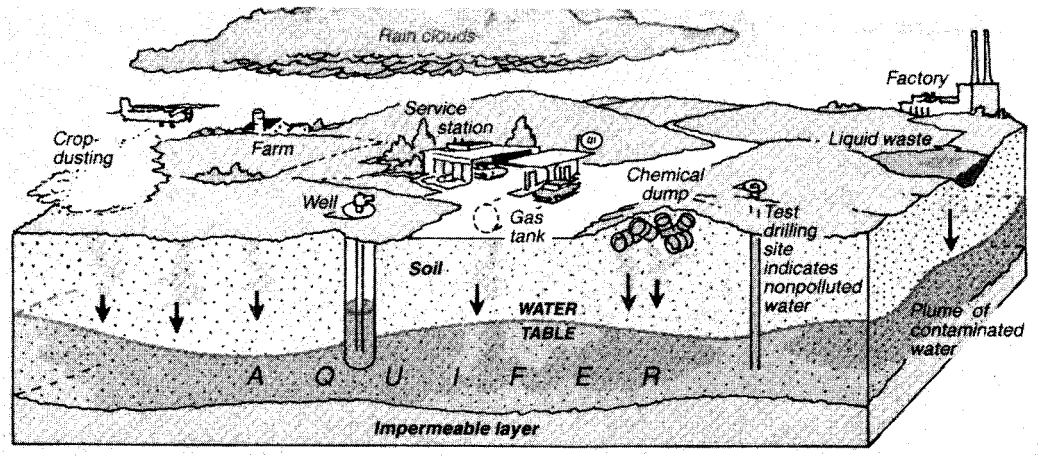


Fig. 21.2 *How groundwater becomes contaminated. The "plume" formed by contaminants can often go undetected. (© 1982 by Newsweek, Inc.; all rights reserved. Reprinted by permission.)*

(*Escherichia coli*, better known as *E. coli*), which is always present in the fecal wastes of humans (as well as those of many animals and birds) and which outnumbers all other disease-producing organisms in water. The recommended maximum concentration of coliform bacteria is one organism per 100 mL (about ½ cup) water.

For biological activity to be kept to a minimum in drinking water, a water source should be chosen that does not normally support much plant or animal life, hence the popularity of groundwater rather than surface water as a source. In addition, the supply should be protected from subsequent biological contamination. Where cities depend on small lakes for water, human beings are frequently excluded from the watersheds. Organic fertilizers and nutrient minerals should also be kept out of the water supply to further discourage biological activity. For the same reason, stored water should be kept dark and at low temperatures. Finally, organisms (or their by-products) are commonly destroyed at treatment facilities.

(d) Radiological Characteristics

The mining of radioactive materials and the use of such materials in industry and power plants have produced radiological pollution in some water supplies. Because radiological effects are cumulative, concentrations of radioactive materials should be low indeed. "Safe" minimum concentrations have continually been revised downward for other radiation exposures; consult the local public health service for current recommendations.

21.2 FILTRATION

In the preceding section, water pollution was broken down into physical, chemical, biological, and radiological categories. The various forms of treatment for such pollutants do not necessarily fall into the same categories, as one treatment may be effective for several different polluted conditions. A general look at common domestic water quality problems and treatments is provided in Table 21.3.

We begin with filtration, because so often it is the first treatment in a series; it is also one of the oldest and simplest methods. This very common treatment removes suspended particles, some bacteria, and color or taste by passing water through a permeable fabric or a porous bed of materials. The more common approaches are listed in the following subsections, beginning with filtering to remove suspended particles and then moving on to more specialized applications for the removal of iron and/or manganese, tastes, and odors.

(a) Sedimentation

Before water enters a filter, this process removes some suspended matter simply by allowing time,

TABLE 21.3 Common Water Quality Problems and Treatment in Small Systems

Item	Cause	Bad Effect	Correction
Hardness	Calcium and magnesium salts from underground flow	Clogging of pipes by scale, burning out of boilers, and impaired laundering and food preparation	Ion-exchanger (zeolite process)
Corrosion	Acidity, entrained oxygen and carbon dioxide (low pH)	Closing of iron pipe by rust, leaking connections, destruction of brass pipe	Raising the alkaline content (neutralizer)
Biological pollution	Contamination by organic matter or sewage	Disease	Chlorination by sodium hypochlorite or chlorine gas; or ozonation
Color	Iron and manganese	Discoloration of fixtures and laundry	Chlorination or ozonation and fine filtration
Taste and odor[a]	Organic matter	Unpleasantness	Filtration through activated carbon (purifier); aeration
Turbidity[a]	Silt or suspended matter picked up in surface or near-surface flow	Unpleasantness	Filtration

[a]These problems are not common in private systems that use deep wells.

the inactivity of the water, and gravity to do the work of settling out heavier suspended particles. Simple basins, ponds, or tanks constructed for this purpose are large enough to retain the water for at least 24 hours and are equipped with baffles to slow the water flow. To clean out the sediment, water usually is diverted to an identical second basin while the first is being cleaned.

(b) Coagulation

This process also removes suspended matter, along with some coloration. A chemical such as alum (hydrated aluminum sulfate) is added to water made turbulent by baffles or static mixers to distribute the chemicals evenly.

(c) Flocculation

The water is then held in a quiet condition in which the suspended particles will combine with the alum to form *floc*. These heavy particles then settle out in a process similar to sedimentation. Some adjustment of the pH may be necessary.

See the National Drinking Water Clearinghouse, *Tech Brief* (September 1996), *Filtration*, for details on the following methods of filtering.

(d) Slow Sand Filters

These are common in small-scale water supply systems (Fig. 21.3; also see Fig. 20.8 for a rainwater application). Not suitable for water with high turbidity, they do not usually require coagulation/flocculation and may not even require sedimentation. Water should not be chlorinated before entering this filter, because it will interfere with the subsequent biological activity. These filters are able to remove up to 99.9% of *Giardia* cysts.

Slow sand filters are low-maintenance, easily constructed devices that should be cleaned as often as the turbidity of the water demands—from once a day to perhaps once a month. They are cleaned by removal and replacement of about the top 1 in. (25 mm) of sand, which has formed a layer of biological slime called (descriptively) the *schmutzdecke*, which traps small particles and degrades organic material in the water. This sand is then either washed for reuse or discarded.

The approximate rate of flow is slow, requiring a rather large surface area: 0.03 to 0.10 gpm per ft^2 (0.02 to 0.07 L/s m^2) of filter bed surface; in other units, 40 to 140 gallons per day per square foot (1630 to 5720 liters per day per square meter) of filter bed surface. Overall thickness is usually 30 to 48 in. of sand over 12 in. of gravel (900 to 1200 mm

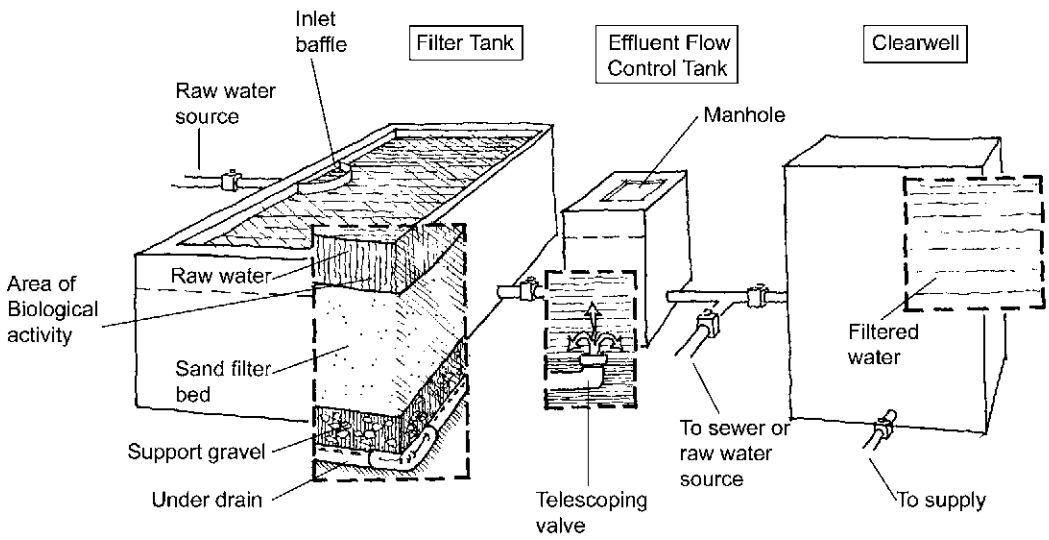


Fig. 21.3 *Slow sand filter effective in removing cysts of* Giardia*. Water should not be chlorinated before it enters the filter. (From National Drinking Water Clearinghouse.* Tech Brief *[September 1996],* Filtration*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Washington, DC. Redrawn by Dain Carlson.)*

of sand over 300 mm of gravel) with an underdrain system.

In freezing temperatures, slow sand filters must be housed; if they develop an ice layer, this prevents cleaning.

(e) Diatomaceous Earth Filters

Also known as *precoat* or *diatomite filters*, these can be of either the vacuum or the pressure type. They rely on a layer of diatomaceous earth, a minimum of ⅛ in. (3 mm) thick placed on a septum or filter element (for *Giardia* removal, the thickness should be increased to about ⅕ in. [5 mm]). They are most suitable for water with low bacterial counts and low turbidity. Simple to operate and effective in removing cysts, algae, and asbestos, they require periodic attention to remain effective, including backwashing every 1 to 4 days.

(f) Direct Filtration

Intended for water supplies of high quality and seasonally consistent flow, these systems omit sedimentation but should include coagulation for most effective *Giardia* removal. These are often used with steel pressure tanks to maintain pressure in the water supply line.

Packaged filtration combines features such as chemical addition, flocculation, and sedimentation, along with filtration, in one compact unit. Most often used for small community water supplies, these systems treat surface water to remove turbidity, color, and coliform organisms.

(g) Membrane Filtration

Also called *microfiltration* or *ultrafiltration*, this rapidly developing technique can remove bacteria, *Giardia*, and some viruses. It does not require coagulation as pretreatment. Using hollow fiber or spiral-wrapped membranes, it is able to exclude all particles greater than 0.2 micron from the water stream. It is best used on water supplies of low turbidity because of fouling of the fibers or membranes.

Water is forced at high pressure through these filters. The contaminants trapped on the inflow side must be frequently removed by reversing the flow and flushing the waste; calcium and other persistent contaminants must be periodically removed with chemical cleaning.

Nanofiltration, using much smaller pores, is discussed in Section 21.3.

(h) Cartridge Filtration

Increasingly popular on lavatory faucets as well as on small supply systems, these systems are easy to operate and maintain. They require water of low turbidity and last longer when some prefiltering by more crude means is performed upstream. They can exclude particles of 0.2 micron (or even smaller). A disinfectant can prevent surface-fouling microbial growth on the cartridge filters; some periodic chemical cleaning will likely be required.

(i) Other Filters

Activated carbon filters are particularly effective for removing tastes and odors. The water is passed through granular carbon, which attracts large quantities of dissolved gases, soluble organics, and fine solids.

Porous stone, ceramic, or unglazed porcelain filters (also called *Pasteur filters*) are usually made in small sizes so that they can be attached to water faucets. They are used widely in some countries, such as Mexico, but poor maintenance or hairline cracks often lead to bacterial infiltration, complicating the filtration process. A more positive approach to the disinfection of drinking water thus is desirable.

21.3 DISINFECTION

Disinfection is the most important health-related water treatment, because it destroys microorganisms that can cause disease in humans. Disinfection is required of water supply systems that rely on surface water or groundwater sources under the influence of surface water. Initially, primary disinfection achieves the desired level of microorganism kill (inactivation); then secondary disinfection maintains a disinfectant residual in the treated water that prevents microorganism regrowth.

Although chlorination has become the standard approach to removing harmful organisms from water, there are alternatives: nanofiltration, ultraviolet (UV) radiation (unsuitable for water with high turbidity because it cannot easily penetrate), bromine, iodine, ozone, and heat treatment,

among others. Chlorine continues to disinfect after the initial application. It is this continuing secondary disinfection that has made it universally relied on, despite dangers such as that posed by deadly chlorine gas. Although chlorine affects the taste and odor of water, it is also effective in removing less desirable tastes and odors. Unfortunately, chlorine can react with organic materials in water to form halogenated by-products. It is easier to either remove the organic materials before treatment, or to use another disinfectant strategy, than to try to remove these halogenated by-products after chlorine treatment.

See the National Drinking Water Clearinghouse, *Tech Brief* (June 1996), *Disinfection*, for details on the methods presented in Subsections 21.3(a) through 21.3(d).

(a) Chlorination

Factors that affect chlorine's ability to disinfect include:

1. *Chlorine concentration.* The higher the concentration, the faster and more complete the rate of disinfection.
2. *Contact time.* The longer the chlorine contacts the organisms in water, the more complete the disinfection. At a minimum, 0.4 mg/L of chlorine should contact water 30 minutes before use.
3. *Water temperature.* The higher the temperature during contact, the more complete the disinfection.
4. *pH.* The lower the pH, the more effective the disinfection.

There are three common forms in which chlorine is used to disinfect water supplies. *Chlorine gas* is stored in a cylinder (Fig. 21.4) as a liquid under high pressure and is released (as a gas) by a regulator to an injector attached to a water pipe or tank. The injector passes highly pressurized water through a venturi orifice, creating a vacuum that draws the chlorine into the water stream.

Sodium hypochlorite solution is easier to handle than deadly chlorine gas but is very corrosive and decomposes rather quickly. It should be stored in a cool, dark, dry area for no more than a month. *Hypochlorinators* automatically pump (or inject) a sodium hypochlorite solution into water. They are usually no larger than the pumps used in small

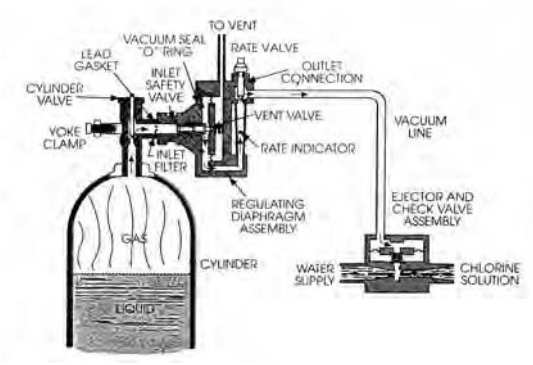


Fig. 21.4 *Cylinder-mounted chlorinator for automatic disinfection of supply water. (From National Drinking Water Clearinghouse.* Tech Brief *[June 1996],* Disinfection*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Washington, DC.)*

water systems. Some hypochlorinators are specially designed for low and fluctuating water pressures or for use where electricity is not available.

Solid calcium hypochlorite is a white solid containing 65% available chlorine that dissolves easily in water. It is corrosive, with a strong odor, but very stable and can be stored for up to a year. However, it readily absorbs moisture, forming chlorine gas; also, reactions between calcium hypochlorite and organic materials (wood, cloth, petroleum products) can generate enough heat to cause a fire or explosion. Again, hypochlorinators are used to deliver the disinfectant to water.

(b) Chloramine

This is generated on site by adding ammonia to water containing chlorine or when water containing ammonia is chlorinated. This is a weaker disinfectant against viruses or protozoa than the chlorination processes, but it produces fewer disinfection by-products. It is most often used as a secondary rather than a primary disinfectant. Again, hypochlorinators are used to inject chlorine, after which ammonia is added.

(c) Ozonation

This was first used in full-scale drinking water treatment in 1906. It is a powerful oxidizing and disinfecting agent, destroying most bacteria, viruses, and other pathogenic organisms. It requires a shorter contact time and dosage than chlorine and leaves no chlorine taste. Ozone is formed by passing

dry air (or pure oxygen) through a system of high-voltage electrodes. It is an unstable gas and must be generated on site. When ozone reacts with an organic, it produces oxygen and an oxidized form of the organic. Ozone not used in this process quickly decays to oxygen.

In the United States, ozone is commonly used in cooling tower water treatment (Fig. 21.5), to effectively deal with *Legionella pneumophila* and control algae and scale growth that can greatly reduce cooling efficiency. Ozone is also used in food processing, waste water cleanup, smoke removal, swimming pools and spas, bottled water, and pulp and paper bleaching.

Equipment includes an ozone generator, a contactor, and a destruction unit, plus instrumentation and controls. Operation and maintenance are relatively complex; electricity accounts for 26% to 43% of the operating costs for small systems. Because it acts only as a primary disinfectant, a secondary disinfectant (often chlorine) is usually required.

(d) Ultraviolet Radiation

Special lamps are used within a reactor (Fig. 21.6), whose radiation disrupts the genetic material of the cells of organisms, making them unable to reproduce. Although effective against bacteria and viruses, UV radiation does not inactivate either *Giardia* or *Cryptosporidium* cysts. Otherwise, it is an effective primary disinfectant system, requiring a short contact time and without halogenated by-products. Yet again, a secondary disinfectant system is usually necessary. This system is not suitable for water that contains high levels of suspended solids, turbidity, color, or soluble organic matter.

(e) Nanofiltration

These filter membranes start with pore sizes of 0.2 to 0.3 micron and are then dipped into a polymer that leaves a thin film, decreasing the pore size to 1 nanometer. This pore size removes bacteria, viruses, pesticides, and organic material. It also gives the membranes an affinity for calcium, contributing to water softening. However, it also means that the membranes need periodic acid cleaning to remove the calcium deposits. Adding phosphates to nanofiltered water reduces its capacity to dissolve lead.

With such extremely small pore sizes, this process requires very high water pressures, in turn requiring energy. Yet again, a secondary disinfectant system is usually necessary.

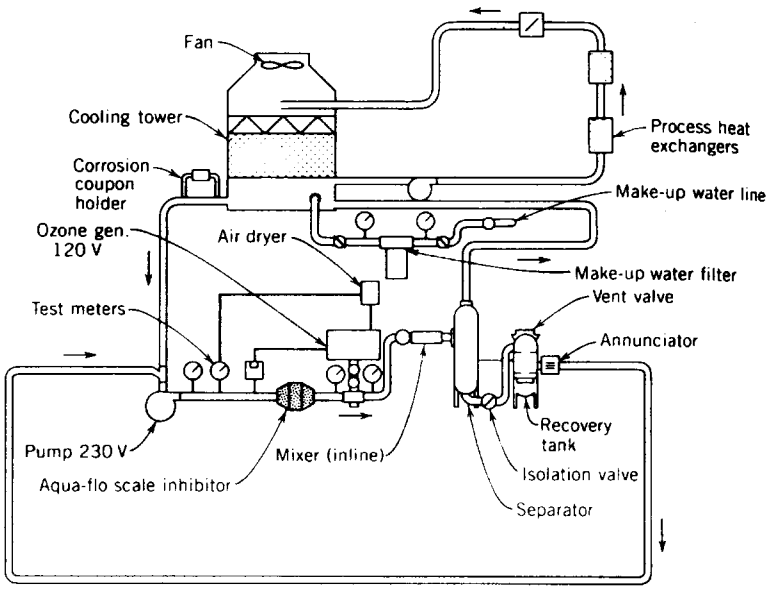


Fig. 21.5 *Recycled cooling tower water is treated by an ozonator, a magnetic descaler, and a filtration system. This controls scale formation, algae and slime, corrosion, and sludge buildup. (Courtesy of Aqua-Flo, Inc., Baltimore, MD.)*

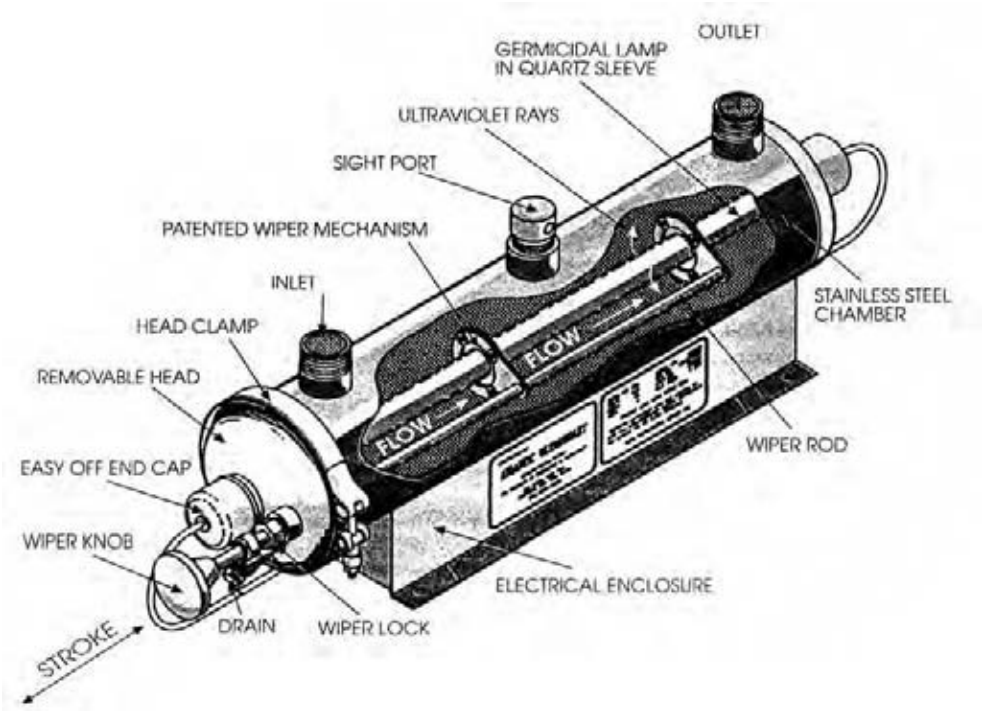


Fig. 21.6 *Ultraviolet water purifier, effective against bacteria and viruses (but not against* Giardia *or* Cryptosporidium *cysts). (Courtesy of Atlantic Ultraviolet Corporation, Hauppauge, NY.)*

21.4 OTHER WATER TREATMENTS

(a) Aeration (Oxidation)

This simple process can improve the taste and color of water and help remove iron and manganese. In aeration, as much of the water's surface as possible is exposed to air. The methods used are rich in aesthetic possibilities—the spraying of water into air, the fall of a turbulent stream of water over a spillway, and *flowforms*, sculptural waterfalls designed to carry water in a rhythmical, pulsating, figure-eight pattern. The Real Goods headquarters in Hopland, California, features some of these water features (Fig. 21.7) and water recycling.

To guard against contamination, these processes are often enclosed; if exposed, they must be kept clean. For aeration within tanks, water is passed through a series of perforated plates in streams or droplets.

Aeration improves the flat taste of distilled water and cistern water by adding oxygen. It also oxidizes iron or manganese, which then can more easily be removed by filtration. It also removes odors caused by hydrogen sulfide and algae.

Because aeration raises the level of dissolved oxygen in water, it should be avoided as a treatment when corrosion is a threat.

(b) Corrosion Control

It is important to control corrosion both to keep water systems operating freely and to prevent corrosive water from increasing the concentration of hazardous materials (as from copper pipes). Corrosion also imparts a taste and/or odor to water that is objectionable. Corrosion is a slow degradation of a metal by a flow of electric current from the metal to its surroundings. Some factors involved in corrosion control are:

1. *Acidity.* The more acid (low pH, less than 6.0), the more corrosive the water.
2. *Conductivity.* As dissolved mineral salts increase the water's conductivity, they encourage the flow of the electrical current of corrosion.



(a) (b)

Fig. 21.7 *The Real Goods Solar Living Center at Hopland, California, illustrates photovoltaic (PV) power, passive solar heating, daylighting, and passive cooling, as well as creative water recycling. Water from on-site irrigation ponds (a) is pumped by PV to a tank on a small hill, and (b) water is also dispersed into the air from the Agave Fountain for evaporative cooling. (Landscape design by Land and Place.) (Photos © 2009 Alison Kwok, all rights reserved.)*

3. *Oxygen content.* Dissolved oxygen destroys the thin protective hydrogen film on immersed metals, thus promoting corrosion.
4. *Carbon dioxide content.* Carbon dioxide forms carbonic acid, which attacks metal surfaces.
5. *Water temperature.* Increased temperature increases corrosion.
6. *Lower flow rates.* Reduced turbulence means reduced erosion of the protective layers that form on the inner surfaces of pipes.

The products of corrosion often contribute to scale formation. Scale then lines surfaces, eventually clogging openings.

See the National Drinking Water Clearinghouse, *Tech Brief* (February 1997), *Corrosion Control*, for details on this subject.

Acid neutralizers can be installed on water supplies with low pH; their function is often combined with those of hypochlorinators. Typically, neutralizing solutions are mixtures of lime, soda ash, and water. However, pH adjustment should be made just before water delivery, *after* treatment processes such as coagulation and disinfection.

Corrosion inhibitors cause protective coatings to form on pipes. They are commonly fed into the water, as are other chemicals. Inorganic phosphates, sodium silicates, and mixtures of phosphates and silicates are the more commonly used additives.

Other corrosion control strategies include commercial pipe coatings/linings, installing dielectric or insulating unions (to avoid complications from dissimilar pipe metals), and avoiding metal piping and fixtures altogether.

(c) Softening

Water hardness is caused primarily by calcium and magnesium deposits; when they are removed, water will be soft. Where water hardness is mild enough to affect only laundering, cisterns may be used to collect

soft rainwater to use for washing clothes. Where water hardness produces scale in pipes and water-heating appliances, and cisterns are not feasible, water-softening equipment is used. Demineralization of water is accomplished with one of three methods: ion exchange, reverse osmosis, or electrodialysis.

See the National Drinking Water Clearinghouse, *Tech Brief* (May 1997), *Ion Exchange and Demineralization*, for details on the following methods of treatment.

Ion exchange is popular for small systems, and is effective not only with hardness ions but also with radionuclides. It can be used with fluctuating flow rates but requires pretreatment of most surface waters, and its waste is highly concentrated (requiring careful disposal). A large variety of resins are used for the exchange medium, each effective for specific contaminants.

On the exchange medium's charged surface, one (contaminant) ion is exchanged for another (regenerant) ion. Eventually, saturation occurs; the contaminants are flushed and the medium is regenerated—once per day is the common shortest cycle. Sodium chloride is often used to regenerate the exchange medium, resulting in a rather high sodium residual—an undesirable development for people on low-sodium diets. Another regenerant material is potassium chloride.

Equipment includes prefiltration, ion exchange, disinfection, storage, and distribution elements; in smaller systems, single-package units incorporate all of these processes.

Reverse osmosis (RO), like ion exchange, is popular for small systems and can be used with fluctuating flow rates, but it requires pretreatment of most surface waters, and its waste is also highly concentrated. RO is effective not only with hardness ions but also with radium, natural organic substances, pesticides, and microbiological contaminants. RO units used in series can remove an even higher percentage of contaminants.

An inert, semipermeable membrane has a high-pressure supply water on one side; as the pressure slowly forces water through this filtering membrane, most of the contaminants are removed. Water must be used to flush the membrane so that mineral buildup is avoided; this produces a brine requiring careful disposal. Membranes are available in varying types and pore sizes; they are prone to fouling.

Commercial RO units are available in sizes ranging from a 1 gpm (3.9 L/m) water delivery rate (using two membranes and a 3-hp [2.2-kW] motor, requiring 4.5 gpm [17 L/m] feedwater for a 22% recovery rate) to a water delivery rate of 12.5 gpm (47.3 L/m) (using 12 membranes and a 15-hp [11.2-kW] motor, requiring 19.2 gpm [72.8 L/m] for a 65% recovery rate).

Electrodialysis effectively removes fluoride and nitrate, and can also remove barium, cadmium, and selenium. It is relatively insensitive to levels of flow and of total dissolved solids but has an enormous appetite for water. From 10% to 80% of the total water supplied to an RO filtering unit is delivered to the user; the remainder is a waste stream. It also requires a higher level of pretreatment.

In this process, membranes adjacent to the inflowing stream are charged (either positively or negatively), attracting counter-ions to these membranes. The membranes allow either positively or negatively charged ions to pass through; thus, the ions leave the inflow stream and enter the waste streams (on the other side of each membrane). High water pressure and a source of dc power are needed in this process.

Membranes can become fouled when the pores are clogged by salt precipitation or blocked by suspended particulates. For either of these water conditions, pretreatment is essential. Reversing the charge on the membranes, *electrodialysis reversal*, helps to flush the attached ions from the membrane surface and can extend the time between membrane cleanings.

(d) Nuisance Control

Some organisms may not be injurious to health but can multiply so rapidly that piping or filters become clogged, or the water's appearance, odor, and taste are affected. This situation is most common with surface water sources, and it is within surface reservoirs that these treatments are most often applied. Algae growths, the most prevalent nuisance, can usually be controlled by applying copper sulfate (blue stone or blue vitriol) to the water body. Sudden and massive algae kills can have adverse impacts on other life forms within the water, because the decomposing algae rob the water of oxygen. As a further precaution, stored water should be shielded from sunlight whenever possible.

Cooling towers present an especially difficult water treatment problem. The murky water with high turbidity and a high bacterial count leads to

clogged passages (thus inefficient performance), deteriorated surfaces, and the growth of potentially lethal bacteria (*L. pneumophila*). As a result, enormous quantities of water are commonly passed once-through a cooling tower, and then dumped into storm sewers rather than being recycled in a closed system. (As late as 1989, San Francisco's City Hall was reported to be using 96,000 gallons [363,000 L] per summer day for once-through cooling—in a year of drought.) To treat cooling tower water successfully, a method is needed for microbial control, removing organics, and precipitating inorganics. Ozonation (Fig. 21.5) is a common answer to this widespread treatment problem.



Fig. 21.8 *A solar still can be used to provide a small daily quantity of pure water; this installation serves a laboratory. (Courtesy of McCracken Solar Co., Alturas, CA.)*

(e) Fluoridation

A heated controversy continues over the addition of fluoride to drinking water. The advantage of fluoridation is that children who drink fluoridated water during the most active stages of tooth development have lower rates of tooth decay. Because everyone drinks water, all children (and adults) benefit, not just those who can afford fluoride pills or prescription toothpaste. Opponents of fluoridation suggest that because sugar is a leading cause of tooth decay in children, sugar, rather than water, should be fluoridated. Small water systems can be equipped with fluoridation units. However, fluoride levels in the water supply must be carefully monitored. In amounts *above* those used in water treatment, fluoride is toxic and can cause mottled teeth.

(f) Distillation

This is a simple, low-technology approach to purification that produces the equivalent of bottled water for drinking, cooking, and laboratory uses. In one process, it promises the removal of suspended solids, salts, bacteria, and (apparently) halogenated hydrocarbons. When water pollution is extreme, as in the case of sea (salt) water, distillation may be the best treatment. Water is heated to encourage evaporation. As the water turns to vapor, virtually all pollutants are left behind. When this vapor encounters a cooler surface, it condenses, and pure water (although flat in taste) can be collected from this surface.

Any heat source can be used in the distilling of water; solar stills (Fig. 21.8) are gaining in popularity because the energy used is free. Solar distillation of cistern water is an autonomous approach. In semiarid, rather sunny climates, a solar still should produce about ½ gal per square foot (4 L/m^2) of collector surface area per day. This rate of production suggests that only the water used directly for drinking or other specialized purposes is usually feasible for distillation. Another factor to consider is that the cleaning of the still is generally accomplished by flushing it with twice as much water as was delivered. If not excessively brackish, this flush water could be used for irrigation or other non-potable-quality tasks.

21.5 WATER SOURCES

This section focuses on the equipment used to capture and store groundwater from wells. Other water sources are less often used for smaller systems, either because they require much more extensive treatment (surface water from lakes or rivers) or because they provide water intermittently (cisterns). A multistage treatment (flocculation, sedimentation, etc.) may be inappropriate for small water systems that receive only occasional maintenance. Cisterns were discussed in Chapter 20. Another increasingly important source of city water, the treated effluent of sewage treatment plants, is discussed in Chapter 22.

(a) Wells

Farms and remote housing developments usually have private water systems. In rural and suburban areas where the progress of building is faster than the development of municipal water supplies, private sources may also be sought. Driven or drilled

wells are preferable; water from these sources usually has at least the advantages of purity, coolness, and freedom from turbidity, odor, and unpleasant taste—any of which may be encountered in addition to either acidity or hardness.

Bored wells, which are dug with earth augers, are usually less than 100 ft (30 m) deep. They are used when the earth to be bored through is boulder-free and will not cave in. The diameter range is 2 to 30 in. (50 to 760 mm). The bored well is then cased with metal, vitrified tile, or concrete.

Driven wells are the simplest and usually the least expensive type. A steel drive-well point is fitted on the end of pipe sections and driven into the earth. The drive point is usually 1¼ to 2 in. (32 to 50 mm) in diameter. The materials and design of drive-well points vary according to the expected characteristics of the earth in which the well is driven. First, a pilot hole is bored (frequently with a simple hand auger), and the drive-well point and pipe sections are lowered into it. Then the well is driven to a point well below the water table.

Jetted wells require a source of water and a pressure pump. A washing well point is supplied with water under pressure; this loosens the earth and allows the point and pipe to penetrate.

Drilled wells require more elaborate equipment of several types, depending upon the geology of the site. The percussion (or cable-tool) method involves the raising and dropping of a heavy drill bit and stem. Having thus been pulverized, the earth being drilled is mixed with water to form a slurry, which is periodically removed. As drilling proceeds, a casing is also lowered (except when drilling through rock).

Rotary drilling methods (either hydraulic or pneumatic) utilize a cutting bit at the lower end of a drill pipe; a drilling fluid (or pressurized air) is constantly pumped to the cutting bit to aid in the removal of particles of earth, which are then brought to the surface. After the drill pipe is withdrawn, a casing is lowered into position.

Another method is the down-the-hole pneumatic (air) hammer method, which combines the percussion effect with a rotary drill bit.

Local well drillers, who usually use the method most suited to the prevailing geology of a region, can offer useful advice about well construction methods. When clients plan to build in a remote location, the architect and engineer should advise them about water problems. Quality-corrective measures can always be taken and pumping equipment purchased, but the amount of water that can be obtained from the ground, and the depth and cost of wells, are important considerations. There are some problem areas where wells several hundred feet in depth will yield as little as 5 gpm (0.3 L/s) or nothing. The cost of drilling a number of exploratory wells may be excessive. Unfortunately, when such difficulties occur, there is often no easy solution. Conferences with neighboring owners, state and federal geologists, and local well drillers can all be helpful.

A low-yield well can be combined with storage tanks so that a pump can run all night, slowly filling tanks to meet the next day's demands.

(b) Pumps

The Hydraulic Institute, a nonprofit trade association of pump manufacturers, has several recommendations for reducing the amount of electricity consumed by pumps. Some of these apply to small water supply systems.

1. Design systems with lower capacity and total head requirements. (Using larger pipe sizes and minimizing the elevation of tanks are examples.)
2. Avoid excessive capacity. It is typically less expensive to add pumping capacity later on if needs increase. Operating a smaller pump closer to its capacity saves energy compared to a larger pump operating well under its capacity.
3. Select the most efficient pump type and size, even if its first cost is greater; life-cycle costs are likely to be lower.
4. Use two (or more) smaller pumps instead of one large one so that excess pump capacity can be turned off.
5. Maintain pumps and system components in virtually new condition to avoid efficiency loss.

Three common types of pumps used in well water supply are the positive displacement, the centrifugal, and the jet pump.

Positive Displacement Pumps. There are two principal types of positive displacement pumps. In a *reciprocating pump*, a plunger moves back and forth within a cylinder equipped with check valves. The cylinder is best located near or below the groundwater level. Water enters the cylinder through an initial check valve (which allows flow in only one

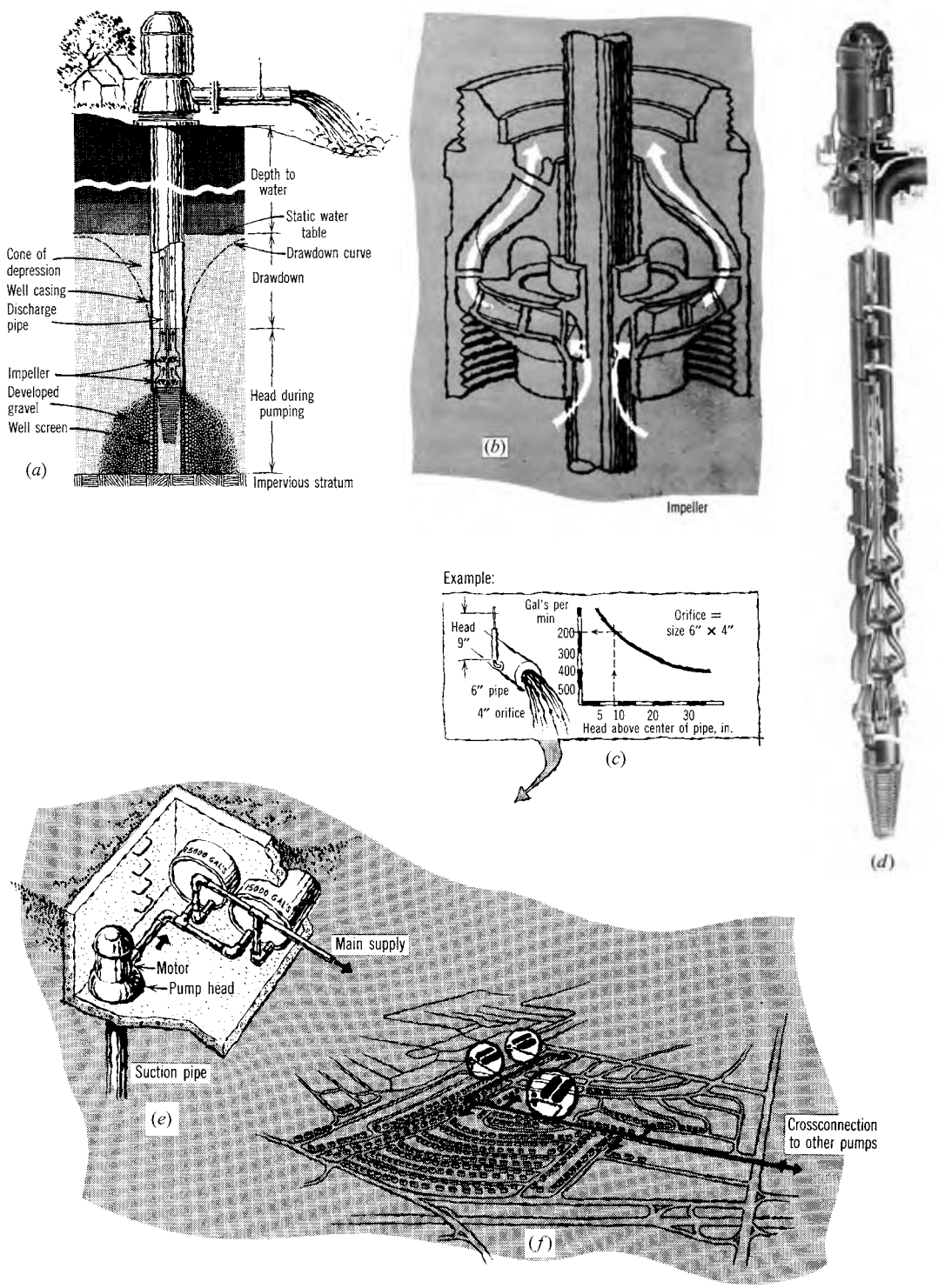


Fig. 21.9 *(a) A turbine well-pump. (b) Its operation. (c) Measurement of its capacity. (d) A Jacuzzi multistage lineshaft turbine well-pump. (Jacuzzi Bros., Inc.) (e, f) Its use in supplying a small community with groundwater. Capacities of turbine pumps range from 50 to 16,000 gpm (3 to 1010 L/s). (By permission of* Progressive Architecture.*)*

direction). As the plunger moves toward this check valve, the water is forced through the second check valve, located within the plunger itself. Then, as the piston returns to its original position, the water is forced upward toward the surface.

A *rotary pump* has a helical or spiral rotor—a turning vertical shaft within a rubber sleeve. As the rotor turns, it traps water between it and the sleeve, thus forcing the water to the upper end of the rotor.

Centrifugal Pumps. This type of pump contains an impeller mounted on a rotating shaft. The rotating impeller increases the water's velocity while forcing the water into a casing, thus converting the water's velocity into higher pressure. Each impeller and casing is called a *stage*; many stages can be combined in a multistage pump. The number of stages depends upon the pressure needed to operate the water supply system, as well as the height to which the water must be raised. The most common centrifugal pumps are those used in deep wells.

The *turbine pump* has a vertical turbine located below groundwater level and a driving motor located higher up, usually over the well casing at grade. A long shaft is thus required between the motor and the turbine. Substantial head clearances for this shaft's removal may be required. Figure 21.9 shows a turbine pump installation for a small community on Long Island, New York. The water is taken from the ground by multistage turbine pumps at depths of several hundred feet (a hundred or so meters). It is delivered to submerged hydropneumatic tanks at a pressure of about 80 psi (about 550 kPa). As water is required in the houses, the air under pressure in the upper part of the tanks forces water through the mains.

Submersible pumps are designed so that the motor can be submerged along with the turbine (Fig. 21.10). The lengthy pump shaft is thus eliminated.

Jet (or Ejector) Pumps. In a jet pump, a venturi tube is added to the centrifugal pump. A portion of the water that is discharged from a centrifugal pump at the wellhead is forced down to a nozzle and the venturi tube (Fig. 21.11). The lower pressure within the venturi tube induces well water to flow in, and the velocity of the water from the nozzle pushes it up toward the centrifugal pump, which can then lift it more easily by suction.

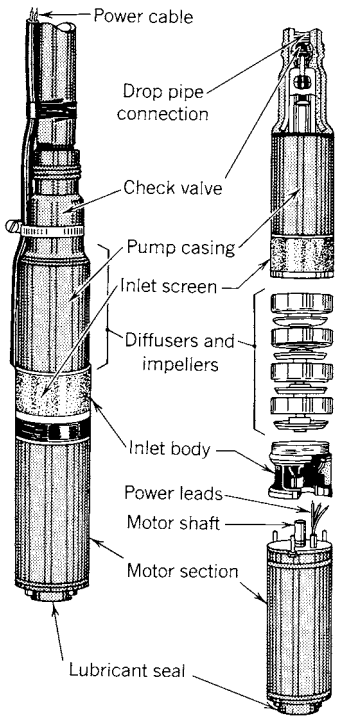


Fig. 21.10 *Submersible pump (centrifugal type) in exploded view. (From the U.S. EPA's* Manual of Individual Water Supply Systems*, 1975.)*

Pump Selection. Pump variations and characteristics are summarized in Table 21.4. The type of pump selected depends upon many factors, including the rate of yield of a well, the daily flow (and maximum instantaneous flow rate) needed by the users, the size of the storage or pressure tank used, and the total operating pressure against which the pump works (including the height to which water must be raised within the well). First cost, maintenance, and reliability are also factors, as is the energy used by the pump. In cold climates, a pump and water supply system must be protected from freezing.

Of these factors, the two critical selection determinants are the flow rate (volume per minute or per hour to be delivered) and the total pressure (or *head*). The flow rate depends upon the number of fixtures to be served (Fig. 21.12). The total pressure (Fig. 21.13) includes the suction lift, static head, and friction loss plus the pressure head. This relationship will be explained in detail in Section 21.11.



(a)



(c)



(b)

CHOOSE THE CORRECT JH FROM THESE CHARTS
DEEP WELL (Down to 120 feet)

The JH in the ½, ¾, 1 and 1½ horsepower rating, matched with the appropriate injector and pipe sizes, will pump this amount of water at the indicated lift or depth to the water in the well:

If suction lift or depth to water is	JH ½ HORSEPOWER	JH ¾ HORSEPOWER	JH 1 HORSEPOWER	JH 1½ HORSEPOWER
	Produces these gallons per hour between 20-50 lbs. discharge pressure		Produces these gallons per hour between 30-60 lbs. discharge pressure	
30 feet	795 G.P.H.	990 G.P.H.	1140 G.P.H.	1620 G.P.H.
40	680	875	1000	1470
50	575	735	875	1300
60	445	630	745	1200
70	360	495	620	920
80	310	385	530	820
90	255	315	435	700
100	220	275	340	590
110	195	240	295	540
120		205	250	480

(d)

Fig. 21.11 *Details of a deep-well jet pump. (a) Photograph of a multistage jet pump housing and equipment. At the top is the on/off electrical switch activated by pressure settings. It controls the direct-connected electric motor to the left. Impellers are enclosed in the pump housing at the right. Circulating connections to and from the jet can be seen to the right, the pump discharge at the top. The pump can be set to operate up to 100 psi (690 kPa). (b) Well casing and circulating lines. Jet element can be seen at the bottom of the left-hand (larger) pipe. (c) Cutaway section of the pump. (d) Pumping capacity in gph under various conditions and discharge pressure ranges of 20 to 50 psi and 30 to 60 psi. (Jacuzzi Bros., Inc.) (e) Jet-type (also known as venturi or ejector) deep-well pump and storage tank for a house or small building (for well lifts greater than 25 ft [7.6 m]). Reduced pressure at (f), the jet nozzle, induces the flow of groundwater into the circulated flow.*

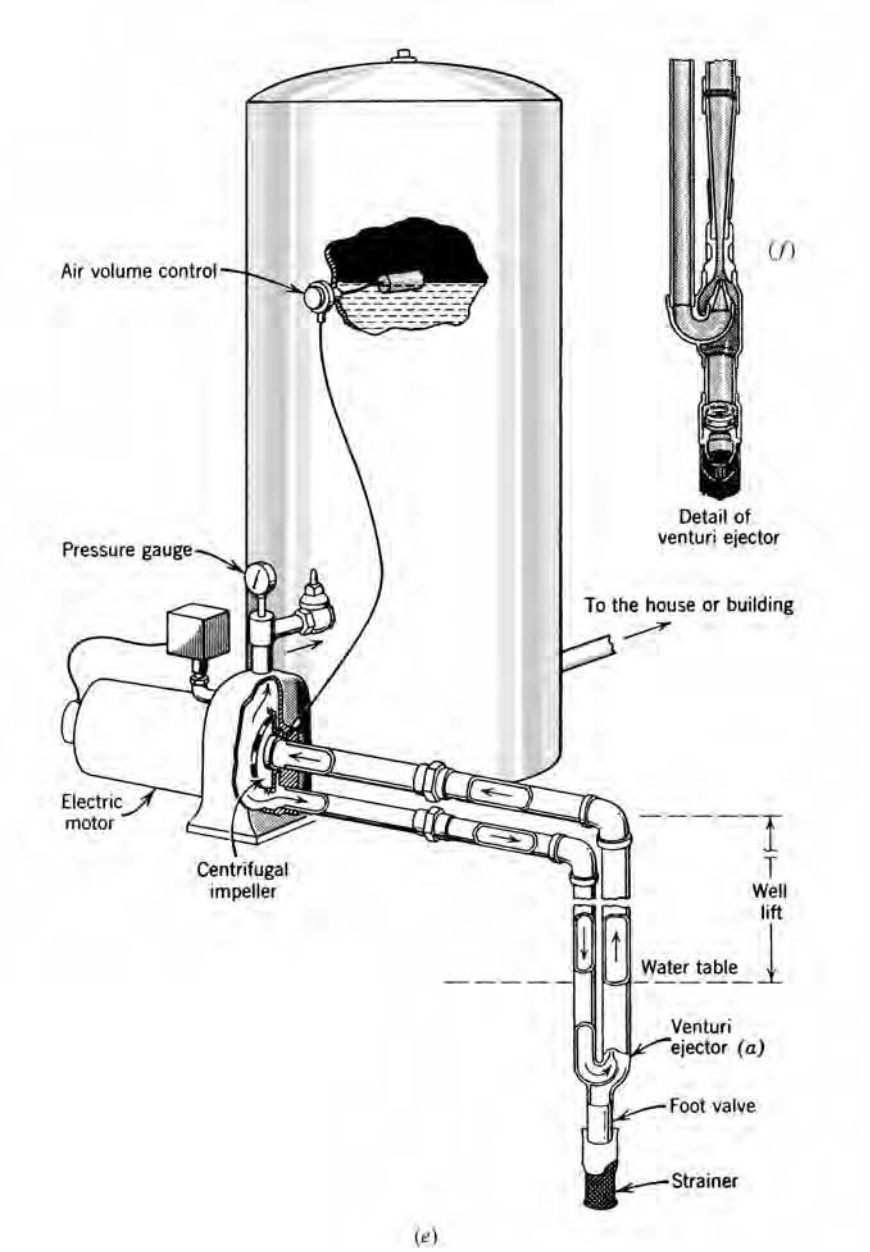


Fig. 21.11 *(Continued)*

(c) Pressure Tanks

Serving also for water storage, these tanks are frequently used both to maintain a constant pressure on a pump-supplied water system and to allow for temporary peaks in water supply rates that exceed the capacity of the pump. (Elevated tanks offer one alternative to pressure tanks, cisterns another—although the latter usually are not located high enough to provide pressure to the supply system.)

Pressure tanks are often housed in outbuildings, along with the pump and any water treatment equipment (Fig. 21.13). The temperature of the out-

TABLE 21.4 Pumps for Water Supply

Type of Pump	Practical Suction Lift[a]	Usual Well-Pumping Depth	Usual Pressure Heads	Advantages	Disadvantages	Remarks
POSITIVE DISPLACEMENT						
1. Reciprocating (a) Shallow well (b) Deep well	22–25 ft (6.7–7.6 m) 22–25 ft (6.7–7.6 m)	22–25 ft (6.7–7.6 m) Up to 600 ft (183 m)	100–200 ft (30–61 m) Up to 600 (183 m) above cylinder	1. Positive action. 2. Discharge against variable heads. 3. Pumps water containing sand and silt. 4. Especially adapted to low capacity and high lifts.	1. Pulsating discharge. 2. Subject to vibration and noise. 3. Maintenance cost may be high. 4. May cause destructive pressure if operated against closed valve.	1. Best suited for capacities of 5–25 gpm (0.3–1.6 L/s) against moderate to high heads. 2. Adaptable to hand operation. 3. Can be installed in very-small-diameter wells (2-in. [50-mm] casing). 4. Pump must be set directly over well (deep well only).
2. Rotary a. Shallow well (gear type)	22 ft (6.7 m)	22 ft (6.7 m)	50–250 ft (15–76 m)	1. Positive action 2. Discharge constant under variable heads. 3. Efficient operation.	1. Subject to rapid wear if water contains sand or silt. 2. Wear of gears reduces efficiency.	
b. Deep well (helical rotary type)	Usually submerged	50–500 ft (15–152 m)	100–500 ft (30–152 m)	1. Same as shallow well rotary. 2. Only one moving pump device in well.	1. Same as shallow well rotary except no gear wear.	1. A cutless rubber stator increases life of pump. Flexible drive coupling has been weak point in pump. Best adapted for low capacity and high heads.
CENTRIFUGAL						
1. Shallow well a. Straight centrifugal (single stage)	20 ft max. (6 m)	10–20 ft (3–6 m)	100–150 ft (30–46 m)	1. Smooth, even flow. 2. Pumps water containing sand and silt. 3. Pressure on system is even and free from shock. 4. Low-starting torque. 5. Usually reliable and good service life.	1. Loses prime easily. 2. Efficiency depends on operating under design heads and speed.	1. Very efficient pump for capacities above 60 gpm (3.8 L/s) and heads up to about 150 ft (46 m).
b. Regenerative vane turbine type (single impeller)	28 ft max. (8.5 m)	28 ft (8.5 m)	100–200 ft (30–61 m)	1. Same as straight centrifugal except not suitable for pumping water containing sand or silt. 2. They are self-priming.	1. Same as straight centrifugal except maintains priming easily.	1. Reduction in pressure with increased capacity not as severe as straight centrifugal.

(cont'd)

TABLE 21.4 Pumps for Water Supply (*Continued*)

Type of Pump	Practical Suction Lift[a]	Usual Well-Pumping Depth	Usual Pressure Heads	Advantages	Disadvantages	Remarks
CENTRIFUGAL (*Continued*)						
2. Deep well a. Vertical line shaft turbine (multistage)	Impellers submerged	50–300 ft (15–91 m)	100–800 ft (30–245 m)	1. Same as shallow well turbine. 2. All electrical components are accessible above ground.	1. Efficiency depends on operating under design head and speed. 2. Requires straight well large enough for turbine bowls and housing. 3. Lubrication and alignment of shaft critical. 4. Abrasion from sand.	
b. Submersible turbine (multistage)	Pump and motor submerged	50–400 ft (15–122 m)	50–400 ft (15–122 m)	1. Same as shallow well turbine. 2. Easy to frost-proof installation. 3. Short pump shaft to motor. 4. Quiet operation. 5. Well straightness not critical.	1. Repair to motor or pump requires pulling from well. 2. Scaling of electrical equipment from water vapor critical. 3. Abrasion from sand.	1. 3500 RPM models, although popular because of smaller diameters or greater capacities, are more vulnerable to wear and failure from sand and other causes.
JET						
1. Shallow well	15–20 ft (4.6–6.0 m) below ejector	Up to 15–20 ft (4.6–6.0 m) below ejector	80–150 ft (24–46 m)	1. High capacity at low heads. 2. Simple in operation. 3. Does not have to be installed over the well. 4. No moving parts in the well.	1. Capacity reduces as lift increases. 2. Air in suction or return line will stop pumping.	
2. Deep well	15–20 ft (4.6–6.0 m) below ejector	25–120 ft (7.6–37 m) 200 ft max. (61 m max)	80–150 ft (24–46 m) 2. Well straightness not critical.	1. Same as shallow well jet. 2. Lower efficiency, especially at greater lifts.	1. Same as shallow well jet.	1. The amount of water returned to ejector increases with increased lift—50% of total water pumped at 50-ft (15-m) lift and 75% at 100-ft (30-m) lift.

Source: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, *Manual of Individual Water Supply Systems,* 1975. (SI units added by authors of this book.)

[a]Practical suction lift at sea level. Reduce lift 1 ft (0.3 m) for each 1000 ft (305 m) above sea level.

building must be kept above freezing, and its roof or walls should be removable to allow for replacement of parts over time. One type of pressure-storage tank is shown in Fig. 21.14.

The capacity of pressure tanks usually is small in comparison to the daily *total* water consumption; they provide short-term responses to peak flow demands. As a general rule, the pressure tank should be sized to deliver about 10 times the pump's capacity in gpm (L/m). For a typical residence, allow 10 to 15 gal (38 to 57 L) tank capacity per person served.

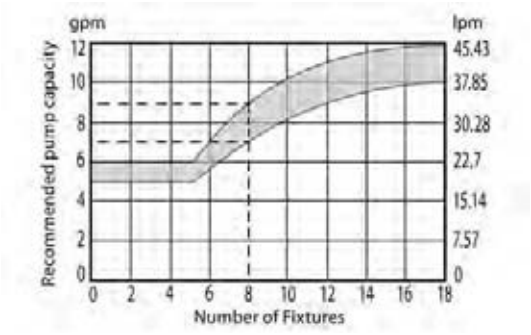


Fig. 21.12 *The relationship between the recommended flow-rate capacity of a pump and the number of domestic plumbing fixtures it supplies. For details, see Section 21.9(a). (Redrawn with SI units by Nathan Majeski; from the U.S. EPA's* Manual of Individual Water Supply Systems, *1976.)*

For larger installations, the size of a pressure-storage tank can be calculated by

$$Q = \frac{Qm}{1 - \frac{P_1}{P_2}}$$

where

Q = tank volume (gal [L])

Qm = 15 minutes of storage at peak usage rate (gal [L])

P_1 = minimum allowable operating pressure (psi [kPa]) plus atmospheric pressure (14.7 psi [101 kPa])

P_2 = maximum allowable operating pressure (psi [kPa]) plus atmospheric pressure (14.7 psi [101 kPa])

The ranges of allowable pressures are discussed in Section 21.9. An alternative tank-sizing procedure is shown in Table 21.5.

EXAMPLE 21.1 An office building in a remote location has a water supply system served by a pump and well. The peak demand is 50 gpm (3.15 L/s).

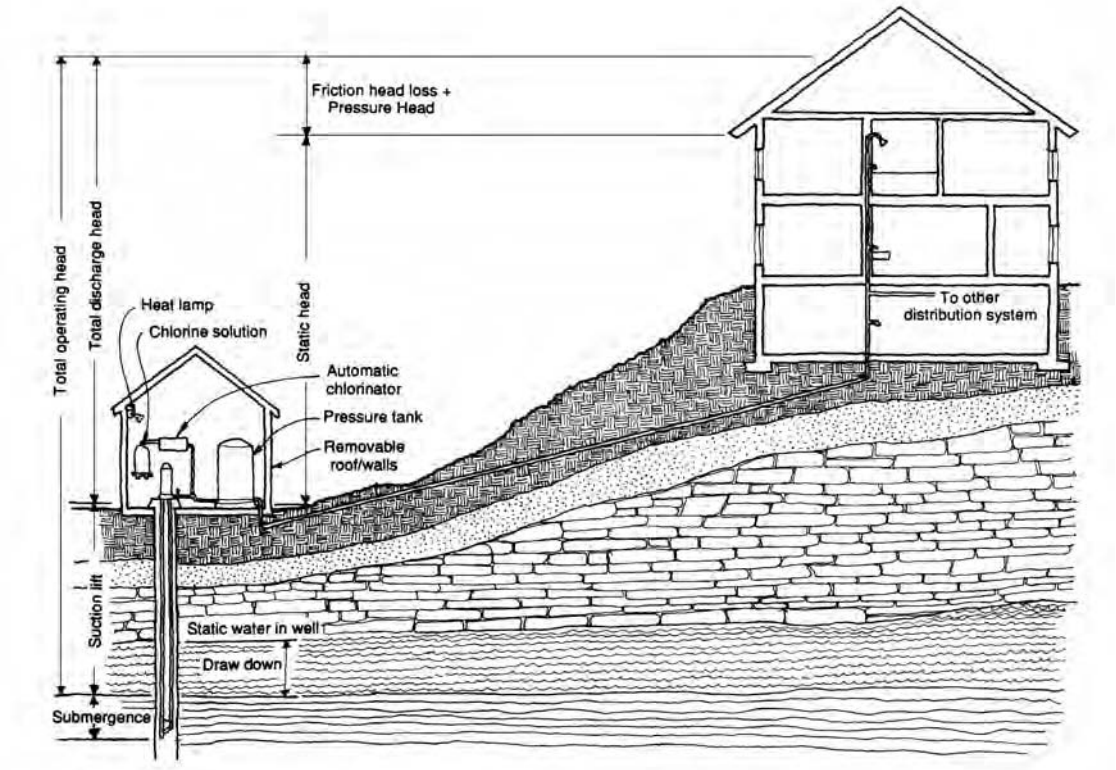


Fig. 21.13 *The components of the total operating pressure (or head), a critical determinant of pump size. For details, see Section 21.9(a). The pumphouse is usually a separate structure with water treatment and storage components. (From the U.S. EPA's* Manual of Individual Water Supply Systems, *1975.)*



Fig. 21.14 *Small pressure-storage tanks are installed primarily to keep a water supply system at constant pressure. These Hydrocel models are small (8½ in. in diameter, 27 in. long [216 mm in diameter, 686 mm long]), so they can be installed almost anywhere along the supply system. (Courtesy of Jacuzzi Bros., Inc.)*

The fixtures will operate at a minimum of 50 psi (345 kPa); a maximum of 70 psi (483 kPa) should not be exceeded. Therefore,

$$Qm = 15 \text{ min} \times 50 \text{ gpm} = 750 \text{ gal}$$

$$(15 \text{ min} \times 60 \text{ s/min} \times 3.15 \text{ L/s} = 2835 \text{ L})$$

and

$$Q = \frac{Qm}{1 - \frac{P_1}{P_2}} = \frac{750}{1 - \frac{50+14.7}{70+14.7}} = \frac{750}{1 - 0.76}$$

$$= 3125 \text{ gal}$$

$$\left[= \frac{2835}{\left(1 - \left(345 + \frac{101}{483} + 101\right)\right)} = \text{apx. } 12{,}000 \text{ L} \right]$$

■

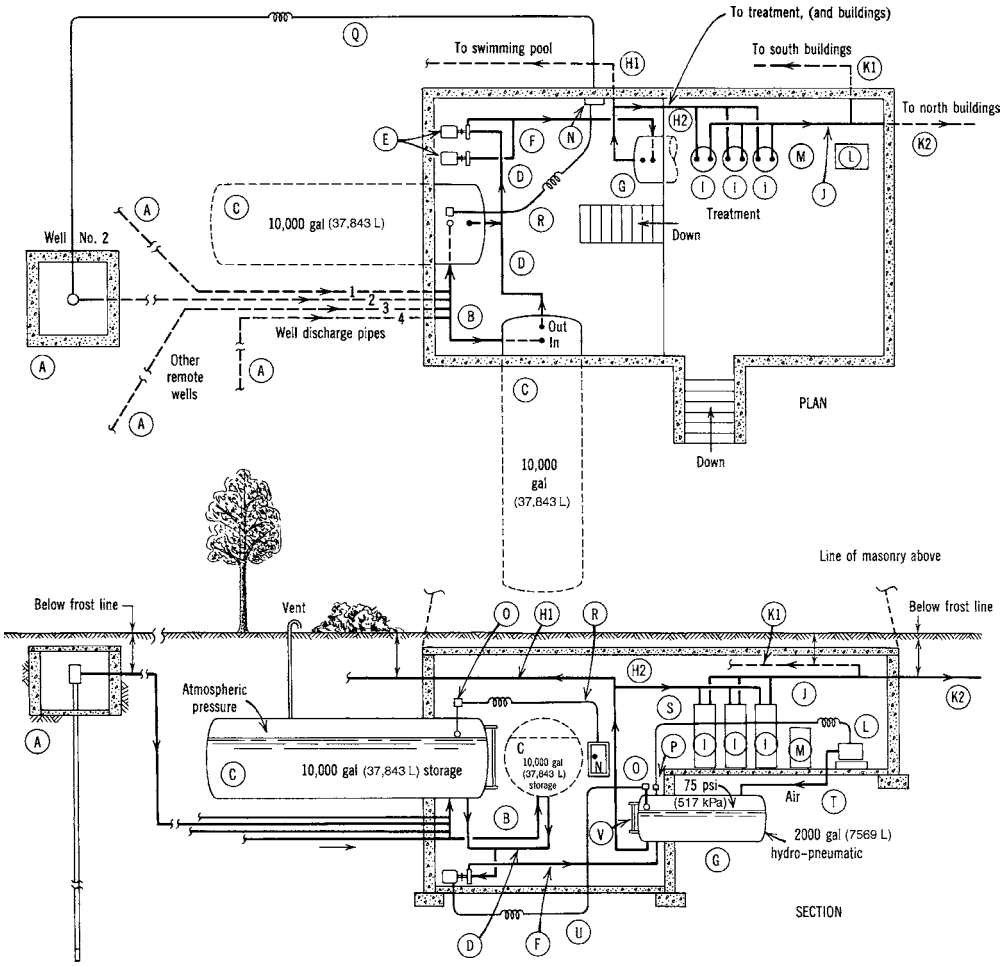
The capacity of elevated tanks usually is equal to at least 2 days of average water usage. For firefighting or other special requirements, the capacity may have to be even greater.

A summary of the quality, treatment, and supply issues raised thus far is provided in the example of a rural estate shown in Fig. 21.15 and Table 21.5. On this large estate, water was required for an estimated demand of 30,000 gpd (113,560 Lpd). This was for domestic use only; irrigation was served by a separate installation pumping from a lake. Wells were dug for the domestic supply. It was quickly evident that despite the great depths of the wells drilled, the available flow would be small. Four wells yielded a total rate of only 25 gpm (1.6 L/s).

Calculations for the amount of water to be stored to supplement this meager supply are

TABLE 21.5 Calculations to Establish Capacity of Water Storage Tanks at Kinloch (Fig. 21.15)

1. Potable domestic water demand per day	30,000 gpd (113,550 L/d)
2. Assumed hours of use	7:00 A.M. to 9:00 P.M. (14 hours)
3. Assumed hours of virtual nonuse	9:00 P.M. to 7:00 A.M. (10 hours)
4. Well-yield rate per hour	25 gpm × 60 min = 1500 gph (1.6 L/s × 60 × 60 = 5679 L/h)
5. Total well yield in 14 hours	1500 gph × 14 h = 21,000 gal (5679 L/h × 14 h = 79,506 L)
6. Total water needed in 14 hours	30,000 gal (113,550 L)
7. Well yield in 14 hours	21,000 gal (79,506 L) [see step 5]
8. Net-tank capacity required, minimum	30,000 – 21,000 = 9000 gal (113,550 – 79,506 = 34,044 L)
9. Net-tank capacity as designed with two tanks at 10,000 gal (37,850 L) each:	20,000 × 0.80 (80% full) = 16,000 gal (75,700 × 0.8 [80% full] = 60,560 L)
and one tank at 2000 gal (7570 L):	2000 gal × 0.70 (70% full) = 1400 gal (7570 L × 0.7 [70% full] = 5300 L)
	total capacity = 17,400 gal (65,860 L); which is OK, greater than 9000 gal (34,044 L) as per step 8
10. Well operation at night to restore 9000 gal (34,065 L) to tanks	9000 ÷ 1500 = 6 hours of the 10 night hours available (34,065/5679 = 6 h)



Legend

A	Wells	L	Air compressor maintains 75 psi in tank
B	Well water header for four wells	M	Sodium chloride for regeneration
C	Well water storage, vented tanks, (atmospheric pressure)	N	Electrical control panel
D	Pump supply pipe	O	Float switches
E	Electric centrifugal pumps (one is a standby)	P	Pressure switch (actuates air compressor)
F	Pump discharge to hydro-pneumatic tank	Q	Control wiring to well pumps
G	Hydro-pneumatic tank, 75 lbs per in.^{2} (517 kPa)	R	Control wiring, float switch to panel
H1 H2	Discharge pipes, pressurized well water	S	Control wiring, pressure switch to compressor
I	Water softeners, (ion exchangers)	T	Compressed air piping
J	Treated well water under pressure	U	Control wiring, float switch to centrifugal pump
K1 K2	Branch mains to buildings (treated well water)	V	Gauge glass indicates water level

This schematic diagram shows system components and connections. For clarity, details (valves, drains, checkvalves etc.) are not shown. All control wiring, here simply indicated, operates through control panel (N). See text for operation.

(*a*)

Fig. 21.15 *(a) Schematic diagram of the water control and distribution center for the Kinloch Estate. (Bentel & Bentel, Architects, FAIA.) The plant is located on a hillside below the bathing and dressing pavilion. (b) One of two pavilions adjacent to the swimming pool that serves residents and guests at Kinloch. Below this pavilion is the control center. Exterior tubing to and from the control center is all below grade.*



(*b*)

Fig. 21.15 *(Continued)*

shown in Table 21.5. The table shows that during the 14 daytime hours under conditions of peak demand, the well pumps would run continuously. Concurrently, an additional 9000 gal (34,065 L) would be drawn from the tanks. At night, the well pumps would run for 6 hours to restore the 9000 gal (34,065 L) drawn from the tanks during the day.

The operation of the system is illustrated in the diagram and notes of Fig. 21.15*a*. The pressure of 75 psi (517 kPa) in the hydropneumatic tank is sufficient to raise the water to the greatest height in the distribution system, overcome friction in the piping, and leave a residual pressure available at each fixture of about 10 to 15 psi (69 to 103 kPa). Excessive pressure can always be moderated by a valve in the branch supply of the fixture.

Pressure in this tank is ensured by the air compressor, activated by a pressure switch. A float switch starts the centrifugal pump to deliver water from the storage tanks as needed. The storage tanks, piped together and acting as a single reservoir, are fed by the four wells. The wells operate in unison, singly, or in groups, depending upon the level in the storage tanks. If the level drops rapidly, all well pumps can run. Although they are arranged to operate all day when needed, during periods of minimum demand only one or two may be called upon. Each has its own power supply, but controls emanate from panel *N*.

Swimming pools should be supplied with pure, potable water. Biological tests showed that this well water was safe. Thus, the fill line to the swimming pool is connected from this system rather than from the lake water supply used for irrigation. Because swimming pool water is separately recirculated and provided with its own purification treatment at a location adjacent to the pool, the supply line for makeup water to the pool would have infrequent and off-hour use. Water for domestic use in the buildings is passed through one of three ion exchangers to provide softening and to make the water more suitable for washing, bathing, and cooking. Periodically, the calcium precipitate can be flushed out and the tanks regenerated by sodium chloride.

21.6 HOT WATER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

There are many ways to provide the "domestic" or "service" hot water needs within a building—the hot water used *not* for space heating, but for bathing, clothes washing, dishwashing, and other related functions. Whereas much of the world either heats such water on a cookstove or does without it, North Americans enjoy an array of choices for domestic hot water (DHW) supply systems. In this section, rough supply estimates are considered first, then basic design choices, conventional heater tanks, solar water heaters, and finally, energy recovery heaters.

With today's better-insulated buildings, the demand for space heating can fall to a level about equal to DHW. As a result, a trend is developing toward using one rather larger water heater designed to meet the need both for space heating and for DHW. This saves both floor space and equipment cost, compared to the more conventional boiler for space heating and a separate water heater for DHW. Some restrictions apply; the 1997 International Plumbing Code restricts the maximum water outlet temperature to 160°F (71°C) and requires water in such a heating system to remain potable.

(a) Water Temperature

Higher water supply temperatures have several advantages but carry the risk of scalding. Although water becomes uncomfortably hot to the touch above 110°F (43°C), much higher temperatures are

TABLE 21.6 Representative Hot Water Temperatures

Use	Temperature °F	Temperature °C
Lavatory		
Hand washing	105	40
Shaving	115	45
Showers and tubs	110	43
Therapeutic baths	95	35
Commercial and institutional laundry (based on fabric)	Up to 180	Up to 82
Residential dish washing and laundry	140	60
Surgical scrubbing	110	43
Commercial spray-type dishwashing[a]		
Wash	150 minimum	65 minimum
Final rinse	180 to 195	82 to 90

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from the 1995 *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.*

[a]For other types of commercial dishwashers, see the 1995 *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*.

often used for some commercial processes, as shown in Table 21.6. When determining the temperature at which DHW is to be supplied, consider the following factors.

High Temperatures

- Allow the installation of smaller storage tanks (less hot water is mixed with cold water to achieve a final usage temperature at the shower, sink, or lavatory) but require larger heating units.
- Can be achieved at the point of use (rather than in the tank) by heaters built into equipment such as dishwashers.
- Can cause scale to form on heating coils and within piping (above 140°F [60°C] in areas of hard water quality).
- May be required by code for some applications but limited by code for others.
- Limit the potential for growth of *Legionella pneumophila* bacteria (above 140°F [60°C]).

Lower Temperatures

- Are less likely to cause burns but may not achieve desired sanitation.
- Mean less energy consumed, because storage and pipe heat losses are lower.
- Allow the installation of smaller heating units but require larger storage tanks.
- Make possible the use of lower-grade heat sources for DHW, such as solar energy or waste heat recovery. Table 2.1 shows that around 13% of annual U.S. energy usage is for DHW, which requires the lowest-grade heat source of all the common usages.

(b) Heat Sources and Methods

These include familiar concentrated-energy, high-grade sources such as natural gas and electricity. Oil- and coal-fired boilers are frequently equipped with DHW coils as well. Buildings served by steam may use steam as a DHW heat source. Cogeneration provides heat for DHW, as in Fig. 10.67. Because of the relatively low-grade final temperatures needed, DHW can also be readily provided by wood-burning equipment, incinerators, solar energy equipment, heat pumps, and heat recovery devices (as in commercial ice-making machines whose discharged heat is contributed to DHW).

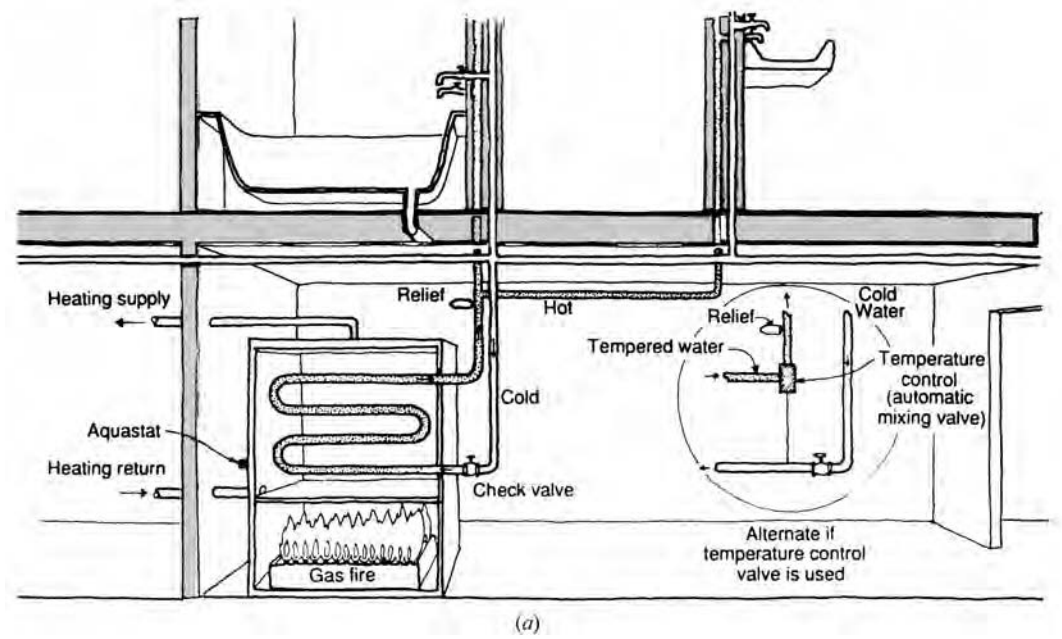
Heating Methods. There are two basic methods:

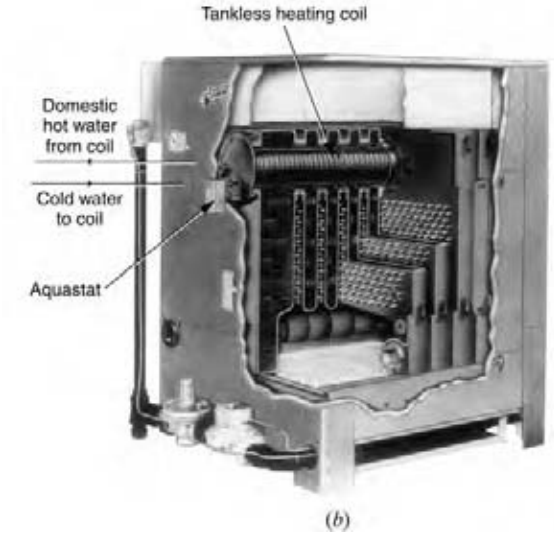
1. *Direct* heating brings water in contact with directly heated surfaces: electric-resistance elements or other electrically warmed surfaces within tanks, or surfaces directly exposed to fire or hot gases.
2. *Indirect* heating can be accomplished in several ways. Coils containing steam or fluids can be submerged within water tanks or (Fig. 21.16) set within boilers, whose primary function usually is to provide space or industrial process heating. Alternatively, coils containing DHW can be placed outside a boiler but within a casing containing steam, hot exhaust gases, or very hot water.

Direct and indirect methods can be utilized in a variety of equipment:

Storage tank water heaters, the type most commonly used for residential and small commercial purposes (see Section 21.6*h*)

Circulating storage water heaters, in which the water is first heated by a coil, then circulated through





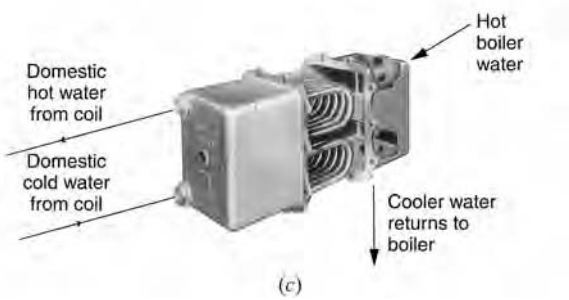


Fig. 21.16 *(a) Example of an indirect, tankless heater for DHW utilizing a boiler that provides hot water for space heating. Because no storage is used, the point of DHW use should be very close to the boiler. (b) Internal tankless heating coil for DHW immersed in the jacket water of a gas-fired hot water heating boiler. The approximate capacity range is 3 to 15 gpm at a 100F° rise (0.2 to 0.9 L/s at a 55C° rise). (c) External-type tankless heater for DHW. Boiler water is piped to the unit and circulates by gravity, transferring heat to the coil. The approximate capacity range is 3 to 15 gpm at a 100F° rise (0.2 to 0.9 L/s at a 55C° rise).* Note: *Because it can be highly inefficient to provide summertime DHW with a boiler designed for winter space-heating loads, codes may alter or prohibit this arrangement.*

a storage tank (as in some solar heaters—see Section 21.6i)

Tankless (*instantaneous*) *heaters*, in which the water is very quickly raised to the desired temperature within a heating coil and immediately sent to the point of usage

(c) Tankless Water Heaters

Also called *instantaneous water heaters*, these are available in larger sizes for central hot water systems (Fig. 21.16) or in smaller sizes for wall mounting adjacent to remote plumbing fixtures that

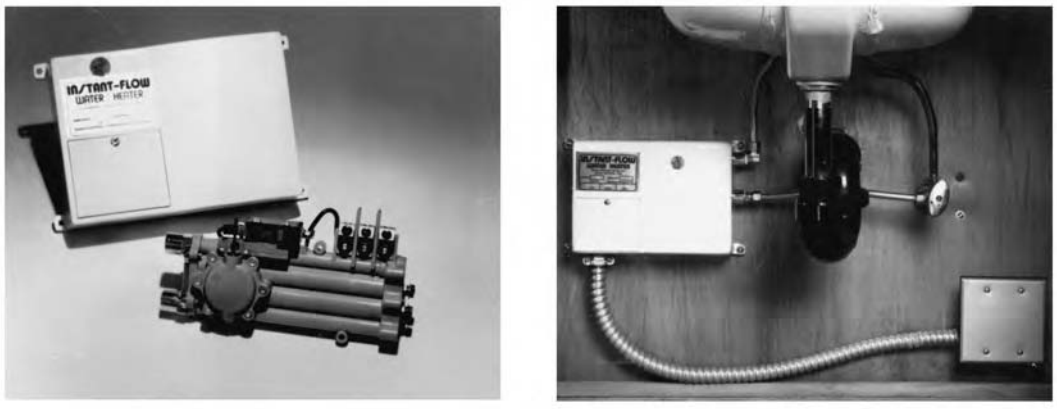


Fig. 21.17 *Instantaneous or tankless water heater. (a) In this* instant-flow *water heater, a series of coils heats water as it flows through. (b) Installation below a typical lavatory. A wide range of sizes is available; the 4.6-kW unit raises water by 31F° (17.2C°) at 1 gpm (0.06 L/s); the 9-kW unit raises water by 61F° (33.9C°) at 1 gpm (0.06 L/s). (Courtesy of Chronomite Laboratories, Inc.)*

occasionally need hot water, or for isolated bathrooms, laundry rooms, and so forth. Decentralized tankless units can be as small as "instant hot water taps" for kitchen or bar sinks—electric-resistance heaters capable of generating perhaps 3 gph at up to 200°F (11 L/h at up to 93°C). Bathroom groups can use either electric resistance or gas-fired units (Fig. 21.17); electric heaters require very high amperage and convert only about one-third of the primary energy into electricity; gas heaters must be vented and are most efficient without continuously burning pilots.

These tankless heaters can be very small; one unit of only 2.65 ft^3 (0.08 m^3) produces up to 4 gpm (0.25 L/s) with a temperature rise of 45°F (20°C). With a greater temperature rise of 100°F (55.5°C), the flow rate drops to somewhat less than half. Because tankless heaters often consist of fairly long coils through which the water passes as it is heated, they may add considerable friction to the total supply system design requirements (see Section 21.11).

To gain a better understanding of hot water used per activity and the role of instantaneous heaters, see Table 21.7. Domestic water system design usually concentrates on the storage tank size (see Section 21.6h).

TABLE 21.7 Domestic Hot Water Consumption—Residences

	Hot Water Required in Gallons (Liters) per Use	
Clothes Washing Machine	*14-lb (6.4-kg) Machine*	*18-lb (8.2-kg) Machine*
Hot wash/hot rinse	38 gal (144 L)	48 gal (182 L)
Hot wash/warm rinse	28 gal (106 L)	36 gal (136 L)
Hot wash/cold rinse	19 gal (72 L)	24 gal (91 L)
Warm wash/cold rinse	10 gal (38 L)	12 gal (45 L)
Dishwashing	*Small*	*Large*
Dishwashing machine	10 gal (38 L)	15 gal (57 L)
Sink washing	4–8 gal (15–30 L)	
Personal Hygiene		
Tub bathing	12–30 gal (45–134 L)	
Wet shaving/hair washing	2–4 gal (8–15 L)	
Showering	2–6 gpm (13–38 L/s)	

Source: Reprinted by permission from Russell Plante, *Solar Domestic Hot Water,* copyright © 1983 by John Wiley & Sons.

(d) Energy Factors

The U.S. Department of Energy developed the *energy factor* as a standardized measure of annual overall efficiency. Standard storage tank water heaters that are gas-fired may reach an energy factor (EF) of 0.60 to 0.64. Because they have virtually none of the stand-by losses of storage tank heaters, gas-fired tankless water heaters offer EFs of up to 0.69 with continuous pilots and as high as 0.93 with electronic ignition (although this minor usage of electricity is not included in the EF rating).

Some gas-fired instantaneous heaters are designed to operate with battery-powered pilot light ignition. These are useful in remote installations with propane but without electricity.

(e) Central versus Distributed Equipment

This choice can be particularly complex. In the United States, a central water-heater storage tank is standard equipment in homes and small stores. However, the growing use of solar water heating, along with awareness of the heat losses from water-heater storage tanks, has created new interest in *combinations* of central and distributed DHW.

Consider a large residential DHW application such as that shown in Fig. 21.18. Here, two areas where hot water is used are separated by some 50 ft (15 m). If the simple, centralized water-heater storage tank is used (Fig. 21.18*a*), it would probably be placed nearest the maximum-use fixtures—dishwashers and clothes washers. (Also, floor space for the water-heater storage tank is usually more plentiful there.) Codes typically require that at least the first 8 ft (2.4 m) of the hot water pipe be insulated, as it leaves the water heater. However, each time hot water is needed in the remote bathroom serving the bedrooms, the previously heated water in at least 50 ft (15 m) of supply pipe will almost certainly have cooled—despite insulation even over its entire length—and must be drained off before hot water finally arrives. (A ¾-in.-diameter pipe, for example, will hold 4.6 gal [17.4 L] in 50 ft [15 m] of pipe. If the water heater is set at an energy-conserving temperature of 120°F [49°C] and the incoming city water is 50°F [10°C], the 4.6 gal [17.4 L] of wasted water will also waste the 2682 Btu [2830 kJ] invested during its heating.)

Another way to conserve water is with a recirculating hot water system (Fig. 21.18*b*). The primary disadvantages of this system are the increased heat loss through the hot water pipe (now kept at 120°F [49°C] for 24 hours per day rather than for just a few minutes) and the energy required to run the circulating pump (again for 24 hours daily). Codes typically require a conveniently located cutoff switch for the circulating pump and pipe insulation with a minimum $k = 0.3$ Btu in./h ft^2 °F (0.04 W/m K) over the entire length of the circulating hot water system.

A decentralizing option (Fig. 21.18*c*) is to install two water-heater storage tanks, one for each group. The first cost will be greater and more floor space required. The daily waste heat from *two* heaters is clearly a disadvantage that will at least partially offset the energy saved by eliminating the 50-ft (15-m) run of pipe. (Furthermore, in warm weather this waste heat will add to discomfort within the house.)

A decentralized-centralized mix (Fig. 21.18*d*) will save energy, water, and floor space, but it will almost certainly be costlier to install. A central solar water heater—either passive (shown) or active—brings the water up to warm (winter) or very hot (summer) temperatures. At each fixture group, a tankless heating coil instantaneously heats the water as needed. Almost no water is wasted, and the energy lost in the 50 ft (15 m) of pipe will be solar energy, not purchased energy from natural gas or electricity.

Another option is to omit the solar water heater and simply install two tankless heaters. The primary disadvantage of this setup is the need for larger-capacity heaters, whose instantaneous demand for energy could lead to electric cost penalties in areas where peak-load rates are high. Compared to central storage tanks, however, less heat is lost.

(f) Distribution Trees

The choice of a distribution tree for a central water heating system must take into account the gradual cooling of water within the distribution system once it has left the central heater. If the heat losses associated with constantly circulating hot water (looped trees) are preferable to the heat and water wastage associated with simple, single hot water distribution trees, such loop systems can be achieved in either of two ways.

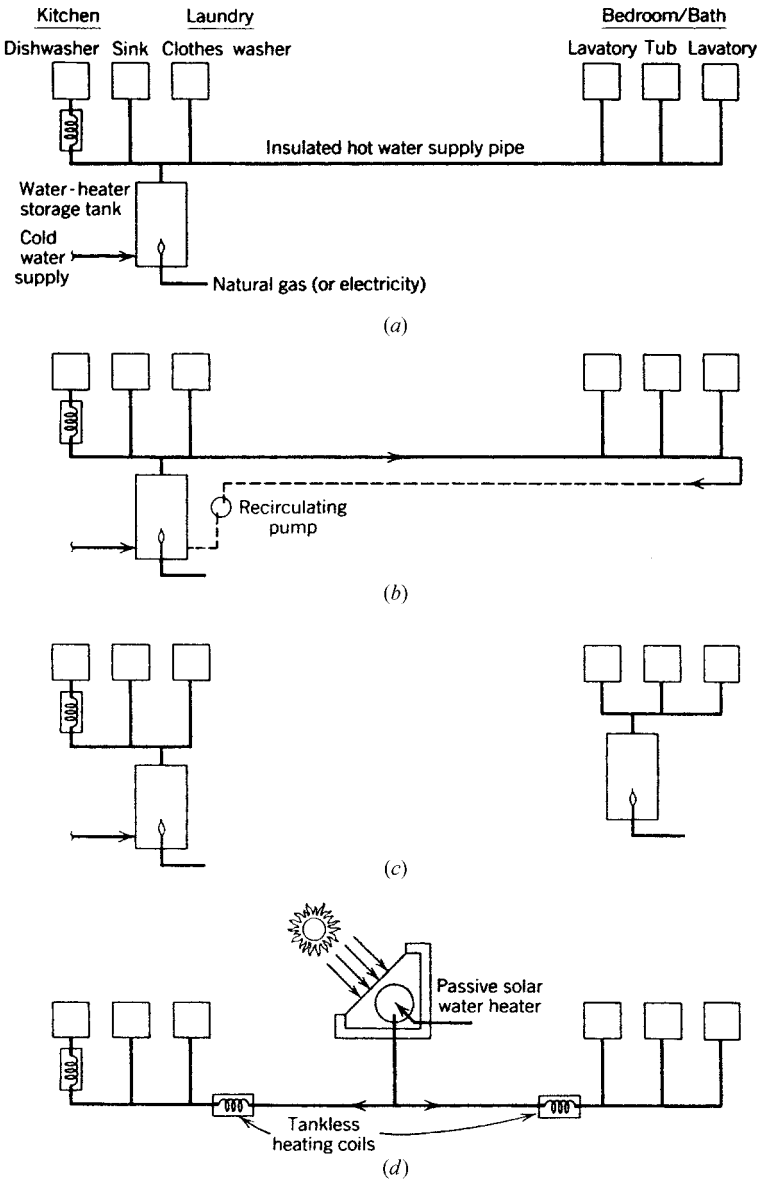


Fig. 21.18 *Options for DHW in a larger residence. (a) Typical centralized water-heater storage tank; water and energy are wasted in the run involved. (b) Recirculating pump added; this saves water but requires continuous energy to operate the pump and make up the pipe's heat losses. (c) Decentralized approach using two water-heater storage tanks; this roughly doubles the energy lost from storage but eliminates water and energy loss from the long pipe run. (d) Central solar water heater/decentralized tankless heating coil combination; it saves on water and energy but not on initial cost.*

Thermosiphon hot water circulation depends upon the fact that water expands and becomes lighter when heated, as can be seen in Fig. 21.19*a*. If heat is applied to the lower loop of a glass tube, both ends of which have been inserted in an inverted bottle containing water, the water moves from *A* to *B* and rises through tube *BC* into the bottle. There it becomes cooled and drops through tube *DA* to *A*, is again heated, and rises in tube *BC*—thus completing the circulation. Because the movement depends upon the difference in weight between the two columns

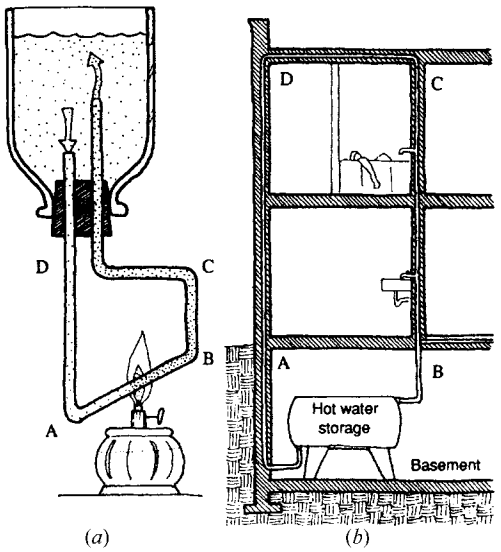


Fig. 21.19 *(a) Principle of hot water circulation by gravity (thermosiphon). (b) Its application to hot water service. During periods of no demand, there is sufficient incidental cooling between C and D so that dense (less warm) water at A forces the lighter (hot) water at B to rise for speedy availability at each faucet.*

of water, the velocity and consequent effectiveness of the circulating system increase as both the temperature of the water and the height of the circuit increase. Hot water supply systems therefore usually consist of a heater with a storage tank, piping to carry the heated water to the farthest fixture, and a continuation of this piping to return the unused cooled water back to the heater. A constant circulation is thereby maintained, and hot water may be drawn at once from a fixture without first draining off through the faucet the cooled water that would be standing in the supply pipe if there were no recirculation. Because heat increases the corrosive action of water on metals, copper tubing or rated polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe is often chosen for use in hot water and hot water circulating systems. Thermosiphon circulating systems are particularly effective in multistory buildings because of the beneficial effect of the increased circuit height on circulation.

Forced circulation of hot water is often utilized where a height advantage is unavailable. Low, long, rambling buildings, such as some large one-story residences, schools, and factories, lack the height needed to set up good hot water circulation by gravity. Also, flow is diminished by friction in long pipe runs. For such buildings, the forced-circulation scheme shown in Fig. 21.20 offers one option. Three independent aquastats—devices that create an electrical signal when water temperature drops—control this system. Aquastats *A*, *B*, and *C*, respectively, sense the temperatures of the water in the heater, in the tank, and at the end of the circulation-return main. As needed, they turn on the oil or gas burner, the tank-circulating pump, and the system-circulating pump. Fixtures remote from the tank are as close to hot water as the length of their hot water runout pipes. Water is usually available at full temperature in 5 to 10 seconds. Trial aquastat settings in °F could be *A* 180, *B* 160, *C* 120 (°C: *A* 82, *B* 71, *C* 49).

(g) Variable Storage Temperature

An energy-saving computer control is available for hotels, motels, apartments, and larger commercial buildings. This device (Fig. 21.21) varies the supply temperatures of hot water so that the hottest water is supplied at the busiest hours. In hours of low usage, much lower supply temperatures mean that more hot water will be mixed with less cold water at showers, lavatories, and sinks. This increased hot water quantity poses no problem at off-peak hours, and the lower temperature means significant decreases in heat loss from the recirculating supply water system. A typical payback period is 1 year. The device stores a memory (adjusted weekly) of the typical daily patterns of usage and varies the supply temperature accordingly.

(h) Conventional Water Heater Selection

One of the most common appliances used in the United States is the water-heater storage tank, an energy-conserving model of which is shown in Fig. 21.22.

For residences, the capacity of hot water heating/storage equipment can be taken from the values in Table 21.8. Note that for the familiar tank-type direct water heaters (gas, electric, or oil), there is a stated relationship among storage size, rate of hourly heat input, rate of draw (demand) over 1 hour, and recovery rate. Example 21.2 uses Table 21.8 for the sizing of a residential water heater.

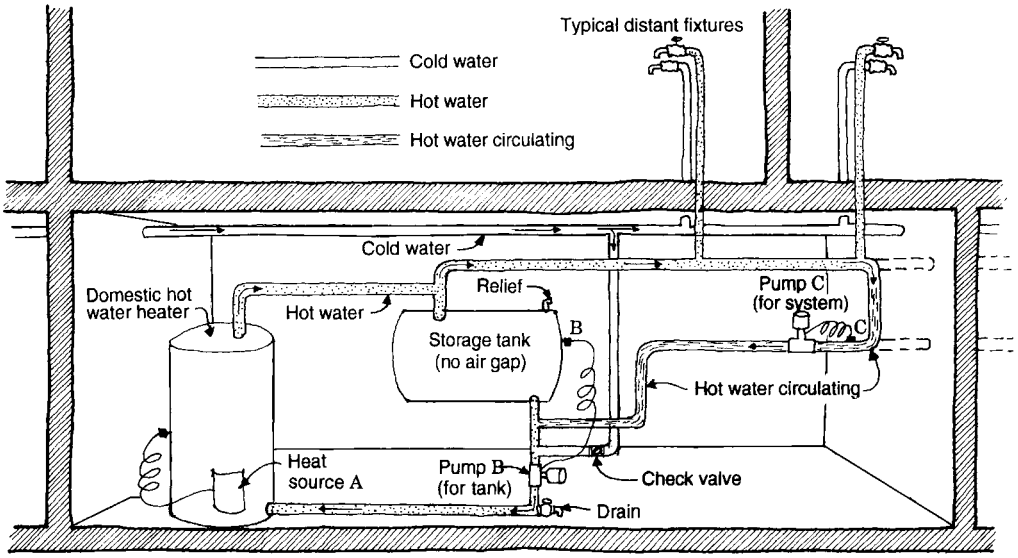


Fig. 21.20 *Forced circulation of DHW for a long, low building. (Note that the use of space-heating boilers for DHW may cause system inefficiencies in warm weather.)*

EXAMPLE 21.2 Select a natural gas water heater for a five-bedroom house with three baths. The *minimum* requirements of HUD-FHA are shown in Table 21.8: 50 gal (190 L), 47,000 Btu/h (1.38 kW), 90-gal (340 L) draw per hour, and 40 gph (151 L/h) recovery.

SOLUTION

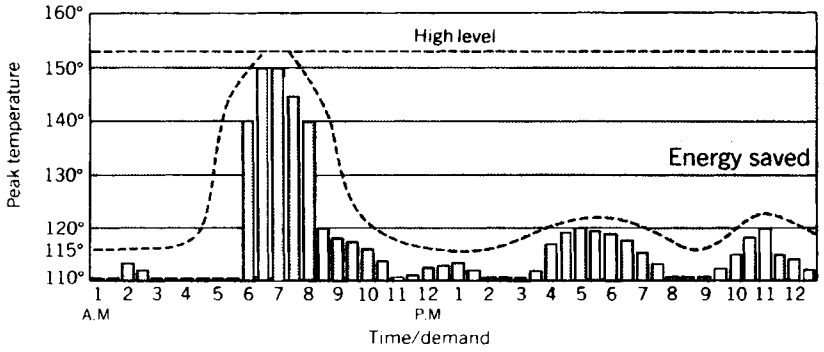
From Fig. 21.22 and Table 21.9, a model BTH 120 is selected; it exceeds all the minimums. ■

Estimation of the hot water demand for commercial and institutional buildings is not so simple, and design guidelines are less reliable. For larger buildings, there is a trade-off between quick recovery (high heating capacity) and storage size; big tanks have small heaters, and vice versa. Another variable is storage temperature, as discussed earlier in Section 21.6(a).

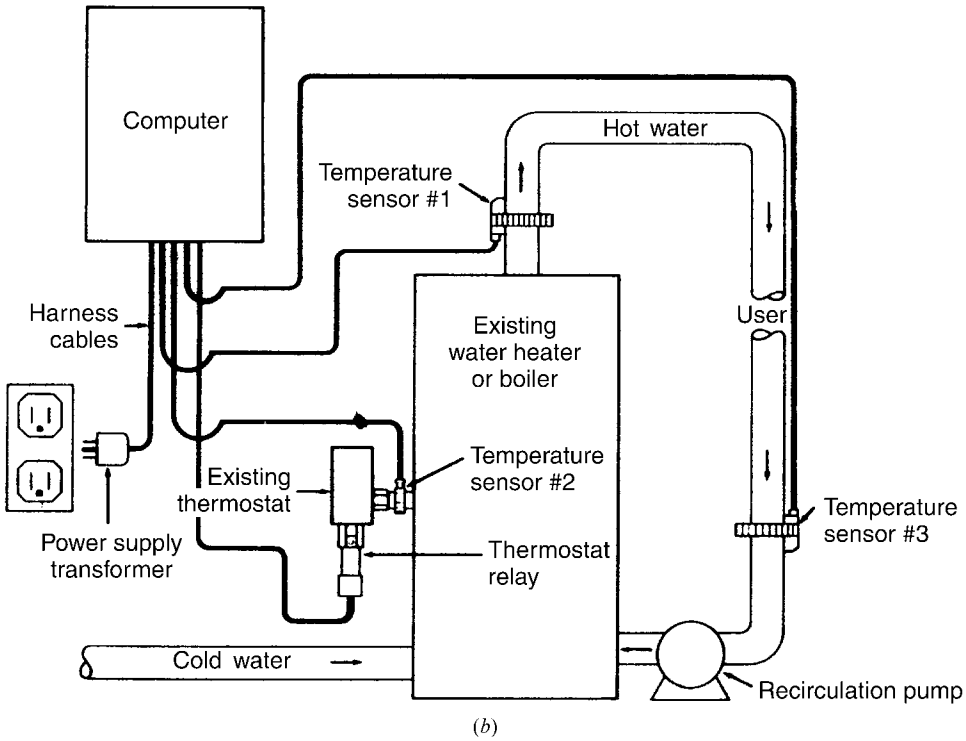
Small shops and very small office buildings can be treated like residences for hot water sizing. For larger buildings, the trade-off between heaters and storage tanks should be explored. To begin this process, consult Table 21.10, which shows the maximum hourly and daily demands and contrasts them to an average day (which should be used to estimate monthly energy consumption).

The relationship between heater size and tank size is graphed in Fig. 21.23. The advantage of a *larger heater* is its smaller tank, which consumes less space and volume, weighs less, and probably has a lower first cost. The advantage of a *larger tank* is that its smaller heater tends to work steadily rather than in spurts; this lower, steadier demand for energy will lead to lower utility rates in the case of electric heating and thus to money savings over the life of the system. When the fuel supply is solar energy or waste heat, a larger tank is usually best suited to the characteristics of the fuel supply.

EXAMPLE 21.3 (Adapted from the 1995 *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*.) A women's dormitory housing 300 students, with a cafeteria serving 300 meals in 1 hour, is to be built. Find the required hot water storage size for two conditions: (1) assuming a minimum recovery rate for both dorm and cafeteria and (2) assuming a dorm recovery rate of 2.5 gph (9.5 L/h), which is half of the maximum hourly value given in Table 21.10, and a cafeteria recovery rate of 1.0 gph (3.8 L/h), which is two-thirds of the maximum hourly value given in Table 21.10.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 21.21 *Variable temperature DHW supply. (a) Energy savings are possible when the supply temperature of hot water is varied. Heat losses from supply pipes are greatly reduced for most of the typical day. A computer controls the supply temperature. (b) Schematic of computer-controlled, variable-temperature DHW system. (Courtesy of Fluidmaster, Inc., Anaheim, CA.)*

SOLUTION

Minimum recovery:

From Fig. 21.23*a*, the minimum recovery rate for women's dormitories is 1.1 gph (4.2 L/h). For 300 students,

$300 \times 1.1 = 330$ gph ($300 \times 4.2 = 1260$ L/h) recovery

At this rate, again from Fig. 21.23*a*, the minimum usable storage capacity is 12 gal/student (45 L /student).

Assume that 70% of the total capacity is usable capacity. This means that after 70% of the stored hot water is withdrawn, the remaining water has been cooled (by incoming water) to an unusably low temperature. Storage size must be increased by

$$\frac{100\%}{70\%} = 1.43$$



Fig. 21.22 *"Cyclone XHE" water-heater storage tank using natural gas (or propane). This model achieves 94% thermal efficiency with a burner located at the top, forcing blower-driven air into a countercurrent contact with rising fuel. A precise mix of air and fuel at the point of ignition results in high combustion efficiency, and the swirling flame continues downward in a submerged central combustion chamber. The heated gas is then forced at high velocity through the spiral heat-exchanger coil, with a swirling action that maximizes heat exchange with the water. (Courtesy of the A.O. Smith Water Products Company, Irving, TX.)*

Cyclone XHE Data:

[All models are 27¾ × 30 in. (705 × 762 mm) with 3-in. (76-mm) PVC vents]

Model	Storage Capacity, gal (L)	Btuh Input/Output	Recovery (gal/h) at 94% Thermal Efficiency		Height	
			80F° Δt	100F° Δt	in.	mm
BTH-120	60 (227)	120,000/112,800	171	137	55½	(1410)
BTH-150	100 (378)	150,000/141,000	214	171	74½	(1892)

Thus

$$12 \times 300 \times 1.43 = 5150 \text{ gal}$$
$$(45 \times 300 \times 1.43 = 19{,}300 \text{ L}) \text{ storage}$$

From Fig. 21.23*e*, the minimum recovery rate for the cafeteria (serving full meals, type A) is 0.45 gph (1.7 L/h). For 300 meals,

$$300 \times 0.45 = 135 \text{ gph}$$
$$(300 \times 1.7 = 510 \text{ L/h}) \text{ recovery}$$

At this rate, the minimum usable storage capacity is 7 gal/meal (26.5 L/meal). Thus

$$300 \times 7 \times 1.43 = 3000 \text{ gal}$$
$$(300 \times 26.5 \times 1.43 = 11{,}370 \text{ L}) \text{ storage}$$

Combining these requirements for dorm and cafeteria,

$$\text{recovery} = 330 + 135 = 465 \text{ gph}$$
$$(1260 + 510 = 1770 \text{ L/h})$$

$$\text{storage} = 5150 + 3000 = 8150 \text{ gal}$$
$$(19{,}300 + 11{,}370 = 30{,}670 \text{ L})$$

Faster recovery:
At the specified dorm recovery rate of 2.5 gph (9.5 L/h),

$$300 \times 2.5 = 750 \text{ gph}$$
$$(300 \times 9.5 = 2850 \text{ L/h})$$

and the minimum usable storage required is 5 gal/student (18.9 L/student). Thus

$$300 \times 5 \times 1.43 = 2150 \text{ gal}$$
$$(300 \times 18.9 \times 1.43 = 8110 \text{ L})$$

TABLE 21.8 HUD-FHA Minimum Water Heater Capacities, Residential

PART A. I-P UNITS											
Number of Baths	***1–1.5***			***2–2.5***				***3–3.5***			
Number of Bedrooms	**1**	**2**	**3**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**
Gas[a]											
Storage, gal	20	30	30	30	40	40	50	40	50	50	50
Input, 1000 Btu/h	27	36	36	36	36	38	47	38	38	47	50
1-h draw, gal	43	60	60	60	70	72	90	72	82	90	92
Recovery, gph	23	30	30	30	30	32	40	32	32	40	42
Electric[a]											
Storage, gal	20	30	40	40	50	50	66	50	66	66	80
Input, kW	2.5	3.5	4.5	4.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5
1-h draw, gal	30	44	58	58	72	72	88	72	88	88	102
Recovery, gph	10	14	18	18	22	22	22	22	22	22	22
Oil[a]											
Storage, gal	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30
Input, kW	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70
1-h draw, gal	89	89	89	89	89	89	89	89	89	89	89
Recovery, gph	59	59	59	59	59	59	59	59	59	59	59
Tank-type indirect[b, c]											
I-W-H-rated draw, gal in 3 h, 100F° rise		40	66		66	66[e]	66	66	66	66	66
Manufacturer-rated draw, gal in 3 h, 100F° rise		49	49		75	75[e]	75	75	75	75	75
Tank capacity, gal		66	66		66	66[e]	83	66	82	82	82
Tankless-type indirect[c, d]											
I-W-H-rated draw, gpm, 100F° rise		2.75	2.75		3.25	3.25[e]	3.75	3.75	3.75	3.75	3.75
Manufacturer-rated draw, gal in 5 min, 100F° rise		15	15		25	25[e]	35	25	35	35	35
PART B. SI UNITS											
Gas[a]											
Storage, L	76	114	114	114	150	150	190	150	190	190	190
Input, kW	7.9	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	11.1	13.8	11.1	11.1	13.8	14.6
1-h draw, L	163	227	227	227	265	273	341	273	311	341	350
Recovery, mL/s	24	32	32	32	32	36	42	34	34	42	44
Electric[a]											
Storage, L	76	114	150	150	190	190	250	190	250	250	300
Input, kW	2.5	3.5	4.5	4.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5
1-h draw, L	114	167	220	220	273	273	334	273	334	334	387
Recovery, mL/s	10	15	19	19	23	23	23	23	23	23	23
Oil[a]											
Storage, L	114	114	114	114	114	114	114	114	114	114	114
Input, kW	20.5	20.5	20.5	20.5	20.5	20.5	20.5	20.5	20.5	20.5	20.5
1-h draw, L	337	337	337	337	337	337	337	337	337	337	337
Recovery, mL/s	62	62	62	62	62	62	62	62	62	62	62
Tank-type indirect[f, g]											
I-W-H-rated draw, L in 3 h, 55 K rise		150	150		250	250[e]	250	250	250	250	250
Manufacturer-rated draw, L in 3 h, 55 K		186	186		284	284[e]	284	284	284	284	284
Tank capacity, L		250	250		250	250[e]	310	250	310	310	310
Tankless-type indirect[g, h]											
I-W-H-rated draw, mL/s, 55 K rise		170	170		200	200[e]	240	200	240	240	240
Manufacturer-rated draw, L in 5 min, 55 K rise		57	57		95	95[e]	133	95	133	133	133

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from 1995 *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*.

[a]Storage capacity, input, and recovery requirements are typical and may vary with individual manufacturers. Any combination of these requirements to produce the stated 1-hour draw will be satisfactory.

[b]Boiler-connected water heater capacities (180°F boiler water, internal, or external connection).

[c]Heater capacities and inputs are the minimum allowable. Variations in tank size are permitted when recovery is based on 4 gph/kW at 100F° rise for electrical, AGA recovery ratings for gas, and IBR ratings for steam and hot water heaters.

[d]Boiler-connected heater capacities (200°F boiler water, internal, or external connection).

[e]Also for 1.5 baths and 4 bedrooms for indirect water heaters.

[f]Boiler-connected water heater capacities (82°C boiler water, internal, or external connection).

[g]Heater capacities and inputs are the minimum allowable. Variations in tank size are permitted when recovery is based on 4.2 mL/s kW at 55C° rise for electrical, AGA recovery ratings for gas, and IBR ratings for steam and hot water heaters.

[h]Boiler-connected heater capacities (93°C boiler water, internal, or external connection).

TABLE 21.9 Procedure for Sizing a Residential Water-Heater Storage Tank

	Table 21.8: HUD-FHA	*Fig. 21.22 Data: Cyclone XHE*
Characteristic	**5 Bedrooms, 3 Baths**	**Model BTH-120**
Storage, gal (L)	50 (190)	60 (227)
Input, Btu/h (kW)	47,000 (13.8)	120,000 (35.2)
1-h draw (= tank capacity + 1-hr recovery)	90 (340)	231 at 80F° (875 at 44 C°)
Recovery	40 (150)	171 (650)

At the specified cafeteria recovery rate of 1.0 gph (3.8 L/h),

$$300 \times 1.0 = 300 \text{ gph}$$
$$(300 \times 3.8 = 1140 \text{ L/h})$$

and the minimum usable storage required is 2 gal/meal (7.6 L /meal). Thus

$$300 \times 2.0 \times 1.43 = 860 \text{ gal}$$
$$(300 \times 7.6 \times 1.43 = 3260 \text{ L})$$

Combining these requirements for dorm and cafeteria,

$$\text{recovery} = 750 + 300 = 1050 \text{ gph}$$
$$(2850 + 1140 = 3990 \text{ L/h})$$

$$\text{storage} = 2150 + 860 = 3010 \text{ gal}$$
$$(8110 + 3260 = 11{,}370 \text{ L})$$

For this example, an increase in heater size of 225% for faster recovery allows the size of the tank to be reduced to only 37% of original size.

Note: This sizing procedure does not account for *system losses*, that is, heat lost from the storage tanks and from the hot water piping. Recovery capacities are usually increased because of these losses, which are simple to calculate when the U-factors of the tank and pipe insulation are known: Btu/h = $U \times A \times \Delta t$. ■

TABLE 21.10 Domestic Hot Water, Commercial/Institutional

Type of Building	Maximum Hour	Maximum Day	Average Day
Men's dormitories	3.8 gal (14.4 L)/student	22.0 gal (83.4 L)/student	13.1 gal (49.7 L)/student
Women's dormitories	5.0 gal (19 L)/student	26.5 gal (100 L)/student	12.3 gal (46.6 L)/student
Motels: no. of units[a]			
20 or less	6.0 gal (23 L)/unit	35.0 gal (132.6 L)/unit	20.0 gal (75.8 L)/unit
60	5.0 gal (20 L)/unit	25.0 gal (94.8 L)/unit	14.0 gal (53.1 L)/unit
100 or more	4.0 gal (15 L)/unit	15.0 gal (56.8 L)/unit	10.0 gal (37.9 L)/unit
Nursing homes	4.5 gal (17 L)/bed	30.0 (114 L)/bed	18.4 gal (69.7 L)/bed
Office buildings	0.4 gal (1.5 L)/person	2.0 gal (7.6 L)/person	1.0 gal (3.8 L)/person
Food service establishments:			
Type A—full meal restaurants and cafeterias	1.5 gal (5.7 L)/max meals/h	11.0 gal (41.7 L)/max meals/h	2.4 gal (9.1 L)/avg meals/day[b]
Type B—drive-ins, grilles, luncheonettes, sandwich and snack shops	0.7 gal (2.6 L)/max meals/h	6.0 gal (22.7 L)/max meals/h	0.7 gal (2.6 L)/avg meals/day[b]
Apartment houses: no. of apartments			
20 or less	12.0 gal (45.5 L)/apt.	80.0 gal (303.2 L)/apt.	42.0 gal (159.2 L)/apt.
50	10.0 gal (37.9 L)/apt.	73.0 gal (276.7 L)/apt.	40.0 gal (151.6 L)/apt.
75	8.5 gal (32.2 L)/apt.	66.0 gal (250 L)/apt.	38.0 gal (144 L)/apt.
100	7.0 gal (26.5 L)/apt.	60.0 gal (227.4 L)/apt.	37.0 gal (140.2 L)/apt.
200 or more	5.0 gal (19 L)	50.0 gal (195 L)/apt.	35.0 gal (132.7 L)/apt.
Elementary schools	0.6 gal (2.3 L)/student	1.5 gal (5.7 L)/student	0.6 gal (2.3 L)/student[b]
Junior and senior high schools	1.0 gal (3.8 L)/student	3.6 gal (13.6 L)/student	1.8 gal (6.8 L)/student[b]

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from 1995 *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*.

[a]Interpolate for intermediate values.

[b]Per day of operation.

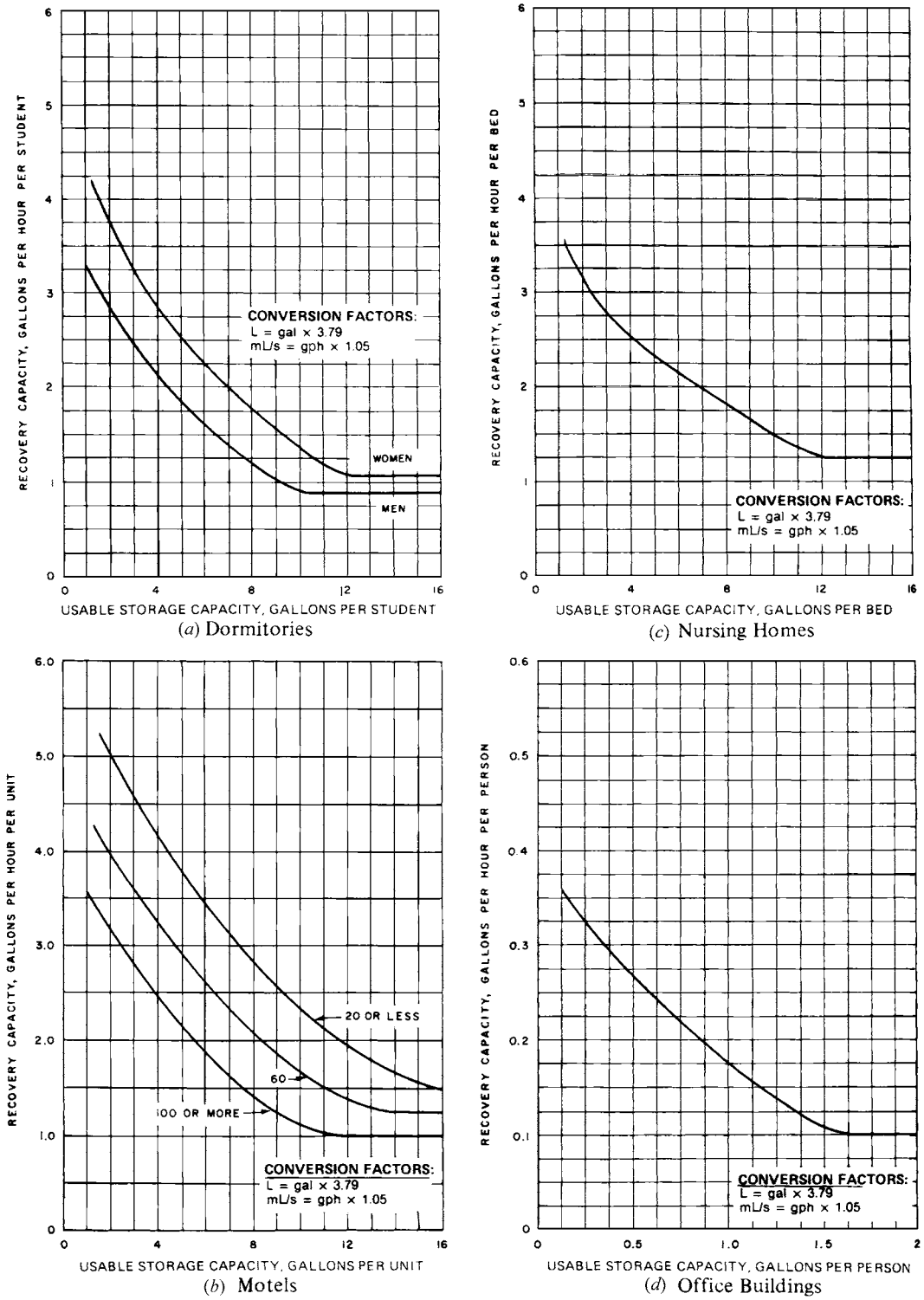
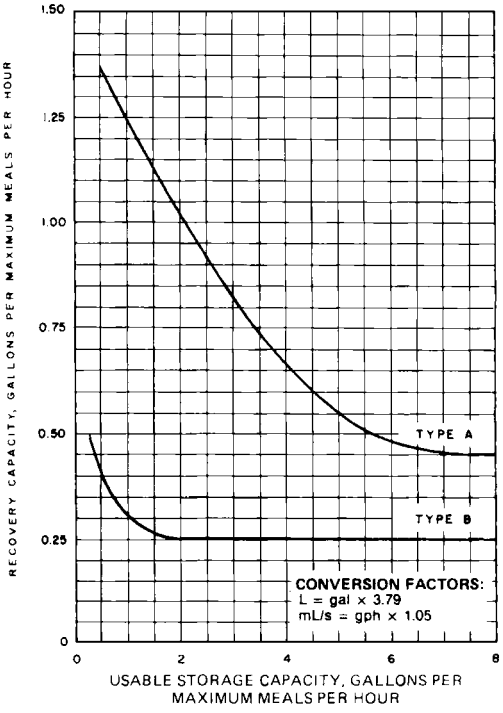
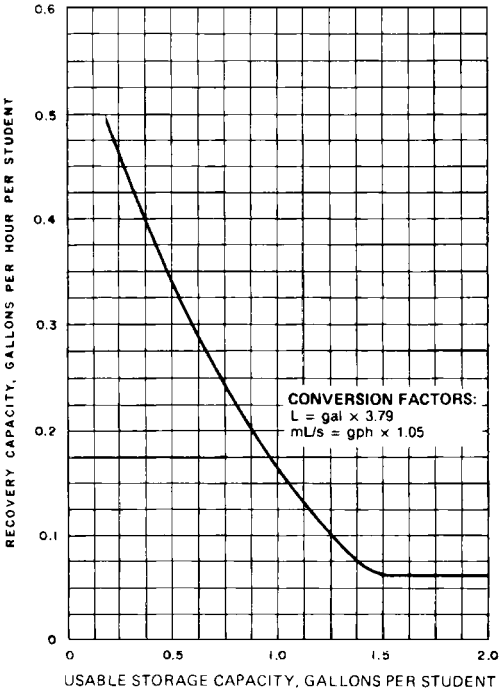


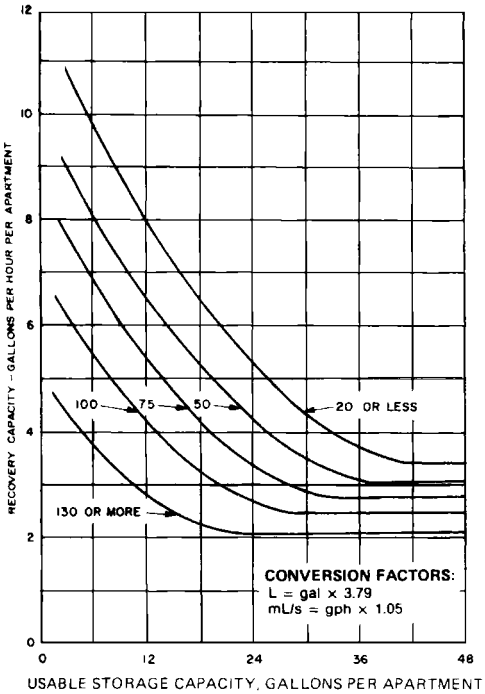
Fig. 21.23 *Domestic hot water sizing; the trade-off between recovery (heater) capacity and storage capacity. Usable storage capacity is usually considered to be between 60% and 80% of the total tank capacity. For (b) Motels, and (f) Apartments, curves are based upon the number of dwelling units. For (e) Food service, Types A, B, see Table 21.10. (Reprinted by permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 1995* ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.*)*



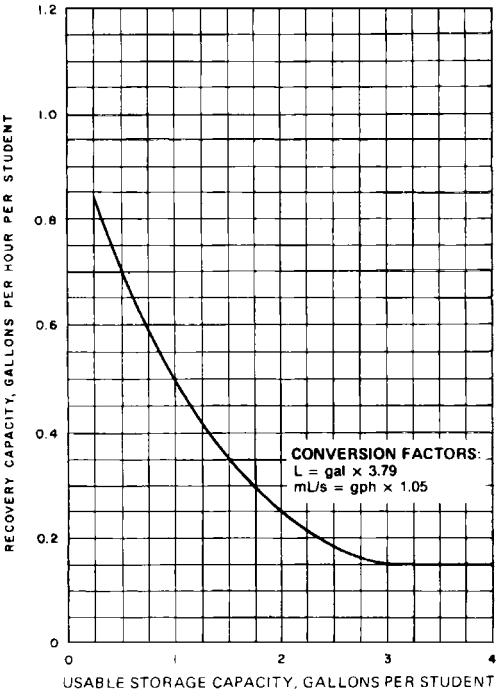
(*e*) Food Service



(*g*) Elementary Schools



(*f*) Apartments



(*h*) High Schools

Fig. 21.23 *(Continued)*

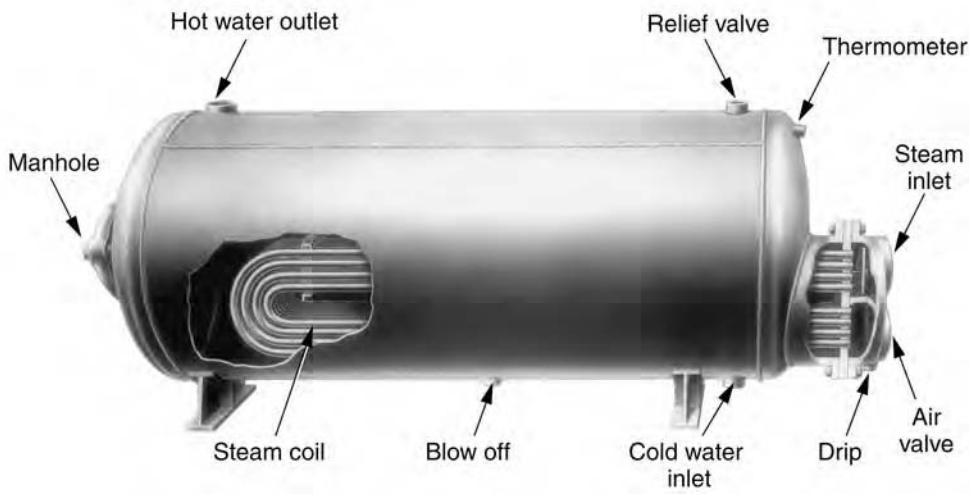


Fig. 21.24 *Storage tank and heater for DHW for large-demand applications. A steam coil is submerged in the tank. Capacities from 100 to 10,000 gph (380 to 37,850 L/h), varying by length of coil, for a 140F° (78C°) temperature rise (from 40 to 180°F [4 to 82°C]).*

For these larger DHW applications, central steam is often used as a heat source. Figure 21.24 shows an indirect storage tank system. Such systems may cost more than tankless systems, but they are usually cheaper to operate, both because the peak prices for the instantaneous fuel demands of tankless heaters are avoided and because low-grade steam or waste high-temperature water sources can be utilized.

In any system that heats water under pressure, safety precautions are necessary. To minimize the dangers of excessive pressure (which can damage the system) and of superheated water (which can severely injure people), most codes require *pressure and temperature* (*P*/*T*) *relief valves* to be installed on top of all water heaters. Because these valves are designed to release hot water whenever a dangerous pressure or temperature is reached, they should be attached to a length of pipe that will conduct the released water to a drain.

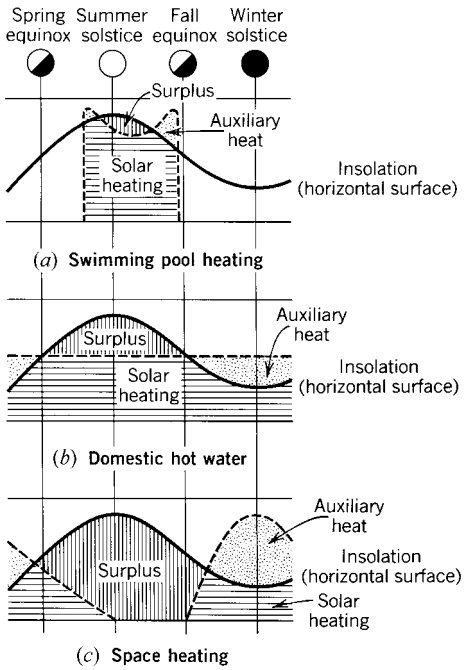


Fig. 21.25 *Comparison of the pattern of solar energy supply (on a horizontal surface) to various patterns of heating needs.*

(i) Solar Water Heating

Solar energy is most attractive to a designer when it will do most of its work during the time that it is most available. On a seasonal basis (Fig. 21.25), solar energy is especially attractive for outdoor swimming pool heating, as it will be used only in sunny, warm months. Throughout the United States, solar energy can easily meet most of the summertime demand for DHW as well. In the northern part of the country, a much smaller solar contribution can be expected in winter. An especially difficult problem is the winter space-heat mismatch between greatest need and least solar energy supply. For both solar DHW and space-heating systems, winter brings the added complication of the need to protect against freezing.

Again, there are many ways in which solar energy can be used to heat water. Solar water-heating systems are usually classified by the means of fluid circulation (passive or active), the means by which heat from the collector piping is transferred to the DHW itself (direct, indirect, or closed-loop), and the means of protection against freezing.

Passive systems rely upon gravity for circulation, as explained in Section 21.6(f). Hence, the storage tank usually must be placed *above* the collector (Fig. 21.26) and the number of bends in the system supply and return piping minimized to reduce friction. Heavy storage tanks located high in a building can cause structural problems. The advantages of this passive approach include lower cost of components, high mechanical reliability (no pump, etc.), and low operational costs.

Active systems use pumps to force the fluid into the collector. Although this setup allows the collector and storage to be located anywhere that is convenient for the designer, it introduces the complications of mechanical breakdown, increased maintenance, and the cost of the energy needed to run the pump. Active DHW systems are widespread in North America; see Figs. 21.27 and 21.28 for typical systems.

Direct systems utilize only one fluid: the water to be heated for use in the building is circulated through the solar collector. Such a system has the advantages of simplicity and efficiency, as it does not require a separate fluid loop and the attendant piping complications and inefficiencies of heat exchange.

Indirect systems use a closed loop containing a fluid that circulates through the collector and storage tank. The fluid is not mixed with the DHW itself; rather, heat is passed from one fluid to the other through a heat exchanger. One advantage of this system is that it allows nonfreezing solutions to be used in the collector loop. It also allows collectors to be operated at low pressure rather than at the high pressures typical of urban public water systems. The choice of fluid is determined by



Fig. 21.26 *Solar water heaters are widely used. This house in Miami, Florida, incorporates a storage tank above the collector, which is enclosed in the chimney-like form. This permits passive (thermosiphon) circulation without a pump. (Photo by M. Steven Baker.)*

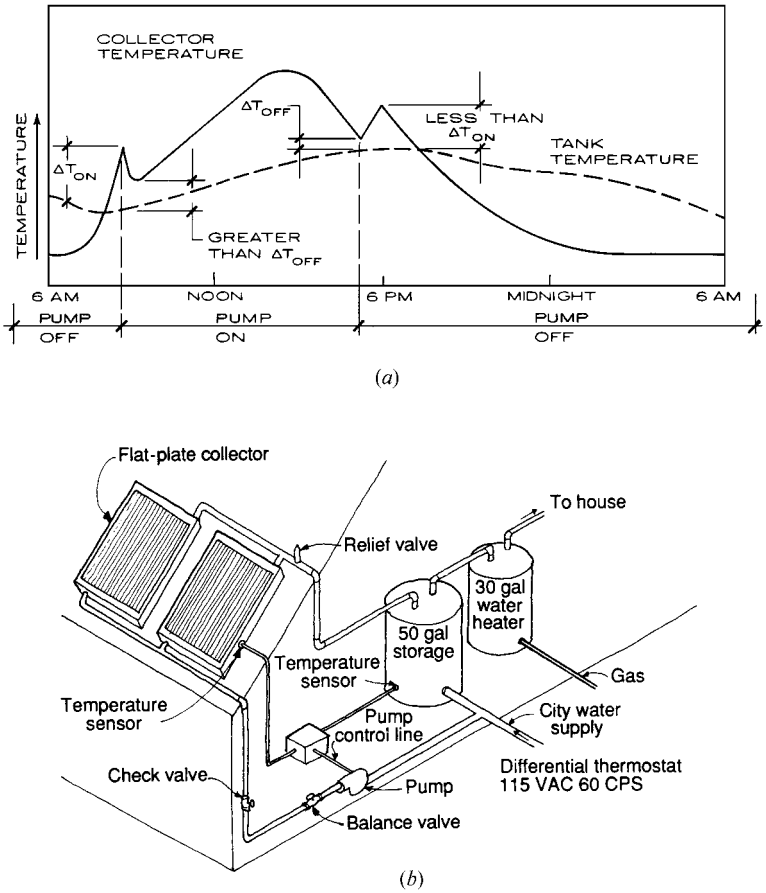


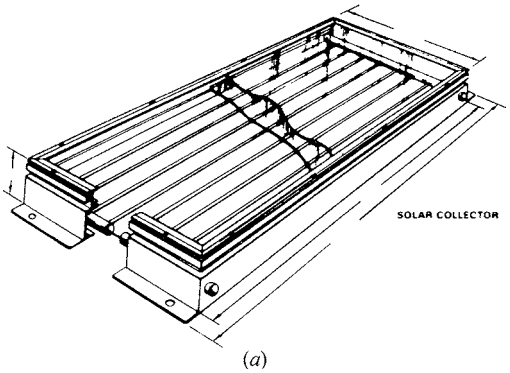
Fig. 21.27 *Active solar water heating utilizes differential controllers (a) that compare the collector temperature to that of the storage tank. (b) Typical DHW system with separate solar and conventional heater tanks. (The alternative of only one storage tank produces less standby heat loss, but may reduce solar collection by feeding the collector with gas-heated water.)*

its freezing and boiling points, its specific heat, and its level of toxicity.

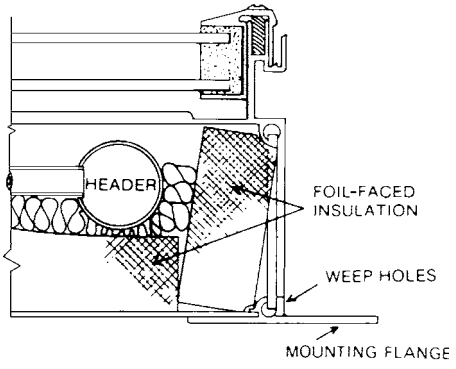
As Table 21.11 shows, these design elements (passive and active, direct and indirect) are combined in a number of typical solar DHW systems. Brief descriptions of some of the more common systems follow.

1. *Batch systems.* In these, the simplest of all such systems, a black-painted storage tank is exposed to the sun within a glazed collector box (Fig. 21.29). The price of simplicity is the inefficiency of exposing a tank of hot water to the cold nighttime conditions of the collector. Movable insulation, however inconvenient, can be used to reduce this problem. These heaters are also referred to as *breadbox* water heaters and *integral passive solar water heaters*. The batch system was used at the Antelope Valley California Poppy Reserve (Fig. 8.57), as shown in Fig. 21.30. Because of their simplicity, they are favored by do-it-yourself builders, especially in mild winter climates.

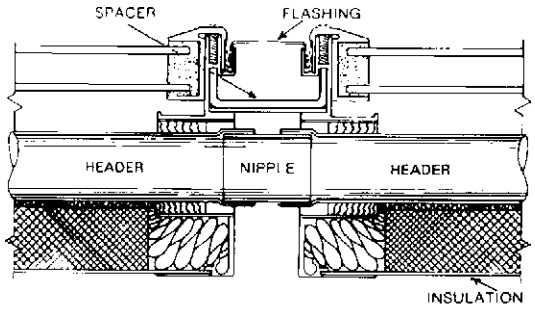
A more recent batch collector design utilizes eight copper tubes in a well-insulated, double-glazed (glass out, Teflon in) frame. The water flows in series, allowing the colder replacement water to enter at the bottom of the collector, with the hottest water at the top, ready for use. Insulation between the tubes helps maintain this temperature difference. Collectors are available in storage sizes of approximately 30, 35, 40, and 50 gal, weighing when filled 425 to 664 lb (114, 133, 152, and 190 L, weighing 193 to 301 kg).



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 21.28 *(a) Cutaway section of a typical active solar collector. (b) Cross section at the header. (c) Method of connecting manifolds of adjacent solar collectors.*

2. *Thermosiphon systems.* The sun acts as both the pump and the heat source for these systems (Fig. 21.31). With no moving parts, maintenance needs are low. The collector, however, must be lower than the tank, and piping must be kept as simple as possible. Because the coldest water remains in the lower collector at night, the hot water in the upper tank is not threatened with undue heat loss. However, freezing conditions pose a severe threat to the collector. Accordingly, indirect (closed-loop) systems containing a nonfreezing fluid are frequently used; *phase-change systems* are a promising cold-winter option for this type of passive system.

3. *Closed-loop, freeze-resistant systems.* In addition to being used in thermosiphoning arrangements, these systems are commonly used in active systems (Fig. 21.32). A small pump circulates nonfreezing fluid to the collector when there is sufficient sun. This process is governed by a differential controller. Alternatively, a PV-(photovoltaic) driven circulation pump can be used (see Fig. 29.16); when there is sufficient solar energy to activate the pump, there should be enough to also heat water in the collector.

The price of this freeze protection is the inefficiency of the heat exchanger, used between the collector fluid and the potable hot water. Some codes require a *double*-wall heat exchanger between any toxic nonfreezing fluid and the potable water, which further reduces efficiency.

4. *Drain-back systems.* Although these systems (Fig. 21.33*a*) use water as the fluid pumped from tank to collector, this water is not the potable hot water itself. Instead, the potable water passes through a heat exchanger in the solar storage tank. With the potable water kept out of the collector, the solar collector can operate at lower water pressure. This arrangement, however, requires a large heat exchanger, with attendant inefficiency. It also requires care in the design and installation of piping between the collector and tank so that the collector will drain thoroughly. When the controller senses that no solar energy can be gathered, it cuts off the pump, and water drains back into the tank. Therefore, the collector will be filled with air, not water, during all nighttime and cloudy-cold daytime hours. Corrosion inhibitors should be added to the collector/tank's water because the piping is frequently exposed to air.

TABLE 21.11 Solar Domestic Hot Water Systems

Type	Main Features	Advantages	Disadvantages
Batch system	Batch tank inside collector box. Potable water within collector/tank.	No external power. Few components. Collector/tank at any location.	Seasonal; dependent on freezing locations. Heat loss at night from storage.
Thermosiphon system[a]	Flat-plate liquid collectors. Normally open loop but no pump or external power passive (DHW system). Storage tank higher than collector.	No external power. Few components. High performance.	Seasonal; dependent on freezing locations (if water is collector fluid). Needs structural support for high storage tank.
Geyser pumping system	Flat-plate liquid collectors. Methanol-water solution passively pumped by solar heat to a heat exchanger below.	No freezing damage. No mechanical or electric parts. No liquid service.	Temporarily stops operation at subzero temperatures, as solution freezes to a slush.
Closed-loop freeze-resistant system[a]	Flat-plate liquid collectors. Closed loop of piping from collectors to storage tank. Uses external energy (circulator and differential controller). Uses nonfreezing collector fluid. Pressurized stonelined storage tank.	Can be used in coldest climates. More and better-established competition. Circulator; small consumption of external energy. High performance.	Liquid; service/maintenance required. More components required.
Drain-back system[a]	Flat-plate liquid collectors. Water is collector fluid (open loop). Potable water circulates through the heat exchanger in the storage tank (not through the collectors). Large heat exchanger. Pitched headers.	Can be used in the coldest climates. No antifreeze used. Most simple of active flat-plate systems (no valves).	Larger pump; larger consumption of external energy. System must drain thoroughly. Use of corrosion inhibitor recommended.
Drain-down system[a]	Flat-plate liquid collectors. Potable water circulated through collectors. Line pressure feeds collectors (open loop). Has automatic drainage valves. Pitched headers.	No heat exchanger or extra storage tank needed. High performance.	In some instances a larger pump; larger consumption of external energy. System must drain thoroughly. No corrosion inhibitor possible. Freeze danger with valve failure.
Air-to-liquid system[a]	Flat-plate air collectors. Air-to-water heat exchanger. Ductwork and blower. Pipes and circulator. Larger collector area than liquid system.	Won't freeze (dependent on exchanger location). Air leaks won't cause damage. Integrates well with space heating.	Hard to detect leaks. More space required for ducts. Blower and circulator required. More carpentry involved. Less efficient than other systems.
Phase-change system[a]	Flat-plate liquid collectors. Freon 114 or R12.[b] Storage tank higher than collectors (passive type). Closed-loop refrigerant-grade piping from collectors to storage tank (passive type) or to condenser (subambient type).	No external power (passive type). Can be mounted at any location (subambient type).	Very hard to detect leaks. Special equipment to install. More components required (subambient type).

[a]Reprinted by permission from Russell H. Plante, *Solar Domestic Hot Water: A Practical Guide*, © 1983 by John Wiley & Sons.

[b]Hydrochlorofluorocarbon or hydrocarbon refrigerants must be used in new systems.

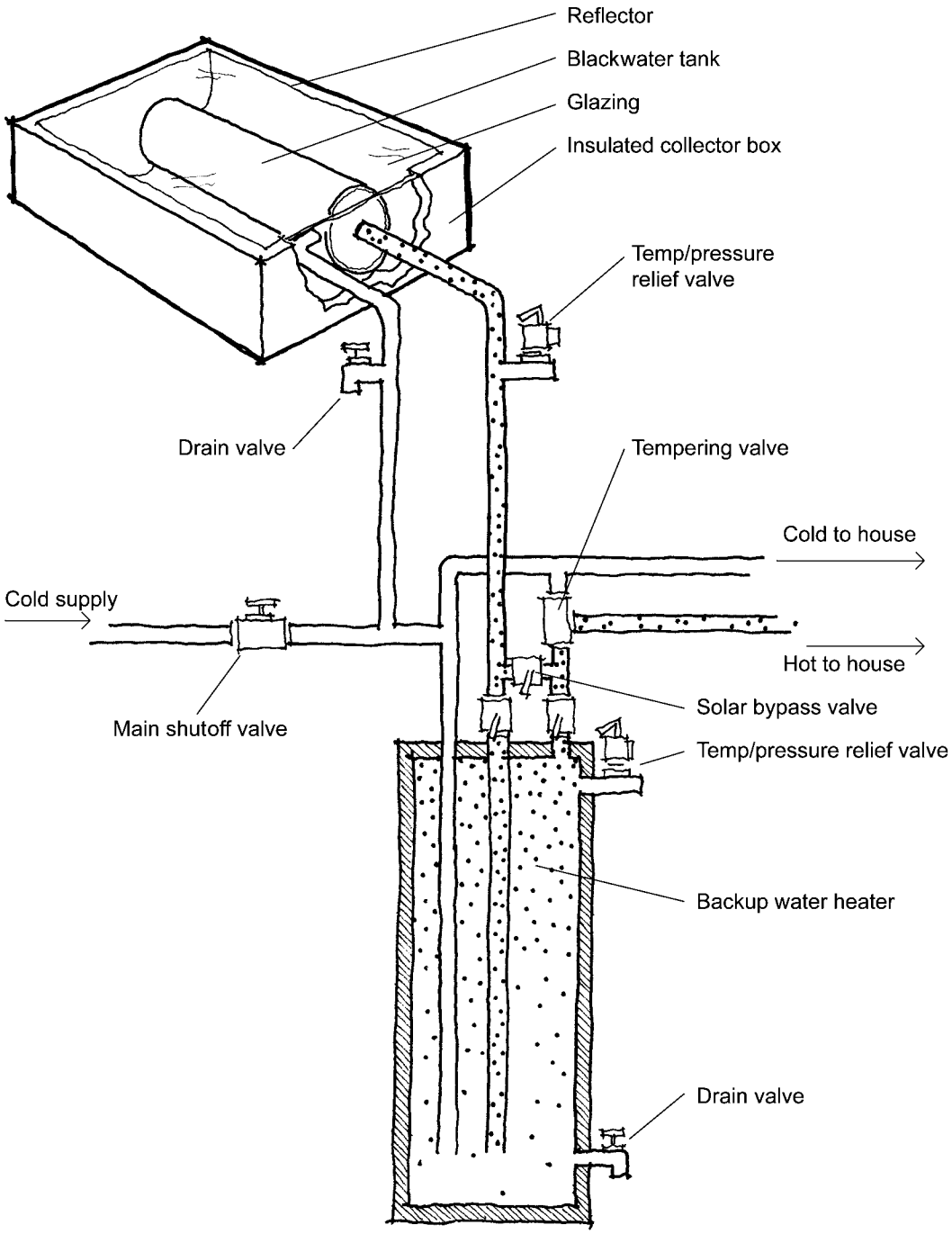


Fig. 21.29 *Batch solar water-heating system. (Drawn by Dain Carlson; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

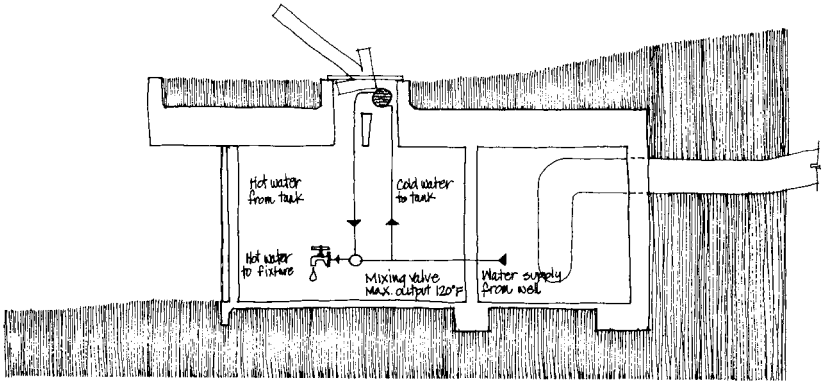


Fig. 21.30 *A batch solar water heater supplies the hot water for the Antelope Valley California Poppy Reserve. (Courtesy of the Colyer/Freeman Group, Architects, San Francisco.)*

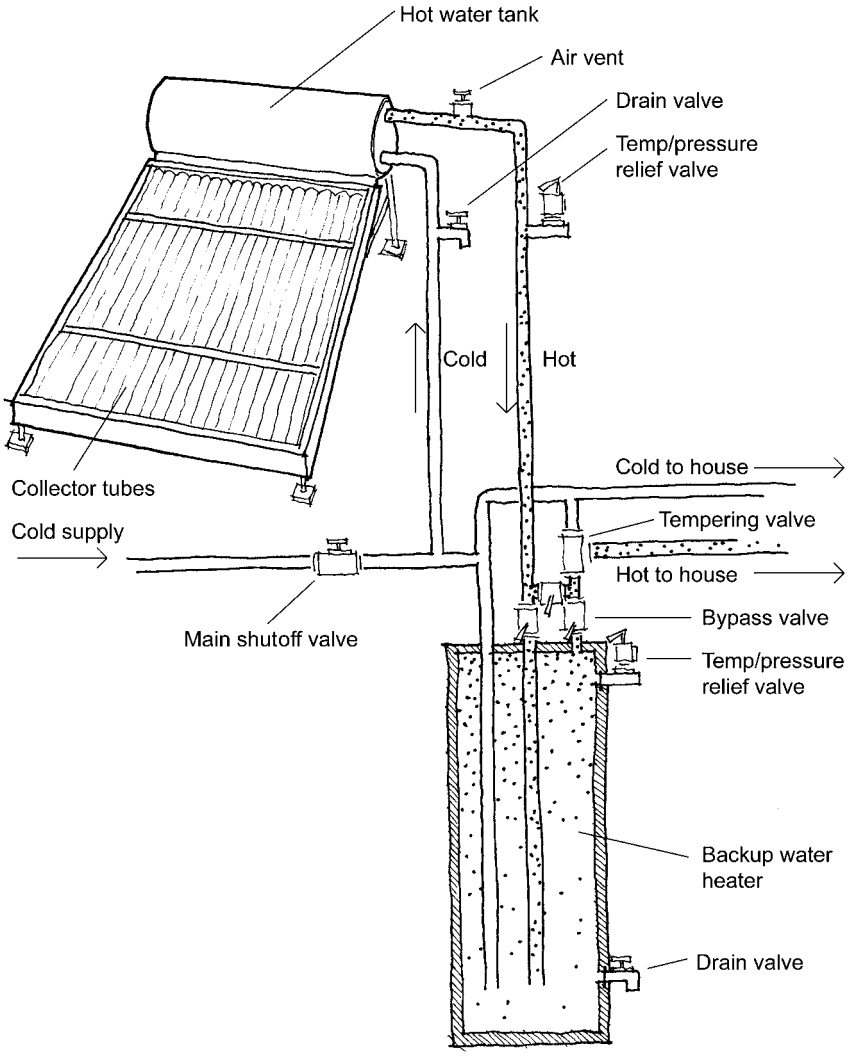


Fig. 21.31 *Thermosiphon solar water-heating system. (Drawn by Dain Carlson; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

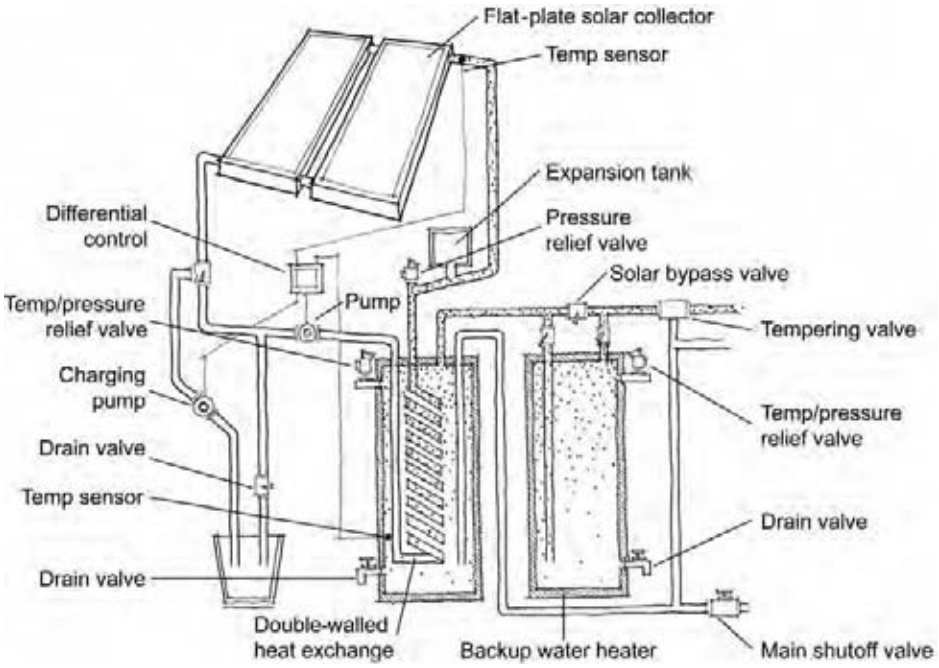


Fig. 21.32 *Closed-loop, freeze-resistant solar water heating system. (Drawn by Dain Carlson; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

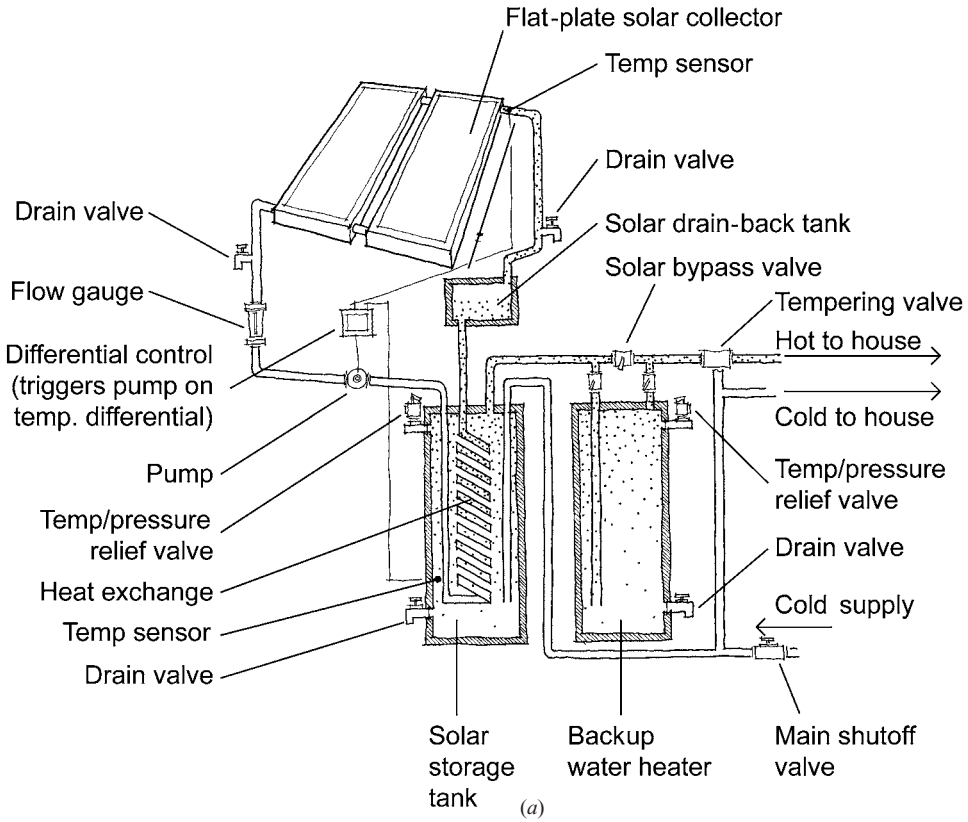
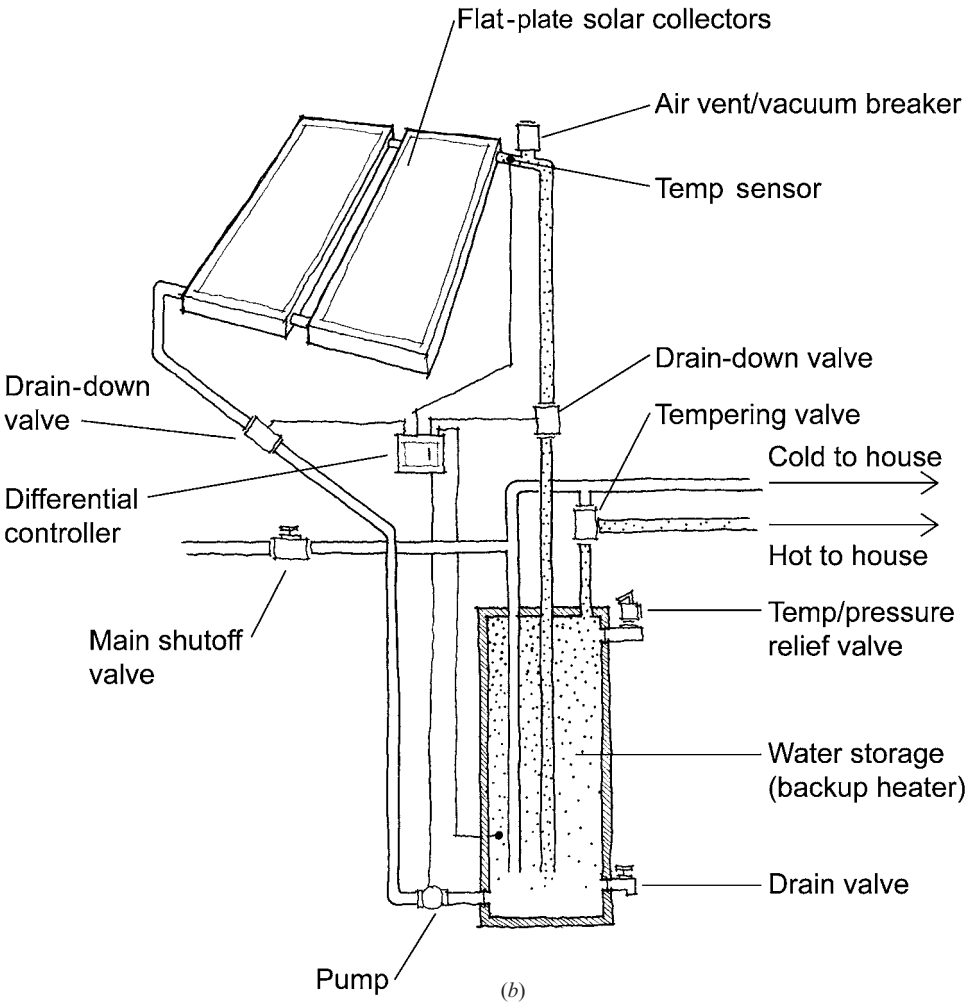


Fig. 21.33 *Comparison of (a) a drain-back solar water-heating system with (b) a drain-down system. The drain-back system's performance can be increased by the addition of a check valve that allows the colder water at the bottom of the storage tank to circulate into the heat exchanger. The drain-down system is best used in mild-winter climates with infrequent freezing temperatures, since the water in the collector is dumped with each freezing threat. (Drawings by Dain Carlson; © 2004 Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



(*b*)

Fig. 21.33 *(Continued)*

5. *Drain-down systems.* These are the only active systems that do not utilize heat exchangers (Fig. 21.33*b*); DHW is circulated directly through the collector. Both higher pressure and higher efficiency result. In this system, the collector is usually filled with water that moves only when a differential controller activates the pump. Whenever the outside temperature drops near freezing, the controller activates solenoid valves and the water in the collector is drained down (dumped). In cold-winter areas, this process can result in several gallons of water wasted per winter day. Although the lack of a heat exchanger is attractive from the standpoint of cost savings and thermal efficiency, the set of electrically controlled solenoid valves is not foolproof. When malfunctions occur in pressurized systems, the loss of water can be enormous, and there is great potential for water damage to the building.

6. *Air-to-liquid systems.* These systems use air collectors and rock storage beds; a heat exchanger transfers heat from the collector-heated air to the hot water. Much lower efficiencies result, and the ductwork is much more space-consuming than are pipes for water collectors. Leaks in air collectors or storage beds are very difficult to detect. However, air collectors are not damaged by freezing.

7. *Phase-change systems.* In any of the aforementioned systems in which potable water is kept

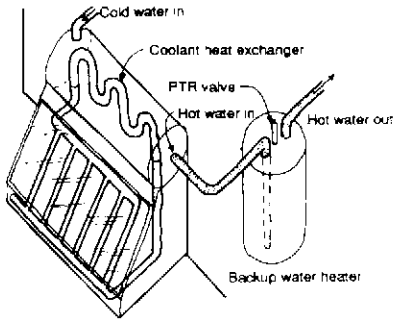


Fig. 21.34 *In a phase-change system, small heat exchangers can be built into the tops of thermosiphoning collectors; DHW is drained down when the threat of freezing arises. (Adapted by permission from* Solar Age*, November 1983.)*

out of the collector, the fluid within the collector not only can be freeze-resisting, but also can take advantage of latent heat (the considerable amount of heat stored when fluid vaporizes and released when a fluid condenses). The primary disadvantages of a phase-change system (Fig. 21.34) are the high first cost, the difficulty in detecting leaks, and the resulting threat of chlorofluorocarbon or hydrochlorofluorocarbon refrigerant fluids to the environment.

Passive approaches to phase-change materials were outlined in the discussion of thermosiphoning systems. *Subambient* approaches utilize a heat pump and can glean heat even from cold-cloudy ("subambient") conditions. They thus represent a form of solar-assisted heat pump, closely related to those discussed in Section 21.6(j).

The *sizing* of solar water heaters usually begins with simple design guidelines. For batch heaters, such a sizing guideline (Fig. 21.35) is:

0.45 to 0.65 ft^2 glazing per gallon of water stored
(0.011 to 0.016 m^2 per liter of water stored)

For the flat-plate solar collectors used in all the solar DHW systems listed in this section, the sizing guidelines are:

12 to 25 ft^2 collector/person (residential)
(1.1 to 2.3 m^2/person)
Optimum tilt (up from the horizontal) equal to latitude (or less)
1 to 1.5 gal of storage per square foot of collector area
(41 to 61 L per square meter of collector area)

This collector-sizing guideline is for *residential* hot water usage, including cooking and bathing. For warmer climates with ample insolation, use the lower figure; this will supply about half of the hot water on an annual average basis. (For *nonresidential* DHW, adjust the sizing guideline by comparing the gallons of hot water per person per day used in residences to those used in the nonresidential function under design.)

A more detailed sizing procedure would consider the collector's expected heat contribution for some typical months. Such a procedure requires both climate data and assumptions about water temperatures and other values. As a result, detailed answers are best obtained from computer programs, such as those listed in Appendix M. For those interested in something more than sizing guidelines but less than computer programs, consider the following approach to collector sizing (adapted from Brown, Reynolds, and Ubbelohde, *InsideOut: Design Procedures for Passive Environmental Technologies*, © 1982 by John Wiley & Sons).

STEP 1. *Select the collector tilt angle.* This can be done by consulting Appendix C, Tables C.11 to C.14 for I-P (C.15 to C18 for SI), which present clear-day insolation values for various tilt angles. Table C.19 for I-P (C.20 for SI) presents average insolation values on horizontal surfaces, which should also be checked. The tilt angle selected should be close to the optimum angle for the best month for total insolation.

STEP 2. *Check the collector efficiency.* This should be done at least twice: for the best insolation month and for the worst month. This step requires the following data:

Hourly insolation on tilted surface
(Appendix C, Tables C.11 to C.14 for I-P [C.15 to C.18 for SI])

Outdoor average temperature (Appendix C, Table C.19 for I-P [C.20 for SI])

The hourly insolation values on tilted surfaces in Tables C.11 to C.14 (and C.15 to C.18) are for *clear* days. For most locations, this should be adjusted for *average* conditions, which are shown for vertical (south) and horizontal surfaces in Table C.19 (and C.20). Because for most of North America the optimum yearly DHW tilt angle will be closer to

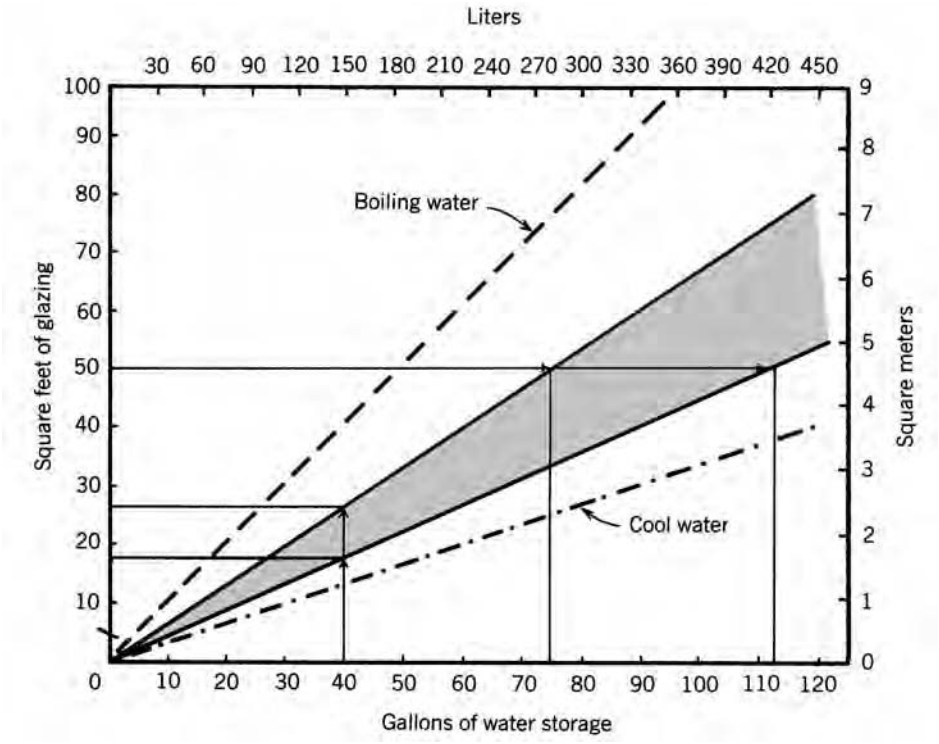


Fig. 21.35 *Design guideline for the sizing of batch solar water heaters. In this example, a 40-gal (150-L) storage tank should be contained within a collector that has between 18 and 27 ft² (1.7 and 2.5 m²) of south-facing glazing, or a 50-ft² (4.7-m²) collector box should contain a tank of between 75 and 113 gal (285 and 430 L). (Adapted from Daniel K. Reif,* Passive Solar Water Heaters*; copyright © 1983 by Brick House Publishing Company, Inc. Reprinted by permission.)*

horizontal than to vertical, a simple correction to insolation must be made:

Hourly average day insolation on tilted surface

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \text{hourly clear-day} \\ \text{insolation on} \\ \text{tilted surface} \end{bmatrix} \times$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} \text{average-day total} \\ \text{horizontal insolation} \\ \hline \text{clear-day total} \\ \text{horizontal insolation} \end{bmatrix}$$

This step also requires assumptions about the input temperature of the water supplied to the collector (T_i). In summer, this can be quite high—even higher than the thermostat setpoint temperature of the hot water tank. In winter, it is likely to be lower, by perhaps 10 to 20F° (5.5 to 11C°), than the thermostat setpoint temperature. Finally, this step requires a choice of collector type so that efficiency can be determined. Figure 21.36 shows the efficiency curves for a variety of solar collectors.

Note that the simplest of all, the unglazed flat black collectors, have the highest efficiency of all collectors at combinations of very low $T_i - T_a$ and very high I_o. These conditions are typical of summer days, on which the water needs to be heated only a few degrees. This corresponds to swimming pool applications and is one reason such collectors are so popular for that purpose; low cost is another reason.

For the opposite conditions—those of winter space heating—more elaborate collectors are appropriate. Evacuated-tube collectors have the advantage of nearly eliminating collector heat loss by convection. Fresnel lens and/or tracking-concentrating collectors increase the incoming solar energy per unit area, whereas heat loss

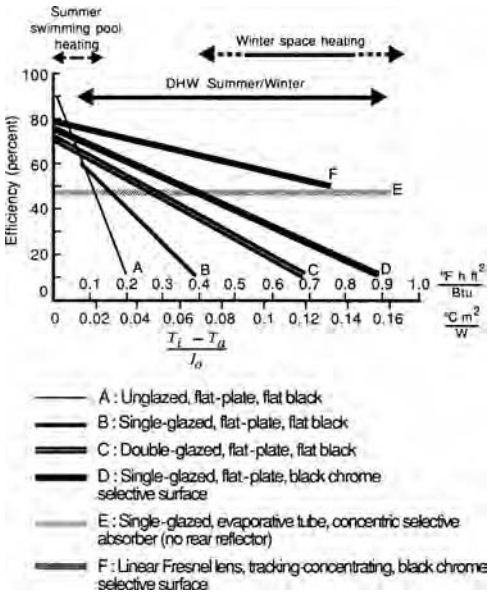


Fig. 21.36 *Collector efficiencies depend upon insolation (I_o), water temperature entering the collector (T_i), and ambient (air) temperature (T_a). (Based on the U.S. Dept. of Housing and Urban Development's* Intermediate Minimum Property Standards Supplement*, 1977.)*

increases only slightly (due to higher Δt). Both of these approaches are expensive, and tracking collectors require added maintenance for the tracking mechanism. Selective surfaces represent a simple, relatively cheap improvement over flat black collectors (compare *D* to *B*); they absorb solar energy just as well but emit radiant energy at a vastly lower rate, thus cutting collector heat loss by radiation.

STEP 3. *Approximate system efficiency.* Once the hot water leaves a collector, it must be led back to storage. In indirect systems, it must go through a heat exchanger. The tank will lose some heat; heat losses also occur as the cooled water is led back to the collector. Another "loss" to be considered is noncollection time. Estimates of collector performance are based on total daily insolation, yet the first few and last few hours of daylight generally will *not* bring enough insolation to warm the collector. Therefore, some reduction should be made in daily insolation totals when performance is estimated. All these factors can be accounted for by assuming a lower system efficiency. A perhaps optimistic assumption is that system efficiency = (0.8) × (collector efficiency).

STEP 4. *Determine the total heat needed for DHW.* Estimates of the quantity of hot water needed were made in Section 21.6(h). Once the total gallons (or liters) per day are known and the desired storage temperature determined, the heat needed for the daily supply of DHW is easy to calculate. In I-P units:

$$Q = 8.33\ (\text{gpd})\ (t_s - t_g)$$

where

Q = daily heat need, Btu
8.33 = weight of water, pounds per gallon × Btu/lb °F
t_s = storage temperature, °F (see Table 21.7)
t_g = groundwater temperature, °F (see Fig. 8.56, well-water temperatures)

In SI units:

$$Q = 1.16\ (\text{L/d})\ (t_s - t_g)$$

where

Q = daily heat need, Wh
1.16 = the SI equivalent of the 8.33 factor
t_s = storage temperature, °C
t_g = groundwater temperature, °C

STEP 5. *Determine the desired percentage solar contribution to DHW.* There are several approaches to this problem. One common strategy is to have solar provide 100% of the hot water needs in the best insolation month. A closely related strategy is to choose the *yearly* percentage of solar heat desired and then provide that percentage in the average month (such as March). Whatever strategy is chosen, a month and its percentage of solar heat must be identified.

STEP 6. *Size the collector.* This is done by combining the preceding steps as follows:

$$\text{collector area} = \frac{\text{daily heat need} \times \text{percent solar desired}}{\text{daily insolation} \times \text{system efficiency}}$$

This may be done for several months as a check on optimum collector size.

EXAMPLE 21.4 Determine the approximate size of solar collectors needed to serve the women's dormitory

described in Example 21.3. Assume the location to be Springfield, Illinois.

STEP 1. *Tilt angle.* Refer to Appendix C (Table C.19 [C.20 for SI]). Springfield's latitude is 39.8° N. In Table C.19 (C.20), average insolation is given for July. Use this month as the best month.

From Table C.12 (C.16 for SI), the optimum tilt angle for July at 40° N latitude is horizontal. However, at 30° tilt (latitude minus 10°), much better performance will be obtained in average months, such as March and September. Choose a 30° tilt angle.

STEP 2. *Collector efficiency.* For the best month (July), the best hourly clear-day insolation is 307 Btu/h ft^2 (969 W/m^2), at 30° tilt, in the hour centered at noon. To adjust this for *average* hourly value, calculate

$$307 \times \frac{2058 \text{ Btu/day average horizontal*}}{2534 \text{ Btu/day clear horizontal**}}$$

$$= 249 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2$$

$$(969 \times 2171 \text{ kJ}/2673 \text{ kJ} = 787 \text{ W/m}^2)$$

*Table C.19 [C.20 for SI]; **Table C.12 [C16 for SI]

Outdoor average temperature (TA) is approximately obtainable from Table C.19 (C.20 for SI); TA for July is 76°F (24.4°C). This is quite conservative, since it is the average daily temperature; the temperature at noon should be higher. From Appendix B, the mean daily range for Springfield is 19.2F° (10.7C°). Thus, 76 + 19.2/2 = about 86°F [24.4 + (10.7/2) = 29.8°C]. The thermostat setpoint temperature of the water storage tank is assumed to be 115°F (46°C). This allows adequately hot water for most dormitory uses, although a higher temperature will be required for the cafeteria's dishwashing.

Assume, because it is summer, that T_i is at the setpoint of 115°F (46°C). (In winter, it would be lower.) Therefore, the quantity $(T_i - T_a)/I_o$ can be calculated at

$$\frac{115°\text{F} - 86°\text{F}}{249 \text{ Btu/h ft}^2} = 0.116$$

[in SI (46°C – 29.8°C) / 787 W/m^2 = 0.021]

Enter Fig. 21.36 with this number, and assume a single-glazed, flat-plate selective surface collector (type D). The efficiency will be about 70% under these conditions.

STEP 3. *System efficiency.* Use the design guideline

0.8 (70% collector efficiency) = 56%

STEP 4. *Total heat needed.* The average usage in gpd (L/d) can be estimated from Table 21.21. For women's dormitories, the rate is 12.3 gal/student × 300 students = 3690 gal (46.6 L/student × 300 = 13,980 L). For the cafeteria, the average rate (type A) is 2.4 gal/meal = 2.4 × 300 = 720 gal (9.1 L/meal × 300 = 2730 L). Total volume needed: 3690 + 720 = 4410 gal (13,980 + 2730 = 16,710 L).

Groundwater temperature for Springfield (from Fig. 8.56) is about 56°F (13.3°C). Assume that solar energy will be used to raise it to 115°F (46°C).

$$Q = 8.33 \text{ (4410 gpd) (115 – 56)} = 2{,}167{,}380 \text{ Btu}$$

[Q = 1.16 (16,710 L/d) (46 – 13.3) = 634 kWh]

STEP 5. *Desired percent solar.* For this best hour in July, assume a 100% solar contribution.

STEP 6. *Collector size.* Average daily insolation can be obtained from Appendix C as before:

Clear day total, 30° tilt, July: 2409 Btu (0.706 kWh) (Table C.12 [C.16 for SI])

Clear day total, horizontal, July: 2534 Btu (0.743 kWh) (Table C.12 [C.16 for SI])

Average day total, horizontal, July: 2058 Btu (0.603 kWh) (Table C.19 [C.20 for SI])

Average July daily insolation (per ft^2), at 30° tilt = 2409 × 2058/2534 = 1956 Btu/ft^2 day

$$(0.706 \times 0.603/0.743 = 0.573 \text{ kWh/ft}^2)$$
$$= 6.17 \text{ kWh/m}^2$$

$$\text{collector area} = \frac{(\text{load} \times \text{solar contribution})}{(\text{insolation} \times \text{system efficiency})}$$

$$= \frac{2{,}167{,}380 \text{ Btu} \times 100\%}{1956 \text{ Btu/ft}^2 \times 56\%}$$

$$= 1979 \text{ ft}^2$$

[(634 kWh × 100%)/(6.17 kWh/m^2 × 56%) = 184 m^2]

This size should be checked against average-month performance and adjusted as desired. Note that this is a ratio of about 1979/300 = 6.6 ft^2 (184/300 = 0.6 m^2) of collector per student—lower than the general rule for typical residential DHW systems.

Note also that at the design guideline rate of 1 to 1.5 gal (3.8 to 5.7 L) of storage per square foot of collector, a tank size of 2000 to 3000 gal (7570 to 11,355 L) is indicated. In Example 21.3, the minimum recovery rate required a storage tank of 8150 gal (≈30,670 L), and the fastest recovery rate required 3010 gal (≈11,370 L). Either seems sufficient for this size of collector array. ■

Swimming pool heating is an especially attractive application for solar energy. A common design guideline for collector sizing is

$$\text{collector area} = 0.5 \text{ pool surface area}$$

For summer ambient temperature operations, unglazed collectors are both the best-performing and the least expensive, as explained for Fig. 21.36. Another important consideration is a pool cover, which will not only conserve the pool's heat but also reduce water lost by evaporation. On very hot-dry days, water losses can reach 100 gpd from a 20×40-ft pool (380 L/day from a 6×12-m pool).

(j) Heat Pump Water Heaters

The heat pump's use of the compressive refrigeration cycle was explained in Section 9.5 (also see Fig. 9.38). Air-water heat pumps are also used for DHW, as shown in Fig. 21.37. Because these devices remove heat from the air, they are usually installed either in normally overheated spaces (such as restaurant kitchens) or in unheated spaces such as garages or basements. (They can also remove heat from exhaust air, as explained in Chapter 5.) The spaces that contain these units will be cooled and dehumidified. Heat pumps require only a little more space than the simple hot-water storage tanks they serve. Some noise is created by the compressor and the fan that moves air across the evaporator.

Heat rejected from any refrigeration unit can be used for heating water via the heat pump. Applications include ice-making machines, refrigerated display units in grocery stores, walk-in freezers, and many others. Whenever constant refrigeration loads are present, there is an opportunity to utilize waste heat.

Graywater provides another opportunity for using a heat pump. Where filtered graywater is collected for recycling on site (as for irrigation systems), a water–water heat pump can heat a DHW storage tank as it lowers the graywater tank temperature. See Chapter 22 for graywater system design.

21.7 FIXTURES AND WATER CONSERVATION

Building design and fixture choice can affect water and energy consumption over the life of a building. It is the users who turn the faucets on and off, but the designer who can encourage resource conservation through initial decisions, here centered largely in kitchens and bathrooms.

Visible consumption is one strategy to encourage the users of fixtures to conserve water. We see, hear, feel, and sometimes taste water as it issues from a fixture. If we could see *how much* water is involved in each use, we could more readily alter our pattern of use to conserve water where appropriate. Rainwater

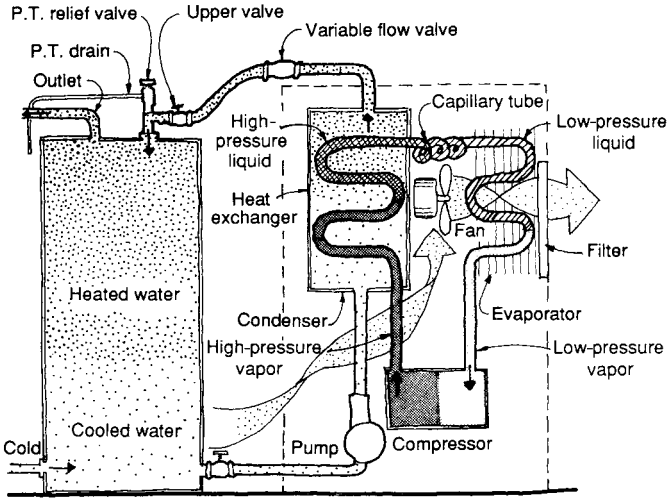


Fig. 21.37 *Heat pump (air-water) used for heating DHW. (Adapted by permission from* Specifying Engineer, *October 1983. © 1983 by Cahners Publishing Co.)*

storage tanks outside bathroom windows, used to flush toilets, might have a visible indicator of the water level; the lower this level, the more that conservation is an imperative. The water-level indicator might be as simple as visible condensation on the tank's outer surface. Small, transparent tanks of clean supply water could be placed above lavatories, filled only when empty by means of a simple float valve. The user might thus be encouraged to use only a portion of the water already in the tank. Sufficient pressure at the fixture is achieved by such a tank's elevation above the fixture. The designer might also consider making the quantity of used (waste) water visible, but such water is often unsightly and the resulting quantity is "after the fact"—too late to conserve.

Audible consumption is another strategy, calling attention to the flow of supply (or waste) water. This is achieved most simply by slightly undersizing water supply pipes so that the water velocity becomes audible (at about 10 fps [3 m/s]). This strategy should be carefully considered; it is one thing to inform the water user, another to annoy. Audible flow is perhaps best justified on lines to exterior hose bibbs, where irrigation or car-washing hoses may inadvertently be left on.

Elimination of bodily wastes accounts for a significant portion of residential water usage (see Chapter 22), and bathing accounts for a significant portion of residential hot water usage (see Table 21.7). The choice of fixtures can have an impact on water conservation, and on energy conservation where hot water is involved. The bathroom is thus a site for potential resource conservation.

(a) Physiology, Psychology, and Fixtures

One of the more challenging aspects of bathroom design is the frequent conflict between physiological design criteria and such psychological influences as cultural attitudes about bathroom activities. Physiological criteria change as slowly as evolution. Cultural attitudes can change very rapidly, even within a generation. The bathroom supports two primary human activities: cleansing and elimination. Today's common attitudes about these closely linked activities are that one is "clean," the other "dirty." One might be discussed (although rarely) among friends; the other is simply not fit for conversation. This conflict in attitudes influences the design of our plumbing fixtures. The toilet is the fixture used for elimination; it is the logical place to provide for the cleansing of the perineal zone that should immediately follow elimination. (This is especially true of public toilets, where stalls close off toilets from lavatories.) Yet very few toilets presently incorporate a cleansing feature: the mixture of cleansing and elimination in the same fixture too often seems abhorrent.

The brief summary presented in this section is based largely on a particularly revealing (and entertaining) study of the struggle between physiological and cultural criteria in fixture and bathroom design—Alexander Kira's *The Bathroom: Criteria for Design*, an expanded edition of which was published in 1976 by Viking Press.

(b) Lavatories

A key issue here is the contrast between running water and a standing water body. Lavatories are used primarily for the cleansing of hands, face, and teeth—activities done quickly with running water that is wasted directly rather than being collected. Most lavatories are designed as collection bowls—perhaps a reflection of the days when washbasins of standing water, drawn and heated elsewhere, were brought to the bathing place. Most lavatories also have fittings that project out over the sink. Although these fittings have slowly evolved into very sleekly designed objects, most of them still dump running water directly into the drain, are hard to use as drinking fountains, and can wound those who try to wash their hair in the lavatory. In considering the prevalence of running as opposed to standing water, the role that running water could play in keeping lavatory surfaces clean, and the need for a drinking fountain when teeth are brushed, Kira proposed a quite different lavatory design (Fig. 21.38).

At full flow, lavatory faucets typically deliver 4 to 5 gpm (0.25 to 0.3 L/s). Newer low-flow faucets utilize a variety of devices to function as well (or better) with less water. Such devices include aerators (which add air bubbles to the stream, making it splash less and appear larger), flow restrictors, and mixing valves to control temperature. The lower flows achieved range from ½ to 2½ gpm (0.03 to 0.16 L/s). Another promising development is the foot-operated faucet, which frees the hands from



Fig. 21.38 *Proposed lavatory that exploits running water. The water issues from a fountain-like stream for ease in drinking and in hair and face washing. The stream strikes the lavatory bowl in such a way as to minimize splashing outside the bowl, yet sets up a self-cleaning swirling action. A small repository at the back of the bowl, over the drain, can serve for standing water when desired. (From* The Bathroom: New and Expanded Edition*; © 1966, 1976 by Alexander Kira. By permission of Bantam Books, a division of Random House, Inc. All rights reserved.)*

having to control water flow, thus saving a few seconds of flow during each lavatory usage. These devices could be particularly helpful at kitchen sinks, where extensive washing of objects takes place.

(c) Whole-Body Cleansing

The running/standing water contrast is even more clearly illustrated here. In cleansing, the ordinary sequence is *wet*, *soap*, *scrub*, *and rinse*. Standing water is good for wetting and very good for soaping/scrubbing; running water is superior for rinsing. The psychological aspect enters here in common attitudes toward tubs and showers. Tubs are often seen as places to relax in, to spend more time in, and perhaps to read in. Showers are viewed as quicker, "no-nonsense," stand-up places. Yet each could benefit from some features of the other.

Tubs should be designed so that the reclining body is supported at the back; this requires a contoured surface (Fig. 21.39) rather than the ordinary straight-line design. It also requires braces for one's feet because otherwise the body will tend to float up and away from such a backrest. Tubs can be designed to accommodate persons of various leg lengths, as shown in Fig. 21.39*b*. There must also be a seat to give most of the body a chance to be out of the water and to facilitate safe entry into and exit from the tub. Especially needed is a handheld shower for the final rinse; soapy standing water leaves a scummy film on both people and fixtures.

Showers may seem very efficient, but cleaning would be more thorough and safe if the bather could turn off the water and sit for at least part of the soap/scrub activity, especially for the lower legs and feet. Showers with integral seats are now common.

Another consideration is the location of water controls (fittings). The user should be able to reach them easily from outside the tub or shower without wetting his or her arm, but also should be able to manipulate them from within the tub/shower even if temporarily blinded by soap.

Shower heads have been notorious for encouraging prodigal water usage; typical flow rates of 6 gpm (0.4 L/s) and maximum rates of 12 gpm (0.7 L/s) once were common. Even in a short (5-minute) shower, this rate of use could consume as much as 60 gal (227 L) of water, much of it heated. Many codes now require a limitation on showerhead flow; a flow of 2.5 gpm (0.2 L/s) is common. These flows can be designed into the shower head, or they can be achieved by cheap, simple flow restrictors in retrofit applications. Some utilities distribute flow restrictors free of charge. Most bathers notice no difference, either in enjoyment or in cleansing, when using restricted-flow shower heads.

(d) Elimination

Several conflicts arise with toilets: the already-mentioned difficulty of combining cleansing with elimination, the issue of pure (high-grade) water for an impure (low-grade) purpose, and the conflict over the height of the toilet. A *lower toilet* is definitely of benefit to the average person, who will achieve far better bowel evacuation in a full squatting position. If combined with a toilet seat contoured to best support the body during

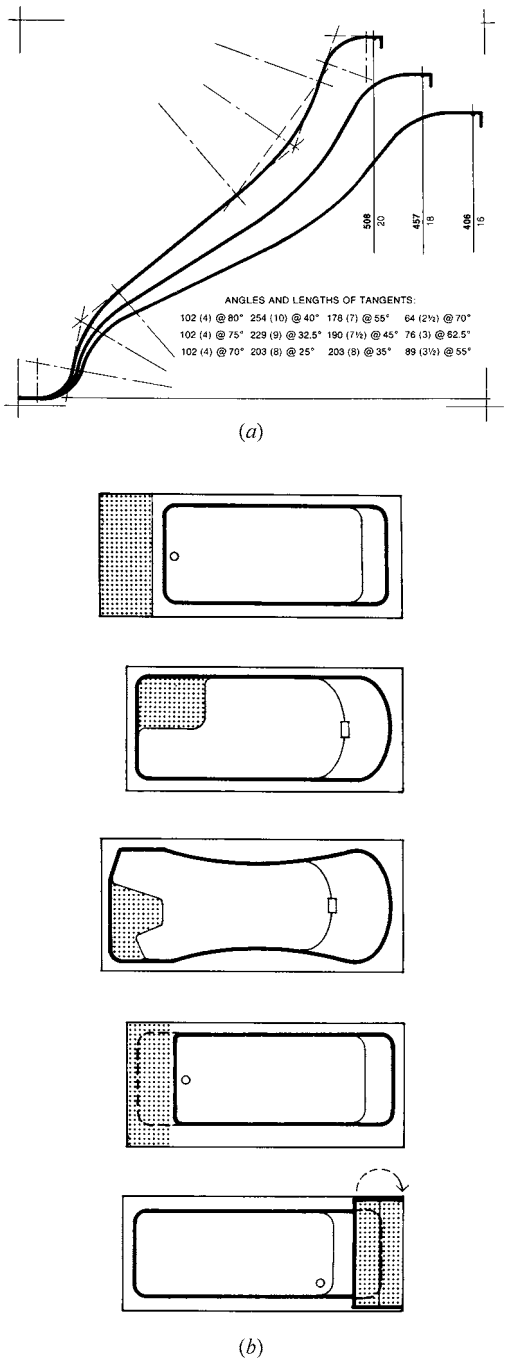


Fig. 21.39 *Some considerations for tub design to facilitate relaxation during whole-body cleansing. (a) A contoured backrest allows comfortable reclining, with support of both the shoulder and lower back. Curve 2, with a median angle of 32.5°, promises comfort for most users. (b) Various tub plans, allowing long- and short-legged persons to brace their bodies against the contoured backrest. Raised seats are also provided to facilitate safe entry/exit. (From* The Bathroom: New and Expanded Edition*; © 1966, 1976 by Alexander Kira. By permission of Bantam Books, a division of Random House, Inc. All rights reserved.)*

defecation, the proposed toilet in Fig. 21.40*a* would be physiologically superior to most of today's fixtures. There are problems with low height. The typical male stands while urinating, and a lower toilet presents a more difficult target. This can have serious maintenance consequences unless males can be induced to sit or a separate urinal is provided—an unlikely option for residential bathrooms. (In our culture, urinals look institutional; they are also expensive.) Another problem with a lower toilet is that the elderly and some handicapped people will have difficulty getting on and off the seat (see Fig. 21.51). Yet another problem arises from the fact that toilets are considered to be seats (for reading, toenail clipping, etc.). The low, squat-inducing toilet is decidedly not at a comfortable chair height.

As a result, a *higher toilet* with otherwise similar features is proposed (Fig. 21.40*b*). Note that both of these toilets feature openings whose shape differs from that of the conventional oval. This hourglass-shaped opening provides proper support for the body during defecation, and it allows a more generous opening, front and back, for proper perineal cleansing by hand. Another change is that there is no separate toilet seat; instead, these fixtures incorporate electric resistance heaters that warm the small portion of the toilet that contacts the body. Thus, the toilet becomes a consumer of energy—which is also used to heat the water that is provided for perineal cleansing. For those who insist on a separate seat, or for ordinary posture on conventional toilets, a physiologically sound contoured toilet seat is available (Fig. 21.41).

It is especially important that perineal cleansing be encouraged by the designers of bathrooms. The typical dry toilet tissue provided usually is not adequate for this task. In small, private bathrooms this problem is easily solved by placement of the toilet adjacent to the lavatory (or tub), where toilet tissue can be wetted with clean water. In public toilets separated by stalls, perineal cleansing requires either a clean water source built into the toilet or a separate *bidet* within the stall—a highly unlikely provision, given the extra floor space and the cost of the bidet. Again, cultural issues arise: bidets are quite common in the private bathrooms of Europe but a rarity in North America. Two common alternatives are (1) to build a cleansing source into the toilet itself (Fig. 21.42) or

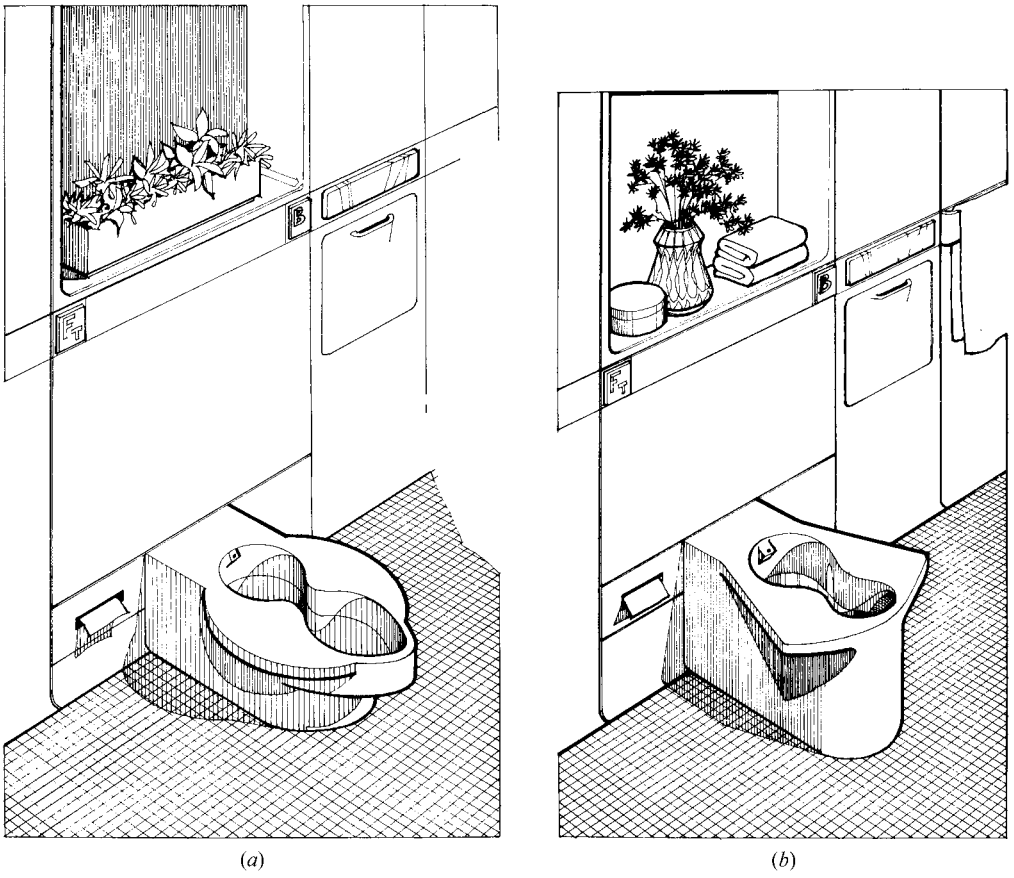


Fig. 21.40 *Two approaches to water closets (toilets) that encourage better posture during defecation and more thorough perineal cleansing. (a) A low toilet allows the best (full-squat) position. (b) The higher toilet is easier for the elderly and handicapped and better intercepts the urine from a standing male. Both of these toilets eliminate the separate toilet seat and its maintenance problems; both use small amounts of energy to warm the toilet at its point of contact with the body and to heat the water for perineal cleansing. Such cleansing is also the reason for the larger front and back openings. The pushbuttons are labeled F_T for the flush and B for the bidet (cleansing) function. (From* The Bathroom: New and Expanded Edition; *© 1966, 1976 by Alexander Kira. By permission of Bantam Books, a division of Random House, Inc. All rights reserved.)*

(2) to construct a toilet seat that provides for such cleansing. Several American manufacturers offer such seats, which can be easily adapted to existing toilets. Using recycled water in a toilet that also offers perineal cleansing complicates the high-grade water issue. Codes often require recycled water to be colored (blue or green), an aesthetic quality unappealing for skin contact even in one's nether regions.

The *urinal* is an answer to the problem posed by lower toilets to males, who stand while urinating. Although urinals are culturally acceptable in public toilet rooms, they have never achieved a place in private bathrooms. One solution proposed by Alexander Kira is to build the home urinal into the wall (Fig. 21.43*a*); it could be pulled out for use, at the optimum mounting height, and at an optimum receiving shape to eliminate backsplash onto the user. When pushed back into the wall, it would flush automatically. A less satisfactory solution would be to modify the toilet by raising its back surface (Fig. 21.43*b*).

For the toilet (water closet), there are four major categories of fixtures, depending upon the amount of water used per flush. The *conventional* toilet uses 3.5 gal (13.2 L) or more per flush; the *watersaver* toilet uses 1.7 to 3.5 gal (6.4 to 13.2 L) per flush; the *low-consumption* toilet (also called *ultra-low flush*) uses 1.6 gal (6 L) or less per flush; and the *waterless* toilet uses no water at all.



Fig. 21.41 *Toilet seat for a conventional water closet, which encourages better posture for defecation and somewhat better access for perineal cleansing. (Courtesy of American Standard, Inc.)*

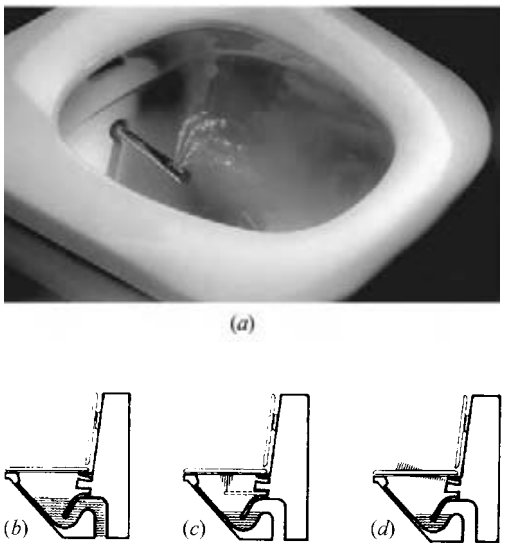


Fig. 21.42 *Provisions for perineal cleansing built into toilets. (a) An adjustable-intensity spray at warm (body) temperature continues for as long as a button is depressed in this Geberit ShowerToilet. (Courtesy of Geberit Manufacturing Inc., Michigan City, IN.) (b) Section through the toilet before/after the cleansing function. (c) At the initiation of perineal cleansing, a pipe extends and emits a controlled spray of warm water. (d) After the pipe is retracted, a warm jet of air issues from just below the seat. (From* The Bathroom: New and Expanded Edition; *© 1966, 1976 by Alexander Kira. By permission of Bantam Books, a division of Random House, Inc. All rights reserved.)*

(e) Conventional Toilets

These toilets may no longer be legally installed in the United States due to their high water consumption. They are still widely encountered in existing installations. In the common toilet, a sudden deluge of water removes human waste and simultaneously helps cleanse the toilet. Fast-moving water requires pressure and makes noise. The older flush-tank toilet (Fig. 21.44*a*) stores a smaller quantity of water (about 2.5 gal [9.5 L]) at sufficient height above the toilet bowl to achieve fast flow. Although it uses minimal amounts of water, it is noisy and its elevated tank has maximum visual impact. The more common (in North America) version is the two-piece toilet with the tank bolted to the bowl (Fig. 21.44*b*). With much less pressure available, this toilet requires 5 to 7 gal (19 to 26 L) per flush, but it is quieter. Newer *shallow-trap* models reduce the quantity needed to 3.5 gal (13.2 L). The maintenance problem posed by the seam between tank and toilet is eliminated in the one-piece toilet (Fig. 21.44*c*). The cost of its low profile is an even greater need for water: 6 to 8 gal (23 to 30 L) per flush.

The fourth common alternative is the flush-valve toilet, which depends upon the building's water pressure rather than its own stored water. A noisy system requiring very high flow rates, it is seldom found in residences. However, it requires as little as 3 gal (11.4 L) per flush.

In addition to differing tank and bowl combinations, there are various types of flushing actions. Four common flush toilets are compared in Fig. 21.45.

Washdown toilets are no longer made in the United States, although many are still in use. This is the noisiest toilet and the most likely to become plugged because it has the smallest-diameter trap. It is usually found in the two-piece flush tank toilet; with an elevated tank, the flush required was only about 2.5 gal (9.5 L).

Siphon jet toilets are in widespread use in North America, particularly in residences. A small

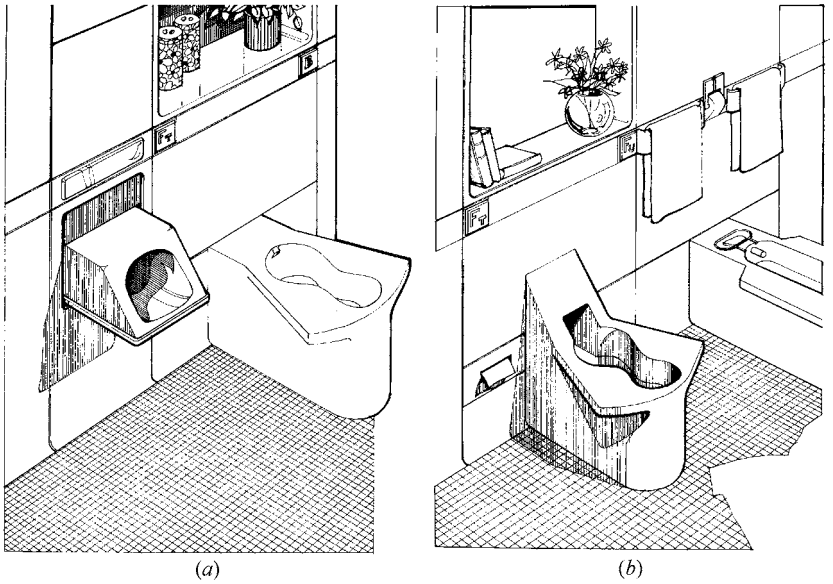


Fig. 21.43 *Designs to accommodate male urination. (a) A built-in, tilt-out urinal for the home, visible only when in use. (b) A higher back for a toilet. A bidet for cleansing is shown to the right of the toilet. (From* The Bathroom: New and Expanded Edition; *© 1966, 1976 by Alexander Kira. By permission of Bantam Books, a division of Random House, Inc. All rights reserved.)*

priming jet hurries the bowl's contents into the trap and hastens the siphon action. With an elevated-tank (two-piece) toilet, this process requires a flush of about 3.75 gal (14.2 L). With the more common close-coupled two-piece toilet, it requires a flush of 5 to 7 gal (19 to 26.5 L). Siphon jet toilets are sometimes equipped with flush valves, which use less water (see the discussion of blowout toilets that follows).

Siphon vortex toilets are especially suitable for low-velocity water (often as a result of low pressure). They are therefore also the quietest, making

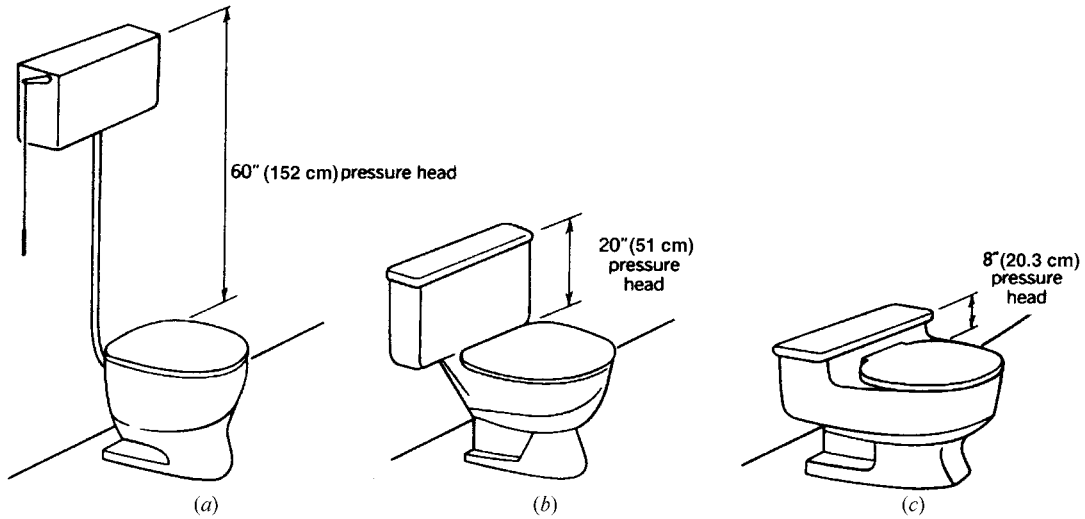


Fig. 21.44 *Conventional flush tank toilets. (a) Two-piece flush tank toilet with an elevated wall-mounted tank and pull chain. (b) Two-piece flush tank toilet with the tank bolted to the bowl ("close-coupled"). (c) One-piece flush tank toilet with an integral tank. (From Milne, 1976.)*

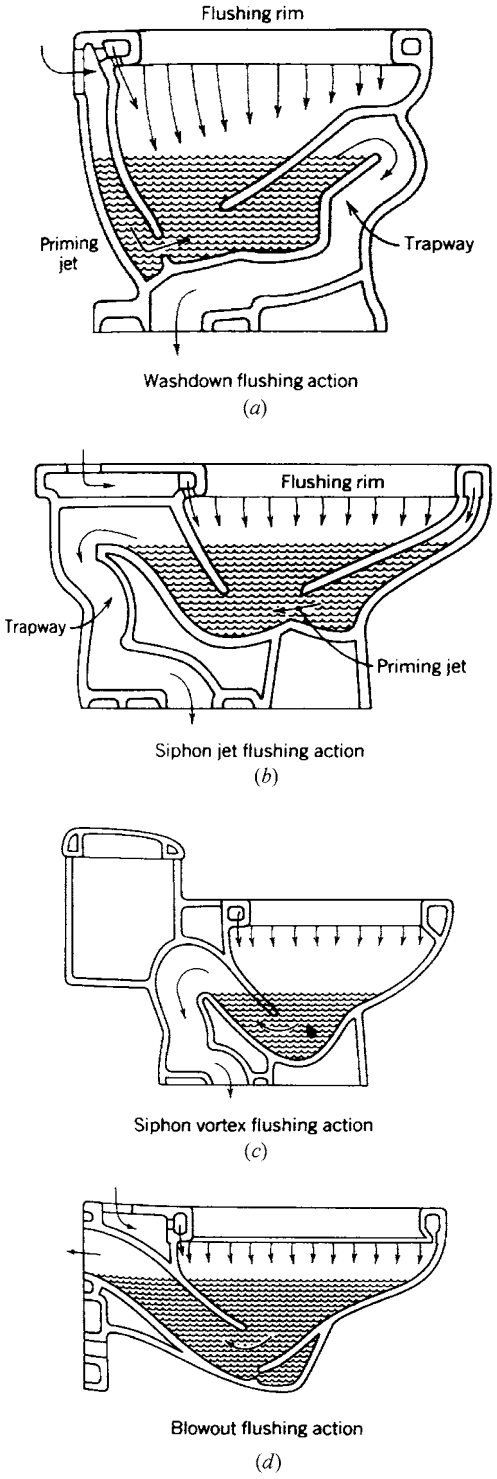


Fig. 21.45 *Four common flushing actions that are built into toilets. Flush tank toilets typically use either type (b) or type (c); flush valve toilets use either type (b) or type (d). (From Milne, 1976.)*

them a favorite wherever bathrooms are adjacent to sleeping areas or other acoustically sensitive spaces. The water enters the bowl off-center in such a way as to form a vortex; this swirling action cleans the sides of the bowl and the trap, helping the siphon action in emptying both bowl and trap. The one-piece flush tank toilets usually have the siphon vortex flushing action, which typically requires 6 to 8 gal (23 to 30 L).

Blowout toilets combine very-high-velocity water and a simple trap to offer a noisy but very-low-maintenance toilet dependent upon flush valves rather than tanks. They are very common in commercial and institutional toilet rooms, where large water supply lines and high pressures are available. The high velocity of the water lowers the quantity required from 3 to 4 gal (11.4 to 15.1 L) per flush.

Architects can easily specify toilets that require less water per flush and yet have very little impact on the user. With effort on the part of both users and architects, water can be recycled, or rainwater collected, to supply toilets with lower-quality water.

(f) Watersaver Toilets

These use 1.7 to 3.5 gal (6.4 to 13.2 L) per flush. Although these toilets use much less water than conventional ones, they may not meet the stricter water limits now established in many water-conscious states and municipalities in the United States (toilets must not exceed 1.6 gal [6 L] per flush). Many of these toilets represent a compromise between the conventional "water waster" and the noisy operation and/or smaller water surface area that typifies so many low-consumption models. Watersaver toilets tend to use a conventional flushing action, and hence need enough height between the tank and the bowl to provide sufficient water pressure within the bowl during the flush.

Toilets can be designed to use less water by varying several characteristics: the pressure of the water entering the bowl (generated either by the height of the tank above the bowl or by utilizing pressure from the water supply system or another source), the shape of the bowl, the way in which the bowl fills and empties, and the trap configuration. Watersaver toilets differ somewhat in most of these characteristics from a conventional toilet; more radical changes are needed to achieve a low-consumption toilet.

(g) Low-Consumption Toilets

These use 1.6 gal (6 L) or less per flush. A heated controversy over these ultra-low-flush water closets developed in the late 1990s due in part to steep price increases and consumer discontent over performance. It appears that regulation got ahead of technology for a time, resulting in a need for repeated low-consumption flushes to accomplish what one higher-consumption flush could do. To remove fecal matter, however, two 1.6-gal (6-L) flushes still approximately equal the old 3.5-gal (13.2-L) flush; to flush urine, one 1.6-gal (6-L) flush is adequate. Manufacturers are finding ways to change the entry point of water into the toilet bowl to increase swirl and thus waste-removal power.

Several of these toilets achieve water conservation by using a *flushometer tank* (Fig. 21.46). Satisfactory flushing can be achieved with much less water by flushing with water entering at greater pressure. Instead of toilet tanks at ordinary air pressure, these tanks utilize water supply system pressure to compress air trapped within the tank. Water enters the bowl with much greater force with this combination of water under system pressure and compressed air. The flush is thorough, quick, and noisy. If the water supply pressure is greater than about 65 psi (448 kPa), some problems with excessive tank pressures may be expected. A pressure-reducing valve would be helpful in such cases.



Fig. 21.46 *Example of a 1.5-gal-flush (5.7-L), pressure-assisted, direct-fed siphon jet flush action flushometer tank, with a large 10 × 12-in. (250 × 300-mm) water surface area in the bowl: the Cadet Aquameter. (Courtesy of American Standard, Inc., Piscataway, NJ.)*

Another water-saving technique is to redesign the bowl to hold less water. The siphon jet, gravity-fed toilet whose tank is shown in Fig. 21.47 exposes a standing water surface of about 4½ × 6 in. (114 × 152 mm), much smaller than that in Fig. 21.46. Along with a very low 1.4-gal (5.3-L) flush, its trap is wide enough to pass a 2⅛-in. (54-mm) ball.

Far lower water consumption is achieved when a central compressed air system is combined with water supply system pressure. The Microphor flush toilet (Fig. 21.48) uses compressed air and 2 qt (1.9 L) of water per flush in a two-chambered toilet. When the flush lever is pressed, the water and waste in the bowl (upper chamber) is deposited into the secondary (lower) chamber, and 2 qt (1.9 L) of water (direct from the supply pipe) washes down the sides of the bowl to await the next user. The now-closed secondary chamber then is pressurized with compressed air, and its contents are deposited into a conventional sewer line.

Air compressors are needed, along with compressed air lines. A small compressor (¼ to ½ hp [187 to 373 W]) with an accompanying air tank will operate up to three toilets. Although the compressor is noisy, the toilets themselves are no noisier than conventional toilets; they use the same plumbing lines. With such low flows, the designer may choose to increase the slope of waste lines; however, the 2-qt (1.9-L) quantity has proven sufficient to carry the waste in existing installations.

In contrast, the Envirovac flush toilet (Fig. 21.49) uses a vacuum and 1.5 qt (1.4 L) per flush. Because a central sewage tank (kept under vacuum by a pump) must be used, the drain line from the toilet to this tank may run horizontally without a slope or may even run vertically upward from the toilet. This can have significant architectural advantages when vertical clearance is tight, toilets are being added within existing structures, or toilets must be located below the level of the public sewer, as in marinas or basements. In tall buildings, significant savings in power for water supply pumping are achieved. Easier approval for building permits, reduced water hook-up fees, and lower monthly sewer charges can be substantial benefits. Furthermore, the central



Fig. 21.47 *A very-low-flow flush is achieved with a reservoir that meters about 1.4 gal (5.3 L) of water from the tank to the bowl during flushing. The standing water surface is about 4½ by 6 in. (115 by 150 mm). The Ultra-One/G. (Courtesy of Eljer Industries, Plano, TX.)*

sewage holding tank can be flushed into the sewer at off-peak times—a benefit to the treatment plant. These water-saving, architectural, and water treatment advantages must be weighed against the cost of the toilets and the tank/pump combinations, the space required for the tank/pump, the power used by the pump, and the possibility that a power failure will halt system operation.

Vacuum systems can be installed for groups of buildings, such as subdivisions. Small pipe sizes,

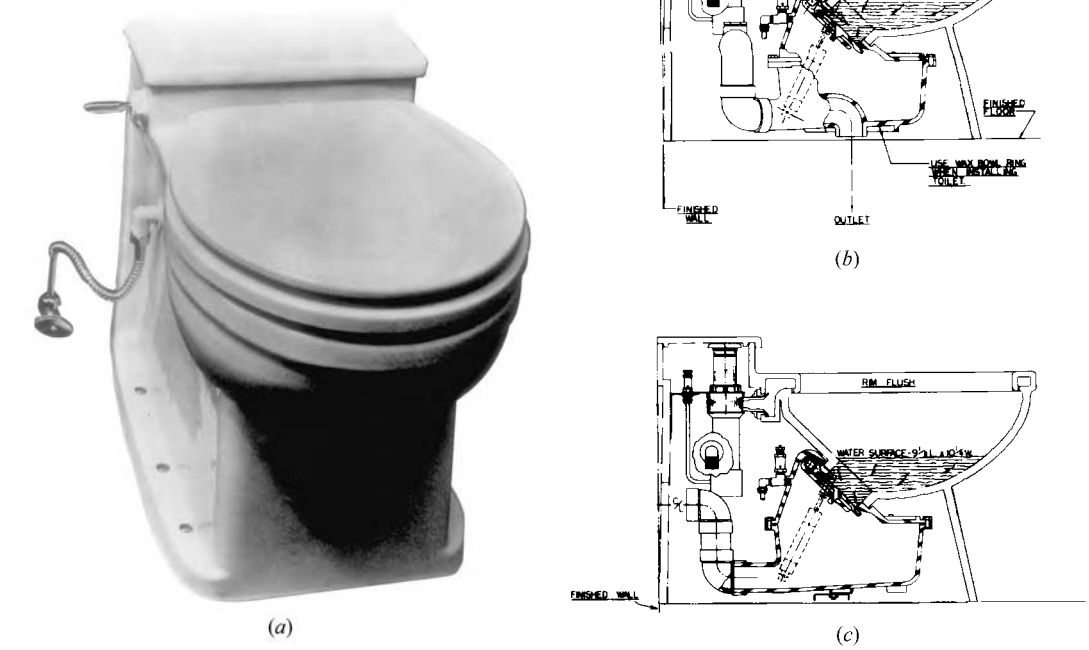
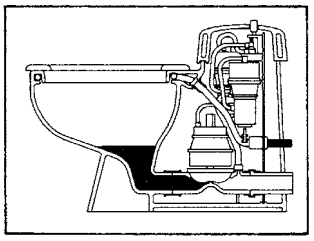
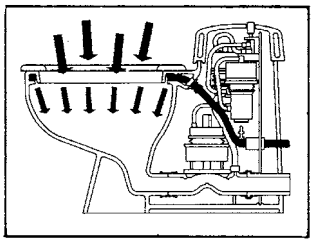


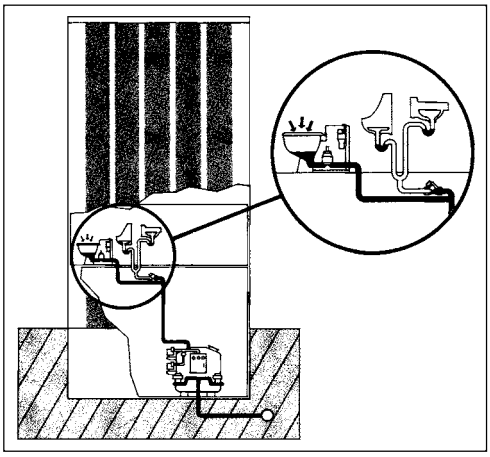
Fig. 21.48 *(a) Compressed air is combined with a 2-qt (1.9-L) flush in the two-chamber Microphor toilet. (b) Section through the floor-discharge model. (c) Section through the wall-discharge model. (Courtesy of the Microphor Company, Willits, CA.)*



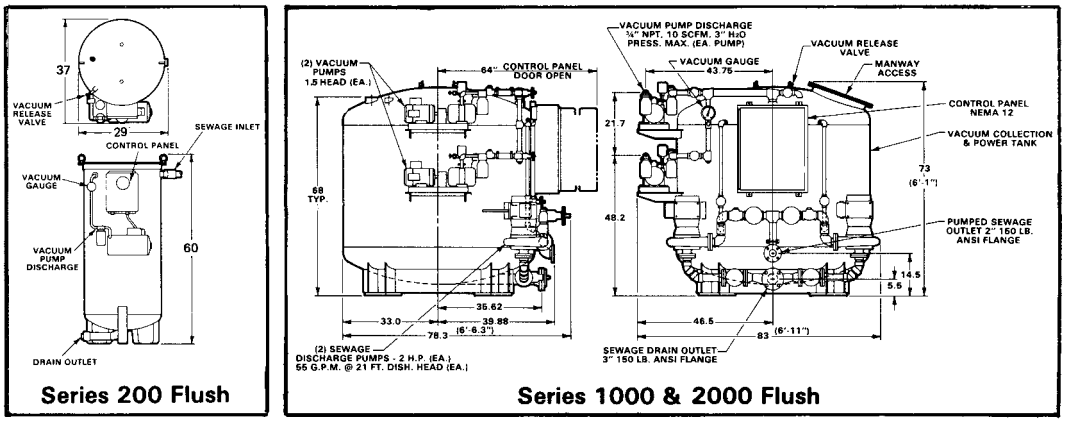
(*a*)



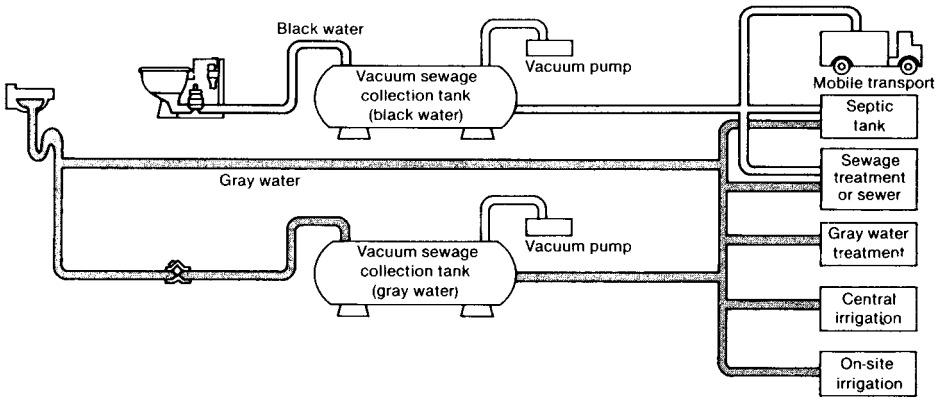
(*b*)



(*c*)



(*d*)



(*e*)

Fig. 21.49 *The Envirovac system utilizes a vacuum and a 3-qt (1.4-L) flush. (a) Less than 3 pints (1.4 L) of water remain in the bowl until the toilet is used. (b) When the pushbutton flush is pressed, the discharge valve opens for about 3 seconds; a rush of air into the evacuated piping carries along sewage, odor, and airborne bacteria. Simultaneously, the washdown water flow begins. The flow continues for 4 seconds after the discharge valve closes, so that most of the 3-qt (1.4-L) flush remains in the bowl. (c) Toilets are directly connected to a central holding tank, kept under a vacuum by a pump. (d) Central tank/pump combinations can serve one house or a large building. (e) The separation of graywater and blackwater is another water-conserving opportunity. (Courtesy of Envirovac, Inc., Rockford, IL.)*

freedom from the need for continuous-sloping sewer lines, and conservation advantages for both water supply and treatment are the benefits. In addition, graywater (from kitchen, laundry, and bathing fixtures) can be kept separate from toilet water (blackwater) and thus made easier to recycle after moderate treatment.

(h) Flushing Controls

Water conservation is encouraged by the *dual cycle* toilet, whose flushing mechanism allows a choice of fewer gallons for liquid wastes, more gallons for solid wastes. This simple mechanism is still more commonly seen outside the United States; its handle is pushed up for liquid flushing and down for solids.

Another development is the *automatic flush*, common in public buildings and triggered by radiant heat from the pressure of a body at the fixture or by light reflected off the user and back to the control. This "touchless" approach seems to promise more for hygiene than for water conservation, although it does prevent the flush valve from being held open too long by a careless user.

In general, plumbing fixtures will consume less water as the supply water pressure is reduced. For this reason, *pressure-reducing valves* are becoming popular as water conservation devices (when they would not otherwise be required to protect fixtures from overpressure). Installed on the supply line to a building, they can save water throughout the system.

Several newer low-consumption toilets use vertical flush valve sleeves, where the flush handle is in the center of the top of the toilet tank. The handle is lifted to initiate the flush. An advantage is that the less time the handle is raised, the less water enters the bowl. Again, less water may be admitted to flush away liquid waste, more water for solid waste.

(i) Waterless Toilets

Because these fixtures eliminate water entirely, they are described in Chapter 22, Section 22.1.

(j) Appliances

Dishwashers, washing machines, and other appliances are big users of water—and of energy to heat it. Dishwashers use 12 to 18 gal (45 to 68 L) per cycle, much of it heated well beyond the 120°F (48°C) typical of a household hot water supply. Some models now allow shorter cycles, which can cut use to perhaps 7 gal (26.5 L).

Clothes washing machines use 40 to 55 gal (151 to 208 L) for full-sized loads. In the past, "suds saver" features allowed soapy, hot wash water to be reused. Many newer washers allow for a wider selection of water quantities and temperatures—a feature that can save considerable water and energy. Horizontal-axis (front-loading) washers have greatly reduced the need for hot water per wash cycle.

21.8 FIXTURE ACCESSIBILITY AND PRIVACY

After plumbing fixtures designed for the human physique and for water conservation have been chosen, they are placed in a space that has several unusual environmental needs. Much of the information in this section is reproduced with permission from American National Standard for Buildings and Facilities A117.1-1986: *Providing Accessibility and Usability for Physically Handicapped People*, copyright 1986 by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI). Copies of this standard (updated as *Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities* in 2003) may be purchased from ANSI, 25 West 43rd Street, New York, NY 10036. Another useful guide is the *Americans with Disabilities Act* (*ADA*) *Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities*, available from the U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, Washington, DC.

(a) Accessibility

Designers must allow room for wheelchair maneuvering into and within toilet rooms. The minimum clear floor area should be a circle 5 ft (1.525 m) in diameter. Minimum clearances for wheelchair maneuvering are shown in Fig. 21.50. Provisions for people in wheelchairs also influence the heights at which items such as light switches, electrical receptacles, paper towels, and water controls should be installed. In general, all objects to be reached by hand in toilet rooms should be placed more than 15 in. (380 mm) and less than 48 in. (1.22 m) above the floor.

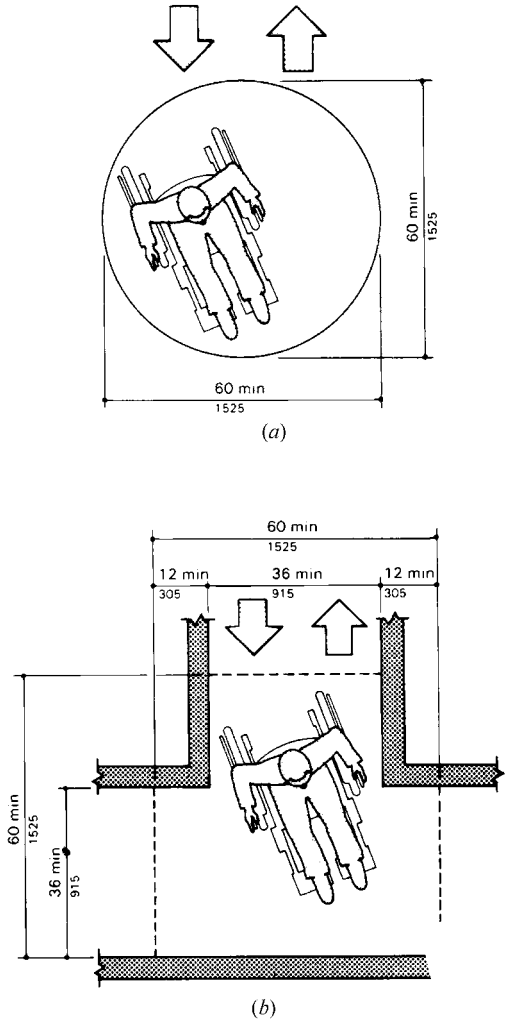


Fig. 21.50 *Wheelchair turning space, minimum requirements. (a) A 60-in. (1.525-m)-diameter space. (b) T-shaped for 180° turns. Dashed lines indicate the minimum length of clear space required on each arm of the T-shaped space. (Reprinted by permission from American National Standard A117.1-1986; © 1986 by the American National Standards Institute.)*

Floor space requirements and mounting-height limitations also apply to the various plumbing fixtures in bathrooms, at least one of which (in each case) should be accessible to people in wheelchairs in most buildings. Requirements for drinking fountains (which often must be located outside toilet rooms), lavatories, bathtubs, and shower stalls include clearances beside the fixture (and clearance below lavatories) and grab bar locations; see the ANSI Standard for details.

Accessible toilets (water closets) have particularly large floor space requirements, as shown in Fig. 21.51. There is a conflict between the lower mounting height needed for proper defecation, the conventional height of 15 in. (380 mm), and the recommended height for handicapped users of 17 to 19 in. (430 to 485 mm). The doors on stalls designated for wheelchair access should swing out rather than in. Provision for a wheelchair sitting beside the out-swinging door must also be made. No doors should swing into the clearance space required for any fixture.

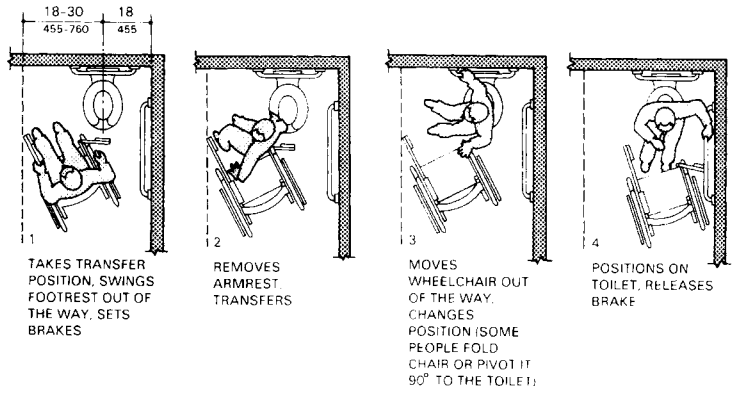
Where six or more water closets (or water closets plus urinals) are located within the same toilet room, *both* the "standard stall" (Fig. 21.51*c*) and one of the "alternate stalls" (Fig. 21.51*d*) are required. This impacts the design of public toilet rooms.

Urinals for handicapped users should either be of the floor-mounted stall type or, if wall-hung, have an elongated rim at a maximum of 17 in. (430 mm) above the floor. A clear floor space of 30 × 48 in. (760 × 1220 mm) is required in front of the urinal, and its flush controls should be no more than 44 in. (1.12 m) above the floor.

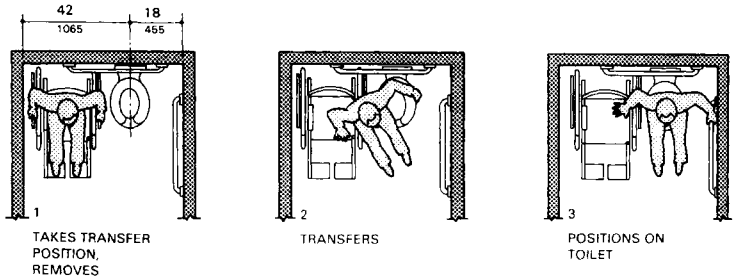
(b) Privacy

A desire for visual privacy is easily understood and at least minimally provided by partial-height partitions. However, *acoustic* considerations are another important aspect of bathroom design. Because of their nonabsorbent surfaces, bathrooms are frequently the most reverberant spaces in a building. They encourage the singer or the whistler and may even serve as practice rooms for the family musician. Yet they can also intimidate a person who prefers to be quiet, such as a guest using the toilet while the rest of the dinner party sits quietly in the adjacent room.

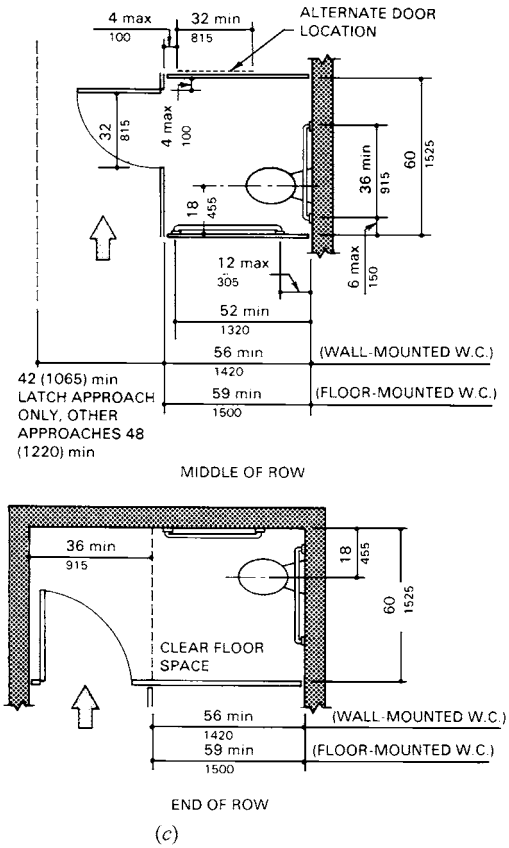
Two common design responses are isolation and masking sound. Bathrooms can be separated from acoustically sensitive spaces by closets or hallways. With careful attention to sufficiently massive construction and/or other construction details, the doors, walls, ceilings, and floors of bathrooms can be constructed so as to reduce the passage of sound to acceptably low levels. (These considerations are discussed in Chapters 18 and 19.) Sound isolation also depends upon attention to detail: no cracks around the bathroom door, no back-to-back electrical outlets



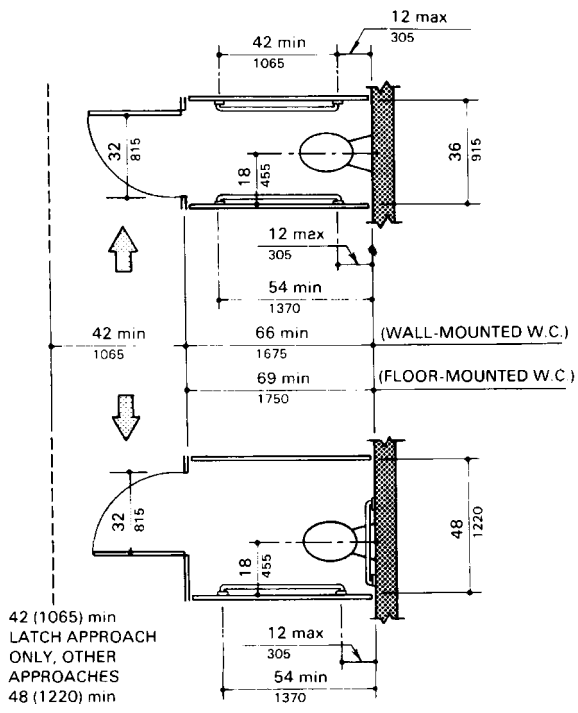
(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)



(*d*)

Fig. 21.51 *Clearances and grab bars for toilets. Two typical approaches (a, b) necessitate the stall clearances shown (c–f) as well as arrangements for toilets and urinals not within stalls (g–i). (Reprinted by permission from American National Standard A117.1-1986; © 1986 by the American National Standards Institute.)*

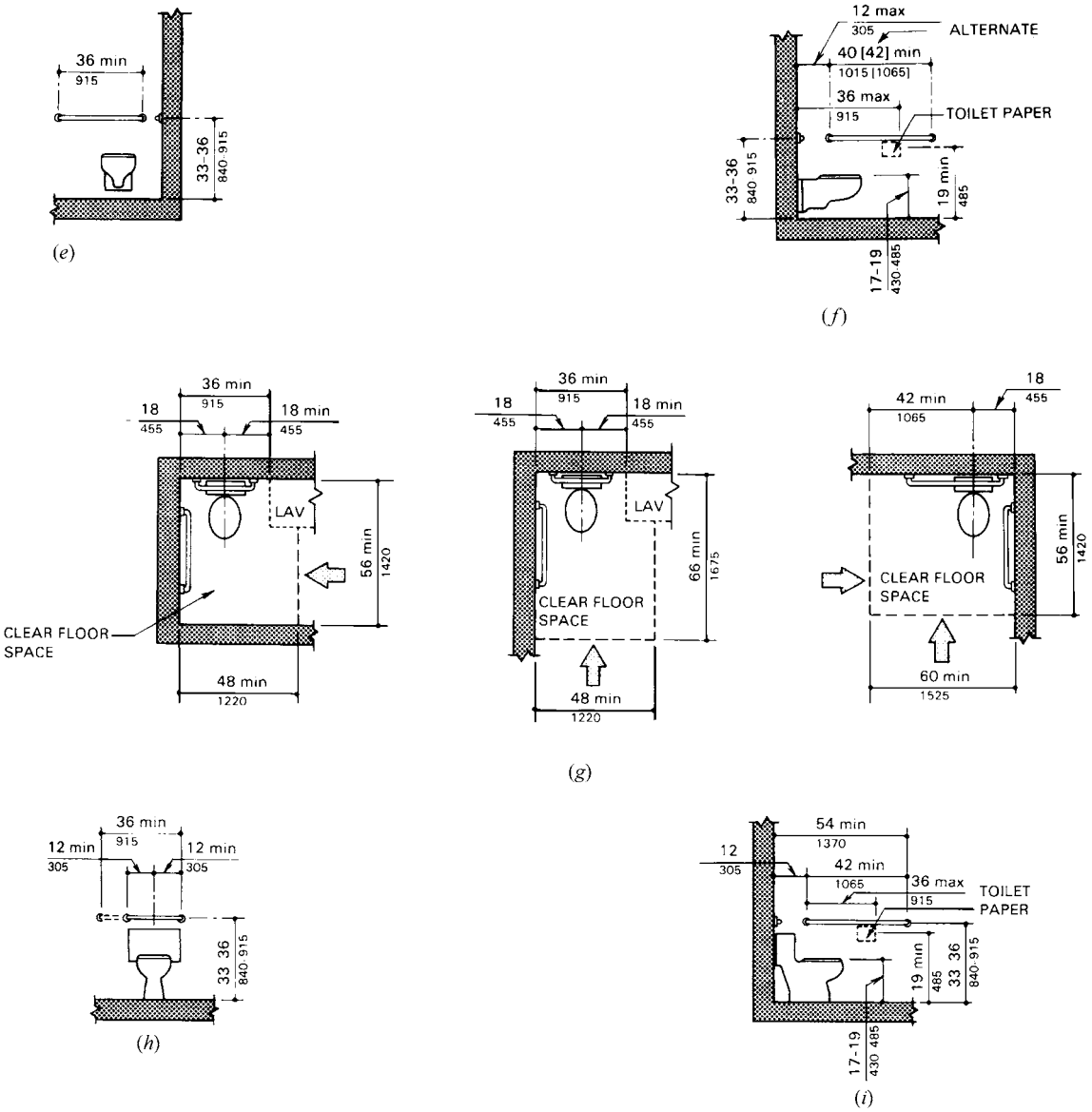


Fig. 21.51 *(Continued)*

between bathrooms and adjacent spaces, no air grilles into ducts that have other grilles nearby, and no other open windows near a bathroom window. If such goals are unattainable or if additional acoustic security is desired, masking sound can be added as needed within the bathroom. All too often, the masking noise is provided by repeated flushings of the toilet (itself an embarrassing sound for some) or the running of water in the lavatory. However, a noisy ventilating fan would serve the purpose, as would a music source such as a radio. An elegant, expensive touch would be a recirculating fountain gracing one corner; it might provide splashing sounds only when the light or fan is on.

The final consideration in bathroom acoustics is the sound of water moving within pipes. Where such pipes are exposed or barely concealed within, or firmly attached to, thin walls, perceptible

sounds are highly likely. Where water noise is undesirable, pipes should be wrapped, resiliently mounted, and/or located in a less acoustically critical wall. But remember that running water can also be a conservation signal as well as masking sound. Although many of us may have experienced this sudden acoustic signal that a bathroom is in use, few have experienced it quite like the occupants of the Aluminaire house on Long Island, cited by Reyner Banham (1969). Designed at the height of the modernist expression of mechanical services, this house featured a dining table cantilevered from the exposed waste stack serving the bathroom above.

21.9 WATER DISTRIBUTION

This section looks at ways to supply water throughout buildings at pressures sufficient to operate plumbing fixtures. Smaller buildings may be served simply by the pressure available in water mains (or pressure tanks fed by pumped wells). This is called *upfeed distribution*, because the water rises directly from mains to the plumbing fixtures. For taller buildings, several other options are available: *pumped upfeed* (in which pumps supply the additional pressure needed); *hydropneumatic* (in which pumps force water into sealed tanks, compressing the air within; this maintains the needed water pressure); and *downfeed* (in which pumps raise the water to storage tanks at the top of a building, and water then drops down to the plumbing fixtures).

In cities with municipal water supply systems, water is distributed through street mains at pressures varying at the main from about 50 psi (about 350 kPa) to about 70 psi (about 480 kPa). For low-rise buildings of two or three stories, these pressures are adequate to act against the static pressure of water standing in the vertical piping, overcome the frictional resistance of water flow in the pipes, and still deliver water at the pressure required to operate plumbing fixtures. The flow pressure required at fixtures varies from 5 to 20 psi (35 to 138 kPa), depending on the type of fixture—for example, a basin faucet, showerhead and faucet, or water closet. (Table 21.14 in Section 21.11 lists minimum flow rates and pressures for typical plumbing fixtures.)

(a) Static Pressure

The pressure exerted at the bottom of a stationary "head" of water is related directly to its height. One cubic foot of water weighs 62.4 lb. Consider a "cube" of water 1 ft square and 1 ft high. Its weight (62.4 lb) rests on a bottom area of 1 ft^2 (144 $in.^2$). The static pressure at the bottom is 62.4/144 = 0.433 psi (3 kPa). Reciprocally, 1 psi of pressure will *sustain* a static (stationary) column of water 1/0.433 = 2.3 ft in height. (In SI units, 1 m of head = 10 kPa.) When fixture pressure and pressure lost in friction-of-flow in pipes are considered, the problem becomes more complex. Example 21.6 in Section 21.11 illustrates this problem in the calculation of pipe size. For upfeed and downfeed distribution, the relationship of heights and static pressure is one controlling design factor.

(b) Upfeed Distribution

In small, low buildings of moderate water demand, it is seldom difficult to achieve the proper flow pressure at fixtures by the use of an upfeed system. Pressure at the fixtures is usually more than required. When this causes an inconvenient splash, as at lavatory basins, a flow restrictor can be used in the faucet outlet.

Consider the typical upfeed system shown in Fig. 21.52, beginning at the point where supply water enters the building. In cold climates, water in the service entry pipe must not freeze. The pipe must therefore be below the *frost line* of frozen ground. This could vary from 0 to 7 ft (0 to 2 m), depending upon the geographical location. The onset of winter in cold climates requires the closing and draining of pipes supplying the hose bibbs (and other external piping) by means of a *stop-and-waste* valve. Houses left *unheated* in cold-winter weather must be entirely free of water that could freeze and burst the pipes. Note the drain valve at every low point in the system. House shutoff controls are usually located at the main, at the curb, and within the house.

Meters have recently taken on a new role: along with measuring the water quantity for which the occupant is to be charged, they now sometimes serve a restrictive function. During water shortages, they can be used to indicate water use in excess of established limits, beyond which fines are imposed and, in some cases, the water supply reduced by valves controlled by the water company.

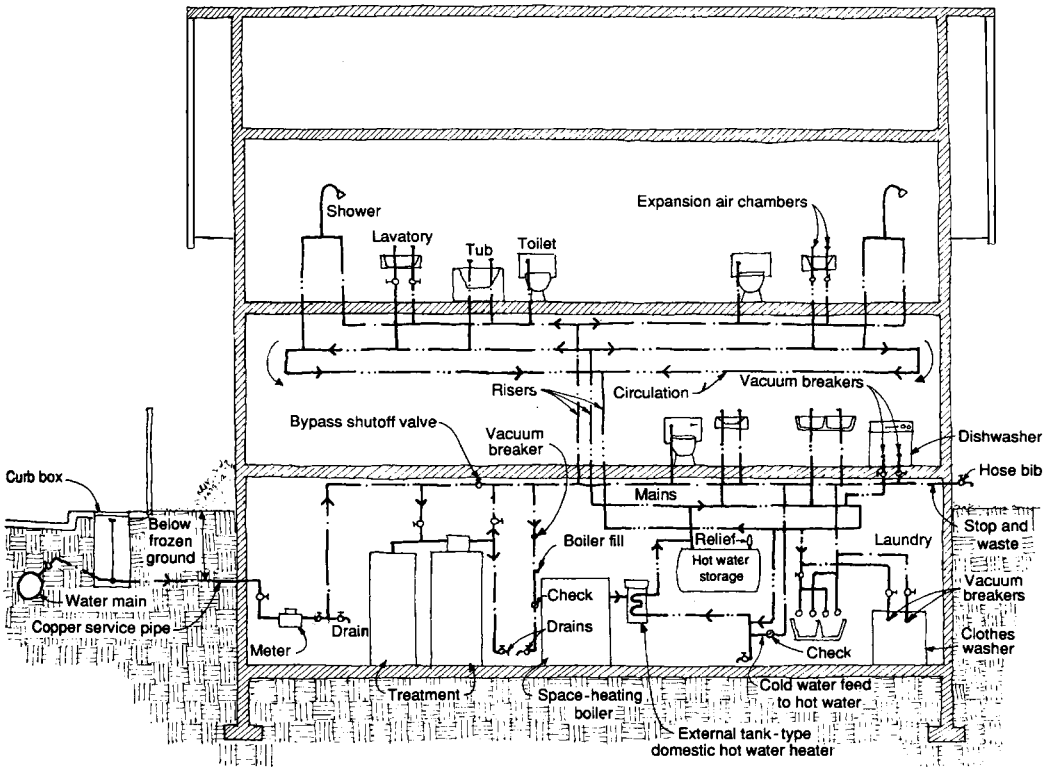


Fig. 21.52 *Upfeed water distribution using pressure in street mains. A schematic section of the water services in a typical residence.*

In-house treatment is often performed to reduce water hardness that could clog piping and equipment or to neutralize acidity—a source of corrosion. During the short periods when the treatment tanks are valved off for backwashing or other servicing, the *bypass shutoff valve* is opened.

From this point on, the water continues under pressure to

1. Supply makeup water to the space-heating boiler, as required
2. Supply water to and pressurize the cold water mains and branches, including the garden hose bibbs
3. Supply water to and pressurize the domestic hot water system through the hot water heater, the hot water storage tank, and the mains, branches, and circulating lines

The air-filled expansion chambers on cold water *runouts* absorb and reduce the shock of *water hammer*—the force exerted by decelerated flowing water that shakes and rattles pipes when faucets are shut off abruptly. On hot water runouts they perform the same function, as well as allowing for the expansion of the hot water as it increases in volume with increasing temperature. Vacuum breakers prevent backflow of polluted water into pipes carrying potable (hot or cold) water. Water from all fixtures and appliances, such as dishwashers, clothes washers, and boilers, is thus isolated.

Figure 21.52 shows all parts lying in a two-dimensional plane. Obviously, in a real building, such a system is three-dimensional. For instance, economy of piping would suggest that, if possible, kitchen and lavatory, as well as the two upstairs bathrooms, be placed back-to-back.

(c) Principles of Downfeed Distribution

Water pumped directly from the street main (or from a basement "suction tank" filled by gravity from the main) is lifted to a roof-storage tank. In cold climates,

the water in an outdoor tank is kept at temperatures above freezing by heating coils in the tank. The fact that water pressure increases with distance below the tank water level is clearly shown by the construction of the tank (shown in Fig. 21.53). The iron rings, tensioned by adjustable threaded clamps, become more closely spaced toward the bottom of the tank, where the greater water pressure makes it increasingly difficult to restrain the vertical wooden staves of this cylindrical barrel.

Tanks like these add interest, though perhaps not beauty, to a building's silhouette. A view-blocking screen enclosing this tank would have to be about 24 ft (7.3 m) high. Architecturally, such a rectangular lump on the roof would not be much of an improvement. Yet in the century following the appearance of such structures as the Goodwill Building, our technology has become more complex. Presently, for most high-rise buildings, including many 60 stories and more in height, an entire rooftop crowded with equipment and technical facilities is needed to serve the stories below (or the uppermost *zone* of a building). The items could include

Water storage tanks

Two-story penthouses over elevator banks

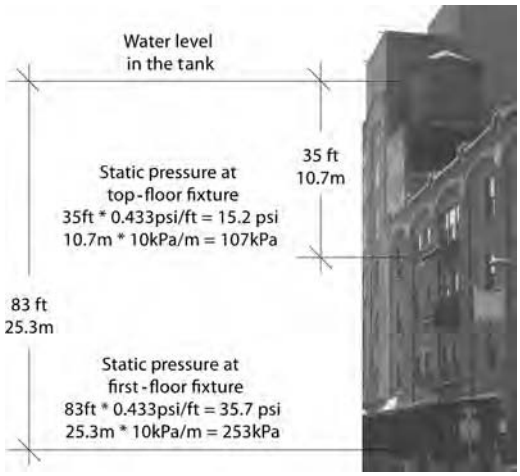


Fig. 21.53 *Mid-rise building with gravity downfeed distribution. Although upfeed distribution from a street main is possible in buildings higher than two or three stories, when street main pressures drop below the usual 50 psi (345 kPa), combined with heavy use, very low pressure results in fixtures in the upper stories. Therefore, water is pumped from the main to elevated wooden roof tanks high enough to ensure reasonable pressure at the top story and ample pressure at the bottom of the downfeed run.*

Chimneys

Numerous plumbing vents

Exhaust fans

Air-conditioning cooling towers

Cantilevered rolling rig to support a scaffold for exterior window washing

Perimeter track for a window-washing rig

Photovoltaic cells and/or solar collectors for DHW

Thus, since the 1960s, tall buildings commonly have a *band* or *screen* two stories (or more) high above the structural roof. The best view locations are thus consigned to mechanical equipment. It might be said that it all began with the need for elevated water storage tanks.

(d) Tall Building Downfeed Distribution

Figure 21.54*a* shows a medium-rise building in which one elevated tank can serve all of the lower floors. For taller buildings, it is advisable to separate groups of floors into zones with a maximum height (for plumbing pressure limits) of about 150 ft (about 45 m). This zone-height limitation is based upon the height-to-static pressure relationship. At the top of the zone (about 35 ft [10 m] below the storage tank), the minimum desirable pressure is probably at least 15 psi (103 kPa). At the bottom of the zone, the maximum desirable pressure is perhaps 80 psi (552 kPa); above this pressure, damage to fixtures might occur.

$$80 \text{ psi} - 15 \text{ psi} = 65 \text{ psi difference}$$

$$65 \text{ psi} \times 2.3 \text{ ft/psi} = \text{about } 150 \text{ ft}$$

In SI units:

$$552 \text{ kPa} - 103 \text{ kPa} = 449 \text{ kPa difference}$$

$$449 \text{ kPa} \times 0.1 \text{ m/kPa} = \text{about } 45 \text{ m}$$

With pressure-reducing valves at lower floors, however, these zones can be much higher, as shown in Fig. 21.54*b*.

Consider the system described in Fig. 21.54*a*, beginning with the elevated tank. The lower part of the tank often serves as a reserve space to hold a supply of water for a fire-extinguishing system. In this case, only the water in the upper part is available for use as domestic (service) water. The amount stored must be enough to supplement what the pump will deliver during the several daily hours of high

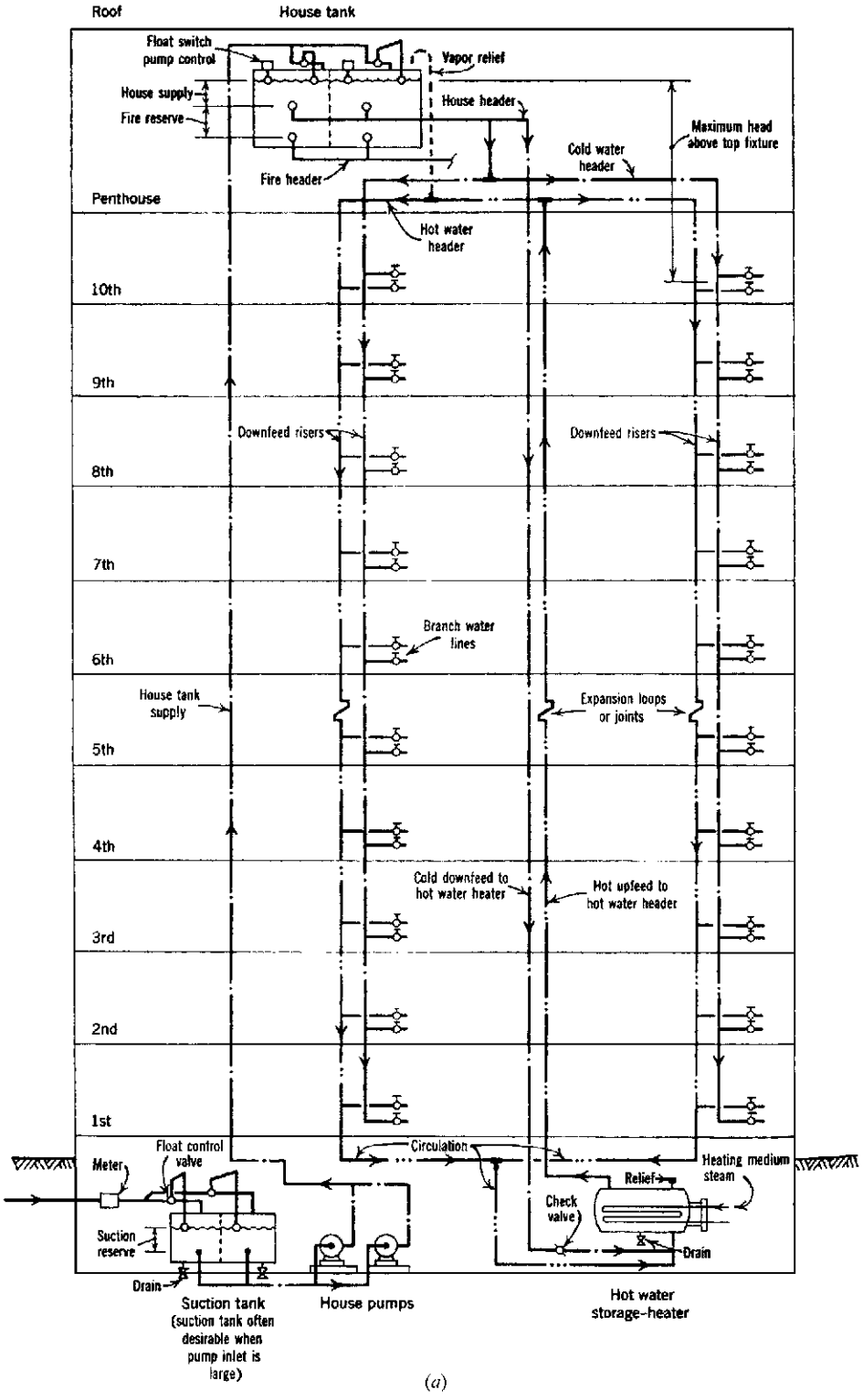
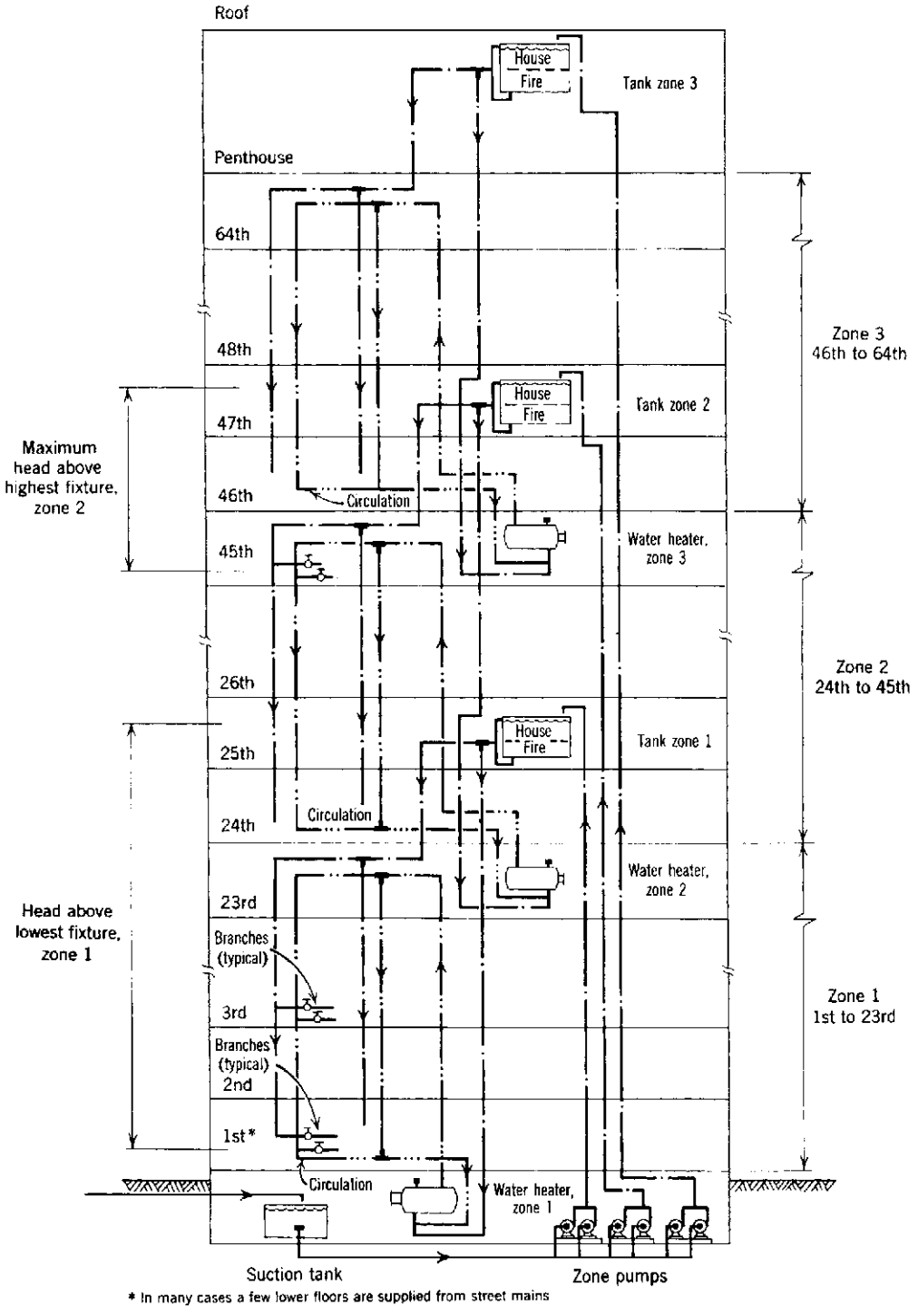


Fig. 21.54 *(a) Downfeed water distribution, schematic section, part of the water services for a 10-story building. Hot water circulation moves from the hot upfeed in two directions at the hot water header, then down to the tank through the two downfeed hot water risers. For details of one type of steel house tank, a typical centrifugal house pump, expansion joints, and expansion in the hot water riser, see Figs. 21.55 and 21.56. (b) Downfeed water distribution, schematic section, part of the water services for a much taller zoned building. Zone tanks include a fire reserve, but standpipes are omitted from this drawing. For detail of the steam-type domestic water heater, see Fig. 21.24.*



(*b*)

Fig. 21.54 *(Continued)*

demand that occur in most buildings. The pump then continues, often for several hours, to replenish the house supply that had become partially depleted during the busy period. The suction tank is a buffer between the system and the street mains. It usually holds enough reserve to allow the pumps to make up the periodic depletion in the house tank. It refills automatically by flow from the street main that, consequently, will not suffer as much of a drop in pressure as it would if it were connected directly to the suction side of the house pumps. Neighboring water users are protected from the adverse effects

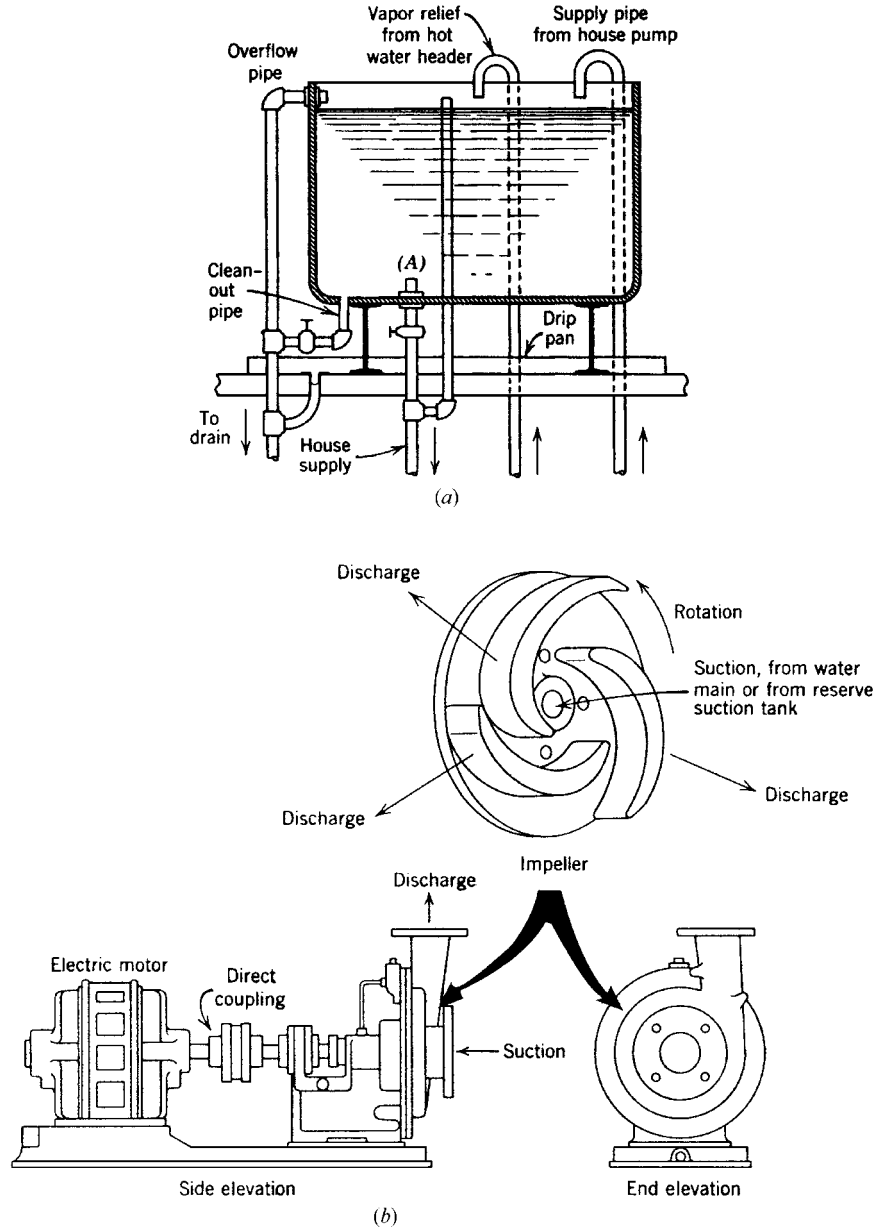


Fig. 21.55 *(a) House tank in an elevated position for downfeed by gravity. Sediment in the tank is drawn off through the clean-out pipe and is prevented from entering the house water supply by the pipe projection at A. Water for fire reserve could be provided by additional piping or by a separate tank. (b) Centrifugal house pump, commonly used to fill an elevated house tank at the top story or at an intermediate mechanical floor. The electric motor responds to a float switch pump control at the tank.*

of sudden demands within adjacent large buildings (Fig. 21.55).

House tanks and suction tanks are sometimes made of steel plate and divided vertically in half, each half having identical piping and controls. Hence, one-half of the tank can be cleaned out at a time of low demand without shutting down the entire system. One full-capacity pump is supplemented by an equivalent standby pump for alternate use. Because there is no suction lift below the pump, or any fixture pressure at the top of the house tank supply, the head against which the pump works is the sum of the distance from the suction tank water level to the top of the house tank and the feet of head equivalent to the friction loss in the tank supply pipe. For this kind of service, the vertical piping is on the order of 3 or 4 in. (76 or 102 mm) in diameter for large buildings. Sizes are established by formal calculations.

The house supply is fed by a short pipe from the house header to the cold water header that circles the top story and connects to many downfeed cold water risers. For simplicity, Fig. 21.54*a* shows only two risers and also omits many valves and controls.

Figure 21.54*b* is even more simplified. The circulating hot water originates as cold water at the house tank header, then takes quite a long route. Descending to the bottom of the hot water heater, it rises to seek its own level at the hot water header, becoming available there for hot water downfeed on demand. All of this occurs as flow below the general pressurizing effect of the house tank. In effect, when there is a cold- and hot-water demand on a story near the top of the building, the cold water makes a short trip down to the faucet, while the hot water goes through three vertical pipes instead of one.

This arrangement, with tank above and heater below, is used in multiple forms for very tall buildings. The zones are quite independent; the only common service is that provided by the general suction tank. With this zoning method, problems of pipe expansion, large pipe sizes, and high pressures in lower stories are minimized. Commonly, 2½ stories, or about 35 ft (about 10 m), constitute the minimum pressure head above the top fixture served by any zone tank. The static pressure created at the fixture is thus $35 \times 0.433 = 15$ psi ($10 \times 10 = 100$ kPa). If, during flow, not too much pressure is lost in friction, flushometers (flush valves) can be placed at this level, although flush tanks, because of their lower pressure demand, must often be accepted. The opposite problem occurs at the bottom of the zones, where excessive pressures must be reduced at the fixtures. In zone I of Fig. 21.54*b*, first-floor fixtures are below a head of 24½ stories, or about 149 psi (1027 kPa) of static pressure. Pressure-reducing valves must be used, and fixture control valves must be throttled.

(e) Pipe and Tube Expansion

The range of temperature experienced by hot water supply piping, from the normal indoor air temperature of about 70°F (21°C) to that of service hot water (which often exceeds 160°F [71°C]), can be 90F° (50C°), with resulting pipe expansion (Table 21.12). This longitudinal elongation of pipe,

TABLE 21.12 Thermal Expansion of Pipe

Temperature Increase		*Approximate Expansion of Piping Material Inches per 100 ft (0.83 mm per m) of Length*					
F°	C°	Carbon and Carbon Moly Steel	Cast Iron	Copper	Brass and Bronze	Wrought Iron	Plastic
20	11.1	0.15	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.15	0.5
40	22.2	0.3	0.3	0.44	0.44	0.3	1.1
60	33.3	0.45	0.45	0.67	0.67	0.45	1.7
80	44.4	0.6	0.6	0.89	0.89	0.6	2.4
100	55.5	0.76	0.7	1.12	1.12	0.76	3.3
120	66.7	0.91	0.84	1.35	1.35	0.91	4.3
140	77.8	1.07	1.0	1.58	1.58	1.07	5.3
160	88.9	1.22	1.13	1.81	1.81	1.22	6.2
180	100	1.38	1.27	2.04	2.04	1.38	—
200	111.1	1.55	1.4	2.27	2.27	1.55	—

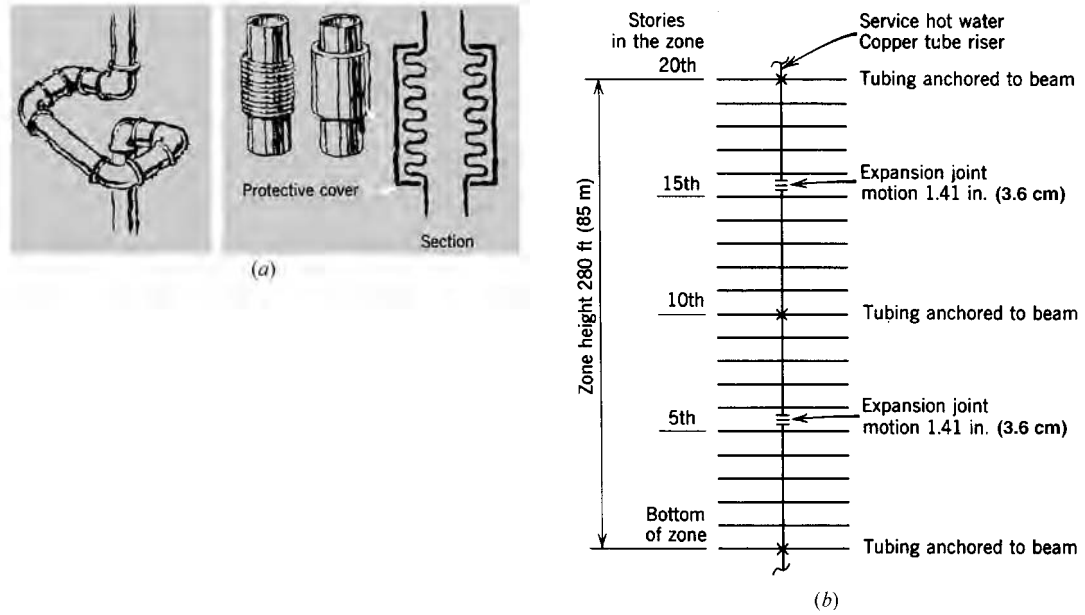


Fig. 21.56 *(a) Accommodation for the expansion of hot water piping or tubing.* Left: *Expansion joint of pipe and fittings.* Right: *A manufactured product in elevation and section. (b) Suggested scheme for location of the points of anchorage and expansion for service hot water tubing in a 20-story zone (Example 21.5).*

though negligibly small in houses, can be appreciable in a tall building. Two methods of allowing freedom for this longitudinal motion in long runs of expanding hot water piping are shown in Fig. 21.56*a*. These devices preclude the buildup of excessive stresses in the pipe material and the tendency of the pipes to buckle laterally.

EXAMPLE 21.5 A 20-story zone in a tall building has a height of 280 ft (85 m). What will be the increase in length of a copper tube carrying "service hot water" (DHW) when its temperature increases from 70° to 160°F (21° to 71°C)?

SOLUTION

The difference in temperature is 90F° (50C°). Approximate elongation per 100 ft for a 90F° increase is 1.01 in. (interpolating in Table 21.12).

$$\text{expansion} = 280 \text{ ft} \times (1.01 \text{ in./}100 \text{ ft}) = 2.82 \text{ in.}$$

$$(85 \text{ m} \times (0.83 \text{ mm/m}) = 71 \text{ mm}) \quad \blacksquare$$

There are a number of ways of providing for this expansion. The one shown in Fig. 21.56*b* accepts this motion at two locations, which would make the expansion in each case 1.41 in. Equidistant anchorage to fix the tubing is provided at the bottom, the 10th floor, and the 20th floor. The support of the vertical riser at floors other than those at which it is anchored could consist of clamps of the type illustrated later in Fig. 21.61, supported on springs.

(f) Pumped Upfeed Distribution

This distribution system (Fig. 21.57) is for medium-sized buildings—those too tall to rely on street main pressure but not so tall as to necessitate heavy storage tanks on the roof. The equipment associated with this system can deliver water at rates varying from those needed for two or three faucets to full building demand while maintaining at each outlet a pressure within 2 psi (14 kPa) of the design pressure for that outlet.

The installation shown in Figs. 21.57*a* and 21.57*b* uses a triplex pump group. According to demand, one, two, or three pumps will operate. Because each pump is of the variable-speed type, virtually an infinite number of delivery rates can be achieved within the zero to maximum design range. The pumps operate in sequence. When a very small rate of demand occurs, the smallest or

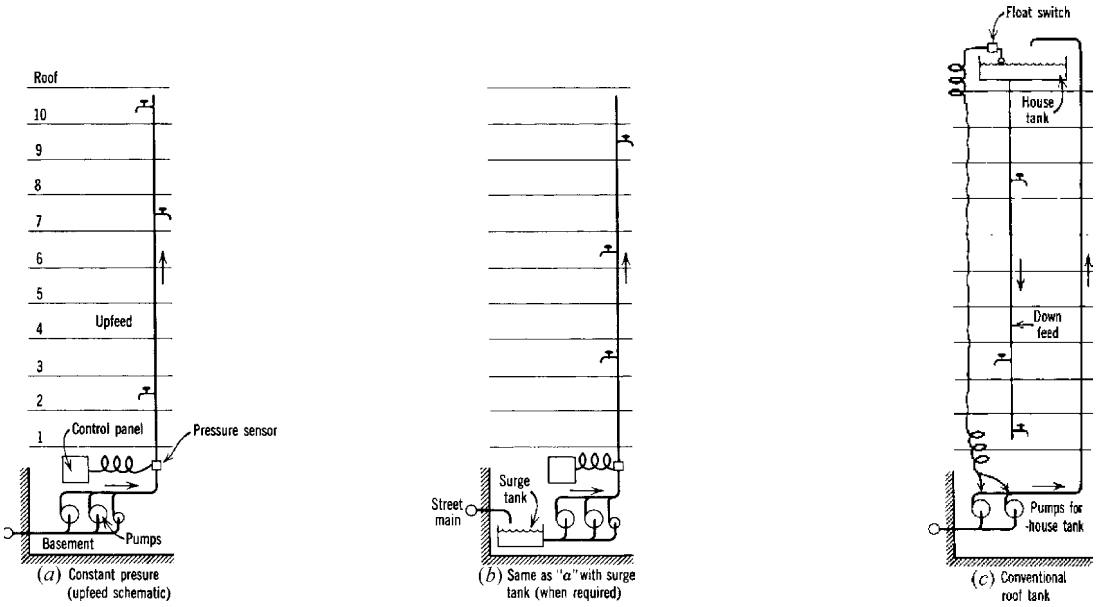


Fig. 21.57 *Constant-pressure upfeed pumping (a, b) compared to gravity downfeed from a house tank on the roof (c). (By permission of* Progressive Architecture.*)*

"jockey" pump starts in response to a low voltage impressed on its motor. All operations are triggered and adjusted by the pressure sensor at the base of the riser. The jockey pump continues to run until it has reached its maximum delivery rate, at which time the first of the larger pumps cuts in, joined by the other larger pump when required. Sequential operation of the three pumps, each increasing in delivery as called for by the sensor, meets the requirement for an increasing supply at nearly constant pressure.

Wear on the two large pumps is equalized by the assigning of "lead" and "lag" positions. For a period of 24 hours, one of the large pumps holds the lead position and starts after the jockey pump, giving the other large pump a smaller burden. The next day the rested pump takes over the more active assignment. All of this occurs automatically.

At full operation, this triplex unit can put a suction demand on the street main that can seriously reduce the available water pressure in the neighborhood (Fig. 21.57*a*). Therefore, utilities sometimes require that such a system draw from a surge tank, filled by casual flow from the street main, independent of the building requirements (Fig. 21.57*b*). This requirement is often imposed when analysis indicates a maximum building demand in excess of 400 gpm (25 L/s).

Obvious advantages of upfeed pumping are elimination of the house tank and the heavy structure that transmits its weight down to the footings, and elimination of the necessary periodic cleaning of the tank. A shortcoming is the lack of reserve storage, which could cause a serious problem during an electrical power failure. However, minimum flow during this kind of emergency can be arranged if a diesel or emergency standby motor is available to drive one of the pumps.

21.10 PIPING, TUBING, FITTINGS, AND CONTROLS

(a) Piping, Tubing, and Fittings

The system of water supply piping or tubing should efficiently fulfill its purpose, be easily maintained, and interfere as little as possible with architectural form and function. Except in basements, in utility rooms, and at points of access to controls, the piping system is usually concealed. Stud-and-joist construction can provide space for concealment, but in

concrete or masonry buildings, vertical and horizontal furred spaces must often be provided.

Water supply piping is subject to corrosion over time. When pipe materials corrode, they first lose some carrying capacity (due to increased wall roughness and perhaps buildup of materials) and ultimately fail. Sediment from corrosion can adversely impact plumbing fixtures as well. Steel piping is particularly subject to corrosion. In the nonferrous group, red brass and copper tubing are effective in providing corrosion resistance. Copper tubing is less expensive than brass, assembles more easily, and is not subject to dezincification (attack by acids on the zinc in brass). For use in handling aggressive waters, plastic is often a good choice. Like copper, it is light in weight and assembles with great ease.

For ferrous pipes and "iron pipe size" brass, threaded connections are used. The external, tapered thread on the pipe is covered with pipe compound and screws tight against the internal tapered thread of a coupling or other fitting. The solder–joint connection in copper depends on capillary attraction that draws the solder into a cylinder of clearance between the mating surfaces of tube and fitting. This occurs after the surfaces are polished and fluxed and the parts placed in final position. They are then heated, and molten solder is applied to the circular opening where the fitting edge surrounds the tube, with a small clearance. Solder is then drawn into the cylindrical connection. Solders are often tin-antimony alloys. This kind of joint permits the advantageous setting up of an entire tubing assembly without turning the parts (as in threaded installations) and before the soldering commences. For the same strength, copper tubing may have thinner walls than threaded pipes because no threads need to be cut into it. Its smooth interior surface offers low friction to flowing water. Although threaded and solder–joint connections are the most common in small work, there are many other types (Figs. 21.58 and 21.59 and Table 21.13). Ferrous pipes in the larger sizes are often welded or connected by bolted flanges.

(b) Plastic Pipe

Most of the plastic pipes and fittings now produced are synthetic resins derived from such materials as coal and petroleum. These corrosion-resistant materials are widely used in water supply piping, fittings, and drainage systems (see Chapter 22). The National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) tests and certifies plastic pipe; the NSF seal must appear on pipes that are to carry potable water.

Most of the materials used for piping are thermoplastics and will repeatedly soften under the application of heat. PVDC (polyvinylidene chloride) material can carry water at 180°F (82°C), but plastic pipe should not be subjected to temperatures higher than this. Expansion (see Table 21.12) is much greater than that of other piping materials for the same Δt and affects the piping design. Quite shockproof, plastic is used in the plumbing systems of most mobile homes.

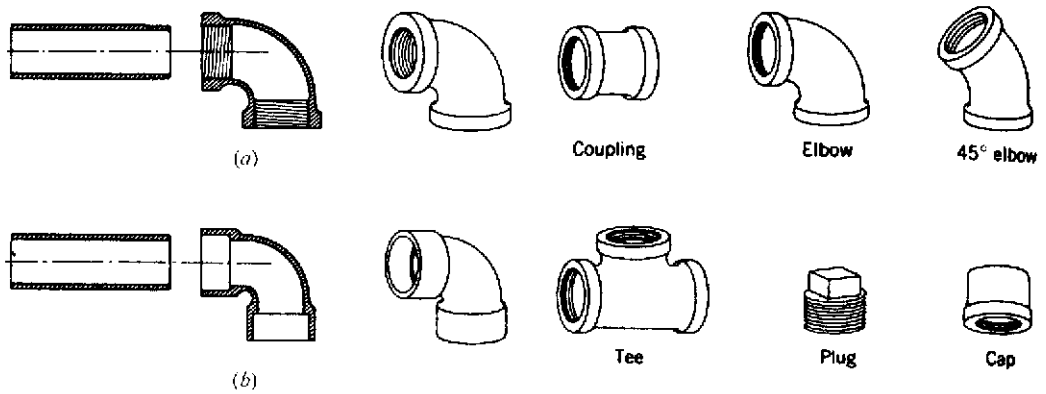


Fig. 21.58 *Methods of connecting pipes and fittings, and tubes and fittings. (a) Threaded: for ferrous pipe and fittings and for iron pipe size (IPS) brass. (b) Soldered: for copper tubing and fittings. A sliding fit similar to that of (b) is used for the solvent weld of plastic connections.*

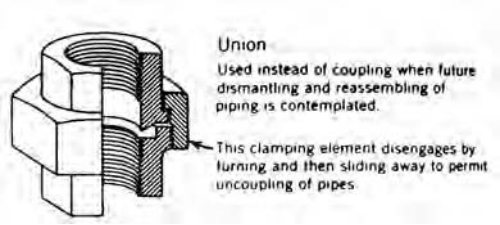


Fig. 21.59 *Example of threaded pipe fitting (a union) for ferrous or brass pipe. These and all common fittings are also available for solder-joint (copper) or solvent-weld (plastic) connections and usually for transition from one system or material to another.*

(c) Valves and Controls

It is usually desirable to valve every riser, the branches that serve bathrooms or kitchens, and the runouts to individual fixtures. This facilitates repairs at any location with a minimum of shutdown within a system. Water treatment equipment will have a valved bypass (see Fig. 21.52). Pumps and other devices that may need repair should be able to be disconnected by unions (Fig. 21.59) after valves are closed.

A gate valve (Fig. 21.60*a*), with a retractable leaf machined to seal tightly against two sloping metal surfaces when closed, offers the least resistance to water flow when open. It is usually chosen for locations where it is left completely open most of the time. The compression-type globe valve (Fig. 21.60*b*) is usually used for the closing or throttling of flow near a point of occasional use. Faucets are usually of the compression type, as are drain valves and hose connections. They are similar to an angle valve (Fig. 21.60*d*). When it is necessary to prevent flow in a direction opposite to that which is planned, a check valve (Fig. 21.60*c*) is introduced. The hinged leaf swings to permit flow in the direction of the arrow but closes against flow in the other direction.

(d) Pipe Support

Water piping systems are heavy because of their water content and need regular support (Fig. 21.61). Vertical runs of piping should be supported at every

TABLE 21.13 Water Supply Piping Materials

PART A. WATER SERVICE ONLY[a]	
Material	**Connections[b]**
ABS (acrylonitrile butadiene styrene) plastic pipe	Mechanical with elastomeric seal (normally underground only); solvent cement; threaded joints
Asbestos–cement	Sleeve couplings of same material as pipe, sealed with elastomeric ring
Ductile iron water pipe	Depth of lead depends upon pipe size
PE (polyethylene) plastic pipe and tubing	Flared joints (see manufacturer), heat fusion, mechanical joints (see manufacturer)
PE-AL-PE (polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene) pipe, PVC (polyvinyl chloride) plastic pipe	Mechanical with elastomeric seal (normally underground only); solvent cement; threaded joints (may reduce pressure rating)
PART B. WATER SERVICE AND DISTRIBUTION[c]	
Material	**Connections**
Brass pipe	Brazed, mechanical, threaded, or welded joints
CPVC (chlorinated polyvinyl chloride) plastic pipe (and tubing, indoors)	Mechanical (see manufacturer), solvent cement, or threaded joints (may reduce pressure rating)
Copper or copper-alloy pipe and tubing	Brazed, mechanical, soldered, threaded, or welded joints
Galvanized steel pipe[d]	Threaded or mechanical joints with an elastomeric seal
PB (polybutylene) plastic pipe and tubing	Flared joints, heat-fusion, or mechanical joints (see manufacturer)
PEX (cross-linked polyethylene) plastic tubing	
PEX-AL-PEX (cross-linked polyethylene/cross-linked aluminum/polyethylene) pipe	

[a]Materials as listed in the 1997 *International Plumbing Code*. Water service piping is for an outdoor, underground connection from the building to the main or supply tank.

[b]Joints between different piping materials require approved adapter fittings; dielectric or brass converter fittings required between copper (or copper alloy) and galvanized steel piping.

[c]Materials as listed in the 1997 *International Plumbing Code*. Water distribution piping is within the building.

[d]Sediment from corrosion over the life of the pipe.

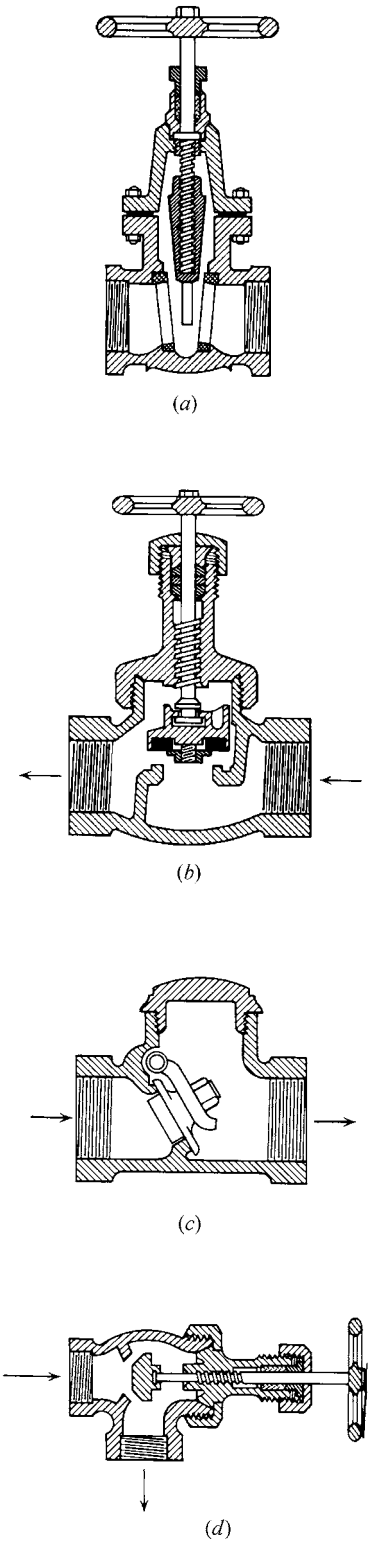


Fig. 21.60 *Typical valves for water systems. (a) Gate valve. (b) Globe valve. (c) Check valve. (d) Angle valve.*

story. Horizontal pipes should be supported at intervals of

6 ft (1.829 m) for ½-in. (12-mm) pipe
8 ft (2.438 m) for ¾-in. or 1-in. (19- or 25-mm) pipe
10 ft (3.048 m) for 1¼-in. (32-mm) or larger pipe

Although somewhat counterintuitive, these recommendations reflect the ability of larger pipe to span greater distances between supports. Horizontal copper tubing should be supported at closer spacing than steel. Adequate positioning of horizontal runs is important to ensure correct pitch and drainage. Hangers are adjustable for this purpose.

(e) Shock and Hot Water Expansion

Expansion chambers were shown diagrammatically in Figure 21.52, and water hammer was explained in Section 21.9(b). Expansion chambers are often made of capped lengths of vertical pipe about 2 ft (0.6 m) long at the fixture branches (Fig. 21.62*a*). They trap air, which absorbs the impact of the water surge. A somewhat better (more controllable) device is a *rechargeable air chamber* (Fig. 21.62*b*). By closing the valve and draining the water through the hose bibb while the petcock above is open to admit air, the chamber may be refilled with air. Closing the petcock and hose bibb and opening the valve completes the service operation and reconnects the device with the water system. Rechargeable chambers (instead of pipe extensions) are used on branch lines adjacent to groups of fixtures. Access for service must be provided. Perhaps the best device is the special shock absorber (Fig. 21.62*c*).

Air cushions also protect the water heater tank's relief valve against frequent operation, with the resultant leakage of hot water, as hot water periodically expands and contracts in closed systems.

(f) Condensation or "Sweating"

The moisture that is always present in air can condense on the exterior surface of a cold pipe. Dropping off a pipe, it can create an unpleasantly wet condition, disfigure finished surfaces, and provide conditions amenable to mold growth. Groundwater in some parts of North America is 50°F (10°C) and colder (see Fig. 8.56). A pipe carrying such water might have a surface temperature of about

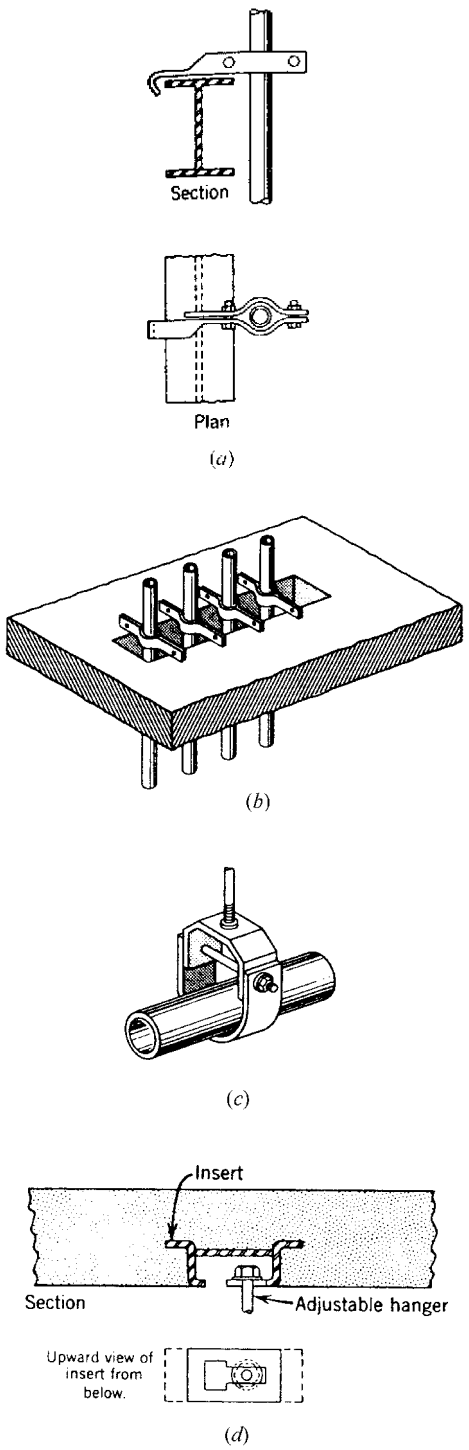


Fig. 21.61 *Pipe supports. (a) Vertical riser supported at a steel beam. (b) Vertical riser group supported at a slot in a concrete slab. (c) Horizontal pipe hung from a slab above by an adjustable-length clevis hanger. (d) Typical metal insert in a concrete soffit to receive the hanger rod.*

60°F (15°C). The psychrometric chart (Appendix F) indicates that at a summer air temperature of 85°F (29°C), condensation will occur on such a pipe when the relative humidity exceeds 40%. To avoid condensation damage, all cold water piping and fittings should be insulated. Glass fiber ½ to 1 in. (12 to 25 mm) thick is commonly chosen for this purpose. A tight vapor retarder on the exterior surface of the insulation prevents water vapor from penetrating the insulation and reaching the cold surface. The insulation provides another important advantage: it retards heat flow from the warmer air to the water, thus preventing the water from becoming disagreeably warm.

(g) Heat Conservation

Pipes carrying domestic hot water should be insulated to conserve energy used to heat the water and to ensure a correct water temperature at the points of use. Parallel hot and cold water piping, even though insulated, should be separated to prevent heat exchange. The pipe insulation should have a $k = 0.22–0.28$ Btu in./h ft^2 °F, and its thickness should be a minimum of ½ in. (on pipes less than 1½-in. diameter) or 1 in. (on pipes 1½-in. diameter and above). In SI units, $k = 0.032 – 0.040$ W/m K, and the thickness should be a minimum of 1.3 mm (on pipes less than 25-mm diameter) or 2.5 mm (on pipes 25-mm diameter and above).

Storage tanks and water heaters are usually manufactured with integral insulation. Older devices, however, may have less insulation than today's energy concerns warrant. As a result, many older water heaters are retrofitted with added insulation. Some electric utilities find the savings from conservation so attractive (relative to the cost of building new generating facilities) that they provide water-heater wrapping as a free service to customers.

21.11 SIZING OF WATER PIPES

There must be sufficient pressure at fixtures to assure the user of a prompt and adequate flow of water. Municipal ordinances often state that the flow must be adequate to keep the fixtures clean and sanitary. These convenience and sanitation objectives result in prescribed pressures that must be maintained at the various fixtures to ensure the proper flow rates listed in Table 21.14.

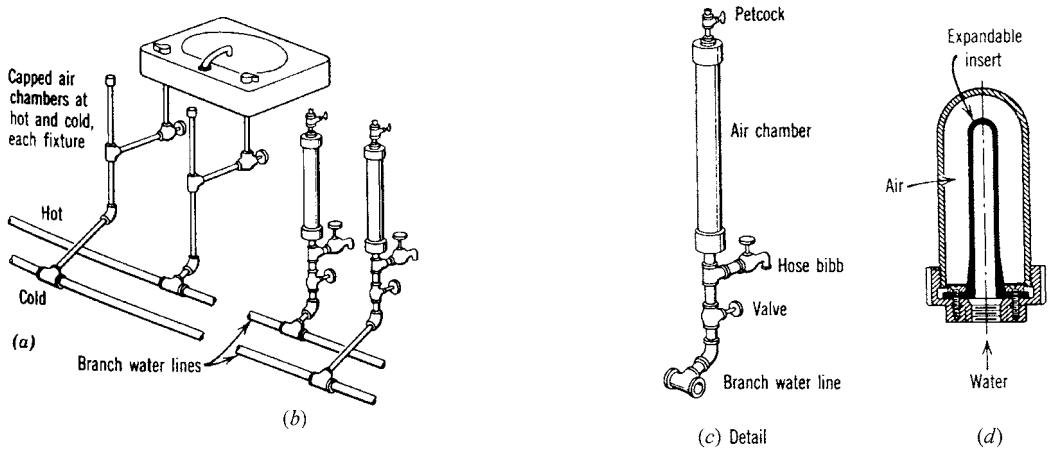


Fig. 21.62 *Shock relief and expansion chambers. Air chambers cushion the shock of the water hammer when the fixture faucets are shut off abruptly. They also permit hot water to expand instead of periodically forcing open the hot water emergency pressure relief valve at the heater or tank. (a) Capped air chambers at each supply pipe of each fixture. (b, c) Rechargeable air chambers on hot and cold branch water lines (individual fixture chambers are omitted when these are used). (d) Special shock absorber.*

TABLE 21.14 Flow and Pressure to Typical Plumbing Fixtures

Fixture Served	Minimum Flow Rate gpm (L/s)[a]	Minimum Pressure psi (kPa)[b]	Maximum Flow Rate or Quantity
Bathtub	4 (0.25)	8 (55)	
Bidet	2 (0.13)	4 (28)	
Combination fixture	4 (0.25)	8 (55)	
Dishwasher, residential	2.75 (0.17)	8 (55)	
Drinking fountain	0.75 (0.05)	8 (55)	
Hose bibb	5 (0.32)	8 (55)	
Laundry tray	4 (0.25)	8 (55)	
Lavatory, private	2 (0.13)	8 (55)	2.5 gpm at 80 psi (0.16 L/s at 551 kPa)
Lavatory, public	2 (0.13)	8 (55)	0.5 gpm at 80 psi (0.03 L/s at 551 kPa)
Lavatory, public, metering or self-closing	2 (0.13)	8 (55)	0.25 gallon (0.95 L) per metering cycle
Shower head	3 (0.19)	8 (55)	2.5 gpm at 80 psi (0.16 L/s at 551 kPa)
Shower head, temperature controlled	3 (0.19)	20 (138)	2.5 gpm at 80 psi (0.16 L/s at 551 kPa)
Sink, residential	2.5 (0.16)	8 (55)	2.5 gpm at 60 psi (0.16 L/s at 414 kPa)
Sink, service	3 (0.19)	8 (55)	2.5 gpm at 60 psi (0.16 L/s at 414 kPa)
Urinal, valve	15 (0.95)	15 (103)	1.5 gallons (5.7 L) per flushing cycle[a] or 1.0 gallon (3.8 L) per flushing cycle
Water closet, blow out, flushometer valve	35 (2.21)	25 (172)	4 gallons (15 L) per flushing cycle
Water closet, siphonic, flushometer valve	25 (1.58)	15 (103)	4 gallons (15 L) per flushing cycle[a] or 1.6 gallons (6 L) per flushing cycle
Water closet, tank, close coupled	3 (0.19)	8 (55)	1.6 gallons (6 L) per flushing cycle
Water closet, tank, one piece	6 (0.38)	20 (138)	1.6 gallons (6 L) per flushing cycle

Source: International Plumbing Code. © 1997, International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church VA. Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.

[a]The higher maximum listed is for public use in places of assembly, and for patients, inmates, and residents in hospitals, nursing homes, sanitariums, prisons, asylums, and reformatories.

Minimum fixture pressures vary from 4 to 20 psi (28 to 138 kPa) for fixtures other than hose bibbs. Because the pressure in street mains is usually about 50 psi (345 kPa), it is possible to ensure the minimum fixture pressure, provided that the water does not have to be lifted to too great a height and not too much pressure is lost by friction in distribution piping. Excessive friction results from piping that is too long in *developed length* (actual distance of water flow) or that interposes too many fittings (such as elbows and tees), or is too small in diameter.

The pressure losses in an upfeed system served by street main pressure are as follows. For A in the following chart, use the highest, most remote fixture from the main.

Minimum fixture flow pressure	A
Pressure lost because of height	+ B
Pressure lost by friction in piping	+ C
Pressure lost by flow through meter	+ D
Total required street main pressure	= E

During design, items A, B, and E are known and are reasonably constant. A value for A can be found in Table 21.14. Street main pressure, E, is a characteristic of the local water supply and is obtained from the water utility. Item B, the pressure lost due to height, can be found by multiplying the height in feet by 0.433 (height in meters by 10) (see the discussion of static head in Section 21.9a). Item D, the pressure lost in flow through the water meter, depends upon flow and pipe size (Fig. 21.63), neither

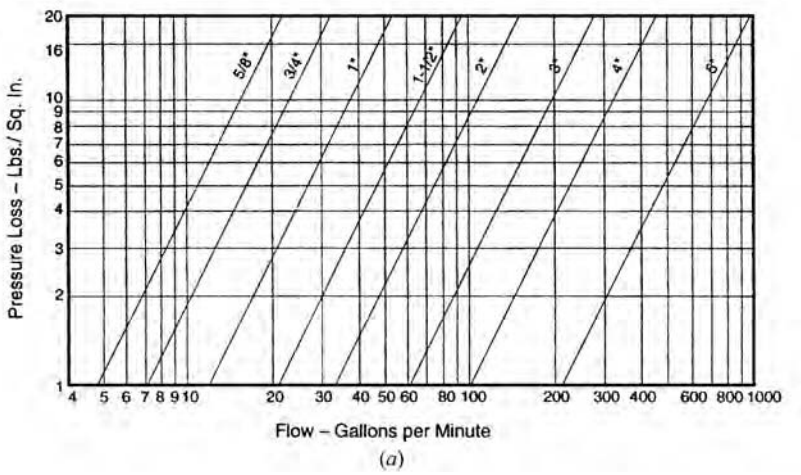


Fig. 21.63 *Pressure losses in disk-type water meters. (a) I-P units. (b) SI units. (Reprinted by permission from the 1997* Uniform Plumbing Code. *© by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.)*

of which is yet known. Therefore, the value of item D is *estimated*. (For residences and small commercial buildings, meter size rarely exceeds 2 in. [50 mm].) Later, it must be checked and a recalculation made if necessary. This leaves one unknown, the value of C, where

$$C = E - A - B - D$$

Pipe size is based upon Fig. 21.64. Pipe diameter is determined by the point of intersection of a horizontal line representing flow and a vertical line expressing friction loss. To select a pipe size, one needs to know the probable flow and the *unit*-friction loss in the pipe and fittings. The noise created by water flow also must be considered. Flow above 10 fps (3.1 m/s) is usually too noisy; flow above 6 fps (1.8 m/s) may be too noisy in acoustical-critical locations.

Flow can be found for any pipe by first listing all fixtures to be served by that pipe, assigning them water supply fixture units (wsfu, listed in Table 21.15), and finding the total wsfu. This total is then converted to the likely demand flow in gpm from Fig. 21.65*a* (demand flow in L/s from Fig. 21.65*b*). These curves show that actual flow does *not* increase in direct proportion to an increase

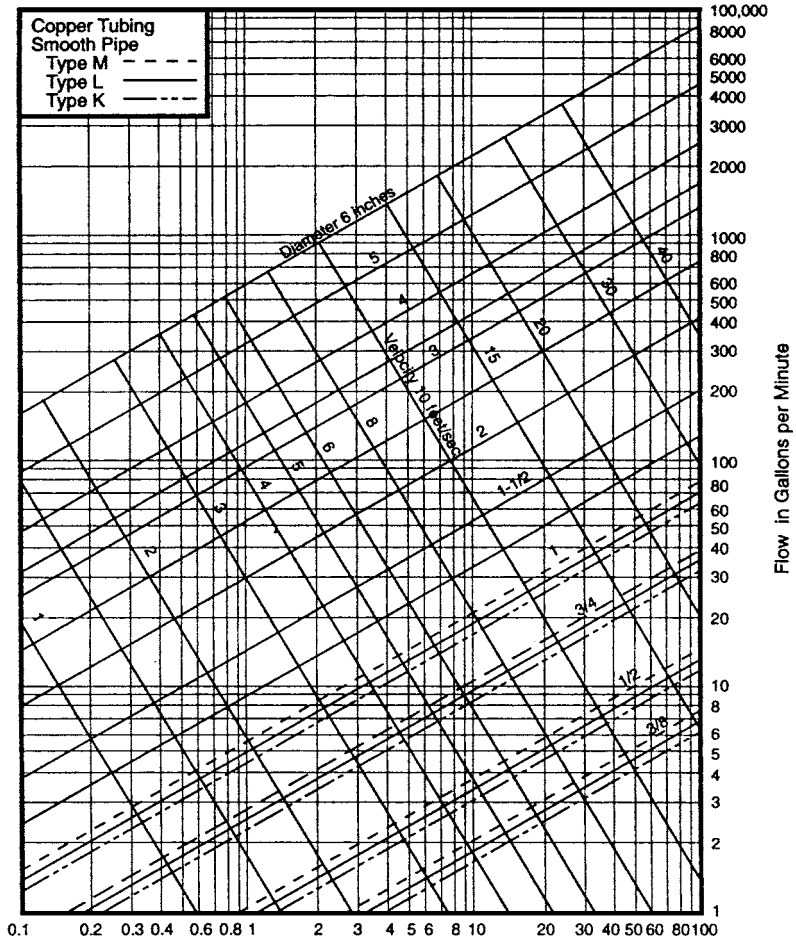
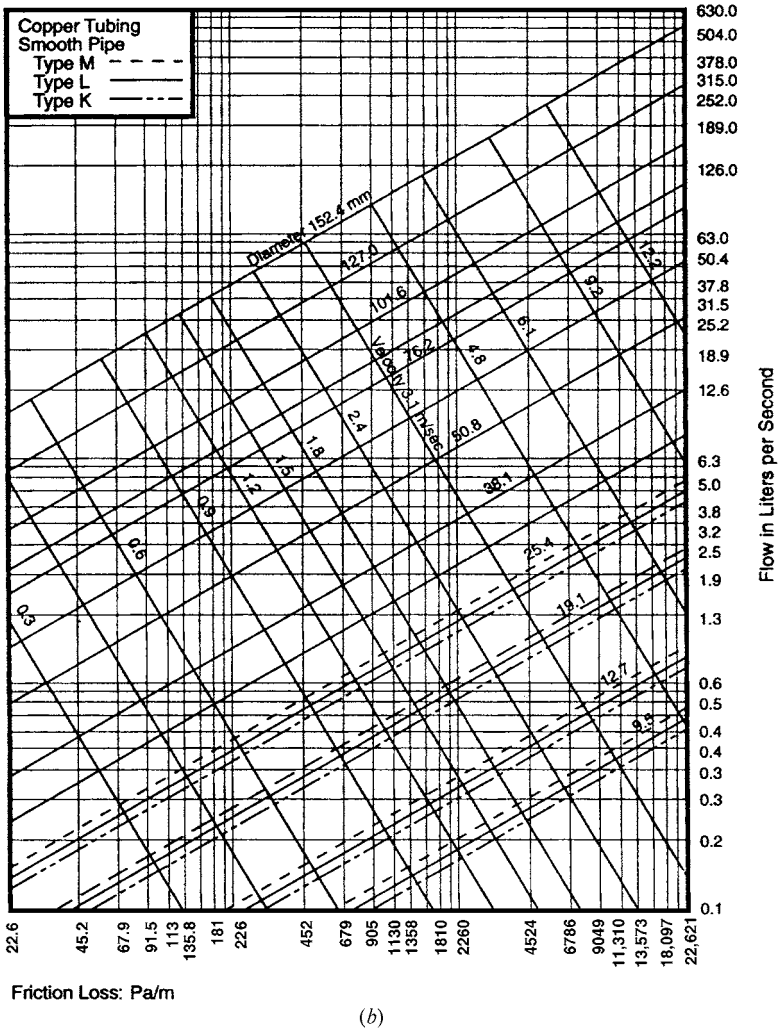


Fig. 21.64 *Friction loss chart for smooth pipe: (a) I-P units; (b) SI units. Velocity is shown to assist in noise control efforts: above 10 fps (3 m/s), moving water can be clearly heard within pipes. (Reprinted by permission from the 1997* Uniform Plumbing Code. *© by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.)*



(*b*)

Fig. 21.64 *(Continued)*

in fixture units. The larger an installation, the less likely that many fixtures will be operating concurrently. This reflects the statistical concept known as *diversity.*

To establish the desired friction loss, divide value C (pressure lost by friction in piping) by the *total equivalent length* of the piping. This length is the sum of the *developed length* (total linear distance of water travel) and the length equivalent of the fittings. For example, Table 21.16 shows that, in a 1-in.-diameter (25-mm) pipe run, a 90° ell causes a friction loss equivalent to that of 3 ft (0.9 m) of straight pipe. The number and style of fittings are estimated, and the size of fittings is assumed. This may be puzzling, but it is a common trial-and-error engineering procedure that sometimes requires several recalculations.

EXAMPLE 21.6 Using the following data—some based upon the assumptions referred to previously—find the proper size for a metered water supply main. (See Example 21.7 for SI units.)

TABLE 21.15 Water Supply Fixture Units (WSFU)

			Load Values in WSFU		
Fixture	**Occupancy**	**Type of Supply Control**	**Cold**	**Hot**	**Total**
Bathroom group	Private	Flush tank	2.7	1.5	3.6
Bathroom group	Private	Flush valve	6	3	8
Bathtub	Private	Faucet	1	1	1.4
Bathtub	Public	Faucet	3	3	4
Bidet	Private	Faucet	1.5	1.5	2
Combination fixture	Private	Faucet	2.25	2.25	3
Dishwashing machine	Private	Automatic		1.4	1.4
Drinking fountain	Offices, etc.	⅜ in. (9.5 mm) valve	0.25		0.25
Kitchen sink	Private	Faucet	1	1	1.4
Kitchen sink	Hotel, restaurant	Faucet	3	3	4
Laundry trays (1 to 3)	Private	Faucet	1	1	1.4
Lavatory	Private	Faucet	0.5	0.5	0.7
Lavatory	Public	Faucet	1.5	1.5	2
Service sink	Offices, etc.	Faucet	2.25	2.25	3
Shower head	Public	Mixing valve	3	3	4
Shower head	Private	Mixing valve	1	1	1.4
Urinal	Public	1 in. (25 mm) flush valve	10		10
Urinal	Public	¾ in. (19 mm) flush valve	5		5
Urinal	Public	Flush tank	3		3
Washing machine, 8 lb (3.6 kg)	Private	Automatic	1	1	1.4
Washing machine, 8 lb (3.6 kg)	Public	Automatic	2.25	2.25	3
Washing machine, 15 lb (6.8 kg)	Public	Automatic	3	3	4
Water closet	Private	Flush valve	6		6
Water closet	Private	Flush tank	2.2		2.2
Water closet	Public	Flush valve	10		10
Water closet	Public	Flush tank	5		5
Water closet	Public or private	Flushometer tank	2		2

Source: International Plumbing Code. © 1997, International Code Council, Falls Church, VA. Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.

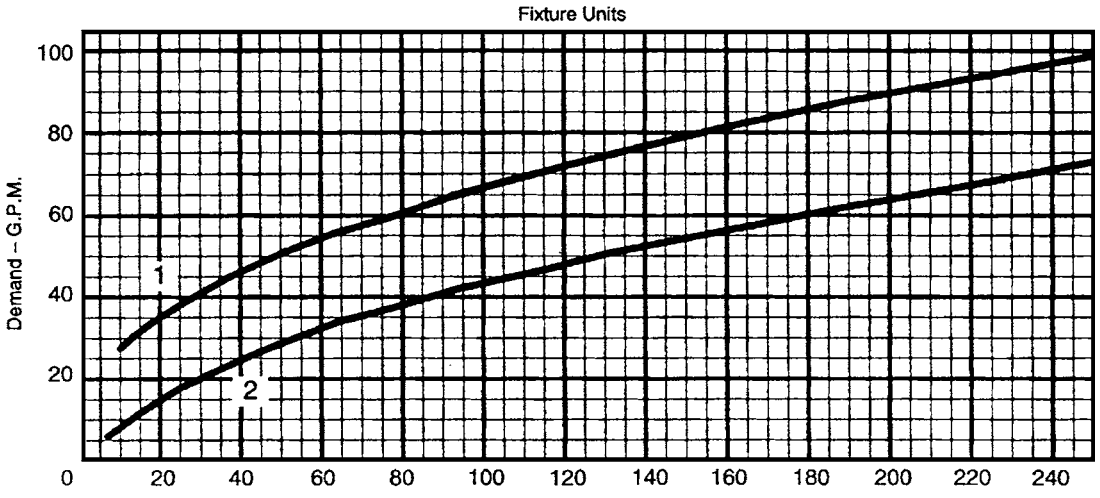
Street main pressure (minimum)	50 psi
Height, topmost fixture above main	30 ft
Topmost fixture type	Water closet with flush valve (1.6 gal per flush)
Fixture units in the system	85 wsfu
Developed length of the piping (to the highest and most remote fixture)	100 ft
Pipe length equivalent to fittings (commonly estimated at 50% of the developed length)	50 ft
System uses predominantly	Flush valves

SOLUTION

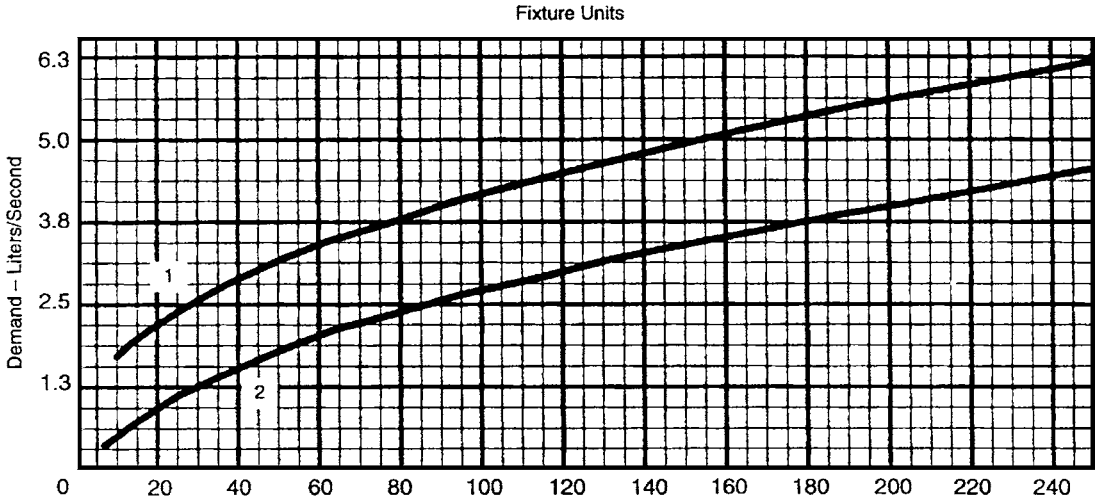
From the minimum street main pressure, subtract the sum of the fixture pressure, the static head, and the pressure lost in the meter. This sum is

	psi
A: fixture pressure (Table 21.14)	15
B: static head 30 ft × 0.433	13
D: pressure loss in meter (estimated, Fig. 21.63)	8
Subtotal	36
E: pressure in street main	50
(A + B + D)	−36
E − (A + B + D)	14

The pressure lost in 100 ft (DL) of piping plus the 50 ft of piping equivalent to the pressure lost by friction in the fittings therefore can total 14 psi. Total equivalent length is 150 ft. This procedure



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 21.65 *Estimate curves for flow based upon total water supply fixture units: (a) I-P units; (b) SI units. Within either chart, curve 1 is for a system with predominantly flush valves; curve 2 is for a system with predominantly flush tanks. (For fixture unit totals above 250, see the 1997* Uniform Plumbing Code.*) (Reprinted by permission from the 1997* Uniform Plumbing Code. *© by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.)*

TABLE 21.16 Allowance in Equivalent Length of Pipe for Friction Loss in Valves and Threaded Fittings[a]

PART A. I-P UNITS

	Equivalent Length of Pipe for Various Fittings						
Diameter of Fitting (in.)	90° Standard Elbow (ft)	45° Standard Elbow (ft)	Standard Tee 90° (ft)	Coupling or Straight Run of Tee (ft)	Gate Valve (ft)	Globe Valve (ft)	Angle Valve (ft)
⅜	1	0.6	1.5	0.3	0.2	8	4
½	2	1.2	3	0.6	0.4	15	8
¾	2.5	1.5	4	0.8	0.5	20	12
1	3	1.8	5	0.9	0.6	25	15
1¼	4	2.4	6	1.2	0.8	35	18
1½	5	3	7	1.5	1.0	45	22
2	7	4	10	2	1.3	55	28
2½	8	5	12	2.5	1.6	65	34
3	10	6	15	3	2	80	40
3½	12	7	18	3.6	2.4	100	50
4	14	8	21	4.0	2.7	125	55
5	17	10	25	5	3.3	140	70
6	20	12	30	6	4	165	80

PART B. SI UNITS

	Equivalent Length of Pipe for Various Fittings						
Diameter of Fitting (mm)	90° Standard Elbow (mm)	45° Standard Elbow (mm)	Standard Tee 90° (mm)	Coupling or Straight Run of Tee (mm)	Gate Valve (mm)	Globe Valve (mm)	Angle Valve (mm)
9.5	305	183	457	91	61	2438	1219
12.7	610	366	914	183	122	4572	2438
19.1	762	457	1219	244	152	6096	3658
25.4	914	549	1524	274	183	7620	4572
32	1219	732	1829	366	244	10668	5486
38	1524	914	2134	457	305	13716	6706
51	2134	1219	3048	610	396	16764	8534
64	2438	1524	3658	762	488	19812	10363
76	3048	1829	4572	914	610	24384	12192
102	4267	2438	6401	1219	823	38100	16764
127	5182	3048	7620	1524	1006	42672	21336
152	6096	3658	9144	1829	1219	50292	24384

Source: Reprinted by permission from the 1997 *Uniform Plumbing Code.* © by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.

[a]Based on nonrecessed threaded fittings. Use one-half of these allowances for recessed threaded fittings or streamline solder fittings.

ensures 15 psi at the critical fixture. The unit-friction loss, psi/100 ft of pipe, will be 14 psi × 100/150 (total equivalent length) = 9.33 psi/100 ft.

From Fig. 21.65*a*, curve 1, a flush-valve system with 85 wsfu will have a probable flow (diversified demand) of about 64 gpm. Given this information, enter Fig. 21.64*a* horizontally at 64 gpm and vertically at 9.3 psi/100 ft. At the intersection of these lines, the pipe diameter and velocity are determined. Between 1½-in.- and 2-in.-diameter pipe:

velocity = 8 fps (less than 10 fps, so OK)

Therefore, a 2-in.-diameter supply pipe will be chosen with a 2-in. meter.

Now find the actual pressure loss in the 2-in. meter for a flow of 64 gpm. Figure 21.63*a* shows that this is about 4 psi. Because this is *less* than the 8 psi estimated, the pressure at the fixture will be slightly higher than the minimum needed. When a final system layout is made, the actual fittings are tabulated and the equivalent length of fittings is found. If this differs greatly from the 50 ft estimated, a recalculation is made. ■

EXAMPLE 21.7 Solve the pipe sizing problem posed in the previous example using SI units.

Street main pressure (minimum)	345 kPa
Height, topmost fixture above main	10 m
Topmost fixture type	Water closet with flush valve
Fixture units in the system	85 wsfu
Developed length of the piping (to the highest and most remote fixture)	30 m
Pipe length equivalent to fittings (commonly estimated at 50% of developed length)	15 m
System uses predominantly	Flush valves

SOLUTION

From the minimum street main pressure, subtract the sum of the fixture pressure, the static head, and the pressure lost in the meter. This sum is

A: fixture pressure (Table 21.14)	103 kPa
B: static head 10 m × 10 kPa/m	100 kPa
D: pressure loss in meter (estimated, Fig. 21.63)	55 kPa
Subtotal	258 kPa
E: pressure in street main	345 kPa
(A + B + D)	–258 kPa
E – (A + B + D)	87 kPa

The pressure lost in 30 m (developed length) of piping plus the 15 m of piping equivalent to the pressure lost by friction in the fittings therefore can total 87 kPa. Total equivalent length is 45 m. This procedure ensures 103 kPa at the critical fixture. The unit-friction loss, kPa/100 m of pipe, will be

$$87 \text{ kPa} \times 100/45 \text{ (total equivalent length)} = 193 \text{ kPa/100 m}$$

From Fig. 21.65*b*, curve 1, a flush-valve system with 85 wsfu will have a probable flow (diversified demand) of about 4 L/s. Given this information, enter Fig. 21.64*b* horizontally at 4 L/s and vertically at 193 kPa/100 m. At the intersection of these lines, the pipe diameter and velocity are determined. Between 38-mm- and 51-mm-diameter pipe:

velocity = about 2.4 m/s (less than 3 m/s, so OK)

Therefore, a 51-mm-diameter supply pipe will be chosen with a 51-mm water meter. ■

As in Example 21.6, the actual system pressures can be found using the exact pressure loss in a 51-mm water meter.

21.12 IRRIGATION

The highest design priority for landscape watering is to ensure optimum rainfall retention (see Figs. 20.12 to 20.19). In the past, provision for watering the landscape around buildings frequently was limited to the installation of hose bibbs at building exteriors. In many areas of North America, half of the residential water usage (see Chapter 22) is for outdoor purposes. With increasing demands on a finite water supply, water-conserving irrigation equipment has become available.

Lawn sprinklers are relatively inefficient irrigating devices, as much of their water is lost to evaporation and runoff. It is commonly estimated that lawn sprinkling will provide ½ in. of water per hour per square foot of lawn (or 0.3 gph per ft^2) (0.005 L/s per m^2).

Landscape sprinkling is least efficient during the daytime, when hot sun and dry air combine to increase the rate of evaporation. However, nighttime sprinkling is rarely convenient for building custodians or homeowners. One solution to this problem is the use of *sprinkler timing devices* (Fig. 21.66*a*), which control electronic valves and a network of underground supply pipes and sprinkler heads that are permanently installed within landscaped areas. These timing devices typically include controls governing the length of the watering cycle, the time at which the cycle begins (usually before sunrise, when relative humidity is highest), and the number of days between cycles. A "rainy day switch" is often included so that irrigation can be discontinued during rainy weather. Rain sensors can be used to shut off irrigation automatically (Fig. 21.66*b*). Tighter control over the water–plant relationship can be obtained with *tensiometers* (Fig. 21.66*c*), which monitor the moisture content of the soil at the depth of the plants' root zone. These can be installed so as to override the automatic timing device, thus watering more—or less—frequently, depending upon the plants' needs. Instead of sprinklers, *bubblers* (Fig. 21.66*d*) can be installed, with very low flow rates and less evaporative water loss.

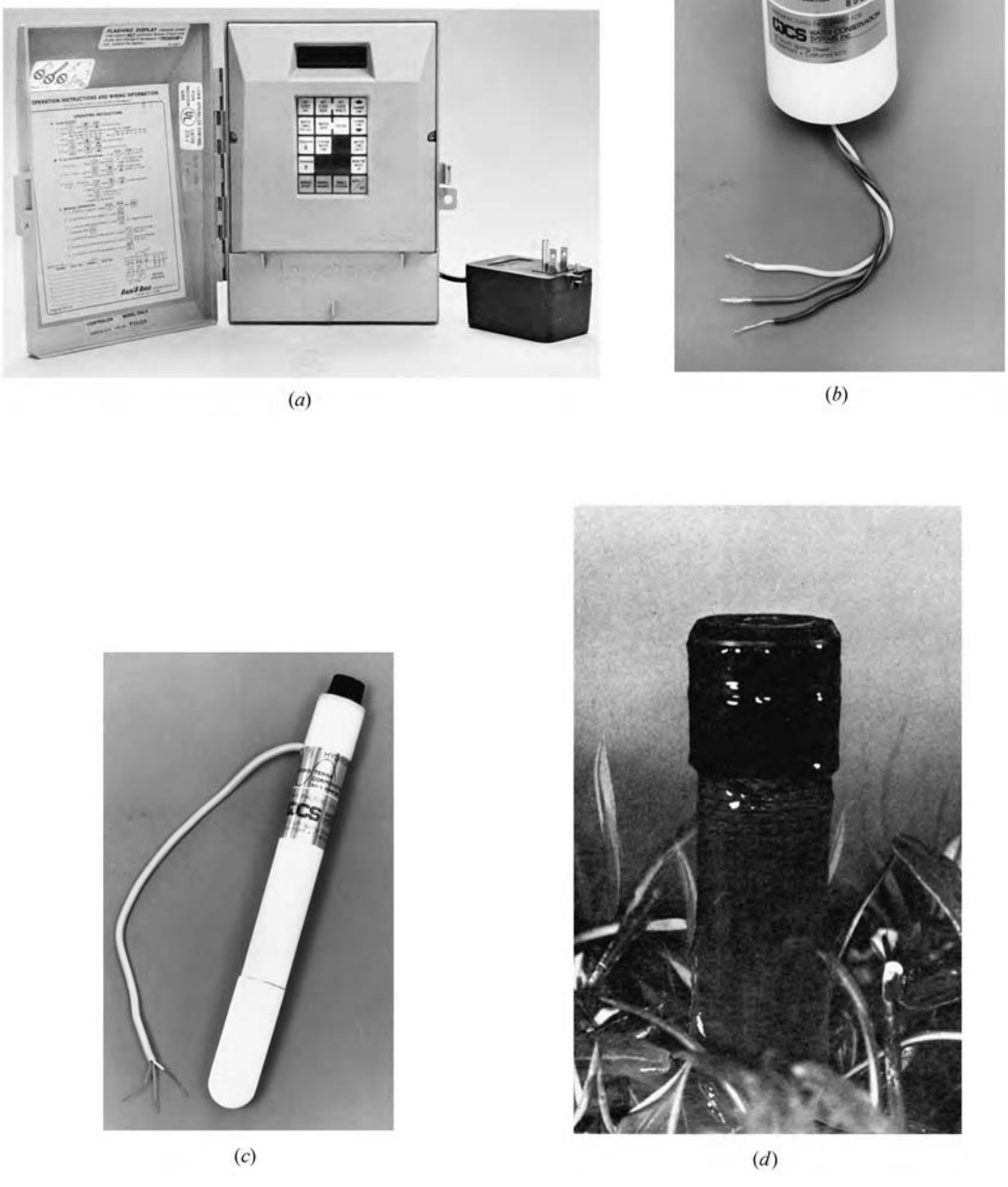


Fig. 21.66 *Components for automatic landscape sprinkling systems. (a) Programmable controllers feature multiple stations, up to 14-day sequences, and memory provisions in case of power failure. (Courtesy of Rain Bird Sales, Inc.) (b) A solid-state rain sensor automatically prevents needless watering during rainfall. (c) A tensiometer controls irrigation by monitoring the moisture content of the soil. (Courtesy of Water Conservation Systems, Inc.) (d) Bubblers are low-flow substitutes for sprinklers—a step toward drip irrigation. These can be pressure-compensating to permit constant flow. (Courtesy of Rain Bird Sales, Inc.)*

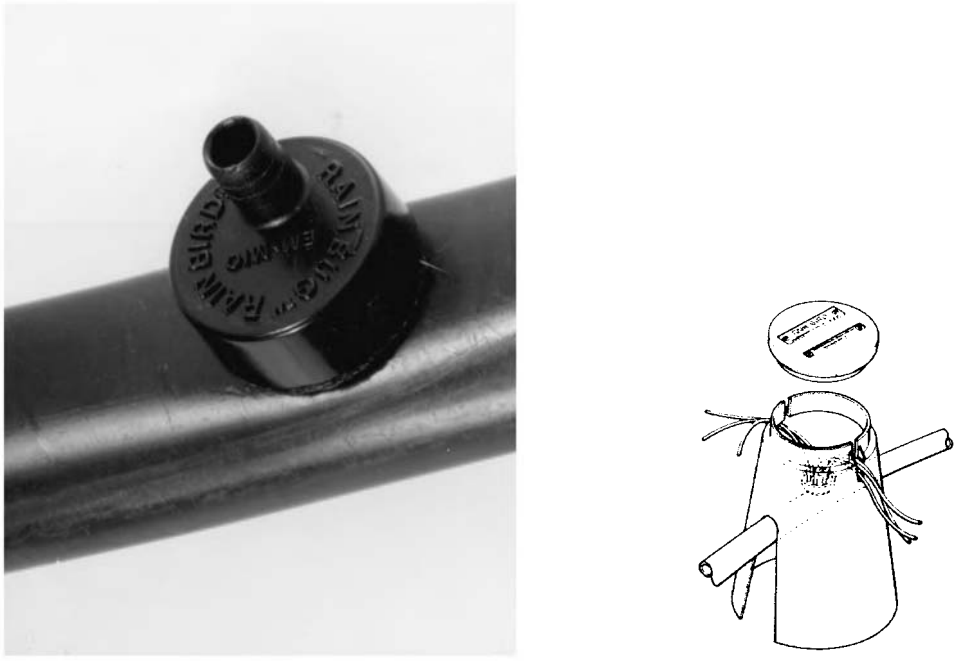


Fig. 21.67 *Equipment for drip irrigation. (a) On low-pressure lines, emitters are installed—one for each group of plants to be watered. The lines can be laid on the ground surface or just under the surface. (b) Simple emitter boxes allow easy access. (Courtesy of Rain Bird Sales, Inc.)*

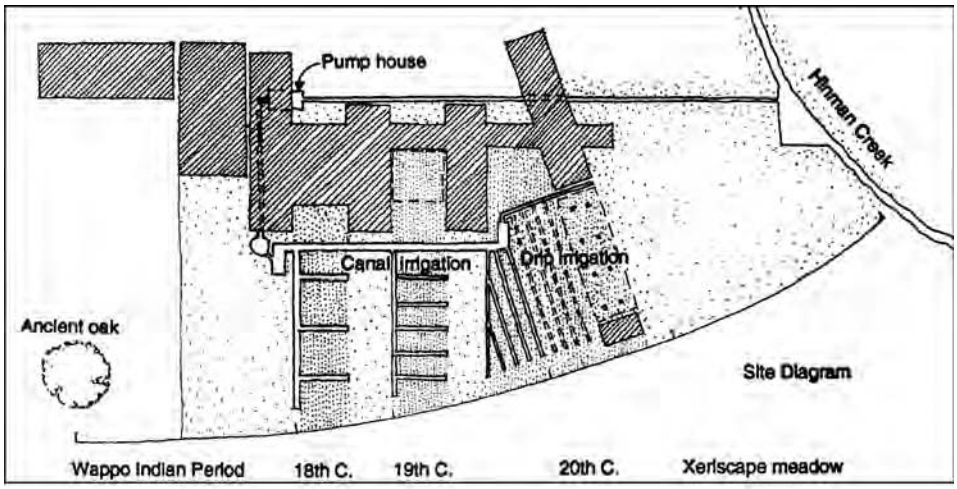


Fig. 21.68 *The Napa Valley Museum shows the history of irrigation in northern California. (a) Site plan. Water, piped from behind a small dam in the adjacent creek, flows through open canals, then provides drip irrigation, eventually discharging to a field of native plants. (b) The canals help guide the visitor through the exhibit gardens. (Courtesy of Fernau and Hartman, architects, Berkeley, CA.)*



(*b*)

Fig. 21.68 (*Continued*)

Drip irrigation takes an approach very different from that of the flooding method typical of sprinklers. From a network of plastic tubes, either just underground or on the surface, *emitters* (Fig. 21.67) slowly and steadily drip water onto the ground surface at each needy plant. Most of this water soaks into the soil at a rate that is better for most plants than the sudden, short flooding of intermittent sprinkling. Two requirements are especially important for drip systems: the water must not contain materials that can clog the small holes of the emitters, and the pressure must be low. Pressure-reducing valves at the source of the drip system are advisable; if necessary, filters should also be installed there.

Drip irrigation is not a universal solution to landscape watering; it is best for individual plants such as shrubs and small trees but is difficult to apply to large lawns. Where appropriate, it can achieve significant water conservation compared to sprinklers. A detailed discussion of soil texture, moisture, and plant growth is provided in Lowry (1988, Chap. 4).

Recycled or reclaimed water for irrigation, often provided by graywater systems and sometimes by stored rainwater, is gradually gaining acceptance in North American building codes. This topic is explored further in Section 22.9. Considered nonpotable, this water must sometimes be deliberately colored and/or be accompanied by warning signs at each outlet.

Irrigation, past and future, shaped the design of the Napa Valley Museum in California (Fig. 21.68). An adjacent creek provides water behind a small dam. A pump house carries water to a central observation tower, where visitors see the history of irrigation displayed in the context of the Napa Valley. The path of water in this model landscape invites visitors to explore canal irrigation of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, as well as advanced drip irrigation and xeriscape plantings of the twentieth century and beyond. (Xeriscape planting, as a part of the hydrozone landscape concept, was shown in Fig. 20.21.)

References and Resources

ANSI. 1986. American National Standard for Buildings and Facilities A117.1-1986: *Providing Accessibility and Usability for Physically Handicapped People,* American National Standards Institute. New York.

ASHRAE. 1995. *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications.* American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers. Atlanta, GA.

Banham, R. 1969. *The Architecture of the Well-tempered Environment.* Architectural Press. London.

Brown, G. Z., J. Reynolds, S. Ubbelohde. 1982. *InsideOut: Design Procedures for Passive Environmental Technologies.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

HUD. 1977. *Intermediate Minimum Property Standards Supplement.* U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development. Washington, DC.

IAPMO. 1997. *Uniform Plumbing Code.* International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials. Walnut, CA.

ICC. 1997. *International Plumbing Code.* International Code Council. Falls Church, VA.

Kira, A. 1976. *The Bathroom*, new and expanded ed. Viking Press. New York.

Lowry, William P. 1988. *Atmospheric Ecology for Designers and Planners.* Van Nostrand Reinhold. New York.

Milne, M. 1976. *Residential Water Conservation.* U.S. Office of Water Research and Technology, Department of Commerce, NTIS.

National Drinking Water Clearinghouse, *Tech Brief* Series. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Washington, DC:
June 1996. *Disinfection*
September 1996. *Filtration*
February 1997. *Corrosion Control*
May 1997. *Ion Exchange and Demineralization*

Plante, R. H. 1983. *Solar Domestic Hot Water: A Practical Guide.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Reif, D. K. 1983. *Passive Solar Water Heaters.* Brick House Publishing. Andover, MA.

U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board. *Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities.* Washington, DC.

The United States Access Board (accessible design): http://www.access-board.gov/

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1975. *Manual of Individual Water Supply Systems.* Washington, DC.

CHAPTER 22

Liquid Waste

AMONG OTHER ISSUES, CHAPTERS 20 AND 21 considered the waste of resources inherent in the use of potable water to flush toilets. This chapter examines some consequences of this conventional approach to bodily waste removal, along with alternatives that use no water at all, and indeed that offer to convert waste to a useful resource. For typical U.S. residences, the potential impact of such alternatives on water usage and treatment is shown in Fig. 22.1.

Almost every plumbing fixture within buildings is provided with both water supply and waste pipes. Because the toilet is usually the largest user of water (Fig. 22.1), as well as one of the worst water polluters, this chapter begins with recycling/waterless alternatives to the flush toilet and urinals that were discussed in Section 21.7. Then more conventional systems using water to move waste, and conventional treatment systems from individual to large scale, are discussed. Discussions of graywater and storm water treatment complete this chapter.

22.1 WATERLESS TOILETS AND URINALS

The array of waterless alternatives includes toilets in which chemicals or oil are substituted for water. These devices are commonly found in airplanes, vehicles, and boats, as well as in remote and environmentally sensitive areas. The chemicals must be frequently recharged and the waste products removed. Other waterless toilets temporarily treat the waste awaiting discharge to a sewer by freezing it, burning it, or otherwise packaging it so that it remains inoffensive. Such devices can become energy-intensive approaches to waterless waste disposal. Also, they are still dependent upon public sewer systems.

(a) Composting Toilets

Once considered too unconventional to ever gain mainstream acceptance, these ecologically attractive devices are now appearing not only in homes

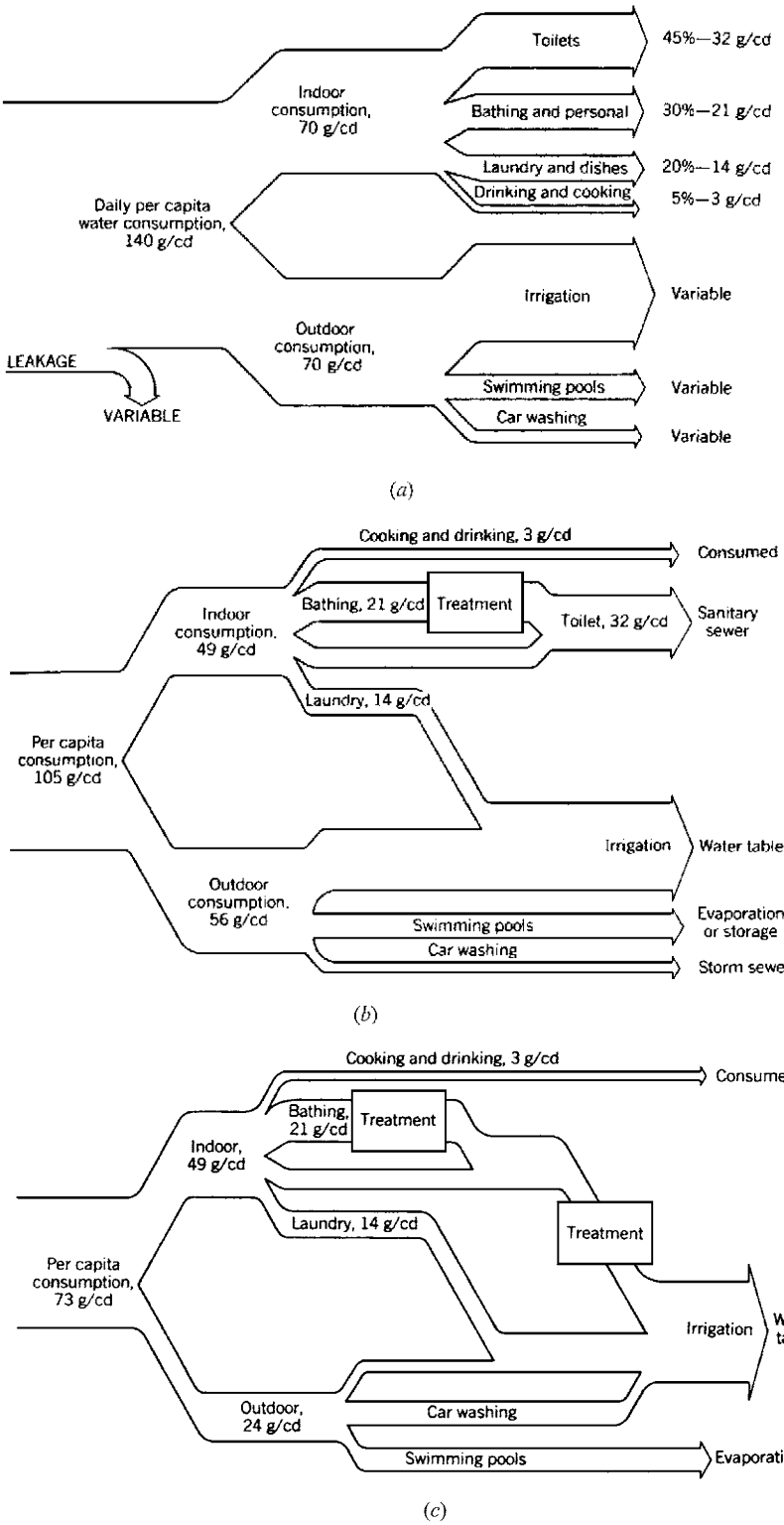


Fig. 22.1 *Opportunities for water conservation for the typical U.S. family. (a) At present, the average U.S. residential usage is about 140 g/cd (gallons per capita per day) [530 L/cd; liters per capita per day]—all of it potable. (b) With attention to recycling and the matching of water quality to usage, potable water usage could be cut to 105 g/cd (397 L/cd)—a 25% reduction. (c) With further on-site treatment and recycling, potable water usage drops to 73 g/cd (276 L/cd)—a 40% reduction—and the need for public sewage treatment (for residences) disappears. (From Milne, 1976.)*

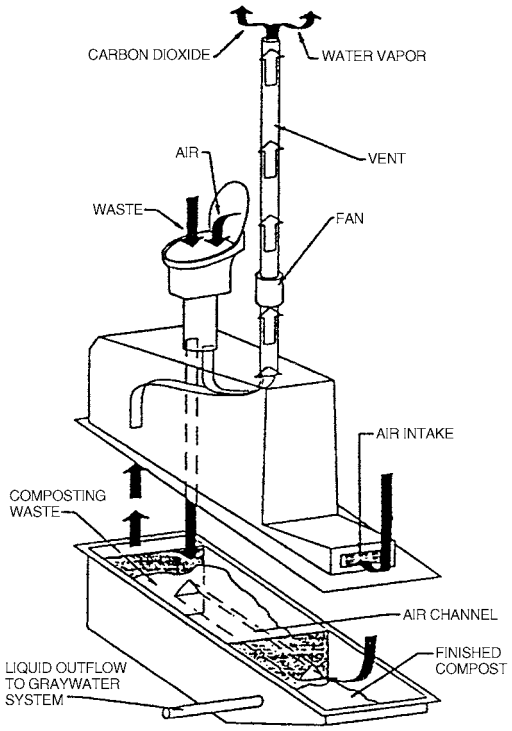


Fig. 22.2 *Composting toilets save water and eliminate a sewer connection. They are used at the C.K. Choi Building, University of British Columbia, Canada, where the toilet rooms are concentrated near the center stairs, with a small basement below containing composting chambers and a rainwater cistern for irrigation. The composting toilets produce both dry humus and a liquid outflow to a graywater recycling system. (Courtesy of Matsuzaki Wright, architects, Vancouver, BC.)*

but within institutional buildings (Fig. 22.2). Perhaps several generations needed to pass between regular use of the historic outhouse and use of these modern composting toilets. They offer a self-contained and low-energy strategy for providing waterless toilets. Wherever water supplies are unreliable, or waste discharge is difficult or prohibited, composting toilets offer an alternative. Silent and immune from potential water damage (freezing pipes or overflows), these systems rely upon *aerobic* digestion of waste (i.e., that which occurs in the presence of oxygen). Aerobic systems usually are essentially odor-free, and the exhaust air is rich in CO_2 (not necessarily good) and water vapor (harmless). In contrast, *anaerobic* decomposition (i.e., that which occurs without oxygen) is malodorous and produces methane gas as a key by-product. See Sections 22.7 and 22.8 for more about methane and anaerobic decomposition.

Waste material deposited in composting toilets builds up in a mound, which retards the flow of air for decomposition. Wood shavings are commonly added with each use to encourage toppling of the mound and to add some carbon to the resulting compost. Some composting toilets include a means of regular mechanical stirring of the compost chamber, aiding aerobic decomposition.

Ventilation is important, both to reduce odors and to facilitate evaporation of excess moisture. A ventilation stack is an essential feature; it is often assisted by a very small (3- to 5-W) fan. Problems with insects hatching within the composting chamber can be lessened by keeping vegetable scraps out of the chamber, as they are frequent sources of insect eggs.

The C.K. Choi Building at the University of British Columbia (Fig. 22.2) eliminated a connection to the city sewer system by a combination of composting toilets and a graywater treatment system. The composting toilets in this three-story, 30,000-ft^2 (2787-m^2) facility for the Institute of Asian Research are estimated to save 1500 gal (5680 L) of water per day. At an estimated 30,000 uses per year, these composting toilets are expected to produce an annual compost yield of about 4 ft^3 (0.1 m^3). In addition, their liquid end product will be added to the graywater treatment system at the rate of about 3 to 5 gal (11 to 19 L) per day. The composting chambers are located in a small basement below the toilet rooms at the center of the building.

The graywater includes waste from lavatories and sinks, as well as liquid from the composting toilets. This water drains into the subsurface "graywater trench," containing a variety of phragmite plant material. The roots support microbial life known for digesting and neutralizing bacteria. This graywater is then used for irrigation. Graywater systems are discussed further in Section 22.9.

(b) Vault-Type Composting Toilets

The *Clivus Multrum system* (Fig. 22.3) has a large decomposition chamber that must be below the toilet (and perhaps also the kitchen), from which

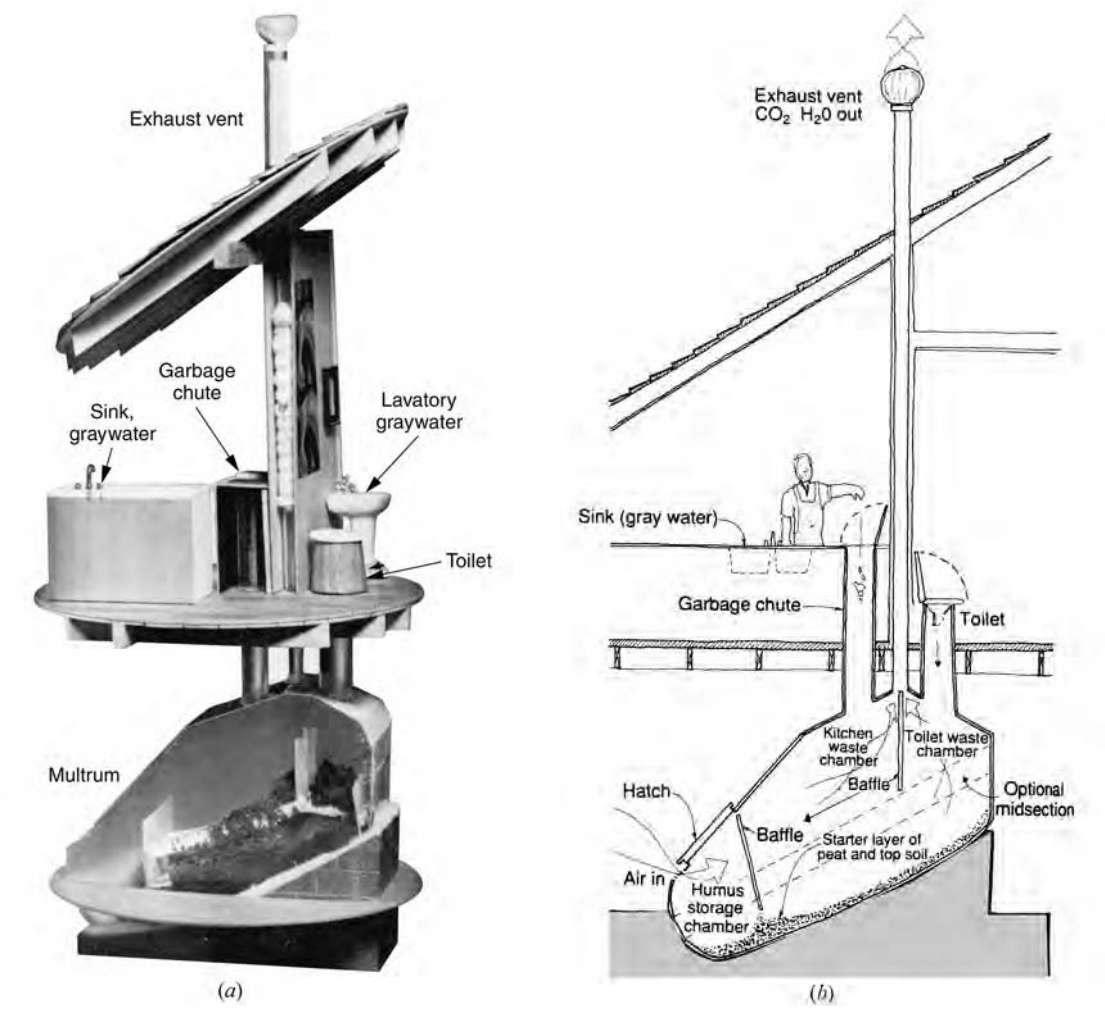


Fig. 22.3 *Clivus Multrum System, with composting of both kitchen and toilet organic wastes. (a) The lower composting chamber requires 4 × 8 × 7 ft (1.2 × 2.4 × 2.1 m) of floor space, a generous supply of air (warm air speeds decomposition), and access for periodic removal of the garden-ready humus. (b) It must be arranged so that its upper end receives toilet wastes; as the bottom slopes downward, kitchen wastes are deposited on top of the decomposing toilet wastes. The vent stack ensures continuous airflow, preventing odors from entering bathroom or kitchen. The toilet seat and cover must be kept closed when not in use to keep air flowing through the composting chamber and out of the stack. The toilet bowl (containing no water) swings open when the seat is occupied, exposing the composting chamber below. (Courtesy of Clivus Multrum USA, Inc.)*

it readily accepts organic waste. It must also be accessible to remove the humus—varying between 3 to 10 gal (11 to 38 L) of soil per person per year.

The relatively large chamber (about the size of a Volkswagen "bug") and its low position/access requirement can have a significant impact on design. Also of significance is the device's appetite for fresh air. The more air it has, the speedier the process of aerobic decomposition and, therefore, the less odor. In winter, this airflow could cause increased heat losses by infiltration in a building. The natural ventilation due to the stack effect is at least 15 cfm (7 L/s) in the Clivus Multrum. A ventilating fan in the stack will increase this rate significantly. However, if outdoor air is brought directly to the chamber, it could be too cold for proper decomposition; a chamber temperature of



(a) (b)

Fig. 22.4 *On the shore of Crater Lake, Oregon, (a) a building with three Phoenix composting toilets serves visitors. An attached sunspace (b) contains and warms the composting chambers and contains an evaporator for liquid waste. The facility is closed all winter.*

98°F (37°C) is optimum. Solar heating of input air offers one alternative. However, adding too much heat to compost piles encourages oxidation rather than aerobic decomposition; inferior compost results.

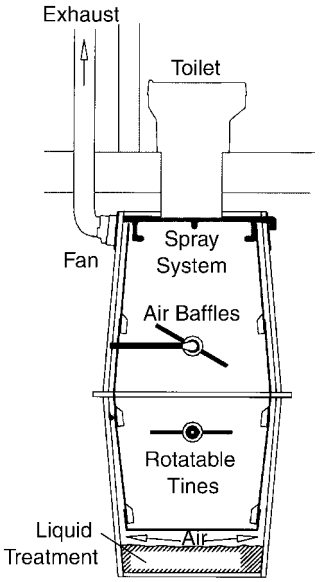
Another composting toilet application is shown on the shores of Oregon's Crater Lake National Park in Fig. 22.4. Consider the challenge: this facility is at the bottom of a 1-mile trail down from the crater rim; public sewers are miles away and hundreds of feet higher in elevation; severely cold winters and deep snow close the trail for more than half of the year; and Crater Lake is one of the clearest in the world, so water pollution is absolutely to be avoided. Three Phoenix composting toilet tanks sit within a solar-heated attached sunspace.

The *Phoenix* composting tanks (Fig. 22.5) feature rotatable tines that speed aerobic decomposition. They also can be fitted with an evaporation system, typically using a small photovoltaic (PV)-driven pump that delivers liquid to the top of a drip tank filled with plastic balls. This presents a very large surface area, and a small fan also aids evaporation.

(c) Heater-Type Composting Toilets

Another approach puts the composting chamber within the toilet itself. The more compact the composting chamber, the more likely that heat must be added to speed decomposition and to evaporate liquid. Although electricity provides an easy and compact way to heat, using such high-quality energy to treat waste reduces the compact toilet's ecological advantage.

In the most compact of *Sun-Mar*'s products (Fig. 22.6), a variable-diameter Bio-drum is turned by a fold-out hand crank at the front of a rather conventional-looking toilet. At this size, it is rated for continuous residential use by one adult or a family of two (or for weekend/vacation use, by three adults or a family of four). Sun-Mar uses a three-chamber approach, separating the quick composting of waste and toilet paper, the evaporation of liquid, and the safe storage of the finished compost.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 22.5 *The Phoenix composting toilet's tank serves either two toilets or one toilet and one food waste inlet. (a) Schematic section; rotatable tines mix waste and control the movement of compost to the access area for eventual removal. The fan exhausts air from the Phoenix tank to control odors. Passing behind the air baffles, air makes frequent contact with the compost pile, ensuring aerobic decomposition. After passing through the compost pile and receiving secondary treatment in the bottom of the Phoenix, liquid is periodically sprayed on top of the compost pile to keep the pile moist and inoculate fresh waste with decomposing organisms. Each tank is 39 in. (1000 mm) wide and 61 in. (1550 mm) long, and requires another 5 ft (1525 mm) in front for maintenance access, and is available in three heights: 55 in. (1400 mm), 73 in. (1850 mm), and 92 in. (2350 mm). Another 12 in. (300 mm) above the top of the tank is convenient for maintenance. (b) Four chambers with their rotatable tines serve the Vogelsang High Sierra Camp at Yosemite National Park, California. (Courtesy of Advanced Composting Systems, Whitefish, MT.)*

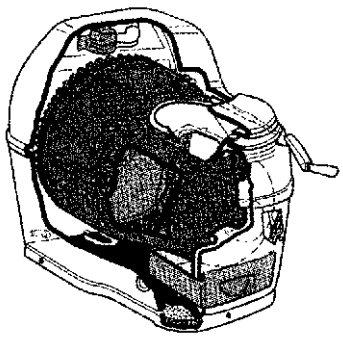


Fig. 22.6 *The Sun-Mar "Compact" composting toilet has a "Biodrum"™ that is turned by a hand crank. The crank folds back into the body of the toilet after use. It also uses a 200-W electric heater to speed decomposition, a 25-W fan, and a 2-in. (50-mm) vent that attaches at the rear. The self-contained unit is designed for light residential use. (Courtesy of Sun-Mar Corporation, Tonawanda, NY.)*

(d) Waterless Urinals

Urine is often kept out of composting toilets for several reasons. First, excess liquid in the chamber creates a discharge issue, complicating an otherwise simple end result of occasional harvesting of garden-ready humus. Second, urine is nearly sterile and an excellent fertilizer, and its separate capture could be useful. If not captured, urine can be directed either to a graywater or to a wastewater system.

Waterless No-Flush™ urinals utilize a floating layer of BlueSeal® liquid that forms a barrier to sewer vapors but allows urine to readily pass through (Fig. 22.7). This liquid does not dissolve, mix, or react chemically with urine. It is more

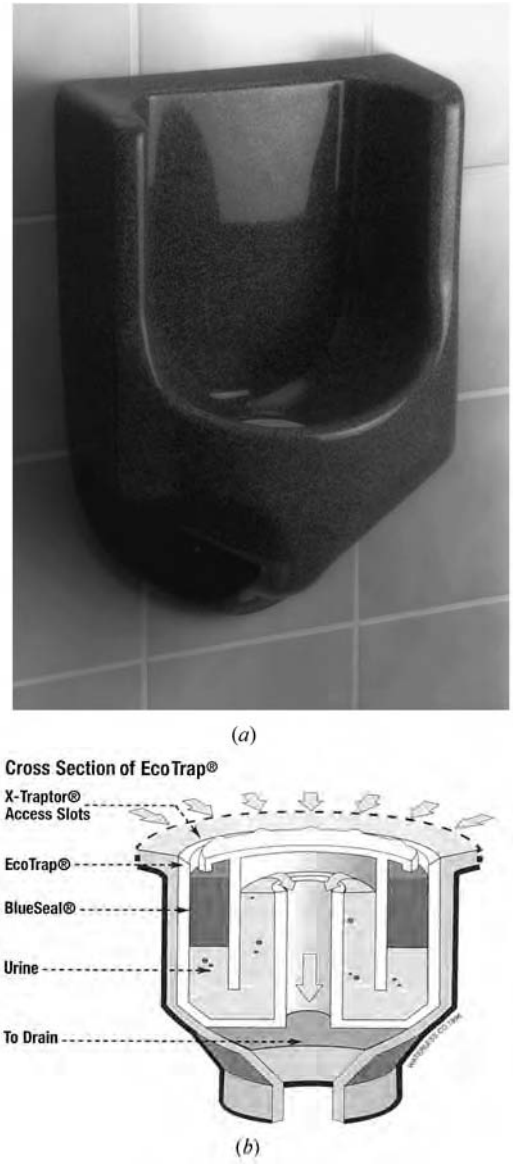


Fig. 22.7 *Using no water, (a) the Waterless No-Flush™ urinal employs a special liquid to allow urine to pass through (b) while keeping sewer gas trapped in the waste pipe. (Courtesy of the Waterless Company LLC, Del Mar, CA.)*

than 95% biodegradable and does not evaporate at 100°F (38°C). Because 1 quart (0.9 L) of this liquid lasts for 15,000 to 20,000 urinal uses, it replaces an estimated 15,000 to 60,000 gal (56,780 to 227,120 L) of water that would have been used by conventional flush urinals. The trap retains sediments and should be emptied occasionally, and the liquid is periodically replenished (3 oz [89 mL] per 1500 uses).

22.2 PRINCIPLES OF DRAINAGE

Early in the history of indoor plumbing, waste drainage was a simple matter; a pipe containing wastewater led to a sewer (Fig. 22.8*a*). Before long, the noxious gases that were created by the anaerobic conditions in sewers became a threat to the health of those indoors. Thus, the *trap* was invented (Fig. 22.8*b*) to block the pipe so that gases could not pass. However, as moving water fills the pipe downstream from a trap, the mass of water acts as a plunger, creating higher pressures in front and negative pressures behind. The positive pressures might force sewer gas through the water in other traps; worse, the negative pressures could suck (or siphon) the water from the trap, leaving it open to gas passage. The installation of *vents* provides a way to deal with these pressures so that the suction draws air down through the vents rather than water from the traps (Fig. 22.8*c*). A typical arrangement of fixtures, traps, and vents is shown in Fig. 22.9.

(a) Traps

The only separation between the unpleasant and dangerously unhealthy gases in sanitary drainage pipes and the air breathed by room occupants is the water caught in the fixture trap after each discharge from a fixture. Sufficient water must flow, especially in water closets, to keep this residual water clean. Traps are made of steel, cast iron, copper, plastic, or brass—except those in water closets and urinals, which are often made of vitreous china cast integrally with the fixture. The deeper the seal, the more resistance to siphonage but the greater the fouling area; therefore, a minimum depth of 2 in. (50 mm) and a maximum depth of 4 in. (100 mm) are common standards. All traps should be self-cleaning, that is, capable of being completely flushed each time the trap operates so that no sediment will remain inside to decompose.

There are a few exceptions to the rule that each fixture should have its own trap. Common exceptions include two laundry trays and a kitchen sink connected to a single trap; not more than three laundry trays using one trap; and three lavatories on a single trap. In the case of the laundry trays and sink, the sink is equipped with

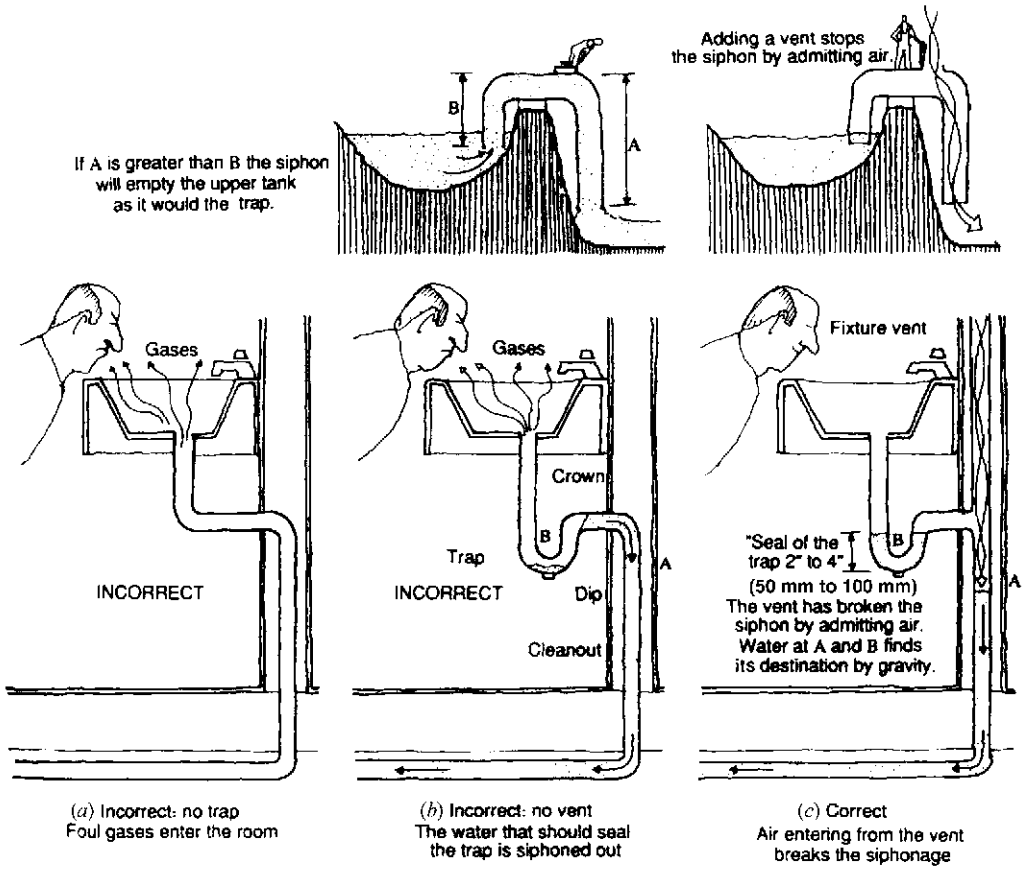


Fig. 22.8 *Function of a trap and one of the several functions of a vent (preventing siphonage).*

the trap and set closest to the stack (see stack *b* in Fig. 22.9).

Traps are usually placed within 2 ft (610 mm) of the fixture and should be accessible for cleaning through a bottom opening that is otherwise closed by a plug. Overflow pipes from fixtures are connected to the inlet side of the trap. In long runs of horizontal pipe, so-called running traps are used only near drains in floors, areaways, or yards and should be provided with hand-hole cleanouts. "Island" sinks pose a special problem when the vent line cannot lead up from such a location. The sink's waste line can be taken to a distant sump, which is then itself trapped and vented.

When fixtures are used very infrequently, the water in traps can evaporate into the air, breaking the seal of the trap. In contemplating the possible frequency of use, this fact should be kept in mind by the designer. Unoccupied residences (such as weekend or vacation homes) may experience sewer gas penetration through traps emptied by evaporation. Otherwise, evaporation to a dangerous degree rarely occurs, except in the case of floor drains. Used to carry away the water used in washing floors or drained from heating/cooling equipment, floor drains may often lose their water seal between their infrequent uses. Some authorities are reluctant to approve floor drains connected to a building sewer, requiring instead that they be separately connected to a dry well. In either case, the use of a special hose bibb, affording a source of water directly above the drain, is a wise precaution. It can easily be used to manually refill the

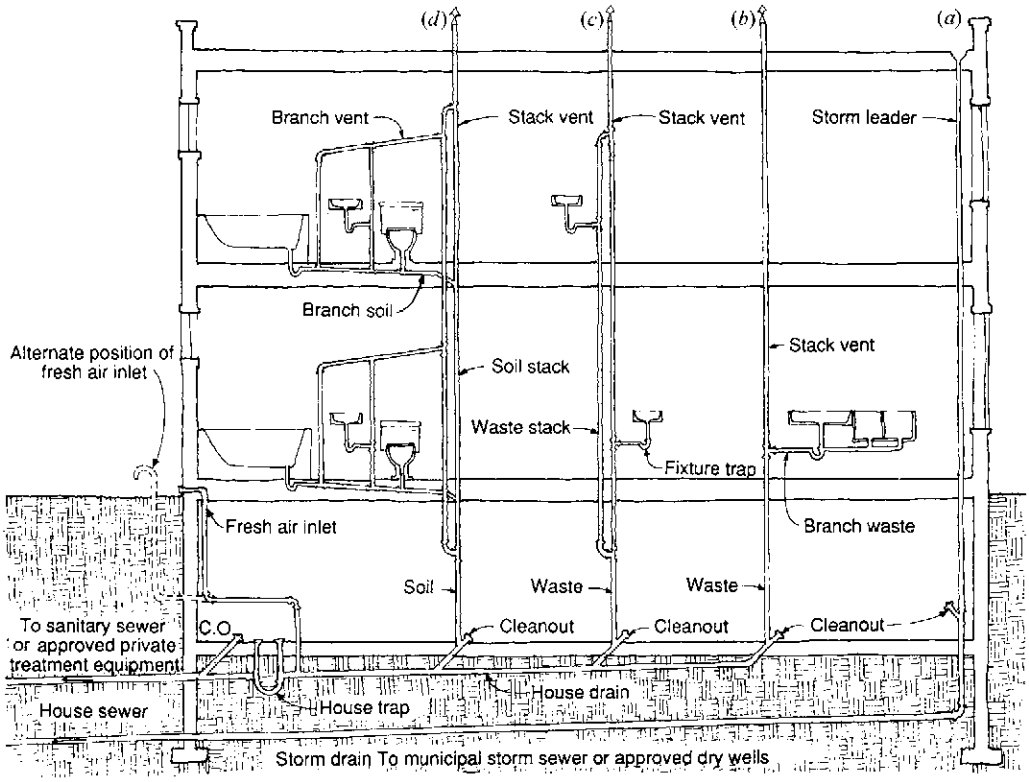


Fig. 22.9 *Typical sanitary drainage system, which separates storm water from sewage. This installation combines blackwater (from water closets) and graywater, although their separation would encourage graywater recycling. The house trap is optional under some plumbing codes and illegal under others (because sanitary sewers could be vented at street level through the fresh air inlet).*

trap of the drain. Other strategies include using a deep trap drain and/or providing a drip source of water to maintain the trap seal.

(b) Vents

To admit air and discharge gases, soil and waste stacks are extended through roofs, and a system of air vents, largely paralleling the drainage system, is provided. As in the case of drainage stacks, the ventilating stacks extend through the roof or vent through the drainage stack. The functions of venting are often misunderstood. It is true that one important purpose is to ventilate the system by allowing air from the fresh-air inlet (or from the sewer, if there is no house trap or fresh-air inlet) to rise through the system and carry away offensive gases. This provides some purification for the piping. However, several other purposes are served by the vent piping. The introduction of air near a fixture (and, in the case of circuit vents, at the branch soil line) breaks the possible siphonage of water out of a trap. Under other circumstances—namely, when drainage fluids descend to a fixture group through the soil stack—the foul gases, under pressure, could bubble through the trap seals of that group. The vent system provides a local escape for these gases. *Circuit venting*—which permits air and gases to pass in and out of the soil or waste branch instead of at each fixture, as in the case of continuous venting (individual fixture venting)—can prevent the siphonage of trap seals or their penetration by gases (Fig. 22.10). Some codes may prohibit circuit venting.

(c) Air Gaps and Vacuum Breakers

Nearly every plumbing fixture is supplied with pure water at one point, and most discharge contaminated fluids at another. The proximity of sewage to

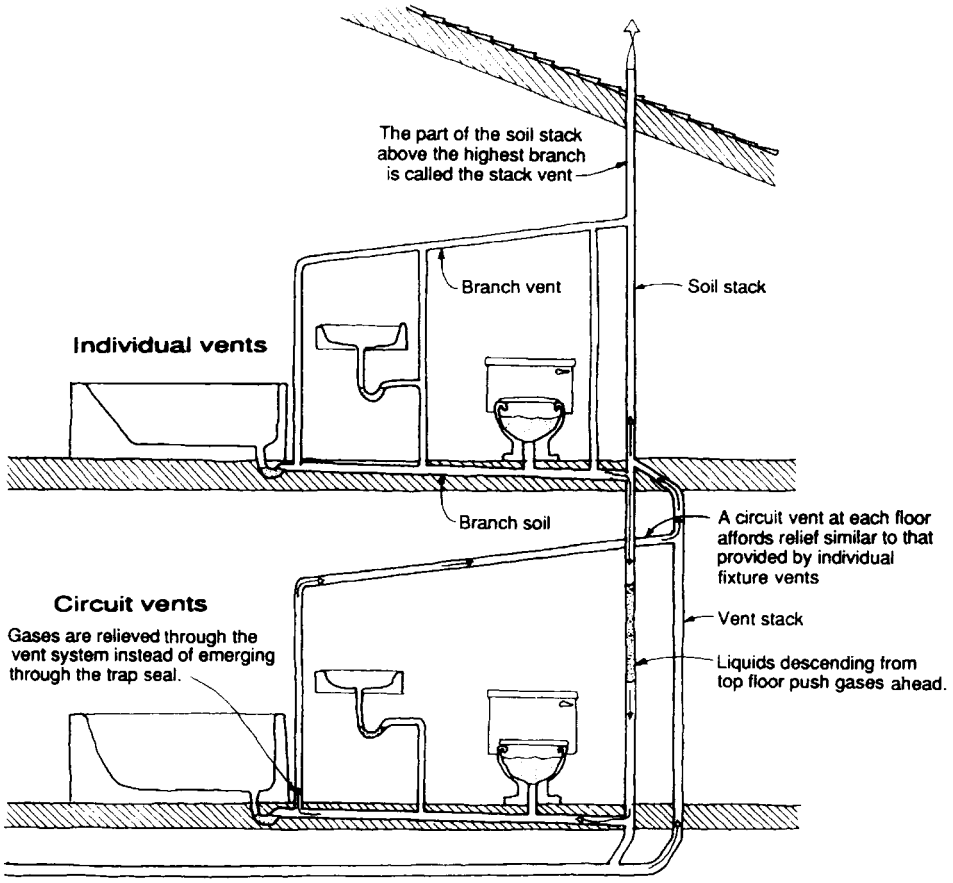


Fig. 22.10 *Sewer gas relief through vents. Gases pressurized by hydraulic action or by expansion due to putrefaction have an escape path through the vent system and will not enter the rooms. The upper floor shows individual vents (a vent at each fixture); the lower floor shows circuit vents, permitted by some codes, where one vent serves the entire branch.*

potable water at most fixtures is inescapable; sewage could accidentally be siphoned into a pipe carrying potable water. Consider an improperly placed faucet whose outlet is below the rim of a fixture. If the fixture overflow is plugged and the fixture bowl full, the faucet can easily project into the foul drainage water. If, in this circumstance, the water piping is drained while the faucet is open, contaminated water could be drawn by suction into the water piping.

In water closets served by flushometers (flush valves), the water supply unavoidably enters the bowl below the rim. A vacuum breaker placed in the flushometer closes with water pressure but opens to admit air if there is suction in the water pipe. This prevents siphonage in much the same way that a vent prevents trap siphonage (Fig. 22.11). The use of vacuum breakers at dishwashers and clothes washers was diagrammed in Figure 21.52. These are especially important locations because, in both of these appliances, pumps force wastewater into a drain line.

22.3 PIPING, FITTINGS, AND ACCESSORIES

(a) Piping and Fittings

The materials used within buildings for soil and waste piping and for venting include cast iron, copper, acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS)

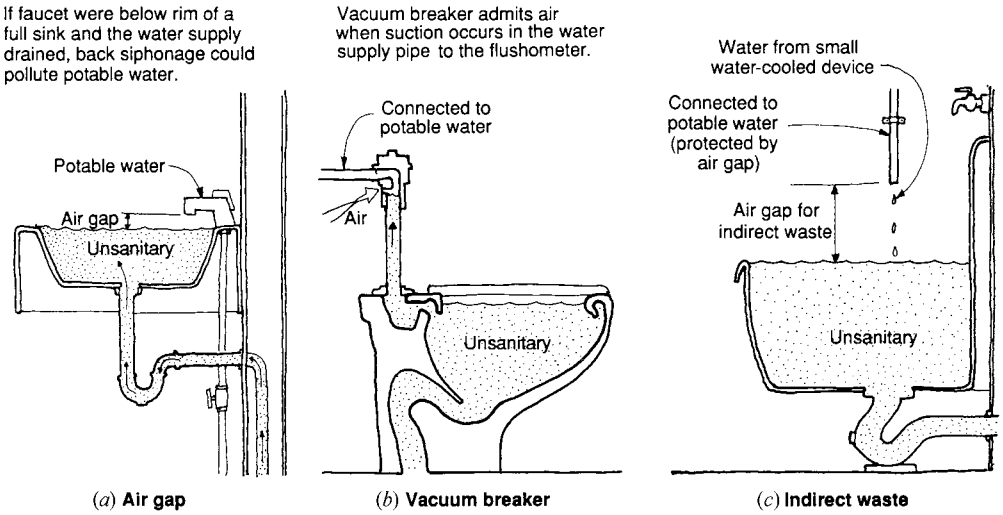


Fig. 22.11 *Backflow preventers. Unsanitary fluid wastes cannot be siphoned into the potable water piping in these three examples.*

plastic, and polyvinyl chloride (PVC) type drainage, waste, and vent (DWV) pipe (Table 22.1, Fig. 22.12). Galvanized steel is sometimes chosen for vents and for tall stacks in high-rise structures. Sometimes, different materials are used in the same system. Where dissimilar metals are connected, dielectric unions are used to prevent corrosion due to electrolysis. Materials used underground for sewage disposal (depending upon local codes) include vitrified clay tile, cast iron, copper, asbestos-cement, ABS plastic, PVC type DWV, and concrete pipe.

Cast Iron. Used first in Germany around 1562 and appearing in the United States about 1813, cast iron supplanted the tubing and culverts of earlier eras that employed clay, lead, bronze, and wood. Cast iron was thus the earliest of the modern materials used for piping. Its durability and resistance to corrosion make it appropriate for a wide range of uses, from small residential work to the stacks and branches of tall buildings.

Typical fittings for sanitary drainage appear in Figs. 22.12 and 22.13. In sanitary flow systems

TABLE 22.1 Materials for Waste Piping

		Underground	
Material	**Aboveground DWV**	**Building Drainage and Vent**	**Building Sewer**
ABS (acrylonitrile butadiene styrene)	✓	✓	✓
Asbestos-cement	✓	✓	✓
Brass	✓		
Cast iron	✓	✓	✓
Concrete			✓
Copper (type)	✓ (K, L, M, or DWV)	✓ (K or L)	✓ (K or L)
Galvanized steel	✓		
Glass	✓		
Polyolefin	✓	✓	
PVC (polyvinyl chloride) type DWV	✓	✓	✓
Vitrified clay			✓

Source: Based on the *International Plumbing Code.* © 1997, International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, VA. Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.

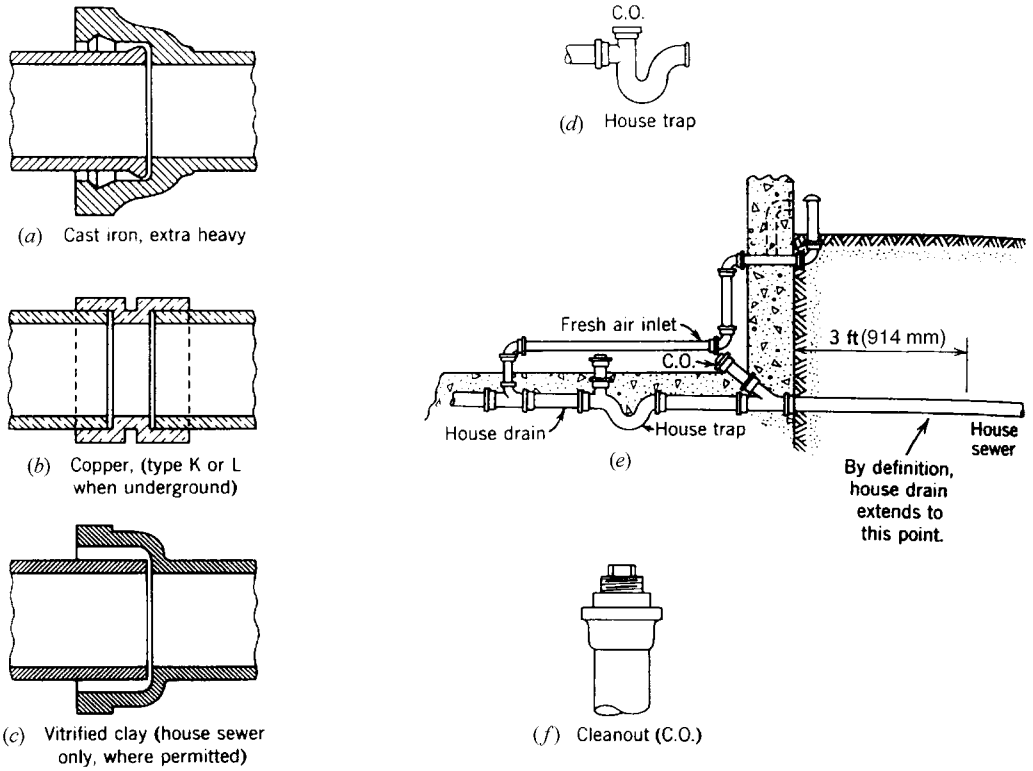


Fig. 22.12 *Piping and fittings. (a) Connection of cast iron piping. (b) Coupling to connect copper tubing. (c) Connection of vitrified clay piping. (d) Detail of house trap fitting. (e) House drain, house trap with cleanouts and vent (fresh air inlet), and house sewer. (f) Cleanout showing removable threaded plug. For large buildings, the terms building drain, building sewer, and so on supplant house. Local codes differ on inclusion or omission of the house trap. Note: plastic pipe connections are similar to that in (b).*

composed of *any* material, changes in direction must be made with easy bends. To prevent clogging or fouling by the solid materials flowing in the piping, right-angle connections are not used. Thus, for sanitary drainage systems the available options in Fig. 22.13 would be the one-eighth bend connected to a 45° Y, or the one-quarter bend long sweep. The 90° T, in the position shown, would be used *only* in a vent system.

The three cast-iron soil pipe joints shown in Fig. 22.14 represent semirigid, watertight, and gastight connections of two or more pieces of pipe or fittings in a sanitary system. Types *b* and *c* provide a quieter plumbing system and slightly more flexible joints than type *a*. See Fig. 22.15 for cast-iron soil pipe and fittings in bathroom groups.

Copper Tube and Fittings for DWV. There are several tube classifications for the copper products used in plumbing systems: types K, L, and M are for water supply systems, and type DWV is for drainage, waste, and vent installations. Connections between copper tubing and its couplings or fittings involve a sliding fit between components (see Fig. 22.12*b*). Bridging the mating surfaces is a cylindrical capillary space filled with solder. The process of making the joint is a simple one, utilizing a flux, heat, and solder. Properly made, the joint will be airtight and capable of withstanding high pressure (although such pressure is not normal in waste lines). To undo the joint for repair or renovation, one simply reheats it until the solder melts. Like cast iron, copper has a history of use in ancient installations. Updated and highly developed in recent decades, it is now in widespread use.

Plastic Materials for DWV. Along with copper and cast iron, plastics are suitable for sanitary drainage systems. Table 22.1 lists the plastics

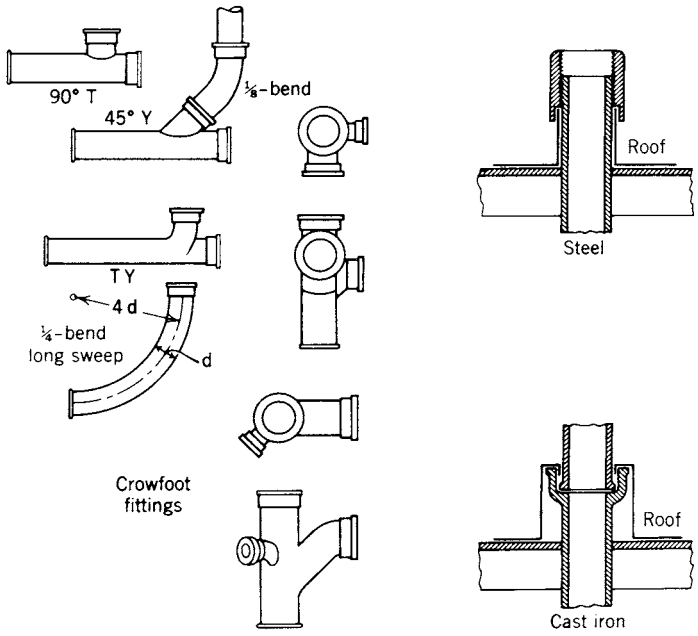


Fig. 22.13 *Principal types of cast-iron fittings and method of flashing at roofs for steel and cast iron.*

suitable for drainage, waste, and vent, as well as for building drains and sewers. Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) is identified and further described by the labeling shown in Fig. 22.16. One of several steps used in making a "solvent-weld" connection is seen in Fig. 22.16, as is a method of support used in wood frame construction. Figure 22.17 shows assembled bathroom piping in place. One advantage of plastic piping is its relatively light weight, allowing some preassembly in a location with conditions better than might be available at the final installation location, with the assembly then being carried to its place of installation.

(b) Accessories

Among the many special devices that can form part of a plumbing system are floor drains, backwater valves, ejectors, and interceptors.

Floor Drains. When floors in buildings must be washed down after operations such as food preparation and cooking, floor drains are usually necessary. Figure 22.18 shows a typical floor drain. Because these drains are often connected to sanitary drainage systems (rather than dry wells) and, in long periods of disuse, might lose their trap seals by evaporation, special precautions are necessary to preserve the trap seal and avoid odors and unsanitary conditions in the room.

Backwater Valves. These devices (Fig. 22.19) are sometimes used when plumbing fixtures are installed at low elevations, such as in basements, or in other locations that are near the level of the sewer. They cannot be used to protect the entire plumbing system and should be used only when necessary. They must be accessible for maintenance. An alternative to the use of backwater valves is the sewage sump.

Sewage Sumps and Ejectors. Whenever subsoil drainage, fixtures, or other equipment are situated below the level of public sewers, a sump pit or receptacle must be installed. The drainage from the low fixtures may flow into this pit by gravity, and from it the contents are then lifted (ejected) up into the building sewer. Sewer ejectors may be motor-driven centrifugal pumps (Fig. 22.20), or they may be operated by compressed air. The latter have no revolving parts within the receptacle. An air compressor is started when a float within the sump reaches a certain level, and air at a pressure greater than 0.433 psi for each foot (10 kPa for each meter)

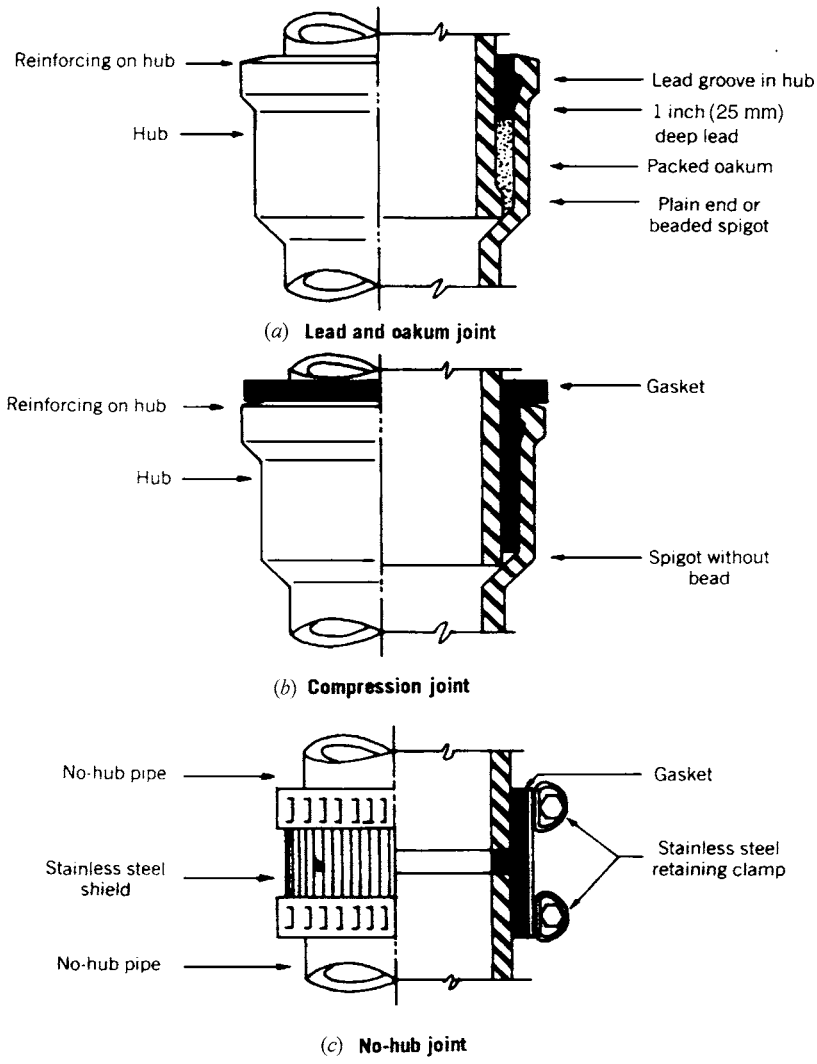


Fig. 22.14 *Various joints used to connect cast-iron soil pipe and fittings. (Courtesy of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute.)*

of lift is delivered into the space above the liquid. The air pressure closes the inlet and opens the outlet check valves, expelling the contents of the sump and elevating it to the sewer.

Interceptors. Sanitary drainage installations ultimately discharge their waste matter into private or public sewage treatment plants that attempt to digest or cope with anything that may come through the pipes. Because it is impossible to control what will be discarded into the plumbing drains, trouble can occasionally be expected. The problem can be reduced somewhat by devices known as *interceptors*, which catch foreign matter before it travels too far into the system.

Interceptors require periodic servicing. Interceptors for as many as 25 different kinds of extraneous material are listed by manufacturers. They include devices to catch hair, grease, plaster, lubricating oil, glass grindings, or material from many industrial processes. One of the few interceptors that is sometimes used in homes, but more often in institutional kitchens, is the grease interceptor, or *grease trap*. As the waste is passed from a kitchen sink through the circuitous path within the grease interceptor, the grease floats to the top, where it

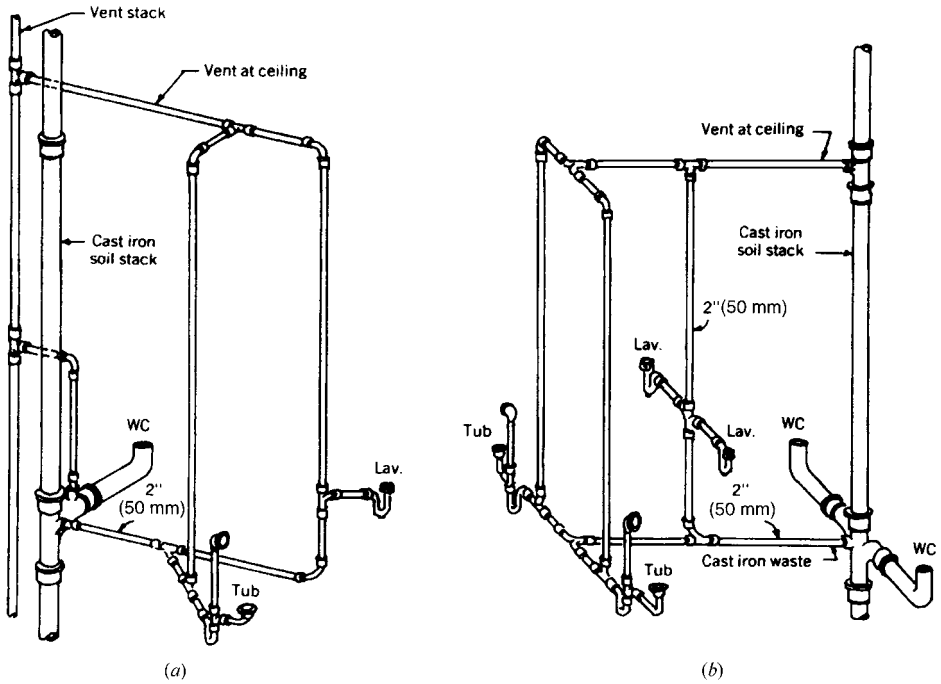


Fig. 22.15 *Two typical piping arrangements for a water closet, lavatory, and tub. (a) For a multistory installation with each fixture vented; (b) for a single-story, back-to-back installation. (Courtesy of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute.)*

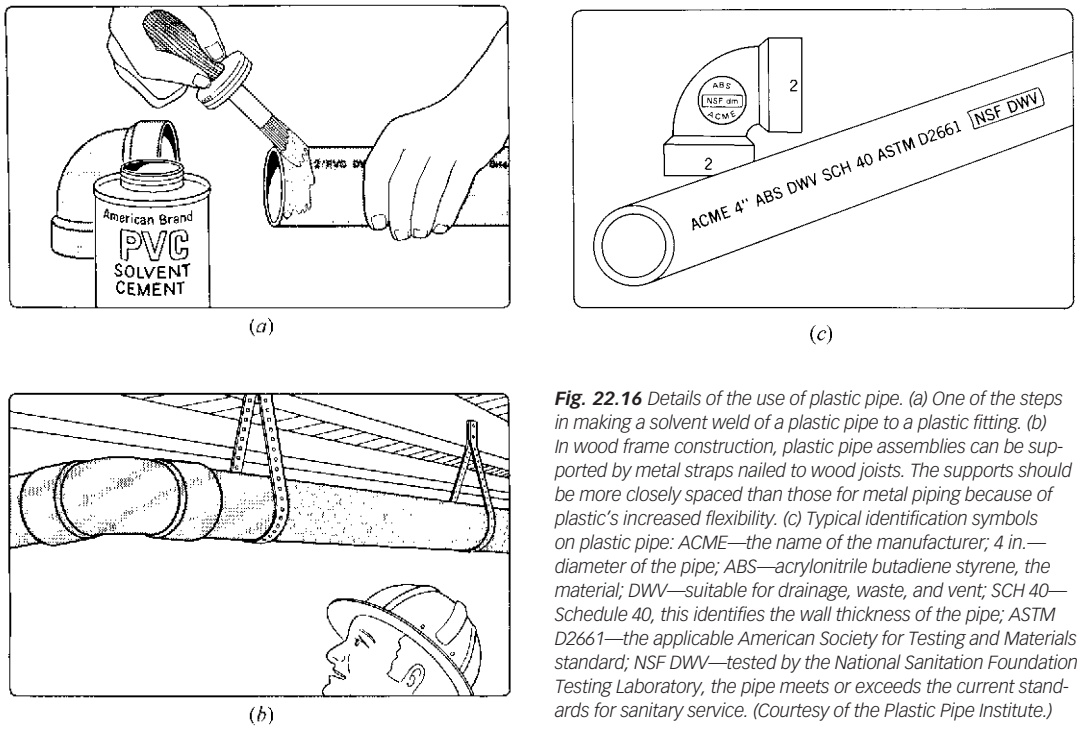


Fig. 22.16 *Details of the use of plastic pipe. (a) One of the steps in making a solvent weld of a plastic pipe to a plastic fitting. (b) In wood frame construction, plastic pipe assemblies can be supported by metal straps nailed to wood joists. The supports should be more closely spaced than those for metal piping because of plastic's increased flexibility. (c) Typical identification symbols on plastic pipe: ACME—the name of the manufacturer; 4 in.—diameter of the pipe; ABS—acrylonitrile butadiene styrene, the material; DWV—suitable for drainage, waste, and vent; SCH 40—Schedule 40, this identifies the wall thickness of the pipe; ASTM D2661—the applicable American Society for Testing and Materials standard; NSF DWV—tested by the National Sanitation Foundation Testing Laboratory, the pipe meets or exceeds the current standards for sanitary service. (Courtesy of the Plastic Pipe Institute.)*

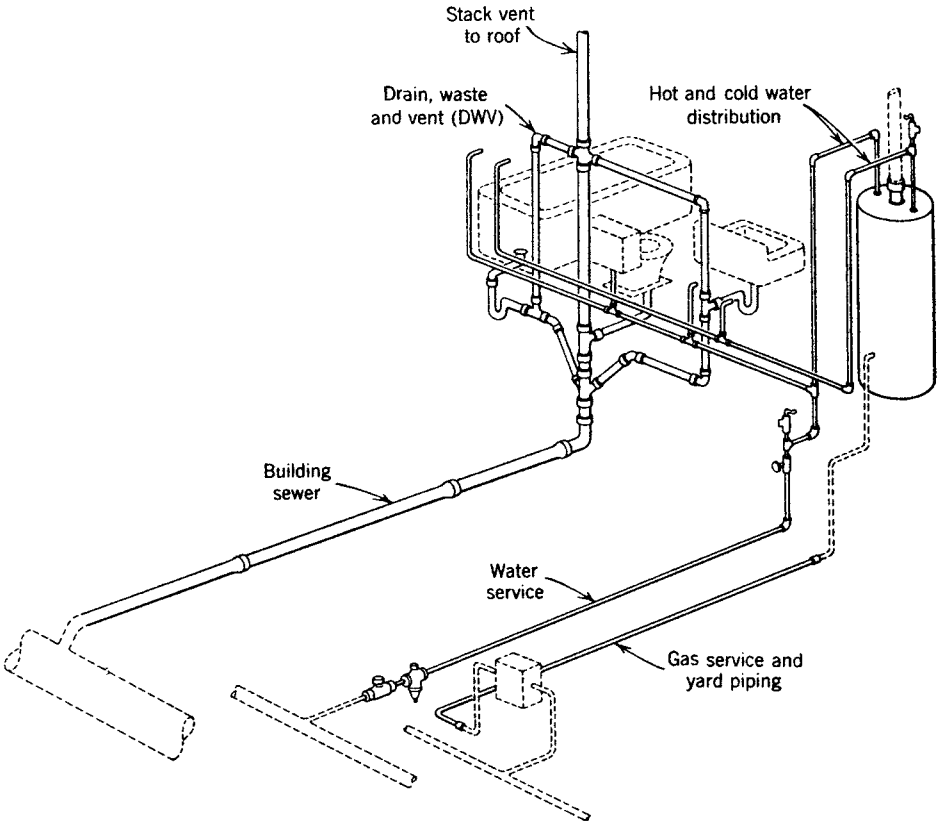


Fig. 22.17 *Plastic piping (solid lines) for water service, gas service, hot and cold water supply, and for drainage, waste, and vent. Gas service below grade can be PE, PB, or PVC. (Courtesy of the Plastic Pipe Institute.)*

is trapped between baffles, while the more fluid wastes pass through at a lower level (Fig. 22.21). If not so intercepted, grease congeals within piping and thus physically retards the sewage collection process.

Cleanouts. Clogging of sanitary drainage piping systems is very possible—if not likely. From all plumbing fixtures to the end of the disposal process, all parts of a sanitary piping system should be accessible through cleanouts (Fig. 22.12) and/or other



Fig. 22.18 *Floor drain. (Courtesy of the Josam Manufacturing Company.)*



Fig. 22.19 *Backwater valve, with access to facilitate unclogging and cleaning.*

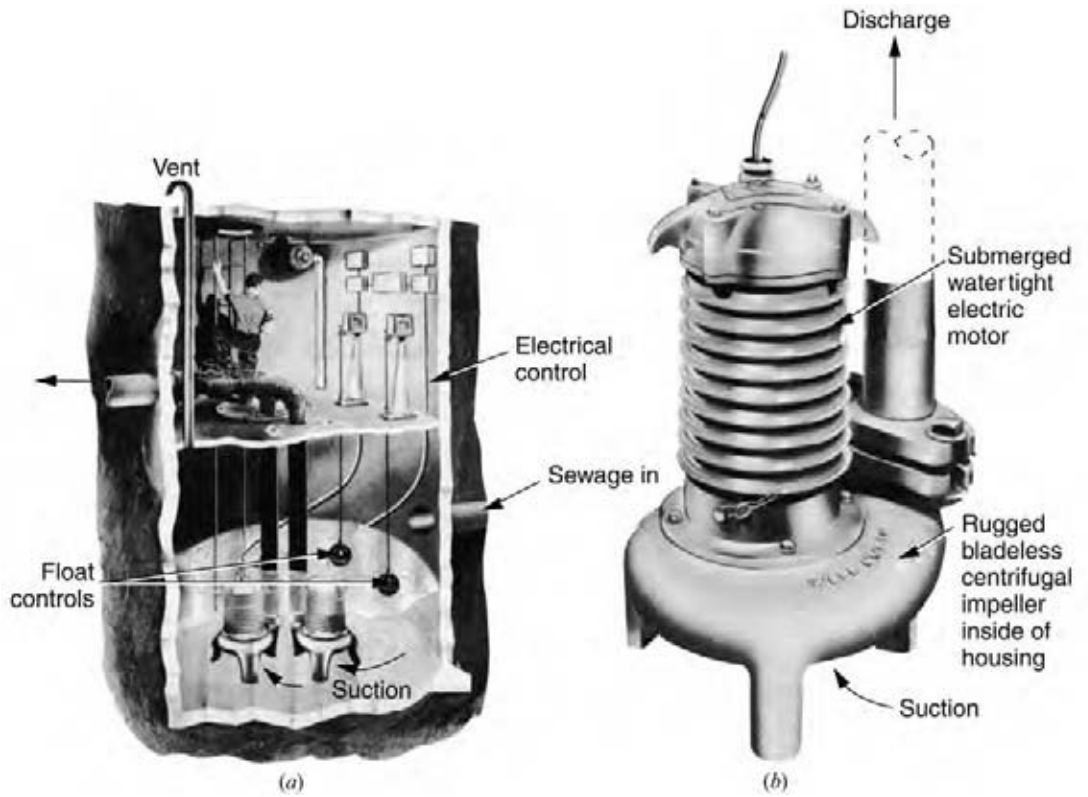


Fig. 22.20 *Sump (a) and ejector pump (b). A submersible-type centrifugal pump for raising sewage to a higher level. Shown here for an outdoor subgrade sump installation, it may be used in basement applications within buildings. Venting must be carried to the roof. (Courtesy of the Weil Pump Company.)*

points of access to relieve clogging that will often occur in the piping (as well as in the septic tank or public disposal plant).

22.4 DESIGN OF RESIDENTIAL WASTE PIPING

In residential work, the piping assemblies may often look like a "flag," where the mast is the soil stack, the horizontal top of the flag is the branch vent, the bottom is the soil or waste branch, and the outer edge is the vertical pipe of the last fixture. In wood or steel frame construction, the flag usually fits into a 6-in. (150-mm) partition. Fixture branches project from the surface of the flag. There is considerable advantage in back-to-back layouts for baths and kitchens; this allows the piping assembly to pick up the drainage from fixtures on both sides of the piping. When all the fixtures are on nearly the same level, it is unnecessary to have a separate vent stack next to the soil stack, as is often the case in multistory construction. Generally in one-story construction, the upper part of the soil stack is extended to form a vent called a *stack vent*, to which the branch vents connect. A separate major vertical vent is called a *vent stack*.

The task of fitting two generally parallel plumbing "distribution trees" (supply and waste) into available horizontal and vertical chases can be difficult. This is especially true of the waste system, which has larger pipes, because it is not under pressure and must carry solids as well as liquids. To compound the problem, because of gravity flow requirements, these larger pipes must slope continuously downward, from fixtures to the sewer.

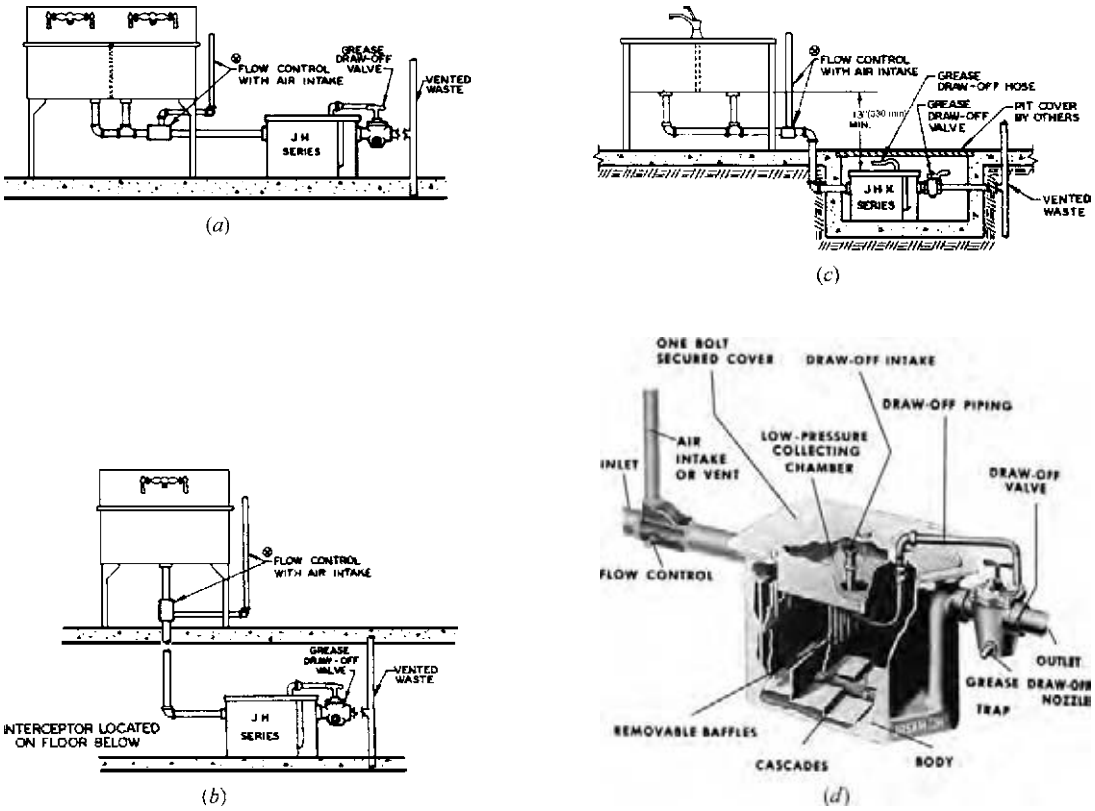


Fig. 22.21 *One type of institutional interceptor, a grease trap. Choice of three locations—adjacent to the sink (a), on the floor below (b), or in a pit (c). Periodic cleaning is both necessary and unpleasant; easy access is helpful. (d) Cutaway view with identification of component parts. (Courtesy of the Josam Manufacturing Company.)*

In residences, the best available "vertical chase" is sometimes nothing more than an extra-thick wall, increasing the difficulty of coordination.

In residential applications (and other relatively small buildings), certain fairly standard minimum sizes (such as a 4-in. [102-mm] soil stack and building drain) are usually adequate. Horizontal fixture branches from *individual* fixtures should be the same size as the fixture trap. Horizontal fixture branches from *groups* of fixtures are sized by the drainage fixture units of the group. For individual fixture vents, the vent size is usually the same as the size of the fixture's horizontal branch. Under many codes, vertical vents that penetrate the roof must increase to a 4-in. (102-mm) size to prevent blocking by icing in freezing weather.

Tables 22.2 through 22.5 list minimum pipe sizes to carry waste and serve for venting.

EXAMPLE 22.1 Design, lay out, and size the piping for the sanitary drainage system for the house shown in Fig. 22.22.

SOLUTION

The first step is to identify the locations where hot and cold water is needed at fixtures and where soil or waste drains must be provided. Figure 22.23*a* illustrates how this is done. A plan layout for the drains in both levels follows (Fig. 22.23*b*).

Next comes the plumbing section (Fig. 22.24). The local administrative authority usually requires this to be submitted for approval. Pipe sizes are determined from Tables 22.2 through 22.5. Drainage fixture units (dfu) for this system are summarized in Table 22.6 from data given in Table 22.2. ■

Although Table 22.3 permits a 3-in. (76-mm) branch for up to 20 dfu, it is common practice

TABLE 22.2 Drainage Fixture Units (dfu)

PART A. BY TYPE OF FIXTURE

Fixture(s)	Drainage Fixture Units (dfu)	*Minimum Trap Size*	
		in.	mm[a]
Automatic clothes washers: Commercial[b]	3	2	51
Residential	2	2	51
Bathroom group: Water closet (1.6 gpf [6 Lpf]), lavatory, and bathtub or shower; with or without a bidet and emergency floor drain	5	—	—
Bathroom group: Water closet (>1.6 gpf [6 Lpf]), lavatory, and bathtub or shower; with or without a bidet and emergency floor drain	6	—	—
Bathtub[c] (with or without overhead shower or whirlpool	2	1½	38
Bidet	1	1¼	32
Combination sink and tray	2	1½	38
Dental lavatory	1	1¼	32
Dental unit or cuspidor	1	1¼	32
Dishwashing machine[d], domestic	2	1½	38
Drinking fountain	0.5	1¼	32
Emergency floor drain	0	2	51
Floor drains	2	2	51
Kitchen sink, domestic	2	1½	38
Kitchen sink, domestic, with food waste grinder and/or dishwasher	2	1½	38
Laundry tray (1 or 2 compartments)	2	1½	38
Lavatory	1	1¼	32
Shower	2	1½	38
Service sink	2	1½	38
Sink	2	1½	38
Urinal	4	[e]	
Urinal, 1 gal (3.8 L) per flush or less	2[f]	[e]	
Urinal, nonwater supplied	0.5	[e]	
Wash sink (circular or multiple) each set of faucets	2	1½	38
Water closet, flushometer tank, public or private	4[f]	[e]	
Water closet, private (1.6 gpf [6 Lpf])	3[f]	[e]	
Water closet, private (>1.6 gpf [6 Lpf])	4[f]	[e]	
Water closet, public (1.6 gpf [6 Lpf])	4[f]	[e]	
Water closet, public (flushing >1.6 gpf [6 Lpf])	6[f]	[e]	

PART B. BY SIZE OF TRAP

Fixture Drain or Trap Size		Drainage Fixture Unit (dfu) Value
in.	mm[a]	
1¼	32	1
1½	38	2
2	51	3
2½	64	4
3	76	5
4	102	6

Source: Based upon the *International Plumbing Code.* © 2006, International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, VA. Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.

[a]SI conversions provided by the authors (not part of original source).

[b]For traps larger than 3 in. (76 mm), see Part B of this table.

[c]A showerhead over a bathtub or whirlpool bathtub attachments do not increase the dfu value.

[d]For ratings of fixtures not listed or for intermittent flows, see the current edition of the *International Plumbing Code.*

[e]Trap size shall be consistent with fixture outlet size.

[f]For computing loads on building drains and sewers, water closets or urinals shall not be rated at a lower dfu unless the lower values are confirmed by testing.

to use a 4-in. (102-mm) branch for every water closet (or every group of water closets totaling 20 dfu or less). Because Table 22.3 allows 160 dfu for a 4-in. (102-mm) branch, this size is acceptable for any branch to which a water closet is connected. This size is also more than adequate for the stack in this example.

A water closet must have a 2-in. (51-mm) vent. Table 22.4 shows that a 2-in. (51-mm) vent, for developed vent lengths not exceeding 150 ft

TABLE 22.3 Horizontal Fixture Branches and Stacks[a]

Diameter of Pipe			*Maximum Total Number of dfu Allowable*		
			Stacks[b]		
in.	mm[c]	Horizontal Branch	One Branch Interval	Three Branch Intervals or Less	Greater than Three Branch Intervals
1½	38	3	2	4	8
2	51	6	6	10	24
2½	64	12	9	20	42
3	76	20	20	48	72
4	102	160	90	240	500
5	127	360	200	540	1100
6	152	620	350	960	1900
8	203	1400	600	2200	3600
10	254	2500	1000	3800	5600
12	305	3900	1500	6000	8400
15	381	7000	[d]	[d]	[d]

Source: Based upon the *International Plumbing Code*. © 1997, International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, VA. Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.

[a]Does not include branches of the building drain; see Table 22.5.

[b]Stacks shall be sized based on the total accumulated connected load at each story or branch interval. As the total accumulated connected load decreases, stacks may be reduced in size. Stack diameters shall not be reduced to less than one-half the diameter of the largest stack size required.

[c]SI conversions provided by the authors (not part of original source).

[d]Sizing load based upon design criteria.

(45.7 m), will serve 20 dfu. This size is acceptable for all branch vents in this example.

The house drain should not be less than 4 in. (102 mm). From Table 22.5, at a ¼-in. fall per foot (2.1% slope), a 4-in. (102-mm) house drain will carry 216 dfu, which is more than adequate for our 26-dfu system.

There are prefabricated bathrooms in which a manufacturer assembles the piping for preselected fixtures (Fig. 22.25). Going further, there are a few examples of entirely one-piece bathrooms, which incorporate the maintenance advantage of having no seams between fixtures, walls, and floors. This, of course, makes fixture replacement expensive and difficult, and tends to put the burden of access to plumbing on adjacent rooms.

For the more ordinary bathroom, the two maintenance questions of greatest concern are (1) how easy is cleaning around and within the fixture, and (2) how accessible are those parts of the fixture most likely to need repair or replacement? Ease of cleaning is often determined more by the space around the fixture than by the design of the fixture itself. This is particularly true of toilets, where a generous amount of open floor on either side makes maintenance easy and therefore likely to be more frequent. Access to fixture parts may be more difficult. An access panel in the wall of the room behind the fixtures is often provided, encouraging speedy repair and replacement for components at tubs, showers, and lavatories. Ideally, accessibility to all plumbing lines—whether via access panels in walls, trenches in concrete floors, exposed basement ceilings, or adequately deep crawl spaces—should be provided. Most bathrooms are likely to undergo thorough remodeling, including fixture replacement, as styles change and water/energy conservation becomes more important.

22.5 DESIGN OF LARGER-BUILDING WASTE PIPING

(a) Basic Planning

Multistory construction, especially in office buildings, is often designed to be flexible and free of random partitions that would interfere with the periodic renovation of interior spaces and the relocating of dividing partitions. Building "cores" contain elevators, stairs, and shafts for plumbing, mechanical, and electrical equipment. Cores are often placed in the central section of the building, freeing the surrounding areas for access to daylight. A hole in the floor for each pipe is often chosen in preference

TABLE 22.4 Size and Developed Length of Stack Vents and Vent Stacks

Diameter of Soil or Waste Stack in. (mm)[b]	Total Fixture Units Being Vented (dfu)	Maximum Developed Length[a] of Vent, Feet (m)[b]									
		Diameter of Vent, In. (mm)[b]									
		1¼ (32)	1½ (38)	2 (51)	2½ (64)	3 (76)	4 (102)	5 (127)	6 (152)	8 (203)	10 (254)
1¼ (32)	2	30 (9.1)									
1½ (38)	8	50 (15.2)	150 (45.7)								
1½ (38)	10	30 (9.1)	100 (30.5)								
2 (51)	12	30 (9.1)	75 (22.9)	200 (61.0)							
2 (51)	20	26 (7.9)	50 (15.2)	150 (45.7)							
21/2 (64)	42		30 (9.1)	100 (30.5)							
3 (76)	10		42 (12.8)	150 (45.7)	360 (109.7)	1040 (317)					
3 (76)	21		32 (9.8)	110 (33.5)	270 (82.3)	810 (246.9)					
3 (76)	53		27 (8.2)	94 (28.7)	230 (70.1)	680 (207.3)					
3 (76)	102		25 (7.6)	86 (26.6)	210 (64.0)	620 (189.0)					
4 (102)	43			35 (10.7)	85 (25.9)	250 (76.2)	980 (298.7)				
4 (102)	140			27 (8.2)	65 (19.8)	200 (61.0)	750 (228.6)				
4 (102)	320			23 (7.0)	55 (16.8)	170 (51.8)	640 (195.0)				
4 (102)	540			21 (6.4)	50 (15.2)	150 (45.7)	580 (176.8)				
5 (127)	190				28 (8.5)	82 (25.0)	320 (97.5)	990 (301.8)			
5 (127)	490				21 (6.4)	63 (19.2)	250 (76.2)	760 (231.6)			
5 (127)	940				18 (5.5)	53 (16.2)	210 (64.0)	670 (204.2)			
5 (127)	1400				16 (4.9)	49 (14.9)	190 (57.9)	590 (179.8)			
6 (152)	500					33 (10.1)	130 (39.6)	400 (121.9)	1000 (304.8)		
6 (152)	1100					26 (7.9)	100 (30.5)	310 (94.5)	780 (237.7)		
6 (152)	2000					22 (6.7)	84 (25.6)	260 (79.2)	660 (201.2)		
6 (152)	2900					20 (6.1)	77 (23.5)	240 (73.2)	600 (182.9)		
8 (203)	1800						31 (9.4)	95 (29.0)	240 (73.2)	940 (286.5)	
8 (203)	3400						24 (7.3)	73 (22.3)	190 (57.9)	720 (219.5)	
8 (203)	5600						20 (6.1)	62 (18.9)	160 (48.8)	610 (185.9)	
8 (203)	7600						18 (5.5)	56 (17.1)	140 (42.7)	560 (170.7)	
10 (254)	4000							31 (9.4)	78 (23.8)	310 (94.5)	960 (292.6)
10 (254)	7200							24 (7.3)	60 (18.3)	240 (73.2)	740 (225.6)
10 (254)	11,000							20 (6.1)	51 (15.5)	200 (61.0)	630 (192.0)
10 (254)	15,000							18 (5.5)	46 (14.0)	180 (54.9)	570 (173.7)

Source: Based upon the *International Plumbing Code*. © 1997, International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, VA. Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.

[a]The developed length is measured from the vent connection to the open air.

[b]SI conversions provided by the authors of this book (not part of original source).

TABLE 22.5 Building Drains and Sewers

Diameter of Pipe		*Maximum Number of dfu Connected to Any Portion of the Building Drain or Building Sewer, Including Branches of the Building Drain[a] Fall, in. per ft (% slope)*			
in.	mm[b]	1/16 (0.5%)	1/8 (1.04%)	1/4 (2.1%)	1/2 (4.2%)
2	51			21	26
2½	64			24	31
3	76		36	42	50
4	102		180	216	250
5	127		390	480	575
6	152		700	840	1000
8	203	1400	1600	1920	2300
10	254	2500	2900	3500	4200
12	305	3900	4600	5600	6700
15	381	7000	8300	10,000	12,000

Source: Based upon the *International Plumbing Code.* Copyright © 1997, International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, VA. Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.

[a]The minimum size of any building drain serving a water closet shall be 3 in. (76 mm).

[b]SI conversions provided by the authors of this book (not part of original source).

to a slot or shaft. This method usually interferes less with the floor construction (Fig. 22.26).

Offices often need a single lavatory or a complete toilet room for executives at locations away from the central core of the building. The greater the horizontal distance from the core, the more vertical clearance that will be needed to allow the drain to slope. When such vertical clearance becomes difficult, "wet" columns with a full complement of plumbing pipes offer a solution. If the pipes are to accompany a column in a steel building, structural coordination must be sought early in the planning if the pipes are to clear the structural framing of the floor (Fig. 22.27).

In some installations, the branch soil and waste piping perforates a floor and crosses below the slab to join the stack. Tubing has been developed, however, that sits above the structural slab, obviating the need for hung ceilings below (Fig. 22.28). A lightweight concrete fill is cast to cover the tubing, raising the floor by 5 or 6 in. (125 or 150 mm). This can create a raised floor in the toilet room—with associated access problems—so the higher floor level is usually carried throughout the entire story, forming a convenient space into which the electrical conduit can be placed at a time later than would have been required if it were to be placed in the structural slab. Such raised floors are becoming more common, along with the HVAC strategy of underfloor air distribution.

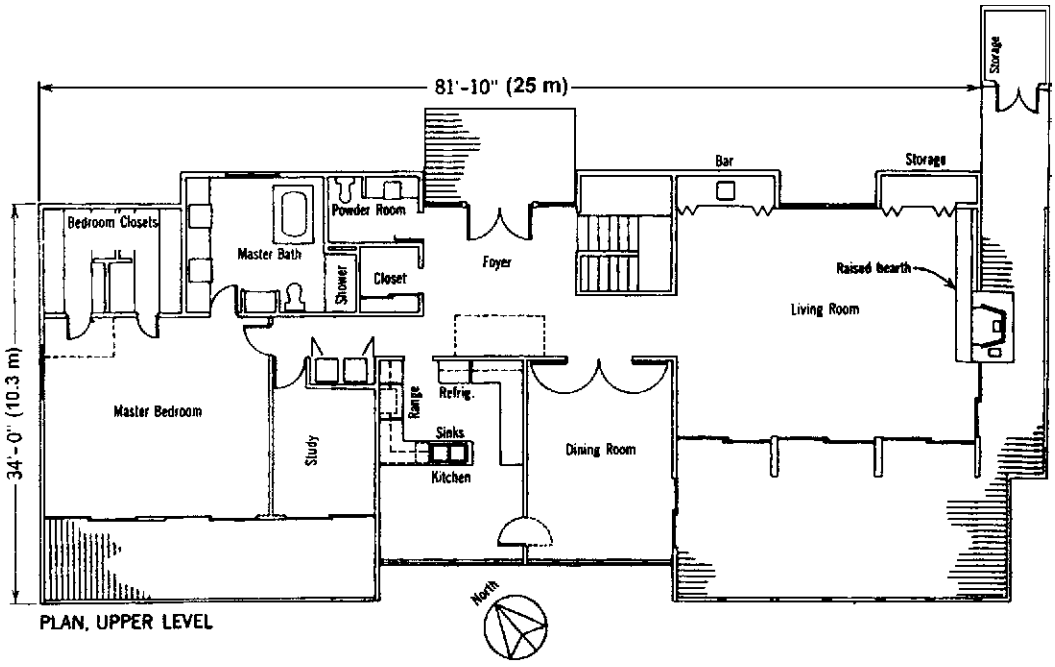
TABLE 22.6 Drainage Fixture Units (dfu) for Example 22.1[a]

Residential Fixture	Drainage Fixture Units (dfu)
Bar sink	2
Kitchen sink with dishwasher	2
Lavatory	1
Water closet	4
Automatic clothes washer	2
Master bathroom group (WC >1.6 gpf [6 Lpf])	6
Extra lavatory	1
Shower	2
Lower floor bathroom group (WC >1.6 gpf [6 Lpf])	6
Total	**26**

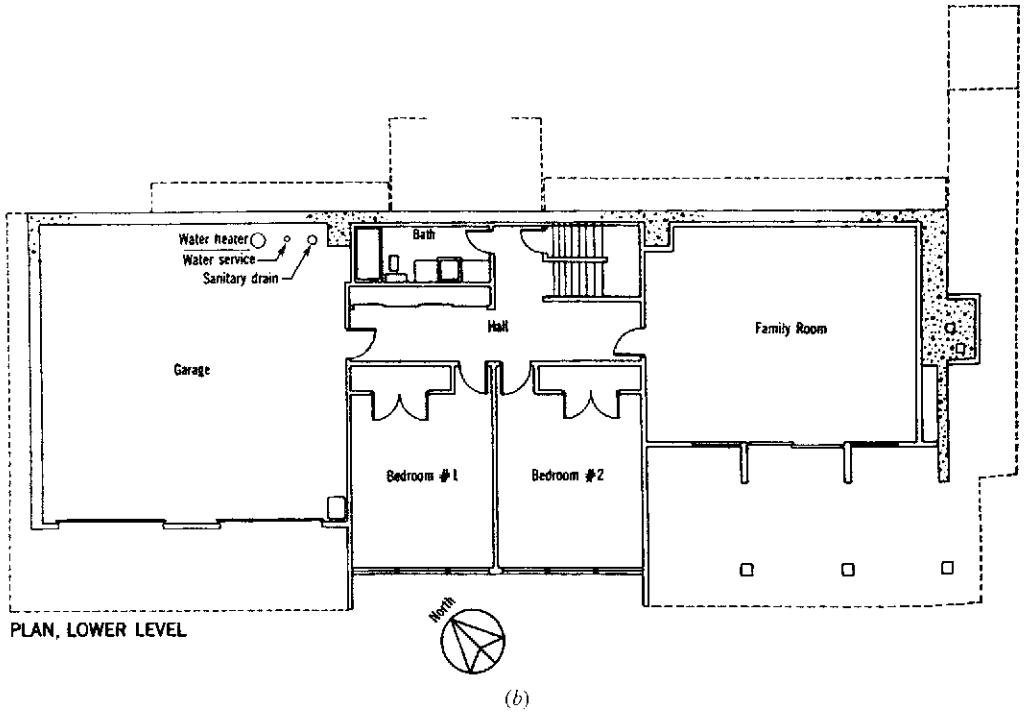
[a]Dfu values are from Table 22.2. The hose bibb drains to the ground; roof drainage is taken to dry wells.

(b) Roughing-In

This is the process of getting all pipes installed, capped, and pressure-tested before the fixtures are installed. An example of roughing-in for an office building is shown in Fig. 22.28. The roughing-in



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 22.22 *Example 22.1. Floor plans of a house on Long Island, New York. (Budd Mogensen, architect and planner.)*

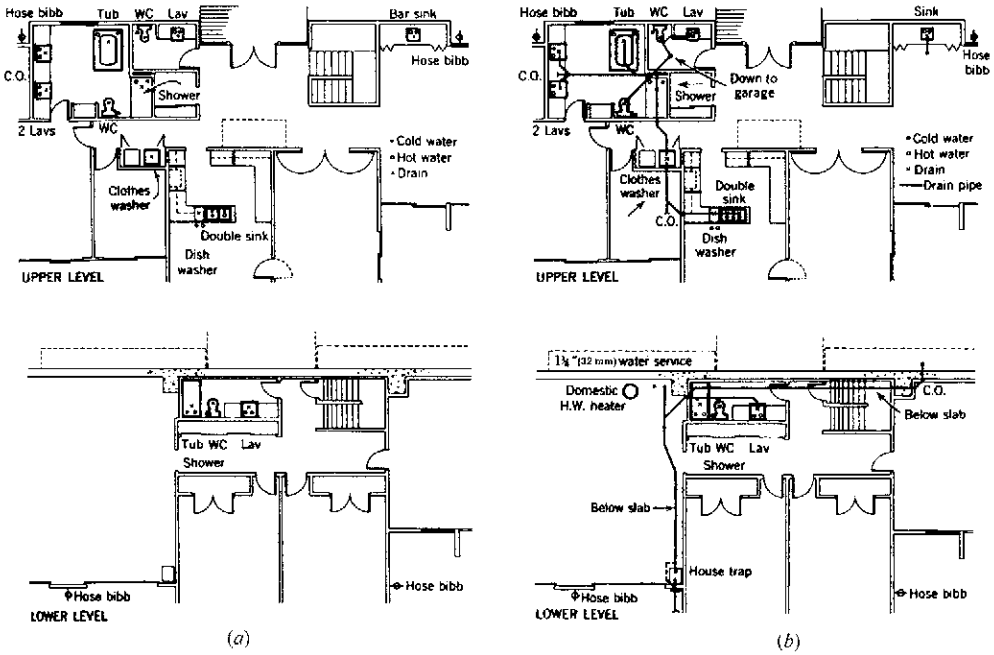


Fig. 22.23 *Example 22.1. (a) Plumbing requirements, water supply, and partial sanitary drainage. (b) Sanitary drainage plan.*

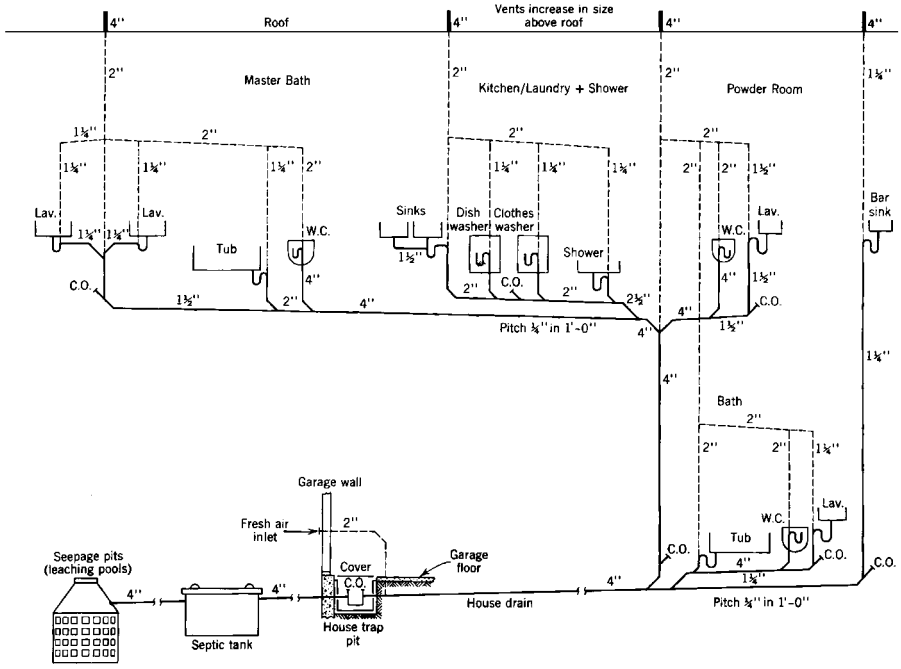


Fig. 22.24 *Example 22.1. Plumbing section. When every fixture is vented individually, as in this example, the method is known as* continuous venting. *In larger systems, batteries of fixtures may be vented by a loop or circuit vent. This reduces the amount of piping in the vent system (see Fig. 22.10 and Fig. 22.30). Note that septic tank discharge to a leaching pit is not permitted in many locations; see Section 22.6.*



Fig. 22.25 *Preassembled plumbing tree for manufactured housing, along with the prefabricated kitchen/bath in which it is installed. (Courtesy of Wausau Homes, Inc., and the Copper Development Association.)*



Fig. 22.26 *Plumbing risers in a fireproof multistory building. Pipes, tubes, conduits, and ducts adjoin toilet rooms and utility spaces. Ventilation ducts and a master 5-in. (127-mm) copper hot-water riser are just to the left of center. Soil and vent stacks with hot and cold water supplies, all of copper, are to the right of this group. At the left, in a lighter tone, are the galvanized steel feeder conduit and distribution circuit conduits for a local electrical control panel box. Note that some pipes and tubes are supported at this floor by bolted clamps. After testing and before pipes are enclosed, covering will be completed. (Courtesy of Copper Development Association.)*

of supply and waste piping for school lavatories is shown in Fig. 22.29.

Institutions such as schools have extensive requirements for durability and ease of maintenance. The fixtures are made of such wear-resistant materials as stainless steel, chrome-plated cast brass, precast stone or terrazzo, or high-impact fiberglass. The fixture controls are designed to withstand heavy use—or misuse—and the fixtures are securely tied into the structure with concealed mounting hardware designed to resist extraordinary forces. (Some schools even move the lavatories into the hallway for better visual control of at least a part of the restroom facilities.)

In prisons, extreme measures are taken to prevent plumbing fixtures from becoming weapons or damaged. Heavy-gauge stainless steel fixtures with nonremovable fittings are provided, at very high cost, for both the fixture and its tamperproof installation.

EXAMPLE 22.2 Select drainage and vent piping sizes for the plumbing in an office building for which the fixtures are shown in Fig. 22.30.

SOLUTION

Selected dfu values from Table 22.2 are applied to each section of the piping and totaled for each branch and stack, as well as for the building drain and the building sewer. Individual fixture branches should not be less than the size indicated in Table 22.3 for the minimum size of trap for each fixture. An example of a fixture-unit summary and sample sizes of individual branches that connect into a typical branch of the men's toilet group on any floor are shown in the following table.

Features	Units per Fixture	Total Fixture Units	Diameter, Fixture Branch	
			in.	mm
1 service sink (2-in. [51-mm] trap)	3	3	3	76
3 lavatories	1	3	3	76
3 urinals, washout	4	12	2	51
3 water closets, valve operated	6	18	4	102
Total fixture units, men's toilet branch		**36**		

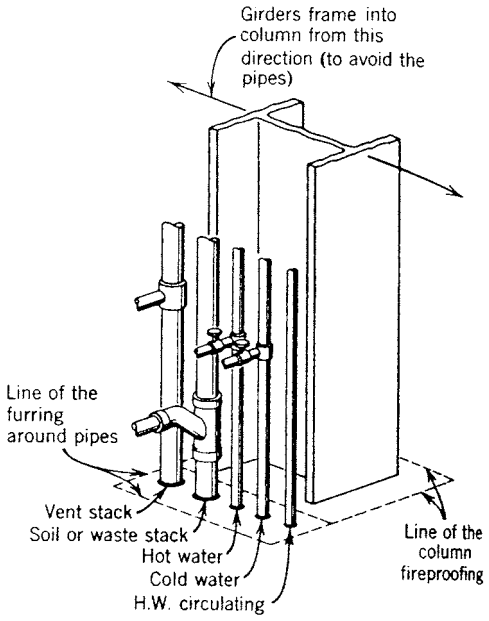
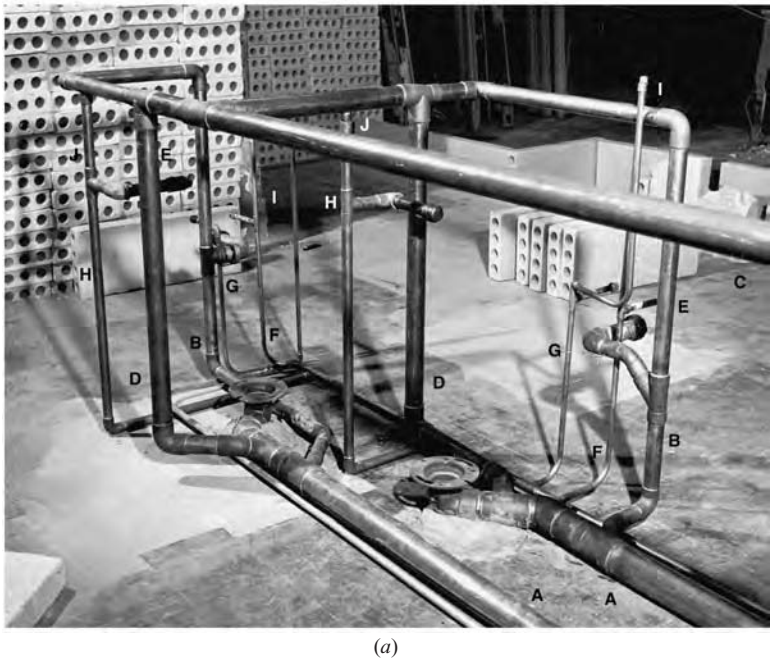
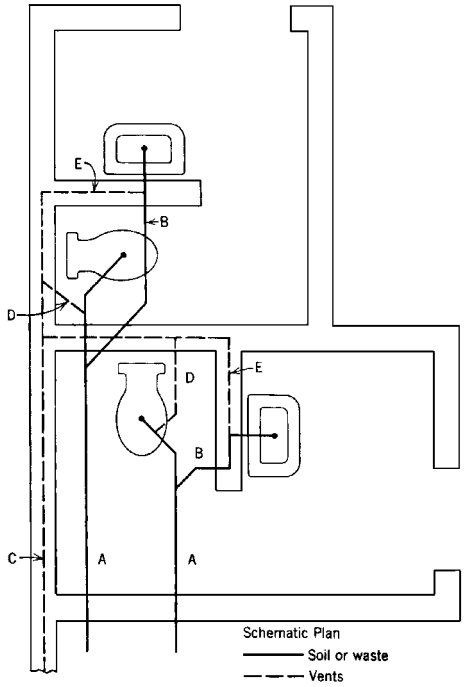


Fig. 22.27 *Piping at a "wet" column. In large office buildings, there are usually several of these, remote from the core, in the general office area.*



(*a*)

Fig. 22.28 *(a) Horizontal waste piping* above *the structural slab, in an example of plumbing roughing-in for two lavatory rooms in a concrete office building. A lavatory and water closet (WC) in each room (see plan in b) are served by soil and waste branches below and vent branches above. Hot and cold water tubing with air chambers can be seen. Although the extensions of the water tubing above the two flushometer connections appear to connect into the horizontal vent branches, they actually do not; they are capped and merely touch the bottoms of the vent branches. Note that soil branches are above the structural slab. A fill of 5 or 6 in. (125 to 150 mm) is necessary to cover the tubing. All vertical tubing will be within the masonry block used to enclose the cubicles. (Courtesy of the Copper Development Association.)*



(*b*)

Drainage		*Supply*	
A	Branch soil	F	Hot
B	Lavatory waste	G	Cold
C	Branch vent	H	Flushometer supply (1¼ in.)
D	WC vent	I	Capped air chamber
E	Lavatory vent	J	Capped air chamber (flushometer)

Fig. 22.28 *(Continued)*

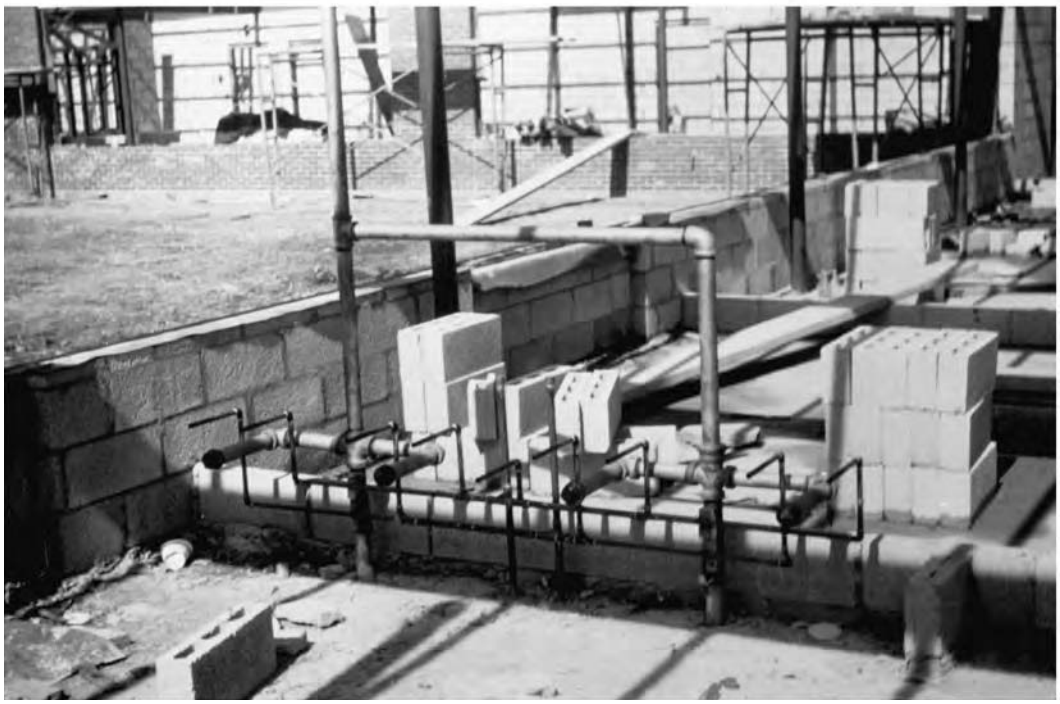


Fig. 22.29 *Roughing-in for four lavatories in the toilet room of a school. The waste branches have been capped and the system tested for leakage. The waste branches are cast iron, the vents galvanized steel, and the water supply lines are copper with soldered fittings. At the center of the supply array are vertical capped expansion and shock tubes, one for hot and one for cold supply water.*

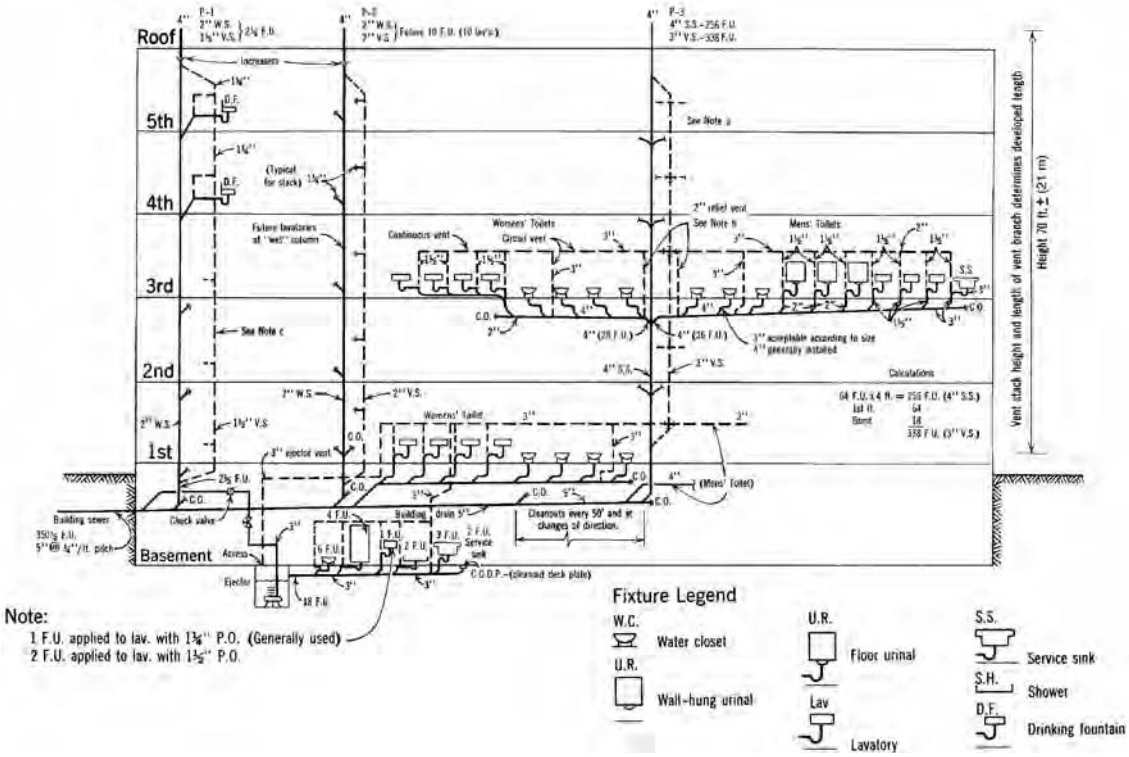


Fig. 22.30 *Example 22.2. Plumbing section of an office building. Circuit vents serve branch soil lines, but some codes require continuous venting (individual fixture vents). The house trap and fresh-air inlet are omitted from the building drain. Note that (1) a relief vent is not required on the top floor. (2) Men's and women's toilets on the third floor are typical and would be repeated on the first, second, fourth, and fifth floors. (3) Drinking fountains on the fifth and fourth floors would be repeated on the first, second, and third floors.*

Table 22.3 indicates that a 3-in. (76-mm) horizontal fixture branch is inadequate for the men's toilet group because this size pipe will handle only 20 dfu. Therefore, a 4-in. (102-mm) pipe is selected (also a wise minimum choice whenever water closets are served). Its capacity of 160 dfu will be more than enough for the 36 fixture units needed here. The same table shows that the soil stack diameter can be 4 in. (102 mm), and it is run thus for its entire height. Its capacity of 90 dfu per story (or interval) is sufficient for the 64 dfu that connect in at each T-Y connection. For three branch intervals, this size stack will carry 240 dfu (this example requires $3 \times 64 = 192$ dfu); for its entire height, it will carry 500 dfu (this example requires $5 \times 64 = 320$ dfu).

The vent stack must serve up to 338 dfu, with a 4-in. (102-mm) soil stack, and with a maximum 70-ft (21.3-m) developed length. From Table 22.4, a 3-in. (76-mm) vent serving 540 dfu has a maximum developed length of 150 ft (45.7 m), well over the minimum requirements. All vent stack diameters will increase to 4 in. (102 mm) as they pass through the roof.

According to Table 22.5, the building drain and the building sewer, at a pitch of ¼ in./ft (2.1%), should carry at least a total of 350 dfu. A 5-in. (127-mm) building drain or building sewer has a capacity of 480 dfu.

Although opinions may vary about the relative merits of continuous or circuit venting, either system, properly designed, will effectively prevent the siphoning of traps and relieve air pressures that could cause foul gases to bubble through the traps into the occupied space. Another system (Section 22.5c), especially suitable for high-rise buildings, eliminates the vent stack completely with equal effectiveness. ■

(c) The Sovent System

This essentially ventless system changes the nature of the effluent (the wastes discharged from the fixtures) instead of coping with the pressures and suctions that normal effluent would cause (see Figs. 22.31 and 22.32).

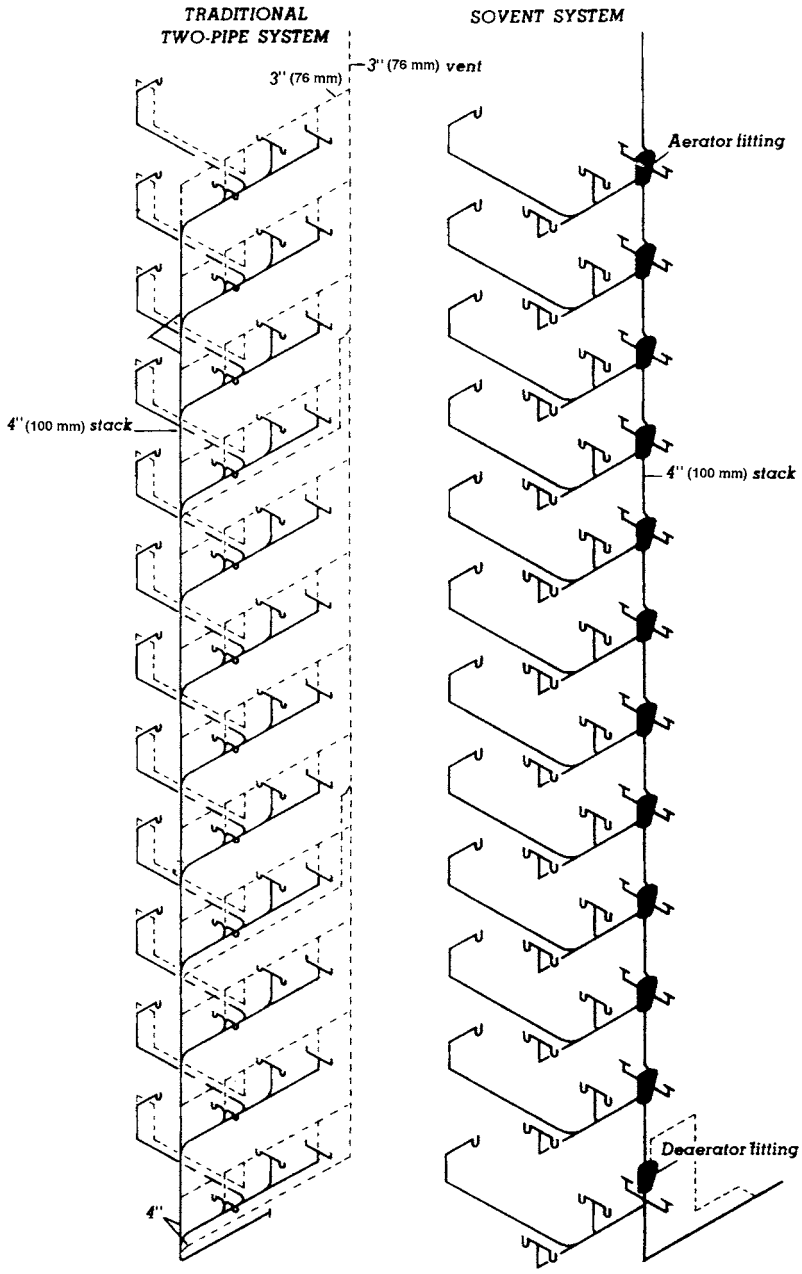


Fig. 22.31 *Comparing a two-pipe system for a 12-story stack serving an apartment grouping to the Sovent system. (Courtesy of the Copper Development Association.)*

The "plunger" effect of a descending "slug" of water/waste within pipes was described in Section 22.2. If the "effectiveness" of the plunger can be reduced, the negative and positive pressures created by it will also be reduced. If their values can be brought down below the holding power of the several inches (mm) of water in the trap, no vents will be necessary. In the single-stack *Sovent* system illustrated in Fig. 22.32, this is done by dealing with the normal liquid effluent at each floor. Aeration there produces a *foam* that lacks the stack-filling tendency of unaerated liquid effluent. Thus, through the creation of a *soft* plunger, pressure variations in the single stack are minimized.

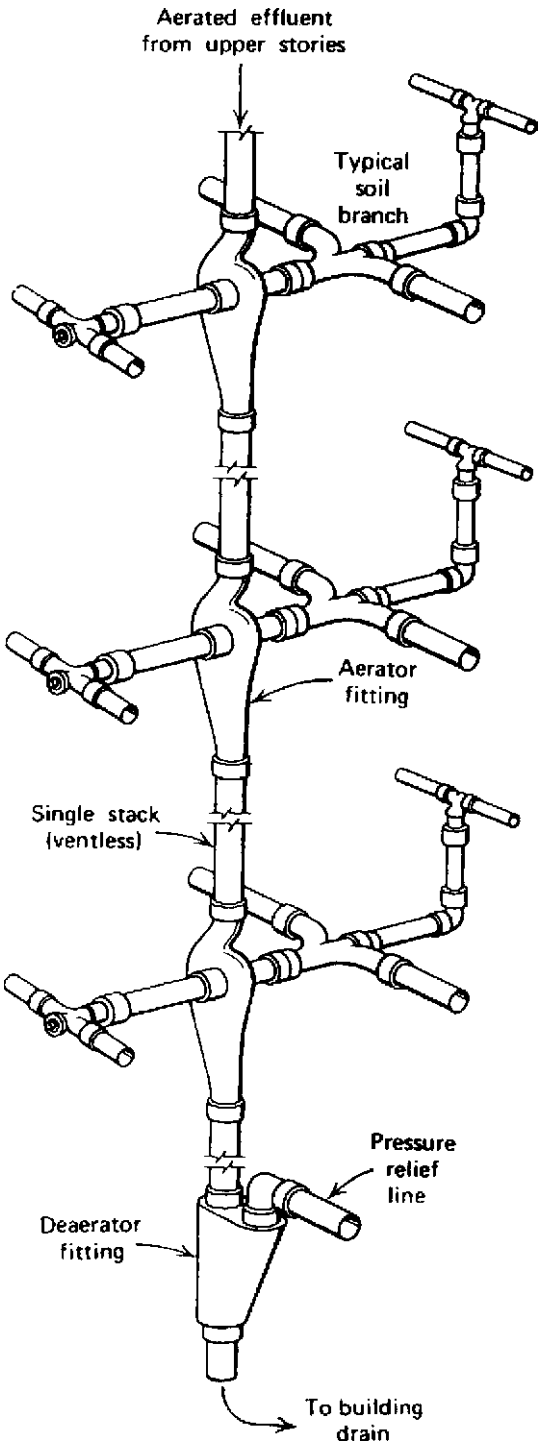


Fig. 22.32 *The Sovent drainage stack consists of aerator fittings that join the horizontal branches to the stack at each floor level and a deaerator fitting at the bottom of the stack. The stack is open to the atmosphere above the roof at the top. (Courtesy of the Copper Development Association.)*

Tests have shown that the positive and negative pressures produced by normal liquid effluent during its descent (to be relieved by the vent piping) are often about 5 to 12 in. (127 to 305 mm) water gauge. If vents were not provided, the 2 to 4 in. (51 to 102 mm) of water seal in the traps would be vulnerable to penetration by gases from pipes under greater positive pressure (or siphonage of water seals into pipes that may be under negative pressure).

Figures 22.31, 22.32, and 22.33 illustrate the components and the action of the Sovent system. Effluent, already aerated and descending from upper stories, is diverted in the stack at each lower story. The aerator fitting there affords a passage for this diverted flow and also an air space into which the effluent from the local branch soil or waste can drop. Here it spatters, mixing with air to form a rarefied mixture of air and liquid. Tests show that this mixture does not produce pressures, positive or negative, of more than 1 in. (25 mm) water gauge. Thus, a trap seal of 2 in. (51 mm) or more is safe against siphonage or penetration.

At the foot of the single stack the aerated effluent is compacted—a process aided by a baffle in the path of the flow in the deaerator fitting (see Fig. 22.33). If not relieved, air piling up at this point could cause pressures in the stack at the first floor.

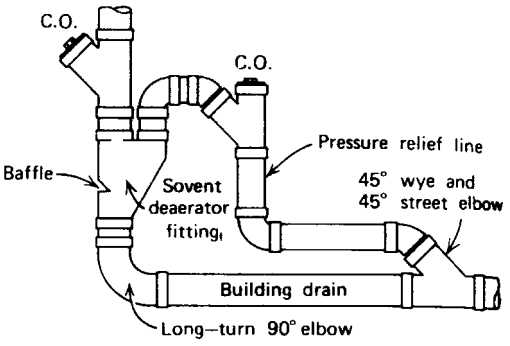


Fig. 22.33 *The deaerator consists of an air separation chamber with an internal nosepiece, a stack inlet, a pressure relief outlet at the top, and a stack outlet at the bottom. The deaerator fitting at the bottom of the stack functions in combination with the aerator fittings above to make the single stack self-venting. The deaerator is designed to overcome the tendency for the falling waste to build up excessive back pressure at the bottom of the stack when the flow decelerates at the bend into the horizontal drain. (Courtesy of the Copper Development Association.)*

An air-discharge pipe provides relief of air from the deaerator fitting to the upper part of the building drain, above the liquid flow.

The Sovent system was invented by Fritz Sommer of Switzerland, who tested it in a 10-story drainage test tower. Since its introduction in 1962, it has been installed and used in hundreds of buildings in Europe and Africa. Canada used the Sovent method in the Habitat apartments at the 1967 Montreal exposition. Sovent was first granted U.S. code acceptance in 1968 in Richmond, California. Following this success, its code acceptance grew rapidly during the early 1970s. However, not all jurisdictions allow Sovent installations.

22.6 ON-SITE INDIVIDUAL BUILDING SEWAGE TREATMENT

The great majority of stand-alone building sewage treatment systems in North America use a septic tank (Fig. 22.34) as a *primary* treatment device, where the settling of solids and anaerobic digestion take place. Subsequently, the effluent receives *secondary* treatment, which usually consists of a filtering process. Four common filtration systems are seepage pits, drain fields, mounds, and sand filters. Occasionally, a *tertiary* treatment (usually disinfection with chlorine) must be used, as when outflows from secondary treatment will flow directly into surface waterways.

(a) Primary Treatment: Septic Tanks

These (Fig. 22.35) are commonly constructed of precast concrete, although steel, fiberglass, and polyethylene tanks are also available. The sewage enters the first chamber, where solids sink to the bottom as sludge, and scum forms on the surface. Anaerobic decomposition proceeds, with production of methane gas. The liquid moves through the submerged opening in the middle of the tank to the second chamber, where finer solids continue to sink, and less scum forms on the surface. Finally, the effluent, about 70% purified, leaves the septic tank for secondary treatment.

The longer the sewage stays in the septic tank, the less polluted the effluent. This is why water conservation measures are so welcome with septic tank systems; the less the flow, the longer the water remains in the tank. The anaerobic decomposition process, while malodorous, is so thorough that the sludge needs only occasional removal—once in several years is about average for residences. The methane and its odor are kept within the tank, and access hatches are sometimes covered with soil (as in Fig. 22.35), even though this makes their occasional need to be located far more difficult.

Most systems with septic tanks will eventually experience failure, usually due to a breakdown in the secondary treatment rather than in the septic tank. With periodic removal of sludge, the septic tank itself is a reliable and simple primary treatment device. However, some types of domestic waste can disrupt the anaerobic process within the tank. The worst offenders are paints, varnishes, thinners, waste oil, photographic solutions, and pesticides. Also to be avoided are coffee grounds, dental floss, disposable diapers, kitty litter, sanitary napkins, tampons, cigarette butts, condoms, gauze bandages, fat and grease, and paper towels.

Septic tank sizes are commonly based on code requirements that consider the number of bedrooms in residences (Table 22.7) or the number of waste fixture units served (see Table 22.2). (As shown in Table 22.8, maximum size may also be related to the soil condition.) Sewage flow rates are also considered. Oversized septic tanks are more expensive to install, but they release cleaner effluent and prolong the life of the secondary treatment system.

The size of the secondary treatment system is usually based upon the size of the septic tank it serves or on the expected total flow over a 24-hour period. (Flow can be estimated from Table 20.4.) Where effluent must be raised for secondary treatment, or when the total length of the secondary treatment disposal line exceeds 500 ft (154 m), a dosing tank (also called a *siphon* or *pumping chamber*; see Fig. 22.34*c*, *d*) is used to automatically discharge the septic tank's outflow chamber to the secondary treatment lines or sand filters.

(b) Primary Treatment: Aerobic Treatment Units

Active aerobic treatment units (ATUs, Fig. 22.36) are an increasingly popular alternative to septic tanks for primary sewage treatment. They are

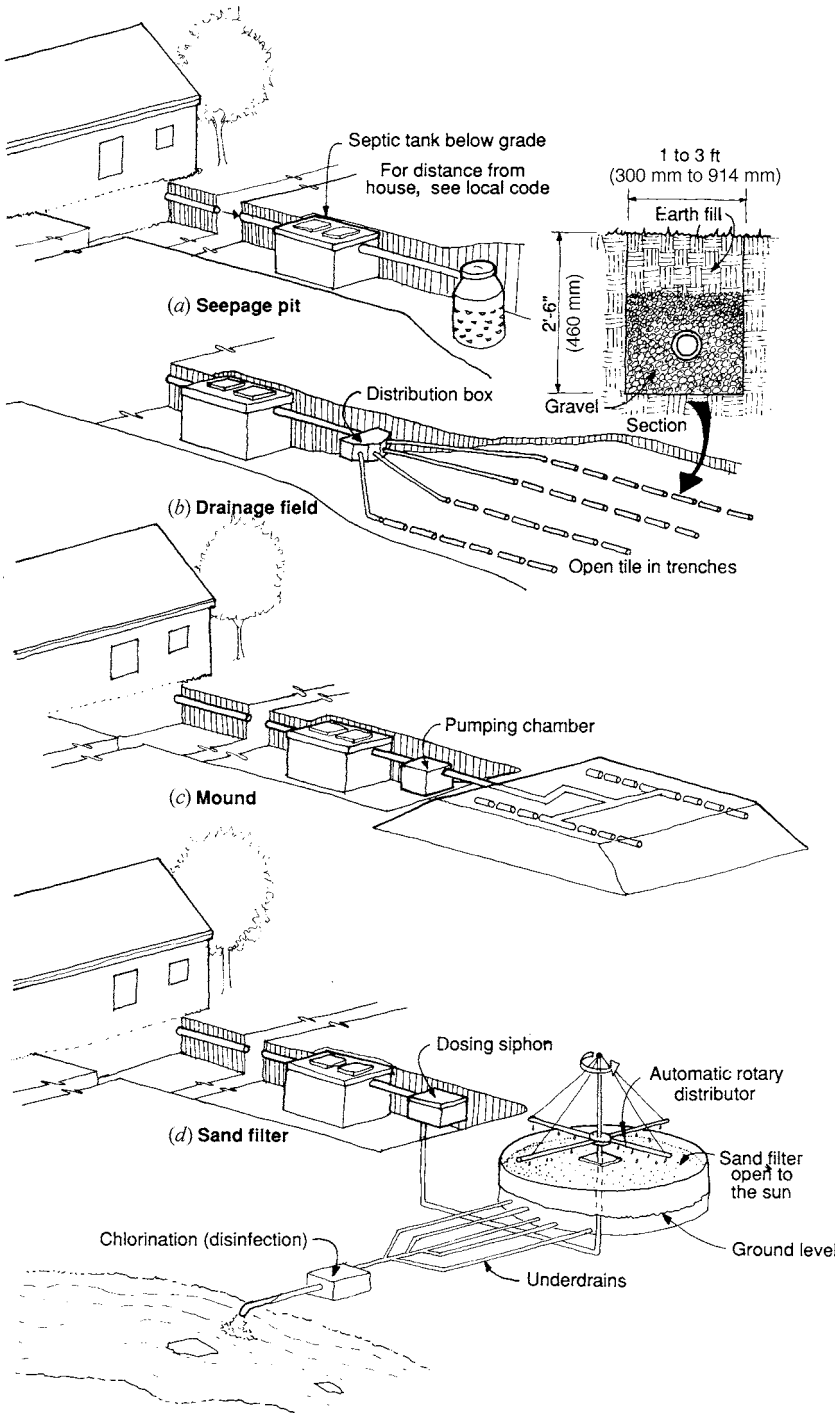
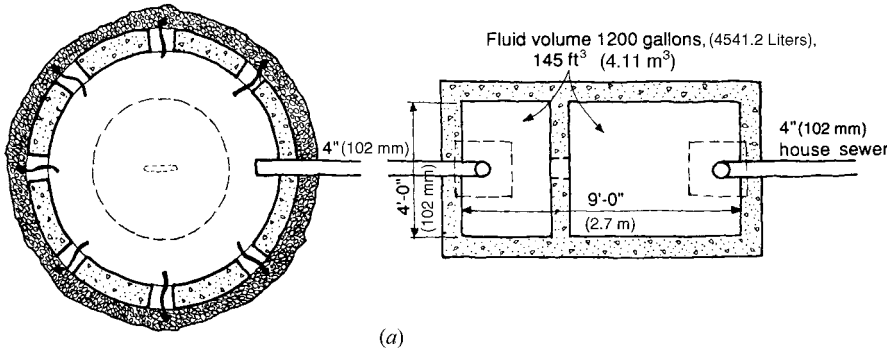
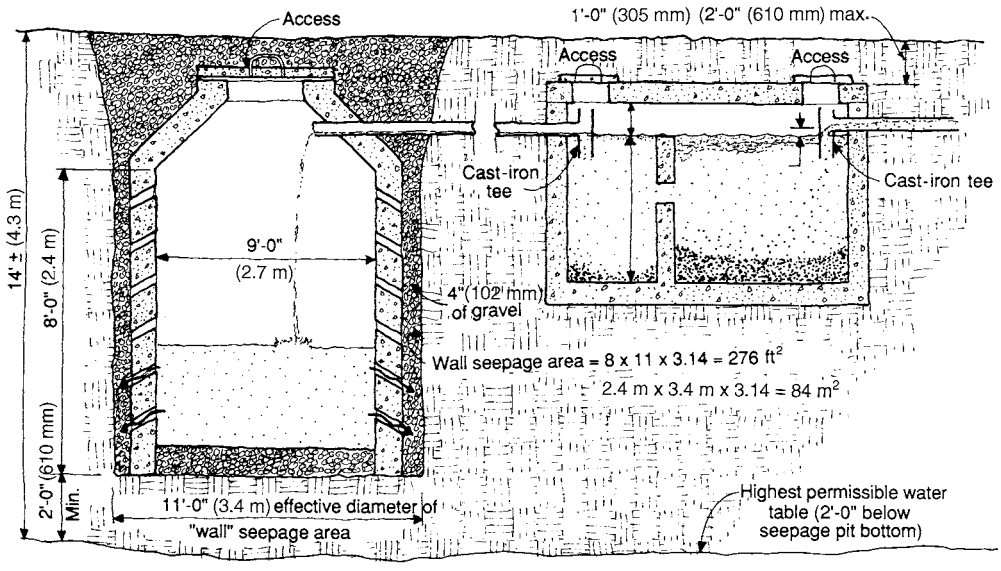


Fig. 22.34 *For individual sewage treatment systems, septic tanks are commonly used for primary treatment. Four options for secondary treatment are shown here. (Tertiary treatment usually is required only for effluent discharge into waterways.) (a) Seepage pits are rarely allowed. (b) Drain fields are the most commonly used options. (c, d) Mounds and sand filters are more expensive to construct and are used where high water tables preclude the use of option (b).*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 22.35 *Plan (a) and section (b) of a septic tank and seepage pit for a four-bedroom house in sandy loam soil. A pit is suitable only when the earth is absorbent and the water table low (below the pit bottom). The drawing is not to scale.*

TABLE 22.7 Septic Tank Capacity[a]

Single-Family Dwellings—Number of Bedrooms	Multiple-Dwelling Units or Apartments—One Bedroom Each	Other Uses: Maximum Fixture Units Served[b, c]	Minimum Septic Tank Capacity, Gal (L)[c]
1 or 2		15	750 (2838)
3		20	1000 (3785)
4	2 units	25	1200 (4542)
5 or 6	3	33	1500 (5678)
	4	45	2000 (7570)
	5	55	2250 (8516)
	6	60	2500 (9463)
	7	70	2750 (10,409)
	8	80	3000 (11,355)
	9	90	3250 (12,301)
	10	100	3500 (13,248)
Extra bedroom: 150 gal (568 L) each. Extra dwelling units over 10: 250 gal (946 L) each. Extra fixture units over 100: 25 gal (95 L) per fixture unit.			

Source: Reprinted by permission from the *Uniform Plumbing Code*. © 1997 by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials.

[a]Septic tank sizes in this table include sludge storage capacity and the connection disposal of domestic food waste units without further volume increase.

[b]See Table 22.2.

[c]For larger or nonresidential installations in which sewage flow rate is known, size the septic tank as follows:

1. Flow up to 1500 gpd (5678 L/d): flow × 1.5 = septic tank capacity
2. Flow over 1500 gpd (5678 L/d): (flow × 0.75) + 1125 = septic tank capacity in gallons [(flow × 0.75) + 4258 = capacity in liters]
3. Secondary system shall be sized for total flow per 24 hours.

frequently used to replace a passive septic tank in a troubled system; this "upgrade" can rejuvenate an existing drain field and extend its life. ATUs depend upon air bubbled through the sewage to achieve aerobic digestion, which is faster than anaerobic digestion; hence, they can be smaller than septic tanks. They are energy-intensive and require more maintenance than anaerobic tanks. A secondary treatment process is required as well. The effluent typically is less polluted than that of septic tanks; the biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) is reduced by 90% in ATUs compared to the 50% typical of septic tanks.

The sewage first enters an aeration chamber, where it is kept in turmoil so that air can continue to percolate through it. Either air is forced through the sewage by distribution lines fed by an air compressor or the sewage is stirred by a variety of devices, depending upon the manufacturer. After about a day's retention in the aeration chamber,

TABLE 22.8 Septic Tank and Leaching Area Design Criteria for Five Typical Soils

Type of Soil	Required ft^2 of Leaching Area per 100 gal (m^2/L)	Maximum Absorption Capacity, gal/ft^2 of Leaching Area for a 24-h Period (L/m^2)	*Maximum Septic Tank Size Allowable*	
			Gallons	Liters
1. Coarse sand or gravel	20 (0.005)	5 (203.7)	7500	28,387
2. Fine sand	25 (0.006)	4 (162.9)	7500	28,387
3. Sandy loam or sandy clay	40 (0.010)	2.5 (101.9)	5000	18,925
4. Clay with considerable sand or gravel	90 (0.022)	1.10 (44.8)	3500	13,247
5. Clay with small amount of sand or gravel	120 (0.029)	0.83 (33.8)	3000	11,355

Source: Reprinted by permission from the *Uniform Plumbing Code*. © 1997 by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials.

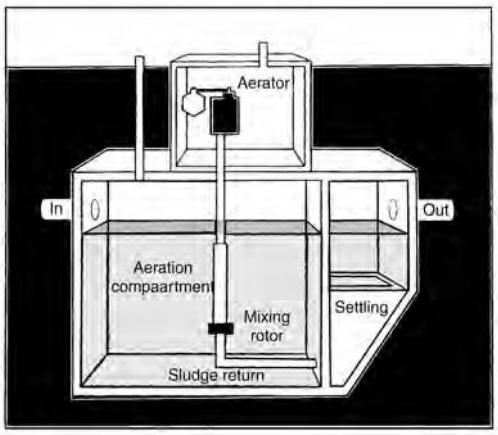


Fig. 22.36 *Aerobic treatment unit (ATU), requiring more energy and maintenance, but with cleaner effluent than that of a passive anaerobic septic tank. (National Small Flows Clearinghouse.)*

the aerated wastewater enters a settling chamber, allowing remaining solids to settle and to be filtered out before the effluent leaves, for further treatment in a secondary process.

(c) Secondary Treatment: Seepage Pits

Also called *cesspools* (Fig. 22.35), these follow treatment by either septic tanks or ATUs. They are increasingly rare, and are appropriate only in very porous soil, where the water table is at least 2 ft (0.6 m) below the bottom of the pit. Because these pits are commonly 10 to 15 ft (3 to 4.6 m) below the earth's surface, a very low water table may be required. Another common usage of precast seepage pits is for *dry wells* that receive runoff from paved areas during rainstorms.

Seepage pits are sized by the square footage of the wall area exposed to the earth—the *leaching area*, as listed in Table 22.8. Placement of pits relative to buildings, water sources, waterways, and property lines is strictly controlled—see Table 22.9 and Fig. 22.37.

(d) Disposal Fields

These are very commonly used as a secondary treatment method (Fig. 22.38) because they are relatively inexpensive to build and do not require a water table so deep—or soil so permeable—as do seepage pits. Drain lines consisting of either perforated pipes (of many approved materials) or square-edge agricultural tile, 4 in. (102 mm) or more in diameter (with the ends of the tiles separated by ¼-in. [6-mm] openings), are used. These lines are placed in shallow trenches, on a bed of gravel, and

TABLE 22.9 Location of On-Site Sewage Disposal Systems

Minimum Horizontal Distance Clear Required from:	*Building Sewer*		*Septic Tank*		*Disposal Field*		*Seepage Pit (Cesspool)*	
	ft	mm	ft	mm	ft	mm	ft	mm
Buildings or structures[a]	2	610	5	1542	8	2438	8	2438
Property line adjoining private property	Clear		5	1542	5	1542	8	2438
Water supply wells	50[b]	15,240	50	15,240	100	30.5 m	150	45.7 m
Streams	50	15,240	50	15,240	50	15,240	100	30.5 m
Trees	—	—	10	3048	—		10	3048
Seepage pits or cesspools	—	—	5	1542	5	1542	12	3658
Disposal field	—	—	5	1542	4[d]	1219	5	1542
On-site domestic water service line	1	305	5	1542	5	1542	5	1542
Distribution box	—	—	—		5	1542	5	1542
Pressure public water main	10[c]	3048	10	3048	10	3048	10	3048

Source: Reprinted by permission from the 1997 *Uniform Plumbing Code.* © by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.

Note: When disposal fields and/or seepage pits are installed in sloping ground, the minimum horizontal distance between any part of the leaching system and the ground surface shall be 15 ft (4.6 m).

[a]Including porches and steps, whether covered or uncovered, breezeways, roofed porte-cocheres, roofed patios, carports, covered walks, covered driveways, and similar structures or appurtenances.

[b]All drainage piping shall clear domestic water supply wells by at least 50 ft (15.2 m). This distance may be reduced to not less than 25 ft (7.6 m) when the drainage piping is constructed of materials approved for use within a building.

[c]For parallel construction. For crossings, approval by the Health Department shall be required.

[d]Plus 2 ft (0.6 m) for each additional 1 ft (0.3 m) of depth in excess of 1 ft (0.3 m) below the bottom of the drain line.

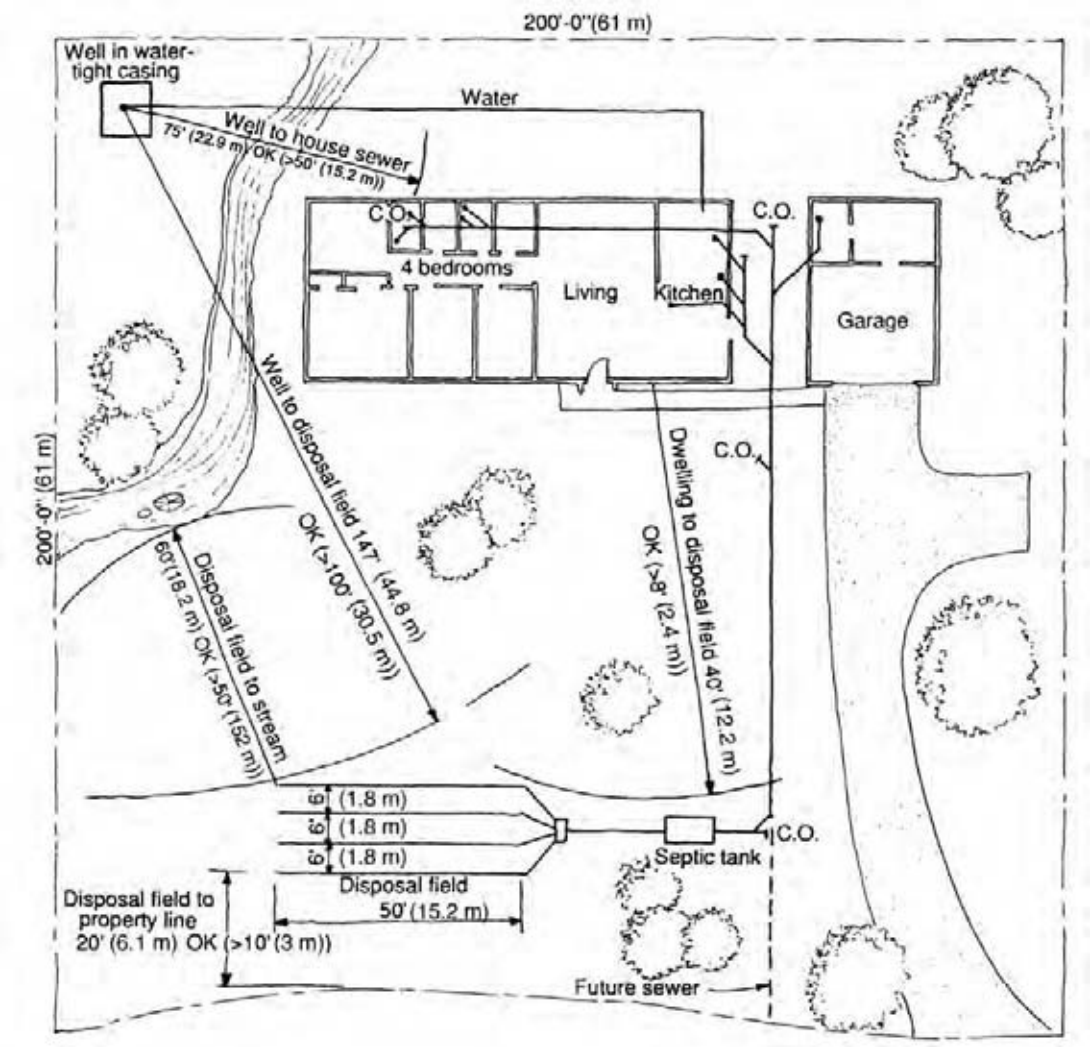


Fig. 22.37 *Checking for required clearances on a suburban lot. Although the 40,000-ft² (3716-m²) lot is more than the minimum required, space should be left for a backup disposal field (of equal size) in case of failure of the original field.*

covered with gravel. The effluent runs out of these lines and stands in the interstices of the gravel until it seeps into the earth. In effect, the gravel provides spaces that act as a dry well to receive the fluids and accommodate them until they slowly sink into the ground.

Disposal fields are located according to regulations such as those given in Table 22.9 and sized in relation to total sewage flow and septic tank size (see Tables 22.8 and 22.10). Although Table 22.8 shows the maximum absorption capacities for soils based on gal/ft² (L/m²) over a 24-hour period, a common alternative is to use *percolation* tests. For such tests, a trial pit is dug and water poured into it. The absorption in gal/ft² (L/m²) over a 24-hour period is determined from this test. Some codes require design sizes based upon percolation test data. Codes often require that an area equal to the required drainage field size be set aside for use in the event of failure in the original field.

Design guidelines for sizing disposal fields were presented in Section 20.3, but a more accurate method is shown here. The trench width, depth, and spacing shown in Fig. 22.38 are typical, but other combinations can be used, provided that they meet the requirements listed in Table 22.10.

TABLE 22.10 Disposal Field Trenches

PART A. DIMENSIONS		
	Minimum	**Maximum**
Length of drain line(s)	—	100 ft (30.5 m)
Bottom width of trench	18 in. (457 mm)	36 in. (0.9 m)
Spacing of lines, on center (o.c.)[a]	6 ft (1.8 m)	—
Depth of earth cover over lines	12 in. (305 mm) *Note:* 18 in. (457 mm) preferred	—
Grade of lines	Level	3 in./100 ft (25 mm/m)
Filter material		
Over drain lines	2 in. (51 mm)	—
Under drain lines[a]	12 in. (305 mm)	—[d]
PART B. LEACHING AREAS		
Trench bottom[b]: minimum 150 ft^2 (14 m^2) per system Trench side wall: minimum[c] 2 ft^2/ft of length; maximum[d] 6 ft^2/ft of length		

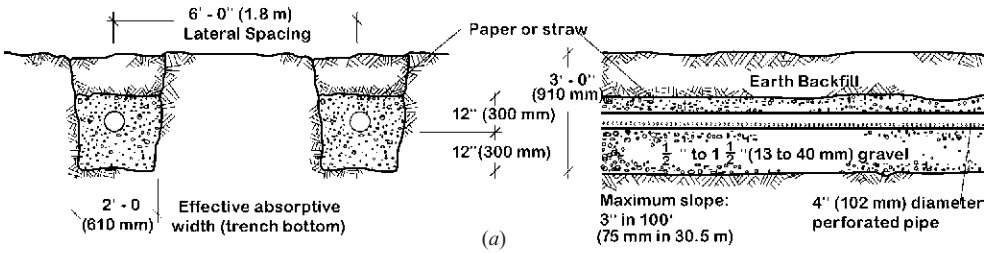
Source: Adapted by permission from the *Uniform Plumbing Code.* © 1997 by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials.

[a]Minimum spacing of drain lines: 4 ft (1.2 m) plus 2 ft (0.6 m) for *each* additional foot (0.3 m) of depth *beyond* 1 ft (0.3 m) below the bottom of the drain line.

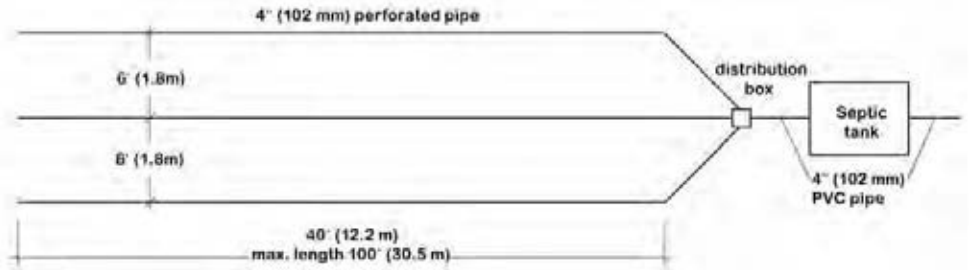
[b]Exclusive of rock, clay, or other impervious formations.

[c]Based on the minimum 12-in. (305-mm) trench depth below drain tile.

[d]A maximum 36-in. (0.9-m) trench depth below the drain line can be counted when calculating the required absorption area.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 22.38 *Example 22.3. Tile drain field for a four-bedroom house. Although the drawings are not to scale, the dimensions show a required area of about 20 × 50 ft (6 × 15 m) on the lot. Because paving is not permitted over drain fields, sewage treatment on a small lot demands considerable creativity. (a) Transverse and longitudinal sections. (b) Schematic plan. (Redrawn with SI units by Nathan Majeski.)*

EXAMPLE 22.3 See Fig. 22.38. Design a septic tank and drain field system for a suburban residence under the following conditions:

Bedrooms	4
Soil	Sandy loam
Depth to water table	7 ft (2.1 m)

SOLUTION

Septic tank capacity (Table 22.7) = 1200 gal (4542 L).
Fluid volume of the tank (minimum required) is

$$1200 \text{ gal} \div 7.48 \text{ gal/ft}^3 = 160 \text{ ft}^3$$
$$(4542 \text{ L}) \div 1000 \text{ L/m}^3 = 4.5 \text{ m}^3$$

Dimensions for a tank are chosen:

$4.5 \times 4.0 \times 9.0$ ft = 162 ft^3 volume
$1.4 \times 1.2 \times 2.7$ m = 4.5 m^3 volume

162 (proposed) > 160 (the minimum required)
[the same conclusion with SI units]

Drain field size is established from Table 22.8: sandy loam (soil type 3) requires 40 ft^2 (3.7 m^2) of leaching area per 100 gal (378 L). With a septic tank of 1200 gal (4.5 m^3),

40 ft^2 × 1200 gal/100 gal
= 480 ft^2 minimum absorption area
(3.7 m^2 × 4500 L/378 L
= 44 m^2 minimum absorption area)

The effective absorption area of the typical trench depth and spacing shown in Fig. 22.38 is

Trench width	2.0 ft^2/ft (0.6 m^2/m) of length
Trench sides	2.0 ft^2/ft (0.6 m^2/m) of length (12 in. [305 mm] on each side)
Total absorption	4.0 ft^2/ft (1.2 m^2/m)

The required absorption area was determined to be 480 ft^2 (44 m^2). Because the trench has 4.0 ft^2/ft (1.2 m^2/m) of length, the total trench length must be

480 ft^2/(4 ft^2/ft) of length = 120 ft
[44 m^2/(1.2 m^2/m) = 37 m]

A three-line disposal field is selected, so 120 ft/3 lines = 40 ft (37 m/3 = 12.3 m) per line. Given the required clearances to the edges of the disposal field (Table 22.9) of 5 ft (1.5 m) to property lines, the disposal field area can be calculated as:

width:

5 ft + 12 ft (two spaces of 6 ft each) + 5 ft = 22 ft
[1.5 m + 3.7 m (2 spaces at 1.85 m each) + 1.5 m
= 6.7 m]

length:

5 ft + 40-ft line + 5 ft = 50 ft
[1.5 m + 12.3 m line + 1.5 m = 15.3 m]

The site surface area, then, is 22 × 50 ft = 1100 ft^2 (6.7 x 15.3 m = 102 m^2). Note that double this area (for a second disposal field in the event of failure of the first field) is often required. ■

(e) Mounds with Leaching Beds

These (Fig. 22.39) represent a newer solution in the United States and thus may require special approval. The guidelines for leaching-bed sizing are essentially similar to those for drainage tile disposal fields. The absorption area for leaching beds, however, must be 50% greater than that required for trenches. The bottom of the leaching bed generally must be at least 5 ft (1.5 m) above the water table, although in water-scarce areas, officials may reduce this requirement.

(f) Buried Sand Filters

Slow sand filters for treating supply water were discussed in Section 21.2(d) and shown in Fig. 21.3. Buried sand filters (Fig. 22.40) work in a similar way, using primarily biological but also physical and chemical processes to clean wastewater. The medium is most commonly sand, although other locally available materials such as crushed glass, mineral tailings, bottom ash, and so on have been

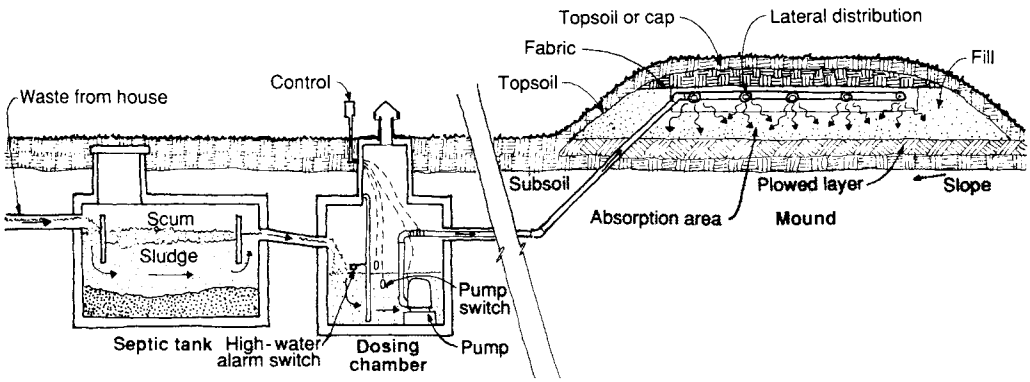


Fig. 22.39 *Mounds with leaching beds offer a disposal option when the water table is high. The system serves a two- or three-bedroom home. (Adapted from Converse, 1978.)*

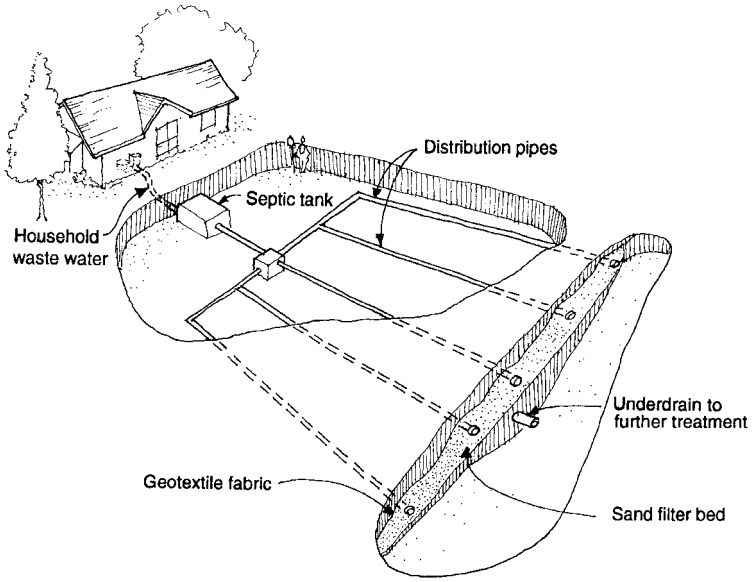


Fig. 22.40 *Buried sand filters appear to be like the common disposal fields, but are deeper and may require an impermeable membrane liner. (National Small Flows Clearinghouse.)*

used. The grain size ranges from 0.01 to 0.1 in. (0.3 to 3 mm) in diameter.

The layout is similar to that of the disposal fields described in Section 22.6(e), but these filters, themselves 24 to 36 in. (610 to 914 mm) deep, usually require an excavation of 4 to 5 ft (1.2 to 1.5 m). The filter bed must be level and sited to avoid contact with groundwater and excess surface water runoff. Some authorities require the sand filter to be contained in an impermeable membrane liner. Underdrain pipes and a graded layer of washed gravel or crushed rock are placed on the bottom of the filter bed, with the finer gravel on top to keep the medium from washing into the underdrains. Then a layer of fine gravel first, with coarser gravel above, is placed around and over the distribution pipes. A geotextile fabric covers the top of the entire filter bed, which in turn is covered by backfill material. A properly constructed buried sand filter that receives properly digested waste from a well-maintained septic tank should last for up to 20 years without maintenance.

Buried sand filters are one remedy for failed disposal fields. They are also used where high groundwater, shallow bedrock, or poor soil preclude use of the simpler disposal field. Although buried sand filters may require considerable site area, the ground surface can be used for lawns or other nonpaved surface activities. More detailed information on the sand filter types discussed here is available from the National Small Flows Clearinghouse.

In general, sand filters are designed for normal dosing twice a day; they need time to allow the filter medium to drain between doses. The water that filters through the medium is collected in underdrains that are sloped toward an outlet and vented to the surface at the upstream end. This vent is a potential source of odors. The water is then taken either to a disinfection (usually chlorination) unit or to a disposal field for subsurface discharge.

Water from sand filters has been cleansed of many pathogens, such as harmful bacteria and viruses, and is therefore more likely to be approved for a down-line disposal field. Typical values for three types of sand filters are shown in Table 22.11. (Open and recirculating sand filters are discussed in the next section.)

22.7 ON-SITE MULTIPLE-BUILDING SEWAGE TREATMENT

The first approach to multiple-building treatment involves providing septic tanks at each building for primary treatment. Then the outflows from the individual septic tanks are combined and enter a secondary treatment process. Either of two specific types of sand filters can be employed for this purpose.

TABLE 22.11 Sand Filter Design Values[a]

Design Factor	Buried Filters	Open Filters	Recirculating Filters
Pretreatment	All filters must be preceded by settling and removal of solids		
Media			
Materials	Washed, durable granular material		
Uniformity coefficient	Less than 4.0 between smallest and largest size particles		
Depth	24 to 36 in. (610 to 914 mm)		
Effective size	0.3 to 1 mm	0.3 to 1 mm	0.8 to 3 mm
Hydraulic loading	<1.5 gpd/ft^2 (<61 L/day m^2)	2 to 5 gpd/ft^2 (82 to 204 L/day m^2)	3 to 5 gpd/ft$^{2\,b}$ (122 to 204 L/day m^2)
Media temperature	>41°F (>5°C)	>41°F (>5°C)	>41°F (>5°C)
Dosing frequency	<2 per day	<2 per day	5–10 min./30 min.[d]
Recirculation ratio[c]	(Not applicable)	(Not applicable)	3:1 to 5:1

Source: National Small Flows Clearinghouse, *Pipeline,* Summer 1997, Vol. 8, No. 3.

[a]These values show typical design criteria and do not represent all possibilities.

[b]Forward flow only, not including recirculated effluent.

[c]Water recirculated: water discharged.

[d]Dosage lasts for 5 to 10 minutes every half hour.

There are several advantages to this approach. The effluent lines from the septic tanks carry no solids; they can be much smaller in diameter and placed in shallower trenches than conventional sewer lines. The runs are far shorter, because distant centralized treatment plants are not involved. With sand filter secondary treatment, the septic tank wastewater is more likely to find a recycling use, such as irrigation.

(a) Open Sand Filters

Also called *intermittent sand filters*, these are very similar in construction to slow sand filters (Fig. 21.3). They are nearly identical in performance to buried sand filters (Fig. 22.40); the difference is that these are at least partially aboveground. A detail of the filter medium is shown in Fig. 22.41. Table 22.11 shows that they are able to accept a somewhat higher flow than a buried filter, so they require less area than a buried filter, but the surface is no longer usable for any other purpose. (A removable cover is typically used for odor control, despite the "open" name.) They are used on systems with flows of up to 120,000 gpd (454,240 L/day) of wastewater. Frequently, two such open filters are built so that one can rest while the other is in use. Alternatively, two filters may be used in series, with an even cleaner resulting final effluent.

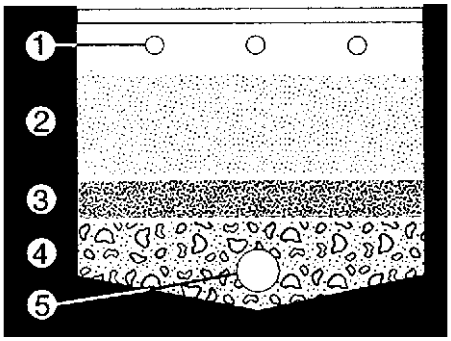


Fig. 22.41 *Open sand filter receives wastewater from above through (1) distribution pipes (or a thin layer of flooded wastewater). A filter medium (2) such as sand is on top, then (3) fine gravel, then (4) coarse gravel, surrounding the (5) underdrain. Slow sand filters are very similar. (National Small Flows Clearinghouse.)*

(b) Recirculating Sand Filters

These eliminate odors by ensuring an adequate supply of oxygen to the wastewater. The recirculating sand filter (Fig. 22.42) first receives water (from the septic tank or other primary treatment) into a recirculation tank. This tank has a pump, a timing mechanism, and float valves. Either in timed doses or when triggered by the float valve, doses of water are pumped to the sand filter. The treated wastewater collects in the underdrain, where the majority (75% to 80%) is directed back to the recirculation tank. Thus, mixing with the septic tank effluent and being pumped to the sand filter, the result is weaker (cleaner) effluent, containing more oxygen, entering the sand filter. This eliminates odor

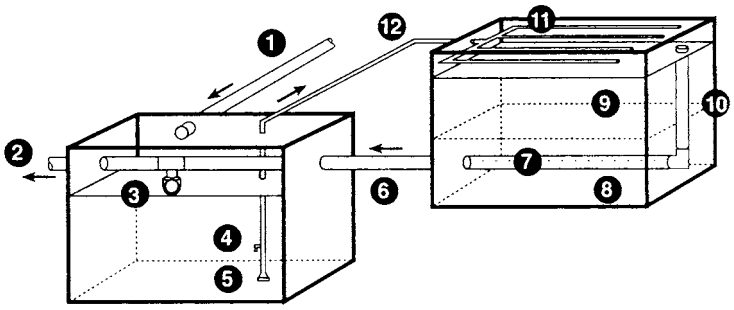


Fig. 22.42 *Recirculating sand filters periodically distribute a cleaner, more oxygen-rich effluent to the sand filter. This eliminates odor and allows a larger medium grain size. (1) Effluent from pretreatment (such as a septic tank). (2) To disinfection/discharge. (3) Float valve. (4) Bleed line. (5) Submersible pump. (6) Recirculated effluent line. (7) Perforated underdrain piping. (8) Layered support gravel. (9) Filter media. (10) Riser pipe. (11) Distribution piping. (12) Recirculation pump discharge to recirculating filter. (National Small Flows Clearinghouse.)*

and allows a slightly larger filter grain size, making the system less prone to clogging. Table 22.11 compares sand filter types, showing the highest allowable flow rates per surface area for the recirculating sand filter.

At Stonehurst, a 47-lot subdivision in Contra Costa County, California, 1500-gal (5680-L) septic tanks serve each unit; each tank has a screened effluent vault, keeping solids out of the effluent lines. The effluent is taken through small-diameter, variable-grade sewers (located under the roadway) to a recirculating granular medium filter. (Homes lower than the roadway use effluent pumps at the septic tank outflows.) Outflow from the recirculating filter is then taken to a UV recirculation tank, where it is treated by UV radiation (see Fig. 21.6). From this tertiary treatment area, it is conducted to a subsurface drip irrigation system serving a community park. In winter, a 2.5-acre (1-hectare) community soil absorption field is utilized.

(c) Lagoons

These basins need sun, wind, and more land area than other methods, but are very simple to maintain and very low in energy use. They usually must be lined to prevent wastewater from polluting the groundwater. Sometimes the outflow must undergo further treatment before release. If lagoons are not square or round, their length should not exceed three times their width. Outflow and inflow should be at opposite ends. Detailed information is available from the National Small Flows Clearinghouse (1997).

Anaerobic lagoons are usually used as the first of at least two lagoons in series. Working much like a septic tank, they hold wastewater for 20 to 50 days and are relatively deep, 8 to 15 ft (2.4 to 4.6 m). With a surface of floating scum that blocks oxygen from the wastewater, they are unsightly and malodorous.

Aerobic lagoons are shallower than other lagoons, so sunlight and oxygen from wind and air can better penetrate. Aerobic bacteria and algae do the work of cleaning the wastewater. These are best in warm climates where freezing is not a threat. They hold water for 3 to 50 days. The bottoms are either paved or lined to prevent weeds from growing within the lagoon.

Aerated lagoons take the aerobic lagoon a step further, actively stirring and adding oxygen to the lagoon. Because they speed aerobic action, they require shorter retention time and less land area than a passive aerobic lagoon.

Facultative lagoons (also called *stabilization*, *oxidation*, *photosynthetic*, or *aerobic–anaerobic ponds*) are the type most commonly used by small communities and individual households. They work in most climates and require no machinery. They require about 1 acre (0.4 hectare) for every 50 homes (or for every 200 people) served, are 3 to 8 ft (0.9 to 2.4 m) deep, and are designed to hold wastewater for 20 to 150 days (the longer period in cold weather).

Three layers form in these lagoons; the top is an aerobic zone, the middle is the facultative zone, and at the bottom is the anaerobic zone. The depth of the surface aerobic zone depends upon how much sunlight, wind, and rain can contribute oxygen; the

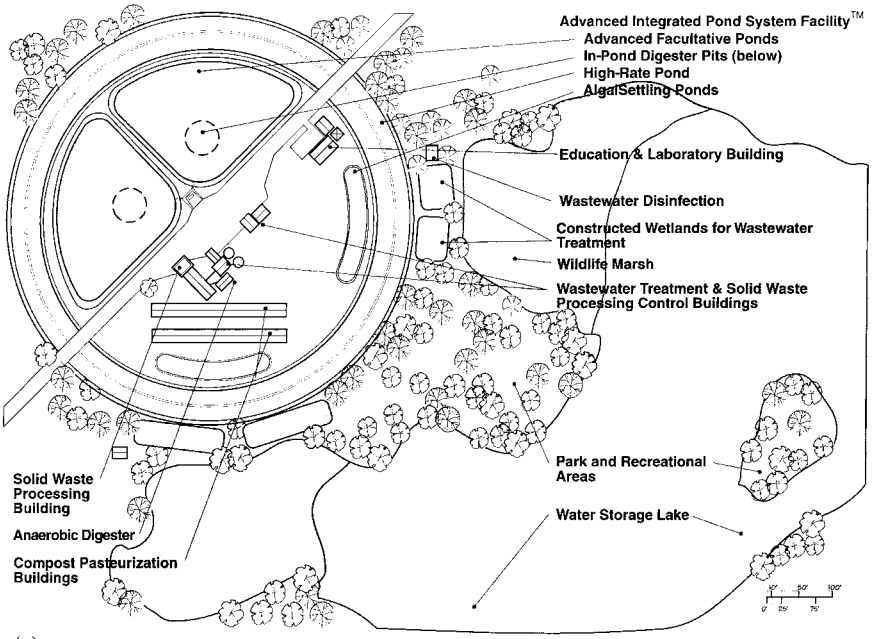
deeper this zone is, the better it controls odors rising from the anaerobic zone. Therefore, these lagoons should be sited with full access to both sun and wind.

Down in the anaerobic zone, anaerobic bacteria convert sludge to gases, including hydrogen sulfide, ammonia, and methane. As these gases rise, they provide food for both the aerobic bacteria and the algae in the aerobic zone. Sludge accumulates more quickly in cold climates; sludge removal should be expected every 5 to 10 years.

(d) Advanced Integrated Wastewater Pond System (AIWPS™)

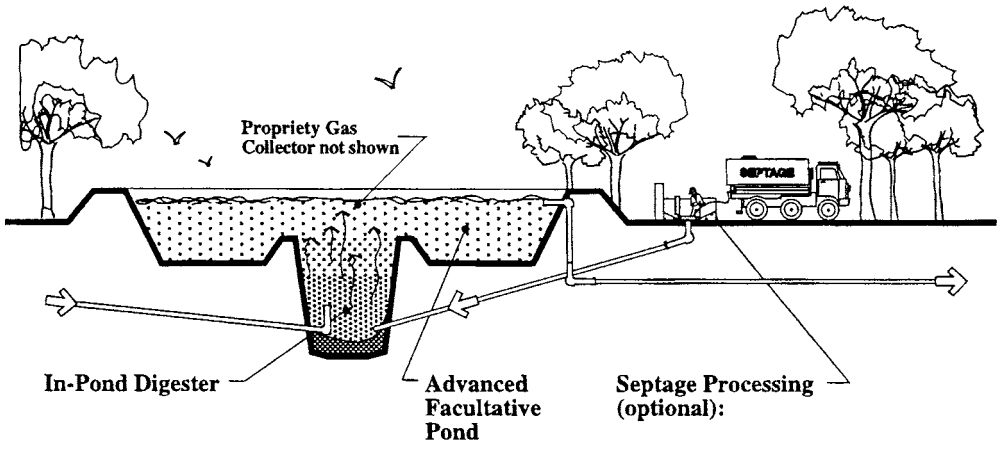
At California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo, there is an innovative proposal to create an integrated infrastructure facility combining campus wastewater treatment and solid waste processing. In addition to the waste treatment and resources recovery for this campus of 18,000, the schematic design for the Energy Efficient Resource Recovery (E2R2) Facility includes an educational facility, a wildlife habitat, and park facilities. The wastewater and related wetlands proposals are shown in Fig. 22.43; the solid waste facility appears in Fig. 23.1.

Three ponds are used in the AIWPS facility (Oswald, 1990; Oswald et al., 1963). The first is the advanced facultative pond (AFP) (Fig. 22.43*a*), which includes an in-pond digester (IPD) or anaerobic fermentation pit at the bottom, and an oxygen-rich aerobic surface water layer. Two AFPs used in

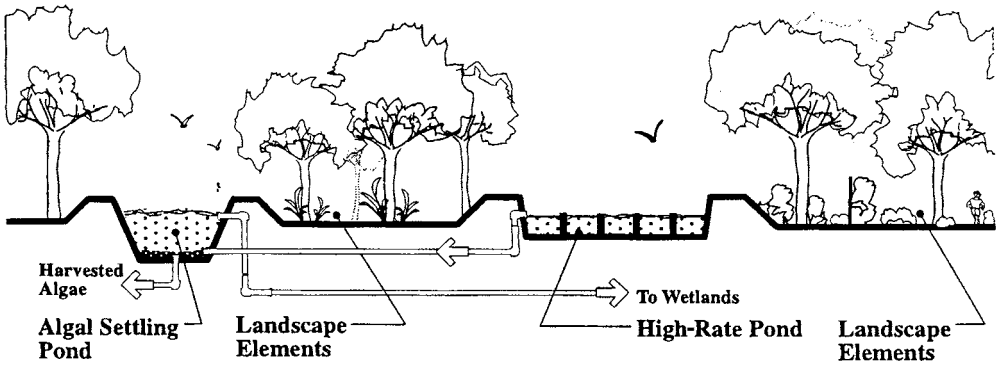


(*a*)

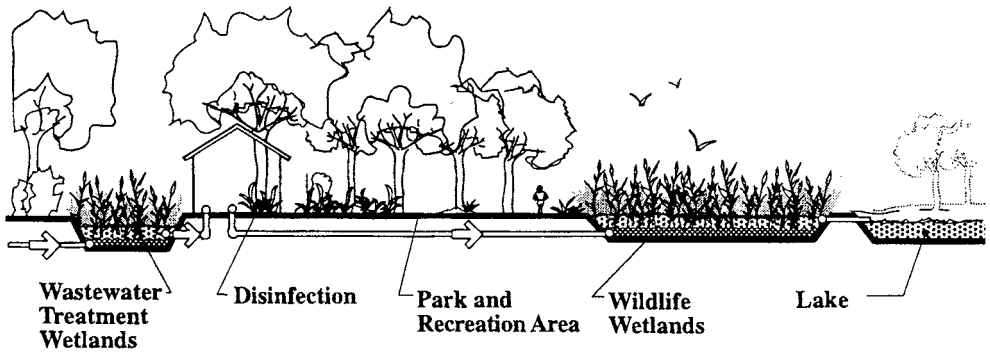
Fig. 22.43 *Schematic design proposal for wastewater treatment at the Energy Efficient Resource Recovery (E2R2) Facility at Cal Poly, San Luis Obispo. (a) Site plan. (b) Effluent enters the advanced facultative pond (AFP) through the in-pond digester, where solids settle, undergo methane fermentation, and are reduced to ash. Rising biogas is channeled by a proprietary submerged gas collector and passes through a highly aerobic surface layer where impurities are removed, yielding methane-rich biogas at the surface. (c) AFP effluent then goes to the high-rate pond, where it is slowly moved along the shallow channels by an energy-efficient paddle wheel providing optimum solar exposure and enabling the profusely growing algae to supply abundant oxygen for oxidation of wastewater organics and disinfection of pathogens. Subsequently, effluent moves into the quiescent Algal Settling Pond where algae settles and is periodically removed for beneficial use. (d) Effluent then moves into constructed wetlands, where the plants in this system create an ideal environment for invertebrates and vertebrates (in free surface wetlands) and aerobic and anaerobic microbial populations to thrive and provide further treatment and effluent polishing. Finally, the effluent from the wetlands is disinfected by ozone or UV disinfection systems and stored in a lake that is part of a campus park and recreational facility. (Courtesy of Dr. William Oswald, Professor Emeritus of Civil and Environmental Engineering and Public Health at the University of California, Berkeley, and Principal of Oswald Engineering Associates, Inc.; Dr. Bailey Green, Research Engineer at the University of California, Berkeley, and Principal of Oswald Engineering Associates, Inc.; and Professor Daniel Panetta, Architecture Department, Cal Poly, San Luis Obispo.)*



(*b*)



(*c*)



(*d*)

Fig. 22.43 *(continued)*

parallel allow fail-safe operation. This design enables isolation and treatment of toxic substances in the event that such material is accidentally released into the community sewer system. Conventional sewage treatment plants typically cannot isolate or treat accidental toxic releases in wastewater due to their short processing time.

The raw sewage enters the system near the bottom of the IPD, where anaerobic bacteria slowly reduce biosolids to ash (Oswald et al., 1994; Green et al., 1995b). Biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) is reduced to 60% to 80%, and minimal accumulation of refractory solids (sludge) has been demonstrated since the late 1960s.

Using earthwork construction for the ponds allows them to be quite large and deep, without the substantially higher costs of concrete and steel construction typical of conventional wastewater treatment facilities. A berm surrounding the IPD prevents mixing of aerobic water with the influent below, whether by wind or thermal inversion. The aerobic upper layer oxidizes any malodorous biogases rising from the IPD. The biogas generated in the IPD is scrubbed as it passes through the water column and the aerobic surface layer. At the current campus population, between 3000 and 5000 ft^3 (85 and 142 m^3) per day of methane (CH_4) are estimated to be available for collection from the IPD and use as fuel (Green et al., 1995a).

The second pond is the high-rate pond (HRP) designed to grow algae (Fig. 22.43*b*). The lined channels in this pond are approximately 3 ft (1 m) or less in water depth and include a paddle wheel (see Fig. 22.49) to slowly mix the primary effluent. The HRP design allows maximum oxygen production by algal photosynthesis due to optimum exposure to sunlight and abundant nutrients. The pond's aerobic and facultative bacteria oxidize most of the soluble and readily biodegradable BOD.

The next pond in the series is an algal settling pond (ASP) (Fig. 22.43*c*). The quiet waters of this pond allow 50% to 80% of the algae to settle over several days' residence time. The settled algae are periodically harvested, and the algal biomass does not produce objectionable odors. When properly disinfected, the harvested algae, rich in nitrogen and phosphorus, can be used as fish or livestock feed or as a nitrogen source in compost.

Near St. Helena, California, an AIWPS facility has functioned since the late 1960s. During this time period, no sludge removal has been necessary, attesting to the efficiency of the methane fermentation process. The facility is near several large wineries and is considered a good neighbor without odor problems (Oswald et al., 1970).

While a maturation pond usually follows the ASP in an AIWPS facility, various appropriate treatment components can subsequently be used to achieve advanced tertiary treatment—the highest wastewater reclamation and reuse standard required by the state of California (Green et al., 1996). In the proposed schematic design, the ASP effluent flows into a constructed wetland.

(e) Constructed Wetlands

Wetland surrogates constructed specifically for waste treatment are shown in Fig. 22.43*c*. In the schematic design, two parallel constructed wetlands are proposed, allowing a comparison between their outflows.

The free surface wetlands (FSW) consist of shallow open basins or channels that are lined to prevent seepage. Soil supports a succession of wetlands vegetation, nourished by a continuing flow of effluent from the initial wastewater treatment system(s) (such as a secondary AIWPS facility, septic tank, etc.). Although the water surface is exposed to beneficial air and sunlight, proper design is required to mitigate human contact with the treated effluent in FSWs. It is also necessary to address potential problems such as mosquitoes or other water-borne insects.

The subsurface flow wetlands utilize a lined treatment basin filled with a coarse medium such as large gravel or crushed rock. The large voids (if properly designed) allow the effluent to flow freely through rocks and plant root systems. The relationships among gravel size, slope of bed, and rate of flow is complex and is described in detail in an EPA document (1993). A layer of soil is used to cover the gravel bed, so subsequent human contacts with the effluent and insect problems are precluded.

In either type of constructed wetland system, saturated and nutrient-rich conditions encourage the growth of both aerobic and anaerobic microbes and certain invertebrates. The most common plants include varieties of *scripus* (bulrushes), *phragmites* (reeds), *typha* (cattails), *canna*, and *iris*. These plants not only provide large amounts of surface area for microbial activities, but also create an aerobic zone

underwater by transporting air through their stems to their roots. A thin aerobic environment results among the root hairs.

Constructed wetlands become a vivid, colorful demonstration of how, in nature, there is no such thing as waste. After passage through a slow sand filter (see again Fig. 21.3) and final disinfection, the reclaimed water from the E2R2 facility can provide campus landscape irrigation water, be released into the campus creek to assist with habitat restoration, or be used for aquifer recharge. Arcata, California, completed its wetlands treatment system in 1986. This system draws several hundred species of birds, as its abundant vegetation removes nutrients from, and allows habitat reuse of, the city's treated wastewater.

(f) Greenhouse Ecosystems

When constructed wetlands are moved indoors, greater control and less required area become possible. As pioneered by marine biologist John Todd at Ocean Arks International, *Living Machines* are a series of tanks, each with a particular ecosystem, that form a "stream." The stream is followed by an indoor marsh; together they achieve a high degree of tertiary wastewater treatment.

These enclosed systems typically cost less to construct and about the same to maintain as conventional sewage treatment plants, but use less energy because photosynthesis (solar energy) and gravity flow largely replace energy-intensive pumps and large-scale aerators. These systems do not harm the environment with a final dose of chlorine, and they produce about one-quarter of the sludge of conventional systems. Because they are pleasant to look at and smell much like commercial greenhouses, they can be located within the neighborhoods they serve. This can save the huge costs associated with large-diameter, deep-trench sewer lines and pumping stations necessary with distant, centralized treatment plants.

A diagram of one greenhouse ecosystem is shown in Fig. 22.44. This Living Machine begins with an anaerobic bioreactor, in effect a septic tank where solids are reduced to sludge and methane gas is produced. From here the wastewater passes to aerated tanks and then to *ecological fluidized beds*, each with a particular combination of bacteria, algae, snails, and fish. The further along the treatment process, the more advanced the ecosystem, with goldfish (carp) growing in the final clarifier. This process depends upon the following food chain: (1) aerobic bacteria consume suspended organic matter and convert ammonia into nitrites and then nitrates; (2) algae and duckweed feed on the products of the bacterial action; (3) snails and zooplankton eat the algae, while floating duckweed provides shade that discourages algal growth in the later stages of the process; (4) fish eat the zooplankton and the snails. Plants range from water hyacinth in the early stages to an increasing variety of specialized "accumulators" that remove troublesome phosphorus, heavy metals, and so on. Papyrus, canna lilies, bald cypress, willows, and eucalyptus (among other plants) all have a role. When trees outgrow the greenhouse, they are transplanted outdoors—but they are long-term storage for the heavy metals they absorb, not final solutions, because heavy metals will be returned to the earth when the trees die and decompose. Plants can be sold to nurseries or ground up as compost; the fish also enrich the compost. The smaller fish (shiners) can be sold as bait fish. These are small enough to dart back and forth in the piping between tanks, choosing their water quality. If a toxic slug of waste enters the system, they swim to later, clearer tanks until the danger is past.

The greenhouse solar aquatic system in Fig. 22.45*a* cleans the wastewater from a mobile home park on Vancouver Island, British Columbia. In Fig. 22.45*b*, a striking Living Machine design occupies the center of an urban block in Kolding, Denmark.

In milder climates and with specialized wastewater, these processes can be achieved without the greenhouse enclosure. The Sonoma Mountain Brewery's Living Machine (Fig. 22.46) near Sonoma, California, occupies about 1 acre (0.4 hectare) and treats a maximum flow of 7800 gpd (29,525 L/day) of waste from the brewery process. Two streams move in parallel, allowing a comparison of their outflows as experiments with detailed ecosystems are conducted. A part-time operator manages this treatment plant. After an underground anaerobic holding tank, flow moves to:

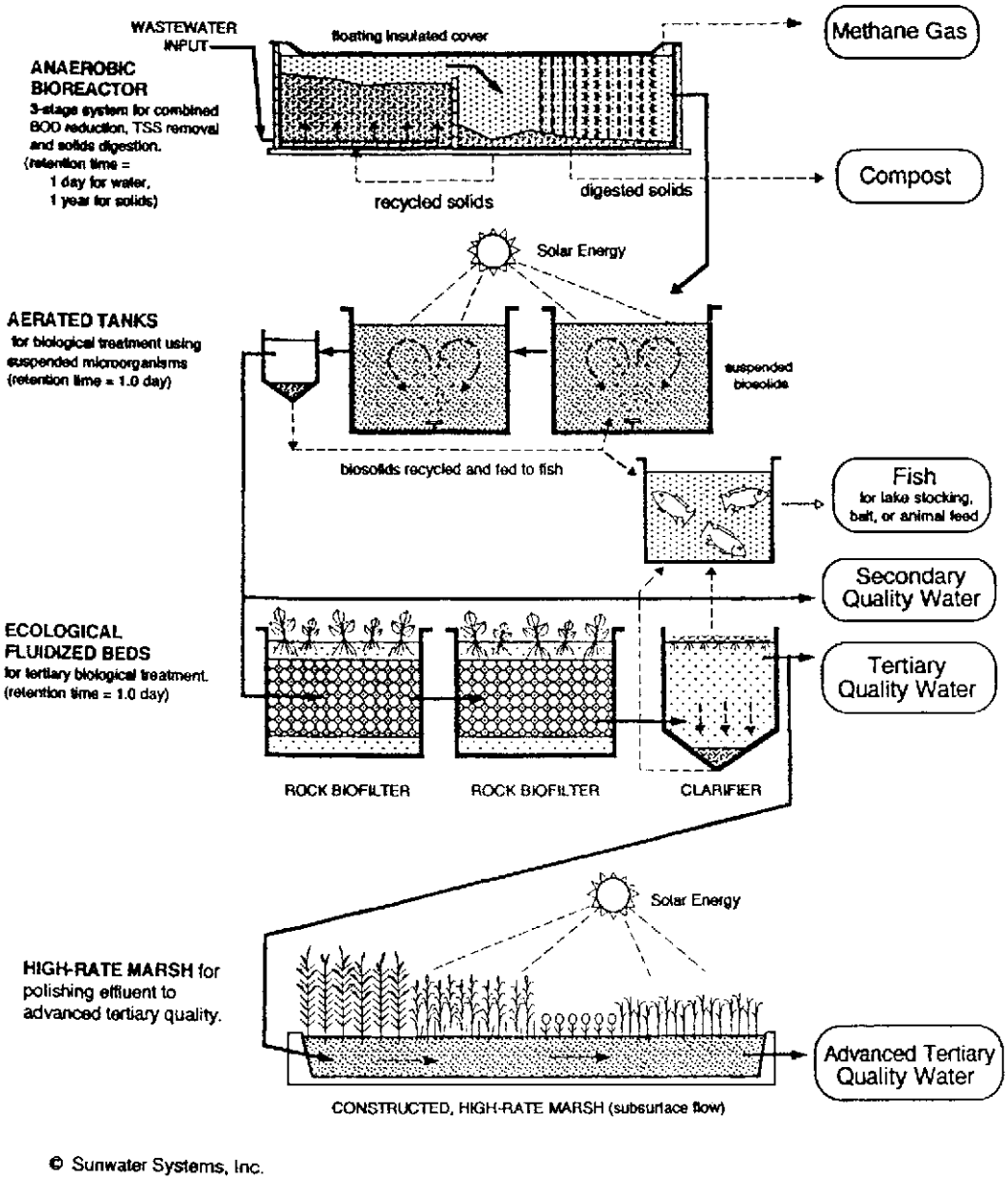


Fig. 22.44 *A Living Machine enclosed within a greenhouse uses a food chain in a series of ecosystems to treat wastewater. (Living Technologies, Inc.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 22.45 *(a) A greenhouse in a mobile home park in British Columbia encloses the 12 solar tanks and marsh of a Solar Aquatics System, designed by Ecological Engineering Associates and ECO-TEK, Inc. (Photo by Charles Rusch.) (b) In the middle of an urban block in Denmark, a Living Machine is a good neighbor. (Photo © 1996 by Robert Peña.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 22.46 *In the mild climate of California's Sonoma Valley, the waste from the Sonoma Mountain Brewery (a) is treated by an outdoor Living Machine (b). Flow is from left tanks to right tanks, then to a marsh. (c) Calla lilies and other plants lend beauty as well as function to this open aerobic tank. (Designed by Living Technologies, Burlington, VT.)*

1. Closed aerobic reactors, each holding 2500 gal (9463 L). Air is blown through the tanks from the bottom (an adjacent small building encloses the blower); wastewater spends about 15 hours in these tanks. Next are—
2. Open aerobic tanks, four per stream. Plants, snails, and organisms can migrate among the agitated tanks, choosing their preferred level of nutrients ("pollution"). Water leaving the last of these tanks is much cleaner; water and sludge collected from the tanks are taken next to the—
3. Clarifier. Shaded by water hyacinth, algae cannot grow in the water at this advanced stage. In this quiet-water environment, solids settle out and are then pumped to an adjacent—
4. a. Open-air reed bed ("composter"), where they are dried and then composted. The compost will serve as nutrient for the hops used in the brewing process. Excess water percolates through an underlying sand bed and is returned to the beginning of the Living Machine streams. Meanwhile the clarified water passes next to—
   b. Ecological fluidized beds (two per stream), whose purpose is to further polish the wastewater. Water circulates many times through this section, pumped from the plant-shaded perimeter into a rock bed at the center. In this bed, microorganisms continue to clean the water. From the second ecological fluidized bed, water moves to an underground—
5. Irrigation pond, from where it is filtered through a—
6. Constructed wetland for further purification.

Finally, it is welcomed for irrigation of the hops and grapevines grown on site.

The IslandWood environmental education campus on Bainbridge Island, Washington, prominently features a Living Machine (Fig. 22.47) as a focal point near a major classroom. This location brings waste processing into the consciousness of those using the campus and reminds us that human wastes do not literally just disappear if piped off site. In this cool climate setting, the greenhouse provides a thermal environment to support the biological waste treatment processes that are the heart of a Living Machine.

(g) Pasveer Oxidation Stream

This method of sewage treatment (Figs. 22.48 and 22.49) has been adopted at the New York Institute of Technology. Serving the 450-acre (182-hectare) campus at Old Westbury, Long Island, New York, this system provides on-campus sewage treatment, which returns purified effluent to the ground through 48 leaching wells located under the athletic field. The groundwater, thus restored, provides a contributing source of water for 400-ft- (122-m)-deep wells, distantly located, that furnish part of the water supply for the campus buildings (see Fig. 22.48).

A few of the original small buildings, later converted to administration offices and classrooms, are still served by septic tanks and leaching fields. There was no public sewer near the campus, and in the 1970s the health authorities ruled out the use of septic tanks for the numerous additional buildings that were contemplated.

The oxidation stream process applied here was developed by the Netherlands Research Institute for Public Health Engineering and is now in operation in many U.S. locations as well as in Europe. It is considered to be a modified form of the *activated sludge* process (see later discussion of the Oceanside Plant in Section 22.8b), with aerobic digestion and periodic sludge removal.

The mechanical aerator (Fig. 22.49), which keeps the stream of sewage moving and provides the oxidation necessary for aerobic digestion, is an important feature. In this design, sludge-drying beds are placed on an island, surrounded by the continuously moving oxidation stream. Another feature of the system is its low profile (Fig. 22.50), readily screened by trees. The aerobic digestion process is not malodorous. Sound is produced by the splashing water-wheel action of the mechanical aerators; no air compressor is required (reducing noise generation).

The plant has a full-time accredited operator; there are also two assistants and one relief operator. This design provides for an eventual population of 4330, with a 340,000-gpd (1,287,010-L/day) flow. Sludge was removed from the drying beds twice in the first five years of operation.

22.8 LARGER-SCALE SEWAGE TREATMENT SYSTEMS

Two examples of community-wide sewage treatment are presented here—one for a small, water-scarce community near San Diego, California, and one for an oceanside urban neighborhood in San Francisco.

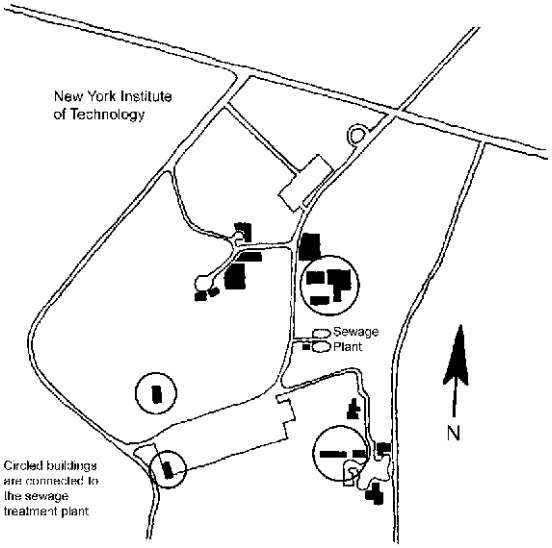


(*a*)

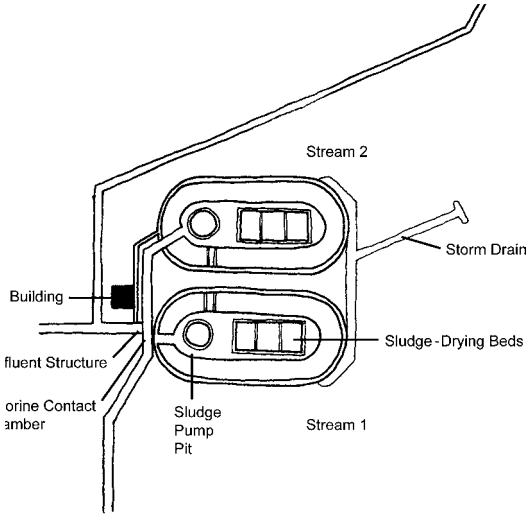


(*b*)

Fig. 22.47. *(a) Greenhouse enclosing a Living Machine on the IslandWood campus on Bainbridge Island, Washington. (b) Interior view of the IslandWood Living Machine, showing plant materials that are an integral aspect of this biological waste treatment approach.*



(a)



(b)

Fig. 22.48 *Sewage treatment plant, New York Institute of Technology (NYIT). (a) The treatment plant's location is central to all of the buildings it serves, an efficient choice. (b) Layout of the treatment plant. Because of the plant's odorless operation, its proximity to campus buildings poses no problem. (Courtesy of Bogen Jenal, Engineers, P.C. Redrawn by Amanda Clegg.)*



(a)



(b)

Fig. 22.49 *Details of NYIT treatment plant. (a) Rotor with a plastic "greenhouse" cover. (b) The rotor induces oxidation in this oval circulating stream. (A similar mechanism serves the high-rate pond in Fig. 22.43.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 22.50 *NYIT sewage treatment plant at completion. (a) The only projections above ground level are the office/laboratory and the plastic covers over the rotors. (b) The oxidation stream does not appear turbulent here, but it becomes so under the action of the mechanical aerator (rotor).*

(a) Padre Dam Municipal Water District

The Santee Water Reclamation Plant (Fig. 22.51) incorporates innovations in water conservation and recycling developed during the 1960s and 1970s. The Padre Dam Municipal Water District is a region where rainfall is less than 15 in. (380 mm) per year. It has no local water supplies, so water is imported 300 miles (480 km) from the Colorado River. If conventionally treated, the wastewater resulting from water usage would be discharged into the Pacific Ocean. Alternative sewage treatment (shown here) processes this fluid waste for secondary uses such as irrigation and recharging of groundwater. Many municipal potable water supplies are taken from rivers often heavily polluted with sewage. After treatment, water from such sources is pumped into domestic water supply mains. Therefore, district officials here decided to install a system that would make use of purified wastewater for many secondary uses.

However, would such a concept be acceptable to the public? An effective public relations program concurrent with the incorporated technological advances has proved successful.

The project involved building a sewage treatment plant and utilizing seven pits left over from prior surface mining of sand and gravel. After partial purification of the sewage at the plant through the first two stages of a conventional activated sludge process, the effluent is discharged to form the lakes adjacent to the plant. This provides tertiary (oxidation) treatment, after which the cleaner effluent is pumped to a filter area at the north end of the complex, where it is further purified by flow through sand and gravel. Chlorination is performed, and the water then flows through a series of seven lakes, Nos. 7–6–5–4–3–2–1, in that order.

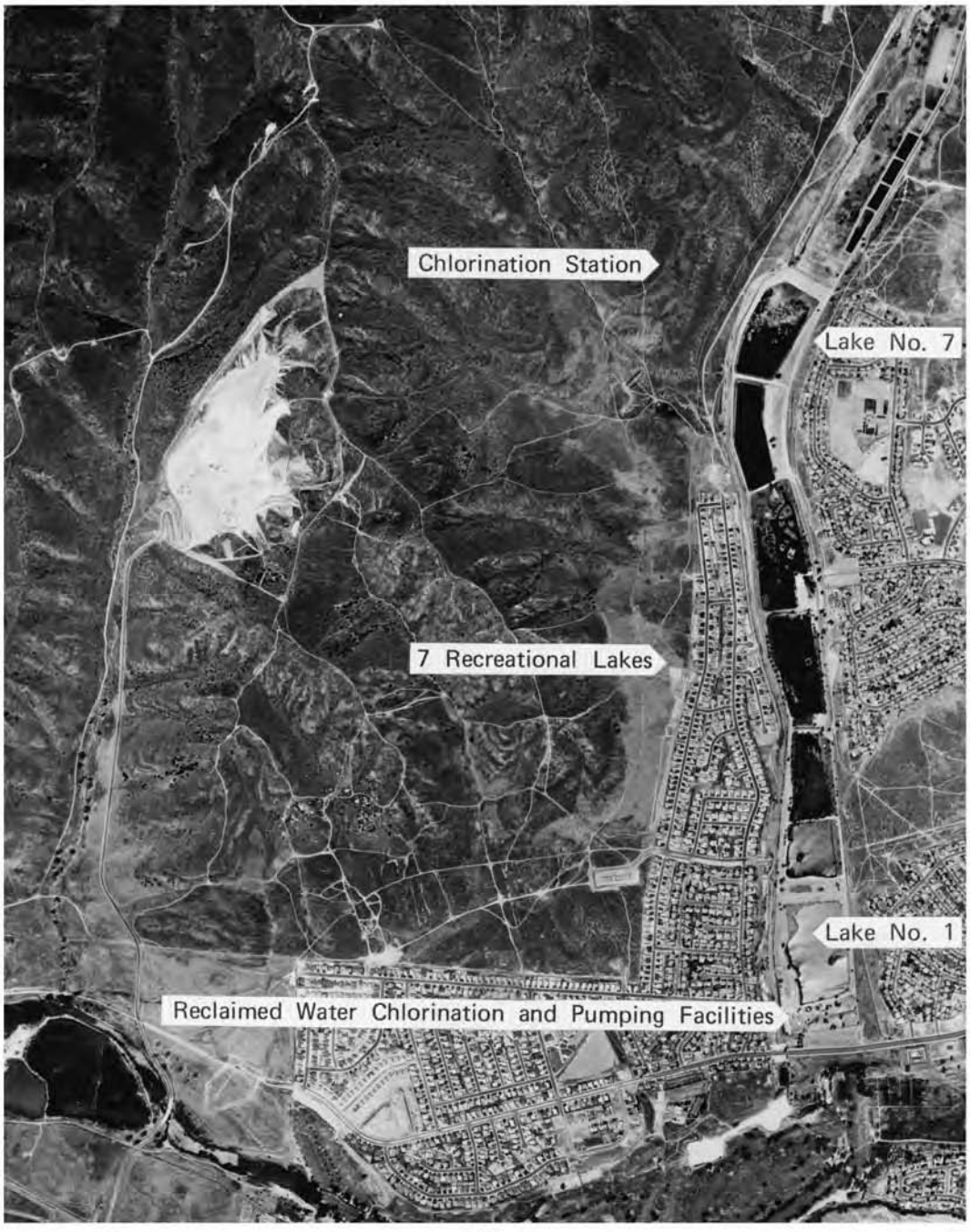
The appearance of new lakes in this semiarid region created initial interest that was rapidly augmented by a very clever program. At first, the lakes were fenced in. Then the fences were removed. Next, the seven lakes were made available for boating. They were stocked with fish, and careful studies were made that indicated that the fish were healthy and flourishing. Fishing was permitted, but for a while, all fish had to be returned to the water. Anglers were later permitted to keep and consume the fish. Finally, swimming was permitted. The overflow from the last lake, No. 1, discharges into Sycamore Canyon Creek and is used for irrigation of a golf course and the recharging of groundwater.

(b) Oceanside Water Pollution Control Plant

Imagine the challenge of locating a major new sewage treatment plant on the shore of the Pacific Ocean, within the city of San Francisco, immediately adjacent to both the city zoo and a well-established neighborhood. This plant treats all the sewage in the western San Francisco watershed, an average dry-weather flow of 21 million gal/day (79,491,720 L/day). The treated effluent is discharged through an ocean-bottom pipeline, 4.5 miles (7.2 km) offshore, with effluent and ocean water quality monitored by an on-site laboratory. Sludge is shipped north to serve as the required daily cover for a landfill near Novato. The plant itself is concealed by large earth berms, through which entry and exit tunnels carry plant traffic. And the odor? It is completely contained within a huge underground complex of wastewater basins and channels, over which the zoo has proposed to build its new Mammal Conservation Center on 5 ft (1.5 m) of topsoil cover. Exhaust air from the underground plant is filtered through activated carbon and potassium permanganate before release.

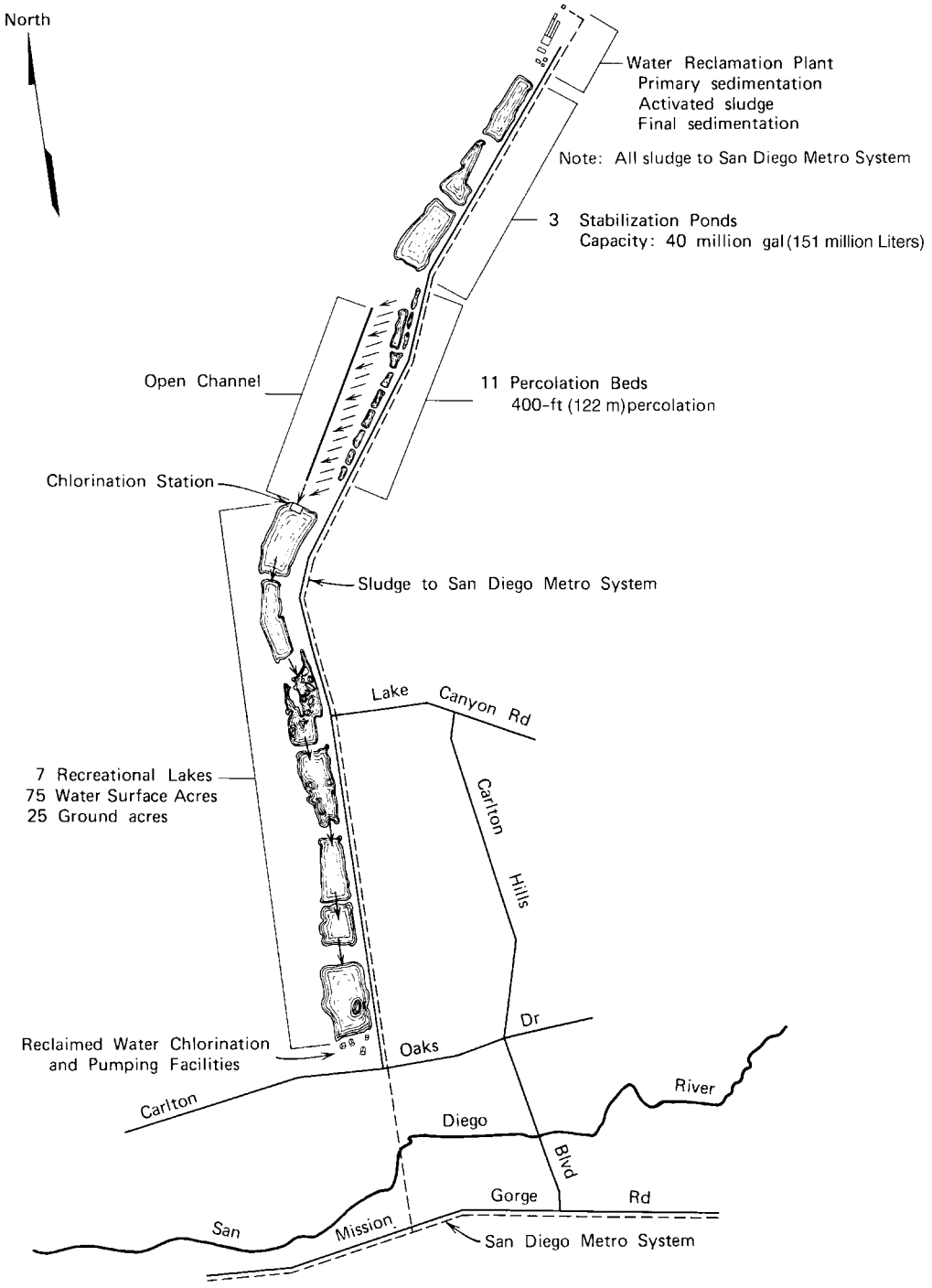
The process is shown in simplified form in Fig. 22.52*a*. Incoming sewage passes through a bar screen and grit chambers, which remove the largest objects as well as grit, sand, and gravel (these are trucked to a landfill). Then the water flows to the primary clarifier, in which floating scum is skimmed off, and sludge settling on the bottom is pumped to the egg-shaped anaerobic digesters (Fig. 22.52*b*). The wastewater flows next to aeration tanks where bacteria grow fat, feeding on and breaking down the remaining dissolved and suspended solids. Next is the secondary clarifier, where the fattened bacteria (activated sludge) sink to the bottom. Part of this activated sludge is returned to the aeration tanks to bolster the bacterial culture there. The remainder is thickened and pumped to the digesters.

Thus, the anaerobic digesters receive both primary sludge and thickened, activated sludge. As this sludge is stabilized and reduced in volume,



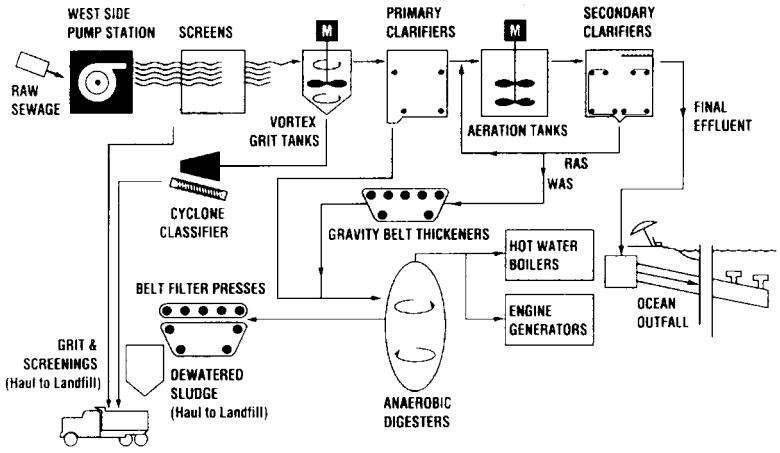
(*a*)

Fig. 22.51 *Santee Water Reclamation Plant and Santee Park and Recreational Facilities, Padre Dam Municipal Water District, California. (a) Aerial photograph of the Santee Plant, including the seven recreational lakes. Note the location of the San Diego River at the bottom of the photograph. The water reclamation plant and the stabilization ponds do not appear in this aerial view. (b) Raw sewage from the community of Santee enters the treatment plant, which is located at the top of this diagram. The process then proceeds south to the point where reclaimed water is pumped to irrigation or recharges groundwater. Sludge is pumped to the San Diego Metro system. The plant is not burdened by storm water, which is recharged to the ground locally in the community.*



(*b*)

Fig. 22.51 *(continued)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 22.52 *The Oceanside Water Pollution Control Plant, San Francisco, is largely underground, as well as hidden behind high earth berms. (a) Flow diagram. (Courtesy CH2M Hill and the City/County of San Francisco.) (b) View of some of the egg-shaped anaerobic digesters from within the berm walls. Biogas produced within the four 750,000-gal (28,375-m^3) digesters supplies about 20% of the electricity used in the treatment plant.*

biogas is produced: enough to heat water for both process and facility heating and to generate about one-fifth of the electricity used within the plant. Sludge leaving the digesters is dewatered in belt presses, then hauled to the landfill. During summer, biosolids are spread on agricultural land for soil enrichment.

Questions remain about such use of biosolids. Although a 1998 EPA national survey of sewage sludge found toxic chemicals at such low levels that regulation was deemed unnecessary, concentrations of certain industries may produce local chemical or radioactive sludge pollutants at higher levels. Intercepting such wastes at their source, rather than allowing them into the sewage stream, seems an obvious imperative.

22.9 RECYCLING AND GRAYWATER

These chapters on water and waste have illustrated four common "grades" of water in buildings:

Potable water (usually treated, suitable for drinking)

Rainwater

Graywater (wastewater not from toilets or urinals)

Blackwater (water containing toilet or urinal waste)

Two more categories are:

Dark graywater (from washing machines with dirty diaper loads, kitchen sinks, and dishwashers; usually prohibited for reuse)

Clearwater (backwash water from reverse osmosis water treatment; condensation from a cooling coil)

After considering the many blackwater sewage treatment complications described in the previous section, it might be expected that graywater reuse would, by contrast, be a simple matter. However, there are lingering prejudices against wastewater of any kind that complicate water recycling, if not prohibit it outright. This section presents some future approaches that may be more actively implemented if water conservation is to be taken seriously, followed by some code-mandated approaches.

Rainwater, given an adequate supply, could meet the need for many uses of water in and around a building: bathing and laundry, toilet flushing, irrigation, and evaporative cooling, for example. Little or no treatment of rainwater is needed for such uses.

Blackwater requires much more extensive treatment, given its high concentration of human waste. However, this may be the easiest waste stream to eliminate, given the several waterless alternatives discussed in Section 22.1.

Graywater (also spelled *greywater*) reuse opportunities are more limited than those of rainwater, because graywater carries increased threats from pathogens. It must undergo treatment before reuse in toilet flushing. It is likely to contain soap, hair, and, occasionally, human waste (from soiled clothes in the laundry). If it is to be used in drip irrigation systems, filtering is essential. If kitchen wastes are included, grease and food solids add to the problems. Graywater may well be dirtier than rainwater, but its supply is likely far more predictable and constant. However, codes tend to limit the use of graywater to underground landscape irrigation for single-family houses.

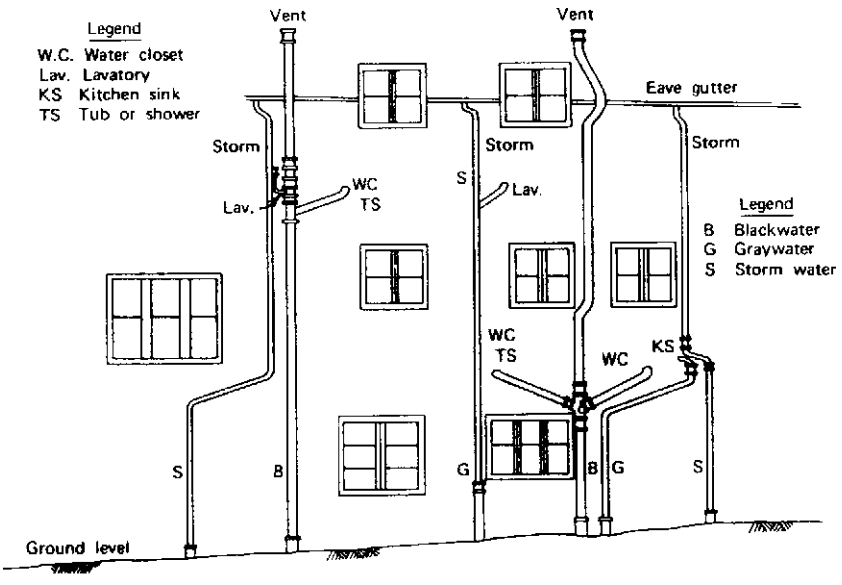
The collection of these separate types of water poses a problem. In the early years of indoor plumbing, rainwater, graywater, and blackwater were mixed together, which severely overloaded sewage treatment facilities in rainy weather. Today, graywater and blackwater are typically mixed, with rainwater being kept separate. There are precedents for keeping all three separate, however (Fig. 22.53).

(a) Graywater and Future Recycling

Notwithstanding present code restrictions, the potential for residential graywater reuse (given separate waste collection systems) was shown earlier (Fig. 22.1*b*). The 21 g/cd (gallons per capita per day; [80 Lcd]) produced by bathing can meet much of the 32 g/cd (120 Lcd) water consumption of a conventional water closet and all of the water needs of a low-flush water closet. The 14 g/cd (53 Lcd) produced by doing laundry can help with irrigation; limiting contact between irrigation water and people seems prudent, hence the previous emphasis on underground distribution. Table 22.12 relates both the quantity and quality of residential graywater to its use in irrigation. Another potential benefit of separate graywater collection is that the heat content of the water might be partially reclaimed (Table 22.13). In England, the Aquasaver Company



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 22.53 *Residence of the 27th Vicar of the Parish Church at Bibury (established A.D. 1086) in the English Cotswolds. (a) Clearly, the plumbing was added after the construction of the residence—perhaps several hundred years later. In England the drainage system for an older building often appears on the outside of the building. (b) It seemed inappropriate to ask the vicar's permission to inspect his indoor facilities, so probable uses have been assigned. Note that (1) offsets of the vertical piping are made with "easy bends" and are pitched down in the direction of the flow; (2) vents are located at high outdoor points; and (3) stacks carrying blackwater (from toilets) are of larger pipe size than those carrying graywater. In this sparsely settled region of the Cotswolds, the dispersal of storm water to the ground and the private septic tank treatment of blackwater plus graywater can be satisfactory. (Photo by William McGuinness.)*

TABLE 22.12 Residential Graywater Sources for Irrigation

PART A. SOURCES WITH PUMPS		
Source	**Average Outflow Water Quantity**	**Outflow Water Relative Quality**
Clothes washing machine	30–50 gal (114–190 L) per load, top loader, 10 gal (38 L) per load, front loader. Average 1.5 loads per week per adult, 2.5 loads per week per child	Good: medium concentration of soaps, lint. With biocompatible cleaners, quality can improve to excellent; diapers degrade quality to poor.
Automatic dishwasher	5–10 gal (19–38 L) per load	Poor: low to high quantity of solids depending on degree of pre-rinsing; high salt and pH from conventional cleaning compounds
PART B. GRAVITY FLOW SOURCES		
Source	**Outflow Water Quantity**	**Outflow Water Quality**
Shower	20 gal (76 L) per day per person, low-flow 40 gal (151 L) per day per person, high-flow	Excellent: minimal concentration of soap and shampoo, but hair can clog distribution pumps and lines
Tub	40 gal (151 L) per bath	Concentration in tub water likely less than shower water
Bathroom lavatory	1–5 gal (4–19 L) per day per person	Good: concentration of soap, shaving cream, and toothpaste can be high
Kitchen sink	5–15 gal (19–57 L) per day per person	Mixed: high in nutrients but also high in solids, grease, and soap
Reverse-osmosis water purifier	3–5 gal per gallon of drinking water(3–5 L per L)	Excellent: usually no suspended solids; contains 25% more concentration of the same dissolved solids as tap water
Water softener backwash	5% of indoor water use	Very bad: extremely high in salt
Softened water	(All graywater from softened water source)	Poor: contains salt (unless potassium chloride is used in softening process)

Source: Adapted from *Create an Oasis with Greywater,* by Art Ludwig, © 1997, Art Ludwig. Poor Richard's Press, Santa Maria, CA.

diverts and cleans water from lavatories, baths, and showers for reuse in toilet flushing, clothes washing, car washing, and irrigation. This low-pressure system, installed behind panels in a bathroom, uses a pump to push graywater through a series of filters to remove soap, detergents, and other impurities and then to a storage tank (in the attic or above points of use). Here it undergoes weir and trickle filtration and then treatment with non-hazardous cleaning agents. Finally, before reuse, it passes through a carbon filter network.

Storage raises a health issue. To avoid bacteria buildup in graywater, storage should be avoided and the filtered water taken directly to irrigation. However, storage allows for controlled dosage, allows solids to settle, allows for some potential heat recovery, provides for overflow to the sewer, and is often mandated by code.

Various stages of treatment are appropriate for different kinds of graywater (Fig. 22.54). Kitchen sink waste contains grease, which should be trapped (and periodically removed) before it can

TABLE 22.13 Heat Recovery from Graywater

Source	Volume/Use, gal (L)	Flow Rate, gal (L)	°F	°C	Quality	Coincident[a]
Kitchen sink	Up to 5 (up to 20)	2.5 (10)/min	85	30	Poor	No
Lavatory	Up to 1.5 (up to 5)	1.25 (5)/min	85	30	Fair	No
Bath	32 (120)	5 (20)/min	100	37	Good	No
Shower	15 (50)	2 (7)/min	100	37	Good	Yes
Washer	40 (150)	7 (25)/min	60	15	Moot	No

Source: Glenn Nelson, "Graywater Heat Recovery," © *Solar Age*, August 1981. Reprinted by permission.

[a]Coincident flow of warm wastewater and input water to heater. If "no," a holding tank is needed for heat exchange. If "yes," a countercurrent heat exchanger can be built into the drain line (see Fig. 22.54).

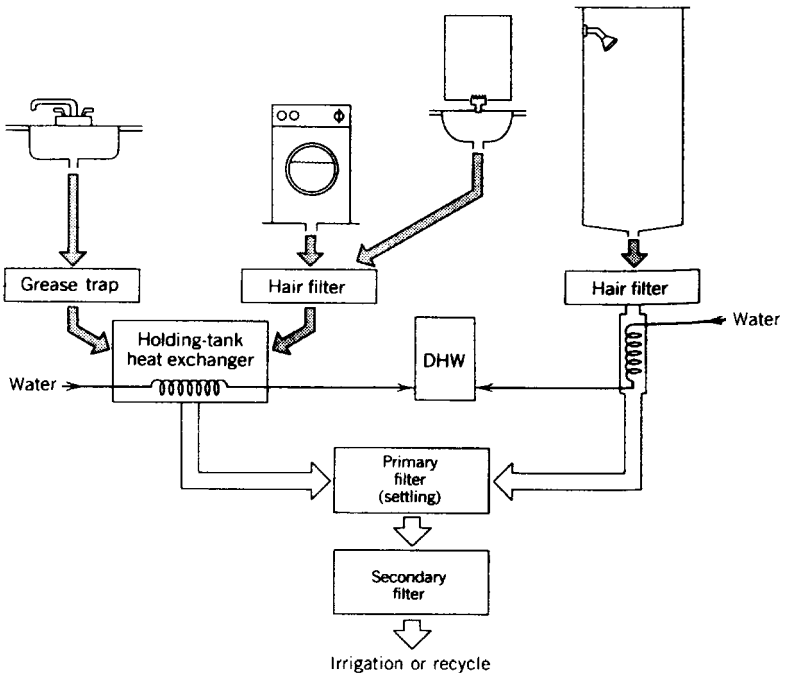


Fig. 22.54 *Sequence of water treatment and heat reclamation for domestic graywater, where such systems might be approved.*

clog the filters and heat exchangers in a graywater recycling system. Similarly, lavatory showers and laundry waste contain lint and hair that must be intercepted quickly. Devices that do so (called *interceptors*) were described in Fig. 22.21.

Currently, building codes tend to sharply limit graywater recycling, generally presume there will be no filtering, and rigidly constrict its use. It is hoped that such restrictions will loosen, with due regard for human health, as conservation of resources becomes more of an imperative than it already is.

(b) Subsurface Irrigation

The 1997 *Uniform Building Code* (Appendix G), notes that water *only from* bathroom lavatories, showers and tubs, and clothes-washing machines and laundry tubs, and *only in* single-family residences, can *only be used for* subsurface "irrigation" on the same site as the residence. The associated use of mandated trench constructions, as a means of avoiding any surface graywater distribution, may deliver very little water to plants.

Site conditions must meet the requirements of Table 22.14 and Fig. 22.55. The bottom of the trenches must be at least 5 feet (1.5 m) *above* the highest known seasonal groundwater. Flow estimates are as follows:

Number of occupants:

two for the first bedroom

one for each additional bedroom

Combined showers, bathtubs, and washbasins, flow per occupant: 25 gal/day (95 L/day)

Laundry, flow per occupant: 15 gal/day (57 L/day)

A holding tank is required with a minimum 50-gal (189-L) capacity. An unvalved overflow must connect to the building sewer (ahead of any septic tank).

The irrigation/disposal field must be divided into a minimum of three valved zones (allowing the occupants to better direct flow rates). The total area of this field is the aggregate length of the perforated pipe times the width of the proposed field. The required area is based on the estimated graywater flow (or size of the holding tank,

TABLE 22.14 Location of Residential Graywater System

From	Minimum Clear Horizontal Distance Required			
	To Holding Tank		To Irrigation/Disposal Field[a]	
	ft	m	ft	m
Building structures[b]	5[c]	1.524	2[d]	0.61
Property line adjoining private property	5	1.524	5	1.524
Water supply wells[e]	50	15.24	100	30.48
Streams and lakes[e]	50	15.24	50[f]	15.24
Sewage pits or cesspools	5	1.524	5	1.524
Disposal field and 100% expansion area	5	1.524	4[g]	1.219
Septic tank	0	0	5	1.524
On-site domestic water service line	5	1.524	5	1.524
Pressurized public water main	10	3.048	10[g]	3.048

Source: Reprinted by permission from the 1997 *Uniform Plumbing Code.* © by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.

Note: SI units converted from mm to m by authors of this book.

[a]When irrigation/disposal fields are installed in sloping ground, the minimum horizontal distance between any part of the distribution system and the ground surface shall be fifteen (15) feet (4.6 m).

[b]Including porches and steps, whether covered or uncovered, breezeways, roofed porte-cocheres, roofed patios, carports, covered walks, covered driveways, and similar structures or appurtenances.

[c]The distance may be reduced to zero feet [meters] for above ground tanks when first approved by the Administrative Authority.

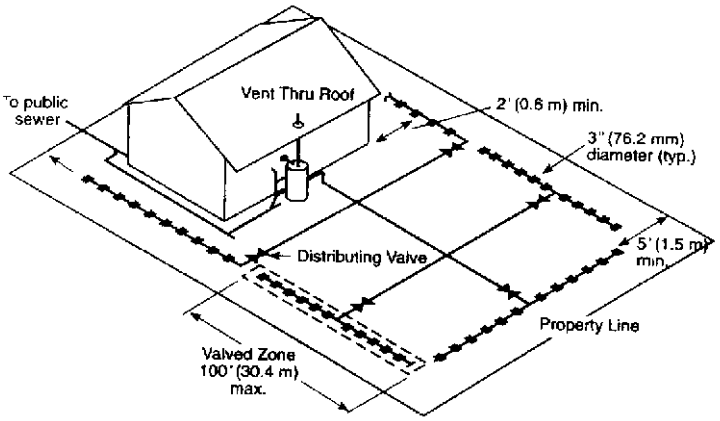
[d]Assumes a 45° (0.79 rad) angle from the foundation.

[e]Where special hazards are involved, the distance required shall be increased as may be directed by the Administrative Authority.

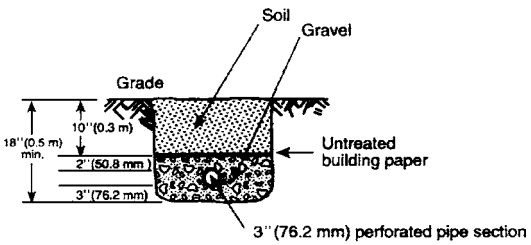
[f]These minimum clear horizontal distances shall also apply between the irrigation/disposal field and the ocean mean higher tide line.

[g]Plus two (2) feet (610 mm) for each additional foot of depth in excess of one (1) foot (305 mm) below the bottom of the drain line.

[h]For parallel construction. For crossings, approval by the Administrative Authority shall be required.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 22.55 *Example of a residence whose daily graywater flow requires an irrigation/disposal field (a) using a valved zone as shown in the detail (b). In this example, five such valved zones are shown (a minimum of three such zones are required). (Reprinted by permission from the 1997* Uniform Plumbing Code. *© by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.)*

whichever is larger), based upon the soil types and acceptance rates, as well as the trench design guidelines, shown in Table 22.15. If percolation tests are performed, the 24-hour percolation rate results must be within these limits:

Minimum, 0.83 gal/ft^2 (33.8 L/m^2)
Maximum, 5.12 gal/ft^2 (208.5 L/m^2)

One of several graywater system types from Appendix G of the 1997 *Uniform Plumbing Code*, is shown in Fig. 22.56.

EXAMPLE 22.4 A four-bedroom single-family residence is located on sandy clay soil more than 5 ft (1.5 m) above the highest seasonal groundwater level. If the bathroom and laundry facilities contribute to a graywater system, how large an irrigation/disposal field is required?

SOLUTION

The total number of occupants = 2 + 1 + 1 + 1 = 5. Estimated graywater flow is

(25 + 15) gal/day per occupant × 5 occupants
= 200 gal/day

[(95 + 57) L/day per occupant × 5 occupants
= 760 L/day]

Required field size (Table 22.15) of each valved zone is

60 ft^2/100 gal × 200 gal/day = 120 ft^2

(1.5 m^2/100 L × 760 L/day = 11.4 m^2)

If each valved zone has two lines at the minimum spacing of 4 ft (1.2 m), the minimum width of the irrigation/disposal field is 4 ft (1.2 m); the minimum length of the two perforated lines is therefore

120 ft^2/4 ft = 30 ft

(11.4 m^2/1.2 m = 9.5 m)

Thus, three irrigation/disposal fields, each 4 ft by 30 ft (1.2 by 9.5 m), in trenches constructed as shown in Fig. 22.55, will meet code minimums. ■

22.10 STORM WATER TREATMENT

Until relatively recently, storm water runoff from buildings and paved surfaces was considered harmless and was conducted without treatment, and as rapidly as possible, to receiving streams, rivers,

TABLE 22.15 Graywater Design Criteria, Six Typical Soils

PART A. AREA OF IRRIGATION/LEACHING FIELD				
	Minimum Area of Irrigation/Leaching per Estimated Graywater Discharge per Day		***Maximum Absorption Capacity of Irrigation/Leaching per 24-Hour Period***	
Type of Soil	**ft^2/100 gal**	**m^2/L**	**gal/ft^2**	**L/m^2**
Coarse sand or gravel	20	0.005	5	203.7
Fine sand	25	0.006	4	162.9
Sandy loam	40	0.010	2.5	101.8
Sandy clay	60	0.015	1.7	69.2
Clay with considerable sand or gravel	90	0.022	1.1	44.8
Clay with small amounts of sand or gravel	120	0.030	0.8	32.6

PART B. IRRIGATION/LEACHING FIELD CONSTRUCTION				
	Minimum		***Maximum***	
	I-P	**SI**	**I-P**	**SI**
Number of valved zones	3	3		
Number of lines per valved zone	1	1		
Length of each perforated line			100 ft	30,840 mm
Bottom width of trench	12 in.	305 mm	18 in.	457 mm
Spacing of lines, center-to-center	4 ft	1219 mm		
Depth of earth cover of lines	10 in.	254 mm		
Depth of filter material cover of lines	2 in.	51 mm		
Depth of filter material beneath lines	3 in.	76 mm		
Grade of perforated lines	3 in./100 ft	2 mm/m		

Source: Adapted by permission from the 1997 *Uniform Plumbing Code*. © by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.

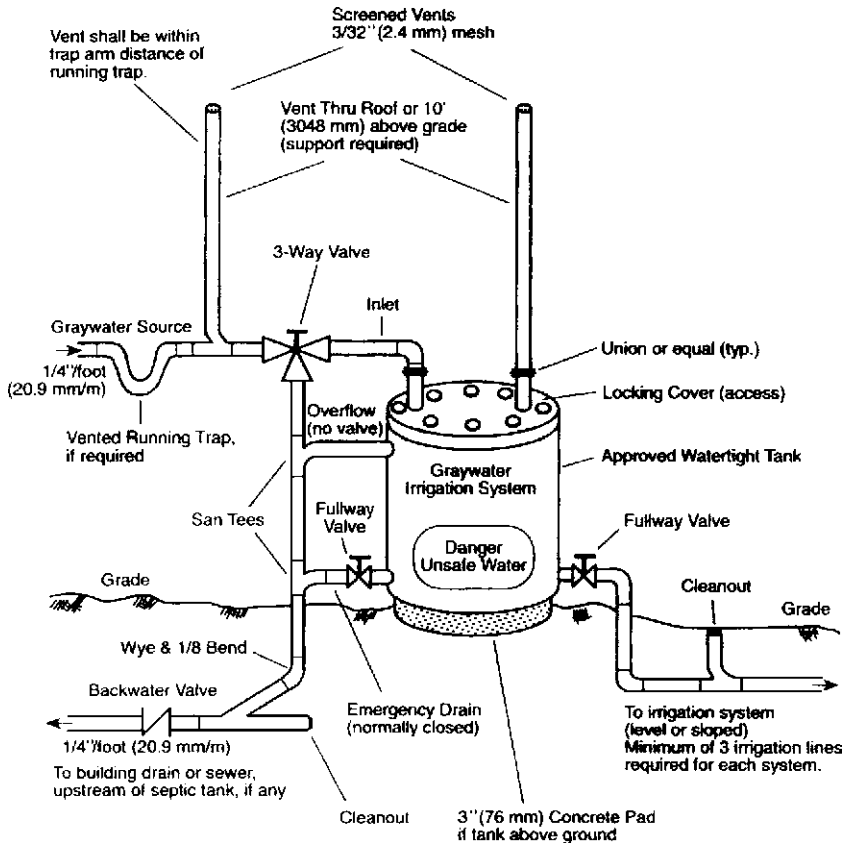
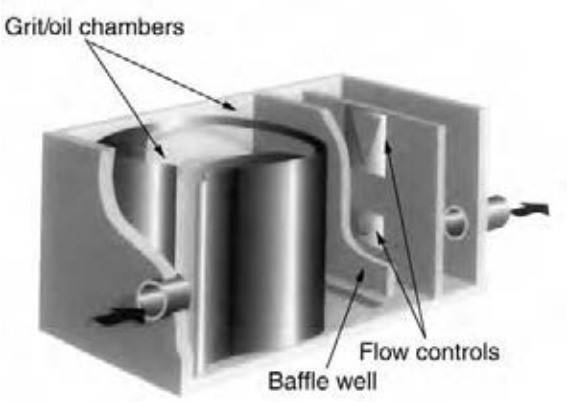


Fig. 22.56 *Schematic diagram of a graywater system with an aboveground, gravity-emptied tank. (Reprinted by permission from the 1997* Uniform Plumbing Code. *© by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Walnut, CA.)*

and lakes. However, almost three-quarters of the U.S. population lives on only about 7% of the land. And as our urban watersheds become more and more paved and/or roofed, two problems develop. First, a heavy rain greatly increases peaks in stream flows (because less rain is retained for later, slower release by the action of unpaved surfaces); this accentuated peak-valley pattern of flows makes life more difficult for aquatic flora and fauna. Second, pollutants (especially those accumulated on roadways) are washed into streams; oil, gasoline, antifreeze, fragments of brake linings and tires, and so on are especially unwelcome deposits. Some design strategies to minimize these impacts, such as roof retention, porous pavement, and on-site groundwater recharging, were discussed in Section 20.6.

With minimal changes in street design, storm water receptacles can be constructed not only to provide access for maintenance, but also to screen out sediment, capture oil and other floating contaminants, and provide a more even outflow (Fig. 22.57). But much more can be done.

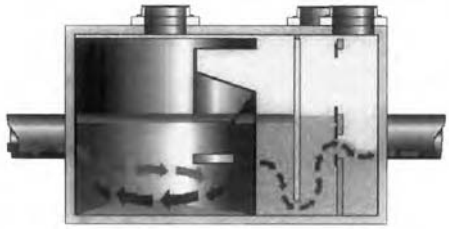
Phytoremediation is the science of cleaning polluted soil and water with plants. (The constructed wetlands and algal ponds described in Sections 22.7 and 22.8 apply phytoremediation to sewage treatment.) Phytoremediation extracts, degrades, or contains contaminants. Plants that *extract* take up and accumulate contaminants in their shoots and leaves; when the vegetation is removed from the site, so is the contaminant. Plants that *degrade* break down contaminants (such as hydrocarbons and other organic compounds) until they are no longer toxic. Some plants degrade toxins in their root zone, whereas others use elements of organic toxins as food. Plants that *contain* essentially immobilize toxins in long-term storage. However, when the plants die and decompose, long-lived toxins may be released.



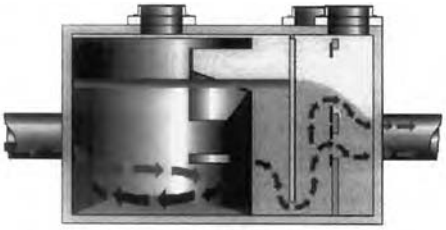
(a)



(b)



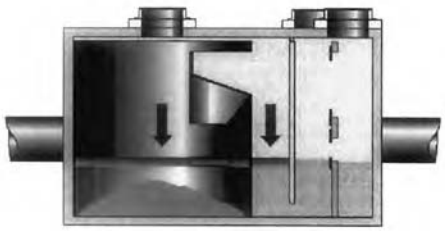
(c)



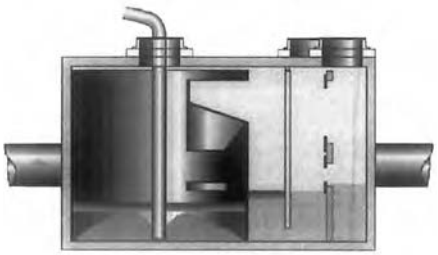
(d)



(e)



(f)



(g)

Fig. 22.57 *This Vortechs™ Stormwater Treatment System (a) is designed to separate both floating oily contaminants and sediment from storm water. (b) Rather like a septic tank, two chambers are separated by a baffle. Oil scum and sediment remain in the first chamber. (c) In a moderate storm, water rises above the top of the inlet pipe, greatly reducing velocity and turbulence within the first chamber, encouraging sediment to precipitate to the bottom. (d) As flow increases, rising above the low-flow control (second chamber), oily contaminants accumulated from previous storms float upwards, and more sediment falls out. (e) At the height of storm water flow, usually designed for a 10-year storm, the high-level outlet begins to discharge. Sometimes a peak flow bypass is used. Oily scum and sediment continue to be trapped in the manhole. (f) As the flow subsides, water outflow is controlled, lessening the strain on the storm drainage system. (g) Cleanout, at the lowest water levels, is best done by a vacuum truck. As the grit chamber empties, oily liquids and floating debris drain back toward the inlet and can be removed along with the sediment. Note that the bottom of the baffle between the chambers always remains submerged. (Courtesy of Vortechnics Incorporated, Portland, ME.)*

For treating storm water, plants are typically incorporated in drainage strips between paved parking areas. The mix of plants is similar to those cited earlier in wetland construction, with sedges and rushes especially effective at cleansing (see Fig. 22.2 for a sample trench). Shade trees could add welcome summer thermal benefits, as well as intercepting and storing some pollutants. The capacity of the planting strip should be sufficient to intercept the "first flush" of rain, which carries the heaviest load of pollutants. Underground drains intercept excess runoff and lead to a capture chamber where floatable contaminants can be periodically removed. The screened, regulated flow from the capture basin will be much gentler on the receiving stream.

A new community in Bellevue, Washington, incorporated a storm water treatment facility in a 20-acre (8.1-hectare) public park. Beneath tennis courts, ballparks, picnic areas, and other playing fields, a 300,000-ft^3 (8495-m^3) sediment vault (surface area about 8 acres [3.2 hectares]) slows the flow of storm water, encouraging sediment to drop out. The water then passes to a filter basin of vegetation, sand, and peat for the primary purpose of phosphorus removal. From there it is slowly released to the receiving stream, which then drains into a lake.

Building designers rarely encounter such community-wide pollution control strategies, but parking lots and on-site roadways are encountered on virtually every project. Design for local pollution control, even for seemingly benign storm water, is part of the architect's responsibilities.

References and Resources

Composting Toilet World: http://www.compostingtoilet.org/

Converse, J., et al. 1978. *Design and Construction Manual for Mounds.* Small Scale Waste Management Project, University of Wisconsin Extension. Madison, WI.

EPA. 1993. *Subsurface Flow Constructed Wetlands for Wastewater Treatment.* EPA 832-R-93-008. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water. Washington, DC.

Green, F. B., L. Bernstone, T. J. Lundquist, J. Muir, R. B. Tresan, and W. J. Oswald. 1995a. "Methane Fermentation, Submerged Gas Collection, and the Fate of Carbon in Advanced Integrated Wastewater Pond Systems," in *Water Science and Technology*, Vol. 31, No. 12.

Green, F. B., T. J. Lundquist, and W. J. Oswald. 1995b. "Energetics of Advanced Integrated Wastewater Pond Systems," in *Water Science and Technology*, Vol. 31, No. 12.

Green, F. B., L. Bernstone, T. J. Lundquist, and W. J. Oswald. 1996. "Advanced Integrated Wastewater Pond Systems for Nitrogen Removal," in *Water Science and Technology*, Vol. 33, No. 7.

IAPMO. 1997. *Uniform Plumbing Code.* International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials. Walnut, CA.

ICC. 1997. *International Plumbing Code.* International Code Council. Falls Church, VA.

Ludwig, A. 1997. *Create an Oasis with Greywater.* Poor Richard's Press. Santa Maria, CA.

Milne, M. 1976. *Residential Water Conservation.* U.S. Office of Water Research and Technology, Department of Commerce, NTIS. Springfield, VA.

National Small Flows Clearinghouse. 1997. "Lagoon Systems Can Provide Low-Cost Wastewater Treatment," in *Pipeline,* Vol. 8, No. 2. National Small Flows Clearinghouse. Morgantown, WV.

Nelson, G. 1981. "Graywater Heat Recovery," in *Solar Age*, August.

Oswald, W. J., C. G. Golueke, R. C. Cooper, H. K. Gee, and J. C. Bronson. 1963. "Water Reclamation, Algal Production and Methane Fermentation in Waste Ponds," in *International Journal of Air and Water Pollution*, Vol. 7.

Oswald, W. J., A. Meron, and M. D. Zabat. 1970. "Designing Waste Ponds to Meet Water Quality Criteria," in *Proceedings of the Second International Symposium on Waste Treatment Lagoons*, Kansas City, MO.

Oswald, W. J. 1990. "Advanced Integrated Wastewater Pond Systems," in *Supplying Water and Saving the Environment for Six Billion People: Proceedings of the 1990 American Society of Civil Engineers Convention,* Environmental Engineering Division, November 5–8, San Francisco.

Oswald, W. J., F. B. Green, and T. J. Lundquist. 1994. "Performance of Methane Fermentation Pits in Advanced Integrated Wastewater Pond Systems," in *Water Science and Technology*, Vol. 30, No. 12.

CHAPTER 23

Solid Waste

FOR SOME DESIGNERS, THE LAST BUILDING distribution system considered is the one involving the bulkiest items: the flow of supplies in and solid waste out. Because this system usually is not seen as consuming building energy or requiring specialized equipment, it ordinarily becomes a low-priority system in the design process. Yet provisions for delivery of supplies, and especially for the collection and storage of solid wastes, can be more space-consuming than water/waste systems, can present a fire danger, and can create serious local environmental problems. The separation of solid waste for resource recovery involves significant energy and environmental consequences. Finally, mechanical equipment associated with solid waste is now commonly part of waste management systems.

23.1 WASTE AND RESOURCES

Since the late 1940s, there has been a marked increase in the amount of packaging material used for consumer products. Where shoppers once refilled reusable containers for bulk supplies at the market, for example, they now buy food in bags or cans that are discarded after use. This trend has increased space demands in the store, where shelves of cans are required instead of a bin of bulk products, as well as in the home, where such packaging soon turns into waste and must be stored until garbage collection day. Energy is required to make the boxes, bags, cans, and other containers; transport them; and collect them as trash. Devices such as trash compactors add both space and energy requirements to the use/disposal process. Landfills for garbage disposal are filling rapidly as solid waste flows increase. Methane and leachate from these landfills are potential environmental problems.

There may not be much that building designers can do about these increased packaging trends. But the solid wastes from buildings contain important resources (Tables 23.1 and 23.2), and a designer can help society to recover those resources rather than burying them in landfills or dumping them in the ocean. Furthermore, buildings themselves can be designed for construction materials recovery upon remodeling or demolition, as was discussed in Sections 2.4 and 2.5.

The resources within solid waste can be divided into the high-grade resources represented by recyclable materials and the low-grade resources of heat and by-products obtainable from the burning or decomposing of combustible solid wastes.

(a) High-Grade Resources

These include metals such as aluminum and steel, paper and paperboard, wood, and some plastics. For building designers, these pose the problem of storage while awaiting collection. For many of these materials, reuse in their present form is desirable, which eliminates compaction as a storage strategy. Table 23.1 compares uncompacted and compacted volumes of various recyclable materials.

TABLE 23.1 Typical Recyclable Materials from Building Operations

Category	Product	Recycling Label	Material Description	*Conversion, Volume to Weight* I-P Units	SI Units
Paper	Ledger paper, white letterhead	SWL	Sorted white ledger, high-grade white paper	Uncompacted: 1 yd^3 = 500 lb Compacted: 1 yd^3 = 750 lb	Uncompacted: 1 m^3 = 297 kg Compacted: 1 m^3 = 445 kg
	Computer paper	CPO	Computer printout	Uncompacted: 1 yd^3 = 500–600 lb Compacted: 1 yd^3 = 1000–1200 lb	Uncompacted: 1 m^3 = 297–356 kg Compacted: 1 m^3 = 593–712 kg
	Colored paper	SCL	Sorted color ledger	Uncompacted: 1 yd^3 = 500 lb Compacted: 1 yd^3 = 750 lb	Uncompacted: 1 m^3 = 297 kg Compacted: 1 m^3 = 445 kg
	Newspaper	Mix	Newsprint	Uncompacted: 1 yd^3 = 350–500 lb Compacted: 1 yd^3 = 750–1000 lb	Uncompacted: 1 m^3 = 208–297 kg Compacted: 1 m^3 = 445–593 kg
	Magazines	Mix	Clay-coated paper	Not available	Not available
	Telephone books	Mix	Mixed papers-adhesives	1 book = 1–3 lb	1 book = 0.5–1.4 kg
	Cereal boxes	Mix	Coated paperboard	Not available	Not available
	Shipping boxes	OCC	Old corrugated cardboard	Uncompacted: 1 yd^3 = 285 lb Compacted: 1 yd^3 = 500 lb	Uncompacted: 1 m^3 = 169 kg Compacted: 1 m^3 = 297 kg
Glass	Food jars, beverage bottles	1 2 3	Amber glass Green glass Clear glass	Loose, whole: 1 yd^3 = 600 lb Manually crushed: 1 yd^3 = 1000 lb Mechanically crushed: 1 yd^3 = 1800 lb	Loose, whole: 1 m^3 = 356 kg Manually crushed: 1 m^3 = 593 kg Mechanically crushed: 1 m^3 = 1068 kg
Plastic	Beverage containers	PET	Polyethylene terephthalate	Whole: 1 yd^3 = 30 lb	Whole: 1 m^3 = 18 kg
	Milk containers	HDPE	High-density polyethylene	Whole: 1 yd^3 = 25 lb Crushed: 1 yd^3 = 50 lb Compacted: 1 yd^3 = 600 lb	Whole: 1 m^3 = 15 kg Crushed: 1 m^3 = 30 kg Compacted: 1 m^3 = 356 kg
	"Clamshell" containers	—	Polystyrene plastic foam	Not available	Not available
	Film plastic	LDPE	Low-density polyethylene	Not available	Not available
Metals	Beverage cans		Aluminum/bimetal	Whole: 1 yd^3 = 50–70 lb Crushed: 1 yd^3 = 300–450 lb	Whole: 1 m^3 = 30–42 kg Crushed: 1 m^3 = 178–267 kg
	Food and beverage cans		Steel with tin finish	Whole: 1 yd^3 = 125–150 lb Crushed: 1 yd^3 = 500–850 lb	Whole: 1 m^3 = 74–89 kg Crushed: 1 m^3 = 297–504 kg
Miscellaneous	Pallets		Wood	Not available	Not available
	Food waste and liquids		Organic solids	55-gal drum = 415 lb	(208 L drum = 188 kg)
	Yard waste		Organic solids	Leaves, uncompacted: 1 yd^3 = 250 lb Leaves, compacted: 1 yd^3 = 450 lb Wood chips: 1 yd^3 = 500 lb Grass clippings: 1 yd^3 = 400 lb	Leaves, uncompacted: 1 m^3 = 148 kg Leaves, compacted: 1 m^3 = 267 kg Wood chips: 1 m^3 = 297 kg Grass clippings: 1 m^3 = 237 kg
	Used motor oil		Petroleum product	1 gallon = 71 lb	1 L = 8.5 kg 1 passenger car = 9 kg
	Tires		Rubber	1 passenger car = 20 lb 1 truck = 90 lb	1 truck = 41 kg

Source: Reprinted by permission from AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper, *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed., © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons.

TABLE 23.2 Solid Waste Sources in Building Operation

		Types of Waste Generated	*Quantities of Waste Generated*	
Classification	**Occupancy**	**(percent, where available)**	**I-P Units**	**SI Units**
Residential	Studio or 1-bedroom apartment	Newspaper (38/43)[a] Plastic (18/7)[a] Miscellaneous (13/18)[a]	1–1.5 yd^3/unit/month (200–250 lb) or 2.5 lb/person/day	0.8–1.1 m^3/unit/month (91–113 kg) or 1.1 kg/person/day
	2- or 3-bedroom apt. or single-family house	Metals (14/9)[a] Compost (10/15)[a] Glass (2/8)[a]	1.5–2 yd^3/unit/month (250–400 lb) or 2.5 lb/person/day	1.1–1.5 m^3/unit/month (113–181 kg) or 1.1 kg/person/day
Commercial	Office	Plastics, compost, used oil, metals, and glass (30)[b] High-grade paper (29)[b] Mixed papers (23)[b] Newspaper (10)[b] Corrugated cardboard (8)[b]	1.5 lb/employee/day or 1 yd^3/10,000 ft^2/day (includes 0.5 lb of high-grade paper/employee/day)	0.7 kg/employee/day, or 0.8 m^3/1,000 m^2/day (includes 0.2 kg of high-grade paper/employee/day)
	Department store Wholesale/retail Shopping center	Corrugated cardboard, compost, wood pallets, high-grade paper, and plastic film	1 yd^3/2500 ft^2/day 70 lb/$1000 sales/day 2.5 lb/100 ft^2/day	0.8 m^3/250 m^2/day 32 kg/$1000 sales/day 1.1 kg/100 ft^2/day
	Supermarkets	Corrugated cardboard, compost, and wood pallets	1 yd^3/2500 ft^2/day	0.8 m^3/250 m^2/day
	Restaurants/entertainment	Compost (38)[b] Corrugated cardboard (11)[b] Newsprint (5)[b] High-grade paper (4)[b]	Cafeteria, 1 lb/meal Fast food, 200 lb/$1000 sales Restaurant, 1.5 lb/meal	Cafeteria, 0.45 kg/meal Fast food, 91 kg/$1000 sales Restaurant, 0.7 kg/meal
	Drug stores	Corrugated cardboard and high-grade paper	1 yd^3/2000 ft^2/day	0.8 m^3/200 m^2/day
	Banks, insurance companies	High-grade paper, mixed paper, and corrugated cardboard	0.75 lb high-grade paper/person/day (survey required)	0.34 kg high-grade paper/person/day (survey required)
Hotels and motels (not including restaurants)	High occupancy	Glass, aluminum, plastic, high-grade paper, newspaper, and corrugated cardboard	0.5 yd^3/room/week 3.2 lb/room/day	0.38 m^3/room/week 1.45 kg/room/day
	Average occupancy		0.17 yd^3/room/week 1.7 lb/room/day	0.13 m^3/room/week 0.8 kg/room/day
Institutional	Hospitals	Compost, high-grade paper, biomedical waste, corrugated cardboard, glass, and plastics	1 yd^3/5 occupied beds/day	0.8 m^3/5 occupied beds/day
	Nursing homes		1 yd^3/15 persons/day	0.8 m^3/15 persons/day
	Retirement homes		1 yd^3/20 persons/day	0.8 m^3/20 persons/day
Educational	Grade school High school Universities	High-grade paper, mixed paper, newspaper, corrugated cardboard, compost, plastic, glass, and metals	1 yd^3/8 rooms/day 1 yd^3/10 rooms/day (Survey required)	0.8 m^3/8 rooms/day 0.8 m^3/10 rooms/day (Survey required)

Source: Reprinted by permission from AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper, *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed., © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons.

[a]Percent by volume/percent by weight.

[b]Percent by volume.

Glass is especially suitable for recycling when it can be reused after simple washing, as in the case of beer and soft-drink bottles. Returnable (for deposit) bottles and cans have measurably decreased roadside litter in states that require such containers. Newspaper is so readily stored and recycled that in many communities, charitable groups or service organizations recover newspapers for profit. Recycled paperboard can easily save 50% of the energy that would be required to produce pulp from virgin material.

The recovery of aluminum saves 96% of the energy necessary to process it originally. Because the aluminum production process is dependent upon electricity, the recycling of aluminum is doubly attractive. Energy conservation in aluminum production had developed to the point that only 82% as much energy was needed to make a pound of aluminum in 1982 as in 1972. More than a third of that reduction was attributable to aluminum-recycling programs; the remainder came from improvements in the production process. As for

steel, recycling can produce a 52% energy savings compared to the use of virgin material.

Wood has become more valuable as fiber than as fuel. Wood chips and scraps that once were burned or buried are now recycled to become oriented strand board (OSB) used in structural insulated panels (SIPs), window frames, and many other aspects of building and furniture construction.

Plastics are more difficult to recycle. Regulations and consumer preferences discourage the use of recycled plastics in food-related items. The plastics from items such as soft-drink containers, margarine tubs and lids, and milk jugs, however, can be reprocessed into plastic pellets, which are cheaper than virgin plastic pellets. These pellets are then made into nonfood items—toys, building products, sports products, and other things.

(b) Low-Grade Resources

These resources include materials for which recycling is impractical but that are combustible. Low-grade resources include gaseous wastes, liquid and semiliquid wastes, and solid wastes. Industrial and commercial processes can generate wastes of all types, including some with very high heat content and some that are very toxic. Although recovering heat by burning such materials seems better than landfilling them, air pollution regulations have severely restricted simple trash burning as a means of solid waste disposal. Incinerators must meet increasingly strict regulations and, as a result, are very rarely installed in buildings. A better option is often to compost such materials in landfills. The methane generated in landfills can then be used as a high-grade fuel.

Where large quantities of mixed trash, garbage, and other refuse are collected, special resource-recovery plants can be built to recover materials, produce useful steam for electricity generation, and reduce the flow of waste to landfills. In this energy-intensive process, mixed garbage is shredded and blown through large "air classifiers" that separate the organic (burnable) wastes from metals and glass. The burnable wastes are then used as fuel, under controlled combustion, to generate electricity. The metals are further separated magnetically into ferrous and nonferrous classes; these and the glass are then recycled.

The Energy Efficient Resource Recovery (E2R2) integrated infrastructure facility that was proposed for California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo, combining wastewater treatment and solid waste processing, was introduced in Fig. 22.43. The solid waste facility is shown in Fig. 23.1.

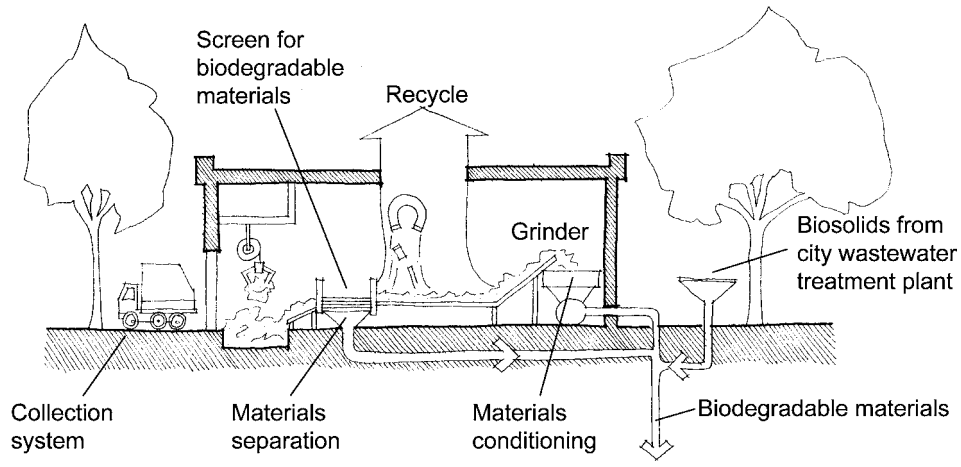
The schematic design for solid waste processing (SWP) in the proposed E2R2 facility involves transporting unsorted solid waste to a central processing facility located on campus. Materials will then be sorted using mechanical equipment and processing. The composition of the solid waste stream is expected to be 70% organic materials, suitable for composting, and 815 tons (739 Mg) per year of recyclable materials (i.e., metals, glass, paper, and cardboard). Roughly 10% of the solid wastes are anticipated to be unsuitable for either recycling or composting. These "inert" materials will be disposed of at the local landfill.

Once separated, the design calls for the nonrecyclable, organic materials to be uniformly ground and combined with sludge (from the city of San Luis Obispo's wastewater treatment plant) or manure (from the university's farming operations) to achieve a proper carbon-to-nitrogen balance. Given the dynamic nature of the recyclable materials market, it is anticipated that, at times, some potentially recyclable paper will be included in the compost operations.

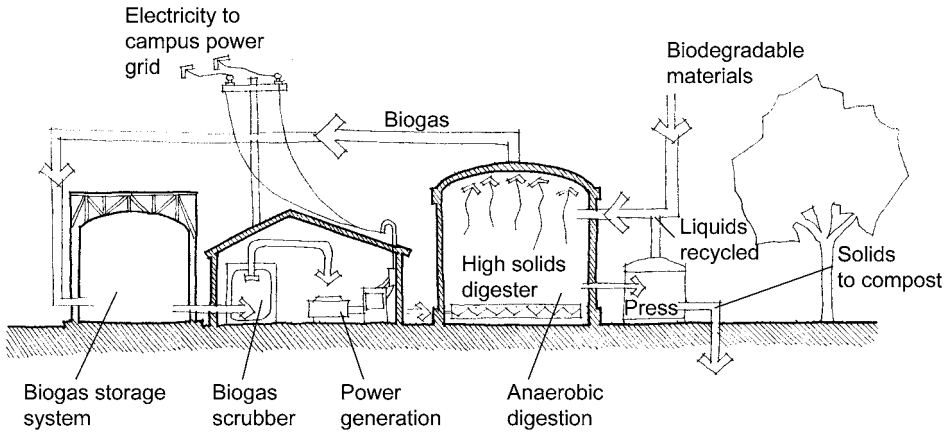
After mixing, the organic materials will be loaded into a high-solids anaerobic digester to undergo methane fermentation. The biogas generated by the fermentation process will be harvested and stored on site. Prior to use, the biogas will be scrubbed (processed) to remove impurities, making it suitable for use as fuel. A portion of the methane will be used to heat the digester, and the excess will power a micro fuel cell to generate electricity for campus use. Other potential uses include using methane in the campus boiler, as an alternative to gasoline in the university's automobile and truck fleet, and even to power an ultra-high-temperature hazardous waste disposal system.

The anaerobic digestion process is projected to generate 180,000 ft^3 (5098 m^3) per day of biogas. The energy content of the methane in this biogas is estimated at 35×10^9 Btu (36.9×10^9 kJ) per year.

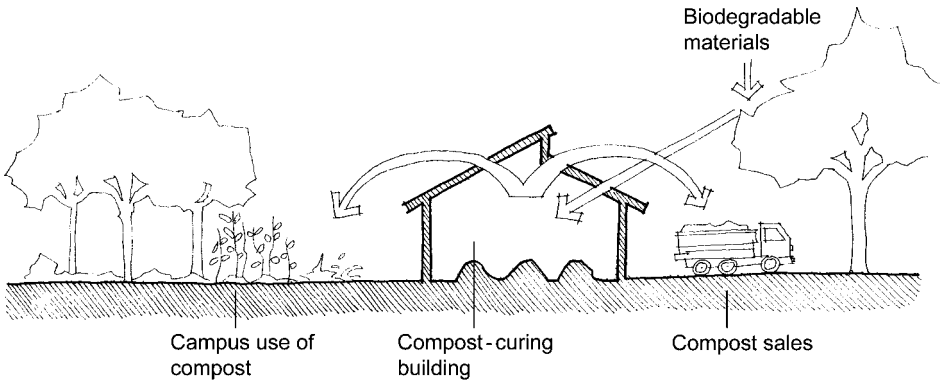
After being unloaded from the high-solids digester, the remaining biosolids will be pressed



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 23.1 *Schematic design proposal for solid waste processing at the proposed E2R2 facility at California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo, California. Unsorted solid wastes are separated into recyclable, organic, and inert materials (a). The organic materials are ground, combined with sludge from the city's sewage treatment plant, and loaded into the high solids digester (b) to undergo anaerobic fermentation. The biogas generated by the fermentation process is scrubbed to remove impurities from the methane, making it suitable for use as a fuel to heat the digester and to power a micro fuel cell to generate electricity for the campus. Biosolids from the digester are pressed, and the liquid, rich in anaerobic bacteria, is then used to inoculate the next anaerobic fermentation cycle. Pressed biosolids are mixed with nutrient-rich algae from the adjacent wastewater facility and pasteurized in compost-curing buildings (c). Once cured, the compost can be used on landscaped areas or farm lands or sold to local gardeners. (Courtesy of Professor Douglas Williams, Agricultural Engineering Department, and Professor Daniel Panetta, Architecture Department, Cal Poly, San Luis Obispo. Redrawn by Dain Carlson.)*

to recover bacteria-rich liquids, which are useful in inoculating the next batch of materials for the digester. The dewatered biosolids will then be mixed with algae from the adjacent AIWPS (Advanced Integrated Wastewater Pond System) facility to create a nutrient-rich compost. This compost will be available for use on the campus's landscape and its farm lands or for sale to local gardeners. Yearly compost production is anticipated to exceed 5000 tons (4535 Mg) air-dried weight.

As an added touch, straw bale construction is proposed for the E2R2 facility buildings. Currently, plans call for an education and laboratory building, a shared control office for wastewater treatment and solid waste processing operations, a solid waste processing building, and on-site student housing. Straw bale construction is advantageous because of its affordability, as well as its exceptional insulation and noise mitigation characteristics. In addition, using rice straw for construction will help provide an alternative to burning waste straw from California's rice crop.

Conventional landfills accept unsorted garbage from a huge variety of sources. Over many years, anaerobic combustion in such enclosed landfills generates methane gas, a usable resource, as described previously. Figure 23.2 shows an architectural opportunity for such landfill sites: a greenhouse heated by burning landfill (methane) gas. Electricity generated by landfill gas powers the lighting for the greenhouse. As a design guideline, a site with 1 million tons (907,000 Mg) of refuse in place should produce enough low-heat-value "landfill gas" to support a cogeneration system that includes a greenhouse. Landfill gas, rather than natural (pipeline) gas, can also drive a fuel cell.

23.2 RESOURCE RECOVERY: CENTRAL OR LOCAL?

In general, the more thoroughly mixed the different types of solid waste, the harder it is to recover their high- and low-grade resources. From an energy



Fig. 23.2 *A 45,000-ft^2 (4180-m^2) greenhouse built over part of a 70-acre (28-hectare) Michigan landfill utilizes "landfill gas" (including about a 65% methane component) both to fuel space heaters and to generate electricity for lighting. Waste heat from the generator also contributes to space heating. (Photo by George P. Graff. Courtesy of Willow Run Farms, Inc., Ypsilanti, MI.)*

conservation viewpoint, solid wastes should be kept as separate as possible; glass bottles should be washed and reused rather than broken and recycled, and unrecyclable but burnable solid wastes should be kept clean and dry until they can be burned or composted. The earlier that different types of metals are separated, for example, the less energy spent later on to separate aluminum from steel, and so forth. Organic food wastes could be composted for use on site rather than ground up and added to the load on the sewage treatment system.

There are two disadvantages, however, to local solid waste separation (at the point of their discard)—one cultural, one physical. Keeping solid wastes separate requires somewhat more effort and time on the part of the consumer. Rather than dumping everything in a garbage can, the resource-conscious consumer will take the time to understand the local recycling procedures and separate garbage and recyclables in accordance with such requirements. Composting in urban apartments presents a unique space-odor challenge.

This disadvantage of slightly more work and time for waste separation is compounded by the physical disadvantage of the floor or cabinet space taken up by multiple containers. In communities fortunate enough to have recycling-oriented garbage service, these containers can be carried out and lined up to await garbage collection. The garbage trucks used for this purpose are complex assemblages of various bins rather than one massive cavern with a compactor. In many communities, however, each pile of recyclable material at home must be dealt with separately, either collected by a specialized handler (nonprofit agencies, for example) or taken to a different collection point—a

TABLE 23.3 Space Planning for Solid Waste

PART A. I-P UNITS			
		Exterior Area Required	
Occupancy	**Building Area ft^2**	**For Trash ft^2**	**For Recyclable Materials, ft^2**
Nonresidential	0–5000	12	12
	5001–10,000	24	24
	10,001–25,000	48	48
	25,000+	Each additional 25,000 ft^2 require 48 ft^2 each, trash and recyclables	
Multifamily Residential	2–6 Units	12	12
	7–15 Units	24	24
	16–25 Units	48	48
	25+ Units	Each additional 25 dwelling units require 48 ft^2 each, trash and recyclables	
PART B. SI UNITS			
		Exterior Area Required	
Occupancy	**Building Area m^2**	**For Trash m^2**	**For Recyclable Materials, m^2**
Nonresidential	0–465	1.1	1.1
	466–929	2.2	
	930–2323	4.5	
	2323+	Each additional 2323 m^2 require 4.5 m^2 each, trash and recyclables	
Multifamily Residential	2–6 Units	1.1	1.1
	7–15 Units	2.2	2.2
	16–25 Units	4.5	4.5
	25+ Units	Each additional 25 dwelling units require 4.5 m^2 each, trash and recyclables	

Source: Reprinted by permission from AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper, *Architectural Graphic Standards,* 9th ed., © 1994 by John Wiley & Sons.

disadvantage in terms of both the time and energy used in transportation. Clearly, the designer's incentive to include recycling in building function will be stronger where recycling collection is well established.

The characteristics of local waste separation, then, are increased consumer time and building space requirements; see Tables 23.2 and 23.3. Central waste separation is characterized by energy-intensive (and noisy) industrial processes. Sections 23.3 and 23.4 offer a detailed look at the consequences of local waste separation for some common building types.

The massive quantities of solid waste generated in urban areas give rise to the terms *urban mines* and *urban forests*. To the extent that these solid wastes can be turned into resources, savings can be realized: of energy in transportation, of land area for landfills, and of virgin materials replaced by these recycled resources.

23.3 SOLID WASTE IN SMALL BUILDINGS

The choice between separation of waste or the mixing of garbage in one can is most often enjoyed by the occupants of small buildings. Where food preparation is involved, as in residences or restaurants, the collection of special containers can reach surprising complexity (Fig. 23.3).

As the point of origin for so many types of solid waste, the kitchen is often the location of waste separation and storage. There is an inherent conflict, however, between the kitchen's frequently hot, humid environment and the need for a cool, dry, well-aired place for solid wastes. This suggests that a space—pantry, air-lock entry, cabinet, or closet—should be provided that opens to the kitchen on one side and to the outside on the other (Fig. 23.4). Both the daily depositing of solid waste and weekly waste removal are made easy, and the near-outdoor conditions are better for the waste in many climates. It

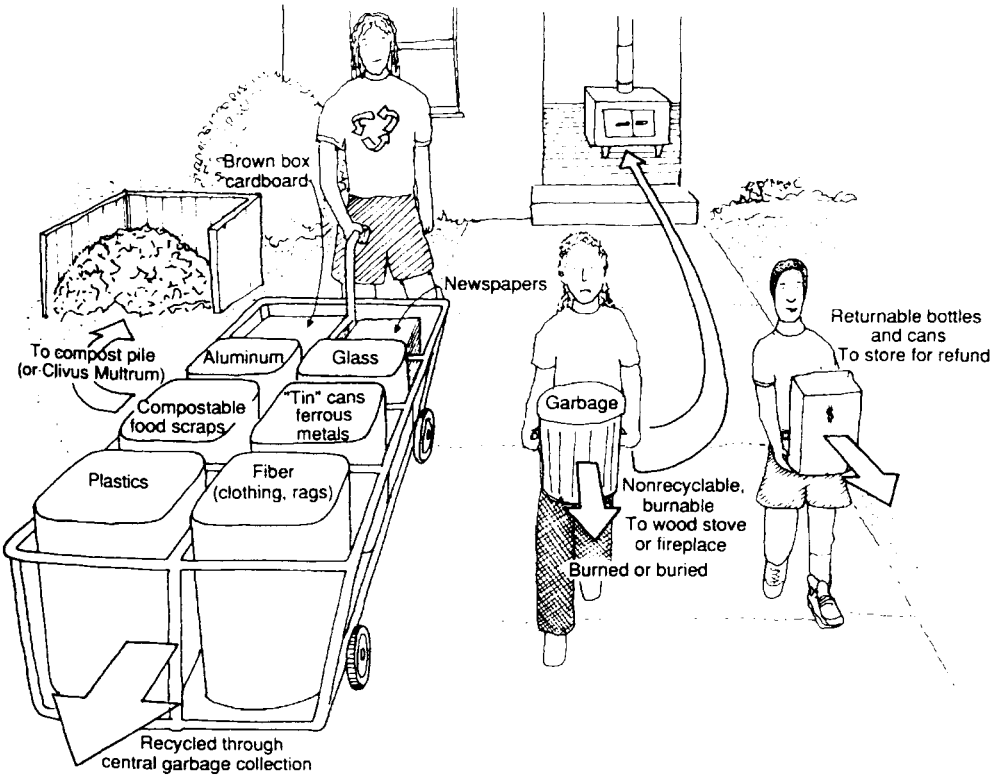


Fig. 23.3 *Local separation of solid wastes can require many containers. In communities that offer recycling garbage collection service, the consumer can recycle without transporting individual containers to many different collection points. Some recycling services ask for glass to be separated into green, brown, and clear types; some offer to recycle white paper.*

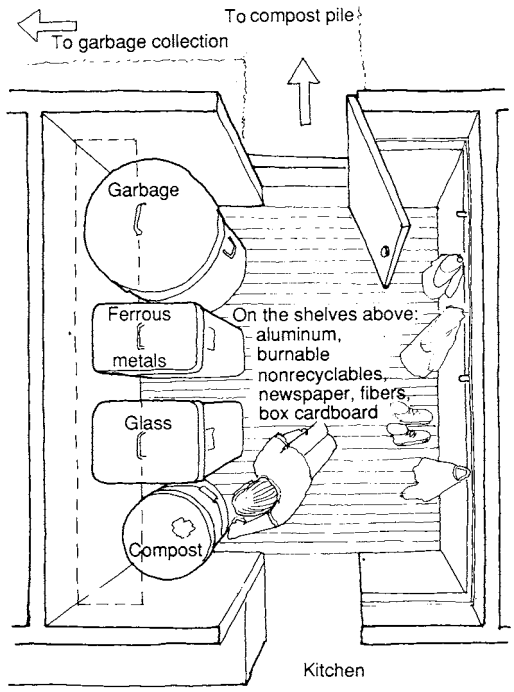


Fig. 23.4 *An entry vestibule (or airlock) to a kitchen can serve as a depository for solid wastes, as well as for coats, boots, and other items. Heavy, dirtier items belong on the floor, and many recyclables can be readily and conveniently stored on shelves. An outdoor hose bibb is useful for washing out soiled compost containers and garbage cans.*

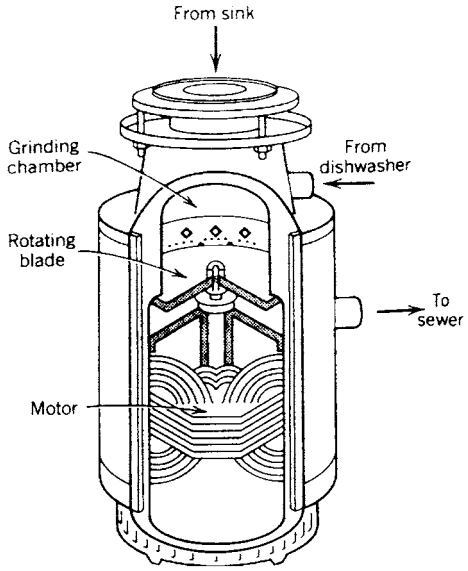


Fig. 23.5 *The garbage disposer (or grinder) diverts solid waste (food scraps) from landfills to sewage treatment plants. Occupying very little space, it saves garbage storage space and some of the user's time, but it requires more energy and much more water than treatment of the food scraps as garbage. Composting is another alternative. (From Milne, 1976.)*

is also important that cleaning of the waste storage area be easy.

(a) Garbage Disposer

This common appliance (Fig. 23.5) is usually installed below the kitchen sink, often in conjunction with a dishwasher. It grinds up organic food scraps and sends them on to the sewer. This device is a boon to central garbage collection because it lightens the weight of the garbage can and adds less moisture to the garbage (which thus can be burned more efficiently). Finely chopped organic matter has a better chance to biodegrade at the wastewater treatment plant than in a tightly packed landfill. However, garbage disposer units require both water and energy. Water must be kept running during the grinding process to coagulate grease for chopping, wash the blades and keep them free of debris, and cool the grinder's motor. In all, 2 to 4 gal (7.5 to 15 L) are required for 1 minute of operation. Because more water and solid waste are deposited in the sewer system, moreover, the central sewage treatment plant requires more energy to operate.

(b) Garbage Compactor

In some small buildings, this device allows for a much less bulky storage arrangement. Used selectively, it can compact several of the stacks of items shown in Fig. 23.3, such as aluminum for recycling, ferrous metals, and box cardboard. Used indiscriminately, it can make the central process of garbage separation more difficult by crushing dissimilar items together. For a recycling-conscious single-family household, it is questionable whether a compactor will save much more storage volume than it takes for itself. However, small stores and institutions with large quantities of a bulky waste (such as cardboard) could save considerable storage space.

(c) Compost Pile

An alternative to a resource-hungry garbage disposal is the compost pile, familiar to most home

gardeners as a source of excellent soil conditioners. Urban opportunities for composting seem very limited; yet, raised growing beds on a balcony or window flower boxes are logical recipients of a family's compost. The problem may not be so much what to do with the final product (humus) as where to locate the compost pile. Several self-contained composting containers are commercially available.

The outdoor compost pile has several characteristics that challenge the designer. At its best, it is a frequently turned, quite warm, damp, well-aired source of rich humus (and red worms) for gardens; odors are noticeable only while the pile is turned. At its worst, it is a source of unpleasant odors, a breeding place for vermin, and a fast-food attraction for rats, dogs, and raccoons. Where odors are not objectionable, the heat generated in a frequently fed and tended compost pile might be welcome against the exterior walls of a residence. Clearly, these walls must have nonorganic exterior materials.

(d) Storage Areas

As groups of residences are combined into large apartment complexes, the necessary solid waste systems can make more significant demands on the designer. Approximate exterior storage areas are listed in Table 23.3. Where central storage compounds are provided, garbage cans should be fenced to ward off dogs and other marauders. Different bins for recyclable materials might be provided. Where space is limited, a single bin could accept specific materials on designated days—newspapers on Mondays, metals on Wednesdays—if collection schedules permit. A central compost pile could provide humus for site landscaping. (An incinerator, used to recover heat from nonrecyclable burnable wastes, is almost never approved for installation today.) This combination of space and equipment has special environmental needs, including garbage truck access, noise control, and location of both incinerator stacks and the compost pile with respect to prevailing winds.

23.4 SOLID WASTE IN LARGE BUILDINGS

In large buildings, it becomes more likely that solid wastes will be handled several times during the storage and collection process. This may inhibit the separated-waste approach because not only the employees who generate the waste, but also the custodians who collect and store it, must understand what items go into which bins. Larger buildings, however, tend to generate large and concentrated kinds of wastes, which makes recycling more attractive while also increasing the demand for storage space.

Consider the multistory office building. Office operations are likely to discard large quantities of white paper and smaller quantities of newspaper, box cardboard, and unrecyclable burnable trash (including floor sweepings). Much smaller quantities of food scraps (coffee grounds), metals, and glass are also generated. Given the high cost of floor space, the pressures are very high for a simple mixed-garbage can (rather than multiple separate bins). However, the cost of hauling trash to increasingly scarce landfills is now so high that many recycling programs pay for themselves both by avoiding landfill charges and by the value of recycled materials.

(a) The Collection Process

In larger buildings, the collection of solid waste is typically a three-stage process (Fig. 23.6). The first stage is the generation of the waste itself by employees who might be provided with one wastebasket each. If each employee is expected to separate wastes, this suggests a redesigned receptacle. At the typical desk in an office building, white paper, recyclables, compostable materials, and garbage would be deposited in separate compartments. Waste separation at the point of origin thus may not require much more floor area, just more attention by the worker.

The second stage begins as custodians work with these individual baskets, dump them into separate bins on a collection cart, and reconnect the individual empty baskets for the next day's deposits. At various stations, special wastebaskets can be supplied: for white paper at the computer room and the copying machine, for compostable materials and garbage at the employee lounge. Floor sweepings are added to garbage. When the collection cart is full, it is wheeled to a service closet, which is probably located within the core of the building. Here there is a container for each category of waste, along with a service sink to wash out the garbage

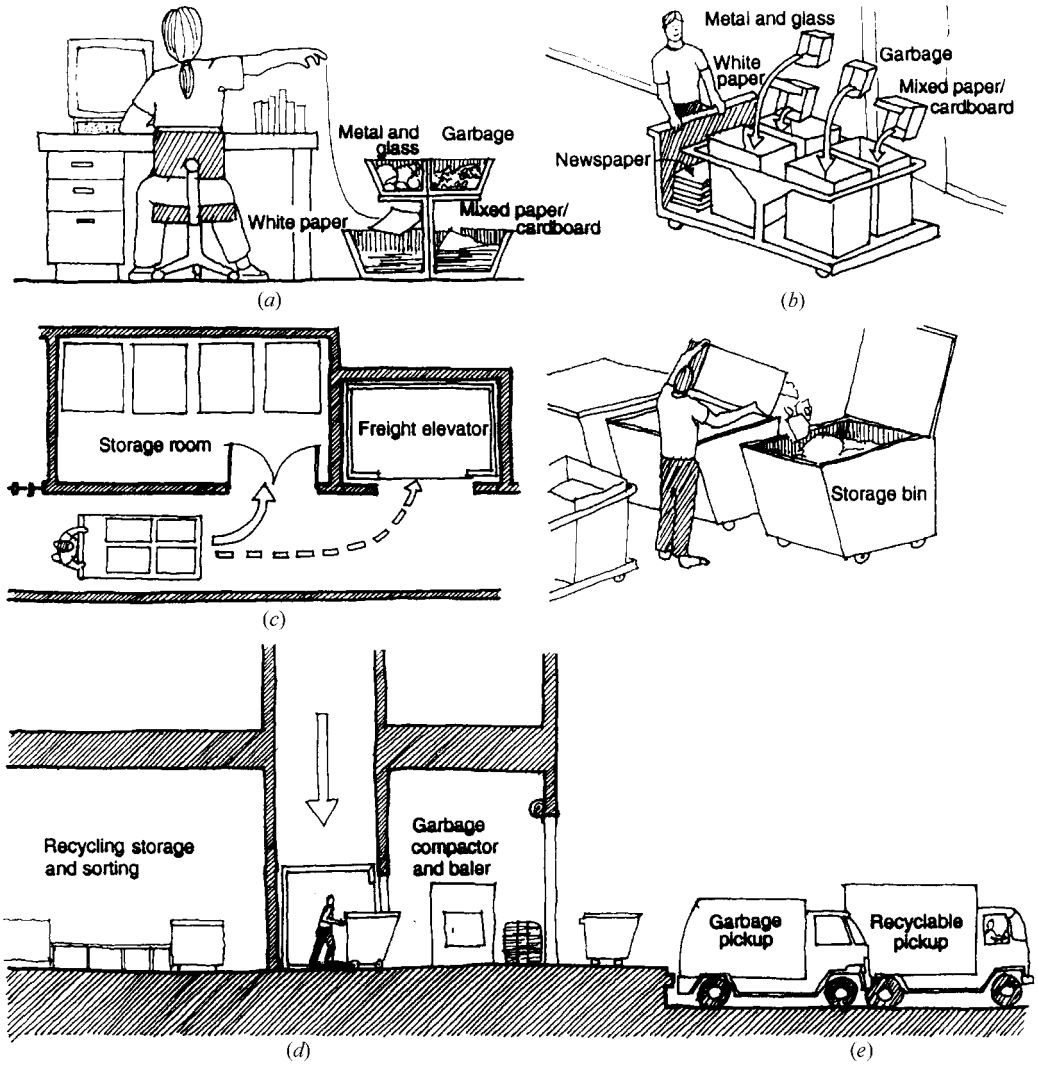


Fig. 23.6 *Hypothetical three-stage solid waste collection process with four-category separation for office buildings. (a) At each workstation, a four-compartment waste receptacle is provided. White paper is the predominant waste product. (b) Custodians begin the second stage by collecting waste in separate bins. Floor sweepings are added to the garbage. (c) At the end of the second stage, the four categories of waste are deposited in separate bins. Service sinks, paper shredders, and other maintenance items can be incorporated in a service closet. (d) The third stage begins with compactors at the base of the service core. White paper is compacted, baled, and stored; recyclables are sorted and stored; garbage is compacted, baled, and stored. (e) At the end of the third stage, white paper, metal, plastic, and glass are collected for recycling, and garbage is collected for separation at a central plant.*

bin (and perhaps a paper shredder to be used selectively by employees).

The third stage begins at the ground floor of the service elevator, where white paper and other recyclables are perhaps shredded and stored until collection; compostable materials are stored or sent to a roof garden compost pile; and garbage is compacted and bagged. In the storage space, a cool, dry, fresh air supply is desirable. A sprinkler (fire protection) system is often required. The compactors and shredders are noisy and must be vibration-isolated from the floor. At the end of the third stage, a truck or van from a recycling center collects recyclables, and a garbage truck collects garbage bags.

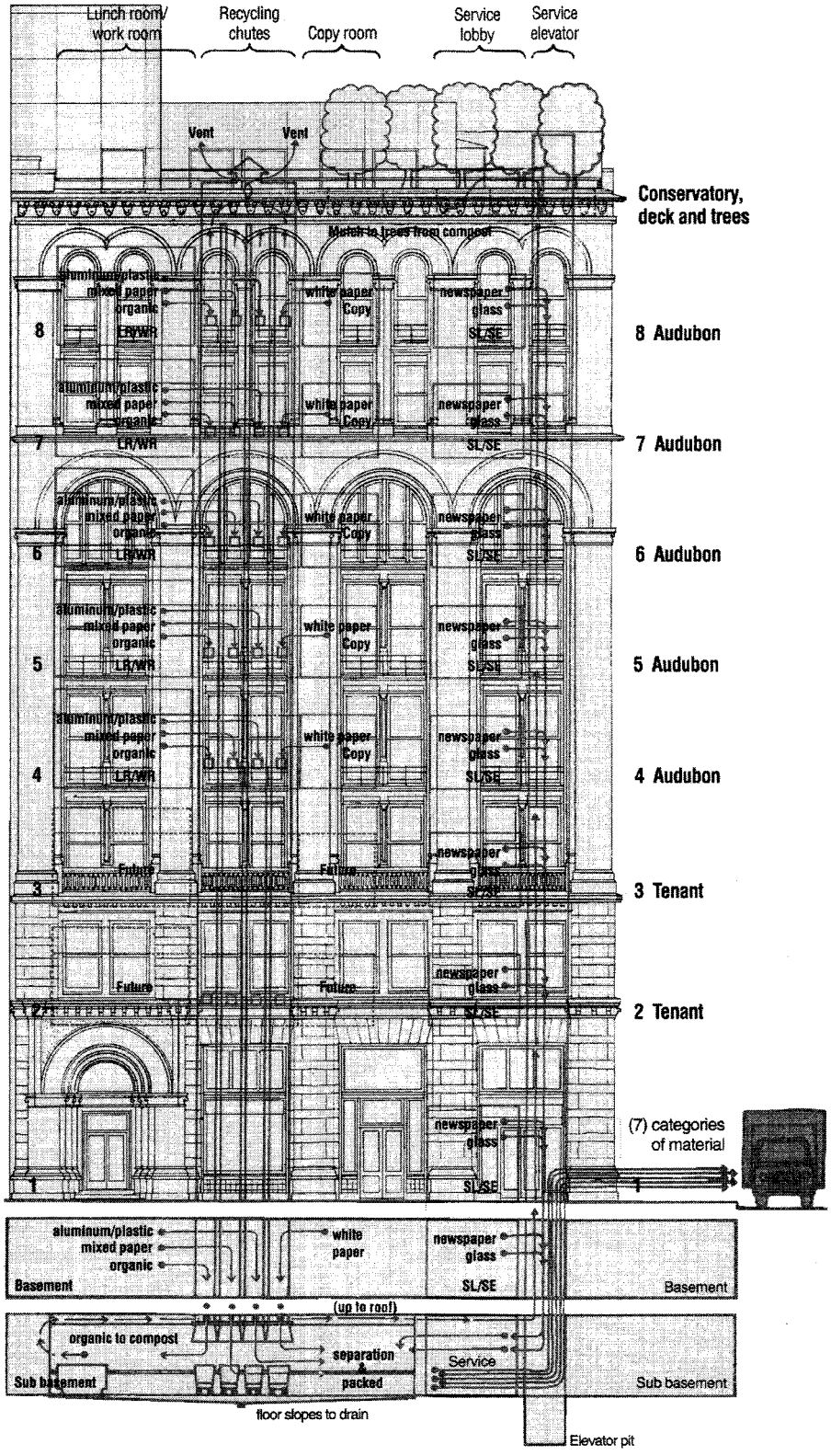


Fig. 23.7 *Audubon House, New York City, renovated after its first 100 years, now features four 20-in.- (508-mm)-diameter steel chutes that conduct recyclables to a subbasement resource-recovery center. Organic materials become compost and are contributed to the roof garden. (Courtesy of the Croxton Collaborative Architects, PC.)*

(b) Audubon House

This New York City office building (Fig. 23.7) utilizes several of the previously mentioned strategies and demonstrates some unusual design impacts of planning for recycling in offices. Built at the end of the nineteenth century, this eight-story building was reused rather than demolished when it was renovated (near the end of the twentieth century) to become offices for the National Audubon Society. (The building has since changed tenants.) Many new materials made from recycled resources were installed; four new vertical chutes conduct recyclable materials to a subbasement resource-recovery center. Details about this project are available in Audubon/Croxton (1994).

The first stage of solid waste collection begins with two desktop recycled paper trays: one for paper for the employee's reuse, the other for recycling. Two wastebaskets are provided per employee: one for mixed paper, the other for unrecycled garbage. On each floor, central recycling points are gathered around four 20-in.- (508-mm)-diameter steel chutes that run from top floor to subbasement. One of these chutes is for white (and computer) paper; the opening to this chute is in a vestibule for copy machines. The other three chute openings are in a "pantry" beside a small kitchen/break room and are for (1) organics (food wastes and soft soiled paper), (2) returnable plastic bottles and aluminum cans, and (3) mixed paper (colored paper, file folders, paperboard, sticky notes). In addition, shelves in each pantry accept returnable glass bottles, coated papers (juice and milk cartons), magazines, and newspapers.

In Audubon House's second stage of collection, custodians pick up the wastebaskets from the work areas and the collection from the pantry shelves. These are taken to the subbasement recycling depot and sorted. In the third stage, large movable bins await deposits at the bottom of the four chutes. Glass bottles, newspapers, and so on from the pantry shelves are collected and boxed or baled. Recyclable materials and garbage are periodically taken up to the delivery dock to recycling and garbage collectors. The exception is the organic waste. This compostable material is refrigerated until enough material accumulates. It is then screened (to remove the largest difficult-to-compost solids) and put into one of four composting "reactors," each with a 40-lb (18-kg) capacity. These are enclosed for odor control, yet are aerobic; air and heat, starter compost, and wood chips are provided to fast-start the process at about 140°F (60°C). Each reactor is vented through filters to control odors. After about 3 days, the second compost stage begins, in which a steady flow of air sustains aerobic decomposition over a 3-month period. After this, the compost (greatly reduced in size and weight) has turned to humus and is taken to the roof garden.

23.5 EQUIPMENT FOR THE HANDLING OF SOLID WASTE

At Audubon House, four steel chutes of moderate diameter were inserted in the building's vertical core. Another approach is to use only one vertical chute, with a rotating receiving facility at the base (Fig. 23.8). With up to six receiving bins on a carousel and a control panel at each floor opening,

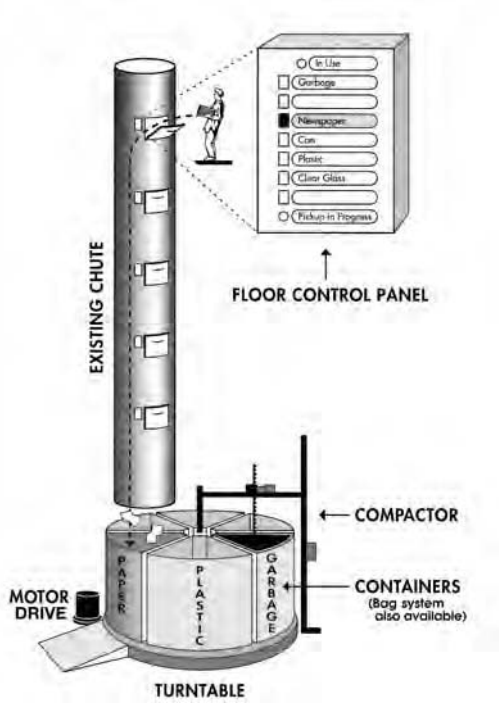


Fig. 23.8 *One chute serves many different recyclables, as well as garbage, in this Hi-Rise Recycling System™. Interlocking access doors on each floor allow only one user at a time; the user selects the type of recyclable being deposited, using the control panel at the opening. (Courtesy of Hi-Rise Recycling Systems, Inc., Miami, FL.)*

considerable floor space is saved compared to six individual chutes. (Also, custodial workers have fewer recyclables to separate and move.) The user first checks the control panel setting (it will be set at whatever bin the previous user had selected). After the user has made a selection, the carousel below turns to position the appropriate bin. The access panel then opens (interlocked so that only one floor can be opened at a time), and the recyclable material (or garbage) can be deposited. The receiving room at the base of the chute is about 12 ft (3.7 m) square, with a minimum height of 8 ft (2.4 m).

Where large amounts of solid waste are generated and little space is available in which to store it, various types of equipment can be used to change the volume or composition of the waste to facilitate its transportation and storage. The first step is to determine the probable daily flow of solid waste, as is done in Tables 23.1 and 23.2. When the extent of the problem is known, equipment can be selected.

(a) Compactors

Of the wide variety of compacting devices (Fig. 23.9), most are able to reduce the volume of solid waste to as little as 10% of the original volume. Among the many choices to be made are vertical versus horizontal compaction, automatic chute-fed versus manual free-standing, whether wastes are to be bagged or baled, and the final size of each unit of compacted waste. Compactors can be noisy; they can also be prone to fires as heat is generated in the compaction process. Many compactors have built-in sprays for both fire control and disinfecting. Access to wash water and a floor drain are highly desirable.

(b) Vacuum Systems

The primary advantage of a vacuum system is that it reduces the building volume consumed by waste chutes or storage cans on each floor. A grinder-plus-evacuated-tube system is similar to the vacuum sewage systems described in Section 21.7 (Fig. 21.49). Vacuum conveying systems are now used in several industrial applications, such as ash and wood-chip transporting. Vacuum systems that use air, not water, as the transport medium are frequently used for linens in hotels and for trash. Separate vacuum systems for trash and linens are desirable, both to

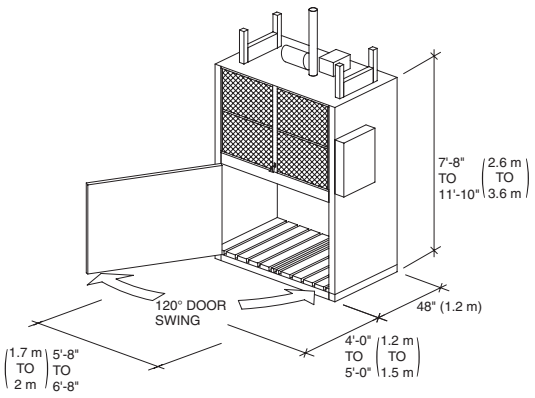


Fig. 23.9 *A refuse baler/compactor may save storage space where particular waste stream volumes are high. Cardboard, metal cans, and plastic bottles may be more attractive to recyclable haulers when their volume is thus reduced. (Reprinted by permission from AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards, *10th ed. © 2000 by John Wiley & Sons.)*

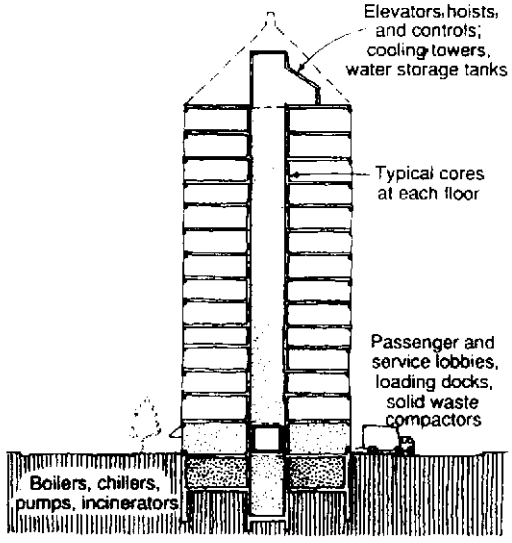


Fig. 23.10 *Schematic section through a core of a multistory building. At the top and bottom, floor space and ceiling height requirements increase. The consequences on the ground (or delivery/collection) floor are particularly great.*

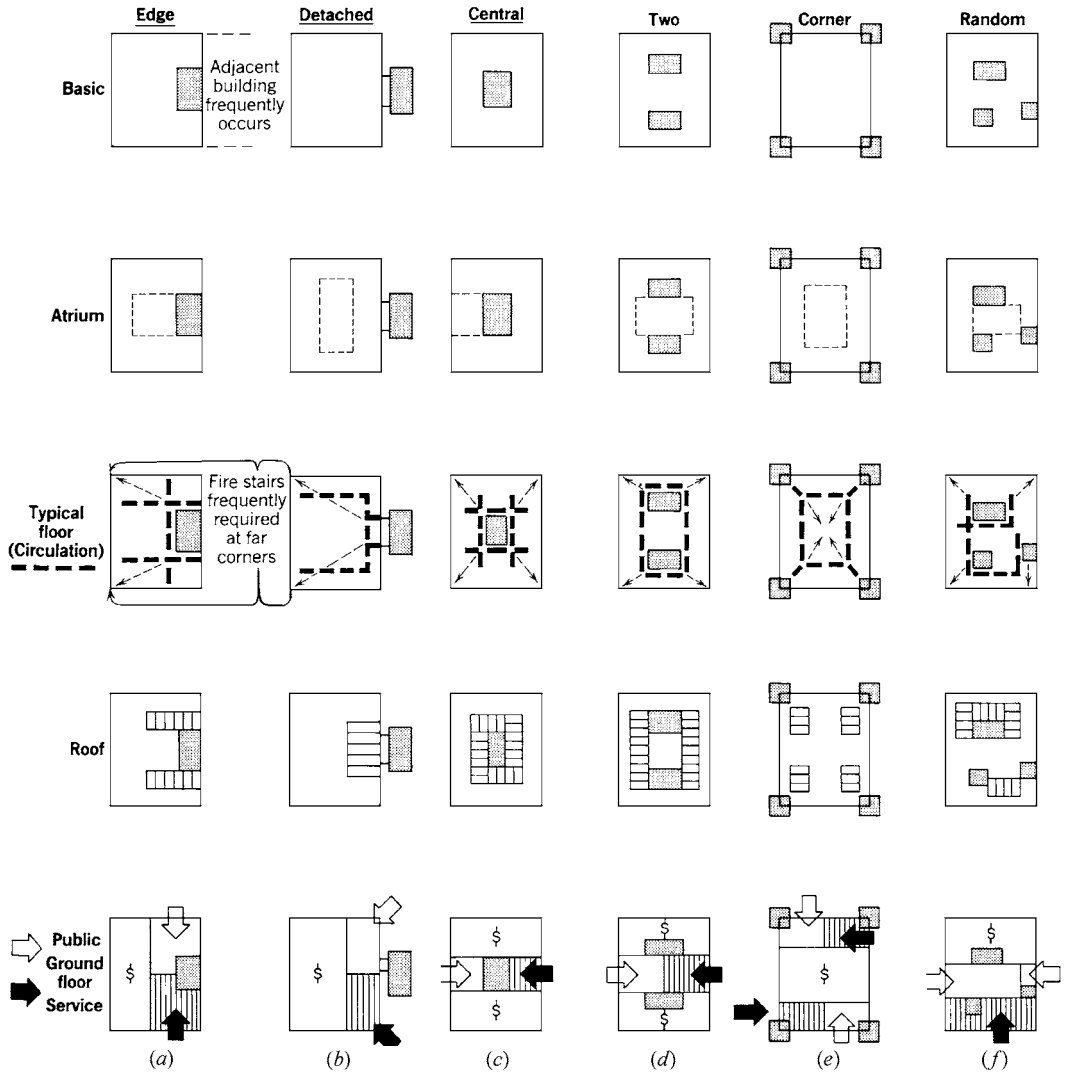


Fig. 23.11 *Comparison of core arrangements and building plans. (a, b) The edge and the detached cores give great flexibility to the rental floor area, with light and view for core spaces. (c) The central core expands readily at the roof and the ground floor, and has clear circulation and fairly flexible rental space. (d) Two-core is a popular, workable arrangement. (e) The corner cores give great flexibility to rental floors but are difficult at the roof and ground floor. (f) Random cores generally occur in low-rise buildings, in which the benefits of repetitious plans are minimal.*

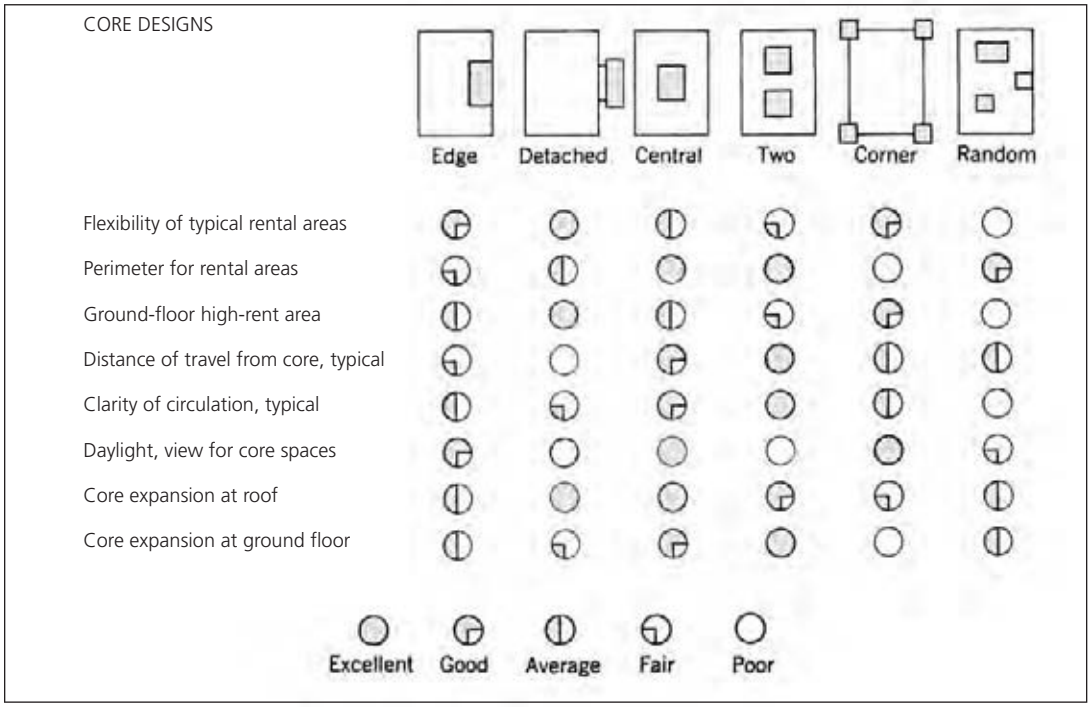
lessen the soiling of the linens and to allow them to be delivered to a destination different from that for the trash.

The advantage of such pressurized systems is that lines can be small, and the contents can be moved horizontally or even up. This allows far greater flexibility in design than is possible with gravity systems.

(c) Summary

There are many options to be considered within the present waste-handling sequence of grind, crush, burn, and bury. As Earth's nonrenewable resources are stripped away, the recovery of materials from solid waste becomes increasingly attractive. The situation is similar to energy-and-design issues:

TABLE 23.4 Building Characteristics and Core Placement



after decades of energy-intensive building trends, designers are now allocating space to daylighting atriums and allowing surfaces to act as thermal mass. A modest increase in floor space and equipment to encourage resource recovery from solid waste seems an increasingly worthwhile design investment.

23.6 THE SERVICE CORE

Medium- and high-rise buildings usually concentrate many building services within a core, from which services can be distributed as needed throughout each floor. The core typically contains stairs; passenger and freight elevators; toilet rooms; service closets; mechanical, plumbing, and electrical chases; electrical/telephone closets with local switching capabilities; fire protection equipment; and supply closets. The size of such cores varies widely; for example, the taller the building, the more elevators.

Often, these service cores are identical in plan from one floor to the next. Alternatively, the vertical services can be identical (stairs, elevators, chases) and the arrangement of other elements (toilet rooms, supply closets) allowed to vary. Whether or not minor floor-plan variations occur, the cores usually depart radically from the typical plan—and ceiling height—at both roof and ground floor (Fig. 23.10). (Interruptions also occur where intermediate mechanical floors are provided.) Depending upon the type of elevator machinery selected, the machine room ceiling height above the top floor being served might be three times the ordinary floor height (see Chapter 31). On the delivery/loading floor level, large trucks must be accommodated. For chillers, boilers, incinerators, and fans, higher ceilings may be required to accommodate the flues, ducts, and pipes to which they must be connected; see Section 10.3 for the dimensions required. Considering the entrance lobby as an extension of the core, a building's service core can expand to nearly fill the ground floor. This core expansion typically happens on the roof and in the basement as well.

A service core can be related to the remaining service floor area in any of several ways (Fig. 23.11). A single central core is probably the

most familiar arrangement (Occidental Chemical Offices, Fig. 5.11; Fox Plaza Los Angeles, Fig. 10.10; International Building, San Francisco, Fig. 10.11; CBS Tower, Fig. 10.59). Frequent variations include a core at the edge (Comstock Center, Fig. 10.63; Seeley Mudd Library, Fig. 10.65) or one that is detached, two cores symmetrically placed, corner cores, or core services dispersed somewhat randomly (Iowa Public Service Building, Fig. 10.41).

Each core location has advantages and drawbacks. From the viewpoint of rentable space, important factors are the flexibility of the served (rental) floor area; the exposure of rental area to the perimeter, and thus to light, air, and view; and the extent to which ground-floor high-rent space gets commercial exposure. For fire safety and occupant convenience, the distance of travel from the farthest rental floor area to the service core and the clarity of circulation within the rental area, are important. For the environment within the core—toilet rooms, stairs, elevator waiting areas—access to light, air, and view is desirable. For the mechanical services, ease of core area expansion on the roof, at the loading dock, and in the basement is important, as is the length of travel for ducts and other such elements within each floor. These factors are compared for various types of core designs in Table 23.4.

References and Resources

AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper. 1994. *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 9th ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

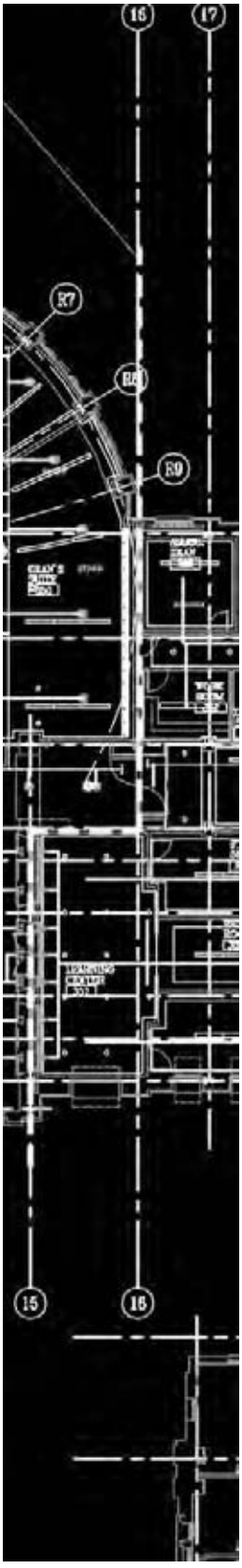
AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper. 2000. *Architectural Graphic Standards*, 10th ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Audubon/Croxton. 1994. *Audubon House: Building the Environmentally Responsible, Energy Efficient Office.* John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Milne, M. 1976. *Residential Water Conservation.* U.S. Office of Water Research and Technology, Department of Commerce, NTIS. Springfield, VA.

PART VI

FIRE PROTECTION



One of the most challenging aspects of building design is providing protection against the effects of fire. Designers may enjoy considering how their buildings can be made bearably cool on a stifling hot day or lighted and warm on a bitterly cold night. It is less pleasant to imagine a building burning and considering how first its occupants, then the building itself (along with its contents)—can be saved.

To complicate this critically important concern, there are inherent conflicts between some optimum features of fire resistance and some common and useful features of design strategies such as daylighting, passive cooling, or forced-air HVAC systems. There are even potential design conflicts between systems for the safe evacuation of people and systems for the suppression of fire—because both people and fire thrive on oxygen. There is also some common ground among daylighting, passive and active climate control, acoustics, and fire protection. The challenge is to find the optimum balance.

Design for fire protection is an intriguing challenge. Many aspects of fire protection are rigidly governed by building codes that have evolved over the past 100 years in response to disasters and milestone events. On the other hand, most large buildings include some feature (such as an atrium) that is generally unique and not clearly addressed by otherwise explicit fire codes. Another challenge is to find an acceptable balance between respect for the codes and ingenuity to move beyond the codes when required.

CHAPTER 24

Fire Protection

JUST AS BUILDINGS CAN BE DESIGNED TO minimize heating, cooling, and lighting equipment and thus to reduce energy consumption, they can be designed to reduce the size of fire-fighting systems and retard the spread of smoke and fire. As the average size of fires within buildings continues to decline, the emphasis is shifting to minimizing water and smoke damage. Whole-building conflagrations, while spectacular, are relatively rare in large buildings in North America now that both automatic fire detection and fire-extinguishing systems are widespread.

This discussion of fire protection begins with basic design considerations for fire resistance. Smoke management (for safe evacuation and for limited smoke damage) is considered next, followed by fire-suppression systems such as sprinklers and non-water-based approaches. Lightning protection is then discussed, along with the many fire detection and alarm systems that are keyed to the major stages of the typical building fire.

Throughout this chapter, the influence of the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) is apparent. The periodically updated *Fire Protection Handbook* is an especially useful source of information for design, from which several illustrations have been reprinted in this text.

FIRE RESISTANCE, EGRESS, AND EXTINGUISHMENT

24.1 DESIGN FOR FIRE RESISTANCE

Fire is a special kind of oxidation known as *combustion*. Oxidation, which has been discussed in previous chapters in terms of rust within water supply equipment and aerobic digestion in waste disposal systems, is a process in which molecules of a fuel are combined with molecules of oxygen, producing a mixture of gases and energy. When this occurs rapidly, as in a fire, energy is released as heat and light, and some gases become visible as smoke. Table 24.1 lists the stages of a fire and the factors that influence its growth. Many of these factors involve decisions made by building designers.

Fire has a triangle of needs: fuel, high temperature, and oxygen. If deprived of any of these needs, building fires will be extinguished. In general, this triangle's influence on building design is as follows. The *fuel* is the building's structure and contents; the designer controls the choice of structural and finish materials but rarely the final contents. The *temperatures* achieved in fires are well beyond the ability of

TABLE 24.1 Major Factors Influencing Fire Growth

Realm	Approximate Ranges of Fire Sizes	Major Factors That Influence Growth
1 Preburning	Overheat to ignition	Amount and duration of heat flux Surface area receiving heat Material ignitability
2 Initial burning	Ignition to radiation point (10-in. [254-mm] high flame)	Fuel continuity Material ignitability Thickness Surface roughness Thermal inertia of the fuel
3 Vigorous burning	Radiation point to enclosure point (10-in. to 5-ft high flame [254 mm to 1.5 m])	Interior finish Fuel continuity Feedback Material ignitability Thermal inertia of the fuel Proximity of flames to walls
4 Interactive burning	Enclosure point to ceiling point (5-ft [1.5-m] high flame to flame touching ceiling)	Interior finish Fuel arrangement Feedback Height of fuels Proximity of flames to walls Ceiling height Room insulation Size and location of openings HVAC operation
5 Remote burning	Ceiling point to full room involvement	Fuel arrangement Ceiling height Length/width ratio Room insulation Size and location of openings HVAC operation

Source: Reprinted with permission from the *Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed., © 1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

building cooling systems to control, so special water systems (in the form of sprinklers) are often installed to deprive fire of the high temperatures it needs. *Oxygen* may be denied to a fire partly by limitations on ventilation, but these can have serious safety consequences. Another design response is to install fire-suppression systems that either cover the fuel (foam, dry chemicals) or displace oxygen with another gas—for example, carbon dioxide or "clean agents" that inhibit the chemical action of the flame itself.

(a) Sources of Ignition

Buildings commonly contain three basic sources of ignition: chemical, electrical, and mechanical. In *chemical* combustion, most commonly known as *spontaneous combustion*, some chemicals reach ignition at ordinary temperatures within buildings. Chemical combustion depends upon the rate of heat generation (related to the degree of saturation of combustible products determined by the chemicals involved), the air supply (enough to supply oxygen but not enough to lower the temperature), and the insulation provided by the immediate surroundings (the more insulation, the easier the attainment of combustion temperatures).

Electrical heat energy is most commonly supplied by resistance heating, a familiar process in many appliances and in space-heating equipment. Less common are electric ignition by induction, dialectic process, arcing, and static electricity. Lightning is an infrequent but enormously destructive electrical energy source.

Mechanical heat energy is produced by friction (including sparks), by overheating of machinery, and occasionally by the heat of compression.

(b) Products of Combustion

Everyone has experienced to some degree the dangers of the *thermal* products of combustion (Fig. 24.1)—flame and heat. These visible and tactile elements of fire can cause burns, shock, dehydration, heat exhaustion, and fluid blockage of the

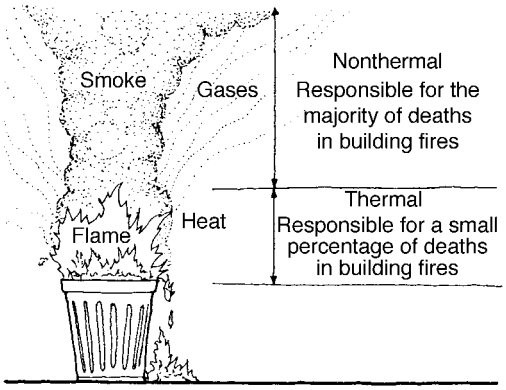


Fig. 24.1 *Although the thermal products from a fire—flame and heat—make strong visible and tactile impressions, fire's nonthermal products—smoke and its constituent gases—pose the greater threat to life.*

respiratory tract, but they are responsible for only about one-quarter of the deaths resulting from building fires. Most fire deaths are caused by the *nonthermal* products—smoke and its wide range of constituent gases, liquids, and solids. Smoke can usually be seen and smelled. Made up of droplets of flammable tars and small particles of carbon suspended in gases, it irritates the eyes and nasal passages, sometimes blinding and/or choking a person. Gases are especially dangerous because, without visible smoke, they are so often difficult to detect. Some gases are directly toxic, but all are dangerous because they displace oxygen. Common gases released in building fires include carbon monoxide and carbon dioxide.

Carbon monoxide is a deadly product of combustion and is often the most abundant such product. It is produced when insufficient oxygen is available to completely oxidize the burning material. It is more readily attached to hemoglobin molecules in red blood cells than is oxygen, thus depriving the brain and muscles of needed oxygen. This leads to irrational behavior and loss of consciousness, then to death. *Carbon dioxide* is also likely to result from combustion but, unless intentionally introduced into a space as a means of fire suppression, should not be present in concentrations with serious health impacts (beyond potential headaches and dizziness).

Other dangerous and commonly encountered building-fire gases include hydrogen sulfide, sulfur dioxide, ammonia, oxides of nitrogen, cyanide, phosgene, and hydrogen chloride (from burning polyvinyl chlorides found in computers, electronic equipment, and cable jackets). These types of gases may cause eye, skin, nose, and throat irritation—and in sufficient concentrations can be psychotropic and/or toxic.

In indoor fires, oxygen commonly becomes insufficient because the fire consumes it so rapidly. The normal concentration of oxygen in air is about 21%. At less than 17%, muscular coordination and judgment are diminished; at 14% down to 10%, people remain conscious but become irrational, and fatigue is rapid; at 10% down to 6%, collapse occurs, but revival is possible when increased oxygen is supplied. The technique of starving the fire of oxygen can therefore pose a threat to human beings, both by increasing the chances of carbon monoxide production and by depriving people of oxygen.

(c) Objectives in Fire Safety

Many older buildings were designed at a time when building fires usually resulted in the loss of several adjacent structures; hence, the primary objective of firefighting was to limit the conflagration to as few city blocks as possible. With the increased use of fire-resistant construction and code control of site and building planning, fires typically were confined to one building at a time. As fire-suppression systems came into common usage within buildings, it then came to be expected that fires could be confined to one or two floors within a building. Now that automatic detection/suppression systems are technically advanced, fires can usually be confined to one room or to even smaller areas. In the United States, most fires in sprinklered buildings are now extinguished with one to five sprinklers operating.

Four common design intents related to building fire safety, in order of usual importance, are:

1 Protection of life
2. Protection of building
3. Protection of contents
4. Continuity of operation

Many of the elements of building fire safety are covered by building codes, but it is important to remember that codes specify the *minimum* acceptable protection. Designers can go much further than the codes require in order to enhance fire safety. It is also important to realize that codes *cannot* cover all aspects of fire safety, as there are too many variables in building design.

Codes typically *prescribe* design strategies that are *passive* means of limiting the spread of fire and protecting life: wall, floor, and ceiling constructions; maximum open floor areas; maximum distances to exits; and so on. Codes commonly allow some relaxing of such prescriptions when *active* fire-suppression systems (such as sprinklers) are designed into a building. Alternatively, a detailed *computer analysis* of fire spread and occupant evacuation within a proposed project may allow for even greater distances to exits, larger open floor areas, and alternative constructions. This is a *performance-based*, rather than a prescriptive, approach to design. It requires close cooperation between designers and fire code enforcement authorities.

(d) Fire Safety and Other Environmental Control Systems

In some instances, the desirable design approaches for fire safety will track design approaches for lighting, thermal, acoustic, and water systems. Although these opportunities may be uncommon, it would be unfortunate (because of a discipline-centric design process) to miss such synergies as:

Thermal mass, which is useful for passive heating and cooling systems, for acoustic isolation of airborne sound, and for fire barriers (most thermally massive materials will not burn easily).

High ceilings, useful for daylight distribution and displacement ventilation, but also for collecting a large quantity of smoke before it reaches the occupants and for allowing smoke and/or flames from a fire to be seen from a greater indoor distance.

Windows, for daylight, ventilation, and view, also allow access for firefighting and rescue, provide escape routes, relieve smoke accumulation with fresh air, and thus relieve some of the stress of trapped occupants.

Solid (*noncombustible*) *overhangs over windows* not only provide sunshading, but also discourage the vertical spread of fire over the building face and can serve as emergency exterior places of refuge.

Elevated water storage tanks provide both adequate water pressure for plumbing fixtures and water for firefighting in the first few minutes of a fire before firefighters arrive.

In many other instances, there are potential design conflicts between building performance under ordinary conditions and building performance in the extraordinary event of a fire. Escalators invite shoppers to explore the upper levels of a department store or connect hotel lobbies to ballrooms; they are also efficient apertures for the vertical spread of fire and smoke. (Special fire protection strategies for escalators are found in Chapter 33.) Daylighting and natural ventilation are best served by high ceilings and low partitions, which encourage light and air from the perimeter to pervade building interiors. If unchecked by sprinklers, however, fire and smoke can easily spread through such open floor plans. (On the other hand, smoke and fire can build up much more rapidly in small, enclosed rooms that retain heat.) Forced-air systems that heat, ventilate, and cool are also potential pathways for smoke and fire; this hazard is especially serious when the systems penetrate floors, because vertically spreading fires are harder to fight than horizontally spreading ones. (Then again, carefully designed forced-air systems can aid in smoke management.) Windowless buildings that rely on electric lighting in place of daylight are especially dangerous in fires because firefighters cannot easily evacuate occupants or gain access to the building. Sunscreens that completely cover windows are disadvantageous for the same reason; nonoperable windows, although considered advantageous for tightly controlled air conditioning, must be broken for fire evacuation/access. The higher the window, the greater the danger from falling shards of glass. Many excellent insulating materials will burn readily, and some will give off toxic gases. Some of the loveliest interior finishes are both flammable and deadly sources of gases in a fire. Table 24.2 summarizes fire requirements for interior finishes.

The dichotomy between ensuring comfort throughout a building's normal life and safety at the moment it is threatened by fire, is the principal reason why codes alone cannot ensure fire safety. The dilemma of ordinary versus extraordinary performance must be faced by the cooperative actions of the designer, owner, and occupants of a building.

(e) Protection of Life

The NFPA *Fire Protection Handbook* discusses human behavior in fires in great detail. Although

TABLE 24.2 Summary of Life Safety Code Requirements for Interior Finish

Occupancy	Exits	Access to Exits	Other Spaces
Assembly—New: >300 people	A	A or B	A or B
≤300 people	A	A or B	A, B, or C
Assembly—Existing: >300 people	A	A or B	A or B
≤300 people	A	A or B	A, B, or C
Educational—New	A	A or B	A or B; C on low partitions
Educational—Existing	A	A or B	A, B, or C
Day Care Centers—New	A	A	A or B
	I or II	I or II	NR
Day Care Centers—Existing	A or B	A or B	A or B
Group Day-Care Homes—New	A or B	A or B	A, B, or C
Group Day-Care Homes—Existing	A or B	A, B, or C	A, B, or C
Family Day-Care Homes	A or B	A, B, or C	A, B, or C
Health Care—New AS* Mandatory	A or B	A or B	A or B
		C on lower portion of corridor wall	C in small individual rooms
Health Care—Existing	A or B	A or B[a]	A or B[a]
Detention and Correctional—New	A	A	A, B, or C
	I	I	
Detention and Correctional—Existing	A or B	A or B	A, B, or C
	I or II	I or II	
Residential, Board and Care[b]			
Residential, Hotels and Dormitories—New	A	A or B	A, B, or C
	I or II	I or II	
Residential, Hotels and Dormitories—Existing	A or B	A or B	A, B, or C
	I or II	I or II	
Residential, Apartment Buildings—New	A	A or B	A, B, or C
	I or II	I or II	
Residential, Apartment Buildings—Existing	A or B	A or B	A, B, or C
	I or II	I or II	
Residential, 1- and 2-Family, Lodging or Rooming Houses	A, B, or C	A, B, or C	A, B, or C
Mercantile—New	A or B	A or B	A or B
Mercantile—Existing Class A or B	A or B	A or B	Ceiling A or B existing on walls
			A, B, or C
Mercantile—Existing Class C	A, B, or C	A, B, or C	A, B, or C
Office—New	A or B	A or B	A, B, or C
	I or II	I or II	
Office—Existing	A or B	A or B	A, B, or C
Industrial	A or B	A, B, or C	A, B, or C
Storage	A or B	A, B, or C	A, B, or C

Source: Reprinted with permission from the *Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed., © 1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

[a]See occupancy chapters of NFPA 101 for details.

[b]See Source, Chapters 22 and 23.

Notes: Class A Interior Wall and Ceiling Finish—flame spread 0–25, (new) smoke developed 0–450.

Class B Interior Wall and Ceiling Finish—flame spread 26–75, (new) smoke developed 0–450.

Class C Interior Wall and Ceiling Finish—flame spread 76–200, (new) smoke developed 0–450.

Class I Interior Floor Finish—critical radiant flux, minimum 0.45 Watts/cm^2.

Class II Interior Floor Finish—critical radiant flux, minimum 0.22 Watts/cm^2.

*Automatic sprinklers—where a complete standard system of automatic sprinklers is installed, interior finish with flame spread rating not over Class C may be used in any location where Class B is normally specified, and with rating of Class B in any location where Class A is normally specified; similarly, Class II interior finish may be used in any location where Class I is normally specified, and no critical flux rating is required where Class II is normally specified. (This does not apply to new health care facilities.)

Exposed portions of structural members complying with the requirements of heavy timber construction may be permitted.

panic behavior drives many code requirements, such behavior has been found to be rare. Designers should consider how building occupants make decisions in a fire. In the first phase, cues are detected—the smell of smoke, sounds associated with a fire (breaking glass, sirens, alarm bells), and, more rarely, the sight of flames. Open plans (with longer visible indoor distances) are more amenable to exposing such clues to a wider population. In the second phase, the occupants define the situation: Just how serious is this fire? The more numerous the cues, the more rapid the definition phase. How other people are reacting is influential, and in the absence of strong cues can actually lead to a group refusal to evacuate in the early stages of a fire. In the third phase, coping behavior begins: fight or flight? Clear exit pathways and access to firefighting equipment are critical to rationally making this decision.

For most low-rise buildings, a reasonable goal is the evacuation of all occupants in the time interval between the detection of a fire and the arrival of the firefighters. Designers can provide clearly defined pathways to exits (*exit access*) that can be kept relatively clear of smoke (Fig. 24.2). To accommodate a wheelchair, a minimum clear width of 32 in. (813 mm) is required. *Exits* can take a variety of forms. Vertical exits (Figs. 24.3 and 24.4) include smokeproof towers, exterior and interior stairs and ramps, and escalators that meet specific requirements. *Vertical exits do not include elevators*; they are too easily stalled or, worse, opened at the floor of a fire by malfunctioning signal equipment. Exits in the horizontal plane include doors leading directly to the outside, 2-hour fire-rated enclosed hallways, and moving walks. Special *horizontal exits* are provided by internal firewalls penetrated by two fire doors—one swinging open in either direction. *Exit discharge* is the area outside an exit that leads to a public way and may still need protection in a fire.

Maximum allowable distances to exits are specified in Table 24.3. These are influenced by past experience with people exiting through smoke, especially when it may involve briefly traveling toward the perceived fire location (as in the case of a dead-end corridor). When automatic fire suppression systems such as sprinklers are used, the allowable distances to exits are increased. Designers should remember, however, that at least 30% of building fire deaths result from fire cutting off the paths to exits.

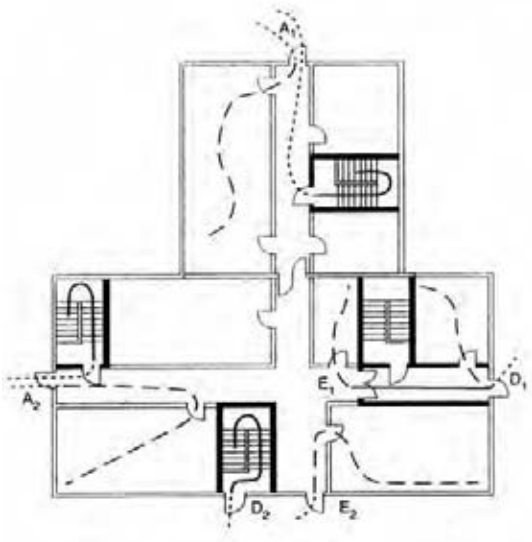


Fig. 24.2 *Exit access, exit, and exit discharge on the first floor of a multistory building. Doors A_1, A_2, E_1, and E_2 are exits, and the path (dashed line) is the exit access. To the person emerging from the exit enclosure, doors A_1 and A_2 and the paths (dotted lines) are the exit discharge. Doors D_1 and D_2 are exit discharge doors. Solid-line paths are within the exit. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook, *18th ed.; © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269.)*

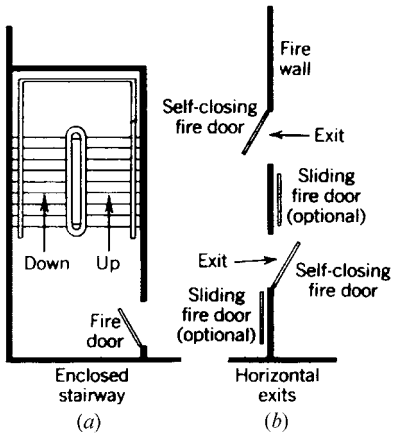


Fig. 24.3 *Plan views of exits. (a) An enclosed stairway allows occupants on any floor above a fire to escape. A smokeproof tower is better, as it opens to the air at each floor, largely preventing accumulation of smoke in the stairway. (b) Horizontal exit through an interior firewall provides a quick refuge and lessens the need for a hasty flight down the stairs. Two wall openings are needed to facilitate exit in either direction. Fire-rated doors must be arranged to be self-closing or automatic-closing by smoke detection. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook, *18th ed.; © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269.)*

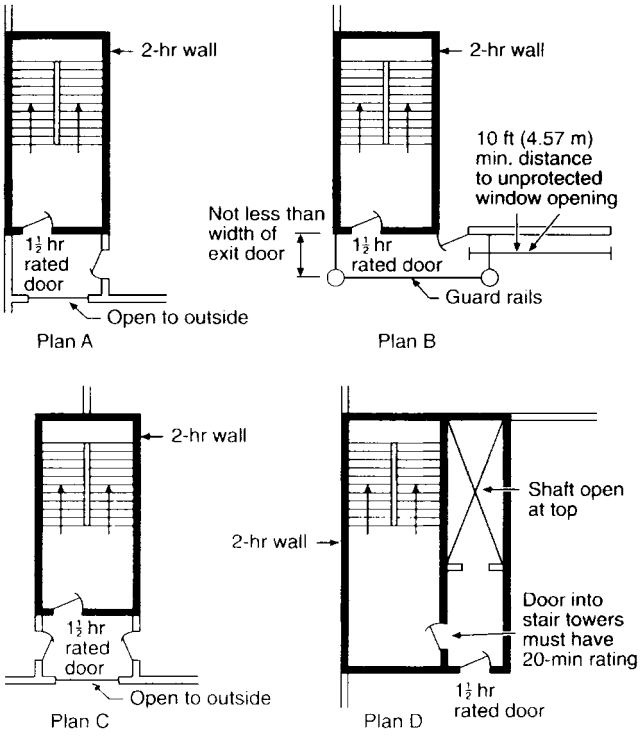


Fig. 24.4 *Four variations of smokeproof towers. Plan A has a vestibule opening from a corridor. Plan B shows an entrance by way of an outside balcony. Plan C could provide a stair tower entrance common to two areas. In plan D, smoke and gases entering the vestibule would be exhausted by a natural or induced draft in the open air shaft. In each case, a double entrance to the stair tower with at least one side open or vented is characteristic of this type of construction. Pressurization of the stair tower in the event of fire provides an attractive alternative for tall buildings and is a means of eliminating the entrance vestibule. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook, *16th ed.; © 1986, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269.)*

Minimum egress widths per floor are found with the help of Table 24.4. First, calculate the floor area (net or gross, as specified in the table). Divide the floor area by the occupant load to determine the number of occupants for whom exits must be provided for that floor. Then calculate the exit capacity based on its clear width. Stairs are sized to meet the requirements of Table 24.5.

EXAMPLE 24.1 A multistory office building is 80 ft (24 m) wide by 300 ft (80 m) long. What exit capacity is required per floor?

SOLUTION (I-P units)

The gross floor area = 80 × 300 = 2400 ft². From Table 24.4, "business" categories are based on one person per gross 100 ft².

The population per floor is, therefore, (2400 ft²)/(100 ft²/person) = 240 people.

Exit doors (to stairs): 240 people × 0.2 in./person = 48 in. total.

(One 34-in. clear door into each of two stairs = 2 doors × 34 = 68 in., more than the minimum.)

Stairs: 240 people × 0.3 in./person = 72 in. total.

(Two stairs at 44 in. each = 88 in., more than the minimum.) ■

The building population as estimated for fire safety is usually much greater than the population for which HVAC, water, or elevator service is designed. The stairs must be designed to allow those already within the stairwell to continue down without interference from access doors on any floor. Stairs with direct access to outdoor air at each floor—so-called smokeproof towers—are the safest kind. A fire stair must allow firefighters to move up while occupants are moving down. Another phenomenon is *reentry*, in which occupants who have exited decide to reenter despite the danger. (Rescue of family members, pets, and valuables is a common reason.) This greatly complicates downward flow.

High-rise buildings present much more difficult problems because firefighting equipment can ordinarily reach no higher than seven floors (about 90 ft [27 m]) and because, typically, only two exit stairways are provided. This difficulty is recognized in building codes, which classify buildings with an occupiable floor more than 75 feet above the lowest fire department access as *high-rise* with special design considerations. Downward flow rates in stairs were formerly assumed at about 45 persons/

TABLE E 24.3 Common Path, Dead End, and Travel Distance Limits

Type of Occupancy	*Common Path Limit*		*Dead-End Limit*		*Travel Distance Limit*	
	Unsprinklered ft (m)	Sprinklered ft (m)	Unsprinklered ft (m)	Sprinklered ft (m)	Unsprinklered ft (m)	Sprinklered ft (m)
ASSEMBLY						
New	20/75[a,b] (6.1/23)	20/75[a,b] (6.1/23)	20[b] (6.1)	20[b] (6.1)	150[c] (45)	200[c] (60)
Existing	20/75[a, b] (6.1/23)	20/75[a,b] (6.1/23)	20[b] (6.1)	20[b] (6.1)	150[c] (45)	200[c] (60)
EDUCATIONAL						
New	75 (23)	75 (23)	20 (6.1)	20 (6.1)	150 (45)	200 (60)
Existing	75 (23)	75 (23)	20 (6.1)	20 (6.1)	150 (45)	200 (60)
New Day-Care Center	NR[d,e]	NR[d,e]	20 (6.1)	20 (6.1)	150[f] (45)	200[f] (60)
Existing Day-Care Center	NR[d,e]	NR[d,e]	20 (6.1)	20 (6.1)	150[f] (45)	200[f] (60)
HEALTH CARE						
New	NR[d]	NR[d]	30 (9.1)	30 (9.1)	NA[g]	200[f] (60)
Existing	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	150[f] (45)	200[f] (60)
New Ambulatory Care	NR[d]	NR[d]	30 (9.1)	30 (9.1)	150[f] (45)	200[f] (60)
Existing Ambulatory Care	NR[d]	NR[d]	50 (15)	50 (15)	150[f] (45)	200[f] (60)
DETENTION AND CORRECTIONAL						
New-Use Conditions II, III, IV	50 (15)	100 (30)	50 (15)	50 (15)	150[f] (45)	200[f] (60)
V	50 (15)	100 (30)	20 (6.1)	20 (6.1)	150[f] (45)	200[f] (60)
Existing-Use Conditions II, III, IV, V	50[h] (15)	100[h] (30)	NR[d]	NR[d]	150[f] (45)	200[f] (60)
RESIDENTIAL						
Hotels and Dormitories						
New	35[i] (10.7)	50[i] (15)	35 (10.7)	50 (15)	175[f,j] (53)	325[f,j] (99)
Existing	35[i] (10.7)	50[i] (15)	50 (15)	50 (15)	175[f,j] (53)	325[f,j] (99)
Apartments						
New	35[i] (10.7)	50[i] (15)	35 (10.7)	50 (15)	175[f,j] (53)	325[f,j] (99)
Existing	35[i] (10.7)	50[i] (15)	50 (15)	50 (15)	175[f,j] (53)	325[f,j] (99)
Board and Care						
Small, New and Existing	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]
Large, New	NA	125[k] (38.1)	NA	15 (15)	NA	325[f,j] (99)
Large, Existing	110 (33.5)	160 (48.8)	50 (15)	50 (15)	175[f,j] (53)	325[f,j] (99)
Lodging and Rooming Houses	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]
One- and Two-Family Dwellings	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]
MERCANTILE						
Class A, B, C						
New	75 (23)	100 (30)	20 (6.1)	50 (15)	100 (30)	200 (60)
Existing	75 (23)	100 (30)	50 (15)	50 (15)	150 (45)	200 (60)
Open-Air Covered Mall	NR[d]	NR[d]	0 (0)	0 (0)	NR[d]	NR[d]
New	75 (23)	100 (30)	20 (6.1)	50 (15)	100 (30)	400[j] (120)
Existing	75 (23)	100 (30)	50 (15)	50 (15)	150 (45)	400[j] (120)

BUSINESS						
New	75[m] (23)	100[m] (30)	20 (6.1)	50 (15)	200 (60)	300 (91)
Existing	75[m] (23)	100[m] (30)	50 (15)	50 (15)	200 (60)	300 (91)
INDUSTRIAL						
General	50 (15)	100 (30)	50 (15)	50 (15)	200[n] (60)	250[n] (75)
Special Purpose	50 (15)	100 (30)	50 (15)	50 (15)	300[p] (91)	400[p] (122)
High Hazard	0 (0)	0 (0)	0 (0)	0 (0)	75 (23)	75 (23)
Aircraft-Servicing Hangars, Ground Floor	50[p] (15)	50[p] (15)	50[p] (15)	50[p] (15)	[o]	[o]
Aircraft-Servicing Hangars, Mezzanine Floor	50[p] (15)	50[p] (15)	50[p] (15)	50[p] (15)	75 (23)	75 (23)
STORAGE						
Low Hazard	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]	NR[d]
Ordinary Hazard	50 (15)	100 (30)	50 (15)	100 (30)	200 (60)	400 (122)
High Hazard	0 (0)	0 (0)	0 (0)	0 (0)	75 (23)	75 (23)
Parking Garages, Open	50 (15)	50 (15)	50 (15)	50 (15)	200 (60)	300 (91)
Parking Garages, Enclosed	50 (15)	50 (15)	50 (15)	50 (15)	150 (45)	200 (60)
Aircraft Storage Hangars, Ground Floor	50[p] (15)	100[p] (30)	50[p] (15)	50[p] (15)		
Aircraft-Servicing Hangars, Mezzanine Floor	50[p] (15)	75[p] (23)	50[p] (15)	50[p] (15)	75 (23)	75 (23)
Underground Spaces in Grain Elevators	50[p] (15)	50[p] (15)	NR[d,p]	NR[d,p]	200 (60)	400 (122)

Source: Adapted with permission from the *Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed., © 1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

[a]20 ft (6.1 m) for common path serving >50 persons; 75 ft (23 m) for common path serving <50 persons.

[b]See Source, Chapters 8 and 9, for special considerations for aisle accessways, aisles, and mezzanines.

[c]See Source, Chapters 8 and 9, for special considerations for smoke-protected assembly seating in arenas and stadia.

[d]No requirement.

[e]See Source, Sections 10–7 and 11–7 for requirement for second exit access based on room capacity or area.

[f]This dimension is for the total travel distance, assuming incremental portions have fully utilized their allowable maximums. For travel distance within the room, and from the room exit access door to the exit, see Source for the appropriate occupancy chapter.

[g]Not applicable.

[h]See Source, Chapter 15, for special considerations for existing common paths.

[i]This dimension is from the room/corridor or suite/corridor exit access door to the exit; thus it applies to corridor common path.

[j]See Source, appropriate occupancy chapter, for special travel distance considerations for exterior ways of exit access.

[k]See Source, Section 22–3, for requirement for second exit access based on room area.

[l]See Source, Sections 24–4 and 25–4, for special travel distance considerations in covered malls considered pedestrian ways.

[m]See Source, Chapters 26 and 27, for special common path considerations for single-tenant spaces.

[n]See Source, Chapter 28, for industrial occupancy special travel distance considerations.

[o]See Source, Chapters 28 and 29, for special requirements on spacing of doors in aircraft hangars.

[p]See Source, Chapters 28 and 29, for special requirements if high hazard.

TABLE 24.4 Summary of NFPA 101®, Life Safety Code®, Provisions for Occupant Load, and Exit Capacity

Occupancy	Occupant Load ft² (m²) per Person	Level Components Doors, Corridors, Horizontal Exits, Ramps	Stairs
Assembly			
Less-concentrated use without fixed seating	15 Net (1.4)	0.2	0.3
Concentrated use without fixed seating	7 Net (0.65)	0.2	0.3
Fixed seating	Actual number of seats	0.2	0.3
Educational			
Classrooms	20 Net (1.9)	0.2	0.3
Shops and vocational	50 Net (4.6)	0.2	0.3
Care centers	35 Net (3.3)	0.2	0.3
Health care		NAS AS	NAS AS
Sleeping departments	120 Gross (11.1)	0.5 0.2	0.6 0.3
Treatment departments	240 Gross (22.3)	0.5 0.2	0.6 0.3
Residential	200 Gross (18.6)	0.2	
Board and care	200 Gross (18.6)	0.2	0.3
Mercantile			
Street floor and sales basement	30 Gross (3.7)	0.2	0.3
Multiple street floors (each)	40 Gross (3.7)	0.2	0.3
Other floors	60 Gross (5.6)	0.2	0.3
Storage–shipping	300 Gross (27.9)	0.2	0.3
Malls	See Code	0.2	0.3
Business	100 Gross (9.3)	0.2	0.3
Industrial	100 Gross (9.3)	0.2	0.3
Detention and correctional	120 Gross (11.1)	0.2	0.3

Source: Adapted with permission from the *Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed., © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269.

NAS = nonsprinklered; AS = sprinklered.

minute/22 in. (559 mm) of width, but more recently, peak flows of only 24 persons/minute/22 in. (559 mm) have been observed. With a typical exit stair, a 15-story building housing 60 persons per floor per stair can be evacuated in about 9 minutes. However, with the same stair in a 50-story building housing 240 persons per floor per stair, evacuation will take at least 2 hours, 11 minutes! When doors are held open at each floor to admit occupants fleeing the fire, smoke can readily enter the stairwell. Moreover, it is becoming increasingly common for people to refuse to evacuate a high-rise building, placing their faith in fire-extinguishing systems instead of facing a daunting descent through many floors of fire stairs.

Because of the impracticality of rapid evacuation, larger buildings are required to provide *refuge areas* where smoke penetration is less likely. For example, stairs can be designed to hold *all* the occupants, in which case the design of discharge is based more on *capacity* than on *flow*. At maximum crowding, about 3 ft² (0.28 m²) per person is recommended. Again, smokeproof towers will be safer in such a design, although stairs can be pressurized with outdoor air. These details related to smoke control are presented in the following section.

(f) Property Protection

One of the earliest design concerns in this category is that the site should permit access for firefighting equipment. Ideally, fire trucks should be able to pull alongside each exterior wall. If accessibility is limited by adjacent buildings, and roadways alongside buildings and other measures are impractical, more reliance must be placed on internal fire-suppression systems. Another factor is the amount of time it will ordinarily take for firefighters to reach a site. In congested urban areas or remote rural ones, the time that elapses between the alarm and the arrival of firefighters can permit a fire to grow to unstoppable proportions. In these cases, emphasis again shifts to internal fire-suppression systems.

TABLE 24.5 Requirements for Exit Stairs

		Existing Stairs	
	New Stairs	**Class A[a]**	**Class B[a]**
Minimum width clear of all obstructions[b]:			
Total occupant load[c] = 50 or more	44 in. (1.12 m)	44 in. (1.12 m)	44 in. (1.12 m)
= less than 50	36 in. (0.91 m)	36 in. (0.91 m)	36 in. (0.91 m)
Maximum height of risers	7 in. (178 mm)	7½ in. (191 mm)	8 in. (203 mm)
Minimum height of risers	4 in. (102 mm)		
Minimum tread depth	11 in. (279 mm)	10 in. (244 mm)	9 in. (229 mm)
Minimum headroom	6 ft 8 in. (2.03 m)	6 ft 8 in. (2.03 m)	6 ft 8 in. (2.03 m)
Maximum height between landings	12 ft (3.7 m)	12 ft (3.7 m)	12 ft (3.7 m)
Minimum dimension of landings in direction of travel	[d]	[e]	[e]
Doors opening immediately on stairs, without landing at least the width of door	No	No	No

Source: Adapted with permission from the *Fire Protection Handbook,* 18th ed., © 1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

[a]Class A and B stairs are defined as those having the tread and riser dimensions as listed in this table.

[b]Except projections not exceeding 3½ in. (89 mm) at and below handrail height on each side.

[c]Total occupant load includes all floors served by stairway.

[d]Every landing shall have a dimension, measured in the direction of travel, equal to the width of the stair. Such dimension need not exceed 4 ft (1.22 m) when the stair has a straight run.

[e]Stairways and intermediate landings shall continue with no decrease in width along the direction of exit travel.

Another design concern is adequate water to fight the fire. Reliance on city water mains is not always a good solution. Elevated tanks on buildings can help in the early moments of firefighting, but their capacity is soon exhausted. Some buildings therefore rely on lakes or enclosed reservoirs for a firefighting water supply (see the discussion in Section 24.3).

Exposure protection is becoming common in areas where highly flammable surroundings pose a serious threat of fires originating *outside* a building. Candidates for exposure protection include buildings surrounded by older wooden buildings, bordered by lumberyards or other commercial activities that utilize highly flammable materials, or even bordered by open fields of dry grass or brush. Exposure protection guards against heat transfer by radiation and convective currents and against direct fire transfer via flying embers. Exposure protection begins with the use of nonflammable materials for the building's exterior. Erecting firewalls between the building and a fire-threatening neighbor is a more drastic, but sometimes necessary, step. Exposure protection sometimes includes external water sprinkler systems, in which a spray head is placed over (or under) openings such as windows or doors. Sprinkler systems that soak the roof can play a cooling role on summer days, as well as a fire exposure protection role. Exterior doors can be chosen for their fire-delaying characteristics. Windows can also be protected by fire-rated shutters that are designed to close automatically at high temperatures (Fig. 24.5). Sometimes exterior

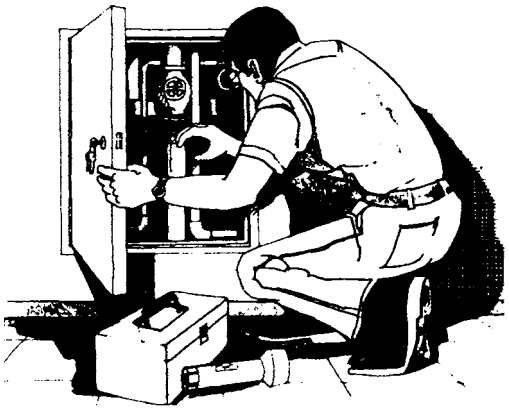


Fig. 24.5 *Rolling metal shutters, housed in valences above each window, punctuate the exterior of this downtown Pittsburgh building opening onto a narrow street. The shutters can protect the building's contents from an exterior fire, but can also protect the narrow street from a fire inside the building. Note the exterior fire escapes across this narrow street. These are no longer permitted, partly because smoke plumes rising from windows can make such stairs unusable long before heat from a fire becomes a threat.*

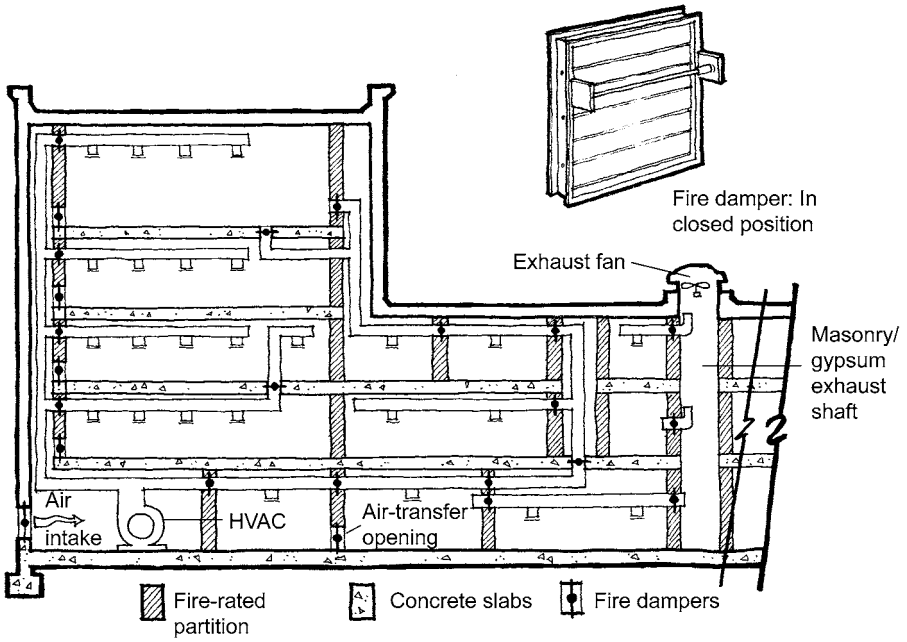
protection is necessary to protect the *exit discharge* from flames originating *inside* the building, as with narrow alleyways like that in Fig. 24.5 in downtown Pittsburgh.

Compartmentation has become increasingly important as buildings have become lightweight structures incorporating decreased fire resistance and open floor areas that encourage the spread of fires. Building codes establish maximum floor area limits based upon construction type and occupancy. If a building's floor area exceeds such limits, it must be subdivided by firewalls into areas that fall within the code limitations. Automatic fire sprinklers allow for increased floor area limits, which can be a motivator for including sprinklers in a building context where they are not mandatory.

Openings in the firewalls must be protected by fire-rated doors and by fire dampers in forced-air systems (Fig. 24.6). As important as compartmentation is in buildings with large floor areas, however, the vertical spread of fire (its natural path) poses a more serious problem. Fire-resistive barriers to limit vertical fire spread are also part of the compartmentation requirements found in codes. Thus, strict requirements to protect vertical openings and pathways are found in the fire codes.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 24.6 *Openings in firewalls are protected by various devices. (a) Access doors to controls and other elements within firewalls should be of fire-rated construction. (b) Locations of fire dampers in a typical forced-air system—at firewalls, partitions, ceilings, floors, and shaft enclosures. (Part b reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook, *18th ed.; copyright © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269. Redrawn by Dain Carlson.)*

Concealed spaces are found in many contemporary buildings, especially over suspended ceilings but also behind walls, within pipe chases, in attics, under raised floors, and in other places. All such spaces can offer paths for the spread of fire. The designer can utilize noncombustible materials, as far as possible, in such spaces. Another important step is to include automatic fire detection and suppression systems in these uninhabited spaces—and often the use of oxygen-deprivation approaches to fire suppression. Another design response is compartmentation: using firestops (or firewalls) to break up otherwise continuous concealed spaces. Many codes, for example, require firestopping around each 1000 ft^2 (93 m^2) of suspended ceiling area and every 2000 ft^2 (186 m^2) of attic floor area.

Structural protection, another important requirement, allows a building to continue to stand during a fire and enables it to be salvaged rather than demolished after a fire. Codes require various protective layers for structural materials. In order of importance, it is usually most critical to protect columns, girders, beams, and, finally, the floor slab.

(g) Continuity of Operations

For most building functions, it is desirable to minimize the disruption of operation that a fire will cause. Design strategies to encourage continuity of operations include special fire alarm/suppression systems for especially critical operations areas (control rooms, for example), the design of HVAC systems to allow for 100% outside air (to aid in purging a building of smoke), and provision for the speedy removal of the water dumped on a fire from a sprinkler system. The floors in sprinkler-served buildings should be (yet rarely are) waterproof; waterproofing should also be carried up walls, columns, pipes, and other elements to a height of 4 to 6 in. (100 to 150 mm) above the floor. These provisions will help to minimize the water damage associated with fire-suppression efforts.

24.2 SMOKE CONTROL

As it has become increasingly evident that smoke kills more people in building fires than either heat or structural collapse, it has also become more common to design for smoke control as well as for resistance to fire and for fire suppression. The objectives of smoke control are the same as those for fire resistance: to reduce deaths and property damage due to smoke and provide for continuity of operations with minimal smoke interference. Airflow management systems have been used for several generations; laboratory buildings and commercial kitchens equipped with fume/exhaust hoods offer a familiar example. Several options for smoke control are now readily available for ordinary building design—and required by most building codes.

(a) Factors in Smoke Control

The heat of a fire produces air pressure and buoyancy that aid the spread of smoke well beyond the scene of the fire itself. In low buildings, the smoke is spread primarily by heat-induced convective air motion and by the differential air pressures caused by the expansion of gases as the temperature increases. In tall buildings, the stack effect complicates this pattern of smoke spread, encouraging the rapid rise of heated air within vertical shafts. Wind forces from outside are also more likely to be a factor in tall buildings. (Wind velocities are usually higher with increasing distance from the ground surface.) Forced-air systems, so common in high-rise buildings, can also contribute to the spread of smoke. The interactions among fire, the stack effect, wind, building geometry, and HVAC systems are complex. Several detailed calculation techniques are available, as explained in two publications, NFPA 92A (2009) and NFPA 92B (2009). These methods include building and testing a scale model, using a series of closed-form algebraic equations, and modeling a compartment fire with the help of a computer. In the last category, a more modest *zone* approach divides a fire into two zones (upper and lower), and the calculations can be done on a personal computer. The more ambitious *field* approach uses computational fluid dynamics (CFD), requiring greater computer capacity but allowing the testing of numerous variations in approaches to fire and smoke control; fire growth, smoke spread, structural behavior, and occupant evacuation can be examined together. Results can be surprising, leading at times to counterintuitive solutions.

(b) Confinement

The most passive design response to smoke migration is to try to confine it to the fire area itself. Another technique is to exclude smoke from

specially protected areas, called *refuges*. Compartmentation is important in these approaches: Where firewalls cannot be used, partial smoke barriers (often called *curtain boards*) are suspended from the ceiling (Fig. 24.7) in an effort to trap the initial layer of hot air and smoke, and therefore to set off the fire detection/suppression system more quickly. As useful as these partial barriers can be in a fire's early stages, they quickly lose effectiveness as the smoke layer thickens, or as air pressure forces the smoke below the boards. Even in firewalls with fire-rated door protection, small cracks around such openings provide smoke paths, aided by the air pressures and velocities that fires can quickly produce. The typical "fire" barrier is not very resistant to spreading smoke, and smoke control based solely on confinement must be closely linked to an effective early detection/suppression technique such as a sprinkler system.

Compartmentation may not always be the best strategy. In the Potomac Mills Mall in Prince William County, Virginia, a 156,000-ft^2 (14,493-m^2) addition to the shopping mall uses low walls and a high ceiling. The walls separating tenant spaces and public corridors are 12 ft (3.7 m) high, while the ceiling is at 17 ft (5.2 m), resulting in a large open volume of air. Smoke rising from a fire within a store can certainly spread well beyond that store, but will collect overhead in such a large space that evacuation of the mall can be completed well before the smoke reaches the occupied zone near the floor. A computer model indicated that 20 minutes into a fire (and assuming *no* sprinkler operation), the smoke layer would have dropped to 12.3 ft (3.75 m) above the floor. If the walls were extended to the ceiling, this same building would experience, in the same 20 minutes, within the origin store of the fire, smoke all the way down to the floor. With such a solution, CFD analysis may well be required before approval is granted by the code authority.

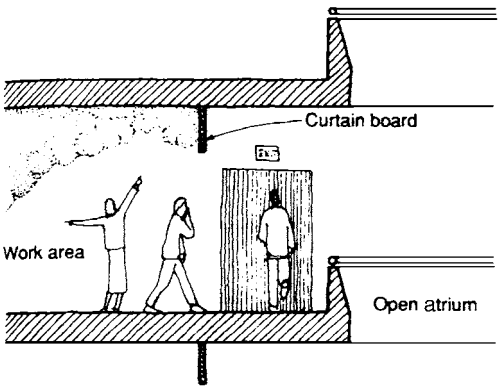


Fig. 24.7 *Smoke barriers (curtain boards) are useful in a fire's early stages. By confining the initial layer of heated air and smoke produced by a fire, they help to slow the spread of smoke while making the early detection and suppression of the fire more likely.*

(c) Dilution

For a limited time in a fire's early stages, the dilution of smoke with 100% outdoor air (provided by the HVAC system) may make conditions bearable during occupant evacuation. Large quantities of fresh air are needed in so short a time, however, that dilution alone is rarely sufficient for smoke control, particularly when the smoke contains toxic fumes. When a dilution system is combined with both confinement and early detection/suppression systems, it becomes more feasible and attractive. Dilution systems that dump large quantities of outdoor air into refuge areas (including stairs) can create such high pressures within the refuge that smoke cannot enter through cracks around doors. When doors to the area are opened (as when more people enter the refuge), however, dilution systems that rely on a conventional HVAC system can rarely provide sufficient pressure to exclude smoke.

Fan-driven dilution systems raise several issues. Is the fan located where fire will not affect its performance and where its air intake can be kept free of smoke? Given the multiple possibilities for building fire locations, this is a difficult promise to make. "Dedicated" systems, independent of the building's HVAC system, are often favored to enable such emergency equipment to be isolated and because such huge quantities of air for relatively small spaces are well beyond the capability of the typical HVAC system. Where should the fresh air supply outlets be located? Most certainly, *below* the level of smoke accumulation so as not to drive smoke downward. (This may suggest using an under-floor air supply distribution system for such a purpose.) In a stair, at what intervals should fresh air be supplied? Some fire engineers say every 3 floors, others say every 10, but supplying all the fresh air from either the top or the bottom is *not* recommended; it is too likely that open doors near a single source location would deplete fresh air for the rest of the stair. At what velocity should fresh air be supplied? The

recommended maximum is 200 fpm (1 m/s) to avoid stirring the smoke layer and inviting its descent. The designer must consider that high rates of flow at low velocities will result in very large grilles being required within the space.

(d) Exhaust

Single-purpose smoke exhaust systems that function only in a fire are becoming more common. These systems employ both air velocity and air pressure to help control smoke movement. As with dilution systems, high velocities are avoided so that fresh air is not drawn up through the smoke layer. Such systems are particularly useful in large-volume atrium spaces, as in Fig. 24.8. Smoke accumulating at the ceiling is removed, while fresh air is supplied lower in the space. If smoke can be removed at the same rate at which it is generated, the smoke layer can be kept from descending. Although they involve a greater initial expense, because they require special fans and special smoke-exhaust shafts, such systems have several advantages over simple confinement or dilution approaches:

1. They can help prevent toxic gases from entering refuge areas (particularly when there is a dilution or outdoor air supply to such areas).
2. They can help reduce concentrations of dangerous gases, potentially making conditions somewhat more tenable for those exposed to smoke-affected spaces.
3. By creating desirable patterns of air pressure, they can reduce smoke migration to areas of a building not directly involved with a fire event.
4. With them, the stack effect, complicated by buoyancy and wind, is less likely to overcome the smoke-control system in a tall building.
5. They can help to remove smoke that remains after the fire is extinguished.

Each of the two Petronas Towers in Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, is occupied by as many as 18,000 workers during the day. As these were the tallest buildings in the world at the turn of the twenty-first century, a majority of these workers are well beyond the range of ordinary fire-rescue operations. Smoke exhaust, stair pressurization, and vestibule pressurization systems are installed, and each floor has isolation dampers, controlled by the fire alarm system, wherever air ducts serve multiple floors. Because each floor has its own air-handling system (using floor-by-floor fan rooms), however, vertical ductwork is minimized. There are both a main and a secondary fire command center for each of the towers and associated lower buildings.

(e) HVAC Systems, Sprinklers, and Smoke

Two systems within a building must be closely coordinated with smoke exhaust systems: the HVAC system and the fire detection/suppression (usually sprinkler) system. As the fire detection system activates the smoke exhaust fans, it must also override the conventional HVAC system operation, usually by switching to 100% outside supply air and simultaneously blocking the return air system. This action pressurizes each HVAC zone to form a barrier against smoke (Fig. 24.9) and keeps smoke out of the return duct system. If the HVAC system is variable-air-volume (VAV), all supply control valves (dampers) must be moved to their full open position. If additional protection is needed for refuge areas, additional air supply to such areas can be provided, perhaps by a separate (smoke dilution) system, as described earlier.

An automatic sprinkler system can reduce the extent of smoke development by quickly extinguishing a fire; conversely, a sprinkler system can affect the functioning of smoke exhaust systems, both by creating a curtain of water that inhibits the movement of smoke and by cooling the smoke, thus reducing its buoyancy. As less buoyant smoke descends, visibility is reduced and the danger of smoke inhalation increases, particularly in spaces with ordinary ceiling heights. The buoyancy of smoke is a key factor in the success of a smoke exhaust shaft, whose intake is located at ceiling level within each zone. Although these two systems may appear to work at cross-purposes, suppression of a fire is obviously as important a goal as smoke control. Sprinkler systems typically suppress fires so quickly that the size of the accompanying smoke exhaust systems can generally be reduced.

When the fire-suppression system relies on oxygen displacement (such as with carbon dioxide or "clean agents"), smoke exhaust systems clearly pose a threat—special attention is required if both systems are to be used. Luckily, oxygen displacement systems are often used in nonhabitable spaces, where smoke evacuation is less of an issue.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 24.8 *The Rock and Roll Hall of Fame and Museum on Cleveland's lakefront (a) features a tall, pyramidal interior space. (b) At the apex, a large horizontal grille marks the smoke exhaust system intake. Smoke naturally accumulates here, and can be removed while dedicated sources of fresh air operate at ground level around the perimeter. (When hot days alternate with cool nights, such a system could be used for night ventilation of thermal mass.)*

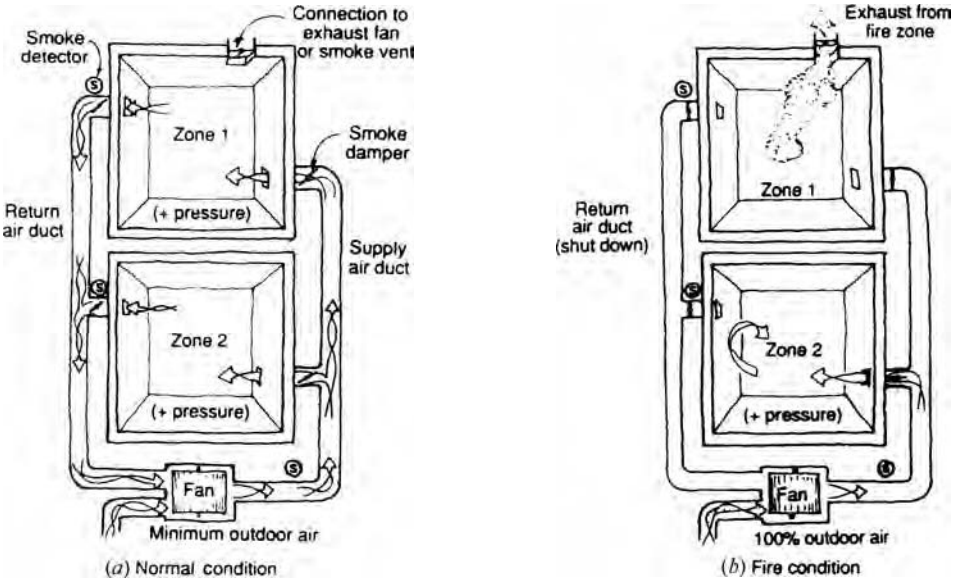


Fig. 24.9 *Smoke control by a smoke exhaust system. (a) The conventional HVAC system is shown operating under normal minimum outdoor air supply conditions. (b) When smoke detectors trigger the smoke exhaust system, dedicated fans begin to exhaust smoke, through a special duct, from the affected area only. Simultaneously, the conventional system undergoes two changes: all supply air becomes 100% outside air (for smoke dilution), and all return openings are closed off (to pressurize all nonfire areas, to keep smoke out of them and out of the return duct system).*

(f) Automatic Ventilating Hatches

These heat-and-smoke venting devices (that operate without fans) are required by code in selected occupancies (such as stages and certain warehouse/storage facilities). (ICC 2006a, 2006b) They may also be installed (Fig. 24.10) in other building types as part of an engineered smoke control system. The hatches open individually as heat or smoke from a fire triggers their control devices. As a result, indoor conditions near the fire are improved for firefighters, and firefighters on the roof are quickly alerted to the general location of the fire below.

In summary, designers can provide several components that aid in the exhaust of smoke and the provision of ventilation and improved visibility for firefighters and occupants in almost any building: dedicated smoke exhaust and dilution systems, emergency controls on HVAC systems, operable windows and skylights (to facilitate ventilation and

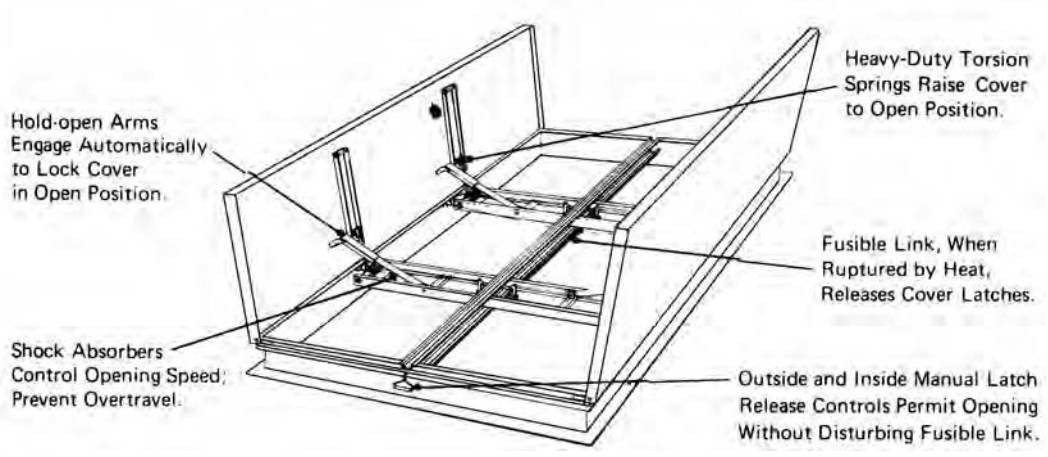


Fig. 24.10 *Automatic heat-and-smoke roof hatch ventilators, primarily for one-story commercial and industrial buildings. (Courtesy of Inryco, Inc.)*

occupant escape), and heat-and-smoke hatches in roofs.

24.3 WATER FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

The most popular medium for building fire suppression is water, which is readily available and relatively low in cost. Water cools, smothers, emulsifies, and dilutes. As it turns to vapor, it removes 970 Btu/lb of water (2256 kJ/kg) at atmospheric pressure and its volume increases 1700 times—a process that hinders access to the oxygen needed by the fire. Water has several disadvantages that sometimes preclude its use for fire suppression: it damages most building contents, including interior surfaces; as a stream, it conducts electricity readily (less readily as a spray); and many flammable oils will float on water while continuing to burn. Where these factors are major considerations, other suppression media can be considered (see Section 24.4).

Fire-suppressing systems are commonly combined with smoke control systems; Fig. 24.11 shows a typical combination of provisions in a one-story building. Taller buildings, especially those with multistory interior spaces (atria), present a special challenge (Fig. 24.12). A typical approach is to construct an approximately 6-ft- (1.8-m) deep curtain

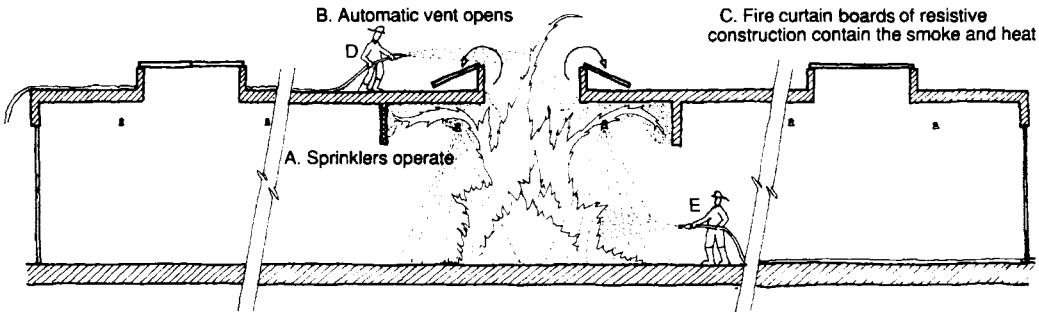


Fig. 24.11 *Fire protection for large-area, one-story buildings showing the fire suppression (sprinkler) system (A) and the smoke control system (B, C). Locations D and E are relatively safe positions for firefighters.*

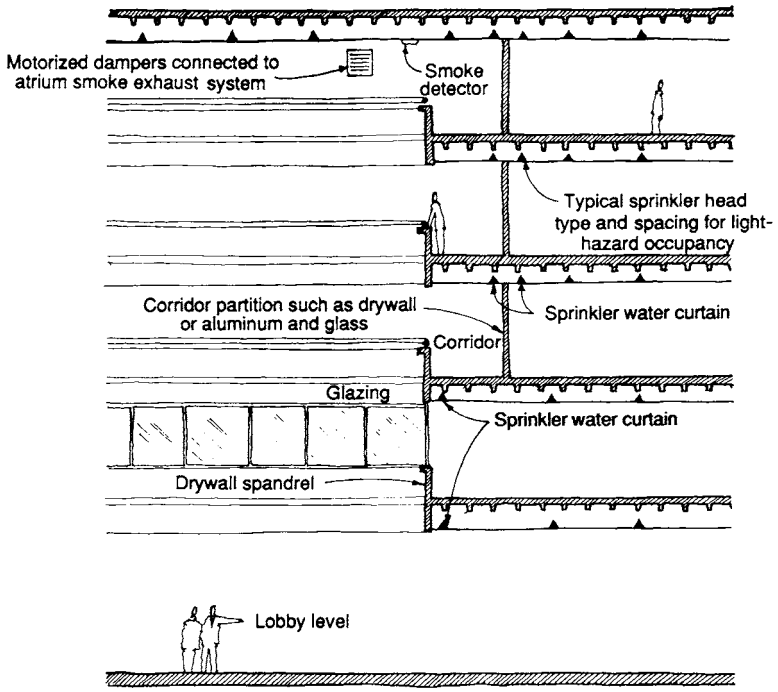


Fig. 24.12 *Fire protection in an atrium-type office building: section showing the detection/suppression system and provisions for smoke control.*

board (or fire spandrel) at the opening to the atrium on each floor. Smoke detectors, motorized dampers, and sprinklers can be combined in various ways. At the lobby level, the atrium floor level, and at any office floors open to the atrium, sprinklers at about 6 ft (1.8 m) o.c. (on center) will provide a water curtain at the edge of the atrium opening. Where glazing is used at the atrium's perimeter, the glazing frames sometimes can be designed for considerable thermal expansion, and sprinklers can provide a water curtain on the office side of the glazing. Fire-rated glazings and their frames are listed for both heat resistance and water pressure from a hose stream. Where balcony corridors adjoin the atrium, two sprinkler water curtains can be provided, one on either side of the partitions between corridor and office space. The smoke exhaust system often can provide six air changes per hour (ACH) for all spaces that open onto the atrium.

(a) Standpipes and Hoses

Standpipes and hoses (Fig. 24.13) with a separate water reserve, upfeed pumping, and/or fire department connections are listed in three classes and five types. The major differences are whether the system is for first-aid or full-scale firefighting and whether the system has an automatic water supply or a manual one.

Class I systems are for full-scale firefighting, and are typically required in both sprinklered and unsprinklered buildings more than three stories high, as well as in malls. (This requirement is based on the substantial time required to lay out hoses from outdoor fire connections in such buildings.) This system is for use by trained firefighters using 2½-in. (64-mm) hose connections at designated locations. Class I is becoming the system of choice as use of the next two system types declines.

Class II systems are for first-aid firefighting before the fire trucks arrive. These systems use 1½-in. (38-mm) hose connections and typically provide access to a hose, nozzle, and hose rack (Fig. 24.14) in each specified location. The difficulty for untrained people to manage a 100-ft (30-m) hose containing a huge flow (100 gpm [378 L/min] or more) has led to a decline in the use of this system, although it can be found in large unsprinklered buildings and in special hazard areas such

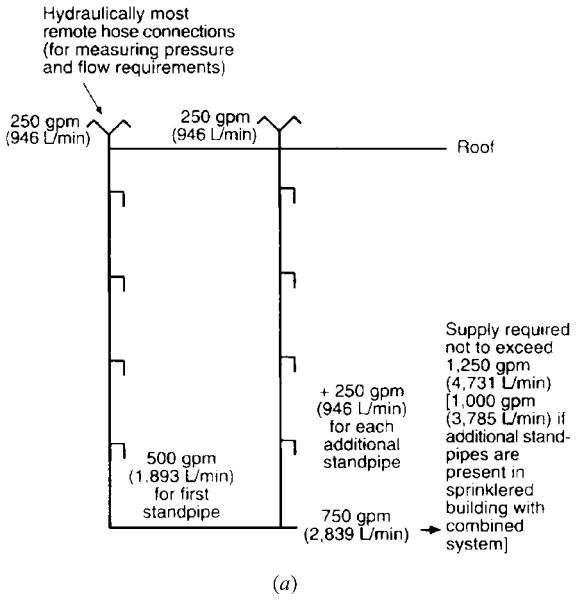
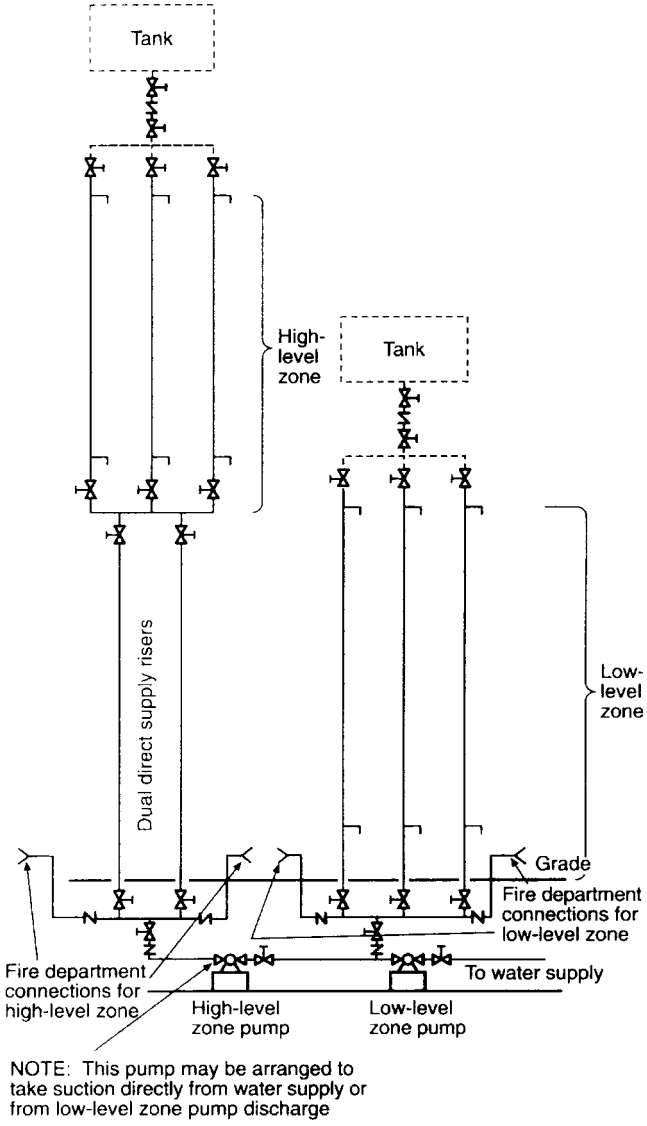
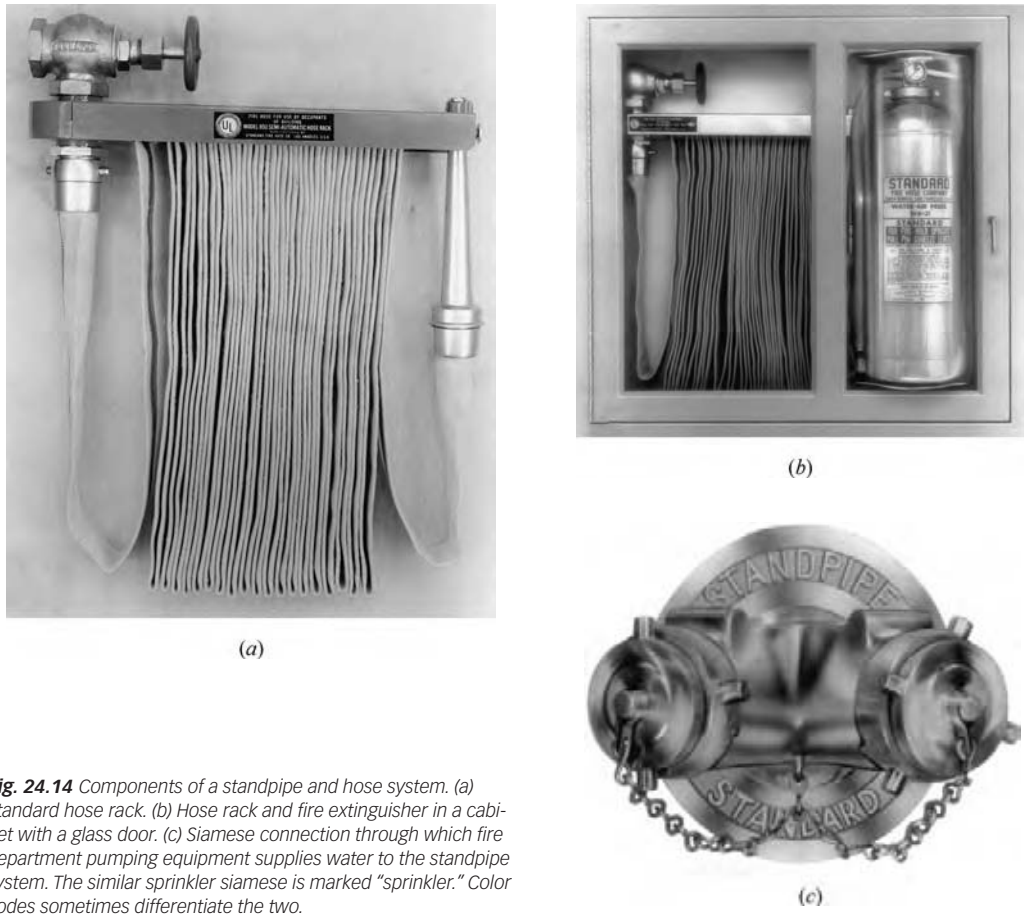


Fig. 24.13 *Standpipe system variations. (a) Basic flow rate requirements for Class I and Class III systems. (b) Example of the pipe schedule sizing method for a Class I system. (c) Multiple-zone system. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed.; © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269.)*



(*c*)

Fig. 24.13 *(continued)*



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 24.14 *Components of a standpipe and hose system. (a) Standard hose rack. (b) Hose rack and fire extinguisher in a cabinet with a glass door. (c) Siamese connection through which fire department pumping equipment supplies water to the standpipe system. The similar sprinkler siamese is marked "sprinkler." Color codes sometimes differentiate the two.*

as stages. Many fire departments would rather the building occupants evacuate than try to manage such large hoses and water quantities. Significant water damage is a potential threat when hoses cannot be controlled.

Class III systems combine the characteristics of Classes I and II, thus serving both for first-aid and for full-scale firefighting. Hose connections of both sizes are provided (with adapters) at each specified location. The disadvantages of Class II systems also apply to Class III, and their use is declining for the same reasons.

"*Combined*" systems are either Class I or III standpipe systems that also supply water to a sprinkler system.

The standpipe system types are as follows:

Automatic-wet systems. The pipes are filled with water and are connected to a water supply capable of automatically meeting the firefighting demands. Water flows immediately upon opening of a hose valve.

Automatic-dry systems. The pipes are filled with pressurized air, and are connected to a water supply capable of automatically meeting the firefighting demands. Through a device such as a dry-pipe valve, water replaces the air when a hose valve is opened.

Semiautomatic-dry systems. The pipes are filled with air and are connected to a water supply capable of automatically meeting the firefighting demands. Through a device such as a deluge valve, water replaces the air when both a remote sensing device at the hose station and a hose valve are opened.

Manual-dry systems. The pipes are filled with air, and there is no connection to a water supply system other than that provided by the fire department (as in Fig. 24.14*c*).

Manual-wet systems. The pipes are filled with water, with a connection to a domestic water source that is used merely to fill and test the system. Water for firefighting is provided by the fire department.

Minimum flow rates and minimum and maximum pressure are all addressed during the design of standpipe systems. Two methods of sizing, the pipe schedule and the hydraulic method, are used. Neither is detailed here; see NFPA 14 (2007) for the procedures. The required supply flow rates are outlined in Fig. 24.13*a*. As a preliminary design guideline (Fig. 24.13*b*), Class I and III standpipes not exceeding 100 ft (30 m) in height must be a minimum of 4 in. (102 mm) nominal pipe size. Class I and III standpipes more than 100 ft (30 m) in height must be a minimum of 6 in. (152 mm) nominal pipe size (although the topmost 100 ft [30 m] may be a minimum of 4 in. [102 mm] nominal pipe size). For combined standpipe and sprinkler systems, regardless of height, a minimum of 6 in. (152 mm) nominal pipe size is required.

For Class I and III systems, a minimum hose pressure of 100 psi (690 kPa) is now required because of the widespread use of fog nozzles (rather than stream nozzles). The maximum hose pressure (also the maximum for sprinklers) is 175 psi (1207 kPa).

Water supply systems for firefighting may use roof tanks or fire pumps. It is not practical to store enough water on the roof for a protracted firefighting period, and it is usually assumed that a half-hour supply will be more than enough to provide for the presumed time it takes the fire engines to arrive. When the system is used by the fire department, its pumps are attached to the street siamese (Fig. 24.14*c*) to deliver water from street hydrants or the building's "secondary source." The check valve closest to the siamese in use opens, and the check valves at the tank close to prevent the water from rising uselessly in the tank. After the engines are disconnected from the siamese, the water between the siamese and the adjacent check valve drains out through a ball drip so that it does not freeze.

An overhead tank is considered a most dependable source, but the height required can be architecturally undesirable and a considerable seismic disadvantage. In such a case, upfeed fire pumps (Fig. 24.13*c*) operating automatically to deliver water to higher stories may be used. Another option in this case is a pneumatic tank that delivers water using the pressure of the air that is compressed in the upper portion of the tank.

A standpipe zone in a high-rise building is determined by hydraulic calculation so that maximum hose pressures are not exceeded. Fire standpipes and their hoses (for full-scale firefighting) are now recommended to be located on the landings of fire stairs, from which personnel or firefighters can approach a fire with charged hoses. This enables the hose connection to be made in a safe (relatively smoke-free) place, half a floor below the fire. Awkwardly, it means that the door to the stair will be held open by the hose, but the risk to occupants using the stairs is considered to be outweighed by the advantage to the firefighters.

(b) Sprinkler System Design Impacts

Unlike a fire hose, a sprinkler is likely to be already positioned above the point of a fire and is capable of being deployed in seconds, not minutes. Sprinkler systems are widely relied on as proven automatic fire suppressers. (They have come a very long way from the early water-filled bucket suspended by a black powder fuse; when the fuse was lit by a fire, it blew up the bucket, dispersing the water and theoretically dousing the fire.)

However, designers must remember that the use of sprinklers does *not* give one a license to ignore fire code limitations, even though many codes provide more leeway for sprinklered buildings. In addition, provision must be made for an adequate water supply, adequate water pressure, and backup power for pumping (if pumps are required). It may be wise to provide for water drainage during and after a fire, particularly in multistory buildings. A sprinkler system may require large supply pipes and valves, fire pumps, and access for system monitoring and maintenance. These elements are generally considered unsightly and must be integrated into the architectural design. Sprinklers can afford opportunities for integration with energy-conserving HVAC systems (Section 24.3k). Also, the cost of a sprinkler system installation can usually be recovered rather quickly through reductions in fire insurance premiums.

Automatic sprinkler systems usually consist of a horizontal pattern of pipes placed just below or within the ceilings of industrial buildings, warehouses, stores, theaters, offices, homes, and

other structures at risk from fire. These pipes are provided with sprinkler heads constructed such that abnormally high temperatures will cause them to open automatically and emit a fine water spray. NFPA 13 (2007) lists the detailed requirements for sprinkler systems (briefly referred to here) as well as numerous other regulations. In addition to pipes and sprinklers (discussed in the remainder of this section), several other system components are usually included.

Alarm Gong. An alarm gong mounted on the outside of the building warns of water flow through the alarm valve upon activation of a sprinkler head. This warning gives the building personnel an opportunity to make additional firefighting arrangements that can minimize loss and speed the termination of the fire; in this way, the sprinklers can be turned off in a timely manner to prevent excessive water damage to building contents after the fire is out. Sprinkler alarms commonly are also connected to private regional supervisory offices that communicate promptly with municipal fire departments upon receipt of a signal. All public buildings, and other buildings as required, should be provided with fire detection and alarm systems that indicate, in the custodian's office, the location of the fire.

Siamese Connections. Siamese connections permit fire engines to pump into the sprinkler system in a manner similar to that used for standpipe systems (Fig. 24.14*c*).

Provisions for Drainage. Sprinkler heads can release a great deal of water, most of which will remain unvaporized and quickly collect at floor level. In addition to waterproofing the floors and lower walls, columns, and other elements, provision should be made, where possible, for gravity drainage of water. Scuppers in exterior walls are preferable to floor drains, which are more easily clogged by debris. Scuppers are provided with hoods that protect against infiltration, birds, and/or insects.

Water Supply. In tall buildings, sprinklers (and standpipes) can be supplied with water from elevated storage tanks used for domestic water. These tanks supply a constant pressure on the distribution lines, store sufficient water to balance supply and demand, prevent excessive starting and stopping of a fire pump, and provide a dependable fire reserve. The last factor has been critical in the calculation of fire insurance rates. When gravity tanks are used with sprinkler systems, they should provide enough water to operate 25% of the sprinkler heads for 20 minutes. As in the case of standpipe and hose systems, this provision gives the fire department a chance to arrive and take over.

The principal objections to the use of tanks have been their unsightliness, the problem of freezing, and—in the case of large buildings—the tanks' tremendous weight, with resulting added structural costs.

Skidmore, Owings & Merrill, in their design for General Mills' central office building in suburban Minneapolis, turned to automatically controlled pumping systems instead of elevated storage (Fig. 24.15). For the General Mills building, the fire underwriters could have required at least 50,000 gal (189,250 L) of residual water in the tank for emergency purposes, which would have meant about 100,000 gal (378,500 L) of elevated storage. The alternative chosen was a reinforced-concrete structure placed underground to one side of the building and covered with 3 to 5 ft (0.9 to 1.5 m) of earth. Small vents rising from this reservoir blend in with the lawn and landscaped shrubbery above.

The saving in structural steel tended to make the overall cost comparable to that of an elevated tank of the same capacity. The savings were made possible chiefly by refined automatic-pump control. The underground reservoir eliminates the problems of an unsightly appearance and great weight, but the other usual advantages of an elevated tank—reliability in case of fire, minimum starting and stopping of motors, and the maintenance of pressure while balancing supply and demand—must be equaled in the automatic pump control circuitry. This is not as simple as it might at first seem. Factors such as fluctuations in demand, friction within the pipes, elevations, starting surges from the pumps, and pressure-flow characteristics of the pumps themselves must be considered. Various combinations of these issues undoubtedly account for the continued use of elevated tanks. The trend, however, is toward the use of more sophisticated pump control.

A continuous flow from the General Mills deep-well pumps through both domestic and fire reservoirs prevents the water from becoming stale and rancid. The fire reservoir is given necessary priority over the domestic reservoir by means of a simple weir. Even if the domestic reservoir were completely

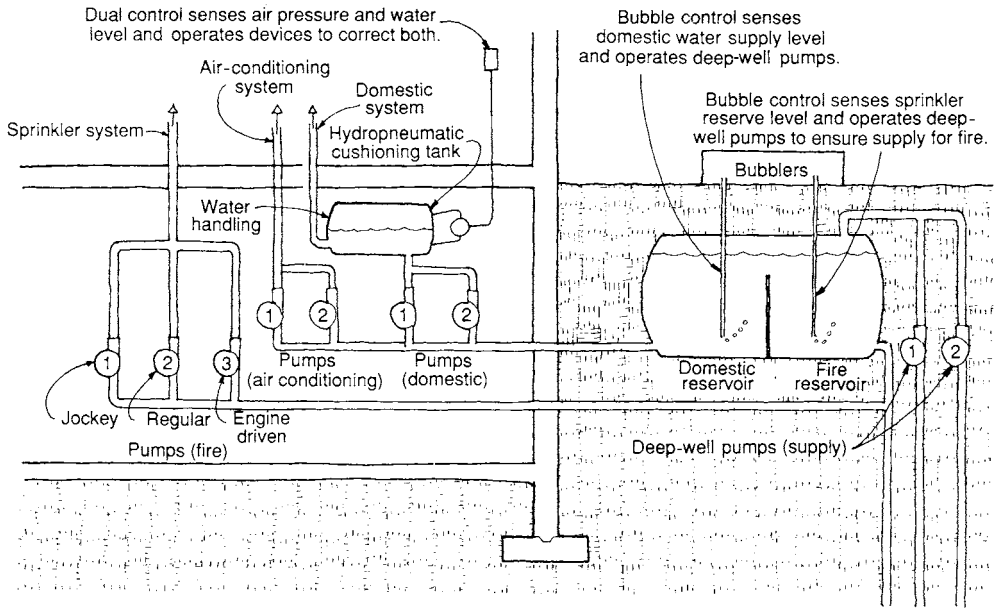


Fig. 24.15 *Diagram of an upfeed pumping system to supply sprinklers and building demands for domestic water. In the General Mills Building, a large subsurface concrete water tank provides a secondary water source that reassures fire insurance carriers. Thus, the wells and their pumps constitute a primary water source. If the well yield fails, the concrete tank supply can be tapped. Backup engine-driven pumping operates in the event of a utility company power outage. Automatic controls and piping for the storage tank reserve system are not shown in this illustration.*

empty, the fire reservoir would remain full. Pressure for the sprinkler is supplied by a small 20-gpm (1.26-L/s) jockey pump. Signals from the sprinkler system bring in a 750-gpm (47.3-L/s) main pump. If this fails, a diesel engine–driven pump of equal capacity automatically takes over. Normally, the system satisfies the heavy demands of air conditioning, fire control, and domestic water supply in this modern, rural, isolated office building.

Valves. Valves are required to allow the sprinkler system to be shut off for maintenance, system modification, or replacement of all sprinkler heads that have operated after a fire. Indicating valves of various types are required so that it is always immediately obvious whether such crucial valves are open (as they nearly always should be) or closed. Table 24.6 lists common failure modes in sprinkler systems; an improperly closed valve is the leading reason for system failure.

(c) Sprinkler Construction, Orientation, and Rating

The common sprinkler head blocks water flow by a plug or cap that is held tightly against the orifice by levers or other restraining devices. These, in turn, are held in place by the arms of the sprinkler body. In the past, the restraining device was usually a fusible metal link that melted at a predetermined temperature. Today, the restraining device is typically a glass bulb that contains both a colored liquid and an air bubble. As the liquid expands due to increasing temperature resulting from the heat of a fire, it compresses the air bubble until it is absorbed. Then continued expansion ruptures the bulb (again, at a predetermined temperature) and releases the water in a solid stream through the orifice.

A deflector converts this solid stream of water into a spray, whose pattern is determined by the design of the deflector. Most sprinklers direct the spray down and horizontally rather than upward toward the ceiling. This yields better water distribution close to the sprinkler head and more effective coverage of burning material below. The spray pattern from a typical upright or pendant sprinkler is shown in Fig. 24.16.

Common types of sprinkler heads are upright (SSU), pendant (SSP), or sidewall types. Upright heads sit on top of the exposed supply piping. Pendant heads hang below the piping, which can

TABLE 24.6 Common Failure Modes for Automatic Sprinklers

Failure Mode	Potential Causes
Water supply valves are closed when sprinkler fuses	Inadequate valve supervision Owner attitude Maintenance policies
Water does not reach sprinkler	Dry pipe accelerator or exhauster malfunctions Pre-action system malfunctions Maintenance and inspection inadequate
Nozzle fails to open when expected	Fire rate of growth too fast Response time and/or temperature of link inappropriate for the area protected Sprinkler link protected from heat Sprinkler link painted, taped, bagged, or corroded Sprinkler skipping
Water cannot contact fuel (*Note:* The intent of this failure mode is to ensure that discharge is not interrupted in a manner that will prevent fire control by a sprinkler)	Fuel is protected High piled storage is present New construction (walls, ductwork, ceilings) obstructs water spray
Water discharge density is not sufficient	Discharge needs are insufficient for the type of fire and the rate of heat release Change in combustible contents occurred Number of sprinklers open is too great for the water supply Water pressure too low Water droplet size is inappropriate for the fire size
Enough water does not continue to flow	Water supply is inadequate because of original deficiencies, changes in water supply, or changes in the combustible contents Pumps are inadequate or unreliable Power supply malfunctions System is disrupted

Source: Reprinted with permission from the *Fire Protection Handbook,* 18th ed., © 1997, by the National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

then be concealed above suspended ceilings (Figs. 24.17*a*, *b*). The pendant heads themselves have a number of variations: recessed, flush, concealed, and ornamental pendant heads are available (Fig. 24.17*c*). Recessed heads have part of the sprinkler body and the deflector below the ceiling. Flush heads have only the thermosensitive element projecting below the ceiling. Concealed heads are entirely above a ceiling cover plate that falls away in a fire, exposing the thermosensitive element. Ornamental pendants are manufacturer-coated (never field-coated!) to match a desired decor.

Sidewall sprinklers (Fig. 24.17*d*) are usually located adjacent to one wall of a smaller room—common in hotels, apartments, and so on—and throw a one-quarter-sphere spray of water entirely across such rooms. Typically, only one sidewall sprinkler head per small room is used.

The temperature at which a sprinkler is triggered is usually specified, as in Table 24.7. It should be at least 25F° (14C°) higher than the maximum ceiling temperature ordinarily expected. Ordinary sprinkler heads operate at between 135° and 170°F (57° and 77°C).

Buildings to be protected by sprinkler systems fall into several hazard groups, as described in Table 24.8. Newer *quick-response* sprinkler heads are now required throughout light hazard occupancies, including office buildings. These more thermally sensitive heads open sooner than ordinary heads, and thus tend to fight a fire with even fewer heads operating, even though they may sometimes open with extraordinary heat that is not fire-associated. They are considered superior for life protection because of their earlier operation.

Other special sprinkler models include an *extra large orifice* (for delivering large water quantities where water pressures are relatively low) and *multilevel* sprinklers (for use where other sprinklers are at a higher plane within the same space). The lower sprinklers may otherwise have their action retarded by water from the higher-elevation heads.

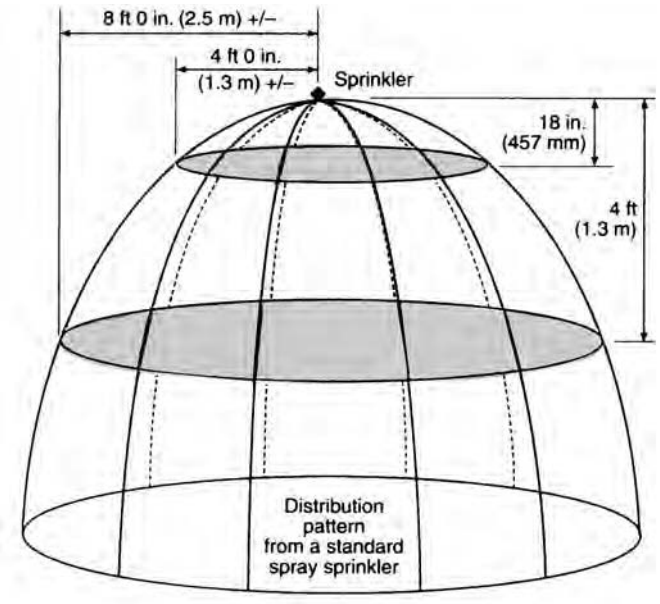


Fig. 24.16 *Typical distribution pattern from a standard spray sprinkler. Obstructions (whether from structure or furnishings) are to be avoided within this volume. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed.; © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269.)*

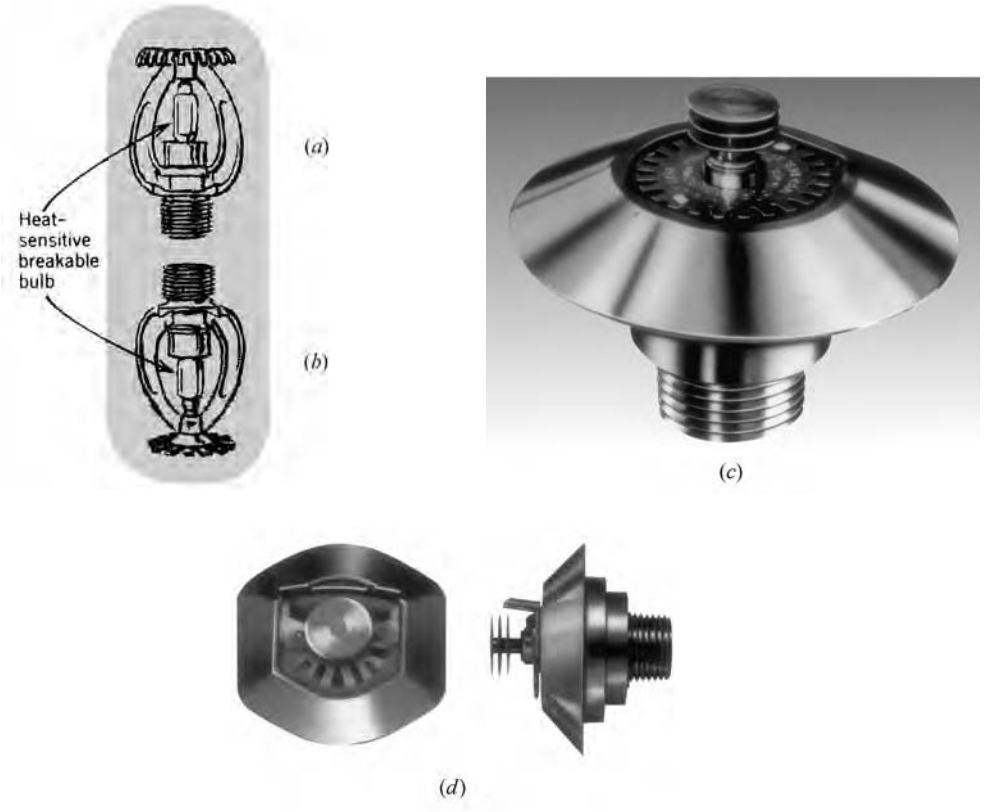


Fig. 24.17 *Sprinkler heads. (a) Upright; it sits above exposed piping, just below the structural deck—where the hottest gases will first accumulate. (b) Pendant, projecting through a suspended ceiling in most installations. Both (a) and (b) use a quartzoid bulb, a transparent bulb with a colored liquid that ruptures at a preset temperature to release the water stream; heads can be manufactured as plated, polished, or colored—but never painted on site. (c) Pendant, styled for a more contemporary appearance. (d) Sidewall, front and side views. (Parts c–d courtesy of the Central Sprinkler Corporation.)*

TABLE 24.7 Sprinkler Heads

DISCHARGE CHARACTERISTICS				
Nominal Orifice Size				
in.	**mm**	***K* Factor**	**Nominal Orifice Size Marked on Frame**	**Percent of Nominal ½-in. Discharge**
¼	6.4	1.3–1.5	Yes	25
5/16	8.0	1.8–2.0	Yes	33.3
3/8	9.5	2.6–2.9	Yes	50
7/16	11.0	4.0–4.4	Yes	75
½	12.7	5.3–5.8	No	100
17/32	13.5	7.4–8.2	No	140
5/8	15.9	11.0–11.5	Yes	200
¾	19.0	13.5–14.5	Yes	250

TEMPERATURE CLASSIFICATIONS						
Max. Ceiling Temp.		***Temperature Rating***				
°F	**°C**	**°F**	**°C**	**Temperature Classification**	**Color Code**	**Glass Bulb Colors**
100	38	135–170	57–77	Ordinary	Uncolored or black	Orange or red
150	66	175–225	79–107	Intermediate	White	Yellow or green
225	107	250–300	121–149	High	Blue	Blue
300	149	325–375	163–191	Extra high	Red	Purple
375	191	400–475	204–246	Very extra high	Green	Black
475	246	500–575	260–302	Ultra high	Orange	Black
625	329	650	343	Ultra high	Orange	Black

Source: Reprinted with permission from the *Fire Protection Handbook,* 18th ed., © 1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

(d) Sprinkler Spacing and Hazard

The spacing of sprinkler heads and the sizing of supply pipes are complex matters, and most sprinkler systems are designed by professionals working for sprinkler manufacturers. However, some guidelines for preliminary sprinkler location are included here. The first consideration is the degree of hazard faced by the occupants, as listed in Table 24.8. Once this is known, sprinklers and pipes can be approximately located in plan view with the aid of Table 24.9. Maximum floor areas (per floor) to be protected by any single sprinkler system are shown, again by hazard, in Table 24.10. Within each space, sprinklers should be located so as to detect a fire readily and to discharge water over the greatest area (considering obstacles such as joists and beams, partial height partitions, etc.; see Fig. 24.16).

Piping for the sprinkler supply can be hydraulically designed, using methods similar to those shown in Section 21.11. A complicating factor is the expectation that only a small percentage of the sprinklers will actually open; more than 50% of the fires studied over a 49-year period were extinguished by two or fewer sprinklers. A detailed sizing procedure would consider both the available pressure at the highest sprinkler and the expected flow rate, which can vary from 150 to 25000 gpm (10 to 158 L/s). The sprinkler head's actual performance is determined by

$$Q = K\sqrt{p}$$

where

Q = flow rate, gpm

K = K factor, published for each sprinkler head by U.S. manufacturers (see Table 24.7)

p = pressure, psi

In SI units:

Q = flow rate, L/min

K = K factor (14.3 × I-P K factor)

p = pressure in bars

TABLE 24.8 Relative Fire Hazard for Various Occupancies, as Related to Sprinkler Installations

CLASSIFICATION OF OCCUPANCIES	
Occupancy classifications for this standard relate to sprinkler installations and their water supplies only. They are not intended to be a general classification of occupancy hazards. Examples in the listings below are intended to represent the norm for those occupancy types. Unusual or abnormal fuel loadings or combustible characteristics and susceptibility for changes in these characteristics, for a particular occupancy, are considerations that should be weighed in the selection and classification.	
LIGHT HAZARD OCCUPANCIES	
Occupancies or portions of other occupancies where the quantity and/or combustibility of contents is low, and fires with relatively low rates of heat release are expected. The Light Hazard classification is intended to encompass residential occupancies; however, this is not intended to preclude the use of listed sprinklers in residential occupancies or residential portions of other occupancies. *Light Hazard Occupancies Include Occupancies Having Conditions Similar to:*	
Churches	Museums
Clubs	Nursing or convalescent homes
Eaves and overhangs[a]	Office, including data processing
Educational	Residential
Hospitals	Restaurant seating areas
Institutional	Theaters and auditoriums, excluding stages and prosceniums
Libraries (except large stack rooms)	Unused attics
[a]If combustible construction with no combustibles beneath.	
ORDINARY HAZARD OCCUPANCIES	
Group 1: Occupancies or portions of other occupancies where combustibility is low, quantity of combustibles is moderate, stockpiles of combustibles do not exceed 8 ft (2.4 m), and fires with moderate rates of heat release are expected. *Ordinary Hazard Occupancies (Group 1) Include Occupancies Having Conditions Similar to:*	
Automobile parking and showrooms	Electronics plants
Bakeries	Glass and glass product manufacturing
Beverage manufacturing	Laundries
Canneries	Restaurant service areas
Dairy products manufacturing and processing	
Group 2: Occupancies or portions of other occupancies where quantity and combustibility of contents is moderate to high, stockpiles do not exceed 12 ft (3.7 m), and fires with moderate to high rates of heat release are expected. *Ordinary Hazard Occupancies (Group 2) Include Occupancies Having Conditions Similar to:*	
Cereal mills	Paper and pulp mills
Chemical plants—ordinary	Paper process plants
Confectionery products	Piers and wharves
Distilleries	Post offices
Dry cleaners	Printing and publishing
Feed mills	Repair garages
Horse stables	Stages
Leather goods manufacturing	Textile manufacturing
Libraries—large stack areas	Tire manufacturing
Machine shops	Tobacco products manufacturing
Metal working	Wood machining
Mercantile	Wood product assembly

EXTRA HAZARD OCCUPANCIES	
Occupancies or portions of other occupancies where quantity and combustibility of contents is very high and flammable and combustible liquids, dust, lint, or other materials are present, introducing the possibility of rapidly developing fires with high rates of heat release. Extra hazard occupancies involve a wide range of variables that may produce severe fires. Extra Hazard Occupancies (Group 1) include occupancies with little or no flammable or combustible liquids. Extra Hazard Occupancies (Group 2) include occupancies with moderate to substantial amounts of flammable or combustible liquids or where shielding of combustibles is extensive. *Extra Hazard Occupancies (Group 1) Include Occupancies Having Conditions Similar to:*	
Aircraft hangars[b]	Printing using inks having flash points below 100°F (37.9°C)
Combustible hydraulic fluid use areas	Rubber reclaiming, compounding, drying, milling, vulcanizing
Die casting	Saw mills
Metal extruding	Textile picking, opening, blending, garnetting, carding, combining of cotton, synthetics, wool shoddy, or burlap
Plywood and particle board manufacturing	Upholstering with plastic foams
Extra Hazard Occupancies (Group 2) Include Occupancies Having Conditions Similar to:	
Asphalt saturating	Open oil quenching
Flammable liquids spraying	Plastics processing
Flow coating	Solvent cleaning
Manufactured home or modular building assemblies[c]	Varnish and paint dipping
[b]Except as governed by NFPA 409. [c]Where finished enclosure is present and has combustible interiors.	
SPECIAL OCCUPANCY HAZARDS	
See NFPA 13 for a listing of standards by occupancy.	

Source: Adapted with permission from NFPA 13, *Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, © 1996, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA. This reprinted material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association on the referenced subject, which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.

TABLE 24.9 Protected Area, Maximum Spacing, and Distances below Ceiling for Sprinklers

PART A. UPRIGHT (SSU) AND PENDANT (SSP) SPRINKLERS

	Light Hazard		*Ordinary Hazard*		*Extra Hazard*		*High-Piled Storage*	
Construction Type	**Protection Area ft² (m²)**	**Max. Spacing ft (m)**	**Protection Area ft² (m²)**	**Max. Spacing ft (m)**	**Protection Area ft² (m²)**	**Max. Spacing ft (m)**	**Protection Area ft² (m²)**	**Max. Spacing ft (m)**
Noncombustible obstructed and unobstructed, and combustible unobstructed	225 (20.9)	15 (4.6)	130 (12.1)	15 (4.6)	100 (9.3)	12 (3.7)	100 (9.3)	12 (3.7)
Combustible obstructed	168 (15.6)	15 (4.6)	130 (12.1)	15 (4.6)	100 (9.3)	12 (3.7)	100 (9.3)	12 (3.7)

PART B. STANDARD SIDEWALL SPRAY SPRINKLERS

	Light Hazard		*Ordinary Hazard*	
	Combustible Finish	**Noncombustible or Limited-Combustible Finish**	**Combustible Finish**	**Noncombustible or Limited-Combustible Finish**
Maximum distance along the wall (S), ft (m)	14 (4.3)	14 (4.3)	10 (3.1)	10 (3.1)
Maximum room width (L), ft (m)	12 (3.7)	14 (4.3)	10 (3.1)	10 (3.1)
Maximum protection area ft² (m²)	120 (11.2)	196 (18.2)	80 (7.4)	100 (9.3)

PART C. EXTENDED COVERAGE (EC) UPRIGHT AND PENDANT SPRAY SPRINKLERS

	Light Hazard		*Ordinary Hazard*		*Extra Hazard*		*High-Piled Storage*	
Construction Type	**Protection Area ft² (m²)**	**Max. Spacing ft (m)**	**Protection Area ft² (m²)**	**Max. Spacing ft (m)**	**Protection Area ft² (m²)**	**Max. Spacing ft (m)**	**Protection Area ft² (m²)**	**Max. Spacing ft (m)**
Unobstructed	400 (37.2)	20 (6.1)	400 (37.2)	20 (6.1)	196 (18.2)	14 (4.3)	196 (18.2)	14 (4.3)
	324 (30.1)	18 (5.5)	324 (30.1)	18 (5.5)	144 (13.4)	12 (3.7)	144 (13.4)	12 (3.7)
	256 (23.8)	16 (4.9)	256 (23.8)	16 (4.9)				
			196 (18.2)	14 (4.3)				
			144 (13.4)	12 (3.7)				
Obstructed noncombustible (when specifically listed for such use)	400 (37.2)	20 (6.1)	400 (37.2)	20 (6.1)	196 (18.2)	14 (4.3)	196 (18.2)	14 (4.3)
	324 (30.1)	18 (5.5)	324 (30.1)	18 (5.5)	144 (13.4)	12 (3.7)	144 (13.4)	12 (3.7)
	256 (23.8)	16 (4.9)	256 (23.8)	16 (4.9)				
			196 (18.2)	14 (4.3)				
			144 (13.4)	12 (3.7)				
Obstructed combustible	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

PART D. EXTENDED COVERAGE (EC) SIDEWALL SPRINKLERS				
	Light Hazard		*Ordinary Hazard*	
Construction Type	**Protection Area, ft² (m²)**	**Spacing ft (m)**	**Protection Area, ft² (m²)**	**Spacing ft (m)**
Unobstructed, smooth, flat	400 (37.2)	28 (8.5)	400 (37.2)	24 (7.3)

PART E. LARGE-DROP SPRINKLERS		
Construction Type	**Protection Area, ft² (m²)**	**Spacing, (L) ft (m)**
Noncombustible unobstructed	130 (12.1)	12 (3.7)
Noncombustible obstructed	130 (12.1)	12 (3.7)
Combustible unobstructed	130 (12.1)	12 (3.7)
Combustible obstructed	100 (9.3)	10 (3.1)

PART F. EARLY SUPPRESSION FAST-RESPONSE (ESFR) SPRINKLERS				
	ESFR Sprinkler Up to 30 ft (9.1 m) in Height		*ESFR Sprinkler Up to 40 ft (12.2 m) in Height*	
Construction Type	**Protection Area, ft² (m²)**	**Spacing, ft (m)**	**Protection Area, ft² (m²)**	**Spacing, ft (m)**
Noncombustible unobstructed	100 (9.3)	12 (3.7)	100 (9.3)	10 (3.1)
Noncombustible obstructed	100 (9.3)	12 (3.7)	100 (9.3)	10 (3.1)
Combustible unobstructed	100 (9.3)	12 (3.7)	100 (9.3)	10 (3.1)
Combustible obstructed	NA	NA	NA	NA

PART G. MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE DEFLECTOR DISTANCES BELOW THE CEILING FOR VARIOUS SPRINKLERS[a]	
Sprinkler Type	**Maximum Distance in. (mm)**
SSU/SSP	12 (305)
Standard sidewall	6 (152)
EC upright and pendant	12 (305)
EC sidewall	6 (152)
Large drop	8 (203)
ESFR	14 (356)

Source: Adapted with permission from the *Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed., © 1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

[a]Greater distances are permitted based on construction type, special listings, or both.

Notes: SI units were added by the text authors (are not from original source).

Obstructed: depth, spacing, and openness of structural members impede heat flow to the sprinkler head and/or disrupt the spray pattern.

Unobstructed: structural members do not impede the operation of the sprinkler head.

TABLE 24.10 Maximum Floor Areas for Sprinkler Systems

The maximum floor area on any one floor to be protected by sprinklers supplied by any one sprinkler system riser (or combined system riser) is:

Hazard	Area, ft² (m²)
Light Hazard	52,000 (4831)
Ordinary Hazard	52,000 (4831)
Extra Hazard (hydraulically calculated)	40,000 (3716)
High-Piled Storage	40,000 (3716)

Source: Based on the *Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed., © 1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

Notes: Floor area occupied by mezzanines shall not be included in the above areas. Where single systems protect extra hazard or high-piled storage and ordinary or light-hazard areas, the extra hazard or storage area coverage shall not exceed the floor area specified for that hazard and the total area coverage shall not exceed 52,000 ft² (4831 m²).

Sprinkler systems are usually designed for a maximum working pressure of 175 psi (1206 kPa). As a preliminary design guideline:

Light hazard systems need a minimum residual pressure of 15 psi (104 kPa) and 500–750 gpm (32 to 47 L/s) at the base of the system riser for 30 to 60 minutes.

Ordinary hazard systems need a minimum residual pressure of 20 psi (138 kPa) and 850–1500 gpm (54 to 95 L/s) at the base of the system riser for 60 to 90 minutes.

In the past, the *pipe schedule* design method made system layout and sizing fairly simple. Now there are requirements for more complicated hydraulically designed systems, which are beyond the scope of this book.

(e) Residential Sprinklers

Now that some codes require sprinklers in all residential occupancies, some new issues arise. The residential sprinkler is a fast-response device with a tested ability to enhance survivability in the room of fire origin and is thus listed for protection of dwelling units. It is sensitive to both smoldering and rapidly developing fires, opening quickly to fight a fire with only one or two heads operating. This is important because residences normally do not have a water supply with sufficient capacity for standard sprinkler systems. Toxic gases and smoke quickly fill the small rooms typical of residences; a fast response is important for life safety.

Most codes that otherwise require residential sprinklers in all areas make an exception for bathrooms no larger than 55 ft² (5.1 m²); for closets with the least dimension not exceeding 3 ft (0.9 m); for open porches, garages, and carports; for uninhabited attics and crawl spaces (if not used for storage); and for entrance foyers that are not the sole means of egress.

Residential sprinklers also have a special water distribution pattern capable of delivering water to the walls and high enough on the walls to prevent the fire from getting above the sprinklers. This water near the ceiling also tends to cool gases at the ceiling, reducing the likelihood of excessive sprinkler openings.

The added cost of residential sprinkler systems may be recovered in several ways. As with other buildings, reductions in fire insurance rates will be helpful, although in residences the payback time is rather long. Zoning could permit smaller parcels of land for sprinkler-protected residences, since separation between buildings is less important when sprinklers protect both buildings.

(f) Quick-Response Sprinklers

All light hazard occupancies are now required to have quick-response (also called *fast-response*) sprinklers. These include hotels, motels, offices, and other buildings where faster sprinkler operation could enhance life safety. One measure of thermal sensitivity is the response time index (RTI), which indicates how fast the sprinkler can absorb sufficient heat from its surroundings to cause activation. It is expressed as the square root of meters-seconds. Quick-response (fast-response) sprinklers have an RTI of 50 or less. Standard-response sprinklers have an RTI of 80 or more—usually substantially more.

Conventional automatic sprinklers generally have an RTI of 250 to 300.

Because of the thermal lag inherent in the glass bulb (or fusible link), the sprinkler body, and the water within sprinkler pipes, air temperature around a sprinkler may reach 1000°F (538°C) before a standard sprinkler, rated at 175°F (79°C), actually opens. The fast-response sprinkler's operating element has a smaller mass, enabling it to respond to the air temperature rise more quickly.

(g) Early Suppression Fast-Response (ESFR) Sprinklers

See Table 24.9, Part F. These sprinkler heads are tested for their ability to suppress specific high-challenge fire hazards encountered in high-piled storage. They operate at a higher pressure and flow, and the water droplets produced depend upon momentum rather than gravity to penetrate to the bottom of high-velocity fire plumes. These sprinkler heads require a minimum water pressure of 50 psi (345 kPa) and a minimum flow of 100 gpm (6.3 L/s). They have largely replaced large-drop sprinklers (Table 24.9, Part E) that depended on the weight of the water droplet to penetrate the fire plume.

(h) Extended Coverage Sprinklers

See Table 24.9, Parts C and D. These are limited to a type of unobstructed construction consisting of flat, smooth ceilings of a slope not exceeding 2 in. per foot (158 mm/m). Note that a smooth ceiling means that luminaires and air grilles are flush or recessed, not suspended from the ceiling. Such sprinklers, however, can also be specifically listed for "noncombustible obstructed" construction, or as upright and pendant sprinklers within trusses or bar joists having web members not more than 1 in. (25 mm) thick, or where specifically listed for flat, smooth ceilings of a slope not exceeding 4 in. per foot (316 mm/m).

(i) Future Developments

Now under development, *quick-response, early suppression* (QRES) sprinklers would use the same principles as the ESFR sprinkler, but with a smaller orifice suitable to lighter-hazard occupancies. This sprinkler head could be useful in a wide variety of business, mercantile, public assembly, and educational applications.

In future sprinkler systems, different types of sprays may be ejected from a single sprinkler head: one spray of larger droplets to penetrate the fire plume and thereby cool burning surfaces as well as adjacent surfaces, and another, finer spray to cool the ceiling itself.

(j) Wet-Pipe Systems

These are the most common and most simple systems, as shown in Fig. 24.18. They are filled with water under pressure and are limited to spaces in which the air temperature does not fall below 40°F (4.4°C). (Wet-pipe systems that contain antifreeze, and admit ordinary water when a sprinkler head opens, are included in this category; the type of antifreeze is limited when potable water supplies the sprinkler system.) In the wet-pipe system, sprinklers in the affected area are opened by heat-sensitive elements within the sprinkler heads themselves and immediately emit water.

A typical automatic wet-pipe sprinkler system is shown in Fig. 24.19. The building, a printing and publishing plant, is in the category of "Ordinary Hazard, Group 2" (see Table 24.8). The sprinkler design results in a nozzle spacing such that one nozzle (sprinkler head) takes care of 130 ft^2 (12 m^2) of floor area.

The Transamerica Building (Fig. 24.20) in San Francisco is an urban high-rise building with a wet-pipe system. Two fire pumps can deliver 750 gpm at 275 psi (47.3 L/s at 1896 kPa) discharge pressure; they draw water from city mains at 50 psi (345 kPa) or from a 5000-gal (18,925-L) closed tank in the basement. These pumps feed into two 6-in. (15-mm)-diameter "express" risers, one in each stair tower, that run the full height of this 48-story office building. The risers serve both the sprinkler system and fire department hose lines. In each of three 16-story zones, "local" 6-in. (150-mm)-diameter risers branch off to feed a 2-in. (50-mm) looped main at each floor.

The sprinkler piping is carried above suspended ceilings; pendant sprinkler locations are

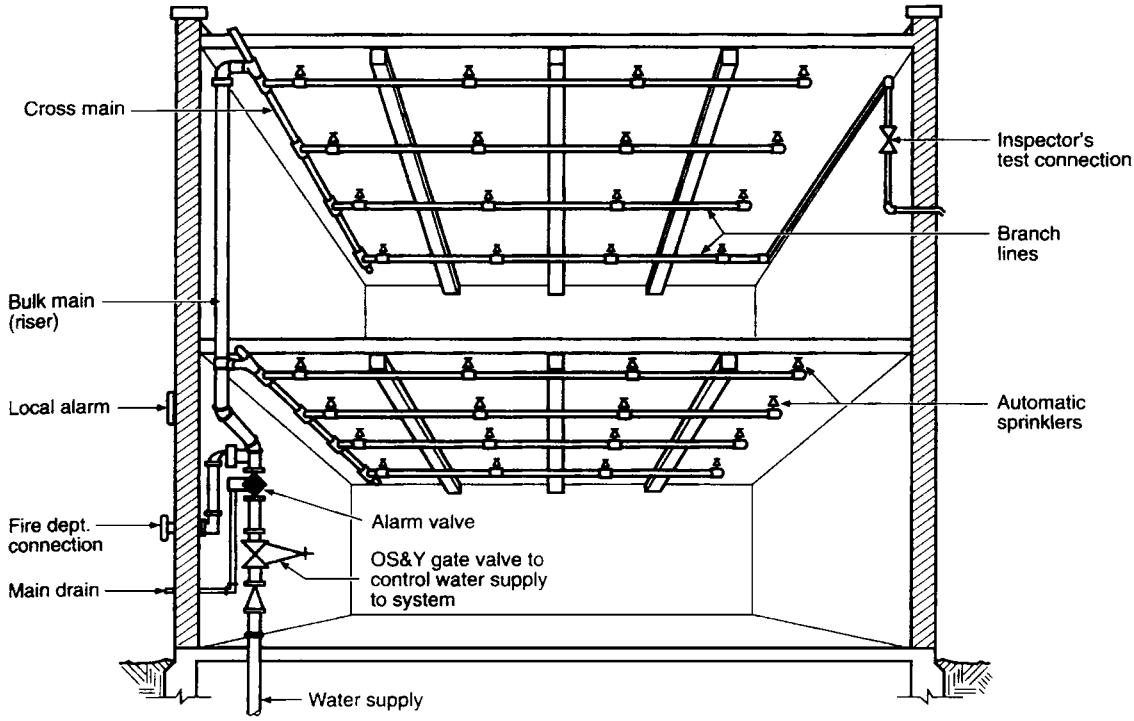


Fig. 24.18 *Wet-pipe sprinkler system. This most typical system is under water pressure at all times so that water will be discharged immediately when an automatic sprinkler opens. The automatic alarm value shown causes a warning signal to sound when water flows through the sprinkler piping. OS&Y means "outside stem and yoke," describing a valve that clearly indicates the degree to which it is open or closed. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed.; © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269.)*

coordinated with the modular grid that also locates partitions, air diffusers, and utility jacks. There are provisions for moving sprinkler heads as tenants change. At regular intervals, tees have been provided with one outlet stubbed and capped for future use. Typical office spaces are served by fully recessed, ½-in. orifice, 165°F (12.7-mm, 74°C) pendant sprinklers. Exposed pendant sprinklers are used in toilet rooms and service areas.

Although the typical sprinkler system is served by a single riser with a main line and branch lines, there are two variations that increase reliability by providing some redundancy in the supply lines. Figure 24.21*a* shows the gridded system, where each branch is served from either end, allowing each sprinkler head to receive water from either direction in the branch line. Figure 24.21*b* shows the loop system, where each branch line can receive water from either direction.

(k) Circulating Closed-Loop Systems

These wet-pipe systems use the rather large sprinkler piping to circulate water for water source heat pumps. Water is not normally removed from this system, merely circulated. Water temperature in these systems must not exceed 120°F (49°C) or fall below 40°F (4°C). Such a system used for heating and cooling in a motel is shown in Fig. 24.22. An office building with a circulating closed-loop system is shown in Fig. 10.63.

(l) Dry-Pipe Systems

As shown in Fig. 24.23, these systems are filled with compressed air (or nitrogen) rather than with water. They are used in unheated areas, including loading docks and cold-storage areas. As soon as a sprinkler head opens, the compressed air rushes

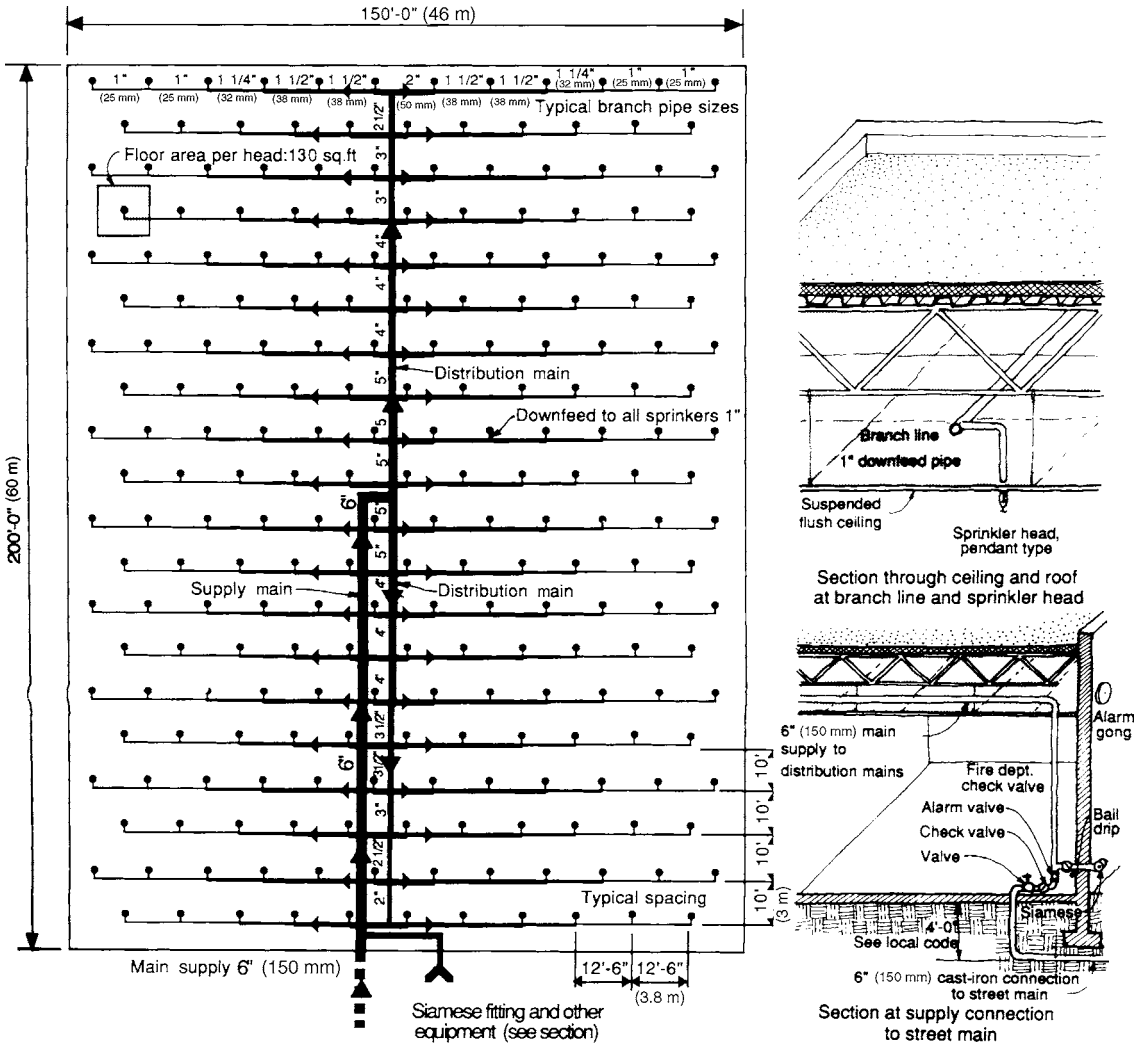


Fig. 24.19 *Plan of a sprinklered industrial building, ordinary hazard occupancy, whose 30,000-ft² (2790-m²) floor area is protected by 230 sprinkler heads (average 130 ft² [12 m²] per sprinkler head). Sprinklers are closer together than the maximum allowed. Sprinklers (and standpipes) may use water from street mains when pressure is adequate. Either system may use pneumatic or gravity tanks. When the latter are used to supply both systems, an independent sprinkler reserve occupies the bottom, and the fire standpipe supply occupies the top. An auxiliary fire engine feed connection by siamese should be provided in all cases. Auxiliary sources and standby pressurization may be required if street main adequacy is questionable.*

out, allowing water to enter the formerly dry-pipe network through a *dry-pipe valve*. The system then functions like a wet-pipe system. The dry-pipe valve must be within a heated enclosure, since water under pressure is on one side of the valve. Also, due to the delay in delivering water throughout a previously dry piping system, a maximum system capacity of 750 gal (2839 L) is recommended.

Dry-pipe systems require a device to maintain design air pressure within the pipes. Air pressure might be maintained by a compressor, by an air receiver tank, or by connection to an existing pressurized air system (as in manufacturing operations). Dry-pipe systems also require a heated main control valve housing and the pitching of all piping to allow thorough drainage after usage.

(m) Preaction Systems

In this system (Fig. 24.24), the pipes are filled with air that may or may not be under pressure. In addition to the sprinkler heads, either a heat- or a smoke-detection system is installed. The detectors are more sensitive than the sprinkler head. Water is held back by the *preaction valve*. When the heat or smoke detectors are activated, they open the preaction valve, an alarm is sounded, and water fills the pipes. The system then functions like a wet-pipe system, with water flow into a space occurring only upon the opening of a sprinkler head.

A variation on this system, known as a *combined dry pipe-preaction* (or *double-interlock preaction*) system, has pipes filled with compressed air. Heat or smoke detectors release the preaction valve and sound the alarm, but air pressure keeps water out of the piping until a sprinkler head opens.

Preaction systems are popular where the building's contents are especially subject to water damage—computer rooms, retail stores, museums, and so on—because the early alarm provided by water filling the piping often permits the fire to be found and extinguished manually, before any sprinklers open.

Designers must remember, however, that when the onset of the water discharge is delayed, a fire can quickly grow in size.

(n) Deluge Systems

These systems (Fig. 24.25) have *open* sprinklers on dry pipes. As with preaction systems, a separate heat- or smoke-detection system is installed. The detectors control a *deluge valve*, which, once opened, floods the system with water, and *all* heads emit water. Huge quantities of water are thus released. Deluge systems are used where extremely rapid fire spread is expected—in aircraft hangars, for example, or other places where flammable liquid fires may break out.

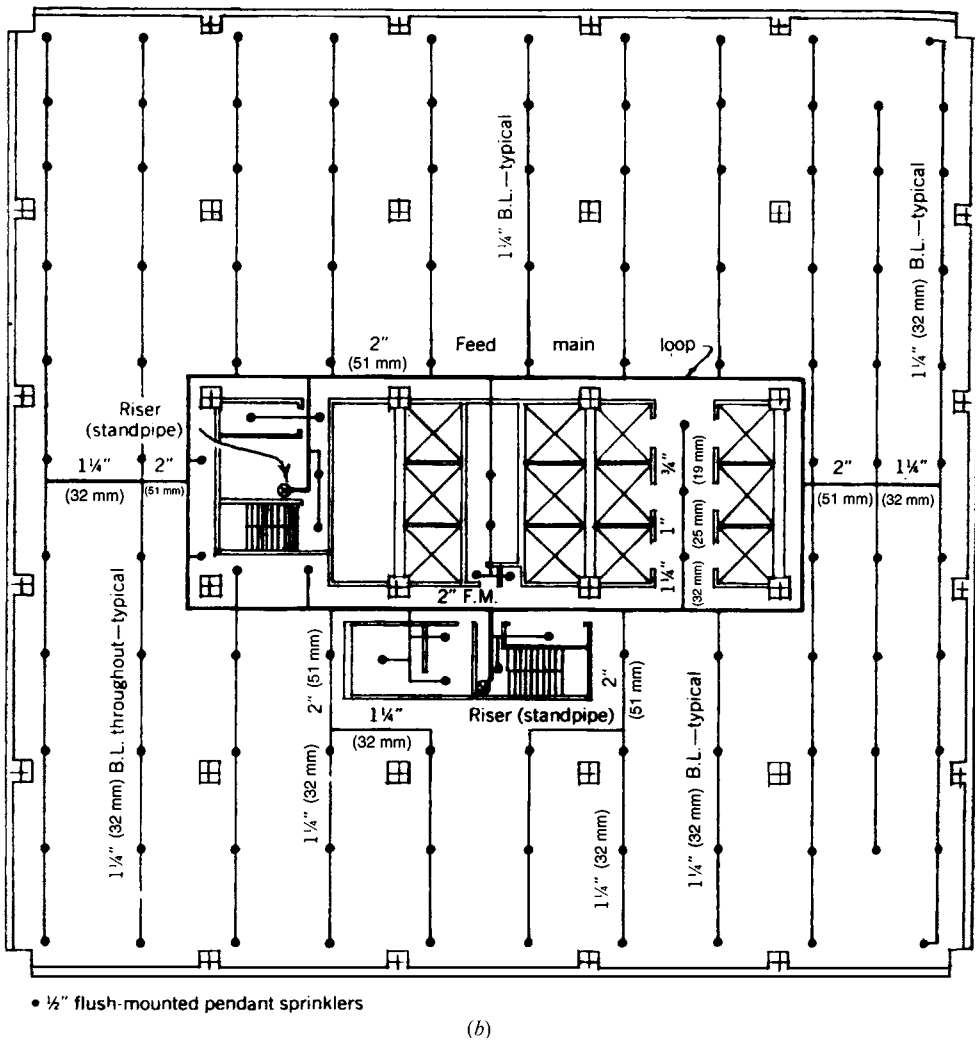
(o) Mist Systems

These are discussed last because they introduce the next section, fire-suppression alternatives to water. With a history of success in shipboard fires, they are



(*a*)

Fig. 24.20 *Transamerica Building, San Francisco, California; William Pereira & Associates, Los Angeles, California, architects. (a) The pyramid form provides rentable floor areas ranging from 22,000 to 3000 ft² (2044 to 279 m²). (b) Sixth-floor sprinkler plan showing two risers, a looped feed main, and branch lines. (Courtesy of the Copper Development Association.)*



(*b*)

Fig. 24.20 *(continued)*

being studied for much wider applications. NFPA 750 (2006) is the relevant standard.

A mist system offers fast initiation of an alarm as well as more rapid response to a fire. Smaller volumes of water mean less water damage, and the mist can move more easily around obstructions.

As an alternative to halon or other clean agent gases (Section 24.4), mist systems are more tolerant of small amounts of ventilation, reduce the radiant heat transfer from a fire, and eliminate the residues associated with many clean-agent gases. They also eliminate the cost of refilling a system with expensive clean-agent gases and allow a faster return to service after discharge.

These systems produce a much smaller water droplet, thanks to inlet pressures ranging from 45 to 4100 psi (310 to 28,270 kPa), depending upon the design of the sprinkler head. The heads are typically spaced closer together and have more sensitive thermal elements.

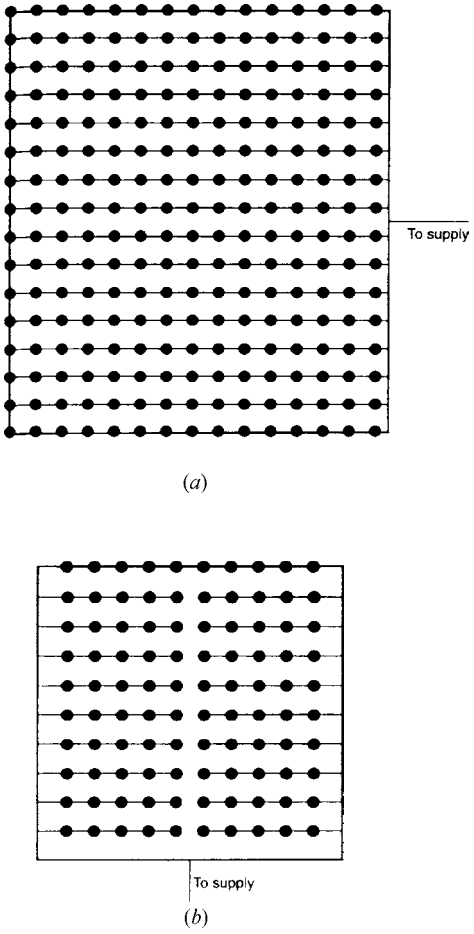


Fig. 24.21 *Alternative piping arrangements that provide more than one path for water. (a) Gridded systems supply water from either end of a branch line, offering the potential for water to come from either side of each sprinkler location. (b) Looped system, with the potential for each branch line to get water from either direction. (Reprinted with permission from NFPA 13,* Installation of Sprinkler Systems*; © 1996, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269. This reprinted material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association on the referenced subject, which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.)*

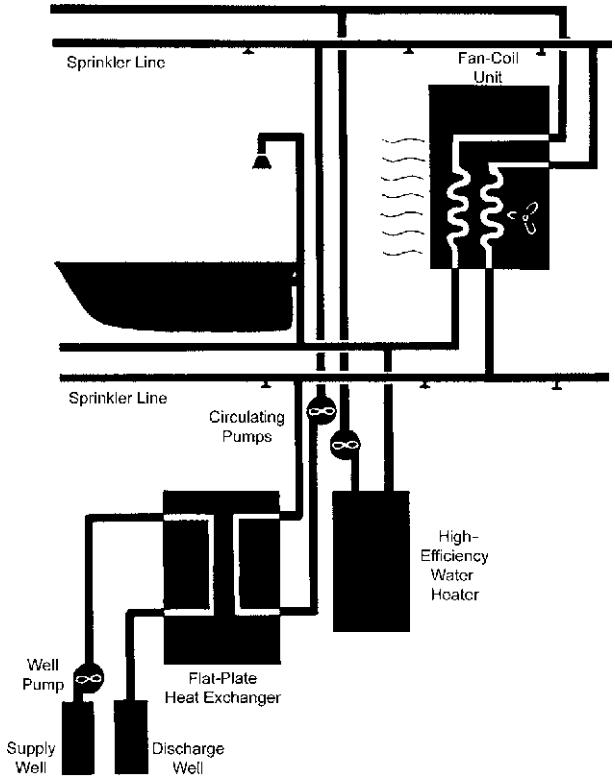


Fig. 24.22 *Circulating closed-loop sprinkler system, whose water is used by heating/cooling systems. This application is for a motel; a ground source heat exchanger is supplemented by a water heater when required. (Courtesy of Montana Power. Redrawn by Amanda Clegg.)*

The NFPA *Fire Protection Handbook* (2008) suggests three classes of mist systems:

Class I mists have a droplet size ≤200 microns, the finest mists. This is achieved at the expense of flow rate and spray velocity, and requires significant input of energy to produce useful quantities. These mists are most suitable where enclosure reduces the need for spray momentum and fuel wetting is not critical (examples are liquid fuel fires and spray fires in enclosed spaces).

Class II mists have a droplet size from 200 to 400 microns. With larger drops, it is easier to achieve higher mass flow rates, and considerable surface wetting is possible. These mists are likely to be effective on fires involving ordinary combustibles.

Class III mists have a droplet size from 400 to 1000 microns. They can be generated by small-orifice sprinklers and fire hose fog nozzles, and deliver the highest mass flow rates.

The fire-extinguishing mechanisms of mists are shown in Fig. 24.26. Two primary mechanisms are heat extraction (through rapid evaporation of the finely divided water droplets) and oxygen displacement. Which mechanism dominates depends on whether the fire is poorly or well ventilated and

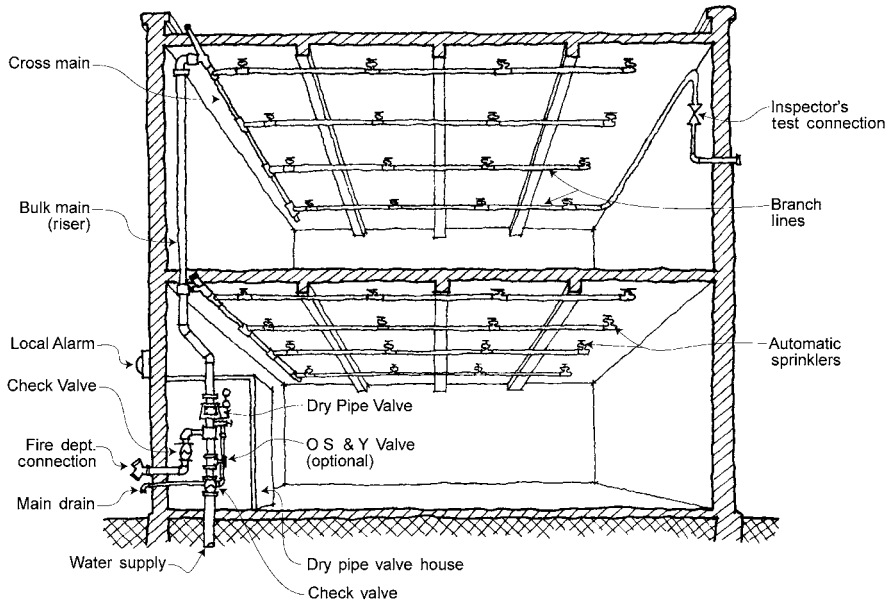


Fig. 24.23 *Dry-pipe sprinkler system for unheated occupancies. The system riser, cross mains, and branch lines are maintained at above-atmospheric air pressure. The dry-pipe valve and water supply must be within a heated enclosure. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed.; © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269. Redrawn by Jonathan Meendering.)*

the properties of the fuel. (Mist systems perform best in smaller enclosures with restricted ventilation, aided by heat entrapment and relatively easy oxygen displacement.) A third primary mechanism is the blocking of radiant heat. Secondary mechanisms in pool and spray fires are vapor/air dilution (mixing of water vapor and entrained air in the flammable vapor zone above the pool surface) and kinetic effects (the velocity of the flame front may be inhibited by small water droplets dispersed in a volume of flame).

Tests in 1998 by the Institute for Research in Construction, National Research Council of Canada, demonstrated that cycling, rather than continuous, discharge from a mist system extinguished most test fires within a shorter time and ended all test fires with less water. A Class II spray with a twin-fluid (water and compressed air distributed separately, mixed at delivery) nozzle was used. The cycling discharges were "long water off" (50 seconds on, 30 seconds off) and "short water off" (30 seconds on, 20 seconds off). Compared to continuous discharge, cycling discharge produced higher room air temperatures near the ceiling and more rapid oxygen depletion. Both are threats to the contents and the occupants, yet both also make the mist system more efficient at extinguishing the fire. This resulted in less water used and, in most cases, a shorter fire-extinction period.

24.4 OTHER FIRE-MITIGATING METHODS

When water damage poses almost as much of a threat to a structure or its contents as does fire, a variety of other fire-mitigating methods are available. The most passive of such measures are *intumescent* materials, which expand rapidly as they are touched by fire. This process creates air pockets that insulate a surface from the fire or swell a material until it blocks openings through which fire (or smoke) could have passed. Intumescent paints, caulks, and putties are available. Some intumescent materials come in ¼-in. (6.35-mm)-thick sheets, with various facing materials.

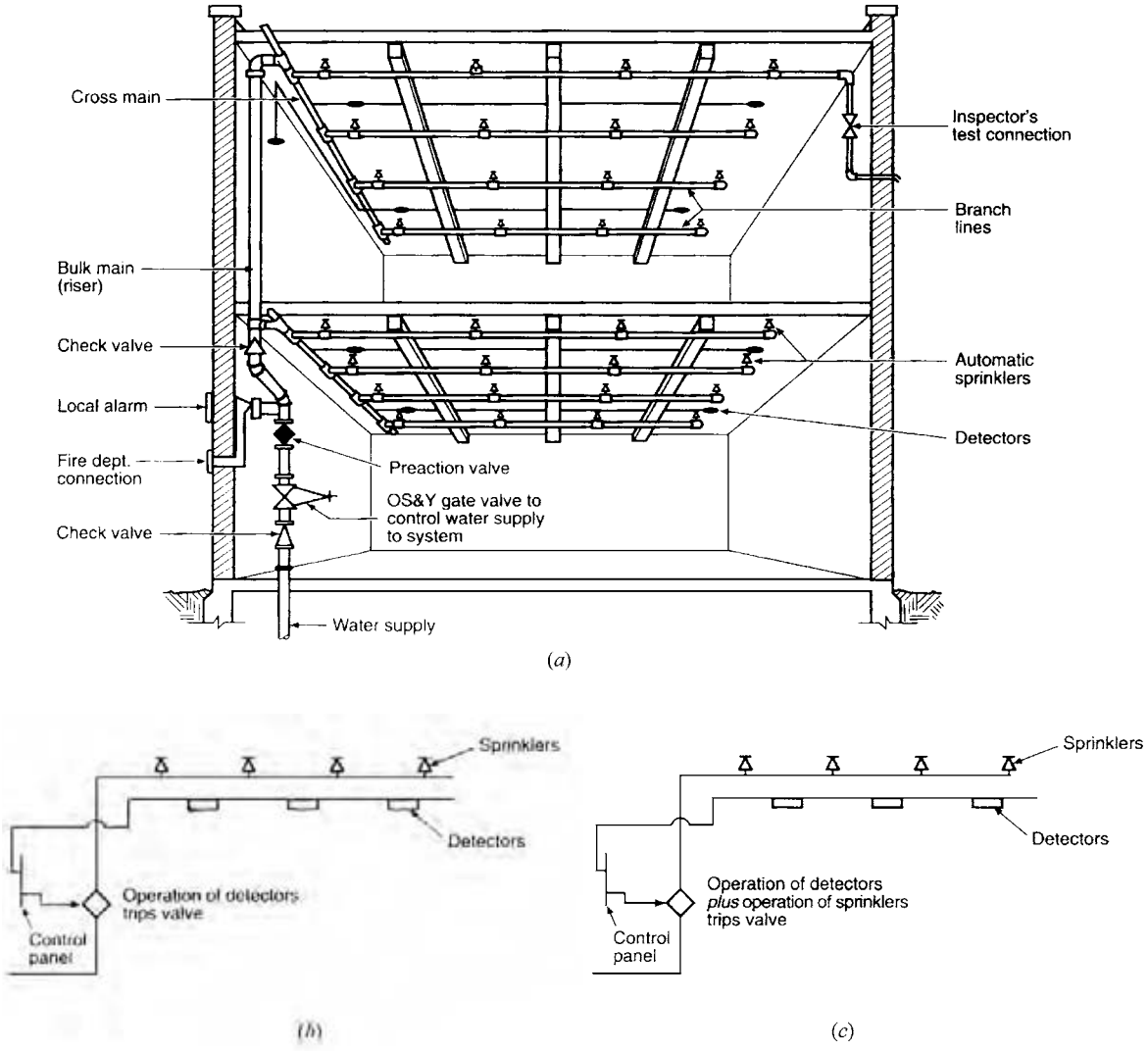


Fig. 24.24 *(a) Preaction sprinkler system. Sprinkler piping contains air until the preaction valve allows water to enter the system piping. (b) In a preaction system, detectors open the valve. (c) In a double-interlock preaction system, both the detectors and then a sprinkler must open before the valve allows water to enter the system piping. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed.; © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269.)*

(a) The Rise and Fall of Halon 1301

Halogenated hydrocarbons, known commonly as *halons*, are gases (stored as liquids) in which one or more hydrogen atoms have been replaced by halogen atoms. Although the original hydrocarbons are often highly flammable gases, the substitution of halogen not only makes the gas itself nonflammable, but also gives it a flame-extinguishing capability by interrupting the chemical chain reaction in a fire.

Until the mid-1990s, the most widely used of these compounds was *Halon 1301*; the name signifies that its molecule contains one carbon atom, three fluorine atoms, no chlorine atoms, and one bromine atom. (When a fifth number is listed for halons, it refers to the number of iodine atoms. Hydrogen atoms are not accounted for.

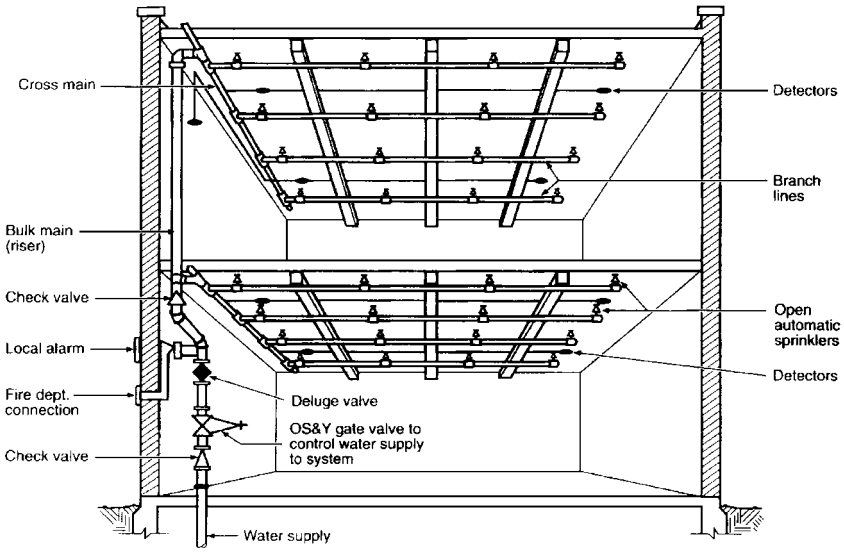


Fig. 24.25 *Deluge system. All sprinklers are open; therefore, all operate when water is allowed to flow into the system piping. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed.; © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269.)*

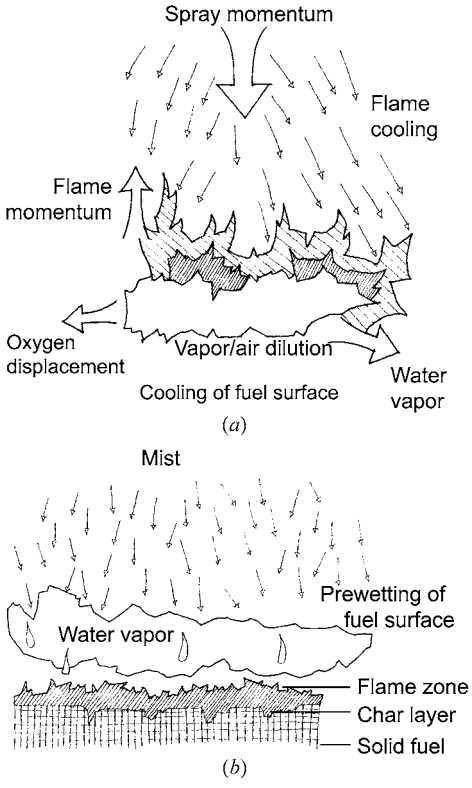


Fig. 24.26 *Water mist fire-extinguishing mechanisms. (a) Interaction of mist with pool flame fire. (b) Mist and flame on a solid fuel with charring. (Reprinted with permission from the* Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed.; © 1997, National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA 02269. Redrawn by Amanda Clegg.)*

The advantages of Halon 1301 (and other halons) are that it can be released with relative safety through a flooding system into areas such as computer rooms, quickly extinguishing a fire with little harm to the contents, no oxygen displacement to threaten life support, little demonstrated harm to people, and no residue left on electronic components. It is also lightweight and space-saving relative to other fire suppressants, as seen in the following subsections. Until the late twentieth century, Halon 1301 was used on all commercial aircraft and in many special building applications, such as computer rooms, museums and libraries, telephone exchanges, and kitchens.

Halon 1301, however, was subsequently identified as a long-lived, significant threat to the Earth's protective stratospheric ozone layer. Its production was thus phased out as of 1994. The search for replacements for Halon 1301 (and 1211) has led to mists (discussed previously), foams, inerting gases, and clean agents (discussed later), as well as special-application approaches beyond the scope of this book.

Inerting gas and clean agent replacements for Halon 1301, unlike water, actually protect the building's *contents* rather than its *structure*. They leave no sticky residue, such as most dry chemicals produce, and are therefore a popular choice where a clean fire-suppressing agent is required, people

are present, and there are objects or processes of high value. Occasionally, they are used where water availability is low or where space cannot be found for systems that use other, bulkier fire suppressants.

(b) Foams

Because foams (masses of gas-filled bubbles) are lighter than water and flammable liquids, they float on the surface of a burning liquid, smothering and cooling the fire and sealing in vapors. Foams can be designed to inundate a surface or to fill cavities; they can be thin and rapidly spread or thick, tough, and heat-resistant. Some foams can be spread by foam-water sprinkler systems. Many foaming agents suited for various purposes are available. The NFPA *Fire Protection Handbook* presents a concise summary of foam extinguishing agents and systems.

Foams are defined by their expansion ratio (final foam volume to original foam solution volume before air is added). *Low-expansion foam* has an expansion ratio up to 20:1 and is used principally to extinguish burning flammable or combustible liquid spill or tank fires. *Medium-expansion foam* has an expansion ratio from 20:1 to 200:1; *high-expansion foam* has an expansion ratio from 200:1 to 1000:1. These last two types are used for indoor fires in confined spaces to fill enclosures such as basement areas or holds of ships. They are also (at about 500:1) used to control liquefied natural gas (LNG)–spill fires and to help disperse the resulting vapor cloud.

Because foam breaks down and vaporizes its water content under attack by heat and flame, it must be applied at a sufficient volume and rate to compensate for water loss, leaving enough to produce a residual foam layer. Foam may easily be broken down by a water hose stream; turbulent air or rising combustion gases may divert foam from the burning area, especially if foam distribution occurs directly above a fire. Foam solutions are conductive, and therefore are not recommended for use on electrical fires. Firefighter entry to a foam-filled passage requires self-contained breathing apparatus and a life line (vision and hearing are reduced).

An example of high-expansion foam is shown in Fig. 24.27, the former North Central Airlines Hangar Building at the Metropolitan Airport in Detroit (Albert Kahn Associated Architects & Engineers, Inc.). The foam-generating equipment in this installation was designed to fill the 38,400-ft^2 (3567-m^2) hangar with 1,400,000 ft^3 (39,644 m^3) of foam to a height of 36 ft (10.8 m) in less than 12 minutes. Automatic devices, upon sensing an abnormal heat increase, operate the foam generators, open roof vents, start smoke control exhaust fans in the vents, and transmit a fire alarm signal to the Airport Fire Department. Foam discharge is delayed 30 seconds while evacuation sirens sound to permit occupants to leave the fire area. Manual "override" controls allow personnel to start the system in the event of failure of the automatic controls or to stop it if the fire is small and controllable by other methods.

The high-expansion foam is created by wetting a nylon net with a mixture of water and a special detergent soap concentrate. A large blower directs an air current through the net, producing an avalanche of foam. Suds blanket the fire, attacking it in several ways. The water in the suds converts to steam, absorbing the heat of the fire. The expansion of the foam into steam reduces the oxygen content to about 7%, which is insufficient to support active combustion. A cooling effect is achieved by the wetting action of the breaking bubbles. The movement of air currents toward the fire to replace the rising hot gases draws the foam, supplied from the sides (rather than directly over the fire), to the center of the fire. There it blocks the airflow and cuts off the supply of oxygen. The fire, thus contained and diminished, can be approached by firefighters for further control.

Aircraft are not harmed by the foam. Delicate machinery that might be injured by high-velocity streams of water is undamaged and left clean when the foam is rinsed away. The structure—in this case, an open steel frame with a metal roof deck—is protected from high temperatures that might weaken it and cause it to collapse.

(c) Carbon Dioxide (CO_2)

Among other inerting gases, CO_2 has long been used to prevent ignition of potentially flammable mixtures and extinguish fires involving flammable liquids or gases. Although inerting gases certainly help to extinguish fire by displacing oxygen, they



Fig. 24.27 *Detergent foam (high-density) discharged from four units (two of which are seen in the illustration) after 3 minutes of operation. This installation at a hangar building at Detroit Metropolitan Airport smothers fire, prevents its spread, and will not harm airplanes or machinery. The system can handle combustible liquid fires. (Note also the supplementary grid of upright sprinklers directly below the roof surface.)*

are even more effective by acting as a heat sink, absorbing combustion energy and reducing the temperature of the flame/vapor mixture below that necessary to sustain combustion.

Because of its oxygen displacement, CO_2 is often used in tightly confined spaces that are free of people or animals—for example, display cases, mechanical or electrical chases, and unventilated areas above suspended ceilings or below raised floors. It also finds applications in data centers, telecommunications equipment, and electrical equipment rooms—in short, wherever water damage is a major concern.

CO_2 is stored in cylinders as a liquid under great pressure, requiring roughly four times as many cylinders as would Halon 1301 for the same hazard. When it is released as a gas, it absorbs about 120 Btu/lb (280 kJ/kg) to provide cooling as well as smothering action. CO_2 is noncombustible and will not react with most substances. It does not conduct electricity and will not normally damage sensitive electronic equipment. There is no residual clean-up associated with its use as a fire-suppressing agent. It spreads upon discharge as a gas, but will stratify over time. When properly vented, the gas escapes to the atmosphere after a fire has been extinguished.

The main problem with CO_2 is that it must be used at concentrations of 21% to 62% of that of the air, depending on the fire's fuel. At a CO_2 concentration of 9%, however, loss of consciousness will occur after a few minutes. This may allow enough time for an awake occupant to escape, but it poses problems for firefighters or trapped persons. Another potential problem is that after the initial smothering and subsequent dissipation of the CO_2, smoldering embers might reignite.

A typical CO_2 automatic detection/suppression system (Fig. 24.28) has storage cylinders, a detection system, and a discharge valve that releases CO_2 into a piping system with discharge nozzles (rather similar to a sprinkler system).

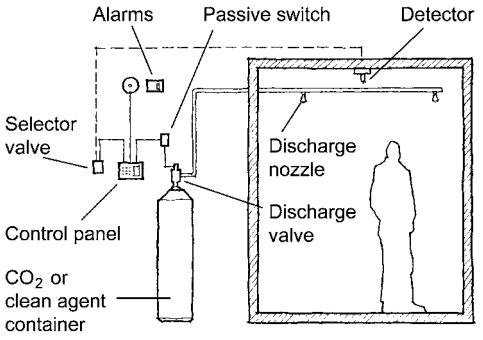


Fig. 24.28 *Schematic of a CO_2 automatic fire detection/suppression system that provides total flooding of a space. Clean agent systems use similar components. (Drawing by Dain Carlson; © 2004 Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*

(d) Clean Agent Gases

An array of replacement gases for Halon 1301 can be expected to be developed to meet demand for this type of fire suppressant. Initially, hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs) and hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs) are likely to be popular substitutes. One currently available alternative uses a potassium-based aerosol. Systems will typically resemble those used with CO_2 (Fig. 24.28). Confined and vital spaces such as control rooms, computer and communication facilities, and emergency response centers are candidates for clean agent systems; consult the NFPA *Fire Protection Handbook* (2008) for system descriptions.

One of the earliest replacements to gain approval is FM-200® (heptafluoropropane, CF_3-CHF-CF_3, ASHRAE designation HFC-227ea). It works in a manner similar to that of halons but with zero ozone-depletion potential. With a much shorter atmospheric lifetime than halons, it is also less threatening as a greenhouse gas contributing to global warming. It will typically require about 50% more cylinders than Halon 1301 for the same hazard.

FM-200 is a clean, nontoxic, odorless, electrically- nonconductive suppression agent consisting of carbon, fluorine, and hydrogen. It is stored in pressurized steel containers and when released vaporizes and interrupts the combustion process by mixing with the air. Upon actuation it leaves no residue.

(e) Portable Fire Extinguishers

Most fires in buildings can be extinguished at an early stage with these commonly seen devices. Portable fire extinguishers are rated (or classified) based on the type of fire they are designed to fight. How many extinguishers are required and where they are located depend upon the hazard of the occupancy (as listed in Table 24.8). The following material is a short summary of NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers* (2007).

Portable fire extinguishers are labeled as follows:

Class 1A to 40A. These extinguishers are used on "Class A" fires: involving ordinary combustibles such as wood, cloth, paper, rubber, and many plastics, and effectively suppressed by the heat-absorbing, cooling effects of water, the coating effects of dry chemicals, or the interruption of the combustion chain reaction provided by dry chemicals. The numerals refer to the relative extinguishing potential (a 40 capacity unit will extinguish 40 times as much as a 1). "A" refers to the contents: water, aqueous film-forming foam (AFFF), film-forming fluoroprotein foam (FFFP), and multipurpose dry chemical (ammonium-phosphate-base). (Halogenated agents are being phased out.)

Class 5B to 40B. These extinguishers are used on "Class B" fires: involving flammable or combustible liquids, flammable gases, greases, and similar materials that are best suppressed by excluding oxygen, by inhibiting the release of combustible vapors, or by interrupting the combustion chain reaction. The numerals refer to the approximate area (in square feet) of deep-layer liquid fire that an inexperienced operator can extinguish. "B" refers to the contents: smothering or flame-interrupting chemicals such as CO_2, dry chemicals, AFFF, or FFFP. (Halogenated agents are being phased out.)

Class C. "Class C" fires involve energized electrical equipment. The extinguisher contents are non-electrically-conducting, such as CO_2 or dry chemicals. (Halogenated agents are being phased out.)

Class A:B:C. Multipurpose dry chemical extinguishers filled primarily with ammonium phosphate and suitable for use with all three classes of fire. Unfortunately, ammonium phosphate has the disadvantage of leaving an especially hard residue unless promptly and thoroughly cleaned as soon as a fire is extinguished.

Class D. Class D fires involve combustible metals or metal alloys. The extinguisher contains dry powders, such as copper or graphite compounds or sodium chloride. These extinguishers are used on a variety of combustible metals; the specific combustible metal for which the extinguisher is intended is printed on the extinguisher's nameplate.

Class K. "Class K" fires involve cooking appliances that have vegetable oils and animal oils and fats—such as those found in commercial kitchens, restaurants, and cafeterias. These extinguishers contain a potassium acetate–based, low-pH agent that discharges as a fine mist to help prevent fires from grease splashes while the appliance cools.

A typical portable extinguisher is shown in Fig. 24.14*b*. A common Class A extinguisher contains 2½ gal (9.5 L) of water, weighs about 30 lb (13.6 kg), and emits a stream that can travel 30 to 40 ft (9 to 12 m). Fire extinguishers are rarely considered aesthetically pleasing, yet they need to be located in conspicuous places along regular paths of egress (Fig. 24.29). The requirements for maximum floor area served and maximum path to an extinguisher are shown in Table 24.11.

24.5 LIGHTNING PROTECTION

Lightning is nature's most destructive force: the average lighting discharge is estimated at 200 million V, 30,000 A, and courses through a grounded object in less than a thousandth of a second. "Cold" lightning bolts have ample current, voltage, and duration to shatter and kill, but not to ignite combustibles. "Hot" bolts will ignite combustibles as well. Lightning protection can also serve to protect a building's electrical distribution system.

The decision on whether to protect a structure against lightning depends upon an evaluation of these factors:

1. Frequency and severity of thunderstorms.
2. Value and nature of building and contents.
3. Hazard to building occupants.
4. Building exposure; buildings in open and exposed areas are more susceptible to lightning than urban buildings, although very tall towers remain vulnerable.
5. Indirect effects. For example, loss of a water tower will seriously affect fire prevention and other services.

If a decision is reached to protect a building, it should be done completely and properly, with

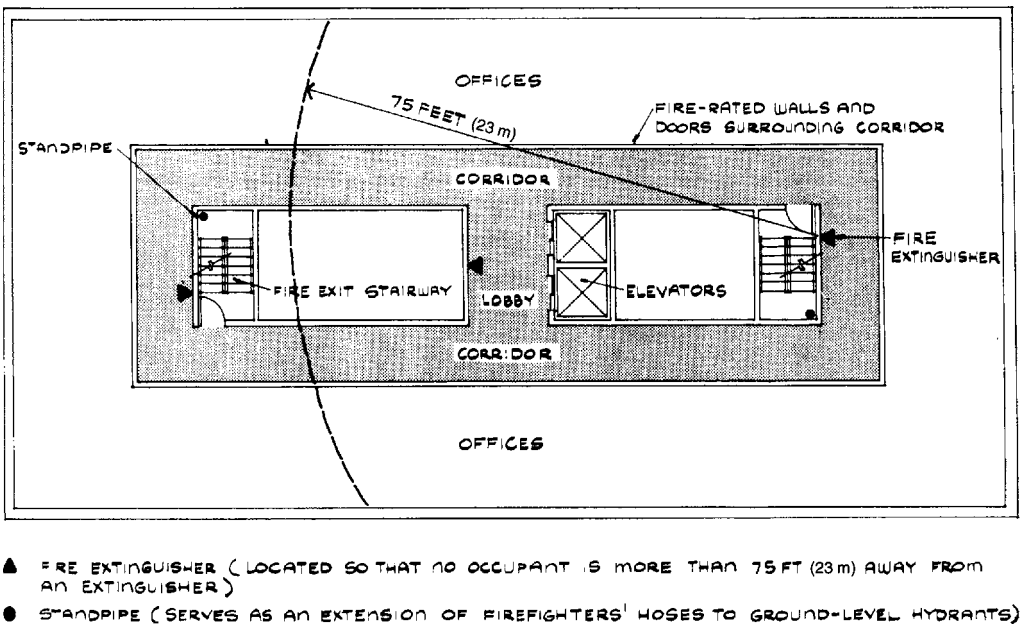


Fig. 24.29 *Location of portable fire extinguishers for a typical multistory office building. Extinguishers should be easily reached and placed in conspicuous locations along normal paths of protected egress, away from potential fire hazards. Note that three locations are shown. (Reprinted by permission from Egan,* Concepts in Building Firesafety; *© 1978 by John Wiley & Sons.)*

TABLE 24.11 Class A Fire Extinguishers

PART A. SIZE AND PLACEMENT FOR CLASS A HAZARDS			
	Occupancy		
	Light Hazard	**Ordinary Hazard**	**Extra Hazard**
Minimum rated single extinguisher	2-A[a]	2-A	4-A[b]
Maximum floor area per unit of A, ft² (m²)	3,000 (279)	1,500 (139)	1,000 (93)
Maximum floor area for extinguisher, ft² (m²)	11,250 (1045)[c]	11,250 (1045)[c]	11,250 (1045)[c]
Maximum travel distance to extinguisher, ft (m)	75 (22.8)	75 (22.8)	75 (22.8)
PART B. MAXIMUM AREA TO BE PROTECTED PER EXTINGUISHER, ft² (m²)			
	Occupancy		
Class A Rating on Extinguisher	**Light Hazard**	**Ordinary Hazard**	**Extra Hazard**
1A	—	—	—
2A	6000 (557)	3000 (279)	—
3A	9000 (836)	4500 (418)	—
4A	11,250 (1045)	6000 (557)	4000 (372)
6A	11,250 (1045)	9000 (836)	6000 (557)
10A	11,250 (1045)	11,250 (1045)	10,000 (929)
20A and more	11,250 (1045)	11,250 (1045)	11,250 (1045)

Source: Adapted with permission from the *Fire Protection Handbook*, 18th ed., © 1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

[a]Up to two water-type extinguishers each with 1-A rating can be used to fulfill the requirements of one 2-A rated extinguisher for light hazard occupancies.

[b]Two 2½-gal. (9.5-L) water-type extinguishers can be used to fulfill the requirements of one 4-A rated extinguisher.

[c]This is the maximum area of a square that can be inscribed in a circle of 75-ft (22.8-m) radius where 75 ft (22.8 m) is the maximum distance to a fire extinguisher.

Note: SI units were added by the text authors (they are not from the original source).

Underwriters Laboratories (UL) label equipment (Label A and B) and UL-approved installation (Label C). A partially protected building is in reality an improperly protected building, which might be worse than one with no protection at all.

The relevant standards are NFPA 780, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems* (2008), and UL Standard 96A, *Standard for Installation Requirements for Lightning Protection Systems* (2007). The subject of lightning protection is complex, and the design of an adequate system is best left to specialists. Design considerations and available materials are discussed briefly in the following material.

There is no known method of protection that will prevent the occurrence of a lightning stroke. The basic principle in lightning protection is, therefore, to provide a continuous metallic path to solid (low-resistance) ground for a lightning stroke. This approach will prevent the stroke from passing through the nonconductive portions of a building, accompanied by intense heat and very large mechanical forces that result from the high resistance of such a path.

Any lightning protection system includes one (usually more) *air terminals* (pointed copper or aluminum rods projecting above a structure); *ground terminals* embedded in highly conductive soil (or in a network of buried wires if the soil is nonconductive, such as bedrock or very dry soil); and *down conductors* that connect air and ground terminals. The conductors may be exposed on the building's exterior or concealed within a structure.

Three techniques for protecting structures from lightning are shown in Fig. 24.30. All three offer the lightning stroke a good conductor above the level of the protected nonconductive structure. The lightning stroke is drawn to the conductor, then conducted harmlessly to the earth. (Trees can be similarly protected.)

(a) Franklin Cone

A *Franklin cone* (Fig. 24.30*a*), named for Ben Franklin, is simply a mast with a conductor running straight to ground. A "cone of protection" is formed that protects the objects within it from strikes by absorbing the lightning stroke at the mast and grounding it harmlessly. The closer an object to the ground and the mast, the better the protection: buildings within an interior solid angle of 60° get excellent protection, those within an angle of 90°

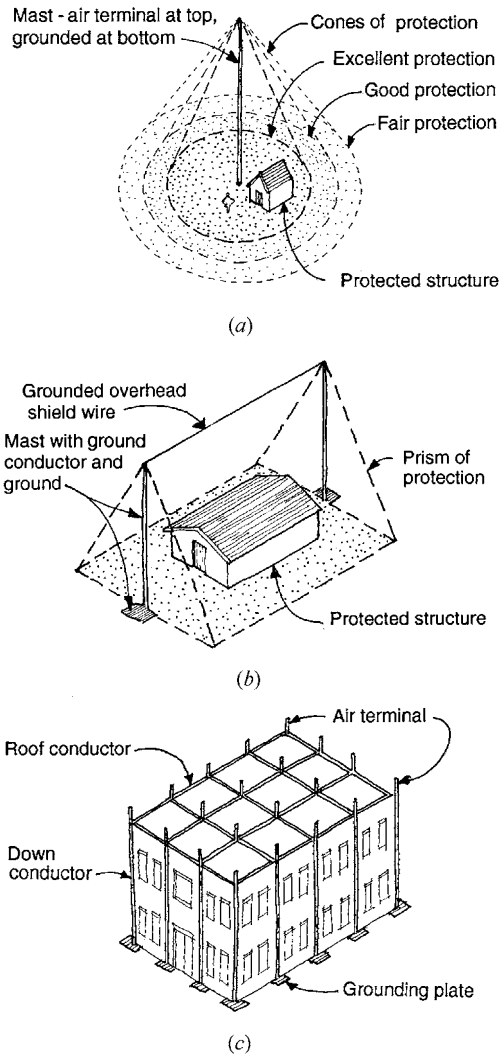


Fig. 24.30 *Three approaches to lightning protection. (a) The Franklin cone is provided by a central mast that acts as an air terminal, conductor, and ground. (b) The overhead ground shield wire provides a triangular prism protection zone. (c) The Faraday cage wraps a protective mesh around a structure.*

get good protection, and those within an angle of up to 126° get fair protection. (A more complex "geometric" version is described in the NFPA *Fire Protection Handbook*.)

(b) Overhead Ground Shield Wire

Forming a continuous air terminal, this shield (Fig. 24.30*b*) is linear and horizontal, so the protected volume is a triangular prism, rather than a cone. This is most commonly used to protect overhead transmission lines.

It is recommended that both the single mast and the overhead ground shield project above any structure within the protected zone by at least 6 ft (1.8 m), and more height is better.

(c) Faraday Cage

Named for Michael Faraday, this approach (Fig. 24.30*c*) depends upon an open interconnected mesh covering a large, nonconducting mass (a building) to draw a lightning stroke and conduct it to earth. This leaves large areas of the roof exposed, so the higher the air terminals and the denser the mesh, the better the protection. An office tower, with high air terminals at close intervals, is shown in Fig. 24.31. Because this is the most common method used to protect buildings, some details follow.

All metallic objects on the roof should be bonded to a looped conductor that joins the air terminals. These air terminals commonly are placed both at roof edges and ridges at intervals of about 20 ft (6 m). The conductors usually are made of copper and are best housed in a plastic pipe conduit. Ground



Fig. 24.31 *Lightning rods (air terminals) enliven the silhouette of the Bank of America Corporate Center in Charlotte, North Carolina. (Photo by Dale Brentrup.)*

conductors, often called *counterpoise* conductors, are also installed to connect the earth terminals.

Metal roof and siding must not be substituted for air terminals and down conductors, unless constructed of 3⁄16-in. (4.8-mm) minimum sheet metal that has been made electrically continuous by bonding or an approved interlocking contact.

In *reinforced-concrete buildings*, concrete column steel reinforcing can be used for lightning conduction *if* the reinforcing steel is welded rather than merely tied. Where tied, and in buildings constructed with precast concrete panels, reinforcing steel (and other metal) within a few feet of lightning conductors should be bonded to the conductors to avoid arcing. Such arcing, as noted previously, is accompanied by heat and mechanical forces that can produce major structural damage and fire. Precast concrete buildings present a challenge because the reinforcing steel within precast panels is not typically interconnected.

In *steel structure buildings*, the columns relatively easily become lightning conductors. Care must be taken to adequately bond both the tops and foundations of such columns to the air and ground terminals, respectively (Fig. 24.32).

(d) Lightning Arresters

A lightning arrester is a special type of *surge arrester* generally connected at one end to an overhead electrical line and at the other end to the ground. It thus suppresses any lightning voltage surges that appear in the electrical line so that equipment downstream on that line is not damaged. A lightning arrester operates only when it senses a voltage surge. At that point, it conducts the surge to the ground through its own low resistance and partially dissipates the energy of the surge in the body of the arrester. Once the surge has passed, the arrester returns to its high-impedance quiescent state, presenting an open-circuit connection to the normal voltage line to which it is connected.

(e) High-Rise Buildings

Lightning protection systems are particularly important for very tall buildings. Figure 24.33 shows the schematic diagram for the John Hancock Center in Chicago, a structural steel building of unusual height. Intermediate loops at the mechanical equipment floors help to overcome the problem posed by the poorer conductivity of metal piping systems, which can become relatively high-impedance paths for lightning, with resultant destructive effects. The intermediate loops are connected to each outside column, as well as to the main electrical, plumbing, air-conditioning, and fire protection risers. These loops are also connected to both the roof conductor and the ground counterpoise conductor.

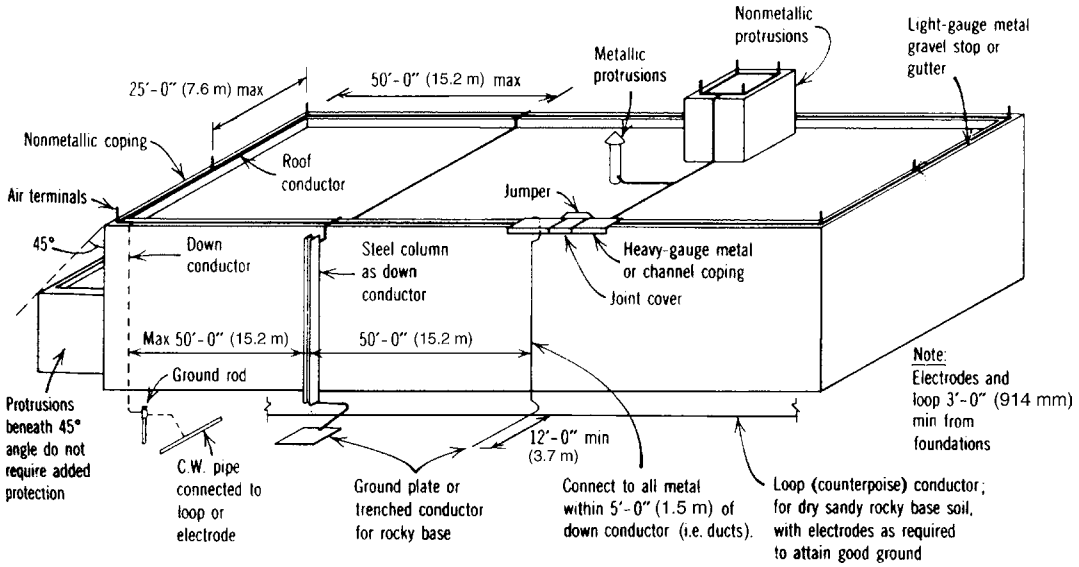


Fig. 24.32 *Diagram of a typical lightning protection system.*

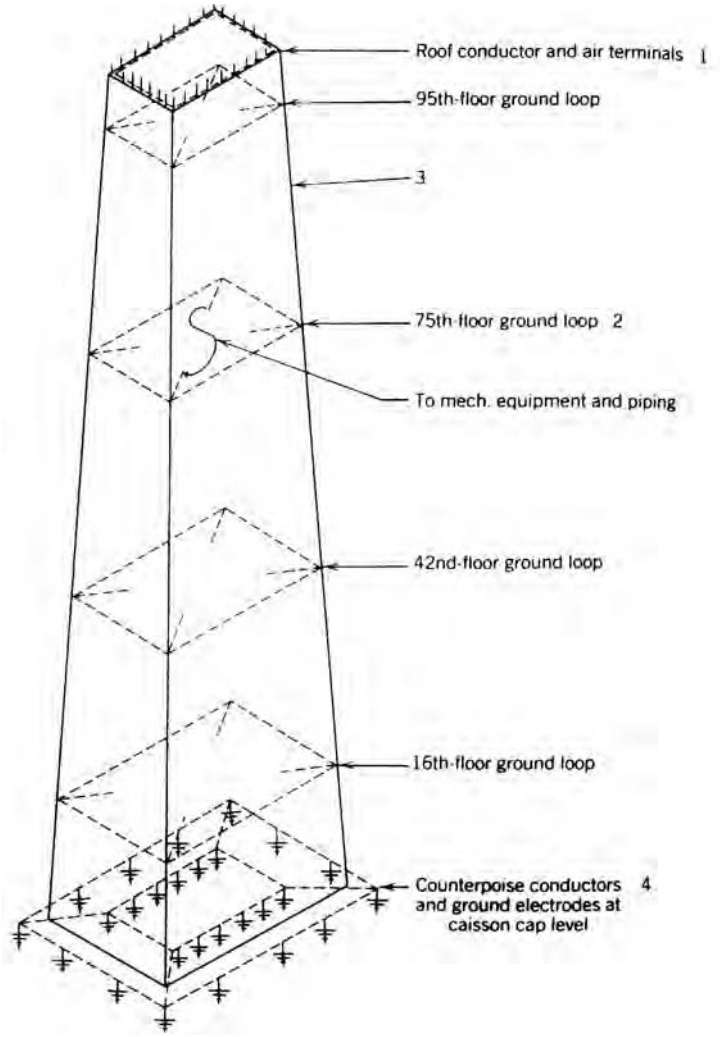


Fig. 24.33 *Lightning protection for the John Hancock Center, Chicago. Air terminals with roof conductors (1) are bonded to building steel and looped to ensure that a single wiring break will not fault the system. Intermediate-floor ground loops (2) with connections to building mechanical equipment and piping protect against side-effect flashover to people or equipment. Building structural steel (3), properly bonded together, is used as a down conductor. Counterpoise conductors (4) cross-connect ground electrodes with ground conductors located below the minimum groundwater level to ensure adequate and uniform dissipation of the charge. (Reprinted by permission from Jensen [ed.],* Fire Protection for the Design Professional; *© 1975 by Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, Inc.)*

FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

24.6 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

A fire alarm system serves primarily to protect life and secondarily to prevent property loss. Because buildings vary in occupancy, flammability, type of construction, and value, a fire alarm system must be tailored to the needs of a specific facility. In schools, for instance, where the paramount consideration is rapid, orderly evacuation, the same general type of system will be used from project to project, although the means of automatic detection will vary with construction type, building height, specific area use, furnishings, and staffing. The fire alarm is part of the overall fire *protection* system of a building. In particular, it overlaps with the design of safe egress and smoke/fire control in matters such as fan control and smoke venting, smoke door closers, rolling shutters, elevator capture, and the like.

These automatic functions are initiated by operation of the alarm system but are designed in accordance with the overall fire protection plan.

Like other alarm systems, a fire alarm system has three basic parts: signal initiation, signal processing, and alarm indication (see Fig. 24.34). The signal initiation can be manual (pull stations or telephones) or automatic (fire and smoke detectors and/or water flow switches). The alarm signal is processed by some sort of control equipment, which in turn activates audible and visible alarms and, in some cases, alerts a central fire station or municipal authorities.

24.7 FIRE CODES, AUTHORITIES, AND STANDARDS

NFPA codes (actually standards awaiting adoption into codes) are published by the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), 1 Batterymarch Park, P.O. Box 9101, Quincy, MA 02269-9101. They bear directly on fire alarm system arrangements. There are probably more codes and standards in the area of fire protection than in any other area, with the possible exception of structural design. Although the following documents are devoted primarily to fire protection and life safety, they also govern the type of fire alarm system to be installed, its components, and its installation.

NFPA 101: Life Safety Code. Specifies the means of egress, the type of fire alarm system, and the type and location of fire and smoke detection equipment for all types of occupancies.

NFPA 70: National Electrical Code. Particularly Art. 760, *Fire Alarm Systems* (completely rewritten for the 1996 update).

NFPA 72: National Fire Alarm Code. This integrated code replaces the various individual sections that preceded it.

NFPA 90: Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.

NFPA 92B: Standard for Smoke Management Systems in Malls, Atria, and Large Spaces. This code and 90A provide information on smoke detection in HVAC systems.

NFPA 99: Health Care Facilities.

NFPA 110: Emergency and Standby Power Systems.

NFPA 111: Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems.

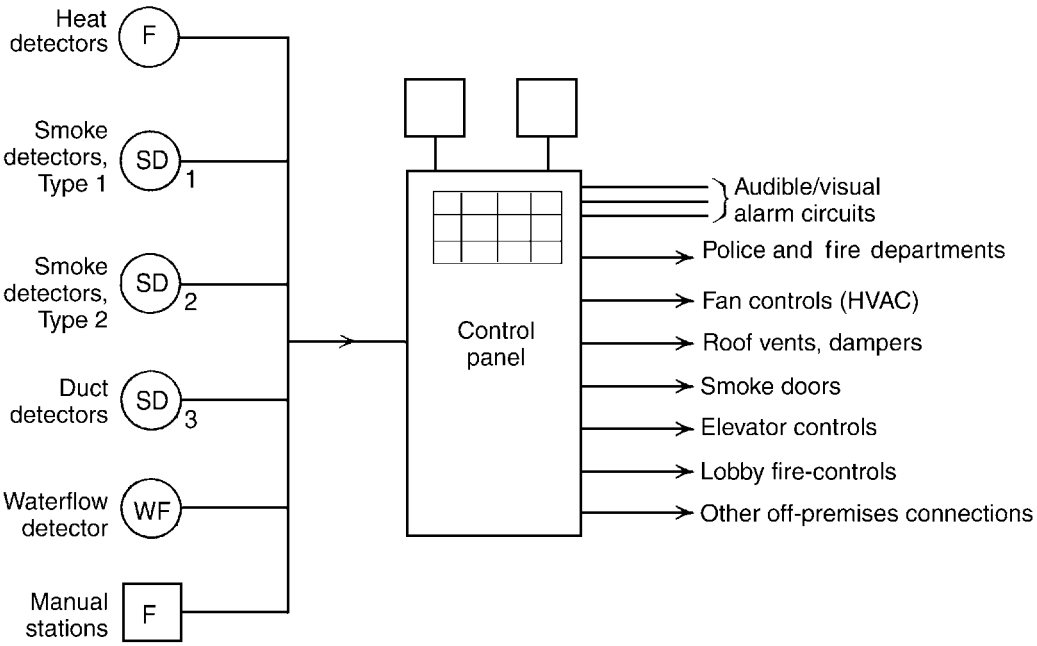


Fig. 24.34 *Typical simplified arrangement of a building fire alarm system. Multiple circuits, zoning, and other accessories such as annunciators are not shown. In a protected-premises (local alarm) system, the off-premises connections to police, fire department, and other central stations do not exist.*

ANSI (American National Standards Institute). This organization (located at 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018) does not develop standards; it accepts for review standards that are prepared by professional and technical societies and associations. Approval and listing by ANSI validates the technical acceptability of the work.

CABO/ANSI 117.1: Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities. This standard specifies requirements to make buildings completely accessible to and usable by people with physical disabilities of all sorts.

ICC (International Code Council). Publishes the *International Fire Code*, a unified code that is gradually supplanting the regional codes (SBC, UBC, BOCA) that follow.

SBCCI. The *Standard Building Code* (also known as *SBC*) is published by the Southern Building Code Congress—900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206. This code, generally used in the southern and southeastern areas of the United States, deals with auxiliary system controls such as door release, elevator capture, and so forth. In addition, SBC has a special section on high-rise buildings, covering fire communication, elevator control, and smoke alarms.

BOCA. Published by Building Officials and Code Administrators International, 4051 W. Flossmoor Rd., Country Club Hills, IL 60478-5795, the *Basic Fire Prevention Code* covers smoke detection and alarm audibility, plus requirements for high-rise buildings.

UBC (*Uniform Building Code*). Published by the International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO), 5360 Workman Mill Rd., Whittier, CA 90601-2298. This code, used generally in the western and southwestern areas of the United States, covers essentially the same material as the other codes. Like them, it relies heavily on the *Life Safety Code*, NFPA 101.

HUD (Department of Housing and Urban Development). Publishes requirements for residential buildings and care-type facilities. FHA minimum property standards are included here.

UL (Underwriters Laboratories). Numerous performance standards are published by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062-2096. UL laboratories test equipment for inherent safety and for performance according to the manufacturer's specification. A product is "listed" if the equipment passes UL safety and performance tests (see following table).

UL Detection Standards

38:	Standard for Manual Signaling Boxes for Fire Alarm Systems
217:	Standard for Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms
268:	Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Signaling Systems
268A:	Standard for Smoke Detectors for Duct Application
346:	Standard for Waterflow Indicators for Fire Protective Signaling Systems
521:	Standard for Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems
539:	Standard for Single and Multiple Station Heat Alarms
985:	Standard for Household Fire Warning System Units
1730:	Standard for Smoke Detector Monitors and Accessories for Individual Living Units of Multifamily Residences and Hotel/Motel Rooms

UL Alarm Standards

228:	Standard for Door Closers-Holders, With or Without Integral Smoke Detectors
464:	Standard for Audible Signal Appliances
827:	Standard for Central-Station Alarm Services
1480:	Standard for Speakers for Fire Alarm, Emergency, and Commercial and Professional Use
1638:	Standard for Visual Signaling Appliances—Private Mode Emergency and General Utility Signaling
1971:	Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired

In addition, several insurance groups (e.g., Factory Mutual) issue standards that may apply to a specific facility—in addition to local codes, standards, and fire marshal regulations. As with other aspects of construction, the architect/designer must ascertain which regulations have jurisdiction before proceeding with the design. In addition, all codes and standards undergo a cyclical updating process with new versions appearing on a regular

basis. The specific recommendations given in the following sections are representative of good practice. Actual design must be based upon and must meet the requirements of *current* NFPA standards plus all codes having jurisdiction in the particular locale of a project.

24.8 FIRE ALARM DEFINITIONS AND TERMS

The following short list can serve as a primer for terminology that a designer may encounter in fire alarm work.

Addressable analog (smoke) detector. Also called an *intelligent detector*. An addressable (see next definition) smoke detector that continuously measures the concentration of smoke or other products of combustion in its test chamber. It continuously transmits an analog (voltage or current) signal to its (intelligent) control panel that is proportional to this measurement. It does not transmit an alarm signal (see Fig. 24.46).

Addressable detector. A smoke or fire detector that communicates an alarm condition along with an individual identification (address), thereby immediately establishing the alarm's location. It responds to polling (testing) when it senses its unique identification (address) signal, "replying" with a signal indicating OK, trouble, or alarm.

Air-sampling detector. A system consisting of aspiration equipment and piping that draws air from a protected area to the detector, where analysis of the sampled air occurs.

Alarm signal. An audible and/or visual signal indicating a fire emergency, generally requiring immediate building evacuation.

Alarm verification. A technique for reducing false alarms. Common procedures include a requirement for alarming for a specific minimum time and a repeat alarm after initial reset.

Automatic system. A system in which an alarm-initiating device operates automatically to transmit or sound an alarm signal.

Auxiliary fire alarm system. See Section 24.9(c).

Break-glass. A false-alarm deterrent installed in manual fire alarm stations; a glass rod is placed across the pull-lever that breaks easily when the lever is pulled.

Coded alarm signal. An alarm signal that indicates the location of the fire alarm station that operated, by the pattern (code) of the audible signal.

Coded system. One in which not fewer than three rounds of coded alarm signals are sounded, after which the system may either be silenced or set to sound a continuous alarm.

Control unit (fire alarm panel). The controls, microprocessors, relays, switches, and associated circuits necessary to (1) furnish power to a fire alarm system, (2) receive and process signals from alarm-initiating devices and transmit them to indicating devices and accessory equipment, and (3) electrically supervise the system's circuitry.

Drift compensation. Adjustment function that compensates for detector sensitivity changes due to aging and environmental conditions. The adjustment may be automatic at the detector or manual/automatic at the control panel. Also referred to as *automatic gain control* in beam-type smoke detectors.

Dual-coded system. See Section 24.12(d).

Intelligent control panel. A control center that receives analog signals from detectors and, based on predetermined conditions (usually programmed into software or a microprocessor), determines whether an alarm situation exists. Sensitivity control, polling, and remote diagnostic testing of connected detectors are other functions usually found in these panels.

Listed, listing. Inclusion of a device in a list published by a recognized testing organization, such as UL, indicating that the device meets the requirements of the referenced standard.

Local fire alarm systems. See Section 24.9.

Manual system. One in which the alarm-initiating device is operated by direct human action to transmit or sound an alarm signal.

Master-coded system. See Section 24.12(b).

Multiplex system. An arrangement whereby a single pair of wires can carry more than one message (signal) at a time in either or both directions.

Noncoded system. See Section 24.12(a).

Presignal system. See Section 24.12(f).

Private mode. An alarm system installed in a location that has personnel specifically trained to act on receipt of an alarm signal.

Proprietary fire alarm system. See Section 24.9(e).
Public mode. An alarm system that alerts all of the protected spaces and occupants audibly and/or visually.
Rate-of-rise detector. A temperature detector that alarms when the rate of temperature rise exceeds a specific design level, usually 15F°/minute (15C°/min).
Remote-station fire alarm system. See Section 24.9(d).
Selective-coded system. See Section 24.12(e).
Station, fire alarm. A manually operated alarm-initiating device. It may be equipped to generate a continuous signal (noncoded station) or a series of coded pulses (coded station).
Supervised system. A system in which a break or ground in the wiring that prevents the transmission of an alarm signal actuates a trouble signal.
Trouble signal. A signal indicating trouble of any nature, such as a circuit break or ground, occurring in a device or circuitry associated with a fire alarm system.
Zone-coded system. See Section 24.12(c).

24.9 TYPES OF FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

Fire alarm systems can be classified according to several different characteristics, including location, application, connections, coding, and the degree of automation of the detection system. The last factor is the one most often found in manufacturers' literature. To avoid confusion, the classification system found in the *National Fire Alarm Code* (NFPA 72) is used herein. This code classifies fire alarm systems essentially by location and function:

- Household fire warning systems.
- Protected-premises systems (local alarm).
- Off-premises systems (connections between local alarms and off-premises equipment and systems). This category includes auxiliary, remote station, proprietary, central station, and municipal fire alarm systems.

(a) Household Fire Warning Systems

The term is self-explanatory. These systems are discussed at some length in Section 24.26.

(b) Protected-Premises Fire Alarm System

This arrangement (Fig. 24.34), as the name indicates, is intended to sound an alarm only in the protected premises. Action in response to an alarm must be taken locally, either manually or automatically. Thus, notification to the fire department is manual, although fire-suppression systems can be set into operation automatically. This arrangement is applicable to privately owned facilities. When a building is unoccupied, notification to the fire department can come only incidentally, perhaps from a passerby. Local systems and their components are discussed in detail in Section 24.11.

(c) Auxiliary Fire Alarm System

This is simply a local system equipped with a direct connection to a municipal fire alarm box (Fig. 24.35). The received alarm signal is identical to that resulting from a manual alarm at that city box. Since the fire department is aware of all city box connections, arriving firefighters would always check the protected premises. This type of system is usually applied to public buildings such as schools, government offices, museums, and the like.

(d) Remote Station Protective Signaling System

This system (see Fig. 24.36) is similar to an auxiliary system, except that the alarm or trouble signal is transmitted via a leased telephone line to a remote location (a police station or a telephone-answering

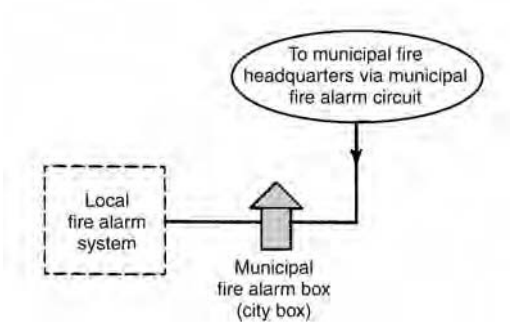


Fig. 24.35 *An auxiliary fire alarm system is hard-wired to the municipal fire department, generally via a city box. This type of connection is usually restricted to public buildings.*

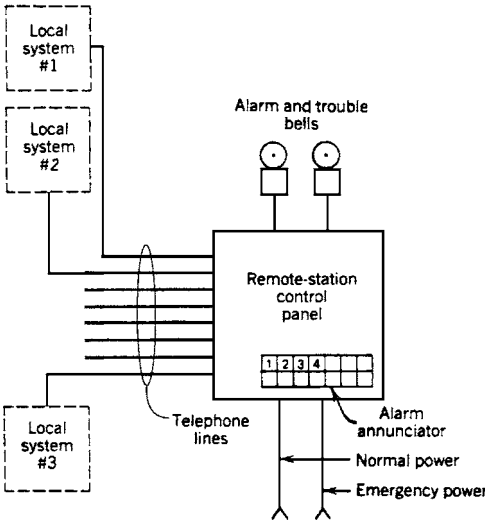


Fig. 24.36 *A remote station system transmits alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote location that is continuously attended. The required actions will be taken by those attending the remote stations.*

service) that is manned 24 hours a day. Notice of the alarm is then telephoned to the fire department. This arrangement is used in private buildings, such as stores and offices, which are unoccupied for considerable periods and for which reliance on a chance passerby to turn in a fire signal is unacceptable. An audible alarm circuit extended from a local system to a nearby building—as, for instance, from a store to a nearby residence—does *not* constitute a remote-station system unless all the requirements of NFPA 72 are met.

(e) Proprietary Fire Alarm System

This system (see Fig. 24.37), which is applicable to large multibuilding facilities such as universities, manufacturing facilities, and the like, utilizes a dedicated central supervisory station to receive signals from all buildings. In a proprietary system, this station is on the site and is manned by persons associated with the facility. A common arrangement is for the station to be located in a guardhouse or similar supervisory location, from which point alarms are sent manually to a fire department and/or on-site fire brigades. Other actions that must be taken on receipt of alarm or trouble signals are performed by facility personnel at the central supervisory location.

Information on the exact locale or zone within each building at which an alarm occurs is transmitted to the central supervisory location. The central station has an audible alarm, some sort of visual display that indicates the alarm location, and a printer that makes a permanent record of each alarm. As mentioned, these central supervisory locations are frequently multipurpose, covering all aspects of facility security plus, frequently, control functions such as energy management.

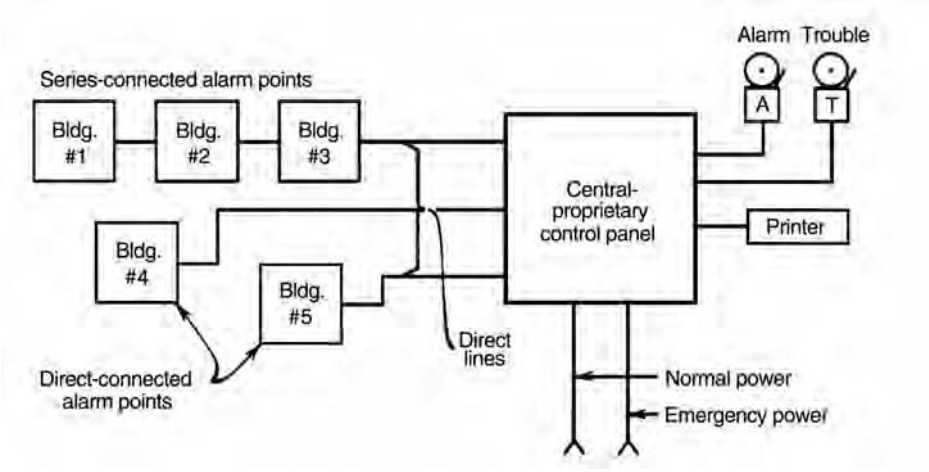


Fig. 24.37 *Block diagram of a proprietary fire alarm system. The entire system, including all local devices plus the central supervisory equipment, is the property of a single owner. The central supervisory installation is attended by facility personnel who are trained to respond appropriately to alarm, trouble, and supervisory signals.*

(f) Central Station Fire Alarm System

This arrangement is similar to that described for proprietary systems except that the system supervision and normally all of its equipment are owned and operated by a service company. In lieu of multiple buildings under one "ownership," a central station system supervises many individual unrelated local systems for a fee. Here too, operators of the central supervisory installation receive all signals from individual users and provide the required services, including alarm verification, fire reporting, and repairs when trouble signals are received. As with proprietary systems, central station consoles often supervise access control, intrusion alarms, and related systems.

24.10 CIRCUIT SUPERVISION

This common term refers to the circuit arrangements in fire alarm systems that indicate a malfunction in the wiring of alarm (and other) devices by sounding a trouble bell. The trouble signal is separate and distinct from an alarm signal. The extent of circuit supervision required varies with the type of facility and the specific code adopted by a jurisdiction. Minimally, an open circuit (break) or a ground in any part of the detector and manual station wiring will cause a trouble signal. In large, sophisticated systems, all of the wiring and circuitry is supervised, including the control panel(s), alarm device circuits, and even annunciator wiring.

In conventional systems (see Section 24.11), the supervision does not indicate where a fault lies, but only that a fault exists. It is up to the system operator to troubleshoot the system in order to locate the fault. Because this may be a protracted procedure, all codes require that the system wiring be such that a single break or a single nonsimultaneous ground will not prevent an alarm signal from being sounded beyond the break (Class B circuits) or on the entire circuit (Class A circuit).

24.11 CONVENTIONAL SYSTEMS

Manufacturers classify fire alarm systems by the type of information transmitted to the control panel by the detectors and the alarm devices. The simplest (and oldest) system is the conventional system (Fig. 24.38). A conventional system uses detectors and manual stations that transmit an alarm signal only. When they are in standby or quiescent state, they do not transmit. Such detectors and manual stations are called *conventional units*; hence the same name is used for the entire system. The signals transmitted by all detectors, and by manual stations as well, are identical and therefore indistinguishable from each other.

In theory, the number of alarm-initiating devices (such as fire and smoke detectors) that can

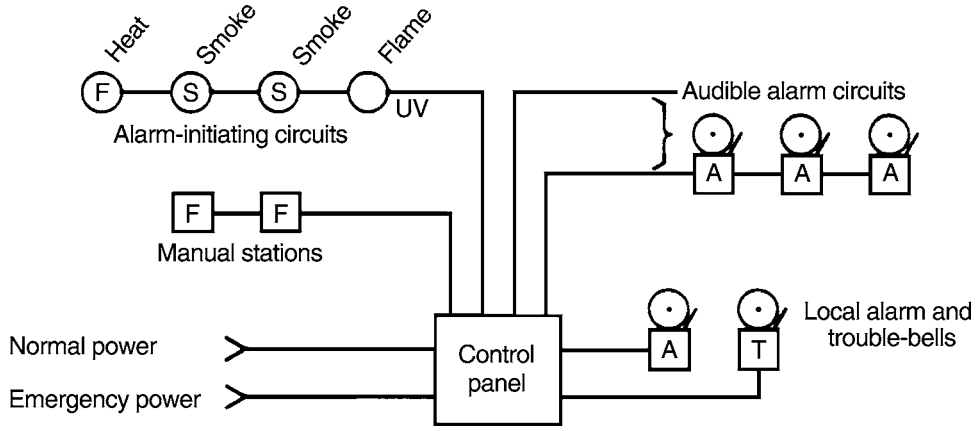


Fig. 24.38 *Simplified schematic diagram of a conventional fire alarm system. Alarm-initiating devices are connected together on detector circuits, as are manual stations and audible/visual alarm devices. The control panel receives identical signals from all detectors, manual stations, and alarm-initiating circuits.*

be wired to a single detector circuit is unlimited. (In practice, there are electrical limitations.) As a result, when an alarm signal is received from such a multiple-device circuit, there is no way of knowing which of the devices alarmed and whether the alarm represents an actual fire condition or whether it is a false alarm caused by dirt, moisture, a puff of smoke, a short circuit in the wiring, or a malfunction of a detector.

Smoke detectors of all types (ionization, photo) are subject to false alarms activated by particulate matter in the air. Detectors are, by nature, threshold devices; raising sensitivity increases false alarms, and decreasing sensitivity shortens the crucial early-warning period. False alarms are not merely nuisances; in facilities such as hospitals, and in places of public assembly such as theaters, public office buildings, and mass eating facilities, a false fire alarm can result in serious business disruption, property loss, personal injury, and even death if panic ensues. As a result, conventional detectors in such buildings require continual maintenance and field sensitivity checks to minimize false alarms, which is an expensive and time-consuming procedure.

Because such facilities are so difficult and even dangerous to evacuate, most have fire and evacuation plans that call for some type of alarm verification before a general evacuation alarm is sounded. Because field experience has demonstrated that alarm verification can reduce false alarms appreciably without seriously degrading the early warning performance of combustion product detectors, recent editions of some fire codes now permit, or even require, alarm verification. This verification can be accomplished in conventional (hard-wired, zoned, nonaddressable) systems in a number of ways, including:

- Requiring activation of at least two cross-zoned detectors in a single area.
- Requiring that a detector repeat its alarm after being reset (applicable only to systems with remote reset capabilities).
- Requiring that a smoke detector continue to alarm for a minimum period of time, thus eliminating smoke puffs as the cause of an alarm.
- Physically inspecting the site protected by the detector to visually determine whether the alarm is actual or false.

This last technique for alarm verification is probably the most foolproof, but it is also the most difficult because it requires knowledge of the exact location of the alarming detector. This is possible only if detectors are grouped into zones and each zone is annunciated individually (Fig. 24.39). To assist in localizing areas in a building by annunciation, zones are wired to contain as few devices as possible, the ultimate arrangement being a separate zone for each detector. As can be seen in Fig. 24.39, as the number of zones increases, so does the necessary wiring and, logically, so do the installation costs. Thus, a balance must be struck between two requirements: the need for more zones to localize and thereby simplify alarm identification and verification, and limitation of the increased cost of zoning. The balance point depends upon the type of facility being protected. All modern conventional systems are solid-state, and all but the smallest use a wiring system called *multiplexing*.

Multiplexing uses a time-sharing electronic technique to transmit and receive multiple signals on a single two-wire communications circuit. This has the great advantage of reducing the primary cost item in large hard-wired systems—individually wired circuits. The alarm and audible signal devices in standard multiplexed systems are the same as those in conventional hard-wired systems. Only the system wiring and the panel architecture change. Zones, and even coding, are substantially unaltered, although the reduction in wiring costs permits the use of smaller zones. Some multiplexed systems are hybrid, using multiplexed detector circuits and hard-wired audible/visual alarm circuits. An additional advantage of multiplex panels is that they can be reprogrammed readily, which is emphatically not the case with hard-wired relay panels.

24.12 SYSTEM CODING

(a) Noncoded Systems

Noncoded systems are *continuous* ringing evacuation arrangements using manual and automatic alarm initiation. If desired, the devices can be zoned and, if the system is sufficiently large, annunciation can be provided. Audible devices are continuous

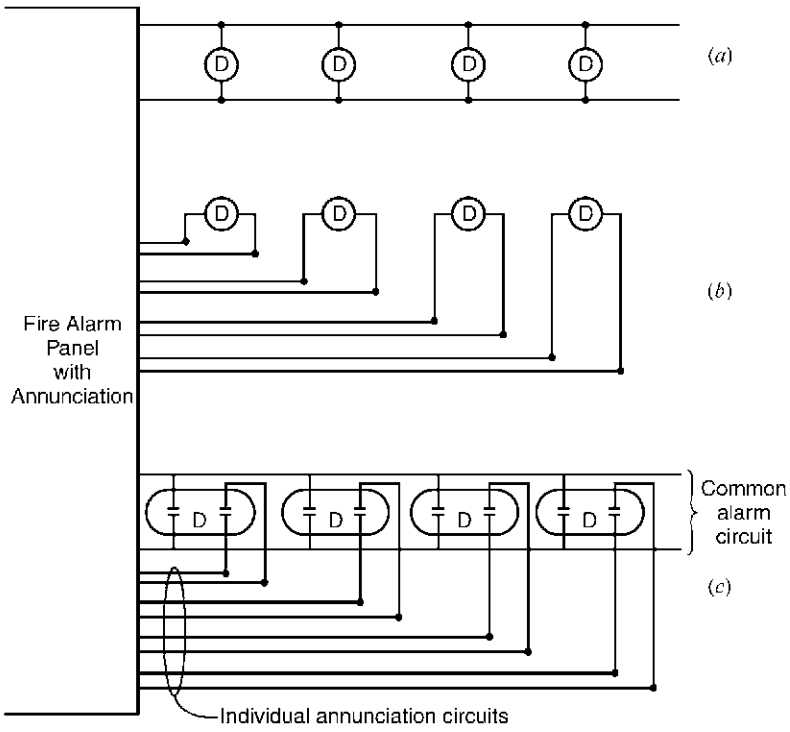


Fig. 24.39 *Identification of detectors, D, can be accomplished in three ways. (a) Each circuit, with multiple detectors, is annunciated as a zone. This arrangement is applicable where detectors are close together. (b) Each detector is wired individually, comprising a separate zone. This is applicable for large or scattered detector spacing. (c) Multiple detectors are wired on a single alarm circuit but individually annunciated. This is applicable where the number of detector circuits in the panel is limited, but individual detector identification is required.*

ringing (vibrating) bells and horns. Visual devices are lights and strobes.

(b) Master-Coded Systems

This system, also called *common-coded* and *fixed-coded*, generates four rounds of code that are sounded and flashed on all of the building alarm devices when any signal-initiating device operates. It utilizes a single code transmitter at the panel. Normally, the system stops after four rounds of code, although it can readily be arranged to sound and flash continuously thereafter. When the code is set to ring bells at 108 strokes per minute, it is known as *march time* because of the rhythmic cadence. This beat aids in the rapid, panic-free evacuation of a building and therefore is frequently used in schools.

(c) Zone-Coded Systems

Identification of the alarmed zone in a system can be accomplished with zone lights, with an annunciator, or by coding. In the first two cases, it is necessary to *go to the panel or annunciator* to determine the location of the operated device, which entails a possibly critical delay. All coded systems avoid this drawback by sounding the code on all the gongs in a building, thus immediately identifying the station and permitting the building staff to quickly investigate the cause of the alarm and take appropriate measures.

If a *coded* system is desired, but by zone rather than by device (this is less expensive by far), *noncoded* manual stations are used, along with automatic detectors, grouped by circuit into zones or individually zoned (Fig. 24.39). Each zone circuit trips a zone's transmitters *in the panel*, which in turn ring

the zone's code on single-stroke gongs or chimes. As with all coded systems, four rounds of coded signal are sounded, after which the system is silenced. In all coded systems, it is advisable to include a device that records all alarms in plain language, including the time of receipt and the code sounded.

(d) Dual-Coded Systems

This arrangement represents a combination of noncoded and zone-coded systems. When an alarm device operates, it initiates two separate functions—an identifying coded alarm and a continuous ringing evacuation alarm. The alarms are sounded simultaneously—the coded alarm in the building's maintenance office, and the evacuation alarm on separate audible and visual devices throughout the building. A requisite to the application of this system is a continuously staffed office in which the coded identifying signal can be received and acted upon.

(e) Selective-Coded Systems

These are fully coded systems in which all manual devices are individually coded and all automatic devices are arranged to trip code transmitters at the panel. Each manual station can be immediately identified by its distinctive code. Automatic devices may be grouped in any fashion desired and annunciated if desired. The combinations and circuitry are entirely in the hands of the designer. In large conventional systems, which fully selective-coded systems usually are, sprinkler transmitters and smoke detectors operate as integral subsystems of the main fire alarm panel.

(f) Presignaling

When it is desired to alert only key personnel, a system called *presignaling* is used. Small bells or chimes are activated only at their work locations. Because these systems are always selectively coded, the personnel alerted can immediately investigate and, if necessary, manually turn in a general alarm by key operation of a station. Because of the delay involved, this type of system is used only in buildings where evacuation is difficult and sufficient staff is available to immediately investigate the cause of an alarm.

24.13 SIGNAL PROCESSING

Once a hazard has been detected, a signal is transmitted to a fire control center and appropriate action taken. In conventional systems, the alarm signal is transmitted over dedicated conductors ("hard wiring") to a control panel, consisting of either electromechanical relays (in older systems) or solid-state switching circuitry (in modern systems). The control panel, in turn, actuates audible and visible device circuits, illuminates annunciator panels, controls fans and door releases, and so on, all via dedicated wiring. This arrangement has the advantages of reliability and simplicity. As a system grows, however, the wiring becomes heavy, complex, and expensive; panels become large and bulky; and changes become difficult. Also, troubleshooting of system faults becomes time-consuming. Furthermore, minimizing false alarms is problematic because alarm verification in systems with large zones containing many alarm devices is very difficult within the extremely short time span permitted for this operation.

As a result of these problems, a system was developed in which every device can be individually identified and remotely checked, without separate wiring to each. It is called an *addressable system* because all the devices are individually addressable.

24.14 ADDRESSABLE FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

An addressable fire alarm system is, by definition, one that uses addressable fire detection devices, both automatic and manual. These detectors are essentially identical to conventional detectors except that they are equipped with electronic circuitry, usually mounted in a special base, which effectively makes each detector a separate zone. Thus, in the event of an alarm, the control can require alarm confirmation from an adjacent detector or can require a repeat alarm from the same detector after a remote reset.

Addressable devices are continuously polled from the control panel, and each replies to the poll by reporting its condition as OK–standby, alarm, or trouble. Because each device is identified by its

address, an alarm or trouble signal from a detector can be quickly and easily confirmed. Detector identification is accomplished either visually on an annunciator panel or by alphanumeric readout on an LCD readout panel. Wiring is simplified; up to 100 detectors can be wired on a single multiplex line. Hardware costs of addressable systems are higher than those of a conventional system because of the additional electronics in the detector bases and the control panel. Maintenance costs, however, are somewhat lower because the panel's polling operation checks some (but not all) of a detector's electronics. Wiring costs for large systems are considerably lower than those of a conventional system. The process of measuring and calibrating detector sensitivity is essentially the same as in a conventional system; the detector must be physically demounted and checked. This can be a major expense in a large system because periodic sensitivity checks are mandated by NFPA codes.

24.15 ADDRESSABLE ANALOG (INTELLIGENT) SYSTEMS

Addressable analog systems are known in the fire alarm industry as *intelligent* despite the fact that the word *intelligent* is being used to refer to an inanimate device or system. To further confuse the issue, there is no accord among manufacturers on the exact meaning or use of the word when so applied. As a result, as of this writing, "very intelligent" and "extremely intelligent" devices have already appeared and other superlatives are sure to follow. The more accurate technical term *addressable analog* is used herein.

As mentioned previously, conventional and addressable detectors are identical except for the electronic identification coding of the latter. Both types test the adjacent space for temperature characteristics and/or products of combustion, compare the result to a preset threshold (adjustable), and latch into alarm position when the threshold is exceeded. The decision on whether to alarm is made at the detector, and the control panel acts only to receive and translate the alarm signal into an audiovisual buildingwide alarm. Similar expensive periodic testing and adjustment of detectors in the field are necessary for both systems.

An analog detector gathers information from its sensor in analog form (voltage, current, or another variable characteristic proportional to the condition it senses) and transmits it to its control panel. That is, an analog detector acts only as a sensor; it does not make the threshold comparison leading to an alarm/no-alarm decision. That decision is made by a microprocessor at the control center. In modern systems, the data received from each detector are combined with other data—including reports from adjacent detectors, "historical" data on the condition of the detectors' time patterns at each detector that might falsely indicate an alarm, plus other relevant information. Analysis of all of this information leads to the decision on whether to sound a general alarm. This arrangement has these advantages:

- False alarms are sharply reduced because of the alarm verification procedures at the panel.
- Threshold sensitivity is set at the panel, permitting adjustment without accessing the detector.
- A history of each detector's output is recorded, and sensitivity degradation can be compensated for automatically. This decreases maintenance costs by increasing the time period between cleanings.
- Any malfunction of a detector is noted immediately at the control panel, since all detectors are polled every few seconds.

Some manufacturers place an integral microprocessor in *each* detector that is capable of performing almost all of the functions described previously as panel functions. These detectors act as normal addressable analog detectors, transmitting analog signals to a control panel. In the event of a connection failure, however, the on-board microprocessor converts the unit to a stand-alone, self-contained detector/controller.

24.16 AUTOMATIC FIRE DETECTION: INCIPIENT STAGE

Fire authorities agree that *most* fires pass through four stages, the last of which is the visible flaming fire. These stages are shown in Fig. 24.40 as a function of duration and degree of hazard. Also shown is the type of automatic detector recommended for detection at each stage.

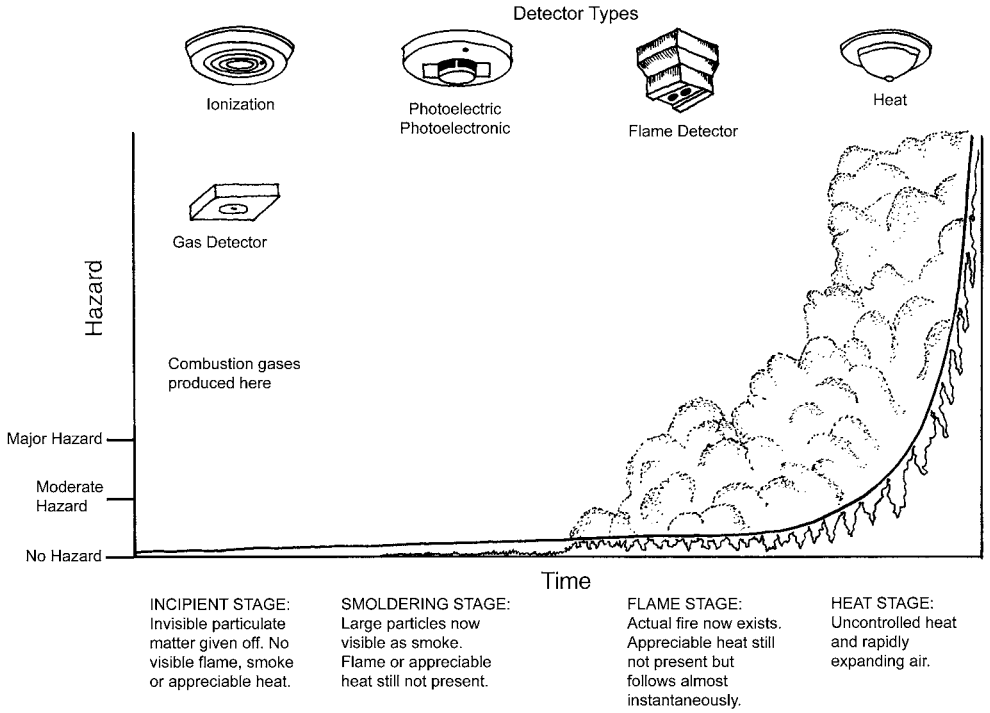


Fig. 24.40 *Four stages of a fire. Early detection of each stage requires a different type of detector that responds to a developing fire's evolving characteristics (fire signature). (Drawing by Amanda Clegg.)*

In the incipient stage, the combustion products comprise a significant quantity of microscopic particles (0.01 to 1.0 micron), which are best detected by *ionization-type* detectors (Fig. 24.41). These detectors contain a small amount of radioactive material that serves to ionize the air between two charged surfaces, causing a current to flow. Combustion particles entering the detector chamber reduce air ion mobility, thus reducing current flow and increasing voltage. These changes are sensed, and the alarm is set off.

The response time of this type of detector depends on how rapidly the combustion particles can reach the detector—a factor that varies with room air currents and with the type of material "burning." Once the particles reach the detector, the response is essentially instantaneous. Therefore, ionization detectors are best applied indoors, in



Fig. 24.41 *Addressable analog (intelligent) ionization-type smoke detector with an integral microprocessor that operates the unit's detection, diagnostic, and error-checking procedures. The detector is self-adjusting to compensate for sensitivity changes due to environmental conditions. Operating sensitivity is remotely adjustable from the control panel. (Photo courtesy of Cerberus Pyrotronics.)*

spaces with stagnant air or low air velocity (below 50 fpm [0.25 m/s]) and in which little visible smoke (large particles) is expected. (Some manufacturers make a special unit whose sensitivity *increases* with air velocity for installation in spaces with air velocities of up to 500 fpm [2.5 m/s].)

Ionization detectors should not be installed on warm or hot ceilings, or in any other location where hot air concentrates, because the hot air layer prevents the combustion particles from reaching the detectors. As a corollary, ionization detector sensitivity is higher at low ambient temperature.

Because ionization detectors react to minute particles of combustion, they should not be applied in, or close to, areas where normal activities produce such particles, as the result will be nuisance alarms. Thus, kitchens, bakeries, welding and brazing shops, workshops using open flames and burners, and areas with concentrated engine exhaust fumes are all inappropriate for application of this type of device. Ionization detectors respond best to fast-burning flaming fires. Because dust settling in the ionization chambers reduces sensitivity, the units need periodic cleaning and recalibration.

As can be seen in Fig. 24.40, the incipient stage of a fire also produces changes in the gas content of the environment. These combustion gases, which are not normally present in the air, are detectable by devices known as *gas-sensing fire detectors*. The principle of operation of these detectors depends upon the type. A semiconductor type reacts to a change in conductivity due to the presence of combustion gases, whereas a catalytic element type detects a change in the electrical resistance of the element caused by the presence of gases. Gas detectors are frequently used in conjunction with another type of detector so that both gases and particulate matter are detectable.

Coverage of incipient stage detectors varies from 150 to 900 ft^2 (14 to 83 m^2) per unit, depending upon the unit used, the type of combustible material in the space, and ambient conditions. Once a fire has passed the incipient stage and becomes smoky, an ionization detector loses sensitivity and photoelectric detectors are recommended. The same is true if, even in the incipient stage, the combustion products are the large particles typical of visible smoke. Ionization, gas, and photoelectric detectors are classified as early-warning types.

24.17 AUTOMATIC FIRE DETECTION: SMOLDERING STAGE

(a) Photoelectric Smoke Detection

The smoldering stage of a fire (see Fig. 24.40) is characterized by particles up to 10 microns in size. Such particles, although small, are visible to the naked eye as smoke and are best detected by photometric means. The simplest type of *photoelectric smoke detector* operates on the principle of beam obscuration, as shown schematically in Fig. 24.42. A beam of light is directed onto a photosensor, and a steady-state, no-smoke circuit condition is established. The presence of smoke in sufficient concentration partially obscures the beam, changing current flow in the photocell circuit and setting off an alarm response. Sensitivity is typically set at 0.5% to 4% obscuration per foot (0.3 m) for gray smoke and 0.5% to 10% for black smoke, to comply with UL Standard 268.

In this design, accumulation of dust and dirt and the presence of heavy fumes from industrial processes cause gradual obscuration of both the photo cell and the lamp. This, combined with lamp aging and consequent light reduction, results in *increased* sensitivity, causing false alarms that are not only a nuisance, but also can constitute a hazard. To correct this condition, continuous maintenance and periodic recalibration are necessary. This design is no longer recommended for spot-type smoke detection but is used in beam detectors, as discussed next.

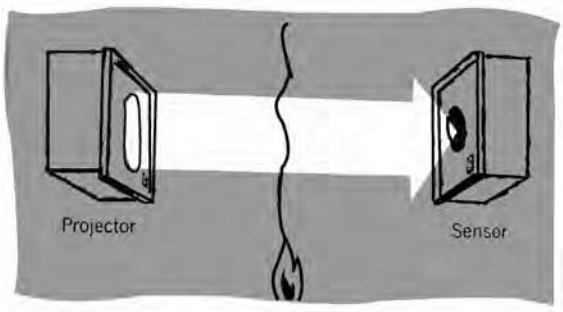


Fig. 24.42 *Principle of smoke detection by beam obscuration. This design is used in two ways: as illustrated, with a projector in one location and a photocell at a remote location, or with the entire assembly in a single small housing, with the light source and receiver on opposite sides of a 2- to 3-in. (50- to 75-mm)-wide smoke chamber.*

(b) Projected Beam Photoelectric Smoke Detector

Beam-type photoelectric detectors consist of two separate units: a beam transmitter and a beam receiver, normally wall-mounted on opposite sides of a space, somewhat below the ceiling. They operate on the simple obscuration principle (Fig. 24.43). They are best applied in areas that do not lend themselves to the application of spot-type detectors. Among these are the following:

- High-ceiling areas such as atria, churches, malls, auditoriums, and the like. In these spaces, ceiling-mounted spot-type detectors present serious maintenance problems. This is particularly true in spaces such as theaters and auditoriums.
- Spaces with medium- to high-velocity airflow at the ceiling level. This condition severely dilutes smoke entering the test chamber of a spot detector. Although beam detectors are also negatively affected, their long throw and wide "vision" angle make the dispersion and dilution problems much less serious.
- Closed areas with little airflow, resulting in a hot air layer at the ceiling that prevents smoke from reaching ceiling-mounted spot detectors (Fig. 24.44). Exposed ceiling beams also tend to trap hot air and reduce the effectiveness of ceiling spot detectors.
- Environments that militate against spot detector use, such as those that are extremely dirty, corrosive, humid, very hot, or very cold. Beam-type detectors can be physically shielded against these conditions in a manner that interferes only minimally with their light-beam transmission and reception characteristics.

Beam-type detectors have an effective throw (from transmitter to receiver) ranging from 30 to 330 ft (9 to 100 m), depending upon ambient conditions, and can be spaced 30 to 60 ft (9 to 18 m) apart. This gives a coverage range of 900 to almost 20,000 ft^2 (84 to 1860 m^2), compared to spot detectors, whose *maximum* coverage is about 900 ft^2 (84 m^2). Furthermore, beam detectors are wall-mounted, which reduces maintenance problems.

Finally, beam detectors are usually drift-compensated (thus further reducing maintenance expense) and are arranged not to alarm with full obscuration, a condition that frequently occurs during routine building maintenance and repair work.

Disadvantages of beam-type detectors compared to spot units include:

- Response is to the second (smoke) stage of a fire, and therefore not in the same early-warning category as ionization or gas detectors.
- High cost.



Fig. 24.43 *This projected beam smoke detector utilizes an infrared (IR) beam so that ambient light will not affect its operation. Two sensitivity levels are available that are selected to match the distance between transmitter and receiver. Because heat attenuates or deflects the IR beam, the receiver translates this beam strength reduction as obscuration, identical to smoke obscuration. This effect makes the IR projected beam detector sensitive to high-heat flaming fires as well as smoky smoldering ones. (Photo courtesy of Notifier, division of Pittway.)*

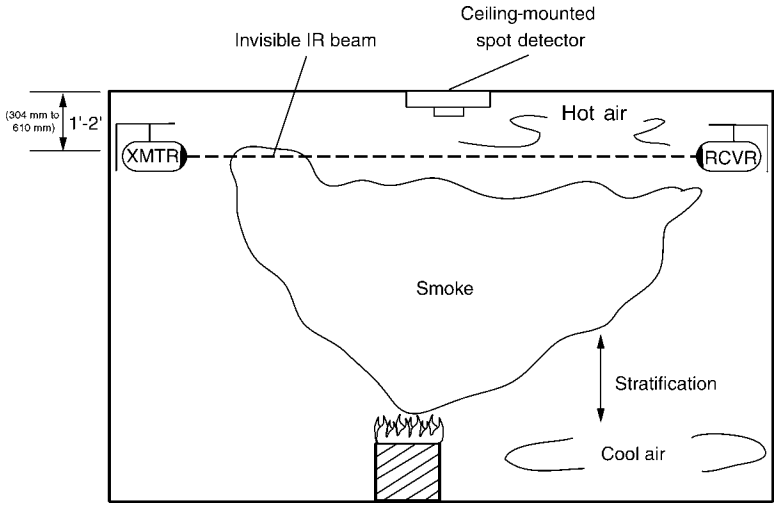


Fig. 24.44 *Stratification of air in a closed space leads to a concentration of hot air at the ceiling that can prevent smoke from reaching a ceiling-mounted spot smoke detector. A projected beam detector mounted 1–2 ft (0.3–0.6 m) below the ceiling will alarm due to obscuration, as shown.*

- Inapplicable to spaces that lack an unobstructed view, as where pendant lighting fixtures, exposed ductwork, and the like are installed.

As with all types of detectors, the use of beam-type detectors in a particular application must be in accord with the requirements of *all* fire and administrative codes having jurisdiction in the particular locale.

(c) Scattered-Light Photoelectric Smoke Detector

A second design, usually referred to as a *photoelectronic*, *scattered-light*, or *Tyndall-effect* detector, is illustrated in Figs. 24.45, 24.46, and 24.47. In this design, a pulsed light-emitting diode (LED) beam is directed at a supervisory photocell, which serves to provide a baseline reference signal. The alarm photocell is shielded and normally receives no light from this beam. When smoke enters the unit, light is reflected from (scattered by) smoke particles and strikes the alarm cell. This changes the cell's resistance and the resultant signal is amplified electronically, causing an alarm. An alternative design depends upon refraction of light to set off the alarm. These designs are not sensitive to normal dust and dirt accumulation or to light source depreciation, and high sensitivity can be maintained without continual maintenance. Thus, they are usually found in commercial and high-quality residential applications. Sensitivity is usually set at 1% obscuration per foot (0.3 m).

(d) Laser Beam Photoelectric Detector

A very-high-sensitivity laser diode source, scattered-light type photoelectric smoke detector has been developed that is classified by its manufacturer as an early warning device (Fig. 24.48). The high sensitivity results from the ability of the very sharply focused laser beam and its associated control panel software to differentiate between a smoke par-

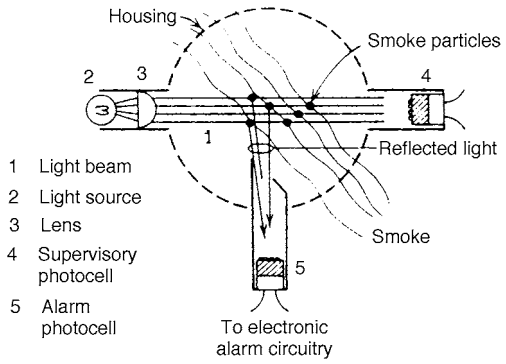


Fig. 24.45 *Principle of operation of a scattered-light photoelectronic spot smoke detector. A pulsed beam of light (1) from a source (2) is focused by a lens (3) on a supervisory cell (4). Smoke entering the unit reflects the light onto the alarm cell (5), changing its electrical characteristics and setting off an alarm. Photoelectric units with sensitivities of up to 2% per foot (0.3 m) are usually classified as early-warning units.*



Fig. 24.46 *Addressable analog (intelligent) scattered-light-type photoelectric smoke detector with an on-board microprocessor that negates false-alarm signals caused by radio frequency and electromagnetic interference (RFI/EMI). It also validates trouble signals. If required, this unit can be equipped with a resettable heat detection element. The unit is approximately 5½ in. (140 mm) deep and 3 in. (75 mm) high. (Photo courtesy of Cerberus Pyrotronics.)*



Fig. 24.47 *This smoke detector, intended for duct mounting, can utilize either a photoelectronic or ionization-type head. The unit, which is usually mounted in return-air ducts rather than supply ducts to minimize smoke dilution effects, uses an air-sampling tube that extends across the full width of the duct. Duct smoke detectors are intended primarily to prevent smoke dispersal throughout a building by causing shutdown of the air-handling system and by control of smoke damper operation. (Courtesy of Simplex.)*



Fig. 24.48 *This unit is an addressable analog laser-beam type of scattered-light photoelectric smoke detector. The sharply focused laser beam permits discrimination between smoke and dust particles, resulting in a high-sensitivity unit without false alarming. The unit is shown mounted on a sounder base containing a horn assembly, making it applicable to small, enclosed rooms. (Photo courtesy of Notifier, division of Pittway.)*

ticle and a dust particle. It is best applied in clean environments.

(e) Air-Sampling Detection System

Another system that takes advantage of the high sensitivity of laser beam–based photoelectric smoke detection is the air-sampling system (Fig. 24.49). In principle the system is quite simple. Instead of waiting for air that may be carrying incipient smoke particles to reach the detector(s) by thermal currents, this system samples air throughout the protected space by aspiration and brings it to the detector for testing. The aspiration and air conduction system is simply a piping system with holes at sampling points, and is powered by a fan. The advantage of the system is that air throughout the space is sampled, thus, in effect, converting each sampling opening into a highly sensitive laser-beam detector.

Because the piping can be zoned into manageable areas that can readily be checked for alarm verification, the disadvantage of nonaddressability of the aspirating openings is avoided. Addition of a microprocessor to a multizone control unit, which adjusts the alarm sensitivity of each zone based on a history of environmental smoke levels, all but eliminates false/nuisance alarms.

(f) Application of Photoelectric Detectors

Photoelectric smoke detectors of all designs will detect particles from about 0.2 to about 1000 microns. Thus, they are useful not only for

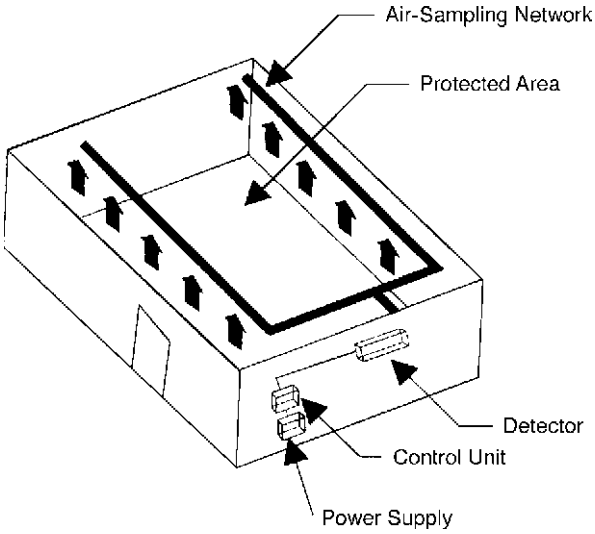


Fig. 24.49 *In an air-sampling system, air is aspirated at selected points in the protected area and piped to a highly sensitive laser beam photoelectric smoke detector for testing. Large areas are zone-piped so that trouble and alarm signals can be readily checked in the protected areas. (Drawing courtesy of Cerberus Pyrotronics.)*

smoldering fires but also for the smoky fires that characterize the burning of certain plastics and chemicals. Also, particle agglomeration, which increases with the distance smoke travels, does not reduce their sensitivity, as it does with ionization types.

Maximum recommended spacing for photoelectric detectors, as for other types, is given by UL and Factory Mutual standards. Closer spacing is often mandated by the particular application or by the structure's characteristics. Manufacturers' recommendations should be obtained for all installations. In order to provide early-warning detection of a wider range of combustion products than is possible with either the photoelectronic or ionization-type detectors individually, several manufacturers produce a unit that combines a multichamber ionization detector with a photoelectronic detector.

24.18 AUTOMATIC FIRE DETECTION: FLAME STAGE

As noted in Fig. 24.40, the appearance of flame is followed almost instantaneously by heat buildup and the rapid spread of flame, with a large increase in hazard. Detection of flame is not an "early warning," and the prime requirement for a detector at this stage is speed. The actions taken as a result of a flame detection alarm, such as fire suppression and/or evacuation, must also be very rapid. This is not the case with early-warning equipment alarms, which normally allow several minutes or more to investigate the authenticity of the alarm, *if desired*, before taking appropriate action.

Flame detectors are of two types: those that detect ultraviolet radiation and those that detect infrared radiation. Both types of radiation are present at the beginning of the flame stage.

Ultraviolet (UV) radiation detectors operate by optically detecting the UV radiation produced by flames, which is typically in the 170- to 290-nm range. (The entire UV range is 40 to 390 nm.) Hydrocarbon (organic material) fires in particular produce strong radiation in this range. A quartz filter in front of the UV sensor tube limits the detector's reception range to between 190 and 260 nm, which is below the visible spectrum. This desensitizes the detector to sunlight and to incandescent and fluorescent sources. The detector need not "see" a flame directly; it can also detect UV radiation reflected from walls, ceilings, and other objects. The more direct the path, the stronger the radiation and the more rapidly the detector will respond. Because many devices—in particular, electric welders—produce UV radiation in sufficient quantity to activate such a sensor, flame detectors are usually programmed to respond only to flickering sources at the usual flame flicker rate of 5 to 30 times per second.

In sum, UV detectors are long-range and very sensitive; they react in milliseconds and respond to most types of fires. They are best applied in highly flammable or explosive storage and work areas, either indoor or outdoor. Modern units are equipped with microprocessors that perform

self-test diagnostics. UV detectors are best applied to detect hydrocarbon-fueled fires such as burning alcohol, methane, propane, acetone, and all types of petroleum products. Their principal disadvantage is that they are "blinded" by thick black smoke.

Infrared (IR) radiation detectors are sensitive to radiation in the IR region, between 650 and 6500 nm. Most commercial units are filtered to be sensitive to radiation in the 3800- to 4300-nm range and to have maximum sensitivity at 4300 nm (4.3 microns), which corresponds to the radiation emitted by hot CO_2. They differ from ambient heat detectors in that they respond to radiant energy and are essentially optical detectors. IR units have about half the distance range of UV detectors, are sensitive (although not as sensitive as UV detectors), react in seconds, and must be programmed for flicker response to avoid false alarms, which can occur if they are exposed to other sources of IR radiation, such as sunlight. Because of interference problems that cause false alarms, IR units are normally applied to enclosed spaces such as sealed storage vaults and the like. IR flame detectors are best applied to fires that result in rapid flaming combustion and the production of CO_2. Typical materials in this risk category are petroleum products, wood and paper products, coal, and plastics.

Combination UV/IR detectors, such as the one illustrated in Fig. 24.50, cover a wide range of risk applications, including aircraft hangars, fueling stations of all sorts, tank farms, and flammable storage areas. The illustrated unit contains a microprocessor that performs self-diagnostics, not only of the optical system but also of the electronic circuitry and calibration. The presence in a single unit of both UV and IR detectors permits the integral microprocessor to analyze the UV/IR ratio in any radiation detected and its time signature. This analysis is compared to known fire data in the microprocessor's memory in order to discriminate between actual fires and spurious radiation, thereby reducing false alarms.



Fig. 24.50 *The combined ultraviolet-infrared (UV/IR) flame detector has peak sensitivity at 200 and 4300 nm, respectively, which corresponds to the maximum emission points of a typical hydrocarbon (e.g., petroleum products) fire. This unit is equipped with a microprocessor that performs diagnostic procedures and ensures proper calibration. The detector, which measures approximately 5 × 5⅔ × 6 in. (127 × 144 × 152 mm) deep is suitable for use in specific class hazardous areas. (Photo courtesy of Meggitt Avionics.)*

24.19 AUTOMATIC FIRE DETECTION: HEAT STAGE

Again referring to Fig. 24.40, the heat stage is the last and most hazardous stage because, by this time, a fire is burning openly and producing great heat, incandescent air, and smoke. Spread of the fire depends upon fuel, air currents, and the construction of the space in which the fire is burning. Detectors intended for use at this stage respond to heat and are referred to as *heat-actuated*, *thermal*, *thermostatic*, or simply *temperature detectors*. They act much like the fusible link in a sprinkler head. Effective application is restricted to locations where the subsequent alarm permits adequate countermeasures to be taken in time to prevent injury and minimize loss. Keep in mind that the heat stage *follows* the smoke stage and that smoke, not heat, is responsible for most casualties in fires.

Heat detectors have two designs: spot units, which are mounted in the center of the area that they protect, and linear units, which sense heat along their entire length. Both types respond to high ambient temperatures caused by hot air convection from a fire. The linear type can also sense the overheating of an object or surface with which it is in contact without the presence of fire.

(a) Spot-Type Heat Detectors

Spot heat detectors are of two types: fixed-temperature units and rate-of-rise units. In the former, a set of contacts operates when a preset (nonadjustable) temperature is reached—usually 135°F or 185°F (57°C or 85°C). The rate-of-rise

type operates when the rate of ambient temperature change exceeds a predetermined amount (usually 15F°/minute [8C°/min]), which is indicative of the heat stage of a fire. The rate-of-rise unit is normally combined with a fixed-temperature unit in a single housing.

The fixed-temperature unit is available in either a one-time nonrenewable design, which utilizes a low-melting-point alloy plug, or an automatically resetting unit that operates in the same fashion as a thermostat. For most applications, a resettable unit is preferred. Spot units are best applied in spaces that are separated from occupied areas and are subject to rapid-temperature-rise fires. Three different designs of heat detectors are shown in Figs. 24.51, 24.52, and 24.53.



Fig. 24.51 *Detectors in the illustrated design are made with fixed-temperature, nonresetting elements that melt out at 130°F (54°C) or 200°F (93°C) and rate-of-rise elements that will alarm when the temperature rise is faster than 15F° (8C°)/minute. The illustrated unit is a 200°F (93°C) fixed-temperature-only model. It is applicable to spaces with unusually violent temperature fluctuations and ceiling temperatures between 100° and 150°F (37 and 65°C). (Photo courtesy of Cerberus Pyrotronics.)*

(b) Linear Heat Detectors

In these devices, the entire length of a cable-like element is heat sensitive. This type of detector is applied to long, narrow elements, which are impractical to protect with spot detectors. Typical applications include cable trays, cable bundles of all sorts, conveyors, and large, long equipment. The heat-sensitive element is installed close to, or in direct continuous contact with, the protected item. As a result, any hot spot along the protected equipment will be detected.

The detectors themselves are available in a number of designs. One type uses a pair of steel wires under tension, held apart by thermoplastic insulation (Fig. 24.54). When exposed to its rated alarm temperature, the insulation melts and the wires come into contact, changing the current flow in the circuit to which they are connected and setting off an alarm. This type is available in a range of alarm temperatures (155°F [68°C], 190°F [88°C], 280°F [138°C]) and can be used in open- or closed-circuit configurations in lengths of up to 2500 ft (760 m). Meters are available that indicate the exact point of a fault, so that in long runs where overheating rather than fire is detected, countermeasures can be taken rapidly, without the delay caused by having to seek out the fault point. The major disadvantage of this type of detector is that it is nonrenewable; once it has faulted, the melted section must be cut out and replaced.

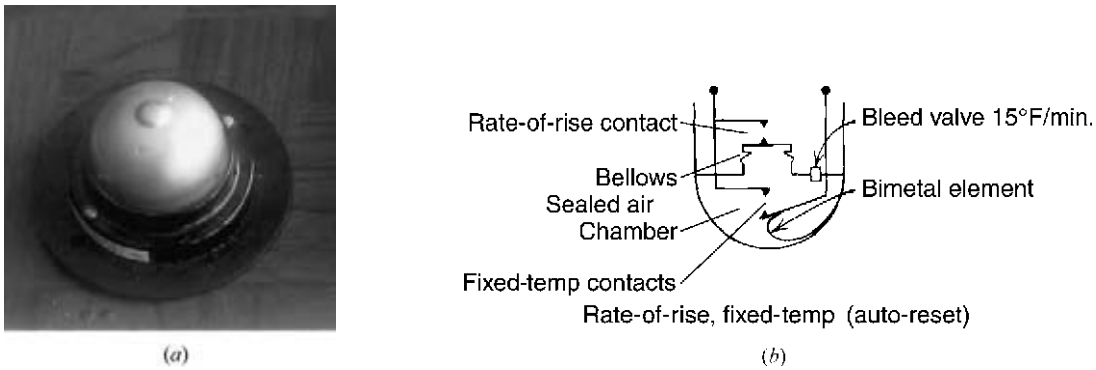
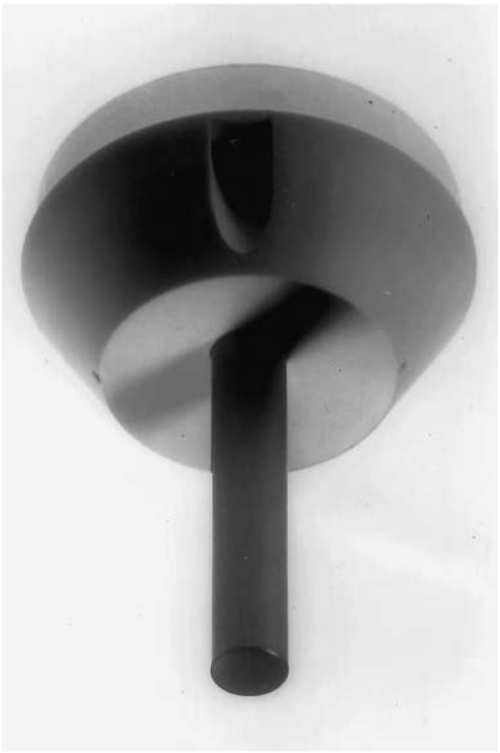
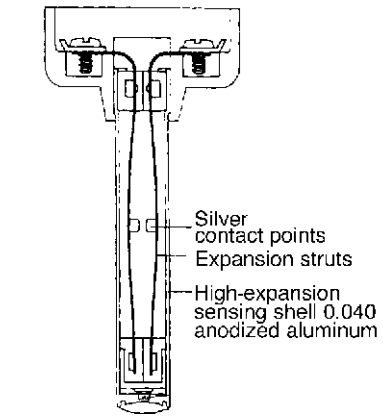


Fig. 24.52 *(a) A combination rate-of-rise and fixed-temperature detector. The detector and mounting plate fit on a standard 4-in. (100-mm)-square outlet box. (b) The principles of device operation are shown schematically. The rate-of-rise unit consists of an air chamber with a restricted bleed valve. Rapid temperature rise causes the bellows to expand before air is lost by bleeding, thereby setting off the alarm. The thermostatic element is a fixed-temperature, self-restoring bimetallic unit.*



(a)



(b)

Fig. 24.53 *(a) A rate-of-temperature rise and fixed-temperature-type (135° or 200°F [57 or 93°C]) detector. Unlike the rate-of-rise detector in Fig. 24.52, this unit uses the principle of differential thermal expansion for both actions. (Photo courtesy of Cerberus Pyrotronics.) (b) Cutaway of a detector with a different base than that shown in (a). The detector consists of an aluminum tubular shell containing two curved expansion struts under compression fitted with a pair of normally open opposed contact points that are insulated from the shell. The tubular shell and the struts have different coefficients of expansion. When subjected to a rapid heat rise, the tubular shell expands and lengthens slightly. The interior struts lengthen but at a slower rate than the shell. The rapid lengthening of the shell pulls the struts together, closing the contact points and initiating the alarm. When subjected to a slow heat rise, the tubular shell and the interior struts lengthen at approximately the same rate. At the detectors' set temperature points of 135°F or 200°F (57 or 93°C), the interior struts are fully extended, closing the contact points and initiating an alarm. (Drawing courtesy of Notifier, division of Pittway.)*

Another type of linear detector is basically a linear thermistor—that is, a device whose electrical resistance varies with temperature (Fig. 24.55). The resistance is monitored at a control panel, and small changes are noted. Depending upon the thermistor material selected, the detection range can be set anywhere from 70°F (21°C) to 1200°F (650°C).

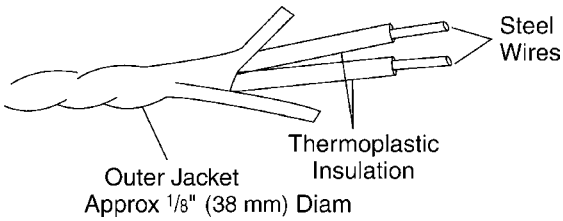


Fig. 24.54 *In this linear heat detector, the thermoplastic insulation on the stiff, twisted steel conductors melts, allowing the two conductors to touch and thereby register an alarm.*

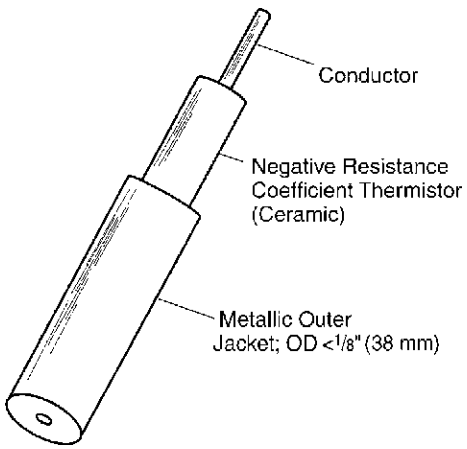


Fig. 24.55 *This linear heat detector is connected to an electrical control that monitors circuit current and thereby resistance. Any appreciable temperature rise along the entire cable length causes a sharp drop in the ceramic material's electrical resistance, which is immediately noted and pinpointed at the control point.*

This type of linear detector is more sensitive, rapid, and expensive than the preceding type. When linear detectors are installed in direct contact with the protected equipment, they detect surface temperature rather than air temperature and therefore act as early-warning devices. They are used extensively in this fashion to continuously monitor the surface temperature of such devices as transformers, switchgear, generators, and all sorts of hazardous equipment.

A third design for linear heat detectors uses optical fiber with a thermoplastic cladding (coating). Optical fiber transmits light by successive internal reflection at the fiber/cladding interface throughout the entire length of the fiber. Excessive temperature anywhere along the length of the fiber causes the cladding to melt and thereby appreciably changes the intensity of light received by the light sensor at the cable's end. This change is recorded and interpreted automatically as either a trouble signal or an overheat alarm signal. This design is available in lengths of up to 1 mile (1.6 km) or more. Other linear sensor designs include variable electrical resistance polymers, phase-change eutectic salt, and pneumatic tubing. Each type has its own advantages, drawbacks, and specific applicability.

Factors involved in the choice of a linear detector include:

- Physical characteristics and value of the protected elements
- Ease in locating the alarm area
- Requirements for resetting the system after an alarm
- Maintenance requirements
- Costs (first and life cycle)

24.20 SPECIAL TYPES OF FIRE DETECTORS

Several other sophisticated detectors are available for early-warning detection during the incipient and smoldering fire stages. Among the most sensitive is a unit based on the operating principle of a *Wilson cloud chamber* (see Figs. 24.56 and 24.57). When microscopic particles, such as those produced by the early stages of fire, are introduced into a saturated atmosphere (cloud chamber), they act as nuclei around which water vapor condenses to form visible droplets. The detector operates by continuously sampling air from the protected space and setting off an alarm when the cloud chamber indicates the presence of particulate matter.

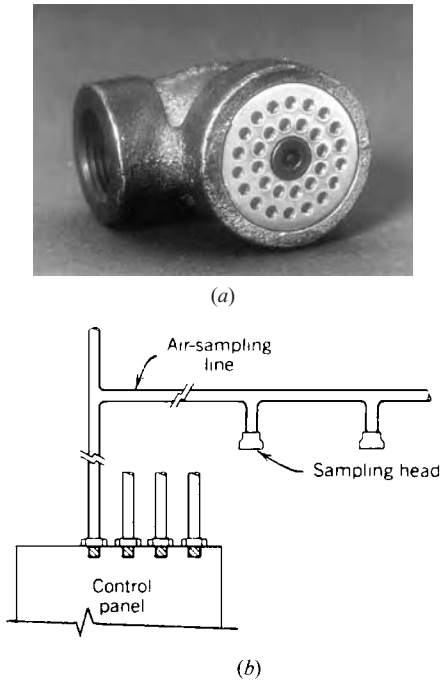


Fig. 24.56 *This very early warning system detects microscopic combustion products in air aspirated from the protected area using a cloud chamber effect. (a) Tamperproof head housing, applicable to high-vandalism areas and correctional institutions. (b) Sampling heads are placed in all spaces to be monitored, including inside cabinets. (Courtesy of Protec Fire Detection, plc.)*

The continuous sampling procedure and the unit calibration make the system insensitive to dust and other noncombustion particulate matter and generally free of nuisance false alarms. The system's disadvantages are the need for piping and its high cost in small installations. For large installations (30 or more detection points), the cost is competitive with those of comparable systems. This detector is particularly applicable to high-value installations, such as museums, data-processing spaces, libraries, clean rooms, and facility control rooms, where its extremely high sensitivity may provide a critically important advance warning of an incipient fire.

24.21 FALSE ALARM MITIGATION

Smoke detectors of all types (ionization, photoelectric) are subject to false alarms due to moisture and particulate matter in the air. Detectors are by nature threshold devices; raising their sensitivity increases false alarms; decreasing their sensitivity shortens the crucial early-warning period. Technological

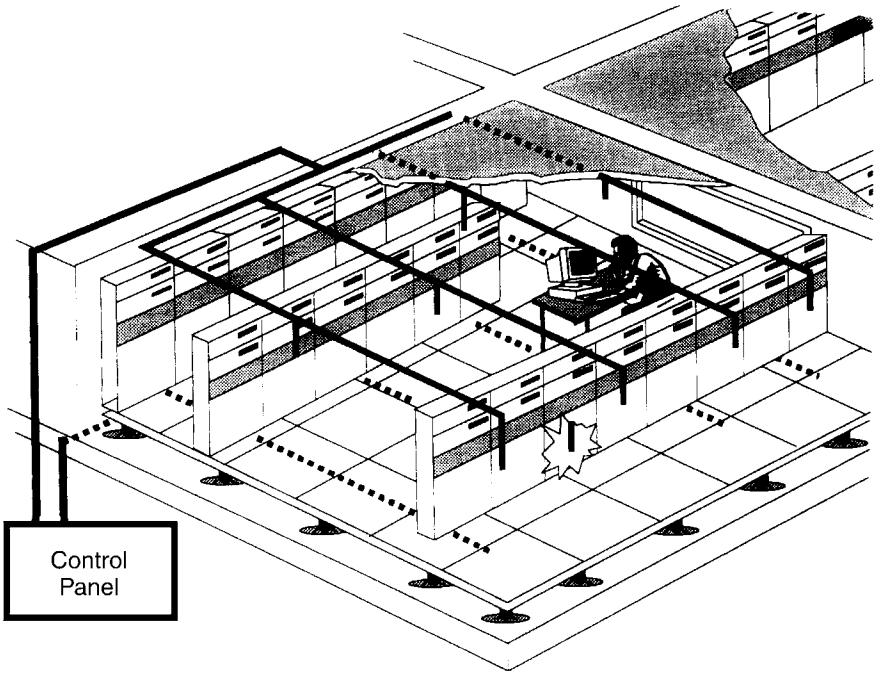


Fig. 24.57 *Schematic diagram of a fire detection installation in a computer facility showing aspirating heads and piping. Note that air is sampled inside cabinets and under the raised floor in addition to sampling in the room itself. (Courtesy of Protec Fire Detection, plc.)*

advancement since the late 1980s has been used to reduce this problem. Technology alone, however, will not entirely eliminate false alarms; the fire alarm system designer and the system user can contribute appreciably to minimizing annoying and potentially dangerous false alarms by following some basic guidelines, including the following:

- Select appropriate smoke detectors. Choosing an ionization type where a photoelectric type is indicated, or vice versa, almost guarantees false alarms.
- Use detectors with drift compensation to permit accommodation of dirt/high temperature/humidity and air current ambient conditions, all of which increase false alarms.
- Where necessary, use radio-frequency interference (RFI) filters on detector circuits because line radio noise (spikes, surges) can cause alarms. This issue should be investigated in any installation with a heavy solid-state equipment load.
- Use control panels and detectors that have self-learning software and multispace-type algorithms that match sensitivity patterns to the spaces in which the detectors are installed.
- Use detector covers in areas where any type of construction work is taking place. This prevents fouling of detectors.
- When installing conventional systems, establish a regular maintenance and testing program that includes field testing and recalibration of all detectors.
- Avoid detector placement in areas where ambient conditions can cause problems. Where such placement is unavoidable, use compensating detectors, special maintenance routines, and appropriate verification procedures in the event of an alarm signal. These areas include:

  1. Kitchens, laundries, boiler rooms, shower rooms, and other spaces with high humidity and steam
  2. Repair shops, laboratories, and other areas where open flames are used in normal work
  3. Garages and engine test facilities where exhaust gases are present
  4. Smoking rooms and areas near spaces designated as smoking areas
  5. Areas in which heavy accumulation of dust and dirt can be expected

6. Areas of high air movement, such as near loading docks and exit doors and near the discharge from diffusers or registers

24.22 MANUAL STATIONS

In contrast to automatic detectors, manual stations are operated by hand (Fig. 24.58). Manual stations can serve to spread an alarm that has already been detected by other means, either human or automatic. In conventional systems, manual stations are either *coded* or *noncoded*. (See Section 24.12 for an explanation of coding.) If identification of the exact manual noncoded station operated is desirable, an annunciation panel can be added to the system; this is equivalent to using each station as a noncoded indicating zone. Because of wiring costs, annunciated systems become expensive; beyond 10 stations, coding should be considered (see Fig. 24.39).

When the system design is such that immediate *buildingwide* aural identification of the operated station is necessary, a coded station is used. The station code is received at the control panel, processed, and then transmitted audibly on the system gongs. At least three rounds of code, and normally four rounds, are transmitted. The code usually comprises three or four digits (e.g., 2-3-2) with a pause between the ringing groups and a longer pause between the rounds. The first number may identify the building floor, the second digit the wing, and the third digit the individual station. Establishment of codes is left to the user.

Manual stations are placed in the normal path of egress from a building so that an alarm may be turned in by a person as he or she exits. It is *imperative*, therefore, that stations be well marked and easily found. Architects who place fire alarm stations in nooks and corners and in camouflaged cabinets because they spoil the decor of the lobby are defeating the purpose of the system. Similarly, placement of bells *inside* hung ceilings because they are unattractive is not only foolish but dangerous and should *never* be done, regardless of the circumstances. Loss of property and even of life may result from such ill-conceived aesthetic considerations.

Addressable manual stations obviate the necessity for a code wheel for each manual station but do not eliminate coding of alarm bells if buildingwide



(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 24.58 *(a) Manual fire alarm station with a break-glass rod. The unit is marked "local alarm," indicating that its operation will result in a buildingwide evacuation signal but not a city alarm. Similar units are equipped with multiple sets of contacts for annunciation and other control functions or with addressable system electronics. Other similar units use a lock-open design that requires a key to reset; this avoids the necessity of replacing the broken glass rod. (b) A manual station, which is normally surface-mounted, can be enclosed in a well-marked recessed cabinet if desired for aesthetic reasons. (c) This addressable manual station latches in the down (operated) position when pulled and can only be reset by key. The manual switch can be polled from the control panel to verify that it has indeed been operated and that the alarm signal is not a circuit malfunction. The station is semi-recessed and measures approximately 4 in. (100 mm) wide by 5½ in. (140 mm) high. (Photo courtesy of Notifier, division of Pittway.)*

identification of the operated station is required. (Addressable manual stations are applicable only to addressable systems, not to conventional systems.) The purpose of gong coding is to permit rapid alarm verification by persons scattered about a building. An addressable manual station is identified only at the control panel, from which location a person must be sent to verify the alarm. In a small building, that is not a problem; in a large building, the time required to make such a verification is critical, because a manual alarm is already the result of a verified emergency, unless it is a deliberate false alarm. The decision, then, as to whether to code the gongs must be made on the basis of design decisions for a particular building. A typical addressable manual station is shown in Fig. 24.58*c*.

24.23 SPRINKLER ALARMS

Water flow switches are placed in sprinkler pipelines and operate when a sprinkler head goes off (Fig. 24.59). In electrical terms, a water flow switch is a set of contacts similar to a temperature detector. It can be used to trip a coded transmitter, setting off a sprinkler code; to show up on a sprinkler annunciator board, called a *sprinkler alarm panel*; or to act as a zone in a noncoded system. Wiring of water flow switches, or of switches activated by other extinguishing systems, is the same as that for a manual station.



Fig. 24.59 *Typical water flow indicator. The unit bolts onto a sprinkler pipe with the paddle inside the pipe. Any water motion deflects the paddle, causing a signal to be transmitted from the microswitch mounted in the box on top of the pipe. (Courtesy of Simplex/Potter.)*

24.24 AUDIBLE AND VISUAL ALARM DEVICES

The type and placement of audible and visual alarms in a (public) building must meet the requirements of NFPA 72 (*National Fire Alarm Code*) and the ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act). There are some disagreements between these requirements as of this writing. In such cases, the fire alarm system designer, in concert with the building architect, should settle these differences to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.

(a) Audible Signals

Where an evacuation signal will be sounded throughout a building (public mode) to alert all of its occupants, the requirements of NFPA 72 are normally used because they are more stringent than those of the ADA. There are several requirements, the most important of which requires a minimum alarm sound pressure level of 15 dBA above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level (whichever is greater) for at least 1 minute. This means that the designer must actually measure or predict, with a high degree of accuracy, the anticipated sound levels in the various portions of a building. Average sound level estimates are available from many sources, including the NFPA code itself; maximum sound levels are not. As a result, most designers use a considerable factor of safety to ensure compliance. The upper limit permissible in any area is 120 dBA. See Chapter 17 for technical information on architectural acoustics and sound levels.

The minimum private mode requirement is the greater of 10 dBA above the average ambient level or 5 dBA above the maximum ambient sound pressure for at least 1 minute. Because this requirement generally applies to an enclosed space that houses the alarm panel or an adjacent space that is continuously occupied, the acoustic design is much simpler than for the public mode alarm.

The codes also specify the minimum required sound pressure levels for sleeping areas and

mechanical equipment rooms, in addition to directives regarding the location of audible devices. The selection and placement of audible alarm devices is a technical task requiring acoustic analysis of spaces, occupancy, and the characteristics of available audible devices.

(b) Visible Signals

The requirements for these signals, the primary purpose of which is to alert hearing-impaired people, are covered in NFPA 72, UL 1971, ANSI 117.1, ADA, and various building code requirements. This is an area in which, at this writing, discrepancies exist between ADA requirements and those of NFPA 72, UL 1971, and ANSI 117.1 (which are in general agreement). All of the standards require that the visible alarm be a strobe light (usually a Xenon flashtube), flashing at less than 2 Hz to minimize problems for persons with photosensitive epilepsy. This does not, however, solve this particular problem, because a person viewing light from more than one strobe (as at a corridor junction) can be exposed to a higher flash rate unless all strobes are synchronized. Careful strobe placement can help to minimize this problem.

(c) Strobe Intensity

For nonsleeping areas, the ADA requires a strobe intensity of 75 candelas (cd) and 50 ft (15 m) maximum unit spacing, whereas the other standards (UL, ANSI, NFPA) require an intensity dependent upon the size of the room. For sleeping areas, the ADA requirement remains the same, whereas the other standards require a 110-cd source if wall-mounted and a 177-cd source if ceiling-mounted. For corridors, the ADA requirement remains 75 cd at 50 ft (15 m) strobe spacing, whereas the other standards have a requirement that varies with corridor length.

Location of the strobes according to NFPA 72, Appendix B, must be such that the strobe light can be seen at any point in any space, regardless of the viewer's orientation, with the additional requirement that the maximum distance between strobes will not exceed 100 ft (30 m). A typical combination audiovisual fire alarm device is shown in Fig. 24.60.



Fig. 24.60 *A combination audiovisual fire alarm signal is capable of sounding eight different warning tones that can be field selected. The 15-cd strobe flashes once every 1.5 seconds (2/3 Hz). The unit measures 4 in. (100 mm) square and can be mounted surface, semi-flush, or flush. (Photo courtesy of Notifier, division of Pittway Corp.)*

24.25 GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS

The specific building system descriptions that follow are based upon good present practice. Specific design decisions must meet the requirements of the latest edition of NFPA standards plus other codes having jurisdiction. Special attention is directed to Article 760 of the *National Electrical Code* (NFPA 70). This article was completely rewritten and restructured in the 1996 edition of the code. It now covers fire alarm system wiring in its broadest sense (i.e., it now refers to "all circuits controlled and powered by the fire alarm system," including "fire detection and alarm notification, guard's tour, sprinkler . . . systems . . . safety functions, damper control and fan shutdown"). In office buildings the fire alarm system includes elevator capture and intercom, which, if powered and controlled by the fire alarm system, fall under Article 760.

24.26 RESIDENTIAL FIRE ALARM BASICS

Refer to NFPA 72 and NFPA 101 for detailed requirements. Residential occupancies include single-family residences, multi-unit complexes, and many-unit apartments. The alarm requirements for such a range of building types vary. In general, the system should provide sufficient time for the

evacuation of residents and, in larger buildings, for appropriate countermeasures to be initiated. The elements of the system are the various alarm-initiating devices, the wiring and control panel, and the audible alarm devices. These are self-contained in small systems and assembled on site for large systems.

A good basic system for a multi-unit installation requires the following:

- A listed smoke detector: outside and adjacent to each sleeping area, in each sleeping room, at the head of every stair, with at least one on every level, including the basement. Combined smoke/heat detectors should be installed in the boiler room, kitchen, garage, and attic. Listed heat detectors in the attic, kitchen, and boiler room are frequently set at 185°F (85°C) because of high ambient temperatures. Other units are set at 135°F (57°C).
- An alarm in any detector produces an alarm in all audible and visual units.
- Control unit (central panel) is annunciated to show the location of an alarmed device and arranged to shut off oil and gas lines and the attic fan (to prevent the spread of smoke). Also, it should turn on lights both inside and out, operate an automatic dialer to ring a neighbor's phone or a commercial central station, and give a distinctive alarm sound when the phone is answered. An outside bell and some other device that transmits an alarm outside the residence are important.
- Backup power for the system—a supervised storage battery with a trickle charger.
- Wiring of all devices connected to a system control unit to be on supervised circuits that will sound a trouble alarm in the event of a fault. The trouble alarm should be distinct from the fire alarm.

Additional requirements for detectors, alarms, power supply, supervision signals, and other relevant items, including special requirements for fire alarm systems that are combined with other signal systems, are found in the current edition of the previously referenced standards.

24.27 MULTIPLE-DWELLING ALARM SYSTEMS

The exact requirements for the location and type of detectors and their action are specified in NFPA 101 and NFPA 72. Multiple dwellings include apartment houses, dormitories, hotels, motels, and rooming houses. The prime directive for these structures in the event of a fire emergency is early warning and orderly egress, with consideration of the fact that a fire emergency may occur when most of the building's occupants are asleep. Design guidelines are as follows:

- Audible/visual alarms must be positioned so that all sleeping persons, including those with hearing and/or sight impairment, will be wakened. Code requirements for audible levels are minimum and are based upon average spaces and furnishings. Unusually large or oddly shaped spaces should be designed individually.
- Consider the possibility of living rooms being used as sleeping areas on a regular basis.
- Provide smoke detection in corridors, service spaces, and utility and storage rooms.
- Battery-powered detectors may not be used because, unlike homeowners, apartment dwellers rely on the building's management for all building services, and periodic battery checks and replacement might not be carried out.
- Provide standby power to all fire alarm circuits.
- All alarms should be identifiable, either by addressing or by annunciation. Annunciators should be located at the system control panel in the building management office or at the lobby desk in the case of hotels and dormitories. In all buildings, a lobby annunciator for the use of firefighters is advantageous.
- An alarm light over the door of each apartment or suite to indicate the location of an alarm is desirable. This is particularly important if the central panel only provides zone annunciation.
- In high-rise buildings, an emergency voice/alarm communication system should be provided.

24.28 COMMERCIAL AND INSTITUTIONAL BUILDING ALARM SYSTEMS

The requirements for these buildings are so varied that no specific recommendations can be made. A few suggestions, however, are in order:

- Presignaling, where permitted, is recommended for buildings that do not readily tolerate an evacuation alarm.

- In schools, particularly for the elementary grades, rapid, orderly evacuation of the building is the primary requirement. Consideration must be given to the uniqueness of the sound of the fire alarm gongs to allow no possibility of confusion with program gongs where the latter are used. Also, because regular fire drills are mandatory in most schools, the system must be arranged to provide this facility.
- Public buildings should have an auxiliary alarm connection to the fire department.
- For medium-sized buildings, an accurate cost estimate frequently indicates an advantage of addressable analog systems over addressable systems because of the high detector maintenance costs of the latter. Similarly, addressable systems frequently have an economic advantage over hard-wired systems because of the high labor costs for wiring.

Figures 24.61, 24.62, and 24.63 show a few modern system control panels.



Fig. 24.61 *Conventional hard-wired eight-zone (maximum) solid-state fire alarm control panel for supervised Class A or Class B circuits. A single annunciator light indicates the alarmed zone. Alarm verification for each zone is provided. Both audible and visible alarms can be used on two alarm-signal circuits. The audible evacuation signal is a slow (20-BPM [beats per minute]) or fast (120-BPM) march time. Note the two standby batteries at the bottom of the cabinet. The unit measures approximately 16 in. (400 mm) wide and 17 in. (432 mm) high and is designed for surface mounting on 16-in. (400-mm) o.c. studs. (Photo courtesy of Simplex.)*

24.29 HIGH-RISE OFFICE BUILDING FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

Sad experience has demonstrated that high-rise buildings, once thought to be fireproof, are emphatically not so. Indeed, due to their size, they have particularly severe fire protection problems, one of which is reliable communications during fire emergencies. As a result, fire codes now require that high-rise buildings be equipped with an emergency voice/alarm communication system. This system provides full control of transmission and buildingwide distribution of all tones, alarm signals, and voice announcements on a selective or all-call basis. Specifically, it makes possible:

- Two-way active communications from the firefighters' control and command post (usually in the lobby) to at least one fire station per floor, all mechanical plant rooms, elevator machine rooms, and air-handling (fan) rooms.
- Distribution to selected areas of alert tones, signals, and prerecorded messages on independent channels. (A complete system of loudspeakers covering all areas of the building is an integral part of the system.)



Fig. 24.62 *Control panel for a hard-wired conventional system that can accommodate up to 36 detection zones. The panel has a 2-line, 80-character alphanumeric display that indicates the zone alarm, trouble signals, and diagnostics information. The panel, which is 24 in. (610 mm) square, is microprocessor controlled and field programmable. A separate annunciator can be readily connected. (Photo courtesy of Simplex.)*

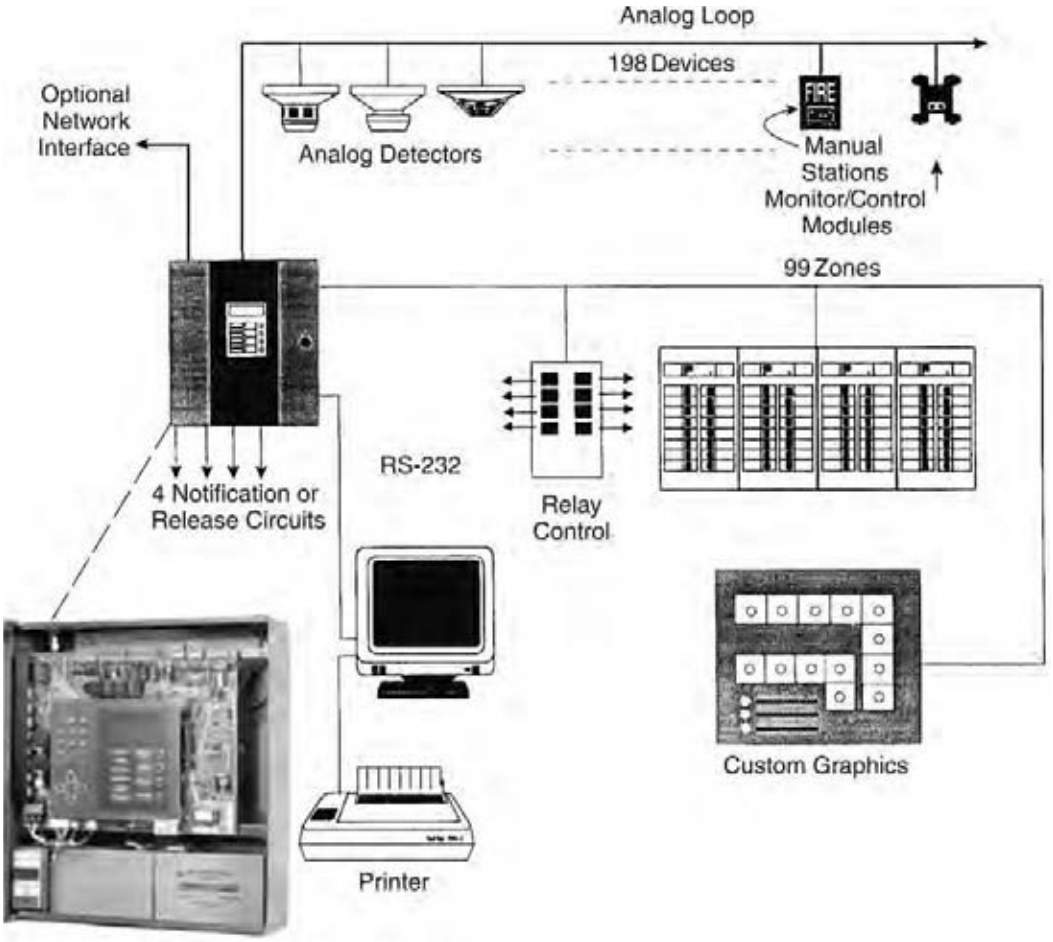


Fig. 24.63 *System block diagram for a compact addressable analog fire system for a medium-sized building. The panel, which measures approximately 15 in. (380 mm) wide by 16 in. (400 mm) high by 6 in. (150 mm) deep, has a capacity of 99 analog detectors and 99 monitor/control modules. Integral programming provides drift compensation and sensitivity adjustment for analog detectors, detector maintenance (dirt accumulation) alert, and automatic cyclic sensitivity adjustment, plus standard diagnostics. Custom graphics and the video display can be arranged to display floor plans, device locations, and the like. Relay control can be used for control of the building's air-handling unit, elevator interlock, and security/access system interlock. Notification circuits connect to the central station, remote station, proprietary alarms, or municipal alarms. (Diagram courtesy of Notifier, division of Pittway Corp.)*

- Communication with the fire department or central station.

In addition to communication functions, the (lobby) fire command post provides:

- Visual display (annunciation) of all fire alarm devices, including sprinkler valves and water flow indicators.
- Fire pump status indication.
- Controls for any automatic stair door unlocking system (security access system).
- Emergency generator status.
- Elevator location indicators plus operation and capture controls.
- Control of smoke control devices (doors, dampers, etc.).
- Means for testing all circuits and devices.

The exact equipment supplied depends upon the building and the local fire code. The distinctive characteristics of this system are the communications system, the visual display of alarm locations, and the remote control of air-handling equipment (Figs. 24.64 and 24.65).



Fig. 24.64 *Large addressable analog (intelligent) fire alarm control panel, suitable for network connection, computer interface, and operation in conjunction with an emergency voice/alarm communication system of the type used in multistory office buildings (see Fig. 24.65). The unit can accommodate 990 analog detectors and an equal number of monitor/control modules. It is illustrated with a 96-point integral annunciator, and additional annunciation can be connected. The integral control panel provides for polling, diagnostics, sensitivity control of all detectors, automatic detector drift compensation, alarm verification, front-panel programming, and options for system connections, as shown in the block diagram of Fig. 24.63. (Photo courtesy of Notifier, division of Pittway Corp.)*



Fig. 24.65 *A multiplex emergency voice alarm/communication system panel used in large high-rise buildings in conjunction with the fire alarm system panel (Fig. 24.64). The panel controls and feeds a multiplexed voice alarm system, as well as strobe light circuits and a complete firefighter's telephone intercom. It provides evacuation, alert, page, and auxiliary signals to all building speakers selectively. An integral annunciator indicates which audio devices are connected to which of the three available audio channels. All audio risers are fully supervised and power limited. (Photo courtesy of Cerberus Pyrotronics.)*

24.30 INDUSTRIAL FACILITIES

In addition to manual stations at points of egress, these buildings use:

- Temperature and smoke detectors in storage areas and laboratories
- Smoke and flame detectors in record rooms and continuous process laboratories
- Water flow switches on all sprinklers

The annunciators, control panel, and alarm register are best placed in a guardroom. If none is available, an auxiliary or remote-station circuit should be added to allow remote monitoring.

Because of the high ambient noise level in many plants, horns are substituted in such areas for bells and gongs, which might be inaudible.

In summary, the specific occupancy recommendations given here are representative of good current practice. Codes, however, are constantly being changed in this particularly sensitive field, and they vary with project locale. In actual design situations, all codes and regulations having jurisdiction must be complied with.

References and Resources

Numerous standards from NFPA, UL, ANSI, HUD, and the several model code organizations dealing with fire alarm systems are presented in Section 24.7

Egan, M. D. 1978. *Concepts in Building Firesafety*. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

ICC. 2009. *International Building Code*. International Code Council. Washington, DC.

ICC. 2009. *International Fire Code*. International Code Council. Washington, DC.

Jensen, R. (ed.). 1975. *Fire Protection for the Design Professional*. Van Nostrand Reinhold. New York.

NFPA. 2009. NFPA 92A: *Standard for Smoke-Control Systems Utilizing Barriers and Pressure Differences*. National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

NFPA. 2009. NFPA 92B: *Standard for Smoke Management Systems in Malls, Atria, and Large Spaces*. National Fire Protection Association, Quincy. MA.

NFPA. 2008. *Fire Protection Handbook*, 20th ed. National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

NFPA. 2008. NFPA 780: *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*. National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

NFPA. 2007. NFPA 10: *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*. National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

NFPA. 2007. NFPA 13: *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*. National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

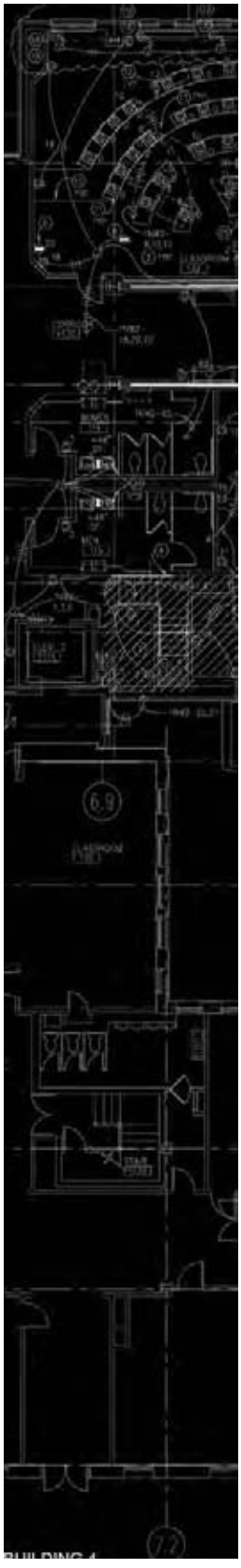
NFPA. 2007. NFPA 14: *Standard for the Installation of Standpipes and Hose Systems*. National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

NFPA. 2006. NFPA 750: *Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems*. National Fire Protection Association. Quincy, MA.

UL. 2007. UL 96A: *Standard for Installation Requirements for Lightning Protection Systems*. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. Northbrook, IL.

U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board. *Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities.* Washington, DC.

PART VII



ELECTRICITY

Electricity is the most prevalent form of energy in a modern building. It not only supplies electric outlets and electric lighting, but also provides the motive power for HVAC equipment, traction power for elevators and material transport, and power for all signal and communications equipment. An electric power failure can paralyze a facility. A properly designed facility can quickly return to partial operation by virtue of

emergency equipment that can furnish part of the facility's electricity needs for a limited time.

Given the complete dependence upon electric power for normal operation that is characteristic of most modern buildings, designers must be familiar with the basic concepts and equipment of normal electrical systems. Chapter 25 reviews basic electrical relationships, with emphasis on electric circuits, power, energy, energy costs, and methods of energy management and electric load control. Chapter 26 describes electrical service, utilization, and emergency/standby power equipment. Also addressed are energy conservation considerations and economic factors. Chapter 27 introduces the concept of electrical equipment ratings and capacity, and continues with a description of modern wiring systems and their components. Chapter 28 draws on information given in the three preceding chapters to demonstrate straightforward design methods for building electrical systems. Chapter 29 presents information on photovoltaic (PV) systems, which are being increasingly adopted as part of green, net-zero-energy, and carbon-neutral building design solutions.

CHAPTER 25

Principles of Electricity

HISTORICALLY, USABLE ENERGY WAS MOST often produced by burning a fossil fuel such as coal or oil. The resultant heat energy was used directly as heat and light or converted by machines into motion. Only since the end of the nineteenth century, however, has this heat in turn been used to create another very usable form of energy—electricity. The partial substitution of nuclear for fossil fuels has affected only the heat production portion of this process. Beyond that point, the heat is utilized in the same manner to drive generators that produce electricity. It is well to remember that, in terms of consumption of natural resources, electricity is an expensive form of energy because the efficiency of the overall heat-to-electricity conversion, on a commercial scale, rarely exceeds 40%.

25.1 ELECTRIC ENERGY

Electricity is a form of energy that occurs naturally only in unusable forms such as lightning and other static discharges or in natural galvanic cells (which cause corrosion). The primary problem in the utilization of electric energy is that, unlike fuels or even heat, it cannot be readily stored and therefore must be generated and utilized in the same instant. This requires an entirely different concept of utilization than, for example, a heating system with its fuel source, burner, piping, and associated equipment.

The bulk of electric energy utilized today is in the form of *alternating current* (ac), produced by ac generators commonly called *alternators*. *Direct current* (dc) generators are utilized for special applications requiring large quantities of dc. In the building field, such a requirement was once almost universal for elevators because of the ease with which dc motors can be speed-controlled. Today, however, because fine speed control of ac motors is practical, ac motors are the driver of choice for modern elevators, with attendant energy savings and a reduction in machinery space requirements. Smaller quantities of dc, furnished either by batteries, photovoltaic (PV) equipment, or rectifiers, are utilized for telephone and signal equipment, controls, and other specialized uses.

25.2 UNIT OF ELECTRIC CURRENT—THE AMPERE

Electricity flowing in a conductor is called *current*, which is measured in *amperes*, abbreviated *amp*, *amps*, or simply *A*. When current is used in an equation, it is usually represented by the letter *I* or *i*.

It is convenient to establish an analogy between electrical systems and mechanical systems as an aid to understanding the characteristics of electricity. Current is a measure of flow and, as such, corresponds to water flow in a hydraulic system (Fig. 25.1). The analogy is not complete, however, because in a hydraulic system the velocity of water flow can vary, whereas in an electrical system the velocity of (electric) propagation is constant and may be considered instantaneous.

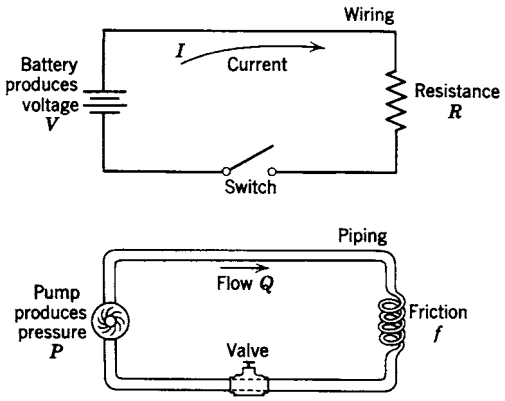


Fig. 25.1 *Electric-hydraulic analogy. The circuits show that voltage is analogous to pressure, current to flow, friction to resistance, wiring to piping, and switches to valves.*

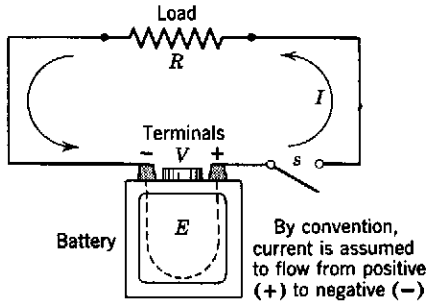


Fig. 25.2 *Current flows in the electric circuit as a result of the voltage (potential difference) V that exists between the terminals of the battery. By convention, current direction is from positive (+) to negative (–) in the circuit (and from – to + inside the battery).*

25.3 UNIT OF ELECTRIC POTENTIAL—THE VOLT

The electron movement (and its associated energy, which constitutes electricity) is caused by creating a higher positive electric charge at one point on a conductor than exists at another point on the same conductor. This difference in charge can be created in a number of ways. The oldest and simplest method is by electrochemical action, as in a battery.

In the ordinary dry cell, or in a storage battery, chemical action causes positive charges (+) to collect on the positive terminal and electrons [i.e., negative charges (–)] to collect on the negative terminal. Assume for the moment that nothing is connected to the battery terminals. There is a tendency for flow between the electrified particles concentrated at the positive and negative terminals. *Potential difference* or *voltage* is the name given to this tendency, or force. It is analogous to pressure in a hydraulic or pneumatic system. Just as the pressure produced by a pump or blower causes water or air to flow in a connecting pipe, the potential (voltage) produced by a battery (or generator) causes current to flow in a conductor connecting the terminals between which a voltage exists (Fig. 25.2). The higher the voltage (pressure), the higher the current (flow) for a given resistance (friction). Other means of producing voltage, both direct (dc) and alternating (ac), are discussed in Section 25.8. The unit of voltage is the volt, abbreviated *V* or *v*.

25.4 UNIT OF ELECTRIC RESISTANCE—THE OHM

The flow of fluid in a hydraulic system is resisted by friction; the flow of current in an electric circuit is also resisted. In a dc circuit this force is called *resistance* and is abbreviated *R*; in an ac circuit it is called *impedance* and is abbreviated *Z*. The unit of measurement is the *ohm*. The scientific convention of naming units after persons whose work is closely related to the field is followed here. Thus, the units ampere, volt, and ohm are derived from André Ampère, Alessandro Volta, and Georg Ohm.

Materials display different resistances to the flow of electric current. Metals generally have the least resistance and are therefore called *conductors*. The best conductors are the precious metals—silver, gold, and platinum—with copper and aluminum being only slightly inferior. Conversely, materials that resist the flow of current are called *insulators*. Glass, mica, rubber, oil, distilled water, porcelain, and certain synthetics exhibit nonconductive properties and are used to insulate electric conductors. Common examples are rubber and plastic wire coverings, porcelain lamp sockets, and oil-immersed switches.

25.5 OHM'S LAW

The current I that will flow in a dc circuit is directly proportional to the voltage V and inversely proportional to the resistance R of the circuit. In ac circuits, the same relation holds true except that instead of dc resistance we use ac impedance. Expressed as an equation, this is the basic form of Ohm's law:

$$I = \frac{V}{R} \tag{25.1}$$

Ohm's law is frequently written in another form:

$$V = IR \tag{25.2}$$

which expresses the mathematical relationship that voltage is the product of current and resistance. This form has no intuitive or logical basis; therefore, remembering the form of Equation 25.1 will prove more useful. It clearly states the physical situation, that is, as a result of voltage V, a current I is produced that is proportional to the electric voltage (pressure) V and inversely proportional to the electric resistance (friction) R. If V increases, I will increase; if R increases, I will decrease.

Example 25.1 illustrates the application of Ohm's law. The example chosen is applicable to both ac and dc because the load device is purely resistive. When a load is purely resistive, resistance and impedance are equal. This is more fully explained in the subsequent discussion of alternating current.

EXAMPLE 25.1 An incandescent lamp having a hot resistance of 66 ohms is put into a socket that is connected to a 115-V supply. What current flows through the lamp (after it reaches operating temperature)?

SOLUTION

$$I = \frac{V}{R} = \frac{115 \text{ volts}}{66 \text{ ohms}} = 1.74 \text{ A}$$

(These values correspond to a typical 200-W general service incandescent lamp.) ■

Hot resistance is mentioned in Example 25.1 because the electrical resistance of some materials changes with temperature. A typical example of this is a tungsten-filament lamp that when first turned on (cold) takes, for a fraction of a second, 10 to 15 times the steady-state hot filament current.

25.6 CIRCUIT ARRANGEMENTS

The two basic electric circuit arrangements are *series* and *parallel*. These concepts are the same for both dc and ac. As previously, the discussion focuses upon purely resistive circuits so that calculations are applicable to both dc and ac. In other than purely resistive circuits, ac circuit calculations are different and much more complicated than those for their dc counterparts.

(a) Series Circuits

In a series arrangement the elements are connected one after another, that is, in series. Thus, resistances and voltages add. This is indicated graphically in Fig. 25.3. An electric circuit may be defined as a complete conducting path that carries current from a source of electricity to and through some electrical device (or load) and back to the source. A current cannot flow unless there is a complete (closed) circuit. Due to the arrangement of components in a series circuit, *the current is the same in all parts of the circuit*. A somewhat more complicated

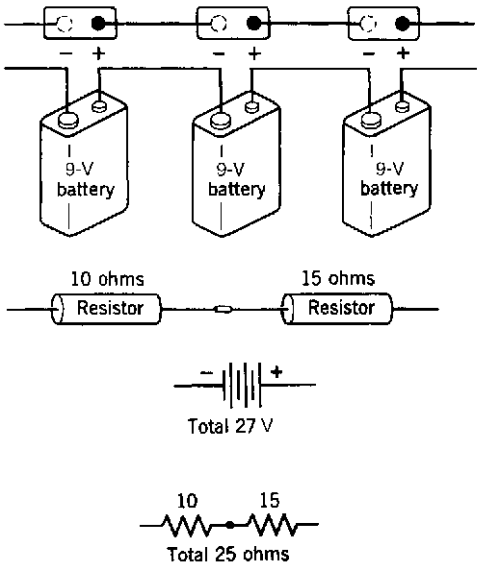


Fig. 25.3 *Physical and graphic representation of a series connection of batteries and resistors.*

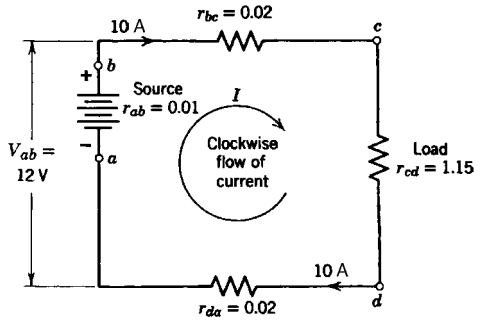


Fig. 25.4 *A series circuit always contains a voltage source (here, the battery), and a load (R). This circuit also shows the resistance of the connecting wires for accuracy. Such resistances are normally neglected because they usually are very small compared to the load resistance.*

circuit is shown in Fig. 25.4 and is analyzed in Example 25.2.

It is customary to refer to connection points on wiring diagrams by letters, as a, b, c, d, and so on. The battery voltage may then be called $V_{ab} = 12$ V; the voltage across the load resistance, $V_{cd} = 11.5$ V; and the resistance of the two wires $r_{bc} + r_{da} = 0.04$ ohm. The positive and negative terminals of the battery are always shown.

EXAMPLE 25.2 The battery in Fig. 25.4 is rated at 12 V; the total line resistance (the total for both wire segments) is 0.04 ohm; the battery internal resistance is 0.01 ohm; and the load resistance is 1.15 ohms. Determine (a) the current flowing in the circuit and (b) the voltage across the load (V_{cd}).

SOLUTION

(a) The current flowing is

$$I = \frac{V}{R} = \frac{V_{ab}}{r_{ab} + r_{bc} + r_{cd} + r_{da}}$$

$$= \frac{12}{0.01 + 0.02 + 1.15 + 0.02} = \frac{12}{1.2} = 10\ A$$

(b) The voltage drop across the load is

$$V_{cd} = I \times R_{cd} = 10 \times 1.15 = 11.5\ V$$ ■

Series circuits find very limited application in building wiring because failure of any one load (such as a burned out lamp) will open the circuit (shutting off power to all loads on the circuit).

(b) Parallel Circuits

When two or more branches with loads are connected between the same two points, they are said to be connected in *parallel* or *multiple*. Such a parallel arrangement and its hydraulic equivalent are shown in Fig. 25.5. In the circuit of Fig. 25.6 it can be seen that the voltage across each load is the same, but the current in each load (branch) depends upon the resistance of that load. Parallel loads, in effect, constitute separate circuits. In this arrangement the total current in the circuit is the sum of the individual currents flowing in the branches—that is,

$$I_T = I_1 + I_2 + I_3$$

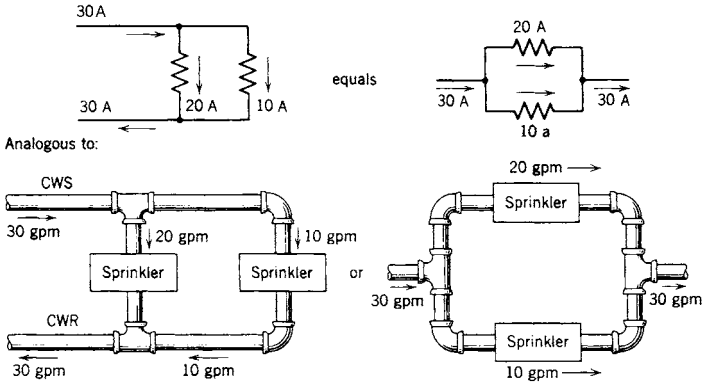


Fig. 25.5 *In a parallel connection the flow divides between the branches, but the pressure is the same in each branch.*

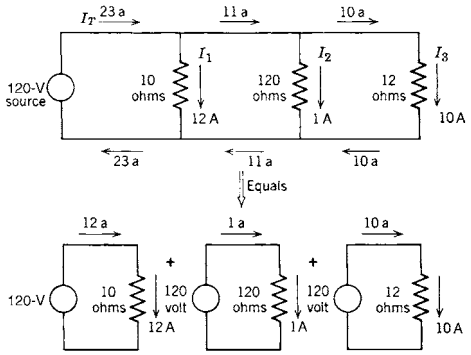


Fig. 25.6 *Note that loads connected in parallel are equivalent to separate circuits combined into a single circuit. Each load acts as an independent circuit unrelated to, and unaffected by, the other circuits.*

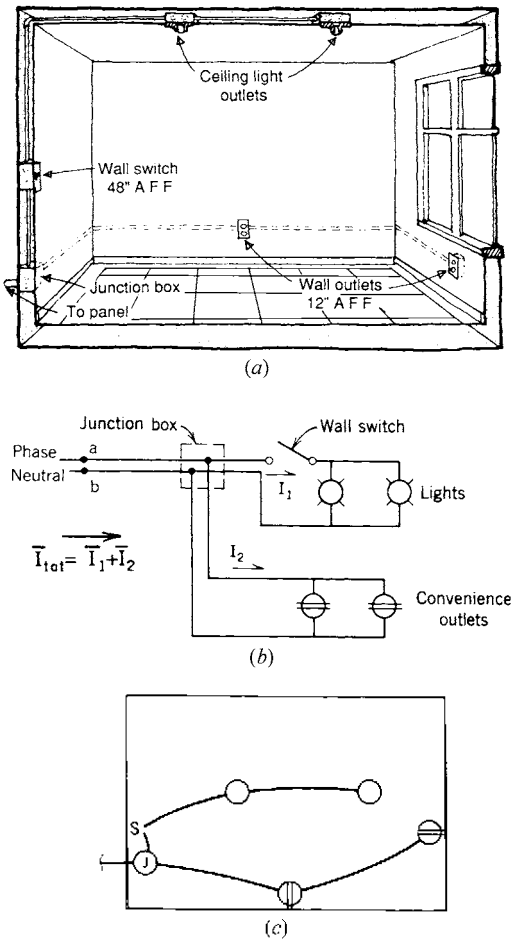


Fig. 25.7 *Parallel groupings of ceiling lamp outlets and wall outlets are in turn connected in parallel to each other. The circuit is shown (a) pictorially, (b) schematically, and (c) as on an electrical floor plan. (The horizontal bar over the currents I_1 and I_2 in (b) signifies the use of vectorial addition; see Example 25.5.)*

Notice in Fig. 25.6 that the total current flowing in the circuit is the sum of the currents in all the branches, but that the current in each branch is determined by a separate Ohm's law calculation. Thus, in the 10-ohm load, a 12-A current flows, and so forth.

The parallel circuit is the standard arrangement in all building wiring. A typical lighting and receptacle arrangement for a large room is shown in Fig. 25.7. Here the lighting fixtures constitute one parallel (multiple) grouping, and the convenience wall outlets constitute a second parallel grouping. The fundamental principle to remember is that loads in parallel are additive for current and that each load has the same voltage across it.

One additional point is important to appreciate. Remember from Ohm's law that current is inversely proportional to resistance. Thus, as resistance drops, current rises. Now look at the circuit of Fig. 25.7. Normally, that circuit carries the (vector) sum of the currents in the two branches. (Vectorial addition is discussed in Section 25.11, Example 25.5c.) If, by some mischance, such as deterioration of the wiring insulation, a connection forms between points *a* and *b*, the circuit is *shortened* so that there is no resistance in parallel branch *ab*. The current rises instantly to a very high value, and there is a *short circuit*. If the circuit is properly protected, a fuse or circuit breaker opens and the circuit is deenergized. If not, the heat generated by the very high current will probably start a fire.

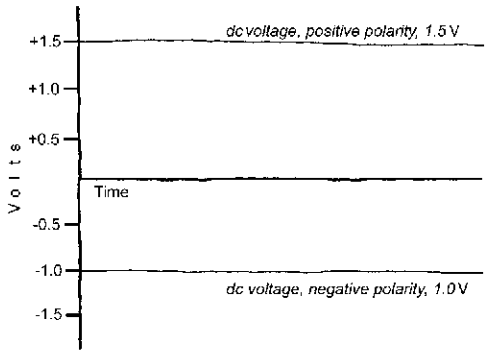


Fig. 25.8 *Graphic representation of dc voltages with positive and negative polarity.*

25.7 DIRECT CURRENT AND ALTERNATING CURRENT

A flow of electric current that takes place at a constant time rate, practically unvarying and in the same direction around a circuit, is called a *direct current* (dc). Figure 25.8 shows dc voltages of 1.5 V positive polarity and 1.0 V negative polarity.

When the flow of current is periodically varying in time and in direction, as indicated by the symmetrical positive and negative loops, or *sine waves*, in Fig. 25.9, it is called an *alternating current* (ac). The distance along the time axis spanned by a positive and a negative ac loop is called *one cycle*. The number of such cycles occurring in 1 second is known as the *frequency* of the ac current. Modern ac systems in the United States and Canada operate at a frequency of 60 cycles per second, or 60 *hertz* (after Heinrich Hertz). Thus, current at 60 hertz (abbreviated Hz) is delivered to the consumer. In Europe and much of Asia, 50-Hz distribution is standard.

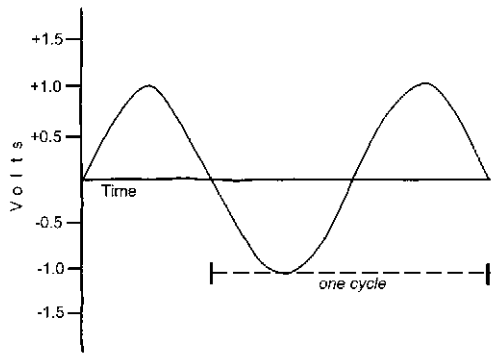


Fig. 25.9 *Graphic representation of a pure single-frequency alternating current (ac). The figure shown is a sine wave. Note that a complete cycle includes both the positive and negative loops. The number of full cycles in 1 second is defined as the frequency of the current (or voltage).*

An ac circuit differs from a dc circuit in a number of important respects and, because the normal current supply is 60 Hz ac, it is important to understand ac terminology and usage. Instead of resistance, the corresponding parameter in an ac circuit is *impedance*, which is (also) measured in ohms.

Depending upon the circuit load, impedance can be markedly different from the dc resistance. For an ac circuit, Ohm's law is

$$I = \frac{V}{Z} \tag{25.3}$$

where Z is the symbol for impedance. This book does not go into ac circuit calculations primarily because such calculations are not especially useful to the typical building designer. What *is* useful and important is an understanding of power and energy in both dc and ac circuits. These concepts are discussed in the following sections.

25.8 ELECTRIC POWER GENERATION—DC

With respect to the generation of large amounts of dc power, piezoelectric and thermoelectric effects can be ignored. Photovoltaic (PV) power generated from solar cells—as discussed in Chapter 29—is becoming increasingly important as a practical source of electricity for specialized uses and as part of green/carbon-neutral building design efforts. This leaves the battery and the dc generator (along with PV) as everyday sources of dc electricity. Because the dc generator is in reality an ac generator with a device (commutator) attached that rectifies the ac to dc, the battery is the major direct source of dc. (There are some special types of generators that produce dc *directly*, but their use to date has been extremely limited.) A discussion of the application of batteries for emergency and standby power supplies can be found in Chapter 28.

Another source of dc power is rectification of ac. This can be accomplished on any desired scale to provide as much dc power as there is available ac power. The principal application of dc in older buildings is for elevator motors. In many buildings dc is used for standby power. Small amounts of dc are also used for controls and telephones.

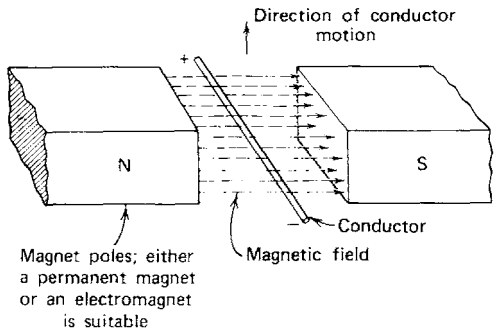


Fig. 25.10 *The action fundamental to all generators. When a conductor of electricity moves through a magnetic field, a voltage is induced in the conductor, with polarity as shown.*

25.9 ELECTRIC POWER GENERATION—AC

Alternating current is produced commercially by an ac generator, generally called an *alternator*. Its prime mover may be any type of engine or turbine. The process by which electricity is produced is illustrated in Fig. 25.10; it is based upon the fundamental discovery in 1831 by Michael Faraday of the principle of electromagnetic induction. Briefly, this principle states that when an electrical conductor is moved in a magnetic field, a voltage is induced in the conductor. The direction of movement determines the polarity of the induced voltage, as shown in Fig. 25.10.

If a conductor is formed into a coil and rotated in a magnetic field, a voltage of alternating polarity is produced, that is, alternating current. It does not matter whether the conductor or the magnet moves; the motion of the conductor and the field with respect to each other produces the voltage (see Fig. 25.11). It is only one step (that of commercial development) from this rudimentary ac generator to the large, powerful alternator that produces ac in a modern power plant. The frequency of the voltage generated is a function of the machine design and the speed at which it is driven. Normal generator frequency in the United States, as noted previously, is 60 Hz, whereas in Europe and the Mideast it is 50 Hz.

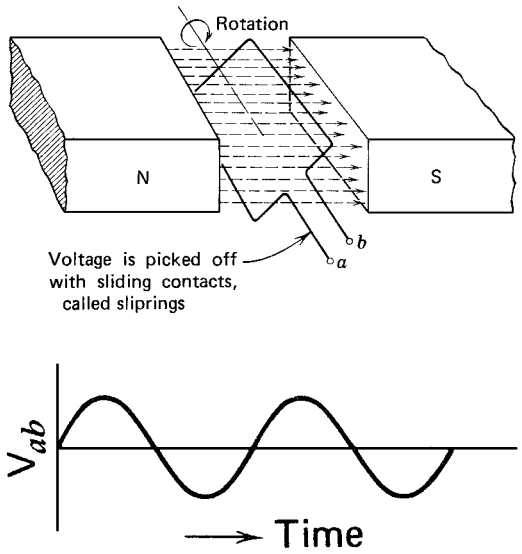


Fig. 25.11 *Rotating a coil in a magnetic field produces an alternating sinusoidal voltage at terminals a and b because of the alternating polarity.*

25.10 POWER AND ENERGY

It is critically important that the distinction between power and energy be clearly understood. All too frequently the terms are used interchangeably—which is incorrect and can lead to bad design decisions. *Energy* is the technical term for the more common expression *work*. *Power* is the rate at which energy is used. For example, it takes a fixed amount of energy to lift a weight a given distance either quickly (in 5 minutes) or slowly (over 5 hours), but the faster it is lifted, the more power that is required. Energy is the product of power and time, that is,

$$\text{energy (work)} = \text{power} \times \text{time} \qquad (25.4)$$

In practical terms, energy is synonymous with fuel consumption and, therefore, with cost (and resource depletion, for fossil fuels). Energy can be expressed as barrels (liters) of oil, cubic feet (cubic meters) of gas, tons (kilograms) of coal, kilowatt-hours of electricity usage, and/or dollars of fuel cost. The outcome of energy efficiency efforts for buildings can be stated in terms of annual usage of oil, gas, and electricity or, alternatively, in terms of dollars spent for fuel or utilities. In technical terms, energy is expressed in units of Btu (calories), foot-pounds (joules), and kilowatt-hours. Conversion factors between these (and other) units of energy are found in Appendix A. In terms of fuel, 1 kilowatt-hour (kWh) of energy is roughly equivalent to

0.5 lb (0.23 kg) of coal, 0.07 gal (0.26 L) of oil, 7.7 ft^3 (0.22 m^3) of natural gas, and 8200 gal (31,000 L) of water in a hydroelectric dam.

Power is the rate at which energy is used or work is done (energy and work being synonymous). The term *power* implies continuity—that is, the use of energy at a particular rate, over a given, generally considerable, span of time. The concept of power necessarily involves the factor of time because it is, as stated previously, the *rate* at which work is done. Multiplying power by time yields energy consumption. Typical units of power in the I-P system are horsepower, Btu per hour, watt, and kilowatt. In the SI system, the corresponding units are joule per second, calorie per second, watt, and kilowatt. In physical terms, power is also the rate at which fuel (energy) is used. Thus, power can also be expressed as gallons (liters) of oil per hour, cubic feet (cubic meters) of gas per minute, and tons (kilograms) of coal per day. (When using fuel figures, it is important to ascertain the assumed fuel-to-useful-energy conversion efficiency. When not stated, "energy content" [i.e., energy availability at 100% conversion efficiency] is assumed.) Most U.S. building codes are based upon site energy use, rather than source energy—making conversion efficiency a hidden (but important) issue.

25.11 POWER IN ELECTRIC CIRCUITS

The unit of electric power is the watt (W); 1000 watts is the commonly encountered kilowatt (kW). Both units are commonly used in building design situations depending upon the magnitude of the load—as in a 100-W incandescent lamp, or a 5-kW resistance heating coil. The power input in watts to any electrical device having a resistance R and a current I is given by the equation

$$W = I^2R = (I)\,(IR) \qquad (25.5)$$

where W is wattage. This is true for both dc and ac circuits. Because the resistance of a device or load is generally not known, whereas the circuit voltage and current are known, it would be preferable to be able to calculate power using these latter two quantities. This can be done, but differently, for dc and ac.

In dc circuits, by Ohm's law, $V = IR$ and, because $W = I\,(IR)$ from Equation 25.5, we obtain

$$W = VI \qquad (25.6)$$

where

W is watts

R is ohms

I is amperes

and V is volts

In ac circuits, impedance consists of a combination of dc resistance and ac resistance (called *reactance*). Reactance causes a phase difference between voltage and current. This phase difference is represented by an angle, the cosine of which is called the *power factor* (*pf*). Power factor is extremely important in that it enables us to calculate power in an ac circuit. The ac power equation is similar to that for dc (see Equation 25.6) with the addition of the ac power factor term; that is,

$$W = VI \times pf \qquad (25.7)$$

If *pf* is not included in the equation, the product of voltage and current gives a quantity known as *volt-amperes*. In a purely resistive circuit, such as one with only electric heating elements, impedance equals resistance, power factor equals 1.0, and wattage equals volt-amperage. In other circuits this is not the case. A few examples should help make the application of these equations clear.

EXAMPLE 25.3 Referring back to Example 25.1, calculate the power drawn using Equations 25.5, 25.6, and 25.7.

SOLUTION

Because an incandescent lamp is purely resistive and therefore has unity (1.0) power factor, it does not matter whether the circuit is ac or dc.

From Example 25.1,

$$R = 66 \text{ ohms}, \; I = 1.74 \text{ A}, \; V = 115 \text{ V}$$

1. In a dc circuit, we would use Equation 25.6:

$$W = VI = 115 \times 1.74 = 200 \text{ W}$$

2. In an ac circuit, we would use Equation 25.7:

$$W = VI \times pf = 115 \times 1.74 \times 1.0 = 200 \text{ W}$$

3. In either a dc or an ac circuit, we can use Equation 25.5:

$$W = I^2R = (1.74)^2 \times 66 = 200 \text{ W}$$ ■

EXAMPLE 25.4 Using the data given in Example 25.2 and Fig. 25.4, determine (a) the power loss in the wiring and (b) the power input to the load.

SOLUTION

(a) The total power loss in the wiring is

$$W = I^2R = I^2 (r_{bc} + r_{da})$$
$$= (10)^2 \times 0.04 = 4 \text{ W}$$

(b) The power taken by the load is

$$W = I^2R = I^2R_{cd} = (10)^2 \times 1.15$$
$$= 115 \text{ W (or } 0.115 \text{ kW)}.$$

Alternatively, we can find this power by multiplying voltage and current. The voltage on the load is

$$IR = 10 \times 1.15 = 11.5 \text{ V}$$

and

$$W = VI = 11.5 \times 10 = 115 \text{ W (or } 0.115 \text{ kW)}. \quad \blacksquare$$

EXAMPLE 25.5 Refer to Fig. 25.7. Assume a 150-W incandescent lamp at each ceiling outlet. Also assume the load connected to one convenience outlet to be a 10-A hair dryer with a power factor of 0.80. Calculate the current and power in the two branches of the circuit, and the total circuit current, assuming a 120-V ac source.

SOLUTION

(a) In the circuit branch feeding the lamps, the power consumption is for two 150-W lamps; that is,

$$P = 2(150) = 300 \text{ W}$$

To calculate the current, we would use Equation 25.7, which expresses power in an ac circuit:

$$W = VI \times pf$$

Because incandescent lamps are effectively resistive loads, their power factor is 1.0. Therefore:

$$\text{Power} = VI$$
$$300 \text{ W} = 120 \text{ V} \times \text{I}$$
$$I = \frac{300 \text{ W}}{120 \text{ V}} = 2.5 \text{ A}$$

(b) In the second branch, we have a 10-A, 0.8-*pf* load.

$$\text{Power in watts} = \text{volts} \times \text{amperes} \times \text{power factor}$$
$$W = 120 \times 10 \times 0.8 = 960 \text{ W}$$

However, the branch volt-amperes are

$$V \times A = 120 \times 10 = 1200 \text{ VA}$$

This latter figure is important for sizing electrical equipment.

(c) To calculate the total current flowing from the panel to both branches of the circuit, we must combine a purely resistive current (lamp circuit) with a reactive one (dryer circuit). The exact value of the current is the *vectorial* sum of the two branch currents, which calculates to be 12.1 amperes. (Vectorial addition is a technique that considers the phase angle between two currents. Phase angle, or phase difference, was noted previously.) In normal circuit design practice, the *arithmetic* sum of 12.5 amps would be used. The error introduced is only 3.2%, and because it results in slightly oversized circuit components, it is on the safe side. Only where power factors are very low would a designer use vectorial addition to more accurately size a circuit. ■

One further example will demonstrate the importance of power factor in normal situations.

EXAMPLE 25.6 The nameplate of a single-phase motor shows the following data: 3 hp, 240 V, ac, 17 A. Assume an efficiency of 90%. Calculate the motor (and therefore circuit) power factor.

SOLUTION

From Appendix A the conversion 1 hp = 746 W is found. Therefore,

$$3 \text{ hp} = 3 \times 746 = 2238 \text{ W}$$

This represents the motor *output*. Because for any device

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{output}}{\text{input}}$$

then

$$\text{power input} = \frac{2238 \text{ W}}{0.9} = 2487 \text{ W}$$

However, for ac,

$$\text{power} = \text{volts} \times \text{amperes} \times \text{power factor}$$

so

$$2487\ \text{W} = 240\ \text{V} \times 17\ \text{A} \times \text{power factor}$$

and

$$\text{power factor} = \frac{2487\ \text{W}}{240 \times 17} = 0.61$$

Note the large difference between volt-amperes and watts:

$$V \times I = 240 \times 17 = 4080\ \text{VA}$$
$$P\ (\text{as before}) = 2487\ \text{W}$$

where P designates power. This difference is important in circuit design, as will be seen in the discussion of methods for sizing circuit components. ■

25.12 ENERGY IN ELECTRIC CIRCUITS

Because energy = power × time, the amount of energy used is directly proportional to both the power of a system and the length of time it is in operation. Because power is expressed in watts or kilowatts and time in hours (seconds and minutes are too small for practical use), the units of energy used are watt-hours (Wh) or kilowatt-hours (kWh).

EXAMPLE 25.7

(a) Find the daily energy consumption of the appliances listed if they are used for the length of time shown.

Toaster (1340 W)	15 min
Percolator (500 W)	2 h
Fryer (1560 W)	½ h
Iron (1400 W)	½ h

(b) Assuming that the average cost of energy is $0.12 per kilowatt-hour, find the daily operating cost.

SOLUTION

(a) Toaster: 1340 W = 1.34 kW × ¼ h
= 0.335 kWh

Percolator: 500 W = 0.5 kW × 2 h
= 1.00 kWh

Fryer: 1560 W = 1.56 kW × ½ h
= 0.78 kWh

Iron: 1400 W = 1.4 kW × ½ h
= 0.70 kWh

Total 2.815 kWh per day

(b) The daily operating cost is 2.815 kWh × $0.12/kWh = $0.3378 (say, 34 cents). ■

The power used by a residential household varies with the time of day. A graph showing the power used by a typical American household during a normal weekday might look something like the one in Fig. 25.12. The *average* power demand of the household is much lower than the *maximum*. The ratio between the two is called the *overall load factor* and runs between 20% and 30% for a typical household. The energy used by this household for the 24-hour period is represented by the *area* under the curve of Fig. 25.12. This can be determined only by integration because it varies continuously. Such integration is exactly what a kilowatt-hour meter does, as explained in Section 25.15 (dealing with electrical measurements).

EXAMPLE 25.8 It has been estimated that the average power demand of an American household with an electric stove is 1.8 kW. Calculate the monthly electric bill of such a household, assuming a flat rate of $0.12 per kilowatt-hour.

SOLUTION

Monthly energy use:

$$1.8\ \text{kW} \times \frac{24\ \text{h}}{\text{day}} \times \frac{30\ \text{days}}{\text{month}} = 1296\ \text{kWh per month}$$

Monthly electric bill:

$$1296\ \text{kWh} \times \$0.12/\text{kWh} = \$155.52$$ ■

In Example 25.8 the bill was based on a *flat* rate of 12 cents per kWh. Flat rates are very common for residential users. In the United States, residential rates vary from a low of 5–6 cents per kWh in states using substantial hydroelectric power to as high as 17 cents per kWh in some Northeastern states. Hawaii has the highest rates in the United States.

Electric utilities (by franchise agreement) must provide for a customer's *maximum* power demand, whereas the monthly energy billing only compensates them for *average* demand, which is always lower. One technique used by electric utilities to account for this condition is to levy a *demand charge* for short-term power (kW) requirements in addition to the normal energy (kWh) billing for overall consumption. This technique has long been standard

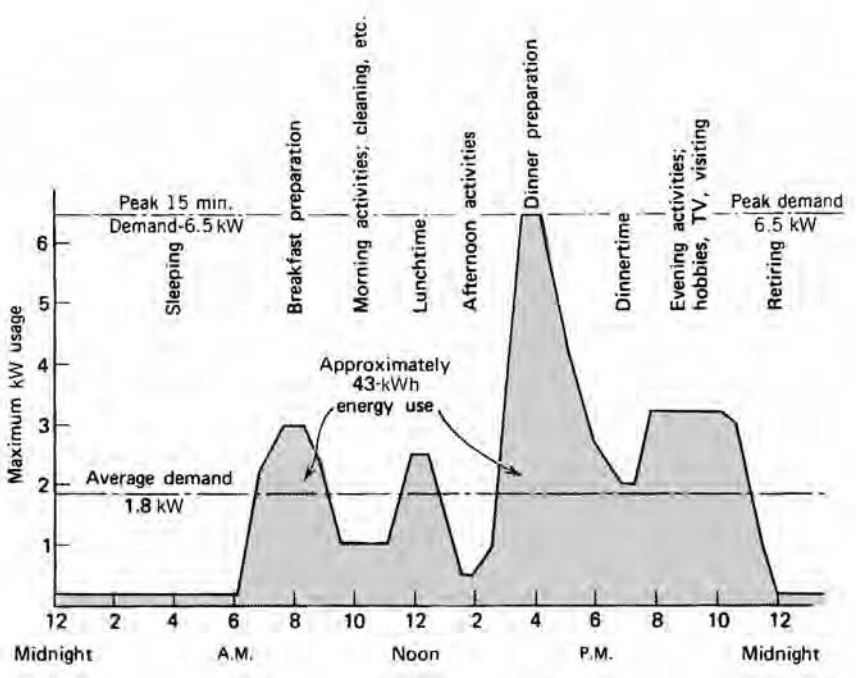


Fig. 25.12 *Hypothetical graph of power usage for a typical U.S. household. Electric cooking is assumed. The area under the curve represents energy usage. Maximum kW demand (vertical axis) is based on a 15-minute integrated demand, thus eliminating spikes in demand, such as those caused by starting a refrigeration (air-conditioning) compressor. This curve has a 24-hour use of approximately 43 kWh, giving an average 24-hour demand of 1.8 kW. The ratio between this average demand and the peak demand of 6.5 kW is called the load factor, which here is 27.5%.*

for industrial and commercial user rates, but it is still unusual for residential users. The demand charge is especially useful as a means of encouraging users to reduce their peak loads. In so doing, energy use is also somewhat reduced. As utilities continue to adjust to deregulation and rapidly fluctuating fuel costs, and incur difficulties meeting growing demands for service, expect to see more innovative (and complex) billing schemes being implemented.

25.13 ELECTRIC DEMAND CHARGES

Electric utility companies normally levy a kW demand charge on all but individual residential and a few special-category customers. Varying with the utility company involved, this monthly charge runs between \$2 and \$15 per kW of maximum average demand in any demand interval for a given month. Demand intervals vary, usually being either 15 or 30 minutes (see Fig. 25.13).

Many utilities use a *sliding window* interval timing technique that starts a new interval every minute and updates the maximum interval demand accordingly. This enables them to find and bill for the maximum electric power demand in any 15- or 30-minute period in a month. Some companies also include a *ratchet* clause that levies a demand charge for a number of months based upon the maximum demand in any single month. This penalizes users with seasonal highs—that is, users with a low *yearly* load factor. The load factor is a measure of uniformity of power demand; a low load factor indicates short-time demand peaks for which the user is heavily charged. The justification for the imposition of a demand charge and the significance of load factors can best be demonstrated by an example.

Assume that a pottery manufacturer, whose average 8-hour daily load is 20 kW for lighting and pottery wheels, operates two 50-kW electric kilns twice a month for a 4-hour period each time. Further assume an energy charge of \$0.10 per kWh. The total monthly *energy* bill for the operation of the two kilns would be

$$\text{energy cost} = 2 \times 50\ \text{kW} \times 8\ \text{h} \times \frac{\$0.10}{\text{kWh}} = \$80.00$$

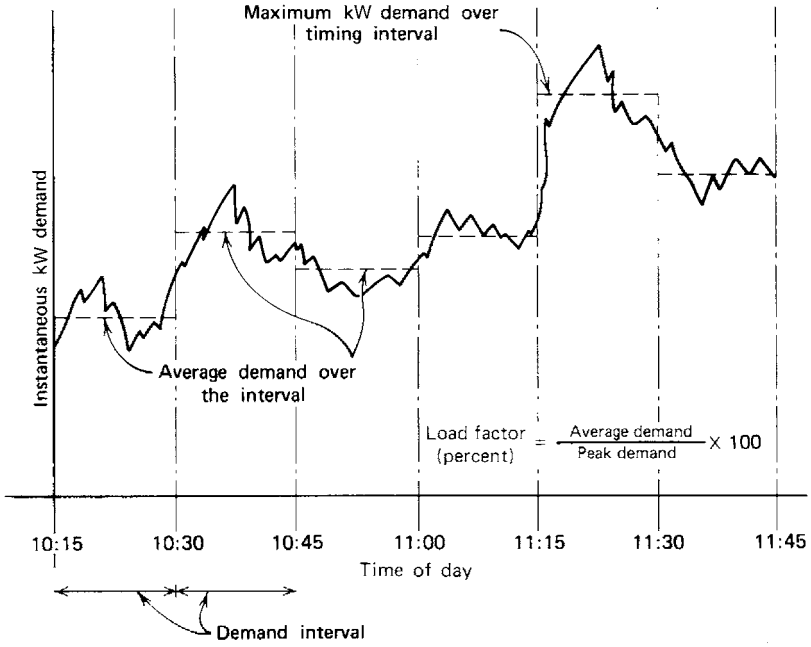


Fig. 25.13 *Typical instantaneous load curve for a commercial facility. The utility demand meter records the average demand in each period (here, 15 minutes). The maximum interval demand—in this case, between 11:15 and 11:30—is used as the basis for monthly billing. A high load factor (utilization factor) indicates that little can be gained by demand control; a low load factor indicates the reverse.*

Thus, were it not for a demand charge, the utility company, which is required by law to supply the maximum customer demand, would have to provide and maintain 100 kW of generation, transmission, and distribution facilities in return for a payment that is the equivalent of 1.11 kW of average continuous load, that is,

$$\text{equivalent continuous load} = \frac{\$80.00}{720\ \text{hr/month} \times 0.10}$$

$$= 1.11\ \text{kW}$$

The user's load factor can be calculated readily. By definition,

$$\text{load factor} = \frac{\text{average power demand}}{\text{maximum power demand}} \qquad (25.8)$$

For a given time interval (e.g., day, month, year), the average power demand is equal to the energy used in the period divided by the period length.

Average period power demand

$$= \frac{\text{kWh energy use}}{\text{hours of use}} \text{ for that time period} \qquad (25.9)$$

Therefore, the average *monthly* power demand equals the average monthly energy use divided by 720 hours. Substituting the monthly version of Equation 25.9 as the general expression for the load factor (LF) in Equation 25.8 gives

LF monthly

$$= \frac{\text{monthly kWh energy use} \div 720\ \text{hours}}{\text{maximum demand}} \qquad (25.10)$$

For the case under consideration, the *monthly* load factor is

$$\text{LF} = \frac{[(23\ \text{days} \times 8\ \text{h} \times 20\ \text{kW}) + (2\ \text{days} \times 4\ \text{h} \times 100\ \text{kW})] \div 720\ \text{h}}{120\ \text{kW}}$$

$$= \frac{(3680 + 800\ \text{kWh/month}) \div 720\ \text{h}}{120\ \text{kW}}$$

$$= 0.052 \text{ or } 5.2\%$$

This is a very poor load factor, which results in the levying of a high demand charge. Assuming an $8.00 per kW demand tariff, this pottery manufacturer would be billed, monthly, an additional

$$\text{demand charge} = 120\ \text{kW} \times \$8.00 = \$960.00$$

With an energy bill of only

$$\text{energy cost} = 4480 \text{ kWh} \times \$0.10 = \$448.00$$

this manufacturer is paying heavily for high peak power use.

Although the illustration selected is somewhat extreme in its pattern of electricity use, it is not uncommon to find demand charges of the same order of magnitude as energy charges. It is impossible to eliminate demand charges entirely, but it is certainly possible (and frequently very simple) to reduce them. Such reduction is in the interest of the user, the utility, and the public at large: the user—for economic reasons; the utility—to permit more efficient use of its facilities; and the general public—by avoiding unnecessary power plant construction and associated inefficient use of fuel during partial generator loading, and by overall reduction in fuel use. The last item is a secondary benefit of demand control.

The next section discusses user electric demand control, the primary function of which is to reduce electric *power* demand. This reduces demand charges and, incidentally (secondarily), somewhat reduces energy consumption. Electric demand control is different from *energy* management, which is primarily concerned with reduction of all types of energy use, including electricity. Electric demand control is frequently included as one part of an overall energy management system.

25.14 ELECTRIC DEMAND CONTROL

Electric demand control methods vary greatly in complexity and in degree of automation, but all basically perform the same task—enabling efficient utilization of available energy to produce a high load factor, resulting in a lowering of demand charges. An ancillary but important benefit is the improved utilization of building electrical power equipment, which normally runs underloaded. When demand control is incorporated during the original design (instead of as a retrofit), it results in smaller equipment, a lower first cost, and less space allocated for equipment.

For a number of years beginning in the 1980s, many utilities offered their customers rebates that covered up to 40% of the cost of equipment and renovations that would reduce maximum demand *and* overall energy use. These programs acted as a clear financial incentive for the development of cost-effective demand control and energy conservation equipment and techniques that have since become widely adopted. The result has been a considerable reduction in nationwide per capita electric power and energy use. These rebate programs reduced the investment payback period to such an extent that many (perhaps most) large power users invested large sums in electric demand control and energy conservation and management equipment.

The advantage to the energy user is obvious: lower electric bills. The advantage to the utility is equally simple. It costs $3500 to $5000 per kilowatt of generating capacity for new power plant construction (depending upon the location and required auxiliary construction), whereas rebates run from $150 to $1000 per kW conserved, with the larger amounts paid for by peak demand reduction. Because a utility must supply all the power demanded by customers, it is very much in the interest of any utility that is generating power output near the maximum capacity of its equipment to reduce loads in general and peak loads in particular.

The oldest and simplest utility-sponsored demand control scheme, still in use today, is the time-of-day-dependent, variable utility rate schedule. This scheme encourages off-peak use of electricity by offering a lower energy rate for consumption during off-peak hours. Utilities offering off-peak rates generally install, at no charge to the user, a separate time-controlled circuit switch for use with time-deferrable loads such as water heaters, well pumps, battery chargers, and the like. The circuit is energized only during off-peak hours, which typically are mid-afternoon and after midnight. One such arrangement is shown in Fig. 25.14. Note that the switch itself has no programming buttons. All programming is done by the utility with an auxiliary programmer (shown) that can be used to program many user switches.

The basic technique of *user* demand control is simple; electric loads are disconnected and reconnected in such a fashion that demand peaks are leveled off and the load factor is thereby improved. The extent to which a user's electric loads can tolerate this type of switching is an indication of the potential effectiveness of a demand controller. An



Fig. 25.14 *Programmable electronic time control switch designed for time-of-use (off-peak) utility rate schedules. The programming device is separate from the switch and can be used by a utility to program many customer switches. The illustrated unit is arranged for 365-day scheduling, which permits full coordination with utility schedules that vary with the seasons of the year. Typical controlled loads include water heaters, thermal storage units, water and air accumulators, and any other load that either inherently or by design can be delayed for several hours. (Courtesy of Paragon Electric Co., Inc.)*

installation with a large *uninterruptible* load, such as from computers or other productivity equipment, benefits minimally from demand control. Most industrial and commercial installations, however, contain a large percentage of interruptible loads (interruptions may be very short), and demand control systems frequently accomplish a 15% to 20% reduction in electric bills with a resultant short payback period on equipment investment.

The proliferation of demand control equipment has also produced a proliferation of nomenclature, including *load shedding control*, *automated load control*, *peak demand control*, and *programmable load control*. Descriptions that include the term *energy management* refer to devices whose primary function is the control of *energy consumption* and that secondarily are equipped to provide electric demand control.

Demand control devices are intended to control *power*, which is *timed* energy use. Demand control produces energy savings as a secondary benefit. The expression *electric demand control* is used for simplicity in the following sections. Various demand control schemes are discussed in some detail to enable the reader to differentiate them by recognizing their specific characteristics. Much equipment on the market today provides additional functions not directly related to demand control. Thus, a good understanding of the essentials of demand control schemes will greatly assist the prospective user. As with other areas of design, manufacturers' literature usually comprises a lengthy list of equipment abilities, few (if any) shortcomings, and little indication of specific or comparative applicability.

(a) Level 1—Load Scheduling and Duty-Cycle Control

This level is the simplest and most direct approach, and is applicable to all types of facilities. A facility's electric loads are analyzed and scheduled to restrict demand. Accordingly, large loads can be shifted to off-peak hours and controlled to avoid coincident operation. The scheduling can take advantage of special night and weekend utility rates for loads (such as battery charging and transfer pumping) that do not require a specific time of operation. The demand control device used is essentially a programmable time switch (see Chapter 26) applied to a number of circuits or loads. It is not, strictly speaking, a demand controller, in that no real-time measurement is made of the actual continuous electric load. Instead, the control operates on a preset timed duty cycle relying entirely on a prior analysis of the building loads. Typical applications of this device are control of HVAC loads, lighting loads, and process loads in small commercial, institutional, and industrial buildings.

(b) Level 2—Demand Metering Alarm

If, in conjunction with a duty-cycle controller, some type of continuous demand metering is installed that goes into alarm mode when a predetermined demand level is exceeded, a basic load (demand) control system will have been established. The load analysis discussed previously would be structured and used to determine load priorities so that when a preset maximum demand load is exceeded and the alarm sounds, loads can be shed (disconnected) manually in a preestablished order of priority—and subsequently reconnected, also in order of priority. This type of control is practical only for a moderate-size installation, inasmuch as the load-switching activity is manual.

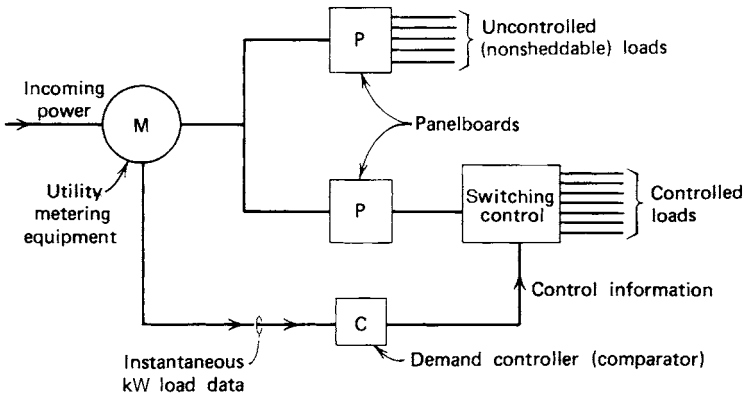


Fig. 25.15 *Block diagram of a system for automatic electric power demand control. The demand controller receives instantaneous load data from the metering equipment, compares them to preset limits, and disconnects and reconnects controllable loads automatically to keep kW demand (load) within these limits.*

(c) Level 3—Automatic Instantaneous Demand Control

This type of control (also called *rate control*) is, in effect, an automated version of the level 2 system described in the preceding subsection. The control unit accepts instantaneous kilowatt load information from the utility system, compares this information to a preset kilowatt limit, and acts automatically to disconnect and reconnect loads as required. These units *do not* recognize the utility's metering interval but act continuously on the basis of load comparison data. For this reason, these units are also referred to as *load comparator controllers*. Figure 25.15 will help explain the unit's operation.

Typical sheddable loads might include nonessential lighting, some cooling load, domestic hot water heating, snow melting, and the like. Nonsheddable loads (that do not tolerate even short interruption) might include essential lighting, elevators, communications equipment, computers, process control, emergency equipment, and the like. The nonsheddable loads are fed directly from the power line. The sheddable loads are fed through a panel of control relays that respond to on/off instructions from the demand controller. Although the resulting energy use with or without the controller is theoretically the same, in practice energy savings of 15% and more are common.

The principal drawback of this system is that the load shedding is preprogrammed. This results in an inability to readily adapt to varying load patterns resulting from variable production schedules, time schedules, changes in weather, and so on. As a result of this limitation, this system is most useful in applications where operating modes do not change frequently and the facility is not very large. Thus, stores, supermarkets, warehouses, small industrial facilities, and commercial installations are well served with this type of system if they have at least 20% sheddable loads and their connected electric load is at least 150 kilovolt-amperes (kVA).

This level of demand control, as well as levels 4 and 5 described later, is most often supplied as one of many functions of a larger building energy control system. Because this is so, it is necessary to ascertain that the type of demand control to be supplied by the overall building control hardware and software is what the electrical system designer intended.

(d) Level 4—Ideal Curve Control

This control function operates by comparing the actual rate of *energy* usage to an ideal rate and controlling kilowatt demand by adjusting the total *energy* used within a metering interval. The utility company determines the demand over the demand interval by integrating the kilowatt-hour energy consumption over the interval and dividing by the interval time. Thus, the user is actually given a block of energy (kWh) that can be utilized at any desired rate, not necessarily at a constant rate. The desirable rate of energy use is shown as the "ideal curve" on the typical usage curve shown in Fig. 25.16.

Shed points can be programmed independently for each load according to a predetermined priority, and priorities can be readily adjusted and rescheduled. Loads are normally shed only toward the end

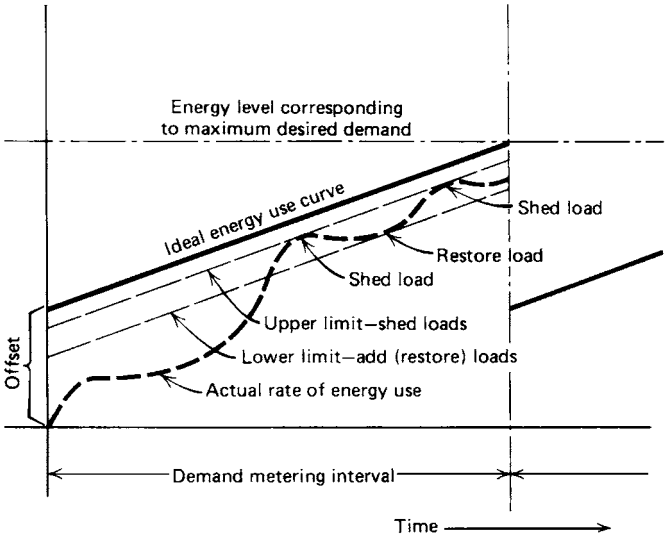


Fig. 25.16 *Graph of the action of an ideal rate controller. Note that toward the latter part of the period the pattern has been established, and the actual rate of energy use corresponds closely to the ideal. This type of control is often simply a part of the software in a large, centralized building control system.*

of an interval—when the permissible energy total for the interval is approached—and all loads are restored at the beginning of the next interval. Thus, during each interval, sheddable loads are off for only a few minutes at most. Controllers operating on the ideal curve principle are considerably more flexible than the kilowatt rate controller described in the level 3 system, and are applicable to facilities of widely divergent load size, but with at least a 300-kW connected load. As with other controllers, the principal savings will be in demand charges, but almost always with considerable savings in energy billings.

(e) Level 5—Forecasting Systems

These systems are by far the most sophisticated, the most expensive, and the most effective. They are best applied to large facilities where the number of loads, load patterns, and complexity of operation preclude the effective use of the preceding systems. Because of the large amount of load data that needs to be processed, these systems are usually installed as part of a computerized central control system. Details of operation are too complex to be described here, but the basic operation can be outlined. These control units operate by continuously forecasting the amount of "unpenalized" energy remaining in the demand interval, based upon kilowatt-hour data received. They then examine the status and priority of each of the connected loads and decide on a course of action. Loads that in other systems are classified as nonsheddable are, in this system, controlled because of the accuracy and rapidity of the control function. A pneumatic compressor, for instance, that supplies process air might, in lower-level control systems, be classified as noncontrollable, despite the fact that it has long off periods. With computer control, such a load would be classified as "delayable" or "inhibited" because a 30-second or 1-minute delay in activation after the pressure switch closes its contact is normally acceptable.

The advantage of these systems is that, if programmed properly, they can make small, accurate load changes throughout an interval, resulting in minimum load cycling and maximum efficiency.

25.15 ELECTRICAL MEASUREMENTS

The preceding sections have explained the fundamental electric quantities of voltage and current and defined the units involved as volts and amperes, respectively. As is true of all physical quantities used in practical applications, a need exists for a simple means of measuring these quantities. This need was initially met by the development of the meter movement illustrated in Fig. 25.17.

Everyone at one time or another has felt the repulsion between like poles of two magnets held close together and, conversely, the attraction between opposite poles. This principle was

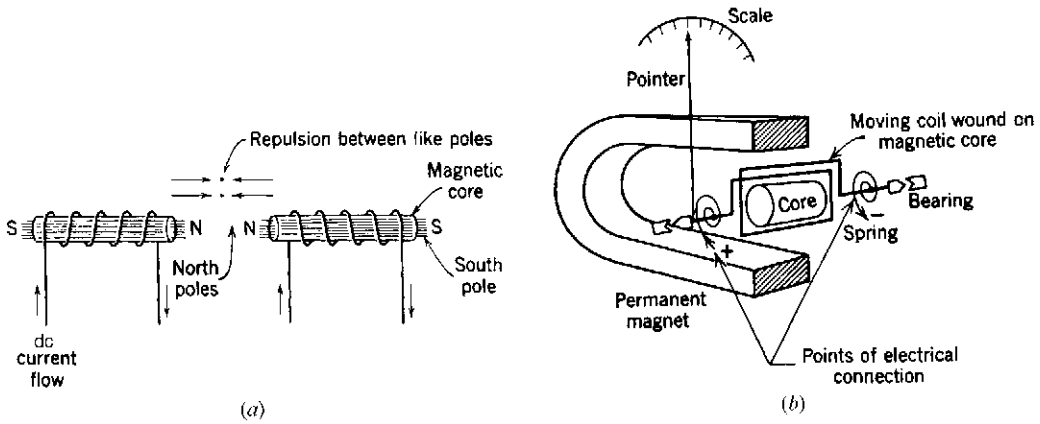


Fig. 25.17 *(a) Diagram showing the basic electromagnetic principle and interaction between electromagnets. Any iron core becomes an electromagnet when current flows in a coil wound around it, as shown. (b) The principle of the electromagnet is used in this basic meter movement. Current flowing in the movable coil forms an electromagnet whose field interacts (see a) with the permanent magnet's field, causing a deflection proportional to the current flow. (Courtesy of Wechsler, a division of Hughes Corp.)*

used in the first basic meter movement: causing a deflection of the pointer as a result of the repulsion between the field of a permanent magnet and an electromagnet. The electromagnet is formed when current flows in the coil, and its strength is proportional to the amount of current. Thus, a strong current causes a larger deflection of the needle and therefore a higher reading on the dial. A spring (see Fig. 25.17*b*) provides restraining torque on the pointer. To make this very sensitive unit usable for large currents (it is intrinsically a micro-ammeter, sensitive to millionths of an ampere), the device simply diverts, or *shunts* away, most of the current, allowing only a few microamperes to actually flow in the meter coil.

To use the same device as a voltmeter, a large resistance called a *multiplier* is placed in series with the meter, thereby again limiting the current flow to a few microamperes. The meter scale is then calibrated in volts. All dc meters are made in this fashion. Most ac meters operate on basically the same principle, except that instead of a permanent magnet, an electromagnet is used. Thus, when the polarity reverses, the deflecting force retains the same direction. A dc meter connected to an ac circuit simply will not read because inertia prevents the needle from bouncing up and down 60 times a second.

The meters just described are conventional analog devices that read electrical values in proportion to mechanical forces exerted within the device—that is, by analogy. Modern electronics has produced a line of solid-state electrical meters (Fig. 25.18) that display the measured electrical values in analog mode (needle on a dial), digital mode, or both. They operate in a number of ways, all of which are different from that described previously and are beyond the scope of this book.

The fact that a meter reads digitally does not necessarily mean that it is highly accurate. Accuracy depends upon the quality of the internal circuitry. Digital meters are easier to read than analog meters because no visual interpretation or interpolation is involved. This advantage, plus the constantly declining cost of sophisticated electronics, will undoubtedly lead to solid-state digital meters replacing analog types, except for special applications.

In buildings, the measurement of current and voltage is generally not as important as the measurement of power and energy. To measure power, the fact that power is proportional to the product of the voltage and current in a circuit is employed. Although actual construction is complex, the theory of operation of a conventional coil-type wattmeter is simple. The meter has two coils: a current coil that is similar in connection to an ammeter and a voltage coil that is similar in connection to a voltmeter (Fig. 25.19). By means of the physical coil arrangement, the meter deflection is proportional to the product



Fig. 25.18 *(a) Solid-state clamp-on type meter with digital readout and automatic ranging. The latter feature eliminates the necessity to preselect a meter range and is particularly useful where the magnitude of current or voltage is unknown. The clamp-on feature permits use without wiring into, or otherwise disturbing, the circuit being measured. The meter measures approximately 8 × 3 × 1.5 in. (200 × 75 × 40 mm), weighs less than 1 lb (0.5 kg), and is battery-powered. Scales are 0.1–1000 amp ac, 0.1–1000 V ac, and 0.1–1000 ohms resistance, with ±2% accuracy. (b) Solid-state auto-ranging clamp-on ac meter with analog-type readout. It is similar in design to the meter in (a), but with somewhat larger range scales and additional features such as peak current measurement. (Photos courtesy of TIF Instruments, Inc.)*

of the two and therefore to the circuit power. The meter can be calibrated as desired, depending upon the size of the shunts and multipliers.

To measure energy, the factor of time must be introduced because

$$\text{energy} = \text{power} \times \text{time}$$

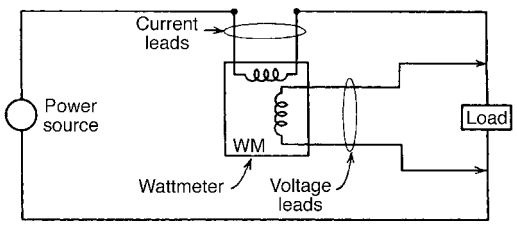


Fig. 25.19 *Schematic arrangement of wattmeter connections. Note that the current coil is in series with the circuit load, whereas the voltage leads are in parallel.*

Direct current energy meters are available but are not of general interest because of the rarity of dc power. Alternating current watt-hour meters are basically small motors, whose speed is proportional to the power being used. The number of rotations is counted on the dials, which are calibrated directly in kilowatt-hours. A diagram of the basic construction of an ac kilowatt-hour meter is shown in Fig. 25.20. As can be seen, kilowatt-hour energy consumption and maximum interval kilowatt demand can be read directly from the dials. If the numbers involved are too large (because of calibration), a multiplying factor is required to arrive at the proper kilowatt-hour consumption. This number is written directly on the meter nameplate, and the meter reading is multiplied by it to get the actual kilowatt-hours. Several types of solid-state multifunction and energy meters are shown in Figs. 25.21, 25.22, and 25.23.

Continuous monitoring of the electrical characteristics of an entire distribution system, or of a portion fed from a specific switchboard, can be readily accomplished by use of the solid-state device shown in Fig. 25.24. This programmable analyzer can be arranged to measure power usage, perform power quality and harmonic analyses (and the like), and display the results locally and remotely.

Because manual reading of kilowatt-hour meters of individual consumers is a labor-intensive task—even without the routine job difficulties such as inaccessible meters, unfriendly dogs, inclement weather, and so on—utilities have long sought a more cost-effective means of determining consumer energy usage. To this end, with the benefit of modern microelectronics, a number of interesting, labor-saving kilowatt-hour meters have been developed. One type is equipped with a programmable electro-optical automatic meter reading system that can be activated locally or from a remote location. The meter data are transmitted electrically to a data-processing center, where they may be used by the utility to prepare subscribers' bills; prepare customer load profiles; and study, in combination with other data, area load patterns, equipment loadings, and so on. The customer can use instantaneous data to control loads, as explained in the preceding section.

Another meter type is equipped with a miniature radio transmitter that can be remotely

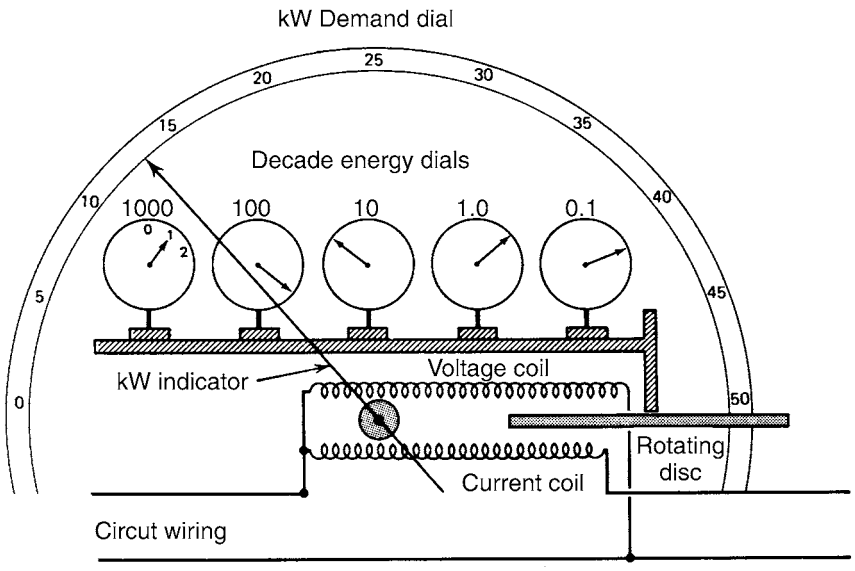


Fig. 25.20 *Typical induction-type kilowatt-hour meter with kilowatt demand dial. Dials register total disc revolutions, which are proportional to energy. Disc rotational speed is proportional to power. Note that the current coil is in series with the load and that the voltage coil is in parallel.*

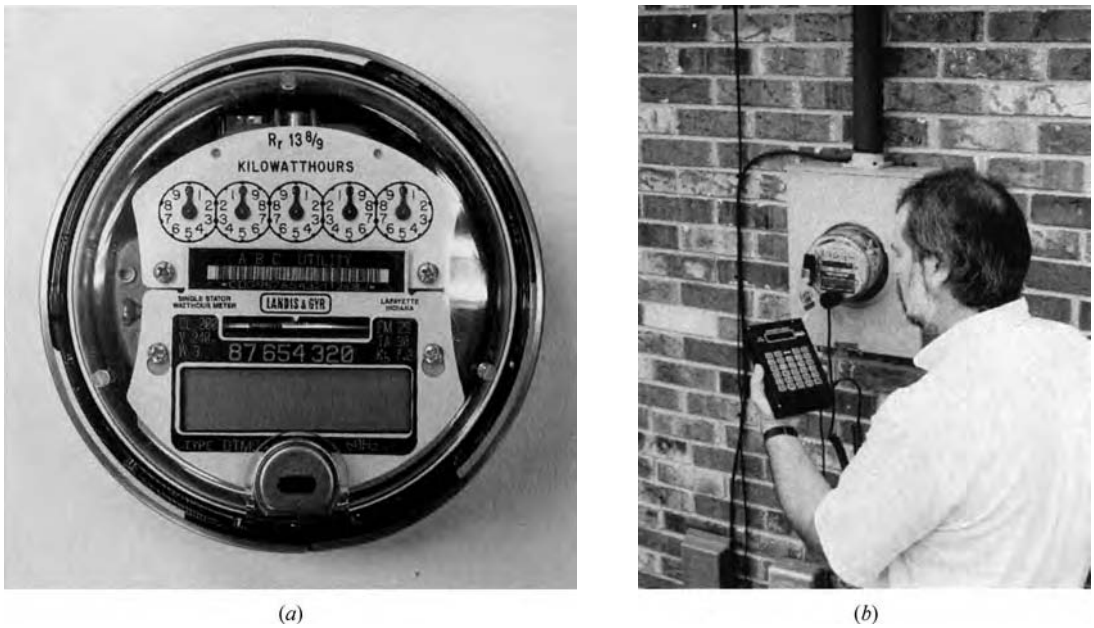


Fig. 25.21 *(a) A modern multifunction solid-state kWh meter. This single-phase meter includes a mechanical register similar to that shown in Fig. 25.20 plus a large liquid crystal display. It can be arranged to provide either time-of-use billing or demand/time-of-use billing in addition to its energy measurement function. It can also be configured to provide load control, demand threshold alert, end-of-interval alert, and load profile recording. (b) Field programming of the meter shown in (a) is accomplished with a hand-held programming device. (Photos courtesy of Landis and Gyr.)*



Fig. 25.22 *Digital power factor meter, which measures the power factor on single- and 3-phase circuits. In addition, the meter can measure 0–600 V ac and 0–2000 A ac. Connections to the circuits being measured are made with the clamp-on probes shown. A similar unit is available that measures power in both sinusoidal and nonsinusoidal waveforms in the range 0.1 W through 2000 kW. (Courtesy of AEMC Corporation.)*

activated to transmit the current kilowatt-hour reading. The meter reader moves along a street and remotely activates a meter by entering a customer code into a digital pad. A special receiver not only receives the transmitted kilowatt-hour data but encodes and records the data automatically. These and other new kilowatt-hour meters are obviously much more costly than the traditional units, but they are gradually being introduced because of large reductions in labor costs and increases in the quantity and quality of data made available. In this regard, programmable meters are currently being aggressively deployed among residential customers in some areas to allow utility company control of demand (with the agreement of the consumer—usually resulting from a more favorable rate structure).



Fig. 25.23 *This portable, programmable power analyzer unit measures approximately 13 × 7 × 12 in. (330 × 180 × 305 mm) and weighs 6 lb (2.7 kg). It is capable of measuring (and computing) 19 electrical parameters, among which are current, voltage, energy, power, power factor, and frequency, and of providing both an instantaneous digital readout and printed records (hard copy). Connections permit all functions to be addressed by remote control. (Courtesy of AEMC Corporation.)*



Fig. 25.24 *Power system analysis unit designed to be mounted permanently into a system switchboard (see Chapter 26). This programmable unit can meter circuit parameters, measure energy and power use, analyze power quality (including harmonic analysis), and log events. (Photo courtesy of Cutler-Hammer.)*

CHAPTER 26

Electrical Systems and Materials: Service and Utilization

THE FIRST STEP IN DEVELOPING AN understanding of building electrical systems is to examine the means by which electric service is brought into a facility.

26.1 ELECTRIC SERVICE

The codes and standards that apply to electric service include:

1. *National Electrical Code* © National Fire Protection Association; in particular, Section 230.
2. *National Electrical Safety Code*, published by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), www.ieee.org/. This code is recognized by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI). It deals with clearances for overhead lines, grounding methods, underground construction, and related matters.
3. Standards of the utility supplying electric service.

Public utility franchises require only that service be made available at the private property line. Thus, service is normally connected to the utility lines at a mutually agreeable point at or beyond the property line. The service tap may be a connection on a pole with an *overhead service drop* or an *underground service lateral* to the building, or a connection to an underground utility line with a service lateral to the building. Electrical construction work on private property is usually at the owner's expense.

Under certain conditions, the owner can influence the type of service connection utilized by the electric utility company in conveying electric service to a site. This is often the case in large tract developments and in places where owners are willing to share some of the cost of better-grade construction. Also, in many areas, the utilities themselves have instituted "beautification" programs in an effort to decrease the objectionable appearance of much of their equipment.

Service from a utility line to a building may be run overhead or underground, depending upon the following factors:

- Length of the service run
- Type of terrain
- Customer participation in the cost of service installation
- Service voltage
- Size and nature of the electric load
- Importance of appearance
- Local practices and ordinances
- Maintenance and service reliability
- Weather conditions
- Type of interbuilding distribution, if applicable

26.2 OVERHEAD SERVICE

The principal advantage (to the utility) of overhead electric lines is low cost. Depending upon terrain and other factors, the cost saving of overhead compared to underground installation has historically ranged from 10% to 50% (the latter when compared to direct burial cable installation). This accounts for the majority of installations being overhead. In recent years, special techniques in underground installation have lowered that cost, making it a reasonable economic alternative when its advantages are considered.

Where the length of the service run is several hundred feet (meters) or more, voltages higher than the facility's utilization level may be involved. This weighs heavily in favor of overhead lines, particularly with voltages exceeding 5000 V. Similarly, when terrain is rocky and the electrical load is heavy, the cost of underground installation rises sharply. Because overhead lines are easily maintained and repaired and faults easily located, service continuity with overhead lines is generally acceptable. In areas with severe weather conditions, called *heavy loading areas*, where combinations of snow, wind, and ice increase the possibility of outages on overhead lines, underground service is preferable. This is particularly true when even short service outages cause hardship or financial loss. Reliability of overhead service can be improved markedly by taking service from two separate, and preferably separated, overhead lines. A final decision on the type and location of electrical service will be made after meetings among the building's architect, the electrical engineer, and the electric utility's technical personnel.

Overhead cables are of several types: bare, weatherproof, or preassembled aerial cable. Bare copper cables supported on porcelain or glass insulators on crossarms are normally used for high-voltage lines (2.4 kV and higher). Low-voltage circuits (600 V and below) are generally run on porcelain spool secondary racks using single-conductor (1/c) weatherproof cable. Preassembled aerial cable consists of three or four insulated cables wrapped together with a metallic tape and suspended by hooks from poles. This type of construction may be used for voltages of up to 15 kV (Fig. 26.1), and often proves to be more economical than crossarm or rack installation and more resistant to damage from severe weather conditions.

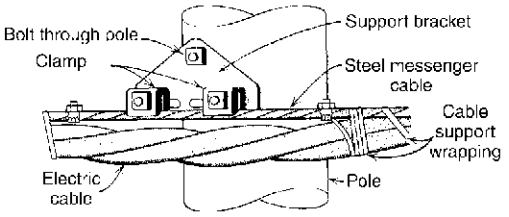


Fig. 26.1 *Preassembled aerial messenger cables are carried by steel cables clamped to poles.*

A typical detail of an overhead electric service entrance to a multiresidence building is shown in Fig. 26.2.

26.3 UNDERGROUND SERVICE

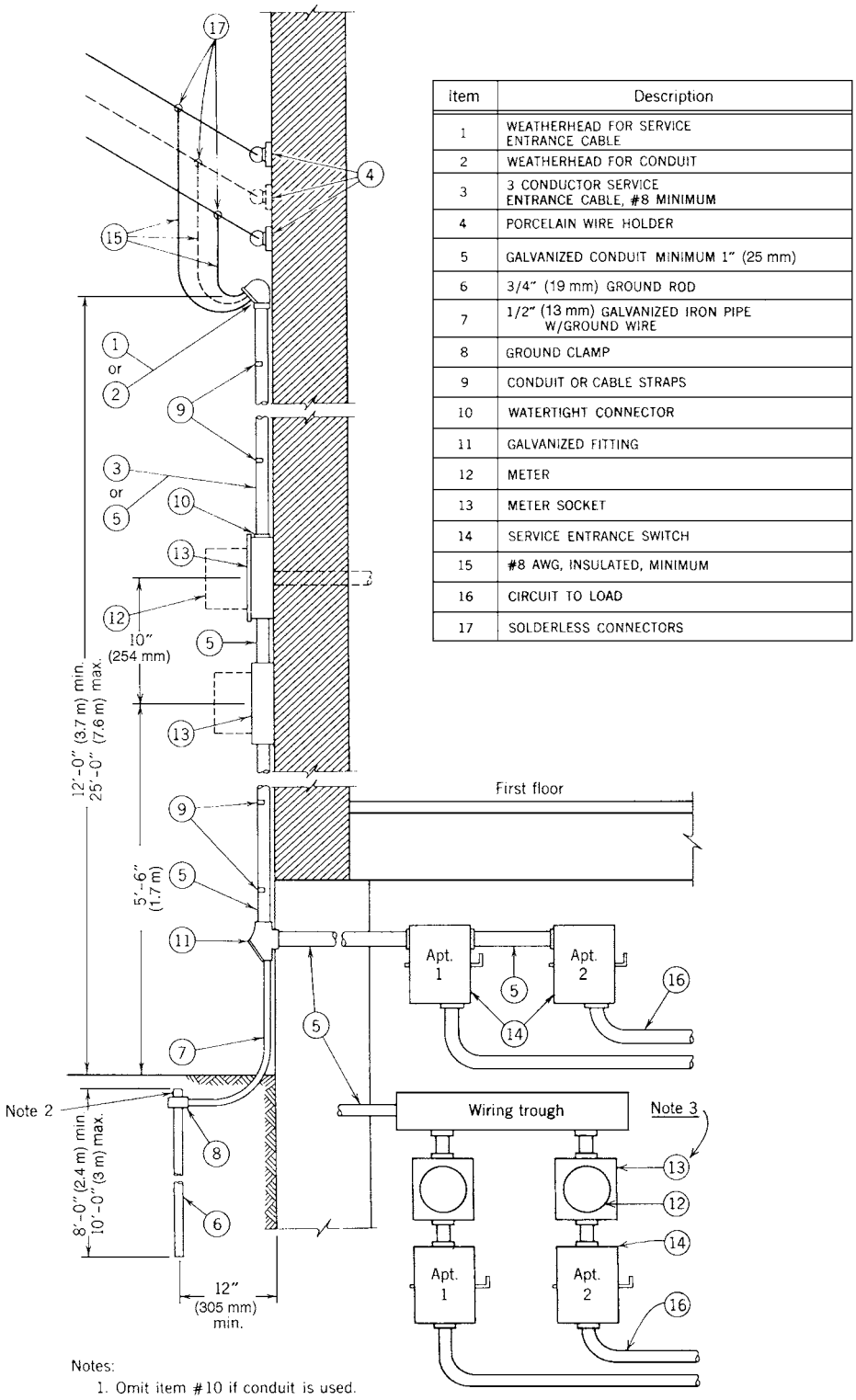
The advantages of underground electric service are attractiveness (lack of physical and visual clutter overhead), service reliability, and long life. The principal disadvantage is high cost. To overcome this, utilities frequently use direct burial techniques that, by eliminating a raceway, reduce costs considerably. Because direct buried cable cannot be pulled out if it faults, as is the case with raceway-installed cable, restoration of service after a cable fault is time-consuming. It is recommended that the decision on which technique will be used be based upon the consideration of these factors:

- The cost premium for underground raceway installation, including handholes if required (see Section 26.4)
- The history of outages for direct burial installation by this installer, in the immediate area
- Cost and availability of repair service (utilities frequently will repair customer-owned underground service laterals *for a fee*)
- Impact of electric service outage in terms of time delays, inconvenience, necessity of digging up lawns and paved areas, and cost impact in the case of a commercial facility

26.4 UNDERGROUND WIRING

The methods available for underground wiring are:

- Direct burial (Fig. 26.3)
- Installation in Type I, concrete-encased duct (Fig. 26.4*a*)
- Installation in Type II, direct burial duct (Fig. 26.4*b*).



Item	Description
1	WEATHERHEAD FOR SERVICE ENTRANCE CABLE
2	WEATHERHEAD FOR CONDUIT
3	3 CONDUCTOR SERVICE ENTRANCE CABLE, #8 MINIMUM
4	PORCELAIN WIRE HOLDER
5	GALVANIZED CONDUIT MINIMUM 1″ (25 mm)
6	3/4″ (19 mm) GROUND ROD
7	1/2″ (13 mm) GALVANIZED IRON PIPE W/GROUND WIRE
8	GROUND CLAMP
9	CONDUIT OR CABLE STRAPS
10	WATERTIGHT CONNECTOR
11	GALVANIZED FITTING
12	METER
13	METER SOCKET
14	SERVICE ENTRANCE SWITCH
15	#8 AWG, INSULATED, MINIMUM
16	CIRCUIT TO LOAD
17	SOLDERLESS CONNECTORS

Notes:
1. Omit item #10 if conduit is used.
2. Cold water pipe ground may be used in lieu of ground rod.
3. Meters may alternatively be placed inside the building.

Fig. 26.2 *Detail of typical overhead electric service to a four-family residence. Note that meters in small residential buildings are frequently placed on the exterior of the building. Alternatively, they can be installed inside, provided that ready access is available or some type of remote meter-reading system is installed.*

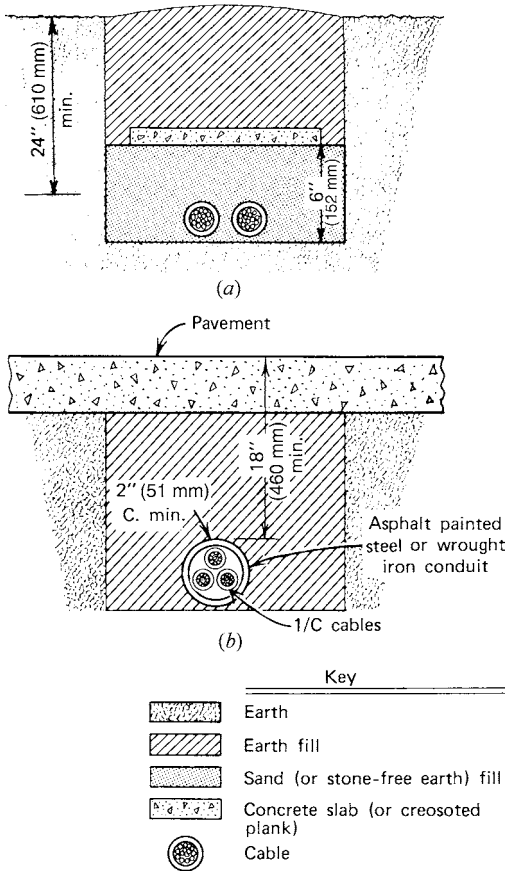


Fig. 26.3 *(a) Technique for installation of direct-burial cable. (b) Under highways, streets, and other high-load areas, cable should be installed in metal conduit.*

The first alternative offers low cost and ease of installation, with the disadvantage regarding repairs stated previously. The second offers high strength and permanence, but at the highest price of the three. The last offers median cost but little strength. It is applicable only for installations on undisturbed earth and/or under light paving.

Nonmetallic duct (conduit) intended for underground electrical use is commercially available in two wall thicknesses. NEMA (National Electrical Manufacturers Association) Type II with a heavy wall provides the physical protection required for direct burial installation with no concrete encasement. Type I is manufactured with a thinner wall and is intended for encasement in a minimum of 2 in. (50 mm) of concrete. Common trade names for

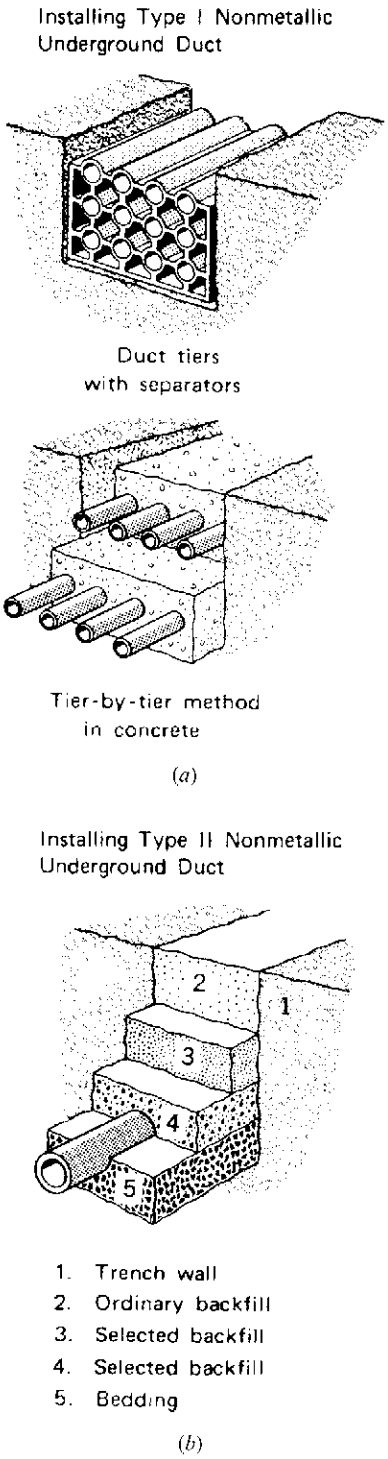


Fig. 26.4 *Underground duct installation. (a) The concrete duct bank should have at least 6 in. (150 mm) of earth cover. (b) Heavy-wall duct should be buried at least 24 in. (600 mm) in ordinary traffic areas and 36 in. (900 mm) in areas subject to heavy traffic. Each layer is about 8 in. (200 mm) thick.*

asbestos-cement and fiber ducts are Transite and Orangeburg. Plastic conduit is referred to as *PVC* or simply as *plastic*.

Nonmetallic conduit is most frequently used without concrete encasement for low-voltage and signal wiring and with encasement for high-voltage wiring. It offers several advantages over steel conduit for underground work, such as lower cost and freedom from corrosion.

When underground electric wiring is duct-installed and the run extends over several hundred feet (meters) (the exact distance depending upon the pulling tension), a pulling handhole or manhole is necessary. Handholes are used for low-voltage power and signal cables and for runs with a small number of cables. Manholes are used for high-voltage cables and where large duct banks must be accommodated. Precast handholes and manholes are readily available in many standard sizes and are usually cheaper than field-formed and poured units.

Cable used in underground wiring must be specially manufactured and approved for that purpose. Type SE is the basic service entrance cable, constructed with a moisture- and flame-resistant covering. When it is provided with moistureproofing for underground use, the designation is SE type U, or simply USE. Underground cable for other than service runs is classified as type UF (underground feeder).

26.5 SERVICE EQUIPMENT

Referring to Fig. 27.1, note that a block labeled "transformer" is interposed between the high-voltage incoming utility lines and the secondary service conductors. This equipment item is required whenever the building utilization voltage is different from the service voltage. A transformer may be pole- or pad-mounted outside the building or installed in a room or vault inside the building, as discussed later.

26.6 TRANSFORMERS

A transformer is a device that changes or *transforms* alternating current (ac) of one voltage to alternating current of another voltage. Transformers used in building work consist essentially of an iron core on which are wound at least two coils: a primary (coil) winding and a secondary (coil) winding. A voltage impressed on the primary winding induces (through the iron core) a voltage in the secondary winding in proportion to the ratio of turns in the two coils. Thus, a *step-down* transformer has a larger number of turns in its primary winding than in its secondary winding, and a *step-up* transformer has the reverse. In theory, transformers are reversible, although in practice they are rarely used that way. Transformers cannot be used on dc.

A transformer typically is used to step down an incoming 4160-V service to 480-V for distribution within a building. Another transformer is then used to step down the 480 V to 120 V for use on receptacle circuits. Ordinarily, 120, 208, 240, 277, and 480 V are called *low* or *secondary voltages*, and 2400, 4160, 7200, 12,470, and 13,200 V are *high* or *primary voltages*.

Transformers are available in single-phase or three-phase construction. Transformer power capacity is rated in kilovolt-amperes (kVA). For a single-phase unit, this figure is the product of the full load current and the voltage. Because the voltages on the primary and secondary are different, so are the primary and secondary currents—because the kVA remains constant.

For example, a single-phase 100-kVA, 2400/120-V transformer will carry at full load:

$$\text{primary current} = \frac{100{,}000\ \text{VA}}{2400\ \text{V}} = 41.6\ \text{A}$$

$$\text{secondary current} = \frac{100{,}000\ \text{VA}}{120\ \text{V}} = 832\ \text{A}$$

That is, the ratio of primary to secondary current is exactly the reverse of the ratio of primary to secondary voltage, because their product, which is the transformer's kVA rating, remains constant. Expressed in an equation,

$$\text{primary current} \times \text{primary voltage} = \text{secondary current} \times \text{secondary voltage}$$

or

$$V_p I_p = V_S I_S \qquad (26.1)$$

where

V_p is the primary voltage
I_p is the primary current
V_S is the secondary voltage
I_S is the secondary current

Heat is generated by the passage of current through the transformer coils due to the winding cable resistance. This heat is transferred to the unit's *cooling medium*, where it is radiated or otherwise disposed of. The unit's cooling medium is a property of major importance. Transformers are either dry (air-cooled) or liquid-filled. The choice depends upon the required electrical characteristics, the proposed physical location of the transformer, and costs. Although detailed considerations are beyond the scope of this book, some selection criteria are presented in the following sections. In general, units rated above 5 kV are liquid-filled and units in the 600-V class are dry. Units installed indoors, except in vaults, are normally of the dry type, and are intended for general-purpose lighting and power circuits (Table 26.1). *Load center* transformers are installed in unit substations, both indoor and outdoor. *Distribution* transformers are mounted on a pole or on a concrete pad outdoors. *Substation* transformers are large and are always concrete-pad-mounted.

The *insulation class* of a transformer affects its permissible temperature rise and operating temperature, and, as a direct result, its physical size, electrical power losses, overload capacity, and life.

The physical size of a transformer of a given kVA rating and voltage depends upon the type of insulation used. In order of decreasing physical size and increasing operating temperature, we have, for dry transformers, 105, 150, 185, and 220°C (221, 302, 365, and 428°F) systems that represent organic, inorganic (two types), and silicone insulating materials, respectively (Table 26.2).

Dimensional data for transformers vary considerably from one manufacturer to another. Therefore, Table 26.3 is useful only for a concept of bulk volume and weight.

Although 220°C (428°F) system insulation transformers can withstand a 150°C (270°F) rise (see Table 26.2), some users specify 220°C (428°F) system insulation with a 115°C (207°F) rise or even an 80°C (144°F) rise; that is, a better grade of insulation is used with an *underrated* transformer. There are four advantages to this design decision:

- Longer life
- Higher overload capacity
- Lower operating cost
- Increased capability to withstand the heating effects of harmonics commonly found in commercial and industrial electrical systems (see Section 28.18)

A 220°C (428°F) system transformer operated at full load *continuously* (an unusual situation) has a short life—estimated on the basis of accelerated aging tests to be between 3 and 10 years. The same class insulation transformer (220°C [428°F] system) rated at 80°C (144°F) has a life expectancy of more than 100 years. With respect to operating cost, the same issues apply here as with the selection of high-temperature insulation discussed in Section 27.8 and summarized in Table 27.2. The adage that you get what you pay for can be expressed here as follows: In return for a smaller, lighter, cheaper, and hotter transformer (220°C [428°F] system), there will be higher losses, and therefore a higher operating cost and a shorter life.

TABLE 26.1 Typical Transformer Data

Transformer Type (Application)	Maximum Capacity[a] (kVA)	Insulating (Cooling) Medium	*Voltage Range*	
			Primary	Secondary
General-purpose, dry type	1000	Air	120–600 V	120–600 V
Load center pad-mounted unit substation	3000	Air	2.5–15 kV	120–600 V
Load center pad-mounted unit substation	5000	Oil	2.5–34.5 kV	120–4800 V
		Silicone Fluid[b]		
		Epoxy/resin[c]		
Distribution system	10,000	Oil	2.5–67 kV	120–4800 V
		Silicone		

[a]Three-phase bank.

[b]High-fire-point paraffinic hydrocarbon fluid, manufactured expressly as a transformer dielectric-coolant.

[c]Solid dielectrics used for special installation, such as in high-hazard areas.

TABLE 26.2 Air-Cooled Transformer Electrical Insulation Temperature Ratings (Based on 40°C Ambient)

Insulation Class System[a]	Insulation Type	Average Conductor Temperature Rise	Ambient Temperature	Hot-Spot Temperature Gradient	Total Maximum Temperature
105°C	Organic (A)	55°C	40°C	10°C	105°C
150°C	Mica, glass, resins (B)	80°C	40°C	30°C	150°C
185°C	Asbestos (F)	115°C	40°C	30°C	185°C
220°C	Silicones (H)	150°C	40°C	30°C	220°C

[a]Modern terminology for insulation class uses *system* in lieu of *class*.

Note: Ratings are expressed in °C. Equivalent I-P values are: (a) for temperatures—40 (104°F) 105 (221), 150 (302), 185 (365), 220 (428); (b) for temperature increments—10 (18F°), 30 (54), 55 (99), 80 (144), 115 (207), 150 (270).

It is good practice in buildings with a total transformer capacity in excess of 300 kVA to complete a calculation comparing the operating costs of various types of transformers in order to balance energy costs with necessary operating flexibility, reliability, and safety.

Such a calculation was performed assuming a daily/weekly operating cycle and loading that is representative of commercial use. The two transformers studied were of the dry type, rated 750 kVA, one designed for an 80°C (144°F) rise and the second for a 150°C (270°F) temperature rise. At an energy cost of 7 cents per kWh, the lower energy waste of the more expensive 80°C (144°F) unit repays the first-cost differential in about 4 years. A higher electric energy cost reduces the payback time, and vice versa. Beyond the payback period, the advantage is entirely on the side of the 80°C (144°F) unit. Using a 30-year life, 8% fixed capital cost, and 3% annual cost escalation, the life-cycle cost of the 80°C (144°F) unit is $10,000 less than that of the 150°C (270°F) unit. (At the assumed loading, even the 150°C [270°F] unit will probably last 30 years, the 80°C [144°F] unit much longer.)

Furthermore, with a total permissible hot-spot temperature of 220°C (428°F), the location of the 150°C (270°F) rise unit must be very carefully chosen because it can create a serious heat generation and radiation problem.

To summarize, a transformer is specified by type, phase, voltages, kVA rating, sound power level, and insulation class. Thus, a 112.5-kVA, three-phase, 480/120 to 208-V, air-cooled, indoor, dry-type transformer with 220°C (428°F) insulation

TABLE 26.3 Typical Dry-Type Transformer: Dimensions and Weights[a]

kVA Output Continuous	Temp Rise °C	Approximate Dimensions in. (mm) H × W × D	Approx Weight lb (kg)
		PRIMARY: 480 V SECONDARY: 120/240 V	
		Single-phase	
3	115	13 × 8 × 8 (330 × 203 × 203)	60 (27)
5	115	14 × 12 × 12 (356 × 305 × 305)	120 (54)
10	115	15 × 12 × 12 (381 × 305 × 305)	150 (68)
15	150	24 × 16 × 16 (610 × 406 × 406)	200 (91)
25	150	24 × 16 × 16 (610 × 406 × 406)	230 (104)
50	150	30 × 20 × 20 (762 × 508 × 508)	430 (195)
100	150	40 × 24 × 24 (1016 × 610 × 610)	650 (295)
		PRIMARY: 480 V SECONDARY: 208Y/120 V	
		Three-phase	
45	150	26 × 26 × 15 (660 × 660 × 381)	380 (172)
75	150	30 × 30 × 20 (762 × 762 × 508)	600 (272)
150	150	40 × 36 × 26 (1016 × 914 × 660)	1100 (499)
225	150	44 × 36 × 26 (1118 × 914 × 660)	1400 (635)

[a]Dimensions and weights vary among manufacturers. All figures increase with higher primary voltage and with lower temperature rise.

Note: 115C° rise = 207F°; 150C° = 270F°.

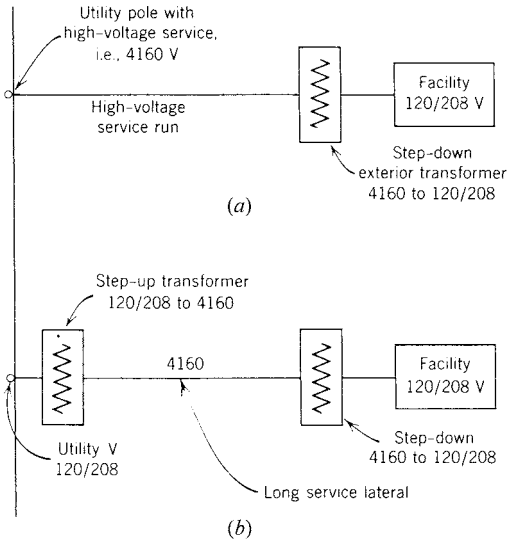


Fig. 26.5 *Service transformer arrangements. (a) High-voltage service with a step-down service transformer at the facility and (b) low-voltage service, with transformation at both ends of a long service run.*

system and 115°C (207°F) rise, 45 dB (decibel) maximum sound level, represents an adequate transformer description. Sound ratings of transformers, as well as installation techniques and acoustical treatment, are discussed in Part IV.

A service transformer bank is necessary when the facility utilization voltage is different from the utility voltage (Fig. 26.5*a*). A building design may call for a step-up, step-down arrangement when the service run is so long that the conductor cost, when run at a low voltage, would be excessive because of large cables. In such instances, the cost of the double transformer installation must be more than offset by the savings in feeder cost to be economically justifiable (Fig. 26.5*b*). More commonly, step-down transformers are the norm.

26.7 TRANSFORMERS OUTDOORS

The advantages of an outdoor transformer installation are:

- No enclosed building space required
- Reduced probability of a noise problem within the building
- Lower first cost
- Ease of maintenance and replacement
- No interior heat production
- Opportunity to use low-cost, long-life, oil-filled units

Although an exterior installation comes with pluses, it is frequently easier to find space indoors (preferably in a basement) than to find a suitable exterior location. Noise may be more disturbing



Fig. 26.6 *(a) Pad-mounted exterior transformers are neat, compact, and, if sited properly, unobtrusive. Large units can be partially screened by shrubbery. (b) When the size is such that visual screening becomes a problem, consideration should be given to a structural screen such as a decorative brick wall. (Courtesy of General Electric, U.S.A.)*

in the context of some available exterior spaces, such as courtyards, than with a basement location. Costs can be high if long secondary voltage runs are required; heat can often be handled by louvers or areaways adjoining a basement, or even used beneficially if the transformer load is fairly constant. Because exposure to direct sunlight decreases a transformer's rating by increasing its temperature, a shaded exterior location is preferable, but may be difficult to find. Furthermore, an exterior transformer, other than pole-mounted, is a questionable choice in an area with a high incidence of vandalism, regardless of the sturdiness of construction.

Finally, the appearance of an exterior unit may be objectionable. This point has received much attention from manufacturers, and numerous designs have been developed that minimize aesthetic concerns (Fig. 26.6). The most popular type of exterior transformer installation is the pad mount. It has all of the advantages listed previously in addition to extreme simplicity of installation—it is set on a simple concrete pad. Consult manufacturers' catalogs for dimensional data.

26.8 TRANSFORMERS INDOORS: HEAT LOSS

When an indoor transformer installation is indicated, special consideration must be given to the transformer's heat-generating properties. Between 1% and 1½% of a transformer's load rating, depending upon the type, is converted to heat at full load. For a 750-kVA, dry-type, 150°C- (270°F-) rise unit, 12 kW, or 41,000 Btu/h, of heat loss is generated at full load! Losses are lower for 80°C- (144°F-) rise units. Liquid-filled units have approximately the same losses as 80°C- (144°F-) rise dry units. Unless the heat can be used, sufficient ventilation—either natural or forced—must usually be provided to keep the transformer room's ambient temperature from exceeding 40°C (104°F).

Ventilation by natural convection is most desirable, requiring the transformer room be located on an exterior wall (adjacent to an areaway if the room is located below grade). The required size (the *free* area) for a ventilation opening is 3 in.^{2}/kVA (1935 mm^2/kVA) of capacity, plus an additional 1 in.^{2}/kVA (645 mm^2/kVA) for switchgear heat losses, if any. If a louver is used to protect the ventilation opening, the size of the opening must usually be doubled (total: 8 in.^{2}/kVA [5160 mm^2/kVA]) because most louvers have a 50% free area. For good convection, it is desirable to divide the opening areas in half, placing one-half near the ceiling and the remaining half near the floor. To provide for future equipment removal, if an areaway in a basement installation is large enough, it may be useful to increase the overall opening area and make the louver removable for access. A bird screen is also desirable.

Because outside air temperature varies, it is advisable to use a temperature-controlled, adjustable louver. In extremely cold climates, heat loss from the electrical equipment may not be sufficient to warm the room in winter. In such instances, a unit heater should be installed in the room with a thermostat set at 55°F (13°C).

26.9 TRANSFORMERS INDOORS: SELECTION

When transformers are installed indoors, they are subject to stringent *National Electrical Code* (*NEC*) regulations that are designed to make the installations intrinsically safe. These regulations are detailed in *NEC* Article 450. The essential considerations are presented herein.

(a) Oil-Insulated Transformers

These present a fire hazard when installed indoors because flammable oil can spread from a tank leak or rupture. To prevent this, most oil-filled transformers must be installed in a fire-resistant vault, the construction of which involves substantial cost. (See *NEC* Article 450 for exceptions.) Advantages offsetting this cost are an oil-filled transformer's small size, low first cost, low losses, long life, excellent electrical characteristics, low noise level, and high overload capacity. Despite these, the vault requirement typically restricts oil-filled units to industrial facilities and other structures where electrical considerations favor their use.

(b) "Less-Flammable" Liquid-Insulated Transformers

Transformers rated 35 kV or less that are insulated with a liquid whose fire point is not less than 300°C

(572°F) ("less-flammable" liquid) may be installed indoors without a vault. A liquid confinement area is required, plus either a fire-extinguishing system or restrictions on the combustibility of the building's contents. The insulating liquids used are special types of silicones and hydrocarbons, and the transformer installation must meet all requirements for the specific liquid involved. Selection of these units achieves the electrical and physical advantages of oil-insulated units without the cost of vault construction and installation. The first cost of the units depends upon the fluid type and the specific electrical characteristics required. In general, they are somewhat less expensive than nonflammable fluid-insulated units with similar electrical ratings.

(c) Nonflammable Fluid-Filled Transformers

Certain nonflammable liquid coolants, called *askarels*, generally containing polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), were once very widely used. However, since 1979, use of PCB coolants in new equipment has been banned by federal regulation due to their negative ecological impact, and existing units are gradually being phased out. Newer nonflammable fluid coolants have increased the price of these transformers considerably (Table 26.4). Such units, nevertheless, have most of the advantages of oil-filled units and do *not* require a vault unless the voltage is very high. They do, however, require a sump or catch basin of sufficient capacity for all of the contained liquid. This and the high first cost are the negative aspects of this design.

(d) Dry-Type Transformers

These are the transformers of choice in the majority of indoor installations, despite having shorter life, higher losses, higher noise level, greater weight, and larger size than liquid-filled units. The principal advantages are simplicity of installation and almost unrestricted choice of location. As explained previously, using an underrated transformer (220°C [428°F] system, 80°C [144°F] rise), can reduce losses (heat) and extend life. Also, for a price premium, the noise level can be reduced.

Table 26.4 gives a comparison of the installed costs for the four classes of transformers discussed in this section.

26.10 TRANSFORMER VAULTS

A transformer vault is basically a fire-rated enclosure provided because of the possibility of fire caused by rupture of an oil-filled transformer case. This should not, however, be construed as implying that transformers are hazardous or delicate devices prone to faults. On the contrary, transformers are extremely tough, sturdy, long-lived, and capable of sustaining large and prolonged overloads. They are among the most reliable elements of an electrical system. However, faults do occur, and an oil-filled transformer is a potential fire hazard.

Transformer vaults should be located, to the extent possible, where they can be ventilated using the outside air without flues or ducts. The com-

TABLE 26.4 Relative Installation Costs for a 300- to 1000-kVA Transformer

Transformer Type	Temperature Rise[a] °C	Relative Transformer Cost	Construction Cost	Total Relative First Cost
Oil-filled	65	1.00	50–100[b]	1.50–2.00
Less-flammable and nonflammable fluids	65	1.15–1.30	20–40[c]	1.35–1.70
Dry, ventilated	80	1.65	—	1.65
	80	1.50	—	1.50
	150	1.35	—	1.35
	150	1.20	—	1.20

[a]Transformers of equal temperature rise have approximately equal life and equal losses.

[b]Cost of the vault depends on local labor costs and size of the transformer. The relative cost decreases with increasing transformer size.

[c]Cost of catch basin. As in the case of a vault, relative cost depends on labor rates and transformer size.

Note: 65C° rise = 117F°; 80C° rise = 144F°; 150C° rise = 270F°.

bined net area of all ventilating openings (gross area less screens, louvers, etc.) should be as noted in the preceding section: not less than 3 in.^{2}/kVA (1935 mm^2/kVA) of transformer, but in no case less than 1 ft^2 (0.09 m^2). Further ventilation recommendations plus details of enclosure construction materials, fire rating, door and sill details, and other relevant design information are provided by *NEC* Article 450.

26.11 SERVICE EQUIPMENT ARRANGEMENTS AND METERING

Metering must be provided ahead (electrically) of the building's service entrance switch(es). The metering is accomplished either at the utility or the facility voltage, and either at the service point or inside the building. The choice is generally left to the owner, with the understanding that interior meter equipment must be readily accessible to utility personnel. Although in increasingly large numbers of facilities regular meter reading is accomplished remotely, the meter equipment must still be available for utility company inspection and service.

If high-voltage service is purchased, then transformers and all other equipment beyond the service connection will be furnished by the owner. Conversely, if low-voltage service is purchased, all the equipment necessary to provide such low voltage is furnished by the utility. As might be expected, the billing rates for low-voltage service are *higher* than those for high-voltage service in order to compensate the utility for the cost of providing and maintaining the needed step-down transformer and associated equipment. Therefore, it is often advisable for the owner of a large facility to investigate the economics of purchasing power at high voltage. Because many owners are not equipped to maintain high-voltage equipment, arrangements can sometimes be made to pay the utility to provide and maintain transformers while taking the cost advantage of high-voltage service.

For a single-occupant building or a building in which electric energy is included in the rental charge, only a single meter is necessary. Provision for such metering may be provided in the main switchboard, or the meter may be independently mounted. In both cases, the meter is furnished and installed by the utility company. Where submetering is required, such as in apartment houses, banks of meter sockets are installed to accommodate the multiple meters. Federal regulations forbid master metering in new multiple-dwelling constructions because it encourages energy waste (Fig. 26.7). Submetering should be considered in any facility where the energy consumption of specific building systems is of interest to conservation and/or ongoing commissioning efforts.



Fig. 26.7 *Three-section commercial submetering switchboard comprising a center service-entrance section rated 4000-A, 3-phase, 480-V maximum, equipped (usually) with a main switch or circuit breaker. Each of the end cubicles will accept six tenant meters, each on a 320-A 3-phase circuit, maximum, protected by an integral circuit breaker or fused switch. Tenant wiring enters the top or bottom of the board. Switchboards of this type can be installed on every floor of a large multitenant commercial office building. (Photo courtesy of Cutler-Hammer.)*

A low-voltage underground service detail as it would appear on a set of contract drawings, including relevant details, is given in Fig. 26.8. Note that here the service switch and meters are separately mounted.

26.12 SERVICE SWITCHES

The purpose of electric service switches is to disconnect the normal service to the building. (See Section 28.21 for a discussion of emergency electric service.) In the event of a fire, for example, the switch can be used to ensure that no electrical hazard will face firefighters. This disconnecting apparatus must be located at a readily accessible spot near the point

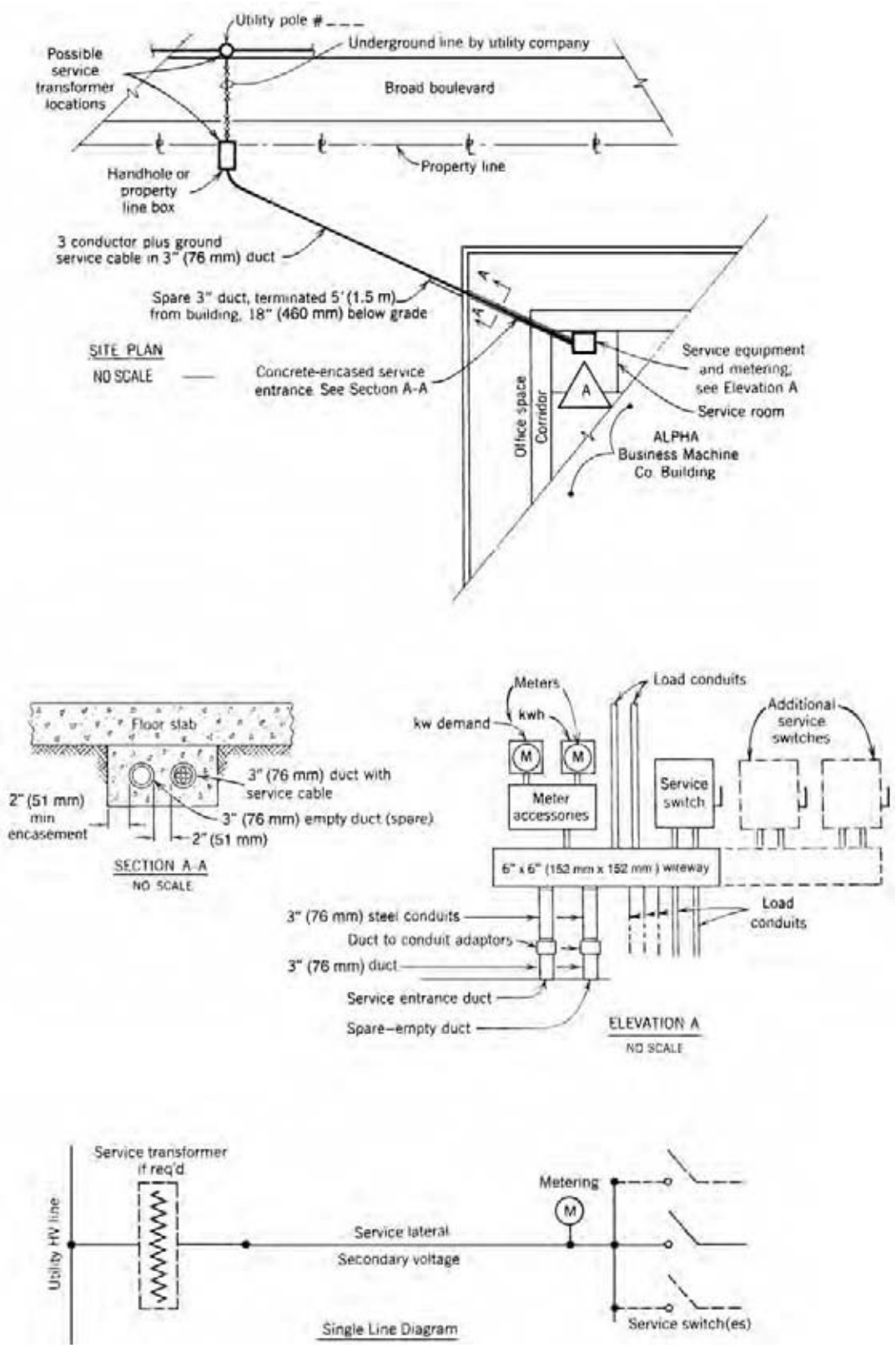
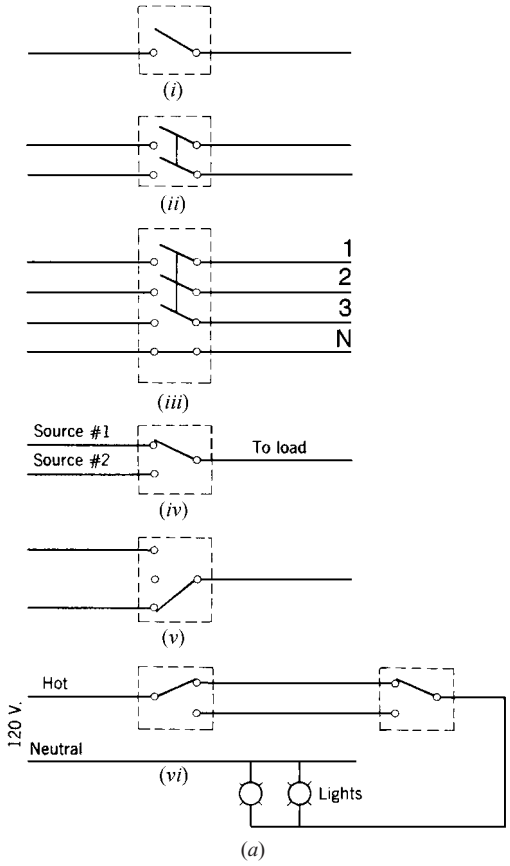


Fig. 26.8 *Typical electrical plan and details of an underground low-voltage service (600-V class) to an industrial facility. Note that the portion of underground service beneath the building must be encased in concrete. A service transformer (if required) could be mounted on the utility pole or on a pad at the property line.*

where the service conductors enter a building. If such a location is not feasible, service conductors may be run in concrete encasement under a building—and are considered "outside the building" up to the point at which they emerge from the floor in the building (see Fig. 26.8). At that point, the service disconnect switch must be installed. The service switch or, more accurately, the service-disconnecting means may comprise between one and six properly rated switches. These are frequently assembled into a switchboard. Before discussing switchboards, however, a description of switches, circuit breakers, and fuses (the components of which switchboards are constructed) is in order.

26.13 SWITCHES

Traditional electrical switching devices are discussed in this and the following two sections. Mechanical switches close and open an electric circuit by physically moving two electrical conductors into contact with each other to close the circuit and physically separating them to open the circuit. The motive force can be supplied by hand, an electrical coil, a spring, or a motor; the device name may change accordingly, but the action is the same. Solid-state switches perform the same electrical switching function but by a completely different process, without moving parts. They are discussed in Section 26.16.



(i) Single-pole single-throw switch.

(ii) Two-pole single-throw switch.

(iii) Three-pole and solid-neutral (3P and SN) switch.

(iv) Single-pole double-throw switch (also called, in small sizes, a 3-*way switch*).

(v) Single-pole double-throw switch with center "off" position (in control work called a *hand-off-automatic switch*).

(vi) Use of two single-pole, double-throw (3-way) switches for switching a lighting circuit from two locations

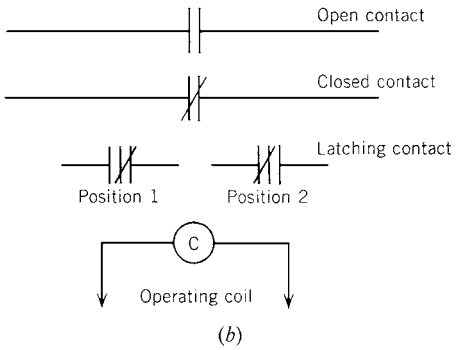


Fig. 26.9 *(a) Typical switch configurations. Note that switches are always shown in the open position. (b) Graphic representation of switch (contact) positions in a contactor or relay. Note that a latching contactor shows the switch in one of two positions to indicate the latching nature of the contactor.*

TABLE 26.5 Control Equipment Enclosures

NEMA Designation: Type	Description	Application
1	General-purpose	Dry, indoor use
2	Dripproof	Indoor, subject to dripping
3	Dust-tight, rain-tight, and sleet-resistant	Indoor/outdoor, where subject to windblown dust and water
3R	Rainproof and sleet-resistant	Outdoor, subject to falling rain, snow, and sleet
3S	Dust-tight, rain-tight, and sleet-proof	Outdoor, subject to windblown water, dust, and sleet; most severe exterior duty
4	Watertight and dust-tight	Indoor/outdoor, subject to water from all directions; not sleetproof
4X	Watertight, dust-tight, corrosion-resistant	Same as type 4 with added corrosion protection
7–9	Hazardous	Differing in application by class and group of hazardous use; see *NEC*
12	Industrial use, dust-tight, and drip-tight	Indoor only, general use, industrial and other "dirty" environments

An electrical switch is rated by current and voltage, duty, poles and throw, fusibility, and enclosure. The current rating is the amount of current that the switch can carry continuously and interrupt safely. Switches intended for motor control are also rated in horsepower (kW). The voltage rating of a switch is noted, as for other electrical equipment, by voltage class. Thus, a switch may be rated 250 V, 600 V, or 5 kV, as required. Switches intended for normal (occasional) use in lighting and power circuits are called *general-duty safety switches.* Switches intended for frequent interrupting, high-fault currents, and ease of maintenance are rated HD for *heavy duty.*

Figure 26.9*a* should clarify what is meant by the number of poles and throws of a switch. Unless otherwise noted, a switch is assumed to be single-throw. Because the *NEC* states generally that the grounded neutral conductor of a circuit should not be broken, most switches carry the neutral through unbroken by means of a solid link within the switch. This gives rise to the term *solid neutral* (SN) *switch.* Switches are available in 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, and 5-pole construction. Poles are indicated by a "P"; thus, 3-pole is written "3P," and so on.

A switch may be constructed with or without provision for fusing. If provided, the switch is fusible; if not, the switch is nonfusible. All individual enclosed switches are mounted in an appropriate cabinet. NEMA standardized the nomenclature and application of enclosures for all electrical control equipment, of which switches are only one item. Summarizing, the following adequately describes a switch: switch, HD, 3P & SN, 200A/150AF, 600 V, in NEMA 12 enclosure. This "translates" as a heavy-duty switch, 3 poles and solid neutral, 200-amp rating with 150-amp fuses, 600-V rating, in an industrial use enclosure (Table 26.5). Such a switch is illustrated in Fig. 26.10.



Fig. 26.10 *The internal construction of a heavy-duty, fused, 3-pole, 3-wire switch in an industrial NEMA 12 enclosure. Note the gasketing on the inside of the cover, which seals the sheet steel box and makes it usable in environments containing lint, dust, dirt, sawdust, and the like. The external handle is a double-lockable indicating type for safety. (Courtesy of Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.)*

26.14 CONTACTORS

A contactor is a switch. Instead of a handle-operated, movable blade, a contactor uses *contact* blocks of silver-coated copper, which are forced together to *make* (close) or are separated to *break* (open) a circuit. The common wall-mounted light switch is a small, mechanically operated contactor. A relay is an electrically operated contactor. Most contactors are operated by means of an electromagnet that causes the contacts to close. They open either by spring action or by gravity.

Contactor terminology is somewhat different from that of switches. Its condition when deenergized is its *normal* state. Thus, a contactor whose contacts are open when the coil is not energized is referred to as *normally open* (NO), whereas a contactor whose contacts are closed when deenergized is referred to as *normally closed* (NC). Units intended for motor connection are called *motor starters* and are discussed in Section 26.26. Current, voltage, and number of poles have the same nomenclature for contactors and relays as for switches.

The great advantage of contactors over switches is their facility for remote control. Switches must be manually thrown—or, in very special cases, thrown by a motor. The magnetic contactor, by contrast, is inherently a remotely controlled device, making it ideal for myriad control functions. It can be controlled by a manual or remote pushbutton or by automatic devices such as timers, float switches, thermostats, pressure switches, and so on. Because control can be both remote and automatic, contactors are universally used in the control of lighting, heating, air conditioning, motors, and the like. A graphic representation of contactors is shown in Fig. 26.9*b*.

26.15 SPECIAL SWITCHES

Many special types of switches are available. Most of these types are beyond the scope of this book, except for the following, which are used extensively in building design work.

(a) Remote-Control (RC) Switches

A contactor that latches mechanically after being operated is known as a *remote-control switch*. It differs from a relay in that the latching operation performs the dual function of latching the contacts and disconnecting the electric circuit. To unlatch the contacts, the electric circuit must be reenergized. Such a device is therefore also known as an *electrically operated mechanically held contactor*. This characteristic is advantageous where the position of the contacts will be maintained for a long period (as in a lighting control circuit) and it is undesirable to hold the contacts by the continuous energizing of a coil, as would be required with an ordinary relay. A typical unit is shown in Fig. 26.11, and a typical application is shown in Fig. 28.13. A common application of these switches is for controlling a "block" load, such as exterior lighting, whole-floor or whole-building lighting, and the like.

(b) Automatic Transfer Switch

This device, which is an essential part of all emergency and standby power arrangements, is basically

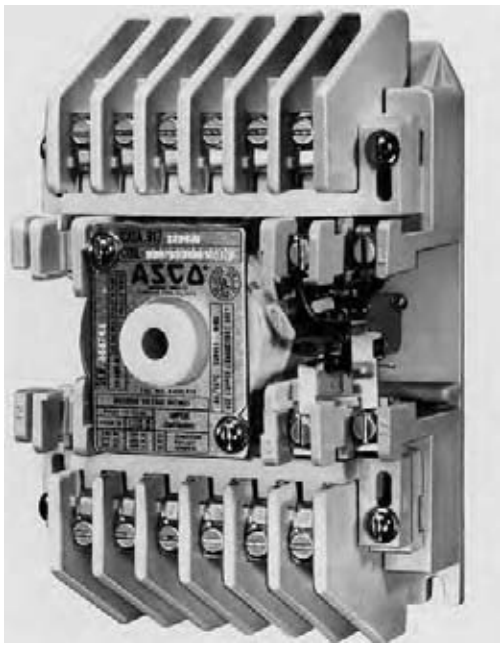


Fig. 26.11 *This remote-control switch (mechanically held, electrically operated contactor) is a 12-pole, 20-A, 600-V unit measuring approximately 7 in. H × 6 in. W × 4 in. D (178 × 150 × 100 mm), making it suitable for stud-wall mounting. Compact solid-state control modules are available that mount directly onto the unit and convert it to a flush, wall-mounted multicircuit programmable controller (see Section 26.16). (Courtesy of Automatic Switch Co.)*

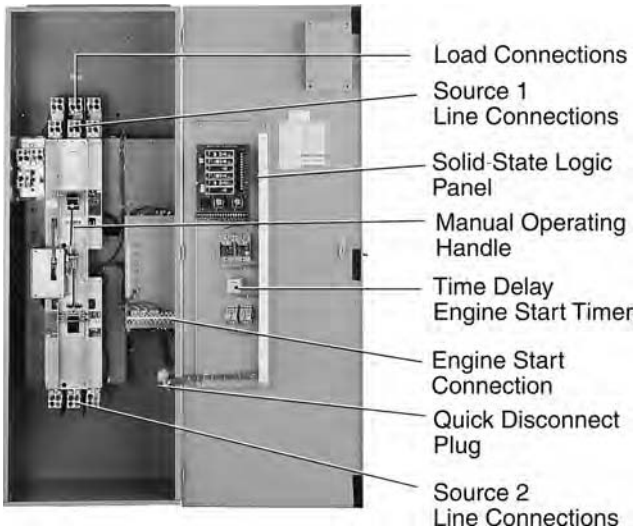


Fig. 26.12 *Automatic transfer switch with solid-state logic. The unit can be operated manually if required. It is equipped with engine-starting contacts, auxiliary contacts for monitoring, electrical safety interlocks, and automatic differential voltage sensing on the normal source. An 800-A, 3-phase unit of this design, in a NEMA indoor sheet metal enclosure, measures 73 in. H × 26 in. W × 21 in. D (1.9 × 0.7 × 0.5 m) and weighs approximately 600 lb (272 kg). (Photo courtesy of Cutler-Hammer.)*

a double throw switch—generally 3-pole—so arranged that on failure of normal service it *automatically transfers* to the emergency service. When normal service is restored, it automatically retransfers to it. (Retransfer can also be arranged to have a preset minimum delay, or it can be entirely manual.) The switch control is accomplished by voltage sensors that sense the condition of the service and operate the switch accordingly. Auxiliary devices can be added to the basic switch, the most common being emergency generator starting equipment. Figure 26.12 illustrates a typical unit. Transfer switches used in uninterrupted power supplies are normally solid-state devices because these involve no switching time lapse.

(c) Time-Controlled Switches

This category includes all switches whose operation is time-based. The timer can be either the familiar electromechanical device consisting of a low-speed miniature drive motor, to which some type of contact-making device is physically connected, or it can be a solid-state electronic timer, which in turn controls either a relay or a solid-state switch. The latter arrangement is the basis of all modern programmable time controls (Section 26.16), which find wide application in lighting control (Sections 15.14 and 30.27), energy management and automated building control (Sections 25.13 and 30.28), and clock and program systems (Section 30.14).

Motor-operated timers (other than hand-wound types) depend for their accuracy on power-line frequency, have moving parts that wear, must be reset after power outages (although some units have spring-wound reserve power motors),

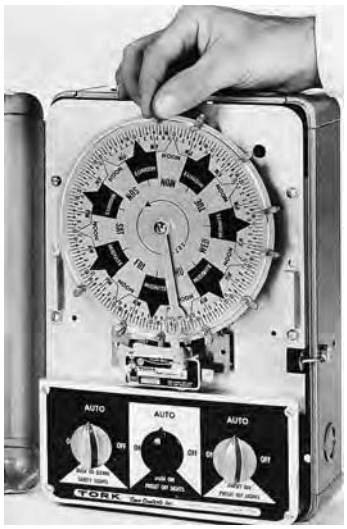


Fig. 26.13 *Time switch arranged for three different types of control functions that are applicable to different types of load: (1) full photocell control—security lighting; (2) dusk "On," preset "Off"—signs, parking lots; (3) preset on, off—interiors. This unit's dial is a 7-day calendar type that permits setting a different schedule for every day of the week. The dial is not astronomical (solar) because all the turn-on functions are either photocell or time-of-day controlled. Solar dials are useful when photocell control is not used because sunrise and sunset times vary with the season. (Courtesy of Tork, Inc.)*



Fig. 26.14 *Programmable time switch. This unit, which measures 9.5 in. H × 8 in. W × 4.5 in. D (240 × 200 × 115 mm) in its cabinet, permits independent programming of eight 20-A, 240-V circuits. Each circuit (channel) can be arranged for multiple on–off daily operations and can be programmed on a 7-day-a-week basis, with special 365-day functions such as automatic daylight saving time adjustment. (Courtesy of EZ Controls.)*



Fig. 26.15 *This unit controls two 15-A, 240-V circuits. The built-in astronomical feature automatically adjusts the on–off setpoint according to sunset and sunrise throughout the year. (Courtesy of Paragon Electric Co., Inc.)*

and become cumbersome and expensive with an increase in the number of controlled events. Electronic units are small, cool, quiet, independent of line frequency for accuracy (in many designs), able to carry through outages when equipped with a standby battery, and virtually unlimited in their event-control capacity. They have largely replaced the older mechanical design except for the simplest applications (Figs. 26.13, 26.14, and 26.15).

26.16 SOLID-STATE SWITCHES, PROGRAMMABLE SWITCHES, MICROPROCESSORS, AND PROGRAMMABLE CONTROLLERS

A solid-state switch is an electronic device with a conducting state and a nonconducting state, corresponding to a conventional switch in its closed and open positions. The change between the two states is accomplished by the application of a control signal (voltage). The change of state is instantaneous and noiseless, and occurs without arcing. The current ratings of solid-state switches are approximately the same as those of their mechanical counterparts, ranging from fractions of an ampere to hundreds of amperes. Voltage ratings are usually limited to secondary systems values (0 to 600 V) due to the nature of the semiconductors comprising the active elements of these switches, although higher-voltage equipment is available for special applications.

If an electronic timing device is added to a solid-state switch, a time-controlled electronic switch is created that functions exactly like the electromechanical time-based switches described in Section 26.15. These solid-state switches are independent of the utility line frequency for time control, and there are no moving parts to wear out. If a small, programmable memory circuit, in the form of an erasable programmable read-only memory (EPROM) chip is added, the device becomes a programmable time switch. The simplest of these are single-circuit 15-A devices intended to replace common wall switches (see Fig. 26.48). A more complex unit (corresponding roughly to the electromechanical unit shown in Fig. 26.13, but much more flexible) is shown in Fig. 26.14. Addition of a read-only memory (ROM) chip preprogrammed with astronomical information (sunrise-sunset) for a particular latitude converts the switch to a "sun tracker." Such a switch is

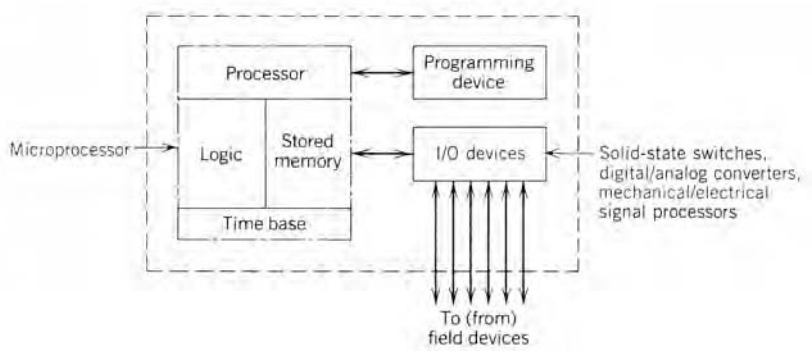


Fig. 26.16 *Block diagram of a programmable controller. These devices are designed to supervise field conditions continuously and are therefore used in industrial applications as well as for lighting and environmental system control.*

particularly applicable to control circuits with year-round dusk-to-dawn control (see Fig. 26.15).

A preprogrammed device, until reprogrammed, gives fixed, invariable instructions to a (multichannel) switch, as is the case with a programmable time switch. If a *microprocessor* (i.e., a logic/memory device programmed to *respond* according to a particular algorithm [control plan] to given input signals) is installed, a readily reprogrammable controller results (Figs. 26.16, 26.17, and 26.18). By definition, a *programmable controller* is an electronic device that uses a programmable memory chip for internal storage of instructions that in turn implement specific functions such as logic, timing, counting, and so on.

The internal control/memory is frequently referred to as a *microprocessor*; with respect to the overall programmable controller, it acts as a central processing unit (CPU). The programmable controller is therefore a special type of computer. It differs from a conventional computer in that its program is relatively short and exists in hardware (a microprocessor), whereas a computer reads its program, which can be very lengthy, into its memory from



Fig. 26.17 *Programmable controller (center) designed for use as an energy-monitoring and building system control device. The basic unit accepts up to 16 analog inputs, such as illuminance, temperature, kW demand load, time signals, central control signals, and the like. It processes data according to its current program (note the programming keypad) and can signal and control up to 16 outputs. Additional functions available include time-of-day switching, including astronomical considerations, and duty-cycle load switching for electric demand control. The controller is approximately 14 in. W × 16 in. H × 6 in. D (355 × 410 × 150 mm) and is arranged for surface mounting. On either side are accessory communication and relay modules. In the foreground are application software and typical sensors. (Photo courtesy of Paragon Electric Co., Inc.)*



Fig. 26.18 *General-purpose programmable controller. The processor unit contains the central processing unit (CPU), random access memory (RAM), and power supply. Peripherals include the illustrated hand-held programming unit and EEPROM (electrically erasable programmable read-only memory) module, and various computer/software interfaces (not shown). The unit illustrated, which measures approximately 10 × 9 × 3 in. (255 × 230 × 75 mm), has 16 input/output (I/O) circuits and an 885-word memory. It is readily adaptable to a variety of automated control processes in manufacturing, building control, and material handling. (Courtesy of Allen-Bradley Co.)*

software. Furthermore, the programmable controller is designed for a specific function, whereas a conventional computer is a general-use calculating device that processes almost any type of software.

Programmable controllers have all but replaced the ubiquitous *hard-wired* relay panel in applications such as industrial control, elevator control, process control, and the like, because of the ease with which such a controller can be reprogrammed (in lieu of rewiring a relay panel), the speed and accuracy of control, and the vastly increased complexity possible. See Chapter 30 for definitions and for an explanation of the application of these devices to building control.



Fig. 26.19 *Raintight NEMA type 3R outdoor circuit breaker enclosure. This is the type usually intended when "weatherproof" is specified. (Courtesy of General Electric, U.S.A.)*

26.17 EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURES

Proper NEMA nomenclature, descriptions, and applications for the more common enclosures are found in Table 26.5. It is important to note that there is no enclosure described as WP or weatherproof. Equipment intended for outdoor use should be specified for installation:

1. In a type 3R enclosure to protect against rain (Fig. 26.19)
2. In a type 3S enclosure to protect against wind-driven rain and sleet
3. In a type 4 enclosure to protect against rain, wind-driven rain and sleet, plus splashing and condensation.

Note also that the type 12 industrial enclosure is similar to type 1 except that it is gasketed for dust and drip resistance and therefore is well applied in *all* "dirty" indoor environments, including those in commercial and institutional spaces (see Fig. 26.10).

26.18 CIRCUIT-PROTECTIVE DEVICES

To protect insulation, wiring, switches, and other apparatus from the destructive effects of overload and short-circuit currents, an automatic means for opening the circuit is required. The two most common devices employed to fulfill this function are the *fuse* and the *circuit breaker*, the latter frequently abbreviated *c/b*.

(a) Fuses

The fuse is a simple device consisting of a *fusible* link or wire of low melting temperature that, when enclosed in an insulating fiber tube, is called a *cartridge fuse* and, when enclosed in a porcelain cup, is known as a *plug fuse*. Figure 26.20 shows common types of fuses. Plug fuses, such as those in residential use, are rated 5 to 30 A, 150 V to ground, maximum. Cartridge fuses of various designs are available up to 6000 A and 600 V.

(b) Circuit Breakers

A circuit breaker is an electromechanical device that performs the same protective function as a fuse and, in addition, acts as a switch. Thus, it can be used in lieu of a switch-and-fuse combination to both protect and disconnect a circuit. Most circuit breakers are equipped with both thermal and magnetic trips. The thermal trip acts on overload, whereas the magnetic trip acts on short circuit. These thermal and magnetic actions have inverse-time characteristics: that is, the heavier the overload, the faster the trip action. Modern circuit breakers in commercial and industrial applications are frequently equipped with solid-state electronic tripping control units, which provide fully adjustable overload, short-circuit, and ground-fault protection.

Air-circuit breakers are available in two types: the molded-case breaker and the large air-circuit breaker. Molded-case breakers consist of a complete mechanism encased in a molded phenolic case. A light-duty molded-case 50-A frame, plug-in circuit breaker is illustrated in Fig. 26.21*a*. The molded-case breaker shown in Fig. 26.21*b* has a 400-A frame and can be equipped with an adjustable electronic tripping unit, ground fault trip, plus other features formerly available only on large air-circuit breakers. The large air-circuit breaker is a more complicated and highly adjustable device that can be used in applications that preclude the use of

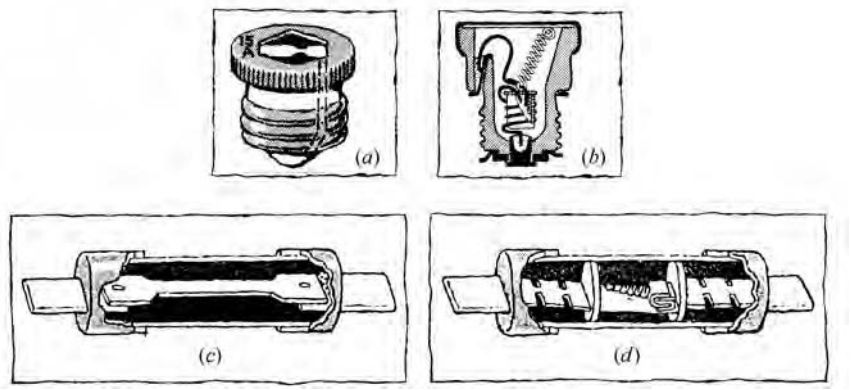


Fig. 26.20 *Plug-type fuses are made in two physical types. (a) The nonrenewable type with a standard (Edison) base screws directly into a standard socket. (b) Nonrenewable NEC type S fuses have a smaller base than type (a) and therefore require an adapter to fit into a standard socket. The adapter is current-rated and nonremovable. This prevents deliberate or accidental use of a type S fuse of incorrect rating. Type S is required in new construction where plug fuses are used. Both fuses shown are nonrenewable and must be replaced after blowing. The type S fuse shown in (b) is a dual-element time-delay fuse. Cartridge fuses are available in a variety of designs. Illustrated are (c) the nonrenewable, single-element type and (d) the nonrenewable, dual-element, time-delay type. Because fuses are inherently very-fast-acting devices, time delay must be built into a fuse to prevent blowing on short-time overloads such as those caused by motor starting. A dual-element fuse as shown in (b) allows the heat generated by temporary overloads to be dissipated in the larger center metal element, preventing fuse blowing. If the overload reaches dangerous proportions, the metal will melt, releasing the spring and opening the circuit. The notched metal portions of the fuse element, at both ends of the dual center element, provide short-circuit protection. The time required to clear (blow) a fuse is generally inversely proportional to the amount of current. In renewable-cartridge fuses, the spent (blown) element is replaceable, reusing the original outer cartridge and blade connectors.*

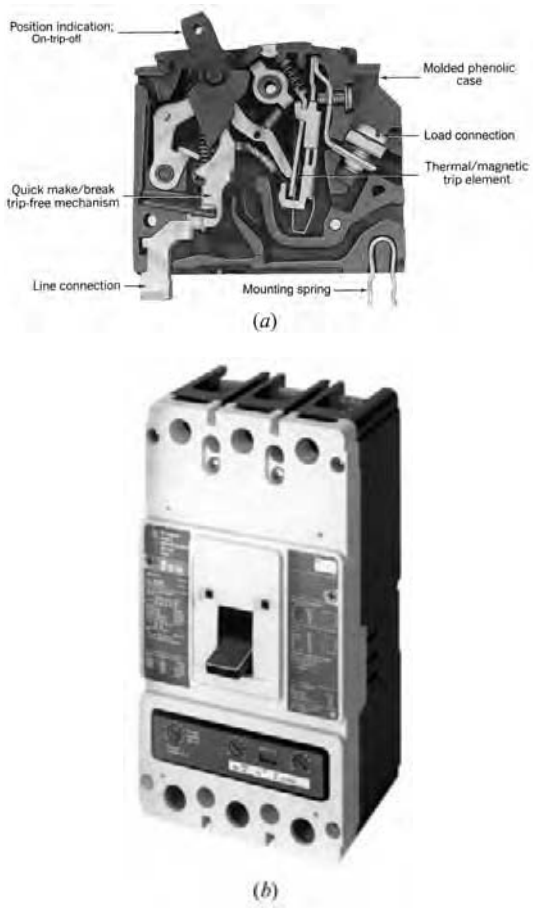


Fig. 26.21 *(a) Essential elements of a plug-in-type molded-case circuit breaker are shown in cutaway. Details vary with breakers designed for specific applications. The unit shown is typical of breakers in the 50- to 100-A size. (Photo courtesy of The Square D Company.) (b) Heavy-duty molded-case circuit breaker, 400-A frame, 2- to 4-pole, 240–600 V. This circuit breaker is available with either a standard thermal-magnetic trip or an adjustable electronic trip with ground fault protection. Among the accessories available are auxiliary contacts, shunt trip, undervoltage release, and an electrical solenoid operator that permits remote control of the breaker. The unit is suitable for individual or panelboard mounting. A typical 3-pole unit measures 5½ in. W × 10 in. H × 4 in. D (140 × 255 × 100 mm) and weighs about 12 lb (5.5 kg). (Photo courtesy of Cutler-Hammer.)*

molded-case breakers. A modern solid-state adjustable trip controller for a large air-circuit breaker is shown in Fig. 26.22, along with a circuit breaker with a similar solid-state trip unit.

All breakers can be equipped with remote trip and auxiliary contacts, and all good breakers have trip-indicating handles and are *trip-free* (i.e., they will trip out harmlessly if closed on a short-circuited line). Low-voltage (600-V class) circuit breakers are available in frame sizes ranging from 50 to 4000 A and 1 to 3 poles. Their characteristics vary widely and are beyond the scope of this book.

(c) Characteristics of Fuses and Circuit Breakers

Although both fuses and circuit breakers are circuit-protective devices, their characteristics differ markedly, as seen in the following comparisons.

Fuses—Switch-and-Fuse Combination

ADVANTAGES
Simple and foolproof
Constant characteristics (no aging)
Initial economy
Very high interrupting capacity (IC)
No maintenance
Instantaneous; energy-limiting
DISADVANTAGES
Fuses are single-pole only
Necessity for storage of replacement fuses
Nonrenewable (one-time operation)
Nonadjustable
Nonindicating[a]
No electric or remote control[a]
Not trip-free

Circuit Breakers

ADVANTAGES
Usable as switches
Multipole
No storage of replacements required
Resettable
Indicates trip
Trip-free
Remote-control potential
Adjustable
DISADVANTAGES
Low to medium IC, except for special units
Periodic maintenance required
High initial cost
Complex construction changes with age

[a]Can be accomplished with accessories.

These characteristics demonstrate that there is no single answer to the oft-posed question "Which are preferable—fuses or breakers?" The answer depends upon the specific application involved and is often based on highly technical factors requiring detailed analysis. Circuit breakers are generally used in lighting and appliance panelboards.



Fig. 26.22 *(a) A multifunction microprocessor-based trip control unit for a large circuit breaker. It provides true root-mean-square (rms) sensing of phase and ground currents, selectable tripping characteristics, and trip alarm contacts. In addition, the unit can be used to display and transmit information on phase and ground currents. (Photo courtesy of Cutler-Hammer.) (b) Electrically operated large air-circuit breaker with electronic microprocessor-controlled trip unit and additional remote-control accessories. The illustrated unit, rated 2000 A, is shown before stationary (nondrawout) mounting in a switchboard. (Courtesy of General Electric, U.S.A.)*

ELECTRICITY

26.19 SWITCHBOARDS AND SWITCHGEAR

A switchboard is a large, free-standing assembly of switches and fuses (and/or circuit breakers), which normally provides switching and overcurrent protection to a number of circuits connected to a single electric source. Metering and other instrumentation are also often included. A switchboard may be represented in a single-line diagram, as shown in Fig. 26.23. This equipment serves to distribute, with adequate protection, bulk power into smaller

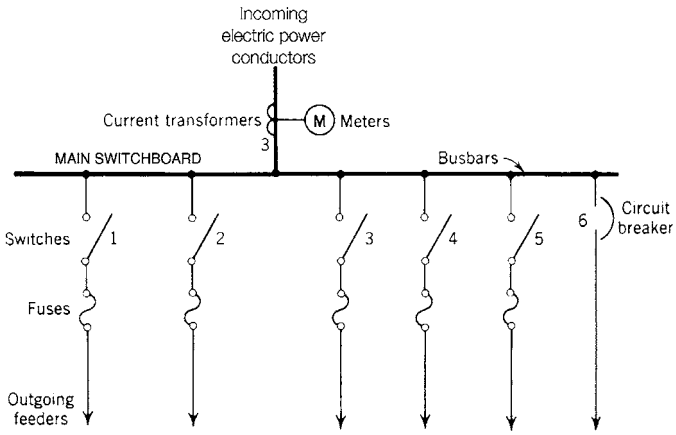


Fig. 26.23 *One-line diagram of a typical switchboard. Switches are normally shown in the open position. Switches must be on the line (supply) side of fuses. Each line in a single-line diagram represents a 3-phase circuit. If circuit breakers were used, the entire board would be composed of units as depicted in circuit 6.*

"packages." Thus, in a hydraulic analogy, the main buswork of the switchboard is equivalent to a main water supply header, the switches to on/off valves, the fuses to flow-limiting devices, and the feeders to subpiping connected to the main header.

Modern switchboards (Figs. 26.24 to 26.27) are all deadfront; that is, they have all circuit breakers, switches, fuses, and live parts completely enclosed in a metal structure. The operator controls all devices by means of pushbuttons and insulated handles on the front panel. Circuit breakers equipped with bayonet-type contacts, each mounted in a movable drawer (like the drawers of a standard letter file) in a switchboard, are described as the *drawout* type. This drawout arrangement facilitates emergency replacements, inspection, and repairs and is illustrated in Fig. 26.26.

No clear distinction is made between the terms *switchboard* and *switchgear*, although the terms suggest a sense of scale. Generally, low-voltage switchboards with large circuit breakers and all high-voltage equipment (above 600 V) are referred to as *switchgear*. When molded-case circuit breakers are utilized in a switchboard, it is often referred to as a *building-type switchboard*.

Recommended minimum space requirements for various types of switchgear are shown in Fig. 26.28. Working space around all types of electrical equipment must meet the requirements of *NEC* Article 110. Main metal-clad switchgear for commercial, industrial, and public buildings is almost invariably located in a basement and housed in a separate well-ventilated electrical switchgear room. Smaller subdistribution switchboards require no special room. A wire screen enclosure to prevent tampering or vandalism plus a large "DANGER—HIGH VOLTAGE" sign are usually adequate. The architect must provide adequate exits, hallways, and/or hatches for the installation and removal of all equipment. Specifications for switchgear should state the maximum overall dimensions of sections that will be transported and installed in one piece.

When switchgear is to be installed outdoors, one of three methods is employed: build a small structure to enclose normal indoor gear, utilize weatherproof outdoor gear, or utilize switchgear that is built into its own exterior enclosing structure, as seen in Fig. 26.27. These housings are equipped with heating and lighting and often prove to be the most economical choice.

26.20 UNIT SUBSTATIONS (TRANSFORMER LOAD CENTERS)

An assembly, comprising a primary voltage switch-and-fuse or circuit breaker, a step-down transformer, meters, controls, buswork, and secondary

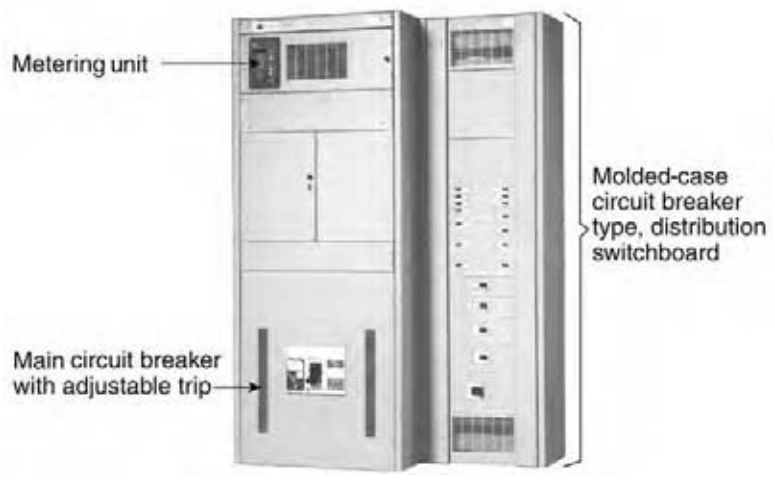


Fig. 26.24 *Free-standing, indoor-service, low-voltage (600-V) switchboard with group-mounted, fixed molded-case circuit breakers. The deeper section contains the service entrance main circuit breaker (maximum 3000 A) plus instrumentation. Section width varies from 30 to 45 in. (0.75 to 1.1 m) and depth from 18 to 36 in. (0.5 to 0.9 m), depending upon the main circuit breaker rating. The smaller section contains branch circuit breakers. All units are 90 in. (2.3 m) high. (Photo courtesy of Cutler-Hammer.)*



Fig. 26.25 *Metal-enclosed, indoor, low-voltage power switchboard with fixed or drawout large circuit breakers. Maximum bus capacity is 5000 A. Section dimensions vary with the size and type of contained equipment. All units are 90 in. (2.3 m) high. Each circuit breaker is equipped with a microprocessor-controlled trip unit. It can be seen clearly on the front of each unit. In addition, another programmable solid-state metering/analysis unit can be seen at the left of the top compartment of the entry (left) cubicle of both this switchgear and the switchboard. (Photo courtesy of Cutler-Hammer.)*

(low-voltage) switchgear, is known as a *unit substation* or a *load-center substation*. Its function is to accept an incoming high-voltage power supply, transform the high voltage to a voltage that can be utilized in the facility, and distribute the low-voltage power through associated low-voltage (secondary) switchgear. A dimensional physical sketch of a typical unit substation, along with its electrical single-line diagram, is shown in Fig. 26.29. Equipment is available for indoor or outdoor installation.



Fig. 26.26 *Three sections of medium-voltage metal-clad drawout switchgear, suitable for indoor use as shown and for outdoor use with cabinet modification. Voltage ratings are 5–27 kV; current ratings are 1200–3000 A. Each indoor section measures 36 in. W × 95 in. H × 96 in. D (0.9 × 2.4 × 2.4 m) and contains two compartments for circuit breakers and/or instrumentation. Due to the drawout characteristic (shown), a 72-in. (1.8-m) front aisle is required. Similar outdoor aisle-less switchgear measures 36 in. W × 115 in. H × 101 in. D (0.9 × 2.9 × 2.6 m). (Photo courtesy of Cutler-Hammer.)*

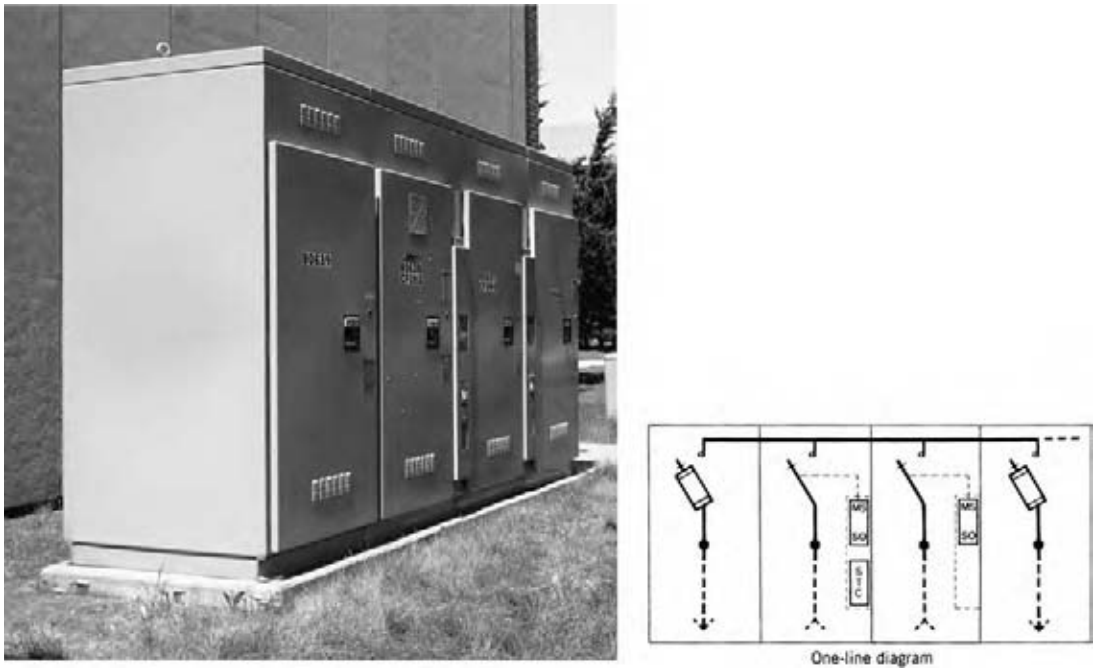


Fig. 26.27 *Four-bay (section), power-operated, high-voltage service entrance switchgear rated 13.8 kV, consisting of (see the single-line diagram inset, and reading from left to right) a fused feeder section, two bays with parallel incoming lines and automatic transfer in the event of power failure, and a second switch and fuse feeder section. Fuses are electronic, with circuitry designed to provide a trip signal when excessive current is sensed, rather than simply relying on the thermal characteristic of a fusible element. This gear, which measures 93 in. H × 172 in. W × 44 in. D (2.4 × 4.4 × 1.1 m) and weighs 8000 lb (3630 kg), is suitable for interior or exterior installation. (Courtesy of S&C Electric Co.)*

If installed indoors, the location of a unit substation is governed by the type of transformer utilized, as explained in the discussion on indoor transformer installations. For this reason, almost all indoor unit substations utilize dry-type (air-filled) transformers. A basement location is most often selected, with ventilation requirements as detailed previously. Access should be restricted to

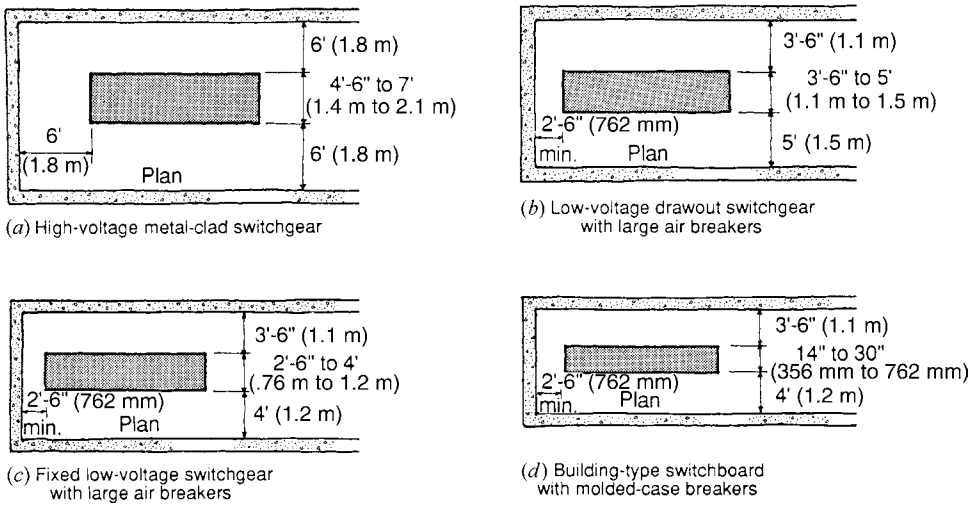


Fig. 26.28 *Typical nominal switchgear space requirements. Each room should have two doors when switchgear is connected to high-capacity systems or operates at high voltage. Switchgear is shown in plan view. For detailed space requirements, see NEC Article 110.*

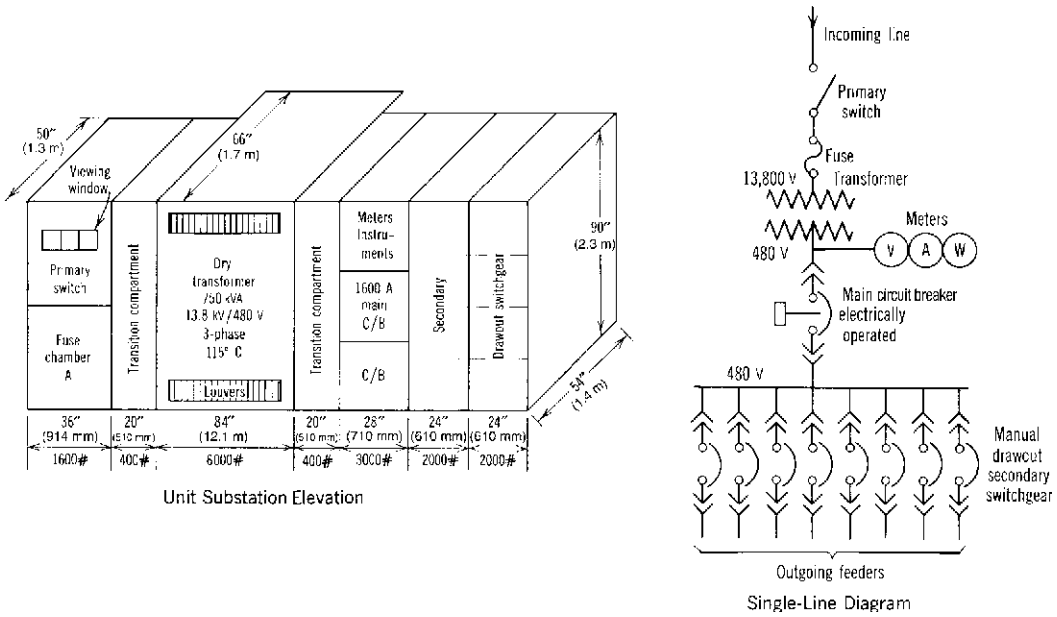


Fig. 26.29 *Approximate sizes and weights of a typical large single-ended unit substation. Such a unit would supply a building with a maximum demand of 750 kVA. The incoming 13,800-V cables enter cubicle A and connect to the primary switch and fuses. The load side of the fuses connects to the transformer, which in turn connects to the secondary switchgear. The main secondary switchgear then feeds various switchboards and panelboards distributed throughout the building.*

authorized persons. Unit substations are selected to obtain the economies inherent in prefabricated construction using coordinated components.

26.21 PANELBOARDS

An electrical panel, or *panelboard*, serves essentially the same function as a switchboard except on a smaller scale. It accepts a relatively large block of power at some downstream point in a system and distributes it in smaller blocks. Like a switchboard, it comprises main buses to which are connected circuit-protective devices (breakers or fuses) that feed smaller circuits. The panelboard level of a system usually represents the final distribution point, thence feeding out to the branch circuits that contain the electrical utilization apparatus and devices, such as lighting, motors, and so on. Small panels, particularly in residential work, are frequently referred to as *load centers*.

The panelboard components—the buses, breakers, and so on—are mounted inside an open metal cabinet called a *backbox*. The backbox is prefabricated with knockouts at the top, bottom, and sides to permit connection of conduits carrying circuit conductors (Fig. 26.30). The main feeders that supply power to the panel's busbars enter through the large knockouts in the metal backbox, as in Fig. 26.30. Details of panelboard construction are presented in Fig. 26.31. A panel may be equipped with a main circuit breaker whose function is to disconnect the entire panel in the event of a major fault. Figures 26.30 and 26.31 show panelboards with only branch circuit devices and no main breaker or switch. These panels are described as "lugs in mains only," which means that the panel has only connectors (lugs) on the main busbars for connection of the main feeder cables and no main protective device. The backbox is closed with a protective front panel with an access door. Three basic panelboard types are shown in Fig. 26.32.

The line terminal of each circuit-protective device (breaker or fused switch) is connected to the busbars of the panelboard. The load terminal of the device then feeds the outgoing branch circuit. This is shown schematically in Fig. 26.33, which is a line-drawing representation of an electrical panelboard. Notice that the circuit breakers are arranged in two vertical rows, corresponding to actual construction

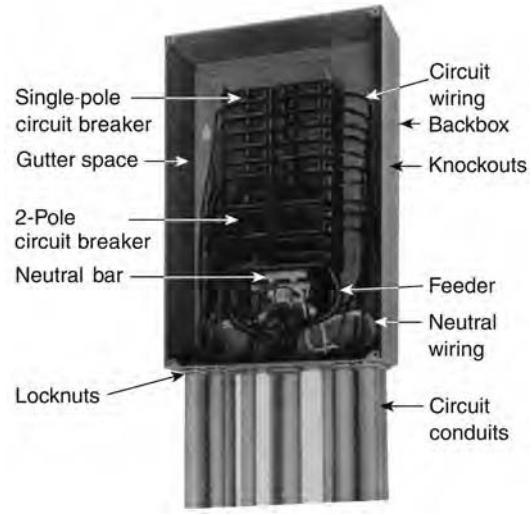


Fig. 26.30 *A wired panelboard is shown with the cover removed. This panel is single-phase, 3-wire, meaning that it has two phase bars and a neutral (note the three heavy feeder cables). Lighting and appliance panels such as this are 4½–6 in. (115–150 mm) deep, 16–20 in. (400–500 mm) wide, and of sufficient height to accommodate the devices. The top device may be no higher than 78 in. (2 m) above the finished floor (AFF) and the bottom one no lower than 18 in. (450 mm) AFF to meet NEC requirements.*

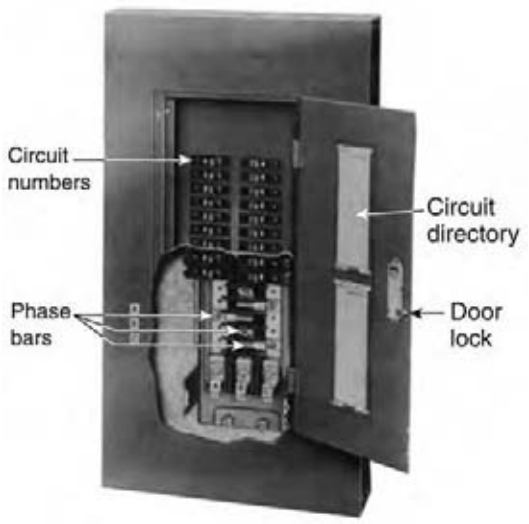


Fig. 26.31 *Cutaway of a typical lighting and appliance panelboard. Branch circuit-protective devices are normally arranged in two vertical rows even in 3-phase panels. The circuit directory on the inside of the panelboard door gives a brief description of the loads connected to each branch circuit breaker.*

practice. In the illustrated line drawing, a 3-phase panel is shown (i.e., three-phase busbars and a neutral bar). The busbars of the panelboard are energized by a feeder from a switchboard or large power distribution panel.

Panelboards are described and specified by type, bus arrangement, branch breakers, main breaker, voltage, and mounting—although not necessarily in that order. A typical description might be: lighting and appliance panel, 3-phase, 4-wire; 200A mains; main c/b, 225A frame, 150A trip. Branch breakers—all 100A frame; 8 ea. SP-20A, 4 ea. 2P-20A, 4 ea. 3P-20A; flush with hinged locked door.

26.22 PRINCIPLES OF ELECTRIC LOAD CONTROL

The key to energy conservation and electric demand limitation is load control. In the recent past, the extent to which both of these desirable operating functions were put into practice was essentially an economic decision: Would the electric billing savings justify the expense of installing the required control? Today, and increasingly in the future, legislation resulting from environmental pressures will mandate energy-consumption limitations. Already many states have enacted legislation requiring lighting controls in certain nonresidential buildings, and the trend toward additional and more stringent future requirements is clear. The rationale for load control to limit demand charges was discussed previously.

Lighting control strategies are discussed in Chapter 15. The essential control principle that applies to all loads, not only to lighting, is straightforward: The load is switched or modulated in response to a control signal (Fig. 26.34*a*). In terms of hardware, the process is somewhat more complex. Figure 26.34*b* shows in principle the equipment and wiring required in a common application: time control of exterior lighting, with photocell override. Figure 26.35 shows a more complex arrangement for area lighting control with local override, as might be installed in conjunction with a commercial office building. In each case, there are signal-initiation devices, one or more relays that perform the actual electrical switching, and control

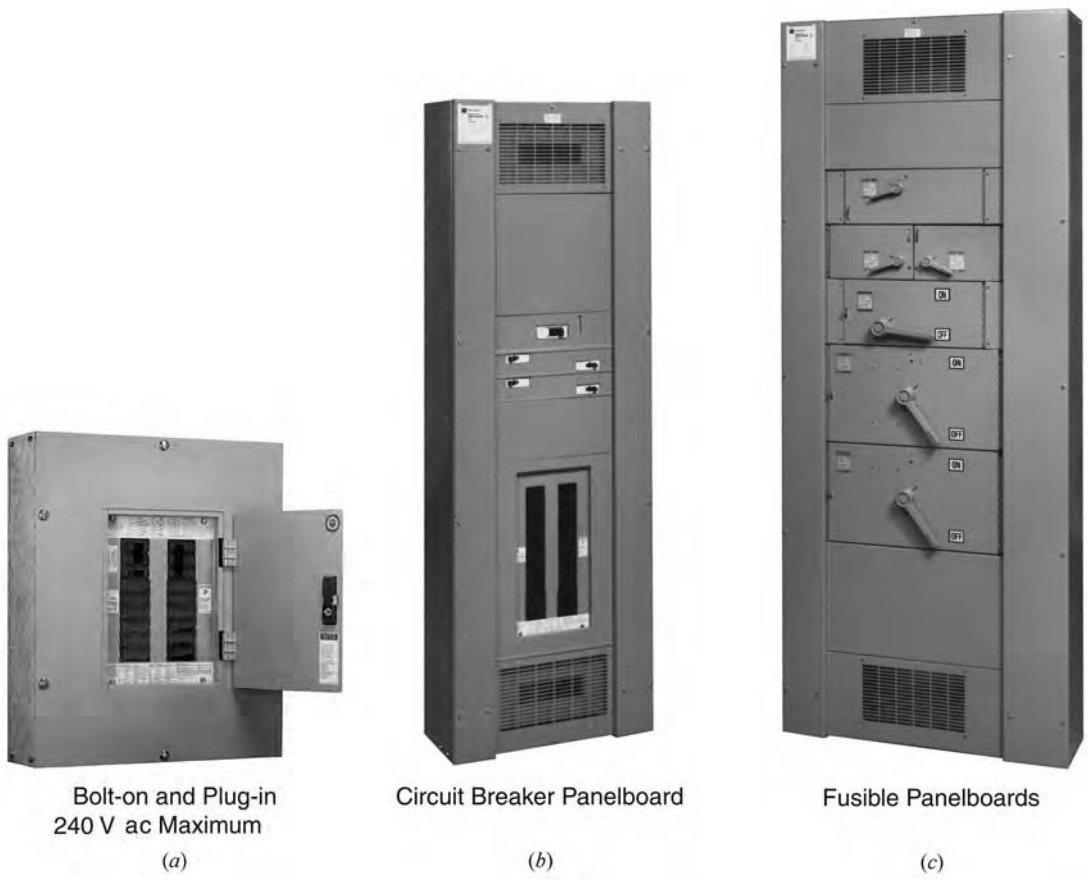


Fig. 26.32 *Three different designs of panelboards. (a) Circuit breaker–type panelboard using bolt-on and plug-in molded-case circuit breakers 1- to 3-pole, 15–100 A. A main device of up to 400 A can be installed. The panel is rated for 240 V ac. The illustrated panel, which is arranged for surface mounting, measures 30 in. H × 20 in. W × 5¾ in. D (760 × 510 × 145 mm). (b) Circuit breaker distribution-type panelboard with maximum bus ratings of 1200 A and 600 V ac. Branch circuit breakers can be 15–100 A, single-pole and 15–1200 A, 2- or 3-pole. These panels are free-standing but can be wall-mounted, provided that the highest device does not exceed 6 ft, 6 in. (2 m) AFF. Similar units are available with a front door. Depending upon the contents, cabinets can be 24–36 in. (610–915 mm) W × 60–90 in. (1.5–2.3 m) H × 6–8 in. (150–200 mm) D. (c) Switch- and fuse-type distribution panelboard, free-standing, with ratings similar to those of the circuit breaker type in (b). Cabinets are 36–44 in. (915–1115 mm) W, 74–90 in. (1.8–2.3 m) H, and 10½ in. (265 mm) D. (Photos courtesy of Cutler-Hammer.)*

and power wiring—in addition to the main power wiring from the panelboard.

Many past users found that the payback from reduced electric billing was insufficient to cover the control equipment cost, particularly where local and/or remote override was required, and as a result relied on inefficient and generally ineffective manual control. That option, however, is limited today and will become even more so in the future. As a result, a more economical way to accomplish the required control functions was developed, thanks in large measure to modern miniaturized programmable control elements. These can be installed directly in the lighting panelboard. Such a panel is known in the industry by the generic term *intelligent panelboard* and by various trade names that identify specific manufacturers.

26.23 INTELLIGENT PANELBOARDS

The idea behind an intelligent panelboard is straightforward. If many of the necessary electric load control and switching functions are

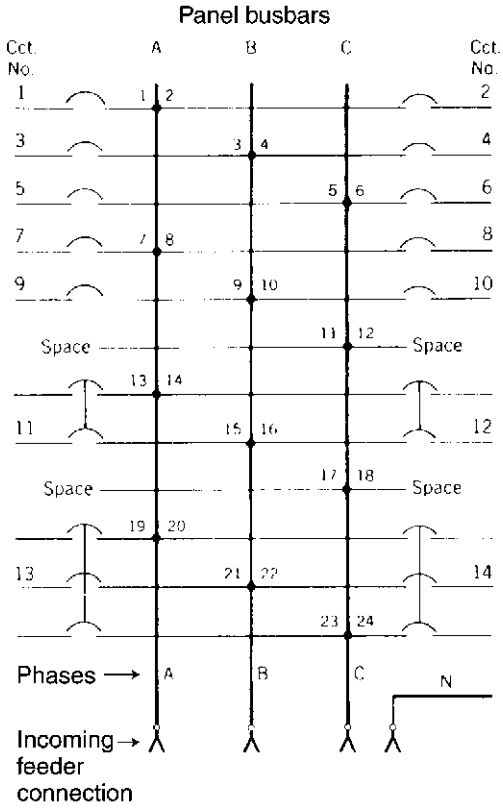


Fig. 26.33 Typical schematic diagram for a panel. Note that single-pole, 2-pole, and 3-pole circuit breakers are connected to 1-, 2-, and 3-phase buses, respectively. They supply 120-V 2-wire, 120/208-V 3-wire, and 120/208-V 3-phase 4-wire, respectively. This panelboard would be described as a 3-phase 4-wire lighting and appliance panel, with 10 SP, 2-2P, and 2-3P circuit breakers, lugs in mains only. The voltage of the panel and the ampere ratings of buses and all circuit breakers would then be specified.

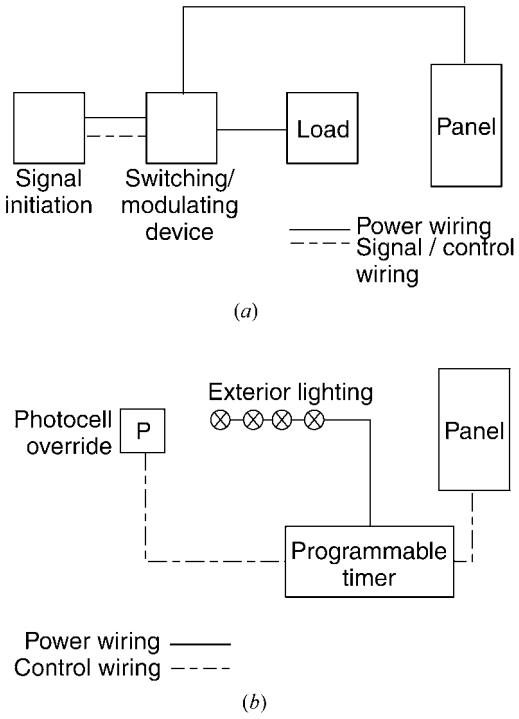


Fig. 26.34 (a) A low-voltage lighting control system always includes the elements shown. Signal initiation can come from a sensor such as a photocell or from a control device such as a timer, an override signal, a central computer signal, and the like. The signal activates the power-switching device, which in turn switches or modulates the load. The power source is always the associated lighting panelboard. (b) Schematic arrangement of a control system for exterior lighting. If the system is compact, a switching timer would be used. For a spread system, timer-controlled switching relays at each fixture would be used with attendant additional control wiring. Grouping of the fixtures into different control sequences (road, parking lot, building entrance, etc.) further complicates the wiring.

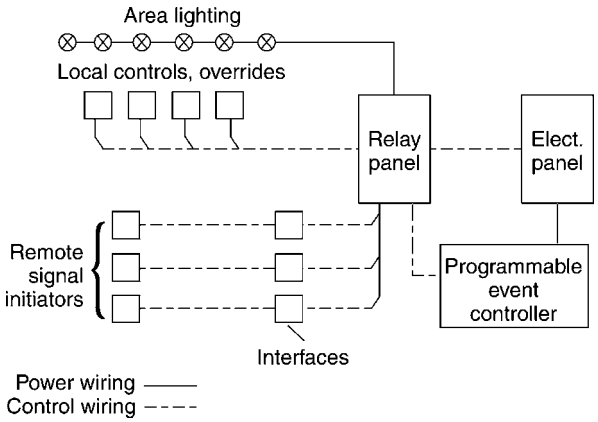
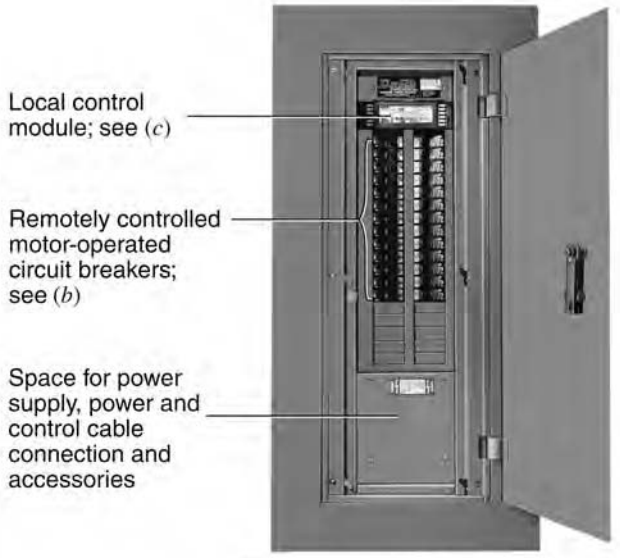


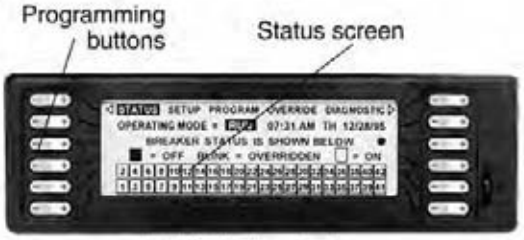
Fig. 26.35 Schematic diagram showing equipment and connections that might be used for control of a block of lighting in a large commercial building. The wiring can be even more complex and extensive if control of smaller lighting groups is desired or if control is desired from more than one location.



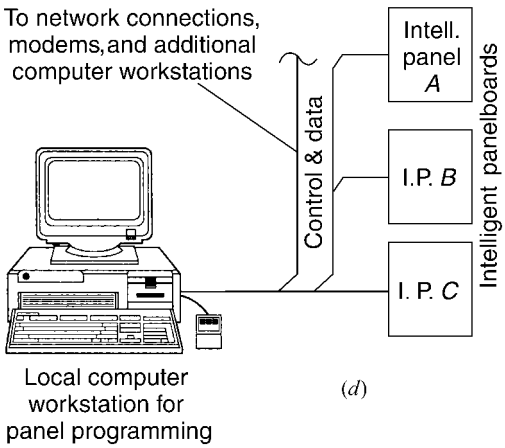
(a) Intelligent panelboard



(b) Single-pole motor-operated circuit breaker



(c) Control module



(d)

Fig. 26.36 *(a) This intelligent panelboard contains (from top to bottom) a microprocessor control module, 26 single-pole, remote-controllable (motor-operated) circuit breakers, space for 10 additional poles, and a compartment containing a dc power supply (for circuit breaker operation) and accessories. (b) This motorized single-pole circuit breaker can be manually or remotely controlled. Electric operation latches the circuit breaker so that in the event of power failure, all breakers remain in their pre-outage condition. The illustrated unit is a 100-A frame, 20-A trip unit. A status window on each unit displays its condition, while electronic sensors in each unit sense voltages and indicate on the control panel the status of each unit. (c) The control module, mounted at the top of the panelboard, is equipped with programming buttons that allow control of each circuit breaker individually. The illustrated basic control module programs and controls essential functions, including configuration, circuit breaker status, resetting, zoning, settings for hardware characteristics, override modes, screen selection, and self-diagnostics. Additional control modules (not shown) supply time-based programming, logging functions, and timed functions. The illustrated breaker status screen is one of five displays. The others are setup, program, override, and diagnostic screens. (d) Intelligent panels can be incorporated into a large control network by use of interface connections of various types (not shown). The illustration is a block diagram showing one of the networking possibilities. (All photos courtesy of Square D.)*

incorporated into the panelboard by use of a compact, centralized, programmable microprocessor, the corresponding external devices and associated wiring are eliminated. The switching function is made possible by the use of motor- or solenoid-operated panel circuit breakers, thus taking advantage of their switching capability and eliminating the need for relays, contactors, and switches. The internal central controller permits local programmable control of each panel circuit breaker *individually*.

This central panel-mounted controller can also accept signal data from individual remote or network sources and can provide status reports, alarm signals, operational logs, and local bypass and override functions. Control cards in an adjacent cabinet, connected to the controller, can provide local switch override, daylight dimming and on–off control, telephone override energy control, electric demand control, and networking. With careful planning, the high initial cost of an intelligent panelboard can be offset by elimination of remote relays, relay panels, programmable time switches, remote-control switches, and all of their associated wiring. Simplified and improved facility operation, plus reduced maintenance costs and electric bills, are additional benefits that can be achieved with proper application and careful design. Figure 26.36 shows the essential elements of an intelligent panelboard and a typical network arrangement using the remote-control capabilities of such panels.

26.24 ELECTRIC MOTORS

Motors are frequently supplied along with the equipment they drive (such as fans, blowers, and so on) as part of a complete package. The actual choice of motor is left to the driven-equipment supplier, because the supplier is presumed best qualified to select a motor that will optimally match the driven-equipment requirements for whose proper operation the supplier is responsible. In practice, however, a supplier is frequently guided primarily by price—low first cost being a recurring theme in building design and construction, very often to the detriment of low life-cycle cost. The designer, therefore, should be sufficiently knowledgeable so that the best motor for the application can be specified. The following sections are written with that purpose in mind, and are primarily concerned with application.

(a) Direct-Current Motors

These motors are not normally used in building work. The fine speed control (for which they were primarily used) is now available, more economically, with ac motors, as explained in Section 26.26.

(b) Alternating-Current Motors

These motors fall into three general classifications: poly-phase induction motors, poly-phase synchronous motors, and single-phase motors. Within these categories there are further subdivisions. Of these many types, most motors used in building equipment are squirrel-cage induction machines; therefore, this type is studied in some detail.

(c) Squirrel-Cage Induction Motors

This type of induction motor owes its interesting name to an early design in which the rotor consisted of a group of bars welded together into a cylindrical cage-type shape. The design, invented by Nikola Tesla, is basically unchanged today except for refinements. Squirrel-cage motors are manufactured in four different NEMA designs to meet different application requirements. Of these the most common are:

Type B: standard design, high efficiency and power factor, normal torque; applicable to fans, blowers, and pumps

Type C: high starting torque, fair efficiency and power factor; applicable to compressors, conveyors, and other devices that start under load

A motor nameplate gives important information on a motor that is not self-evident:

1. *Type:* This is the manufacturer's designation and indicates primarily the enclosure. Common enclosures are open drip-proof, totally enclosed, fan-cooled, and weather-protected.
2. *Duty (time rating):* Continuous or intermittent.
3. *Service factor:* Permissible overload; generally 15%.

4. *kVA code:* Indicates by a letter the maximum starting current per horsepower. This is useful in selecting motor-protective devices. More recently, actual locked rotor amperes have been given.
5. *Frame:* A NEMA standard number that indicates the motor's physical dimensions.
6. *Motor voltage:* The standard motor voltages are 208, 230/460, and 575 V. Induction motors generally operate satisfactorily at +/− 10% voltage. Only 208-V motors should be used on 208-V systems because the actual line voltage may be as low as 200 V. Using a 230-V motor on a 200-V circuit will result in sharply reduced torque, increased temperature rise, and poor overload capacity.
7. *Motor nominal full-load efficiency:* As stated; a requirement of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 and EPACT.
8. *Design letter:* Indicates inherent motor design characteristics.

(d) Electric Motor Energy Considerations

The federal Energy Policy Act of 1992 (EPACT; subsequently updated/amended in 2005) required that the most common designs of induction motors, accounting for 70% to 80% of all poly-phase induction motors sold in the United States, meet higher efficiency and power-factor standards. Specifically, these efficiency standards apply to single-speed, poly-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors, designs A and B, continuous rating, and operating at 230/460 V, 60 Hz. These motors are known as *premium efficiency* or *PE* motors.

The decision on whether to use a PE motor in applications not mandated by law is essentially an economic and environmental one. Many motor manufacturers make available straightforward software that enables a designer to rapidly make a detailed life-cycle cost comparison among motor types, with operating time, loading, first cost, energy and maintenance costs, and so on as the variables. As a guideline, motor applications involving low starting torque and frequent motor operation at partial load are likely candidates for short payback periods on the price premium of PE motors. Higher efficiency also results in reduced consumption of the typically nonrenewable energy resources used to generate electricity.

26.25 MOTOR CONTROL STANDARDS

Until recently, American designers and equipment manufacturers utilized motor control equipment manufactured to NEMA standards exclusively. It was also common practice in the construction industry to split the motor and motor-control package by having equipment manufacturers supply the motorized equipment while the electrical construction contractor supplied the motor control equipment. Few coordination problems between controller and motor drive were encountered because control equipment sized and built to NEMA standards is large, heavy duty, and applicable to a wide range of motor sizes and characteristics.

The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is a technical organization with 52 full (including the U.S.) and 17 associate member nations. It develops recommended standards for electrical equipment, including motor controls. The IEC design concept is one of close coordination between a motor and its controller. This application sensitivity, coupled with flexible ratings for a single piece of equipment, depending upon its application, makes equipment built to IEC standards smaller, lighter, and cheaper than similarly rated equipment built to NEMA standards. As a result, many U.S. manufacturers utilize IEC motor controls in conjunction with their motive equipment, particularly on international jobs. Because American architects, engineers, and contractors are involved in a large number of construction projects outside of the territorial United States, those responsible for designing, specifying, and purchasing electrical equipment in general, and motor control equipment in particular, should be aware of the comparative characteristics of NEMA-based and IEC-based equipment.

26.26 MOTOR CONTROL

(a) Fundamentals

A conventional ac motor controller is basically a contactor (see Section 26.14) designed to handle the heavy inrush currents involved in starting an ac motor. Its function is twofold: to start and stop the motor and to protect it from overload. These two separate and distinct functions are accomplished by

combining a set of contacts for on/off control with a set of thermal overload elements for overload protection in a single unit. When the contacts are operated by hand, the controller is called a *manual starter*; when the contacts are operated by a magnetic coil controlled by pushbuttons, thermostats, or other devices, the unit is known as a *magnetic controller* or, simply and more commonly, a *magnetic starter*.

Motors of 1 hp (0.75 kW) or less are generally controlled by a manual switch that contains an overload protection device. It is advisable to utilize such a device for all fractional horsepower (low kW) motors.

Most starters are of the full-voltage across-the-line (ATL) type; that is, the contacts place the motor directly onto the line, and the motor starts up immediately. When such a procedure is undesirable because of voltage dip and flicker caused by the large inrush current or because of utility company limitations, a reduced-voltage starter, sometimes called a *compensator*, is used. These units initially apply reduced voltage to the motor, thus reducing the starting inrush current and line voltage drop. This in turn reduces dimming of lights, flicker, and other undesirable effects.

Older reduced-voltage starters use a stepping arrangement whereby voltage is increased incrementally, thus limiting inrush current. Unfortunately, starting torque is also limited, thus restricting the application of these starters. Solid-state starters that have been available since the late 1980s provide continuous (stepless), controlled motor starting. These units not only limit inrush current, but also, by adjusting the acceleration time, allow the required starting torque of the motor to be maintained. Such starters provide *soft* starts (i.e., starts that minimize the mechanical stresses caused by rapid application of accelerating torque). Additional advantages of these units are reduced size and weight, long life, more sophisticated motor protection, and additional operating functions such as jogging and reversal. Disadvantages are higher cost and possible radio frequency noise problems (Fig. 26.37).



Fig. 26.37 *Soft starter type for 3-phase induction motors of up to 1400 hp (1045 kW), shown without an enclosure. This microprocessor-based unit provides two selectable starting characteristics with stepless acceleration, plus additional control and protection functions including reversing control, over- and undervoltage and current protection, and two normal motor operating speeds. (Photo courtesy of Magnetek.)*

(b) Motor Speed Control

Many applications in HVAC, fluid piping, and industrial systems require speed control of electric motors. Until recently, this constituted a problem whose solution was expensive, often space-consuming, and rarely energy-efficient. The reason for this is that the common squirrel-cage induction motor is essentially a constant-speed device, where speed is determined by power line frequency and motor design. Speed drops slightly (slips) as the load increases. Until the advent of cheap electronic power equipment, speed control was usually accomplished by using a wound-rotor motor in lieu of a squirrel-cage unit. This drastically increased both motor and controller costs while providing only limited speed control.

Advances in power electronics have made practical a variable-voltage, variable-frequency (VVVF) controller that gives smooth, continuous speed control over a range exceeding 30 to 1 while maintaining motor torque. These highly reliable controllers, also known as *variable frequency drives* (VFD), provide considerable energy economies that usually result in rapid payback of the relatively high first cost of equipment. The essentials of the VVVF control scheme are shown in Fig. 26.38. Voltage

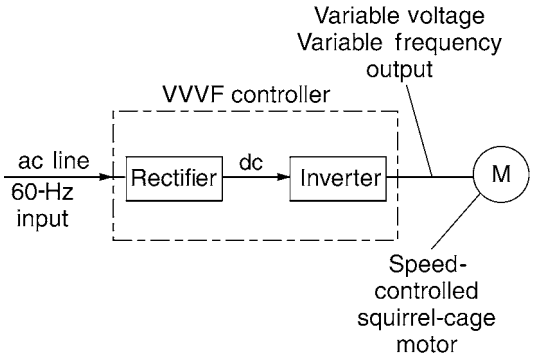


Fig. 26.38 *Schematic representation of the action of a variable-voltage, variable-frequency (VVVF) motor speed controller. Line voltage at 60 Hz is rectified to dc and the inverted voltage to ac. Frequency and voltage control are built into the inverters, designed to maintain a constant voltage-to-frequency ratio. This constancy is necessary to prevent malfunction of the motor as its speed is varied.*

control, in addition to frequency control, is necessary in order to maintain a constant voltage/frequency ratio, which is necessary for efficient, safe operation. An increase in this ratio results in overheating of the motor, whereas a decrease results in insufficient torque. Additional advances in power electronics have produced motor speed controllers with controlled speed ratios approaching 1000:1.

One disadvantage of these speed controllers has been the production of line harmonics and radio noise of sufficient strength to constitute a serious engineering problem. At this writing, these problems have been mitigated, and will undoubtedly be pursued to the point that, except for highly sensitive areas, the interference will be negligible. At this point, however, the designer must investigate these effects for the particular application. Typical adjustable-frequency controllers are shown in Fig. 26.39.

26.27 MOTOR CONTROL EQUIPMENT

All the starters discussed previously are available in a wide range of sizes, voltages, and enclosure types. Every motor controller is required by the *NEC* to have a disconnecting means for safety reasons. Where convenient, this disconnect switch may be combined with the starter into a single unit known as a *combination starter*. A circuit breaker or fused switch is often used in such an arrangement, which then constitutes the branch circuit protection and disconnecting means (Fig. 26.40).

A typical, brief description of a conventional motor controller would be similar to the following: combination circuit-breaker type, across-the-line motor controller, NEMA size 2, three O.L. (overload) elements, 208 V, in a NEMA 1 enclosure. Starter shall contain integral on/off pushbuttons.

Table 26.6 gives the approximate dimensions of one particular type of combination starter. As with other electrical equipment, a current manufacturer's catalog must be consulted for reliable data on a particular manufacturer's products.

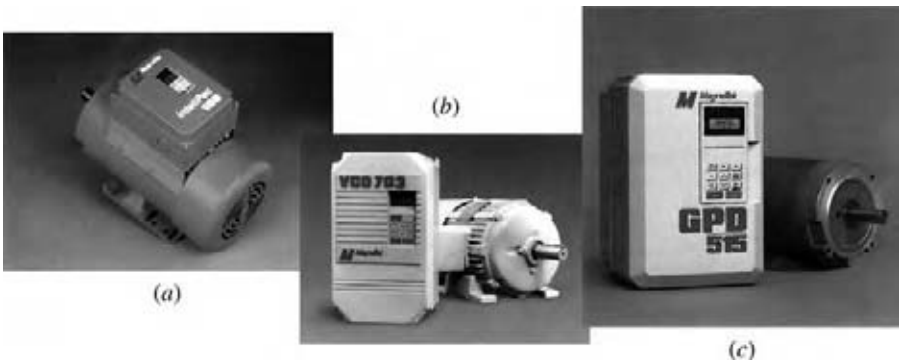


Fig. 26.39 *Three modern programmable, microprocessor-controlled motor controllers. (a) Integrated motor and controller for motors of up to 1 hp (0.75 kW). The controller provides a soft start, a speed control range of 40:1, high efficiency, multiple speed settings, and full motor protection. (b) Controller for motors of up to 3-phase, 400 hp (300 kW); this type of unit provides programmable functions including speed control from standstill to double-rated speed, reversing, adjustable acceleration, and full motor protection. (c) Controller that can be programmed for three different control modes. Speed control range, regulation, and torque curves vary in each mode to suit the specific controlled load. The controller has low harmonic distortion plus fault diagnostic software, in addition to the normal overload and protective characteristics. It also has terminals for remote monitoring and control plus network control capabilities. A 20-hp (15-kW), 230-V controller in a NEMA 1 (indoor) enclosure measures approximately 16 in. × 10 in. × 9 in. (400 × 250 × 230 mm) and weighs 24 lb (11 kg). (Photos courtesy of Magnetek.)*

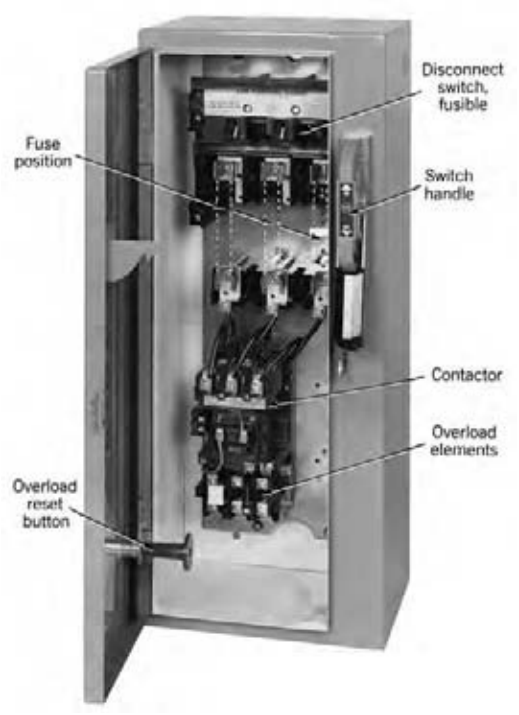


Fig. 26.40 *Interior of a conventional (non-solid-state) combination fused switch-type, across-the-line motor controller. Note that the unit is essentially a switch and a starter wired together and installed in a single cabinet. Approximate dimensions of the illustrated unit are 20 in. W × 48 in. H × 9 in. D (510 × 1140 × 230 mm), with a 75-hp (56-kW) capacity. (Courtesy of Allen-Bradley Co.)*

TABLE 26.6 Rating and Approximate Dimensions[a] of ac Full-Voltage Conventional Single-Speed Motor Controllers, 3-Phase Combination Circuit Breaker Type[b]

NEMA Size[c] Designation	Maximum Horsepower (kW)[c]	*Width*	*Height*	*Depth*
		in. (mm)		
0	3 (2.2)	10 (254)	24 (610)	7 (178)
1	7½ (5.6)	10 (254)	24 (610)	7 (178)
2	15 (11.2)	10 (254)	24 (610)	7 (178)
3	30 (22)	20 (508)	24 (610)	9 (229)
4	50 (37)	20 (508)	48 (1219)	9 (229)
5	100 (75)	20 (508)	56 (1422)	11 (279)

[a]Dimensions vary among manufacturers.

[b]All starters are housed in a NEMA 1 indoor ventilated enclosure.

[c]Maximum hp that can be controlled at 208–230 V. Generally, when operating at 460 V, a starter one size smaller can be used.

Dimensions vary somewhat among manufacturers (while still meeting NEMA specifications). As noted previously, physical characteristics for control equipment of similar ratings can vary greatly among items made to meet IEC specifications and those made to NEMA specifications.

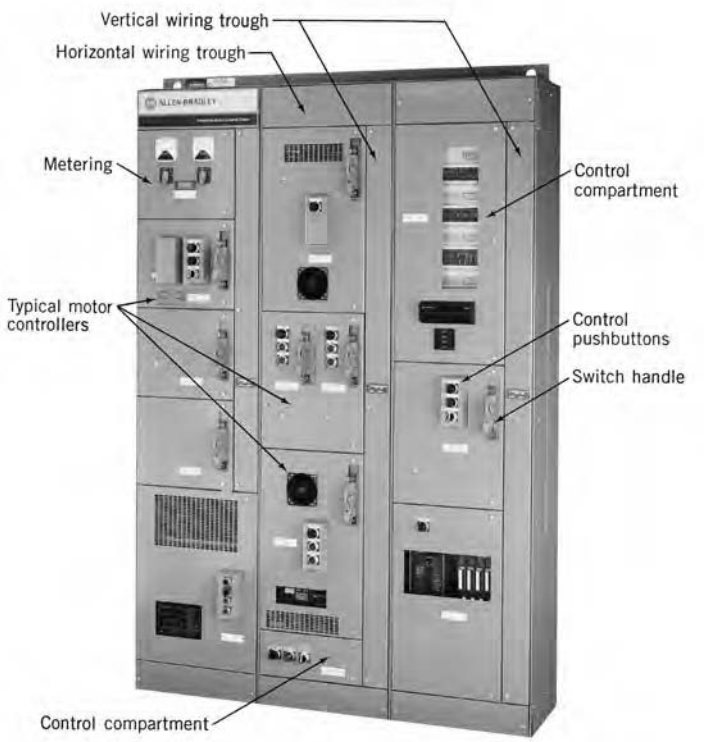
Where several motors are installed in close proximity to one another, it is often convenient from the control perspective, as well as economically, to combine the motor starters, disconnect switches, motor controls, and indicating devices into a single large assembly. Such an assembly is called a *motor control center* (MCC). Typical MCC types are shown in Fig. 26.41.

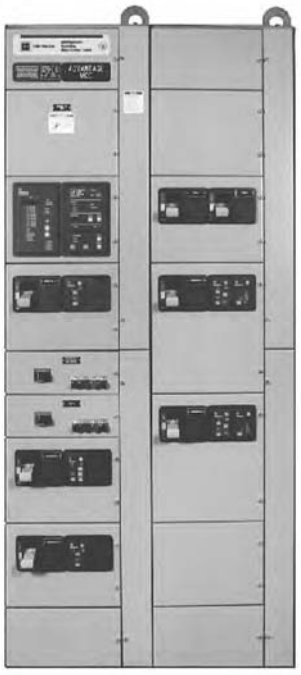
26.28 WIRING DEVICES: GENERAL DESCRIPTION

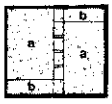
The general term *wiring devices* includes all devices that are normally installed in wall outlet boxes, including receptacles, switches, dimmers, fan controls, and so on. Attachment plugs, also called *caps*, and wall plates are also included in wiring devices.

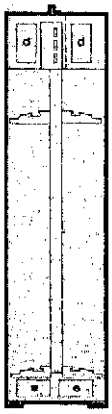
There are three grades of device quality, using NEMA and UL grading nomenclature: hospital grade, federal specification grade, and UL general-purpose grade—in descending order of price and quality. Inasmuch as these grades correspond to published specification requirements, they are the only reliable gauge of construction quality. Hospital-grade devices are identified by a green dot on the device face. These devices are built to withstand severe abuse while maintaining reliable operation and must meet UL requirements for this grade.

Manufacturers usually grade their devices as hospital grade, premium or industrial specification grade, commercial specification grade, and residential grade, in descending order of quality and price. Hospital grade is approximately the same among manufacturers because industry standards must be met. Industrial and commercial specification grades correspond roughly to federal specification grade, and residential grade to UL general-purpose grade. Manufacturers' grades are qualitative, although reputable makers list the NEMA and UL specifications that each of their grades meets. It is only on this standardized basis that a technical quality comparison can be made.









a. Control Unit
b. Vertical Wireway
d. Top Horizontal Wireway
e. Bottom Horizontal Wireway

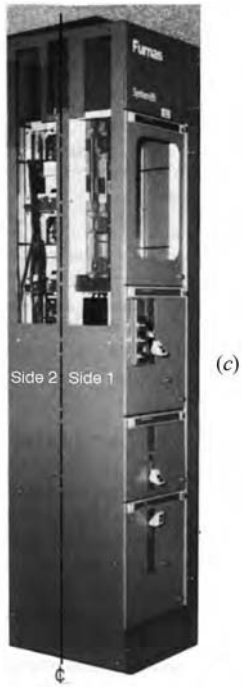


Fig. 26.41 *Motor control centers (MCC) of various constructions. (a) Conventional MCC construction with magnetic motor starters, manual local control, analog metering, and conventional overload and protective equipment. (b) Back-to-back construction of conventional MCC adds only 5 in. (125 mm) to the basic 15-in. (380-mm) depth. (c) Units are 90 in. (2.3 m) high and 20 in. (500 mm) wide per section. Solid-state controllers can be installed in this unit, as well as in the MCC shown in (a), along with conventional magnetic contactors. (d) MCC that uses solid-state programmable controllers with heaterless overload protection. The unit also provides protection against phase loss, single phasing, and ground faults. Single side units in this construction are 90 in. (2.3 m) H × 20 in. (500 mm) W × 16–20 in. (400–500 mm) D (depending upon starter size). Back-to-back construction is 21 in. (534 mm) D. (Photos courtesy of Allen-Bradley [a], Siemens-Furnas [b, c], and Cutler-Hammer [d].)*

In application, industrial specification grade equipment is usually used in industrial and high-grade commercial construction; commercial specification grade in most educational and good residential buildings; and standard or residential grade in low-cost construction of all types. The grade of wiring devices should, as with all electrical equipment, be consistent with the quality of construction in the facility as a whole.

Although historically the term *wiring device* referred to devices that operate at line voltage (120, 208, 240, and 277 V) in a branch circuit, the term today also includes low-voltage lighting control devices, fan controls, and the like. The accepted criteria seem to be that only devices rated 30 amps or less, that can be mounted in a small wall box, are considered wiring devices. Communication attachments are not usually considered wiring devices, even when they are supplied by the electrical contractor. They are part of *premise wiring*, which is the term commonly used to describe data and communication system wiring, raceways, and devices (see Fig. 27.21).

26.29 WIRING DEVICES: RECEPTACLES

A receptacle is, by *NEC* definition, "a contact device installed at the outlet for the connection of a single attachment plug." This usually takes the form of the common wall outlet or, as illustrated later, larger and more complex devices. A comment about terminology is required. The common wall outlet is properly called a *convenience receptacle outlet*, *a receptacle outlet*, or a *convenience outlet*. The term *wall plug*, which is heard so often, is incorrect. A *plug* is another name for the attachment device (cap) on the wire that carries electricity to the appliance. The device at the end of the line cord is plugged into the wall, hence *plug*.

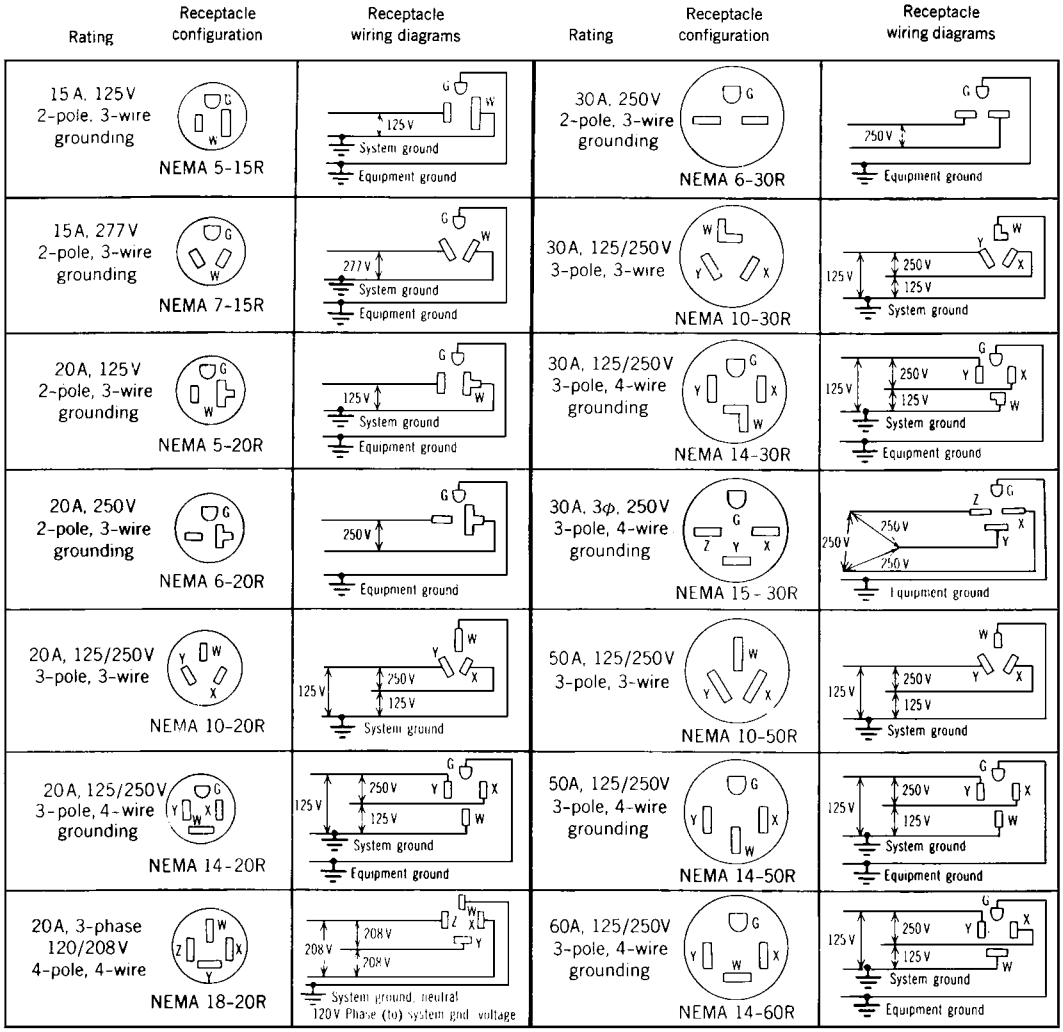
Because by *NEC* definition a receptacle is a contact device for the connection of a single attachment plug, and because the normal wall convenience receptacle will accept two attachment plugs, it is properly called a *duplex convenience receptacle* or *duplex convenience outlet*. Most people shorten this term to *duplex receptacle* or *duplex outlet*.

Receptacles are identified by the number of poles, the number of wires, and whether the device is designed for connection of a separate equipment ground. (This ground may connect to a separate equipment-grounding wire or to the metallic conduit system, according to system design.) The number of receptacle *poles* equals the number of current-carrying contacts, including the neutral. The equipment ground connection (pole) is not counted because it does not (normally) carry current. The number of *wires* includes the equipment ground connection because it is wired. The equipment ground connection (grounding pole) should not be confused with the system ground (usually the neutral pole), nor may the wiring for the two be interchanged (see Section 28.4).

In a typical application, a receptacle for an electric dryer with a 4800-W, 208-V heating element and a ⅙-hp (0.12 kW), 115-V motor would be NEMA 14-50R (Fig. 26.42). The motor would connect across W and X, the heater across X and Y, and the appliance case to G. Receptacles installed on standard 15- or 20-A branch circuits must be of the grounding type. Receptacles connected to different voltages, frequencies, or current type (ac or dc) on the same premises must be polarized so that attachment plugs are not interchangeable. Figure 26.42 shows some of the standard receptacle configurations and their ratings. Figure 26.43 shows typical receptacle construction plus enclosures for use in damp and wet locations.

Receptacles are readily available from 10 to 400 A, 2 to 4 poles, and 125 to 600 V. In addition, special types such as locking, explosionproof, tamperproof, and decorative design units are made. Also, specific-usage devices, such as electric range receptacles, are available. All receptacles other than the normal 15/20-A, 3-wire, parallel-slot type should be specified to be furnished with at least two matching caps (plugs). A typical receptacle specification would be: receptacle, duplex, 2-pole, 3-wire, grounding type, 20 A, 250 V, federal specification grade, for indoor use. Receptacles are normally mounted vertically between 12 and 18 in. (305 to 457 mm) above the finished floor (AFF), except that in shops, labs, and other areas where tables are placed against the walls, 42 in. (1.07 m) is the usual mounting height.

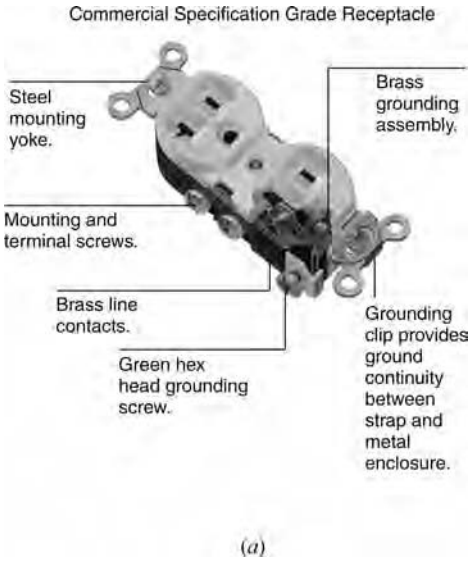
In addition to these types, several manufacturers produce a receptacle with built-in ground-fault circuit protection (Fig. 26.44). For a discussion of these ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) receptacles, see Section 28.4.



Note: "W" denotes white system ground or neutral
"G" denotes green equipment ground.

Fig. 26.42 *Receptacle configuration chart with selected common general-purpose, nonlocking devices with associated NEMA designations.*

The great sensitivity of modern electronic equipment to voltage surges and electrical *noise* (random, spurious electrical voltages) has led to the development of two special receptacles. Receptacles with built-in surge suppression protect connected equipment from overvoltage spikes. Receptacles with an insulated equipment-grounding terminal separate the device ground terminal from the system (raceway) ground because it has been determined that much unwanted electrical noise can be eliminated by such disconnection. The receptacle's insulated ground terminal is connected to an isolated green ground conductor that carries through the entire system but is connected to the system ground at the service entrance only; hence the name *isolated ground*. Isolated ground receptacles are identified by an orange triangle on their face (see Fig. 26.45). A receptacle with built-in surge suppression (see Section 26.37) is shown in Fig. 26.45.



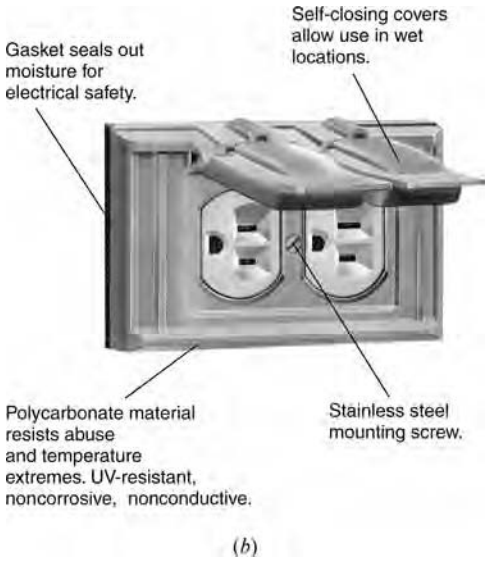




Fig. 26.43 *(a) Cutaway of a commercial, specification-grade duplex convenience receptacle showing its construction. (b) Receptacles installed in damp locations, outdoors but not exposed to the rain, or in wet locations but used to energize portable equipment and continuously attended, should have a cover that is weatherproof when the attachment plug cap is removed, of which one type is illustrated. (NEC Article 410-57b[2].) (c) Receptacles in wet locations (that may be in use unattended) must have a weatherproof enclosure, the integrity of which is not affected by the attachment of a plug. One such enclosure is illustrated. (NEC Article 410-57b[1].) (All photos courtesy of Eagle Electric Manufacturing Co., Inc.)*

26.30 WIRING DEVICES: SWITCHES

Switches of up to 30 A that can be outlet-box mounted fall into this category. Generally, because of their better construction, ac-only switches are preferable to the ac/dc type. The usual ac switch rating is 15, 20, or 30 A at 120 or 120/277 V. Usual constructions are single-pole, 2-pole, 3-way, 4-way, momentary-contact, 2-circuit, and maintained-contact SPDT (single-pole, double-throw) and DPDT (double-pole, double-throw). Operating handles are toggle, key, push, touch, rocker, rotary, and tap-plate types. Mercury and ac quiet types are relatively noiseless; toggle, tumbler, and ac/dc types are generally not. A typical switch specification might be: switch, single-pole, ac, quiet type, federal specification grade, 15 A, 120 V, with press handles lighted when off, for side wiring only.

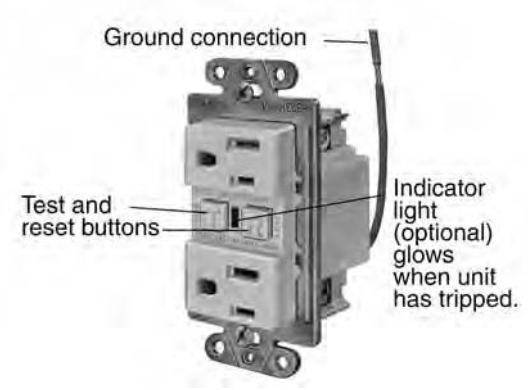


Fig. 26.44 *Where it is desired to provide ground-fault protection at a single outlet only, and thereby localize power interruption (rather than using a GFCI circuit breaker on the entire circuit), a receptacle containing a ground-fault interrupter, as illustrated, may be used. A test button is provided to permit periodic testing, and a reset button reenergizes the receptacle after it has tripped on ground fault and the fault has been cleared. (Courtesy of Eagle Electric Manufacturing Co., Inc.)*

A switch incorporating a solid-state rectifier is readily available that gives high/off/low control for *incandescent lamps* and costs very little more than an ordinary switch. Typical applications are in areas where a lower illumination level is often acceptable and always desirable as an energy-conserving measure. In high-security areas where an easily defeated normal key-operated switch is inadequate, a tumbler lock-controlled unit can be used. Loads that can be timed out, such as bathroom heaters and ventilating fans, can be controlled by a spring-wound timer switch, as illustrated in Fig. 26.46 (which also illustrates a few common switch types). Figure 26.47 shows two common switch designs in cutaway, revealing their construction and operating mechanisms. A solid-state switch with adjustable time delay is shown in Fig. 26.48.

Thanks to miniature electronics, a programmable switch is available that fits into a wall-outlet box in lieu of an ordinary switch. The unit acts as a solid-state 15-A switch and can be readily programmed to switch the controlled circuit or device at preset times (see Fig. 26.48).



Fig. 26.45 *Hospital-grade, insulated (isolated) ground receptacle used where heavy duty is expected, and both reliability and freedom from electronic noise are required. Hospital grade is denoted by a green dot on the upper left of the receptacle face, and the insulated ground by an orange triangle on the upper right. (Some manufacturers make the entire receptacle orange.) (Photo courtesy of Leviton Manufacturing Co.)*

26.31 WIRING DEVICES: SPECIALTIES

The most common device in this group, which also includes pilot lights, fan controls, and other small motor controls, is the lighting dimmer. The original lighting dimmers were variable autotransformers. They were large, heavy, and expensive, and therefore found application mainly in theater lighting, displays, and the like. The advent of small electronic units (SCRs) made the modern wall-box dimmer possible. The simplest units are rotary, with limited capacity and applicable only to incandescent lamp loads. One of their disadvantages, still found in inexpensive units, is the production of annoying radio frequency interference (RFI) and line harmonics. Newer models are available that provide preset control, combine dimming and switching, are usable for smooth fan speed control, can be remotely controlled (in addition to local control), provide automatic fadeout, and can dim fluorescent lamps (provided with dimming ballasts). A few types are shown in Figs. 26.49 and 26.50.

26.32 LOW-VOLTAGE SWITCHING

The switches illustrated and discussed in Section 26.30 are all full-voltage types; that is, they are wired directly into the load circuit and operate at line voltage and full current. A control scheme that uses light-duty, low-voltage (24-V) switches

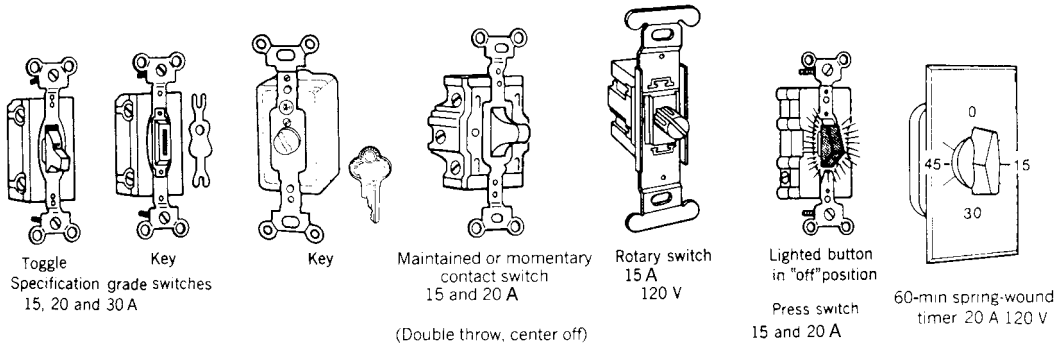


Fig. 26.46 *A few of the most common wiring device switches, generally installed in a small wall box and used for control of lighting circuits.*

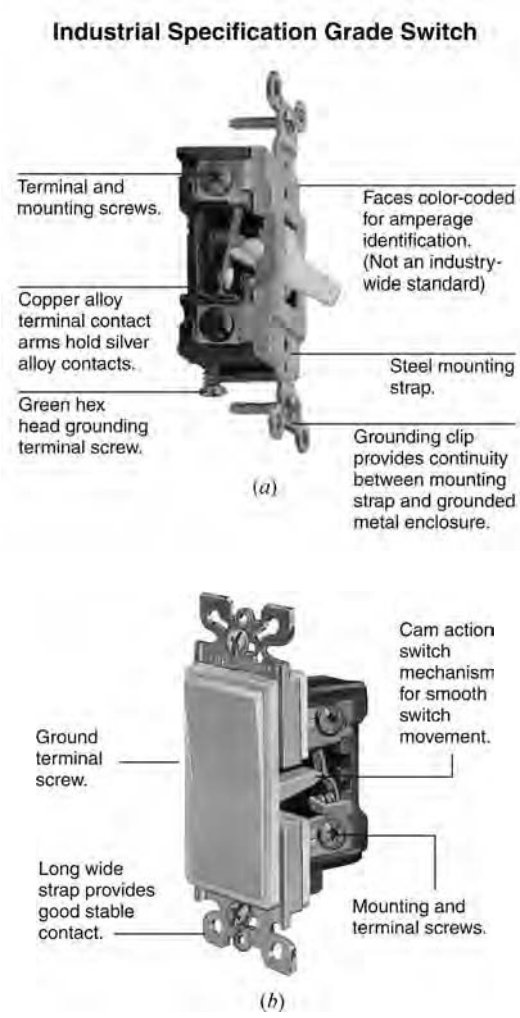


Fig. 26.47 *Cutaway drawing of two common wall-switch designs showing operating mechanisms and construction details. (a) Conventional toggle design. (b) Rocker plate design. (Drawings courtesy of Eagle Electric Manufacturing Co.)*

to control line voltage relays, which in turn do the actual circuit switching, is illustrated in Figs. 26.51 and 26.52. The system is variously referred to as *low-voltage switching*, *remote-control switching*, and *low-voltage control*.

Because the loads in this system are relay controlled, any number of switches and control



Fig. 26.48 *Solid-state adjustable electronic switch timer that mounts in a common wall-switch box. The unit switches off, with delay adjustable from zero to 15 minutes in five discrete steps. Units such as these can control incandescent and fluorescent lamps and small motors. They are applicable where either direct manual control or occupancy sensors are inapplicable. (Photo courtesy of Leviton Manufacturing Co.)*

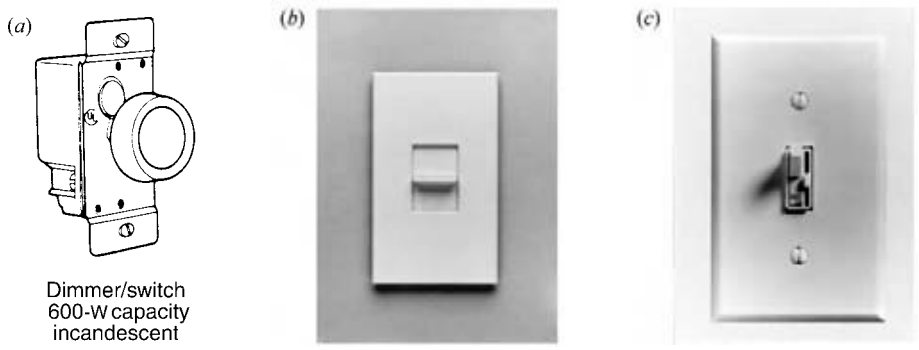


Fig. 26.49 *(a) Simple solid-state dimmer, suitable for a maximum 600-W incandescent load only. The switch permits level preset in a pushbutton design. Inexpensive units may cause considerable radio frequency interference (RFI). (b) Slide dimmer for a 600-W incandescent load, including on–off and level preset. This dimmer is available with a wireless receiver that responds to a handheld infrared remote control. (c) Combined on–off switch and slide dimmer provides preset level control. Units similar to (b) and (c) are available for loads of up to 1000 W, fluorescent lamp control (with appropriate ballast), and fan speed control. (Photos b and c courtesy of Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.)*

devices can be wired in parallel to operate a relay and thereby effect the switching. Thus, the control can be local, remote, and master, with individual override by local control devices such as occupancy sensors, and central control or override at a central controller by timers, daylight controllers, and so on. The advantages of this system of control over full-voltage switching are:

- Flexibility of control location
- Individual load control override by local control devices (occupancy sensors, photocells; see Section 15.15)
- Group load override by central control devices such as timers, daylight controllers, and energy management systems
- Low cost of low-voltage, low-current wiring compared to full-voltage wire and conduit
- Inherent system flexibility and simplification of alterations
- Monitoring of the status of individual loads at a centralized control panel by the use of relays with auxiliary contacts (see Fig. 26.51)

The second and third points are particularly important from an energy conservation perspective, as

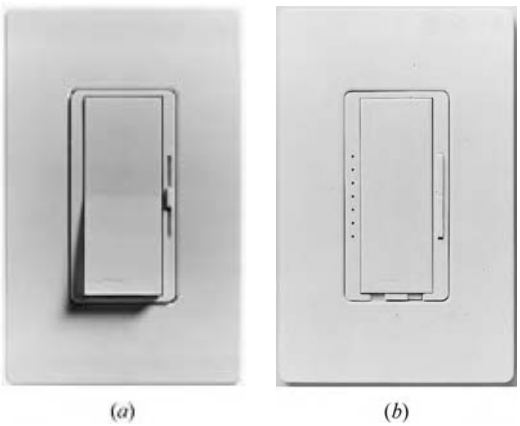


Fig. 26.50 *(a) Combined tap switch and slide dimmer provides preset level control. A built-in night-light suggests a residential application. (b) Multifunction tap switch in the center permits switching to full brightness, gradual brightening to preset, 10-second fade-out, and off. Rocker switch at the right controls levels. LEDs behind pinholes at the left provide an indication of the preset level. Both illustrated unit designs are available for incandescent and fluorescent (with special ballast) lamp control and fan speed control. Both are designed with RFI suppression. (Photos courtesy of Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.)*

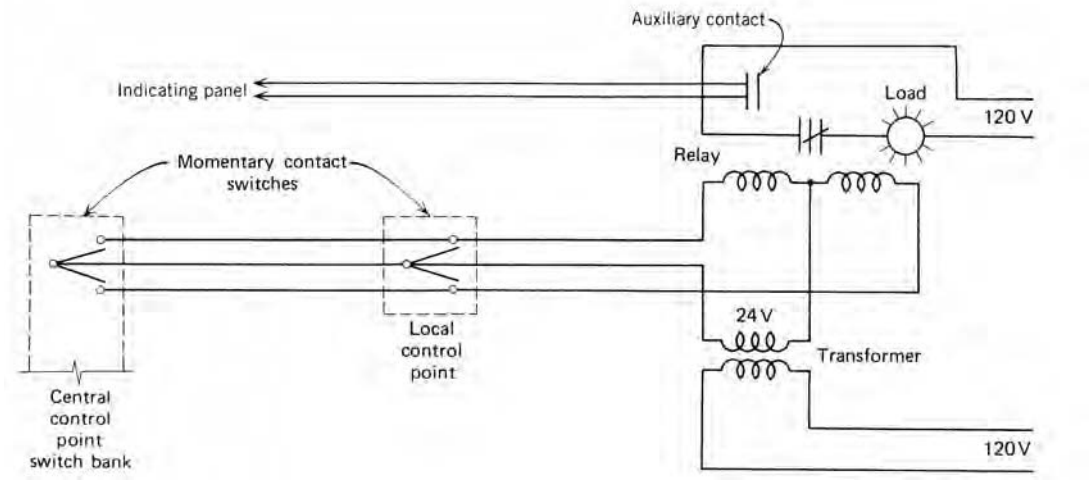


Fig. 26.51 *Low-voltage switching control. Multipoint control and central control are illustrated. The diagram shows the relays located at the load. Central relay cabinets are used in dense load areas.*

it has been amply demonstrated that reliance on manual controls to limit energy usage yields disappointing results.

The basic components of the entire system are the control relay and the switches, shown in Fig. 26.53. Small systems use hard wiring (physically wired connections), with the hard-wired relays installed either dispersed at each controlled fixture (or lighting group) or grouped in a relay panel. When the number of relays exceeds about 20, these panels become so densely wired that control changes become difficult and tedious. As a result, prewired computer- or microprocessor-controlled panels are used in large systems, where connections can be made and changed easily. The interior of one such panel is shown in Fig. 26.54. The logic of a

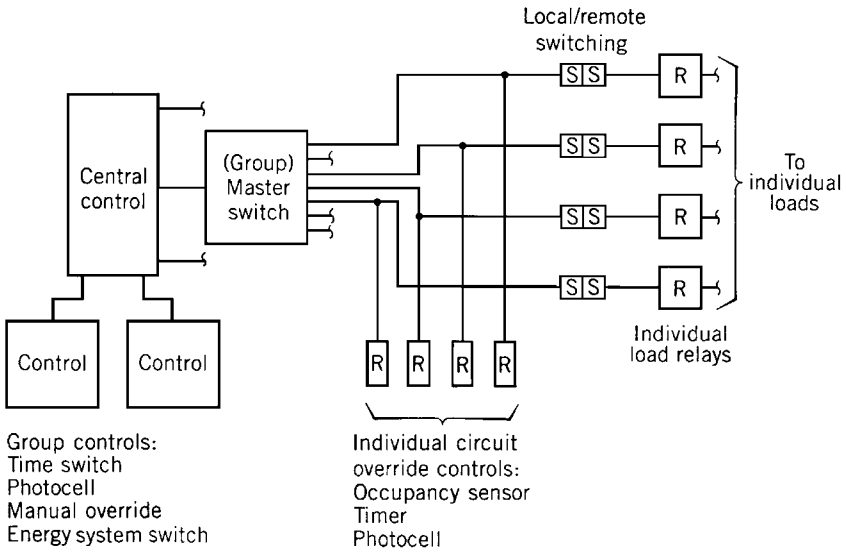


Fig. 26.52 *Schematic arrangement of a large low-voltage switching system. Individual loads can be switch-controlled from multiple locations, including a group (master) control point. In addition, local control devices such as photocells and occupancy sensors can override the local switches to maximize energy conservation. Central (group) control devices can perform the same override function at the group level.*

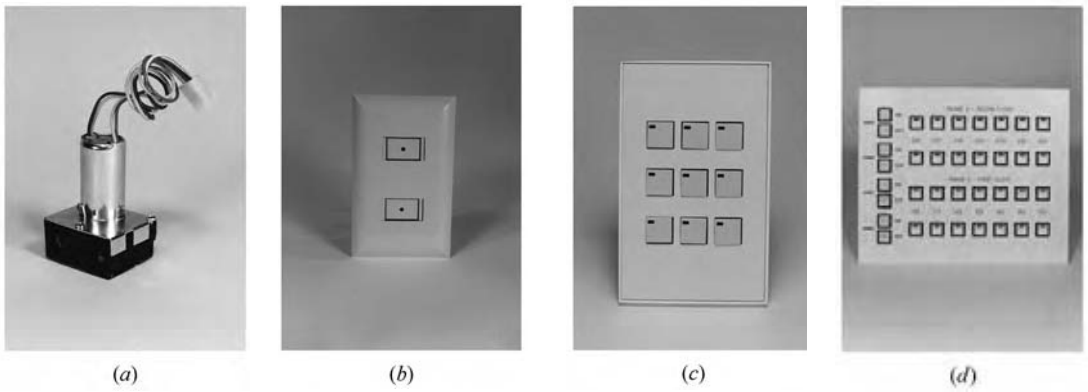


Fig. 26.53 *Components of low-voltage switching and control systems for lighting and other electric loads. (a) The basic switching device is a single-pole, double-throw latching relay with a 24-V coil and 20-A, 120–277-V contacts. It is shown with a plug-in connector on its leads, making it suitable for rapid mounting in a relay panel (see Fig. 26.54). The same relay without the connector is suitable for hard-wiring at a controlled device. (b) Low-voltage (24-V) wall switches can be mounted singly or ganged in groups of two to eight switches. Switches are available in button, rocker, key-operated, and lighted designs (as in b–d). (c) Switching station with pushbutton low-voltage switches, each with an LED to indicate switch position (on–off). (d) Switch bank with illuminated pushbutton switches identified with room number and floor. The on-off switches at the left of the bank are override switches for the corresponding horizontal line. (Photos courtesy of Touchplate Technologies, Inc.)*

medium-sized computer-controlled system is shown in Fig. 26.55. Manufacturers have made software available that permits rapid, accurate design of complex, large systems. A typical computer screen in such a system is shown in Fig. 26.56.

26.33 WIRELESS SWITCHING AND CONTROL

Full-voltage local switching was described in Section 26.30, and low-voltage switching, both local and remote, was described in Section 26.32. The next logical step is remote wireless control and switching. These systems have undergone extensive development. They impinge on the design considerations of architects and building engineers to the extent that facilities to accommodate such systems must be provided if such controls are to be used in a facility.

Aspects of wireless control and switching, as well as system functioning and application to lighting control, are discussed in detail in Chapter 15.

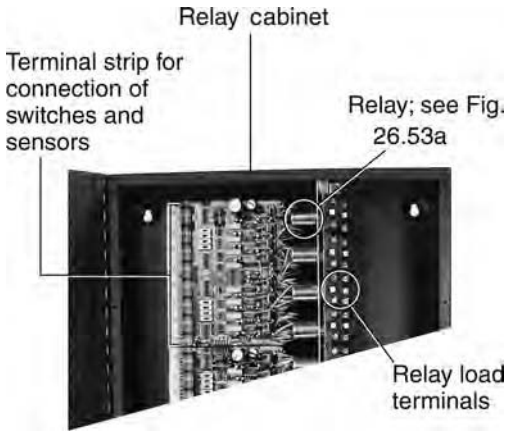


Fig. 26.54 *Prewired relay cabinet (partial). Field wiring consists of control wiring to switches and sensors and power wiring to the controlled loads. (Photo courtesy of Touchplate Technologies, Inc.)*

26.34 POWER LINE CARRIER SYSTEMS

Although the advantages inherent in flexible, programmable load-switching systems such as those described in the preceding sections are undeniable, particularly in connection with energy management systems, their high first cost frequently makes their use uneconomical. This is particularly true when retrofitting large, complex facilities with energy management controls, where the cost of wiring, even when using low-voltage control wires, can amount to more than half of the total cost of the project.

To minimize control wiring costs, a system of control signal transmission that uses the electric power wiring (either new or existing) to conduct

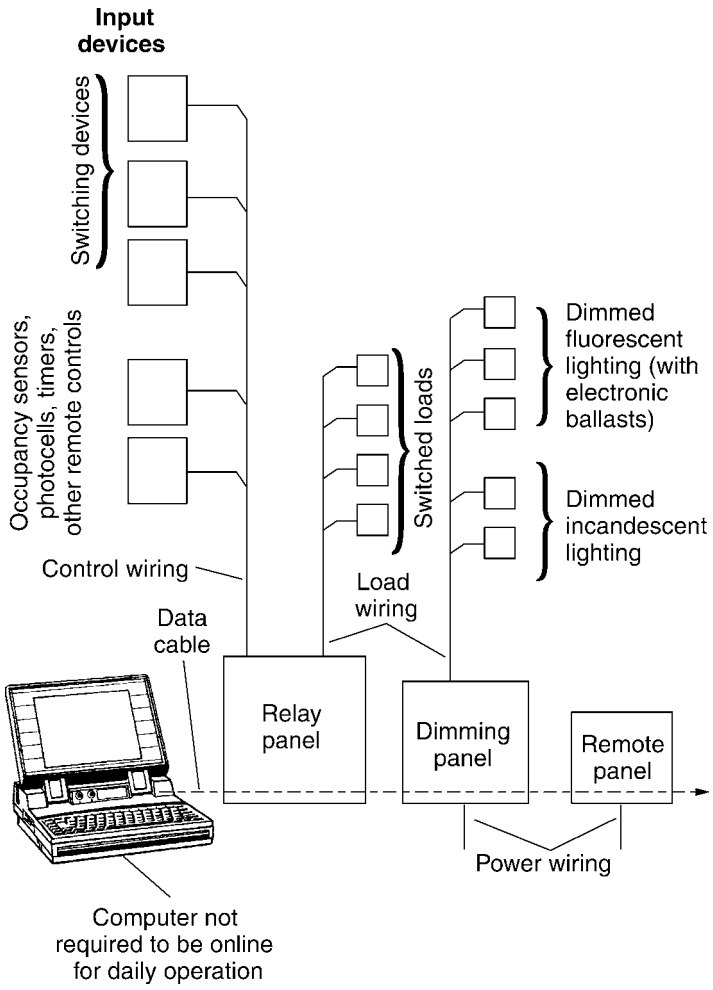


Fig. 26.55 *Block diagram of a large, computer-controlled, low-voltage control system. The relay panel contains the incoming and outgoing power and control wiring, the switching relays, and the computer interface card. The system arrangement is controlled by computer software. (Courtesy of Touchplate Technologies, Inc.)*

signals was developed, thus removing the need and expense for dedicated control wiring. This system is called a *power line carrier* (PLC) system because the power line carries the control signal. An ancillary benefit of such an arrangement is that not only can it be added to an existing system, it can also be easily removed, thus making possible and economical the leasing of energy management control systems.

The system operates by injecting into the power wiring a series of low-voltage, high-frequency, binary-coded control signals, which then disperse over the entire power network. Only a receiver that is "tuned" to receive a particular code reacts, generally by operating a local device, which in turn connects, disconnects, dims, or brightens a particular load. In practice, the control signal generator can be a small, manually programmed controller, as in a residence, or a computer-operated energy management or lighting controller in a commercial facility. The receivers are normally of four types, most of which are designed to fit into an ordinary wiring device box:

1. A wall-switch module, which acts as a normal manual wall light switch but also contains a coded receiver and a fully rated relay (20 A, 125 V, or 277 V)
2. A wall receptacle module, which contains a 20-A receptacle along with a receiver and relay that serve to switch power on and off
3. A switching module, which can be connected to activate contactors, small motors, and the like

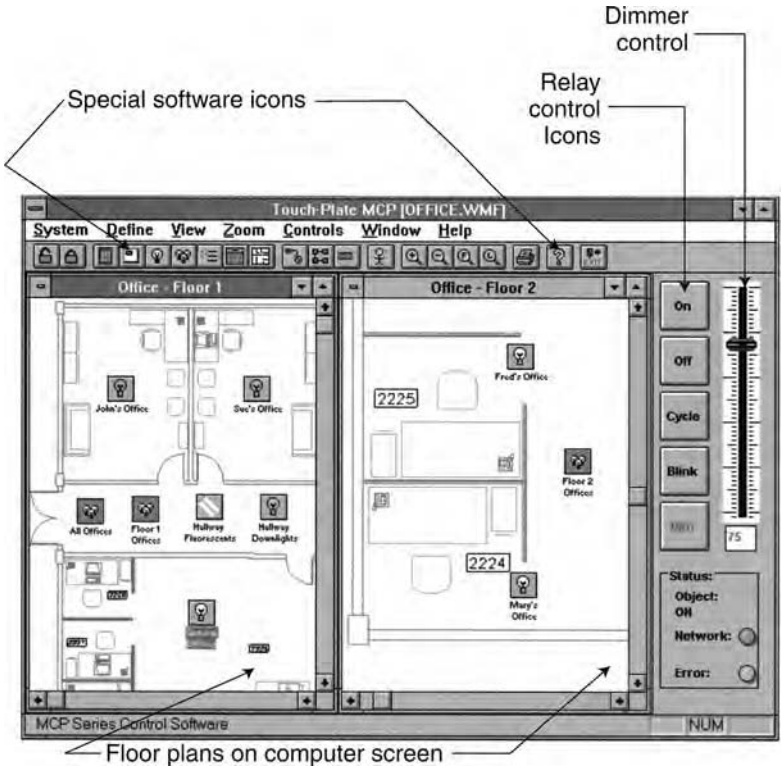


Fig. 26.56 *Typical computer screen of low-voltage control software showing facility floor plans (scanned in) and controlled loads. The icons at the top of the screen are customized and are used to control relays, make connections, check status, print, and log events by time and date. Other screens enable group and event definition, labeling, establishment of priorities, and other global sequential and individual control functions. (Courtesy of Touchplate Technologies, Inc.)*

4. A dimming module, which provides both local and remote control

Some of these components are shown in Fig. 26.57. Larger, multiple-circuit switching modules are also available for more extensive systems. Each miniature receiver can be manually tuned in the field (i.e., its code can be set and reset readily), giving the entire system extreme flexibility.

The system operates in the same manner as a low-voltage switching system or an energy management or lighting control system, with the essential difference that no dedicated control wiring is required. In retrofit jobs, existing wall switches and receptacle outlets are replaced with receiver-controlled units; in new installations, these devices are installed initially.

Due to the fact that the control signals travel over the power wiring and are therefore attenuated by high-resistance connections, poor grounds, and faulty wire insulation, PLC installations require a high-quality power wiring installation to operate properly. In retrofit work, preliminary tests occasionally indicate the impracticability of a PLC installation because of the condition of the power wiring system. Another problem encountered in PLC systems is interference with the PLC control signals from radio noise generated by faulty power equipment and by improperly shielded or grounded electronic equipment. These problems can frequently be overcome by careful testing, installation of filters and jumpers, and repair of improperly operating equipment. In addition to energy management and normal lighting control, PLC control can be applied to group switching of other loads, such as office machines, in addition to simplifying control of temporary light and power for special events.



Fig. 26.57 *Components of a residential-type PLC system. (a) Control unit, at which both manual and automatic (programmed) control of a maximum of 256 address codes is possible. (b) Wall-switch module has local dimming and switching functions in addition to being remotely controlled from the control center (a). (c) Duplex wall receptacle, either split-wired with local programming of one-half of the outlet or complete remote control. (d) Outlet box wall-mounted control switch that provides local group control (switching and/or dimming) for one to four devices (address codes). (Photo courtesy of Leviton Manufacturing Co.)*

26.35 POWER CONDITIONING

(a) General Information

Power conditioning is a relatively new electrical term that describes the process of converting utility-supplied electrical power, which is frequently characterized by transient surges, spikes, radio frequency noise, and voltage fluctuation, to a pure (noiseless), accurately voltage-regulated sinusoidal waveform, normally referred to as *computer-grade power*.

Some form of power conditioning is required by all data-processing and telecommunication equipment and by many other types of electronic equipment. This is due to their extreme sensitivity to fluctuations in the power supply voltage and particularly to random high-frequency voltages superimposed on the power supply voltage, known as *radio frequency interference* (RFI) or simply *radio noise*. In the case of data-processing equipment (computers and peripherals), radio noise can cause data errors; slow voltage fluctuations can cause overheating, data loss, and premature equipment failures; and large, rapid voltage fluctuations (spikes, transients) can cause equipment burnout and system collapse. The economic ramifications of such effects on large commercial data-handling systems are so severe that power conditioning has become almost universal. (Power conditioners must not be confused with uninterruptible power supplies [UPS], which function to maintain power during utility *failure*, although in many commercial installations, both functions are served by a single equipment package.)

(b) Source of Disturbance

Utility power systems are designed to maintain voltage and frequency within certain limits on an average, long-term basis. For valid technical reasons, utility equipment cannot react to the short-time disturbances that are so inimical to electronic equipment. Furthermore, much of the noise in utility lines is introduced by users and is therefore beyond the utility's point of control. Disturbances on the electrical power line can roughly be classified into three types: voltage variations, electrical noise, and transients.

1. *Voltage variations.* These can be caused by short-time current drain, such as during motor starts, deliberate voltage reductions (brownouts), load switching of EMS systems, excessive line voltage drop due to heavy loading or current leakage, and similar problems. These variations are *relatively* slow and long-lasting.

2. *Electrical noise.* This is a low-amplitude, higher-frequency voltage that, when superimposed on the power line, results in a distorted waveform. Sources of such extraneous voltages are electronic equipment power supplies, lighting dimmers, solid-state motor controls, PLC systems, arc welding, switching transients caused by branch circuit switches and relays, and voltages induced by local magnetic fields.

3. *Transients.* These are large, short-duration voltage variations, also known as *surges* or *spikes*. They are the principal culprits in major equipment failures. They are caused by lightning strikes to overhead lines (possibly many miles from an affected

installation), by electrical system faults, and by utility switching of high-voltage lines, transformers, capacitor banks, generators, and circuit reclosers.

26.36 POWER-CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT

Each of the three types of problems described in the preceding section requires its own type of correction. Voltage variations are corrected with voltage regulators; noise problems are corrected by electrical isolation, filtering, and noise suppression; and transients are treated with surge suppressors. Each corrective device is a separate entity that can be applied individually to suit the particular problem encountered or in combination with another conditioning device. The choice in a specific installation is a highly technical decision and should be made by the facility's electrical engineer after careful analysis of the quality of the utility service. A few general recommendations can be made.

1. All computer installations, including the smallest, should be protected from line transients with an appropriate surge suppressor. Multitap plug-in strips (low-cost) with integral surge suppressors are unsatisfactory unless they have surge current, clamping voltage, and surge-energy specifications, and these meet the installation requirements.

2. Major data-processing installations normally require all three types of line treatment. The most economical way to provide them is with a single integrated power-conditioning unit.

3. Considerable improvement in the quality of electrical power can frequently be achieved by the simple expedient of running separate electrical feeders for sensitive loads.

4. Physical isolation of sensitive equipment areas is frequently helpful, particularly when disturbances are being induced by proximity to switching, arcing, and rectifying equipment. Discharge-type lighting, including fluorescent, mercury, sodium-vapor, and metal-halide, can cause interference, especially when used with electronic ballasts.

5. It was found some years ago that much of the noise in electrical power systems was introduced through the (equipment) grounding pole of an electrical receptacle. Because this connection is required for electrical safety, it cannot be eliminated. It can, however, be separated from the wiring system ground and still maintain its function. Receptacles so constructed are color-coded either entirely orange or have an orange triangle on the face (see Section 26.29). This "fix" is particularly effective where electronic dimmers, ballasts, and switching devices are present. Because the insulated ground receptacle (sometimes referred to as an *isolated* ground receptacle) is a special item, it must be clearly indicated in the contract documents (drawings and specifications). Furthermore, because these receptacles require special isolated wiring, the entire matter must be studied carefully during the electrical design stage and before issuance of construction contracts.

6. A problem related to equipment that produces radio noise is that this same equipment also produces harmonics that appear on the system neutral and can cause overloading. This subject is covered in Section 28.18.

The issue of power quality is so important in modern commercial installations that the following steps should be taken essentially as a matter of course during design:

- A detailed report should be obtained from the electric utility that will be supplying electric power, showing power outages, voltage constancy, frequency control, and, if possible, oscillograms of waveforms at random intervals over the past year. Particularly important are periods of peak loading and periods of weather extremes.
- A power-quality study should be made in the area in which the facility will be (or is) located. Sophisticated instrumentation for this purpose as well as specialists in this field are readily available (see Sections 26.35 and 26.36).
- An in-depth study of all of the electrical equipment to be used in the building should be made for the purpose of:
  - Reducing the sources of electrical disturbances
  - Determining the tolerance or sensitivity of the data-processing equipment to be used. In the absence of reliable data for the second purpose, as is the case in speculative construction, a high degree of sensitivity should be assumed. In any case, for equipment that is known to produce radio noise, such as electronic lighting ballasts and dimmers, the specifications should include

TABLE 26.7 Power-Conditioning Equipment

Equipment Functions				*Dimensions in. (mm)*		
Voltage Regulation	**Noise Suppression**	**Surge Suppression**	**KVA[a]**	**H**	**W**	**D**
x			5	15 (381)	20 (508)	20 (508)
			10	35 (889)	40 (1016)	20 (508)
			20	40 (1016)	40 (1016)	30 (762)
x	x		0.25	6 (152)	6 (152)	10 (254)
			0.5	7 (178)	7 (178)	12 (305)
			1.0	8 (203)	10 (254)	15 (381)
			3.0	10 (254)	12 (305)	20 (508)
x	x		5	10 (254)	10 (254)	15 (381)
			10	20 (508)	30 (762)	15 (381)
			20	30 (762)	30 (762)	20 (508)
x	x	x	5	40 (1016)	30 (762)	30 (762)
			10	50 (1270)	35 (889)	30 (762)
			20	70 (1778)	40 (1016)	35 (889)
		x	NA[a]			
			15 A	3 (76)	3 (76)	16 (406)
			100 A	10 (254)	12 (305)	12 (305)
			500 A	15 (381)	15 (381)	12 (305)

[a]Surge suppressors are rated by transient energy-handling capability, and therefore a kVA rating is not applicable. However, because transient energy increases with the kVA size of protected equipment, a service ampere rating is given.

limitations plus a requirement for submission of laboratory tests on random samples.

- Many large power companies now offer "computer-grade power" that meets stated limitations to voltage fluctuation and the like. This type of service is desirable for all new office space or full building renovations. For individual office spaces, separate power-conditioning equipment is required.

Table 26.7 and Fig. 26.58 give some idea of the physical characteristics of power-conditioning equipment. Dimensions are typical and are indicative only of equipment bulk. Designs vary widely among manufacturers, as do, therefore, individual dimensions. Voltage-regulating equipment containing regulating transformers is very heavy, and this must be considered during design. Power-conditioning equipment is frequently combined with UPS equipment (see Section 26.38).



Fig. 26.58 *This single-phase power conditioner supplies noise filtering and surge suppression by use of an isolation transformer, ground noise filters, and category A and B surge suppression (see Section 26.37c). It is rated 5 A, 120 V, measures 6 in. H × 7 in. W × 11 in. D (150 × 180 × 280 mm), and weighs 18 lb (8 kg). A similar unit rated 20 A, 120 V measures 8 in. H × 8½ in. W × 14 in. D (200 × 215 × 355 mm). (Photo courtesy of Leviton Manufacturing Co.)*

26.37 SURGE SUPPRESSION

The full term for this aspect of power conditioning is *transient voltage surge suppression* (TVSS). Because transient voltages, also called *surges* or *spikes*, can

cause major physical damage to computer systems and other types of electronic equipment, it is this aspect of system protection that has generally received the most attention (including a fair amount of highly imaginative advertising). Surge suppressors are available in a wide variety of designs and ratings, ranging from the ubiquitous cord-connected, multiple-outlet strip to large, 3-phase, service-entrance units. They all have a single purpose, however: to suppress (limit) a voltage surge to a level that the protected equipment can withstand without damage. This is done in two ways:

1. By placing one or more devices that present a high impedance in series with the incoming voltage transient, thereby limiting the let-through current.

2. By placing one or more devices across the incoming power line, in parallel with the protected load, that present a low impedance to the high transient voltage and thereby bypass (shunt away) the incoming disturbance's current. Many TVSS units use both of these techniques in a single "hybrid" unit.

(a) Terminology

To be able to select TVSS units and compare their ratings, a basic technical vocabulary is necessary.

Avalanche diode. A solid-state device placed in parallel with a protected load. It responds to overvoltage in nanoseconds by conducting (i.e., placing) its very low impedance across the incoming voltage. This results in a large ("avalanche") bypass current flow that serves to reduce the incoming voltage. It has a low clamping voltage (definition follows) and low energy absorption capacity. This latter characteristic causes "wear" and eventual failure.

Clamping voltage. The voltage at which a shunting device (such as an avalanche diode) begins to conduct (and thereby clamp) an incoming voltage surge. The lower a device's clamping voltage, the better its suppression action.

EMI/RFI rejection. A measure of the attenuation, by a TVSS device, of electromagnetic interference (EMI) and RFI. A TVSS device, due to its internal filters, always provides some radio noise attenuation. This characteristic is not of primary significance to selection of a device used primarily for surge suppression.

Gas tube surge protector. A high-energy shunt device, typically found in high-capacity, good-quality TVSS units that are subject to large surges (such as those caused by lightning). It consists of a gas-filled tube with two electrodes. The tube conducts when a high-voltage surge causes its electrodes to arc over. Because of low arc impedance, the current drain and energy absorption are very high, thus clamping the incoming surge. Its principal drawback is its relatively slow response, which necessitates its use in conjunction with other, faster devices.

Isolation transformer. A transformer with two separate windings and no conductive electrical connection between them. By virtue of the inductive coupling of the windings, considerable attenuation of sharp voltage spikes is achieved. It can be used in high-capacity TVSS units in lieu of multiple solid-state components in parallel. It is also useful in attenuating high-frequency noise at any voltage level.

Joule rating. A *joule*, equal to 1 watt-second, is the SI unit of energy. A device's joule rating is a measure of its capacity to absorb and dissipate heat generated by its action. Although the joule rating is important where large amounts of energy are to be absorbed, as in (hard-wired) units at a service entrance or at a power distribution point, published ratings can be misleading because there is, at this writing, no industry-wide standard calculation procedure for joule rating. As a result, the industry standard specification form (NEMA-LS 1) for TVSS devices does not include this rating.

Maximum surge current. A measure of a device's ability to divert and dissipate surge current without failing. It is a useful metric for TVSS devices used at service entrances and, for reasons explained previously, is more reliable than published joule ratings.

Metal-oxide variable resistor (MOV). A shunt device somewhat slower than an avalanche diode but with much higher energy absorption capability and higher clamping voltage. MOVs are very widely used in TVSS devices. Like avalanche diodes, MOVs suffer degradation with use, thus limiting the useful life of the entire TVSS unit.

Response time. A measure of the rapidity with which a TVSS device begins to clamp a voltage surge, usually measured in microseconds or nanoseconds. It is not of great significance because both avalanche diodes and MOVs (found in all good-grade TVSS designs) are faster than the voltage

buildup time of an incoming surge. Response time is not included in the NEMA standard specification, apparently because it is not considered to be a very important characteristic.

Sinewave tracking. A term of uncertain meaning found frequently in manufacturers' literature.

(b) TVSS Operation

Figure 26.59 is intended to be self-explanatory. Each element acts to reduce the magnitude of the incoming voltage surge by either bypassing (shunting away) current or presenting a high impedance to the voltage surge. Both actions reduce the voltage. A commercial TVSS device may contain any or all of the illustrated components, single or in multiple, depending upon the current and voltage it is expected to handle.

(c) Standards

Standards applicable to surge-suppression equipment are:

ANSI/IEEE C62.41.1: *IEEE Guide on the Surges Environment in Low-Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits*

ANSI/IEEE C62.45: *IEEE Recommended Practice on Surge Testing for Equipment Connected to Low-Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits*

UL 1449: *Standard for Surge Protective Devices*

NEMA LS 1: *Low Voltage Surge Protection Devices*

Surge-suppression equipment can be subjected to widely varied voltage stresses, depending upon where in an electrical system a unit is installed. Standard C62.41 categorizes installation points according to the severity of service expected, that is, the (electrical) environment in which the surge-suppression equipment operates.

C62.41, category C represents the most severe environment, corresponding to locations on the line side of the facility service switches. This environment is subject to the full force of lightning and switching surges and requires robust equipment. As a voltage surge travels through a building's electrical system, it is attenuated by cables, transformers, and other electrical equipment. Therefore, the further along one travels in the building's electrical distribution system, the less severe the voltage surges become. All TVSS devices used in category C environments are hard-wired (Fig. 26.60).

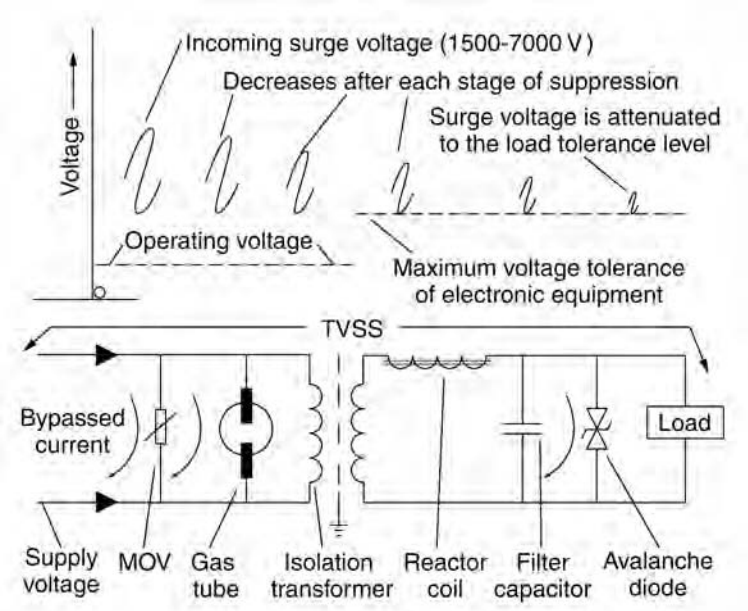


Fig. 26.59 *All of the elements usually found in a surge-suppression device are shown. Each acts to reduce voltage surge—parallel elements by shunting away (bypassing) surge current, and series elements by increasing the electrical impedance to the voltage surge.*



Fig. 26.60 *Surge suppressor designed for use on the incoming service of a facility. It is rated for category C3 application: shunt type, 120/208 V, 3-phase, unlimited current. It is provided with RFI/EMI filtering and replaceable surge-suppressor modules, and arranged to indicate the power and protection status of each phase. (Photo courtesy of Surge Control Ltd.)*

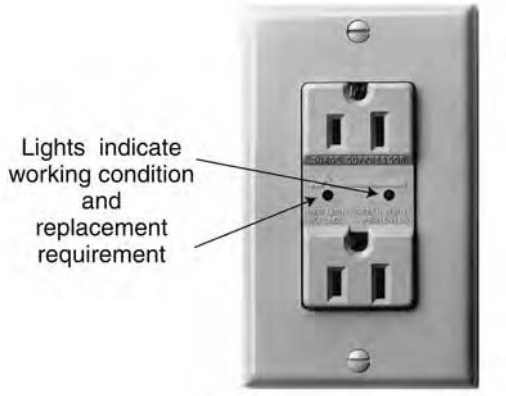


Fig. 26.62 *Typical category A utilization TVSS outlet equipped with indicating lights that show the condition of the surge-suppressor circuitry. (Photo courtesy of Eagle Electric Co.)*

C62.41, category B covers environments on the load side of the service equipment, including heavy feeder distribution panels and short branch circuits. Most TVSS devices in category B areas are hard-wired (Fig. 26.61).

C62.41, category A, which represents the least-severe service, includes utilization outlets and long branch circuits (because the long cables attenuate a voltage surge). Most category A TVSS devices are arranged for loads to be plugged in directly. Devices used in category A environments include the common cord-connected multioutlet strip and surge suppression–equipped receptacles (Fig. 26.62).



Fig. 26.61 *TVSS unit designed to be used at service and branch panelboards in residences and small commercial installations. The illustrated unit is rated single-phase, 120/240 V, 3-wire service, category B3. The unit measures 7 in. W × 7 in. H × 4 in. D (180 × 180 × 100 mm) and is equipped with indicating lights that note power and suppression status. (Photo courtesy of Leviton Manufacturing Co.)*

Each of these three major categories is in turn subdivided into three minor categories: C3, C2, C1; B3, B2, B1; and A3, A2, and A1—where 3 is the most severe and 1 the least. The differentiation depends upon the electrical capacity of the facility's service and distribution system. Large systems have higher surges and less attenuation in the system, thus requiring larger and heavier TVSS equipment than smaller installations. The three major categories are shown graphically with annotations in Fig. 26.63.

Standard C62.45 established the test procedures and test voltage levels to be used by manufacturers in testing and classifying their TVSS products in order to simulate the voltage stresses found in A, B, and C environments.

UL Standard 1449 describes standards for surge-suppressor safety and performance. An important aspect of this standard is that it establishes clamping voltage ratings. The ones of interest to building designers are the lowest four, which are 330, 400, 500, and 600 V. The UL standard requires testing for actual clamping levels, which

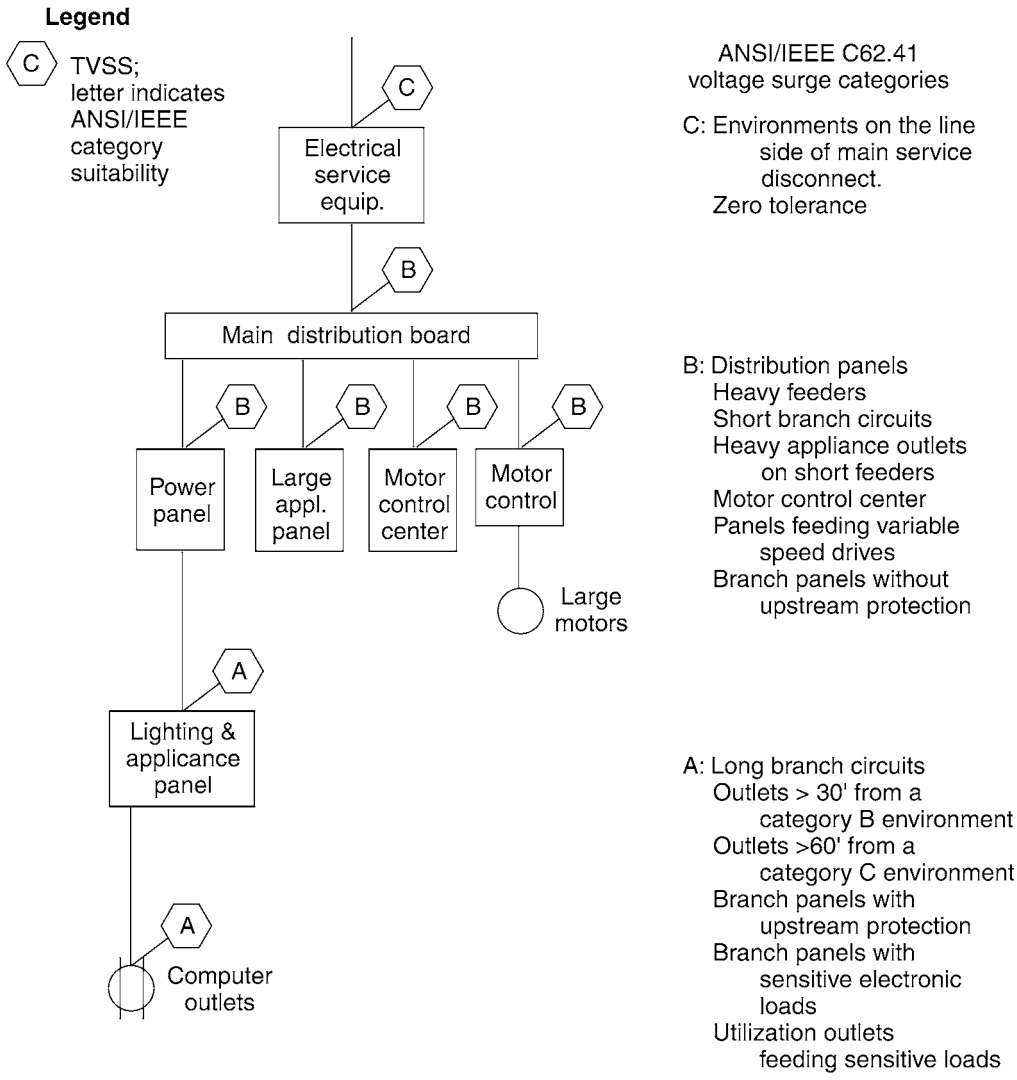


Fig. 26.63 *Illustration based on ANSI/IEEE Standard C62.41 showing application of transient voltage-suppression devices in a typical electrical facility, based on the three categories of electrical environments (C, B, A) defined by the standard.*

are then rounded *upward* to one of the standard ratings. Thus, a TVSS that clamps at 240 V and one that clamps at 320 V would both be rated at 330 V, despite the fact that the 240-V unit gives better protection. This distinction is particularly important when protecting computers and other electronic equipment equipped with switching power supplies, and requires a comparison of the *actual* clamping voltage of potential devices rather than simple reliance on the voltage classification.

NEMA LS 1 standardizes the specification format for suppression units, and in so doing establishes a basis for comparison among various manufacturers' products. Important characteristics that must be specified include line voltage, maximum operating current and voltage, maximum surge current, and clamping voltage rating. (Actual clamping voltage is not supplied unless specifically requested, as it involves specific testing.)

All of the aforementioned standards are voluntary industry and technical society publications.

In 1997, the U.S. government developed a Performance Verification Test specification that established a quality grading system for cord-connected surge suppressors. This standard does not correspond readily to the C62.41 classifications, except in the B category. It is worth noting that the highest classification in this system is Class 1, Grade A, Mode 1, which corresponds to ANSI category B3, a UL 1449 clamping voltage rating of 330 V, and line to neutral protection.

(d) Application of TVSS Devices

Selection and application of surge-suppression devices for even the simplest application requires considerable technical background, for which the foregoing material is intended as a primer. Important suggestions to assist in this area are:

- Every power level should have its own TVSS. Small systems can function with C62.41 categories B and A only. Large systems may require protection for two or three B levels (B3, B2, B1) and more than one A level.
- In the absence of accurate data on the surge tolerance of electronic equipment, use protection for the most sensitive level. At the utilization level, this is category A3 and U.S. government classification Grade A, Class 1, Mode 1.
- Mode 1 (also called Mode A) indicates protection line-to-line or line-to-neutral. This mode should be specified for stand-alone items. It is preferable to Mode 2 (or B), which is connected line-to-ground, because the latter can introduce random signals (contaminants) into the equipment-grounding system.
- The primary criteria for selection and comparison are the *actual* clamping voltage and maximum surge current capacity. Other important characteristics are those listed in NEMA LS 1.
- TVSS units should be installed as close as possible to the loads being protected.
- Telephone and data lines must also be protected, particularly if the service is overhead. Most telephone companies install an appropriate TVSS at the main distribution frame near the service entrance. This may not be sufficient to protect electronic equipment from a disturbance that can cause distortion of data. A specialist should be consulted to determine the required protection levels and select appropriate equipment (Figs. 26.64 and 26.65).

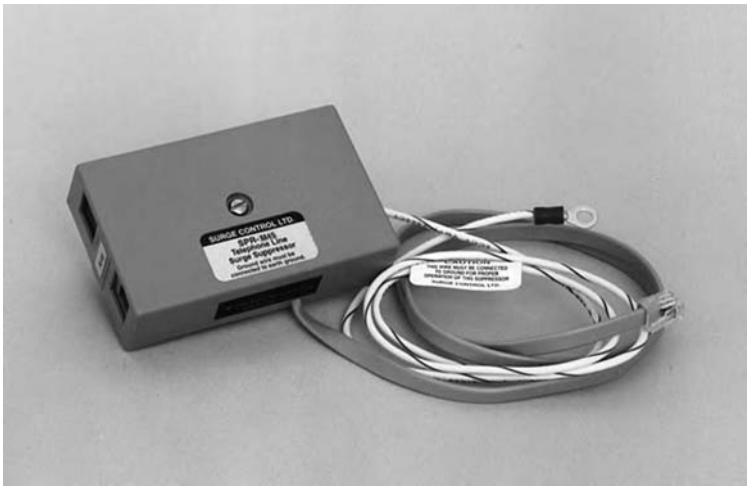


Fig. 26.64 *Surge suppressor designed for use with standard snap-in low-voltage telephone and industry jacks. The illustrated unit is designed to protect telephone/telecommunication lines, both analog and digital. The units are rated 185 V, with a maximum surge current of 5000 A and a test clamping voltage of 240 V. The units can be used with telephones, modems, fax machines, and the like. They measure approximately 4 in. W × 2½ in. H × 1 in. D (100 × 64 × 25 mm). (Photo courtesy of Surge Control Ltd.)*



Fig. 26.65 *TVSS device designed to protect video lines from voltage transients. The unit plugs into a standard outlet to establish a ground connection for current bypass. This unit is equipped with BNC (Bayonet Neill-Concelman) connections; others have telephone, PL (coaxial), and RS (serial device) connectors for use on telephone, communication, and data lines. The illustrated unit has a clamping voltage of 15 V and a maximum surge current capacity of 5000 A. It measures approximately 2 in. W × 4 in. H × 1 in. D (50 × 100 × 25 mm). (Photo courtesy of Leviton Manufacturing Co.)*

26.38 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY

As explained previously, power-conditioning equipment can supply clean utility power; it cannot, however, supply any power during a utility outage. That eventuality is addressed by providing an alternate supply of power. Facilities with desktop computers, servers, and other data-processing equipment cannot tolerate power outages in excess of about 8 to 50 milliseconds (ms) without serious risk of data loss, and all the negative ramifications of such a loss.

An uninterruptible power supply (UPS) is an arrangement of normal and backup power supplies that transfer a facility's critical load from the normal to the backup supply in so short a time that no computer malfunction results. This transfer time varies somewhat among different schemes and manufacturers but is always less than 8.3 ms, which is the minimum period of power outage that computers must tolerate without disturbance to meet the computer industry's manufacturing guidelines. This time period is double the maximum transfer time required by IEEE Standard 446, *Recommended Practice for Emergency and Standby Power Systems for Industrial and Commercial Applications*, of ¼ cycle at 60 Hz, or 4.16 ms. Thus, all computer systems fed from a UPS that meets this standard have a safety factor of at least 2 with respect to transfer time.

The period of time after transfer that the equipment will run on the standby source depends upon system design. In most cases it is 5 to 10 minutes, which is usually enough time to permit an orderly manual or automatic shutdown. Where shutdown is not a viable alternative, as with computer-controlled manufacturing processes or critical server equipment, the standby power system can readily be designed to supply power indefinitely.

The selection of a UPS system for a facility is a complex process beyond the scope of this book. The material that follows is intended to provide sufficient familiarity with these systems to permit preliminary selection and planning.

(a) Alternate Power Source

For most applications, battery backup is sufficient because only an orderly shutdown is required. Where this is not the case, a two-stage transfer can be used—the first transfer being to a battery backup that can carry the load for up to 1½ hours (or more), depending upon the load magnitude, and a second transfer to a long-term standby generator set. Thereafter, the availability of generated standby power is limited only by the fuel supply for the generator. Alternatively, the generator can be maintained on line, and the load picked up directly upon the first transfer.

In large industrial installations, the standby source may also be a second utility line. In such cases, only a single transfer is required. Questions of service reliability and equipment redundancy are both technical and economic, and must be studied carefully for each individual installation.

(b) Equipment Arrangement: Classic Standby and Online Topologies

Most UPS systems today are described by their manufacturers as online or simply as UPS rather than standby, primarily because there is no generally accepted industry-wide definition of *online* and also because many systems are hybrid and do not fall easily into either category. Figure 26.66 shows the

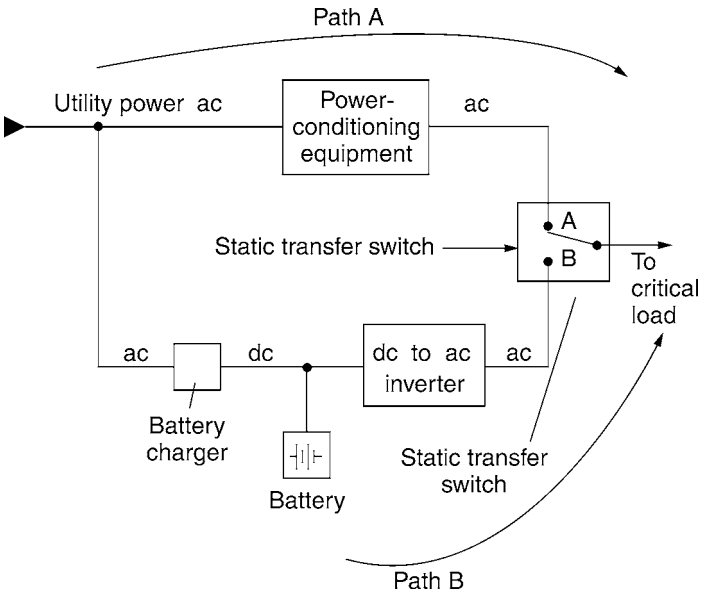


Fig. 26.66 *In this UPS standby arrangement, power normally flows from the utility to the critical (computer) loads through position A of the transfer switch (Path A). The battery floats until a failure of utility power puts it on line through the inverter and position B in the solid-state, effectively instantaneous transfer switch (Path B). The inverter is normally inactive. The battery charger is small because it carries only charging current.*

usual static (nonrotary) UPS equipment arrangement that applies, in principle, to both standby and online modes.

In the standby mode (Path A), utility power is normally passed through some power-conditioning equipment to shield against surges and remove random noise, and then, via position A in the static transfer switch, to the load. The ac line also provides a small current to the small battery charger that keeps the battery fully charged. The dc to ac inverter is open-circuited at the transfer switch and delivers no power. In the event of a utility power failure, the transfer switch moves to position B, and power flows from the battery through the inverter and transfer switch to the load (Path B). With proper equipment design, the transfer is usually accomplished smoothly, although an instantaneous change from no-load to full load on the inverter can sometimes cause a transfer voltage loss. For this reason, online schemes are preferred.

In the straightforward online arrangement shown in Fig. 26.67, Power Path A (normal) is through the rectifier and inverter to the load via position B in the transfer switch. The battery floats on the dc line. Failure of utility power causes the power path to change to Path B (i.e., battery to inverter to load). The transfer switch remains in the B position. As a result, voltage to the load is undisturbed. If one of the Path A components fails, the transfer switch moves to position A, and power is supplied directly from the utility lines via Path C, which is referred to as a *utility bypass*. The advantage of the online arrangement is that it eliminates reliance upon the quality of utility power. Power conditioning and surge suppression are provided by the solid-state equipment.

The disadvantages of this classic online topology are high cost due to the full load capacity (size) of the charger/rectifier and an overall efficiency in Path A of about 75% to 80%. The resultant heat production can be problematic and is certainly expensive in terms of power consumption.

(c) Additional UPS Topologies

1. A money-saving arrangement called *online without bypass* is simply the bottom portion of Fig. 26.67. The first cost is reduced by elimination of the transfer switch and considerable cabling. Because failure of any of the components disables the system completely, as there is no backup power path, this system is not recommended for critical loads.

2. A system variously known as *line-interactive*, *standby line-interactive*, and *hybrid interactive* is shown in Fig. 26.68. In its normal mode (Path A), power flows from the utility lines through power-conditioning equipment and position A of the transfer switch to the load. (This is identical to the

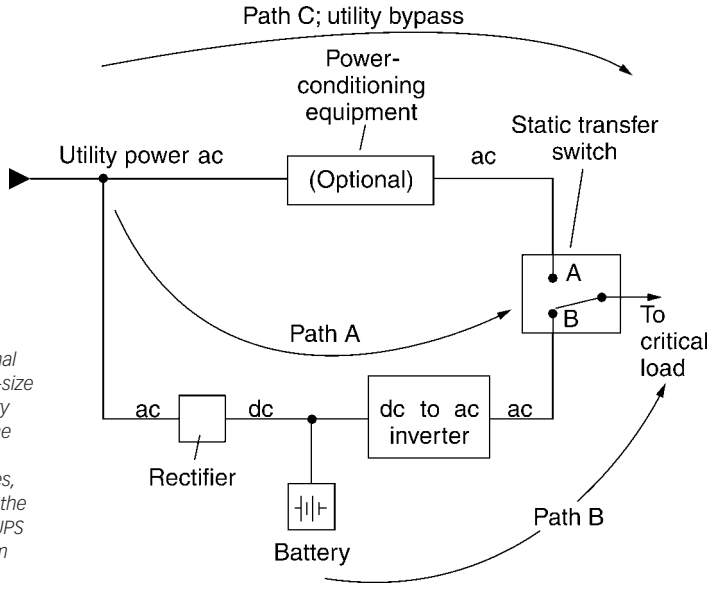


Fig. 26.67 *In this UPS online mode, the normal power Path A is from the utility through a full-size rectifier to the load via an inverter. The battery floats, taking a small charging current from the rectifier. Utility failure brings the battery line through the inverter (Path B). In both instances, the transfer switch remains in position B and the load senses no change. Only in the event of UPS equipment failure is power taken directly from the utility (Path C).*

normal mode of the standby system shown in Fig. 26.66.) In addition, however, utility ac is tapped at the power-conditioning equipment to feed the inverter that, operating in reverse as a rectifier (ac to dc), serves as a battery charger.

In the event of a utility power failure, power is drawn from the battery, which passing through the inverter, is converted to ac. It then connects to the load via the B connection in the transfer switch. The power path is indicated on Fig. 26.68 as Path B. The advantage of this topology is the elimination of a large rectifier by dual use of the inverter and elimination of transients caused by switching on the inverter at full load. The system is efficient, produces little heat, and is highly reliable.

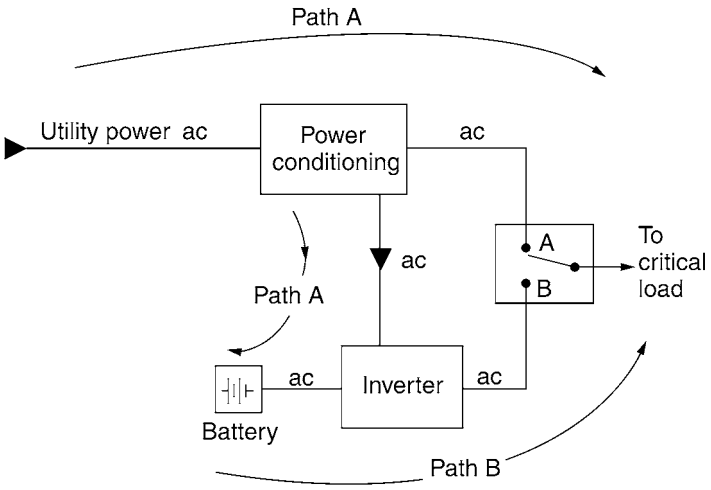


Fig. 26.68 *In this UPS hybrid (line-interactive) mode, the normal power Path A takes power directly from the utility but keeps the inverter on line, working in reverse to furnish dc charging current to the battery. Utility failure causes a change to power Path B (i.e., from battery through the inverter now operating normally to invert dc to ac). The static switch changes to position B.*

TABLE 26.8 Typical Dimensional Data for UPS Equipment

Topology	Capacity (kVA)	Dimensions H × W × D in. (mm)	Weight[a] lb (kg)	Full Load Run Time (min.)
Standby, Single phase	0.3	6 × 6 × 12 (152 × 152 × 305)	15 (6.8)	10
	0.6	7 × 6 × 14 (178 × 152 × 356)	25 (11.3)	5
Online, Single phase	3.0	30 × 12 × 24 (762 × 305 × 610)	250 (114)	20
Single phase	7.5	36 × 12 × 36 (914 × 305 × 915)	500 (227)	10
Three-phase	10.0	60 × 24 × 36 (1524 × 610 × 915)	1200 (544)	15
Interactive, Single phase	0.4	6 × 6 × 12 (152 × 152 × 305)	20 (9.1)	5
Single phase	1.0	8 × 8 × 15 (203 × 203 × 381)	40 (18)	5
Single phase	2.0	16 × 8 × 20 (406 × 203 × 508)	105 (48)	20
Single phase	3.5	18 × 10 × 24 (457 × 254 × 610)	140 (64)	10

[a]With batteries.

(d) System Selection and Comparison

The preceding system descriptions are intended to provide a topical familiarity with UPS equipment arrangements. Actual selection depends upon the types and magnitudes of the critical loads, detailed outage histories, space considerations, cost factors, equipment and service redundancy, and overall system efficiency. The last characteristic can be a major decision factor where large loads are being supplied because overall system efficiencies vary from a high of about 95+% for classic standby systems (Fig. 26.66) to as low as 65% for some arrangements. Because all of the power lost to inefficiency turns to heat, a low-efficiency 100-kVA/80-kW system would produce about 27 kW or about 92,000 Btu/h! Unless this heat can be used effectively, power costs and ventilation requirements should be factored into the selection process.

(e) Ancillary Characteristics of UPS Systems

Programmable microprocessors and effective sensors and transducers have been added to basic UPS systems to produce what is known as *intelligent* UPS equipment. These additional devices now make readily available such operating and diagnostic data as battery status, equipment operating temperatures, load data, waveform displays, online power quality analyses, operational and event logs, and the like. These data help an informed operator optimize system functioning, anticipate problems, and keep an accurate printed operational record. Table 26.8 gives some typical dimensional and runtime data for UPS units of different topologies.

26.39 EMERGENCY/STANDBY POWER EQUIPMENT

The *NEC* makes a clear distinction between emergency systems and standby systems, covering the former in Article 700 and the latter in Articles 701 and 702. The equipment, circuitry, and arrangement of both are similar; the purpose is somewhat different. The reader is also referred to NFPA Standard 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, which covers equipment requirements for these systems.

Emergency systems are intended to supply electric power to equipment essential for human *safety* upon interruption of the normal power supply. Included in this classification are illumination in areas of assembly (to permit safe exiting and prevent panic) and such other vital functions as fire detection and alarm systems, elevators, fire pumps, public address and communication systems, and orderly shutdown or maintenance of hazardous processes.

Standby systems are divided into two categories: those legally required (Article 701) and optional systems (Article 702). The former are intended to power processes and systems (other than those classified as emergency systems) whose stoppage might create hazards or hamper firefighting operations. This classification goes beyond the emergency systems and could include HVAC systems, water supply equipment, and industrial processes whose interruption could cause a safety or health hazard. It is intended primarily as a safety measure.

Optional standby systems can cover any or all loads in a facility at the discretion of the owner, and are normally intended to protect property and

prevent financial loss in the event of a normal service interruption. Examples might include a critical industrial process or equipment for an ongoing research project.

Health-care facilities are covered by a separate set of regulations: *NEC* Article 517 and NFPA Standard 99, both of which are referenced as legally binding in the vast majority of jurisdictional codes. It is important to note that for both emergency and legally required standby systems, the *provision* of the system must be mandated by the authority having jurisdiction over construction, whether it is a local, state, or federal agency or a combination of these. The *NEC* dictates how the system is to be designed and constructed; its existence depends upon another authority.

A case in point is the fundamental issue of exit lighting. This is mandated by the NFPA *Life Safety Code* and Subpart E of OSHA regulations. It is not required by the *NEC*, and reference to *NEC* will not ensure its provision. The code(s) having authority and jurisdiction must specifically require an emergency and/or standby system—by that nomenclature—in order for *NEC* provisions to apply. The precise items of equipment to be powered are selected by the designer, keeping in mind the specific and general requirements of the codes having jurisdiction. The majority of codes make the provisions

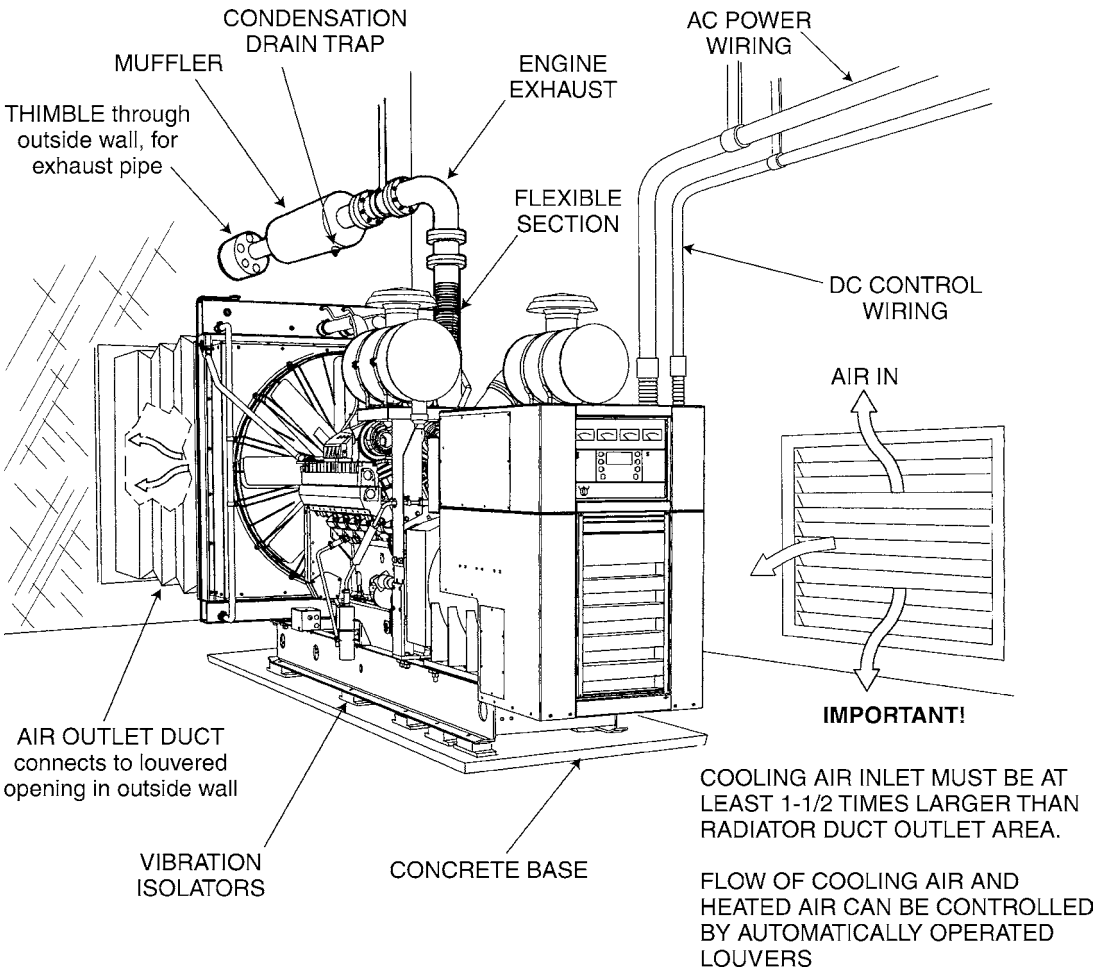


Fig. 26.69 *Typical installation diagram of a radiator-cooled diesel engine-generator set. The set should be oriented so that the hot radiator cooling air vented through an outside wall flows in the same direction as prevailing winds. A solid masonry wind and noise barrier not less than 6 ft (1.8 m) from the radiator air outlet is recommended, as well as an elevated exhaust pipe outlet. (Illustration courtesy of Onan Corp.)*

of the *NEC* and the relevant NFPA standards legally binding. Most codes require emergency systems; far fewer require standby systems, and then only for essential water and water-treatment systems and a few other essential uses. The designer must thoroughly investigate the matter of jurisdictional codes before considering emergency electric power systems and equipment.

System design arrangements are discussed in Sections 28.3 and 28.6. Emergency lighting equipment and system design is covered in Section 16.31. System equipment, which falls into two principal categories—that is, generator and battery installations—is discussed later. Optional standby systems normally use a fueled prime mover rather than batteries.

(a) Engine–Generator Sets

An engine-generator set installation comprises basically three components: a fuel system (including storage, if necessary); the set itself, plus exhaust facilities; and the space housing the equipment (Fig. 26.69). The principal advantages of an engine-generator set are unlimited kVA capacity, duration of power limited only by the size of the fuel tank, use for peak-load shaving, and, if properly maintained, indefinite life. The disadvantages are noise, vibration, the nuisance of exhaust piping and exhaust, the need for constant maintenance and regular testing, and difficulties with fuel storage. Gasoline can be stored for only a year at most, and subsequent disposal is difficult. Diesel fuel keeps somewhat longer, but disposal is also difficult. Use of natural gas for an engine obviates the fuel storage problem but poses the alternate problem of availability of gas service during emergencies. In some large cities, steam is commercially available as an energy source. Here too, service reliability, particularly in the event of a widespread electric service failure, must be carefully investigated.

(b) Battery Equipment

Storage batteries are often used to supply limited amounts of emergency power for lighting (see Section 16.31) and for UPS systems, as detailed previously. Batteries are mounted in individual cabinets or in racks for large installations and are always provided with automatic charging equipment.

Battery types are undergoing intensive development. At this writing, the types principally in use are lead-acid, nickel-cadmium, lead-antimony, lead-calcium cells, and several alkaline types. The choice depends upon the application. Installation requirements such as ventilation, gas detection, isolation, and the like depend entirely upon the type of battery, size of the installation, and battery voltage. Thus, no general guidelines for battery equipment can be given except to follow *NEC* Article 480 requirements and consult a battery specialist for other data.

Batteries have the distinct advantage that they can be installed either in a central system with distribution of the battery power throughout the facility or in small package units around a building. Central systems are 24 to 125 V, dc or ac, and normally feed emergency lighting only. Individual packs are used often to supply ac power via built-in inverters. The great disadvantage of battery systems is their limited duration of power and their environmental effects upon disposal. The *NEC* requires that batteries maintain loads for a 1½-hour *minimum*, but larger capacity is frequently installed.

26.40 SYSTEM INSPECTION

Each electric wiring system is inspected at least twice by the local inspection authorities: once after raceways (roughing) have been installed and before the wiring and closing-in of walls, and once after the entire job is complete. The purpose of these inspections is to determine whether the design, material, and installation techniques meet the national and local code requirements. Quality of installation is the responsibility of the contractor. The designer, however, must be familiar with installation work and the equipment's physical characteristics in order to properly design an electrical system that will not present the contractor with unwarranted difficulties. The designer must understand and be aware of equipment substitutions by a contractor, who, having submitted a bid on the basis of plans and specifications, should be required to supply the specified equipment. Commissioning of electrical systems to the Owner's Project Requirements is recommended.

CHAPTER 27

Electrical Systems and Materials: Wiring and Raceways

THE MAJOR COMPONENTS OF A BUILDING electrical system can be grouped into three major categories: wiring and raceways, power-handling equipment, and utilization equipment. The first category includes conductors and raceways of all types; the second includes transformers, switchboards, panelboards, large switches, and circuit breakers; and the last includes utilization equipment such as lighting, motors, controls, and wiring devices. After an introduction applicable to all electrical materials, this chapter discusses in detail the items in the first of these three categories—that is, the wiring and raceway system. Chapter 26 covers most of the items in the other two categories, with the exception of lighting equipment, which is discussed in Part III. Signal systems, building control, and automation are discussed in Chapter 30.

27.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

Figure 27.1 illustrates that power distribution equipment proceeds from the service point to the utilization points in a progression of decreasing circuit capacity. This is analogous to the arrangement of water supply systems and HVAC systems; the distribution equipment is largest at the supply point, and decreases in size on its way to the farthest utilization points. The reverse is true in collection systems such as those for drainage and venting; in collection systems, piping is smallest at the initial collection points, growing larger (in steps) as the quantities of fluid increase.

A typical single-line diagram does not differentiate by line weight between heavy and light (large and small) conductors (the heavier the conductor, the greater the amount of power being carried), but the single-line diagram of Fig. 27.1 does differentiate in order to show relative power levels throughout the system. This "size" differentiation is more clearly shown in Fig. 27.2, which is a pictorial representation of a system similar to that of Fig. 27.1—but in somewhat greater detail and omitting items beyond the panelboard. Only standard items are shown; special items, however common, such as emergency and uninterruptible power sources, energy controls, service transformers, and the like, are omitted for the sake of clarity.

27.2 NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE

The *National Electrical Code* (*NEC*) of the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) defines the fundamental safety measures that must be followed in the selection, construction, and installation of

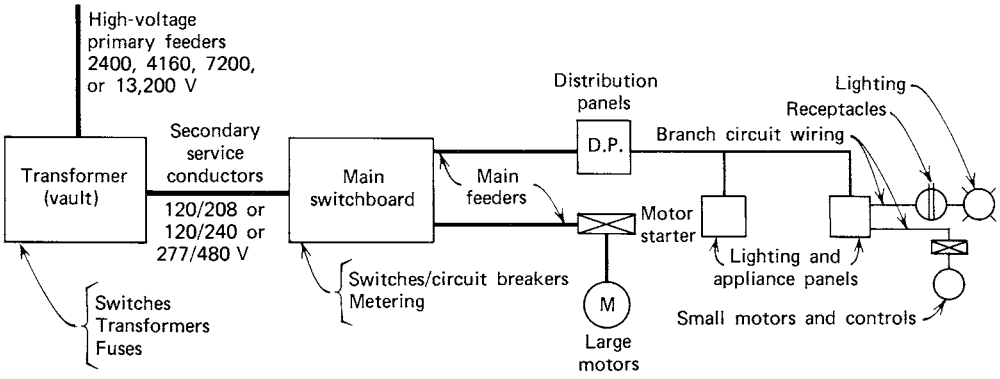


Fig. 27.1 *Single-line diagram of a typical building electrical distribution system, from the incoming service to the utilization items at the end of the system. This is also referred to as a block diagram because the major components are shown as rectangles, or blocks. When this same type of information is presented showing the vertical spatial relationship between components, it is called a riser diagram; when electrical symbols are used in lieu of the blocks, it is called a one-line or single-line diagram. The connecting conductors between the major system components are drawn here with varying thickness to reflect size, and thereby power-handling capacity. In normal practice, all connecting lines are shown the same weight. Also, branch circuits are not usually shown; the typical diagram ends at the lighting and appliance panels.*

electrical equipment and systems. This code is used by all inspectors, electrical designers, engineers, contractors, and operating personnel. Having been incorporated into the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (OSHA—which is also the acronym for the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, which administers the Act) it has, in effect, the force of law throughout the U.S. Frequent references are made to the *NEC* throughout this chapter. In addition to the *NEC*, many large cities such as New York, Boston, and Washington, D.C., have their own electrical codes that, although similar to the *NEC*, contain numerous special requirements.

In order to ensure a minimum standard of intrinsic electrical safety for electrical equipment, a single organization was needed to establish standards and to test and inspect electrical equipment. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) is such an organization, and it publishes extensive lists of inspected and approved electrical equipment. These listings are universally accepted, and many local codes state that only electrical materials bearing the UL label (of approval) are acceptable.

27.3 ECONOMIC AND ENVIRONMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS

The selection of electrical materials involves not only choosing a material or assembly that is functionally adequate and, where necessary, visually acceptable, but also the consideration of costs. Usually many types of equipment (from a range of manufacturers) will fulfill the technical requirements of a project. In most cases, final selection of a device or approach hinges upon cost. Ideally, "cost" would be life-cycle cost; more realistically it is often first cost.

The selection decision is relatively simple when various options differ only slightly from each other and a straightforward first-cost comparison is all that is required. Often, however, the choice is not so simple, because materials and equipment may vary considerably in characteristics other than functional suitability, demanding a more detailed cost study. Such economic analyses are frequently performed to make comparisons among competing HVAC systems. This happens less often when dealing with electrical systems because, from an energy point of view, electrical systems are generally less critical (relative to consumption) than HVAC systems, and it is energy costs that are often the decisive factor in economic analyses. Life-cycle system/equipment costs (over the life of the *structure*) are expressed in *present-value* dollars, or annual owning and operating costs, including equipment amortization costs. The type of analysis used will depend upon the situation. Such comparisons are useful, however, only when both the initial cost and the operating costs will be borne by the same individual—that is, an owner-operator. In the case of a speculative building venture, first cost is usually the deciding factor for a developer because others will bear the operating costs.

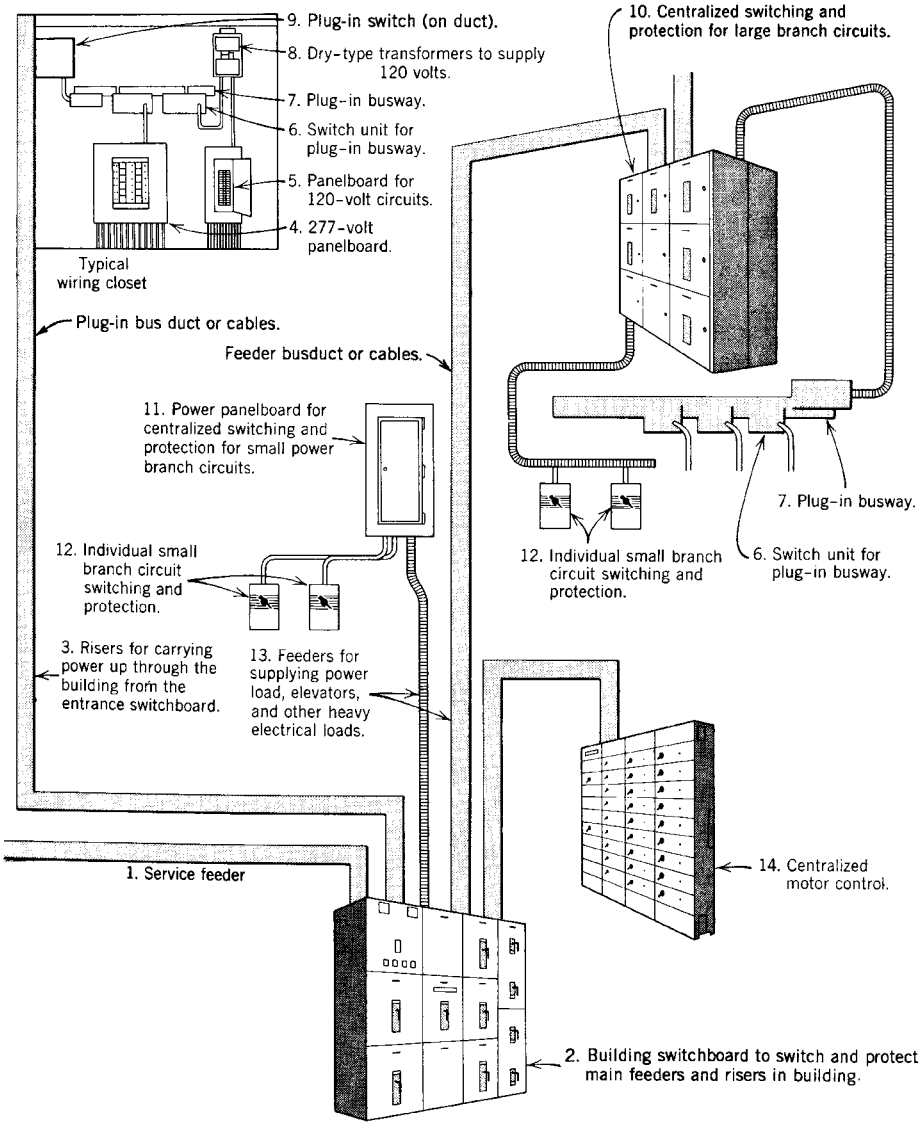


Fig. 27.2 *Diagrammatic (pictorial) representation of a typical building electrical power system with relative power capacity indicated by the size of the conductors. This diagram does not extend beyond the local panelboard and includes only commonly used items. Note also that the entire wiring system is, in effect, jacketed in steel. (Courtesy of General Electric.)*

It is often difficult to perform a life-cycle cost analysis because accurate data regarding service life and maintenance costs for electrical equipment may not be readily available. Still, even if a precise analysis cannot be done, the principle involved in life-cycle analysis should be considered in the selection of all electrical materials and equipment, bearing in mind the relative importance to an environmentally responsive building of energy-utilizing and -conveying equipment. See Appendix I for an explanation of cost analysis techniques. Economic issues for particular items are found in the following technical discussions.

Energy costs are a major factor in economic analysis. Energy considerations, however, are at least as important in and of themselves because of ever increasing concerns about limited energy and natural resources. This concern is addressed in the context of building energy budgets and their components, including lighting, elevators,

and electric motors that are a part of many building systems. Building codes in the U.S. only lightly deal with electrical energy system efficiency—primarily through the requirements presented in ASHRAE Standard 90.1. No explicit recommendation regarding electrical system design is provided in any of the current green building guidelines.

27.4 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT RATINGS

All electrical equipment must be rated for the normal service it is intended to perform. These ratings may refer to voltage, current, duty, horsepower, kW, kVA, temperatures, enclosure, and so on. Ratings related to specific equipment are discussed in the sections that follow. The ratings that are specifically and characteristically electrical are those of voltage and current.

(a) Voltage

The voltage rating of an item of electrical equipment is the maximum voltage that can safely be applied to the unit continuously. It frequently, but not always, corresponds to the voltage applied in normal use. An ordinary wall electrical receptacle, for example, is normally rated at 250 V maximum, although in normal use only 120 V are applied to it. The rating is determined by the type and quantity of insulation used and the physical spacing between electrically energized parts.

(b) Current

The current rating of a device is determined by the maximum operating temperature at which its components can operate at full load. That in turn depends upon the type of insulation used. As a case in point, consider an electric motor. The current flowing in the motor windings causes a power loss (I^2R), which generates heat. If the windings are insulated with varnished cotton braid, with a maximum safe operating temperature of 65°C (150°F), the maximum permissible current (to which the horsepower [kW] rating of the motor is directly related) is the current that produces this operating temperature. If these same windings are insulated with a silicone or glass compound with a maximum operating temperature of 150°C (300°F), more current can be carried safely, and the horsepower (kW) rating is consequently larger. Thus, although a motor is rated in horsepower (or kW), a transformer is rated in kVA, and a cable (discussed later) is rated in amperes, the actual criterion on which all these ratings are based is the maximum permissible operating temperature of the device's insulation (and other components).

27.5 INTERIOR WIRING SYSTEMS

At this point, it is helpful to survey the different types of interior wiring systems before commencing a discussion of components. When the primary purpose of a system is to distribute electrical energy, it is referred to as an *electrical power system*; when the purpose is to transmit information, it is referred to as an *electrical signal* or a *communication system*. This chapter deals with electrical power systems, except that the discussion of raceways covers equipment also used by communication systems.

Due to the nature of electricity, its distribution within a structure for power use poses a single basic problem: how to construct a distribution system that *safely* provides the energy required at the desired locations. The safety consideration is all-important because all parts of an interior distribution system are connected to the utility's powerful network, and the very real potential for physical damage, injury, and fire is always present. The solution to this problem is to isolate all electrically conducting elements from the building structure, except at those specific points, such as wall receptacles, where contact is desired. This isolation is generally accomplished by insulating the conductors and placing them in protective raceways.

The principal types of interior wiring systems in use today are exposed insulated cables, insulated cables in open raceways, and insulated conductors in closed raceways.

(a) Exposed Insulated Cables

This category includes (using the *NEC* nomenclature) cable types NM ("Romex") and AC ("BX"). (See Sections 27.10 and 27.11.) Also included are other types where the cable construction itself provides the necessary electrical insulation and mechanical protection.

(b) Insulated Cables in Open Raceways (Trays)

This system is specifically intended for industrial applications, and it relies on both the cable and the tray for safety.

(c) Insulated Conductors in Closed Raceways

This system is the most general type and is applicable to all types of facilities. In general, the raceway is installed first and the wiring is pulled in or laid in later. The raceways themselves may be:

1. Buried in the structure—for example, conduit in the floor slab or underfloor duct. (See Sections 27.17, 27.18, 27.24, and 27.25.)
2. Attached to the structure—for example, all types of surface raceways, including conduit and wireways suspended above hung ceilings. (See Sections 27.22 and 27.29.)
3. Part of the structure—for example, cellular concrete and cellular metal floors. (See Sections 27.26 and 27.27.)

(d) Combined Conductor and Enclosure

This category is intended to cover all types of factory-prepared and factory-constructed integral assemblies of conductor and enclosure. Included here are all types of busway, busduct, and cablebus (Section 27.14); flat-cable assemblies and lighting track (Section 27.15); flat cable intended for undercarpet installation (Section 27.29); and manufactured wiring systems (Section 27.30).

27.6 CONDUCTORS

Electrical conductors ("wires") are the means by which current is conducted through the electrical system, corresponding to the piping of a hydraulic system. The standard of the U.S. wire and cable industry for round cross-section conductors is the American Wire Gauge (AWG). By convention, a single insulated conductor No. 6 AWG or larger, or several conductors of any size assembled into a single unit, are referred to as *cable*. Single conductors No. 8 AWG and smaller are called *wire*.

All wire sizes up to No. 0000 (also written as No. 4/0) are expressed in AWG. The AWG numbers run in *reverse* order to the size of the wire—that is, the smaller the AWG number, the larger the size. Thus, No. 10 is a heavier wire than No. 12 wire and is lighter (thinner) than No. 8 wire. The No. 4/0 size is the largest AWG designation, beyond which a different designation called *kcmil* (thousand circular mil) is used. In this designation, wire diameter *increases* with number; thus, 500 kcmil is a heavier wire (double the area) than 250 kcmil. The former designation for this unit was *MCM*, a term that is still used in many sources.

Outside of the United States, where SI units are in general use, conductor sizes are given simply by their diameter in millimeters. Table 27.1 gives dimensional and stranding data for common wire sizes and includes the millimeter equivalent of each size. This will prove useful in relating American gauges to SI sizes.

27.7 CONDUCTOR AMPACITY

As noted, conductor current–carrying capacity, or *ampacity*, is determined by the maximum safe operating temperature of the insulation used on the conductor. Heat generated as a result of current flow is dissipated into the environment. Thus, for a given installation context (open-air, buried in earth, or enclosed), ampacity increases with increasing conductor size *and* with maximum permissible insulation temperature. This is shown in Table 27.2. If more than three conductors are placed in a conduit, the resultant increase in temperature requires that the conductors be derated by the amount shown in Table 27.3 to maintain safe operating conditions.

Because heat dissipation from a conductor in free air is much greater than that from the same conductor enclosed in conduit or directly buried, its corresponding allowable ampacity is also greater. Conversely, if the ambient temperature around a conductor is higher than 30°C (86°F), the temperature upon which all standard ampacity tables are based, the permissible ampacity must be reduced.

Ampacity tables for conductors in free air, for cable types not shown in Table 27.2, and derating factors for high ambient temperatures are all found in the *NEC*. Typical ambient temperatures are given in Table 27.4.

TABLE 27.1 Physical Properties of Bare Copper Conductors

Size AWG, kcmil, or (MCM)	Area Circular Mils	Diameter (in.)		Diameter (mm)		dc Resistance at 25°C (77°F) (Uncoated) ohms/1000 ft (305 m)
		Solid	Stranded	Solid	Stranded	
18 AWG	1620	0.040	—	1.02	—	7.77
16	2580	0.051	—	1.29	—	4.89
14	4110	0.064	—	1.63	—	3.07
12	6530	0.081	0.092	2.05	2.34	1.93
10	10,380	0.102	0.116	2.59	4.06	1.21
8	16,510	0.128	0.146	3.26	3.71	0.764
6	26,240	—	0.184	—	4.11	0.491
4	41,740	—	0.232	—	5.18	0.308
2	66,360	—	0.292	—	6.55	0.194
1	83,690	—	0.332	—	7.34	0.154
0 (1/0)	105,600	—	0.373	—	8.26	0.122
00 (2/0)	133,100	—	0.418	—	9.27	0.097
000 (3/0)	167,800	—	0.470	—	10.41	0.077
0000 (4/0)	211,600	—	0.528	—	11.68	0.061
250 kcmil	250,000	—	0.575	—	12.70	0.052
300 kcmil	300,000	—	0.630	—	13.92	0.043
400 kcmil	400,000	—	0.728	—	16.05	0.032
500 kcmil	500,000	—	0.813	—	19.56	0.026

Source: Except for millimeter dimensions, this table was extracted from NFPA 70-1999, the *National Electrical Code*. © 1999, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

Note: This extracted material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association on the referenced subject, which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.

27.8 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND JACKETS

Most conductors are covered with some type of insulation that provides both electrical isolation and a degree of physical protection. Additional physical shielding, where necessary, is provided by a jacket placed over the insulation. Insulation is rated by voltage. Ordinary building wiring is rated for either 300 or 600 V. Common types of building wire insulation are listed in Table 27.5 with their associated trade names, code letters, maximum permitted operating temperatures, and special provisions.

27.9 COPPER AND ALUMINUM CONDUCTORS

Aluminum has an inherent weight advantage over copper, which brings with it lower installation costs. Economy usually lies with copper in small- and medium-sized cable, because weight is not a problem, and the smaller conduit required for the smaller copper conductors generally makes the combined installation cheaper. In larger cable sizes, the aluminum weight advantage offsets the economy of smaller copper size and conduit, and aluminum generally proves less expensive, particularly in many urban areas with high labor costs.

Aluminum and copper both exhibit the low electrical resistivity necessary for a good electrical conductor. There are, however, difficulties inherent in splicing and terminating aluminum. These difficulties—which can be overcome with the use of proper equipment, techniques, and workmanship—stem from aluminum's cold-flow characteristic when under pressure (causing joints to loosen) and aluminum's oxide. This oxide, which forms within minutes on any exposed aluminum surface, is an adhesive, poorly conductive film that must be removed and prevented from reforming if a successful, long-life joint or termination is to be made. If this is not done, the oxide causes a high-resistance joint with excessive heat generation and possible incendiary effects. The oxide problem can be largely overcome by the use of copper-clad aluminum wire, but the cold-flow problem remains. Furthermore, when used in residential branch circuits, aluminum

TABLE 27.2 Allowable Ampacities of Insulated Conductors Rated 0 through 2000 V, 60° to 90°C (140° to 194°F), Not More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors in Raceway or Cable or Earth (Directly Buried), Based on Ambient Temperature of 30°C (86°F)

PART A

	Temperature Rating of Conductor[a]		
	60°C (140°F)	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)
Size AWG, kcmil	Type UF	Types RHW, THW, THWN, XHHW[b]	Types THHN, XHHW[b]
14 AWG[c]	20	20	25
12[c]	25	25	30
10[c]	30	35	40
8	40	50	55
6	55	65	75
4	70	85	95
2	95	115	130
1	110	130	150
0	125	150	170
00	145	175	195
000	165	200	225
0000	195	230	260
250 kcmil	215	255	290
300	240	285	320
350	260	310	350
400	280	335	380
500	320	380	430

PART B

Ambient Temperature		*Correction Factors for Ambient Temperatures Other Than 30°C (86°F), Multiply the Allowable Ampacities Shown Above by the Appropriate Factor Shown Below*		
°C	°F			
21–25	70–77	1.08	1.05	1.04
26–30	78–86	1.00	1.00	1.00
31–35	87–95	.91	.94	.96
36–40	96–104	.82	.88	.91
41–45	105–113	.71	.82	.87

Source: This table was extracted from NFPA 70-1999, the *National Electrical Code*. © 1999, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

Note: This extracted material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association on the referenced subject, which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.

[a]See Table 27.5.

[b]For dry and damp locations use the 90°C (194°F) rating; for wet locations use the 75°C (167°F) rating.

[c]Unless otherwise permitted by the *NEC*, the overcurrent protection for these conductors shall not exceed 15 A for 14 AWG, 20 A for 12 AWG, and 30 A for 10 AWG, after application of correction factors for ambient temperature and number of conductors in raceway.

can create problems (even if properly installed initially) when wiring devices are replaced by unskilled homeowners.

As a result of a number of unfortunate incidents, some jurisdictions in the United States have banned the use of aluminum wire in branch circuitry. Heavy feeders are normally installed by experienced and skilled contractors, and the risk of a poor joint is minimized. We recommend that the use of aluminum conductors be restricted to sizes no smaller than No. 4 AWG, and that installation be permitted *only* by contractors who certify expertise in the specialized techniques involved. Also, local codes and electrical inspectors should be consulted. All references in this text, including all tables and illustrations, are to copper conductors. The following sections provide a brief description of the principal building wire types.

TABLE 27.3 Current-Carrying Capacity Derating Factors[a]

Number of Current-Carrying Conductors in Raceway[b]	Derating Factor[c]
4–6	0.80
7–9	0.70
10–20	0.50
21–30	0.45
31–40	0.40
41 and above	0.35

Source: This table was extracted from NFPA 70-1999, the *National Electrical Code*. © 1999, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269.

Note: This extracted material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association on the referenced subject, which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.

[a]These factors are to be applied after application of derating factors for ambient temperatures other than 30°C (86°F). See Table 27.2.

[b]Grounding and bonding conductors are not counted. Neutral conductors are counted in special cases. See 1999 *NEC*, Article 310-15(4).

[c]When a load diversity factor is applicable, derating factors as given in 1999 *NEC* Table B-310-11 shall be used.

TABLE 27.4 Typical Ambient Temperatures

Location		Temperature
Well-ventilated, normally heated buildings		30°C (86°F)
Buildings with major heat sources such as power stations or industrial processes		40°C (104°F)
Poorly ventilated spaces such as attics		45°C (113°F)
Furnaces and boiler rooms	(min.)	40°C (104°F)
	(max.)	60°C (140°F)
Outdoors in shade in air		40°C (104°F)
In thermal insulation		45°C (113°F)
Direct solar exposure		55°C (131°F)

27.10 FLEXIBLE ARMORED CABLE

Among the most common types of exposed wiring is *NEC* type AC armored cable, commonly known in the smaller sizes by the trade name *BX*. It is an assembly of insulated wires, bound together and enclosed in a protective armor made of a spiral-wound interlocking strip of steel tape (Fig. 27.3). The cable is installed with simple U-clamps or staples holding it against beams, walls, and so on. This type of installation is frequently used in residences and in the rewiring of existing buildings. Use of type AC cable is generally restricted to dry locations. For application and installation details and restrictions, see *NEC* Article 333, "Armored Cable."

A similar construction with much broader application (covered in *NEC* Article 334) is metal-clad (MC) cable. This cable may be used exposed or concealed and in cable trays, and, when covered with a moisture-impervious jacket, in wet and outdoor locations as well (Fig. 27.4).

27.11 NONMETALLIC SHEATHED CABLE (ROMEX)

NEC types NM and NMC, also known by the trade name *Romex*, are restricted to small building applications—that is, residential and other structures not exceeding three floors above grade (Fig. 27.5). The plastic outer jacket, unlike the armor on type AC, makes type NM easier to handle but more vulnerable to physical damage. For application details and restrictions, see *NEC* Article 336, "Nonmetallic Sheathed Cable." The typical installation technique is shown in Fig. 27.6.

TABLE 27.5 Conductor Insulation and Application

Trade Name	Type/Letter	Temperature	Application Provisions
Moisture and heat-resistant rubber	RHW	75°C (167°F)	Dry and wet locations
Single conductor, underground feeder and branch-circuit	UF	60°C (140°F) 75°C (167°F)[a]	Refer to *NEC* Article 339
Moisture-resistant thermoplastic	TW	60°C (140°F)	Dry and wet locations
Heat-resistant thermoplastic	THHN	90°C (194°F)	Dry and damp locations
Moisture and heat-resistant thermoplastic	THW	75°C (167°F) 90°C (194°F)	Dry and wet locations Special applications
Moisture and heat-resistant thermoplastic	THWN	75°C (167°F)	Dry and wet locations
Moisture and heat-resistant cross-linked synthetic polyethylene	XHHW	90°C (194°F) 75°C (167°F)	Dry and damp locations Wet locations

Source: This table was extracted from NFPA 70-1999, the *National Electrical Code*. © 1999, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269. This extracted material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association on the referenced subject, which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.

[a]For ampacity limitation, see *NEC* Article 339-5.

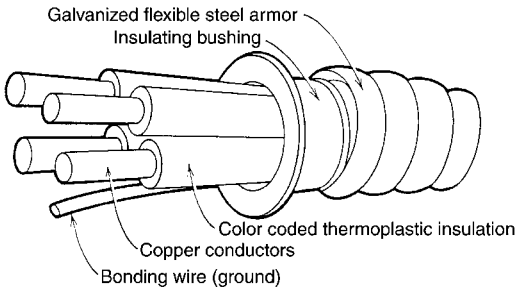


Fig. 27.3 *Flexible armored cable (*NEC *type AC, trade name BX). Note the insulating bushing that is always installed on the end of the armor to protect the wires from damage from the sharp edges of the cut steel armor. (Courtesy of AFC Cable Systems.)*

27.12 CONDUCTORS FOR GENERAL WIRING

Under this heading (Article 310), the *NEC* lists the wire types that are generally installed in raceways and are referred to by the term *building wire*. The most common types are listed in Table 27.5. These wires consist of a copper conductor covered with insulation and, in some instances, with a jacket (Fig. 27.7).

27.13 SPECIAL CABLE TYPES

Although most building wiring is accomplished with plastic-insulated 300- and 600-V conductors of the types described in the preceding sections, some applications require the use of special cables. These include high-voltage cables, armored cables, corrosion-resistant jacketed cables, underground cables, and so on. The reader is referred to manufacturers' catalogs and the *NEC* for construction and application details. Service-entrance cables and their installation are discussed in Sections 26.1 and 26.4.

27.14 BUSWAY/BUSDUCT/CABLEBUS

A busway (busduct) is an assembly of copper or aluminum bars in a rigid metallic housing (Fig. 27.8). Its use is almost always preferable, from an economic viewpoint, in two instances: when it is necessary to carry large amounts of current (power) and when it is necessary to tap onto an electrical power conductor at frequent intervals along its length.

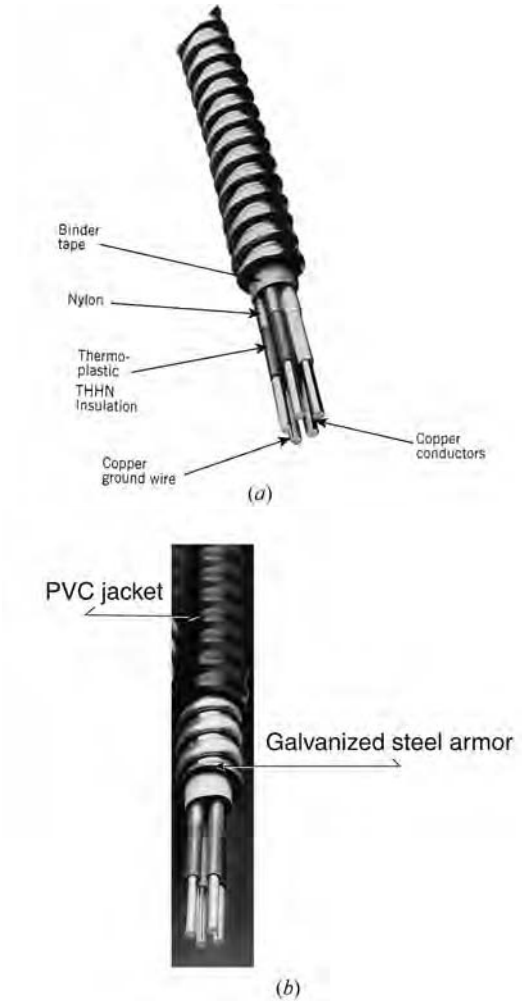


Fig. 27.4 *(a) Metal-clad cable (*NEC *type MC, Article 334) with aluminum armor in lieu of the more common galvanized steel armor. Use is similar to that of the steel-armored cable, with the weight advantage of aluminum. Conductors are factory-installed, color-coded, and covered with type THHN insulation and nylon jacket. Cables of similar construction, using steel armor, are available for almost all power and control applications. (Courtesy of AFC Cable Systems.) (b) Jacketed-type MC cable has a wide variety of applications, including in wet locations, because of its water-impervious outer PVC jacket. Where specifically indicated by the manufacturer, this cable may be used for direct burial in earth or installed in concrete. (Courtesy of AFC Cable Systems.)*

In the case of a heavy current requirement, the alternatives to using busways are to use paralleled sets of round conductors or a single large conductor. Paralleled sets of conductors are almost always more expensive than a busway of similar current capacity because of the high installation cost of multiple conduits. Alternatively, using a single, large-diameter conductor becomes increasingly

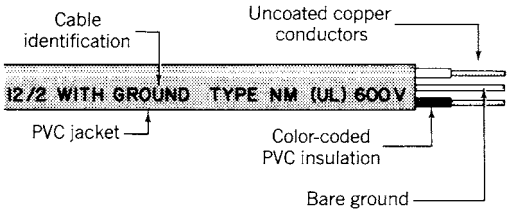


Fig. 27.5 *Construction of typical* NEC *type NM cable. The illustrated cable is a two-conductor, No. 12 AWG with ground, insulated for 600 V. Normally shown are the manufacturer, cable trade name, and the letters (UL), which indicate listing of this product by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. The ground wire is bare or covered, and the entire cable may be obtained flat (illustrated), oval, or round.*

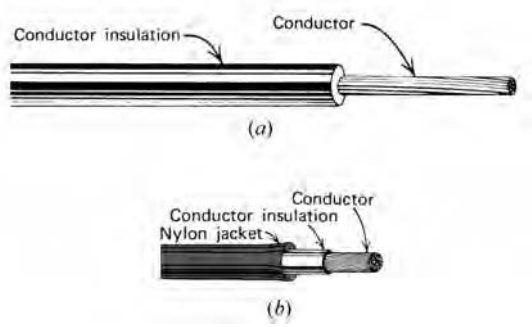


Fig. 27.7 *(a) Typical construction of unjacketed building wire such as type THW (see Table 27.5). (b) The illustrated construction is typical for any nylon-jacketed cable such as THWN or THHN. (The first three letters indicate the type of insulation, and the final N indicates the nylon jacket.)*

inefficient as cable size increases because large round conductors require more cross section per ampere of current-carrying capacity than do the flat conductors (busbars) used in busduct (Fig. 27.9).

Where many power taps are required along an electric feeder run consisting of cable in conduit, costs become very high because of the large amount of expensive hand labor involved, since a connection must be made to each conductor in the run. The preferable alternative is to use a "plug-in" busway to which connections can be made easily and rapidly with a plug-in device, similar to the insertion of a common plug into a wall receptacle. This has the additional advantage of convenience; connection/disconnection is simply a matter of inserting or withdrawing the plug-in device, whereas cable taps are permanent connections (Fig. 27.10).

A typical application of heavy-duty busduct might be a vertical feeder in a high-rise building connecting the basement switchboard to the penthouse machine room. The same building might also use heavy-duty plug-in busduct as vertical riser(s) with taps feeding individual floors (Fig. 27.2). Typical

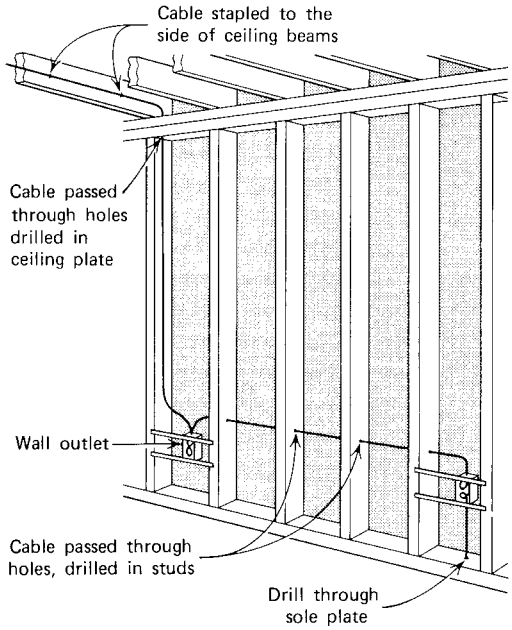


Fig. 27.6 *Typical wiring technique using types NM (Romex) or AC (BX) in wood stud construction. With metal stud construction, BX cables are passed through precut openings in lieu of field-drilled holes. Where cables are exposed to damage from nails, screws, and other hazards, protective metal cover plates are required. For details, see the installation limitations in the* NEC.

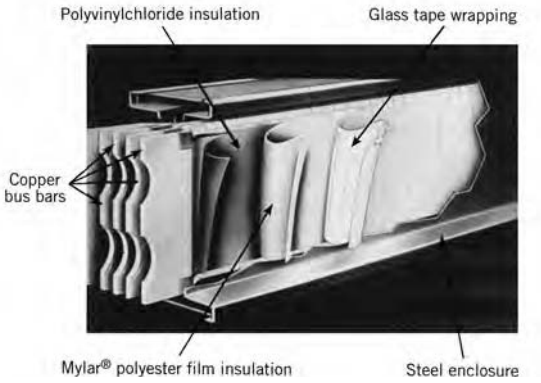


Fig. 27.8 *Cutaway view showing construction of a typical feeder busduct. This design is highly compact and rigid, which gives desirable electrical characteristics as well as the advantage of small size. (Photo courtesy of Siemens Energy and Automation, Inc.)*



Fig. 27.9 *Sectional view of a busduct (on top) shows the tight assembly of insulated conductors within a metal housing. This design, unlike the ventilated type, can be mounted in any position because heat dissipation is by conduction from the busbars to the housing. The eight sets of cable shown beneath it have the same current-carrying capacity as the busduct. (Reproduced by permission of Square D Company.)*

applications for light-duty plug-in busduct (70 to 100 A) could be any machine shop or workshop. The electrical supply to individual machine tools is made very simply and flexibly with a tap-on device (see Fig. 27.10).

Busduct is specified by type, material, number of buses, current capacity, and voltage (e.g., aluminum feeder busduct, 4-wire, 1000 A, 600 V, or copper plug-in busway, 100 A, 3-wire, 600 V). Feeder busduct (no plug-in capability) is available in ratings from 400 to 4000 A. Plug-in busway is available from 30 A for lighting or light-machinery circuits (see Section 27.15) to 3000 A. A wide variety of fittings and joints is available for all busways to permit easy installation (Fig. 27.11). Devices are available for indoor and outdoor application.

Cablebus is similar to ventilated busduct, except that it uses insulated cables instead of busbars. The cables are rigidly mounted in an open space-frame. The advantage of this construction is that it carries the ampacity rating of its cables *in free air*, which is much higher than for the same cables in conduit, thus giving a high amperes-per-dollar first-cost figure. Its principal disadvantages are bulkiness and difficulty in making taps.

An example of the type of economic analysis that should be made when considering an item as fundamental as a heavy-current electrical feeder, is



Fig. 27.10 *Construction of one type of plug-in busduct. Plug-ins are evenly spaced on alternate sides to facilitate connection of plug-in breakers, switches, transformers, or cable taps. Housing is of sheet steel with openings for ventilation. The cover plate is not shown. (Courtesy of Square D Company.)*



Fig. 27.11 *Typical installation of compact-design busduct. Note that the individual busducts are supported by channels hung from the ceiling and that the same hangers support more than one level of bus. Right-angle turns are easily made in the same plane (horizontal or vertical) and between vertical and horizontal planes. (Reproduced by permission of Square D Company.)*

TABLE 27.6 Life-Cycle Relative Cost Comparison of 2000-A, 208-V Feeder Installation

Feeder System Description[a]	Material Cost	Labor Cost[b]	Total First Cost	Power Loss per 100 ft[c] (kW)	Annual Energy Loss[d] (kWh)	Annual Energy Cost[e]	Life-Cycle Energy Cost[f]	Total Life-Cycle Cost[g]
Cable tray	0.63	0.37	1.00	2.90	12,536	0.086	1.081	2.08 100%
Wire and conduit	0.68	0.61	1.29	2.90	12,536	0.086	1.081	2.37 114%
Busduct	1.14	0.24	1.38	5.60	24,207	0.166	2.087	3.47 167%
Cablebus	0.69	0.45	1.14	5.91	25,547	0.174	2.203	3.34 161%

[a]Equipment rating is 600 V, cable is copper, conduit is rigid steel, cable tray is aluminum.

[b]Labor cost includes overhead.

[c]Based on published resistivity data for cable and bus—assuming 80% demand (1600 A) and all conductors in the system equally loaded. (Loss is equivalent to kW per 30.5 m.)

[d]Based on 80% demand, 12 hours per day, 360 days per year.

[e]Using $0.10 per kWh as the combined net rate, including demand charges.

[f]Using a 20-year life cycle, 8% fixed capital cost, and 3% annual escalation in energy cost.

[g]Sum of the fourth and eighth columns.

summarized in Table 27.6, which shows the results of such a study in terms of relative costs. Note that when considering first cost alone, the advantage lies with cable tray (with interlocked armor cables) and cablebus. Adding energy-loss considerations shifts the advantage to cable tray and wire in conduit. No general conclusion should be drawn from Table 27.6 regarding costs. A change in feeder length, number of taps, hours of operation, energy costs, or any of the other factors can shift the advantage to a different system. The point of the study is to demonstrate that life-cycle costs and first costs often lead to entirely different conclusions and that this type of study is truly required before a rational engineering decision can be made. (Life-cycle cost in this example was taken as the present value of all costs over the installation's life cycle—in this case, 20 years.)

Two additional items are worthy of note:

1. The very factors that yield a lower first cost operate to yield a higher operating cost. The smaller copper sizes in busduct and cablebus, permitted by high-temperature insulation and good ventilation, cause increased power loss because of their higher resistivity.
2. If the heat loss from the busduct or cablebus can be used to advantage, the related energy cost can be credited instead of being considered a total loss, and life-cycle costs can be changed considerably. Conversely, it can also negatively affect the building cooling load.

27.15 LIGHT-DUTY BUSWAY, FLAT-CABLE ASSEMBLIES, AND LIGHTING TRACK

Special prefabricated assemblies that act as light-duty (branch circuit) plug-in electrical feeders are widely used because of their simplicity of installation and, more importantly, because of their plug-in mode of connection.

(a) Light-Duty Plug-In Busway

This construction, which may be used either for feeder or branch circuit applications, is covered by the *NEC* general article on busways, with restrictions when applied as branch circuit wiring. Light-duty busways are rated from 20 to 60 A at 300 V, in 2- and 3-wire construction. A somewhat heavier design rated 60 A to 100 A at 600 V is available in 3- and 4-wire construction. Their application is principally for direct connection (with overcurrent protection) of light machinery and industrial lighting (Figs. 27.12 and 27.13).

(b) Flat-Cable Assemblies

A specially designed cable (*NEC* Article 363; Type FC) consisting of two, three, or four No. 10 AWG conductors is field-installed in a rigidly mounted standard 1⅝-in. (41 mm) square structural

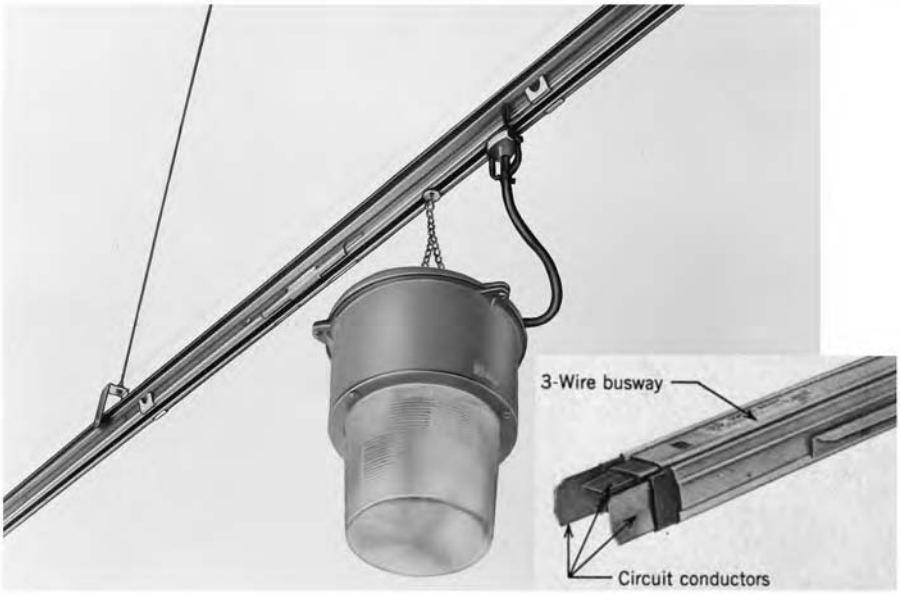


Fig. 27.12 *Light-duty busway is rated 20–60 A, 300 V, and either 2- or 3-wire. Power takeoff devices twist into the bus to make contact with the circuit conductors. Within* NEC *restrictions of overcurrent protection, this busway may be used for standard and heavy-duty lighting fixtures and for other electrical devices such as electrically powered tools. (Courtesy of Siemens Energy and Automation, Inc.)*

channel. Power-tap devices, installed where required, puncture the insulation of one of the phase conductors and the neutral. Electrical connection is then made to the pigtail wires that extend from the tap devices. This connection can extend directly to the device or to an outlet box with a receptacle, which then acts as a disconnecting means for the electric device being served. In this fashion, lighting fixtures, small motors, unit heaters, and other single-phase, light-duty devices can be served without the necessity of "hard" (conduit and cable) wiring. Figure 27.14 illustrates

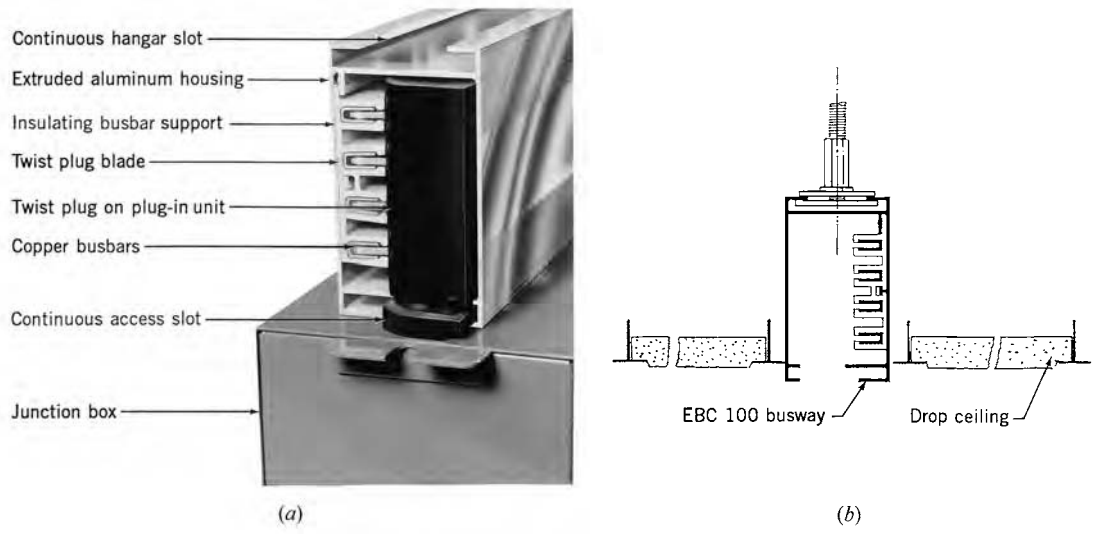


Fig. 27.13 *(a) Plug-in busway rated 100 A, 3-phase, 4-wire, 600 V measures approximately 2½ in. W × 4½ in. H (64 × 115 mm). The twist-in plug, which is integrally attached to a connection means (junction box in the illustration), is rated 30 to 100 A, single- or 3-phase, as required. The attached junction box (or receptacle, circuit breaker, or fuse box) then feeds the utilization device (e.g., heavy-duty lighting or machinery). (b) This bus can also be installed in a hung ceiling. (Courtesy of Universal Trolley.)*

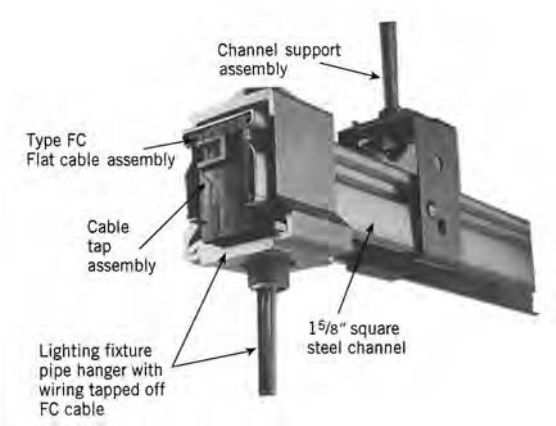


Fig. 27.14 *A 3-phase, 4-wire flat cable assembly installed in a steel channel is shown. Taps into the conductors are made by tightening the tap device. Taps can be made phase-to-ground to give 120 V and phase-to-phase to give 208 V. (If the cable is connected to a 277/480-V, 3-phase system, then the phase-to-ground and phase-to-phase voltages will be 277 and 480 V, respectively.) After a tap device is removed, the puncture made by the tap "heals" itself. (Courtesy of Chan-L-Wire/Wiremold Company.)*

similar equipment that is specifically intended to feed industrial lighting fixtures.

(c) Lighting Track

This is a factory-assembled channel with conductors for one to four circuits *permanently* installed in the track (*NEC* Article 410-R). Power is taken from the track by special tap-off devices that contact the track's electrified conductors and carry the power to the attached lighting fixture, which can be positioned anywhere along the track. The tracks are generally rated at 20 A and, unlike FC cable assemblies, may feed only lighting fixtures. Taps to feed convenience receptacles are not permitted. A typical design is shown in Fig. 27.15. An application of track lighting is shown in Fig. 16.9.

27.16 CABLE TRAY

This system, which is covered in *NEC* Article 318, is simply a continuous open support for approved cables. When used as a general wiring system, the cables must be self-protected. The advantages of this system are free-air-rated cable ampacities, easy installation and maintenance, and relatively low cost. The disadvantages are bulkiness and accessibility requirements. Cable trays are used primarily in industrial applications.

27.17 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS FOR RACEWAY SYSTEMS

The following sections deal with closed wiring raceways, which completes the discussion of raceways. The details of construction and application are not discussed here because such information is readily available from manufacturers and applicable *NEC* articles. However, enough material is provided for the reader to become familiar with the types of raceways, their common applications and limitations, and, where applicable, comparative characteristics.

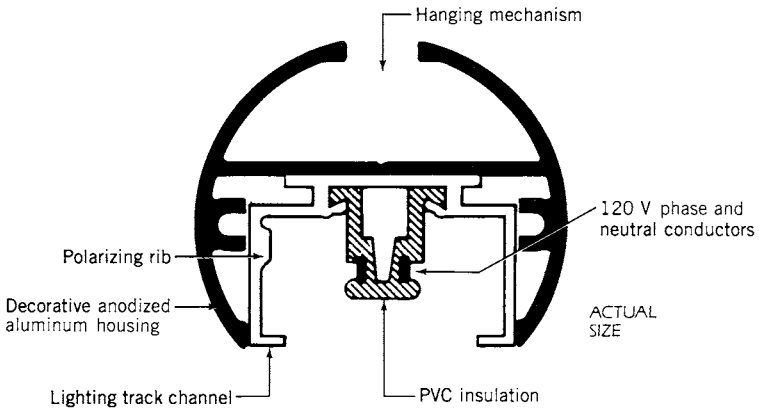


Fig. 27.15 *Decorative lighting track. The circular housing can be obtained in a variety of finishes and hanger arrangements. The actual lighting track, shown full size, is readily available without the housing for direct surface mounting. Track is also available in a 4-conductor configuration (three 120-V conductors plus neutral). (Courtesy of Swivelier.)*

Although this chapter covers equipment used primarily in electrical power systems, empty raceways intended for signal, data, and communications wiring (to be provided by others) are normally provided under the electrical section of a construction contract. The function of a raceway in such systems is largely the same as it is for power wiring: protection and isolation of the wiring.

Prior to the widespread use of computers in buildings of all types, raceway space requirements for communication and signal wiring were easily established because such wiring consisted of small telephone cables plus miscellaneous signal and alarm wires. These requirements were easily satisfied with empty conduits or cells in floor raceway systems. Today, when virtually every commercial/institutional building uses some type of data-processing equipment, and communication networking is commonplace even in small facilities, raceways for communication cabling have become a major design consideration. They often far exceed in cross-sectional area the space required for power cabling. Their space requirements are sometimes so great that they, like ductwork, have substantial architectural impact and must therefore be considered early in the design process.

Sizing of raceways for power wiring is an exact process (see Section 28.16), based as it is upon maximum permissible temperatures for specific materials in a given environment. This is not so for communication cabling, even when a system's present requirements are known, because of the extremely rapid growth of demand for networking and data interchange. The problem is all the more difficult when designing commercial space for rental to an unknown client. The advisable approach in such cases is either to provide a reasonable amount of floor-level raceway space for main cabling (see Sections 27.24 and 27.25) and to rely on add-on systems such as under-carpet wiring (see Section 27.29) and surface or ceiling raceways (Section 27.30) for additional raceway area, or, alternatively, to use a structural system that provides virtually unlimited wiring space (Figs. 27.26 through 27.32). Because the latter is a major structural/architectural decision, it must be made during the preliminary stages of design. A clear understanding of the owner's project requirements will assist in decision making.

Design considerations for power system raceways are discussed in the following sections and in Chapter 28. Design of raceways for data and communication system wiring includes the following considerations:

I. Number, type, and location of data-processing terminals.
II. Networking requirements:
   A. The type of local area network largely determines the communication media (i.e., coaxial cable, shielded and unshielded wire, and fiber-optic cables), which affects the raceway space requirements. The cable type also determines the type of connectors needed (and their space requirements) and the type of floor outlets used for machine connection.
   B. Cable topology (i.e., interconnection arrangements). This item is frequently not within the domain of the architectural designer, although the raceway space availability seriously affects the cabling arrangement and vice versa.
   C. Requirement for interconnection of networks and connection to remote networks.
III. Number, location, and characteristics of major peripheral devices, such as mass storage, printing, and plotting.
IV. Location and type of major subsystems, such as computer-aided design/manufacturing spaces.
V. Location of presentation spaces that require interconnection to computer networks.

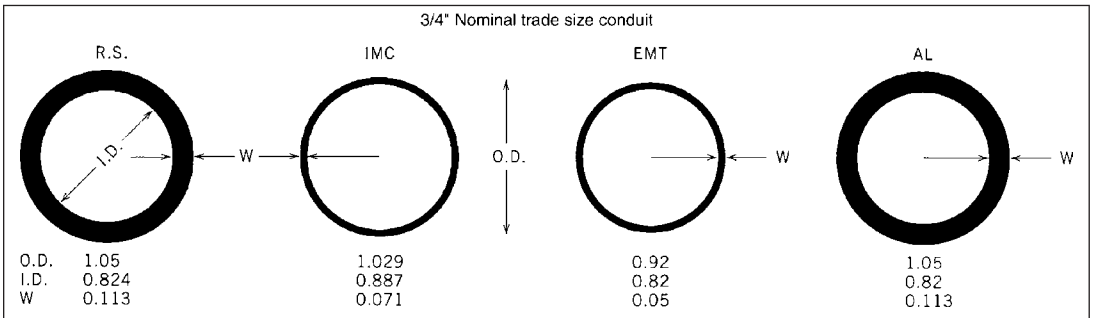
In view of these highly technical and rapidly changing requirements, engaging the services of a consultant with specialization in this area is suggested.

27.18 STEEL CONDUIT

The purpose of conduit is to:

1. Protect the enclosed wiring from mechanical injury and damage from the surrounding atmosphere
2. Provide a grounded metal enclosure for the wiring in order to avoid a shock hazard
3. Provide a system ground path
4. Protect surroundings against a fire hazard as a result of overheating or arcing of the enclosed conductors
5. Support the conductors

TABLE 27.7 Comparative Dimensions and Weights of Metallic Conduit[a]



Nominal or Trade Size in. (SI Designation)	Outside Diameter in. (mm)				Inside Diameter in. (mm)				Weight per 10-ft Length lb[b]			
	RS[c]	IMC[d]	EMT[e]	AL[f]	RS	IMC	EMT	AL	RS	IMC	EMT	AL
½ (16)	0.84 (21.3)	0.82 (20.8)	0.71 (18.0)	0.84 (21.3)	0.62 (15.8)	0.69 (17.5)	0.62 (15.8)	0.62 (15.8)	7.9 (3.6)	5.3 (2.4)	2.9 (1.3)	2.7 (1.2)
¾ (21)	1.05 (26.7)	1.03 (26.2)	0.92 (23.4)	1.05 (26.7)	0.82 (20.8)	0.89 22.6)	0.82 (20.8)	0.82 (20.8)	10.9 (4.9)	7.2 (3.3)	4.4 (2.0)	3.6 (1.6)
1 (27)	1.32 (33.5)	1.29 (32.8)	1.16 (29.5)	1.32 (33.5)	1.05 (26.7)	1.13 (28.7)	1.05 (26.7)	1.05 (26.7)	16.5 (7.5)	10.6 (4.8)	6.4 (2.9)	5.3 (2.4)
1 ¼ (35)	1.66 (42.2)	1.64 (41.7)	1.51 (38.4)	1.66 (42.2)	1.38 (35.1)	1.47 (37.3)	1.38 (35.1)	1.38 (35.1)	21.5 (9.8)	14.4 (6.5)	9.5 (4.3)	7.0 (3.2)
1 ½ (41)	1.90 (48.3)	1.88 (47.8)	1.74 (44.2)	1.90 (48.3)	1.61 (40.9)	1.70 (43.2)	1.61 (40.9)	1.61 (40.9)	25.8 (11.7)	17.7 (8.0)	11.0 (5.0)	8.6 (3.9)
2 (53)	2.38 (60.5)	2.36 (59.9)	2.20 (55.9)	2.38 (60.5)	2.07 (52.6)	2.17 (55.1)	2.07 (52.6)	2.07 (52.6)	35.2 (16.0)	23.6 (10.7)	14.0 (6.4)	11.6 (5.3)
2 ½ (63)	2.88 (73.2)	2.86 (72.6)	2.88 (73.2)	2.88 (73.2)	2.47 (62.7)	2.61 (66.3)	2.73 (69.3)	2.47 (62.7)	56.7 (25.7)	38.2 (17.3)	20.5 (9.3)	18.3 (8.3)
3 (78)	3.50 (88.9)	3.48 (88.4)	3.50 (88.9)	3.50 (88.9)	3.07 (78.0)	3.23 (82.0)	3.36 (85.3)	3.07 (78.0)	71.4 (32.4)	46.9 (21.3)	25.0 (11.3)	23.9 (10.8)
3 ½ (91)	4.00 (101.6)	3.97 (100.8)	4.00 (101.6)	4.00 (101.6)	3.55 (90.2)	3.72 (94.5)	3.83 (97.3)	3.55 (90.2)	86.0 (39.0)	54.7 (24.8)	32.5 (14.7)	28.8 (13.1)
4 (103)	4.50 (114.3)	4.47 (113.5)	4.50 (114.3)	— —	4.03 (102.4)	4.21 (106.9)	4.03 (102.4)	— —	97.2 (44.1)	62.5 (28.4	37.0 (16.8)	— —

[a]Data vary slightly among manufacturers. O.D. is outside diameter; I.D. is inside diameter; W is wall thickness.
[b]Standard length including one coupling; SI weight (in parentheses) given as kg per 3.05 m length.
[c]Standard heavy-wall rigid steel conduit.
[d]Intermediate-weight steel conduit.
[e]Electric metallic tubing.
[f]Aluminum conduit.

For these reasons, the *NEC* generally requires that all power wiring be enclosed in a rigid metallic corrosion-resistant conduit. To this latter end, steel conduit is manufactured in several types, among which are hot-dip galvanized, sherardized (coated with zinc dust), enameled, and plastic-covered.

There are three types of steel conduit that differ basically only in wall thickness. They are, in order of decreasing weight:

1. Heavy-wall steel conduit, also referred to simply as *rigid steel conduit*; covered by *NEC* Article 346
2. Intermediate metal conduit, usually referred to as *IMC*; covered by *NEC* Article 345
3. Electric metallic tubing, normally known as *EMT* or *thin-wall conduit*; covered by *NEC* Article 348

The differences are shown in Table 27.7. Several types of heavy-wall conduit plus EMT are shown in Fig. 27.16. The equivalent SI dimensions of conduits are given in Table 27.8.

Rigid conduit and IMC use the same threaded fittings. As a result of its thin wall, EMT is not threaded; instead, it uses set-screw and pressure

TABLE 27.8 SI Equivalents of Rigid Steel Conduit Sizes

		Dimensions mm		
Conduit Size in.	SI Designation	Outside Diameter	Inside Diameter	Wall Thickness
½	16	21.3	16.1	2.6
¾	21	26.7	21.3	2.7
1	27	33.4	27.0	3.2
1¼	35	42.2	35.4	3.4
1½	41	48.3	41.3	3.5
2	53	60.3	52.9	3.7
2½	63	73.0	63.2	4.9
3	78	88.9	78.5	5.2
3½	91	101.6	90.6	5.5
4	103	114.3	102.9	5.7

Source: http://www.steelconduit.org/rsc.htm

fittings. The thinner walls of EMT and IMC yield a larger inside diameter (ID) and, therefore, easier wire pulling. The combination of lower weight and easier wire pulling gives EMT and IMC a distinct labor-cost advantage over rigid conduit, which is further enhanced in jobs with a great deal of field bending and handling of conduit. Both, however, have application restrictions, which are detailed in the *NEC*.

Generally, no conduit smaller than ½-in. (13 mm) nominal trade diameter is used. Ordinary steel pipe may not be used as electric conduit, and all electric steel conduit is distinctively marked as such.

When steel conduit is installed in direct contact with the earth, it is advisable to use the hot-dip galvanized type and to coat the joints with asphaltum. If the earth is very wet, the entire conduit system should be coated with an appropriate waterproofing compound. Alternatively, a plastic-jacketed conduit can be used.

Conduit is fastened to the building structure in much the same way as piping: with pipe straps and clamps. The vertical load at floor openings is taken with special support clamps. Trapeze mounting is common for conduit banks hung from the ceiling, as in Fig. 27.17.

Conduit size depends not only on the maximum permissible temperature of the contained conductors, but also on the number and diameter of the wires that may be drawn into the conduit without injuring the wire. The number and radius of bends in the conduit, as well as its total length, affect the degree of abrasion to the wiring insulation during installation. No wires should be installed until a conduit system has been inspected and approved.

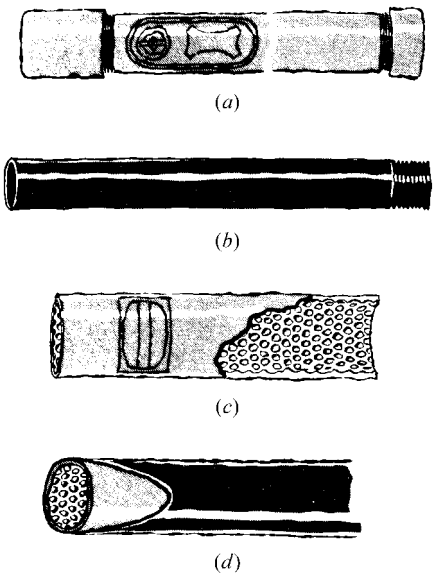


Fig. 27.16 *Steel conduits: (a) galvanized, heavy wall, rigid, (b) black enameled, (c) EMT thin wall, (d) plastic-coated conduit for use in highly corrosive atmospheres.*

For structural reasons, conduits in concrete slabs are run close to the bottom surface (in the portion of the slab in tension) or near the center. If a large number of conduits must be embedded, it may be necessary to increase the slab thickness. In many instances, the structural slab is covered with a concrete topping, in which conduit may be installed without affecting slab integrity. In all cases, local building codes should be consulted for limitations on embedded conduits. In any event, the top of any conduit shall be at least ¾ in. (19 mm) below the finished floor surface to prevent cracking. When heavy trucking is expected, this allowance should be increased to 1½ in. (38 mm) minimum.

In general, the following rules should be observed and included in all specifications for conduit work in concrete slabs:

1. Conduits shall have an outside diameter (OD) no greater than one-third the slab thickness, as measured at its thinnest point.
2. Conduits running parallel to each other shall be spaced not less than three times the OD of the largest conduit center-to-center.
3. Conduit crossings shall be as close to a right angle as possible.
4. Minimum cover over conduits shall be ¾ in. (19 mm).

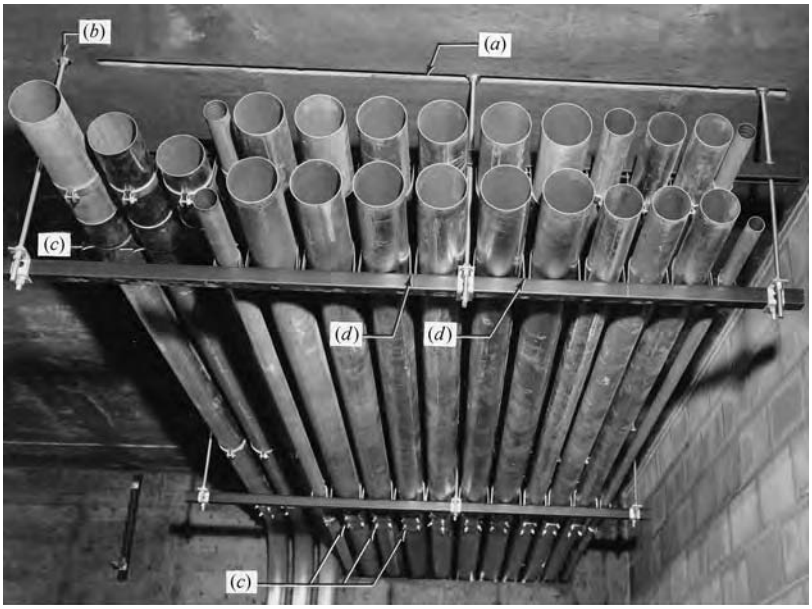


Fig. 27.17 *Typical overhead conduit bank installation. Note that due to field conditions the insert (a) for hanger rods was inadequate and an additional insert (b) was added. This conduit bank uses EMT, which has a pipe-wall thickness approximately one-third that of heavy-wall rigid conduit. The resulting weight difference in a large bank such as this is very pronounced. EMT joints are made with set-screw fittings (c). Note how individual conduits are fixed by clamps to the trapeze channel (d). (Courtesy of Republic Steel Corp.)*

27.19 ALUMINUM CONDUIT

The use of aluminum conduit has increased greatly in recent years because of the weight advantage that aluminum has over steel, being even lighter than EMT. The savings in labor costs usually more than offset the additional cost of the material itself. In addition, aluminum has better corrosion resistance in most atmospheres; it is nonmagnetic, giving a lower voltage drop; it is nonsparking; and, generally, it does not require painting.

Its major drawback is its deleterious effect on many types of concrete, causing spalling and cracking when embedded. Although manufacturers can demonstrate cases of embedding in concrete without harmful effect, this procedure should be avoided unless the concrete additives are rigidly controlled and the conduit is coated to prevent contact with the concrete. It is also inadvisable to bury aluminum in earth, with or without asphalt or another coating, because of the rapid corrosion often encountered. Other difficulties frequently encountered are mechanical freezing of threaded joints (because of thread deformation) and difficulty in obtaining electrical contact with grounding straps. With the exceptions noted, aluminum conduit may be used in all locations where steel conduit is used.

27.20 FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT

This type of conduit consists of an empty, spirally wound, interlocked armor steel or aluminum raceway. It is known to the trade as *Greenfield* and is covered in *NEC* Article 350. It is used principally for motor connections and other locations where vibration is present, where movement is encountered, or where physical obstructions make its use necessary. The vibration isolation provided by flexible conduit is one of its most important applications. It should always be used in connections to motors, transformers, ballasts, and the like. Another common application is for wiring inside metal partitions. When covered with a liquid-tight plastic jacket, it is suitable for use in wet locations (Fig. 27.18). In this configuration, it is most often known by the trade name *Sealtite*.

27.21 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT

A separate classification of rigid conduit (*NEC* Article 347) covers raceways that are formed from such materials as fiber, asbestos–cement (not as serious an environmental concern as it might sound), soapstone, rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC), and high-density polyethylene.



Fig. 27.18 *This is a particularly good application of liquid-tight, flexible conduit because it provides weatherproofing and mechanical isolation of the vibration-producing equipment. (Courtesy of Electri-Flex Company.)*

For use above ground, such conduit must be flame-retardant, tough, and resistant to heat distortion, sunlight, and low-temperature effects. For use underground, the last two requirements are waived. Generally, nonmetallic conduit may be used without restriction in nonhazardous areas within the physical limitations of the material involved. Thus, plastic conduit has a temperature limitation, asbestos–cement has considerable physical strength limitations, and so on. As a result of these limitations, PVC conduit is the material of choice for indoor exposed use, and asbestos—cement, fiber, and PVC plastic for outdoor and underground use. A separate ground wire *must* be provided because the ground provided by a metallic conduit is absent.

27.22 SURFACE METAL RACEWAYS (METALLIC AND NONMETALLIC)

These raceways are covered in *NEC* Article 352. Surface metal raceways and multioutlet assemblies may be utilized only in dry, nonhazardous, noncorrosive locations and may generally contain only wiring operating below 300 V. Such raceways are normally installed exposed, in places not subject to physical injury.

The principal applications of surface metal raceways are:

1. Where economy in construction weighs very heavily in favor of surface raceways and where expansion is anticipated (Fig. 27.19)
2. Where outlets are required at frequent intervals and where rewiring is required or anticipated (Fig. 27.20)
3. Where access to equipment in the raceways is required and/or where necessary due to the nature of the wiring (Figs. 27.19, 27.21, 27.22, and 27.23)
4. Where the extensive and expensive cutting and patching required to "bury" a raceway during rewiring is to be avoided (Fig. 27.24)

27.23 OUTLET AND DEVICE BOXES

These boxes are generally of galvanized stamped sheet metal. The most common sizes are the 4-in. (100-mm) square and 4-in. (100-mm) octagonal boxes used for fixtures, junctions, and devices and the 4 × 2⅛ in. (100 × 54 mm) box used for single devices where no splicing is required. Box depths



Fig. 27.19 *Three-section nonmetallic baseboard-type raceway measures 4 in. H and 1.5 in. D (100 × 38 mm). The three sections are intended for telephone, power, and data cabling. The junction box on the right protrudes so as not to lessen the raceway wiring space. It is equipped with vertical dividers to keep the three types of wiring completely separated. The elevated wall box on the left contains telephone and data cable outlets and connects only to the low-voltage portions of the raceway. (Photo courtesy of Hubbell, Inc.)*

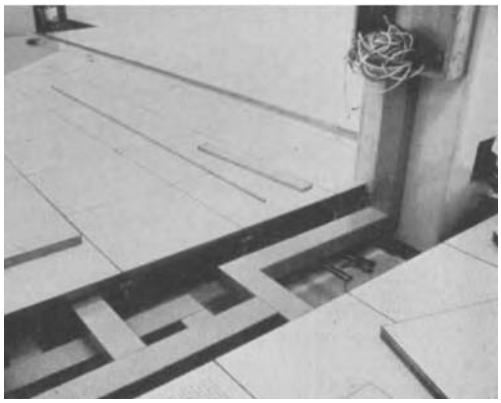


Fig. 27.20 *Large-capacity surface metal raceways are particularly useful for wiring in full-access floors (see Section 27.28) because of the heavy wiring (see wall box) and frequent rewiring. The perforated floor tile in the foreground is used to supply laminar airflow in this clean room at an integrated circuit manufacturer's facility. (Photos courtesy of Walker Systems, A Wiremold Company.)*

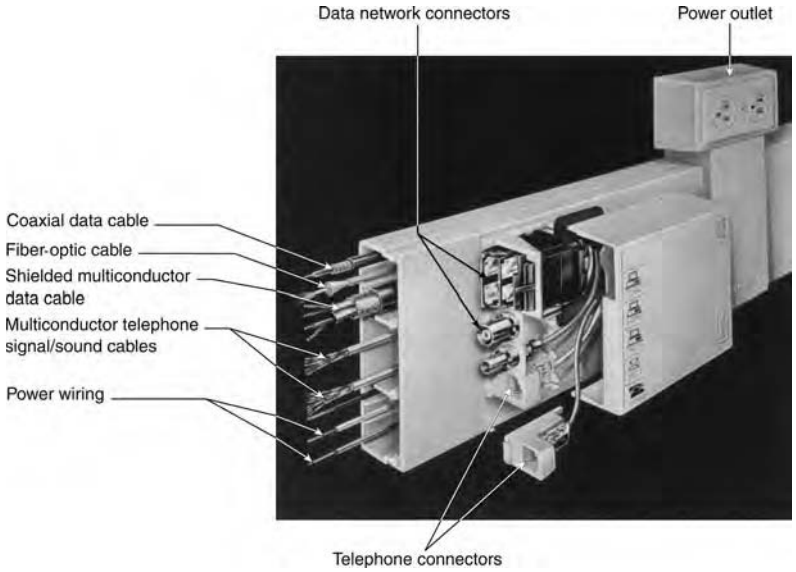


Fig. 27.21 *Multichannel nonmetallic surface raceway with snap-in connector modules for data network, signal, and power wiring systems. (Similar metallic raceways are also available.) The raceway itself measures 4½ in. H × 1 in. D (115 × 25 mm). The internal dividers are movable or entirely removable, which permits varying the number and size of the wiring channels. The principal application of this type of wireway is in commercial occupancies using extensive desktop data-processing and communication equipment. (Courtesy of Panduit.)*

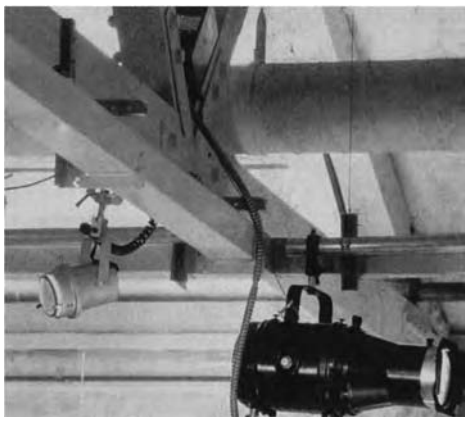


Fig. 27.22 *The frequent wiring changes required for theater and exhibition lighting are easily made when the wiring is run in a suspended surface raceway. (Courtesy of Walker Systems, A Wiremold Company.)*

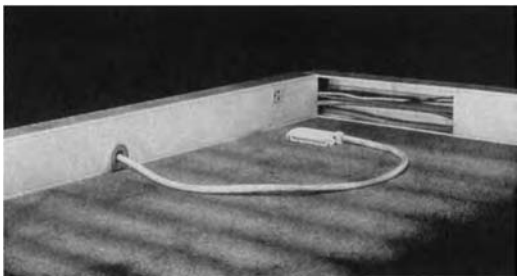


Fig. 27.23 *The basic raceway illustrated is 1⅞ in. D × 3 3/16 in. W (48 × 81 mm). It is shown with a divider installed, permitting use of the top section for power wiring and the bottom section for low-voltage wiring. Because data and communication cables are frequently supplied with factory-installed terminations (as in the photo), a raceway where the cable can be laid in rather than pulled in is required. Also, terminal strips and other equipment can be installed in the low-voltage section of these large raceways, making the use of separate terminal cabinets unnecessary. (Courtesy of Walker Systems, A Wiremold Company.)*

vary from 1½ to 3 in. (38 to 76 mm). Nonmetallic boxes may be used with NM and NMC cable and with nonmetallic conduit installations. In wet locations and for outdoor work, cast-iron or cast-aluminum boxes are recommended.

An *NEC* (Article 300-21) requirement that electrical penetrations in fire-rated floors be designed to maintain fire ratings has spurred electrical manufacturers to produce a line of poke-through fittings to meet this need. (This requirement applies also to walls, ceilings, and partitions.) One such design is shown in Fig. 27.25. These electrical penetrations have become increasingly prevalent in existing commercial spaces where the expanded need for desktop power and data wiring can be met most economically and rapidly by through-the-floor feeds from accessible wiring in the suspended ceiling plenum below. In addition, these fittings facilitate the electrical wiring relocations so common in rental office occupancies.



FloorTrak	2	3	4
Width	2.68"	2.985"	2.975"
Height	.465"	.610"	.885"
Ctr. Hole	.50x.312"	.75x.500"	1.0x.750"

Fig. 27.24 *Where low-voltage wire and cable cannot be concealed (buried), shallow, properly shaped floor track can be used. Such installations should avoid foot-traffic areas where possible to minimize trip hazards. (Courtesy of Hubbell Premise Wiring.)*

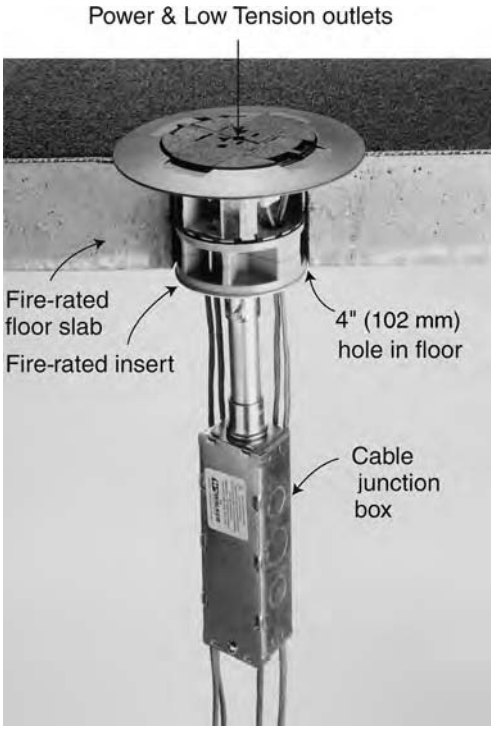


Fig. 27.25 *Typical poke-through electrical fitting mounts in a 4-in. (100-mm) hole. It is wired from underneath with the required power, telephone, signal, and data cables. Power and low-voltage cables are separated as required by code. Units are available prewired or suitable for field wiring, and adaptable for varying floor thicknesses. The floor fitting is provided with power, telephone, and data cable outlets as required for the specific installation. (Courtesy of Walker, Division of Wiremold.)*

27.24 FLOOR RACEWAYS

In commercial spaces with large open floor areas, it is common practice to place desks and other workstations throughout the space, at considerable distances from permanent walls containing electrical

services. Because each workstation in a modern office requires electric power for a computer, desk lamp, and other common equipment plus a telephone line, a computer network connection, and possibly a data outlet, the problem of bringing these services to the workstations with a minimum of exposed wiring is critical. The required outlets can be installed on the floor adjacent to or under the workstations or, if partial-height partitions are used, within these partitions.

To bring the various electrical and communication services to the user, in the absence of any sort of overall floor raceway system, the installing contractor has one of four choices:

1. Channel the floor and install a conduit in the channel, connecting it to the nearest wall outlet. Patch the chased portion of the floor.
2. Install a surface floor raceway. The usefulness of this technique is very limited because it presents a tripping hazard and problems with routine floor cleaning.
3. Drill through the floor twice and connect the new outlet to a nearby existing floor or wall outlet via a conduit on the underside of the floor slab. Floor penetrations must be fireproof.
4. Drill through the floor and run a conduit in or on the ceiling below. When using this technique, special poke-through fittings are available that restore the fire rating of the slab (see Fig. 27.25). These fittings are designed to carry all the electric services normally required at a workstation. They can then be connected to a single-location multiservice floor outlet group, as in Fig. 27.25, or used to wire the partitions in a workstation, as in Fig. 27.26.

All four of these methods have serious disadvantages; method 1 is labor intensive, method 2 is unsightly and presents a safety hazard, methods 3 and 4 disturb the occupants below, and all four methods are generally inflexible and therefore unsuitable for spaces where reasonable changes in wiring and workstation location are anticipated. For these reasons, overall-access in-floor and underfloor raceway systems were developed and are widely used in high-grade commercial and institutional spaces.

The *NEC* recognizes three types of in-floor raceways:

Underfloor raceways—Article 354
Cellular metal floor raceways—Article 356
Cellular concrete floor raceways—Article 358

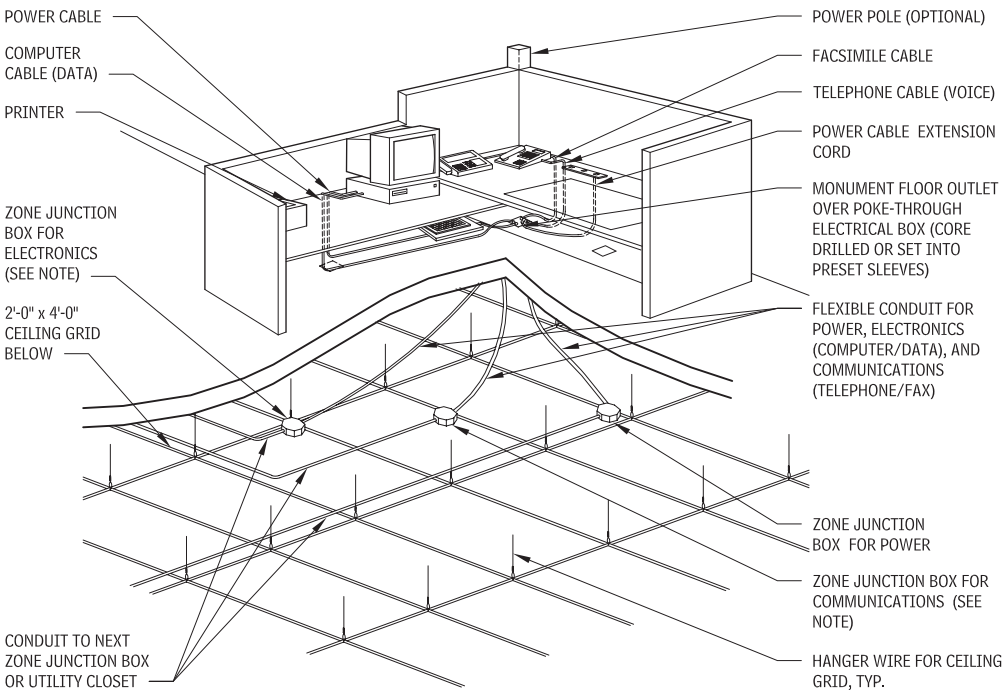
All three types are applicable to all types of structures, and none may be used in corrosive or hazardous areas. The fundamental difference between them is that underfloor raceways are added on to the structure, whereas cellular floor raceways are part of the structure itself—and therefore have a pronounced effect on architectural coordination. (Underfloor duct systems antedate poke-through fittings, which are a relatively recent development.)

27.25 UNDERFLOOR DUCT

These raceways may be installed beneath or flush with the floor. They find their widest application in office spaces because their use permits placement of power, data, and signal outlets close to desks and other furniture, regardless of spatial layout. Underfloor duct systems were widely employed until the introduction of what may be called *over-the-ceiling* ducts (in contrast to under-the-floor ducts) and flat-cable under-carpet wiring. These systems are discussed in Sections 27.29 and 27.30. The reason that alternative systems were developed is simply economic: underfloor duct systems are expensive and, because they are inflexible, being literally cast in concrete, they are frequently underutilized in one area while being inadequate in another. Before discussing the relative merits of systems, however, an understanding of what underfloor duct systems are and how they are assembled and utilized is necessary.

An underfloor duct system is simply an arrangement of parallel rectangular metal or heavy plastic raceways laid on the structural slab and covered with concrete fill. Access to the wiring in these *distribution ducts* is via inserts that connect to openings in the ducts and terminate in floor fittings for both power and signal/data wiring. Cable feeds to the distribution ducts are supplied by a second set of rectangular raceways called *feeder ducts*, usually laid at right angles to the distribution ducts.

In a *single-level* underfloor duct system, the distribution and feeder ducts are on the same level,



DESK EQUIPMENT LAYOUT

Computer and telephone cabling is often combined as an integrated voice/data cabling system, eliminating the need for three raceways, except when extra capacity is needed.

Fig. 27.26 *Typical application of a poke-through fitting to provide power, telephone, and data service to a modern workstation. This drawing shows the electrical services being tapped at junction boxes in a hung ceiling conduit system on the floor below. The ceiling wiring system can also be a raceway network in lieu of the hard-wiring shown here. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed. 2007. Reprinted by permission of John Wiley & Sons.)*

and the interwiring between them is accomplished in junction boxes. The advantage of a single-level system is shallow concrete fill, normally 2½ to 3 in. (64 to 76 mm). The limiting constraint of a single-level system is the junction box, which becomes more complex and multisectioned with an increasing number of ducts and wires. Newer systems utilize a one-piece triple-cell duct for both distribution and feeder ducts, with factory set inserts every 24 in. (610 mm) that straddle all three cells at once (Fig. 27.27). By placing distribution ducts on 5-ft (1.5-m) centers with adequate crosswise feeder ducts and utilizing large flat junction boxes, a cost-effective installation adequate for all but the heaviest wiring demands can be assembled. For demanding areas, distribution ducts can be arranged to feed under-carpet cables (see Section 27.29).

Because the initial cost of a full underfloor system is high, an alternative arrangement utilizes *only* feeder ducts on approximately 25-ft (7.6-m) centers, with flat (under-carpet) cable box connectors spaced approximately every 20 ft (6.1 m) along the feeder ducts. The low-tension (voltage) portion of this system relies completely on flat telephone and data transmission cables, including fiber-optic (FO) cables. Because these cables are generally precut and factory terminated, the system requirements must be carefully analyzed (see Section 27.29) before committing to a complete under-carpet wiring system.

A two-level underfloor duct system is essentially the same as a single-level system except that the distribution ducts and feeder ducts are on different levels (Fig. 27.28). This arrangement has the advantages of simplifying junction boxes and of giving the system unlimited feeder capacity,

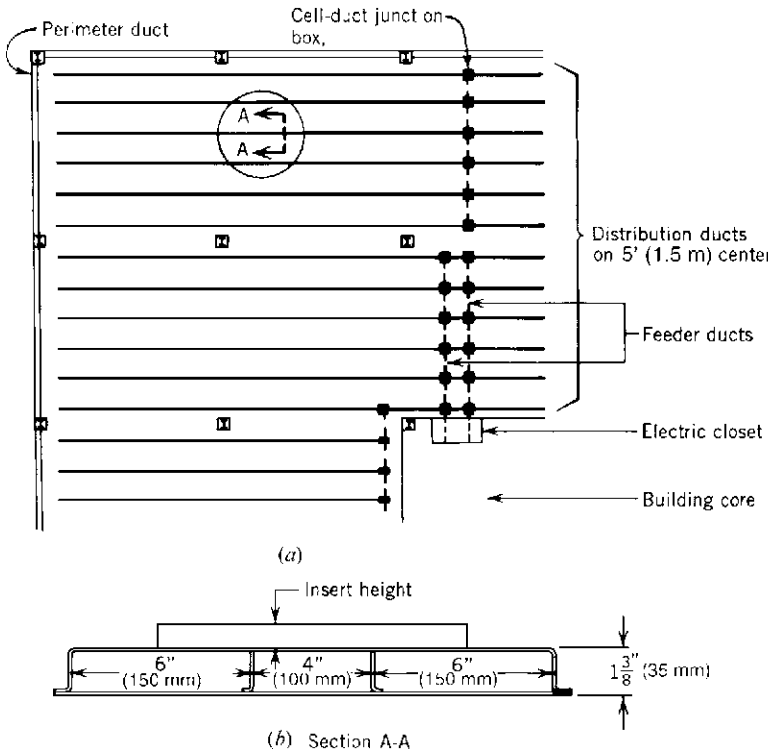


Fig. 27.27 *Details of a single-level underfloor duct system utilizing three-section cell duct for both distribution and feeder ducts. (a) Portion of a typical large open floor space in a commercial facility. Distribution ducts may be placed as close as on 5-ft (1.5-m) centers to satisfy dense desk spacing. (b) Three-cell distribution duct utilizes a 4-in. (100-mm)-wide center cell (4.9 in.^{2} [3160 mm^2]) for power and either 3-in. (75-mm)-wide (3.7 in.^{2} [2386 mm^2]) or 6-in. (150-mm)-wide (7.4 in.2 [4773 mm2]) outer cells for signal and data cabling. Minimum concrete fill depth is 2½ in. (64 mm), resulting in a minimum 1-in. (25-mm) cover over the distribution ducts. Service fittings are flush with the floor. (Courtesy of Square D Company.)*

but the distinct disadvantage of requiring a minimum of 3⅝ in. (92 mm) of concrete fill. This additional slab thickness can frequently be avoided by depressing part of the slab to accommodate feeder ducts run *under* the distribution ducts, as shown in Fig. 27.29.

A typical two-level system is illustrated in Fig. 27.30. Here, the feeder ducts run above the distribution ducts and intersect at a specially constructed junction fitting, into which the distribution ducts partially recess in order to reduce overall system height. The required concrete fill is either 3 or



Fig. 27.28 *Typical two-level junction box demonstrates the simplicity of the two-level system. (Courtesy of Square D Company.)*

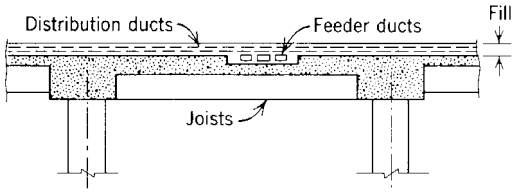


Fig. 27.29 *Setting a two-level underfloor duct system. To avoid thickening the fill, a depression in the slab can accept feeder ducts. Ducts would be run near the bay center to avoid the negative steel required of joists near columns.*

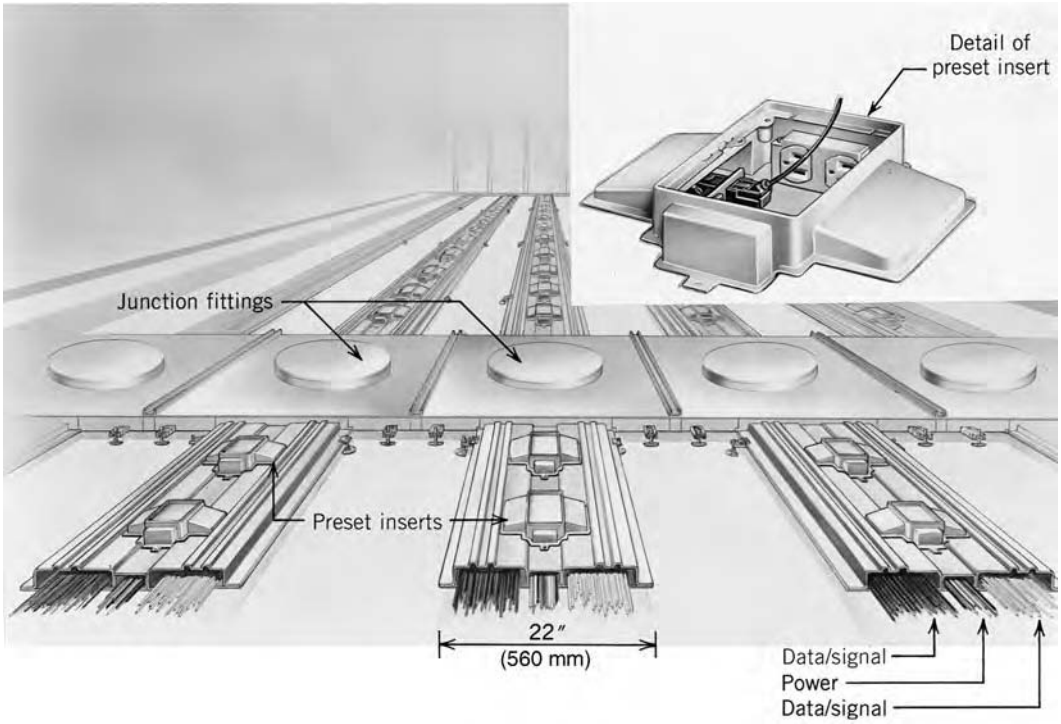


Fig. 27.30 *Modified two-level underfloor duct system requires 3 in. (75 mm) of concrete fill for 2-in. (50-mm)-high ducts and 4 in. (100 mm) of fill for 3-in. (75-mm)-high ducts. Preset inserts straddle all three cells and provide two duplex power receptacles plus connection to both low-voltage cells. Distribution ducts recess into feeder-header ducts at junction boxes to reduce the overall height. See insert. (Courtesy of Walker Systems, A Wiremold Company.)*

4 in. (75 or 100 mm), depending upon the depth of the distribution cells (2 or 3 in. [50 or 75 mm]).

In all underfloor duct systems, the principal cable capacity bottleneck is usually the supply point to the *feeder* ducts. One solution to this problem uses a special feed arrangement at panels (Fig. 27.31). Another possibility is to subdivide large floor areas, supplying each via a system of multiple feed points arranged in closets or at wall panels. In such systems, care must be taken to ensure sufficient interconnection capacity between feed points because data networks are not only floorwide but frequently buildingwide.

Underfloor ducts may be cast into the structural slab in lieu of being installed in fill or topping, but the slab must be designed to accommodate them. The use of a fill or topping on the structural slab for an underfloor duct installation has these advantages:

1. Ducts can be run in any direction, without conflict with structural elements.
2. Finishing is simplified.
3. Coordination is simplified.
4. Formwork and construction sequence are simplified.

The disadvantages are:

1. Additional concrete increases costs directly by increasing the weight of the structure. This is particularly expensive in seismic designs.
2. The building height may be increased.

In retrofit jobs where underfloor duct is selected rather than one of the other floor or ceiling raceway systems, the ducts will be placed in a new (added) floor fill.

In conclusion, some general comments on the application of underfloor duct systems are in order. Underfloor duct systems are *expensive*. They can add 50% to the building's electric system cost, without consideration of the other construction costs involved. To justify their use, therefore, a building should meet these criteria:

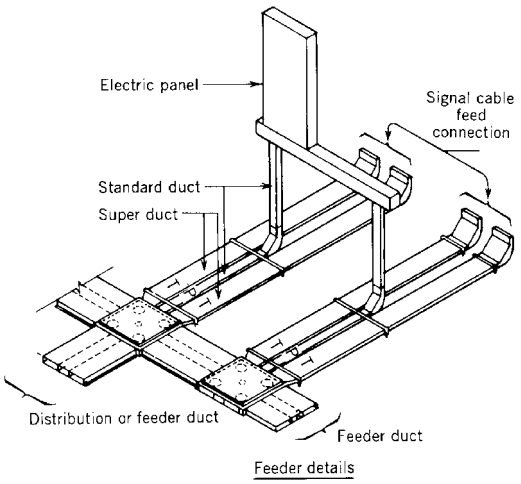


Fig. 27.31 *Due to the large capacity of both distribution ducts and feeder ducts, central cable feed points such as at electric closets can cause bottlenecks. Illustrated is one possible solution, consisting of a double-duct feed arrangement. Signal cable would feed in from cable boxes (not shown). P is a power duct, T a signal duct. (Diagrams courtesy of Square D Company.)*

1. There are open floor areas, with a requirement for outlets at locations removed from walls and partitions.
2. An under-carpet wiring system is inapplicable.
3. Outlets from ceiling systems are unacceptable.
4. Frequent rearrangement of furniture and other items requiring electrical and signal service is anticipated.

The facilities that may meet these criteria include many office buildings, museums, galleries (and other display-case spaces), high-cost merchandising areas, and selected areas in industrial facilities. Bear in mind that even in high-cost office construction, underfloor duct systems are difficult to justify economically unless the spatial/furniture layout will be likely to change. In doubtful cases, alternate arrangements can be planned and an intelligent choice made after costs and the impact on the building structure are studied.

27.26 CELLULAR METAL FLOOR RACEWAY

The underfloor duct system described previously is best applied to rectilinear arrangements. More free-flowing arrangements, such as those found in office landscaping layouts, require a fully accessible floor—if the floor is to be used for electrification. This may be provided by a cellular (metal) floor that is an integrated structural/electrical system. The floor can be partially or completely electrified. One of the many available structural element approaches is shown in Fig. 27.32.

The cellular floor is part of the structural system and is designed accordingly. Electrical wiring is fed into the cells from header ducts and/or trenches that run perpendicular to the floor cells and constitute a system of underfloor ducts in themselves. The header ducts in turn are fed from electric panels and signal data-transmission and telephone cabinets in much the same manner as underfloor ducts are fed.

Three types of wiring systems generally run in separate floor cells and header ducts—electric power, data-transmission wiring, and telephone and signal systems. The last two may be combined in a single cell only if the signal system voltage and power level are low and the local telephone company approves. A complete range of outlets and fittings is available.

27.27 PRECAST CELLULAR CONCRETE FLOOR RACEWAYS

This structural concrete system is similar to a cellular metal floor in application and has the same advantages: large capacity, versatility in that each cell is a potential raceway, and flexibility in outlet placement and movement. Here too, as with metal cell constructions, the first cost is higher than that of standard underfloor duct installation, although the life-cycle cost is frequently lower, depending upon space use and reconfigurations.

A cell is defined in *NEC* Article 358 as a "single, enclosed, tubular space in a floor made of precast cellular concrete slabs, the direction of the cell being parallel to the direction of the floor member." A feed for these cells is provided, as with metal cellular floor construction, by header ducts. Although header ducts are normally installed in concrete fill above the hollow-core structural slab, a header arrangement with feed from the ceiling below is also entirely practical. As with a metallic cellular floor, the cells can be used for air distribution and even for piping, although these elements are generally installed in a hung ceiling.

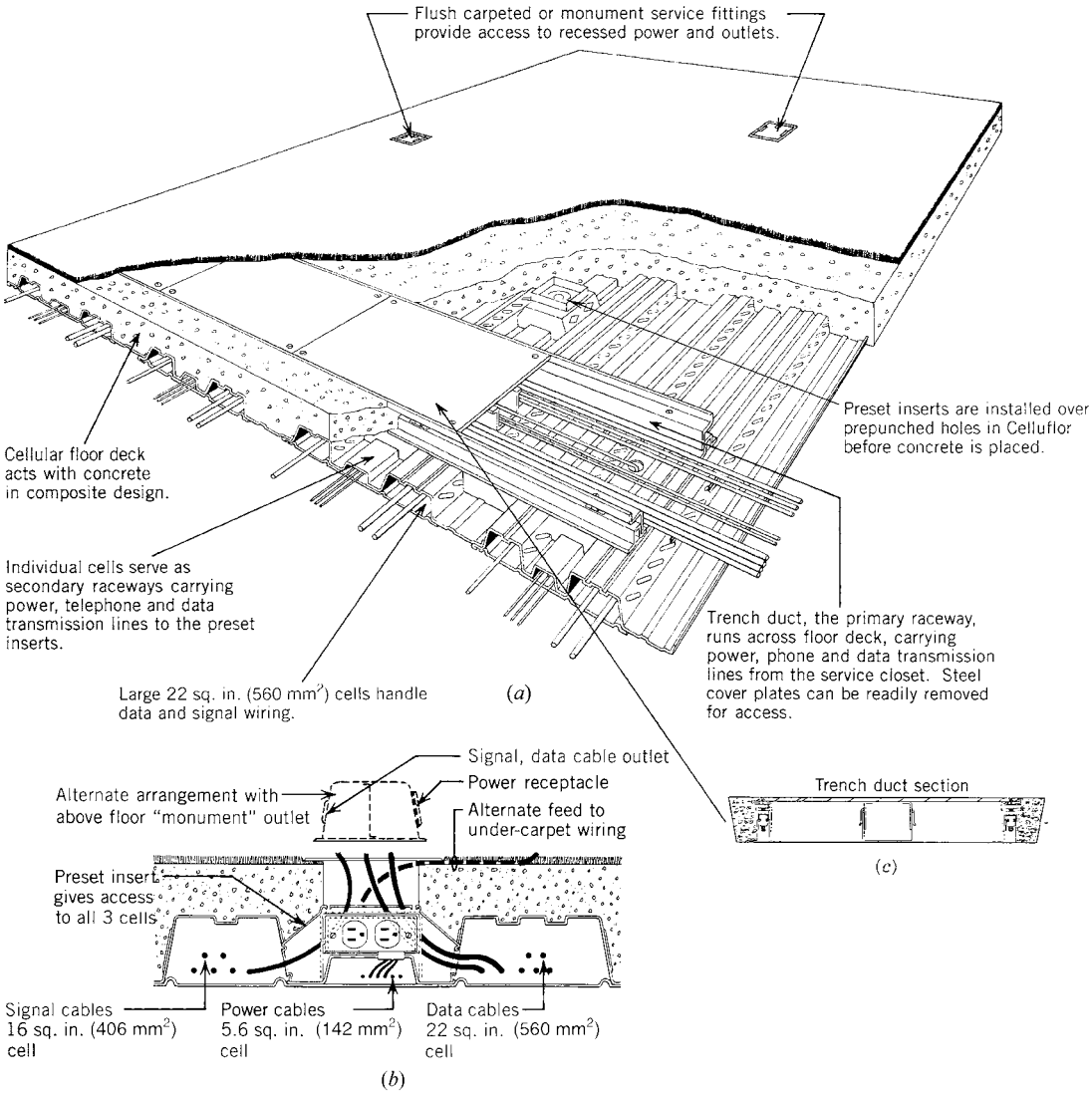


Fig. 27.32 *(a) One of many designs for electrified cellular floors. The floor cells are available in many designs, depending primarily upon the structural requirements. The trench (illustrated in c) that straddles the cells provides the electrical feeds through precut holes in the cells. The trench itself is completely accessible from the top and, when opened, exposes all the wiring and the cells below. (b) Activated preset insert. Note that the insert straddles the center (power) cell and provides access to the two adjoining low-voltage wiring cells. Power and signal wiring are completely separated at all times by metal barriers. If desired, a standard surface "monument" fitting can be mounted on the floor, or a connection can be made to under-carpet cables in lieu of the flush plate shown. When an insert is to be deactivated, the flush cover plate is simply replaced with a blank plate. (c) Section through a trench duct, which acts as a feeder for distribution ducts. The trench is available with or without bottom, in any required height, in widths from 9 to 36 in. (230 to 915 mm), and one, two, or three compartments, depending upon floor cell design and cabling requirements. (Courtesy of Walker Systems, A Wiremold Company.)*

27.28 FULL-ACCESS FLOOR

This construction is applicable to spaces with very heavy cabling requirements, particularly if frequent recabling and reconnection are required. It provides rapid and complete access to an underfloor plenum. The system was originally developed for data-processing areas that require large, fully accessible cable spaces and large quantities of conditioned air. The solution to both of these requirements is an infinite-access floor, usually constructed of lightweight die-cast aluminum panels supported on a network of adjustable steel or aluminum pedestals. Panels are available from

18 × 18 in. to 36 × 36 in. (457 × 457 mm to 915 × 915 mm), and floor depth is normally 12 to 24 in. (305 to 610 mm), although taller pedestals are available. The subfloor space thus created can be used for cabling and also to carry conditioned air either in ducts or by using the entire space as an air plenum. (In the latter case, the wire and cable must be suitable for air plenum use; see Fig. 27.20.) The construction is usually fireproof. Sufficient floor-to-floor height is necessary to accommodate the raised floor. This approach to electrical distribution may coordinate quite well with an underfloor air distribution system (UFAD)—see Chapter 10.

Where air requirements are limited or nonexistent and the floor is intended primarily for cabling, pedestals as short as 6 in. (152 mm) can be used, thus reducing ceiling height problems (Fig. 27.33). In such access floor spaces, use of multiservice distribution modules and modular wiring avoids cable tangles and reduces labor costs significantly (Figs. 27.33 to 27.36).

27.29 UNDER-CARPET WIRING SYSTEM

This system, which is covered in *NEC* Article 328, was originally developed as both an inexpensive alternative to an underfloor or cellular floor system and as a means for providing a flexible floor-level branch circuit wiring system. Essentially, the system consists of a factory-assembled flat cable (*NEC* type FCC), approved for floor installation *only* under carpet squares, plus the accessories necessary for connection to 120-V power outlets. The cable itself consists of three or more flat copper conductors, placed edge to edge and enclosed in an insulating material (Fig. 27.37). The entire assembly is covered with a grounded metal shield, which, like a metal conduit, provides both physical protection and a continuous

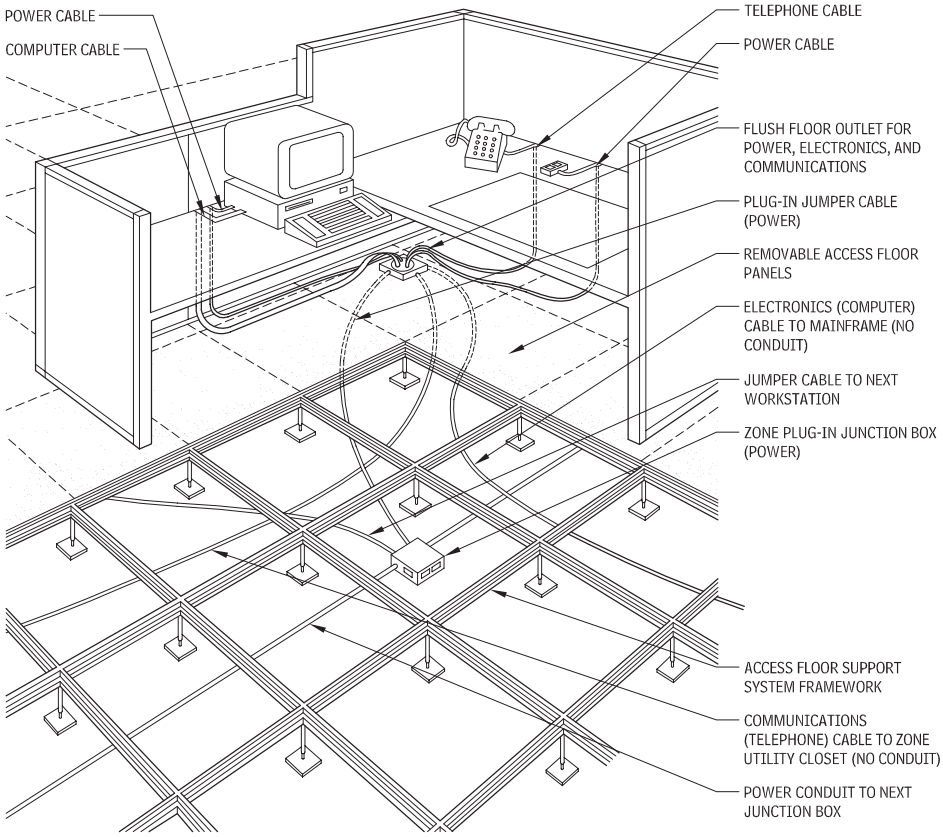


Fig. 27.33 *Pictorial representation of a full-access floor designed to provide complete electrical, data, and signal services to a modern workstation layout. The infinite access and unlimited space are ideal for heavily wired, rapidly changing workstation arrangements. (From AIA: Ramsey/Sleeper,* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 11th ed. 2007. Reprinted by permission of John Wiley & Sons.)*

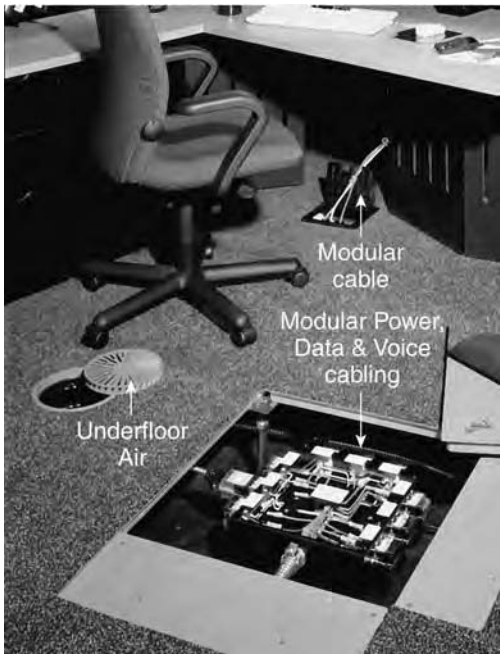


Fig. 27.34 *Full-access floors provide infinite access to the myriad cables used in a modern commercial office. The modular wiring, using snap-on connectors and preassembled junction boxes, drastically reduces the labor cost of installation and frequent cabling changes (see Fig. 27.36a). (Photo courtesy of Tate Access Floors, Inc.)*

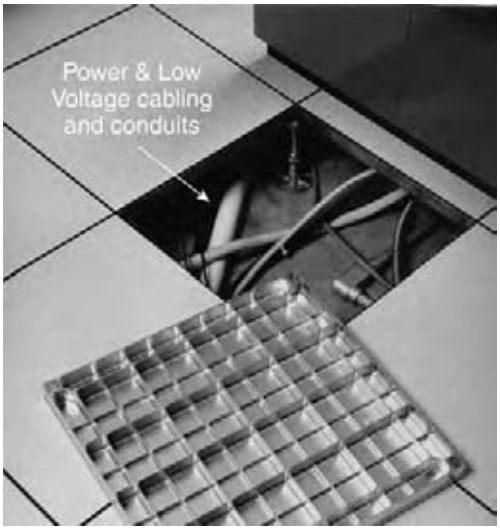


Fig. 27.35 *Reinforced nonferrous (aluminum) floors are used frequently in hi-tech applications requiring the large wiring capacity and convenience of full-access floors. Floor construction can be stringerless, as illustrated, or with stringers, as in Fig. 27.36b. (Photo courtesy of Tate Access Floors, Inc.)*



Fig. 27.36 *(a) Typical power/low-voltage floor box for use with a full-access floor. (b) Steel-bolted stringer support for access floor panels. Many stringer and stringerless designs are available (see Figs. 27.35 and 27.36). (Photos courtesy of Tate Access Floors, Inc.)*

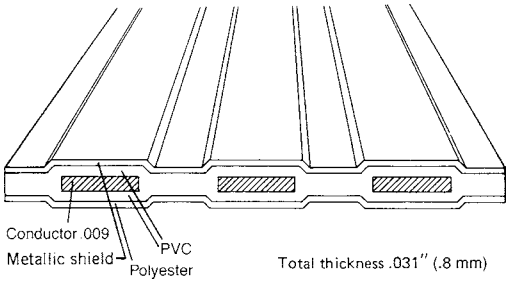


Fig. 27.37 *Schematic section through one design of* NEC *type FCC under-carpet cable. The copper conductors illustrated are the equivalent of No. 12 AWG. The PVC acts as insulation, and the polyester as both insulation and physical protection. All designs require a metallic top shield and a metallic or nonmetallic bottom shield for physical protection.*



Fig. 27.38 *Preterminated 25-pair under-carpet telephone cable. These cables are commercially available in lengths from 5 to 50 ft (1.5 to 15 m) in 5-ft. (1.5-m) increments. (Reprinted with permission of AMP.)*

electrical ground path. In addition, a bottom shield is required, which is usually heavy PVC or metal.

The cable, when properly installed on a hard, flat surface, is approximately 0.03 in. (0.8 mm) high, and thus essentially undetectable when covered with carpet. Because carpet squares are designed to be readily removable, the entire system can be repositioned to meet changing furniture layout requirements with a minimum of disruption and no structural work. The cable is designed to carry normal physical loads such as office traffic and furniture placement without affecting its electrical performance.

The attractiveness and simplicity of the system led to the development of similarly designed flat, low-tension (voltage) cables for signal and communication wiring (Fig. 27.38) and, more recently, both electrical and fiber-optic cables and accessories for data transmission. Manufacturers also offer a complete line of junction fittings, connectors, adapters, and receptacles (Fig. 27.39).

The problems inherent in this type of on-the-floor wiring system, such as cable crossings, splicing, interfacing with round cable systems, interconnections at floor boxes and fittings, feed connections from cabinets, underfloor ducts, floor cells, and through-the-floor fittings, have all been solved by a full line of manufactured devices designed for specific situations.

Because under-carpet wiring systems are separate and distinct from wire and conduit systems, they, like underfloor duct systems, are usually shown on a separate electrical plan. A small plan typical of this type is shown in Fig. 27.40. Figures 27.41 and 27.42 are photographs of essential portions of such an installation. Note that a complex system such as that shown in Fig. 27.42 requires recessing a floor box into the slab, which to an extent contradicts the essential simplicity and flexibility of an under-carpet system. Although these systems, at least in their simplest form, are particularly applicable to retrofit work, their low cost, combined with the inherent advantages of a flexible

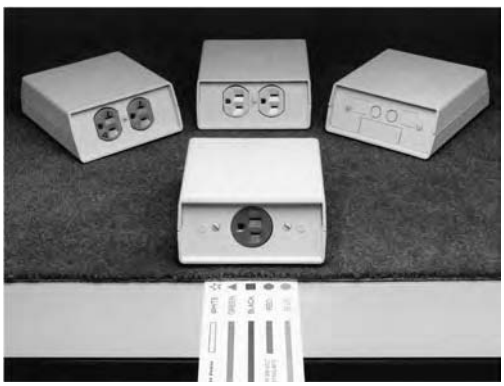


Fig. 27.39 *Typical components of an under-carpet wiring system. The under-carpet FCC power cable is shown without the metallic top shield required in actual installation. It is a color-coded, five-conductor cable (neutral, equipment ground, and three circuit conductors or two circuit conductors and an isolated ground conductor). The floor outlets shown are front, single-power outlet; rear (left to right), duplex power outlet (one of which has isolated ground); standard duplex power outlet; and combination data cable, communications, and telephone outlet. (Courtesy of Hubbell, Inc.)*

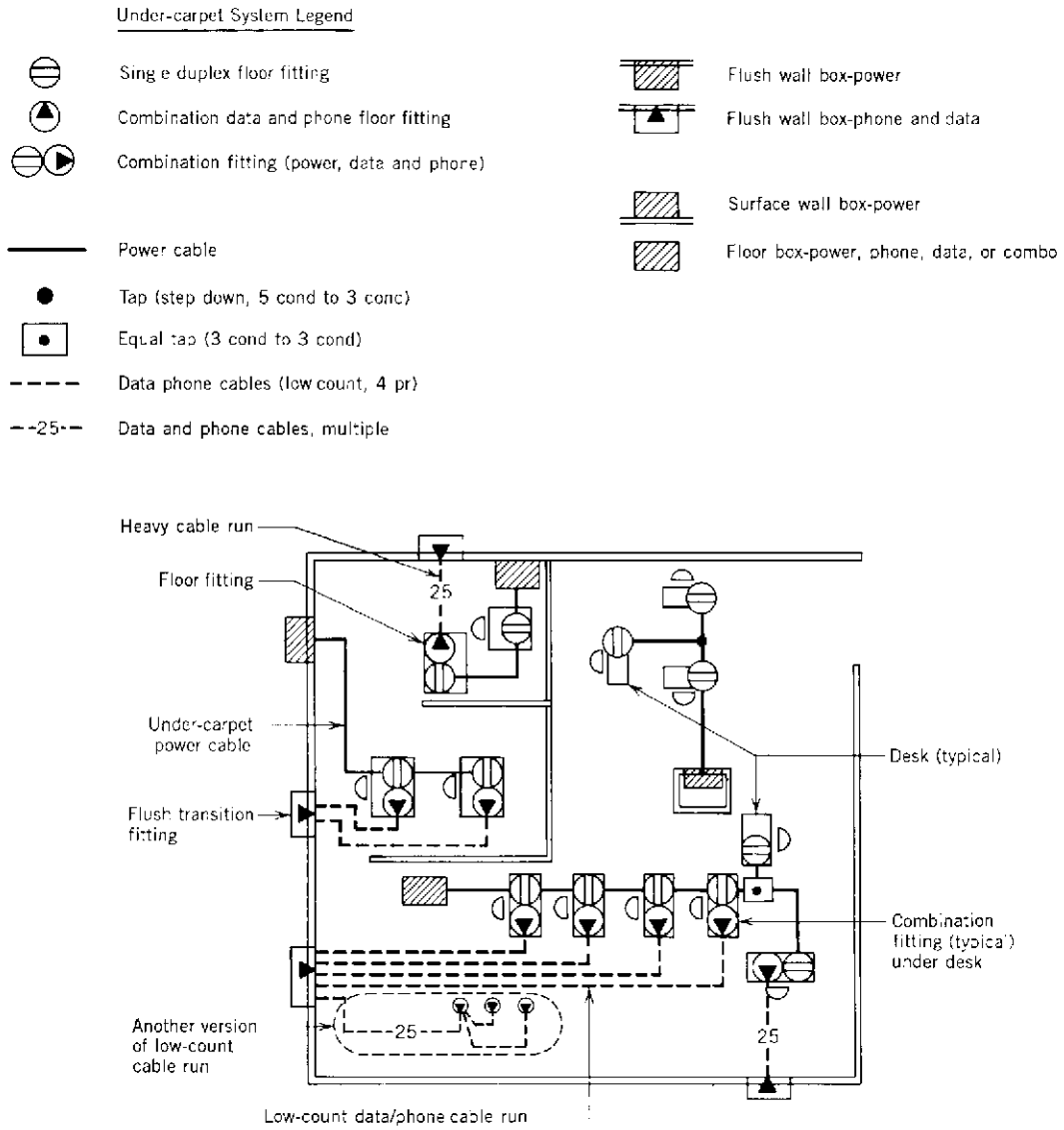


Fig. 27.40 *Typical layout of under-carpet power and low-voltage/data cabling for a small office. A power, phone, and data cable connection on the floor is provided under or immediately adjacent to each desk (see Figs. 27.38, 27.39, 27.41, and 27.42 for typical details). (Reproduced with permission of AMP.)*

floor-level wiring system, particularly in open office areas, has made them a widely used first choice in new construction as well.

27.30 CEILING RACEWAYS AND MANUFACTURED WIRING SYSTEMS

The need for flexibility in a facility's electrical system coupled with the high cost of underfloor electrical raceway systems encouraged the development of equivalent over-the-ceiling systems. These systems are actually more flexible than their underfloor counterparts because they energize lighting, provide power and telephone facilities, and even supply outlets for the floor above, in addition to permitting very rapid layout changes at low cost. This last characteristic is particularly desirable in stores where frequent display changes necessitate corresponding electrical facility changes. Beyond the extreme

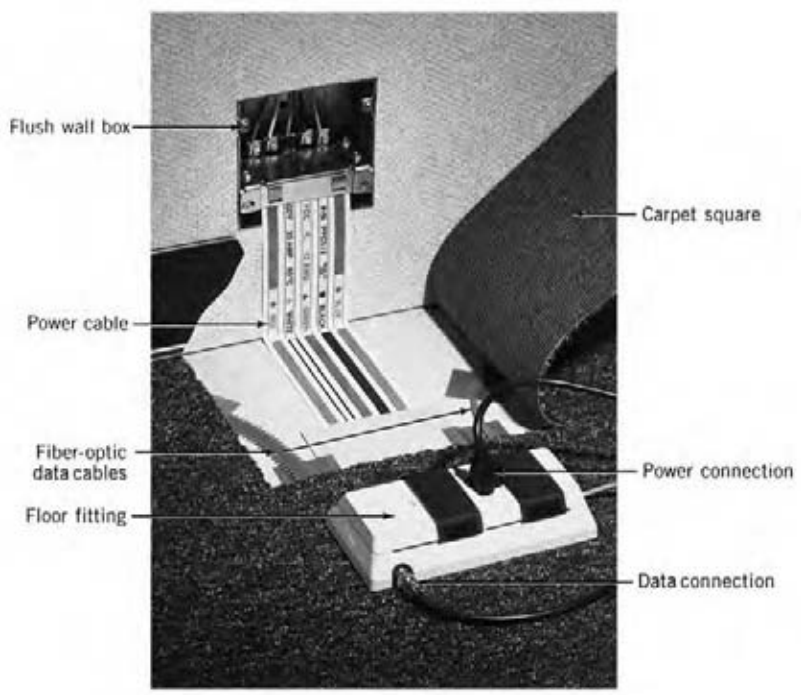


Fig. 27.41 *Under-carpet flat power cables connect to round supply cables in a flush wall box and then extend to a combination power/low-voltage/data floor fitting. Data cables are connected to the combination floor fitting from their system boxes, either individually or via other floor fittings. (Photo courtesy of Walker Systems, A Wiremold Company.)*

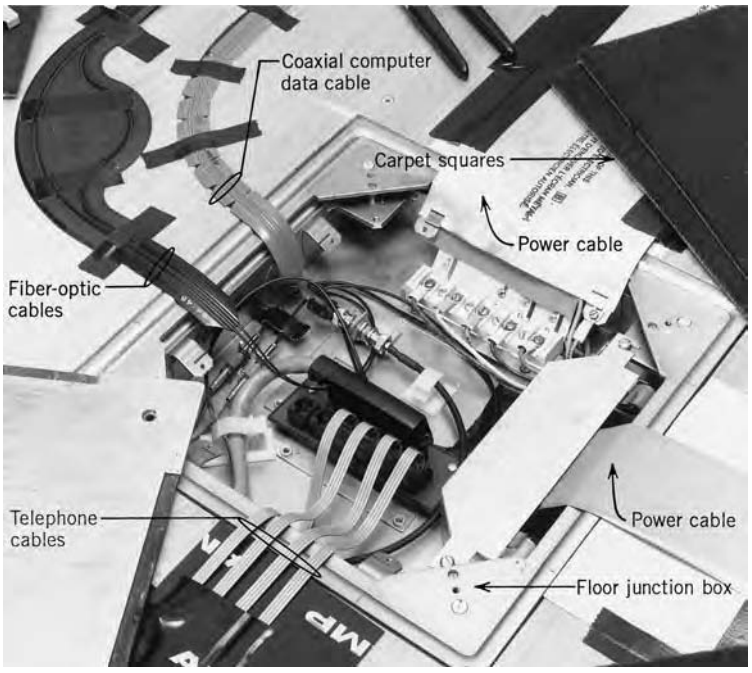


Fig. 27.42 *Four service floor-junction boxes handle under-carpet power, telephone, low-voltage electric, and FO cables. The floor box measures approximately 14 in. (356 mm) square and 2 in. (50 mm) deep. It can accommodate up to four 3-phase power circuits, eight 25-pair telephone/data cables, 24 coaxial cables, or, as illustrated, a mixture of cable types. (Reprinted with permission of AMP.)*

flexibility made possible by the ceiling raceway system, it has the additional advantage that the system itself, not being cast in concrete like its underfloor counterpart, can be altered at will. Thus, not only layout changes (as mentioned previously) but also changes in space function can readily be accommodated. This is a particularly important characteristic in merchandising and educational facilities, where space function can be repeatedly changed during the course of a building's life.

Details vary among manufacturers but the systems are essentially the same and, in principle, resemble underfloor systems. A typical system is constructed of metallic or nonmetallic surface-type raceways arranged in a tree formation (i.e., large trunk [header] raceways feed multiple smaller branch [distribution] raceways, and so on). The raceways are hung in the ceiling plenum from the concrete slab above. The hung ceiling must consist of lift-out panels because this type of wiring system is not permitted in spaces rendered inaccessible by the building structure. Header ducts (large area raceways) are fed from electrical panels and from signal, data, and telephone cabinets in the electrical and low-voltage wiring service closets, respectively. Data headers are normally larger than the power header and can carry other low-voltage, low-power signal wiring as well. Distribution ducts (laterals) tap onto the headers. These laterals act as subdistribution raceways, feeding lighting fixtures and data, signal, telephone, and power outlets on the same floor and, via poke-through fittings, outlets on the floor above.

The standard method for extending wiring from the ceiling plenum raceways to floor-level or desk-level signal and power outlets uses vertical multisection raceways fed from the top (see Fig. 27.43). These service poles are available in a large variety of designs, finishes, and cross-sectional raceway areas and are easily installed in almost any location. They may be prewired and usually contain several power outlets, a telephone connection, and possibly data cable outlets. The result in a hung-ceiling office area or an exposed ceiling slab area (Figs. 27.44 and 27.45) is certainly less elegant than that of a floor-level wiring system, but for most users it is satisfactory, and its low cost compared to any type of floor-duct system is a prime redeeming feature.

When electrical connections to poles, lighting fixtures, receptacles, and communication/data outlets are made with hard wiring, considerable field labor is required, with a corresponding high cost. Furthermore, the relative permanence of such wiring lessens the inherent flexibility of the raceway system. To solve both problems, a number of manufacturers have developed a line of modular branch-circuit wiring elements. These, covered in *NEC* Article 604 under the very logical name *manufactured wiring systems*, consist of metal-clad or armored cable sets terminating in polarized plugs. The polarization prevents accidental interconnection of low-voltage, 120- and 277-V systems. Ceiling raceways can be equipped with matching receptacles, and connection to fixtures, poles, and other devices becomes a simple matter of plug insertion (Figs. 27.43, 27.46, and 27.47).

The result is a wiring system of extreme flexibility in which even extensive changes can be made very rapidly with minimal disruption and virtually no mess. Manufactured wiring systems are only permitted in accessible areas, for logical reasons. They are also applicable to access floor spaces, as seen in Figs. 27.33 to 27.36. The additional cost of manufactured wiring elements is



Fig. 27.43 *Typical floor-to-ceiling electrical/communication raceway poles. Units are available in a wide variety of shapes, sizes, and cross-sectional configurations in aluminum and steel. (Courtesy of Hubbell Premise Wiring.)*

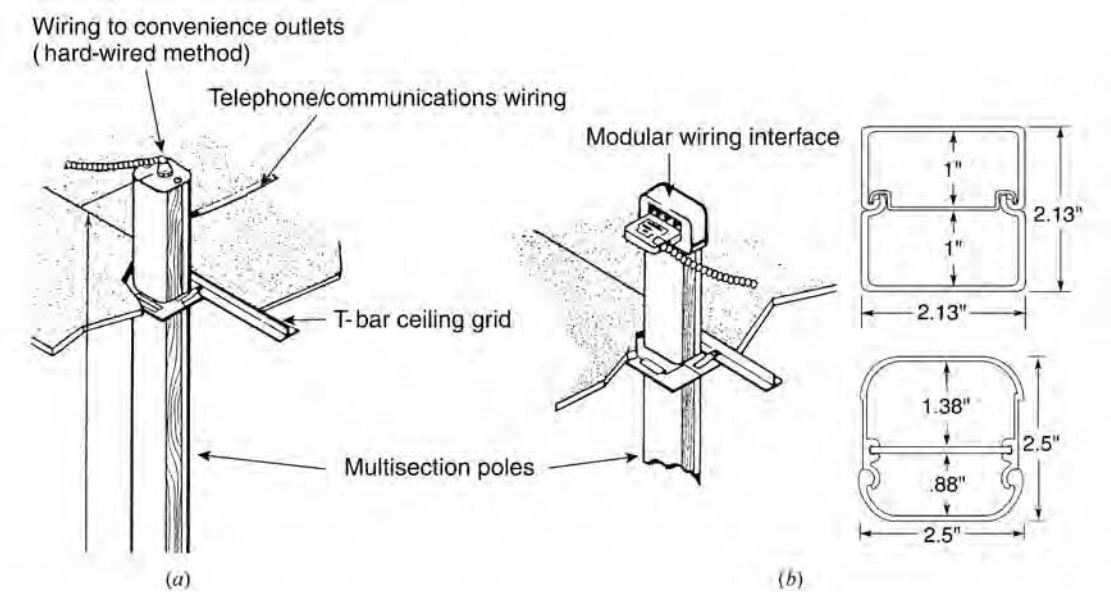


Fig. 27.44 *(a) Poles are fed at the top from the suspended ceiling or from exposed ceiling raceways. These feeds can be either conventional hard-wired or modular (plug-in), as shown. Modular connectors are used for power and low-voltage (telephone, communication, data) wiring. (b) Two of the many cross-sectional configurations available are illustrated. Other designs divide the pole into three sections to suit the specific application. (Courtesy of Hubbell Premise Wiring.)*



Fig. 27.45 *Power poles extend down from the ceiling to any desired height. In this library, power is required above the base cabinets, and the power pole is easily arranged to supply it. (Courtesy of Wiremold Company.)*

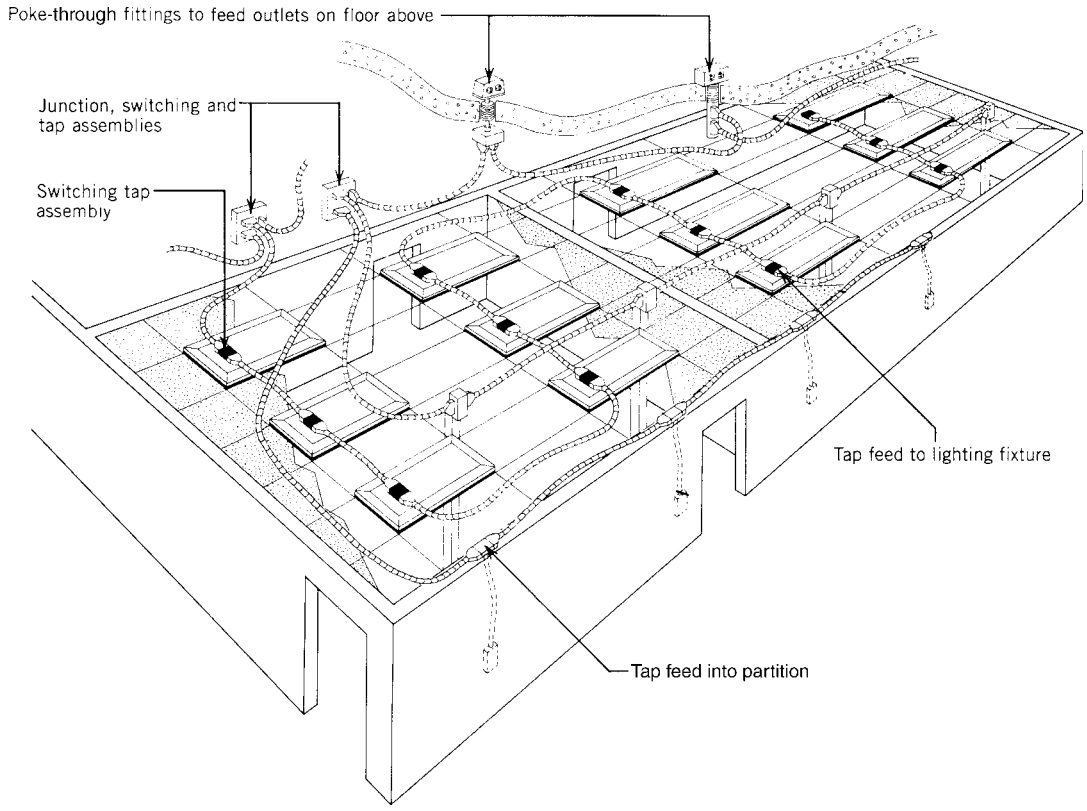


Fig. 27.46 *Manufactured modular wiring assemblies are used for tap connections to feed ceiling lighting fixtures or any other ceiling connection, as well as a complete range of junction, switching, tap, and poke-through units. (Courtesy of Walker Systems, A Wiremold Company.)*



Fig. 27.47 *Manufactured modular wiring connectors simplify installation and reduce labor costs initially and during any subsequent rearrangements. (Courtesy of AFC Cable Systems.)*

frequently offset by the labor savings, even upon initial installation and certainly after one or two field changes. Cable sets are available for power (120 V and 277 V), telephone, and all types of low-voltage signal equipment. The cables must be approved for use in conditioned-air plenums and suspended ceilings.

To take full advantage of the potential labor-cost savings inherent in the system, field labor must be minimized. This is accomplished by factory-equipping all utilization equipment, including lighting fixtures, with appropriate plug-in connectors.

CHAPTER 28

Electric Wiring Design

IN WIRING DESIGN, THERE ARE NUMEROUS possible solutions to each problem—some good, some fair, and some poor. Experience guides designers to a solution that best suits the job, within the context of establishing the most cost-effective design, considering the project design intent and criteria. This chapter opens with a discussion of typical design criteria and continues with wiring design. An electrical design solution intended for construction must meet all the requirements of local and national building codes. In the U.S., building codes generally refer to NFPA 70, the *National Electrical Code* (*NEC*) published by the National Fire Protection Association, as the minimum standard for all electrical design, and its requirements are thereby made legally binding on the design team. The electrical design data and procedures presented in this chapter, and in other sections of this book, are based upon *NEC* requirements and are, to the extent possible, current. However, they are intended only as informative materials. Code requirements can change fairly rapidly; the *NEC*, for example, is revised every 3 years. The designer is strongly advised to obtain and study the latest edition of all codes having jurisdiction, including the *NEC*, to ensure that a proposed electrical design meets the requirements of the current and applicable codes.

28.1 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

(a) Flexibility

Every wiring system should incorporate sufficient flexibility in branch circuitry, feeders, and panels to accommodate all reasonably probable patterns, arrangements, and locations of electric loads. The degree of flexibility to be incorporated depends largely upon the type of facility. Thus, laboratories, research facilities, and small educational buildings typically require far more flexibility than do residential, office, and fixed-purpose industrial installations. Part of designing for flexibility includes providing for building and electric service expansion, as experience has demonstrated that most facilities will grow, both physically and in electrical demand. Overdesign, however, is as bad as underdesign, being wasteful of money and resources, both initially and in operation. A clear understanding of the Owner's Project Requirements can greatly assist in reaching a reasonable compromise between current and future needs.

(b) Reliability

The reliability of electrical power within a facility is determined by two factors: the incoming utility service and the building's electrical system. The service record of the utility should be studied along with the economic impacts of a power outage to determine whether and to what extent standby power equipment is justified (see Sections 26.39 and 28.21). Emergency equipment required for the safety of building occupants is established by local, state, and national building codes.

Beyond the electrical service point, the reliability of power is entirely dependent upon the wiring and distribution system. Here, too, economic

studies must be made to determine the quality of equipment and the extent of redundancy (duplicate equipment) to be installed. The subject of reliability is complex, and only a few general principles are noted here.

1. The reliability of an electric system is only as good as that of its weakest element. Therefore, it may be necessary to provide redundancy at anticipated weak points in the system.
2. The electrical service and the building distribution system act together. An extremely reliable (and expensive) service is of little use if the power cannot reach the desired points of usage.
3. Critical loads within the facility should be defined to determine how best to serve them reliably. This is done by establishing reliable power paths or by furnishing individual standby power packages for such loads. The latter course is often chosen for health-care facilities and critical loads in other buildings.

(c) Safety

Although rigid adherence to the requirements of the *NEC* and other applicable NFPA codes ensures an initially safe electrical installation, the designer must be alert to the potential for electric hazards caused by misuse or abuse of equipment or by equipment failure. Also, attention to the physical size of equipment during design can eliminate the often-encountered hazards caused by obstruction of access spaces, passages, closets, and surfaces with electric equipment. Finally, lightning protection should also be considered under the heading of safety; this topic is discussed in Chapter 24.

(d) Economic Considerations

This area of concern can readily be divided into two frequently interrelated items: first cost and life-cycle cost. All other factors being equal, first cost depends largely upon whether an owner is interested in the minimum first cost or the minimum overall ownership cost. These two costs frequently stand in inverse relationship to one another (exceptions are mentioned later). Low first-cost equipment generally results in higher energy costs, higher maintenance costs, and shorter life—with a resulting higher life-cycle cost.

The electrical energy cost related to building operations is directly related to energy consumption, with one exception. That exception is the utility company's demand charge (discussed in Section 25.12). Means for minimizing this cost are covered in detail in Section 25.13. Here, there is a coincidence, whereby a reduction to both first cost and operating costs can be achieved. Load-leveling equipment permits the electrical distribution system to be sized without consideration of coincident load peaks, thus resulting in smaller equipment that operates more efficiently—near its full-load capacity. All other reductions in electric energy cost flow directly from the corresponding reduction in energy consumption.

(e) Energy Considerations

These concerns are complex, involving consideration of energy codes and budgets, energy efficiency techniques (see Section 28.5), and energy control.

Buildings designed under a number of scenarios may be effectively subject to energy budget limitations (expressed in Btu/ft^2/year [kWh/m^2 per year]). Although the lion's share of this budget is taken by heating/cooling and lighting systems, the electrical distribution system is also subject to limits in some codes/standards. Most important among these is ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1, a current version of which is mandatory in all design offices. Detailed energy conservation considerations are discussed in Section 28.5. A discussion of the IESNA-developed *Recommended Procedure for Lighting Power Limit Determination* is found in Chapter 15.

(f) Space Allocations

The general impression that electrical equipment is small and easily concealed is accurate only for wire and conduit. Panels, motor control centers, busduct, distribution centers, switchboards, transformers, and so on can be large, bulky, noisy, and highly sensitive to tampering and vandalism. Thus, space allocations must be concerned with ease of maintenance, ventilation potential, expandability, centrality (to limit the length of runs), limiting access to authorized personnel, and noise control, in addition to the fundamental consideration of space adequacy.

(g) Special Considerations

These depend upon the nature of the facility and may include items such as security, central and/or remote controls, interconnection with other facilities, and the like.

28.2 LOAD ESTIMATING

When initiating the electrical system design for a facility, it is necessary to estimate the total building load in order to plan for such spaces as transformer rooms, conduit chases, and electrical closets. An estimated load is also required by the local power company well in advance of the start of construction. An exact load tabulation can be made only after the design is completed, but because this is often several months later, a good preliminary estimate is required. Such an estimate can be made from the figures given in Table 28.1. These values represent averages. When it appears that a building will have heavier or lighter loads because of lighting levels, a design (such as a green building) that exceeds energy codes, load-management equipment, the aggressive use of passive systems, or other factors, the values should be modified accordingly. The figures given in the individual categories should be added without application of demand or diversity factors in order to obtain the maximum load for which the building service equipment must be sized—in the absence of electric load-control (load-leveling) equipment. (Noncoincident loads, such as heating and cooling in the same space, are not combined.)

At this point in the design process, an analysis can be made to determine the feasibility of incorporating electric load-control equipment into the facility (see Section 25.13). Inputs to such a study include the utility's complete rate schedule, including all penalty clauses, a detailed analysis of the building's equipment load patterns, and any external constraints such as maximum loads imposed by power and energy budgets. Equipment load patterns must be carefully analyzed because they determine load sheddability. Thus, for kitchen equipment, load interruption may be unacceptable, but shifting of cooking time by half an hour may be quite feasible. For HVAC equipment, building thermal inertia and pushing maximum and minimum temperature and humidity limits may permit considerable latitude without adverse effects. Also, as explained in Section 25.13, the degree and duration of load shedding are a function of the type of control equipment utilized. To repeat what was previously stated—load control affects maximum demand, with only minor effect on total energy consumption. The external constraints referred to are the energy budgets recommended or required by codes, legislation, and funding bodies.

After a load-control analysis is complete, or simultaneously with such an analysis, a building energy consumption analysis must be performed. This may be done manually, but numerous computer programs are readily available that not only increase accuracy but also permit consideration of more factors. The results of this analysis will indicate whether the target electrical energy budget is being met. If not, loads must be modified by reconsideration of proposed systems (and perhaps system design criteria), by incorporating energy conservation devices and techniques into the electrical system design, and by preparing energy-use guidelines that will be applied when the building is occupied. Because this last item depends for success upon the day-to-day voluntary actions of the building's operators and occupants, experience has shown that it should not be considered as a major conservation factor. Ongoing building commissioning can be a powerful assist in changing this situation. Conservation measures are covered in Section 28.5.

The electrical loads in any facility can be categorized as follows:

1. Lighting
2. Miscellaneous power, which includes data-processing equipment, convenience outlets, and small motors
3. Heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning (HVAC) equipment
4. Plumbing and other piping-based systems
5. Mechanized transportation equipment and fixed material-handling equipment
6. Kitchen equipment
7. Special equipment

Category 1 is covered by column II of Table 28.1. Note, however, that lighting loads are carefully prescribed in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 and that these prescribed loads should be used where this standard has jurisdiction (which is most of the U.S.). Contradictions between requirements in applicable codes/standards must be adjudicated by local authorities before a design is established.

TABLE 28.1 Electric Load Estimating[a]

I	II	III	IV	V	VI
	Volt–Amperes per ft² (per m²)[b]				
Type of Occupancy	Lighting[c, d]	Misc. Power[e]	Air Conditioning: Electric	Air Conditioning: Nonelectric	Ten–Year Percent Load Growth
Auditorium					
General	1.0–2.0 (10.8–21.5)	0	12–20 (129–215)	5–8 (54–86)	20–40
Stage	20–40 (215–430)	0.5 (5.4)			
Art gallery	2.0–4.0 (21.5–43.1)	0.5 (5.4)	5–7 (54–75)	2.0–3.2 (21.5–34.5)	20–40
Bank	1.5–2.5 (16.2–26.9)		5–7 (54–75)	2.0–3.2 (21.5–34.5)	30–50
Cafeteria	1.0–1.6 (10.8–17.2)	0.5 (5.4)	6–10 (65–108)	2.5–4.5 (26.9–48.4)	20–40
Church and synagogue	1.0–3.0 (10.8–32.3)	0.5 (5.4)	5–7 (54–75)	2.0–3.2 (21.5–34.5)	10–30
Computer area	1.2–2.1 (12.9–22.6)	2.5 (26.9)[g]	12–20 (129–215)	5–8 (54–86)	50–200
Department store					
Basement	3–5 (32.3–53.8)	1.5 (16.2)	5–7 (54–75)	2.0–3.2 (21.5–34.5)	50–100
Main floor	2.0–3.5 (21.5–37.7)	1.5 (16.2)			
Upper floor	2.0–3.5 (21.5–37.7)	1.0 (10.8)			
Dwelling (not hotel)			—	—	
0–3000 ft² (0–280 m²)	3.0 (32.3)	5.0 (53.8)	—	—	50–100
3000–120,000 (280–11,150)	0.4 (4.3)	0.15 (1.6)	—	—	—
above 120,000 (>11,150)	1.5–2.5 (16.2–26.9)	2.0 (21.5)	—	—	—
Garage (commercial)					10–30
Hospital	1.0–3.5 (10.8–37.7)	1.5 (16.2)	5–7 (54–75)	2.0–3.2 (21.5–34.5)	40–80
Hotel	1.0–2.0 (10.8–21.5)	0.5 (5.4)			
Lobby	1.0–1.5 (10.8–16.2)	1.0 (10.8)	5–8 (54–86)	2.0–3.5 (21.5–37.7)	
Rooms (no cooking)	2.0–3.0 (21.5–32.3)	5–20 (54–215)	3–5 (32–54)	1.5–2.5 (16.2–26.9)	30–60
Industrial loft building	1.2–2.2 (12.9–23.7)	0.5 (5.4)	—	—	50–100
Laboratories	1.5–3.0 (16.2–32.3)	1.5 (16.2)	6–10 (65–108)	2.5–4.5 (26.9–48.4)	100–300
Library	1.0–2.0 (10.8–21.5)	0.5 (5.4)	5–7 (54–75)	2.2–3.2 (23.7–34.5)	30–40
Medical center	1.5–3.5 (16.2–37.7)	2.5 (26.9)	4–7 (43–75)	1.5–3.2 (16.2–34.5)	50–80
Motel	1.2–2.5 (12.9–26.9)	0.5 (5.4)	—	—	30–60
Office building	1.5–2.8 (16.2–30.1)	2.5 (26.9)	4–7 (43–75)	1.5–3.2 (16.2–34.5)	50–80
Restaurant			6–10 (65–108)	2.5–4.5 (26.9–48.4)	20–40
School	2.0–2.5 (21.5–26.9)	2.0 (21.5)	3.5–5.0 (38–54)	1.5–2.2 (16.2–23.7)	50–80
Shops	2.0–3.5 (21.5–37.7)	0.5 (5.4)			
Barber and beauty	2.0–3.0 (21.5–32.3)	0.5 (5.4)	5–9 (54–97)	2–4 (22–43)	40–80
Dress	2.0–3.0 (21.5–32.3)	0.5 (5.4)			
Drug	2.0–3.5 (21.5–37.7)	0.25 (2.7)			
Miscellaneous goods	0.25–1.0 (2.7–10.8)	—	4–7 (43–75)	1.5 to 3.2 (16.2–34.5)	
Hat, shoe, specialty	0.3 (3.2)	—			
Warehouse (storage)	0.25 (2.7)	—	—	—	10–30
In the buildings listed except single dwellings:					
Halls, closets, corridors,	0.5 (5.4)	—	—	—	
Storage spaces	0.25 (2.7)	—	—	—	

[a]Figures assume energy-conservation techniques applied.

[b]These figures do not include allowance for future loads.

[c]The figures given in Article 220 of the *NEC* are minimum figures for calculation of electric feeder sizes.

[d]See Section 13.5 for a discussion of power limits.

[e]These figures are based on experience and must be applied judiciously.

[f]Includes the loads of air-handling equipment and pumps.

[g]This figure does not include the power used by the computer (which can vary widely depending upon the type being used).

Consult the current version of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 for details of prescribed lighting loads.

Category 2, column III, includes, in addition to receptacles and small motors, such items as desktop computers and data-processing terminals including all peripheral equipment, plus plug-in heaters, water fountains, and so on.

Category 3, column IV, includes all loads imposed by the HVAC equipment. This includes fuel pumps, boiler motors, air-handling units, exhaust fans, and so forth. Also included in column IV, for

air-conditioning loads, are refrigeration compressors. This item is omitted in column V because the air conditioning utilizes absorption machines that do not use electricity for primary power. When cooling is not anticipated, the HVAC load is still appreciable because of heating and ventilating requirements. A rough estimate for the load in this situation would be two-thirds of the loads in column V.

Category 4 includes all loads associated with water and sanitary systems, including house water pumps, air compressors and vacuum pumps, sump pumps and ejectors, well pumps and fire pumps, water heaters and pneumatic tubes, plus special items such as display fountain pumps. Also included in this category are electric loads associated with fixed piping-based systems such as cooking gas, medical gas piping, distilled water systems, and so on.

Because these loads vary widely with local conditions and with specific facility design as much as with the type of facility, an estimate cannot be made on a volt-amperes per unit area basis by type of building. Thus, no value is included in Table 28.1. If actual data cannot be used, it is helpful to remember that plumbing/piping electrical loads are relatively small, rarely exceeding 20% of the HVAC system electric load (although, for the most part, they are unrelated to the HVAC components).

Category 5, vertical transportation, is related to floor area in some types of buildings but not in others. A close estimate of power and energy requirements can be made by the project's elevator consultant. Lacking this, a fair estimate can be made from the data given in Chapters 31 to 33. In addition to elevators, escalators, moving walkways, and ramps, these loads should include dumbwaiters, horizontal and vertical conveyors, trash and linen transport systems, automated container delivery, and fixed conveyors. These loads are readily available from a material transport consultant, who is frequently also the elevator consultant.

Category 6, kitchen equipment, is also not included in Table 28.1, although obviously present in all restaurants, most hospitals, and some office and religious-use buildings. The reason for this omission is that the primary power for the major load, cooking equipment, may be either gas or electric. Other large-energy-use equipment such as dishwashers can be electric, gas, or steam-fed. Furthermore, no correlation can be made between the facility type, floor area, and load, even if electrically powered, because population and schedule are also major factors. When kitchens are planned, a kitchen consultant or other experienced planner can supply an estimate of the electric power requirements.

Category 7, special equipment, is so varied that no values can be listed. This category includes such items as laboratory equipment, shop loads, display area loads, floodlighting, canopy heaters, display window lighting, industrial loads, and so on. Data for these loads must be gathered for individual items of equipment and added to the foregoing totals.

Table 28.2 gives a tabulation of service entrance size in amperes, based on single- and 3-phase service for typical occupancies. These figures are intended for rough estimating purposes and should be adjusted after the design is completed.

TABLE 28.2 Nominal Service Size in Amperes

Nominal service sizes are 100 A, 150 A, 200 A, 400 A, 600 A

	Area in ft² (m²)				
Facility	**1000 (93)**	**2000 (186)**	**5000 (465)**	**10,000 (929)**	**Remarks**
Single-phase, 120/240 V, 3-wire					
Residence	100 A	100 A	150 A	—	Minimum 100 A
Store[a]	100 A	150 A	—	—	
School	100 A	100 A	150 A	—	
Church[a]	100 A	150 A	—	—	
3-phase, 120/208 V, 4-wire					
Apartment house	—	—	100 A	150 A	
Hospital[a]	—	—	200 A	400 A	
Office[a]	—	100 A	400 A	600 A	
Store[a]	—	100 A	400 A	600 A	
School	—	100 A	100 A	200 A	

[a]Fully air-conditioned using electric-driven compressors. Based upon figures in Table 28.1.

28.3 SYSTEM VOLTAGE

Several voltage systems (arrangements) are commonly available in the United States and Canada. (See *NEC* Article 230, "Services," for code requirements.)

(a) 120-V, Single-Phase, 2-Wire

This (Fig. 28.1) is used for the smallest facilities, such as outbuildings, and isolated small loads of up to 6 kVA. The load is calculated by multiplying current and voltage. For 60-A service, which is the normal limit for this type of service, no more than 50 A are usually drawn. Thus

$$VA = 120 \times 50 = 6000 \text{ VA} = 6 \text{ kVA}$$

The nominal system voltage is 120 V, although it is also referred to as 110 V and 115 V.

(b) 120/240-V, Single-Phase, 3-Wire

This system (Fig. 28.2) is for somewhat heavier loads. The code requires that all one-family residences with six or more 2-wire circuits or a net computed load (by code calculation) of 10 kVA or more have a minimum of 100-A, 3-wire service. Service disconnect for 100-A service would be a 100-A, 2-pole, solid neutral switch, fused at no more than 80% of the rating, or 80 A. This is usually written 100A, 2P & SN, 80AF. This service is used principally for residences, small stores, and other occupancies where the load does not exceed 80 A or 19.2 kVA. The load is calculated thus:

$$\text{kVA} = \frac{V \times I}{1000} = \frac{240 \times 80}{1000} = 19.2$$

Although it may appear otherwise, the neutral carries no more than full-load current. Note that each "hot leg" of the 3-wire system carries line current. Thus, total load can also be calculated:

$$\text{load kVA} = \text{twice load on each line}$$

Assuming a balanced 80-A load:

$$\text{total kVA} = 2 \times 80 \text{ A} \times 120 \text{ V}$$
$$= 2 \times 9600 \text{ VA} = 19{,}200 \text{ VA}$$
$$= 19.2 \text{ kVA}$$

If the loads were unbalanced with, say, 30 A in one line and 50 A in the other, the total load would be

$$120 \times 30 + 120 \times 50 = 3600 + 6000 = 9600 \text{ VA}$$
$$= 9.6 \text{ kVA}$$

Actual system voltages can be 120/240, 115/230, or 110/220, although 120/240 is the accepted industry standard. Normal receptacle and lighting loads at 120 V are connected between line and neutral. Heavier loads, such as for a clothes dryer or an electric stove, are connected between phase lines at 240 V.

For example, to find the line currents caused by the three loads shown in Fig. 28.3:

1. 120-V, 1200-W iron, line A to neutral
2. 120-V, 1440-W hair dryer, line B to neutral
3. 240-V, 4800-W clothes dryer, line A to line B

calculate

$$I_1 = \frac{1200}{120} = 10 \text{ A}$$
$$I_2 = \frac{1440}{120} = 12 \text{ A}$$
$$I_3 = \frac{4800}{240} = 20 \text{ A}$$

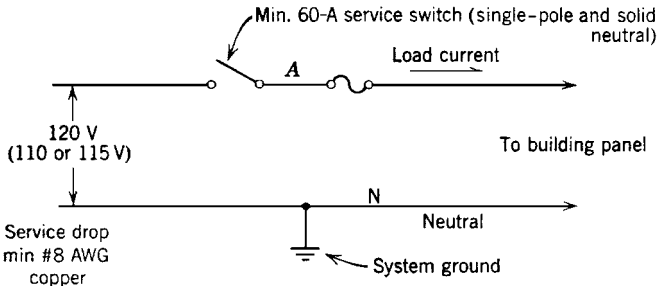


Fig. 28.1 *Shown is a 120-V, single-phase, 2-wire service. This is also the arrangement of a typical branch circuit.*

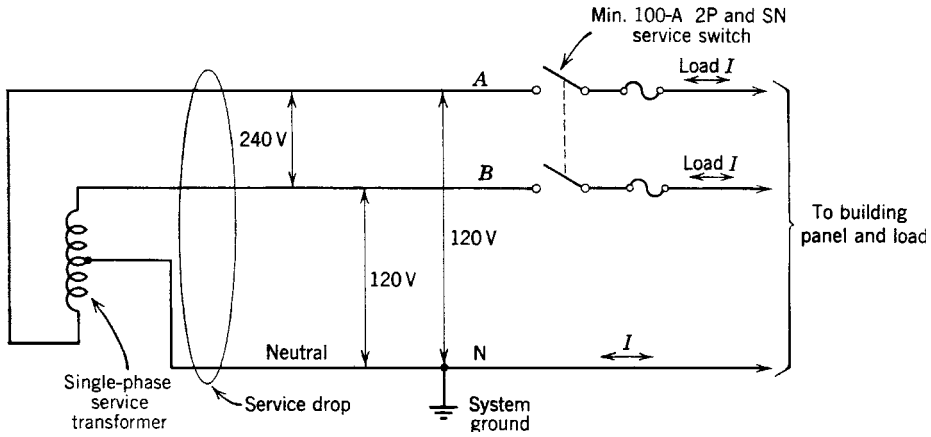


Fig. 28.2 *Shown is a 120/240-V, single-phase, 3-wire service. The single-phase transformer, which is normally located on the power company's pole along a street or road, is center-tapped to establish a neutral. The neutral connection is always grounded.*

Note that the neutral only carries the unbalance of 2 A (see Fig. 28.3).

Total current in line A = 20 + 10 = 30 A

Total current in line B = 20 + 12 = 32 A

Total current in neutral N = 2 A

Total load =

120(30) + 120(32) = 3600 + 3480 = 7440 VA

or

Loads are 1200 + 1440 + 4800 = 7440 VA

Because the loads are almost entirely resistive heating loads (small hair dryer motor and approximately a ⅙-hp [0.12 kW] dryer motor), the entire load has a power factor of almost 1.0. This, however, affects only energy calculations because equipment is sized, in general, by kVA capacity. The 120/240-V, single-phase system is derived from a center-tapped, single-phase transformer.

(c) 120/208-V, Single-Phase, 3-Wire

Although this system (Fig. 28.4) appears similar to the one described in Section 28.3*b*, it is really part of a 3-phase system. It is most often found *within* a building that takes 3-phase service rather than constituting a service voltage arrangement. It is used to serve a load that does not require 3-phase, 4-wire but does require a voltage higher than 120 V. Calculation of loads and line currents is considerably more complex than in Section 28.3*b* because

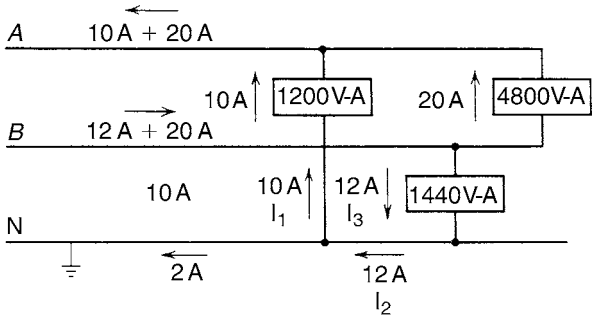


Fig. 28.3 *An example 120/240 V, 3-wire distribution. Note that the neutral carries the difference in current between the A and B legs and therefore a maximum that is equal to the current in one of the legs (when the other is zero).*

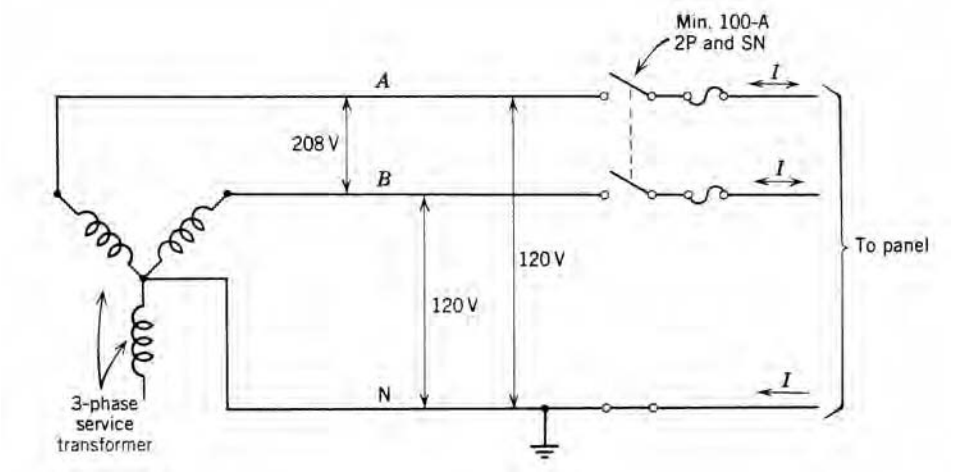


Fig. 28.4 *Shown is a 120/208-V, single-phase, 3-wire service. This arrangement comprises two-thirds of the full 120/208-V, 3-phase, 4-wire connection shown in Fig. 28.5.*

of the 120° phase displacement between phases A and B. Here, as before, the neutral carries no more than line current, regardless of whether the system is balanced.

(d) 120/208-V, 3-Phase, 4-Wire

This system (Fig. 28.5) is a widely used 3-phase arrangement applicable to all facilities except very large ones. In the latter, lengths of feeders and sizes of loads become so great that a higher system voltage is required. In this system, 120-V loads such as lighting, computers and accessories, receptacles, and so on are fed at 120 V by connection between a phase leg (Fig. 28.6) and neutral. Motors larger than ½ hp (0.37 kW) and all 3-phase loads are fed at 208 V by connection to the 3-phase legs. Single-phase, 208-V loads such as heaters are accommodated as described in Section 28.3*c* by connection between two phase legs. Such loads are often referred to as *2-pole* loads, alluding to the 2-pole current breakers used to feed them.

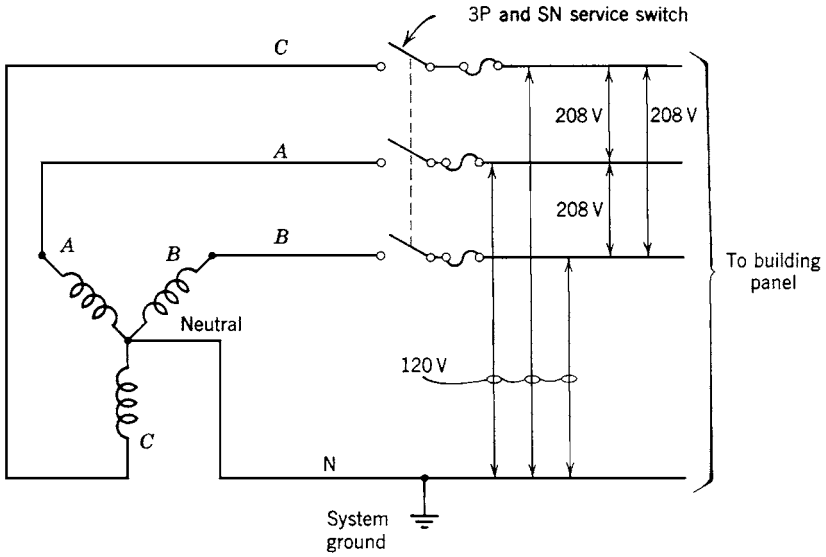


Fig. 28.5 *Shown is a 120/208-V, 3-phase, 4-wire system. The neutral connection is connected to the system ground and is not broken by the service switch.*

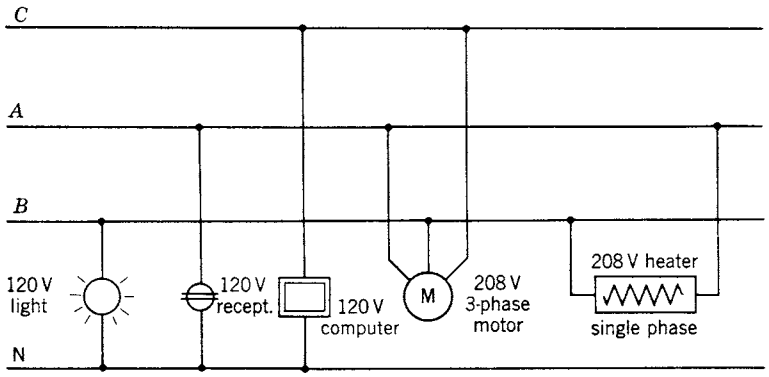


Fig. 28.6 *The flexibility of the 120/208-V system is illustrated; this accounts for its wide usage. Loads are shown schematically. In practice, the loads are fed via protective devices in the panel (omitted here for clarity). A, B, C, and N represent the panel buses.*

(e) 277/480-V, 3-Phase, 4-Wire

This system (Figs. 28.7 and 28.8) is applicable to large buildings (either horizontally or vertically) where lighting is principally fluorescent and/or high-intensity discharge (HID) and the 120-V load does not exceed one-third of the total load. It provides 277 V for fluorescent and HID lighting and 480 V for machinery. Small (3- to 25-kVA) dry-type transformers are used to step down from 480 V for 120-V loads. This system is ideally suited to multistory office buildings and large single-level or multilevel industrial buildings. Cost savings are generated by the smaller feeder and conduit sizes and smaller switchgear, which more than offset the additional cost of step-down transformers for the 120-V loads.

As an example of the economies possible with this system, consider the wiring required for a 15-kW heater. At 3-phase, 208 V:

$$I = \frac{15{,}000\ \text{W}}{\sqrt{3} \times 208\ \text{V}} = 42\ \text{A}$$

requiring No. 8 RHW wire (45-A capacity). At 480 V:

$$I = \frac{15{,}000\ \text{W}}{\sqrt{3} \times 480\ \text{V}} = 18\ \text{A}$$

requiring only No. 12 RHW wire (20-A capacity). This voltage system is also referred to as 265/460 V and 255/440 V.

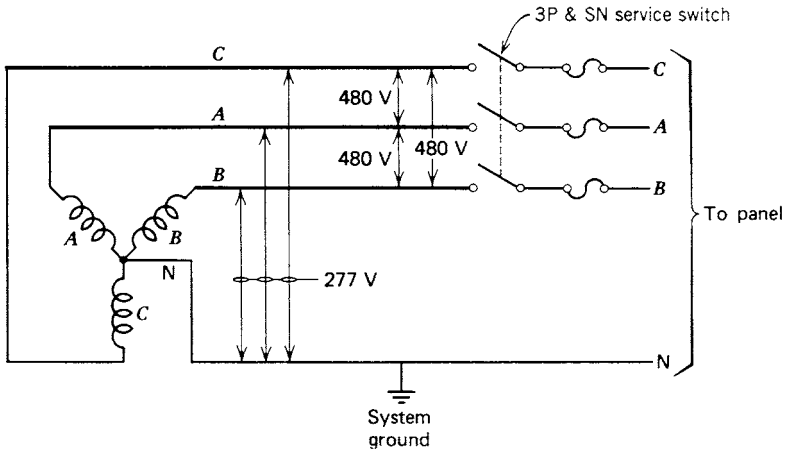


Fig. 28.7 *Shown is a 277/480-V, 3-phase, 4-wire service system. The system is identical to the 120/208-V system shown in Fig. 28.5 except for the voltages.*

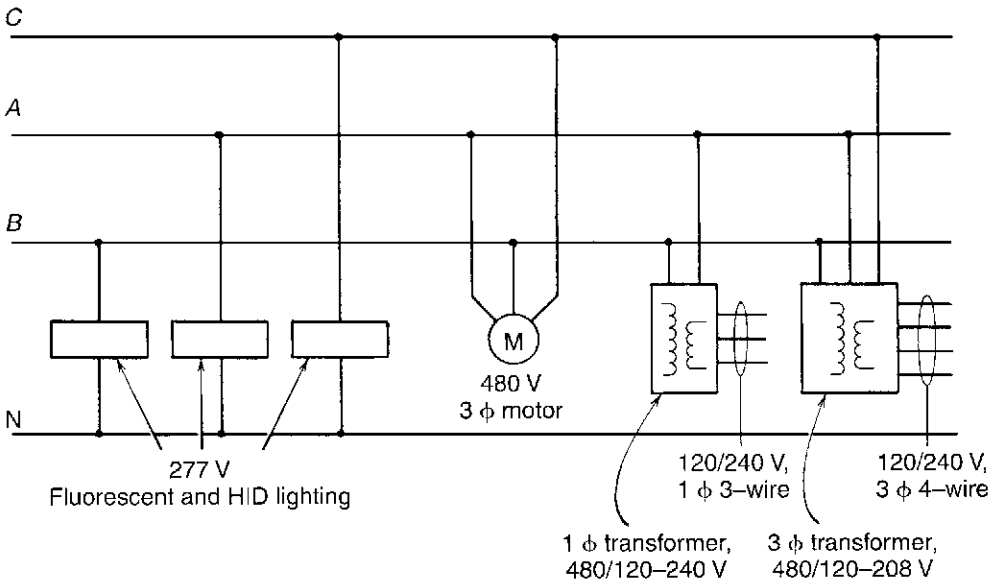


Fig. 28.8 *Normal load arrangement for a 277/480-V system is illustrated. The lighting can be fluorescent or HID. Transformers, either single-phase or 3-phase, supply 120 V for receptacles and 208 V for loads requiring that voltage.*

Voltages above 150 V to ground are generally avoided in residential branch circuits but may be used in commercial and industrial facilities within the guidelines established by the *NEC*.

(f) 2400/4160-V, 3-Phase, 4-Wire

This system is used only in very large commercial or industrial buildings with machinery requiring these voltages. The cost of running these voltages within a building is high because of *NEC* requirements and the inherently higher cost of 5-kV equipment. A detailed cost and engineering analysis by an electrical engineer is required for each case. Voltages above this level are widely used in large industrial plants but are beyond the scope of this book.

Reference was made earlier to the varied "voltages" assigned to the same voltage system. Thus, at the lowest level, there is 110, 115, and 120 V; at the next level, 200, 208, 220, 230, and 240 V; at the next, 255, 265, and 277 V; and finally, 440, 465, and 480 V. These voltage terminology differences arise because of the historic difference between transformer voltage standards, which establish the *system* voltage, and motor voltage standards, which govern *utilization* voltage (Table 28.3). Present motor voltage standards are in agreement with the system voltage standards. Note the close

TABLE 28.3 Standard System and Utilization Voltages[a,b]

System Voltage (Transformers)		*Utilization Voltage[c] (Motors)*	
Nominal	**With 4% Drop[c]**	**Current Standard[d]**	**Obsolete Standard**
120	115.2	115	110
208[d]	199.7	200	208
240[d]	230.4	230	220
480	460.8	460	440
600	576.0	575	550

[a]To eliminate any confusion between system and utilization voltages, the current NEMA standards are tabulated here.

[b]When specifying transformers, use system voltages; for motors, use utilization voltage.

[c]Note that utilization voltage corresponds to a 4% drop from the system voltage, well within the normal motor tolerance.

[d]Motors for 208-V systems are rated 200 V. Motors for 240-V systems are rated 230 V. They cannot be used interchangeably without seriously affecting motor performance.

TABLE 28.4 Effects of Undervoltage on Utilization Equipment[a]

Load	10% Undervoltage
Lighting	
Incandescent	Output reduced 30%
Fluorescent	Output reduced, poor start
Mercury vapor	Low output, poor start
Motors	20% lower torque, hotter operation, reduced life, overloading
Heaters	20% reduction in output
Small tools	Stalling, low power

[a]Computers and peripherals are generally supplied with voltage-regulating power supplies that make them tolerant of ±10% variation in steady-state supply voltage. Conversely, they are highly intolerant of rapid supply voltage fluctuation.

correspondence between motor standard voltage and system voltage with a (normal) 4% feeder voltage drop. Thus, on 240- and 480-V systems, respectively, 230- and 460-V motors are suitable.

Difficulties arise in the application of 230- and 240-V motors to a 208-V system. Although motors will operate at plus or minus 10% voltage, 230- and 240-V motors should *not* be used on 208-V systems. Instead, motors specially wound for 200 V should be specified. A brief summary of the effects of undervoltage is given in Table 28.4.

28.4 GROUNDING AND GROUND-FAULT PROTECTION

The vast majority of secondary wiring systems are solidly grounded. The reasons for this arrangement are several and varied. Among them are:

1. To prevent sustained contact between a low-voltage secondary system and a high-voltage primary system in the event of an insulation failure. Such contact could cause a breakdown of the secondary system insulation and severely endanger system users.
2. To prevent single grounds from going unnoticed until a second ground occurs, which would extensively disable the secondary system.
3. To permit locating ground faults with ease.
4. To protect against voltage surges.
5. To establish a neutral at zero potential for safety and for reference.

Points 2 and 4 are highly technical, and a full explanation is beyond the scope of this book. Point 5 requires that the neutral in a single secondary system is:

1. Never interrupted by switches or other devices
2. Connected to ground only at one point—the service entrance
3. Color-coded (in the United States) white, natural gray, or by three continuous white stripes on any insulation color other than green, along the entire conductor length, for easy recognition

A typical service-grounding diagram is given in Fig. 28.9. Universal acceptance and use of grounded secondary 120-V systems *introduces* another shock hazard while eliminating the dangers described previously. This is shown in Fig. 28.10*a*. An accidental fault within an appliance could connect the metal case of the appliance to the line. This can occur with such common devices as an electric saw, a clothes washer or dryer, or a food mixer. A person contacting the appliance housing and simultaneously a ground, such as a water pipe, would receive a nasty 120-V shock. If the contact were made with wet hands, the shock could be fatal. Unfortunately, however, until such an incident occurred, the internal fault would remain an unnoticed source of danger.

To eliminate this hazard, appliance manufacturers have always recommended that appliance housings be grounded to a cold-water pipe. In addition, the appliances are supplied with 3-wire plugs: two wires connected to the appliance and the third wire to the housing. To accommodate such plugs and to provide a ground path, the *NEC* requires all receptacles to be of the grounding type and all wiring systems to provide a ground path, separate and distinct from the neutral conductor (see Fig. 26.42). The result of such wiring is shown in Fig. 28.10*b*, where the ground current passes harmlessly through the internal fault, along the ground-wire path, and back to the panel. A person contacting

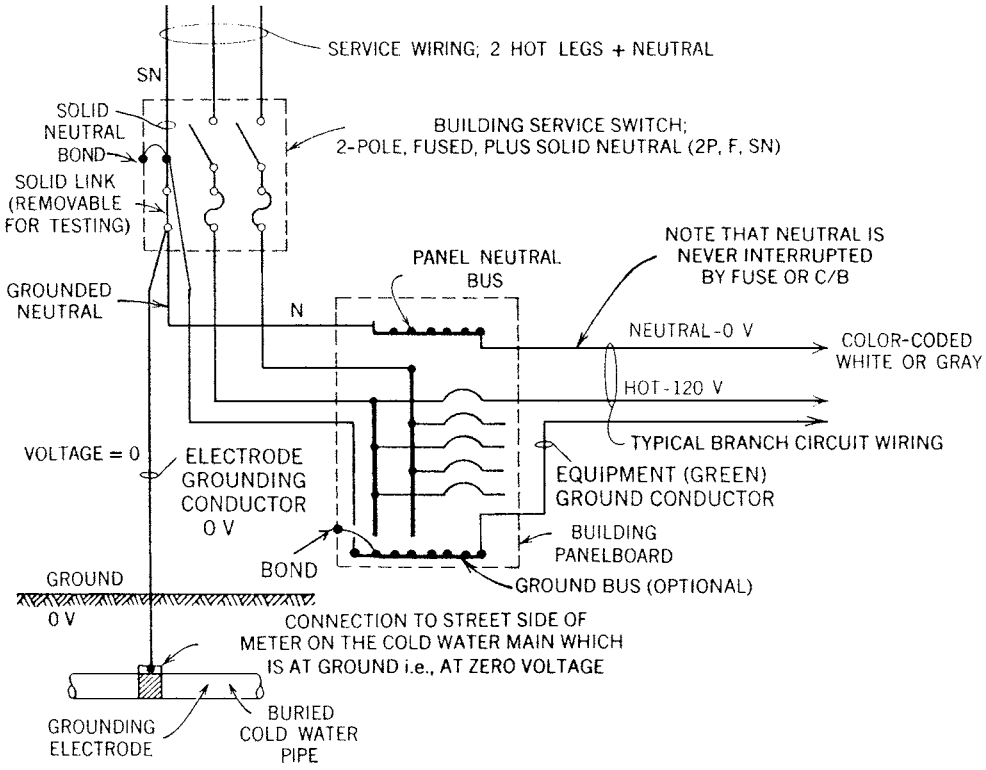


Fig. 28.9 *Typical service-grounding arrangement. Note that the grounded neutral is unbroken throughout. The ground bus, if present, is separate and distinct from the neutral bus, and both are grounded at the service entrance point. For the sake of clarity, not all bonding connections, which are required to ground all non-current-carrying metal parts of the electrical system (boxes, enclosures, conduits, etc.) are shown.*

the appliance housing establishes a parallel ground path. However, because this path is usually of much higher resistance than the ground-conductor path, only a very small current will flow. Wet hands materially reduce contact resistance, and shock current can increase to a dangerous level. If the ground current is sufficiently high, the branch circuit breaker or fuse opens, disconnecting the circuit.

When wiring systems are installed in metallic conduit, the conduit itself or the conduit plus a separate conductor within the conduit may be used as the grounding path. The latter method, with the additional ground wire, is far preferable as explained in Fig. 28.10. When nonmetallic or flexible metallic wiring (Romex or BX) is used, a separate grounding conductor run with the regular circuit conductors *must* be used.

All insulated ground conductors must have their covering colored green for identification as a grounding conductor. Many industrial installations install complete "green-ground" systems in an attempt to eliminate shock hazard and reduce insulation failures. This has not been entirely successful for the reason noted previously—in order to clear the ground fault, its current must be high enough to trip the branch circuit protective device. Otherwise, the ground fault continues to "leak," unnoticed by the system's protective devices. Unfortunately, ground faults are by nature low-current, leak-type faults, because they result from weak spots in insulation, dirt accumulation, and so on. Therefore, although the shock hazard is greatly reduced by the green-ground path, the fault continues to leak and arc until it becomes hot enough to cause a major breakdown, frequently accompanied by fire.

To eliminate this potentially dangerous situation, which occurs anytime there is a leak

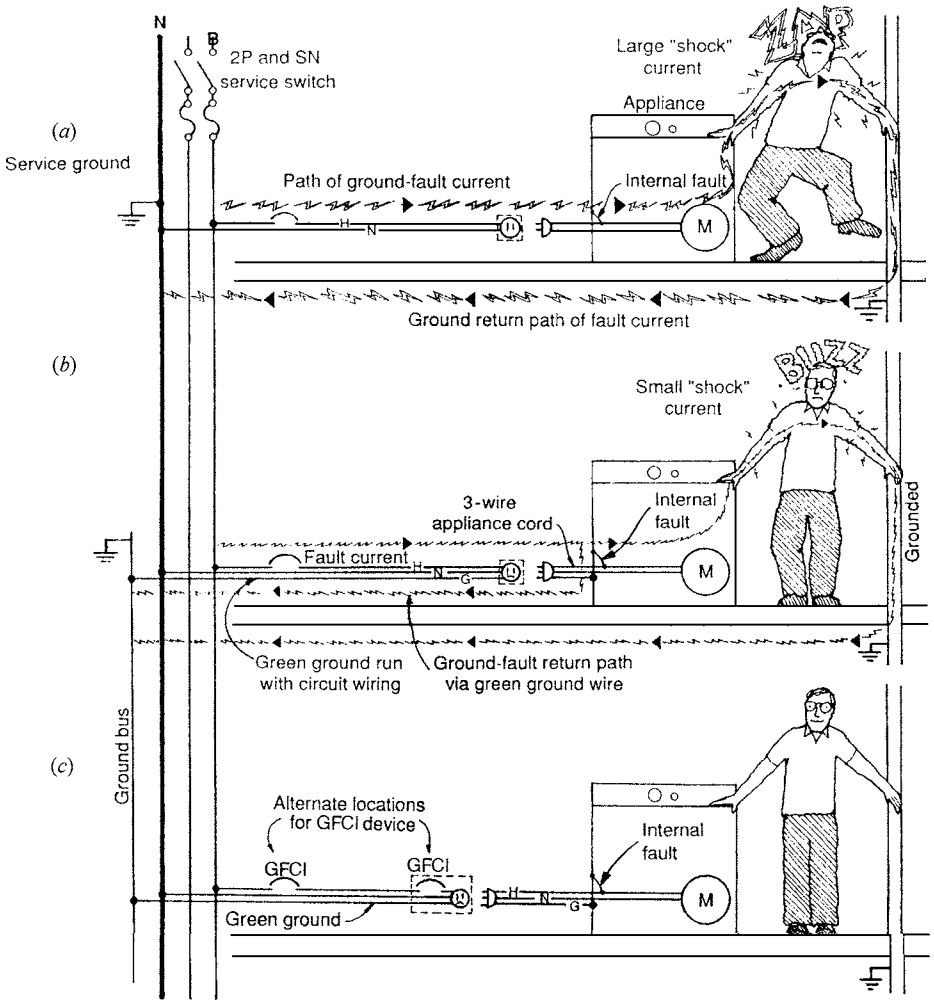


Fig. 28.10 *Three types of circuit arrangements. (a) A 2-wire, grounded-neutral circuit with no means of preventing shocks from ground faults. (b) A similar arrangement that includes a green ground wire, which considerably lessens the danger of ground-fault shocks. Note, however, that as long as the ground-fault current is below the rating of the branch circuit protective device (i.e., below 15 to 20 A), it will continue to flow within the appliance, causing overheating, arcing, and eventual destruction of the appliance. (c) GFCIs are mandatory for bathrooms, outdoor locations, swimming pool circuits, and other areas where ground faults are common and particularly hazardous.*

of current to ground in an electric circuit, the ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) was developed (Fig. 28.10*c*). This device compares, with extreme precision, the current flowing in the hot and neutral legs of a circuit; if there is a difference, it indicates a ground fault and the device trips out. The rapidity of this action—approximately one-half second—eliminates the possibility of a potentially dangerous shock hazard, which exists even in a properly grounded circuit, as in Fig. 28.10*b*, and all the more so for the circuit arrangement in Fig. 28.10*a*. The separate ground path required by the *NEC* (bonded metallic conduit system, green-ground, or both) serves to minimize the shock current taken by a person before the GFCI operates. The device can be applied at the panel to replace a normal circuit breaker (see Fig. 26.21*b*) or at an individual outlet to replace a normal receptacle device. See the *NEC* for locations where GFCI use is mandatory, such as outdoors and in kitchens and bathrooms. It is advisable to use GFCI devices on all appliance circuits. Application to lighting

circuits is generally not required because fixtures are usually out of reach and are switch-controlled. In mixed lighting and receptacle circuits, a GFCI is best applied at the outlet that is to be protected.

28.5 ENERGY CONSERVATION CONSIDERATIONS

Before proceeding with a detailed description of design procedures, the many energy conservation ideas and techniques applicable to electrical distribution systems should be surveyed. This is done to provide focus on this important aspect of design, as individual techniques appear throughout the lengthy design procedure discussion and may be overlooked. The following recommendations are intended to assist with meeting a design intent to conserve energy.

1. After establishing an energy budget based upon projected loads and normal operations, set an energy reduction figure of 10% to 20% and meet this goal by using the specific techniques that follow. Annual energy consumption estimates are best made with the aid of one of the many computer programs available for this purpose.
2. Learn to recognize the energy-use characteristics of all equipment and systems specified (see Table 27.6). In general, select high-efficiency equipment (motors, transformers, etc.). If these are not identified as such, use materials and equipment with the lowest temperature rise, because these have the lowest losses. This generally indicates the selection of choice. When comparisons are close, a detailed analysis may be necessary. Economic justification can be established with a life-cycle cost analysis. To avoid making a detailed cost analysis on every item, utilize one of the many available shortcut calculations for payback time (see Appendix I).
3. Provide electric load control equipment (demand control) either as part of an overall building control system or separately (see Sections 25.13 and 16.3).
4. In any multitenant residential building, provide individual user metering. Metering of heating and cooling energy should be part of the HVAC contract. All tenants should be made financially responsible for the energy they use. Exceptions to this rule would be made in the case of hotels, dormitories, and other transient facilities.
5. Where a choice of service voltages is available, consider the highest available. Similarly, consider the highest voltage in each class for interior distribution systems. This means 480 V in the 600-V class, 4 kV in the 5-kV class, and 13 kV in the 15-kV class. The result will be lower line losses, smaller panelboards at the branch circuit level, and generally a lower electrical contract cost (see Section 28.3).
6. In any building, the maximum total voltage drop *shall not* exceed 3% in branch circuits or feeders, for a total of 5% to the farthest outlet, based on steady-state design load conditions.
7. Avoid the use of electric heating elements if alternatives are available. Electric heat is an inefficient use of natural resources because of the low overall efficiency of fuel-to-electricity conversion.
8. Provide metering points (for fixed or plug-in meters) throughout the system to permit accurate analysis of power and energy use. Meters, both instantaneous reading and recording types, provide essential data regarding equipment loading, load patterns, load coincidence, power factor, load voltage, power demand, and energy consumption. Analysis of these data can indicate how to program and shift loads for maximum operational efficiency and lowest energy cost. A flexible design that permits such load shifting is assumed (see item 10).
9. Include provisions for power-factor correction in the system, both at devices and at the feeder level. Then, if metering (see item 8) indicates the necessity, add capacitors as required. High power factor reduces line losses, permits maximum utilization of equipment capacity, and avoids utility penalty charges. Utilization equipment rated greater than 1000 W and lighting equipment greater than 15 W, with an inductive reactance load component, should have a power factor of not less than 85% under rated load conditions. Utilization equipment with

an inherent power factor of less than 85% should be corrected to at least 90% under rated load conditions.

10. Size equipment as closely as possible to match the load. This normally results in improved efficiency and a higher power factor. Where load varies considerably—for example, between day and night or on weekends—consider splitting the loads so that part of the equipment can be switched off when the load is low and the remaining load can be fed from a "night/weekend" feeder. Such a design allows the shutdown of whole systems rather than operating at a very low load with the associated high losses and low power factor. The design must be sufficiently flexible to permit shifting of loads between feeders if measurements on the facility in operation indicate that this is desirable (see item 8). The aim is to operate equipment as closely to the rated load as possible and to deenergize lightly loaded sections by shifting load to other, partly loaded equipment.
11. Use the most efficient type of control. This means solid-state controls for motors, variable-voltage, variable-frequency (VVVF) controls for variable-speed equipment (which should be considered for all variable building loads), remote switch controls for blocks of lighting, electronic control systems for elevators, and so on.
12. Arrange automatic time controls for equipment that is only needed for part of the day, such as ventilation fans, water coolers, vending machines, and computers, that might otherwise be active for 24 hours.
13. Seal all electric riser shafts to avoid heat loss by stack effect.
14. Generally select the coolest possible locations for electric equipment. Low ambient temperature (below 40°C [104°F]) permits the use of smaller equipment for the same load, with resultant lower cost and losses. If below-grade space is available, it is well suited for this purpose.
15. Provision for future expansion should be made by means of a design that accommodates additional equipment in lieu of oversizing equipment initially. Here again, the higher cost of two pieces of equipment can normally be justified by a detailed owning-and-operating (life-cycle) cost analysis using realistic cost escalation and capital cost figures.
16. Energy-conservation techniques for lighting and lighting control are found in Sections 15.17 and 16.3.
17. Energy conservation techniques for vertical transportation are found in Section 31.44.

28.6 ELECTRICAL WIRING DESIGN PROCEDURE

The steps involved in the electrical wiring design of any facility are outlined in this section. These steps may in some instances be performed in a different order, or two or more steps may be combined, but the procedure normally used is the following:

1. Make an electrical load estimate based upon the areas involved, available building data, and any other pertinent information (see Section 28.2).
2. In cooperation with the local electric utility, decide upon the point of service entrance, type of service run, service voltage, metering location, and building utilization voltage (see Sections 26.1 to 26.11 and Section 28.5, item 5).
3. Determine, with the active input of the client, the proposed usage of all areas and information about all client-furnished equipment (including specific electric ratings and service connection requirements).
4. Determine from other consultants (such as those dealing with HVAC, plumbing, elevators, kitchens, and the like) the exact electrical ratings for all the equipment within their realm of design. This determination is often made after conferences during which the electrical consultant makes valuable recommendations to these other specialists about the comparative characteristics and costs of equipment (see Section 28.5, items 2, 7, 9, and 10). Such timely sharing of expertise is the foundation of the integrated building design process.
5. Determine the location and estimate the size of all required electric equipment spaces

including switchboard rooms, emergency equipment spaces (or areas), electric closets, and so forth. Panelboards are normally located in closets but may be located in corridor walls or elsewhere. These decisions are necessary early in the design process to enable the architect to reserve the appropriate spaces (in appropriate locations) for electrical equipment. Once the design is developed in detail, the estimated space requirements can be checked and necessary adjustments made.

6. Design the lighting for the facility. This step is complex and involves continued interaction between the architect and the lighting designer. Coordination between daylighting and electric lighting systems is especially critical.
7. Depending upon the type of facility, it may be necessary to separate the lighting plans from the plan(s) for other devices such as signaling, low-voltage systems, and receptacles. When an underfloor wiring system is used, it is customary to show it on a separate plan to avoid clutter and confusion. A decision about drawing conventions is made at the preliminary design stage by the project engineer. Once the decision has been made as to how this is to be handled, the lighting fixture layout can be made.
8. On the plan(s), locate all electrical apparatus including receptacles, switches, motors, and other power-consuming equipment. Underfloor, under-carpet, and over-ceiling wiring and raceway systems would be shown at this stage, generally on a separate plan.
9. On the plan(s), locate data-processing and signal apparatus such as telecommunication outlets, network connections, phone outlets, speakers, microphones, TV outlets, fire and smoke detectors, and so on. At this stage, provision is also made for load control wiring, building automatic control wiring, computer control, and the like. The decision is also made as to whether intelligent panels will be used (see Section 26.23). Because some of these systems may be covered by separate contracts, the division of responsibility must be clearly defined. Often, only an empty conduit system and power outlets or sources are required in the electrical work contract. The information in this chapter deals only with wiring design; further discussion of signal equipment is reserved for Chapter 30.
10. Circuit all lighting devices and power equipment to the appropriate panels and prepare the panel schedules. Include in this step the circuitry for emergency equipment.
11. Compute panel loads.
12. Prepare a riser diagram. This includes the design of distribution panels, switchboards, and service equipment.
13. Compute feeder sizes and all protective equipment ratings.
14. Check the preceding work.
15. Coordinate the electrical work with the other trades and with the architectural plans. This is not really a separate step, but rather a continuing process starting at step 9 and covering all subsequent stages of the work.

The background for items 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, and 9 is covered elsewhere in this book. The remaining steps, that is, 5, 8, 10, 12, 13, and 15, are discussed in order in the following sections.

28.7 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT SPACES

The spaces required for electrical equipment in a facility vary greatly, depending upon the design and the nature of the building. The working spaces required around major pieces of electrical switchgear and transformers were discussed previously (see Fig. 26.28). The *NEC* (in Article 110) further specifies the minimum working space required in front of electrical equipment.

(a) Residences

In private residences, the service equipment and the building panelboard are generally incorporated into a single unit. The main disconnect(s) is usually installed as the main switch/breaker of the panel. A number of typical residential service-panel arrangements are shown in Fig. 28.11. The panel is normally placed in the garage, utility room, or basement. To minimize voltage drop, the panel should be placed as close to the major electrical loads as practical, without sacrificing valuable space or making the panel inaccessible. Frequently, a smaller

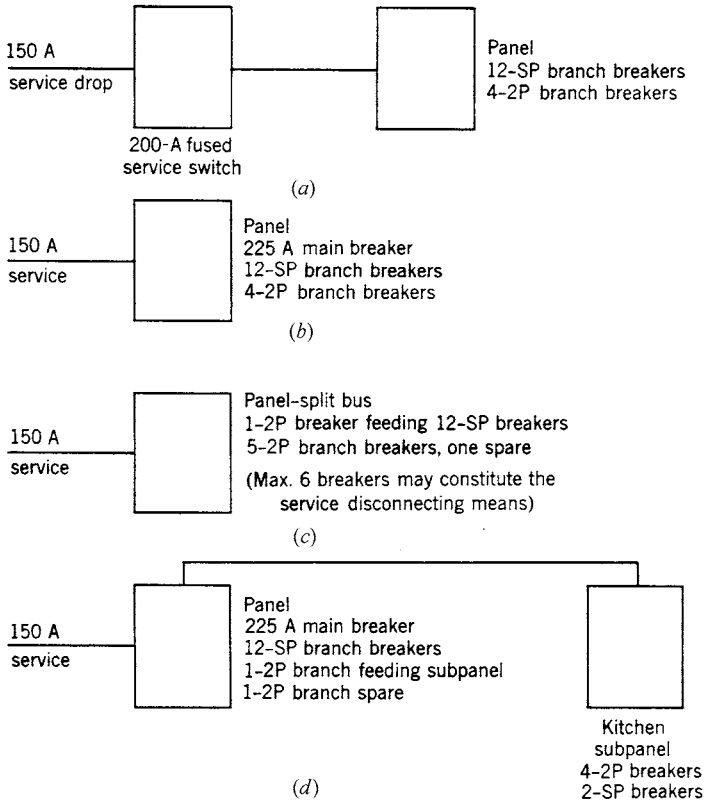


Fig. 28.11 *Typical 150-A service arrangements, applicable to residences and small commercial buildings. The service switch can be a separate unit (a) or combined with the branch circuit panelboard (b–d). The panel may be a single unit (a, b), two units in a single enclosure, fed by separate service switches (c), or a central panel and a subfed single-use panel (d)—in this case, a kitchen subpanel.*

panel can be subfed from the main panel to feed the kitchen and laundry loads. In apartments, panels are normally placed in the kitchen or the corridor immediately adjoining the kitchen. This location is chosen so that the panel circuit breaker can act as the required disconnecting means for most fixed appliances (see *NEC* Article 422C).

(b) Commercial Spaces

The location of the required panelboards depends upon their type and number and upon availability of space. In the research building (for which Fig. 28.12 is a partial plan), lighting panels are recessed into the corridor wall because the building is only two stories high and the panels can be vertically stacked and fed by a single conduit. If this building were six or more stories high, an electric closet (see Section 28.8) would be advisable to accommodate the panel and riser conduits. When panels are installed in finished areas such as corridors, flush mounting is required.

To limit the voltage drop on a branch circuit in accordance with code requirements, panelboards should be located so that no circuit exceeds 100 ft (30 m) in length. If 15-A or 20-A branch circuits longer than this are unavoidable, No. 10 AWG wire should be used for runs of 100 to 150 ft (30 to 46 m) and No. 8 AWG for longer circuits. These circuits are normally wired with No. 12 AWG wire.

The laboratory between the two offices of Fig. 28.12 is intended to function as a self-contained unit and is therefore equipped with its own panel. Multioutlet assemblies, all wiring within the room,

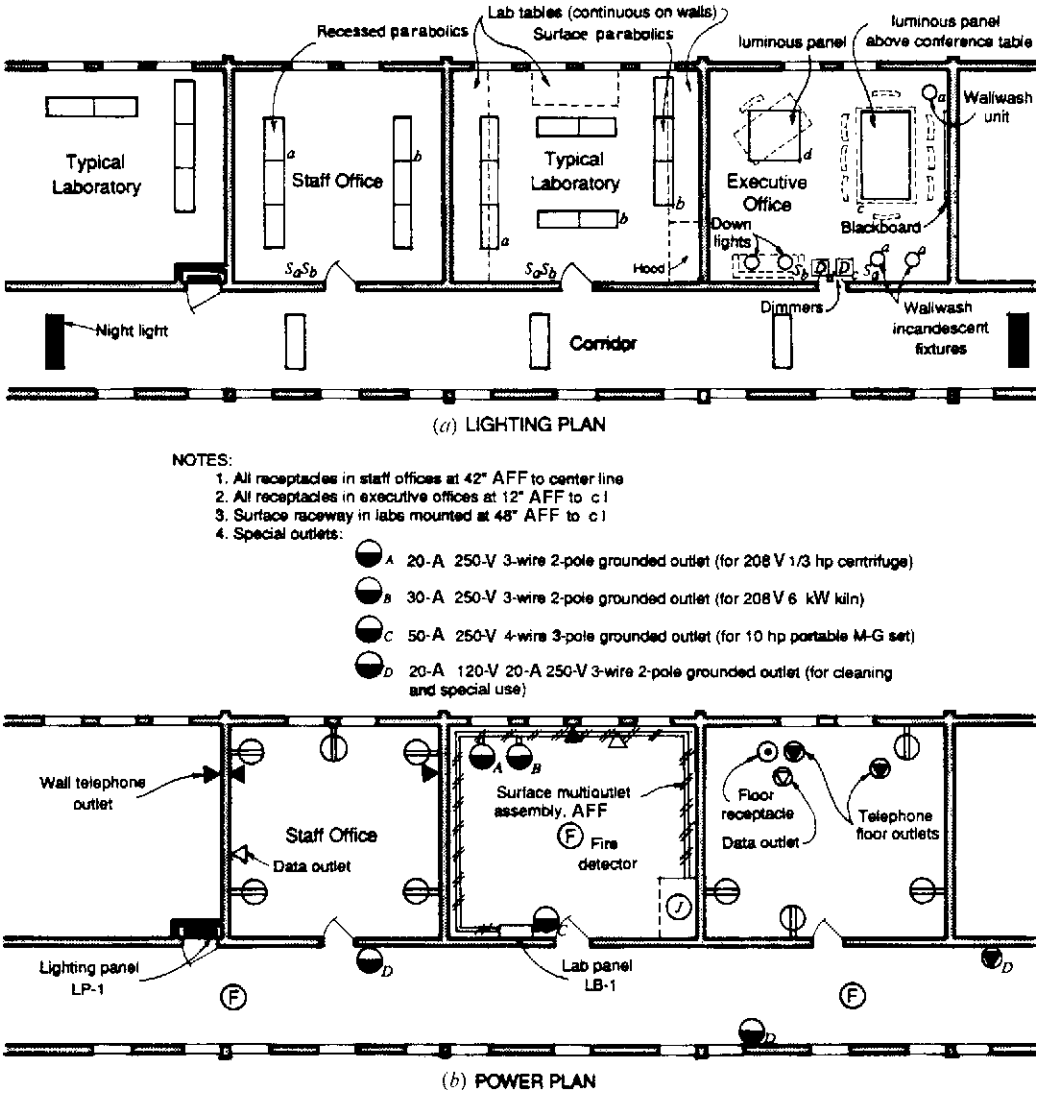
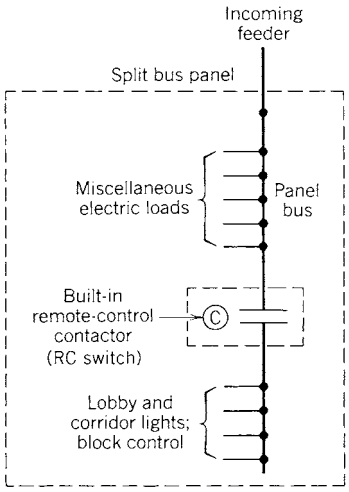


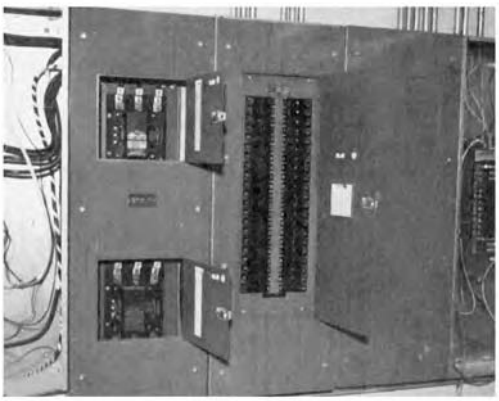
Fig. 28.12 *Typical floor plans for lighting and power for a section of an office–laboratory building. Separate lighting (a) and power (b) plans are drawn for the sake of clarity. For circuited plans, see Figs. 28.21 and 28.22. Data outlets handle data-processing and telecommunications cabling.*

and the panel itself are surface-mounted to allow ready access to all components, to accommodate the frequent rewiring encountered in laboratories. A main circuit breaker should be provided in such a panel to act as a main disconnect, whether required by code or not. Where panels are convenient to the load controlled, the panel circuit breakers may be used for switching.

Panels supplying large blocks of load simultaneously switched, such as auditorium house lighting, lobby lighting, large single-use office areas, store lighting, and the like, can be constructed with built-in electrically operated, mechanically held contactors to switch the entire load, with control at any desired remote location. These remote-control (RC) switches are discussed in Section 26.15. If only part of the panel circuits are so arranged (i.e., for remotely controlled block switching), a split bus panel can be used, with the RC switch controlling only that part of the panel load (Fig. 28.13).



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 28.13 *(a) Single-line diagram of a split bus panel. This design is used when a block of load is to be controlled as a unit. The control point is either remote, at the panel, or both. The contactor (RC switch) is electrically operated and mechanically latched. (b) RC switches (mechanically held contactors) are shown to the left of a bank of panels. The contactors were installed to provide photocell and timer control of department store lighting. (Photo courtesy of Automatic Switch Co.)*

Small offices, stores, and other small buildings frequently have lighting panels mounted in a convenient finished area and utilize the panels' circuit breakers for load switching. In large buildings, strategically located electric closets are provided to house all electrical supply equipment. Power panels and distribution panels are located as required by the loads fed through them.

In general, branch circuit panels, distribution panels, and switchboards are best located near the electrical load center. This minimizes feeder length and reduces voltage drop, making it the most economical arrangement.

Every completely enclosed switchgear room, emergency generator room, or transformer vault should be equipped with an emergency light source (see Section 16.31). In generator rooms, these should be battery-operated to give illumination for generator repairs in the event of generator failure during a power outage.

28.8 ELECTRICAL CLOSETS

When designing a building electric system, particularly for multistory construction, it is often advantageous and convenient to group the electrical equipment in a small room called an *electrical closet* (Fig. 28.14). The shape of this space can be varied to fit the architectural requirements, and it should provide the following:

1. One or more locking doors.
2. Vertical stacking, above and below other electric closets, and located so as not to block conduits entering or leaving horizontally. Thus, locations on outside walls and adjoining shafts, columns, and stairs are poor choices.
3. Space free of other utilities such as piping or ducts passing through the closet, either horizontally or vertically.
4. Sufficient wall space to mount all requisite and future panels, switches, transformers, telephone cabinets, and communication equipment. Wall cabinet space must be coordinated with raceway connections to underfloor ducts and over-the-ceiling raceway systems (see Sections 27.24 to 27.30).
5. Floor slots or sleeves of sufficient size for all present and future conduit or bus risers.
6. Sufficient floor space so that an electrician can work comfortably and safely on initial installation and repair.
7. Adequate illumination and ventilation.

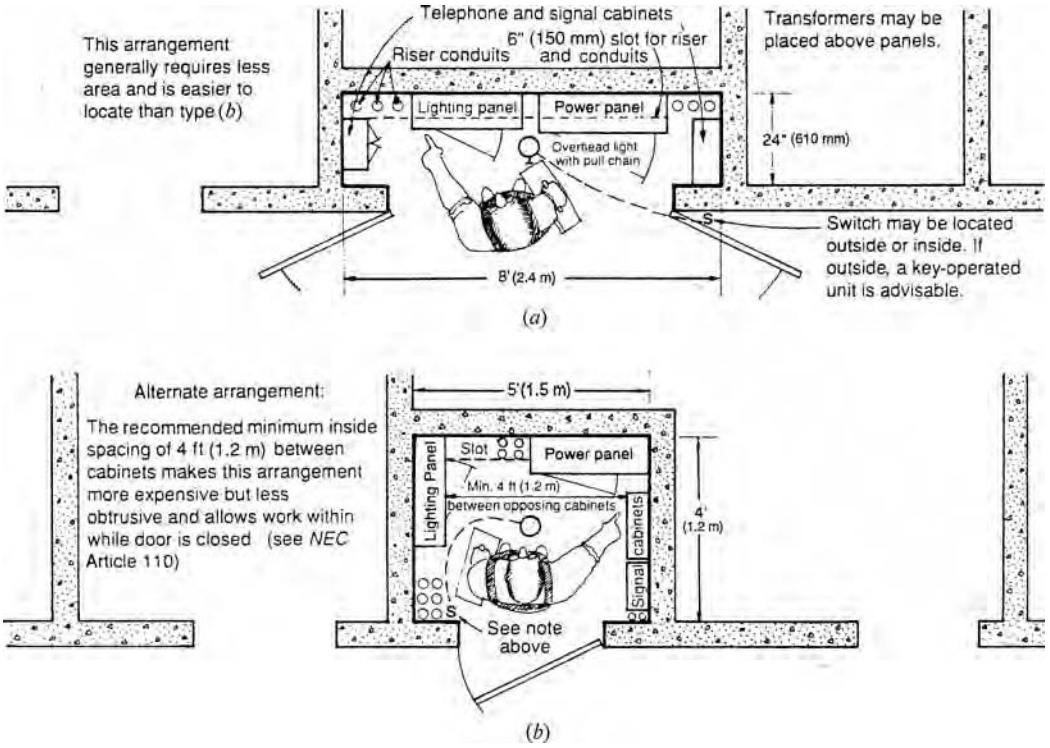


Fig. 28.14 *Typical electric closets with some of the usual equipment. If warranted due to the amount of equipment, separate closets may be used for signal and telephone conduits and cabinets. Smaller spaces may be used, depending upon the types of equipment cabinets and their arrangement (see* NEC *Article 110). In all cases, sufficient space must be provided to allow full opening of all cabinet doors. Empty wall space for future cabinets and equipment should also be considered.*

28.9 EQUIPMENT LAYOUT

Wiring devices, principally receptacles and switches, are located as required by the equipment to be served and by the anticipated use of an area.

Switches for control of lighting or receptacles are normally placed on the strike side of a door. Other devices, such as plug-in strips on walls and special-purpose receptacles, are shown and identified. Signal outlet locations are often noted but generally remain uncircuited on floor plans, a riser or floor raceway plan being utilized to show interconnections. Signal devices include fire-alarm equipment, telephone and intercom equipment, data and communications, radio and TV outlets, and so on. These devices may be identified by a special symbol or note where a standard symbol is not available.

As mentioned previously, lighting fixture outlets are normally placed on the same drawing as wiring devices unless the large number of the latter precludes showing the lighting without unduly cluttering the drawings. In such an event, the lighting is shown on one drawing and receptacles on another, with signals shown on the one less occupied. A ceiling or underfloor wiring system would necessitate such separation. Motors, heaters, and other fixed and permanently wired equipment are shown and identified on the receptacle drawings (also called *power drawings*, in contrast to lighting drawings). Equipment furnished with a cord and plug is not normally shown. However, the receptacle intended for supplying such a device is shown and identified. A typical device layout is shown in Fig. 28.12. An abbreviated symbol list is given in Fig. 28.15. For a complete electrical symbol list, see Stein (1997).

28.10 APPLICATION OF OVERCURRENT EQUIPMENT

Before beginning an explanation of circuiting, it is necessary to explain the principles underlying overcurrent protection. As outlined in Chapter 26, the

ELECTRICAL SYMBOL LIST

RACEWAYS

CONDUIT AND WIRING CONCEALED IN CEILING OR WALLS TICS INDICATE NO. OF CONDUCTORS EXCLUDING GROUNDS; 2 #12, ¾" CONDUIT UON.

CONDUIT AND WIRING CONCEALED IN OR UNDER FLOOR

CONDUIT AND WIRING EXPOSED

F-6 — FEEDER F-6, SEE SCHEDULE, DWG NO.

BX — BX WIRING

NM — NONMETALLIC CABLE (ROMEX) WIRING

2, 4 / 2PLA / 3#12, ¾" C — HOME RUN TO PANEL 2PLA—NUMERALS INDICATE CIRCUITS, 3 #12 AWG, ¾" RIGID STEEL CONDUIT

TC2A — HOME RUN TO TELEPHONE CABINET TC2A

EC$_T$ — EMPTY CONDUIT, SUBSCRIPT INDICATES INTENDED USE T -TELEPHONE, IC- INTERCOM, FA- -FIRE ALARM, ETC.

4" × 4" / A — SURFACE METAL RACEWAY, SEE NOTE _____, DWG _____ SIZE AND RECEPTACLES AS SHOWN

OUTLETS

CEILING	WALL	
(A)$_a$ O	(A)^3	OUTLET AND LIGHTING FIXTURE: LETTER IN CIRCLE INDICATES TYPE-- SEE SCHEDULE. SUPERSCRIPT NO. INDICATES CIRCUIT. SUBSCRIPT LETTER INDICATES SWITCH CONTROL. RECTANGLE INDICATES FLUORESCENT
A	B	OUTLET AND EXIT SIGN FIXTURE, UPPERCASE LETTER INDICATES TYPE, ARROWS INDICATE REQUIRED SIGN ARROWS
(E)	(E)	OUTLET BOX, BLANK COVER -NOTE 2
(J)	(J)	JUNCTION BOX, BLANK COVER

WIRING DEVICES

DUPLEX CONVENIENCE RECEPTACLE OUTLET 15 AMP 2P 3W 125 V, GROUNDING, WALL MTD VERTICAL, ℄ 12" AFF.

GFCI — RECEPTACLE, RATED AS SHOWN, EQUIPPED WITH GROUND FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTER

A — SPECIAL RECEPTACLE, LETTER DESIGNATES TYPE, SEE SCHED. DWG. NO. __ WALL-MOUNTED

B — FLOOR OUTLET TYPE B, SEE DWG. NO. _____

or — MULTI-OUTLET ASSEMBLY, SEE DWG. NO. ___ FOR SCHEDULE AND DETAILS (SEE SPEC.)

S_a — SINGLE-POLE SWITCH, 15A 125 V, 50" AFF UON. SUBSCRIPT LETTER INDICATES OUTLETS CONTROLLED

$_aS_3$ — SWITCH, 3-WAY, 15A 125 V, SEE SPEC.; CONTROLLING OUTLETS 'a'

S_K — SWITCH, KEY OPERATED, 15A 125 V

S_{SA} — SWITCH, SPECIAL PURPOSE, TYPE A, SEE SPEC.; SEE DWG. NO. ____

ABBREVIATIONS RELEVANT TO SWITCHES:

SP	—SINGLE POLE
DP	—DOUBLE POLE
SPDT	—SINGLE POLE DOUBLE THROW
DPDT	—DOUBLE POLE DOUBLE THROW
RC	-- REMOTE CONTROL

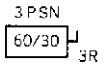
D — OUTLET-BOX-MOUNTED DIMMER

Fig. 28.15 *Abbreviated electrical symbol list. For a complete list, see Stein (1997).*

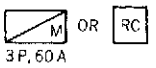
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

A,a	AMPERES	GFCI	GROUND FAULT CCT INTERRUPTER	OH	OVERHEAD
AFF	ABOVE FINISHED FLOOR	HP	HORSEPOWER	OC	ON CENTER
C/B	CIRCUIT BREAKER	LTG	LIGHTING	SW	SWITCH
CCT	CIRCUIT	MH	MOUNTING HEIGHT, MANHOLE	T	THERMOSTAT
EM	EMERGENCY	N	NEUTRAL	TEL	TELEPHONE
EC	EMPTY CONDUIT	NC	NORMALLY CLOSED	TV	TELEVISION
F	FUSE	NO	NORMALLY OPEN	UON	UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED
FA	FIRE ALARM	NIC	NOT IN CONTRACT	UG	UNDERGROUND
GND	GROUND			WP	WEATHERPROOF

EQUIPMENT

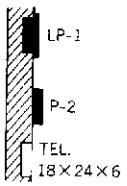


SW., 3-POLE AND SN., 60 A/30 AF, NEMA 3R ENCL., ND (NORMAL DUTY) 250 V



CONTACTOR, ENCLOSED, ELECTRICALLY OPERATED, MECHANICALLY HELD, 3-POLE 60 A


ITEM OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, AS INDICATED



ELECTRIC PANELBOARD LP-1, RECESSED, SEE SCHEDULE ON DWG. ____

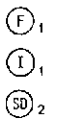
ELECTRIC PANEL (BOARD) P-2, SURFACE MTD

CABINET, MOUNTING, SIZE, AND PURPOSE AS SHOWN

SIGNALING DEVICES



BELL OR GONG, INSCRIBED LETTER INDICATES SYSTEM (SEE BELOW) AND SUBSCRIPT LETTER OR NUMBER INDICATES TYPE, e.g. A—8" VIBRATING BELL, 12 V. DC; B—12" WEATHERPROOF SINGLE-STROKE GONG, 120 V. DC, etc.



FIRE DETECTOR, TYPE 1

INTRUSION DETECTOR, TYPE 1 } ETC.

SMOKE DETECTOR, TYPE 2



MANUAL STATION—WATCHMEN TOUR, FIRE ALARM, ETC. LETTER INDICATES SYSTEM (SEE BELOW)



COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET, LETTER INDICATES TYPE CABINET OR CONTROL PANEL, SMOKE DETECTION, USE IDENTIFYING TYPE LETTER IF MORE THAN ONE TYPE IS USED ON THE PROJECT



AUXILIARY DEVICE, AS INDICATED



HORN OR LOUDSPEAKER, TYPE A, TYPE 2



TELEPHONE OUTLET, TYPE B

COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET, LETTER INDICATES TYPE



CLOCK SYSTEM OUTLET, TYPE A



TV ANTENNA OUTLET


OUTLET, LETTER INDICATES TYPE

Fig. 28.15 *(Continued)*

SYSTEM TYPES

F, FA	FIRE ALARM
S, SD	SMOKE DETECTION
I, IA	INTRUSION ALARM
T, TEL	TELEPHONE
TV	TELEVISION
IC	INTERCOM
D	DATA, TELECOMMUNICATION

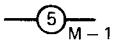
AUXILIARY DEVICES

BATT	BATTERY
S, SP	SPEAKER, LOUDSPEAKER
TC	TELEPHONE CABINET
WF	WATERFLOW

MOTORS AND MOTOR CONTROL



COMBINATION TYPE MOTOR CONTROLLER; ATL STARTER PLUS FUSED DISCONNECT SWITCH, NEMA SIZE II, SEE SCHEDULE DWG. ___ ___ ___



MOTOR #1, 5 HP, 3ϕ SQUIRREL CAGE UON



DEVICE 'T' (SEE LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS)

S_T MANUAL MOTOR CONTROLLER WITH THERMAL ELEMENT.

ATL ACROSS THE LINE STARTER—MAGNETIC

FS FUSED SWITCH

CB CIRCUIT BREAKER

FV FULL VOLTAGE

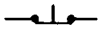
MCC MOTOR CONTROL CENTER

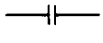
S START BUTTON—MOMENTARY CONTACT

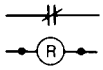
ST STOP BUTTON—MOMENTARY CONTACT

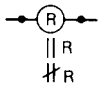
CONTROL DIAGRAMS AND WIRING DIAGRAMS


MOMENTARY CONTACT PUSHBUTTON—NO—(START)


MOMENTARY CONTACT PUSHBUTTON—NC—(STOP)


NORMALLY OPEN CONTACT—NO


NORMALLY CLOSED CONTACT—NC



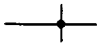
OPERATING COIL FOR RELAY OR OTHER MAGNETIC CONTROL DEVICE. WITH ONE NO AND ONE NC CONTACT. LETTERS NORMALLY USED ARE C, R FOR CONTROL COIL AND RELAY

POWER WIRING

CONTROL WIRING

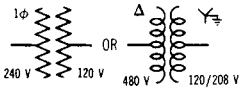
ONE LINE DIAGRAMS

CONDUCTOR, SIZE, AND TYPE INDICATED

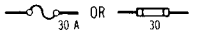

CONDUCTORS CROSSING, CONNECTED


GROUND CONNECTION

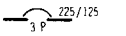

GROUNDED WYE



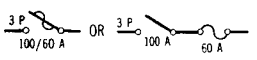
TRANSFORMER, 2 WINDING, 1ϕ INDICATES SINGLE PHASE; Δ-Y INDICATES 3-PHASE AND TYPE OF CONNECTION; NUMBERS INDICATE VOLTAGES.



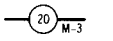
FUSE, 30 A TYPE - - -



CIRCUIT BREAKER, MOLDED CASE, 3 POLE, 225 A FRAME/125 A TRIP



FUSED DISCONNECT SWITCH, 3 POLE, 100 A, 60 A FUSE



MOTOR, 3-PHASE SQUIRREL CAGE UON, 20 HP, MOTOR #3

Fig. 28.15 *(Continued)*

function of an overcurrent device is to open (interrupt) a circuit when the current rating of the equipment being protected is exceeded. All equipment must be protected in accordance with its current-carrying capacity. Where ratings do not correspond exactly, the next larger standard size for protective devices up to 800 A may be used; above this, use the next lower rating (see *NEC* Article 240-3 for further restrictions). The following general rules govern the application of overcurrent protection:

1. Overcurrent devices must be placed on the line or supply side of the equipment being protected (Fig. 28.16).
2. Overcurrent devices must be placed on all *ungrounded* conductors of the protected circuit (see Fig. 26.33).
3. In general, conductor sizes shall not be reduced in a circuit or tap unless the smallest-size wire is protected by the circuit overcurrent devices (Fig. 28.17).
4. Overcurrent devices shall be located so as to be readily accessible.

28.11 BRANCH CIRCUIT DESIGN

A branch circuit, by *NEC* definition, refers only to the circuit conductors, although for our purposes and in trade parlance it includes the protective device and the outlets served. Such circuits may be the multioutlet general-purpose type (Fig. 28.18*a*), the multioutlet appliance type (Fig. 28.18*b*), or the single-outlet type intended for a specific piece of equipment (Fig. 28.18*c*). The multioutlet types are limited to 50 A in capacity, whereas the single-outlet type is governed in size only by the requirements of the item being served and may be 200 A or 300 A in size.

In its simplest form, a branch circuit comprises only two circuit wires. However, multiwire branch circuits carrying 2- to 3-phase wires plus a neutral are also widely used. Generally, each branch circuit should be sized for the load connected to it plus the load expansion that is expected. These general rules of good practice should be followed:

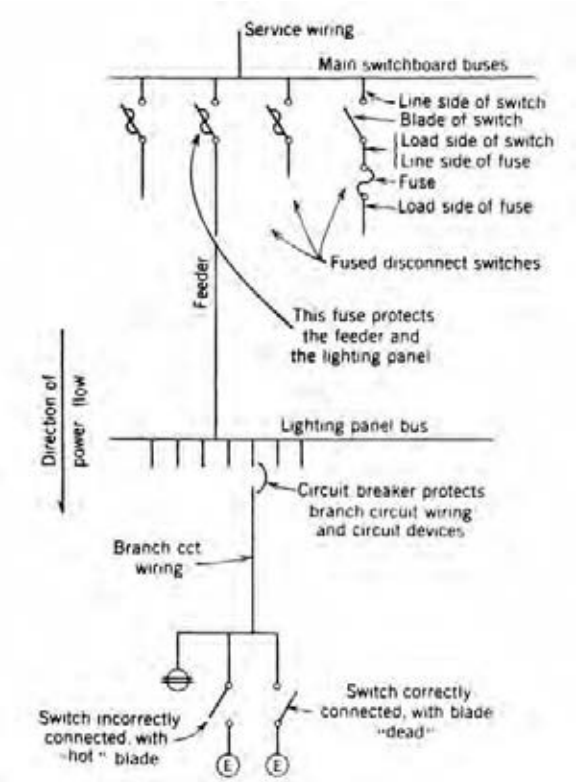


Fig. 28.16 *Location of overcurrent protective equipment. Protective equipment should always be located at the point where the conductor receives its source of supply so that when the protective device operates, the current supply is cut off.*

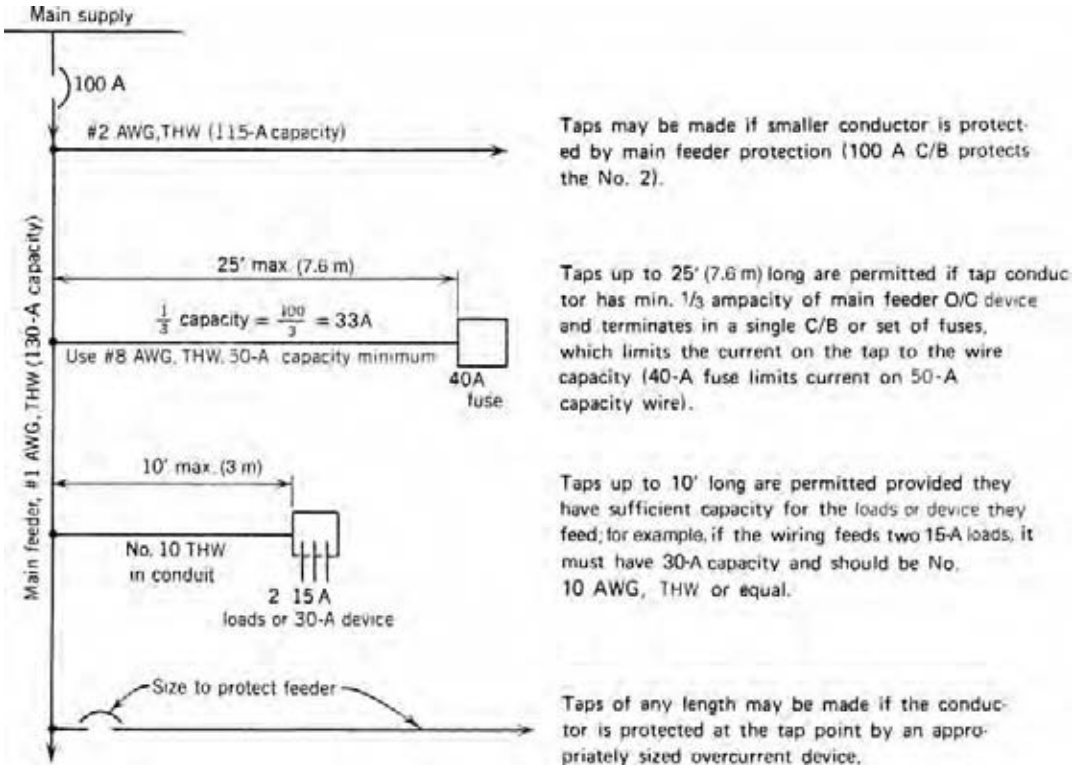
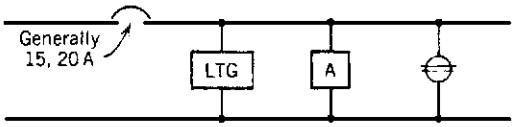


Fig. 28.17 *Some permissible tap arrangements. See* NEC *Article 240-21 for restrictions on taps in addition to those given in the figure.*

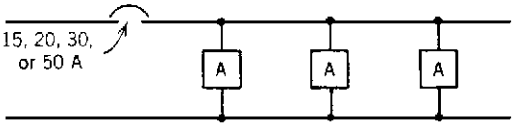
1. In all but the smallest installations, connect lighting, convenience receptacles, and appliances on separate (groups of) circuits, although this is not an *NEC* requirement.
2. General-purpose branch circuits should be 20 A and wired with No. 12 AWG wire. Switch legs may be No. 14 AWG if the lighting load permits and the wiring meets the tap requirements of *NEC* Article 240-21.
3. Limit the circuit load on 15-A and 20-A circuits to the values shown in Table 28.5. This provides the required building load expansion capability in the branch circuitry; that is, bringing the loads on the branch circuits up to maximum allows additional building loads to be absorbed. Because it is not always economical or feasible to expand existing circuits, however, panels are always equipped with spare breakers. These can also be utilized to pick up building load expansion, or the user may use a combination of the two techniques, expanding some existing circuits and adding new ones. (See Section 28.15 for a discussion of this subject.)

Because lighting and specific devices are circuited according to their nameplate ratings, the only circuitry item left to the judgment of the designer is the number of convenience receptacles per circuit. The *NEC* specifies that plug outlets (convenience receptacles) be counted, in totaling loads, at 1.5 A each unless included in the load for general lighting. This point requires some clarification. The receptacle load for general illumination in dwellings is included in the 3 V-A/ft^2 (32.3 V-A/m^2) specified by *NEC* Table 220-3(a) and found in Table 28.1. This is because receptacle outlets on general illumination circuits are assumed to supply illumination (i.e., lamps), and are therefore necessarily included in the lighting load. Application of the 1.5-A (180-V-A) per outlet criterion to such outlets would, in the opinion of the *NEC*, unnecessarily limit the number of outlets permitted on such circuits.

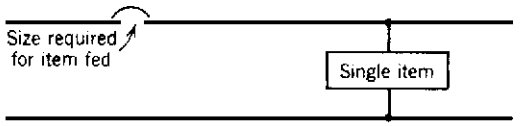
The same is true for appliance circuits. On both of these types, according to the *NEC*, the number of receptacle outlets is not limited. On 15- and 20-A receptacle circuits, which are neither general illumination nor small appliance branch



(*a*) General-purpose branch circuit. Supplies outlets for lighting and appliances, including convenience receptacles.



(*b*) Appliance branch circuit. Supplies outlets intended for feeding appliances. Fixed lighting not supplied.



(*c*) Individual branch circuit, designed to supply a single specific item.

Fig. 28.18 *Branch circuit types. See* NEC *Article 210 for detailed descriptions.*

circuits, the number of outlets is limited to 10 (1800 V-A) on a 15-A circuit and 13 (2340 V-A) on a 20-A circuit by applying the 1.5-A per outlet criterion.

It appears that the distinction between circuit types is not completely clear, and that good practice dictates the limitation of convenience receptacles per circuit to a considerably smaller number. Thus, following the guidelines of Table 28.5 of 9- and 12-A loading on 15- and 20-A circuits, respectively, this approach would yield.

$$\text{15-A circuit: } \frac{9\text{ A}}{1.5\text{ A per outlet}} = 6\text{ outlets per circuit}$$

$$\text{20-A circuit: } \frac{12\text{ A}}{1.5\text{ A per outlet}} = 8\text{ outlets per circuit}$$

These values must be used judiciously. If the devices to be energized are small, these quantities may be used. Such would be the case in a business office, where only an electric pencil sharpener or a desk lamp (100 V-A) would be plugged in. However, for computer-equipped offices, service and repair facilities, and the like, plan for no more than four receptacles on a 20-A circuit—and preferably two or three receptacles should be used on a 15-A circuit. Of course, diversity of use is an all-important factor, and the more accurately it can be estimated, the better the design result.

A further note of caution is in order: receptacles should be arranged, if at all possible, so that the loss of a single circuit does not deprive an entire area of power. That is, for the sake of reliability, circuitry should be alternated to give each space access to parts of different circuits.

NEC Table 210-24 specifies certain requirements for conductors, devices, and loads permissible

TABLE 28.5 Recommended Branch Circuit Loads[a]

Size Circuit	*Circuit[d] Amperes*	Volt-Amperes[d] at 120 V	Volt-Amperes at 277 V
0% Expansion[b, c]			
15 A	12	1440	—
20 A	16	1920	4440
25% Expansion[e]			
15 A	9.6	1150	—
20 A	12.8	1520	3600
50% Expansion[f]			
15 A	8	960	—
20 A	11	1300	3000

[a]The loading shown will provide the specified expansion in the branch circuits. Where branch circuit expansion is not practical, the required expansion can be obtained from panel spares.

[b]See Table 28.1 for anticipated load growth.

[c]For 0% expansion, initial load = 80% of the circuit rating, which is the maximum permissible for continuous loads. See Table 28.6, note 6.

[d]For branch circuits feeding utilization equipment such as air conditioners in addition to convenience outlets, see *NEC* Article 210-23.

[e]To accomplish 25% expansion, the circuit is derated to 80%, i.e., 80% of 12 A = 9.6 A, etc.

[f]To accomplish 50% expansion, the circuit is derated by 1/3, i.e., two-thirds of 12 A = 8 A, etc. (Then 50% expansion on 8 A yields 12 A.)

TABLE 28.6 Branch Circuit Requirements

	Branch Circuit Size				
	15 A	**20 A**	**30 A**	**40 A**	**50 A**
Minimum-size copper conductors	No. 14	12	10	8	6
Minimum-size taps	No. 14	14	14	12	12
Overcurrent device rating	15 A	2s0	30	40	50
Lampholders permitted	Any type	Any type	Heavy duty	Heavy duty	Heavy duty
Receptacle rating permitted (see note 7)	15 A	15 or 20	30	40 or 50	50
Maximum load (see notes 6 & 8)	15	20	30	40	50

Notes:

1. Wiring shall be types RHW, RHH, T, THW, TW, THWN, THHN, XHHW in raceway or cable.
2. On a 15-A circuit, the maximum single appliance shall draw 12 A. On a 20-A circuit, the maximum single appliance shall draw 16 A. If combined with lighting or portable appliances, any fixed appliance shall not draw more than 7.5 A on a 15-A circuit and 10 A on a 20-A circuit.
3. On a 30-A circuit, maximum single appliance draw shall be 24 A.
4. Heavy-duty lampholders are units rated not less than 750 W.
5. 30-, 40-, and 50-A circuits shall not be used for fixed lighting in residences.
6. When loads are connected for long periods (3 hours or more), the actual load shall not exceed 80% of the branch circuit rating. Conversely, continuous-type loads shall be figured at 125% of the actual load in all load calculations.
7. A single receptacle on an individual branch circuit shall have a rating not less than the circuit—for example, 15 A on a 15-A circuit. Also, 15-A receptacles on a 20-A circuit shall not supply a load greater than 12 A for appliances; 20-A receptacles on a 20-A circuit shall be limited to a 16-A load.
8. Rating of a single piece of cord-connected utilization equipment shall not exceed 24 A when connected to a 30-A circuit.
9. For additional restrictions and data on branch circuit use and application, see *NEC* Table 210-24.

on general-purpose branch circuits. These are excerpted and summarized in Table 28.6.

28.12 BRANCH CIRCUIT DESIGN GUIDELINES: RESIDENTIAL

1. The *NEC* (1999 edition) requires for residences sufficient circuitry to supply a load of 3 V-A/ft^2 (32.3 V-A/m^2) in the building, excluding unfinished spaces such as porches, garages, and basements. Using Table 28.5, which already includes a 20% derating of circuits to provide for continuous loading, this works out to 480 ft^2 (45 m^2) on a 15-A circuit (1440 V-A) and 640 ft^2 (60 m^2) on a 20-A circuit (1920 V-A). Allowing for some expansion, such as a finished basement or enclosing a porch to expand the living area, results in a good-practice recommendation of 400–480 ft^2 (37–45 m^2) per 15-A circuit and 530–640 ft^2 (49–60 m^2) per 20-A circuit.

   These good-practice figures normally provide enough circuits for all but the most heavily loaded residences. If actual design analysis indicates the need for additional circuits, however, they clearly must be provided. The illustrative examples in *NEC* Chapter 20 are based on absolute minimum requirements.
2. The *NEC* (Article 210-11) requires a minimum of two 20-A appliance branch circuits (Fig. 28.18*b*) to feed all the receptacle outlets in the kitchen, pantry, breakfast, and/or dining room and similar areas, and *only* these outlets. This is because any receptacle in these areas is a potential appliance outlet and must be fed and circuited as such. Permanently installed appliances such as a food disposal, dishwasher, fan hood, and the like may *not* be connected to these appliance circuits. An exception is made to permit clock outlets to be fed from these circuits. Furthermore, the *NEC* requires that all kitchen outlets intended to serve countertop areas must be fed from at least two of these appliance circuits (these circuits may also feed appliance outlets in the other spaces specified previously). Thus, not all countertop workspace will be deenergized by the failure of a single circuit.

   Although the code does not limit the number of appliance outlets to be wired into each circuit, good practice dictates that these

receptacles be circuited with no more than four such outlets per 20-A circuit. This in turn usually requires more than the code minimum of two appliance circuits. Among other requirements, the *NEC* states that for kitchen and dining areas:

- No point on a wall behind a countertop shall be more than 24 in. (610 mm) from an outlet.
- All countertop convenience receptacles shall be of the GFCI type.

3. Locations utilized primarily or frequently for workshop-type activities, such as garages, utility rooms, and basements, should be provided with receptacles wired in appliance-type circuits (i.e., 20-A receptacles on 20-A circuits), with no more than four such receptacles to a circuit. Receptacles in garages, sheds, crawlspaces, below-grade finished or unfinished basements, and outdoors must be of the GFCI type. (For exceptions to this GFCI rule, see *NEC* Article 210-8.)
4. Additional circuits similar to appliance circuits (no fixed lighting outlets) should be furnished to supply one outlet in each bedroom of a house that is not centrally air-conditioned. Such outlets are intended for window air conditioners. (Good design practice may provide a window arrangement, attic ventilation, insulation, sun screening, and the like that can reduce the demand for these noisy energy users.)
5. The *NEC* requires that at least one 20-A appliance circuit supply the laundry outlets only. This requirement is good practice. If an electric clothes dryer is anticipated (and it should be unless it is definitely known that a gas dryer will be used), an individual branch circuit (distinct from the laundry outlets circuit(s) and rated for the load) should be supplied to serve this load via a heavy-duty receptacle. (Facilities for hanging clothes should be provided for those who prefer not to consume electrical energy on this simple task.)
6. Lay out convenience receptacles so that no point on a wall is more than 6 ft (1.8 m) from an outlet. Use 20-A, grounding-type receptacles only. Do not combine receptacles and switches into a single outlet except where convenience of use dictates high mounting of receptacles.
7. Circuit the lighting and receptacles so that each room has parts of at least two circuits. This includes basements and garages.
8. Avoid placing all the lighting in a building on a single circuit.
9. Supply at least one 20-A wall-mounted receptacle adjacent to each bathroom lavatory (sink) location. Such receptacles must have GFCI protection. They should be fed from a 20-A circuit that energizes only such bathroom receptacles. Bathroom lighting, exhaust fan, heaters, or other outlets should not be connected to the bathroom receptacle circuit.
10. Provide at least two GFCI-protected and weatherproof receptacles on the outside of the house, one in front and one at the rear. Switch control of the outside receptacles from *inside* the house is a convenience.
11. In rooms without overhead lighting, provide switch control for one-half of a strategically located receptacle that is intended to supply a lamp (see Fig. 28.19 for the wiring arrangement in such a case).
12. Provide switch control for closet lights. Pull chains are a nuisance (but are considerably cheaper).
13. In bedrooms, supply two duplex outlets at either side of the likely bed location to accommodate electric blankets, clocks, radios, lamps, and other such appliances.
14. A disconnecting means, readily accessible and within sight of the controlled item, must be provided for electric ranges, cooktops, and ovens. It is good practice to utilize a small kitchen panel recessed into a kitchen wall to control the large kitchen appliances and provide the required disconnecting means.

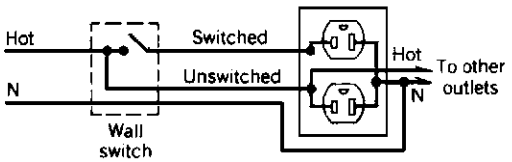


Fig. 28.19 *Split wiring of a duplex receptacle. The upper half is switch-controlled; the lower half is "hot" all the time. This allows wall switch control of a lamp or another device while keeping part of the receptacle live for independent use. Notice that the receptacle is mounted with the grounding pole at the top. This is the safest way to install receptacles because a metallic item such as a paper clip falling on an inserted cap will contact the ground pole only.*

15. Perimeter lighting, sensor control, and manual override can do much to lessen vandalism and discourage prowlers.
16. To accommodate the very rapidly increasing number of persons who work at home (either full- or part-time) every study and work room or, in their absence, every large master bedroom should be electrically equipped to double as a home office. This room or area should be supplied *minimally* with these electrical services:
    - Six duplex 15-A or 20-A receptacles connected to at least two different circuits, one of which should serve no other outlets. All of these receptacles should be equipped with appropriate surge suppression (see Section 26.37).
    - An additional separate insulated and isolated ground wire, connected only at the service point, should be run to the box(es) containing two of the receptacles required in the preceding point, and there terminated, clearly marked, and labeled. These grounds are intended for possible use with isolated ground (IG) receptacles, if it is found that the normal receptacles are too electrically noisy.
    - Two telephone jacks in recessed boxes should be provided in the area. In addition, an empty ¾-in. (19-mm) conduit from the telephone entry service point to an empty 4-in. (100-mm) square box in the area should be provided. An appropriate surge suppressor must be provided for the incoming telephone service lines.
    - For lighting design of this area, refer to the discussion on visual display terminal (VDT) lighting in Chapter 16.

A tabulation of residential electrical equipment, including recommended circuit and receptacle descriptions, is shown in Table 28.7. A complete residential wiring plan for a small house is shown in Fig. 28.20. Although residential plans are frequently left uncircuited, a completely circuited layout is shown here for informational purposes. The plan does not show the electrical equipment recommended for a home office that is described in item 16 for two reasons:

1. The plan is so compact that there is no single preferable location for the numerous outlets required.
2. Adding the required outlets to any selected area would clutter the plan to the point of illegibility.

28.13 BRANCH CIRCUIT DESIGN GUIDELINES: NONRESIDENTIAL

(a) Schools

Because schools comprise an assembly of varied-use spaces, including instruction, lab, shop, assembly, office, and gymnasium, plus special areas such as swimming pools, photographic labs, and so on, it is not possible to generalize on branch circuit design considerations except for the following:

1. To accommodate the audio-visual equipment frequently used in classrooms, 20-A outlets wired two to a circuit should be placed at the front and back of each such room. A similar receptacle, wired six or eight to a circuit, should be placed on each remaining wall.
2. To accommodate computers, a detailed layout of the space is required showing the proposed computer locations. A two-section surface-mounted or recessed raceway on the wall behind the computers should be provided. The power section should have two duplex 20-A receptacles at each computer station, wired on alternate circuits. The second section of the raceway is intended for low-voltage wiring, such as network cabling, and wiring to computer peripherals. Providing for good cable management can substantially improve the appearance and maintainability of this critical area.
3. Switching for lighting should provide:
    - High–low levels for energy conservation and to permit low-level lighting for screen viewing. With fluorescent lighting, this can be accomplished by alternate ballast wiring and switching, thus avoiding the high cost of dimming equipment. The multiple modes of classroom use must be considered when establishing switching scenarios.
    - Separate switching of the lighting fixtures on the window side of the room, which is often well lit by daylight. Control should be initiated automatically by a photocell (see Section 16.3).

TABLE 28.7 Load, Circuit, and Receptacle Chart for Residential Electrical Equipment

Appliance	Typical Connected Volt-Amperes[a]	Volts	Wires[b]	NEMA Circuit Breaker or Fuse, amp	Outlets on Circuits	Device[d] and Configuration (see Fig. 26.42)
KITCHEN						
Range[e, c, i]	12,000	115/230	3 #6	60	1	14–60R
Oven (built-in)[c, i]	4,500	115/230	3 #10	30	1	14–30R
Range tops[c, i]	6,000	115/230	3 #10	30	1	14–30R
Dishwasher[c]	1,200	115	2 #12	20	1	5–20R
Waste disposer[c]	300	115	2 #12	20	1	5–20R
Microwave oven	1,000	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	5–20R
Refrigerator[f]	300	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	5–20R
Freezer[f]	350	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	5–20R
LAUNDRY						
Washing machine	1,200	115	2 #12	20	1	5–20R
Dryer[c, i]	5,000	115/230	3 #10	30	1	14–30R
Hand iron[e]	1,650	115	2 #12	20	1	5–20R
LIVING AREAS						
Workshops[e, j]	1,500	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	5–20R
Portable heater[e]	1,600	115	2 #12	20	1	5–20R
Television	300	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	5–20R
Audio center[g]	350	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	5–20R
VCR[g]	150	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	5–20R
Personal computer and peripherals[g, h]	1,000	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	5–20R
FIXED UTILITIES						
Fixed lighting	1,200	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	—
Air conditioner, ¾ hp[i,j]	1,200	115	2 #12	20 or 30	1	5–20R 14–30R
Central air conditioner[c, i, j]	5,000	115/230	3 #10	40	1	—
Sump pump[j]	300	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	—
Heating plant (i.e., forced-air furnace)[j,k]	600	115	2 #12	20	1	—
Attic fan[j]	300	115	2 #12	20	1 or more	5–20R

[a]Wherever possible, use the actual equipment rating.

[b]Number of wires does not include equipment grounding wires. Ground wire is No. 12 AWG for a 20-amp circuit and No. 10 AWG for 30- and 50-amp circuits.

[c]For a discussion of disconnect requirements, see *NEC* Article 422.

[d]Equipment ground is provided in each receptacle.

[e]Heavy-duty appliances regularly used at one location should have a separate circuit. Only one such unit should be attached to a single circuit at the same time.

[f]A separate circuit serving only one other outlet is recommended.

[g]Surge protection recommended.

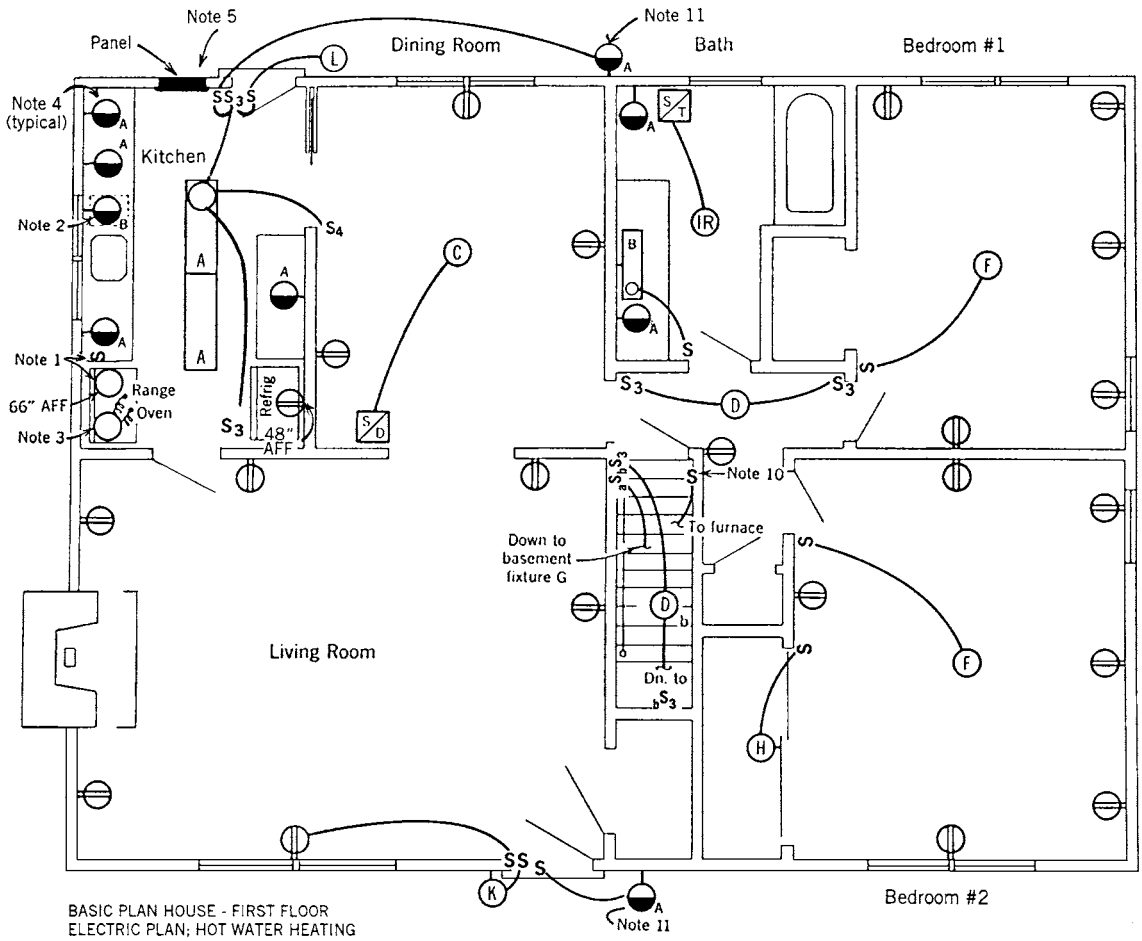
[h]Isolated ground may be required.

[i]A separate circuit is recommended.

[j]It is recommended that all motor-driven devices be protected by a local motor-protection element unless motor protection is built into the device.

[k]Connect through the disconnect switch equipped with a motor-protection element.

4. Provide appropriate outlets for all special equipment in labs, shops, rooms with cooking activities, and the like.
5. Use heavy-duty devices and key-operated switches for public area lighting (corridors, etc.), plastic instead of glass in fixtures, and vandal-proof equipment wherever possible. All panels *must* be locked and should be in locked closets.
6. The *NEC* requires sufficient branch circuitry to provide a minimum of 3 V-A/ft^2 (32.3 V-A/m^2)



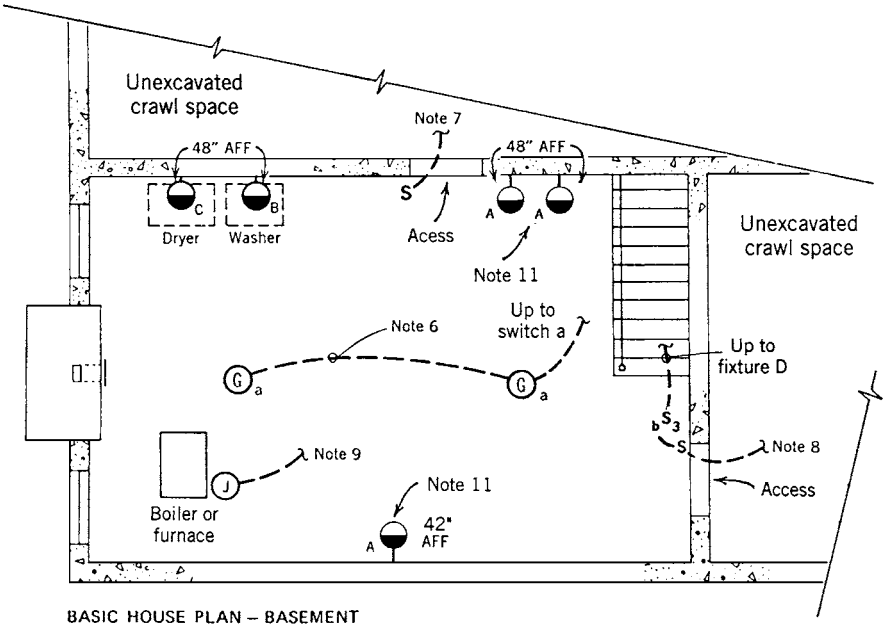
Fixture Schedule: see Fig. 28.20 c
Symbol List: see Fig. 28.20 d
Circuited Plan: see Fig. 28.20 e, f
Plan, Schedule: see Fig. 28.20 g

Notes:

1. Switch and outlet for exhaust fan. Switch wall mtd. above counter-blacksplash. Outlet with blank cover mounted adjacent to fan wall opening. Separate switch may be omitted if fan is supplied with integral switch.
2. Dishwasher receptacle wall mtd. behind unit, 6" AFF.
3. Range and oven outlet boxes wall mtd., 36" AFF. Flexible connection to units.
4. Receptacles at countertop locations to be wall mounted 2" above backsplash.
5. Max. ht. of top c/b to be 78" AFF.
6. Wiring shown as run exposed indicates absence of finished ceiling in basement level. All BX to be run through framing members. Attachment below ceiling joists not permitted.
7. Connect to two type G fixtures ceiling mounted at $^1/_3$ points of crawl space.
8. Connect to one type G fixture at center of crawl space.
9. Connect to shutdown switch at top of stairs. Boiler control wiring by others. See Note 10.
10. Boiler wiring safety disconnect. Provide RED wall plate, clearly marked "BOILER ON–OFF."
11. Equipped with self-closing gasket WP cover.

(*a*)

Fig. 28.20 *Electrical plan of a small house. (a) Layout of lighting and electrical devices for the main floor. (b) Layout of lighting and electrical devices for the basement. (c) Lighting fixture schedule. (d) Symbols and abbreviations. (e) Circuited plan, main floor of house. (f) Circuited plan, basement. (g) Panel schedule for the house.*



BASIC HOUSE PLAN – BASEMENT
ELECTRIC PLAN; H.W. HEATING
EQUIPMENT AND DEVICE LAYOUT

(*b*)

LIGHTING FIXTURE SCHEDULE			
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	MANUFACTURER	REMARKS
A	48" L X 12" W X 4" DEEP NOMINAL, 2 LAMP/FLUORESCENT, WRAPAROUND ACRYLIC LENS, 40 W (NOM.) T8 LAMPS. SURFACE MTD.	BRITE–LITE CO. CAT. #2740/KFF OR EQUAL	4" DEPTH MAXIMUM
B	24" L, 1 LAMP 20W FLUOR. FIXTURE, WRAPAROUND WHITE DIFFUSER, MOUNT ABOVE MEDICINE CABINET.	BRITE–LITE CO. CAT. #1/20/BFF OR EQUAL	MAX. MTG. HT. 78" TO ℄.
C	ADJUSTABLE HEIGHT PENDANT INCANDESCENT, 3–75W MAX., BUILT–IN 3–POSITION SWITCH.	HOMELAMP CO. CAT. #3/75/DRP OR EQUAL	———
D	10" D. DRUM–TYPE FIXTURE, WHITE GLASS DIFFUSER, CENTER LOCK–UP, 2–60W INCAND. MAX., SURF. MTD.	BRITELITE CO. CAT. #2/60/HF OR EQUAL	6" MAX. DEPTH.
F	12" D. DRUM FIXTURE, CONCEALED HINGE ON OPAL GLASS DIFFUSER FOR RELAMPING WITHOUT GLASS REMOVAL, 2–75W INCAND. MAX. SURFACE MTD.	DENMARK LIGHTING SPECIAL UNIT #374821	NO SUBSTITUTION WILL BE ACCEPTED.
G	PORCELAIN LAMPHOLDER, PULL CHAIN WITH WIRE GUARD, 100W. INCAND. SURF. MTD.	———	———
H	SAME AS TYPE G, EXCEPT W/O GUARD.	———	———
K	DECORATIVE OUTDOOR LANTERN, MAX. 150W INCAND., WALL MTD. 84" AFF TO ℄.	TO BE CHOSEN BY OWNER	———
L	UTILITY OUTDOOR LIGHT, ANODIZED ALUMINUM BODY AND CYLINDRICAL OPAL GLASS DIFFUSER. 1–100W INCAND. MAX. 84" AFF TO ℄.	UTIL–LITE CO. CAT. #1/100/BP OR EQUAL	IF VANDALISM IS OF CONCERN, SUBST. PLASTIC DIFFUSER.
IR	RECESSED FIXTURE WITH 150 W INFRARED HEAT LAMP	HEAT-LIGHT CO.	———

(*c*)

Fig. 28.20 *(Continued)*

SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

BX CABLES RUN CONCEALED; TICS INDICATE NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS EXCLUDING GROUND WIRES. 2 #12 + BARE GROUND, UON

SAME AS ABOVE EXCEPT RUN EXPOSED.

WIRING RUN TURNING DOWN; WIRING TURNING UP

HOME RUN TO PANEL; ARROWS AND NUMERALS IDENTIFY CIRCUITS; TICS INDICATE WIRING – AS NOTED ABOVE.

OUTLET BOX AND FINAL CONNECTION TO EQUIPMENT WITH FLEXIBLE CONDUIT (OR BX).

$(D)_a$ CLG. OUTLET WITH INCANDESCENT LTG. FIXTURE D, SWITCH CONTROL – 'a'.

(H) WALL OUTLET W/INCAND. FIXT. 'H', M.HT. SHOWN.

(A) CLG. OUTLET W/FLUOR. FIXT. 'A'.

[B] WALL OUTLET W/FLUOR. FIXT. 'B', M.HT. SHOWN.

(J) JUNCTION BOX

DUPLEX CONVENIENCE RECEPTACLE, 20 A, 2P, 3W, 125 V. GROUNDING, WALL MTD., VERTICAL, ℄ 12" AFF NEMA 5–20 R.

$\bigcirc_A$ DUPLEX CONVENIENCE RECEPTACLES, 15 A, 2P, 3W, 125 V, GROUNDING. W/INTEGRAL GFCI

$\bigcirc_B$ SINGLE RECEPTACLE, 20 A, 2P, 3W, GND'G., NEMA 5–20 R.

$\bigcirc_C$ SINGLE RECEPTACLE, 30 A. 125/250 V. 3 POLE–4 WIRE GROUNDING NEMA 14–30 R; SUPPLIED WITH MATCHING CAP

S_a SINGLE POLE SWITCH, 15 A, 125 V, ℄ 50" AFF, UON, CONTROLLING OUTLET(S) 'a'.

$_aS_3$ SWITCH, 3 WAY, 15 A, 125 V, ℄ 50" AFF, UON, CONTROLLING OUTLETS 'a'.

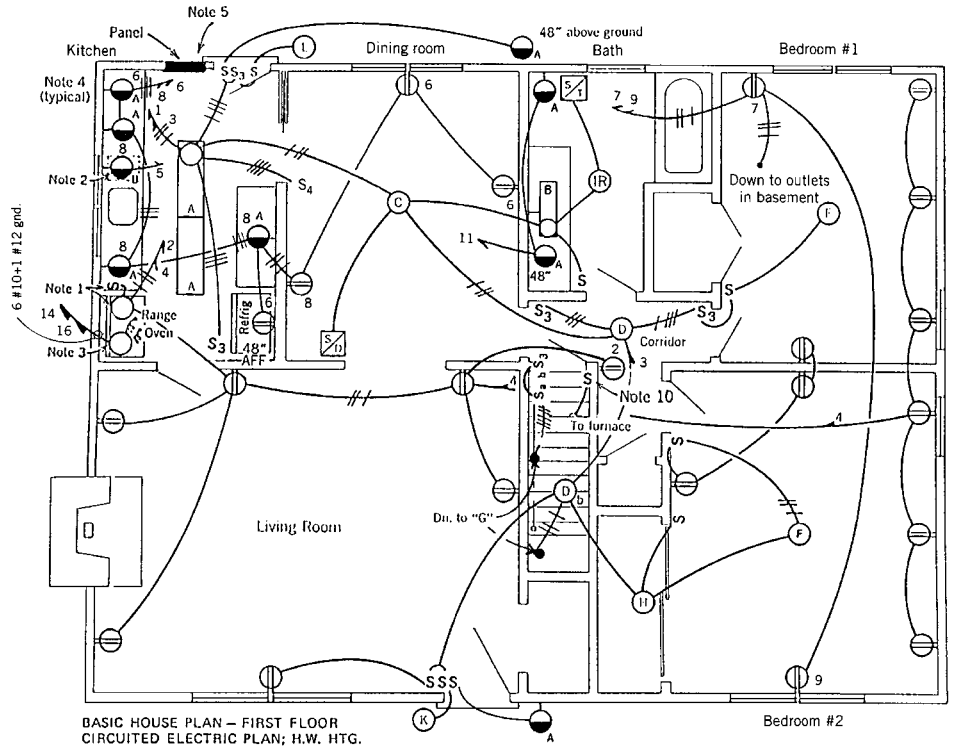
S/T MANUAL TIMER SWITCH, 1 SET 15 AMP N.O. CONTACTS.

S/D OUTLET BOX MTD. SWITCH AND DIMMER, INCAND. LOAD ONLY, 600 W MAXIMUM. ℄ 50" AFF.

FLUSH MTD. PANELBOARD;

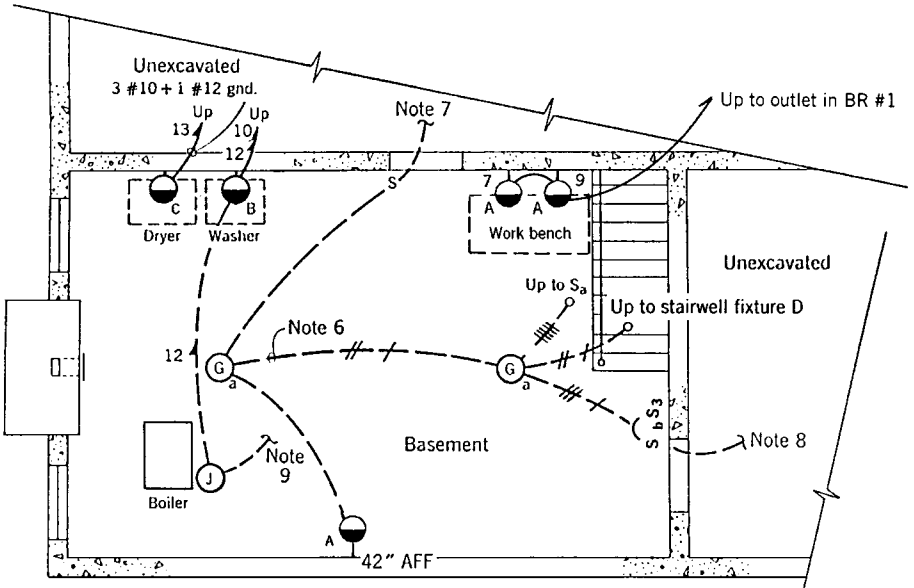
AFF	ABOVE FINISHED FLOOR
MH	MOUNTING HEIGHT
T	THERMOSTAT
UON	UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED
GFCI	GROUND-FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTER
WP	WEATHERPROOF
NO	NORMALLY OPEN

(*d*)



(*e*)

Fig. 28.20 *(Continued)*



BASIC HOUSE PLAN – BASEMENT
CIRCUITED ELECTRIC PLAN,
H.W. HTG.

(*f*)

Panel schedule

Circ. no.	Description	LOAD V-A.	Circuit breakers	Load V-A	Description	Circ. no.
1	LTG – {Kit. Dr., Br. #1, Hall, Outside, bath + Φ	1045 1 R	20 1 2 20	30 6 R	Outlets – LR. & corridor + Exh. fan	2
3	LTG – {Outside Lr., Stair. Br. #2, Bsmt. + 6 Φ	935 6 R	20 A 3 4 20	6 R	Outlets – BR. 1 & 2	4
5	Dishwasher	1500	20 5 6 20	1500	Outlets – Kit., Dr.	6
7	Outlets – BR 1, Bsmt	2 R	20 7 8 20	1500	Outlets – Kit., Dr.	8
9	Outlets – Bsmt., BR 2	2 R	20 9 10 20	1500	Laundry outlet – Bsmt.	10
11	Bathroom outlets	2 R	20 11 12 20	1300	Boiler or furnace	12
13	Spare	—	20 13 14 30 A 2 P	6Kw {	Range	14
15	Spare	—	20 15 16			
17	Clothes dryer	5Kw	30 A 17 18 30 A 2 P	4800w	Oven	16
	Space for 2 – 1P or 1 – 2 pole		19 20 21 22 23 24		Space for 1 – 2P or 2 – 1 pole	
Load total – phase A					Load total, phase B	

Panel Data
Mains, GND. BUS: 150 A MNS., 60 A GND. BUS
Main C/B 150/100
Branch C/B INT. CAP. AMP. 10,000
Mounting – recess
Remarks: Front suitable for painting

Voltage 120/208
1 PH. 3 wire

(*g*)

Fig. 28.20 *(Continued)*

for general lighting in schools (refer to *NEC* Article 220). Unlike the value for residential occupancy, this figure does *not* include receptacles. Receptacles are calculated separately at 180 V-A each for ordinary convenience outlets.

(b) Office Space

1. In small office spaces (less than 400 ft^2 [37 m^2]), provide either one convenience outlet for every 40 ft^2 (3.7 m^2) or one outlet for every 10 linear ft (3 m) of wall space, whichever is greater. In larger office spaces, provide one outlet for every 100 to 125 ft^2 (9.3 to 11.6 m^2) beyond the initial 400 ft^2 (37 m^2). These outlets are intended for miscellaneous electrical devices, in addition to anticipating the constantly increasing number of data system accessories. In addition, provide at *every* desk (on an adjacent wall, in a "power pole," or in the floor) at least one duplex 20-A receptacle for a computer. These receptacles should be circuited at no more than six to a 20-A branch circuit, and less if the specific equipment to be powered so dictates. Figure 28.21 shows one possible circuiting arrangement for the room layouts shown in Fig. 28.12. Although other arrangements are possible, the net result is the same (see also Fig. 28.22).
2. Corridors should have a 20-A, 120-V outlet every 50 ft (15 m) to provide power for cleaning and waxing machines.
3. As with all nonresidential buildings, convenience receptacles are figured at 180 V-A each.
4. Only specification grade equipment should be used.

(c) Industrial Spaces

These areas are so specialized that no meaningful general guidelines can be given.

(d) Stores

In stores, good practice requires at least one convenience outlet receptacle for every 300 ft^2 (28 m^2) in addition to outlets required for loads such as lamps, show windows, and demonstration appliances.

28.14 LOAD TABULATION

While circuiting loads, a panel schedule is drawn up that lists the circuit numbers, load descriptions, wattage (actually, volt-amperes), and the current rating and number of poles of the circuit-protective device feeding each circuit. Spare circuits are included to the extent that the designer considers them necessary and consistent with design intent (including budget), but normally no less than 20% of the number of active circuits. Finally, spaces are left for future circuit breakers in approximately

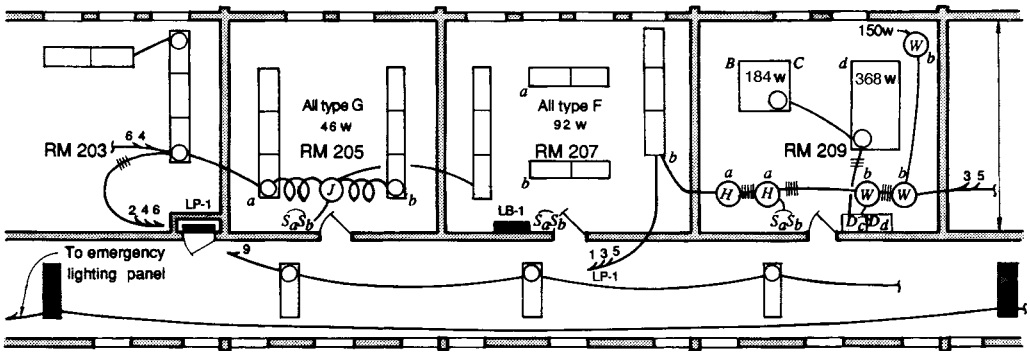


Fig. 28.21 *Alternative methods of circuiting are shown in different rooms. Room 205 shows the actual junction box location, with flexible connections to the box at each fixture. Room 207 shows circuit numbers and switch designations only; the placement of junction boxes is understood, and conduit runs are omitted for clarity and because they usually are not representative of the actual field installation. Room 209 shows an outlet box at each fixture, with schematic conduit connections. All of these methods are in common use.*

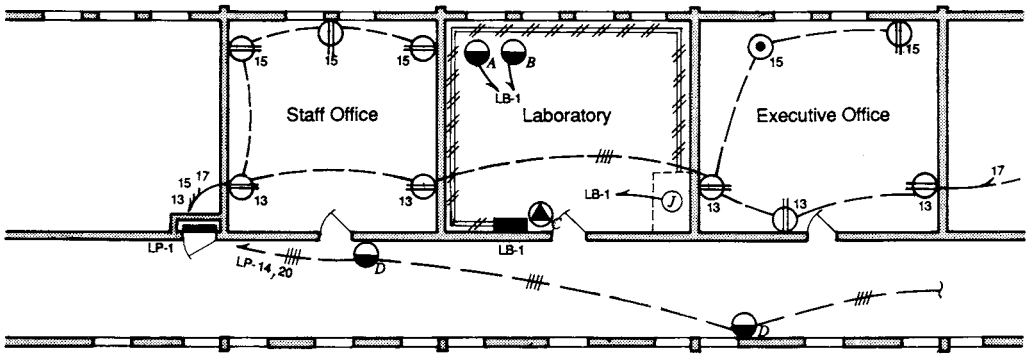


Fig. 28.22 *Typical receptacle circuiting of several rooms in an office–laboratory building. Lighting (see Fig. 28.21) and power (receptacles) are shown on separate plans to avoid crowding. See Fig. 28.15 for symbols and Fig. 28.12 for notes. Lighting in offices is recessed; lighting in labs is surface-mounted for flexibility. Note the double circuiting of the type-D receptacles.*

the same quantity as the number of spare circuits, but always so as to round off the total number of circuits.

Panelboards are normally manufactured with an even number of poles. Thus, if a panel had, with spares, 21 poles, the designer would ask for (at least) three spaces, to give a 24-circuit box. A typical panel schedule is shown in Fig. 28.23, which serves the laboratory of Figs. 28.21 and 28.22.

In calculating panel loads, the following rules apply:

1. Each specific appliance, device, lighting fixture, or other load is taken at its nameplate rating, except certain kitchen and laundry appliances for which the *NEC* allows application of a demand factor (see *NEC* Article 220).
2. Each convenience outlet, in other than residential spaces, is counted as 1.5 A (180 V-A).
3. Loads for special areas and devices such as show window lighting, heavy-duty lampholders, and multioutlet assemblies are taken at the figures given in *NEC* Article 220.
4. Spare circuits are figured at approximately the same load as the average active circuits (1200 to 1500 V-A).
5. Spaces are not counted in the load.
6. Continuous loads such as lighting are calculated at 125% of their actual value. See *NEC* Articles 210-19(a) and 210-20(a), which refer to load calculations for conductor sizing and feeder overcurrent protection, respectively, for combinations of continuous and noncontinuous loads. These calculations apply to panel load calculations as well and are best accomplished by adding 25% to the panelboard load, as shown in Fig. 28.23.

In calculating total panel loads, as shown in Fig. 28.23, no demand factor may be applied except as specifically stated in the *NEC* (see *NEC* Articles 220-11 and 220-13). This is true despite the knowledge that most often the usage will be such that the average load will be lower than the maximum demand (see Section 28.17 for multipanel feeders). If it is known that certain loads will not or cannot be used simultaneously, the load total should reflect only the larger of the two. Thus, heating and cooling loads are *generally* not concurrent. Nor is building night floodlighting concurrent with the business office load, but it may be with general interior lighting. Note in Fig. 28.20*g* that 2-pole loads (208 single-phase) appear in two columns. Similarly, 3-phase loads would appear in three columns. Also, note that the phase loads are *not equal*. It is the responsibility of the designer (or contractor) to circuit the loads so that the phases are as closely balanced in load as possible. If this is not done, one phase will carry considerably more current than the others. Because the panel feeder must be sized for the maximum phase current, this may lead to an oversized feeder and therefore a waste of money.

Once the loads have been tabulated, balanced, and totaled by phase, the maximum current is calculated. A portion of the spare capacity available in

No.	ELEC. PANEL-LP-1 120/208 V 3Ø 4W LOAD	LOAD IN WATTS ϕA	ϕB	ϕC
1	Lighting	1200		
2	Lighting	1200		
3	Lighting		1450	
4	Lighting		1050	
5	Lighting			1100
6	Lighting			1200
7	Lighting	800		
8	Lighting	1100		
9	Lighting		700	
10	Lighting		1050	
11	Lighting			1000
12	Lighting			1200
13	Receptacle[2]	900		
14	Receptacle[3]	900		
15	Receptacle		900	
16	Receptacle		900	
17	Spare			1200
18	Spare			1200
19	Spare	1200		
20	Receptacle[4]		1000	
				1000
21	Spare	1200		
			1200	
22-26	Spaces only			
	25% addition for			
	continuos loads[5]	1025	1063	1125
	Phase totals	9525	9313	9025
	Panel total		27863	V-A
	Max ϕ current		77 amp	
	25% spare capacity	~	20 amp	(Future)
	Max. Phase 1		97 amps	

Main breaker 225A 3pole (see text example 17.1, section 17.18)
Trip 100 A
Feeder size 4 #2 THW in 1¼"C.

NOTES:
1. All C/B 1P, 50A frame, 20A trip except ccts 20 and 21, which are 2P, 50AF/20AT.
2. 5 receptacles @ 1.5A each.
3. Corridor receptacle; 120 V section.
4. Corridor receptacle; 208 V section.
5. See Section 17.15

Fig. 28.23 *Schedule for lighting panel LP-1 (see Fig. 28.22).*

the branch circuits is added to the total as the basis for the calculation of the feeder load. This spare capacity, shown in Table 28.5, is between 25% and 50%. The exact amount to be initially added in feeder sizing is developed in the ensuing discussion.

28.15 SPARE CAPACITY

Load calculations for residential occupancies and other spaces are detailed in *NEC* Article 220, and examples are given in Chapter 20 of the *NEC*. Because these calculations are specialized (but routine) and are covered there in detail, they are not repeated here. Code requirements, it must be remembered, are minimum; a design solution to meet a client's needs often exceeds these basic requirements.

Once the panel load totals have been determined as detailed previously, the next step is to size the conductors feeding the panel. To do this, an examination of the spare capacity of the panel and of the feeders is necessary in order that the system design be consistent, giving equal capacity for future growth in all of its components. Considering the panel circuitry first, let us examine the effect of load expansion, including spares and spaces (Table 28.8).

As noted in Section 28.11, spare capacity is built into the branch circuitry *and* into the panels. Most often, expansion is accomplished by additional loading on some circuits and by adding new circuits via spare circuit breakers in the panel. Table 28.8 gives the *ultimate* capacity of the panel—that is, fully loaded circuits and fully utilized spares and spaces. Because this ultimate capacity is rarely achieved, panel feeders need only be sized for initial loads as detailed in Section 28.14, and provision made for rewiring to meet anticipated expansion by one of the techniques listed in Section 28.16.

These results can be summarized as follows: For panels in buildings expecting limited expansion, for which branch circuits are loaded to 80% of capacity (25% *branch circuit* expansion; see Table 28.5, note *e*), the ultimate panel load without new conduit work (i.e., merely by filling out circuits), is 1.5 L, or 50% beyond the initial load. By adding breakers in the spaces, this load can be expanded to 75% beyond the initial load. The corresponding figures for panels that are lightly loaded (66% capacity, i.e., 50% branch circuit expansion, as in Table 28.5, note *f*), in anticipation of considerable load growth, are 80% to 110%, respectively. These results are summarized in Table 28.8.

28.16 FEEDER CAPACITY

To achieve economy, the panel feeder must accommodate the initial load plus some portion of the future load. Spare capacity in feeders (to accommodate a considerable portion of the panel spare capacity, as shown in Table 28.8) is provided by one or more of the following procedures:

TABLE 28.8 Panel Initial and Expanded Loads[a]

	Panels in Facilities Expecting Limited Expansion; Circuits Initially Loaded to Give 25% Expandability (See Table 28.5)	Panels in Facilities Expecting Extensive Expansion; Circuits Initially Loaded to Give 50% Expandability (See Table 28.5)
Initial load	100%	100%
Initial plus spares	120%	120%
Load after all circuits including spares are loaded to maximum allowable	150%	180%
Load after utilizing 20% spaces also	175%	210%

[a]For development of these values, see McGuinness et al. (1980), pp. 690–691.

1. Provide feeder (and conduit) capacity initially to handle the entire eventual load. This method is the most expensive, requiring an initial outlay for (potentially) no return, and is rarely used.
2. Provide feeder capacity for the initial load plus spare capacity, with properly sized conduit. Conduit is sized for type THW or RHW without covering. This method yields limited spare capacity.
3. Provide feeder capacity for the initial load plus spare capacity, with conduit oversized by one size. Size conduit for type THW wire, which is very widely used because of its attractive price and excellent electrical properties. Some additional costs are entailed here.

   If the initial wiring is done with type TW wire, the effect is approximately the same as that of oversizing the conduit by one size and wiring initially with THW wire. This is the result of the lower ampacity rating of TW compared to THW, resulting in a larger conduit size for the same initial ampacity. Exact figures for each can be worked out with the help of Tables 27.2A, and 27.2B, and conduit capacity in Table 28.9, or by using the tables in *NEC* Article 310 and Chapter 20.
4. Provide feeder capacity for the initial load plus spare capacity and oversize conduit by *two* sizes. This yields most of the capacity necessary in facilities anticipating large expansion.
5. Provide for the initial load plus spare capacity, and install an empty conduit for future use. This method is expensive because of the high conduit cost and is advisable only infrequently.

In approaches 2, 3, and 4, the future capacity beyond that initially supplied is handled by the use of larger-gauge wire in the existing conduit. To examine exactly what these alternatives provide in spare capacity, Table 28.10 tabulates the maximum ampacity of various sizes of conduits and the future capacity obtainable. Table 28.9 is taken directly from the *NEC*. Note from Table 28.10 that simply by rewiring, up to 30% additional capacity can be obtained, whereas if the conduit had been oversized, the additional capacity would be 35% to 146%.

Answering the question of how large to make the feeder for a given panel load requires balancing the future panel load, the initial cost of feeder, and the future capacity of existing conduit. It is best to avoid the installation of empty conduits because this is expensive. Rewiring, however, is relatively inexpensive, and oversizing conduit is the method of choice if rapid expansion is anticipated.

Referring to Table 28.10, note that normal design uses THW cable. Design with T or TW is, in effect, a first step in oversizing conduit and is generally not economical. The second step is a deliberate oversizing of conduit that results in much increased conduit ampacity, as reflected by the figures in the table. Using these values in practice requires that the designer juggle cable and conduit costs against anticipated load growth to arrive at the most economical long-term solution. Applying these numbers to concepts previously developed, suggests:

1. Buildings designed for 25% branch circuit expansion (see Table 28.5) have a panel capacity of 1.75 times the load (Table 28.8). If it is desired to design the panel feeder to carry the full expansion possible, then calculate the feeder on the basis of panel load plus 20% spares and oversize the feeder by 20%. This gives a feeder capacity of

$$1.20 \times 1.20 = 1.44 \times \text{initial load}$$

TABLE 28.9 Maximum Number of Conductors in Trade Sizes of Rigid Metal Conduit

Type Letters	Conductor Size AWG, kcmil	Conduit Trade Size in. ½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
TW, THW, RHW,	6	1	3	5	8	11	18				
RHH (without	4	1	1	3	6	8	14	20			
outer covering),	2	1	1	2	4	6	10	14			
and THHW	1	1	1	1	3	4	7	10			
	0		1	1	2	3	6	8	13		
	00		1	1	2	3	5	7	11		
	000		1	1	1	2	4	6	9	13	
	0000			1	1	1	3	5	8	10	
	250			1	1	1	3	4	6	8	11
	300			1	1	1	2	3	5	7	9
	350				1	1	1	3	5	6	8
	400				1	1	1	3	4	6	7
	500				1	1	1	2	3	5	6
	600				1	1	1	1	3	4	5
THHN	6	2	4	7	12	16	27				
	4	1	2	4	7	10	16	24			
	2	1	1	3	5	7	12	17	26		
	1	1	1	1	4	5	9	12	19	26	
XHHW (4–500 kcmil)	0	1	1	1	3	4	7	10	16		
	00		1	1	2	3	6	9	13		
	000		1	1	1	3	5	7	11	15	
	0000		1	1	1	2	4	6	9	12	16
	250			1	1	1	3	5	7	10	13
	300			1	1	1	3	4	6	9	11
	350			1	1	1	2	3	6	7	10
	400			1	1	1	2	3	5	7	9
	500				1	1	1	2	4	5	7
	600				1	1	1	1	3	4	

Source: Extracted from the *National Electrical Code*.

Table 28.10 indicates that rewiring adds another 20% on average. This gives

$$1.20 \times 1.44 = 1.73 \times \text{initial load}$$

which corresponds very closely to the 1.75 desired.

2. For a building with 50% branch circuit expansion, utilizing the full panel space capacity creates an ultimate panel capacity of 2.1 times the initial load (see Table 28.8). This is accomplished as follows: Oversize the feeder by 15% and oversize the conduit by one size. The

TABLE 28.10 Maximum Wire and Ampacity of a Conduit, and Ampacity Gain on Rewiring

Initial Conduit Size in.	Initial Installation THW Cable: Max.[a] Wire AWG/ kcmil	Initial Installation THW Cable: Max. Amperes	*Rewiring with XHHW*: Using Original Conduit: Maximum Wire	Using Original Conduit: Maximum Amperes	Using Original Conduit: Capacity Increase	Capacity Increase Having Oversized Conduit: One Size	Capacity Increase Having Oversized Conduit: Two Sizes
1½	1	130	1/0	170	30%	100%	146%
2	3/0	200	4/0	260	30%	60%	115%
2½	250	255	300	320	25%	69%	100%
3	400	335	500	430	28%	35%	81%
3½	600	420	600	475	13%	64%	—

[a]Assuming four single conductors in conduit: 3-phase conductors plus neutral.

latter step gives an average expansion of 65%. Therefore,

$$\text{feeder capacity} = 1.15 \times 1.20 \times 1.65 = 2.3$$

which is approximately the desired figure.

If, as in the case of laboratories, more than 100% expansion is anticipated (see Table 28.1), conduit should be oversized by two sizes and initial wiring oversized by approximately 25%. Feeders thus arranged will handle the new panels required to meet the anticipated expansion.

Two factors should be carefully noted here. First, the smaller conduits offer the largest expandability, although, in dollars per amperes, they are more expensive. Second, in order to take advantage of spaces in a panel, conduit stubs should be taken from the panel and extended into suspended ceilings (or another procedure used to make the panel circuitry easily accessible in the future).

28.17 PANEL FEEDER LOAD CALCULATION

EXAMPLE 28.1 Refer to Fig. 28.23. The panel is for a laboratory/office area. Because substantial expansion is anticipated, circuitry follows the bottom section of Table 28.5. The ultimate panel load would be 26 circuits at 1920 V-A = 50 kVA = 138 A. Thus, the initial feeder is sized for 115 A (4 #2 THW, 1¼ in. C), but rewiring with XHHW will allow as much as 150 A in the same conduit. A 225-A frame circuit breaker is chosen initially because eventually the trip will be raised to 150 A. ■

The *NEC* in Article 220 specifies minimum volt-amperes per unit area (V-A/ft^2 [V-A/m^2]) figures for various occupancies, for lighting, and for miscellaneous power loads. Proper design procedure therefore requires that after detailed design of an area, the actual loading should be compared to these minima, and the larger of the figures, concerning the number of circuits and feeder load, should be used. An example will help to make this clear.

EXAMPLE 28.2 Assume a single floor of an office building of 100 × 200 ft (30.5 × 61 m). Assume also that 15% of the area is corridor and storage, equally divided between the two. Calculate the load and feeder size. Assume a good-grade speculative construction venture.

SOLUTION

Office space	= 85% of 20,000 ft^2 (1860 m^2)
	= 17,000 ft^2 (1581 m^2)
Corridor and storage	= 15% of 20,000 ft^2 (1860 m^2)
	= 3,000 ft^2 (279 m^2)

The *NEC* specifies a minimum of 3½ V-A/ft^2 (37.7 V-A/m^2) for lighting and 1 V-A/ft^2 (10.8 V-A/m^2) for miscellaneous receptacles in office space. It further specifies ½ V-A/ft^2 (5.4 V-A/m^2) minimum for corridors and ¼ V-A/ft^2 (2.7 V-A/m^2) for storage. Therefore:

Lighting		
Office load:	17,000 × 3½	= 59.5 kVA
	(1581 × 37.7)	= 59.5 kVA
Corridor:	1,500 × ½	= 0.74 kVA
	(139 × 5.4)	= 0.74 kVA
Storage:	1,500 × ¼	= 0.38 kVA
	(139 × 2.7)	= 0.38 kVA
Minimum lighting load:		= 60.6 kVA

Receptacles

$$17{,}000 \times 1 \text{ V-A/ft}^2 = 17 \text{ kVA}$$
$$(1581 \times 10.8 = 17 \text{ kVA})$$

These values would then be compared to the actual design loads. Receptacles are counted at 180 V-A each, as noted in Section 28.14, item 2. If the code minima exceed the design load (as they well may if lighting is carefully designed), panels must be equipped with sufficient additional circuits to make up the difference. The number of such circuits is up to the designer, because circuit loading is not specified.

For instance, suppose that the lighting design was accomplished at 2 V-A/ft^2 (21.5 V-A/m^2). Panel circuits would have to be provided for the additional 1½ V-A/ft^2 (16.2 V-A/m^2) as follows:

$$17{,}000 \text{ ft}^2 \times 1.5 \text{ V-A/ft}^2 = 25.5 \text{ kVA}$$
$$(1581 \times 16.2 = 25.5 \text{ kVA})$$

Assuming a 30% to 50% future load expansion, we would circuit the lighting loads at approximately 1300 V-A per circuit (see Table 28.5). Therefore, we would provide

$$\frac{25{,}500 \text{ V-A}}{1{,}300 \text{ V-A}} = 20 \text{ additional circuits}$$

With respect to the minimum feeder load, the *NEC* specifies that it be increased by 25% if loads are continuous (3 or more hours). This requirement allows for breakers to heat up in panels while carrying a continuous load and is waived for circuit breakers that are ambient compensated—that is, are rated to carry 100% load. Because we have established 80% of the breaker rating as the maximum

load (see Table 28.5), we have already accounted for this factor in circuitry but must utilize it in the feeder calculation. Assuming that the code minima are the design loads, then, for feeder calculation:

Lighting load = 60.6 kVA × 125% = 75.75 kVA
Receptacle load as given = 17.0 kVA
Minimum feeder load = 92.75 kVA
25% future load = 23.2 kVA
Design feeder load = 116 kVA

Because this load would be divided among several panels, the building electrical design might be such that the panels are not all fed by one feeder (see Fig. 28.24). Assuming they are, however, the feeder would be calculated in terms of 3-phase current thus:

$$I = \frac{\text{kVA}}{0.360} = \frac{116}{0.360} = 322 \text{ A}$$

Using THW cable, a minimum of 400 MCM would be required. Conduit would be a minimum of 3 in. but might be increased to 3½ or 4 in., according to the considerations of spare capacity discussed in the previous section. ■

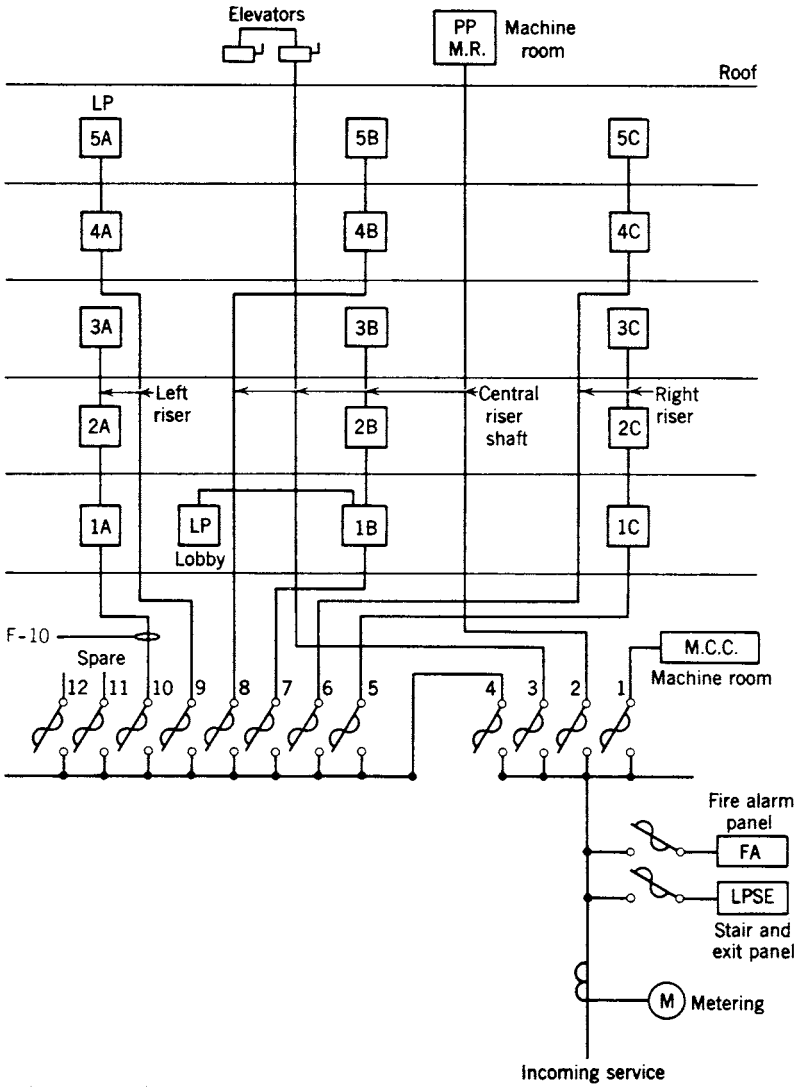


Fig. 28.24 *Typical power riser diagram. Ordinarily, the main switchboard would be shown as a large rectangle with the feeders emanating from it, and a switchboard schedule would detail the contents. Here, because of the unusual bus arrangement, the main switchboard appears as it would on a single-line diagram.*

TABLE 28.11 Current and Volt-Ampere Relationships

120-V Single-Phase	120/240-V 3-Wire	120/208-V Single-Phase, 3-Wire	120/208-V 3-Phase	277/480-V 3-Phase	277-V Single-Phase
I = *(V-A)*/120	*I* = *(V-A)*/240	*I* = *(V-A)*/208	*I* = *(V-A)*/360	*I* = *(V-A)*/830	*I* = *(V-A)*/277

Table 28.11 lists the relevant relations that will assist in computing currents. A note of caution is required regarding the use of computer programs to perform the previous calculations. It should be very clear that considerations of economy and anticipated expansion must be considered in designing a feeder system. Most software will not make such necessary comparisons and calculations unless specifically directed, and this frequently requires a multistage calculation. Most programs are arranged to select feeders on the basis of current loads, plus a specified spare capacity, without regard to expansion or economic considerations. It is important to understand the methods used by any particular computer program in order to apply its output intelligently.

28.18 HARMONIC CURRENTS

A recent phenomenon, large harmonic currents, has been the cause of considerable difficulty in modern electrical installations. Without going into detail on this highly technical subject, a brief description of the problem and its causes is given here.

Conventional electrical loads such as lighting, resistive devices (heaters), motors, and the like are linear (i.e., the load impedance remains essentially constant, regardless of instantaneous voltage). This is not the case with most electronic equipment. Computers, modems, printers, electronic lighting ballasts, variable-speed motor drives, and solid-state equipment of all types are essentially nonlinear loads. As such, they produce harmonic currents, of which the odd-order ones are additive in the power system neutral conductor. The most troublesome of these are the third harmonic and its odd multiples (9th, 15th, 21st, . . .). These currents can become so large in a modern computerized office (especially with electronic ballasts) that instead of the neutral conductors carrying the unbalanced current in a 3-phase system (zero in a balanced system), they actually carry *more* current than the phase wires.

Other serious negative effects of harmonic currents are:

- Deterioration of electronic equipment performance; continuous or sporadic computer malfunctions
- Overheating of the neutral—possibly causing neutral burnout and resulting in equipment being subjected to severe voltage variations
- Overheating and premature failure of transformers—even when the transformer nameplate rating seems adequate
- Overheating of motors because of operation with a distorted voltage waveform
- Nuisance tripping of circuit breakers and adjustable-speed drives
- Telephone interference
- Capacitor fuse blowing

The problem of destructive harmonic currents becomes progressively more severe as the amount of electronic equipment in use increases (as it does continuously).

Today, at least half of the electric load in a modern office-type facility is composed of nonlinear, harmonic-producing equipment. It follows that all such facilities, both existing and under design, must take necessary corrective measures. In the past, these measures consisted of oversizing equipment to avoid overload burnout; adding passive harmonic filters (which act to reduce harmonic content) in the electric distribution system; using isolation transformers at sensitive loads; selecting power sources with low output impedance to minimize voltage distortion; using controls that are relatively insensitive to harmonic distortion; adding meters throughout the system that measure true rms voltage and current rather than the average values shown by conventional meters; and other expensive (and essentially passive) power line conditioning (see Sections 26.35 and 26.36). In view of the increasing severity of the problem, computer-controlled variable power-conditioning equipment (called *active* line

conditioning) has become available. Such power-conditioning equipment operates in a fashion similar to that described for active noise cancellation in Section 19.28. The conditioner instantaneously and continuously analyzes the harmonic content of the line voltage and injects an equal but exactly out-of-phase voltage to cancel the harmonics and produce a pure sinusoidal voltage supply. The harmonic currents that are required by nonlinear loads are supplied by a digital signal generator. Other techniques are also used; their description is beyond the scope of this book.

In any retrofit work, the electrical designer must obtain a detailed electrical system analysis for the existing system, performed by engineers experienced in the field of power quality. Many existing systems carry as much as 70% to 80% harmonic current and constitute a major system failure waiting to happen. A proper power quality study, performed with such instruments as true rms meters, harmonic analyzers, frequency selective voltmeters, and spectrum analyzers, will yield a true picture of an existing system and permit the electrical rehab work to be engineered with harmonic limitations as one of the important design parameters.

28.19 RISER DIAGRAMS

When all devices are circuited and panels are located and scheduled, a riser diagram can be prepared. A typical diagram, shown in Fig. 27.2, represents a block version of a single-line diagram except that, as the name implies, vertical relationships are shown. All panels, feeders, switches, switchboards, and major components are shown, up to, but not including, branch circuiting. This diagram is essentially a vertical section taken through a building electrical system.

EXAMPLE 28.3 Feeder F10 of Fig. 28.24 serves lighting panels 1A, 2A, and 3A. Calculate the required feeder size, considering loads, future expansion, and voltage drop.

SOLUTION

The connected loads on these panels have been computed in accordance with the previous considerations and are:

LP-1A— 110 A
LP-2A— 125 A
LP-3A— 100 A / 335 A

These values include connected load, spares, and a 25% future capacity factor (the *NEC* requires that feeders be sized minimally for loads calculated by using the given *NEC* unit area loads plus any demand factors listed; see Article 220). If actual panel circuit loads are larger than the *NEC* minima, then they are the loads used in feeder calculations, and any reasonable demand may be used, provided that at no time do the totals drop below the minima specified in the *NEC*. Therefore, diversity factors may be applied between panel loads in a judicious manner.

In office building work, typical diversity factors are as follows:

Lighting Panels Fed from a Single Feeder	Diversity Factor
1 or 2	1.00
3 or 4	1.09
5, 6, or 7	1.18
8, 9, or 10	1.33

Thus, the load on feeder F10, using 100% demand per panel and 1.09 diversity between panels, would be $335 \times 1.0/1.09 = 307$ A. ■

Methods for handling future expansion were discussed previously. In this case, the feeder, before voltage drop considerations, would be (from Tables 27.2, 27.3, and 28.9) 4-350 MCM THW in 3-in. C. In this case, the values in Table 28.10 can be misleading if not read carefully. A 3-in. conduit will take a maximum of 400 kcmil THW. However, because the initial design is using only 350 kcmil, which also requires a 3-in. conduit, the expansion possible by rewiring with XHHW is

$$\frac{\text{ampacity of 500 kcmil, XHHW in 3-in. C}}{\text{ampacity of 350 kcmil, THW in 3-in. C}}$$

$$= \frac{430\text{ A}}{310\text{ A}}$$

$$= 1.39\text{—i.e., 39\% expansion}$$

This should be sufficient.

The final consideration in sizing a feeder is voltage drop. The *NEC* suggests (does not require) that sizing branch circuit conductors for a maximum of 3% voltage drop to the farthest outlet, and sizing feeders so that the maximum *combined* feeder and

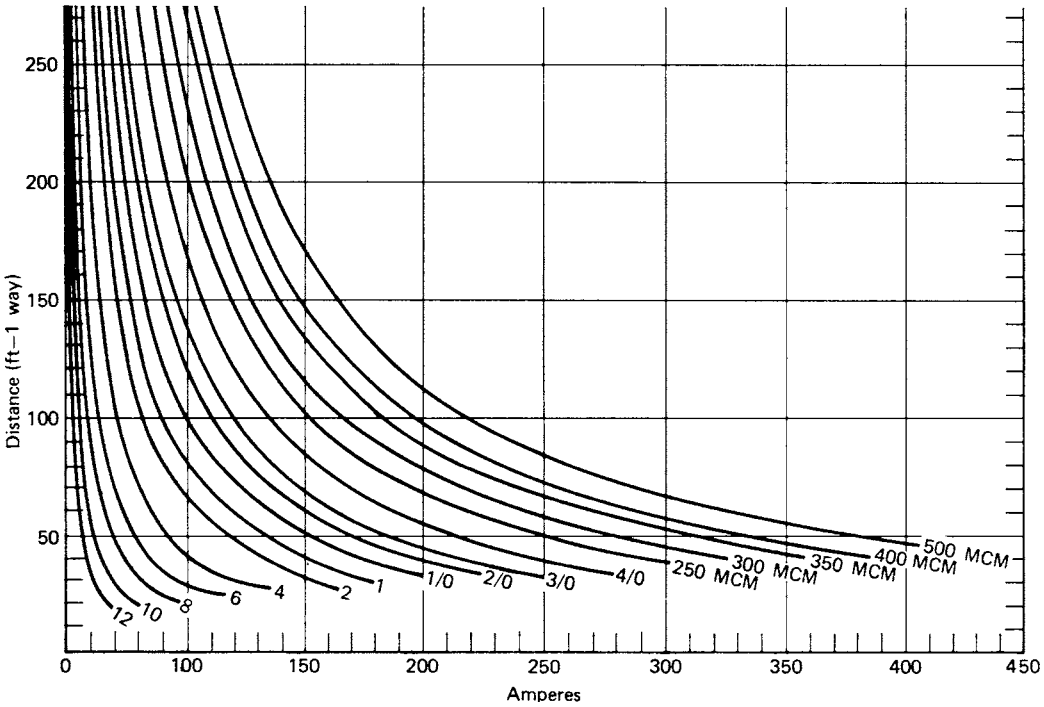


Fig. 28.25 *Curves for determining voltage drop in copper cables. Curves show the maximum one-way circuit length for a 1% voltage drop.*

branch circuit voltage drop to the farthest outlet does not exceed 5% will give reasonably efficient operation. These figures apply to all types of loads.

It is suggested that it makes economic sense to restrict branch circuit voltage drop to 2% to the farthest outlet while maintaining the overall 5% limitation. This allows a minimum 3% drop in feeders, which are frequently long and, because of size and ampacity inefficiency, relatively more expensive than small branch circuit wiring.

Many tables and curves are published by manufacturers from which voltage drop can be obtained. Such a set of curves is shown in Fig. 28.25, which shows the maximum length of run for a 1% drop. Applying these curves to Example 28.3 and assuming an 80-ft (24-m) run gives the following.

From the curves, 307 A on 350 MCM cable gives a 1% drop in 50 ft (15 m). Therefore, the drop in 80 ft (24 m) will be 1.6%, which is well within our criteria, assuming that branch circuits were limited to a 2% voltage drop.

In summary, then, feeders are sized in accordance with load (actual or based upon unit area, whichever is larger) and voltage drop. Conduit may be oversized to address the potential for substantial future load expansion.

28.20 SERVICE EQUIPMENT AND SWITCHBOARD DESIGN

The main switchboard shown in Fig. 28.24 constitutes a combination of service equipment and feeder switchboard. The service equipment portion of the board comprises the metering and four main switches feeding the risers, motor control center (MCC), rooftop machine room, and elevators. The feeder board comprises switches 5 through 12. Such an arrangement is permissible inasmuch as the *NEC* allows up to six fused switches or circuit breakers to serve as the service disconnect means. This arrangement was chosen in order to separate to the largest extent possible the motor loads (elevators, air-conditioning equipment, basement power, etc.) from the lighting. Such a procedure minimizes lighting fluctuations resulting from motor starting and yields simpler maintenance. Also, the size of the main switch is reduced. This switchboard would be

of the metal-clad dead-front type with switches or circuit breakers, as desired.

Other recommendations affecting service equipment are as follows:

- All equipment used for service, including cable, switches, meters, and so on, should be approved for that purpose.
- It is recommended that a minimum of 100-A, 3-wire, 120/240-V service be provided for all individual residences.
- No service switch smaller than 60 A, or circuit breaker frame smaller than 100 A, should be used.
- In multiple-occupancy buildings, tenants must have access to their own disconnect means.
- All building equipment should be connected on the load side of the service equipment, except that service fuses, metering, fire alarm and signal equipment, and equipment serving emergency systems may be connected ahead of the main disconnect (see Fig. 28.24).
- For additional information on electric service, see *NEC* Article 230.

28.21 EMERGENCY SYSTEMS

(a) General Information

Some considerations relevant to power reliability are discussed in Section 28.1(b), and a brief review of the equipment available to supply emergency power is presented in Section 26.39. Emergency lighting equipment is covered in Section 16.31. This section discusses possible emergency power supply arrangements. The choice of arrangement and the size and type of equipment depend largely upon the requirements of local codes, which determine the loads that must be supplied from the emergency system. Although this section uses the term *emergency*, the concepts involved are equally applicable to standby systems. Where differences occur, they are pointed out.

The three classes of electrical power supply systems that are included under the general category of emergency electric supply systems are:

- Emergency Systems: covered by *NEC* Article 700
- Legally Required Standby Systems: covered by *NEC* Article 701
- Optional Standby Systems: covered by *NEC* Article 702

The essential differences among the three classifications involve the purpose, application, and duration of the specific nonnormal power supply. All three types are activated when normal power fails, but only the first two types are legally required when so specified by a governmental agency having jurisdiction. Optional standby systems are, as their name states, optional; they are entirely dependent upon the project requirements established by the facility's owner or operator.

Emergency systems are those essential to human safety. As such, and depending upon the type of facility involved, they may supply power for fire detection, lighting, alarm and communication systems, elevators, fire pumps, and such loads as ventilation, refrigeration, and industrial processes where power interruption would imperil human safety. Generally, emergency systems must pick up the loads automatically within 10 seconds of power interruption. Where the emergency power supply consists of batteries, they must have a full-load capacity of 90 minutes. Where the power supply is an engine–generator set, an on-site fuel supply that will suffice for a minimum of 2 hours of full load is required. The entire wiring system for an emergency power system must be separate and distinct from the normal power system, except where both systems are connected to the same item of equipment.

Legally required standby systems are those required to provide power for essentially the same types of loads as emergency systems, except that their absence does not involve immediate danger to human life. Systems for firefighting, control of health hazards, long-term rescue operations, and industrial hazard prevention would be among the electrical loads served. For these systems, loads must be picked up automatically within 60 seconds of failure of normal power and be maintained for the same minimum periods of time specified for emergency power systems. Wiring may be run in the same enclosures as those used for the normal power system.

Optional standby power systems are intended essentially to minimize economic loss, and therefore can supply any load identified by the building owner. Connection of the selected standby source can be manual or automatic, and the duration

of service is entirely at the owner's discretion. No restrictions are placed on the wiring system beyond those applied to the normal electrical wiring system.

(b) NFPA Codes

The *NEC* does not determine whether an emergency system is required; that decision is made by the applicable jurisdictional authorities and is generally a response to the requirements of NFPA 101. Once a determination to provide an emergency system has been made, however, the equipment and installation must comply with the requirements of the *NEC*. Relevant NFPA codes (updated on a regular basis) include:

NFPA 70	*National Electrical Code*
NFPA 99	*Standard for Health Care Facilities*
NFPA 101	*Life Safety Code*
NFPA 110	*Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*
NFPA 111	*Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems*

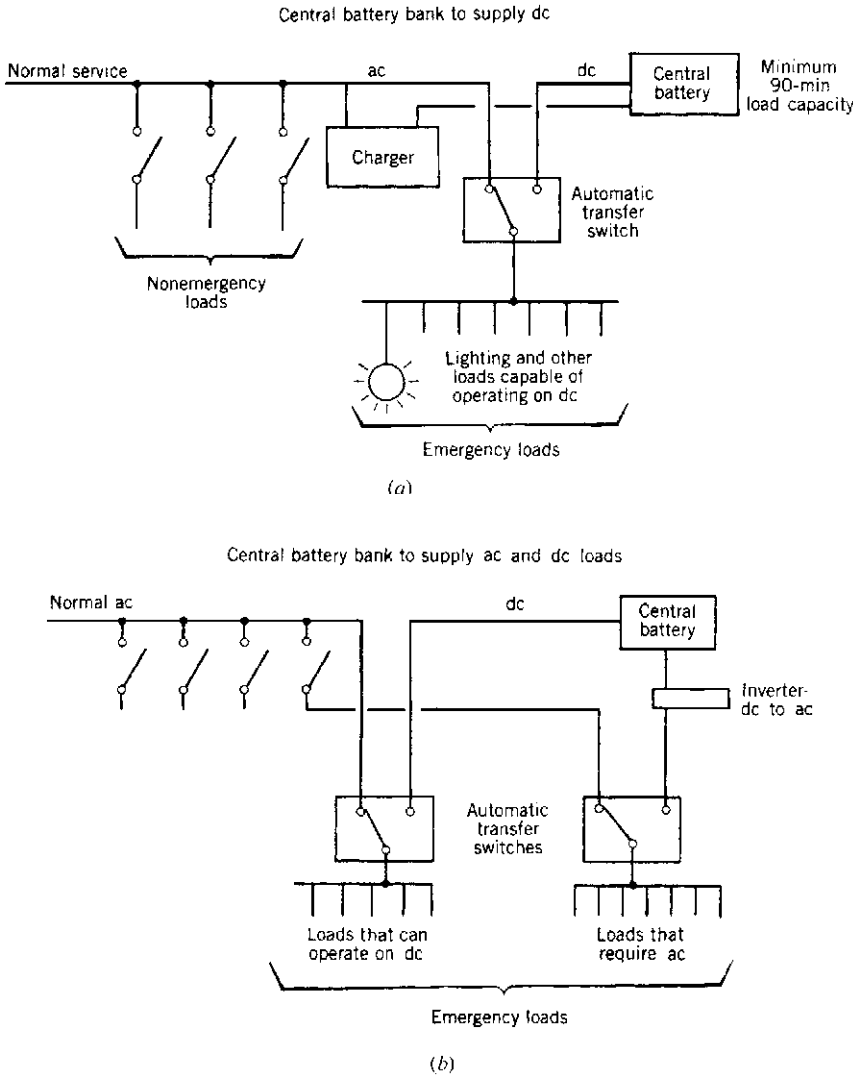


Fig. 28.26 *Use of a central battery for emergency power supply. When all loads can be energized with dc, the arrangement of (a) is satisfactory. When ac as well as dc must be distributed, a central inverter is added, as in (b), and the ac and dc emergency loads are fed separately.*

(c) Technical Considerations

In general, when emergency power is discussed, it is assumed to be replacing normal power; that is, the assumption underlying most codes and standards is that power must be supplied to selected loads within the building because of a utility power outage. In good-practice design, cognizance must also be taken of situations in which normal power has not failed, and an outage is localized because of an in-building equipment failure. This aspect of design—reliability—is left to the designer and owner to decide in the context of a given building situation. Some of the arrangements discussed here differentiate between the nature of outages—that is, a utility or general outage versus an equipment or local outage. An exception to this generalization occurs with health-care facilities, where *NEC* (in Article 517) specifies an internal electrical design that largely covers both types of outages down to the distribution level. Refer to the referenced *NEC* article for further information.

An emergency system includes all devices, wiring, raceways, and other electrical equipment, including the emergency source that is intended to supply electric power to the selected load(s). An important aspect of code requirements permits the use of a single power source for (1) emergency, (2) legally required standby, and (3) optional standby systems, provided that it is equipped with automatic selective load pickup and load-shedding equipment that will ensure adequate power to the three types of systems in the order of priority stated (1, 2, 3).

1. Where emergency loads are not substantial, a storage battery arranged to be connected

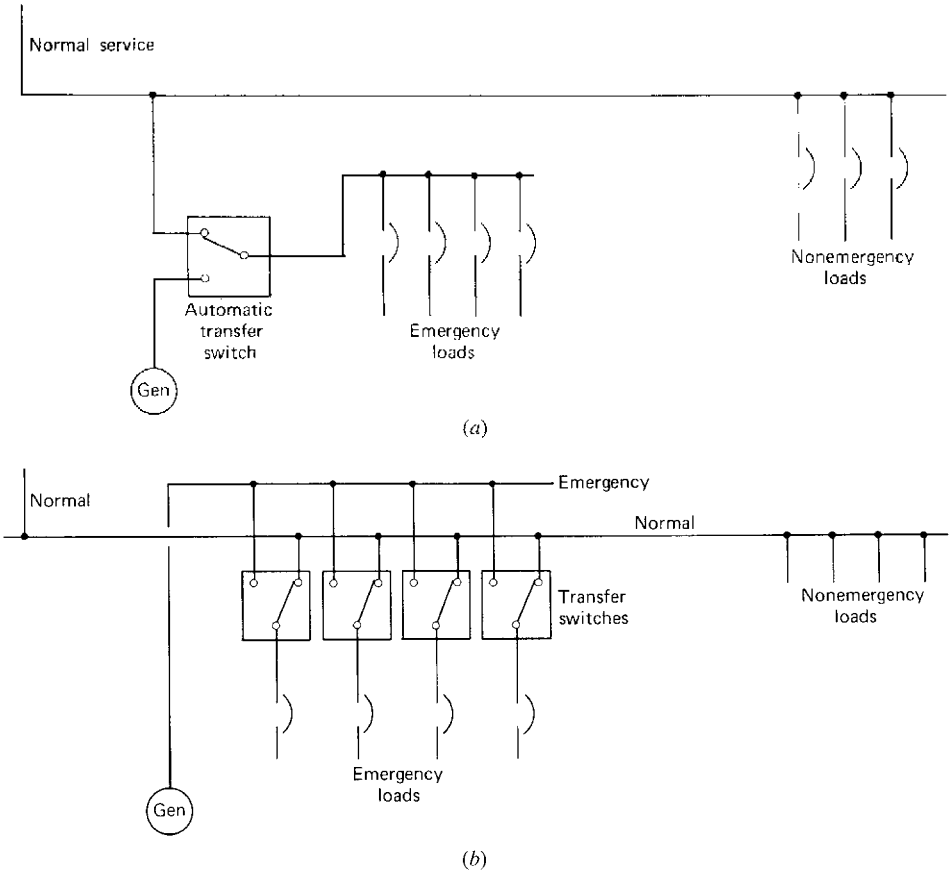


Fig. 28.27 *Alternative arrangements of emergency/normal power feed. In (a) a single transfer switch serves the normal power and transfers to the generator upon power failure. In (b) there are multiple smaller transfer switches, thus reducing the chance of a single equipment failure faulting out the entire emergency power system.*

automatically on power outage may be used. Where all emergency loads can be operated on dc, the arrangement of Fig. 28.26*a* is used. (Note that ac lighting can accept dc emergency power if equipped with a local inverter, as discussed in Section 16.31.) If ac power is required, the arrangement of Fig. 28.26*b* can be utilized.

2. Where emergency loads are larger than can be practically supplied by a battery installation, and where a start-up and power transfer time of up to 10 seconds is tolerable, a generator set is employed. A combination of emergency sources may be used in a single building. For instance, a generator can supply bulk power loads and a battery installation selected lighting loads.

The system can be arranged with a single transfer switch that senses normal power loss, as in Fig. 28.27*a*, or it can use multiple switches, each one of which will sense power loss *at its downstream location*, as in Fig. 28.27*b*. The latter system provides greater power reliability, provided that the design is such that the emergency power uses an independent power path to the transfer switches. Otherwise, a fault in a junction box or an item of equipment that interrupts normal power downstream will also prevent emergency power from reaching that point.

3. Some codes permit the use of two separate electric services in lieu of a normal service plus an emergency source, provided that the two sources are truly independent—that is, come from different utility transformers or feeders; enter the building at different points and, preferably, from different directions; and use separate service drops or laterals. The point is that the type of reliability desired can be obtained only by minimizing the possibility of a single event interrupting both services. The usual arrangement is for one such utility service to be normal and the other standby.
4. The least reliable arrangement is one in which the emergency loads are connected ahead of the main disconnects and are so arranged that a downstream fault within the building will not affect these items. This situation is illustrated in the riser diagram of Fig. 28.24, where the stair and exit panel (which supplies egress lighting) and the fire alarm panel are connected ahead of the building main disconnect and protected with their own fuses. This arrangement is permitted only for Legally Required Standby Systems (*NEC* Article 701) and not for Emergency Systems as defined in *NEC* Article 700. The items that may be connected ahead of the main service equipment are generally limited to emergency lighting, fire alarm, fire pumps, standby power equipment, and other alarm and protective equipment, each of which must be provided with a separate disconnect means and overcurrent protection (see *NEC* Article 230-82).

   This power arrangement can do nothing in the event of a power outage. It was once very common, but is now falling into disuse as a result of more stringent codes and its serious shortcomings.
5. The *NEC* recognizes a category of equipment for emergency illumination called *unit equipment*. These types of devices, discussed and illustrated in Section 16.31(d), consist of individual self-contained packages with a battery, charger, and light source *permanently* mounted and wired at required locations. The panel device feeding these units should be clearly identified.

References and Resources

Numerous standards from the NFPA dealing with emergency power systems are identified in Section 28.21b.

McGuinness, W. J., B. Stein, and J. S. Reynolds. 1980. *Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings*, 6th ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Stein, B. 1997. *Building Technology, Mechanical and Electrical Systems*, 2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

CHAPTER 29

Photovoltaic Systems

29.1 A CONTEXT FOR PHOTOVOLTAICS

A PHOTOVOLTAIC (PV) SYSTEM PRODUCES electricity through direct conversion of incident solar radiation (primarily radiation in the visible spectrum—light). This is an incredibly useful transformation process. Virtually every building of any size or function requires and consumes electricity. Solar radiation is a renewable resource, which will generally impinge upon a building in useful quantities in most climate zones (whether or not the building uses it for beneficial purposes). PV then seems an ideal design solution—providing a needed energy form from an otherwise often unused resource. In an ideal world, every building would have a PV system. Unfortunately, the economics of PV power production dampen this idyllic picture. PV power production generally costs an owner more than utility-provided power, even considering reasonable life-cycle costing scenarios. In fact, the economics are currently such that PV systems for buildings are the exception rather than the rule. There has long been hope that the economic picture would change through the evolving availability of much cheaper PV components. This has not really happened. Thus, any future shift in economics will likely occur mainly as the result of higher cost for competing electricity sources (utilities) and/or rebates or incentives from governments or utilities for distributed, greener power sources.

PV electric power systems, which until the middle to late 1980s were little more than a curiosity in the United States because of their very limited applicability and discouraging economics, have recently begun to make a noticeable impact on the commercial electrical power scene. This has come about for several reasons, the most important of which are federal government-financed research and development, and state and federal government-sponsored legislation in the electric utility field. The PV Manufacturing Technology project (PVMaT) involving the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) and 20 private companies (launched in 1990), plus the 1992 Building Opportunities in the United States for Photovoltaics (PV:BONUS) program (also sponsored by the DOE) resulted in the reduction of PV module costs from upwards of $5.00 per watt to about $1.50 to 2.50. In addition, these initiatives spurred the development of new PV module materials, construction techniques, and product forms; increases in PV module efficiency; and a sharp overall decrease in the cost of power produced from about $0.50 to $1.00 per watt to about half that amount, depending upon the system configuration. The legislative impetus has taken the form of utility deregulation and specific legislation requiring utilities to purchase power produced by small, private installations.

Several recent government efforts to foster the development of PV systems are under way. The (U.S.) Photovoltaic Industry Roadmap is an industry-led effort to help guide domestic PV research, technology, manufacturing, applications, markets, and policy. The Roadmap presents the intended

direction of the PV industry, its critical partners, and U.S. government programs for the years 2000 to 2020. The U.S. PV program is associated with the International Energy Agency's (IEA) Task 16 effort focused upon PV systems for buildings. The potential market for building-integrated PV systems in the United States is enormous, and many companies are beginning to work at the development and commercialization of building-integrated PV components and systems. Increasing and substantial U.S. sales of PV roof shingles are indicative of this potential. Green building design efforts are also increasing interest in PV systems, with LEED new construction credit provided for renewable energy resources and for green power.

The 1978 federal Public Utilities Regulatory Policy Act (PURPA) required electric utilities to buy electric power at a price equal to the costs they avoid by not having to produce that power. The utilities generally interpret that "avoided cost" as fuel cost only, without considering other avoided costs such as additional plant construction. As a result, energy is often bought under this law at about $0.03/kWh by the same utilities that sell energy at $0.08 to 0.15/kWh. This spread obviously does not encourage the construction of grid-connected PV installations (see Section 29.5b). Subsequently, many states adopted net-metering laws that reduced this price unbalance. In this arrangement, the utility buys power during peak PV generation periods (see Fig. 29.1) at the same rate at which it sells power. At the end of a billing period (usually 1 month), any imbalance between utility-purchased and customer-purchased power is paid for at the given rates (i.e., if the customer used more power than he/she generated, that power is paid for at the conventional utility rate). Conversely (and less commonly), if the customer generated more power than was used, the utility would buy it at the avoided-cost rate.

The net-metering arrangement is attractive economically to both utility and user. A utility buys power that offsets its peak afternoon load, which is particularly severe in warm weather, and sells power in its off-peak morning and evening periods. A residential customer sells power at the PV installation's peak output, which is also usually a period of low user consumption (Fig. 29.1), and buys it back at the same price in the evening, when PV output is low but power demand is high. The arrangement removes the necessity for an expensive battery installation that, in a stand-alone system, provides power during periods of low PV energy production. This advantage, combined with other advantages such

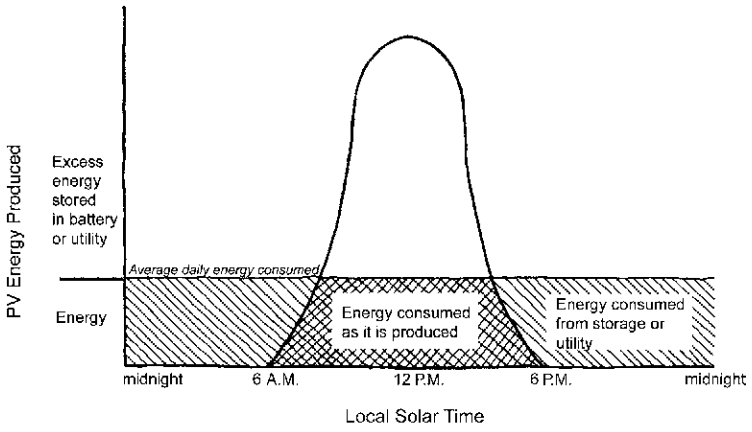


Fig. 29.1 *Graph representing electricity produced and used by a residence equipped with a PV array. Daily energy use is shown as a uniform average over a 24-hour period to indicate overall quantity but not an actual usage pattern. The bell-shaped PV energy production curve is centered on solar noon and extends from sunrise (solar 6:00 A.M.) to sunset (solar 6:00 P.M.). The area of the bell curve above the average consumption line indicates electricity that would be purchased by a utility in a grid-connected system or stored in batteries in a stand-alone system. (From Harris, Miller, and Thomas. 1985.* Solar Energy Systems Design, *p. 715. Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Publishers. Redrawn by Amanda Clegg.)*

as having a nonpolluting power source, has led to a large increase in grid-connected installations. Indeed, the attractiveness of having a green, environmentally beneficial electric power supply is so great that a number of electric utilities have instituted a (primarily residential) PV installation program in which the utility installs and maintains a PV system on the customer's premises (usually on the roof), for which the customer pays a nominal surcharge on the monthly electric power bill. The advantages of net billing, however, are available only to customers who initiate and maintain a PV system themselves.

29.2 TERMINOLOGY AND DEFINITIONS

A generally accepted terminology has developed in the PV field. The list that follows contains common terms and their accepted definitions. Particular attention should be paid to two terms that are often incorrectly used interchangeably: insolation and irradiance. *Irradiance* is the amount of solar *power* impinging on a specific area, usually measured in units of watts per square meter—and represents an instantaneous value. *Insolation* is the amount of solar *energy* received by a given area, measured in Wh/m^2, kWh/m^2, Btu/ft^2, or MJ/m^2 (with $1\ kWh/m^2 = 317.2\ Btu/ft^2$)—and represents a time-averaged value.

Avoided cost. The minimum amount an electric utility is required to pay an independent power producer under the Public Utilities Regulatory Policy Act of 1978.

Balance of system (BOS). All components other than the PV modules themselves, which include the system electronics, support structure, and storage.

BIPV. Building-integrated photovoltaic (system); a PV system with cells/modules incorporated as an integral part of the building envelope (rather than simply tacked on to the building shell).

Blocking diode. A diode used to block reverse flow of current into a PV source circuit.

Interactive system. A PV system that operates in parallel with the electric utility lines and may be designed to deliver power to the utility.

Inverter. Commonly known as a *power conversion system* (PCS), an inverter is a device that changes direct current (dc) to alternating current (ac). An inverter is not the same as a power-conditioning unit (PCU).

Panel. A collection of modules mechanically fastened together, wired, and designed to provide a field-installable unit.

Peak sun hours. The number of hours per day at an irradiance of $1\ kW/m^2$ that is equivalent to the total daily insolation energy.

PV array. A mechanically integrated assembly of modules or panels with a support structure and other components, as required, including tracking apparatus where used, forming a power-producing unit.

PV cell. The basic PV device that generates electricity when exposed to solar radiation.

PV module. The smallest complete, environmentally protected assembly of PV cells and other components normally sold by a manufacturer; comprising several (or many) PV cells.

PV system. All the components and subsystems that, in combination, convert solar energy into electrical energy suitable for connection to a load.

Stand-alone system. A PV system that supplies electrical energy without interconnection to any other power source.

Thick-crystal photovoltaics. The most common commercial type of PV material.

Thin-film photovoltaics. PV devices made of a semiconductor material, such as copper indium diselenide or amorphous silicon, a few micrometers thick, deposited on substrates of glass, ceramic, or another compatible material.

29.3 PV CELLS

The production of an electric charge when solar radiation (primarily light) strikes some metallic surfaces has been a recognized physical phenomenon since the mid-nineteenth century. Around 1905, Einstein established a mathematical basis for what has come to be known as the *photoelectric effect*. The explanation of this effect, in simplified and qualitative terms, is approximately as follows. Light exhibits both wave characteristics and characteristics of a stream of energetic particles called *photons*. When

a photon strikes a photoelectric metal surface, it dislodges a single electron from its normal orbit, causing a charge to appear. When pure silicon is exposed to an intense stream of photons, as from sunlight, a large number of electrons are dislodged from their orbits and proceed to wander about the crystal lattice structure of the silicon crystals. By a process called *doping*, impurities are deliberately added to pure silicon to create a P-N (positive-negative) junction, across which the electrons flow to create an electric current and give the doped silicon the properties of a semiconductor. If the semiconducting doped silicon is exposed to light and the negative and positive sides of the junction are connected through a load, an electron flow (a current) commences from the negative side of the junction to the positive side, doing work on the load. Work, of course, is energy. The energy comes from the fast-moving photons (light) and is imparted to the dislodged electrons by impact. The overall effect is to create a current flow proportional to the intensity of photon bombardment—that is, proportional to light intensity. Figure 29.2 is a schematic representation of this process.

The photons in solar radiation are not uniformly energetic. It has been found experimentally that a photon must have an energy of at least 1.08 electron-volts (corresponding to a wavelength of 1150 nm) to dislodge an electron. Photons at longer wavelengths do not have sufficient energy to create the photoelectric effect. Because shorter-wavelength photons are more energetic, the entire visible spectrum (light) is useful in PV action, the magnitude of current produced depending upon the intensity of light. According to Einstein's PV theory, a single photon can only dislodge a single electron; thus, any photon energy in excess of the minimum (dislodgement) level is dissipated as heat. For this reason, PV cells generate heat as well as electricity, and some means of heat collection or dissipation is required in practical PV array construction. Commercial PV cells operate at an overall insolation-to-electric energy conversion efficiency of around 8% to 12%. By layering different strata of semiconductor material, each of which is sensitive to a different limited-frequency bandwidth (called *bandgap*), efficiencies as high as 35% to 40% can be achieved. Economic considerations, however, have limited today's commercial PV modules to a maximum of two layers with a maximum conversion efficiency of about 12%.

As mentioned previously, intensive research and development work on solar cell construction has yielded a new generation of PV materials that are variously referred to as *thin-film technology* and *polycrystalline technology*, using various copper and cadmium compounds and amorphous rather than large crystal silicon modules. These materials offer higher efficiencies, can be manufactured into large elements, and, because they do not require a glass cover, can be integrated into standard building

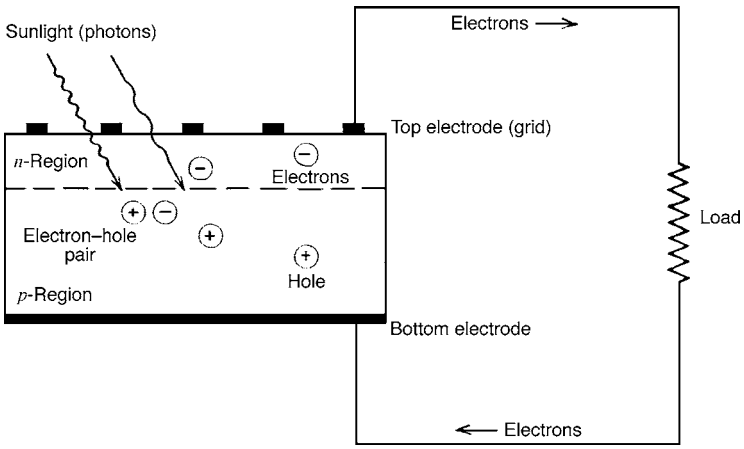


Fig. 29.2 *Schematic drawing showing the conversion of solar energy to electrical energy by a PV cell. Photons from solar radiation dislodge electrons in the silicon semiconductor surface, creating a positively charged "hole." The N-P junction creates an electric field that "sweeps" electrons across the junction. When the top and bottom electrodes are electrically connected through a load, an electric current flows. This current is capable of doing work (supplying energy). (From Meyers, ed. 1983.* Handbook of Energy Technologies. *Wiley-Interscience. Reprinted with permission.)*

material formats (as building-integrated PV elements). Typical data for two commercial products using this newer technology are:

Amorphous Silicon Module
Dimensions: 2 ft × 4 ft × 2 in.
(610 mm × 1220 mm × 50 mm)
Weight: 33 lb (15 kg)
Electrical: 50 W, 72 V, 0.7 A

Thin-Film Polycrystalline Module
Dimensions: 2 ft × 4 ft × 2 in.
(610 mm × 1220 mm × 50 mm)
Weight: 22 lb (10 kg)
Electrical: 75 W, 17 V, 4.5 A

These second-generation PV materials have high efficiency and a flexible physical format, distinct advantages over the older, large crystal silicon wafer elements. However, the latter are cheaper, *extremely* hardy, reliable, and long-lived, as has been demonstrated in many satellite and space vehicle applications. The newer units are initially somewhat unstable and have a shorter life than the large crystal silicon units.

The PV cell is the smallest electricity-producing unit in a PV system. Cells are not sold individually as commercial products but are arranged by the manufacturer into modules. A module is the smallest commercially available electricity-producing increment. The size of a module and the number of modules required to produce a desired electrical output depend upon the type of PV cell used, the manufacturer's product line, and the intent of the PV system designer. If more than one module is required, as is often the case, multiple modules are assembled on site into arrays. A module is a self-contained product; an array is a field-assembled group of modules.

29.4 PV ARRAYS

A PV array is a complete and connected set of modules mounted and ready to deliver electricity. Two basic array arrangements exist: stationary and tracking. Building-mounted arrays are typically stationary and often have the advantage of not requiring a substantial support structure, although even a simple roof mounting on a pitched roof can be expensive due to the labor cost involved. The materials usually used for ground-mounted array structures are concrete, galvanized steel, and aluminum. Wood and painted iron are not recommended because of their high maintenance costs and relatively short life. The design of an array mounting will depend upon the array size, weight, mounting angle, and wind loads and is therefore unique to each installation. Mounting on a wooden pole or steel pipe with a single support point is limited to relatively small arrays in low-wind areas because of the stress on the support arrangement. Several typical fixed mounting arrangements are shown in Figs. 29.3 through 29.5.

The angle, measured from the horizontal, at which a flat-plate collector is mounted is known as the *tilt angle*. For a stationary (nontracking) array, total *annual* insolation is maximum for a tilt angle

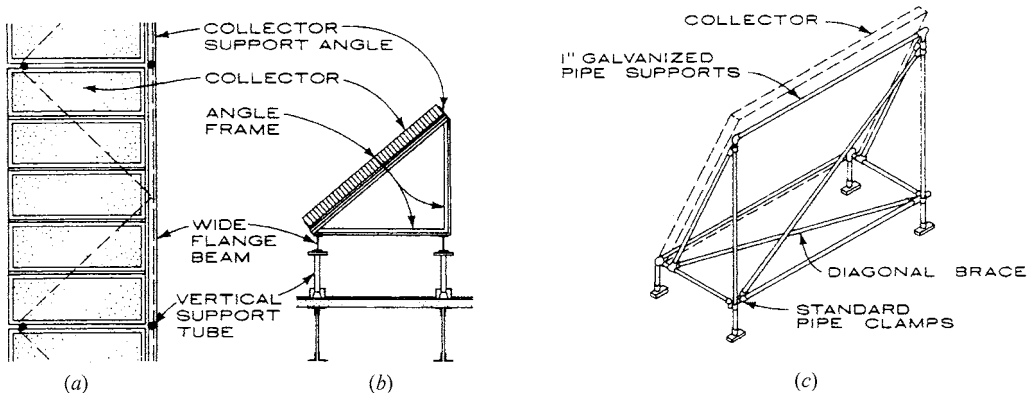


Fig. 29.3 *Typical mounting techniques for PV arrays. (a) Plan of the arrangement for mounting large arrays on a horizontal surface. (b) Section through (a) showing mounting and arrays. (c) Simple pipe rack mounting for a small array. For all installations, ensure that wind and seismic loads, snow collection, and array cooling have been considered. (Diagrams reprinted with permission from* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 10th ed. 2000. John Wiley & Sons, Publishers.)*

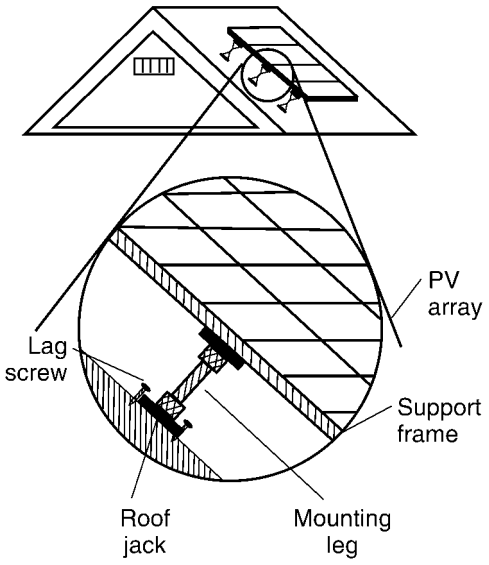
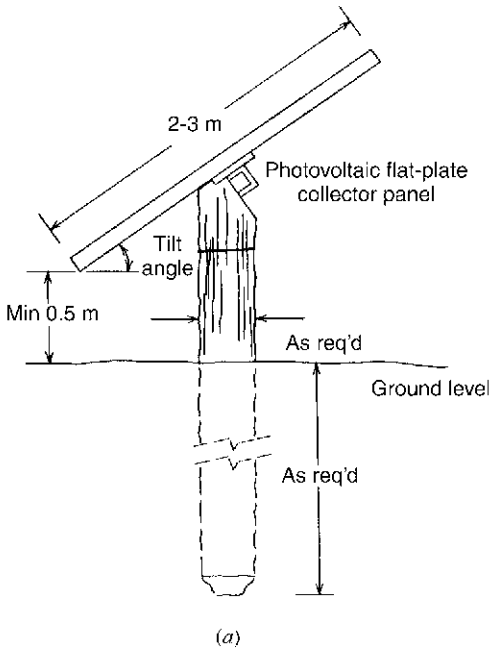


Fig. 29.4 *Typical roof mount for a PV array. Array tilt and azimuth can be adjusted through the mount design. Exercise caution in snow areas so that accumulating snow does not block the array and does not slide off onto pedestrians. (From* Stand-Alone Photovoltaic Systems. *Sandia Laboratories. 1995.)*



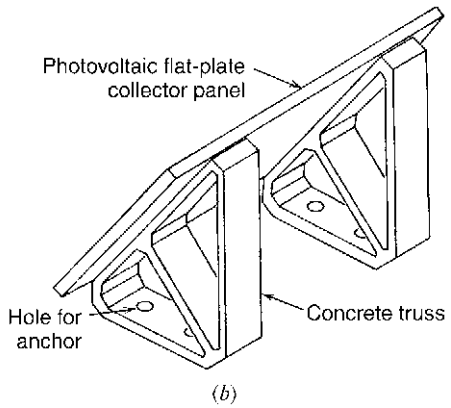


Fig. 29.5 *Flat-plate PV collector support structures. (a) Wooden-pole torsion tube support. (b) Concrete truss support. (From Meyers, ed. 1983.* Handbook of Energy Technologies. *Wiley-Interscience. Reprinted with permission.)*

equal to the latitude of the site. To maximize winter insolation, when the sun is lowest, the tilt angle can be increased to latitude plus 15°. Conversely, to maximize summer insolation, when the sun is highest, the tilt angle can be reduced to latitude minus 15°. The tilt angle chosen for a stationary array depends upon PV output usage schedules, the amount of insolation for the months of the year, and economic considerations.

Tracking arrays follow the motion of the sun and thereby substantially increase the insolation per unit area of solar cells. Single-axis tracking follows the sun's motion from east to west while maintaining a constant array tilt angle. This type of tracking can increase insolation by 35% to 50% throughout the year and is most effective at low latitudes. Completely passive, sealed Freon, single-axis tracking drives are available for small to medium-sized pole-mounted arrays in low-wind areas. Where wind velocity is high, a motorized drive using PV-generated power may be necessary. Dual-axis tracking (following solar altitude and azimuth) for flat-plate collectors and altitude tracking for various designs of concentrating collectors are beyond the scope of this book.

29.5 PV SYSTEM TYPES AND APPLICATIONS

There are two basic types of PV systems: *stand-alone* and *grid-connected*. These names well describe their essential characteristic, which is their relationship to an external source of electricity such as a utility connection.

(a) Stand-Alone Systems

A stand-alone system is just that; it is isolated from any outside electrical connections and is designed to do a carefully defined specific job. Stand-alone systems are the oldest PV installations because they were essentially the only solution to the problem of electrifying a remote and/or unattended load. Stand-alone installations typically supply electricity for sign lighting, railroad crossing lights, unattended pumps, lighthouses, unattended navigational aids, microwave repeaters, motor homes, sailboats and yachts, isolated small residences, and the like. The common characteristic of all these installations is the impossibility or impracticality of feeding them from a utility grid. When loads become larger than can be supplied by a practical solar array (from a physical or economic viewpoint), and particularly when the peak load is periodic rather than continuous, a fuel-powered generator is usually added to the system. Such a system is known as a *hybrid stand-alone system* and is used frequently for remote residences where the connection charge levied by the local utility is so large that a PV system is an economical and environmentally friendly solution to the problem of providing electricity. Schematic diagrams of stand-alone system types are shown in Figs. 29.6, 29.7, and 29.8.

The difference between the systems shown in Figs. 29.6 and 29.7 is the use of an energy storage medium—in most cases, a battery. The *direct-connected* system in Fig. 29.6 is applicable only with loads that tolerate variable power levels ranging from zero at night to maximum at solar noon. The most common of these is water pumping, using a dc motor to drive a positive displacement (piston) pump. Such installations are frequently used to fill elevated water tanks because a slow, interruptible fill rate does not adversely affect the water system's usability.

The vast majority of stand-alone systems are assembled as shown in Fig. 29.7, using a storage battery to store excess energy produced during peak insolation hours for use during periods of reduced solar resource (cloudy days) and full darkness (nighttime). With proper component selection, as is discussed in detail in subsequent sections, stand-alone PV systems can be used to adequately supply remote year-round residences, small mercantile establishments, and other off-grid loads.

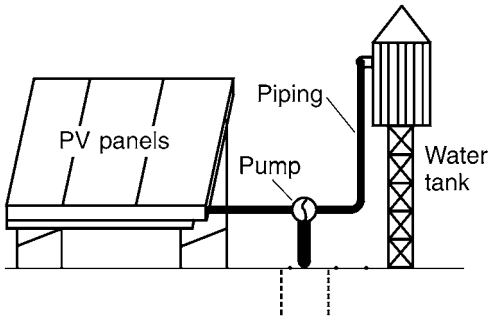


Fig. 29.6 *Typical direct-connected PV installation feeds electric power to a positive-displacement pump that pumps water into an elevated tank.*

A stand-alone system may contain a dc-to-ac inverter if any of the loads require ac that cannot be supplied by a built-in inverter. The choice of whether to use a single central inverter or distributed smaller inverters is largely an economic decision. Fluorescent lamps, a reasonably efficient source of light, are available with integral inverter ballasts. Some kitchen appliances and power tools, however, are not readily available in a dc or battery-powered format, although that situation is rapidly changing and warrants careful investigation during system design.

The hybrid stand-alone system shown in Fig. 29.8 is similar to the stand-alone system in Fig. 29.7, with the addition of a small ac generator.

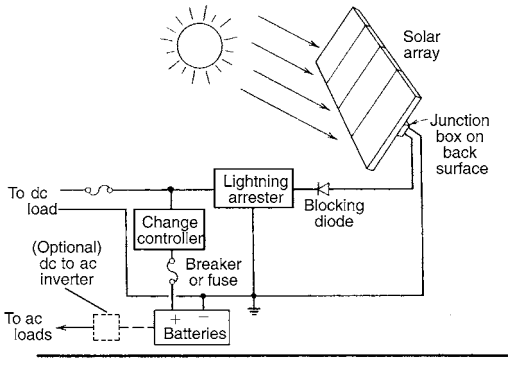


Fig. 29.7 *Schematic diagram of the most common type of stand-alone PV installation. The blocking diode prevents reverse current flow when the battery voltage exceeds that of the PV array. The charge controller prevents overcharging of the battery and excessive current drain. If ac loads are present, a dc-to-ac inverter is added, sized as required. (From Harris, Miller, and Thomas. 1985.* Solar Energy Systems Design. *Reprinted with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Publishers.)*

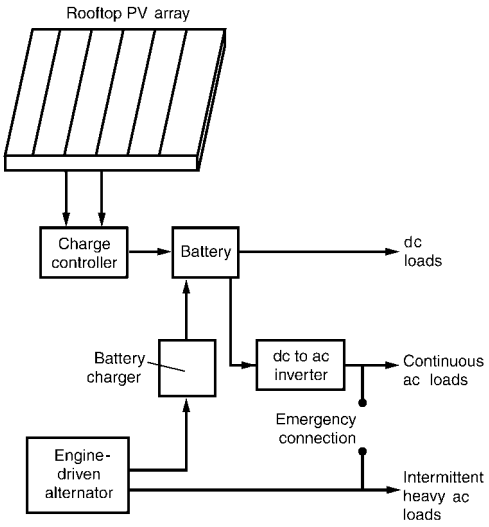


Fig. 29.8 *One arrangement for a hybrid stand-alone PV system (control and safety devices are omitted for clarity). A diesel-, gasoline-, or propane-driven ac generator (alternator) supplies large, intermittent ac-only loads, whereas the PV array and battery supply dc loads and continuous ac loads through an inverter. During long, cloudy periods the alternator can charge the battery and, via an emergency connection, can also supply the regular ac loads. Other arrangements are possible, such as using a larger inverter to supply an all-ac system, with the alternator supplying intermittent heavy ac loads and all loads during low-battery periods.*

This type of system, as noted previously, is used where operation of a heavy ac load, such as a clothes washer or another relatively large ac motor-driven appliance, is necessary. Where these loads are fairly continuous, as with refrigeration and air-conditioning equipment, a larger PV system should be considered. A continuously running engine-generator set is a source of noise and air pollution, and the ongoing consumption of a fossil fuel resource in such an installation makes it contradictory in spirit to a completely silent, pollution-free, renewable resource-driven, solar-powered PV installation.

(b) Grid-Connected Systems

Prior to the advent of net-metering, the number of stand-alone PV systems in areas served by electric utility grids was small because of the overwhelming economic advantage of purchased power. Even today, with net-metering, the payback period upon an initial PV system investment seldom justifies an installation on purely economic grounds, although the continuous development work in PV materials may change that situation.

In a stand-alone arrangement, battery costs over the life of the system can exceed those of the PV array. Lead-acid batteries are relatively cheap but have a short life; nickel-cadmium batteries have a longer life but are much more expensive. By replacing the batteries that furnish energy storage and carryover in a stand-alone system with a utility connection that effectively serves the same purposes, and by taking advantage of the economies available from building-integrated PV elements (see Section 29.5c) in new construction, an economical PV system with reasonable payback can be constructed. A schematic diagram of one such system arrangement is shown in Fig. 29.9.

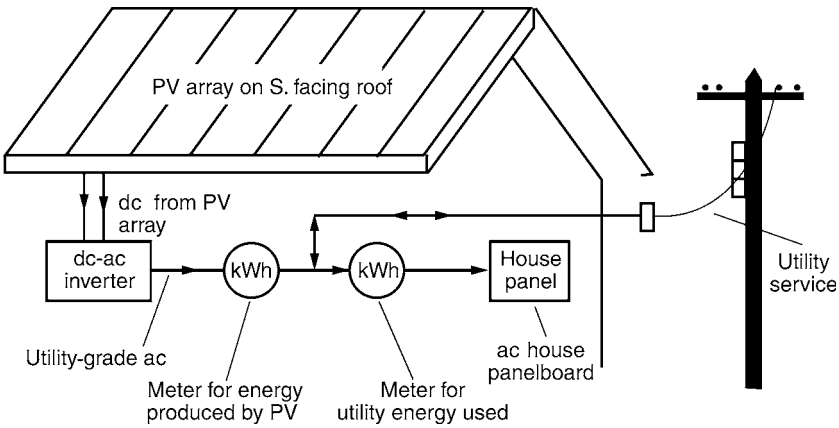


Fig. 29.9 *Schematic drawing of a grid-connected PV system arranged for net-metering. Power from the array is converted from dc to utility-grade ac power (constant voltage and frequency; low harmonic content) by the inverter and fed to the utility connection through a kWh meter that measures the electricity sold to the utility. The second (utility company) meter measures the total power used by the structure. The difference in meter readings represents the positive or negative (credit) utility billing.*

The inverter shown in the diagram creates utility-grade ac from the PV array dc output and feeds it to the utility through an electric (kWh) meter. The inverter shown is equipped with a safety cutoff that instantly disconnects the PV system from the grid if a utility outage is sensed. This is a requirement of the electric utilities to ensure that their maintenance personnel are not endangered by PV electric power being fed into an apparently deenergized line.

The power company supplies house power through a second meter, as shown. In net-metering, the difference between the readings of the two meters is either billed to the consumer at the normal utility rate or credited to the consumer at the avoided-cost rate, depending on which meter reads higher. A consumer will notice no difference whatever in electric service, except in the lower, or possibly even negative, electric utility bills.

More recently, to encourage wider use of nonpolluting PV power, some utilities have permitted the installation of small, individual PV modules in existing buildings. These units plug into convenience outlets in the building, supplying power to the building itself. Any excess electrical energy not required by the structure is fed back into the utility via their reversible energy meter. This arrangement is shown schematically in Fig. 29.10. Each PV module (panel) is equipped with a built-in, high-quality inverter that produces utility-grade power and is equipped with the safety devices described previously. A common commercially available unit of this type is rated at 100 W peak, 85 W nominal, 120 V, 60 Hz, measures approximately 2 ft × 4 ft × 4 in. (610 mm × 1220 mm × 50 mm), and weighs 25 lb (11 kg). The advantage gained with these units is that a user can begin with one or two modules and then expand as desired, without a relatively high first cost investment and without a centralized installation requiring professional construction and electrical personnel. Some power companies require separate disconnect switches for each PV unit rather than relying only on physical disconnection of the unit plug from the wall outlet.

(c) Economic Considerations

Economic issues can be complex, and they are often the deciding factor in the choice between full PV, a PV-grid combination, and a conventional (grid) electric service. Among the cost factors are:

- Cost of a grid connection.
- Cost of power from the grid.
- Life-cycle cost of each component of the system over the life of the entire installation. This is necessary because the life span of individual components varies sharply; PV modules last about 20

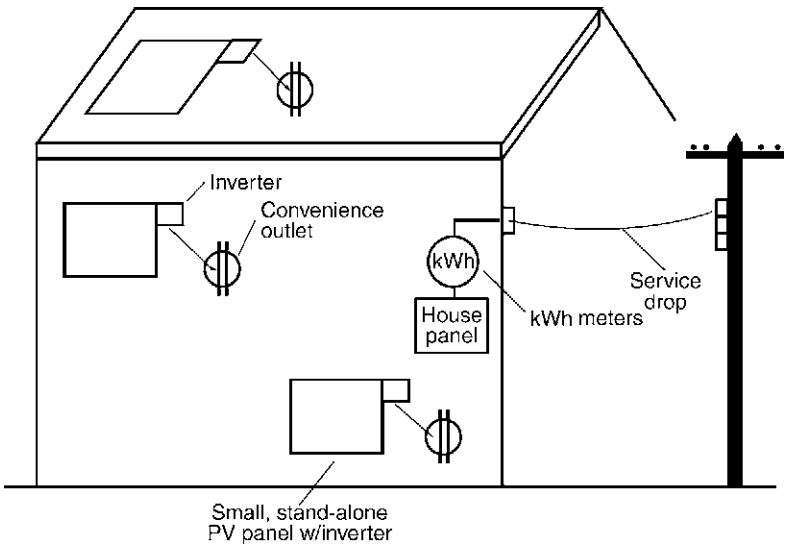


Fig. 29.10 *Schematic drawing of a grid-connected PV system using small, distributed PV arrays connected to the house distribution system via convenience outlets. In this arrangement, the utility meter is unratcheted (reversible) so that excess PV-produced electricity reverses the power company's meter. Any net monthly credit is calculated at the avoided-cost rate.*

years, batteries about 5 years, electrical components 10 to 20 years (or more), PV module mountings 15 to 25 years, tracking mechanisms (if used) 5 to 10 years, and so on.
- Life-cycle maintenance costs (parts and labor) for each item.
- Financing costs.
- Cost credits for PV systems, including such items as use of a system battery as an uninterruptable power supply (UPS) source for computers and peripherals, savings from avoided grid-power service interruptions, and construction cost credits when PV modules are used in lieu of building elements.

The last factor has taken on considerable importance in recent years with the development of building-integrated PV (BIPV) elements. A traditional PV installation consists of PV modules mounted near or on a building or facility. Often, the modules are roof-mounted if a roof surface of appropriate orientation (generally south-facing) and sufficient size is available. The development of thin-film amorphous silicon modules permits incorporation of PV cells into assemblies that can replace traditional building construction elements (typically in the form of roof panels, roofing tiles, wall panels, or skylights). These assemblies fulfill the dual function of producing electricity and weatherproofing the building envelope. In the jargon of design intent, they are *transformer* elements, replacing historically used barrier or filter elements. In such cases, only the difference in cost between standard construction and BIPV construction should be taken as an additional cost of the PV system.

29.6 PV SYSTEM BATTERIES

Batteries are required in a stand-alone system to store excess PV-produced electricity (from high-production periods) for use during peak electricity consumption periods (the pattern illustrated in Fig. 29.1). For residential installations, there is usually almost no coincidence between these two time periods because PV output peaks at solar noon, whereas residential usage peaks in the evening and is low at noon. In comparison, commercial stand-alone PV installations such as off-grid stores, shops, cottage industries, and the like have a much higher coincidence. This means that during normal, everyday use, the drain on the battery is shallow, and a cheaper battery will frequently suffice. These considerations are expanded in the system design discussions in Sections 29.8 and 29.9.

A PV system battery is usually expected to be capable of supplying most or all of an installation's electrical requirements for a given period—usually 3 days of cloudy weather if no other specific-use data are available. This means that the battery selected:

- Must be capable of repeated discharge to 20% capacity or less without injury
- Must be designed to accept slow, lengthy recharge

In addition, the battery:

- Should have long life
- Should be suitable for the physical conditions in which it will be used (i.e., space, ambient temperature, ventilation, and maintenance availability)

Pure lead automobile batteries (also known as *lead-acid* batteries) are not suitable for PV systems because they are designed for rapid, shallow discharge (engine starting) and very rapid recharge. If such a battery is repeatedly discharged more than about 20% (shallow discharge), or if it is not completely recharged after discharge, its life will be extremely short. Batteries made for use in electric vehicles such as golf carts and fork lifts are constructed with heavy plates and are designed for the deep-cycle discharge needed in PV systems. Most of these are flooded batteries, meaning that the plates must be completely covered with electrolyte to prevent damage. This requires frequent maintenance, making flooded batteries unsuitable for unattended sites.

Lead-calcium batteries are almost maintenance-free, rarely requiring addition of water or electrolyte. As a result, they are frequently used in unattended systems. They do not cycle as deeply as heavy-plate, deep-cycle units, and this must be considered during design.

Sealed batteries are completely maintenance-free. They are frequently constructed with a gel-type electrolyte that does not "boil" off on recharge and therefore needs no replacement. This makes them ideal for unattended sites, provided that they are specifically designed for deep-cycle service (80% discharge) and are so labeled. Most maintenance-free batteries are shallow-cycle units and therefore are

unsuitable. An important characteristic of sealed units is that they require very accurate charge and discharge control to prevent overcharge or overdischarge, or over-rapid charge or discharge. Any of these conditions severely shortens battery life. As a result, gel-cell batteries require the use of a high-quality charge controller.

Lead-antimony batteries are very sturdy and tolerate deep discharge and slow or rapid charge while maintaining their rated life. They require occasional water replenishment and adequate ventilation to disperse gases created during charging cycles.

Nickel-cadmium batteries are highly desirable in PV systems because they are maintenance-free, can be discharged to essentially 100% of capacity without injury or shortening of life, are much less temperature-sensitive than lead-acid batteries, and have a longer life. Their principal drawback is their high price. Nickel-cadmium batteries should not be shallow discharged because they tend to develop a "memory" of the discharge cycle and after many shallow cycles may not supply sufficient current for a deep discharge. Therefore, in essentially clear-sky climates, where a 3-day period of cloudiness is rare, nickel-cadmium batteries may not be applicable because storage sized for a 3-day system supply would normally be operating on shallow discharge.

Additional considerations in battery selection include:

Temperature. Lead-acid battery capacity declines with temperature. Nominal battery capacity ratings are referenced to a temperature of 77°F (25°C). Batteries operating at lower temperatures should be derated (in the absence of specific manufacturer's recommendations) as follows:

Ambient Temperature	*Derating Factor*
70°F (21°C)	0.96
60°F (16°C)	0.90
50°F (10°C)	0.84
40°F (4°C)	0.77
30°F (−1°C)	0.71
20°F (−7°C)	0.63

It is important to note that a discharged lead-acid battery contains essentially water and therefore freezes at about 30°F (−1°C). A fully charged battery will not freeze until the temperature dips below 0°F (−18°C). Nickel-cadmium batteries are much less affected by temperature.

Voltage. Battery terminal voltage varies with its state of charge, ranging for a 12-V battery at 77°F (25°C) from approximately 15 V at full charge to just over 12 V immediately after a deep discharge. If the battery is not charged immediately, voltage drops to a low of slightly over 11 V.

Life. A properly maintained deep-cycle lead-acid battery should last for a minimum of 5 years. A nickel-cadmium battery should last 1.5 to 2 times as long.

Rating. The manufacturer's stated ampere-hour (A-H) rating of a battery refers to a single continuous low-rate discharge under laboratory conditions. The actual field-use A-H capacity of a battery depends heavily upon the discharge rate, and it is this figure, as calculated for the particular installation, that should be used to compare batteries of the same type. All reputable manufacturers have readily available discharge curves that show voltage and duration at different discharge rates.

The basic storage battery is rated at 12 V, although 6-V units are available. Figure 29.11 shows typical battery connection arrangements for the most common system voltages, which are 12, 24, 48, and 72 V. Table 29.1 shows some typical physical data for batteries.

29.7 BALANCE OF SYSTEM

The balance of system (BOS) consists of a charge controller, inverter if used, and accessories such as blocking diodes, a lightning arrester, an electrical grounding system, and other electrical specialty items. Refer to Figs. 29.7 through 29.9 for a sense of how these components fit into a PV system. Although they are important to overall system performance and safety, a full description of these items is beyond the scope of this chapter. Refer to the references at the end of this chapter for a few of the many excellent resources that address these components.

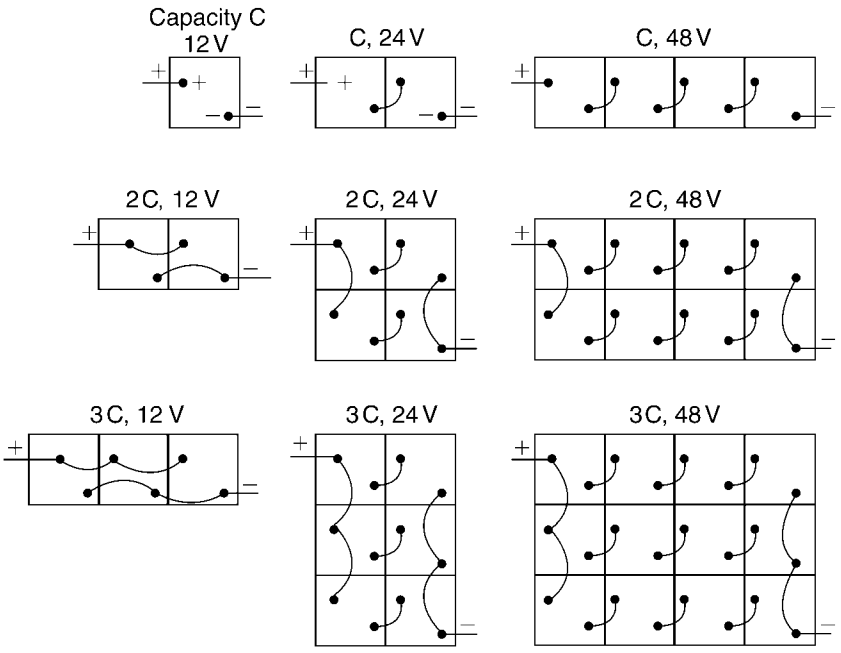


Fig. 29.11 *Wiring arrangements for 12-V battery packs to obtain increased capacity, increased voltage, or both.*

29.8 DESIGN OF A STAND-ALONE PV SYSTEM

There is a fundamental difference in the procedures for array sizing and system arrangement between a stand-alone system and a grid-connected PV system. A stand-alone system must supply the entire electric load; there is no utility backup. Design decisions are primarily technical. A grid-connected system may supply part, or all, of the electric load. Design decisions are influenced by economics and owner intent, within the context of technical feasibility. These two procedures are addressed separately in this and the following section.

Figure 29.7 shows the essentials of a stand-alone PV system. Because building electricity demands rarely exactly match the output of a PV system, the system operates successfully by using a PV array to charge a battery, which then supplies the building load. Any occasional coincidence between load and PV production is incidental to the design process. The three factors that establish the system requirements are:

- The daily electricity usage
- The period of time for which the battery must supply the electric load without recharge
- The available insolation

TABLE 29.1 Physical Characteristics of Typical 12-V[a] Batteries

Battery Type	Capacity in Amp-Hours	Dimensions of a 12-V Unit L × W × H in. (mm)	Weight lb (kg)
	(6/20/100-hr discharge rates)		
Deep-cycle lead–acid	500/625/775	33 × 6.5 × 24 (838 × 165 × 609)	500 (227)
	675/840/1025	40 × 6.5 × 24 (1016 × 165 × 609)	700 (318)
	850/1050/1275	50 × 6.5 × 24 (1270 × 165 × 609)	800 (363)
	(20-h discharge rate)		
	850	40 × 8 × 24 (1016 × 203 × 609)	650 (295)
Sealed gel-cells	1050	40 × 9 × 24 (1016 × 229 × 609)	770 (349)
	1275	40 × 10 × 24 (1016 × 254 × 609)	930 (422)
	1500	40 × 12 × 24 (1016 × 305 × 609)	1100 (499)

[a]Use two units for a 24-V battery and four units for a 48-V battery.

The first factor is a function of building design. The second factor is a function of local weather conditions and would most often be chosen as the number of successive solid overcast or rainy days usually encountered. Designing for highly unusual weather results in a system that is oversized for normal (say, 95th percentile) weather patterns and, therefore, is essentially uneconomical. That scenario weighs heavily in favor of a hybrid system (see Fig. 29.8), which defeats, at least in part, the environmental benefits of the PV system.

The PV system design procedure is essentially straightforward and is as follows:

STEP 1. Determine the *average* daily energy usage in watt-hours.

STEP 2. Determine the maximum period for which the system battery must supply the entire electrical load. (In practice, this requirement can be reduced by switching off nonessential loads during unusually long sunless periods.)

STEP 3. Determine the required system battery capacity, which is equal to the daily load (Step 1) multiplied by the number of days that the battery must supply the load (Step 2). System losses are taken into account in this calculation.

STEP 4. Determine the preliminary size of the PV array. The array must supply all of the required electricity, that is, the facility's daily requirements (Step 1) plus all system losses. The preliminary array size is this capacity in terms of watt-hours. To determine the physical size of the array, the designer must determine the number of watt-hours produced per unit area of PV module. This involves knowledge of the site's solar radiation, the type and efficiency of the PV module used, mounting approach (stationary or tracking), and tilt angle (module angle measured from the horizontal). With these data in hand, the area of PV array required is simply the total load in watt-hours divided by the PV unit's energy production in watt-hours per unit area.

STEP 5. Check that the array selected is sufficiently large to charge the battery capacity established in Step 3. Assuming, for instance, a 3-day period during which the battery must supply the entire load, about 3½ consecutive sunny days *at the same insolation* will be needed for full recharge (considering losses of approximately 20%). If the facility is to be used year-round and the PV array is sized on the basis of summer insolation, it is necessary to do a calculation for a winter month as well. Insolation data are usually available for both seasons, and average monthly insolation accounts for the appreciable energy available from cloudy skies as well as sunny skies. The result generally indicates a larger PV array requirement for winter months. In such cases, on purely economic grounds, the decision is often to use a small engine generator for battery-charging for winter use only. This is *not* the same as a hybrid system (Fig. 29.8), in which the generator is used year-round to pick up heavy ac loads. Some designers base the PV array size on *minimum* yearly (winter) insolation, reasoning that in other months any wasted overproduction from an array is the price paid for year-round operation without fossil fuels. Others use a median insolation figure, reasoning that power outages will be few and of short duration. Using summer insolation values will minimize the PV array size but probably will require inclusion of a small generator.

An illustrative example using the outlined design procedure should clarify the issues and calculations involved.

EXAMPLE 29.1 Design a stand-alone PV system for a 650-ft^2 (60-m^2) occupied-year-round, off-line cottage located near Prescott, Arizona. In addition to the usual appliances, an evaporative cooler is used during hot summer days. A PV array can be mounted on the south-facing sloping roof at any required angle. Determine the required battery and PV array sizes. State all assumptions.

SOLUTION

STEP 1. Determine the average electric energy consumption for the cottage. Although refrigerators that run on bottled gas are readily available, assume use of an electric refrigerator. Water heating is solar thermal, with a small gas booster heater. Cooking is with bottled gas.

STEP 2. Assume that investigation of local climate conditions indicates occasional periods throughout the year, but primarily in the winter, of 2 to 3 consecutive days of heavy overcast, clouds, and rain.

24-V dc Appliances	Power Draw (W)	Daily Use (h)	Daily Energy Need (Wh)
Mid-sized refrigerator/ freezer	35	24	840
Small color TV	60	4	240
Evaporative cooler[a]	50	8	400
Stereo system	40	2	80
Ceiling fans[a] (3)	3 at 25	4	300
Radios	5	10	50
Incandescent lighting	50	8	400
		Daily use dc	2310 Wh

[a]Summer only.

120-V ac Appliances	Power Draw (W)	Daily Use (h)	Daily Energy Need (Wh)
Fluorescent lighting	80	10	800
Clothes washer	500	0.5	250
Vacuum cleaner	600	0.25	150
Kitchen appliances	400	1	400
Iron	1000	0.25	250
Miscellaneous	100	3	300
		Daily use[a] ac	2150 Wh

[a]Maximum coincident ac load.

Total daily energy usage:

dc =	2310
ac = 2150 Wh × 1.15 (inverter loss)	2473
	4783 Wh

Ampere-hours = (4783 Wh/24 V) = 199, say 200 A-H

STEP 3. Sizing the system battery. Assume use of a deep-cycle flooded-cell lead battery with an appropriate charge controller. These batteries can supply about 80% of their rated ampere-hour capacity. Since the battery will be located indoors, but in an unheated room, it should be derated 15% for ambient temperature for a conservative design. Required battery size in ampere-hours equals:

$$\frac{3 \text{ days} \times 200 \text{ A-H daily load} \times 1.20 \text{ discharge factor}}{0.85 \text{ (temperature derating)}} = 850 \text{ A-H}$$

One type of 850-A-H, 24-V deep-cycle lead–acid battery (using two at 12-V units in series) measures approximately 40 in. long × 15 in. wide × 24 in. high (1020 mm × 380 mm × 610 mm) and weighs about 1500 lb (680 kg).

STEP 4. Sizing the PV array. Because the cottage will be occupied all year, and because the critical performance period is winter, when the sun is low, select a tilt of (latitude +15°) to maximize winter PV production. As the array is roof-mounted and will be relatively large, use a stationary rather than a tracking array. The array must supply the daily energy requirement of 4783 Wh or 4.8 kWh.

Referring to Fig. 29.12, which gives solar radiation data for the Prescott location, obtain the following data: average solar radiation for a PV array facing south at a tilt angle of latitude +15°:

January: 5.5 kWh/m^2/day; average monthly temperature 2.3°C (0.51 kWh/ft^2/day; 36°F)
June: 6.0 kWh/m^2/day; average monthly temperature 19.6°C (0.56 kWh/ft^2/day; 67°F)

Figure 29.13 was drawn using the computer program PVFORM, developed at Sandia National Laboratories. It gives daily average PV array production in Wh/ft^2 as a function of monthly average temperature and monthly average solar radiation in kWh/m^2/day. Using the January and June radiation figures stated previously, obtain from Fig. 29.13:

January: 52 Wh/ft^2 of a PV array (560 Wh/m^2)
June: 53 Wh/ft^2 of a PV array (570 Wh/m^2)

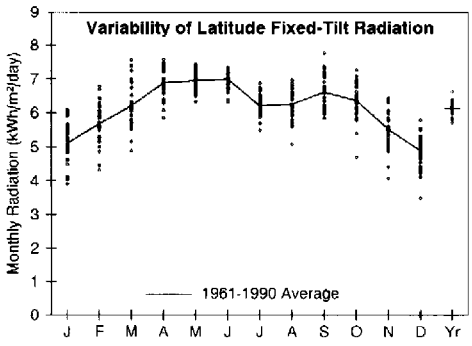
The PV array output is essentially constant throughout the year (with radiation availability and ambient temperature effects offsetting), and no difficulty will be encountered in an "off" season. If the PV modules to be used have an efficiency greater than 10%, then the array output would be increased proportionately.

The required area of PV array, assuming 10% conversion efficiency, is:

PV area =
(4783 Wh/day required) / (52 Wh/day/ft^2 output)
= 91 ft^2 (8.5 m^2)

STEP 5. Because the solar radiation in Prescott, Arizona, is essentially identical for summer and winter, PV production in 3 to 3½ clear days will fully recharge the battery, as explained previously.

Summary. The suggested PV system consists of approximately 90 ft^2 (8.4 m^2) of PV collector, an 850-A-H, 24-V battery, and a 1500-W inverter to handle the initial load plus the anticipated addition of small ac appliances. The summer-only DC cooling loads will likely be offset in winter by additional use of lighting and television and other in-cottage activities.



Prescott, AZ

WBAN NO. 23184

LATITUDE: 34.65° N
LONGITUDE: 112.43° W
ELEVATION: 1531 meters
MEAN PRESSURE: 847 millibars

STATION TYPE: Secondary

Solar Radiation for Flat-Plate Collectors Facing South at a Fixed Tilt (kWh/m²/day), Uncertainty ±9%

Tilt (°)		Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	June	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec	Year
0	Average	3.1	3.9	5.1	6.6	7.5	8.0	6.9	6.3	5.7	4.6	3.4	2.8	5.3
	Min/Max	2.6/3.5	3.2/4.5	4.2/6.1	5.7/7.1	6.8/8.0	7.2/8.5	6.1/7.7	5.1/7.0	5.1/6.7	3.6/5.2	2.8/3.9	2.2/3.2	5.1/5.7
Latitude -15	Average	4.4	5.1	5.9	7.0	7.5	7.7	6.7	6.5	6.5	5.8	4.8	4.1	6.0
	Min/Max	3.5/5.1	4.0/6.0	4.7/7.2	6.0/7.7	6.8/8.0	6.9/8.1	5.9/7.5	5.3/7.2	5.7/7.6	4.4/6.6	3.7/5.5	3.0/4.8	5.6/6.5
Latitude	Average	5.1	5.7	6.2	6.9	7.0	7.0	6.2	6.3	6.6	6.4	5.5	4.9	6.1
	Min/Max	3.9/6.1	4.3/6.8	4.9/7.6	5.8/7.6	6.3/7.4	6.3/7.3	5.5/6.9	5.1/7.0	5.8/7.8	4.7/7.3	4.1/6.4	3.5/5.8	5.7/6.6
Latitude +15	Average	5.5	5.9	6.1	6.4	6.1	6.0	5.4	5.7	6.4	6.5	5.9	5.4	5.9
	Min/Max	4.2/6.6	4.4/7.1	4.8/7.5	5.4/7.1	5.6/6.5	5.4/6.3	4.8/5.9	4.6/6.3	5.6/7.5	4.7/7.5	4.3/6.9	3.7/6.4	5.5/6.4
90	Average	5.0	4.9	4.3	3.5	2.6	2.3	2.3	2.9	4.0	5.0	5.2	5.0	3.9
	Min/Max	3.8/6.1	3.6/5.9	3.4/5.2	3.0/3.8	2.5/2.8	2.2/2.3	2.1/2.4	2.4/3.1	3.6/4.7	3.6/5.8	3.6/6.2	3.4/6.0	3.5/4.2

Solar Radiation for 1-Axis Tracking Flat-Plate Collectors with a North-South Axis (kWh/m²/day), Uncertainty ±9%

Axis Tilt (°)		Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	June	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec	Year
0	Average	4.8	5.9	7.4	9.4	10.6	11.3	9.3	8.8	8.4	7.1	5.4	4.4	7.7
	Min/Max	3.7/5.7	4.4/7.2	5.7/9.5	7.9/10.6	9.4/11.5	9.9/12.0	7.9/10.8	7.0/10.1	7.1/10.2	5.0/8.2	4.0/6.3	3.2/5.2	7.1/8.4
Latitude -15	Average	5.7	6.8	8.1	9.8	10.6	11.2	9.3	9.0	9.0	8.0	6.3	5.4	8.3
	Min/Max	4.3/6.9	5.0/8.3	6.2/10.3	8.2/11.0	9.4/11.6	9.8/11.9	7.8/10.7	7.1/10.4	7.6/10.9	5.6/9.3	4.6/7.5	3.8/6.4	7.5/9.0
Latitude	Average	6.3	7.2	8.3	9.8	10.3	10.7	8.9	8.8	9.1	8.4	6.9	6.0	8.4
	Min/Max	4.7/7.6	5.3/8.8	6.3/10.6	8.1/11.0	9.2/11.3	9.4/11.4	7.6/10.4	7.0/10.2	7.7/11.1	5.8/9.8	4.9/8.2	4.1/7.2	7.6/9.2
Latitude +15	Average	6.6	7.4	8.2	9.4	9.7	10.1	8.4	8.4	8.9	8.5	7.2	6.3	8.3
	Min/Max	4.9/8.1	5.3/9.1	6.2/10.6	7.7/10.6	8.6/10.6	8.8/10.7	7.1/9.7	6.7/9.8	7.5/10.9	5.8/9.9	5.1/8.6	4.3/7.6	7.5/9.0

Average Climatic Conditions

Element	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	June	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec	Year
Temperature (°C)	2.3	3.9	5.9	9.6	14.2	19.6	22.8	21.3	18.1	12.6	6.7	2.6	11.7
Daily Minimum Temp	-5.6	-4.4	-2.2	0.8	5.1	9.9	14.4	13.2	9.3	3.4	-1.9	-5.4	3.1
Daily Maximum Temp	10.2	12.2	14.1	18.3	23.3	29.2	31.2	29.4	26.7	21.8	15.3	10.6	20.2
Record Minimum Temp	-18.3	-18.3	-13.9	-6.1	-3.3	2.2	8.3	4.4	1.1	-7.2	-13.3	-22.8	-22.8
Record Maximum Temp	23.3	25.0	27.2	30.6	35.0	39.4	38.9	37.2	35.0	32.2	26.1	21.1	39.4
HDD, Base 18.3°C	496	403	384	262	138	32	0	0	41	182	350	489	2775
CDD, Base 18.3°C	0	0	0	0	11	68	139	96	32	4	0	0	351
Relative Humidity (%)	59	53	49	38	33	27	44	51	47	46	51	59	47
Wind Speed (m/s)	3.1	3.5	4.1	4.2	4.3	4.1	3.5	3.1	3.4	3.3	3.3	3.0	3.6

Fig. 29.12 *Solar radiation data for Prescott, Arizona. (From* Solar Radiation Data Manual*, National Renewable Energy Laboratory, 1994.)*

Additional Considerations. Using accurate radiation and weather data for a site is necessary for the design of an efficient and workable system. Unfortunately, accurate radiation data, particularly for tilted surfaces, are not always available, and tilted-surface data are not easily derived from horizontal-surface or normal-to-the-sun data. PV installations are frequently planned for sites outside of large cities, and it is usually for these areas that a paucity of data exists. In such instances, data for nearby areas can be used but must be applied judiciously, as insolation conditions can vary sharply within a relatively small geographic area. ■

29.9 DESIGN OF A GRID-CONNECTED PV SYSTEM

The design procedure for an interactive system (with feedback into the utility grid; see Fig. 29.9) differs from the typical stand-alone system design procedure described in Section 29.8. The principal differences are:

- The loads in an interactive system are all ac rather than a mix of ac and dc because the building is fed from the utility line or from the

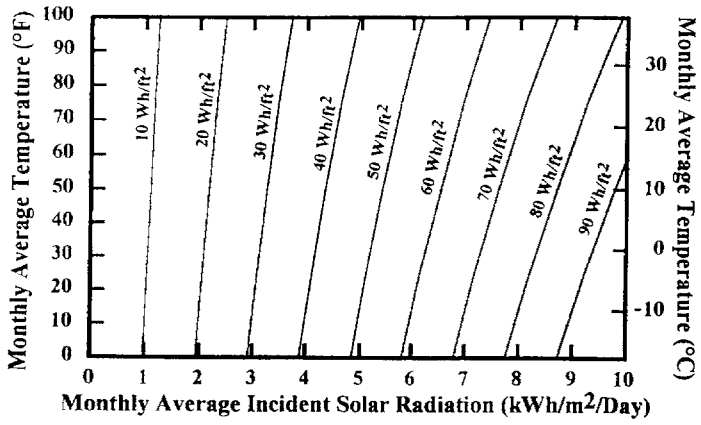


Fig. 29.13 *Daily average PV array production, Wh/ft², as a function of monthly average temperature and incident solar radiation. Production was calculated using PVFORM for a 10% efficient solar cell array at 77°F (25°C) ambient temperature. (Reprinted with permission from "Design for PV," Association of Collegiate Schools of Architecture.)*

PV array dc-to-ac inverter; dc is not available to the loads.

- The existence of a PV system has no bearing on the choice of fuel for appliances. Therefore, for instance, whether to use gas or electric cooking is a matter of fuel availability, costs, and owner preferences.
- Loads are generally heavier in interactive systems because one cannot run out of electric power, as with a stand-alone system. As a result, an all-electric house or a heavily automated house can be a candidate for a PV system as much as any other building.
- Load data can be obtained for a specific design or from general utility-supplied data similar to those shown in Figs. 29.14 and 29.15.
- Inasmuch as no battery or control equipment is used, space allocation in the structure for PV-related equipment is small, and system maintenance is minimal. Also, system life is equivalent to PV array life. Design note: Some areas in North America have recently been hit with uncharacteristic ice storms that have caused unexpected and relatively lengthy power outages. Some owners with grid-connected PV systems in these areas have added a small battery to their systems to meet their essential needs (lights, heating, computer use) through such outages.

Assuming a net-metering arrangement, there is no advantage to coincidence of building electrical loads and peak PV production. This is emphatically not the case where PV production buyback is based upon avoided costs. In such situations, careful scrutiny of the utility's rate schedule may yield cost-saving opportunities in matching loads to lower-rate time periods. For nonresidential buildings, careful consideration of future electric loads should be reflected in architectural planning for future (larger) PV arrays. In this connection, the possibility of using distributed arrays, as in Fig. 29.10, should be studied.

The general design procedure for a grid-connected PV system is as follows:

STEP 1. Establish with the power company the metering arrangement to be used, both physical and financial. The utility can also generally supply reliable data on solar radiation, load patterns, PV array sizing and tracking feasibility, and other relevant design data.

STEP 2. Using a detailed cost analysis, determine the optimum size of the PV array in today's market. Although this analysis will involve technical data, the decision on an optimum size is essentially economic—trading utility cost savings against additional first costs for the PV system within a feasibility window established by the owner. This economic feasibility window will likely be influenced by qualitative factors such as a desire to reduce dependence on the "grid," a desire to be more environmentally friendly, or a desire to use a PV system to obtain green building certification points. Sensitivity analysis can be incorporated into the economic analysis to suggest ranges of reasonable system sizes given

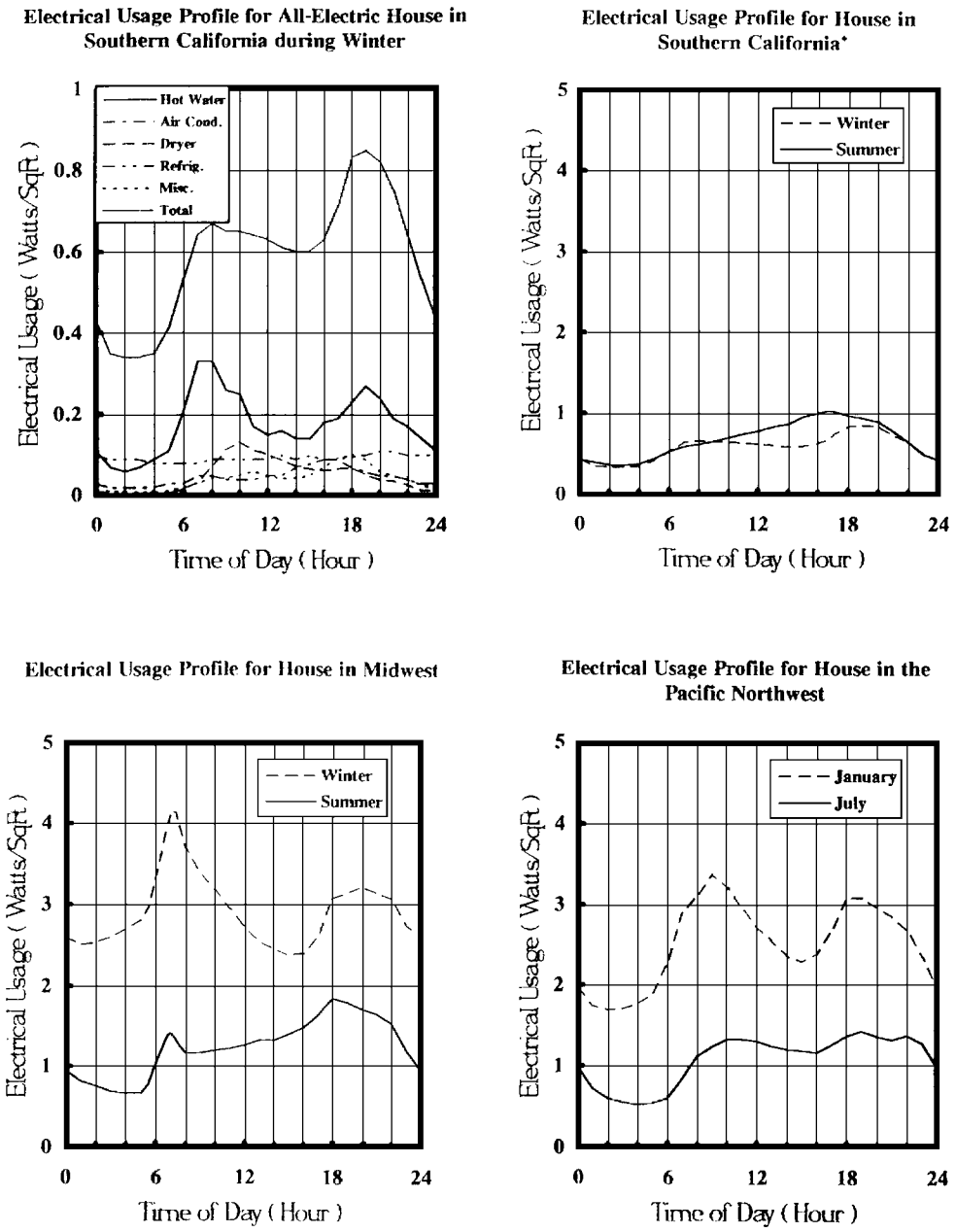


Fig. 29.14 *Typical residential electricity usage profiles based on a 1500-ft^2 (140-m^2) house. (Reprinted with permission from "Design for PV," Association of Collegiate Schools of Architecture.)*

estimated changes in economic variables such as utility rates, tax credits, or future PV array costs.

STEP 3. Using specific data or generalized information similar to that given in Figs. 29.14 and 29.15, determine the required performance characteristics and physical size of the PV array established in Step 2.

In sizing PV systems, the need to provide charge to discharged batteries while simultaneously providing power to building loads should be considered. A system sized just large enough to meet all loads under design conditions will generally not have sufficient output to recharge depleted batteries.

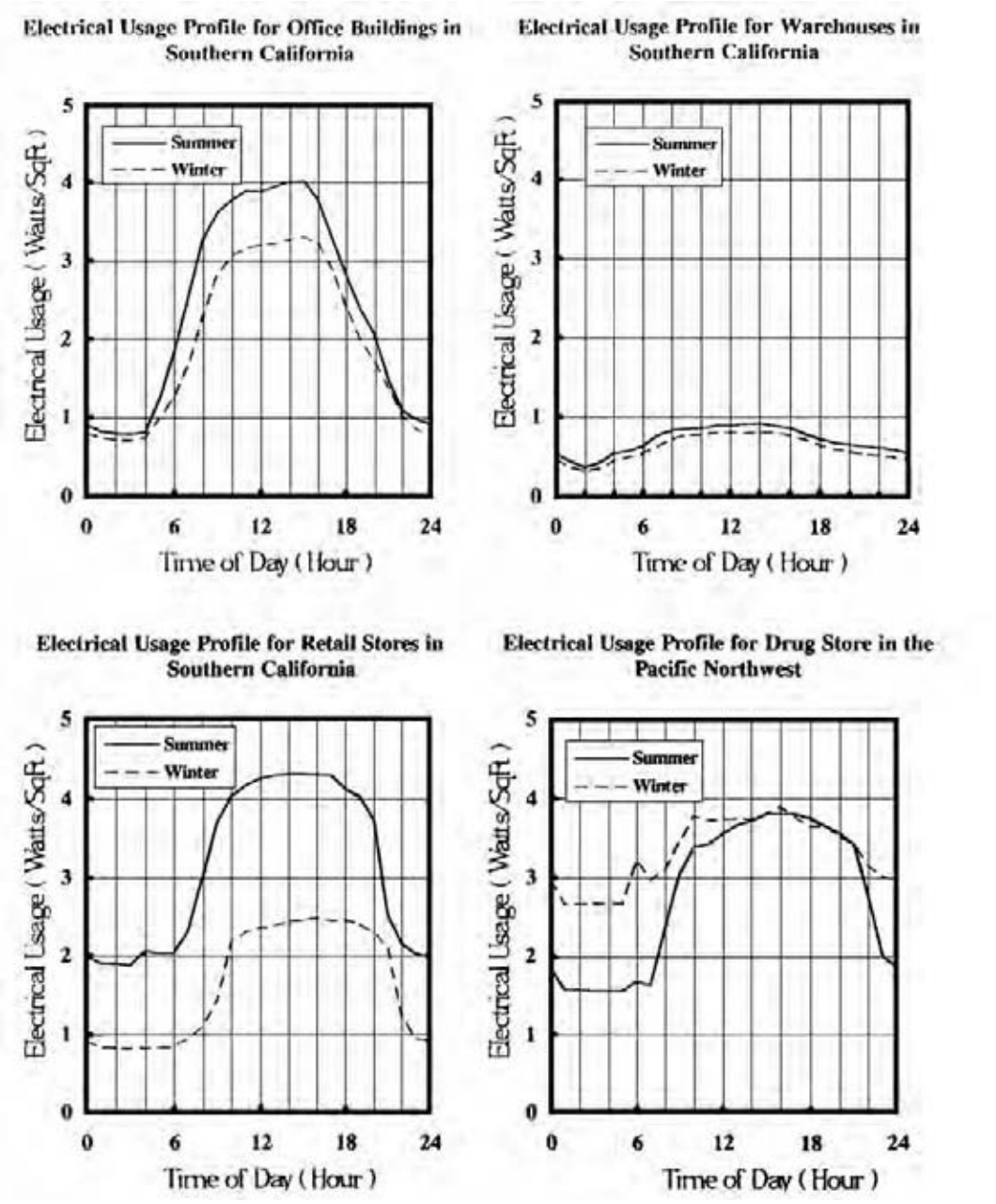


Fig. 29.15 *Typical electric load profiles for nonresidential U.S. buildings. (Reprinted with permission from "Design for PV," Association of Collegiate Schools of Architecture.)*

29.10 CODES AND STANDARDS

PV installations are electrical systems and therefore fall under the purview of NFPA 70, the *National Electrical Code* (NEC) published by the National Fire Protection Association. Article 690 of the *NEC*—"Solar Photovoltaic Systems"—is devoted specifically to such systems, and its requirements, plus those of applicable articles in the remainder of the *NEC*, must be observed in all areas where the *NEC* is mandated by local jurisdiction. In addition, for grid-connected systems, the specific requirements of the local utility must be followed, all equipment approved by them, and the final installation subject to their inspection.

Other codes and standards that contain important information and may be applicable if required by local authorities include (IEC = International Electrotechnical Commission; IEEE = Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers; UL = Underwriters Laboratories):

IEC 61194 Ed. 1.0 b:1992: *Characteristic Parameters of Stand-Alone Photovoltaic (PV) Systems*
IEC 61727 Ed. 1.0 b:1995: *Photovoltaic (PV) Systems—Characteristics of the Utility Interface*
IEC 61215-1993: *Crystalline Silicon Terrestrial Photovoltaic (PV) Modules—Design Qualification and Type Approval*
IEC 61173 Ed. 1.0 b:1992: *Overvoltage Protection for Photovoltaic (PV) Power Generating Systems*
IEC 61277 Ed. 1.0 B:1995: *Terrestrial Photovoltaic (PV) Power Generating Systems—General and Guide*
IEC 61702 Ed. 1.0 b:1995: *Rating of Direct Coupled Photovoltaic (PV) Pumping Systems*
IEEE 1013-2000: *Recommended Practice for Sizing Lead–Acid Batteries for Photovoltaic (PV) Systems*
IEEE 937-2007: *Recommended Practice for Installation and Maintenance of Lead–Acid Batteries for Photovoltaic (PV) Systems*
UL 1703-2002: *Standard for Flat-Plate Photovoltaic Modules and Panels*
UL 1741-1999: *Standard for Inverters, Converters, and Controllers and Interconnection System Equipment for Use with Distributed Energy Resources*

As with most standards, these are regularly updated; verification of the most current version is advised.

29.11 PV INSTALLATIONS

PV power appears to be one of the dominant trends of the future. PV and buildings are too logical a connection to not develop into the norm. Even today, with unfavorable economics, numerous notable examples of PV installations exist. Several interesting examples are presented here.

Example 1: PV integrated with solar hot water collectors (Fig. 29.16). This is an interesting application that matches resource with need and obviates the need for storage of the PV system's energy production. The PV output drives a pump that circulates solar-heated water. The pump operates only when there is enough solar radiation to heat the water, which means there is also enough radiation to drive the pump via the PV module. No batteries or grid backup are required.

Example 2: An early example of BIPV (building-integrated photovoltaics). A Georgia Power demonstration house (Fig. 29.17) in Atlanta that uses PV modules as the roofing (south-facing) for the house. The replacement of redundant elements (such as separate PV and roofing layers) and integration of components are hallmarks of BIPV.

Example 3: Photovoltaics at the Woods Hole Research Center (Fig. 29.18), Falmouth, Massachusetts. This green building features a substantial PV installation. The system is a net-metering arrangement (as described earlier). For further information, see the case study on this project presented in Chapter 1.

Example 4: PV on a solar racer (Fig. 29.19), Australia, 1983. An early example of TIPV (transportation-integrated photovoltaics)? The lessons presented in this example actually apply well to buildings—reduce the load and optimize the collectors.

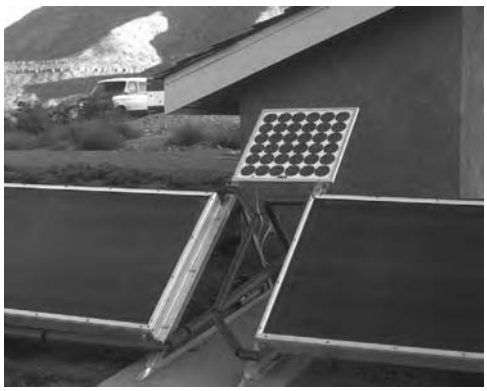
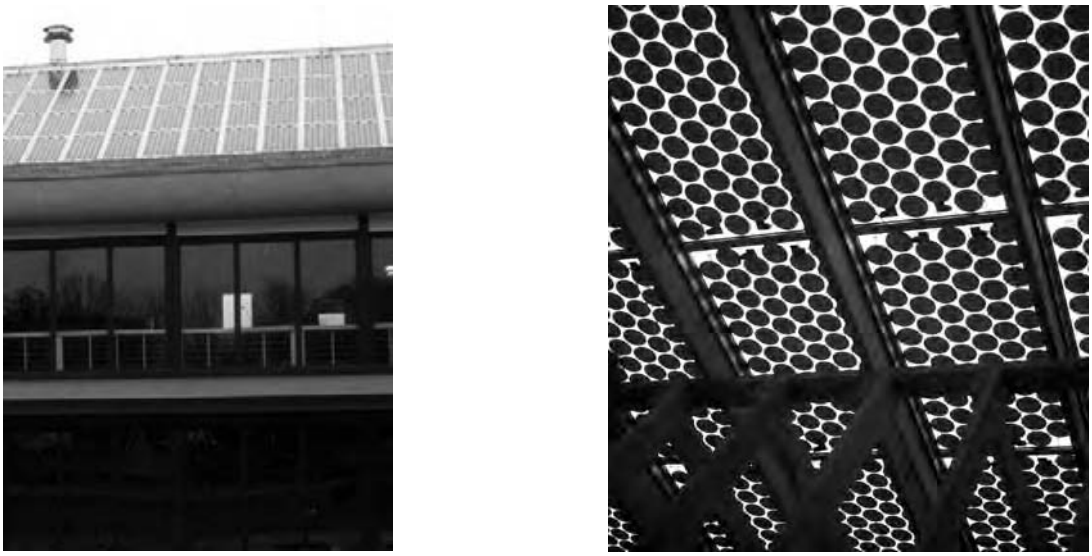


Fig. 29.16 *Synergistic PV application—pumping hot water produced by solar collectors for a residence in the Southwestern United States. (Photo ©2004 by Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 29.17 *An early example of building-integrated PVs, Atlanta, Georgia. (a) South façade of a residence with a PV array. (b) View of the roof from inside the attic, thinking of the roof plane as a solar transformer rather than as a solar barrier. (Photos © 2004 by Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 29.18 *PV at the Woods Hole Research Center, Falmouth, Massachusetts. (a) Low-slope PV array on the roof of the building. (b) An inverter (one of several) and a disconnect switch are also located on the roof. (Photos © 2004 by Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*



Fig. 29.19 *The PV car, a solar racer, after crossing Australia (not a minor feat). (Photo © 2004 by Walter Grondzik; all rights reserved.)*

29.12 CASE STUDY—PV

Lillis Business Complex, the University of Oregon

Project Basics

- Location: Eugene, Oregon
- Latitude: 44.1 N; longitude: 123.2 W; elevation: 425 ft (130 m) above sea level
- Heating degree days: 4546 base 65ºF (2528 base 18.3ºC); cooling degree days: 300 base 65ºF (167 base 18.3ºC); annual precipitation: 43 in. (1092 mm); cloud cover: 75 clear days a year, 82 partly cloudy, and 209 cloudy
- Building type: Institutional—classrooms, offices, common areas
- 196,500 ft^2 (18,255 m^2); four occupied stories
- Completed October 2003
- Client: University of Oregon
- Design team: SRG Partnership with Solar Design Associates (PV) and consultants

Background. The Lillis Business Complex is a new academic facility situated adjacent to a major circulation axis on the University of Oregon campus in Eugene. The building has the size, character, and location to serve as a teaching tool for thousands of students who walk by on any given day. North American universities as a rule (with notable exceptions) have not been in the forefront of the green design movement. This project is one of the exceptions.

Context. The Lillis Business Complex is an example of what can happen when various positive forces come into alignment on a project. In this case, an aware client seeking innovation partnered with a local utility promoting the use of alternative energy sources on a campus with an active Energy Studies in Buildings Laboratory (ESBL). The resulting synergy enabled this project to evolve into its final form without too much compromising of objectives. Utility support for the PV system was critical to its inclusion in the project; the utility will buy PV power output at $0.25 per kWh under a 10-year agreement.

Design Intent. The Lillis Business Complex was intended to be an example of innovation, particularly with respect to energy and the environment. An aggressive energy goal of 40% beyond the minimum efficiency required by code set a



Fig. 29.20 *South façade of the Lillis Business Complex, Eugene, Oregon. The atrium glazing incorporates PV cells in a recent example of building-integrated PVs. (Photo © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

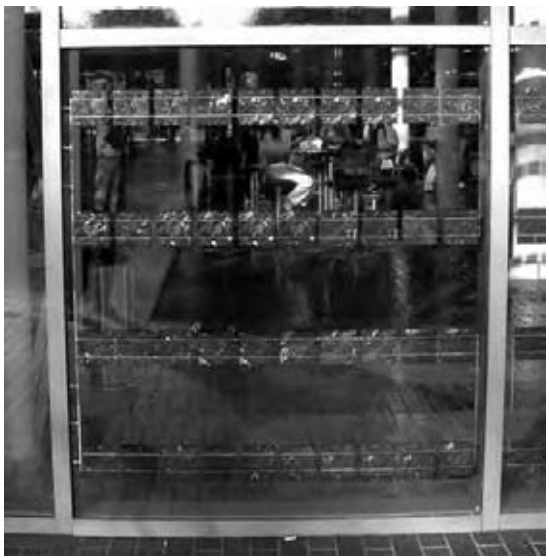


Fig. 29.21 *Glazing panel on the Lillis Business Complex showing embedded PV cells. The glazing essentially acts as a power plant while still providing for views and daylighting. (Photo © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



Fig. 29.22 *Close-up view of an embedded polycrystalline PV cell at the Lillis Business Complex with interconnecting conductor strips. (Photo © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*



Fig. 29.23 *View from the atrium of the Lillis Business Complex; the integrated PV cells provide partial shading and a lively lighting pattern. (Photo © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

challenging benchmark for many design decisions. Other green design features flowed from the intent to achieve Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) certification for the project.

Design Criteria and Validation. A desire for LEED certification provided the general criteria for the green features of the building (see Appendix G.2). The specific "40% better" energy benchmark provided the criterion for energy performance. Extensive modeling and analysis of concepts and systems were conducted by various consultants (including ESBL) during the course of the design process as a means of verifying design approaches and implementation methods. The building was commissioned.

Key Design Features

- The third-largest PV array in Oregon, with a peak capacity of about 45 kW of electricity
- A green roof, the first application of this design approach at the university
- Extensive use of daylighting, involving lightshelves and solar shading devices
- Efficient electric lighting using dimmable fluorescent lamps with electronic ballasts and daylight sensor controls
- "Smart plugs" that are wired to occupancy sensors to turn off devices in unoccupied offices
- An integrated natural ventilation system to accommodate outdoor air needs (for acceptable indoor air quality [IAQ]), to cool the space and people, and to cool the thermal mass; ceiling fans augment the ventilation system
- Thermal mass to provide storage capacity for ventilation cooling and help the building heat up more slowly in summer and cool more slowly in winter



Fig. 29.24 *Fisheye view of the Lillis Business Complex atrium. The south-facing panels of the rectangular skylights also contain embedded PV cells. (Photo © 2004 by Alison Kwok; all rights reserved.)*

Post-Occupancy Validation Methods and Performance Data. The building is too recently occupied to provide much in the way of verifiable performance data (although a POE study is under way as of this writing). Instead, more information on the PV components is given here. The total PV system output is approximately 45 kW peak (dc). There are four distinct PV elements in the building. These include the PV cells integrated into the south-facing glass curtain wall at the entry, which produce about 6 kW (dc), and 2.7 kW (dc) of PV cells incorporated into skylights above the atrium. These two PV applications are good examples of BIPV. The PV cells are integrated into the glazing units such that these units are also the PV modules. In addition, another 6 kW (dc) of PV units are installed on sloping penthouse roof panels, and another 30 kW (dc) installed horizontally. Each element of the PV system is connected to separate inverter systems to maximize system output.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION

Brown, G. Z., et al. 2004. "A Lesson in Green," in *Solar Today,* Vol. 18, No. 2.

References and Resources

Various standards from IEC, IEEE, and UL dealing with PV systems are presented in Section 29.10.

ACSA. 1993. *Design for PV.* Association of Collegiate Schools of Architecture. Washington, DC.

CIBSE. 2000. *Understanding Building Integrated Photovoltaics.* The Chartered Institute of Building Service Engineers. London.

Florida Solar Energy Center. 2008. Solar Electricity: http://www.fsec.ucf.edu/en/consumer/solar_electricity/index.htm

Markvart, T. (ed.). 2000. *Solar Electricity*, 2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Messenger, R. and J. Ventre. 2003. *Photovoltaic Systems Engineering*, 2nd ed. CRC Press. Boca Raton, FL.

National Institute of Building Sciences. 2008. Whole Building Design Guide: Building Integrated Photovoltaics (BIPV): http://www.wbdg.org/resources/bipv.php

PVWatts: A Performance Calculator for Grid-Connected PV Systems. National Renewable Energy Laboratory. http://rredc.nrel.gov/solar/codes_algs/PVWATTS/version1/

Sandia National Laboratories. 2004. Photovoltaic Systems Research & Development: http://www.sandia.gov/pv/

Strong, S. 1994. *The Solar Electric House: Energy for the Environmentally-Responsive, Energy-Independent Home.* Sustainability Press. Still River, MA.

U.S. Department of Energy. 2008. Solar Energy Technologies Program: Photovoltaics: http://www1.eere.energy.gov/solar/photovoltaics.html

PART VIII

SIGNAL SYSTEMS



Modern buildings, from the simplest residence to the most complex industrial facility, depend extensively upon electrical, signal, alarm, control, and communication systems in their day-to-day functions. The systems discussed in this part of the book deal with security, music/sound, intercom, clock and program, paging, and building automation. (Fire and smoke detection and alarms are covered in Chapter 24.) Individual, single-purpose systems are discussed from the point of view of a user—that is, emphasizing system application rather than design.

Operating principles are presented, and application issues are related to available equipment. Although equipment is constantly being improved, operating and application principles remain substantially constant, thereby permitting the designer to readily adapt newly available hardware to existing system arrangements.

In terms of building automation, which is essentially a complex control system with sophisticated hardware, the discussion is limited to system architecture and application issues. A discussion of hardware, protocols, and software would be too detailed and would necessarily lag behind the times in a field that doubles its computing power, and therefore its control capability, roughly every 18 months.

CHAPTER 30

Signal Systems

30.1 INTRODUCTION

NO AREA OF EQUIPMENT DESIGN AND application in buildings has seen such rapid and sustained changes as that of signal equipment. Signal equipment encompasses all communication and control equipment, the function of which is to assist in ensuring proper building operation. Included are: surveillance equipment such as that for fire and access control; audio and visual communication equipment such as telephone, intercom, and television (both public and closed-circuit); and timing devices such as clock and program equipment and all types of time-based controls. Specifically excepted is the area of occupants' data processing, which is not within the province of the building designer, except for equipment space allocations.

Clock and program equipment, which once was limited to schools and some industrial facilities, is now incorporated into building mechanical equipment control systems. Closed-circuit TV, which once was limited to classroom and college use, is now commonplace in mercantile area surveillance systems. The hundreds of signals generated throughout a large facility are logged, channeled, and controlled by means of specially programmed computers and microprocessors. Signal systems that once were separate and distinct are now frequently combined and serve multiple purposes.

A detailed study of the design and application of such diverse equipment is beyond the scope of this book or, for that matter, of any single book. This chapter, however, discusses the basic operation of the various systems, some of the equipment available, its application to different types of facilities, and the impact of these systems on building spaces. The types of facilities considered are single and multiple residences, schools, stores, office buildings, and industrial facilities. Hospitals and laboratories are combinations of these types, but they are too highly specialized to be discussed here.

30.2 PRINCIPLES OF INTRUSION DETECTION

To understand the design of intrusion detection systems, it is necessary first to understand the characteristics of the commonly available intrusion detectors (sensors) on which these systems are based. Once an intrusion event has been detected by a sensor, the signal must be processed and appropriate measures taken. This may include sounding loud alarms, turning on lights, and/or sending signals to central proprietary or private surveillance services or police.

(a) Sensors with Normally Open (NO) Contacts

These devices are no longer used in any reputable system because the circuits are unsupervised.

As a result, a defective circuit does not indicate trouble, and the system is thereby rendered ineffective.

(b) Simple Normally Closed (NC) Contact Sensors

These come in a variety of designs, the most common of which are magnetic contacts for doors and windows, spring-loaded plunger contacts for doors and windows, window foil, and pressure/tension devices. They operate to transmit an alarm signal, as noted previously. Used in closed, supervised circuits, they provide a trouble signal when the sensors or circuits are damaged.

(c) Mechanical Motion Detectors

Where window foil or fixed contacts are impractical, a mechanical motion detector can be used. This device is basically a spring-mounted contact suspended inside a second contact surface. Any appreciable motion of the surface on which the device is placed causes the contacts to "make" *momentarily*, turning in an alarm. These devices are very sensitive and can be activated by sonic booms, wind, and even a heavy truck passing by. For this reason, most units are provided with sensitivity adjustment.

(d) Photoelectric Devices

These devices operate on the simple principle of beam interruption. When the beam is received, a contact in the receiver is closed. Interruption of the beam causes the contact to open, setting off the alarm. Older devices of this design use a visible beam (light) and rely for concealment on the fact that light is seen only when reflected from an intervening object. This is quite effective indoors, but outdoors, dust, insects, birds, and so on can show the location of the beam, permitting it to be circumvented. Birds and small animals can set it off, too. Dispersion of light also limits the throw of the devices when used outdoors. Modern units use lasers or infrared (IR) beams, which are less easily detected and can be arranged to distinguish between intruders and other disturbances. These latter devices have a longer effective range for exterior use. When a laser beam is used, the signal can be picked up, amplified, and retransmitted in a different direction, thus establishing a perimeter security "fence" from a single source.

(e) Passive Infrared (PIR) "Presence" Detector

This device (Fig. 30.1*a*) acts on the principle that all objects emit IR radiation, or heat. The amount radiated depends primarily on the object's temperature and secondarily on its material, color, and texture. The PIR sensor uses a lens or mirror that focuses on a small area and concentrates the IR radiation collected from the conic volume of space that falls between the device and the target area of the IR sensor, forming, in effect, a conical beam of coverage called a *zone*. IR radiation in an area that is undisturbed (not necessarily unoccupied) changes very slowly (because object temperatures change very slowly). As a result, any rapid change in the IR reading of a zone indicates an object entering (or leaving) the space, and this triggers an alarm. These detectors can be used as occupancy sensors to turn off lights when occupants leave a space.

The ability to focus on a particular area is utilized to cover areas both horizontally and vertically by the simple expedient of using multiple lenses or mirrors to create multiple zones that cover any desired volume of space (see Fig. 15.28). Also, inasmuch as the IR detector is not intrinsically sensitive to motion, but only to heat, it is usable where motion in the monitored area is unavoidable. The principal disadvantage of PIR detectors is that rapid temperature changes caused by direct insolation, a cold breeze, a heater turning on, and the like can cause false alarms. PIR detectors can be, and are, applied as sensitive motion detectors by using a multibeam (zone) unit. Motion is detected as changes in the IR radiation of adjacent zones or in the radiation of a zone (target) with respect to the background, both of which characterize motion.

(f) Motion Detectors

These devices (Fig. 30.1*b*), which operate at either microwave or ultrasonic frequencies, detect motion

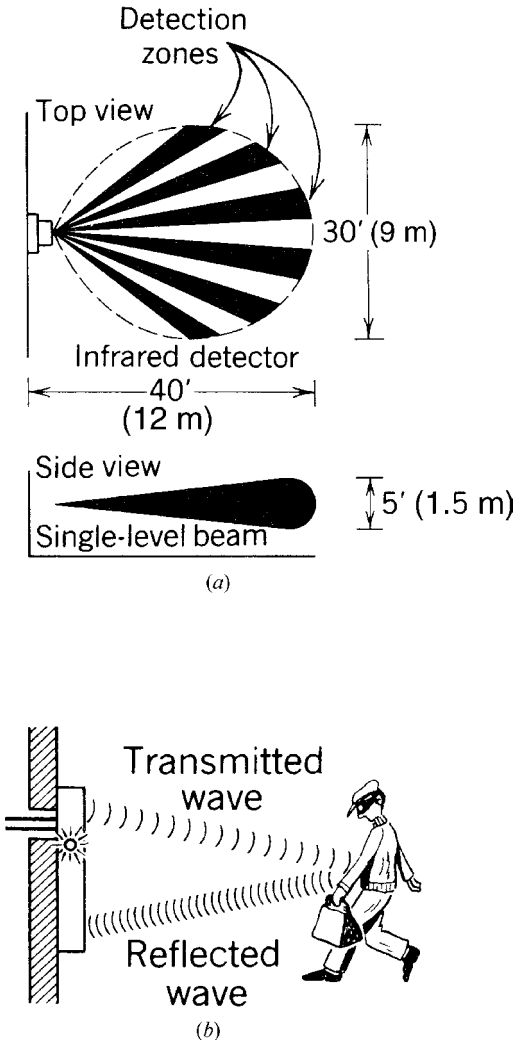


Fig. 30.1 *(a) Passive infrared detectors give generally a 30 × 40 ft (9 m × 12.2 m) oval protective zone, starting as a narrow beam and widening with distance. Focusability permits exact coverage of any area in a space. Units are also readily available with multiple vertical sensitivity stacked beams that give the same type of high-level interbeam vertical sensitivity as is available from multiple horizontal beams (zones). (b) Motion detectors depend upon the Doppler effect. They detect changes in the frequency of a signal reflected from a moving object. Sensitivity is highest when relative motion is greatest, that is, when the intruder is moving directly toward (or away from) the detector.*

in the protected area by the Doppler effect. (This is the effect that changes the perceived sound of a car horn or train whistle as the vehicle passes.) Any moving body changes the received frequency of the signal it reflects, and an alarm sounds. However, because the Doppler effect depends on relative motion between the source and the moving body, an intruder moving laterally may go undetected if sensitivity has been reduced to avoid false alarms. Therefore, units should be located so that the path of an intruder is as nearly as possible directly toward or away from the detector. Ultrasonic units are cheaper than microwave units but can be disturbed by strong air turbulence and very loud noises. Microwave units are undisturbed by air or noise, but because they (like ordinary TV signals) penetrate solids, they can be affected by motion outside the protected area.

(g) Acoustic Detectors

These units alarm when the noise level exceeds a preset maximum. Alternatively, they can be arranged to respond to a particular range of frequencies corresponding to the noise of breaking glass, forced entry, or whatever is desired. Although applied principally in security systems, they can also be used as occupancy sensors for control of lighting.

A selection of the devices described in this section is shown in Fig. 30.2.

As with fire detectors, a balance must be struck between the sensitivity of detectors and the nuisance of false alarms, as, unfortunately, increasing the former increases the latter as well. One very effective method of reducing nuisance alarms is to use multiple detectors with different technologies that, in effect, verify each other. Thus, as with occupancy detectors, units are available that combine PIR and ultrasonic detectors in a single housing. Such a unit does not transmit an alarm until both detectors indicate intrusion. This dual technique is applicable to area and perimeter protection as well as portal surveillance.

The previous discussion and that immediately following refer only to intrusion detection (i.e., indication of a human presence where it should not be). *Access control*, which is another area of security design, deals with controlled entry to an area. It is generally more complex than intrusion control, and uses different technologies and a different philosophy of design (see Section 30.24).



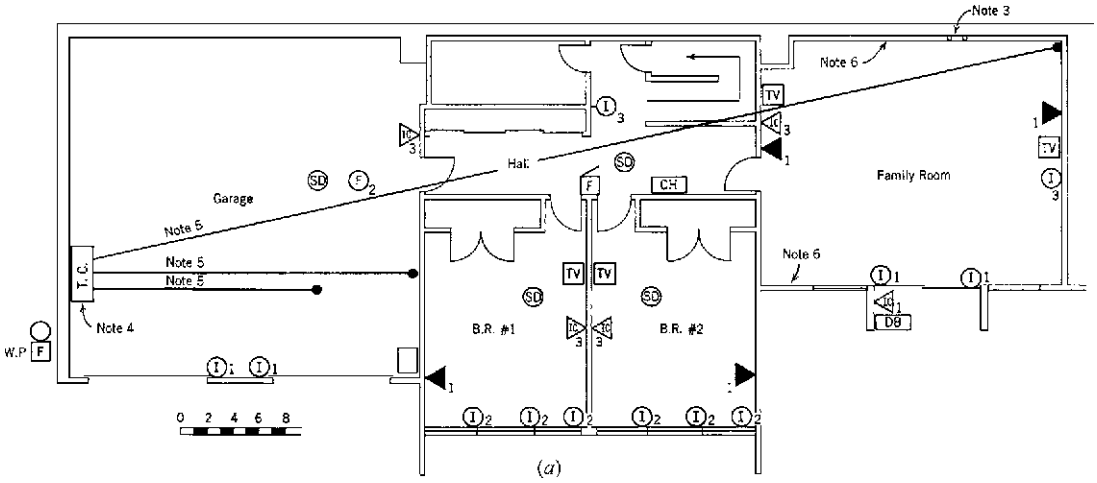
Fig. 30.2 *Typical intrusion detection equipment: (1) Passive infrared detector. Maximum sensitivity is a 4°F (2°C) differential between target and background and a target motion of 2½ in./s (64 mm/s). The unit is approximately 6 in. (150 mm) deep. These detectors are available with different coverage patterns and a maximum coverage of 2000 ft² (185 m²). (2) High-sensitivity, multizone, wide-angle passive infrared detector gives coverage of 17 zones horizontally and vertically. (3) Ultrasonic detectors arranged to give broad coverage of approximately 200 × 50 ft (61 × 15 m). Each unit is 11 × 5½ × 3½ in (280 × 140 × 90 mm). (4) High-sensitivity, balanced signal type of ultrasonic detector differentiates between an intrusion signal and random environmental signals, thus reducing false alarms. (5) Unobtrusive, button-type ultrasonic sensor intended for ceiling mounting. (6–8) System control panel, annunciator, and mechanical alarm interface units. (Photos courtesy of Sentrol, an SLC Technologies Company.)*

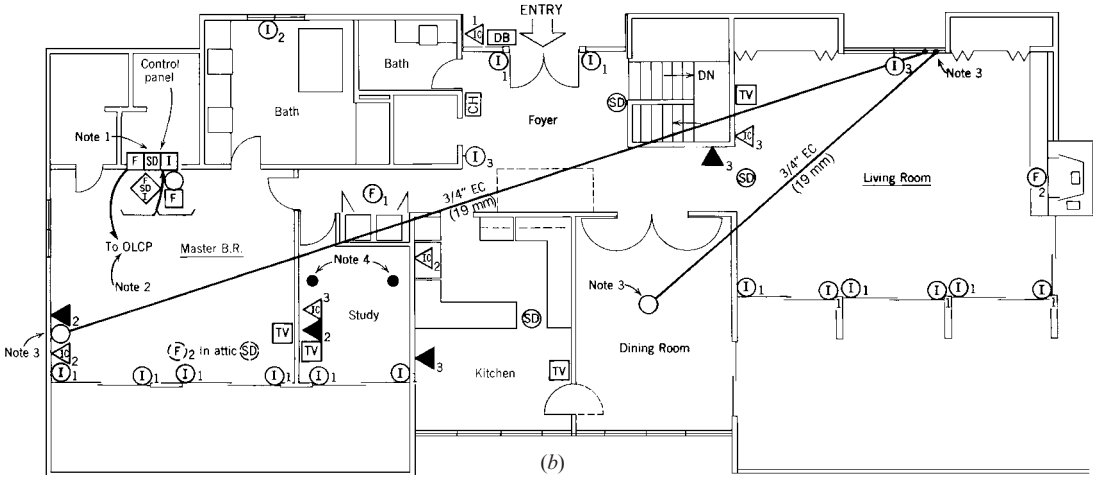
PRIVATE RESIDENTIAL SYSTEMS

30.3 GENERAL INFORMATION

Modern private residences utilize a variety of signal devices that greatly enhance their functional value. Indeed, automation in residences, which includes control of and by a host of signal systems, is today a key factor in perceived property value. Figure 30.3 shows a conventional, nonautomated residential plan providing what would be considered *minimally* adequate sound and signal equipment.

In general, all signal systems require a signal source; equipment to process the signal, including transmitting it; and finally, a means of indicating the signal, whether audibly, visually, or on a permanent hard copy. A complex system still falls into this threefold category except that the individual items of equipment and their functions become more sophisticated. Most designers are familiar with the sophisticated automated systems available in the residential market that handle security, fire alarm, time functions, lighting, and so on. They function on dedicated wiring, control bus, or power line carrier (PLC) signals (high-frequency signals impressed on electric power wiring). To





Notes:

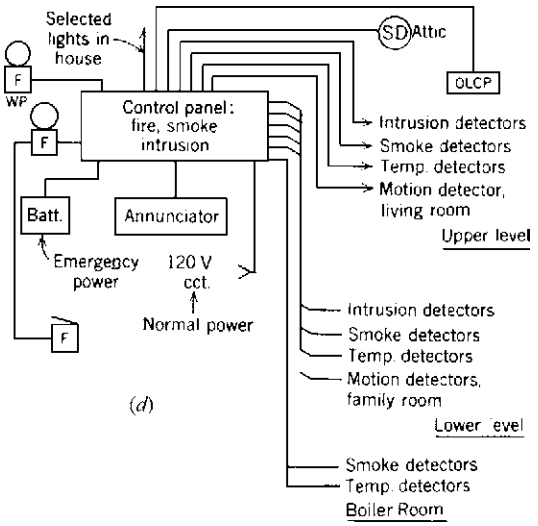
1. *The fire detection, smoke detection, and intrusion alarm devices all operate from a single control panel; see (d). The alarm bell is common. The annunciator indicates the device that operated and its location.*
2. *The connection between the signal control panel and OLCP (outside lighting control panel) activates all outside lights when a signal device trips. Selected lights inside the house can also be connected to turn on. See riser diagram (d).*
3. *Two ¾-in. (20-mm) empty plastic conduits, extending from 4-in. (100-mm) boxes in living room wall down to family room and terminating in 4-in. (100-mm) flush boxes. Boxes to be 18 in. (460 mm) above the finished floor (AFF) and fitted with blank covers. Also, extend a ¾-in. (20-mm) empty plastic conduit from one 4-in. (100-mm) box in living room to 12-in. (300-mm) speaker backbox recessed in dining room ceiling. Locate in the field. From the second 4-in. (100-mm) box in living room extend a ¾-in. (20-mm) empty plastic conduit to an empty 4-in. (100-mm) box in the master bedroom, 18 in. (460 mm) AFF. Finish with blank cover.*
4. *Coordinate the location and size of the telephone entrance service cabinet (or box) with the phone company. Extend a ¾-in. (20-mm) empty plastic conduit from the telephone entrance cabinet to each of the signal raceways in the study. Extend one 1¼-in. (32-mm) or two ¾-in. (20-mm) empty plastic conduits from the cabinet to the empty signal raceway around the perimeter of the family room.*
5. *Provide a ¾-in. (20-mm) EC through the wall and capped at both ends, for entry of cables from an exterior satellite dish. Coordinate location with TV/CATV/satellite dish contractor.*
6. *Boiler room to contain smoke detector, fixed 190°F (88°C) heat detector, and remote station intercom outlet.*

Fig. 30.3 *Signal systems in a residence. (a) Electrical signal equipment plan—lower level. (b) Electrical signal equipment plan—upper level. (c) Symbol list for signal equipment. (d) Signal equipment riser diagram.*

Symbols for signal equipment

F	6-in. ac vibrating bell, concealed in recessed box, with grill cloth cover, 84 in. AFF.
WP F	8-in. weatherproof bell or siren
F	Buzzer, ac, similar installation to above
F 1	Temp. detector; rate-of-rise and fixed temp., resettable
2	Temp. detector; fixed temp., 190°C
SD	Smoke detector with resettable fixed temp. detector.
I 1	Intrusion detector, magnetic door switch.
2	Intrusion detector; magnetic window switch.
3	Intrusion detector; electronic, motion detector.
	Annunciator, custom design
CP	Central panel for fire alarm, smoke detector, and intrusion
DB	Door bell
CH	Chimes signal
1	Prewired phone outlet; jack 12 in. (305 mm) AFF.
2	Prewired phone outlet; fixed, 12 in. (305 mm) AFF.
3	Prewired phone outlet; fixed wall outlet 60 in. (1.5 m) AFF.
IC 1	Intercom outlet, outdoor, W.P. 60 in. (1.5 m) AFF.
2	Intercom outlet, master station 60 in. (1.5 m) AFF.
3	Intercom outlet, remote station 60 in. (1.5 m) AFF.
TV	Prewired TV antenna outlet, 12 in. (305 mm) AFF.
TC	Telephone cabinet

(*c*)



(*d*)

Fig. 30.3 *(Continued)*

focus on the basics, the following descriptions consider such systems separately, despite the clear trend toward consolidated control.

Residential fire alarm systems are covered in Chapter 24. The components and design of such systems, including detectors, circuit arrangement, and the like, are also discussed there.

Table 30.1 lists the systems and equipment found in the residence shown in Fig. 30.3 by the functions of source, processing, and indication. Note that the fire alarm, smoke detection, and intrusion alarm systems have been combined into a single system. This simplifies operation and avoids unnecessary equipment duplication. As the more complex systems are discussed, it will be seen that the basic functions remain unchanged.

As shown in Fig. 30.3, a single control panel can serve multiple residential systems. An annunciator, either integral with the panel or in a separate adjacent enclosure, displays the nature and location of the alarm device that has "tripped." A riser diagram for this residence is shown in Fig. 30.3*d*. The alarm devices themselves are not shown on the riser because they appear on the plans.

TABLE 30.1 Elements of Residential Signal Systems

System Type	Signal Generator	Signal Processor[a]	Signal Transducer
Fire alarm	Temperature and smoke detectors	Control cabinet(s)	Bells, siren annunciator, buzzer
Intrusion alarm	Door and window switches, motion detectors	Control cabinet	Bells, buzzer, annunciator, siren
Emergency call system	Pull, pushbutton	Control cabinet	Bells, annunciator, corridor lights
Intercom	Microphone, speaker–microphone	Amplifier	Speakers in various stations

[a]Proper wiring and switching are included under this heading in all cases.

30.4 RESIDENTIAL INTRUSION ALARM SYSTEMS

Although any or all of the devices described in Section 30.2 may be used, residences normally utilize door and window magnetic switches, as well as PIR and/or motion detectors, as shown in Fig. 30.3. A switch at the end of a long cord is also often provided so that a resident may set off the alarm manually if an intruder is heard. If the system employs the same audible signal devices as the fire system, the resulting sound should be distinctive so that the nature of the alarm can be discerned aurally. Intrusion alarm systems can be continuously supervised by connection with central stations of security companies that supervise the system and either respond directly to an alarm call or notify local police of any illegal entry.

30.5 RESIDENTIAL INTERCOM SYSTEMS

Interest in home intercom systems seems to come and go. Although available with various features, a basic intercom system comprises one or more masters and several remote stations, one of which monitors the front door, allowing it to be answered from various points within the home. Where desired, a closed-circuit TV system can be added so that visual identification at entrances, in addition to voice communication, is available. In general, master stations allow selective calling, whereas remote stations operating through the masters are nonselective. The systems are particularly useful when left in the open (monitor) position for remote "baby-sitting." The applicability of such systems to residences with outbuildings should be apparent. As the wiring is low voltage and low power, multiconductor color-coded intercom cable is generally used, run concealed within walls, attics, and basements.

Systems are also available that impose voice signals on the house power wiring. This has the advantage of eliminating separate wiring and making remote stations portable—they are connected simply by plugging into a power outlet.

30.6 RESIDENTIAL TELECOMMUNICATION AND DATA SYSTEMS

Prior to court decisions permitting users to install their own telephone equipment, the actual wiring within a structure was done only by the utility in the user's raceway system. For some years now, work beyond the service entrance may be done by the owner in a fashion similar to other signal work. In residential work, the telephone company normally follows the route of the electric service, entering the building overhead or underground as desired. In both cases, a separate service entrance means must be provided: if aerial, a sleeve through the wall; if underground, a separate entrance conduit. Unless a residence has many entering lines, no source of power is required for the telephone equipment.

Wiring of telephone instruments *after* completion of a residence requires a surface-mounted cable that, even if skillfully installed, is unsightly at best and is usually completely objectionable. Prewiring consists of running the cables within the wall framing and into empty device boxes to which instruments are later connected. The huge increase in the number of private residences with multiple phone lines, dedicated fax lines, and special high-speed data

transfer lines connected to home office outlets has made telephone planning as much of a necessity as planning for any other system. This is not only true where residences are designed with a dedicated working-office space. The ease with which modern telecommunications has made it possible to work at home is resulting in an exponential increase in work-at-home situations. Failure to provide for multiple lines with adequate distribution is improper planning. In this regard, a locally franchised telephone company's technical representative can offer valuable planning advice. The system of raceways, boxes, and outlets dedicated to communications systems of all sorts, generally excluding audio signals, has come to be known as *premise wiring*.

30.7 PREMISE WIRING

As noted in Section 30.6, premise wiring refers generally to communication system wiring, including raceways and outlets, and, paradoxically, frequently *not* including wiring. The "wiring" is installed by the various communication contractors and includes fiber-optic (FO) cabling under the category of wiring, despite the fact that wiring is traditionally understood to be metallic. The use of FO cables for most data cabling will undoubtedly increase in the near future because of their proven advantages in bandwidth, freedom from interference, and high-level security.

Most premise wiring raceways are surface-mounted because access is frequently required and

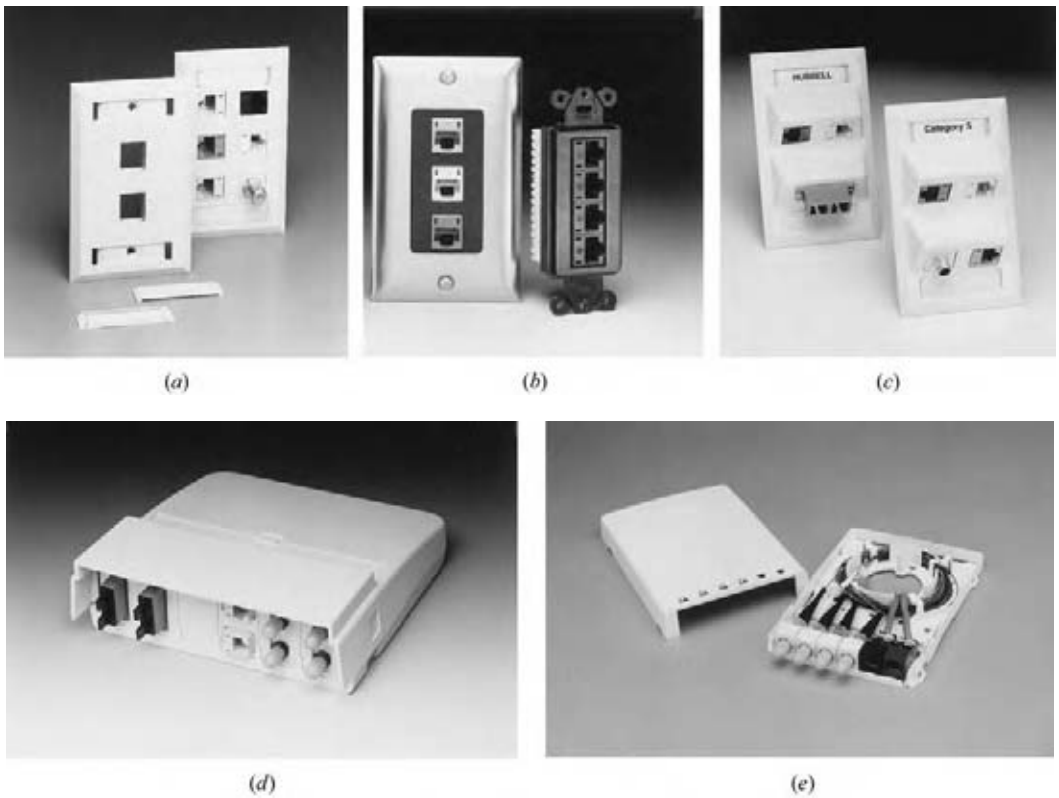


Fig. 30.4 *Typical boxes, devices, and plates used in data and telecommunication wiring systems. (a) Single- and double-gang flush wall plates with various jacks and connectors. (b) Communication outlets styled to match standard rectangular electrical wiring device plates. (c) Angled faceplates with a variety of jacks and connectors. (d) Multimedia outlet that accepts both copper and fiber-optic (FO) cable connections. (e) Multimedia FO outlet with a built-in storage spool for storage of spare FO cable. (Photos a–d courtesy of Hubbell Premise Wiring; photo e courtesy of Panduit Corp.)*

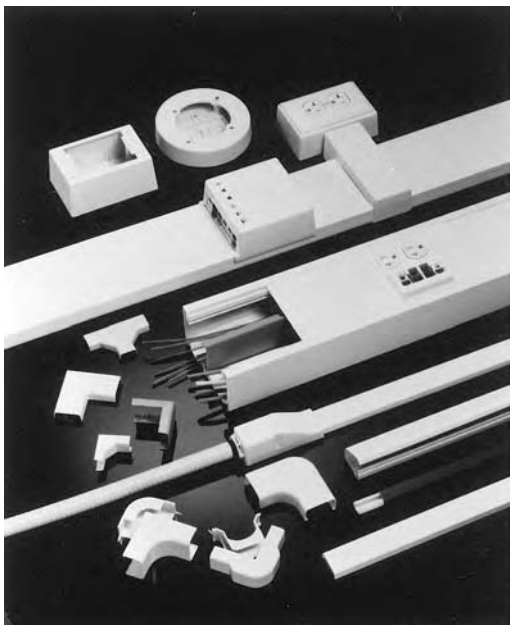


Fig. 30.5 *A range of raceway sizes and shapes is available to meet all signal cabling requirements. (Photo courtesy of Panduit Corp.)*

because data cables are often preterminated, making it difficult to pull them into recessed raceways. Finally, premise wiring raceways are usually large, and as such are much easier and more economical to install as surface-mounted units. Figures 30.4 and 30.5 show a few of the hundreds of devices and raceways used in premise wiring, also referred to as *wire management*. See also Fig. 27.21for a cutaway view of a typical premise wiring raceway.

MULTIPLE-DWELLING SYSTEMS

See Chapter 24 for a description of multiple-occupancy residential fire detection and alarm systems.

30.8 MULTIPLE-DWELLING ENTRY AND SECURITY SYSTEMS

Apartment houses and other large residential buildings often combine the functions of access control with the familiar lobby-to-apartment communication system. The most basic system is a series of pushbuttons in the lobby and an intercom speaker or telephone with which to communicate with residents. At the other end, the tenant has a speaker microphone plus a lobby door-opener button. This system can also be arranged to utilize the tenants' regular telephones. When the number of occupants is large, an alphabetical roster is added to the apartment-button panel to avoid the nuisance of scanning all the apartment names when the sought party's apartment number is not known. When the number is larger yet, a simple pushbutton per apartment arrangement becomes cumbersome, and is usually replaced by an alphabetical tenant register plus a dial or button phone. Closed-circuit television is frequently added to the lobby system, enabling the occupant not only to converse with, but also see, the caller. Such a system increases the electrical contract cost for an average apartment house by 5% to 7%.

In addition to the security provisions provided by apartment-to-lobby audio and video connections, additional security and alarm devices are often used, such as emergency call buttons within the apartments. These perform alarm functions required to deal with an intruder who manages to bypass the lobby security system. In geriatric housing units, these buttons typically *unlock* the apartment door to allow helpers to enter if summoned by lights and alarms. In luxury apartment buildings, apartment doors can be monitored from a central security desk and any unscheduled door movement be subject to immediate investigation. These systems are custom-designed to meet the needs and requirements of the owner.

A security problem applicable to all facilities, including residential ones, involves limiting entry to unsupervised areas to authorized persons (i.e., access control). The problems with keys and locks are well known, despite advances in that field. More sophisticated means include magnetic cards and electronic combination locks, which, because of the ease of code changes, are particularly useful in residential facilities that cater to transients.

Another aspect of security that is particularly appropriate to housing for the elderly and handicapped, although applicable to all housing

installations, is the emergency call system. The purpose of this system is to alert *outsiders* to an emergency situation *inside* a closed apartment. This alarm system is essentially a way to call for help in time of illness or other distress. Many construction and housing codes include descriptions of the required equipment. Most often they prescribe a call initiation button in each bedroom *and* bathroom that will register an audible (alarm) and visible (annunciated) signal at a location that is monitored, locally or remotely, 24 hours a day. Additional signals are required in the floor corridor and at the apartment, the purpose of which is to alert immediate neighbors to a distress call.

30.9 MULTIPLE-DWELLING TELEVISION SYSTEMS

All modern multiple-dwelling residences supply each room with one or more TV/FM jack outlets. The TV jack may supply "house" signals from a rooftop satellite dish or cable TV. As these systems are always subcontracted, the design requirements in new construction include a system of empty conduits connecting to cable-pulling-points in cabinets. Raceways should be sized liberally because of the constant expansion of options in the electronic entertainment field. As pointed out previously, the ideal raceway for signal cabling is 100% accessible (i.e., a surface-mounted raceway with a removable cover). However, the unsightliness of this solution plus the fact that, for most cabling, concealed raceways are adequate, leads to their rare use in new work. In low-budget construction, only floor and wall sleeves are supplied, and coaxial cables are run exposed in residential spaces. The cable contractor arranges for the electric power needed for any local amplification. Normally, a 15-A dedicated circuit is sufficient.

30.10 MULTIPLE-DWELLING TELEPHONE SYSTEMS

As in the small residence, telephone service normally follows the same entrance path and method of entrance as the electric power service. For the sake of economy in underground construction, the two services often share the same trench, although in different raceways, and utilize twin manholes where these are required. Typical entrance arrangements for any large building, residential or other, are shown in Fig. 30.6.

The service entrance space requirements vary with the size of the building and the telephone capacity. For a small apartment house of the garden or three-story type, a clear wall space of 4 to 6 ft (1.2 to 1.8 m) is sufficient. A terminal (equipment) room is required only in large buildings (see Section 30.21). The telephone system is one part of the overall telecommunications system in most

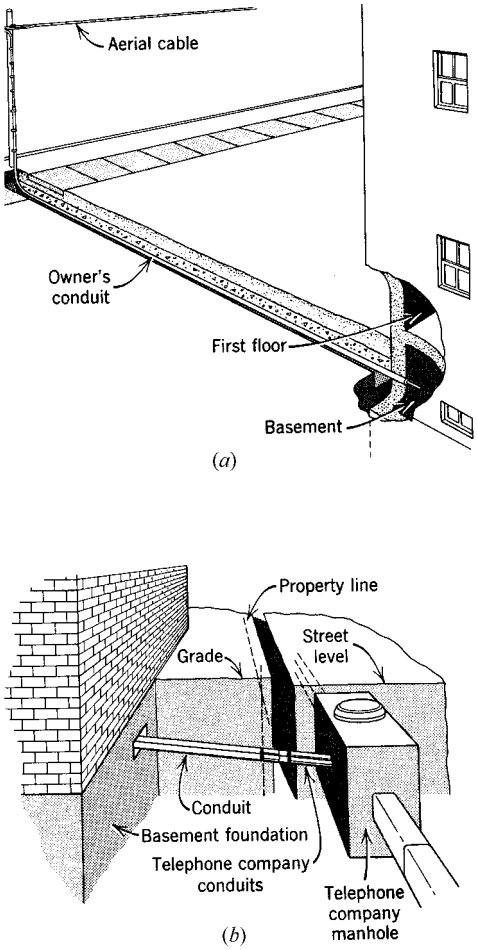


Fig. 30.6 *Telephone cable may enter a building underground after originating on overhead lines (a) or via manholes (b).*

modern residences, preparations for which fall into the premise wiring area discussed previously. Therefore, generalizations are not useful, and planning must consider the type of occupancy and future requirements.

Rental apartment buildings and dormitories differ from commercial structures in that the layouts of all floors are similar, so that the arrangement of risers is relatively simple. It is common practice to utilize cable only in risers that extend through vertically aligned closets in apartments. To accommodate these cables, sleeves through the floor between closets are necessary. If a riser is located in a shaft other than a closet, conduit is normally utilized to allow for easy installation, protection, and repair. If the location is accessible, as in an alcove, only a sleeve is provided. When the riser is located outside the apartment, each dwelling unit is connected to the riser by a conduit with a junction box at either end. Beyond the apartment service point, the individual rooms can normally be prewired entirely without conduit or with only a few short sleeves. In condominium and coop structures, large raceways are run between the service entrance point to cabinets on each floor of the building. From terminal devices in these cabinets, the required service can be extended into each apartment. Prewiring of the apartment avoids the unsightliness of exposed cabling or of cabling within surface raceways.

30.11 HOTELS AND MOTELS

(a) Security

Because of the transient population of these facilities and the need to provide maximum service and security to guests during their stay, the principal problem in addition to room access security is hotel equipment security (i.e., prevention of what is euphemistically known as *shrinkage*).

1. *Room access security.* The ineffectiveness of key locks in preventing undesired entry (even in private homes) is well known; in hotels, a key is little more than a psychological barrier. As a result, most modern hotels have installed electronic room locks whose opening device code is changed with every new guest. These locks may be of the coded pushbutton type, with changeable coding accomplished only from a central lock-security console; a magnetically or punched-hole coded-card type (Fig. 30.7); or a programmable electronic lock and coded-key type (Fig. 30.8). All of these systems have relative advantages and disadvantages, depending upon the number of rooms, whether the installation is new construction or retrofit, and the average length of the guest stay.
2. *Equipment security.* Expectations for amenities require that guest rooms be equipped with a television and possibly a DVD player; meeting rooms with TV, DVD and/or VCR, projectors, and computer terminals; and that these and other devices be made available for guest use either as part of the room fee or on a rental basis. Theft control is a consultant specialty on its own and is beyond the scope of this book. One such system (equally applicable to equipment in hotels, schools, office buildings, and



Fig. 30.7 *Punched-card coded key in common use in hotels. The punched hole coding is changed after each room use. The drawing of a key on the card is the size of an ordinary door key. (Photo by Stein.)*



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 30.8 *This electronic door-locking system uses a programmable electronic lock (a) with a nonduplicatable fixed-code metal key (b). The lock, which can be reprogrammed by the use of a portable programmer, reads the key code with an internal infrared reader. The keys, which can be programmed with up to 1.5 million codes, are discarded after use. Each lock accepts up to 3000 different codes and can be programmed in two modes: passage mode to admit a user during a specific time slot and time mode to accept specific keys during specific time slots. In addition, the locks can be audited to reveal access records, invalid attempts, activation/deactivation, and mechanical key override. (Photo courtesy of ILCO UNICAN Inc.)*

industrial facilities) senses the disconnection of equipment from its power connection (wall plug) and transmits an alarm over the power lines to an annunciator at a selected control location. This arrangement has the advantage of alarming immediately on equipment removal, thus normally permitting appropriate retrieval action to be taken in time.

(b) Telecommunication, Data

The telephone and data communication system in large modern hotels is important and complex. Hotels catering to businesspersons must provide access to the Internet that can be used at the very least in rooms dedicated to that purpose and, almost universally today, in guest rooms as well. Therefore, the building designer must provide adequate raceway (and cabling) facilities, as discussed in Section 27.17. The current practice of holding business meetings and technical conferences in hotels also requires that conference and meeting rooms be arranged for very heavy concentrations of electronic equipment that can be installed and rearranged in short order. This may call for some sort of access floor and modular cabling, as described in Sections 27.25 to 27.30.

SCHOOL SYSTEMS

30.12 GENERAL INFORMATION

The proper operation of a modern school requires that flexible and efficient signal and communications equipment be available to the administrative and teaching staff. Such equipment, engineered to meet the needs of the individual institution, can improve utilization of staff and student time. School fire detection and alarm systems are discussed in Chapter 24.

30.13 SCHOOL SECURITY SYSTEMS

Although intrusion alarms and security systems are not historical school requirements, this situation has unfortunately changed. Sensing devices on doors and windows can be arranged both to trip local alarm devices and, via auxiliary circuits, to

notify police headquarters. Often, vandals can be frightened off by having the alarm system actuate a protective lighting system that illuminates the building exterior and any desired interior areas, such as record rooms. A perimeter alarm detection system of the types described in Section 30.2 can be installed in particularly vandalism-prone areas to assist in preventing entry to school premises after hours. Although expensive, they are very frequently cost-effective.

An exit-control alarm is a type of exterior door security device applicable to schools (and other facilities) with doors that are locked from the outside but that must be openable from the inside in the event of an emergency. This device (Fig. 30.9) alarms as desired (i.e., audibly or visually, locally or remotely) when a monitored door is opened. It is normally equipped with a timed bypass that allows authorized personnel to key-operate the bypass but prevents the door from being held open without alarming. One model of door-opener alarm requires a continuous pressure on the door-opening bar for 10 to 20 seconds before the door opens, with the alarm being activated immediately on application of pressure. This arrangement (usable only where fire codes permit) allows sufficient time for the facility's staff to investigate an attempted exit before the door opens, and is applicable only where exit control is the overriding consideration. As mentioned in Chapter 24, stair and exit-door exit locks can be arranged to be centrally released from a fire control center.

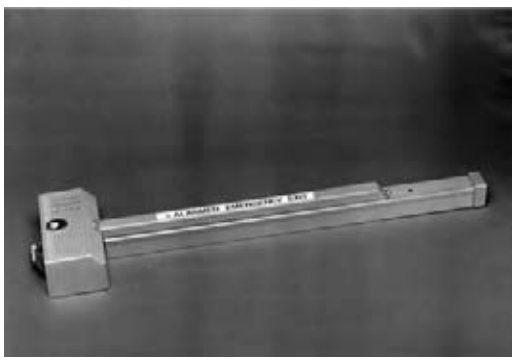


Fig. 30.9 *Delayed-egress exit alarm. When the bar is pushed, an alarm sounds immediately, but egress is delayed 15 seconds to permit security personnel to investigate before the door release operates. In the event of fire or another emergency, the door releases instantly. The alarm can be bypassed and reset by key only. (Courtesy of NAPCO.)*

30.14 SCHOOL CLOCK AND PROGRAM SYSTEMS

The clock system and the program system were once separate and distinct, sharing only the timekeeping facilities provided by a master clock. Now that electromechanical programming devices are effectively obsolete, the two systems are actually one, but the traditional two-system name remains. As shown in Fig. 30.10, the heart of the system is the time base (electronic clock). This is the same device that provides timing for all programmable switches and controllers. In a clock and program device, it controls clock signals, audible devices, and, if desired, other switching functions.

The clock system may use analog clocks (with hands), digital units, or both. The former are usually locally powered, and a correction signal is periodically transmitted via dedicated wiring from the master clock at the controller. This same controller continuously transmits a binary-coded signal to digital "satellite" clocks, which can be either of the self-illuminated light-emitting diode (LED) type or of the liquid crystal display (LCD) type. LCD units are easily visible only in high ambient illumination and when viewed directly (not at an acute angle). LED units are best applied in areas of low ambient illuminance. Large-face analog clocks are easily visible in all ambient light situations.

The programming function of the controller serves to delineate audibly the various time periods into which the school day and week are divided. A single-circuit unit is utilized in an institution that operates entirely on one schedule, such as an elementary school on a morning period-lunch-afternoon period regimen. For a school employing different schedules for its various parts, the controller can provide multiple program schedules on different circuits, depending upon its design. Controllers are user-programmable and are normally provided with a crystal-controlled master clock to ensure accurate timekeeping regardless of line frequency variation, a backup power source to maintain user programming and master clock local display, and various conveniences such as daylight saving time correction, security arrangements, event timers, and so on. If desired, the clock and program controllers can also be used for mechanical system control by the simple expedient of adding relays and switching devices, as shown in Fig. 30.10. Typical clock

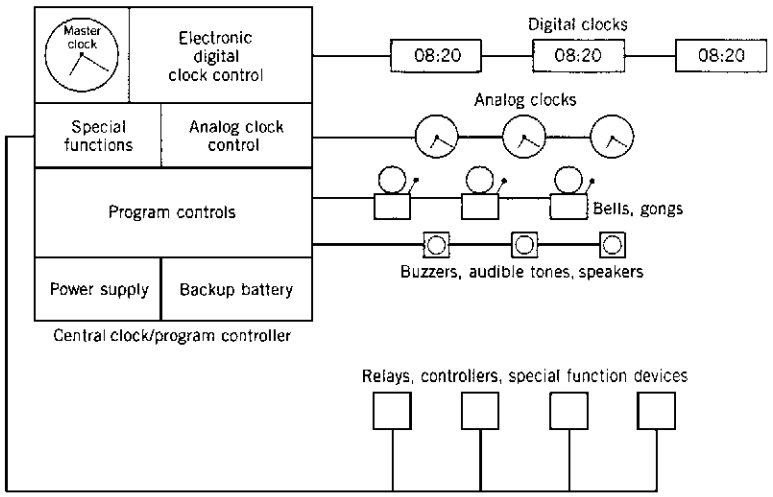


Fig. 30.10 *A central clock and program device uses its electronic time base to control clocks of all types, time-based audible signals, and event controllers.*

and program controllers are shown in Figs. 30.11 and 30.12.

The audible devices in a program system may be bells, gongs, buzzers, horns, or a tone reproduced on a classroom loudspeaker. The last system has the following advantages:

1. Clear audibility in each classroom, with an adjustable volume to accommodate both quiet and noisy areas.
2. No possibility of confusion between the program tone and other signals such as fire alarm gongs.
3. Multiple use of the speaker unit for classroom sounds as well as program tones.
4. Complete flexibility of programming that is not possible with hall gongs. This is particularly desirable in schools with special programs for particular groups of students.



Fig. 30.11 *Typical microprocessor-based master time clock and program device. This unit, which measures 14 × 12 × 5 in. deep (355 × 305 × 127 mm), provides time correction signals to synchronous wired clocks of the digital or analog type, and can be adapted to control minute impulse clocks. Programming of output circuits can be daily or weekly, and can accommodate daylight saving, holiday, and leap-year updates with a total program capacity in excess of 600 events. Programming is done locally or via a remote computer. This type of device is applicable to any facility requiring a clock and/or program system. (Courtesy of Midwest Time Control Inc.)*

30.15 SCHOOL INTERCOM SYSTEMS

Various types of intercom systems are available, depending on the needs of the school building involved. In small schools, a simple wired intercom system connecting the various offices is usually sufficient. This is supplemented by outside telephones in the administrative offices and a functional paging system that is normally part of the school's sound system. With larger buildings and correspondingly larger numbers of extensions and multiple-function demands, more sophisticated equipment is required. The unit illustrated in Fig. 30.13 is typical



Fig. 30.12 *User-programmable master clock and program controller. This unit has nonvolatile memory, eight program zones, automatic daylight saving time and holiday adjustment, and a maximum of four schedules; it is usable with most types of secondary clocks. (Courtesy of Rauland-Borg.)*

of modern school intercom equipment and is actually a private telephone system with considerable flexibility. Such a system is generally interfaced with the school sound system and may provide these functions:

1. Intercom between staff members and offices
2. Direct communication with classrooms, including selective and all-call capability
3. Paging zone, group call, and conference call functions
4. Interconnection with the outside phone system
5. Class-change signals via interface with the master clock system
6. School intercomputer communication via modems

A combination program/intercom controller is shown in Fig. 30.14. These systems use direct pushbutton dialing and programming, thus eliminating the need for switchboards and operators. All stations are coded with three-digit codes, and all switching is solid-state, minimizing maintenance problems. Such systems are adequate for all but the largest institutions.

30.16 SCHOOL SOUND SYSTEMS

An integrated sound-paging-radio system designed for school use offers several modes of operation and considerable flexibility. Its function is to provide a means for distributing signals from recordings (CDs, DVDs, tapes), broadcasts (AM/FM), or live sound to preselected areas of the school. Thus, a simple system might provide a CD player and single microphone input and a single channel to all the speakers in the school, whereas a complex system can be arranged to operate with three simultaneous input signals distributed to six different areas of the school (see Fig. 30.14).

A conventional system consists of a control console containing most of the input units, amplifiers, switching devices, and connections to the remote loudspeakers. The input units may comprise one or more AM/FM tuners, a VCR, CD/DVD player, tape deck, and microphones. One microphone is normally located at the console, with others in the principal's office, auditorium, school office, or other selected locations. If desired, microphone outlets

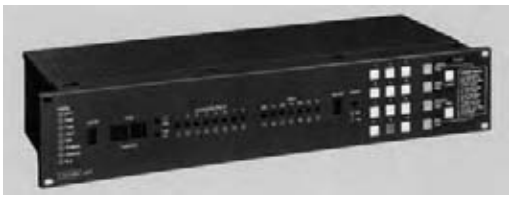


Fig. 30.13 *Intercom controller. The illustrated microcomputer design interfaces with the existing telephone system. In addition, it provides paging, tone distribution, and program distribution, with control from a telephone. The unit, which measures 19 in. × 9.5 in. × 3.4 in. high (483 × 241 × 86 mm), weighs 9 lb (4 kg), also has a built-in master clock. (Courtesy of Rauland-Borg.)*



Fig. 30.14 *Compact program/intercom control center. This unit, which measures 20.5 × 11 × 8.5 in. high (521 × 280 × 216 mm), has a separate power amplifier for intercom and program material. It distributes program material or provides intercom with 25 loudspeaker locations and has additional capabilities, such as emergency/all-call paging, tone calling, time signal, night bell, and telephone paging. Program material is accepted from separate external sources. (Courtesy of Bogen Communications Inc.)*

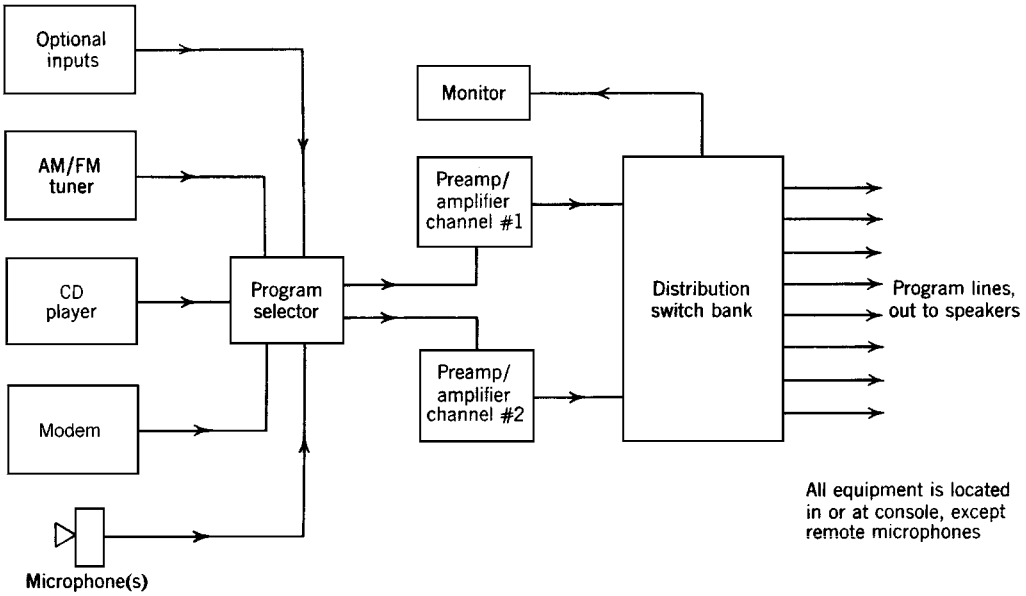


Fig. 30.15 *Block diagram of a two-channel sound system. Options that can be added to the console are a tape deck, private telephone communications, modem connection, and equipment for rebroadcast of signals between areas. An intercom and a master clock and program can also be incorporated or interconnected.*

can be spotted around the school and a spare microphone and stand supplied that can be plugged in at any of these points (Fig. 30.15).

Loudspeakers, located in classrooms, gymnasium, auditorium, cafeteria, and outdoors, receive the amplified signal through the switching mechanisms located in the console. The function of these switches is to deliver the program material to the various loudspeaker circuits, called *program lines*. Thus, using a system with multiple amplifiers, music can be piped to the cafeteria, an educational broadcast program to selected classrooms, and instructions to an outdoor gym class or team during practice. An all-call feature also allows announcements to reach all speakers in the system simultaneously. The intercom system discussed previously can be interconnected with the sound system to allow conversation between classrooms and the console or other points. A small system can be contained in a compact desktop console (see Fig. 30.14). A large system frequently requires a separate console. A console is usually built in a desk arrangement, and it is advisable to provide sufficient space for it and for the person who operates it. Often an alcove of 30 to 50 ft^2 (2.8 to 4.7 m^2) is reserved for it and a library of recordings.

Loudspeakers may be placed flush or in surface baffles at the discretion of the designer. Gymnasium, cafeteria, and auditorium units are normally flush-mounted in the ceiling. For such large areas, it is well to provide a volume control, enclosed in a recessed wall box with a locking cover. A common variation of this system uses separate subsystems for the cafeteria, auditorium, ball field, and other areas that utilize sound equipment frequently. These smaller systems have their own input, amplification, and control devices but utilize speakers in common with the central console. Normally, the console has an override feature that allows it to override local systems.

For a discussion of high-quality sound systems required for recital halls in music schools and the like, refer to Sections 18.16 to 18.18.

30.17 SCHOOL ELECTRONIC TEACHING EQUIPMENT

This area of technology, like so many others that utilize computers, is growing and changing so rapidly that almost anything written on it is immediately out of date. This section simply outlines

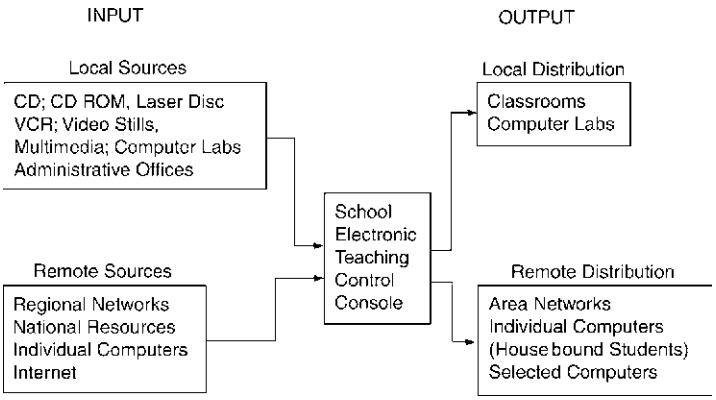


Fig. 30.16 *Block diagram of connections to an electronic teaching console. Inputs change as technology changes.*

present and projected near-future uses of electronic teaching equipment. Figure 30.16 shows in block diagram form the arrangements possible with current technology.

(a) Passive-Mode Usage

This category encompasses all recorded material, in whatever form, that is available to the student via some form of information retrieval technique. This includes printed, audio, and video material in conventional and electronic library forms.

(b) Interactive Mode

Here students use a computer teaching terminal interactively to study at their own pace on a one-to-one basis, with the computer acting as a tutor. Modern teaching programs sense the students' weak points (as do good teachers) and emphasize them in teaching. The building designer must be aware of the rapid developments in this field at all educational levels, including elementary school, in order to make adequate electric power, cable raceway, lighting, and HVAC provisions.

OFFICE BUILDING SYSTEMS

30.18 GENERAL INFORMATION

This building category addresses systems found in all office, professional, and sales-type buildings. Such buildings house tenants with varying schedules and requirements. This must be considered in the design of the signal and communications systems for such buildings.

Although in many medium-sized and large buildings the various control, alarm, and security functions are combined in multiuse apparatus and consoles (discussed later in the chapter), the basic systems are essentially separate despite having shared-use equipment. They are discussed individually to demonstrate function and equipment, and then as combined to show economies and modern practice.

30.19 OFFICE BUILDING SECURITY SYSTEMS

Although automatic surveillance systems *are* applicable to office and mercantile occupancies, they are more frequently found in industrial facilities and are discussed under that heading. Office buildings normally utilize some type of manual watchman's tour system so that surveillance of unoccupied areas is conducted on a regular basis.

The simplest type is nonelectric and comprises a number of small cabinets, each containing a key, placed at intervals around the interior and exterior of the building. The watchman uses these keys to operate a special clock that he carries about, thus recording the exact time at which he "clocked in" at any specific location. Alternatively, the clock is wall-mounted and the guard carries only a key (Fig. 30.17). A computerized version of this system is available that simplifies station check-in,



Fig. 30.17 *Watchman's tour station. Here the clock and recording tape are inside. The station is operated by simply inserting a key, as shown, and giving it a quarter-turn. An alternative version of this system, commonly used, consists of a portable clock and tape operated by a key in a wall box at each station. (Courtesy of Detex Corp.)*

automatically records guard visit data, and provides a hard-copy printout.

Guard tour systems are also available that permit constant supervision and are particularly effective where more than one person is on duty. Such systems show on a panel the location and progress of the watchman by means of lights that glow when the device at each location is operated. Because part of the effectiveness of these systems lies in the timing of the tour, a system can be arranged to sound an alarm if a particular station is not operated within a specific time period. Telephone jacks spaced at points along the guard's route allow the guard to communicate with the supervising office or other point without interrupting the scheduled tour. For protection of areas housing extremely valuable items or documents, an intrusion alarm system may be employed.

30.20 OFFICE BUILDING COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

Planning for this type of system requires considering four functions, which are frequently melded into a single network:

1. Intraoffice voice communication, or intercom (Fig. 30.18)
2. Interoffice and intraoffice data communication using telephone and communication cabling
3. Outside-the-building communication via telephone company (or data) lines
4. Paging function

Today, in most locations, the user has the choice of purchasing or leasing as much of the system as is desired. In other words, the communication system, including cables, instruments, switching equipment, and so on, can be all privately owned, all supplied by the local telephone company, or acquired in almost any other arrangement desired. Except for a small interoffice intercom, however, duplication is eliminated—that is, the same instruments and switching equipment are used for both intercom and outside connection.

What to buy, rent, or lease constitutes an economic decision because the required functions are satisfied by either private or telephone company equipment.



Fig. 30.18 *This desktop multifunction intercom unit is usable in either handset or hands-free mode. In addition to standard intercom functions, each handset, which is connected to a central exchange, can provide additional features such as automatic redial, call conferencing, searching, all-call, group call, call transfer, call registration (stores incoming call numbers), privacy mode, special-meaning tones, and networking. The unit can also be used for voice and beeper paging. Exchanges, which can handle up to 4000 stations, are microcomputer-controlled, solid-state assemblies that vary in physical size according to the number of stations served. A typical large exchange might measure 60 in. W × 24 in. H × 20 in. D (1.5 × 0.6 × 0.5 m). (Courtesy of Dukane Corp., Communications Systems.)*

30.21 OFFICE BUILDING COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING

Planning for the telephone and other communications equipment in an office building is of prime importance because of the large amounts and critical locations of required space. Therefore, it must be done simultaneously with other space planning. Exact requirements for office space are generally unknown at the time of design, and even if they were known, planning would have to account for changes in space usage as well as increased communications and data transmission services. For this reason, all planning is based on usable office area. Planning is essentially focused upon spaces, from incoming service space to final instrument locations, because cabling and equipment are furnished and installed either by a private telephone equipment supplier or by the telephone company.

The planning information that follows is applicable to office buildings with average telephone and data transmission loads. Buildings whose tenants include brokerage houses, insurance companies, headquarters of multibranch operations, and other heavy telephone and data transmission users may need more space. Advances in technology, however, including the use of FO cables, act to reduce equipment size and space requirements. As a result, the best course of action is to design for current requirements with a reasonable estimate for future needs and technologies based upon advice from experts in the field.

Space is required for:

1. A service entrance room that houses incoming cable (network cable), terminated empty conduits for expansion and data cables, a network cable splice box, connection (network interface) cabinets, and equipment required to interface the building's equipment, including telephones, modems, fax machines, and the like, to the main connection cabinets. This space is usually referred to as the *equipment room*.
2. Riser spaces (shafts) and riser closets. These are stacked vertically and carry main cables.
3. Satellite closets where required.
4. Horizontal distribution between closets and devices, including conduit, boxes and cabinets, underfloor raceways, and over-the-ceiling systems.

A block diagram of a typical system in shown in Fig. 30.19.

(a) Service Entrance

At least two 4- or 5-in. (100- or 125-mm) conduits extend from the exterior service connection to the basement or ground floor service equipment room. One conduit will contain the service (network) cable; the other(s) is a spare. Spare conduits should be terminated 12 in. (300 mm) above the finished floor (AFF) of the equipment room, in a threaded fitting, and sealed against entrance of dirt, moisture, or rodents. The service entrance cable terminates in a splice box or cabinet, from which, in large buildings, additional cables extend to one or more wall cabinets, each measuring about 3 ft wide, 6 ft high, and 2 ft deep ($0.9 \times 1.8 \times 0.6$ m). Each cabinet can serve a maximum of 30,000 to 100,000 ft^2 (2790 to 9290 m^2) of tenant area, depending upon the density of service required. To accommodate these cabinets from which risers extend, a clear wall space of 6 ft (1.8 m) for every cabinet should be provided. This wall area should be covered with ¾-in. (20-mm) marine plywood for cabinet mounting. A 1-in. (25-mm) PVC conduit should extend between cabinets from a suitable electrical system ground point, with a ground wire sized according to telephone company requirements. The room should be dry, ventilated, well lighted for close work in wiring and color recognition, and supplied with at least two 20-A duplex convenience outlets on a separate circuit.

In the event that additional connection, switching, or communication equipment is required, the project electrical engineer should obtain the equipment size and electrical requirements, provide the necessary space requirements to the architect, and design the electrical elements. In large equipment rooms, circulation and egress must be considered, as well as emergency light and power.

(b) Riser Shafts

These accept the cables extending beyond the equipment room and carry them vertically through the building. Connection from the wall cabinets in the equipment room up to the riser shaft should preferably be in conduit.

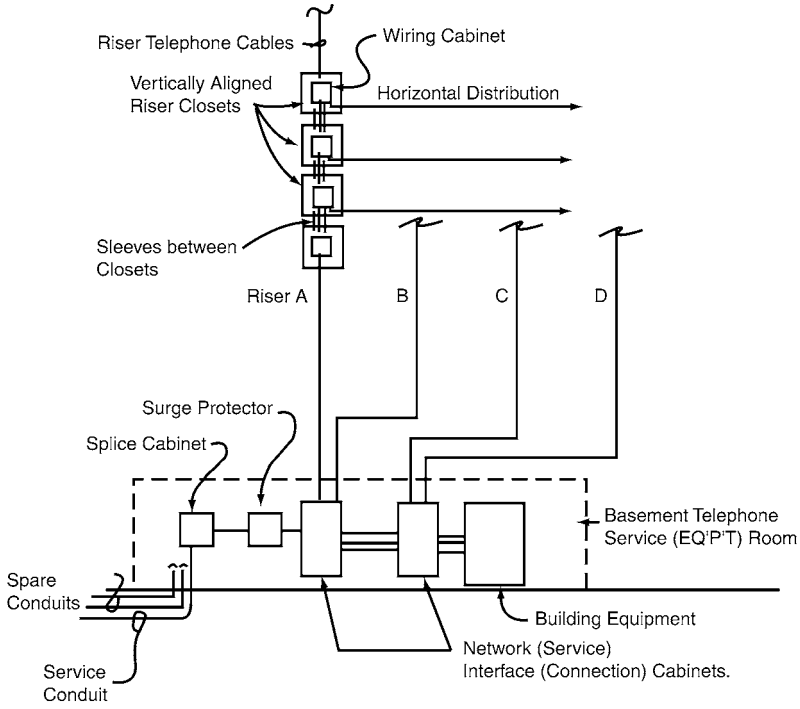


Fig. 30.19 *Riser diagram of the telecommunications system raceway and space arrangements for a typical commercial office building.*

The riser shafts provide means for the cables to extend vertically and terminate at each floor. Ideally, the riser spaces comprise a series of vertically aligned closets connected by ½- or 4-in. (12- or 100-mm) sleeves set in the floors and extending 1 in. (25 mm) above the floor. Sleeves are preferable to slots because they can easily be sealed and fireproofed; slots cannot. A minimum of four 4-in. (100-mm) conduit sleeves should be installed between closets vertically, plus an additional 4-in. (100-mm) sleeve for every additional 50,000 ft^2 (4645 m^2) of office space to be served. It is preferable to separate communications closets from electrical power closets. Where multiple risers are used, shafts should be interconnected by several 2-in. (50-mm) conduits to allow for interconnection of systems. Riser cables are also known as *backbone* cables.

(c) Riser Closets

Here, cables from the riser system are interconnected to switching and power equipment, as well as to the cables that radiate from the closet to station locations throughout the floor area. These closets may also be called *zone closets* or *apparatus closets*, particularly if they function with an underfloor raceway system. The walls of the closet should be lined with plywood at least ¾ in. (20 mm) thick to support the weight of switching and connection panels, power equipment, terminals, connecting blocks, and other hardware. Each riser (apparatus) closet must be provided with a switched ceiling light and a separate 20-A, 120-V circuit with two duplex receptacles. A source of emergency power is desirable to avoid curtailment of telephone service during power outages.

Riser closets should preferably have a minimum net area of 20 ft^2 (2 m^2) and a minimum clear wall of 5 ft (1.5 m) for cabinet mounting. Each closet can supply telecommunication service for 8000 to 10,000 ft^2 (740 to 930 m^2) of floor area. Telephone equipment being utilized should not be more than 250 ft (75 m) from a closet.

(d) Satellite Closets

Unlike riser (apparatus) closets, satellite closets do not contain switching and power equipment. Their

primary use is to provide cable-connecting and -terminating facilities in large, complex facilities, where riser closet space is insufficient.

(e) Auxiliary Equipment Rooms

Where extensive cross-connection is required or tenants utilize private switchboard (PBX) equipment, the required equipment is placed in a relatively small auxiliary equipment room. These spaces, which are actually small closets or alcoves, should contain a 20- to 30-A, 2P, 120/208-V circuit, a 20-A, 120-V outlet, a grounding point, good lighting, and sufficient equipment space. Space requirements vary with each installation and can be obtained from the equipment supplier. Ventilation is essential, as is absorptive acoustic material on the ceiling and at least one wall. Connections between these spaces and other communication equipment closets should be via floor or ceiling ducts or multiple ½-in. (12-mm) conduits.

(f) Horizontal Distribution

Cabling from riser, satellite, apparatus, and equipment closets to individual outlets and instruments can be run underfloor, in ceilings and plenum spaces, under-carpet, or in surface raceways. Because of the large raceway volumes required, conduit is infrequently used. When underfloor raceways are used, a header capacity of 2 in.^{2} (1290 mm^2) per workstation is reasonable, based on one multiline telephone and one video display unit per station.

(g) FO Cables

Fiber-optic (FO) cables are used in lieu of copper cabling in installations with very heavy data transmission loads, in those using video systems, and/or in applications for which the high-security, low-noise, and broad-bandwidth characteristics of FO are necessary or desirable. Information on space requirements and connection accessories can be obtained from manufacturers. Because cables are often supplied with factory-applied terminations, raceways must be of the large-capacity, full-access type.

30.22 OFFICE BUILDING CONTROL AND AUTOMATION SYSTEMS

As mechanical and electrical systems in modern office buildings increased in complexity, the need arose for central point of supervision, control, and data collection. This provides a single locale from which to survey and control an entire building's functioning, plus increased opportunities for automation. From a supervisory location, water, air-conditioning, heating, ventilating, electrical, and other systems can be controlled with accuracy and convenience. Data on temperatures, pressures, flow, current, voltage, and the many other parameters of mechanical and electrical systems can be made available instantly so that operational decisions can be made and automated. All systems can be monitored centrally and all alarms instantly and automatically acted upon.

Such *supervisory control centers* are now installed as a matter of course in office buildings. They are equipped with computers that process the data received to make operational decisions intended to optimize system performance. As a result, they can provide a considerable savings in operating and maintenance costs. These systems in their most generalized form are referred to as *building automation systems* (BAS) and are discussed at length in Sections 30.26 to 30.31.

Architecturally, the spaces housing BAS centers require good lighting, good ventilation, and extensive raceway space but little area. Because systems are custom-tailored to a specific building, no guidelines can be stated for space requirements.

INDUSTRIAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

30.23 GENERAL INFORMATION

All industrial facilities, ranging from a loft housing a small hand-assembly plant to an immense steel manufacturing plant, require a variety of signal and communication equipment. Fire alarm systems for industrial buildings are discussed in Chapter 24. Audible alarms for building security in any industrial facility must be selected with the likelihood of high ambient noise levels in mind. See Figs. 30.20 and 30.21 for recommendations.

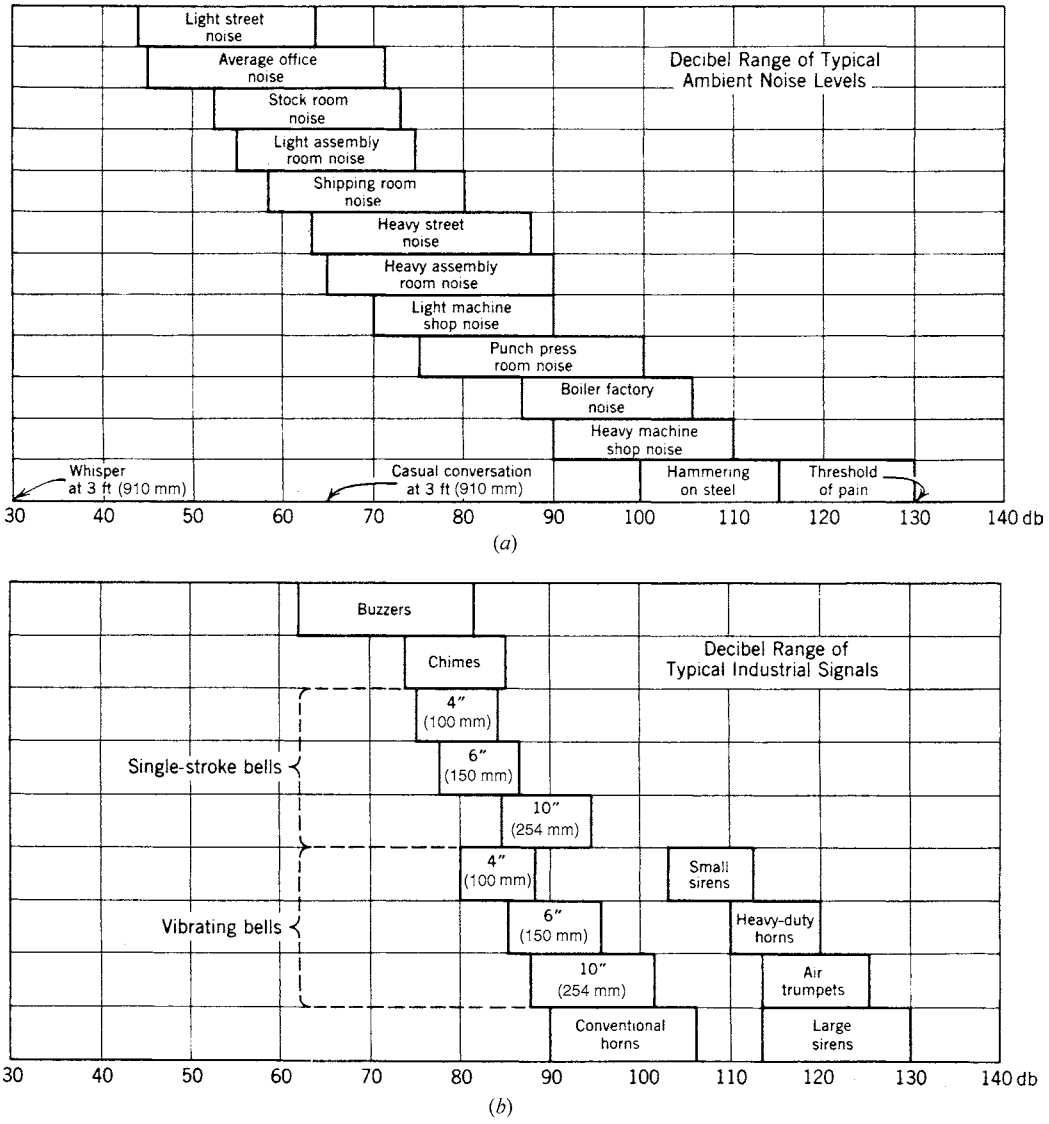


Fig. 30.20 *Decibel range of typical industrial noise situations. The decibel rating of typical industrial signals (b) may be compared with the anticipated ambient noise level (a) to facilitate selection.*

30.24 INDUSTRIAL BUILDING PERSONNEL ACCESS CONTROL

The design and engineering of personnel access control systems is a specialty that has burgeoned since the late 1980s and is now an independent profession. The increasingly diverse variety of identification technologies, plus the control and supervisory capabilities of computers, has greatly enhanced the access control capabilities of even a relatively small system. As a result, this section does not attempt to discuss system design, but focuses instead upon the operation and application of the subsystems that comprise the whole.

The traditional access control question was always "Who is permitted to pass through a specific portal?" The means by which identification is made to answer this question varies with the importance of access control at that portal. Thus, entrance to a large, multipurpose space used by many people

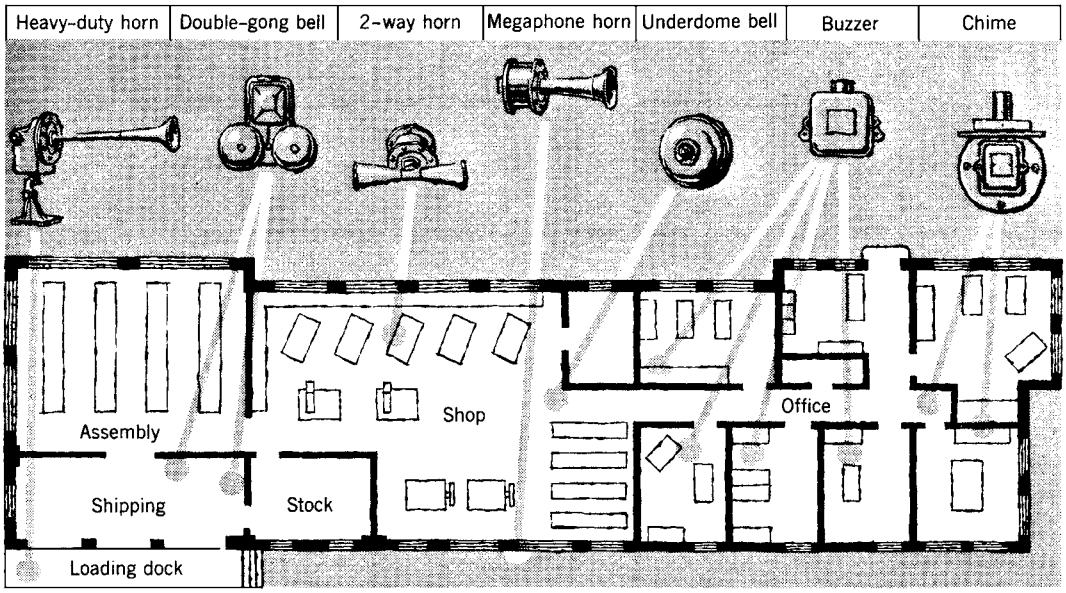


Fig. 30.21 *Plan of a small industrial facility showing suggested locations of typical signals.*

must be rapid and must avoid the delay engendered by a physical barrier. One means commonly used is one or more guards who visually and in relatively cursory fashion inspect a badge with an ID photo. The next level of supervised, barrier-free access control may be a "turnstile" that requires presentation of an access card to an electronic proximity reader. One such unit is illustrated in Fig. 30.22. This type of barrier is limited to a maximum pass-through rate of about one person per second. Because these two control methods are generally barrier-free, the action taken on alarm is to activate physical barriers and sound the appropriate alarms.

When a physical access barrier is involved, passage is slow, depending only partly on the identification process. Even with the most rapid electronic identification, a door or other portal closure must be physically released and operated, which can be very time-consuming. In the particular example shown in Fig. 30.23, the identification process is very time-consuming as well, because it involves human intervention.

Unattended physical barriers can be released by a multitude of differing identification technologies, depending upon the required level of scrutiny. At the lower end of the security scale are barriers that require some embedded knowledge and/or inspect an object presented by the user, such as a magnetic, bar-coded, or proximity-reader card (Fig. 30.24). Because locks can be controlled electronically and remotely, they can be programmed to give access at certain times only, to specific groups of cards or individual cards only, or to prevent access to specific cards (e.g., cards reported lost), or for any other selection criterion. The element of time-controlled access is relatively new; it integrates extremely well with intrusion security systems because portals can be easily coordinated with changing work schedules, both general and specific. Thus, a person can be barred from an area which he/she should not have access at some particular time of day (Fig. 30.25).

The most sophisticated identification methods in use today are biometric: examining a specific physical characteristic that is unique to each person. This is considered a higher level of entry control because it identifies a person, not an object. Several of these methods are illustrated in Figs. 30.26 through 30.28.

In view of the plethora of available access-control technologies, access is being redefined beyond its original physical-admittance meaning. Access control today is also used to limit access to copy machines, fax machines, phone lines, and other office facilities frequently used by employees for other than purely business purposes.



Fig. 30.22 *Optical turnstile in an office lobby. These barrier-free access controls require presentation of a magnetic card to the proximity reader in the stanchion. Unauthorized access (or egress) causes an alarm that triggers audible and visual alarms and other measures as designed. This type of "barrier-free" access control is normally monitored by a guard positioned adjacent to the turnstile. See the desk at the left. (Photos courtesy of Smarter Security Systems.)*

30.25 INDUSTRIAL BUILDING SOUND AND PAGING SYSTEMS

Belt beepers, pagers, and cellular phones are frequently ineffective in industrial facilities because of high ambient noise levels. In such areas, voice paging at high audio levels (see Figs. 30.20 and 30.21), radio-frequency paging calls on earphones or speakers built into sound-reducing ear protection (see Fig. 19.53), and paging calls using paging lights are used. Similar methods are employed in noisy areas for announcements and special voice messages. In less noisy areas, such as offices adjoining manufacturing spaces, sound-reinforced conventional office-type systems are usually employed.

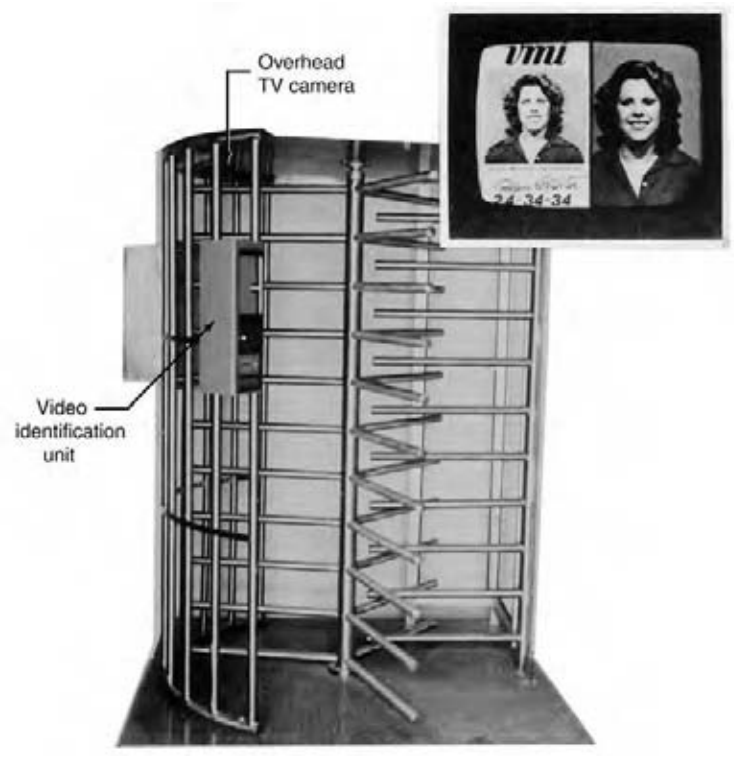


Fig. 30.23 *A person desiring entry at this high-security portal inserts her identification card and is viewed by a camera in the entrance device. At a remote location, images of the subject and her ID card are displayed on a screen (inset), while ID data from a memory bank are displayed simultaneously for comparison. Actual physical entry through the turnstile is controlled electrically and monitored by an overhead camera. (Photos courtesy of Visual Methods, Inc.)*



Fig. 30.24 *This digital access lock has a programmable keypad and is arranged for remote or key override. Individuals or groups can be barred access by special local program codes. Multilevel user codes are available that act in the same fashion as multi-level master keys in cylinder locks. (Courtesy of NAPCO Security Systems.)*

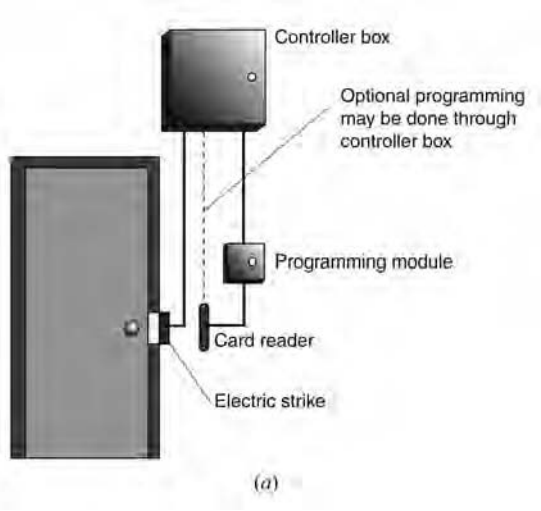




Fig. 30.26 *This foolproof identification procedure relies on the fact that no two persons have identical retinal vascular patterns. The illustrated device, usually placed at an unmanned controlled-access portal, scans the entrant's retina, compares it to a previously recorded pattern, and then either permits or denies entry. (Photo courtesy of Eyedentify Inc.)*



Fig. 30.25 *Stand-alone electronic locking system. (a) The arrangement and interconnection of equipment at each portal are shown. The card reader (swipe or insert type) is built into the door mechanism, which also contains the electric strike mechanism. (b) Each lock (swipe style on the left and insert type on the right) is individually programmed using the laptop computer seen in the background. Each lock can be programmed for up to 1500 users, each on a time-schedule basis, covering not only working hours, holidays, weekends, and the like, but also individual time schedules. All programming is performed locally, and the passage record of each lock can be downloaded easily. (Courtesy of Ilco-Unican Corp., Electronic Access Control Div.)*

AUTOMATION

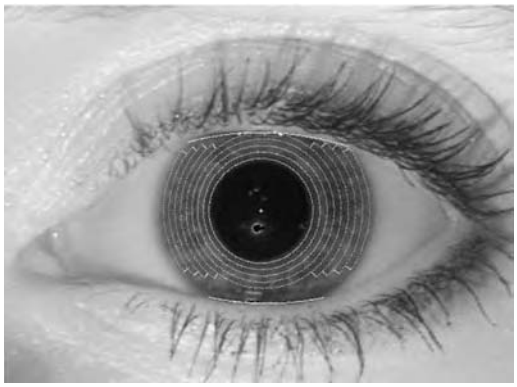
30.26 GENERAL INFORMATION

It is important that the distinction between remote control and automation be clearly understood. *Remote control* is simply a technique by which an action that can be performed manually at the device being controlled is performed from a remote location by some intermediate means. The means may be low-voltage wiring (Section 26.32), a high-frequency wired signal (Section 26.34), a wireless signal such as from a household TV/CD/VCR remote control, a similar IR lighting control unit (Fig. 15.24), or a radio-frequency wireless control (Fig. 16.6). In each case there is a single-stage action that is manually initiated. When the signal initiation is nonmanual—that is, *automatic*, from a timing device (Section 26.16), a sensor such as a daylight or occupancy sensor (Section 15.17), or a programmable device such as a microprocessor or computer (Fig. 15.25)—the control comes from an *automated* system. The system can be elementary, as just described, in which an automated signal controls a single action. It can also be very complex, with many levels, yet treat only a single function, such as an automated lighting system with sensors activating or overriding scene-presets that activate dimmers and switches. Such a system is referred to as a *stand-alone* (automated) system. When several

of these stand-alone systems are interconnected and supervised by a higher-level controller, each is referred to as a *subsystem*, and the overall system is referred to as an *integrated control system*. Such an integrated system, when applied to the individual systems in a building, is referred to as a *building automation system* (BAS).



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 30.27 *Iris-scanning system. (a) When the system is used as an access control device at a portal, the entrant stands about 10 to 12 in. (250 to 300 mm) away from the scanner as the iris is scanned. The technology relies on the fact that each person's iris has unique and randomly formed features. (b) After scanning, the image is digitized (as shown) and compared to a computer record. The entire procedure is very fast; entry access or denial is automatic. (Courtesy of IriScan Inc.)*



Fig. 30.28 *This biometric identification device takes more than 90 hand measurements that are then converted into a unique identification "template" that is stored in the system's computer. Once identification is made, it can be used for access control. Access points can be programmed to permit entry to authorized personnel on any time/date schedule desired. (Courtesy of Recognition Systems Inc.)*

30.27 STAND-ALONE LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEMS

A straightforward stand-alone lighting control system is shown in Fig. 30.29. The initial programming is entered from a laptop computer into the control panel using system (manufacturer's) software. The control panel contains the required microprocessors, timers, and output control devices to establish lighting levels and settings in the entire structure via dimming and switching panels. In addition, through interfaces (connection devices), the control panel reacts to signals from daylight and occupancy sensors in a preprogrammed fashion to switch and dim certain lights. Window shade control is two-way: they may close automatically

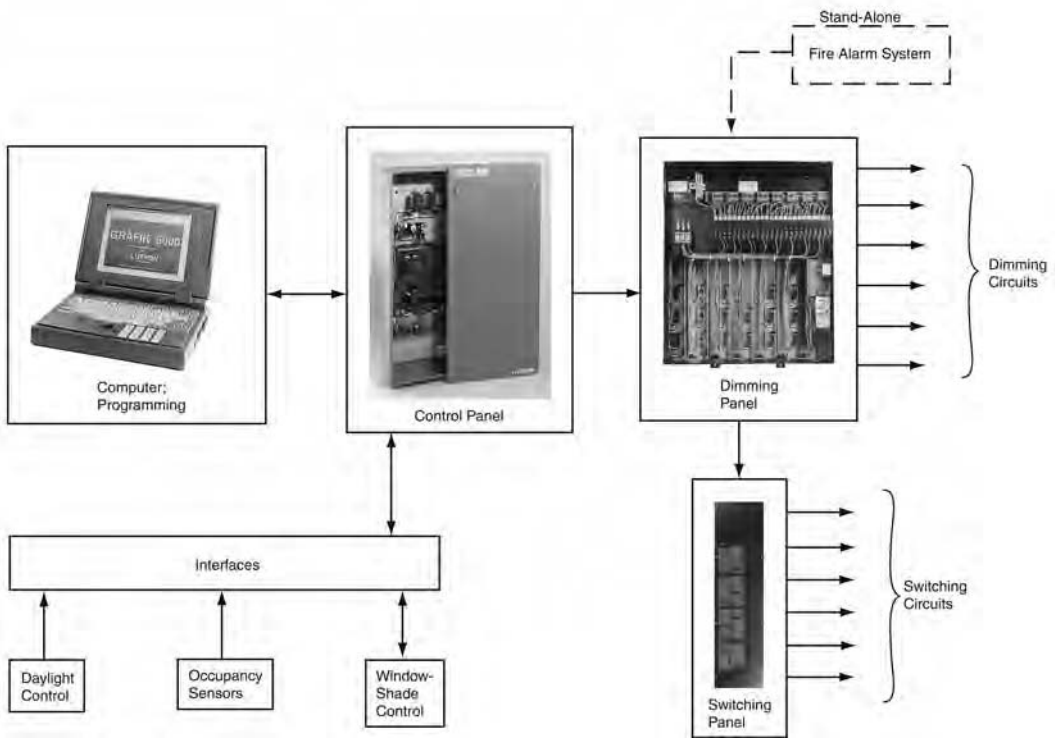


Fig. 30.29 *Block diagram of a typical stand-alone automated lighting control system. A connection to another stand-alone system (fire alarm), shown dotted, would exist at the overall building control level. (Photos courtesy of Lutron Electronics.)*

when direct solar radiation is detected in a specific area (while also causing lights to brighten) or they may open when direct sunlight is absent (but useful daylight is abundant). In addition, a conference room arranged for audiovisual display may provide control of lights and shades via a local lectern-mounted, scene-preset controller, and so on. When another stand-alone system such as a fire alarm system (which itself may be part of an overall security/safety system) sends an emergency signal, the control panel reacts as programmed. It may turn on all lights to full output, or it may brighten exit paths and dim other lights, and so forth. This interconnection between two stand-alone systems is characteristic of a BAS.

30.28 BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEMS

The clear trend in buildings, except for small or simple structures, is to use integrated system design plus centralized monitoring and control of building systems. The subsystems almost always included in a BAS are HVAC, energy management, and lighting control. Inclusion of security, life safety (fire alarm, fire control and suppression, plus emergency aspects of vertical transportation), material handling, and some aspects of communications depends upon the specific needs of the building. This trend toward building automation, which previously was economically justifiable only in large owner-user facilities, is today not only economically feasible but also very nearly an economic necessity because of high labor costs and the relatively low cost of computer and microprocessor controls. What the rapid advances in microelectronics and computer technology have done is to make possible and practical detailed multipoint monitoring and control in real time, the result of which (assuming proper programming and BAS operation) can be a highly efficient, environmentally conscious, and money-saving facility. Indeed,

the advantages of such an arrangement are so great that retrofitting of existing buildings, which is more costly than new construction, has become a major industry.

Because the technique of building automation has grown so rapidly in the past few years, the terminology surrounding it and its equipment suffers from a lack of standardization and uniformity. Thus, terms such as *building automation, intelligent buildings, computerized building control, integrated computer control, supervisory data systems, integrated building control, facilities management systems*, and so on are used almost interchangeably. The expression *building automation system* (BAS) is used in the discussion that follows. Inasmuch as every BAS is by definition programmed, any discussion necessarily involves basic control and computer terminology, in addition to that which specifically applies to a BAS. A short glossary should prove helpful in this regard.

30.29 GLOSSARY OF COMPUTER AND CONTROL TERMINOLOGY

Address. A number used to identify an I/O (input/output) channel or a module.

Algorithm. A detailed description, often in flow-diagram or mathematical form, of a method for solving a problem. The outline used for computer or microprocessor programming.

Alphanumeric. Characters including letters of the alphabet, symbols, and numbers.

Analog data. Numerical information about physical variables given in a physically representative, continuously variable form (as with dial meters, temperature gauges).

Artificial intelligence. A branch of computer science concerned with computer programs that "learn" on the basis of experience and modify their own behavior accordingly.

ASCII. A 7-bit standard alphanumeric code established by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI). The acronym stands for American Standard Code for Information Interchange.

Baud. Rate at which information is transmitted (in bits per second).

Binary. A numeric system using only 1 and 0, normally used to represent the on and off circuit conditions.

Bit. The number 1 or 0; a contraction of *binary digit*.

Building automation system (BAS). Buildingwide, a computer-based system that monitors and controls selected aspects of building operations. A BAS is understood to include all of the equipment involved and its interconnections.

Bus. An electrical data channel.

Byte. A string of bits; 8 bits unless otherwise specified.

Central processing unit (CPU). That portion of a computer, microprocessor, or programmable controller that processes data and executes programs; the "brains" of a computer.

Converter. General term for a device that converts data or energy from one form to another. Data converters are analog to digital (ADC) or digital to analog (DAC). Energy-form converters (e.g., temperature or illuminance to voltage) are properly called *transducers*.

Digital data. Data in digital form, usually binary.

Direct digital control (DDC). Control arrangement that processes digital input data according to a programmed algorithm and yields a control function (e.g., the action of a local microprocessor controller or a computer control function).

Duplex, duplex transmission. Simultaneous bidirectional data transmission.

EIA. Electronic Industries Alliance (formerly Electronic Industries Association). Establishes data communication standards (e.g., RS-232).

Energy management system (EMS). Computer-based system for monitoring and controlling facility energy use. Frequently part of a BAS.

Hardware. All physical equipment associated with a computer or control system, as opposed to software.

I/O. Input/output.

LCD. Acronym for liquid crystal display.

LED. Acronym for light-emitting diode.

Load control, load management. Arrangement whereby energy-using devices are monitored and controlled. Part of an EMS.

Local area network (LAN). Signal network providing intercomputer communications.

Logic. Factors involved in the design of a CPU (or control scheme).

Microprocessor. A CPU, usually in the form of a single integrated circuit (IC), preprogrammed to perform specific functions in response to specific input.

Modem. Device that connects a data-originating device to a communication line; from *modulator–demodulator*.

Multiplex(er) (MX, MUX). Use of a single communications line for simultaneous transmission of multiple signals.

Nonvolatile memory. Memory that remains intact when electric power is shut off.

Operating system. Software that controls input to, output from, and operation of the CPU.

Parity. Method of verifying the accuracy of recorded data.

Point. General term used to describe either a sensor/monitor location or a specific control signal in a BAS.

Port. An I/O connection point.

Programmable controller. Electronic device containing a microprocessor, a programming means or device, and I/O interfaces.

Protocol. Conventions governing the format and timing of signaling between communication devices (e.g., between computers in area networks).

RAM, ROM, PROM, EPROM. Random access memory, read-only memory, programmable ROM, erasable PROM.

Real time. Arrangement in which a computer receives and processes data without introduction of any deliberate time delay (effectively providing an immediate response).

RS-232. Standard for interconnecting digital communications devices, such as computers, printers, and monitors.

Software. Computer program; as opposed to hardware.

Stand-alone. Descriptive term for a control device or system that can perform independently and usually can also interconnect as a subsystem (controller) in a larger system.

UPS. Uninterruptible power supply.

Volatile memory. Memory that loses its information on loss of power.

Word. A group of bits that is treated as a single unit.

30.30 BAS ARRANGEMENT

A block diagram of a typical BAS is given in Fig. 30.30. Notice that information is transferred *vertically* between levels within a stand-alone system, whereas *horizontal* intersystem information transfer occurs only at the highest level (level 1), because that is the level at which systems are interconnected. (In practice, some interconnection also occurs at level 2.) This means that a smoke alarm from level 5 of the fire alarm system travels to level 1, where the central controller tells the other stand-alone systems to take the required action. These systems in turn then signal downwards, essentially to level 4, where appropriate commands are given to controls for supply fans, elevators, security, and so on. The stand-alone systems are essentially independent, and in practice cannot easily be interconnected because of the absence of standardization in wiring and computer protocols. The ostensibly simple problem of connector standardization has yet to be solved, as anyone who has done hands-on work in the communication field can attest, although the situation is much improved over the near chaos that once reigned. Buildings with fully or even partially integrated systems are not as common as might be suspected. Such buildings may reasonably be called "intelligent buildings" and are discussed in the next section.

Returning to the block diagram in Fig. 30.30 of a typical BAS: any specific BAS may contain more or fewer monitors, sensors, dependent and stand-alone local controllers, and interconnected systems, but the overall arrangement remains generally the same. Actually, depending upon the equipment manufacturer and the system complexity, some

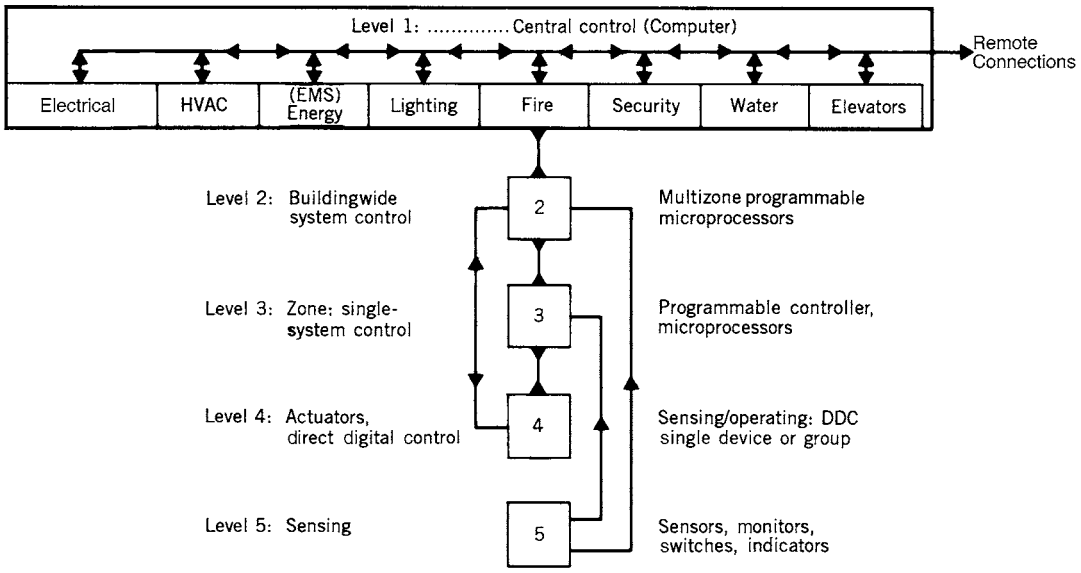


Fig. 30.30 *Overall block diagram of a building automation system (BAS). In an actual system, the various levels and devices can be combined and telescoped by use of equipment that combines several level functions in a single housing.*

of the functions and levels can be telescoped or grouped. Our discussion deals with the general case. To solidify the discussion, fire control and evacuation system terminology is used as a relatively simple and straightforward example of overall system design, function, and interconnections.

Level 5 in the diagram is the lowest system level. It contains automatically operated passive sensors such as flame, smoke, ionization, temperature, and water-flow detectors; physical condition indicators such as smoke and fire-door position sensors; and manual fire alarm pull stations. All yield a digital signal (on-off), which is transmitted to level 3. As level 5 is purely a sensor/monitor level, it does not receive any control or operating signals.

Level 4 contains sensor/operators or actuators (i.e., devices that both transmit a condition signal and receive an operation signal). In our example, this level could contain smoke and fire-door actuators, smoke vent controls, sprinkler system valves, and fan control (override) switches. The last item can either reside at this level or can be controlled through the HVAC system via level 1, 2, or 3. Control at this level would involve hard-wiring of a single device or block.

Level 3 could represent a floor, zone, or area controller, with either relay circuitry or microprocessor control (programmable controller), depending upon system complexity. This level receives information from levels 4 and 5, processes it, returns control information to level 4, operates specific local audible and visible alarms directly, and sends alarm and condition information to the level-2 building controller and to the master controller (computer) at level 1. It also receives and processes signals from levels 1 and 2, containing such information as alarm reset, alarm device operation for building emergency evacuation, and any reprogram or reset function.

Level 2 contains the building's central fire and evacuation system (life safety system) controls. This level can contain some of the level-1 programming logic relating to firefighter control of elevator operations and HVAC fan functioning, or it can simply act as an I/O device to level 1 for these functions, again depending upon system design and complexity. In some facilities, these life safety system functions may be controlled from a separate console that is interconnected with the BAS. In a multibuilding facility, this level contains the individual building



Fig. 30.31 *A workstation screen shows a selected building area, its zoning, all of the area's fire/evacuation system devices and their status, and the control system's present functioning. The illustrated screen shows an active alarm condition with messages: elevators being recalled to lobby; floor is now pressurized; audio evacuation messages active; call Fire Department. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls.)*



Fig. 30.32 *Workstation screen shows a portion of a building system and the status of all components. Here we see the chiller status (on–off, COP, tons, run time), water temperature and flow in supply and return lines, and condenser water temperature. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls.)*

fire system central control and interconnections to other building fire system controllers, as well as external connections for city alarm and external supervisory services.

Level 1 is the central computer console. This level receives status reports on the individual devices from level 4 or 5; on areas, zones, and subsystems from level 3; and on the entire fire/evacuation system from level 2. Hard-copy printouts of all alarms and periodic status reports are generally made at this level, although they can also be made at level 2. Visual display terminals (VDTs) at level 1 can be used to view the status of any area and all the devices in the fire/evacuation system (Fig. 30.31) or, for any other system (Figs. 30.32 and 30.33) either graphically or as a table (Fig. 30.34). Pictorial graphics for nontechnical end users are also possible (Fig. 30.35). At level 1, information is transferred to HVAC, elevator, security, and lighting systems in preprogrammed alarm modes, with manual override possible. A fire emergency scenario (Fig. 30.31) might interconnect with the HVAC, elevator, security, water, electrical, and lighting systems to activate exhaust and pressurizing fans and deactivate supply fans, place elevators in fire-evacuation mode, override access barriers to permit unhindered facility evacuation, connect fire pumps to emergency power feeders, disconnect high-voltage feeders, and activate emergency lighting, all via preprogrammed intersystem functions. The system operator at level 1 could then view any part of any system and reactivate or override preprogrammed functions as desired. With this system design, this is the level at which human supervisory intervention is planned. At other levels, such intervention

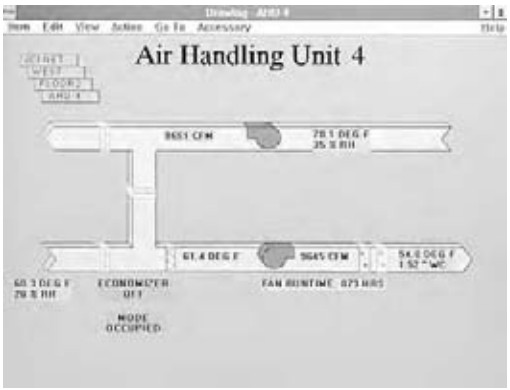


Fig. 30.33 *Any workstation screen can display any portion of any system in the BAS. Here an air-handling unit (AHU) is displayed with data on airflow, air temperatures, and relative humidity in each duct section. In addition, cumulative fan run time, economizer status, and area occupancy status are displayed. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls.)*

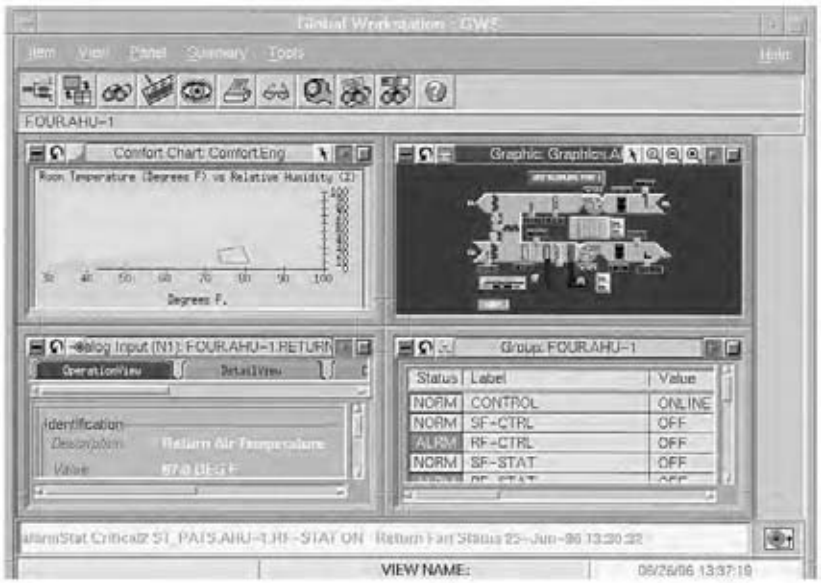


Fig. 30.34 *Global workstation screen is arranged to display four separate data windows. Clockwise from upper left: (1) Comfort chart showing a plot of room psychrometric conditions on a graph of room temperature versus relative humidity. (2) Graphic screen showing the layout of an AHU with relevant data. (3) Status chart of items in AHU-1. (4) Temperature readout of return air for AHU-1. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls.)*

occurs only if trouble arises, periodic maintenance is scheduled, or an alteration is required.

Returning to Fig. 30.30, we can consider a much more complex nonemergency system: energy. Here, level 5 senses and continuously monitors inside and outside temperature and humidity, duct air temperature, space pressurization, airflow, and the operating and load status of all fans, compressors, and refrigeration devices. Level 4 contains monitors and direct digital controls for valves, boilers, chillers, fans, humidifiers, dampers, cooling towers, and compressors (Fig. 30.36). Levels 2 and

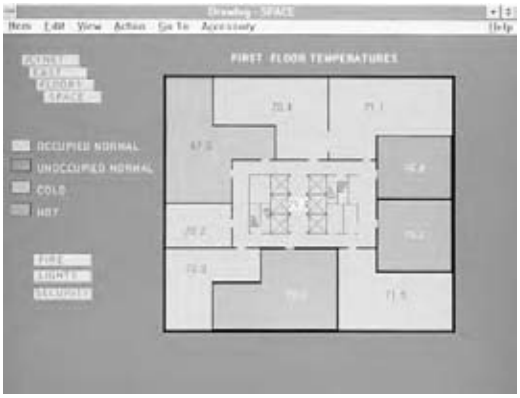


Fig. 30.35 *Workstation screen showing a floor plan, indicating room status and temperature by color and in general descriptive terms—hot, cold, normal occupied, and normal unoccupied. A similar floor plan screen can be displayed for the status of fire alarm and security systems and the lighting system. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls.)*



Fig. 30.36 *Digital controller programmable for a variety of applications, such as chiller control, boiler control, or area environmental control. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls.)*

3 contain electric load managers for duty cycling and demand limiting, HVAC controls for economizers, run-time optimizers, supply air and supply water reset, chilled and condenser water reset, enthalpy switching, load sequencing, and the like. These functions are performed either by a stand-alone EMS controller (see Fig. 26.15) or by individual demand, HVAC, and chiller load managers controlled by level-1 logic. Finally, level 1 contains the programming for all of the foregoing functions, any of which can be displayed at a level-1 workstation terminal at any time. The system operator can then reprogram any function after analyzing system performance (Fig. 30.31) at the level-1 computer and obtain immediate visual and hard-copy readout of the changes.

30.31 INTELLIGENT BUILDINGS

Although the term *intelligent building* seems to attribute a decidedly human capability to an inanimate object, the term's meaning (as defined by the Intelligent Buildings Institute in 1987) is, "a building which provides a productive and cost-effective environment through optimization of its four basic elements—structure, systems, services, and management—and the interrelationships between them. . . . Optimal building intelligence is the matching of solutions to occupant need." In the framework of such a definition, the intelligence of a building depends upon the ability of the design team to understand the occupants' present needs (via a current Owner's Project Requirements document) and to make an educated forecast of the client's and occupants' future needs. Because a building's useful life depends largely upon the accuracy of this forecast, building systems are being designed with open control architecture that lends itself easily and economically to change, both minor and major. The term *open architecture* is generally understood to mean, in terms of a BAS, a system design that, at the very least, can do the following:

- Utilize equipment from any manufacturer whose equipment meets industry-wide specifications
- Readily reprogram equipment to serve a variety of functions
- Supply required system information at any I/O port
- Permit access to databases at any workstation
- Utilize networks for information transfer at one or more levels

These requirements demand open protocols, standardized transmission media and connectors, and virtually unlimited cabling space. (The last requirement is easily fulfilled by using any of the underfloor or cellular floor raceway systems described in Chapter 27.) At this writing, proprietary interests and the prevalence of stand-alone system design are retarding the move to open architecture in the United States, whereas it is being adopted rapidly in Asian mercantile centers. There is movement toward standardization, however, as seen in the development and application of protocols such as BACNet (ASHRAE).

Referring to Fig. 30.30, which shows a prevalent BAS architecture, an open system would eliminate at least two of the levels, reducing the system to a three-level structure that *might* be structured as follows:

1. *Level 1,* the uppermost level, contains workstations connected to a main data bus. This level, which might be called the *management or information level*, has direct access to databases and information networks. It serves to establish operational programming and procedures. All points are accessible from any workstation. A typical workstation might appear as shown in Fig. 30.34.



Fig. 30.37 *Network control unit acts as a LAN platform, performing supervisory functions for a portion of a building. It connects to operator workstation(s) at the upper management level, to other network controllers at its level via the LAN, and to specific stand-alone controllers at the lower, control level. It can also be programmed to act as a high-quality industrial process controller. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls.)*



Fig. 30.38 *Fire control unit. This device controls intelligent addressable analog devices in an intelligent fire control system. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls.)*

2. *Level 2*, the intermediate level, might be called the *supervisory or network level*. Network controllers serve as a network platform—both supervising stand-alone controllers from various systems at the third level and transferring information to other network controllers supervising other areas of the building via the LAN. In addition, the network controllers exchange information with one or more workstations. A network controller can also act as a process controller. A typical unit might appear as in Fig. 30.37.
3. *Level 3*, the control level, contains dedicated controllers in stand-alone systems. The units are highly flexible and can be locally reprogrammed to control the same function in a wide variety of different systems. Two such controllers are shown in Figs. 30.38 and 30.39.



Fig. 30.39 *A unitary controller is designed to control single-zone HVAC subsystems such as heat pumps, fan-coils, and the like. It is preset from the network level but can also be locally monitored and adjusted to satisfy local requirements. These adjustments are made with a portable plug-in control unit. (Courtesy of Johnson Controls.)*

30.32 INTELLIGENT RESIDENCES

The operational principles of remote control and automation discussed previously in this chapter, and also in Chapters 26 and 15, have found ready application in residential automation and control equipment. Residences so equipped and variously referred to as *intelligent, smart*, or *automated homes* appear increasingly in the real estate press. The degree of automation in these houses varies considerably, the simplest being no more than a low-voltage control system of the type described in Section 26.32, with time-based programming using a relatively simple microprocessor. More complex systems use a touch-screen computer for control or a portable plug-in programmable microprocessor to set various portions of the system. The best (and

most expensive) systems achieve a level of user–system integration not yet available in a complex BAS, in that the user's telephone can control any portion of the system directly. This is possible because only one level or, at most, two levels of control are involved—that is, the commands are on/off/set, where the last refers to a particular electronic contact. This contact in turn establishes a new preprogrammed condition such as night-setback, lighting preset for extended absence, reset of upper-level temperatures to daytime levels, and so forth. These systems also allow relatively straightforward reprogramming to meet the occupant's specific needs.

Because all new residential construction includes some degree of automation that will surely increase in the future, all residences, both single and multiple, should be provided with the cabling and/or raceway system that is the backbone of any automation system. At this writing, the cost of plastic optical cable (POC) is approximately competitive with copper cabling in large quantities. The decision as to what cabling and distribution system to install is technical and economic. At the very least, every room in a residence should be equipped with audio/video/control point outlets. In addition, a study, a recreation room, and at least one bedroom should be wired as potential fully equipped home offices. This applies, of course, not only to anticipated automation wiring, but also to power outlets and lighting.

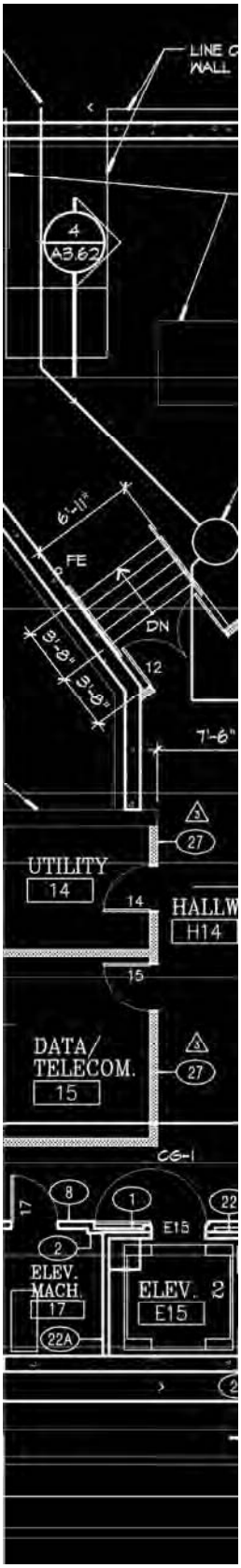
References and Resources

ASHRAE. 2008. Standard 135: *BACnet—A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks*. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Automated Buildings. http://www.automatedbuildings.com/

PART IX

TRANSPORTATION



No systems in a multistory structure are taken for granted more consistently than elevators and escalators, which are relied upon to move people quickly and safely under all conditions, including emergencies. This movement should be rapid, trouble-free, and economical. Furthermore, because vertical transportation accounts for 10% to 15% of the construction budget in tall buildings, somewhat less of the building area, and somewhat more of the operating cost—and is a determining factor in building shape, core layout, and lobby design—elevator and escalator selection and design integration are major tasks for the architectural designer.

Chapter 31 introduces the subject with a description of components including traction equipment, cars, safety devices, and systems of control and supervision. Fundamental topics, such as codes and standards and requirements for the disabled, are also covered. Criteria are established for elevator performance, and extensive car performance data are presented that can be used in conjunction with design criteria to select the size, number, and speed of elevators to meet design intent and criteria. Principles of elevator zoning are presented. The chapter continues with an analysis of spatial requirements for elevators, including shafts, lobbies, and core arrangements, and concludes with special considerations such as energy use, safety, security, and noise.

Chapter 32 addresses special-case elevators: freight elevators, nonvertical designs, residential elevators, and chair lifts, with a discussion of equipment, capacities, selection, economy, and comparison (where applicable) to conventional design. The chapter also covers interesting design options including double-deck cars and observation cars. Chapter 32 also describes material-handling devices: dumbwaiters, horizontal and vertical conveyors, pneumatic systems, container delivery systems, and automated self-propelled vehicles. This information responds to the need to plan for material handling in commercial and institutional buildings, rather than treating the subject as an afterthought, with resultant inefficiency, overloading of freight facilities, and misappropriation of passenger elevators.

Chapter 33 explains escalator system components, capacities, sizes, speeds, and methods of selection, followed by special topics including lighting, fire protection, power/energy requirements, and budget estimating. Information on inclined walks and ramps is also presented.

CHAPTER 31

Vertical Transportation: Passenger Elevators

GENERAL INFORMATION

31.1 INTRODUCTION

OF THE MANY DECISIONS THAT MUST BE made by the designer of a multistory building, probably none is more important than the selection of the vertical transportation equipment—that is, the passenger, service, and freight elevators and the escalators. Not only do these items represent a major building expense, being in the case of a 25-story office building as much as 10% of the construction cost, but the quality of elevator service is also an important factor in a tenant's choice of space in competing buildings.

Although the final decision as to the type of equipment rests with the architect, the factors affecting it are so numerous that the building designer should consult with an elevator expert. This service is available from consultants in the field and from the major elevator and escalator manufacturers. The function of this chapter is to familiarize the architect and engineer with the nature and application of vertical transportation equipment in order to enable them to make preliminary design decisions and interact effectively with consultants.

31.2 PASSENGER ELEVATORS

This chapter is concerned primarily with general-purpose traction and hydraulic elevators.

Ideal performance of an elevator installation will provide minimum waiting time for a car at any floor level; comfortable acceleration; rapid transportation; smooth, rapid braking; accurate automatic leveling at landings; and rapid loading and unloading at all stops. The elevator system must also provide quick, quiet operation of doors; good floor status and travel direction indication (both in the cars and at landings); easily operated car and landing call buttons (or other devices); smooth, quiet, and safe operation of all mechanical equipment under all conditions of loading; comfortable lighting; reliable emergency and security equipment; and a generally pleasant car atmosphere.

In addition to passenger satisfaction–oriented service considerations, elevators have architectural design impacts. Cars and shaftway doors must be treated in a manner consistent with the architectural unity of the building. More important, however, elevator shaftways are major space elements whose integration into a building is a prime factor in composition, as is the design of the elevator lobby.

31.3 CODES AND STANDARDS

Perhaps more than any other element of construction, elevators are governed by strict installation codes. The definitive resource in the United States is the American Society of Mechanical Engineers' ANSI/ASME Standard A17.1, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, the latest version of which should be in every architect's and engineer's working library. The code has legal force in most parts of the United States. Two related standards should be noted. ANSI/ASME Standard A17.3 covers existing elevators and escalators, and Standard A17.4 covers emergency evacuation of passengers from elevators. Some states and municipalities have their own elevator codes (Massachusetts, Wisconsin, Pennsylvania, New York City, Seattle, and Boston, among others) that are generally based upon, but more stringent than, the ANSI/ASME code.

In addition to the elevator code, other construction and installation codes influence elevator work. *National Fire Protection Association* (NFPA) 101, the *Life Safety Code*, details certain fire safety requirements; NFPA 70 (the *National Electrical Code*) governs some of the electrical aspects of elevator construction; and state and local laws can add a multitude of requirements and restrictions bearing on fire safety, emergency power, security concerns, and special accommodations for handicapped persons. Provisions for the disabled are covered by American National Standards Institute (ANSI) A117.1 (*Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities*, a special industry code), by the requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), and, in most locations, by local law. Like most large industries, the elevator industry is self-regulating and standardized. The National Elevator Industry, Inc. (NEII) publishes standard elevator layouts for traction and hydraulic installations. Elevator consultants and elevator company representatives are normally knowledgeable about all of the codes and standards in force, but this does not relieve the architect-engineer of legal responsibility for the design. Therefore, we strongly recommend that in the preliminary planning stage all pertinent regulations concerning vertical transportation be acquired, reviewed, and understood.

TRACTION ELEVATOR EQUIPMENT

31.4 PRINCIPAL COMPONENTS

The car, cables, elevator machine, control equipment, counterweights, hoistway, rails, penthouse, and pit are the principal parts of a traction elevator installation. An idea of the functioning and orientation of these items of equipment can be obtained from Fig. 31.1.

The car is the only item with which the average passenger is normally familiar. Some of a building's prestige depends upon proper design of the elevator car. Essentially, the car is a cage of some fire-resistant material supported on a structural frame, to the top member of which the lifting cables are fastened. By means of guide shoes on the side members, the car is guided in its vertical travel in the shaft. The car is provided with safety doors, operating-control equipment, floor-level indicators, illumination, emergency exits, and ventilation. It is designed for long life, quiet operation, and low maintenance.

The cables (ropes) that are connected to the crosshead (top beam of the elevator) and carry the weight of the car and its live load are made of groups of steel wires specially designed for this application. Four to eight cables, depending on car speed and capacity, are placed in parallel. Although multiple ropes are used primarily to increase the traction area on the drive sheaves, they also increase the elevator safety factor—as each rope is normally capable of supporting the entire load. The minimum factor of safety varies from 7.6 to 12.0 for passenger elevators and from 6.6 to 11.0 for freight elevators. The cables from the top of the car pass over a motor-driven cylindrical sheave at the traction machine (grooved for the cables) and then downward to the counterweight.

The counterweight is made up of cut steel plates stacked in a frame attached to the opposite ends of the cables to which the car is fastened. It is guided in its travel up and down the shaft by two guide rails typically installed on the back wall of the shaft. Its weight equals that of the empty car plus 40% of the rated live load. It serves several purposes: to provide adequate traction at the sheave for car lifting, to reduce the

size of the traction machine, and to reduce power demand and energy cost. These advantages come at the cost of having to strengthen the overhead machine room floor, which must carry the additional structural load of the counterweight.

Approximately 75% of the energy expended in lifting a car is returned to the system by regeneration when the car is lowered. Regeneration is the process by which the traction motor becomes a *generator* when the car is lowered and feeds power

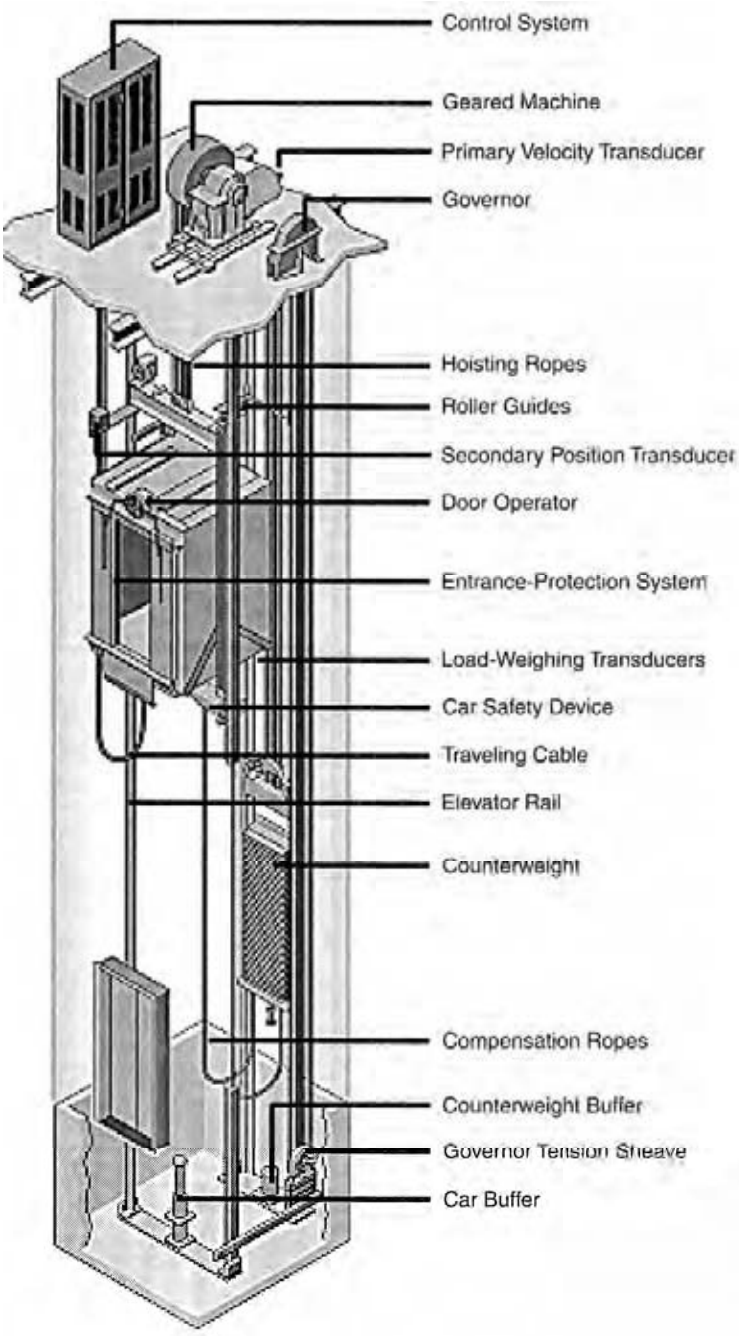


Fig. 31.1 *Components of a geared elevator installation with solid-state control and motor drive. (Courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

back into the electrical system. The unrecovered energy appears as heat, primarily in the machine room. See Section 31.43 for a discussion of traction elevator system energy requirements.

To compensate for the hoist rope weight, which becomes an important factor in high-rise elevator installations, cables are attached to the bottom of the car and the counterweight, thus equalizing loads regardless of the cab position. These cables can be seen in Fig. 31.1.

The elevator machine turns the sheave and lifts or lowers the car. The machine consists of a heavy structural frame on which are mounted the sheave and driving motor, the gears (if any), the brakes, the magnetic safety brake, and certain other auxiliaries. In many existing installations the elevator driving (traction) motor receives its energy from a separate motor-generator (m-g) set, which is in operation during the period that the particular elevator is available to handle traffic. This m-g set is properly considered a part of the elevator machine, although it may be located some distance from it. In newer installations, solid-state power and control equipment will replace the m-g set, as discussed in Section 31.20. A governor, which limits the car to safe speeds, is mounted on or near the elevator machine.

The control equipment is usually divided into three groups:

1. *Drive* (*motion*) *control* is concerned with the velocity, acceleration, position determination, and leveling of the car.
2. *Operating control* covers car door operation and functioning of car signals, including floor call buttons and all indicating devices.
3. *Supervisory control* is concerned with group operation of multiple-car installations.

The actual physical devices in these control systems were historically electromechanical, but solid-state devices are used in modern installations. The indicating and control devices that are seen by the elevator user, including car and hallway buttons, lanterns, and audible devices, are all coordinated into an overall operational control scheme, to provide rapid, safe, and comfortable vertical transportation.

The *shaft*, or *hoistway*, is the vertical passageway for the car and counterweights. On its sidewalls are the car guide rails and certain mechanical and electrical auxiliaries of the control apparatus. At the bottom of the shaft are the car and counterweight buffers. At the top is the structural platform on which the elevator machine rests. The elevator machine room (which may occupy one or two levels) is usually directly above the hoistway. It contains the traction machine and the solid-state control (or m-g set) that supplies energy to the elevator machine and control equipment. Machinery and control equipment are designed for quiet, vibration-free operation.

31.5 GEARLESS TRACTION MACHINES

A gearless traction machine consists of a dc or ac motor, the shaft of which is directly connected to a brake wheel and driving sheave. The elevator hoist ropes are placed around this sheave. The absence of gears means that the motor must run at the same relatively low speed as the driving sheave. As it is not economically practical to build motors for operation at very low speeds, a gearless machine is utilized for medium- and high-speed elevators—that is, 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) and above. The motors range from 20 to 400 hp (15 to 300 kW).

Gearless machines are generally utilized for passenger service, with car capacities of 2000 to 4000 lb (907 to 1814 kg), although special cars of up to 10,000 lb (4536 kg) have been built. Below 500 fpm (2.5 m/s), geared machines are used. At this writing, maximum car speeds are 2000 fpm (10 m/s). Faster drives have been developed and will likely play a role in the development of the next generation of very-high-rise buildings.

A gearless traction machine is considered superior to a geared machine because it is more efficient and quieter in operation, requires less maintenance, and has longer life. The decision as to whether these advantages are worth the additional cost involved can be made only after a careful analysis. Generally, a gearless machine is chosen where the rise is more than 250 ft (76 m), and very smooth, high-speed operation is desired. In the intermediate range of rise and speeds (i.e., 150 to 250 ft [46 to 76 m] height and 400 to 500 fpm [2 to 2.5 m/s]), excellent equipment, both geared and gearless, is available.

Because virtually every major elevator company operates internationally, and outside of the United States elevator size and speed are specified in kilograms and meters per second, it is useful to be

TABLE 31.1 Elevator Capacity and Speed, Approximate SI and I-P Product Equivalents

Weight		*Speed*	
Standard SI (kg)	**Approximate U.S. I-P (lb)**	**Standard SI (m/s)**	**Approximate U.S. I-P (fpm)**
1000	2000	1.0	200
1250	2500–3000	1.6	300
1600	3500	2.0	400
2000	4000	2.5	500
		3.15	600
		4.0	800
		5.0	1000

aware of the SI equivalents for key design variables. As 1 kg is 2.2 lb and 1 m/s is 196.86 fpm, approximate conversion factors of 2 and 200, respectively, can be used (Table 31.1). SI units shown herein are generally the more precise equivalents.

31.6 GEARED TRACTION MACHINES

A geared traction machine has a worm and gear interposed between the driving motor and the hoisting sheave (Fig. 31.2). The driving motor can therefore be a smaller, cheaper, high-speed unit rather than the large, low-speed unit required by a gearless installation.

The motor used in a geared installation, as in a gearless one, depends upon the type of drive system and may be either dc or ac. Characteristics of the various drive systems and their application are discussed in detail in Sections 31.15 to 31.18. Geared machines are used for car speeds of up to 450 fpm (2.3 m/s) and a maximum rise of about 300 ft (90 m). With an appropriate drive and control system, a geared traction machine can give almost the same high-quality, accurate, smooth ride as is available from a gearless installation.

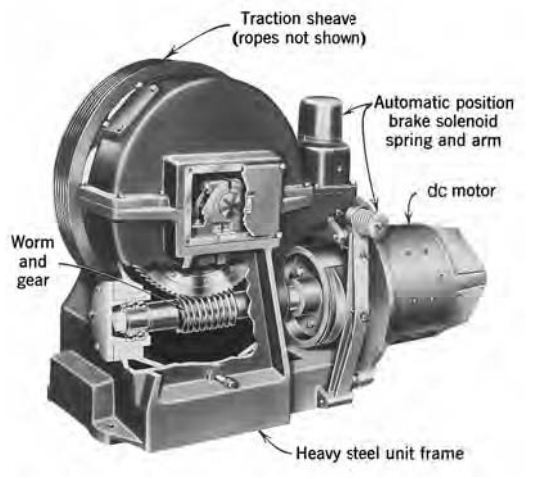


Fig. 31.2 *Cutaway of a typical dc geared traction elevator machine. Note the grooves for multiple ropes in the traction sheave. (Photo courtesy of Schindler Elevator Corp.)*

31.7 ARRANGEMENT OF ELEVATOR MACHINES, SHEAVES, AND ROPES

The simplest method of arranging vertical travel of a car is to pass a rope over a sheave and counterbalance the weight of the car by a counterweight. Then, rotating the sheave makes the car move up or down and requires very little energy to do so. This is essentially the scheme that is used on a majority of high-speed passenger elevators, as illustrated in Fig. 31.3*a*.

When the four or more supporting ropes merely pass over the sheave (*T*) and connect directly to the counterweights, the lifting power is exerted by the sheave through the traction of the ropes in the parallel grooves on the sheave. This system is referred to as the *single-wrap traction elevator machine*. The function of the sheave (*S*) is merely that of a guide pulley; it is called the *deflector sheave*.

The arrangement shown in Fig. 31.3*b* is called *double-wrap 1:1 roping*. It provides greater traction than the single-wrap arrangement and is used in many automatic high-speed installations.

A 1:1 roping arrangement (Fig. 31.3*a*, *b*, *d*) gives no mechanical advantage. The 2:1 roping (Fig. 31.3*c*) has a mechanical advantage of 2, which permits use of a high-speed, low-power (and, therefore, lower-cost) traction machine. This arrangement is used for a wide variety of installations

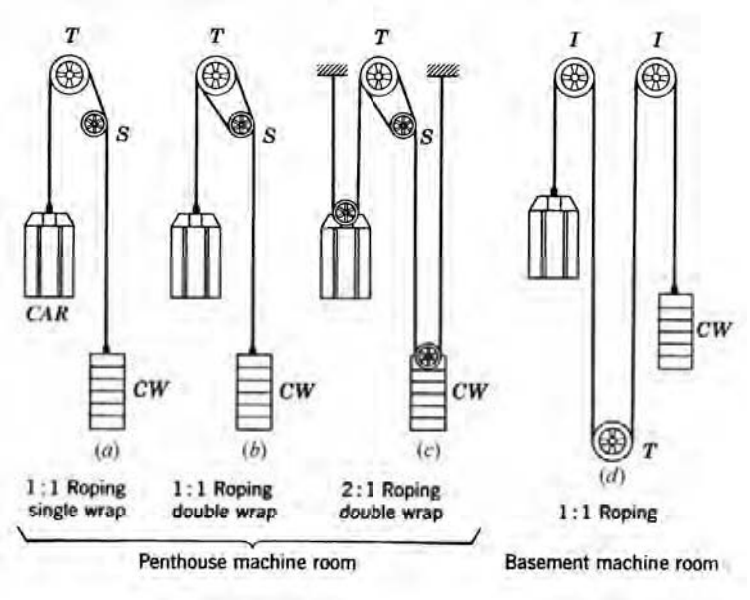


Fig. 31.3 *Elevator roping and sheave arrangements. (a) Basic single-wrap rope arrangement. In (b) and (c), the rope passes over traction sheave* T *and sheave* S*, doubles back over* T*, and then extends past* S *to the counterweight* CW*. This double-wrap arrangement provides additional traction at the drive sheave. (d) Roping arrangement for a basement machine room.*

varying from medium-speed (500 to 700 fpm [2.5 to 3.6 m/s]) gearless passenger elevators to low-speed, heavy-duty freight elevators.

In types a, b, and c in Fig. 31.3, the elevator machines are located in a machine room penthouse at the top of a hoistway. If, for architectural or other reasons, it is desired to eliminate the penthouse, a basement machine room can be used with the roping shown in Fig. 31.3*d*. This arrangement uses geared traction equipment with speeds of up to 400 fpm (2.0 m/s). All the illustrated ropings are applicable to the full range of car capacities.

31.8 SAFETY DEVICES

The main brake of an elevator is mounted directly on the shaft of the elevator machine (see Fig. 31.2). The elevator is first slowed by dynamic braking of the motor, and the brake then operates to clamp the brake drum, thus holding the car still at the floor.

A dual safety system, designed to stop an elevator car automatically before its speed becomes excessive, is normally used. The device that acts first is a centrifugal governor or an electronic speed sensor that cuts off the power to the traction motor and sets the brake in the event of a limited overspeed. This usually stops the car. Should the speed still increase, the governor actuates two safety rail clamps, which are mounted at the bottom of the car, one on either side. They clamp the guide rails by wedging action, bringing the car to a smooth stop (Fig. 31.4).

Oil or spring buffers are usually placed in the elevator pit. Their purpose is not to stop a falling car but to bring it to a somewhat cushioned stop if it overtravels the lower terminal. If a car overtravels (down or up), travel sensors deenergize the traction motor and set the main brake. Safety arrangements under emergency conditions (fire or power failure) are discussed in Sections 31.45 and 31.46.

HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

31.9 CONVENTIONAL PLUNGER-TYPE HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

The elevators discussed in the preceding sections are traction types; that is, they are raised and lowered as a result of friction that transmits force from the drive mechanism through cables attached to or passing under the car. These cables in turn are raised and lowered by a motor-driven traction sheave. In contrast, the conventional hydraulic (or plunger) elevator car is raised and lowered by means of a movable rod (plunger) rigidly fixed to the bottom of the car. The absence of cables, drums, traction motors, elaborate controllers, safety devices, and

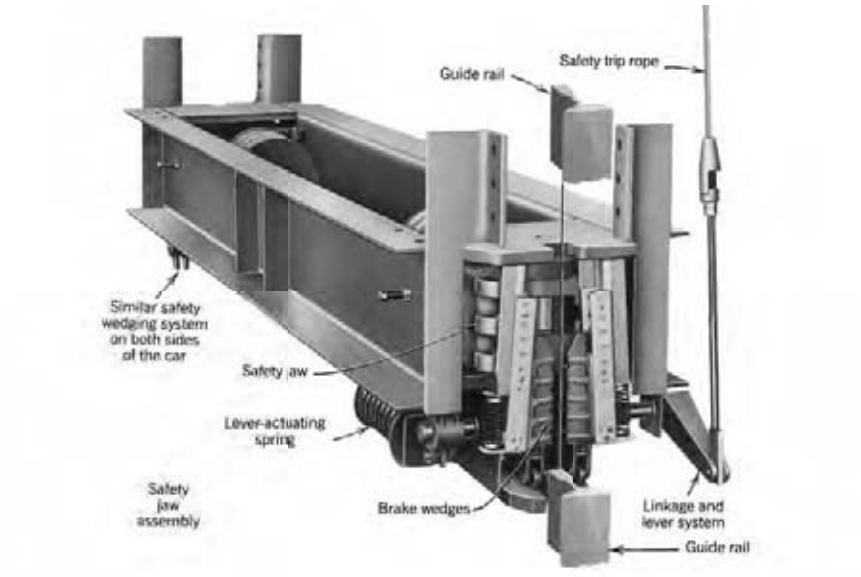


Fig. 31.4 *Elevator safety devices. The governor or velocity transducer regulates overspeed, clamping the safety trip rope and releasing the safety jaws, which exert a constant retarding force on the car rails, thus bringing the car to a gradual and safe stop. (Photo courtesy of Schindler Elevator Corp.)*

penthouse equipment makes this system inherently inexpensive and often the indicated choice for low-speed (up to 200 fpm [1 m/s]), low-rise (up to 65 ft [20 m]) applications, where construction of the plunger pit does not present difficulties, and/or the absence of a penthouse is desirable.

The first hydraulic elevators used water as the system fluid, supplied at sufficient pressure from roof-mounted water tanks. The tanks were kept full by a building's water pumps. All hydraulic elevators today use oil and obtain their motive power from a sealed oil-piping circuit powered by an oil pump.

The components of a typical hydraulic unit are shown in Fig. 31.5. This system operates the same way as a hydraulic automobile jack. Oil from a reservoir is pumped under the plunger, thereby raising it and the car. The pump is stopped during downward motion, the car being lowered by gravity and controlled by the action of bypass valves, which also control the positioning of the car during upward motion. Control systems that are normally used are similar to those for traction elevators—for example, collective and selective collective approaches. Similarly, door arrangements are the same as in traction elevators—that is, single-slide, center-opening, and two-speed arrangements. Automatic leveling is readily available and is standard on all units with automatic controls.

From a design and construction perspective, the major *advantage* of hydraulic units is the absence of an overhead machine room, a penthouse, and traction equipment. As shown in Fig. 31.5, only the guide rails project above the car and, if these are camouflaged, the impression of a freestanding elevator car is given. This effect can be used to good advantage inside large, open spaces such as in shopping malls and stores; when combined with glass-enclosed, observation-type cars, the effect can be striking (see Figs. 32.8 and 32.9).

Additional advantages of hydraulic elevators over traction units include:

- The elevator load is carried by the ground and not by the structure. In contrast, traction units place a large structural load on the penthouse and machine room floors and on overhead steel as well.
- The hoistway is smaller due to the absence of a counterweight and its guide rails.
- Cars can be lowered manually by the operation of oil valves. This is particularly useful and important in the event of control equipment failure or power outage.

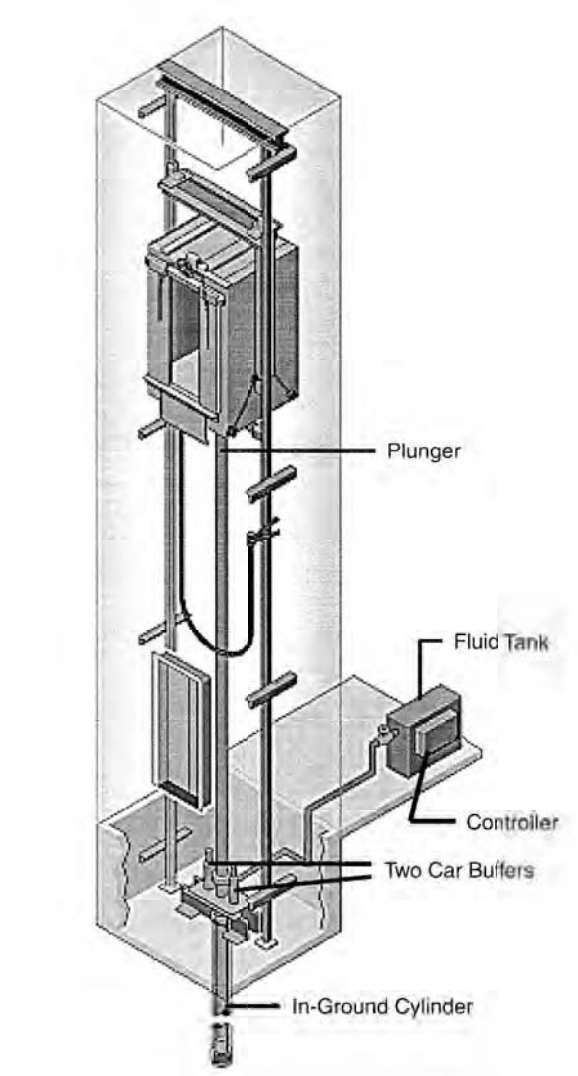


Fig. 31.5 *Phantom view of a conventional "holed" hydraulic elevator, so called because the elevator car rests on a hydraulically activated steel plunger that descends into a hole in the ground. The hole is actually a buried hollow steel cylinder into which oil is pumped, under pressure, to raise the car. The oil pump is inside the fluid tank. (Illustration courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

- There is essentially no limit to the load that can be lifted.

The major *disadvantage* of a standard hydraulic elevator is its operating expense. Because it is not counterweighted, it requires a relatively large motor to drive the oil pump, and *all* the energy is lost in heat (see Table 31.2). For an example of this operating cost disadvantage, consider a 3500-lb (1588-kg), 125-fpm (0.6-m/s) hydraulic elevator in a department store. Such a unit requires a 40-hp (30-kW) motor. Assuming the unit to be in operation 10 hours a day, 6 days a week, and assuming a normal 60% time-in-operation figure, gives (remembering that the motor operates only in the up direction):

$$\text{energy used/day} = \frac{40\,\text{hp}}{0.82\,\text{eff}} \times \frac{0.746\,\text{kW}}{\text{hp}} \times 60\% \times 10\text{h} \times \tfrac{1}{2} = 110\,\text{kWh}$$

At an electricity cost of $0.08/kWh,

$$\text{monthly energy cost} = \frac{110 \times 6\ \text{days}}{\text{week}} \times \frac{4.33\,\text{weeks}}{\text{month} \times \$0.08} = \$229/\text{month}$$

TABLE 31.2 Comparative Energy Use of Various Motion Control Arrangements

Energy Use	Relative Use
Hydraulic elevators	10
UMV motion control; geared dc traction motor	7–7.5
UMV motion control; gearless dc traction motor	6–6.5
Thyristor control; geared dc traction motor	5–5.5
Thyristor control; gearless dc traction motor	4–4.5
Variable-voltage variable-frequency control, ac traction motor	2.5–3.0

Compare this to the calculated (Section 31.43) monthly energy cost for a 3500-lb (1588-kg), 600-fpm (3-m/s) traction car of $72 when using solid-state equipment and $126 with an m-g set power supply, to get an appreciation of the value of a counterweight.

Other *disadvantages* of hydraulic units as compared to traction units include:

- They are limited to low-rise, low-speed applications.
- Ride quality is inferior to that of a good traction unit, although it is entirely acceptable for residential, mercantile, and industrial applications.
- Because oil viscosity changes with temperature, the ambient temperature of the space containing the pump and the oil storage tank must be controlled to maintain ride quality and performance.
- The high inrush current required by the pump each time it starts (which is every time the elevator travels upward) necessitates a "stiff" power supply to avoid problems of flickering lamps and other undesirable line-voltage fluctuations.
- Noise from the pump and motor plus piping noise can be disturbing. This problem can be ameliorated by skillfully locating the pump mechanism (which can be placed up to 50 ft [15 m] from the elevator shaft).

Plunger-type hydraulic elevators have experienced some disfavor because of problems caused by oil seepage into the ground. The plunger travels in a buried steel casing that, despite excellent butyl or other liquid-tight coatings, can corrode after an extended period and leak oil. In most locations, this will violate regulations dealing with groundwater pollution. Because repair of such an oil leak is expensive and entails extended elevator outage, other arrangements (as detailed in the next two sections) have come into increasing use.

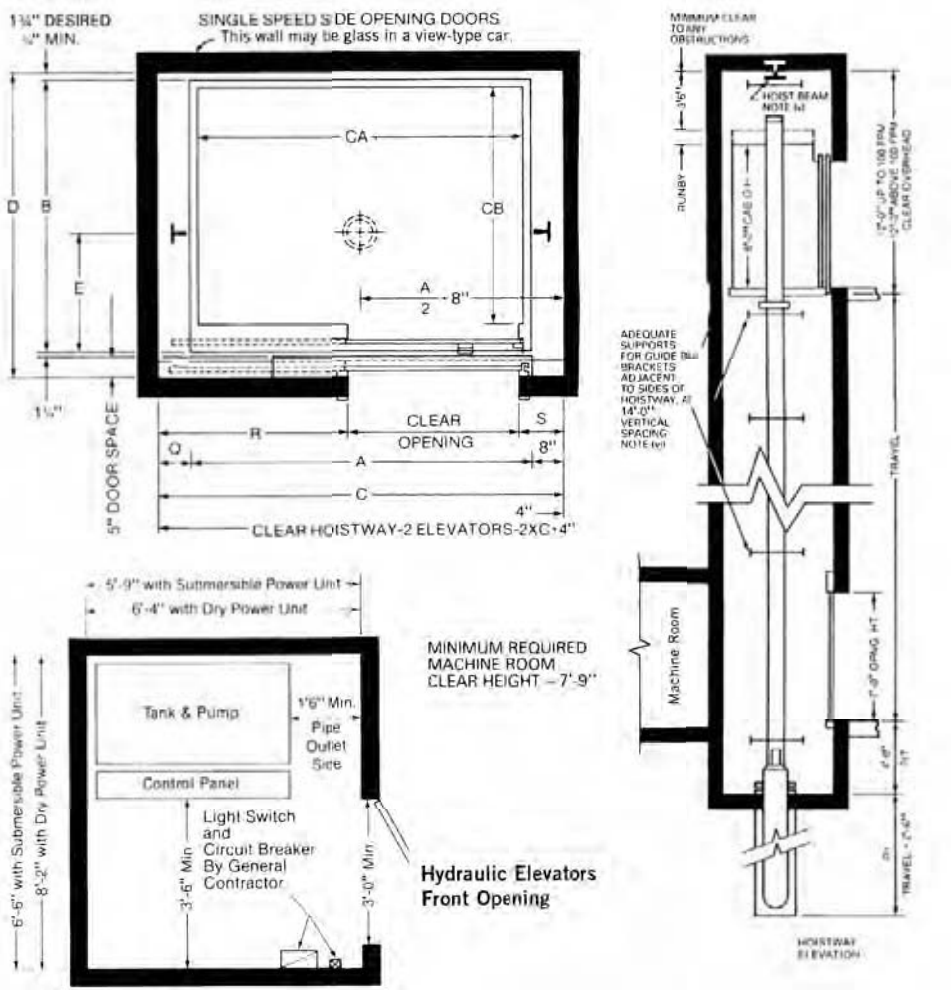
Hydraulic elevators are best applied to low-speed, low-rise applications such as office buildings and residential buildings up to four stories in height, low-rise department stores, malls, basement and parking garage shuttles, theater elevators, and stage lifts and freight applications of all sorts—in particular, those intended for very heavy loads. Another very useful application is for the use of handicapped persons who cannot use escalators or negotiate stairs. A typical layout and dimensional data for standard plunger units are given in Fig. 31.6, along with capacities and application recommendations.

31.10 HOLE-LESS HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

Where drilling a plunger hole presents difficulties, a hydraulic installation using a telescoping plunger or a roping arrangement can be used. The telescoping jack design is shown schematically in Fig. 31.7 in a single-jack arrangement. As this causes a lateral stress in the building due to the cantilevered car, a dual-jack arrangement is used more frequently. When supported on both sides, as shown in Fig. 31.8, all of the vertical elevator load is transferred directly to the ground. The telescoping jack, in which all sections move simultaneously, is more complex than a simple plunger unit and requires more maintenance, although maintenance is simplified by the fact that the entire length of the jack is readily accessible. The ride with the telescoping jack arrangement is not as smooth as that on a straight plunger elevator due to the simultaneous movement of the jack's telescoping sections, causing a degree of jerk.

31.11 ROPED HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

The roped hydraulic arrangement is simpler than the telescoping plunger unit because it uses only a single moving jack section compared to two or even three in a telescoping unit for the same rise. It accomplishes this by using 2:1 roping, which



CAPACITY (LBS)	310 SPEED (FPM)	MAXIMUM STANDARD OPENINGS	MAXIMUM STANDARD TRAVEL (c)	CLEAR OPENING (a)	PLATFORM SIZE A WIDTH	PLATFORM SIZE B DEPTH	MINIMUM CLEAR CAB INSIDE CA WIDTH	MINIMUM CLEAR CAB INSIDE CB DEPTH	HOISTWAY C CLEAR WIDTH	HOISTWAY D(e) WALL TO WALL	A	S	E	Q
2000	100	1	70'-0"	3'-0"	6'0"	5'-1"	5'-6"	4'-3"	7'-4"	5'-9"	3'-6"	11"	2'-1"	8"
	125		77'-0"											
2500	100	1	70'-0"	3'-6"	7'0"	5'-1"	6'-6"	4'-3"	8'-4"	5'-9"	3'-11"	11"	2'-1½"	8"
	125		76'0"											
	150		73'-0"											
3000	100	1	70'-0"	3'-6"	7'0"	5'-1"	6'-6"	4'-3"	8'-4"	5'-9"	3'-11"	11"	2'-1½"	8"
	125		72'6"											
	150		73'-0"											
3500	100	1	66'-0"	3'-6"	7'0"	6'-3"	6'-6"	5'-5"	8'-4"	6'-11"	3'-11"	11"	2'-8⅛"	8"
	125		68'0"											
	150		69'-0"											
4000	100	1	66'-0"	4'-0"	8'0"	6'-3"	7'-6"	5'-5"	9'-4"	6'-11"	—	—	2'-8½"	8"
	125		66'-0"											
	150		66'-0"											

Fig. 31.6 *Typical dimensional, capacity, and layout data for a conventional plunger-type hydraulic elevator. Door systems are single slide (SS) or center opening (CO). The car can be used as a viewing-type unit by utilizing a glass wall at the back of the car. (Extracted with permission from published data of Schindler Elevator Corp.)*

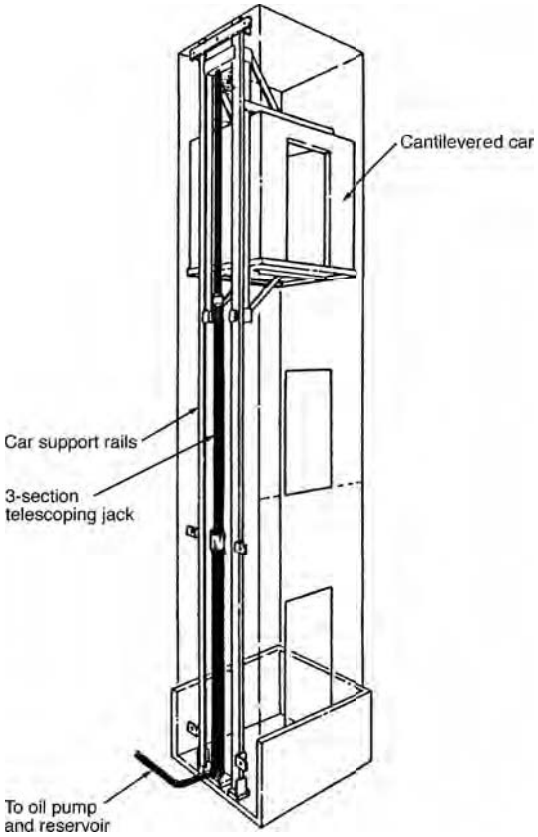


Fig. 31.7 *Hole-less hydraulic elevator driven by a single telescoping jack. The cantilevered car exerts a lateral structural load on the building. This arrangement is used less than the two-jack mechanism shown in Fig. 31.8. (Courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

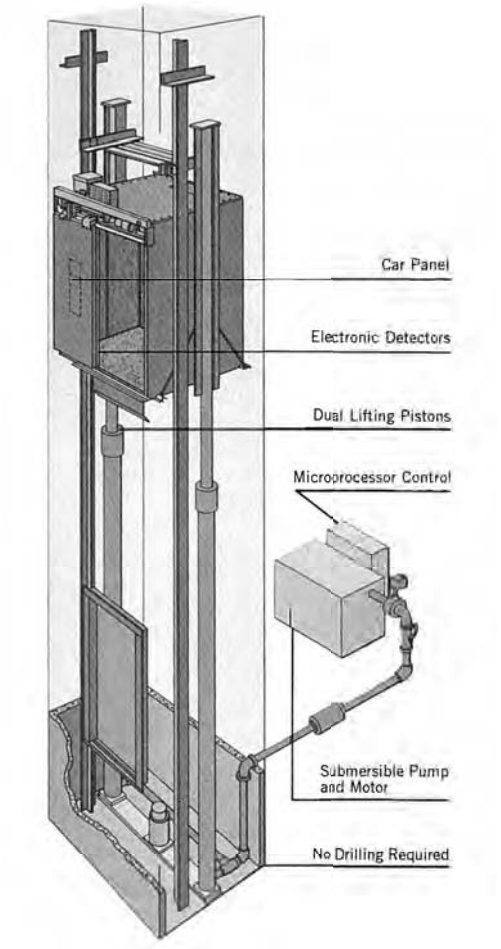


Fig. 31.8 *Dual-jack hole-less hydraulic elevator. The balanced vertical load is borne by the ground only, with no building component. The unit illustrated is suitable only for a low-rise (two-stop) installation, with a car weighing no more than 2500 lb (1134 kg). (Courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

means that the car travels twice as far as the piston. This is accomplished by passing the rope over a pulley in the piston crosshead. One end of the rope is attached to a fixed point in the pit below the car, and the other end is attached to the base of the car (Fig. 31.9). The piston (plunger, jack) lifts the crosshead, which in turn lifts the car twice as far.

The arrangement shown in Fig. 31.9 uses a single jack and a cantilevered car. Other arrangements use two jacks to eliminate the lateral building load (Fig. 31.10). A 2:1 roping is standard in the United States. The simplicity and reliability of the single- or double-jack roped arrangement has made it by far the most common choice for low-rise, light- to medium-duty hydraulic elevators. Because it is a roped unit, it is equipped with a slack-rope safety in addition to the other safeties used on direct-connected hydraulic systems.

PASSENGER INTERACTION ISSUES

31.12 ELEVATOR DOORS

The choice of a car and hoistway door affects the speed and quality of elevator service considerably.

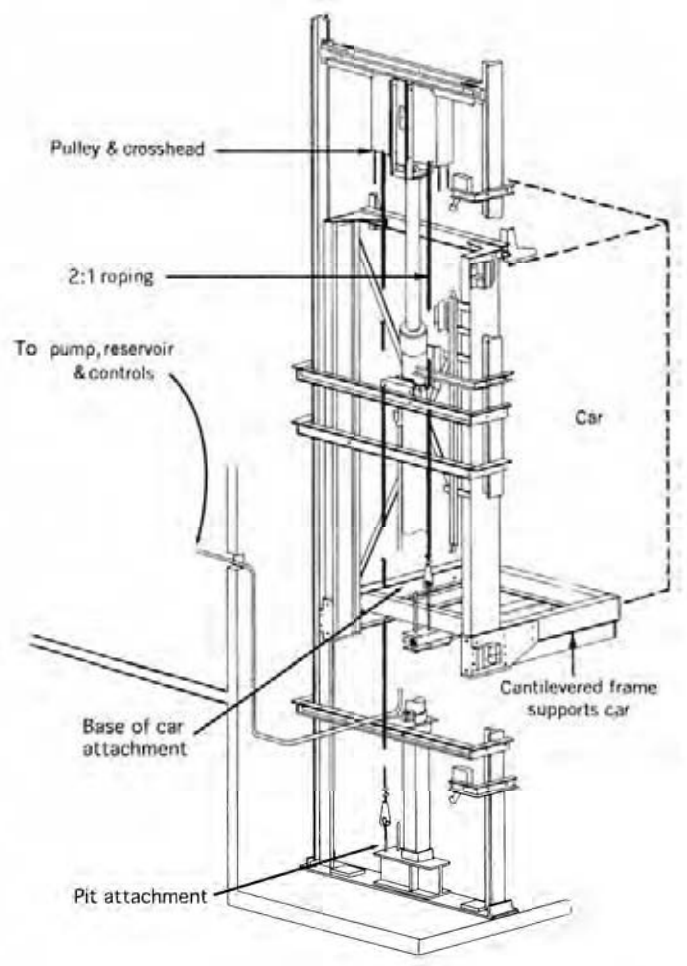


Fig. 31.9 *Low-rise residential-type elevator of the roped hydraulic type. The cantilevered car is lifted by cables from the cable crosshead, which is in turn lifted (and lowered) by the single-section telescoping piston (jack). The 2:1 roping arrangement lifts the car twice as far as the piston travels. The power unit, which includes the oil tank, pumps, and control, is usually mounted at the lower level. Control is automatic, including automatic leveling. Depending upon the specific design, the car is a 700 to 750-lb (318 to 340-kg), 30 to 36-fpm (0.15 to 0.18-m/s) unit, normally with a single-story rise. The hatchway is 16 to 26 ft^2 (1.5 to 2.4 m^2), with the larger size used for a car intended to accommodate a wheelchair. (Courtesy of CemcoLift, Corbett Elevator Co.)*

Doors for passenger elevators are power-operated and are synchronized with the leveling controls so that the doors are fully opened by the time a car comes to a complete stop at a landing. The closing time, however, varies with the type of door and the size of the opening. For safety reasons, the kinetic energy of an automatic door is limited to 7 ft-lb (9.5 N m) and its closing pressure to 30 lb (13.6 kg). To provide the fastest closing within this energy limitation, a center-opening door is used. Also, to reduce passenger transfer time and avoid discomfort, a clear opening of 3 ft, 6 in. (1.07 m) is used in most commercial installations, which permits simultaneous loading and unloading without undue passenger contact. (Some consultants feel that simultaneous passenger transfer is practical only with a 48-in. [1.2-m] clear opening; Fig. 31.11). When an opening narrower than 36 in. (915 mm) is used, loading is delayed until unloading is complete, and the speed and quality of service are thereby markedly reduced. Such small doors are applicable only in residential or small, light-traffic buildings. Available door types are shown in Fig. 31.12.

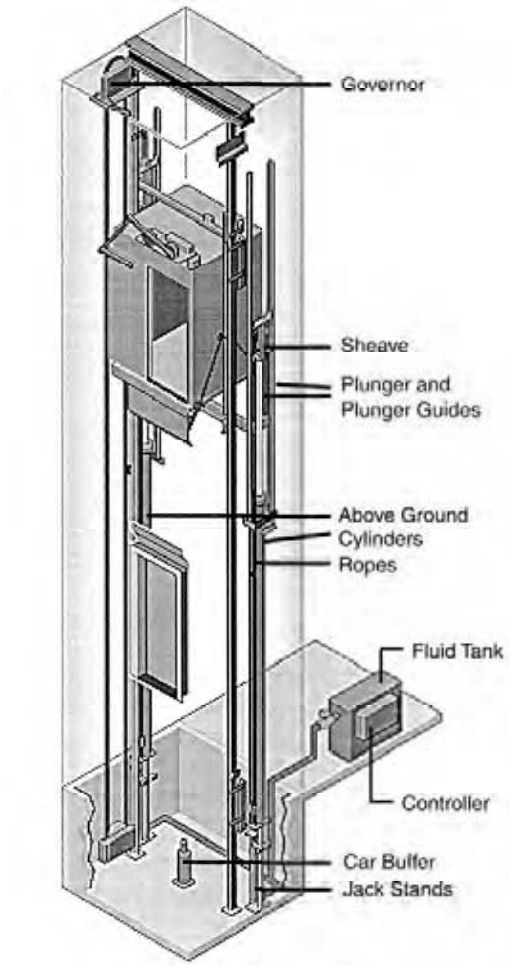


Fig. 31.10 *For heavier loads than can be readily handled by the cantilevered car in a single-jack design (Fig. 31.9), a balanced dual jack (cylinder) is used, as seen in this phantom view. This design, which can accomplish somewhat higher rise than a single-jack design, in addition to carrying much heavier loads, also requires a larger shaftway to accommodate the second cylinder and rails. (The second pulley and crosshead are omitted for clarity in the drawing.) (Courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

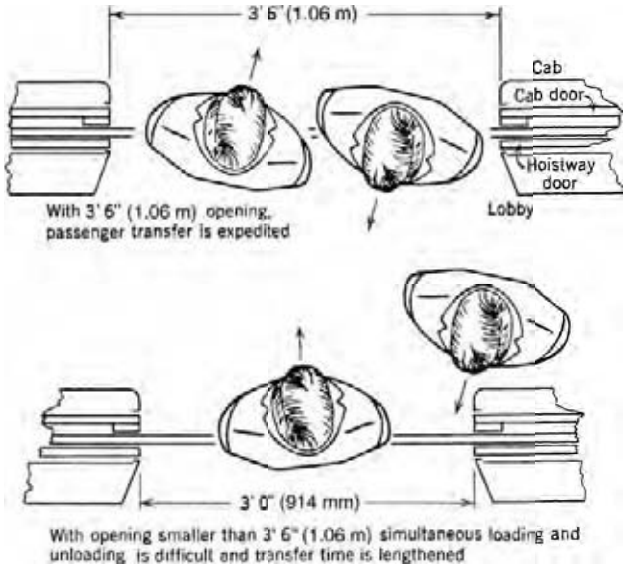


Fig. 31.11 *Transfer of passengers with door openings of different widths. With openings smaller than 3 ft, 6 in. (1.07 m), simultaneous loading and unloading is difficult and transfer time is lengthened. With a 42-in. (1.07-m) opening, large people or people with bulky outerwear may brush against each other in passing. For complete isolation of passengers, a 48-in. (1.22-m) opening may be necessary.*

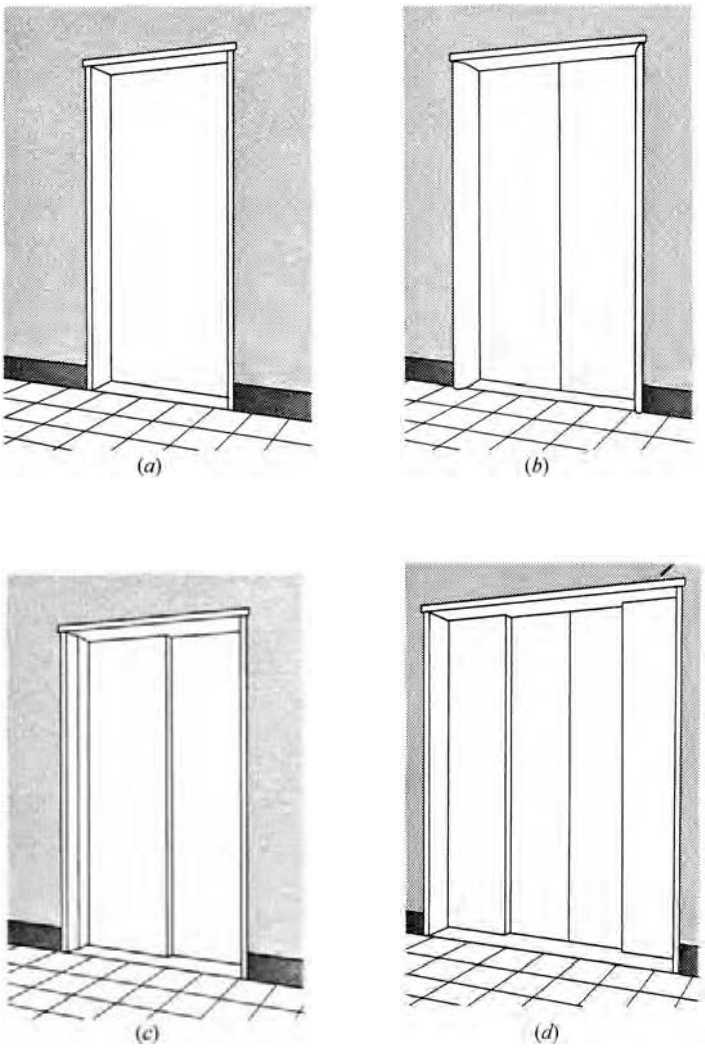


Fig. 31.12 *Typical hoistway doors and applications. (a) Single-slide door, 24 to 36 in. (610 to 914 mm) wide, for small commercial building or residential use. (b) Standard commercial 42-in. (1.07-m) center-opening door for office building use or 48 to 60-in. (1.22 to 1.52-m) center-opening door for hospital or service car. (c) Two-speed, 42-in. (1.07-m) general commercial use door. (d) Two-speed, center-opening, 60-in. (1.52-m) department store door for freight, passenger, and nonautomatic service.*

A two-speed door design is used where space conditions dictate or where a wide opening is required. The term *two-speed* reflects the fact that the two halves of the door must travel at different speeds to complete their travel simultaneously (see Fig. 31.12*c*).

Installations can be equipped with an electronic sensing device that detects passengers in a wide area on the landing in front of the car door rather than only directly in the door's path. Such detection, often accompanied by an audible signal, causes the car door to remain open for a predetermined length of time or a closing door to reverse. These devices are particularly useful in installations where passengers cannot approach the entrance or cannot enter the car quickly—for example, riders with baggage or holding children, people in wheelchairs, and employees moving bulky objects such as beds or carts in hospitals or wheeled objects in office and industrial facilities.

All automatic elevators, regardless of whether or not equipped with detection beams, are required by ANSI to have a safety edge device on the car doors that causes the car and hoistway doors, which operate in synchrony, to reopen when the safety edge meets any obstruction. Some car doors are arranged to "nudge" when almost closed and/or after a specific time period. ADA requirements for elevators are discussed in Section 31.14.

31.13 CARS AND SIGNALS

The primary area where the architect has a generally free hand in choosing equipment relates to the decor of the cars and the selection of hallway and car signals. A typical elevator specification is functional and describes the intended operation of the equipment, while usually including an amount to cover decor of the cars. The type and functions of signal equipment are also specified, but finish and styling are optional. Car interiors may be finished in wood paneling, plastic (Micarta or Formica), stainless steel, or almost any material desired. Floors may be tile, wood, or carpeting, as selected. Illumination may be from ceiling fixtures, coves, or a completely illuminated luminous ceiling of standard or special design. For each bank of elevators, it is wise to furnish at least one set of wall mats to protect wall finishes when cars are being used to move tenant furniture. This is especially important where no separate service car has been provided.

Car and hallway signals and lanterns should be designed to fulfill their basic functions, consider the needs of the handicapped, and coordinate with the decor of the cars and corridors. (For a discussion of the car control panel, see Section 31.27.) The hall buttons should indicate the desired direction of travel and by visual means confirm that a call has been placed. The hall lantern located at each car entrance must visually indicate the direction of travel of an arriving elevator and preferably its present location (Figs. 31.13 and 31.14). An audible signal should announce a car's imminent arrival. This feature allows waiting passengers to move to the next arriving car in a bank, which speeds service. Hall stations can be equipped with special switches for fire, priority, and limited-access service, as required.

Within the car, travel direction and present location can be indicated either with separate fixtures or by indicators built into the car panel. Most manufacturers can provide voice synthesizers built

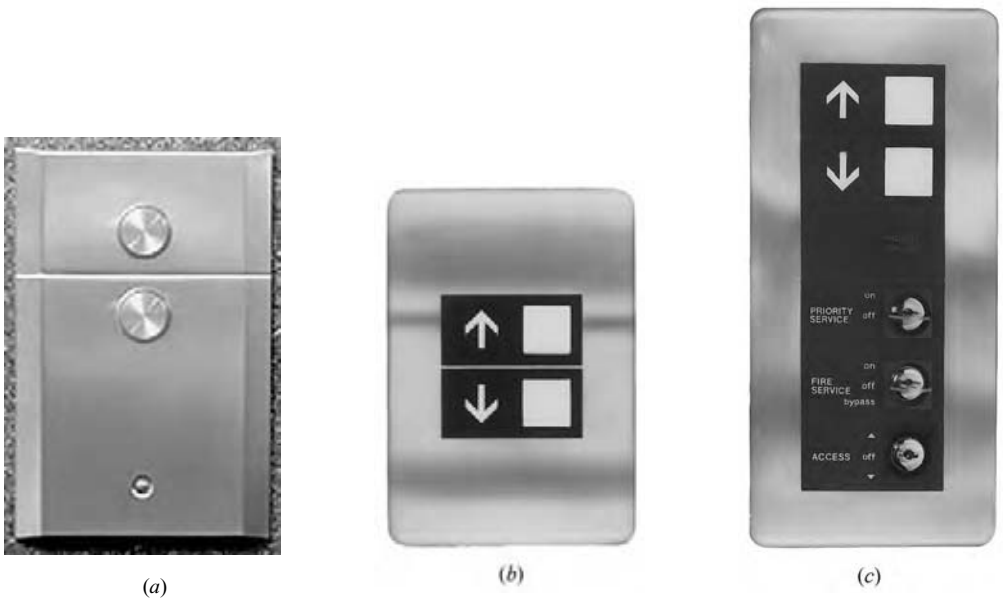
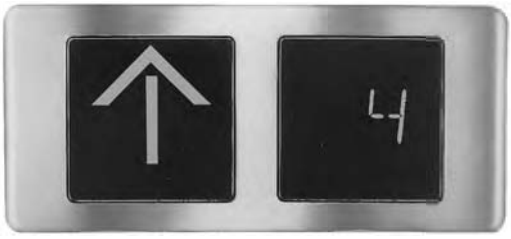


Fig. 31.13 *Typical hall stations. (a) Simple pushbutton station with an illuminated ring on each button to indicate call registration. (b) Large buttons show travel direction in addition to lighting up to indicate call registration. (c) Expanded hall stations may incorporate priority, emergency, or secure access controls as shown. (Photos courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 31.14 *Typical hall lanterns. (a) The top section is green and lights when a car approaches, indicating up travel. The bottom section is red, and when lighted indicates an approaching down car. (b) The lantern shows travel direction and present car location. (Photos courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

into the car panel that announce the floor, direction of travel, and any other desired message such as safety or emergency messages.

31.14 REQUIREMENTS FOR THE DISABLED

Elevator manufacturers follow ADA (the Americans with Disabilities Act) requirements as a minimum, and may add additional conveniences for the disabled to meet specific building design intent or local codes. No planning should begin until the project architect has assembled and reviewed all applicable codes and standards. Information regarding elevator accessibility requirements (which reference ASME A17.1-1990, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*) may be found on the United States Access Board's Web site (http://www.access-board.gov/).

The primary physical limitations addressed by ADA are those of ambulation, sight, and hearing. Thus, to ease access for passengers in wheelchairs (or with walking aids), the ADA requires excellent car leveling, 36-in. (915-mm) minimum clear door opening (42 in. [1.1 m] recommended), delayed door closing, detection beams that reopen the door *without contact* on sensing a passenger in the door opening, inside car dimensions that permit turning a wheelchair, buttons and emergency controls within easy reach, and appropriate car furnishings.

For those with sight impairment, the ADA requires audible signals in addition to easily seen and recognized visual ones, both in the car and at landings, to indicate call registration, car approach, car landing, direction of travel, floor, car position, and so on. In this connection, a voice synthesizer is of invaluable assistance. In addition, Braille plates adjacent to car floor buttons and large, easily recognizable symbols adjacent to passenger-controlled emergency controls are to be used. Hearing-impaired passengers are assisted by the large visual signals required for sight-impaired passengers. In addition, call buttons must visually indicate that a call has been placed and likewise indicate when the call has been answered. Many of these ideas also make life easier for all passengers. A note of caution: Delayed door closing may increase overall travel time appreciably. In buildings with substantial traffic peaks, it may be necessary to designate one or more specific elevators for use by the disabled during peak periods.

The verbatim requirements of the ADA as stated in the *Federal Register*, Vol. 56, No. 144, July 26, 1991, are presented in Fig. 31.15, with accompanying illustrations as they appear in the *Federal Register*. References to illustrations within this figure are to the *Federal Register* figure numbers.

ELEVATOR CAR CONTROL

31.15 DRIVE CONTROL

The movement of an elevator car and all of its parts is controlled by three different systems that combine and interact to provide a unified control system.

ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities

4.10 Elevators

4.10.1 General. *Accessible* elevators shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with 4.10 and with the *ASME A*17.1—1990. Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators. *Freight elevators shall not be considered as meeting the requirements of this section unless the only elevators provided are used as combination passenger and freight elevators for the public and employees.*

4.10.2 Automatic Operation. Operation shall be automatic. Each car shall be equipped with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring the car to floor landings within a tolerance of ½ in. (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions. This self-leveling feature shall be automatic and independent of the operating device and shall correct the overtravel or undertravel.

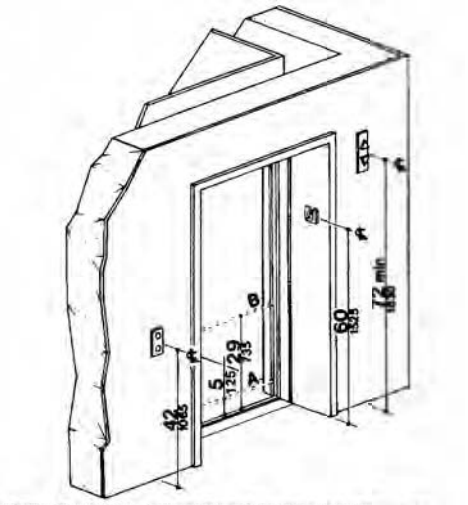
4.10.3 Hall Call Buttons. Call button in elevator lobbies and halls shall be centered at 42 in. (1065 mm) above the floor. Such call buttons shall have visual signals to indicate when each call is registered and when each call is answered. Call buttons shall be a minimum of ¾ in. (19 mm) in the smallest dimension. The button designating the up direction shall be on top. (See Fig. 20.) *Buttons shall be raised or flush. Objects mounted beneath hall call buttons shall not project into the elevator lobby more than 4 in. (100 mm).*

4.10.4 Hall Lanterns. A visible and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering a call. Audible signals shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction or shall have verbal annunciators that say "up" or "down". Visible signals shall have the following features:

(1) Hall lantern fixtures shall be mounted so that their centerline is at least 72 in. (1830 mm) above the lobby floor. (See Fig. 20.)

(2) Visual elements shall be at least 2½ in. (64 mm) in the smallest dimension.

(3) Signals shall be visible from the vicinity of the hall call button (see Fig. 20). In-car lanterns located in cars, visible from the vicinity of hall call buttons, and conforming to the above requirements, shall be acceptable.



NOTE: The automatic door reopening device is activated if an object passes through either line A or line B. Line A and line B represent the vertical locations of the door reopening device not requiring contact.

Fig. 20
Hoistway and Elevator Entrances

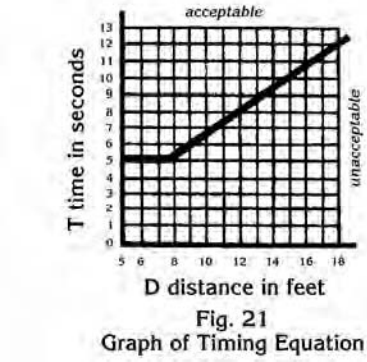


Fig. 21
Graph of Timing Equation

4.10.5 Raised and Braille Characters on Hoistway Entrances. All elevator hoistway entrances hall have *raised* and *Braille* floor designations provided on both jambs. The centerline of the characters shall be 60 in. (1525 mm)

TRANSPORTATION

Fig. 31.15 *ADA requirements for elevators extracted from the* Federal Register, *July 26, 1991 (these are current with the* ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities *as amended through 2002).*

ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities *(Continued)*

above *finish* floor. Such characters shall be 2 in. (50 mm) high and shall comply with 4.30.4. Permanently applied plates are acceptable if they are permanently fixed to the jambs (see Fig. 20).

4.10.6 Door Protective and Reopening Device. Elevator doors shall open and close automatically. They shall be provided with a reopening device that will stop and reopen a car door and hoistway door automatically if the door becomes obstructed by an object or person. The device shall be capable of completing these operations without requiring contact for an obstruction passing through the opening at heights of 5 in. and 29 in. (125 mm and 735 mm) above finish floor (see Fig. 20). Door reopening devices shall remain effective for at least 20 seconds. After such an interval, doors may close in accordance with the requirements of *ASME* A17.1—1990.

4.10.7 Door and Signal Timing for Hall Calls. The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call until the doors of that car start to close shall be calculated from the following equation:

$$T = D/(1.5 \text{ ft/s}) \text{ or } T = D/(445 \text{ mm/s})$$

where T total time in seconds and D distance (in feet or millimeters) from a point in the lobby or corridor 60 in. (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door (see Fig. 21). For cars with in-car lanterns, T begins when the lantern is visible from the vicinity of hall call buttons and an audible signal is sounded. *The minimum acceptable notification time shall be 5 seconds.*

4.10.8 Door Delay for Car Calls. The minimum time for elevator doors to remain fully open in response to a car call shall be 3 seconds.

4.10.9 Floor Plan of Elevator Cars. The floor area of elevator cars shall provide space for wheelchair users to enter the car, maneuver within reach of controls, and exit from the car. Acceptable door opening and inside dimensions shall be as shown in Fig. 22. The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing shall be no greater than 1¼ in. (32 mm).

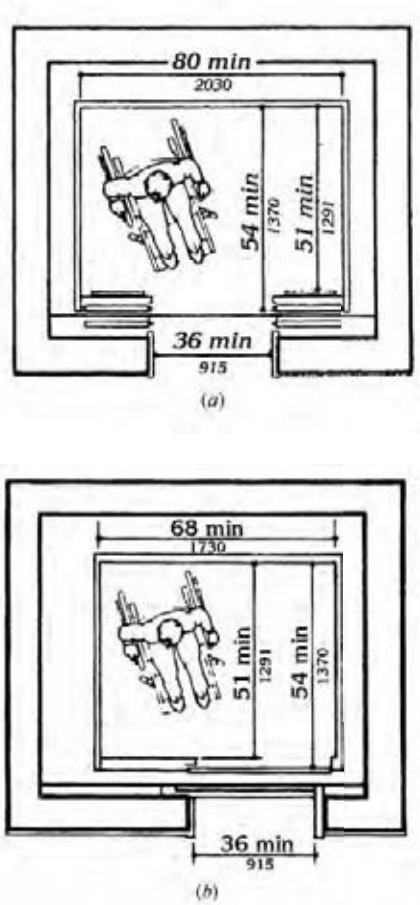


Fig. 22
Minimum Dimensions of Elevator Cars

4.10.10 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces shall comply with 4.5.

4.10.11 Illumination Levels. The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, and car threshold and landing sill shall be at least 5 footcandles (53.8 lux).

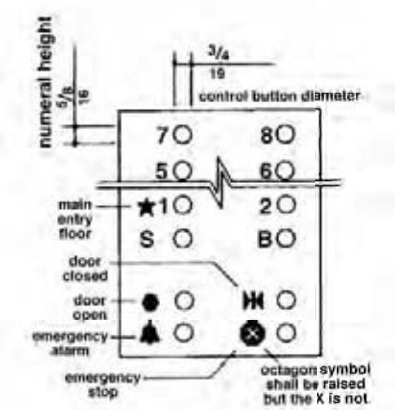
4.10.12 Car Controls. Elevator control panels shall have the following features:

(1) Buttons. All control buttons shall be at least ¾ in. (19 mm) in their smallest dimension. They *shall* be *raised* or flush.

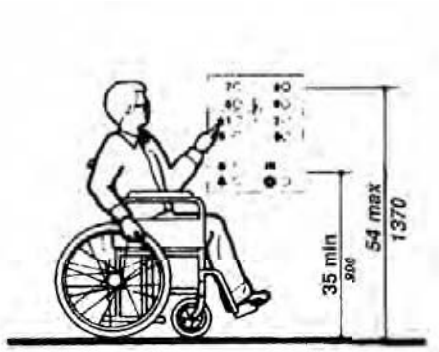
(2) Tactile. *Braille,* and Visual Control Indicators. All control buttons shall be designated by

TRANSPORTATION

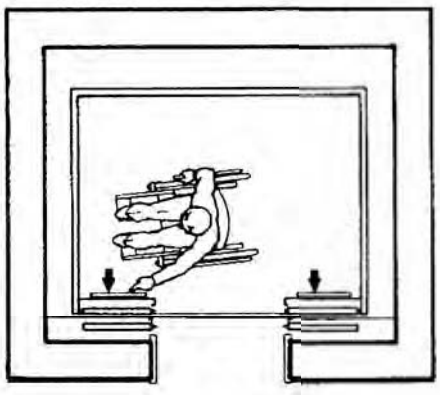
Fig. 31.15 *(Continued)*



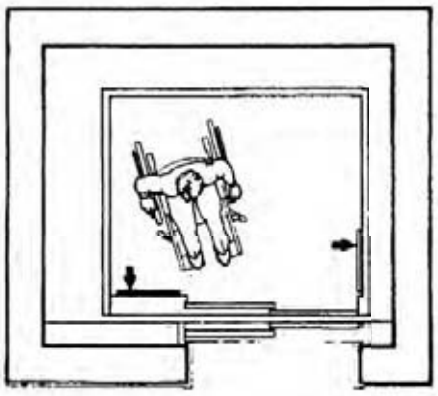
(a)
Panel Detail



(b)
Car Control Height



(c)
Alternate Locations of Panel with Center Opening Door



(d)
Alternate Locations of Panel with Side Opening Door

Braille and by *raised* standard alphabet characters for letters, Arabic characters for numerals, or standard symbols as shown in Fig. 23a, and as required in *ASME* A17.1—1990. *Raised* and *Braille* characters and symbols shall comply with 4.30. The call button for the main entry floor shall be designated by a *raised* star at the left of the floor designation (see Fig. 23a), and as required in *ASME* A17.1—1990. *Raised* and *Braille* characters and symbols shall comply with 4.30. The call button for the main entry floor shall be designated by a raised star at the left of the floor designation (see Fig. 23a). All raised designations for control buttons shall be placed immediately to the left of the button to which they apply. Applied plates, permanently attached, are an acceptable means to provide raised control designations. Floor buttons shall be provided with visual indicators to show when each call is registered. The visual indicators shall be extinguished when each call is answered.

Fig. 31.15 *(Continued)*

ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities ***(Continued)***

(3) Height. All floor buttons shall be no higher than 54 in. (1370 mm) above the *finish floor for side approach and 48 in.* (*1220 mm*) *for front approach.* Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm and emergency stop, shall be grouped at the bottom of the panel and shall have their centerlines no less than 35 in. (890 mm) above the finish floor (see Fig. 23a and b).

4.10.13 Car Position Indicators. In elevator cars, a visual car position indicator shall be provided above the car control panel or over the door to show the position of the elevator in the hoistway. As the car passes or stops at a floor served by the elevators, the corresponding numerals shall illuminate, and an audible signal shall sound. Numerals shall be a minimum of ½ in. (13 mm) high. The audible signal shall be no less than 20 decibels with a frequency no higher than 1500 Hz. An automatic verbal announcement of the floor number at which a car stops or which a car passes may be substituted for the audible signal.

4.10.14 Emergency Communications. If provided, emergency two-way communication systems between the elevator and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with *ASME* A17.1—1990. The highest operable part of a two-way communication system shall be a maximum of 48 in. (1220 mm) from the floor of the car. It shall be identified by a raised symbol and lettering complying with 4.30 and located adjacent to the device. If the system uses a handset then the length of the cord from the panel to the handset shall be at least 29 in. (735 mm). *If the system is located in a closed compartment the compartment door hardware shall conform to 4.27, Controls and Operating Mechanisms. The emergency intercommunication system shall not require voice communication.*

Fig. 31.15 *(Continued)*

The *supervisory system* controls a bank of elevators as a group and dictates which car answers which call. The *operational control* system determines when and where physical motion of a car and its doors should occur. This system deals with the operation of the car doors and the integration of car buttons, lanterns, and passenger-operated devices into the overall control and indicating system. The operating control system passes information about car and door control to the *motion control* system (also known as *drive control*). Motion control determines the car's acceleration, velocity, braking, leveling, and regenerative braking, plus all aspects of door motion.

Elevator *car* control is separate and distinct from the control system that governs the functioning of a group of cars acting as a system. That arrangement is generally designated the *supervisory system* and is discussed separately.

Elevator car acceleration and deceleration are accomplished by controlling the speed of the motor that drives the elevator traction machine. This speed control can be accomplished in a number of ways, all of which are in use in elevator installations. They are:

- Thyristor control of an asynchronous (squirrel cage) ac traction motor
- Thyristor control of a dc traction motor
- Motor-generator (m-g) set control of a dc traction motor (Ward–Leonard system)
- Variable-voltage, variable-frequency (VVVF) control of an asynchronous ac traction motor

Rheostatic control of single and multispeed ac motors is essentially obsolete and therefore is not discussed. Each system is described briefly in the following sections, and applicability, advantages, and disadvantages are noted.

31.16 THYRISTOR CONTROL, AC AND DC

(a) ac

High-power transistors make accurate speed control of inexpensive ac squirrel-cage motors practical by the simple expedient of supplying carefully regulated variable voltage to the motor. The resultant speed control is smooth and stepless, making it applicable to passenger elevator installations. However, the

high motor slip caused by the constant frequency of the variable-voltage ac supply causes large thermal losses with resultant low operating efficiency. In addition, the "chopper," which is used to provide the necessary voltage control, introduces undesirable harmonics into the power system in considerable quantity. These harmonics cause undesirable radio noise and can cause system component overheating. Finally, the system's low power factor increases line losses and necessitates increased feeder sizes. As a result, this option, which is applicable to low and mid-rise passenger service (maximum rise 250 ft [76 m] and maximum car speed of 350 fpm [1.8 m/s]), using geared machines has been largely replaced by VVVF control (see Section 31.18).

(b) dc

Excellent ride quality can be had by utilizing the dc version of thyristor control (see Fig. 31.16*a*) to supply variable voltage to a dc traction motor. This arrangement provides the high-quality ride and leveling characteristic of dc drives and removes the rise and speed limitations of its ac counterpart, but

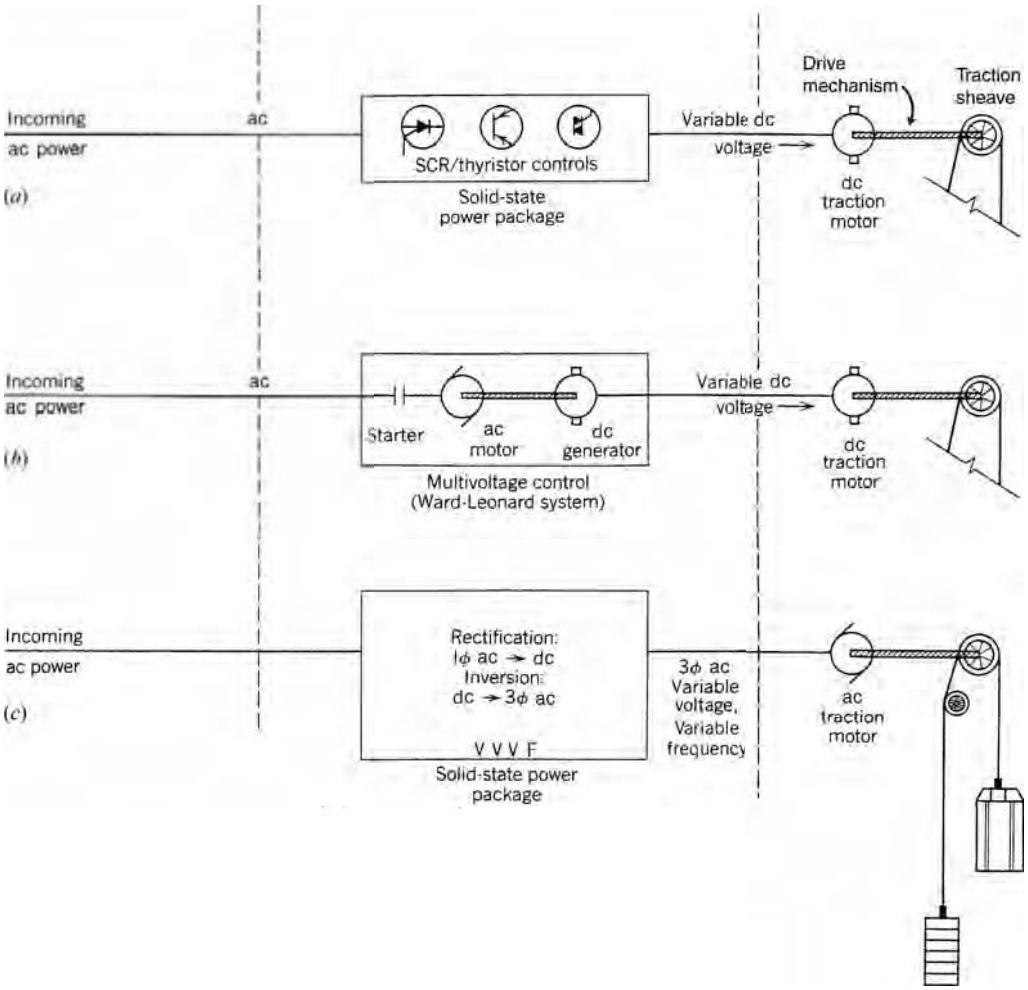


Fig. 31.16 *Arrangement of electric speed-control equipment for elevator drives. (a) Solid-state, silicon-controlled rectifier (SCR) thyristor control produces variable-voltage dc and finds application in good-quality new and retrofit medium- and high-speed installations. (b) The traditional Ward–Leonard (m-g) system, which produces finely controlled, variable-voltage dc. This is the system in use today in the vast majority of existing high-quality installations. (c) Variable-frequency (VVVF) ac is energy-efficient, highly accurate, and applicable to all types of installations.*

not the system's inherent low power factor, heavy line harmonics, and high machine room thermal losses. Line harmonics can be sharply reduced by the use of power line filters. This control system is widely used today, with both geared and gearless traction machines as applicable, for installations of all rises and car speeds. Its extremely smooth ride makes it one of the three systems of choice in high-quality construction. The other two systems are the traditional Ward–Leonard variable-voltage dc system and the VVVF ac system.

31.17 VARIABLE-VOLTAGE DC MOTOR CONTROL

Before the development of electronic motor control, the only practical way of obtaining the precise motor speed control necessary for smooth, stepless elevator operation was to provide a variable dc voltage to a dc traction motor. This variable dc voltage was obtained from an auxiliary m-g set comprising an ac motor and a dc generator. This arrangement (see Fig. 31.16*b*) is known as a *Ward–Leonard system* or as a *unit multivoltage* (UMV) drive. Although this arrangement has disadvantages, it is a classic high-quality elevator drive arrangement and is found in the vast majority of better-quality geared and gearless installations built before 1990. The disadvantages of this system—low overall efficiency, expensive machines, high thermal losses in machine rooms, high maintenance costs for three rotating machines, and high noise levels—were, until the development of a practical VVVF system, accepted as the price of a system that operated faultlessly, with great accuracy at all speeds, and for long periods of time given proper maintenance. As noted previously, it is today still one of the three principal drive control systems being used in new installations. Its principal advantage over VVVF control is that it is "forgiving" of a less than ideal building power supply.

In modernization work, buildings with existing Ward–Leonard systems are frequently converted to solid-state dc thyristor control. This change maintains the excellent ride characteristics of variable-voltage dc traction machine installations while improving system performance by replacing the auxiliary m-g set with a low-loss, low-maintenance, quiet, solid-state thyristor drive control.

31.18 VARIABLE-VOLTAGE, VARIABLE-FREQUENCY AC MOTOR CONTROL

This system (see Fig. 31.16*c*), which is entirely solid-state, is (in the opinion of many elevator professionals) the drive system of choice for all high-quality new installations of any speed or rise. The system consists of a rectifier, which changes the incoming ac to dc, and an inverter, which creates variable-voltage, infinitely variable-frequency, three-phase ac from the (rectified) dc. This ac is then applied to a standard squirrel-cage ac motor, which operates essentially at the speed corresponding to the frequency of the input. By maintaining a constant voltage-to-frequency ratio input to the traction motor, it is possible to provide continuously variable, highly accurate speed control at extremely high efficiencies throughout the full speed range of the motor. This is precisely what is required for high-quality geared and gearless installations, without the energy losses associated with the auxiliary m-g set associated with UMV control. The VVVF speed control system eliminates most of the disadvantages of the solid-state thyristor control system and has the following characteristics:

- Overall system efficiency is high at all motor speeds.
- Traction motors are economical single-speed squirrel-cage ac.
- Motors are 10% to 15% smaller than those of other drive systems.
- System power factor is close to unity.
- Line harmonics are lower than with thyristor controls.
- Speed control and leveling are equal to dc traction motor control.
- Equipment is 98% solid-state, thus requiring minimum maintenance.
- Electric energy use and peak loads are reduced, thus reducing electric billings by up to 35%.
- The system is applicable to all rises and speeds.
- Machine rooms are smaller, cooler, and quieter than those using Ward–Leonard UMV controls.

The preceding discussion can be summarized with tabular comparisons of the various drive systems in use today (Tables 31.2 and 31.3). The exact extent of improvement possible when changing

TABLE 31.3 Comparative Characteristics of Elevator Drive Systems

Type	Rise ft (m)	Speed fpm (m/s)	Control	Initial Cost	Operating Cost	Performance
Geared ac	250 (76)	150–350 (0.8-1.8)	Thyristor	Medium	Medium	Fair
	300 (91)	150–450 (0.8-2.3)	VVVF	High	Low	Excellent
Geared dc	175 (53)	50–450 (0.3-2.3)	UMV	High	High	Excellent
	250 (76)	50–450 (0.3-2.3)	Thyristor	Medium	Low	Very good
Gearless dc	Unlimited	400–1200 (2.0-6.1)	UMV	High	High	Excellent
			Thyristor	Medium	Low	Very good
Gearless ac	Unlimited	400–2000 (2.0-10.2)	VVVF	Medium	Low	Excellent

Note: Life of equipment is generally indefinite except for the worm and gear of a geared unit, which have a 30- to 40-year life.

to solid-state equipment in a retrofit job depends on the quality of both the old and new systems. It is greatest when a microcomputer group control system replaces a relay-logic terminal dispatch system.

31.19 ELEVATOR OPERATING CONTROL

Assuming an elevator system is energized and at rest, registration of a call from a lobby station or an upper-floor corridor activates the system. The particular elevator car that answers the call is selected by the supervisory system. In a UMV system the car's m-g set is started, whereas with solid-state motion control power is available immediately. Switching devices in the car control panel release the brake, energize the elevator motor, and accelerate the car to its rated speed. Reverse operations are initiated when decelerating and stopping (landing) the car. When the car stops, the brake holds the sheave and elevator stationary.

The motion of a single car is determined by the action of three principal items of equipment: the car controller, the motion controls, and the system supervisory equipment. The action of the last equipment is discussed in Sections 31.20 to 31.24. The function of the car controller is to provide information on the car's exact location, car panel calls, and hall calls. This information is fed into the supervisory system and the motion control equipment, which in turn act to initiate all the procedures necessary to answer all calls via the individual car controller panels. The car controller panel also supplies the necessary signals to car and hall lanterns that indicate the car position and direction of travel.

31.20 SYSTEM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

An operating system provides for the automatic response of a group of cars to calls for service. An effective system must process information regarding all hall calls and car calls, car travel directions, and car position (in relation to each other and in relation to the call requirements), plus the trends of traffic. The last is required to allow the system to anticipate demand rather than just react to it. Because traffic and calls are never static, a control system that can satisfy all these demands in a large elevator system is necessarily an extremely sophisticated one. On small systems, the operating control is much simpler, as described in later sections. Throughout the discussion that follows, solid-state systems are assumed.

31.21 SINGLE AUTOMATIC PUSHBUTTON CONTROL

This system is the simplest of the passenger-operated automatic control schemes. It handles only one call at a time, providing an uninterrupted trip for each call. A single corridor button at each level can register a call only when the car is not in motion. This system is used only in private residences and for light-use freight elevators.

31.22 COLLECTIVE CONTROL

Cars stop at each floor registering a call irrespective of direction, hence the term *collective*. This leads to slow and annoying service. As a result, this system is no longer used in new installations in the United States, although it is common in other countries.

31.23 SELECTIVE COLLECTIVE OPERATION

This type of collective operation is "selective" in that it is arranged to collect all waiting "up" calls on the trip up and all "down" calls on the trip down. The control system stores all calls until they are answered, and automatically reverses the direction of travel at the highest and lowest calls. When all calls have been cleared, the car will remain at the floor of its last stop awaiting the next call. Any hall button call will set the car in operation.

Selective collective control is standard in locations where service requirements are moderate, such as in apartment houses, small offices, and professional buildings. Because these locations often require more than one car, a group control scheme for up to three cars automatically assigns each hall call to the car best situated to answer it, prevents more than one car from answering a call, allows one car to be detached for freight duty, and automatically parks cars at the ground floor when they are not required.

Although selective collective control is in common use for residential and other buildings with light- to moderate-service requirements, its inherent and strong tendency toward bunching of cars can result in long waiting periods. This characteristic is particularly annoying with groups of three cars. Frequently, a passenger arrives at a landing to find that all three cars have just passed, going in the same direction. The result is that service is only slightly better than what would be rendered by a single car, except that the load (handling) capacity is greater. For this reason, operation of more than two cars with this system is not recommended, and operation of more than three cars is not feasible.

31.24 COMPUTERIZED SYSTEM CONTROL

Prior to the advent of computer supervisory control, large banks of elevators were controlled by lobby-based human "starters" who attempted, with limited success, to recognize and anticipate traffic patterns and thus speed service. Due to the huge amount of information that had to be processed, service, particularly during heavy traffic, was frequently less than satisfactory. This situation changed with the advent of computerized, microprocessor-controlled operating systems.

A satisfactory control system must continuously monitor demand and control each car's motion in response to demand only; that is, it must analyze all the possibilities and answer each call in optimum fashion. The definition of *optimum* depends, of course, on the system design strategy, and this varies among manufacturers. Such a system is possible only with the aid of a central computer combined with programmable microprocessor-controlled peripherals, because the amount of data that must be collected and instantaneously processed is enormous.

All manufacturers attempt to optimize the parameters by which system quality is measured—specifically, to minimize interval, hall waiting time, and average trip time. How this is accomplished depends on the relative weight assigned to each item of input data in an extremely complex computer algorithm. One manufacturer uses an algorithm that calculates a figure of merit for *each* car to answer *each* waiting hall call. The number arrived at represents the weighted sum of the projected passenger hall waiting time (interval and hall wait time) and traveling passenger delay (average trip time). The car with the best figure of merit (minimum time) is assigned to the landing call. Another manufacturer uses a somewhat simpler dynamic call allocation algorithm that relies on the high-speed calculation capabilities of a central computer to make a last-moment decision as to which car answers which call. Another algorithm, in addition to analyzing each car's capability to answer a call, calculates the effect of any decision on the overall elevator service quality for the building and uses this factor as well in the final decision.

Still another algorithm uses a car dispatch program based on preprogrammed and learned traffic patterns modified by the history of the previous few minutes of operation. In the basic program, each car computes its own response time to a waiting hall call, considering its own position, velocity, and car calls, and compares it to that of all other cars in the group. The car that will provide optimum hall call service time (waiting time plus trip time) answers the hall call. To facilitate this type of car "bidding" for calls, some systems are arranged so that each car controller can act as a master group controller. At any one time, one car in the group acts as the

master, but if it is taken out of service, another car controller becomes the master.

In addition, some programs use an artificial intelligence module to learn traffic data and history and continuously change the car-dispatching mode. These changes consist in part of sectoring or zoning the building so that cars are grouped to provide optimal service. This type of system is particularly useful in buildings with single- or multifloor-use occupants with repetitive traffic patterns. Most algorithms permit overriding the program mode in response to crowd sensors or to particularly heavy, concentrated service demand such as might occur if the occupants of an entire floor left the building at an unusual hour.

The actual program logic for even a small group supervisory traffic control system is beyond the scope of this book, but its guidelines are not. An adequate system should:

- Be programmed initially for the anticipated service needs. These needs can be analyzed in existing buildings with computerized traffic analyzers (Fig. 31.17).
- Be reprogrammable to meet changes in building needs at nominal cost and with minimum shutdown time. It must be possible to detach cars from the system during testing, reprogramming, and routine maintenance and to provide minimal service even during off-hours.
- Provide for priority calls (based on landing waiting times), statistical analysis of traffic in order to anticipate patterns, adaptive (zoned) car parking to meet specific needs, adjustable door timing based on the type of call (lobby, landing, car), backup dispatch means (in case of dispatch system failure), and automatic call cutout for constant (stuck) signals.
- Provide means for viewing elevator traffic information from selected locations (lobby or management office, for example, as in Fig. 31.18) and for obtaining a hard copy of this information—both as stored and real-time (see Fig. 31.18) data. This information-handling equipment must provide a fault mode that stores, displays, and diagnoses system operating faults. The owner/manager unit may have on-site control and reprogramming capabilities if so required.
- Provide additional functions such as emergency power elevator selection and control (see Section 31.45), priority service, selective hall/car call cutout, swing (separate) car operation, and hoistway access controls for maintenance.
- Provide, where specifically required by the building management, a riot-control feature (allowing access limits at entrance levels), crossover floor operation in a zoned system, convention service (intense short-time usage at selected levels), and controlled access at given floors and for specific occupants.
- Be fully coordinated with the fire protection system in accordance with the local fire regulations (see Section 31.46).
- Act in consonance with the elevator security equipment so that operation of security/alarm devices initiates automatic elevator motion control procedures. This too must be coordinated with the local security authorities, and the automatic procedures must be subject to manual override (see Section 31.47).

Proper operation of the system should also result in:

1. All floors getting equal service, including the basement, if required
2. Proper handling of multifloor tenants in office buildings to permit efficient interfloor traffic
3. Appropriate action in emergencies, such as general or local power failure or any type of abnormal car-to-signal operation

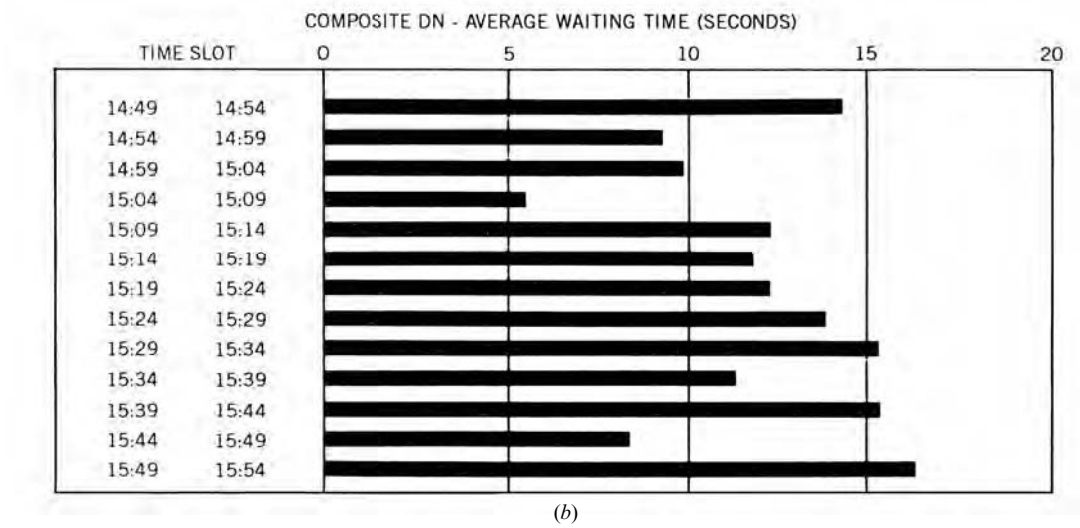
31.25 REHABILITATION WORK: PERFORMANCE PREDICTION

The primary reason for rehabilitating an existing elevator system is to improve its operating performance. Traction machinery has extremely long life, particularly in the gearless configuration. Thus, the usual rehabilitation project consists of replacing the m-g set, car control panel, and group controller with solid-state, microprocessor-controlled programmable equipment, while retaining the original traction equipment. The car door operator, which controls door action, is usually also replaced because door opening and closing characteristics are an important factor in overall trip time and therefore in system performance.

Major manufacturers have developed computer-based elevator system simulators. Such



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 31.17 *Building elevator traffic studies can be performed quickly and accurately using a traffic analyzer with multiple inputs to feed data via appropriate software into a laptop computer (a). The unit illustrated has 64 inputs, which are scanned once per second, and is capable of unattended monitoring for a week. The accumulated data on call registration, response time, waiting time, maximum interval, cars in service, and so on, can be viewed visually on the computer screen or printed out as in (b). (Courtesy of UNITEC Parts Co.)*

programs enable architects and owners to input design (or as-is) building data, and to receive graphic and text output on the performance of proposed systems. Because such programs are interactive, the user can change the input data and the characteristics of the proposed equipment until the desired performance level is reached. These programs are particularly useful in modernization work because the owner sees in advance the operation of a proposed system *in his/her building* and can make appropriate decisions based upon good information.

31.26 LOBBY ELEVATOR PANEL

The traditional lobby elevator control and information panel for each elevator bank, which was

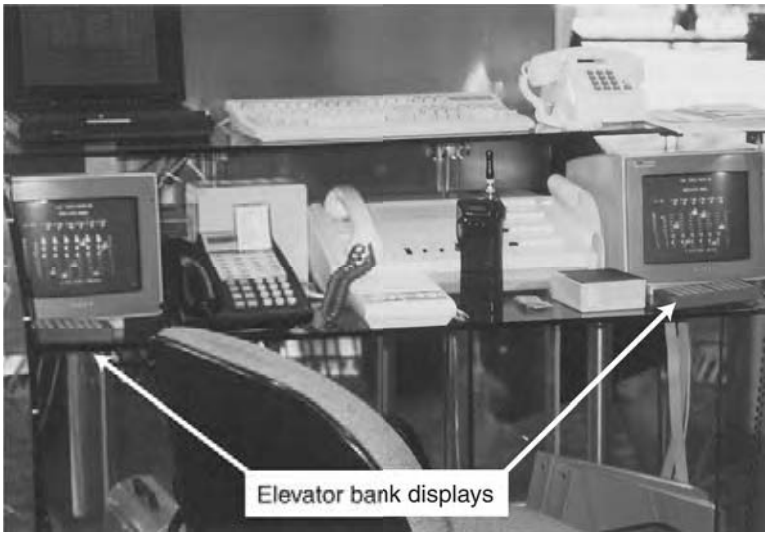


Fig. 31.18 *Dedicated elevator display computer terminals are part of the extensive control and communication equipment installed at a lobby control desk in a New York City skyscraper. (Photo by B. Stein.)*

usually wall-mounted adjacent to the related elevators, has become one or more computer monitor screens positioned at a lobby desk (Fig. 31.18) and/or in the building maintenance office. In addition, an information-only screen is frequently wall-mounted adjacent to the related elevators for the edification of waiting passengers.

The information displayed on the screen includes car locations, movement direction, waiting corridor calls, and any special status data. The control functions available at the computer terminal permit intervention to establish special types of operation including:

- Car movement without operating the usual audible and visual signals (*inconspicuous riser*)
- One or more cars removed from supervisory control and operated manually (*attendant or independent service*)
- Cars selected for night or weekend service while the other cars are shut down
- Car(s) assigned to a particular floor on a fixed- or priority-basis call (*convention feature or priority*)

Among other control functions are those concerned with emergency service, including the "fireman's return" feature required by ANSI and many local fire codes (Section 31.46) and the controls related to switching of power between cars in the event that operation on emergency generator power is necessary (Section 31.45).

In addition, means of two-way communication with each car and other selected locations are provided at the control center.

31.27 CAR OPERATING PANEL

A typical car operating panel is illustrated in Fig. 31.19. Every car panel (station) is equipped with full-access buttons for call registry, door-open, alarm, emergency stop, and firefighter control. Also always provided is an intercom device that permits communication with the building control office. A door-close button is sometimes provided if extensive hand operation of the car is anticipated. It is activated only when the car is under manual control. Controls that do not concern the normal passenger are grouped in a locked compartment in the car panel. These include a hand-operation switch; light, fan, and power switches; and any special controls such as security and emergency devices. Finally, a compartment accessible only to technicians contains the devices controlling door motion, car signals, door and car position transducers, load-weighing control, door and platform detection beam equipment, speech synthesizer (if used), and visual displays.

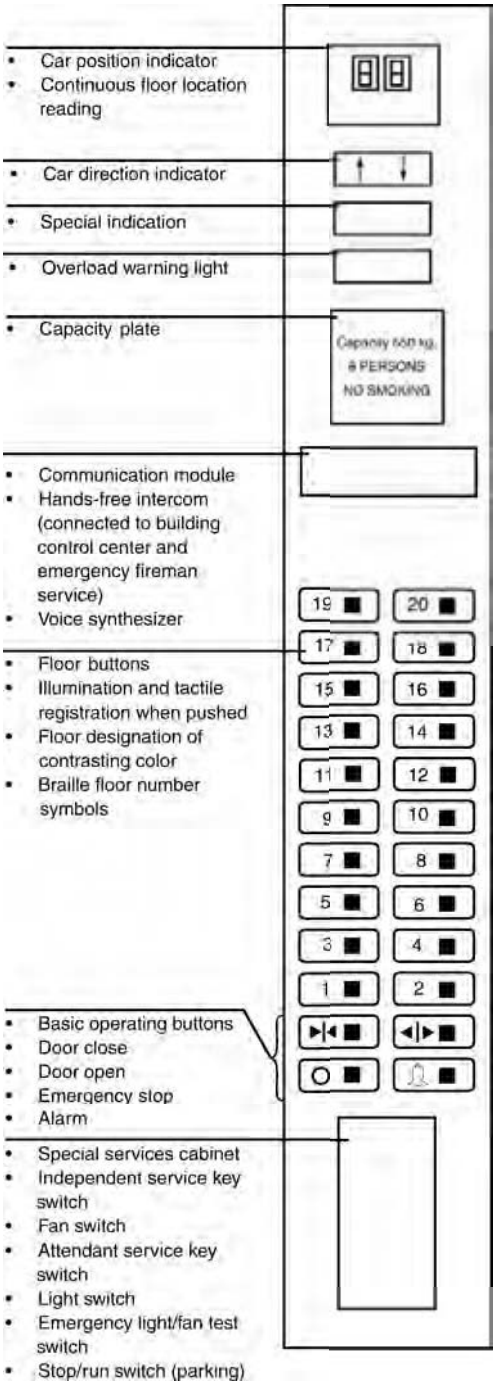


Fig. 31.19 *Typical car operating panel. Designs of these panels vary widely, but the essential components are as shown.*

ELEVATOR SELECTION

31.28 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The selection of elevators for any but the simplest buildings requires the simultaneous consideration of several factors: adequate elevator service for the intended building usage, economics, and the architectural integration of spaces assigned to elevators, including lobbies, shafts, and machine rooms. In large buildings, many combinations are possible because these factors are interdependent. The selection of an optimum system for such buildings is most practical and accurate with the aid of a computer or simulator, and their use has become standard practice in the industry. Hand computation, following certain guidelines, can yield good results for small, straightforward buildings and reliable preliminary data for almost all buildings.

The design criteria usually used in determining elevator service quality are

- Interval and average waiting time
- Handling capacity
- Travel time

The elevator system selection process, either by hand or computer, involves matching these three criteria with estimated performance values. Design intent (for example, acceptable service or excellent service) will inform the choice of numeric values for the criteria.

31.29 DEFINITIONS

A definition of important terms, including variant usages, follows.

Average lobby time or average lobby waiting time. The average time spent by a passenger between arriving in the lobby and leaving the lobby in a car. This is a key selection criterion.

Handling capacity (HC). The maximum number of passengers that can be handled in a time given period—usually 5 minutes, thus the term *5-minute handling capacity*. When expressed as a percentage of the building's population, it is called *percent handling capacity* (PHC). This is a key selection criterion.

Interval (I) or lobby dispatch time. The average time between departures of cars from the lobby.

Registration time. Waiting time at an upper floor after a call is registered.

Round-trip time (RT). The average time required for a car to make a round trip—starting from the lower terminal and returning to it. The time includes a statistically determined number of upper-floor stops in one direction and, *when calculating elevator requirements based on up-peak traffic*, an express return trip.

Travel time or average trip time (AVTRP). The average time spent by passengers from the moment they arrive in the lobby to the moment they leave the car at an upper floor. This is a key selection criterion.

Zone. A group of floors in a building that is considered as a unit with respect to elevator service. It may consist of a physical entity—a group of upper floors above and below which are blind shafts—or it may be a product of the elevator group control system, changing with system needs.

31.30 INTERVAL OR LOBBY DISPATCH TIME AND AVERAGE LOBBY WAITING TIME

In an ideal installation, at least from the riding public's point of view, a car would be waiting at the lower terminal on the rider's arrival or would be available after a short wait. Because cars leave the lobby separated in time by the *interval* (I) and passengers arrive at the lobby in random fashion, the average waiting time in the lobby should be half (50%) the interval. Field measurements show, however, that it is actually longer than this. The figure most often used in the industry is 60%—that is,

$$\text{average lobby waiting time} = 0.6 \times I$$

Table 31.4 lists intervals and suggested values for office buildings and the related average waiting time based on the foregoing relationship. Because some control systems zone the building in such a way that some cars do not return to the lobby, the interval as a figure of merit may be somewhat misleading in such buildings. The table also lists recommended intervals for other types of buildings.

With intervals in the recommended range, riders are not conscious of any irksome delay in elevator service. Consciousness of delay is considered a major drawback in rental desirability and should be avoided for all traffic conditions except morning and evening peaks, when a certain delay is expected and therefore tolerated, however grudgingly. Even in peak periods, any modern group supervisory system will recognize a *timed-out* call—that is, a call with a registration time exceeding 50 seconds—as a priority call. Priority calls are answered by the first available car, usually within 15 seconds. If a considerable amount of interfloor traffic is expected during peak periods, as may be the case when a large company occupies several upper floors, elevator capacity should be increased by 20% to 40% over the capacity otherwise calculated to maintain proper intervals.

TABLE 31.4 Recommended Elevator Intervals and Related[a] Lobby Waiting Time

Facility Type	Interval (sec)	Waiting Time[a] (sec)
OFFICE BUILDINGS		
Excellent service	15–24	9–14
Good service	25–29	15–17
Fair service	30–39	18–23
Poor service	40–49	24–29
Unacceptable service	50+	30+
RESIDENTIAL		
Prestige apartments	50–70	30–42
Middle-income apartments	60–80	36–48
Low-income apartments	80–120	48–72
Dormitories	60–80	36–48
Hotels—first quality	30–50	18–30
Hotels—second quality	50–70	30–42

[a]Based on the relationship: waiting time = 0.6 × interval.

31.31 HANDLING CAPACITY

The frequency, or interval, with which a car appears at the main building lobby is one of the two factors that determine the passenger capacity of an elevator system. The other is the size of the elevator car. The system's *handling capacity* is completely determined by these two factors—car size and interval—and is independent of the number of cars. This can be best understood by visualizing an elevator system as a single set of doors that opens periodically (the interval) to remove a given number of passengers (the car capacity) from a patiently waiting group of would-be passengers. Whether the set of doors represents a single car or many cars that take turns is immaterial. The only factors that determine the

handling capacity are passenger load (car capacity) and frequency of loading (interval) (Table 31.5).

Recognition is taken of the fact that during peak traffic periods, cars are not loaded to maximum capacity but typically only to about 80%—a figure determined by actual count in many existing installations.

As a convenient measure of capacity, the handling capacity of a system for 5 minutes is taken as a standard. This is because a 5-minute rush period is historically used as a measure of a system's ability to handle traffic. This may be expressed thus:

$$\text{handling capacity } (HC) = \text{passengers/car} \times \text{cars/sec} \times 5 \text{ min} \times 60 \text{ sec/min}$$

Because the number of cars per second is the reciprocal of the interval (e.g., 30 seconds between cars is the same as 1/30th of a car per second), this equation reduces to

$$HC = \frac{\text{passengers/car}}{\text{interval} \times 300}$$

or

$$HC = \frac{300p}{I}$$

where p is car loading (number of passengers/car). When the interval is 30 seconds, the system's handling capacity is $10p$, a convenient figure to remember.

To establish a figure of merit for building service, system *HC* must be related to building size. This is normally done by establishing the minimum percentage of the building population that the system must handle in 5 minutes, called PHC. A good system for a diversified office building will handle no less than 12% of the building population. Similar values are shown in Table 31.6 for various types of facilities.

TABLE 31.5 Car Passenger Capacity (*p*)

Elevator Capacity lb (kg)	Maximum Passenger Capacity	Normal Passenger[a] Load per Trip
2000 (907)	12	10
2500 (1134)	17	13
3000 (1361)	20	16
3500 (1588)	23	19
4000 (1814)	28	22

[a]The number of passengers carried on a trip during peak conditions is approximately 80% of the car capacity.

TABLE 31.6 Minimum Percent Handling Capacities (PHC)

Facility	Percent of Population to Be Carried in 5 Minutes
OFFICE BUILDINGS	
Center city	12–14
Investment	11.5–13
Single-purpose	14–16
RESIDENTIAL	
Prestige	5–7
Other	6–8[a]
Dormitories	10–11
Hotels—first quality	12–15
Hotels—second quality	10–12

[a]Due to more urgent traffic demands, particularly at the school and work exodus.

In planning a building's elevator requirements, its population must be estimated. This is particularly difficult in speculative-type, diversified-use buildings. However, based on rental cost, area, and building type, a fair estimate can be made. Population estimates for office buildings are based upon net area—that is, actual available area for tenancy. Table 31.7 gives suggested density figures, and Table 31.8 gives average office building efficiency values for use in calculating net area.

31.32 TRAVEL TIME OR AVERAGE TRIP TIME

The average trip time (or time to destination) is the sum of the lobby waiting time plus travel time to a median floor stop. Car round-trip time is also used as a performance criterion, but it is not as meaningful as trip time. In a commercial building context, a trip of less than 1 minute is highly desirable, a 75-second trip is acceptable, a 90-second trip is annoying, and a 120-second trip is the limit of toleration. In the more relaxed atmosphere of a residence, where interval alone can account for a minute or more of trip time, these maxima are revised upward.

Figure 31.20 shows that the 2000- and 2500-lb (907- and 1134-kg) cars used in residential buildings can have a 17-story rise, even with a 60-second interval, without excessive trip time. The 3500-lb (1588-kg) car, however, which is almost universally used in office buildings

TABLE 31.7 Population of Typical Buildings for Estimating Elevator and Escalator Requirements

Building Type	Net Area
OFFICE BUILDINGS	FT2 PER PERSON (M2/PERSON)
Diversified (multiple tenancy)	
Normal	110–130 (10–12)[a]
Prestige	150–250 (14–23)
Single tenancy	
Normal	90–110 (8–10)
Prestige	130–200 (12–19)
HOTELS	PERSONS PER SLEEPING ROOM
Normal use	1.3
Conventions	1.9
HOSPITALS	VISITORS AND STAFF PER BED[b]
General private	3
General public (large wards)	3–4
APARTMENT HOUSES	PERSONS PER BEDROOM
High-rental housing	1.5
Moderate-rental housing	2.0
Low-cost housing	2.5–3.0

[a]Density may vary for different floors. Clerical and stenographic areas may have a population density as high as 70 ft^2 (6.5 m^2) per person.

[b]If visiting hours are restricted, the visitor population will determine elevator requirements. If visiting is not restricted to a certain few hours, staff requirements may determine elevator design. Where traffic is heavy, a combination of passenger cars and larger "hospital" cars should be used to provide optimum service.

(Fig. 31.21), is limited to a maximum 16-floor local run before exceeding the 90-second limit and to about 6 to 8 floors to stay within the 75-second criterion.

TABLE 31.8 Office Building Efficiency

Building Height	Net Usable Area as Percentage of Gross Area
0–10 floors	Approximately 80%
0–20 floors	Floors 1–10 approximately 75%
	11–20 approximately 80%
0–30 floors	Floors 1–10 approximately 70%
	11–20 approximately 75%
	21–30 approximately 80%
0–40 floors	Floors 1–10 approximately 70%
	11–20 approximately 75%
	21–30 approximately 80%
	31–40 approximately 85%

Source: Reprinted from G. R. Strakosch, *Vertical Transportation, Elevators and Escalators*, 2nd ed. Wiley, New York, 1983.
Note: Applicable to buildings with 15,000 to 20,000 gross square feet (1394–1858 m^2) per floor.

An important reservation on the foregoing statements must be noted. The curves of Figs. 31.20 and 31.21 are based upon statistical calculations, empirical data, and field observations, as discussed in the next section. This being so, the average values that these curves give should be considered to be +/– 15% accurate, and borderline cases can be shifted either way. Designs that show high travel time on paper frequently work out well in the field, because lobby loading is often less than 80%, upper-floor stops take less than the statistically predicted time due to groups of people going to the same floor, and staggered working hours relieve traffic peaks. Also, a feature called *high-call reversal* takes account of the fact that cars do not travel to the top of the shaft on each trip, but reverse at the topmost call. This can reduce the average trip time by 5% to 10%. Finally, sophisticated solid-state traffic controls allow for rapid acceleration and deceleration without discomfort, variable door-closing time, and very efficient selection of landing call responses, all of which can further reduce the trip time by another 5%.

31.33 ROUND-TRIP TIME

The value for round-trip time during up-peak traffic conditions, used for calculating elevator requirements, is composed of the sum of four factors: (1) time to accelerate and decelerate, (2) time to open and close doors at all stops, (3) time to load and unload, and (4) running time (Figs. 31.22 to 31.24). Physically, round-trip time is the time from door opening at the lower terminal to door opening at the same terminal at the end of a round trip. Because the actual number of stops made by a car is unknown, a statistical probability value is used, based upon the passenger capacity of the car and the number of local floors above the lower terminal. In calculating this round-trip time (RT), it is assumed that a car will depart the lower terminal when loaded. No intentional delay is included at either the lower or upper terminal. The RT thus calculated is a median figure, with any single actual round trip taking more or less time. In detail, RT consists of the time expended in

1. Loading at the lobby
2. Door closing at the lobby

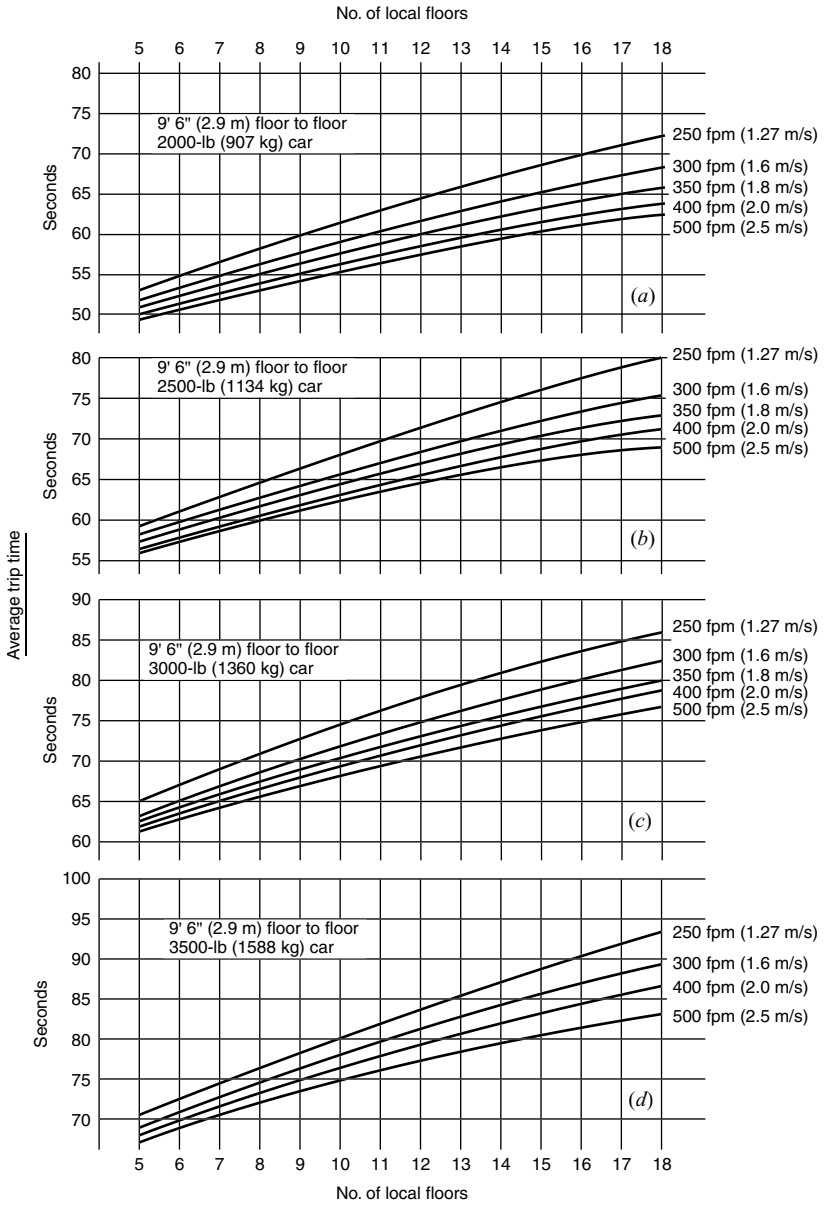


Fig. 31.20 *Plots of average trip time for various car speeds and capacities with a 9-ft, 6-in. (2.9-m) floor height and a 30-second interval.*

3. Accelerating from the terminal and from each stop
4. Decelerating at each stop
5. Passenger transfer at each stop
6. Door operations at each stop
7. Running time at rated speed between stops
8. Return express run from the last stop

These figures are obtained as follows:

1. *Field observations:* Items 1 and 5 are based upon a 3-ft, 6-in. (1.07-m) door opening. A smaller door opening increases passenger transfer time.
2. *Calculations:* Items 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, and 8. *Door-closing time* is based on a 3-ft, 6-in. (1.07-m) center-opening door with adjustable speed.

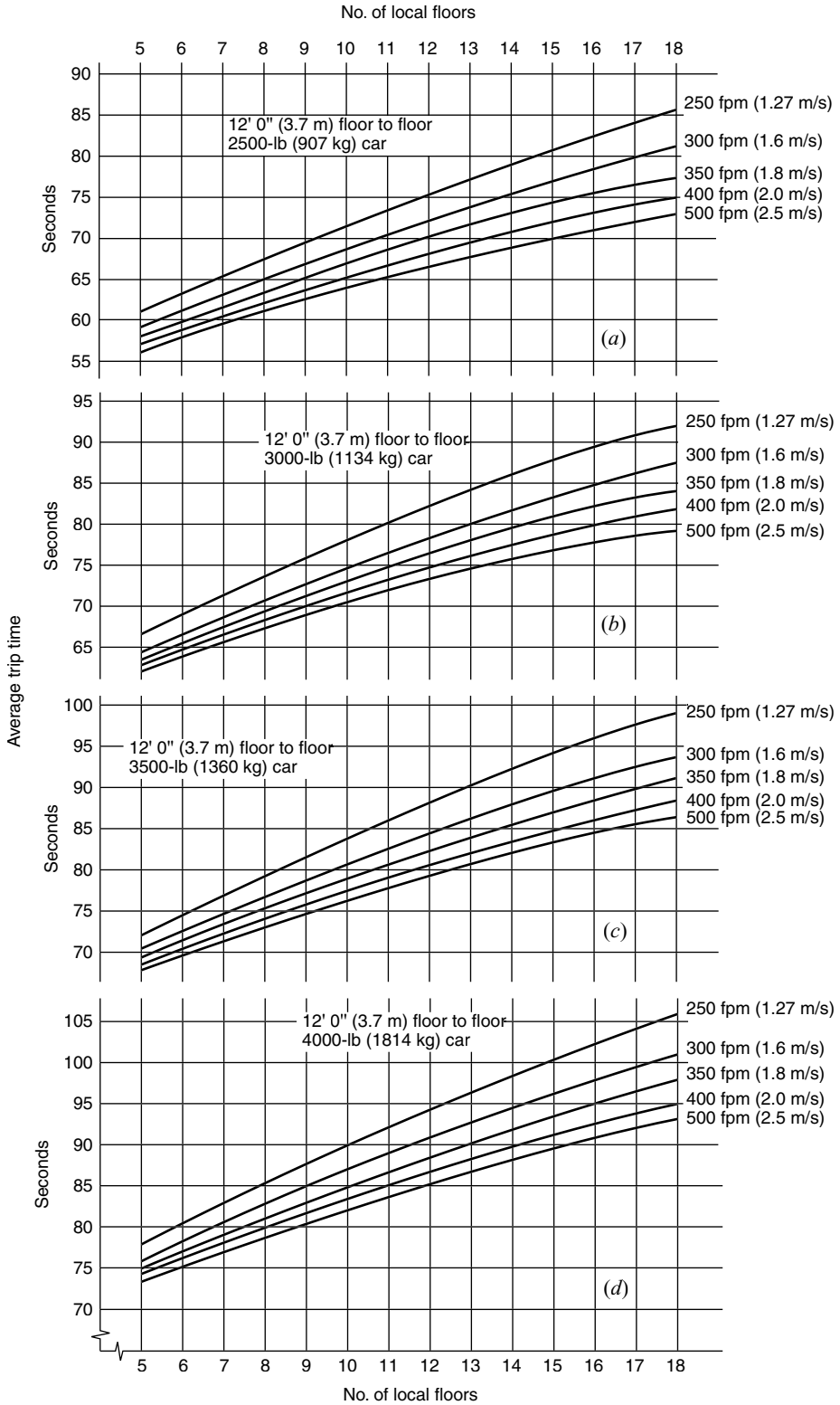


Fig. 31.21 *Plots of average trip time for various car speeds and capacities for a 12-ft (3.7-m) floor height and a 30-second interval.*

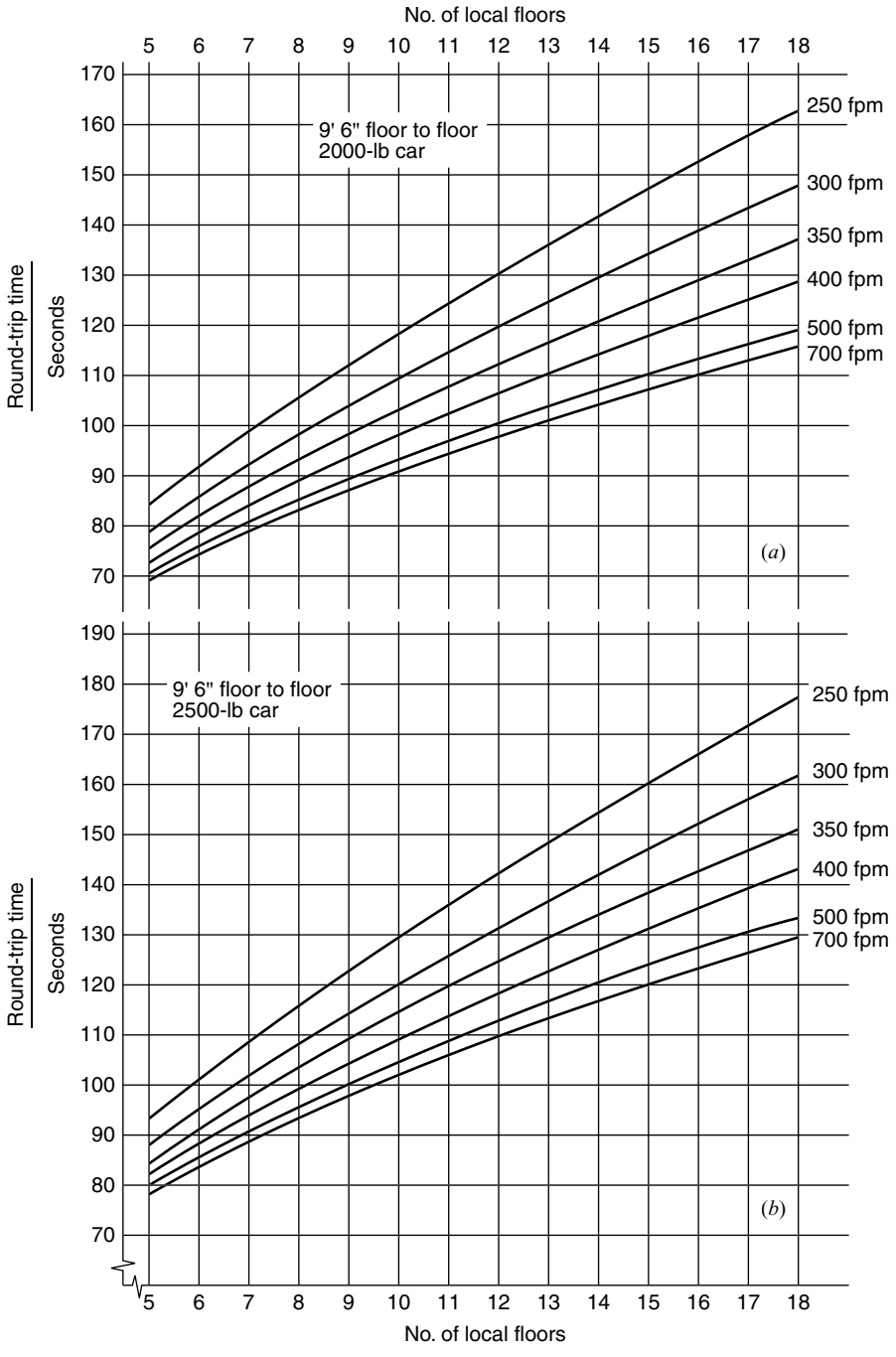


Fig. 31.22 *Plots of round-trip time for various car speeds and capacities with a 9-ft, 6-in. (2.9-m) floor height and a 30-second interval. (Continued)*

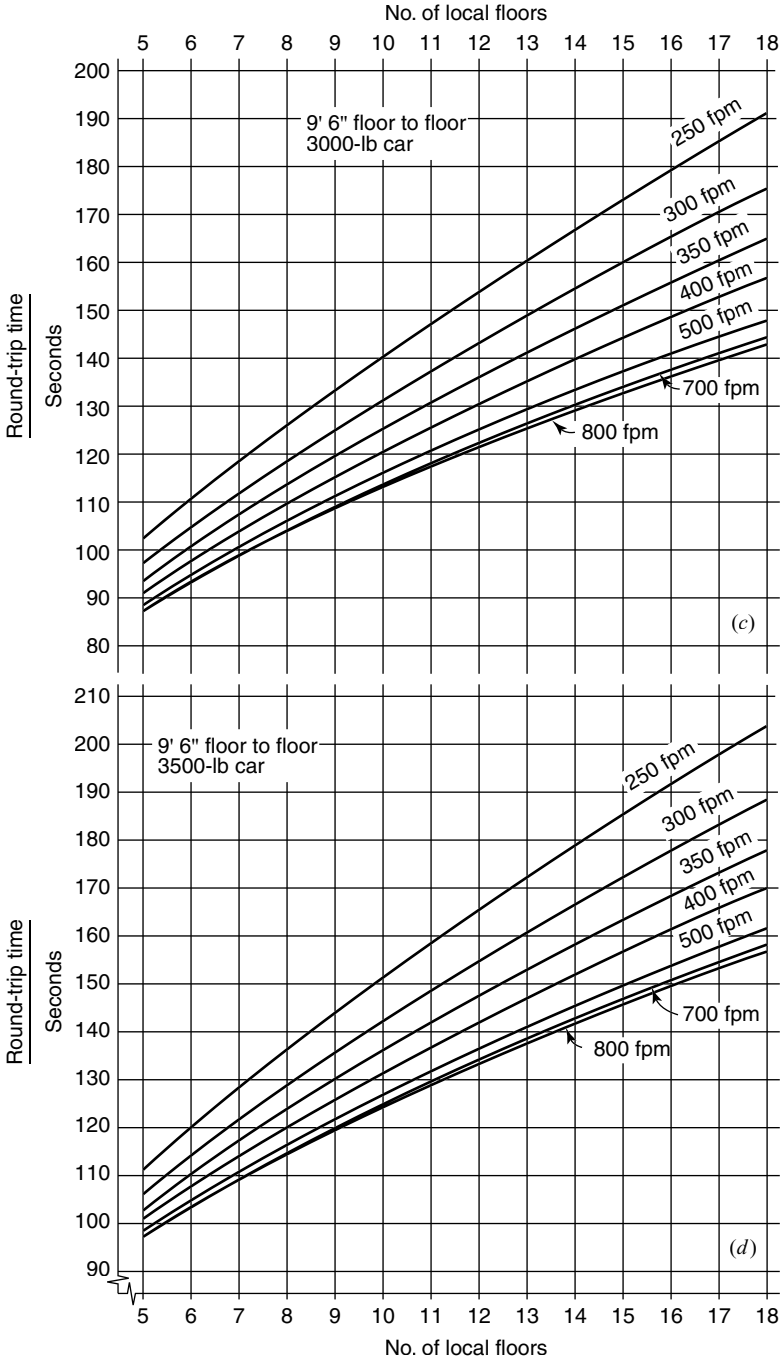


Fig. 31.22 *(Continued)*

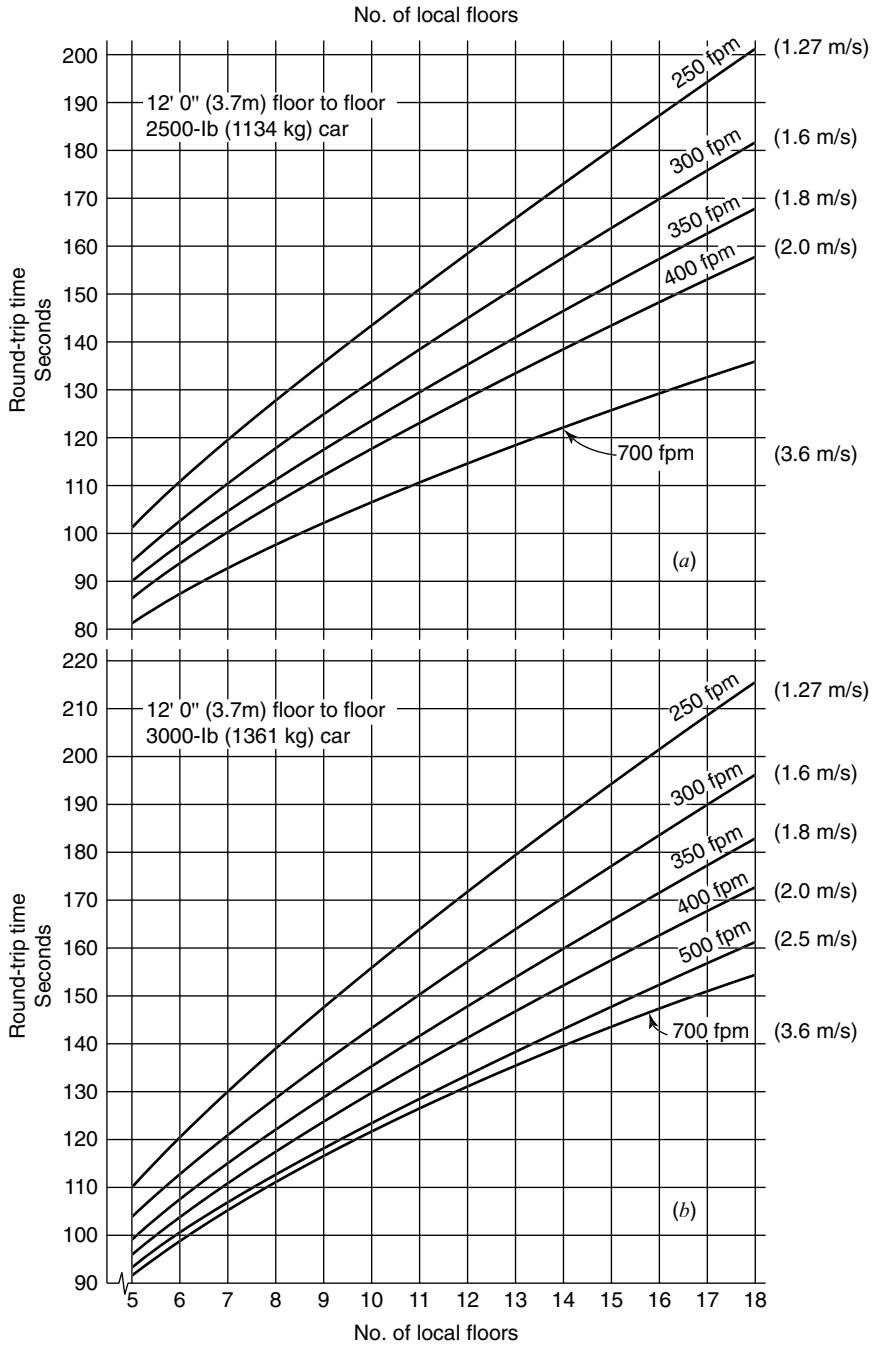


Fig. 31.23 *Plots of round-trip time for various car speeds and capacities with a 12-ft floor (3.7-m) height and a 30-second interval.*

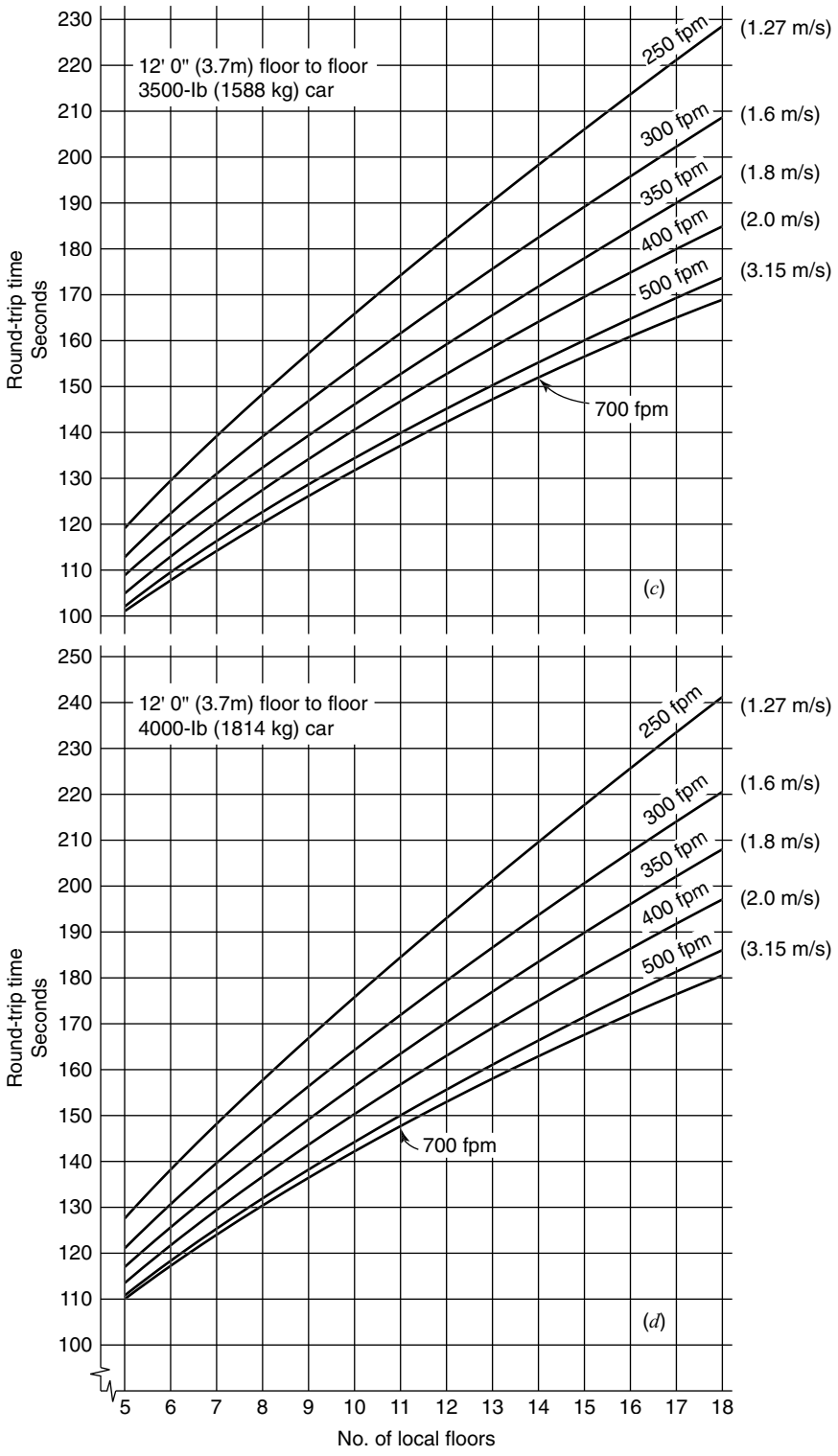
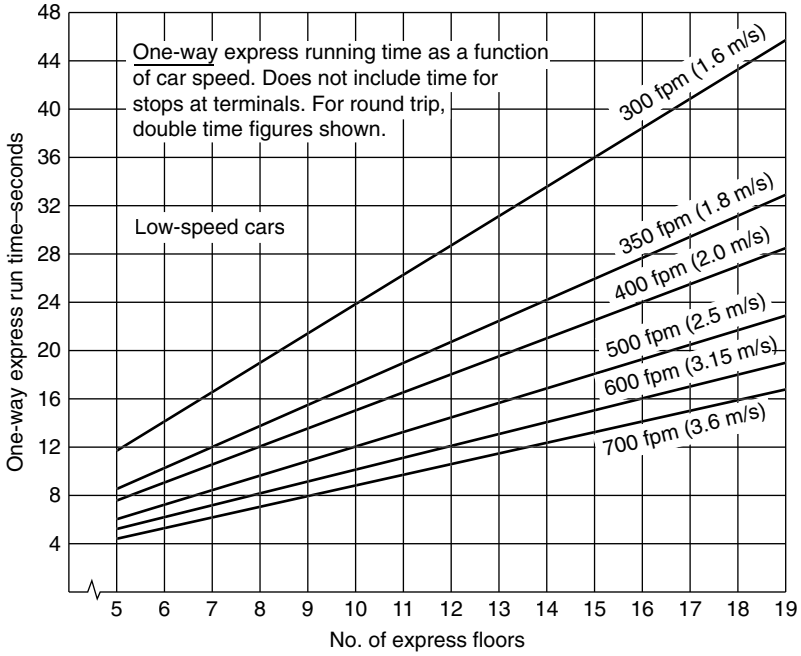
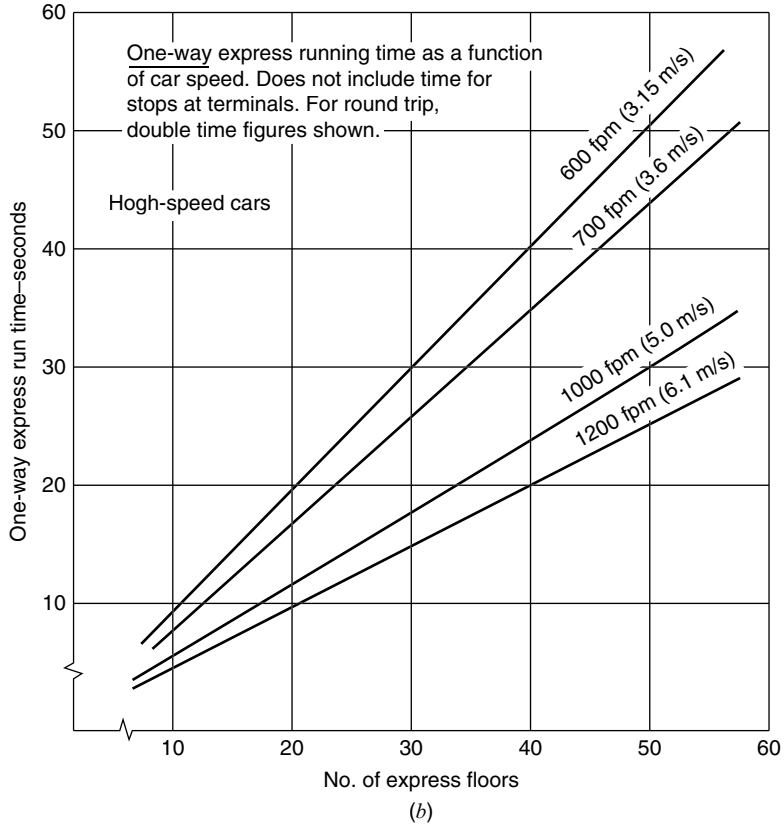


Fig. 31.23 (*Continued*)



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 31.24 *One-way express running time, not including terminal time; (a) low-speed cars, (b) high-speed cars.*

Acceleration and deceleration times are calculated with a maximum of 4 ft/s/s (1.2 m/s/s) because anything beyond that results in physical discomfort to the passengers. *Running time at rated speed* takes place after the car has accelerated and before it begins to decelerate. Considering that it takes between 20 and 30 ft (6 to 9 m) to accelerate to 700 fpm (3.6 m/s), depending upon the rate of acceleration, in local runs a car never gets to the rated speed. It simply accelerates and decelerates. Higher-speed equipment with a larger motor accelerates more quickly and gives some time advantage on the return express run, but it has no great time advantage overall. This accounts for the small reduction above 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) seen in Figs. 31.22 and 31.23.

In calculating *RT* for cars in upper zones, it is necessary to know the time required to traverse the express floors. This may be obtained from Fig. 31.24. The times given there are for *one-way* express runs. Thus, to calculate *RT* for an upper-zone car, take the *RT* corresponding to the upper local floors and add *twice* the figure obtained for express run time from Fig. 31.24.

31.34 SYSTEM RELATIONSHIPS

The symbols that will be used in describing elevator calculations are:

p	individual car capacity, equal to 80% of the maximum during peak hours
h	5-minute capacity of a single car
N	number of cars in a system
HC	system 5-minute handling capacity, expressed in number of persons
RT	round-trip time, in seconds
$AVTRP$	average trip time, in seconds
I	interval, in seconds
D	population density, in square feet (m^2) per person
PHC	percent of the population to be moved in 5 minutes, and expressed as a percentage

Now that the definitions of interval, handling capacity, average trip time, and round-trip time have been presented, the interrelationships among these quantities can be demonstrated, along with other equations governing the remaining factors that define elevator systems.

Handling capacity HC is determined by car capacity p and interval I:

$$HC = \frac{300p}{I} \tag{31.1}$$

In a system consisting of a single car, the interval (I) is equal to the round-trip time (RT). In a system with more than one car, the interval is reduced in proportion to the number of cars. Thus,

$$I = \frac{RT}{N} \tag{31.2}$$

The 5-minute handling capacity (h) of a single car is then

$$h = \frac{300p}{RT} \tag{31.3}$$

remembering that for a single car, its interval is its round-trip time. It follows that if the handling capacity of a single car is h, then the handling capacity of N cars is N times as much. Thus,

$$HC = N \times h$$

or

$$N = \frac{HC}{h} \tag{31.4}$$

31.35 CAR SPEED

The selection of car speed to be used is a matter of trial and error, the final selection being that required to give an RT that in turn gives an acceptable interval. In order to establish a starting point, however, it has been found that a minimum car speed corresponding to a given building height—or, in elevator parlance, *rise*—can be established. Similarly, although car size can be selected at any value, it has been shown that for certain facility types, specific-size cars are indicated. These recommendations are given in Table 31.9.

Bear in mind that elevator equipment falls into distinct speed categories. Thus, most manufacturers use geared equipment through 400 fpm (2 m/s) and gearless equipment thereafter. The next category is 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) gearless followed by 600 fpm (3.0 m/s) to 700 fpm (3.6 m/s), and so on. It is wise to avoid moving into the next higher—and more expensive—equipment

TABLE 31.9 Elevator Equipment Recommendations

	Car Capacity[a]		*Rise*		*Minimum*[a] *Car Speed*	
Building Type	**lb**	**kg**	**ft**	**m**	**fpm**	**m/s**
Office building	2500	1250	0–125	0–40	350–400	2.0
	3000	1250	126–225	41–70	500–600	2.5
	3500	1600	226–275	71–85	700	3.15
			276–375	86–115	800	4.0
			Above 375	>115	1000	5.0
Hotel	2500	1250	As above		As above	
	3000	1250				
Hospital	3500	1600	0–60	0–20	150	0.63
	4000	2000	61–100	21–30	200–250	1.0
			101–125	31–40	250–300	1.6
			126–175	41–55	350–400	2.0
			176–250	56–75	500–600	3.15
			>250	>75	700	4.0
Apartments	2000	1000	0–75	0–25	100	0.63
	2500	1250	76–125	26–40	200	1.0
			126–200	41–60	250–300	1.6
			>200	>60	350–400	2.0
Stores	3500	1600	0–100	0–30	200	1.0
	4000	2000	101–150	31–45	250–300	1.6
	5000	2500	151–200	46–60	350–400	2.0
			>200	>60	500	2.5

[a]Car capacity is determined by building size, and car speed by rise.

category if possible. This may mean exceeding the recommended interval or dropping slightly below desired handling capacity. It will be found, however, that this can usually be done without injury to the elevator system performance, provided that a quality group supervisory control system is employed.

31.36 SINGLE-ZONE SYSTEMS

Having established the relationships that govern the design and performance of an elevator system comprising a single zone, it would be helpful to follow through an illustrative example.

EXAMPLE 31.1 Office building, downtown, diversified use, 14 rentable floors above the lobby, each 12,000 ft^2 (1115 m^2) net. Floor-to-floor height—12 ft (3.7 m). Determine a workable elevator system arrangement.

SOLUTION

From Table 31.6, recommended average *HC* is 13%. From Table 31.4, the maximum recommended interval is 25 seconds. From Table 31.7, average population density is 120 ft^2 (11 m^2) per person.

Trial 1

Building population:

$$\frac{14 \text{ floors at } 12{,}000 \text{ ft}^2}{120 \text{ ft}^2 \text{ per person}} = 1400 \text{ persons}$$

(14 at 1115/11 ≈ 1400 persons)

Suggested minimum handling capacity:

$PHC = 13\%$

$HC = 0.13 \times 1400 = 182$ persons

rise = 14 floors at 12 ft (3.7 m) = 168 ft (51 m)

From Table 31.9, select a car size of 3500 lb (1588 kg) at 500 fpm (2.5 m/s).

3500 lb (1588 kg)

500 fpm (2.5 m/s)

Then, from Figs. 31.23*c* and 31.21*c:*

$RT = 155$ seconds $\quad AVTRP = 82$ seconds

Single-car capacity: $h = 300p/RT$ (see Table 31.5 for p):

$$h = \frac{300\,(19)}{155} = 36.8 \text{ persons}$$

$$N = \frac{HC}{h} = \frac{182}{36.8} = 4.9, \text{ say 5 cars}$$

$$I = \frac{RT}{5} = \frac{155}{5} = 31 \text{ seconds}$$

$$\text{actual } PHC = \frac{5(13\%)}{4.9} = 13\%$$

These results are acceptable, but faster cars might reduce the interval. Select 700 fpm (3.6 m/s).

Trial 2

3500 lb (1588 kg)

700 fpm (3.6 m/s)

$RT = 151$ seconds

$AVTRP = 81$ seconds (by extrapolation)

$$h = \frac{300(19)}{151} = 37.7 \text{ persons}$$

$$N = \frac{182}{37.7} = 4.8, \text{ say 5 cars}$$

$$I = \frac{RT}{N} = \frac{151}{5} 30 \text{ seconds}$$

$$\text{actual } PHC = \frac{5(13\%)}{4.8} = 13.5\%$$

This solution is only marginally better than the previous 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) solution, and the increased cost would not be justified. A trial using smaller cars with shorter RT is called for.

Trial 3

3000-lb (1361-kg) cars

500 fpm (2.5 m/s)

$RT = 143$ seconds $\quad AVTRP = 76$ seconds

$$h = \frac{300(16)}{143} = 33.6 \text{ persons}$$

$$N = \frac{HC}{h} = \frac{182}{33.6} = 5.4 \text{ cars}$$

Using five cars:

$$I = \frac{RT}{N} = \frac{143}{5} = 28.4 \text{ seconds}$$

$$\text{actual } PHC = \frac{5}{5.4}(13\%) = 12\%$$

Trial 4

Using six 3000-lb (1361-kg), 500-fpm (2.5-m/s) cars:

$$I = \frac{RT}{N} = \frac{143}{6} = 23.8 \text{ seconds}$$

and

$$PHC = \frac{6}{5.4}(13) = 14.4\%$$

Both solutions are acceptable.
Tabulating the calculation results, we have:

Solution	Cars lb (kg)	Speed fpm (m/s)	RT (s)	AVTRP (s)	I (s)	PHC (%)
1	5 @ 3500 (1588)	500 (2.5)	155	82	31	13
2	5 @ 3500 (1588)	700 (3.6)	151	81	30	13.5
3	5 @ 3000 (1361)	500 (2.5)	143	76	28.4	12
4	6 @ 3000 (1361)	500 (2.5)	143	76	23.8	14.4

Solutions 1, 3, and 4 are acceptable. Solution 2 was discounted due to the high cost. Interestingly, solution 3, using smaller cars than the corresponding solution 1, and therefore being more economical, gives better results except for *HC*. Although the best solution is number 4, which gives excellent interval and *HC*, the additional cost of a sixth car plus the revenue loss from the rentable area otherwise occupied by the sixth shaft and the cost of additional maintenance weigh heavily against this option. A trial with five 3000-lb (1361-kg) cars at 700 fpm (3.6 m/s) is in order, with the knowledge that a considerable cost increase would result because 700-fpm (3.6-m/s) cars require gearless equipment, whereas 500-fpm (2.5-m/s) cars are available in either geared or gearless format, both giving excellent service.

Trial 5

3000-lb (1361-kg) cars

700 fpm (3.6 m/s)

$RT = 140$ seconds $\quad AVTRP = 73$ seconds

$$h = \frac{300(16)}{140} = 34.3 \text{ persons}$$

$$N = \frac{182}{34.3} = 5.3; \text{ use 5 cars}$$

$$I = \frac{RT}{N} = \frac{140}{5} = 28 \text{ seconds}$$

$$PHC = \frac{5}{5.3}(13\%) = 12.3\%$$

As expected, improvement over the performance at 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) is very slight: an interval of 28 seconds rather than 28.4 seconds and a handling capacity of 12.3% versus 12%. The large increase in first cost for gearless equipment would not be justified. ■

At this point, the final selection would be made on the basis of cost. When considering cost, note that first cost is the governing factor only in a speculative venture. With an owner-operator building, the cost comparison should be on a life-cycle basis. Cost figures must reflect the impact of elevator space requirements on net rentable area in the building. Comparative cost figures are given in Table 31.10.

As mentioned earlier and shown in Fig. 31.17, planners of new buildings today generally take advantage of elevator selection software provided by consultants, by manufacturers, or via in-house capabilities. The results from one such program are shown in Fig. 31.25 (this particular analysis was prepared by Otis Elevator Co.). Note that projected system performance under a variety of operational and functional scenarios can be quickly evaluated and compared.

This agreement is not surprising because the round-trip curves in Fig. 31.23 are based on a 3.3-second door time and a 4.0 ft/s^2 (1.2 m/s^2) car acceleration, as shown in the figure. Note that high call reversal occurs at the top floor (13.5, i.e., 14) and that the number of up stops is 10 (9.7 from statistical calculations). The up-peak calculation assumes no counterflow traffic (i.e., an express down run and no interfloor traffic), as shown. These can be added, however, yielding very different results, as shown in Fig. 31.25. Counterflow traffic (down stops) of only 2% and interfloor traffic of 1%, both of which are reasonable values, change the round trip time substantially and reduce the handling capacity appreciably.

31.37 MULTIZONE SYSTEMS

In general, buildings with fewer than 15 stories are elevatored with a single zone (i.e., all cars serve all floors), and buildings with more than 20 stories are split into two or more zones. Buildings in between these limits—16 to 19 stories—can go either way, depending upon the population density and the required interval. A modern group supervisory system can automatically zone a building when traffic requires it. Such an arrangement, although efficient, is expensive in terms of both equipment and

TABLE 31.10 Relative First Cost[a] Figures for Passenger Elevators of Various Speeds and Drive Systems

	Hydraulic fpm (m/s)	*Geared Traction fpm (m/s)*			*Gearless Traction fpm (m/s)*			
Car Size (lb)	**100 (0.63)**	**200 (1.0)**	**350 (2.0)**	**500 (2.5)**	**500 (2.5)**	**700 (4.0)**	**1000 (5.0)**	**1200 (6.0)**
2000 (907)	40	80	100	130	165	170	220	235
2500 (1134)	43	85	115	145	175	180	235	250
3000 (1361)	50	90	120	150	180	185	250	265
3500 (1588)	58	95	125	155	190	195	265	275
4000 (1814)	60	100	135	165	200	205	280	300
4500 (2041)[b]	70	120	150	185	225	230	300	325
5000 (2268)[b]	75	130	160	200	240	250	330	350

[a]Costs are ± 10%; based on standard fixtures, cabs, and entrances, and average rise for the speed indicated.

[b]Service elevator or hospital elevator.

Note: See Table 31.9 for speed/rise recommendation.

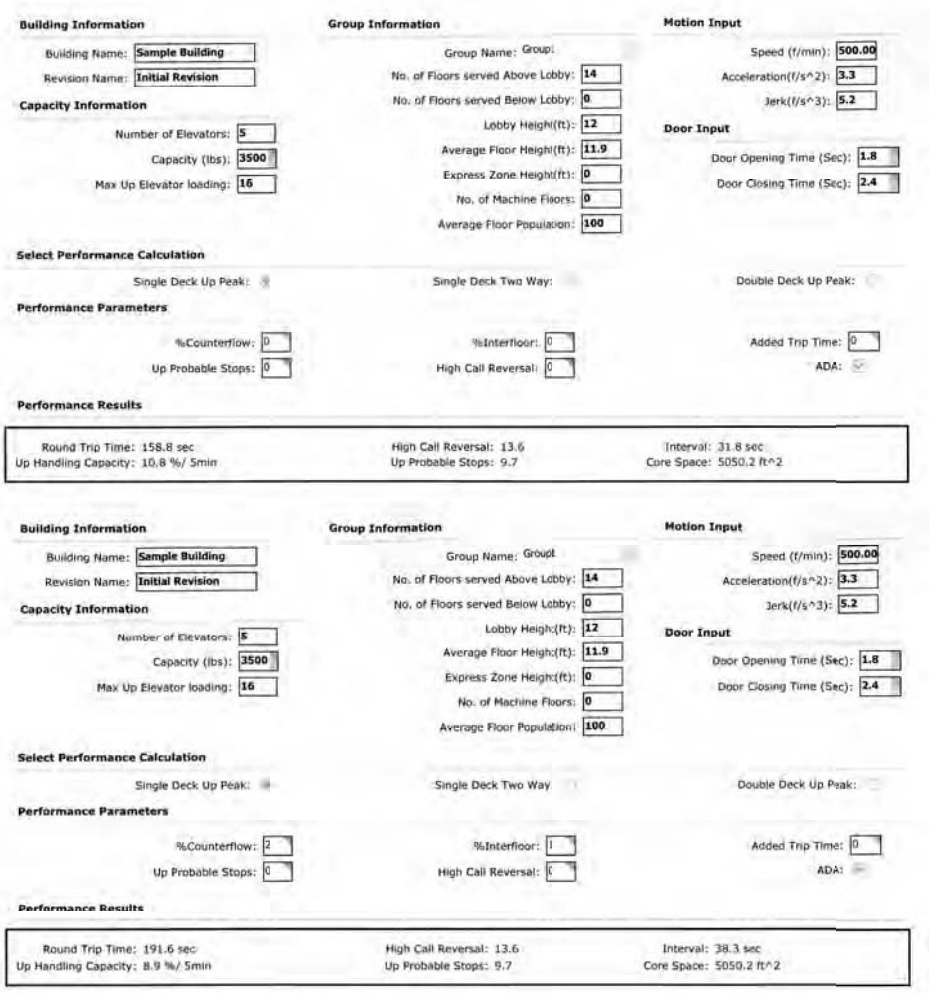


Fig. 31.25 *Printouts from a computerized elevator selection program. This analysis shows that the addition of even light counterflow and interfloor traffic can seriously affect system performance, as can be seen from the round-trip, interval, and handling capacity figures. (Courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

construction because it does not take advantage of the considerable savings engendered by blind lower shaftways for upper-zone elevators. Analysis of multizone systems is complex and today is rarely done by hand. See Stein et al. (1986) for a detailed explanation of the technique involved. Most designers and consultants use one of many available computerized simulation and selection programs. These have the advantage that, in addition to using basic criteria and building parameters, they can also consider the effect of variations in traffic control. Furthermore, the best of these programs can evaluate the engineering and economic impacts of such factors as varying rental rates for different floors, rental space, machine room and hoistway space, core layout, and the structural ramifications of the elevator system.

31.38 ELEVATOR SELECTION FOR SPECIFIC OCCUPANCIES

(a) Office Buildings

Necessary design criteria can be selected from Tables 31.4 to 31.7. Supervisory group control is normally

microprocessor-based. Approximately 1 service car per 10 passenger cars should be provided or, alternatively, one service car for every 300,000 ft^2 (27,870 m^2) of net area. Service cars should be 5000 lb (2268 kg) or larger without a dropped ceiling and, if also used for passenger service, equipped with wall pads. An oversized door (e.g., 4 ft, 0 in. [1.2 m] or 4 ft, 6 in. [1.4 m]) is particularly useful in handling furniture. Service elevators should have a shaftway door at every level plus easy access to the truck dock (or other freight entrance) as well as the lobby. These cars operate as service cars normally but can serve as passenger cars in peak periods to reduce congestion and delay. This fact is particularly useful in marginal service designs. See Table 31.11 for approximate building costs.

(b) Apartment Buildings

Studies indicate that apartment building traffic depends not only upon the population but also on the location and type of tenant. Buildings with many children experience a school-hour peak; buildings in midtown with predominantly adult tenancy exhibit evening peaks due to the homecoming working group and outgoing dinner traffic. Where two cars are required, the second car should function both as a service car and as a passenger car. The cars may be banked or separated, as desired. If a single car is used, it should be of service elevator size.

Self-service collective control is the general choice, with provision for attendant control in prestigious buildings. With small cars and a short rise, a swing-type manual corridor door is acceptable; in larger installations, both the car and the corridor door should be the power-operated sliding type.

Service elevators must be large enough to handle bulky furniture and should therefore be at least 4000 lb (1814 kg), with a 48-in. (1.2-m) door and a high ceiling. Hoistways must be isolated from sleeping rooms by lobbies or other space. Similarly, machine rooms must be isolated because the starting and stopping of motors and other machine room noises are a detriment to sound sleep. Security arrangements are discussed in Section 31.47.

TABLE 31.11 Office Buildings: Cost of Elevator and Electric Work

	Number of Stories		
Item	**20**	**35**	**60**
Elevator work	10.9%	11.9%	12.2%
Electric work	13.3%	12.6%	12.2%

(c) Hospitals

As mentioned in Table 31.7, the governing factor in the determination of elevator requirements may be either normal hospital traffic or visitor traffic, depending upon the visiting-times schedule. Due to the large volume of vehicular traffic such as stretcher carts, wheelchairs, beds, linen carts, and laundry trucks, hospital elevator cars are much deeper than the normal passenger type. This type of car, when used for passenger service, holds more than 20 persons and therefore gives slow service. For this reason, it is occasionally advisable to utilize some normal passenger cars in addition to hospital-size cars, particularly in large hospitals.

The use of tray and bulk carts in food service imposes a considerable load upon the elevator system before, during, and after meals, and passenger service is seriously disrupted. To reduce this congestion and delay, many architects and hospital administrators prefer the use of dumbwaiter cars or another of the many types of materials-handling systems that can handle a 15½ × 20 in. (394 × 508 mm) food tray. These systems can also be used for transporting pharmaceuticals and other items, and are discussed in Sections 32.14 and 32.15.

Elevators should be grouped centrally, although separated by type of use. Car control is normally self-service collective.

The population of a hospital may be estimated from Table 31.7. Experience has shown that a carrying capacity of 45 passengers in a 5-minute period is adequate (estimating each vehicle as equivalent to 9 passengers).

Intervals should not exceed 1 minute. All recommendations for service to the handicapped should be adopted (see Section 31.14).

(d) Retail Stores

Retail stores present a unique problem in vertical transportation inasmuch as the objective is partially to transport persons to specific levels and partially to expose the passengers (customers) to

displayed merchandise. For this reason, modern stores rely heavily on escalators, with one or two elevators provided for use by staff and handicapped persons. When, for some reason, it is desired to equip a store exclusively with elevators, use the recommendations shown in Table 31.9, calculated for a load of 10% to 20% of the store's population. Control should be automatic, selective, and collective. Cars are arranged in a straight line to facilitate loading and waiting.

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES AND SPATIAL REQUIREMENTS OF ELEVATORS

31.39 SHAFTS AND LOBBIES

Elevator lobbies and shafts are one of the major space issues with which the architect is concerned. The elevator lobby on each floor is the focal point from which corridors radiate for access to all rooms, stairways, service rooms, and so forth. Such lobbies must be located above each other. The ground-floor elevator lobby (also called the *lower terminal*) must be conveniently located with respect to the main building entrances. Equipment within or adjacent to this area should include public telephones (if provided), a building directory, elevator indicators, and possibly a control desk (see Fig. 31.18).

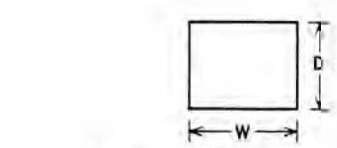
Lobbies should provide adequate area for the peak-load gathering of passengers to ensure rapid and comfortable service to all. The number of people contributing to the period of peak load (15- to 20-minute peak) determines the required lobby area on the floor.

Not less than 5 ft^2 (0.5 m^2) of floor space per person should be provided at peak periods for waiting passengers at a given elevator or bank of elevators. The hallways leading to such lobbies should also provide at least 5 ft^2 (0.5 m^2) per person, approaching the lobby. Under self-adjusting relaxed conditions, density is about 7 ft^2 (0.65 m^2) per person. During peak periods crowding occurs, however, reducing this to 3 to 4 ft^2 (0.3–0.4 m^2) per person. An acceptable compromise is 5 ft^2 (0.5 m^2) per person.

The main lower terminal of elevator banks is generally on the street-floor level, although it may be on a mezzanine level when the elevations of the street entrances vary so that one side of the building is at mezzanine level, whereas another entrance is lower. Such a situation is ideal for the use of escalators, which can economically and rapidly carry large numbers of people between levels, thus making practical and efficient a single main lower elevator terminal. The upper terminal is usually the top floor of the building. Typical dimensional data and lobby arrangements are shown in Figs. 31.26 to 31.28.

31.40 DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS

Most manufacturers and elevator consultants will, upon request, supply standard layouts for elevators—including dimensions, weights, and structural loads. Furthermore, to assist in preliminary design, major manufacturers have agreed upon and publish a set of Standard Elevator Layouts via their trade organization, the National Elevator Industry, Inc. (NEII). One such standard is reproduced in Fig. 31.29 for 500- to 700-fpm (2.5 to 3.6-m/s) gearless units in the full range of car capacities. These standards are available from the NEII.



Car size	D	W
2500 lb	70"	8' 6"
3000 lb	7' 6"	8' 6"
3500 lb	8' 2"	8' 6"
4000 lb	8' 2"	9' 6"

(*a*)

Car size kg	speed m/s	D mm	W
1000	2.5	2200	2400
1250	2.5	2200	2600
1600	2.5	2500	2600
2000	2.5	2500	2600
1000	4.0	2200	2400
1250	4.0	2200	2600
1600	4.0	2500	2600
1250	6.0	2250	2500

(*b*)

Fig. 31.26 *Rough hoistway dimensional data for use in schematic design. (a) I-P elevator sizes and dimensions. (b) SI elevator sizes and dimensions.*

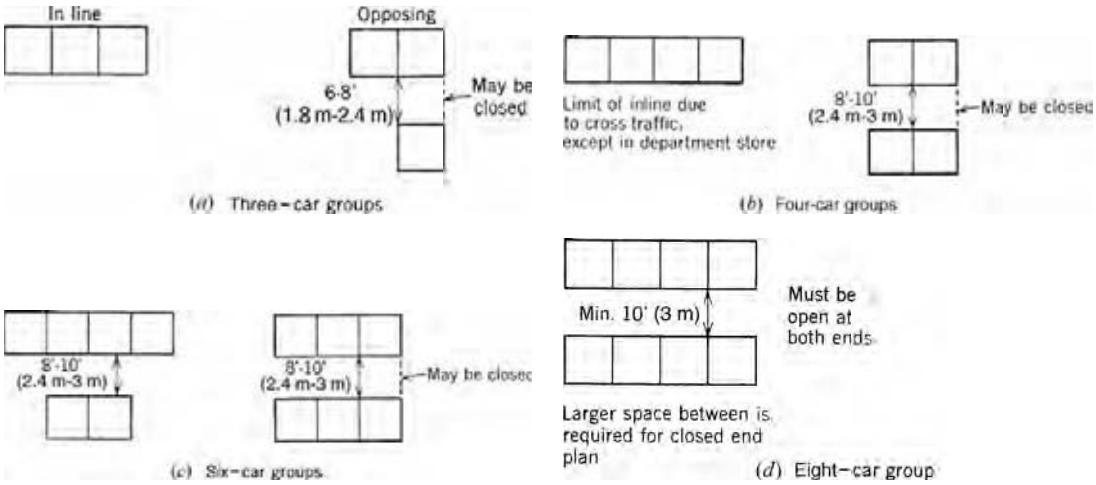


Fig. 31.27 *Lobby groupings for single-zone systems: (a) three-, (b) four-, (c) six-, and (d) eight-car groups.*

As may be seen from Fig. 31.29, in providing for an elevator installation it is necessary to consider such factors as the depth of the pit, the dimensions of the hoistway, the clearance from the top of the hoistway to the floor of the penthouse, the size of the penthouse, and the loads that must be carried by the supporting beams.

The penthouse floor (and the secondary-level floor where required) are located above the shaft of each elevator and need approximately 1½ stories of additional height above the top of the support beam of a given elevator when it is standing at its top-floor location. The actual floor area required by the elevator traction machine and its controls is roughly two times the area of the elevator shaft itself. The machine room contains the bulk of the elevator machinery. Because some of this equipment must be moved for maintenance, it is advisable to furnish an overhead trolley beam that can be used during installation as well. The maximum beam load is supplied by the elevator manufacturer.

Some typical machine room dimensional data are listed in Table 31.12, taken from actual installations. Because of multiple drive options and flexibility in equipment arrangements, no general conclusions can be drawn from these figures; they are listed simply to give a general picture of requirements. A manufacturer's layout giving dimensional data for the hoistway and machine room is shown in Fig. 31.30.

When penthouse space is not available and a hydraulic unit is not desired, a basement traction unit, also referred to as an *underslung arrangement*, can be used. These units are always low-speed (100 to 350 fpm [0.5 to 1.8 m/s]) and are therefore applicable only where rise is limited and traffic is light to medium. Figure 31.31 shows a typical shaft

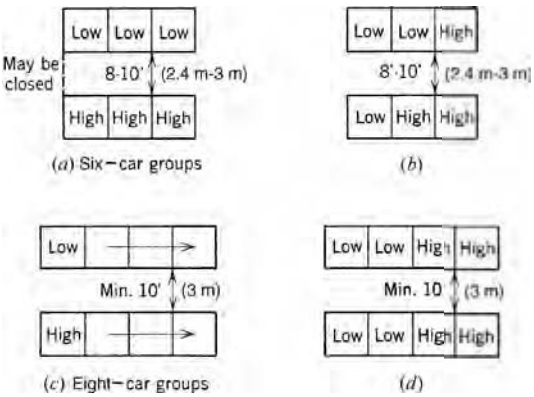


Fig. 31.28 *Lobby groupings for multiple zone systems. Arrangement (a) is preferable to (b), and (c) to (d). Groups with more than four cars in a row are not used because end-to-end walking time would excessively lengthen landing stops and hence total travel time.*

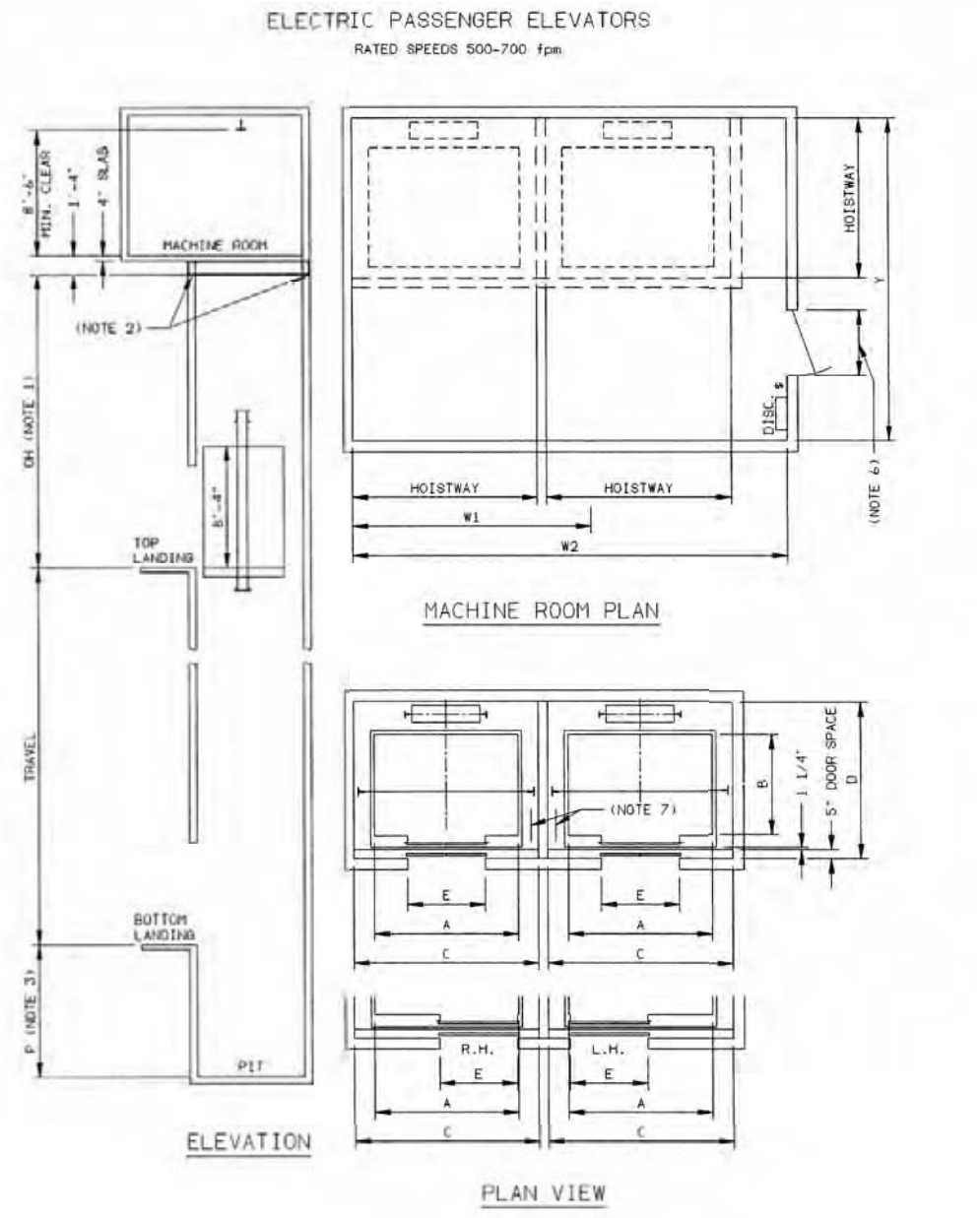


Fig. 31.29 *Typical elevator installation dimensional data. (Reproduced from* Vertical Transportation Standards, *7th ed., © 1992, with permission of National Elevator Industry, Inc., 185 Bridge Plaza North, Fort Lee, NJ 07024.)*

"OH" BOTTOM OF BEAM (Note 1) ft-in.

SPEED (fpm)	RATED LOAD (lb)				
	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000
500	17-6	17-6	18-3	18-3	17-6
600	18-6	18-6	18-6	18-6	18-6
700	20-6	20-6	20-6	20-6	20-6

CAR & HOISTWAY

RATED LOAD (lb)	AREA ■	ft-in. (Note 11)					ENTRANCE (Note 10)	
		A	B	C	D	E	TYPE	
2000	24.2	5-8	4-3	7-4	6-11	3-0	SSSO ▲	SSCO
2500	29.1	6-8	4-3	8-4	6-11	3-6	SSSO *	SSCO ▲
3000	33.7	6-8	4-7	8-4	7-5	3-6	SSSO *	SSCO ▲
3500	38.0	6-8	5-3	8-4	8-1	3-6	SSSO *	SSCO ▲
4000	42.2	7-8	5-3	9-6	8-1	4-0	SSCO *	

"P" PIT DEPTH (Note 3) ft-in.

SPEED (fpm)	RATED LOAD (lb)				
	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000
500	10-1	10-1	10-1	10-1	10-1
600	11-5	11-5	11-5	11-5	11-5
700	11-5	11-5	11-5	11-5	11-5

MACHINE ROOM ft-in.

RATED LOAD (lb)	W1 WIDTH	W2 WIDTH	"Y" DEPTH FOR RATED SPEED (fpm)		
			500	600	700
2000	7-4	15-0	18-6	18-6	18-6
2500	8-4	17-0	18-6	18-6	18-6
3000	8-4	17-1	18-6	18-6	18-6
3500	8-4	17-1	18-6	18-6	18-6
4000	9-6	19-5	18-6	18-6	18-6

Notes

1. "OH" Dimensions are based on a 8'-4" overall car height.
2. Supports for elevator machine beams not by elevator supplier.
3. For travel greater than 400'-0" increased pit depth may be required. Consult elevator supplier.
4. 3'-6" x 7'-0" Recommended.
5. Pit ladder not by elevator supplier.
6. Dividing beams, not by elevator supplier, to be designed to sustain rail forces. Consult elevator supplier.
7. When compliance with seismic risk zone 2 or greater requirements is anticipated, provide additional hoistway space.

Notes

■ Maximum allowable inside car area in ft^2 per ASME A17.1, Rule 207.1.

* These car dimensions and entrance types provide wheelchair accessibility and accommodate an ambulance type stretcher (76 in. x 24 in.) in the horizontal position.

▲ These car dimensions and entrance types provide wheelchair accessibility.

Fig. 31.29 *(Continued)*

TABLE 31.12 Typical Elevator Machine Room Dimensions

Bank Description No. – lb (kg)	fpm (m/s)	Approximate Machine Room Dimensions ft (m)
2–2500 (1134)	125 (0.6)	16 × 18 (4.9 × 5.5)
3–2500 (1134)	350 (1.8)	19 × 26 (5.8 × 7.9)
3–2500 (1134)	700 (3.6)	21 × 26 (6.4 × 7.9)
6–3500 (1588)	500 (2.5)	26 × 29 (7.9 × 8.8)
6–3500 (1588)	700 (3.6)	27 × 27 (8.2 × 8.2)
6–3500 (1588)	1000 (5.1)	27 × 27 (8.2 × 8.2)
6–5000 (2268)	450 (2.3)	31 × 33 (9.5 × 10.1)

section for this design with car and dimensional data.

31.41 STRUCTURAL STRESSES

For structural design, it is necessary to know the overhead load that must be supported by the foundations, by structural columns extending up to the penthouse, and by the main beams that support the penthouse floor and subfloor. These loads (reactions) are supplied by manufacturers and

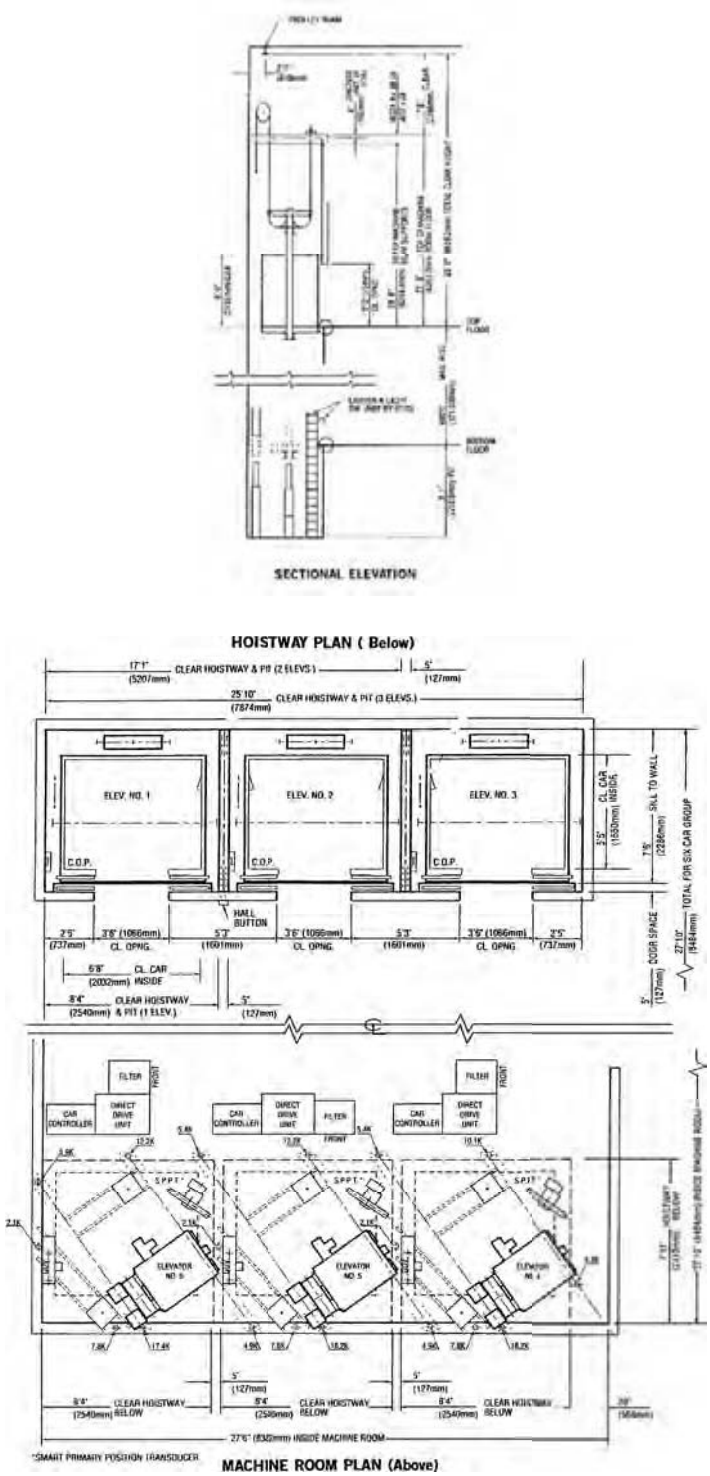
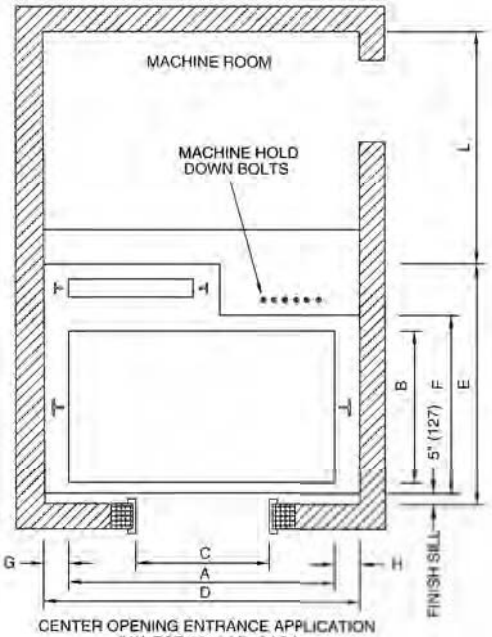
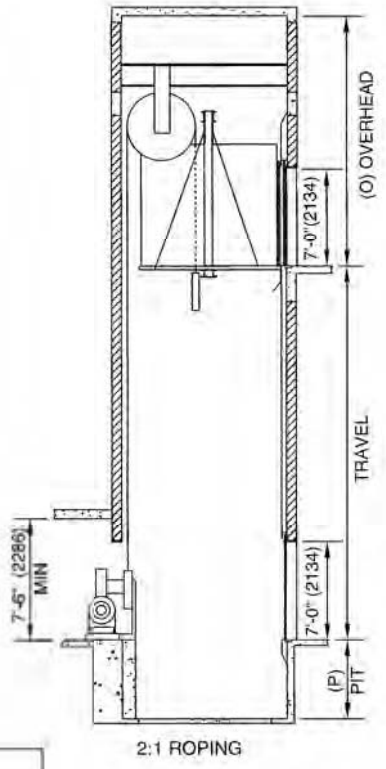


Fig. 31.30 *Manufacturer's layout data for a bank of six 3500-lb (1588-kg), 700-fpm (3.45-m/s) gearless passenger elevators. Equipment shown in the machine room is the thyristor control for dc traction machines. Because each controller provides group supervisory control in this design (Otis Elevonic 411), no separate group supervisory equipment is shown. No additional space would be required if a UMV drive with m-g sets were selected rather than thyristor control. (Courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*





2:1 ROPING ARRANGEMENT

Overhead dimension is reduced to a minimum. Greater pit depth is required due to the sheave arrangement as compared to a 1:1 installation.

SIZES & CAPACITIES

CAPACITY	2000 lbs. (907 kg)	2500 lbs. (1134 kg)	3000 lbs. (1361 kg)	3500 lbs. (1588 kg)
A	6'-0" (1829)	7'-0" (2134)	7'-0" (2134)	7'-0" (2134)
B	5'-0" (1524)	5'-0" (1524)	5'-6" (1676)	6'-2" (1880)
C	3'-0" (914)	3'-6" (1067)	3'-6" (1067)	3'-6" (1067)
D	8'-0" (2438)	9'-0" (2743)	9'-0" (2743)	9'-0" (2743)
E	6'-10" (2083)	6'-10" (2083)	7'-4" (2235)	8'-0" (2438)
F	5'-4" (1626)	5'-4" (1626)	5'-10" (1778)	6'-6" (1981)
G	1'-0" (305)	1'-0" (305)	1'-0" (305)	1'-0" (305)
H	1'-0" (305)	1'-0" (305)	1'-0" (305)	1'-0" (305)

MINIMUM MACHINE ROOM OVERHEAD & PIT DIMENSIONS

SPEED	100 FPM (0.51 m/s)	200 FPM (1.02 m/s)	250 FPM (1.27 m/s)
L	10'-6" (3200)	10'-6" (3200)	10'-6" (3200)
O	13'-0" (3962)	13'-2" (4013)	13'-7" (4140)
P	5'-6" (1676)	6'-6" (1981)	6'-11" (2108)

NOTES:
1. If a counterweight safety is applied, consult Montgomery KONE
2. Layouts and dimensions shown are for machine located at rear of hoistway.
3. Add 4" (102) to dimension D in seismic zones.
4. Other capacities, speeds, and arrangements are available.

Fig. 31.31 *Typical data for a basement traction machine (underslung) arrangement, used where a penthouse is unavailable or undesirable. (Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*

usually include the actual dead weights of equipment when the elevator is not in motion, plus the added weight caused by the momentum of all moving parts and passengers when the elevator is at top speed and is suddenly stopped rapidly by the safety devices.

POWER AND ENERGY

31.42 POWER REQUIREMENTS

The power required by an elevator drive is that which is needed to provide the necessary traction and to overcome friction. Because power is equal to the *rate* at which work is done, elevator motor size is directly proportional to the speed of the system. In other words, it requires proportionately more power to lift a 3000-lb (1361-kg) car at 700 fpm (3.6 m/s) than at 200 fpm (1.0 m/s). This relationship is shown in Fig. 31.32, which shows the minimum size of a dc elevator traction motor as a function of speed for cars of different capacity. (For power data on hydraulic elevators, see Section 31.9.) As friction is higher in a geared machine than in a gearless unit, the geared machine traction motor must be larger for the same car speed. The size of the traction machine shown in Fig. 31.32 is independent of the power supply design (m-g set, VVVF, thyristor control) because it is determined purely by traction system requirements. (In practice, however, traction motors with VVVF control are frequently smaller because they operate more efficiently.)

An elevator moves only about 50% of the time, the remainder being spent standing at various landings. As the number of cars in a bank increases, the probability of *all* the cars being in operation simultaneously decreases, resulting in a system demand factor of less than 1.0. The factor for different group sizes is shown in Fig. 31.32.

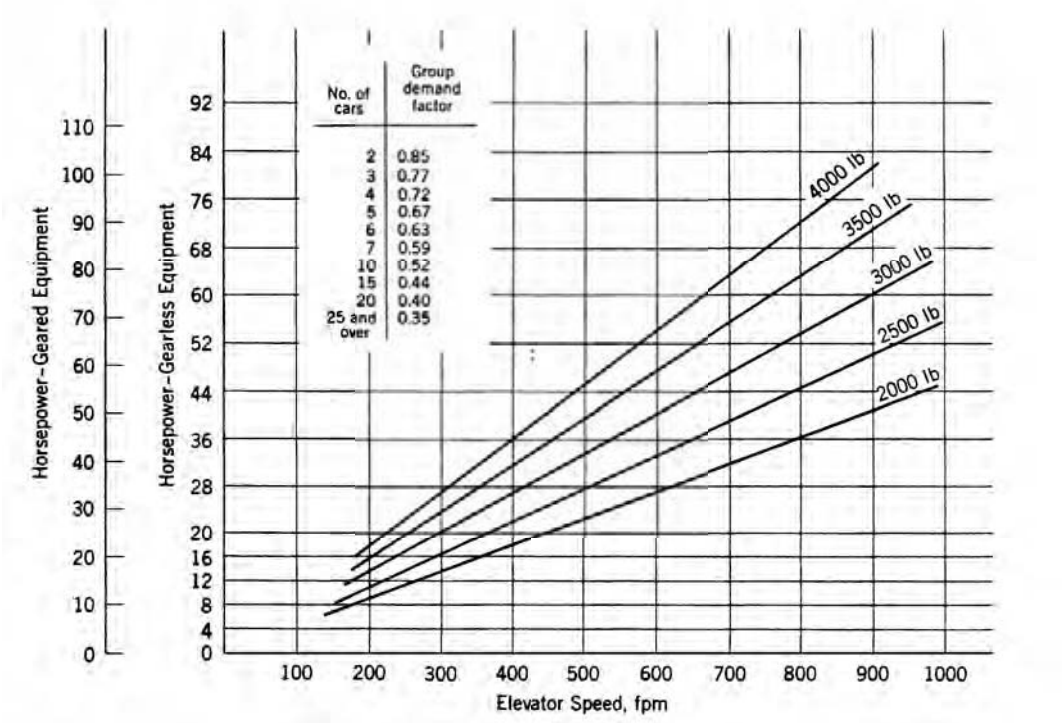


Fig. 31.32 *Elevator traction motor power requirements per car. An m-g set drive (if used) is approximately 20% larger than a traction machine.*

As an example of the use of the power curves, consider a bank of five 3500-lb (1588-kg), 600-fpm (3.0-m/s) units. From Fig. 31.32, each car requires 48 hp (36 kW):

$$\text{group demand factor} = 0.67$$

$$\text{total instantaneous power required}$$

$$= 5 \times 48 \times 0.67 = 160 \text{ hp}$$

$$(= 5 \times 36 \times 0.67 = 120 \text{ kW})$$

Note that this is the *traction motor* power requirements. If an m-g set with an overall efficiency of 80% is used to drive the traction motor, the elevator system power requirement is

$$\text{system power} = \frac{160 \text{ hp}}{80\% \text{ eff}} = 200 \text{ hp}$$

$$(120 \text{ kW}/0.80 = 150 \text{ kW})$$

which must be provided by the building electrical system. If a solid-state power supply system with a (typical) efficiency of 92% is used, the system power requirement will be only

$$\text{system power} = \frac{160 \text{ hp}}{92\% \text{ eff}} = 174 \text{ hp}$$

$$(120 \text{ kW}/.0.92 = 130 \text{ kW})$$

which is a 13% reduction from the previously calculated 200-hp (150-kW) requirement.

31.43 ENERGY REQUIREMENTS

The energy used by an elevator is essentially the system friction, including the heat generated by the brakes plus the electrical losses in the traction motor and power supply equipment (rotary or solid state). The energy expended in raising a car and its passengers is simply stored as potential energy. It is *returned to the power system* when the car and passengers descend via the system of regenerative braking used in almost all elevator systems. Refer to Fig. 31.33, which shows the approximate efficiencies of the components of a typical system. With these data, it is possible to calculate a system's energy consumption.

EXAMPLE 31.2 Given a system of five 3500-lb (1588-kg), 600-fpm (3.0-m/s) gearless cars, calculate:

(a) The heat generated in the machine room during peak periods; assume solid-state control

(b) The approximate monthly energy cost; using a combined demand/energy rate of $0.08/kWh

SOLUTION

(a) During peak periods, the traction motor operates approximately 50% of the time and is at standstill the other half. Assume that, while

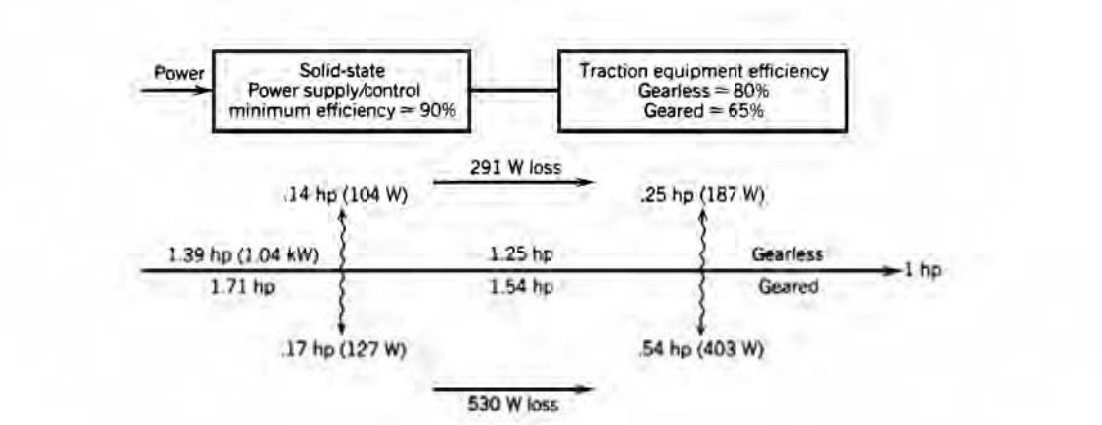


Fig. 31.33 *Block diagram showing losses in the system per horsepower (kW) delivered to the elevator car and the equivalent wattages. Note that the losses in a geared system are almost double those of a gearless one. Figures shown are for solid-state thyristor controls.*

operating, it draws 90% of the full load (with a VVVF power supply this figure is reduced considerably). Therefore, for one car, from Fig. 31.32,

traction motor = 48 hp (36 kW)

Total loss per machine:
In controls:

$$\frac{48\text{ hp}}{0.9\text{ eff}} \times 90\%\text{ load} \times 50\%\text{ operation} \times 10\%\text{ loss}$$

$$= 2.4\text{ hp (1.8 kW)}$$

In traction motor:

$$48\text{ hp} \times 90\%\text{ load} \times 50\%\text{ operation} \times 20\%\text{ loss}$$

$$= 4.32\text{ hp (3.2 kW)}$$

total = 6.72 hp = 17,100 Btu/h (equivalent to 5 kW)

Because five elevators are operating, the total heat generated is

5 × 17,100 Btu/h = 85,500 Btu/h (equivalent to 25 kW)

This is roughly the heating capacity of a home furnace. As a result, machine room temperatures in warm climates frequently reach 120°F (49°C). (No diversity is taken because all the machines are operating and the heating is additive; diversity is applicable only in calculating instantaneous load.)

As solid-state elevator equipment is much less tolerant of high ambient temperatures than the electromechanical switches and relays previously used, an elevator machine room should be held to a maximum dry-bulb temperature of 90°F (32°C). (Temperatures above 90°F (32°C) can result in unreliable elevator system performance.) This limit can sometimes be accomplished by thermostatically controlled forced ventilation, particularly if spillover air from an air-conditioned space is available. However, because machine rooms are frequently on the building roof and exposed on all surfaces to ambient temperatures and solar radiation, air conditioning may be necessary. It is also important to prevent machine room temperature from dropping below 55°F (13°C). This can usually be done with one or more unit heaters, which will normally operate only during the winter, and then only on nights and weekends.

In actual design situations, accurate heat loss values, which are available from manufacturers, would be used, along with accurate heat gain and heat loss calculations for the specific machine room being designed. Frequently, use of thermal insulation, thermostatically controlled louvers, and sunshading can ease the thermal load and result in appreciable savings in money and energy. Because of the high initial and operating costs of air conditioning, some elevator manufacturers use control components that are tolerant of high temperatures. This point should be carefully examined with proposed elevator equipment manufacturers and the conclusions reflected in the elevator system specifications.

(b) To calculate a monthly energy cost, an estimate must be made of the total usage of the system. Assuming the system to be in an office building, a reasonable breakdown of operation during a 24-hour day would be

2 hours at peak use
2 hours at 70% of peak
6 hours at 50% of peak
14 hours at 10% of peak

This gives a weighted average of 30% of peak load for the elevator bank. Therefore, per car

energy = 30% × total losses × 24 hours

= 0.3 × 6.72 hp (or 5 kW) × 24 hours

= 48 hp-h (or 36 kW-h) = 36 kWh/day/car

Monthly cost would be

$$36\ \frac{\text{kWh}}{\text{day}} \times 25\text{ days} \times \$0.08$$

= $72/month/car

= $360/month for the bank

This figure would be lower with a VVVF power supply and higher for a Ward–Leonard (m-g set) arrangement. ■

31.44 ENERGY CONSERVATION

A reduction in energy consumption can be accomplished by implementing the following recommendations:

For Existing Elevators

1. Increase the interval during nonpeak hours.
2. Replace m-g sets with a solid-state dc power supply or ac traction motors with a VVVF power supply. This conserves energy not only

due to the higher efficiency of the power supply, but also because energy consumption of idling machines is eliminated.
3. Reclaim machine room waste heat.
4. Shut down some units completely during off hours.

For a Building in the Planning Stage

1. Base the design on the maximum recommended trip time.
2. Use the lowest speeds possible within a type—that is, geared or gearless.
3. Use gearless equipment whenever possible.
4. After construction, implement the energy conservation recommendations for existing elevators.

Because elevator shafts can induce a powerful stack effect, measures should be taken to counteract this potential loss of heat during the heating season.

31.45 EMERGENCY POWER

Major power failures and local brownouts have demonstrated forcefully the need for a standby or emergency power source of adequate size to operate an affected building's elevators. Few experiences are so harrowing as being trapped in the crowded confines of a small box suspended in a long vertical shaft, with little or no light, and complete strangers for companions.

A common misconception about elevators is that on failure of power, the cars will automatically descend to the nearest landing, where an exit is then possible. In reality, the car brake is set immediately upon power outage and the car remains stationary. Hydraulic cars can be lowered by operation of a manual valve; *small* traction cars can be cranked to a landing by hand, but large cars are fixed in position. This is particularly bad for cars in blind shafts—that is, express shafts with no shaftway doors. In such cases, escape from the cars via a hatchway is not practical; when emergency power is not available, the undesirable option of breaking through the shaftway walls is the only recourse.

In addition to simple inconvenience, loss of elevator service in facilities such as hospitals and mental and penal institutions constitutes a danger to life. For this reason, most codes require that emergency power be available in specific building types to operate at least one elevator at a time, and for elevator lighting and communications. Many installations separate the emergency power functions, providing a generator for elevator traction power and separate individual elevator battery packs for communications, lighting, and, preferably, the car fan. The last two items can be furnished as an option by elevator manufacturers with their cars.

The generator is normally sized to supply one elevator motor at a time, with manual or automatic switching arranged between unit controllers. Thus, each car in turn can be brought to a landing and thereafter a single car retained in service. If it is desired to operate more than one car, a larger generator can be installed. This might well be the case in a multiwing building with critical service requirements, such as a hospital.

The amount of power required, the size of the emergency generator, and the equipment size necessary to absorb regenerative power are all data that can be furnished by a consulting engineer and the elevator manufacturer.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

31.46 FIRE SAFETY

Most fire codes specify the procedures that elevator control equipment must implement once a fire emergency has been initiated. Details vary somewhat, but in general the actions are these:

1. All cars close their doors and return nonstop to the lobby or another designated floor, where they park with the doors open. Thereafter, they are operable in manual mode only, by use of the firefighter's key in the car panel.
2. All car and hall calls are canceled, and call-registered lights and directional arrows deactivated.

3. The fire emergency light or message panel in each car is activated to inform passengers of the nature of the alert and that cars are returning to a designated terminal.
4. Door sensors and in-car emergency stop switches are deactivated.
5. Traveling cars stop at the next landing without opening their doors and then proceed to the designated terminal.

The cars can then be used by trained personnel to transport firefighters and equipment and for evacuation. In the event of a false alarm, the emergency procedure can be overridden at the (lobby) control point and the system returned to normal while the source of the alarm is located. (This is a particularly important feature in large buildings with automatic fire alarm systems containing hundreds of fire, smoke, and water-flow detectors.)

31.47 ELEVATOR SECURITY

Elevator security has two key aspects: physical security of riders and consideration of the elevator as a portal in a building-access security system.

(a) Rider Security

This problem is particularly difficult inasmuch as a traveling elevator is an enclosed space that can be rendered inaccessible simply by pressing the emergency stop button. Thereafter, an attacker can escape at a floor of his/her choice. To reduce this danger (to some extent), elevators are equipped with alarm buttons that alert residents and security personnel (if any). Every elevator, by code, must be equipped with communication equipment. A two-way communication system with "no-hands" operation in the car is particularly effective for security. When a closed-circuit TV monitor is added, utilizing a wide-angle camera in each car (Fig. 31.34), the security problem will have been addressed to a considerable extent. Using a communication and TV system presupposes continuous monitoring of the building security desk so that an incident will be detected.



Fig. 31.34 *Wide-angle TV camera intended for elevator car surveillance. A prominent printed warning in the car is an integral part of the system's effectiveness. (Photo courtesy of Visual Methods, Inc.)*

(b) Access Control

This is often a matter of restricting access to (and from) a floor or car. This can be accomplished by pushbutton combination locks or coded cards, the proper use of which will permit access (see Chapter 30). However, if a second (unauthorized) person accompanies an authorized person, the effectiveness of this type of access control is seriously compromised. In sum, the most effective security system is a combination of automatic monitoring and access devices coupled with continuous supervision by persons who know the appropriate actions to take in an emergency.

31.48 ELEVATOR NOISE

Elevator operation, with its rotating, sliding, and vibrating masses, can be a cause of serious noise disturbance to quiet areas such as sleeping rooms, libraries, and certain types of office space. Noise and vibration can be reduced by the appropriate application of noise control strategies and vibration isolators (e.g., between guide rails and the structure), but primarily by placing noise-sensitive areas away from shafts and machine rooms. The clatter and whirring sound associated with older machine rooms (and caused by relays, step switches, m-g sets, and sliding contacts) can be entirely eliminated by the use of solid-state equipment.

31.49 ELEVATOR SPECIFICATIONS

Two basic types of specifications for elevator equipment, as for other types of equipment, are utilized. These are the prescriptive (equipment-based) and performance (outcome-based) approaches. Performance specifications describe job conditions and invite contractors to submit detailed proposals that will meet explicit design criteria. The burden of comparing proposals then falls upon the owner, who—if competent to properly perform such an evaluation—would probably do better to utilize an equipment-type specification in the first place.

In recent years, the use of performance specifications has increased because of the advent of preengineered, premanufactured systems. These are supplied by the major elevator manufacturers and have the following advantages:

1. Approximately 10% lower cost than a custom-designed system
2. A completely engineered and tested system whose performance and cost are known exactly
3. Rapid delivery
4. Minimum supervision required by the owner and architect

If architects decide to use a custom-designed system, they must prepare detailed drawings and specifications. The specifications must include:

- Elevator type, rated load, and speed
- Maximum travel
- Number of landings and openings
- Type of control and supervisory system
- Details of car and shaft doors
- Signal equipment
- Characteristics of the power supply
- Finishes

The last item can be left as a dollar allowance for architectural treatment of the car interior. Because the selection of, and technical specifications for, elevators are specialized and complex, the services of an elevator consultant are usually required.

In addition to the technical portions of the specifications, it is imperative that the following items be covered in detail.

(a) Owner's Responsibility

The general construction contractor (acting for the owner) normally provides the following:

1. The hoistway, including a properly designed, lighted, drained, waterproofed, and ventilated machine room and pit
2. Access doors, ladders, and required guards
3. Guide rail bracket supports, and support for machine and sheave beams
4. Electric feeder terminating in a switch in the machine room
5. Hoistway outlets for lighting, power, and telephone
6. Temporary lighting and power during construction
7. Concrete machine foundations
8. Vents, holes, and other work to satisfy fire codes
9. All cutting, patching, and fabricating of walls, beams, masonry, and so on
10. Coordination of all work
11. Any special work, as negotiated and specified

(b) Elevator Contractor's Responsibility

Provide a complete, working, tested, and approved system in accordance with specifications, plus any special work such as painting, special tests, work scheduling, and temporary elevator service. The system is "inserted" into the building framework described in Section 31.49(a).

(c) Special Job Conditions

These include work restrictions, scheduling, penalties or bonuses, test reports, and the like.

In alteration and modernization work, the problems of coordination are complex, and an elevator contractor experienced in this type of work should be selected. To this end, in all elevator contract work, bids should be solicited from parties named on qualified bidder lists. A complete elevator contract includes a warranty and provisions for maintenance of the installation for a specific period after completion.

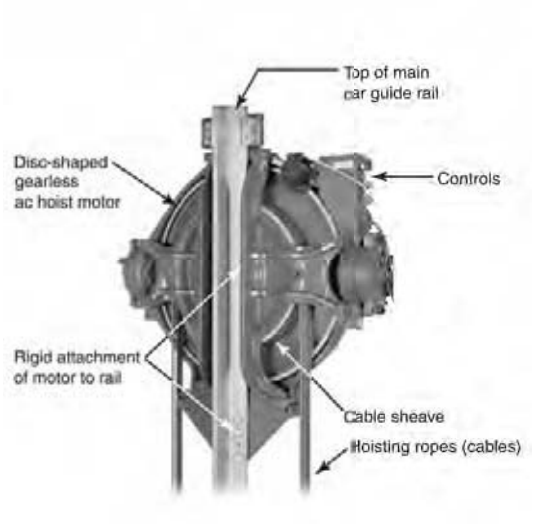


Fig. 31.35 *Disc-shaped hoisting motor rigidly mounted on the elevator guide rail. The ac synchronous motor is connected directly to the hoisting cable drive sheave with no intervening gears. Brakes and controls are built into the assembly. (Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*

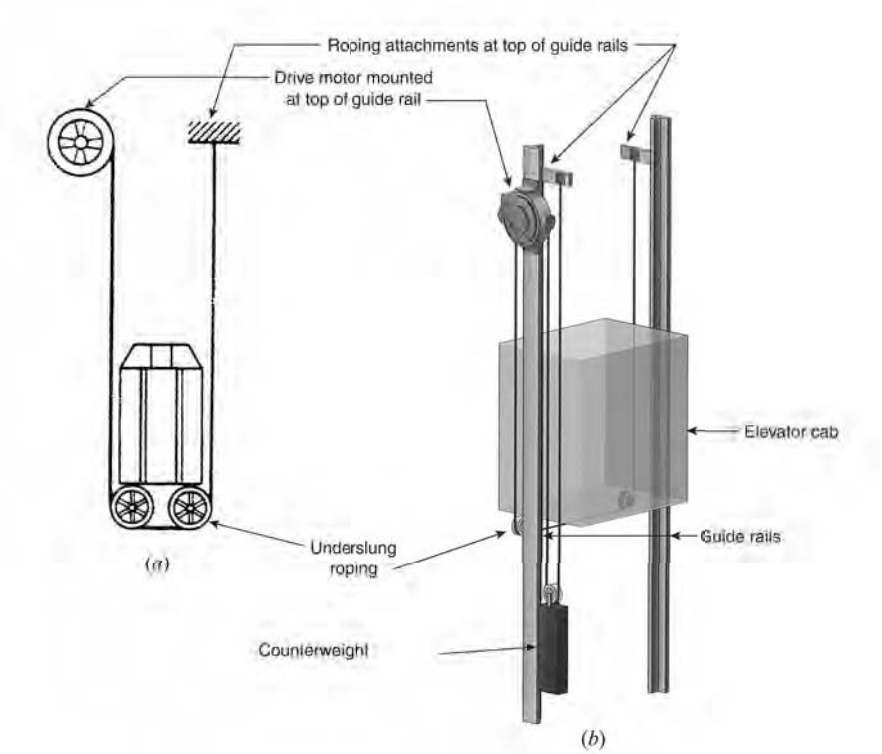
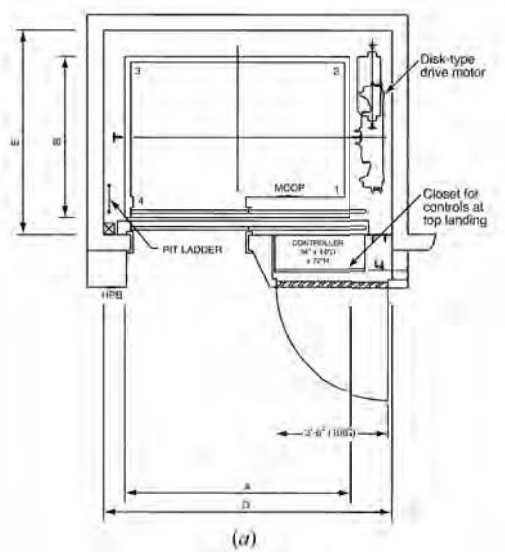


Fig. 31.36 *Schematic (a) and pictorial (b) representations of the disc-motor-driven elevator arrangement. (Part b Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*



MonoSpace Elevator System	
Speed	200 FPM (1.0 m/s)
Capacity	2500 lb. (1134 kg)
A	7'-0" (2134)
B	5'-0" (1524)
D	9'-0" (2744)
E	6'-4" (1931)
Entrance Types	Single Slide
Overhead (O)	12'-9" (3887) min
Minimum Travel	8'-4" (2540)
Maximum Travel	80'-0" (24384)
Landings Served	2 - 10
Pit (P)	5'-6" (1677) min
Machine Room (W x D x H)	3'-9" x 16" x 8'-0" (1143 x 407 x 2439)

(b)

Fig. 31.37 *(a) Section through the top of a hoistway showing dimensional data for a single 2500-lb (1134-kg), 200-fpm (1-m/s) installation with a rise of up to 80 ft (24 m). Note that the drive motor occupies less than 2 ft (0.6 m) in the width of the hoistway and that the elevator motion and operating controls (Section 31.4) are installed in a closet 42 in. (1.07 m) wide and approximately 20 in. (508 mm) deep at the top landing. (b) Elevator system basic data for the simplex (single) unit shown in (a). (Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*

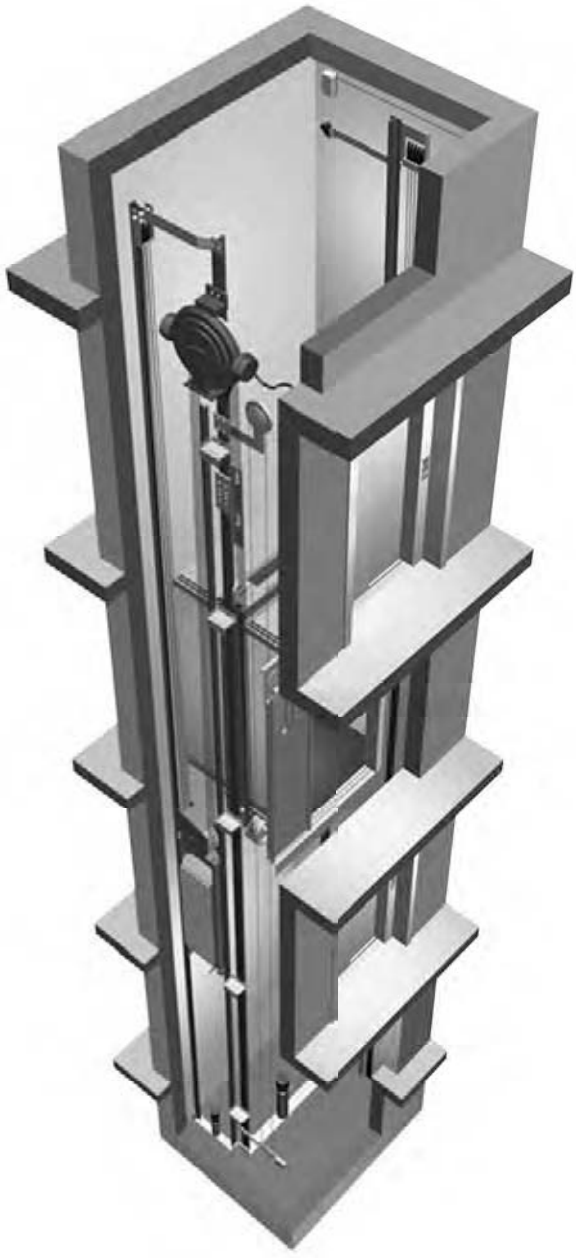


Fig. 31.38 *Pictorial representation of a disc-type traction motor hoistway showing the system's essentials. (Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*

31.50 INNOVATIVE EQUIPMENT

The elevator industry is constantly developing new equipment to improve the operation and safety of standard systems. In addition, novel designs that are essentially different from standard traction arrangements are always being developed in an attempt to increase the efficiency of space use and to decrease the high cost of standard traction machinery. Among the interesting designs being developed in the first category is one that permits a car to travel horizontally in addition to its normal vertical motion, the purpose of which is to increase the number of cars using a single shaft. The second category includes a design using a linear motor (as opposed to a rotating unit) to supply traction power. These and several other special designs are discussed in Chapter 32.

A recently developed interesting variation of the conventional traction design that effects a considerable space reduction is shown in Figs. 31.35 to 31.38. At this writing, its principal applications are in low-speed, low-rise installations now generally serviced by hydraulic elevators, but with higher speeds and rises under development. The novelty of the design lies in the use of a flat (disc-shaped), synchronous ac gearless hoisting motor, which, due to its flat disc shape, can be mounted directly on the main car guide rail at one side of the shaft (see Fig. 31.35). This essentially removes the need for a penthouse and a large machine room above the hoistway. Due to the traction motor's position at the side of the hoistway, the car is roped in an underslung arrangement, as shown in Fig. 31.36. Additional space economy is achieved by the use of a small drive controller built into an alcove at the top landing (see Fig. 31.37). The pictorial hoistway representation in Fig. 31.38 shows the equipment arrangement, demonstrating the absence of a penthouse and the limited machine room space requirement. An additional advantage of this arrangement is that the elevator loads and reactions are borne by the (stiffened) guide rail and transferred directly to the concrete pit below the bottom landing. This reduces the reactions borne by the machine room level in a conventional traction design and results in reduced structural loads. Compared to hydraulic elevators, this design exhibits considerable energy economy due to its use of a gearless traction machine.

References and Resources

Stein, B., J. Reynolds, and W. McGuinness. 1986. *Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings*, 7th ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

Strakosch, G. R. 1983. *Vertical Transportation, Elevators and Escalators*, 2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons. New York.

CHAPTER 32

Vertical Transportation: Special Topics

CHAPTER 31 DEALT PRIMARILY WITH THE construction, control, and selection of passenger elevators. These elevators move in dedicated shafts with the elevator machinery usually placed near the shaft. This chapter discusses elevators with special shaft arrangements, special cars, lifting arrangements other than traction/hydraulic, and elevators designed primarily to carry freight. The chapter closes with a section devoted to material handling and movement in buildings using elevator-like traction cars and other means.

SPECIAL SHAFT ARRANGEMENTS

The fact that each elevator in a building typically has a full-height basement-to-penthouse shaft that occupies valuable building space, and that the elevator only uses part of the space and only part of the time, has always disturbed finance-conscious building operators. Development of high-speed drives and very sophisticated control systems has been spurred, in part, by the desire to increase the efficiency with which elevators use building space. An alternate approach to this problem lies in innovative use of shaft space so that more than one car can use a single shaft. A detailed analysis of these solutions is beyond the scope of this chapter; however, a short review is possible.

32.1 SKY LOBBY ELEVATOR SYSTEM

For skyscraper buildings and high-rise multiple-use buildings (such as the John Hancock Center in Chicago)—which are, in effect, stacked multiple buildings—the elevator solution may involve transporting large groups of people from the street lobby to an upper lobby called a *sky lobby* or *plaza*. At this point, the passengers transfer to another elevator to continue their upward journey.

The traditional approach in tall, single-purpose buildings is to vertically zone the structure and to provide banks of elevators that serve groups of floors. The difficulty with this solution is that the upper-zone cars travel through a long, expensive blind shaft to reach the floors being served. The sky plaza approach stacks (figuratively) two (or more) shafts vertically, with a lobby in between. The result is to have *two* cars operating in the equivalent of a single full-height shaft. To mitigate the annoyance felt by passengers taking a lengthened trip, the sky lobby is attractively appointed and may serve as an observation floor. Also, an elevator trip broken up by a lobby stop is thought to be less annoying than a somewhat shorter but still long, uninterrupted one. Finally, this plan is used principally where a clear differentiation in building use occurs, usually consisting of office areas below and residential units above, as in the

John Hancock building. Thus, most lower-section occupants never use the sky lobby. Passengers headed for upper zones can use a sky lobby "shuttle" that travels from the entry level to the sky lobby and then continue the trip in an upper-section car.

Some designs also provide for a single-shaft upper-zone elevator group that serves upper-zone passengers who prefer not to use the sky lobby. A schematic drawing of the elevator arrangement in the John Hancock building should suggest the advantages of the system (Fig. 32.1).

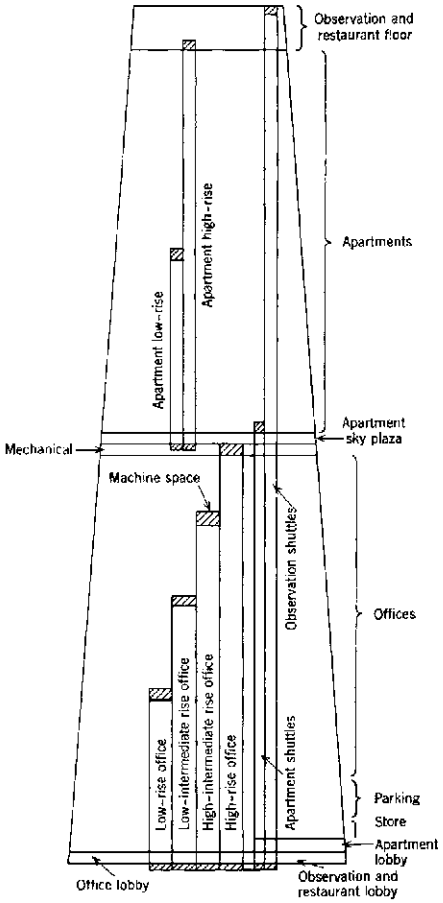


Fig. 32.1 *The use of a sky plaza in this dual-purpose building (the John Hancock Center, Chicago) eliminates the blind shafts below the upper-section (residential) elevators. The lengthened trip time is well tolerated by riders destined for the upper residential section, whereas the lower office section remains unaffected and retains its short interval and trip time. (G. R. Strakosch,* Vertical Transportation, *2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons; reprinted with permission.)*

32.2 DOUBLE-DECK ELEVATORS

A recently revived and revised technique to answer the needs of tall buildings such as the Sears and Citicorp towers, its principal purpose is to limit the otherwise prohibitively large amount of space occupied by elevator shafts (Fig. 32.2). The double-deck car increases shaft capacity, decreases the number of local stops, and increases the available rental area. This technique can also be combined with sky lobbies for further space economy, as was done in the Sears Tower.

FREIGHT ELEVATORS

32.3 GENERAL INFORMATION

The design problem with respect to freight elevators is similar to that for passenger elevators: to transport a given load (in this case freight) efficiently, economically, and quickly. A "service" car in a building can be considered as a freight car but, if utilized for passenger duty at all, it must meet passenger service requirements. If passenger duty is not required or if substantial freight is to be handled, a car designed specifically for freight should be used.

Factors to be considered in freight elevator selection, in addition to tonnage movement per hour, are size of load, method of loading, travel, type of load, type of doors, and speed and capacity of cars. Due to the interrelation of these factors, the selection process involves making assumptions on the basis of recommendations and then arriving at a solution, as is done for passenger elevators.

A detailed discussion of the selection of material-handling elevators is beyond the scope of this book because of the large number of considerations involved. Therefore, the following sections are restricted to descriptive material and recommendations. Inasmuch as freight elevators form such an important link in industrial processes, a careful and detailed material-flow study should be made before freight elevators are selected. Elevator manufacturers' representatives and materials-handling consultants can be very helpful in this regard.

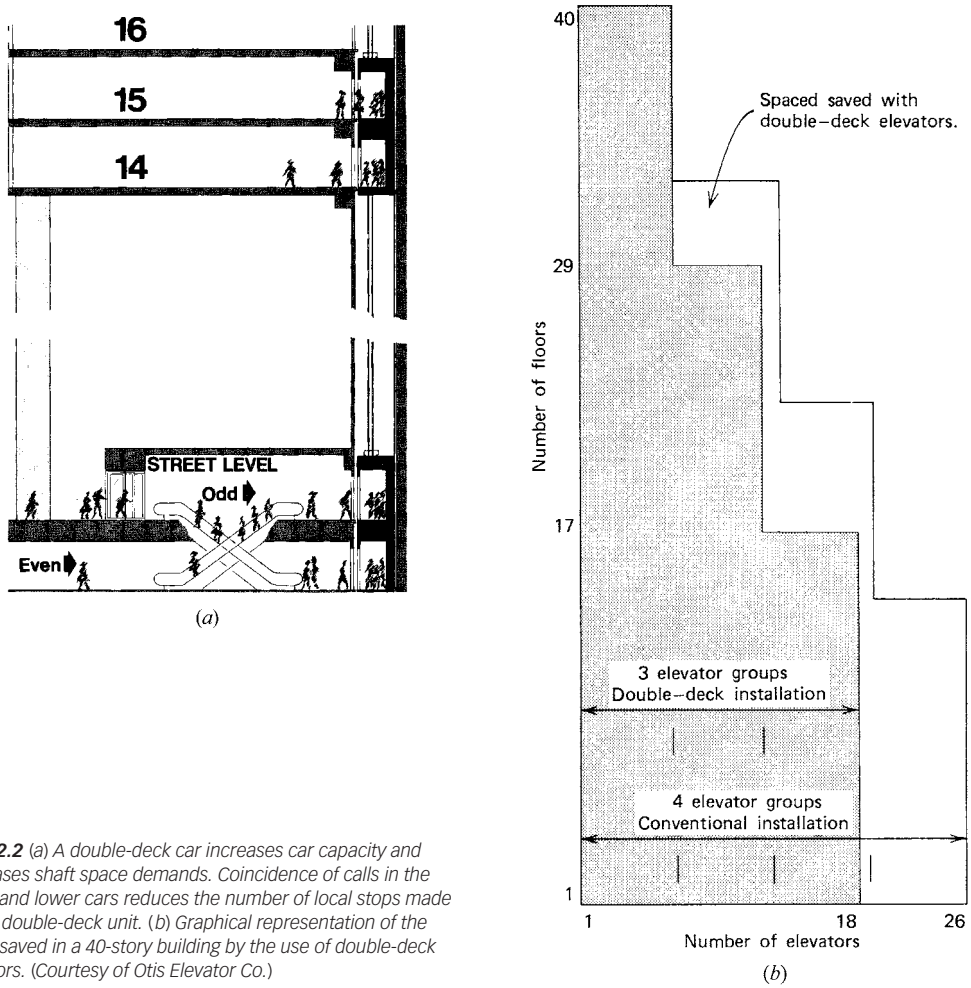


Fig. 32.2 *(a) A double-deck car increases car capacity and decreases shaft space demands. Coincidence of calls in the upper and lower cars reduces the number of local stops made by the double-deck unit. (b) Graphical representation of the space saved in a 40-story building by the use of double-deck elevators. (Courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

32.4 FREIGHT CAR CAPACITY

Figure 32.3 is a section through a typical traction-type freight car shaft. Capacities corresponding to a specific platform size are due to the varying square-foot loads that are permissible. This is taken into account by the American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) Standard A17.1, which has established five load classifications for freight elevators:

Class A. General Freight Loading by hand truck. Single items may not exceed 25% of the car-rated load. The rated load is based on 50 pounds per square foot (psf) (244 kg/m^2) of net inside platform area.

Class B. Motor Vehicle Loading. The elevator car will carry automobiles or automobile trucks. The rating is based on a load of 30 psf (146 kg/m^2) of net inside platform area.

Class C1. Industrial truck loading; truck carried.

Class C2. Industrial truck loading; truck not carried.

Class C3. Concentrated loading; no truck used; increments greater than 25% of rated capacity.

For classes C1, C2, and C3 the rated load is based on 50 psf (244 kg/m^2). Cars have automatic leveling.

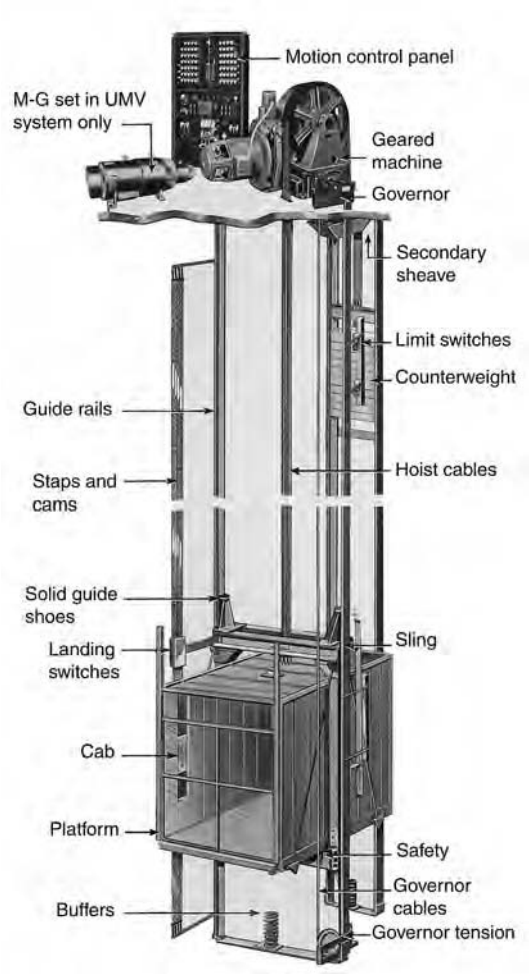


Fig. 32.3 *Components of a typical freight elevator installation utilizing a variable-voltage-controlled, geared traction machine. The sling that lifts the car is frequently arranged with double sheaves over which the hoisting ropes pass. This roping arrangement increases the mechanical advantage of the lifting ropes.*

32.5 FREIGHT ELEVATOR DESCRIPTION

As speeds are generally between 50 and 200 fpm (0.25 to 1.0 m/s), a geared-type traction machine or a hydraulic unit is used. The preferred system of control is collective, with a variable-voltage, dc supply, either unit multivoltage (UMV) or variable-voltage, variable-frequency (VVVF). If the car is used infrequently (fewer than five trips a day), economy is very important, accurate leveling is not essential, and a rougher ride is tolerable, then a two-speed ac rheostatic control may be used.

For low-rise installations, a hydraulic unit is most often employed. These, like the variable-voltage dc traction units, provide accurate control, smooth operation, and accurate automatic leveling. Hydraulic units rarely exceed 60 ft (18 m) in height and operate at speeds of up to 125 fpm (0.64 m/s). Accessories such as governors, safeties, and brakes are similar to those for passenger elevators previously described.

General-purpose freight elevators, whether traction (Fig. 32.4) or hydraulic (Fig. 32.5), in load ranges of up to 20,000 lb (9072 kg), are standard design items applicable to all types of commercial and industrial buildings. Heavier units are individually engineered. Units of 20,000 lb (9072 kg) and more require special safeties. As with passenger elevators, structural reactions for traction units are supplied by the manufacturer to the architect, who is responsible for providing adequate structural supports. This item is of great importance in larger car installations, because traction unit rails must be supported every few feet and additional steel provided to accomplish this.

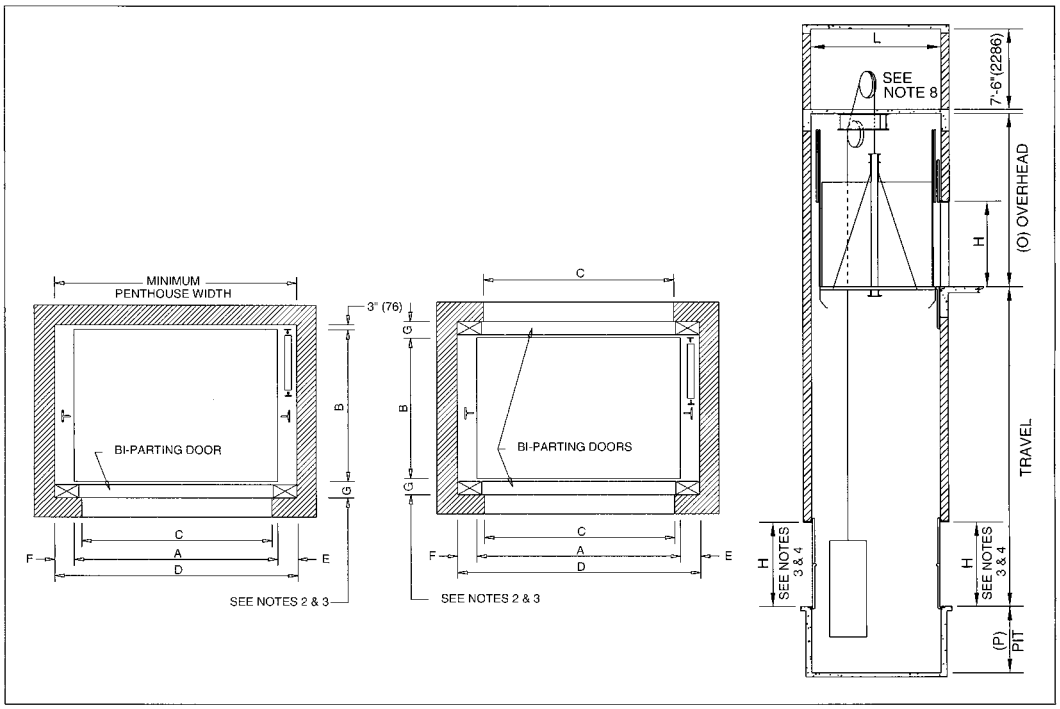
32.6 FREIGHT ELEVATOR CARS, GATES, AND DOORS

Cars for freight service are normally built of heavy-gauge steel with a multilayer wooden floor, the entire unit being designed for hard service. Guarded ceiling light fixtures are required. Car gates slide vertically and are a minimum of 6 ft (1.8 m) high. Hoistway doors are normally vertical lift, center-opening, manual or power-operated. Both car gate and hoistway doors are counterweighted and open fully to give complete floor and head clearance.

32.7 FREIGHT ELEVATOR COST DATA

The cost of a freight elevator installation, as with passenger elevator installation, is dependent upon many factors, principally capacity, type of control, use, and type of door operation.

Exact pricing, like specific selection, is outside the scope of this discussion. A reputable manufacturer or elevator consultant should be sought for such information. Some general remarks on pricing, however, follow:



LIGHT AND MEDIUM DUTY FREIGHT ELEVATORS					
CAPACITY	2500 lbs. (1134 kg)	3000 lbs. (1361 kg)	4000 lbs. (1814 kg)	6000 lbs. (2722 kg)	8000 lbs. (3629 kg)
A	5'-4" (1626)	6'-4" (1930)	6'-4" (1930)	8'-4" (2540)	8'-4" (2540)
B	7'-0" (2134)	8'-0" (2438)	8'-0" (2438)	10'-0" (3048)	10'-0" (3048)
C	5'-0" (1524)	6'-0" (1829)	6'-0" (1829)	8'-0" (2438)	8'-0" (2438)
D	7'-10"(2388)	8'-10"(2692)	8'-10"(2692)	10'-10"(3302)	10'-10"(3302)
E	1'-7" (483)	1'-7" (483)	1'-7" (483)	1'-7" (483)	1'-7" (483)
F	0'-11" (279)	0'-11" (279)	0'-11" (279)	0'-11" (279)	0'-11" (279)
L	13'-0" (3962)	14'-0" (4267)	14'-0" (4267)	14'-0" (4267)	14'-0" (4267)

HEAVY DUTY POWER TRUCK LOADING FREIGHT ELEVATORS					
CAPACITY	10,000 lbs. (4536 kg)	12,000 lbs. (5443 kg)	16,000 lbs. (7258 kg)	18,000 lbs. (8165 kg)	20,000 lbs. (9072 kg)
A	8'-4" (2540)	10'-4" (3150)	10'-4" (3150)	10'-4" (3150)	12'-4" (3759)
B	12'-0" (3658)	14'-0" (4267)	14'-0" (4267)	16'-0" (4877)	20'-4" (6198)
C	8'-0" (2438)	10'-0" (3048)	10'-0" (3048)	10'-0" (3048)	12'-0" (3658)
*D	11'-4" (3454)	13'-6" (4115)	14'-0" (4267)	14'-2" (4318)	16'-6" (5029)
E	1'-7" (483)	1'-7" (483)	1'-7" (483)	1'-7" (483)	1'-7" (483)
F	0'-11" (279)	0'-11" (279)	0'-11" (279)	0'-11" (279)	0'-11" (279)
L	14'-0" (4267)	15'-0" (4572)	15'-0" (4572)	17'-0" (5182)	21'-0" (6400)

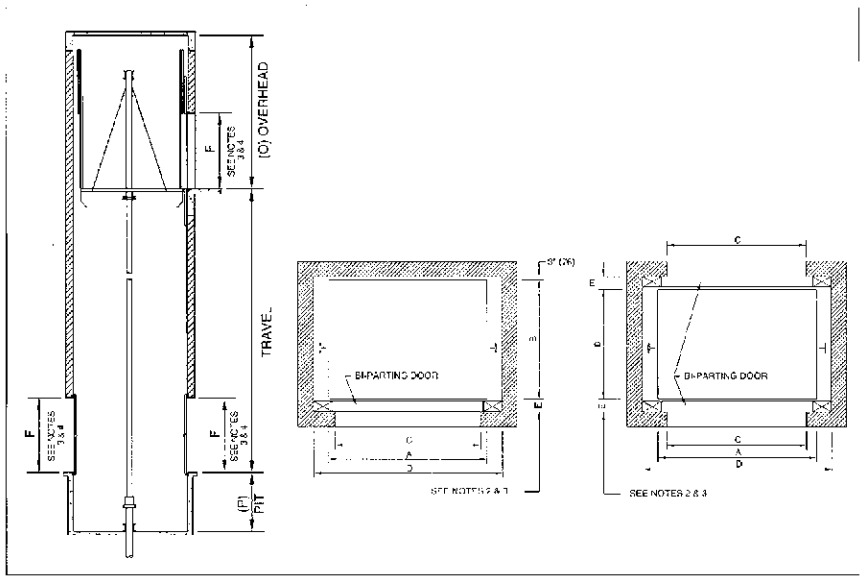
MINIMUM OVERHEAD & PIT DIMENSIONS FOR LIGHT & MEDIUM DUTY FREIGHT ELEVATORS				
SPEED	50 FPM (0.25 m/s)	75 FPM (0.38 m/s)	100 FPM (0.51 m/s)	200 FPM (1.02 m/s)
O	16'-0"(4877)	16'-0" (4877)	16'-0"(4877)	16'-0"(4877)
P	5'-6"(1676)	5'-6" (1676)	5'-6"(1676)	6'-0"(1829)

NOTES:
2. Dimension G = 5" (127) for regular type counterbalanced hoistway doors and 6 3/4" (172) for pass type counterbalanced hoistway doors.
3. Pass type hoistway doors are required when floor heights are less than 11'-0" (3353) for 7'-0" (2134) openings and less than 12'-6" (3810) for 8'-0" (2438) openings.
4. Dimension H = 7'-0" (2134) on light and medium duty and 8'-0" (2438) (or as required) for heavy-duty doors. Doors higher than 8'-0" (2438) require additional overhead.
8. 2:1 Roping recommended for heavy duty power truck loading freight elevators
* D dimension includes space required when vertical columns are added (inside hoistway) for rail support. If no columns required, D=A+E+F.

Fig. 32.4 *Typical dimensional data for traction-type freight elevators. (Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*

1. Variable-voltage-controlled equipment, depending on the type, costs 20% to 50% more than rheostatically controlled equipment.
2. Above a basic two-floor rise, the cost increases linearly with rise.
3. Electric door operation can increase the cost of a car installation 10% to 25%.

As an example of *comparative* pricing, using a nominal 100 (monetary units) for an 8000-lb (3630-kg), 75-fpm (0.38-m/s), four-floor, manual-door car with ac rheostatic control and automatic leveling, the same car with variable-voltage control, 150 fpm (0.76 m/s), and electrically operated doors would cost approximately 180.



LIGHT AND MEDIUM DUTY FREIGHT ELEVATORS

CAPACITY	2000 lbs. (907 kg)	3000 lbs. (1361 kg)	4000 lbs. (1814 kg)	5000 lbs. (2268 kg)	6000 lbs. (2722kg)	8000 lbs. (3629 kg)
A	5'-0"	5'-6"	6'-6"	8'-6"	8'-6"	8'-6"
	(1524)	(1676)	(1981)	(2591)	(2591)	(2591)
B	6'-0"	7'-0"	8'-0"	10'-0"	12'-0"	12'-0"
	(1829)	(2134)	(2438)	(3048)	(3658)	(3658)
C	4'-8"	5'-2"	6'-2"	8'-2"	8'-2"	8'-2"
	(1422)	(1575)	(1880)	(2490)	(2490)	(2490)
D: manual doors	6'-4"	6'-10"	7'-10"	9'-10"	10'-0"	10'-6"
	(1930)	(2083)	(2388)	(2997)	(3048)	(3200)
D: power doors	6'-10"	7'-4"	8'-4"	10'-4"	10'-6"	10'-6"
	(2083)	(2235)	(2540)	(3150)	(3200)	(3200)
O: 7'-0" door ht.	13'-2"	13'-2"	13'-2"	13'-2"	13'-2"	13'-2"
(2134)	(4013)	(4013)	(4013)	(4013)	(4013)	(4013)
P: 7'-0" door ht.	4'-0"	4'-0"	4'-0"	4'-6"	4'-6"	5'-0"
(2134)	(1219)	(1219)	(1219)	(1372)	(1372)	(1524)

HEAVY DUTY POWER TRUCK LOADING FREIGHT ELEVATORS

CAPACITY	10,000 lbs. (4536 kg)	12,000 lbs. (5443 kg)	16,000 lbs. (7258 kg)	18,000 lbs. (8165 kg)	20,000 lbs. (9072 kg)
A	10'-6"	10'-6"	10'-6"	10'-6"	12'-6"
	(3200)	(3200)	(3200)	(3200)	(3810)
B	14'-0"	14'-0"	16'-0"	16'-0"	20'-0"
	(4267)	(4267)	(4877)	(4877)	(6096)
C	10'-2"	10'-2"	10'-2"	10'-2"	12'-2"
	(3098)	(3098)	(3098)	(3098)	(3708)
D: manual doors	12'-6"	12'-6"	12'-6"	12'-6"	14'-6"
	(3810)	(3810)	(3810)	(3810)	(4420)
D: power doors	12'-6"	12'-6"	12'-6"	12'-6"	14'-6"
	(3810)	(3810)	(3810)	(3810)	(4420)
O: 7'-0" door ht.	13'-2"	13'-2"	13'-2"	13'-2"	13'-2"
(2134)	(4013)	(4013)	(4013)	(4013)	(4013)
O: 8'-0" door ht.	14'-2"	14'-2"	14'-2"	14'-2"	14'-2"
(2438)	(4318)	(4318)	(4318)	(4318)	(4318)
P: 7'-0" door ht.	5'-0"	6'-0"	6'-0"	6'-0"	6'-0"
(2134)	(1524)	(1829)	(1829)	(1829)	(1829)
P: 8'-0" door ht.	5'-0"	6'-0"	6'-0"	6'-0"	6'-0"
(2438)	(1524)	(1829)	(1829)	(1829)	(1829)

NOTES:
2. Dimension E = 5" (127) for regular type counterbalanced hoistway doors and 6¾" (172) for pass type counterbalanced hoistway doors.
3. Pass type hoistway doors are required when floor heights are less than 11'-0" (3353) for 7'-0" (2134) openings and less than 12'-6" (3810) for 8'-0" (2438) openings.
4. Layout and dimensions shown for freight elevators based on bi-parting counterbalanced type hoistway doors – dimension F.
5. Dimensions O and P are minimums based on car speeds up to 150 FPM (0.76 m/s).

Fig. 32.5 *Typical dimensional data for hydraulic freight elevators. (Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*

SPECIAL ELEVATOR DESIGNS

32.8 OBSERVATION CARS

By placing the traction lifting mechanism *behind* the car, attaching the car at the back, and using a glass-enclosed, observation-style car, a spectacular unit can be constructed that becomes an attraction in itself. Basic construction and examples are seen in Figs. 32.6, 32.7, and 32.8. If the back screen is treated properly, the car gives the impression of movement with no apparent motive force or machinery.

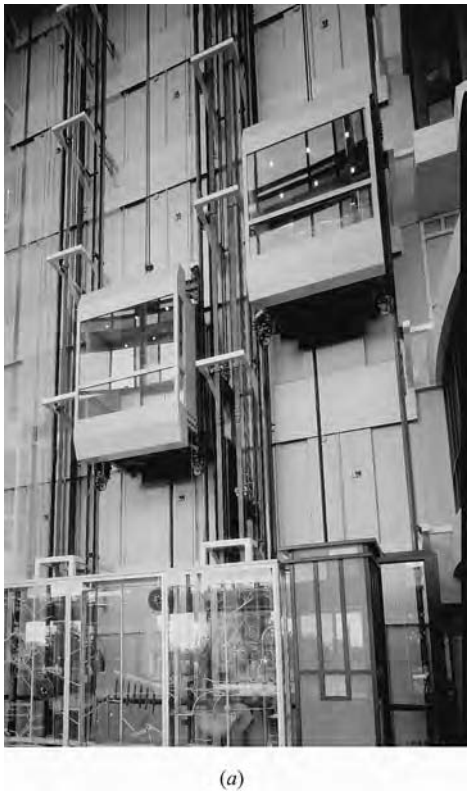


Fig. 32.6 *Details of a geared, traction-type observation elevator. (a) The glass-enclosed observation portion of this elevator faces the rear. The shaftway doors are seen in the wall behind the elevator. The traction ropes are also clearly seen above each elevator. (b) Plan drawing of the unit. Note that the counterweight is mounted at the side of the car so as to be essentially invisible and not detract from the relatively uncluttered view of the car in motion. (c) Vertical section of the installation, including the overhead machine room. (d) Notes applicable to drawings (b) and (c). (Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*

BASIC DIMENSIONS: TRACTION OBSERVATION ELEVATORS						
DIMENSION	CAPACITY					
	3000 lbs.		3500 lbs.		4500 lbs.	
	Option 2		Option 2		Option 2	
"DBG"	25"		31"		37"	
A	7' - 0"		7' - 0"		7' - 0"	
B	5' - 8"		6' - 6"		7' - 6"	
C	3' - 6"		3' - 6"		3' - 6"	
D	9' - 5"		9' - 5"		9' - 5"	
E	1' - 8"		1' - 8"		1' - 8"	
F	9"		9"		9"	
G	4' - 7 1/2"		5' - 1 1/2"		5' - 7 1/2"	
H	5' - 3 1/2"		5' - 9 1/2		6' - 3 1/2"	
J	10 3/4"		1' - 2 3/4"		1' - 8 3/4"	
K	NA		NA		NA	
L	NA		NA		NA	
M	3' - 4 1/2"		3' - 10 1/2"		4' - 4 1/2"	
N	7' - 6"		7' - 6"		7' - 6"	
S	13' - 8"		13' - 8"		13' - 8"	
SPEED	200 fpm	350 fpm	200 fpm	350 fpm	200 fpm	350 fpm
*O(1)	14' - 8"	15' - 4"	14' - 8"	15' - 4"	15' - 2"	15' - 6"
**O(1)	15' - 2"	15' - 10"	15' - 2"	15' - 10"	15' - 2"	15' - 6"
*P	5' - 0"	5' - 6"	5' - 0"	5' - 6"	5' - 4"	5' - 10"
**P	5' - 4"	5' - 10"	5' - 4"	5' - 10"	5' - 4"	5' - 10"

NOTE: * Dimension when no shroud is used.
** Dimension when 2' - 0" shroud is used.
(1) Based on standard height cab (8' - 0" to underside of canopy).
→ The relationships between dimensions G, H, J and K are based on an assumed thickness of 8" for the rear wall of the hoistway.
→ The hoistway dimensions shown are based on a counterweight not requiring safeties.

(*a*)

VERTICAL REACTIONS	TRACTION ELEVATOR CAPACITY			
	2500 lbs.	3000 lbs.	3500 lbs.	4500 lbs.
R1	17500 lbs.	18900 lbs	20900 lbs.	24400 lbs.
R2	13900 lbs.	15000 lbs.	16300 lbs.	19100 lbs.

NOTE: Reactions include allowance for impact but DO NOT include weight of concrete slab. Reactions are for preliminary use only. Exact reactions will be provided when exact conditions are known.

(*b*)

Fig. 32.7 *(a) Dimensions applicable to drawings (b) and (c) in Figure 32.6. (b) Vertical reactions required for structural design of the elevator in Figure 32.6. (Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*

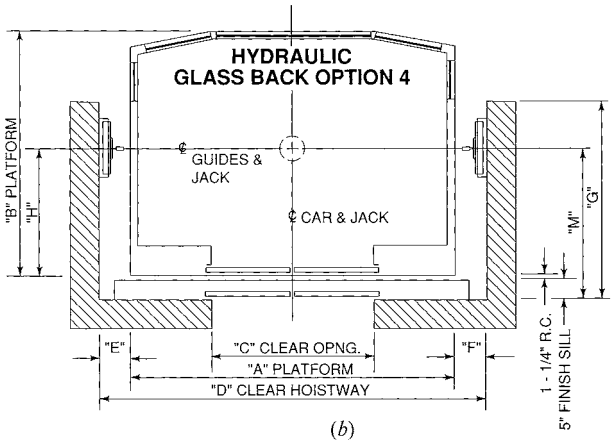
The same effect can be accomplished by using a single-jack hydraulic lift mechanism and a cantilevered car, as in Figs. 32.3 and 32.5. Observation cars, which are placed on the *outside* of a wall, do not require shaft space. Thus, in addition to an interesting and attractive appearance, they increase the amount of usable interior space, thereby effecting a considerable cost economy.

32.9 INCLINED ELEVATORS

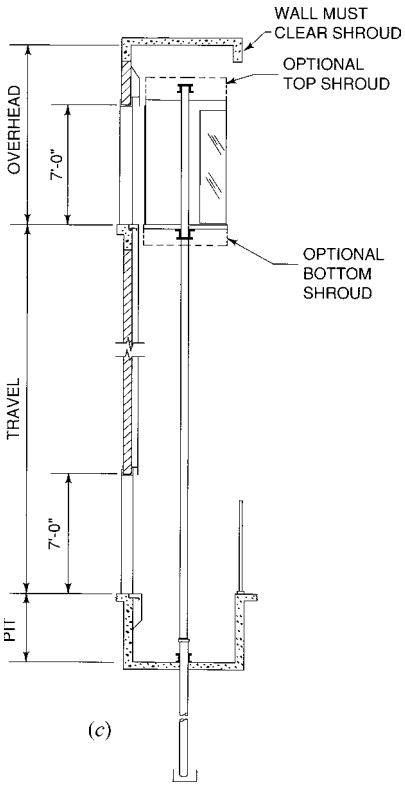
Although elevators are normally conceived as traveling vertically, this is not necessarily so. Slanted or inclined elevators have been constructed in numerous locations where a building is built onto an inclined surface, usually a hillside or mountainside. One such elevator is shown in Fig. 32.9. Another



(a)



(b)



(c)

BASIC DIMENSIONS: HYDRAULIC OBSERVATION ELEVATORS				
	CAPACITY			
Dimension	2500 lbs.	3000 lbs.	3500 lbs.	
	OPTION 1,2,3,4	OPTION 1,2,3,4	OPTION 1,2,3,4	OPTION 5
A	7' - 0"	7' - 0"	7' - 0"	7' - 0"
B	5' - 3"	5' - 11"	6' - 6"	7' - 2"
C	3' - 6"	3' - 6"	3' - 6"	3' - 6"
D	8' - 4"	8' - 4"	8' - 4"	8' - 4"
E	8"	8"	8"	8"
F	8"	8"	8"	8"
G	4' - 3"	4' - 7"	4' - 10 1/2"	4' - 10 1/2"
H	2' - 8 3/4"	3' - 0 3/4"	3' - 4 1/4"	3' - 4 1/4"
M	3' - 3"	3' - 7"	3' - 10 1/2"	3' - 10 1/2"

Basic dimensions outlined above are based upon conventional inground jack application.

(d)

HYDRAULIC MACHINE ROOM SIZES (Typically recommended)		
SIZE	CAPACITY	
	2500 lbs. & 3000 lbs.	3500lbs.
WIDTH	9' - 0"	9' - 6"
LENGTH	6' - 8"	6' - 9"
DOOR	3' - 6" × 7' - 0"	
NOTE: Hydraulic machine room location should be at the lowest landing adjacent to the hoistway. Consult your Montgomery KONE Professional for alternative locations and optimum sizes. Material above is typical for 150 FPM speed.		

(e)

Fig. 32.8 *Hydraulic observation elevator. (a) The hydraulic plunger is clearly visible below each car against the background of the shaftway doors. (b) Dimensioned sectional drawing of the car and its enclosure. (c) Vertical section of the elevator travel. (d) Dimensions applicable to drawings (b) and (c). (e) Dimensional data for the required machine room. Note that in drawing (c), the machine room is not shown because it can be remote from the elevators, connected only by piping. (Courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*

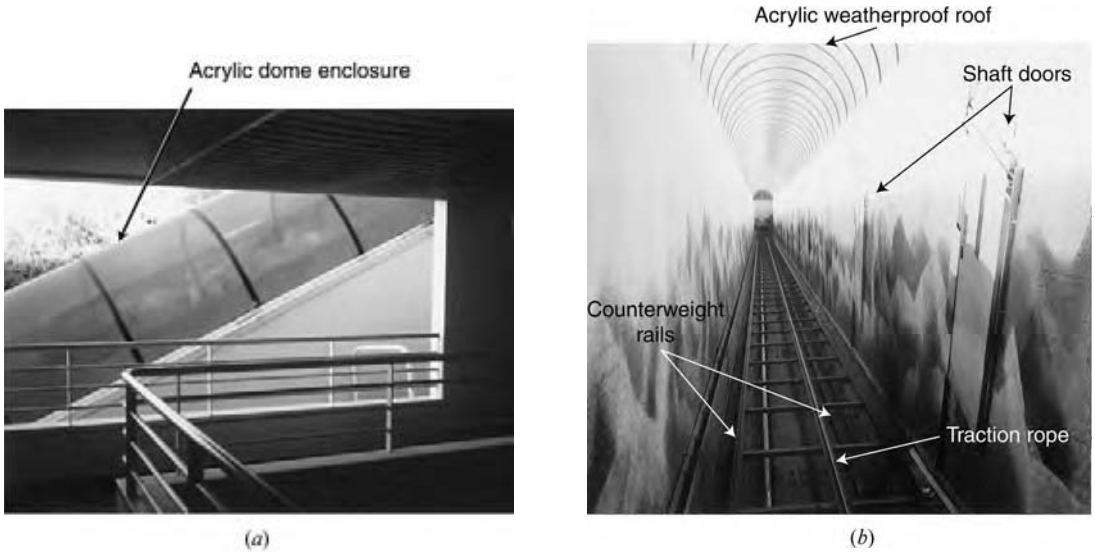


Fig. 32.9 *(a) Exterior inclined elevator enclosure, seen from inside the 14-story hotel it serves in Zichron Yaakov, Israel. The shaft is inclined at 26° and contains a single 10-passenger car. (b) Inclined elevator shaft containing rails (tracks) for the elevator, its counterweight, and the traction ropes. Shaft doors are swinging type, interlocked with the car. (Photos by B. Stein.)*



Fig. 32.10 *The St. Louis Gateway Arch has a 10-passenger inclined elevator in each leg. Placement of doors, arrangement of the counterweight, and size of the shaft all depend upon the angle of incline. The car moves 82 ft (25 m) horizontally during its 386 ft (118 m) of total travel at an incline of approximately 12°. (Photo courtesy of Bethlehem Steel Corporation, which supplied the elevator rope for this installation.)*

well-known example is shown in Fig. 32.10. The motive mechanism used varies with the angle of inclination. In most instances, the car rides on inclined rails and is pulled up by a traction cable. It is counterweighted either by a weight riding on another set of rails (Fig. 32.9), in the case of a single car, or by the weight of another car in a two-car installation.

32.10 RACK AND PINION ELEVATORS

These operate on the straightforward principle of a rotating cogged-wheel pinion attached to a vertical rack. Rotation of the pinion forces the attached car up and down along the rack (see Fig. 32.11). The advantages of this system are its inherent simplicity and safety, unlimited rise, and low maintenance and operating costs, plus minimum space requirements. The last characteristic was primarily responsible for the selection of a rack and pinion design for the 210-ft-rise (64-m) emergency elevator installed as part of the renovation and rehabilitation of the Statue of Liberty in 1986.

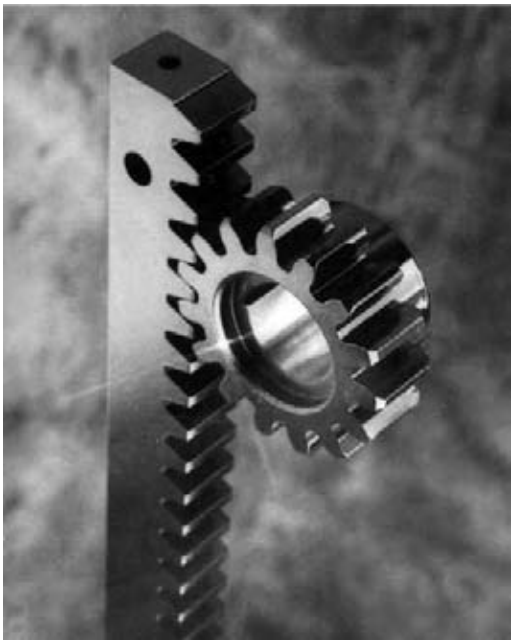


Fig. 32.11 *The basis of the rack and pinion drive is simply a driven pinion on a stationary rack; rotation of the pinion forces the structure attached to the pinion to move along the rack. (Courtesy of Alimak Elevator Co.)*

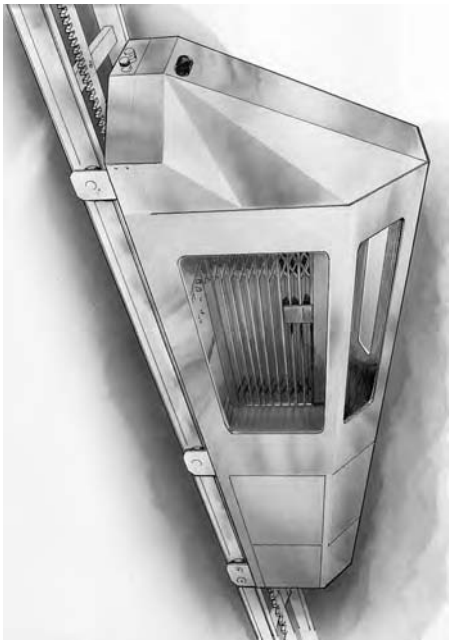


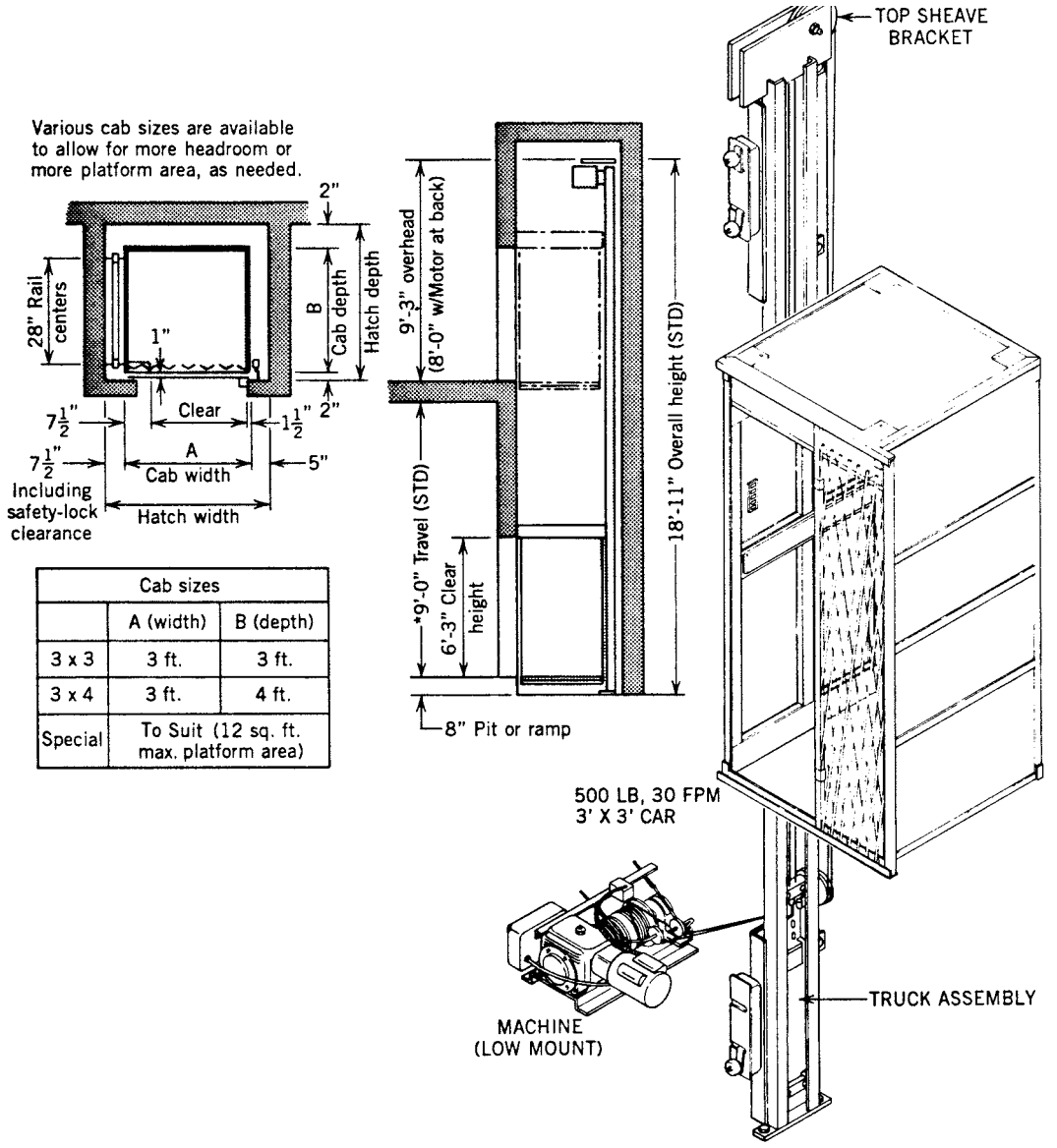
Fig. 32.12 *The rack and pinion principle is used in the very small Statue of Liberty emergency elevator. The rack extends the entire length of the shaft, and the car moves along the rack, driven by two motorized pinions below the passenger compartment. (Courtesy of Alimak Elevator Co.)*

That elevator is used primarily to evacuate victims of heart attacks. Carrying them down the 171-step spiral staircase that connects the main upper landing to the observation platform in the crown is obviously not practical. The tight headroom available—less than 9 ft (2.7 m)—ruled out a traction unit, as did the extremely tight shaftway, which measures only 2 ft, ½ in. × 4 ft, 10 in. (0.62 by 1.47 m). The car itself (see Fig. 32.12) measures only 1 ft, 11 in. × 3 ft, 10 in (0.58 by 1.17 m) (outside dimensions). Space was so tight that the drive was divided between two motors, both of which are mounted under the passenger compartment. Rack and pinion lifts are used both indoors and outdoors, primarily in industrial environments, for both passengers and material vertical transport.

32.11 RESIDENTIAL ELEVATORS AND CHAIR LIFTS

Although the special needs of the handicapped have been widely and officially recognized in legislated requirements only since the late 1970s, the elevator industry has been providing for the handicapped for years on a voluntary basis. Small private-residence elevators can double as wheelchair lifts and are available in a wide range of designs, including winding-drum units (Figs. 32.13 and 32.14), roped hydraulics, and worm and screw units. Standard traction designs are used infrequently due to the overhead space requirement. Similarly, standard hydraulic units requiring a plunger bore hole are rarely used.

In recognition of the fact that most residential elevators (and elevators intended primarily for use of the disabled in public and private buildings) are low-speed, limited-load units, the ASME developed a new section for the elevator code (A17.1b part XXV) to cover such units. The section applies to Limited Use/Limited Application (LU/LA) elevators, defined as "a power passenger elevator where the use and application is limited by size, capacity, speed and rise, intended primarily to provide vertical transportation for people with physical disabilities." The new code section goes on to limit LU/LA



Cab sizes		
	A (width)	B (depth)
3 x 3	3 ft.	3 ft.
3 x 4	3 ft.	4 ft.
Special	To Suit (12 sq. ft. max. platform area)	

Fig. 32.13 *Isometric drawing of a typical residential elevator of the winding-drum design. Units of this type are usually limited to 500-lb (227-kg) car capacity, 40-ft (12.2-m) rise, and 30-fpm (0.15-m/s) speed. The car is rigidly attached in cantilever fashion to a rolling truck, which is raised and lowered by cables attached to the winding drum. The driving motor and winding drum shown here at the base of the assembly can be installed at any floor stop along the hoistway or overhead. Control is normally pushbutton automatic with limit-switch leveling. A 6-in. (150-mm) pit is required at the bottom of the hoistway. Door interlock, cable failure, and overrun safeties are standard items in such installations, which must meet elevator code requirements. (Courtesy of Waupaca Elevator Co., Inc.)*

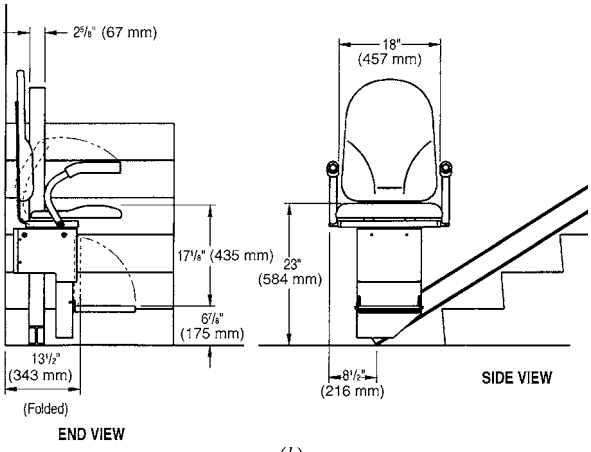
elevators to a maximum size of 18 ft^2 (1.7 m^2), a load of 1400 lb (635 kg), a rise of 25 ft (7.6 m), and a speed of 30 fpm (0.15 m/s). Due to these limitations, safety requirements are different from those of standard traction elevators, drives may be different (e.g., winding-drum cable lifts), space requirements are smaller, and overall costs are considerably reduced. Elevators that exceed the defined limitations must conform to the requirements of the basic ANSI/ASME 17.1 elevator code.



Fig. 32.14 *Winding-drum residential elevator specifically designed for use by handicapped persons. The car floor area is 12 ft² (1.1 m²), which accommodates a wheelchair plus another passenger. Note that the car is arranged with front and back access for maximum flexibility. (Courtesy of Waupaca Elevator Co., Inc.)*



(*a*)



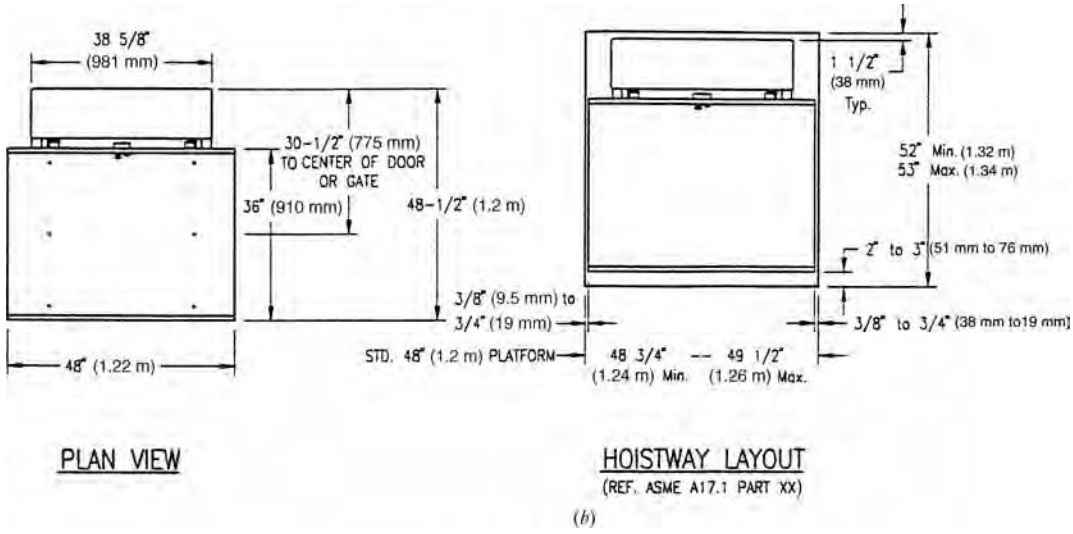
(*b*)

Fig. 32.15 (*a*) *Chair lift with a rack and pinion drive permits the lift to negotiate a turn in the stairs. This unit is limited to a live load of 300 lb (135 kg), runs at 25 fpm (0.13 m/s), climbs at any incline up to 51°, and is driven by a ½-hp (0.4-kW) motor. Maximum rise is 60 ft (18 m).* (*b*) *Dimensional data for the chair lift shown. (Courtesy of Access Industries, Inc.)*

Chair lifts and wheelchair platform lifts also come in a variety of designs. The chair lift shown in Fig. 32.15 uses a rack and pinion drive that permits it to negotiate a turn, as illustrated. For straight stair lifts, a winding-drum design similar to that used for residential elevators is often used. Other drives in use include worm gear and chain and screw worm and cog. The drive selection depends upon the load, rise, duty, and, of course, price. The wheelchair platform lift illustrated in Fig. 32.16 uses a ball screw drive. Other designs use some of the drives listed previously, including a roped-hydraulic drive for units requiring a large rise. The hydraulic scissor-jack type of wheelchair platform lift is most frequently found in public and institutional buildings because it is particularly applicable to short-rise, heavy-load,



(a)



(b)

Fig. 32.16 *The wheelchair platform lift shown in (a) is designed for a maximum load of 750 lb (340 kg) and a maximum lifting height of 171 in. (4.34 m). The drive is a motor-driven recirculating ball screw unit for low-rise buildings and a 1:2 roped-hydraulic lift for high-rise buildings. Controls are mounted at the top of the right post of the gate frame. The unit is a straight-through design with gates at both ends. Dimensions are shown in (b). (Courtesy of Access Industries, Inc.)*

frequent-duty applications and requires minimal maintenance.

All of these units are covered by various sections of the elevator code and must be installed in accordance with code requirements, including safeties and controls. Residential units are normally arranged to operate on 120-V ac, although heavy-duty units may require 240-V service.

32.12 INNOVATIVE MOTOR DRIVES

A new elevator drive design developed by Otis utilizes a linear induction motor built into the counterweight frame. Motive power is therefore supplied at the counterweight, thus entirely eliminating the overhead traction machine and machine room. The inherent architectural, construction, energy usage, maintenance, and cost advantages of this elegant design make it an extremely attractive option for building designers. A schematic diagram of the design is shown in Fig. 32.17. Other proprietary innovations have led to the common use of traction elevator systems that require no penthouse machine room, with the drive motor being incorporated into the hoistway space.

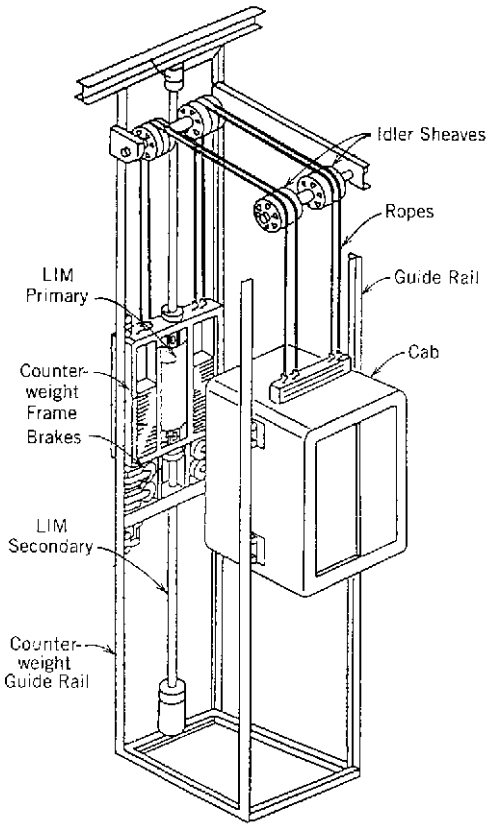


Fig. 32.17 *Schematic drawing of Otis Japan's linear induction motor (LIM) elevator design. Because the motor is built into the counterweight and supplies motive power linearly (vertically), the conventional overhead rotary traction machine is entirely eliminated, as is the machine room. The system operates more efficiently, quietly, and smoothly than the conventional design. (Courtesy of Otis Elevator.)*

MATERIAL HANDLING

32.13 GENERAL INFORMATION

The material-handling equipment briefly discussed herein finds application in commercial and institutional buildings. Industrial materials handling is an entirely separate subject beyond the scope of this section.

The need to transport material within a building has always existed and, until about the late 1970s, was done largely manually with mechanical assistance. Thus, offices used messengers, and hospitals used dumbwaiters, service elevators, conveyors, and chutes. The single exception to this situation was the extensive use of pneumatic tube systems in large stores. Today's systems accomplish the same end—that is, the transfer of materials—but do so automatically and, in general, much more rapidly. The first cost of these systems is frequently high, but the reduction in labor and the increase in speed generally yield a short payback period combined with a marked rise in efficiency.

Modern commercial material-handling systems can be grouped into four broad categories:

1. *Elevator-type systems.* These are vertical-lift, car-type systems including the common dumbwaiter and ejection lifts (which are basically automated dumbwaiters).
2. *Conveyor-type systems.* These include horizontal and vertical conveyors.
3. *Pneumatic systems.* These include sophisticated pneumatic tube systems and pneumatic trash and linen systems.
4. *Other systems.* Systems that do not fit easily into any of the previously mentioned categories, including automated messenger carts and automatic track-type container delivery systems.

32.14 MANUAL LOAD/UNLOAD DUMBWAITERS

Dumbwaiters often provide the most convenient and economical means of transporting relatively small articles between levels. In department stores, such units transport merchandise from stock areas to selling or pickup counters; in hospitals, dumbwaiters often transport food, drugs, linens, and other small items. In multilevel restaurants and the like, dumbwaiters are almost always used for delivery of food from the kitchen and for return of soiled dishes.

Dumbwaiter cars are limited to a platform area of 9 ft^2 (0.84 m^2) and a maximum height of 4 ft (1.2 m). The car may be, and frequently is, compartmented by shelves. Normal speed ratings are 50 to 150 fpm (0.25 to 0.75 m/s), with a capacity of up to 500 lb (227 kg). Cars may be of the traction (counterweighted) or drum (direct pickup) type. Control is normally "call and send" between two floors, although multibutton selector switch or central dispatching arrangements are available for applications with more than two floors. Loading may be at floor, counter, or any other specified height (see Fig. 32.18 for typical layouts).

32.15 AUTOMATED DUMBWAITERS

These units are also known as *ejection lifts* because of the method of delivery (Fig. 32.19). They find their best application in institutions and other facilities that require rapid vertical movement of relatively large items. Thus, this device is ideally suited for delivery of food carts, linens, dishes, bulk-liquid containers, and so on. The load can be a cart (Fig. 32.20) or a basket (see Fig. 32.23) containing the items being transported. At the delivery terminal, the item must be picked up and transferred horizontally to its final destination (if remote from the delivery point). Loading can be manual or automatic. Sophisticated ejection lifts use programmable controllers for automated loading, dispatch, and ejection; electronic sensors to determine whether space is available for a load; and automated return of the unloaded cart.

Payload capacity for cart systems is available up to 1000 lb (454 kg) and car speeds up to 350 fpm (1.8 m/s). Maximum cart size is approximately 32 in. W × 68 in. L × 70 in. H (0.8 by 1.7 by 1.8 m). The round-trip time for a 200-fpm (1-m/s) unit with five loading stations is approximately 2 minutes. Major design considerations for these units are their relatively high cost and the large shaft area required.

32.16 HORIZONTAL CONVEYORS

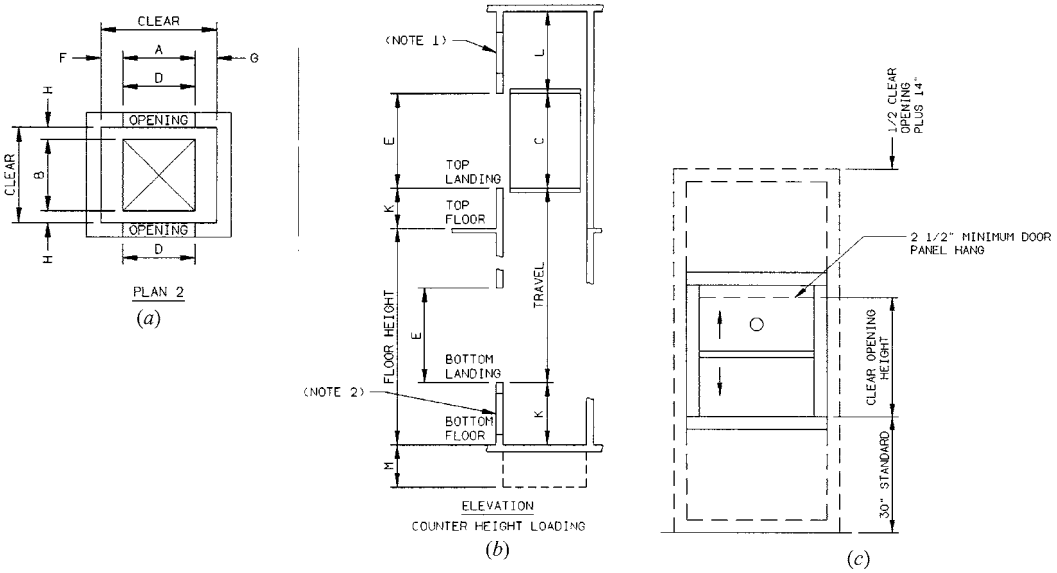
Although horizontal conveyors find their best application in industrial facilities, they are also usable in commercial buildings such as mail-order houses, which require a continuous flow of material. Restrictions in application stem from inflexible right-of-way requirements, noise generation, and a degree of danger if conveyors are left unprotected or exposed to unauthorized persons. The cost is relatively low, and the capacity is virtually unlimited.

32.17 SELECTIVE VERTICAL CONVEYORS

The action of this system is similar to that of the automated dumbwaiter in that the system transfers materials vertically and automatically loads and unloads, but the similarity ends there. Vertical conveyors are constructed with a moving continuous-loop chain to which are attached carriages that pick up and deliver tote boxes (called *trays*). At sending and receiving stations, the operator places the items to be moved (up to 60 lb [27 kg]) in the tote box, "addresses" the box in one of several ways depending on the system, and places it at a pickup point (Fig. 32.21). The first empty carriage on the chain picks up the box and delivers it to its address. Functions in modern vertical conveyors are monitored by a microprocessor, which tracks system operation and furnishes maintenance data and operational diagnostics. Drawbacks of this system are the large shaft required, noise, and cumbersome arrangements when interfacing with horizontal conveyors. The cost is moderate.

32.18 PNEUMATIC TUBES

This well-tried system will undoubtedly continue to be used where physical transfer of an item is required. Where information must be moved, electronic data reproduction has largely replaced



RATED LOAD (lb)	VOL. ■ ft^3	COUNTER HEIGHT LOADING DIMENSIONS in.											
		CAR			DOORS *		HOISTWAY						
		A WIDTH	B DEPTH	C HEIGHT	D WIDTH	E HEIGHT	F	G	H	J	K ▲	L	M **
PLAN 1 OR 2 (MACHINE OVERHEAD OR BELOW) RATED SPEED 50–150 fpm													
APPLICATION – BULK SUPPLY, FOOD SERVICE (TRAY) & MATERIAL HANDLING													
100	8.33	20	24	30	20	30	6 1/2	7	5	3	30 ▲	48	6
200	12	24	24	36	36	24	6 1/2	7	5	3	30 ▲	48	12
300	17.5	30	24	42	30	42	6 1/2	7	5	3	30 ▲	48	18
400	30	36	30	48	48	48	6 1/2	7	5	3	30 ▲	48	24
500	36	36	36	48	48	48	6 1/2	7	5	3	30 ▲	48	24

* ONE OPENING MUST BE LARGER THAN THE CAR SIZE SO THE ASSEMBLED CAR CAN BE PLACED INTO, OR REMOVED FROM THE DUMBWAITER HOISTWAY.

** DEPTH OF PIT REQUIRED IF SLIDE DOWN TYPE DOORS ARE USED.

● 48 in. IF BI-PARTING HOISTWAY DOORS ARE USED.

▲ IF BASEMENT MACHINE (DRUM OR TRACTION) 42 in.

■ CAR SIZES ARE OPTIONAL UP TO 9 ft^2 OF FLOOR AREA AND UP TO 48 in. HIGH.

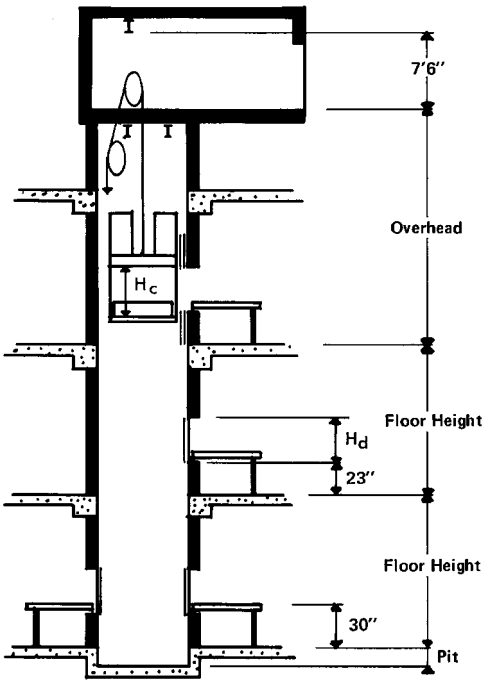
NOTES
1. 2'-0" X 2'-0" ACCESS DOOR IF MACHINE ABOVE.
2. 2'-0" X 2'-0" ACCESS DOOR IF MACHINE BELOW.

(d)

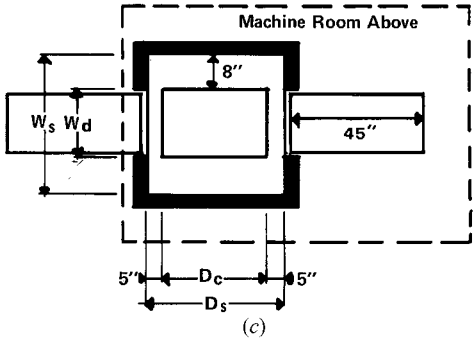
Fig. 32.18 *Typical layout of a counter-height dumbwaiter with manual doors. The shaft openings (a, b) may be single (one side) or dual access. Doors can be biparting (c), slide up, or slide down. In addition to the sizes shown in the table (d), light-load cars rated 25 and 50 lb (11 to 23 kg) at 50 fpm (0.25 m/s) are available in standard designs. (Reproduced with permission of National Elevator Industry, Inc., 185 Bridge Plaza N., Fort Lee, NJ 07024; copyrighted 1992, Vertical Transportation Standards.)*



(a)



(b)



(c)

TOTE-MATIC

Lift Model	Capacity	Inside Car Dimensions			Inside Saft Dimensions		Hoistway Door Frame Dimensions		Pit (a)	Overhead (a)	Suggested Vertical Transportation Speed	
	Lbs.	WC	Dc	Hc	Ws	Ds	Wd	Hd			Landings	Feet per Minute
Tote-Matic CC-2	100	20"	31"	37"	40"	41"	20"	34"	12"	13'4"	7-10 4-6 2-3	150 100 50

(a) These figures must meet the requirements of ANSI/ASME 17.1 and local codes.

(d)

Fig. 32.19 *This automated dumbwaiter or vertical ejection lift is designed to eject (unload) a container automatically at a preselected station. (Note the dispatching station to the right of the doors in a.) The tote box is carried on an ejection conveyor, which electrically senses arrival at its destination and effects ejection. Station doors are automatically electrically operated. The dumbwaiter car drive mechanism is a counterweighted traction drive. Car capacity is 100 lb (45 kg), although containers are normally limited to 50 lb (23 kg) for ease of handling. Car speeds (see part d) are normally 50 to 150 fpm (0.25 to 0.75 m/s). A typical hoistway section (b) and plan (c) are shown. Vertical travel is not limited. Dimensions are provided in (d). (Courtesy of Courion Industries, Inc.)*

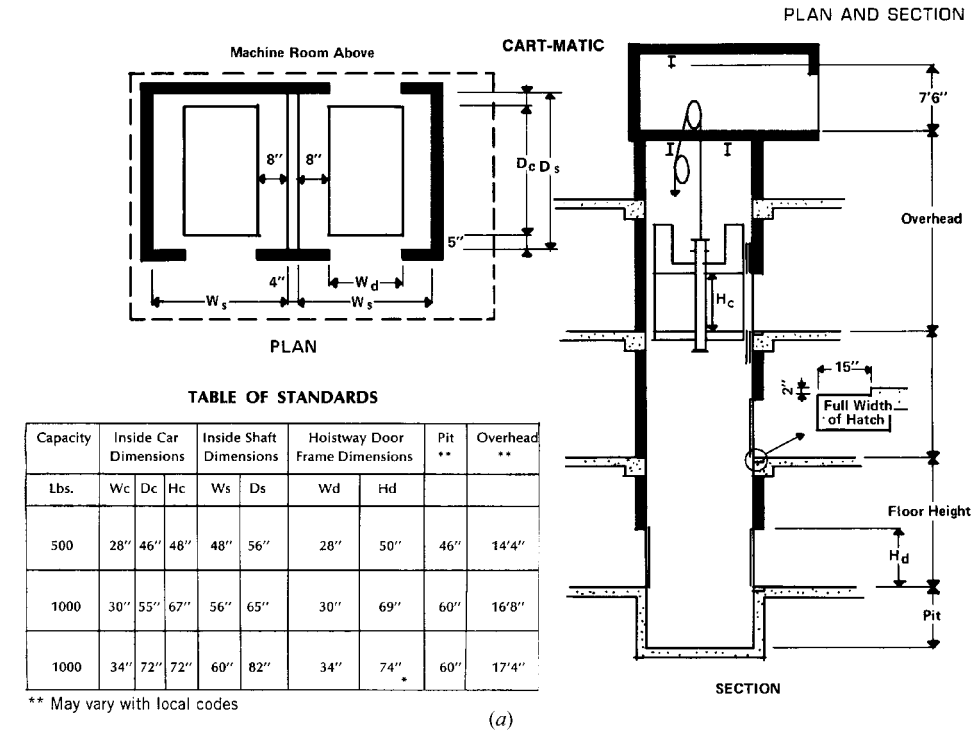


TABLE OF STANDARDS

Capacity	Inside Car Dimensions			Inside Shaft Dimensions		Hoistway Door Frame Dimensions		Pit **	Overhead **
Lbs.	Wc	Dc	Hc	Ws	Ds	Wd	Hd		
500	28″	46″	48″	48″	56″	28″	50″	46″	14′4″
1000	30″	55″	67″	56″	65″	30″	69″	60″	16′8″
1000	34″	72″	72″	60″	82″	34″	74″ *	60″	17′4″

** May vary with local codes

(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

Fig. 32.20 *(a) Plan, section, and dimensions for a vertical ejection lift system (automated dumbwaiter). (b) Open ejection-lift unit showing the cart ejection mechanism. Shaftway doors are vertical bi-parting. (c) The same unit being loaded with food carts and dispatched to the various floors of a hospital. At the upper floors the carts are rolled away by attendants. Later, the lifts are used to return soiled dishes and trays. (Courtesy of Courion Industries, Inc.)*

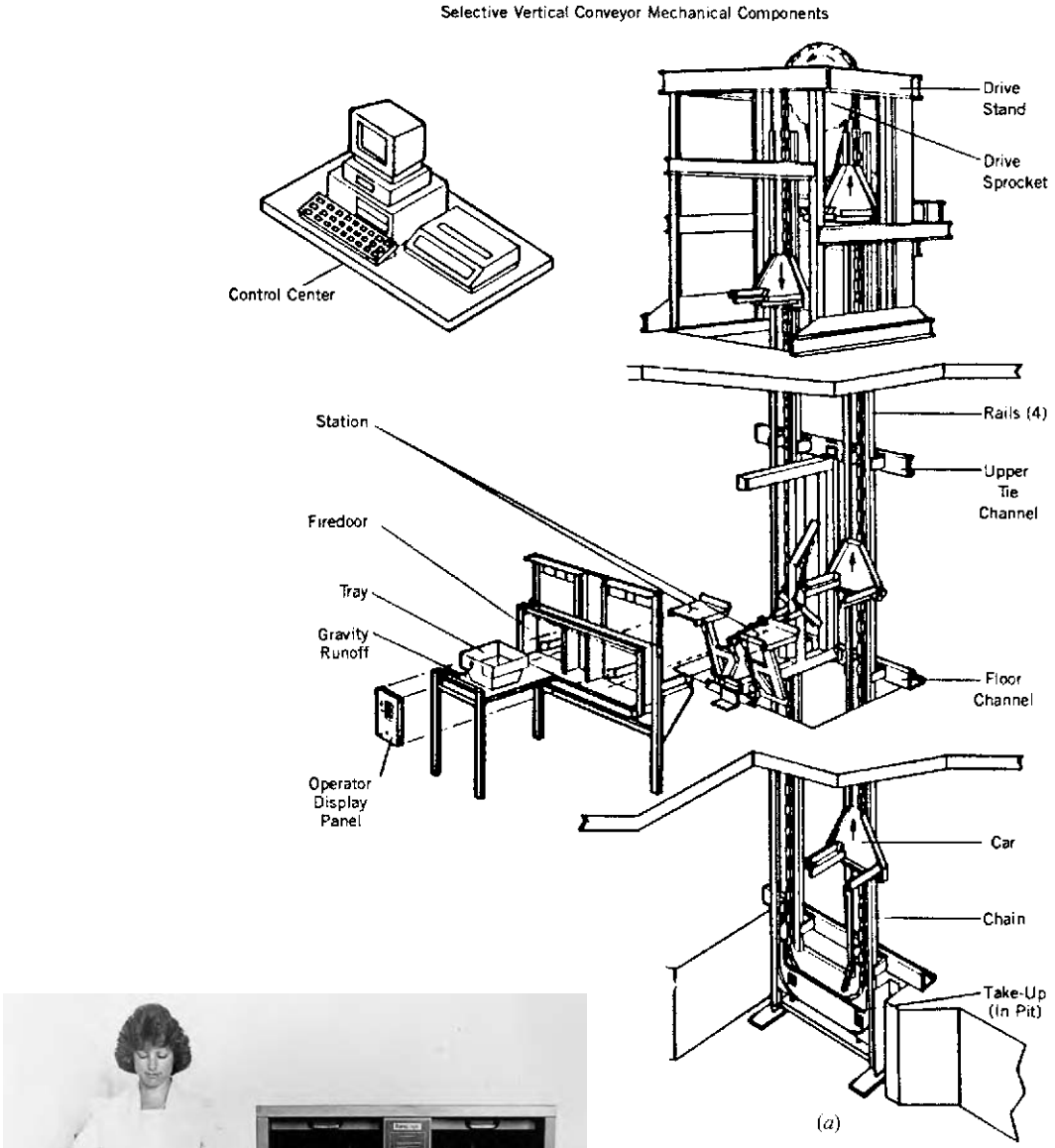


Fig. 32.21 *(a) System diagram showing the operation of a selective vertical conveyor. Tote box addressing and dispatching can be accomplished remotely from the control center. (b) Typical sending and receiving terminal. Stations are arranged vertically in a common shaftway. Each station contains a keypad for addressing and dispatching boxes. (Courtesy of TransLogic Corp.)*

the transfer of pieces of paper between two points. Pneumatic tube systems are available with a 2¼-to-6-in. (57-to-152-mm) range of tube diameters (special shapes are also used) and with single or multiple loops.

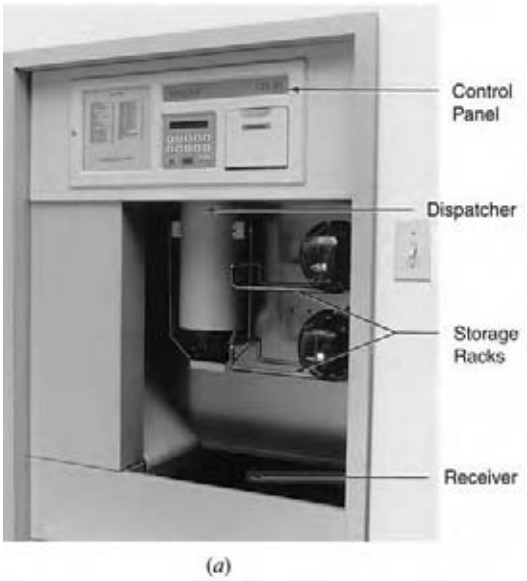
Whereas older systems were generally pressurized using a single large, noisy compressor, newer systems are computer-controlled, utilize a small blower in each of the zones, operate basically on vacuum but also on pressure, are relatively quiet, and are capable of being constructed in unlimited system length. Carriers travel at 25 fps (7.6 m/s). The computerized control center provides information and control of all system components, including status, traffic data, station assignments, scheduling, and the like. Over all, pneumatic tube systems perform their task reliably, rapidly, and efficiently at relatively low cost if installed during initial building construction. Typical system components are shown in Fig. 32.22.

32.19 PNEUMATIC TRASH AND LINEN SYSTEMS

The purpose of this system is to rapidly move bagged or packaged trash and/or linens from numerous outlying stations to a central collecting point. Health codes require separate tubes for trash and linens. Linen systems are found generally in hospitals; trash systems in various facilities, frequently in conjunction with compactors. The system is basically a network of large pipes, negatively pressurized, with numerous loading stations throughout the building. Pipe sizes are 16, 18, or 20 in. (406, 457, 508 mm), operating at high static pressure. A system normally can handle only one unit load at a time, but moves it so quickly (20 to 30 fps [6.1 to 9.1 m/s]) that system capacity is large and delays are not encountered. Material placed into a loading station is picked up as soon as the previous load clears. Compressors are large and very noisy, requiring considerable space and acoustical isolation. In addition to the main vacuum system, a high-pressure air line is required to operate the doors, and sprinkler heads must be installed every few floors. Overall costs are low to moderate. For the specific task performed, a cheaper and more efficient transfer technique is difficult to find.

32.20 AUTOMATED CONTAINER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

This useful arrangement employs captive and secure containers locked onto a motorized carriage that, in turn, is locked onto a track system. Power for the motor in the carriage is picked off a third rail at 24 V dc. The entire assembly moves horizontally



(a)



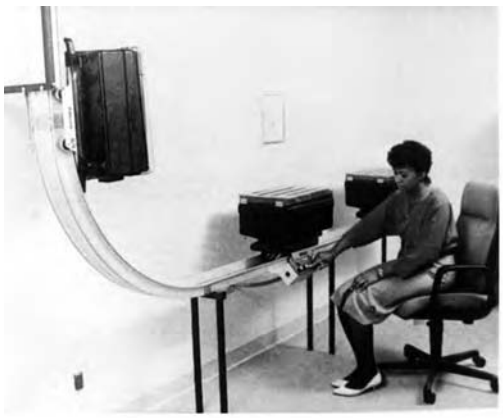
(b)

Fig. 32.22 *(a) The recessed tube station illustrated is a full-facility combined sending and receiving point. Dispatching and receiving share the same pipe but operate independently and automatically. Arriving carriers (b) are decelerated by an air cushion and drop into the front bin on arrival. (b) Carriers are typically 3¾ in. D × 15½ in. L and 5¾ in. D × 16 in L (95 × 394 mm and 146 × 406 mm) and are made of impact-resistant transparent polycarbonate plastic. Liners are used with fragile items. The bands around the carriers that maintain the air seal in the transport tubes are replaceable. (Courtesy of TransLogic Corp.)*

or vertically with equal ease. Containers move at a constant 120 fpm (0.6 m/s) horizontally, but more slowly on rises—depending upon the container load and the steepness of the rise. Containers are available in a number of shapes and volumes to suit the particular installation requirements. Two standard sizes are approximately 18 in. × 6 in. × 13 in. (457 × 152 × 330 mm) narrow profile and 18 in. × 12 in. × 8 in. (457 × 305 × 203 mm) low profile. The normal payload is 20 lb (9 kg), although for horizontal runs only, considerably heavier loads can be carried.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Fig. 32.23 *(a) One of many designs of a carriage and container for an electric track vehicle system. This design uses a pivoted container that is maintained in a vertical position regardless of the carriage position, which may be horizontal, vertical sloped, or even inverted. (b) Dispatching and receiving station for a track vehicle system. (Courtesy of TransLogic Corp.)*

In simple single- or dual-track point-to-point or loop systems, right-of-way conflicts cannot occur, and routing is simply a matter of addressing the car. For complex systems involving loops and branches, routing is decided by a central computerized controller that finds the shortest route for each car (up to 250 cars per system), side-tracks, parks cars, and, in effect, operates a miniature railroad-type system. The system is easily added onto a structure as a retrofit operation because of track flexibility and small size. Its major drawback is its high cost. Components are shown in Fig. 32.23.

32.21 AUTOMATED SELF-PROPELLED VEHICLES

These robot battery-powered vehicles follow a route determined by a passive guidance floor tape. They can be arranged to interface automatically with vertical transport means (elevators) so that a route can cover various levels in a facility. The floor tape, which can be installed below carpets, is entirely passive. It determines only the path that the vehicle will follow. All sensing, instruction, motive power, and vehicle control are located on the vehicle itself, which can carry approximately a 300-lb (136-kg) payload and can operate a full 8-hour day without recharging its on-board batteries. Vehicle speeds are variable, ranging from 20 to 120 fpm (0.1 to 0.6 m/s). Programming of routes, stops, and vertical interfaces, changing of the cycle, and other functions is accomplished with an external programming device and an on-board programmable controller. Applications for an automated vehicle of this type are limitless: parts delivery and pickup in industrial facilities, food and supply distribution in hospitals, and mail and document pickup and delivery in offices are among its basic functions. Typical units are shown in Fig. 32.24.

32.22 MATERIALS HANDLING SUMMARY

The foregoing brief overview broadly describes the types of equipment available. For each facility being planned, the architect must study the material transfer problems, remembering that buildings not only handle and process but also generate material; an office building generates about 1 lb of



(a)

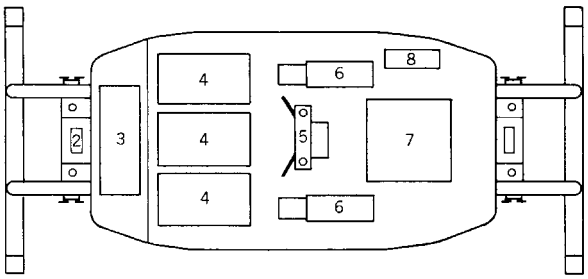


(c)



(b)

1 Pneumatic Safety Bumper
2 Sensor Panel
Contains metal detection sensors which confirm presence of the guide tape to the vehicle guidance system.
3 Steering System
Tricycle wheel design.
4 Batteries
5 Coupling Unit
Transcar tows trolleys. This device is activated to couple Transcar with trolley for transport. When trolley is delivered to destination, coupling unit retracts and vehicle drives from underneath trolley.
6 Drive Motors
Each drive wheel is powered by a 24 VDC motor.
7 Control Unit
Includes all electronic equipment
8 Charging System



(d)

Fig. 32.24 *An automated vehicle fits underneath its load, as seen in (a) and (c), which show two typical applications: automated food cart delivery in a hospital and automated mail service in a large office. The external programming device is seen in (b). Components of the automated vehicle are shown in the block diagram (d). (Courtesy of TransLogic Corp.)*

waste per 100 ft^2 per day (4.8 kg per 100 m^2)—a prodigious amount in today's large office structures. This type of dry waste can be compacted, bailed, and sold, unlike garbage and wet waste. In addition to considering the type of material being handled, there are factors of speed, scheduling, location of stations, labor and material costs, space requirements, noise generation, and energy requirements to address. To deal with all these factors in a large, complex facility is generally beyond the ability of the architect alone. Thus, expert advice from consultants who specialize in materials handling and from manufacturers' representatives should be sought

CHAPTER 33

Moving Stairways and Walks

MOVING ELECTRIC STAIRWAYS

33.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

THE MOVING STAIRWAY, ALSO REFERRED to as an *escalator* or an *electric stairway*, was first operated at the Paris Exposition in 1900. Its modern successors deliver passengers comfortably, rapidly, safely, and continuously at constant speed and usually with no delay at the boarding level. The annoyance of waiting for elevators is eliminated. Also, no time is lost by acceleration, retardation, leveling, and door operation, or by passenger interference in getting in or out of the cars. Instead of formal lobbies and hallways leading to a bank of elevators on each floor and a ride in a small, enclosed box, the electric stairway is always in motion, inviting passengers to ride on an open, airy, observation-type conveyance that can never trap them due to equipment or power failure. In contrast to the generally utilitarian function of an elevator, an escalator also has a decorative/design function, and its open, observation characteristic is frequently used to expose the rider to specific visual panoramas.

33.2 PARALLEL AND CRISSCROSS ARRANGEMENTS

Moving stairs can be constructed in three ways, two of which are *parallel* arrangements and one a *crisscross* arrangement. The crisscross arrangement, however, can be operated in two modes—spiral and walk-around—whereas the parallel arrangement defines usage by the physical arrangement of the stairs. The aptness of these descriptive terms becomes evident in the diagrams and photos that follow.

The essential difference between the two basic arrangements is that in the crisscross arrangement, the upper and lower terminal entrances and exits to the up and down escalators are separated by the horizontal length of an escalator, whereas in either of the parallel arrangements the two escalators face in the same direction.

(a) The Crisscross Arrangement

This layout is simpler to visualize and also more common. It will be examined first (refer to Figs. 33.1*a* and 33.1*b*). Notice that the stair construction in both options is *identical;* the difference occurs in the direction of operation of the second level of stairs. In the spiral crisscross arrangement of Fig. 33.1*a*, the rider begins an upward trip on stair L1A and, by means of a 180° turn, continues the trip uninterrupted on stair L2A—traveling, effectively, in an upward spiral. The downward-traveling rider performs the same spiral trip on stairs L2B and L1B. This arrangement is rapid, pleasant, and very economical of space because the stairs nest into each other. It can be used for as many as five floors without excessive annoyance to the rider.

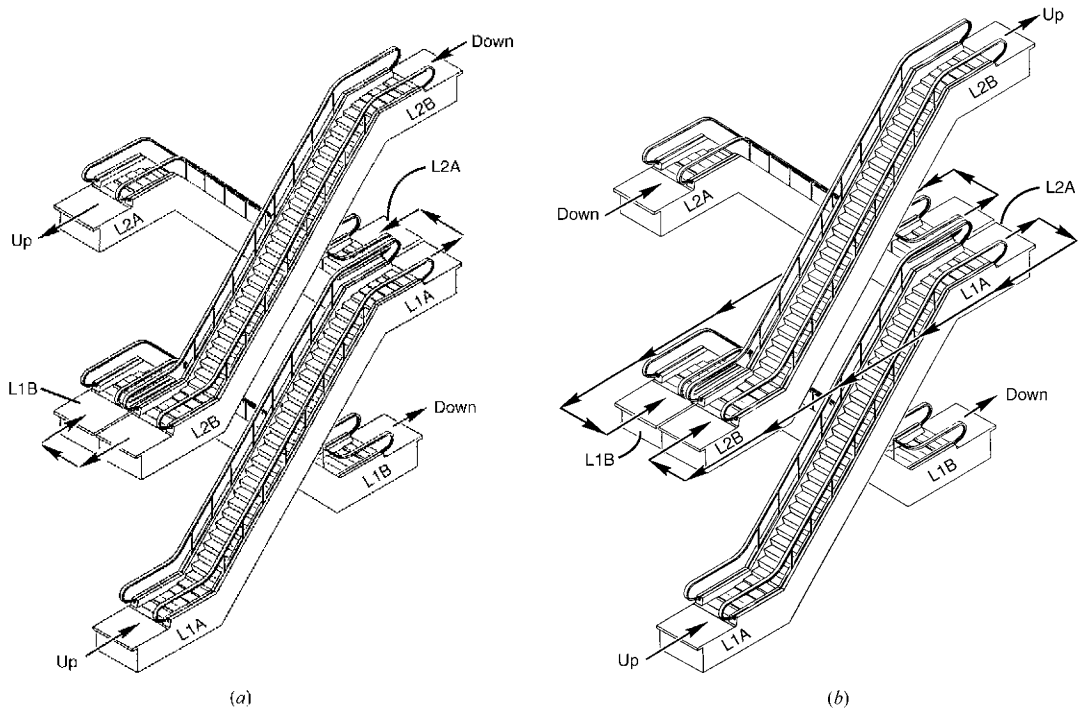


Fig. 33.1 *Escalators constructed in a crisscross arrangement. (a) When stairs L1A and L2A are operated in the up direction, a passenger from the lower terminal travels upward in a spiral, with only a turnaround at each level. The same is true for a down passenger. This system is called spiral operation, and the entire installation is referred to as crisscross spiral operation. (b) When the stair direction of upper-level stairs L2A and L2B is reversed, passengers at each intermediate landing (only one is shown) must traverse the entire horizontal stair length to reach the next stair traveling in the desired direction (see arrows on the drawing). As a result, this arrangement is known as crisscross walk-around operation. (Drawings courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

Now look at the arrangement of Fig. 33.1*b*. Reversing the direction of the second-level stairs L2A and L2B forces the upward-traveling passenger to leave L1A at the first upper landing and walk around the entire length of the stair to continue the trip on L2B. Similarly, the downward-traveling passenger begins the trip on L2A but, at the first landing, must traverse the escalator length to reach the next down escalator L1B; hence the descriptive name *walk-around crisscross*. This arrangement requires floor space around the escalators, which is used in stores to display special sale merchandise. Indeed, this display purpose is the reason that stores force passengers to endure the potentially annoying walk-around.

A similar, but generally much shorter and therefore less objectionable walk-around characterizes the spiral crisscross plan, where the escalators are separated by distance D (Fig. 33.2*a*). This distance is usually limited to about 10 ft (3 m) because any greater distance places the trip-continuation escalator out of sight and causes annoyance and confusion at the enforced walk. Separation of the escalators is frequently an architectural consideration and does have the advantage of easier mixing of riders entering at the various levels with riders making a continuous trip. Designers must, however, be continuously aware of the possibility of a negative reaction to the separation of escalators, which can be further reinforced when:

1. Insufficient floor space is provided for the transit between escalators, causing crowding, pushing, and delay.
2. Insufficient elevator service is provided for passengers wishing to travel at least three floors. This forces people to make a multistory escalator trip, which can be wearying, particularly when carrying parcels. If such a trip is further lengthened by an enforced walk-around at each floor, it becomes a source of severe irritation, often sufficient to keep customers away from the store.

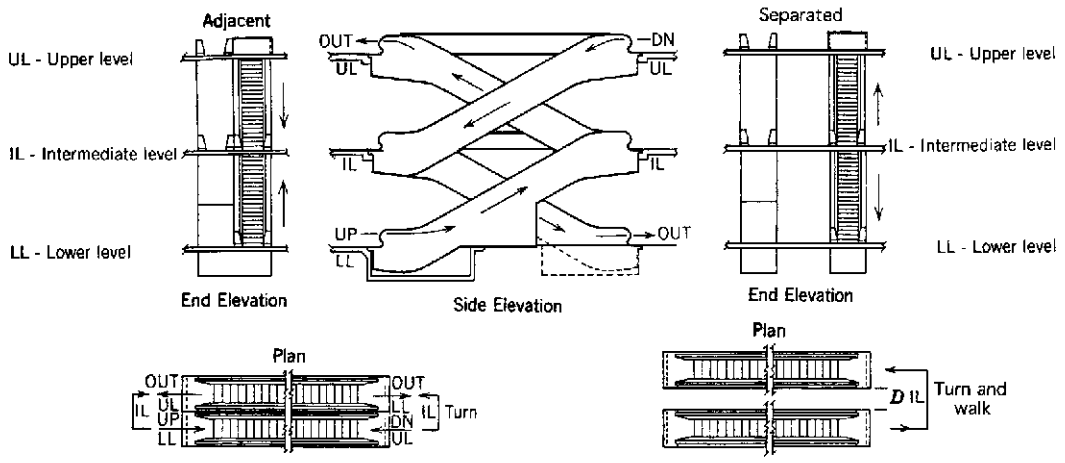


Fig. 33.2 *Side and end elevations and plan views of the crisscross escalator arrangements. In the spiral operation mode (see text), separating the escalators forces the rider to walk distance* D *to continue a trip. In the walk-around operation mode, escalators are frequently separated to provide a walk-around path.*

Figure 33.2 shows the plan and elevation of the crisscross arrangement for both spiral and walk-around operation, since, as shown, construction is identical for both. Figures 33.3 and 33.4 illustrate the crisscross plan.

(b) Parallel Escalators

This configuration requires more floor space than the crisscross arrangement and is therefore used less often. As noted, it is constructed in either of two



Fig. 33.3 *Bank of glass balustrade escalators with mirrored sides in a spiral operation, crisscross plan. Note the dividers at the turn-around at the intermediate level whose function is to guide traffic smoothly, either away from the escalator or to the turn point. This effectively eliminates undesirable bunching and crowding. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*



Fig. 33.4 *Crisscross design applicable to either spiral or walk-around operation. The horizontal area in the right foreground can be used to display impulse-buying merchandise to walk-around riders during holiday seasons, after which operation can be returned to the spiral mode. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*

designs: the parallel spiral arrangement, shown in Fig. 33.5*a*, or the stacked parallel arrangement, with forced walk-around, shown in Fig. 33.5*b*. The principal advantage of the parallel arrangement is its impressive appearance, as can be seen in Figs. 33.6 through 33.9. The stacked arrangement must be used with caution due to the inconvenience to the rider of an enforced long walk-around to continue the trip. This arrangement is found most often in mass purchase-type facilities and in malls. In department stores or malls this arrangement is much less objectionable, as many people are there to browse and window-shop rather than to purchase and leave, as is the case in a single-purpose store. In a multistory store, the inconvenience of this walk, which is frequently compounded by the crowds of people that normally congregate at special sale merchandise displays and counters, rapidly engenders annoyance. Thus, the stacked arrangement is seldom used above two floors (one such walk-around), and when it is used above two floors, riders can be expected to gravitate to elevators.

Escalators between two contiguous levels do not present the continued trip problem and therefore are frequently used in the parallel arrangement. This configuration is particularly common in public buildings, transportation terminals, and other heavy traffic areas, where the advantage of a single location for the entrance to the bank of escalators eliminates confusion and the safety hazard engendered by hesitant, confused riders in heavy traffic.

The consideration of division of rider traffic between elevators and escalators in a store is important. The general philosophy of store owners is to make escalators the primary means of vertical transportation for the obvious reason of merchandise exposure. As a result, elevators are frequently placed at one or both ends of a store, whereas the escalator banks are central. However, care must be taken to provide sufficient elevatoring in stores exceeding three floors, particularly in stores using the stacked or walk-around crisscross plans, because of the inconvenience of multifloor escalator trips discussed previously.

33.3 LOCATION

Because escalators are constantly moving and are generally part of a horizontal and vertical trip, they must be placed directly in the main line of traffic. This is in contrast to an elevator bank, which, being a vertical transportation unit, can be set off as an element on its own for people to approach and

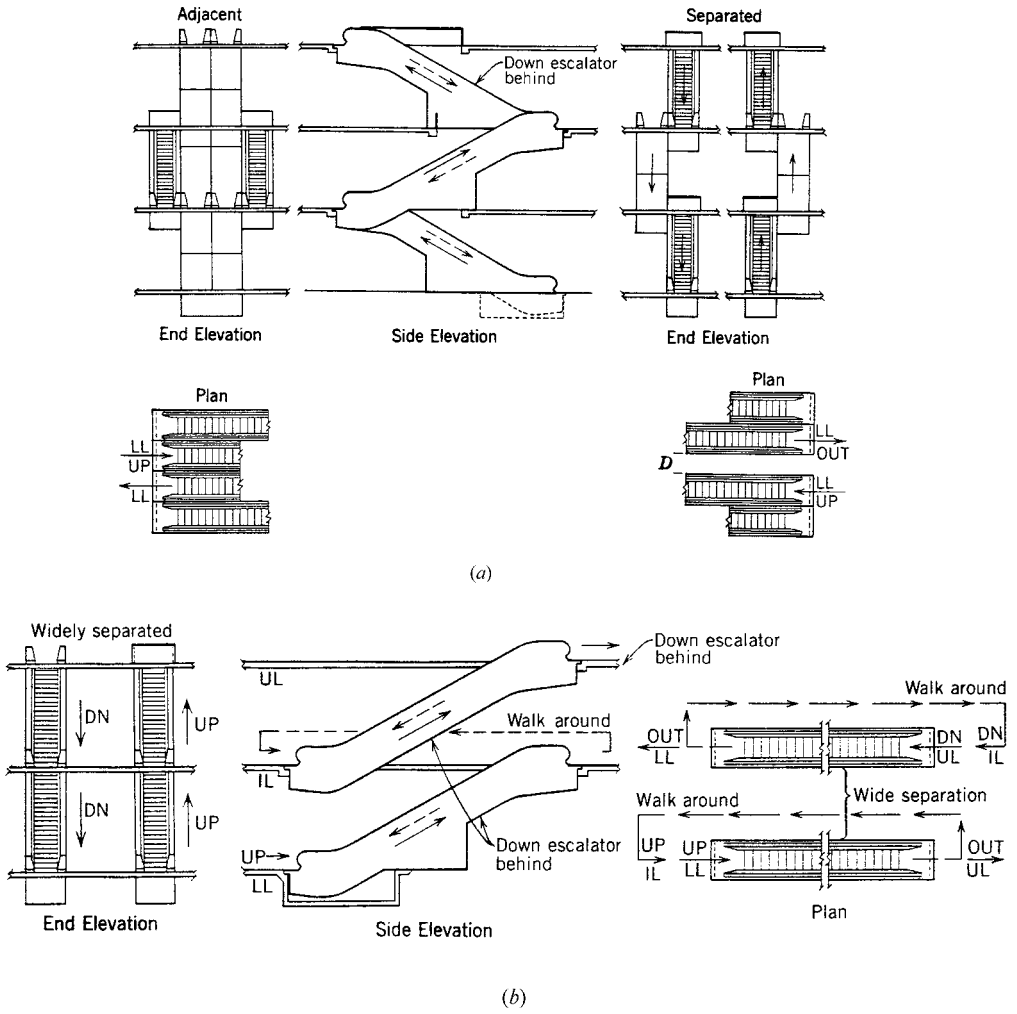


Fig. 33.5 *Side and end elevations and plan views of escalators in (a) spiral parallel and (b) stacked parallel arrangements. In the spiral parallel arrangement (a) the separation has no effect on the rider, who simply makes a turn to continue in the same up or down direction. In the stacked arrangement (b), the rider must traverse the entire length of the escalator at each level in order to continue, since the escalators are stacked vertically on each floor.*

utilize. Escalators must therefore be placed in the area served, often with a dominating presence. This allows potential riders to immediately:

1. Locate the escalators
2. Recognize the individual escalator's destination
3. Move easily and comfortably toward the escalator

One of the most effective ways to disorient traffic movement is to mark escalator destinations inadequately or poorly. The resultant milling about, false starts, and constant inquiries can be observed in numerous otherwise well-designed buildings, and often in stores where large displays block an originally open line-of-sight.

Sufficient lobby space must be provided at the base for queuing where anticipated, particularly at discharge points. A restricted or poorly marked discharge area causes passenger hesitation and traffic backup. Because the escalator discharges continuously, backup of traffic is dangerous and therefore intolerable. This is particularly crucial in theaters and stadiums, where even momentary hesitation



Fig. 33.6 *An unusual design of stacked parallel escalators with a forced walk-around in a continuous trip. The exposed truss and drive elements, combined with a transparent balustrade, add considerable visual interest to the installation. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*



Fig. 33.7 *An unusual installation of parallel escalators adapted to a long four-story building. In the more common instance of a building that is taller than it is long, the escalators are stacked as in Fig. 33.6. Here the design is adapted to the large central court/atrium, with offset stepped landings and entrances to the buildings. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*

during peak traffic periods can be disastrous. To avoid this, four design steps, in descending order of importance, are taken:

1. Provide well-marked escalators with sufficient traffic-carrying capacity.
2. Provide collecting space at intermediate landings so that passenger pressure can be relieved.
3. Provide a physical divider at intermediate landing turnaround points that guides riders away from the discharge point, and provide adequate space (and time) for riders either to leave at that level or to follow the guide around and continue the trip (see Fig. 33.2).
4. Provide a slight setback for the next escalator so that the necessary 180° turn can readily be negotiated.

At the exit terminus, an escalator should discharge into an open area with no turns or choice of direction. Where such is absolutely unavoidable, *large*, clear signs should make hesitation unnecessary (see Fig. 33.8). The landing space beyond the escalator newels should be a minimum of 8 ft (2.4 m) for 32-in. (0.81-m) units and 10 ft (3 m)



Fig. 33.8 *Escalators in transportation terminals are subject to periods of very heavy use. To avoid crowding at the entrance to the up (left) moving stair, the balustrade is effectively extended with a glass-sided divider. Passengers on the down (right) escalator are guided by large overhead signs and a standing sign at the base and balustrade extension to avoid hesitation and bunching. Note also the large open area in front of both units. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*



Fig. 33.9 *Among the longest moving stairways in Europe are those installed in the Stockholm subway system. This parallel bank of three escalators is 230 ft (70 m) long with a 108-ft (33-m) rise. Unlike American standards of 30° incline, 100-fpm (0.51-m/s) speed, and 32- or 48-in. (0.81- or 1.22-m) size, these units are at 27.3° incline, 147.6-fpm (0.75-m/s) speed, and 40-in. (1.02-m) width. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*

for 48-in. (1.22-m) units for a standard 100-fpm (0.5-m/s) speed. For escalators that will be reversed to accommodate change in traffic direction, this landing space must be provided at the top and bottom.

The crisscross arrangement has the advantages of lower cost, minimum floor space being occupied, and the least structural requirements. The parallel arrangement, being less efficient and more expensive, has as a compensating virtue a very impressive appearance that strongly draws people to it. For this reason it is frequently employed, particularly in banks of three or four units, in transportation terminals (see Figs. 33.8 and 33.9). In such large installations, flexibility is maintained by operating all but one escalator in the direction of heaviest traffic. Reversibility of escalators provides this most desirable feature.

33.4 SIZE, SPEED, CAPACITY, AND RISE

Moving stairs are built according to manufacturers' and industry standards and are therefore available in standard designs. However, all major manufacturers also produce special designs for particular applications. The data that follow refer to standard designs.

All escalators in the United States are installed at an angle of 30° from the horizontal, with a minimum vertical clearance of 7 ft (2.1 m) for escalator passengers. The 30° inclination means that the rise is equal to 57% of the unit's projected floor area for its inclined portion. The length of the horizontal portions of the stairway depends on the specific design. To meet Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements, elongated newels with at least two horizontal treads before the landing plate are needed. Today, although the maximum linear speed permitted by the safety code (ANSI/ASME 17.1) is 125 fpm (0.64 m/s), the industry has standardized on a single speed of 100 fpm (0.5 m/s).

ANSI/ASME 17.1 now defines the *width* of an escalator as the width of the stair tread (in inches). The previous width designation referred to the distance between balustrades, a figure difficult to define because of design variations. That

measurement is now called *size*. The standard sizes and widths are:

Escalator Size in. (m)	Tread Width in. (m)
32 (0.81)	24 (0.61)
48 (1.22)	40 (1.02)

Table 33.1 lists theoretical, nominal (design), and observed average escalator passenger capacities. Maximum loads assume approximately 1¼ persons per tread for a 32-in. (0.81-m) unit and almost 2 persons per tread for a 48-in. (1.22-m) unit. In actuality, maximum capacity is approached only during peak-loads periods in transportation terminals and stadiums. At other times, a full (heavy) load is represented by the nominal capacity figure and an average (long period) load by the observed capacity figure. Although a 40-in. (1.02-m) tread can indeed carry two persons, psychological factors, plus physical ones such as bulky clothing, packages, purses, and briefcases, mitigate against such loading. As a result, on a 40-in.- (1.02-m) wide tread, one person uses each step in a diagonal pattern, and on 24-in. (0.61-m) stairs one person occupies every other tread.

Some major manufacturers make two standard models (not styles) of moving stairs: a standard-duty unit intended for general indoor use, which provides low to medium rise, and a heavy-duty, sturdier unit intended for all-weather heavy-traffic use such as at transport terminals. The latter, because of heavier construction, can provide a greater maximum rise than standard units. Maximum rise for off-the-shelf design units varies among manufacturers. Approximate maximum figures are given in Table 33.2.

Specially designed units are available with rises of up to about 60 ft (18 m). In escalator design all the motive power is delivered at one point; that is, the drive motor drives the main chain, which drives the top sprocket, which drives the step chain, which pulls up the steps, causing the entire assembly to move. This arrangement is suitable for moderate rises of up to approximately 25 ft (7.6 m); beyond that, the design becomes increasingly inefficient. As the rise increases, the loads on all the drive components, including chains and sprockets, increase sharply. Furthermore, to accommodate the heavier equipment, truss width increases, as do wellway size and balustrade decks. For rises above 25 to 35 ft (7.6 to 10.7 m)—depending on unit width—the drive motor is too large to fit inside the truss and requires a separate machine room below the truss, with attendant cost. These factors combine to limit standard escalators to a maximum rise of 60 ft (18 m), which varies slightly among manufacturers.

33.5 COMPONENTS

The major components of a standard escalator installation are shown in Fig. 33.10. Safety devices are discussed in Section 33.6.

The truss is a welded steel frame that supports the entire apparatus (see Fig. 33.4). The tracks are steel angles attached to the truss on which the step rollers are guided, thus controlling the motion of the steps. The sprocket assemblies, chains, and machine provide the motive power for the unit, somewhat similar to the chain drive of a bicycle.

The handrail is driven by sheaves powered from the top sprocket assembly. It is synchronized with the tread motion to provide stability to riding passengers and support for entering and leaving

TABLE 33.1 Escalator Passenger Capacity

			Passengers per Hour		
Size in. (m)	Tread Width in. (m)	Speed fpm (m/s)	Maximum[a]	Nominal[b]	Observed[c]
32 (0.81)	24 (0.61)	100 (0.51)	5200	4000	2300
48 (1.22)	40 (1.02)	100 (0.51)	9000	6750	4500

[a]Theoretical maximum (see text).
[b]Heavy loading (see text).
[c]Average long-period loading.

TABLE 33.2 Approximate Maximum Escalator Rise

Unit Size in. (m)	Type	Supports	Maximum Rise ft (m)
32 (0.81)	Standard	Ends	24 (7.3)
48 (1.22)			16 (4.9)
32 (0.81)	Standard	Ends and center	30 (9.1)
48 (1.22)			20 (6.1)
32 (0.81)	Heavy	Ends	24 (7.3)
48 (1.22)			18 (5.5)
32 (0.81)	Heavy	Ends and center	40 (12.2)
48 (1.22)			20 (6.1)

passengers. Handrails disappear at inaccessible points at the newels. The balustrade assembly is designed for maximum safety of persons stepping on or off the escalators.

Transparent balustrades are made of tempered glass and are frequently referred to as *crystal balustrades*. In these units, the handrail is pinch-driven within the truss. In addition to metal and glass balustrade materials, fiberglass, wood, and various plastic materials are used.

The control cabinet, which is normally located near the drive machine, contains malfunction indicators in addition to the drive controls. The cabinet may also contain a microprocessor malfunction analyzer and communication means for transmitting escalator operating conditions to a central control point. Operation of an emergency stop button, that is wired to the controller and placed near or on the escalator housing at both ends, stops the drive machine and applies the brake. Key-operated control switches at the top and bottom newels start, stop, and reverse the stairway.

33.6 SAFETY FEATURES

Protection of passengers during normal operation is ensured by a number of safety features associated with moving stairways:

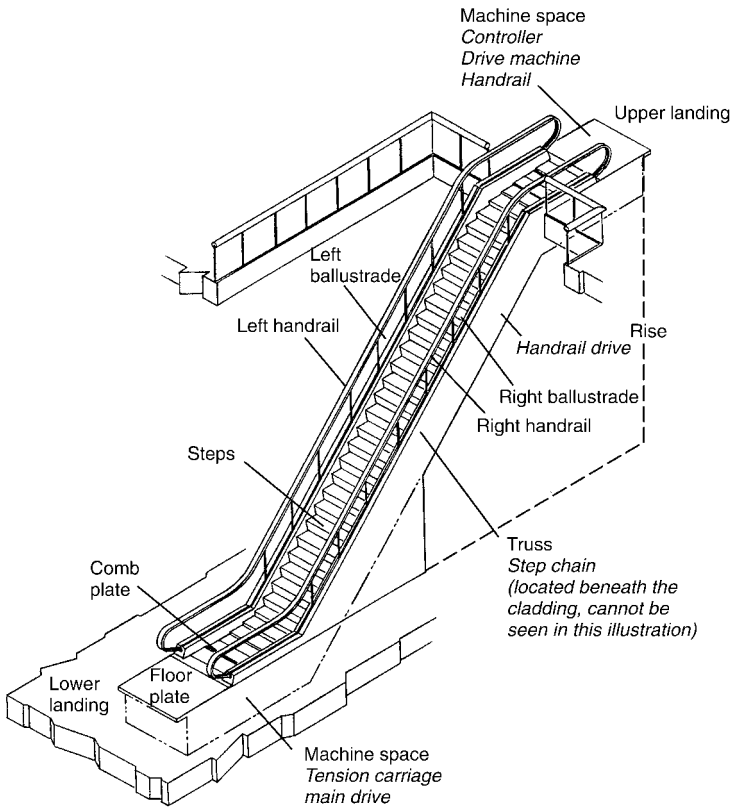


Fig. 33.10 *View of a standard escalator showing the principal parts. (Drawing courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

- Handrails and steps travel at exactly the same speed (100 fpm [0.51 m/s]) to ensure steadiness and balance and to aid stepping on or off the combplates.
- The steps are large and steady, and are designed to prevent slipping.
- Step design and step leveling with the combplates at each landing prevent tripping upon entering or leaving the escalator. This is accomplished with two or three (depending upon the manufacturer) horizontal steps at either end of the escalator.
- The balustrade is designed to prevent catching of passengers' clothing or packages. Close clearances provide safety near the combplates and step treads.
- Adequate illumination is provided at all landings, at the combplates, and completely down all stairways. Some escalator designs provide built-in lighting, as discussed in Section 33.8.
  - An automatic service brake will bring the stairway to a smooth stop if:
  - The drive chain or the step chain is broken or abnormally stretched
  - A foreign object is jammed into the handrail inlet, between the skirt guard and step, or between steps, causing them to separate
  - A power failure occurs
  - The emergency stop button is operated (one is located at either end of the escalator)
  - Any of the fire safety system devices operates (see Section 33.7)
  - A tread sags, rises, or breaks
  - A drive motor malfunction occurs

In case of overspeed or underspeed, an automatic governor shuts down the escalator, prevents reversal of direction (up or down), and operates the service brake.

If the escalator is stopped by operation of a safety device, passengers can then walk the steps as they would on any stationary stairway.

33.7 FIRE PROTECTION

Four methods of providing protection in case of fire near escalators are available: the rolling shutter, the smoke guard, the spray-nozzle curtain, and the sprinkler vent. One of these methods is required by code when more than two floors are pierced. Figure 33.11 illustrates how the wellway at a given floor level may be entirely closed off by a fire shutter, thus preventing draft and the spread of fire upward through escalator wells. Temperature and smoke detectors automatically actuate the motor-driven shutters. The shutter in Fig. 33.11 is shown at the third-floor level, but other shutters may be installed at the tops of horizontal wellway openings at any floor. This approach appears to be little implemented in North America, but is fairly common in the United Kingdom and Europe.

Figure 33.12 illustrates the smoke-guard method of protection. It consists of fireproof baffles surrounding the wellway and extending downward about 20 in. (510 mm) below the ceiling level. Smoke and flames rising upward to the escalator floor opening meet a curtain of water automatically released from conventional sprinkler heads, shown at the ceiling level. The baffle is a smoke and flame deflector. The vertical shields between adjacent sprinklers ensure that the spray from one will not cool the nearby thermal fuses, preventing the opening of adjacent sprinklers.

The spray-nozzle curtain of water (not shown) is similar to the smoke-guard protection. Here, closely spaced, high-velocity water nozzles form a compact water curtain to prevent smoke and

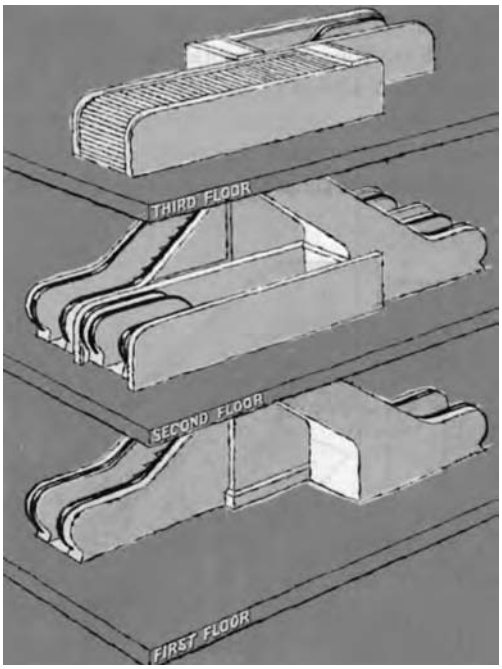


Fig. 33.11 *Rolling-shutter method of wellway fire protection.*

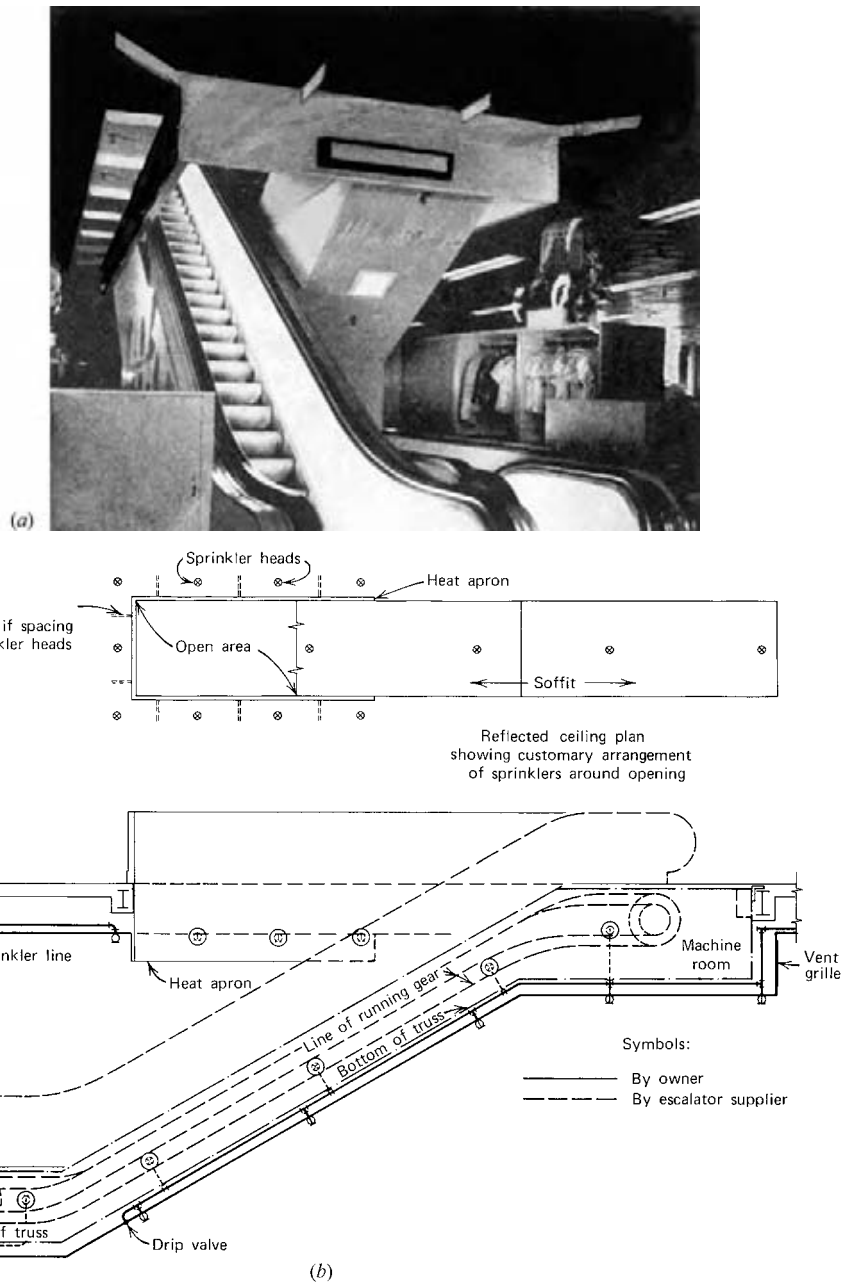


Fig. 33.12 *(a) Smoke-guard method of fire protection for a 32-in. (0.81-m) moving stairway, crisscross type. The escalator floor opening (per floor) is approximately 4 ft, 4 in. × 14 ft, 8 in. (1.3 by 4.5 m). (b) Reflected ceiling plan and section showing baffle and sprinkler layout. (Courtesy of Otis Elevator Co.)*

flames from rising through the wellways. Automatic thermal or smoke relays open all nozzles simultaneously.

The sprinkler-vent fire control system is shown in Fig. 33.13. The fresh air intake housed on the roof contains a blower to drive air downward through escalator floor openings, while the exhaust fan on the roof creates a strong draft upward through an exhaust duct; this duct in turn draws air from separate ducts just under the ceiling of each moving stairway floor opening. Three such separate wellway ducts are shown. Each duct has a number

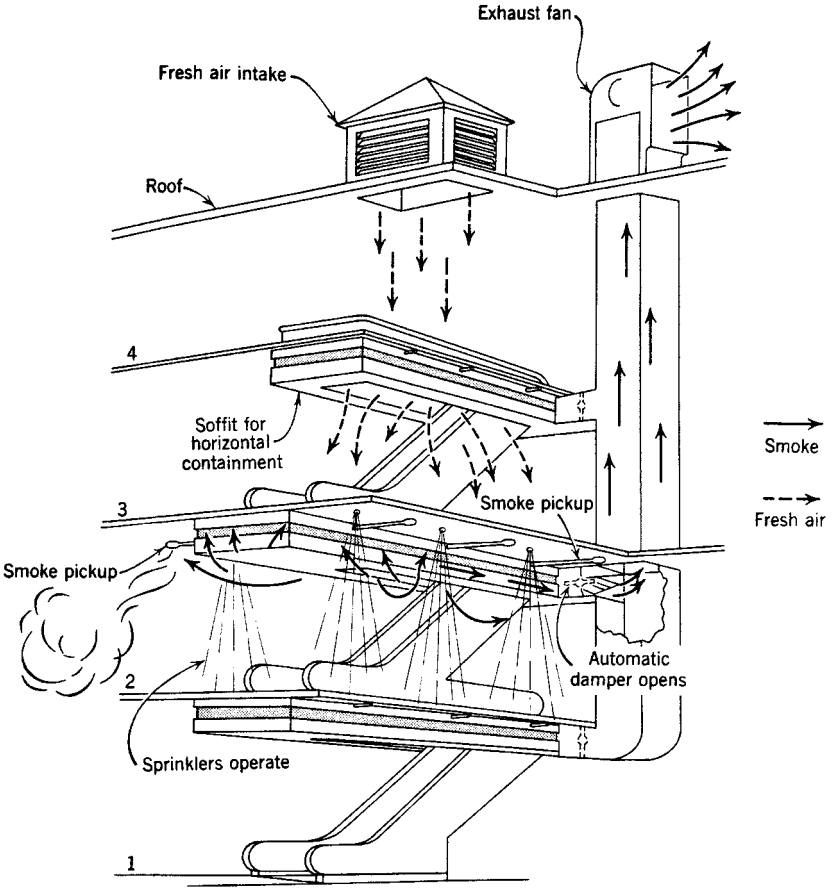


Fig. 33.13 *Sprinkler vent fire protection for escalator openings—an exception (with control) to the rule against perforations in floors.*



Fig. 33.14 *Stair lighting is supplied by a continuous fluorescent strip at the base of the balustrade in this California shopping mall. (Photo courtesy of Montgomery-KONE.)*



Fig. 33.15 *A continuous fluorescent source is placed under the handrail of the crystal balustrade in this covered mall in West Germany. Note the additional light at the base for illuminating the combplate. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*

of smoke-pickup relays that automatically start the fresh air fans. The usual spray nozzles on the ceiling near the stairways aid in quenching the fire.

33.8 LIGHTING

Adequate illumination of a moving stairway, particularly at the landings, is important from decorative as well as safety standpoints. In a stairwell-type installation, where general-area lighting does not provide sufficient illumination for an escalator, lighting appropriate to the adjacent illumination is installed on the ceiling above the escalator, with special emphasis on lighting the combplate. In Fig. 33.9, banks of fluorescent lamps are placed across the escalator bank at frequent intervals along the rise. Note the additional concentrated light at the combplate. Two different lighting treatments of similar installations are shown in Figs. 33.14 and 33.15 (see also the balustrade lighting in Fig. 33.16).

33.9 ESCALATOR APPLICATIONS

1. Main floor locations should be chosen in the direct flow of traffic to ensure maximum use.
2. Vertical arrangements should be designed to accomplish specific intents, such as exposure of merchandise, maximum passenger capacity, and maximum accessibility to various areas.
3. Reversibility of an electric stairway should be considered in applications where major traffic flow is unidirectional. Light traffic in the reverse direction can be handled by a normal fixed stair adjacent to the escalator (see Fig. 33.16). Similarly, a bank of two escalators can operate either both up, both down, or one up and one down to handle variable traffic conditions in areas such as office buildings and transportation terminals.



Fig. 33.16 *An all-weather exterior electric stairway is often the best solution to an elevated building entrance or exit. Note the elongated left balustrade, which prevents bunching at the escalator entrance, and the fluorescent fixture built into the balustrade, which provides nighttime step lighting. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*

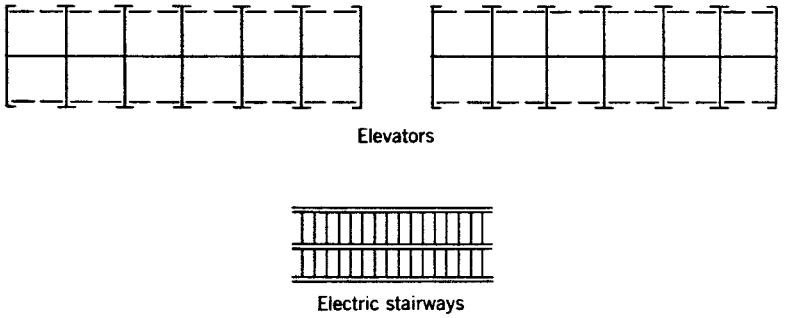


Fig. 33.17 *Comparative space requirements for equivalent passenger-handling capacity. Note the substantial space savings offered by escalators.*

4. Exterior escalators can provide an interesting and economical way of transporting people to elevated entry points in a building (see Fig. 33.16).

33.10 ELEVATORS AND ESCALATORS

Elevators and escalators should be considered together—as a single solution in vertical transportation—for the particular facility being designed. In this connection, and particularly in the case of modernization, Figure 33.17 provides a comparison.

In certain facilities, there are times when demand for vertical transportation is so great that elevators are not a feasible solution. A prime example is a school building. During class change, virtually the entire building population moves, with as many as 80% moving between floors. Since class change time is at most 10 minutes, the only reasonable solution is the combined use of fixed and moving stairs. In other buildings, such as multifloor stores, the escalator provides for short trips of one or two floors, and the elevator generally transports passengers traveling three or more stories.

A comparison of travel time between escalator and elevator is of interest. Using a normal speed of 100 fpm (0.51 m/s), a 12-ft (3.7-m) floor height requires 14.4 seconds for travel plus about 5 to 6 seconds to transfer to the next section, for a total of approximately 20 seconds. Thus, a four-story trip would take approximately 75 seconds. A similar elevator trip would take at most 60 seconds. The additional escalator time is not noticed amidst the activity of boarding, turning, and riding. A trip of more than four stories, however, becomes tiresome, and all the more so when there is an enforced walk-around at each floor.

33.11 ELECTRIC POWER REQUIREMENTS

Standard North American electric stairways are driven by three-phase, 60-Hz, ac induction motors at standard voltages (208, 230, and 460 V). Approximate horsepower data for drive motors are shown in Table 33.3.

It is recommended that no more than four escalators be served by a single electric feeder, and further, that not all the escalators in an installation, whatever the number, be served from the same feeder.

Since one cannot be trapped on an escalator, emergency power is rarely required. Ventilation for the machinery should be supplied for approximately

TABLE 33.3 Typical Standard-Duty Escalator Motor Sizes

Escalator Maximum Size in. (m)	Rise ft (m)	Size of Motor hp (kW)
32 (0.81)	14 (4.3)	5 (3.7)
	22 (6.7)	7½ (5.6)
	30 (9.1)	10 (7.5)
48 (1.22)	10 (3.1)	5 (3.7)
	15 (4.6)	10 (7.5)
	20 (6.1)	15 (11.2)

40% of the power, expected to be dissipated as heat. Thus, a 10-hp (7.5-kW) motor would require the dissipation of 0.40 × 10 × 2500 (Btu/hp), or approximately 10,000 Btu/h (2.9 kW).

33.12 SPECIAL-DESIGN ESCALATORS

Like elevators, escalators of nonstandard design are available on special order. These include units with slopes other than 30°, speeds other than 100 fpm (0.51 m/s), and rises beyond normal. The most unusual of these special designs is the curved escalator, which made its debut overseas and is now available in the United States. This design, which solves the very common problem of directing passengers to make a 90° turn as they leave the escalator, is an engineering tour-de-force. The entire drive mechanism had to be designed anew because the tread speed along the inside curve must be lower than that on the outside curve. The handrail drive was less of a problem since the handrail is narrow and therefore speed variation within it is minimal.

33.13 PRELIMINARY DESIGN DATA AND INSTALLATION DRAWINGS

At the preliminary design stage, the architect requires rough dimensional and structural data for an intended escalator installation. Since at this stage of design a specific manufacturer for the stairs has not yet been selected, and because these data vary from one supplier to another, the information in Fig. 33.18 and Table 33.4 is given as a range that covers most of the major manufacturers. Similar data are available from the National Elevator

TABLE 33.4 Typical Escalator Dimensions

Dimension	I-P (range)	SI (range)
A	13′-2″ to 16′-10″	4.0 to 5.1 m
B	7′-5″ to 9′-4″	2.3 to 2.9 m
C	5′-9″ to 7′-6″	1.8 to 2.3 m
D	3′-3″ to 4′-2″	1.0 to 1.3 m
E	3′-3″ to 3′-9″	1.0 to 1.1 m
F	12′-5″ to 14′-10″	3.8 to 4.5 m
G	2′-11″ to 3′-1″	889 to 940 mm
H	2′-7″ to 2′-9″	787 to 838 mm
I: 32″ (812 mm)	3′-11″ to 4′-6″	1.2 to 1.4 m
I: 48″ (1220 mm)	5′-3″ to 5′-8″	1.6 to 1.7 m
J	0	0
K	2′-11″ to 3′-2″	889 to 965 mm
L: 32″ (812 mm)	4′-0″ to 4′-4″	1.2 to 1.3 m
L: 48″ (1220 mm)	5′-3″ to 5′-10″	1.6 to 1.8 m
M: 32″ (812 mm)	2′-0″	610 mm
M:48″ (1220 mm)	3′-4″	1.0 m
N	1′-9″ to 2′-2″	533 to 660 mm
O	3′-6″ to 4′-0″	1.1 to 1.2 m

Note: See Figure 33.18 for the locations of dimensions A through O.

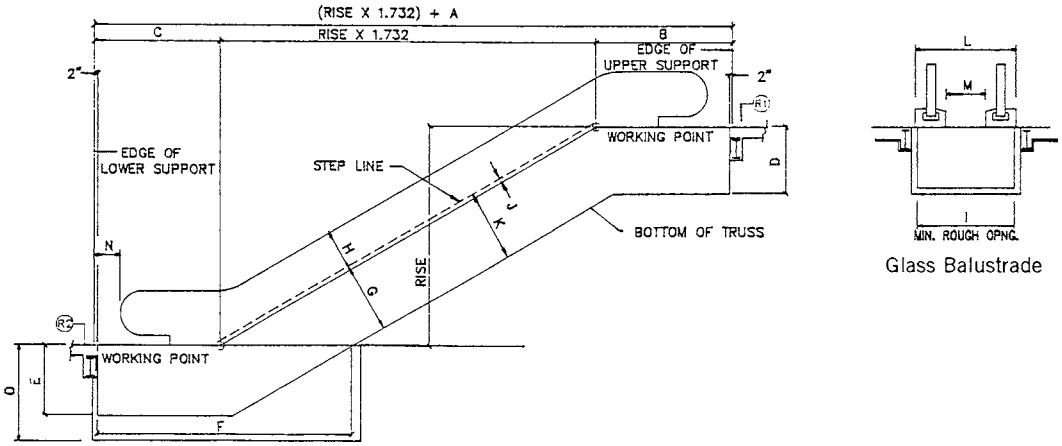


Fig. 33.18 *Escalator dimensional data in a range representing most of the major manufacturers. See Table 33.4 for I-P and SI values. These data should be used for preliminary planning only.*

Industry, Inc. Once construction contracts have been awarded and an escalator supplier selected, exact data on space requirements and structural reactions are available from the vendor. On these, two "working points" (see Fig. 33.18) are identified. From these two points all other measurements are made—that is, locating the centerline of the truss sections, placing the lower and upper landing truss support beams, and so on.

33.14 BUDGET ESTIMATING FOR ESCALATORS

The cost of an escalator includes the cost of the associated mechanical and electrical equipment, plus shipping and installation charges. The manufacturer provides expert engineering and a field erector who supervises the installation.

A tabulation of *relative* escalator prices, on a base of 100 (monetary units), is given in Table 33.5. Prices for units with a rise above 35 ft (10.7 m) increase very rapidly and depend upon the type of unit used. The designer is referred to suppliers for quotes on all units. To these figures must be added the cost of the contractor's work, wellway protection, lighting, outside balustrades, and plaster.

MOVING WALKS AND RAMPS

33.15 GENERAL INFORMATION

Moving walks and ramps are different from moving stairways in application, function, construction, and capacity. Escalators have as their primary function the movement of large numbers of people vertically, when such vertical distance does not exceed approximately five stories. A moving stair performs this specific transportation function extremely well with minimum cost, space, and maintenance.

When vertical transportation of wheeled vehicles and large parcels is required, the use of an electric stairway is at best awkward, if not impossible. For such functions and others discussed in the following sections, the moving ramp serves very well.

Unlike the elevator and escalator, the moving walk or ramp serves a dual function, that is, horizontal transportation only or a combination of horizontal and vertical transportation. For the purposes of this discussion, a moving *walk* is defined as having an incline not exceeding 5° where the principal function is horizontal motion and inclined motion is incidental to the horizontal. A moving *ramp* is a device with an incline limited by code to 15°, where vertical motion is generally more important than the horizontal component. It should be understood that a walk and ramp are physically the same device, but differently applied.

33.16 APPLICATION OF MOVING WALKS

The principal uses of moving walks, also known as *autowalks*, are to:

1. Eliminate and/or accelerate burdensome walking
2. Eliminate congestion
3. Force movement
4. Easily transport large, bulky objects

Anyone who has walked the seemingly endless distances in a major airport, carrying or dragging a heavy suitcase, can appreciate the necessity for a moving walkway. For this reason, air transport terminals have become major users of this item (see Fig. 33.19). Other transportation facilities, such as rail and ship terminals, also can often find excellent applications for a moving walk, since much heavy and bulky luggage is moved in these areas.

The apparent distance compression that moving walks provide permits placement of parking areas remote from the pedestrians' destination. Thus, a store can extend its parking area with no annoyance to patrons who must make the long trip to their cars with bulky packages or shopping carts. These advantages are all the more appreciated by persons with a walking impediment.

A second application of walks, as noted previously, is the routing of traffic to avoid congestion, milling about, and lost time and motion. This is particularly applicable in transportation terminals, where people are always traveling in opposite directions through the same and often restricted area, such as in "fingers" leading from airplanes to the main air terminal.



Fig. 33.19 *Twin autowalks in a transportation terminal. Of particular interest are the sloped entry and exit and the continuous fluorescent lighting beneath the handrails of the balustrades. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*

Moving walks are also useful to move people past a display window or some other point where congestion caused by stopping is undesirable. This "movement of objects" application demonstrates clearly that the moving walk is simply a large conveyor belt, regardless of its construction.

33.17 APPLICATION OF MOVING RAMPS

The moving ramp that combines horizontal and vertical movement is principally applicable:

1. To move persons and wheeled vehicles vertically
2. To move persons who lack the agility required to use an escalator
3. To vertically move large, bulky objects

Ramps have found an important field of application in multilevel stores where escalators are not feasible for shopping-cart users. Such stores may also utilize rooftop parking that is made accessible to cart users via a moving ramp. Since luggage carriers are not easily used on escalators, transportation terminals, which are almost always multilevel, also find extensive application for moving ramps (Figs. 33.20 and 33.21).

33.18 SIZE, CAPACITY, AND SPEED

The speed, physical dimensions, and therefore passenger capacity of walks and ramps are not as extensively standardized as is the case with



Fig. 33.20 *Unusual angular design of multiple ramps in a shopping mall in Brisbane, Australia. The use of ramps rather than escalators permits shopping carts and bulky packages to be moved with ease between the building levels. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*

TABLE 33.5 Relative Escalator Prices

	Size	
Rise ft (m)	**32 in. (0.81 m)**	**48 in. (1.22 m)**
14 (4.3)	100[a]	118
16 (4.9)	103	121
18 (5.5)	105	124
20 (6.1)	108	127
22 (6.7)	111	130
24 (7.3)	113	133
26 (7.9)	115	135
28 (8.5)	118	138
30 (9.1)	120	141

[a]Base price figure is 100 (monetary units) for the shortest, narrowest, slowest unit (i.e., 14-ft [4.3-m] rise, 32 in. [0.81 m] wide). All units are 100 fpm (0.51 m/s). Add 5% for a glass balustrade for any unit.

TABLE 33.6 Maximum Permissible Operating Speeds of Moving Ramps

	Maximum Speed fpm (m/s)	
Angle of Incline	**Level Entrance**	**Sloping Entrance**
0–3°	180 (0.9)	180 (0.9)
3–5°	180 (0.9)	160 (0.8)
5–8°	180 (0.9)	140 (0.7)
8–12°	140 (0.7)	130 (0.65)
12–15°	140 (0.7)	125 (0.625)

escalators. Manufacturers utilize several different tread widths, combined with various speeds and ramp angles of incline. The combinations are designed to suit the application. Furthermore, since the maximum permissible walk ramp speed varies with the angle of slope, and with the design of the entering point, passenger capacity ratings vary with each design. By code, higher speeds are allowed for level entrance than for sloping entrance, for the simple reason that a level entrance is easier to board. Tables 33.6 and 33.7 and Fig. 33.22 give data for typical units.

Since capacity varies with width, speed, and type of entrance, exact capacity figures must be obtained for each specific design. The maximum practical length at present is approximately 1000 ft (305 m), with longer units under consideration. Wide autowalk units (55 in. [1.4 m]) are now extensively used in transportation terminals, since they permit passengers with luggage trolleys who walk on the moving walkway to easily pass other passengers with luggage carts, who prefer to stand still and move at the relatively slow rate of 100 to 130 fpm (0.51 to 0.66 m/s)—about half of normal walking speed. Recent installations of such wide autowalks are found at Heathrow, Gatwick, and Munich airports, among others.

33.19 COMPONENTS

Moving walks are manufactured in only one design: a derivative of the escalator, which uses a flattened pallet in place of a step. In all other respects—the drive mechanism, safeties, brake, handrails, and so on—the unit is similar to an escalator. Preliminary layout data and detailed plans are, as with moving stairs, available from vendors, who frequently are the same vendors that supply escalators.

TABLE 33.7 Moving Walks/Ramps: Commercial Ratings

Angle	Pallet Width in. (m)	Ramp Speed fpm (m/s)
0–3° Walk	32 (0.81) 40 (1.02)	100 (0.5), 130 (0.65), 150 (0.75) 100 (0.5), 130 (0.65), 150 (0.75)
10°, 11°, 12° Ramp	62 (1.58) 32 (0.81) 40 (1.02)	90 (0.45), 100 (0.5), 130 (0.65) 100 (0.5), 130 (0.65) 90 (0.45), 100 (0.5), 130 (0.65)



Fig. 33.21 *Multiple inclined ramp installation in a European department store (three up, two down). Of interest in this installation are the level entries, lighted balustrades, the ease with which shopping carts are handled on the wide pallet, and the use of the space between the transparent balustrades for merchandising. (Photo courtesy of O&K Rolltreppen, Germany.)*

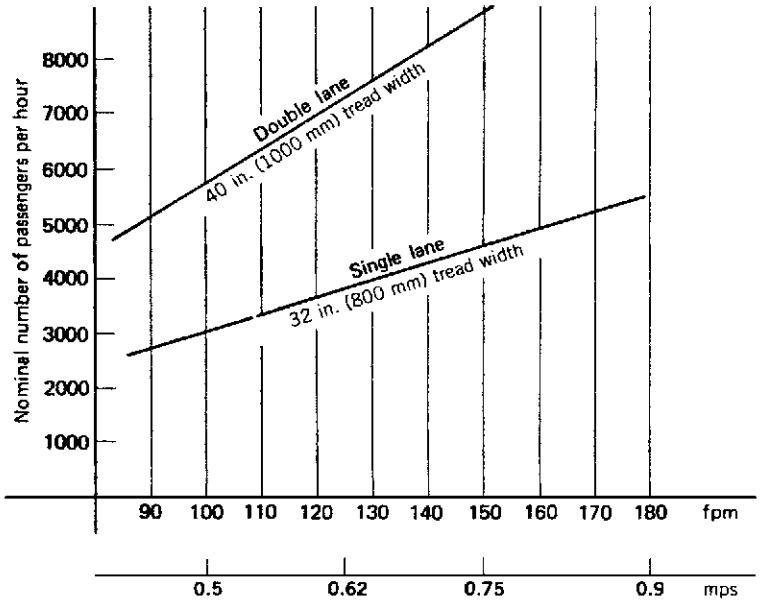


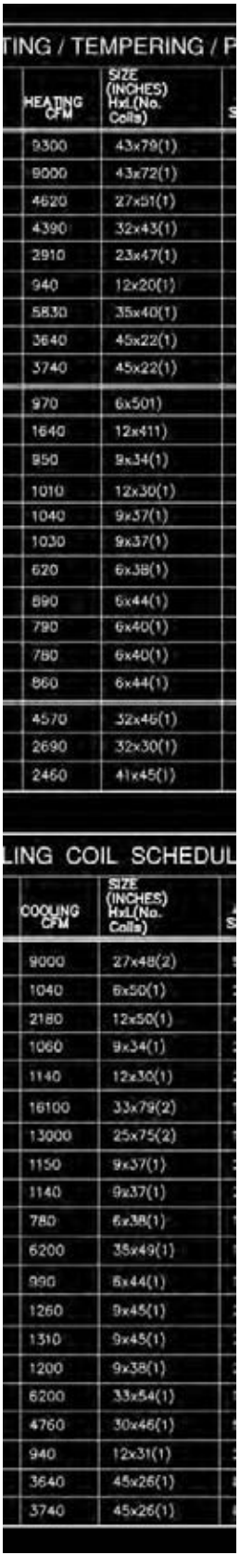
Fig. 33.22 *The capacity of moving walks varies with speed, angle of incline, and tread width. The capacity shown is for the maximum incline permitted at that walk speed. Because of the requirement for handrail support, tread widths greater than double lane are not often utilized.*

PART X

APPENDICES

The purpose of this part of the book is to present important reference and ancillary data (often extensive) in a separate, easily accessed area that does not detract from the flow of the text in the chapters. The appendices are:

A. Metrication, SI Units, and Conversions
B. Climatic Conditions for the United States, Canada, and Mexico
C. Solar and Daylighting Design Data
D. Solar Geometry
E. Thermal Properties of Materials and Assemblies



TING / TEMPERING / P

HEATING CFM	SIZE (INCHES) Hxl.(No. Coils)	S
9300	43x79(1)	
9000	43x72(1)	
4620	27x91(1)	
4390	32x43(1)	
2910	23x47(1)	
940	12x20(1)	
5830	35x40(1)	
3640	45x22(1)	
3740	45x22(1)	
970	6x501)	
1640	12x411)	
950	9x34(1)	
1010	12x30(1)	
1040	9x37(1)	
1030	9x37(1)	
620	6x38(1)	
890	6x44(1)	
790	6x40(1)	
780	6x40(1)	
860	6x44(1)	
4570	32x46(1)	
2690	32x30(1)	
2460	41x45(1)	

LING COIL SCHEDUL

COOLING CFM	SIZE (INCHES) Hxl.(No. Coils)	S
9000	27x48(2)	
1040	6x50(1)	
2180	12x50(1)	
1060	9x34(1)	
1140	12x30(1)	
16100	33x79(2)	
13000	25x75(2)	
1150	9x37(1)	
1140	9x37(1)	
780	6x38(1)	
6200	35x49(1)	
950	6x44(1)	
1260	9x45(1)	
1310	9x45(1)	
1200	9x38(1)	
6200	33x54(1)	
4760	30x46(1)	
940	12x31(1)	
3640	45x26(1)	
3740	45x26(1)	

F. Heating and Cooling Design Guidelines and Information
G. Standards/Guidelines for Energy- and Resource-Efficient Building Design
H. Annual Solar Performance
I. Economic Analysis
J. Lamp Data
K. Sound Transmission Data for Walls
L. Sound Transmission and Impact Insulation Data for Floor/Ceiling Constructions
M. Design Analysis Software

APPENDIX A

Metrication, SI Units, and Conversions

A.1 GENERAL COMMENTS ON SI UNITS

The building industry in the United States has been slow (glacially so) in adopting the metric (more accurately, Le Système International d'Unités, or SI) system of units for many reasons. The rest of the world, however, is generally fully SI (or metric). Many professional societies use a mixture of I-P (inch-pound, previously "English" units) and SI units as a means of addressing their international audiences. Many older units are also so entrenched that changing them is an almost impossible task. This book attempts to provide dual units where feasible, but that is not always possible. For this reason, tables of conversions and approximations are presented in the following material to enable the user to work with both systems. This appendix also presents some facts that should make use of the SI system a bit easier.

A.2 SI NOMENCLATURE AND SYMBOLS

For a full discussion of the SI system see *AIA Metric Building and Construction Guide*, edited by S. Braybrooke (John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1980) and the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) publication "SI for HVAC&R" (May 1999) available from the ASHRAE Web site (http://www.ashrae.org/). The units in common use include the basic SI staples—the meter, kilogram, and second (MKS)—plus a host of derived, supplementary, and non-SI units such as the pascal (pressure), radian (solid angle), and kilowatt-hour (energy). Also, multiple and submultiple units such as the liter, metric ton, and millibar are so common that they stand as separate units instead of being expressed as 10^{-3} m^3, 10^3 kg, and 10^{-2} Pa.

Table A.1 lists SI unit prefixes with their accepted symbols. Symbols do not change in the plural. That is, 6 millimeters is written as 6 mm and 20 kilograms is written as 20 kg. All units and prefixes except Fahrenheit and Celsius are uncapitalized when written out (as in megaton or meter).

TABLE A.1 Common SI Unit Prefixes

Multiples and Submultiples	Prefixes	Symbols
$1\,000\,000\,000 = 10^9$	giga	G
$1\,000\,000 = 10^6$	mega	M[a]
$1\,000 = 10^3$	kilo	k[a]
$100 = 10^2$	hecto[b]	h
$10 = 10$	deka	da
$0.1 = 10^{-1}$	deci	d
$0.01 = 10^{-2}$	centi	c[a]
$0.001 = 10^{-3}$	milli	m[a]
$0.000\,001 = 10^{-6}$	micro	μ[a]
$0.000\,000\,001 = 10^{-9}$	nano	n
$0.000\,000\,000\,001 = 10^{-12}$	pico	p

[a]Most commonly used symbols.
[b]A hectare is a square hectometer (i.e., 10^4 m^2).

A.3 COMMON USAGE UNITS

1. *Length:* meter (m), kilometer (km), millimeter (mm), micrometer (μm), nanometer (nm).
2. *Area:* square meter (m^2), hectare (ha).
3. *Volume:* cubic meter (m^3), liter (L).
4. *Flow:* cubic meters per second (m^3/s).
5. *Velocity—Airflow:* meters per second (m/s).
6. *Weight:* kilogram (kg), gram (g).

The SI system clearly differentiates between mass (kg) and force (kg • m/s^2), the latter being given a separate name and symbol, newton (N). Weight is not used, because it is a force that depends upon acceleration and is therefore variable. However, the construction industry largely continues to use the terms *mass*, *weight*, and *force* interchangeably.

7. *Force:* newton (N), kilonewton (kN). A newton is the force required to accelerate 1 kg at 1.0 m/s^2.
8. *Pressure:* pascal (Pa), kilopascal (kPa). A pascal is a newton per square meter (N/m^2).
9. *Energy, Work, Quantity of Heat:* joule (J), kilojoule (kJ), megajoule (MJ). A joule is a watt-second (W • s).
10. *Temperature:* degree Celsius (°C), degree kelvin (K).

SI temperature in degrees kelvin is not as commonly used as °C (*Celsius* is the accepted term; *centigrade* is obsolete). The Celsius and kelvin scales are subdivided equally but start at different points—that is, 0 K is −273.15°C. Therefore, to determine kelvin from Celsius, simply add 273.15. Increments are equal because of equal subdivisions; that is, a change of 10 K is the same as a 10°C change. Because of its common usage in design work, a Fahrenheit/Celsius conversion chart is given in Fig. A.1.

11. *Illumination:* see Table 11.1.
12. *Acoustics:* see Table 19.16.
13. *CGS/MKS Conversions:* see Table 19.16.
14. *Abbreviations:* See Table A.2.
15. *Approximations:* See Table A.3.

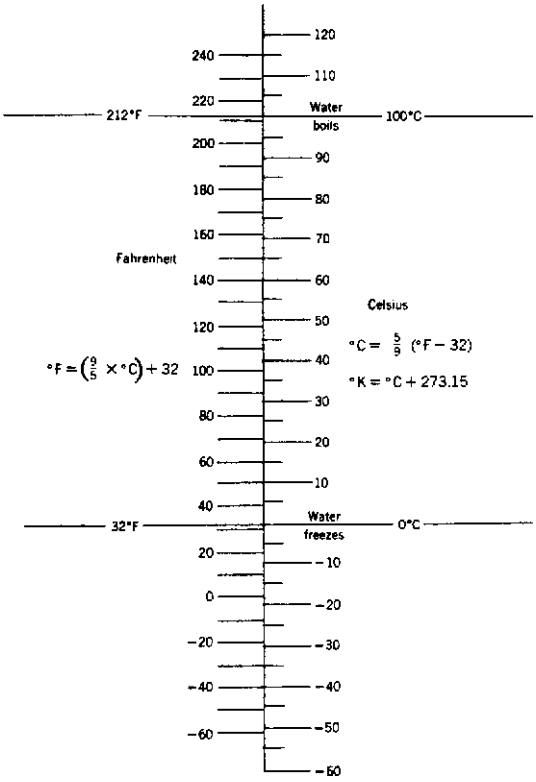


Fig. A.1 *Conversion nomograph: Fahrenheit temperature–Celsius temperature.*

A.4 CONVERSION FACTORS

Table A.4 is an alphabetized list of useful conversion factors. Decimal notation has been used in this table (versus scientific notation), that is, 0.00378 versus 3.78×10^{-3} or 3.78 E-3.

TABLE A.2 Typical Abbreviations: All Systems of Units

atmospheres	atm	gallons	gal
British thermal units	Btu	gallons per hour	gph, gal/h
British thermal units per hour	Btu/h	gallons per minute	gpm, gal/min
calorie	cal	grams	g
cubic feet	cf, ft^3	hectares	ha
cubic feet per minute	cfm, ft^3/min	horsepower	hp
cubic feet per second	cfs, ft^3/s	inches	in.
cubic meters	m^3	inches of mercury	in. Hg

TABLE A.2 Typical Abbreviations: All Systems of Units (*Continued*)

feet	ft	joules	J
feet per second	fps, ft/s	kilocalories	kcal
kilograms	kg	miles per hour	mph
kilograms per second	kg/s	millimeters	mm
kilojoules	kJ	millimeters of mercury	mm Hg
kilometers	km	newtons	N
kilometers per hour	kph, km/h	ounces	oz
kilonewtons	kN	pounds	lb
kilopascals	kPa	pounds of force	lbf
kilowatts	kW	pounds per cubic foot	lb/ft^3
kilowatt-hours	kWh	second	sec, s
liters	L	square feet	ft^2
liters per second	L/s	square inches	$in.^2$
megajoules	MJ	square meters	m^2
meganewtons	MN	watts	W
megapascals	MPa	watts per square meter	W/m^2
meters	m	yards	yd
meters per second	m/s		

TABLE A.3 Common Approximations

Approximate Common Equivalents					
1 inch	=	25 millimeters	1 millimeter	=	0.04 inch
1 foot	=	0.3 meter	1 liter	=	61 cubic inches
1 yard	=	0.9 meter	1 meter	=	3.3 feet
1 mile	=	1.6 kilometers	1 meter	=	1.1 yards
1 square inch	=	6.5 square centimeters	1 kilometer	=	0.6 mile
1 square foot	=	0.09 square meter	1 square centimeter	=	0.16 square inch
1 square yard	=	0.8 square meter	1 square meter	=	11 square feet
1 acre	=	0.4 hectare	1 square meter	=	1.2 square yards
1 cubic inch	=	16 cubic centimeters	1 hectare	=	2.5 acres
1 cubic foot	=	0.03 cubic meter	1 cubic centimeter	=	0.06 cubic inch
1 cubic yard	=	0.8 cubic meter	1 cubic meter	=	35 cubic feet
1 quart	=	1 liter	1 cubic meter	=	1.3 cubic yards
1 gallon	=	0.004 cubic meter	1 liter	=	1 quart
1 ounce	=	28 grams	1 cubic meter	=	250 gallons
1 pound	=	0.45 kilogram	1 kilogram	=	2.2 pounds
1 horsepower	=	0.75 kilowatt	1 kilowatt	=	1.3 horsepower

TABLE A.4 Useful Conversion Factors: Alphabetized

Multiply	By	To Get
acres	4047	square meters
atmospheres	33.93	feet of water
atmospheres	29.92	inches of mercury
atmospheres	760.0	millimeters of mercury
Btu (energy)	0.252	kilocalories
Btu (energy)	1.055	kilojoules
Btu/h (power)	0.2931	watts
Btu/h ft^2 (energy transfer)	3.155	watts per square meter
Btu/°F (heat capacity)	1.897	kilojoules per kelvin[a]
Btu/lb °F (specific heat)	4.184	kilojoules per kilogram per kelvin[a]
Btu/h°F ft (thermal conductivity[b])	1.729	watts per kelvin[a] per meter
Btu/h °F ft^2 (conductance[c])	5.673	watts per kelvin[a] per square meter
Btu/°F day (building load coefficient, BLC)	0.022	watts per kelvin[a]
Btu/°F day ft^2 (load-collector ratio, LCR)	0.236	watts per kelvin[a] per square meter
cubic feet	0.02832	cubic meters
cubic feet	7.481	gallons
cubic feet	28.32	liters
cubic feet per minute	0.4719	liters per second
cubic feet per second	28.32	liters per second
cubic inches	16.39	cubic centimeters
cubic meters	35.32	cubic feet
cubic meters	1.308	cubic yards
cubic meters	264.2	gallons
cubic yards	0.765	cubic meters
feet	0.3048	meters
feet	304.8	millimeters
feet per second	0.3048	meters per second
footcandle	10.764	lux
foot-pounds of force per second	1.356	watts
gallons	3.785	liters
gallons per hour	1.052	liters per second
gallons per minute	0.0022	cubic feet per second
gallons per minute	0.06308	liters per second
grams	0.035	ounces (avoirdupois)
hectares	2.471	acres
horsepower	0.746	kilowatts
horsepower	746	watts
inches	25.4	millimeters
inches of mercury	0.033	atmospheres
inches of mercury	1.133	feet of water
inches of mercury (60°F [15.6°C])	3377	newtons per square meter
inches of mercury	0.491	pounds per square inch
inches of water	0.002458	atmospheres
inches of water	0.036	pounds per square inch

TABLE A.4 Useful Conversion Factors: Alphabetized (*Continued*)

Multiply	By	To Get
inches of water (60°F [15.6°C])	248.8	newtons per square meter
kilocalories	3.968	British thermal units
kilocalories	4190	joules
kilograms	2.205	pounds
kilograms per cubic meter	1.686	pounds per cubic yard
kilograms per square meter	0.0033	feet of water
kilograms per square meter	0.0029	inches of mercury
kilograms per square meter	0.205	pounds per square foot
kilograms per square meter	0.001422	pounds per square inch
kilojoules	0.948	British thermal units
kilojoules per kilogram	0.430	British thermal units per pound
kilometers	0.621	miles
kilometers per hour	0.621	miles per hour
kilonewtons	0.1004	tons of force
kilonewtons	224.8	pounds of force
kilopascals	20.89	pounds of force per square foot
kilowatts	1.341	horsepower
kilowatt-hours	3.6	megajoules
liters	0.03532	cubic feet
liters	61.02	cubic inches
liters	0.2642	gallons
liters	1.057	quarts
liters per second	2.119	cubic feet per minute
liters per second	951.0	gallons per hour
liters per second	15.85	gallons per minute
megajoules	0.278	kilowatt-hours
meganewtons	100.36	tons of force
megapascals	145.04	pounds of force per square inch
megapascals	9.324	tons of force per square foot
meters	3.281	feet
meters	1094	yards
meters per second	196.86	feet per minute
meters per second	2.237	miles per hour
miles	1.609	kilometers
miles per hour	1.609	kilometers per hour
miles per hour	0.447	meters per second
milliliters	0.061	cubic inches
milliliters	0.035	fluid ounces
millimeters	0.039	inches
millimeters of mercury	133.3	newtons per square meter
million gallons per day	18.94	cubic meters per hour
newtons	0.225	pounds of force
ounces (avoirdupois)	28.35	grams
ounces (fluid)	29.6	milliliters

TABLE A.4 Useful Conversion Factors: Alphabetized (*Continued*)

Multiply	By	To Get
pounds	0.4536	kilograms
pounds of force	4.448	newtons
pounds of force per square foot	47.88	pascals
pounds of force per square inch	6.895	kilopascals
pounds per cubic foot	16.02	kilograms per cubic meter
pounds per cubic yard	0.593	kilograms per cubic meter
pounds per square foot	4.882	kilograms per square meter
square feet	0.0929	square meters
square inches	645.2	square millimeters
square kilometers	0.386	square miles
square meters	10.76	square feet
square meters	1.196	square yards
square miles	2.590	square kilometers
square yards	0.836	square meters
tons of force	9.964	kilonewtons
tons of force per square foot	107.25	kilopascals
tons of force per square inch	15.44	megapascals
torr (millimeters of mercury at 0°C [2 °F])	133.3	newtons per square meter
watts	3.412	British thermal units per hour
watts	0.738	foot-pounds of force per second
watts per square meter	0.317	British thermal units per square foot
yards	0.914	meters
Add your own conversion factors here.	By	To Get

[a]K or °C.
[b]Thermal conductivity (k).
[c]Thermal conductance (C) or transmittance (U).

APPENDIX B

Climatic Conditions for the United States, Canada, and Mexico

This appendix contains the following information.

Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units): Table B.1

Outdoor Design Conditions: Mexico and Puerto Rico: (I-P units): Table B.2

Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units): Table B.3

Outdoor Design Conditions: Mexico and Puerto Rico: (SI units): Table B.4

Legacy Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units): Table B.5

Legacy Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units): Table B.6

The climate data presented Tables B.1 through B.4 are taken from two publications of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE): the 2005 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* (design temperatures) and ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007, *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings* (heating and cooling degree days). The information is reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.

Station Designations (where identified)

AP = airport

CO = urban areas, influenced by surroundings

AFB = Air Force base

No designation = semirural, similar to airport locations

The climate data presented Tables B.5 and B.6 are extracted from the 10th edition of *Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings* (where they were reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA). This "legacy" climate information is presented so that cities not available in the most recent climate data from the *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* are not "lost" for design purposes. Note that although the data presented in Tables B.5 and B.6 are similar to those presented in Tables B.1–B.5, the statistical basis of the values is different, as indicated in the column headings.

B.1 WINTER DESIGN CONDITIONS

- HDD65. Annual heating degree-days at base 65°F (18.3°C), obtained from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007. (HDD65 values are also given in Appendix C; those values may vary slightly from these values because they are based upon data from a different set of years.)
- Design dry-bulb (99%). Outdoor temperatures that will, in a normal year, be the lowest experienced during 99% of the hours in a year. This means that approximately 1% of the hours (88 hours) will experience temperatures lower than this value. These data were obtained from the 2005 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*. Note that ASHRAE Standard 90.1 implicitly specifies use of 99.6% values for compliant

designs—and the necessary climate data reflecting these values may be obtained from that standard. The 99.6% values are more stringent than the 99% values—they represent somewhat more extreme conditions, which may be good for conservative design purposes, but will also result in larger systems and (theoretically) more energy use. The 99% values given here are believed to represent a more "green" approach to selecting design climate data.

B.2 SUMMER DESIGN CONDITIONS

- Design dry-bulb and mean coincident wet-bulb (2%). Outdoor temperatures that will, in a normal year, be the highest experienced during all but 2% of the hours in a year. This means that approximately 2% of the hours (176 hours) will experience temperatures lower than these values. *Coincident* means that the given wet-bulb temperature is likely to occur in concert with the paired dry-bulb value. These data were obtained from the 2005 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*. Note that ASHRAE Standard 90.1 implicitly specifies use of 1% values for compliant designs—and the necessary climate data reflecting these values may be obtained from that standard. The 1% values are more stringent than the 2% values—they represent somewhat more extreme conditions, which may be good for conservative design purposes, but will also result in larger systems and (theoretically) more energy use. The 2% values given here are believed to represent a more "green" approach to selecting design climate data.
- Mean daily range. The average difference between daily maximum and minimum dry-bulb temperatures—in this case for the month of July (often used as the summer design condition for solar radiation). These data were obtained from the 2005 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.
- Design wet-bulb (2%). The outdoor temperature that will, in a normal year, be the highest experienced during all but 2% of the hours in a year. This value would be used for the selection and sizing of evaporative cooling components. These data were obtained from the 2005 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.
- CDD50. Annual cooling degree-days at base 50°F (10°C), obtained from ASHRAE Standard 90.1-2007. (CDD50 values are also given in Appendix F; they may vary slightly from these values because they are based upon data from a different set of years.)
- Other stations. Many more stations in each state or province, and for other countries, are found both in the current *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, *ASHRAE Standard 90.1*, and at various sites on the World Wide Web.

B.3 INTERPRETATIONS BETWEEN STATIONS

As a general rule, weather data from listed stations can be adjusted for nearby locations in these ways:

- Adjustment for elevation. Elevations for many locations are given in Appendix C, Table C.19. For lower elevations, which tend to be warmer, *increase* the design temperatures:

  Dry-bulb temperature: 1°F per 200 feet of elevation (0.9°C per 100 meters of elevation)

  Wet-bulb temperature: 1°F per 500 feet of elevation (0.7°C per 200 meters of elevation)
- Adjustment for air mass (at coastlines). Along the West Coast, both dry-bulb and wet-bulb design temperatures increase with distance from the ocean. Along the Gulf Coast, dry-bulb temperatures increase for the first 200 to 300 miles (320 to 480 km) inland, while wet-bulb temperatures decrease slightly. (Beyond this 200 to 300-mile [320–480-km] belt, both dry-bulb and wet-bulb values decrease.)

TABLE B.1 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
ALABAMA						
Birmingham AP	2918	23.0	90.6/74.8	18.8	76.8	5206
Huntsville AP	3323	20.5	89.7/74.1	18.4	76.3	4855
Mobile AP	1702	30.2	90.6/76.3	16.8	78.3	6761
Montgomery AP	2224	27.2	91.8/75.8	19.2	77.6	5990
Tuscaloosa	2661	24.7	91.5/75.8	19.6	77.8	5624
ALASKA						
Anchorage AP	10,570	–6.7	67.5/56.6	12.0	58.2	688
Fairbanks AP	13,940	–39.9	74.5/58.4	18.5	59.9	1040
Juneau AP	8897	7.7	66.3/56.9	13.3	58.1	559
Nome AP	14,129	–25.4	61.5/54.0	11.0	54.9	274
ARIZONA						
Flagstaff AP	7006	9.2	80.7/55.2	28.4	59.2	1661
Phoenix AP	1110	40.1	106.1/69.8	22.1	74.3	8425
Prescott AP	4995	20.5	89.3/60.1	25.8	64.5	2875
Tucson AP	1678	34.4	100.6/65.4	23.9	70.7	6921
Winslow AP	4776	15.6	91.6/59.9	28.6	63.6	3681
Yuma AP	927	44.6	106.8/72.6	23.8	77.5	8897
ARKANSAS						
Fayetteville AP	4040	14.1	90.4/74.7	20.9	76.0	4452
Fort Smith AP	3478	18.8	93.4/75.7	20.8	77.3	5078
Little Rock AP	3155	21.7	92.9/76.5	19.3	78.2	5299
Texarkana AP	2295	25.6	93.3/76.4	19.2	78.2	6152
CALIFORNIA						
Bakersfield AP	2182	35.0	98.5/69.2	26.6	70.8	6049
Burbank AP	1204	41.4	91.2/67.8	22.7	70.6	5849
Eureka AP	4496	37.5	64.4/57.9	7.3	59.1	1529
Fresno AP	2556	33.3	98.3/69.0	30.1	70.6	5350
Long Beach AP	1430	43.1	84.5/66.6	16.2	69.5	5281
Los Angeles AP	1458	46.1	77.8/64.7	10.8	67.9	4777
Oakland AP	2644	39.8	74.3/63.2	13.1	64.5	3126
Palm Springs	985	34.2	107.0/72.2	30.9	77.1	8555
Sacramento AP	2749	33.8	94.8/68.4	31.9	69.6	4474
San Diego AP	1256	46.9	78.9/67.1	8.6	70.0	5223
San Francisco AP	3016	40.0	74.1/60.9	15.6	62.3	2883
San Luis Obispo	2498	36.4	81.1/63.0	20.6	64.7	3492
Santa Barbara AP	2438	36.9	77.3/63.7	16.0	66.4	3449
Santa Maria AP	2984	34.6	76.7/≈63	18.2	≈64	2918
Stockton AP	2707	32.6	94.6/68.1	30.9	69.1	4755
COLORADO						
Alamosa AP	8749	–11.2	79.6/54.4	32.2	57.4	1374
Colorado Springs AP	6415	5.0	84.5/57.9	25.4	60.8	2312

TABLE B.1 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
Denver AP	6020	3.3	88.0/59.6	27.4	62.3	2732
Fort Collins	6368	5.2	87.4/59.9	27.1	62.6	2411
Grand Junction AP	5548	8.9	92.0/60.1	27.1	63.0	3632
Pueblo AP	5413	5.7	92.2/62.2	31.5	65.4	3358
CONNECTICUT						
Bridgeport AP	5537	14.0	81.7/70.7	13.9	73.4	2997
Hartford	6155	7.6	85.4/70.3	20.7	73.0	2768
DELAWARE						
Wilmington AP	4937	15.0	86.5/72.9	17.2	75.3	3557
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA						
Washington National AP	4047	20.2	89.3/74.0	16.4	76.5	4391
FLORIDA						
Daytona Beach AP	909	37.8	88.9/76.9	15.9	78.3	7567
Fort Myers AP	418	45.2	91.3/77.1	17.1	79.3	8924
Gainesville AP	1267	33.3	90.6/76.2	18.4	78.2	7009
Jacksonville AP	1434	31.8	90.9/77.0	18.3	78.5	6847
Key West AP	100	57.7	88.8/78.8	8.2	79.9	10,174
Miami AP	200	50.5	89.4/77.3	12.0	78.7	9474
Orlando AP	686	41.7	91.2/76.1	17.1	78.2	8227
Panama City, Tyndall AFB	1216	36.0	88.4/78.2	12.3	80.2	7023
Pensacola AP	1617	32.9	90.2/77.2	15.1	79.3	6816
Tallahassee AP	1705	28.3	91.7/75.9	19.1	78.3	6639
Tampa AP	725	40.6	90.3/77.4	14.6	79.2	8239
West Palm Beach AP	323	47.3	89.1/77.5	13.4	78.6	9049
GEORGIA						
Athens	2893	25.0	90.1/74.2	18.8	76.0	5079
Atlanta AP	2991	24.5	89.8/73.9	18.8	75.6	5038
Augusta AP	2565	24.8	92.2/75.3	20.8	77.2	5519
Columbus, Lawson AFB	2261	26.4	92.3/75.2	20.8	77.7	6052
Macon AP	2334	26.9	92.1/75.3	19.6	77.3	5826
Rome AP	3136	21.6	90.7/73.9	21.0	76.1	na
Savannah-Travis AP	1847	29.8	91.2/76.2	17.6	78.0	6389
Valdosta, Moody AFB	1552	30.4	91.8/76.2	19.6	78.4	7216
HAWAII						
Hilo AP	0	62.7	83.6/73.6	12.2	75.3	8759
Honolulu AP	0	62.8	87.8/73.1	12.6	75.1	9949
IDAHO						
Boise AP	5861	9.1	91.1/61.8	30.2	63.2	2807
Coeur D'Alene	6239	10.3	83.8/60.0	27.7	61.9	2216
Lewiston AP	5270	16.6	90.2/63.2	26.5	64.3	2964
Pocatello AP	7180	0.2	87.8/59.8	32.8	61.6	2142
ILLINOIS						
Champaign	5689	3.0	87.9/74.6	19.5	76.6	3697

TABLE B.1 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
Chicago, O'Hare AP	6536	0.8	85.9/71.8	19.2	74.3	2941
Chicago CO	5753	3.1	86.6/72.1	16.0	74.7	3391
Moline AP	6474	–2.0	87.4/73.2	20.0	75.5	3207
Peoria AP	6148	0.1	86.8/73.6	19.3	75.8	3339
Rockford	6969	–3.6	85.4/71.7	19.7	74.3	2852
Springfield AP	5688	2.6	88.1/74.3	19.2	76.5	3635
INDIANA						
Evansville AP	4708	9.9	89.6/74.8	19.3	76.9	4074
Fort Wayne AP	6273	1.9	85.5/71.4	20.0	74.3	3077
Indianapolis AP	5615	4.1	86.4/73.2	18.8	75.6	3453
Lafayette	6228	3.1	87.6/73.2	20.4	75.7	3069
South Bend AP	6331	3.5	85.1/71.3	18.8	74.0	2920
Terre Haute AP	5581	5.1	87.9/74.7	19.7	76.7	3490
IOWA						
Burlington AP	5943	0.2	87.9/74.1	18.5	76.2	3601
Des Moines AP	6497	–2.9	87.4/73.3	18.3	75.3	3371
Dubuque	7327	–3.6	83.5/71.2	18.2	74.0	2672
Mason City AP	7837	–9.7	85.3/74	20.7	74.2	2653
Sioux City AP	6893	–5.3	87.6/72.7	20.4	75.0	3149
Waterloo	7406	–8.3	85.8/72.0	20.0	74.4	2813
KANSAS						
Dodge City AP	5001	6.2	94.5/69.8	24.9	71.9	4090
Goodland AP	5974	2.9	90.9/65.9	26.6	68.4	3018
Manhattan, Fort Riley	5043	6.0	93.2/74.3	22.7	75.8	4155
Topeka AP	5265	4.4	90.9/75.0	20.3	76.7	3880
Wichita AP	4791	8.7	94.5/72.8	22.2	74.8	4351
KENTUCKY						
Bowling Green AP	4328	13.9	88.8/74.5	19.5	76.3	4132
Lexington AP	4783	10.6	86.6/72.9	18.3	74.9	3754
Louisville AP	4514	13.1	88.6/74.0	18.5	76.1	4000
LOUISIANA						
Alexandria AP	2003	29.6	92.3/77.3	18.5	79.1	6407
Baton Rouge AP	1669	30.6	91.2/77.0	16.9	78.8	6845
Lafayette AP	1587	32.1	91.2/77.5	16.2	79.4	6877
Lake Charles AP	1616	32.6	90.5/77.8	15.4	79.7	6813
Monroe AP	2407	27.0	92.9/77.5	19.1	79.6	6039
New Orleans	1513	34.4	90.6/77.9	15.4	79.7	6910
Shreveport AP	2264	26.7	93.0/76.6	19.3	78.2	6166
MAINE						
Bangor, Dow AFB	7930	–1.9	81.3/67.0	20.5	69.4	1916
Caribou AP	9651	–11.3	78.2/na	19.8	na	1470
Portland	7378	3.2	80.2/67.9	18.3	70.1	1943

TABLE B.1 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
MARYLAND						
Baltimore AP	4707	16.7	88.2/73.1	18.7	75.6	3709
Salisbury	4027	18.3	88.0/75.0	19.0	77.0	4002
MASSACHUSETTS						
Boston AP	5641	12.3	84.4/70.3	15.4	72.7	2897
Worcester AP	6979	5.9	80.0/68.4	16.2	70.8	2203
MICHIGAN						
Alpena AP	8284	–1.0	81.1/67.5	23.0	69.9	1779
Detroit	6167	8.4	85.8/70.9	17.6	73.4	3046
Escanaba	8593	–2.9	76.2/66.5	17.1	68.3	1664
Flint AP	6979	3.0	83.3/69.9	20.6	72.4	2451
Grand Rapids AP	6973	5.2	83.6/70.2	20.2	72.9	2537
Muskegon AP	6924	7.4	80.9/69.2	18.1	71.7	2361
Sault Ste. Marie AP	9316	–6.8	77.2/66.1	21.5	68.2	1421
Traverse City AP	7749	3.3	82.4/68.3	21.2	71.0	2127
MINNESOTA						
Bemidji AP	10,200	–17.8	80.8/66.0	18.8	68.1	1781
Duluth AP	9818	–15.1	77.9/65.1	19.5	67.6	1536
International Falls AP	10,487	–22.4	80.1/65.9	21.8	68.2	1630
Minneapolis/St. Paul AP	7981	–9.4	85.0/70.1	18.6	72.7	2680
Rochester AP	8250	–11.1	82.6/70.1	19.5	72.5	2376
MISSISSIPPI						
Columbus AFB	2769	25.0	92.4/76.0	19.4	78.0	5565
Jackson AP	2467	25.1	92.1/76.3	19.4	78.1	5900
Meridian AP	2444	25.2	91.9/75.9	20.4	77.8	5804
MISSOURI						
Columbia AP	5212	45.4	89.1/74.6	20.0	76.2	3752
Joplin	4303	11.6	91.2/75.0	19.5	76.6	4417
Kansas City AP	5393	3.5	89.9/74.7	19.0	76.4	3852
St Louis AP	4758	8.0	90.5/75.0	17.8	77.0	4283
MONTANA						
Billings AP	7164	–6.6	87.2/61.4	25.9	63.0	2466
Bozeman	9908	–10.6	84.3/59.6	32.3	61.1	672
Cut Bank AP	8904	–15.1	80.2/57.3	25.4	58.8	1475
Glasgow AP	8745	–16.8	86.5/62.4	25.3	64.4	2244
Great Falls AP	7741	–12.2	84.6/59.4	27.6	60.9	1993
Helena AP	8031	–9.8	84.3/59.2	28.2	60.7	1922
Kalispell AP	8378	–2.7	82.3/60.4	29.5	61.7	1345
Lewistown AP	8479	–11.1	81.8/59.1	27.5	60.6	1580
Miles City AP	7796	–11.7	90.9/64.4	26.5	66.3	2680
Missoula AP	7792	–0.2	84.8/60.4	30.7	61.9	1679
NEBRASKA						
Grand Island AP	6421	–1.8	89.8/71.4	22.0	73.5	3243
Lincoln CO	6278	–0.2	90.6/73.8	21.5	75.5	3455

TABLE B.1 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
North Platte AP	6859	–2.8	89.1/68.7	25.8	70.9	2737
Omaha AP	6300	–1.5	88.6/73.8	19.8	76.0	3398
Scottsbluff AP	6729	–2.7	89.6/64.4	29.0	66.5	2680
NEVADA						
Elko AP	7077	2.4	89.8/58.1	39.1	59.7	2144
Ely AP	7621	0.6	85.6/55.4	35.6	57.7	1717
Las Vegas AP	2407	32.1	103.7/65.5	24.5	69.1	6745
Lovelock AP	5869	9.8	93.1/59.5	35.5	61.4	2886
Reno AP	5674	14.9	89.9/58.9	35.5	60.3	2504
Tonopah AP	5733	13.7	90.2/57.2	32.0	59.8	2840
Winnemucca AP	6315	7.7	92.3/59.6	37.9	61.0	2379
NEW HAMPSHIRE						
Concord AP	7554	–1.0	84.0/68.7	23.5	71.3	2087
Portsmouth, Pease AFB	6572	8.4	82.6/69.3	18.4	71.6	2418
NEW JERSEY						
Atlantic City CO	5169	13.6	85.9/72.6	18.3	75.1	3198
Newark AP	4888	14.8	87.6/71.9	15.9	74.8	3748
NEW MEXICO						
Albuquerque AP	4425	19.9	91.0/59.9	25.3	63.7	3908
Farmington AP	5464	12.4	89.9/59.9	28.7	63.2	3307
Gallup	6244	5.1	86.3/56.9	32.0	60.5	2355
Taos	na	4.9	82.1/54.5	31.9	57.1	na
Roswell AP	3267	20.2	95.0/65.1	25.4	67.7	4962
Tucumcari AP	3912	15.7	93.0/64.4	24.5	67.7	4196
NEW YORK						
Albany AP	6894	2.2	83.0/69.9	20.6	72.2	2525
Binghamton AP	7273	3.3	79.8/67.2	17.4	69.5	2193
Buffalo AP	6747	6.2	81.3/68.3	17.1	71.1	2468
Massena AP	8255	–9.2	82.2/69.1	21.5	71.3	2046
NYC—Kennedy AP	5027	17.5	83.5/71.2	13.4	74.6	3342
Rochester AP	6734	5.6	82.9/69.8	19.7	72.1	2406
Syracuse AP	6834	2.9	83.0/69.8	19.7	72.0	2399
NORTH CAROLINA						
Asheville AP	4308	16.9	83.7/70.6	19.4	72.4	3365
Charlotte AP	3341	22.5	89.2/73.5	18.0	75.2	4704
Greensboro AP	3865	19.7	87.7/73.1	18.2	74.9	4144
Raleigh/Durham AP	3457	21.2	89.0/74.4	19.1	76.2	4499
Wilmington AP	2470	26.9	89.1/77.0	15.8	78.4	5557
NORTH DAKOTA						
Bismarck AP	8968	–15.2	86.2/66.7	25.9	69.2	2144
Fargo AP	9254	–16.5	84.8/68.5	21.6	71.1	2289
Minot AP	9193	–15.4	84.2/65.5	22.1	68.3	2135

TABLE B.1 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
OHIO						
Akron-Canton AP	6160	5.5	82.9/70.0	18.5	72.3	2779
Cincinnati CO	4988	11.7	88.0/73.1	19.9	75.4	3733
Cleveland AP	6201	6.1	83.7/70.9	18.2	73.1	2755
Columbus AP	5708	9.8	87.2/73.4	19.7	75.4	3119
Dayton AP	5708	5.1	85.7/71.7	19.2	74.0	3249
Mansfield AP	6258	4.1	82.8/70.5	18.3	73.0	2818
Toledo AP	6579	3.4	85.1/71.2	20.7	73.7	2720
Youngstown AP	6544	5.2	82.9/69.4	20.7	71.9	2536
OKLAHOMA						
Oklahoma City AP	3659	17.4	94.5/73.8	19.9	75.5	4972
Tulsa AP	3691	14.7	94.5/75.7	19.1	77.4	5150
OREGON						
Astoria AP	5158	29.3	69.0/60.9	13.1	61.9	1437
Eugene AP	4546	25.6	83.5/64.4	27.9	65.5	2354
Medford AP	4611	24.7	91.6/64.5	32.9	65.7	2989
Pendleton AP	5294	11.2	89.2/62.2	27.3	63.4	2787
Portland AP	4522	27.0	83.1/65.0	21.2	65.9	2517
Salem AP	4927	24.9	83.6/64.5	27.0	65.3	2100
PENNSYLVANIA						
Allentown AP	5785	11.1	85.4/70.9	19.1	73.3	3028
Erie AP	6279	7.7	80.9/70.2	15.2	72.1	2652
Harrisburg AP	5347	13.2	87.0/71.2	20.1	73.7	3358
Philadelphia AP	4954	15.8	87.6/73.0	17.1	75.7	3623
Pittsburgh AP	5968	10.0	84.6/69.8	17.9	72.4	2836
Williamsport	6087	8.3	84.2/70.1	20.1	72.8	2796
RHODE ISLAND						
Providence AP	5884	10.8	83.6/70.3	17.4	73.2	2743
SOUTH CAROLINA						
Anderson	2965	25.4	90.6/74.0	20.1	76.0	4900
Charleston CO	1866	29.1	90.1/76.9	16.1	78.5	6303
Columbia AP	2649	24.6	92.0/74.6	20.1	76.7	5508
Greenville AP	3272	23.6	88.7/73.2	18.6	75.0	4625
SOUTH DAKOTA						
Huron AP	7923	–11.1	87.8/70.8	23.0	73.2	2709
Pierre AP	7411	–7.8	91.2/69.0	25.3	71.5	2938
Rapid City AP	7301	–5.3	87.9/64.7	25.4	67.4	2412
Sioux Falls AP	7809	–10.1	87.0/71.0	21.3	73.4	2735
TENNESSEE						
Bristol-Tri City AP	4406	14.0	84.7/71.1	19.1	72.9	3621
Chattanooga AP	3587	20.5	89.8/74.1	19.4	75.9	4609
Knoxville AP	3937	19.1	87.9/73.5	18.3	75.2	4164
Memphis AP	3082	21.4	92.2/76.7	16.8	78.4	5467

TABLE B.1 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
Nashville AP	3729	16.7	89.8/74.4	18.6	76.3	4689
TEXAS						
Abilene AP	2584	22.1	95.1/70.7	20.8	73.4	6050
Amarillo AP	4258	12.4	92.0/66.4	24.1	69.1	4128
Austin AP	1688	29.8	94.9/74.7	19.9	77.1	7171
Brownsville AP	635	39.9	93.1/77.5	16.4	79.4	8777
Corpus Christi AP	1016	36.4	92.7/77.8	17.2	79.8	8023
Dallas AP	2259	25.0	96.2/74.8	20.1	77.1	6587
Del Rio, Laughlin AFB	1565	33.6	99.4/72.6	21.4	76.3	7207
El Paso AP	2708	25.8	96.1/64.1	24.2	68.5	5488
Fort Worth AP	2304	25.0	97.0/74.8	19.9	77.0	6557
Galveston	1263	38.7	88.5/78.6	7.4	80.2	7378
Houston/Hobby	1371	35.1	92.0/77.3	16.3	79.3	7357
Laredo AFB	1025	37.1	99.0/73.3	21.3	77.0	8495
Lubbock AP	3431	18.0	93.4/67.4	22.3	70.7	4833
Lufkin AP	1951	28.1	92.8/76.6	19.9	78.4	6527
Midland AP	2751	22.9	95.5/67.5	23.8	71.1	5588
Port Arthur AP	1499	33.0	91.0/78.5	15.8	80.2	6994
San Angelo AP	2414	24.4	95.5/70.3	22.4	73.2	6070
San Antonio AP	1644	30.7	94.5/73.8	18.5	76.8	7142
Waco AP	2179	26.6	96.9/75.4	21.2	77.4	6668
Wichita Falls AP	3042	19.9	97.8/73.4	23.6	75.5	5717
UTAH						
Cedar City AP	5962	9.0	88.9/58.2	29.3	61.1	2770
Salt Lake City	5765	12.8	92.1/61.5	26.6	64.2	3276
VERMONT						
Burlington AP	7066	–4.4	82.2/68.2	19.7	70.7	2228
Rutland	7771	–1.2	79.8/66.7	19.0	68.8	2345
VIRGINIA						
Norfolk AP	3495	24.4	88.8/74.9	15.2	76.9	4478
Richmond AP	3963	19.3	89.6/74.5	19.0	76.6	4223
Roanoke AP	4360	17.3	87.1/71.5	19.4	73.4	3715
WASHINGTON						
Bellingham AP	5609	22.4	73.0/62.2	15.2	63.0	1508
Olympia AP	5655	23.2	79.3/63.5	24.3	64.2	1558
Seattle CO	4611	28.1	79.2/62.9	18.0	63.9	2120
Seattle–Tacoma AP	4908	28.4	77.6/62.3	18.5	63.1	2021
Spokane AP	6842	12.0	87.9/63.1	28.3	64.4	2032
Walla Walla AP	4958	14.6	91.2/64.3	27.2	65.5	3161
Yakima AP	5967	10.7	88.5/63.5	31.3	64.7	2348
WEST VIRGINIA						
Beckley	5558	11.0	80.6/68.2	17.3	70.2	2690

TABLE B.1 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
Charleston AP	4646	12.4	86.1/72.0	19.0	74.1	3655
Huntington CO	4665	12.5	86.7/72.6	19.0	74.9	3615
Morgantown	5363	11.2	84.5/70.3	19.8	72.8	3155
WISCONSIN						
Eau Claire AP	8330	–11.6	84.1/69.5	20.3	72.2	2407
Green Bay AP	8089	–6.0	82.3/70.1	20.2	72.3	2177
La Cross AP	7491	–7.3	85.7/71.6	20.0	74.3	2790
Madison AP	7673	–4.8	84.2/70.7	21.1	72.8	2389
Milwaukee AP	7324	0.1	83.2/70.7	16.1	73.0	2388
WYOMING						
Casper AP	7682	–4.3	87.3/58.1	31.4	60.5	2082
Cheyenne AP	7326	0.7	82.6/57.1	25.7	60.1	1886
Lander AP	7889	–6.2	85.5/57.2	27.3	59.3	2184
Laramie AP	9008	–2.7	79.1/53.4	29.2	56.1	1237
Rock Springs AP	8365	0.3	81.9/53.4	27.2	55.4	1734
Sheridan AP	7804	–7.8	87.2/61.7	29.7	63.7	2023
ALBERTA						
Calgary AP	9885	–15.1	76.2/57.6	21.9	59.1	1167
Edmonton AP	11,023	–21.3	74.8/60.4	21.1	61.9	1069
Medicine Hat AP	8988	–18.3	83.5/61.8	24.6	62.4	1981
BRITISH COLUMBIA						
Prince George AP	9495	–16.9	74.1/57.7	22.0	59.0	906
Prince Rupert CO	7650	15.2	61.5/56.2	9.1	57.3	572
Vancouver AP	5682	23.9	71.5/62.4	13.7	63.2	1536
Victoria CO	5494	26.7	72.5/60.7	18.0	61.3	1286
MANITOBA						
The Pas	12,490	–27.1	76.5/62.3	18.6	64.3	1231
Winnipeg AP	10,858	–22.3	80.8/66.1	20.6	68.1	1784
NEW BRUNSWICK						
Fredericton AP	8666	–6.3	79.6/65.9	20.4	68.2	1631
Saint John AP	8776	–3.7	73.0/62.1	17.2	64.2	1179
NEWFOUNDLAND						
Gander	9354	–0.2	72.7/62.0	17.6	64.0	1075
St. John's AP	8888	6.6	70.4/62.7	15.8	64.4	848
NORTHWEST TERRITORIES						
Fort Smith AP	14,192	–36.2	75.8/59.8	20.9	61.6	932
Inuvik	18,409	–43.1	71.3/57.2	18.1	58.2	489
Yellowknife AP	15,555	–39.0	71.2/57.6	14.3	59.1	851
NOVA SCOTIA						
Halifax AP	8133	2.3	75.5/64.6	16.6	67.0	1464
Sydney AP	8364	3.2	74.7/64.8	17.1	66.6	1287
Yarmouth AP	7515	10.4	69.1/63.5	13.1	64.7	1180

TABLE B.1 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
ONTARIO						
Ottawa AP	8571	–7.3	80.6/67.1	18.2	69.5	2045
Sudbury AP	9990	–13.7	78.0/64.1	18.9	66.7	1557
Thunder Bay	10,562	–17.1	76.9/64.3	21.7	66.0	1198
Toronto AP	7306	2.0	81.2/68.2	19.1	70.4	2370
PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND						
Charlottetown AP	8598	–1.4	74.7/65.4	15.1	67.2	1400
QUEBEC						
Montréal AP	8285	–6.6	80.1/68.2	17.1	70.2	2146
Québec AP	9449	–11.0	78.0/66.2	18.4	68.5	1571
Sept Iles AP	11,287	–15.1	67.0/58.6	13.4	60.3	690
Trois Rivières	9124	–9.1	76.3/68.4	12.0	69.9	1766
Val d'Or AP	11,256	–22.6	77.0/63.4	20.2	65.7	1193
SASKATCHEWAN						
Prince Albert AP	12,009	–29.6	77.5/61.6	21.1	63.5	1252
Regina AP	10,773	–24.1	81.1/62.5	22.9	64.5	1620
Saskatoon AP	11,118	–26.0	79.7/61.9	22.4	63.7	1537
YUKON TERRITORY						
Whitehorse AP	12,797	–35.2	69.7/54.0	20.9	55.1	611

[a]U.S. solar data are available from the National Climatic Data Center, Federal Building, Asheville, NC 28801. Canadian solar data are available from The Canadian Climate Center, Atmospheric Environment Service, 4905 Dufferin St., Downsview, Ontario M3H 5T4.

TABLE B.2 Outdoor Design Conditions: Mexico and Puerto Rico (I-P units)

	Winter		*Summer*			
Country and Station	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb (°F) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2%)	CDD50°F
MEXICO						
Guadalajara	701	38.8	88.2/60.1	18.6	67.0	—
Mérida	10	60.4	96.6/75.7	19.5	79.7	11,112
Mexico City	1203	42.4	80.4/56.4	18.8	60.2	4762
Monterrey	844	41.3	98.4/74.5	21.8	77.8	8326
PUERTO RICO						
San Juan	0	70.5	89.2/77.8	10.4	79.7	11,406

TABLE B.3 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
ALABAMA						
Birmingham AP	1621	–5.0	32.5/23.8	10.4	24.9	2892
Huntsville AP	1846	–6.4	32.1/23.4	10.2	24.6	2697
Mobile AP	946	–1.0	32.6/24.6	9.3	25.7	3756
Montgomery AP	1236	–2.7	33.2/24.3	10.7	25.3	3328
Tuscaloosa	1478	–4.1	33.1/24.3	10.9	25.4	3124
ALASKA						
Anchorage AP	5872	–21.5	19.7/13.7	6.7	14.6	382
Fairbanks AP	7744	–40.0	23.6/14.7	10.3	15.5	578
Juneau AP	4943	–13.5	19.1/13.8	7.4	14.5	311
Nome AP	7849	–31.9	16.4/12.2	6.1	12.7	152
ARIZONA						
Flagstaff AP	3892	–12.7	27.1/12.9	15.8	15.1	923
Phoenix AP	617	4.5	41.2/21.0	12.3	23.5	4680
Prescott AP	2775	–6.4	31.8/15.6	14.3	18.1	1597
Tucson AP	932	1.3	38.1/18.6	13.3	21.5	3845
Winslow AP	2653	–9.1	33.1/15.5	15.9	17.6	2045
Yuma AP	515	7.0	41.6/22.6	13.2	25.3	4943
ARKANSAS						
Fayetteville AP	2244	–9.9	32.4/23.7	11.6	24.4	2473
Fort Smith AP	1932	–7.3	34.1/24.3	11.6	25.2	2821
Little Rock AP	1753	–5.7	33.8/24.7	10.7	25.7	2944
Texarkana AP	1275	–3.6	34.1/24.7	10.7	25.7	3418
CALIFORNIA						
Bakersfield AP	1212	1.7	36.9/20.7	14.8	21.6	3361
Burbank AP	669	5.2	32.9/19.9	12.6	21.4	3249
Eureka AP	2498	3.1	18.0/14.4	4.1	15.1	849
Fresno AP	1420	0.7	36.8/20.6	16.7	21.4	2972
Long Beach AP	794	6.2	29.2/19.2	9.0	20.8	2934
Los Angeles AP	810	7.8	25.4/18.2	6.0	19.9	2654
Oakland AP	1469	4.3	23.5/17.3	7.3	18.1	1737
Palm Springs	547	1.2	41.7/22.3	17.2	25.1	4753
Sacramento AP	1527	1.0	34.9/20.2	17.7	20.9	2486
San Diego AP	698	8.3	26.1/19.5	4.8	21.1	2902
San Francisco AP	1676	4.4	23.4/16.1	8.7	16.8	1602
San Luis Obispo	1388	2.4	27.3/17.2	11.4	18.2	1940
Santa Barbara AP	1354	2.7	25.2/17.6	8.9	19.1	1916
Santa Maria AP	1658	1.4	24.8/≈17	10.1	≈18	1621
Stockton AP	1504	0.3	34.8/20.1	17.2	20.6	2642
COLORADO						
Alamosa AP	4861	–24.0	26.4/12.4	17.9	12.6	763
Colorado Springs AP	3564	–15.0	29.2/14.4	14.1	16.0	1284

TABLE B.3 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
Denver AP	3344	–15.9	31.1/15.3	15.2	16.8	1517
Fort Collins	3538	–14.9	30.8/15.5	15.1	17.0	1339
Grand Junction AP	3082	–12.8	33.3/15.6	15.1	17.2	2018
Pueblo AP	3007	–14.6	33.4/16.8	17.5	18.6	1866
CONNECTICUT						
Bridgeport AP	3076	–10.0	27.6/21.5	7.7	23.0	1665
Hartford	3419	–13.6	29.7/21.3	11.5	22.8	1538
DELAWARE						
Wilmington AP	2743	–9.4	30.3/22.7	9.6	24.1	1976
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA						
Washington National AP	2248	–6.6	31.8/23.3	9.1	24.7	2439
FLORIDA						
Daytona Beach AP	505	3.2	31.6/24.9	8.8	25.7	4204
Fort Myers AP	232	7.3	32.9/25.1	9.5	26.3	4958
Gainesville AP	704	0.7	32.6/24.6	10.2	25.7	3894
Jacksonville AP	797	–0.1	32.7/25.0	4.6	25.8	3804
Key West AP	56	14.3	31.6/26.0	4.6	26.6	5652
Miami AP	111	10.3	31.9/25.2	6.7	25.9	5263
Orlando AP	381	5.4	32.9/24.5	9.5	25.7	4571
Panama City, Tyndall AFB	676	2.2	31.3/25.7	6.8	26.8	3902
Pensacola AP	898	0.5	32.3/25.1	8.4	26.3	3787
Tallahassee AP	947	–2.1	33.2/24.4	10.6	25.7	3688
Tampa AP	403	4.8	32.4/25.2	8.1	26.2	4577
West Palm Beach AP	179	8.5	31.7/25.3	7.4	25.9	5027
GEORGIA						
Athens	1607	–3.9	32.3/23.4	10.4	24.4	2822
Atlanta AP	1662	–4.2	32.1/23.3	10.4	24.2	2799
Augusta AP	1425	-4.0	33.4/24.1	11.6	25.1	3066
Columbus, Lawson AFB	1256	–3.1	33.5/24.0	11.6	25.4	3362
Macon AP	1297	–2.8	33.4/24.1	10.9	25.2	3237
Rome AP	1742	–5.8	32.6/23.3	11.7	24.5	na
Savannah-Travis AP	1026	–1.2	32.9/24.6	9.8	25.6	3549
Valdosta, Moody AFB	862	–0.9	33.2/24.6	10.9	25.8	4009
HAWAII						
Hilo AP	0	17.1	28.7/23.1	6.8	24.1	4866
Honolulu AP	0	17.1	31.0/22.8	7.0	23.9	5527
IDAHO						
Boise AP	3256	–12.7	32.8/16.6	16.8	17.3	1559
Coeur D'Alene	3466	–12.1	28.8/15.6	15.4	16.6	1231
Lewiston AP	2928	–8.6	32.3/17.3	14.7	17.9	1647
Pocatello AP	3989	–17.7	31.0/15.4	18.2	16.4	1190

TABLE B.3 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
ILLINOIS						
Champaign	3161	–16.1	31.1/23.7	10.8	24.8	2054
Chicago, O'Hare AP	3631	–17.3	29.9/22.1	10.7	23.5	1634
Chicago CO	3196	–16.1	30.3/22.3	8.9	23.7	1884
Moline AP	3597	–18.9	30.8/22.9	11.1	24.2	1782
Peoria AP	3416	–17.7	30.4/23.1	10.7	24.3	1855
Rockford	3872	–19.8	29.7/22.1	10.9	23.5	1584
Springfield AP	3160	–16.3	31.2/23.5	10.7	24.7	2019
INDIANA						
Evansville AP	2616	–12.3	32.0/21.9	10.7	24.9	2263
Fort Wayne AP	3485	–16.7	29.7/21.9	11.1	23.5	1709
Indianapolis AP	3119	–15.5	30.2/22.9	10.4	24.2	1918
Lafayette	3460	–16.1	30.9/22.9	11.3	24.3	1705
South Bend AP	3517	–15.8	29.5/21.8	10.4	23.3	1622
Terre Haute AP	3101	–14.9	31.1/23.7	10.9	24.8	1939
IOWA						
Burlington AP	3302	–17.7	31.1/23.4	10.3	24.6	2001
Des Moines AP	3609	–19.4	30.8/22.9	10.2	24.1	1837
Dubuque	4071	–19.7	28.6/21.8	10.1	23.3	1484
Mason City AP	4354	–23.2	29.6/23.3	11.5	23.4	1474
Sioux City AP	3829	–20.7	30.9/22.6	11.3	23.9	1749
Waterloo	4114	–22.4	29.9/22.2	11.1	23.6	1563
KANSAS						
Dodge City AP	2778	–14.3	34.7/21.0	13.8	22.2	2272
Goodland AP	3319	–16.2	32.7/18.8	14.8	20.2	1677
Manhattan, Fort Riley	2802	–14.4	34.0/23.5	12.6	24.3	2308
Topeka AP	2925	–15.3	32.7/23.9	11.3	24.8	2156
Wichita AP	2662	–12.9	34.7/22.7	12.3	23.8	2417
KENTUCKY						
Bowling Green AP	2404	–10.1	31.6/23.6	10.8	24.6	2296
Lexington AP	2657	–11.9	30.3/22.7	10.2	23.8	2086
Louisville AP	2508	–10.5	31.4/23.3	10.3	24.5	2222
LOUISIANA						
Alexandria AP	1113	–1.3	33.5/25.2	10.3	26.2	3559
Baton Rouge AP	927	–0.8	32.9/25.0	9.4	26.0	3803
Lafayette AP	882	0.1	32.9/25.3	9.0	26.3	3821
Lake Charles AP	898	0.3	32.5/25.4	8.6	26.5	3785
Monroe AP	1337	–2.8	33.8/25.3	10.6	26.4	3355
New Orleans	841	1.3	32.6/25.5	8.6	26.5	3839
Shreveport AP	1258	–2.9	33.9/24.8	10.7	25.7	3426
MAINE						
Bangor, Dow AFB	4406	–18.8	27.4/19.4	11.4	20.8	1064

TABLE B.3 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
Caribou AP	5362	–24.1	25.7/na	11.0	na	817
Portland	4099	–16.0	26.8/19.9	10.2	21.2	1079
MARYLAND						
Baltimore AP	2615	–8.5	31.2/22.8	10.4	24.2	2061
Salisbury	2237	–7.6	31.1/23.9	10.6	25.0	2223
MASSACHUSETTS						
Boston AP	3134	–10.9	29.1/21.3	8.5	22.6	1609
Worcester AP	3877	–14.5	26.7/20.2	9.0	21.6	1224
MICHIGAN						
Alpena AP	4602	–18.3	27.3/19.7	12.8	21.1	988
Detroit	3426	–13.1	29.9/21.6	9.8	23.0	1692
Escanaba	4774	–19.4	24.6/19.2	9.5	20.2	924
Flint AP	3877	–16.1	28.5/21.1	11.4	22.4	1362
Grand Rapids AP	3874	–14.9	28.7/21.2	11.2	22.7	1409
Muskegon AP	3847	–13.7	27.2/20.7	10.1	22.1	1312
Sault Ste. Marie AP	5176	–21.6	25.1/18.9	11.9	20.1	789
Traverse City AP	4305	–15.9	28.0/20.2	11.8	21.7	1182
MINNESOTA						
Bemidji AP	5667	–27.7	27.1/18.9	10.4	20.1	989
Duluth AP	5454	–26.2	25.5/18.4	10.8	19.8	853
International Falls AP	5826	–30.2	26.7/18.8	12.1	20.1	906
Minneapolis/St. Paul AP	4434	–23.0	29.4/21.2	10.3	22.6	1489
Rochester AP	4583	–23.9	28.1/21.2	10.8	22.5	1320
MISSISSIPPI						
Columbus AFB	1538	–3.9	33.6/24.4	10.7	25.6	3092
Jackson AP	1371	–3.8	33.6/24.6	10.7	25.6	3278
Meridian AP	1358	–3.8	33.3/24.4	11.3	25.4	3224
MISSOURI						
Columbia AP	2896	7.4	31.7/23.7	11.1	24.6	2084
Joplin	2391	–11.3	32.9/23.9	10.8	24.8	2454
Kansas City AP	2996	–15.8	32.2/23.7	10.6	24.7	2140
St Louis AP	2643	–13.3	32.5/23.9	9.9	25.0	2379
MONTANA						
Billings AP	3980	–21.4	30.7/16.3	14.4	17.2	1370
Bozeman	5504	–23.7	29.1/15.3	17.9	16.2	373
Cut Bank AP	4947	–26.2	26.8/14.1	14.1	14.9	819
Glasgow AP	4858	–27.1	30.3/16.9	14.1	18.0	1247
Great Falls AP	4301	–24.6	29.2/15.2	15.3	16.1	1107
Helena AP	4462	–23.2	29.1/15.1	15.7	16.9	1068
Kalispell AP	4654	–19.3	27.9/15.8	16.4	16.5	747
Lewistown AP	4711	–23.9	27.7/15.1	15.3	15.9	878

TABLE B.3 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
Miles City AP	4331	–24.3	32.7/18.0	14.7	19.1	1489
Missoula AP	4329	–17.9	29.3/15.8	17.1	16.6	933
NEBRASKA						
Grand Island AP	3567	–18.8	32.1/21.9	12.2	23.1	1802
Lincoln CO	3488	–17.9	32.6/23.2	11.9	24.2	1919
North Platte AP	3811	–19.3	31.7/20.4	14.3	21.6	1521
Omaha AP	3500	–18.6	31.4/23.2	11.0	24.4	1888
Scottsbluff AP	3738	–19.3	32.0/18.0	16.1	19.2	1489
NEVADA						
Elko AP	3932	–16.4	32.1/14.5	21.7	15.4	1191
Ely AP	4234	–17.4	29.8/13.0	19.8	14.3	954
Las Vegas AP	1337	0.1	39.8/18.6	13.6	20.6	3747
Lovelock AP	3261	–12.3	33.9/15.3	19.7	16.3	1603
Reno AP	3152	–9.5	32.2/14.9	19.7	15.7	1391
Tonopah AP	3185	–10.2	32.3/14.0	17.8	15.4	1578
Winnemucca AP	3508	–13.5	33.5/15.3	21.1	16.1	1322
NEW HAMPSHIRE						
Concord AP	4197	–18.3	28.9/20.4	13.1	21.8	1159
Portsmouth, Pease AFB	3651	–13.1	28.1/20.7	10.2	22.0	1343
NEW JERSEY						
Atlantic City CO	2872	–10.2	29.9/22.6	10.2	23.9	1777
Newark AP	2716	–9.6	30.9/22.2	8.8	23.8	2082
NEW MEXICO						
Albuquerque AP	2458	–6.7	32.8/15.5	14.1	17.6	2171
Farmington AP	3036	–10.9	32.2/15.5	15.9	17.3	1837
Gallup	3469	–14.9	30.2/13.8	17.8	15.8	1308
Taos	na	–15.1	27.8/12.5	17.7	13.9	na
Roswell AP	1815	–6.6	35.0/18.4	14.1	19.8	2757
Tucumcari AP	2173	–9.1	33.4/18.0	13.6	19.8	2331
NEW YORK						
Albany AP	3830	–16.6	28.3/21.1	11.4	22.3	1403
Binghamton AP	4041	–15.9	26.6/19.6	9.7	20.8	1218
Buffalo AP	3748	–14.3	27.4/20.2	9.5	21.7	1371
Massena AP	4586	–22.9	27.9/20.6	11.9	21.8	1137
NYC—Kennedy AP	2793	–8.1	28.6/21.8	7.4	23.7	1857
Rochester AP	3741	–14.7	28.3/21.0	10.9	22.3	1337
Syracuse AP	3797	–16.2	28.3/21.0	10.9	22.2	1333
NORTH CAROLINA						
Asheville AP	2393	–8.4	28.7/21.4	10.8	22.4	1869
Charlotte AP	1856	–5.3	31.8/23.1	10.0	24.0	2613
Greensboro AP	2147	–6.8	30.9/22.8	10.1	23.8	2302
Raleigh/Durham AP	1921	–6.0	31.7/23.6	10.6	24.6	2499
Wilmington AP	1372	–2.8	31.7/25.0	8.8	25.8	3087

TABLE B.3 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
NORTH DAKOTA						
Bismarck AP	4982	–26.2	30.1/19.3	14.4	20.7	1191
Fargo AP	5141	–26.9	29.3/20.3	12.0	21.7	1272
Minot AP	5107	–26.3	29.0/18.6	12.3	20.2	1186
OHIO						
Akron-Canton AP	3422	–14.7	28.3/21.1	10.3	22.4	1544
Cincinnati CO	2771	–11.3	31.1/22.8	11.1	24.1	2074
Cleveland AP	3445	–14.4	28.7/21.6	10.1	22.8	1531
Columbus AP	3171	–12.3	30.7/23.0	10.9	24.1	1733
Dayton AP	3171	–14.9	29.8/22.1	10.7	23.3	1805
Mansfield AP	3477	–15.5	28.2/21.4	10.2	22.8	1566
Toledo AP	3655	–15.9	29.5/21.8	11.5	23.2	1511
Youngstown AP	3636	–14.9	28.3/20.8	11.5	22.2	1409
OKLAHOMA						
Oklahoma City AP	2033	–8.1	34.7/23.2	11.1	24.2	2762
Tulsa AP	2051	–9.6	34.7/24.3	10.6	25.2	2861
OREGON						
Astoria AP	2866	–1.5	20.6/16.1	7.3	16.6	798
Eugene AP	2526	–3.6	28.6/18.0	15.5	18.6	1308
Medford AP	2562	–4.1	33.1/18.1	18.3	18.7	1661
Pendleton AP	2941	–11.6	31.8/16.8	15.2	17.4	1548
Portland AP	2512	–2.8	28.4/18.3	11.8	18.8	1398
Salem AP	2737	–3.9	28.7/18.1	15.0	18.5	1167
PENNSYLVANIA						
Allentown AP	3214	–11.6	29.7/21.6	10.6	22.9	1682
Erie AP	3488	–13.5	27.2/21.2	8.4	22.3	1473
Harrisburg AP	2971	–10.4	30.6/21.8	11.2	23.2	1866
Philadelphia AP	2752	–9.0	30.9/22.8	9.5	24.3	2013
Pittsburgh AP	3316	–12.2	29.2/21.0	9.9	22.4	1576
Williamsport	3382	–13.2	29.0/21.2	11.2	22.7	1553
RHODE ISLAND						
Providence AP	3269	–11.8	28.7/21.3	9.7	22.9	1524
SOUTH CAROLINA						
Anderson	1647	–3.7	32.6/23.3	11.2	24.4	2722
Charleston CO	1037	–1.6	32.3/24.9	8.9	25.8	3502
Columbia AP	1472	–4.1	33.3/23.7	11.2	24.8	3060
Greenville AP	1818	–4.7	31.5/22.9	10.3	23.9	2569
SOUTH DAKOTA						
Huron AP	4402	–23.9	31.0/21.6	12.8	22.9	1505
Pierre AP	4117	–22.1	32.9/20.6	14.1	21.9	1632
Rapid City AP	4056	–20.7	31.1/18.2	14.1	19.7	1340
Sioux Falls AP	4338	–23.4	30.6/21.7	11.8	23.0	1519

TABLE B.3 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
TENNESSEE						
Bristol-Tri City AP	2448	–10.0	29.3/21.7	10.6	22.7	2012
Chattanooga AP	1993	–6.4	32.1/23.4	10.8	24.4	2561
Knoxville AP	2187	–7.2	31.1/23.1	10.2	24.0	2313
Memphis AP	1712	–5.9	33.4/24.8	9.3	25.8	3037
Nashville AP	2072	–8.5	32.1/23.6	10.3	24.6	2605
TEXAS						
Abilene AP	1436	–5.5	35.1/21.5	11.6	23.0	3361
Amarillo AP	2366	–10.9	33.3/19.1	13.4	20.6	2293
Austin AP	938	–1.2	34.9/23.7	11.1	25.1	3984
Brownsville AP	353	4.4	33.9/25.3	9.1	26.3	4876
Corpus Christi AP	564	2.4	33.7/25.4	9.6	26.6	4457
Dallas AP	1255	–3.9	35.7/23.8	11.2	25.1	3659
Del Rio, Laughlin AFB	869	0.9	37.4/22.6	11.9	24.6	4004
El Paso AP	1504	–3.4	35.6/17.8	13.4	20.3	3049
Fort Worth AP	1280	–3.9	36.1/23.8	11.1	25.0	3643
Galveston	702	3.7	31.4/25.9	4.1	26.8	4099
Houston/Hobby	762	1.7	33.3/25.2	9.1	26.3	4087
Laredo AFB	569	2.8	37.2/22.9	11.8	25.0	4719
Lubbock AP	1906	–7.8	34.1/19.7	12.4	21.5	2685
Lufkin AP	1084	–2.2	33.8/24.8	11.1	25.8	3626
Midland AP	1528	–5.1	35.3/19.7	13.2	21.7	3104
Port Arthur AP	833	0.6	32.8/25.8	8.8	26.8	3886
San Angelo AP	1341	–4.2	35.3/21.3	12.4	22.9	3372
San Antonio AP	913	–0.7	34.7/23.2	10.3	24.9	3968
Waco AP	1211	–3.0	36.1/24.1	11.8	25.2	3704
Wichita Falls AP	1690	–6.7	36.6/23.0	13.1	24.2	3176
UTAH						
Cedar City AP	3312	–12.8	31.6/14.6	16.3	16.2	1539
Salt Lake City	3203	–10.7	33.4/16.4	14.8	17.9	1820
VERMONT						
Burlington AP	3926	–20.2	27.9/20.1	10.9	21.5	1238
Rutland	4317	–18.4	26.6/19.3	10.6	20.4	1303
VIRGINIA						
Norfolk AP	1942	–4.2	31.6/23.8	8.4	24.9	2488
Richmond AP	2202	–7.1	32.0/23.6	10.6	24.8	2346
Roanoke AP	2422	–8.2	30.6/21.9	10.8	23.0	2064
WASHINGTON						
Bellingham AP	3116	–5.3	22.8/16.8	8.4	17.2	838
Olympia AP	3142	–4.9	26.3/17.5	13.5	17.9	866
Seattle CO	2562	–2.2	26.2/17.2	10.0	17.7	1178
Seattle–Tacoma AP	2727	–2	25.3/16.8	10.3	17.3	1123
Spokane AP	3801	–11.1	31.1/17.3	15.7	18.0	1129

TABLE B.3 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
Walla Walla AP	2754	–9.7	32.9/17.9	15.1	18.6	1756
Yakima AP	3315	–11.8	31.4/17.5	17.4	18.2	1304
WEST VIRGINIA						
Beckley	3088	–11.7	27.0/20.1	9.6	21.2	1494
Charleston AP	2581	–10.9	30.1/22.2	10.6	23.4	2031
Huntington CO	2592	–10.8	30.4/22.6	10.6	23.8	2008
Morgantown	2979	–11.6	29.2/21.3	11.0	22.7	1753
WISCONSIN						
Eau Claire AP	4628	–24.2	28.9/20.8	11.3	22.3	1337
Green Bay AP	4494	–21.1	27.9/21.2	11.2	22.4	1209
La Cross AP	4162	–21.8	29.8/22.0	11.1	23.5	1550
Madison AP	4263	–20.4	29.0/21.5	11.7	22.7	1327
Milwaukee AP	4069	–17.7	28.4/21.5	8.9	22.8	1327
WYOMING						
Casper AP	4268	–20.2	30.7/14.5	17.4	15.8	1157
Cheyenne AP	4070	–17.4	28.1/13.9	14.3	15.6	1048
Lander AP	4383	–21.2	29.7/14.0	15.2	15.2	1213
Laramie AP	5004	–19.3	26.2/11.9	16.2	13.4	687
Rock Springs AP	4647	–17.6	27.7/11.9	15.1	13.0	963
Sheridan AP	4336	–22.1	30.7/16.5	16.5	17.6	1124
ALBERTA						
Calgary AP	5492	–26.2	24.6/14.2	12.2	15.1	648
Edmonton AP	6124	–29.6	23.8/15.8	11.7	16.6	594
Medicine Hat AP	4993	–27.9	28.6/16.6	13.7	16.9	1101
BRITISH COLUMBIA						
Prince George AP	5275	–27.2	23.4/14.3	12.2	15.0	503
Prince Rupert CO	4250	–9.3	16.4/13.4	5.1	14.1	318
Vancouver AP	3157	–4.5	21.9/16.9	7.6	17.3	853
Victoria CO	3052	–2.9	22.5/15.9	10.0	16.3	714
MANITOBA						
The Pas	6939	–32.8	24.7/16.8	10.3	17.9	684
Winnipeg AP	6032	–30.2	27.1/18.9	11.4	20.1	991
NEW BRUNSWICK						
Fredericton AP	4814	–21.3	26.4/18.8	11.3	20.1	906
Saint John AP	4876	–19.8	22.8/16.7	9.6	17.9	655
NEWFOUNDLAND						
Gander	5197	–17.9	22.6/16.7	9.8	17.8	597
St. John's AP	4938	–14.1	21.3/17.1	8.8	18.0	471
NORTHWEST TERRITORIES						
Fort Smith AP	7884	–37.9	24.3/15.4	11.6	16.4	518
Inuvik	10,227	–41.7	21.8/14.0	10.1	14.6	272
Yellowknife AP	8642	–39.4	21.8/14.2	7.9	15.1	473

TABLE B.3 Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
NOVA SCOTIA						
Halifax AP	4518	–16.5	24.2/18.1	9.1	19.4	813
Sydney AP	4646	–16.0	23.7/18.2	9.5	19.2	715
Yarmouth AP	4175	–12.0	20.6/17.5	7.3	18.2	656
ONTARIO						
Ottawa AP	4762	–21.8	27.0/19.5	14.3	20.8	1136
Sudbury AP	5550	–25.4	25.6/17.8	10.5	19.3	865
Thunder Bay	5868	–27.3	24.9/17.9	12.1	18.9	666
Toronto AP	4059	–16.7	27.3/20.1	10.6	21.3	1317
PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND						
Charlottetown AP	4777	–18.6	23.7/18.6	8.4	19.6	778
QUEBEC						
Montréal AP	4603	–21.4	26.7/20.1	9.5	21.2	1192
Québec AP	5249	–23.9	25.6/19.0	10.2	20.3	873
Sept Iles AP	6271	–26.2	19.4/14.8	7.4	15.7	383
Trois Rivières	5069	–22.8	24.6/20.2	6.7	21.1	981
Val d'Or AP	6253	–30.3	25.0/17.4	11.2	18.7	663
SASKATCHEWAN						
Prince Albert AP	6672	–34.2	25.3/16.4	11.7	17.5	696
Regina AP	5985	–31.2	27.3/16.9	12.7	18.1	900
Saskatoon AP	6177	–32.2	26.5/16.6	12.4	17.6	854
YUKON TERRITORY						
Whitehorse AP	7109	–37.3	20.9/12.2	11.6	12.8	339

[a]U.S. solar data are available from the National Climatic Data Center, Federal Building, Asheville, NC 28801. Canadian solar data are available from The Canadian Climate Center, Atmospheric Environment Service, 4905 Dufferin St., Downsview, Ontario M3H 5T4.

TABLE B.4 Outdoor Design Conditions: Mexico and Puerto Rico (SI units)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station	HDD18.3°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (99%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2%)	CDD10.0°C
MEXICO						
Guadalajara	389	3.8	31.2/15.6	10.3	19.4	—
Mérida	6	15.8	35.9/24.3	10.8	26.5	617
Mexico City	668	5.8	26.9/13.6	10.4	15.7	2646
Monterrey	469	5.2	36.9/23.6	12.1	25.4	4626
PUERTO RICO						
San Juan	0	21.4	31.8/25.4	5.8	26.5	6337

TABLE B.5 Legacy Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (97.5%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb (°F) (2.5%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2.5%)	CDD74°F
CALIFORNIA						
Barstow AP	2585	29	104/68	37	71	27584
Los Angeles AP	1595	43	80/68	15	69	4306
Los Angeles CO	1210	40	89/70	20	71	10575
Needles AP	1394	33	110/71	27	75	65218
Oakland AP	2880	36	80/63	19	64	435
Pomona CO	1973	30	99/69	36	72	10240
Redding AP	2548	31	102/67	32	69	27881
Sacramento AP	2775	32	98/70	36	71	10464
San Diego AP	1284	44	80/69	12	70	4643
San Luis Obispo	2503	35	88/70	26	71	1085
Santa Monica CO	1873	43	80/68	16	69	1908
COLORADO						
Denver AP	6023	1	91/59	28	63	5908
Leadville	—	–4	81/51	30	55	—
CONNECTICUT						
New Haven AP	—	7	84/73	17	75	—
GEORGIA						
Rome AP	3136	22	93/76	23	78	17745
HAWAII						
Wahiawa	—	59	85/72	14	74	—
IDAHO						
Moscow	6691	0	87/62	32	64	1986
ILLINOIS						
Carbondale	4568	7	93/77	21	79	14114
INDIANA						
Muncie	—	2	90/73	22	76	—
IOWA						
Ames	6882	–6	90/74	23	76	7453
Iowa City	6378	–6	89/76	22	78	10098
MARYLAND						
Cumberland	5108	10	89/74	22	76	7088
Hagerstown	5092	12	91/74	22	76	7346
MASSACHUSETTS						
Springfield	5955	0	87/71	19	73	5205
MISSISSIPPI						
Vicksburg CO	2200	26	95/78	21	80	24595
MISSOURI						
Springfield AP	4665	9	93/74	23	77	16262
MONTANA						
Billings AP	7220	–10	91/64	31	66	6167

TABLE B.5 Legacy Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (97.5%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb (°F) (2.5%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2.5%)	CDD74°F
NEBRASKA						
Omaha AP	6201	–3	91/75	22	77	13180
NEVADA						
Las Vegas AP	2535	28	106/65	30	70	43153
NEW JERSEY						
Trenton CO	4953	14	88/74	19	76	7393
NEW MEXICO						
Albuquerque AP	4415	16	94/61	27	65	11012
Las Cruces	3120	20	96/64	30	68	14507
Los Alamos	6389	9	87/60	32	61	1235
NEW YORK						
Buffalo AP	6799	6	85/70	21	73	3044
Ithaca	7182	0	85/71	24	73	1583
NORTH DAKOTA						
Williston	9252	–21	88/67	25	70	4034
OKLAHOMA						
Norman	—	13	96/74	24	76	—
Oklahoma City AP	3742	13	97/74	23	77	22978
Stillwater	3802	13	96/74	24	76	23621
OREGON						
Bend	7082	4	87/60	33	62	647
Eugene AP	4803	22	89/66	31	67	1296
Medford AP	4803	23	94/67	35	68	6151
Portland AP	4693	23	85/67	23	67	1851
Portland CO	4417	24	86/67	21	67	2105
Salem AP	4978	23	88/66	31	68	1081
PENNSYLVANIA						
Harrisburg AP	5339	11	91/74	21	76	9071
Scranton/Wilkes-Barre	6332	5	87/71	19	73	3774
State College	6252	7	87/71	23	73	3484
RHODE ISLAND						
Newport	6122	9	85/72	16	75	1682
SOUTH CAROLINA						
Spartanburg AP	3246	22	91/74	20	76	14069
TEXAS						
Bryan AP	1784	29	96/76	20	78	33178
Sherman Perrin AFB	2943	20	98/75	22	77	29686
UTAH						
Vernal AP	7671	0	89/60	32	63	2678
VERMONT						
Barre	8529	–11	81/69	23	71	1377
VIRGINIA						
Charlottesville	4195	18	91/74	23	76	10287

TABLE B.5 Legacy Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD65°F	Design Dry-Bulb (°F) (97.5%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb (°F) (2.5%)	Mean Daily Range (°F)	Design Wet-Bulb (°F) (2.5%)	CDD74°F
WASHINGTON						
Seattle CO	4684	27	82/66	19	67	897
Seattle–Tacoma AP	5122	26	80/64	22	64	1050
WEST VIRGINIA						
Wheeling	5456	5	86/71	21	73	6793
WISCONSIN						
Ashland	9067	–16	82/68	23	70	1288
BRITISH COLUMBIA						
Vancouver AP	5454	19	77/66	17	67	221
MANITOBA						
Flin Flon	12551	–37	81/66	19	68	1424
NEWFOUNDLAND						
Corner Brook	8550	0	73/63	17	66	505
ONTARIO						
Kitchener	7463	–2	85/72	23	74	2447
QUEBEC						
Chicoutimi	9781	–22	83/68	20	70	1135

[a]U.S. solar data are available from the National Climatic Data Center, Federal Building, Asheville, NC 28801. Canadian solar data are available from The Canadian Climate Center, Atmospheric Environment Service, 4905 Dufferin St., Downsview, Ontario M3H 5T4.

TABLE B.6 Legacy Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (97.5%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2.5%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2.5%)	CDH23°C
CALIFORNIA						
Barstow AP	1436	–2	40/20	21	22	15,324
Los Angeles AP	886	6	27/20	8	21	2392
Los Angeles CO	672	4	32/21	11	22	5875
Needles AP	774	1	43/22	15	24	3623
Oakland AP	1600	2	27/17	11	18	242
Pomona CO	1096	–1	37/21	20	22	5689
Redding AP	1416	–1	39/19	18	21	15,489
Sacramento AP	1542	0	37/21	20	22	5813
San Diego AP	713	7	27/21	7	21	2579
San Luis Obispo	1391	2	31/21	14	22	603
Santa Monica CO	1041	6	27/20	9	21	1060
COLORADO						
Denver AP	3346	–17	33/15	16	17	3282
Leadville	—	–20	27/11	17	13	—
CONNECTICUT						
New Haven AP	—	–14	29/23	9	24	—
GEORGIA						
Rome AP	1742	–6	34/24	13	26	9858
HAWAII						
Wahiawa	—	15	29/22	8	24	—
IDAHO						
Moscow	3717	–18	31/17	18	18	1103
ILLINOIS						
Carbondale	2538	–14	34/25	12	26	7841
INDIANA						
Muncie	—	–17	32/23	12	24	—
IOWA						
Ames	3823	–21	32/23	13	24	4141
Iowa City	3543	–21	32/24	12	26	5610
MARYLAND						
Cumberland	2838	–12	32/23	12	24	3938
Hagerstown	2829	–11	33/23	12	24	4081
MASSACHUSETTS						
Springfield	3308	–18	31/22	11	23	2892
MISSISSIPPI						
Vicksburg CO	1222	–3	35/26	12	27	13,664
MISSOURI						
Springfield AP	2592	–13	34/23	13	25	9034
MONTANA						
Billings AP	4011	–23	33/18	17	19	3426

TABLE B.6 Legacy Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (97.5%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2.5%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2.5%)	CDH23°C
NEBRASKA						
Omaha AP	3445	–19	33/24	12	25	7322
NEVADA						
Las Vegas AP	1408	–2	41/18	17	21	23,974
NEW JERSEY						
Trenton CO	2752	–10	31/23	11	24	4107
NEW MEXICO						
Albuquerque AP	2453	–9	34/16	15	18	6118
Las Cruces	1733	–7	36/18	17	20	8059
Los Alamos	3549	–13	31/16	18	16	686
NEW YORK						
Buffalo AP	3777	–14	29/21	12	23	1691
Ithaca	3990	–18	29/22	13	23	879
NORTH DAKOTA						
Williston	5140	–29	31/19	14	21	2241
OKLAHOMA						
Norman	—	–11	36/23	13	24	—
Oklahoma City AP	2079	–11	36/23	13	25	12,766
Stillwater	2112	–11	36/23	13	24	13,123
OREGON						
Bend	3934	–16	31/16	18	17	359
Eugene AP	2668	–6	32/19	17	19	720
Medford AP	2668	–5	35/19	19	20	3417
Portland AP	2607	–5	29/19	13	19	1028
Portland CO	2454	–4	30/19	12	19	1169
Salem AP	2766	–5	31/19	17	20	601
PENNSYLVANIA						
Harrisburg AP	2966	–12	33/23	12	24	5039
Scranton/Wilkes-Barre	3518	–15	31/22	11	23	2097
State College	3473	–14	31/22	13	23	1936
RHODE ISLAND						
Newport	3401	–13	29/22	9	24	934
SOUTH CAROLINA						
Spartanburg AP	1803	–6	33/23	11	24	7816
TEXAS						
Bryan AP	991	–2	36/24	11	26	18,432
Sherman Perrin AFB	1635	–7	37/24	12	25	16,492
UTAH						
Vernal AP	4262	–18	32/16	18	17	1488
VERMONT						
Barre	4738	–24	27/21	13	22	765

TABLE B.6 Legacy Outdoor Design Conditions: United States and Canada (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Winter		*Summer*			
State and Station[a]	HDD18°C	Design Dry-Bulb (°C) (97.5%)	Design Dry-Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet-Bulb (°C) (2.5%)	Mean Daily Range (°C)	Design Wet-Bulb (°C) (2.5%)	CDH23°C
VIRGINIA						
Charlottesville	2331	–8	33/23	13	24	5715
WASHINGTON						
Seattle CO	2602	–3	28/19	11	19	498
Seattle–Tacoma AP	2846	–3	27/18	12	18	583
WEST VIRGINIA						
Wheeling	3031	–15	30/22	12	23	3774
WISCONSIN						
Ashland	5037	–27	28/20	13	21	716
BRITISH COLUMBIA						
Vancouver AP	3030	–7	25/19	9	19	123
MANITOBA						
Flin Flon	6973	–38	27/19	11	20	791
NEWFOUNDLAND						
Corner Brook	4750	–18	23/17	9	19	281
ONTARIO						
Kitchener	4146	–19	29/22	13	23	1359
QUEBEC						
Chicoutimi	5434	–30	28/20	11	21	631

[a]U.S. solar data are available from the National Climatic Data Center, Federal Building, Asheville, NC 28801. Canadian solar data are available from The Canadian Climate Center, Atmospheric Environment Service, 4905 Dufferin St., Downsview, Ontario M3H 5T4.

APPENDIX C

Solar and Daylighting Design Data

This appendix contains the following information:

- *Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors (Tables C.1–C.10)*. These values are listed for five latitudes (16, 32, 40, 48, and 64° N) in both I-P and SI units (the tables are so labeled). Solar heat gain factors represent the solar radiation gain through one layer of double-strength sheet (DSA) glass. The data are based on an "average cloudless" day at the respective latitudes. Tables C.1 through C.10 are copyrighted by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA, and are reprinted by permission from the 1989 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.
- *Solar Position and Clear-Day Global Irradiance (Insolation) (Tables C.11–C.18)*. These values are listed for four latitudes (32, 40, 48, and 64° N). The data are presented in I-P and SI units for the following tilt angles (degrees above the horizontal): latitude −10°, latitude, latitude +10°, latitude +20°, and vertical.
- *Elevation, Latitude, Average Horizontal Insolation, Average Vertical Insolation, Average Temperature, and Heating Degree Days (Tables C.19 and C.20)*. These values are listed in I-P and SI units for January and July, along with yearly totals, for a number of locations (see Fig. C.1).
- *Daylighting Coefficient of Utilization Values for Various Window and Sky Configurations (Tables C.21–C.26)*.
- *Reflectances of Materials used to Construct Daylighting Models (Table C.27)*.

TABLE C.1 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 16° N Latitude (I-P units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal Btu/h ft²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, Btu/h ft²																	Solar Time P.M.
			N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	
Jan 21	7	141	5	6	44	92	124	134	126	96	49	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	14	5
	8	262	14	15	55	147	210	240	233	189	114	25	14	14	14	14	14	14	79	4
	9	300	21	21	32	122	200	244	251	219	152	58	22	21	21	21	21	21	150	3
	10	317	26	26	27	66	150	209	233	223	178	102	31	26	26	26	26	26	203	2
	11	325	29	29	29	31	77	148	195	210	194	146	75	31	29	29	29	29	236	1
	12	327	30	30	30	30	32	73	139	184	199	184	138	72	32	30	30	30	248	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		110	112	196	461	760	1000	1096	1020	781	426	211	127	111	110	110	110	805	
Feb 21	7	182	8	17	84	138	169	172	150	103	36	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	25	5
	8	273	17	19	96	180	231	247	224	166	77	18	17	17	17	17	17	17	101	4
	9	305	23	24	64	153	214	242	233	188	110	30	23	23	23	23	23	23	174	3
	10	319	28	29	33	92	161	202	211	188	134	61	30	28	28	28	28	28	229	2
	11	326	32	32	32	37	83	136	167	172	149	102	49	33	32	32	32	32	263	1
	12	328	33	33	33	33	34	60	107	142	154	142	106	60	34	33	33	33	275	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		124	137	321	609	865	1023	1034	885	582	287	174	132	124	124	124	124	930	
Mar 21	7	201	11	53	124	172	192	183	145	82	15	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	40	5
	8	272	20	50	140	205	239	235	195	123	35	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	120	4
	9	299	26	35	109	179	218	225	197	138	57	27	26	26	26	26	26	26	192	3
	10	312	31	33	61	120	165	182	172	134	76	34	32	31	31	31	31	31	247	2
	11	318	34	35	36	53	87	114	125	116	89	55	36	35	34	34	34	34	280	1
	12	320	35	35	36	36	37	47	69	87	93	86	68	47	37	38	36	35	291	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		141	226	494	755	928	975	879	643	319	187	153	142	139	139	139	139	1025	
Apr 21	6	14	2	8	12	14	14	12	8	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	6
	7	197	24	94	153	187	191	167	117	45	14	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	53	5
	8	256	27	99	172	216	227	204	150	69	24	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	131	4
	9	280	31	79	149	193	208	193	147	77	31	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	197	3
	10	293	35	54	102	141	158	151	120	73	37	34	33	33	33	33	33	33	249	2
	11	299	38	40	54	72	86	88	78	60	43	38	38	36	36	36	36	37	279	1
	12	301	39	39	39	40	40	41	43	45	45	45	43	41	40	39	39	39	289	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		179	403	674	859	922	851	653	352	174	159	157	156	155	155	155	156	1057	
May 21	6	44	14	30	41	45	43	34	19	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	5	6
	7	193	50	120	168	191	185	150	92	24	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	17	62	5
	8	244	52	132	189	218	215	179	115	38	25	24	24	24	24	24	24	25	135	4
	9	268	49	116	171	198	197	167	109	45	32	30	30	30	30	30	30	32	197	3
	10	280	47	89	130	151	150	126	84	44	37	35	35	35	35	35	35	37	245	2
	11	286	47	63	79	87	83	70	52	41	40	39	38	38	38	39	39	41	273	1
	12	288	46	46	44	43	42	41	41	41	41	41	41	41	42	43	44	46	282	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		283	575	804	916	897	748	493	217	172	167	167	167	167	168	169	176	1058	
Jun 21	6	53	20	39	52	55	51	39	20	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	7	6
	7	188	62	128	172	190	179	141	80	20	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	18	64	5
	8	238	66	142	194	217	207	167	99	31	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	27	135	4
	9	261	63	130	178	198	190	154	93	37	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	33	194	3
	10	273	59	104	140	154	145	115	70	39	37	36	36	36	36	36	36	38	241	2
	11	279	57	76	90	92	82	63	46	41	40	39	39	39	39	40	41	43	268	1
	12	281	57	55	50	45	43	42	41	41	41	41	41	42	42	45	50	55	277	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		356	648	850	929	876	700	430	194	174	171	171	171	172	173	176	190	1049	
Jul 21	6	41	14	29	39	42	40	31	18	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	6	6
	7	184	51	118	164	185	179	145	88	23	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	17	62	5
	8	236	55	132	187	214	210	174	111	37	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	26	133	4
	9	259	52	117	170	196	193	163	106	44	32	31	31	31	31	31	31	33	194	3
	10	272	50	92	131	151	148	123	81	44	38	36	36	36	36	36	36	38	241	2
	11	278	49	66	81	88	83	69	52	42	41	40	39	39	39	40	40	42	289	1
	12	279	49	48	46	44	43	42	42	42	42	42	42	42	43	44	46	48	277	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		296	580	799	903	878	729	478	215	176	172	171	171	171	172	173	182	1043	
Aug 21	6	11	2	7	10	12	12	10	6	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	6
	7	180	26	92	145	176	180	156	109	42	15	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	53	5
	8	240	30	100	168	209	219	196	143	65	25	23	23	23	23	23	23	23	128	4
	9	266	33	82	148	190	203	187	142	74	33	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	193	3
	10	279	37	58	104	140	155	147	117	71	39	36	35	35	35	35	35	35	243	2
	11	285	40	43	57	75	86	87	76	59	44	40	39	38	38	38	38	39	273	1
	12	287	41	41	41	42	42	43	44	45	46	45	44	43	42	41	41	41	282	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		191	410	666	837	891	817	624	339	180	167	165	164	163	163	163	164	1033	
Sep 21	7	179	12	50	114	158	176	168	133	76	15	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	39	5
	8	253	21	49	134	196	227	224	186	119	36	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	116	4
	9	281	28	36	106	173	211	217	191	134	57	28	27	27	27	27	27	27	185	3
	10	295	32	34	61	118	161	178	168	132	76	35	33	32	32	32	32	32	236	2
	11	302	35	36	37	54	86	113	123	114	88	56	38	36	35	35	35	35	271	1
	12	304	36	36	37	38	39	49	69	86	93	86	69	48	39	38	37	36	282	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		146	226	475	722	885	931	842	622	319	192	159	148	145	144	144	144	991	
Oct 21	7	166	8	18	79	128	156	159	139	95	33	9	8	8	8	8	8	8	25	5
	8	259	17	20	95	174	223	237	215	159	74	19	17	17	17	17	17	17	99	4
	9	292	24	25	65	150	209	235	225	187	106	31	24	24	24	24	24	24	170	3
	10	307	29	30	34	92	158	197	205	183	130	60	31	29	29	29	29	29	224	2
	11	314	32	32	33	39	83	133	163	167	145	100	49	34	32	32	32	32	258	1
	12	316	33	33	33	34	35	60	105	139	150	138	104	60	35	34	33	33	270	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		127	141	318	592	836	986	996	852	563	283	175	136	128	127	127	127	911	
Nov 21	7	134	5	6	43	89	119	129	120	92	47	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	14	5
	8	255	15	15	55	145	206	235	228	185	111	25	15	15	15	15	15	15	78	4
	9	295	21	21	33	121	197	241	247	215	150	57	22	21	21	21	21	21	149	3
	10	312	26	26	28	67	147	206	230	220	176	100	31	26	26	26	26	26	201	2
	11	320	29	29	29	31	77	146	192	207	191	144	74	31	29	29	29	29	234	1
	12	322	30	30	30	30	32	72	137	181	196	181	137	72	32	30	30	30	246	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		112	113	197	456	749	983	1077	1001	767	420	210	128	112	112	112	112	799	
Dec 21	7	118	4	5	30	72	101	112	107	85	48	7	4	4	4	4	4	4	10	5
	8	255	13	14	41	132	198	233	231	193	124	33	13	13	13	13	13	13	69	4
	9	297	20	20	25	108	191	241	254	227	165	72	21	20	20	20	20	20	138	3
	10	315	25	25	26	56	144	208	239	233	192	117	35	25	25	25	25	25	191	2
	11	323	28	28	28	29	73	150	202	221	207	161	86	30	28	28	28	28	223	1
	12	325	29	29	29	29	30	77	149	197	212	196	149	76	30	29	29	29	234	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		104	105	159	402	710	975	1099	1050	836	484	228	125	105	104	104	104	748	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.2 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 32° N Latitude (I-P units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal Btu/h ft²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, Btu/h ft²																	Solar Time P.M.
			N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	
Jan 21	7	141	5	6	44	92	124	134	126	96	49	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	14	5
	8	203	9	9	29	105	160	189	189	159	103	28	9	9	9	9	9	9	32	4
	9	269	15	15	17	91	175	229	246	225	169	82	17	15	15	15	15	15	88	3
	10	295	20	20	20	41	135	209	249	250	212	141	46	20	20	20	20	20	136	2
	11	306	23	23	23	24	68	159	221	249	238	191	110	29	23	23	23	23	166	1
	12	310	24	24	24	24	25	88	174	228	246	228	174	88	25	24	24	24	176	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			79	79	107	284	570	856	1015	1014	853	553	264	112	80	79	79	79	512	
Feb 21	7	112	4	7	47	82	102	106	95	67	26	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	9	5
	8	245	13	14	65	149	205	228	216	170	95	17	13	13	13	13	13	13	64	4
	9	287	19	19	32	122	199	242	248	216	149	55	20	19	19	19	19	19	127	3
	10	305	24	24	25	62	151	213	241	232	189	112	31	24	24	24	24	24	176	2
	11	314	26	26	26	28	76	156	208	227	212	165	87	28	26	26	26	26	207	1
	12	316	27	27	27	27	29	79	155	204	221	204	155	79	29	27	27	27	217	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			100	103	201	445	735	978	1080	1010	780	452	228	122	100	100	100	100	691	
Mar 21	7	185	10	37	105	153	176	173	142	88	20	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	32	5
	8	260	17	25	107	183	227	237	209	150	62	18	17	17	17	17	17	17	100	4
	9	290	23	25	64	151	210	237	227	183	107	30	23	23	23	23	23	23	164	3
	10	304	28	28	30	87	158	202	215	195	144	70	29	28	28	28	28	28	211	2
	11	311	31	31	31	34	82	142	179	188	168	120	59	32	31	31	31	31	242	1
	12	313	32	32	32	32	33	66	122	162	176	162	122	66	33	32	32	32	252	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			124	162	359	629	875	1033	1041	888	589	326	193	136	125	124	124	124	874	
Apr 21	6	66	9	35	54	65	66	56	38	12	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	7	6
	7	206	17	80	146	188	200	182	136	65	16	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	61	5
	8	255	23	61	144	200	227	219	177	107	30	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	129	4
	9	278	28	36	103	168	206	212	187	133	58	29	28	28	28	28	28	28	188	3
	10	290	32	34	52	108	155	177	172	141	87	39	33	32	32	32	32	32	233	2
	11	295	35	35	36	47	83	118	135	132	108	70	40	36	35	35	35	35	262	1
	12	297	36	36	36	37	38	53	82	106	115	106	82	53	38	37	36	36	271	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			161	296	550	792	952	992	889	645	360	228	177	157	153	152	152	152	1015	
May 21	6	119	33	77	108	121	116	94	56	13	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	9	21	6
	7	211	36	111	170	202	204	174	118	42	19	18	18	18	18	18	18	19	81	5
	8	250	29	94	165	208	220	199	149	73	27	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	146	4
	9	269	33	61	128	177	198	190	155	93	37	32	31	31	31	31	31	31	201	3
	10	280	36	40	76	121	150	156	138	99	54	37	35	35	35	35	35	35	243	2
	11	285	38	39	42	59	83	99	102	90	68	47	40	39	37	37	37	37	269	1
	12	286	38	39	40	40	41	47	59	70	74	70	59	47	41	40	40	39	277	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			222	438	702	900	985	933	747	447	250	199	183	177	175	174	174	175	1098	
Jun 21	6	131	44	92	123	135	127	99	55	12	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	11	28	6
	7	210	47	122	176	204	201	168	108	35	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	21	88	5
	8	245	36	106	171	208	214	189	135	60	28	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	151	4
	9	264	35	74	137	178	193	180	139	77	35	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	204	3
	10	274	38	47	86	125	146	145	123	83	45	38	36	36	36	36	36	36	244	2
	11	279	40	41	47	64	82	91	89	75	56	43	41	40	39	39	39	39	269	1
	12	280	41	41	41	42	42	46	52	58	60	58	52	46	42	42	41	41	276	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			261	504	762	935	985	897	678	372	225	197	189	185	184	184	183	186	1122	
Jul 21	6	113	34	76	105	117	113	90	53	12	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	22	6
	7	203	38	111	167	198	198	169	114	41	20	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	81	5
	8	241	31	95	163	204	215	194	145	70	28	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	145	4
	9	261	34	64	129	175	195	186	150	90	37	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	198	3
	10	271	37	42	78	121	148	153	134	96	53	38	36	36	36	36	36	36	240	2
	11	277	39	40	43	60	83	98	99	88	66	47	41	40	38	38	38	38	265	1
	12	279	40	40	41	41	42	48	58	68	72	68	58	48	42	41	41	40	273	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			231	444	701	890	967	912	726	433	248	202	187	182	180	179	179	180	1088	
Aug 21	6	59	10	33	50	60	60	51	34	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	8	6
	7	190	19	79	141	179	190	172	128	61	17	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	61	5
	8	240	25	63	141	195	219	210	170	102	31	23	23	23	23	23	23	23	128	4
	9	263	30	39	104	166	200	206	181	127	57	31	29	29	29	29	29	29	185	3
	10	276	34	36	55	109	153	173	167	136	84	40	35	34	34	34	34	34	229	2
	11	282	36	37	39	50	84	116	131	127	104	69	41	38	36	36	36	36	256	1
	12	284	37	37	37	39	40	54	81	103	111	103	81	54	40	39	37	37	265	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			171	303	546	774	922	955	854	618	352	231	184	166	162	161	160	160	999	
Sep 21	7	163	10	35	96	139	159	156	128	80	20	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	31	5
	8	240	18	26	103	173	215	224	198	143	60	19	18	18	18	18	18	18	96	4
	9	272	24	26	64	146	202	227	218	177	105	31	24	24	24	24	24	24	158	3
	10	287	29	29	32	86	154	196	208	189	141	70	31	29	29	29	29	29	204	2
	11	294	32	32	32	36	81	139	174	182	163	118	59	34	32	32	32	32	234	1
	12	296	33	33	33	33	35	66	120	158	171	158	120	66	35	33	33	33	244	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			130	164	345	598	831	982	993	852	574	325	197	142	130	129	129	129	845	
Oct 21	7	99	4	7	43	74	92	96	85	60	24	5	4	4	4	4	4	4	10	5
	8	229	13	15	63	143	195	217	206	162	90	17	13	13	13	13	13	13	63	4
	9	273	20	20	33	120	193	234	239	208	144	54	21	20	20	20	20	20	125	3
	10	293	24	24	26	62	147	207	234	225	183	109	32	24	24	24	24	24	173	2
	11	302	27	27	27	29	76	152	203	221	207	160	85	29	27	27	27	27	203	1
	12	304	28	28	28	28	30	78	151	199	215	199	151	78	30	28	28	28	213	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			103	106	200	433	708	941	1038	972	753	441	226	125	104	103	103	103	679	
Nov 21	7	2	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
	8	196	9	9	29	103	156	184	184	155	100	27	9	9	9	9	9	9	32	4
	9	263	16	16	17	90	173	225	241	221	166	80	17	16	16	16	16	16	88	3
	10	289	20	20	21	41	134	206	245	246	209	138	45	21	20	20	20	20	136	2
	11	301	23	23	23	24	67	157	218	245	234	188	109	29	23	23	23	23	165	1
	12	304	24	24	24	24	25	87	171	224	243	224	171	87	25	24	24	24	175	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			80	81	108	282	561	841	996	995	838	544	261	113	81	80	80	80	509	
Dec 21	8	176	7	7	19	84	135	163	166	143	97	31	7	7	7	7	7	7	22	4
	9	257	14	14	15	77	162	218	238	222	171	89	15	14	14	14	14	14	72	3
	10	288	18	18	18	34	127	204	246	251	216	148	52	19	18	18	18	18	119	2
	11	301	21	21	21	22	63	157	222	252	243	197	116	29	21	21	21	21	148	1
	12	304	22	22	22	22	23	89	177	232	252	232	177	89	23	22	22	22	158	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			71	71	84	227	500	792	965	986	852	578	275	107	71	71	71	71	440	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.3 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 40° N Latitude (I-P units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal Btu/h ft²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, Btu/h ft² N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	Solar Time P.M.
Jan 21	7	141	5	6	44	92	124	134	126	96	49	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	14	5
	9	239	12	12	13	74	154	205	224	209	160	82	13	12	12	12	12	12	55	3
	10	274	16	16	16	31	124	199	241	246	213	146	51	17	16	16	16	16	96	2
	11	289	19	19	19	20	61	156	222	252	244	198	118	28	19	19	19	19	124	1
	12	294	20	20	20	20	21	90	179	234	254	234	179	90	21	20	20	20	133	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			61	61	73	199	452	734	904	932	813	561	273	101	62	61	61	61	354	
Feb 21	7	55	2	3	23	40	51	53	47	34	14	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	4	5
	8	219	10	11	50	129	183	206	199	160	94	18	10	10	10	10	10	10	43	4
	9	271	16	16	22	107	186	234	245	218	157	66	17	16	16	16	16	16	98	3
	10	294	21	21	21	49	143	211	246	243	203	129	38	21	21	21	21	21	143	2
	11	304	23	23	23	24	71	160	219	244	231	184	103	27	23	23	23	23	171	1
	12	307	24	24	24	24	25	86	170	222	241	222	170	86	25	24	24	24	180	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			84	86	152	361	648	916	1049	1015	821	508	250	114	85	84	84	84	548	
Mar 21	7	171	9	29	93	140	163	161	135	86	22	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	26	5
	8	250	16	18	91	169	218	232	211	157	74	17	16	16	16	16	16	16	85	4
	9	282	21	22	47	136	203	238	236	198	128	40	22	21	21	21	21	21	143	3
	10	297	25	25	27	72	153	207	229	216	171	95	29	25	25	25	25	25	186	2
	11	305	28	28	28	30	78	151	198	213	197	150	77	30	28	28	28	28	213	1
	12	307	29	29	29	29	31	75	145	191	206	191	145	75	31	29	29	29	223	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			114	139	302	563	832	1035	1087	968	694	403	220	132	114	113	113	113	764	
Apr 21	6	89	11	46	72	87	88	76	52	18	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	11	6
	7	206	16	71	140	185	201	186	143	75	16	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	61	5
	8	252	22	44	128	190	224	223	188	124	41	22	21	21	21	21	21	21	123	4
	9	274	27	29	80	155	202	219	203	156	83	29	27	27	27	27	27	27	177	3
	10	286	31	31	37	92	152	187	193	170	121	56	32	31	31	31	31	41	217	2
	11	292	33	33	34	39	81	130	160	166	146	102	52	35	33	33	33	33	243	1
	12	293	34	34	34	34	36	62	108	142	154	142	108	62	36	34	34	34	252	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			154	265	501	758	957	1051	994	782	488	296	199	157	148	147	147	147	957	
May 21	5	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	7
	6	144	36	90	128	145	141	115	71	18	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	11	31	6
	7	216	28	102	165	202	209	184	131	54	20	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	87	5
	8	250	27	73	149	199	220	208	164	93	29	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	146	4
	9	267	31	42	105	164	197	200	175	121	53	32	30	30	30	30	30	30	195	3
	10	277	34	36	54	105	148	168	163	133	83	40	35	34	34	34	34	34	234	2
	11	283	36	36	38	48	81	113	130	127	105	70	42	38	36	36	36	36	257	1
	12	284	37	37	37	38	40	54	82	114	113	104	82	54	40	38	37	37	265	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			215	404	666	893	1024	1025	881	601	358	247	200	180	176	175	174	175	1083	
Jun 21	5	22	10	17	21	22	20	14	6	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	3	7
	6	155	48	104	143	159	151	121	70	17	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	14	40	6
	7	216	37	113	172	205	207	178	122	46	22	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	97	5
	8	246	30	85	156	201	216	199	152	80	29	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	153	4
	9	263	33	51	114	166	192	190	161	105	45	33	32	32	32	32	32	32	201	3
	10	272	35	38	63	109	145	158	148	116	69	39	36	35	35	35	35	35	238	2
	11	277	38	39	40	52	81	105	116	110	88	60	41	39	38	38	38	38	260	1
	12	279	38	38	38	40	41	52	72	89	95	89	72	52	41	40	38	38	267	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			253	470	734	941	1038	999	818	523	315	236	204	191	188	187	186	188	1126	
Jul 21	5	2	1	2	2	2	2	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	7
	6	138	37	89	125	142	137	112	68	18	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	12	32	6
	7	208	30	102	163	198	204	179	127	53	21	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	88	5
	8	241	28	75	148	196	216	203	160	90	30	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	145	4
	9	259	32	44	106	163	193	196	170	118	52	33	31	31	31	31	31	31	194	3
	10	269	35	37	56	106	146	165	159	129	81	41	36	35	35	35	35	35	231	2
	11	275	37	38	40	50	81	111	127	123	102	69	43	39	37	37	37	37	254	1
	12	276	38	38	38	40	41	55	80	101	109	101	80	55	41	40	38	38	262	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			223	411	666	885	1008	1003	858	584	352	248	204	186	181	180	180	181	1076	
Aug 21	6	81	12	44	68	81	82	71	48	17	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	12	6
	7	191	17	71	135	177	191	177	135	70	17	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	62	5
	8	237	24	47	126	185	216	214	180	118	41	23	23	23	23	23	23	23	122	4
	9	260	28	31	82	153	197	212	196	151	80	31	28	28	28	28	28	28	174	3
	10	272	32	33	40	93	150	182	187	165	116	56	34	32	32	32	32	32	214	2
	11	278	35	35	36	41	81	128	156	160	141	99	52	37	35	35	35	35	239	1
	12	280	35	35	35	36	38	63	106	138	149	138	106	63	38	36	35	35	247	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			164	273	498	741	928	1013	956	751	474	296	205	166	157	156	156	156	946	
Sep 21	7	149	9	27	84	125	146	144	121	77	21	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	25	5
	8	230	17	19	87	160	205	218	199	148	71	18	17	17	17	17	17	17	82	4
	9	263	22	23	47	131	194	227	226	190	124	41	23	22	22	22	22	22	138	3
	10	280	27	27	28	71	148	200	221	209	165	93	30	27	27	27	27	27	180	2
	11	287	29	29	29	31	78	147	192	207	191	146	77	31	29	29	29	29	206	1
	12	290	30	30	30	30	32	75	142	185	200	185	142	75	32	30	30	30	215	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			119	142	291	534	787	980	1033	925	672	396	222	137	119	118	118	118	738	
Oct 21	7	48	2	3	20	36	45	47	42	30	12	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	4	5
	8	204	11	12	49	123	173	195	188	151	89	18	11	11	11	11	11	11	43	4
	9	257	17	17	23	104	180	225	235	209	151	64	18	17	17	17	17	17	97	3
	10	280	21	21	22	50	139	205	238	235	196	125	38	22	21	21	21	21	140	2
	11	291	24	24	24	25	71	156	212	236	224	178	101	28	24	24	24	24	168	1
	12	294	25	25	25	25	27	85	165	216	234	216	165	85	27	25	25	25	177	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			88	89	152	351	623	878	1006	974	791	493	247	117	89	88	88	88	540	
Nov 21	8	136	5	5	18	69	108	128	129	110	72	21	6	5	5	5	5	5	14	4
	9	232	12	12	13	73	151	201	219	204	156	80	13	12	12	12	12	12	55	3
	10	268	16	16	16	31	122	196	237	242	209	143	50	17	16	16	16	18	96	2
	11	283	19	19	19	20	61	154	218	248	240	194	116	28	19	19	19	19	123	1
	12	288	20	20	20	20	21	89	176	231	250	231	176	89	21	20	20	20	132	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			63	63	75	198	445	721	887	914	798	551	269	101	63	63	63	63	354	
Dec 21	8	89	3	3	8	41	67	82	84	73	50	17	3	3	3	3	3	3	6	4
	9	217	10	10	11	60	135	185	205	194	151	83	13	10	10	10	10	10	39	3
	10	261	14	14	14	25	113	188	232	239	210	146	55	15	14	14	14	14	77	2
	11	280	17	17	17	17	56	151	217	249	242	198	120	28	17	17	17	17	104	1
	12	285	18	18	18	18	19	89	178	233	253	233	178	89	19	18	18	18	113	12
HALF-DAY TOTALS			52	52	56	146	374	649	822	867	775	557	276	94	53	52	52	52	282	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.4 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 48° N Latitude (I-P units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal Btu/h ft²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, Btu/h ft²																	Solar Time P.M.
			N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	
Jan 21	7	141	5	6	44	92	124	134	126	96	49	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	14	5
	9	185	8	8	8	53	118	160	176	166	129	69	10	8	8	8	8	8	25	3
	10	239	12	12	12	22	106	175	216	223	195	136	50	12	12	12	12	12	55	2
	11	261	14	14	14	15	53	144	208	239	233	190	116	26	14	14	14	14	77	1
	12	267	15	15	15	15	16	86	171	226	245	226	171	86	16	15	15	15	85	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		43	43	46	117	316	567	729	776	701	512	259	85	43	43	43	43	203	
Feb 21	7	4	0	0	1	3	3	3	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
	8	180	8	8	36	103	149	170	166	136	82	17	8	8	8	8	8	8	25	4
	9	247	13	13	16	90	168	216	230	209	155	71	14	13	13	13	13	13	66	3
	10	275	17	17	17	38	131	203	242	244	207	138	44	18	17	17	17	17	105	2
	11	288	19	19	19	20	65	158	221	249	239	192	113	27	19	19	19	19	130	1
	12	292	20	20	20	20	22	89	176	231	250	231	176	89	22	20	20	20	138	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		68	68	107	274	541	816	968	967	813	531	261	104	68	68	68	68	395	
Mar 21	7	153	7	22	80	123	145	145	123	80	23	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	20	5
	8	236	14	15	76	154	204	222	206	158	82	15	14	14	14	14	14	14	68	4
	9	270	19	19	3	121	193	234	239	207	142	52	20	19	19	19	19	19	118	3
	10	287	23	23	24	58	146	208	237	231	189	115	33	23	23	23	23	23	156	2
	11	295	25	25	25	26	74	156	210	232	218	172	94	28	25	25	25	25	180	1
	12	298	26	26	26	26	27	83	161	211	228	211	161	83	27	26	26	26	188	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		100	118	250	494	775	1012	1100	1014	767	465	244	126	101	100	100	100	636	
Apr 21	6	108	12	53	86	105	107	93	64	23	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	15	6
	7	205	15	61	132	180	199	189	148	84	18	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	60	5
	8	247	20	32	111	179	219	225	196	138	55	21	20	20	20	20	20	20	114	4
	9	268	25	26	60	141	197	223	215	176	106	33	25	25	25	25	25	25	161	3
	10	280	28	28	31	77	148	193	209	194	150	80	31	28	28	28	28	28	196	2
	11	286	31	31	31	33	78	140	181	193	177	133	69	33	31	31	31	31	218	1
	12	288	31	31	31	31	34	71	131	172	186	172	131	71	34	31	31	31	226	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		147	242	461	724	957	1098	1081	895	605	370	226	156	141	140	140	140	875	
May 21	5	41	17	31	40	42	39	29	14	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	5	7
	6	162	35	97	141	162	160	133	85	24	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	13	40	6
	7	219	23	90	158	200	212	191	142	68	21	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	91	5
	8	248	26	54	132	190	218	214	178	113	38	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	142	4
	9	264	29	32	82	151	194	208	192	147	77	32	29	29	29	29	29	29	185	3
	10	274	33	34	39	90	145	178	184	163	116	57	35	33	33	33	33	33	219	2
	11	279	35	35	36	40	79	126	155	160	142	101	54	37	35	35	35	35	240	1
	12	280	35	35	35	36	38	63	107	139	150	139	107	63	38	36	35	35	247	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		215	388	645	893	1065	1114	1007	749	483	316	225	184	174	173	173	174	1045	
Jun 21	5	77	35	61	76	80	72	53	24	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	8	12	7
	6	172	46	110	155	175	169	138	84	22	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	16	51	6
	7	220	29	101	165	204	211	187	135	60	23	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	103	5
	8	246	29	64	139	191	215	206	168	101	34	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	152	4
	9	261	31	36	91	153	190	199	180	133	66	33	31	31	31	31	31	31	193	3
	10	269	34	36	45	94	143	169	171	148	101	50	36	34	34	34	34	34	225	2
	11	274	36	36	38	44	79	118	142	145	126	88	49	38	36	36	36	36	246	1
	12	275	37	37	37	38	40	60	96	124	134	124	96	60	40	38	37	37	252	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		257	459	722	955	1095	1102	955	678	436	299	228	197	189	188	188	191	1108	
Jul 21	5	43	18	33	42	45	41	30	15	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4	6	7
	6	156	37	96	138	159	156	129	82	24	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	14	41	6
	7	211	25	90	156	196	207	186	138	66	22	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	92	5
	8	240	27	56	132	187	214	209	174	110	38	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	142	4
	9	256	30	34	83	149	191	204	187	143	75	33	30	30	30	30	30	30	184	3
	10	266	34	35	41	90	143	174	180	158	113	56	36	34	34	34	34	34	217	2
	11	271	36	36	37	42	79	124	151	156	138	99	54	38	36	36	36	36	237	1
	12	272	36	36	36	37	39	63	104	136	146	136	104	63	39	37	36	36	244	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		223	395	646	886	1050	1092	983	730	474	315	229	190	181	179	179	180	1042	
Aug 21	6	99	13	51	81	98	100	87	60	22	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	16	6
	7	190	17	61	128	172	190	179	141	79	19	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	61	5
	8	232	22	34	110	174	211	216	188	132	53	23	22	22	22	22	22	22	114	4
	9	154	27	28	63	139	192	216	108	169	102	34	27	27	27	27	27	27	159	3
	10	266	30	30	33	78	145	188	203	188	144	78	33	30	30	30	30	30	193	2
	11	272	32	32	32	36	78	137	175	187	171	129	68	35	32	32	32	32	215	1
	12	274	33	33	33	33	36	71	128	167	189	167	128	71	36	33	33	33	223	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		157	251	459	709	929	1060	1040	862	587	366	231	165	151	149	149	149	869	
Sep 21	7	131	8	21	71	108	128	128	108	71	21	8	7	7	7	7	7	7	20	5
	8	215	15	16	72	144	191	207	193	148	77	16	15	15	15	15	15	15	65	4
	9	251	20	20	34	116	184	223	227	197	136	52	21	20	20	20	20	20	114	3
	10	269	24	24	25	58	141	200	228	221	182	112	34	24	24	24	24	24	151	2
	11	278	26	26	26	28	73	151	203	223	210	166	92	29	26	26	26	26	174	1
	12	280	27	27	27	27	29	82	156	204	220	204	156	82	29	27	27	27	182	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		105	121	240	465	729	953	1040	963	737	453	243	131	106	105	105	105	614	
Oct 21	7	4	0	0	2	3	4	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
	8	165	8	9	35	96	139	159	155	126	77	16	8	8	8	8	8	8	25	4
	9	233	14	14	16	88	161	207	220	199	148	68	15	14	14	14	14	14	66	3
	10	262	18	18	18	39	128	196	233	234	199	133	43	18	18	18	18	18	104	2
	11	274	20	20	20	21	64	153	213	241	231	186	109	27	20	20	20	20	128	1
	12	278	21	21	21	21	23	87	171	223	242	223	171	87	23	21	21	21	136	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		71	71	108	266	519	780	925	925	779	513	256	106	72	71	71	71	391	
Nov 21	8	36	1	1	4	18	29	34	35	30	20	6	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	4
	9	179	8	8	9	52	115	156	171	161	125	67	10	8	8	8	8	8	26	3
	10	233	12	12	12	22	104	172	212	218	191	133	49	13	12	12	12	12	55	2
	11	255	15	15	15	15	52	142	204	234	228	186	114	26	15	15	15	15	77	1
	12	261	15	15	15	15	17	85	168	222	240	222	168	85	17	15	15	15	85	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		44	44	47	117	310	555	713	760	686	502	255	85	44	44	44	44	204	
Dec 21	9	140	5	5	6	36	86	120	133	127	100	56	8	5	5	5	5	5	13	3
	10	214	10	10	10	16	91	156	194	201	179	126	49	10	10	10	10	10	38	2
	11	242	12	12	12	13	46	134	195	225	220	180	111	25	12	12	12	12	57	1
	12	250	13	13	13	13	14	81	163	215	233	215	168	81	14	13	13	13	65	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		33	33	34	73	233	458	610	665	616	468	247	76	34	33	33	33	141	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.5 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 64° N Latitude (I-P units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal Btu/h ft²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, Btu/h ft²																	Solar Time P.M.
			N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	
Jan 21	7	141	5	6	44	92	124	134	126	96	49	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	14	5
	11	81	3	3	3	3	15	45	67	77	75	62	38	8	3	3	3	3	6	1
	12	100	3	3	3	3	4	33	67	89	96	89	67	33	4	3	3	3	8	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		5	5	5	6	25	79	121	142	141	119	75	23	5	5	5	5	11	
Feb 21	8	18	1	1	3	10	15	17	17	14	9	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	4
	9	134	5	5	6	43	89	118	128	119	90	45	6	5	5	5	5	5	13	3
	10	190	8	8	8	18	87	144	176	180	157	108	38	9	8	8	8	8	28	2
	11	215	10	10	10	11	44	122	177	202	197	160	97	20	10	10	10	10	41	1
	12	222	11	11	11	11	12	73	147	194	210	194	147	73	12	11	11	11	45	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		29	30	33	89	244	446	578	617	560	411	212	66	30	29	29	29	106	
Mar 21	7	95	4	11	47	74	90	91	79	53	17	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	9	5
	8	185	9	10	46	113	158	177	170	135	78	14	9	9	9	9	9	9	32	4
	9	227	13	13	16	88	159	203	215	194	143	64	14	13	13	13	13	13	59	3
	10	249	16	16	16	35	122	190	226	228	194	130	42	16	16	16	16	16	84	2
	11	260	17	17	17	18	60	148	209	236	228	184	109	25	17	17	17	17	99	1
	12	263	18	18	18	18	19	85	168	221	239	221	168	85	19	18	18	18	105	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		68	74	150	334	596	854	984	958	779	504	257	104	68	68	68	68	335	
Apr 21	5	27	8	18	24	27	26	20	12	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	7
	6	133	12	59	102	127	132	118	84	35	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	21	6
	7	194	14	41	113	163	189	185	153	96	25	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	51	5
	8	228	17	19	79	153	201	217	201	153	79	19	17	17	17	17	17	17	85	4
	9	248	21	21	32	111	180	219	225	197	138	55	22	21	21	21	21	21	116	3
	10	260	23	23	24	51	134	194	225	221	185	118	38	24	23	23	23	23	140	2
	11	266	24	24	24	26	68	148	202	225	214	171	99	29	24	24	24	24	155	1
	12	268	25	25	25	25	27	83	159	208	224	208	159	83	27	25	25	25	160	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		131	218	410	671	943	1150	1186	1036	763	487	273	149	121	120	120	120	651	
May 21	4	51	30	44	51	51	43	28	8	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	10	6	8
	5	132	48	95	125	135	125	96	50	11	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	11	26	7
	6	185	28	97	150	181	183	158	109	40	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	55	6
	7	218	21	63	138	189	211	201	161	94	24	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	90	5
	8	239	23	28	97	167	209	220	198	146	68	25	23	23	23	23	23	23	124	4
	9	252	26	27	45	122	183	215	215	184	123	46	27	26	26	26	26	26	152	3
	10	261	28	28	30	61	135	188	212	205	167	102	36	28	28	28	28	28	174	2
	11	265	30	30	30	32	72	141	188	207	195	154	87	33	30	30	30	30	188	1
	12	267	30	30	30	30	33	78	146	189	204	189	146	78	33	30	30	30	192	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		247	425	680	950	1177	1291	1218	985	708	465	288	191	169	168	168	176	911	
Jun 21	4	93	53	83	96	94	78	50	14	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	21	16	8
	5	154	62	114	148	158	145	110	55	14	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	14	39	7
	6	194	36	107	162	191	192	163	110	39	18	17	17	17	17	17	17	18	71	6
	7	221	24	71	145	193	213	200	158	89	25	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	105	5
	8	239	25	33	104	170	208	216	192	139	62	27	25	25	25	25	25	25	137	4
	9	251	28	29	51	124	181	210	208	175	115	43	29	28	28	28	28	28	165	3
	10	258	30	30	32	65	134	183	204	195	157	94	36	30	30	30	30	30	186	2
	11	262	32	32	32	34	72	137	180	196	184	144	82	35	32	32	32	32	199	1
	12	263	32	32	32	32	35	76	138	179	193	179	138	76	35	32	32	32	203	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		322	533	801	1061	1253	1317	1195	946	679	455	296	211	192	190	191	213	1021	
Jul 21	4	53	32	47	55	54	46	29	9	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	11	8	8
	5	128	49	94	123	133	124	95	50	11	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	11	28	7
	6	179	30	96	148	177	180	155	106	39	16	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	57	6
	7	211	22	64	137	186	207	197	157	92	25	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	92	5
	8	231	24	30	97	165	205	215	193	142	67	26	24	24	24	24	24	24	124	4
	9	245	27	28	47	121	180	211	211	179	120	46	28	27	27	27	27	27	152	3
	10	253	29	29	31	62	134	185	208	200	164	100	37	29	29	29	29	29	174	2
	11	257	31	31	31	33	72	139	185	202	191	151	86	34	31	31	31	31	187	1
	12	259	31	31	31	31	34	78	143	185	200	185	143	78	34	31	31	31	192	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		258	434	684	946	1163	1269	1193	965	697	462	292	198	177	175	175	185	918	
Aug 21	5	29	9	20	27	30	28	22	13	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	7
	6	123	13	58	97	121	125	111	80	34	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	23	6
	7	181	15	42	109	157	180	176	145	92	26	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	53	5
	8	214	19	21	78	148	193	208	192	147	76	21	19	19	19	19	19	19	87	4
	9	234	22	22	34	109	174	211	217	189	133	55	23	22	22	22	22	22	117	3
	10	246	25	25	26	52	131	188	217	214	178	114	39	25	25	25	25	25	140	2
	11	252	26	26	26	28	69	144	196	217	207	166	97	31	26	26	26	26	154	1
	12	254	27	27	27	27	29	82	155	201	217	201	155	82	29	27	27	27	159	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		142	226	410	657	914	1109	1141	997	740	478	275	158	131	130	130	130	656	
Sep 21	7	77	4	10	39	62	74	75	65	44	15	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	8	5
	8	163	10	10	43	103	143	160	154	123	71	14	10	10	10	10	10	10	31	4
	9	206	14	14	17	83	148	189	200	181	133	61	15	14	14	14	14	14	57	3
	10	229	16	16	17	35	116	179	213	214	183	123	41	17	16	16	16	16	81	2
	11	240	18	18	18	19	59	141	198	224	216	174	104	26	18	18	18	18	96	1
	12	244	19	19	19	19	21	82	160	209	227	209	160	82	21	19	19	19	101	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		71	77	142	307	547	787	910	891	731	480	249	106	72	71	71	71	324	
Oct 21	8	17	1	1	3	10	14	16	16	13	8	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	4
	9	122	5	5	6	40	82	109	118	110	83	42	6	5	5	5	5	5	13	3
	10	176	9	9	9	18	83	135	165	169	147	102	36	9	9	9	9	9	29	2
	11	201	11	11	11	11	43	116	167	191	186	152	92	20	11	11	11	11	41	1
	12	208	11	11	11	11	13	70	140	184	199	184	140	70	13	11	11	11	46	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		31	31	34	86	231	420	542	580	527	388	202	66	32	31	31	31	108	
Nov 21	10	23	1	1	1	1	10	17	21	22	20	14	5	1	1	1	1	1	1	2
	11	79	3	3	3	3	15	44	65	75	74	61	37	8	3	3	3	3	6	1
	12	97	4	4	4	4	4	32	66	87	93	87	66	32	4	4	4	4	8	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		5	5	5	6	26	79	120	141	140	117	74	23	6	5	5	5	11	
Dec 21	11	4	0	0	0	0	1	2	3	4	4	3	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
	12	16	0	0	0	0	1	5	11	14	15	14	11	5	1	0	0	0	1	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		0	0	0	0	1	5	9	11	11	10	7	3	0	0	0	0	1	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.6 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 16° N Latitude (SI units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal W/m²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, W/m² N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	Solar Time P.M.
Jan 21	7	445	17	19	138	291	390	424	397	303	155	19	17	17	17	17	17	17	43	5
	8	827	45	48	174	463	662	757	734	596	359	79	45	45	45	45	45	45	249	4
	9	948	67	67	102	384	630	770	791	690	481	183	69	67	67	67	67	67	472	3
	10	1001	82	82	86	209	474	658	737	704	563	321	97	82	82	82	82	82	640	2
	11	1025	92	92	92	96	242	467	614	663	612	462	236	96	92	92	92	92	745	1
	12	1032	95	95	95	95	100	228	438	580	628	580	438	228	100	95	95	95	782	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		348	352	618	1453	2398	3153	3458	3217	2465	1344	666	401	350	348	348	348	2539	
Feb 21	7	575	24	55	265	435	532	544	474	326	113	26	24	24	24	24	24	24	80	5
	8	862	53	60	304	567	729	778	706	525	244	56	53	53	53	53	53	53	319	4
	9	961	74	77	202	482	676	763	733	592	347	96	74	74	74	74	74	74	549	3
	10	1006	90	91	104	292	508	636	665	593	423	193	94	90	90	90	90	90	722	2
	11	1027	99	99	102	118	262	428	527	542	471	323	154	103	99	99	99	99	831	1
	12	1034	103	103	103	105	108	189	336	448	487	448	336	189	108	105	103	103	868	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		390	431	1013	1922	2730	3228	3263	2792	1836	906	547	417	393	390	390	390	2933	
Mar 21	7	634	36	167	393	544	606	578	458	260	47	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	126	5
	8	857	63	157	442	648	752	741	615	390	111	61	61	61	61	61	61	61	380	4
	9	943	84	110	343	565	689	709	622	435	180	86	82	82	82	82	82	82	606	3
	10	983	98	103	191	379	519	575	543	424	240	107	100	98	98	98	98	98	778	2
	11	1003	108	110	113	166	273	361	395	366	281	173	114	110	108	108	108	108	885	1
	12	1008	111	111	112	114	117	149	216	273	295	273	216	149	117	114	112	111	919	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		443	712	1558	2383	2926	3076	2773	2028	1006	588	483	448	440	483	437	437	3233	
Apr 21	6	44	7	24	37	43	43	37	24	7	2	2	2	2	2	2	12	2	4	6
	7	622	75	298	482	589	604	528	369	141	45	42	42	42	42	42	42	42	169	5
	8	807	85	312	543	682	718	644	473	217	74	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	413	4
	9	885	97	248	469	610	657	608	465	244	97	90	90	90	90	90	90	90	623	3
	10	924	112	171	321	444	499	476	380	231	118	109	166	106	106	106	106	106	784	2
	11	942	120	127	169	228	270	276	245	189	136	121	118	115	115	115	115	118	882	1
	12	948	123	123	124	125	126	129	135	141	143	141	135	129	126	125	124	123	911	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		565	1272	2127	2711	2909	2684	2059	1111	547	503	494	491	490	489	490	492	3333	
May 21	6	138	43	94	128	141	134	106	59	11	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	10	195	6
	7	608	157	378	531	603	583	474	290	76	49	49	49	49	49	49	49	55	17	5
	8	771	165	415	598	689	677	564	362	121	78	76	76	76	76	76	76	80	425	4
	9	845	156	366	539	626	622	526	344	141	100	96	96	96	96	96	96	100	621	3
	10	883	149	281	410	478	474	398	264	139	116	111	111	111	111	111	111	116	772	2
	11	902	147	198	248	273	262	220	166	130	126	123	120	120	120	122	124	128	862	1
	12	907	146	144	140	134	132	131	130	129	129	129	130	131	132	134	140	144	890	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		893	1813	2537	2891	2829	2360	1555	685	541	528	527	526	527	529	533	557	3338	
Jun 21	6	168	64	124	163	175	162	123	64	13	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	13	24	6
	7	593	195	404	543	598	565	445	252	63	52	52	52	52	52	52	52	57	203	5
	8	750	209	449	612	684	653	526	313	98	79	79	79	79	79	79	79	84	425	4
	9	823	199	409	560	626	601	487	294	118	98	98	98	98	98	98	98	105	613	3
	10	861	187	329	441	486	459	363	222	125	116	113	113	113	113	113	113	121	759	2
	11	879	181	241	283	290	258	200	146	130	126	122	122	122	122	125	128	136	847	1
	12	885	179	173	158	142	134	132	130	129	129	129	130	132	134	142	158	173	873	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		1122	2043	2683	2930	2763	2207	1357	612	548	540	540	540	542	545	555	599	3308	
Jul 21	6	128	43	90	122	134	127	99	55	11	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	10	17	6
	7	579	161	373	518	585	564	456	277	74	51	51	51	51	51	51	51	55	194	5
	8	743	173	415	590	676	661	549	349	110	78	78	78	78	78	78	78	83	419	4
	9	818	165	371	537	618	610	513	334	138	102	99	99	99	99	99	99	104	611	3
	10	857	157	289	413	475	467	389	257	138	118	113	113	113	113	113	113	120	759	2
	11	876	154	207	255	277	262	218	164	133	128	125	122	122	122	125	128	131	848	1
	12	882	154	151	145	138	135	134	133	132	132	132	133	134	135	138	145	151	875	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		933	1829	2521	2848	2770	2298	1507	680	554	541	539	539	540	542	547	575	3289	
Aug 21	6	136	7	21	31	37	36	31	20	6	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	4	6
	7	569	81	289	458	555	567	493	343	131	48	45	45	45	45	45	45	45	167	5
	8	757	94	315	531	660	691	617	451	206	79	74	74	74	74	74	74	74	404	4
	9	838	104	258	467	598	640	589	448	235	103	95	95	95	95	95	95	95	608	3
	10	879	118	183	328	443	490	464	368	224	122	114	110	110	110	110	110	110	766	2
	11	899	127	136	180	235	271	273	240	185	138	127	124	120	120	120	120	124	860	1
	12	905	129	130	130	131	132	134	139	143	145	143	139	134	132	131	130	130	889	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		603	1294	2099	2640	2810	2578	1969	1069	568	528	519	516	515	514	515	518	3258	
Sep 21	7	565	38	157	360	497	554	529	419	240	48	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	122	5
	8	797	67	156	424	618	716	705	587	374	113	64	64	64	64	64	64	64	367	4
	9	887	87	114	335	547	665	684	602	424	181	90	86	86	86	86	86	86	585	3
	10	931	101	107	193	372	507	560	529	415	240	111	103	101	101	101	101	101	752	2
	11	952	111	114	118	169	272	356	389	361	279	176	118	114	111	111	111	111	856	1
	12	958	114	114	116	118	121	153	217	272	293	272	217	153	121	118	116	114	889	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		461	712	1500	2276	2791	2937	2658	1963	1007	605	501	466	457	455	454	454	3126	
Oct 21	7	524	25	56	249	404	492	502	437	300	105	27	25	25	25	25	25	25	79	5
	8	816	55	64	299	548	702	747	677	502	234	59	55	55	55	55	55	55	313	4
	9	920	76	80	204	473	659	741	711	573	336	97	76	76	76	76	76	76	537	3
	10	968	92	94	108	291	499	621	647	577	412	189	97	92	92	92	92	92	707	2
	11	991	102	105	122	261	420	515	528	459	315	154	106	102	102	102	102	102	814	1
	12	997	105	105	105	107	111	189	330	437	474	437	330	189	111	107	105	105	850	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		402	444	1002	1869	2637	3110	3141	2689	1776	891	553	428	404	402	402	402	2872	
Nov 21	7	423	17	19	134	280	375	406	379	289	147	19	17	17	17	17	17	17	43	5
	8	806	46	49	174	456	651	742	719	583	350	78	46	46	46	46	46	46	247	4
	9	929	67	67	105	382	623	779	779	679	472	180	70	67	67	67	67	67	468	3
	10	984	83	83	87	210	470	651	727	694	554	316	98	83	83	83	83	83	635	2
	11	1009	92	92	92	98	242	462	607	654	603	455	234	98	92	92	92	92	740	1
	12	1016	96	96	96	96	101	227	432	572	619	572	432	227	101	96	96	96	775	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		352	357	620	1438	2363	3101	3396	3159	2421	1324	664	404	355	352	352	352	2520	
Dec 21	7	372	13	14	93	228	318	354	339	268	150	21	13	13	13	13	13	13	31	5
	8	803	42	43	129	416	625	734	728	609	390	105	42	42	42	42	42	42	219	4
	9	936	63	63	78	341	604	761	800	716	520	226	66	63	63	63	63	63	436	3
	10	993	78	78	81	178	445	657	753	735	605	369	112	79	78	78	78	78	602	2
	11	1019	87	87	87	92	231	474	638	698	654	506	270	94	87	87	87	87	704	1
	12	1026	91	91	91	91	95	241	469	620	670	620	469	241	95	91	91	91	739	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		328	330	501	1269	2241	3076	3468	3312	2638	1527	721	393	331	328	328	328	2361	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.7 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 32° N Latitude (SI units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal W/m²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, W/m²																	Solar Time P.M.
			N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	
Jan 21	7	4	0	0	1	3	4	4	4	3	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
	8	640	28	29	93	330	505	597	596	502	326	88	29	28	28	28	28	28	102	4
	9	849	48	48	53	286	553	721	775	711	534	258	52	48	48	48	48	48	278	3
	10	931	63	63	64	129	427	659	784	788	670	444	144	64	63	63	63	63	430	2
	11	967	71	71	71	75	213	502	698	784	750	602	347	90	71	71	71	71	524	1
	12	977	74	74	74	74	79	277	548	718	777	718	548	277	79	74	74	74	556	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		249	250	338	897	1797	2700	3201	3198	2692	1746	831	353	252	249	249	249	1614	
Feb 21	7	352	13	23	148	258	323	336	299	212	83	14	13	13	13	13	13	13	30	5
	8	771	41	43	204	469	646	719	683	538	300	53	41	41	41	41	41	41	200	4
	9	905	60	60	101	386	627	764	783	680	471	174	63	60	60	60	60	60	402	3
	10	964	75	75	78	195	475	670	760	733	595	352	99	75	75	75	75	75	556	2
	11	990	83	83	83	88	240	491	656	717	670	519	275	89	83	83	83	83	652	1
	12	998	86	86	86	86	91	250	489	644	696	643	489	250	91	86	86	86	684	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		314	324	635	1405	2318	3086	3408	3188	2461	1426	718	384	316	314	314	314	2181	
Mar 21	7	583	30	116	332	483	556	545	447	276	63	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	100	5
	8	821	54	78	339	576	717	746	661	473	195	57	54	54	54	54	54	54	315	4
	9	914	74	77	203	475	662	746	716	578	339	95	74	74	74	74	74	74	516	3
	10	959	88	88	96	273	499	637	677	615	456	221	93	88	88	88	88	88	667	2
	11	980	96	96	98	108	258	447	564	592	529	380	185	101	96	96	96	96	762	1
	12	987	99	99	99	99	105	209	386	511	554	511	386	209	105	99	99	99	795	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		393	512	1131	1985	2761	3258	3284	2801	1858	1030	609	429	394	391	391	391	2757	
Apr 21	6	210	29	110	172	205	207	177	119	38	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	23	6
	7	649	53	253	462	593	631	575	428	204	49	45	45	45	45	45	45	45	191	5
	8	804	73	192	453	632	715	689	559	337	95	69	69	69	69	69	69	69	408	4
	9	876	89	113	324	532	649	669	591	418	183	92	87	87	87	87	87	87	593	3
	10	913	101	106	165	342	490	599	543	445	275	123	104	101	101	101	101	101	736	2
	11	932	109	109	115	149	263	371	426	415	340	222	126	113	109	109	109	109	825	1
	12	937	112	112	112	116	120	167	260	335	363	335	260	167	120	116	112	112	854	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		508	932	1734	2500	3003	3129	2806	2033	1135	721	559	496	482	479	479	479	3203	
May 21	6	374	104	244	340	381	367	295	175	39	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	28	67	6
	7	666	112	350	535	638	643	550	374	134	60	57	57	57	57	57	57	59	256	5
	8	787	93	295	519	655	694	629	470	229	86	80	80	80	80	80	80	80	461	4
	9	849	104	194	404	558	625	601	488	294	117	100	97	97	97	97	97	97	633	3
	10	882	114	127	240	383	473	491	435	313	170	117	110	110	110	110	110	110	766	2
	11	898	121	124	132	186	260	312	322	285	215	147	126	122	118	118	118	118	847	1
	12	904	121	123	125	127	130	148	186	220	223	220	186	148	130	127	125	123	873	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		700	1382	2214	2840	3106	2943	2356	1409	788	627	577	558	551	550	548	551	3464	
Jun 21	6	412	140	289	388	425	401	314	174	39	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	35	89	6
	7	662	148	384	556	644	634	529	342	109	62	62	62	62	62	62	62	65	279	5
	8	773	115	335	540	656	677	597	427	188	89	84	84	84	84	84	84	84	476	4
	9	831	110	234	431	563	609	567	440	244	111	101	101	101	101	101	101	101	642	3
	10	863	120	150	272	395	461	458	387	261	143	120	114	114	114	114	114	114	770	2
	11	880	126	130	148	202	258	288	280	237	177	135	128	125	122	122	122	122	847	1
	12	885	128	129	130	132	134	144	164	183	191	183	164	144	134	132	130	129	871	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		824	1589	2403	2950	3108	2829	2137	1174	710	621	595	585	582	579	579	586	3538	
Jul 21	6	358	106	240	332	370	355	285	168	39	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	30	70	6
	7	640	118	349	526	623	626	534	361	129	62	59	59	59	59	59	59	61	257	5
	8	761	98	300	515	645	680	613	456	221	89	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	457	4
	9	823	107	202	405	553	615	588	475	284	117	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	626	3
	10	856	118	133	247	383	467	481	424	303	167	120	113	113	113	113	113	113	757	2
	11	873	124	128	137	191	261	308	314	277	210	147	129	125	121	121	121	121	836	1
	12	879	126	127	128	130	133	150	184	214	226	214	184	150	133	130	128	127	861	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		728	1402	2210	2809	3052	2877	2290	1365	783	637	591	574	568	566	565	568	3431	
Aug 21	6	187	30	103	159	188	189	162	108	35	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	25	6
	7	599	59	250	444	565	598	542	402	192	53	49	49	49	49	49	49	49	192	5
	8	756	79	200	446	614	690	662	536	321	96	74	74	74	74	74	74	74	403	4
	9	830	95	124	328	523	632	648	570	402	179	98	93	93	93	93	93	93	583	3
	10	869	106	113	175	344	482	544	526	429	266	126	110	106	106	106	106	106	722	2
	11	889	115	117	122	157	264	365	414	401	328	217	131	119	115	115	115	115	808	1
	12	894	117	117	117	122	126	170	255	324	350	324	255	170	126	122	117	117	837	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		539	957	1721	2443	2910	3014	2694	1950	1109	729	581	524	510	507	506	506	3152	
Sep 21	7	514	32	109	302	437	502	492	405	252	62	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	97	5
	8	758	57	81	324	546	679	706	626	450	190	61	57	57	57	57	57	57	304	4
	9	857	77	82	201	459	637	717	688	557	330	99	77	77	77	77	77	77	498	3
	10	905	91	91	101	270	485	617	655	596	444	220	97	91	91	91	91	91	645	2
	11	928	100	100	102	113	257	437	549	576	516	373	187	106	100	100	100	100	737	1
	12	935	103	103	103	103	110	210	379	499	540	499	379	210	110	103	103	103	769	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		409	518	1089	1888	2621	3097	3132	2689	1812	1025	620	446	411	408	408	408	2664	
Oct 21	7	312	13	24	136	233	291	301	268	190	75	14	13	13	13	13	13	13	30	5
	8	724	42	46	200	450	616	684	649	511	285	54	42	42	42	42	42	42	198	4
	9	862	63	63	104	378	608	738	755	655	454	170	65	63	63	63	63	63	395	3
	10	923	77	77	81	197	465	652	737	711	577	342	101	77	77	77	77	77	546	2
	11	952	86	86	86	91	239	481	639	697	651	505	269	93	86	86	86	86	639	1
	12	960	89	89	89	89	95	247	478	626	677	626	278	247	95	89	89	89	671	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		325	335	632	1365	2234	2968	3275	3067	2376	1390	714	394	328	325	325	325	2143	
Nov 21	7	5	0	0	1	3	4	5	4	3	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
	8	619	29	29	93	323	493	581	579	488	316	86	29	29	29	29	29	29	102	4
	9	829	49	49	55	284	545	709	761	697	523	253	49	49	49	49	49	49	277	3
	10	912	64	64	65	131	423	650	772	775	659	437	142	65	64	64	64	64	428	2
	11	949	72	72	72	76	213	496	688	773	739	593	342	91	72	72	72	72	521	1
	12	959	75	75	75	75	80	274	541	708	766	708	541	274	80	75	75	75	553	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		253	254	342	890	1769	2653	3143	3138	2643	1717	824	355	256	253	253	253	607	
Dec 21	8	556	22	22	59	265	426	515	523	452	305	98	23	22	22	22	22	22	69	4
	9	812	43	43	46	244	512	686	751	701	539	282	48	43	43	43	43	43	228	3
	10	908	57	57	57	106	402	642	777	792	683	466	163	59	57	57	57	57	375	2
	11	949	66	66	66	69	200	497	700	795	766	620	367	92	66	66	66	66	468	1
	12	960	69	69	69	69	73	281	559	733	794	733	559	281	73	69	69	69	500	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		223	223	265	717	1577	2499	3043	3111	2687	1823	868	339	225	223	223	223	1389	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.8 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 40° N Latitude (SI units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal W/m²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, W/m²																	Solar Time P.M.
			N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	
Jan 21	8	446	17	17	55	223	350	417	420	358	236	60	17	17	17	17	17	17	44	4
	9	753	37	37	41	233	485	648	706	658	504	260	42	37	37	37	37	37	173	3
	10	865	51	51	51	97	390	627	761	776	671	460	161	53	51	51	51	51	303	2
	11	913	59	59	59	62	193	493	699	796	769	623	372	89	59	59	59	59	390	1
	12	926	62	62	62	62	66	293	563	740	802	740	563	283	62	62	62	62	419	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		194	194	231	628	1426	2316	2852	2941	2566	1770	860	318	196	194	194	194	1117	
Feb 21	7	175	6	10	71	127	160	167	150	107	43	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	11	5
	8	692	33	35	158	407	576	651	628	505	296	56	33	33	33	33	33	33	136	4
	9	854	52	52	70	337	587	738	773	689	496	209	55	52	52	52	52	52	309	3
	10	926	65	65	67	155	450	666	777	768	641	408	120	66	65	65	65	65	451	2
	11	958	73	73	73	77	224	504	690	769	730	579	325	86	73	73	73	73	538	1
	12	967	76	76	76	76	80	271	536	702	760	702	536	271	80	76	76	76	568	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		267	271	478	1140	2043	2888	3308	3202	2591	1602	790	361	269	267	267	267	1730	
Mar 21	7	540	27	92	295	441	514	509	425	271	69	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	83	5
	8	789	50	57	288	534	686	732	665	494	232	54	50	50	50	50	50	50	268	4
	9	889	67	70	147	429	640	749	744	625	404	127	69	67	67	67	67	67	450	3
	10	938	80	80	85	226	482	653	722	682	539	299	91	80	80	80	80	80	587	2
	11	961	88	88	88	94	247	476	623	673	622	473	244	94	88	88	88	85	673	1
	12	968	91	91	91	91	97	238	458	602	650	602	458	238	97	91	91	91	702	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		358	440	954	1777	2626	3265	3429	3055	2191	1270	694	417	360	357	357	357	2411	
Apr 21	6	282	36	144	228	275	279	241	164	56	16	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	34	6
	7	651	50	223	442	584	633	588	451	255	51	45	45	45	45	45	45	45	193	5
	8	795	69	140	402	601	706	703	594	391	130	69	67	67	67	67	67	67	389	4
	9	865	84	91	254	488	638	691	640	494	260	91	84	84	84	84	84	84	557	3
	10	901	96	99	117	291	480	589	608	538	381	177	101	96	96	96	96	96	685	2
	11	920	104	107	107	122	255	411	506	522	459	323	164	109	104	104	104	104	766	1
	12	926	106	106	106	109	114	196	341	448	486	448	341	196	114	109	106	106	794	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		487	835	1580	2390	3020	3314	3135	2466	1539	935	628	495	467	464	464	464	3020	
May 21	5	3	1	2	3	3	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	7
	6	453	113	284	403	458	446	364	223	56	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	35	96	6
	7	681	90	320	520	638	659	580	412	172	63	59	59	59	59	59	59	59	276	5
	8	787	86	230	471	629	694	655	519	295	92	80	80	80	80	80	80	80	461	4
	9	844	99	131	330	518	620	632	551	382	168	101	96	96	96	96	96	96	616	3
	10	875	107	114	171	332	467	529	513	419	262	127	111	107	107	107	107	107	737	2
	11	891	115	115	121	152	256	357	409	400	331	222	133	120	115	115	115	115	812	1
	12	896	117	117	117	121	126	171	258	329	355	329	258	171	126	121	117	117	836	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		679	1275	2102	2818	3231	3232	2778	1897	1129	780	630	568	554	550	550	552	3418	
Jun 21	5	68	32	54	68	70	63	46	20	5	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	7	8	7
	6	488	150	329	450	501	478	380	222	53	39	39	39	39	39	39	39	43	126	6
	7	681	118	355	543	648	654	562	385	145	68	65	65	65	65	65	65	67	306	5
	8	776	94	268	492	633	680	626	480	252	93	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	484	4
	9	829	105	160	359	524	607	601	507	332	142	104	100	100	100	100	100	100	633	3
	10	859	112	121	197	345	457	500	468	366	218	122	115	112	112	112	112	112	750	2
	11	874	119	123	128	166	254	332	367	347	279	188	130	124	119	119	119	119	821	1
	12	879	121	121	121	127	131	163	227	281	301	281	227	163	131	127	121	121	844	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		799	1483	2314	2968	3275	3151	2580	1649	995	743	642	602	592	588	587	594	3551	
Jul 21	5	7	3	5	7	7	6	5	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	7
	6	435	116	281	395	447	433	352	216	55	34	34	34	34	34	34	34	37	100	6
	7	656	95	321	513	625	643	564	400	166	66	62	62	62	62	62	62	62	278	5
	8	762	90	236	468	620	680	639	505	285	94	83	83	83	83	83	83	83	459	4
	9	818	102	138	333	513	610	618	537	371	165	104	99	99	99	99	99	99	611	3
	10	850	110	118	177	333	462	519	501	407	255	129	114	110	110	110	110	110	729	2
	11	866	117	120	125	157	256	352	400	389	321	217	135	123	117	117	117	117	802	1
	12	871	120	120	120	125	130	172	253	320	345	320	253	172	130	125	120	120	826	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		705	1296	2102	2792	3180	3164	2707	1842	1110	783	643	586	572	568	567	570	3395	
Aug 21	6	255	38	137	214	256	259	223	151	52	18	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	38	6
	7	603	55	223	426	557	602	557	426	222	55	49	49	49	49	49	49	49	196	5
	8	747	75	149	397	584	681	676	569	374	128	74	72	72	72	72	72	72	386	4
	9	819	89	97	259	481	621	669	618	475	251	97	89	89	89	89	89	89	549	3
	10	857	102	105	126	294	472	574	590	519	567	173	107	102	102	102	102	102	674	2
	11	876	109	109	113	130	257	403	492	505	443	313	165	116	109	109	109	109	753	1
	12	882	112	112	112	115	120	197	333	434	470	434	333	197	120	115	112	112	780	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		518	861	1571	2338	2929	3196	3015	2370	1496	932	647	524	496	492	492	492	2983	
Sep 21	7	472	28	87	265	395	460	456	381	244	66	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	80	5
	8	725	52	61	275	504	646	689	626	467	224	57	52	52	52	52	52	52	258	4
	9	830	71	73	148	413	613	717	712	599	391	129	73	71	71	71	71	71	434	3
	10	882	84	84	89	224	468	631	697	659	522	293	96	84	84	84	84	84	567	2
	11	906	92	92	92	99	245	463	604	652	603	461	242	99	92	92	92	92	651	1
	12	914	95	95	95	95	101	237	446	584	631	584	446	237	101	95	95	95	679	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		374	447	917	1683	2484	3092	3257	2918	2119	1250	699	432	376	373	373	373	2329	
Oct 21	7	153	6	10	64	113	142	148	132	94	38	7	6	6	6	6	6	38	12	5
	8	644	35	37	155	387	545	615	592	476	280	56	35	35	35	35	35	35	136	4
	9	811	54	54	73	329	567	710	743	661	476	202	57	54	54	54	54	54	305	3
	10	884	67	67	70	157	439	646	752	742	619	395	120	69	67	67	67	67	443	2
	11	917	76	76	76	80	223	491	670	745	707	562	317	89	76	76	76	76	529	1
	12	927	78	78	78	78	84	267	521	681	737	681	521	267	84	78	78	78	558	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		277	282	479	1106	1965	2771	3173	3074	2494	555	780	369	280	277	277	277	1704	
Nov 21	8	430	17	17	55	217	339	404	406	346	228	66	18	17	17	17	17	17	44	4
	9	733	38	38	42	231	476	634	691	643	492	254	43	38	38	38	38	38	173	3
	10	846	52	52	52	99	385	617	748	763	659	145	159	54	52	52	52	52	303	2
	11	894	60	60	60	63	192	486	688	783	757	613	367	89	60	60	60	60	388	1
	12	908	63	63	63	63	67	280	555	728	789	728	555	280	67	63	63	63	418	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		197	198	235	623	1403	2273	2797	2884	2516	1738	850	319	199	197	197	197	1115	
Dec 21	8	279	9	9	25	129	212	259	264	230	157	52	10	9	9	9	9	9	20	4
	9	685	31	31	33	188	427	584	646	611	477	260	40	31	31	31	31	31	124	3
	10	825	45	45	45	78	358	594	732	755	661	462	173	47	45	45	45	45	244	2
	11	882	53	53	53	55	177	477	685	786	765	624	379	90	53	53	53	53	327	1
	12	898	56	56	56	56	60	281	560	736	798	738	560	281	60	56	56	56	356	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		165	165	178	461	1180	2046	2594	2736	2446	1757	870	298	167	165	165	165	891	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.9 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 48° N Latitude (SI units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal W/m²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, W/m²																	Solar Time P.M.
			N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	
Jan 21	8	116	4	4	13	57	90	109	110	94	63	18	4	4	4	4	4	4	7	4
	9	584	24	24	26	168	371	505	555	523	406	217	30	24	24	24	24	24	79	3
	10	754	37	37	37	69	333	554	682	702	615	429	159	39	37	37	37	37	174	2
	11	823	45	45	45	47	166	455	656	753	734	598	365	83	45	45	45	45	244	1
	12	842	48	48	48	48	51	271	541	713	772	713	541	271	51	48	48	48	269	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		134	134	144	368	996	1788	2298	2448	2212	1616	817	267	136	134	134	134	639	
Feb 21	7	11	0	1	5	8	10	11	10	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	5
	8	568	24	25	114	324	470	537	524	428	259	52	24	24	24	24	24	24	78	4
	9	780	42	42	49	284	530	683	727	660	488	225	45	42	42	42	42	42	210	3
	10	869	54	54	55	120	415	641	764	768	653	434	137	55	54	54	54	54	331	2
	11	908	61	61	61	64	205	498	696	787	755	607	355	84	61	61	61	61	409	1
	12	920	63	63	63	63	68	280	555	728	790	728	555	280	68	63	63	63	435	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		214	216	337	864	1708	2575	3054	3051	2565	1677	825	328	216	214	214	214	1246	
Mar 21	7	482	23	71	253	387	458	458	388	253	71	23	22	22	22	22	22	22	64	5
	8	744	44	48	239	486	644	701	651	498	257	49	44	44	44	44	44	44	214	4
	9	853	60	60	104	381	609	738	753	652	449	164	62	60	60	60	60	60	371	3
	10	906	72	72	75	183	460	656	749	728	596	363	104	72	72	72	72	72	493	2
	11	932	79	79	79	83	232	492	663	731	689	541	297	88	79	79	79	79	568	1
	12	939	81	81	81	81	86	261	509	666	720	666	509	261	86	81	81	81	594	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		317	372	790	1558	2446	3193	3471	3199	2420	1466	769	399	319	316	316	316	2006	
Apr 21	6	340	39	167	271	330	337	294	203	74	20	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	46	6
	7	646	49	191	417	567	628	595	468	264	56	45	45	45	45	45	45	45	189	5
	8	779	64	99	350	566	690	709	619	435	173	67	64	64	64	64	64	64	359	4
	9	847	79	83	191	444	621	703	679	554	335	105	79	79	79	79	79	79	507	3
	10	884	90	90	97	244	466	610	660	613	472	251	97	90	90	90	90	90	618	2
	11	902	97	97	97	105	245	443	570	609	558	419	217	103	97	97	97	97	689	1
	12	908	99	99	99	99	106	224	414	543	587	543	414	224	106	99	99	99	713	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		463	765	1454	2285	3019	3465	3411	2825	1908	1169	713	492	445	442	442	442	2761	
May 21	5	129	52	97	125	133	122	91	44	9	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	16	7
	6	511	112	305	443	512	504	418	267	75	38	38	38	38	38	38	38	40	125	6
	7	690	73	283	498	631	668	604	448	214	66	61	61	61	61	61	61	61	287	5
	8	782	83	170	418	599	689	675	562	358	120	79	79	79	79	79	79	79	449	4
	9	834	93	101	259	475	611	656	605	463	243	100	93	93	93	93	93	93	585	3
	10	864	103	106	124	283	458	561	579	513	366	179	109	103	103	103	103	103	690	2
	11	879	109	109	113	127	249	396	488	505	447	320	170	116	109	109	109	109	756	1
	12	884	111	111	111	114	120	198	336	439	474	439	336	198	120	114	111	111	778	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		679	1224	2035	2817	3360	3515	3176	2363	1525	997	709	579	550	546	546	549	3297	
Jun 21	5	243	111	192	241	252	228	166	75	19	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	24	38	7
	6	544	146	348	488	552	534	434	266	70	46	46	46	46	46	46	46	49	162	6
	7	693	93	317	521	642	467	591	427	188	72	67	67	67	67	67	67	67	324	5
	8	775	90	203	440	604	678	651	529	320	107	84	84	84	84	84	84	84	479	4
	9	822	98	114	286	482	600	629	567	418	208	105	98	98	98	98	98	98	610	3
	10	849	108	113	142	296	450	534	540	465	319	157	114	108	108	108	108	108	711	2
	11	864	114	114	120	138	248	373	449	456	396	279	156	121	114	114	114	114	775	1
	12	869	116	116	116	120	126	189	303	391	423	391	303	189	126	120	116	116	796	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		811	1446	2279	3013	3454	3477	3013	2140	1376	942	718	620	597	593	592	602	3495	
Jul 21	5	135	57	104	133	141	129	96	46	11	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	12	18	7
	6	492	116	302	436	501	492	407	259	75	40	40	40	40	40	40	40	43	130	6
	7	666	78	285	492	619	653	588	436	207	69	63	63	63	63	63	63	63	290	5
	8	757	86	176	416	590	675	660	547	348	119	81	81	81	81	81	81	81	448	4
	9	809	96	106	263	471	601	643	591	450	237	104	96	96	96	96	96	96	582	3
	10	839	106	109	130	285	453	550	566	500	356	177	112	106	106	106	106	106	684	2
	11	855	112	112	117	132	249	390	477	492	435	312	169	119	112	112	112	112	749	1
	12	859	114	114	114	117	124	198	329	428	462	428	329	198	124	117	114	114	771	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		705	1247	2039	2795	3311	3446	3101	2303	1496	993	721	598	570	565	565	569	3287	
Aug 21	6	311	42	161	256	310	316	273	190	70	22	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	51	6
	7	599	53	193	403	543	598	565	444	250	59	49	49	49	49	49	49	49	193	5
	8	732	69	108	347	549	665	681	593	417	168	73	69	69	69	69	69	69	358	4
	9	801	84	90	198	437	605	681	655	534	323	108	84	84	84	84	84	84	502	3
	10	839	95	95	104	247	453	593	639	592	456	245	104	95	95	95	95	95	610	2
	11	858	102	102	102	112	247	433	553	589	539	406	215	110	102	102	102	102	679	1
	12	864	104	104	104	104	113	224	404	526	568	526	404	224	113	104	104	104	702	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		496	790	1449	2237	2929	3343	3282	2720	1852	1156	728	521	475	471	471	471	2741	
Sep 21	7	414	24	66	224	342	403	403	342	224	66	24	23	23	23	23	23	23	62	5
	8	678	46	51	228	455	602	654	608	467	244	52	46	46	46	46	46	46	206	4
	9	792	63	63	107	366	581	702	716	621	430	163	66	63	63	63	63	63	358	3
	10	848	75	75	79	182	444	630	719	699	573	353	107	75	75	75	75	75	476	2
	11	876	82	82	82	88	230	476	639	704	664	524	292	93	82	82	82	82	549	1
	12	884	84	84	84	84	91	257	494	643	695	643	494	257	91	84	84	84	574	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		332	381	758	1467	2300	3007	3280	3039	2324	1429	766	334	331	331	331	1937		
Oct 21	7	12	0	1	5	9	11	12	11	8	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	5
	8	522	25	27	111	304	439	501	489	398	242	51	25	25	25	25	25	25	79	4
	9	734	44	44	52	276	508	652	693	629	466	216	47	44	44	44	44	44	208	3
	10	825	56	56	58	122	403	618	736	739	628	418	136	58	56	56	56	56	327	2
	11	866	64	64	64	67	203	483	673	760	729	587	345	86	64	64	64	64	403	1
	12	878	66	66	66	66	71	274	538	704	763	704	538	274	71	66	66	66	429	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		223	225	340	838	1637	2461	2918	2918	2459	1619	808	334	226	223	223	223	1233	
Nov 21	8	115	4	4	13	57	90	108	109	93	62	18	4	4	4	4	4	4	7	4
	9	565	25	25	27	165	363	492	540	509	394	211	31	25	25	25	25	25	81	3
	10	735	38	38	38	70	328	543	668	688	602	420	156	40	38	38	38	38	175	2
	11	804	46	46	46	48	165	448	645	739	720	587	358	83	46	46	46	46	244	1
	12	823	48	48	48	48	53	267	531	700	758	700	531	267	53	48	48	48	269	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		138	138	147	368	979	1752	2250	2396	2165	1583	804	268	140	138	138	138	642	
Dec 21	9	442	16	16	18	113	272	378	420	401	316	176	25	16	16	16	16	16	42	3
	10	676	30	30	30	51	286	491	613	636	563	398	156	32	30	30	30	30	119	2
	11	765	38	38	38	40	146	421	615	708	694	569	351	80	38	38	38	38	181	1
	12	789	41	41	41	41	44	256	514	679	734	679	514	256	44	41	41	41	204	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		105	105	107	231	735	1444	1924	2098	1944	1477	778	239	107	105	105	105	444	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.10 Solar Intensity and Solar Heat Gain Factors[a] for 64° N Latitude (SI units)[b]

Date	Solar Time A.M.	Direct Normal W/m²	Solar Heat Gain Factors, W/m²																	Solar Time P.M.
			N	NNE	NE	ENE	E	ESE	SE	SSE	S	SSW	SW	WSW	W	WNW	NW	NNW	HOR	
Jan 21	10	69	2	2	2	4	29	51	63	66	58	41	16	2	2	2	2	2	4	2
	11	256	9	9	9	9	46	143	210	242	238	196	120	24	9	9	9	9	18	1
	12	316	11	11	11	11	12	104	211	280	302	280	211	104	12	11	11	11	24	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		16	16	16	18	80	250	382	449	446	374	237	72	17	16	16	16	33	
Feb 21	8	56	2	2	9	31	46	53	53	44	27	6	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	4
	9	422	16	16	18	136	280	373	403	375	285	143	18	16	16	16	16	16	41	3
	10	601	26	26	26	57	276	453	554	567	495	341	119	28	26	26	26	26	90	2
	11	679	32	32	32	34	139	386	558	638	622	506	307	64	32	32	32	32	128	1
	12	701	34	34	34	34	37	231	464	613	662	613	464	231	37	34	34	34	143	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		93	93	103	279	770	1408	1822	1947	1767	1298	668	210	95	93	93	93	334	
Mar 21	7	300	12	34	147	235	284	288	249	168	54	13	12	12	12	12	12	12	27	5
	8	582	29	31	147	357	499	559	536	427	246	44	29	29	29	29	29	29	100	4
	9	717	41	41	51	277	502	642	679	613	450	203	44	41	41	41	41	41	187	3
	10	786	49	49	50	111	386	598	714	719	613	410	132	51	49	49	49	49	264	2
	11	821	54	54	54	57	190	468	658	746	718	579	344	80	54	54	54	54	314	1
	12	831	56	56	56	56	61	269	530	696	754	696	530	269	61	56	56	56	331	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		213	234	473	1052	1879	2695	3103	3021	2457	1591	811	330	215	213	213	213	1057	
Apr 21	5	85	24	56	77	85	81	64	36	6	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	5	8	7
	6	419	38	187	320	400	416	371	266	111	26	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	67	6
	7	613	43	129	355	516	595	584	482	303	80	41	41	41	41	41	41	41	162	5
	8	720	54	60	249	483	633	685	634	484	250	60	54	54	54	54	54	54	269	4
	9	783	65	65	100	351	567	691	710	620	436	174	68	65	65	65	65	65	367	3
	10	820	72	72	76	161	421	613	709	698	582	372	119	74	72	72	72	72	441	2
	11	839	77	77	77	82	215	468	637	710	676	540	312	93	77	77	77	77	448	1
	12	846	79	79	79	79	85	262	503	655	708	655	503	262	85	79	79	79	504	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		413	687	1294	2116	2974	3628	3741	3268	2408	1537	861	471	381	378	378	378	2053	
May 21	4	160	94	139	162	161	135	87	25	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	11	31	20	8
	5	416	152	298	393	425	395	302	158	34	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	33	81	7
	6	584	90	304	474	570	579	499	343	126	49	46	46	46	46	46	46	46	175	6
	7	688	65	199	436	596	665	634	507	297	78	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	284	5
	8	754	72	89	307	527	660	694	623	459	215	78	72	72	72	72	72	72	390	4
	9	796	82	85	143	384	577	678	679	579	389	147	85	82	82	82	82	82	481	3
	10	822	89	89	94	193	427	593	668	645	528	322	114	89	89	89	89	89	549	2
	11	836	93	93	93	100	226	446	594	652	614	485	275	105	93	93	93	93	592	1
	12	841	95	95	95	95	103	248	460	597	644	597	460	248	103	95	95	95	606	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		780	1341	2145	2998	3712	4073	3841	3108	2234	1467	909	603	533	529	530	554	2875	
Jun 21	4	294	181	263	302	297	247	156	43	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	23	67	50	8
	5	485	195	360	466	498	458	346	175	44	39	39	39	39	39	39	39	45	124	7
	6	614	113	338	510	603	605	516	347	122	57	55	55	55	55	55	55	57	223	6
	7	698	74	225	457	610	672	632	498	282	80	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	331	5
	8	754	79	105	327	535	657	682	605	438	197	85	79	79	79	79	79	79	433	4
	9	791	89	93	161	393	572	862	655	552	362	137	92	89	89	89	89	89	520	3
	10	814	96	96	102	205	423	577	642	615	497	297	114	96	96	96	96	96	585	2
	11	827	100	100	100	108	228	431	568	619	581	456	258	110	100	100	100	100	627	1
	12	831	101	101	101	101	110	240	436	566	610	566	436	240	110	101	101	101	641	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		1016	1080	2526	3347	3953	4154	3769	2985	2142	1436	935	667	605	601	603	673	3219	
Jul 21	4	168	101	149	173	172	144	93	27	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	35	24	8
	5	405	154	297	389	420	390	298	156	36	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	36	88	7
	6	564	94	303	467	560	567	488	335	124	51	49	49	49	49	49	49	49	181	6
	7	665	69	201	431	585	652	620	495	290	80	63	63	63	63	63	63	63	289	5
	8	730	75	94	307	520	648	680	609	449	211	81	75	75	75	75	75	75	393	4
	9	771	85	88	148	382	567	665	664	566	380	146	88	85	85	85	85	85	481	3
	10	797	92	92	98	196	422	583	655	631	516	315	116	92	92	92	92	92	548	2
	11	812	96	96	96	104	226	439	582	638	601	475	271	108	96	96	96	96	590	1
	12	816	98	98	98	98	107	246	452	585	630	585	452	246	107	98	98	98	604	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		814	1370	2157	2985	3669	4004	3763	3046	2198	1457	920	626	557	553	554	582	2985	
Aug 21	5	92	28	62	85	94	89	71	40	8	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	11	7
	6	388	42	182	306	380	395	352	252	107	30	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	73	6
	7	570	48	132	344	494	567	555	458	289	81	45	45	45	45	45	45	45	168	5
	8	675	59	66	247	468	609	657	607	464	241	66	59	59	59	59	59	59	273	4
	9	737	70	70	107	345	549	666	683	597	420	172	74	70	70	70	70	70	368	3
	10	775	78	78	82	165	412	594	685	674	562	361	122	80	78	78	78	78	440	2
	11	794	82	82	82	89	216	456	617	686	653	523	305	99	82	82	82	82	485	1
	12	801	84	84	84	84	92	260	489	635	684	633	489	260	92	84	84	84	501	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		447	714	1293	2073	2884	3498	3600	3147	2333	1509	869	500	413	409	409	410	2069	
Sep 21	7	242	12	30	122	194	234	238	206	139	47	13	12	12	12	12	12	12	26	5
	8	513	30	33	136	324	451	505	484	387	225	45	30	30	30	30	30	30	97	4
	9	651	43	43	54	261	468	596	631	570	420	193	47	43	43	43	43	43	181	3
	10	722	52	52	53	111	366	563	672	677	577	388	131	54	52	52	52	52	255	2
	11	758	57	57	57	61	185	445	623	706	680	549	329	83	57	57	57	57	303	1
	12	769	59	59	59	59	65	260	504	660	715	660	504	260	65	59	59	59	320	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		224	241	448	968	1727	2484	2871	2810	2305	1513	787	336	227	224	224	224	1021	
Oct 21	8	54	2	2	10	30	45	52	51	42	26	6	2	2	2	2	2	2	4	4
	9	383	17	17	19	127	259	345	372	346	263	133	19	17	17	17	17	17	42	3
	10	556	28	28	28	58	261	426	520	532	465	321	115	29	28	28	28	28	91	2
	11	633	34	34	34	36	135	367	528	603	588	479	292	64	34	34	34	34	130	1
	12	655	36	36	36	36	40	222	441	581	628	581	441	222	40	36	36	36	144	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		98	98	109	273	728	1324	1711	1829	1661	1225	638	209	100	98	98	98	339	
Nov 21	10	72	2	2	2	5	31	53	67	69	62	43	17	3	2	2	2	2	4	2
	11	250	9	9	9	10	46	140	207	238	234	192	118	24	9	9	9	9	19	1
	12	307	11	11	11	11	13	102	207	274	295	274	207	102	13	11	11	11	25	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		17	17	17	19	81	248	378	444	440	369	234	71	18	17	17	17	35	
Dec 21	11	12	0	0	0	0	2	7	10	12	11	9	6	1	0	0	0	0	1	1
	12	51	1	1	1	1	2	16	34	45	48	45	34	16	2	1	1	1	3	12
	HALF-DAY TOTALS		1	1	1	1	3	16	28	35	36	32	22	8	1	1	1	1	2	
			N	NNW	NW	WNW	W	WSW	SW	SSW	S	SSE	SE	ESE	E	ENE	NE	NNE	HOR	PM

[a]Total solar heat gains for DSA glass (based on a ground reflectance of 0.20).
[b]Half-day totals computed by Simpson's rule, time interval = 10 minutes.

TABLE C.11 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation, 32° N Latitude (I-P units)

	Solar Time		Solar Position			Global Irradiance (Btu/h ft²)					
					Direct		South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jan 21	7	5	1.4	65.2	1	0	0	0	0	1	1
	8	4	12.5	56.5	203	56	93	106	116	123	115
	9	3	22.5	46.0	269	118	175	193	206	212	181
	10	2	30.6	33.1	295	167	235	256	269	274	221
	11	1	36.1	17.5	306	198	273	295	308	312	245
	12		38.0	0.0	310	209	285	308	321	324	253
			Surface Daily Totals		2458	1288	1839	2008	2118	2166	1779
Feb 21	7	5	7.1	73.5	121	22	34	37	40	42	38
	8	4	19.0	64.4	247	95	127	136	140	141	108
	9	3	29.9	53.4	288	161	206	217	222	220	158
	10	2	39.1	39.4	306	212	266	278	283	279	193
	11	1	45.6	21.4	315	244	304	317	321	315	214
	12		48.0	0.0	317	255	316	330	334	328	222
			Surface Daily Totals		2872	1724	2188	2300	2345	2322	1644
Mar 21	7	5	12.7	81.9	185	54	60	60	59	56	32
	8	4	25.1	73.0	260	129	146	147	144	137	78
	9	3	36.8	62.1	290	194	222	224	220	209	119
	10	2	47.3	47.5	304	245	280	283	278	265	150
	11	1	55.0	26.8	311	277	317	321	315	300	170
	12		58.0	0.0	313	287	329	333	327	312	177
			Surface Daily Totals		3012	2084	2378	2403	2358	2246	1276
Apr 21	6	6	6.1	99.9	66	14	9	6	6	5	3
	7	5	18.8	92.2	206	86	78	71	62	51	10
	8	4	31.5	84.0	255	158	156	148	136	120	35
	9	3	43.9	74.2	278	220	225	217	203	183	68
	10	2	55.7	60.3	290	267	279	272	256	234	95
	11	1	65.4	37.5	295	297	313	306	290	265	112
	12		69.6	0.0	297	307	325	318	301	276	118
			Surface Daily Totals		3076	2390	2444	2356	2206	1994	764
May 21	6	6	10.4	107.2	119	36	21	13	13	12	7
	7	5	22.8	100.1	211	107	88	75	60	44	13
	8	4	35.4	92.9	250	175	159	145	127	105	15
	9	3	48.1	84.7	269	233	223	209	188	163	33
	10	2	60.6	73.3	280	277	273	259	237	208	56
	11	1	72.0	51.9	285	305	305	290	268	237	72
	12		78.0	0.0	286	315	315	301	278	247	77
			Surface Daily Totals		3112	2582	2454	2284	2064	1788	469
Jun 21	6	6	12.2	110.2	131	45	26	16	15	14	9
	7	5	24.3	103.4	210	115	91	76	59	41	14
	8	4	36.9	96.8	245	180	159	143	122	99	16
	9	3	49.6	89.4	264	236	221	204	181	153	19
	10	2	62.2	79.7	274	279	268	251	227	197	41
	11	1	74.2	60.9	279	306	299	282	257	224	56
	12		81.5	0.0	280	315	309	292	267	234	60
			Surface Daily Totals		3084	2634	2436	2234	1990	1690	370

TABLE C.11 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation, 32° N Latitude (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Solar Time		*Solar Position*			*Global Irradiance (Btu/h ft²)*					
							South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Direct Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jul 21	6	6	10.7	107.7	113	37	22	14	13	12	8
	7	5	23.1	100.6	203	107	87	75	60	44	14
	8	4	35.7	93.6	241	174	158	143	125	104	16
	9	3	48.4	85.5	261	230	220	205	185	159	31
	10	2	60.9	74.3	271	274	269	254	232	204	54
	11	1	72.4	53.3	277	302	300	285	262	232	69
	12		78.6	0.0	279	311	310	296	273	242	74
			Surface Daily Totals		3012	2558	2422	2250	2030	1754	458
Aug 21	6	6	6.5	100.5	59	14	9	7	6	6	4
	7	5	19.1	92.8	190	85	77	69	60	50	12
	8	4	31.8	84.7	240	156	152	144	132	116	33
	9	3	44.3	75.0	263	216	220	212	197	178	65
	10	2	56.1	61.3	276	262	272	264	249	226	91
	11	1	66.0	38.4	282	292	305	298	281	257	107
	12		70.3	0.0	284	302	317	309	292	268	113
			Surface Daily Totals		2902	2352	2388	2296	2144	1934	736
Sep 21	7	5	12.7	81.9	163	51	56	56	55	52	30
	8	4	25.1	73.0	240	124	140	141	138	131	75
	9	3	36.8	62.1	272	188	213	215	211	201	114
	10	2	47.3	47.5	287	237	270	273	268	255	145
	11	1	55.0	26.8	294	268	306	309	303	289	164
	12		58.0	0.0	296	278	318	321	315	300	171
			Surface Daily Totals		2808	2014	2288	2308	2264	2154	1226
Oct 21	7	5	6.8	73.1	99	19	29	32	34	36	32
	8	4	18.7	64.0	229	90	120	128	133	134	104
	9	3	29.5	53.0	273	155	198	208	213	212	153
	10	2	38.7	39.1	293	204	257	269	273	270	188
	11	1	45.1	21.1	302	236	294	307	311	306	209
	12		47.5	0.0	304	247	306	320	324	318	217
			Surface Daily Totals		2696	1654	2100	2208	2252	2232	1588
Nov 21	7	5	1.5	65.4	2	0	0	0	1	1	1
	8	4	12.7	56.6	196	55	91	104	113	119	111
	9	3	22.6	46.1	263	118	173	190	202	208	176
	10	2	30.8	33.2	289	166	233	252	265	270	217
	11	1	36.2	17.6	301	197	270	291	303	307	241
	12		38.2	0.0	304	207	282	304	316	320	249
			Surface Daily Totals		2406	1280	1816	1980	2084	2130	1742
Dec 21	8	4	10.3	53.8	176	41	77	90	101	108	107
	9	3	19.8	43.6	257	102	161	180	195	204	183
	10	2	27.6	31.2	288	150	221	244	259	267	226
	11	1	32.7	16.4	301	180	258	282	298	305	251
	12		34.6	0.0	304	190	271	295	311	318	259
			Surface Daily Totals		2348	1136	1704	1888	2016	2086	1794

Source: Reprinted by permission from Peter J. Lunde, *Solar Thermal Engineering*, © 1980, John Wiley & Sons, New York.

TABLE C.12 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation, 40° N Latitude (I-P units)

	Solar Time		Solar Position			Global Irradiance (Btu/h ft²)					
					Direct		South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jan 21	8	4	8.1	55.3	142	28	65	74	81	85	84
	9	3	16.8	44.0	239	83	155	171	182	187	171
	10	2	23.8	30.9	274	127	218	237	249	254	223
	11	1	28.4	16.0	289	154	257	277	290	293	253
	12		30.0	0.0	294	164	270	291	303	306	263
			Surface Daily Totals		2182	948	1660	1810	1906	1944	1726
Feb 21	7	5	4.8	72.7	69	10	19	21	23	24	22
	8	4	15.4	62.2	224	73	114	122	126	127	107
	9	3	25.0	50.2	274	132	195	205	209	208	167
	10	2	32.8	35.9	295	178	256	267	271	267	210
	11	1	38.1	18.9	305	206	293	306	310	304	236
	12		40.0	0.0	308	216	306	319	323	317	245
			Surface Daily Totals		2640	1414	2060	2162	2202	2176	1730
Mar 21	7	5	11.4	80.2	171	46	55	55	54	51	35
	8	4	22.5	69.6	250	114	140	141	138	131	89
	9	3	32.8	57.3	282	173	215	217	213	202	138
	10	2	41.6	41.9	297	218	273	276	271	258	176
	11	1	47.7	22.6	305	247	310	313	307	293	200
	12		50.0	0.0	307	257	322	326	320	305	208
			Surface Daily Totals		2916	1852	2308	2330	2284	2174	1484
Apr 21	6	6	7.4	98.9	89	20	11	8	7	7	4
	7	5	18.9	89.5	206	87	77	70	61	50	12
	8	4	30.3	79.3	252	152	153	145	133	117	53
	9	3	41.3	67.2	274	207	221	213	199	179	93
	10	2	51.2	51.4	286	250	275	267	252	229	126
	11	1	58.7	29.2	292	277	308	301	285	260	147
	12		61.6	0.0	293	287	320	313	296	271	154
			Surface Daily Totals		3092	2274	2412	2320	2168	1956	1022
May 21	5	7	1.9	114.7	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
	6	6	12.7	105.6	144	49	25	15	14	13	9
	7	5	24.0	96.6	216	114	89	76	60	44	13
	8	4	35.4	87.2	250	175	158	144	125	104	25
	9	3	46.8	76.0	267	227	221	206	186	160	60
	10	2	57.5	60.9	277	267	270	255	233	205	89
	11	1	66.2	37.1	283	293	301	287	264	234	108
	12		70.0	0.0	284	301	312	297	274	243	114
			Surface Daily Totals		3160	2552	2442	2264	2040	1760	724
Jun 21	5	7	4.2	117.3	22	4	3	3	2	2	1
	6	6	14.8	108.4	155	60	30	18	17	16	10
	7	5	26.0	99.7	216	123	92	77	59	40	14
	8	4	37.4	90.7	246	182	159	142	121	97	16
	9	3	48.8	80.2	263	233	219	202	179	151	47
	10	2	59.8	65.8	272	272	266	248	224	193	74
	11	1	69.2	41.9	277	296	296	278	253	221	92
	12		73.5	0.0	279	304	306	289	263	230	98
			Surface Daily Totals		3180	2648	2434	2224	1974	1670	610

TABLE C.12 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation, 40° N Latitude (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Solar Time		*Solar Position*			*Global Irradiance (Btu/h ft²)*					
							South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Direct Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jul 21	5	7	2.3	115.2	2	0	0	0	0	0	0
	6	6	13.1	106.1	138	50	26	17	15	14	9
	7	5	24.3	97.2	208	114	89	75	60	44	14
	8	4	35.8	87.8	241	174	157	142	124	102	24
	9	3	47.2	76.7	259	225	218	203	182	157	58
	10	2	57.9	61.7	269	265	266	251	229	200	86
	11	1	66.7	37.9	275	290	296	281	258	228	104
	12		70.6	0.0	276	298	307	292	269	238	111
			Surface Daily Totals		3062	2534	2409	2230	2006	1728	702
Aug 21	6	6	7.9	99.5	81	21	12	9	8	7	5
	7	5	19.3	90.0	191	87	76	69	60	49	12
	8	4	30.7	79.9	237	150	150	141	129	113	50
	9	3	41.8	67.9	260	205	216	207	193	173	89
	10	2	51.7	52.1	272	246	267	259	244	221	120
	11	1	59.3	29.7	278	273	300	292	276	252	140
	12		62.3	0.0	280	282	311	303	287	262	147
			Surface Daily Totals		2916	2244	2354	2258	2104	1894	978
Sep 21	7	5	11.4	80.2	149	43	51	51	49	47	32
	8	4	22.5	69.6	230	109	133	134	131	124	84
	9	3	32.8	57.3	263	167	206	208	203	193	132
	10	2	41.6	41.9	280	211	262	265	260	247	168
	11	1	47.7	22.6	287	239	298	301	295	281	192
	12		50.0	0.0	290	249	310	313	307	292	200
			Surface Daily Totals		2708	1788	2210	2228	2182	2074	1416
Oct 21	7	5	4.5	72.3	48	7	14	15	17	17	16
	8	4	15.0	61.9	204	68	106	113	117	118	100
	9	3	24.5	49.8	257	126	185	195	200	198	160
	10	2	32.4	35.6	280	170	245	257	261	257	203
	11	1	37.6	18.7	291	199	283	295	299	294	229
	12		39.5	0.0	294	208	295	308	312	306	238
			Surface Daily Totals		2454	1348	1962	2060	2098	2074	1654
Nov 21	8	4	8.2	55.4	136	28	63	72	78	82	81
	9	3	17.0	44.1	232	82	152	167	178	183	167
	10	2	24.0	31.0	268	126	215	233	245	249	219
	11	1	28.6	16.1	283	153	254	273	285	288	248
	12		30.2	0.0	288	163	267	287	298	301	258
			Surface Daily Totals		2128	942	1636	1778	1870	1908	1686
Dec 21	8	4	5.5	53.0	89	14	39	45	50	54	56
	9	3	14.0	41.9	217	65	135	152	164	171	163
	10	2	20.7	29.4	261	107	200	221	235	242	221
	11	1	25.0	15.2	280	134	239	262	276	283	252
	12		26.6	0.0	285	143	253	275	290	296	263
			Surface Daily Totals		1978	782	1480	1634	1740	1796	1646

Source: Reprinted by permission from Peter J. Lunde, *Solar Thermal Engineering*, © 1980, John Wiley & Sons, New York.

TABLE C.13 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation, 48° N Latitude (I-P units)

	Solar Time		Solar Position			Global Irradiance (Btu/h ft²)					
							South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Direct Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jan 21	8	4	3.5	54.6	37	4	17	19	21	22	22
	9	3	11.0	42.6	185	46	120	132	140	145	139
	10	2	16.9	29.4	239	83	190	206	216	220	206
	11	1	20.7	15.1	261	107	231	249	260	263	243
	12		22.0	0.0	267	115	245	264	275	278	255
			Surface Daily Totals		1710	596	1360	1478	1550	1578	1478
Feb 21	7	5	2.4	72.2	12	1	3	4	4	4	4
	8	4	11.6	60.5	188	49	95	102	105	106	96
	9	3	19.7	47.7	251	100	178	187	191	190	167
	10	2	26.2	33.3	278	139	240	251	255	251	217
	11	1	30.5	17.2	290	165	278	290	294	288	247
	12		32.0	0.0	293	173	291	304	307	301	258
			Surface Daily Totals		2330	1080	1880	1972	2024	1978	1720
Mar 21	7	5	10.0	78.7	153	37	49	49	47	45	35
	8	4	19.5	66.8	236	96	131	132	129	122	96
	9	3	28.2	53.4	270	147	205	207	203	193	152
	10	2	35.4	37.8	287	187	263	266	261	248	195
	11	1	40.3	19.8	295	212	300	303	297	283	223
	12		42.0	0.0	298	220	312	315	309	294	232
			Surface Daily Totals		2780	1578	2208	2228	2182	2074	1632
Apr 21	6	6	8.6	97.8	108	27	13	9	8	7	5
	7	5	18.6	86.7	205	85	76	68	59	48	21
	8	4	28.5	74.9	247	142	149	141	129	113	69
	9	3	37.8	61.2	268	191	216	208	194	174	115
	10	2	45.8	44.6	280	228	268	260	245	223	152
	11	1	51.5	24.0	286	252	301	294	278	254	177
	12		53.6	0.0	288	260	313	305	289	264	185
			Surface Daily Totals		3076	2106	2358	2266	2114	1902	1262
May 21	5	7	5.2	114.3	41	9	4	4	4	3	2
	6	6	14.7	103.7	162	61	27	16	15	13	10
	7	5	24.6	93.0	219	118	89	75	60	43	13
	8	4	34.7	81.6	248	171	156	142	123	101	45
	9	3	44.3	68.3	264	217	217	202	182	156	86
	10	2	53.0	51.3	274	252	265	251	229	200	120
	11	1	59.5	28.6	279	274	296	281	258	228	141
	12		62.0	0.0	280	281	306	292	269	238	149
			Surface Daily Totals		3254	2482	2418	2234	2010	1728	982
Jun 21	5	7	7.9	116.5	77	21	9	9	8	7	5
	6	6	17.2	106.2	172	74	33	19	18	16	12
	7	5	27.0	95.8	220	129	93	77	59	39	15
	8	4	37.1	84.6	246	181	157	140	119	95	35
	9	3	46.9	71.6	261	225	216	198	175	147	74
	10	2	55.8	54.8	269	259	262	244	220	189	105
	11	1	62.7	31.2	274	280	291	273	248	216	126
	12		65.5	0.0	275	287	301	283	258	225	133
			Surface Daily Totals		3312	2626	2420	2204	1950	1644	874

TABLE C.13 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation, 48° N Latitude (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Solar Time		*Solar Position*			*Global Irradiance (Btu/h ft²)*					
							South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Direct Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jul 21	5	7	5.7	114.7	43	10	5	5	4	4	3
	6	6	15.2	104.1	156	62	28	18	16	15	11
	7	5	25.1	93.5	211	118	89	75	59	42	14
	8	4	35.1	82.1	240	171	154	140	121	99	43
	9	3	44.8	68.8	256	215	214	199	178	153	83
	10	2	53.5	51.9	266	250	261	246	224	195	116
	11	1	60.1	29.0	271	272	291	276	253	223	137
	12		62.6	0.0	272	279	301	286	263	232	144
			Surface Daily Totals		3158	2474	2386	2200	1974	1694	956
Aug 21	6	6	9.1	98.3	99	28	14	10	9	8	6
	7	5	19.1	87.2	190	85	75	67	58	47	20
	8	4	29.0	75.4	232	141	145	137	125	109	65
	9	3	38.4	61.8	254	189	210	201	187	168	110
	10	2	46.4	45.1	266	225	260	252	237	214	146
	11	1	52.2	24.3	272	248	293	285	268	244	169
	12		54.3	0.0	274	256	304	296	279	255	177
			Surface Daily Totals		2898	2086	2300	2200	2046	1836	1208
Sep 21	7	5	10.0	78.7	131	35	44	44	43	40	31
	8	4	19.5	66.8	215	92	124	124	121	115	90
	9	3	28.2	53.4	251	142	196	197	193	183	143
	10	2	35.4	37.8	269	181	251	254	248	236	185
	11	1	40.3	19.8	278	205	287	289	284	269	212
	12		42.0	0.0	280	213	299	302	296	281	221
			Surface Daily Totals		2568	1522	2102	2118	2070	1966	1546
Oct 21	7	5	2.0	71.9	4	0	1	1	1	1	1
	8	4	11.2	60.2	165	44	86	91	95	95	87
	9	3	19.3	47.4	233	94	167	176	180	178	157
	10	2	25.7	33.1	262	133	228	239	242	239	207
	11	1	30.0	17.1	274	157	266	277	281	276	237
	12		31.5	0.0	278	166	279	291	294	288	247
			Surface Daily Totals		2154	1022	1774	1860	1890	1866	1626
Nov 21	8	4	3.6	54.7	36	5	17	19	21	22	22
	9	3	11.2	42.7	179	46	117	129	137	141	135
	10	2	17.1	29.5	233	83	186	202	212	215	201
	11	1	20.9	15.1	255	107	227	245	255	258	238
	12		22.2	0.0	261	115	241	259	270	272	250
			Surface Daily Totals		1668	596	1336	1448	1518	1544	1442
Dec 21	9	3	8.0	40.9	140	27	87	98	105	110	109
	10	2	13.6	28.2	214	63	164	180	192	197	190
	11	1	17.3	14.4	242	86	207	226	239	244	231
	12		18.6	0.0	250	94	222	241	254	260	244
			Surface Daily Totals		1444	446	1136	1250	1326	1364	1304

Source: Reprinted by permission from Peter J. Lunde, *Solar Thermal Engineering*, © 1980, John Wiley & Sons, New York.

TABLE C.14 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation, 64° N Latitude (I-P units)

	Solar Time		Solar Position		Direct	Global Irradiance (Btu/h ft²)					
							South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jan 21	10	2	2.8	28.1	22	2	17	19	20	20	20
	11	1	5.2	14.1	81	12	72	77	80	81	81
	12		6.0	0.0	100	16	91	98	102	103	103
			Surface Daily Totals		306	45	268	290	302	306	304
Feb 21	8	4	3.4	58.7	35	4	17	19	19	19	19
	9	3	8.6	44.8	147	31	103	108	111	110	107
	10	2	12.6	30.3	199	55	170	178	181	178	173
	11	1	15.1	15.3	222	71	212	220	223	219	213
	12		16.0	0.0	228	77	225	235	237	232	226
			Surface Daily Totals		1432	400	1230	1286	1302	1282	1252
Mar 21	7	5	6.5	76.5	95	18	30	29	29	27	25
	8	4	12.7	62.6	185	54	101	102	99	94	89
	9	3	18.1	48.1	227	87	171	172	169	160	153
	10	2	22.3	32.7	249	112	227	229	224	213	203
	11	1	25.1	16.6	260	129	262	265	259	246	235
	12		26.0	0.0	263	134	274	277	271	258	246
			Surface Daily Totals		2296	932	1856	1870	1830	1736	1656
Apr 21	5	7	4.0	108.5	27	5	2	2	2	1	1
	6	6	10.4	95.1	133	37	15	9	8	7	6
	7	5	17.0	81.6	194	76	70	63	54	43	37
	8	4	23.3	67.5	228	112	136	128	116	102	91
	9	3	29.0	52.3	248	144	197	189	176	158	145
	10	2	33.5	36.0	260	169	246	239	224	203	188
	11	1	36.5	18.4	266	184	278	270	255	233	216
	12		37.6	0.0	268	190	289	281	266	243	225
			Surface Daily Totals		2982	1644	2176	2082	1936	1736	1594
May 21	4	8	5.8	125.1	51	11	5	4	4	3	3
	5	7	11.6	112.1	132	42	13	11	10	9	8
	6	6	17.9	99.1	185	79	29	16	14	12	11
	7	5	24.5	85.7	218	117	86	72	56	39	28
	8	4	30.9	71.5	239	152	148	133	115	94	80
	9	3	36.8	56.1	252	182	204	190	170	145	128
	10	2	41.6	38.9	261	205	249	235	213	186	167
	11	1	44.9	20.1	265	219	278	264	242	213	193
	12		46.0	0.0	267	224	288	274	251	222	201
			Surface Daily Totals		3470	2236	2312	2124	1898	1624	1436
Jun 21	3	9	4.2	139.4	21	4	2	2	2	2	1
	4	8	9.0	126.4	93	27	10	9	8	7	6
	5	7	14.7	113.6	154	60	16	15	13	11	10
	6	6	21.0	100.8	194	96	34	19	17	14	13
	7	5	27.5	87.5	221	132	91	74	55	36	23
	8	4	34.0	73.3	239	166	150	133	112	88	73
	9	3	39.9	57.8	251	195	204	187	164	137	119
	10	2	44.9	40.4	258	217	247	230	206	177	157
	11	1	48.3	20.9	262	231	275	258	233	202	181
	12		49.5	0.0	263	235	284	267	242	211	189
			Surface Daily Totals		3650	2488	2342	2118	1862	1558	1356

TABLE C.14 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation, 64° N Latitude (I-P units) (*Continued*)

	Solar Time		*Solar Position*			*Global Irradiance (Btu/h ft²)*					
					Direct		*South-Facing Elevation Angle*				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jul 21	4	8	6.4	125.3	53	13	6	5	5	4	4
	5	7	12.1	112.4	128	44	14	13	11	10	9
	6	6	18.4	99.4	179	81	30	17	16	13	12
	7	5	25.0	86.0	211	118	86	72	56	38	28
	8	4	31.4	71.8	231	152	146	131	113	91	77
	9	3	37.3	56.3	245	182	201	186	166	141	124
	10	2	42.2	39.2	253	204	245	230	208	181	162
	11	1	45.4	20.2	257	218	273	258	236	207	187
	12		46.6	0.0	259	223	282	267	245	216	195
			Surface Daily Totals		3372	2248	2280	2090	1864	1588	1400
Aug 21	5	7	4.6	108.8	29	6	3	3	2	2	2
	6	6	11.0	95.5	123	39	16	11	10	8	7
	7	5	17.6	81.9	181	77	69	61	52	42	35
	8	4	23.9	67.8	214	113	131	123	112	97	87
	9	3	29.6	52.6	234	144	190	182	169	150	138
	10	2	34.2	36.2	246	168	237	229	215	194	179
	11	1	37.2	18.5	252	183	268	260	244	222	205
	12		38.3	0.0	254	188	278	270	255	232	215
			Surface Daily Totals		2808	1646	2108	2008	1860	1662	1522
Sep 21	7	5	6.5	76.5	77	16	25	24	24	23	21
	8	4	12.7	62.6	163	51	92	92	90	85	81
	9	3	18.1	48.1	206	83	159	159	156	147	141
	10	2	22.3	32.7	229	108	212	213	209	198	189
	11	1	25.1	16.6	240	124	246	248	243	230	220
	12		26.0	0.0	244	129	258	260	254	241	230
			Surface Daily Totals		2074	892	1726	1736	1696	1608	1532
Oct 21	8	4	3.0	58.5	17	2	9	9	10	10	10
	9	3	8.1	44.6	122	26	86	91	93	92	90
	10	2	12.1	30.2	176	50	152	159	161	159	155
	11	1	14.6	15.2	201	65	193	201	203	200	195
	12		15.5	0.0	208	71	207	215	217	213	208
			Surface Daily Totals		1238	358	1088	1136	1152	1134	1106
Nov 21	10	2	3.0	28.1	23	3	18	20	21	21	21
	11	1	5.4	14.2	79	12	70	76	79	80	79
	12		6.2	0.0	97	17	89	96	100	101	100
			Surface Daily Totals		302	46	266	286	298	302	300
Dec 21	11	1	1.8	13.7	4	0	3	4	4	4	4
	12		2.6	0.0	16	2	14	15	16	17	17
			Surface Daily Totals		24	2	20	22	24	24	24

Source: Reprinted by permission from Peter J. Lunde, *Solar Thermal Engineering*, © 1980, John Wiley & Sons, New York.

TABLE C.15 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation for 32° N Latitude (SI units)

	Solar Time		*Solar Position*			*Global Irradiance (W/m²)*					
					Direct		*South-Facing Elevation Angle*				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jan 21	7	5	1.4	65.2	3	0	0	0	0	3	3
	8	4	12.5	56.5	641	177	293	334	366	388	363
	9	3	22.5	46.0	849	372	552	609	650	669	571
	10	2	30.6	33.1	931	527	741	808	849	865	697
	11	1	36.1	17.5	965	625	861	931	972	984	773
	12		38.0	0.0	978	659	899	972	1013	1022	798
			Surface Daily Totals		7755	4064	5802	6335	6682	6834	5613
Feb 21	7	5	7.1	73.5	382	69	107	117	126	133	120
	8	4	19.0	64.4	779	300	401	429	442	445	341
	9	3	29.9	53.4	909	508	650	685	700	694	499
	10	2	39.1	39.4	965	669	839	877	893	880	609
	11	1	45.6	21.4	994	770	959	1000	1013	994	675
	12		48.0	0.0	1000	805	997	1041	1054	1035	700
			Surface Daily Totals		9061	5439	6903	7257	7399	7326	5187
Mar 21	7	5	12.7	81.9	584	170	189	189	186	177	101
	8	4	25.1	73.0	820	407	461	464	454	432	246
	9	3	36.8	62.1	915	612	700	707	694	659	376
	10	2	47.3	47.5	959	773	883	893	877	836	473
	11	1	55.0	26.8	981	874	1000	1013	994	947	536
	12		58.0	0.0	987	906	1038	1051	1032	985	558
			Surface Daily Totals		9503	6575	7503	7582	7440	7086	4026
Apr 21	6	6	6.1	99.9	208	44	28	19	19	16	10
	7	5	18.8	92.2	650	271	246	224	196	161	32
	8	4	31.5	84.0	805	499	492	467	429	397	110
	9	3	43.9	74.2	877	694	710	685	641	577	215
	10	2	55.7	60.3	915	842	880	858	808	738	300
	11	1	65.4	37.5	931	937	988	965	915	836	353
	12		69.6	0.0	937	968	1025	1003	950	871	372
			Surface Daily Totals		9705	7541	7711	7433	6960	6291	2410
May 21	6	6	10.4	107.2	375	114	66	41	41	38	22
	7	5	22.8	100.1	666	338	278	237	189	139	41
	8	4	35.4	92.9	789	552	502	458	401	331	47
	9	3	48.1	84.7	849	735	704	659	593	514	104
	10	2	60.6	73.3	883	874	861	817	748	656	177
	11	1	72.0	51.9	899	962	962	915	846	748	227
	12		78.0	0.0	902	994	994	950	877	779	243
			Surface Daily Totals		9818	8146	7742	7206	6512	5641	1480
Jun 21	6	6	12.2	110.2	413	142	82	51	47	44	28
	7	5	24.3	103.4	663	363	287	240	186	129	44
	8	4	36.9	96.8	773	568	502	451	385	312	51
	9	3	49.6	89.4	833	745	697	644	571	483	60
	10	2	62.2	79.7	865	880	846	792	716	622	129
	11	1	74.2	60.9	880	965	943	890	811	707	177
	12		81.5	0.0	883	994	975	921	842	738	189
			Surface Daily Totals		9730	8310	7686	7048	6279	5332	1167

TABLE C.15 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation for 32° N Latitude (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Solar Time		Solar Position		Direct	Global Irradiance (W/m²)					
							South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jul 21	6	6	10.7	107.7	357	117	69	44	41	38	25
	7	5	23.1	100.6	640	338	274	237	189	139	44
	8	4	35.7	93.6	760	549	498	451	394	328	50
	9	3	48.4	85.5	823	726	694	647	584	502	98
	10	2	60.9	74.3	855	864	849	801	732	644	170
	11	1	72.4	53.3	874	953	947	899	827	732	218
	12		78.6	0.0	880	981	978	934	861	764	233
			Surface Daily Totals		9503	8070	7641	7099	6405	5534	1445
Aug 21	6	6	6.5	100.5	186	44	28	22	19	19	13
	7	5	19.1	92.8	599	268	243	218	189	158	38
	8	4	31.8	84.7	757	492	480	454	416	366	104
	9	3	44.3	75.0	830	681	694	669	622	562	205
	10	2	56.1	61.3	871	827	858	833	786	713	287
	11	1	66.0	38.4	890	921	962	940	887	811	338
	12		70.3	0.0	896	953	1000	975	921	846	357
			Surface Daily Totals		9156	7421	7534	7244	6764	6102	2322
Sep 21	7	5	12.7	81.9	514	161	177	177	174	164	95
	8	4	25.1	73.0	757	391	442	445	435	413	237
	9	3	36.8	62.1	858	593	672	678	666	634	360
	10	2	47.3	47.5	905	748	852	861	846	805	457
	11	1	55.0	26.8	928	846	965	975	956	912	517
	12		58.0	0.0	934	877	1003	1013	994	947	540
			Surface Daily Totals		8859	6354	7219	7282	7143	6796	3868
Oct 21	7	5	6.8	73.1	312	60	91	101	107	114	101
	8	4	18.7	64.0	722	284	379	404	420	423	328
	9	3	29.5	53.0	861	489	625	565	672	669	483
	10	2	38.7	39.1	924	644	811	849	861	852	593
	11	1	45.1	21.1	953	745	928	969	981	965	659
	12		47.5	0.0	959	779	965	1010	1022	1003	685
			Surface Daily Totals		8506	5218	6626	6966	7105	7042	5010
Nov 21	7	5	1.5	65.4	6	0	0	0	3	3	3
	8	4	12.7	56.6	618	174	287	328	357	375	350
	9	3	22.6	46.1	830	372	546	599	637	656	555
	10	2	30.8	33.2	912	524	735	795	836	852	685
	11	1	36.2	17.6	950	622	852	918	956	969	760
	12		38.2	0.0	959	653	890	959	997	1010	786
			Surface Daily Totals		7591	4038	5729	6247	6575	6720	5496
Dec 21	8	4	10.3	53.8	555	129	243	284	319	341	338
	9	3	19.8	43.6	811	322	508	568	615	644	577
	10	2	27.6	31.2	909	473	697	770	817	842	713
	11	1	32.7	16.4	950	568	814	890	940	962	792
	12		34.6	0.0	959	599	855	931	981	1003	817
			Surface Daily Totals		7408	3584	5376	5957	6360	6581	5660

Source: Peter J. Lunde, *Solar Thermal Engineering*, © 1980, John Wiley & Sons, New York; SI conversion by authors.

TABLE C.16 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation for 40° N Latitude (SI units)

	Solar Time		Solar Position			Global Irradiance (W/m²)					
					Direct		South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jan 21	8	4	8.1	55.3	448	88	205	233	256	268	265
	9	3	16.8	44.0	754	262	489	540	574	590	540
	10	2	23.8	30.9	864	401	688	748	786	801	704
	11	1	28.4	16.0	912	486	811	874	915	924	798
	12		30.0	0.0	928	517	852	918	956	965	830
			Surface Daily Totals		6884	2991	5237	5711	6013	6133	5446
Feb 21	7	5	4.8	72.7	218	32	60	66	73	76	69
	8	4	15.4	62.2	707	230	360	385	398	401	338
	9	3	25.0	50.2	864	416	615	647	659	656	527
	10	2	32.8	35.9	931	562	808	842	855	842	663
	11	1	38.1	18.9	962	650	924	965	978	959	745
	12		40.0	0.0	972	681	965	1006	1019	1000	773
			Surface Daily Totals		8329	4461	6499	6821	6947	6865	5458
Mar 21	7	5	11.4	80.2	540	145	174	174	170	161	110
	8	4	22.5	69.6	789	360	442	445	435	413	281
	9	3	32.8	57.3	890	546	678	685	672	637	435
	10	2	41.6	41.9	937	688	861	871	855	814	555
	11	1	47.7	22.6	962	779	978	988	969	924	631
	12		50.0	0.0	969	811	1016	1029	1010	962	656
			Surface Daily Totals		9200	5843	7282	7351	7206	6859	4682
Apr 21	6	6	7.4	98.9	281	63	35	25	22	22	13
	7	5	18.9	89.5	650	274	243	221	192	158	38
	8	4	30.3	79.3	795	480	483	457	420	369	167
	9	3	41.3	67.2	864	653	697	672	628	565	293
	10	2	51.2	51.4	902	789	868	842	795	722	398
	11	1	58.7	29.2	921	874	972	950	899	820	464
	12		61.6	0.0	924	905	1010	988	934	855	486
			Surface Daily Totals		9755	7174	7610	7320	6840	6171	3224
May 21	5	7	1.9	114.7	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
	6	6	12.7	105.6	454	155	79	47	44	41	28
	7	5	24.0	96.6	681	360	281	240	189	139	41
	8	4	35.4	87.2	789	552	498	454	394	328	79
	9	3	46.8	76.0	842	716	697	650	587	505	189
	10	2	57.5	60.9	874	842	852	805	735	647	281
	11	1	66.2	37.1	893	924	950	905	833	738	341
	12		70.0	0.0	896	950	984	937	864	767	360
			Surface Daily Totals		9970	8052	7705	7143	6436	5553	2284
Jun 21	5	7	4.2	117.3	69	13	9	9	6	6	3
	6	6	14.8	108.4	489	189	95	57	54	50	32
	7	5	26.0	99.7	681	388	290	243	186	126	44
	8	4	37.4	90.7	776	574	502	448	382	306	50
	9	3	48.8	80.2	830	735	691	637	565	467	148
	10	2	59.8	65.8	858	858	839	782	707	609	233
	11	1	69.2	41.9	874	934	934	877	798	697	290
	12		73.5	0.0	880	959	965	912	830	726	309
			Surface Daily Totals		10033	8354	7679	7017	6228	5269	1925

TABLE C.16 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation for 40° N Latitude (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Solar Time		*Solar Position*			*Global Irradiance (W/m²)*					
					Direct		*South-Facing Elevation Angle*				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jul 21	5	7	2.3	115.2	6	0	0	0	0	0	0
	6	6	13.1	106.1	435	158	82	54	47	44	28
	7	5	24.3	97.2	656	360	281	237	189	139	44
	8	4	35.8	87.8	760	549	495	448	391	322	76
	9	3	47.2	76.7	817	710	688	640	574	495	183
	10	2	57.9	61.7	849	836	839	792	722	631	271
	11	1	66.7	37.9	868	915	934	887	814	719	328
	12		70.6	0.0	871	940	969	921	849	751	350
			Surface Daily Totals		9661	7995	7600	7036	6329	5452	2215
Aug 21	6	6	7.9	99.5	256	66	38	28	25	22	16
	7	5	19.3	90.0	603	274	240	218	189	155	38
	8	4	30.7	79.9	748	473	473	445	407	357	158
	9	3	41.8	67.9	820	647	681	653	609	546	281
	10	2	51.7	52.1	858	776	842	817	770	697	379
	11	1	59.3	29.7	877	861	947	921	871	795	442
	12		62.3	0.0	883	890	981	956	905	827	464
			Surface Daily Totals		9200	7080	7427	7124	6638	5976	3086
Sep 21	7	5	11.4	80.2	470	136	161	161	155	148	101
	8	4	22.5	69.6	726	344	420	423	413	391	265
	9	3	32.8	57.3	830	527	650	656	640	609	416
	10	2	41.6	41.9	883	666	827	836	820	779	530
	11	1	47.7	22.6	905	754	940	950	931	887	606
	12		50.0	0.0	915	786	978	988	969	921	631
			Surface Daily Totals		8544	5641	6973	7029	6884	6543	4467
Oct 21	7	5	4.5	72.3	151	22	44	47	54	54	50
	8	4	15.0	61.9	644	215	334	357	369	372	316
	9	3	24.5	49.8	811	398	548	615	631	625	505
	10	2	32.4	35.6	883	536	773	811	823	811	640
	11	1	37.6	18.7	918	628	893	931	943	928	722
	12		39.5	0.0	928	656	931	972	984	965	751
			Surface Daily Totals		7742	4253	6190	6499	6619	6543	5218
Nov 21	8	4	8.2	55.4	429	88	199	227	246	259	256
	9	3	17.0	44.1	732	259	480	527	562	577	527
	10	2	24.0	31.0	846	398	678	735	773	786	691
	11	1	28.6	16.1	893	483	801	861	899	909	782
	12		30.2	0.0	909	514	842	905	940	950	814
			Surface Daily Totals		6714	2972	5162	5610	5900	6020	5319
Dec 21	8	4	5.5	53.0	281	44	123	142	158	170	177
	9	3	14.0	41.9	685	205	426	480	517	540	514
	10	2	20.7	29.4	823	338	631	697	741	764	697
	11	1	25.0	15.2	883	423	754	827	871	893	795
	12		26.6	0.0	899	451	798	868	915	934	830
			Surface Daily Totals		6241	2467	4669	5155	5490	5666	5193

Source: Peter J. Lunde, *Solar Thermal Engineering*, © 1980, John Wiley & Sons, New York; SI conversions by authors.

TABLE C.17 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation for 48° N Latitude (SI units)

	Solar Time		Solar Position			Global Irradiance (W/m²)					
					Direct		South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jan 21	8	4	3.5	54.6	117	13	54	60	66	69	69
	9	3	11.0	42.6	584	145	379	416	442	457	439
	10	2	16.9	29.4	754	262	599	650	681	694	650
	11	1	20.7	15.1	823	338	729	786	820	830	767
	12		22.0	0.0	842	363	773	833	868	877	805
			Surface Daily Totals		5395	1880	4291	4663	4890	4979	4663
Feb 21	7	5	2.4	72.2	38	3	9	13	13	13	13
	8	4	11.6	60.5	593	155	300	322	331	334	303
	9	3	19.7	47.7	792	316	562	590	603	599	527
	10	2	26.2	33.3	877	439	757	792	805	792	685
	11	1	30.5	17.2	915	521	877	915	928	909	779
	12		32.0	0.0	924	546	918	959	969	950	814
			Surface Daily Totals		7351	3407	5931	6222	6386	6241	5427
Mar 21	7	5	10.0	78.7	483	117	155	155	148	142	110
	8	4	19.5	66.8	745	303	413	416	407	385	303
	9	3	28.2	53.4	852	464	647	653	640	609	480
	10	2	35.4	37.8	905	590	830	839	823	782	615
	11	1	40.3	19.8	931	669	947	956	937	893	704
	12		42.0	0.0	940	694	984	994	975	928	732
			Surface Daily Totals		8771	4979	6966	7029	6884	6543	5149
Apr 21	6	6	8.6	97.8	341	85	41	28	25	22	16
	7	5	18.6	86.7	647	268	240	215	186	151	66
	8	4	28.5	74.9	779	448	470	445	407	357	218
	9	3	37.8	61.2	846	603	681	656	612	549	363
	10	2	45.8	44.6	883	719	846	820	773	704	480
	11	1	51.5	24.0	902	795	950	928	877	801	558
	12		53.6	0.0	909	820	988	962	912	833	584
			Surface Daily Totals		9705	6644	7439	7149	6670	6001	3982
May 21	5	7	5.2	114.3	129	28	13	13	13	9	6
	6	6	14.7	103.7	511	192	85	50	47	41	32
	7	5	24.6	93.0	691	372	281	237	189	136	41
	8	4	34.7	81.6	782	540	492	448	388	319	142
	9	3	44.3	68.3	833	685	685	637	574	492	271
	10	2	53.0	51.3	864	795	836	792	722	631	379
	11	1	59.5	28.6	880	864	934	887	814	719	445
	12		62.0	0.0	883	887	965	921	849	751	470
			Surface Daily Totals		10266	7831	7629	7048	6342	5452	3098
Jun 21	5	7	7.9	116.5	243	66	28	28	25	22	16
	6	6	17.2	106.2	543	233	104	60	57	50	38
	7	5	27.0	95.8	694	407	293	243	186	123	47
	8	4	37.1	84.6	776	571	495	442	375	300	110
	9	3	46.9	71.6	823	710	681	625	552	464	233
	10	2	55.8	54.8	849	817	827	770	694	596	331
	11	1	62.7	31.2	864	883	918	861	782	681	398
	12		65.5	0.0	868	905	950	893	814	710	420
			Surface Daily Totals		10449	8285	7635	6954	6152	5187	2757

TABLE C.17 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation for 48° N Latitude (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Solar Time		*Solar Position*			*Global Irradiance (W/m²)*					
					Direct		*South-Facing Elevation Angle*				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jul 21	5	7	5.7	114.7	136	32	16	16	13	13	9
	6	6	15.2	104.1	492	196	88	57	50	47	35
	7	5	25.1	93.5	666	372	281	237	186	133	44
	8	4	35.1	82.1	757	540	486	442	382	312	136
	9	3	44.8	68.8	808	678	675	628	562	483	262
	10	2	53.5	51.9	839	789	823	776	707	615	366
	11	1	60.1	29.0	855	858	918	871	798	704	432
	12		62.6	0.0	858	880	950	902	830	732	454
			Surface Daily Totals		9963	7805	7528	6941	6228	5345	3016
Aug 21	6	6	9.1	98.3	312	88	44	32	28	25	19
	7	5	19.1	87.2	599	268	237	211	183	148	63
	8	4	29.0	75.4	732	445	457	432	394	344	205
	9	3	38.4	61.8	801	596	663	634	590	530	347
	10	2	46.4	45.1	839	710	820	795	748	675	461
	11	1	52.2	24.3	858	782	924	899	846	770	533
	12		54.3	0.0	864	808	959	934	880	805	558
			Surface Daily Totals		9143	6581	7257	6941	6455	5793	3811
Sep 21	7	5	10.0	78.7	413	110	139	139	136	126	98
	8	4	19.5	66.8	678	290	391	391	382	363	284
	9	3	28.2	53.4	792	448	618	622	609	577	451
	10	2	35.4	37.8	849	571	792	801	782	745	584
	11	1	40.3	19.8	877	647	905	912	896	849	669
	12		42.0	0.0	883	672	943	953	934	887	697
			Surface Daily Totals		8102	4802	6632	6682	6531	6203	4878
Oct 21	7	5	2.0	71.9	13	0	3	3	3	3	3
	8	4	11.2	60.2	521	139	271	287	300	300	274
	9	3	19.3	47.4	735	297	527	555	568	562	495
	10	2	25.7	33.1	827	420	719	754	764	754	653
	11	1	30.0	17.1	864	495	839	874	887	871	748
	12		31.5	0.0	877	524	880	918	928	909	779
			Surface Daily Totals		6796	3224	5597	5868	5963	5887	5130
Nov 21	8	4	3.6	54.7	114	16	54	60	66	69	69
	9	3	11.2	42.7	565	145	369	407	432	445	426
	10	2	17.1	29.5	735	262	587	637	669	678	634
	11	1	20.9	15.1	805	338	716	773	805	814	751
	12		22.2	0.0	823	363	760	817	852	858	789
			Surface Daily Totals		5263	1880	4215	4568	4789	4871	4550
Dec 21	9	3	8.0	40.9	442	85	274	309	331	347	344
	10	2	13.6	28.2	675	199	517	568	606	622	599
	11	1	17.3	14.4	764	271	653	713	754	770	729
	12		18.6	0.0	789	297	700	760	801	820	770
			Surface Daily Totals		4556	1407	3584	3944	4184	4303	4114

Source: Peter J. Lunde, *Solar Thermal Engineering*, © 1980, John Wiley & Sons, New York: SI conversions by authors.

TABLE C.18 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation for 64° N Latitude (SI units)

	Solar Time		Solar Position			Global Irradiance (W/m²)					
					Direct		South-Facing Elevation Angle				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jan 21	10	2	2.8	28.1	69	6	54	60	63	63	63
	11	1	5.2	14.1	256	38	227	243	252	256	256
	12		6.0	0.0	316	50	287	309	322	325	325
			Surface Daily Totals		965	142	846	915	953	965	959
Feb 21	8	4	3.4	58.7	110	13	54	60	60	60	60
	9	3	8.6	44.8	464	98	325	341	350	347	338
	10	2	12.6	30.3	628	174	536	562	571	562	546
	11	1	15.1	15.3	700	224	669	694	704	691	672
	12		16.0	0.0	719	243	710	741	748	732	713
			Surface Daily Totals		4518	1262	3881	4057	4108	4045	3950
Mar 21	7	5	6.5	76.5	300	57	95	91	91	85	79
	8	4	12.7	62.6	584	170	319	322	312	297	281
	9	3	18.1	48.1	716	274	540	543	533	505	483
	10	2	22.3	32.7	786	353	716	722	707	672	640
	11	1	25.1	16.6	820	407	827	836	817	776	741
	12		26.0	0.0	830	423	864	874	855	814	776
			Surface Daily Totals		7244	2940	5856	5900	5774	5477	5225
Apr 21	5	7	4.0	108.5	85	16	6	6	6	3	3
	6	6	10.4	95.1	420	117	47	28	25	22	19
	7	5	17.0	81.6	612	240	221	199	170	136	117
	8	4	23.3	67.5	719	353	429	404	366	322	287
	9	3	29.0	52.3	782	454	622	596	555	498	457
	10	2	33.5	36.0	820	533	776	754	707	640	593
	11	1	36.5	18.4	839	581	877	852	805	735	681
	12		37.6	0.0	846	599	912	887	839	767	710
			Surface Daily Totals		9408	5187	6865	6569	6108	5477	5029
May 21	4	8	5.8	125.1	161	35	16	13	13	9	9
	5	7	11.6	112.1	416	133	41	35	32	38	25
	6	6	17.9	99.1	584	249	91	50	44	38	35
	7	5	24.5	85.7	688	369	271	227	177	123	88
	8	4	30.9	71.5	754	480	467	420	363	297	252
	9	3	36.8	56.1	795	574	644	600	536	458	404
	10	2	41.6	38.9	823	647	786	741	672	587	527
	11	1	44.9	20.1	836	691	877	833	764	672	609
	12		46.0	0.0	842	707	909	864	792	700	634
			Surface Daily Totals		10948	7055	7294	6701	5988	5124	4531
Jun 21	3	9	4.2	139.4	66	13	6	6	6	6	3
	4	8	9.0	126.4	293	85	32	28	25	22	19
	5	7	14.7	113.6	486	189	50	47	41	35	32
	6	6	21.0	100.8	612	303	107	60	54	44	41
	7	5	27.5	87.5	697	416	287	233	174	114	73
	8	4	34.0	73.3	754	524	473	420	353	278	230
	9	3	39.9	57.8	792	615	644	590	517	432	375
	10	2	44.9	40.4	814	685	779	726	650	558	495
	11	1	48.3	20.9	827	729	868	814	735	637	571
	12		49.5	0.0	830	741	896	842	764	666	596
			Surface Daily Totals		11516	7850	7389	6682	5875	4915	4278

TABLE C.18 Solar Position and Clear-Day Insolation for 64° N Latitude (SI units) (*Continued*)

	Solar Time		*Solar Position*			*Global Irradiance (W/m²)*					
					Direct		*South-Facing Elevation Angle*				
Date	A.M.	P.M.	Alt	Azm	Normal	Horiz	22	32	42	52	90
Jul 21	4	8	6.4	125.3	167	41	19	16	16	13	13
	5	7	12.1	112.4	404	139	44	41	35	32	28
	6	6	18.4	99.4	565	256	95	54	50	41	38
	7	5	25.0	86.0	666	372	271	227	177	120	88
	8	4	31.4	71.8	729	480	461	413	357	287	243
	9	3	37.3	56.3	773	574	634	587	524	445	391
	10	2	42.2	39.2	798	644	773	626	656	571	511
	11	1	45.4	20.2	811	688	861	814	745	653	590
	12		46.6	0.0	817	704	890	842	773	681	615
			Surface Daily Totals		10639	7092	7193	6594	5881	5010	4417
Aug 21	5	7	4.6	108.8	91	19	9	9	6	6	6
	6	6	11.0	95.5	388	123	50	35	32	25	22
	7	5	17.6	81.9	571	243	218	192	164	133	110
	8	4	23.9	67.8	675	357	413	388	353	306	274
	9	3	29.6	52.6	738	454	599	574	533	473	435
	10	2	34.2	36.2	776	530	748	722	678	612	565
	11	1	37.2	18.5	795	577	846	820	770	700	647
	12		38.3	0.0	801	593	877	852	805	732	678
			Surface Daily Totals		8859	5193	6651	6335	5868	5244	4802
Sep 21	7	5	6.5	76.5	243	50	79	76	76	73	66
	8	4	12.7	62.6	514	161	290	290	284	268	256
	9	3	18.1	48.1	650	262	502	502	492	464	445
	10	2	22.3	32.7	722	341	669	672	659	625	596
	11	1	25.1	16.6	757	391	776	782	767	726	694
	12		26.0	0.0	770	407	814	820	801	760	726
			Surface Daily Totals		6543	2814	5446	5477	5351	5073	4833
Oct 21	8	4	3.0	58.5	54	6	28	28	32	32	32
	9	3	8.1	44.6	385	82	271	287	293	290	284
	10	2	12.1	30.2	555	158	480	502	508	502	489
	11	1	14.6	15.2	634	205	609	634	640	631	615
	12		15.5	0.0	656	224	653	678	685	672	656
			Surface Daily Totals		3906	1129	3433	3584	3635	3578	3489
Nov 21	10	2	3.0	28.1	73	9	57	63	66	66	66
	11	1	5.4	14.2	249	38	221	240	249	252	249
	12		6.2	0.0	306	54	281	303	316	319	316
			Surface Daily Totals		953	145	839	902	940	953	947
Dec 21	11	1	1.8	13.7	13	0	9	13	13	13	13
	12		2.6	0.0	50	6	44	47	50	54	54
			Surface Daily Totals		76	6	62	73	76	80	80

Source: Peter J. Lunde, *Solar Thermal Engineering*, © 1980, John Wiley & Sons, New York: SI conversions by authors.



Fig. C.1 *U.S. and Canadian locations for which solar data are given in Tables C.19 and C.20. (Basic temperature data for many more locations are found in Appendix B). (Adapted by permission from J.D. Balcomb et al.,* Passive Solar Design Handbook, *Vol. 3, © 1983, American Solar Energy Society, Inc., Boulder, CO.)*

TABLE C.19 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (I-P units)

Elevation in feet; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in Btu/day ft^2; TA in degrees F; D50, D55, D60, and D65 in degree days F (for these various "base" temperatures).

United States

MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA					Elev 203		Lat 32.3
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	752	896	48	148	256	394	556
Jul	1841	820	81	0	0	0	0
Yr	1390	946	65	445	866	1474	2269

PHOENIX, ARIZONA					Elev 1112		Lat 33.4
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	1021	1462	51	78	162	285	428
Jul	2486	964	91	0	0	0	0
Yr	1371	1326	70	187	459	919	1552

TUCSON, ARIZONA					Elev 2556		Lat 32.1
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	1099	1539	51	80	166	292	442
Jul	2341	922	86	0	0	0	0
Yr	1874	1307	68	214	525	1036	1752

FORT SMITH, ARKANSAS					Elev 463		Lat 35.3
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	744	996	39	346	497	651	806
Jul	2065	908	82	0	0	0	0
Yr	1406	1013	61	996	1622	2405	3336

FRESNO, CALIFORNIA					Elev 328		Lat 36.8
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	657	886	45	176	308	457	611
Jul	2685	1076	81	0	0	0	0
Yr	1714	1210	62	507	1021	1741	2650

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA					Elev 105		Lat 33.9
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	926	1293	55	21	83	186	331
Jul	2307	942	69	0	1	5	19
Yr	1596	1157	62	64	299	849	1819

SACRAMENTO, CALIFORNIA					Elev 26		Lat 38.5
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	597	829	45	183	315	464	617
Jul	2688	1131	75	0	0	0	0
Yr	1646	1198	60	554	1097	1871	2843

SAN DIEGO, CALIFORNIA					Elev 30		Lat 32.7
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	976	1325	55	9	58	160	314
Jul	2186	902	70	0	0	1	6
Yr	1600	1151	63	23	170	623	1507

SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA					Elev 16		Lat 37.6
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	708	1023	48	82	210	363	518
Jul	2392	1034	63	0	2	21	93
Yr	1556	1156	57	202	705	1643	3042

SANTA MARIA, CALIFORNIA					Elev 236		Lat 34.9
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	854	1198	51	51	150	296	450
Jul	2341	965	62	0	3	30	112
Yr	1610	1172	57	155	624	1604	3053

DENVER, COLORADO					Elev 5331		Lat 39.7
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	840	1465	30	623	778	933	1088
Jul	2273	1053	73	0	0	0	0
Yr	1570	1334	50	2592	3588	4733	6016

GRAND JUNCTION, COLORADO					Elev 4839		Lat 39.1
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	791	1296	27	726	880	1035	1190
Jul	2465	1094	79	0	0	0	0
Yr	1661	1346	53	2514	3412	4434	5605

HARTFORD, CONNECTICUT					Elev 180		Lat 41.9
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	477	694	25	781	936	1091	1246
Jul	1649	861	73	0	0	0	0
Yr	1060	835	49	2971	3948	5075	6350

WASHINGTON, DC					Elev 289		Lat 38.9
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	572	793	32	555	710	865	1020
Jul	1817	883	75	0	0	0	0
Yr	1210	912	54	2004	2869	3864	5010

MIAMI, FLORIDA					Elev 7		Lat 25.8
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	1057	1121	67	1	4	18	53
Jul	1763	787	82	0	0	0	0
Yr	1474	941	76	3	14	55	206

ORLANDO, FLORIDA					Elev 118		Lat 28.5
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	999	1151	60	13	42	105	197
Jul	1801	795	81	0	0	0	0
Yr	1488	984	72	39	126	348	733

TALLAHASSEE, FLORIDA					Elev 69		Lat 30.4
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	877	1033	53	73	150	256	408
Jul	1748	786	81	0	0	0	0
Yr	1434	969	68	215	501	951	1563

ATLANTA, GEORGIA					Elev 1033		Lat 33.6
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	718	884	42	246	393	546	701
Jul	1812	821	78	0	0	0	0
Yr	1347	941	61	758	1362	2150	3095

BOISE, IDAHO					Elev 2867		Lat 43.6
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	485	770	29	651	806	961	1116
Jul	2613	1309	75	0	0	0	0
Yr	1499	1255	51	2420	3395	4536	5833

CHICAGO, ILLINOIS					Elev 623		Lat 41.8
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	507	756	24	797	952	1107	1262
Jul	1944	984	75	0	0	0	0
Yr	1217	960	51	2954	3881	4940	6127

MOLINE, ILLINOIS					Elev 594		Lat 41.4
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	535	803	22	884	1039	1194	1349
Jul	1939	974	75	0	0	0	0
Yr	1226	973	50	3191	4117	5178	6395

SPRINGFIELD, ILLINOIS					Elev 614		Lat 39.8
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	585	852	27	723	877	1032	1187
Jul	2058	984	76	0	0	0	0
Yr	1304	1003	53	2558	3434	4425	5558

TABLE C.19 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (I-P units) (*Continued*)

Elevation in feet; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in Btu/day ft^2; TA in degrees F; D50, D55, D60, and D65 in degree days F (for these various "base" temperatures).

United States

INDIANAPOLIS, INDIANA					Elev 807		Lat 39.7
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	496	668	28	685	840	995	1150
Jul	1806	891	75	0	0	0	0
Yr	1167	873	52	2511	3403	4421	5577

SOUTH BEND, INDIANA					Elev 774		Lat 41.7
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	416	566	24	806	961	1116	1271
Jul	1852	944	72	0	1	4	6
Yr	1140	864	49	3112	4084	5199	6462

DES MOINES, IOWA					Elev 965		Lat 41.5
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	581	912	19	949	1104	1259	1414
Jul	2097	1037	75	0	0	0	0
Yr	1314	1065	49	3491	4435	5510	6710

DODGE CITY, KANSAS					Elev 2582		Lat 37.8
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	827	1303	31	596	750	905	1060
Jul	2295	1013	79	0	0	0	0
Yr	1562	1232	55	2131	2980	3945	5046

TOPEKA, KANSAS					Elev 886		Lat 39.1
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	681	1033	28	683	837	992	1147
Jul	2128	993	78	0	0	0	0
Yr	1387	1036	54	2325	3175	4137	5243

LEXINGTON, KENTUCKY					Elev 988		Lat 38.0
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	546	714	33	531	685	840	995
Jul	1850	881	76	0	0	0	0
Yr	1221	892	55	1865	2686	3632	4729

BATON ROUGE, LOUISIANA					Elev 75		Lat 30.5
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	785	889	51	90	174	294	451
Jul	1746	786	82	0	0	0	0
Yr	1380	913	67	232	530	1006	1670

NEW ORLEANS, LOUISIANA					Elev 10		Lat 30.0
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	835	950	53	73	150	252	403
Jul	1813	801	82	0	0	0	0
Yr	1438	943	68	197	465	887	1465

SHREVEPORT, LOUISIANA					Elev 259		Lat 32.5
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	762	920	47	154	264	403	552
Jul	2014	864	83	0	0	0	0
Yr	1428	973	66	428	832	1415	2167

PORTLAND, MAINE					Elev 62		Lat 43.6
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	450	689	22	884	1039	1194	1349
Jul	1659	894	68	0	1	5	27
Yr	1052	857	45	3648	4758	6039	7498

DETROIT, MICHIGAN					Elev 627		Lat 42.4
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	417	585	26	760	915	1070	1225
Jul	1835	951	73	0	0	0	0
Yr	1122	869	50	2931	3890	4986	6228

SAULT STE. MARIE, MICHIGAN					Elev 725		Lat 46.5
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	325	492	14	1110	1265	1420	1575
Jul	1835	1045	64	1	7	33	96
Yr	1044	861	40	4969	6198	7607	9193

MINNEAPOLIS, MINNESOTA					Elev 837		Lat 44.9
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	464	768	12	1172	1327	1482	1637
Jul	1970	1071	72	0	1	5	11
Yr	1172	996	44	4584	5631	6824	8159

MERIDIAN, MISSISSIPPI					Elev 308		Lat 32.3
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	744	883	47	163	274	413	575
Jul	1823	815	81	0	0	0	0
Yr	1371	933	65	510	955	1582	2388

SAINT LOUIS, MISSOURI					Elev 564		Lat 38.7
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	627	898	31	581	735	890	1045
Jul	2049	959	79	0	0	0	0
Yr	1329	1006	56	1961	2762	3686	4750

SPRINGFIELD, MISSOURI					Elev 1270		Lat 37.2
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	684	956	33	534	686	840	995
Jul	2063	936	78	0	0	0	0
Yr	1364	1011	56	1848	2618	3522	4571

HELENA, MONTANA					Elev 3898		Lat 46.6
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	419	719	18	989	1144	1299	1454
Jul	2334	1312	68	1	3	12	33
Yr	1266	1134	43	4151	5342	6689	8190

NORTH OMAHA, NEBRASKA					Elev 1325		Lat 41.4
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	634	1034	20	924	1079	1234	1389
Jul	2106	1038	75	0	1	3	7
Yr	1323	1078	49	3369	4309	5381	6601

ELY, NEVADA					Elev 6253		Lat 39.3
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	819	1380	24	818	973	1128	1283
Jul	2447	1094	67	0	2	11	23
Yr	1675	1391	44	3716	4922	6291	7814

LAS VEGAS, NEVADA					Elev 2178		Lat 36.1
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	978	1553	44	216	346	493	645
Jul	2588	1039	90	0	0	0	0
Yr	1866	1431	66	631	1129	1788	2601

RENO, NEVADA					Elev 4400		Lat 39.5
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	800	1345	32	561	716	871	1026
Jul	2692	1167	69	0	1	5	17
Yr	1764	1439	49	2292	3345	4590	6022

ALBUQUERQUE, NEW MEXICO					Elev 5312		Lat 35.0
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	1016	1562	35	459	614	769	924
Jul	2489	995	79	0	0	0	0
Yr	1830	1379	57	1497	2292	3216	4292

TABLE C.19 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (I-P units) (*Continued*)

Elevation in feet; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in Btu/day ft^2; TA in degrees F; D50, D55, D60, and D65 in degree days F (for these various "base" temperatures).

United States

LOS ALAMOS, NEW MEXICO — Elev 7380 — Lat 35.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	893	1340	29	650	804	958	1113
Jul	2051	913	68	0	0	0	0
Yr	1579	1244	48	2822	3851	5043	6437

BUFFALO, NEW YORK — Elev 705 — Lat 42.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	349	465	24	815	970	1125	1280
Jul	1776	935	70	0	0	3	12
Yr	1037	780	47	3322	4363	5551	6927

NEW YORK, NEW YORK — Elev 187 — Lat 40.8

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	500	708	32	552	707	862	1017
Jul	1688	861	77	0	0	0	0
Yr	1101	849	55	1931	2759	3737	4848

SYRACUSE, NEW YORK — Elev 407 — Lat 43.1

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	385	538	24	818	973	1128	1283
Jul	1758	931	72	0	1	3	11
Yr	1037	791	48	3215	4218	5366	6678

ALBANY, NEW YORK — Elev 292 — Lat 42.7

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	456	674	22	884	1039	1194	1349
Jul	1725	908	72	0	1	3	9
Yr	1068	843	48	3424	4428	5586	6888

CHARLOTTE, NORTH CAROLINA — Elev 768 — Lat 35.2

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	719	944	42	255	402	555	710
Jul	1831	841	79	0	0	0	0
Yr	1346	981	61	828	1451	2257	3218

RALEIGH-DURHAM, NORTH CAROLINA — Elev 440 — Lat 35.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	694	924	41	300	451	605	760
Jul	1776	832	78	0	0	0	0
Yr	1297	955	59	990	1659	2509	3514

BISMARCK, NORTH DAKOTA — Elev 1647 — Lat 46.8

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	467	847	8	1296	1451	1606	1761
Jul	2184	1241	71	0	2	8	18
Yr	1251	1145	41	5235	6364	7627	9044

FARGO, NORTH DAKOTA — Elev 899 — Lat 46.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	415	720	6	1367	1522	1677	1832
Jul	2120	1210	71	0	1	5	13
Yr	1206	1075	41	5485	6607	7858	9271

CINCINNATI, OHIO — Elev 889 — Lat 39.1

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	500	659	31	587	741	896	1051
Jul	1771	869	76	0	0	0	0
Yr	1160	858	54	2117	2973	3951	5070

CLEVELAND, OHIO — Elev 804 — Lat 41.4

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	388	507	27	716	871	1026	1181
Jul	1828	929	71	0	1	4	9
Yr	1093	808	50	2804	3768	4879	6154

COLUMBUS, OHIO — Elev 833 — Lat 40.0

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	459	606	28	670	825	980	1135
Jul	1755	876	74	0	0	0	0
Yr	1128	834	52	2524	3438	4491	5702

OKLAHOMA CITY, OKLAHOMA — Elev 1302 — Lat 35.4

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	801	1114	37	413	565	719	874
Jul	2128	925	82	0	0	0	0
Yr	1463	1073	60	1232	1903	2734	3695

MEDFORD, OREGON — Elev 1299 — Lat 42.4

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	407	565	37	417	571	725	880
Jul	2475	1207	72	0	1	3	11
Yr	1356	1033	53	1576	2505	3621	4930

SALEM, OREGON — Elev 200 — Lat 44.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	332	471	39	348	502	657	812
Jul	2142	1154	67	0	1	7	43
Yr	1130	897	52	1265	2220	3411	4852

HARRISBURG, PENNSYLVANIA — Elev 348 — Lat 40.2

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	536	763	30	617	772	927	1082
Jul	1764	883	76	0	0	0	0
Yr	1152	887	53	2221	3093	4086	5224

PHILADELPHIA, PENNSYLVANIA — Elev 30 — Lat 39.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	555	792	32	549	704	859	1014
Jul	1758	876	77	0	0	0	0
Yr	1170	905	55	1935	2775	3749	4865

PITTSBURGH, PENNSYLVANIA — Elev 1224 — Lat 40.5

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	424	553	28	679	834	989	1144
Jul	1689	857	72	0	1	3	7
Yr	1071	793	50	2635	3574	4669	5930

PROVIDENCE, RHODE ISLAND — Elev 62 — Lat 41.7

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	506	750	28	670	825	980	1135
Jul	1695	878	72	0	0	0	0
Yr	1114	884	50	2566	3543	4669	5972

CHARLESTON, SOUTH CAROLINA — Elev 39 — Lat 32.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	744	904	49	120	222	360	521
Jul	1799	813	80	0	0	0	0
Yr	1346	940	65	360	756	1355	2146

RAPID CITY, SOUTH DAKOTA — Elev 3169 — Lat 44.0

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	542	928	22	871	1026	1181	1336
Jul	2223	1161	73	1	2	8	13
Yr	1344	1177	47	3681	4749	5965	7324

KNOXVILLE, TENNESSEE — Elev 981 — Lat 35.8

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	621	785	41	302	449	602	756
Jul	1804	839	78	0	0	0	0
Yr	1275	909	60	1018	1671	2504	3478

TABLE C.19 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (I-P units) (*Continued*)

Elevation in feet; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in Btu/day ft^2; TA in degrees F; D50, D55, D60, and D65 in degree days F (for these various "base" temperatures).

United States

MEMPHIS, TENNESSEE — Elev 285 — Lat 35.0

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	683	870	41	312	455	606	760
Jul	1972	879	82	0	0	0	0
Yr	1368	965	62	988	1588	2357	3227

NASHVILLE, TENNESSEE — Elev 591 — Lat 36.1

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	580	721	38	369	519	673	828
Jul	1891	869	80	0	0	0	0
Yr	1272	891	59	1195	1874	2720	3696

AUSTIN, TEXAS — Elev 620 — Lat 30.3

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	864	1008	50	116	207	333	483
Jul	2105	865	85	0	0	0	0
Yr	1478	974	68	289	602	1088	1737

BROWNSVILLE, TEXAS — Elev 20 — Lat 25.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	913	923	60	18	51	116	225
Jul	2212	867	84	0	0	0	0
Yr	1550	917	74	44	127	325	650

DALLAS, TEXAS — Elev 489 — Lat 32.8

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	821	1035	45	189	312	457	608
Jul	2122	890	86	0	0	0	0
Yr	1470	1014	66	505	943	1543	2290

EL PASO, TEXAS — Elev 3917 — Lat 31.8

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	1125	1572	44	210	355	509	663
Jul	2450	934	82	0	0	0	0
Yr	1901	1327	63	561	1102	1810	2678

HOUSTON, TEXAS — Elev 108 — Lat 30.0

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	772	852	52	71	150	263	416
Jul	1828	805	83	0	0	0	0
Yr	1353	884	69	161	409	825	1434

LUBBOCK, TEXAS — Elev 3241 — Lat 33.6

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	1031	1497	39	343	494	648	803
Jul	2412	956	80	0	0	0	0
Yr	1768	1279	60	1069	1739	2582	3545

SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS — Elev 794 — Lat 29.5

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	895	1026	51	93	179	302	451
Jul	2121	863	85	0	0	0	0
Yr	1501	973	69	213	490	941	1570

BRYCE CANYON, UTAH — Elev 7588 — Lat 37.7

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	914	1511	20	936	1091	1246	1401
Jul	2424	1044	62	1	8	47	128
Yr	1742	1404	40	4693	6106	7675	9133

SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH — Elev 4226 — Lat 40.8

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	639	1017	28	683	837	992	1147
Jul	2590	1186	77	0	0	0	0
Yr	1606	1301	51	2648	3612	4725	5983

BURLINGTON, VERMONT — Elev 341 — Lat 44.5

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	385	572	17	1029	1184	1339	1494
Jul	1721	941	70	0	1	4	20
Yr	1023	815	44	4142	5230	6464	7876

NORFOLK, VIRGINIA — Elev 30 — Lat 36.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	678	932	41	300	450	605	760
Jul	1853	868	78	0	0	0	0
Yr	1327	990	59	974	1646	2489	3488

RICHMOND, VIRGINIA — Elev 164 — Lat 37.5

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	632	863	38	390	543	698	853
Jul	1774	849	78	0	0	0	0
Yr	1250	936	58	1296	2021	2909	3939

ROANOKE, VIRGINIA — Elev 1175 — Lat 37.3

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	660	911	36	423	577	832	887
Jul	1796	854	75	0	0	0	0
Yr	1271	958	56	1486	2277	3211	4307

SEATTLE-TACOMA, WASHINGTON — Elev 400 — Lat 47.4

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	262	378	38	367	521	676	831
Jul	2248	1299	65	0	2	16	80
Yr	1056	857	51	1386	2393	3662	5185

SPOKANE, WASHINGTON — Elev 2365 — Lat 47.6

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	315	496	25	763	918	1073	1228
Jul	2357	1368	70	0	2	7	21
Yr	1227	1068	47	3061	4150	5411	6835

CHARLESTON, WEST VIRGINIA — Elev 951 — Lat 38.4

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	498	638	35	483	636	791	946
Jul	1682	827	75	0	0	0	0
Yr	1125	822	55	1726	2540	3488	4590

MADISON, WISCONSIN — Elev 860 — Lat 43.1

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	515	822	17	1029	1184	1339	1494
Jul	1934	1009	70	0	1	5	14
Yr	1193	978	45	4086	5143	6352	7730

MILWAUKEE, WISCONSIN — Elev 692 — Lat 42.9

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	479	731	19	949	1104	1259	1414
Jul	1962	1017	70	0	1	4	15
Yr	1194	957	46	3774	4833	6045	7444

SHERIDAN, WYOMING — Elev 3966 — Lat 44.8

	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	517	900	21	899	1054	1209	1364
Jul	2329	1237	70	1	2	9	28
Yr	1333	1170	45	3860	4991	6279	7708

TABLE C.19 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (I-P units) (*Continued*)

Elevation in feet; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in Btu/day ft^2; TA in degrees F; D50, D55, D60, and D65 in degree days F (for these various "base" temperatures).

Canada

EDMONTON, ALBERTA					Elev 2220		Lat 53.6
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	324	746	4	1421	1574	1728	1883
Jul	1977	1378	62	1	7	38	117
Yr	1114	1205	36	6317	7563	9016	10650

SUFFIELD, ALBERTA					Elev 2549		Lat 50.3
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	433	937	7	1333	1486	1640	1794
Jul	2173	1377	67	0	2	11	49
Yr	1239	1269	40	5500	6637	7923	9393

VANCOUVER, BRITISH COLUMBIA					Elev 310		Lat 37.5
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	254	395	37	425	572	724	878
Jul	2021	1239	63	0	1	13	82
Yr	1060	916	50	1791	2781	4041	5588

WINNIPEG, MANITOBA					Elev 820		Lat 49.95
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	461	1011	0	1588	1740	1893	2047
Jul	2025	1264	67	0	2	9	45
Yr	1190	1199	36	6925	8062	9338	10790

HALIFAX, NOVA SCOTIA					Elev 136		Lat 44.6
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	456	737	26	752	900	1051	1204
Jul	1694	929	65	0	1	8	57
Yr	1076	907	46	3457	4500	5746	7211

OTTAWA, ONTARIO					Elev 377		Lat 45.5
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	510	914	13	1169	1320	1473	1627
Jul	1875	1040	69	0	1	4	23
Yr	1158	1015	43	4912	5965	7158	8529

TORONTO, ONTARIO					Elev 443		Lat 43.7
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	487	777	22	891	1041	1194	1348
Jul	1958	1035	70	0	0	3	18
Yr	1171	948	46	3842	4853	6013	7343

NORMANDIN, QUEBEC					Elev 450		Lat 48.8
	HS	VS	TA	D50	D55	D60	D65
Jan	454	921	0	1564	1719	1873	2028
Jul	1707	1031	62	1	7	40	118
Yr	1092	1053	34	7037	8308	9762	11376

Source: Reprinted by permission from J. D. Balcomb et al., *Passive Solar Design Handbook*, Vol. 3, © 1983, American Solar Energy Society, Inc., Boulder, CO.

TABLE C.20 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (SI units)

Elevation in meters; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in W/day m^2; TA in degrees C; D10.0, D12.8, D15.6, and D18.3 in degree days C (for these various "base" temperatures).

United States

MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA — Elev 62 — Lat 32.3

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2373	2827	9	82	142	219	309
Jul	5808	2587	27	0	0	0	0
Yr	4385	2985	18	247	481	819	1261

PHOENIX, ARIZONA — Elev 339 — Lat 33.4

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	3221	4613	11	43	90	158	238
Jul	7843	3041	33	0	0	0	0
Yr	4326	4184	21	104	255	511	862

TUCSON, ARIZONA — Elev 779 — Lat 32.1

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	3467	4856	11	44	92	162	246
Jul	7386	2909	30	0	0	0	0
Yr	5912	4124	20	119	292	576	973

FORT SMITH, ARKANSAS — Elev 141 — Lat 35.3

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2347	3142	4	192	276	362	448
Jul	6515	2865	28	0	0	0	0
Yr	4436	3196	16	553	901	1336	1853

FRESNO, CALIFORNIA — Elev 100 — Lat 36.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2073	2795	7	98	171	254	339
Jul	8471	3395	27	0	0	0	0
Yr	5408	3818	17	282	567	967	1472

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA — Elev 32 — Lat 33.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2922	4079	13	12	46	103	184
Jul	7279	2972	21	0	1	3	11
Yr	5035	3650	17	36	166	472	1011

SACRAMENTO, CALIFORNIA — Elev 8 — Lat 38.5

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1884	2615	7	102	175	258	343
Jul	8481	3568	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	5193	3780	16	308	609	1039	1579

SAN DIEGO, CALIFORNIA — Elev 9 — Lat 32.7

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	3079	4180	13	5	32	89	174
Jul	6897	2846	21	0	0	1	3
Yr	5048	3631	17	13	94	346	837

SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA — Elev 5 — Lat 37.6

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2234	3228	9	46	117	202	288
Jul	7547	3262	17	0	1	12	52
Yr	4909	3647	14	112	392	913	1690

SANTA MARIA, CALIFORNIA — Elev 72 — Lat 34.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2694	3780	11	28	83	164	250
Jul	7386	3045	17	0	2	17	62
Yr	5080	3698	14	86	347	891	1696

DENVER, COLORADO — Elev 1625 — Lat 39.7

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2650	4622	–1	346	432	518	604
Jul	7171	3322	23	0	0	0	0
Yr	4953	4209	10	1440	1993	2629	3342

GRAND JUNCTION, COLORADO — Elev 1475 — Lat 39.1

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2496	4089	–3	403	489	575	661
Jul	7777	3452	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	5240	4247	12	1397	1896	2463	3114

HARTFORD, CONNECTICUT — Elev 55 — Lat 41.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1505	2190	–4	434	520	606	692
Jul	5203	2716	23	0	0	1	3
Yr	3344	2634	9	1651	2193	2819	3528

WASHINGTON, DC — Elev 88 — Lat 38.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1805	2502	0	308	394	481	567
Jul	5733	2786	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	3818	2877	12	1113	1594	2147	2783

MIAMI, FLORIDA — Elev 2 — Lat 25.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	3335	3537	19	1	2	10	29
Jul	5562	2483	28	0	0	0	0
Yr	4650	2969	24	2	8	31	114

ORLANDO, FLORIDA — Elev 36 — Lat 28.5

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	3152	3631	16	7	23	58	109
Jul	5682	2508	27	0	0	0	0
Yr	4695	3105	22	22	70	193	407

TALLAHASSEE, FLORIDA — Elev 21 — Lat 30.4

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2767	3259	12	41	83	142	227
Jul	5515	2480	27	0	0	0	0
Yr	4524	3057	20	119	278	528	868

ATLANTA, GEORGIA — Elev 315 — Lat 33.6

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2265	2789	6	137	218	303	389
Jul	5717	2590	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	4250	2969	16	421	757	1194	1719

BOISE, IDAHO — Elev 874 — Lat 43.6

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1530	2429	–2	362	448	534	620
Jul	8244	4130	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	4729	3960	11	1344	1886	2520	3241

CHICAGO, ILLINOIS — Elev 190 — Lat 41.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1600	2385	–4	443	529	615	701
Jul	6133	3105	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	3840	3029	11	1641	2156	2744	3404

MOLINE, ILLINOIS — Elev 181 — Lat 41.4

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1688	2533	–6	491	577	663	749
Jul	6118	3073	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	3868	3070	10	1773	2287	2877	3553

SPRINGFIELD, ILLINOIS — Elev 187 — Lat 39.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1846	2688	–3	402	487	573	659
Jul	6493	3105	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	4114	3164	12	1421	1908	2458	3088

TABLE C.20 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (SI units) (*Continued*)

Elevation in meters; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in W/day m^2; TA in degrees C; D10.0, D12.8, D15.6, and D18.3 in degree days C (for these various "base" temperatures).

United States

INDIANAPOLIS, INDIANA					Elev 246		Lat 39.7
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1565	2108	–2	381	467	553	639
Jul	5698	2811	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	3682	2754	11	1395	1891	2456	3098

SOUTH BEND, INDIANA					Elev 236		Lat 41.7
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1312	1786	–4	448	534	620	706
Jul	5843	2978	22	0	1	2	3
Yr	3597	2726	9	1729	2269	2888	3590

DES MOINES, IOWA					Elev 294		Lat 41.5
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1833	2877	–7	527	613	699	786
Jul	6616	3272	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	4146	3360	9	1939	2464	3061	3728

DODGE CITY, KANSAS					Elev 787		Lat 37.8
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2609	4111	–1	331	417	503	589
Jul	7241	3196	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	4928	3887	13	1184	1656	2192	2803

TOPEKA, KANSAS					Elev 270		Lat 39.1
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2149	3259	–2	379	465	551	637
Jul	6714	3133	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	4376	3269	12	1292	1764	2298	2913

LEXINGTON, KENTUCKY					Elev 301		Lat 38.0
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1723	2253	1	295	381	467	553
Jul	5837	2780	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	3852	2814	13	1036	1492	2018	2627

BATON ROUGE, LOUISIANA					Elev 23		Lat 30.5
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2477	2805	11	50	97	163	251
Jul	5509	2480	28	0	0	0	0
Yr	4354	2881	19	129	294	559	928

NEW ORLEANS, LOUISIANA					Elev 3		Lat 30.0
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2634	2997	12	41	83	140	224
Jul	5720	2527	28	0	0	0	0
Yr	4537	2975	20	109	258	493	814

SHREVEPORT, LOUISIANA					Elev 79		Lat 32.5
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2404	2903	8	86	147	224	307
Jul	6354	2726	28	0	0	0	0
Yr	4505	3070	19	238	462	786	1204

PORTLAND, MAINE					Elev 19		Lat 43.6
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1420	2174	–6	491	577	663	749
Jul	5234	2821	20	0	1	3	15
Yr	3319	2704	7	2027	2643	3355	4166

DETROIT, MICHIGAN					Elev 191		Lat 42.4
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1316	1846	–3	422	508	594	681
Jul	5789	3000	23	0	0	0	0
Yr	3540	2742	10	1628	2161	2770	3460

SAULT STE. MARIE, MICHIGAN					Elev 221		Lat 46.5
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1025	1552	–10	617	703	789	875
Jul	5789	3297	18	1	4	18	53
Yr	3294	2716	4	2761	3443	4226	5107

MINNEAPOLIS, MINNESOTA					Elev 255		Lat 44.9
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1464	2423	–11	651	737	823	909
Jul	6215	3379	22	0	1	3	6
Yr	3698	3142	7	2547	3128	3791	4533

MERIDIAN, MISSISSIPPI					Elev 94		Lat 32.3
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2347	2786	8	91	152	229	319
Jul	5752	2571	27	0	0	0	0
Yr	4326	2944	18	283	531	879	1327

SAINT LOUIS, MISSOURI					Elev 172		Lat 38.7
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1978	2833	–1	323	408	494	581
Jul	6465	3026	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	4193	3174	13	1089	1534	2048	2639

SPRINGFIELD, MISSOURI					Elev 387		Lat 37.2
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2158	3016	1	297	381	467	553
Jul	6509	2953	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	4303	3190	13	1027	1454	1957	2539

HELENA, MONTANA					Elev 1188		Lat 46.6
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1322	2268	–8	549	636	722	808
Jul	7364	4139	20	1	2	7	18
Yr	3994	3578	6	2306	2968	3716	4550

NORTH OMAHA, NEBRASKA					Elev 404		Lat 41.4
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2000	3262	–7	513	599	686	772
Jul	6644	3275	24	0	1	2	4
Yr	4174	3401	9	1872	2394	2989	3667

ELY, NEVADA					Elev 1906		Lat 39.3
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2584	4354	–4	454	541	627	713
Jul	7720	3452	19	0	1	6	13
Yr	5285	4389	7	2064	2734	3495	4341

LAS VEGAS, NEVADA					Elev 664		Lat 36.1
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	3086	4900	7	120	192	274	358
Jul	8165	3278	32	0	0	0	0
Yr	5887	4515	19	351	627	993	1445

RENO, NEVADA					Elev 1341		Lat 39.5
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2524	4243	0	312	398	484	570
Jul	8493	3682	21	0	1	3	9
Yr	5565	4540	9	1273	1858	2550	3346

ALBUQUERQUE, NEW MEXICO					Elev 1619		Lat 35.0
	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	3205	4928	2	255	341	427	513
Jul	7853	3139	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	5774	4351	14	832	1273	1787	2384

TABLE C.20 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (SI units) (*Continued*)

Elevation in meters; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in W/day m^2; TA in degrees C; D10.0, D12.8, D15.6, and D18.3 in degree days C (for these various "base" temperatures).

United States

LOS ALAMOS, NEW MEXICO — Elev 2249 — Lat 35.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2817	4228	–2	361	447	532	618
Jul	6471	2881	20	0	0	0	0
Yr	4982	3925	9	1568	2139	2802	3576

BUFFALO, NEW YORK — Elev 215 — Lat 42.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1101	1467	–4	453	539	625	711
Jul	5603	2950	21	0	0	2	7
Yr	3272	2461	8	1846	2424	3084	3848

NEW YORK, NEW YORK — Elev 57 — Lat 40.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1578	2234	0	307	393	479	565
Jul	5326	2716	25	0	0	0	0
Yr	3474	2679	13	1073	1533	2076	2693

SYRACUSE, NEW YORK — Elev 124 — Lat 43.1

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1215	1697	–4	454	541	627	713
Jul	5546	2937	22	0	1	2	6
Yr	3272	2496	9	1786	2343	2981	3710

ALBANY, NEW YORK — Elev 89 — Lat 42.7

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1439	2126	–6	491	577	663	749
Jul	5442	2865	22	0	1	2	5
Yr	3370	2660	9	1902	2460	3103	3827

CHARLOTTE, NORTH CAROLINA — Elev 234 — Lat 35.2

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2268	2978	6	142	223	308	394
Jul	5777	2653	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	4347	3095	16	460	806	1254	1788

RALEIGH-DURHAM, NORTH CAROLINA — Elev 134 — Lat 35.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2190	2915	5	167	251	336	422
Jul	5603	2625	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	4092	3013	15	550	922	1394	1952

BISMARCK, NORTH DAKOTA — Elev 502 — Lat 46.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1473	2672	–13	720	806	892	978
Jul	6891	3915	22	0	1	4	10
Yr	3947	3612	5	2908	3536	4237	5024

FARGO, NORTH DAKOTA — Elev 274 — Lat 46.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1309	2272	–14	759	846	932	1018
Jul	6689	3818	22	0	1	3	7
Yr	3805	3392	5	3047	3671	4366	5151

CINCINNATI, OHIO — Elev 271 — Lat 39.1

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1578	2079	–1	326	412	498	584
Jul	5588	2742	24	0	1	2	5
Yr	3660	2707	12	1176	1652	2195	2817

CLEVELAND, OHIO — Elev 245 — Lat 41.4

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1224	1600	–3	398	484	570	656
Jul	5767	2931	22	0	1	2	5
Yr	3448	2549	10	1558	2093	2711	3419

COLUMBUS, OHIO — Elev 254 — Lat 40.0

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1448	1912	–2	372	458	544	631
Jul	5537	2764	23	0	0	0	0
Yr	3559	2631	11	1402	1910	2495	3168

OKLAHOMA CITY, OKLAHOMA — Elev 397 — Lat 35.4

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2527	3515	3	229	314	399	486
Jul	6714	2918	28	0	0	0	0
Yr	4616	3385	16	684	1057	1519	2053

MEDFORD, OREGON — Elev 396 — Lat 42.4

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1284	1783	3	232	317	403	489
Jul	7809	3808	22	0	1	2	6
Yr	4278	3259	12	876	1392	2012	2739

SALEM, OREGON — Elev 61 — Lat 44.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1047	1486	4	193	279	365	451
Jul	6758	3641	19	0	1	4	24
Yr	3565	2830	11	703	1233	1895	2696

HARRISBURG, PENNSYLVANIA — Elev 106 — Lat 40.2

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1691	2407	–1	343	429	515	601
Jul	5565	2786	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	3635	2798	12	1234	1718	2270	2902

PHILADELPHIA, PENNSYLVANIA — Elev 9 — Lat 39.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1751	2499	0	305	391	477	563
Jul	5546	2764	25	0	0	0	0
Yr	3691	2855	13	1075	1542	2083	2703

PITTSBURGH, PENNSYLVANIA — Elev 373 — Lat 40.5

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1338	1745	–2	377	463	549	636
Jul	5329	2704	22	0	1	2	4
Yr	3379	2502	10	1464	1986	2594	3294

PROVIDENCE, RHODE ISLAND — Elev 19 — Lat 41.7

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1596	2366	–2	372	458	544	631
Jul	5348	2770	22	0	0	0	0
Yr	3515	2789	10	1426	1968	2594	3318

CHARLESTON, SOUTH CAROLINA — Elev 12 — Lat 32.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2347	2852	9	67	123	200	289
Jul	5676	2565	27	0	0	0	0
Yr	4247	2966	18	200	420	753	1192

RAPID CITY, SOUTH DAKOTA — Elev 966 — Lat 44.0

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1710	2928	–6	484	570	656	742
Jul	7014	3663	23	1	1	4	7
Yr	4240	3713	8	2045	2638	3314	4069

KNOXVILLE, TENNESSEE — Elev 299 — Lat 35.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1959	2477	5	168	249	334	420
Jul	5692	2647	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	4023	2868	16	566	928	1391	1932

TABLE C.20 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (SI units) (*Continued*)

Elevation in meters; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in W/day m2; TA in degrees C; D10.0, D12.8, D15.6, and D18.3 in degree days C (for these various "base" temperatures).

United States

MEMPHIS, TENNESSEE — Elev 87 — Lat 35.0

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2155	2745	5	173	253	337	422
Jul	6222	2773	28	0	0	0	0
Yr	4316	3045	17	549	882	1309	1793

NASHVILLE, TENNESSEE — Elev 180 — Lat 36.1

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1830	2275	3	205	288	374	460
Jul	5966	2742	27	0	0	0	0
Yr	4013	2811	15	664	1041	1511	2053

AUSTIN, TEXAS — Elev 189 — Lat 30.3

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2726	3180	10	64	115	185	268
Jul	6641	2729	29	0	0	0	0
Yr	4663	3073	20	161	334	604	965

BROWNSVILLE, TEXAS — Elev 6 — Lat 25.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2881	2912	16	10	28	64	125
Jul	6979	2735	29	0	0	0	0
Yr	4890	2893	23	24	71	181	361

DALLAS, TEXAS — Elev 149 — Lat 32.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2590	3265	7	105	173	254	338
Jul	6695	2808	30	0	0	0	0
Yr	4638	3199	19	281	524	857	1272

EL PASO, TEXAS — Elev 1194 — Lat 31.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	3549	4960	7	117	197	283	368
Jul	7730	2947	28	0	0	0	0
Yr	5998	4187	17	312	612	1006	1488

HOUSTON, TEXAS — Elev 33 — Lat 30.0

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2436	2688	11	39	83	146	231
Jul	5767	2540	28	0	0	0	0
Yr	4269	2789	21	89	227	458	797

LUBBOCK, TEXAS — Elev 988 — Lat 33.6

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	3253	4723	4	191	274	360	446
Jul	7610	3016	27	0	0	0	0
Yr	5578	4035	16	594	966	1434	1969

SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS — Elev 242 — Lat 29.5

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2824	3237	11	52	99	168	251
Jul	6692	2723	29	0	0	0	0
Yr	4736	3070	21	118	272	523	872

BRYCE CANYON, UTAH — Elev 2313 — Lat 37.7

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2884	4767	–7	520	606	692	778
Jul	7648	3294	17	1	4	26	71
Yr	5496	4430	4	2607	3392	4264	5074

SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH — Elev 1288 — Lat 40.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2016	3209	–2	379	465	551	637
Jul	8171	3742	25	0	0	0	0
Yr	5067	4105	11	1471	2007	2625	3324

BURLINGTON, VERMONT — Elev 104 — Lat 44.5

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1215	1805	–8	572	658	744	830
Jul	5430	2969	21	0	1	2	11
Yr	3228	2571	7	2301	2906	3591	4376

NORFOLK, VIRGINIA — Elev 9 — Lat 36.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2139	2940	5	167	250	336	417
Jul	5846	2739	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	4187	3123	15	541	914	1383	1938

RICHMOND, VIRGINIA — Elev 50 — Lat 37.5

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1994	2723	3	217	302	388	474
Jul	5597	2679	26	0	0	0	0
Yr	3944	2953	14	720	1123	1616	2188

ROANOKE, VIRGINIA — Elev 358 — Lat 37.3

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	2082	2874	2	235	321	462	493
Jul	5666	2694	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	4010	3022	13	826	1265	1784	2393

SEATTLE-TACOMA, WASHINGTON — Elev 122 — Lat 47.4

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	827	1193	3	204	289	376	462
Jul	7092	4098	18	0	1	9	44
Yr	3332	2704	11	770	1329	2034	2881

SPOKANE, WASHINGTON — Elev 721 — Lat 47.6

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	994	1565	–4	424	510	596	682
Jul	7436	4316	21	0	1	4	12
Yr	3871	3370	8	1701	2306	3006	3797

CHARLESTON, WEST VIRGINIA — Elev 290 — Lat 38.4

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1571	2013	2	268	353	439	528
Jul	5307	2609	24	0	0	0	0
Yr	3549	2593	13	959	1411	1938	2550

MADISON, WISCONSIN — Elev 262 — Lat 43.1

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1625	2593	–8	572	658	744	830
Jul	6102	3183	21	0	1	3	8
Yr	3764	3086	7	2270	2857	3529	4294

MILWAUKEE, WISCONSIN — Elev 211 — Lat 42.9

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1511	2306	–7	527	613	699	786
Jul	6190	3209	21	0	1	2	8
Yr	3767	3019	8	2097	2685	3358	4136

SHERIDAN, WYOMING — Elev 1209 — Lat 44.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1631	2840	–6	499	586	672	758
Jul	7348	3903	21	1	1	5	16
Yr	4206	3691	7	2144	2773	3488	4282

TABLE C.20 Average Insolation, Temperature, and DD Data (SI units) (*Continued*)

Elevation in meters; latitude in degrees north latitude; HS (horizontal surface) and VS (vertical surface) insolation in W/day m2; TA in degrees C; D10.0, D12.8, D15.6, and D18.3 in degree days C (for these various "base" temperatures).

Canada

EDMONTON, ALBERTA — Elev 677 — Lat 53.6

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1022	2354	–16	789	874	960	1046
Jul	6237	4348	17	1	4	21	65
Yr	3515	3802	2	3509	4202	5009	5917

SUFFIELD, ALBERTA — Elev 777 — Lat 50.3

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1366	2956	–14	741	826	911	997
Jul	6856	4344	19	0	1	6	27
Yr	3909	4004	4	3056	3687	4402	5218

VANCOUVER, BRITISH COLUMBIA — Elev 94 — Lat 37.5

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	801	1246	3	236	318	402	488
Jul	6376	3909	17	0	1	7	46
Yr	3344	2890	10	995	1545	2245	3104

WINNIPEG, MANITOBA — Elev 250 — Lat 49.95

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1454	3190	–18	882	967	1052	1137
Jul	6389	3988	19	0	1	5	25
Yr	3754	3783	2	3847	4479	5188	5994

HALIFAX, NOVA SCOTIA — Elev 41 — Lat 44.6

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1439	2325	–3	418	500	584	669
Jul	5345	2931	18	0	1	4	32
Yr	3395	2862	8	1921	2500	3192	4006

OTTAWA, ONTARIO — Elev 115 — Lat 45.5

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1609	2884	–11	649	733	818	904
Jul	5916	3281	21	0	1	2	13
Yr	3653	3202	6	2729	3314	3977	4738

TORONTO, ONTARIO — Elev 135 — Lat 43.7

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1536	2451	–6	495	578	663	749
Jul	6177	3265	21	0	0	2	10
Yr	3695	2991	8	2134	2696	3341	4079

NORMANDIN, QUEBEC — Elev 137 — Lat 48.8

	HS	VS	TA	D10.0	D12.8	D15.6	D18.3
Jan	1432	2906	–18	869	955	1041	1127
Jul	5386	3253	17	1	4	22	66
Yr	3445	3322	1	3909	4616	5423	6320

Source: Reprinted by permission from J. D. Balcomb et al., *Passive Solar Design Handbook*, Vol. 3, © 1983, American Solar Energy Society, Inc., Boulder, CO.
The original source provided only I-P units; the conversions to SI units were made by the authors of this book.

TABLE C.21 Coefficient of Utilization from Window without Blinds; Sky Component $E_{xvk}/E_{xhk} = 0.75$

Room Depth/ Window Height	Depth	*Window Width/Window Height*							
		.5	1	2	3	4	6	8	Infinite
1	10	.824	.864	.870	.873	.875	.879	.880	.883
	30	.547	.711	.777	.789	.793	.798	.799	.801
	50	.355	.526	.635	.659	.666	.669	.670	.672
	70	.243	.386	.505	.538	.548	.544	.545	.547
	90	.185	.304	.418	.451	.464	.444	.446	.447
2	10	.667	.781	.809	.812	.813	.815	.816	.824
	30	.269	.416	.519	.544	.551	.556	.557	.563
	50	.122	.204	.287	.319	.331	.339	.341	.345
	70	.068	.116	.173	.201	.214	.223	.226	.229
	90	.050	.084	.127	.151	.164	.167	.171	.172
3	10	.522	.681	.739	.746	.747	.749	.747	.766
	30	.139	.232	.320	.350	.360	.366	.364	.373
	50	.053	.092	.139	.163	.174	.183	.182	.187
	70	.031	.053	.081	.097	.106	.116	.116	.119
	90	.025	.041	.061	.074	.082	.089	.090	.092
4	10	.405	.576	.658	.670	.673	.675	.674	.707
	30	.075	.134	.197	.224	.235	.243	.243	.255
	50	.028	.050	.078	.094	.104	.112	.114	.119
	70	.018	.031	.048	.059	.065	.073	.074	.078
	90	.016	.026	.040	.048	.053	.059	.061	.064
6	10	.242	.392	.494	.516	.521	.524	.523	.588
	30	.027	.054	.086	.102	.111	.119	.120	.135
	50	.011	.023	.036	.044	.049	.055	.056	.063
	70	.009	.018	.027	.032	.035	.040	.041	.046
	90	.008	.016	.023	.028	.031	.034	.035	.040
8	10	.147	.257	.352	.380	.387	.391	.392	.482
	30	.012	.026	.043	.054	.060	.067	.070	.086
	50	.006	.013	.021	.026	.029	.033	.035	.043
	70	.005	.011	.017	.021	.023	.026	.027	.034
	90	.004	.010	.015	.019	.021	.023	.025	.030
10	10	.092	.168	.248	.275	.284	.290	.291	.395
	30	.006	.014	.026	.032	.036	.041	.044	.059
	50	.003	.008	.014	.017	.019	.022	.024	.032
	70	.003	.007	.012	.014	.016	.018	.019	.026
	90	.003	.006	.011	.013	.015	.016	.017	.024

Source: IES RP-23-1989; reprinted with permission of Illuminating Engineering Society of North America.

TABLE C.22 Coefficient of Utilization from Window without Blinds; Sky Component E_{xvk}/E_{xhk} = 1.00

Room Depth/ Window Height	Depth	*Window Width/Window Height*							
		.5	1	2	3	4	6	8	Infinite
1	10	.671	.704	.711	.715	.717	.726	.726	.728
	30	.458	.595	.654	.668	.672	.682	.683	.685
	50	.313	.462	.563	.589	.598	.607	.608	.610
	70	.227	.362	.478	.515	.527	.530	.532	.534
	90	.186	.306	.424	.465	.481	.468	.471	.472
2	10	.545	.636	.658	.660	.661	.665	.666	.672
	30	.239	.367	.459	.484	.491	.499	.501	.506
	50	.121	.203	.286	.320	.335	.348	.351	.355
	70	.074	.128	.192	.226	.243	.259	.264	.267
	90	.058	.101	.156	.188	.207	.215	.221	.223
3	10	.431	.561	.607	.613	.614	.616	.615	.631
	30	.133	.223	.306	.337	.348	.357	.357	.366
	50	.058	.103	.155	.183	.197	.211	.213	.218
	70	.037	.064	.098	.119	.132	.147	.150	.154
	90	.030	.051	.079	.098	.110	.122	.126	.129
4	10	.339	.482	.549	.560	.563	.566	.565	.593
	30	.078	.139	.204	.234	.247	.258	.260	.272
	50	.033	.060	.094	.114	.126	.139	.143	.150
	70	.022	.039	.061	.074	.083	.095	.099	.104
	90	.019	.032	.050	.061	.070	.080	.084	.089
6	10	.211	.343	.433	.453	.458	.461	.461	.518
	30	.033	.065	.103	.123	.135	.145	.148	.167
	50	.015	.029	.047	.057	.064	.073	.077	.086
	70	.011	.021	.033	.040	.045	.051	.054	.060
	90	.010	.019	.028	.034	.038	.044	.046	.052
8	10	.135	.238	.326	.353	.362	.366	.367	.452
	30	.016	.034	.058	.072	.080	.090	.094	.116
	50	.008	.017	.027	.034	.039	.045	.048	.059
	70	.006	.013	.021	.026	.028	.032	.035	.043
	90	.005	.012	.019	.023	.025	.029	.031	.038
10	10	.090	.165	.244	.272	.283	.290	.291	.395
	30	.009	.020	.036	.045	.052	.060	.064	.087
	50	.005	.010	.019	.023	.026	.030	.033	.044
	70	.004	.009	.015	.018	.020	.023	.025	.033
	90	.003	.008	.014	.016	.018	.020	.022	.030

Source: IES RP-23-1989; reprinted with permission of Illuminating Engineering Society of North America.

TABLE C.23 Coefficient of Utilization from Window without Blinds; Sky Component $E_{xvk}/E_{xhk} = 1.25$

Room Depth/ Window Height	Depth	*Window Width/Window Height*							
		.5	1	2	3	4	6	8	Infinite
1	10	.578	.607	.614	.619	.621	.633	.634	.635
	30	.405	.525	.580	.594	.599	.612	.614	.615
	50	.287	.423	.519	.547	.556	.569	.571	.573
	70	.218	.347	.461	.501	.515	.522	.525	.526
	90	.186	.307	.428	.473	.491	.483	.486	.487
2	10	.472	.549	.566	.569	.570	.574	.575	.581
	30	.221	.337	.422	.447	.456	.465	.467	.472
	50	.120	.202	.285	.321	.337	.353	.357	.361
	70	.078	.136	.204	.242	.261	.281	.287	.290
	90	.064	.112	.174	.211	.233	.244	.251	.253
3	10	.377	.488	.527	.533	.534	.536	.536	.549
	30	.130	.217	.298	.329	.341	.352	.353	.362
	50	.062	.110	.165	.195	.211	.228	.231	.237
	70	.040	.070	.109	.132	.147	.166	.171	.175
	90	.033	.057	.090	.112	.127	.142	.148	.152
4	10	.300	.424	.484	.494	.497	.499	.499	.524
	30	.080	.143	.209	.240	.255	.267	.269	.283
	50	.036	.066	.104	.126	.140	.156	.160	.168
	70	.024	.043	.068	.083	.094	.109	.115	.120
	90	.021	.036	.056	.070	.080	.092	.099	.103
6	10	.193	.314	.395	.415	.420	.423	.423	.476
	30	.036	.071	.113	.136	.149	.161	.165	.186
	50	.017	.033	.053	.065	.074	.084	.089	.100
	70	.012	.024	.037	.045	.050	.058	.061	.069
	90	.011	.021	.031	.038	.043	.049	.053	.060
8	10	.128	.226	.310	.337	.346	.351	.352	.433
	30	.019	.039	.066	.082	.092	.104	.109	.134
	50	.009	.019	.031	.040	.045	.052	.056	.069
	70	.007	.015	.023	.029	.032	.037	.040	.049
	90	.006	.013	.021	.025	.028	.032	.035	.043
10	10	.088	.164	.241	.270	.282	.290	.291	.396
	30	.011	.024	.043	.054	.062	.071	.076	.103
	50	.005	.012	.022	.026	.030	.035	.038	.052
	70	.004	.010	.017	.020	.023	.026	.028	.038
	90	.004	.009	.016	.018	.020	.023	.025	.034

Source: IES RP-23-1989; reprinted with permission of Illuminating Engineering Society of North America.

TABLE C.24 Coefficient of Utilization from Window without Blinds; Sky Component E_{xvk}/E_{xhk} = 1.50

Room Depth/ Window Height	Depth	*Window Width/Window Height*							
		.5	1	2	3	4	6	8	Infinite
1	10	.503	.528	.536	.541	.544	.557	.558	.559
	30	.359	.464	.514	.528	.534	.549	.550	.552
	50	.261	.384	.471	.499	.508	.524	.526	.527
	70	.204	.325	.432	.470	.485	.497	.499	.500
	90	.179	.295	.412	.456	.475	.474	.477	.478
2	10	.412	.477	.490	.492	.493	.498	.499	.505
	30	.201	.304	.379	.402	.410	.422	.424	.429
	50	.115	.192	.269	.304	.320	.339	.343	.347
	70	.078	.136	.204	.241	.261	.286	.292	.295
	90	.066	.117	.183	.221	.246	.262	.271	.273
3	10	.331	.426	.458	.461	.462	.465	.465	.477
	30	.121	.202	.275	.304	.316	.327	.329	.337
	50	.062	.109	.164	.193	.209	.228	.232	.238
	70	.041	.073	.114	.138	.154	.176	.183	.188
	90	.035	.062	.099	.123	.141	.159	.169	.173
4	10	.265	.372	.422	.430	.433	.435	.435	.456
	30	.077	.137	.199	.229	.243	.256	.259	.272
	50	.037	.069	.107	.130	.144	.161	.167	.175
	70	.026	.046	.073	.089	.101	.119	.126	.132
	90	.022	.039	.063	.078	.090	.106	.114	.120
6	10	.173	.281	.351	.368	.373	.375	.375	.422
	30	.037	.073	.115	.137	.151	.164	.168	.189
	50	.018	.036	.058	.071	.080	.092	.098	.110
	70	.013	.026	.040	.049	.056	.064	.069	.078
	90	.012	.023	.035	.043	.048	.057	.062	.070
8	10	.117	.207	.282	.305	.314	.319	.320	.393
	30	.020	.042	.071	.087	.098	.111	.116	.143
	50	.010	.021	.035	.044	.050	.058	.063	.078
	70	.007	.016	.026	.032	.036	.041	.045	.055
	90	.076	.014	.023	.028	.031	.036	.040	.049
10	10	.082	.153	.224	.250	.262	.269	.271	.368
	30	.012	.026	.047	.059	.068	.078	.084	.114
	50	.006	.014	.024	.030	.034	.040	.044	.060
	70	.005	.011	.019	.022	.025	.029	.032	.043
	90	.004	.010	.017	.020	.023	.026	.028	.038

Source: IES RP-23-1989; reprinted with permission of Illuminating Engineering Society of North America.

TABLE C.25 Coefficient of Utilization from Window without Blinds; Sky Component $E_{xvk}/E_{xhk} = 1.75$

Room Depth/ Window Height	Depth	*Window Width/Window Height*							
		.5	1	2	3	4	6	8	Infinite
1	10	.435	.457	.465	.471	.474	.486	.488	.489
	30	.317	.407	.452	.466	.471	.486	.488	.489
	50	.234	.343	.422	.447	.456	.472	.475	.476
	70	.187	.297	.395	.430	.445	.458	.461	.462
	90	.168	.276	.384	.426	.444	.447	.450	.451
2	10	.357	.412	.422	.424	.424	.430	.431	.436
	30	.180	.271	.335	.356	.363	.375	.378	.381
	50	.106	.177	.246	.278	.293	.313	.318	.321
	70	.074	.130	.194	.229	.249	.274	.282	.284
	90	.065	.116	.181	.219	.244	.264	.273	.276
3	10	.288	.369	.394	.397	.397	.400	.401	.411
	30	.110	.183	.247	.272	.282	.294	.296	.304
	50	.058	.104	.154	.181	.196	.215	.221	.226
	70	.040	.072	.112	.136	.152	.176	.184	.188
	90	.035	.063	.101	.126	.144	.166	.177	.182
4	10	.232	.324	.365	.371	.373	.375	.375	.394
	30	.071	.127	.183	.209	.222	.235	.238	.250
	50	.036	.067	.104	.125	.139	.157	.163	.171
	70	.025	.046	.072	.089	.101	.119	.127	.134
	90	.022	.041	.065	.082	.095	.114	.124	.130
6	10	.153	.247	.307	.320	.324	.326	.327	.367
	30	.035	.070	.109	.130	.143	.155	.160	.180
	50	.018	.036	.058	.071	.080	.091	.098	.110
	70	.013	.026	.041	.051	.058	.067	.073	.082
	90	.012	.023	.037	.046	.052	.062	.069	.078
8	10	.104	.184	.249	.269	.276	.281	.282	.346
	30	.020	.042	.070	.086	.096	.109	.115	.141
	50	.010	.022	.036	.046	.052	.060	.066	.081
	70	.008	.017	.027	.033	.038	.044	.048	.059
	90	.007	.015	.024	.030	.034	.040	.044	.054
10	10	.074	.138	.201	.223	.233	.240	.242	.328
	30	.012	.027	.048	.059	.067	.078	.084	.114
	50	.006	.014	.026	.032	.036	.043	.047	.064
	70	.005	.011	.020	.024	.027	.031	.034	.046
	90	.004	.010	.018	.022	.024	.028	.031	.042

Source: IES RP-23-1989; reprinted with permission of Illuminating Engineering Society of North America.

TABLE C.26 Coefficient of Utilization from Window without Blinds; Ground Component

Room Depth/ Window Height	Depth	*Window Width/Window Height*							
		.5	1	2	3	4	6	8	Infinite
1	10	.105	.137	.177	.197	.207	.208	.210	.211
	30	.116	.157	.203	.225	.235	.241	.243	.244
	50	.110	.165	.217	.241	.252	.267	.269	.270
	70	.101	.162	.217	.243	.253	.283	.285	.286
	90	.091	.146	.199	.230	.239	.290	.292	.293
2	10	.095	.124	.160	.178	.186	.186	.189	.191
	30	.082	.132	.179	.201	.212	.219	.222	.225
	50	.062	.113	.165	.189	.202	.214	.218	.220
	70	.051	.093	.141	.165	.179	.194	.198	.200
	90	.045	.079	.118	.140	.153	.179	.183	.185
3	10	.088	.120	.157	.175	.183	.185	.163	.167
	30	.059	.107	.154	.176	.187	.198	.193	.198
	50	.039	.074	.114	.134	.146	.157	.163	.170
	70	.031	.055	.085	.101	.111	.122	.127	.130
	90	.028	.047	.070	.083	.092	.107	.113	.115
4	10	.073	.113	.154	.174	.183	.187	.176	.184
	30	.040	.082	.127	.148	.159	.170	.177	.185
	50	.025	.049	.078	.094	.103	.113	.117	.123
	70	.020	.036	.054	.065	.071	.079	.083	.087
	90	.019	.032	.046	.054	.060	.069	.073	.076
6	10	.056	.106	.143	.164	.175	.184	.173	.194
	30	.021	.050	.081	.098	.107	.117	.123	.138
	50	.013	.027	.041	.049	.054	.060	.064	.072
	70	.011	.021	.029	.033	.035	.039	.041	.046
	90	.011	.020	.026	.030	.032	.035	.037	.042
8	10	.036	.082	.122	.143	.156	.166	.170	.208
	30	.011	.029	.050	.062	.070	.078	.082	.101
	50	.007	.016	.024	.028	.031	.035	.038	.046
	70	.006	.013	.018	.020	.021	.023	.025	.030
	90	.006	.013	.017	.019	.020	.022	.023	.028
10	10	.024	.061	.109	.120	.131	.144	.147	.200
	30	.006	.017	.034	.040	.046	.053	.056	.076
	50	.004	.010	.016	.018	.020	.023	.024	.033
	70	.004	.009	.013	.014	.015	.016	.016	.022
	90	.004	.009	.013	.013	.014	.015	.016	.021

Source: IES RP-23-1989; reprinted with permission of Illuminating Engineering Society of North America.

Table C.27 Reflectances of Daylighting Modeling Materials

Materials	Number	Reflectance (%)
Crescent Board Color		
Raven Black	989	6.7
Newport Blue	977	9.1
Wine	907 A	12.6
Williamsburg Green	988	12.7
Volcano Blue	1081	15.5
Russet	996	15.7
Las Cruces Purple	1076	16.1
Marine Blue	1082	16.5
Madeira Red	1075	19.4
Avocado	1084	21.6
Persimmon	1087	26.4
Gibraltar Grey	1074	28.5
Burnt Orange	1077	33.5
Moss Point Green	1001	35.0
Bar Harbor Grey	976	38.5
Bimini Blue	1080	43.3
Mist Grey	1002	43.5
Suntan	1062	45.8
Stone Grey	975	48.5
French Blue	972	54.2
Cameo Rose	973	56.0
Biscay Blue	1073	56.0
Sauterne	1089	59.4
Lime	910 A	59.7
Sandstone	1061	61.0
Madagascar Pink	1078	73.7
Mist	1088	76.3
Daffodil	971	88.8
Yellow	902 A	93.1
Mat Board		
Arctic White	3297	91.4
Linen Board		
Cream Linen	2961 A	91.0
French Grey	2962 A	76.0
Museum Board		
2-ply White	1150	96.5
2-ply Antique	1157	91.5
2-ply Cream	1152	94.2

Source: Technical Reference Sheet; The Lighting Design Lab, Seattle, WA.

APPENDIX D

Solar Geometry

This appendix provides information on various aspects of solar geometry, including three sets of sunpath diagrams (sunpeg charts, horizontal projection charts, and vertical projection charts).

- Solar altitude and azimuth data for 30, 34, 38, 42, 44, and 48° N latitudes (Table D.1)
- Sunpeg charts for 28, 32, 36, 40, 44, 48, and 52° N latitudes (Figure D.1)
- Horizontal projection (equidistant) sunpath charts for 24, 28, 32, 36, 40, 44, 48, and 52° N latitudes (Figure D.2)
- Vertical projection sunpath charts for 28, 32, 36, 40, 44, 48, 52, and 56° N latitudes (Figure D.3)

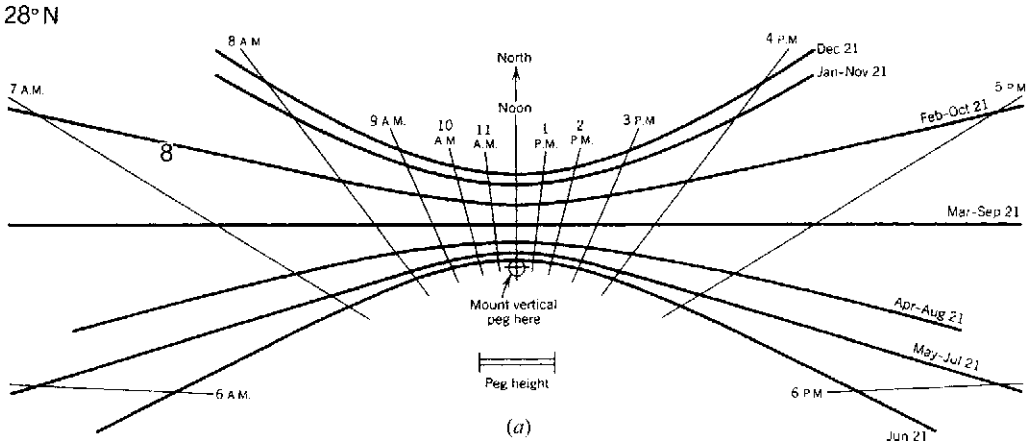
D.1 SOLAR ALTITUDE AND AZIMUTH DATA FOR 30, 34, 38, 42, 44, AND 48° N LATITUDES

TABLE D.1 Typical Solar Altitude and Azimuth Data as a Function of Date and Time of Day

Latitude (°N)		Date	*Solar Time*[a] AM: 6 / PM: 6	7 / 5	8 / 4	9 / 3	10 / 2	11 / 1	Noon
30	Altitude	June 21	12	24	37	50	63	75	83
		Mar–Sept 21	—	13	26	38	49	57	60
		Dec 21	—	—	12	21	29	35	37
	Azimuth	June 21	111	104	99	92	84	67	0
		Mar–Sept 21	90	83	74	64	49	28	0
		Dec 21	—	60	54	44	32	17	0
34	Altitude	June 21	13	25	37	50	62	74	79
		Mar–Sept 21	—	12	25	36	46	53	56
		Dec 21	—	—	9	18	26	31	33
	Azimuth	June 21	110	103	95	90	78	58	0
		Mar–Sept 21	90	82	72	61	46	26	0
		Dec. 21	—	—	54	43	30	16	0
38	Altitude	June 21	14	26	37	49	61	71	75
		Mar–Sept 21	—	12	23	34	43	50	52
		Dec 21	—	—	7	16	23	27	28
	Azimuth	June 21	109	101	90	83	70	46	0
		Mar–Sept 21	90	81	71	58	43	24	0
		Dec 21	—	—	54	43	30	16	0
42	Altitude	June 21	16	26	38	49	60	68	71
		Mar–Sept 21	—	11	22	32	40	46	48
		Dec 21	—	—	4	13	19	23	25
	Azimuth	June 21	108	99	89	78	63	39	0
		Mar–Sept 21	90	80	69	56	41	22	0
		Dec 21	—	—	53	42	29	15	0
46	Altitude	June 21	17	27	37	48	57	65	67
		Mar–Sept 21	—	10	20	30	37	42	44
		Dec 21	—	—	2	10	15	20	21
	Azimuth	June 21	107	97	88	74	58	34	0
		Mar–Sept 21	90	79	67	54	39	21	0
		Dec 21	—	—	52	41	28	14	0
48	Altitude	June 21	17	27	37	47	56	63	65
		Mar–Sept 21	—	10	20	29	36	40	42
		Dec 21	—	—	1	8	14	17	19
	Azimuth	June 21	106	95	85	72	55	31	0
		Mar–Sept 21	90	79	67	53	38	20	0
		Dec 21	—	—	52	41	28	14	0

[a]Solar time and clock time do not usually coincide. They are related by the equation of time (see Section 6.2).

D.2 SUNPEG CHARTS FOR 28, 32, 36, 40, 44, 48, AND 52° N LATITUDES



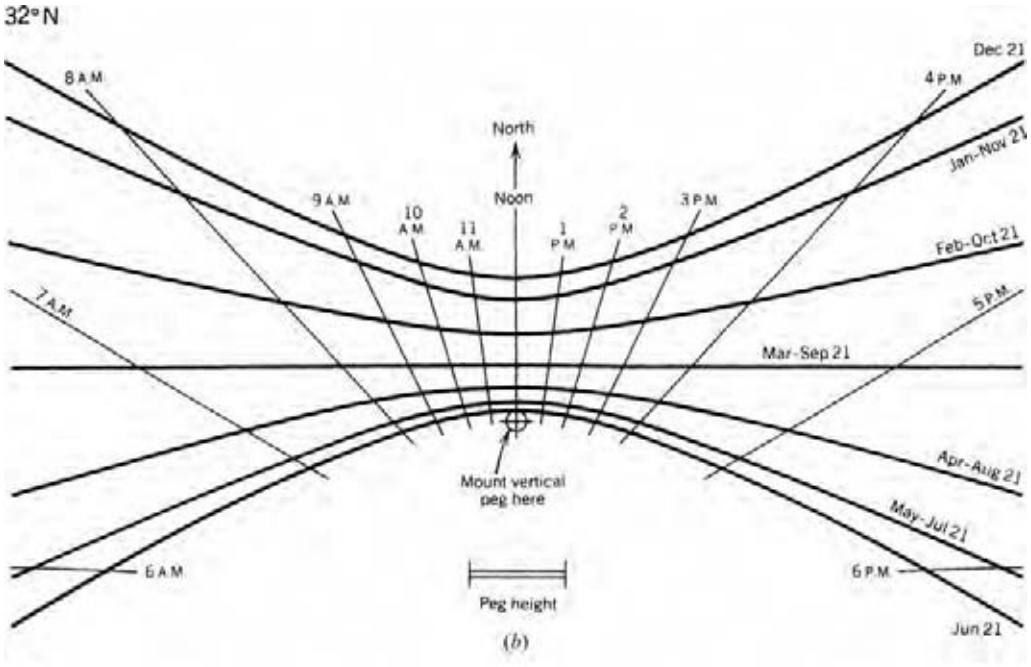
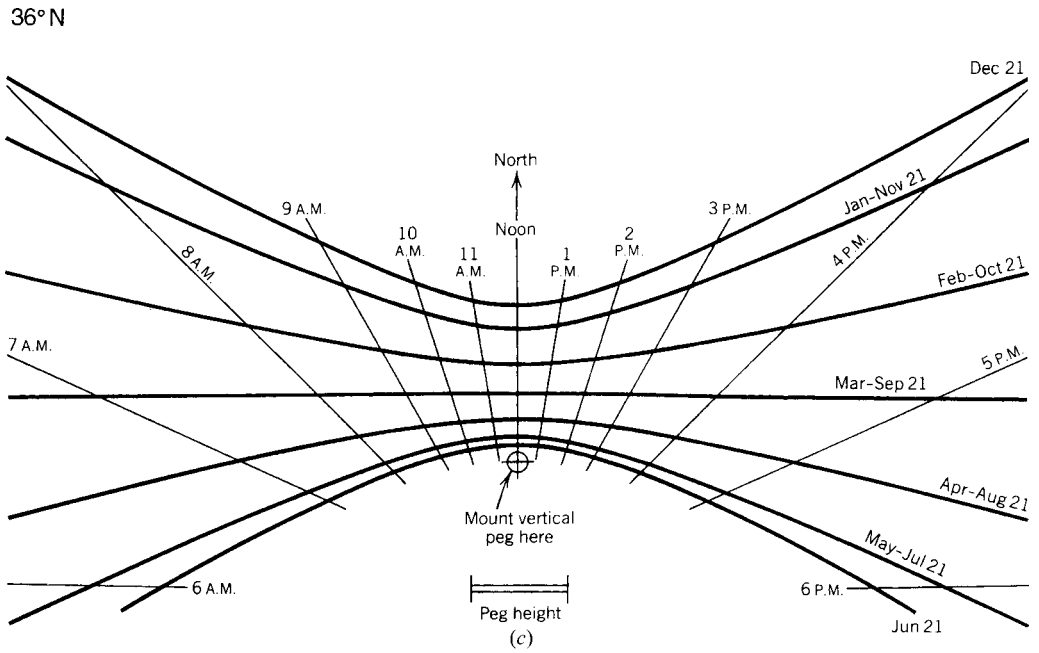
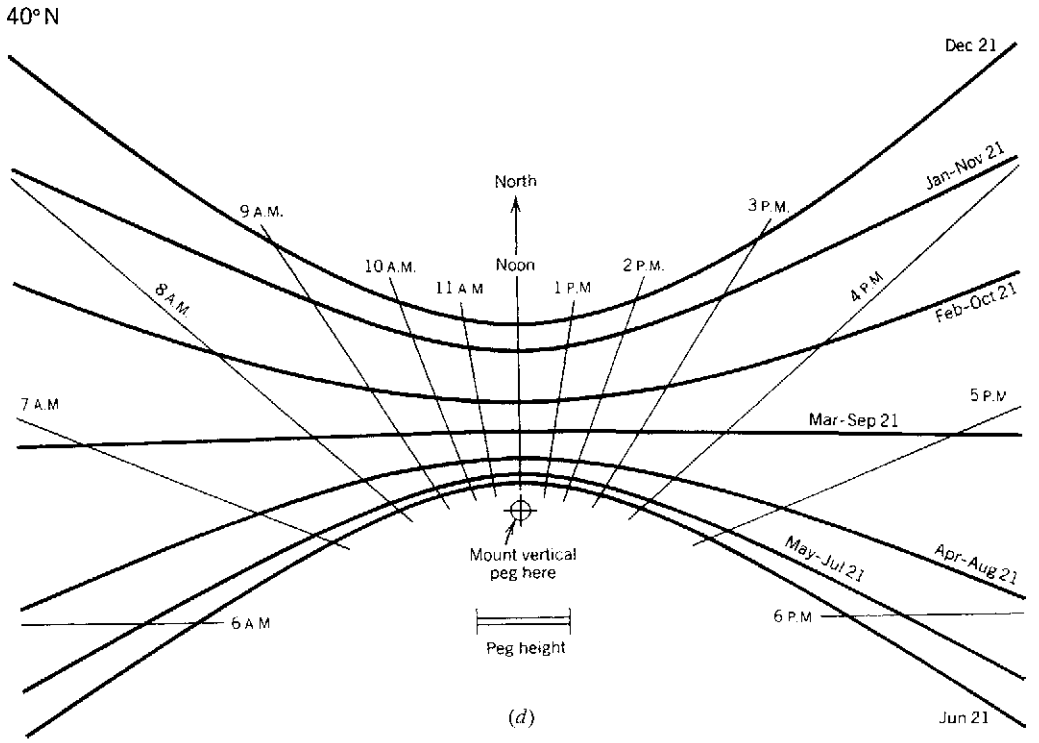


Fig. D.1 *(a–g) Sunpeg shadow charts. These charts show the exact positions of solar radiation and shadow on a model of any scale, on any date, at any time of day between shortly after sunrise and shortly before sunset. Latitudes as indicated in the upper-left corner of each chart. See Chapter 6 for instructions on the use of these charts.*

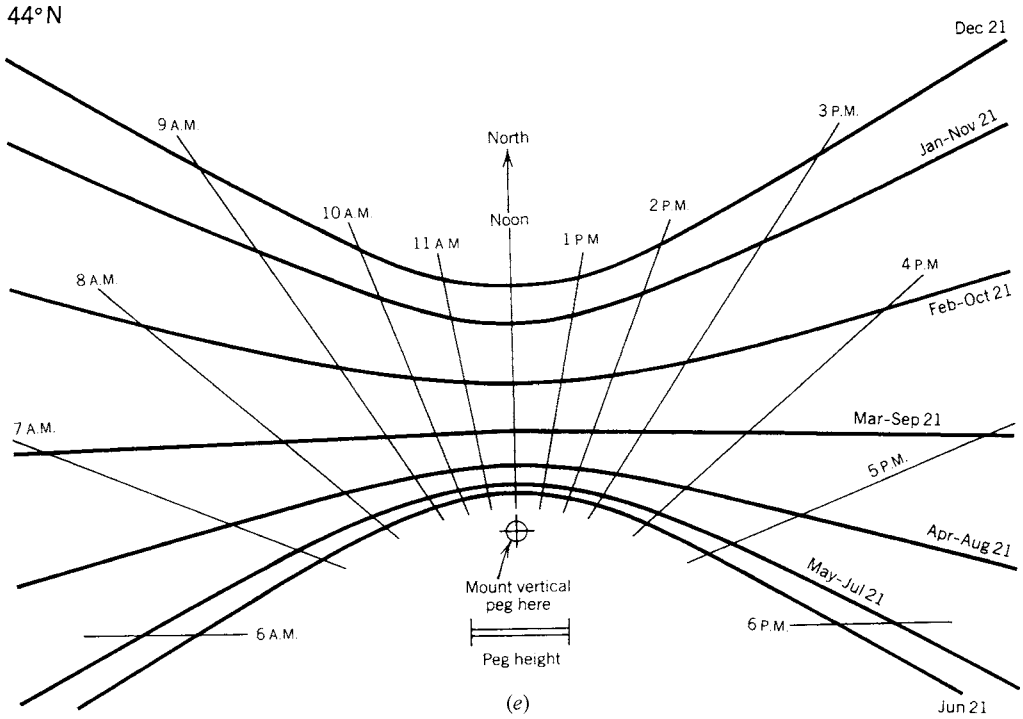


(c)

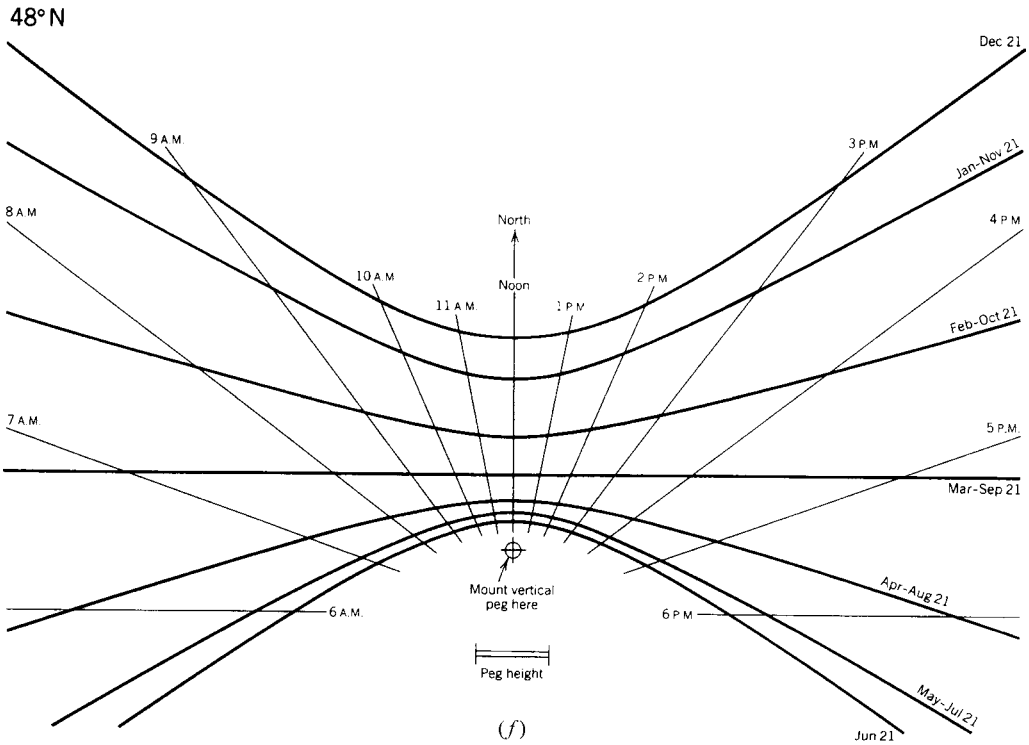


(d)

Fig. D.1 *(continued)*

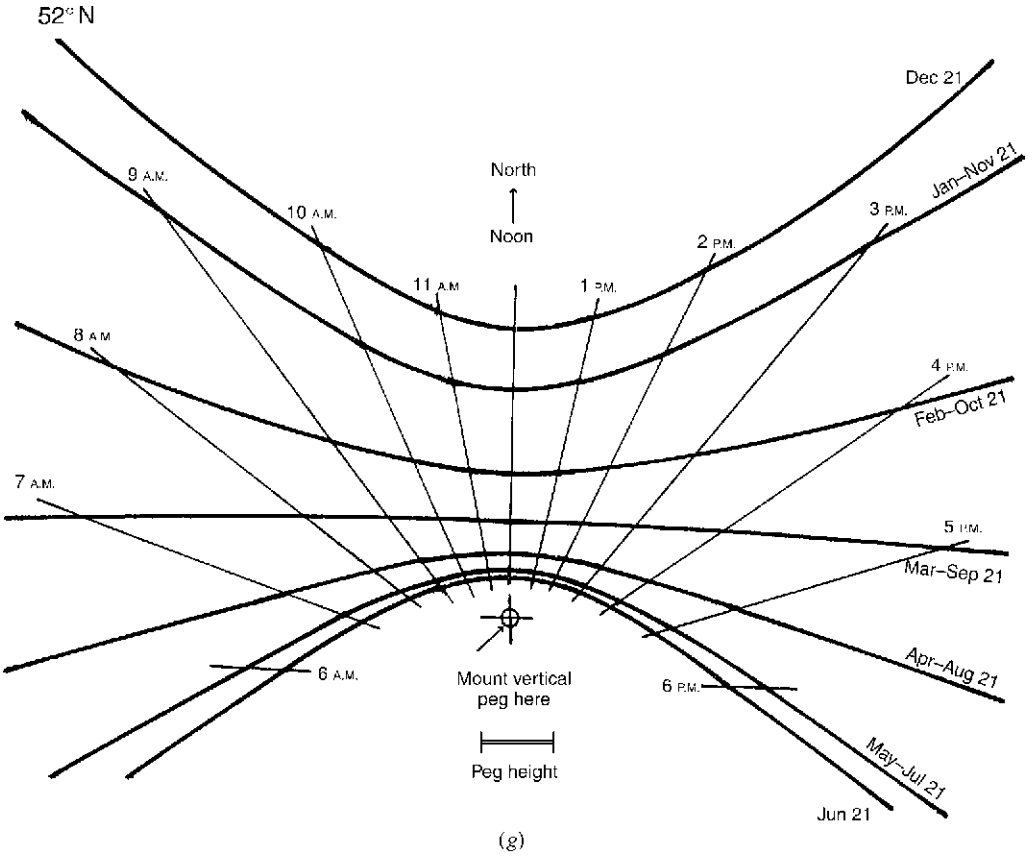


(*e*)



(*f*)

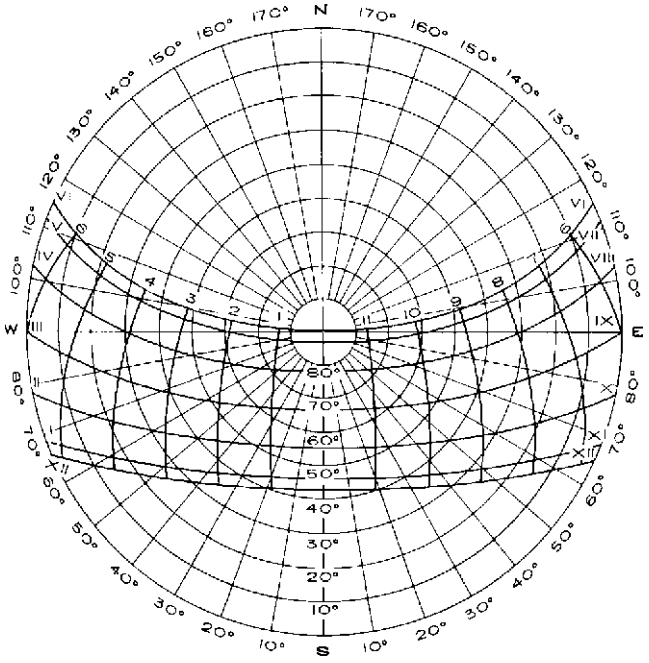
Fig. D.1 *(continued)*



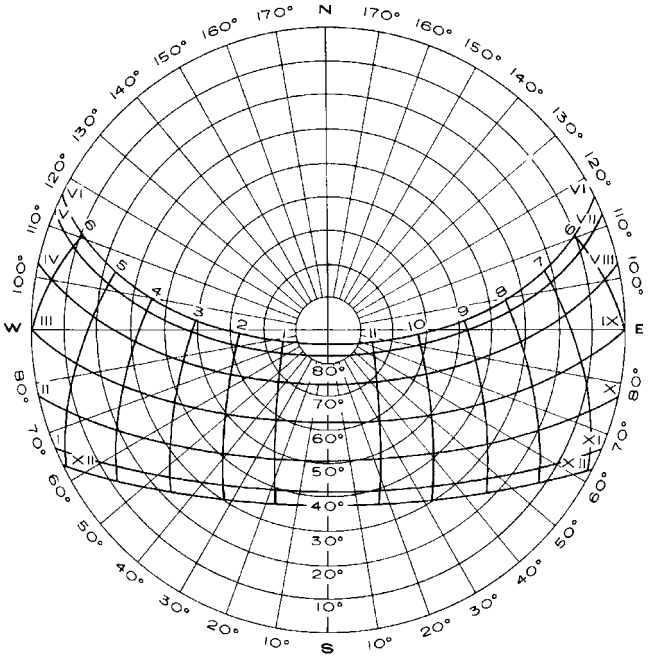
(*g*)

Fig. D.1 *(continued)*

D.3 HORIZONTAL PROJECTION (EQUIDISTANT) SUNPATH CHARTS FOR 24, 28, 32, 36, 40, 44, 48, AND 52° N LATITUDES

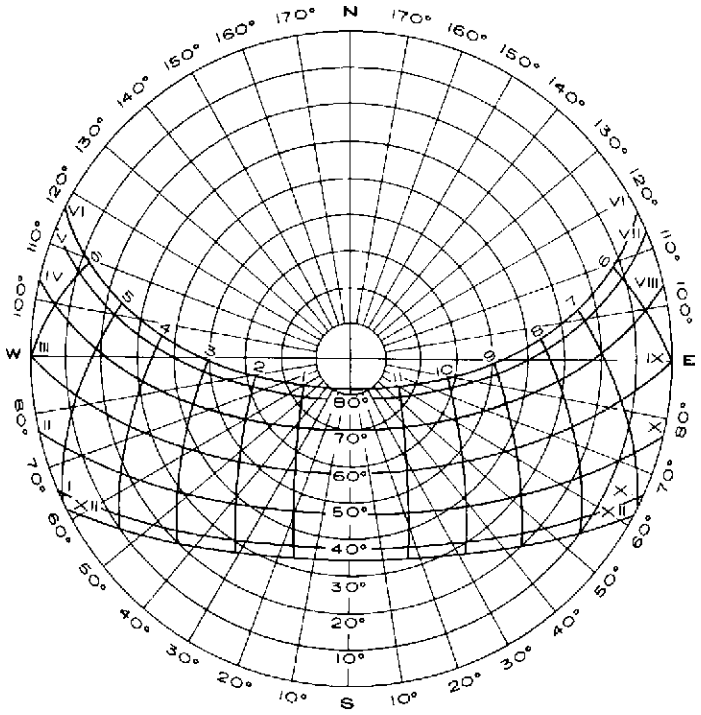


(*a*) **24° N LATITUDE**

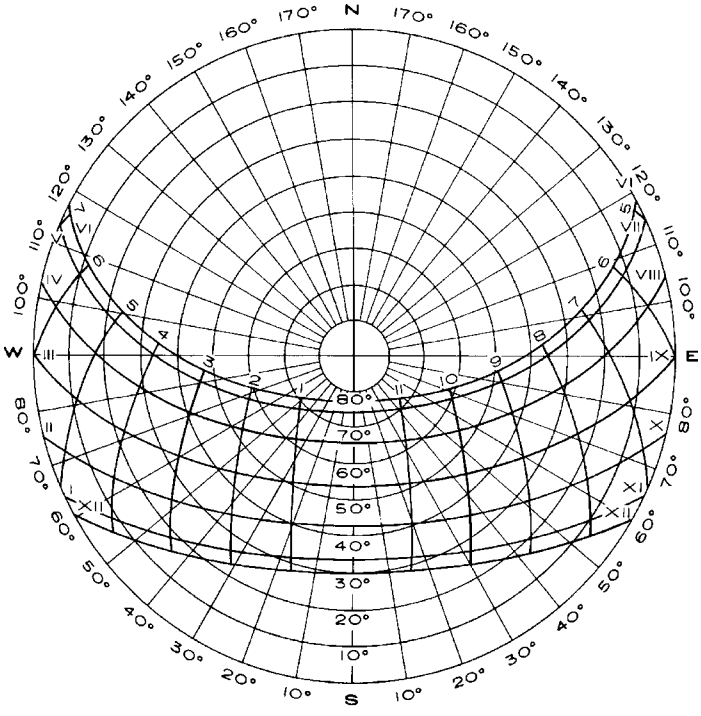


(*b*) **28° N LATITUDE**

Fig. D.2 (a–h) *Set of horizontal projection (equidistant) sunpath charts at 4° latitude intervals. Latitudes as indicated below each chart. (Reprinted with permission from* Architectural Graphic Standards*, 8th ed.; © 1988 by John Wiley & Sons, Publishers.)*

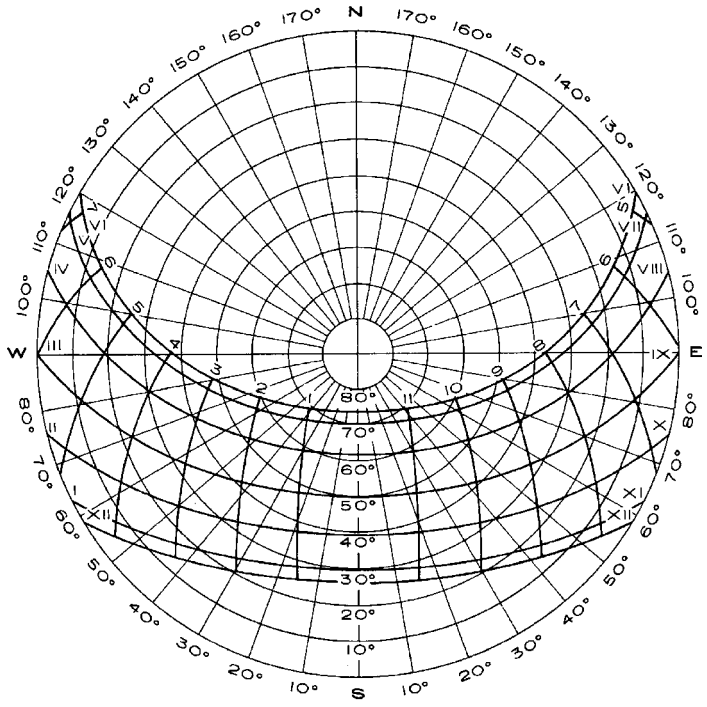


(*c*) **32° N LATITUDE**

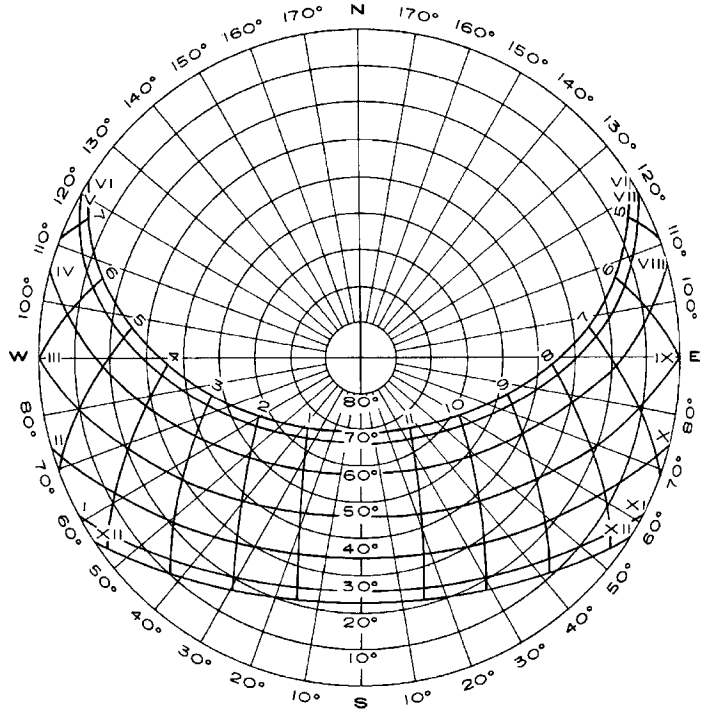


(*d*) **36° N LATITUDE**

Fig. D.2 *(continued)*

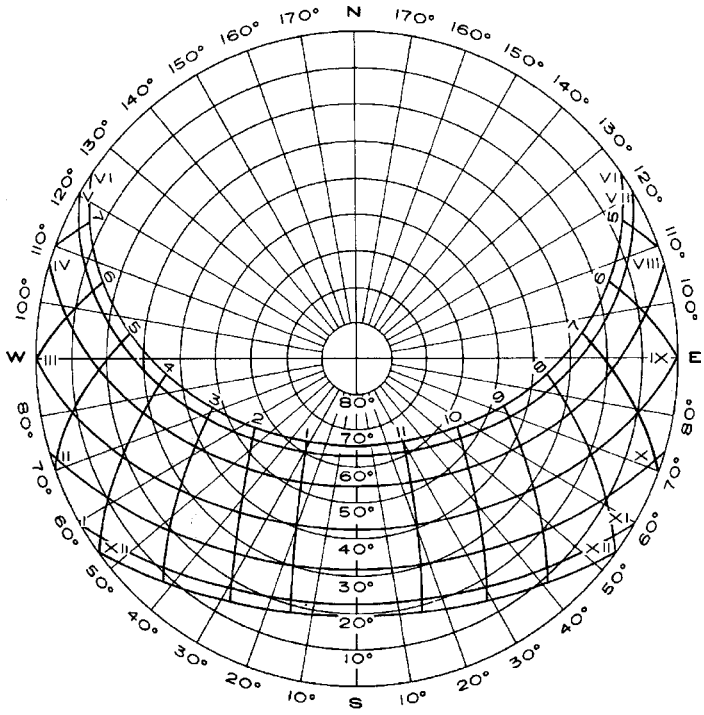


(*e*) **40° N LATITUDE**

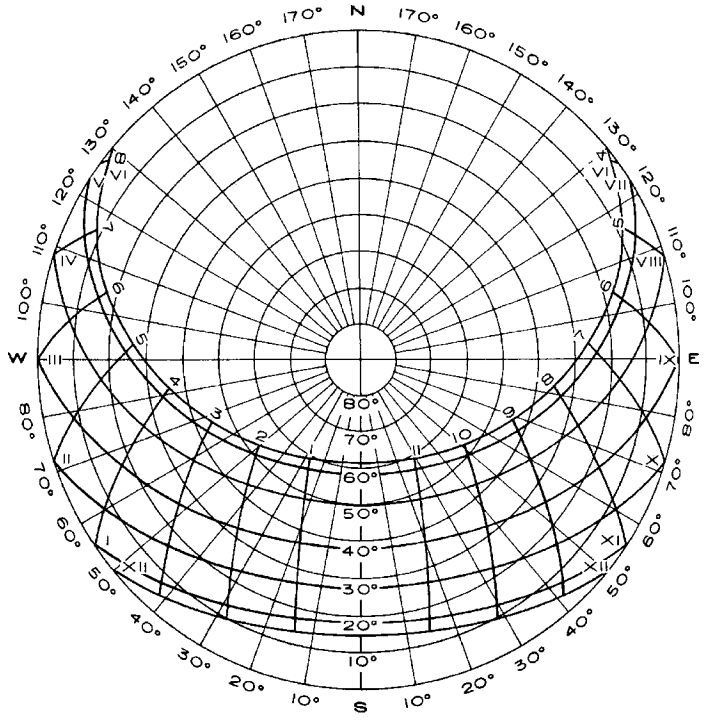


(*f*) **44° N LATITUDE**

Fig. D.2 *(continued)*



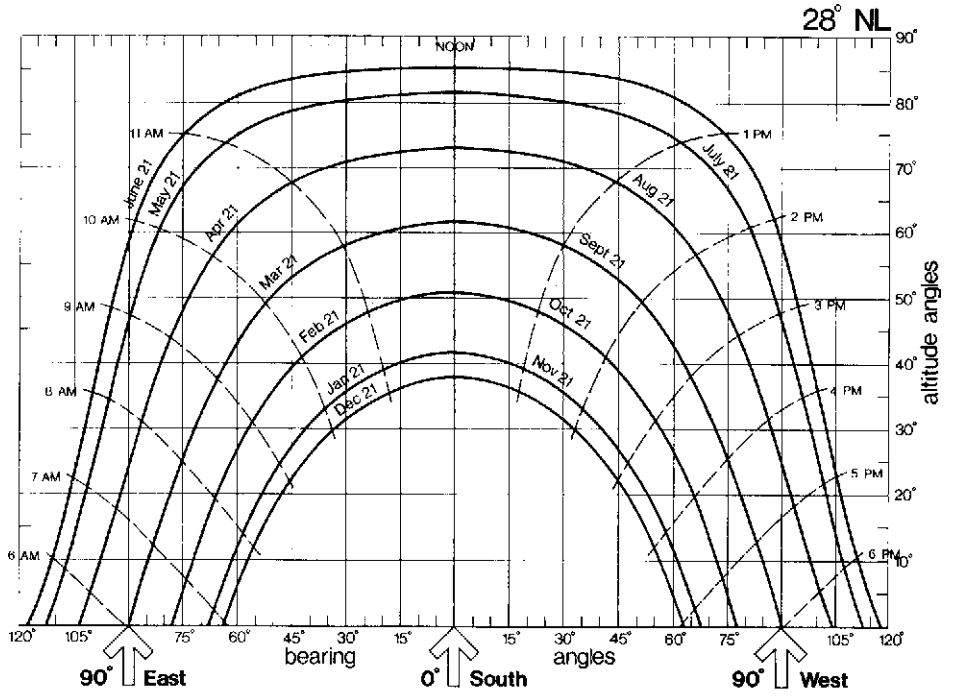
(*g*) **48° N LATITUDE**



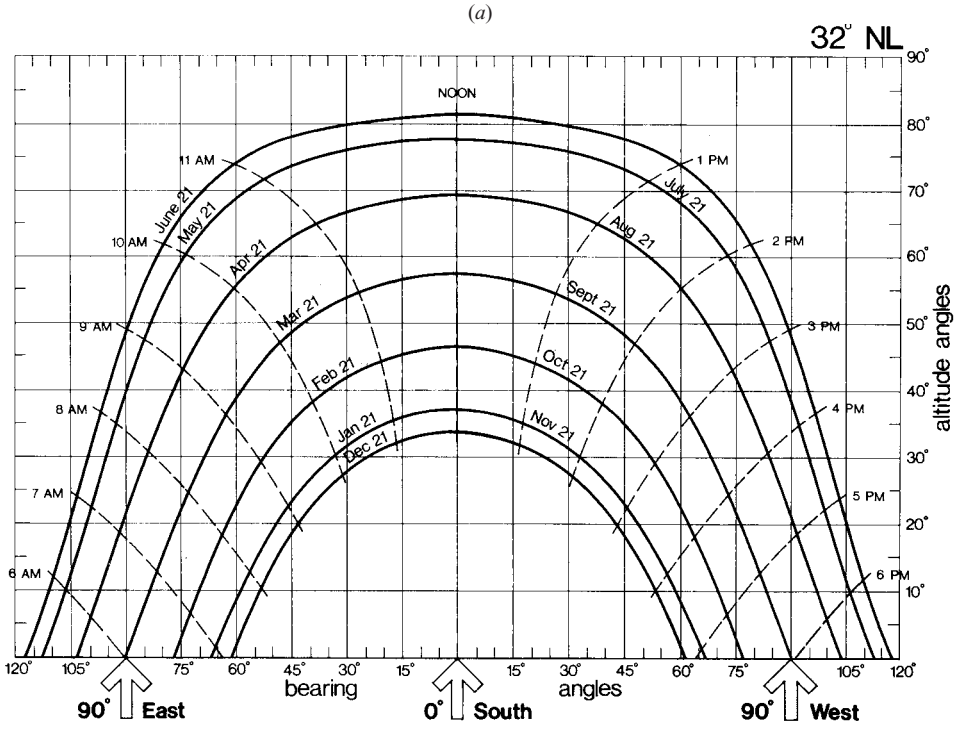
(*h*) **52° N LATITUDE**

Fig. D.2 *(continued)*

D.4 VERTICAL PROJECTION SUNPATH CHARTS FOR 28, 32, 36, 40, 44, 48, 52, AND 56° N LATITUDES

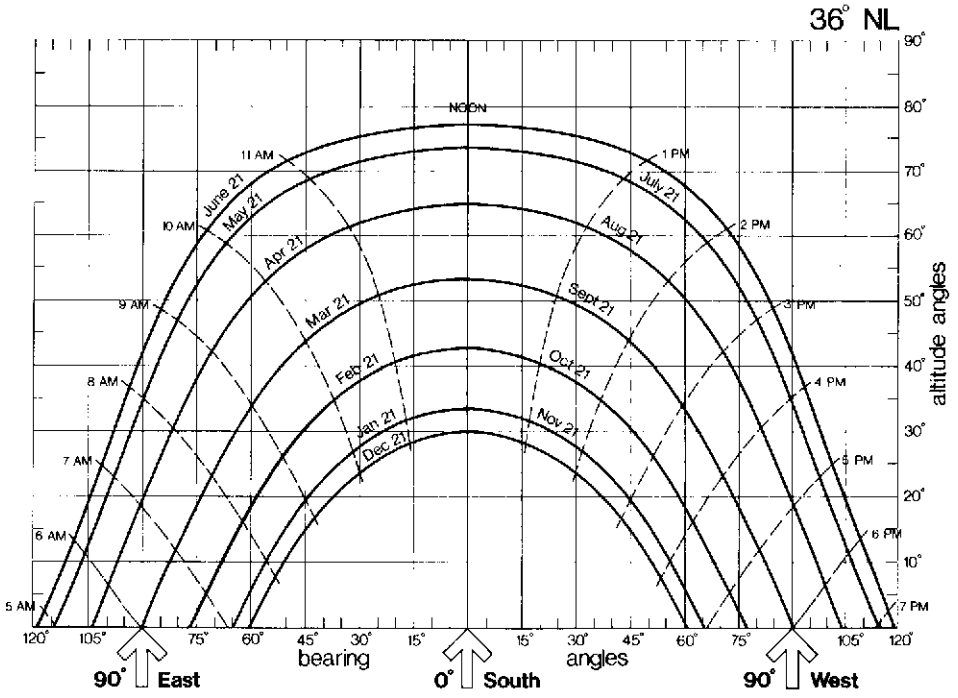


(*a*)

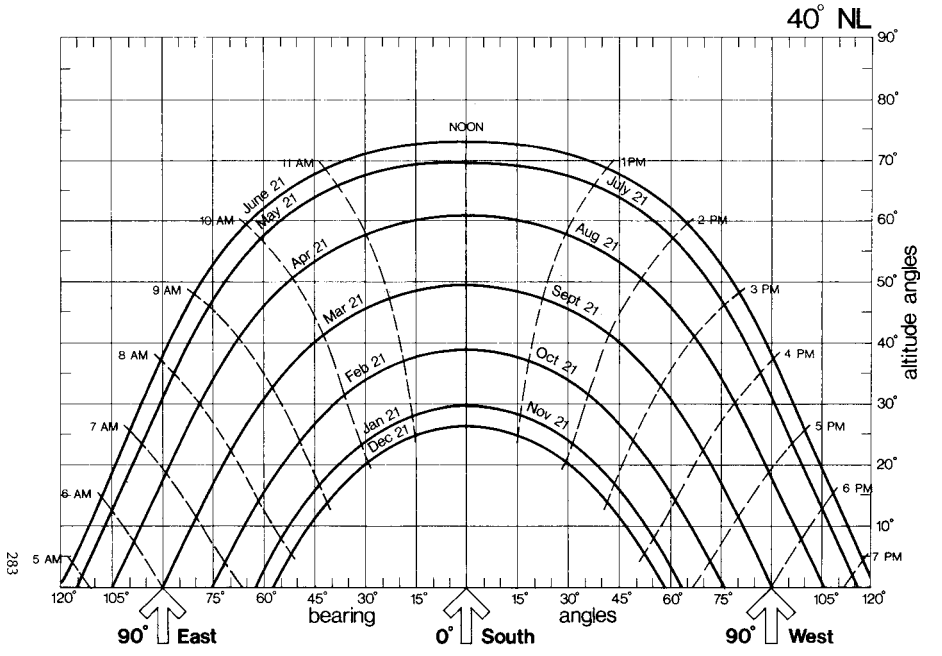


(*b*)

Fig. D.3 *(a–h) Set of vertical projection sunpath charts at 4° latitude intervals. Latitudes as indicated in the upper-right corner of each chart. (© Edward Mazria,* The Passive Solar Energy Book*; 1979 used with permission.)*

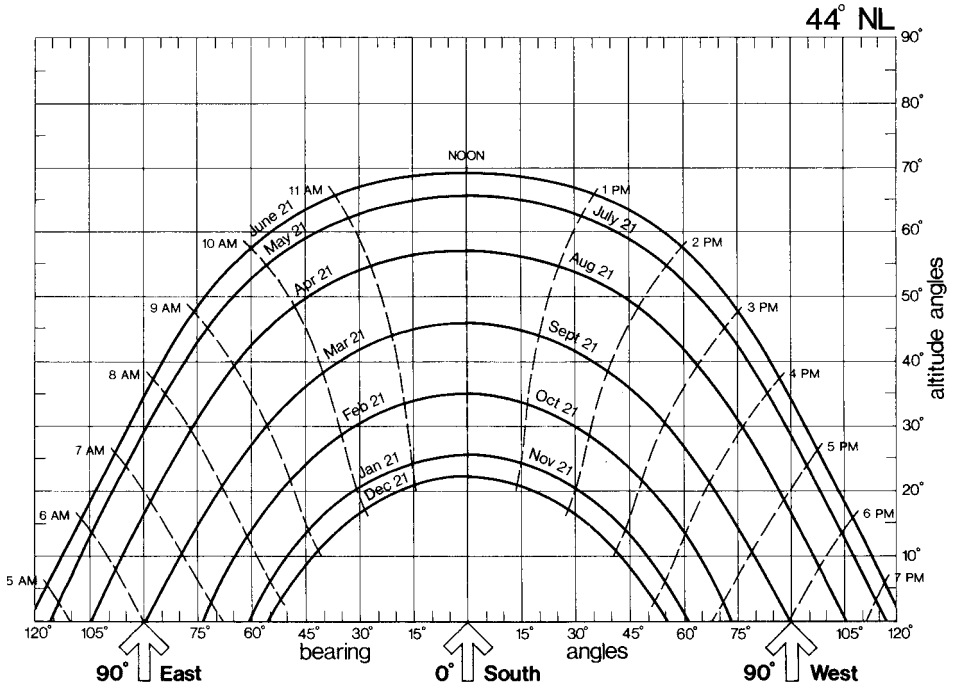


(*c*)

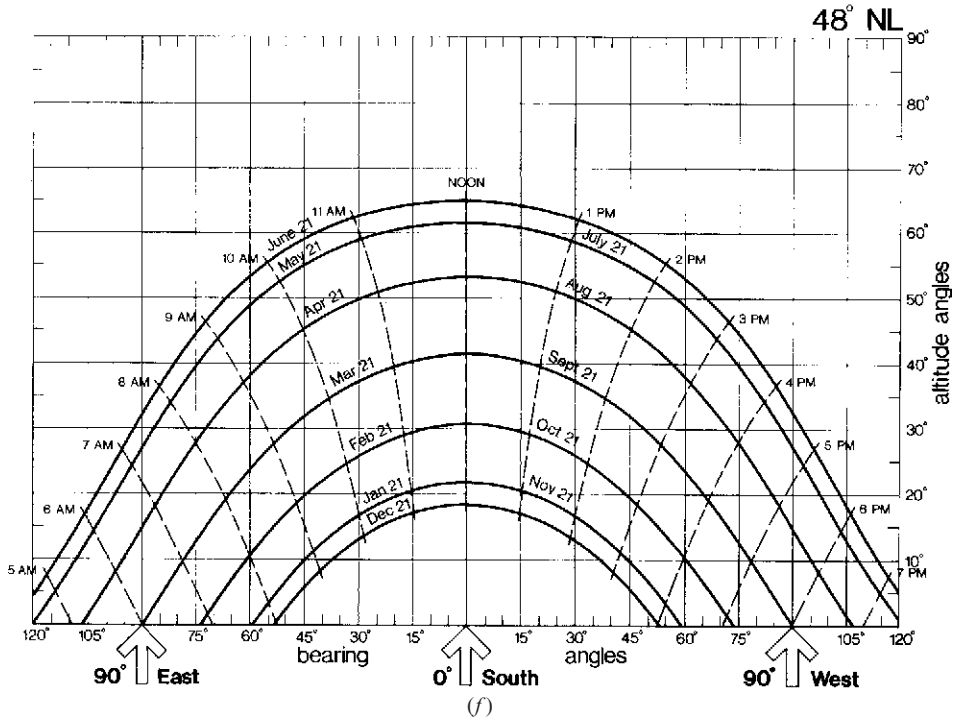


(*d*)

Fig. D.3 *(continued)*

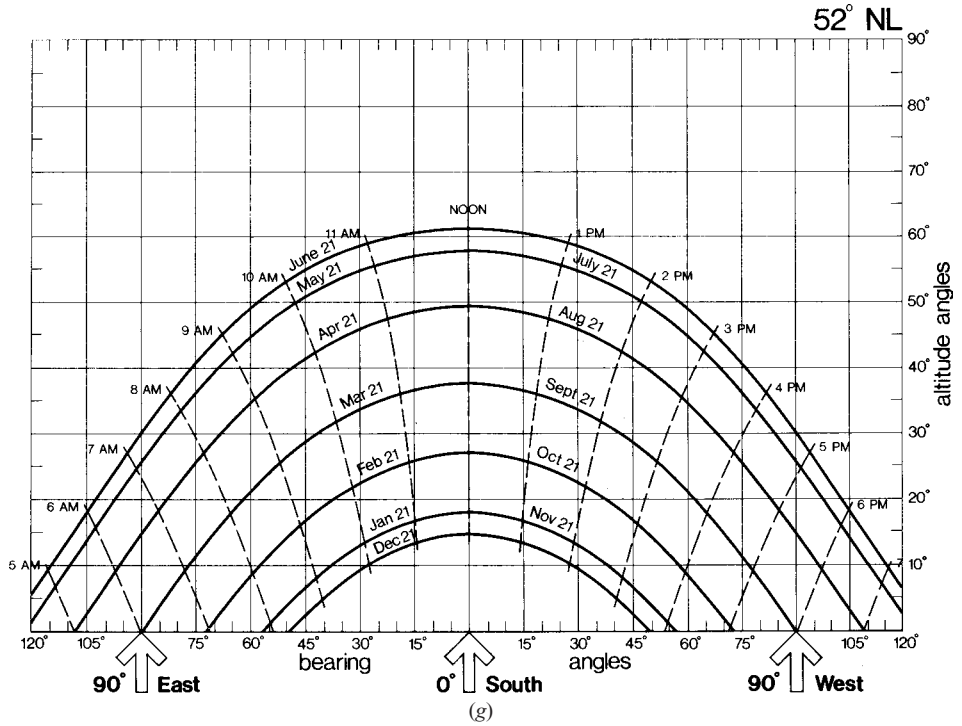


(*e*)

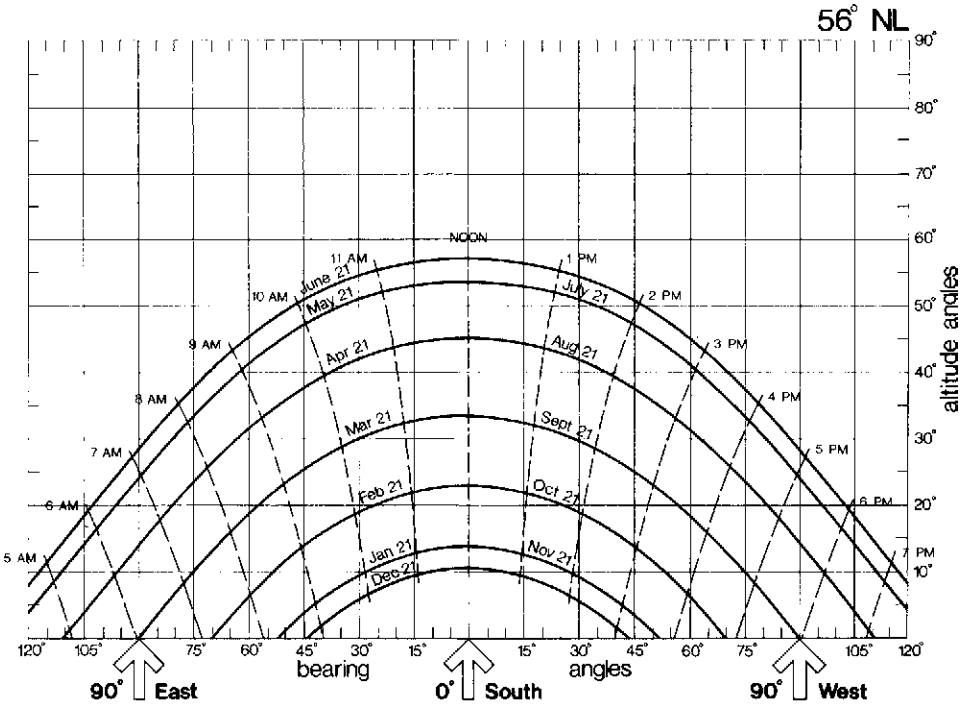


(*f*)

Fig. D.3 *(continued)*



(*g*)



(*h*)

Fig. D.3 *(continued)*

APPENDIX E

Thermal Properties of Materials and Assemblies

The tables in this appendix provide information on thermal (and occasionally visual) properties for a range of generic building materials and assemblies. The information provided herein would typically be used early in the design process before specific products have been selected and/or to determine the properties of assemblies that are fabricated from generic materials (such as gypsum wallboard, bricks, and concrete masonry units). When specific products (such as insulations, windows, or skylights) have been selected for use, data for those specific materials and assemblies should be obtained from appropriate manufacturers' resources (catalogs or websites) rather than from these tables.

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials

TABLE E.2 Thermal Properties of Alternative Building and Insulating Materials

TABLE E.3 Thermal Properties of Surface Air Films and Air Spaces

TABLE E.4 Thermal Resistances of Plane Air Spaces (I-P Units)

TABLE E.5 Thermal Resistances of Plane Air Spaces (SI Units)

TABLE E.6 U-Factors for Common Wall, Roof, and Floor Assemblies

TABLE E.7 U-Factors for Walls in Passive Solar Heating Systems

TABLE E.8 Effective R-Values for Wall, Roof, and Floor Systems with Steel Framing

TABLE E.9 Comparison of U-Factors for Framed Walls and Structural Insulated Panels (SIP)

TABLE E.10 Transmission Coefficients (U-Factors) for Wood and Steel Doors

TABLE E.11 Heat Loss Coefficients (F_2) for Slab-on-Grade Floors

TABLE E.12 Heat Flow Coefficients (F_2) for Slab-on-Grade Floors with Various Insulation Strategies

TABLE E.13 Heat Flow through Below-Grade Walls and Floors

TABLE E.14 U-Factors of Representative Window Assemblies

TABLE E.15 Representative Window Characteristics

TABLE E.16 Representative Skylight U-Factors

TABLE E.17 Solar Heat Gain Coefficients (SHGC) for Plastic Domed Horizontal Skylights

TABLE E.18 Solar Optical Properties of Representative Glazings and Window Assemblies

TABLE E.19 Solar Optical Properties of Transparent Plastics

TABLE E.20 Approximate Shading Coefficients (SC) of External Shading Devices

TABLE E.21 Shading Coefficients (SC) for Louvered Sun Screens

TABLE E.22 Performance Characteristics of Adjustable Sunshading

TABLE E.23 Shading Coefficients (SC) for Glazing with Integral or Interior Shading

TABLE E.24 Shading Coefficients (SC) for Single and Insulating Glass with Draperies

TABLE E.25 Minimum Ventilation Rates in Breathing Zone (for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential)

TABLE E.26 Recommended Ventilation and Exhaust Air Requirements—Low-Rise Residential

TABLE E.27 Estimated Overall Infiltration Rates for Small Buildings

TABLE E.28 Approximate Infiltration through Doors and Windows of Small Buildings

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a]

Part A. I-P Units							
					I-P Resistance[c] (R)		
Description		**Density lb/ft³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F**	**Conductance (C) Btu h/ ft² °F**	**Per Inch Thickness (1/k) °F ft² h Btu-in.**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) °F ft² h Btu**	**Specific Heat Btu/ lb °F**
Building Board							
Asbestos–cement board		120	4.0	—	0.25	—	0.24
Asbestos–cement board	0.125 in.	120	—	33.00	—	0.03	
Asbestos–cement board	0.25 in.	120	—	16.50	—	0.06	
Gypsum or plaster board	0.375 in.	50	—	3.10	—	0.32	0.26
Gypsum or plaster board	0.5 in.	50	—	2.22	—	0.45	
Gypsum or plaster board	0.625 in.	50	—	1.78	—	0.56	
Plywood (Douglas fir)[d]		34	0.80	—	1.25	—	0.29
Plywood (Douglas fir)	0.25 in.	34	—	3.20	—	0.31	
Plywood (Douglas fir)	0.375 in.	34	—	2.13	—	0.47	
Plywood (Douglas fir)	0.5 in.	34	—	1.60	—	0.62	
Plywood (Douglas fir)	0.625 in.	34	—	1.29	—	0.77	
Plywood or wood panels	0.75 in.	34	—	1.07	—	0.93	0.29
Vegetable fiber board							
Sheathing, regular density[e]	0.5 in.	18	—	0.76	—	1.32	0.31
	0.78125 in.	18	—	0.49	—	2.06	
Sheathing intermediate density[e]	0.5 in.	22	—	0.92	—	1.09	0.31
Nail-base sheathing[e]	0.5 in.	25	—	0.94	—	1.06	0.31
Shingle backer	0.375 in.	18	—	1.06	—	0.94	0.31
Shingle backer	0.3125 in.	18	—	1.28	—	0.78	
Sound-deadening board	0.5 in.	15	—	0.74	—	1.35	0.30
Tile and lay-in panels, plain or acoustic		18	0.40	—	2.50	—	0.14
					(17.0)		
	0.5 in.	18	—	0.80	—	1.25	
	0.75 in.	18	—	0.53	—	1.89	
Laminated paperboard		30	0.50	—	2.00	—	0.33
					(13.9)		
Homogeneous board from repulped paper		30	0.50	—	2.00	—	0.28
				(13.9)			
Hardboard[e]							
Medium density		50	0.73	—	1.37	—	0.31
High-density, service-tempered grade and service grade		55	0.82	—	1.22	—	0.32
High-density, standard-tempered grade		63	1.00	—	1.00	—	0.32
Particle board[e]							
Low density		37	0.71	—	1.41	—	0.31
Medium density		50	0.94	—	1.06	—	0.31
High density		62	0.5	1.18	—	0.85	—
							1.30
Underlayment	0.625 in.	40	—	1.22	—	0.82	0.29

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part A. I-P Units							
					I-P Resistance[c] (R)		
Description		**Density lb/ft³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F**	**Conductance (C) Btu h/ ft² °F**	**Per Inch Thickness (1/k) °F ft² h Btu-in.**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) °F ft² h Btu**	**Specific Heat Btu/ lb °F**
Waferboard		37	0.63	—	1.59	—	—
			—				
Wood subfloor	0.75 in	—	—	1.06	—	0.94	0.33
			6.0				
Building Membrane							
Vapor—permeable felt	—	—	16.70	—	0.06		—
Vapor—seal, 2 layers of mopped 15-lb felt	—	—	8.35	—	0.12		—
			47.4				
Vapor—seal, plastic film	—	—	—	—	Negl.		—
Finish Flooring Materials							
Carpet and fibrous pad	—	—	0.48	—	2.08	0.34	—
Carpet and rubber pad	—	—	0.81	—	1.23	0.33	—
Cork tile	0.125 in.	—	—	3.60	—	0.28	0.48
Terrazzo	1 in.	—	—	12.50	—	0.08	0.19
Tile—asphalt, linoleum, vinyl, rubber		—	—	20.00	—	0.05	0.30
Vinyl asbestos							0.24
Ceramic							0.19
Wood, hardwood finish	0.75 in.	—	—	1.47	—	0.68	
Insulating Materials							
Blanket and Batt[f,g]							
Mineral fiber, fibrous form processed from rock, slag, or glass							
Approx. 3–4 in.		0.4–2.0	—	0.091	—	11	
Approx. 3.5 in.		0.4–2.0	—	0.077	—	13	
Approx. 3.5 in.		1.2–1.6	—	0.067	—	15	
Approx. 5.5–6.5 in.		0.4–2.0	—	0.053	—	19	
Approx. 5.5 in.		0.6–1.0	—	0.048	—	21	
Approx. 6–7.5 in.		0.4–2.0	—	0.045	—	22	
Approx. 8.25–10 in.		0.4–2.0	—	0.033	—	30	
Approx. 10–13 in.		0.4–2.0	—	0.026	—	38	
Board and Slabs							
Cellular glass		8.0	0.33	—	3.03	—	0.18
Glass fiber, organic bonded		4.0–9.0	0.25	—	4.00	—	0.23
Expanded perlite, organic bonded		1.0	0.36	—	2.78	—	0.30
Expanded rubber (rigid)		4.5	0.22	—	4.55	—	0.40
Expanded polystyrene, extruded (smooth skin surface) (CFC-12 exp.)		1.8–3.5	0.20	—	5.00	—	0.29

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part A. I-P Units							
					I-P Resistance[c] (R)		
Description		**Density lb/ft³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F**	**Conductance (C) Btu h/ ft² °F**	**Per Inch Thickness (1/k) °F ft² h Btu-in.**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) °F ft² h Btu**	**Specific Heat Btu/ lb °F**
Expanded polystyrene, extruded (smooth skin surface) (HCFC-142b exp.)[h]		1.8–3.5	0.20	—	5.00	—	0.29
Expanded polystyrene, molded beads		1.0	0.26	—	3.85	—	—
Expanded polystyrene, molded beads		1.25	0.25	—	4.00	—	—
		1.5	0.24	—	4.17	—	—
		1.75	0.24	—	4.17	—	—
		2.0	0.23	—	4.35	—	—
Cellular polyurethane/ polyisocyanurate[i] (CFC-11 exp.) (unfaced)		1.5	0.16–0.18	—	6.25–5.56	—	0.38
Cellular polyisocyanurate[i] (CFC-11 exp.) (gas-permeable facers)		1.5–2.5	0.16–0.18	—	6.25–5.56	—	0.22
Cellular polyisocyanurate[i] (CFC-11 exp.) (gas-impermeable facers)		2.0	0.14	—	7.04	—	0.22
Cellular phenolic (closed cell) (CFC-11, CFC-113 exp.)[k]		3.0	0.12	—	8.20	—	—
Cellular phenolic (open cell)		1.8–2.2	0.23	—	4.40	—	—
Mineral fiber with resin binder		15.0	0.29	—	3.45	—	0.17
Mineral fiber board, wet felted							
Core or roof insulation		16–17	0.34	—	2.94	—	—
Acoustical tile		18.0	0.35	—	2.86	—	0.19
Acoustical tile		21.0	0.37	—	2.70	—	—
Mineral fiber board, wet molded							
Acoustical tile[l]		23.0	0.42	—	2.38	—	0.14
Wood or cane fiber board							
Acoustical tile[l]	0.5 in.	—	—	0.80	—	1.25	0.31
Acoustical tile[l]	0.75 in.	—	—	0.53	—	1.89	—
Interior finish (plank, tile)		15.0	0.35	—	2.86	—	0.32
Cement fiber slabs (shredded wood with Portland cement binder)		25–27.0	0.50–0.53		2.0–1.89	—	
Cement fiber slabs (shredded wood with magnesia oxysulfide binder)		22.0	0.57	—	1.75	—	0.31
Loose Fill							
Cellulosic insulation (milled paper or wood pulp)		2.3–3.2	0.27–0.32	—	3.70–3.13	—	0.33

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part A. I-P Units

Description		Density lb/ft³	Conductivity[b] (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F	Conductance (C) Btu h/ ft² °F	I-P Resistance[c] (R) Per Inch Thickness (1/k) °F ft² h Btu-in.	I-P Resistance[c] (R) For Thickness Listed (1/C) °F ft² h Btu	Specific Heat Btu/ lb °F
Perlite, expanded		2.0–4.1	0.27–0.31	—	3.7–3.3	—	0.26
		4.1–7.4	0.31–0.36	—	3.3–2.8	—	—
		7.4–11.0	0.36–0.42	—	2.8–2.4	—	—
Mineral fiber (rock, slag, or glass)[g]							
Approx. 3.75–5 in.		0.6–2.0	—	—	—	11.0	0.17
Mineral fiber (rock, slag, or glass)[g]							
Approx. 6.5–8.75 in.		0.6–2.0	—	—	—	19.0	—
Approx. 7.5–10 in.		0.6–2.0	—	—	—	22.0	—
Approx. 10.3–13.7 in.		0.6–2.0	—	—	—	30.0	—
Mineral fiber (rock, slag, or glass)[g]		2.0–3.5	—	—	—	12.0–14.0	—
Approx. 3.5 in. (closed sidewall application)							
Vermiculite, exfoliated		7.0–8.2	0.47	—	2.13	—	0.32
		4.0–6.0	0.44	—	2.27	—	—
Spray Applied							
Polyurethane foam		1.5–2.5	0.16–0.18	—	6.25–5.56	—	—
Ureaformaldehyde foam		0.7–1.6	0.22–0.28	—	4.55–3.57	—	—
Cellulosic fiber		3.5–6.0	0.29–0.34	—	3.45–2.94	—	—
Glass fiber		3.5–4.5	0.26–0.27	—	3.85–3.70	—	—
Reflective Insulation							
Reflective material (ε < 0.5) in center of ¾-in. cavity forms two ⅛-in. vertical air spaces[m]		—	—	0.31	—	3.2	—
Metals							
(See *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*)							
Roofing							
Asbestos–cement shingles		120	—	4.76	—	0.21	0.24
Asphalt roll roofing		70	—	6.50	—	0.15	0.36
Asphalt shingles		70	—	2.27	—	0.44	0.30
Built-up roofing	0.375 in.	70	—	3.00	—	0.33	0.35
Slate	0.5 in.	—	—	20.00	—	0.05	0.30
Wood shingles, plain and plastic film faced		—	—	1.06	—	0.94	0.31
Plastering Materials							
Cement plaster, sand aggregate		116	5.0	—	0.20	—	0.20
Sand aggregate	0.375 in.	—	—	13.3	—	0.08	0.20
Sand aggregate	0.75 in.	—	—	6.66	—	0.15	0.20
Gypsum plaster							
Lightweight aggregate	0.5 in.	45	—	3.12	—	0.32	—
Lightweight aggregate	0.625 in.	45	—	2.67	—	0.39	—
Lightweight aggregate on metal lath	0.75 in.	—		2.13	—	0.47	—

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part A. I-P Units							
					I-P Resistance[c] (R)		
Description		**Density lb/ft³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F**	**Conductance (C) Btu h/ ft² °F**	**Per Inch Thickness (1/k) °F ft² h Btu-in.**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) °F ft² h Btu**	**Specific Heat Btu/ lb °F**
Perlite aggregate		45	1.5	—	0.67	—	0.32
Sand aggregate		105	5.6	—	0.18	—	0.20
Sand aggregate	0.5 in.	105	—	11.10	—	0.09	—
Sand aggregate	0.625 in.	105	—	9.10	—	0.11	—
Sand aggregate on metal lath	0.75 in.	—	—	7.70	—	0.13	—
Vermiculite aggregate		45	1.7	—	0.59	—	—
Masonry Materials							
Masonry Units							
Brick, fired clay		150	8.4–10.2	—	0.12–0.10	—	—
		140	7.4–9.0	—	0.14–0.11	—	—
		130	6.4–7.8	—	0.16–0.12	—	—
		120	5.6–6.8	—	0.18–0.15	—	0.19
		110	4.9–5.9	—	0.20–0.17	—	—
		100	4.2–5.1	—	0.24–0.20	—	—
		90	3.6–4.3	—	0.28–0.24	—	—
		80	3.0–3.7	—	0.33–0.27	—	—
		70	2.5–3.1	—	0.40–0.33	—	—
Clay tile, hollow							
1 cell deep	3 in.	—	—	1.25	—	0.80	0.21
1 cell deep	4 in.	—	—	0.90	—	1.11	—
2 cells deep	6 in.	—	—	0.66	—	1.52	—
2 cells deep	8 in.	—	—	0.54	—	1.85	—
2 cells deep	10 in.	—	—	0.45	—	2.22	—
3 cells deep	12 in.	—	—	0.40	—	2.50	—
Concrete blocks[n,o]							
Limestone aggregate							
8 in., 36 lb, 138 lb/ft³ concrete, 2 cores		—	—	—	—	—	—
Same with perlite-filled cores		—	—	0.48	—	2.1	—
Limestone aggregate							
12 in., 55 lb, 138 lb/ft³ concrete, 2 cores		—	—	—	—	—	—
Same with perlite-filled cores		—	—	0.27	—	3.7	—
Normal weight aggregate (sand and gravel)							
8 in., 33–36 lb, 126–136 lb/ft³ concrete, 2 or 3 cores		—	—	0.90–1.03	—	1.11–0.97	0.22
Same with perlite-filled cores		—	—	0.50	—	2.0	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores		—	—	0.52–0.73	—	1.92–1.37	—
12 in., 50 lb, 125 lb/ft³ concrete, 2 cores		—	—	0.81	—	1.23	0.22

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part A. I-P Units						
				I-P Resistance[c] (R)		
Description	**Density lb/ft³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F**	**Conductance (C) Btu h/ ft² °F**	**Per Inch Thickness (1/k) °F ft² h Btu-in.**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) °F ft² h Btu**	**Specific Heat Btu/ lb °F**
Medium-weight aggregate (combinations of normal-weight and lightweight aggregate)						
8 in., 26–29 lb, 97–112 lb/ft³ concrete, 2 or 3 cores	—	—	0.58–0.78	—	1.71–1.28	—
Same with perlite-filled cores	—	—	0.27–0.44	—	3.7–2.3	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores	—	—	0.30	—	3.3	—
Same with molded EPS (beads) filled cores	—	—	0.32	—	3.2	—
Same with molded EPS inserts in cores	—	—	0.37	—	2.7	—
Lightweight aggregate (expanded shale, clay, slate or slag, pumice)						
6 in., 16–17 lb, 85–87 lb/ft³ concrete, 2 or 3 cores	—	—	0.52–0.61	—	1.93–1.65	—
Same with perlite-filled cores	—	—	0.24	—	4.2	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores	—	—	0.33	—	3.0	—
8 in., 19–22 lb, 72–86 lb/ft³ concrete	—	—	0.32–0.54	—	3.2–1.90	0.21
Same with perlite-filled cores	—	—	0.15–0.23	—	6.8–4.4	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores	—	—	0.19–0.26	—	5.3–3.9	—
Same with molded EPS (beads) filled cores	—	—	0.21	—	4.8	—
Same with UF foam-filled cores	—	—	0.22	—	4.5	—
Same with molded EPS inserts in cores	—	—	0.29	—	3.5	—
12 in., 32–36 lb, 80–90 lb/ft³ concrete, 2 or 3 cores	—	—	0.38–0.44	—	2.6–2.3	—
Same with perlite-filled cores	—	—	0.11–0.16	—	9.2–6.3	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores	—	—	0.17	—	5.8	—
Stone, lime, or sand	180	72	—	0.01	—	—
Quartzitic and sandstone	160	43	—	0.02	—	—
	140	24	—	0.04	—	—
	120	13	—	0.08	—	0.19

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part A. I-P Units						
				I-P Resistance[c] (R)		
Description	**Density lb/ft³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F**	**Conductance (C) Btu h/ ft² °F**	**Per Inch Thickness (1/k) °F ft² h Btu-in.**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) °F ft² h Btu**	**Specific Heat Btu/ lb °F**
Calcitic, dolomitic, limestone, marble, and granite	180	30	—	0.03	—	—
	160	22	—	0.05	—	—
	140	16	—	0.06	—	—
	120	11	—	0.09	—	0.19
	100	8	—	0.13	—	—
Gypsum partition tile						
3 × 12 × 30 in., solid	—	—	0.79	—	1.26	0.19
3 × 12 × 30 in., 4 cells	—	—	0.74	—	1.35	—
4 × 12 × 30 in., 3 cells	—	—	0.60	—	1.67	—
Concretes[o]						
Sand and gravel or stone aggregate concretes	150	10.0–20.0	—	0.10–0.05	—	—
(concretes with more than 50% quartz or quartzite sand have conductivities in the higher end of the range)	140	9.0–18.0	—	0.11–0.06	—	0.19–0.24
	130	7.0–13.0	—	0.14–0.08	—	—
Limestone concretes	140	11.1	—	0.09	—	—
	120	7.9	—	0.13	—	—
	100	5.5	—	0.18	—	—
Gypsum-fiber concrete (87.5% gypsum, 12.5% wood chips)	51	1.66	—	0.60	—	0.21
Cement/lime, mortar, and stucco	120	9.7	—	0.10	—	—
	100	6.7	—	0.15	—	—
	80	4.5	—	0.22	—	—
Lightweight aggregate concretes						
Expanded shale, clay, or slate; expanded slags; cinders; pumice (with density up to 100 lb/ft³); and scoria (sanded concretes have conductivities in the higher end of the range)	120	6.4–9.1	—	0.16–0.11	—	—
	100	4.7–6.2	—	0.21–0.16	—	0.20
	80	3.3–4.1	—	0.30–0.24	—	0.20
	60	2.1–2.5	—	0.48–0.40	—	—
	40	1.3	—	0.78	—	—
Perlite, vermiculite, and polystyrene beads	50	1.8–1.9	—	0.55–0.53	—	—
	40	1.4–1.5	—	0.71–0.67	—	0.15–0.23
	30	1.1	—	0.91	—	—
	20	0.8	—	1.25	—	—

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part A. I-P Units

Description	Density lb/ft³	Conductivity[b] (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F	Conductance (C) Btu h/ ft² °F	I-P Resistance[c] (R) Per Inch Thickness (1/k) °F ft² h Btu-in.	I-P Resistance[c] (R) For Thickness Listed (1/C) °F ft² h Btu	Specific Heat Btu/ lb °F
Foam concretes	120	5.4	—	0.19	—	—
	100	4.1	—	0.24	—	—
	80	3.0	—	0.33	—	—
	70	2.5	—	0.40	—	—
Foam concretes and cellular concretes	60	2.1	—	0.48	—	—
	40	1.4	—	0.71	—	—
	20	0.8	—	1.25	—	—
Siding Materials (on flat surface)						
Shingles						
Asbestos–cement	120	—	4.75	—	0.21	—
Wood, 16 in., 7.5-in. exposure	—	—	1.15	—	0.87	0.31
Wood, double, 16-in., 12-in. exposure	—	—	0.84	—	1.19	0.28
Wood, plus ins. backer board, 0.312 in.	—	—	0.71	—	1.40	0.31
Siding						
Asbestos–cement, 0.25 in. lapped	—	—	4.76	—	0.21	0.24
Asphalt roll siding	—	—	6.50	—	0.15	0.35
Asphalt insulating siding (0.5 in. bed.)	—	—	0.69	—	1.46	0.35
Hardboard siding, 0.4375 in.	—	—	1.49	—	0.67	0.28
Wood, drop, 1 × 8 in.	—	—	1.27	—	0.79	0.28
Wood, bevel, 0.5 × 8 in., lapped	—	—	1.23	—	0.81	0.28
Wood, bevel, 0.75 × 10 in., lapped	—	—	0.95	—	1.05	0.28
Wood, plywood, 0.375 in., lapped	—	—	1.69	—	0.59	0.29
Aluminum, steel, or vinyl[p,q] over sheathing						
Hollow-backed	—	—	1.64	—	0.61	0.29[q]
Insulating-board backed nominal 0.375 in.	—	—	0.55	—	1.82	0.32
Insulating-board backed nominal 0.375 in., foil-backed	—	—	0.34	—	2.96	—
Architectural (soda-lime float) glass	158	6.9	—	—	—	0.21
Woods (12% moisture content)[e,r]						
Hardwoods						0.39[s]
Oak	41.2–46.8	1.12–1.25	—	0.89–0.80	—	
Birch	42.6–45.4	1.16–1.22	—	0.87–0.82	—	
Maple	39.8–44.0	1.09–1.19	—	0.92–0.84	—	
Ash	38.4–41.9	1.06–1.14	—	0.94–0.88	—	

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part A. I-P Units						
				I-P Resistance[c] (R)		
Description	**Density lb/ft³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F**	**Conductance (C) Btu h/ ft² °F**	**Per Inch Thickness (1/k) °F ft² h Btu-in.**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) °F ft² h Btu**	**Specific Heat Btu/ lb °F**
Softwoods						0.39[s]
Southern pine	35.6–441.2	1.00–1.12	—	1.00–0.89	—	
Douglas fir-larch	33.5–36.3	0.95–1.01	—	1.06–0.99	—	
Southern cypress	31.4–32.1	0.90–0.92	—	1.11–1.09	—	
Hem-fir, spruce-pine-fir	24.5–31.4	0.74–0.90	—	1.35–1.11	—	
West Coast woods, cedars	21.7–31.4	0.68–0.90	—	1.48–1.11	—	
California redwood	24.5–28.0	0.74–0.82	—	1.35–1.22	—	

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part B. SI Units							
					SI Resistance[c] (R)		
Description		**Density kg/m³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) W/m K**	**Conductance (C) W/m² K**	**Per Meter Thickness (1/k) K m W**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) K m² W**	**Specific Heat kJ/ kg K**
Building Board							
Asbestos–cement board		1900	0.58	—	1.73	—	1.0
Asbestos–cement board	3.2 mm	1900	—	187.4	—	0.005	
Asbestos–cement board	6.4 mm	1900	—	93.7	—	0.011	
Gypsum or plaster board	9.5 mm	800	—	17.6	—	0.056	1.09
Gypsum or plaster board	12.7 mm	800	—	12.6	—	0.079	
Gypsum or plaster board	15.9 mm	800	—	10.1	—	0.099	
Plywood (Douglas fir)[d]		540	0.12	—	8.66	—	1.21
Plywood (Douglas fir)	6.4 mm	540	—	18.2	—	0.055	
Plywood (Douglas fir)	9.5 mm	540	—	12.1	—	0.083	
Plywood (Douglas fir)	12.7 mm	540	—	9.1	—	0.11	
Plywood (Douglas fir)	15.9 mm	540	—	7.3	—	0.14	
Plywood or wood panels	19.0 mm	540	—	6.1	—	0.16	1.21
Vegetable fiber board							
Sheathing, regular density[e]	12.7 mm	290	—	4.3	—	0.23	1.3
	19.8 mm.	290	—	2.8	—	0.36	
Sheathing intermediate density[e]	12.7 mm	350	—	5.2	—	0.19	1.3
Nail-base sheathing[e]	12.7 mm	400	—	5.3	—	0.19	1.3
Shingle backer	9.5 mm	290	—	6.0	—	0.17	1.3
Shingle backer	7.9 mm	290	—	7.3	—	0.14	
Sound-deadening board	12.7 mm	240	—	4.2	—	0.24	1.26
Tile and lay-in panels, plain or acoustic		290	0.058	—	17.0	—	0.59
	12.7 mm	290	—	4.5	—	0.22	
	19.0 mm	290	—	3.0	—	0.33	
Laminated paperboard		480	0.072	—	13.9	—	1.38
Homogeneous board from repulped paper		480	0.072	—	13.9	—	1.17
Hardboard[e]							
Medium density		800	0.105	—	9.5	—	1.3
High-density, service-tempered grade and service grade		880	0.118	—	8.46	—	1.34
High-density, standard-tempered grade		1010	0.144	—	6.93	—	1.34
Particle board[e]							
Low density		590	0.102	—	9.77	—	1.3
Medium density		800	0.135	—	7.35	—	1.3
High density		1000	0.17	—	5.90	—	1.30
Underlayment	15.9 mm	640	—	6.9	—	0.14	1.21
Waferboard		590	—	—	11.0	—	—
Wood subfloor	19.0 mm	—	—	6.0	—	0.17	1.38

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part B. SI Units							
					SI Resistance[c] (R)		
Description		**Density kg/m³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) W/m K**	**Conductance (C) W/m² K**	**Per Meter Thickness (1/k) K m W**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) K m² W**	**Specific Heat kJ/ kg K**
Building Membrane							
Vapor—permeable felt	—	—	94.9	—	0.011		—
Vapor—seal, 2 layers of mopped 0.73-kg/m² felt	—	—	47.4	—	0.21		—
Vapor—seal, plastic film	—	—	—	—	Negl.		—
Finish Flooring Materials							
Carpet and fibrous pad	—	—	2.73	—	0.37		1.42
Carpet and rubber pad	—	—	4.6	—	0.22		1.38
Cork tile	3.2 mm	—	—	20.4	—	0.049	2.01
Terrazzo	25.0 mm	—	—	71.0	—	0.014	0.8
Tile—asphalt, linoleum, vinyl, rubber		—	—	113.6	—	0.009	1.26
Vinyl asbestos							1.01
Ceramic							0.80
Wood, hardwood finish	19 mm	—	—	8.35	—	0.12	
Insulating Materials							
Blanket and Batt[f,g]							
Mineral fiber, fibrous form processed from rock, slag, or glass							
Approx. 75–100 mm		6.4–32.0	—	0.52	—	1.94	
Approx. 90 mm		6.4–32.0	—	0.44	—	2.29	
Approx. 90 mm		19.0–26.0	—	0.38	—	2.63	
Approx. 140–165 mm		6.4–32.0	—	0.3	—	3.32	
Approx. 140 mm		10.0–16.0	—	0.27	—	3.67	
Approx. 150–190 mm		6.4–32.0	—	0.26	—	3.91	
Approx. 210–250 mm		6.4–32.0	—	0.19	—	5.34	
Approx. 250–330 mm		6.4–32.0	—	0.15	—	6.77	
Board and Slabs							
Cellular glass		136	0.05	—	19.8	—	0.75
Glass fiber, organic bonded		64–140	0.036	—	27.7	—	0.96
Expanded perlite, organic bonded		16	0.052	—	19.3	—	1.26
Expanded rubber (rigid)		72	0.032	—	31.6	—	1.68
Expanded polystyrene, extruded (smooth skin surface) (CFC-12 exp.)		29–56	0.029	—	34.7		1.21
Expanded polystyrene, extruded (smooth skin surface) (HCFC-142b exp.)[h]		29–56	0.029	—	34.7	—	1.21
Expanded polystyrene, molded beads		16	0.037	—	26.7	—	—
Expanded polystyrene, molded beads		20	0.036	—	27.7	—	—
		24	0.035	—	28.9	—	—
		28	0.035	—	28.9	—	—
		32	0.033	—	30.2	—	—

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part B. SI Units							
					SI Resistance[c] (R)		
Description		**Density kg/m³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) W/m K**	**Conductance (C) W/m² K**	**Per Meter Thickness (1/k) K m W**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) K m² W**	**Specific Heat kJ/ kg K**
Cellular polyurethane/ polyisocyanurate[j] (CFC-11 exp.) (unfaced)		24	0.023–0.026	—	43.3–38.5	—	1.59
Cellular polyisocyanurate[j] (CFC-11 exp.) (gas-permeable facers)		24–40	0.023–0.026	—	43.3–38.5	—	0.92
Cellular polyisocyanurate[j] (CFC-11 exp.) (gas-impermeable facers)		32	0.02	—	48.8	—	0.92
Cellular phenolic (closed cell) (CFC-11, CFC-113 exp.)[k]		32	0.017	—	56.8	—	—
Cellular phenolic (open cell)		29–35	0.033	—	30.5	—	—
Mineral fiber with resin binder		240	0.042	—	23.9	—	0.17
Mineral fiber board, wet felted							
Core or roof insulation		260–270	0.049	—	20.4	—	—
Acoustical tile		290	0.05	—	19.8	—	0.8
Acoustical tile		340	0.053	—	18.7	—	—
Mineral fiber board, wet molded							
Acoustical tile[l]		370	0.06	—	16.5	—	0.59
Wood or cane fiber board							
Acoustical tile[l]	12.7 mm	—	—	4.5	—	0.22	1.3
Acoustical tile[l]	19 mm	—	—	3.0	—	0.33	—
Interior finish (plank, tile)		240	0.05	—	19.8	—	1.34
Cement fiber slabs (shredded wood with Portland cement binder)		400–430	0.072–0.076		13.9–13.1	—	
Cement fiber slabs (shredded wood with magnesia oxysulfide binder)		350	0.082	—	12.1	—	1.3
Loose Fill							
Cellulosic insulation (milled paper or wood pulp)		37–51	0.039–0.046	—	25.6–21.7	—	1.38
Perlite, expanded		32–66	0.039–0.045	—	25.6–22.9	—	1.09
		66–120	0.045–0.052	—	22.9–19.4	—	—
		120–180	0.052–0.060	—	19.4–16.6	—	—
Mineral fiber (rock, slag, or glass)[g]							
Approx. 95–130 mm		9.6–32	—	—	—	1.94	0.71
Approx. 170–220 mm		9.6–32	—	—	—	3.35	—
Approx. 190–250 mm		9.6–32	—	—	—	3.87	—
Approx. 260–350 mm		9.6–32	—	—	—	5.28	—
Mineral fiber (rock, slag, or glass)[g] Approx. 90 mm (closed sidewall application)		32–56	—	—	—	2.1–2.5	—
Vermiculite, exfoliated		110–130	0.068	—	14.8	—	1.34
		64–96	0.063	—	15.7	—	—

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part B. SI Units							
					SI Resistance[c] (R)		
Description		**Density kg/m³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) W/m K**	**Conductance (C) W/m² K**	**Per Meter Thickness (1/k) K m W**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) K m² W**	**Specific Heat kJ/ kg K**
Spray Applied							
Polyurethane foam		24–40	0.023–0.026	—	43.3–38.5	—	—
Ureaformaldehyde foam		11–26	0.032–0.040	—	31.5–24.7	—	—
Cellulosic fiber		56–96	0.042–0.049	—	23.9–20.4	—	—
Glass fiber		56–72	0.038–0.039	—	26.7–25.6	—	—
Reflective Insulation							
Reflective material (ε < 0.5) in center of 20-mm cavity forms two 10-mm vertical air spaces[m]		—	—	1.76	—	0.57	—
Metals							
(See *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*)							
Roofing							
Asbestos–cement shingles		1900	—	27.0	—	0.037	1.0
Asphalt roll roofing		1100	—	36.9	—	0.026	1.51
Asphalt shingles		1100	—	1.29	—	0.077	1.26
Built-up roofing	10 mm	1100	—	17.0	—	0.058	1.46
Slate	13 mm	—	—	114.0	—	0.009	1.26
Wood shingles, plain and plastic film faced		—	—	6.0	—	0.166	1.3
Plastering Materials							
Cement plaster, sand aggregate		1860	0.72	—	1.39	—	0.84
Sand aggregate	10 mm	—	—	75.5	—	0.013	0.84
Sand aggregate	20 mm	—	—	37.8	—	0.026	0.84
Gypsum plaster							
Lightweight aggregate	13 mm	720	—	17.7	—	0.056	—
Lightweight aggregate	16 mm	720	—	15.2	—	0.066	—
Lightweight aggregate on metal lath	19 mm	—		12.1	—	0.083	—
Perlite aggregate		720	0.22	—	4.64	—	1.34
Sand aggregate		1680	0.81	—	1.25	—	0.84
Sand aggregate	13 mm	1680	—	63.0	—	0.016	—
Sand aggregate	16 mm	1680	—	51.7	—	0.019	—
Sand aggregate on metal lath	19 mm	—	—	43.7	—	0.023	—
Vermiculite aggregate		720	0.24	—	4.09	—	—
Masonry Materials							
Masonry Units							
Brick, fired clay		2400	1.21–1.47	—	0.83–0.68	—	—
		2240	1.07–1.30	—	0.94–0.77	—	—
		2080	0.92–1.12	—	1.08–0.89	—	—
		1920	0.81–0.98	—	1.24–1.02	—	0.79
		1760	0.71–0.85	—	1.42–1.18	—	—
		1600	0.71–0.85	—	1.65–1.36	—	—
		1440	0.52–0.62	—	1.93–1.61	—	—
		1280	0.43–0.53	—	2.31–1.87	—	—
		1120	0.36–0.45	—	2.77–2.23	—	—

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part B. SI Units							
					SI Resistance[c] (R)		
Description		**Density kg/m³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) W/m K**	**Conductance (C) W/m² K**	**Per Meter Thickness (1/k) K m W**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) K m² W**	**Specific Heat kJ/ kg K**
Clay tile, hollow							
1 cell deep	75 mm	—	—	7.1	—	0.14	0.88
1 cell deep	100 mm	—	—	5.11	—	0.2	—
2 cells deep	150 mm	—	—	3.75	—	0.27	—
2 cells deep	200 mm	—	—	3.07	—	0.33	—
2 cells deep	250 mm	—	—	2.56	—	0.39	—
3 cells deep	300 mm	—	—	2.27	—	0.44	—
Concrete blocks[n,o]							
Limestone aggregate							
200 mm, 16.3 kg, 2210 kg/m³ concrete, 2 cores		—	—	—	—	—	—
Same with perlite-filled cores		—	—	2.73	—	0.37	—
Limestone aggregate							
300 mm, 25 kg, 2210 kg/m³ concrete, 2 cores		—	—	—	—	—	—
Same with perlite-filled cores		—	—	1.53	—	0.65	—
Normal weight aggregate (sand and gravel)							
200 mm, 15–16 kg, 2020–2180 kg/m³ concrete, 2 or 3 cores		—	—	5.1–5.8	—	0.20–0.17	0.92
Same with perlite-filled cores		—	—	2.84	—	0.35	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores		—	—	3.0–4.1	—	0.34–0.24	—
300 mm, 22.7 kg, 2000 kg/m³ concrete, 2 cores		—	—	4.6	—	0.217	0.92
Medium-weight aggregate (combinations of normal-weight and lightweight aggregate)							
200 mm, 15–16 kg, 2020–2180 kg/m³ concrete, 2 or 3 cores		—	—	3.3–4.4	—	0.30–0.22	—
Same with perlite-filled cores		—	—	1.5–2.5	—	0.65–0.41	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores		—	—	1.7	—	0.58	—
Same with molded EPS (beads) filled cores		—	—	1.82	—	0.56	—
Same with molded EPS inserts in cores		—	—	2.1	—	0.47	—
Lightweight aggregate (expanded shale, clay, slate or slag, pumice)							
150 mm, 7.3–7.7 kg, 1360–1390 kg/m³ concrete, 2 or 3 cores		—	—	3.0–3.5	—	0.34–0.29	—

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part B. SI Units						
				SI Resistance[c] (R)		
Description	**Density kg/m³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) W/m K**	**Conductance (C) W/m² K**	**Per Meter Thickness (1/k) K m W**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) K m² W**	**Specific Heat kJ/ kg K**
Same with perlite-filled cores	—	—	1.36	—	0.74	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores	—	—	1.87	—	0.53	—
200 mm, 8.6–10 kg, 1150–1380 kg/m³ concrete	—	—	1.8–3.1	—	0.56–0.33	0.88
Same with perlite-filled cores	—	—	0.9–1.3	—	1.20–0.77	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores	—	—	1.1–1.5	—	0.93–0.69	—
Same with molded EPS (beads) filled cores	—	—	1.19	—	0.85	—
Same with UF foam-filled cores	—	—	1.25	—	0.79	—
Same with molded EPS inserts in cores	—	—	1.65	—	0.62	—
300 mm, 14.5–16.3 kg, 1280–1440 kg/m³ concrete, 2 or 3 cores	—	—	2.2–2.5	—	0.46–0.40	—
Same with perlite-filled cores	—	—	0.6–0.9	—	1.6–1.1	—
Same with vermiculite-filled cores	—	—	0.97	—	1.0	—
Stone, lime, or sand	2880	10.4	—	0.1	—	—
Quartzitic and sandstone	2560	6.2	—	0.16	—	—
	2240	3.5	—	0.29	—	—
	1920	1.9	—	0.53	—	0.19
Calcitic, dolomitic, limestone, marble, and granite	2880	4.3	—	0.23	—	—
	2560	3.2	—	0.32	—	—
	2240	2.3	—	0.43	—	—
	1920	1.6	—	0.63	—	0.19
	1600	1.1	—	0.9	—	—
Gypsum partition tile						
75 × 300 × 760 mm, solid	—	—	4.50	—	0.222	0.79
75 × 300 × 760 mm, 4 cells	—	—	4.20	—	0.238	—
100 × 300 × 760 mm, 3 cells	—	—	3.4	—	0.294	—
Concretes[o]						
Sand and gravel or stone aggregate concretes	2400	1.4–2.9	—	0.69–0.35	—	—
(concretes with more than 50% quartz or quartzite sand have conductivities in the higher end of the range)	2240	1.3–2.6	—	0.77–0.39	—	0.8–1.0
	2080	1.0–1.9	—	0.99–0.53	—	—
Limestone concretes	2240	1.6	—	0.62	—	—
	1920	1.14	—	0.88	—	—
	1600	0.79	—	1.26	—	—

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part B. SI Units						
				SI Resistance[c] (R)		
Description	**Density kg/m³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) W/m K**	**Conductance (C) W/m² K**	**Per Meter Thickness (1/k) K m W**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) K m² W**	**Specific Heat kJ/ kg K**
Gypsum-fiber concrete (87.5% gypsum, 12.5% wood chips)	816	0.24	—	4.18	—	0.88
Cement/lime, mortar, and stucco	1920	1.4	—	0.71	—	—
	1600	0.97	—	1.04	—	—
	1280	0.65	—	1.54	—	—
Lightweight aggregate concretes						
Expanded shale, clay, or slate; expanded slags; cinders; pumice (with density up to 1600 kg/m³); and scoria (sanded concretes have conductivities in the higher end of the range)	1920	0.9–1.3	—	1.08–0.76	—	—
	1600	0.68–0.89	—	1.48–1.12	—	0.84
	1280	0.48–0.59	—	2.10–1.69	—	0.84
	960	0.30–0.36	—	3.30–2.77	—	—
	640	0.18	—	5.4	—	—
Perlite, vermiculite, and polystyrene beads	800	0.26–0.27	—	3.81–3.68	—	—
	640	0.20–0.22	—	4.92–4.65	—	0.63–0.96
	480	0.16	—	6.31	—	—
	320	0.12	—	8.67	—	—
Foam concretes	1920	0.75	—	1.32	—	—
	1600	0.6	—	1.66	—	—
	1280	0.44	—	2.29	—	—
	1120	0.36	—	2.77	—	—
Foam concretes and cellular concretes	960	0.3	—	3.33	—	—
	640	0.2	—	4.92	—	—
	320	0.12	—	8.67	—	—
Siding Materials (on flat surface)						
Shingles						
Asbestos–cement	1900	—	27	—	0.037	—
Wood, 400 mm, 190 mm exposure	—	—	6.53	—	0.15	1.3
Wood, double, 400 mm, 300 mm exposure	—	—	4.77	—	0.21	1.17
Wood, plus ins. backer board, 8 mm	—	—	4.03	—	0.25	1.3
Siding						
Asbestos–cement, 6.4 mm lapped	—	—	27	—	0.037	1.01
Asphalt roll siding	—	—	36.9	—	0.026	1.47
Asphalt insulating siding (12.7 mm bed.)	—	—	3.92	—	0.26	1.47
Hardboard siding, 11 mm	—	—	8.46	—	0.12	1.17
Wood, drop, 25 × 200 mm	—	—	7.21	—	0.14	1.17
Wood, bevel, 13 × 200 mm, lapped	—	—	6.98	—	0.14	1.17

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

Part B. SI Units						
				SI Resistance[c] (R)		
Description	**Density kg/m³**	**Conductivity[b] (k) W/m K**	**Conductance (C) W/m² K**	**Per Meter Thickness (1/k) K m W**	**For Thickness Listed (1/C) K m² W**	**Specific Heat kJ/ kg K**
Wood, bevel, 19 × 250 mm, lapped	—	—	5.4	—	0.18	1.17
Wood, plywood, 9.5 mm lapped	—	—	9.6	—	0.1	1.22
Aluminum, steel, or vinyl[p,q] over sheathing						
Hollow-backed	—	—	9.31	—	0.11	1.22[q,l]
Insulating-board backed nominal 9.5 mm	—	—	3.12	—	0.32	1.34
Insulating-board backed nominal 9.5 mm, foil-backed	—	—	1.93	—	0.52	—
Architectural (soda-lime float) glass	2528	—	56.8	—	0.018	0.84
Woods (12% moisture content)[e,r]						
Hardwoods						1.63[s]
Oak	659–749	0.16–0.18	—	6.2–5.5	—	
Birch	682–726	0.167–0.176	—	6.0–5.7	—	
Maple	637–704	0.157–0.171	—	6.4–5.8	—	
Ash	614–670	0.153–0.164	—	6.5–6.1	—	
Softwoods						1.63[s]
Southern pine	570–659	0.144–0.161	—	6.9–6.2	—	
Douglas fir-larch	536–581	0.13–0.145	—	7.3–6.9	—	
Southern cypress	502–514	0.130–0.132	—	7.7–7.6	—	
Hem-fir, spruce-pine-fir	392–502	0.107–0.130	—	9.3–7.7	—	
West Coast woods, cedars	347–502	0.098–0.130	—	10.3–7.7	—	
California redwood	392–448	0.107–0.118	—	9.4–8.5	—	

Source: Part A reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*. Part B conversions developed by the authors of this book.

[a]Values are for a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C). Representative values for dry materials are intended as design (not specification) values for materials in normal use. Thermal values of insulating materials may differ from design values depending on their in situ properties (e.g., density, moisture content, orientation) and variability experienced during manufacture. For properties of a particular product, use the value supplied by the manufacturer or by unbiased tests.

[b]To obtain thermal conductivities in Btu/h ft °F, divide the k-factor by 12 in./ft.

[c]Resistance values are the reciprocals of C before rounding off C to two decimal places.

[d]From Lewis (1967), *Thermal Conductivity of Wood-Base Fiber and Particle Panel Materials*. Forest Products Laboratory, Research Paper FPL 77, June.

[e]U.S. Dept. of Agriculture (1974), *Wood Handbook*, Handbook No. 72.

[f]Does not include paper backing and facing, if any. Where insulation forms a boundary (reflective or otherwise) of an air space, see Tables E.3 and E.4/E.5 for the insulating value of an air space with the appropriate effective emittance and temperature conditions of the space.

[g]Conductivity varies with fiber diameter. (See Chapter 23, "Factors Affecting Thermal Performance," of 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.) Batt, blanket, and loose-fill mineral fiber insulations are manufactured to achieve specified R-values, the most common of which are listed in the table. Due to differences in manufacturing processes and materials, the product thicknesses, densities, and thermal conductivities vary over considerable ranges for a specified R-value.

[h]This material is relatively new, and data are based on limited testing.

TABLE E.1 Thermal Properties of Conventional Building and Insulating Materials[a] (*Continued*)

[i]For additional information, see Society of Plastics Engineers (SPI) *Bulletin* U108. Values are for aged, unfaced board stock. For change in conductivity with age of expanded polyurethane/polyisocyanurate, see Chapter 23, "Factors Affecting Thermal Performance," of 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

[j]Values are for aged products with gas-impermeable facers on the two major surfaces. An aluminum foil facer of 0.001 in. (25 μm) thickness or greater is generally considered impermeable to gases. For change in conductivity with age of expanded polyisocyanurate, see Chapter 23, "Factors Affecting Thermal Performance," of 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

[k]Cellular phenolic insulation may no longer be manufactured. These thermal conductivity and resistance values do not represent aged insulation, which may have higher thermal conductivity and lower thermal resistance.

[l]Insulating values of acoustical tile vary, depending on density of the board and on type, size, and depth of perforations.

[m]Cavity is framed with 0.75-in. (20-mm) wood furring strips. Caution should be used in applying this value for other framing materials. The reported value was derived from tests and applies to the reflective path only. The effect of studs or furring strips must be included in determining the overall performance of the wall.

[n]Values for fully grouted block may be approximated using values for concrete with a similar unit weight.

[o]Values for concrete block and concrete are at moisture contents representative of normal use.

[p]Values for metal or vinyl siding applied over flat surfaces vary widely, depending on amount of ventilation of air space beneath the siding; whether air space is reflective or nonreflective; and on thickness, type, and application of insulating backing used. Values are averages for use as design guides, and were obtained from several guarded hot box tests (ASTM C 236) or calibrated hot box (ASTM C 976) on hollow-backed types and types made using backing-boards of wood fiber, foamed plastic, and glass fiber. Departures of 650% or more from these values may occur.

[q]Vinyl specific heat = 0.25 Btu/lb °F (1.0 kJ/kg K).

[r]See Adams (1971). "Supporting Cryogenic Equipment with Wood." *Chemical Engineering* (May): pp. 156–158); MacLean (1941). "Thermal Conductivity of Wood." *ASHVE Transactions* 47:323); and Wilkes (1979). "Thermophysical Properties Data Base Activities at Owens-Corning Fiberglas." *Proceedings of the ASHRAE/DOE-ORNL Conference, Thermal Performance of the Exterior Envelopes of Buildings*, ASHRAE SP 28:662–77. The conductivity values listed are for heat transfer across the grain. The thermal conductivity of wood varies linearly with the density, and the density ranges listed are those normally found for the wood species given. If the density of the wood species is not known, use the mean conductivity value. For extrapolation to other moisture contents, refer to the equation presented in footnote "r" on page 25.9 of the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

[s]For an empirical equation for the specific heat of moist wood at 75°F (24°C), refer to the equation presented in footnote "s" on page 25.9 of the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

TABLE E.2 Thermal Properties of Alternative[a] Building and Insulating Materials

Description	Density lb/ft³ (kg/m³)	Conductivity (k) Btu-in./h ft² °F	Conductance (C) Btu/h ft² °F	I-P Resistance Per Inch Thickness (1/k) h ft² °F/Btu-in.	I-P Resistance for Thickness Listed h ft² °F/Btu	SI Resistance Per Meter Thickness (1/k) K m/W	SI Resistance for Thickness Listed K m²/W
Building Materials							
Adobe[b] typically 10–24 in. (250–610 mm)	1006 (1600)	3.3		0.3		2.1	
Cob[c] typically 18–36 in. (460–915 mm)		4		0.25		1.7	
Rammed earth[d] 18 in. (460 mm) typical	1006 (1600)	4		0.25		1.7	
Straw bale[e] typically 16–24 in. (400–610 mm)	5–10 (80–160)	0.67–0.33		1.5–3.0		10.4–20.8	
SIP (EPS)[f] various thicknesses		0.25		4		27.7	
SIP (XPS)[g] various thicknesses		0.20		5		34.7	
SIP (POLY/ISO)[h] various thicknesses		0.17–0.14		6–7		41.6–48.5	
Insulating Materials							
Air krete[i]	2.2 (35)	0.26		3.9		27.0	
Insulating forms[j]			0.06–0.03		17–40		3.0–7.0

[a]It is generally difficult to obtain reliable and consistent information on the thermal properties of alternative building materials that are not sold as a proprietary product. The data in this table have been obtained from a variety of sources (as noted); note the wide range of values and lack of data for some properties (such as specific heat).
[b]Adobe: U.S. Department of Energy, Office of Building Technology, State and Community Programs, House of Straw – Straw Bale Construction Comes of Age, http://www.grisb.org/publications/pub23.pdf
[c]Rammed earth: http://www.toolbase.org/
[d]Cob: http://www.toolbase.org/
[e]Straw bale: http://www.buildinggreen.com/news/r-value.cfm; recent tests suggest lower R-values than previously reported, with a typical R per inch of 1.5 for a per-bale R around 26–28.
[f]Structural insulated panel with expanded polystyrene insulation: http://www.energysavers.gov/your_home/insulation_airsealing/index.cfm/mytopic=11740
[g]Structural insulated panel with extruded polystyrene insulation: http://www.eere.energy.gov/consumerinfo/factsheets/bd1.html
[h]Structural insulated panel with polyurethane/isocyanurate insulation: http://www.eere.energy.gov/consumerinfo/factsheets/bd1.html; R-values are for aged panels (as opposed to new panel R-values of 7–9 as typically reported).
[i]Air krete: http://www.airkrete.com/
[j]Insulating concrete forms come in a variety of configurations; the listed R-17 value is for a 9-in. wall section (4 in. polystyrene and 5 in. poured concrete); http://www.energysavers.gov/your_home/insulation_airsealing/index.cfm/mytopic=11640
Another manufacturer produces forms that provide R-values of 22, 32, and 40.

TABLE E.3 Thermal Properties of Surface Air Films and Air Spaces

Part A. Surface Conductances[a] and Resistances[b] for Surface Air Films

		Surface Emittance, ε											
		I-P Units[c]						*SI Units[d]*					
		Nonreflective		Reflective				Nonreflective		Reflective			
		ε = 0.90		ε = 0.20		ε = 0.05		ε = 0.90		ε = 0.20		ε = 0.05	
Position of Surface	**Direction of Heat Flow**	h_i	**R**	h_i	**R**	h_i	**R**	h_i	**R**	h_i	**R**	h_i	**R**
Still Air													
Horizontal	Upward	1.63	0.61	0.91	1.10	0.76	1.32	9.26	0.11	5.17	0.19	4.32	0.23
Sloping–45°	Upward	1.60	0.62	0.88	1.14	0.73	1.37	9.09	0.11	5.00	0.20	4.15	0.24
Vertical	Horizontal	1.46	0.68	0.74	1.35	0.59	1.70	8.29	0.12	4.20	0.24	3.35	0.30
Sloping–45°	Downward	1.32	0.76	0.60	1.67	0.45	2.22	7.50	0.13	3.41	0.29	2.56	0.39
Horizontal	Downward	1.08	0.92	0.37	2.70	0.22	4.55	6.13	0.16	2.10	0.48	1.25	0.80
Moving Air (any position)		h_o	**R**					h_o	**R**				
Winter Wind													
15 mph (6.7 m/s)	Any	6.00	0.17					34.0	0.030				
Summer Wind													
7.5 mph (3.4 m/s)	Any	4.00	0.25					22.7	0.044				

Part B. Emittance Values of Various Surfaces and Effective Emittances of Air Spaces

	Effective Emittance ε_{eff} of Air Space		
	Average Emittance ε	**One Surface Emittance ε; Other Surface 0.9**	**Both Surfaces Emittance ε**
Aluminum foil, bright	0.05	0.05	0.03
Aluminum foil with condensate just visible	0.30	0.29	—
Aluminum foil with condensate clearly visible	0.70	0.65	—
Aluminum sheet	0.12	0.12	0.06
Aluminum-coated paper, polished	0.20	0.20	0.11
Steel, galvanized, bright	0.25	0.24	0.15
Aluminum paint	0.50	0.47	0.35
Building materials: wood, paper, masonry, nonmetallic paints	0.90	0.82	0.82
Regular glass	0.84	0.77	0.72

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

[a]Conductances are for surfaces of the stated emittance facing virtual blackbody surroundings at the same temperature as the ambient air. Values are based on a surface–air temperature difference of 10°F (5.5°C) and for surface temperatures of 70°F (21°C).

[b]No surface has both an air space resistance value and a surface resistance value.

[c]I-P units: surface conductance h_i and h_o measured in Btu/h ft² °F; resistance R measured in h ft² °F/Btu.

[d]SI units: surface conductance h_i and h_o measured in W/m² K; resistance R measured in m² K/W.

TABLE E.4 Thermal Resistances of Plane[a] Air Spaces (I-P Units)

All resistance values expressed in ft^2 °F h/Btu. Values apply only to air spaces of uniform thickness bounded by plane, smooth, parallel surfaces with no leakage of air to or from the space. These conditions are not normally present in standard building construction. When accurate values are required, use overall U-factors determined for a particular construction. Thermal resistance values for multiple air spaces must be based on careful estimates of mean temperature differences for each air space.

			Air Space		0.5-in. Air Space[d]					0.75-in. Air Space[d]				
					Value of E[b, c]					Value of E[b, c]				
Position of Air Space	Direction of Heat Flow		Mean Temp,[b] °F	Temp Diff,[b] °F	0.03	0.05	0.2	0.5	0.82	0.03	0.05	0.2	0.5	0.82
Horizontal	Up	↑	90	10	2.13	2.03	1.51	0.99	0.73	2.34	2.22	1.61	1.04	0.75
			50	30	1.62	1.57	1.29	0.96	0.75	1.71	1.66	1.35	0.99	0.77
			50	10	2.13	2.05	1.60	1.11	0.84	2.30	2.21	1.70	1.16	0.87
			0	20	1.73	1.70	1.45	1.12	0.91	1.83	1.79	1.52	1.16	0.93
			0	10	2.10	2.04	1.70	1.27	1.00	2.23	2.16	1.78	1.31	1.02
			–50	20	1.69	1.66	1.49	1.23	1.04	1.77	1.74	1.55	1.27	1.07
			–50	10	2.04	2.00	1.75	1.40	1.16	2.16	2.11	1.84	1.46	1.20
45° Slope	Up	↗	90	10	2.44	2.31	1.65	1.06	0.76	2.96	2.78	1.88	1.15	0.81
			50	30	2.06	1.98	1.56	1.10	0.83	1.99	1.92	1.52	1.08	0.82
			50	10	2.55	2.44	1.83	1.22	0.90	2.90	2.75	2.00	1.29	0.94
			0	20	2.20	2.14	1.76	1.30	1.02	2.13	2.07	1.72	1.28	1.00
			0	10	2.63	2.54	2.03	1.44	1.10	2.72	2.62	2.08	1.47	1.12
			–50	20	2.08	2.04	1.78	1.42	1.17	2.05	2.01	1.76	1.41	1.16
			–50	10	2.62	2.56	2.17	1.66	1.33	2.53	2.47	2.10	1.62	1.30
Vertical	Horizontal	→	90	10	2.47	2.34	1.67	1.06	0.77	3.50	3.24	2.08	1.22	0.84
			50	30	2.57	2.46	1.84	1.23	0.90	2.91	2.77	2.01	1.30	0.94
			50	10	2.66	2.54	1.88	1.24	0.91	3.70	3.46	2.35	1.43	1.01
			0	20	2.82	2.72	2.14	1.50	1.13	3.14	3.02	2.32	1.58	1.18
			0	10	2.93	2.82	2.20	1.53	1.15	3.77	3.59	2.64	1.73	1.26
			–50	20	2.90	2.82	2.35	1.76	1.39	2.90	2.83	2.36	1.77	1.39
			–50	10	3.20	3.10	2.54	1.87	1.46	3.72	3.60	2.87	2.04	1.56
45° Slope	Down	↘	90	10	2.48	2.34	1.67	1.06	0.77	3.53	3.27	2.10	1.22	0.84
			50	30	2.64	2.52	1.87	1.24	0.91	3.43	3.23	2.24	1.39	0.99
			50	10	2.67	2.55	1.89	1.25	0.92	3.81	3.57	2.40	1.45	1.02
			0	20	2.91	2.80	2.19	1.52	1.15	3.75	3.57	2.63	1.72	1.26
			0	10	2.94	2.83	2.21	1.53	1.15	4.12	3.91	2.81	1.80	1.30
			–50	20	3.16	3.07	2.52	1.86	1.45	3.78	3.65	2.90	2.05	1.57
			–50	10	3.26	3.16	2.58	1.89	1.47	4.35	4.18	3.22	2.21	1.66

TABLE E.4 Thermal Resistances of Plane[a] Air Spaces (I-P Units) (*Continued*)

Position of Air Space	Direction of Heat Flow		Air Space: Mean Temp,[b] °F	Air Space: Temp Diff,[b] °F	0.5-in. Air Space[d] Value of $E^{b,c}$ 0.03	0.05	0.2	0.5	0.82	0.75-in. Air Space[d] Value of $E^{b,c}$ 0.03	0.05	0.2	0.5	0.82
Horizontal	Down	↓	90	10	2.48	2.34	1.67	1.06	0.77	3.55	3.29	2.10	1.22	0.85
			50	30	2.66	2.54	1.88	1.24	0.91	3.77	3.52	2.38	1.44	1.02
			50	10	2.67	2.55	1.89	1.25	0.92	3.84	3.59	2.41	1.45	1.02
			0	20	2.94	2.83	2.20	1.53	1.15	4.18	3.96	2.83	1.81	1.30
			0	10	2.96	2.85	2.22	1.53	1.16	4.25	4.02	2.87	1.82	1.31
			–50	20	3.25	3.15	2.58	1.89	1.47	4.60	4.41	3.36	2.28	1.69
			–50	10	3.28	3.18	2.60	1.90	1.47	4.71	4.51	3.42	2.30	1.71
Position of Air Space	Direction of Heat Flow		Air Space: Mean Temp,[b] °F	Air Space: Temp Diff,[b] °F	1.5-in. Air Space[d] Value of $E^{b,c}$ 0.03	0.05	0.2	0.5	0.82	3.5-in. Air Space[d] Value of $E^{b,c}$ 0.03	0.05	0.2	0.5	0.82
Horizontal	Up	↑	90	10	2.55	2.41	1.71	1.08	0.77	2.84	2.66	1.83	1.13	0.80
			50	30	1.87	1.81	1.45	1.04	0.80	2.09	2.01	1.58	1.10	0.84
			50	10	2.50	2.40	1.81	1.21	0.89	2.80	2.66	1.95	1.28	0.93
			0	20	2.01	1.95	1.63	1.23	0.97	2.25	2.18	1.79	1.32	1.03
			0	10	2.43	2.35	1.90	1.38	1.06	2.71	2.62	2.07	1.47	1.12
			–50	20	1.94	1.91	1.68	1.36	1.13	2.19	2.14	1.86	1.47	1.20
			–50	10	2.37	2.31	1.99	1.55	1.26	2.65	2.58	2.18	1.67	1.33
45° Slope	Up	↗	90	10	2.92	2.73	1.86	1.14	0.80	3.18	2.96	1.97	1.18	0.82
			50	30	2.14	2.06	1.61	1.12	0.84	2.26	2.17	1.67	1.15	0.86
			50	10	2.88	2.74	1.99	1.29	0.94	3.12	2.95	2.10	1.34	0.96
			0	20	2.30	2.23	1.82	1.34	1.04	2.42	2.35	1.90	1.38	1.06
			0	10	2.79	2.69	2.12	1.49	1.13	2.98	2.87	2.23	1.54	1.16
			–50	20	2.22	2.17	1.88	1.49	1.21	2.34	2.29	1.97	1.54	1.25
			–50	10	2.71	2.64	2.23	1.69	1.35	2.87	2.79	2.33	1.75	1.39
Vertical	Horizontal	→	90	10	3.99	3.66	2.25	1.27	0.87	3.69	3.40	2.15	1.24	0.85
			50	30	2.58	2.46	1.84	1.23	0.90	2.67	2.55	1.89	1.25	0.91
			50	10	3.79	3.55	2.39	1.45	1.02	3.63	3.40	2.32	1.42	1.01
			0	20	2.76	2.66	2.10	1.48	1.12	2.88	2.78	2.17	1.51	1.14
			0	10	3.51	3.35	2.51	1.67	1.23	3.49	3.33	2.50	1.67	1.23
			–50	20	2.64	2.58	2.18	1.66	1.33	2.82	2.75	2.30	1.73	1.37
			–50	10	3.31	3.21	2.62	1.91	1.48	3.40	3.30	2.67	1.94	1.50

45° Slope	Down	↘	90	10	5.07	4.55	2.56	1.36	0.91	4.81	4.33	2.49	1.34	0.90
			50	30	3.58	3.36	2.31	1.42	1.00	3.51	3.30	2.28	1.40	1.00
			50	10	5.10	4.66	2.85	1.60	1.09	4.74	4.36	2.73	1.57	1.08
			0	20	3.85	3.66	2.68	1.74	1.27	3.81	3.63	2.66	1.74	1.27
			0	10	4.92	4.62	3.16	1.94	1.37	4.59	4.32	3.02	1.88	1.34
			–50	20	3.62	3.50	2.80	2.01	1.54	3.77	3.64	2.90	2.05	1.57
			–50	10	4.67	4.47	3.40	2.29	1.70	4.50	4.32	3.31	2.25	1.68
Horizontal	Down	↓	90	10	6.09	5.35	2.79	1.43	0.94	10.07	8.19	3.41	1.57	1.00
			50	30	6.27	5.63	3.18	1.70	1.14	9.60	8.17	3.86	1.88	1.22
			50	10	6.61	5.90	3.27	1.73	1.15	11.15	9.27	4.09	1.93	1.24
			0	20	7.03	6.43	3.91	2.19	1.49	10.90	9.52	4.87	2.47	1.62
			0	10	7.31	6.66	4.00	2.22	1.51	11.97	10.32	5.08	2.52	1.64
			–50	20	7.73	7.20	4.77	2.85	1.99	11.64	10.49	6.02	3.25	2.18
			–50	10	8.09	7.52	4.91	2.89	2.01	12.98	11.56	6.36	3.34	2.22

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

[a]Thermal resistance values were determined from the relation R = 1/C, where $C = h_c + \varepsilon_{eff}\, h_r$; h_c is the conduction–convection coefficient; $\varepsilon_{eff}\, h_r$ is the radiation coefficient = $0.0068\varepsilon_{eff}[(t_m + 460)/100]^3$; and t_m is the mean temperature of the air space. For extrapolation from this table to air spaces less than 0.5 in. (as in insulating window glass), assume that $h_c = 0.159(1 + 0.0016t_m)/l$, where l is the air space thickness in inches and h_c is heat transfer through the air space only.

[b]Interpolation is permissible for other values of mean temperature, temperature difference, and effective emittance ε_{eff}. Interpolation and moderate extrapolation for air spaces greater than 3.5 in. are also permissible.

[c]Effective emittance, ε_{eff}, of the air space is given by $1/\varepsilon_{eff} = 1/\varepsilon_1 + 1/\varepsilon_2 - 1$, where ε_1 and ε_2 are emittances of the surfaces of the air space (from Table E.3).

[d]A single resistance value cannot account for multiple air spaces. Each air space requires a separate resistance calculation that applies only for the established boundary conditions.

[e]Resistances of horizontal spaces with heat flow downward are substantially independent of temperature difference.

TABLE E.5 Thermal Resistances of Plane[a] Air Spaces (SI Units)

All resistance values expressed in K m²/W. Values apply only to air spaces of uniform thickness bounded by plane, smooth, parallel surfaces with no leakage of air to or from the space. These conditions are not normally present in standard building construction. When accurate values are required, use overall U-factors determined for a particular construction. Thermal resistance values for multiple air spaces must be based on careful estimates of mean temperature differences for each air space.

			Air Space		*13-mm Air Space[d]*					*20-mm Air Space[d]*				
					Value of E[b,c]					*Value of E[b,c]*				
Position of Air Space	**Direction of Heat Flow**		**Mean Temp,[b] °F**	**Temp Diff,[b] °F**	**0.03**	**0.05**	**0.2**	**0.5**	**0.82**	**0.03**	**0.05**	**0.2**	**0.5**	**0.82**
Horizontal	Up	↑	32.2	5.6	0.37	0.36	0.27	0.17	0.13	0.41	0.39	0.28	0.18	0.13
			10.0	16.7	0.29	0.28	0.23	0.17	0.13	0.30	0.29	0.24	0.17	0.14
			10.0	5.6	0.37	0.36	0.28	0.30	0.15	0.40	0.39	0.30	0.20	0.15
			–17.8	11.1	0.30	0.30	0.26	0.20	0.16	0.32	0.32	0.27	0.20	0.16
			–17.8	5.6	0.37	0.36	0.30	0.22	0.18	0.39	0.38	0.31	0.23	0.18
			–45.6	11.1	0.30	0.29	0.26	0.22	0.18	0.31	0.31	0.27	0.22	0.19
			–45.6	5.6	0.36	0.35	0.31	0.25	0.20	0.38	0.37	0.32	0.26	0.21
45° Slope	Up	↗	32.2	5.6	0.43	0.41	0.29	0.19	0.13	0.52	0.49	0.33	0.20	0.14
			10.0	16.7	0.36	0.35	0.27	0.19	0.15	0.35	0.34	0.27	0.19	0.14
			10.0	5.6	0.45	0.43	0.32	0.21	0.16	0.51	0.48	0.35	0.23	0.17
			–17.8	11.1	0.39	0.38	0.31	0.23	0.18	0.37	0.36	0.30	0.23	0.18
			–17.8	5.6	0.46	0.45	0.36	0.25	0.19	0.48	0.46	0.37	0.26	0.20
			–45.6	11.1	0.37	0.36	0.31	0.25	0.21	0.36	0.35	0.31	0.25	0.20
			–45.6	5.6	0.46	0.45	0.38	0.29	0.23	0.45	0.43	0.37	0.29	0.23
Vertical	Horizontal	→	32.2	5.6	0.43	0.41	0.29	0.19	0.14	0.62	0.57	0.37	0.21	0.15
			10	16.7	0.45	0.43	0.32	0.22	0.16	0.51	0.49	0.35	0.23	0.17
			10	5.6	0.47	0.45	0.33	0.22	0.16	0.65	0.61	0.41	0.25	0.18
			–17.8	11.1	0.50	0.48	0.38	0.26	0.20	0.55	0.53	0.41	0.28	0.21
			–17.8	5.6	0.52	0.50	0.39	0.27	0.20	0.66	0.63	0.46	0.30	0.22
			–45.6	11.1	0.51	0.50	0.41	0.31	0.24	0.51	0.50	0.42	0.31	0.24
			–45.6	5.6	0.56	0.55	0.45	0.33	0.26	0.65	0.63	0.51	0.36	0.27
45° Slope	Down	↘	32.2	5.6	0.44	0.41	0.29	0.19	0.14	0.62	0.58	0.37	0.21	0.15
			10.0	16.7	0.46	0.44	0.33	0.22	0.16	0.60	0.57	0.39	0.24	0.17
			10.0	5.6	0.47	0.45	0.33	0.22	0.16	0.67	0.63	0.42	0.26	0.18
			–17.8	11.1	0.51	0.49	0.39	0.27	0.20	0.66	0.63	0.46	0.30	0.22
			–17.8	5.6	0.52	0.50	0.39	0.27	0.20	0.73	0.69	0.49	0.32	0.23
			–45.6	11.1	0.56	0.54	0.44	0.33	0.25	0.67	0.64	0.51	0.36	0.28
			–45.6	5.6	0.57	0.56	0.45	0.33	0.26	0.77	0.74	0.57	0.39	0.29

Horizontal	Down	↓	32.2	5.6	0.44	0.41	0.29	0.19	0.14	0.62	0.58	0.37	0.21	0.15
			10.0	16.7	0.47	0.45	0.33	0.22	0.16	0.66	0.62	0.42	0.25	0.18
			10.0	5.6	0.47	0.45	0.33	0.22	0.16	0.68	0.63	0.42	0.26	0.18
			–17.8	11.1	0.52	0.50	0.39	0.27	0.20	0.74	0.70	0.50	0.32	0.23
			–17.8	5.6	0.52	0.50	0.39	0.27	0.20	0.75	0.71	0.51	0.32	0.23
			–45.6	11.1	0.57	0.55	0.45	0.33	0.26	0.81	0.78	0.59	0.40	0.30
			–45.6	5.6	0.58	0.56	0.46	0.33	0.26	0.83	0.79	0.60	0.40	0.30

			Air Space		*40-mm Air Space*[d]					*90-mm Air Space*[d]				
					Value of E[b,c]					*Value of E*[b,c]				
Position of Air Space	**Direction of Heat Flow**		**Mean Temp,**[b] **°F**	**Temp Diff,**[b] **°F**	**0.03**	**0.05**	**0.2**	**0.5**	**0.82**	**0.03**	**0.05**	**0.2**	**0.5**	**0.82**
Horizontal	Up	↑	32.2	5.6	0.45	0.42	0.30	0.19	0.14	0.50	0.47	0.32	0.20	0.14
			10.0	16.7	0.33	0.32	0.26	0.18	0.14	0.27	0.35	0.28	0.19	0.15
			10.0	5.6	0.44	0.42	0.32	0.21	0.16	0.49	0.47	0.34	0.23	0.16
			–17.8	11.1	0.35	0.34	0.29	0.22	0.17	0.40	0.38	0.32	0.23	0.18
			–17.8	5.6	0.43	0.41	0.33	0.24	0.19	0.48	0.46	0.36	0.26	0.20
			–45.6	11.1	0.34	0.34	0.30	0.24	0.20	0.39	0.38	0.33	0.26	0.21
			–45.6	5.6	0.42	0.41	0.35	0.27	0.22	0.47	0.45	0.38	0.29	0.23
45° Slope	Up	↗	32.2	5.6	0.51	0.48	0.33	0.20	0.14	0.56	0.52	0.35	0.21	0.14
			10.0	16.7	0.38	0.36	0.28	0.20	0.15	0.40	0.38	0.29	0.20	0.15
			10.0	5.6	0.51	0.48	0.35	0.23	0.17	0.55	0.52	0.37	0.24	0.17
			–17.8	11.1	0.40	0.39	0.32	0.24	0.18	0.43	0.41	0.33	0.24	0.19
			–17.8	5.6	0.49	0.47	0.37	0.26	0.20	0.52	0.51	0.39	0.27	0.20
			–45.6	11.1	0.39	0.38	0.33	0.26	0.21	0.41	0.40	0.35	0.27	0.22
			–45.6	5.6	0.48	0.46	0.39	0.30	0.24	0.51	0.49	0.41	0.31	0.24
Vertical	Horizontal	→	32.2	5.6	0.70	0.64	0.40	0.22	0.15	0.65	0.60	0.38	0.22	0.15
			10.0	16.7	0.45	0.43	0.32	0.22	0.16	0.47	0.45	0.33	0.22	0.16
			10.0	5.6	0.67	0.62	0.42	0.26	0.18	0.64	0.60	0.41	0.25	0.18
			–17.8	11.1	0.49	0.47	0.37	0.26	0.20	0.51	0.49	0.38	0.27	0.20
			–17.8	5.6	0.62	0.59	0.44	0.29	0.22	0.61	0.59	0.44	0.29	0.22
			–45.6	11.1	0.46	0.45	0.38	0.29	0.23	0.50	0.48	0.40	0.30	0.24
			–45.6	5.6	0.58	0.56	0.46	0.34	0.26	0.60	0.58	0.47	0.34	0.26

TABLE E.5 Thermal Resistances of Plane[a] Air Spaces (SI Units) (*Continued*)

Position of Air Space	Direction of Heat Flow		Air Space: Mean Temp,[b] °F	Air Space: Temp Diff,[b] °F	40-mm Air Space[d] Value of $E^{b,c}$: 0.03	0.05	0.2	0.5	0.82	90-mm Air Space[d] Value of $E^{b,c}$: 0.03	0.05	0.2	0.5	0.82
45° Slope	Down	↘	32.2	5.6	0.89	0.80	0.45	0.24	0.16	0.85	0.76	0.44	0.24	0.16
			10.0	16.7	0.63	0.59	0.41	0.25	0.18	0.62	0.58	0.40	0.25	0.18
			10.0	5.6	0.90	0.82	0.50	0.28	0.19	0.83	0.77	0.48	0.28	0.19
			–17.8	11.1	0.68	0.64	0.47	0.31	0.22	0.67	0.64	0.47	0.31	0.22
			–17.8	5.6	0.87	0.81	0.56	0.34	0.24	0.81	0.76	0.53	0.33	0.24
			–45.6	1.1	0.64	0.62	0.49	0.35	0.27	0.66	0.64	0.51	0.36	0.28
			–45.6	5.6	0.82	0.79	0.60	0.40	0.30	0.79	0.76	0.58	0.40	0.30
Horizontal	Down	↓	32.2	5.6	1.07	0.94	0.49	0.25	0.17	1.77	1.44	0.60	0.28	0.18
			10.0	16.7	1.10	0.99	0.56	0.30	0.20	1.69	1.44	0.68	0.33	0.21
			10.0	5.6	1.16	1.04	0.58	0.30	0.20	1.96	1.63	0.72	0.34	0.22
			–17.8	11.1	1.24	1.13	0.69	0.39	0.26	1.92	1.68	0.86	0.4	0.29
			–17.8	5.6	1.29	1.17	0.70	0.39	0.27	2.11	1.82	0.89	0.44	0.29
			–45.6	11.1	1.36	1.27	0.84	0.50	0.35	2.05	1.85	1.06	0.57	0.38
			–45.6	5.6	1.42	1.32	0.86	0.51	0.35	2.28	2.03	1.12	0.59	0.39

Source: I-P table (E.4) reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*; SI unit table (E.5) developed by the authors.

[a]Thermal resistance values were determined from the relation R = 1/C, where $C = h_c + \varepsilon_{eff}\, h_r$; h_c is the conduction–convection coefficient; $\varepsilon_{eff}\, h_r$ is the radiation coefficient = $0.227\varepsilon_{eff}[(t_m + 273)/100]^3$; and t_m is the mean temperature of the air space. For extrapolation from this table to air spaces less than 12.5 mm (as in insulating window glass), assume that $h_c = 21.8\,(1 + 0.00274t_m)/l$, where l is the air space thickness in inches and h_c is the heat transfer in W/m² K through the air space only.

[b]Interpolation is permissible for other values of mean temperature, temperature difference, and effective emittance ε_{eff}. Interpolation and moderate extrapolation for air spaces greater than 90 mm are also permissible.

[c]Effective emittance, ε_{eff}, of the air space is given by $1/\varepsilon_{eff} = 1/\varepsilon_1 + 1/\varepsilon_2 - 1$, where ε_1 and ε_2 are emittances of the surfaces of the air space (from Table E.3).

[d]A single resistance value cannot account for multiple air spaces. Each air space requires a separate resistance calculation that applies only for the established boundary conditions.

[e]Resistances of horizontal spaces with heat flow downward are substantially independent of temperature difference.

TABLE E.6 U-Factors for Common Wall, Roof, and Floor Assemblies

Assembly	Basic Construction	Other Thermal Components	*I-P* Insulation R-value °F ft² h/Btu	*SI* Insulation R-value K m²/W	*I-P* Assembly U-factor Btu/°F ft² h	*SI* Assembly U-factor W/K m²
Wall	Wood studs, nominal 2 in. × 4 in., 16 in. o.c. (50 mm × 100 mm, 400 mm o.c.)	Exterior air film, stucco, exterior gypsum board, interior gypsum board, interior air film	11	1.94	0.096	0.55
	As above	Above plus R-4 (SI: R-0.7) continuous insulation	15	2.64	0.068	0.39
	Wood studs, nominal 2 in. × 6 in., 24 in. o.c. (50 mm × 150 mm, 400 mm o.c.)		18	3.17	0.065	0.37
	Steel studs, nominal 2 in. × 4 in., 16 in. o.c. (50 mm × 100 mm, 400 mm o.c.)		11	1.94	0.132	0.75
	As above	Above plus R-4 (SI: R-0.7) continuous insulation	15	2.64	0.087	0.49
	6-in. concrete masonry unit at 115 lb/ft³ (150 mm, at 1840 kg/m³)	Partly grouted, cells insulated	N/A	N/A	0.41	2.33
	As above	Above with R-4 (SI: R-0.7) continuous insulation with 1-in. (25-mm) framing and interior gypsum board	4	0.70	0.17	0.97
Roof	Standard wood joists	Semiexterior air film, gypsum board, interior air film	30	5.28	0.034	0.19
	Steel joists	Exterior air film, metal deck, interior air film	30	5.28	0.041	0.23
	System with insulation entirely above roof deck	Exterior air film, metal deck, interior air film	30	5.28	0.032	0.18
Floor	Nominal 6-in. wood joists (150 mm)	Semiexterior air film, wood subfloor, carpet and pad, interior film air	11	1.94	0.074	0.42
	Steel floor joists	Semiexterior air film, metal deck, concrete slab, carpet and pad, interior air film	11	1.94	0.078	0.44

Source: Extracted and used with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2001: *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*.
Note: The SI units for resistance and U-factor were appended to the ASHRAE I-P data by the authors.

TABLE E.7 U-Factors for Walls in Passive Solar Heating Systems

	Whole-Assembly U-Factor, Winter					
	No Night Insulation		*With Night Insulation[a] of Specified R*			
	I-P	*SI*	*I-P*	*SI*	*I-P*	*SI*
			R-4	SI:R-0.7	R-9	SI:R-1.58
	Btu	W	Btu	W	Btu	W
Component	°F ft² h	K m²	°F ft² h	K m²	°F ft² h	K m²
Direct gain[b]	0.55	3.1	0.30	1.7	0.24	1.4
Trombe wall, 18-in. (460-mm) thick[b]	0.22	1.2	0.15	0.9	0.12	0.7
Water wall[b]	0.33	1.9	0.20	1.1	0.17	1.0

[a]These are daily average U-factors rather than the instantaneous U-factors generally presented in these tables. Insulation is assumed to be in place from 5:00 P.M. to 8:00 A.M., solar time, for Trombe and water walls and 5:00 P.M. to 7:00 A.M. for direct gain.
[b]From J. D. Balcomb et al., *Passive Solar Design Handbook*, Volume Two: *Passive Solar Design Analysis* (1980). U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, DC. SI values were appended to the I-P data by the authors.

TABLE E.8 Effective R-Values for Wall, Roof, and Floor Systems with Steel Framing

		Cavity Insulation R-value			*Effective Framing/ Insulation R-value*	
		I-P	*SI*		*I-P*	*SI*
Construction	**Spacing of Framing**	**°F ft² h Btu**	**K m² W**	**Correction Factor[a,b]**	**°F ft² h Btu**	**K m²W**
Walls						
Nominal Cavity Depth (Stud Size)						
4 in. (100 mm)	16 in. (400 mm) o.c.	11	1.94	0.50	5.5	0.96
		13	2.29	0.46	6.0	1.06
		15	2.64	0.43	6.4	1.13
4 in. (100 mm)	24 in. (600 mm) o.c.	11	1.94	0.60	6.6	1.16
		13	2.29	0.55	7.2	1.27
		15	2.64	0.52	7.8	1.37
6 in. (150 mm)	16 in. (400 mm) o.c.	19	3.35	0.37	7.1	1.25
		21	3.70	0.35	7.4	1.30
6 in. (150 mm)	24 in. (600 mm) o.c.	19	3.35	0.45	8.6	1.52
		21	3.70	0.43	9.0	1.59
8 in. (200 mm)	16 in. (400 mm) o.c.	25	4.41	0.31	7.8	1.37
8 in. (200 mm)	24 in. (600 mm) o.c.	25	4.41	0.38	9.6	1.69
Roofs/Floors						
Insulation *R*	4 ft (1.2 m) o.c.					
11		11	1.94	0.91	10.0	1.76
13		13	2.29	0.90	11.7	2.06
15		15	2.64	0.88	13.2	2.32
19		19	3.35	0.86	16.3	2.87
21		21	3.70	0.84	17.6	3.10
25		25	4.41	0.81	20.2	3.56
30		30	5.28	0.79	23.7	4.17
35		35	6.16	0.76	26.6	4.68
40		40	7.04	0.73	29.2	5.14
45		45	7.92	0.71	32.0	5.63
50		50	8.80	0.69	34.5	6.07
55		55	9.68	0.67	36.9	6.49

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from Tables A-21 and A-20 of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2001, *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*, and Table 5-1 of ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2-2001, *Energy-Efficient Design of Low-Rise Residential Buildings*.
Note: The SI units for resistance were appended to the ASHRAE I-P data by the authors.
[a]Correction factors for walls are from Standard 90.2.
[b]Roof/floor correction factors are from Standard 90.1 and are based upon 4-ft (1.2-m) o.c. metal trusses that penetrate the insulation and 0.66-in. (16.8-mm) crossbars every 1 ft (0.3 m).

TABLE E.9 Comparison of U-Factors for Framed Walls and Structural Insulated Panels (SIP)

	Cavity R-Value[a]		*Center-of-Insulated Whole-Wall R-Value*[b]		*Wall U-Factor*[c]	
	I-P	***SI***	***I-P***	***SI***	***I-P***	***SI***
Component	**°F ft² h / Btu**	**K m² / W**	**°F ft² h / Btu**	**K m² / W**	**Btu / °F ft² h**	**W / k m²**
2-in. × 4-in. insulated stud wall at 16-in. o.c. (50 × 100 mm at 400 mm)	13.6	2.40	9.6	1.69	0.104	0.59
2-in. × 6-in. insulated stud wall at 24-in. o.c. (50 × 150 mm at 600 mm)	19.6	3.46	13.7	2.41	0.073	0.41
6 ½-in. SIP (165 mm)	25.1	4.35	21.6	3.80	0.046	0.26

Source: Oak Ridge National Laboratory (in *Environmental Building News*, 7(5) May 1998.
[a]Center-of-insulated-cavity R-value is the maximum total R-value through a cross section of the wall system, including insulation, sheathing, drywall, etc.
[b]Whole-wall R-value is an average value that includes adjustments for the framing as well as some openings in a standardized wall system.
[c]U-factors calculated by the authors and appended to Oak Ridge R-value data; SI dimensions also appended by the authors.

TABLE E.10 Transmission Coefficients (U-Factors) for Wood and Steel Doors

Nominal Door Thickness			*Wood Storm Door*[a]		*Metal Storm Door*[b]		*No Storm Door*	
			I-P	*SI*	*I-P*	*SI*	*I-P*	*SI*
in.	**mm**		**Btu/h ft² °F**	**W/m² K**	**Btu/h ft² °F**	**W/m² K**	**Btu/h ft² °F**	**W/m² K**
Unglazed Wood Doors[c,d]								
1⅜	35	Panel door with 7/16-in. (11-mm) panels[e]	0.33	1.87	0.37	2.10	0.57	3.24
1⅜	35	Hollow core flush door	0.30	1.70	0.32	1.82	0.47	2.67
1⅜	35	Solid core flush door	0.26	1.48	0.28	1.59	0.39	2.21
1¾	45	Panel door with 7/16-in. (11-mm) panels	0.32	1.82	0.36	2.04	0.54	3.07
1¾	45	Hollow core flush door	0.29	1.65	0.32	1.82	0.46	2.61
1¾	45	Panel door with 1 1/8-in. (29-mm) panels	0.26	1.48	0.28	1.59	0.39	2.21
1¾	45	Solid core flush door	—	—	0.26	1.48	0.40	2.27
2¼	57	Solid core flush door	0.20	1.14	0.21	1.19	0.27	1.53
Unglazed Steel Doors[d]								
1¾	45	Fiberglass or mineral wool core with steel stiffeners, no thermal break[f]			—	—	0.60	3.41
1¾	45	Paper honeycomb core without thermal break[f]			—	—	0.56	3.18
1¾	45	Solid urethane foam core without thermal break[c]			—	—	0.40	2.27
1¾	45	Solid fire-rated mineral fiberboard core without thermal break[f]			—	—	0.38	2.16
1¾	45	Polystyrene core without thermal break[f] (18-gage [1.31-mm] commercial steel)			—	—	0.35	1.99
1¾	45	Polyurethane core without thermal break[f] (24-gage [0.70-mm] residential steel)			—	—	0.29	1.65
1¾	45	Polyurethane core with thermal break and wood perimeter[f] (24-gage [0.70-mm] residential steel)			—	—	0.20	1.14
1¾	45	Solid urethane foam core with thermal break[c]			0.16	0.91	0.20	1.14

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* (Chapter 25, Table 6).
Note: U-factors listed are for exterior doors with no glazing, except for the storm doors, which are in addition to the main exterior door. Any glazing area in exterior doors should be included with the appropriate glass type and analyzed as a window (see Table E.14). Interpolation and moderate extrapolation are permitted for door thicknesses other than those specified.
[a]Values for wood storm door are approximately 50% glass.
[b]Values for metal storm door are for any percentage of glass area.
[c]Values are based on a nominal 32-in. × 80-in. (810-mm × 2030-mm) door size with no glazing.
[d]Outside air conditions: 15 mph (24 km/h) wind speed, 0°F (–18°C) air temperature; inside air conditions: natural convection, 70°F (21°C) air temperature.
[e]A 55% panel area.
[f]ASTM C 236 hot box data on a nominal 3-ft × 7-ft (910-mm × 2130-mm) door size with no glazing.

TABLE E.11 Heat Loss Coefficients (F_2) for Slab-on-Grade Floors

		I-P *Btu/h °F ft Perimeter Degree Days 65°F base*			*SI* *W/K m Perimeter Degree Days 18°C base*		
Construction[a]	**Insulation**	**2950**	**5350**	**7433**	**1640**	**2970**	**4130**
(a) Block wall, 8 in. (200 mm), brick facing	Uninsulated	0.62	0.68	0.72	1.07	1.17	1.24
	Insulated from edge to footer: R-5.4 h ft² °F/Btu (SI: R-0.95 m² K/W)	0.48	0.50	0.56	0.83	0.86	0.97
(b) Block wall, 4 in. (100 mm), brick facing	Uninsulated	0.80	0.84	0.93	1.38	1.45	1.61
	Insulated from edge to footer: R-5.4 h ft² °F/Btu (SI: R-0.95 m² K/W)	0.47	0.49	0.54	0.81	0.85	0.93
(c) Metal stud wall, stucco	Uninsulated	1.15	1.20	1.34	1.99	2.07	2.32
	Insulated from edge to footer: R-5.4 h ft² °F/Btu (SI: R-0.95 m² K/W)	0.51	0.53	0.58	0.88	0.92	1.00
(d) Poured concrete wall with duct near perimeter[b]	Uninsulated	1.84	2.12	2.73	3.18	3.67	4.72
	Insulated from edge to footer, and 3 ft. [910 mm] under floor slab R-5.4 h ft² °F/Btu (SI: R-0.95 m² K/W)	0.64	0.72	0.90	1.11	1.24	1.56

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*. The SI units for F_2 shown in the last three columns were appended to the ASHRAE I-P data by the authors.

[a]See Fig. E.1 for illustrations of the listed constructions.

[b]Weighted average temperature of heating duct was assumed to be 110°F (43°C) during the heating season (outdoor air temperature less than 65°F [18°C]).

Note: To use this table:

$$q = F_2 P \Delta t$$

where

q = heat loss through perimeter (Btu/h or W)
F_2 = heat loss coefficients from above
P = perimeter of exposed slab edge (ft or m)
Δt = temperature difference between indoor and outdoor air (°F or °C).

Do not assume additional losses from the slab to the earth below. Heat gains are assumed to be nonexistent.

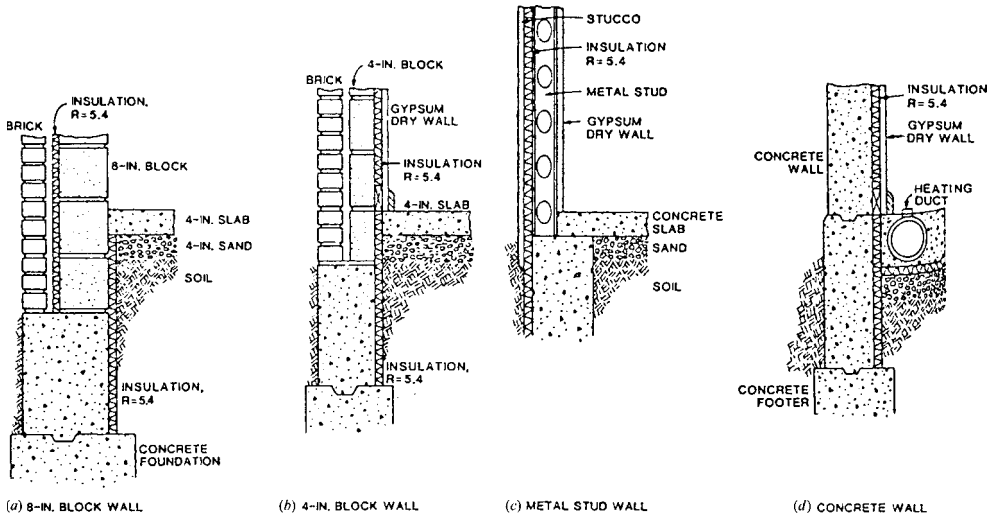


Fig. E.1 *Insulation and construction configurations for Table E.11 data (heat loss coefficients for slab-on-grade floors). Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from 2001* ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals.

TABLE E.12 Heat Flow Coefficients (F_2) for Slab-on-Grade Floors with Various Insulation Strategies

	F_2	
	I-P	*SI*
R-Value, Position, and Width (or Depth) of Insulation	**(Btu/h ft °F)**	**(W/m K)**
Uninsulated slab	0.73	1.26
R-5 (SI: R-0.88) Horizontal insulation, 2 ft (0.6 m), no thermal break	0.70	1.21
R-10 (SI: R-1.76) Horizontal insulation, 2 ft (0.6 m), no thermal break	0.70	1.21
R-15 (SI: R-2.64) Horizontal insulation, 2 ft (0.6 m), no thermal break	0.69	1.19
R-5 (SI: R-0.88) Horizontal insulation, 4 ft (1.2 m), no thermal break	0.67	1.16
R-10 (SI: R-1.76) Horizontal insulation, 4 ft (1.2 m), no thermal break	0.64	1.11
R-15 (SI: R-2.64) Horizontal insulation, 4 ft (1.2 m), no thermal break	0.63	1.09
R-5 (SI: R-0.88) Vertical insulation, 2 ft (0.6 m)	0.58	1.00
R-10 (SI: R-1.76) Vertical insulation, 2 ft (0.6 m)	0.54	0.93
R-15 (SI: R-2.64) Vertical insulation, 2 ft (0.6 m)	0.52	0.90
R-5 (SI: R-0.88) Vertical insulation, 4 ft (1.2 m)	0.54	0.93
R-10 (SI: R-1.76) Vertical insulation, 4 ft (1.2 m)	0.48	0.83
R-15 (SI: R-2.64) Vertical insulation, 4 ft (1.2 m)	0.45	0.78
R-10 (SI: R-1.76) Fully insulated slab (insulated under entire slab as well as around edge)	0.36	0.62

Source: *Super Good Cents Heat Loss Reference*, Vol. 1, Ecotope Group, for Bonneville Power Administration, 1988.
Insulation is extruded polystyrene, R = 5.0 h ft² °F/Btu-in. (SI: R = 34.7 m K/W).
Soil conductivity is 0.75 Btu/h ft °F (1.30 W/K m).
No thermal break at edge of slab, where so indicated. If a thermal break is provided with horizontal insulation, use the corresponding value for vertical insulation.
Values assume an unheated slab (as per data in Table A-16 of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2001, *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*); F_2 values increase substantially when slab is heated.

TABLE E.13 Heat Flow through Below-Grade Walls and Floors[a]

Part A. Basement Walls

SI				*Depth*		*Path Length through Soil*		*I-P*			
Heat Loss[b] (W/m² K)								*Heat Loss[b] (Btu/h ft² °F)*			
Uninsulated	**R = 0.73**	**R = 1.47**	**R = 2.20**	**m**	**(ft)**	**m**	**(ft)**	**Uninsulated**	**R = 4.17**	**R = 8.34**	**R = 12.5**
2.33	0.86	0.53	0.38	0–0.3	(0–1)	0.2	(0.68)	0.410	0.152	0.093	0.067
1.26	0.66	0.45	0.36	0.3–0.6	(1–2)	0.69	(2.27)	0.222	0.116	0.079	0.059
0.88	0.53	0.38	0.30	0.6–0.9	(2–3)	1.18	(3.88)	0.155	0.094	0.068	0.053
0.67	0.45	0.34	0.27	0.9–1.2	(3–4)	1.68	(5.52)	0.119	0.079	0.060	0.048
0.54	0.39	0.30	0.25	1.2–1.5	(4–5)	2.15	(7.05)	0.096	0.069	0.053	0.044
0.45	0.34	0.27	0.23	1.5–1.8	(5–6)	2.64	(8.65)	0.079	0.060	0.048	0.040
0.39	0.30	0.25	0.21	1.8–2.1	(6–7)	3.13	(10.28)	0.069	0.054	0.044	0.037

Part B. Basement Floors

SI				*Depth of Foundation Wall*		*I-P*			
Heat Loss[b] (W/m² K), Width of House in Meters				*Below Grade*		*Heat Loss[b] (Btu/h ft² °F), Width of House in Feet*			
6	**7.3**	**8.5**	**9.7**	**m**	**(ft)**	**20**	**24**	**28**	**32**
0.18	0.16	0.15	0.13	1.5	(5)	0.032	0.029	0.026	0.023
0.17	0.15	0.14	0.12	1.8	(6)	0.030	0.027	0.025	0.022
0.16	0.15	0.13	0.12	2.1	(7)	0.029	0.026	0.023	0.021

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.
[a]Only heat losses are assumed because the interior temperature is normally higher than the ground temperature.
[b]Soil conductivity assumed to be 1.38 W/m K (9.6 Btu-in./h ft² °F).

TABLE E.14 U-Factors of Representative Window Assemblies

Glazing System Description	Aluminum without Thermal Break I-P: Btu/h ft² °F (SI: W/m² K)	Aluminum with Thermal Break I-P: Btu/h ft² °F (SI: W/m² K)	Insulated Wood/ Vinyl I-P: Btu/h ft² °F (SI: W/m² K)	Fiberglass/ Vinyl I-P: Btu/h ft² °F (SI: W/m² K)
Single glazing with uncoated 1/8 in. [3.2 mm] clear pane	1.27 (7.21)	1.08 (6.13)	0.89 (5.03)	0.81 (4.60)
Single glazing with uncoated 1/4 in. [6.4 mm] acrylic/polycarbonate pane	1.14 (6.47)	0.96 (5.45)	0.78 (4.43)	0.71 (4.03)
Double glazing with 1/8 in. [3.2 mm] panes: uncoated clear I clear with 1/4 in. [6.4 mm] air space	0.87 (4.94)	0.65 (3.69)	0.55 (3.12)	0.49 (2.78)
Double glazing with 1/8 in. [3.2 mm] panes: uncoated clear I clear with 1/2 in. [13 mm] air space	0.81 (4.60)	0.60 (3.41)	0.51 (2.90)	0.44 (2.50)
Double glazing with 1/8 in. [3.2 mm] panes: uncoated clear I low-e (0.2) on surface[b] 3 with ½ in. [13 mm] air space	0.71 (4.03)	0.51 (2.90)	0.42 (2.39)	0.36 (2.04)
Triple glazing with 1/8 in. [3.2 mm] panes: uncoated clear I clear with 1/2 in. [13 mm] air spaces	0.67 (3.80)	0.46 (2.61)	0.39 (2.21)	0.34 (1.93)
Triple glazing with 1/8 in. [3.2 mm] panes: uncoated clear I low-e (0.2) on surfaces[b] 3 and 5 with ½ in. [13 mm] air spaces	0.58 (3.29)	0.38 (2.16)	0.31 (1.76)	0.27 (1.53)
Quadruple glazing with 1/8 in. [3.2 mm] panes: uncoated clear I low-e (0.1) on surfaces[b] 3 and 5 with 1/2 in. [13 mm] air spaces	0.54 (3.07)	0.34 (1.93)	0.28 (1.59)	0.24 (1.36)

Source: Excerpted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* (Chapter 30, Table 4).

[a]Based upon an operable 3-ft × 5-ft (0.9-m × 1.5-m) aluminum-framed window.

[b]Glazing surfaces are numbered starting with the surface closest to the sun; thus, surface 2 would be the inner surface of an exterior pane of glass.

TABLE E.15 Representative Window Characteristics[a]

Glazing Description and Reference Number	Layers of Glazing and Spaces (outside to inside)	Frame (and spacer)	*Total Window U-Factor*		*Total Window Solar and Optical Properties*					*Total Window Air Leakage*			
			I-P	*SI*						*I-P*	*SI*	*I-P*	*SI*
			Btu/h ft² °F	W/m² K	SHGC[b]	VT[c]	LSG[d]	FHR[e]	FCR[e]	cfm/lin ft	L/s m	cfm/ ft²	L/s m²
1. Single-glazed clear	⅛ in. (3 mm) clear	Aluminum, no thermal break	1.30	7.38	0.79	0.69	0.87	0	0	0.65	1.01	0.98	4.98
2. Single-glazed bronze	⅛ in. (3 mm) bronze	Aluminum, no thermal break	1.30	7.38	0.69	0.52	0.75	–2	8	0.65	1.01	0.98	4.98
3. Double-glazed clear	⅛ in. (3 mm) clear ½ in. (13 mm) air ⅛ in. (3 mm) clear	Aluminum, thermal break (aluminum)	0.64	3.63	0.65	0.62	0.95	19	12	0.37	0.57	0.56	2.85
4. Double-glazed bronze	⅛ in. (3 mm) bronze ½ in. (13 mm) air ⅛ in. (3 mm) clear	Aluminum, thermal break (aluminum)	0.64	3.63	0.55	0.47	0.85	17	20	0.37	0.57	0.56	2.85
5. Double-glazed clear	⅛ in. (3 mm) clear ½ in. (13 mm) air ⅛ in. (3 mm) clear	Wood or vinyl (aluminum)	0.49	2.78	0.58	0.57	0.98	24	18	0.37	0.57	0.56	2.85
6. Double-glazed bronze	⅛ in. (3 mm) bronze ½ in. (13 mm) air ⅛ in. (3 mm) clear	Wood or vinyl (aluminum)	0.49	2.78	0.48	0.43	0.90	22	25	0.37	0.57	0.56	2.85
7. Double-glazed low-ε[f]	⅛ in. (3 mm) clear ½ in. (13 mm) argon ⅛ in. (3 mm) low-ε 0.20	Wood or vinyl (stainless)	0.33	1.87	0.55	0.52	0.95	32	19	0.10	0.16	0.15	0.76
8. Double-glazed low-ε[f]	⅛ in. (3 mm) low-ε 0.08 ½ in. (13 mm) argon ⅛ in. (3 mm) clear	Wood or vinyl (stainless)	0.30	1.70	0.44	0.56	1.27	32	27	0.10	0.16	0.15	0.76
9. Double-glazed spectrally selective[f]	⅛ in. (3 mm) low-ε 0.04 ½ in. (13 mm) argon ⅛ in. (3 mm) clear	Wood or vinyl (stainless)	0.29	1.65	0.31	0.51	1.65	30	36	0.10	0.16	0.15	0.76

TABLE E.15 Representative Window Characteristics[a] (*Continued*)

Glazing Description and Reference Number	Layers of Glazing and Spaces (outside to inside)	Frame (and spacer)	*Total Window U-Factor* *I-P* Btu/h ft² °F	*SI* W/m² K	*Total Window Solar and Optical Properties* SHGC[b]	VT[c]	LSG[d]	FHR[e]	FCR[e]	*Total Window Air Leakage* *I-P* cfm/lin ft	*SI* L/s m	*I-P* cfm/ft²	*SI* L/s m²
10. Double-glazed spectrally selective[f]	1/8 in. (3 mm) low-ε 0.10 1/2 in. (13 mm) argon 1/8 in. (3 mm) clear	Wood or vinyl (stainless)	0.31	1.76	0.26	0.31	1.19	27	40	0.10	0.16	0.15	0.76
11. Triple-glazed low-ε[f] superwindow	1/8 in. (3 mm) low-ε 0.08 1/2 in. (13 mm) krypton 1/8 in. (3 mm) clear 1/2 in. (13 mm) krypton 1/8 in. (3 mm) low-ε 0.08	Insulated vinyl (insulated)	0.15	0.85	0.37	0.48	1.30	38	33	0.05	0.08	0.08	0.41
12. Triple-glazed clear	1/8 in. (3 mm) clear 1/2 in. (13 mm) air 1/8 in. (3 mm) clear 1/2 in. (13 mm) air 1/8 in. (3 mm) clear	Wood or vinyl (stainless)	0.34	1.93	0.52	0.53	1.02	32	22	0.10	0.16	0.15	0.76

Source: *Residential Windows: A Guide to New Technologies and Energy Performance*, by John Carmody, Stephen Selkowitz, and Lisa Heschong. © 1996 by John Carmody, Stephen Selkowitz and Lisa Heschong. Adapted by permission of W. W. Norton & Company, New York. (SI units appended by the authors.)

[a]Based upon a casement window, 2 ft × 4 ft (610 mm × 1220 mm).

[b]Solar heat gain coefficient (higher numbers mean more solar heat flow).

[c]Visible transmittance (higher numbers mean more light transmitted).

[d]Light-to-solar gain ratio, LSG = VT/SHGC. For typical center-of-glass values for VT and SHGC, see Table E.18.

[e]FHR (fenestration heating rating) and FCR (fenestration cooling rating) are heating season and cooling season (respectively) estimates of the percentage of energy saved in a typical residential application compared to using window 1.

[f]Low-ε ratings indicate what percentage of the long-wavelength radiant energy is admitted; 0.20 therefore admits 20% and reflects 80%.

TABLE E.16 Representative Skylight U-Factors[a]

Part A. I-P Units (Btu/h ft² °F)							
	Manufactured Skylight[b]				*Site-Assembled Glazing[c]*		
Glazing	Aluminum, Thermal Break No	Aluminum, Thermal Break Yes	Reinforced Vinyl/ Aluminum-Clad Wood	Wood/ Vinyl	Aluminum, Thermal Break No	Aluminum, Thermal Break Yes	Structural Glazing
Single glazed	1.98	1.89	1.75	1.47	1.36	1.25	1.25
Double glazed, ½-in. gap	1.30	1.10	1.04	0.84	0.81	0.69	0.65
Double glazed, ½-in. gap, argon low-ε 0.20 on surface[d] 2 or 3	1.15	0.95	0.89	0.68	0.66	0.55	0.51
Double glazed, ½-in. gap, argon low-ε 0.10 on surface[d] 2 or 3	1.13	0.93	0.87	0.67	0.65	0.53	0.49
Double glazed, ½-in. gap, low-ε 0.05 on surface[d] 2 or 3	1.11	0.91	0.85	0.65	0.63	0.52	0.47
Triple glazed, ½-in. gaps	1.10	0.87	0.81	0.61	0.62	0.51	0.45
Triple glazed, ½-in. gaps, argon low-ε 0.10 on surfaces[d] 2 or 3 and 4 or 5	0.95	0.72	0.67	0.47	0.48	0.37	0.31
Part B. SI Units (W/m² K)							
	Manufactured Skylight[b]				*Site-Assembled Glazing[c]*		
Glazing	Aluminum, Thermal Break No	Aluminum, Thermal Break Yes	Reinforced Vinyl/ Aluminum-Clad Wood	Wood/ Vinyl	Aluminum, Thermal Break No	Aluminum, Thermal Break Yes	Structural Glazing
Single glazed	11.24	10.73	9.94	8.35	7.72	7.10	7.10
Double glazed, 12.7 mm gap	7.38	6.25	5.91	4.77	4.60	3.92	3.69
Double glazed, 12.7 mm gap, argon, low-ε 0.20 on surface[d] 2 or 3	6.53	5.39	5.05	3.86	3.75	3.12	2.90
Double glazed, 12.7 mm gap, argon, low-ε 0.10 on surface[d] 2 or 3	6.42	5.28	4.94	3.80	3.69	3.01	2.78
Double glazed, 12.7 mm gap, low-ε 0.05 on surface[d] 2 or 3	6.30	5.17	4.83	3.69	3.58	2.95	2.67
Triple glazed, 12.7 mm gaps	6.25	4.94	4.60	3.46	3.52	2.90	2.56
Triple glazed, 12.7-mm gaps, argon, low-ε 0.10 on surfaces[d] 2 or 3 and 4 or 5	5.39	4.09	3.80	2.67	2.73	2.10	1.76

Source: Excerpted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*. The SI values were appended to ASHRAE's I-P data by the authors.

[a]All glazings are $^1/_8$-in. (3-mm) thickness. Winter conditions, 15-mph (24-km/h) wind with 0°F (–18°C) outside, 70°F (21°C) inside, no solar radiation. Glazing is sloped at 20° from the horizontal.

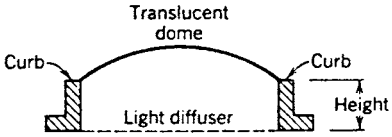
[b]Skylight is 2 ft × 4 ft (600 mm × 1200 mm) with frame width as follows: aluminum (with or without thermal break), 0.7 in. (18 mm); wood/vinyl/aluminum-clad, 0.9 in. (23 mm); structural glazing, not applicable.

[c]Site-assembled glazing size is 4 ft × 4 ft (1200 mm × 1200 mm) with aluminum frame width of 2.25 in. (57 mm), structural glazing width of 2.5 in. (64 mm).

[d]Glazing layer surfaces are numbered from outside to inside.

TABLE E.17 Solar Heat Gain Coefficients (SHGC) for Plastic Domed Horizontal Skylights

		Curb (See Sketch Below)			
Dome	**Light Diffuser (Translucent)**	**Height, in. (mm)**	**Width-to-Height Ratio**	**Solar Heat Gain Coefficient**	**U-Factor at Center of Skylight[b]**
Clear ($\tau = 0.86$[a])	Yes ($\tau = 0.58$)	0 (0)	∞	0.53	0.46 (2.6)
		9 (230)	5	0.50	0.43 (2.4)
		18 (460)	2.5	0.44	0.40 (2.3)
Clear ($\tau = 0.86$)	None	0 (0)	∞	0.86	0.80 (4.5)
		9 (230)	5	0.77	0.75 (4.3)
		18 (460)	2.5	0.70	0.70 (4.0)
Translucent ($\tau = 0.52$)	None	0 (0)	∞	0.50	0.80 (4.5)
		18 (460)	2.5	0.40	0.70 (4.0)
Translucent ($\tau = 0.27$)	None	0 (0)	∞	0.30	0.80 (4.5)
		9 (230)	5	0.26	0.75 (4.3)
		18 (460)	2.5	0.24	0.70 (4.0)



Source: Excerpted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* (solar heat gain coefficients) and the 1981 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* (U-factors).
[a]τ refers to the transmittance of the dome or diffusing element, as noted.
[b]U-factor units: Btu/h ft^2 °F (W/m^2 K).

TABLE E.18 Solar Optical Properties of Representative Glazings and Window Assemblies

Glazing System Description	Center of Glazing VT	Center of Glazing SHGC[a]	Window Assembly VT[a,b]	Window Assembly SHGC[a,b]
Single Glazings—with ¼ in. (6.4 mm) panes except as noted				
Uncoated ⅛ in. [3.2 mm] clear	0.90	0.86	0.77	0.75
Uncoated clear	0.88	0.81	0.75	0.71
Uncoated bronze	0.54	0.62	0.45	0.54
Uncoated green	0.76	0.60	0.65	0.53
Uncoated gray	0.46	0.59	0.39	0.53
Reflective stainless steel on clear (8%)	0.08	0.19	0.07	0.18
Reflective stainless steel on clear (20%)	0.20	0.31	0.17	0.28
Double Glazings—all with ¼ in. (6.4 mm) panes				
Uncoated clear ❙ clear	0.78	0.70	0.66	0.61
Uncoated bronze ❙ clear	0.47	0.49	0.40	0.44
Uncoated high-performance green ❙ clear	0.59	0.39	0.50	0.35
Reflective stainless steel on clear (8%) ❙ clear	0.07	0.13	0.06	0.13
Reflective titanium on clear (20%) ❙ clear	0.18	0.21	0.15	0.20
Clear ❙ low-e (0.2) on surface[c] 3	0.73	0.65	0.62	0.57
Low-e (0.2) on surface 2 ❙ clear	0.73	0.60	0.62	0.53
Low-e (0.1) on surface 2 ❙ clear	0.72	0.60	0.61	0.45
Low-e (0.05) on surface 2 ❙ clear	0.70	0.37	0.60	0.34
Triple Glazings—all with ¼ in. (6.4 mm) panes				
Clear ❙ clear ❙ clear	0.70	0.61	0.60	0.54
High-performance green ❙ clear ❙ clear	0.53	0.32	0.45	0.31
Low-e (0.2) on surface 2 ❙ clear ❙ clear	0.64	0.53	0.54	0.47
Low-e (0.1) on surface 2 ❙ clear ❙ low-e (0.1) on surface 5	0.59	0.36	0.50	0.33
Low-e (0.05) on surface 2 ❙ low-e (0.05) on surface 4 ❙ clear	0.55	0.26	0.47	0.24

Source: Excerpted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* (Chapter 30, Table 13).

[a]Values are for a normal angle of solar incidence, see the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* for SHGC values at other incidence angles.

[b]Based upon an operable 3-ft × 5-ft (0.9-m × 1.5-m) aluminum-framed window.

[c]Glazing surfaces are numbered starting with the surface closest to the sun; thus, surface 2 would be the inner surface of an exterior pane of glass.

TABLE E.19 Solar Optical Properties of Transparent Plastics

	Transmittance		
Type of Plastic	**Visible**	**Solar**	**SC[a]**
Acrylic			
Clear	0.92	0.85	0.98
Gray tint	0.16	0.27	0.52
Gray tint	0.33	0.41	0.63
Gray tint	0.45	0.55	0.74
Gray tint	0.59	0.62	0.80
Gray tint	0.76	0.74	0.89
Bronze tint	0.27	0.35	0.58
Bronze tint	0.49	0.56	0.75
Bronze tint	0.61	0.62	0.80
Bronze tint	0.75	0.75	0.90
Reflective[b]	0.14	0.12	0.21
Polycarbonate			
Clear, ⅛ in. (3 mm)	0.88	0.82	0.98
Gray or bronze, ⅛ in. (3 mm)	0.50	0.57	0.74

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.
[a]Shading coefficient; multiply SC by 0.87 for an approximate estimation of SHGC (solar heat gain coefficient).
[b]Aluminum metalized polyester film on plastic.

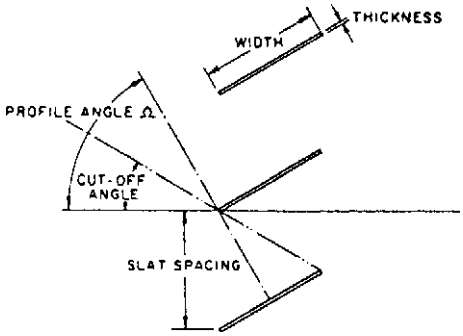
TABLE E.20 Approximate Shading Coefficients (SC) of External Shading Devices

Awnings	
Of venetian blind type, ⅔ drawn	0.43
Of venetian blind type, fully drawn	0.15
Dark or medium canvas	0.25
Shading screens	0.28–0.23
Louvers, movable	0.15–0.10
Overhang: continuous, completely shading window	0.25
Dense tree casting heavy shade	0.25

Source: Adapted from V. Olgyay, *Design with Climate*. 1963. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.

TABLE E.21 Shading Coefficients (SC) for Louvered Sun Screens

Profile Angle, (deg)	*Group 1*[a]		*Group 2*[b]		*Group 3*[c]		*Group 4*[d]		*Group 5*[e]		*Group 6*[f]	
	Trans-mittance	SC	Trans-mittance	SC	Trans-mittance	SC	Trans-mittance	SC	Trans-mittance	SC	Trans-mittance	SC
10	0.23	0.35	0.25	0.33	0.40	0.51	0.48	0.59	0.15	0.27	0.26	0.45
20	0.06	0.17	0.14	0.23	0.32	0.42	0.39	0.50	0.04	0.11	0.20	0.35
30	0.04	0.15	0.12	0.21	0.21	0.31	0.28	0.38	0.03	0.10	0.13	0.26
≥40	0.04	0.15	0.11	0.20	0.07	0.18	0.20	0.30	0.03	0.10	0.04	0.13



Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from the 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

Note: The 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* presents a different and more complex methodology for determining solar gain through externally shaded glazing systems—involving the variables F_u (unshaded fraction of glazing) and EAC (exterior solar attenuation coefficient). The methodology and associated data are not presented here, as they are less intuitive and less suited to hand calculations than the older SC data presented in this table. Refer to the 2001 *Handbook* (and subsequent editions) for this new information.

[a]*Group* 1: Black, width over spacing ratio 1.15/1; 23 louvers/in. (1.1 mm between louvers), with ¼-in. (6.4-mm) single clear glass.

[b]*Group* 2: Light color; high reflectance, otherwise same as group 1.

[c]*Group* 3: Black or dark color; width over spacing ratio 0.85/1; 17 louvers/in. (1.5 mm between louvers), with ¼-in. (6.4-mm) single clear glass.

[d]*Group* 4: Light color or unpainted aluminum; high reflectance; otherwise same as group 3.

[e]*Group* 5: Same as group 1, except two lights of ¼-in. (6.4-mm) clear glass with ½-in. (12.7-mm) air space.

[f]*Group* 6: Same as group 3, except two lights of ¼-in. (6.4-mm) clear glass with ½-in. (12.7-mm) air space.

TABLE E.22 Performance Characteristics of Adjustable Sunshading

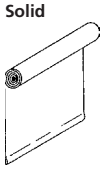
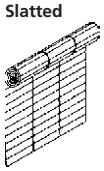
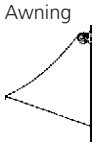
Shading Type	Typical Orientations	Solar Heat Rejection	Daylight Distribution	Ventilation	View	Winter Night Insulation
Roll-down Shades **Solid** 	East and west, where it is rolled down daily during hours of direct sun exposure.	Blocks direct, diffuse, and reflected radiation. Heat builds up between shade and glass unless vented.	Translucent shades diffuse light evenly but may become a source of glare due to brightness. If shades are colored, incoming light will be colored.	Blocks ventilation airflow.	Blocks view.	Can be effective if airflow around the shade is blocked (providing dead air space).
Slatted 	East and west, where it is rolled down daily during hours of direct sun exposure.	Blocks most direct, diffuse, and reflected radiation. Heat can convect through slats into space.	A thinly striped pattern of direct sun is admitted. Opaque slats will heavily filter daylight.	Greatly reduces ventilation airflow.	Substantially obstructs and filters view.	No value unless slats can be fitted together to close openings and trap air between shade and glass.
Fold-out Retractable Awning 	Any orientation. On south, awnings can be deep and be left in position for weeks at a time.	Blocks direct sun; admits most diffuse and reflected radiation. Heat collected on awning easily dissipated outside of building.	Translucent awnings evenly diffuse sunlight. (Colored awnings will color light.) Awnings can redirect ground-reflected light into building for distribution by ceiling.	Blocks view of sky; permits view of ground and some surroundings (depending upon positioning).	Reduces ventilation airflow somewhat, tends to direct wind upward into space.	If awning folds back against window, it can provide some insulation value—but likely limited.
Pivoting Louvers **Horizontal** 	South; also used on other elevations (although less effective).	Blocks direct sun; admits ground-reflected and some diffuse radiation.	Skylight can be reflected to ceiling plane for distribution into building. Ground-reflected light can be reflected into space.	Reduces ventilation airflow somewhat (based upon louver spacing); directs wind upward into space.	Blocks sky view; filters ground and surrounding views (depending upon angle of louvers).	Closed louvers can provide some insulation value (depending upon tightness of closure).
Vertical 	East and west; also used on north. Not as effective on south as horizontal louvers.	Blocks direct sun; admits most ground-reflected and diffuse radiation.	Blocks direct sunlight; admits most ground-reflected and diffuse light.	Reduces ventilation airflow somewhat (to extent of solidity); directs wind sideways into space.	Filters view, especially to sides.	Closed louvers can provide some insulation value (depending upon tightness of closure).

TABLE E.23 Shading Coefficients (SC) for Glazing with Integral or Interior Shading

Part A. SC for Insulating Glass[a] with Indoor Shading by Venetian Blinds or Roller Shades

		Solar Transmittance[b]		*Type of Shading*				
				Venetian Blinds[c]		*Roller Shade*		
						Opaque		*Translucent*
Type of Glass	**Nominal Thickness, Each Light**	**Outer Pane**	**Inner Pane**	**Medium**	**Light**	**Dark**	**White**	**Light**
Clear out	⅛ in. (3.2 mm)	0.87	0.87	0.62	0.58 (45° open)	0.71	0.35	0.40
Clear in				0.63	0.58 (closed)[d]			
Heat-absorbing[e] out	¼ in. (6.4 mm)	0.46	0.80	0.39	0.36	0.40	0.22	0.30
Clear in								
Reflective coated glass								
SC[f] = 0.20				0.19	0.18			
0.30				0.27	0.26			
0.40				0.34	0.33			

Part B. Shading Coefficients for Double Glazing with Between-Glass Shading

		Solar Transmittance[b]			*Type of Shading*		
					Venetian Blinds		
Type of Glass	**Nominal Thickness, Each Pane**	**Outer Pane**	**Inner Pane**	**Description of Air Space**	**Light**	**Medium**	**Louvered Sun Screen**
Clear out Clear in	⅛ in. (3.2 mm)	0.87	0.87	Shade in contact with glass or shade separated from glass by airspace	0.33	0.36	0.43
Clear out Clear in	¼ in. (6.4 mm)	0.80	0.80	Shade in contact with glass; voids filled with plastic	—	—	0.49

TABLE E.23 Shading Coefficients (SC) for Glazing with Integral or Interior Shading (*Continued*)

Part B. Shading Coefficients for Double Glazing with Between-Glass Shading *(Continued)*

		Solar Transmittance[b]			*Type of Shading*		
					Venetian Blinds		
Type of Glass	**Nominal Thickness, Each Pane**	**Outer Pane**	**Inner Pane**	**Description of Air Space**	**Light**	**Medium**	**Louvered Sun Screen**
Heat-absorbing[e] out Clear in	¼ in. (6 mm)	0.46	0.80	Shade in contact with glass or shade separated from glass by airspace	0.28	0.30	0.37
				Shade in contact with glass; voids filled with plastic	—	—	0.41

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

Note: The 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* presents a different and more complex methodology for determining solar gain through internally and integrally shaded glazing systems—involving the variables IAC and BAC (interior and between-glass solar attenuation coefficients, respectively). The methodology and associated data are not presented here, as they are less intuitive and less suited to hand calculations than the older SC data presented in this table. Refer to the 2001 *Handbook* (and subsequent editions) for this new information.

[a]Factory-manufactured units with 3⁄16-in. (4.8-mm), ¼-in. (6.4-mm), or ½-in. (12.7-mm) air space.

[b]Refer to manufacturers' literature for exact values.

[c]For vertical blinds with opaque, white, or beige louvers, tightly closed, SC is approximately the same as for opaque white roller shades.

[d]Use these values only when operation is automated for solar gain reduction (as opposed to daylight use).

[e]Refers to bronze or green-tinted, heat-absorbing glass.

[f]SC for glass with no shading device.

TABLE E.24 Shading Coefficients (SC) for Single and Insulating Glass with Draperies

		Range of Shading Coefficients		
			Drapery Fabrics[b]	
Glazing	**Glass Trans.**	**Glass SC**[a]	**High Transmittance, Low Reflectance**[c]	**Low Transmittance, High Reflectance**[c]
Single Glass				
⅛ in. (3.2 mm) clear	0.86	1.00	0.87	0.37
¼ in. (6.4 mm) clear	0.80	0.95	0.80	0.35
½ in. (12.7 mm) clear	0.71	0.88	0.74	0.35
¼ in. (6.4 mm) heat absorbing	0.46	0.67	0.57	0.33
½ in. (12.7 mm) heat absorbing	0.24	0.50	0.43	0.30
Reflective coated (see manufacturers' literature for exact values)	—	0.60	0.57	0.33
	—	0.50	0.46	0.31
	—	0.40	0.36	0.26
	—	0.30	0.25	0.20
Insulating Glass, ½ in. (12.7 mm) air space				
Clear out and clear in	0.64	0.83	0.66	0.35
Heat absorbing out and clear in	0.37	0.55	0.49	0.32
Reflective coated (see manufacturers' literature for exact values)	—	0.40	0.38	0.28
	—	0.30	0.29	0.24
	—	0.20	0.19	0.15

Source: Based upon the 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, published by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.

Note: The 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* presents a different and more complex methodology for determining solar gain through internally shaded glazing systems—involving the variable IAC (interior solar attenuation coefficient). The methodology and associated data are not presented here, as they are less intuitive and less suited to hand calculations than the older SC data presented in this table E. Refer to the 2001 *Handbook* (and subsequent editions) for this new information.

[a]For glass alone, with no drapery.

[b]Draperies of 100% fullness, loose hanging.

[c]See the 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*, Chapter 27, Table 29, for more detailed listings.

TABLE E.25 Minimum Ventilation Rates in Breathing Zone (for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential)

	People Outdoor Air Rate		*Area Outdoor Air Rate*			*Default Values*		
	R_p		R_A		*Notes*	*Occupant Density*	*Combined Outdoor Air Rate*	
Occupancy Category	**I-P: cfm/Person**	**SI: L/s Person**	**I-P: cfm/ft²**	**SI: L/s m²**		**#/1000 ft2 (#/100 m²)**	**I-P: cfm/Person**	**SI: L/s Person**
Correctional Facilities								
Cell	5	2.5	0.12	0.6		25 (26.9)	10	4.9
Day room	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		30 (32.3)	7	3.5
Guard stations	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		15 (16.1)	9	4.5
Booking/waiting	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		50 (53.8)	9	4.4
Educational Facilities								
Daycare (through age 4)	10	5	0.18	0.9		25 (26.9)	17	8.6
Classrooms (ages 5–8)	10	5	0.12	0.6		25 (26.9)	15	7.4
Classrooms (age 9 plus)	10	5	0.12	0.6		35 (37.7)	13	6.7
Lecture classroom	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		65 (70.0)	8	4.3
Lecture hall (fixed seats)	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		150 (161)	8	4.0
Art classroom	10	5	0.18	0.9		20 (21.5)	19	9.5
Science laboratories	10	5	0.18	0.9		25 (26.9)	17	8.6
Wood/metal shop	10	5	0.18	0.9		20 (21.5)	19	9.5
Computer lab	10	5	0.12	0.6		25 (26.9)	15	7.4
Media center	10	5	0.12	0.6	A	25 (26.9)	15	7.4
Music/theater/dance	10	5	0.06	0.3		35 (37.7)	12	5.9
Multi-use assembly	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		100 (108)	8	4.1
Food and Beverage Service								
Restaurant dining rooms	7.5	3.8	0.18	0.9		70 (75.3)	10	5.1
Cafeteria/fast food dining	7.5	3.8	0.18	0.9		100 (108)	9	4.7
Bars, cocktail lounges	7.5	3.8	0.18	0.9		100 (108)	9	4.7
General								
Conference/meeting	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		50 (53.8)	6	3.1
Corridors	—	—	0.06	0.3		—		
Storage rooms	—	—	0.12	0.6	B	—		
Hotels, Motels, Resorts, Dormitories								
Bedroom/living room	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		10 (10.8)	11	5.5
Barracks sleeping areas	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		20 (21.5)	8	4

Lobbies/prefunction	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		30 (32.3)	10	4.8
Multi-purpose assembly	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		120 (129)	6	2.8
Office Buildings								
Office space	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		5 (5.4)	17	8.5
Reception areas	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		30 (32.3)	7	3.5
Telephone/data entry	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		60 (64.6)	6	3
Main entry lobbies	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		10 (10.8)	11	5.5
Miscellaneous spaces								
Bank vaults/safe deposit	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		5 (5.4)	17	8.5
Computer (not printing)	5	2.5	0.06	0.3		4 (4.3)	20	10
Pharmacy (prep. area)	5	2.5	0.18	0.9		10 (10.8)	23	11.5
Photo studios	5	2.5	0.12	0.6		10 (10.8)	17	8.5
Shipping/receiving	—	—	0.12	0.6	B	—		
Transportation waiting	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		100 (108)	8	4.1
Warehouses	—	—	0.06	0.3	B	—		
Public Assembly Spaces								
Auditorium seating area	5.0	2.5	0.06	0.3		150 (161)	5	2.7
Places of religious worship	5.0	2.5	0.06	0.3		120 (129)	6	2.8
Courtrooms	5.0	2.5	0.06	0.3		70 (75.3)	6	2.9
Legislative chambers	5.0	2.5	0.06	0.3		50 (53.8)	6	3.1
Libraries	5.0	2.5	0.12	0.6		10 (10.8)	17	8.5
Lobbies	5.0	2.5	0.06	0.3		150 (161)	5	2.7
Museums (children's)	7.5	3.8	0.12	0.6		40 (43.0)	11	5.3
Museums/galleries	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		40 (43.0)	9	4.6
Retail								
Sales (except as below)	7.5	3.8	0.12	0.6		15 (16.1)	16	7.8
Mall common areas	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		40 (43.0)	9	4.6
Barber shop	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		25 (26.9)	10	5
Beauty and nail salons	20	10	0.12	0.6		25 (26.9)	25	12.4
Pet shops (animal areas)	7.5	3.8	0.18	0.9		10 (10.8)	26	12.8
Supermarket	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		8 (8.6)	15	7.6
Coin-operated laundries	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		20 (21.5)	11	5.3

TABLE E.25 Minimum Ventilation Rates in Breathing Zone (for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential) (*Continued*)

	People Outdoor Air Rate		*Area Outdoor Air Rate*			*Default Values*		
	R_p		R_A		*Notes*	*Occupant Density*	*Combined Outdoor Air Rate*	
Occupancy Category	**I-P: cfm/Person**	**SI: L/s Person**	**I-P: cfm/ft²**	**SI: L/s m²**		**#/1000 ft² (#/100 m²)**	**I-P: cfm/Person**	**SI: L/s Person**
Sports and entertainment								
Sports arena (play area)	—	—	0.3	1.5		—		
Gym, stadium (play area)	—	—	0.3	1.5		30 (32.3)		
Spectator areas	7.5	3.8	0.06	0.3		150 (161)	8	4
Swimming (pool and deck)	—	—	0.48	2.4	C	—		
Disco/dance floors	20	10	0.06	0.3		100 (108)	21	10.3
Health club/aerobics room	20	10	0.06	0.3		40 (43.0)	22	10.8
Health club/weight rooms	20	10	0.06	0.3		10 (10.8)	26	13
Bowling alley (seating)	10	5	0.12	0.6		40 (43.0)	13	6.5
Gambling casinos	7.5	3.8	0.18	0.9		120 (129)	9	4.6
Game arcades	7.5	3.8	0.18	0.9		20 (21.5)	17	8.3
Stages, studios	10	5	0.06	0.3	D	70 (75.3)	11	5.4

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from *Addendum n* to ANSI / ASHRAE Standard 62-2001, *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality*. SI conversions for population density added by the authors of this book (not part of original source).

General Notes

1. *Related Requirements:* The rates in this table are based on all other requirements of Standard 62-2001 (with addenda) being met.
2. *Smoking:* This table applies to no-smoking areas. Rates for smoking-permitted spaces must be determined using other means.
3. *Air Density:* Volumetric airflow rates are based on an air density of 1.2 kg_{da}/m^3 (0.075 lb_{da}/ft^3), which corresponds to dry air at a barometric pressure of 101.3 kPa (1 atm) and an air temperature of 21°C (70°F). Rates may be adjusted for actual density, but such adjustment is not required for compliance with this standard.
4. *Default Occupant Density:* The default occupant density shall be used when actual occupant density is not known.
5. *Default Combined Outdoor Air Rate (per person):* This rate is based on the default occupant density.
6. *Unlisted Occupancies:* If the occupancy category for a proposed space or zone is not listed, the requirements for the listed occupancy category that is most similar in terms of occupant density, activities, and building construction shall be used.
7. *Residential Facilities, Health Care Facilities, and Vehicles:* Rates shall be determined in accordance with Appendix E (of Standard 62-2001).

Item-Specific Notes:

A. For high school and college libraries, use values shown for Public Spaces—Libraries.
B. Rate may not be sufficient when stored materials include those having potentially harmful emissions.
C. Rate does not allow for humidity control. Additional ventilation or dehumidification may be required to remove moisture.
D. Rate does not include special exhaust for stage effects, e.g., dry ice vapors, smoke.

TABLE E.26 Recommended Ventilation and Exhaust Air Requirements—Low-Rise Residential

Part A: Ventilation Air: cfm (L/s)					
Floor Area ft^2 (m^2)	0–1 Bedroom	2–3 Bedrooms	4–5 Bedrooms	6–7 Bedrooms	>7 Bedrooms
<1500 (<139)	30 (14)	45 (21)	60 (28)	75 (35)	90 (42)
1501–3000 (139.1–279)	45 (21)	60 (28)	75 (35)	90 (42)	105 (50)
3001–4500 (279.1–418)	60 (28)	75 (35)	90 (42)	105 (50)	120 (57)
4501–6000 (418.1–557)	75 (35)	90 (42)	105 (50)	120 (57)	135 (64)
6001–7500 (557.1–697)	90 (42)	105 (50)	120 (57)	135 (64)	150 (71)
>7500 (>697)	105 (50)	120 (57)	135 (64)	150 (71)	165 (78)

Part B: Exhaust Air
If ***continuous***—local ventilation exhaust air flow rates:
Kitchen: 5 air changes per hour (based upon kitchen volume)
Bathroom: 20 cfm [10 L/s]
If ***intermittent***—local ventilation exhaust air flow rates:
Kitchen: 100 cfm (50 L/s) (vented range hood required if exhaust fan flow rate is less than 5 kitchen air changes per hour)
Bathroom: 50 cfm (25 L/s)

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from ASHRAE Standard 62.2-2003, *Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Low-Rise Residential Buildings*. See Standard 62.2 for definitions, assumptions, implementation, and exceptions.

TABLE E.27 Estimated Overall Infiltration Rates for Small Buildings

Part A. Construction Types

Construction Type	Description
Tight	Good multifamily residential construction with close-fitting doors, windows, and framing is considered tight. New houses with full vapor retarder, no fireplace, well-fitted windows, weather-stripped door s, one-story, and less than 1500 ft² (140 m²) floor area fall into this category.
Medium	Medium structures include new two-story frame houses or one-story houses more than 10 years old with average maintenance, a floor area greater than 1500 ft² (140 m²), average-fit windows and doors, and a fireplace with damper and glass closure. Below-average multifamily construction falls in this category.
Loose	Loose structures are poorly constructed single and multifamily residences with poorly fitted windows and doors. Examples include houses more than 20 years old, of average maintenance, having a fireplace without damper or glass closure, or having more than an average number of vented appliances. Average manufactured homes are in this category.

Part B. Design Infiltration Rate (ACH) for Winter: Indoors 68ºF (20ºC); Wind Speed = 15 mph (6.7 m/s)

	Winter Outdoor Design Temperature									
Construction Type	**ºF: 50**	**40**	**30**	**20**	**10**	**0**	**–10**	**–20**	**–30**	**–40**
	ºC: 10	**4**	**–1**	**–7**	**–12**	**–18**	**–23**	**–29**	**–34**	**–40**
Tight	0.41	0.43	0.45	0.47	0.49	0.51	0.53	0.55	0.57	0.59
Medium	0.69	0.73	0.77	0.81	0.85	0.89	0.93	0.97	1.00	1.05
Loose	1.11	1.15	1.20	1.23	1.27	1.30	1.35	1.40	1.43	1.47

Part C. Design Infiltration Rate (ACH) for Summer: Indoors 75ºF (24ºC); Wind Speed = 7.5 mph (3.4 m/s)

	Summer Outdoor Design Temperature					
Construction Type	**ºF: 85**	**90**	**95**	**100**	**105**	**110**
	ºC: 29	**32**	**35**	**38**	**41**	**43**
Tight	0.33	0.34	0.35	0.36	0.37	0.38
Medium	0.46	0.48	0.50	0.52	0.54	0.56
Loose	0.68	0.70	0.72	0.74	0.76	0.78

Part D. Infiltration Rates per Unit Floor Area

Ceiling Height	Air Flow	*Air Changes per Hour*																	
		0.3	**0.4**	**0.5**	**0.6**	**0.7**	**0.8**	**0.9**	**1.0**	**1.1**	**1.2**	**1.3**	**1.4**	**1.5**	**1.6**	**1.7**	**1.8**	**1.9**	**2.0**
7.5 ft	cfm/ft²	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.08	0.09	0.10	0.11	0.13	0.14	0.15	0.16	0.18	0.19	0.20	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.25
2.3 m	L/s m²	0.20	0.25	0.31	0.41	0.46	0.51	0.56	0.66	0.71	0.76	0.81	0.91	0.97	1.02	1.07	1.17	1.22	1.27
8.0 ft	cfm/ft²	0.04	0.05	0.07	0.08	0.09	0.11	0.12	0.13	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.19	0.20	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.26	0.27
2.4 m	L/s m²	0.20	0.25	0.36	0.41	0.46	0.56	0.61	0.66	0.76	0.81	0.86	0.97	1.02	1.07	1.17	1.22	1.32	1.37
8.5 ft	cfm/ft²	0.04	0.06	0.07	0.09	0.10	0.11	0.13	0.14	0.16	0.17	0.18	0.20	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.26	0.27	0.28
2.6 m	L/s m²	0.20	0.31	0.36	0.46	0.51	0.56	0.66	0.71	0.81	0.86	0.91	1.02	1.07	1.17	1.22	1.32	1.37	1.42
9.0 ft	cfm/ft²	0.05	0.06	0.08	0.09	0.11	0.12	0.14	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.20	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.26	0.27	0.29	0.30
2.7 m	L/s m²	0.25	0.31	0.41	0.46	0.56	0.61	0.71	0.76	0.86	0.91	1.02	1.07	1.17	1.22	1.32	1.37	1.47	1.52

TABLE E.27 Estimated Overall Infiltration Rates for Small Buildings (*Continued*)

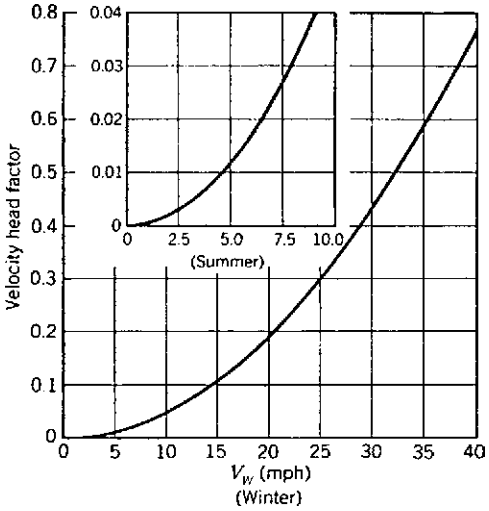
Part E. Infiltration Heat Flow Rates per Unit Floor Area

Ceiling Height	Units	*Air Changes per Hour*																	
7.5 ft	Btu/h ft² °F	0.04	0.05	0.07	0.08	0.09	0.11	0.12	0.14	0.15	0.16	0.18	0.20	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.24	0.26	0.27
2.3 m	W/m² K	0.23	0.28	0.40	0.45	0.51	0.63	0.68	0.80	0.85	0.91	1.02	1.14	1.14	1.25	1.31	1.36	1.48	1.53
8.0 ft	Btu/h ft² °F	0.04	0.06	0.07	0.09	0.10	0.12	0.13	0.14	0.16	0.17	0.19	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.24	0.26	0.27	0.29
2.4 m	W/m² K	0.23	0.34	0.40	0.51	0.57	0.68	0.74	0.80	0.91	0.97	1.08	1.25	1.25	1.31	1.36	1.48	1.53	1.65
8.5 ft	Btu/h ft² °F	0.05	0.06	0.08	0.09	0.11	0.12	0.14	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.20	0.23	0.23	0.24	0.26	0.28	0.29	0.30
2.4 m	W/m² K	0.28	0.34	0.45	0.51	0.63	0.68	0.80	0.85	0.97	1.02	1.14	1.31	1.31	1.36	1.48	1.59	1.65	1.70
9.0 ft	Btu/h ft² °F	0.05	0.06	0.08	0.10	0.11	0.13	0.15	0.16	0.18	0.19	0.21	0.24	0.24	0.26	0.28	0.29	0.31	0.32
2 .4 m	W/m² K	0.28	0.34	0.45	0.57	0.63	0.74	0.85	0.91	1.02	1.08	1.19	1.36	1.36	1.48	1.59	1.65	1.76	1.82

Sources: Parts A through C reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. from the 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*; Parts D and E from *ASHRAE Cooling and Heating Load Calculation Manual*, 1979; SI units appended by the authors.

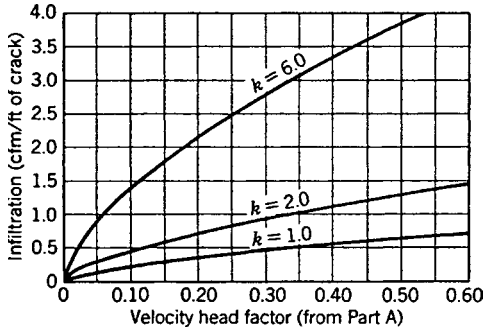
TABLE E.28 Approximate Infiltration through Doors and Windows of Small Buildings

Part A. Converting Wind Speed to Velocity Head Factor



Note: Design conditions are often assumed as:
Winter wind V_w = 15 mph (6.7 m/s) corresponding to a velocity head factor of 0.105
Summer wind V_w = 7.5 mph (3.4 m/s) corresponding to a velocity head factor of 0.028

Part B. Infiltration Rates for Velocity Head Factors



Note: Enter this graph with velocity head factor (from Part A) to find infiltration rate in cfm/ft of crack (using values of *k* found in Part C or D). L/s per m = (cfm/ft) (0.646).

TABLE E.28 Approximate Infiltration through Doors and Windows of Small Buildings (*Continued*)

Part C. Classifications of Windows for Infiltration		
Window Fit	**Wood Double-Hung (Locked)**	**Other Types**
Tight, $k = 1.0$	Weather stripped: average gap (1/64 in. [0.4 mm] crack).	Wood casement and awning windows; weather stripped. Metal casement windows; weather stripped.
Average, $k = 2.0$	Non–weather stripped: average gap (1/64 in. [0.4 mm] crack): or weather stripped: large gap (3/32 in. [2.4 mm] crack).	All types of vertical and horizontal sliding windows; weather stripped. If average gap (1/64 in. [0.4 mm] crack), this could be tight-fitting window. Metal casement windows; non–weather stripped. If large gap (3/32 in. [2.4 mm] crack), this could be a loose-fitting window.
Loose, $k = 6.0$	Non–weather stripped: large gap (3/32 in. [2.4 mm] crack).	Vertical and horizontal sliding windows; non–weather stripped.

Part D. Classification of Residential-type Doors for Infiltration	
Door Fit	**Comments**
Tight, $k = 1.0$	Very small perimeter gap and perfect fit weather stripping—often characteristic of new doors.
Average, $k = 2.0$	Small perimeter gap having stop trim fitting properly around door; weather stripped.
Loose, $k = 6.0$	Large perimeter gap having poor fitting stop trim; weather stripped. or Small perimeter gap; no weather stripping.

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA, from *Cooling and Heating Load Calculation Manual*, 2nd edition, 1992. SI units appended by the authors.

APPENDIX F

Heating and Cooling Design Guidelines and Information

This appendix provides data to support the design and analysis processes presented in Chapter 8.

F.1 Glazing Areas for Passive Solar Buildings
F.2 Thermal Mass for Passive Solar Buildings
F.3 Estimating Summer Heat Gains
F.4 Passive Solar Building Characteristics
F.5 Design Temperature Differences for Opaque Envelope Assemblies
F.6 Heat Gains (Cooling Loads) through Glass
F.7 Heat Gains (Cooling Loads) Due to Infiltration/ Ventilation
F.8 Heat Gains from Building Occupants
F.9 Heat Gains from Office Equipment
F.10 Heat Gains from Appliances
F.11 Climate Data for Building Cooling
F.12 Design Data for Earth Tubes
F.13 Psychrometric Charts

F.1 GLAZING AREAS FOR PASSIVE SOLAR BUILDINGS

TABLE F.1 Design Guidelines for Passive Solar Glazing Area

	Area of Solar Glazing[a] as Ratio of Floor Area		*Approximate SSF Values*			
			Standard Performance[b]		*Superior Performance[c]*	
Location	**Low**	**High**	**Low**	**High**	**Low**	**High**
Birmingham, Alabama	0.09	0.18	22	37	34	58
Mobile, Alabama	0.06	0.12	26	44	34	60
Montgomery, Alabama	0.07	0.15	24	41	34	59
Phoenix, Arizona	0.06	0.12	37	60	48	75
Prescott, Arizona	0.10	0.20	29	48	44	72
Tucson, Arizona	0.06	0.12	35	57	45	73
Winslow, Arizona	0.12	0.24	30	47	48	74
Yuma, Arizona	0.04	0.09	43	66	51	78
Fort Smith, Arkansas	0.10	0.20	24	39	38	64
Little Rock, Arkansas	0.10	0.19	23	38	37	62
Bakersfield, California	0.08	0.15	31	50	42	67
Daggett, California	0.07	0.15	35	56	46	73
Fresno, California	0.09	0.17	29	46	41	65
Long Beach, California	0.05	0.10	35	58	44	72
Los Angeles, California	0.05	0.09	36	58	44	72
Mount Shasta, California	0.11	0.21	24	38	42	67
Needles, California	0.06	0.12	39	61	49	76
Oakland, California	0.07	0.15	35	55	46	72
Red Bluff, California	0.09	0.18	29	46	41	65
Sacramento, California	0.09	0.18	29	47	41	66
San Diego, California	0.04	0.09	37	61	46	74
San Francisco, California	0.06	0.13	34	54	45	71
Santa Maria, California	0.05	0.11	31	53	42	69
Colorado Springs, Colorado	0.12	0.24	27	42	47	74
Denver, Colorado	0.12	0.23	27	43	47	74
Eagle, Colorado	0.14	0.29	25	35	53	77
Grand Junction, Colorado	0.13	0.27	29	43	50	76
Pueblo, Colorado	0.11	0.23	29	45	48	75
Hartford, Connecticut	0.17	0.35	14	19	40	64
Wilmington, Delaware	0.15	0.29	19	30	39	63
Washington, DC	0.12	0.23	18	28	37	61
Apalachicola, Florida	0.05	0.10	28	47	36	61
Daytona Beach, Florida	0.04	0.08	30	51	36	63
Jacksonville, Florida	0.05	0.09	27	47	35	62
Miami, Florida	0.01	0.02	27	48	31	54
Orlando, Florida	0.03	0.06	30	52	37	63
Tallahassee, Florida	0.05	0.11	26	45	35	60
Tampa, Florida	0.03	0.06	30	52	36	63
West Palm Beach, Florida	0.01	0.03	30	51	34	59
Atlanta, Georgia	0.08	0.17	22	36	34	58
Augusta, Georgia	0.08	0.16	24	40	35	60
Macon, Georgia	0.07	0.15	25	41	35	59
Savannah, Georgia	0.06	0.13	25	43	35	60
Boise, Idaho	0.14	0.28	27	38	48	71
Lewiston, Idaho	0.15	0.29	22	29	44	65
Pocatello, Idaho	0.13	0.26	25	35	51	74
Chicago, Illinois	0.17	0.35	17	23	43	67
Moline, Illinois	0.20	0.39	17	22	46	70
Springfield, Illinois	0.15	0.30	19	28	42	67
Evansville, Indiana	0.14	0.27	19	29	37	61
Fort Wayne, Indiana	0.16	0.33	13	17	37	60
Indianapolis, Indiana	0.14	0.28	15	21	37	60
South Bend, Indiana	0.18	0.35	12	15	39	61
Burlington, Iowa	0.18	0.36	20	27	47	71
Des Moines, Iowa	0.21	0.43	19	25	50	75
Mason City, Iowa	0.22	0.44	18	19	56	79
Sioux City, Iowa	0.23	0.46	20	24	53	76
Dodge City, Kansas	0.12	0.23	27	42	46	73
Goodland, Kansas	0.13	0.27	26	39	47	74
Topeka, Kansas	0.14	0.28	24	35	45	71
Wichita, Kansas	0.14	0.28	26	41	45	72
Lexington, Kentucky	0.13	0.27	17	26	35	58
Louisville, Kentucky	0.13	0.27	18	27	35	59
Baton Rouge, Louisiana	0.06	0.12	26	43	34	59

TABLE F.1 Design Guidelines for Passive Solar Glazing Area *(Continued)*

	Area of Solar Glazing[a] as Ratio of Floor Area		*Approximate SSF Values*				
			Standard Performance[b]			*Superior Performance[c]*	
Location	**Low**	**High**	**Low**		**High**	**Low**	**High**
Lake Charles, Louisiana	0.06	0.11	24		41	32	57
New Orleans, Louisiana	0.05	0.11	27		46	35	61
Shreveport, Louisiana	0.08	0.15	26		43	36	61
Caribou, Maine	0.25	0.50	—	NR[c]	—	53	74
Portland, Maine	0.17	0.34	14		17	45	69
Baltimore, Maryland	0.14	0.27	19		30	38	62
Boston, Massachusetts	0.15	0.29	17		25	40	64
Alpena, Michigan	0.21	0.42	—	NR	—	47	69
Detroit, Michigan	0.17	0.34	13		17	39	61
Flint, Michigan	0.15	0.31	11		12	40	62
Grand Rapids, Michigan	0.19	0.38	12		13	39	61
Sault Ste. Marie, Michigan	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	50	70
Traverse City, Michigan	0.18	0.36	—	NR	—	42	62
Duluth, Minnesota	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	50	70
International Falls, Minnesota	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	47	66
Minneapolis–St. Paul, Minnesota	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	55	76
Rochester, Minnesota	0.24	0.49	—	NR	—	54	76
Jackson, Mississippi	0.08	0.15	24		40	34	59
Meridian, Mississippi	0.08	0.15	23		39	34	58
Columbia, Missouri	0.13	0.26	20		30	41	66
Kansas City, Missouri	0.14	0.29	22		32	44	70
Saint Louis, Missouri	0.15	0.29	21		33	41	65
Springfield, Missouri	0.13	0.26	22		34	40	65
Billings, Montana	0.16	0.32	24		31	53	76
Cut Bank, Montana	0.24	0.49	22		23	62	81
Dillon, Montana	0.16	0.32	24		32	54	77
Glasgow, Montana	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	55	75
Great Falls, Montana	0.18	0.37	23		28	56	77
Helena, Montana	0.20	0.39	21		25	55	77
Lewistown, Montana	0.19	0.38	21		25	54	76
Miles City, Montana	0.23	0.47	21		23	60	80
Missoula, Montana	0.18	0.36	15		16	47	68
Grand Island, Nebraska	0.18	0.36	24		33	51	76
North Omaha, Nebraska	0.20	0.40	21		29	51	76
North Platte, Nebraska	0.17	0.34	25		36	50	76
Scotts Bluff, Nebraska	0.16	0.31	24		36	49	74
Elko, Nevada	0.12	0.25	27		39	52	76
Ely, Nevada	0.12	0.23	27		41	50	77
Las Vegas, Nevada	0.09	0.18	35		56	48	75
Lovelock, Nevada	0.13	0.25	32		48	53	78
Reno, Nevada	0.11	0.22	31		48	49	76
Tonopah, Nevada	0.11	0.23	31		48	51	77
Winnemucca, Nevada	0.13	0.26	28		42	49	75
Concord, New Hampshire	0.17	0.34	13		15	45	68
Newark, New Jersey	0.13	0.25	19		29	39	64
Albuquerque, New Mexico	0.11	0.22	29		47	46	73
Clayton, New Mexico	0.10	0.20	28		45	45	73
Farmington, New Mexico	0.12	0.24	29		45	49	76
Los Alamos, New Mexico	0.11	0.22	25		40	44	72
Roswell, New Mexico	0.10	0.19	30		49	45	73
Truth or Consequences, New Mexico	0.09	0.17	32		51	46	73
Tucumcari, New Mexico	0.10	0.20	30		48	45	73
Zuñi, New Mexico	0.11	0.21	27		43	45	73
Albany, New York	0.21	0.41	13		15	43	66
Binghamton, New York	0.15	0.30	—	NR	—	35	56
Buffalo, New York	0.19	0.37	—	NR	—	36	57
Massena, New York	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	50	71
New York (Central Park), New York	0.15	0.30	16		25	36	59
Rochester, New York	0.18	0.37	—	NR	—	37	58
Syracuse, New York	0.19	0.38	—	NR	—	37	59
Asheville, North Carolina	0.10	0.20	21		35	36	61
Cape Hatteras, North Carolina	0.09	0.17	24		40	36	60
Charlotte, North Carolina	0.08	0.17	23		38	36	60
Greensboro, North Carolina	0.10	0.20	23		37	37	63

TABLE F.1 Design Guidelines for Passive Solar Glazing Area *(Continued)*

	Area of Solar Glazing[a] as Ratio of Floor Area		*Approximate SSF Values*				
			Standard Performance[b]			*Superior Performance[c]*	
Location	**Low**	**High**	**Low**		**High**	**Low**	**High**
Raleigh–Durham, North Carolina	0.09	0.19	22		37	36	61
Bismarck, North Dakota	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	56	77
Fargo, North Dakota	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	51	72
Minot, North Dakota	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	52	72
Akron–Canton, Ohio	0.15	0.31	12		16	35	57
Cincinnati, Ohio	0.12	0.24	15		23	35	57
Cleveland, Ohio	0.15	0.31	11		14	34	55
Columbus, Ohio	0.14	0.28	13		18	35	57
Dayton, Ohio	0.14	0.28	14		20	36	59
Toledo, Ohio	0.17	0.34	13		17	38	61
Youngstown, Ohio	0.16	0.32	—	NR	—	34	54
Oklahoma City, Oklahoma	0.11	0.22	25		41	41	67
Tulsa, Oklahoma	0.11	0.22	24		38	40	65
Astoria, Oregon	0.09	0.19	21		34	37	60
Burns, Oregon	0.13	0.25	23		32	47	71
Medford, Oregon	0.12	0.24	21		32	38	60
North Bend, Oregon	0.09	0.17	25		42	38	64
Pendleton, Oregon	0.14	0.27	22		30	43	64
Portland, Oregon	0.13	0.26	21		31	38	60
Redmond, Oregon	0.13	0.27	26		38	47	71
Salem, Oregon	0.12	0.24	21		32	37	59
Allentown, Pennsylvania	0.15	0.29	16		24	39	63
Erie, Pennsylvania	0.17	0.34	—	NR	—	35	55
Harrisburg, Pennsylvania	0.13	0.26	17		26	38	62
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania	0.15	0.29	19		29	38	62
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania	0.14	0.28	12		16	33	55
Wilkes Barre–Scranton, Pennsylvania	0.16	0.32	13		18	37	60
Providence, Rhode Island	0.15	0.30	17		24	40	64
Charleston, South Carolina	0.07	0.14	25		41	34	59
Columbia, South Carolina	0.08	0.17	25		41	36	61
Greenville–Spartanburg, South Carolina	0.08	0.17	23		38	36	60
Huron, South Dakota	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	58	79
Pierre, South Dakota	0.22	0.43	21		23	58	80
Rapid City, South Dakota	0.15	0.30	23		32	51	76
Sioux Falls, South Dakota	0.22	0.45	18		19	57	79
Chattanooga, Tennessee	0.09	0.19	19		32	33	56
Knoxville, Tennessee	0.09	0.18	20		33	33	56
Memphis, Tennessee	0.09	0.19	22		36	36	60
Nashville, Tennessee	0.10	0.21	19		30	33	55
Abilene, Texas	0.09	0.18	29		47	41	68
Amarillo, Texas	0.11	0.22	29		46	45	72
Austin, Texas	0.06	0.13	27		46	37	63
Brownsville, Texas	0.03	0.06	27		46	32	57
Corpus Christi, Texas	0.05	0.09	29		49	36	63
Dallas, Texas	0.08	0.17	27		44	38	64
Del Rio, Texas	0.06	0.12	30		50	39	66
El Paso, Texas	0.09	0.17	32		53	45	72
Fort Worth, Texas	0.09	0.17	26		44	38	64
Houston, Texas	0.06	0.11	25		43	34	59
Laredo, Texas	0.05	0.09	31		52	39	64
Lubbock, Texas	0.09	0.19	30		49	44	72
Lufkin, Texas	0.07	0.14	26		43	35	61
Midland–Odessa, Texas	0.09	0.18	32		52	44	72
Port Arthur, Texas	0.06	0.11	26		44	34	60
San Angelo, Texas	0.08	0.15	29		48	40	67
San Antonio, Texas	0.06	0.12	28		48	38	64
Sherman, Texas	0.10	0.20	25		41	38	64
Waco, Texas	0.08	0.15	27		45	38	64
Wichita Falls, Texas	0.10	0.20	27		45	41	67
Bryce Canyon, Utah	0.13	0.25	26		39	52	78
Cedar City, Utah	0.12	0.24	28		43	48	75
Salt Lake City, Utah	0.13	0.26	27		39	48	72
Burlington, Vermont	0.22	0.43	—	NR	—	46	68

TABLE F.1 Design Guidelines for Passive Solar Glazing Area *(Continued)*

Location	Area of Solar Glazing[a] as Ratio of Floor Area		Approximate SSF Values			
			Standard Performance[b]		Superior Performance[c]	
	Low	High	Low	High	Low	High
Norfolk, Virginia	0.09	0.19	23	38	37	62
Richmond, Virginia	0.11	0.22	21	34	37	61
Roanoke, Virginia	0.11	0.23	21	34	37	61
Olympia, Washington	0.12	0.23	20	29	38	59
Seattle–Tacoma, Washington	0.11	0.22	21	30	39	59
Spokane, Washington	0.20	0.39	20	24	48	68
Yakima, Washington	0.18	0.36	24	31	49	70
Charleston, West Virginia	0.13	0.25	16	24	32	54
Huntington, West Virginia	0.13	0.25	17	27	34	57
Eau Claire, Wisconsin	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	53	75
Green Bay, Wisconsin	0.23	0.46	—	NR	—	53	75
La Crosse, Wisconsin	0.21	0.43	—	NR	—	52	75
Madison, Wisconsin	0.20	0.40	15	17	51	74
Milwaukee, Wisconsin	0.18	0.35	15	18	48	71
Casper, Wyoming	0.13	0.26	27	39	53	78
Cheyenne, Wyoming	0.11	0.21	25	39	47	74
Rock Springs, Wyoming	0.14	0.28	26	38	54	79
Sheridan, Wyoming	0.16	0.31	22	30	52	75
CANADA						
Edmonton, Alberta	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	54	72
Suffield, Alberta	0.25	0.50	28	30	67	85
Nanaimo, British Columbia	0.13	0.26	26	35	45	66
Vancouver, British Columbia	0.13	0.26	20	28	40	60
Winnipeg, Manitoba	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	54	74
Dartmouth, Nova Scotia	0.14	0.28	17	24	45	70
Moosonee, Ontario	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	48	67
Ottawa, Ontario	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	59	80
Toronto, Ontario	0.18	0.36	17	23	44	68
Normandin, Quebec	0.25	0.50	—	NR	—	54	74

Source: Adapted from J. D. Balcomb et al. (1980). *Passive Solar Design Handbook*, Vol. 2 (*Passive Solar Design Analysis*), U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, DC.

NR = not recommended. SSF = solar savings fraction.

[a]Due south–facing openings are assumed.

[b]Double-glazed, clear glass (approximately equal to window 3, Table E.15).

[c]Either movable window insulation of R-9 (RSI-1.6), in place from 5:30 p.m. to 7:30 a.m., solar time, or superwindows (approximately equal to window 7 or 12, Table E.15) with an overall U-factor near 0.30 (U-SI of 1.7).

F.2 THERMAL MASS FOR PASSIVE SOLAR BUILDINGS

TABLE F.2 Design Guidelines for Passive Solar Thermal Mass

Expected Solar Savings Fraction (SSF), %	Thermal Storage by Weight/Collector Area				Recommended Effective[a] Thermal Storage Area Per Unit Area of Solar Collection Area	
	Water		Masonry		Water Surface Area[b]	Masonry Surface Area[c]
	lb/ft²	kg/m²	lb/ft²	kg/m²	Collector Surface Area	Collector Surface Area
10	6	29	30	147	0.1	0.7
20	12	59	60	293	0.2	1.5
30	18	88	90	440	0.3	2.2
40	24	117	120	586	0.4	2.9
50	30	147	150	733	0.5	3.7
60	36	176	180	879	0.6	4.4
70	42	205	210	1026	0.7	5.1
80	48	234	240	1172	0.8	5.9
90	54	264	270	1319	0.9	6.6

Source: Adapted from J. D. Balcomb et al. (1980). *Passive Solar Design Handbook*, Vol. 2 (*Passive Solar Design Analysis*), U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, DC.

[a]Effective area is that area exposed at some point to direct sun during a clear winter day.

[b]For a water container 12 in. (300 mm) thick.

[c]For a 4-in.- (100-mm)-thick brick, density 123 lb/ft³ (1970 kg/m³).

F.3 ESTIMATING SUMMER HEAT GAINS

TABLE F.3 Approximate Summer Heat Gains from Occupants, Equipment, Lighting, and Envelope

Part A. Internal Heat Sources—People and Equipment

	Area per Person[a]		*Sensible Heat Gain (Btu/h ft² of Floor Area)*			*Sensible Heat Gain (W/m² of Floor Area)*		
Function	**ft²**	**m²**	**People**[b]	**Equipment**[c]	**Total**	**People**[b]	**Equipment**[c]	**Total**
Office, U.S.[c]	180–100	16.7–9.3	1.3–2.3	0.4–1.1	1.7–3.4	4.1–7.3	1.2–3.4	5.3–10.7
Office, Europe[e]			1–1.6	2.2–4.2	3.2–5.8	3–5	7–13.1	10–18.1
School: elementary, U.S.	100–20	9.3–1.9	2.3–11.5	0–0.6	2.3–12.1	7.3–36.3	0–2.0	7.3–38.3
Schools, Europe[e]			3.8–8.0	0–0.6	3.8–8.6	12–25.2	0–2.0	12.0–27.2
School: secondary, college	150–100	13.9–9.3	1.7–2.6	0–0.6	1.7–3.2	5.4–8.2	0–2.0	5.4–10.2
Health care								
Sleeping (hospital)	240	22.3	0.9	0.6[e]	1.5	2.8	2.0[e]	4.8
In-patient (clinic)	120	11.1	1.9	Varies	1.9+	6.0	Varies	6.0+
Assembly: fixed seats	15	1.4	14.0	—	14.0	44.2	—	44.2
standing space, concentrated use	15–7	1.4–0.7	21.0–45.0	0–0.5	21.0–45.5	66.3–142.0	0–1.6	66.3–143.6
Restaurant:[f]								
Fast food: dining area	15	1.4	17	3.4	20.4	53.6	10.7	64.3
Kitchen, refrigeration				17.1	17.1		54.0	54.0
Sit-down: dining area	25	2.3	10.2	5.1	15.3	32.2	16.1	48.3
Kitchen, refrigeration				7.2	7.2		22.7	22.7
Mercantile: street floor	50–30	4.7–2.8	6.3–10.5	3.4	9.7–13.9	19.9–33.1	10.7	30.6–43.8
Other sales floors	60–50	5.6–4.7	5.3–6.3	3.4	8.7–9.7	16.7–19.9	10.7	27.4–30.6
Shopping center, Europe[e]			3.2	0.3–1.3	3.5–4.5	10	1.0–4.0	11.0–14.0
Warehouse	1000–300	92.9–27.9	0.4–1.2	—	0.4–1.2	1.3–3.8	—	1.3–3.8
Hotels, nursing homes	300–200	27.9–18.6	0.8–1.2	3.4	4.2–4.6	2.5–3.8	10.7	13.2–14.5
Apartments[g]	300–200	27.9–18.6	0.8–1.2	See note *g*	See note *g*	2.5–3.8	See note *g*	See note *g*

Part B. Internal Heat Sources—Electric Lighting

	Sensible Heat Gain[h] (Btu/h ft² of Floor Area)			*Sensible Heat Gain[h] (W/m² of Floor Area)*		
Function	**DF (daylight factor)<1**	**1<DF<4[h]**	**DF>4[h]**	**DF<1**	**1<DF<4[h]**	**DF>4[h]**
Office	5.1	2.0	0.5	16.1	6.3	1.6
School: elementary	6.3–6.8	2.5–2.7	0.6–0.7	19.9–21.5	7.9–8.5	1.9–2.2
School: secondary, college	6.3–6.8	2.5–2.7	0.6–0.7	19.9–21.5	7.9–8.5	1.9–2.2
Health care						
Sleeping (hospital)	6.8	2.7	0.7	21.5	8.5	2.2
In-patient (clinic)	6.8	2.7	0.7	21.5	8.5	2.2
Assembly	3.8	1.5	0.4	12.0	4.7	1.3
Restaurants[i]	6.3	2.5	0.6	19.9	7.9	1.9
Mercantile	5.1–6.8	2.0–2.7	0.5–0.7	16.1–21.5	6.3–8.5	1.6–2.2
Warehouse	2.4	1.0	0.2	7.6	3.2	0.6
Hotels, nursing homes	6.8	2.7	0.7	21.5	8.5	2.2
Apartments[g]	Up to 6.8	Up to 2.7	Up to 0.7	Up to 21.5	Up to 8.5	Up to 2.2

Part C. Heat Gain through Envelope[j]

	(Btu/h ft² of Floor Area) Outdoor Design Temperature		*(W/m² of Floor Area) Outdoor Design Temperature*	
	90°F	**100°F**	**32°C**	**38°C**
I. Gains through externally shaded windows[k]:				
Find ratio, $\frac{\text{total window area}}{\text{total floor area}}$, then multiply by	16	21	50	66
II. Gains through opaque walls:				
Find ratio, $\frac{\text{total opaque wall area}}{\text{total floor area}} \times (U_{wall})$, then multiply by	15	25	8	14
III. Gains through roofs:				
Find ratio, $\frac{\text{total opaque roof area}}{\text{total floor area}} \times (U_{roof})$, then multiply by	35	45	19	25

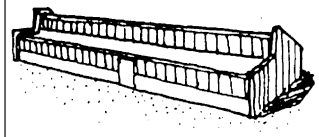
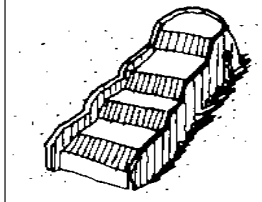
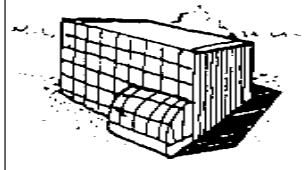
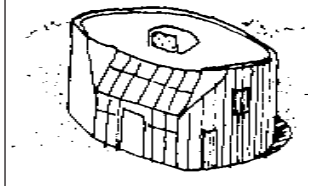
TABLE F.3 Approximate Summer Heat Gains from Occupants, Equipment, Lighting, and Envelope *(Continued)*

Part D. Summary Gains				
I. Passive cooling systems for (thermally) "open" buildings Cross-ventilation Stack ventilation Nighttime or "open" hours of thermal mass/night ventilation **Total gains: Add Parts A, B, and C to obtain cooling load, in Btu/h ft² (W/m²), of floor area.**				
II. Passive cooling systems for (thermally) "closed" buildings Roof ponds Evaporative cooling Daytime or "closed" hours of thermal mass/night ventilation **Total gains: Add Parts A, B, C, and E to obtain cooling load, in Btu/h ft² (W/m²), of floor area.**				
Part E. Gains from Infiltration/Ventilation of "Closed" Buildings				
	Outdoor Design Temperature		***Outdoor Design Temperature***	
	90°F	**100°F**	**32°C**	**38°C**
Infiltration:				
Find ratio, $\frac{\text{total window + opaque wall area}}{\text{total floor area}}$, then multiply by	1.0	1.9	3.2	6.0
Ventilation:				
Find known, $\frac{\text{total cfm of outdoor air}}{\text{total floor area, ft}^2}$, then multiply by	16	27	—	—
Find known, $\frac{\text{total L/s of outdoor air}}{\text{total floor area, m}^2}$, then multiply by	—	—	9.9	16.8

[a]Lower density from elevator population estimates, Chapter 31; higher density from fire population estimates, Chapter 24. Lower density for whole-building estimates; higher density for single-space estimates.
[b]Sensible gains per adult from Table F.8 for activities as stated.
[c]The typical "miscellaneous" load of 1 W/ft² (10.8 W/m²) produces 3.4 Btu/h ft².
[d]P. Komor, "Space Cooling Demand from Office Plug Loads," in *ASHRAE Journal*, December 1997. This is considerably lower than the typical 2 to 4 W/ft² (21.5 to 43.1 W/m²) for offices used by many designers.
[e]Adapted from S. R. Hastings (1994). *Passive Solar Commercial and Institutional Buildings*, International Energy Agency, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, UK.
[f]Based on total area of restaurant + kitchen. From ACSA (1994). *Design with PV*. Association of Collegiate Schools of Architecture, Washington, DC.; data from Electric Power Research Institute.
[g]Residential internal gains are often assumed at 230 Btu/h per occupant plus 1200 to 1600 Btu/h total from appliances (68 W per person, plus 350 to 470 W total from appliances).
[h]Adapted from Northwest Power Planning Council (1983). *Maximum Lighting Standards*, Portland, OR. Values shown for DF ≥ 1 assume automatic dimming in the presence of daylight.
[i]Lighting is often much lower in sit-down than in fast-food restaurants.
[j]Averaged from the more specific data found in Table F.5.
[k]If windows are not externally shaded, see Table F.6 for multipliers, which will vary by orientation.

F.4 PASSIVE SOLAR BUILDING CHARACTERISTICS

TABLE F.4 Design Data for Some Early Passive Solar Buildings

	Name, Function Location	Floor Area (ft^2)	Area Ratio, South Glass / Floor Area	System Type (see Apx. H)	*Approx. LCR* ACH = 1.0	*Approx. LCR* ACH = 0.5	*Approx. SSF* ACH = 1.0	*Approx. SSF* ACH = 0.5
	Dove Publication, Pecos, N.M. Office Warehouse	 2660 5040	 0.37 0.11	 DGB1 and WWB4 DGC1	37[a]	25[a]	43%[a]	51%[a]
	Karen Terry House, Santa Fe, N.M.	850	0.45	DGC1	22	17	52%	60%
	Kelbaugh House, Princeton, N.J.	1640[b]	0.49[c]	TWE2, DGB1, and SSB4	13	9	62%	72%
	First Village, Unit 1, Santa Fe, N.M.	1800[b]	0.22[c]	SSE1	49	31	38%	52%

LCR = load-to-collector ratio. ACH = air change per hour. SSF = solar saving fraction.

[a]Treating office and warehouse as one large zone.

[b]Not including sunspace floor area.

[c]Includes sunspace south glazing but not sunspace floor area.

F.5 DESIGN TEMPERATURE DIFFERENCES FOR OPAQUE ENVELOPE ASSEMBLIES

TABLE F.5 Design Equivalent Temperature Differences (DETD)

Part A. Mass Walls, Roofs, and Floors

Outdoor Design Temperature																								
29.4°C		*32.2*			*35.0*			*37.7*		*40.5*	*43.3*	Daily Temperature	*85°F*		*90*			*95*			*100*		*105*	*110*
L	M	L	M	H	L	M	H	M	H	H	H	Range[a]	L	M	L	M	H	L	M	H	M	H	H	H
												Walls												
												1. Masonry walls, 200-mm (8-in.)												
5.7	3.5	8.5	6.3	3.5	11.3	9.1	6.3	11.8	9.1	11.8	14.6	block or brick	10.3	6.3	15.3	11.3	6.3	20.3	16.3	11.3	21.3	16.3	21.3	26.3
5.0	2.7	7.7	5.5	2.7	10.5	8.3	5.5	11.1	8.3	11.1	13.8	2. Partitions, frame	9.0	5.0	14.0	10.0	5.0	19.0	15.0	10.0	20.0	15.0	20.0	25.0
1.4	0.0	4.2	1.9	0.0	6.9	4.7	1.9	7.5	4.7	7.5	10.3	masonry	2.5	0	7.5	3.5	0	12.5	8.5	3.5	13.5	8.5	13.5	18.5
												Ceilings and Roofs												
												1. Ceilings under naturally vented attic or vented flat roof												
21.1	18.8	23.8	21.6	18.8	26.6	24.4	21.6	27.2	24.4	27.2	30.0	—dark	38.0	34.0	43.0	39.0	34.0	48.0	44.0	39.0	49.0	44.0	49.0	54.0
16.6	14.9	19.4	17.2	14.4	22.2	20.0	17.2	22.7	20.0	22.7	25.5	—light	30.0	26.0	35.0	31.0	26.0	40.0	36.0	31.0	41.0	36.0	41.0	46.0
												2. Built-up roof, no ceiling												
21.1	18.8	23.3	21.6	18.8	26.6	24.4	21.6	27.2	24.4	27.2	30.0	—dark	38.0	34.0	43.0	39.0	34.0	48.0	44.0	39.0	49.0	44.0	49.0	54.0
16.6	14.9	19.4	17.2	14.4	22.2	20.2	17.2	22.7	20.0	22.7	25.5	—light	30.0	26.0	35.0	31.0	26.0	40.0	36.0	31.0	41.0	36.0	41.0	46.0
												3. Ceilings under unconditioned												
5.0	2.7	7.7	5.5	2.7	10.5	8.3	5.5	11.1	8.3	11.1	13.8	rooms	9.0	5.0	14.0	10.0	5.0	19.0	15.0	10.0	20.0	15.0	20.0	25.0
												Floors												
												1. Over unconditioned												
5.0	2.7	7.7	5.5	2.7	10.5	8.3	5.5	11.1	8.3	11.1	13.8	rooms	9.0	5.0	14.0	10.0	5.0	19.0	15.0	10.0	20.0	15.0	20.0	25.0
												2. Over basement, enclosed crawl space, or concrete												
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	slab on ground	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
												3. Over open												
5.0	2.7	7.7	5.5	2.7	10.5	8.3	5.5	11.1	8.3	11.1	13.8	crawl space	9.0	5.0	14.0	10.0	5.0	19.0	15.0	10.0	20.0	15.0	20.0	25.0

TABLE F.5 Design Equivalent Temperature Differences (DETD) *(Continued)*

Part B. Frame Walls and Doors																							
Outdoor Design Temperature **Daily Temperature Range[a]**																							
29.4°C		***32***			***35***		***38***		***41***	***43***		***85°F***		***90***			***95***			***100***		***105***	***110***
L	**M**	**L**	**M**	**H**	**L**	**M**	**H**	**M**	**H**	**H**	**H**	**Orientation**	**L**	**M**	**L**	**M**	**H**	**L**	**M**	**H**	**M**	**H**	**H**	**H**
4	2	7	4	2	10	7	4	10	7	10	13	North	8	3	13	8	3	18	13	8	18	13	18	23
8	5	11	8	5	13	11	8	13	11	13	16	NE and NW	14	9	19	14	9	24	19	14	24	19	24	29
10	7	13	10	7	16	13	10	16	13	16	18	East and West	18	13	23	18	13	28	23	18	28	23	28	33
9	6	12	9	6	14	12	9	14	12	14	17	SE and SW	16	11	21	16	11	26	21	16	26	21	26	31
6	3	9	6	3	12	9	6	12	9	12	14	South	11	6	16	11	6	21	16	11	21	16	21	26

Source: Part *A*, 1981 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals;* Part *B*, 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*; both © by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.

[a]Daily temperature range: L (low), M (medium), H (high).

From Appendix B, mean daily range column: L is less than 16°F (9°C); M is 16 to 25°F (9 to 14°C); H is greater than 25°F (14°C).

F.6 HEAT GAINS (COOLING LOADS) THROUGH GLASS

TABLE F.6 Design Cooling Load Factors through Glass

Part A. SI: W/m^2																					
Outdoor Design Temp.[a]	***Regular Single Glass***						***Regular Double Glass***						***Heat-Absorbing Double Glass***						***Clear Triple Glass***		
	29.4	**32.2**	**35.0**	**37.7**	**40.5**	**43.3**	**29.4**	**32.2**	**35.0**	**37.7**	**40.5**	**43.3**	**29.4**	**32.2**	**35.0**	**37.7**	**40.5**	**43.3**	**29.4**	**32.2**	**35.0**
No Awnings or Inside Shading																					
North	72.6	85.2	97.8	110.4	123.0	138.8	59.9	66.2	75.8	82.0	88.3	94.7	37.9	44.1	53.7	60.0	66.2	72.6	53.7	60.0	63.1
NE and NW	176.6	189.3	202.0	214.6	227.1	243.0	145.1	151.4	161.0	167.2	173.6	179.9	85.1	91.4	101.0	107.2	113.6	119.9	132.6	135.7	138.9
East and west	255.5	268.1	280.8	293.4	306.0	321.9	214.6	220.9	230.3	236.7	243.0	249.2	132.6	138.9	148.2	154.6	160.9	167.2	195.7	198.8	202.6
SE and SW	220.9	233.4	246.0	258.8	271.3	287.1	186.1	192.4	202.0	208.2	214.6	220.9	110.4	116.8	126.2	132.6	138.9	145.1	167.2	173.6	176.7
South	126.2	138.9	151.4	164.0	176.7	192.4	104.1	110.4	119.9	126.2	132.6	138.9	66.0	75.8	75.8	82.0	88.3	94.7	94.7	97.9	104.1
Horiz. skylight	504.8	517.4	530.0	542.7	555.2	571.0	438.6	444.9	454.3	460.7	467.0	473.2	280.8	296.6	296.6	302.9	309.1	315.6	397.6	400.7	407.0
Draperies or Venetian Blinds																					
North	47.3	60.0	72.6	85.1	97.9	113.6	37.9	44.1	53.7	60.0	66.2	72.6	28.3	34.7	44.1	50.4	56.8	63.1	34.7	37.9	44.2
NE and NW	101.0	113.6	126.2	138.9	151.4	167.2	85.1	91.4	101.0	107.2	113.6	119.9	63.1	69.4	78.9	85.1	91.4	97.9	75.8	82.0	85.1
East and west	151.4	164.0	176.7	189.3	202.0	217.7	132.6	138.9	148.2	154.6	161.0	167.2	94.7	101.0	110.4	116.8	123.0	129.3	119.9	123.0	129.3
E and SW	126.2	138.9	151.4	164.0	176.7	192.4	110.4	116.8	126.2	132.6	138.9	145.1	75.8	82.0	91.4	97.9	104.1	110.4	101.0	104.1	107.2
South	72.5	85.1	97.9	110.4	123.0	138.9	63.1	69.4	78.9	85.1	91.4	97.9	47.3	53.7	63.1	75.8	75.8	82.0	56.8	60.0	66.2
Roller Shades Half-Drawn																					
North	56.8	69.4	82.0	92.7	102.2	123.0	47.3	53.7	63.1	69.4	75.8	82.0	31.6	37.9	47.3	53.7	60.0	66.2	41.0	44.2	47.3
NE and NW	126.2	138.9	151.4	164.0	176.7	192.4	119.9	126.2	135.7	142.0	148.2	154.6	75.8	82.0	91.4	97.9	104.1	110.4	107.2	110.4	110.4
East and west	192.5	205.0	217.7	230.3	243.0	258.8	170.3	176.7	186.1	192.4	198.8	205.0	110.4	116.8	126.2	132.5	138.9	145.1	154.6	154.6	157.8
SE and SW	164.0	176.7	189.3	202.0	214.6	230.3	145.1	151.4	161.0	167.2	173.6	179.9	94.7	101.0	110.4	123.0	123.0	129.3	129.3	132.6	135.7
South	91.4	104.1	116.8	129.3	142.0	157.8	85.1	91.4	101.0	107.2	113.6	119.9	56.8	63.1	72.6	78.9	85.1	91.4	78.9	82.0	82.0
Awnings[b]																					
North	63.1	75.8	88.3	101.0	113.6	129.3	41.0	47.3	56.8	63.1	69.4	75.8	31.6	37.9	47.3	53.7	60.0	66.2	34.7	37.9	41.0
NE and NW	66.2	78.9	91.4	104.1	116.8	132.6	44.2	50.4	60.0	66.2	72.6	78.9	34.7	41.0	50.4	56.8	63.1	69.4	37.9	41.0	44.2
East and west	69.4	82.0	94.7	107.2	119.9	135.7	44.2	50.4	60.0	66.2	72.6	78.9	37.9	44.2	53.6	60.0	66.2	72.6	37.9	41.0	44.2
SE and SW	66.2	78.9	91.4	104.1	116.8	132.6	44.2	50.4	60.0	66.2	72.6	78.9	34.7	41.0	50.4	56.8	63.1	69.4	37.9	41.0	44.2
South	66.2	75.8	88.3	101.0	113.6	129.3	41.0	47.3	56.8	63.1	69.4	75.8	34.7	41.0	50.4	56.8	63.1	69.4	34.7	37.9	41.0

TABLE F.6 Design Cooling Load Factors through Glass *(Continued)*

Part B. I-P: Btu/h ft^2																					
Outdoor	***Regular Single Glass***						***Regular Double Glass***						***Heat-Absorbing Double Glass***						***Clear Triple Glass***		
Design Temp.[a]	**85**	**90**	**95**	**100**	**105**	**110**	**85**	**90**	**95**	**100**	**105**	**110**	**85**	**90**	**95**	**100**	**105**	**110**	**85**	**90**	**95**
No Awnings or Inside Shading																					
North	23	27	31	35	39	44	19	21	24	26	28	30	12	14	17	19	21	23	17	19	20
NE and NW	56	60	64	68	72	77	46	48	51	53	55	57	27	29	32	34	36	38	42	43	44
East and west	81	85	89	93	97	102	68	70	73	75	77	79	42	44	47	49	51	53	62	63	64
SE and SW	70	74	78	82	86	91	59	61	64	66	68	70	35	37	40	42	44	46	53	55	56
South	40	44	48	52	56	61	33	35	38	40	42	44	19	21	24	26	28	30	30	31	33
Horiz. skylight	160	164	168	172	176	181	139	141	144	146	148	150	89	91	94	96	98	100	126	127	129
Draperies or Venetian Blinds																					
North	15	19	23	27	31	36	12	14	17	19	21	23	9	11	14	16	18	20	11	12	14
NE and NW	32	36	40	44	48	53	27	29	32	34	36	38	20	22	25	27	29	31	24	26	27
East and west	48	52	56	60	64	69	42	44	47	49	51	53	30	32	35	37	39	41	38	39	41
SE and SW	40	44	48	52	56	61	35	37	40	42	44	46	24	26	29	31	33	35	32	33	34
South	23	27	31	35	39	44	20	22	25	27	29	31	15	17	20	22	24	26	18	19	21
Roller Shades Half-Drawn																					
North	18	22	26	30	34	39	15	17	20	22	24	26	10	12	15	17	19	21	13	14	15
NE and NW	40	44	48	52	56	61	38	40	43	45	47	49	24	26	29	31	33	35	34	35	35
East and west	61	65	69	73	77	82	54	56	59	61	63	65	35	37	40	42	44	46	49	49	50
SE and SW	52	56	60	64	68	73	46	48	51	53	55	57	30	32	35	37	39	41	41	42	43
South	29	33	37	41	45	50	27	29	32	34	36	38	18	20	23	25	27	29	25	26	26
Awnings[b]																					
North	20	24	28	32	36	41	13	15	18	20	22	24	10	12	15	17	19	21	11	12	13
NE and NW	21	25	29	33	37	42	14	16	19	21	23	25	11	13	16	18	20	22	12	13	14
East and west	22	26	30	34	38	43	14	16	19	21	23	25	12	14	17	19	21	23	12	13	14
SE and SW	21	25	29	33	37	42	14	16	19	21	23	25	11	13	16	18	20	22	12	13	14
South	21	24	28	32	36	41	13	15	18	20	22	24	11	13	16	18	20	22	11	12	13

Source: © by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA. Reprinted by permission from the 1981 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.
[a]Based on indoor design temperature of 75°F (23.8°C) and outdoor design temperatures as indicated. Interpolate to obtain factors for outdoor design temperatures other than those given.
[b]For other external shading devices that completely shade the glass at any orientation, use the values for "Awnings, north."

F.7 HEAT GAINS (COOLING LOADS) DUE TO INFILTRATION/VENTILATION

TABLE F.7 Sensible Cooling Load Factors Due to Infiltration and Ventilation

Design Temperature °C									Design Temperature °F					
29.4	32.2	35.0	37.7	41.5	43.3	Units	Condition	Units	85	90	95	100	105	110
2.2	3.5	4.7	6.0	6.9	8.2	W/m^2	Infiltration, per gross exposed wall area	Btu/h ft^2	0.7	1.1	1.5	1.9	2.2	2.6
6.8	9.9	13.6	16.7	19.8	23.6	W per L/s	Mechanical ventilation	Btu/h per cfm	11.0	16.0	22.0	27.0	32.0	38.0

Source: © by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA. Reprinted by permission from the 1981 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

F.8 HEAT GAINS FROM BUILDING OCCUPANTS

TABLE F.8 Rates of Heat Gain from Occupants of Conditioned Spaces

		Heat Gain							
		W				*Btu/h*			
Activity	Location	Adult Male	Adjusted[b]	Sensible[a] Heat	Latent[a] Heat	Adult Male	Adjusted[b]	Sensible[a] Heat	Latent[a] Heat
Seated at theater	Theater, matinee	115	95	65	30	390	330	225	105
Seated at theater, night	Theater, night	115	105	70	35	390	350	245	105
Seated, very light work	Offices, hotels, apartments	130	115	70	45	450	400	245	155
Moderately active office work	Offices, hotels, apartments	140	130	75	55	475	450	250	200
Standing, light work; walking	Department or retail store	160	130	75	55	550	450	250	200
Walking, standing	Drug store, bank	160	145	75	70	550	500	250	250
Sedentary work	Restaurant[c]	170	160	80	80	590	550	275	275
Light bench work	Factory	235	220	80	140	800	750	275	475
Moderate dancing	Dance hall	265	250	90	160	900	850	305	545
Walking 4.8 km/h (3 mph), light machine work	Factory	295	295	110	185	1000	1000	375	625
Bowling[d]	Bowling alley	440	425	170	255	1500	1450	580	870
Heavy work	Factory	440	425	170	255	1500	1450	580	870
Heavy machine work, lifting	Factory	470	470	185	285	1600	1600	635	965
Athletics	Gymnasium	585	525	210	315	2000	1800	710	1090

Source: Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA from the 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

[a]All values are rounded to the nearest 5 W (and 5 Btu/h). Based on 75°F (24°C) room dry-bulb temperature. For 80°F (27°C) room dry-bulb temperature, the total heat remains the same but the sensible heat values should be *decreased* by approximately 20% and the latent heat values *increased* accordingly.

[b]Adjusted heat gain based on the normal percentage of men, women, and children for the application listed, assuming that the gain from an adult female is 85% (and from children 75%) of that from an adult male.

[c]Adjusted heat gain includes 60 Btu/h (18 W) for food per individual: 50% sensible, 50% latent.

[d]Assume only one person per alley actually bowling and all others as sitting, standing, or walking slowly.

F.9 HEAT GAINS FROM OFFICE EQUIPMENT

TABLE F.9 Rates of Heat Gain from Office Equipment

Appliance	Maximum Input Rating (W)	Recommended Rate of Heat Gain	
		W	Btu/h
Check processing workstation, 12 pockets	4,800	2,460	8,410
Computer Devices			
Communication/transmission	1,800–4,600	1,640–2,810	5,600–9,600
Disk drives/mass storage	1,000–10,000	1,000–6,570	3,412–22,420
Microcomputer	100–600	90–530	300–1,800
Minicomputer	2,200–6,600	2,200–6,600	7,500–15,000
Optical reader	3,000–6,000	2,350–4,980	8,000–17,000
Plotters	75	63	214
Printers			
Letter quality, 30–45 characters/min	350	292	1,000
Line, high speed, 5000 or more lines/min	1,000–5,300	730–3,810	2,500–13,000
Line, low speed, 300–600 lines/min	450	376	1,280
Tape drives	1,200–6,500	1,000–4,700	3,500–15,000
Terminal	90–200	80–180	270–600
Copiers/Duplicators			
Copiers, large; 30–67[a] copies/min	1,700–6,600	1,700–6,600	5,800–22,500
Copiers, small; 6–30[a] copies/min	460–1,700	460–1,700	1,570–5,800
Feeder	30	30	100
Microfilm printer	450	450	1,540
Sorter/collator	60–600	60–600	200–2,050
Audio Equipment			
Cassette recorders/players	60	60	200
Receiver/tuner	100	100	340
Signal analyzer	60–650	60–650	90–2,220
Mail Processing			
Folding machine	125	80	270
Inserting machine, 3600–6800 pieces/h	600–3,300	390–2,150	1,330–7,340
Labelling machine, 1,500–30,000 pieces/h	600–6,600	390–4,300	1,330–14,700
Postage meter	230	150	510
Vending Machines			
Cigarette	72	72	250
Cold food/beverage	1,150–1,920	575–960	1,960–3,280
Hot beverage	1,725	862	2,940
Snack	240–275	240–275	820–940
Miscellaneous			
Barcode printer	440	370	1,260
Cash registers	60	48	160
Coffee maker, 10 cups	1,500	1,050 sensible 450 latent	3,580 sensible 1,540 latent
Microfiche reader/printer	1,150	1,150	3,920
Microwave oven, 28 L (1 ft^3)	600	400	1,360
Paper shredder	250–3,000	200–2,420	680–8,250
Water cooler, 30 L/h (32 qt/h)	1,750	1,750	5,970

Source: Excerpted with permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA, from the 1997 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

[a]Input of power is not proportional to capacity.

F.10 HEAT GAINS FROM APPLIANCES

TABLE F.10 Rate of Heat Gain from Miscellaneous Appliances[a]

Description/ Usage	Manufacturer's Rating Watts	Recommended Rate of Heat Gain (W)			Appliance	Description/ Usage	Manufacturer's Rating Btu/h	Recommended Rate of Heat Gain (Btu/h)		
		Sensible	Latent	Total				Sensible	Latent	Total
Electrical Appliances										
Blower type	1580	675	120	785	Hair dryer	Blower type	5,400	2,300	400	2,700
Helmet type 60 heaters					Hair dryer	Helmet type				
at 25 W	700	550	100	650	Permanent wave	60 heaters at 25 W	2,400	1,870	330	2,200
91.44-cm normal use	1500	250	50	300	machine	36-in. normal use	5,000	850	150	1,000
1.27-cm diameter		28		28	Neon sign, per linear	0.5-in. diameter		30		30
0.95-cm diameter		56		56	meter/foot of tube[b]	0.375-in. diameter		60		60
	1100	190	350	540	Sterilizer, instrument		3,750	650	1200	1,850
	202	102		102	Magnetic card typewriter		690	350	350	
Running	1760	1760		1760	Small copier	Running	6,000	6,000	6,000	
Standby	880	880		880		Standby	3,000	3,000	3,000	
Running	3515	3515		3515	Large copier	Running	12,000	12,000	12,000	
Standby	1760	1760		1760		Standby	6,000	6,000	6,000	
Gas-Burning Appliances										
Lab Burners										
1.1-cm barrel	880	495	125	620	Bunsen	0.4375-in. barrel	3,000	1,680	430	2,100
3.8 cm wide	1465	820	205	1025	Fishtail	1.5 in. wide	5,000	2,800	700	3,500
2.54-cm diameter	1760	985	245	1230	Meeker	1-in. diameter	6,000	3,360	840	4,200
Mantle type	585	530	60	590	Gas light, per burner	Mantle type	2,000	1,800	200	2,000

Source: © by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA. Reprinted by permission from the 1981 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

[a]For residential appliances, see Table 8.6.
[b]I-P (Btu/h) values are per linear *foot* of tube.

F.11 CLIMATE DATA FOR BUILDING COOLING

TABLE F.11 Cooling Climate Data[a] for Some North American Cities

City, State (or Province)	I-P Units CDD50 °F	No. Hours 8 A.M.–4 P.M. (°F) 55 < DB < 69 (°C) 13 < DB < 21	SI Units CDD10 °C
Albuquerque, New Mexico	3908	703	2171
Albany, New York	2525	605	1403
Amarillo, Texas	4128	680	2293
Atlanta, Georgia	5038	749	2799
Baltimore, Maryland	3683	593	2046
Birmingham, Alabama	5206	760	2892
Brownsville, Texas	8777	422	4876
Boise, Idaho	2807	647	1559
Boston, Massachusetts	2897	713	1609
Buffalo, New York	2468	697	1371
Burlington, Vermont	2228	637	1238
Calgary, Alberta	1167	NA	648
Charleston, South Carolina	5722	767	3179
Cheyenne, Wyoming	1886	608	1048
Chicago, Illinois (O'Hare)	2941	613	1634
Columbia, Missouri	3752	633	2084
Columbus, Ohio	3119	708	1733
Denver, Colorado	2732	739	1518
Detroit, Michigan	3199	632	1777
Dodge City, Kansas	5001	637	2272
El Paso, Texas	5488	735	3049
Fort Wayne, Indiana	3077	601	1709
Fort Worth, Texas	6174	772	3430
Fresno, California	5350	785	2972
Great Falls, Montana	1993	641	1107
Honolulu, Hawaii	9949	69	5527
Houston, Texas	7215	703	4008
Jackson, Mississippi	5900	640	3278
Jacksonville, Florida	6847	674	3804
Lake Charles, Louisiana	6813	668	3785
Las Vegas, Nevada	6745	719	3747
Los Angeles, California	4777	1849	2654
Louisville, Kentucky	4000	636	2222
Lubbock, Texas	4833	743	2685
Madison, Wisconsin	2389	658	1327
Medford, Oregon	2989	749	1661
Memphis, Tennessee	5467	851	3037
Miami, Florida	9474	259	5263
Minneapolis, Minnesota	2680	566	1489
Montreal, Quebec	2146	NA	1192
Nashville, Tennessee	4689	749	2605
New Orleans, Louisiana	6910	789	3893
New York (Central Park), New York	3643	790	2019
Norfolk, Virginia	4478	685	2488
Oklahoma City, Oklahoma	4972	733	2762
Omaha, Nebraska	3618	586	2010
Ottawa, Ontario	2045	NA	1136
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania	3623	646	2013
Phoenix, Arizona	8425	746	4681
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania	2836	700	1576
Portland, Maine	1943	665	1079
Portland, Oregon	2517	1060	1398
Raleigh, North Carolina	4499	740	2499

TABLE F.11 Cooling Climate Data for Some North American Cities *(Continued)*

City, State, or Province	*I-P Units CDD50 °F*	*No. Hours 8 A.M.–4 P.M. (°F) 55 < DB < 69 (°C) 13 < DB < 21*	*SI Units CDD10 °C*
Regina, Saskatchewan	1620	NA	900
Richmond, Virginia	4223	716	2346
Sacramento, California	4474	990	2486
Salt Lake City, Utah	3276	586	1820
San Antonio, Texas	7170	690	3983
San Diego, California	5223	1911	2902
San Francisco, California	2883	1796	1602
Saint Louis, Missouri	4193	614	2329
Seattle–Tacoma, Washington	2021	982	1123
Sioux City, Iowa	3149	602	1749
Tampa, Florida	8239	592	4577
Topeka, Kansas	3880	608	2156
Toronto, Ontario	2370	NA	1317
Tucson, Arizona	6921	716	3845
Tulsa, Oklahoma	5150	591	2861
Vancouver, British Columbia	1536	NA	853
Washington, DC	3734	657	2074
Winnipeg, Manitoba	1784	NA	991

Source: ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.1-1989, *Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.* © by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.

NA = not available

F.12 DESIGN DATA FOR EARTH TUBES

TABLE F.12 Earth Tube Applications[a]

Part A. **I-P Units**

Soil, No. of Tubes, Arrangement	Tube Diameter (in.)	Tube Length (ft)	Tube Depth[b] (ft)	Temperatures (°F) Soil	Temperatures (°F) Intake Air[c]	Air Velocity (ft/min)	Total Flow Rate (ft^3/h)	Flow per Tube (ft^3/h)	Peak Sensible Cooling (Btu/h ft)
Sandy soil; 8 tubes, radial	10	100	8	73°	67–105°	220	57,600	7,200	20
Silt loam, wet; 9 tubes, radial (3 trenches)	5	150	8–11.5	73°	62–95°	500	60,000	4,000	11
Silt loam; 22 tubes, parallel at 4 ft	10	180	8–9	72°	70–94°	500	359,700	16,350	30
Silt loam; 5 tubes, parallel	12	260	10	63°	60–92°	530	123,600	24,720	40

Part B. **SI Units**

Soil, No. of Tubes, Arrangement	Tube Diameter (cm.)	Tube Length (m)	Tube Depth[b] (m)	Temperatures (°C) Soil	Temperatures (°C) Intake Air[c]	Air Velocity (m/s)	Total Flow Rate (m^3/h)	Flow per Tube (m^3/h)	Peak Sensible Cooling (W/m)
Sandy soil; 8 tubes, radial	25	30.5	2.4	23°	19.4–40.6°	1.1	1,632	204	19.7
Silt loam, wet; 9 tubes, radial (3 trenches)	13	46	2.4–3.5	23°	16.7–35°	2.5	1,080	120	10.6
Silt loam; 22 tubes, parallel at 1.2 m	25	55	2.4–2.7	22°	21.1–34.4°	2.5	10,200	463	29.5
Silt loam; 5 tubes, parallel	30	79	3	17°	15.6–33.3°	2.7	3,500	696	38.8

Source: Givoni, B. 1994. *Passive and Low Energy Cooling of Buildings*. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York. I-P conversions added by the authors of this book.

[a]Central Illinois farm applications, summertime.

[b]Tubes often slope to drain the condensation that occurs as air reaches the dewpoint within the tube.

[c]Intake air temperature range during the period of study.

F.13 PSYCHROMETRIC CHARTS

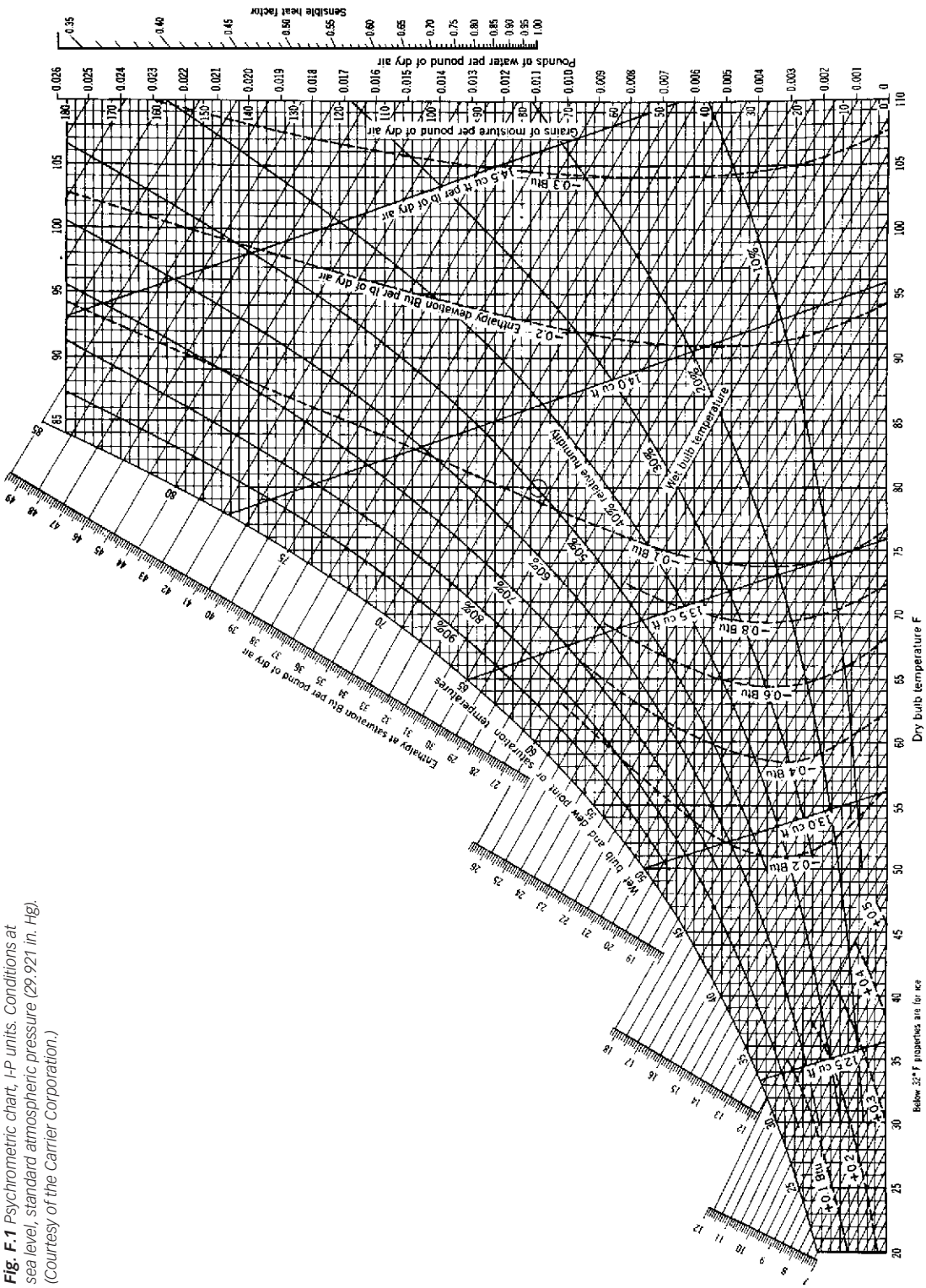


Fig. F.1 *Psychrometric chart, I-P units. Conditions at sea level, standard atmospheric pressure (29.921 in. Hg). (Courtesy of the Carrier Corporation.)*

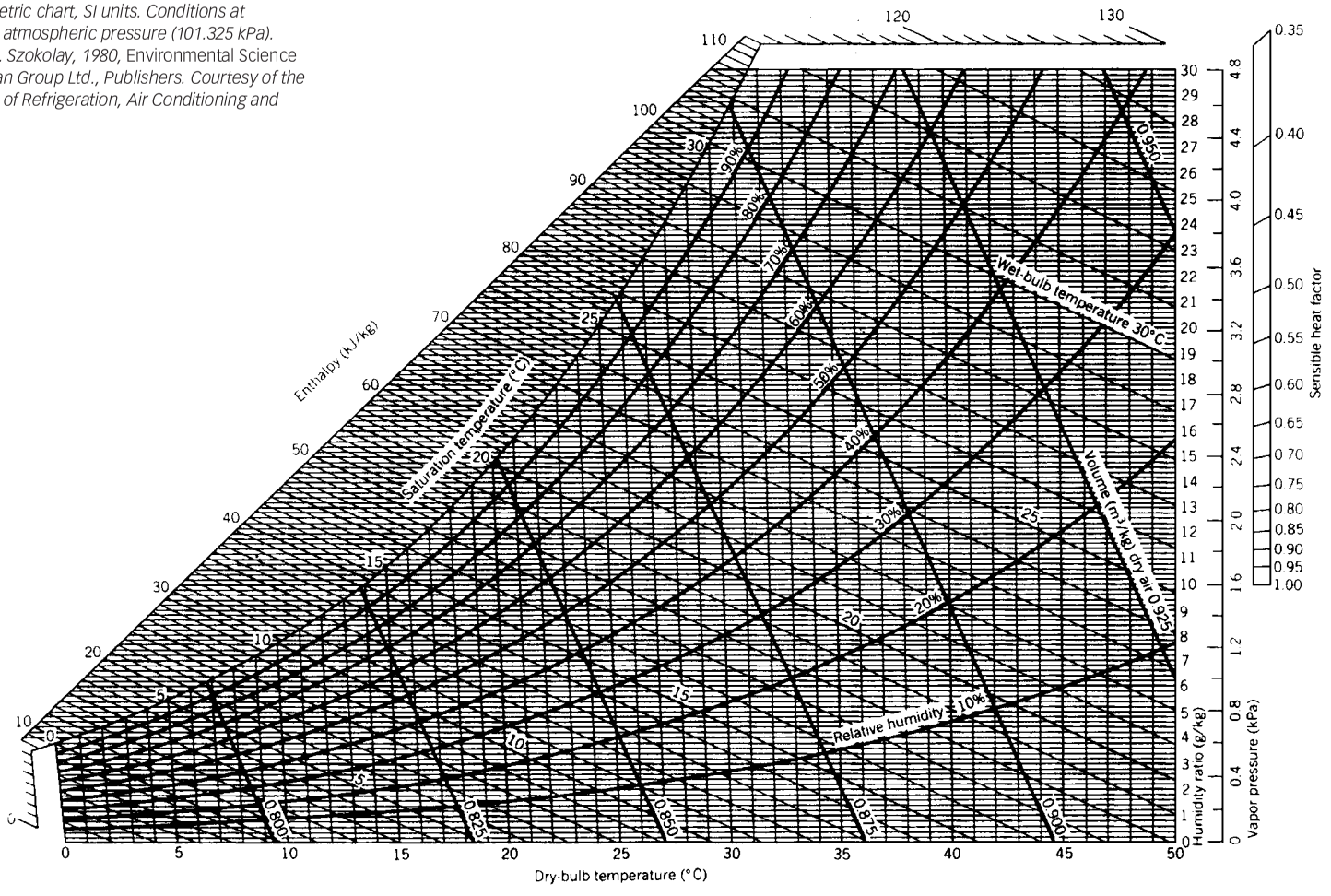


Fig. F.2 *Psychrometric chart, SI units. Conditions at sea level, standard atmospheric pressure (101.325 kPa). (Adapted from S. V. Szokolay, 1980,* Environmental Science Handbook, *Longman Group Ltd., Publishers. Courtesy of the Australian Institute of Refrigeration, Air Conditioning and Heating.)*

APPENDIX G

Standards/Guidelines for Energy- and Resource-Efficient Building Design

This appendix provides extracts from ASHRAE Standard 90.1 and the U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC) Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) rating system for new construction. The purpose of these extracts is to show the general nature of these guidance documents and their formats. Obtain complete information regarding the most current versions of each of these documents from ASHRAE (www.ashrae.org) or USGBC (www.usgbc.org).

G.1 SAMPLE OF PRESCRIPTIVE BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS EXTRACTED FROM ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA STANDARD 90.1-2007: *ENERGY STANDARD FOR BUILDINGS EXCEPT LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS*

TABLE G.1 ASHRAE 90.1: Building Envelope Requirements for Climate Zone 5

	Nonresidential		*Residential*		*Semiheated*	
Opaque Elements	**Assembly Maximum**	**Insulation Min. R-Value**	**Assembly Maximum**	**Insulation Min. R-Value**	**Assembly Maximum**	**Insulation Min. R-Value**
Roofs						
Insulation entirely above deck	U-0.048	R-20.0 ci	U-0.048	R-20.0 ci	U-0.119	R-7.6 ci
Metal building	U-0.065	R-19.0	U-0.065	R-19.0	U-0.097	R-10.0
Attic and other	U-0.027	R-38.0	U-0.027	R-38.0	U-0.053	R-19.0
Walls, Above Grade						
Mass	U-0.090	R-11.4 ci	U-0.080	R-13.3 ci	U-0.151[a]	R-5.7 ci[a]
Metal building	U-0.113	R-13.0	U-0.057	R-13.0 + R-13.0	U-0.123	R-11.0
Steel-framed	U-0.064	R-13.0 + R-7.5 ci	U-0.064	R-13.0 + R-7.5 ci	U-0.124	R-13.0
Wood-framed and other	U-0.064	R-13.0 + R-3.8 ci	U-0.051	R-13.0 + R-7.5 ci	U-0.089	R-13.0
Walls, Below Grade						
Below-grade wall	C-0.119	R-7.5 ci	C-0.119	R-7.5 ci	C-1.140	NR
Floors						
Mass	U-0.074	R-10.4 ci	U-0.064	R-12.5 ci	U-0.137	R-4.2 ci
Steel joist	U-0.038	R-30.0	U-0.038	R-30.0	U-0.052	R-19.0
Wood-framed and other	U-0.033	R-30.0	U-0.033	R-30.0	U-0.051	R-19.0
Slab-on-Grade Floors						
Unheated	F-0.730	NR	F-0.540	R-10 for 24 in.	F-0.730	NR
Heated	F-0.860	R-15 for 24 in.	F-0.860	R-15 for 24 in.	F-1.020	R-7.5 for 12 in.
Opaque Doors						
Swinging	U-0.700		U-0.500		U-0.700	
Non swinging	U-0.500		U-0.500		U-1.450	

TABLE G.1 ASHRAE 90.1: Building Envelope Requirements for Climate Zone 5 (*Continued*)

	Nonresidential		*Residential*		*Semiheated*	
Fenestration	**Assembly Max. U**	**Assembly Max. SHGC**	**Assembly Max. U**	**Assembly Max. SHGC**	**Assembly Max. U**	**Assembly Max. SHGC**
Vertical Glazing, 0%–40% of Wall						
Nonmetal framing (all)[b]	U-0.35	SHGC-0.40	U-0.35	SHGC-0.40	U-1.20	NR
Metal framing (curtainwall/storefront)[c]	U-0.45	SHGC-0.40	U-0.45	SHGC-0.40	U-1.20	NR
Metal framing (entrance door)[c]	U-0.80	SHGC-0.40	U-0.80	SHGC-0.40	U-1.20	NR
Metal framing (all other)[c]	U-0.55	SHGC-0.40	U-0.55	SHGC-0.40	U-1.20	NR
Skylight with Curb, Glass, % of Roof						
0–2.0%	U_{all}-1.17	$SHGC_{all}$-0.49	U_{all}-1.17	$SHGC_{all}$-0.49	U_{all}-1.98	$SHGC_{all}$-NR
2.1–5.0%	U_{all}-1.17	$SHGC_{all}$-0.39	U_{all}-1.17	$SHGC_{all}$-0.39	U_{all}-1.98	$SHGC_{all}$-NR
Skylight with Curb, Plastic, % of Roof						
0–2.0%	U_{all}-1.10	$SHGC_{all}$-0.77	U_{all}-1.10	$SHGC_{all}$-0.77	U_{all}-1.90	$SHGC_{all}$-NR
2.1–5.0%	U_{all}-1.10	$SHGC_{all}$-0.62	U_{all}-1.10	$SHGC_{all}$-0.62	U_{all}-1.90	$SHGC_{all}$-NR
Skylight without Curb, All, % of Roof						
0–2.0%	U_{all}-0.69	$SHGC_{all}$-0.49	U_{all}-0.69	$SHGC_{all}$-0.49	U_{all}-1.36	$SHGC_{all}$-NR
2.1–5.0%	U_{all}-0.69	$SHGC_{all}$-0.39	U_{all}-0.69	$SHGC_{all}$-0.39	U_{all}-1.36	$SHGC_{all}$-NR

Source: Reprinted by permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2007, *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings* (I-P Edition).

[a]Exception to Section A3.1.3.1 applies.

[b]Nonmetal framing includes framing materials other than metal with or without metal reinforcing or cladding.

[c]Metal framing includes metal framing with or without thermal break. The "all other" subcategory includes operable windows, fixed windows, and non-entrance doors.

NR = no requirement.

ci = continuous insulation.

Note: Zone 5 is one of eight U.S. climate zones identified in Standard 90.1, and covers the upper midwest and similar climate areas moving toward the west coast. Units are customary I-P units.

G.2 PROJECT CHECKLIST FROM LEED 2009 FOR NEW CONSTRUCTION AND MAJOR RENOVATIONS

TABLE G.2 LEED 2009 for New Construction and Major Renovations Project Checklist LEED 2009 Green Building Rating System for New Construction & Major Renovations (April 2009)

Project Checklist	
Sustainable Sites	
Prerequisite 1	Construction Activity Pollution Prevention
Credit 1	Site Selection
Credit 2	Development Density & Community Connectivity
Credit 3	Brownfield Redevelopment
Credit 4	Alternative Transportation
Credit 5	Site Development
Credit 6	Stormwater Design
Credit 7	Heat Island Effect
Credit 8	Light Pollution Reduction
Water Efficiency	
Prerequisite 1	Water Use Reduction
Credit 1	Water Efficient Landscaping
Credit 2	Innovative Wastewater Technologies
Credit 3	Water Use Reduction
Energy & Atmosphere	
Prerequisite 1	Fundamental Commissioning of the Building Energy Systems
Prerequisite 2	Minimum Energy Performance
Prerequisite 3	Fundamental Refrigerant Management
Credit 1	Optimize Energy Performance
Credit 2	On-Site Renewable Energy
Credit 3	Enhanced Commissioning
Credit 4	Enhanced Refrigerant Management
Credit 5	Measurement & Verification
Credit 6	Green Power
Materials & Resources	
Prerequisite 1	Storage & Collection of Recyclables
Credit 1	Building Reuse
Credit 2	Construction Waste Management
Credit 3	Materials Reuse
Credit 4	Recycled Content
Credit 5	Regional Materials
Credit 6	Rapidly Renewable Materials
Credit 7	Certified Wood
Indoor Environmental Quality	
Prerequisite 1	Minimum Indoor Air Quality Performance
Prerequisite 2	Environmental Tobacco Smoke (ETS) Control
Credit 1	Outdoor Air Delivery Monitoring
Credit 2	Increased Ventilation
Credit 3	Construction IAQ Management Plan
Credit 4	Low-Emitting Materials
Credit 5	Indoor Chemical & Pollutant Source Control
Credit 6	Controllability of Systems
Credit 7	Thermal Comfort
Credit 8	Daylight & Views
Innovation & Design Process	
Credit 1	Innovation in Design
Credit 2	LEED Accredited Professional
Regional Priority	
Credit 1	Regional Priority

Source: Extracted from LEED 2009 (April 2009); used with permission of the U.S. Green Building Council (www.usgbc.org).

APPENDIX H

Annual Solar Performance

There are 4 parts to this appendix: Tables H.1 through H.3 and Figure H.1. Table H.3 lists projected performance information for 30 passive solar heating systems (3 water wall, 9 Trombe wall, 9 direct gain, and 9 sunspace) for the U.S. and Canadian locations shown in Fig. C.1. The information is extracted from *Passive Solar Heating Analysis*, which lists a total of 94 systems for about twice as many locations. The specifications for all 94 systems are listed in Table H.1, so the original source may be consulted if a proposed passive system is not reasonably represented by one of those included in this appendix. Figure H.1 illustrates the configurations of the sunspace systems. Table H.2 gives thermal properties for materials commonly used in passive solar buildings.

TABLE H.1 Characteristics of Selected Passive Solar Heating Systems

Part A. **Water Wall Systems**					
Designation	**Thermal Storage Capacity[a] Btu/ft² °F (kJ/m² °C)**	**Wall Thickness in. (mm)**	**No. of Glazings**	**Wall Surface**	**Night Insulation**
WW-A1	15.6 (319)	3 (76)	2	Normal	No
WW-A2	31.2 (637)	6 (152)	2	Normal	No
WW-A3[b]	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	2	Normal	No
WW-A4	62.4 (1275)	12 (305)	2	Normal	No
WW-A5	93.6 (1912)	18 (457)	2	Normal	No
WW-A6	124.8 (2550)	24 (610)	2	Normal	No
WW-B1	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	1	Normal	No
WW-B2	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	3	Normal	No
WW-B3	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	1	Normal	Yes
WW-B4[b]	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	2	Normal	Yes
WW-B5	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	3	Normal	Yes
WW-C1	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	1	Selective	No
WW-C2[b]	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	2	Selective	No
WW-C3	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	1	Selective	Yes
WW-C4	46.8 (956)	9 (229)	2	Selective	Yes
Part B. **Trombe Wall Systems: Vented**					
Designation	**Thermal Storage Capacity[c] Btu/ft² °F (kJ/m² °C)**	**Wall Thickness[c] in. (mm)**	**ρck[d] (Btu²/h ft⁴ °F²)**	**No. of Glazings**	**Wall Surface**	**Night Insulation**
TW-A1[b]	15 (306)	6 (152)	30	2	Normal	No
TW-A2[b]	22.5 (460)	9 (229)	30	2	Normal	No
TW-A3[b]	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	2	Normal	No
TW-A4[b]	45 (919)	18 (457)	30	2	Normal	No
TW-B1	15 (306)	6 (152)	15	2	Normal	No
TW-B2	22.5 (460)	9 (229)	15	2	Normal	No
TW-B3[b]	30 (613)	12 (305)	15	2	Normal	No
TW-B4	45 (919)	18 (457)	15	2	Normal	No
TW-C1	15 (306)	6 (152)	7.5	2	Normal	No
TW-C2	22.5 (460)	9 (229)	7.5	2	Normal	No
TW-C3	30 (613)	12 (305)	7.5	2	Normal	No
TW-C4	45 (919)	18 (457)	7.5	2	Normal	No
TW-D1	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	1	Normal	No
TW-D2	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	3	Normal	No
TW-D3	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	1	Normal	Yes
TW-D4[b]	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	2	Normal	Yes
TW-D5	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	3	Normal	Yes
TW-E1	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	1	Selective	No
TW-E2[b]	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	2	Selective	No
TW-E3	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	1	Selective	Yes
TW-E4	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	2	Selective	Yes

Note: Vented systems may be made to perform as unvented systems by sealing both top and bottom vent openings.

TABLE H.1 Characteristics of Selected Passive Solar Heating Systems (*Continued*)

Part C. **Trombe Wall Systems: Unvented**						
Designation	**Thermal Storage Capacity[c] Btu/ft² °F (kJ/m² °C)**	**Wall Thickness[c] in. (mm)**	**ρck[d] (Btu²/h ft⁴ °F²)**	**No. of Glazings**	**Wall Surface**	**Night Insulation**
TW-F1	15 (306)	6 (152)	30	2	Normal	No
TW-F2	22.5 (460)	9 (229)	30	2	Normal	No
TW-F3[b]	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	2	Normal	No
TW-F4	45 (919)	18 (457)	30	2	Normal	No
TW-G1	15 (306)	6 (152)	15	2	Normal	No
TW-G2	22.5 (460)	9 (229)	15	2	Normal	No
TW-G3	30 (613)	12 (305)	15	2	Normal	No
TW-G4	45 (919)	18 (457)	15	2	Normal	No
TW-H1	15 (306)	6 (152)	7.5	2	Normal	No
TW-H2	22.5 (460)	9 (229)	7.5	2	Normal	No
TW-H3	30 (613)	12 (305)	7.5	2	Normal	No
TW-H4	45 (919)	18 (457)	7.5	2	Normal	No
TW-I1	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	1	Normal	No
TW-I2	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	3	Normal	No
TW-I3	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	1	Normal	Yes
TW-I4	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	2	Normal	Yes
TW-I5	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	3	Normal	Yes
TW-J1	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	1	Selective	No
TW-J2[b]	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	2	Selective	No
TW-J3	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	1	Selective	Yes
TW-J4	30 (613)	12 (305)	30	2	Selective	Yes
Part D. **Direct-Gain Systems**						
Designation	**Thermal Storage Capacity[c] Btu/ft² °F (kJ/m² °C)**	**Mass Thickness[c] in. (mm)**	**Ratio of Mass to Glazing Area**	**No. of Glazings**	**Night Insulation**	
DG-A1[b]	30 (613)	2 (51)	6	2	No	
DG-A2[b]	30 (613)	2 (51)	6	3	No	
DG-A3[b]	30 (613)	2 (51)	6	2	Yes	
DG-B1[b]	45 (919)	6 (152)	3	2	No	
DG-B2[b]	45 (919)	6 (152)	3	3	No	
DG-B3[b]	45 (919)	6 (152)	3	2	Yes	
DG-C1[b]	60 (1226)	4 (102)	6	2	No	
DG-C2[b]	60 (1226)	4 (102)	6	3	No	
DG-C3[b]	60 (1226)	4 (102)	6	2	Yes	

TABLE H.1 Characteristics of Selected Passive Solar Heating Systems (*Continued*)

Part E. **Sunspace Systems**					
Designation	**Type**	**Tilt (Degrees)**	**Common Wall[f]**	**End Walls[g]**	**Night Insulation**
SS-A1[b]	Attached	50	Masonry	Opaque	No
SS-A2	Attached	50	Masonry	Opaque	Yes
SS-A3	Attached	50	Masonry	Glazed	No
SS-A4	Attached	50	Masonry	Glazed	Yes
SS-A5	Attached	50	Insulated	Opaque	No
SS-A6	Attached	50	Insulated	Opaque	Yes
SS-A7	Attached	50	Insulated	Glazed	No
SS-A8	Attached	50	Insulated	Glazed	Yes
SS-B1[b]	Attached	90/30	Masonry	Opaque	No
SS-B2[b]	Attached	90/30	Masonry	Opaque	Yes
SS-B3[b]	Attached	90/30	Masonry	Glazed	No
SS-B4	Attached	90/30	Masonry	Glazed	Yes
SS-B5	Attached	90/30	Insulated	Opaque	No
SS-B6	Attached	90/30	Insulated	Opaque	Yes
SS-B7	Attached	90/30	Insulated	Glazed	No
SS-B8	Attached	90/30	Insulated	Glazed	Yes
SS-C1[b]	Semi-enclosed	90	Masonry	Common	No
SS-C2[b]	Semi-enclosed	90	Masonry	Common	Yes
SS-C3	Semi-enclosed	90	Insulated	Common	No
SS-C4	Semi-enclosed	90	Insulated	Common	Yes
SS-D1	Semi-enclosed	50	Masonry	Common	No
SS-D2	Semi-enclosed	50	Masonry	Common	Yes
SS-D3	Semi-enclosed	50	Insulated	Common	No
SS-D4	Semi-enclosed	50	Insulated	Common	Yes
SS-E1[b]	Semi-enclosed	90/30	Masonry	Common	No
SS-E2[b]	Semi-enclosed	90/30	Masonry	Common	Yes
SS-E3[b]	Semi-enclosed	90/30	Insulated	Common	No
SS-E4	Semi-enclosed	90/30	Insulated	Common	Yes

Source: Reprinted by permission of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., from *Passive Solar Heating Analysis*, 1984, by J. D. Balcomb et al. SI units added by the text authors; not part of the original source.

[a]Per unit of projected area.

[b]Listed in this book.

[c]The thermal storage capacity is per projected area of south aperture (ft^2 of glazing) or, equivalently, the quantity ρct. The wall thickness (t) is listed only as an approximate guide by assuming that ρc = 30 Btu/ft^3 °F (ρ of 150 lb/ft^3 and c of 0.2 Btu/lb °F), typical of ordinary concrete. Example: for DGA1 thermal storage capacity, (30 Btu/ft^3 °F) × (2 in./12 in/ft) × (6 ft^2 of mass/1 ft^2 of glazing) = 30 Btu/ft^2 °F.

[d]ρck is the product of the density (lb/ft^3), specific heat (Btu/lb °F), and thermal conductivity (Btu/h ft °F); see Table H.2.

[e]See Fig. H.1 for additional description.

[f]Common walls should provide closable openings that total at minimum 6% (maximum 15%) of the wall area. Insulated common walls should have minimum R-10 insulation and thermal mass in water at a minimum of 3.8 gal/ft^2 (0.5 ft^3/ft^2) of projected area (155 L/m^2 or 0.15 m^3/m^2). Masonry common walls should have a minimum 3:1 (mass:glass) area ratio.

[g]Opaque end walls are strongly recommended; glazed end walls perform more poorly in most winter climates and are subject to severe summer overheating.

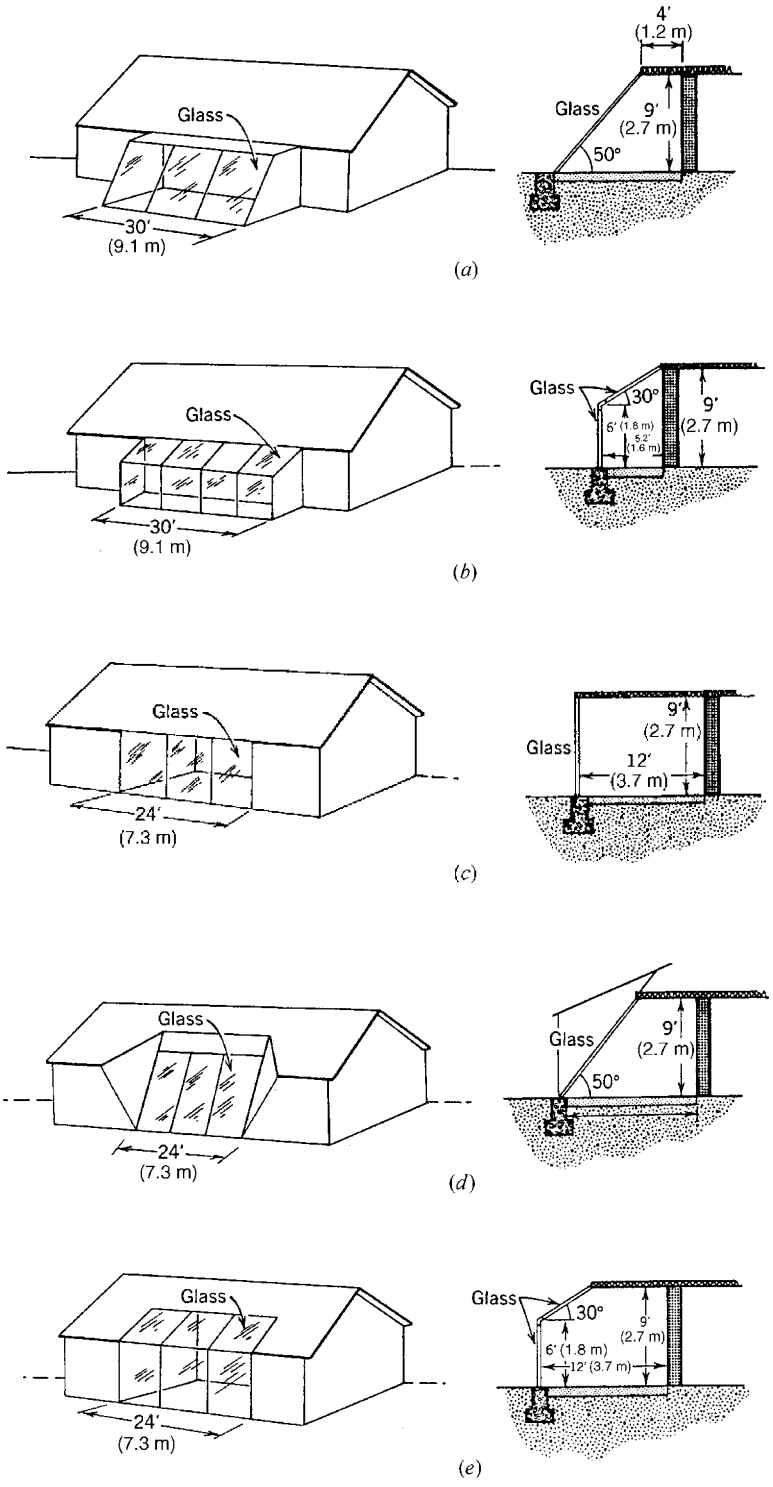


Fig. H.1 *Types of sunspaces, described in Table H.1, Part E. Types (a) and (b) are considered attached to the building; types (c), (d), and (e) are considered semi-enclosed by the building. The architectural detail at the sides of type (d) is insignificant; no shading of the sunspace by the building was accounted for in the performance estimates in Table H.2. (Reprinted by permission from J. D. Balcomb et al.,* Passive Solar Heating Analysis; *© 1984. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.)*

TABLE H.2 Thermal Properties of Various Materials

Material	Source[a]	Density, ρ lb/ft³ (kg/m³)	Specific Heat, *c* Btu/lb °F (kJ/kg °C)	Heat Capacity, ρ*c* Btu/ft³ °F (kJ/m³ °C)	Conductivity, *k* Btu/h °F ft (W/m °C)	Diffusivity, *k*/ρ*c* ft²/h (m²/s)	ρ*ck* Btu²/h ft⁴ °F² (kJ²/s m⁴ °C²)
Water	1	62.3 (997)	1.0 (4.18)	62.3 (4174)			
Concrete	2, 3	144 (2304)	0.21 (0.88)	30.3 (2030)	0.89 (1.54)	0.029 (0.00076)	27.0 (3126)
Concrete block	2, 3						
Heavy weight		135 (2160)	0.21 (0.88)	28.4 (1903)	0.74 (1.28)	0.026 (0.00067)	21.0 (2436)
Medium weight		105 (1680)	0.22 (0.92)	23.1 (1548)	0.41 (0.71)	0.018 (0.00046)	9.5 (1099)
Light weight		85 (1360)	0.23 (0.96)	19.6 (1313)	0.27 (0.47)	0.014 (0.00036)	5.3 (617)
Brick	1, 4						
Paving		135 (2160)	0.19 (0.80)	25.7 (1722)	0.75 (1.30)	0.029 (0.00075)	19.3 (2239)
Face		130 (2080)	0.19 (0.80)	24.7 (1655)	0.75 (1.30)	0.030 (0.00079)	18.5 (2152)
Building		120 (1920)	0.19 (0.80)	22.8 (1528)	0.42 (0.73)	0.018 (0.00048)	9.6 (1116)
Mortar or grout	1	116 (1856)	0.20 (0.84)	23.2 (1554)	0.42 (0.73)	0.018 (0.00047)	9.7 (1134)
Adobe	5	80 (1280)	0.20 (0.84)	16.0 (1072)	0.38 (0.66)	0.024 (0.00062)	6.1 (708)
		100 (1600)		20.0 (1340)	0.75 (1.30)	0.038 (0.00097)	15.0 (1742)
Gypsum or plasterboard	1	50 (800)	0.26 (1.09)	13.0 (871)	0.097 (0.17)	0.058 (0.0002)	1.3 (148)
Douglas fir plywood	1	34 (544)	0.29 (1.21)	9.9 (663)	0.067 (0.12)	0.007 (0.00018)	0.7 (80)
Hardwood	1	45 (720)	0.30 (1.26)	13.5 (905)	0.092 (0.16)	0.007 (0.00018)	1.2 (145)

Source: Reprinted by permission from *Passive Solar Heating Analysis*, © 1984, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA.

Note: Concrete and masonry products can be manufactured in a variety of densities. The values listed are for the most commonly available products. The thermal properties of concrete and concrete block vary with density. Empirical correlations between these properties are[2] $k = 0.05e^{0.02\rho}$ and [3] $c = 1/(3.934 + 0.006\rho)$.

[a]1. ASHRAE 1981 *Handbook—Fundamentals* (American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc., Atlanta, GA).

2. "Calculating the Steady State U-Value of Concrete Masonry Walls," Expanded Shale, Clay, and Slate Institute, 4905 Del Ray Avenue, Bethesda, MD.

3. D. Whiting, A. Litvin, and S. E. Goodwin, "Specific Heat of Selected Concretes," *Research and Development Bulletin RD058.01B*, Portland Cement Association, 5420 Old Orchard Road, Skokie, IL.

4. "Brick Passive Solar Heating Systems. Material Properties—Part IV," *Technical Notes on Brick Construction* 43D, Brick Institute of America, 1750 Old Meadow Road, Mc Lean, VA, September/October 1980.

5. Benjamin T. Rogers, private communication; and W. L. Sibbitt, measurements at Los Alamos National Laboratory. Note that the thermal conductivity of adobe varies greatly with moisture content, which is part of the reason for the wide range quoted.

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF

For each location, degree days listed are DD65F (DD18.3C). For a description of SSF (solar savings fraction) see Fig. 8.7; the LCR (load–collector ratio) is described in Section 8.10(f). LCR units are Btu/DDF ft² (Wh/DDC m²).

United States

MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA SSF (%)								2272 DD65 (1263)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	17	29	38	48	55	64	70	77
WWB4	18	36	48	60	68	78	83	89
WWC2	18	36	47	59	67	76	82	88
TWA1	17	24	29	35	40	46	51	57
TWA2	16	26	33	41	46	54	60	67
TWA3	15	26	34	43	49	58	63	70
TWA4	14	26	34	43	49	58	64	72
TWB3	14	24	31	39	45	54	60	67
TWD4	17	33	43	54	62	72	78	84
TWE2	18	34	44	55	63	72	78	84
TWF3	12	23	30	39	45	54	60	67
TWJ2	15	31	41	52	60	70	76	82
DGA1	12	21	28	34	39	45	49	53
DGA2	13	23	31	39	45	53	58	64
DGA3	15	27	37	47	55	64	70	77
DGB1	12	22	29	37	43	51	56	62
DGB2	13	24	32	41	49	58	65	71
DGB3	15	28	38	49	57	68	75	82
DGC1	14	25	34	43	50	60	66	72
DGC2	15	27	36	47	55	66	72	79
DGC3	18	32	42	55	64	75	81	87
SSA1	21	32	40	48	55	63	68	75
SSB1	17	28	35	42	48	56	62	68
SSB2	21	35	44	54	61	70	76	82
SSB3	17	26	33	40	46	54	59	66
SSC1	15	26	34	43	49	58	64	71
SSC2	17	31	41	51	58	68	74	80
SSE1	20	33	42	51	58	67	72	78
SSE2	23	40	51	62	69	78	83	88
SSE3	18	28	35	43	48	56	62	68

TUCSON, ARIZONA SSF (%)								1758 DD65 (978)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	31	52	64	75	82	89	93	96
WWB4	37	62	75	85	91	96	98	99
WWC2	37	61	74	84	90	95	97	99
TWA1	25	38	47	56	63	72	78	84
TWA2	27	44	55	65	73	81	86	91
TWA3	28	46	58	69	76	84	89	93
TWA4	27	46	58	69	77	85	89	94
TWB3	25	42	53	64	72	81	86	91
TWD4	33	56	69	80	86	93	96	98
TWE2	35	57	70	81	87	93	96	98
TWF3	24	42	53	65	73	81	86	91
TWJ2	31	54	67	78	85	92	95	97
DGA1	24	41	52	62	68	76	80	84
DGA2	24	43	54	65	72	81	85	89
DGA3	27	49	62	74	80	87	90	93
DGB1	24	44	58	69	76	83	87	91
DGB2	25	45	59	72	79	87	91	94
DGB3	27	50	65	78	85	91	94	96
DGC1	28	51	66	78	84	90	93	95
DGC2	28	51	66	79	85	92	95	97
DGC3	31	56	72	84	90	95	96	98
SSA1	33	51	62	72	79	86	90	94
SSB1	29	45	55	66	73	81	86	91
SSB2	35	55	67	77	84	90	94	97
SSB3	27	43	53	64	71	79	84	89
SSC1	28	47	59	70	77	86	90	94
SSC2	32	54	66	78	84	91	94	97
SSE1	35	55	67	77	83	90	93	96
SSE2	41	64	76	85	91	95	97	99
SSE3	30	46	56	67	73	82	86	91

PHOENIX, ARIZONA SSF (%)								1556 DD65 (865)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	33	54	66	77	83	90	93	96
WWB4	39	64	76	86	91	96	98	99
WWC2	39	63	75	85	90	95	97	99
TWA1	26	40	49	58	65	73	79	84
TWA2	29	46	56	67	74	82	87	91
TWA3	29	48	59	70	77	85	89	93
TWA4	29	48	60	71	78	86	90	94
TWB3	26	44	55	66	73	82	86	91
TWD4	35	58	70	81	87	93	96	98
TWE2	36	59	71	82	88	93	96	98
TWF3	26	44	55	67	74	82	87	92
TWJ2	33	56	68	79	86	92	95	97
DGA1	26	43	54	64	70	77	81	85
DGA2	26	45	56	67	74	82	86	90
DGA3	29	51	64	75	81	87	91	93
DGB1	27	47	60	71	77	84	87	91
DGB2	27	48	61	73	80	88	91	94
DGB3	29	53	67	79	85	91	94	96
DGC1	31	54	58	79	85	90	93	95
DGC2	30	54	68	80	86	92	95	97
DGC3	33	59	74	85	90	95	96	98
SSA1	34	52	62	73	79	86	90	94
SSB1	29	46	56	67	73	81	86	90
SSB2	36	56	67	78	84	90	93	96
SSB3	28	44	54	64	71	79	84	89
SSC1	30	49	61	72	78	86	90	94
SSC2	34	56	68	79	85	91	94	97
SSE1	36	56	67	77	83	90	93	96
SSE2	42	64	76	85	90	95	97	99
SSE3	30	47	57	67	74	82	86	91

FORT SMITH, ARKANSAS SSF (%)								3338 DD65 (1856)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	11	21	29	37	43	51	57	64
WWB4	12	27	37	49	57	67	73	80
WWC2	12	27	37	48	55	65	72	79
TWA1	14	19	23	27	31	36	40	45
TWA2	12	20	25	31	36	43	48	54
TWA3	11	19	26	33	38	46	51	58
TWA4	10	19	25	33	38	46	52	59
TWB3	10	18	23	30	35	43	48	54
TWD4	12	25	34	44	51	61	67	75
TWE2	13	26	35	44	52	61	67	75
TWF3	8	16	22	29	34	42	47	54
TWJ2	10	23	32	41	48	58	65	72
DGA1	8	14	19	24	28	33	36	39
DGA2	9	17	23	29	35	42	46	52
DGA3	11	21	28	37	44	53	59	66
DGB1	8	15	19	25	30	36	40	46
DGB2	9	17	23	31	36	45	51	58
DGB3	11	21	29	38	45	56	63	71
DGC1	10	18	24	30	36	44	50	56
DGC2	11	20	27	35	42	52	59	66
DGC3	13	24	32	43	51	63	70	78
SSA1	16	25	31	38	43	50	55	62
SSB1	13	21	26	33	37	44	49	55
SSB2	15	27	35	43	50	59	64	71
SSB3	12	19	25	30	35	41	46	52
SSC1	10	19	25	32	37	45	51	57
SSC2	11	23	31	40	47	56	62	69
SSE1	14	24	31	39	45	53	58	65
SSE2	16	30	39	50	57	66	72	79
SSE3	14	21	27	33	37	44	49	55

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

FRESNO, CALIFORNIA SSF (%)							2657 DD65 (1477)	
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	18	31	40	49	56	64	69	75
WWB4	20	38	49	61	68	77	82	87
WWC2	20	38	49	60	67	76	81	86
TWA1	18	26	31	37	41	48	52	58
TWA2	18	28	35	42	48	55	60	67
TWA3	17	28	36	44	50	58	64	70
TWA4	16	28	36	44	51	59	64	71
TWB3	15	26	33	41	47	55	60	67
TWD4	19	35	45	56	63	72	77	83
TWE2	20	36	46	56	63	72	77	83
TWF3	14	25	32	40	47	55	60	66
TWJ2	17	33	43	53	60	69	75	81
DGA1	14	23	30	36	41	47	50	54
DGA2	14	25	33	41	47	54	59	65
DGA3	17	30	39	49	56	65	70	76
DGB1	14	24	31	39	45	52	56	61
DGB2	15	26	35	44	50	59	64	70
DGB3	17	30	40	51	58	68	74	80
DGC1	16	28	37	46	52	60	64	70
DGC2	17	30	39	49	56	65	71	77
DGC3	19	34	45	56	64	74	79	85
SSA1	22	34	41	49	54	61	66	72
SSB1	19	29	36	43	49	56	61	66
SSB2	22	36	45	54	60	69	74	79
SSB3	18	28	34	41	46	53	58	64
SSC1	16	28	36	44	50	59	64	70
SSC2	18	33	42	52	59	68	73	79
SSE1	22	34	42	51	57	64	69	75
SSE2	25	41	51	61	67	75	80	85
SSE3	20	30	36	44	49	56	60	66

LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA SSF (%)							1793 DD65 (997)	
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	37	58	70	81	87	93	95	98
WWB4	43	68	80	89	93	97	99	99
WWC2	42	67	79	88	93	97	98	99
TWA1	29	43	52	62	69	77	82	88
TWA2	32	49	60	71	78	86	90	94
TWA3	33	52	63	74	81	88	92	96
TWA4	32	52	64	75	82	89	93	96
TWB3	29	48	59	70	77	85	90	94
TWD4	39	62	74	85	90	95	97	99
TWE2	40	63	75	85	91	95	97	99
TWF3	29	48	59	71	78	86	90	94
TWJ2	37	60	72	83	89	94	97	98
DGA1	29	47	58	68	74	81	85	89
DGA2	29	49	60	71	78	85	89	93
DGA3	32	55	68	79	84	90	93	95
DGB1	30	52	65	76	82	88	91	94
DGB2	30	52	66	78	84	91	94	96
DGB3	33	57	72	83	89	94	96	97
DGC1	34	59	73	84	89	93	95	96
DGC2	34	58	73	84	90	95	97	98
DGC3	37	63	78	89	93	96	97	98
SSA1	41	60	71	80	86	92	95	97
SSB1	35	53	64	74	81	88	91	95
SSB2	42	64	75	84	89	94	97	98
SSB3	34	52	63	73	79	87	90	94
SSC1	33	53	65	76	83	90	93	96
SSC2	38	60	72	83	88	94	96	98
SSE1	43	64	75	84	90	94	97	98
SSE2	50	73	83	91	95	98	99	100
SSE3	36	54	65	75	81	88	92	95

SACRAMENTO, CALIFORNIA SSF (%)							2845 DD65 (1582)	
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	18	31	39	48	55	63	68	74
WWB4	19	37	49	60	67	76	81	87
WWC2	20	37	48	59	66	75	80	85
TWA1	18	25	30	36	41	47	51	57
TWA2	17	27	34	42	47	55	60	66
TWA3	16	28	35	44	50	58	63	69
TWA4	15	27	35	44	50	58	64	70
TWB3	15	25	32	40	46	54	60	66
TWD4	18	34	44	55	62	71	76	82
TWE2	20	35	45	56	63	71	77	82
TWF3	13	24	32	40	46	54	59	66
TWJ2	17	32	42	53	60	69	74	80
DGA1	13	23	29	36	40	46	49	53
DGA2	14	25	32	40	46	54	58	64
DGA3	16	29	38	48	55	64	69	75
DGB1	13	23	31	39	44	51	55	60
DGB2	14	25	34	43	50	58	64	70
DGB3	16	30	39	50	58	67	73	79
DGC1	16	27	36	45	51	59	63	69
DGC2	16	29	39	49	56	65	70	76
DGC3	19	33	44	56	63	73	79	85
SSA1	22	33	41	48	54	61	65	71
SSB1	19	29	36	43	48	55	60	66
SSB2	22	36	45	54	60	68	73	79
SSB3	18	28	34	41	46	53	57	63
SSC1	16	27	35	44	50	58	63	69
SSC2	18	32	42	51	58	67	72	78
SSE1	21	34	42	50	56	64	68	74
SSE2	24	41	50	60	67	75	79	84
SSE3	20	30	36	43	48	55	60	65

SAN DIEGO, CALIFORNIA SSF (%)							1512 DD65 (841)	
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	39	61	73	83	89	94	97	98
WWB4	46	71	83	91	95	98	99	100
WWC2	45	70	82	91	95	98	99	100
TWA1	30	45	55	65	72	80	85	90
TWA2	34	52	64	74	81	88	92	95
TWA3	35	55	67	78	84	91	94	97
TWA4	34	55	67	78	85	91	94	97
TWB3	31	51	62	73	80	88	92	95
TWD4	41	65	77	87	92	96	98	99
TWE2	43	66	78	88	92	97	98	99
TWF3	31	51	63	74	81	89	92	96
TWJ2	39	63	76	86	91	96	98	99
DGA1	31	51	62	72	78	84	88	91
DGA2	31	52	64	74	81	88	91	95
DGA3	34	58	71	81	87	92	94	95
DGB1	32	56	69	79	85	90	93	95
DGB2	32	56	70	81	87	93	95	97
DGB3	35	61	75	86	91	95	96	97
DGC1	37	63	77	87	91	95	96	97
DGC2	36	63	77	87	92	96	98	99
DGC3	39	68	82	91	94	97	98	98
SSA1	43	62	73	82	88	93	95	98
SSB1	37	56	67	77	83	89	93	96
SSB2	45	66	77	86	91	95	97	99
SSB3	36	54	65	75	81	88	92	95
SSC1	36	56	68	79	85	92	95	97
SSC2	40	63	75	85	91	95	97	99
SSE1	45	67	78	86	91	95	97	99
SSE2	52	75	85	92	96	98	99	100
SSE3	38	57	67	77	83	90	93	96

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA SSF (%)								3050 DD65 (1696)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	24	41	51	62	69	77	82	88
WWB4	27	49	61	73	80	87	91	95
WWC2	27	48	61	72	79	87	91	94
TWA1	21	31	38	46	51	59	64	71
TWA2	22	35	44	53	59	68	73	80
TWA3	21	36	46	56	63	71	77	83
TWA4	20	36	46	56	63	72	78	84
TWB3	19	33	42	52	59	68	73	79
TWD4	25	44	56	67	75	83	87	92
TWE2	26	46	57	68	75	83	88	92
TWF3	18	32	42	52	59	68	73	80
TWJ2	23	42	54	65	73	81	86	91
DGA1	18	31	40	48	54	61	65	69
DGA2	18	33	42	52	59	67	72	78
DGA3	21	38	49	60	68	76	81	86
DGB1	18	33	43	53	60	68	72	77
DGB2	19	34	45	56	64	73	79	84
DGB3	21	39	51	63	72	81	85	90
DGC1	21	38	49	61	68	76	81	85
DGC2	22	39	51	63	71	80	85	89
DGC3	24	43	57	70	78	86	90	94
SSA1	30	45	54	63	68	76	80	85
SSB1	25	39	48	57	63	70	75	81
SSB2	30	47	58	67	74	81	86	90
SSB3	24	38	46	55	61	68	73	79
SSC1	21	37	47	57	64	72	78	84
SSC2	24	42	54	64	72	80	85	90
SSE1	30	47	57	66	72	79	84	88
SSE2	35	54	65	75	81	87	91	94
SSE3	26	40	48	57	63	71	75	81

SANTA MARIA, CALIFORNIA SSF (%)								3061 DD65 (1702)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	25	44	55	67	74	82	87	92
WWB4	29	53	66	78	84	91	95	97
WWC2	29	52	65	77	84	91	94	97
TWA1	21	32	40	49	55	64	69	76
TWA2	22	37	47	57	64	73	79	85
TWA3	22	39	49	60	67	77	82	88
TWA4	22	38	49	61	68	77	83	88
TWB3	20	35	45	56	63	73	78	84
TWD4	27	48	60	72	79	87	91	95
TWE2	28	49	61	73	80	88	92	95
TWF3	19	35	45	56	64	73	79	85
TWJ2	25	46	58	70	77	86	90	94
DGA1	19	34	43	52	59	66	71	75
DGA2	19	35	46	56	64	72	77	83
DGA3	22	40	53	65	73	81	85	89
DGB1	19	35	47	59	66	74	79	83
DGB2	20	37	49	62	70	79	84	89
DGB3	22	41	55	69	77	86	90	93
DGC1	22	41	54	67	75	83	87	90
DGC2	23	42	55	69	77	85	90	93
DGC3	25	47	62	76	83	91	94	96
SSA1	32	49	60	70	76	83	87	92
SSB1	27	43	53	63	70	78	83	88
SSB2	33	52	64	74	80	88	91	95
SSB3	26	41	51	61	68	76	81	86
SSC1	23	40	50	61	69	78	83	89
SSC2	26	46	58	69	77	85	89	94
SSE1	33	52	63	73	80	87	91	94
SSE2	38	61	72	82	88	93	96	98
SSE3	28	43	53	63	70	76	83	88

DENVER, COLORADO SSF (%)								6022 DD65 (3348)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	21	29	37	43	52	58	66	75
WWB4	27	38	50	58	68	75	82	89
WWC2	27	37	48	56	67	73	80	88
TWA1	19	23	27	31	37	41	46	53
TWA2	19	25	31	36	44	49	55	64
TWA3	19	26	33	39	47	52	59	69
TWA4	18	25	33	39	47	53	61	70
TWB3	17	23	30	36	43	49	56	65
TWD4	25	34	44	52	62	68	76	85
TWE2	26	35	45	52	62	69	76	85
TWF3	16	22	29	35	43	48	55	65
TWJ2	23	32	42	49	59	66	74	83
DGA1	14	19	25	28	33	37	40	45
DGA2	16	22	30	35	43	47	53	61
DGA3	20	28	37	44	54	61	68	76
DGB1	14	19	25	30	37	42	48	54
DGB2	17	23	31	37	46	52	60	68
DGB3	21	29	38	46	57	65	73	82
DGC1	17	24	31	37	46	52	59	66
DGC2	20	27	36	43	53	60	68	77
DGC3	24	33	43	52	64	72	80	88
SSA1	25	31	38	44	51	56	63	71
SSB1	21	26	33	38	45	50	56	65
SSB2	27	35	44	50	59	65	72	81
SSB3	19	25	31	35	42	46	52	61
SSC1	19	25	33	38	46	52	59	68
SSC2	23	31	41	48	57	63	71	80
SSE1	24	31	39	45	54	59	66	74
SSE2	30	40	50	57	67	73	80	87
SSE3	21	27	33	38	45	49	56	64

GRAND JUNCTION, COLORADO SSF (%)								5607 DD65 (3118)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	20	27	35	41	49	55	62	71
WWB4	26	36	47	55	65	71	79	87
WWC2	26	35	46	54	64	70	77	85
TWA1	19	22	26	30	35	38	43	50
TWA2	19	24	30	35	41	46	52	61
TWA3	19	25	31	37	44	49	56	65
TWA4	18	24	31	37	45	50	57	66
TWB3	17	22	29	34	41	46	52	61
TWD4	24	32	42	49	59	65	73	81
TWE2	25	33	43	50	59	66	73	82
TWF3	15	21	28	33	40	45	52	61
TWJ2	22	30	40	47	57	63	70	79
DGA1	14	18	23	26	31	34	37	41
DGA2	16	22	28	33	40	45	50	57
DGA3	20	27	36	42	52	58	65	73
DGB1	14	18	24	28	34	38	43	49
DGB2	16	22	29	35	43	49	56	64
DGB3	20	28	37	44	54	61	69	78
DGC1	17	22	29	34	42	47	53	61
DGC2	19	26	34	41	50	56	64	73
DGC3	23	31	41	49	61	68	76	85
SSA1	24	29	36	41	48	52	58	66
SSB1	20	25	31	35	42	46	52	60
SSB2	25	33	41	47	56	62	68	77
SSB3	18	23	29	33	39	43	48	56
SSC1	18	24	31	36	43	49	55	64
SSC2	22	30	38	45	54	60	67	76
SSE1	23	29	37	42	49	54	61	69
SSE2	28	37	47	54	63	69	75	83
SSE3	20	25	31	35	41	46	51	59

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

HARTFORD, CONNECTICUT SSF (%)								6354 DD65 (3533)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	7	10	13	16	19	22	25	30
WWB4	9	16	23	28	36	41	49	58
WWC2	10	15	22	27	35	40	46	55
TWA1	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	20
TWA2	9	11	13	15	18	20	22	25
TWA3	8	10	13	15	18	21	24	28
TWA4	6	9	12	15	18	21	24	29
TWB3	7	10	12	15	18	20	23	28
TWD4	10	15	21	25	32	37	43	52
TWE2	10	15	21	26	32	37	43	51
TWF3	5	7	10	12	15	17	20	24
TWJ2	8	13	19	23	30	34	40	49
DGA1	4	5	6	6	7	7	6	5
DGA2	7	9	12	14	17	19	22	26
DGA3	10	14	18	22	28	32	37	45
DGB1	4	5	6	6	7	7	7	7
DGB2	7	9	12	15	18	20	23	28
DGB3	10	14	19	23	29	33	39	48
DGC1	5	7	9	10	12	13	14	15
DGC2	9	12	15	18	23	26	30	36
DGC3	12	17	22	27	33	38	45	54
SSA1	13	16	19	21	25	27	30	34
SSB1	11	13	15	17	20	22	25	28
SSB2	14	18	24	27	33	37	43	50
SSB3	10	11	14	15	17	19	21	23
SSC1	6	8	11	13	15	17	20	23
SSC2	8	12	17	21	26	30	35	42
SSE1	10	13	16	18	21	23	26	29
SSE2	13	18	24	29	35	40	45	53
SSE3	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	26

MIAMI, FLORIDA SSF (%)								206 DD65 (115)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	82	96	99	100	100	100	100	100
WWB4	89	98	100	100	100	100	100	100
WWC2	88	98	100	100	100	100	100	100
TWA1	64	84	92	97	98	100	100	100
TWA2	73	91	96	99	100	100	100	100
TWA3	76	93	97	99	100	100	100	100
TWA4	76	93	98	99	100	100	100	100
TWB3	71	90	96	99	100	100	100	100
TWD4	84	97	99	100	100	100	100	100
TWE2	85	97	99	100	100	100	100	100
TWF3	72	91	96	99	100	100	100	100
TWJ2	83	96	99	100	100	100	100	100
DGA1	75	92	97	99	100	100	100	100
DGA2	74	92	97	99	100	100	100	100
DGA3	79	93	96	97	97	97	97	97
DGB1	81	95	98	99	99	99	99	99
DGB2	80	96	99	100	100	100	100	100
DGB3	83	96	98	98	98	98	98	98
DGC1	88	97	98	99	99	99	98	98
DGC2	86	98	99	100	100	100	100	100
DGC3	88	98	98	99	99	98	98	98
SSA1	81	95	99	100	100	100	100	100
SSB1	75	92	97	99	100	100	100	100
SSB2	84	97	99	100	100	100	100	100
SSB3	74	92	97	99	100	100	100	100
SSC1	78	94	98	99	100	100	100	100
SSC2	83	96	99	100	100	100	100	100
SSE1	85	97	99	100	100	100	100	100
SSE2	91	99	100	100	100	100	100	100
SSE3	76	93	97	99	100	100	100	100

WASHINGTON, DC SSF (%)								5010 DD65 (2786)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	12	16	22	25	31	35	40	48
WWB4	15	23	32	39	48	54	62	72
WWC2	15	23	31	38	46	52	60	69
TWA1	14	16	18	20	23	25	28	32
TWA2	13	16	20	22	27	30	34	40
TWA3	12	15	20	23	28	32	37	43
TWA4	10	14	19	23	29	33	38	45
TWB3	11	14	18	22	27	30	35	42
TWD4	15	21	29	35	43	49	56	65
TWE2	15	22	29	35	43	49	56	65
TWF3	9	12	16	20	25	28	33	40
TWJ2	13	19	27	32	40	46	53	62
DGA1	7	9	12	14	16	17	18	19
DGA2	10	13	18	21	26	29	33	39
DGA3	13	18	25	29	37	42	48	57
DGB1	7	9	12	14	17	19	21	23
DGB2	10	14	18	22	27	31	36	42
DGB3	14	19	25	31	38	44	51	61
DGC1	9	12	16	19	23	25	29	33
DGC2	12	17	22	26	33	37	43	51
DGC3	16	22	29	35	43	50	58	68
SSA1	17	21	26	29	34	38	42	49
SSB1	14	17	21	25	29	32	36	42
SSB2	18	24	31	36	43	48	54	63
SSB3	13	16	20	22	26	29	33	38
SSC1	10	14	18	21	26	30	34	40
SSC2	13	19	25	30	37	42	48	57
SSE1	15	19	24	28	33	37	41	48
SSE2	19	26	34	39	47	53	59	68
SSE3	15	18	22	24	29	31	35	41

ORLANDO, FLORIDA SSF (%)								733 DD65 (408)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	45	68	80	89	93	97	98	99
WWB4	52	78	88	95	97	99	100	100
WWC2	52	77	87	94	97	99	100	100
TWA1	34	51	61	72	78	86	90	94
TWA2	38	59	70	80	86	92	95	98
TWA3	40	62	73	83	89	94	97	98
TWA4	39	62	74	84	90	95	97	99
TWB3	36	57	69	80	86	92	95	97
TWD4	47	72	83	91	95	98	99	100
TWE2	49	73	84	92	96	98	99	100
TWF3	36	58	70	80	87	93	95	98
TWJ2	45	70	82	90	94	98	99	100
DGA1	37	58	69	78	84	90	93	95
DGA2	36	59	71	81	86	92	95	97
DGA3	40	66	77	86	90	94	95	96
DGB1	38	64	76	85	90	94	96	97
DGB2	38	64	77	87	92	96	98	99
DGB3	41	69	82	90	94	97	97	98
DGC1	44	72	84	91	94	97	97	98
DGC2	42	71	83	92	95	98	99	100
DGC3	46	76	88	94	96	98	98	98
SSA1	46	67	78	87	92	96	98	99
SSB1	40	61	72	82	88	93	96	98
SSB2	48	71	82	90	94	98	99	100
SSB3	39	59	71	81	86	92	95	98
SSC1	41	63	75	85	90	95	97	99
SSC2	46	70	81	90	94	98	99	100
SSE1	50	72	83	91	95	98	90	100
SSE2	57	80	90	95	98	99	100	100
SSE3	41	62	73	82	88	93	96	98

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

TALLAHASSEE, FLORIDA SSF (%)								1563 DD65 (869)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	24	41	52	63	70	79	84	90
WWB4	27	49	62	74	82	89	93	96
WWC2	27	49	61	73	81	88	92	96
TWA1	21	31	38	46	52	60	65	72
TWA2	22	35	44	53	60	70	75	82
TWA3	22	36	46	56	64	73	79	85
TWA4	21	36	46	57	64	74	79	86
TWB3	19	33	42	52	59	69	75	81
TWD4	25	45	57	69	76	85	89	93
TWE2	26	46	58	69	77	85	90	94
TWF3	18	32	42	52	60	69	75	82
TWJ2	23	42	54	66	74	83	88	92
DGA1	18	31	40	48	54	62	66	71
DGA2	18	33	42	53	60	68	74	79
DGA3	21	37	49	62	69	78	83	87
DGB1	18	32	43	54	61	70	75	80
DGB2	19	34	45	58	66	75	81	86
DGB3	21	38	51	65	73	83	87	92
DGC1	21	38	49	62	71	79	83	88
DGC2	21	38	51	65	73	82	87	91
DGC3	24	43	57	72	80	88	92	95
SSA1	27	42	52	62	69	77	82	88
SSB1	23	36	46	55	62	71	77	83
SSB2	28	45	56	67	74	83	87	92
SSB3	22	35	44	53	60	69	74	81
SSC1	21	37	47	57	65	74	80	86
SSC2	24	42	54	66	73	82	87	92
SSE1	28	45	55	66	73	81	86	91
SSE2	32	53	65	76	83	90	93	96
SSE3	24	37	46	56	63	71	77	83

ATLANTA, GEORGIA SSF (%)								3105 DD65 (1726)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	12	22	29	37	43	52	57	65
WWB4	12	28	38	49	57	67	74	81
WWC2	13	28	38	48	56	66	72	79
TWA1	15	20	24	28	32	37	41	46
TWA2	13	20	26	32	37	44	49	55
TWA3	12	20	26	33	39	47	52	59
TWA4	10	19	26	33	39	47	53	60
TWB3	10	18	24	31	36	43	49	55
TWD4	12	25	35	45	52	61	68	75
TWE2	13	26	35	45	52	62	68	75
TWF3	9	17	23	30	35	43	48	55
TWJ2	11	23	32	42	49	59	65	73
DGA1	9	15	20	25	29	34	37	40
DGA2	10	17	23	30	35	43	47	53
DGA3	12	21	29	38	44	54	60	67
DGB1	9	15	20	26	31	37	42	47
DGB2	10	18	24	32	37	46	52	59
DGB3	12	22	30	39	46	57	64	72
DGC1	10	19	25	32	37	45	50	57
DGC2	11	21	28	36	43	53	59	67
DGC3	13	25	33	44	52	63	71	79
SSA1	17	26	32	40	45	52	57	64
SSB1	14	22	28	34	39	46	51	57
SSB2	16	28	36	45	52	60	66	73
SSB3	13	21	26	32	37	43	48	54
SSC1	11	20	26	33	38	46	51	58
SSC2	12	24	32	41	47	57	63	70
SSE1	15	26	33	41	47	55	60	67
SSE2	17	32	41	51	58	68	74	80
SSE3	15	23	28	34	39	46	51	57

BOISE, IDAHO SSF (%)								5837 DD65 (3245)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	18	23	29	34	40	45	50	57
WWB4	22	31	40	47	56	62	69	77
WWC2	22	30	39	46	54	60	67	75
TWA1	17	20	24	26	30	33	36	41
TWA2	17	21	26	30	35	38	43	49
TWA3	16	21	27	31	37	41	46	53
TWA4	15	21	26	31	37	41	47	54
TWB3	15	20	25	29	35	39	44	50
TWD4	20	28	36	43	51	56	63	71
TWE2	21	29	37	43	51	56	63	71
TWF3	13	18	23	27	33	37	42	49
TWJ2	19	26	34	40	48	54	61	69
DGA1	12	15	19	21	25	26	28	30
DGA2	14	19	24	28	34	38	42	48
DGA3	18	24	32	37	45	50	56	64
DGB1	12	16	20	23	27	29	32	35
DGB2	15	20	26	30	36	40	46	52
DGB3	19	25	33	39	47	52	59	68
DGC1	15	19	25	28	33	37	41	45
DGC2	17	23	30	35	42	47	53	60
DGC3	21	28	37	43	52	58	65	74
SSA1	22	26	32	35	41	44	48	54
SSB1	18	22	27	31	36	39	43	49
SSB2	23	30	37	42	49	54	59	67
SSB3	17	21	25	28	33	36	39	44
SSC1	15	20	26	30	35	39	44	50
SSC2	18	25	33	38	46	51	57	65
SSE1	20	25	31	35	40	44	48	54
SSE2	25	32	40	46	53	58	64	71
SSE3	19	23	27	31	35	38	42	47

CHICAGO, ILLINOIS SSF (%)								6125 DD65 (3406)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	9	13	16	19	23	26	30	35
WWB4	12	19	26	32	40	46	53	62
WWC2	12	18	25	31	38	44	51	60
TWA1	13	14	16	17	19	20	22	24
TWA2	11	13	16	18	21	23	26	30
TWA3	9	12	16	18	22	25	28	33
TWA4	8	11	15	18	22	25	29	34
TWB3	9	11	15	17	21	24	27	32
TWD4	12	17	24	29	36	41	47	56
TWE2	12	18	24	29	36	40	47	55
TWF3	7	9	13	15	19	21	25	29
TWJ2	10	15	22	26	33	38	44	53
DGA1	5	7	8	9	10	10	11	10
DGA2	8	11	14	17	20	23	26	30
DGA3	12	16	21	25	31	35	41	48
DGB1	5	7	8	9	11	11	12	12
DGB2	8	11	15	17	21	24	28	33
DGB3	12	16	22	26	32	37	43	52
DGC1	7	9	12	13	16	17	19	21
DGC2	10	14	18	21	26	30	34	41
DGC3	14	19	25	30	37	42	49	58
SSA1	15	18	21	24	27	30	33	38
SSB1	12	15	18	20	23	25	28	32
SSB2	16	20	26	30	36	40	46	53
SSB3	11	13	16	17	20	22	24	27
SSC1	8	11	14	16	19	21	24	28
SSC2	10	15	20	24	30	34	39	46
SSE1	12	15	18	21	25	27	30	34
SSE2	15	21	27	32	39	43	49	57
SSE3	12	15	17	19	22	24	27	30

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

MOLINE, ILLINOIS SSF (%)								6399 DD65 (3558)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	9	13	16	19	24	26	30	36
WWB4	12	19	26	32	40	46	53	63
WWC2	12	18	25	31	39	44	51	60
TWA1	13	14	16	17	19	20	22	24
TWA2	11	13	16	18	21	23	26	30
TWA3	9	12	16	18	22	25	28	33
TWA4	8	11	15	18	22	25	29	34
TWB3	9	11	15	17	21	24	27	32
TWD4	12	17	24	29	36	41	47	56
TWE2	12	18	24	29	36	41	47	55
TWF3	7	9	13	15	19	21	25	29
TWJ2	10	15	22	26	33	38	44	53
DGA1	5	7	8	9	10	11	11	10
DGA2	8	11	14	17	20	23	26	30
DGA3	12	16	21	25	31	35	41	49
DGB1	5	7	8	9	11	11	12	12
DGB2	8	11	15	17	21	24	28	33
DGB3	12	16	22	26	32	37	43	52
DGC1	7	9	12	13	16	17	19	21
DGC2	10	14	18	21	26	29	34	41
DGC3	14	19	25	30	37	42	49	59
SSA1	15	18	21	24	27	30	33	38
SSB1	12	14	17	20	23	25	28	32
SSB2	15	20	26	30	36	40	46	53
SSB3	11	13	15	17	20	22	24	27
SSC1	8	11	14	16	19	21	24	29
SSC2	10	15	20	24	30	34	39	47
SSE1	12	15	18	21	24	27	30	34
SSE2	15	21	27	32	38	43	49	57
SSE3	12	15	17	19	22	24	27	30

INDIANAPOLIS, INDIANA SSF (%)								5585 DD65 (3105)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	9	12	16	19	22	25	29	34
WWB4	11	18	25	31	39	45	52	61
WWC2	11	18	25	30	37	43	49	58
TWA1	12	14	15	17	18	19	21	23
TWA2	10	13	15	17	20	22	25	29
TWA3	9	12	15	18	21	24	27	31
TWA4	8	11	14	17	21	24	28	33
TWB3	8	11	14	17	20	23	26	31
TWD4	11	17	23	28	35	40	46	55
TWE2	12	17	23	28	35	39	46	54
TWF3	6	9	12	14	18	20	23	28
TWJ2	10	15	21	26	32	37	43	52
DGA1	5	6	8	8	9	10	10	9
DGA2	8	11	14	16	20	22	25	29
DGA3	11	15	20	24	30	34	40	47
DGB1	5	6	8	9	10	10	11	11
DGB2	8	11	14	17	20	23	26	31
DGB3	12	16	21	25	31	36	42	51
DGC1	7	9	11	13	15	16	17	19
DGC2	10	13	17	21	25	28	33	39
DGC3	13	18	24	29	36	41	48	57
SSA1	15	18	21	24	27	30	33	38
SSB1	12	15	17	20	23	25	28	32
SSB2	15	20	26	30	36	40	46	53
SSB3	11	13	16	17	20	22	24	27
SSC1	8	10	13	15	18	20	23	27
SSC2	10	14	19	23	29	33	38	45
SSE1	12	15	18	21	24	27	30	34
SSE2	15	21	27	32	38	43	49	56
SSE3	12	15	17	19	22	24	26	30

SPRINGFIELD, ILLINOIS SSF (%)								5563 DD65 (3093)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	12	16	21	24	30	33	38	45
WWB4	15	23	31	38	46	53	60	70
WWC2	15	22	30	36	45	50	58	67
TWA1	14	16	18	20	22	24	27	30
TWA2	13	16	19	22	26	29	32	38
TWA3	12	15	19	22	27	30	35	41
TWA4	10	14	19	22	27	31	36	43
TWB3	11	14	18	21	26	29	33	39
TWD4	14	21	28	34	42	47	54	63
TWE2	15	21	28	34	42	47	54	63
TWF3	9	12	16	19	24	27	31	37
TWJ2	13	19	26	31	39	44	51	60
DGA1	7	9	11	13	15	16	17	17
DGA2	10	13	17	20	25	28	32	37
DGA3	14	18	24	28	35	40	47	55
DGB1	7	9	12	13	16	17	19	21
DGB2	10	14	18	21	26	29	34	40
DGB3	14	19	25	30	37	42	49	59
DGC1	9	12	15	18	21	23	26	30
DGC2	12	16	21	25	31	35	41	49
DGC3	16	22	28	34	42	48	56	66
SSA1	17	20	25	28	32	36	40	46
SSB1	14	17	21	23	28	30	34	40
SSB2	18	23	29	34	41	46	52	60
SSB3	13	15	19	21	25	27	30	35
SSC1	10	14	17	20	25	28	32	38
SSC2	13	18	24	29	36	40	46	55
SSE1	14	18	23	26	31	34	38	44
SSE2	18	25	32	37	45	50	57	65
SSE3	14	17	21	23	27	29	33	38

SOUTH BEND, INDIANA SSF (%)								6465 DD65 (3595)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	7	9	12	14	16	18	20	23
WWB4	9	14	21	26	33	38	44	52
WWC2	9	14	20	25	31	36	41	49
TWA1	12	12	13	14	15	16	16	17
TWA2	9	11	13	14	16	17	19	21
TWA3	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	23
TWA4	6	9	11	13	16	18	21	24
TWB3	7	9	12	13	16	18	20	23
TWD4	9	14	19	23	29	34	39	47
TWE2	10	14	19	23	29	33	38	45
TWF3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	20
TWJ2	8	12	17	21	27	31	36	43
DGA1	4	4	5	5	5	5	4	1
DGA2	7	9	11	13	16	17	20	22
DGA3	10	14	18	21	26	29	34	41
DGB1	4	4	5	5	5	5	5	3
DGB2	7	9	12	14	16	18	21	24
DGB3	10	14	19	22	27	31	36	44
DGC1	5	7	8	9	10	10	10	10
DGC2	9	11	15	17	21	23	26	31
DGC3	12	16	21	25	31	35	41	49
SSA1	13	15	18	20	23	25	27	29
SSB1	11	13	15	17	19	20	22	25
SSB2	14	18	23	26	31	35	39	46
SSB3	10	11	13	14	16	17	18	19
SSC1	6	8	10	11	13	14	15	17
SSC2	8	11	15	18	23	26	30	36
SSE1	10	12	15	16	18	20	21	23
SSE2	13	17	23	26	32	36	40	47
SSE3	11	13	15	16	18	19	20	22

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

DES MOINES, IOWA SSF (%)								6718 DD65 (3735)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	11	14	19	22	27	30	34	41
WWB4	13	21	29	35	43	49	57	66
WWC2	14	20	28	34	42	47	54	64
TWA1	13	15	17	18	21	22	24	27
TWA2	12	14	17	20	23	26	29	34
TWA3	11	14	17	20	24	27	31	37
TWA4	9	13	17	20	25	28	32	39
TWB3	10	13	16	19	23	26	30	36
TWD4	13	19	26	31	39	44	51	60
TWE2	14	20	26	31	39	44	50	59
TWF3	8	11	14	17	21	24	28	33
TWJ2	11	17	24	29	36	41	48	57
DGA1	6	8	10	11	12	13	14	14
DGA2	9	12	16	18	23	25	29	34
DGA3	13	17	22	27	33	38	44	52
DGB1	6	8	10	11	13	14	15	17
DGB2	9	13	16	19	23	27	31	36
DGB3	13	18	23	28	34	39	46	56
DGC1	8	11	14	15	18	20	22	26
DGC2	11	15	20	23	29	32	38	45
DGC3	15	20	26	31	39	45	52	62
SSA1	16	19	23	25	29	32	36	41
SSB1	13	16	19	21	25	27	31	35
SSB2	16	22	27	32	38	43	48	56
SSB3	12	14	17	19	22	24	27	30
SSC1	9	12	16	18	22	25	28	33
SSC2	12	16	22	26	33	37	43	51
SSE1	13	16	20	23	27	30	34	39
SSE2	16	22	29	34	41	46	52	61
SSE3	13	16	19	21	24	26	29	33

TOPEKA, KANSAS SSF (%)								5243 DD65 (2915)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	16	21	27	32	38	43	49	57
WWB4	20	28	38	45	55	61	69	78
WWC2	20	28	37	44	53	60	67	76
TWA1	16	19	22	24	28	31	34	39
TWA2	15	19	24	27	33	36	41	48
TWA3	15	19	24	29	35	39	44	52
TWA4	14	18	24	29	35	40	45	54
TWB3	13	18	23	27	32	36	42	50
TWD4	18	26	34	41	49	55	63	72
TWE2	19	27	35	41	50	55	63	72
TWF3	12	16	21	25	31	35	40	48
TWJ2	17	24	32	38	47	53	60	70
DGA1	10	13	16	19	22	24	26	28
DGA2	13	17	22	26	32	35	40	46
DGA3	16	22	29	34	42	48	55	64
DGB1	10	13	17	19	23	26	29	34
DGB2	13	17	23	27	33	38	43	51
DGB3	17	23	30	36	44	50	58	69
DGC1	13	17	21	25	30	34	38	44
DGC2	15	21	27	32	39	44	51	60
DGC3	19	26	34	40	50	57	65	76
SSA1	20	24	30	33	39	43	48	55
SSB1	16	20	25	29	34	38	42	49
SSB2	21	28	35	40	48	53	60	68
SSB3	15	19	23	26	31	34	38	44
SSC1	14	18	23	27	33	37	43	50
SSC2	17	23	30	36	44	49	56	65
SSE1	18	23	29	33	39	43	49	56
SSE2	23	30	39	45	53	59	66	74
SSE3	17	21	25	29	33	37	41	48

DODGE CITY, KANSAS SSF (%)								5053 DD65 (2810)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	21	27	35	41	50	55	63	72
WWB4	26	36	47	55	66	72	80	88
WWC2	26	36	46	54	64	71	78	86
TWA1	19	22	27	30	35	39	44	51
TWA2	19	24	30	35	42	47	53	61
TWA3	19	25	32	37	44	50	57	66
TWA4	18	24	31	37	45	51	58	67
TWB3	17	23	29	34	41	46	53	62
TWD4	24	33	43	50	60	66	74	82
TWE2	25	33	43	50	60	66	74	83
TWF3	16	21	28	33	40	46	52	62
TWJ2	22	30	40	47	57	63	71	80
DGA1	14	18	23	27	31	34	38	42
DGA2	16	22	28	33	41	45	51	58
DGA3	20	27	36	42	52	58	65	74
DGB1	14	18	24	28	35	39	44	50
DGB2	17	22	29	35	44	49	57	65
DGB3	20	28	37	44	55	62	70	79
DGC1	17	22	29	34	42	48	55	62
DGC2	19	26	34	41	51	57	65	74
DGC3	23	31	41	50	61	69	77	86
SSA1	24	30	37	42	49	54	60	68
SSB1	20	25	31	36	43	47	53	62
SSB2	26	33	42	48	57	63	70	78
SSB3	19	24	29	33	40	44	50	57
SSC1	18	24	31	36	44	49	56	65
SSC2	22	30	39	45	55	61	68	77
SSE1	23	30	37	43	51	56	63	71
SSE2	29	38	48	55	64	70	77	85
SSE3	21	26	32	36	42	47	53	61

LEXINGTON, KENTUCKY SSF (%)								4732 DD65 (2631)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	12	16	21	25	30	34	39	45
WWB4	15	23	31	38	47	53	60	70
WWC2	15	22	30	37	45	51	58	67
TWA1	14	16	18	20	23	25	27	31
TWA2	13	16	19	22	26	29	33	38
TWA3	12	15	19	23	27	31	35	41
TWA4	11	14	19	23	28	31	36	43
TWB3	11	14	18	21	26	29	34	40
TWD4	15	21	28	34	42	47	54	64
TWE2	15	22	29	34	42	47	54	63
TWF3	9	12	16	19	24	27	32	38
TWJ2	13	19	26	32	39	45	51	61
DGA1	7	9	12	13	15	16	17	18
DGA2	10	14	17	21	25	28	32	37
DGA3	14	19	24	29	36	41	47	55
DGB1	7	10	12	14	16	17	19	21
DGB2	10	14	18	21	26	30	34	40
DGB3	14	19	25	30	37	43	50	59
DGC1	10	13	16	18	21	24	27	31
DGC2	12	17	22	26	31	36	41	49
DGC3	16	22	29	34	42	48	56	66
SSA1	17	21	25	29	34	37	41	47
SSB1	14	18	21	24	29	32	35	41
SSB2	18	24	30	35	42	47	53	61
SSB3	13	16	20	22	26	28	32	36
SSC1	10	14	18	21	25	28	32	38
SSC2	13	18	25	29	36	41	47	55
SSE1	15	19	24	27	32	35	40	46
SSE2	19	26	33	38	46	51	58	66
SSE3	15	18	21	24	28	31	34	39

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

BATON ROUGE, LOUISIANA SSF (%)								1670 DD65 (929)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	21	35	45	56	63	72	78	84
WWB4	23	43	56	68	75	84	89	93
WWC2	23	43	55	67	74	83	88	92
TWA1	19	28	34	41	46	54	59	65
TWA2	19	31	39	47	54	63	68	75
TWA3	19	32	40	50	57	66	72	79
TWA4	18	31	40	50	57	67	73	79
TWB3	17	29	37	46	53	62	68	75
TWD4	22	39	51	62	70	79	84	90
TWE2	23	40	52	63	70	80	85	90
TWF3	16	28	37	46	53	62	68	75
TWJ2	20	37	48	60	68	77	82	88
DGA1	15	27	34	42	47	54	58	63
DGA2	16	28	37	46	53	61	67	73
DGA3	18	33	43	55	63	72	77	83
DGB1	15	27	36	46	53	62	67	72
DGB2	16	29	39	50	58	68	74	80
DGB3	19	33	45	57	66	76	82	87
DGC1	18	32	42	53	61	71	76	81
DGC2	19	33	44	56	65	75	80	86
DGC3	21	38	50	64	73	83	88	92
SSA1	24	38	47	56	63	71	76	82
SSB1	21	33	41	50	56	65	70	77
SSB2	25	41	51	62	69	77	83	88
SSB3	20	31	39	48	54	63	68	75
SSC1	19	32	41	51	58	67	73	79
SSC2	21	37	48	59	66	76	81	87
SSE1	24	40	49	60	67	75	80	86
SSE2	28	47	59	70	77	85	89	93
SSE3	22	33	41	50	56	65	70	77

SHREVEPORT, LOUISIANA SSF (%)								2175 DD65 (1209)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	17	30	39	49	56	65	71	78
WWB4	19	38	49	61	69	79	84	90
WWC2	19	37	49	60	68	78	83	89
TWA1	17	25	30	36	41	48	52	58
TWA2	17	27	34	42	48	56	61	68
TWA3	16	27	35	44	50	59	65	72
TWA4	15	27	35	44	51	60	66	73
TWB3	14	25	32	40	47	55	61	68
TWD4	18	34	45	56	63	73	79	85
TWE2	19	35	46	57	64	74	79	86
TWF3	13	24	31	40	46	55	61	68
TWJ2	16	32	42	53	61	71	77	84
DGA1	13	22	29	36	41	47	51	55
DGA2	13	24	32	40	47	55	60	66
DGA3	16	28	38	48	56	66	72	78
DGB1	13	22	30	38	45	53	58	64
DGB2	14	25	33	43	50	60	66	73
DGB3	16	29	39	50	59	70	76	83
DGC1	15	26	35	45	52	62	68	74
DGC2	16	28	38	49	57	68	74	80
DGC3	18	32	44	56	66	77	83	88
SSA1	21	33	41	49	56	64	70	76
SSB1	18	28	35	43	49	58	63	70
SSB2	21	36	45	55	62	71	77	83
SSB3	17	27	34	41	47	55	60	67
SSC1	15	27	35	44	51	60	66	73
SSC2	17	32	42	52	60	69	75	82
SSE1	21	34	43	52	59	68	73	80
SSE2	24	41	52	63	70	79	84	89
SSE3	19	29	36	44	50	58	63	70

NEW ORLEANS, LOUISIANA SSF (%)								1465 DD65 (815)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	24	41	52	63	70	79	84	89
WWB4	28	50	63	74	81	89	93	96
WWC2	28	49	62	73	80	88	92	95
TWA1	21	31	38	46	52	60	65	72
TWA2	22	35	44	54	60	70	75	81
TWA3	22	36	46	57	64	73	79	85
TWA4	21	36	46	57	64	74	79	85
TWB3	20	33	42	52	60	69	75	81
TWD4	25	45	57	69	76	85	89	93
TWE2	27	46	58	69	77	85	89	94
TWF3	19	33	42	53	60	69	75	82
TWJ2	24	43	55	66	74	83	88	92
DGA1	18	32	40	49	55	62	66	71
DGA2	19	33	43	53	60	68	73	79
DGA3	21	38	50	62	69	78	83	87
DGB1	18	33	43	54	61	70	75	80
DGB2	19	34	45	58	66	75	80	86
DGB3	22	39	51	65	73	83	87	91
DGC1	21	38	50	62	70	79	83	87
DGC2	22	39	51	65	73	82	87	91
DGC3	24	44	57	72	80	88	92	95
SSA1	28	43	52	62	69	78	82	88
SSB1	24	37	46	56	63	72	77	83
SSB2	28	46	57	68	75	83	87	92
SSB3	23	36	44	54	61	69	75	81
SSC1	22	37	47	58	65	74	79	85
SSC2	25	43	54	66	73	82	87	91
SSE1	28	45	55	67	74	82	86	91
SSE2	33	53	66	76	83	90	93	96
SSE3	25	38	47	56	63	72	77	83

PORTLAND, MAINE SSF (%)								7499 DD65 (4169)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	7	10	13	15	18	21	24	28
WWB4	9	15	22	28	35	41	47	57
WWC2	9	15	21	26	33	38	45	53
TWA1	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
TWA2	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	24
TWA3	8	10	13	15	18	20	22	26
TWA4	6	9	12	14	18	20	23	28
TWB3	7	10	12	14	17	19	22	26
TWD4	10	15	20	25	31	36	42	50
TWE2	10	15	21	25	31	35	41	49
TWF3	5	7	10	12	15	17	19	23
TWJ2	8	13	18	22	29	33	39	47
DGA1	4	5	5	6	6	6	6	4
DGA2	7	9	12	14	17	19	21	25
DGA3	10	14	18	22	27	31	36	43
DGB1	4	5	5	6	6	7	6	5
DGB2	7	9	12	14	17	20	22	26
DGB3	11	14	19	23	28	33	38	46
DGC1	5	7	8	10	11	12	13	13
DGC2	9	12	15	18	22	25	29	34
DGC3	12	16	22	26	32	37	43	53
SSA1	13	16	19	21	24	26	29	32
SSB1	11	13	15	17	20	22	24	27
SSB2	14	18	23	27	33	37	42	49
SSB3	10	11	13	15	17	18	20	22
SSC1	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	21
SSC2	8	12	16	20	25	28	33	40
SSE1	10	13	15	17	20	22	24	27
SSE2	13	18	24	28	34	38	44	51
SSE3	11	13	15	17	19	20	22	25

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

BALTIMORE, MARYLAND SSF (%)								4731 DD65 (2630)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	13	18	24	28	35	39	45	53
WWB4	17	26	35	42	52	58	66	75
WWC2	17	25	34	41	50	56	64	73
TWA1	15	17	20	22	25	28	31	36
TWA2	14	17	21	25	30	33	38	44
TWA3	13	17	22	26	31	35	41	48
TWA4	12	16	22	26	32	36	42	50
TWB3	12	16	20	24	29	33	38	46
TWD4	16	23	31	38	46	52	59	69
TWE2	17	24	32	38	46	52	59	69
TWF3	10	14	19	22	28	32	37	44
TWJ2	14	21	29	35	44	49	57	66
DGA1	8	11	14	16	19	20	22	24
DGA2	11	15	19	23	28	32	37	42
DGA3	15	20	26	32	39	45	52	60
DGB1	8	11	14	17	20	22	25	29
DGB2	11	15	20	24	30	34	40	47
DGB3	15	21	27	33	41	47	55	65
DGC1	11	14	18	22	26	29	34	39
DGC2	13	18	24	29	36	41	47	56
DGC3	17	24	31	37	47	53	62	72
SSA1	18	22	27	31	37	41	46	52
SSB1	15	19	23	27	31	35	40	46
SSB2	19	26	33	38	45	51	57	66
SSB3	14	17	21	24	29	32	36	41
SSC1	12	16	20	24	30	33	38	46
SSC2	15	21	28	33	41	46	52	61
SSE1	16	21	26	31	36	40	46	53
SSE2	21	28	36	42	51	56	63	72
SSE3	16	19	23	26	31	34	38	44

BOSTON, MASSACHUSETTS SSF (%)								5622 DD65 (3126)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	10	14	18	21	26	29	33	40
WWB4	13	20	28	34	43	49	56	66
WWC2	13	20	27	33	41	47	54	63
TWA1	13	15	16	18	20	21	23	26
TWA2	11	14	17	19	23	25	28	33
TWA3	10	13	17	20	24	27	31	36
TWA4	9	12	16	19	24	27	32	38
TWB3	9	12	16	18	23	26	29	35
TWD4	13	18	25	31	38	43	50	59
TWE2	13	19	26	31	38	43	50	58
TWF3	7	10	14	16	20	23	27	33
TWJ2	11	17	23	28	35	41	47	56
DGA1	6	7	9	10	12	12	13	13
DGA2	9	12	15	18	22	25	28	33
DGA3	12	17	22	26	32	37	43	51
DGB1	6	7	9	11	12	13	14	16
DGB2	9	12	16	18	23	26	30	36
DGB3	13	17	23	27	34	39	46	55
DGC1	8	10	13	15	17	19	22	25
DGC2	11	15	19	23	28	32	37	44
DGC3	14	20	26	31	38	44	51	62
SSA1	15	19	22	25	29	32	36	41
SSB1	13	15	19	21	25	27	31	36
SSB2	16	21	27	32	38	43	48	56
SSB3	11	14	17	19	22	24	27	31
SSC1	9	12	15	17	21	24	27	32
SSC2	11	16	21	26	32	36	42	50
SSE1	13	16	20	23	27	30	34	39
SSE2	16	22	29	34	41	46	52	61
SSE3	13	16	19	21	24	26	29	33

DETROIT, MICHIGAN SSF (%)								6234 DD65 (3466)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	7	10	13	15	18	20	23	26
WWB4	9	15	22	27	35	40	46	55
WWC2	9	15	21	26	33	38	44	52
TWA1	12	13	14	15	16	16	17	18
TWA2	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23
TWA3	8	10	13	15	17	19	22	25
TWA4	7	9	12	14	17	20	23	27
TWB3	7	10	12	14	17	19	22	26
TWD4	10	15	20	25	31	35	41	49
TWE2	10	15	20	25	31	35	40	48
TWF3	5	7	10	12	14	16	19	22
TWJ2	8	13	18	22	28	33	38	46
DGA1	4	5	6	6	6	6	5	4
DGA2	7	9	12	14	17	19	21	24
DGA3	10	14	18	22	27	31	36	43
DGB1	4	5	6	6	7	7	6	5
DGB2	7	9	12	14	17	20	22	26
DGB3	11	14	19	23	28	32	38	46
DGC1	5	7	9	10	11	12	12	13
DGC2	9	12	15	18	22	25	28	33
DGC3	12	17	22	26	32	37	43	52
SSA1	13	16	19	21	24	26	28	32
SSB1	11	13	15	17	20	21	24	26
SSB2	14	18	23	27	32	36	41	48
SSB3	10	11	13	15	17	18	20	21
SSC1	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20
SSC2	8	12	16	20	25	28	32	39
SSE1	10	13	15	17	20	21	23	25
SSE2	13	18	24	28	33	37	43	49
SSE3	11	13	15	17	19	20	22	24

SAULT STE. MARIE, MICHIGAN SSF (%)								9201 DD65 (5116)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	5	7	8	10	11	12	13	13
WWB4	6	11	17	21	27	31	37	44
WWC2	7	11	16	20	25	29	34	40
TWA1	10	11	11	12	12	12	12	11
TWA2	8	9	10	11	12	13	13	14
TWA3	6	7	9	10	12	13	14	15
TWA4	4	6	8	10	12	13	14	16
TWB3	6	7	9	10	12	13	15	16
TWD4	7	11	16	19	25	28	33	39
TWE2	8	12	16	19	24	27	31	37
TWF3	3	5	6	8	9	10	11	12
TWJ2	6	9	14	17	22	25	30	36
DGA1	2	3	3	2	2	1	0	–4
DGA2	5	7	9	11	13	14	15	17
DGA3	9	12	15	18	23	26	30	35
DGB1	2	2	3	2	2	1	0	–2
DGB2	5	7	9	11	13	14	16	18
DGB3	9	12	16	19	24	27	32	38
DGC1	4	5	5	6	6	6	5	3
DGC2	7	9	12	14	17	19	22	25
DGC3	10	14	19	22	28	31	36	43
SSA1	12	13	15	17	19	20	21	22
SSB1	9	11	12	14	15	16	17	18
SSB2	12	16	20	23	27	30	34	39
SSB3	8	9	11	11	12	13	13	12
SSC1	4	5	7	7	8	8	8	7
SSC2	6	9	12	14	18	20	23	27
SSE1	8	9	11	12	13	13	13	11
SSE2	10	14	18	22	26	29	32	36
SSE3	10	11	12	13	14	15	15	14

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

MINNEAPOLIS, MINNESOTA SSF (%)								8165 DD65 (4540)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	7	9	12	14	17	19	21	24
WWB4	9	14	21	26	33	38	45	54
WWC2	9	14	20	25	32	36	42	50
TWA1	11	12	13	14	15	16	16	17
TWA2	9	11	13	14	16	18	19	21
TWA3	7	10	12	14	16	18	20	23
TWA4	6	8	11	13	16	19	21	25
TWB3	7	9	12	13	16	18	21	24
TWD4	9	14	19	24	30	34	40	48
TWE2	10	14	20	24	29	34	39	46
TWF3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	20
TWJ2	7	12	17	21	27	31	37	44
DGA1	4	4	5	5	5	5	4	2
DGA2	7	9	11	13	16	18	20	23
DGA3	10	13	18	21	26	30	35	41
DGB1	3	4	5	5	6	5	5	3
DGB2	7	9	12	14	17	19	21	25
DGB3	10	14	19	22	28	31	37	44
DGC1	5	6	8	9	10	11	11	11
DGC2	8	11	15	17	21	24	27	32
DGC3	12	16	21	25	31	36	42	50
SSA1	12	15	17	19	21	23	25	28
SSB1	10	12	14	16	18	19	21	23
SSB2	13	17	22	25	30	34	38	45
SSB3	9	10	12	13	15	16	17	18
SSC1	6	8	10	11	13	14	16	18
SSC2	8	11	15	19	23	27	31	37
SSE1	9	11	13	15	17	18	20	21
SSE2	12	16	21	25	31	34	39	46
SSE3	10	12	14	15	17	18	19	20

SAINT LOUIS, MISSOURI SSF (%)								4754 DD65 (2643)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	15	20	26	30	36	41	47	55
WWB4	19	27	37	44	53	59	67	76
WWC2	19	27	36	42	51	57	65	74
TWA1	16	18	21	23	27	29	32	37
TWA2	15	19	23	26	31	35	39	46
TWA3	14	18	23	27	33	37	42	50
TWA4	13	18	23	27	33	38	43	51
TWB3	13	17	22	25	31	35	40	47
TWD4	18	25	33	39	48	53	61	70
TWE2	18	26	33	39	48	53	61	70
TWF3	11	15	20	24	29	33	38	46
TWJ2	16	23	31	37	45	51	58	67
DGA1	9	12	15	18	20	22	24	26
DGA2	12	16	21	25	30	34	38	44
DGA3	16	21	28	33	41	46	53	62
DGB1	10	13	16	18	22	24	27	31
DGB2	12	17	22	26	32	36	41	49
DGB3	16	22	29	34	43	48	56	66
DGC1	12	16	20	23	28	31	35	41
DGC2	15	20	26	30	37	42	49	57
DGC3	19	25	33	39	48	54	63	73
SSA1	19	24	29	32	38	42	47	53
SSB1	16	20	24	28	33	36	41	47
SSB2	21	27	34	39	46	52	58	67
SSB3	15	18	22	25	30	33	37	43
SSC1	13	17	22	26	31	35	40	47
SSC2	16	22	29	34	42	47	54	63
SSE1	18	22	28	32	38	42	47	54
SSE2	22	29	37	43	52	57	64	73
SSE3	17	20	24	28	32	35	40	46

MERIDIAN, MISSISSIPPI SSF (%)								2393 DD65 (1331)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	15	28	36	45	52	61	67	74
WWB4	16	34	46	58	66	75	81	87
WWC2	17	34	45	56	64	74	80	86
TWA1	16	23	28	33	38	44	49	54
TWA2	15	24	31	38	44	52	57	64
TWA3	14	25	32	41	47	55	61	68
TWA4	13	24	32	41	47	56	62	69
TWB3	13	22	29	37	43	52	57	64
TWD4	16	31	41	52	60	70	76	82
TWE2	17	32	42	53	60	70	76	83
TWF3	11	21	29	37	43	51	57	64
TWJ2	14	29	39	50	57	67	73	80
DGA1	11	20	26	32	37	43	46	50
DGA2	12	22	29	37	43	51	56	62
DGA3	14	26	35	45	52	62	68	75
DGB1	11	20	27	34	40	48	53	59
DGB2	12	22	30	39	46	56	62	69
DGB3	14	26	36	46	55	66	72	80
DGC1	13	24	31	41	47	57	63	69
DGC2	14	26	34	45	52	63	69	76
DGC3	16	30	40	52	61	73	79	86
SSA1	20	31	38	46	52	61	66	72
SSB1	16	26	33	41	46	54	59	66
SSB2	20	33	42	52	59	68	74	80
SSB3	16	25	31	39	44	52	57	63
SSC1	14	24	32	41	47	55	61	68
SSC2	15	29	38	49	56	65	71	78
SSE1	19	31	40	49	55	64	70	76
SSE2	22	38	49	60	67	76	81	87
SSE3	17	27	33	41	46	54	59	66

SPRINGFIELD, MISSOURI SSF (%)								4571 DD65 (2542)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	16	22	28	33	40	45	52	60
WWB4	21	30	40	47	57	63	71	80
WWC2	21	29	39	46	55	62	69	78
TWA1	17	19	23	25	29	32	36	41
TWA2	16	20	25	29	34	38	43	51
TWA3	15	20	26	30	36	41	46	55
TWA4	14	19	25	30	37	41	48	56
TWB3	14	18	24	28	34	38	44	52
TWD4	19	27	36	42	51	57	65	74
TWE2	20	28	36	43	51	57	65	74
TWF3	12	17	22	26	33	37	43	51
TWJ2	18	25	33	40	49	55	62	72
DGA1	11	14	18	20	24	26	28	30
DGA2	13	18	23	27	33	37	42	48
DGA3	17	23	30	36	44	50	57	66
DGB1	11	14	18	21	25	28	32	37
DGB2	14	18	24	28	35	39	46	54
DGB3	17	24	31	37	46	52	60	71
DGC1	13	18	22	26	32	36	41	47
DGC2	10	21	28	33	41	46	54	63
DGC3	20	27	35	42	52	59	67	78
SSA1	21	26	31	36	42	46	51	59
SSB1	17	22	27	30	36	40	45	52
SSB2	22	29	37	42	50	55	62	71
SSB3	16	20	25	28	33	37	41	48
SSC1	14	19	25	29	35	39	45	53
SSC2	18	24	32	38	46	51	58	68
SSE1	19	25	31	36	42	47	52	60
SSE2	24	32	41	47	56	62	69	77
SSE3	18	22	27	30	36	39	44	51

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

HELENA, MONTANA SSF (%)								8197 DD65 (4558)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	11	14	19	22	27	30	34	39
WWB4	14	21	29	35	43	49	55	64
WWC2	14	20	28	34	41	47	53	62
TWA1	13	15	17	19	21	22	24	27
TWA2	12	14	18	20	24	26	29	33
TWA3	11	14	18	20	25	28	31	36
TWA4	9	13	17	20	25	28	32	38
TWB3	10	13	16	19	23	26	30	35
TWD4	13	19	26	31	39	44	50	58
TWE2	14	20	26	31	39	43	49	57
TWF3	8	11	14	17	21	24	28	33
TWJ2	12	17	24	29	36	41	47	55
DGA1	6	8	10	11	13	13	14	14
DGA2	9	12	16	19	23	26	29	33
DGA3	13	17	23	27	34	38	44	51
DGB1	6	8	10	12	14	15	16	17
DGB2	9	13	17	20	24	27	31	37
DGB3	13	18	24	28	35	40	46	55
DGC1	8	11	14	16	19	21	23	26
DGC2	11	15	20	24	30	33	38	44
DGC3	15	20	27	32	40	45	52	61
SSA1	16	19	23	25	29	32	35	39
SSB1	13	16	19	21	25	27	30	34
SSB2	17	22	27	32	38	42	47	54
SSB3	12	14	17	19	22	24	26	29
SSC1	9	12	16	18	22	25	28	32
SSC2	12	17	22	27	33	37	42	49
SSE1	13	17	20	23	27	29	32	35
SSE2	17	23	29	34	40	45	50	57
SSE3	13	16	19	21	24	26	29	32

ELY, NEVADA SSF (%)								7818 DD65 (4347)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	18	24	32	37	46	51	58	67
WWB4	23	33	44	52	62	69	76	85
WWC2	23	32	43	50	60	67	75	83
TWA1	17	20	24	29	32	35	40	47
TWA2	17	21	27	31	38	43	49	57
TWA3	16	22	28	33	41	46	52	61
TWA4	15	21	28	33	41	46	53	63
TWB3	15	20	26	31	38	43	49	58
TWD4	21	29	39	46	56	62	70	79
TWE2	22	30	40	47	56	63	70	79
TWF3	13	18	25	29	37	42	48	57
TWJ2	19	27	37	44	53	60	68	77
DGA1	11	15	20	23	27	30	33	37
DGA2	14	19	25	30	37	41	47	54
DGA3	18	24	32	39	48	55	62	71
DGB1	11	15	20	24	30	34	39	45
DGB2	14	19	26	31	39	45	52	61
DGB3	18	25	33	40	51	58	66	76
DGC1	14	19	25	30	38	43	49	57
DGC2	17	23	31	37	46	53	60	70
DGC3	21	29	38	46	57	65	74	83
SSA1	23	29	36	40	48	52	58	66
SSB1	19	24	30	34	41	46	51	59
SSB2	25	32	41	47	55	61	68	76
SSB3	18	22	28	32	38	42	48	55
SSC1	16	21	27	32	40	45	51	60
SSC2	19	27	35	42	51	57	64	74
SSE1	22	28	36	41	49	54	60	68
SSE2	27	37	46	53	62	68	75	83
SSE3	20	24	30	34	41	45	51	58

OMAHA, NEBRASKA SSF (%)								6606 DD65 (3673)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	12	16	21	24	30	33	38	45
WWB4	15	22	31	37	47	53	60	70
WWC2	15	22	30	36	45	51	58	68
TWA1	14	16	18	20	22	24	27	30
TWA2	13	15	19	22	26	29	32	38
TWA3	11	15	19	22	27	30	35	41
TWA4	10	14	19	22	27	31	36	43
TWB3	11	14	18	21	25	29	33	40
TWD4	14	21	28	34	42	47	54	64
TWE2	15	21	28	34	42	47	54	63
TWF3	9	12	16	19	24	27	31	37
TWJ2	13	19	26	31	39	49	51	61
DGA1	7	9	11	13	15	16	17	17
DGA2	10	13	17	20	25	28	32	37
DGA3	13	18	24	28	35	40	47	55
DGB1	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21
DGB2	10	14	18	21	26	29	34	40
DGB3	14	19	25	29	37	42	49	59
DGC1	9	12	15	18	21	23	26	30
DGC2	12	16	21	25	31	35	41	49
DGC3	16	21	28	33	42	48	56	66
SSA1	16	20	24	27	32	35	39	45
SSB1	14	17	20	23	27	30	34	39
SSB2	18	23	29	34	40	45	51	59
SSB3	12	15	18	21	24	26	29	34
SSC1	10	13	17	20	25	28	32	38
SSC2	13	18	29	29	36	40	47	55
SSE1	14	18	22	25	30	33	37	40
SSE2	18	24	31	37	44	49	56	65
SSE3	14	17	20	23	26	29	32	37

RENO, NEVADA SSF (%)								6027 DD65 (3351)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	25	33	41	48	57	63	70	78
WWB4	31	42	54	62	72	78	84	91
WWC2	31	41	53	60	70	76	83	90
TWA1	21	25	30	35	41	45	50	58
TWA2	22	28	35	40	48	53	60	69
TWA3	22	29	37	43	51	57	64	73
TWA4	21	29	37	43	52	58	65	74
TWB3	20	26	34	40	48	53	60	69
TWD4	28	38	48	56	66	72	79	87
TWE2	29	39	49	57	66	72	79	87
TWF3	19	25	33	39	47	53	60	69
TWJ2	26	36	46	54	64	70	77	85
DGA1	17	23	29	33	38	42	46	50
DGA2	19	26	34	39	47	52	58	65
DGA3	23	32	41	49	58	64	71	79
DGB1	17	23	30	36	43	48	53	60
DGB2	20	27	35	42	51	57	64	72
DGB3	24	32	43	51	62	69	76	84
DGC1	21	28	36	43	52	57	64	71
DGC2	23	31	41	48	59	65	72	80
DGC3	27	37	48	57	69	75	83	89
SSA1	29	36	43	49	56	61	67	75
SSB1	24	30	37	43	50	55	61	69
SSB2	31	39	48	55	64	69	76	83
SSB3	23	29	35	40	47	52	58	65
SSC1	22	29	37	43	51	57	64	73
SSC2	26	35	45	52	61	67	75	83
SSE1	29	36	45	51	59	64	70	78
SSE2	35	45	55	62	71	76	82	89
SSE3	25	31	38	43	50	55	61	68

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

LAS VEGAS, NEVADA SSF (%)						2602 DD65 (1447)		
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	24	41	52	63	71	80	85	90
WWB4	28	50	63	75	82	89	93	96
WWC2	28	49	62	74	81	88	92	96
TWA1	21	31	38	46	52	61	66	73
TWA2	22	35	44	54	61	70	76	82
TWA3	22	37	47	57	64	74	79	85
TWA4	21	36	47	58	64	74	80	86
TWB3	19	33	43	53	60	69	75	82
TWD4	25	45	57	69	77	85	89	93
TWE2	27	46	58	70	77	85	90	94
TWF3	18	33	43	53	60	70	76	82
TWJ2	24	43	55	67	75	83	88	92
DGA1	18	32	40	49	55	63	67	72
DGA2	18	33	43	53	60	69	74	80
DGA3	21	38	50	62	70	78	83	88
DGB1	18	33	44	55	62	71	75	80
DGB2	19	35	46	58	67	76	81	86
DGB3	21	39	52	65	74	83	87	92
DGC1	21	38	51	63	71	79	84	88
DGC2	21	39	52	65	74	83	87	91
DGC3	24	44	58	72	80	88	92	95
SSA1	26	40	50	59	66	74	79	85
SSB1	22	35	44	53	60	69	74	80
SSB2	27	44	54	65	72	81	85	90
SSB3	21	34	42	51	57	66	71	78
SSC1	22	37	47	58	65	75	80	86
SSC2	24	43	55	66	73	82	87	92
SSE1	27	43	53	64	71	79	84	89
SSE2	31	51	63	74	80	88	91	95
SSE3	23	36	45	54	60	69	74	80

LOS ALAMOS, NEW MEXICO SSF (%)						6437 DD65 (3579)		
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	20	27	35	41	49	55	62	72
WWB4	25	36	47	55	66	72	80	88
WWC2	25	35	46	54	64	71	78	86
TWA1	18	22	26	29	34	38	43	50
TWA2	18	23	29	34	41	46	52	61
TWA3	18	24	31	36	44	49	56	66
TWA4	17	23	31	36	45	50	57	67
TWB3	16	22	28	33	41	46	53	62
TWD4	23	32	42	49	59	66	74	83
TWE2	24	33	43	50	60	66	74	83
TWF3	15	20	27	32	40	45	52	62
TWJ2	21	30	40	47	57	63	71	80
DGA1	13	17	22	26	31	34	37	41
DGA2	15	21	28	33	40	45	50	58
DGA3	19	26	35	42	52	58	65	74
DGB1	13	18	23	27	34	38	44	50
DGB2	16	21	28	34	43	49	56	65
DGB3	20	27	36	43	54	62	70	80
DGC1	16	22	28	34	42	48	55	63
DGC2	18	25	33	40	50	57	65	74
DGC3	22	31	41	49	61	69	77	86
SSA1	25	31	38	44	51	56	63	71
SSB1	21	26	32	37	44	49	56	64
SSB2	27	34	43	50	59	65	72	80
SSB3	19	24	30	35	42	46	52	60
SSC1	17	23	30	36	43	49	56	65
SSC2	21	29	38	45	54	61	68	78
SSE1	24	31	39	45	53	59	65	74
SSE2	30	39	50	57	67	73	79	87
SSE3	21	27	33	37	44	49	55	63

ALBUQUERQUE, N. MEXICO SSF (%)						4293 DD65 (2387)		
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	28	37	46	54	63	69	76	85
WWB4	35	47	59	67	77	83	89	94
WWC2	34	46	58	66	76	82	88	94
TWA1	22	27	33	38	45	50	56	64
TWA2	24	31	39	45	53	59	66	75
TWA3	25	32	41	48	57	63	70	79
TWA4	24	32	41	48	58	64	71	80
TWB3	22	29	38	44	53	59	66	75
TWD4	31	42	53	61	71	77	84	91
TWE2	32	43	54	62	72	78	84	91
TWF3	21	29	37	44	53	59	66	76
TWJ2	29	40	51	59	69	75	82	90
DGA1	19	26	33	37	44	48	52	58
DGA2	21	29	38	44	52	57	64	71
DGA3	25	35	46	54	64	70	76	84
DGB1	20	27	35	41	50	55	61	68
DGB2	22	30	40	47	58	64	71	79
DGB3	26	36	47	56	68	75	82	89
DGC1	23	32	42	49	60	66	72	79
DGC2	25	34	46	54	65	72	79	86
DGC3	30	40	53	63	75	82	88	93
SSA1	30	38	46	52	61	66	73	81
SSB1	25	32	40	46	54	60	67	75
SSB2	32	42	52	59	68	74	81	88
SSB3	24	30	38	43	51	57	63	72
SSC1	24	32	41	48	57	63	71	79
SSC2	29	39	50	57	67	73	80	88
SSE1	31	39	49	55	64	70	77	85
SSE2	38	49	60	67	76	82	88	93
SSE3	26	33	40	46	54	60	66	75

ALBANY, NEW YORK SSF (%)						6891 DD65 (3831)		
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	7	9	12	14	17	18	21	24
WWB4	8	14	21	26	33	38	45	54
WWC2	9	14	20	25	31	36	42	51
TWA1	11	12	13	14	15	15	16	17
TWA2	9	10	12	14	16	17	19	21
TWA3	7	9	12	13	16	18	20	23
TWA4	6	8	11	13	16	18	21	25
TWB3	7	9	11	13	16	18	20	24
TWD4	9	13	19	23	30	34	40	48
TWE2	9	14	19	23	29	33	39	46
TWF3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	20
TWJ2	7	12	17	21	27	31	37	45
DGA1	3	4	5	5	5	4	4	2
DGA2	6	8	11	13	15	17	20	23
DGA3	10	13	17	21	26	29	34	41
DGB1	3	4	4	5	5	5	4	3
DGB2	6	9	11	13	16	18	21	24
DGB3	10	14	18	22	27	31	36	44
DGC1	5	6	7	8	10	10	10	10
DGC2	8	11	14	17	20	23	27	32
DGC3	12	16	21	25	31	35	41	50
SSA1	12	15	17	19	22	24	27	30
SSB1	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	25
SSB2	13	17	22	26	31	35	39	46
SSB3	9	11	12	14	15	16	18	19
SSC1	6	7	9	11	13	14	16	18
SSC2	7	11	15	18	23	26	31	37
SSE1	9	11	14	16	18	20	21	23
SSE2	12	17	22	26	32	36	41	48
SSE3	11	12	14	16	17	19	20	22

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

BUFFALO, NEW YORK SSF (%)								6931 DD65 (3854)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	5	6	8	9	11	11	12	13
WWB4	6	11	16	21	27	31	37	44
WWC2	6	11	16	19	25	29	34	41
TWA1	10	11	11	12	12	12	11	11
TWA2	8	9	10	11	12	12	13	13
TWA3	6	7	9	10	11	12	13	14
TWA4	4	6	8	9	11	12	14	16
TWB3	6	7	9	10	12	13	14	16
TWD4	7	11	15	19	24	28	32	39
TWE2	8	11	15	19	23	27	31	37
TWF3	3	5	6	7	9	10	11	12
TWJ2	5	9	13	17	22	25	29	36
DGA1	2	2	2	2	1	0	–1	–4
DGA2	5	7	9	10	12	13	14	16
DGA3	9	12	15	18	22	25	29	34
DGB1	2	2	2	2	1	0	0	–4
DGB2	5	7	9	10	12	14	15	17
DGB3	9	12	16	19	23	27	31	37
DGC1	4	4	5	5	5	5	4	2
DGC2	7	9	12	14	16	18	21	24
DGC3	10	14	18	22	27	31	35	42
SSA1	11	13	15	17	19	20	21	22
SSB1	9	11	12	13	15	16	17	18
SSB2	12	15	19	23	27	30	34	40
SSB3	8	9	11	11	12	13	13	13
SSC1	4	5	6	7	8	8	8	7
SSC2	6	8	12	14	17	20	23	27
SSE1	8	9	11	12	13	13	14	13
SSE2	10	14	18	22	26	29	33	38
SSE3	10	11	12	13	14	15	15	15

SYRACUSE, NEW YORK SSF (%)								6681 DD65 (3715)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	5	7	9	10	12	13	14	15
WWB4	6	12	17	22	28	33	38	46
WWC2	7	11	17	21	26	30	36	43
TWA1	11	11	12	12	12	13	12	12
TWA2	8	9	10	11	13	13	14	15
TWA3	6	8	9	11	12	14	15	16
TWA4	5	7	9	10	12	14	15	18
TWB3	6	7	9	11	13	14	16	18
TWD4	7	11	16	20	25	29	34	41
TWE2	8	12	16	20	25	28	33	39
TWF3	4	5	7	8	10	11	12	13
TWJ2	6	10	14	18	23	26	31	38
DGA1	2	3	3	3	2	1	0	–3
DGA2	6	7	9	11	13	14	16	17
DGA3	9	12	16	18	23	26	30	36
DGB1	2	3	3	3	2	1	0	–2
DGB2	6	7	9	11	13	15	16	19
DGB3	9	12	16	19	24	28	32	38
DGC1	4	5	5	6	6	6	5	–4
DGC2	7	9	12	14	17	19	22	25
DGC3	11	14	19	22	28	31	36	44
SSA1	12	14	16	17	19	20	22	24
SSB1	9	11	13	14	16	17	18	19
SSB2	12	16	20	23	28	31	35	41
SSB3	8	10	11	12	13	13	14	14
SSC1	4	6	7	8	9	9	9	9
SSC2	6	9	12	15	19	21	24	29
SSE1	8	10	11	13	14	14	15	15
SSE2	10	14	19	22	27	30	34	40
SSE3	10	11	12	13	15	15	16	16

NEW YORK, NEW YORK SSF (%)								4851 DD65 (2697)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	10	14	19	22	27	30	35	41
WWB4	13	21	29	35	44	50	57	67
WWC2	13	20	28	34	42	48	55	64
TWA1	13	15	17	18	21	22	24	27
TWA2	11	14	17	20	23	26	30	35
TWA3	10	14	17	20	25	28	32	38
TWA4	9	13	17	20	25	28	33	39
TWB3	9	13	16	19	23	26	30	36
TWD4	13	19	26	31	39	44	51	60
TWE2	14	20	26	32	39	44	51	60
TWF3	7	11	14	17	21	24	28	34
TWJ2	11	17	24	29	36	42	48	57
DGA1	6	8	10	11	12	13	14	14
DGA2	9	12	16	18	23	25	29	34
DGA3	12	17	22	27	33	38	44	52
DGB1	6	8	10	11	13	14	16	17
DGB2	9	12	16	19	23	27	31	37
DGB3	13	17	23	28	35	40	47	56
DGC1	8	11	13	15	18	20	23	26
DGC2	11	15	20	23	29	33	38	45
DGC3	15	20	26	31	39	45	53	63
SSA1	16	19	23	26	30	33	37	43
SSB1	13	16	19	22	26	28	32	37
SSB2	17	22	28	33	39	44	50	58
SSB3	12	14	17	20	23	25	28	32
SSC1	9	12	15	18	22	25	29	34
SSC2	11	16	22	27	33	37	43	52
SSE1	13	17	21	24	28	31	35	41
SSE2	17	23	30	35	43	48	54	62
SSE3	13	16	19	22	25	27	31	35

CHARLOTTE, NORTH CAROLINA SSF (%)								3226 DD65 (1794)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	13	23	31	39	45	54	59	66
WWB4	13	29	40	51	59	69	75	82
WWC2	13	29	39	50	58	67	74	81
TWA1	15	20	24	29	33	38	42	47
TWA2	13	21	27	33	38	45	50	57
TWA3	12	21	27	35	40	48	54	60
TWA4	11	20	27	35	41	49	54	61
TWB3	11	19	25	32	37	45	50	57
TWD4	13	26	36	46	53	63	69	76
TWE2	14	27	37	47	54	63	69	77
TWF3	9	18	24	31	36	44	50	56
TWJ2	11	24	34	44	51	61	67	74
DGA1	9	16	21	26	30	35	39	42
DGA2	10	18	24	31	37	44	49	55
DGA3	12	22	30	39	46	55	61	68
DGB1	9	16	21	28	32	39	44	49
DGB2	10	19	25	33	39	48	54	61
DGB3	12	23	31	40	48	58	65	73
DGC1	11	20	26	33	39	47	53	59
DGC2	12	22	29	38	45	55	61	69
DGC3	14	26	35	45	53	65	72	80
SSA1	17	26	33	40	45	53	58	64
SSB1	14	22	28	35	40	47	52	58
SSB2	17	29	37	46	52	61	67	74
SSB3	14	21	26	33	37	44	49	55
SSC1	11	20	27	34	40	48	53	60
SSC2	12	25	33	42	49	58	64	72
SSE1	16	26	34	42	47	55	61	68
SSE2	18	32	42	52	59	69	74	81
SSE3	15	23	29	35	40	47	51	57

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

RALEIGH-DURHAM, NORTH CAROLINA SSF (%) 3520 DD65 (1957)								
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	11	21	28	36	41	50	55	62
WWB4	11	26	37	48	55	66	72	79
WWC2	12	26	36	46	54	64	70	77
TWA1	14	19	22	27	30	35	39	44
TWA2	12	19	24	30	35	42	47	53
TWA3	11	19	25	32	37	45	50	56
TWA4	9	18	24	32	37	45	51	57
TWB3	10	17	23	29	34	41	46	53
TWD4	11	24	33	43	50	60	66	73
TWE2	12	25	34	43	50	60	66	73
TWF3	8	16	21	28	33	41	46	52
TWJ2	10	22	31	40	47	57	63	71
DGA1	8	14	19	23	27	32	35	38
DGA2	9	16	22	29	34	41	45	51
DGA3	11	20	27	36	43	52	58	65
DGB1	8	14	19	24	29	35	39	44
DGB2	9	17	23	30	35	44	49	56
DGB3	11	21	28	37	44	55	61	70
DGC1	9	17	23	30	35	42	48	54
DGC2	10	20	27	35	41	50	57	64
DGC3	13	24	32	42	50	61	68	77
SSA1	16	24	30	37	42	50	54	61
SSB1	13	21	26	32	37	44	48	54
SSB2	15	26	34	43	49	58	63	70
SSB3	12	19	24	30	34	41	45	51
SSC1	10	18	24	31	36	44	49	56
SSC2	11	22	30	39	46	55	61	68
SSE1	14	24	31	38	44	52	57	63
SSE2	16	30	39	49	56	65	71	77
SSE3	14	21	26	32	37	43	48	54

BISMARCK, NORTH DAKOTA SSF (%) 9057 DD65 (5036)								
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	8	11	15	17	21	23	26	30
WWB4	11	17	24	30	37	43	49	58
WWC2	11	17	23	28	36	40	47	55
TWA1	12	13	15	16	17	18	19	21
TWA2	10	12	15	16	19	21	23	26
TWA3	9	11	14	16	20	22	25	29
TWA4	7	10	14	16	20	22	26	30
TWB3	8	10	13	16	19	21	24	29
TWD4	11	16	22	27	33	38	44	52
TWE2	11	16	22	27	33	37	43	51
TWF3	6	8	11	13	17	19	21	25
TWJ2	9	14	20	24	31	35	41	49
DGA1	5	6	7	8	8	8	8	7
DGA2	8	10	13	15	19	21	24	27
DGA3	11	15	20	23	29	33	38	45
DGB1	4	6	7	8	9	9	9	9
DGB2	8	10	14	16	20	22	25	29
DGB3	11	15	21	25	30	35	40	48
DGC1	6	8	10	12	14	15	16	17
DGC2	10	13	17	20	24	27	31	37
DGC3	13	18	24	28	35	39	46	55
SSA1	13	16	19	21	24	26	28	31
SSB1	11	13	15	17	20	22	24	27
SSB2	14	18	23	27	33	36	41	48
SSB3	10	11	13	15	17	18	20	21
SSC1	7	9	12	14	17	18	21	24
SSC2	9	13	18	22	27	31	35	42
SSE1	10	13	16	18	20	22	24	26
SSE2	13	18	24	28	34	38	43	50
SSE3	11	13	15	17	19	20	22	24

FARGO, NORTH DAKOTA SSF (%) 9278 DD65 (5159)								
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	6	8	11	12	15	16	18	20
WWB4	8	13	20	24	31	36	42	50
WWC2	8	13	19	23	29	33	39	46
TWA1	11	12	13	13	14	14	15	15
TWA2	9	10	12	13	15	16	17	18
TWA3	7	9	11	13	15	16	18	20
TWA4	6	8	10	12	15	16	19	21
TWB3	7	8	11	12	15	16	18	21
TWD4	8	13	18	22	28	32	37	44
TWE2	9	13	18	22	27	31	36	43
TWF3	4	6	8	10	12	13	15	17
TWJ2	7	11	16	20	25	29	34	41
DGA1	3	4	4	4	4	3	2	0
DGA2	6	8	11	12	15	16	18	20
DGA3	10	13	17	20	25	28	33	39
DGB1	3	4	4	4	4	4	3	1
DGB2	6	8	11	13	15	17	19	22
DGB3	10	13	18	21	26	30	35	41
DGC1	5	6	7	8	9	9	9	8
DGC2	8	11	14	16	20	22	25	29
DGC3	11	15	20	24	30	34	39	47
SSA1	12	14	16	17	19	21	22	24
SSB1	9	11	13	14	16	17	18	20
SSB2	12	16	20	23	28	31	36	41
SSB3	8	10	11	12	13	14	14	14
SSC1	5	7	8	10	11	12	13	14
SSC2	7	10	14	17	21	24	28	33
SSE1	8	10	12	13	14	15	16	15
SSE2	11	15	20	23	28	31	35	41
SSE3	10	11	13	14	15	16	16	17

CINCINNATI, OHIO SSF (%) 5079 DD65 (2824)								
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	10	13	17	21	25	28	32	38
WWB4	13	20	27	33	42	47	55	64
WWC2	13	19	27	32	40	45	52	62
TWA1	13	14	16	18	20	21	23	25
TWA2	11	14	17	19	22	25	28	32
TWA3	10	13	16	19	23	26	30	35
TWA4	9	12	16	19	23	26	31	36
TWB3	9	12	15	18	22	25	29	34
TWD4	12	18	25	30	37	42	49	58
TWE2	13	19	25	30	37	42	48	57
TWF3	7	10	13	16	20	23	26	31
TWJ2	11	16	23	28	35	40	46	55
DGA1	6	7	9	10	11	12	12	12
DGA2	9	12	15	18	21	24	27	32
DGA3	12	16	22	26	32	36	42	50
DGB1	6	7	9	10	12	13	14	14
DGB2	9	12	15	18	22	25	29	34
DGB3	12	17	23	27	33	38	44	53
DGC1	8	10	13	15	17	18	20	23
DGC2	11	15	19	22	27	31	36	42
DGC3	14	20	26	31	38	43	50	60
SSA1	15	19	23	25	29	32	36	41
SSB1	13	16	19	21	25	27	31	35
SSB2	16	22	27	32	38	42	48	56
SSB3	12	14	17	19	22	24	27	30
SSC1	8	11	15	17	21	23	26	31
SSC2	11	16	21	25	31	35	41	49
SSE1	13	16	20	23	27	30	33	38
SSE2	16	22	29	34	41	46	52	60
SSE3	13	16	19	21	24	26	29	33

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

CLEVELAND, OHIO SSF (%)								6160 DD65 (3425)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	6	9	11	13	15	16	18	20
WWB4	8	13	20	24	31	36	42	50
WWC2	8	13	19	23	29	34	39	47
TWA1	11	12	13	14	14	15	15	15
TWA2	9	10	12	13	15	16	17	19
TWA3	7	9	11	13	15	16	18	20
TWA4	6	8	10	12	15	17	19	22
TWB3	7	9	11	13	15	16	19	21
TWD4	9	13	18	22	28	32	37	45
TWE2	9	14	18	22	28	31	36	43
TWF3	5	6	8	10	12	13	15	17
TWJ2	7	11	16	20	25	29	34	41
DGA1	3	4	4	4	4	4	2	0
DGA2	7	8	11	12	15	16	18	21
DGA3	10	13	17	20	25	28	33	39
DGB1	3	4	4	5	4	4	3	1
DGB2	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	22
DGB3	10	14	18	21	26	30	35	42
DGC1	5	6	7	8	9	9	9	8
DGC2	8	11	14	16	20	22	25	29
DGC3	12	16	21	24	30	34	39	47
SSA1	13	15	18	19	22	24	26	28
SSB1	10	12	14	16	18	19	21	23
SSB2	13	17	22	25	30	34	38	44
SSB3	9	11	13	14	15	16	17	18
SSC1	5	7	9	10	11	12	13	14
SSC2	7	11	14	17	21	24	28	33
SSE1	9	12	14	15	17	18	19	20
SSE2	12	17	22	25	31	34	39	45
SSE3	11	13	14	16	17	18	19	20

COLUMBUS, OHIO SSF (%)								5705 DD65 (3172)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	8	11	14	16	20	22	25	29
WWB4	10	16	23	29	36	41	48	57
WWC2	10	16	22	27	34	39	46	54
TWA1	12	13	14	15	17	17	18	20
TWA2	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	25
TWA3	8	11	13	16	19	21	24	27
TWA4	7	10	13	15	19	21	24	29
TWB3	8	10	13	15	18	20	23	27
TWD4	10	15	21	26	32	37	43	51
TWE2	11	16	21	26	32	36	42	50
TWF3	6	8	11	13	16	18	20	24
TWJ2	9	13	19	23	30	34	40	48
DGA1	4	5	6	7	7	7	7	5
DGA2	7	10	12	15	18	20	22	26
DGA3	11	14	19	23	28	32	37	44
DGB1	4	5	6	7	8	8	8	7
DGB2	7	10	13	15	18	21	24	28
DGB3	11	15	20	24	29	33	39	47
DGC1	6	8	10	11	12	13	14	15
DGC2	9	12	16	19	23	26	30	35
DGC3	13	17	23	27	33	38	44	53
SSA1	14	17	20	22	25	27	30	34
SSB1	11	13	16	18	21	23	25	29
SSB2	15	19	24	28	34	38	43	50
SSB3	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24
SSC1	7	9	11	13	16	17	19	22
SSC2	9	13	17	21	26	30	34	41
SSE1	11	14	17	19	22	24	26	29
SSE2	14	19	25	29	36	40	45	53
SSE3	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26

OKLAHOMA CITY, OKLAHOMA SSF (%)								3699 DD65 (2057)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	12	22	29	37	44	52	58	65
WWB4	12	28	38	50	58	68	74	81
WWC2	13	27	38	49	56	66	73	80
TWA1	14	20	23	28	32	37	41	46
TWA2	13	20	26	32	37	44	49	55
TWA3	12	20	26	33	39	47	52	59
TWA4	10	19	26	33	39	47	53	60
TWB3	10	18	24	31	36	44	49	56
TWD4	12	25	34	45	52	62	68	76
TWE2	13	26	35	45	53	62	68	76
TWF3	9	17	23	30	35	43	48	55
TWJ2	11	23	32	42	49	59	66	73
DGA1	8	15	20	25	29	34	37	41
DGA2	9	17	23	30	35	43	47	53
DGA3	11	21	29	38	45	54	60	67
DGB1	8	15	20	26	31	37	42	47
DGB2	10	18	24	31	37	46	52	59
DGB3	12	22	29	39	46	57	64	72
DGC1	10	18	24	32	37	46	51	58
DGC2	11	21	28	36	43	53	60	68
DGC3	13	25	33	44	52	64	71	79
SSA1	16	25	32	39	44	51	57	63
SSB1	14	21	27	33	38	45	50	56
SSB2	16	27	35	44	51	60	65	72
SSB3	13	20	25	31	36	42	47	53
SSC1	11	19	26	33	38	46	52	59
SSC2	12	23	32	41	48	57	63	71
SSE1	15	25	32	40	46	54	59	66
SSE2	17	31	40	51	58	67	73	80
SSE3	15	22	27	34	38	45	50	56

MEDFORD, OREGON SSF (%)								4935 DD65 (2744)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	16	21	26	31	36	40	45	51
WWB4	20	28	37	43	52	58	64	72
WWC2	20	28	36	42	50	56	62	70
TWA1	17	19	22	24	28	30	33	37
TWA2	16	20	24	27	32	35	39	44
TWA3	15	19	24	28	33	37	41	47
TWA4	14	19	24	28	34	37	42	49
TWB3	14	18	23	26	31	35	40	46
TWD4	19	26	34	39	47	52	59	67
TWE2	20	26	34	40	47	52	59	66
TWF3	12	16	21	25	30	33	38	44
TWJ2	17	24	31	37	45	50	56	64
DGA1	11	14	17	19	21	23	24	25
DGA2	13	17	22	26	31	34	38	43
DGA3	17	23	29	34	41	46	52	59
DGB1	11	14	18	20	23	25	28	30
DGB2	14	18	23	27	33	37	41	47
DGB3	17	23	30	36	44	49	55	63
DGC1	13	17	22	25	30	32	36	39
DGC2	16	21	27	32	39	43	48	55
DGC3	20	26	34	40	49	54	61	69
SSA1	21	26	30	34	39	42	46	51
SSB1	18	22	26	29	34	37	41	46
SSB2	22	28	35	40	47	51	57	64
SSB3	17	20	24	27	31	34	37	42
SSC1	14	18	23	27	32	35	39	44
SSC2	17	23	30	35	42	46	52	59
SSE1	19	24	29	33	38	41	45	50
SSE2	24	31	38	44	51	55	61	68
SSE3	18	22	26	29	33	36	40	44

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

SALEM, OREGON SSF (%)								4854 DD65 (2699)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	15	20	25	29	35	38	43	48
WWB4	19	27	36	42	50	56	63	71
WWC2	19	27	35	41	49	54	60	68
TWA1	16	19	22	24	27	29	31	35
TWA2	16	19	23	26	30	33	37	42
TWA3	15	19	23	27	32	35	40	45
TWA4	14	18	23	27	32	36	40	47
TWB3	14	18	22	25	30	34	38	44
TWD4	18	25	32	38	46	51	57	65
TWE2	19	26	33	38	46	51	57	65
TWF3	12	16	20	24	28	32	36	42
TWJ2	16	23	30	36	43	48	55	63
DGA1	10	13	16	18	20	21	23	23
DGA2	13	17	22	25	30	33	37	41
DGA3	17	22	28	33	40	45	51	58
DGB1	11	13	17	19	22	24	26	28
DGB2	13	18	22	26	32	35	40	45
DGB3	17	23	29	35	42	47	54	62
DGC1	13	16	21	24	28	30	33	37
DGC2	16	21	26	31	37	41	46	53
DGC3	19	26	33	39	47	53	59	68
SSA1	21	25	29	33	37	40	44	49
SSB1	17	21	25	28	33	36	39	44
SSB2	22	28	34	39	46	50	55	62
SSB3	16	20	23	26	30	33	36	40
SSC1	14	18	22	25	30	33	37	42
SSC2	17	22	29	33	40	45	50	57
SSE1	19	23	28	32	36	39	43	47
SSE2	23	30	37	42	49	54	59	66
SSE3	18	22	25	28	32	35	38	42

PHILADELPHIA, PENNSYLVANIA SSF (%)								4875 DD65 (2711)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	12	17	22	26	32	36	41	49
WWB4	16	24	33	40	49	55	63	72
WWC2	16	23	32	38	47	53	61	70
TWA1	14	16	19	21	24	26	29	33
TWA2	13	16	20	23	27	31	35	41
TWA3	12	16	20	24	29	33	38	44
TWA4	11	15	20	24	29	33	39	46
TWB3	11	15	19	22	27	31	36	42
TWD4	15	22	30	35	44	49	57	66
TWE2	16	22	30	36	44	49	56	66
TWF3	9	13	17	20	25	29	34	40
TWJ2	13	20	27	33	41	47	54	63
DGA1	8	10	12	14	17	18	19	20
DGA2	10	14	18	22	26	30	34	39
DGA3	14	19	25	30	37	42	49	58
DGB1	7	10	13	15	17	19	22	24
DGB2	11	14	19	22	28	31	37	43
DGB3	14	20	26	31	39	44	52	62
DGC1	10	13	17	19	23	26	30	34
DGC2	13	17	23	27	33	38	44	52
DGC3	16	22	29	35	44	50	58	69
SSA1	17	21	26	29	34	38	43	49
SSB1	14	18	22	25	29	33	37	43
SSB2	19	24	31	36	43	48	54	63
SSB3	13	16	20	22	26	29	33	38
SSC1	11	14	19	22	27	30	35	42
SSC2	14	19	26	31	38	43	49	58
SSE1	15	20	25	28	34	37	42	48
SSE2	19	26	34	40	48	53	60	68
SSE3	15	18	22	25	29	32	36	41

HARRISBURG, PENNSYLVANIA SSF (%)								5226 DD65 (2906)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	11	14	19	22	28	31	36	42
WWB4	14	21	29	36	45	51	58	68
WWC2	14	20	28	34	43	48	56	65
TWA1	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	28
TWA2	12	14	18	20	24	27	30	35
TWA3	10	14	18	21	25	28	33	39
TWA4	9	13	17	20	25	29	34	40
TWB3	10	13	16	19	24	27	31	37
TWD4	13	19	26	32	40	45	52	61
TWE2	14	20	27	32	40	45	52	61
TWF3	8	11	14	17	22	25	29	35
TWJ2	11	17	24	29	37	42	49	58
DGA1	6	8	10	11	13	14	15	15
DGA2	9	12	16	19	23	26	30	35
DGA3	12	17	23	27	34	38	45	53
DGB1	6	8	10	12	14	15	16	18
DGB2	9	12	16	19	24	27	32	38
DGB3	13	18	23	28	35	40	47	57
DGC1	8	11	14	16	19	21	24	27
DGC2	11	15	20	24	29	33	39	46
DGC3	15	20	27	32	40	46	53	64
SSA1	16	19	23	26	31	34	38	44
SSB1	13	16	19	22	26	29	32	38
SSB2	17	22	28	33	40	44	50	58
SSB3	12	14	17	20	23	25	28	33
SSC1	9	12	16	19	23	26	30	35
SSC2	12	17	22	27	34	38	44	52
SSE1	13	17	21	24	29	32	36	42
SSE2	17	23	30	36	43	48	55	63
SSE3	13	16	19	22	25	28	31	36

PITTSBURGH, PENNSYLVANIA SSF (%)								5937 DD65 (3301)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	7	9	12	14	17	19	21	24
WWB4	9	15	21	26	33	38	45	53
WWC2	9	14	20	25	32	36	42	50
TWA1	12	12	13	14	15	16	16	17
TWA2	9	11	13	14	16	18	19	22
TWA3	8	10	12	14	17	18	21	23
TWA4	6	9	11	14	17	19	21	25
TWB3	7	9	12	14	16	18	21	24
TWD4	9	14	20	24	30	34	40	48
TWE2	10	14	20	24	30	34	39	46
TWF3	5	7	9	11	14	15	17	20
TWJ2	8	12	17	21	27	31	37	44
DGA1	4	5	5	5	5	5	4	2
DGA2	7	9	11	13	16	18	20	23
DGA3	10	14	18	21	26	30	35	41
DGB1	4	4	5	6	6	6	5	3
DGB2	7	9	12	14	17	19	21	25
DGB3	10	14	19	22	28	32	37	44
DGC1	5	7	8	9	10	11	11	11
DGC2	9	11	15	17	21	24	27	32
DGC3	12	16	21	26	32	36	42	50
SSA1	13	16	19	21	23	25	28	31
SSB1	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	26
SSB2	14	18	23	27	32	36	40	47
SSB3	10	11	13	15	17	18	19	21
SSC1	6	8	10	11	13	15	16	18
SSC2	8	12	16	19	23	27	31	37
SSE1	10	12	15	17	19	21	23	24
SSE2	13	18	23	27	33	37	42	48
SSE3	11	13	15	17	19	20	21	23

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

PROVIDENCE, RHODE ISLAND SSF (%)							5974 DD65 (3322)	
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	10	13	18	21	26	29	33	40
WWB4	13	20	28	34	43	49	56	66
WWC2	13	19	27	33	41	47	54	63
TWA1	13	14	16	18	20	21	23	26
TWA2	11	14	17	19	22	25	28	33
TWA3	10	13	16	19	24	27	31	36
TWA4	9	12	16	19	24	27	31	38
TWB3	9	12	15	18	22	25	29	35
TWD4	12	18	25	30	38	43	50	59
TWE2	13	19	25	30	38	43	50	59
TWF3	7	10	13	16	20	23	27	32
TWJ2	11	16	23	28	35	40	47	56
DGA1	6	7	9	10	11	12	13	13
DGA2	8	11	15	18	22	24	28	33
DGA3	12	16	21	26	32	37	43	51
DGB1	5	7	9	10	12	13	14	15
DGB2	9	12	15	18	22	26	30	36
DGB3	12	17	22	27	34	39	45	55
DGC1	7	10	12	14	17	19	21	25
DGC2	10	14	19	22	28	31	37	44
DGC3	14	19	26	31	38	44	52	62
SSA1	15	19	22	25	30	33	36	42
SSB1	12	15	19	21	25	28	31	36
SSB2	16	21	27	32	38	43	49	57
SSB3	11	14	17	19	22	24	27	31
SSC1	8	11	15	17	21	24	27	32
SSC2	11	16	21	25	32	36	42	50
SSE1	13	16	20	23	27	30	34	39
SSE2	16	22	29	34	42	47	53	61
SSE3	13	16	19	21	24	27	30	34

RAPID CITY, SOUTH DAKOTA SSF (%)							7332 DD65 (4077)	
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	13	18	23	27	33	37	42	50
WWB4	17	25	34	40	50	56	63	73
WWC2	17	24	33	39	48	54	61	70
TWA1	15	17	19	21	24	27	30	34
TWA2	13	17	21	24	28	32	36	42
TWA3	13	17	21	25	30	34	38	45
TWA4	11	16	21	25	30	34	39	47
TWB3	11	15	20	23	28	32	37	43
TWD4	16	23	30	36	45	50	57	66
TWE2	17	23	31	37	45	50	57	66
TWF3	10	13	18	21	26	30	35	41
TWJ2	14	21	28	34	42	47	54	64
DGA1	8	11	13	15	18	19	20	21
DGA2	11	15	19	22	27	31	35	40
DGA3	14	20	26	31	38	43	50	58
DGB1	8	11	14	16	19	21	23	26
DGB2	11	15	20	32	29	33	38	44
DGB3	15	20	27	32	40	45	53	62
DGC1	10	14	18	21	25	27	31	35
DGC2	13	18	24	28	34	39	45	53
DGC3	17	23	31	36	45	51	59	69
SSA1	18	22	26	30	34	38	42	48
SSB1	15	19	22	25	30	33	37	42
SSB2	19	25	31	36	43	48	54	62
SSB3	13	16	20	23	26	29	33	37
SSC1	11	15	20	23	28	31	36	42
SSC2	14	20	27	32	39	44	50	59
SSE1	16	20	25	28	33	37	41	47
SSE2	20	27	34	40	47	52	59	67
SSE3	15	18	22	25	29	32	35	40

CHARLESTON, SOUTH CAROLINA SSF (%)							2150 DD65 (1195)	
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	18	31	40	50	57	66	72	79
WWB4	19	38	50	62	70	79	85	90
WWC2	20	38	49	61	69	78	84	89
TWA1	17	25	30	37	41	48	53	59
TWA2	17	27	34	42	48	57	62	69
TWA3	16	28	36	45	51	60	66	73
TWA4	15	27	36	45	52	61	67	74
TWB3	14	25	33	41	47	56	62	69
TWD4	18	35	45	56	64	74	79	86
TWE2	19	36	46	57	65	74	80	86
TWF3	13	24	32	41	47	56	62	69
TWJ2	17	32	43	54	62	72	77	84
DGA1	13	23	29	36	41	48	51	56
DGA2	13	24	32	41	47	55	60	67
DGA3	16	29	38	49	57	66	72	78
DGB1	13	23	31	39	45	54	59	65
DGB2	14	25	34	43	51	61	67	74
DGB3	16	29	39	51	60	71	77	83
DGC1	15	27	36	46	53	63	69	75
DGC2	16	29	38	49	58	68	75	81
DGC3	18	33	44	57	66	77	83	89
SSA1	22	33	41	50	56	65	70	76
SSB1	18	29	36	44	50	58	64	70
SSB2	22	36	46	56	63	72	77	83
SSB3	17	27	34	42	48	56	61	68
SSC1	16	28	36	45	51	60	66	73
SSC2	18	32	42	53	60	70	76	82
SSE1	21	34	43	53	60	69	74	80
SSE2	24	42	53	64	71	80	85	90
SSE3	19	29	36	44	50	58	64	70

MEMPHIS, TENNESSEE SSF (%)							3237 DD65 (1800)	
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	11	21	27	35	41	49	54	61
WWB4	11	26	36	47	54	65	71	78
WWC2	12	26	35	46	53	63	69	77
TWA1	14	19	22	27	30	35	38	43
TWA2	12	19	24	30	35	41	46	52
TWA3	11	19	25	31	36	44	49	55
TWA4	9	18	24	31	37	44	50	56
TWB3	10	17	23	29	34	41	46	52
TWD4	11	24	32	42	49	59	65	72
TWE2	12	25	33	43	50	59	65	72
TWF3	8	16	21	28	33	40	45	51
TWJ2	10	22	30	40	47	56	62	70
DGA1	8	14	18	23	26	31	34	37
DGA2	9	16	22	28	33	40	44	50
DGA3	11	20	27	36	42	51	57	64
DGB1	8	14	19	24	28	34	38	43
DGB2	9	17	22	29	35	43	48	55
DGB3	11	21	28	37	43	54	60	69
DGC1	10	17	23	29	34	41	46	52
DGC2	11	20	26	34	40	49	56	63
DGC3	13	24	31	41	49	60	67	76
SSA1	16	24	30	37	42	49	54	60
SSB1	13	21	26	32	36	43	47	53
SSB2	15	26	34	42	49	57	63	70
SSB3	12	19	24	30	34	40	44	50
SSC1	10	18	24	31	36	43	48	54
SSC2	11	22	30	38	45	54	59	67
SSE1	14	24	30	38	43	51	56	62
SSE2	16	29	38	48	55	64	70	77
SSE3	14	21	26	32	36	43	47	53

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

KNOXVILLE, TENNESSEE SSF (%)								3486 DD65 (1938)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	10	18	24	31	36	44	49	55
WWB4	9	23	32	43	50	60	66	74
WWC2	10	23	32	42	49	58	65	72
TWA1	13	17	21	24	27	32	35	39
TWA2	11	17	22	27	31	37	41	47
TWA3	10	17	22	28	33	39	44	50
TWA4	8	16	21	28	33	40	45	51
TWB3	9	15	20	26	30	37	41	47
TWD4	10	21	29	38	45	54	60	68
TWE2	11	22	30	39	46	55	60	68
TWF3	7	14	19	25	29	36	40	46
TWJ2	8	19	27	36	43	52	58	65
DGA1	7	12	16	20	23	27	29	32
DGA2	8	15	19	25	30	36	40	45
DGA3	10	18	25	32	38	47	53	60
DGB1	7	12	16	21	24	29	32	36
DGB2	8	15	20	26	31	38	43	49
DGB3	10	19	26	33	40	49	55	64
DGC1	8	15	20	25	29	36	40	45
DGC2	9	18	24	31	36	44	50	57
DGC3	12	22	29	38	45	55	62	71
SSA1	15	22	28	34	38	45	49	55
SSB1	12	19	24	29	33	39	43	49
SSB2	14	24	31	39	45	53	59	65
SSB3	12	18	22	27	31	36	40	45
SSC1	9	16	21	27	32	38	43	49
SSC2	9	19	27	35	41	49	55	62
SSE1	13	21	27	34	39	48	51	57
SSE2	14	27	35	44	51	60	65	72
SSE3	13	19	24	29	33	39	43	48

AUSTIN, TEXAS SSF (%)								1737 DD65 (966)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	21	37	47	58	65	75	80	86
WWB4	24	45	58	70	77	86	90	94
WWC2	24	44	57	69	76	85	89	94
TWA1	20	29	35	42	48	56	61	67
TWA2	20	32	40	49	56	65	70	77
TWA3	19	33	42	52	59	68	74	81
TWA4	18	32	42	52	60	69	75	82
TWB3	17	30	38	48	55	64	70	77
TWD4	22	41	52	64	72	81	86	91
TWE2	24	42	53	65	73	81	86	91
TWF3	16	29	38	48	55	64	70	77
TWJ2	21	39	50	62	70	79	84	90
DGA1	16	28	36	44	49	57	61	66
DGA2	16	29	38	48	55	64	69	75
DGA3	19	34	45	57	65	74	79	84
DGB1	16	29	38	48	56	64	69	75
DGB2	17	30	41	52	60	70	76	82
DGB3	19	35	46	60	68	79	84	89
DGC1	19	33	44	56	64	74	79	84
DGC2	19	34	46	59	68	77	83	88
DGC3	22	39	52	66	75	85	89	93
SSA1	25	39	48	58	65	73	78	84
SSB1	21	34	42	51	58	67	72	79
SSB2	26	42	53	63	71	79	84	89
SSB3	20	32	40	49	56	65	70	77
SSC1	19	33	42	53	60	69	75	81
SSC2	22	39	50	61	68	78	83	89
SSE1	25	41	51	62	69	77	82	88
SSE2	29	49	61	72	79	87	91	94
SSE3	22	34	43	52	58	67	72	79

NASHVILLE, TENNESSEE SSF (%)								3704 DD65 (2059)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	8	15	20	26	31	37	42	47
WWB4	7	19	28	37	44	54	60	68
WWC2	8	19	27	36	43	52	58	66
TWA1	12	16	18	21	24	27	30	33
TWA2	10	15	19	23	27	32	35	40
TWA3	8	14	19	24	28	34	38	43
TWA4	7	13	18	24	28	34	38	44
TWB3	7	13	17	22	26	32	35	41
TWD4	8	18	25	34	40	48	54	61
TWE2	9	19	26	34	40	48	54	61
TWF3	6	11	16	21	24	30	34	39
TWJ2	6	16	23	31	37	46	51	59
DGA1	6	10	13	16	18	21	23	25
DGA2	7	12	17	21	25	31	34	39
DGA3	9	16	22	28	34	41	47	54
DGB1	6	10	13	16	19	22	25	28
DGB2	7	13	17	22	26	32	36	42
DGB3	9	17	22	29	35	43	49	57
DGC1	7	12	16	20	24	29	32	36
DGC2	8	15	20	26	31	38	43	49
DGC3	10	19	25	33	39	49	55	64
SSA1	13	20	25	30	34	39	43	49
SSB1	11	17	21	25	29	34	38	42
SSB2	12	21	28	35	40	48	53	60
SSB3	10	15	19	23	27	31	35	39
SSC1	7	13	18	23	26	32	36	41
SSC2	8	16	23	30	35	43	48	55
SSE1	11	18	23	29	33	39	44	49
SSE2	12	23	31	39	45	53	59	66
SSE3	12	17	21	25	29	34	37	41

BROWNSVILLE, TEXAS SSF (%)								650 DD65 (361)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	39	60	72	82	88	94	96	98
WWB4	45	70	82	90	94	98	99	100
WWC2	45	69	81	90	94	97	99	99
TWA1	30	45	54	64	71	79	84	89
TWA2	33	51	63	73	80	87	91	95
TWA3	34	54	66	76	83	90	93	96
TWA4	34	54	66	77	84	90	94	97
TWB3	31	50	61	72	79	87	91	95
TWD4	41	64	76	86	91	96	98	99
TWE2	42	65	77	87	92	96	98	99
TWF3	30	50	62	73	80	88	91	95
TWJ2	39	62	75	85	90	95	97	99
DGA1	31	50	61	70	76	83	87	90
DGA2	31	51	63	73	80	87	90	94
DGA3	34	57	70	80	86	91	93	95
DGB1	32	54	67	78	84	89	92	94
DGB2	32	55	69	80	86	92	95	97
DGB3	34	60	74	85	90	94	96	97
DGC1	36	62	76	85	90	94	95	97
DGC2	35	61	75	86	91	95	97	99
DGC3	39	66	80	90	94	97	98	98
SSA1	42	62	73	82	87	93	96	98
SSB1	36	55	66	76	83	89	93	96
SSB2	44	65	77	86	91	95	97	99
SSB3	35	54	65	75	81	88	92	95
SSC1	35	55	67	78	84	91	94	97
SSC2	39	62	74	84	90	95	97	99
SSE1	45	66	77	86	91	95	97	99
SSE2	51	74	85	92	96	98	99	100
SSE3	37	56	67	77	83	90	93	96

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

DALLAS, TEXAS SSF (%)								2297 DD65 (1277)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	17	30	39	49	56	66	72	79
WWB4	19	37	49	62	70	79	85	90
WWC2	19	37	49	61	69	78	84	89
TWA1	17	24	30	36	41	48	52	59
TWA2	16	26	33	42	48	56	62	69
TWA3	16	27	35	44	50	60	65	73
TWA4	14	26	35	44	51	60	66	74
TWB3	14	24	32	40	47	56	62	69
TWD4	18	34	45	56	64	74	79	86
TWE2	19	35	46	57	65	74	80	86
TWF3	13	23	31	40	46	56	62	69
TWJ2	16	32	42	54	61	71	77	84
DGA1	12	22	29	36	41	47	51	56
DGA2	13	24	31	40	47	55	60	66
DGA3	15	28	38	49	56	66	72	78
DGB1	12	22	30	38	45	54	59	64
DGB2	13	24	33	43	51	61	67	74
DGB3	16	28	38	50	59	71	77	83
DGC1	15	26	35	45	53	63	69	75
DGC2	15	28	38	49	57	68	74	81
DGC3	18	32	43	57	66	77	83	89
SSA1	21	32	40	49	56	64	70	76
SSB1	17	28	35	43	49	58	63	70
SSB2	21	35	45	55	62	71	77	83
SSB3	17	26	33	41	47	55	60	67
SSC1	15	27	35	44	51	60	66	73
SSC2	17	32	42	52	60	70	76	82
SSE1	20	33	42	52	59	68	74	80
SSE2	23	41	52	63	70	79	84	90
SSE3	18	28	35	43	49	58	63	70

HOUSTON, TEXAS SSF (%)								1434 DD65 (797)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	21	37	47	58	65	74	80	86
WWB4	24	45	58	70	77	86	90	94
WWC2	24	44	57	69	76	85	89	93
TWA1	20	29	35	42	48	55	61	67
TWA2	20	32	40	49	56	65	70	77
TWA3	20	33	42	52	59	68	74	80
TWA4	18	32	42	52	59	69	75	81
TWB3	18	30	38	48	55	64	70	77
TWD4	22	41	52	64	72	81	86	91
TWE2	24	42	53	65	72	81	86	91
TWF3	16	29	38	48	55	64	70	77
TWJ2	21	38	50	62	69	79	84	89
DGA1	16	28	36	44	49	56	61	65
DGA2	16	29	38	48	55	63	69	74
DGA3	19	34	45	57	64	74	79	84
DGB1	16	28	38	48	55	64	69	74
DGB2	17	30	40	52	60	70	75	81
DGB3	19	35	46	59	68	78	83	89
DGC1	18	33	44	56	64	73	78	83
DGC2	19	34	46	59	67	77	82	88
DGC3	21	39	52	66	75	84	89	93
SSA1	25	39	48	58	65	73	78	84
SSB1	21	34	42	52	58	67	72	79
SSB2	26	42	53	64	71	79	84	89
SSB3	20	32	41	50	56	65	70	77
SSC1	19	33	42	52	60	69	75	81
SSC2	22	38	49	61	68	77	83	88
SSE1	25	41	51	62	69	77	82	88
SSE2	29	49	61	72	79	87	90	94
SSE3	22	34	43	52	59	67	73	79

EL PASO, TEXAS SSF (%)								2685 DD65 (1493)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	22	38	49	60	68	77	83	88
WWB4	25	47	60	72	80	88	92	95
WWC2	25	46	59	71	79	87	91	95
TWA1	20	29	36	44	49	58	63	70
TWA2	20	33	41	51	58	67	73	80
TWA3	20	34	44	54	61	71	77	83
TWA4	19	34	44	54	62	72	77	84
TWB3	18	31	40	50	57	67	73	79
TWD4	23	42	54	66	74	83	88	93
TWE2	24	43	55	67	75	84	88	93
TWF3	16	30	40	50	57	67	73	80
TWJ2	21	40	52	64	72	81	86	91
DGA1	16	29	37	46	52	59	64	69
DGA2	17	30	40	50	57	66	71	77
DGA3	19	35	47	59	67	76	81	86
DGB1	16	30	40	51	58	67	72	78
DGB2	17	31	42	55	63	73	79	84
DGB3	19	36	48	62	71	81	86	91
DGC1	19	35	47	59	68	77	82	86
DGC2	20	36	48	62	70	80	85	90
DGC3	22	40	55	69	78	87	91	94
SSA1	25	39	49	58	65	74	79	85
SSB1	21	34	43	52	59	68	73	80
SSB2	26	42	53	64	71	80	85	90
SSB3	20	32	41	50	56	65	71	77
SSC1	20	34	44	55	62	72	77	84
SSC2	22	40	51	63	71	80	85	90
SSE1	25	41	52	62	69	78	83	89
SSE2	29	49	61	73	80	87	91	95
SSE3	22	35	43	52	59	68	73	80

LUBBOCK, TEXAS SSF (%)								3551 DD65 (1974)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	17	30	40	50	57	67	73	80
WWB4	18	38	50	63	71	80	86	91
WWC2	19	37	49	61	69	79	85	90
TWA1	17	24	30	36	41	48	53	60
TWA2	16	26	34	42	48	57	63	70
TWA3	15	27	35	44	51	60	67	74
TWA4	14	26	35	45	52	61	67	75
TWB3	14	24	32	41	47	56	62	70
TWD4	17	34	45	57	65	75	80	87
TWE2	19	35	46	58	65	75	81	87
TWF3	12	23	31	40	47	56	63	70
TWJ2	16	32	43	54	62	72	78	85
DGA1	12	22	29	36	41	48	52	57
DGA2	13	23	32	41	47	56	61	67
DGA3	15	28	38	49	57	67	73	79
DGB1	12	22	30	39	46	55	60	66
DGB2	13	24	33	43	51	62	68	75
DGB3	15	28	39	51	60	72	78	84
DGC1	14	26	35	46	54	65	70	76
DGC2	15	28	38	50	59	70	76	82
DGC3	17	32	44	57	67	79	84	90
SSA1	21	33	41	50	56	65	70	77
SSB1	17	28	35	43	50	58	64	71
SSB2	21	35	45	55	63	72	77	84
SSB3	16	26	33	41	47	55	61	68
SSC1	15	27	35	45	52	61	67	74
SSC2	17	32	42	53	61	71	77	83
SSE1	20	34	43	53	60	69	74	81
SSE2	23	41	52	63	71	80	85	90
SSE3	18	28	36	44	50	58	64	70

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS SSF (%)								1570 DD65 (873)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	23	40	50	61	69	78	83	88
WWB4	26	48	61	73	80	88	92	95
WWC2	26	47	60	72	79	87	91	95
TWA1	21	30	37	45	50	59	64	71
TWA2	21	34	42	52	59	68	74	80
TWA3	21	35	45	55	62	71	77	83
TWA4	20	35	45	55	63	72	78	84
TWB3	19	32	41	51	58	67	73	80
TWD4	24	43	55	67	75	83	88	93
TWE2	26	44	56	68	75	84	88	93
TWF3	18	31	41	51	58	68	74	80
TWJ2	22	41	53	65	73	82	87	91
DGA1	17	30	38	47	53	60	64	69
DGA2	18	32	41	51	58	67	72	78
DGA3	20	36	48	60	68	77	81	86
DGB1	17	31	41	52	59	68	73	78
DGB2	18	33	44	56	64	74	79	85
DGB3	20	37	50	63	72	81	86	91
DGC1	20	36	48	60	68	77	82	86
DGC2	21	37	49	63	71	80	85	90
DGC3	23	42	56	70	78	87	91	94
SSA1	27	41	51	61	68	76	81	87
SSB1	23	36	45	54	61	70	75	82
SSB2	27	45	55	66	73	82	86	91
SSB3	22	34	43	52	59	68	73	80
SSC1	21	35	45	56	63	72	78	84
SSC2	23	41	53	64	71	80	85	91
SSE1	27	44	54	65	72	80	85	90
SSE2	31	52	64	75	82	89	92	96
SSE3	24	37	45	55	62	70	76	82

SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH SSF (%)								5988 DD65 (3329)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	19	25	32	37	44	49	55	64
WWB4	23	33	43	50	60	66	73	82
WWC2	23	32	42	49	59	65	72	80
TWA1	18	21	25	28	32	35	39	45
TWA2	18	22	28	32	38	42	47	54
TWA3	17	22	29	33	40	44	50	58
TWA4	16	22	28	33	40	45	51	60
TWB3	16	21	26	31	37	42	48	55
TWD4	22	30	39	45	55	60	68	76
TWE2	23	31	39	46	55	61	68	76
TWF3	14	19	25	30	36	41	46	54
TWJ2	20	28	37	43	52	58	65	74
DGA1	12	16	20	23	27	30	32	35
DGA2	15	20	26	30	36	41	46	52
DGA3	19	25	33	39	47	53	60	68
DGB1	13	17	21	25	30	33	37	41
DGB2	15	21	27	32	39	44	50	58
DGB3	19	26	34	40	50	56	64	73
DGC1	15	20	26	31	37	41	46	52
DGC2	18	24	31	37	45	51	58	66
DGC3	22	29	38	46	56	62	70	79
SSA1	23	28	34	38	44	48	54	60
SSB1	19	24	29	33	39	43	48	55
SSB2	24	31	39	45	52	58	64	72
SSB3	18	22	27	31	36	39	44	50
SSC1	16	22	28	32	39	43	49	57
SSC2	20	27	35	41	49	55	62	70
SSE1	22	27	34	38	45	49	55	62
SSE2	27	35	44	50	58	63	70	78
SSE3	20	24	29	33	38	42	47	53

BRYCE CANYON, UTAH SSF (%)								9136 DD65 (5080)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	16	22	30	35	43	59	56	65
WWB4	21	31	42	49	60	67	75	84
WWC2	21	30	40	48	58	65	73	82
TWA1	16	19	22	25	30	33	38	44
TWA2	15	20	25	29	36	40	46	55
TWA3	15	20	26	31	38	43	50	59
TWA4	14	19	26	31	39	44	51	60
TWB3	13	18	24	29	35	40	47	55
TWD4	19	28	37	44	54	60	68	78
TWE2	20	28	38	45	54	60	68	78
TWF3	12	17	23	27	34	39	46	55
TWJ2	17	25	35	42	51	58	65	75
DGA1	10	14	18	21	25	28	30	34
DGA2	12	17	23	28	35	39	44	51
DGA3	16	23	31	37	46	52	60	69
DGB1	10	14	18	22	27	31	36	41
DGB2	13	18	24	29	37	42	49	58
DGB3	17	23	32	38	48	55	64	74
DGC1	13	17	23	28	35	39	46	54
DGC2	15	21	29	35	43	50	58	67
DGC3	19	27	36	43	55	62	72	81
SSA1	23	29	35	40	47	52	58	66
SSB1	18	23	29	34	40	45	51	59
SSB2	24	32	40	46	55	61	68	76
SSB3	17	22	27	32	38	42	47	55
SSC1	14	19	25	30	37	42	49	58
SSC2	18	25	33	40	49	55	62	72
SSE1	21	28	35	41	48	53	60	68
SSE2	27	36	46	53	62	68	75	83
SSE3	19	24	30	34	40	45	50	58

BURLINGTON, VERMONT SSF (%)								7878 DD65 (4380)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	4	6	8	9	10	11	12	13
WWB4	6	10	16	20	26	31	36	44
WWC2	6	10	15	19	25	29	34	41
TWA1	10	11	11	11	11	11	11	10
TWA2	7	8	9	10	11	12	12	13
TWA3	6	7	8	10	11	12	13	14
TWA4	4	6	8	9	11	12	14	15
TWB3	5	7	8	10	11	12	14	16
TWD4	7	10	15	19	24	27	32	39
TWE2	7	11	15	18	23	26	31	37
TWF3	3	4	6	7	8	9	10	11
TWJ2	5	9	13	16	21	25	29	35
DGA1	2	2	2	1	1	0	–1	–5
DGA2	5	7	8	10	11	13	14	16
DGA3	8	11	15	17	22	25	29	34
DGB1	2	2	2	1	1	0	–1	–4
DGB2	5	7	9	10	12	13	15	17
DGB3	9	12	15	18	23	26	31	37
DGC1	3	4	4	4	5	4	3	2
DGC2	7	9	11	13	16	18	20	23
DGC3	10	13	18	21	26	30	35	42
SSA1	11	13	14	16	17	18	20	21
SSB1	9	10	11	13	14	15	16	17
SSB2	11	15	19	22	26	29	33	38
SSB3	8	9	10	10	11	11	12	11
SSC1	4	5	6	6	7	7	7	7
SSC2	5	8	11	14	17	19	22	27
SSE1	7	8	10	11	12	12	12	11
SSE2	9	13	17	21	25	28	32	37
SSE3	9	10	11	12	13	13	14	14

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

NORFOLK, VIRGINIA SSF (%)								3493 DD65 (1942)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	12	22	29	37	42	51	56	63
WWB4	12	27	37	49	56	67	73	80
WWC2	12	27	37	47	55	65	71	78
TWA1	14	19	23	27	31	36	40	45
TWA2	12	20	25	31	36	43	48	54
TWA3	11	20	26	33	38	46	51	57
TWA4	10	19	25	33	38	46	52	59
TWB3	10	18	23	30	35	42	48	54
TWD4	12	25	34	44	51	61	67	74
TWE2	13	26	35	44	51	61	67	74
TWF3	8	16	22	29	34	42	47	53
TWJ2	10	23	32	41	48	58	64	72
DGA1	8	15	19	24	28	33	36	39
DGA2	9	17	23	29	35	42	46	52
DGA3	11	21	28	37	44	53	59	66
DGB1	8	15	20	25	30	36	40	45
DGB2	9	17	23	31	36	45	50	58
DGB3	11	21	29	38	45	56	63	71
DGC1	10	18	24	31	36	44	49	56
DGC2	11	20	27	36	42	52	58	66
DGC3	13	24	33	43	51	62	70	78
SSA1	16	25	31	38	43	50	55	62
SSB1	13	21	26	33	38	44	49	55
SSB2	16	27	35	44	50	59	64	71
SSB3	13	20	25	31	35	42	46	52
SSC1	10	19	25	32	37	45	50	57
SSC2	11	23	31	40	46	56	62	69
SSE1	15	25	31	39	45	53	58	64
SSE2	16	30	40	50	57	66	72	78
SSE3	14	22	27	33	38	44	49	55

RICHMOND, VIRGINIA SSF (%)								3941 DD65 (2191)
Type	LCR = 200 (1135)	100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)
WWA3	9	17	23	30	35	43	48	54
WWB4	8	22	31	42	49	59	65	73
WWC2	9	22	31	41	48	57	64	71
TWA1	13	17	20	24	26	31	34	38
TWA2	11	17	21	26	30	36	40	46
TWA3	9	16	21	27	32	38	43	49
TWA4	8	15	21	27	32	39	44	50
TWB3	8	15	19	25	29	36	40	46
TWD4	9	20	28	37	44	53	59	67
TWE2	10	21	29	38	45	54	60	67
TWF3	6	13	18	24	28	35	39	45
TWJ2	8	19	26	35	42	51	57	64
DGA1	6	11	15	19	22	26	28	30
DGA2	7	14	19	24	29	35	39	44
DGA3	9	18	24	31	37	46	52	59
DGB1	6	11	15	20	23	28	31	35
DGB2	8	14	19	25	30	37	42	48
DGB3	10	18	25	33	39	48	55	63
DGC1	8	14	19	24	29	35	39	44
DGC2	9	17	23	30	35	43	49	56
DGC3	11	21	28	37	44	54	61	70
SSA1	14	21	27	33	37	43	48	53
SSB1	12	18	23	28	32	38	42	47
SSB2	13	23	30	38	44	52	57	64
SSB3	11	17	21	26	29	35	39	44
SSC1	8	15	20	26	31	37	42	48
SSC2	9	19	26	34	40	48	54	61
SSE1	12	20	26	33	37	44	49	55
SSE2	13	25	34	43	49	58	64	71
SSE3	13	19	23	28	32	37	41	46

ROANOKE, VIRGINIA SSF (%)								4314 DD65 (2399)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	17	23	30	35	42	47	54	63
WWB4	22	31	41	49	59	65	73	82
WWC2	21	30	40	47	57	64	71	80
TWA1	17	20	23	26	30	33	37	43
TWA2	16	21	26	30	36	40	45	53
TWA3	16	21	27	31	38	43	49	57
TWA4	15	20	26	31	38	43	50	59
TWB3	14	19	25	29	35	40	46	54
TWD4	20	28	37	44	53	59	67	76
TWE2	21	29	38	44	53	59	67	76
TWF3	13	17	23	28	34	39	45	53
TWJ2	18	26	35	41	50	57	64	74
DGA1	11	14	18	21	25	27	30	33
DGA2	13	18	24	28	35	39	44	50
DGA3	17	23	31	37	46	52	59	67
DGB1	11	15	19	22	27	30	35	40
DGB2	14	19	25	30	37	42	48	56
DGB3	18	24	32	38	48	54	63	73
DGC1	14	18	24	28	34	38	44	51
DGC2	16	22	29	35	43	49	56	65
DGC3	20	28	36	43	54	61	70	79
SSA1	21	27	32	37	43	48	54	61
SSB1	18	22	28	32	38	42	47	55
SSB2	23	30	38	44	52	57	64	73
SSB3	17	21	26	29	35	39	44	50
SSC1	15	20	26	30	37	41	47	56
SSC2	18	25	33	39	48	53	61	70
SSE1	20	26	33	37	44	49	55	63
SSE2	25	34	43	49	58	64	71	79
SSE3	18	23	28	32	37	41	46	53

SEATTLE-TACOMA, WASHINGTON SSF (%)								5188 DD65 (2885)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	14	18	23	26	30	33	36	41
WWB4	17	25	32	38	46	51	57	64
WWC2	17	24	32	37	44	49	55	62
TWA1	16	18	20	22	25	26	28	31
TWA2	14	18	21	24	27	30	33	36
TWA3	14	17	21	24	29	31	35	39
TWA4	12	17	21	24	29	32	35	40
TWB3	13	16	20	23	27	30	34	38
TWD4	17	23	30	35	42	46	52	59
TWE2	17	24	30	35	42	46	51	58
TWF3	11	14	18	21	25	28	31	36
TWJ2	15	21	28	33	39	44	49	57
DGA1	9	12	14	16	17	18	18	18
DGA2	12	16	20	23	27	30	33	37
DGA3	16	21	27	31	37	41	46	53
DGB1	10	12	15	17	19	20	21	22
DGB2	13	16	21	24	29	32	35	40
DGB3	16	22	28	33	39	44	49	57
DGC1	12	15	19	21	24	26	28	30
DGC2	15	19	25	28	34	37	42	47
DGC3	19	24	31	36	44	49	54	62
SSA1	19	23	27	30	34	36	39	43
SSB1	16	20	23	26	30	32	35	38
SSB2	21	26	32	36	42	46	51	57
SSB3	15	18	22	24	27	29	31	34
SSC1	12	16	20	22	26	28	31	35
SSC2	15	20	26	30	36	40	45	51
SSE1	17	21	25	28	32	34	38	39
SSE2	21	27	34	38	44	48	53	58
SSE3	17	20	23	26	29	31	33	36

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

SPOKANE, WASHINGTON SSF (%)								6839 DD65 (3803)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	11	14	18	21	24	27	29	32
WWB4	14	20	28	33	40	45	51	58
WWC2	14	20	27	32	38	43	48	55
TWA1	14	15	17	19	21	22	23	25
TWA2	12	15	18	20	23	24	27	29
TWA3	11	14	17	20	23	25	28	31
TWA4	10	13	17	20	23	26	29	33
TWB3	10	13	17	19	22	25	28	32
TWD4	13	19	25	30	36	41	46	53
TWE2	14	20	26	30	36	40	45	52
TWF3	8	11	14	17	20	22	25	28
TWJ2	12	17	23	28	34	38	43	50
DGA1	7	9	10	11	12	12	12	11
DGA2	10	13	16	19	22	25	27	30
DGA3	13	18	23	27	33	36	41	47
DGB1	7	9	11	12	14	14	14	14
DGB2	10	13	17	20	24	26	29	33
DGB3	14	18	24	28	34	39	44	51
DGC1	9	12	14	16	19	20	21	21
DGC2	12	16	20	24	29	32	35	40
DGC3	16	21	27	32	39	43	49	56
SSA1	16	19	22	25	28	30	32	35
SSB1	13	16	19	21	24	26	28	30
SSB2	17	22	27	31	36	40	44	50
SSB3	12	15	17	19	21	22	24	25
SSC1	10	12	15	18	20	22	24	26
SSC2	12	17	22	25	30	34	38	43
SSE1	13	17	20	22	24	26	27	29
SSE2	17	22	28	32	37	41	45	50
SSE3	14	16	19	21	23	25	26	28

CHARLESTON, WEST VIRGINIA SSF (%)								4594 DD65 (2554)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	11	15	20	23	28	31	36	42
WWB4	14	21	30	36	45	50	58	67
WWC2	14	21	29	35	43	48	55	65
TWA1	14	15	18	19	21	23	25	28
TWA2	12	15	18	21	24	27	30	35
TWA3	11	14	18	21	26	29	33	38
TWA4	10	13	18	21	26	29	34	40
TWB3	10	13	17	20	24	27	31	37
TWD4	14	20	27	32	40	45	52	61
TWE2	15	20	27	32	40	45	51	60
TWF3	8	11	15	18	22	25	29	35
TWJ2	12	18	25	30	37	42	49	58
DGA1	7	9	11	12	14	14	15	15
DGA2	10	13	16	19	24	26	30	35
DGA3	13	18	23	28	34	39	45	53
DGB1	7	9	11	12	14	15	17	18
DGB2	10	13	17	20	25	28	32	38
DGB3	13	18	24	29	36	41	47	56
DGC1	9	12	15	17	20	22	24	27
DGC2	12	16	21	24	30	34	39	46
DGC3	15	21	28	33	40	46	53	63
SSA1	17	20	24	27	32	35	39	44
SSB1	14	17	20	23	27	30	33	38
SSB2	18	23	29	34	40	45	51	59
SSB3	13	15	19	21	24	27	30	34
SSC1	10	13	16	19	23	26	30	35
SSC2	12	17	23	27	34	38	44	52
SSE1	14	18	22	26	30	33	37	42
SSE2	18	24	31	37	44	49	55	63
SSE3	14	17	20	23	26	29	32	36

MADISON, WISCONSIN SSF (%)								7731 DD65 (4298)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	8	11	14	17	20	23	26	30
WWB4	10	16	24	29	37	42	49	58
WWC2	10	16	23	28	35	40	47	55
TWA1	12	13	14	15	17	18	19	20
TWA2	10	12	14	16	19	20	23	26
TWA3	8	11	14	16	19	21	24	28
TWA4	7	10	13	16	19	22	25	30
TWB3	8	10	13	15	18	21	24	28
TWD4	10	16	22	26	33	38	44	52
TWE2	11	16	22	26	33	37	43	51
TWF3	6	8	11	13	16	18	21	25
TWJ2	9	14	19	24	30	35	41	49
DGA1	4	5	6	7	8	8	7	6
DGA2	7	10	13	15	18	20	23	26
DGA3	11	15	19	23	28	32	38	45
DGB1	4	5	6	7	8	8	8	8
DGB2	8	10	13	15	19	21	24	29
DGB3	11	15	20	24	30	34	40	48
DGC1	6	8	10	11	13	14	15	16
DGC2	9	12	16	19	23	26	30	36
DGC3	13	17	23	27	34	39	45	55
SSA1	14	16	19	22	25	27	30	33
SSB1	11	13	16	18	21	22	25	28
SSB2	14	19	24	28	33	37	42	50
SSB3	10	12	14	16	18	19	21	23
SSC1	7	9	12	13	16	18	20	23
SSC2	9	13	18	21	27	30	35	42
SSE1	11	13	16	18	21	23	25	28
SSE2	14	19	25	29	35	39	45	52
SSE3	12	14	16	17	20	21	23	26

MILWAUKEE, WISCONSIN SSF (%)								7445 DD65 (4139)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	8	11	14	16	20	22	25	30
WWB4	10	16	23	29	37	42	49	58
WWC2	10	16	23	28	35	40	46	55
TWA1	12	13	15	15	17	18	19	20
TWA2	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	26
TWA3	9	11	14	16	19	21	24	28
TWA4	7	10	13	15	19	22	25	29
TWB3	8	10	13	15	18	21	24	28
TWD4	10	16	21	26	33	37	43	52
TWE2	11	16	22	26	32	37	43	51
TWF3	6	8	11	13	16	18	21	25
TWJ2	9	14	19	24	30	35	40	49
DGA1	4	6	6	7	8	8	7	6
DGA2	7	10	13	15	18	20	23	26
DGA3	11	15	19	23	28	32	37	45
DGB1	4	5	6	7	8	8	8	8
DGB2	8	10	13	15	19	21	24	28
DGB3	11	15	20	24	30	34	40	48
DGC1	6	8	10	11	13	14	15	16
DGC2	9	12	16	19	23	26	30	36
DGC3	13	17	23	27	34	39	45	54
SSA1	14	17	20	22	25	27	30	34
SSB1	11	14	16	18	21	23	25	29
SSB2	15	19	24	28	34	38	43	50
SSB3	10	12	14	16	18	19	21	23
SSC1	7	9	12	13	16	18	20	23
SSC2	9	13	18	21	26	30	35	41
SSE1	11	14	16	19	21	23	26	28
SSE2	14	19	25	29	35	39	45	52
SSE3	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

SHERIDAN, WYOMING SSF (%)								7717 DD65 (4291)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	12	17	22	26	31	35	40	47
WWB4	16	24	32	39	48	54	61	71
WWC2	16	23	31	38	46	52	59	68
TWA1	14	16	19	21	23	25	28	32
TWA2	13	16	20	23	27	30	34	40
TWA3	12	16	20	23	28	32	36	43
TWA4	11	15	20	23	29	33	37	44
TWB3	11	14	19	22	27	30	35	41
TWD4	15	22	29	35	43	48	55	65
TWE2	16	22	30	35	43	48	55	64
TWF3	9	13	17	20	25	28	33	39
TWJ2	13	20	27	32	40	46	53	62
DGA1	7	10	12	14	16	17	19	19
DGA2	10	14	18	21	26	29	33	38
DGA3	14	19	25	30	37	42	48	56
DGB1	7	10	13	15	17	19	21	23
DGB2	10	14	19	22	27	31	36	42
DGB3	14	19	26	31	38	44	51	60
DGC1	10	13	17	19	23	26	29	33
DGC2	13	17	23	27	33	37	43	51
DGC3	16	22	30	35	43	49	57	67
SSA1	17	21	25	28	33	36	40	46
SSB1	14	17	21	24	28	31	35	40
SSB2	18	24	30	35	42	46	52	60
SSB3	13	16	19	22	25	28	31	35
SSC1	11	14	18	22	26	30	34	40
SSC2	13	19	25	30	37	42	48	56
SSE1	15	19	24	27	32	35	39	44
SSE2	19	25	33	38	46	50	57	65
SSE3	15	18	21	24	28	30	34	38

SUFFIELD, ALBERTA SSF (%)								9423 DD65 (5239)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	11	15	19	23	27	30	34	39
WWB4	14	21	29	35	44	49	56	65
WWC2	14	21	28	34	42	47	53	62
TWA1	14	15	17	19	21	23	25	28
TWA2	12	15	18	21	24	27	30	34
TWA3	11	14	18	21	25	28	32	37
TWA4	10	13	18	21	25	29	33	38
TWB3	10	13	17	20	24	27	31	36
TWD4	14	20	27	32	39	44	50	59
TWE2	14	20	27	32	39	44	50	58
TWF3	8	11	15	18	22	25	28	33
TWJ2	12	18	24	29	37	41	48	56
DGA1	7	9	11	12	13	14	15	14
DGA2	10	13	17	19	24	26	30	34
DGA3	13	18	23	28	34	38	44	51
DGB1	7	9	11	13	15	16	17	18
DGB2	10	13	17	20	25	28	32	37
DGB3	13	18	24	29	36	41	47	55
DGC1	9	12	15	17	20	22	24	26
DGC2	12	16	21	25	30	34	39	45
DGC3	15	21	28	33	40	46	52	61
SSA1	15	18	22	24	28	30	33	37
SSB1	12	15	18	21	24	26	29	32
SSB2	16	21	27	31	37	41	46	53
SSB3	11	14	16	18	21	22	24	27
SSC1	10	13	16	19	23	25	28	33
SSC2	12	17	23	27	33	37	43	50
SSE1	13	16	19	22	25	27	30	33
SSE2	16	22	28	32	39	43	48	55
SSE3	13	16	18	20	23	25	27	30

Canada

EDMONTON, ALBERTA SSF (%)								10671 DD65 (5933)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	9	12	16	18	21	23	26	28
WWB4	11	18	25	30	37	42	48	56
WWC2	12	17	24	29	36	40	46	53
TWA1	12	14	15	17	18	19	20	22
TWA2	10	13	15	17	20	22	24	26
TWA3	9	12	15	17	20	23	25	28
TWA4	8	11	14	17	21	23	26	29
TWB3	8	11	14	17	20	22	25	28
TWD4	11	17	23	27	34	38	43	50
TWE2	12	17	23	27	33	37	42	49
TWF3	6	9	12	14	17	19	22	25
TWJ2	10	15	21	25	31	35	41	47
DGA1	5	7	8	9	9	9	9	7
DGA2	8	11	14	17	20	22	25	28
DGA3	12	16	21	25	30	34	39	45
DGB1	5	7	8	9	10	11	11	10
DGB2	8	11	15	17	21	24	27	30
DGB3	12	16	22	26	32	36	41	48
DGC1	7	9	12	13	15	17	18	18
DGC2	10	14	18	21	26	29	33	37
DGC3	14	19	25	29	36	41	46	53
SSA1	13	16	19	21	23	25	27	28
SSB1	11	13	16	17	20	21	23	25
SSB2	14	19	23	27	32	35	40	45
SSB3	10	12	14	15	17	18	18	19
SSC1	8	10	13	15	17	19	21	22
SSC2	10	14	19	23	28	31	35	40
SSE1	10	13	15	17	19	20	21	21
SSE2	13	18	23	27	32	36	40	45
SSE3	11	13	16	17	19	20	21	22

VANCOUVER, BRITISH COL. SSF (%)								5607 DD65 (3118)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	15	19	24	27	31	34	37	41
WWB4	18	25	33	39	46	51	57	65
WWC2	18	25	32	38	45	49	55	62
TWA1	16	18	21	23	25	27	29	32
TWA2	15	18	22	25	28	31	34	37
TWA3	14	18	22	25	29	32	35	40
TWA4	13	17	22	25	30	33	36	41
TWB3	13	17	21	24	28	31	35	39
TWD4	17	24	31	36	43	47	53	60
TWE2	18	24	31	36	42	47	52	59
TWF3	11	15	19	22	26	29	32	37
TWJ2	16	22	29	33	40	45	50	57
DGA1	10	12	15	17	18	19	20	19
DGA2	12	16	21	24	28	31	34	37
DGA3	16	22	28	32	38	42	47	53
DGB1	10	13	16	18	20	21	22	23
DGB2	13	17	22	25	30	33	36	41
DGB3	17	22	29	33	40	45	50	57
DGC1	13	16	20	22	26	27	29	31
DGC2	15	20	25	29	35	38	42	48
DGC3	19	25	32	37	45	49	55	62
SSA1	20	23	27	30	34	36	39	42
SSB1	16	20	24	26	30	32	35	38
SSB2	21	26	32	36	42	46	51	57
SSB3	15	19	22	24	27	29	31	34
SSC1	13	17	21	23	27	29	32	35
SSC2	16	21	27	31	37	41	45	51
SSE1	18	22	26	28	32	34	36	38
SSE2	21	28	34	38	44	48	52	58
SSE3	17	20	24	26	29	31	33	36

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

WINNIPEG, MANITOBA SSF (%)								10776 DD65 (5992)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	8	10	13	16	19	21	24	28
WWB4	10	16	23	28	36	41	48	57
WWC2	10	16	22	27	34	39	45	54
TWA1	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
TWA2	10	11	14	15	18	20	22	25
TWA3	8	10	13	15	18	20	23	27
TWA4	7	9	13	15	18	21	24	28
TWB3	8	10	13	15	18	20	23	27
TWD4	10	15	21	25	32	37	43	51
TWE2	11	16	21	25	32	36	42	49
TWF3	5	8	10	12	15	17	20	24
TWJ2	8	13	19	23	29	34	40	47
DGA1	4	5	6	7	7	7	6	5
DGA2	7	9	12	14	18	20	22	26
DGA3	10	14	19	22	28	32	37	44
DGB1	4	5	6	7	7	8	8	7
DGB2	7	10	13	15	18	21	24	28
DGB3	11	15	19	23	29	34	39	47
DGC1	6	7	9	10	12	13	14	15
DGC2	9	12	16	19	23	26	30	35
DGC3	12	17	22	27	34	38	45	53
SSA1	12	15	17	19	22	23	26	28
SSB1	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24
SSB2	13	17	22	25	31	34	39	46
SSB3	9	10	12	13	15	16	17	18
SSC1	6	9	11	13	15	17	19	21
SSC2	9	12	17	20	26	29	34	40
SSE1	9	11	14	15	18	19	21	22
SSE2	12	17	22	26	31	35	40	46
SSE3	11	12	14	15	17	18	20	21

HALIFAX, NOVA SCOTIA SSF (%)								7167 DD65 (3985)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	10	13	17	20	25	28	32	38
WWB4	12	19	27	33	42	47	55	64
WWC2	12	19	26	32	40	45	52	61
TWA1	13	14	16	17	19	21	23	25
TWA2	11	13	16	19	22	24	27	32
TWA3	10	13	16	19	23	26	29	35
TWA4	8	12	16	19	23	26	30	36
TWB3	9	12	15	18	22	24	28	34
TWD4	12	18	24	30	37	42	49	58
TWE2	13	18	25	30	37	42	48	57
TWF3	7	10	13	16	19	22	26	31
TWJ2	10	16	22	27	34	39	46	55
DGA1	6	7	9	10	11	11	12	11
DGA2	8	11	15	17	21	24	27	31
DGA3	12	16	21	25	32	36	42	50
DGB1	5	7	9	10	11	12	13	14
DGB2	9	12	15	18	22	25	29	34
DGB3	12	17	22	26	33	38	45	54
DGC1	7	10	12	14	16	18	20	23
DGC2	10	14	18	22	27	31	36	43
DGC3	14	19	25	30	38	43	51	60
SSA1	15	19	22	25	29	32	36	41
SSB1	13	15	19	21	25	27	30	35
SSB2	16	21	27	31	38	42	48	56
SSB3	11	14	17	19	22	24	26	30
SSC1	8	11	14	17	20	23	26	30
SSC2	11	15	21	25	31	35	41	48
SSE1	13	16	20	23	27	29	33	37
SSE2	16	22	29	34	41	46	52	59
SSE3	13	16	19	21	24	26	29	33

OTTAWA, ONTARIO SSF (%)								8461 DD65 (4704)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	8	11	14	17	20	23	26	31
WWB4	10	16	24	29	37	43	50	59
WWC2	10	16	23	28	36	41	47	56
TWA1	12	13	14	15	17	18	19	21
TWA2	10	12	14	16	19	20	23	26
TWA3	8	11	14	16	19	22	25	29
TWA4	7	10	13	16	19	22	26	31
TWB3	8	10	13	15	19	21	24	29
TWD4	10	15	22	26	33	38	44	53
TWE2	11	16	22	26	33	38	44	52
TWF3	6	8	11	13	16	18	21	26
TWJ2	9	14	19	24	31	35	41	50
DGA1	4	5	6	7	8	8	7	6
DGA2	7	10	13	15	18	20	23	27
DGA3	11	14	19	23	28	33	38	46
DGB1	4	5	6	7	8	8	9	8
DGB2	7	10	13	15	19	21	25	29
DGB3	11	15	20	24	30	34	40	49
DGC1	6	7	9	11	13	14	15	17
DGC2	9	12	16	19	24	27	31	37
DGC3	13	17	23	27	34	39	46	55
SSA1	13	16	19	21	24	26	29	33
SSB1	11	13	15	17	20	22	24	28
SSB2	14	18	23	27	33	37	42	49
SSB3	10	11	13	15	17	18	20	22
SSC1	7	9	11	13	16	18	21	24
SSC2	9	13	18	21	27	31	36	43
SSE1	10	13	16	18	21	23	25	28
SSE2	13	18	24	28	35	39	44	52
SSE3	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25

TORONTO, ONTARIO SSF (%)								7280 DD65 (4048)
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	8	11	14	17	21	23	27	31
WWB4	10	17	24	30	38	43	50	59
WWC2	11	16	23	28	36	41	47	56
TWA1	12	13	15	16	17	18	19	21
TWA2	10	12	14	16	19	21	23	27
TWA3	9	11	14	16	20	22	25	29
TWA4	7	10	13	16	20	22	26	31
TWB3	8	10	13	16	19	21	24	29
TWD4	11	16	22	27	33	38	44	53
TWE2	11	16	22	27	33	38	44	52
TWF3	6	8	11	13	16	19	22	26
TWJ2	9	14	20	24	31	35	41	50
DGA1	5	6	7	7	8	8	8	7
DGA2	8	10	13	15	18	21	23	27
DGA3	11	15	19	23	29	33	38	46
DGB1	4	5	7	7	8	9	9	9
DGB2	8	10	13	16	19	22	25	29
DGB3	11	15	20	24	30	35	41	49
DGC1	6	8	10	11	13	14	16	17
DGC2	9	12	16	19	24	27	31	37
DGC3	13	17	23	28	34	39	46	55
SSA1	14	17	20	22	25	28	31	35
SSB1	11	14	16	18	21	23	26	29
SSB2	15	19	24	28	34	38	43	51
SSB3	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24
SSC1	7	9	12	14	17	18	21	24
SSC2	9	13	18	22	27	31	36	43
SSE1	11	14	17	19	22	24	27	30
SSE2	14	19	25	30	36	40	46	59
SSE3	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	27

TABLE H.3 Annual Passive Heating Performance: SSF (*Continued*)

NORMANDIN, QUEBEC SSF (%)							11364 DD65 (6318)	
Type	LCR = 100 (567)	70 (397)	50 (284)	40 (227)	30 (170)	25 (142)	20 (114)	15 (85)
WWA3	6	9	11	14	17	19	21	25
WWB4	8	14	21	26	33	39	45	54
WWC2	8	14	20	25	32	36	43	51
TWA1	11	12	13	13	14	15	16	17
TWA2	8	10	12	13	16	17	19	22
TWA3	7	9	11	13	16	18	20	24
TWA4	5	8	11	13	16	18	21	25
TWB3	6	8	11	13	16	18	20	24
TWD4	8	13	19	23	30	34	40	48
TWE2	9	14	19	23	29	34	39	47
TWF3	4	6	8	10	13	15	17	20
TWJ2	7	11	17	21	27	31	37	45
DGA1	3	3	4	5	5	4	4	2
DGA2	6	8	10	13	15	17	20	23
DGA3	9	13	17	20	26	30	35	42
DGB1	3	3	4	4	5	5	5	4
DGB2	6	8	11	13	16	18	21	25
DGB3	10	13	18	21	27	31	37	45
DGC1	4	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
DGC2	8	10	14	16	20	23	27	33
DGC3	11	15	20	25	31	36	42	51
SSA1	12	14	16	18	21	23	25	27
SSB1	9	11	13	15	17	19	20	23
SSB2	12	16	21	24	30	33	38	44
SSB3	8	10	11	12	14	15	16	17
SSC1	5	7	9	11	13	14	16	18
SSC2	7	11	15	18	23	27	31	37
SSE1	8	10	13	14	16	18	19	20
SSE2	11	16	21	25	30	34	39	45
SSE3	10	11	13	14	16	17	19	20

APPENDIX

Economic Analysis

I.1 ECONOMIC DECISION MAKING

As has been emphasized in this book, economic factors are a major consideration in almost every decision in the building design process. The discussion of economic analysis that follows is necessarily brief but covers the essential principles. For in-depth information on economic analyses of the design and construction process, see the references at the end of this appendix. Publications of the National Institute of Science and Technology (NIST; formerly The National Bureau of Standards) by Marshall and Ruegg (1980a, b) and Ruegg et al. (1978) are key sources for the following information.

The most common economic analysis questions are:

1. How can the cost of different systems *that produce the same result* be compared? This may apply to the purchase of a single item such as a motor, to the lighting of a room, or to the choice of the type of HVAC installation for an entire building. The principle involved is the same.

2. Assuming that improving a system, existing or proposed, will reduce operating costs and that many different types of improvement are possible, what preliminary economic guidelines can be established to determine whether any proposed investment appears cost effective? Stated otherwise, how can the initial simple rate of return of a proposed investment be determined so that it can be compared to the *minimum expected rate of return* on the investment?

3. Having determined, in answering question 2, that a number of different proposals—each with its own investment and payback (savings) figures are apparently cost effective, how can these be compared to determine which one is *most* cost effective? Put another way, which proposal has the maximum *net benefit or savings?* This is the type of decision that must be made when comparing energy conservation projects such as lighting control systems.

4. Having established which of the proposals is most cost effective, how can the *actual* rate of return of the investment be determined? This figure, often referred to as *internal rate of return* (IRR), can then be compared to an expected (or required) rate of return to determine whether an investment is economically desirable.

5. What is the *payback period* of an investment?

These questions are considered individually in the discussion that follows.

I.2 LIFE-CYCLE COST

Cost comparisons made on the basis of first cost are legitimate only when operating/replacement costs are nominal or hold no concern for an owner. Proposals for a concrete slab might represent the former situation, and speculative construction for immediate sale the latter. In such cases, cost comparison is simple—and based upon first cost. When operating/maintenance/replacement costs are involved that vary from system to system, however, the only

reasonable way to determine and compare overall (true) system costs is by *life-cycle costing*. The basic theory and calculation techniques are well documented (see Fuller and Peterson, 1995; AIA, 1977; Marshal and Ruegg, 1980a, b; Ruegg et al., 1978), so they will be reviewed only briefly here. For discipline-specific information, see ASHRAE (2007) and IESNA (2000).

Stated simply, life-cycle cost represents the total cost of an item or system over its entire life cycle—it is the sum of the first cost and all future costs, less salvage. When the life cycle of a system being studied does not correspond to that of the building in which it is installed (as is usually the case), the designer must decide which life cycle to use. For instance, a lighting system may have an estimated life of 15 to 20 years, whereas the building life is usually at least double that figure. It is often wiser to conduct the analysis over the shorter time period, since (almost certainly) changes in technology will present an entirely different picture when the time comes to replace the system. This is true of most mechanical/electrical systems being designed today.

Life-cycle cost, in equation form, is

$$LCC = IC + MC + AC + OC \tag{I.1}$$

where

LCC = life-cycle cost

IC = investment cost (i.e., first cost minus salvage)

MC = maintenance and repair cost

AC = amortization (replacement) cost (not always included in life-cycle calculations)

OC = operating costs, including labor and energy

All costs are typically expressed in terms of present value, which is explained in this section. Costs can also be annualized. The present value approach tends to give a clearer answer to the economic decision questions posed in Section I.1. When calculating costs, the designer must include related ancillary costs. For instance, in comparing lighting systems, the costs must reflect the impact of lighting on the HVAC system (capacity and energy use) and the wiring system. For lighting system cost analysis information, see IESNA.

When the life-cycle analysis period is short—say, 2 years maximum—the last three components of Equation I.1 can be assumed to be constant without introducing an unacceptable error. For longer periods, however, this is not a valid assumption because of escalating labor and energy costs. Since these two factors weigh heavily in all economic comparisons, and since they generally apply in different proportions in the systems being considered, escalation of such costs will change the economic balance over the equipment life span. It is therefore necessary to conduct an analysis that reflects this escalation.

The present value of future payments of 1.00, made at the *end* of each of a series of n periods, is

$$PV = \frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^2} \tag{I.2}$$

where

PV = present value

i = interest (discount) rate expressed as a decimal (e.g., 8% = 0.08)

n = number of periods

The factor i is more accurately the discount rate rather than the simple interest rate, the difference being that the latter reflects inflation, either actual or anticipated. If, however, the future payments escalate, the expression becomes

$$PV = \frac{1 - \left(\frac{K}{1+i}\right)^n}{\frac{1+i}{K} - 1} \tag{I.3}$$

where K is the escalation rate per period, and the remaining items are as in Equation I.2. Thus, for a 5% annual escalation, $K = 1.05$, and so on. The values of PV are tabulated in Table I.1 for interest (discount) rates of 8%, 10%, and 12% and for escalation rates of 3%, 5%, 8%, and 10%. Other values can be calculated from the equations.

It is apparent that the result of a life-cycle cost analysis depends heavily on accurate forecasting when using escalations, and that comparative results can readily shift not only with escalation estimates of the various components but also with the length of the life cycle being analyzed.

I.3 INITIAL (SIMPLE) RATE OF RETURN

Addressing the second question in Section I.1, is a proposed cost-saving investment worth examining in detail? That is, is the initial (simple) rate of return sufficient? The difference between initial and *actual* rates of return is that the former is simply:

$$\text{initial rate of return} = \frac{\text{annual savings}}{\text{investment}}$$

whereas the actual (internal) rate of return depends upon the life of a project and the *total* savings accrued during the life cycle. The calculation method for the latter is given in Section I.5.

Initial rate of return is a useful criterion in that it can be very easily calculated and then compared to a *minimum* desired rate of return on investment. The *minimum* rate is emphasized, since the actual rate of return is always lower than the simple initial rate of return, except where savings escalate during the project life cycle. If a preliminary comparison indicates that the simple rate of return exceeds the minimum by a margin of a few percentage points, it is likely that a project is economically feasible, and a detailed analysis can be undertaken.

I.4 COST-EFFECTIVENESS COMPARISON

This analysis is undertaken in answer to question 3; that is, several projects are being considered, all of which meet the stated criteria. Which one is most desirable from a cost-effectiveness viewpoint? (If only one project is under consideration, the analysis proceeds directly to the IRR calculation described in the next section).

The difference between life-cycle project cost and life-cycle project savings, that is, net lifetime savings, is a measure of cost effectiveness. Therefore, to compare the cost effectiveness of two projects, it is necessary simply to calculate this differential. This can be expressed as an equation:

$$\text{net savings} = \text{life-cycle savings} - \text{life-cycle cost}$$

Since this is true for all projects, a comparative differential can be calculated by using the differential in each term of the life-cycle cost equation, that is,

$$\Delta_{\text{net}} = \Delta_{\text{savings}} - \Delta_{\text{costs}}$$

Taking a very simple example, assume the following conditions.

	Project A	Project B
Investment	$10,000	$15,000
Life cycle	10 years	8 years
Annual savings	$2,000	$3,200
Initial rate of return	20%	32.3%
Discount rate	12%	12%

Since project B has an apparently higher rate of return, we would formulate the differential as B minus A. Using Table I.1a, the present worth of lifetime savings for project B (without escalation) is $\$3200 \times (4.97)$ or $15,904, and that of project A is $\$2000 \times (5.65)$ or $11,120. Therefore, the differential cost benefit (CB) of B minus A is

$$\Delta_{\text{life savings}} \text{ minus } \Delta_{\text{project costs}}$$

or

$$\Delta_{CB} = (\$15{,}904 - \$11{,}120) - (\$15{,}000 - \$10{,}000)$$

$$= \$4784 - 5000 = -\$216$$

indicating that project A is more cost effective despite the apparently higher rate of return of project B. If we include escalation in costs, the life savings of the longer-life project (A) will shrink more than the savings of shorter-life project B. Using Table I.1*d*, the projects are about equal, with 3% annual escalation. With higher rates of escalation, project B is more cost effective.

I.5 INTERNAL RATE OF RETURN (IRR)

Internal rate of return represents the rate of return at which lifetime savings are exactly equal to lifetime costs. IRR cannot be calculated directly, but only by trial and error. Assume a rate of return, calculate the present value (PV) of savings, and compare PV to lifetime costs. Because of this difficulty, IRR is frequently neglected, and initial rate of return is used instead, although, as discussed in Section I.4, this can readily give misleading results. To illustrate the calculation of IRR, return to the very simple example in Section I.4 and calculate IRR for projects A and B.

For project A, a present worth factor of $\$10{,}000/\$2000 = 5$ is needed, in 10 years. Referring to Table I.1*a*, note that at a discount (interest) rate of 15%, the present worth factor is 5.019, indicating that IRR is slightly above this level. (It is actually 15.1%.) For project B an 8-year present worth factor of $15,000/$3200, or 4.69, is needed. Referring again to Table I.1*a*, note that this factor falls between 12% and 15%. A series of trials with Equation I.2 will eventually arrive at 13.7%, which is 1.4% *less* than the same factor for project A, confirming the conclusion reached in Section I.4.

I.6 PAYBACK PERIOD

The payback period referred to in most proposals is the reciprocal of the initial rate of return and is usually referred to as the *simple* payback period. However, just as the actual rate of return differs from the simple rate (and is usually *lower*), the actual or *discount payback period* is different from, and usually *longer* than, the simple one. This period is, logically, the period of time required for the accumulated net savings to equal the initial investment, with all figures expressed in present value dollars. To illustrate, return to the example given in Section I.4.

1. *Proposal A*. As in the IRR calculation, a present worth factor of \$10,000/\$2000, or 5, is needed at a 12% discount rate. From Table I.1*a*, find this to be about 8.1 years. This compares to a simple payback period of 5 years. Note that this is *not* the reciprocal of IRR.
2. *Proposal B*. Here a present worth factor of \$15,000/\$3200, or 4.7, is needed. At a 12% discount rate, from Table I.1*a*, this is about 7.3 years. This compares to a simple payback period of 4.7 years.

Note from these results the very important fact that a shorter payback period does not necessarily indicate a more cost-effective investment. Here, proposal A has a better return precisely because it yields good savings for a longer period. Summing up the results of the simple study, we have:

	Project A	Project B
Initial rate of return	20%	21.3%
Internal rate of return	15.1%	13.7%
Simple payback period	5 years	4.7 years
Discounted payback period	8.1 years	7.3 years

This shows very clearly that although initial rate of return and simple payback are indications of a proposal's value, they are useless in comparative studies.

TABLE I.1*a* Present Value of *n* Future Payments Beginning at the End of the First Period

	Interest (Discount) Rate per Period						
n	*6%*	*8%*	*10%*	*12%*	*15%*	*20%*	*25%*
1	0.94	0.93	0.91	0.89	0.87	0.83	0.80
2	1.83	1.78	1.74	1.69	1.63	1.53	1.44
3	2.67	2.58	2.49	2.40	2.28	2.11	1.95
4	3.47	3.31	3.17	3.04	2.86	2.59	2.36
5	4.21	3.99	3.79	3.61	3.35	2.99	2.69
6	4.92	4.62	4.36	4.11	3.78	3.33	2.95
7	5.58	5.21	4.87	4.56	4.16	3.61	3.16
8	6.21	5.75	5.34	4.97	4.49	3.84	3.33
9	6.80	6.25	5.76	5.33	4.77	4.03	3.46
10	7.36	6.71	6.15	5.65	5.02	4.19	3.57
11	7.89	7.14	6.50	5.94	5.23	4.33	3.66
12	8.83	7.54	6.81	6.19	5.42	4.44	3.73
13	8.85	7.90	7.10	6.42	5.58	4.53	3.78
14	9.30	8.24	7.37	6.63	5.72	4.61	3.82
15	9.71	8.56	7.61	6.81	5.85	4.68	3.86
16	10.11	8.85	7.82	6.97	5.95	4.73	3.89
17	10.48	9.12	8.02	7.12	6.05	4.78	3.91
18	10.83	9.37	8.20	7.25	6.13	4.81	3.93
19	11.16	9.60	8.37	7.37	6.20	4.84	3.94
20	11.47	9.82	8.51	7.47	6.26	4.87	3.95
21	11.76	10.02	8.65	7.56	6.31	4.89	3.96
22	12.04	10.20	8.77	7.65	6.36	4.91	3.97
23	12.30	10.37	8.88	7.72	6.40	4.93	3.98
24	12.55	10.53	8.99	7.78	6.43	4.94	3.98
25	12.78	10.68	9.08	7.84	6.46	4.95	3.99

TABLE I.1*b* Present Value of *n* Future Payments Beginning at the End of the First Period and Escalating at *K* per Period—8% Discount

	Interest (Discount) Rate per Period 8%			
	Annual (Periodic) Escalation Rate K			
n	*1.03*	*1.05*	*1.08*	*1.10*
1	0.95	0.97	1.00	1.02
2	1.86	1.92	2.00	2.06
3	2.73	2.84	3.00	3.11
4	3.56	3.73	4.00	4.19
5	4.35	4.60	5.00	5.28
6	5.10	5.44	6.00	6.40
7	5.82	6.26	7.00	7.54
8	6.50	7.06	8.00	8.70
9	7.15	7.84	9.00	9.88
10	7.78	8.59	10.00	11.08
11	8.37	9.33	11.00	12.30
12	8.94	10.04	12.00	13.55
13	9.48	10.73	13.00	14.82
14	9.99	11.41	14.00	16.11
15	10.48	12.06	15.00	17.43
16	10.95	12.70	16.00	18.77
17	11.40	13.32	17.00	20.13
18	11.82	13.92	18.00	21.53
19	12.23	14.51	19.00	22.94
20	12.62	15.08	20.00	24.39
21	12.99	15.63	21.00	25.86
22	13.34	16.17	22.00	27.35
23	13.68	16.69	23.00	28.88
24	14.00	17.20	24.00	30.43
25	14.30	17.69	25.00	32.01

TABLE I.1*c* Present Value of *n* Future Payments Beginning at the End of the First Period and Escalating at *K* per Period—10% Discount

	Interest (Discount) Rate per Period 10%			
	Annual (Periodic) Escalation Rate K			
n	*1.03*	*1.05*	*1.08*	*1.10*
1	0.94	0.96	0.98	1.00
2	1.81	1.87	1.95	2.00
3	2.63	2.74	2.89	3.00
4	3.40	3.57	3.82	4.00
5	4.12	4.36	4.73	5.00
6	4.80	5.12	5.63	6.00
7	5.43	5.84	6.51	7.00
8	6.02	6.53	7.37	8.00
9	6.57	7.18	8.22	9.00
10	7.09	7.81	9.05	10.00
11	7.58	8.41	9.87	11.00
12	8.03	8.98	10.67	12.00
13	8.46	9.53	11.46	13.00
14	8.85	10.05	12.23	14.00
15	9.23	10.55	12.99	15.00
16	9.58	11.27	13.74	16.00
17	9.90	11.48	14.47	17.00
18	10.21	11.91	15.19	18.00
19	10.50	12.32	15.90	19.00
20	10.76	12.72	16.59	20.00
21	11.02	13.09	17.27	21.00
22	11.25	13.45	17.94	22.00
23	11.47	13.80	18.59	23.00
24	11.68	14.12	19.24	24.00
25	11.87	14.44	19.87	25.00

TABLE I.1*d* Present Value of *n* Future Payments Beginning at the End of the First Period and Escalating at *K* per Period—12% Discount

	Interest (Discount) Rate per Period 12%			
	Annual (Periodic) Escalation Rate K			
n	*1.03*	*1.05*	*1.08*	*1.10*
1	.92	.94	.96	.98
2	1.77	1.82	1.89	1.95
3	2.54	2.64	2.79	2.89
4	3.26	3.41	3.66	3.82
5	3.92	4.14	4.49	4.74
6	4.52	4.82	5.29	5.64
7	5.08	5.45	6.07	6.52
8	5.59	6.05	6.82	7.38
9	6.06	6.61	7.54	8.23
10	6.49	7.13	8.23	9.07
11	6.89	7.63	8.90	9.89
12	7.26	8.09	9.55	10.69
13	7.59	8.52	10.17	11.49
14	7.90	8.92	10.77	12.26
15	8.19	9.30	11.35	13.03
16	8.45	9.66	11.91	13.78
17	8.69	9.99	12.45	14.51
18	8.91	10.31	12.97	15.23
19	9.11	10.60	13.47	15.95
20	9.30	10.87	13.95	16.64
21	9.47	11.13	14.42	17.34
22	9.63	11.37	14.87	18.00
23	9.78	11.60	15.30	18.66
24	9.91	11.81	15.72	19.31
25	10.04	12.01	16.12	19.95

References and Resources

AIA. 1977. *Life Cycle Cost Analysis—A Guide for Architects*. American Institute of Architects. Washington, DC.

ASHRAE. 2007. *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Applications*, Chapter 36. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. Atlanta, GA.

Fuller, S. K. and S. R. Peterson. 1995. *Life-Cycle Costing Manual for the Federal Energy Management Program*. National Institute of Standards and Technology. Gaithersburg, MD. http://fire.nist.gov/bfrlpubs/

IESNA. 2000. *Lighting Handbook*, 9th ed., Chapter 25. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America. New York.

Marshall, H. E. and R. T. Ruegg. 1980a. *Energy Conservation in Buildings: An Economics Guidebook for Investment Decision*. National Bureau of Standards Handbook 132. NBS. Washington, DC.

Marshall, H. E. and R. T. Ruegg. 1980b. *Simplified Energy Design Economics*. National Bureau of Standards Special Publication 544. NBS. Washington, DC.

Ruegg, R. T., et al. 1978. *Life Cycle Costing*. National Bureau of Standards Publication 113. NBS. Washington, DC.

APPENDIX J

Lamp Data

This appendix provides technical information on incandescent lamps.

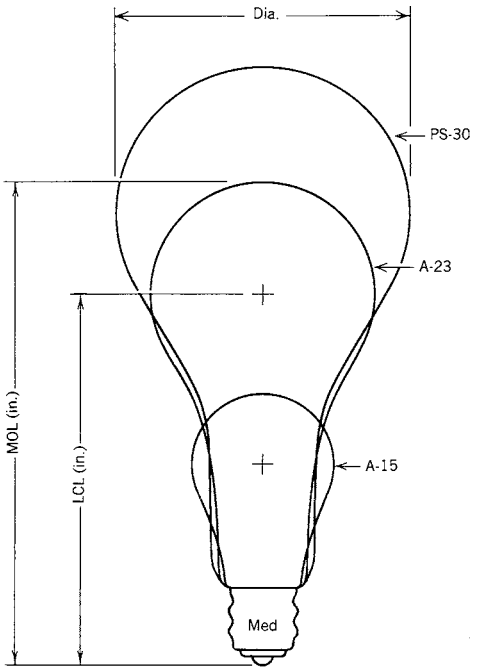
J.1 INCANDESCENT LAMP CHARACTERISTICS

TABLE J.1 Typical Incandescent Lamp Data (Listing a Few of the Many Sizes and Types of 115-, 120-, and 125-V Lamps)

Lamp Watts[a]	Average Rated Life (h)	Approximate Color Temperature[b] (K)	Initial Lumens	Lumens per Watt[c]	Shape of Bulb[d]	Base	Description
15	2,500	—	126	8.4	A-15	Med	Long life
25	1,000	—	240	9.6	A-19	Med	Rough service
25	2,500	2,500	232	9.3	A-19	Med	—
40	1,500	—	495	12.4	A-19	Med	—
50	2,000	—	525	10.5	ER30	Med	—
60	1,000	2,800	890	14.8	A-19	Med	—
60	2,500	—	800	13.3	A-19	Med	Long life
75	750	—	1,220	16.3	A-19	Med	—
100	750	2,870	1,650	16.5	A-19	Med	—
100	750	—	1,750	17.5	A-21	Med	—
100	2,500	—	1,500	15.0	A-19	Med	Long life
135	750	—	2,425	18.0	A-21	Med	Economy
150	750	2,900	2,810	18.7	A-21	Med	—
150	750	—	2,600	17.3	PS-25	Med	—
200	750	2,930	4,000	20.0	A-23	Med	—
300	750	2,940	6,300	21.0	PS-25	Med	—
500	1,000	3,000	10,850	21.7	PS-25	Mogul	—

[a]Figures in this column designate the input watts thus: 60 = 60 W.
[b]See Section 11.34.
[c]Luminous efficacy, in lumens per watt, increases with filament temperature and, therefore, with wattage.
[d]See Fig. 12.8.

J.2 INCANDESCENT LAMP DIMENSIONAL DATA



Bulb diameter is given in $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (0.3 cm) Example: An A-19 bulb has a diameter of $\frac{19}{8}$ in. or $2\frac{3}{8}$ in. (6 cm)

MOL: Maximum overall length: This figure refers to the maximum length of the bulb.

LCL: Light center length: This dimension, important when designing reflectors, is measured from the filament to a point that varies with base type.

	A – STANDARD SHAPE									PS – PEAR SHAPE							
WATTS	15	25	40	60	75	100	100	150	150	150	200	300	300	500	750	1000	1500
BULB	A–15	$A–19_1$	$A–19_2$	$A–19_3$	$A–19_3$	$A–19_3$	$A–21_1$	$A–21_2$	A–23	PS–25	PS–30	PS–30	PS–35	PS–40	PS–52	PS–52	PS–52
DIAMETER"	$1^{7}/_{8}$	$2^{3}/_{8}$	$2^{3}/_{8}$	$2^{3}/_{8}$	$2^{3}/_{8}$	$2^{3}/_{8}$	$2^{5}/_{8}$	$2^{5}/_{8}$	$2^{7}/_{8}$	$3^{1}/_{8}$	$3^{3}/_{4}$	$3^{3}/_{4}$	$4^{3}/_{8}$	5	$6^{1}/_{2}$	$6^{1}/_{2}$	$6^{1}/_{2}$
M.O.L."	$3^{1}/_{2}$	$3^{7}/_{8}$	$4^{1}/_{4}$	$4^{7}/_{16}$	$4^{7}/_{16}$	$4^{7}/_{16}$	$5^{1}/_{4}$	$5^{1}/_{2}$	$6^{3}/_{16}$	$6^{15}/_{16}$	$8^{1}/_{16}$	$8^{1}/_{16}$	$9^{3}/_{8}$	$9^{3}/_{4}$	13	13	13
L.C.L."	$2^{3}/_{8}$	$2^{1}/_{2}$	$2^{15}/_{16}$	$3^{1}/_{8}$	$3^{1}/_{8}$	$3^{1}/_{8}$	$3^{7}/_{8}$	4	$4^{5}/_{8}$	$5^{3}/_{16}$	6	6	7	7	$9^{1}/_{2}$	$9^{1}/_{2}$	$9^{1}/_{2}$
BASE	MED	MED	MED	MED	MED	MED	MED	MED	MED	MED	MED	MED	MOG	MOG	MOG	MOG	MOG
STANDARD FINISH	IF	IF	IF W	IF	IF	IF	IF	IF	CL IF	CL IF	IF	IF	IF	IF	CL IF	CL IF	CL IF

CL – CLEAR IF – INSIDE FROSTED

Fig. J.1 *Typical dimensional data for common general-service incandescent lamps.*

J.3 INCANDESCENT LAMP PERFORMANCE DATA

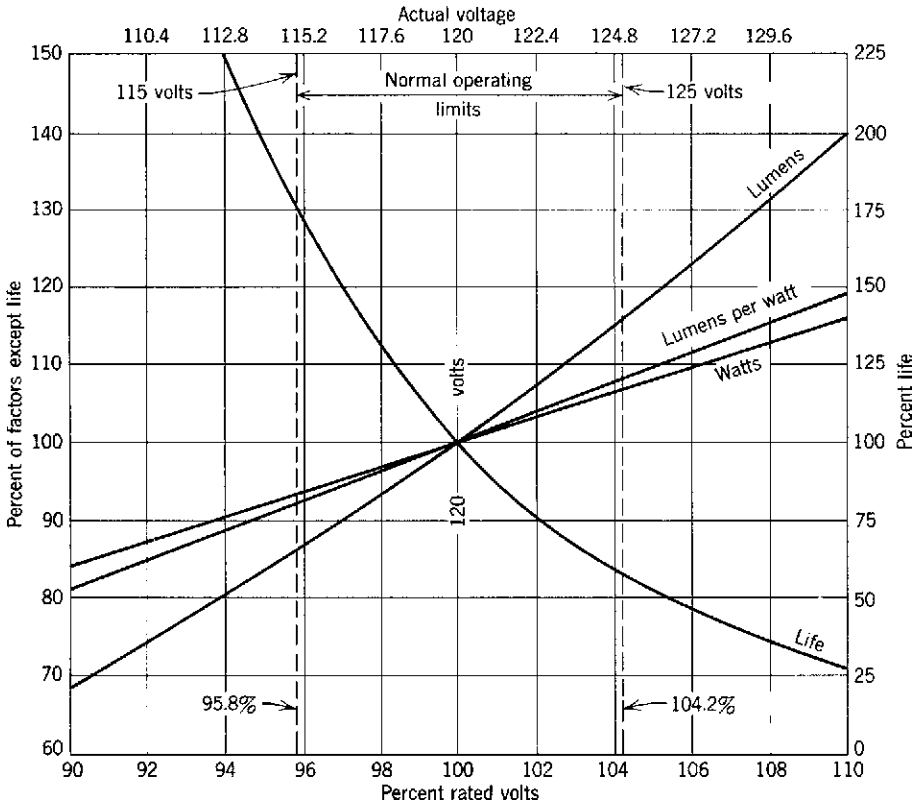


Fig. J.2 *Characteristics of a standard 120-V general-service incandescent lamp as a function of voltage.*

APPENDIX K

Sound Transmission Data for Walls

To use Appendix K:

1. Find the desired construction Type Code in Table K.1.
2. Find the desired STC corresponding to the selected construction Type Code.
3. Refer to Table K.3 for details of wall construction.
4. Refer to Table K.2 for wall thickness, weight, STC, fire rating, and the transmission losses at standard octave midpoints.

EXAMPLE

An interior masonry partition with an STC between 50 and 55 is desired. Of particular interest is the TL at 1000 Hz.

1. From Table K.1, find Type Code "c."
2. From Table K.1, note that constructions W6, W12b, W15b, and W22b are suitable for the proposed use.
3. From Table K.3, decide that construction W15b is most suitable for the proposed use.
4. From Table K.2, find that construction W15b has a transmission loss of 55 dB at 1000 Hz.

TABLE K.1 Sound Transmission Class: Walls

Type Code:

a. Wooden stud	**f. Plaster**	**j. Fiber board**
b. Metal stud	**g. Gypsum wallboard**	**k. Lead**
c. Masonry	**h. With resilient element**	**l. Gypsum core board**
d. Concrete	**i. Absorbent blankets or fill**	**m. Double wall**
e. Staggered stud		

STC	Type	Item No.	STC	Type	Item No.
63	d,f	W4	46	a,f	W30a
62[a]	c,f,j,m	W23	46	a,f	W31a
56	c	W7	46	a,f,k	W31c
56[a]	c,f	W8	46	a,e,g,i	W37
55[a]	b,g, i	W63	45	c,d	W10b
54[a]	c,f,m	W22b	45	a,f,i	W38
54	b,f,h	W52	45	b,f,h	W50a
53[a]	d,f	W2	45	g,l,m	W85a
53	c,f,h	W15b	44	c	W12a
52[a]	c,f	W6	44	a,e,g	W34a
51	b,f	W44a	44	a,e,g	W35a
51	b,g,h,i	W67	44	a,f,h	W40a
50	c,k	W12b	43	c,d	W10a
50	b,g,i	W60	43[a]	d,j,m	W21
50	g,i,l,m	W85b	43	a,e,f	W35a
49[a]	c,f,m	W22a	43	a,e,f	W36a
48	c,d	W9	43	b,f,k	W43b
48	a,e,f,i	W36b	42[a]	c,f	W5
48	b,f,k	W43c	42	a,f	W14a
47	d	W1	41	b,f	W43a
47	a,g,k	W28b	41	b,g	W55a
47	a,f,k	W31b	40	c,f	W13
47	a,g,h	W39a	40	a,g	W32a
46	c,f	W11a	39	a,g	W28a
46	c,f,h	W15a	36	g,l	W80

[a]Field measurement.
Source: All data extracted from *A Guide to Airborne, Impact and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multi-Family Dwellings*, HUD/FHA/NBS 1971. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, Washington, DC.

TABLE K.2 Sound Transmission Loss: Walls

Designation	Thickness in. (mm)	Weight lb/ft² (kg/m²)	*Transmission Loss (dB) at frequency* 125	250	500	1K	2K	4K	STC	Fire Rating (hr)
W1	3 (76)	39 (190)	35	40	44	52	58	64.5	47	½
W2	7 (178)	80 (390)	39	42	50	58	64	—	53	3
W4	≈ 16 (406)	184 (898)	50	54	59	65	71	68	63	4+
W5	5½ (140)	55 (268)	34	34	41	50	66	—	42	2.5
W6	10 (254)	100 (488)	41	43	49	55	57	—	52	4+
W7	12 (305)	121 (590)	45	45	53	58	60	61	56	4+
W8	25 (635)	280 (1366)	50	53	52	58	61	—	56	4+
W9	12 (305)	79 (386)	46.5	44	46	52	54	56	48	4
W10a	6 (152)	34 (166)	32	33	40	47	51	48	43	1
W10b	6 (152)	34 (166)	37	36	42	49	55	58	45	1
W11a	5¼ (133)	35.8 (175)	36	37	44	51	55	62	46	2
W12a	3¾ (133)	26.1 (127)	40	40	40	48	55	56	44	1.5
W12b	5 (127)	31 (151)	41	46	46	56	63	67	50	1.5
W13	4 (102)	21.5 (105)	39	34	38	43	48	46	40	3
W14a	5 (127)	23.4 (114)	37	42	39	44	49	49	42	4
W15a	5 (127)	27 (132)	38	37	44	51	56	59	46	3
W15b	6 (152)	31 (151)	45	44	50	55	56	59	53	4
W20	7 (178)	22.9 (112)	32	46	49	53	58	66	52	3
W21	10¼ (260)	37 (181)	41	42	46	51	52	—	43	Not available
W22a	12 (305)	100 (488)	37	41	48	60	60.5	—	49	4+
W22b	12 (305)	100 (488)	40	44	55	67.5	70	—	54	4+
W23	18 (457)	120 (586)	48	54	58	64	69	—	62	4+
W28a	5 (127)	6 (29)	21	28	35	42	45	41	39	0.5
W28b	≈ 5⅛ (130)	12 (58)	27	37	43	52	56	—	47	0.5
W30a	5¾ (146)	13.4 to 15.7 (65 to 77)	32	37	42	47	47	63	46	0.75
W31a	5¾ (146)	13.4 to 15.7 (65 to 77)	32	37	42	48	48	63	46	0.75
W31b	≈ 5⅞ (149)	—	33	41	45	52	55	65	47	0.75
W31c	≈ 5⅞ (149)	17–19 (83–93)	32.5	40	43	47	50	62	46	0.75
W32a	5½ (140)	8.2 (40)	27	31	39	45	52.5	48	40	1
W34a	5 (127)	6.2 (30)	36	36	40	47	52	45	44	0.5
W35a	6½ (165)	13.4 (65)	41	41	46	49	41	54	44	1.5
W35b	5¾ (146)	15.6 (76)	48	46	48	48	48	59	43	1
W36a	6¼ (159)	11.1 (54)	36	33	42	42	41	51	43	0.75
W36b	6¼ (159)	12.8 (62)	37	37	49	50	52	66	48	1
W37	5¾ (146)	13.8 (67)	39	40	42	47.5	55	51.5	46	0.5
W38	5⅜ (137)	14.2 (69)	39	45	48	50	44	54	45	1
W39a	6¼ (159)	6.7 (33)	30	40	46	50	49	49	47	1
W40a	≈ 6½ (165)	14.4 (70)	43	41	48	50	42	56	44	1
W43a	3⅜ (86)	12.3 (60)	27	37	43	46	39	47	41	0.75
W43b	3½ (89)	15.2 (74)	35	43	45	47	48	58	43	0.75
W43c	≈ 3½ (89)	18.2 (89)	36	45	47	50	53	61	48	0.75
W44a	5 (127)	15.7 (77)	34	38	47	50	52	58	51	1
W50a	5¼ (133)	13 (63)	35	46	48	51	48	43	45	0.75
W52	5 (127)	19 (93)	50	52	55	56	52	60	54	1
W55a	4⅞ (124)	6 (29)	29	36	40	46	40	46	41	1
W60	3½ (89)	5.4 (26)	34	40	47	50	53	54	50	1
W63	6⅛ (156)	11.5 (56)	36	47	51	57	57	62	55	2
W67	6½ (165)	11.3 (55)	41	46	49	51	50	60	51	2
W80	2¼ (57)	10.2 (50)	34	34	37	38	39	45	36	1
W85a	5⅛ (130)	14.6 (71)	36	35	45	51	53	57	45	3
W85b	6 (152)	12.8 (62)	37	37	54	56	56	62	50	3

Source: All data extracted from *A Guide to Airborne, Impact and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multi-Family Dwellings*, HUD/FHA/NBS 1971. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, Washington, DC. SI units added by text authors (not part of original source).

TABLE K.3 Construction Characteristics of Walls (for other data, see Table K.2)

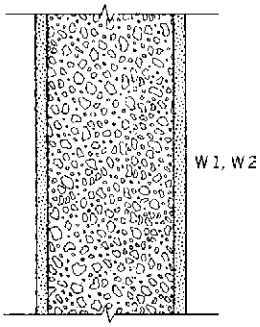
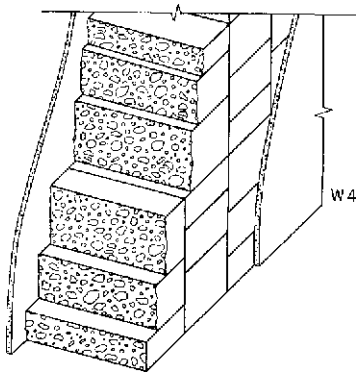
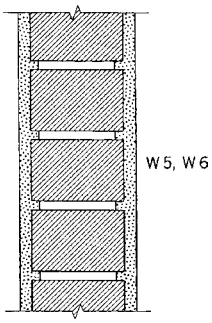
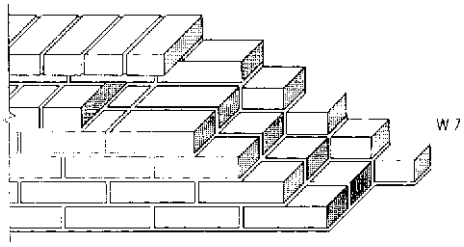
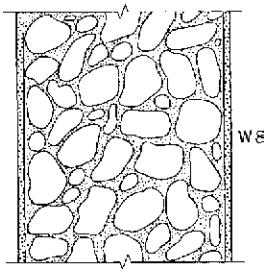
Designation	Description	Section Sketch
Solid Concrete		
W1	3-in.-thick (76-mm) solid concrete wall poured in situ in test opening. All surface cavities were sealed with thin mortar mix.	
W2	6-in.-thick (152-mm) concrete wall with ½-in.-thick (13-mm) layer of plaster on both sides.	
W4	Wall of 4, 6, and 8 × 8 × 16 in. (102, 152, 204 × 204 × 406 mm) sand and gravel aggregate solid concrete blocks; on each side, ¼- to ½-in.-thick (6- to 13-mm) layer of cement gypsum plaster and sand.	
W5	4 ½-in.-thick (114-mm) brick wall with ½-in.-thick (13-mm) layer of plaster on each side.	
W6	9-in.-thick (229-mm) brick wall with ½-in.-thick (13-mm) layer of plaster on each side.	
W7	12-in.-thick (305-mm) brick wall.	
W8	24-in.-thick (610 mm) stone wall with ½-in.-thick (13-mm) layer of plaster on both sides.	

TABLE K.3 Construction Characteristics of Walls (for other data, see Table K.2) (*Continued*)

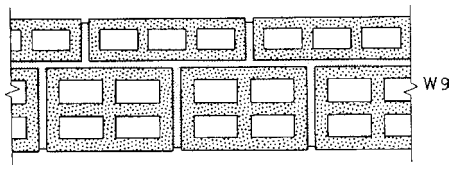
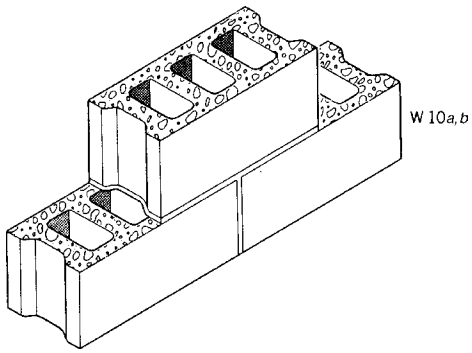
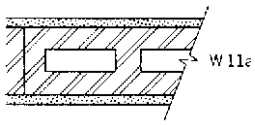
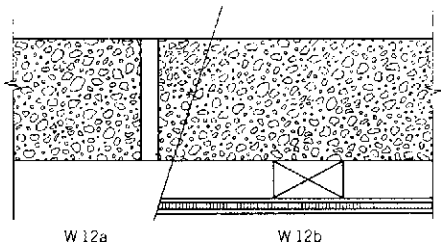
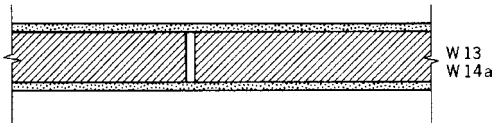
Designation	Description	Section Sketch
Hollow Concrete Block		
W9	12-in. (305-mm) wall made of hollow 8 × 8 × 12 in. (204 × 204 × 305 mm) and 8 × 4 × 16 in. (204 × 102 × 406 mm) concrete blocks.	
W10a	6-in. (152-mm) hollow concrete blocks constructed with vertical mortar joints staggered.	
W10b	Similar to W10a except wall painted.	
Cinder Block		
W11a	4 × 8 × 16-in. (102 × 204 × 406 mm) hollow cinder blocks; on each side, ⅝- in. (16 mm) of sanded gypsum plaster.	
Cement Block		
W12a	3⅜ × 7¾ × 13½-in. (92 × 197 × 343 mm) lightweight-aggregate cement blocks with ½-in. (13 mm) mortar joints; three coats of masonry paint applied to each side of partition.	
W12b	Same as W12a, except that 1 × 2-in. (25 × 50 mm) furring strips were nailed vertically to partition on one side; 1/16-in. (1.5 mm) layer of lead, 3.94 lb/ft^2 (19.2 kg/m^2), nailed to furring strips, ¼-in. (6-mm) plywood-covered lead with joints caulked.	
Hollow Gypsum Block		
W13	3-in. (76-mm) hollow gypsum blocks cemented together with ⅜-in. (10-mm) mortar joints; on each side, ½-in. (13-mm) sanded gypsum plaster.	
W14a	4-in. (102-mm) hollow gypsum blocks cemented together with ⅜-in. (10-mm) mortar joints; on each side, ½-in. (13 mm) sanded gypsum plaster.	

TABLE K.3 Construction Characteristics of Walls (for other data, see Table K.2) (*Continued*)

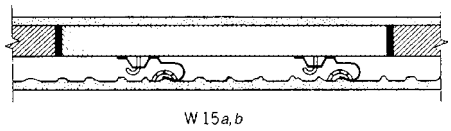
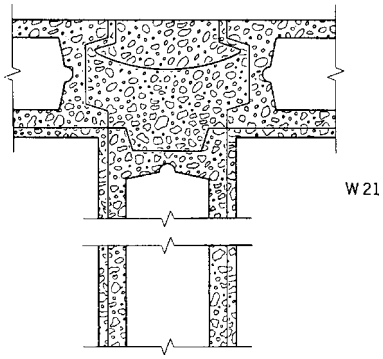
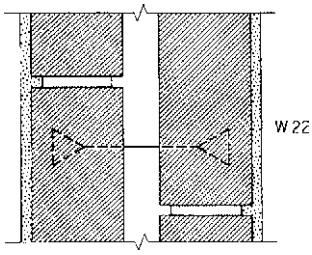
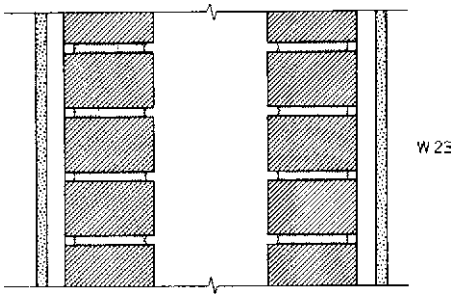
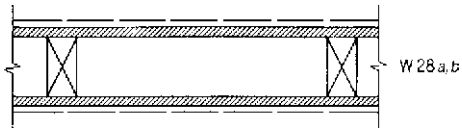
Designation	Description	Section Sketch
Hollow Gypsum Block, Resilient on One Side, Plaster on Both Sides		
W15a	3 × 12 × 30-in. (76 × 305 × 762 mm) hollow gypsum blocks with ½-in. (13-mm) mortar joints. On one side, 7/16-in. (11-mm) sanded gypsum plaster; on the other side, resilient clips, spaced 18 in. (457 mm) apart on centers vertically and 16 in. (406 mm) apart on centers horizontally, held to ¾-in. (19-mm) metal channels 16 in. (406 mm) on centers, to which expanded metal lath was wire-tied; 1 1/16-in. (27-mm) sanded gypsum plaster; 1/16-in. (1.5-mm) white-coat finish applied to both sides.	 W 15*a, b*
W15b	Similar to W15a except that 4 × 12 × 30-in. (102 × 305 × 762 mm) gypsum blocks were used.	
Hollow Concrete		
W21	Precast concrete hollow wall panels with in situ concrete posts and beams. Panels have 1½-in.-thick (38-mm) concrete shells with 6¼-in. (159-mm) air space between them. Layer of fiberboard ½ in. (13 mm) thick is adhered to the exposed surfaces of the panel.	 W 21
Double Walls		
W22a	Double wall with 4½-in.-thick (114-mm) brick leaves separated by a 2-in. (50-mm) cavity (wire ties between leaves); ½-in. (13-mm) plaster on exposed sides.	 W 22
W22b	Similar to W22a but no wire ties between the leaves.	
W23	Double wall with 4½-in.-thick (114-mm) brick leaves, 6-in. (152-mm) cavity (no ties); on exposed sides, ½-in. (13-mm) plaster on 1-in.-thick (25-mm) wood-wool slabs mortared to the brick walls.	 W 23
Wood Stud Walls		
W28a	2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. on (406 mm) centers, ½-in. (13-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed to each side. All joints taped and finished.	 W 28*a, b*
W28b	Similar to W28a except that a layer of lead, 2.95 lb/ft^2 (14.4 kg/m^2), was laminated to each side of the panel.	

TABLE K.3 Construction Characteristics of Walls (for other data, see Table K.2) (*Continued*)

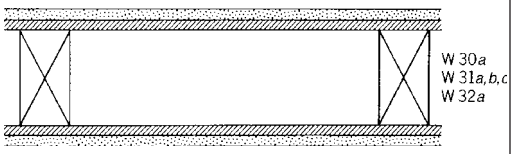
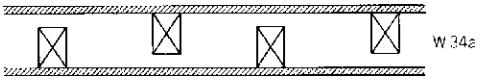
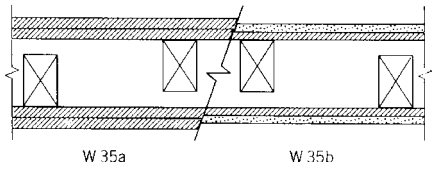
Designation	Description	Section Sketch
W30a	2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on centers, attached to 2 × 4 in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden floor and ceiling plates, ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum lath nailed to studs on both sides, ½-in. (13-mm) sanded plaster with white-coat finish.	
W31a	2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on centers, ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum lath nailed to studs on both sides, ½-in. (13-mm) sanded plaster with white-coat finish.	
W31b	Similar to W31a except that a 0.065-in.-thick (1.7-mm) layer of lead weighing 3.85 lb/ft^2 (18.8 kg/m^2) was laminated to each side of the panel.	
W31c	Similar to W31a except that a 0.13-in.-thick (3.3-mm) layer of lead weighing 7.9 lb/ft^2 (38.5 kg/m^2) was laminated to one side of the panel.	
W32a	2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on centers; on each side, two layers of ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum wallboard were cemented together; joints in exposed surfaces taped and finished.	
Staggered Wood Stud Walls		
W34a	2 × 3-in. (50 × 75 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on centers, staggered 8 in. (203 mm) on centers, attached to 2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden plates at ceiling and floor; ½-in. (13-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed 7 in. (178 mm) on centers on both sides to studs. All joints taped and finished.	
W35a	2 × 3-in. (50 × 75 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on centers, staggered 8 in. (203 mm) on centers (attached to 2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden plates at floor and ceiling); two layers of ⅝-in. (16-mm) tapered-edge gypsum wallboard, first layer nailed 7 in. (178 mm) on centers, second layer nailed 16 in. (406 mm) on centers. All exposed joints taped and finished.	
W35b	Similar to W35a except that the wall was constructed with ⅜-in. (10-mm) perforated gypsum lath and ½-in. (13-mm) sanded gypsum plaster with white-coat finish.	

TABLE K.3 Construction Characteristics of Walls (for other data, see Table K.2) (*Continued*)

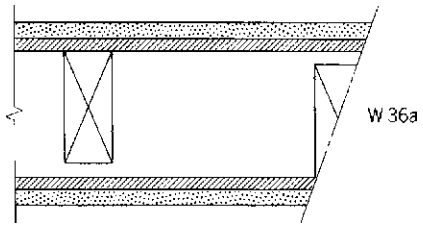
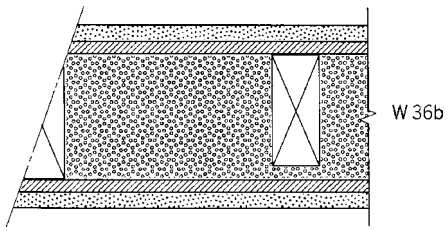
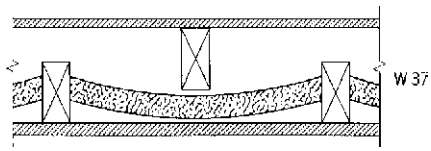
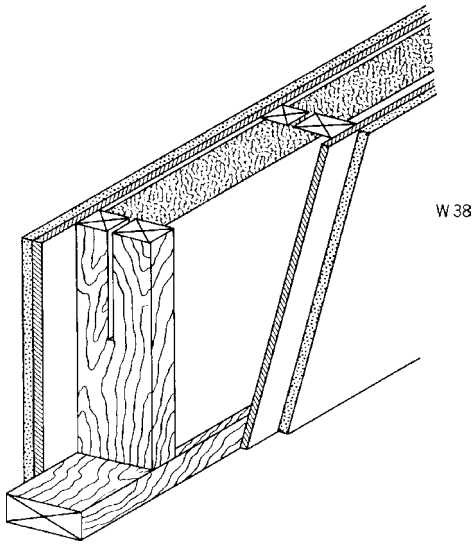
Designation	Description	Section Sketch
W36a	2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on center, staggered 8 in. (203 mm) on center and offset ½ in. (13 mm). On each side, ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum lath nailed to studs, ½-in. (13-mm) gypsum vermiculite plaster, machine applied, and a hand-applied white-coat finish.	
W36b	Same as W36a except that the space between the studs contained vermiculite fill with a density of 6.3 lb/ft^3 (101 kg/m^3).	
W37	2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on center, staggered 8 in. (203 mm) on center, attached to a 2 × 4¾-in. (50 × 120 mm) wooden floor and ceiling plates; ½-in. (13-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed on both sides to studs, 0.9-in. (23-mm) wood-fiber wool blanket stapled on the inside of one side of the wall. All joints taped and finished.	
Slotted Wood Studs		
W38	2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) slotted wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on centers, attached to 2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden floor and ceiling plates; ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum lath nailed 7 in. (178 mm) on center to studs, ½-in. (13-mm) gypsum plaster with white-coat finish applied to both sides. 3-in. (75-mm) mineral fiber batts stapled between studs.	

TABLE K.3 Construction Characteristics of Walls (for other data, see Table K.2) (*Continued*)

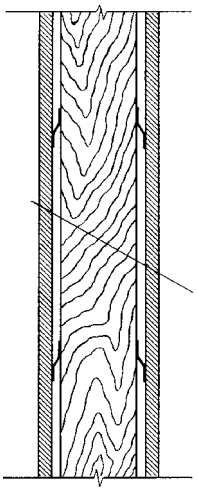
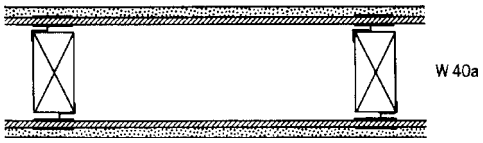
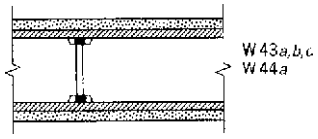
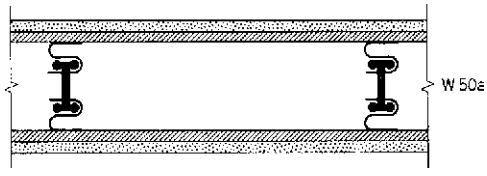
Designation	Description	Section Sketch
Wood Studs: Resilient Mounting		
W39a	2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on centers, attached to 2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden floor and ceiling plates; resilient channels nailed horizontally to both sides of studs 24 in. (610 mm) on center, ⅝-in. (16-mm) gypsum wallboard screwed 12 in. (305 mm) on center to channels. All joints taped and finished.	
W40a	2 × 4-in. (50 × 100 mm) wooden studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on center; resilient clips, nailed to studs on both sides, held ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum lath, ½-in. (13-mm) sanded gypsum plaster with white-coat finish.	
Steel Truss Stud Wall		
W43a	1⅝-in. (41-mm) steel truss studs; ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum lath, ½-in. (13-mm) plaster on both sides.	
W43b	Similar to W43a except that a layer of lead, 2.95 lb/ft^2 (14.4 kg/m^2), was laminated to one side of the partition.	
W43c	Similar to W43a except that a layer of lead, 2.95 lb/ft^2 (14.4 kg/m^2), was laminated to each side of the partition.	
W44a	3¼-in. (83-mm) steel truss studs, 24 in. (610 mm) on center, attached to metal floor and ceiling tracks; on both sides, ⅜-in. (10-mm) perforated gypsum lath attached with wire clips wire-tied to studs, ½-in. (13-mm) sanded gypsum plaster.	
Steel Truss Studs; Resilient Mounting		
W50a	2½-in. (64-mm) steel truss studs 16 in. (406 mm) on center, ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum lath attached with resilient clips to studs, ½-in. (13-mm) plaster applied to both sides.	

TABLE K.3 Construction Characteristics of Walls (for other data, see Table K.2) (*Continued*)

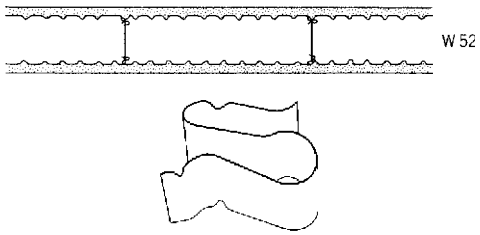
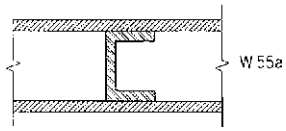
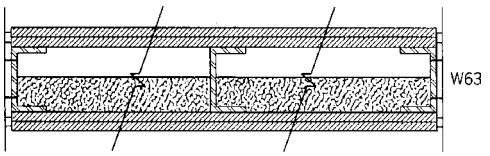
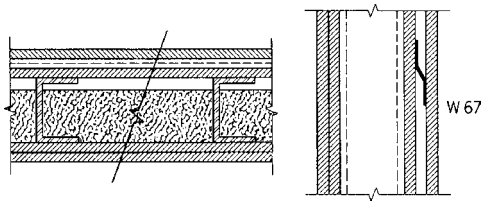
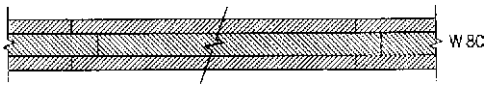
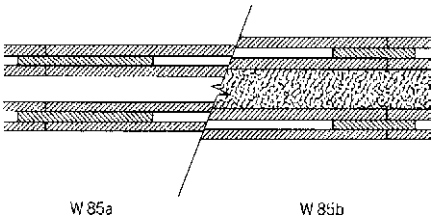
Designation	Description	Section Sketch
W52	3¼-in. (83-mm) steel truss studs, 16 in. (406 mm) on center; on each side, resilient clips fastened 16 in. (406 mm) on center to studs, ¼-in. (6-mm) metal rod wire-tied to clips, diamond mesh metal lath wire-tied to metal rods, ¾-in. (19-mm) sanded gypsum plaster.	
Metal Channel Stud Wall		
W55a	3⅝-in. (92-mm) metal channel studs, 24 in. (610 mm) on center, set into 3⅝-in. (92-mm) metal floor and ceiling runners; ⅝-in. (16-mm) gypsum wallboard screwed to studs on both sides. All joints taped and finished.	
W60	2½-in. (64-mm) metal channel studs, 24 in. (610 mm) on center, set in 2½-in. (64-mm) metal floor and ceiling runners; ½-in. (13-mm) vinyl-coated gypsum wallboard adhesively attached and screwed to studs on both sides. All joints sealed with caulking compound. Aluminum batten strips screwed 12 in. (305 mm) on center to gypsum board at joints; top and bottom finished with aluminum ceiling and base trim. 2-in. (50-mm) mineral fiber blankets hung between studs.	
W63	3⅝-in. (92-mm) metal channel studs, 24 in. (610 mm) on center, set into 3⅝-in. (92-mm) metal runners, which were attached through continuous beads of nonsetting resilient caulking compound to floor and ceiling, respectively. Two layers of ⅝-in. (16-mm) gypsum wallboard attached to both sides of studs. First layer screwed 8 in. (203 mm) on center at joints and 12 in. (305 mm) on center in field; second layer laminated and screwed 24 in. (610 mm) on center to first layer, with joints staggered 24 in. (610 mm). 1½-in.-thick (38 mm) mineral fiber felt, 3 lb/ft^3 (48 kg/m^3), stapled between studs. All exposed joints taped and finished. The ¼-in. (6-mm) clearance around the perimeter closed with a nonsetting resilient caulking compound.	
W67	3⅝-in. (92-mm) metal channel studs, 24 in. (610 mm) on center, set in 3⅝-in. (92-mm) metal floor and ceiling runners; ⅝-in. (16-mm) gypsum wallboard screwed to studs on both sides. On one side, resilient channels screwed horizontally, 24 in. (610 mm) on center to inner layer; ⅝-in. (16-mm) gypsum wallboard screwed to channels. On the other side, ⅝-in. (16-mm) gypsum wallboard laminated directly to inner layer. 3-in. (75-mm) mineral fiber blankets hung between studs. All exposed joints taped and finished.	

TABLE K.3 Construction Characteristics of Walls (for other data, see Table K.2) (*Continued*)

Designation	Description	Section Sketch
Gypsum Partitions		
W80	24-in.-wide (610-mm) panels constructed of 1 × 24-in. (25 × 610 mm) gypsum core board offset 1½ in. (38 mm) at edges to form tongue-and-groove edge; ⅝-in. (16-mm) vinyl-faced gypsum wallboard laminated to both sides of core board. Panels inserted into two-piece metal floor and ceiling tracks. Gypsum-to-gypsum screws at ¼ and ½ points along vertical edges of face boards.	
W85a	Double wall with 1⅜-in. (35-mm) air space. Each leaf consisted of 24-in.-wide (610-mm) panels of ⅝-in. (16-mm) gypsum core board strips, 7½ and 4⅜ in. (191 and 111 mm) wide, offset 1½ in. (38 mm) at edges to form tongue and groove; ⅝-in. (16-mm), vinyl-faced, gypsum wallboard laminated to both sides of core board strips. Panels screwed 12 in. (305 mm) on center to 1¼ × 1-in. (32 × 25 mm) angle floor and ceiling runners.	
W85b	Similar to W85a except that space between leaves was 2⅛ in. (54 mm) and contained 2-in. (50-mm) mineral fiber blankets stapled to one leaf. ¼-in. (6-mm) perimeter clearance closed with a nonsetting resilient caulking compound. Vertical face layer joints sealed with joint compound.	

Source: All data extracted from *A Guide to Airborne, Impact and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multi-Family Dwellings*, HUD/FHA/NBS 1971. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, Washington, DC. SI units added by text authors (not part of original source).

APPENDIX L

Sound Transmission and Impact Insulation Data for Floor/Ceiling Constructions

To use Appendix L:

1. Find the desired construction Type Code in Table L.1 or L.2. Table L.1 lists the constructions by sound transmission class (STC). Table L.2 lists the constructions by impact insulation class (IIC).
2. Find desired STC/IIC ratings corresponding to the selected Type Code.
3. Refer to Table L.4 for details of construction.
4. Refer to Table L.3 for thickness, weight, STC, IIC, fire rating, and transmission loss at standard octave midpoints.

EXAMPLE

A standard (simple) wooden joist floor-ceiling construction is required with a minimum IIC of 55. Any STC above 35 is acceptable.

1. Since IIC is the determining factor, refer to Table L.2. The basic Type Code is "a."
2. From Table L.2, note that none of the listed "a" constructions gives an IIC of 55. However, from Section 19.24, note that the addition of carpeting will add 10 to 27 points to the IIC, making items F34, F38a, F39a, and F30 all suitable. This approach avoids special and resilient constructions because of the requirement for standard (simple) construction.
3. From Table L.4, select construction F30 as being most appropriate for the application of carpeting.
4. From Table L.3 find (without carpet): thickness 9½ in. (240 mm), STC 34, IIC 32 (+ carpet), fire rating ¼ hour. With high-pile carpeting on a foam rubber pad, this construction will have an IIC > 55, STC > 35.

TABLE L.1 Sound Transmission Class: Floor/Ceiling Constructions

Type Code							
a. Wooden joist			**f. With resilient elements**				
b. Metal joist			**h. With carpeting**				
c. Concrete or masonry			**i. With absorbent blankets**				
d. Plaster ceiling			**j. With separate ceiling joists**				
e. Gypsum board ceiling							
STC	**IIC**	**Type**	**Item No.**	**STC**	**IIC**	**Type**	**Item No.**
55[a]	57[a]	c,d,f	F14	46[a]	42[a]	c,d	F23
54[a]	64[a]	c,d,f	F17b	45	44	a,e,f	F44
52	80	a,e,i,j	F48	44	42	c,f	F3-2d
51[a]	53[a]	c,d,f	F10	44	41	c	F3-1a
51[a]	48[a]	c,d	F7a	44	80	c,h	F2-1a
50[a]	53[a]	c,e,f	F25	44	29	c	F1-c
50[a]	51[a]	c,e	F27	44	25	c	F1a
50[a]	48[a]	c,d	F16	43[a]	43[a]	a,d	F32b
49[a]	48[a]	c,d	F9	42[a]	32[a]	c	F22
48[a]	47[a]	c,d	F12	40	32	a,e,i	F40a
48	33	b,c,d	F60a	39[a]	37[a]	a,e	F34
47	62	b,c,e	F58	37	33	a,e	F38a
47[a]	42[a]	c,d	F24	37	32	a,e	F39a
47	59	b,c,d,h	F57b	34[a]	32[a]	a,e	F30
47	37	b,c,d	F57a	29[a]	32[a]	a,e	F35a
46	74	b,c,d	F60c	29	56	a,e,h	F35b

[a]Field measurement.

TABLE L.2 Impact Insulation Class: Floor/Ceiling Constructions

Type Code							
a. Wooden joist			**f. With resilient ceiling element**				
b. Metal joist			**g. With resilient floor element**				
c. Concrete or masonry			**h. With carpeting**				
d. Plaster ceiling			**i. With absorbent blankets**				
e. Gypsum board ceiling			**j. With separate ceiling joists**				
IIC	**STC**	**Type**	**Item No.**	**IIC**	**STC**	**Type**	**Item No.**
80	52	a,e,h,i,j	F48	44	45	a,e,f	F44
80	44[b]	c,h	F2-1a	43[a]	43[a]	a,d,g	F32b
74	46	b,c,d,h	F60c	42[a]	47[a]	c,d	F24
64[a]	54[a]	c,d,g	F17b	42[a]	46[a]	c,d	F23
62	47	b,c,e,h	F58	42	44[b]	c,g	F3-2(d)
59	47[b]	b,c,d,h	F57b	41	44[b]	c	F3-1(a)
57[a]	55[a]	c,d,g	F14	37	47	b,c,d	F57a
56[a]	29[b]	a,e,h	F35b	37[a]	39[a]	a,e	F34
53[a]	51[a]	c,d,g	F10	33	48	b,c,d	F60a
53[a]	50[a]	c,e,g	F25	33	37	a,e	F38a
51[a]	50[a]	c,e	F27	32[a]	42[a]	c	F22
48[a]	51[a]	c,d	F7a	32	40	a,e,i	F40a
48[a]	50[a]	c,d	F16	32	37	a,e	F39a
48[a]	49[a]	c,d,g	F9	32[a]	34[a]	a,e	F30
47[a]	48[a]	c,d	F12	32[a]	29[a]	a,e	F35a
				29	44[b]	c	F1c
				25	44	c	F1a

[a]Field measurement.

[b]Estimated on the basis of similar structures.

TABLE L.3 Floor/Ceiling Sound Transmission and Construction Data[a]

Designation	Thickness in. (mm)	Weight lb/ft² (kg/m²)	*Transmission Loss (dB) at frequency*						STC	IIC	Fire Rating (hr)
			125	250	500	1K	2K	4K			
F1a	4 (102)	53 (259)	47	42	45	56	58	66	44	25	1
F7a	5¼ (134)	61 (298)	41	42	47	54	59	63	51	48	2
F9	6⅝ (168)	65 (317)	40	42	46	48	57	62	49	48	2
F10	8¼ (210)	90 (439)	38	43	47	53	60	—	51	53	2½
F12	10 (254)	62 (303)	38	40	44	51	56	59	48	47	3
F14	9½ (242)	83 (405)	38	44	52	55	60	—	55	57	3
F16	8⅛ (206)	65 (317)	40	42	46	52	58	—	50	48	2
F17b	9¼ (235)	57 (278)	38	46	52	59	64	—	54	64	2
F22	6¼ (158)	28 (137)	34	34	38	45	55	61	42	32	¾
F23	9½ (242)	45 (220)	33	37	43	52	58	62	46	42	¾
F24	10¼ (260)	65 (317)	34	37	43	52	57	—	47	42	¾
F25	10 (254)	45 (220)	30	38	46	58	64	—	50	53	¾
F27	7⅝ (194)	50 (244)	36	40	47	54	58	—	50	51	¾
F30	9½ (242)	7 (34)	19	24	31	35	45	—	34	32	¼
F32b	11 (280)	12 (59)	30	31	41	47	52	—	43	43	¾
F34	10¼ (260)	9.9 (48)	15	32	44	48	54	53	39	37	1
F35a	10 (254)	9.2 (45)	14	17	30	44	47	52	29	32	—
F38a	11¾ (298)	9 (44)	30	38	36	43	48	49	37	33	½
F39a	11⅞ (302)	9.5 (46)	22	32	36	45	49	56	37	32	1
F40a	11⅞ (302)	10 (49)	25	36	38	46	51	57	40	32	1
F44	10½ (266)	10.1 (49)	43	41	41	52	50	60	45	44	¾
F48	12⅜ (314)	10.7 (52)	35	42	52	56	69	74	52	80	¾
F57a	18⁹⁄₁₆ (472)	23.2 (113)	33	44	45	46	58	62	47	37	3
F58	21½ (546)	20.4 (100)	27	37	45	54	60	65	47	62	1
F60a	11 (280)	38.2 (186)	42	44	44	51	51	61	48	33	1½
F60c	11⅝ (295)	39 (190)	39	43	44	52	52	65	46	74	—

[a]Material extracted from *A Guide to Airborne, Impact and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, HUD/FHA/NBS, 1971. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, Washington, DC. SI units added by text authors (not part of original source).

TABLE L.4 Construction Characteristics of Floors (For Acoustic Data see Table L.3)

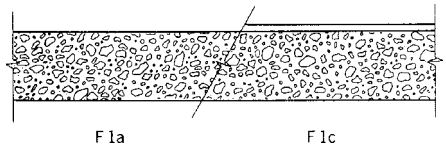
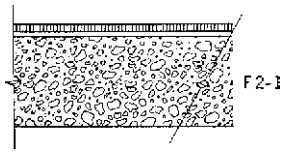
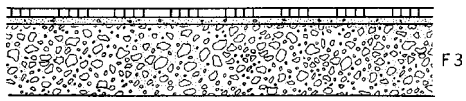
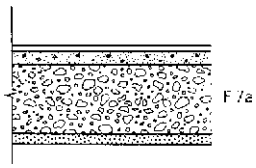
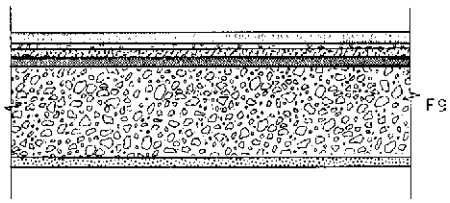
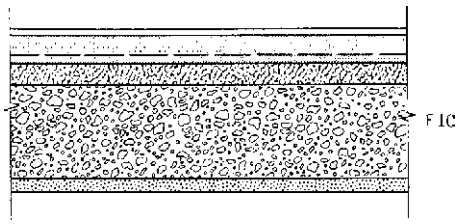
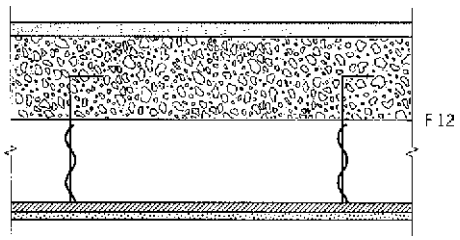
Code[a]	Description	Section Sketch
Reinforced Concrete Slab		
F1a	4-in.-thick (100-mm) reinforced concrete slab, isolated from support structure. Concrete was reinforced with 6 × 6-in. No. 6 AWG reinforcing mesh (150 × 150 at 4 mm) placed at the centerline horizontal plane of the slab. All surface cavities were sealed with a thin mortar mix.	
F1c	Same as F1a except that ⅛-in.-thick (3-mm) vinyl tile was adhered to concrete.	
Reinforced Concrete with Floor Coverings		
See also F1c above.		
F2-1(a)	4-in.-thick (100-mm) reinforced concrete slab with carpeting and pad. The carpeting was of ¼-in. (6-mm) wool loop pile with ⅛-in. (3-mm) woven jute backing, 0.49 lb/ft^2 (2.4 kg/m^2); the foam rubber pad was ¼ in. (6 mm) thick and weighed 0.53 lb/ft^2 (2.6 kg/m^2).	
F3-1(a)	4-in. (100-mm) reinforced concrete slab with ½ × 9 × 9-in. (13 × 230 × 230 mm) oak blocks, 1.8 lb/ft^2 (8.8 kg/m^2), set in mastic.	
F3-2(d)	4-in. (100-mm) concrete slab with ⅛-in. (3-mm) cork.	
F7a	4⅜-in.-thick (111-mm) reinforced concrete slab. On the floor side, ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) sand-cement screed with ⅛-in. (3-mm) linoleum floor covering. On the ceiling side, ⅜-in. (10-mm) layer of plaster.	
F9	4⅜-in.-thick (111-mm) reinforced concrete slab. On the floor side, ½-in.-thick (13-mm) layer of bitumen with ½-in.-thick (13-mm) soft wood fiberboard, which was covered with a thin layer of bitumen with sand and a ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) sand-cement screed. On the ceiling side, ⅜-in. (10-mm) layer of plaster.	
Reinforced Concrete Slab, Floating Floor		
F10	5-in.-thick (127-mm) reinforced concrete. On the floor side, 1½-in.-thick (38-mm) wire mesh reinforced sand-cement screed floating on ½-in.-thick (13-mm) bitumen-bonded, glass-wool quilt covered with building paper. On the screed, ½-in.-thick (13-mm) pitch-mastic with a linoleum floor covering. On the ceiling side,½-in. (13-mm) layer of plaster.	
F12	4⅜-in.-thick (111-mm) reinforced concrete slab. On the floor side, ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) sand-cement screed. On the ceiling side, brick wire mesh, suspended 4 in. (100 mm) with wire hangers, held ⅞-in. (22-mm) gypsum plaster.	

TABLE L.4 Construction Characteristics of Floors (For Acoustic Data see Table L.3) *(Continued)*

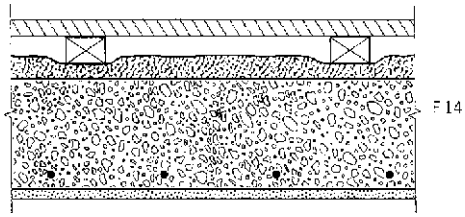
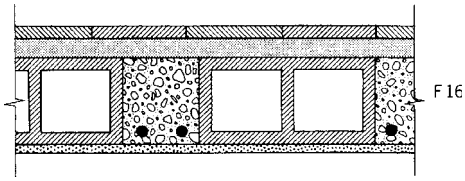
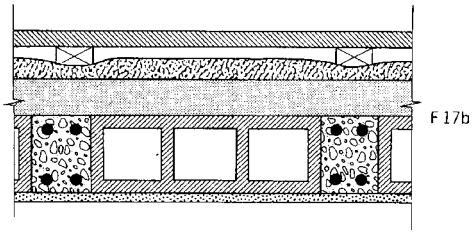
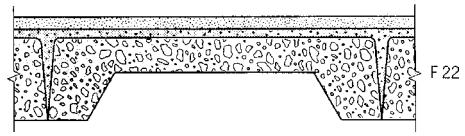
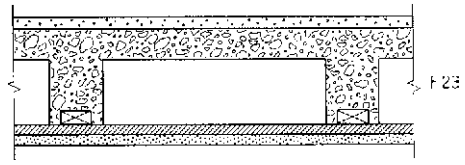
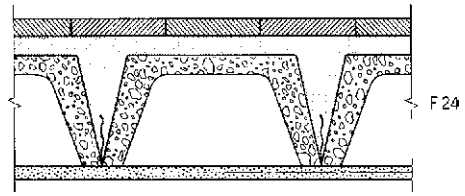
Code[a]	Description	Section Sketch
F14	6-in.-thick (152-mm) reinforced concrete slab. On the floor side, ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) tongue-and-groove wood flooring nailed to 1½ × 2-in. (38 × 50 mm) wooden battens, 16 in. (406 mm) on centers, floating on 1-in.-thick (25-mm) glass-wool quilt. On the ceiling side, ½-in. (13-mm) layer of plaster.	 F 14
Concrete with Hollow Blocks		
F16	5 × 10-in. (127 × 254-mm) hollow masonry blocks, 14 in. (356 mm) on center, with spaces between blocks filled with 5-in.-thick (127-mm) reinforced concrete. On the floor side, ⅞-in.-thick (22-mm) wood blocks adhered to 1½-in.-thick (38-mm) sand-cement screed. On the ceiling side, ¾-in. (19-mm) layer of plaster.	 F 16
F17b	4 × 12½-in. (100 × 318-mm) hollow masonry blocks, 15½ in. (394 mm) on center, with spaces between blocks filled with 4-in.-thick (100-mm) reinforced concrete. On the floor side, 2-in.-thick (50-mm) sand-cement screed; linoleum on 1-in.-thick (25-mm) wood flooring nailed to 1 × 2-in. (25 × 50-mm) wooden battens, spaced 15½ in. (394 mm) on centers, floating on a glass-wool quilt approximately 1 in. (25 mm) thick. On the ceiling side, ¾-in. (19-mm) layer of plaster.	 F 17b
Concrete Channel Slab		
F22	Prefabricated concrete channel slabs mortared together 20 in. (508 mm) on center. Each slab had a 3-in.-deep (76-mm) trapezoidal channel with bases of 11 and 14¾ in. (280 × 375 mm). On the floor side, ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) sand-cement finish.	 F 22
Ribbed Concrete		
F23	7¼-in. (184-mm) ribbed concrete floor. Ribs were 5¼ × 3¾ in. (133 × 95 mm), spaced 21 in. (533 mm) on center, with 1 × 2-in. (25 × 50 mm) wooden nailing strips cast into ends. On the floor side, the slab was 2 in. (50 mm) thick with a ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) sand-cement screed. On the ceiling side, ⅝-in.-thick (16-mm) wooden laths nailed to nailing strips held ⅝-in.-thick (16-mm) plaster.	 F 23
Concrete Channel Beam		
F24	7-in. (178-mm) precast trapezoidal concrete channel beams, 14 in. (356 mm) on center, with spaces between beams filled with sand-cement mix. On the floor side, 1½-in.-thick (38-mm) sand-cement screed with 1-in.-thick (25-mm) wood-block floor covering. On the ceiling side, approximately ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) layer of plaster on expanded metal lath.	 F 24

TABLE L.4 Construction Characteristics of Floors (For Acoustic Data see Table L.3) *(Continued)*

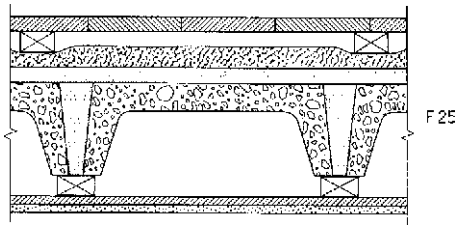
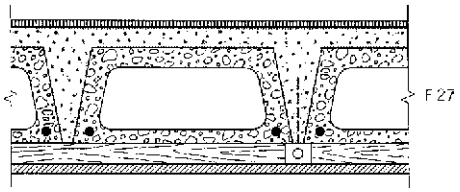
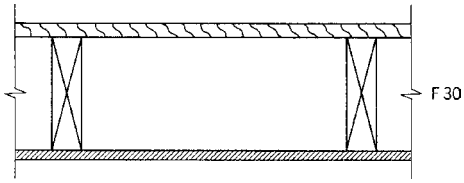
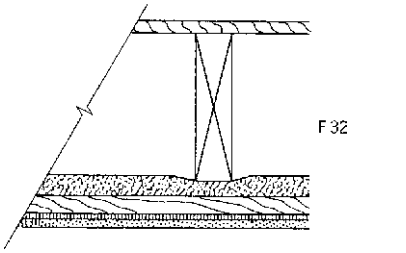
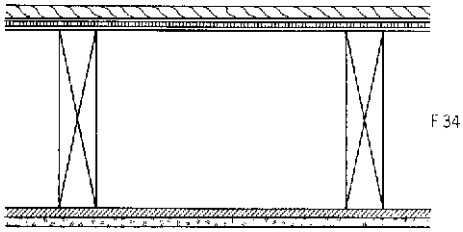
Code[a]	Description	Section Sketch
Precast Concrete Beam, Floating Floor		
F25	5-in. (127-mm) precast concrete channel beams, 14½ in. (368 mm) on center, with spaces between beams filled with a sand-cement mix. On the floor side, ⅞-in.-thick (22-mm) tongue-and-groove wood flooring nailed to 1 × 2-in. (25 × 50-mm) wooden battens, 20 in. (508 mm) on center, on approximately 1-in.-thick (25-mm) glass-wool quilt on ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) sand-cement screed. On the ceiling side, ⅛-in. (3-mm) layer of plaster on ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed to 1 × 2-in. (25 × 50-mm) wooden battens spaced 14½ in. (368 mm) on centers.	
Hollow Concrete Beam		
F27	5-in. (127-mm) precast trapezoidal hollow concrete beams, 14½ in. (368 mm) on center, with bases of 14 and 12½ in. (256 and 318 mm). Spaces between beams filled with sand-cement mix. On the floor side, 1-in.-thick (25-mm) sand-cement screed with 3/16-in. (5-mm) cork tile floor covering. On the ceiling side, ⅜-in.-thick (10-mm) gypsum wallboard attached to 1 × 2- in. (25 × 50-mm) wooden battens held by metal clips.	
Wooden Joist		
F30	2 × 8-in. (50 × 200-mm) wooden joists, 16 in. (406 mm) on center. On the floor side, ⅞-in. (22-mm) tongue-and-groove flooring nailed to joists; on the ceiling side, ⅜-in. (10-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed to joists with joints sealed.	
F32	2 × 8-in. (50 × 200-mm) wooden joists 18 in. (457 mm) on center. On the floor side, ⅞-in. (22-mm) tongue-and-groove wood flooring nailed to joists. On the ceiling side, 1-in. (25-mm) battens nailed through glass-wool quilt approximately 1 in. (25 mm) thick; ½-in. (13-mm) layer plaster on ¼-in.-thick (6-mm) wood lath.	
F34	2 × 8-in. (50 × 200-mm) wooden joists, 16 in. (406 mm) on center. On the floor side, ½-in.-thick (13-mm) C-D plywood nailed 8 in. (203 mm) on center to joists, 25/32-in.-thick (20-mm) hardwood flooring on plywood. On the ceiling side, ½-in.-thick (13-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed 6 in. (152 mm) on center to joists. All joints taped and finished; ceiling tile adhered to gypsum board.	

TABLE L.4 Construction Characteristics of Floors (For Acoustic Data see Table L.3) *(Continued)*

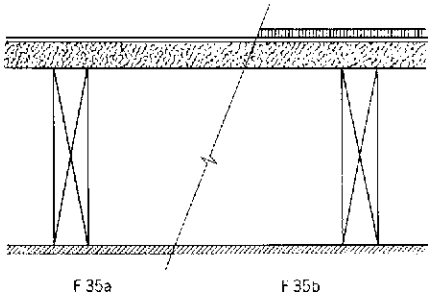
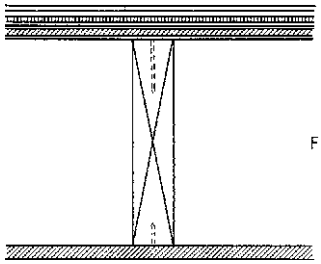
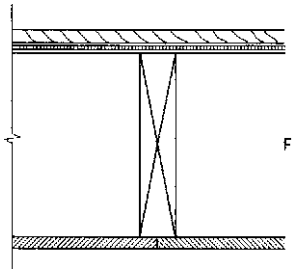
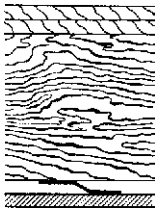
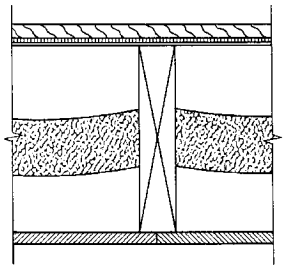
Code[a]	Description	Section Sketch
F35a	2 × 8-in. (50 × 200-mm) wooden joists, 16 in. (406 mm) on center. On the floor side, 1½-in.-thick (38-mm) tongue-and-groove wood fiberboard nailed to joists, vinyl tile floor covering. On the ceiling side, ½-in.-thick (13-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed 6 in. (152 mm) on center to joists. All joints taped and finished.	
F35b	Similar to F35a except that fiberboard was covered with carpet and pad.	F 35a F 35b
F38a	2 × 10-in. (50 × 250-mm) wooden floor joists spaced 16 in. (406 mm) on center. ⅝-in. (16-mm) fir plywood subfloor nailed to joists 8 in. (203 mm) on center; ½-in. (13-mm) plywood underlayment nailed to subfloor with joints staggered to miss joints of the subfloor; ⅛ × 9 × 9-in. (3 × 230 × 230-mm) vinyl asbestos tile glued to underlayment. On the ceiling side, ½-in. (13-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed 12 in. (305 mm) on center, with all joints and nailheads taped and finished.	 F 38a
F39a	2 × 10-in. (50 x 250-mm) wooden joists, 16 in. (406 mm) on center. On the floor side, ½-in.-thick (13-mm) plywood subfloor nailed 6 in. (152 mm) on center along edges and 10 in. (254 mm) on center in field, building paper underlayment, 25/32 × 2¼-in. (20 × 57-mm) oak wood flooring nailed at each joist intersection and midway between joists. On the ceiling side, ⅝-in.-thick (16-mm) gypsum wallboard, nailed 6 in. (152 mm) on center to joists. All joints taped and finished.	 F 39a
Wooden Joist, Resilient Ceiling		
F44	2 × 8-in. (50 × 200-mm) wooden joists 16 in. (406 mm) on center. On the floor side, ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) wood subfloor, layer of building paper, and ¾-in.-thick (19-mm) tongue-and-groove fir finish flooring. On the ceiling side, resilient runners bridged across joists and nailed 12 in. (305 mm) on center to joists; ⅝-in.-thick (16-mm) gypsum wallboard screwed to resilient runners. All joints taped and finished.	F 44 
Wooden Joist with Insulation		
F40a	2 × 10-in. (50 × 250-mm) wooden joists 16 in. (406 mm) on center with 3-in.-thick (76-mm) mineral fiber batts stapled between joists. On the floor side, ½-in.-thick (13-mm) plywood subfloor nailed 6 in. (152 mm) on center along edges and 10 in. (254 mm) on center in field, building paper underlayment, 25/32 × 2¼-in. (20 × 57-mm) oak wood flooring nailed at each joist intersection and midway between joists. On the ceiling side, ⅝-in.-thick (16-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed 6 in. (152 mm) on center to joists. All joints taped and finished.	 F 40a

TABLE L.4 Construction Characteristics of Floors (For Acoustic Data see Table L.3) *(Continued)*

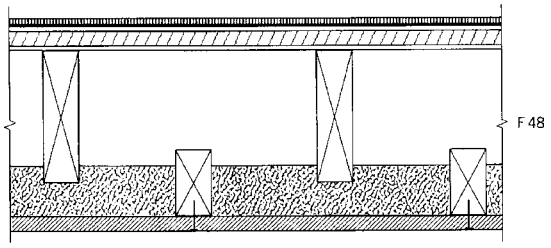
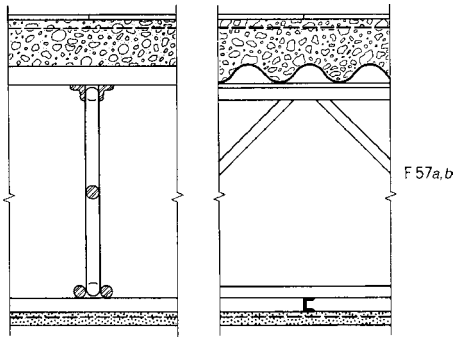
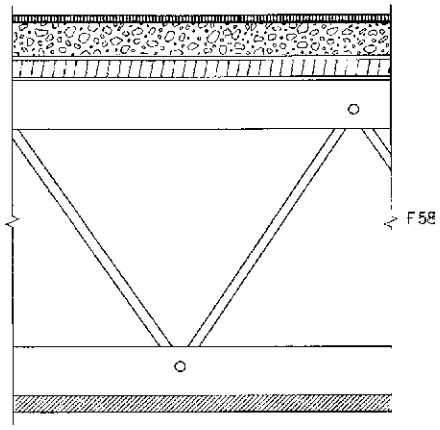
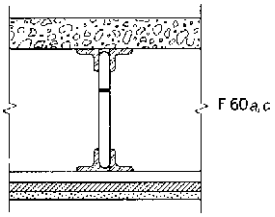
Code[a]	Description	Section Sketch
F48	2 × 8-in. (50 × 200-mm) wooden joists, 16 in. (406 mm) on center. On the floor side, 1⅛-in.-thick (29-mm) regular C-D rough plywood nailed 6 in. (152 mm) on center along periphery and 16 in. (406 mm) on center at other bearings, plywood covered with an all-hair pad at 40 oz/yd^2 (1356 g/m^2) and all-wool pile at 44 oz/yd^2 (1492 g/m^2) carpet. The total weight of the carpet was 4.14 lb/yd^2 (2.25 kg/m^2) and the total thickness was ⅜ in. (10 mm). On the ceiling side, 2 × 4-in. (50 × 100-mm) wooden joists, 16 in. (406 mm) on center, staggered 8 in. (203 mm) on center relative to the floor joists, 3-in.-thick (76-mm) fibered glass blankets stapled between ceiling joists, ⅝-in.-thick (16-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed to ceiling joists. All joints taped and finished; entire periphery of panel caulked and sealed. The ceiling was supported independently of the floor structure.	 F 48
Steel Joist with Concrete Floor		
F57a	2½-in.-thick (64-mm) perlite concrete, 72 lb/ft^3 (152 kg/m^3) on 28-gauge (0.39-mm) corrugated steel units supported by 14-in. (356-mm) steel bar joists; ⅛-in.-thick (3-mm) asphalt tile cemented to concrete. On the ceiling side, ¾-in. (9-mm) furring channels, 13½ in. (343 mm) on center, wire-tied to joists, 3.4 lb/yd^2 (1.85 kg/m^2) diamond mesh metal lath wire-tied to furring channels, 9/16-in. (14-mm) coat of plaster with 1/16-in. (1.6-mm) white-coat finish.	 F 57a, b
F57b	Same as F57a except for carpet and pad in lieu of asphalt tile.	
F58	18-in. (457-mm) steel joists, 16 in. (406 mm) on center. On the floor side, ⅝-in.-thick (16-mm) C-D rough plywood nailed to joists, 1⅝- in.-thick (41-mm) foamed concrete, 100 lb/ft^3 (1600 kg/m^3), slab constructed on the plywood; concrete covered with an all-hair pad at 40 oz/yd^2 (1356 g/m^2) and an all-wool pile at 44 oz/yd^2 (1492 g/m^2) carpet. Total weight of the carpet, 4.14 lb/yd^2 (2.25 kg/m^2); total thickness, ⅜ in. (10 mm). On the ceiling side, ⅝- in.-thick (10-mm) gypsum wallboard nailed to joists. All joints taped and finished; entire periphery of panel caulked and sealed.	 F 58

TABLE L.4 Construction Characteristics of Floors (For Acoustic Data see Table L.3) *(Continued)*

Code[a]	Description	Section Sketch
F60a	7-in. (178-mm) steel bar joists spaced 27 in. (686 mm) on center. On the floor side, ⅜-in. (10-mm) metal rib lath attached to top of joists and 2-in.-thick (50-mm) poured concrete floor. On the ceiling side, ¾-in. (19-mm) metal furring channels wire-tied to joists 16 in. (406 mm) on centers; ⅜ × 16 × 48-in. (10 × 406 × 1220-mm) plain gypsum lath held with wire clips and sheet metal end joint clips; 7/16-in. (11-mm) sanded gypsum plaster and 1/16-in. (1.6-mm) white-coat finish.	
F60c	Structure F60a with nylon carpeting and foam rubber pad placed on the floor. The carpet pad had an uncompressed thickness of ¼ in. (6 mm) backed with a woven jute fiber cloth. The carpet had ⅛-in. (3-mm) woven backing and ¼-in. (6-mm) looped pile spaced 7 loops per inch with a total thickness of ⅜ in. (10 mm).	

[a]Material extracted from *A Guide to Airborne, Impact and Structure-Borne Noise Control in Multifamily Dwellings*, HUD/FHA/NBS, 1971. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, Washington, DC. SI units added by text authors (not part of original source).

APPENDIX M

Design Analysis Software

This book emphasizes manual (or hand) calculation procedures, those simple enough to require only a hand-held calculator and an informed (and patient) user. This emphasis is based upon the belief that such calculations provide the most explicit means of understanding the variables (and relationships among variables) that influence building performance. In practice, many analyses are conducted using computer software programs. Today, these programs generally run on personal computers. This appendix presents a very short list (drawn from a larger and rapidly expanding array) of software programs for personal computers that may be used in the design of mechanical and electrical systems (both passive and active) for buildings.

Updated and improved versions of existing programs appear as often as do new programs; any list of such programs quickly becomes obsolete. Thus, the descriptions persented here avoid version numbers and other transient information and instead describe the basics of each program. Mailing addresses are generally included; current World Wide Web URLs should be readily found using Internet search engines.

Excellent computer programs have been developed at many universities and research labs. Apologies to those whose programs do not appear here; the following list attempts to name the programs most widely used (or readily available) in North America.

(a) Building Products Life-Cycle Assessment

- *BEES*. Aids in the selection of building products by generating an overall score. It weighs the environmental and economic life-cycle performance scores, with relative importance scales specified by the user. Global warming, acidification, nutrification, natural resource depletion, IAQ, and solid waste impacts are included.

  National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), Green Buildings Program, 100 Bureau Drive, Gaithersburg, MD 20899-0001.

(b) Design Strategies and Climate Analysis

- *Climate Consultant*. A detailed database that can be queried by users, this program plots climate for every hour of the year on a variety of charts and provides commentary.

  Research Professor Murray Milne, UCLA, Department of Architecture and Urban Design, Los Angeles, CA 90095.
- *Green Building Advisor*. Provide a project location, building type, and size, and this program responds with "moderately" and "strongly" suggested design strategies, relevant case studies, an information library, and a products directory. This is a tool for brainstorming rather than for detailed design decisions.

  Environmental Building News, 28 Birge St., Suite 30, Brattleboro, VT 05301.

- *Solar 2*. Graphically displays the performance of a window with any combination of fins and overhang, as well as remote objects such as walls of an exterior courtyard or a distant building; for Windows 95.

  Research Professor Murray Milne, UCLA, Department of Architecture and Urban Design, Los Angeles, CA 90095.

(c) Heating, Cooling, and Energy Performance

- *DesignBuilder:* Software that allows quick modeling and comparisons of designs for whole building energy simulation. Visualization through 3-D modeling, including calculations of heating and cooling loads with an OpenGL EnergyPlus interface, CO_2 emissions, solar shading, natural ventilation, daylighting, comfort studies, CFD, HVAC simulation, pre-design, early-stage design, building energy code compliance checking, building stock modeling, hourly weather data, heating and cooling equipment sizing.

  www.designbuilder.co.uk
- *eQUEST*: stands for the QUick Energy Simulation Tool and is primarily a spreadsheet-based energy analysis program for use at all phases of design. Simulation results are achieved by creating the building model, applying energy efficiency measures, and simulation using the latest version of DOE-2 building energy use simulation program.

  www.doe2.com/equest/
- *Building Energy Software Tools Directory*. An extensive online directory of software tools, compiled by the U.S. Department of Energy. Well worth browsing.

  http://www.eere.energy.gov/buildings/tools_directory/
- *Building Design Advisor*. Provides energy modeling in a CAD-like environment, simulating energy and daylighting performance from CAD drawings.

  Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, 1 Cyclotron Road, Berkeley, CA 94720.
- *EnergyPlus*. This program aims to combine the best features of BLAST and DOE-2, providing a detailed HVAC system performance analysis that includes passive energy sources and strategies. Considerable operator training is required.

  For information: *http://www.eere.energy.gov/buildings/energyplus/getting.html*
- *Energy Scheming*. Using schematic drawings generated on-screen (Mac), this program calculates thermal performance for four months (representing the four seasons), with passive strategies included. Design advice accompanies the performance information. Also available in a Windows version.

  Prof. G.Z. Brown, Energy Studies in Buildings Laboratory, Department of Architecture, University of Oregon, Eugene, OR 97403-1206.
- *Energy 10*. Provides energy simulations for smaller (≤ 10,000 ft^2 [929 m^2]) commercial and institutional buildings. Input can be extremely simple (floor area, location, function), and a "shoebox" generic building is generated with design alternatives and energy comparisons. A detailed "weathermaker" climate data feature allows for adjustments to address local climates and provides "Olgyay"-style climate analyses (a hidden gem of a feature).

  Sustainable Buildings Industry Council, 1112 16th St. NW, Suite 240, Washington, DC, 20036.
- *ENVSTD*. Determines compliance with the envelope trade-off aspects of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, *Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings*. The software is updated as the standard is updated.

  ASHRAE, 1791 Tullie Circle NE, Atlanta, GA 30329-5478.
- *Opaque*. Graphically displays the performance of a wall or roof of any composition, any color, any orientation, and at any latitude.

  Research Professor Murray Milne, UCLA, Department of Architecture and Urban Design, Los Angeles, CA 90095.
- *SOLAR 5*. Using information about climate, orientation, geometry, and shading configurations, users get a three-dimensional plot of building energy performance based upon hourly TMY data for over 230 sites. Almost all passive heating and cooling strategies can be simulated. Most HVAC system parameters can also be modeled.

  Research Professor Murray Milne, UCLA, Department of Architecture and Urban Design, Los Angeles, CA 90095.

(d) Environmental Assessment

- *BREEAM* (Building Research Establishment Environmental Assessment Method). This well-tested UK program, in use since 1990, rates designs and building management policies, awarding certificates of overall performance (pass, good, very good, or excellent). Priority areas can be targeted early in design, making this potentially useful as a design tool.

  Building Research Establishment, Marston, Watford, WD2 7JR, United Kingdom.
- *Green Building Assessment Tool (GBTool)*. Developed for use in the 1998 Green Buildings Challenge, this analysis tool is being further developed at various levels of detail and includes a weighting system with defaults that can be modified to reflect regional priorities. The "narrative" that accompanies the tool makes for an interesting comparison with the U.S. Green Building Council LEED program.

  International Initiative for a Sustainable Built Environment; *http://www.iisbe.org/iisbe/gbc2k5/gbc2k5-start.htm/*

(e) Solar Water Heating

- *F-Chart*. These programs allow analysis of various collector and system types (including some passive heating strategies).

  F-Chart Software, 4406 Fox Bluff Road, Middleton, WI 53562.

(f) Fire Safety

- *Fire-Safe Building Design for Architects and Designers*. A self-paced, interactive CD-ROM combining graphics, text, narration, animation, and video, allows the user to manipulate graphics, make materials selections, consult supporting fire safety tables, review videos, and explore a library of static and animated appendices. Feedback is provided, encouraging improvements to fire safety during design.

  National Fire Academy, USFA/FEMA, 16825 South Seton Ave., Emmitsburg, MD 21727.

(g) Daylighting and Electric Lighting

- *Visual*. This software includes several lighting calculation tools and three-dimensional modeling capabilities intended to provide comprehensive analysis for lighting design projects.

  Lithonia Lighting: *http://www.lithonia.com/software/Lightware7/Visual/*
- *AGI32*. Performs point-by-point calculations of direct or reflected light on any real surface or imaginary plane. Can be used to predict/quantify the distribution of electric light or daylight. Ray tracing, daylight factor, and glare rating calculations are included.

  Lighting Analysts, Inc.: *http://www.agi32.com/*
- *Lumen Designer*: Models all types of architectural spaces using a "designer wizard"—a computer-aided design (CAD) interface. Provides automated tools, product database, library of objects and materials, space visualization and rendering, and analytic output. After 2008, Lumen Micro and Lumen Designer licensing will be supported by LTI Optics, and users will be encouraged to migrate to LAI's AGi32 lighting software.

  Lighting Technologies, Inc.: *http://www.lighting-technologies.com*
- *Autodesk 3ds Max Design*: includes 3D modeling, rendering, animation, specialized visualization (including lighting effects from indirect illumination and shadows under varying conditions of daylight and electric light), as well as expanded imagery and cinematographic effects.

  Autodesk: *http://usa.autodesk.com*
- *Desktop Radiance*. A software package that integrates the Radiance Synthetic Imaging System with AutoCAD Release 14 for lighting modeling. Includes libraries of materials, glazings, luminaires, and furnishings.

  Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory: *http://radsite.lbl.gov/deskrad/*
- *form•Z RenderZone PLUS*: is a full modeling and drafting program with photorealistic rendering based on the LightWorks® rendering engine. It offers the following rendering levels: simple, z-buffer, and raytrace. At the simplest level, the designer can begin with a 3D model and gradually turn on features to render at the most photorealistic level. form•Z RenderZone Plus includes "global illumination" techniques and displays accurate distribution of light in the environment.

AutoDesSys, Inc.: *http://www.formz.com/products/renderzone/renderzone.html/*

(h) Life-Cycle Costing

- *Building Life-Cycle Cost Program (BLCC).* Developed by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) for the Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP). BLCC provides a computer-based structure for life-cycle cost analyses in conformance with *Handbook 135* (*Life-Cycle Costing Manual for the Federal Energy Management Program*).

  http://www.eere.energy.gov/femp/information/download_blcc.cfm/

(i) Multipurpose Suites

- *Ecotect*. A building analysis software program offering a range of modeling and analysis features such as visualization, shading, shadows, solar analysis, lighting, thermal performance, ventilation, and acoustics. It can export to Radiance for higher-level ray-tracing techniques. Daylighting capabilities can model shadows and reflections on the surfaces of other buildings at a single point in time, show an entire year's shadow patterns for a single surface, model surface solar radiation relative to the effects on thermal mass, and calculate daylight factor.

  Autodesk Ecotect:
  http://usa.autodesk.com/adsk/servlet/index?siteID=123112&id=11778740

Index

A

Aalto, Alvar, 18
Absorption, sound, 767–773
  acoustically transparent surfaces, 800–801
  materials for, 770–773
  mechanics of, 768, 770, 771
  panel and cavity resonators, 798–800
Absorption chillers, 408, 410
Absorption refrigeration cycle, 331–333
Acceptable background noise, 758–759
Access control, *see* Entry systems
Accessibility:
  passenger elevators, 1408–1412
  and plumbing fixtures, 970–971
Accessories (controls), 425
Acclimatization, 97
Acoustics:
  architectural, 739–765
  bathroom, 971, 973–974
  outdoor, 857–858
  room, 773–792
Acoustical comfort, 111, 114
Acoustical tile, 801
Acoustic detectors, 1357
Acoustic panels, 802
Acoustic plaster, 802
Activated-charcoal filters, 146–147
Activated sludge process, 1049
Active noise cancellation, 848–850
Active solar heating, 55, 238
Active systems, 11, 16
Actuators, 425
Adaptation, visual, 487–488, 509
Adaptive digital filter, 848–849
Adaptive model of comfort, 97
Addressable fire alarm systems, 1142–1143
Adobe, 1611
Adsorption filters, 146–147
Advanced Energy Design Guide, 204, 211
Aeration (water), 918
Aerobic treatment units (ATUs), 1029, 1032
African Place (Expo '67, Montreal), 74
Agents of Change project, 10
AGI32, 621, 1735
AIA/COTE, 22
Air, moisture in, *see* Psychrometry
Air—air heat pumps, 364–365, 367–372
Air and water HVAC systems, 448–452
Airborne sound:
  barrier mass, 808, 809
  composite walls and leaks, 815, 817–818
  compound barriers, 810, 812–814
  diffraction: barriers, 822–824
  and doors, 819–820
  flanking, 824–826
  sound transmission class, 814–816
  stiffness and resonance, 808–811
  transmission loss, 807–808
  and windows, 820–822
Air-change method, 206
Air changes per hour (ACH), 137
Air conditioning. *See also* Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning
Air curtain window, 434
Air cushion tank, 347
Air delivery systems, 429–437
  ceiling air supply, 430–431
  ducts, 429, 430
  underfloor air supply, 431–433
  workstation air delivery systems, 433, 434
Air-extract window, 434
Air films, thermal properties of, 187–188
Airflow, 65, 67, 69–70
  air pollution, 67, 69–70
  and localized comfort, 102–103
  ventilation and cooling, 74, 75–76. *See also* Ventilation
  wind, daylight, and sun, 74–76
  wind control, 70–76
Air handling equipment (HVAC), 422, 424, 426, 427
Air-handling system, noise from, 843
Air infiltration, 206–207
  around windows, 200
  as deliberate ventilation, 205
  heat gain due to, 1657
  heat gain from, 282
  for small buildings, 1642–1644
Air-Krete™, 626, 1611
Air pollution, 67, 69–70
  indoor, 116–120
  and quality of rainwater, 878
  and urban climates, 52
Air quality, 123. *See also* Indoor air quality
Air sampling smoke detectors, 1148, 1149
Air spaces, thermal properties of, 187–188
Air speeds, thermal comfort and, 93, 95, 98
Air-to-air heat exchangers, 137–138
Air-to-liquid solar heating systems, 954

Air vents, 348
Air washers, 147
Ala Moana office building (Honolulu, HI), 166
Albany County (NY) Airport, 40–41
Aldo Leopold Legacy Center (Baraboo, WI), 15, 83–87
Alkalinity, water, 910
All-air HVAC systems, 393–396, 436, 438–443
All-water HVAC systems, 397–398, 452–455
Alternating current (ac), 1165, 1170, 1171
Alternating-current motors, 1215
Altitude angle (sun), 154–156
ALTO® lamps, 550
Aluminaire house (Long Island), 974
Aluminum conductors, 1250, 1251
Aluminum conduit, 1262
American Institute of Architects, 10
American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioining Engineers (ASHRAE). *See also under* ANSI/ASHRAE Standards
American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), 95, 96, 1734
American Wire Gauge (AWG), 1249, 1250
Amperes, 1165–1166
Amplifiers, sound, 793–794
Amsler Hagenah MacLean, Architects, 355
Analemma, 156, 157
Andrews, John, 74
Annoyance concept (noise), 758
Annual fuel utilization efficiency (AFUE), 344, 356
Anshen and Allen, 392
ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 52.2, 150
ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 55, 8, 9, 94, 97, 114
ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 61.1, 207
ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1, 150, 213
ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2, 135, 150, 207, 213
ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.1, 9, 12, 13, 189–192, 199, 212, 213, 344, 355, 376, 689, 1621, 1666–1667, 1734
ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 90.2, 13, 190, 199, 212, 213, 329, 340, 348, 354–356, 376, 689, 1621
Apartment buildings, *see* Multiple-dwelling buildings
Apparent brightness, 473, 518
Appliances, heat gain from, 1659
Aquasave Company, 1055, 1057
Architectural acoustics, 739–765
  defined, 739
  hearing, 743–748
  measures of sound magnitude, 749–758
  noise, 758–765
  sound, 740–743
  sound sources, 748–749
  vibration, 765
Architecture, water use and, 865–868
Arkin, David, 5, 6
Arrays, photovoltaic, 1333–1334, 1340
Articulation Class (AC), 838
Articulation Index (AI), 837–838
Artificial sky, 621–622
Art rooms, lighting for, 698–699
Ash Creek Intermediate School (Monmouth, OR), 593
Assemblies, thermal properties of, 1619–1637
Atocha railroad station (Madrid Spain), 335
Audible consumption strategy, 960
Audible fire alarms, 1156–1157
Auditoriums:
  lighting for, 689–700
  room acoustics for, 789–792
Audubon House (New York City), 38
Autodesk, Inc., 1735
Autodesk 3ds Max Design, 619
Autodesk® Ecotect, 618, 1736
Autodesk® VIZ 2005, 1735
Automated self-propelled vehicles, 1474–1475
Automated systems:
  for buildings, 1375, 1382–1383
  for container delivery, 1473, 1474
  dumbwaiters, 1468, 1470–1471
  signal systems, 1380–1390
Automatic fire sprinklers, 1096
Automatic transfer switches, 1199, 1200
Azimuth angle (sun), 154–156

B

Background noise criteria, 758–759
Backwater valves, 1011, 1014
Baer, Morley, 385
Baffles:
  for light diffusion, 636, 637
  for sound absorption, 802
Baker, M. Steven, 947
Balanced noise criteria (NCB) curves, 762–763
Balance point temperature, 260–261
Ballast efficacy factor, 541
Ballast factor, 540–541
"Band of sun," 60, 62
Bank of American Corporate Center (Charlotte, NC), 1131
Banwell White Arnold Hemberger & Partners, Inc., 127, 236, 270, 279
Barriers:
  for airborne sound, 807–826
  building envelope elements as, 176
  for mechanical system sound, 852–853
  smoke, 1098
Barry Blower Co., 776
Barton Hall (University of New Hampshire), 127
Basements, heat flow dynamics with, 192–195
Batch solar heating systems, 941, 951, 952, 956, 958–952
Bathrooms:
  acoustics in, 971, 973–974
  design of, 960. *See also* Plumbing fixtures
  prefabricated, 1023
Bathtubs, 961
Batteries, 1244, 1338–1340

Batwing diffusers (lighting), 637–638
Beatty, Alex, 355
BEES, 1733
Below-grade walls and floors, 1625
Benchmarking, 3, 14
Benton, Cris, 7, 25
Berkebile Nelson Immenschuh McDowell, Architects, 20
Beth Israel Chapel and Memorial Garden (Houston, TX), 75
Bibury vicar's residence (England), 1056
Bidets, 962
Bilateral lighting, 590
Bioclimatic charts, 104, 107
Bioclimatic design, 50
Biological contaminants, 120
Biometric identification devices, 1381
Biosolids, 1055
Black body, 514
Blackbody radiation, 521, 522
Blackwater, 1055
Blair McCarry, Keen Engineering, 433
Blower door, 207
Blue Ridge Parkway Destination Center (Asheville, NC), 319–323
Board of Water Supply (Honolulu, HI), 166
Body temperature and heat, 89–92, 102–103
Bogan Jenal Engineers, 1047
Boilers, 344–346, 355, 401, 403–410
Boiler flue economizers, 414, 416, 418
Bonn, Markus, 620
Boody, Harry John, 139
Bordass, Bill, 21
Bored wells, 922
Boston City Hall (MA), 55, 56
Branch circuit design, 1304–1315
Brand, Stuart, 28
Breathable walls, 132–133
Breathing zone, 1638–1640
BREEAM, 1735
Brentrup, Dale, 1131
Brightness, 473, 484, 485, 509
British lighting standards, 493–495
British Research Establishment Building (Garston, England), 428, 429
British thermal units (Btus), 183, 184
Brown, G. Z., 18, 21, 379, 382, 388, 1734
Brüel, P. V., 783
Brüel & Kjaer, 505, 771, 773
Buchanan/Watson, Architects, 237
Building automation systems, 1375, 1382–1383
Building codes, 10
Building commissioning, 10
Building construction, water use in, 870
Building Design Advisor, 1734
Building Energy Software Tools Directory, 1734
Building envelope, 175–180
  for daylight access, 59–60
  and design for heating and cooling, 218–223, 225
  design intentions, 176, 182
  functions of, 175
  heat flows through, *see* Heat flow
Building form, 216–218
Building-integrated photovoltaic (BIPV) system, 1331, 1350
Building Life-Cycle Cost Program (BLCC), 1736
Building management systems (BMS), 426, 428, 430
Building noise control, 797–862
  absorption, 797–804
  airborne sound, 807–826
  components of, 797
  mechanical system noise, 843–853
  and outdoor acoustics, 857–858
  reference standards for, 861
  sound insulation, 804–807
  speech privacy, 825–841
  STC and IIC recommendations/criteria, 853–857
  structure-borne impact noise, 841–843
  symbols used with, 862
  terms related to, 859–861
  units and conversions for, 861
Building procurement process, 4
Building validation, 9–10
Bullock's Department Store (San Mateo, CA), 339
Bullpen offices, 380
Buried sand filters, 1036–1037
Burr Lawrence Rising + Bates, Architects, 436
Burt Hill Kosar Rittelmann Associates, 450
Busway (busduct), 1253–1257

C

Cablebus, 1255–1256
Cable tray, 1258
California Highway Patrol Offices (Gilroy, CA), 297–299
California Polytechnic State University, 254, 255, 1040, 1068, 1069
Canada:
  average insolation/temperature/daylight design data, 1563, 1568
outside design conditions for, 1514–1515, 1523–1524, 1527, 1530
Candela (candlepower) (cd/cp), 471
Candlepower distribution curve (CDC), 480, 481
Cannon Design, Inc., 133
Carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions, 43
Carbon dioxide (CO_2) fire suppression systems, 1126–1128
Carbon-neutral design, 14–16
Carlson, Dain, 79, 178, 248, 951–953
Carmody, John, 200, 213, 1628
Carpenter Norris Consulting, 597
Carpeting, sound absorption with, 803, 804
Cartridge filtration (water), 915
Cartwright, Virginia, 225
Case studies, 10. *See also specific studies*
Cast-iron boilers, 403, 404
Catalytic combustors, 341–342
Cavity resonators, 798–800
Cavity walls, 810, 812–814
CBS Tower (New York City), 444, 445

Ceilings:
absorption efficiency of, 834
in fire safety design, 1088
for impact noise control, 842–843
sound transmission data for, 1723–1732
and speech privacy, 839
Ceiling air supply, 430–431
Ceiling electric resistance heat, 344, 345
Ceilings:
sound transmission data for, 1723–1732
Cells, photovoltaic systems, 1331–1333
Center for Regenerative Studies (Poma, CA), 17
Center for Regenerative Studies (Pomona, CA), 16, 17
Center Moriches Free Public Library (Long Island, NY), 279
Central heating/cooling, 327–329, 378–380
Centre Georges Pompidou (Paris), 387
Centrifugal chillers, 410, 411
Centrifugal pumps, 924
Ceramic filters, 915
Cesspools, 1033
Chair lifts, 1463–1466
Chandra, S., 125, 249, 294, 323
Charged media filters, 147
Chesapeake Bay Foundation (CBF), 44
Chilled water distribution, 454–456
Chillers, 407–408, 410–414
Chimneys, 355, 356
Chloramine, 916
Chlorination, 915–916
Christopher C. Morgan, AIA, Architect, 333
Chromaticity, 518, 522, 572–573
CIE design analysis method, 597–612
CIE sky, 527, 605
Circuit breakers, 1204–1206
Circuit-protective devices, 1203–1206
Circular sunpath projection, 160
Circulating pumps, 348
Cisterns, 871, 873, 879–883
City of Jerusalem, 723
Classroom lighting, 696–698
Clean agent gases, 1128
Cleanouts, 1014, 1015
Clearwater, 1055
Clegg, Amanda, 40, 68, 69, 78, 176, 194, 223, 1144
Climate Consultant, 1733
Climates, 49–51. *See also* Thermal comfort
cooling data for, 1660–1661
design analysis software for, 1733–1734
for Mexico and Puerto Rico, 1515, 1524
microclimates, 51–55
summer design conditions, 1506
for United States and Canada, 1507–1530
in urban areas, 52–54
winter design conditions, 1505–1506
Climate window, 434
Clivus Multrum toilet system, 1001–1003
Clock systems, for schools, 1367–1368
Clock time, solar time vs., 156–157
Closed-circuit evaporative coolers, 414, 418
Closed-loop, freeze-resistant systems, 949, 953
Closed-shell envelope approach, 176, 178
Clothes washing machines, 970
Clothing, insulating value of, 91
Cloud cover, 526–528, 530, 603
Coagulation (water filtration), 914
Cob, 1611
Cockram, Michael, 18, 28, 31, 222, 383
Codes, 10–12. *See also specific topics*
Coefficient of absorption (sound), 767–773
Coefficient of performance (COP), 356
Coefficients of utilization (CU):
from luminaires, 615, 640–643, 648, 663–667
from windows without blinds, 1569–1574
Cogeneration, 456–463
CoHousing Project (Cambridge, MA), 416, 417, 419
Colima, Mexico, 868
Color:
of incandescent light, 534
of objects, 488, 515–517
perceived, 519–520
reactions to, 518
of water, 910
Color constancy, 518
Color rendering index (CRI), 522–524
Color temperature, 514–516, 519, 520
Colyer/Freeman Group, Architects, 303, 316, 952
Combined sewers, 867
Combustible recovered resources, 1068–1070
Combustion, 354, 1085, 1086–1087
Comfort, 89–114
acoustical, 111, 114
and bodily heat flow, 89–92
combining strategies for, 111–114
cooling design strategies, 104–108
defined, 91
heating design strategies, 108–110
thermal, 91–103
visual, 111, 114
Comfort zones, 93–98, 105
Commercial buildings:
electrical equipment spaces in, 1297–1299
fire alarm systems for, 1158–1160
interior electric lighting for, 703–714
Commerzbank (Frankfurt, Germany), 125, 127
Communications systems, 1372–1375
Community Media Center (Santa Rosa, CA), 432
Compact fluorescent lamps (CFLs), 551–552
Compactors, 1073, 1078

Compartmentation (fire safety), 1096–1098
Composite walls, 815, 817–818
Composting toilets, 1001–1004
Compost piles, 1073–1074
Compound sound barriers, 810, 812–814
Compressive refrigeration, 329–330
Computer-aided electrical lighting design, 678–681
Computer-grade power, 1231
Computerized elevator control systems, 1414–1415
Comstock Center (Pittsburgh, PA), 132, 448
Concealed spaces (fire safety), 1097
Conceptual design, 4, 5
Condensation (sweating), 195–196, 198
Condensing water equipment, 412–418
Conductance, thermal, 184–186
Conduction, 90, 91, 183
Conductivity, 102, 183–185
Conductors, 187–188, 1249–1256
Conduit:
  electrical, 1259–1263
  HVAC, 386
Connectors, envelope elements as, 176
Constructed wetlands, 1042–1043
Construction phase, 6–7
Contactors, electric, 1199
Container delivery systems, 1473, 1474
Contrast, *see* Luminance ratios (contrast)
Controls, 425, 426. *See also specific equipment and systems*
Controllers, 425
Convection, 90, 91, 183
Conversion factors, 1500–1504
Cooling. *See also* Heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning
  and building form, 218
  combined strategies for, 111–114
  desiccant, 141, 144
  design analysis software for, 1734
  design guidelines for, 1645–1664
  design strategies for, 104–108
  evaporative, 107–108
  groundwater for, 79
  high-mass, 106–107
  indirect evaporative, 137
  by natural ventilation, 105–106
  passive, *see* Passive cooling
  psychrometric chart for, 287–289
  for smaller buildings, 331, 333–339
  water use in, 867
  by wind, 74–76
Cooling load, *see* Heat gain
Cooling load temperature difference/cooling load factor (CLTD/CLF), 290
Cooling towers/cooltowers:
  calculating performance of, 305–307
  design guidelines for, 245–253
  nuisance control for, 920–921
Cool roofs, 206
Copper conductors, 1250
Copper Development Association, 1023, 1024, 1027, 1028, 1120–1121
Corbett, M., 891
Correlated color temperature (CCT), 514
Corrosion control (water), 918, 919
Cosentini Associates, 381
Cosine correction, 476
Cottage Restaurant (Cottage Grove, OR), 18, 21, 130
Crack method (infiltration), 206–207
Crater Lake National Park (OR), 1003
Crawl space, 192
Creep, sound, 787, 788
Crisscross escalator arrangement, 1477–1480
Cross-ventilation, 105, 292–294
Crowther, Karen, 295
Croxton Collaborative, 625, 1076
Croxton Collaborative, Architects, 624
Crystal balustrades, 1485
Crystal Cathedral (Anaheim, CA), 591
Crystal Tower (Osaka, Japan), 422
Cubicle design, 839
Current rating, 1248
Curtain boards, 1098
Cutoff angle (lighting), 631
Cylindrical sunpath projection, 159–163

D

Dampers, 360
Damping, 845, 852–853
Daniel Boone High School (Johnson City, TN), 373
Dark graywater, 1055
Daylight, 57–65, 153. *See also* Daylighting; Solar geometry
  access to, 58–60
  "band of sun," 60, 62
  and building width, 76
  charting the sun, 59–60
  components of, 598–601
  reflected, 64–65, 77–79
  skylines and winter sun, 61, 63
  sun and shadow model techniques, 61, 64
Daylight-compensating lighting, 659–660
Daylight factor (DF), 528, 588, 598–603
Daylight filters, 592
Daylighting, 111
  and building form, 216–218
  design analysis software for, 1735
  and design for heating and cooling, 219–229
  integrating passive solar heating and cooling with, 256–258
Daylighting design, 587–626
  aperture strategies, 590–594
  Audubon House case study, 624–626
  CIE method, 605–612
  and components of daylight, 598–601
  data for, 1531–1575
  daylight factor in, 598
  design analysis methods, 602, 605–617
  for energy savings, 588

Daylighting design (*Continued*)
goals of, 589
graphic daylighting design method, 612–614
human factors in, 589
IESNA lumen method, 614–617
importance of, 588
in overall design process, 588
physical modeling in, 621–623
preliminary, 601–604
sidelighting, 590–594
simulation programs for, 617–621
site strategies for, 589–590
specialized strategies in, 594, 596–597
toplighting, 594–596
Daylighting simulation programs, 617–621
Daylight Saving Time (DST), 156
"Deadness" of space, 773–774
Decibels, 751–755
Deciduous trees, 80, 82
Declination (Earth), 154
Deflector sheave, 1397
Degree days (DD), 262
Dehumidification, 141–145
Deluge fire suppression systems, 1120, 1125
Demand, electric, 1175–1180
Density of materials, 196
Desert coolers, 335
Desiccant cooling, 141, 144
Desiccant dehumidifiers, 141, 144
Design analysis software, 1733–1736
DesignBuilder, 1734
Design condition (climate), 105
Design criteria, 8, 9
Design development, 4, 6
Design equivalent temperature differences (DETD), 1653–1654
Design guidelines, 215. *See also specific systems and equipment*
active solar heating, 238
building envelope, 218, 221–223
building form, 216–218
daylighting, 219–229
fenestration, 216
heating and cooling, 1645–1664
hourly heat gain, 289–291
integrating daylighting, passive solar heating, and cooling, 256–258
passive cooling, 240–256, 291–318
passive solar heating, 225, 227, 230–238, 263–281
psychrometry, 286–289
summer heat gain, 238–241
zoning, 218–219, 223
Design heat gain, 209–210
Design heat loss, 207–209
Design illuminance, 612
Design intent, 7–9
Design methods, 8, 9
Design phase, 4–7
Design process, 3–26
carbon-neutral design, 14–16
codes in, 10–12
costs as influence on, 11
daylighting design in, 588
design criteria in, 8, 9
design intent in, 7–9
and energy efficiency, 12–13
and environmental resources, 42–43
field lessons for, 21–22
Gilman Ordway Campus case study, 22–26
green building design strategies, 14
for HVAC, 326–327
methods and tools for, 8–9
operating philosophy in, 16–21
passive and active approaches to, 11
regenerative design, 16
standards in, 11, 12
sustainability strategies, 16
validation/evaluation in, 9–10
Design temperature, 327
Design tools, 8, 9
Design validation, 9
Desktop Radiance, 618, 1735
Device boxes, 1263, 1265
Diaphragm tank, 347
Diatomaceous earth filters, 915
Diatomite filters, 915
Diffraction (sound), 822–824
Diffusers (lighting), 635–638
batwing, 637–638
Fresnel lenses, 637
louvers and baffles, 636, 637
prismatic lenses, 636–637
translucent, 635–636
Diffusion, sound, 786, 787
Dilution systems (smoke control), 1098–1099
Dimming (lights), 651, 659
Direct current (dc), 1165, 1170
Direct-current motors, 1215
Direct digital control (DDC), 426, 428
Direct-fired absorption cycle, 331
Direct-gain (DG) systems, 107–109
design guidelines for, 267
for hot water, 947
other passive systems vs., 264–265
Direct (discomfort) glare, 497–501
Direct-indirect lighting, 576, 577
Directivity (sound), 748, 792
Direct lighting, 576, 578–580
Direct refrigerant systems, 393
Discrimination (sound), 748
Dishwashers, 970
Disinfection (water), 915–918
Disposal fields (sewage), 1033–1035
Distillation (water), 921
Distribution ducts, 1266, 1270, 1277
Distribution trees, 41
for hot water systems, 936–938
for HVAC, 328–329, 383–386
placement options, 387–392
plumbing, 1015
District heating and cooling, 454–456
Docker, Fumiko, 173
Dole, Philip, 29
Domestic hot water (DHW) systems, 932–959
central vs. distributed equipment, 936
conventional water heaters, 938–946
distribution trees, 936–939
energy factors, 936
heat pump water heaters, 959
heat sources and methods, 933–934

solar water heating, 946–959
tankless water heaters, 934–935
variable storage temperature, 938, 940
water temperatures for, 932–933
Doors:
air infiltration through, 1643–1644
DETD for, 1654
fenestration design guidelines, 216
passenger elevators, 1403–1404, 1406
sound transmission through, 819–820
thermal performance of, 192
U-factors for, 1623
Doping, 1332
Double-deck elevators, 1454
Double-duct, constant-volume systems, 394–396
Double-effect absorption cycle, 331, 333
Double-wrap 1:1 roping, 1397
Dove Publication (Pecos, NM), 1652
Downfeed water distribution, 975–980
Draft, 102
Drainage, 1005–1009
fixture units for, 1017, 1022
floor drains, 1011, 1014
heating systems, 348
Drainage plane, 198
Drain-back systems, 949, 953
Drain-down systems, 953–954
Draperies, sound absorption by, 803, 804
Drilled wells, 922
Drip irrigation, 996, 997
Driven wells, 922
Dry-bulb (DB) temperature, 95
Dry-pipe fire suppression systems, 1118–1119, 1123
Dry-type transformers, 1191–1192, 1194
Dual-coded fire alarm systems, 1142
Dual-condenser chillers, 410, 412
Dual-duct HVAC systems, 442
Ducts:
air, 429, 430
heating, 359, 361, 386
reducing noise from, 835–847, 850
Dumbwaiters, 1468–1471
Durst Organization, 461
Durst Organization building (New York City), 460–462

E

Eagelson, 392
Ear, 743–746
Early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers, 1117
Earth coupling cooling strategies, 111
Earth tubes:
calculating cooling by, 311, 313–315
design data for, 1662–1664
design guidelines for, 253–254, 256
Echoes, 786, 787
Ecliptic, 154
Ecological footprints, 43
Ecology House (San Rafael, CA), 149–150
Economic analysis, 1701–1706
cost-effectiveness comparison, 1703
decision making, 1701
energy costs in, 1247–1248
initial rate of return, 1702–1703
internal rate of return, 1703, 1704
life-cycle cost, 1701–1702
payback period, 1704–1706
Economizer cycles, 416, 418
Eden Project (United Kingdom), 16
Effective radiant field (ERF), 101
Efficacy (of light sources), 526, 534, 648–649
Eggcrate shading devices, 164, 167
Einhorn Yaffee Prescott, Architects, 40
Ejection lifts, 1468
Ejector pumps, 924, 1011–1012, 1015
Electrical closets, 1299–1300
Electrical equipment:
and mechanical system noise control, 850–852
spaces for, 1296–1299
Electrical lighting design, 629–688
average illuminance, 660–661
average luminance, 681–683, 685–687
cavity reflectances and illuminance, 672–674
coefficient of utilization, 663–665
computer-aided, 678–685
design aids, 674–676
evaluation of, 688
horizontal illuminance, 661
illuminance at a point, 673
illuminance from a point source, 676–677
illuminance from linear and area sources, 678
lighting control, 649–660
light loss factor, 661–663
luminaires, 629–688
modular lighting, 673, 675
symbol list for, 1301–1303
zonal cavity method, 663–670
Electricity, 1165–1184
amperes, 1165–1166
demand charges for, 1175–1177
demand control, 1177–1180
direct and alternating currents, 1170
energy in electric circuits, 1174–1175
as form of energy, 1165
measuring quantities or, 1180–1184
ohms, 1166
Ohm's law, 1167
parallel circuits, 1168–1169
power generation, 1170–1171
power in electric circuits, 1172–1174
and power vs. energy, 1171–1172
reliance on, 30–31
series circuits, 1167–1168
units of, 1165–1166
volts, 1166
watts, 1172

Electric lighting applications, 689–734
commercial interiors, 703–713
design analysis software for, 1735
educational facilities, 695–703
emergency lighting, 716–721
fiber-optic lighting, 724–728
floodlighting, 721–723
hollow light guides, 728–729
industrial lighting, 714–716
and light pollution, 721, 723
prismatic film light guides, 730–734
prismatic light guides, 729–730
remote source lighting, 723–724
residential, 689–695
street lighting, 721, 723
Electric light sources, 531–562
fiber optics, 561–562
fluorescent lamps, 543–552
gaseous discharge, 540–543
high-intensity discharge lamps, 552–559
incandescent, 531–540
induction lamps, 559–561
light-emitting diodes, 560–561
sulfur lamps, 561
Electric power-handling equipment, 1195, 1197–1215
automatic transfer switches, 1199–1200
circuit-protective devices, 1204–1207
contactors, 1199
equipment enclosures, 1203
intelligent panelboards, 1212, 1213–1216
load control principles, 1211–1215
microprocessors, 1202, 1206
panelboards, 1210–1215
programmable controllers, 1202–1203
programmable switches, 1201–1203
remote-control switches, 1199
solid-state switches, 1201
switches, 1195, 1197–1198
and switchgear, 1206–1209
time-controlled electronic switches, 1200–1201
time-controlled switches, 1200–1201
unit substations, 1207–1210
Electric resistance heaters, 342
Electric service, 1185–1196
codes and standards, 1185
electric service switches, 1195, 1197
equipment arrangements and metering, 1195
overhead, 1186, 1187
transformers, 1189–1195
underground, 1186, 1188–1189, 1196
from utility line to building, 1185
Electric service switches, 1195–1197
Electric stairways, *see* Moving electric stairways
Electric utilization equipment, 1215–1244
emergency/standby power equipment, 1242–1244
low-voltage switching, 1224–1228
motors, 1215–1220
power conditioning, 1231–1238
power line carrier systems, 1228–1231
receptacles, 1221–1224
specialty wiring devices, 1224
switches, 1223–1225
system inspection, 1244
uninterruptible power supply, 1239–1242
wireless switching and control, 1228
wiring devices, 1219, 1221
Electric wiring and raceways, 1245–1279
aluminum conduit, 1262
busway/busduct/cablebus, 1253–1256
cable tray, 1258
ceiling raceways, 1275, 1277–1279
cellular metal floor raceway, 1270, 1271
conductor ampacity, 1249, 1251, 1252
conductor insulation and jackets, 1250, 1252
conductors, 1249–1251
conductors for general wiring, 1252–1254
copper and aluminum conductors, 1250–1251
design of raceway systems, 1258–1259
economics of material selection, 1246–1248
energy considerations, 1247–1248
equipment ratings, 1248
flat-cable assemblies, 1256–1258
flexible armored cable, 1252, 1253
flexible metal conduit, 1262, 1263
floor raceways, 1265–1266
full-access floor, 1271–1273
interior wiring systems, 1248–1249
light-duty plug-in busway, 1256, 1257
lighting track, 1258
manufactured wiring systems, 1275, 1277–1279
National Electrical Code, 1245–1246
nonmetallic conduit, 1262–1263
nonmetallic sheathed cable, 1252, 1254
outlet and device boxes, 1263, 1265
precast cellular concrete floor raceways, 1270
special cable types, 1253
steel conduit, 1259–1262
surface metal raceways, 1263–1265
system components for, 1245–1247
under-carpet wiring system, 1272, 1274–1276
underfloor duct, 1266–1270
Electric wiring design, 1281–1328
branch circuit design, 1304–1315
design procedure, 1295–1296
economic factors, 1282

electrical closets, 1299–1300
electrical equipment spaces, 1296–1299
emergency systems, 1325–1328
energy conservation, 1294–1295
energy considerations, 1282
equipment layout, 1300–1303
feeder capacity, 1317–1320
flexibility in, 1281
grounding and ground-fault protection, 1291–1294
harmonic currents, 1322–1323
load estimating, 1283–1285
load tabulation, 1315–1317
nonresidential branch circuit design, 1309–1310, 1315
overcurrent protection, 1300, 1304
panel feeder load calculation, 1320–1322
reliability, 1281–1282
residential branch circuit design, 1307–1314
riser diagrams, 1323–1324
safety, 1282
service equipment and switchboard design, 1324–1325
space allocations, 1282
spare capacity, 1317
system voltage, 1286–1291
Electrodialysis, 920
Electromagnetic spectrum, 468
Electronic air cleaners, 147
Elevators. *See also* Vertical transportation
doors for, 1403–1404, 1406
double-deck, 1454
escalators vs., 1490
freight, 1454–1458
hole-less hydraulic, 1401, 1403
inclined, 1460, 1462
observation cars, 1458–1461
plunger-type hydraulic, 1398–1402
rack and pinion, 1462–1463
residential, 1463–1466
roped hydraulic, 1401, 1403
sky lobby systems, 1453–1454
special shaft arrangements, 1453
traction passenger elevators, *see* Passenger elevators
Embodied energy, 35, 37
Emerald People's Utility District (Eugene, OR), 224–229, 594, 602, 604
Emergency lighting, 703, 716–721
Emergency power, elevator, 1446
Emergency power equipment, 1242–1244
Emergency systems, wiring design for, 1325–1328
Encapsulated lamps, 538–539
Enclosed offices, 380
Enclosed spaces, speech privacy and, 825–827, 829–832
Energy, 29–32
central storage equipment for, 421–425
conservation of, 414, 416, 418
in electric circuits, 1174–1175
electricity as form of, 1165
for electric motors, 1216
and electric wiring design, 1282
embodied, 35, 37
flow of, 30
imported, 215
on-site, 215
per capita use of, 43
power vs., 1171–1172
solar, *see* Solar energy
sources of, 30, 31
Energy 10, 1734
Energy conservation:
daylighting design for, 588
electric wiring design for, 1294–1295
with passenger elevators, 1444–1445
Energy efficiency, 12–13
design analysis software for, 1734
and electrical materials, 1247–1248
in green design, 16
standards/guidelines for, 1665–1668
Energy efficiency ratio (EER), 356
Energy Efficient Resource Recovery (E2R2) Facility, 1040–1041, 1068–1070
Energy factor (EF), 936
EnergyPlus, 1734
Energy recovery ventilators (ERVs), 139–140
Energy-saving lamps, 535–536
Energy Scheming, 1734
Energy Star® program, 535
Energy Studies in Building Laboratory (ESBL), 1349
Energy transfer wheels, 140–142
Energy transition, design for, 39–40
Enermodal Engineering, Ltd., 447
Engine—generator sets, 1244
Enthalpy, 286, 287
Entropy, 27
Entry systems:
for elevators, 1447
for industrial buildings, 1376–1382
for multiple-occupancy dwellings, 1363–1364
Environmental assessment software, 1735
Environmental Building News, 1733
Environmental footprint, 42–43
Environmental illness, 149
Environmental Protection Agency, Research Triangle Park (NC), 121–125
Environmental resources, 27–48
design challenges related to, 39–42
and design process, 42–43
energy, 29–32
material resources, 34–39
Philip Merrill Environmental Center case study, 44–48
recovery of, 1065–1072
water, 32–34
Envirovac toilet, 967–970
ENVSTD, 1734
EPICenter project (Bozeman, MT), 19–21
Equal loudness level contours, 744–746
Equation of time, 156
eQUEST, 1734
Equidistant sunpath projection, 159, 160
Equinox Design, Inc., 224, 225
Equipment. *See also specific equipment and systems*
electric loads for, 1283–1285

Equipment (*Continued*)
heat gains from, 283
quieting of, 844–845
Equivalent spherical illumination (ESI), 506–507
Erlich, Chas, 619
Escalators, *see* Moving electric stairways
Evaluation, 10
Evaporation, 90, 91, 183
Evaporative cooling, 107–108, 111. *See also* Roof ponds
coolers for, 335, 337
design guidelines for, 245, 248
fan-assisted, 301, 303–304
indirect, 137
misting, 333–335
roof spray, 334–336
Exhaust fans, 134–135
Exhaust systems (smoke control), 1099
Exits:
for fire safety, 1094
requirements for stairs, 1095
Exitance, 473–474
Expansion chambers, hot water, 985
Exposed insulated cables, 1248
Exposure protection (fire safety), 1095
Extended coverage sprinklers, 1117
Extended-service lamps, 535
Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS), 187
Externally reflected component (ERC) of daylight, 598–599
Eyes, 481–483, 490–491
Eyestrain, 489

F

Fader, B., 824
Famolare Shoe Company warehouse (Brattleboro, VT), 269, 270
Fans, 331, 333, 424
Fan-assisted evaporative cooling, 301, 303–304
Fan-assisted stack effect, 295
Fan coil with supplementary air HVAC system, 394, 397, 444, 446, 447
Fanger, P. O., 94, 121, 150
Fan-powered VAV systems, 393, 394, 439–441
Faraday, Michael, 1131, 1171
Faraday cage, 1131–1132
Far field, acoustic, 775
Farnsworth House (Fox River, IL), 354
Feeder capacity (electrical), 1317–1320
Feeder ducts, 1266, 1269
Feeder load calculation (electrical), 1320–1322
Feet of head, 350
Feilden Clegg, Architects, 131, 429
Fenestration, 216
Ferguson, Bruce, 884, 886
Fernau & Hartman, Architects, 877, 996
Fetzer Winery building (Mendocino County, CA), 248, 249
Fiber optics, 561–562, 724–728
15/30 guideline (lighting design), 601–602
Filters:
air, 145–147
building envelope elements as, 176
daylight, 592
HVAC, 424
for noise cancellation, 848, 849
Filtration, water supply, 913–915
Finnish contraflow masonry heaters, 342
Finnish Embassy (Washington, DC), 167
Finnish Embassy, (Washington, DC), 167
Fire alarm systems, 1133–1161
addressable, 1142–1143
addressable analog (intelligent), 1143
audible and visual alarm devices, 1156–1157
auxiliary systems, 1137
central station systems, 1139
circuit supervision, 1139
for commercial buildings, 1158–1159
conventional systems, 1139–1141
dual-coded systems, 1142
false alarm mitigation, 1153–1155
fire codes, authorities, standards, 1134–1136
flame stage detectors, 1144, 1150
general recommendations for, 1133–1134
heat stage detectors, 1144, 1150–1153
for high-rise office buildings, 1159–1161
household fire warning systems, 1137
incipient stage detectors, 1144–1145
for industrial buildings, 1161
institutional systems, 1158–1159
manual stations, 1155–1156
master-coded systems, 1141
multiple-dwelling, 1158
noncoded systems, 1140–1141
presignaling, 1142
proprietary, 1138
protected premises systems, 1137
remote-station protective signaling systems, 1137–1138
residential, 1157–1158
selective-coded systems, 1142
signal processing, 1142
smoldering stage detectors, 1144–1149
sprinkler alarms, 1156
terminology related to, 1136–1137
types of, 1137–1139
Wilson cloud chamber detectors, 1153, 1154
zone-coded systems, 1141–1142
Fire protection, 1085–1161
alarm systems, 1133–1161
combustion products, 1086–1087
and continuity of operations, 1097
control systems, 1088, 1089
design for fire resistance, 1085–1097
escalators, 1486–1488

fire suppression systems, 1102–1129
ignition sources, 1086
lightning protection, 1129–1133
objectives in fire safety, 1087–1088
protection of life, 1088, 1090–1094
protection of property, 1094–1097
smoke control, 1097–1102
Fire-Safe Building Design for Architects and Designers, 1735
Fire sprinklers, automatic, 1096
Fire suppression systems, 1102–1129
carbon dioxide, 1126–1128
clean agent gases, 1128
foams, 1126, 1127
halogenated hydrocarbons, 1124–1126
intumescent materials, 1123
portable fire extinguishers, 1128–1129
water, 1102–1123
First cost, 11
First Village (Santa Fe, NM), 1652
Fishbeck, Thompson, Carr & Huber, 437
Fisk, Pliny, 38
Fixed shading, 169
Fixtures, *see* Plumbing fixtures
Flame stage detectors, 1149–1150
Flanking sound paths, 824–826, 835
Flat-cable assemblies, 1256–1258
Fletcher—Munson equal loudness contours, 745–746
Flexible armored cable, 1252, 1253
Flexible metal conduit, 1262, 1263
Flocculation (water filtration), 914
Floodlighting, 721–723
Floors:
below-grade, 1625
DETD for, 1653
full-access, 1271–1273
and impact noise control, 842, 843
R-values for, 1621
slab-on-grade, 192–193
sound transmission data for, 1723–1732
and speech privacy, 839
thermal performance of, 192
U-factors for, 1619
Floor drains, 1011, 1014
Floor raceways, 1265–1267
Floors:
below-grade, 1625
DETD for, 1653
slab-on-grade, 1625
Fluid-filled transformers, 1194
Fluorescent lamps, 543–552
compact, 551–552
construction of, 543–546
label designations, 546
noise from, 851, 852
operating characteristics of, 547–550
special types of, 550–551
standards for, 550
types of, 546–547
Fluoridation (water), 921
Flush mode (IAQ), 116
Flutter (sound), 786
Foams, fire suppression, 1126, 1127
Foamability, water, 910
Focusing (of sound), 787, 788
Footcandles (fc), 472
Footing drains, 887, 890
Footprints:
ecological, 43
environmental, 42–43
Forced-air heating systems, 356–363
Forced-circulation hot water systems, 938
Form, building, 216–218
FormZ RadioZity, 1735
form•Z RenderZone PLUS, 618, 619
Fort Ord (CA), 38
Foster, Norman, 587
Fox and Fowle, Architects, P.C., 461
Fox Plaza (Los Angeles, CA), 389–391
Fox Plaza Building (San Francisco, CA), 384–386
Franklin cone, 1130–1131
Frederick Meijer Gardens (Grand Rapids, MI), 435, 437
Free field, acoustic, 775
Free-form open plan offices, 380
Freight elevators, 844, 1454–1457
Frequency (of sounds), 740–742
Fresh water supply, 865
Fresnel lenses, 637
Fuel. *See also* Energy
calculating consumption of, 259–263
for fires, 1085
storage of, 355
Fuel cells, 457, 458, 460–462
Full-access floor, 1271–1273
Functional redundancy, 21
Furnaces, 359, 363–365
Furniture arrangement, speech privacy and, 835–836
Fuses, 1204, 1205

G

Garbage compactors, 1073, 1078
Garbage disposers, 1073
Gaseous discharge lights, 540–543
Gas-fired cast iron hot water boilers, 345, 346
Gas-fired heaters, 343–344
Gas-sensing fire detectors, 1145
GAX heat pumps, 368, 372
GBTool, 14
Geared traction machines, 1397
Gearless traction machines, 1396–1397
General diffuse lighting, 576, 577
General lighting, 573
General Mills building (Minneapolis, MN), 1107, 1108
General practice, 11, 12
Geo Exchange systems, 370, 416–421
Geographic scales of concern, 28
George Washington Bridge (New York City), 66
Geothermal heat pumps, 370
Geothermal systems, 79
Giampolo and Associates, Inc., 339
Gillies Stransky Brems Smith, Architects, 439

Gilman Ordway Campus (Woods Hole Research Center), 22–26
Givoni, Baruch, 97, 104, 114, 251, 286, 305, 314, 324
Glare, 497
  direct (discomfort), 497–501
  with industrial lighting, 715
  minimizing, 589
  reflected (veiling), 500–506, 508–511
Glazing:
  heat gain through glass, 1655–1656
  for passive solar buildings, 1645–1649
  for passive solar heating, 263, 265–267
  solar optical properties of, 1631
Gnomonic sunpath projection, 158, 159
Goenner, Sara, 622
Graduate Theological Union Library (Berkeley, CA), 592
Graff, George P., 1070
Graphic daylighting design method (GDDM), 612–614
Graywater, 1055
  for heat pumps, 959
  recycling of, 1055–1060
Grease traps, 1012, 1014, 1016
Green, Bailey, 1040
Green Building Advisor, 1733
Green Building Assessment Tool (GBTool), 1735
Green design, 16, 150
Green design rating systems, 14
Greenhouses, 110
Greenhouse ecosystems, 1043–1047
Greenhouse effect, 67, 69
Green on the Grand (Kitchener, Ontario), 447
Grid-connected photovoltaic systems, 1330, 1331, 1336–1337, 1343–1346
Grondzik, Walter, 45, 47, 157, 442, 525, 593, 594, 625, 1128, 1347, 1348
Grounding and ground-fault protection, 1291–1294
Ground source heat pumps, 370–373
Groundwater, 79–80
Grove, Sir William, 457
Guidelines, 11, 12. *See also* Design guidelines
Gutters, 887, 893, 896–897
Gymnasiums, lighting for, 700

H

Haggard, Ken, 311
Haglund, Bruce, 4
Halogenated hydrocarbons (halons), 1124–1126
Handbooks, 11, 12
Hanging panels (sound absorption), 802, 803
Harbortown apartments/ townhouses (Detroit, MI), 457, 459
Hardin, Garrett, 54
Hardness, water, 910, 911
Harmonics (overtones), 741
Harmonic currents, 1322–1323
Hartley & Marks, 145
Harvard Business School Class of 1959 Chapel (Cambridge, MA), 277–278
Hawaii Medical Services Association building (Honolulu, HI), 167
Hay, Harold R., 311
Hayward, John, 115
Header ducts, 1277
Hearing, 743–749
Hearing protection, 763–765, 850
Heater-type composting toilets, 1003, 1004
Heat exchangers, 137–141
Heat flow, 175–212
  and building envelope, 175–180
  calculating, 207–211
  and envelope thermal design standards, 211–212
  in human body, 90–91
  latent, through opaque envelope, 197–198
  sensible, through opaque walls/ roofs, 180, 182–197
  in slab-on-grade floors, 1625
  through below-grade walls and floors, 1625
  through transparent/ translucent elements, 199–204
  and trends in envelope thermal protection, 204–205
  via air movement, 206–207
Heat gain:
  from appliances, 1659
  due to infiltration/ventilation, 1657
  from office equipment, 1658
  summer, 1650–1651
  through glass, 1655–1656
Heat gain (cooling load):
  from appliances, 261, 1659
  from building occupants, 1657
  calculating, 281–285, 289–291
  design, 209–210
  due to infiltration/ventilation, 1657
  from lighting, 261
  from office equipment, 1658
  with passive solar heating, 281–285
  summer, 238–240, 1650–1651
  through glass, 1655–1656
Heating. *See also* Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC)
  and building form, 218
  combined strategies for, 111–114
  design analysis software for, 1734
  design guidelines for, 1645–1664
  design strategies for, 108–110
  psychrometric chart for, 289
  seasonal fuel consumption, 260–263
  solar, *see* Solar heating
  of ventilation air, 132–133
Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) (for large buildings), 377–463
  air and water systems, 396–397, 442–452
  air distribution within spaces, 429–437
  air handling equipment, 422, 424, 426
  all-air systems, 393–396, 436, 437–443
  all-water systems, 397–398, 452–454

basic organization of, 377–392
boilers, 401, 403–410
central equipment for, 401–429
central equipment location, 386
central vs. local systems, 378–380
chillers, 407–408, 410–414
cogeneration, 456–463
comparing systems and zones, 381–383
concealment/exposure of pipes, ducts, conduits, 386, 387
condensing water equipment, 412–418
controls, 425–430
direct refrigerant systems, 393
distribution trees, 383–386
district heating and cooling, 454–456
energy conservation equipment, 414, 416, 418
energy storage, 421–425
equipment space allocations, 398–401
Geo Exchange systems, 416–417, 419–421
mechanical-structural integration or separation, 386–387
and similarity of building interiors, 379—381
system variations, 393
zoning, 378
Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) (for smaller buildings), 325–376
air—air heat pumps, 364–365, 367–370
ceiling electric resistance heat, 344, 345
combustion, 354
controls, 329
cooling coils added to warm air furnaces, 363–365
cooling-only systems, 331, 333–338
electric resistance heaters, 342–343
equipment efficiency, 354–356
equipment location and service distribution, 327–329
evaporative coolers, 335, 337
evaporative cooling, 333–339
fuel storage, 355
gas-fired heaters, 343–344
ground source heat pumps, 370–373
heating/cooling systems, 363–374
heating equipment efficiency, 354–356
heating-only systems, 338–363
hot water baseboard and radiator systems, 345–349
hot water boilers, 344–346
hydronic heating sizing, 350–352
hydronic zoning, 352–354
indirect evaporative cooling, 337–339
misting, 333–335
and need for mechanical equipment, 325–326
psychrometric chart, 374–376
radiant panels, 348, 350
refrigeration cycles, 329–332
roof spray, 334–336
typical design processes for, 326–327
unit air conditioners, 331, 333, 334
warm air heating systems, 356–363
water source heat pumps, 373–374
wood heating devices, 340–342
Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC). *See also* Thermal comfort
basic organization of systems, 378, 379
central vs. local, 327–329, 378–380
electric loads for, 1284–1285
need for, 325–326
noise from, 852
and smoke exhaust systems, 1099
typical design processes for, 326–327
zoning in, 122–125
Heating capacity, 344
Heating-only systems:
equipment efficiency for, 354–356
for smaller buildings, 338–363
Heating seasonal performance factor (HSPF), 367
Heat islands, 52, 53
Heat loss:
design, 207–209
for slab-on-grade floors, 1625
whole-building heat loss criteria, 227, 230–231
worst-hourly, 258–260
Heat pipes, 139–140
Heat pumps, 367, 368
air—air, 364–365, 367–372
ground source, 370–373
water loop, 394, 397, 448–452
water source, 373–374
Heat pump water heaters, 959
Heat sinks, 79, 106
Heat stage detectors, 1150–1153
Heliodon, 622
Heliostat, 597
Hellmuth, Obata + Kassabaum, 122–124
Helmholtz resonators, 770, 798–800
Heschong, Lisa, 92
High-efficiency particulate arrestance (HEPA) filters, 145
High-grade fuels, 30
High-intensity discharge (HID) lamps, 540, 552–559
low-pressure sodium, 559
mercury vapor, 552–555
metal halide, 555–557
noise from, 851, 852
sodium vapor, 557–559
High-mass cooling, 106–107
High-performance windows, 200
High-rise buildings:
fire alarm systems for, 1159–1160
lightning protection systems for, 1132–1133
High-temperature water (HTW) distribution, 454–456
Hole-less hydraulic elevators, 1401
Holl, Steven, 595
Hollow light guides, 728–729
Hong Kong International Airport, 587
Hood River County Library (Hood River, OR), 18, 19

Horizontal conveyors, 1468
Horizontal illuminance, 529–530, 615
Horizontal layering, 55, 56
Horizontal shadow angle (HSA), 167, 168
Horizontal sunpath projection, 159, 160, 169
Horsepower, 184
Hospitals, elevator/escalators for, 1423, 1436
Hotels:
  elevator/escalator requirements for, 1423
  HVAC for, 427
  signal systems for, 1365–1366
Hot water boilers, 344–346
Hot water heating systems, 345–348. *See also* Domestic hot water systems
  sizing of, 350–352
  zoning for, 352–355
Hourly heat gain calculations, 289–291
Houses of worship, STC/IIC criteria for, 856
Human Ecosystems, 42
Humidification, 141–145
Humidity, 93–98. *See also* Relative humidity
Humidity ratio, 286
Hunter Douglas, Inc., 266
Hursley, Timothy, 75
Hybrid-interactive system, 1240
Hybrid systems, 11
Hydraulic elevators, 1398–1400
Hydrogen fuel, 31
Hydrologic cycle, 868–870
Hydronic systems, *see* Hot water heating systems
Hydrozone concept, 892, 893
Hyndburn Borough Council building (England), 417, 420–421
Hypothalamus, 89

I

IBM Tower (Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia), 165
Ice storage tanks, 421, 424
IEC (International Electrotechnical Commission), 1216
IESNA (Illuminating Engineering Society of North America), 467, 495–496
IESNA lumen method, 600, 614–617
Illuminance, 472–473. *See also* Lighting
  average illuminance, 660–661
  and cavity reflectances, 672–674
  horizontal illuminance, 661
  levels of, 491–492
  from linear and area sources, 678
  measurement of, 476–477
  North American recommendations for, 494–497
  at a point, 673
  from a point source, 676–677
  recommendations for, 493–497
  terminology used with, 612
Illuminance "cone" charts, 676
Illuminating Engineering Society of North America (IESNA), 467, 495–496
I.M. Pei and Partners, Architects, 181
Impact insulation class, 1725
Impact isolation class (IIC), 843, 854–857
Impact noise control, 851–853
Impedance, 1166, 1172
Imported energy, 215
Incandescent lamps, 531–540
  energy-saving, 535–536
  filament, 531–534
  reflector, 535
  tungsten-halogen (quartz-iodine), 536–537
Incipient stage fire detectors, 1142–1145
Inclined elevators, 1460, 1462
Incremental paving, 885
Indirect evaporative cooling, 137
Indirect-gain (TW) systems, 110
Indirect lighting, 573, 575
Indoor air pollution, 117–120
Indoor air quality (IAQ), 115–150
  active approaches for, 133–149
  active approaches for control of, 133–149
  and building design, 116
  controls for, 149
  and occupant health/productivity, 149–150
  passive/low-energy approaches to, 125–133
  pollutant sources and impacts, 117–120
  predicting, 120–122
  zoning for, 122–125
Induction HVAC systems, 394, 397, 443–444
Induction lamps, 559–561
Industrial buildings:
  fire alarm systems for, 1161
  lighting for, 714–716
  signal systems for, 1375–1381
Industrial noise levels, 763
Inertia block, 845
Information Age, design for, 40–41
Infrared (IR) radiation detectors, 1149–1150
Initial illuminance, 612
Initial (simple) rate of return, 1702–1703
Inland Revenue Centre (Nottingham, England), 295, 296
Input, sound, 793
Inside Out (Brown, Reynolds, and Ubbelohde), 158–160
Insolation, 101, 153
Instantaneous water heaters, 934–935
Institutional facilities:
  electric lighting for, 695–703
  fire alarm systems for, 1158–1160
Insulated cables in open raceways, 1249
Insulated conductors in closed raceways, 1249
Insulated masonry systems, 191
Insulating concrete forms (ICFs), 191
Insulation:
  by clothing, 91, 92
  of heating system pipes, 348
  thermal properties of, 1591–1611
  of transformers, 1190, 1191, 1193–1194
  trends in, 205

Insulators, 187
Integrated ceilings, 713
Integrated part load value (IPLV), 356
Integration of systems, 18–19
Intelligent buildings, 40, 1383, 1388–1390
Intelligent fire alarm systems, 1143
Intelligent panelboards, 1212, 1214–1215
Intelligent residences, 1389–1390
Intelligent UPS equipment, 1242
Intensity distribution curves, 480–481
Interceptors, 1012, 1014, 1016
Intercom systems, 1361, 1368–1369
Interior wiring systems, 1248–1249
Intermittent sand filters, 1038
Internal load dominated (ILD) buildings, 216
Internally reflected component (IRC) of daylight, 599
Internal rate of return (IRR), 1703, 1704
International Building (San Francisco, CA), 389, 392
International Building Code, 11
International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), 1216
International Initiative for a Sustainable Built Environment, 1735
Intrusion detection, 1355–1360
Intumescent materials, 1123
Inverse square law, 478–480, 751
Ion exchange, 920
Iowa Public Service offices (Sioux City), 421, 425
I-P units, 183
Iris scanning system, 1381
Irrigation, 33
Isolated-gain (SS) systems, 110
Isolux (isofootcandle) charts, 674, 675
Isolux pattern, 613
ITT Bell and Gossett, 353, 407

J

J. Paul Getty Museum (Los Angeles, CA), 595
Jackaway, Adam, 6
Jean Vollum Natural Capital Center (Portland, OR), 14
Jestico + Whiles + Associates, 420
Jet pumps, 924–926
Jetted wells, 922
John Andrews home (Australia), 879, 881–882
John Andrews International Pty. Ltd., 881
John Graham & Associates, Architects, 177
John Hancock Center (Chicago, IL), 1132–1133, 1454
John Hancock Headquarters (Boston, MA), 181
Johnson Fain Pereira Associates, Architects, 390
Johnston, William, 29
Jonathan Hillyer Photography, Inc., 319, 321
Jones, B. F., 671
Joules, 184

K

Kallman, McKinnell and Knowles, Architects, 56
Karen Terry House (Santa Fe, NM), 1652
Kelbaugh House (Princeton, NJ), 1652
Kildow, William, 459
Kim, Casey and Harase, Inc., 390
Kira, Alexander, 961–965
Kitchen equipment, electric loads for, 1285
Kniepp, K. G., 730
Knowles, Ralph, 60, 88
Krieger, Charles, 392
Kubala Washatko Architects, Inc., 83–87
Kwok, Alison, 14, 17, 19, 25, 165–167, 525, 587, 591–597, 622, 625, 919, 1350

L

Laboratories:
  HVAC for, 427
  lighting for, 700–701
Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Research Center (Austin, TX), 892, 893, 902–907
Lagoons (sewage), 875, 1039–1040
Lai, Judy, 619
Lamp shielding, 632
Landfills, 1070
Landfill gas, 1070
Large buildings:
  HVAC for, 377–463
  liquid waste piping for, 1018, 1020, 1023–1029
  solid waste system in, 1074–1077
Laser beam photoelectric detectors, 1147, 1148
Latent heat, 281
Latent heat flow, 183, 197–198
Latent heat gains, 283
Lateral adaptation, 518
Lavatories, 960–961
Law and Education Building (Boston, MA), 181
Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, 1734
Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, 1735
Leaders (downspouts), 887, 893, 899
Lechner, Norbert, 114
Le Corbusier, 467
Lecture halls, lighting for, 700
LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) rating system, 10, 14, 38, 39, 150, 1668
Levitt and Sons, 366
Libraries, lighting for, 701–702
Library Square (Vancouver, British Columbia), 433
Lidz, Jane, 899
Lieberg, Owen S., 456
Liebl, John, 366
Life-cycle assessment software, 1733
Life-cycle cost, 11, 1701–1702, 1736
Life Safety Code, 717
Light-duty plug-in busway, 1256–1257
Light-emitting diodes (LEDs), 560–561
Lighting, 467–524. *See also* Daylighting
  brightness, 473
  British standards for, 493–495

Lighting (*Continued*)
categorized by type of task, 492–493
chromaticity, 518–519
color rendering index, 522–524
color temperature, 514–515
control of reflected glare, 508–511
direct (discomfort) glare, 497–500
electric loads for, 1283–1284
equivalent spherical illumination, 506–507
for escalators, 1488, 1489
exitance, 473–474
heat gains from, 282–283
illuminance, 472–473
illuminance levels, 491–492
illuminance measurement, 476–477
illuminance recommendations, 493–498
intensity distribution curves, 480–481
inverse square law, 478–480
and light as radiant energy, 468–469
luminance, 473–476
luminance measurement, 477–478
luminance ratios, 512
luminous flux, 471–472
luminous intensity, 471, 480
and object colors, 515–517, 523
patterns of luminance, 512–514
quality of, 497
reactions to colored light, 518
reflectance, 469, 470
reflectance measurements, 478, 479
relative visual performance, 507–508
and sight, 481–491
spectral distribution of light sources, 519–522
transmittance, 469, 470
uniformity of, 638, 640–645
veiling reflections (reflected glare), 500–506
Lighting Analysts, Inc., 1735
Lighting control, 649–660
control initiation, 651–654
dimming, 651
requirement for, 649–650
residential, 692, 695
for schools, 703
stand-alone systems for, 1381–1382
strategy for, 654–660
switching, 650–651
Lighting design, 563–586
and apparent size of room, 585
cost factors in, 566
daylighting, *see* Daylighting design
for defining "territories" in large spaces, 586
direct-indirect lighting, 576, 577
direct lighting, 576, 578–580
electrical, *see* Electrical lighting design
energy considerations, 569–572
general diffuse lighting, 576, 577
goals of, 563–564
illumination methods, 573
indirect lighting, 573–575
power budget determination, 566–567
preliminary, 572–573
procedure for, 564–566
semi-direct lighting, 576, 578
semi-indirect lighting, 575–576
size and pattern of luminaires, 580–585
task analysis, 567–569
types of lighting systems, 573
wall-lighting patterns, 585
Lighting fixtures, *see* Luminaires
Lighting Technologies, Inc., 1735
Lighting track, 1258
Light loss factor (LLF), 615, 616, 657, 661–663
Lightning protection, 1129–1133
Light pipes, 30, 596, 597, 734
Light pollution, 721, 723
Light sources, 525–562
daylight, 525–531
electric light, 526, 531–562
selecting, 526
spectral distribution of, 519–521
Lillis Business Complex (University of Oregon), 1349–1351
Limit and safety controls, 425
Linear elevator motor drive, 1467
Linear heat detectors, 1151–1153
Line-interactive system, 1240
Linen systems, pneumatic, 1473
Liquid-insulated transformers, 1193–1194
Liquid waste, 999–1063
backwater valves, 1011, 1014
cleanouts, 1014, 1015
drainage principles, 1005–1008
floor drains, 1011, 1014
interceptors, 1012, 1014, 1016
larger-building waste piping, 1018, 1020, 1023–1026
larger-scale sewage treatment systems, 1047, 1051–1055
on-site individual building sewage treatment, 1029–1037
on-site multiple-building sewage treatment, 1037–1050
piping and fittings for, 1008–1015
recycling of graywater, 1055–1060
residential waste piping design, 1015–1023
sewage sumps and ejectors, 1011–1012, 1015
stormwater treatment, 1060–1063
waterless toilets, 999–1004
waterless urinals, 1004–1005
Lithonia Lighting, 1735
"Liveness" of space, 773–774
Living Machine, 18
Load centers, 1210
Load center transformers, 1190
Load collector ratio (LCR), 269, 273–276
Load control principles, 1211–1212
Load estimating, 1283–1285
Load tabulation, 1315–1317
Lobbies:
elevator, 1437–1438
escalator space in, 1481–1482

Local Climate Data (LCD), 105
Local heating/cooling, 327, 378–380
Local lighting, 573
Long-life lamps, 535
LonMark, 428
Lord, Aeck & Sargent, Inc., 319–322
Lorsch, Harold, 150, 376, 463
Loudspeakers, 793–795
Louvers (light diffusion), 636, 637
Low-consumption toilets, 967–970
Low-emittance (low-ε) windows, 201
Low-grade fuels, 31
Low-pressure sodium lamps, 559
Lowry, William P., 51–53, 88, 997
Low-voltage control, 1224–1228
Low-voltage switching, 1224–1230
Ludwig, Art, 1057
Lumen (lm), 471
Lumen Designer, 619, 1735
Lumen maintenance, 657–659
Lumen method, 661
Lumen Micro 2000, 619, 621
Luminaires, 629–688
  characteristics of, 629–630
  construction of, 646–647
  design considerations for, 629–630
  diffusers, 635–639
  distribution characteristics of, 630–632
  efficacy rating, 648–649
  lamp shielding, 632
  lighting fixtures, 646–648
  luminous efficiency, 648
  mounting height, 645–646
  reflectors, 633–635
  for residential lighting, 691–694
  size and pattern of, 580–585
  and speech privacy, 839
  uniformity of illumination, 638, 640–645
Luminance, 473–476
  average luminance, 681–687
  measurement of, 477–478
  patterns of, 512–514
Luminance ratios (contrast), 485–488, 512
Luminous efficiency, 648
Luminous exitance, 473–474
Luminous flux, 471–472
Luminous intensity (candela) (cd/cp), 471, 480
Luminous transmittance, 469
Lux (lx), 472
Lyle, Harriet, 42
Lyle, John, 16
Lyle, John Tillman, 17, 42

M

McGuinness, William, 1056
McPherson, E. G., 892
Macroclimates, 28
Maekawa'e empirical equation, 823, 824
Magnetic deviation, 157
Magrab, E. B., 753, 782, 811, 815, 817
Maintained illuminance, 612
Maintenance costs, 11
Majeski, Nathan, 41, 592
Manual load/unload dumbwaiters, 1468, 1469
Manufactured wiring systems, 1275, 1277–1279
Marsh, Andrew J., 619
Masking, sound, 66
Masonry heaters, 342
Master-coded fire alarm systems, 1141
Materials:
  dynamic thermal effects with, 196–197
  electrical, 1246–1248
  environmentally responsible, 149–150, 1246–1248
  phase-change, 234–236
  reflectances of, 616
  for sound absorption, 770–773, 801–804
  thermal classifications of, 187–188
  thermal properties of, 183–187
  for waste piping, 1008–1011, 1013–1014
Material-handling equipment, 1467
Material resources, 34–39
Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), 150
Max Fordham and Partners, 131
Mayer Art Center (Phillips Exeter Academy, NH), 354, 355
Mazria, Edward, 61, 62, 324, 596, 1587
Mazria/Schiff & Associates, Architects, 369
Mean radiant temperature (MRT), 96
Mean solar day, 156
Mean spherical candlepower (mscp), 480
Mechanical motion detectors, 1356
Mechanical system noise control, 843–853
  active noise cancellation, 848–850
  duct systems, 845–847
  electrical equipment, 850–852
  noise due to equipment location, 852
  piping systems, 850, 851
  quieting of machines, 844–845
  sound isolation, 852–853
  sources of noise, 843–844
Media filters, 145
Meendering, Jonathan, 19, 20, 30, 71, 159, 189, 190, 196, 236, 242, 476, 477, 541
Meier, Richard, 595
Membrane filtration (water), 915
Mercury vapor lamps, 552–555
Merrick, Hedrick-Blessing, 440
Metabolism, 89–90
Metal halide lamps, 555–557
Metering, electric, 1195
Methane, 120
Methane gas, 1070
Mexico, outside design conditions for, 1515, 1524
Microclimates, 28, 51–55
Microfiltration (water), 915
Microprocessors, 1202, 1206
Miller, H., 295, 297–298, 324
Millet, Marietta, 601
Milne, Murray, 1733, 1734
Mirror boxes, 621–622
Mirror-glass windows, 64
Mist fire suppression systems, 1120–1123, 1125
Model codes, 11
Modular ceilings, 713, 714
Modular lighting, 673, 675

Modules, PV, 1333–1334
Mogesen, Budd, 1021
Moisture control, 197–198. *See also* Psychrometry
Moore, Fuller, 126, 596
Moreland-Unruh-Smith, Architects, 182
Morgan Lewis Building (Washington, DC), 597
Moshe Safdi and Associates, Inc., 277
Motels, signal systems for, 1365–1366
Motion detectors, 1356–1357
Motors, 1215–1216
Motor control, 1216–1218
  variable-voltage, variable-frequency AC motor control, 1414–1415
  variable-voltage DC motor control, 1414
Mounds, leaching, 875
Mt. Angel Abbey Library (OR), 18
Mount Airy Library (Mount Airy, NC), 365, 369, 596
Movable fixed shading devices, 169
Moving electric stairways, 1477–1495
  applications, 1489, 1490
  budget estimating for, 1492
  construction arrangements for, 1477
  crisscross arrangement, 1477–1479
  electric power requirements, 1490–1491
  elevators and escalators, 1490
  fire protection, 1486–1489
  lighting, 1489
  location for, 1480–1483
  major components of, 1484–1485
  as noise source, 844
  parallel escalators, 1476–1482
  preliminary design data and installation drawings, 1491–1492
  safety features, 1485–1486
  size, speed, capacity, rise, 1483–1484
  special-design escalators, 1491
Moving walks and ramps, 1492–1495
MR-16 precision reflector lamps, 538–539
Multiple chemical sensitivity, 149–150
Multiple-dwelling buildings:
  elevator/escalators for, 1423, 1436
  fire alarm systems for, 1158
  signal systems for, 1363–1366
  STC/IIC criteria for, 853–854, 856–857
Multiplexing, 1140
Multipurpose rooms, 689–700, 1736
Multizone elevator systems, 1434–1435
Multizone HVAC systems, 394, 441–442
Munsell Color System, 515–517
Music rooms, 698, 784–785

N

Nanofiltration (water), 917, 918
Napa Valley Museum (CA), 996, 997
National Audubon Society, 624, 1077
National Building Code (Canada), 11
National Climatic Data Center, 105
National Electrical Code (NEC), 1245–1246, 1281
National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC), 199, 200
National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), 1085, 1134
National Gallery, East Wing (Washington, DC), 587
National Institute of Building Sciences, 206
National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), 1733, 1736
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), 105
National Wildflower Research Center (Austin, TX), *see* Lady Bird Johnson Wildflower Research Center (Austin, TX)
Natural ventilation cooling, 105–106
Near field, acoustic, 775
Nelson, Glenn, 1057
Net I = B = R rating, 344
Net metering, 1330
New Canaan (CT) Nature Center, 235–237
New England Merchants' Bank (Boston, MA), 181
New Orleans Convention and Exhibition Center, 884
New York Institute of Technology sewage treatment plant, 1047, 1049–1050
Nicol, J. F., 97, 99, 114
Night roof spray thermal storage system (NRSTS), 334–336
Night ventilation of thermal mass, 243–247, 295, 297–302
Niles, Phillip, 311
Noise, 65–67, 758–765
  acceptable background noise criteria, 758–759
  annoyance concept with, 758
  due to equipment location, 852
  hearing protection, 763–765
  in mechanical systems, 843–844
  noise criteria curves, 750
  room criteria curves, 760–763
Noise control:
  in buildings, 797–862
  for mechanical systems, 843–844
  and room acoustics, 773–792
Noise criteria (NC) curves, 759–760
Noise reduction (NR), 777–781, 797, 808
Noise reduction coefficient (NRC), 780, 782, 808, 833
Nonmetallic conduit, 1262–1263
Nonmetallic sheathed cable, 1252, 1254
Nonrenewable resources, 27, 29–30, 35
Normally-closed (NC) contact sensors, 1355–1356
Normally-open (NO) contact sensors, 1355–1356
North American illuminance recommendations, 494–497

North Central Airlines Hanger Building (Detroit, MI), 1126, 1127

O

Objects:
colors of, 488, 515–517
visual, size of, 484
Observation cars, 1458–1460
Ocasta Junior/Senior High School (Westport, WA), 434–436
Occidental Chemical Corporate Office Building (Niagara Falls, NY), 132, 133
Occupancy sensors, for lights, 655–658
Occupants, heat gain from, 1657
Occupational Safety and Health Administration/Act (OSHA), 763, 765
Oceanside Water Pollution Control Plant (San Francisco, CA), 1051, 1052, 1054–1055
Octagon (Liverpool, England), 115
Octave bands, 742
Odors, 117
Offending zone, 594
Offices:
branch circuit design for, 1315
lighting for, 709–713
open-area, speech privacy in, 832–841
STC/IIC criteria for, 856
Office buildings:
elevator/escalators for, 1423, 1435–1436
fire alarm systems for, 1159–1160
HVAC control for, 427–428
lighting for, 703–704
signal systems for, 1371–1375
Office equipment, heat gain from, 1658
Office plans, 380
Ohms, 1166
Ohm's law, 1167, 1172
Oil-fired steel boilers, 345
Oil-insulated transformers, 1193
O&K Rolltreppen, 1479, 1482, 1483, 1489, 1493, 1495
Olgyay, Victor, 50, 51, 99, 279
Olivier Theatre, Bedales School (Hampshire, England), 130–131
120/208-V, single-phase, 3-wire systems, 1287–1288
120/240-V, single-phase, 3-wire systems, 1286–1287
120-V, single-phase, 2-wire systems, 1286
On-line without bypass, 1240
On-site energy, 215
cogeneration, 456–463
daylighting, 111
sources of, 215
Opaque (software), 1734
Opaque envelope assemblies, 1653–1654
Open-celled pavers, 885, 886
Open control system architecture, 428
Open-frame envelope approach, 176, 178
Open sand filters, 1038
Operating costs, 11
Operative temperature, 95
Optical lighting film (OLF), 730
Optional standby systems, 1242–1243
Orr, David, 19
Oswald, William, 1040
Outdoor acoustics, 857–858
Outdoor air quality, 123
Outlet boxes, 1263, 1265
Ove Arup Partnership, 292, 296
Overall coefficient of thermal transmittance, *see* U-factors
Overcast sky, 526–528, 603
Overcurrent protection, 1300, 1304
Overhead electric service, 1186, 1187
Overhead groundshield wire, 1131
Owner's project requirements, 4
Oxidation:
in combustion, 1085
in water systems, 918, 919
Ozonation (drinking water), 916–917

P

Packaged filtration (water), 915
Package sewage plant drainfields, 875
Padre Dam Municipal Water District (CA), 1051–1053
Paging systems, 1378, 1380
Panelboards, 1210–1215
Panel feeder load calculation, 1320–1322
Panel filters, 145
Panel resonators, 798, 799
Panetta, Daniel, 1040, 1069
Parallel circuits, 1168–1169
Parallel escalators, 1479–1480
Particles/particle dispersoids (IAQ), 119, 120
Particulate filters, 145–146
Partitions:
AC rating for, 839
sound path and height of, 834, 835
Passenger elevators (traction), 1393–1451. *See also* Elevators
ADA accessibility requirements, 1408, 1409–1412
for apartment buildings, 1436
arranging vertical travel of, 1397–1398
average trip time, 1422–1425
cab and signal design, 1407–1408
car operating panel, 1419–1420
car speed, 1431–1432
codes and standards, 1394
dimensions and weights, 1437–1440
doors, 1403–1406
drive control, 1408, 1412
elevator operating control, 1415–1420
emergency power, 1446
energy conservation, 1445–1446
energy requirements, 1444–1445
fire safety, 1446–1447
geared traction machines, 1397
gearless traction machines, 1396–1397
handling capacity, 1421–1422
for hospitals, 1436
innovative equipment, 1449–1451
innovative motor design, 1467

Passenger elevators (traction) (*Continued*)
intervals and average lobby waiting time, 1421
lobby elevator panel, 1418–1419
multizone systems, 1434–1435
as noise source, 844
for office buildings, 1435–1436
power requirements, 1443–1444
principal components of, 1394–1396
rehabilitation work, 1417–1418
for retail stores, 1436–1437
round-trip time, 1423–1424, 1426–1430
safety devices, 1398, 1399
security, 1447
selection considerations for, 1420
shafts and lobbies, 1437, 1438
single-zone systems, 1432–1434
specifications for, 1448
structural stresses, 1440, 1443
system relationships, 1431
terms related to, 1420–1421
thyristor control, 1412–1414
variable-voltage, variable-frequency AC motor control, 1414–1415
variable-voltage DC motor control, 1414
Passive cooling, 74–76, 240–256
airflow for, 74
calculations for, 291–318
comfort standards for, 98–102
cooltowers, 247–253, 305–307
cross-ventilation, 240–241, 292–294
design guidelines for, 240–256
earth tubes, 253–254, 256, 311, 313–315
evaporative, 247, 250
fan-assisted evaporative cooling, 301, 303–304
integrating daylighting and passive solar heating with, 256–258
night ventilation of thermal mass, 243–247, 295, 297–302
roof ponds, 249–250, 253–255, 307–313
stack ventilation, 241–244, 294–295
Passive infrared (PIR) "presence" detectors, 1356, 1357
Passive solar buildings:
characteristics of, 1652
glazing area for, 1645–1649
thermal mass for, 1649
Passive solar heating, 55, 57, 58, 263–281
annual performance of systems, 1669–1699
comfort standards for, 98–102
comparison of systems for, 264–265
design guidelines for, 225, 227, 230–238
direct-gain systems, 264–265, 267
glazing performance, 263, 265–267
heat gain (cooling load) calculation, 281–285
for hot water, 947
integrating daylighting and cooling with, 256–258
internal temperatures, 279–281
LCR annual performance, 269, 273–276
maximum hourly heat loss in, 258–259
orientation for, 235, 238
roof ponds for, 106, 238
selecting approach to, 263–265
sensitivity curves, 276–278
solar savings fraction, 231–233
sunspaces, 264–265, 267–269
thermal lag through mass walls, 279
thermal mass, 233–235
Trombe walls, 264–265, 269, 270
U-factors for walls in, 1620
variations on reference systems, 276–279
water walls, 264–265, 269, 271–272
whole-building heat loss criteria, 227, 230–231
Passive sub-slab depressurization system, 131
Passive systems, 11, 16
Pasteur filters, 915
Pasveer oxidation stream, 1047, 1049–1050
Payback period, 1704–1706
Pei, Cobb, Freed & Partners, 596
Pei, I. M., 587
Pellet stoves, 341
Pendant sprinkler heads, 1108–1110
Perforated metal-faced absorptive materials, 801, 802
Performance codes, 10–11
Permeability, 197
Permeance, 197
Perron, Robert, 237, 270
Personal Environments® system, 434
Peterson, Larry, 8
pH, water, 910, 911
Phase-change materials, 234–236
Phase-change solar heating systems, 954–955
Philip Merrill Environmental Center (MD), 44–48
Philosophy of design, 16–21
Phoenix composting toilets, 1003, 1004
Phoenix Public Library (AZ), 594
Phons, 745
Photoelectric intrusion detectors, 1356
Photoelectric smoke detection, 1145–1149
Photovoltaic Industry Roadmap, 1329–1330
Photovoltaic systems, 1329–1351
arrays, 1333–1334
balance of, 1339
batteries in, 1338–1339
cells, 1331–1333
codes and standards, 1346–1347
economic considerations, 1337–1338
grid-connected systems, 1334, 1336–1337, 1343–1346
installations, 1347–1348
Lillis Business Complex case study, 1349–1351

stand-alone systems, 1334–1336, 1340–1343
Physical models (daylighting design), 621–623
Phytoremediation, 1061
Piano + Rogers, Architects, 387
Pipe expansion, in heating systems, 346
Piping:
for heating, 386
for impact noise control, 843
larger-building liquid waste, 1018, 1020, 1023–1029
for liquid waste, 1008–1011, 1013–1014
noise reduction in, 850, 851
rainwater, 899–901
residential liquid waste, 1015–1020
for water distribution systems, 980–994
Place Architecture LLC, 20, 21
Plante, Russell, 950
Plants, 80–83
irrigation for, 33
for water conservation, 892, 893
Plastic pipes/fittings, 983
Platen, Russell, 935
Plumbing fixtures, 959–974. *See also* Liquid waste
accessibility and privacy issues with, 970–974
bidets, 962
clothes washing machines, 970
dishwashers, 970
lavatories, 960–961
minimum number of, 873–875
physiological design criteria for, 960
toilets, 961–970
urinals, 963
and water conservation, 959–970
whole-body cleansing, 961, 962
Plunger-type hydraulic elevators, 1398–1401
Pneumatic trash and linen systems, 1473
Pneumatic tubes, 1468, 1473
Polar sunpath projection, 159, 160
Pollution:
air, 52, 54, 67, 69, 116–120, 878
indoor, 117–120
light, 721, 723
water, 909
Polycrystalline technology, 1332–1333
Population growth, 27
Porous pavement, 884–886
Porous stone filters, 915
Portable fire extinguishers, 1128–1129
Positive displacement pumps, 922, 924
Post-occupancy evaluation (POE), 10
Potable water, 1055
Potomac Mills Mall (VA), 1098
Power, energy vs., 1171–1172
Power conditioning, 1231–1239
Power drawings, 1300
Power factor (pf), 1172
Power line carrier (PLC) systems, 1228–1231
Preaction fire suppression systems, 1120, 1124
Precast cellular concrete floor raceways, 1270
Precipitation, 870
Precoat filters, 915
Predesign activities, 4
Premise wiring, residential, 1362–1363
Prescriptive codes, 10, 11
Pressure and temperature (P/T) relief valves, 946
Pressure tanks, well water, 926, 928–932
Principal exhaust fan, 135
Prismatic film light guides, 730–734
Prismatic lenses, 636–637
Prismatic light guides, 729–730
PROBE (post-occupancy review of building engineering) project, 10
Productivity:
and daylighting, 589
and indoor air quality, 149–150
and lighting, 714
Profile shadow angle, 167
Program, 4
Programmable controllers, 1202–1203
Programmable switches, 1201–1203
Progressive Architecture, 385, 392, 911, 923, 982
Project brief, 4
Projected beam photoelectric smoke detector, 1146–1147
Proprietary fire alarm systems, 1138
Protected premises fire alarm systems, 1137
Protected zones (for solar collection), 83
Psychrometric chart, 1663–1664
Psychrometry:
and design for heating and cooling, 286–289
for HVAC systems, 374–376
and refrigeration, 374–376
Puerto Rico, outside design conditions for, 1515, 1524
Pumps:
as noise source, 843, 850, 851
well water systems, 922–930
Pumped upfeed water distribution, 981–982
"Punkah" fan, 130
Pure tones, 741, 742

Q

Quartz-iodine lamps, 536–537
Quick-response, early suppression (QRES) sprinklers, 1117
Quick-response sprinklers, 1116–1117
Quieting of machines, 844–845

R

Raceways, *see* Electric wiring and raceways
Rack and pinion elevators, 1462–1463
Radiant asymmetry, 102–103
Radiant barriers, 187
Radiant energy, 468–469
Radiant heat, 101
Radiant panels, 348, 350, 352
Radiant panels with supplementary air, 394, 397, 446–449
Radiant temperature, 95

Radiation:
blackbody, 521
heat flow in, 183
in human body, 90, 91
Radiative cooling, 111
Radiator heating systems, 345–348
Radio frequency interference (RFI), 543, 1231
Radiosity techniques, 618
Radon, 120, 130, 132
Rainwater/stormwater, 76, 79, 876–901
cisterns for, 871, 873
collection and storage of, 878–883
porous pavement for retention of, 884–886
roof retention of, 884, 885
site design for recharging, 887–893
and site planning, 883–884
storm water system design, 893–901
treatment of, 1060–1063
Rammed earth, 1611
Ramps, moving, 1492–1494
Rate of return:
initial (simple), 1702–1703
internal, 1703, 1704
Ray diagramming, 788–789
RC Mark II method, 761
Real Goods Solar Living Center (Hopland, CA), 4–7
Receptacles, electric, 1221–1224
Recharge basins, 887, 890–891
Reciprocating chillers, 412, 413
Reciprocating displacement pumps, 922, 924
Recirculating sand filters, 1038–1039
Recommended Practice of Daylighting, 588
Rectilinear sunpath projection, 159–163
Recyclable buildings, 39
Recyclable materials, 1065–1068
Recycled graywater, 1055–1060
Recycled materials, 35, 38–39
Redundancy, functional, 21
Reens, L., 582
Reflectance (reflectance factor, reflectance coefficient), 469, 470
of building materials, 616
of daylighting modeling materials, 1575
and glare, 497–506, 508–511
of lighting reflectors, 633–635
measurement of, 478, 479
Reflected glare, 497, 508–511
Reflective materials, 187
Reflectors, 633–635
Reflector lamps, 535
Refrigerant dehumidifiers, 141, 144
Refrigeration:
alternative refrigerants, 330–331
chillers, 407–408, 410–414
design guidelines for, 401
and psychrometry, 374–376
sizing, 328
solar-driven, 368, 370
Refrigeration cycles, 329–333
Refuge areas (fire safety), 1094, 1097
Regenerative design, 16
Reiach & Hall and GMW Partnership, 381
Reif, Daniel K., 956
Relative humidity, 96–98
Relative visual performance (RVP), 507–508
Remote-control switches, 1199, 1200
Remote-control switching, 1225
Remote-control systems, 1380
Remote source lighting, 723–724
fiber-optic lighting, 724–728
hollow light guides, 728–729
prismatic film light guides, 730–734
prismatic light guides, 729–730
Remote-station protective signaling systems, 1137, 1138
Renewable resources, 27, 29, 35
Replacance, 121
Residences:
branch circuit design, 1307–1314
electrical equipment spaces, 1296–1297
elevators and chair lifts, 1464–1466
fire alarm systems, 1137, 1157–1158
intelligent, 1389–1390
lighting, 689–695
signal systems, 1358–1366
sprinklers, 1116
ventilation/exhaust air requirements, 1641
Resistance:
electric, 1166
thermal, 184, 186
Resonator sound absorbers, 803, 804
Resource-efficient buiding design, 1665–1668
Resource-efficient building design, 1665–1668
Resource recovery, 1065–1072
Retail stores, 1315, 1436–1437
Return grills (heating systems), 361, 362
Reverberant field, acoustic, 775
Reverberation, 773–775, 782–783
Reverse osmosis (RO), 920
Reynolds, John S., 28, 31
Reynolds, Vaughan, 296
Riser diagrams, 1323–1324
Robie House (Chicago, IL), 352, 354
Rock and Roll Hall of Fame and Museum (Cleveland, OH), 1100
Rock beds, 235
Roofs, 180–197
DETD for, 1653
heat gains through, 281–282
rainwater/stormwater retention, 884
R-values for, 1621
thermal performance of, 191–192
trends in, 205–206
U-factors for, 1619
Roof drains, 899
Roof ponds:
calculating cooling from, 307–313
design guidelines for, 249, 250, 253, 254
for high-mass cooling, 106
other passive systems vs., 264–265
for passive solar heating, 106

Roofs:
DETD for, 1653
R-values for, 1621
Roof spray cooling, 334–336
Room, lighting and apparent size, 585
Room acoustics, 773–792
auditorium design, 789–792
for music performance, 784–785
noise reduction by absorption, 777–781
noise reduction coefficient, 780, 782
ray diagrams, 788–789
reverberation, 773–775, 782–783
sound fields, 775
sound paths, 785– 788
sound power level, 775–777
sound pressure level, 775–777
for speech rooms, 782–783
Room criteria (RC) curves (noise), 760–763
Roped hydraulic elevators, 1401, 1402
Rosenthal, Steve, 455
Ross and Baruzzini, Inc., 508
Rossetti Associates and Foss, 425
Roth and Moore, 455
Rothe-Johnson, 449
Roughing-in (plumbing), 1020, 1023–1025
Rough service lamps, 535
Rousseau, D., 118, 145, 150
Runaround coils, 416, 418
Runoff, 870. *See also* Rainwater/stormwater
Rusch, Charles, 1045
Rutherford, Alan, 112
R-values, 1621

S

Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, 1394
Safety lighting (schools), 703
St. Enoch's Square (Glasgow, Scotland), 381
St. Ignatius Chapel, Seattle University (WA), 595
St. Louis Gateway Arch, 1460
Sanitary sewers, 867
Sanitary systems, 1285
San Luis Solar Group, 261
San Luis Solar Group Complex (Santa Margarita, CA), 261–262, 269
Santa Anna Monastery (Santa Anna, Italy), 525
Santee Water Reclamation Plant (CA), 1051–1053
Saturation line, 286
Scales of concern, 28
Scattered light photoelectric smoke detectors, 1147, 1148
Schematic design, 4–7
Schematic site plans, 55
Schenck, Gordon H., 369
Schools:
branch circuit design for, 1309, 1310, 1315
electric lighting for, 695–703
lighting for, 506, 507
signal systems for, 1366–1371
STC/IIC criteria for, 854–856
Screw compressor chillers, 412
Scroll compressor chillers, 412, 413
Seasonal energy efficiency ratio (SEER), 356, 367
Security systems:
for hotels/motels, 1365–1366
for multiple-occupancy dwellings, 1363–1364
for office buildings, 1371–1372
passenger elevators, 1447
for schools, 1366–1367
Sedimentation (water filtration), 913
Seeley G. Mudd Library, Yale University (New Haven, CT), 454, 455
Seepage pits, 1031, 1033
Selective-coded fire alarm systems, 1142
Selective surfaces, 187
Selective transmission films, 201–202
Selective vertical conveyors, 1468, 1472
Self-charging mechanical filters, 147
Self-propelled vehicles, 1474–1475
Selkowitz, Stephen, 200, 1628
Semi-direct lighting, 576, 578
Semi-indirect lighting, 575–576
Sensible evaporative refrigeration units, 338
Sensible heat, 281
Sensible heat flow, 180–197
composite thermal performance, 188–192
dynamic thermal effects, 196–197
latent heat flow vs., 183
with special envelope conditions, 192–195
static vs. dynamic, 183
surface temperatures and condensation, 195–196
thermal classifications of materials, 187–188
thermal properties of components, 183, 185–187
Sensitivity curves, 276
Septic tanks:
drainfields for, 875
for individual-building sewage treatment, 1029–1032
Series circuits, 1167–1168
Sert, Jackson and Gourley, Architects, 181
Service core, 1080–1081
Sewage treatment systems:
larger-scale, 1047, 1051–1055
on-site, individual building, 1029–1038
on-site, multiple-building, 1037–1050
sumps and ejectors, 1011–1012, 1015
Sewer systems:
total sewage flow estimation, 875–876
types of, 867
Shading, 164–173
design approaches for, 171, 173
finite horizontal shading devices, 169, 171, 172
operable shading devices, 164–165, 167
for orientation, 164–167
shading masks, 169–173
shadow angles, 167–168
Shading coefficient (SC), 200, 1632–1633, 1635–1637
Shading devices, thermal properties of, 1632–1637
Shading masks, 169–173

Shadow angles, 167–168
Shepley Rutan & Coolidge, 181
Shielding (lighting), 631, 632
Shooshanian Engineering Associates, Inc., 422
Shoshani, Sharon, 112
Showers, 961
Sick building syndrome (SBS), 116, 120–121, 180
Sidelighting, 111
Sidewall sprinkler heads, 1108–1110
Sight, 481–491
  in aging eyes, 490–491
  contrast and adaptation, 485–488
  and exposure time, 488
  eye, 481–482
  observer-related visibility factors, 489–490
  secondary task-related factors, 488–489
  size of visual object, 484
  subjective brightness, 484–485
  visual acuity, 482–484
Signal processing (fire alarm systems), 1142
Signal systems, 1355–1390
  automated, 1380–1390
  for industrial buildings, 1375–1380
  intrusion detection principles, 1355–1358
  for multiple-occupancy residences, 1363–1366
  for office buildings, 1371–1375
  for private residences, 1358–1363
  for school systems, 1366–1371
  for traction passenger elevators, 1407–1408
Sikidmore, Owings & Merrill, Architects, 441, 459, 1107
Simon, Wolfgang, 390
Simulation, daylighting, 617–621
Single-duct, variable-air-volume (VAV) systems, 393, 394, 438–439
Single duct HVAC systems with reheat, 394, 395, 442
Single-effect absorption cycle, 331, 332
Single-package heat pumps, 365
Single-wrap traction elevator machine, 1397
Single-zone elevator systems, 1432–1434
Single-zone HVAC systems, 393, 394, 438
SIP, 1611
Site(s):
  design strategies for, 55–57
  relationship of building to, 54–55
Site analysis, 49, 54–55
  airflow, 67–76
  building relationship to site, 54–55
  climates, 49–51
  daylight, 57–65
  microclimates, 55
  plants, 80–83
  rain and groundwater, 76–78
  sound, 65–67
Site planning, for rainwater/stormwater, 883–884
Site scale, 28
Siting:
  for daylighting, 589–590
  outdoor acoustics in, 857–858
Skin load dominated (SLD) buildings, 216
Sky component (SC) of daylight, 598, 1569–1574
Skylights:
  atubular, 597
  heat flow through, 199–204
  solar heat gain coefficient for, 1630
  Solatube®, 597
  thermal properties of, 1629–1630
  tubular, 596
  U-factors, 1629–1630
  for ventilation, 125–127
Skylines, 61, 63
Sky lobby elevator system, 1453–1454
Sky vault, 158
Slab-on-grade floors, 192–193
Sling psychrometer, 95
Slow sand filters, 914–915
Small buidings:
  air infiltration for, 1642–1644
Small buildings:
  air infiltration for, 1642–1644
  cooling for, 331, 333–339
  HVAC for, 325–376
  solid waste system in, 1072–1074
Smart houses/appliances, 40
Smart windows, 205
SmithGroup, 44–46
Smoke control, 1097–1102
Smoldering stage detectors, 1145–1149
Snow, 80
Society for the Preservation of New Hampshire Forests building (Concord, NH), 235, 236
Sodium vapor lamps, 557–559
Softening, water, 919–920
Soil gases, 120, 131
Soil moisture, 870
Sol-air temperature, 210
SOLAR 5, 1734
Solar Aquatics System, 1043, 1045
Solar constant, 153
Solar Design Associates, 1349
Solar energy, 33, 57
  design data for, 1531–1575
  insolation, 101
  and plants, 82
  for refrigeration, 368, 370
  sunlight, 57–65
Solar envelope, 40
Solar geometry, 153–164
  altitude and azimuth data, 1578
  horizontal projection sunpath charts, 1625–1628
  position of sun, 153–156
  solar vs. clock time, 156–157
  sun, 153
  sunpath projections, 157–163
  sunpeg charts, 1579–1582
  true south and magnetic deviation, 157
  vertical sunpath charts, 1587–1590
Solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC), 199–200
Solar heat gain factors, 1532–1541
Solar heating, 108–110
  active, 55
  direct-gain systems, 106, 108
  for hot water system, 946–959

indirect-gain systems, 110, 112–113
isolated-gain systems, 110
passive, *see* Passive solar heating
Solar Hemicycle (Jacobs House II) (Madison, WI), 55, 57, 58
Solar intensity tables, 1532–1541
Solar position tables:
I-P units, 1542–1549
SI units, 1550–1557
Solar radiation spectrum, 153
Solar reflections, 64–65
Solar savings fraction (SSF), 109
Solar stills, 921
Solar time, clock time vs., 156–157
Solar water heating, 1735
Solatube®, 597
Solid-state switches, 1201
Solid waste, 1065–1081
equipment for handling of, 1077–1080
high-grade resources in, 1065–1068
in large buildings, 1074–1077
low-grade resources in, 1068–1070
resource recovery, 1070–1072
and service core, 1080–1081
in small buildings, 1072–1074
Solomon Inc., 75
Sonoma Mountain Brewery Living Machine, 1043, 1046
Sound, 65–67, 740–743
absorption of, 767–773
airborne, 807–826
decibels, 751–753
in enclosed spaces, 767
measuring, 756, 758
room acoustics, 773–792
sources of, 748–749
Sound blocks, 802
Sound envelopment, 785
Sound fields, 775
Sound intensity, 742, 750–751
Sound intensity level, 742
Sound isolation, 827–828, 852–853
Sound magnitude, 742, 749–758
Sound paths, 785–788, 832–836
Sound power, 742, 749
Sound power level (PWL), 742, 755, 775–777, 857
Sound pressure, 742, 743, 749–750
Sound pressure level (SPL), 742, 746, 755, 756, 775–777, 857
Sound reinforcement systems, 792–795
Sound shadows, 66
Sound systems, 793–795, 1369, 1370, 1378
Sound transmission:
for floors/ceilings, 1723–1732
for walls, 1711–1721
Sound transmission class (STC), 809, 810, 814–816, 854–857
Sovent system, 1026–1029
Spacing criteria (SC) (luminaires), 640–644
Specific heat, 196
Specific volume, 286, 287
Specular reflection, 785, 786
Speech, 748–749
Speech intensity, 834–835
Speech privacy, 825–841
between enclosed spaces, 825–827
for enclosed spaces, 829–832
levels of, 837
in open-area offices, 832–836
open-office, 836–838
for open offices, 838–841
sound isolation descriptors, 827–828
standards for, 840–841
Speech rooms, acoustics for, 782–783
Spot-type heat detectors, 1150–1151
Sprinklers:
for escalators, 1486–1489
for fire suppression, 1096, 1106–1117
for landscaping, 994–995
and smoke exhaust systems, 1099
Sprinkler alarms, 1156
Square One Research PTY LTD., 1736
Squirrel-cage induction motors, 1215–1216
SRG Partnership, 1349
Stack effect, 127–131
Stack vent, residential waste piping, 1015, 1019
Stack ventilation, 105–106
calculating, 294–295
design guidelines for, 241–243
Stairways, electric, *see* Moving electric stairways
Stand-alone photovoltaic systems, 1330, 1335–1336, 1340–1343
Standards, 11–13. *See also specific topics*
Standard overcast CIE sky, 527, 605
Standby line-interactive system, 1240
Standby power equipment, 1242–1244
Standing waves (sound), 787–788
Standpipe-and-hose fire suppression systems, 1103–1106
Steady-state conditions, 183
Steel conduit, 1259–1261
Stein, B., 503, 584, 585, 632, 699, 710, 721, 723, 1419, 1462
Step-down (-up) transformers, 1189
Stereographic sunpath projection, 160
Storage, 21
Stores, retail, 1315, 1436–1437
Storm sewers, 867
Stormwater, *see* Rainwater/stormwater
Street lighting, 721, 723
Stroumsa, J., 723
Structural fire protection, 1097
Structural insulated panels (SIPs), 191, 204–205
Structural stresses (passenger elevators), 1440, 1443
Structure-borne sound, 804–806
Subjective brightness, 473, 484
Submersible pumps, 924
Substation transformers, 1190
Subsurface irrigation, 1058–1060
Sulfur lamps, 561
Sullivan, Louis, 55
Summer heat gain, 238–240

Sump pumps, 1011–1012, 1015
Sun, *see* Solar geometry
Sunlight, *see* Daylight
Sun-Mar "Compact" composting toilet, 1003, 1004
Sunpath projections, 157–163, 169
  horizontal, 1625–1628
  vertical, 1587–1590
Sunpeg charts, 61, 158, 159, 1579–1582
Sun rooms, 110
Sunscreens, 80, 82
Sunshading, 202, 204
Sunspaces, 110
Superwindows, 202, 203
Supplementary lighting, 573
Supply registers (heating systems), 360, 361
Surfaces, acoustically transparent, 800–801
Surface finishes:
  in fire safety design, 1088, 1089
  lighting and, 571, 572
Surface metal raceways, 1263–1265
Surface water, 77–78
Surge suppression, 1233–1239
Sustainability, 16
Sustainable Buildings Industry Council, 1734
Sustainable design, 16
Swamp coolers, 335
Switches, 1197–1198
  building envelope elements as, 176, 178–182
  electric service, 1195–1197, 1223–1225
  lighting control, 650–651
  location of, 1300
  programmable, 1201–1203
  remote-control, 1199, 1200
  solid-state, 1201
  time-controlled, 1200–1201
Switchgear, 1206–1209
System International (SI) units, 183
Szokolay, S. V., 1664

T

Tang, Stephen, 181
Tankless water heaters, 934–935
Tanner Leddy Maytum Stacy, Architects, 242
Tarquina, Italy, fountain, 866
Task-ambient office lighting, 712–713
Task analysis (for lighting), 564–565, 567–569
Task dehumidification, 141–145
Task ventilation, 122
Technology, use of, 18
Telecommunication and data systems, 1361–1362, 1366
Telephone systems, 1364–1365
Television systems, 1364
Temperatures. *See also* Thermal comfort
  balance point, 260–261
  and comfort, 95–98
  in fires, 1085
  for hot water systems, 910, 932–933
  internal, 279–281
  sol-air, 210
Temperature swing, 280
Termodeck system, 421
Thermal bridging, 188–190
Thermal capacity, 196
Thermal comfort, 91–103. *See also* Heat flow
  and indoor air quality, 116
  localized comfort, 102–103
  passive building comfort standards, 98–102
  standards for, 93–98
Thermal gradient, 195
Thermal lag, through mass walls, 279
Thermal mass, 233–237, 279
  in fire safety design, 1088
  for passive solar buildings, 1649
Thermal properties of air films/air spaces, 1612
Thermal properties of assemblies, 1619–1637
  doors, 1623
  floors, 1619, 1625, 1661
  glazing, 1631
  heat flow, 1625
  heat loss coefficients, 1624–1625
  roofs, 1619, 1621
  R-values, 1621
  shading devices, 1632–1637
  skylights, 1629–1630
  solar optical properties, 1631–1632
  structural insulated panels, 1580
  U-factors, 1619–1620, 1622–1623, 1626, 1629–1630
  walls, 1619–1621
  windows, 1626–1631
Thermal properties of materials, 183–187
  conductance, 184–186
  conductivity, 183–185
  under dynamic conditions, 196
  emittance, 186–187
  resistance, 184, 186
Thermal resistance, 1613–1618
Thermal sailing, 180
Thermodynamics, laws of, 27
Thermosiphon hot water circulation, 937, 938, 949, 952
Thin-film technology, 1332–1333
Thoreau Center for Sustainability (San Francisco, CA), 242–243
Thyristor control, 1412–1414
Time:
  equation of, 156
  solar vs. clock, 156–157
  visual exposure time, 488
Time-controlled switches, 1200–1201
Time lag (heat flow), 196–197
Time scales of concern, 28–29
Tingley, John, 387
TLCD Architecture, 432
Toilets, 961–970
  cleansing features near, 960
  conventional, 964–966
  flushing controls for, 970
  low-consumption, 967–970
  waterless, 999–1005
  water-saver, 966
Tolba, Mostafa, 33
Toldos, 106
Toplighting, 111
Top Ten Green Project award (AIA/COTE), 22
Top Ten Green Project aware (AIA/COTE), 22
Toronto District Heating Corporation, 456

Total equivalent temperature differential, time-averaging method (TETD/TA), 290
Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure (TCLP), 550
Toxic particulate substances, 119, 120
Toxic substances, in water, 911–912
Transamerica Building (San Francisco, CA), 1117, 1120
Transfer function method (TFM), 290
Transformers:
  building envelope elements as, 176
  noise reduction with, 851
  unit substations, 1207–1210
Transformer vaults, 1194–1195
Transient voltage surge suppression (TVSS), 1233–1239
Translucent diffusers, 635–636
Transmission loss (TL) (sound barriers), 807–813, 815–818
Transmittance (transmission factor, coefficient of transmission), 469, 470
Transparent insulation materials (TIM), 263, 265–267
Transparent plastics, solar optical properties of, 1631
Transpired collectors, 132–133
Transportation:
  design for, 41–42
  moving stairways and walks, 1477–1495
  vertical, *see* Vertical transportation
Traps, drainpipe, 1005–1007
Trash systems, pneumatic, 1473
Trees, 80, 82
Triple-effect absorption cycle, 331
Tristimulus value (color), 518
Trombe walls, 264–265, 269, 270
True south, 157
Tubular skylights, 596, 597
Tungsten-halogen (quartz-iodine) lamps, 537–539
Tuning, lighting, 654–655
Turbidity, 910
Turbine ventilators, 127, 130
2.5H guidelines (lighting design), 601, 602
2400/4160-V, 3-phase, 4-wire systems, 1288
Two-stage electronic air cleaners, 147

U

U-factors, 188–189, 199, 204, 263
  doors, 1623
  floors, 1619
  roofs, 1619
  skylights, 1629–1630
  structural insulated panels, 1622
  walls, 1619–1620, 1622
  walls in passive solar heating, 1620
  windows, 1626–1628
UL (Underwriters Laboratories), 1246
UltraCool evaporative cooler, 337
Ultrafiltration (water), 915
Ultraviolet radiation (UV), 147
Ultraviolet radiation (UV) fire detectors, 1149–1150
Under-carpet wiring system, 1272, 1274–1276
Undercroft, 130
Underfloor air supply, 431–433
Underfloor duct, 1266–1270
Underground electric service, 1186, 1188–1189
Underslab ventilation, 130–131
Underslung arrangement (elevators), 1438, 1442
Underwriters Laboratories (UL), 1246
Uniform open plan offices, 379–380
Unilateral lighting, 590
Uninterruptible power supply (UPS), 1239–1242
Units of measurement, conversion factors for, 1500–1504
United Kingdom Pavilion (Seville World Expo), 291, 292
U.S. Green Building Council, 14
U.S. Holocaust Memorial Museum (Washington, DC), 596
U.S. National Drinking Water Clearinghouse, 909
United States:
  average insolation/temperature/daylight design data, 1559–1562, 1564–1567
  outside design conditions for, 1507–1514, 1516–1523, 1525–1530
U.S. Green Building Council, 14, 1735
U.S. Holocaust Memorial Museum (Washington, DC), 596
U.S. National Drinking Water Clearinghouse, 909
University of Arizona library (Tucson, AZ), 167
University of California—Berkeley office, 622
University of Oregon, Eugene, 78
Unthank Poticha Waterbury, Architects, 888
Unthank Seder Poticha, Architects, 78
Upfeed water distribution, 974–975
Upright sprinkler heads, 1108, 1110
Urban areas:
  noise in, 66–67
  solid waste generation in, 1072
Urbanization, changes in climate and, 52–54
Urinals, 963, 1004–1005
Utah Department of Natural Resources (Salt Lake City), 438, 439
UV lamps, 550–551

V

Vacuum waste disposal systems, 1078–1079
Validation, 9–10
Valley Architects, 248
Van der Rohe, Mies, 354
Van der Ryn, Sim, 4, 5
Van Geem, Martha, 37
Van Vleck, Roger, 437
Vapor pressure, moisture flow and, 197
Vapor retarders, 197, 198
Variable air volume (VAV) systems, 846
Variable frequency drives (VFD), 1217–1218

Variable-size fixed shading devices, 169
Variable-voltage, variable-frequency AC motor control, 1414–1415
Variable-voltage DC motor control, 1414
Vasoconstriction, 89
Vasodilation, 90
Vault-type composting toilets, 1001–1003
Veiling reflections (reflected glare), 497, 500–506
Vent, drainpipe, 1007, 1008
Ventilation, 207, 1638–1644. *See also* Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning; Passive cooling
  and comfort, 97
  for cooling, 105–106
  cross-ventilation, 240–241
  deliberate air infiltration for, 204
  heat gain due to, 1657
  minimum rates for, 1638–1641
  natural, 74, 75–76
  preheating air for, 132–133
  recommended rates of, 120–122
  for smoke control, 1101–1102
  and stack effect, 127–131
  task, 122
  underslab, 130–131
  windows for, 125–127
Ventilative cooling, 111
Vent stacks, 1015, 1019
Vertical shadow angle (VSA), 167, 168
Vertical sunpath projections, 159–163
Vertical surface illuminance, 530, 531, 615, 716
Vertical transportation, 1429–1476
  automated container delivery systems, 1473–1474
  automated dumbwaiters, 1468, 1470–1471
  automated self-propelled vehicles, 1474–1475
  chair lifts, 1463–1466
  electric loads for, 1285
  elevators, 1429–1476
  horizontal conveyors, 1468
  manual load/unload dumbwaiters, 1468, 1469
  material-handling equipment, 1467
  pneumatic trash and linen systems, 1473
  pneumatic tubes, 1468, 1473
  selective vertical conveyors, 1468, 1472
  traction passenger elevators, 1393–1451
Vibration:
  acoustical, 740, 765
  of machines, 844–845
Vibration lamps, 535
Victor Gruen Associates, Inc., 385
Village Homes (CA), 891
Virgin materials, 35, 38–39
Visible consumption strategy, 959
Visible fire alarms, 1157
Visible transmittance (VT), 200
Vision, *see* Sight
Visitor Center, Antelope Valley Poppy Reserve (CA), 315–318
Visitor Center, Zion National Park (Utah), 252, 253
Visual acuity, 482–484
Visual comfort, 111–114
Visual comfort probability (VCP), 499–500
Visual display terminal (VDT) area lighting, 704–709
Vital Signs project, 7, 10
VOC monitors, 149
Volts, 1166
Voltage rating, 1248
Voltage systems, 1286–1291
Volume resonators, 798–800
Vortechs™ Stormwater Treatment System, 1062

W

Walks, moving, 1492–1495
Walls:
  below-grade, 1625
  DETD for, 1653–1654
  heat gains through, 281–282
  luminance of, 576
  opaque, sensible heat flows through, 180, 182–197
  in passive solar heating systems, 1620
  R-values for, 1621
  sound transmission through, 810, 812–818, 1711–1721
  thermal lag through mass walls, 279
  thermal performance of, 189–191
  U-factors for, 1619–1620, 1622
Wall-lighting patterns, 585
Wall panels, sound absorption by, 793, 802
Walls:
  below-grade, 1625
  DETD for, 1653–1654
  R-values for, 1621
  sound transmission through, 1711–1721
  U-factors for, 1619–1620, 1622
Ward, Greg, 619
Warm air heating systems, 356–363
Wasley, James, 118, 145, 150
Water, 32–34
  architectural uses of, 865–868
  biological characteristics of, 913–914
  in building construction, 870
  chemical characteristics of, 911–913
  "grades" of, 1055
  groundwater, 79–80
  hydrologic cycle, 868–870
  minimum plumbing facilities, 873–875
  per capita use of, 43
  physical characteristics of, 911
  radiological characteristics of, 914
  rainwater/stormwater, 76, 79. *See also* Rainwater/stormwater
  total sewage flow estimation, 875–876
Water conservation:
  plumbing fixtures for, 959–970
  residential opportunities for, 999–1000
  use of rainwater, 875–877
Water distribution systems, 974–982
  condensation, 985–986

piping/tubing/fittings, 982–986
shock and hot water expansion, 985, 987
sizing of water pipes, 986–994
valves and controls, 984
Water fire suppression systems, 1102–1123
circulating closed-loop systems, 1118, 1122
deluge systems, 1120, 1125
dry-pipe systems, 1118–1119, 1123
early suppression fast-response sprinklers, 1117
extended coverage sprinklers, 1117
mist systems, 1120–1123, 1125
preaction systems, 1120, 1124
quick-response, early suppression sprinklers, 1116–1117
quick-response sprinklers, 1116–1117
residential sprinklers, 1116–1117
sprinkler construction/orientation/rating, 1108–1111
sprinkler spacing and hazard, 1111–1116
sprinkler system design impacts, 1106–1108
standpipes and hoses, 1103–1106
wet-pipe systems, 1117–1118
Water heaters:
conventional, 938–946
heat pump, 959
minimum capacities for, 942
sizing of, 943, 944–945
solar, 946–959
tankless, 934–935
Water heat tank storage, 421–423
Waterless No-Flush™ urinals, 1004–1005
Waterless toilets, 999–1005
Waterless urinals, 1004–1005
Water loop heat pumps, 394, 397, 448–452
Water pollution, 909
Water-saver toilets, 966
Water source heat pumps, 367, 368, 373–374
Water storage tanks, 1088
Water supply, 909–997
aeration, 918, 919
cisterns, 871, 873
control of nuisance organisms, 920–921
corrosion control, 918–919
disinfection, 915–918
distillation, 921
distribution systems, 974–982
electric loads for, 1285
estimating, 870–872
filtration, 913–915
for fire fighting, 1095
fixtures for conservation of, 959–970
fluoridation, 921
fresh water, 865
hot water systems, 932–959
irrigation, 994–997
minimum plumbing facilities, 873–875
planning guide for, 872
quality of, 909–913
softening, 919–920
for sprinklers, 1107–1108
total sewage flow estimation, 875–876
use of rainwater, 875–877
well water systems, 921–932
Water table, 870
Water tube boilers, 403
Water walls:
design guidelines for, 261–262, 269
other passive systems vs., 264–265
Watson, Donald, Architect, 237
Watt, 1172
Watt-hour, 184
Wavelengths:
light, 468
sound, 740
WEGroup, PC, Architects, 224, 225
Wells, Malcolm, 3
Well water systems, 921–932
pressure tanks, 926, 928–929
pumps, 923–929
temperatures of water, 314
Welton Becket & Assoc., 585
Westcave Environmental Center (Round Mountain, TX), 593
Westin Peachtree Plaza, 525
Wet-bulb depression, 96
Wet-bulb (WB) temperature, 95–96
Wetlands, 1042–1043
Wet-pipe fire suppression systems, 1117–1122
White, F. A., 744, 745
White, Stuart, Jr., 236
Whitehead, L. A., 730
Whole-building heat loss criteria, 227, 230–231
Wildlife Center of Virginia (Waynesboro, VA), 372
William McDonough + Partners, 22–26
William Pereira & Associates, 1120
Williams, Douglas, 1069
Wilson cloud chamber detectors, 1153, 1154
Windbreaks, 71
Wind control, 70–74
Windows, 176
for air distribution, 434–438
air infiltration through, 1643–1644
coefficients of utilization from, 1569–1574
fenestration design guidelines, 216
in fire safety design, 1088
glazing performance, 263, 265–267
heat flow through, 199–204
inert-gas-filled, 202
mirror-glass, 64
solar optical properties of, 1631
sound transmission through, 820–822
thermal characteristics of, 1627–1628
trends in, 205
U-factors of, 1626–1628
for ventilation, 125–127
view and daylighting from, 589
Winter, Erik, 71, 153, 154, 157, 164–166, 232, 436, 444, 527, 591–593, 595–598, 886
Winter gardens, 110

Wireless switching and control, 1228
Wiring, *see* Electric wiring and raceways
Wiring devices, 1221–1224
  location of, 1300
  receptacles, 1221–1224
  specialty, 1224, 1226
  switches, 1223–1225
Wood heating devices, 340–342
Woods Hole Research Center, 22–26
Wood stoves, 340–342
Workstation air delivery systems, 433, 434
Wright, Frank Lloyd, 55, 58, 352
Wright, Matsuzaki, 1001

X
Xeriscapes, 893

Y
Yoklic, Martin, 306, 307

Z
Zonal cavity method, 663–670
  by approximation, 670–672
  calculation of, 665–670
Zone-coded fire alarm systems, 1141–1142
Zoning:
  design guidelines for, 218–219
  for HVAC, 352–355, 378, 381–383
  for indoor air quality, 122–125



THE FOREMOST GUIDE TO THE DESIGN OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL SYSTEMS

UPDATED AND EXPANDED

For more than seven decades, *Mechanical and Electrical Equipment for Buildings* has been the preeminent teaching and practice reference for building environmental control systems. Now this classic text has been updated and expanded, and continues to help prepare generations of students for their careers in architecture, architectural engineering, and construction management, and to supply professionals with in-depth information to assist them with their decision making in practice.

With over 2,200 drawings and photographs—more than 200 of them new to this edition—the *Eleventh Edition* covers basic theory, preliminary building design guidelines, and detailed design procedures for buildings of all sizes, and also provides information on the latest technologies, emerging design trends, and updated codes.

New and notable:

- Increased attention placed on mitigating environmental impacts, in both off-site and on-site resources
- Case studies showing successful integration of design strategies
- Discussions of "why" and "how to," which help the reader better understand concepts and applications
- Discussions of computer-based design simulations, incorporating an appreciation of hand calculation skills

Companion Web site: www.wiley.com/go/meeb

Cover Photograph: The Gerding Theater, Portland, Oregon © Josh Partee

WALTER T. GRONDZIK, PE, LEED AP, is Professor of Architecture at Ball State University, Muncie, Indiana. Grondzik is a Fellow of ASHRAE, a Fellow of the American Solar Energy Society, and a past president of the Society of Building Science Educators and the Architectural Research Centers Consortium. He holds an MS in mechanical engineering (building environmental systems) and a bachelor of architectural engineering.

ALISON G. KWOK, PhD, AIA, LEED AP, is Professor of Architecture at the University of Oregon, Eugene, teaches design studios, seminars in building performance, as well as courses in environmental technology. Kwok has served as a board member for the Architectural Research Centers Consortium and is a past president of the Society of Building Science Educators, a member of several ASHRAE committees, and a member of the USGBC's Formal Education Committee.

BENJAMIN STEIN is a consulting engineer with more than fifty years of experience in all phases of environmental control system design. He currently resides in Jerusalem, Israel.

JOHN S. REYNOLDS, AIA, is Professor Emeritus of Architecture at the University of Oregon, Eugene, and is a registered architect in private practice.

Subscribe to our free Architecture eNewsletter at wiley.com/enewsletters

Visit wiley.com/architectureanddesign

WILEY
wiley.com

ISBN 978-0-470-19565-9
90000
9 780470 195659